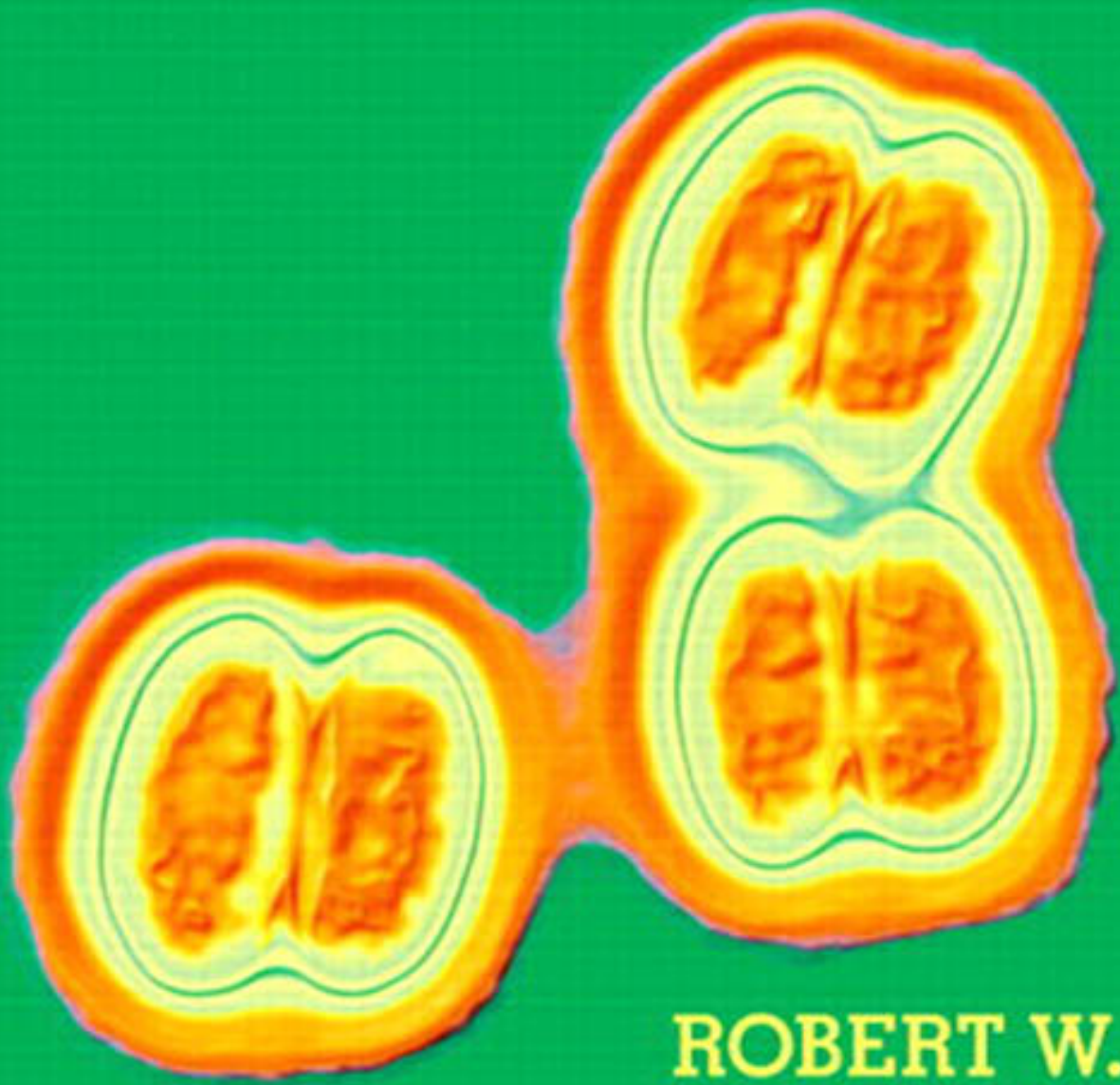
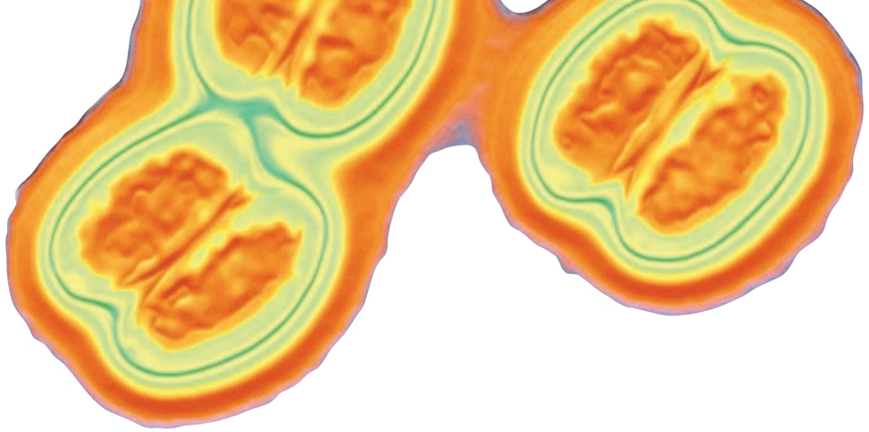
FOURTH EDITION

MICROBIOLOGY

WITH DISEASES BY TAXONOMY



ROBERT W. BAUMAN



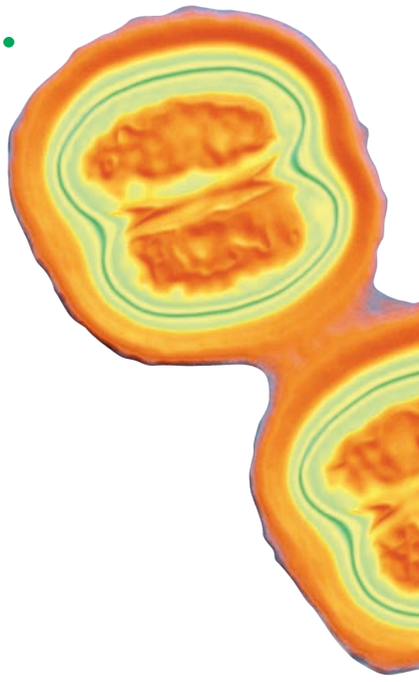
FOURTH EDITION

MICROBIOLOGY

WITH DISEASES BY TAXONOMY

ROBERT W. BAUMAN, PH.D.

Amarillo College



Contributions by:

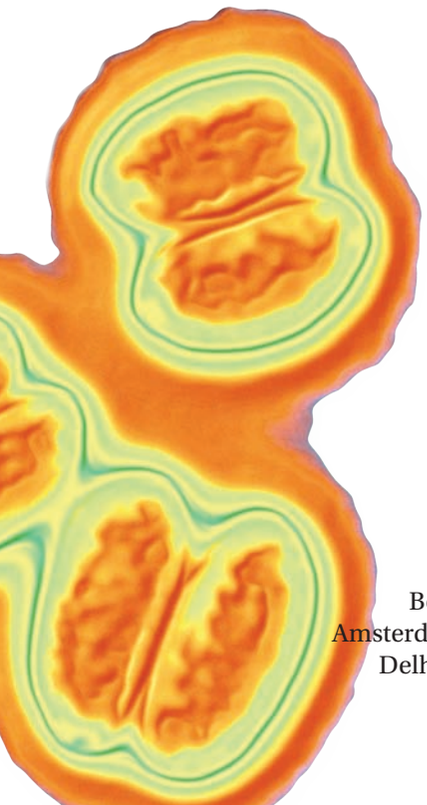
Elizabeth Machunis-Masuoka, Ph.D.

University of Virginia

Clinical Consultants:

Cecily D. Cosby, Ph.D., FNP-C, PA-C

Jean E. Montgomery, MSN, RN



PEARSON

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco Upper Saddle River
Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montréal Toronto
Delhi Mexico City São Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: *Kelsey Churchman*
Associate Editor: *Nicole McFadden*
Director of Development: *Barbara Yien*
Assistant Editor: *Ashley Williams*
Art Development Editor: *Kelly Murphy*
Senior Managing Editor: *Deborah Cogan*
Assistant Managing Editor: *Nancy Tabor*
Executive Media Producer: *Liz Winer*
Assistant Media Producer: *Annie Wang*
Copyeditor: *Anita Wagner*
Proofreader: *Bruce Owens*

Design Manager: *Mark Ong*
Interior and Cover Designer: *Tamara Newnam*
Project Management and Composition: *S4Carlisle*
Project Manager: *Tiffany Rupp*
Illustration: *Precision Graphics*
Photo Lead: *Donna Kalal*
Photo Permissions Management: *Bill Smith Group*
Photo Researcher: *Maureen Spuhler*
Senior Manufacturing Buyer: *Stacey Weinberger*
Senior Marketing Manager: *Neena Bali*

Cover Photo Credit: Alfred Pasieka / Photo Researchers, Inc.

Credits and acknowledgments borrowed from other sources and reproduced, with permission, in this textbook appear on the appropriate page within the text or on p. CR-1.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Bauman, Robert W..
Microbiology : with diseases by taxonomy / Robert W. Bauman ; contributions by Elizabeth Machunis-Masuoka. — 4th ed.
p. cm.
ISBN-13: 978-0-321-81931-4
ISBN-10: 0-321-81931-4
1. Microbiology. 2. Medical microbiology. I. Machunis-Masuoka, Elizabeth. II. Title.
QR41.2.B382 2014
616.9'041—dc23

2012029866

ISBN 10: 0-321-81931-4 (Student edition)
ISBN 13: 978-0-321-81931-4 (Student edition)
ISBN 10: 0-321-82159-9 (Instructor's Review Copy)
ISBN 13: 978-0-321-82159-1 (Instructor's Review Copy)

PEARSON

www.pearsonhighered.com

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10—DOW—16 15 14 13 12

To Michelle:
My best friend, my closest confidant, my cheerleader,
my partner, my love. Thirty years! I love you more now than then.

—Robert

About the Author

ROBERT W. BAUMAN is a professor of biology and past chairman of the Department of Biological Sciences at Amarillo College in Amarillo, Texas. He teaches microbiology, human anatomy and physiology, and botany. In 2004, the students of Amarillo College selected Dr. Bauman as the recipient of the John F. Mead Faculty Excellence Award. He received an M.A. degree in botany from the University of Texas at Austin and a Ph.D. in biology from Stanford University. His research interests have included the morphology and ecology of freshwater algae, the cell biology of marine algae (particularly the deposition of cell walls and intercellular communication), and environmentally triggered chromogenesis in butterflies. He is a member of the American Society of Microbiology (ASM) where he has held national offices, the Texas Community College Teacher's Association (TCCTA), the American Association for the Advancement of Science (AAAS), the Human Anatomy and Physiology Society (HAPS), and the Lepidopterists Society. When he is not writing books, he enjoys spending time with his family: gardening, hiking, camping, rock climbing, backpacking, cycling, snowshoeing, skiing, and reading by a crackling fire or in a gently swaying hammock.

About the Clinical Consultants

CECILY D. COSBY is nationally certified as both a family nurse practitioner and physician assistant. She is a professor of nursing, currently teaching at Samuel Merritt College in Oakland, California, and has been in clinical practice since 1980, most recently at the University of California, San Francisco, in a preoperative practice. She received her Ph.D. and MS from the University of California, San Francisco; her BSN from California State University, Long Beach; and her PA certificate from the Stanford Primary Care program. She was awarded the Paul C. Samson Clinical Nursing Professional Chair for 2007–2010.

JEAN E. MONTGOMERY is a registered nurse formerly teaching in the associate degree nursing program at Austin Community College in Texas. She received her MSN from the University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, Texas.

Preface

The spread of whooping cough, snail fever, spotted fever rickettsiosis, and other emerging diseases; the cases of strep throat, MRSA, and tuberculosis; the progress of cutting-edge research into microbial genetics; the challenge of increasingly drug-resistant pathogens; the continual discovery of microorganisms previously unknown—these are just a few examples of why exploring microbiology has never been more exciting, or more important. Welcome!

I have taught microbiology to undergraduates for over 25 years and witnessed firsthand how students struggle with the same topics and concepts year after year. To address these challenging topics, I have developed and narrated Video Tutors that walk students through key concepts in microbiology, bringing the art of the textbook to life and important concepts into view. In creating this textbook, my goal was to allow students to see complex topics of microbiology—especially metabolism, genetics, and immunology—in a way that they can understand while at the same time presenting a thorough and accurate overview of microbiology. I also wished to highlight the many positive effects of microorganisms on our lives, along with the medically important microorganisms that cause disease.

NEW TO THIS EDITION

In approaching the fourth edition, my goal was to build upon the strengths and success of the previous editions by updating it with the latest scientific and educational research and data available and by incorporating the many terrific suggestions I have received from colleagues and students alike. The feedback from instructors who adopted previous editions has been immensely gratifying and is much appreciated. Another goal for this edition was to provide additional instruction on important concepts and processes. To that end, I developed and narrated the Video Tutors accessible via QR codes in the textbook and in MasteringMicrobiology. The result is, once again, a collaborative effort of educators, students, editors, and top scientific illustrators: a textbook that, I hope, continues to improve upon conventional explanations and illustrations in substantive and effective ways. In this new edition:

- **New Video Tutors** developed and narrated by the author walk students through key concepts in microbiology, bringing the textbook art to life and helping students visualize and understand tough topics and important processes. These video tutorials are accessible via QR codes in the textbook and accompanied by multiple-choice questions that are assignable in MasteringMicrobiology®.
- **New Clinical Case Study** and **Emerging Disease Case Study boxes** reflect the fourth edition's emphasis on clinical topics and emerging diseases. Focused on the signs, symptoms, diagnosis, and treatment of each disease, these boxes do not assume a student has a medical background or complete understanding of all aspects of health care. They are presented in an engaging style that encourages the student to think critically. (See pp. xxii-xxiii for a full list.)
- **New MicroCareers Coaching Activities and Clinical Case Study Activities**, assignable in MasteringMicrobiology, allow students to explore careers in microbiology by examining diseases and epidemiology.
- **New Numbered Learning Outcomes** in the textbook are used to tag Test Bank questions and all Mastering assets. In addition to being tagged to Learning Outcomes, all Mastering assessments are tagged to the Global Science Learning Outcomes and Bloom's Taxonomy. The complete Mastering Test Bank is also tagged to ASMCUE-recommended outcomes.

- **New Visualize It!** features appear at the end of each chapter. These are short-answer or fill-in-the-blank questions built around illustrations or photos. These are also assignable art labeling activities in MasteringMicrobiology.
- **Over 100 New micrographs and photos** enhance student understanding of the text and boxed features.
- **Improved Lab equipment illustrations** feature increased dimensionality and realism to help students arrive prepared for their lab course.
- **Chapter 3 (Cell Structure and Function)** deemphasizes the term "prokaryote" (a term that is based on an outdated perception of taxonomy and is thus misleading to students) and instead emphasizes the three domains of living organisms, matching the latest taxonomic research. This state-of-the-science organization sets this book apart from all other allied health microbiology books.
- **The immunology chapters (Chapters 15–18),** which have been and continue to be reviewed in-depth by immunology specialists, reflect the most current understanding of this rapidly changing field of any microbiology book available.
- **New Microbe-at-a-Glance art labeling activities**, assignable in MasteringMicrobiology, help students understand form and function relationships with respect to taxonomy.
- **MasteringMicrobiology®** includes not only the new Video Tutors with assessments, the MicroCareers Coaching Activities and Clinical Case Study Activities, and the Visualize It! and Microbe-at-a-Glance art labeling activities but also Microbiology Lab Technique videos with assessment and MicroLab Tutor coaching activties. MicroLab Tutors use lab technique videos, 3D molecular animations, and stepped-out tutorials to actively engage students in making the connection between microbiology lecture, lab, and the real world. Additionally, MasteringMicrobiology and the Study Area include new MicroLab Practical quizzes, which ask students to analyze and interpret important lab tests, techniques, and results.

The following section provides a detailed outline of this edition's chapter-by-chapter revisions.

Chapter-by-Chapter Revisions

Every chapter in this edition has been thoroughly revised, and data in the text, tables, and figures have been updated. The main changes for each chapter are summarized below.

THROUGHOUT THE PATHOGEN CHAPTERS (19–25)

- Updated disease diagnoses, treatments, and incidence and prevalence data
- Updated immunization recommendations and suggested treatments for all diseases
- Added Clinical Case Study boxes as noted below
- Added answers to Clinical Case Study boxes to Instructor's Manual

CHAPTER 1 A BRIEF HISTORY OF MICROBIOLOGY

- Two new figures for increased general interest
- Eight new photos
- Updated map showing countries with acquisition of variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (vJCD)
- New Clinical Case Study boxes on a yellow fever epidemic in the 18th century and stomach ulcers
- New Visualize It! question on Pasteur's experiment
- New Video Tutor: The Scientific Method

CHAPTER 2 THE CHEMISTRY OF MICROBIOLOGY

- Four revised figures for better pedagogy
- Two new photos
- Updated evidence for liquid water and necessary chemicals for life occurring on the moon of Saturn, Enceladus
- Expanded coverage of the nucleosides, which are used as nucleotide analogs in treating a number of diseases
- New figure legend question for enhanced pedagogy
- New Visualize It! question on molecular structure
- New Video Tutor: The Structure of Nucleotides
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on nucleic acids

CHAPTER 3 CELL STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

- Six revised figures for enhanced pedagogy and accuracy
- Sixteen new photos
- Enhanced discussion of bacterial cytoskeletons
- Enhanced discussion of the roles of glycocalyces in biofilms
- New Clinical Case Study box on streptococcal pharyngitis (strep throat).
- New Visualize It! question on bacterial flagellar arrangements
- New Video Tutor: Bacterial Cell Walls

CHAPTER 4 MICROSCOPY, STAINING, AND CLASSIFICATION

- Three new photos
- Two tables with revised artwork and photos
- Additional coverage of histological stains: Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain and hematoxylin and eosin (HE) stain
- Updated coverage of taxonomy; for example, expanded discussion of definitions of microbial species
- New Visualize It! question on parts of the optical microscope
- New Video Tutor: The Light Microscope
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on Gram stain and cell wall structure

CHAPTER 5 MICROBIAL METABOLISM

- One new figure and two revised figures for greater clarity and better pedagogy
- Expanded coverage of vitamins as enzymatic cofactors
- Revisions in text and figure legends to more clearly explain energy transfer in glycolysis, Krebs cycle, and electron transport
- Revisions in the text to clarify that glycolysis, the pentose phosphate pathway, and the Krebs cycle supply many precursor metabolites for anabolism
- Additional discussion of bacterial quorum sensing and biofilms
- New Visualize It! question on glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and electron transport chains
- New Video Tutor: Electron Transport Chains
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on aerobic respiration

CHAPTER 6 MICROBIAL NUTRITION AND GROWTH

- Two new figures and four revised figures for greater clarity, ease of reading, and better pedagogy
- Four new photos
- Significantly expanded coverage of biofilms and quorum sensing
- Updated section on radiation-tolerant microbes, covering fungi that use radioactivity as an energy source
- New Clinical Case Study box on MRSA infection in a high school
- New Visualize It! question on hemolysis
- New Video Tutor: Bacterial Growth Media

CHAPTER 7 MICROBIAL GENETICS

- Two new figures and thirteen revised figures for greater clarity, accuracy, and pedagogy
- Three new photos
- Revisions in the text to better explain differences between archaeal, bacterial, and eukaryotic genetics
- Extended coverage of differences between nucleoside and nucleotide (many antimicrobial drugs are analogs of the former, not the latter)
- Extended coverage of codons and tRNAs for 21st and 22nd amino acids
- Modified artwork reflecting changes in our understanding of molecular biology. For example, where possible, enzyme shapes are based upon actual 3D profiles as revealed by X-ray crystallography (e.g., Figure 7.28) and eukaryotic histone shape is more accurately represented to conform to new discoveries (Figure 7.3)
- Clearer section on operons, introduction of the term *polycistronic*, and new discussion of quorum-sensing as a trigger for inducible and repressible operons
- Revised section on regulatory RNA molecules for clarity and to conform to newly discovered information
- New Clinical Case Study box on nosocomial, enterococcal infection involving horizontal gene transfer

- New Emerging Disease Case Study box on *Vibrio vulnificus* infection
- New Visualize It! question on a phage DNA molecule
- New Video Tutor: Initiation of Translation
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on point mutations

CHAPTER 8 RECOMBINANT DNA TECHNOLOGY

- Six revised figures for enhanced pedagogy and accuracy
- Five new photos
- Additional coverage of new recombinant agricultural crops, including ringspot-virus-resistant papayas
- Increased coverage of the debate concerning genetic modification of agricultural products
- New Highlight boxes on the use of recombinant DNA techniques to address Dengue fever and the progress of developing edible vaccines
- New Visualize It! question on a "DNA fingerprint"
- New Video Tutor: Action of Restriction Enzymes
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on recombinant DNA technology

CHAPTER 9 CONTROLLING MICROBIAL GROWTH IN THE ENVIRONMENT

- One revised figure more clearly illustrating the role of HEPA filters in biological settings
- Six new photos
- Reorganization of the topics "Methods for Evaluating Disinfectants and Antiseptics" and "Biosafety Levels" for better flow and pedagogy
- New Visualize It! question on brass and water safety
- New Video Tutor: Principles of Autoclaving
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on moist heat applications to control microorganisms

CHAPTER 10 CONTROLLING MICROBIAL GROWTH IN THE BODY: ANTIMICROBIAL DRUGS

- One revised figure more accurately illustrating the inhibitory effects of beta-lactams on bacterial cell walls
- Five new photos
- Expanded discussion of use of RNA interference (RNAi) and antisense nucleic acids as antimicrobial therapy
- Increased discussion of biofilms as they relate to drug resistance
- Updated and revised tables of antimicrobials to include all new antimicrobials mentioned in disease chapters, including new antiprotozoan drugs (lumefantrine, nitazoxanide, paromomycin, piperaquine, and tinidazol) and antiviral protease inhibitors (boceprevir, darunavir, and telaprevir)
- Additional coverage of *therapeutic index* and *therapeutic window* as applied to antimicrobials.
- Additional material on transfer of resistance genes between and among bacteria and on research to discover novel antimicrobials
- Nine new Learning Outcomes
- New Clinical Case Study on treating a wound infection
- Three new figure legend and critical thinking questions, including questions on determining minimum inhibitory concentration and on antimicrobial analog function
- New Visualize It! question on a test for antimicrobial efficacy
- New Video Tutor: Action of Some Drugs That Inhibit Prokaryotic Protein Synthesis
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on antimicrobial resistance

CHAPTER 11 CHARACTERIZING AND CLASSIFYING PROKARYOTES

- Three revised figures for better pedagogy and accuracy
- Fifteen new photos
- Updated taxonomy which corresponds more completely with *Bergey's Manual*
- Six new Learning Outcomes in section on proteobacteria
- New Highlight box exploring a possible connection between cyanobacteria and neurological disorders, such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Parkinson's disease, and Alzheimer's disease
- New Highlight box concerning the link between oral microbiota and obesity
- New Visualize It! question on endospores
- New Video Tutor: Arrangements of Prokaryotic Cells
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on the domain archaea

CHAPTER 12 CHARACTERIZING AND CLASSIFYING EUKARYOTES

- Revised two figures for greater clarity and accuracy
- Fifteen new photos
- Additional discussion of the use by fungi of radiation as an energy source
- New Visualize It! question on a general fungal life cycle
- New Video Tutor: Principles of Sexual Reproduction in Fungi
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on eukaryotic microorganisms

CHAPTER 13 CHARACTERIZING AND CLASSIFYING VIRUSES, VIROIDS, AND PRIONS

- Revised three figures for better pedagogy and accuracy
- Six new photos
- New coverage of discovery of *Megavirus*—the largest virus
- Expanded coverage of prions
- Updated Emerging Disease box on chikungunya, including map of affected areas
- New Visualize It! question on recognizing viral shapes in transmission electron micrographs
- New Video Tutor: The Lytic Cycle of Viral Replication
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on the replication of animal viruses

CHAPTER 14 INFECTION, INFECTIOUS DISEASES, AND EPIDEMIOLOGY

- Two revised figures for better pedagogy and accuracy, including more recent disease data
- Eight new photos
- Updated graph on the incidence and prevalence of AIDS among U.S. adults
- New information and graphs on the emerging disease human West Nile virus
- Updated table of nationally notifiable infectious diseases
- New example of "epidemic," using hemolytic uremic syndrome (caused by *E. coli*) instead of *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome

- New Video Tutor: Some Virulence Factors
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on disease transmission

CHAPTER 15 INNATE IMMUNITY

- Three revised figures for enhanced clarity and better pedagogy, including new rendition to reflect more accurately the sequence of complement cascade
- One new photo
- Expanded coverage of NOD receptor proteins and their role in protecting against hepatitis C, AIDS, and mononucleosis
- New Clinical Case Study box on mycoplasmal pneumonia in a college student
- New Visualize It! question on identification of white blood cells
- New Video Tutor: Inflammation
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on phagocytosis

CHAPTER 16 SPECIFIC DEFENSE: ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY

- Five revised figures for better pedagogy and clarity
- Two new photos
- Updated information on adaptive T cell cancer therapy
- Newly added step numbering in figures of antigen processing to tie text to figures more closely
- New Visualize It! question on a dendritic cell
- New Video Tutor: Clonal Deletion
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on antibodies

CHAPTER 17 IMMUNIZATION AND IMMUNE TESTING

- Two revised figures for better accuracy, specifically revised virus and antigen structure
- Two new photos
- Updated charts showing the effects of immunization in reducing polio and measles rates in the U.S.
- Updated table of vaccine preventable diseases in the U.S.
- Newly revised CDC 2012 vaccination schedule for children, adolescents, and adults
- Additional coverage of quantifying immunoassays—turbidimetry and nephelometry
- New Visualize It! question on a Western blot
- New Video Tutor: ELISA
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on vaccines

CHAPTER 18 HYPERSENSITIVITIES, AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES, AND IMMUNE DEFICIENCIES

- Five new photos for better pedagogy
- Updated, simplified, and corrected material on Graves' disease, tissue transplants, and multiple sclerosis
- New Visualize It! question on recognizing type I, III, and IV hypersensitivities
- New Video Tutor: Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on immediate (type I) hypersensitivity

CHAPTER 19 PATHOGENIC GRAM-POSITIVE BACTERIA

- One revised figure for better accuracy, specifically revised motor neuron shape
- Eleven new photos
- Updated chart on the incidence of toxic-shock syndrome in the U.S.
- Reduced coverage of diphtheria (only fifteen cases in the U.S. since 1994)
- Updated map showing regions affected by *Mycobacterium ulcerans*
- New Clinical Case Study box on tuberculosis
- New Visualize It! question on the action of the botulism toxin
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on tuberculosis

CHAPTER 20 PATHOGENIC GRAM-NEGATIVE COCCI AND BACILLI

- One new figure and one revised figure for better pedagogy and accuracy
- Nine new photos
- Updated disease charts and graphs for gonorrhea, brucellosis, pertussis, and infections of *Salmonella*
- Updated map showing regions affected by melioidiosis
- Updated treatment recommendations for gonorrhea; meningococcal meningitis; cat-scratch disease; pertussis; infections of *Pseudomonas, Moraxella, Acinetobacter,* and *Burkholderia*; Legionnaires' disease; and Q fever
- New Clinical Case Study box on *Francisella tularensis*
- New Visualize It! question on differential/selective medium (MacConkey's)
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on meningitis

CHAPTER 21 RICKETTSIAS, CHLAMYDIAS, SPIROCHETES, AND VIBRIOS

- Eleven new photos
- Updated disease graphs for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, syphilis, Lyme disease, and cholera
- Revised designation of spotted fever rickettsiosis (from Rocky Mountain spotted fever) to match the CDC reportable disease table and to show that rickettsias other than *Rickettsia rickettsii* can cause the condition
- Updated treatment recommendations for spotted fever rickettsioses, such as Rocky Mountain spotted fever, epidemic (louse-borne) typhus, scrub typhus, lymphogranuloma venereum, trachoma, *Chlamydophila (Chlamydia)* pneumonia, psittacosis, Lyme disease, *Campylobacter* infection, and gastric ulcers
- New Emerging Disease Case Study box on the new cause of spotted fever rickettsiosis—*Rickettsia parkeri*
- Two new critical thinking questions: one concerning the use of tetracyclines in children and pregnant women, and one covering the reason for prescribing chloramphenicol instead of doxycycline
- New Visualize It! question on *Chlamydia*

CHAPTER 22 PATHOGENIC FUNGI

- Thirteen new photos for enhanced pedagogy
- Enhanced discussion of the action of antifungal agents griseofulvin and echinocandins
- Updated diagnoses and treatment of fungal diseases and development of vaccines against fungi
- New Clinical Case Study box on *Histoplasmosis*
- New Visualize It! question on fungal genera

CHAPTER 23 PARASITIC PROTOZOA, HELMINTHS, AND ARTHROPOD VECTORS

- Five new photos
- Revised map of global malaria distribution
- Updated treatment recommendations for leishmaniasis, giardiasis, *Trichomonas* vaginosis, malaria, toxoplasmosis, *Echinococcus, Fasciola, Ascaris,* and *Wuchereria* infections
- Introduction of fifth species of *Plasmodium* that causes malaria in humans—an emerging disease
- New Emerging Disease Case Study box on schistosomiasis, including a map of distribution
- New Visualize It! question on identification of parasites in clinical specimens

CHAPTER 24 PATHOGENIC DNA VIRUSES

- Nineteen new photos
- Updated graph for prevalence of acute hepatitis B showing reduction due to vaccination efforts
- Updated map of regions affected by monkeypox
- New Clinical Case Study box on hepatitis B
- New Visualize It! question on identifying diseases
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on herpes virus

CHAPTER 25 PATHOGENIC RNA VIRUSES

- One new figure and two figures revised for better pedagogy and accuracy
- Twelve new photos
- Updated disease graphs for polio, human West Nile virus, Dengue fever, rubella, HIV/AIDS, measles, mumps, and Ebola
- Revised section on AIDS and HIV reflecting new discoveries about the way HIV enters and exits cells
- New Clinical Case Study box on rabies and influenza
- New Beneficial Microbe box on the use of *Wolbachia* to "vaccinate" mosquitoes against the dengue virus
- New critical thinking question on retroviruses
- New Visualize It! question on flu epidemics
- New fill-in-the-blank Concept Map on viral hepatitis

CHAPTER 26 INDUSTRIAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL MICROBIOLOGY

- Seven new photos
- Clarification of the terms *unripened* and *ripened cheeses* and expanded coverage of the processes of making them
- Additional coverage of biomining—the use of microbes to extract insoluble forms of metals from ore
- New Beneficial Microbes box on oil-eating microbes in the Gulf of Mexico
- Additional recent information concerning the presence of significant nitrogen fixation by deep-sea archaea associated in microbial communities with bacteria
- New figure legend question concerning food sterilization
- New Visualize It! question on nitrogen cycling
- New fill-in the blank Concept Map on microbial roles in food production

Reviewers for the Fourth Edition

I thank the hundreds of instructors and students who participated in reviews, class tests, and focus groups for earlier editions of the textbook. Your comments have informed this book from beginning to end, and I am deeply grateful. For the fourth edition, I extend my deepest appreciation to the following reviewers:

Book Reviewers

Justin R. Anderson
Radford University

Laurie Bradley
Hudson Valley Community College

Eric T. Gillock
Fort Hays State University

Julianne Grose
Brigham Young University

Nicholas Hackett
Moraine Valley Community College

Jennifer Hatchel
College of Coastal Georgia

James B. Herrick
James Madison University

Volker Mai
University of Florida

Barbara J. May
College of Saint Benedict & Saint John's University

Philip F. Mixter
Washington State University

Lorena Navarro
University of California, Davis

Robin Pankiw
Butler Community College

Karen Persky
College of DuPage

Eneida Sarahi Ramirez
Harrisburg Area Community College

Jackie Reynolds
Richland College

Ben Rowley
University of Central Arkansas

Matthew Schacht
Manhattan Area Technical College

Steven K. Schmidt
University of Colorado Boulder

James L. Shellhaas
Butler University

Christopher Thompson
Loyola University Maryland

Misty Wehling
Southeast Community College—Nebraska

Video Tutor Reviewers

Cheryl Boice
Florida Gateway College

Carroll Bottoms
Collin College

Teresa G. Fischer
Indian River State College

Leoned Gines
Shoreline Community College

Nicholas Hackett
Moraine Valley Community College

Jennifer Hatchel
College of Coastal Georgia

James B. Herrick
James Madison University

Robert Iwan
Inver Hills Community College

Mary Evelyn B. Kelley
Wayne State University

Denice D. King
Cleveland State Community College

Stacy Pfluger
Angelina College

Nancy Risner
Ivy Tech Community College

Jennifer Swartz
Pikes Peak Community College

Acknowledgments

As was the case with the previous editions, this book has truly been a team effort. I am deeply grateful to Kelsey Churchman of Pearson Science and to the team she gathered to produce the fourth edition. Kelsey; dedicated project editor Nicole McFadden; Barbara Yien, project editor of the first two editions; and Robin Pille, project editor of the third edition, helped develop the vision for this fourth edition, providing ideas to make it more effective and compelling. As project editor, Nicole also had the task of coordinating everything and keeping me on track—thank you, Nicole, for being understanding and oh so patient. Thank you, Barbara, for years of support and for introducing me to chocolate truffles. I am excited about your new adventure! I am grateful to Frank Ruggirello for his unflagging encouragement and support of my work and this book. I am also indebted to Daryl Fox, whose early support for this book never wavered.

The amazing Anita Wagner edited the manuscript thoroughly and meticulously, suggesting important changes for clarity, accuracy, and consistency. Kelly Murphy did an amazingly superb job as art development editor, helping to conceptualize new illustrations and suggesting ways to improve the art overall—thank you, Kelly. My friend Ken Probst is responsible for originally creating this book's amazingly beautiful biological illustrations. My thanks to Precision Graphics for rendering the art in this edition. Nancy Tabor expertly guided the project through production. Maureen "Mo" Spuhler continued her absolutely incredible job researching photos. I am in your debt, Mo. Rich Robison and Brent Selinger supplied many of the text's wonderful and unique micrographs. Tamara Newnam created the beautiful interior design and the stunning cover.

Thanks to Nichol Dolby of Amarillo College; Suzanne Long of Monroe Community College; Randall Harris of William Carey University; Mindy Miller-Kittrell of University of Tennessee, Knoxville; Jason Andrus of Meredith College; Tiffany Glaven of University of California, Davis; Kathryn Sutton of Clarke College; and Judy Meier Penn of Shoreline Community College for their work on the media and print supplements for this edition. Special thanks are due to Ashley Williams and Denise Wright for managing the print supplements and media supplements, to Shannon Kong in production for her work on the Instructor Resources DVD, and to Annie Wang for her management of the extraordinary array of media resources for students and instructors, especially MasteringMicrobiology. Thanks also to Nan Kemp and Jordan Roeder, RN, for their administrative, editorial, and research assistance. Bruce Owens proofread and checked pages, and Kathy Pitcoff created the index—without their help the book would be less useful. I am grateful to Neena Bali in Marketing and to the amazing Pearson sales representatives for keeping in touch with professors and students. You sales representatives inspire and humble me, and your role on the team deserves more praise than I can express here.

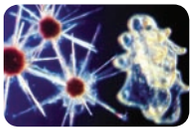
I am especially grateful to Phil Mixter of Washington State University, Mary Jane Niles of the University of San Francisco, Bronwen Steele of Estrella Mountain Community College, Jan Miller of American River College, and Jane Reece for their expertise and advice on the cell and immunology chapters.

I am also indebted to Sam Schwarzlose for his excellent work on the Video Tutor assessments, to Terry Austin for lending his technical expertise to the project, and to all Video Tutor reviewers for their contribution to this exciting pedagogical tool.

On the home front, I am grateful for Dr. Nichol Dolby and Dr. Michael Kopenits at Amarillo College and for Jennie Knapp; Elizabeth Bauman; Andy Roller; Larry Latham; and Mike Isley—all of whom were always supportive and helpful. My "secretarial staff," Michelle and Jeremy Bauman, are always here to photocopy, type, file, surf the Web, run to the UPS box, fix the computer, and provide emotional support. This work is not mine—I owe everything to others.

Robert W. Bauman
Amarillo, Texas

Table of Contents



CHAPTER 1

A Brief History of Microbiology 1

The Early Years of Microbiology 2
- What Does Life Really Look Like? 2
- How Can Microbes Be Classified? 3

The Golden Age of Microbiology 7
- Does Microbial Life Spontaneously Generate? 7
- What Causes Fermentation? 10
- What Causes Disease? 11
- How Can We Prevent Infection and Disease? 16

The Modern Age of Microbiology 18
- What Are the Basic Chemical Reactions of Life? 18
- How Do Genes Work? 19
- What Roles Do Microorganisms Play in the Environment? 20
- How Do We Defend Against Disease? 20
- What Will the Future Hold? 21

Chapter Summary 22 • Questions for Review 23
Critical Thinking 24 • Concept Mapping 25

CHAPTER 2

The Chemistry of Microbiology 26

Atoms 27
- Atomic Structure 27
- Isotopes 27
- Electron Configurations 28

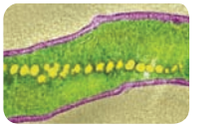
Chemical Bonds 29
- Nonpolar Covalent Bonds 30
- Polar Covalent Bonds 32
- Ionic Bonds 33
- Hydrogen Bonds 34

Chemical Reactions 34
- Synthesis Reactions 35
- Decomposition Reactions 35
- Exchange Reactions 36

Water, Acids, Bases, and Salts 36
- Water 36
- Acids and Bases 37
- Salts 38

Organic Macromolecules 39
- Functional Groups 39
- Lipids 39
- Carbohydrates 42
- Proteins 45
- Nucleic Acids 49

Chapter Summary 52 • Questions for Review 53
Critical Thinking 54 • Concept Mapping 54



CHAPTER 3

Cell Structure and Function 55

Processes of Life 56

Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview 57

External Structures of Bacterial Cells 59
- Glycocalyces 59
- Flagella 59
- Fimbriae and Pili 62

Bacterial Cell Walls 63
- Gram-Positive Bacterial Cell Walls 64
- Gram-Negative Bacterial Cell Walls 65
- Bacteria Without Cell Walls 66

Bacterial Cytoplasmic Membranes 66
- Structure 66
- Function 66

Cytoplasm of Bacteria 71
- Cytosol 72
- Inclusions 72
- Endospores 72
- Nonmembranous Organelles 74

External Structures of Archaea 75
- Glycocalyces 75
- Flagella 75
- Fimbriae and Hami 75

Archaeal Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes 76

Cytoplasm of Archaea 77

External Structure of Eukaryotic Cells 77
Glycocalyces 77

Eukaryotic Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes 77

Cytoplasm of Eukaryotes 79
Flagella 79
Cilia 80
Other Nonmembranous Organelles 81
Membranous Organelles 82
Endosymbiotic Theory 86

Chapter Summary 88 • Questions for Review 90
Critical Thinking 93 • Concept Mapping 93

CHAPTER 4
Microscopy, Staining, and Classification 94

Units of Measurement 95

Microscopy 96
General Principles of Microscopy 96
Light Microscopy 98
Electron Microscopy 102
Probe Microscopy 104

Staining 105
Preparing Specimens for Staining 107
Principles of Staining 107
Simple Stains 107
Differential Stains 108
Special Stains 110
Staining for Electron Microscopy 111

Classification and Identification of Microorganisms 112
Linnaeus and Taxonomic Categories 112
Domains 115
Taxonomic and Identifying Characteristics 115
Taxonomic Keys 119

Chapter Summary 120 • Questions for Review 121
Critical Thinking 122 • Concept Mapping 123

CHAPTER 5
Microbial Metabolism 124

Basic Chemical Reactions Underlying Metabolism 125
Catabolism and Anabolism 125
Oxidation and Reduction Reactions 126
ATP Production and Energy Storage 127
The Roles of Enzymes in Metabolism 127

Carbohydrate Catabolism 133
Glycolysis 133
Cellular Respiration 134
Alternatives to Glycolysis 142
Fermentation 142

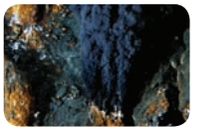
Other Catabolic Pathways 146
Lipid Catabolism 146
Protein Catabolism 147

Photosynthesis 148
Chemicals and Structures 148
Light-Dependent Reactions 148
Light-Independent Reactions 151

Other Anabolic Pathways 152
Carbohydrate Biosynthesis 153
Lipid Biosynthesis 153
Amino Acid Biosynthesis 154
Nucleotide Biosynthesis 155

Integration and Regulation of Metabolic Functions 155

Chapter Summary 158 • Questions for Review 160
Critical Thinking 162 • Concept Mapping 162



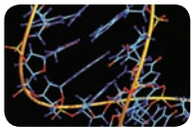
CHAPTER 6
Microbial Nutrition and Growth 163

Growth Requirements 164
Nutrients: Chemical and Energy Requirements 164
Physical Requirements 168
Associations and Biofilms 170

Culturing Microorganisms 172
Clinical Sampling 172
Obtaining Pure Cultures 174
Culture Media 175
Special Culture Techniques 180
Preserving Cultures 180

Growth of Microbial Populations 180
Generation Time 181
Mathematical Considerations in Population Growth 181
Phases of Microbial Population Growth 182
Continuous Culture in a Chemostat 183
Measuring Microbial Reproduction 184

Chapter Summary 189 • Questions for Review 190
Critical Thinking 192 • Concept Mapping 192



CHAPTER 7

Microbial Genetics 193

The Structure and Replication of Genomes 194
The Structure of Nucleic Acids 194
The Structure of Prokaryotic Genomes 194
The Structure of Eukaryotic Genomes 196
DNA Replication 198

Gene Function 203
The Relationship Between Genotype and Phenotype 203
The Transfer of Genetic Information 203
The Events in Transcription 204
Translation 207
Regulation of Genetic Expression 213

Mutations of Genes 217
Types of Mutations 217
Effects of Point Mutations 217
Mutagens 218
Frequency of Mutation 220
DNA Repair 220
Identifying Mutants, Mutagens, and Carcinogens 222

Genetic Recombination and Transfer 224
Horizontal Gene Transfer Among Prokaryotes 224
Transposons and Transposition 229

Chapter Summary 231 • Questions for Review 233
Critical Thinking 235 • Concept Mapping 235

CHAPTER 8

Recombinant DNA Technology 236

The Role of Recombinant DNA Technology in Biotechnology 237

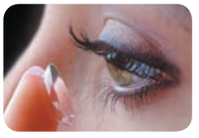
The Tools of Recombinant DNA Technology 237
Mutagens 237
The Use of Reverse Transcriptase to Synthesize cDNA 237
Synthetic Nucleic Acids 238
Restriction Enzymes 239
Vectors 241
Gene Libraries 242

Techniques of Recombinant DNA Technology 242
Multiplying DNA *In Vitro:* The Polymerase Chain Reaction 242
Selecting a Clone of Recombinant Cells 244
Separating DNA Molecules: Gel Electrophoresis and the Southern Blot 244
DNA Microarrays 245
Inserting DNA into Cells 246

Applications of Recombinant DNA Technology 246
Genetic Mapping 246
Environmental Studies 248
Pharmaceutical and Therapeutic Applications 249
Agricultural Applications 251

The Ethics and Safety of Recombinant DNA Technology 253

Chapter Summary 254 • Questions for Review 255
Critical Thinking 256 • Concept Mapping 257



CHAPTER 9

Controlling Microbial Growth in the Environment 258

Basic Principles of Microbial Control 259
Terminology of Microbial Control 259
Microbial Death Rates 260
Action of Antimicrobial Agents 261

The Selection of Microbial Control Methods 261
Factors Affecting the Efficacy of Antimicrobial Methods 261
Biosafety Levels 263

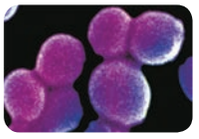
Physical Methods of Microbial Control 264
Heat-Related Methods 264
Refrigeration and Freezing 267
Desiccation and Lyophilization 267
Filtration 268
Osmotic Pressure 269
Radiation 270

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control 271
Phenol and Phenolics 272
Alcohols 272
Halogens 273
Oxidizing Agents 274
Surfactants 274
Heavy Metals 275
Aldehydes 275
Gaseous Agents 276
Enzymes 276
Antimicrobials 276

Methods for Evaluating Disinfectants and Antiseptics 276
Development of Resistant Microbes 278

Chapter Summary 279 • Questions for Review 280
Critical Thinking 282 • Concept Mapping 282

CHAPTER 10



Controlling Microbial Growth in the Body: Antimicrobial Drugs 283

The History of Antimicrobial Agents 284

Mechanisms of Antimicrobial Action 286
Inhibition of Cell Wall Synthesis 287
Inhibition of Protein Synthesis 288
Disruption of Cytoplasmic Membranes 289
Inhibition of Metabolic Pathways 290
Inhibition of Nucleic Acid Synthesis 291
Prevention of Virus Attachment 293

Clinical Considerations in Prescribing Antimicrobial Drugs 293
Spectrum of Action 293
Effectiveness 294
Routes of Administration 296
Safety and Side Effects 296

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs 297
The Development of Resistance in Populations 297
Mechanisms of Resistance 299
Multiple Resistance and Cross Resistance 300
Retarding Resistance 300

Chapter Summary 311 • Questions for Review 312
Critical Thinking 313 • Concept Mapping 314

CHAPTER 11

Characterizing and Classifying Prokaryotes 315

General Characteristics of Prokaryotic Organisms 316
Morphology of Prokaryotic Cells 316
Endospores 316
Reproduction of Prokaryotic Cells 317
Arrangements of Prokaryotic Cells 318

Modern Prokaryotic Classification 319

Survey of Archaea 320
Extremophiles 321
Methanogens 322

Survey of Bacteria 322
Deeply Branching and Phototrophic Bacteria 323
Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria 325
High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria 328
Gram-Negative Proteobacteria 330
Other Gram-Negative Bacteria 337

Chapter Summary 340 • Questions for Review 341
Critical Thinking 343 • Concept Mapping 343

CHAPTER 12

Characterizing and Classifying Eukaryotes 344

General Characteristics of Eukaryotic Organisms 345
Reproduction of Eukaryotes 345
Classification of Eukaryotic Organisms 348

Protozoa 350
Distribution of Protozoa 350
Morphology of Protozoa 350
Nutrition of Protozoa 351
Reproduction of Protozoa 351
Classification of Protozoa 352

Fungi 357
The Significance of Fungi 357
Morphology of Fungi 358
Nutrition of Fungi 359
Reproduction of Fungi 360
Classification of Fungi 361
Lichens 364

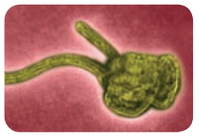
Algae 367
Distribution of Algae 367
Morphology of Algae 367
Reproduction of Algae 367
Classification of Algae 368

Water Molds 371

Other Eukaryotes of Microbiological Interest: Parasitic Helminths and Vectors 372
Arachnids 372
Insects 372

Chapter Summary 374 • Questions for Review 375
Critical Thinking 377• Concept Mapping 377

CHAPTER 13



Characterizing and Classifying Viruses, Viroids, and Prions 378

Characteristics of Viruses 379
Genetic Material of Viruses 379
Hosts of Viruses 380
Sizes of Viruses 380
Capsid Morphology 381
Viral Shapes 381
The Viral Envelope 383

Classification of Viruses 383

Viral Replication 386
Lytic Replication of Bacteriophages 386
Lysogeny 388
Replication of Animal Viruses 389

The Role of Viruses in Cancer 395

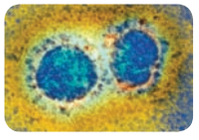
Culturing Viruses in the Laboratory 396
Culturing Viruses in Mature Organisms 396
Culturing Viruses in Embryonated Chicken Eggs 397
Culturing Viruses in Cell (Tissue) Culture 397

Are Viruses Alive? 398

Other Parasitic Particles: Viroids and Prions 398
Characteristics of Viroids 398
Characteristics of Prions 399

Chapter Summary 401 • Questions for Review 402
Critical Thinking 404 • Concept Mapping 404

CHAPTER 14



Infection, Infectious Diseases, and Epidemiology 405

Symbiotic Relationships Between Microbes and Their Hosts 406
Types of Symbiosis 406
Normal Microbiota in Hosts 407
How Normal Microbiota Become Opportunistic Pathogens 409

Reservoirs of Infectious Diseases of Humans 410
Animal Reservoirs 410
Human Carriers 411
Nonliving Reservoirs 411

The Invasion and Establishment of Microbes in Hosts: Infection 411
Exposure to Microbes: Contamination and Infection 411
Portals of Entry 411
The Role of Adhesion in Infection 413

The Nature of Infectious Disease 414
Manifestations of Disease: Symptoms, Signs, and Syndromes 414
Causation of Disease: Etiology 414
Virulence Factors of Infectious Agents 416
The Stages of Infectious Diseases 420

The Movement of Pathogens Out of Hosts: Portals of Exit 421

Modes of Infectious Disease Transmission 422
Contact Transmission 422
Vehicle Transmission 422
Vector Transmission 423

Classification of Infectious Diseases 424

Epidemiology of Infectious Diseases 425
Frequency of Disease 425
Epidemiological Studies 428
Hospital Epidemiology: Nosocomial Infections 430
Epidemiology and Public Health 432

Chapter Summary 434 • Questions for Review 435
Critical Thinking 437 • Concept Mapping 437

CHAPTER 15

Innate Immunity 438

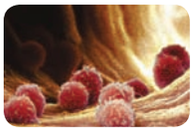
An Overview of the Body's Defenses 439

The Body's First Line of Defense 439
The Role of Skin in Innate Immunity 439
The Role of Mucous Membranes in Innate Immunity 440
The Role of the Lacrimal Apparatus in Innate Immunity 442
The Role of Normal Microbiota in Innate Immunity 442
Other First-Line Defenses 442

The Body's Second Line of Defense 443
Defense Components of Blood 443
Phagocytosis 446
Nonphagocytic Killing 448

Nonspecific Chemical Defenses Against Pathogens 448
Inflammation 454
Fever 456

Chapter Summary 458 • Questions for Review 459
Critical Thinking 461 • Concept Mapping 462



CHAPTER 16

Adaptive Immunity 463

Overview of Adaptive Immunity 464

Elements of Adaptive Immunity 465
The Tissues and Organs of the Lymphatic System 465
Antigens 467
B Lymphocytes (B Cells) and Antibodies 468
T Lymphocytes (T Cells) 473
Clonal Deletion 475
Immune Response Cytokines 477

Preparation for an Adaptive Immune Response 478
The Roles of the Major Histocompatibility Complex and Antigen-Preventing Cells 478
Antigen Processing 479

Cell-Mediated Immune Responses 480
Activation of Cytotoxic T Cell Clones and Their Functions 480
The Perforin-Granzyme Cytotoxic Pathway 482
The CD95 Cytotoxic Pathway 482
Memory T Cells 482
T Cell Regulation 483

Antibody Immune Responses 483
Inducement of T-Independent Antibody Immunity 483
Inducement of T-Dependent Antibody Immunity with Clonal Selection 484
Memory B Cells and the Establishment of Immunological Memory 486

Types of Acquired Immunity 487
Naturally Acquired Active Immunity 487
Naturally Acquired Passive Immunity 488
Artificially Acquired Active Immunity 488
Artificially Acquired Passive Immunotherapy 488

Chapter Summary 490 • Questions for Review 491
Critical Thinking 493 • Concept Mapping 493

CHAPTER 17

Immunization and Immune Testing 494

Immunization 495
Brief History of Immunization 495
Active Immunization 496
Passive Immunotherapy 501

Serological Tests That Use Antigens and Corresponding Antibodies 503
Precipitation Tests 503
Turbidimetric and Nephelometric Tests 504
Agglutination Tests 504
Neutralization Tests 505
The Complement Fixation Test 506
Labeled Antibody Tests 506
Point-of-Care Testing 510

Chapter Summary 511 • Questions for Review 512
Critical Thinking 514 • Concept Mapping 514

CHAPTER 18

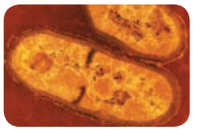
Immune Disorders 515

Hypersensitivities 516
Type I (Immediate) Hypersensitivity 516
Type II (Cytotoxic) Hypersensitivity 520
Type III (Immune Complex–Mediated) Hypersensitivity 524
Type IV (Delayed or Cell-Mediated) Hypersensitivity 526

Autoimmune Diseases 529
Causes of Autoimmune Diseases 529
Examples of Autoimmune Diseases 530

Immunodeficiency Diseases 531
Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases 531
Acquired Immunodeficiency Diseases 532

Chapter Summary 533 • Questions for Review 534
Critical Thinking 536 • Concept Mapping 537



CHAPTER 19

Pathogenic Gram-Positive Bacteria 538

***Staphylococcus* 539**
Structure and Physiology 539
Pathogenicity 539

Epidemiology 540
Staphylococcal Diseases 540
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention 542

***Streptococcus* 543**
Group A *Streptococcus: Streptococcus pyogenes* 543
Group B *Streptococcus: Streptococcus agalactiae* 546
Other Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci 547
Alpha-Hemolytic Streptococci: The Viridans Group 547
Streptococcus pneumoniae 547

***Enterococcus* 549**
Structure and Physiology 549
Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Diseases 550
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention 550

***Bacillus* 550**
Structure, Physiology, and Pathogenicity 550
Epidemiology 551
Disease 551
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention 551

***Clostridium* 552**
Clostridium perfringens 552
Clostridium difficile 553
Clostridium botulinum 553
Clostridium tetani 555

***Listeria* 556**
Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease 558
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention 558

Mycoplasmas 559
Mycoplasma pneumoniae 560
Other Mycoplasmas 560

***Corynebacterium* 561**
Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease 561
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention 561

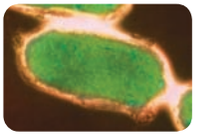
***Mycobacterium* 562**
Tuberculosis 562
Leprosy 565
Other Mycobacterial Infections 566

***Propionibacterium* 566**

***Nocardia* and *Actinomyces* 567**
Nocardia asteroides 567
Actinomyces 568

Chapter Summary 570 • Questions for Review 571
Critical Thinking 573 • Concept Mapping 573

CHAPTER 20



Pathogenic Gram-Negative Cocci and Bacilli 574

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Cocci: *Neisseria* 575
Structure and Physiology of *Neisseria* 575
The Gonococcus: *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* 575
The Meningococcus: *Neisseria meningitidis* 577

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Facultatively Anaerobic Bacilli 578
The Enterobacteriaceae: An Overview 579
Coliform Opportunistic Enterobacteriaceae 582
Noncoliform Opportunistic Enterobacteriaceae 585
Truly Pathogenic Enterobacteriaceae 585
The Pasteurellaceae 589

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Aerobic Bacilli 591
Bartonella 591
Brucella 592
Bordetella 592
Burkholderia 594
Pseudomonads 595
Francisella 597
Legionella 599
Coxiella 600

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Anaerobic Bacilli 600
Bacteroides 601
Prevotella 601

Chapter Summary 602 • Questions for Review 603
Critical Thinking 604 • Concept Mapping 605

CHAPTER 21

Rickettsias, Chlamydias, Spirochetes, and Vibrios 606

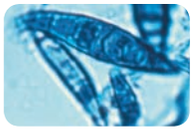
Rickettsias 607
Rickettsia 607
Orientia tsutsugamushi 610
Ehrlichia and Anaplasma 610

Chlamydias 611
Chlamydia trachomatis 612
Chlamydophila pneumoniae 614
Chlamydophila psittaci 614

Spirochetes 615
Treponema 615
Borrelia 618
Leptospira 621

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Vibrios 622
Vibrio 622
Campylobacter jejuni 624
Helicobacter pylori 625

Chapter Summary 627 • Questions for Review 628
Critical Thinking 630 • Concept Mapping 631



CHAPTER 22

Pathogenic Fungi 632

An Overview of Medical Mycology 633
The Epidemiology of Mycoses 633
Categories of Fungal Agents: True Fungal Pathogens and Opportunistic Fungi 633
Clinical Manifestations of Fungal Diseases 634
The Diagnosis of Fungal Infections 634
Antifungal Therapies 635
Antifungal Vaccines 635

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Pathogenic Fungi 636
Histoplasmosis 636
Blastomycosis 638
Coccidioidomycosis 639
Paracoccidioidomycosis 640

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Opportunistic Fungi 641
Pneumocystis Pneumonia 641
Candidiasis 642
Aspergillosis 644
Cryptococcosis 645
Zygomycoses 646
The Emergence of Fungal Opportunists in AIDS Patients 647

Superficial, Cutaneous, and Subcutaneous Mycoses 648
Superficial Mycoses 648
Cutaneous and Subcutaneous Mycoses 649

Fungal Intoxications and Allergies 651
Mycotoxicoses 652
Mushroom Poisoning (Mycetismus) 652
Allergies to Fungi 652

Chapter Summary 654 • Questions for Review 655 • Critical Thinking 657
Concept Mapping 657

CHAPTER 23

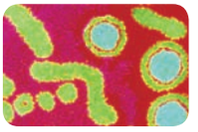
Parasitic Protozoa, Helminths, and Arthropod Vectors 658

Protozoan Parasites of Humans 659
Ciliates 660
Amoebae 660
Flagellates 661
Apicomplexans 668

Helminthic Parasites of Humans 674
Cestodes 674
Trematodes 676
Nematodes 679

Arthropod Vectors 682

Chapter Summary 683 • Questions for Review 685
Critical Thinking 688 • Concept Mapping 688



CHAPTER 24

Pathogenic DNA Viruses 689

***Poxviridae* 690**
Smallpox 690
Molluscum Contagiosum 692
Other Poxvirus Infections 692

***Herpesviridae* 693**
Infections of *Human Herpesvirus 1* and *2* 694
Human Herpesvirus 3 (Varicella-Zoster Virus) Infections 697
Human Herpesvirus 4 (Epstein-Barr Virus) Infections 699
Human Herpesvirus 5 (Cytomegalovirus) Infections 701
Other Herpesvirus Infections 701

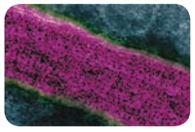
***Papillomaviridae* and *Polyomaviridae* 702**
Papillomavirus Infections 702
Polyomavirus Infections 704

***Adenoviridae* 704**

***Hepadnaviridae* 706**
Hepatitis B Infections 706
The Role of Hepatitis B Virus in Hepatic Cancer 708

***Parvoviridae* 709**

Chapter Summary 710 • Questions for Review 711
Critical Thinking 713 • Concept Mapping 714



CHAPTER 25

Pathogenic RNA Viruses 715

Naked, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae,* and *Hepeviridae* 716
- Common Colds Caused by Rhinoviruses 716
- Diseases of Enteroviruses 717
- Hepatitis A 720
- Acute Gastroenteritis 721
- Hepatitis E 721

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Togaviridae, Flaviviridae,* and *Coronaviridae* 721
- Diseases of +RNA Arboviruses 722
- Other Diseases of Enveloped +ssRNA Viruses 725

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses with Reverse Transcriptase: *Retroviridae* 728
- Oncogenic Retroviruses (*Deltaretrovirus*) 728
- Immunosuppresive Retroviruses (*Lentivirus*) and Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome 729

Enveloped, Unsegmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Paramyxoviridae, Rhabdoviridae,* and *Filoviridae* 735
- Measles 736
- Diseases of Parainfluenza Virus 737
- Mumps 738
- Disease of Respiratory Syncytial Virus 738
- Rabies 739
- Hemorrhagic Fevers 741

Enveloped, Segmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Orthomyxoviridae, Bunyaviridae,* and *Arenaviridae* 742
- Influenza 742
- Diseases of Bunyaviruses 747
- Diseases of Arenaviruses 747

Naked, Segmented dsRNA Viruses: *Reoviridae* 748
- Rotaviruses 748
- Coltiviruses 749

Chapter Summary 751 • Questions for Review 752
Critical Thinking 754 • Concept Mapping 755

CHAPTER 26

Applied and Environmental Microbiology 756

Food Microbiology 757
- The Roles of Microorganisms in Food Production 757
- The Causes and Prevention of Food Spoilage 760
- Foodborne Illnesses 764

Industrial Microbiology 764
- The Roles of Microbes in Industrial Fermentations 765
- Industrial Products of Microorganisms 765
- Water Treatment 768

Environmental Microbiology 774
- Microbial Ecology 774
- Bioremediation 776
- The Problem of Acid Mine Drainage 776
- The Roles of Microorganisms in Biogeochemical Cycles 777
- Soil Microbiology 780
- Aquatic Microbiology 782

Biological Warfare and Bioterrorism 783
- Assessing Microorganisms as Potential Agents of Warfare or Terror 783
- Known Microbial Threats 784
- Defense Against Bioterrorism 785
- The Roles of Recombinant Genetic Technology in Bioterrorism 786

Chapter Summary 787 • Questions for Review 789
Critical Thinking 791 • Concept Mapping 792

Answers to the End-of-Chapter Questions for Review A-1
Appendix A Metabloic Pathways A-5
Appendix B Some Mathematical Considerations in Microbiology A-11
Glossary G-1
Credits CR-1
Index I-1

Feature Boxes

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

Bread, Wine, and Beer! 7
Architecture-Preserving Bacteria 38
Plastics Made Perfect? 73
Glowing Viruses 112
Gold-Mining Microbes 126
A Nuclear Waste–Eating Microbe? 172
Life In a Hot Tub 201
Hard to Swallow? 273
Probiotics: The New Sheriff in Town 298
Botulism and Botox 327
A Microtube of Superglue 333
Fungi for $3600 a Pound 367
Good Viruses? Who Knew? 382
Prescription Bacteriophages? 390
A Bioterrorist Worm 409
What Happens to All That Skin? 440
Smallpox: To Vaccinate or Not to Vaccinate? 501
Microbes to the Rescue? 552
New Vessels Made from Scratch? 593
When a Bacterial Infection Is a Good Thing 597
Cocaine No-Brainer 709
Eliminating Dengue 724
Oil-Eating Microbes to the Rescue in the Gulf 776

HIGHLIGHT

"The New Normal": The Challenge of Emerging and Reemerging Diseases 8
Biofilms: Slime Matters 63
Studying Biofilms in Plastic "Rocks" 104
Glowing Bacteria 141
What's That Fishy Smell? 148
Hydrogen-Loving Microbes in Yellowstone's Hot Springs 167
Flipping the Switch: RNA Interference 217
How Do You Fix a Mosquito? 240
Vaccines on the Menu 251
Microbes in Sushi? 269
Antibacterial Soap: Too Much of a Good Thing? 278
Microbe Altruism: Why Do They Do It? 285
From Cyanobacteria to Bats to Brain Disease? 325
Your Teeth Might Make You Fat 328
The Threat of Avian Influenza 390
BCR Diversity: The Star of the Show 472
The Loss of Helper T Cells in AIDS Patients 475
Attacking Cancer with Lab-Grown T Cells 482
Why Isn't There a Cold Vaccine? 496
Can Pets Help Decrease Children's Allergy Risks? 516
When Kissing Triggers Allergic Reactions 520
SCID: "Bubble Boy" Disease 532
The Tale of "Typhoid Mary" 589
Does "Killer Mold" Exist? 653
Catch a Cold and Catch Obesity? 705
Nipah Virus: From Pigs to Humans 736
Making Blue Jeans "Green" 766
Could Bioterrorists Manufacture Viruses from Scratch? 786

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease 21
Necrotizing Fasciitis 118
Vibrio Vulnificus Infection 204
Acanthamoeba Keratitis 263
Community-Associated MRSA 298
Pertussis 335
Aspergillosis 369
Chikungunya 394

Hantavirus Pulmonary Syndrome 432
Microsporidiosis 488
Buruli Ulcer 568
Melioidosis 596
A New Cause of Spots 609
Pulmonary Blastomycosis 645
Babesiosis 672
Snail Fever Reemerges in China 679
Monkeypox 693
H1N1 Influenza 745
Norovirus Gastroenteritis 769

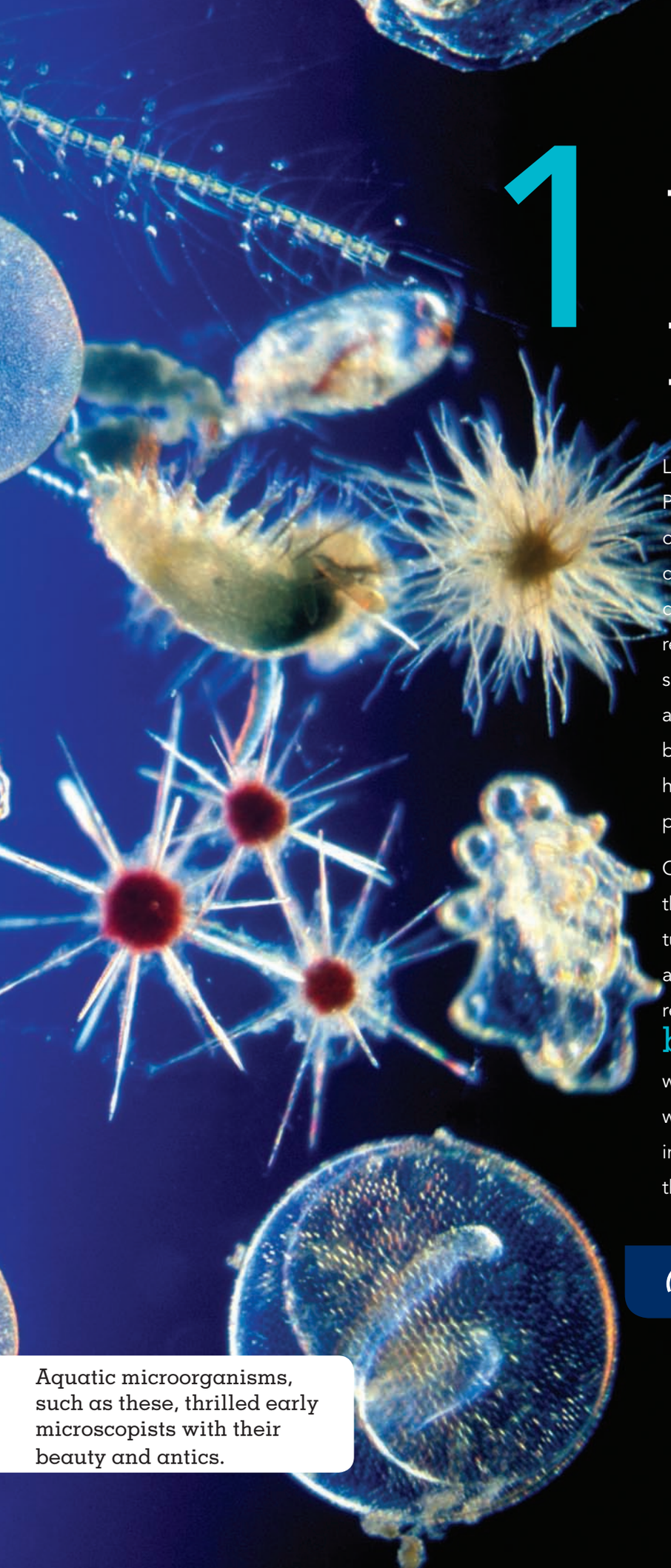
CLINICAL CASE STUDY

Remedy for Fever or Prescription for Death? 16
Can Spicy Food Cause Ulcers? 22
Raw Oysters and Antacids: A Deadly Mix? 39
The Big Game 68
Cavities Gone Wild 173
Boils in the Locker Room 182
Deadly Horizontal Gene Transfer 230
Antibiotic Overkill 284
Battling an Enemy 296
To Treat or Not to Treat? 301
Invasion from Within or Without? 400
A Deadly Carrier 411
TB in the Nursery 423
Legionella in the Produce Aisle 431
Evaluating an Abnormal CBC 446
The Stealth Invader 453
The First Time's Not the Problem 529
A Fatal Case of Methicillin-Resistant *S. Aureus* 543
This Cough Can Kill 569
A Painful Problem 582
A Heart-Rending Experience 583
A Sick Camper 591
When "Health Food" Isn't 595
Nightmare on the Island 598
Blame It on the Chiggers 611
The Case of the Lactovegetarians 626
What's Ailing the Bird Enthusiast? 641
Disease from a Cave 647
Is It Athlete's Foot? 649
A Protozoan Mystery 664
A Sick Soldier 667
A Fluke Disease? 678
Grandfather's Shingles 700
A Child with Warts 704
The Eyes Have It 708
A Threat from the Wild 739
The Sick Addict 742
Influenza 746

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Streptococcus pneumoniae 548
Clostridium botulinum 555
Neisseria gonorrhoeae 577
Escherichia coli 583
Treponema pallidum 620
Helicobacter pylori 626
Histoplasma capsulatum 637
Aspergillus 644
Giardia intestinalis 666
Plasmodium falciparum 670
Orthopoxvirus variola (Smallpox Virus) 692
Adenovirus 706
Lentivirus human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) 730
Influenzavirus A and Influenzavirus B 743

This page intentionally left blank



Aquatic microorganisms, such as these, thrilled early microscopists with their beauty and antics.

1 A Brief History of Microbiology

Life as we know it would not exist without microorganisms. Plants depend on **microorganisms** to help them obtain the nitrogen they need for survival. Animals such as cows and sheep need microbes in order to digest the many carbohydrates in their plant-based diets. **Ecosystems** rely on microorganisms to enrich soil, degrade wastes, and support life. We use microorganisms to make wine and cheese and to **develop** vaccines and antibiotics. The human body is home to trillions of microorganisms, many of which help keep us healthy. Microorganisms are an **essential** part our lives.

Of course, some microorganisms do cause harm to us, from the common cold to more serious **diseases** such as tuberculosis, malaria, and AIDS. The threats of bioterrorism and new or **reemerging** infectious diseases are real. This textbook explores all the roles—both harmful and **beneficial**—that microorganisms play in our lives, as well as their sophisticated structures and processes. We begin with a look at the history of microbiology, starting with the invention of crude microscopes that revealed, for the first time, the **existence** of this miraculous, miniature world.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Science is the study of nature that proceeds by posing questions about observations. Why are there seasons? What is the function of the nodules at the base of this plant? Why does this bread taste sour? What does plaque from between teeth look like when magnified? Why are so many crows dying this winter? What causes new diseases?

Many early written records show that people have always asked questions like these. For example, the Greek physician Hippocrates (ca. 460–ca. 377 B.C.) wondered whether there is a link between environment and disease, and the Greek historian Thucydides (ca. 460–ca. 404 B.C.) questioned why he and other survivors of the plague could have intimate contact with victims and not fall ill again. For many centuries, the answers to these and other fundamental questions about the nature of life remained largely unanswered. But about 350 years ago, the invention of the microscope began to provide some clues.

In this chapter we'll see how one man's determination to answer a fundamental question about the nature of life—What does life really look like?—led to the birth of a new science called *microbiology*. We'll then see how the search for answers to other questions, such as those concerning spontaneous generation, the reason fermentation occurs, and the cause of disease, prompted advances in this new science. Finally, we'll look briefly at some of the key questions microbiologists are asking today.

▲ **Figure 1.1 Antoni van Leeuwenhoek.** Leeuwenhoek reported the existence of protozoa in 1674 and of bacteria in 1676. *Why did Leeuwenhoek discover protozoa before bacteria?*

Figure 1.1 *Protozoa are generally larger than bacteria.*

The Early Years of Microbiology

The early years of microbiology brought the first observations of microbial life and the initial efforts to organize them into logical classifications.

What Does Life Really Look Like?

Learning Outcomes

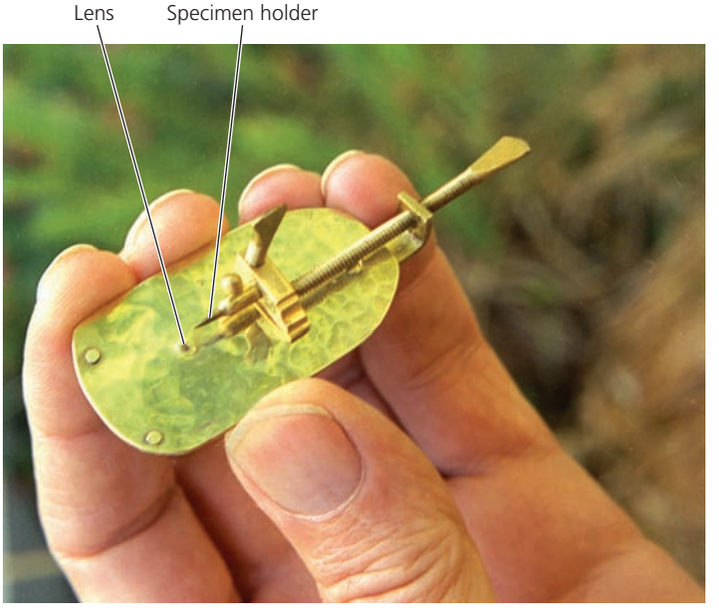
1.1 Describe the world-changing scientific contributions of Leeuwenhoek.

1.2 Define microbes in the words of Leeuwenhoek and as we know them today.

A few people have changed the world of science forever. We've all heard of Galileo, Newton, and Einstein, but the list also includes Antoni van Leeuwenhoek (lā´vĕn-huk;1632–1723), a Dutch tailor, merchant, and lens grinder, and the man who first discovered the bacterial world **(Figure 1.1)**.

Leeuwenhoek was born in Delft, the Netherlands, and lived most of his 90 years in the city of his birth. What set Leeuwenhoek apart from most other men of his generation was an insatiable curiosity coupled with an almost stubborn desire to do everything for himself. His journey to fame began simply enough, when as a cloth merchant he needed to examine the quality of cloth. Rather than merely buying one of the magnifying lenses already available, he learned to make glass lenses of his own **(Figure 1.2)**. Soon he began asking, "What does it really look like?" of everything in his world: the stinger of a bee, the brain of a fly, the leg of a louse, a drop of blood, flakes of his own skin. To find answers, he spent hours examining, reexamining, and recording every detail of each object he observed.

Making and looking through his simple microscopes, most really no more than magnifying glasses, became the overwhelming passion of his life. His enthusiasm and dedication are



▲ **Figure 1.2 Reproduction of Leeuwenhoek's microscope.** This simple device is little more than a magnifying glass with screws for manipulating the specimen, yet with it, Leeuwenhoek changed the way we see our world. The lens, which is convex on both sides, is about the size of a pinhead. The objective to be viewed was mounted either directly on the specimen holder or inside a small glass tube, which was then mounted on the specimen holder.

evident from the fact that he sometimes personally extracted the metal for his microscope from ore. Further, he often made a new microscope for each specimen, which remained mounted so that he could view it again and again. Then one day, he turned a lens onto a drop of water. We don't know what he expected to see, but certainly he saw more than he had anticipated. As he reported to the Royal Society of London[1] in 1674, he was surprised and delighted by

> some green streaks, spirally wound serpent-wise, and orderly arranged. . . . Among these there were, besides, very many little animalcules, some were round, while others a bit bigger consisted of an oval. On these last, I saw two little legs near the head, and two little fins at the hind most end of the body. . . . And the motion of most of these animalcules in the water was so swift, and so various, upwards, downwards, and round about, that 'twas wonderful to see.

Leeuwenhoek had discovered a previously unknown microbial world, which today we know to be populated with tiny animals, fungi, algae, and single-celled protozoa **(Figure 1.3)**. In a later report to the Royal Society, he noted that

> the number of these animals in the plaque of a man's teeth, are so many that I believe they exceed the number of men in a kingdom. . . . I found too many living animals therein, that I guess there might have been in a quantity of matter no bigger than the 1/100 part of a [grain of] sand.

From the figure accompanying this report and the precise description of the size of these organisms from between his teeth, we know that Leeuwenhoek was reporting the existence of bacteria. By the end of the 19th century, Leeuwenhoek's "beasties," as he sometimes dubbed them, were called **microorganisms,** and today we also know them as **microbes.** Both terms include all organisms that are too small to be seen without a microscope.

Because of the quality of his microscopes, his profound observational skills, his detailed reports over a 50-year period, and his report of the discovery of many types of microorganisms, Antoni van Leeuwenhoek was elected to the Royal Society in 1680. He and Isaac Newton were probably the most famous scientists of their time.

▲ **Figure 1.3 The microbial world.** Leeuwenhoek reported seeing a scene very much like this, full of numerous fantastic, cavorting creatures.

How Can Microbes Be Classified?

Learning Outcomes

1.3 List six groups of microorganisms.
1.4 Explain why protozoa, algae, and nonmicrobial parasitic worms are studied in microbiology.
1.5 Differentiate prokaryotic from eukaryotic organisms.

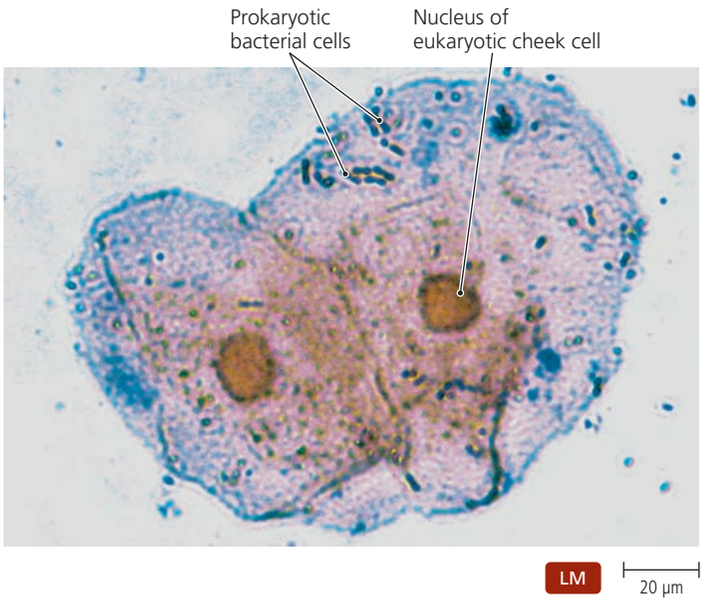
Shortly after Leeuwenhoek made his discoveries, the Swedish botanist Carolus Linnaeus (1707–1778) developed a **taxonomic system**—a system for naming plants and animals and grouping similar organisms together. For instance, Linnaeus and other scientists of the period grouped all organisms into either the animal kingdom or the plant kingdom. Today, biologists still use this basic system, but they have modified Linnaeus's scheme by adding categories that more realistically reflect the relationships among organisms. For example, scientists no longer classify yeasts, molds, and mushrooms as plants but instead as fungi. (We examine taxonomic schemes in more detail in Chapter 4.)

The microorganisms that Leeuwenhoek described can be grouped into six basic categories: bacteria, archaea, fungi, protozoa, algae, and small multicellular animals. The only type of microbes not described by Leeuwenhoek are *viruses,*[2] which are too small to be seen without an electron microscope. We briefly consider organisms in the first five categories in the following sections.

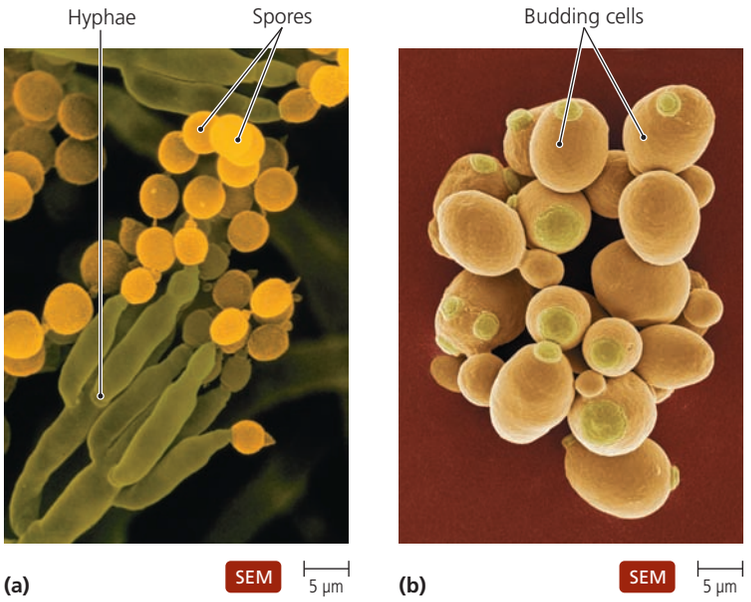
Bacteria and Archaea

Bacteria and **archaea** are **prokaryotic,**[3] meaning that they lack nuclei; that is, their genes are not surrounded by a membrane. Bacterial cell walls are composed of a polysaccharide called *peptidoglycan.* (Some bacteria, however, lack cell walls.) The cell walls of archaea lack peptidoglycan and instead are composed of other chemicals. Members of both groups reproduce asexually. (Chapters 3, 4, and 11 examine other differences between bacteria and archaea, and Chapters 19–21 discuss pathogenic [disease-causing] bacteria.)

[1]The Royal Society of London for the Promotion of Natural Knowledge, granted a royal charter in 1662, is one of the older and more prestigious scientific groups in Europe.
[2]Technically, viruses are not "organisms" because they neither replicate themselves nor carry on the chemical reactions of living things.
[3]From Greek *pro*, meaning "before," and *karyon*, meaning "kernel" (which in this case refers to the nucleus of a cell).



▲ **Figure 1.4 Cells of the bacterium *Streptococcus* (dark blue) and two human cheek cells.** Notice the size difference.



▲ **Figure 1.5 Fungi. (a)** The mold *Penicillium chrysogenum*, which produces penicillin, has long filamentous hyphae that intertwine to form its body. It reproduces by spores. **(b)** The yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Yeasts are round to oval and typically reproduce by budding.

Most archaea and bacteria are much smaller than eukaryotic cells **(Figure 1.4)**. They live singly or in pairs, chains, or clusters in almost every habitat containing sufficient moisture. Archaea are often found in extreme environments, such as the highly saline and arsenic-rich Mono Lake in California, acidic hot springs in Yellowstone National Park, and oxygen-depleted mud at the bottom of swamps. No archaea are known to cause disease.

Though bacteria may have a poor reputation in our world, the great majority do not cause disease in animals, humans, or crops. Indeed, bacteria are beneficial to us in many ways. For example, bacteria (and fungi) degrade dead plants and animals to release phosphorus, sulfur, nitrogen, and carbon back into the air, soil, and water to be used by new generations of organisms. Without microbial recyclers, the world would be buried under the corpses of uncountable dead organisms. Without beneficial bacteria, our bodies would be much more susceptible to disease.

Fungi

Fungi (fŭn´jī)[4] cells are **eukaryotic;**[5] that is, each of their cells contains a nucleus composed of genetic material surrounded by a distinct membrane. Fungi are different from plants because they obtain their food from other organisms (rather than making it for themselves). They differ from animals by having cell walls.

Microscopic fungi include some molds and yeasts. **Molds** are typically multicellular organisms that grow as long filaments that intertwine to make up the body of the mold. Molds reproduce by sexual and asexual spores, which are cells that produce a new individual without fusing with another cell **(Figure 1.5a)**. The cottony growths on cheese, bread, and jams are molds. *Penicillium chrysogenum* (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm krī-so´jĕn-ŭm) is a mold that produces penicillin.

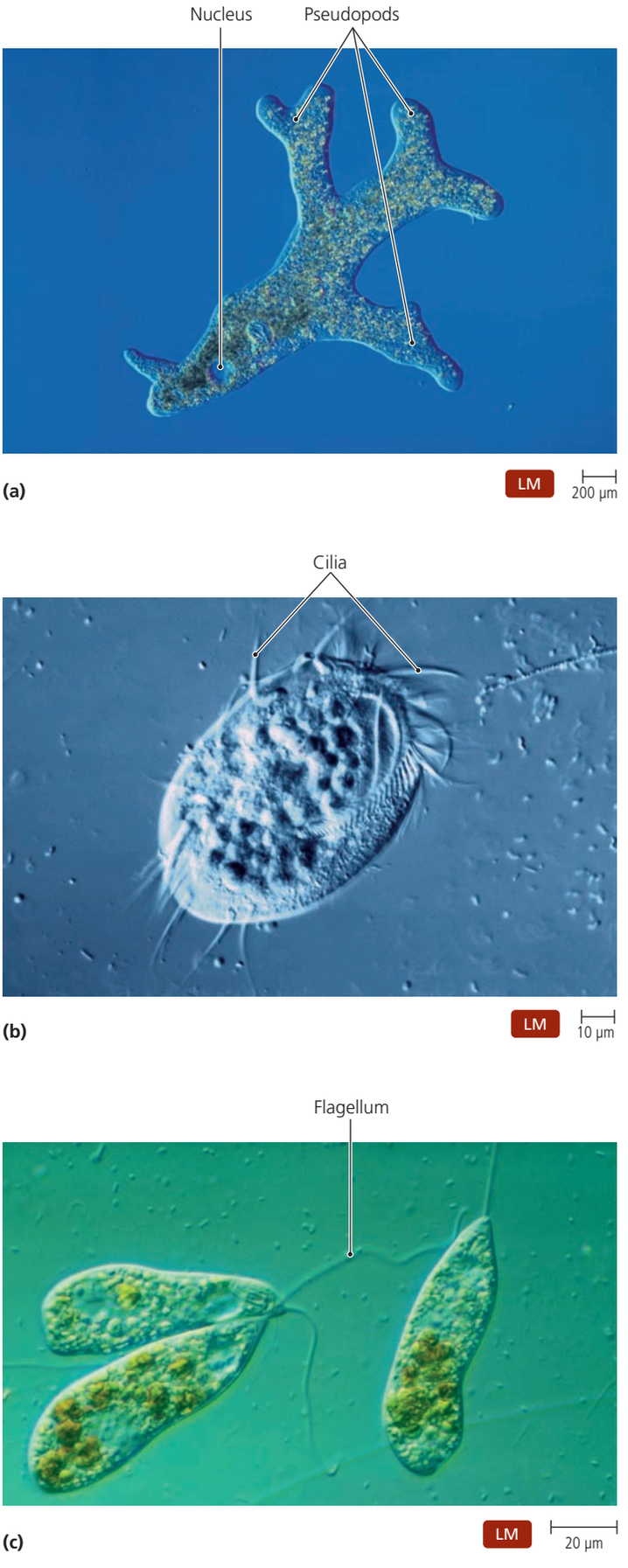
Yeasts are unicellular and typically oval to round. They reproduce asexually by *budding*, a process in which a daughter cell grows off the mother cell. Some yeasts also produce sexual spores. An example of a useful yeast is *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz se-ri-vis´ē-ī; **Figure 1.5b**), which causes bread to rise and produces alcohol from sugar (see **Beneficial Microbes: Bread, Wine, and Beer!** on p. 7). *Candida albicans* (kan´did-ă al´bi-kanz) is a yeast that causes most cases of yeast infections in women.

(Fungi and their significance in the environment, in food production, and as agents of human disease are discussed in Chapters 12 and 22.)

Protozoa

Protozoa are single-celled eukaryotes that are similar to animals in their nutritional needs and cellular structure. In fact, *protozoa* is Greek for "first animals," though scientists today classify them in their own groups rather than as animals. Most protozoa are capable of locomotion, and one way scientists categorize protozoa is according to their locomotive structures: *pseudopods*,[6] *cilia*,[7] or *flagella*.[8] Pseudopods are extensions of a cell that flow in the direction of travel **(Figure 1.6a)**. Cilia are numerous, short protrusions of a cell that beat rhythmically to propel the protozoan through its environment **(Figure 1.6b)**. Flagella are also extensions of a cell but are fewer, longer, and more whip-like than cilia **(Figure 1.6c)**. Some protozoa, such as the malaria-causing *Plasmodium* (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm), are nonmotile in their mature forms.

[4]Plural of the Latin *fungus*, meaning "mushroom."
[5]From Greek *eu*, meaning "true," and *karyon*, meaning "kernel."
[6]Plural Greek *pseudes*, meaning "false," and *podos*, meaning "foot."
[7]Plural of the Latin *cilium*, meaning "eyelid."
[8]Plural of the Latin *flagellum*, meaning "whip."



▶ **Figure 1.6 Locomotive structures of protozoa. (a)** Pseudopods are cellular extensions used for locomotion and feeding, as seen in *Amoeba proteus*. **(b)** Cilia are short, motile, hairlike extrusions, as seen in *Euplotes*. **(c)** Flagella are whiplike extensions that are less numerous and longer than cilia, as seen in *Peranema*. *How do cilia and flagella differ?*

Figure 1.6 *Cilia are short, numerous, and often cover the cell, whereas flagella are long and relatively few in number.*

Protozoa typically live freely in water, but some live inside animal hosts, where they can cause disease. Most protozoa reproduce asexually, though some are sexual as well. (Chapters 12 and 23 further examine protozoa.)

Algae

Algae[9] are unicellular or multicellular *photosynthetic* eukaryotes; that is, like plants, they make their own food from carbon dioxide and water using energy from sunlight. They differ from plants in the relative simplicity of their reproductive structures. Algae are categorized on the basis of their pigmentation and the composition of their cell walls.

Large algae, commonly called seaweeds and kelps, are common in the world's oceans. Chemicals from their gelatinous cell walls are used as thickeners and emulsifiers in many food and cosmetic products as well as in a hardening agent called *agar* in microbiological laboratory media.

Unicellular algae **(Figure 1.7)** are common in freshwater ponds, streams, and lakes and in the oceans as well. They are the major food of small aquatic and marine animals and provide most of the world's oxygen as a by-product of photosynthesis. The glasslike cell walls of diatoms provide grit for many polishing compounds. (Chapter 12 discusses other aspects of the biology of algae.)

CRITICAL **THINKING**

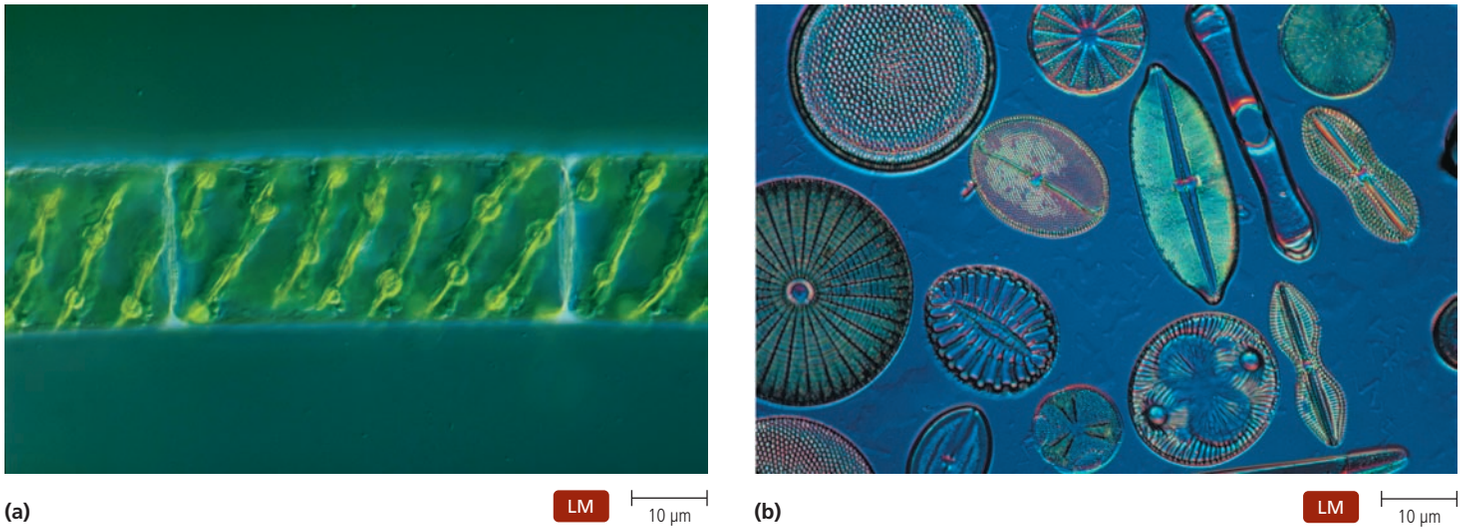
A few bacteria produce disease because they derive nutrition from human cells and produce toxic wastes. Algae do not typically cause disease. Why not?

Other Organisms of Importance to Microbiologists

Microbiologists also study parasitic worms, which range in size from microscopic forms **(Figure 1.8)** to adult tapeworms over 7 meters (approximately 23 feet) in length. Even though most of these worms are not microscopic as adults, many of them cause diseases that were studied by early microbiologists. Further, laboratory technicians diagnose infections of parasitic worms by finding microscopic eggs and immature stages in blood, fecal, urine, and lymph specimens. (Chapter 23 discusses parasitic worms.)

The only type of microbe that remained hidden from Leeuwenhoek and other early microbiologists was the virus,

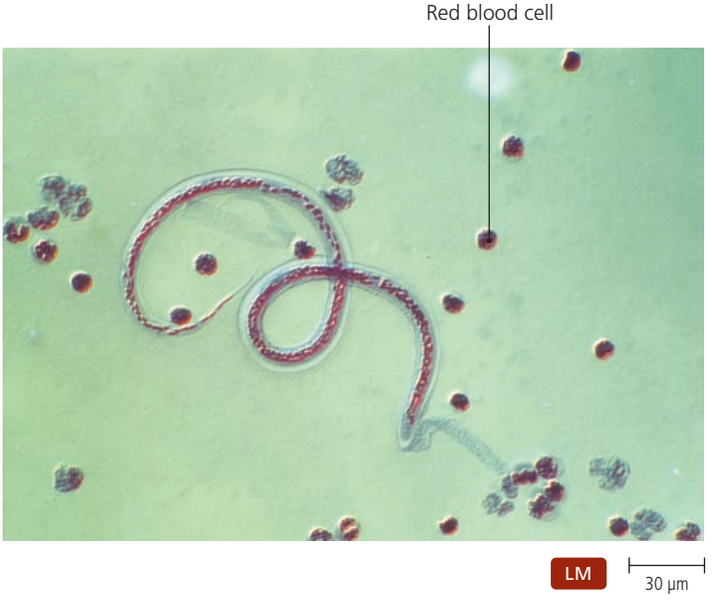
[9]Plural of the Latin *alga*, meaning "seaweed."



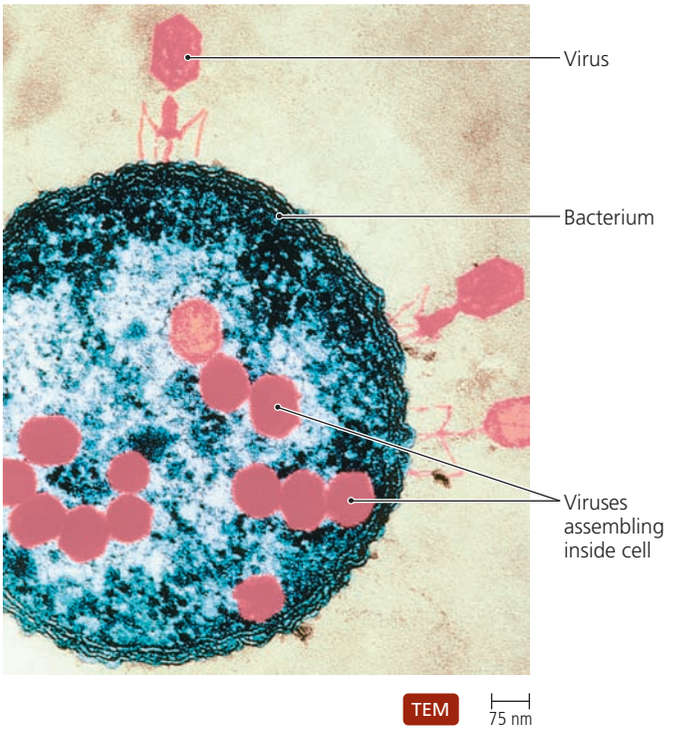
▲ **Figure 1.7 Algae. (a)** *Spirogyra.* These microscopic algae grow as chains of cells containing helical photosynthetic structures. **(b)** Diatoms. These beautiful algae have glasslike cell walls.

which is much smaller than the smallest prokaryote and is not visible by light microscopy **(Figure 1.9)**. Viruses could not be seen until the electron microscope was invented in 1932. All viruses are acellular (not composed of cells) obligatory parasites composed of small amounts of genetic material (either DNA or RNA) surrounded by a protein coat. (Chapter 13 examines the general characteristics of viruses, and Chapters 24 and 25 discuss specific viral pathogens.)

Leeuwenhoek first reported the existence of most types of microorganisms in the late 1600s, but microbiology did not develop significantly as a field of study for almost two centuries. There were a number of reasons for this delay. First, Leeuwenhoek was a suspicious and secretive man. Though he built over 400 microscopes, he never trained an apprentice, and he never sold or gave away a microscope. In fact, he never let *anyone*—not his family or such distinguished visitors as the czar of Russia—so much as peek through his very best instruments. When Leeuwenhoek died, the secret of creating superior microscopes was lost. It took almost 100 years for scientists to make microscopes of equivalent quality.



▲ **Figure 1.8 An immature stage of a parasitic worm in blood.**



▲ **Figure 1.9 A colorized electron microscope image of viruses infecting a bacterium.** Viruses, which are acellular obligatory parasites, are too small to be seen with a light microscope. Notice how small the viruses are compared to the bacterium.

Another reason that microbiology was slow to develop as a science is that scientists in the 1700s considered microbes to be curiosities of nature and insignificant to human affairs. But in the late 1800s, scientists began to adopt a new philosophy, one that demanded experimental evidence rather than mere acceptance of traditional knowledge. This fresh philosophical foundation, accompanied by improved microscopes, new laboratory techniques, and a drive to answer a series of pivotal questions, propelled microbiology to the forefront as a scientific discipline.

The Golden Age of Microbiology

Learning Outcome

1.6 List and answer four questions that propelled research in what is called the "Golden Age of Microbiology."

For about 50 years, during what is sometimes called the "Golden Age of Microbiology," scientists and the blossoming field of microbiology were driven by the search for answers to the following four questions:

- Is spontaneous generation of microbial life possible?
- What causes fermentation?
- What causes disease?
- How can we prevent infection and disease?

Competition among scientists who were striving to be the first to answer these questions drove exploration and discovery in microbiology during the late 1800s and early 1900s. These scientists' discoveries and the fields of study they initiated continue to shape the course of microbiological research today.

In the next sections we consider these questions and how the great scientists accumulated the experimental evidence that answered them.

Does Microbial Life Spontaneously Generate?

Learning Outcomes

1.7 Identify the scientists who argued in favor of spontaneous generation.

1.8 Compare and contrast the investigations of Redi, Needham, Spallanzani, and Pasteur concerning spontaneous generation.

1.9 List four steps in the scientific method of investigation.

A dry lake bed has lain under the relentless North African desert sun for eight long months. The cracks in the baked, parched mud are wider than a man's hand. There is no sign of life anywhere in the scorched terrain. With the abruptness characteristic of desert storms, rain falls in a torrent, and a raging flood of roiling water and mud crashes down the dry streambed and fills

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

BREAD, WINE, AND BEER!

Microorganisms play important roles in people's lives; for example, pathogens have undeniably altered the course of history. However, what may be the most important microbiological event—one that has had a greater impact on culture and society than that of any disease or epidemic—was the domestication of the yeast used by bakers and brewers. Its name, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, means "sugar fungus [that makes] beer."

The earliest record of the use of yeast comes from Persia (modern Iran), where archaeologists have found the remains of grapes and wine preservatives in pottery vessels more than 7000 years old. Brewing of beer likely started even earlier, its beginnings undocumented. The earliest examples of leavened bread are from Egypt and show that bread making was routine about 6000 years ago. Before that time, bread was unleavened and flat.

It is likely that making wine and brewing beer occurred earlier than the use of leavened bread because *Saccharomyces* is naturally found on grapes, which can begin to ferment while still on the vine. Historians hypothesize that early bakers may have exposed bread dough to circulating air, hoping that the invisible and inexplicable "fermentation principle" would inoculate the bread. Another hypothesis is that bakers learned to add small amounts of beer or wine to the bread, intentionally inoculating the dough with yeast. Of course, all those years before Leeuwenhoek and Pasteur, no one knew that the fermenting ingredient of wine was a living organism.

Besides its role in baking and in making alcoholic beverages, *S. cerevisiae* is an important tool for the study of cells. Scientists use yeast to delve into the mysteries of cellular function, organization, and genetics, making *Saccharomyces* the most intensely studied eukaryote. In fact, molecular biologists published the complete sequence of the genes of *S. cerevisiae* in 1996—a first for any eukaryotic cell.

Today, scientists are working toward using *S. cerevisiae* in novel ways. For example, some nutritionists and gastroenterologists are examining the use of *Saccharomyces* as a *probiotic*, that is, a microorganism intentionally taken to ward off disease and promote good health. Research suggests that the yeast helps treat diarrhea and colitis and may even help prevent these and other gastrointestinal diseases.

▲ **Figure 1.10 Redi's experiments.** When the flask remained unsealed, maggots covered the meat within a few days. When the flask was sealed, flies were kept away, and no maggots appeared on the meat. When the flask opening was covered with gauze, flies were kept away, and no maggots appeared on the meat, although a few maggots appeared on top of the gauze.

the lake. Within hours, what had been a lifeless, dry mudflat becomes a pool of water teeming with billions of shrimp; by the next day it is home to hundreds of toads. Where did these animals come from?

Many philosophers and scientists of past ages thought that living things arose via three processes: through asexual reproduction, through sexual reproduction, or from nonliving matter. The appearance of shrimp and toads in the mud of what so recently was a dry lake bed was seen as an example of the third process, which came to be known as *abiogenesis*,[10] or **spontaneous generation.** The theory of spontaneous generation as promulgated by Aristotle (384–322 B.C.) was widely accepted for over 2000 years because it seemed to explain a variety of commonly observed phenomena, such as the appearance of maggots on spoiling meat. However, the validity of the theory came under challenge in the 17th century.

Redi's Experiments

In the late 1600s, the Italian physician Francesco Redi (1626–1697) demonstrated by a series of experiments that when decaying meat was kept isolated from flies, maggots never developed, whereas meat exposed to flies was soon infested **(Figure 1.10)**. As a result of experiments such as these, scientists began to doubt Aristotle's theory and adopt the view that animals come only from other animals.

Needham's Experiments

The debate over spontaneous generation was rekindled when Leeuwenhoek discovered microbes and showed that they appeared after a few days in freshly collected rainwater. Though scientists agreed that larger animals could not arise spontaneously, they disagreed about Leeuwenhoek's "wee animalcules";

[10]From Greek *a*, meaning "not"; *bios*, meaning "life"; and *genein*, meaning "to produce."

HIGHLIGHT

"THE NEW NORMAL": THE CHALLENGE OF EMERGING AND REEMERGING DISEASES

Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). Monkeypox. West Nile encephalitis. These and diseases like them are emerging diseases—ones that appear in a population for the first time. Among them are H1N1 influenza ("swine flu"); Nipah encephalitis, a highly fatal disease carried by pigs; and mosquito-borne chikungunya, which causes severe joint pain and sometimes death. Indeed, unfamiliar diseases have become "the new normal" for health care workers, according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Meanwhile, diseases once thought to be near eradication, such as polio, whooping cough, and tuberculosis, have reemerged in troubling outbreaks. Other near-vanquished pathogens such as smallpox or anthrax may become potential weapons in bioterrorist attacks.

How do emerging and reemerging diseases arise? Some are introduced to humans as we move into remote jungles and contact infected animals, some are carried by insects whose range is spreading as climate changes, and some take advantage of the AIDS crisis, infecting immunocompromised patients. In other cases, previously harmless microbes acquire new genes that allow them to be infective and cause disease. Some emerging pathogens spread with the speed of jet planes carrying infected people around the globe, and still others arise when previously treatable microbes develop resistance to our antibiotics.

However they arise, scientists are monitoring emerging and reemerging diseases that may develop into the next generation of high-profile infectious diseases. Throughout this textbook, you will encounter many boxed discussions of such emerging and reemerging diseases.

Workers dumping poultry suspected of harboring avian influenza virus.

surely they did not have parents, did they? They must arise spontaneously.

The proponents of spontaneous generation pointed to the careful demonstrations of British investigator John T. Needham (1713–1781). He boiled beef gravy and infusions[11] of plant material in vials, which he then tightly sealed with corks. Some days later, Needham observed that the vials were cloudy, and examination revealed an abundance of "microscopical animals of most dimensions." As he explained it, there must be a "life force" that causes inanimate matter to spontaneously come to life because he had heated the vials sufficiently to kill everything. Needham's experiments so impressed the Royal Society that they elected him a member.

Spallanzani's Experiments

Then, in 1799, the Italian Catholic priest and scientist Lazzaro Spallanzani (1729–1799) reported results that contradicted Needham's findings. Spallanzani boiled infusions for almost an hour and sealed the vials by melting their slender necks closed. His infusions remained clear unless he broke the seal and exposed the infusion to air, after which they became cloudy with microorganisms. He concluded three things:

- Needham either had failed to heat his vials sufficiently to kill all microbes or had not sealed them tightly enough.
- Microorganisms exist in the air and can contaminate experiments.
- Spontaneous generation of microorganisms does not occur; all living things arise from other living things.

Although Spallanzani's experiments would appear to have settled the controversy once and for all, it proved difficult to dethrone a theory that had held sway for 2000 years, especially when so notable a man as Aristotle had propounded it. One of the criticisms of Spallanzani's work was that his sealed vials did not allow enough air for organisms to thrive; another objection was that his prolonged heating destroyed the "life force." The debate continued until the French chemist Louis Pasteur **(Figure 1.11)** conducted experiments that finally laid the theory of spontaneous generation to rest.

Pasteur's Experiments

Louis Pasteur (1822–1895) was an indefatigable worker who pushed himself as hard as he pushed others. As he wrote his sisters, "To *will* is a great thing dear sisters, for Action and Work usually follow Will, and almost always Work is accompanied by Success. These three things, Work, Will, Success, fill human existence. Will opens the door to success both brilliant and happy; Work passes these doors, and at the end of the journey Success comes to crown one's efforts." When his wife complained about his long hours in the laboratory, he replied, "I will lead you to fame."

[11] Infusions are broths made by heating water containing plant or animal material.

▲ **Figure 1.11 Louis Pasteur.** Often called the Father of Microbiology, he disproved spontaneous generation. In this depiction, Pasteur examines some bacterial cultures.

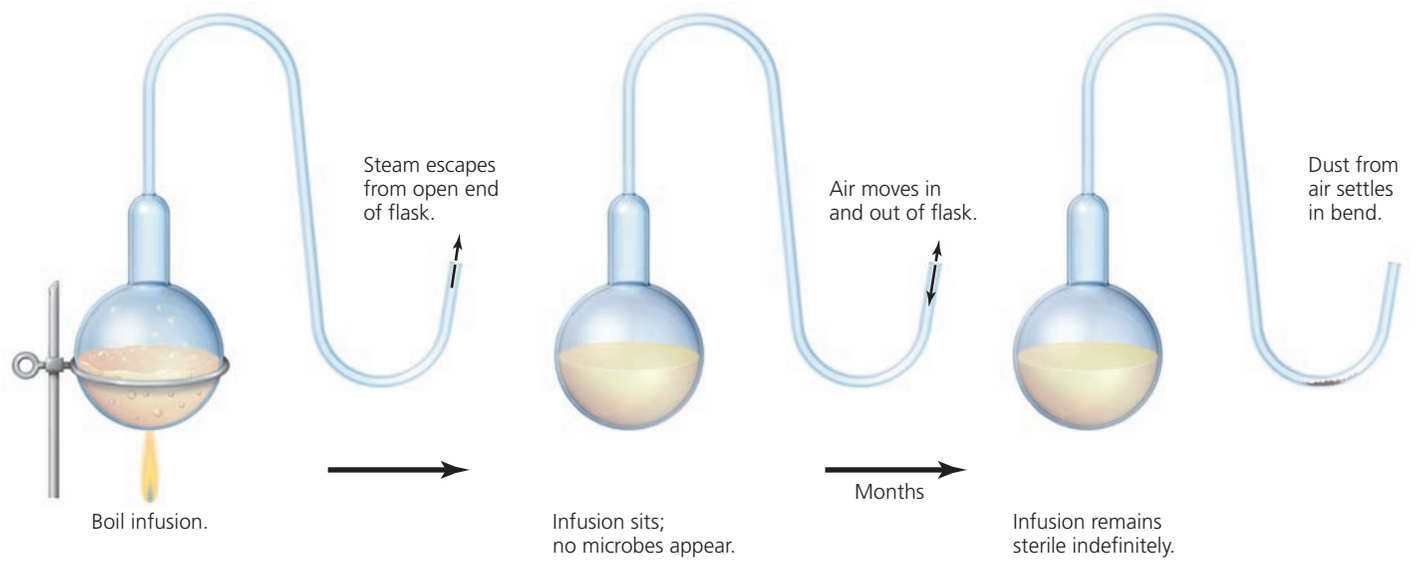
Pasteur's determination and hard work are apparent in his investigations of spontaneous generation. Like Spallanzani, he boiled infusions long enough to kill everything. But instead of sealing the flasks, he bent their necks into an S-shape, which allowed air to enter while preventing the introduction of dust and microbes into the broth **(Figure 1.12)**.

Crowded for space and lacking funds, he improvised an incubator in the opening under a staircase. Day after day he crawled on hands and knees into this incommodious space and examined his flasks for the cloudiness that would indicate the presence of living organisms. In 1861, he reported that his "swan-necked flasks" remained free of microbes even 18 months later. Because the flasks contained all the nutrients (including air) known to be required by living things, he concluded, "Never will spontaneous generation recover from the mortal blow of this simple experiment."

Pasteur followed this experiment with demonstrations that microbes in the air were the "parents" of Needham's microorganisms. He broke the necks off some flasks, exposing the liquid in them directly to the air, and he carefully tilted others so that the liquid touched the dust that had accumulated in their necks. The next day, all of these flasks were cloudy with microbes. He concluded that the microbes in the liquid were the progeny of microbes that had been on the dust particles in the air.

The Scientific Method

The debate over spontaneous generation led in part to the development of a generalized **scientific method** by which questions are answered through observations of the outcomes of carefully controlled experiments instead of by conjecture or according to the opinions of any authority figure. The scientific method, which provides a framework for conducting an investigation



▲ **Figure 1.12** **Pasteur's experiments with "swan-necked flasks."** As long as the flask remained upright, no microbial growth appeared in the infusion.

rather than a rigid set of specific "rules," consists of four basic steps **(Figure 1.13)**:

1. A group of observations leads a scientist to ask a question about some phenomenon.
2. The scientist generates a hypothesis—that is, a potential answer to the question.
3. The scientist designs and conducts an experiment to test the hypothesis.
4. Based on the observed results of the experiment, the scientist either accepts, rejects, or modifies the hypothesis.

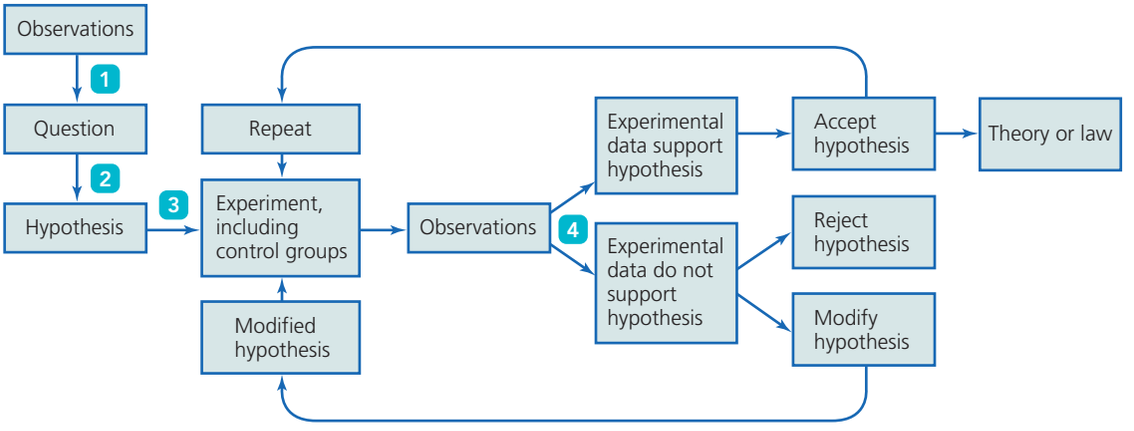
The scientist then returns to earlier steps in the method, either modifying hypotheses and then testing them or repeatedly testing accepted hypotheses until the evidence for a hypothesis is convincing (Figure 1.13). Accepted hypotheses that explain many observations and are repeatedly verified by numerous scientists over many years are called *theories* or *laws*. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***The Scientific Method***

Note that for the scientific community to accept experiments (and their results) as valid, they must include appropriate *control groups*—groups that are treated exactly the same as the other groups in the experiment except for the one variable that the experiment is designed to test. In Pasteur's experiments on spontaneous generation, for example, his "control flasks" were the sterile infusion composed of all the nutrients living things need as well as air made available through the flasks' "swan necks." His "experimental flasks" for testing his hypothesis were exposed to exactly the same conditions *plus* contact with the dust in the bend in the neck. Because exposure to the dust was the *only* difference between the control and experimental groups, Pasteur was able to conclude that the microbes growing in the infusion arrived on the dust particles.

What Causes Fermentation?

Learning Outcomes

1.10 Discuss the significance of Pasteur's fermentation experiments to our world today.



▲ **Figure 1.13** **The scientific method, which forms a framework for scientific research.**

1.11 Explain why Pasteur may be considered the Father of Microbiology.
1.12 Identify the scientist whose experiments led to the field of biochemistry and the study of metabolism.

The controversy over spontaneous generation was largely a philosophical exercise among men who conducted research to gain basic scientific knowledge and not to apply the knowledge they gained. However, the second question that moved microbial studies forward in the 1800s had tremendous practical applications.

Our story resumes in 19th-century France, where spoiled, acidic wine was threatening the livelihood of many grape growers. This led to a fundamental question, "What causes the fermentation of grape juice into wine?" This question was so important to vintners that they funded research concerning fermentation, hoping scientists could develop methods to promote the production of alcohol and prevent spoilage by acid during fermentation.

Pasteur's Experiments

Scientists of the 1800s used the word *fermentation* to mean not only the formation of alcohol from sugar but also other chemical reactions, such as the formation of lactic acid, the putrefaction of meat, and the decomposition of waste. Many scientists asserted that air caused fermentation reactions; others insisted that living organisms were responsible.

The debate over the cause of fermentation reactions was linked to the debate over spontaneous generation. Some scientists proposed that the yeasts observed in fermenting juices were nonliving globules of chemicals and gases. Others thought that yeasts were alive and were spontaneously generated during fermentation. Still others asserted that yeasts not only were living organisms but also caused fermentation.

Pasteur conducted a series of careful observations and experiments that answered the question, "What causes fermentation?" First, he observed yeast cells growing and budding in grape juice and conducted experiments showing that they arise only from other yeast cells. Then, by sealing some sterile flasks containing grape juice and yeast and by leaving others open to the air, he demonstrated that yeast could grow with or without oxygen; that is, he discovered that yeasts are *facultative anaerobes*[12]—organisms that can live with or without oxygen. Finally, by introducing bacteria and yeast cells into different flasks of sterile grape juice, he proved that bacteria ferment grape juice to produce acids and that yeast cells ferment grape juice to produce alcohol **(Figure 1.14)**.

Pasteur's discovery that *anaerobic* bacteria fermented grape juice into acids suggested a method for preventing the spoilage of wine. His name became a household word when he developed *pasteurization,* a process of heating the grape juice just enough to kill most contaminating bacteria without changing the juice's basic qualities so that it could then be inoculated with yeast to ensure that alcohol fermentation occurred. Pasteur thus began the field of **industrial microbiology** (or **biotechnology**) in which microbes are intentionally used to manufacture products (Table 1.1 on p. 13; see also Chapter 26). Today pasteurization is used routinely on milk to eliminate pathogens that cause such diseases as bovine tuberculosis and brucellosis; it is also used to eliminate pathogens in juices and other beverages.

These are just a few of the many experiments Pasteur conducted with microbes. Although a few of Pasteur's successes can be attributed to the superior microscopes available in the late 1800s, his genius is clearly evident in his carefully designed and straightforward experiments. Because of his many, varied, and significant accomplishments in working with microbes, Pasteur may be considered the Father of Microbiology.

Buchner's Experiments

Studies on fermentation began with the idea that fermentation reactions were strictly chemical and did not involve living organisms. This idea was supplanted by Pasteur's work showing that fermentation proceeded only when living cells were present and that different types of microorganisms growing under varied conditions produced different end products.

In 1897, the German scientist Eduard Buchner (1860–1917) resurrected the chemical explanation by showing that fermentation does not require living cells. Buchner's experiments demonstrated the presence of *enzymes,* which are cell-produced proteins that promote chemical reactions. Buchner's work began the field of **biochemistry** and the study of **metabolism,** a term that refers to the sum of all chemical reactions within an organism.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How might the debate over spontaneous generation have been different if Buchner had conducted his experiments in 1857 instead of 1897?

What Causes Disease?

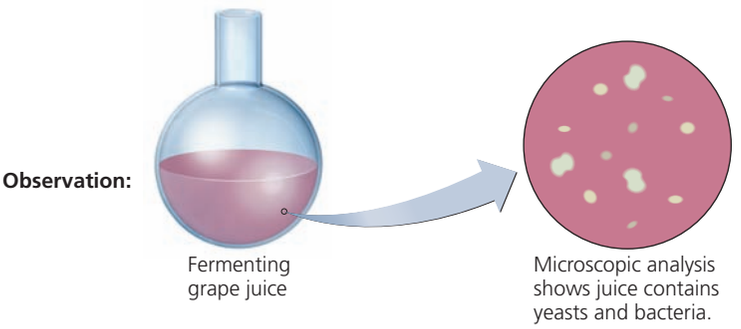
Learning Outcomes

1.13 List at least seven contributions made by Koch to the field of microbiology.
1.14 List the four steps that must be taken to prove the cause of an infectious disease.
1.15 Describe the contribution of Gram to the field of microbiology.

You are a physician in London, and it is August 1854. It is past midnight, and you have been visiting patients since before dawn. As you enter the room of your next patient, you observe with frustration and despair that this case is like hundreds of others you and your colleagues have attended in the neighborhood over the past month.

A five-year-old boy with a vacant stare lies in bed listlessly. As you watch, he is suddenly gripped by severe abdominal cramps, and his gastrointestinal tract empties in an explosion

[12]From Greek *an*, meaning "not"; *aer,* meaning "air" (i.e., oxygen); and *bios*, meaning "life."



Hypothesis	Experiment	Observation	Conclusion
I. Spontaneous fermentation occurs.	Day 1: Flasks of grape juice are heated sufficiently to kill all microbes. Day 2. Flask is sealed.	No fermentation; juice remains free of microbes.	Reject hypothesis I.
II. Air ferments grape juice.	Flask remains open to air via curved neck.	No fermentation; juice remains free of microbes.	Reject hypothesis II.
III. Bacteria ferment grape juice into alcohol.	Juice in flask is inoculated with bacteria and sealed.	Bacteria reproduce; acids are produced.	Modify hypothesis III; bacteria ferment grape juice into acids.
IV. Yeasts ferment grape juice into alcohol.	Juice in flask is inoculated with yeast and sealed.	Yeasts reproduce; alcohol is produced.	Accept hypothesis IV; yeasts ferment grape juice into alcohol.

▲ Figure 1.14 How Pasteur applied the scientific method in investigating the nature of fermentation. After observing that fermenting grape juice contained both yeasts and bacteria, Pasteur hypothesized that these organisms cause fermentation. On eliminating the possibility that fermentation could occur spontaneously or be caused by air (hypotheses I and II), he concluded that fermentation requires the presence of living cells. The results of additional experiments (those testing hypotheses III and IV) indicated that bacteria ferment grape juice to produce acids and that yeasts ferment grape juice to produce alcohol. *Which of Pasteur's flasks was the control?*

Figure 1.14 The sealed flask that remained free of microorganisms served as the control.

of watery diarrhea. The voided fluid is clear, colorless, odorless, and streaked with thin flecks of white mucus, reminiscent of water poured off a pot of cooking rice. His anxious mother changes his bedclothes as his father gives him a sip of water, but it is of little use. With a heavy heart you confirm the parents' fear—their child has cholera, and there is nothing you can do. He will likely die before morning. As you despondently turn to go, the question that has haunted you for two months is foremost in your mind: What causes such a disease?

The third question that propelled the advance of microbiology concerned disease, defined generally as any abnormal condition in the body. Prior to the 1800s, disease was attributed to various factors, including evil spirits, astrological signs, imbalances in body fluids, and foul vapors. Although the Italian philosopher Girolamo Fracastoro (1478–1553) conjectured as early as 1546 that "germs[13] of contagion" cause disease, the idea that germs might be invisible living organisms awaited Leeuwenhoek's investigations 130 years later.

[13]From Latin *germen*, meaning "sprout."

TABLE 1.1 Some Industrial Uses of Microbes

Product or Process	Contribution of Microorganism
Foods and Beverages	
Cheese	Flavoring and ripening produced by bacteria and fungi; flavors dependent on the source of milk and the type of microorganism
Alcoholic beverages	Alcohol produced by bacteria or yeast by fermentation of sugars in fruit juice or grain
Soy sauce	Produced by fungal fermentation of soybeans
Vinegar	Produced by bacterial fermentation of sugar
Yogurt	Produced by certain bacteria growing in milk
Sour cream	Produced by bacteria growing in cream
Artificial sweetener	Amino acids synthesized by bacteria from sugar
Bread	Rising of dough produced by action of yeast; sourdough results from bacteria-produced acids
Other Products	
Antibiotics	Produced by bacteria and fungi
Human growth hormone, human insulin	Produced by genetically engineered bacteria
Laundry enzymes	Isolated from bacteria
Vitamins	Isolated from bacteria
Diatomaceous earth (in polishes and buffing compounds)	Composed of cell walls of microscopic algae
Pest control chemicals	Insect pests killed or inhibited by insect-destroying bacteria
Drain opener	Protein-digesting and fat-digesting enzymes produced by bacteria

Pasteur's discovery that bacteria are responsible for spoiling wine led naturally to his hypothesis in 1857 that microorganisms are also responsible for diseases. This idea came to be known as the **germ theory of disease.** Because a particular disease is typically accompanied by the same symptoms in all affected individuals, early investigators suspected that diseases such as cholera, tuberculosis, and anthrax are each caused by a specific germ, called a **pathogen.**[14] Today we know that some diseases are genetic and that allergic reactions and environmental toxins cause others, so the germ theory applies only to *infectious*[15] *diseases.*

Just as Pasteur was the chief investigator in disproving spontaneous generation and determining the cause of fermentation, so Robert Koch (1843–1910) dominated **etiology**[16] (the study of causation of disease) **(Figure 1.15)**.

Koch's Experiments

Koch was a country doctor in Germany when he began a race with Pasteur to discover the cause of anthrax, which is a potentially fatal disease, primarily of animals, in which toxins produce ulceration of the skin. Anthrax, which can spread to humans, caused untold financial losses to farmers and ranchers in the 1800s.

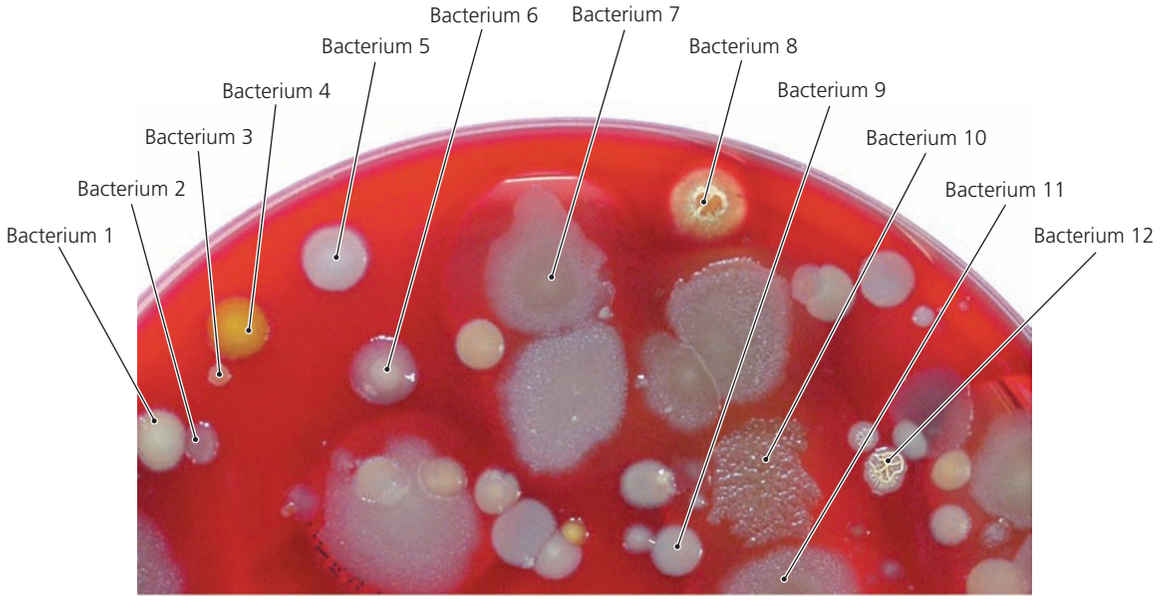
▲ **Figure 1.15 Robert Koch.** Koch was instrumental in modifying the scientific method to prove that a given pathogen caused a specific disease.

Koch carefully examined the blood of infected animals, and in every case he identified a rod-shaped bacterium[17] that formed chains. He observed the formation of resting stages (endospores) within the bacterial cells and showed that the endospores always produced anthrax when they were injected into mice. This was the first time that a bacterium was proven to cause a disease. As a result of his successful work on anthrax, Koch moved to Berlin and was given facilities and funding to continue his research.

Heartened by his success, Koch turned his attention to other diseases. He had been fortunate when he chose anthrax for his initial investigations, because anthrax bacteria are quite large and easily identified with the microscopes of that time. However, most bacteria are very small, and different types exhibit few or no visible differences. Koch puzzled how he was to distinguish among these bacteria.

He solved the problem by taking specimens (e.g., blood, pus, or sputum) from disease victims and then smearing the specimens onto a solid surface such as a slice of potato or a gelatin medium. He then waited for bacteria and fungi present in the specimen to multiply and form distinct colonies **(Figure 1.16)**. Koch hypothesized that each colony consisted of the progeny of a single cell. He then inoculated samples from each colony into laboratory animals to see which caused disease. Koch's method of isolation is a standard technique in microbiological and medical labs to this day, though *agar,*

[14]From Greek *pathos*, meaning "disease," and *genein*, meaning "to produce."
[15]From Latin *inficere*, meaning "to taint" (i.e., with a pathogen).
[16]From Greek *aitia*, meaning "cause," and *logos*, meaning "word" or "study."
[17]Now known as *Bacillus anthracis*—Latin for "the rod of anthrax."



◀ Figure 1.16 Bacterial colonies on a solid surface (agar). Differences in colony size, shape, and color indicate the presence of different species. Such differences allowed Koch to isolate specific types of microbes that could be tested for their ability to cause disease.

a gel derived from red seaweed, is used instead of gelatin or potato.

Koch and his colleagues are also responsible for many other advances in laboratory microbiology, including the following:

- Simple staining techniques for bacterial cells and flagella
- The first photomicrograph of bacteria
- The first photograph of bacteria in diseased tissue
- Techniques for estimating the number of bacteria in a solution based on the number of colonies that form after inoculation onto a solid surface
- The use of steam to sterilize growth media
- The use of Petri[18] dishes to hold solid growth media
- Laboratory techniques such as transferring bacteria between media using a metal wire that has been heat-sterilized in a flame
- Elucidation of bacteria as distinct species

CRITICAL **THINKING**

French microbiologists, led by Pasteur, tried to isolate a single bacterium by diluting liquid media until only a single type of bacterium could be microscopically observed in a sample of the diluted medium. What advantages does Koch's method have over the French method?

Koch's Postulates

After discovering the anthrax bacterium, Koch continued to search for disease agents. In two pivotal scientific publications in 1882 and 1884, he announced that the cause of tuberculosis was a rod-shaped bacterium, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis). In 1905 he received the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for this work.

[18]Named for Richard Petri, Koch's assistant, who invented them in 1887.

In his publications on tuberculosis, Koch elucidated a series of steps that must be taken to prove the cause of any infectious disease. These steps, now known as **Koch's postulates,** are one of his important contributions to microbiology. His postulates (which we discuss in more detail in Chapter 14) are the following:

1. The suspected causative agent must be found in every case of the disease and be absent from healthy hosts.
2. The agent must be isolated and grown outside the host.
3. When the agent is introduced to a healthy, susceptible host, the host must get the disease.
4. The same agent must be found in the diseased experimental host.

We use the term *suspected causative agent* because it is merely "suspected" until the postulates have been fulfilled, and "agent" can refer to any fungus, protozoan, bacterium, virus, or other pathogen. There are practical and ethical limits in the application of Koch's postulates, but in almost every case they must be satisfied before the cause of an infectious disease is proven.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why aren't Koch's postulates always useful in proving the cause of a given disease? Consider a variety of diseases, such as cholera, pneumonia, Alzheimer's, AIDS, Down syndrome, and lung cancer.

During microbiology's "Golden Age," other scientists used Koch's postulates as well as laboratory techniques introduced by Koch and Pasteur to discover the causes of most protozoan and bacterial diseases as well as some viral diseases. For example, Charles Laveran (1845–1922) showed that a protozoan is the cause of malaria, and Edwin Klebs (1834–1913) described the bacterium that causes diphtheria. Dmitri Ivanowski (1864–1920) and Martinus Beijerinck (1851–1931) discovered that a certain disease in tobacco plants is caused by a pathogen that passes through

TABLE 1.2 Other Notable Scientists of the "Golden Age of Microbiology" and the Agents of Disease They Discovered

Scientist	Year	Disease	Agent
Albert Neisser	1879	Gonorrhea	*Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (bacterium)
Charles Laveran	1880	Malaria	*Plasmodium* species (protozoa)
Carl Eberth	1880	Typhoid fever	*Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi (bacterium)
Edwin Klebs	1883	Diphtheria	*Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (bacterium)
Theodore Escherich	1884	Traveler's diarrhea Bladder infection	*Escherichia coli* (bacterium)
Albert Fraenkel	1884	Pneumonia	*Streptococcus pneumoniae* (bacterium)
David Bruce	1887	Undulant fever (brucellosis)	*Brucella melitensis* (bacterium)
Anton Weichselbaum	1887	Meningococcal meningitis	*Neisseria meningitidis* (bacterium)
A. A. Gartner	1888	Salmonellosis (form of food poisoning)	*Salmonella* species (bacterium)
Shibasaburo Kitasato	1889	Tetanus	*Clostridium tetani* (bacterium)
Dmitri Ivanowski and	1892	Tobacco mosaic disease	*Tobamovirus tobacco mosaic virus*
Martinus Beijerinck	1898		
William Welch and George Nuttall	1892	Gas gangrene	*Clostridium perfringens* (bacterium)
Alexandre Yersin and Shibasaburo Kitasato	1894	Bubonic plague	*Yersinia pestis* (bacterium)
Kiyoshi Shiga	1898	Shigellosis (a type of severe diarrhea)	*Shigella dysenteriae* (bacterium)
Walter Reed	1900	Yellow fever	*Flavivirus yellow fever virus*
Robert Forde and Joseph Dutton	1902	African sleeping sickness	*Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* (protozoan)

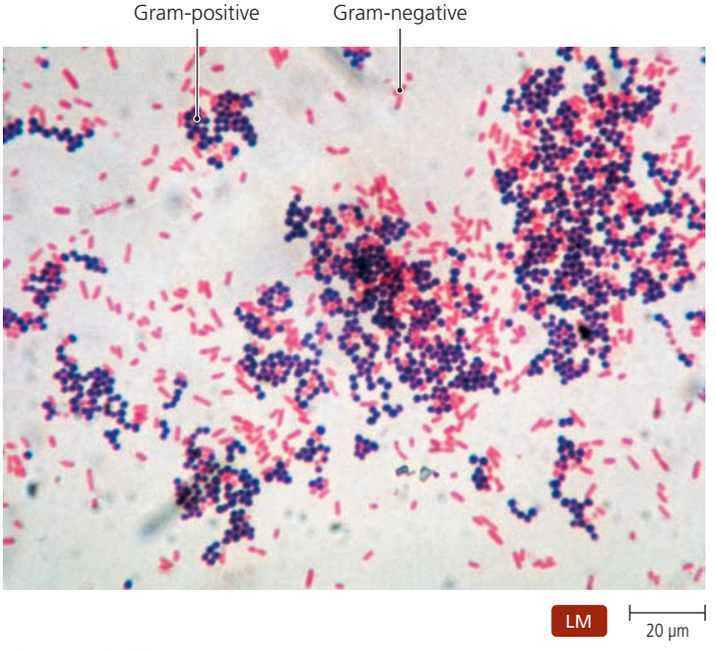
filters with such extremely small pores that bacteria cannot pass through. Beijerinck, recognizing that the pathogen was not bacterial, called it a *filterable virus.* Now such pathogens are simply called *viruses.* As previously noted, viruses could not be seen until electron microscopes were invented in 1932. The American physician Walter Reed (1851–1902) proved in 1900 that viruses can cause such diseases as yellow fever in humans. (Chapter 13 deals with *virology,* and Chapters 24 and 25 deal with viral diseases.)

A partial list of scientists and the pathogens they discovered is provided in Table 1.2.

Gram's Stain

The first of Koch's postulates demands that the suspected agent be found in every case of a given disease, which presupposes that minute microbes can be seen and identified. However, because most microbes are colorless and difficult to see, scientists began to use dyes to stain them and make them more visible under the microscope.

Though Koch reported a simple staining technique in 1877, the Danish scientist Hans Christian Gram (1853–1938) developed a more important staining technique in 1884. His procedure, which involves the application of a series of dyes, leaves some microbes purple and others pink. We now label the first group of cells as *Gram positive* and the second as *Gram negative,* and we use the Gram procedure to separate bacteria into these two large groups (Figure 1.17).



▲ **Figure 1.17 Results of Gram staining.** Gram-positive cells (in this case *Staphylococcus aureus*) are purple; Gram-negative cells (in this case *Escherichia coli*) are pink.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

REMEDY FOR FEVER OR PRESCRIPTION FOR DEATH?

In the late 18th century, Philadelphia was one of the larger and wealthier cities in the United States and served as the capital. That changed in 1793. The city had an unusually wet spring, which left behind swamps and stagnant pools that became breeding grounds for mosquitoes. Later, refugees from the slave revolution in Haiti fled to Philadelphia, carrying the yellow fever virus. In late August 1793, a female *Aedes aegypti* mosquito bit an infected refugee and then bit a healthy Philadelphian. This began a yellow fever epidemic that killed 10% of the city's population within three months and forced another 30% to flee for their lives. Victims suffered from high fever, nausea, skin eruptions, black vomit, and jaundice.

The treatment, however, was worse than the disease: physicians administered potions to purge the victims' intestines and drained up to four-fifths of their patients' blood in the mistaken belief the bloodletting would stem fever. These attempted remedies were more harmful than helpful, leaving the patients tired, weak, and unable to fight the infection. Without effective treatments, the epidemic stopped only when the first frost arrived.

1. People who left the city seemed to have milder cases of yellow fever or avoided the infection altogether. Explain why.
2. The story mentions that the coming of the first frost brought an end to the epidemic. Discuss the possible reasons why this would provide at least temporary relief from the epidemic.

The **Gram stain** is still the most widely used staining technique. It is one of the first steps carried out when bacteria are being identified, and it is one of the procedures you will learn in microbiology lab. (Chapter 4 discusses the full procedure.)

How Can We Prevent Infection and Disease?

Learning Outcomes

1.16 Identify six health care practitioners who did pioneering research in the areas of public health microbiology and epidemiology.

1.17 Name two scientists whose work with vaccines began the field of immunology.

1.18 Describe the quest for a "magic bullet."

The last great question that drove microbiological research during the "Golden Age" was how to prevent infectious diseases. Though some methods of preventing or limiting disease were discovered even before it was understood that microorganisms caused contagious diseases, great advances occurred only after Pasteur and Koch showed that life comes from life and that microorganisms can cause diseases.

In the mid-1800s, modern principles of hygiene, such as those involving sewage and water treatment, personal cleanliness, and pest control, were not widely practiced. Typically, medical personnel and health care facilities lacked adequate cleanliness. *Nosocomial*[19] *infections*—infections acquired in a health care setting—were rampant. For example, surgical patients frequently succumbed to gangrene acquired while under their doctor's care, and many women who gave birth in hospitals died from puerperal[20] fever. Six health care practitioners who were especially instrumental in changing the way health care is delivered were Semmelweis, Lister, Nightingale, Snow, Jenner, and Ehrlich.

Semmelweis and Handwashing

Ignaz Semmelweis (1818–1865) was a physician on the obstetric ward of a teaching hospital in Vienna. In about 1848, he observed that women giving birth in the wing where medical students were trained died from puerperal fever at a rate 20 times higher than the mortality rates of either women attended by midwives in an adjoining wing or women who gave birth at home.

Though Pasteur had not yet elaborated his germ theory of disease, Semmelweis hypothesized that medical students carried "cadaver particles" from their autopsy studies into the delivery rooms and that these "particles" resulted in puerperal fever. Semmelweis gained support for his hypothesis when a doctor who sliced his finger during an autopsy died after showing symptoms similar to those of puerperal fever. Today we know that the primary cause of puerperal fever is a bacterium in the genus *Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs; see Figure 1.4), which is usually harmless on the skin or in the mouth but causes severe complications when it enters the blood.

Semmelweis began requiring medical students to wash their hands with chlorinated lime water, a substance long used to eliminate the smell of cadavers. Mortality in the subsequent year dropped from 18.3% to 1.3%. Despite his success, Semmelweis was ridiculed by the director of the hospital and eventually was forced to leave. He returned to his native Hungary, where his insistence on handwashing met with general approval when it continued to produce higher patient survival rates.

Though his impressive record made it easier for later doctors to institute changes, Semmelweis was unsuccessful in gaining

[19] From Greek *nosos*, meaning "disease," and *komein*, meaning "to care for" (relating to a hospital).
[20] From Latin *puerperus*, meaning "childbirth."

support for his method from most European doctors. He became severely depressed and was committed to a mental hospital, where he died from an infection of *Streptococcus,* the very organism he had fought for so long.

Lister's Antiseptic Technique

Shortly after Semmelweis was rejected in Vienna, the English physician Joseph Lister (1827–1912) modified and advanced the idea of *antisepsis*[21] in health care settings. As a surgeon, Lister was aware of the dreadful consequences that resulted from the infection of wounds. Therefore, he began spraying wounds, surgical incisions, and dressings with carbolic acid (phenol), a chemical that had previously proven effective in reducing odor and decay in sewage. Like Semmelweis, he initially met with some resistance, but when he showed that it reduced deaths among his patients by two-thirds, his method was accepted into common practice. In this manner, Lister vindicated Semmelweis, became the founder of antiseptic surgery, and opened new fields of research into antisepsis and disinfection.

Nightingale and Nursing

Florence Nightingale (1820–1910) **(Figure 1.18)** was a dedicated English nurse who introduced cleanliness and other antiseptic techniques into nursing practice. She was instrumental in setting standards of hygiene that saved innumerable lives during the Crimean War of 1854–1856. One of her first requisitions in the military hospital was for 200 scrubbing brushes, which she and her assistants used diligently in the squalid wards. She next arranged for each patient's filthy clothes and dressings to be replaced or cleaned at a different location, thus removing many sources of infection. She thoroughly documented statistical comparisons to show that poor food and unsanitary conditions in the hospitals were responsible for the deaths of many soldiers.

After the war, Nightingale returned to England, where she actively exerted political pressure to reform hospitals and implement public health policies. Perhaps her greatest achievements were in nursing education. For example, she founded the Nightingale School for Nurses—the first of its kind in the world.

Snow and Epidemiology

Another English physician, John Snow (1813–1858), also played a key role in setting standards for good public hygiene to prevent the spread of infectious diseases. Snow had been studying the propagation of cholera and suspected that the disease was spread by a contaminating agent in water. In 1854, he mapped the occurrence of cholera cases during an epidemic in London and showed that they centered around a public water supply on Broad Street.

Though Snow did not know the cause of cholera, his careful documentation of the epidemic highlighted the critical need for adequate sewage treatment and a pure water supply. His study was the foundation for two branches of microbiology—**infection control** and **epidemiology,**[22] which is the study of the occurrence, distribution, and spread of disease in humans.

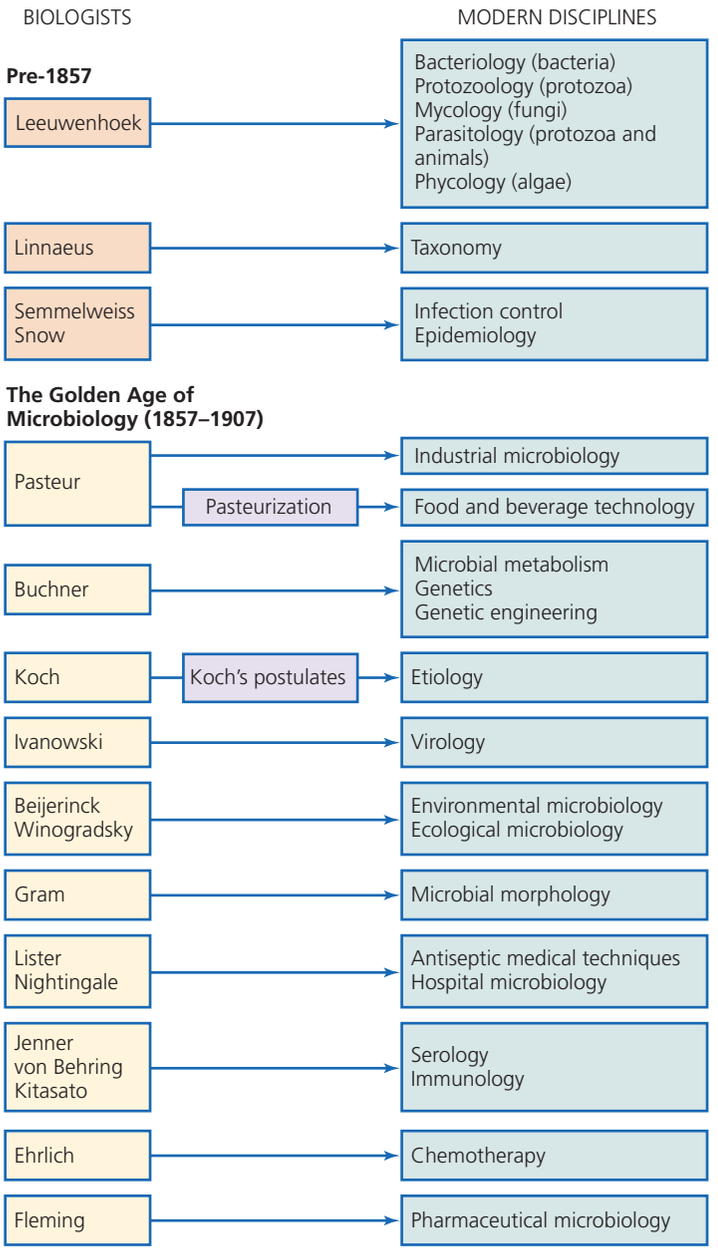
▲ **Figure 1.18 Florence Nightingale.** The founder of modern nursing, she was influential in introducing antiseptic technique into nursing practice.

Jenner's Vaccine

In 1796, the English physician Edward Jenner (1749–1823) tested the hypothesis that a mild disease called cowpox provided protection against potentially fatal smallpox. After he intentionally inoculated a boy with pus collected from a milkmaid's cowpox lesion, the boy developed cowpox and survived. When Jenner then infected the boy with smallpox pus, he found that the boy had become immune[23] to smallpox. (Note that experiments that intentionally expose human subjects to deadly pathogens are unethical.) In 1798, Jenner reported similar results from additional experiments, demonstrating the validity of the procedure he named *vaccination* after *Vaccinia virus,*[24] the virus that causes cowpox. Because vaccination stimulates a long-lasting response by the body's protective immune system, the term *immunization* is often used synonymously today. Jenner began the field of **immunology**—the study of the body's specific defenses against pathogens. (Chapters 16–18 discuss immunology.)

Pasteur later capitalized on Jenner's work by producing weakened strains of various pathogens for use in preventing the serious diseases they cause. In honor of Jenner's work with cowpox, Pasteur used the term *vaccine* to refer to all weakened, protective strains of pathogens. He subsequently developed successful vaccines against fowl cholera, anthrax, and rabies.

[21] From Greek *anti*, meaning "against," and *sepein*, meaning "putrefaction."
[22] From Greek *epi*, meaning "upon"; *demos*, meaning "people"; and *logos*, meaning "word" or "study."
[23] From Latin *immunis*, meaning "free."
[24] From Latin *vacca*, meaning "cow."



▲ **Figure 1.19** **Some of the many scientific disciplines and applications that arose from the pioneering work of scientists just before and around the time of the Golden Age of Microbiology.**

Ehrlich's "Magic Bullets"

Gram's discovery that stained bacteria could be differentiated into two types suggested to the German microbiologist Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915) that chemicals could be used to kill microorganisms differentially. To investigate this idea, Ehrlich undertook an exhaustive survey of chemicals to find a "magic bullet" that would destroy pathogens while remaining nontoxic to humans. By 1908, he had discovered a chemical active against the causative agent of syphilis, though the arsenic-based drug was toxic to humans. His discoveries began the branch of medical microbiology known as **chemotherapy.**

In summary, the Golden Age of Microbiology was a time when researchers proved that living things come from other living things, that microorganisms can cause fermentation and disease, and that certain procedures and chemicals can limit, prevent, and cure infectious diseases. These discoveries were made by scientists who applied the scientific method to biological investigation, and they led to an explosion of knowledge in a number of scientific disciplines **(Figure 1.19)**.

The Modern Age of Microbiology

Learning Outcome

1.19 List four major questions that drive microbiological investigations today.

The vast increase in the number of microbiological investigations and in scientific knowledge during the 1800s opened new fields of science, including disciplines called environmental science, immunology, epidemiology, chemotherapy, and genetic engineering **(Table 1.3)**. Microorganisms played a significant role in the development of these disciplines because microorganisms are relatively easy to grow, take up little space, and are available by the trillions. Much of what has been learned about microbes also applies to other organisms, including humans. In the rest of this text we examine advances made in these branches of microbiology, though it would require thousands of books this size to deal with all that is known.

Once the developing science of microbiology had successfully answered questions about spontaneous generation, fermentation, and disease, additional questions arose in each branch of the new science. Since the early 20th century, microbiologists have worked to answer these new questions. In this section, we briefly consider some of the 20th century's overarching questions in both basic and applied research. The chapter concludes with a look at some of the questions that might propel microbiological research for the next 50 years.

What Are the Basic Chemical Reactions of Life?

Biochemistry is the study of metabolism—that is, the chemical reactions that occur in living organisms. Biochemistry began with Pasteur's work on fermentation by yeast and bacteria and with Buchner's discovery of enzymes in yeast extract, but by the early 1900s, many scientists thought that the metabolic reactions of microbes had little to do with the metabolism of plants and animals.

In contrast, microbiologists Albert Kluyver (1888–1956) and his student C. B. van Niel (1897–1985) proposed that basic biochemical reactions are shared by all living things, that these reactions are relatively few in number, and that their primary feature is the transfer of electrons and hydrogen ions. In adopting this view, scientists could use microbes as model systems to answer questions about metabolism in all organisms. Research during the 20th century validated this approach to understanding basic metabolic processes, but scientists have also documented an amazing metabolic diversity. (Chapter 5 discusses basic metabolic processes, and Chapter 6 considers metabolic diversity.)

TABLE 1.3 Fields of Microbiology

Disciplines	Subject(s) of Study
Basic Research	
Microbe Centered	
Bacteriology	Bacteria and archaea
Phycology	Algae
Mycology	Fungi
Protozoology	Protozoa
Parasitology	Parasitic protozoa and parasitic animals
Virology	Viruses
Process Centered	
Microbial metabolism	Biochemistry: chemical reactions within cells
Microbial genetics	Functions of DNA and RNA
Environmental microbiology	Relationships between microbes and among microbes, other organisms, and their environment
Applied Microbiology	
Medical Microbiology	
Serology	Antibodies in blood serum, particularly as an indicator of infection
Immunology	Body's defenses aginst specific diseases
Epidemiology	Frequency, distribution, and spread of disease
Etiology	Causes of disease
Infection control	Hygiene in health care settings and control of nosocomial infections
Chemotherapy	Development and use of drugs to treat infectious diseases
Applied Environmental Microbiology	
Bioremediation	Use of microbes to remove pollutants
Public health microbiology	Sewage treatment, water purification, and control of insects that spread disease
Agricultural microbiology	Use of microbes to control insect pests
Industrial Microbiology (Biotechnology)	
Food and beverage technology	Reduction or elimination of harmful microbes in food and drink
Pharmaceutical microbiology	Manufacture of vaccines and antibiotics
Recombinant DNA technology	Alteration of microbial genes to synthesize useful products

Basic biochemical research has many practical applications, including the following:

- The design of herbicides and pesticides that are specific in their action and have no long-term adverse effects on the environment.
- The diagnosis of illnesses and the monitoring of a patient's responses to treatment. For example, physicians routinely monitor liver disease by measuring blood levels of certain enzymes and products of liver metabolism.
- The treatment of metabolic diseases. One example is treating phenylketonuria, a disease resulting from the inability to properly metabolize the amino acid phenylalanine, by eliminating foods containing phenylalanine from the diet.
- The design of drugs to treat leukemia, gout, bacterial infections, malaria, herpes, AIDS, asthma, and heart attacks.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Albert Kluyver said, "From elephant to . . . bacterium—it is all the same!" What did he mean?

How Do Genes Work?

Genetics, the scientific study of inheritance, started in the mid-1800s as an offshoot of botany, but scientists studying microbes made most of the great advances in this discipline.

Microbial Genetics

While working with the bacterium *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs nū-mō´nē-ī), Oswald Avery (1877–1955), Colin MacLeod (1909–1972), and Maclyn McCarty (1911–2005) determined that genes are contained in molecules of DNA. In 1958, George Beadle (1903–1989) and Edward Tatum (1909–1975), working with the bread mold *Neurospora crassa* (noo-ros´pōr-ă kras´ă), established that a gene's activity is related to the function of the specific protein coded by that gene. Other researchers, also working with microbes, determined the exact way in which genetic information is translated into a protein, the rates and mechanisms of genetic mutation, and the methods by which cells control genetic expression. (Chapter 7 examines all these aspects of microbial genetics.)

Over the past 40 years, advances in microbial genetics developed into several new disciplines that are among the faster-growing areas of scientific research today, including *molecular biology, recombinant DNA technology,* and *gene therapy.*

Molecular Biology

Molecular biology combines aspects of biochemistry, cell biology, and genetics to explain cell function at the molecular level. Molecular biologists are particularly concerned with *genome*[25] *sequencing*. Using techniques perfected on microorganisms, molecular biologists have sequenced the genomes of many organisms, including humans and many of their pathogens. It is hoped that a fuller understanding of the genomes of organisms will result in practical ways to limit disease, repair genetic defects, and enhance agricultural yield.

[25]A genome is the total genetic information of an organism.

The American Nobel Prize winner Linus Pauling (1901–1994) proposed in 1965 that gene sequences could provide a means of understanding evolutionary relationships and processes, establishing taxonomic categories that more closely reflect these relationships, and identifying the existence of microbes that have never been cultured in a laboratory. Two examples illustrate such uses of gene sequencing data:

- In the 1970s, Carl Woese (1928–) discovered that significant differences in nucleic acid sequences among organisms clearly reveal that cells belong to one of *three* major groups—bacteria, archaea, or eukaryotes—and not merely two groups (prokaryotes and eukaryotes), as previously thought.
- Scientists showed in 1990 that cat scratch disease is caused by a bacterium that had not been cultured. The bacterium was discovered by recognizing the sequence of a portion of its ribonucleic acid that differs from all other known ribonucleic acid sequences.

Recombinant DNA Technology

Molecular biology is applied in **recombinant DNA technology,**[26] commonly called *genetic engineering,* which was first developed using microbial models. Geneticists manipulate genes in microbes, plants, and animals for practical applications. For instance, once scientists have inserted the gene for human blood-clotting factor into the bacterium *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē), the bacterium produces the factor in a pure form. This technology is a benefit to hemophiliacs, who previously depended on clotting factor isolated from donated blood, which was possibly contaminated by life-threatening viral pathogens.

Gene Therapy

An exciting new area of study is the use of recombinant DNA technology for **gene therapy,** a process that involves inserting a missing gene or repairing a defective one in human cells. In such procedures, researchers insert a desired gene into host cells, where it is incorporated into a chromosome and begins to function normally. (Chapter 8 examines recombinant DNA technology and gene therapy in more detail.)

What Roles Do Microorganisms Play in the Environment?

Learning Outcomes

1.20 Identify the field of microbiology that studies the role of microorganisms in the environment.

1.21 Name the fastest-growing scientific disciplines in microbiology today.

Ever since Koch and Pasteur, most research in microbiology has focused on pure cultures of individual species; however, microorganisms are not alone in the "real world." Instead, they live in natural microbial communities in the soil, water, the human body, and other habitats, and these communities play critical roles in such processes as the production of vitamins and *bioremediation*—the use of living bacteria, fungi, and algae to detoxify polluted environments.

Microbial communities also play an essential role in the decay of dead organisms and the recycling of chemicals such as carbon, nitrogen, and sulfur. Martinus Beijerinck discovered bacteria capable of converting nitrogen gas (N_2) from the air into nitrate (NO_3), the form of nitrogen used by plants, and the Russian microbiologist Sergei Winogradsky (1856–1953) elucidated the role of microorganisms in the recycling of sulfur. Together these two microbiologists developed laboratory techniques for several important aspects of **environmental microbiology.**

Another role of microbes in the environment is the causation of disease. Although most microorganisms are not pathogenic, in this book (particularly in Chapters 19–25), we focus on pathogenic microbes because of the threat they pose to human health. We examine their characteristics and the diseases they cause as well as the steps we can take to limit their abundance and control their spread in the environment, such as sewage treatment, water purification, disinfection, pasteurization, and sterilization.

CRITICAL THINKING

The ability of farmers around the world to produce crops such as corn, wheat, and rice is often limited by the lack of nitrogen-based fertilizer. How might scientists use Beijerinck's discovery to increase world supplies of grain?

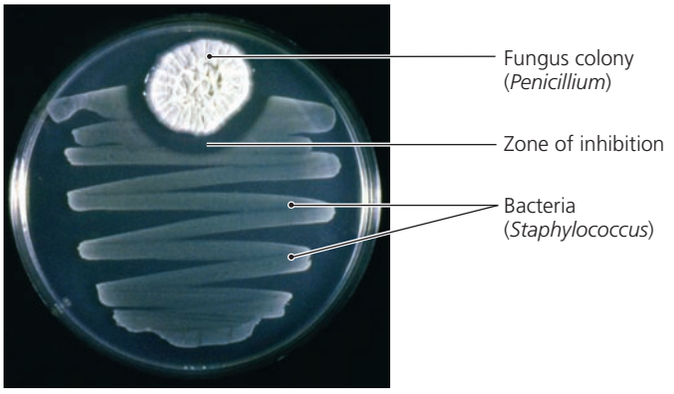
How Do We Defend Against Disease?

Why do some people get sick during the flu season while their close friends and family remain well? The germ theory of disease showed not only that microorganisms can cause diseases, but also that the body can defend itself—otherwise, everyone would be sick most of the time.

The work of Jenner and Pasteur on vaccines showed that the body can protect itself from repeated diseases by the same organism. The German bacteriologist Emil von Behring (1854–1917) and the Japanese microbiologist Shibasaburo Kitasato (1852–1931), working in Koch's laboratory, reported the existence in the blood of chemicals and cells that fight infection. Their studies developed into the fields of *serology,* the study of blood serum[27]—specifically, the chemicals in the liquid portion of blood that fight disease—and *immunology,* the study of the body's defense against specific pathogens. (Chapters 15–18 cover these aspects of microbiology, which are of utmost importance to physicians, nurses, and other health care practitioners.)

Ehrlich introduced the idea of a "magic bullet" that would kill pathogens, but it was not until Alexander Fleming (1881–1955) discovered penicillin **(Figure 1.20)** in 1929 and Gerhard

[26] Recombinant DNA is DNA composed of genes from more than one organism.
[27] Latin, meaning "whey." Serum is the liquid that remains after blood coagulates.



▲ Figure 1.20 The effects of penicillin on a bacterial "lawn" in a Petri dish. The clear area (zone of inhibition) surrounding the fungus colony, which is producing the antibiotic, is where the penicillin prevented bacterial growth.

Domagk (1895–1964) discovered sulfa drugs in 1935 that medical personnel finally had drugs effective against a wide range of bacteria. (We study chemotherapy and some physical and chemical agents used to control microorganisms in the environment in Chapters 9 and 10.)

What Will the Future Hold?

Science is built on asking and answering questions. What began with the questioning curiosity of a dedicated lens grinder in the Netherlands has come far in the past 350 years, expanding into disciplines as diverse as immunology, recombinant DNA technology, and bioremediation. However, the adage remains true: *The more questions we answer, the more questions we have.*

What will microbiologists discover next? Among the questions for the next 50 years are the following:

- How can we develop successful programs to control or eradicate diseases such as polio, tuberculosis, malaria, and AIDS?
- What is it about the physiology of life forms known only by their nucleic acid sequences that has prevented researchers from growing them in the laboratory?
- Can bacteria and archaea be used in ultraminiature technologies, such as living computer circuit boards?
- How can an understanding of microbial communities help us understand the positive aspects of microbial action in preventing and curing diseases, recycling nutrients, degrading pollutants, and moderating climate changes?
- How can we reduce the threat from microbes resistant to antimicrobial drugs as well as conquer emerging and reemerging infectious diseases?
- How do bacteria communicate with one another to form *biofilms*—aggregates of cells on a surface—that can have very different properties than the individual cells that compose them?

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

VARIANT CREUTZFELDT-JAKOB DISEASE

Ellen screamed obscenities as she staggered from the room and collapsed in the hallway, unable to stand and jerking uncontrollably. Her parents were shocked that their kind, considerate, and lovable daughter had changed so drastically during the past year. Sadly, she couldn't even remember her siblings' names.

Ellen had joined the nearly 200 Europeans and one Canadian afflicted with variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (vCJD) (what the media call "mad cow disease" because most humans with the condition acquired the pathogen from eating infected beef). Because vCJD affects the brain by slowly eroding nervous tissue and leaving the brain full of sponge-like holes, the signs and symptoms of vCJD are neurological.

Ellen's disease started with insomnia, depression, and confusion, but eventually it led to uncontrollable emotional and verbal outbursts, inability to coordinate movements, coma, and death. Typically the disease lasts about a year, and there is no treatment.

Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease is an *emerging disease*, that is, a disease arising in the past two decades either because it is new to a population or because it is newly recognized. Some investigators also include diseases that have been nearly eradicated but are now reemerging. Variant CJD resembles the rare genetic disorder Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (named for its discoverers), which is caused by a mutation and occurs in the elderly. The difference is that the variant form of CJD results from an acquired infection and often strikes and kills college-aged people, like Ellen in our story. For more about vCJD, see pp. 399–400.

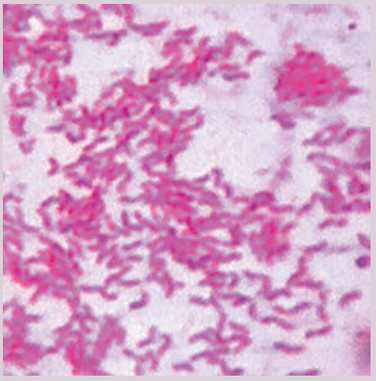
CLINICAL CASE STUDY

CAN SPICY FOOD CAUSE ULCERS?

Ramona is a young mom who takes care of her two children during the day and takes prenursing classes at night. Juggling the needs of her family and her studies means a hectic schedule, late nights, very little sleep, and eating on the run. Ramona particularly loves spicy food and eats a lot of it. She adds hot sauce to nearly every meal, which tends to be Mexican fast food. She also likes to drink wine with dinner on the weekends.

One day, Ramona notices a burning pain in her upper abdomen in the middle of the night. Soon she is feeling the pain every night—sometimes accompanied by nausea. She mentions her symptoms to one of her instructors, Mr. Rowe, who suggests that she might have an ulcer. Mr. Rowe advises her to cut back on the hot sauce and alcohol to see if that improves her symptoms. Ramona takes his advice, but the pain and nausea continue. A physician finds the pictured bacteria in her stomach. The cells lack nuclei.

1. How would Koch have determined if ulcers are caused by a microbe?
2. How can Ramona tell if these cells are prokaryotes, fungi, algae, or protozoa?
3. The cells have been stained with the procedure developed by Gram. How would you describe them to Ramona, as Gram positive or Gram negative?



MasteringMicrobiology®

Make the invisible visible:
Scan this QR code with your smart phone to engage with Dr. Bauman in a Video Tutor about The Scientific Method. Then visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to test your knowledge with practice tests, animation quizzes, and clinical case studies!

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

The Early Years of Microbiology (pp. 2–7)

1. Leeuwenhoek's observations of **microbes** introduced most types of **microorganisms** to the world. His discoveries were named and classified by Linnaeus in his **taxonomic system.**
2. Small **prokaryotes**—**bacteria** and **archaea**—live in a variety of communities and in most habitats. Even though some cause disease, most are beneficial.
3. Relatively large microscopic **eukaryotic fungi** include **molds** and **yeasts.**
4. Animal-like **protozoa** are single-celled eukaryotes. Some cause disease.
5. Plant-like eukaryotic **algae** are important providers of oxygen, serve as food for many marine animals, and make chemicals used in microbiological growth media.
6. Parasitic worms, the largest organisms studied by microbiologists, are often visible without a microscope, although their immature stages are microscopic.
7. Viruses, the smallest microbes, are so small they can be seen only by using an electron microscope.

The Golden Age of Microbiology (pp. 7–18)

1. The study of the Golden Age of Microbiology includes a look at the men who proposed or refuted the theory of **spontaneous**

generation: Aristotle, Redi, Needham, Spallanzani, and Pasteur (the Father of Microbiology). The **scientific method** that emerged then remains the accepted sequence of study today.

▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *The Scientific Method*

2. The study of fermentation by Pasteur and Buchner led to the fields of **industrial microbiology** (**biotechnology**) and **biochemistry** and to the study of **metabolism.**
3. Koch, Pasteur, and others proved that **pathogens** cause infectious diseases, an idea that is known as the **germ theory of disease. Etiology** is the study of the causation of diseases.
4. Koch initiated careful microbiological laboratory techniques in his search for disease agents. **Koch's postulates,** the logical steps he followed to prove the cause of an infectious disease, remain an important part of microbiology today.
5. The procedure for the **Gram stain** was developed in the 1880s and is still used to differentiate bacteria into two categories: Gram positive and Gram negative.
6. The investigations of Semmelweis, Lister, Nightingale, and Snow are the foundations on which **infection control** and **epidemiology** are built.
7. Jenner's use of a cowpox-based vaccine for preventing smallpox began the field of **immunology.** Pasteur significantly advanced the field.
8. Ehrlich's search for "magic bullets"—chemicals that differentially kill microorganisms—laid the foundations for the field of **chemotherapy.**

The Modern Age of Microbiology (pp. 18–22)

1. Microbiology in the modern age has focused on answering questions regarding **biochemistry,** which is the study of metabolism; microbial genetics, which is the study of inheritance in microorganisms; and **molecular biology,** which involves investigations of cell function at the molecular level.
2. Scientists have applied knowledge from basic research to answer questions in **recombinant DNA technology** and **gene therapy.**
3. The study of microorganisms in their natural environment is **environmental microbiology.**
4. The discovery of chemicals in the blood that are active against specific pathogens advanced immunology and began the field of serology.
5. Advancements in chemotherapy were made in the 1900s with the discovery of numerous substances, such as penicillin and sulfa drugs, that inhibit pathogens.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following microorganisms are *not* eukaryotic?
   a. bacteria
   b. yeasts
   c. molds
   d. protozoa
2. Which microorganisms are used to make microbiological growth media?
   a. bacteria
   b. fungi
   c. algae
   d. protozoa
3. In which habitat would you most likely find archaea?
   a. acidic hot springs
   b. swamp mud
   c. Great Salt Lake
   d. all of the above
4. Of the following scientists, who first promulgated the theory of abiogenesis?
   a. Aristotle
   b. Pasteur
   c. Needham
   d. Spallanzani
5. Which of the following scientists hypothesized that a bacterial colony arises from a single bacterial cell?
   a. Antoni van Leeuwenhoek
   b. Louis Pasteur
   c. Robert Koch
   d. Richard Petri
6. Which scientist first hypothesized that medical personnel can infect patients with pathogens?
   a. Edward Jenner
   b. Joseph Lister
   c. John Snow
   d. Ignaz Semmelweis
7. Leeuwenhoek described microorganisms as_____.
   a. animalcules
   b. prokaryotes
   c. eukaryotes
   d. protozoa
8. Which of the following favored the theory of spontaneous generation?
   a. Spallanzani
   b. Needham
   c. Pasteur
   d. Koch
9. A scientist who studies the role of microorganisms in the environment is_____.
   a. a genetic techologist
   b. an earth microbiologist
   c. an epidemiologist
   d. an environmental microbiologist
10. The laboratory of Robert Koch contributed which of the following to the field of microbiology?
    a. simple staining technique
    b. use of Petri dishes
    c. first photomicrograph of bacteria
    d. all of the above

Fill in the Blanks

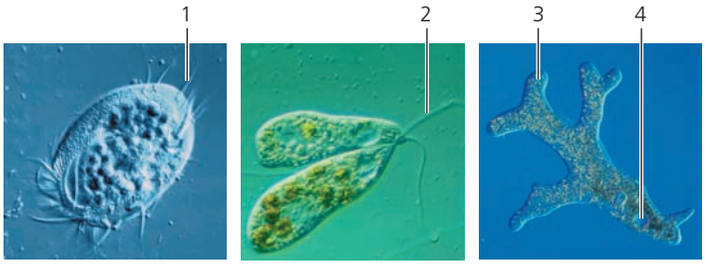
Fill in the blanks with the name(s) of the scientist(s) whose investigations led to the following fields of study in microbiology.

1. Environmental microbiology _____ and _____
2. Biochemistry _____ and _____
3. Chemotherapy _____
4. Immunology _____
5. Infection control _____

6. Etiology _____
7. Epidemiology _____
8. Biotechnology _____
9. Food microbiology _____

Visualize It!

1. On the photos below, label *cilium*, *flagellum*, *nucleus*, and *pseudopod*.



2. Show where microbes ended up in Pasteur's experiment.

Matching

Match each of the following descriptions with the person it best describes. An answer may be used more than once.

1. ____ Developed smallpox immunization
2. ____ First photomicrograph of bacteria
3. ____ Germ theory of disease
4. ____ Germs cause disease
5. ____ Sought a "magic bullet" to destroy pathogens
6. ____ Early epidemiologist
7. ____ Father of Microbiology
8. ____ Classification system
9. ____ Discoverer of bacteria
10. ____ Discoverer of protozoa
11. ____ Founder of antiseptic surgery
12. ____ Developed the most widely used bacterial staining technique

A. John Snow
B. Paul Ehrlich
C. Louis Pasteur
D. Antoni van Leeuwenhoek
E. Carolus Linnaeus
F. John Needham
G. Eduard Buchner
H. Robert Koch
I. Joseph Lister
J. Edward Jenner
K. Girolamo Fracastoro
L. Hans Christian Gram

Short Answer

1. Why was the theory of spontaneous generation a hindrance to the development of the field of microbiology?
2. Discuss the significant difference between the flasks used by Pasteur and Spallanzani. How did Pasteur's investigation settle the dispute about spontaneous generation?
3. List six types of microorganisms.
4. Defend this statement: "The investigations of Antoni van Leeuwenhoek changed the world forever."
5. Why would a *macro*scopic tapeworm be studied in *micro*biology?
6. Describe what has been called the "Golden Age of Microbiology" with reference to four major questions that propelled scientists during that period.
7. List four major questions that drive microbiological investigations today.
8. Refer to the four steps in the scientific method in describing Pasteur's fermentation experiments.
9. List Koch's postulates and explain why they are significant.
10. Why can Pasteur be honored with the title "Father of Microbiology"?

Critical Thinking

1. If Robert Koch had become interested in a viral disease such as influenza instead of anthrax (caused by a bacterium), how might his list of lifetime accomplishments be different? Why?
2. In 1911, the Polish scientist Casimir Funk proposed that a limited diet of polished white rice (rice without the husks) caused beriberi, a disease of the central nervous system. Even though history has proven him correct—beriberi is caused by a thiamine deficiency, which in his day resulted from unsophisticated milling techniques that removed the thiamine-rich husks—Funk was criticized by his contemporaries, who told him to find the microbe that caused beriberi. Explain how the prevailing scientific philosophy of the day shaped Funk's detractors' point of view.
3. *Haemophilus influenzae* does not cause flu, but it received its name because it was once thought to be the cause. Explain how

a proper application of Koch's postulates would have prevented this error in nomenclature.

4. Just before winter break in early December, your roommate stocks the refrigerator with a gallon of milk, but both of you leave before opening it. When you return in January, the milk has soured. Your roommate is annoyed because the milk was pasteurized and thus should not have spoiled. Explain why your roommate's position is unreasonable.
5. Design an experiment to prove that microbes do not spontaneously generate in milk.
6. The British General Board of Health concluded in 1855 that the Broad Street cholera epidemic discussed in the chapter (see p. 17) resulted from fermentation of "nocturnal clouds of vapor" from the polluted Thames River. How could an epidemiologist prove or disprove this claim?
7. Compare and contrast the investigations of Redi, Needham, Spallanzani, and Pasteur in relation to the idea of spontaneous generation.
8. If you were a career counselor directing a student in the field of applied microbiology, describe three possible disciplines you could suggest.

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes what microbiologists study. You may use some terms more than once. For a sample concept map, see p. 93. Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

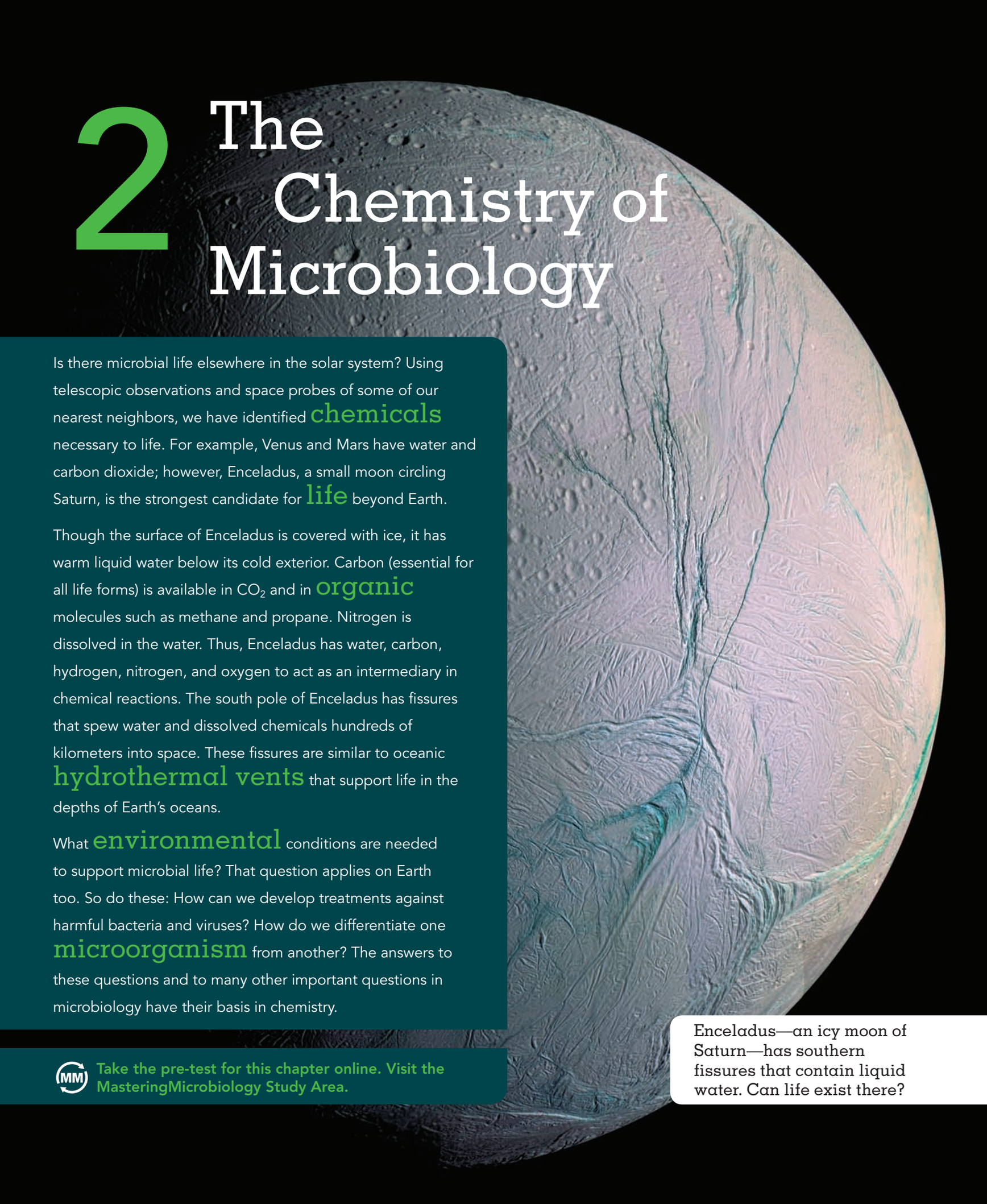
Acellular
Algae
Animal-like
Archaea
Bacteria
Eukaryotes
Fungi
Molds
Multicellular
Obligate intracellular parasites
Parasitic worms
Photosynthetic
Prokaryotes
Protozoa
Unicellular (2)
Viruses
Yeasts

2 The Chemistry of Microbiology

Is there microbial life elsewhere in the solar system? Using telescopic observations and space probes of some of our nearest neighbors, we have identified **chemicals** necessary to life. For example, Venus and Mars have water and carbon dioxide; however, Enceladus, a small moon circling Saturn, is the strongest candidate for **life** beyond Earth.

Though the surface of Enceladus is covered with ice, it has warm liquid water below its cold exterior. Carbon (essential for all life forms) is available in CO_2 and in **organic** molecules such as methane and propane. Nitrogen is dissolved in the water. Thus, Enceladus has water, carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, and oxygen to act as an intermediary in chemical reactions. The south pole of Enceladus has fissures that spew water and dissolved chemicals hundreds of kilometers into space. These fissures are similar to oceanic **hydrothermal vents** that support life in the depths of Earth's oceans.

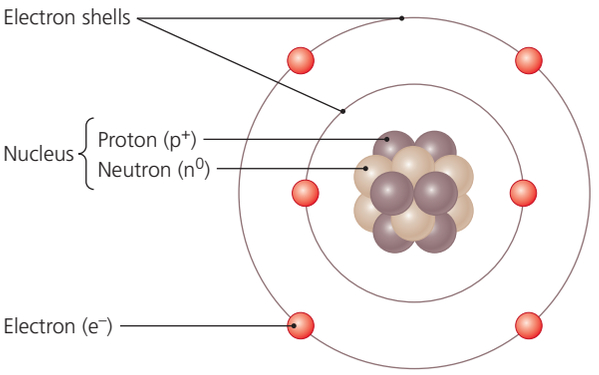
What **environmental** conditions are needed to support microbial life? That question applies on Earth too. So do these: How can we develop treatments against harmful bacteria and viruses? How do we differentiate one **microorganism** from another? The answers to these questions and to many other important questions in microbiology have their basis in chemistry.



Enceladus—an icy moon of Saturn—has southern fissures that contain liquid water. Can life exist there?

Learning some basic concepts of chemistry will enable you to understand more fully the variety of interactions between microorganisms and their environment—which includes you. If you plan a career in health care, you will find microbial chemistry involved in the diagnosis of disease, the response of the immune system, the growth and identification of pathogenic microorganisms in the laboratory, and the function and selection of antimicrobial drugs. Understanding the fundamentals of chemistry will even help you preserve your own health.

In this chapter we study atoms, which are the basic units of chemistry, and we consider how atoms react with one another to form chemical bonds and molecules. Then we examine the three major categories of chemical reactions. The chapter concludes with a look at the molecules of greatest importance to life: water, acids, bases, lipids, carbohydrates, proteins, nucleic acids, and ATP.



▲ **Figure 2.1 An example of a Bohr model of atomic structure.** This drawing is not to scale; for the electrons to be shown in scale with the greatly magnified nucleus, the electrons would have to occupy orbits located many miles from the nucleus. Put another way, the volume of an entire atom is about 100 trillion times the volume of its nucleus.

Atoms

Learning Outcome

2.1 Define *matter*, *atom*, and *element* and explain how these terms relate to one another.

Matter is defined as anything that takes up space and has mass.[1] The smallest chemical units of matter are **atoms.** Atoms are extremely small, and only the very largest of them can be seen using the most powerful microscopes. Therefore, scientists have developed various models to conceptualize and illustrate the structure of atoms.

Atomic Structure

Learning Outcome

2.2 Draw and label an atom, showing the parts of the nucleus and orbiting electrons.

In 1913, the Danish physicist Niels H. D. Bohr (1885–1962) proposed a simple model in which negatively charged subatomic particles called **electrons** orbit a centrally located nucleus like planets in a miniature solar system **(Figure 2.1)**. A nucleus is composed of uncharged **neutrons** and positively charged **protons.** (The only exception is the nucleus of a normal hydrogen atom, which is composed of only a single proton and no neutrons.) Protons and neutrons are extremely small. If a meterstick were stretched between the sun and the Earth, a neutron or proton would measure only about the width of a human hair! The number of electrons in an atom typically equals the number of protons, so overall atoms are electrically neutral.

An **element** is matter that is composed of a single type of atom. For example, gold is an element because it consists of only gold atoms. In contrast, the ink in your pen is not an element because it is composed of many different kinds of atoms.

Elements differ from one another in their **atomic number,** which is the number of protons in their nuclei. For example, the atomic numbers of hydrogen, carbon, and oxygen are 1, 6, and 8, respectively, because all hydrogen nuclei contain a single proton, all carbon nuclei have six protons, and all oxygen nuclei have eight protons.

The **atomic mass** of an atom (sometimes called its *atomic weight*) is the sum of the masses of its protons, neutrons, and electrons. Protons and neutrons each have a mass of approximately 1 *atomic mass unit*,[2] which is also called a *dalton*.[3] An electron is much less massive, with a mass of about 0.00054 dalton. Electrons are often ignored in discussions of atomic mass because their contribution to the overall mass is negligible. Therefore, the sum of the number of protons and neutrons approximates the atomic mass of an atom.

There are 93 naturally occurring elements known;[4] however, organisms typically utilize only about 20 elements, each of which has its own symbol that is derived from its English or Latin name (Table 2.1 on p. 28).

Isotopes

Learning Outcome

2.3 List at least four ways that radioactive isotopes are useful.

Every atom of an element has the same number of protons, but atoms of a given element can differ in the number of neutrons in their nuclei. Atoms that differ in this way are called **isotopes.** For example, there are three naturally occurring isotopes of carbon, each having six protons and six electrons **(Figure 2.2)**. Over 95% of carbon atoms also have six neutrons. Because these atoms have six protons and six neutrons, the atomic mass of this isotope is about 12 daltons, and it is known as carbon-12,

[1] *Mass* and *weight* are sometimes confused. Mass is the quantity of material in something, whereas weight is the effect of gravity on mass. Even though an astronaut is weightless in space, his mass is the same in space as on Earth.
[2] An atomic mass unit (dafton) is 1/597,728,630,000,000,000,000,000, or 1.673×10^{-24}, grams.
[3] Named for John Dalton, the British chemist who helped develop atomic theory around 1800.
[4] For many years, scientists thought that there were only 92 naturally occurring elements, but natural plutonium was discovered in Africa in 1997.

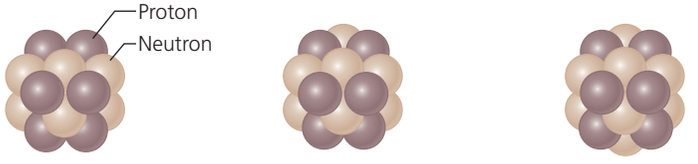
TABLE 2.1 Common Elements of Life

Element	Symbol	Atomic Number	Atomic Mass[a] (daltons)	Biological Significance
Hydrogen	H	1	1	Component of organic molecules and water; H^+ released by acids
Boron	B	5	11	Essential for plant growth
Carbon	C	6	12	Backbone of organic molecules
Nitrogen	N	7	14	Component of amino acids, proteins, and nucleic acids
Oxygen	O	8	16	Component of many organic molecules and water; OH^- released by bases; necessary for aerobic metabolism
Sodium (Natrium)	Na	11	23	Principal cation outside cells
Magnesium	Mg	12	24	Component of many energy-transferring enzymes
Silicon	Si	14	28	Component of cell wall of diatoms
Phosphorus	P	15	31	Component of nucleic acids and ATP
Sulfur	S	16	32	Component of proteins
Chlorine	Cl	17	35	Principal anion outside cells
Potassium (Kalium)	K	19	39	Principal cation inside cells; essential for nerve impulses
Calcium	Ca	20	40	Utilized in many intercellular signaling processes; essential for muscular contraction
Manganese	Mn	25	54	Component of some enzymes; acts as intracellular antioxidant; used in photosynthesis
Iron (Ferrum)	Fe	26	56	Component of energy-transferring proteins; transports oxygen in the blood of many animals
Cobalt	Co	27	59	Component of vitamin B_{12}
Copper (Cuprum)	Cu	29	64	Component of some enzymes; used in photosynthesis
Zinc	Zn	30	65	Component of some enzymes
Molybdenum	Mo	42	96	Component of some enzymes
Iodine	I	53	127	Component of many brown and red algae

[a]Rounded to nearest whole number.

symbolized as ^{12}C. Atoms of carbon-13 (^{13}C) have seven neutrons per nucleus, and ^{14}C atoms each have eight neutrons.

Unlike the first two isotopes, the nucleus of ^{14}C is unstable because of the ratio of its protons and neutrons. Unstable atomic nuclei release energy and subatomic particles such as neutrons, protons, and electrons in a process called *radioactive decay*. Atoms that undergo radioactive decay are *radioactive isotopes*. Radioactive decay and radioactive isotopes play important roles in microbiological research, medical diagnosis, the treatment of disease, and the complete destruction of contaminating microbes (sterilization) of medical equipment and chemicals.



(a) Carbon-12
6 Protons
6 Neutrons

(b) Carbon-13
6 Protons
7 Neutrons

(c) Carbon-14
6 Protons
8 Neutrons

▲ **Figure 2.2 Nuclei of the three naturally occurring isotopes of carbon.** Each isotope also has six electrons, which are not shown. *What are the atomic number and atomic mass of each of these isotopes?*

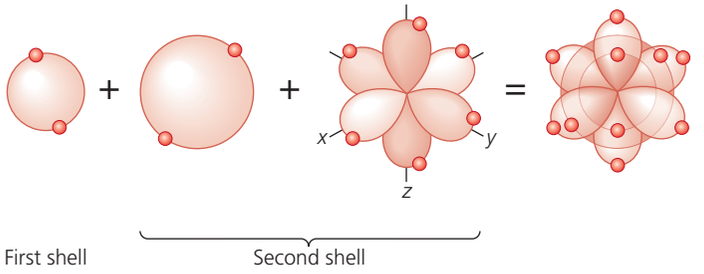
Figure 2.2 *The atomic number of all three is 6; their atomic masses are 12, 13, and 14, respectively.*

Electron Configurations

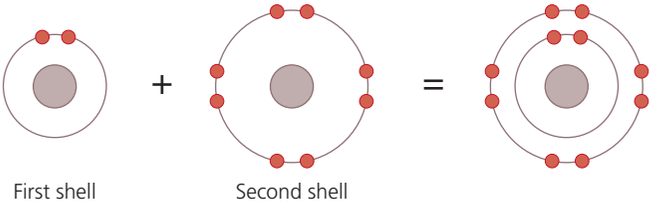
Although the nuclei of atoms determine their identities, it is electrons that determine an atom's *chemical behavior*. Nuclei of different atoms almost never come close enough together to interact.[5] Typically, only the electrons of atoms interact. Thus, because all of the isotopes of carbon (for example) have the same number of electrons, all these isotopes behave the same way in chemical reactions, even though their nuclei are different.

Scientists know that electrons do not really orbit the nucleus in a two-dimensional circle, as indicated by a Bohr model; instead, they speed around the nucleus 100 quadrillion times per second in three-dimensional *electron shells* or *clouds* that assume unique shapes dependent on the energy of the electrons **(Figure 2.3a)**. More accurately put, an electron shell depicts the *probable* locations of electrons at a given time; nevertheless, it is simpler and more convenient to draw electron shells as circles **(Figure 2.3b)**.

[5]Except during nuclear reactions, such as occur in nuclear power plants.



(a) Electron shells of neon: three-dimensional view



(b) Electron shells of neon: two-dimensional view

▶ **Figure 2.3 Electron configurations. (a)** Three-dimensional model of the electron shells of neon. In this model, the first shell is a small sphere, whereas the second shell consists of a larger sphere plus three pairs of ellipses that extend from the nucleus at right angles. Larger shells (not shown) are even more complex. **(b)** Two-dimensional model (Bohr diagram) of the electron shells of neon.

Each electron shell can hold only a certain maximum number of electrons. For example, the first shell (the one nearest the nucleus) can accommodate a maximum of two electrons, and the second shell can hold no more than eight electrons. Atoms of hydrogen and helium have one and two electrons, respectively; thus, these two elements have only a single electron shell. A lithium atom, which has three electrons, has two shells.

Atoms with more than 10 electrons require more shells. The third shell holds up to eight electrons when it is the outermost shell, though its capacity increases to 18 when the fourth shell contains two electrons. Heavier atoms have even more shells, but these atoms do not play significant roles in the processes of life.

Electrons in the outermost shell of atoms are called *valence electrons*. **Figure 2.4** depicts the electron configurations of atoms of some elements important to microbial life. Notice that except for helium, atoms of all elements in a given column have the same number of valence electrons. Helium is placed in the far right-hand column with the other inert gases because its outer shell is full, though it has two rather than eight valence electrons. Valence electrons are critical for interactions between atoms. Next we consider these interactions, which are called chemical bonds.

Chemical Bonds

Learning Outcomes

2.4 Describe the configuration of electrons in a stable atom.

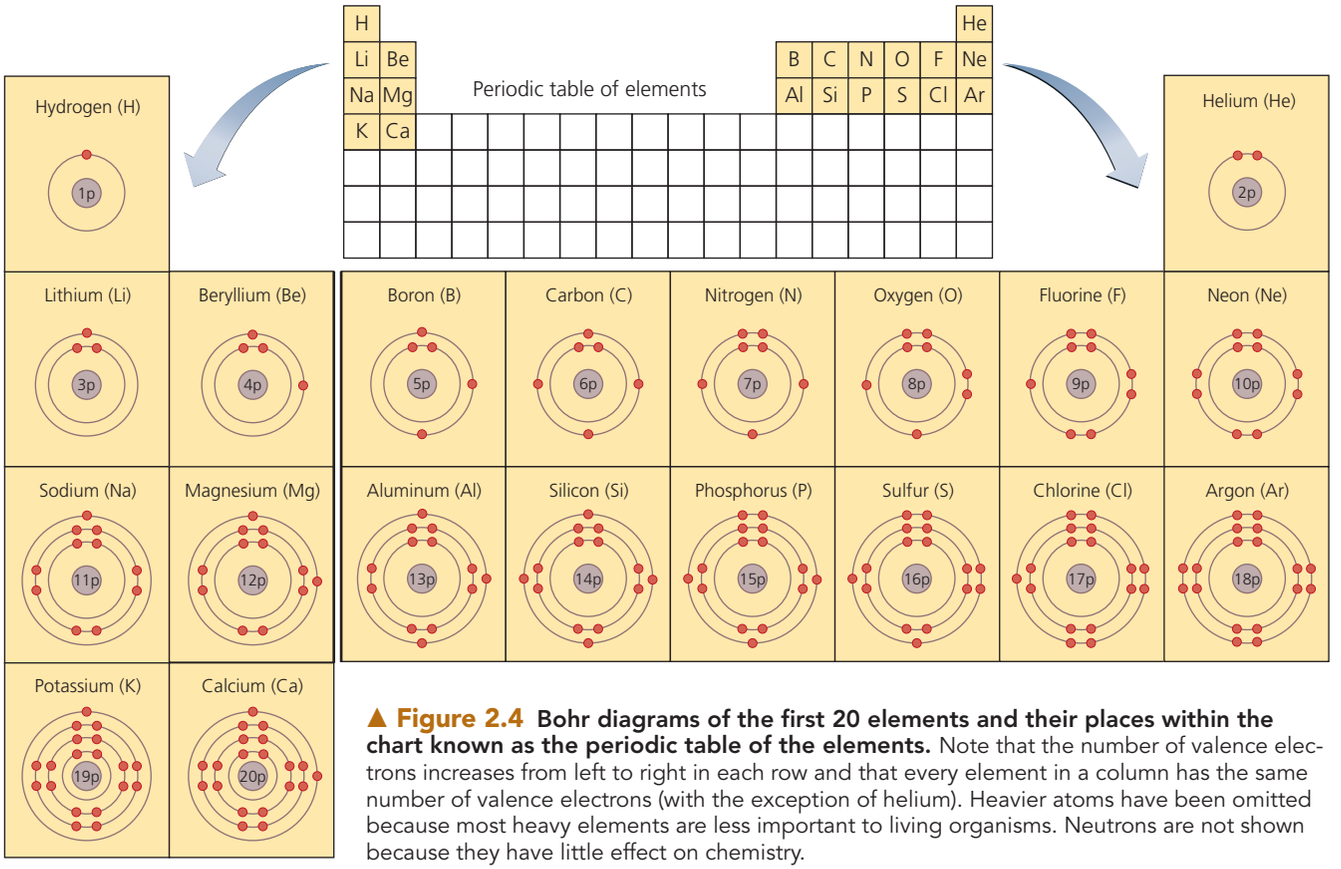
2.5 Contrast molecules and compounds.

Outer electron shells are stable when they contain eight electrons (except for the first electron shell, which is stable with only two electrons, because that is its maximum number). When atoms' outer shells are not filled with eight electrons, they either have room for more electrons or have "extra" electrons, depending on whether it is easier for them to gain electrons or lose electrons. For example, an oxygen atom, with six electrons in its outer shell, has two "unfilled spaces" (see Figure 2.4) because it requires less energy for the oxygen atom to gain two electrons than to lose six electrons. A calcium atom, by contrast, has two "extra" electrons in its outer (fourth) shell because it requires less energy to lose these two electrons than to gain six new ones. When a calcium atom loses two electrons, its third shell, which is then its outer shell, is full and stable with eight electrons.

As previously noted, an atom's outermost electrons are called valence electrons, and thus the outermost shell of an atom is the *valence shell.* An atom's **valence,**[6] defined as its combining capacity, is considered to be positive if its valence shell has extra electrons to give up and to be negative if its valence shell has spaces to fill. Thus, a calcium atom, with two electrons in its valence shell, has a valence of +2, whereas an oxygen atom, with two spaces to fill in its valence shell, has a valence of −2.

Atoms combine with one another by either sharing or transferring valence electrons in such a way as to fill their valence shells. Such interactions between atoms are called **chemical bonds.** Two or more atoms held together by chemical bonds form a **molecule.** A molecule that contains atoms of more than one element is a **compound.** Two hydrogen atoms bonded together form a hydrogen molecule, which is not a compound because only one element is involved. However, two hydrogen atoms bonded to an oxygen atom form a molecule of water (H_2O), which is a compound.

[6]From Latin *valentia*, meaning "strength."



▲ Figure 2.4 Bohr diagrams of the first 20 elements and their places within the chart known as the periodic table of the elements. Note that the number of valence electrons increases from left to right in each row and that every element in a column has the same number of valence electrons (with the exception of helium). Heavier atoms have been omitted because most heavy elements are less important to living organisms. Neutrons are not shown because they have little effect on chemistry.

In this section, we discuss the three principal types of chemical bonds: *nonpolar covalent bonds*, *polar covalent bonds*, and *ionic bonds*. We also consider *hydrogen bonds*, which are weak forces that act with polar covalent bonds to give certain large chemicals their characteristic three-dimensional shapes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Neon (atomic mass 10) and argon (atomic mass 18) are *inert* elements, which means that they very rarely form chemical bonds. Give the electron configuration of their atoms and explain why these elements are inert.

Nonpolar Covalent Bonds

Learning Outcome

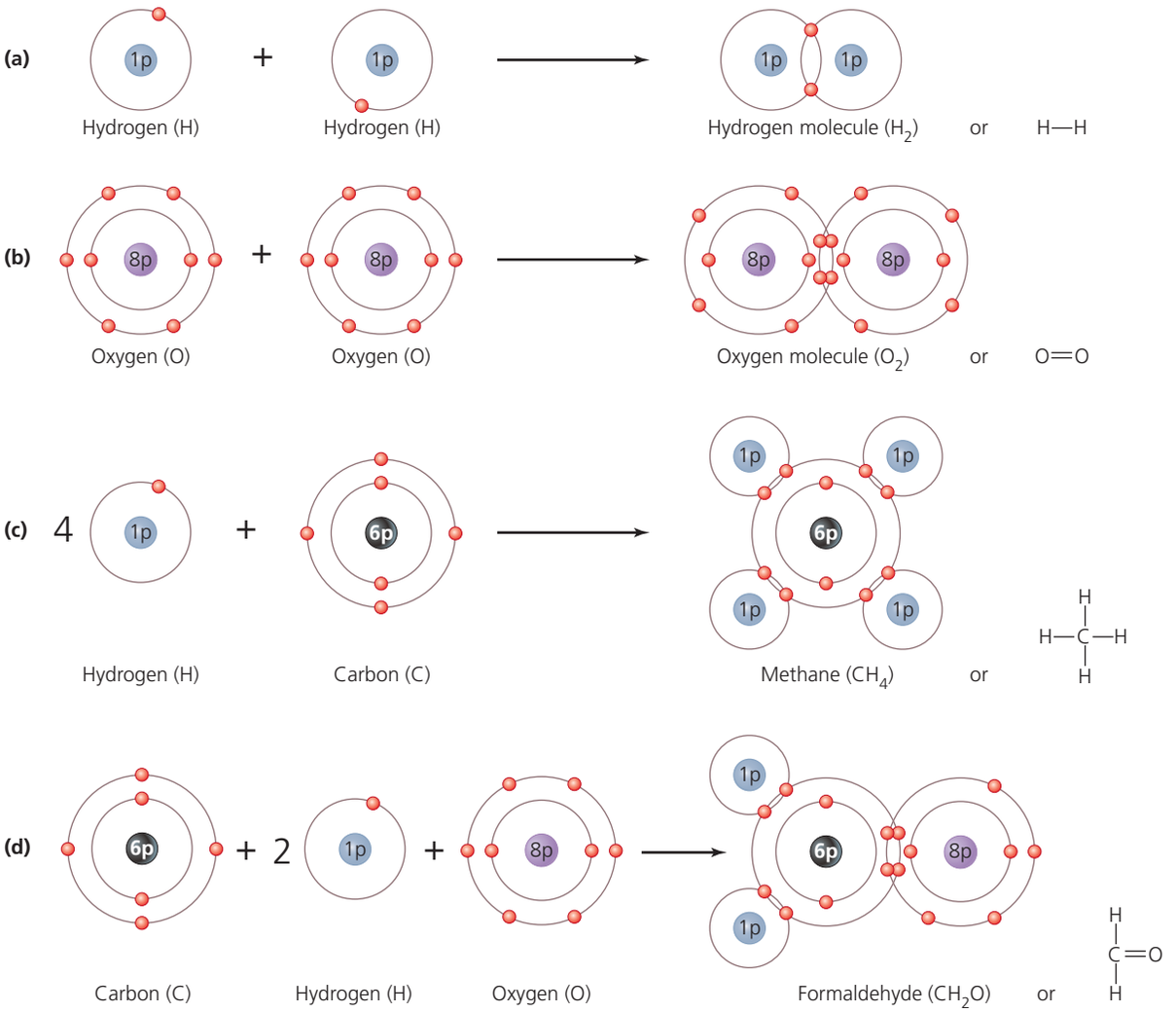
2.6 Contrast nonpolar covalent, polar covalent, and ionic bonds.

A **covalent**[7] **bond** is the sharing of a pair of electrons by two atoms. Consider, for example, what happens when two hydrogen atoms approach one another. Each hydrogen atom consists of a single proton orbited by a single electron. Because the valence shell of each hydrogen atom requires two electrons to be filled, each atom shares its single electron with the other, forming a hydrogen molecule in which both atoms have full shells **(Figure 2.5a)**. Similarly, two oxygen atoms can share electrons, but they must share *two* pairs of electrons for their valence shells to be full **(Figure 2.5b)**. Because two pairs of electrons are involved, oxygen atoms form two covalent bonds, or a *double covalent bond*, with one another.

The attraction of an atom for electrons is called its **electronegativity.** The more electronegative an atom, the greater the pull its nucleus exerts on electrons. Note in **Figure 2.6**, which displays the electronegativities of atoms of several elements, that electronegativities tend to increase from left to right in the chart. The reason is that elements toward the right of the chart have more protons and thus exert a greater pull on electrons. Electronegativities of elements decrease from top to bottom in the chart because the distance between the nucleus and the valence shell increases as elements get larger.

Atoms with equal or nearly equal electronegativities, such as two hydrogen atoms or a hydrogen and a carbon, share electrons equally or nearly equally. In chemistry and physics, "poles" are opposed forces, such as north and south magnetic poles or positive and negative terminals of a battery. In the case of atoms with similar electronegativities, the shared electrons tend to spend an equal amount of time around each nucleus of the pair, and no poles exist; therefore, the bond between them is a **nonpolar covalent bond.** (All the covalent bonds illustrated in Figure 2.5a–c are nonpolar; formaldehyde is polar.)

[7] From Latin *co*, meaning "with" or "together," and *valentia*, meaning "strength."



▲ **Figure 2.5** **Four molecules formed by covalent bonds.** **(a)** Hydrogen. Each hydrogen atom needs another electron to have a full valence shell. The two atoms share their electrons, forming a covalent bond. **(b)** Oxygen. Oxygen atoms have six electrons in their valence shells; thus, they need two electrons each. When they share with each other, two covalent bonds are formed. Note that the valence electrons of oxygen atoms are in the second shell. **(c)** A methane molecule, which has four single covalent bonds. **(d)** Formaldehyde. The carbon atom forms a double bond with the oxygen atom and single bonds with two hydrogen atoms. *Which of these molecules are also compounds? Why?*

Figure 2.5 *Methane and formaldehyde molecules are also compounds because they are composed of more than one element.*

A hydrogen molecule can be symbolized a number of ways:

H—H H:H H_2

In the first symbol, the dash represents the chemical bond between the atoms. In the second symbol, the dots represent the electron pair of the covalent bond. These two symbols are known as *structural formulas.* In the third symbol, known as a *molecular formula,* the subscript "2" indicates the number of hydrogen atoms that are bonded, not the number of shared electrons. Each of these symbols indicates the same thing—two hydrogen atoms are sharing a pair of electrons.

Many atoms need more than one electron to fill their valence shell. For instance, a carbon atom has four valence electrons and needs to gain four more if it is to have eight in its valence shell. **Figure 2.5c** illustrates a carbon atom sharing with four hydrogen atoms. As before, a line in the structural formula represents a covalent bond formed from the sharing of two electrons. Two covalent bonds are formed between an oxygen atom and a carbon atom in formaldehyde **(Figure 2.5d)**. This fact is represented by a double line, which indicates that the carbon atom shares four electrons with the oxygen atom.

I	II											III	IV	V	VI	VII	Inert gases
H 2.1																	He 0.0
Li 1.0	Be 1.5											B 2.0	C 2.5	N 3.0	O 3.5	F 4.0	Ne 0.0
Na 0.9	Mg 1.2											Al 1.5	Si 1.8	P 2.1	S 2.5	Cl 3.0	Ar 0.0
K 0.8	Ca 1.0	Sc 1.3	Ti 1.5	V 1.6	Cr 1.6	Mn 1.5	Fe 1.8	Co 1.8	Ni 1.8	Cu 1.9	Zn 1.6	Ga 1.6	Ge 1.8	As 2.0	Se 2.4	Br 2.8	Kr 0.0

▲ **Figure 2.6 Electronegativity values of selected elements.** The values are expressed according to the Pauling scale, named for the Nobel Prize–winning chemist Linus Pauling, who based the scale on bond energies. Pauling chose to compare the electronegativity of each element to that of fluorine, to which he assigned a value of 4.0.

Carbon atoms are critical to life. Because a carbon atom has four electrons in its valence shell, it has equal tendency to either lose four electrons or gain four electrons. Either event produces a full outer shell. The result is that carbon atoms tend to share electrons and form four covalent bonds with one another and with many other types of atoms. Each carbon atom in effect acts as a four-way intersection where different components of a molecule can attach. One result of this feature is that carbon atoms can form very large chains that constitute the "backbone" of many biologically important molecules. Carbon chains can be branched or unbranched, and some even close back on themselves to form rings. Compounds that contain carbon and hydrogen atoms are called **organic compounds.** Among the many biologically important organic compounds are proteins and carbohydrates, which are discussed later in the chapter.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

An article in the local newspaper about gangrene states that the tissue-destroying toxin, lecithinase, is an "organic compound." But many people consider "organic" chemicals to mean something is good. Explain the apparent contradiction.

Polar Covalent Bonds

Learning Outcome

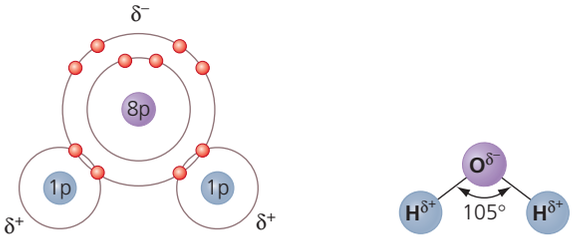
2.7 Explain the relationship between electronegativity and the polarity of a covalent bond.

If two covalently bound atoms have significantly different electronegativities, their electrons will not be shared equally. Instead, the electron pair will spend more time orbiting the nucleus of the atom with greater electronegativity. This type of bond, in which there is unequal sharing of electrons, is a **polar covalent bond.** An example of a molecule with polar covalent bonds is water **(Figure 2.7a)**.

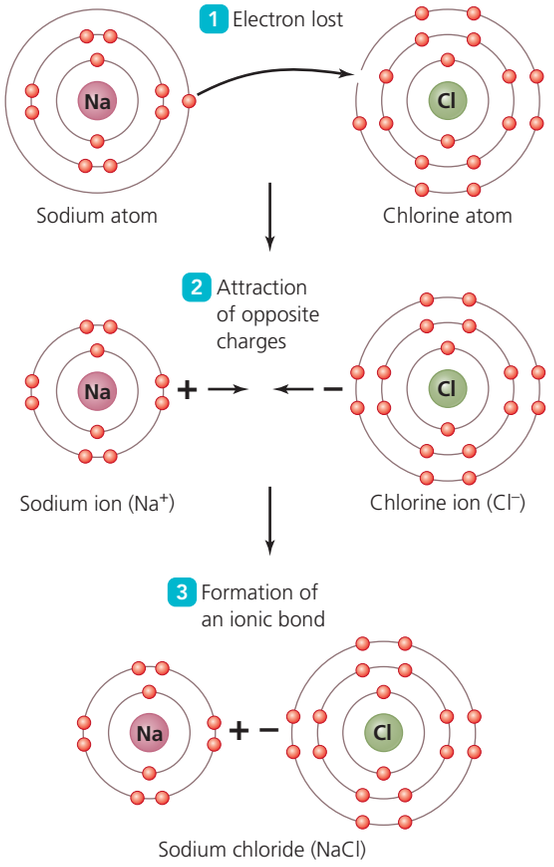
Because oxygen is more electronegative than hydrogen, the electrons spend more time near the oxygen nucleus than near the hydrogen nuclei, and thus the oxygen atom acquires a transient (partial) negative charge (symbolized as δ^-). Each of the hydrogen nuclei has a corresponding transient positive charge (δ^+). The covalent bond between an oxygen atom and a hydrogen atom is called polar because the atoms have opposite partial electrical charges.

Polar covalent bonds can form between many different elements. Generally, molecules with polar covalent bonds are water soluble, and nonpolar molecules are not. The most important polar covalent bonds for life are those that involve hydrogen because they allow hydrogen bonding, which we discuss shortly.

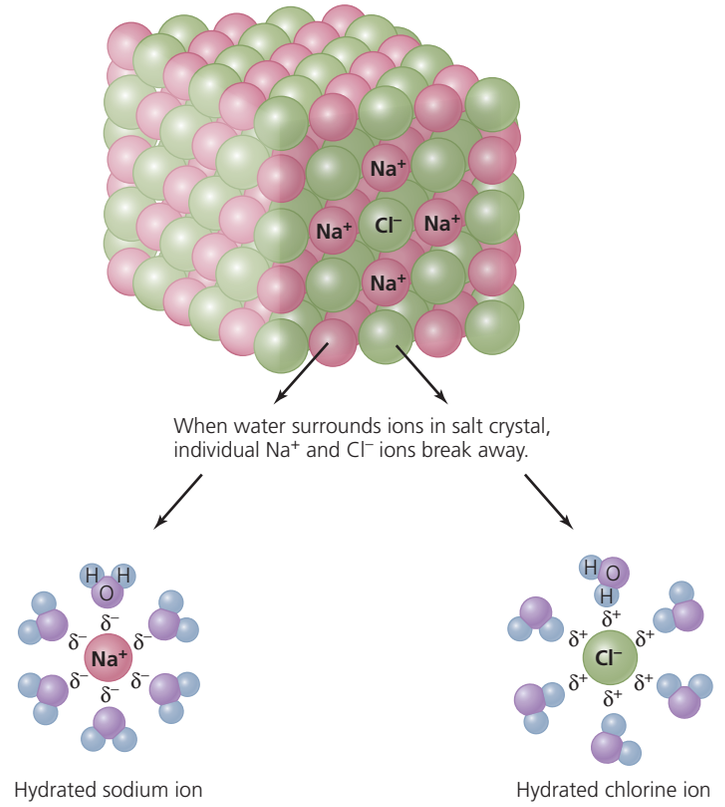
Both nonpolar and polar covalent bonds form angles between atoms such that the distances between electron orbits are maximized. The bond angle for water is shown in **Figure 2.7b**. However, it is more convenient to simply draw molecules as if all the atoms were in one plane; for example, H−O−H.



▲ **Figure 2.7 Polar covalent bonding in a water molecule.** **(a)** A Bohr model of a water molecule, which has two polar covalent bonds. When the electronegativities of two atoms are significantly different, the shared electrons of covalent bonds spend more time around the more electronegative atom, giving it a transient negative charge (δ^-). Its partner has a transient positive charge (δ^+). **(b)** The bond angle in a water molecule. Atoms maximize the distances between electron orbitals in polar and nonpolar covalent bonds.



▲ Figure 2.8 The interaction of sodium and chlorine to form an ionic bond.



▲ Figure 2.9 Dissociation of NaCl in water. When water surrounds the ions in a NaCl crystal, the partial charges on water molecules are attracted to charged ions, and the water molecules hydrate the ions by surrounding them. The partial negative charges (δ^-) on oxygen atoms are attracted to cations (in this case, the sodium ions), and the partial positive charges (δ^+) on hydrogen atoms are attracted to anions (the chlorine ions). Because the ions no longer attract one another, the salt crystal dissolves. Hydrated ions are called electrolytes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

The deadly poison hydrogen cyanide has the chemical formula H−C≡N. Describe the bonds between carbon and hydrogen and between carbon and nitrogen in terms of the number of electrons involved.

Triple covalent bonds are stronger and more difficult to break than single covalent bonds. Explain why by referring to the stability of a valence shell that contains eight electrons.

Ionic Bonds

Learning Outcome

2.8 Define *ionization* using the terms *cation* and *anion*.

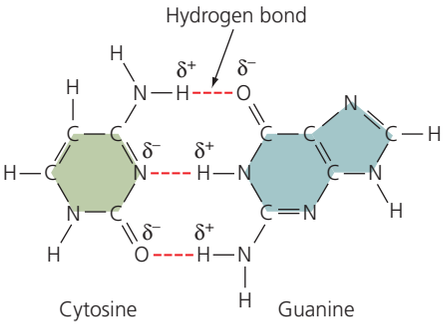
Consider what happens when two atoms with vastly different electronegativities—for example, sodium, with one electron in its valence shell and an electronegativity of 0.9, and chlorine, with seven electrons in its valence shell and an electronegativity of 3.0—come together **(Figure 2.8)**. Chlorine has such a higher electronegativity that it very strongly attracts sodium's valence electron, and the result is that the sodium loses that electron to chlorine 1.

Now that the chlorine atom has one more electron than it has protons, it has a full negative charge, and the sodium atom, which has lost an electron, now has a full positive charge 2. An atom or group of atoms that has either a full negative charge or a full positive charge is called an *ion*. Positively charged ions are called **cations,** whereas negatively charged ions are called **anions.**

Because of their opposite charges, cations and anions attract each other and form what is termed an **ionic bond** 3. They form crystalline compounds composed of metallic and nonmetallic ions known as **salts,** such as sodium chloride (NaCl), also known as table salt, and potassium chloride (KCl, sodium-free table salt). Ionic bonds differ from covalent bonds in that ions do not share electrons. Instead, the bond is formed from the attraction of opposite electrical charges.

The polar bonds of water molecules interfere with the ionic bonds of salts, causing *dissociation* (also called *ionization*) **(Figure 2.9)**. This occurs as the partial negative charge on the oxygen atom of water attracts cations, and the partial positive charge on hydrogen atoms attracts anions. The presence of polar bonds interferes with the attraction between the cation and anion.

When cations and anions dissociate from one another and become surrounded by water molecules (are hydrated), they are called **electrolytes** because they can conduct electricity through



▲ **Figure 2.10 Hydrogen bonds.** The transient positive charge (δ^+) on a hydrogen atom is attracted to a negative charge on another atom. Such attraction is a hydrogen bond. Hydrogen bonds can hold together portions of the same molecule or hold two different molecules together. In this case, three hydrogen bonds are holding molecules of cytosine and guanine together.

the solution. Electrolytes are critical for life because they stabilize a variety of compounds, act as electron carriers, and allow electrical gradients to exist within cells. We examine these functions of electrolytes in later chapters.

In nature, chemical bonds range from nonpolar bonds to polar bonds to ionic bonds. The important thing to remember is that electrons are shared between atoms in covalent bonds and transferred from one atom to another in ionic bonds.

CRITICAL THINKING

According to the chart in Figure 2.6, what type of bond (nonpolar covalent, polar covalent, or ionic) would you expect between chlorine and potassium? Between carbon and nitrogen? Between phosphorus and oxygen? Explain your reasoning in each case.

Hydrogen Bonds

Learning Outcome

2.9 Describe hydrogen bonds and discuss their importance in living organisms.

As we have seen, hydrogen atoms bind to oxygen atoms by means of polar covalent bonds, resulting in transient positive charges on the hydrogen atoms. Hydrogen atoms form polar covalent bonds with atoms of other elements as well.

The electrical attraction between a partially charged hydrogen atom and a full or partial negative charge on either a different region of the same molecule or another molecule is called a **hydrogen bond** (Figure 2.10). Hydrogen bonds can be likened to weak ionic bonds in that they arise from the attraction of positive and negative charges. Notice also that although they are a consequence of polar covalent bonds between hydrogen atoms and other, more electronegative atoms, hydrogen bonds themselves are not covalent bonds—they do not involve the sharing of electrons.

As we have seen, covalent bonds are essential for life because they strongly link atoms together to form molecules. Hydrogen bonds, though weaker than covalent bonds, are also essential. The cumulative effect of numerous hydrogen bonds is to stabilize the three-dimensional shapes of large molecules. For example, the familiar double-helix shape of DNA is due in part to the stabilizing effects of thousands of hydrogen bonds holding the molecule together. Exact shape is critical for the functioning of enzymes, antibodies, and intercellular chemical messengers and the recognition of target cells by pathogens. Further, because hydrogen bonds are weak, they can be overcome when necessary. For example, the two complementary halves of a DNA molecule are held together primarily by hydrogen bonds, and they can be separated for DNA replication and other processes (see Figure 7.6).

Table 2.2 summarizes the characteristics of chemical bonds.

Chemical Reactions

Learning Outcome

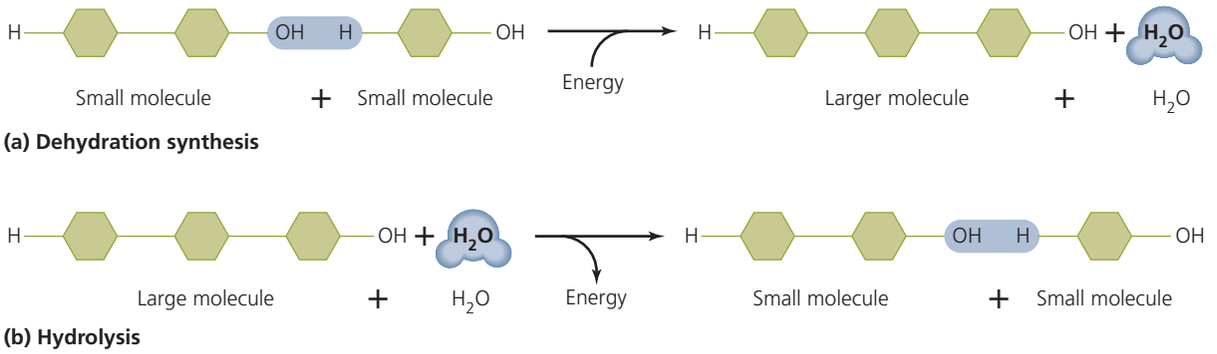
2.10 Describe three general types of chemical reactions found in living things.

You are already familiar with many consequences of chemical reactions: you add yeast to bread dough, and it rises; enzymes in your laundry detergent remove grass stains; and gasoline burned in your car releases energy to speed you on your way. What exactly is happening in these reactions? What is the precise definition of a chemical reaction?

We have discussed how bonds are formed via the sharing of electrons or the attraction of positive and negative charges. Scientists define **chemical reactions** as the making or breaking of such chemical bonds. All chemical reactions begin with

TABLE 2.2 Characteristics of Chemical Bonds

Type of Bond	Description	Relative Strength
Nonpolar covalent bond	Pair of electrons is nearly equally shared between two atoms	Strong
Polar covalent bond	Electrons spend more time around the more electronegative of two atoms	Strong
Ionic bond	Electrons are stripped from a cation by an anion	Weaker than covalent in aqueous environments
Hydrogen bond	Partial positive charges on hydrogen atoms are attracted to full and partial negative charges on other molecules or other regions of the same molecule	Weaker than ionic



▲ **Figure 2.11 Two types of chemical reactions in living things. (a)** Dehydration synthesis. In this energy-requiring reaction, a hydroxyl ion (OH^-) removed from one reactant and a hydrogen ion (H^+) removed from another reactant combine to form hydrogen hydroxide (HOH), which is water. **(b)** Hydrolysis, an energy-yielding reaction that is the reverse of a dehydration synthesis reaction. *What are the scientific words meaning "energy-requiring" and "energy-releasing"?*

Figure 2.11 *Endothermic means "energy-requiring," and exothermic means "energy-releasing."*

reactants—the atoms, ions, or molecules that exist at the beginning of a reaction. Similarly, all chemical reactions result in **products**—the atoms, ions, or molecules left after the reaction is complete. *Biochemistry* involves the chemical reactions of living things.

Reactants and products may have very different physical and chemical characteristics. For example, hydrogen and oxygen are gases and have very different properties from water, which is composed of hydrogen and oxygen atoms. However, the numbers and types of atoms never change in a chemical reaction; atoms are neither destroyed nor created, only rearranged.

Now let's turn our attention to three general categories of biochemical reactions (reactions that occur in organisms): *synthesis, decomposition,* and *exchange reactions.*

Synthesis Reactions

Learning Outcomes

2.11 Give an example of a synthesis reaction that involves the formation of a water molecule.

2.12 Contrast endothermic and exothermic chemical reactions.

Synthesis reactions involve the formation of larger, more complex molecules. Synthesis reactions can be expressed symbolically as

$$\text{Reactant} + \text{Reactant} \rightarrow \text{Product(s)}$$

The arrow indicates the direction of the reaction and the formation of new chemical bonds. For example, algae make their own glucose (sugar) using the following reaction:

$$6\ H_2O + 6\ CO_2 \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2$$

The reaction is read, "Six molecules of water plus six molecules of carbon dioxide yield one molecule of glucose and six molecules of oxygen." Notice that the total number and kind of atoms are the same on both sides of the reaction.

A common synthesis reaction in biochemistry is a **dehydration synthesis,** in which two smaller molecules are joined together by a covalent bond, and a water molecule is also formed **(Figure 2.11a)**. The word *dehydration* in the name of this type of reaction refers to the fact that one of the products is a water molecule formed when a hydrogen ion (H^+) from one reactant combines with a hydroxyl ion (OH^-) from another reactant.

Synthesis reactions require energy to break bonds in the reactants and to form new bonds to make products. Reactions that require energy are said to be **endothermic**[8] **reactions** because they trap energy within new molecular bonds. As we will see in Chapter 6, an energy supply for fueling synthesis reactions is one common requirement of all living things.

Taken together, all of the synthesis reactions in an organism are called **anabolism.**

Decomposition Reactions

Learning Outcome

2.13 Give an example of a decomposition reaction that involves breaking the bonds of a water molecule.

Decomposition reactions are the reverse of synthesis reactions in that they break bonds within larger molecules to form smaller atoms, ions, and molecules. These reactions release energy and are therefore **exothermic.**[9] In general, decomposition reactions can be represented by the following formula:

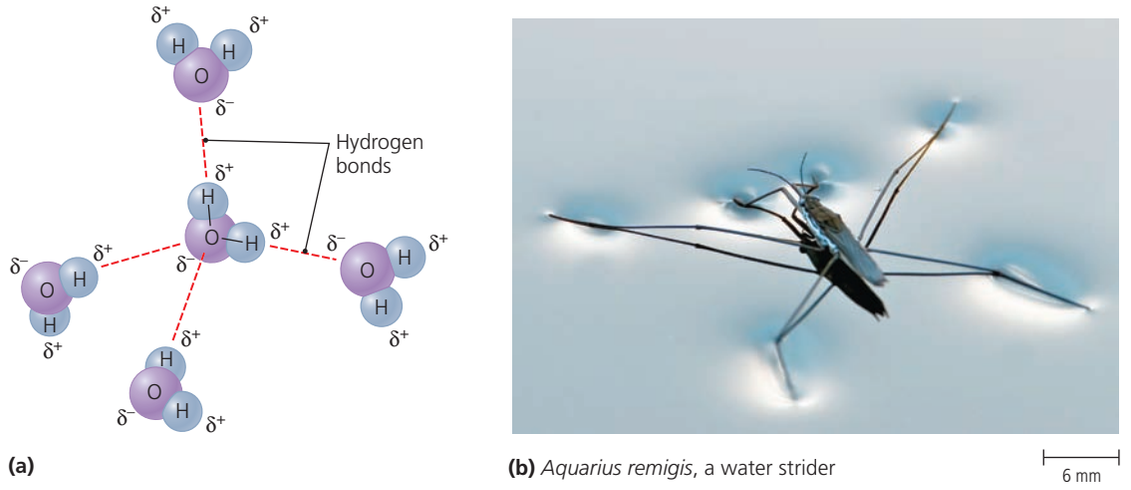
$$\text{Reactant} \rightarrow \text{Product} + \text{Product}$$

An example of a biologically important decomposition reaction is the aerobic decomposition of glucose to form carbon dioxide and water:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ H_2O + 6\ CO_2$$

Note that this reaction is exactly the reverse of the synthesis reaction in algae that we examined previously. Synthesis and decomposition reactions are often reversible in living things.

[8]From Greek *endon*, meaning "within," and *thermos*, meaning "heat" (energy).
[9]From Greek *exo*, meaning "outside," and *thermos*, meaning "heat" (energy).



(a) (b) *Aquarius remigis*, a water strider

▲ **Figure 2.12 The cohesiveness of liquid water.** **(a)** Water molecules are cohesive because hydrogen bonds cause them to stick to one another. **(b)** One result of cohesiveness in water is surface tension, which can be strong enough to support the weight of insects known as water striders.

A common type of decomposition reaction in biochemistry is **hydrolysis,**[10] the reverse of dehydration synthesis **(Figure 2.11b)**. In hydrolytic reactions, a covalent bond in a large molecule is broken, and the ionic components of water (H^+ and OH^-) are added to the products.

Collectively, all of the decomposition reactions in an organism are called **catabolism.**

Exchange Reactions

Learning Outcome

2.14 Compare exchange reactions to synthesis and decomposition reactions.

Exchange reactions (also called *transfer reactions*) have features similar to both synthesis and decomposition reactions. For instance, they involve breaking and forming covalent bonds, and they involve both endothermic and exothermic steps. As the name suggests, atoms are moved from one molecule to another. In general, these reactions can be represented as either

$$A + BC \rightarrow AB + C$$

or

$$AB + CD \rightarrow AD + BC$$

An important exchange reaction within organisms is the phosphorylation of glucose:

$$\underset{\text{Glucose}}{C_6H_{12}O_6} + \underset{\text{Adenosine triphosphate}}{A\text{—}Ⓟ\text{—}Ⓟ\text{—}Ⓟ} \rightarrow \underset{\text{Glucose phosphate}}{C_6H_{11}O_6\text{—}Ⓟ} + \underset{\text{Adenosine diphosphate}}{A\text{—}Ⓟ\text{—}Ⓟ} + H^+$$

The sum of all of the chemical reactions in an organism, including catabolic, anabolic, and exchange reactions, is called **metabolism.** (We examine metabolism in more detail in Chapter 5.)

[10]From Greek *hydor,* meaning "water," and *lysis*, meaning "loosening."

Water, Acids, Bases, and Salts

As previously noted, living things depend on organic compounds, those that contain carbon and hydrogen atoms. Living things also require a variety of **inorganic chemicals,** which typically lack carbon. Such inorganic substances include water, oxygen molecules, metal ions, and many acids, bases, and salts. In this section we examine the characteristics of some of these inorganic substances.

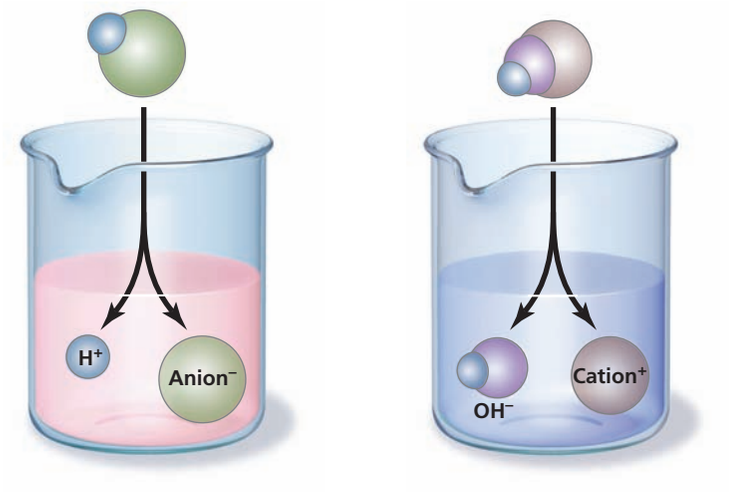
Water

Learning Outcome

2.15 Describe five qualities of water that make it vital to life.

Water is the most abundant substance in organisms, constituting 50% to 99% of their mass. Most of the special characteristics that make water vital result from the fact that a water molecule has two polar covalent bonds, allowing hydrogen bonding between water molecules and their neighbors. Among the special properties of water are the following:

- Water molecules are cohesive; that is, they tend to stick to one another through hydrogen bonding **(Figure 2.12)**. This property generates many special characteristics of water, including *surface tension,* which allows water to form a thin layer on the surface of cells. This aqueous layer is necessary for the transport of dissolved materials into and out of a cell.
- Water is an excellent *solvent*; that is, it dissolves salts and other electrically charged molecules because it is attracted to both positive and negative charges (see Figure 2.9).
- Water remains a liquid across a wider range of temperatures than other molecules of its size. This is critical because living things require water in liquid form.
- Water can absorb significant amounts of heat energy without itself changing temperature. Further, when heated



(a) Acid (b) Base

▲ **Figure 2.13 Acids and bases.** **(a)** Acids dissociate in water into hydrogen ions and anions. **(b)** Many bases dissociate into hydroxyl ions and cations.

water molecules eventually evaporate, they take much of this absorbed energy with them. These properties moderate temperature fluctuations that would otherwise damage organisms.

- Water molecules participate in many chemical reactions within cells both as reactants in hydrolysis and as products of dehydration synthesis.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How can hydrogen bonding between water molecules help explain water's ability to absorb large amounts of energy before evaporating?

Acids and Bases

Learning Outcome

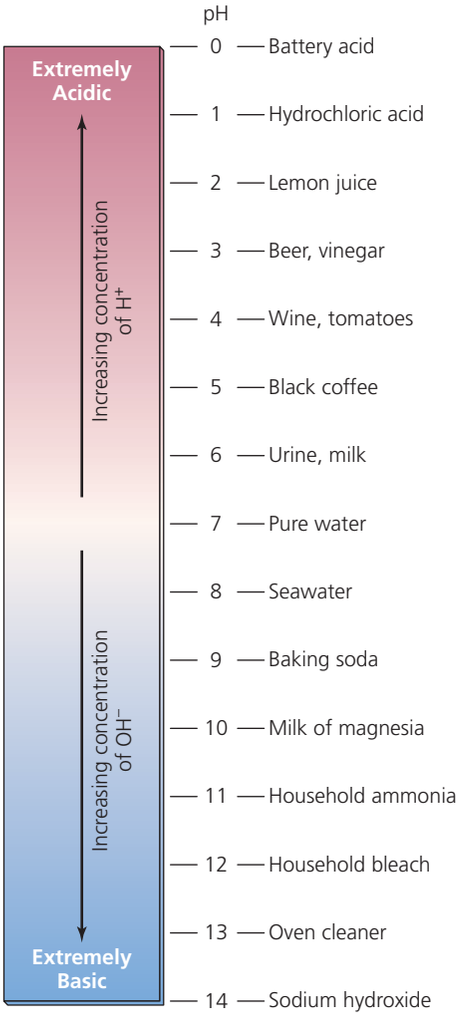
2.16 Contrast acids, bases, and salts and explain the role of buffers.

As we have seen, the polar bonds of water molecules dissociate salts into their component cations and anions. A similar process occurs with substances known as acids and bases.

An **acid** is a substance that dissociates into one or more hydrogen ions (H^+) and one or more anions **(Figure 2.13a)**. Acids can be inorganic molecules, such as hydrochloric acid (HCl) and sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4), or organic molecules, such as amino acids and nucleic acids. Familiar organic acids are found in lemon juice, black coffee, and tea. Of course, the anions of organic acids contain carbon, whereas those of inorganic acids do not.

A **base** is a molecule that binds with H^+ when dissolved in water. Some bases dissociate into cations and *hydroxyl ions* (OH^-) **(Figure 2.13b)**, which then combine with hydrogen ions to form water molecules:

$$H^+ + OH^- \rightarrow H_2O$$



▲ **Figure 2.14 The pH scale.** Values below 7 are acidic; values above 7 are basic.

Other bases, such as household ammonia (NH_3), directly accept hydrogen ions and become compound ions such as NH_4^+ (ammonium). Another common household base is baking soda (sodium bicarbonate, $NaHCO_3$).

Metabolism requires a relatively constant balance of acids and bases because hydrogen ions and hydroxyl ions are involved in many chemical reactions. Further, many complex molecules such as proteins lose their functional shapes when acidity changes. If the concentration of either hydrogen ions or hydroxyl ions deviates too far from normal, metabolism ceases.

The concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution is expressed using a logarithmic **pH scale** **(Figure 2.14)**. The term *pH* comes from *potential hydrogen*, which is the negative of the logarithm of the concentration of hydrogen ions. In this logarithmic scale, it is important to notice that acidity increases as pH values decrease and that each decrease by a whole number in pH indicates a 10-fold increase in acidity (hydrogen ion concentration). For example, a glass of grapefruit juice, which has a pH of 3.0, contains 10 times as many hydrogen ions as the same volume of tomato juice, which has a pH of 4.0. Similarly, tomato

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

ARCHITECTURE-PRESERVING BACTERIA

The Alhambra

The Alhambra, a Moorish palace constructed of limestone and marble beginning in the ninth century, was built to last. But not even stone lasts forever. Wind and rain wear away the surface. Acid rain reacts with the calcite crystals in limestone and marble. As years pass, stone slowly crumbles.

Those who would preserve the Alhambra and other historic structures face a dilemma. The microscopic pores that riddle limestone and marble make these materials particularly susceptible to weathering and decay. Sealing the stone's pores can reduce weathering but can also lock in moisture that speeds the stone's decay.

With the help of *Myxococcus xanthus*, a bacterium commonly found in soil, a team of researchers led by mineralogist Carlos Rodríguez-Navarro of the University of Granada may have found a way to protect the stone of structures like the Alhambra.

In many natural environments, bacteria instigate the formation of calcite crystals like the ones in limestone. In tests conducted using samples of the limestone commonly used in historic Spanish buildings, *M. xanthus* formed calcite crystals that lined the stone's pores rather than plugging them. The crystals formed by the bacteria are even more durable than the original stone, offering the potential for long-term protection.

juice is 1000 times more acidic than pure water, which has a pH of 7.0 (neutral). Water is neutral because it dissociates into one hydrogen cation and one hydroxyl anion:

$$H_2O \rightarrow H^+ + OH^-$$

Alkaline (basic) substances have pH values greater than 7.0. They reduce the number of free hydrogen ions by combining with them. For bases that produce hydroxyl ions, the concentration of hydroxyl ions is inversely related to the concentration of hydrogen ions.

Organisms can tolerate only a certain, relatively narrow pH range. Fluctuations outside an organism's preferred range inhibit its metabolism and may even be fatal. Most organisms contain natural **buffers**—substances, such as proteins, that prevent drastic changes in internal pH. In a laboratory culture, the metabolic activity of microorganisms can change the pH of microbial growth solutions as nutrients are taken up and wastes are released; therefore, pH buffers are often added to them. One common buffer used in microbiological media is KH_2PO_4 (potassium dihydrogen phosphate), which exists as either a weak acid or a weak base, depending on the pH of its environment. Under acidic conditions, KH_2PO_4 is a base that combines with H^+, neutralizing the acidic environment; in alkaline conditions, however, KH_2PO_4 acts as an acid, releasing hydrogen ions.

Microorganisms differ in their ability to tolerate various ranges of pH. Many grow best when the pH is between 6.5 and 8.5. Photosynthetic bacteria known as *cyanobacteria* grow well in more basic solutions. Fungi generally tolerate acidic environments better than most prokaryotes, though acid-loving prokaryotes, called *acidophiles,* require acidic conditions. Some bacteria are tolerant of acid. One such bacterium is *Propionibacterium acnes* (prō-pē-on-i-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm ak´nēz), which can cause acne in the skin and normally has a pH of about 4.0. Another is *Helicobacter pylori* (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter pī´lō-rē),[11] a curved bacterium that has been shown to cause ulcers in the stomach, where pH can fall as low as 1.5 when acid is being actively secreted. **Clinical Case Study: Raw Oysters and Antacids: A Deadly Mix?** focuses on how the use of antacids may increase the survival rates of certain disease-causing bacteria in the stomach.

Microorganisms can change the pH of their environment by utilizing acids and bases and by producing acidic or basic wastes. For example, fermentative microorganisms form organic acids from the decomposition of sugar, and the bacterium *Thiobacillus* (thī-ō-bă-sil´ŭs) can reduce the pH of its environment to 0.0. Acid produced by this bacterium in mine water dissolves enough uranium and copper from low-grade ore to make some mines profitable.

Scientists measure pH with a pH meter or with test papers impregnated with chemicals (such as litmus or phenol red) that change color in response to pH. In a microbiological laboratory, changes in color of such pH indicators incorporated into microbial growth media are commonly used to distinguish among bacterial genera.

Salts

As we have seen, a salt is a compound that dissociates in water into cations and anions other than H^+ and OH^-. Acids and hydroxyl-yielding bases neutralize each other during exchange reactions that produce water and salt. For instance, milk of

[11] The name *pylori* refers to the pylorus, a region of the stomach.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

RAW OYSTERS AND ANTACIDS: A DEADLY MIX?

The highly acidic environment of the stomach kills most bacteria before they cause disease. One bacterium that can slightly tolerate conditions as it passes through the stomach is *Vibrio vulnificus*—a bacterium commonly ingested by eating raw tainted oysters. The bacterium cannot be seen, tasted, or smelled in food or water.

V. vulnificus is an emerging pathogen and a growing cause of food poisoning in the United States: it triggers vomiting, diarrhea, and abdominal pain. The pathogen can also infect the bloodstream, causing life-threatening illness characterized by fever, chills, skin lesions, and deadly loss of blood pressure. About 50% of patients with bloodstream infections die. *V. vulnificus* especially affects the immunocompromised and people with long-term liver disease.

Researchers have discovered that taking antacids may make people more susceptible to becoming ill from *V. vulnificus*. They found that antacids in a simulated gastric environment significantly increased the survival rate of *V. vulnificus*.

1. Why are patients who take antacids at greater risk for infections with *V. vulnificus*?
2. Will antacids raise or lower the pH of the stomach?
3. Other than refraining from antacids, what can people do to reduce their risk of infection?

Reference: Adapted from *MMWR* 45:621–624. 1996.

magnesia (magnesium hydroxide) is an antacid used to neutralize excess stomach acid. The chemical reaction is

$$\underset{\text{Magnesium hydroxide}}{Mg(OH)_2} + \underset{\text{Hydrochloric acid}}{2\,HCl} \rightarrow \underset{\text{Magnesium chloride (salt)}}{MgCl_2} + \underset{\text{Water}}{2\,H_2O}$$

Cations and anions of salts are electrolytes. A cell uses electrolytes to create electrical differences between its inside and outside, to transfer electrons from one location to another, and as important components of many enzymes. Certain organisms also use salts such as calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) to provide structure and support for their cells.

CRITICAL THINKING

How can a single molecule of magnesium hydroxide neutralize two molecules of hydrochloric acid?

Organic Macromolecules

Inorganic molecules play important roles in an organism's metabolism; however, water excluded, they compose only about 1.5% of its mass. Inorganic molecules are typically too small and too simple to constitute an organism's basic structures or to perform the complicated chemical reactions required of life. These functions are fulfilled by organic molecules, which are generally larger and much more complex.

Functional Groups

Learning Outcome

2.17 Define *functional group* as it relates to organic chemistry.

As we have seen, organic molecules contain carbon and hydrogen atoms, and each carbon atom can form four covalent bonds with other atoms (see Figure 2.5c and d). Carbon atoms that are linked together in branched chains, unbranched chains, and rings provide the basic frameworks of organic molecules.

Atoms of other elements are bound to these carbon frameworks to form an unlimited number of compounds. Besides carbon and hydrogen, the most common elements in organic compounds are oxygen, nitrogen, phosphorus, and sulfur. Other elements, such as iron, copper, molybdenum, manganese, zinc, and iodine, are important in some proteins.

Atoms often appear in certain common arrangements called **functional groups.** For example, —NH_2, the amino functional group, is found in all amino acids, and —OH, the hydroxyl functional group,[12] is common to all alcohols. When a class of organic molecules is discussed, the letter **R** (for *residue*) designates atoms in the compound that vary from one molecule to another. The symbol R—OH, therefore, represents the general formula for an alcohol. Table 2.3 on p. 40 describes some common functional groups of organic molecules.

There is a great variety of organic compounds, but certain basic types are used by all organisms. These molecules—known as *macromolecules* because they are very large—are lipids, carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acids.

Lipids

Learning Outcomes

2.18 Describe the structure of a triglyceride molecule, and compare it to that of a phospholipid.

2.19 Distinguish among saturated, unsaturated, and polyunsaturated fatty acids.

Lipids are a diverse group of organic macromolecules not composed of regular subunits. They have one common trait—they are **hydrophobic;**[13] that is, they are insoluble in water. Lipids have little or no affinity for water because they are composed almost entirely of carbon and hydrogen atoms linked by nonpolar

[12]Note that the hydroxyl functional group is not the same thing as the hydroxyl *ion* because the former is covalently bonded to a carbon atom.
[13]From Greek *hydor,* meaning "water," and *phobos,* meaning "fear."

TABLE 2.3 Functional Groups of Organic Molecules and Some Classes of Compounds in Which They Are Found

Structure	Name	Class of Compounds
—OH	Hydroxyl	Alcohol Monosaccharide Amino acid
R—CH_2—O—CH_2—R′	Ether	Disaccharide Polysaccharide
R—C(=O)—R′	Internal carbonyl—a carbon atom (in R group) on each side	Ketone Carbohydrate
R—C(=O)—H	Terminal carbonyl—a carbon atom (in R group) on only one side	Aldehyde
R—C(=O)—O—H	Carboxyl	Amino acid Protein Fatty acid
R—C(=H)—NH_2	Amino	Amino acid Protein
R—C(=O)—O—R′	Ester	Fat Wax
R—CH_2—SH	Sulfhydryl	Amino acid Protein
R—CH_2—O—P(=O)(OH)—OH	Organic phosphate	Phospholipid Nucleotide ATP

covalent bonds. Because these bonds are nonpolar, they have no attraction to the polar bonds of water molecules. To look at it another way, the polar water molecules are attracted to each other and exclude the nonpolar lipid molecules. There are four major groups of lipids in cells: fats, phospholipids, waxes, and steroids.

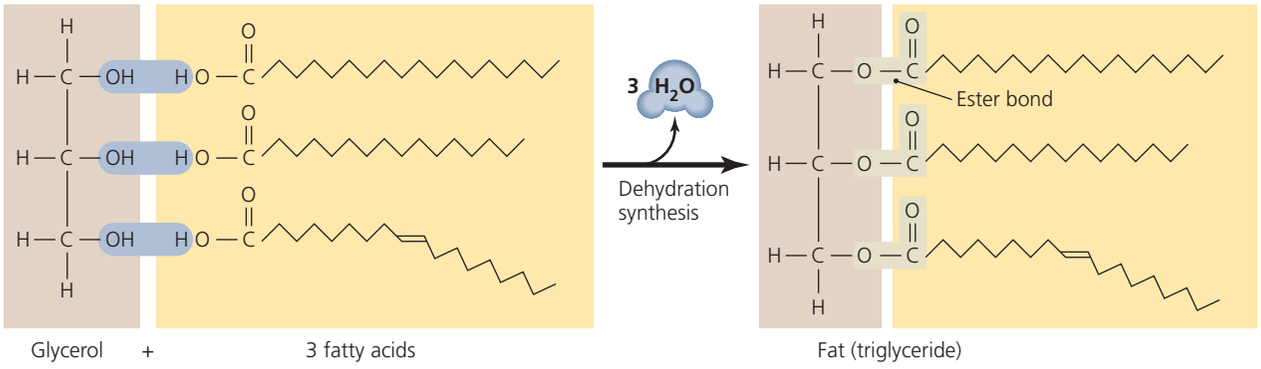
Fats

Organisms make **fats** via dehydration synthesis reactions that form *esters* between three chainlike fatty acids and an alcohol named glycerol **(Figure 2.15a)**. Fats are also called *triglycerides* because they contain three fatty acid molecules linked to a molecule of glycerol.

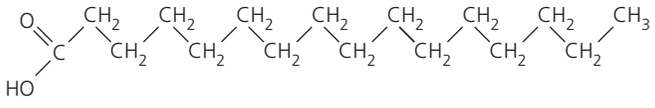
The three fatty acids in a fat molecule may be identical or different from one another, but each usually has 12 to 20 carbon atoms. An important difference among fatty acids is the presence and location of double bonds between the carbon atoms. When the carbon atoms are linked solely by single bonds, every carbon atom, with the exception of the terminal ones, is covalently linked to two hydrogen atoms. Such a fatty acid is **saturated** with hydrogen **(Figure 2.15b)**. In contrast, **unsaturated fatty acids** contain at least one double bond between adjacent carbon atoms and therefore contain at least one carbon atom bound to only a single hydrogen atom. If several double bonds exist in even one fatty acid of a molecule of fat, then it is a **polyunsaturated fat.**

Saturated fats (composed of saturated fatty acids), like those found in animals, are usually solid at room temperature because their fatty acids can be packed closely together. Unsaturated fatty acids, by contrast, are bent at every double bond and so cannot be packed tightly; they remain liquid at room temperature. Most fats in plants are unsaturated or polyunsaturated. Table 2.4 on p. 44 compares the structures and melting points of four common fatty acids.

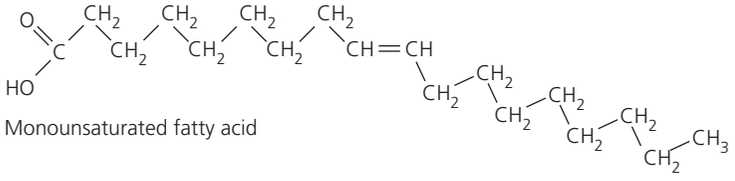
Fats contain an abundance of energy stored in their carbon-carbon covalent bonds. Indeed, a major role of fats in organisms is to store energy. (We will see in Chapter 5 that fats can be catabolized to provide energy for movement, synthesis, and transport.)



(a)



Saturated fatty acid



Monounsaturated fatty acid

(b)

▲ **Figure 2.15** **Fats (triglycerides). (a)** Fats are made in dehydration synthesis reactions that form ester bonds between a glycerol molecule and three fatty acids. **(b)** Saturated fatty acids have only single bonds between their carbon atoms, whereas unsaturated fatty acids have double bonds between carbon atoms. Scientists often use abbreviated diagrams of fatty acids in which each angle represents a carbon atom and most hydrogen atoms are not shown, as seen in part (a) of this figure. *According to Table 2.4 on p. 44, which fatty acids are shown in Figure 2.15a?*

Figure 2.15 *Stearic acid, palmitic acid, and oleic acid.*

Phospholipids

Phospholipids are similar to fats, but they contain only two fatty acid chains instead of three. In phospholipids, the third carbon atom of glycerol is linked to a phosphate (PO_4) functional group instead of a fatty acid **(Figure 2.16a)**. Like fats, different phospholipids contain different fatty acids. Small organic groups linked to the phosphate group provide additional variety among phospholipid molecules.

The fatty acid "tail" portion of a phospholipid molecule is nonpolar and thus hydrophobic, whereas the phospholipid "head" polar and thus **hydrophilic.**[14] As a result, phospholipids placed in a watery environment will always self-assemble into forms that keep the fatty acid tails away from water. One way they do this is to form a spherical phospholipid bilayer, which resembles a two-ply ball **(Figure 2.16b)**.

The fatty acid tails, which are hydrophobic, congregate in the water-free interior of bilayers. The polar phosphate heads orient toward the water because they are hydrophilic. Phospholipid bilayers make up the membranes surrounding cells as well as the internal membranes of plant, fungal, and animal cells.

Waxes

Waxes contain one long-chain fatty acid linked covalently to a long-chain alcohol by an ester bond. Waxes do not have a hydrophilic head; thus, they are completely water insoluble. Certain microorganisms, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī′k ō-bak-t ēr′ē-ŭm too-ber-ky ū-l ō′sis), are surrounded by a waxy wall, making them resistant to drying. Some marine microbes use waxes instead of fats as energy storage molecules.

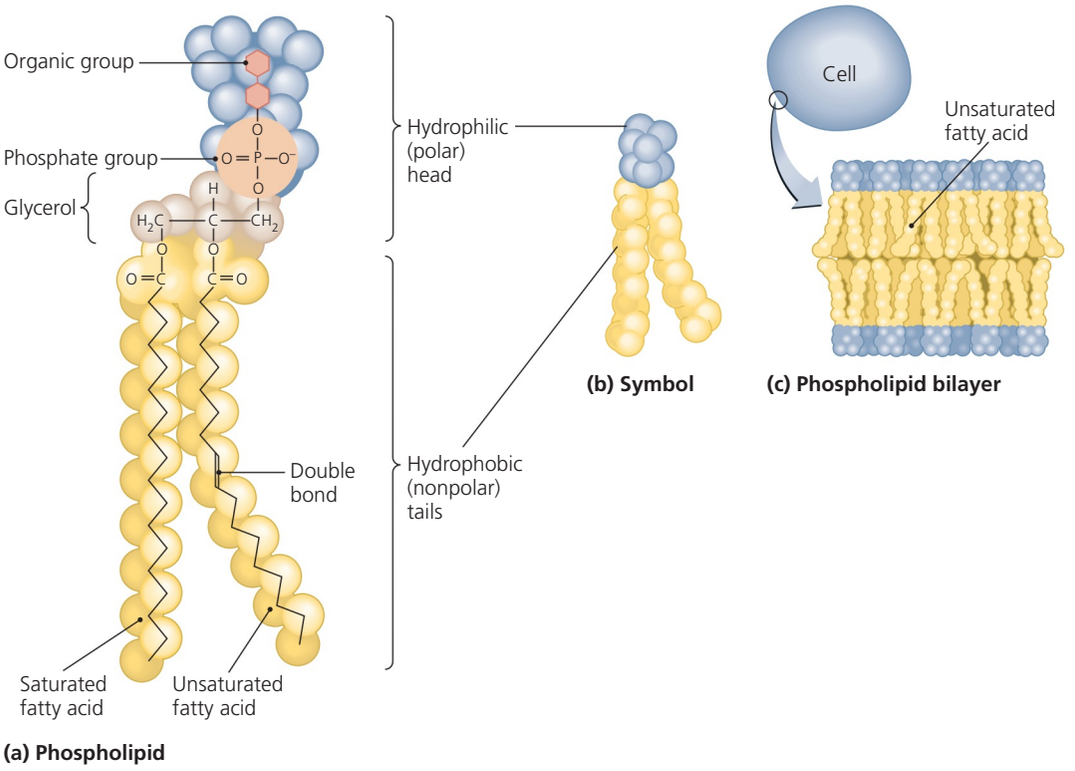
Steroids

A final group of lipids are **steroids.** Steroids consist of four rings (each containing five or six carbon atoms) that are fused to one another and attached to various side chains and functional groups **(Figure 2.17a)**. Steroids play many roles in human metabolism. Some act as hormones; another steroid, *cholesterol*, is perhaps familiar to you as an undesirable component of food. However, cholesterol is also an essential part of the phospholipid bilayer membrane surrounding an animal cell. Cells of fungi, plants, and one group of bacteria (mycoplasmas) have similar sterol molecules in their membranes. Sterols, which are steroids with an —OH functional group, interfere with the tight packing of the fatty acid chains of phospholipids **(Figure 2.17b)**. This keeps the membranes fluid and flexible at low temperatures. Without steroids such as cholesterol, the membranes of cells would become stiff and inflexible in the cold.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

We have seen that it is important that biological membranes remain flexible. Most bacteria lack sterols in their membranes and instead incorporate unsaturated phospholipids in the membranes to resist tight packing and solidification. Examine Table 2.4 on p. 44. Which fatty acid might best protect the membranes of an ice-dwelling bacterium?

[14] From Greek *philos*, meaning "love."



▲ **Figure 2.16 Phospholipids.** **(a)** A phospholipid is composed of a hydrophilic (polar) "head," which is composed of glycerol and a phosphate group, and two hydrophobic (nonpolar) fatty acid "tails." **(b)** The symbol used to represent phospholipids. **(c)** In water, phospholipids can self-assemble into spherical bilayers. Phospholipids containing unsaturated fatty acids do not pack together as tightly as those containing saturated fatty acids.

Carbohydrates, proteins, and nucleic acid macromolecules are composed of simpler subunits known as **monomers,**[15] which are basic building blocks. The monomers of these macromolecules are joined together to form chains of monomers called **polymers.**[16] Some macromolecular polymers are composed of hundreds of thousands of monomers.

Carbohydrates

Learning Outcome

2.20 Discuss the roles carbohydrates play in living systems.

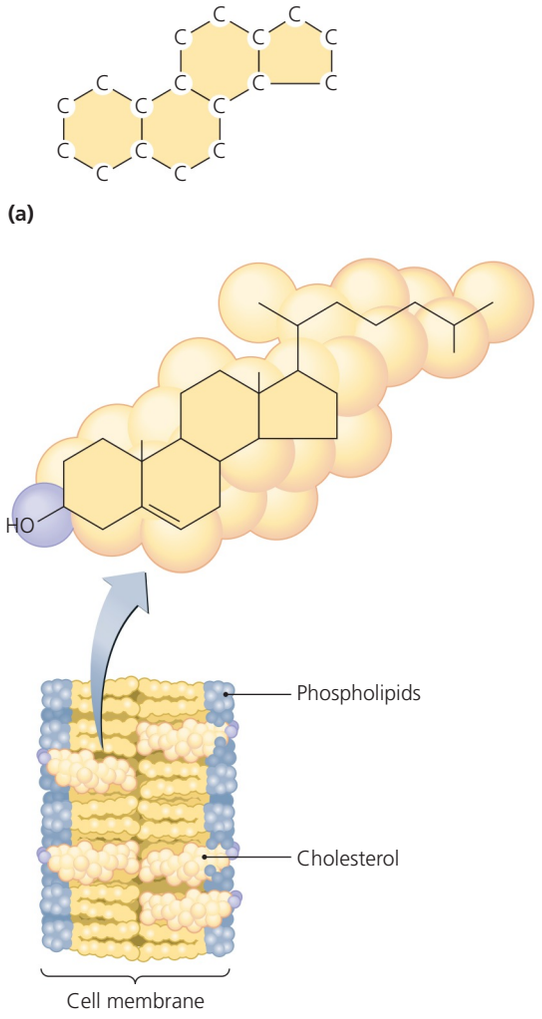
Carbohydrates are organic molecules composed solely of atoms of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Most carbohydrate compounds contain an equal number of oxygen and carbon atoms and twice as many hydrogen atoms as carbon atoms, so the general formula for a carbohydrate is $(CH_2O)_n$, where n indicates the number of CH_2O units.

Carbohydrates play many important roles in organisms. Large carbohydrates, such as starch and glycogen, are used for the long-term storage of chemical energy, and a smaller carbohydrate molecule—glucose—serves as a ready energy source in most cells. Carbohydrates also form part of the backbones of DNA and RNA, and other carbohydrates are converted routinely into amino acids. Additionally, polymers of carbohydrate form the cell walls of most fungi, plants, algae, and prokaryotes and are involved in intercellular interactions between animal cells. For example, specific carbohydrate-protein combinations found on the surfaces of white blood cells determine which cells interact in immune responses against pathogens.

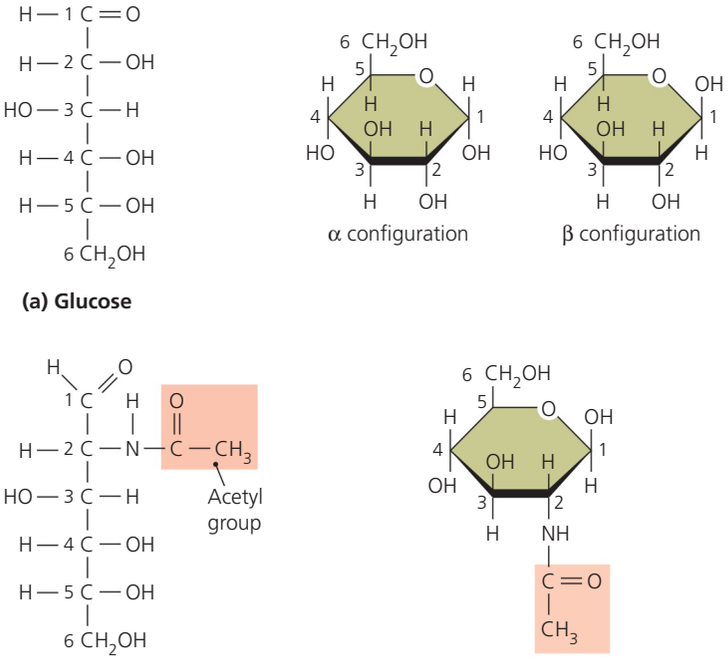
Monosaccharides

The simplest carbohydrates are **monosaccharides**[17]—simple sugars **(Figure 2.18)**. The general names for the classes of monosaccharides are formed from a prefix indicating the number of carbon atoms and from the suffix *-ose*. For example, *pentoses* are sugars with five carbon atoms, and *hexoses* are sugars with six carbon atoms. Pentoses and hexoses are particularly important in cellular metabolism. For example, deoxyribose, which is the sugar component of DNA, is a pentose. Glucose is a hexose and the primary energy molecule of cells, and

[15]From Greek *mono*, meaning "one," and *meris*, meaning "part."
[16]From Greek *poly*, meaning "many," and *meris*, meaning "part."
[17]From Greek *sakcharon*, meaning "sugar."



▲ **Figure 2.17** **Steroids.** **(a)** Steroids are lipids characterized by four "fused" rings. **(b)** The steroid cholesterol functions in animal and protozoan cell membranes to prevent packing of phospholipids, thereby keeping the membranes fluid at low temperatures.



▲ **Figure 2.18** **Monosaccharides (simple sugars).** Although simple sugars may exist as either linear molecules (at left) or rings (at right), energy dynamics in the watery cytoplasm of cells generally favor ring forms. **(a)** Glucose, a hexose, is the primary energy source for cellular metabolism and an important monomer in many larger carbohydrates. Chemists number the carbon atoms as shown. Alpha and beta ring configurations differ in the location of oxygen bound to carbon 1. **(b)** *N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG), a monomer in bacterial cell walls.

fructose is a hexose found in fruit. Chemists assign numbers to the carbon atoms.

Monosaccharides may exist as linear molecules, but because of energy dynamics, they usually take cyclic (ring) forms. In some cases, more than one cyclic structure may exist. For example, glucose can assume an alpha (α) configuration or a beta (β) configuration (see Figure 2.18a). As we will see, these configurations play important roles in the formation of different polymers.

Disaccharides

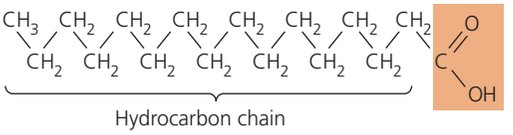
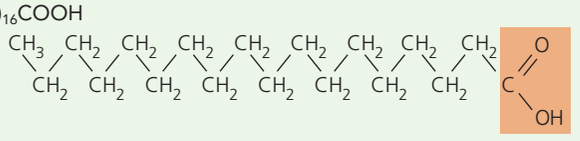
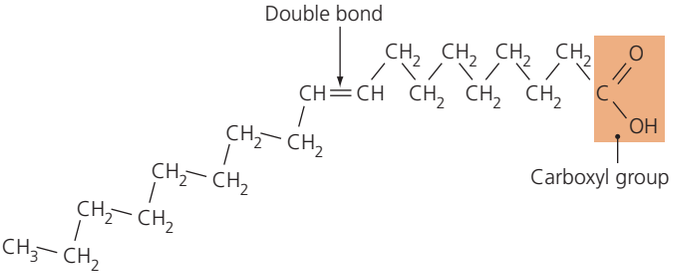
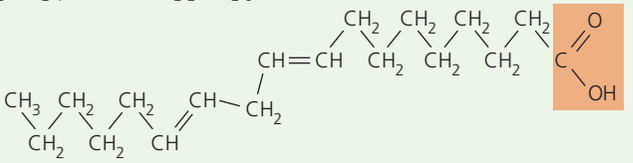
When two monosaccharide molecules are linked together via dehydration synthesis, the result is a **disaccharide.** For example, the linkage of two hexoses, glucose and fructose, forms sucrose (table sugar) and a molecule of water **(Figure 2.19a)**. Other disaccharides include maltose (malt sugar) and lactose (milk sugar). Disaccharides can be broken down via hydrolysis into their constituent monosaccharides **(Figure 2.19b)**.

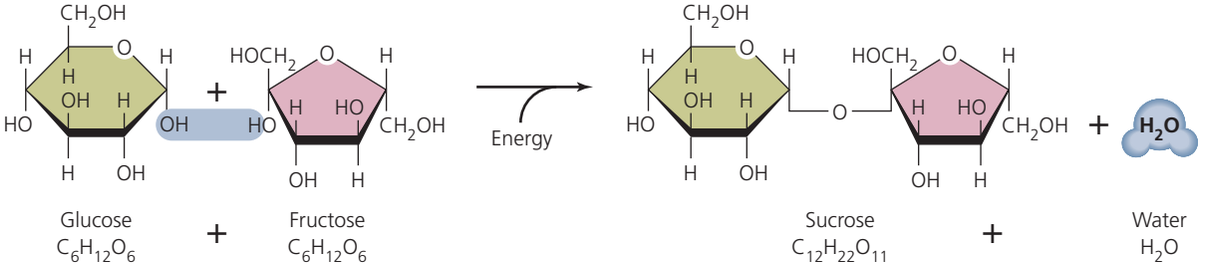
Polysaccharides

Polysaccharides are polymers composed of tens, hundreds, or thousands of monosaccharides that have been covalently linked in dehydration synthesis reactions. Even polysaccharides that contain only glucose monomers can be quite diverse because they can differ according to their monosaccharide monomer configurations (either alpha or beta) and their shapes (either branched or unbranched). Cellulose, the main constituent of the cell walls of plants and some green algae, is a long unbranched molecule that contains only β-monomers of glucose linked between carbons 1 and 4 of alternating monomers; such bonds are termed β-1,4 bonds **(Figure 2.20a)**. Amylose, a starch storage compound in plants, has only α-1,4 bonds and is unbranched **(Figure 2.20b)**; glycogen, a storage molecule formed in the liver and muscle cells of animals, is a highly branched molecule with both α-1,4 and α-1,6 bonds **(Figure 2.20c)**.

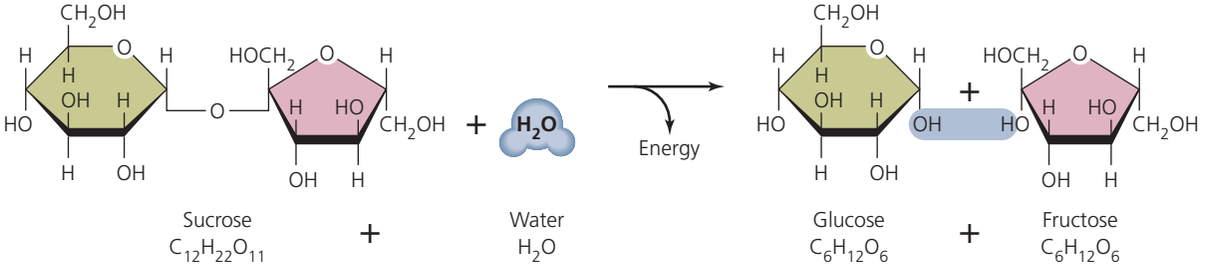
The cell walls of bacteria are composed of *peptidoglycan,* which is made of polysaccharides and amino acids (see Figure 3.14). Polysaccharides may also be linked to lipids to

TABLE 2.4 Common Fatty Acids in Fats and Cell Membranes

Numbers of Carbon Atoms: Double Bonds	Type of Fatty Acid	Structure and Formula	Common Name	Melting Point
16:0	Saturated	$CH_3(CH_2)_{14}COOH$ 	Palmitic acid	63°C
18:0	Saturated	$CH_3(CH_2)_{16}COOH$ 	Stearic acid	70°C
18:1	Monounsaturated	$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH{=}CH(CH_2)_7COOH$ 	Oleic acid	16°C
18:2	Polyunsaturated	$CH_3(CH_2)_4(CH{=}CHCH_2)_2(CH_2)_6COOH$ 	Linoleic acid	−5°C

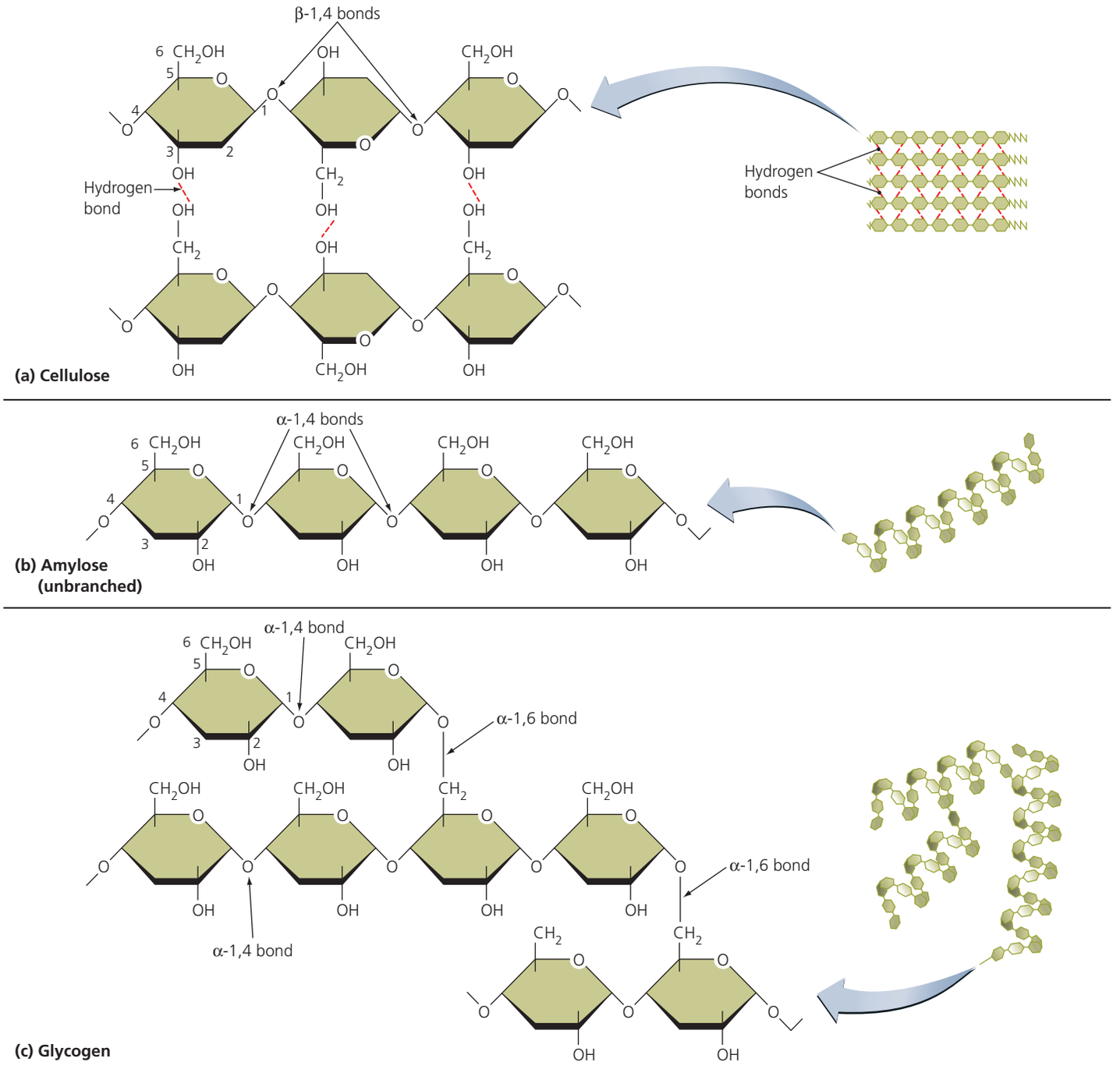


(a) Dehydration synthesis of sucrose



(b) Hydrolysis of sucrose

▲ **Figure 2.19 Disaccharides.** **(a)** Formation of the disaccharide sucrose via dehydration synthesis. **(b)** Breakdown of sucrose via hydrolysis.



▲ **Figure 2.20 Polysaccharides.** All three polysaccharides shown here are composed solely of glucose but differ in the configuration of the glucose monomers and the amount of branching. **(a)** Cellulose, the major structural material in plants, is unbranched and contains only β-1,4 bonds. **(b)** Amylose is an unbranched plant starch with only α-1,4 bonds. **(c)** Glycogen, a highly branched storage molecule in animals, is composed of glucose monomers linked by α-1,4 or α-1,6 bonds.

form glycolipids, which can form cell markers such as those involved in the ABO blood typing system in humans.

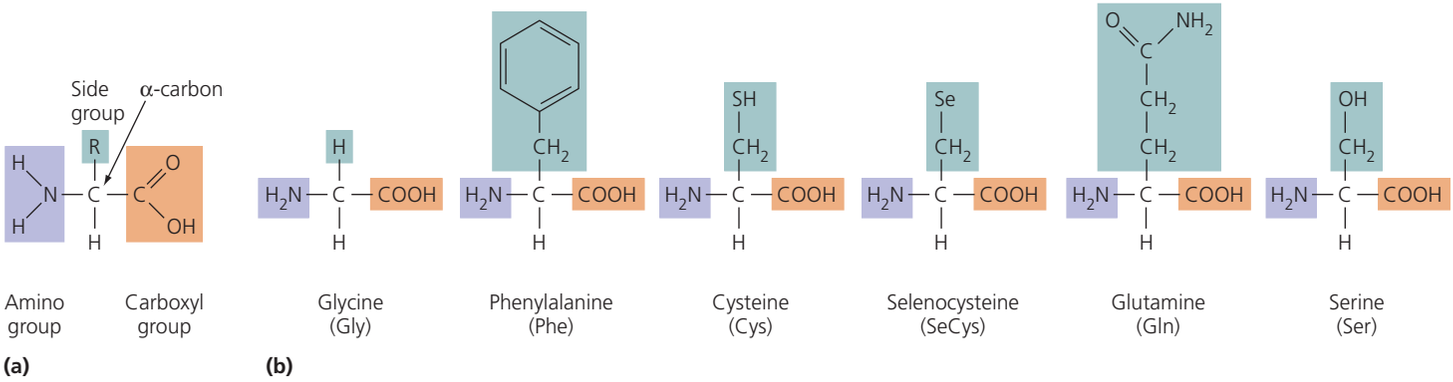
Proteins

Learning Outcomes

2.21 Describe five general functions of proteins in organisms.
2.22 Sketch and label four levels of protein structure.

The most complex organic compounds are **proteins,** which are composed mostly of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur. Proteins perform many functions in cells, including the following:

- **Structure.** Proteins are structural components found in cell walls, in membranes, and within cells themselves. Proteins are also the primary structural material of hair, nails, the outer cells of skin, muscle, and flagella and cilia



▲ **Figure 2.21** **Amino acids. (a)** The basic structure of an amino acid. The central α-carbon is attached to an amino group, a hydrogen atom, a carboxyl group, and a side group (—R group) that varies among amino acids. **(b)** Some selected amino acids, with their side groups highlighted. Note that each amino acid has a distinctive abbreviation.

(the last two act to move microorganisms through their environment).

- **Enzymatic Catalysis.** Catalysts are chemicals that enhance the speed or likelihood of a chemical reaction. Protein catalysts in cells are called *enzymes.*
- **Regulation.** Some proteins regulate cell function by stimulating or hindering either the action of other proteins or the expression of genes. Hormones are examples of regulatory proteins.
- **Transportation.** Certain proteins act as channels and "pumps" that move substances into or out of cells.
- **Defense and Offense.** Antibodies and *complement* are examples of proteins that defend your body against pathogens. Some bacteria even produce proteins called *bacteriocins* that kill other bacteria.

A protein's function is dependent on its shape, which is determined by the molecular structures of its constituent parts.

Amino Acids

Proteins are polymers composed of monomers called **amino acids.** Amino acids contain a basic amino group (—NH_2), a hydrogen atom, and an acidic carboxyl group (—COOH). All attach to the same carbon atom, which is known as the α-carbon **(Figure 2.21)**. A fourth bond attaches the α-carbon to a side group (—R) that varies among different amino acids. The side group may be a single hydrogen atom, various chains, or various complex ring structures. Hundreds of amino acids are possible, but most organisms use only 21 amino acids in synthesizing proteins.[18] The different side groups affect the way amino acids interact with one another within a given protein as well as how a protein interacts with other molecules. A change in an amino acid's side group may seriously interfere with a protein's normal function.

Because amino acids contain both an acidic carboxyl group and a basic amino group, they have both positive and negative charges and are easily soluble in water. Aqueous solutions of organic molecules such as amino acids and simple sugars bend light rays passing through the solution. Molecules known as *D forms*[19] bend light rays clockwise; other molecules bend light rays counterclockwise and are known as *L forms.*[20]

Many organic molecules exist as both D and L forms that are *stereoisomers* of one another; that is, they have the same atoms and functional groups but are mirror images of each other **(Figure 2.22)**. Amino acids in proteins are almost always L forms—except for glycine, which does not have a stereoisomer. Interestingly, organisms almost always use D sugars in metabolism and polysaccharides. Rare stereoisomers—D amino acids and L sugars—do exist in some bacterial cell walls and in some antibiotics.

CRITICAL THINKING

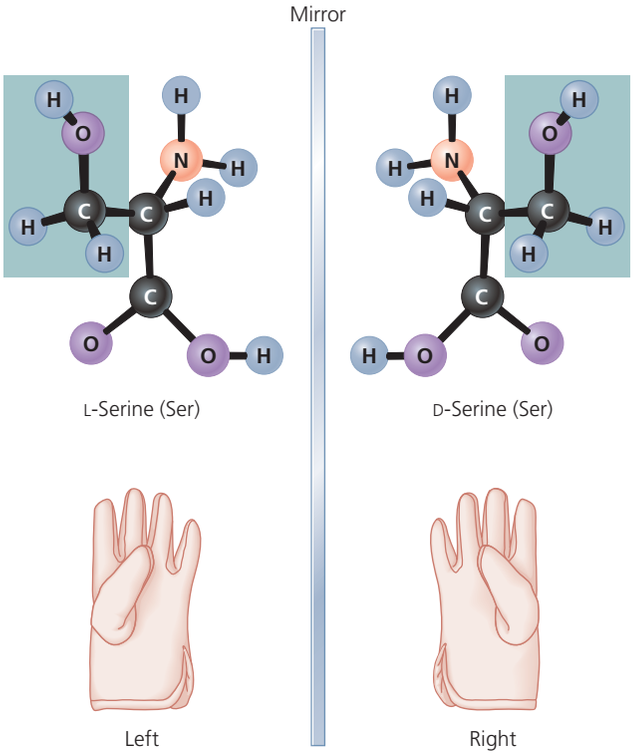
Why is there no stereoisomer of glycine?

Peptide Bonds

Cells link amino acids together in chains that somewhat resemble beads on a necklace. By a dehydration synthesis reaction, a covalent bond is formed between the carbon of the carboxyl group of one amino acid and the nitrogen of the amino group of the next amino acid in the chain **(Figure 2.23)**. Cells follow the organism's genetic instructions to link amino acids together in precise sequences. (Chapter 7 examines this process in more detail.)

Scientists refer to covalent bonds between amino acids by a special name: **peptide**[21] **bonds**. A molecule composed of two amino acids linked together by a single peptide bond

[18]While 20 amino acids are more common, the genes of most organisms code for a 21st—selenocysteine. The genes of a few prokaryotes code for a 22nd amino acid.
[19]From Latin *dexter,* meaning "on the right."
[20]From Latin *laevus,* meaning "on the left."
[21]From *peptone,* the name given to short chains of amino acids resulting from the partial digestion of protein.



▲ **Figure 2.22 Stereoisomers, molecules that are mirror images of one another.** When dissolved in water, D isomers bend light clockwise, and L forms bend light counterclockwise. Just as a right-handed glove does not fit a left hand, so a D stereoisomer cannot be substituted for an L stereoisomer in metabolic reactions.

is called a dipeptide; longer chains of amino acids are called *polypeptides*.

Protein Structure

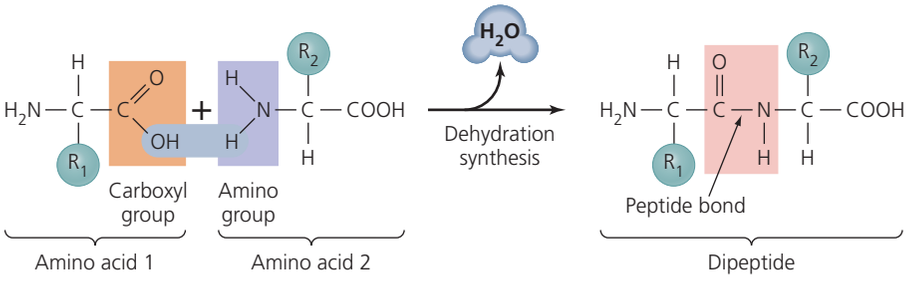
Proteins are unbranched polypeptides composed of hundreds to thousands of amino acids linked together in specific patterns as determined by genes. The structure of a protein molecule is directly related to its function; therefore, understanding protein structure is critical to understanding certain specific chemical reactions, the action of antibiotics, and specific defenses against pathogens. Every protein has at least three levels of structure, and some proteins have four levels.

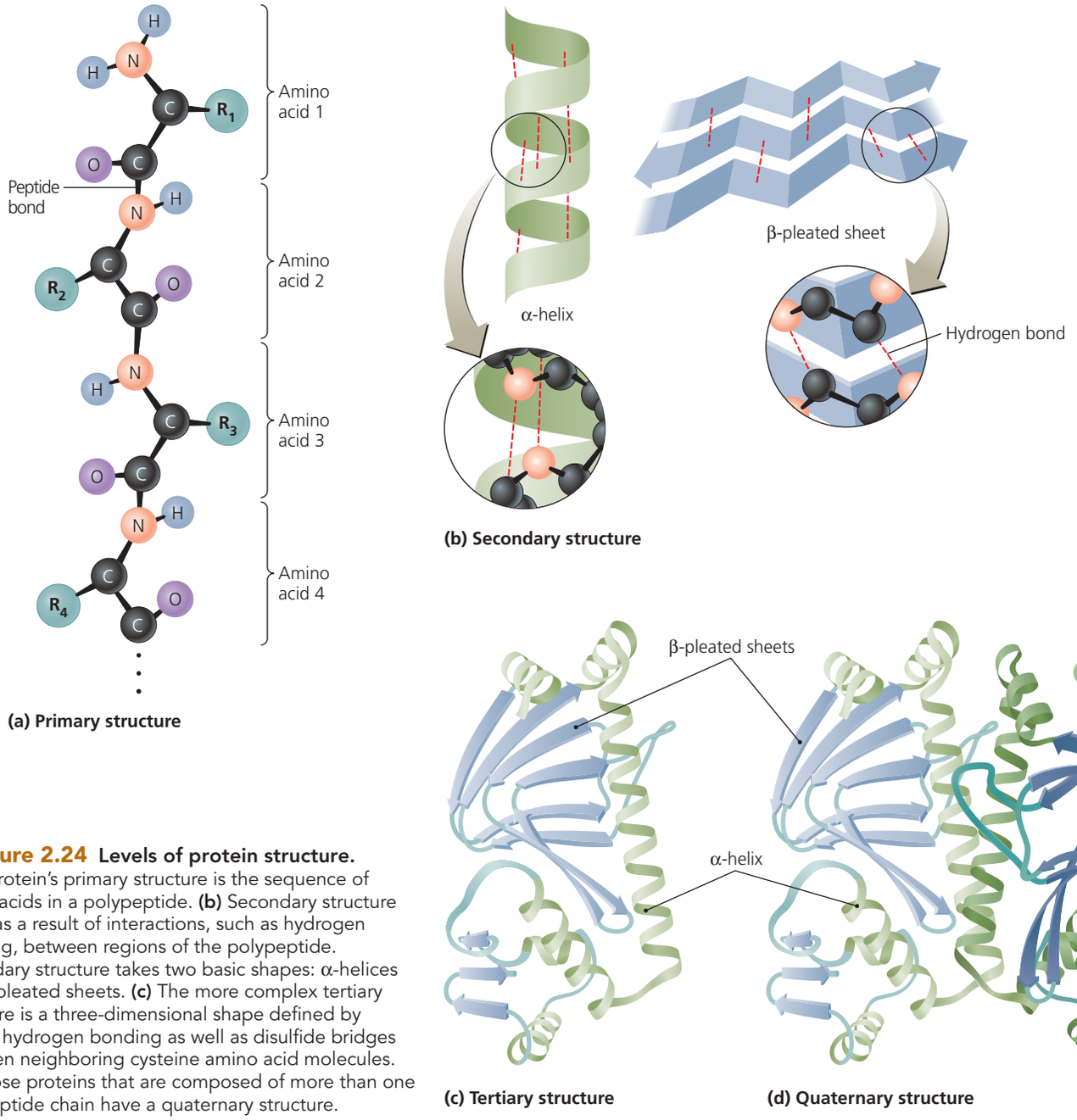
- **Primary Structure.** The primary structure of a protein is its sequence of amino acids **(Figure 2.24a)**. Cells use many different types of amino acids in proteins, though not every protein contains all types. The primary structures of proteins vary widely in length and amino acid sequence.
- A change in a single amino acid can drastically affect a protein's overall structure and function, though this is not always the case. For instance, the replacement of the amino acid valine by alanine in position 136 of the primary structure of a particular sheep brain protein, called cellular prion (prē´on) protein, may result in a disease called *scrapie*. The altered protein spread into cows, causing *mad cow disease*, and from cows into humans, causing *variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob* (kroytsfelt-yah-kŭp) *disease*.[22] However, numerous substitutions can be made in other, noncritical regions of cellular prion protein, with no ill effects.
- **Secondary Structure.** Ionic bonds, hydrogen bonds, and hydrophobic and hydrophilic characteristics cause many polypeptide chains to fold into either coils called α-*helices* or accordion-like structures called β-*pleated sheets* **(Figure 2.24b)**. Proteins are typically composed of both α-helices and β-pleated sheets linked by short sequences of amino acids that do not show such secondary structure. Because of its primary structure, the protein that causes variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease has β-pleated sheets in locations where the normal protein has α-helices (see Figure 13.22).
- **Tertiary Structure.** Polypeptides further fold into complex three-dimensional shapes that are not repetitive like α-helices and β-pleated sheets **(Figure 2.24c)** but are uniquely designed to accomplish the function of the protein. Scientists are only beginning to understand the interactions that determine tertiary structure, but it is clear that covalent bonds between —R groups of amino acids, hydrogen bonds, ionic bonds, and other molecular interactions are important. For instance, nonpolar (hydrophobic) side chains fold into the interior of molecules, away from the presence of water.

Some proteins form strong covalent bonds between sulfur atoms of cysteine amino acids that are brought into

[22]Named for the two German neurobiologists who first described the disease.

▶ **Figure 2.23 The linkage of amino acids by peptide bonds via a dehydration reaction.** In this reaction, removing a hydroxyl group from amino acid 1 and a hydrogen atom from amino acid 2 produces a dipeptide—which is two amino acids linked by a single peptide bond—and a molecule of water.





(a) Primary structure

(b) Secondary structure

(c) Tertiary structure

(d) Quaternary structure

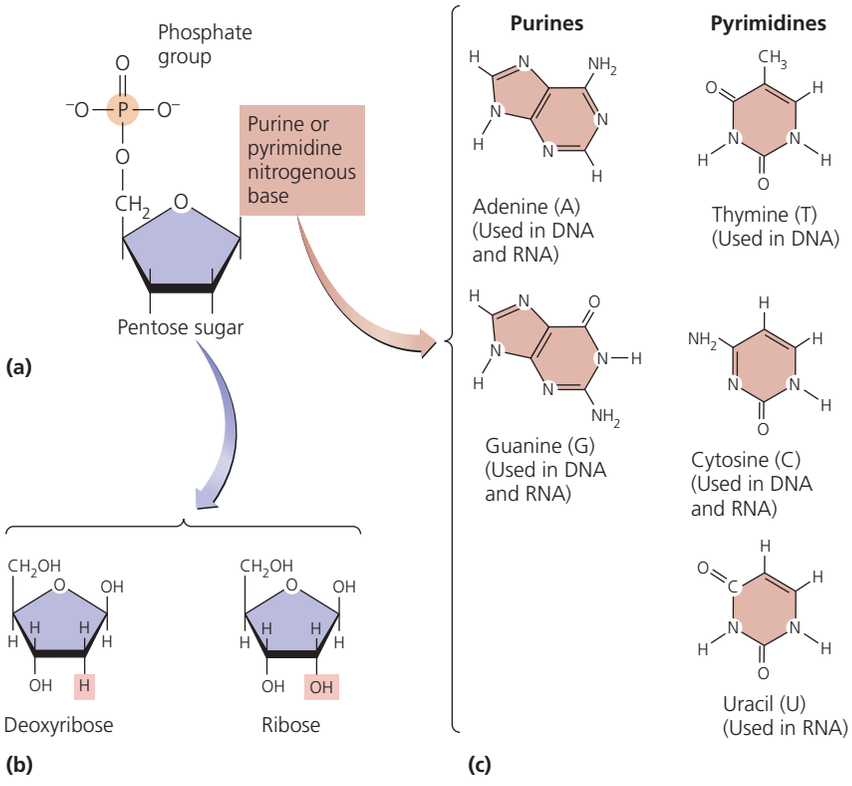
▲ Figure 2.24 Levels of protein structure. **(a)** A protein's primary structure is the sequence of amino acids in a polypeptide. **(b)** Secondary structure arises as a result of interactions, such as hydrogen bonding, between regions of the polypeptide. Secondary structure takes two basic shapes: α-helices and β-pleated sheets. **(c)** The more complex tertiary structure is a three-dimensional shape defined by further hydrogen bonding as well as disulfide bridges between neighboring cysteine amino acid molecules. **(d)** Those proteins that are composed of more than one polypeptide chain have a quaternary structure.

proximity by the folding of the polypeptide. These *disulfide bridges* are critical in maintaining tertiary structure of many proteins.

- **Quaternary Structure.** Some proteins are composed of two or more polypeptide chains linked together by disulfide bridges or other bonds. The overall shape of such a protein may be globular **(Figure 2.24d)** or fibrous (threadlike).

Organisms may further modify proteins by combining them with other organic or inorganic molecules. For instance, *glycoproteins* are proteins covalently bound with carbohydrates, *lipoproteins* are proteins bonded with lipids, *metalloproteins* contain metallic ions, and *nucleoproteins* are proteins bonded with nucleic acids.

Because protein shape determines protein function, anything that severely interrupts shape also disrupts function. As we have seen, amino acid substitution can alter shape and function. Additionally, physical and chemical factors, such as heat, changes in pH, and salt concentration, can interfere with hydrogen and ionic bonding between parts within a protein. This in turn can disrupt the three-dimensional structure. This process is called **denaturation.** Denaturation can be temporary (if the denatured protein is able to return to its original shape again) or permanent.



▶ **Figure 2.25 Nucleotides. (a)** The basic structure of nucleotides, each of which is composed of a phosphate, a pentose sugar, and a nitrogenous base. **(b)** The pentose sugars deoxyribose, which is found in deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and ribose, which is found in ribonucleic acid (RNA). **(c)** The nitrogenous bases, which are either the double-ringed purines adenine or guanine, or the single-ringed pyrimidines thymine, cytosine, or uracil. *How does a nucleoside differ from a nucleotide?*

Figure 2.25 *A nucleoside is composed only of a nitrogenous base and a sugar, whereas a nucleotide has a base, sugar, and phosphate.*

Nucleic Acids

Learning Outcomes

2.23 Describe the basic structure of a nucleotide.
2.24 Compare and contrast DNA and RNA.
2.25 Contrast the structures of ATP, ADP, and AMP.

The nucleic acids **deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** and **ribonucleic acid (RNA)** are vital as the genetic material of cells and viruses. Moreover, RNA, acting as an enzyme, binds amino acids together to form polypeptides. Both DNA and RNA are unbranched macromolecular polymers that differ primarily in the structures of their monomers, which we discuss next.

Nucleotides and Nucleosides

Each monomer of nucleic acids is a **nucleotide** and consists of three parts **(Figure 2.25a)**: (1) phosphate (PO_4^{3-}); (2) a pentose sugar, either deoxyribose or ribose **(Figure 2.25b)**; and (3) one of five cyclic (ring-shaped) nitrogenous bases: **adenine (A), guanine (G), cytosine (C), thymine (T),** or **uracil (U) (Figure 2.25c)**. Adenine and guanine are double-ringed molecules of a class called *purines*, whereas cytosine, thymine, and uracil have single rings and are *pyrimidines*. DNA contains A, G, C, and T bases, whereas RNA contains A, G, C, and U bases. As their names suggest, DNA nucleotides contain deoxyribose, and RNA nucleotides contain ribose. The similarly named **nucleosides** are nucleotides lacking phosphate; that is, a nucleoside is one of the nitrogenous bases attached only to a sugar.

Each nucleotide or nucleoside is also named for the base it contains. Thus, a nucleotide made with ribose, uracil, and phosphate is a uracil RNA nucleotide, which is also called a uracil *ribonucleotide*. Likewise, a nucleoside composed of adenine and deoxyribose is an adenine DNA nucleoside (or adenine *deoxyribonucleoside*).
▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***The Structure of Nucleotides***

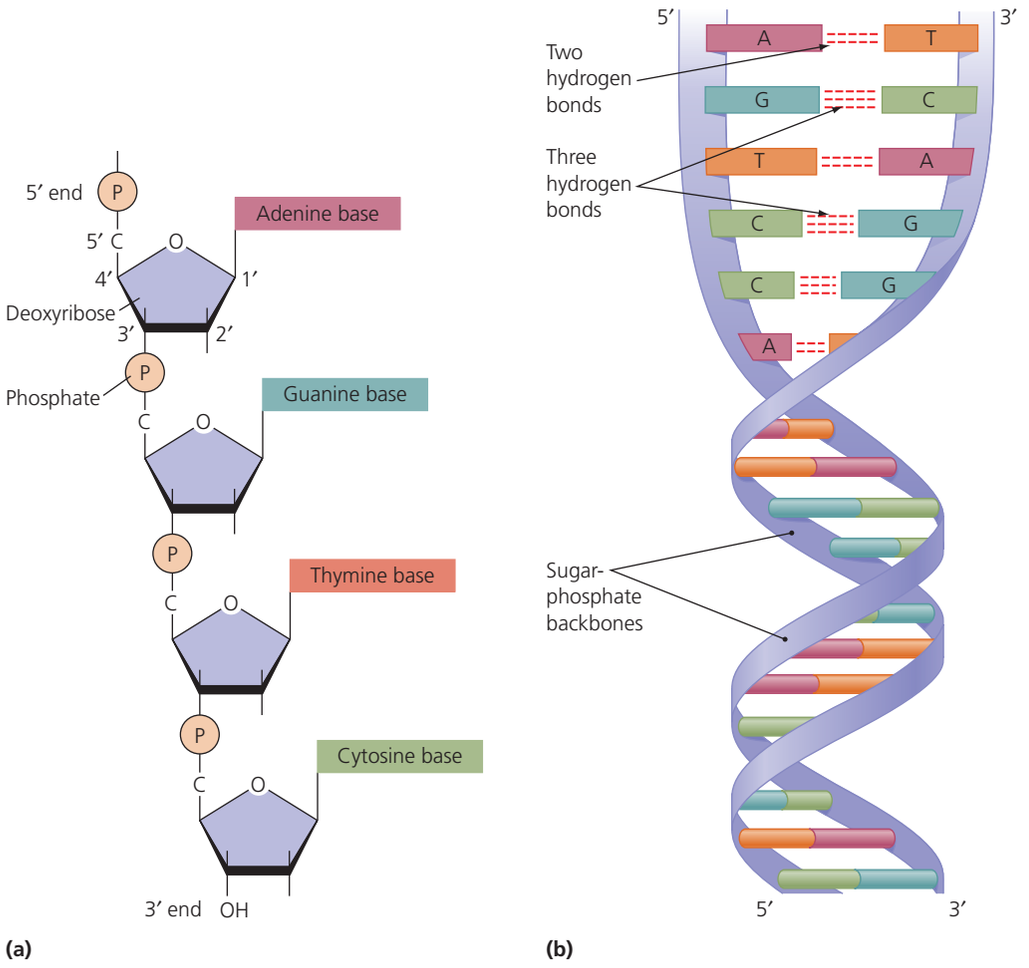
CRITICAL THINKING

A textbook states that only five nucleotide bases are found in cells, but a laboratory worker reports that she has isolated eight different nucleotides. Explain why both are correct.

Nucleic Acid Structure

Nucleic acids, like polysaccharides and proteins, are polymers. They are composed of nucleotides linked by covalent bonds between the phosphate of one nucleotide and the sugar of the next. Polymerization results in a linear spine composed of alternating sugars and phosphates, with bases extending from it rather like the teeth of a comb **(Figure 2.26a)**. The two ends of a chain of nucleotides are different. At one end, called the 5′ end[23] (five prime end), carbon 5′ of the sugar is attached to a phosphate group. At the other end (3′ end), carbon 3′ of the sugar is not attached to a phosphate group.

[23]Carbon atoms in organic molecules are commonly identified by numbers. In a nucleotide, carbon atoms 1, 2, 3, and so on. belong to the base, and carbon atoms 1′, 2′, 3′, and so on belong to the sugar.



◀ Figure 2.26 General nucleic acid structure. (a) Nucleotides are polymerized to form chains in which the nitrogenous bases extend from a sugar-phosphate backbone like the teeth of a comb. **(b)** Specific pairs of nitrogenous bases form hydrogen bonds between adjacent nucleotide chains to form the familiar DNA double helix. *How can you determine that the molecule in (a) is DNA and not RNA?*

Figure 2.26 *It is DNA because its nucleotides have deoxyribose sugar and because some of them have thymine bases (not uracil, as in RNA).*

The atoms of the bases in nucleotides are arranged in such a manner that hydrogen bonds readily form between specific bases of two adjacent nucleic acid chains. Three hydrogen bonds form between an adjacent pair composed of cytosine (C) and guanine (G), whereas two hydrogen bonds form between an adjacent pair composed of adenine (A) and thymine (T) in DNA **(Figure 2.26b)** or between an adjacent pair composed of adenine (A) and uracil (U) in RNA. Hydrogen bonds do not readily form between other combinations of nucleotide bases; for example, adenine does not readily pair with cytosine, guanine, or another adenine nucleotide.

In cells and most viruses that use DNA as a genome, DNA molecules are double stranded. The two strands of DNA are complementary to one another; that is, the specificity of nucleotide base pairing ensures that opposite strands are composed of complementary nucleotides. For instance, if one strand has the sequence AATGCT, then its complement has TTACGA.

The two strands are also *antiparallel*; that is, they run in opposite directions. One strand runs from the 3′ end to the 5′ end, whereas its complement runs in the opposite direction, from its 5′ end to its 3′ end. Though hydrogen bonds are relatively weak bonds, thousands of them exist at normal temperatures, forming a stable, double-stranded DNA molecule that looks much like a ladder: the two deoxyribose-phosphate chains are the side rails, and base pairs form the rungs. Hydrogen bonding also twists the phosphate-deoxyribose backbones into a helix (see Figure 2.26b). Thus, typical DNA is a double helix. Parvoviruses use single-stranded DNA, which is an exception to this rule.

Nucleic Acid Function

DNA is the genetic material of all organisms and of many viruses; it carries instructions for the synthesis of RNA molecules and proteins. By controlling the synthesis of enzymes and regulatory proteins, DNA controls the synthesis of all other molecules in an organism. Genetic instructions are carried in the sequence of nucleotides that make up the nucleic acid. Even though only four kinds of bases are found in DNA (A, T, G, and C), they can be sequenced in distinctive patterns that create genetic diversity and code for an infinite number of proteins, just as an alphabet of only four letters could spell a very large number of words. Cells replicate their DNA molecules and pass copies to their descendants, ensuring that each has the instructions necessary for life.

Several kinds of ribonucleic acids, such as messenger RNA, transfer RNA, and ribosomal RNA, play roles in the formation of proteins, including catalyzing the synthesis of proteins. RNA molecules also function in place of DNA as the genome of RNA viruses.

Table 2.5 compares and contrasts RNA and DNA. (We examine the synthesis and function of DNA and RNA in detail in Chapter 7.)

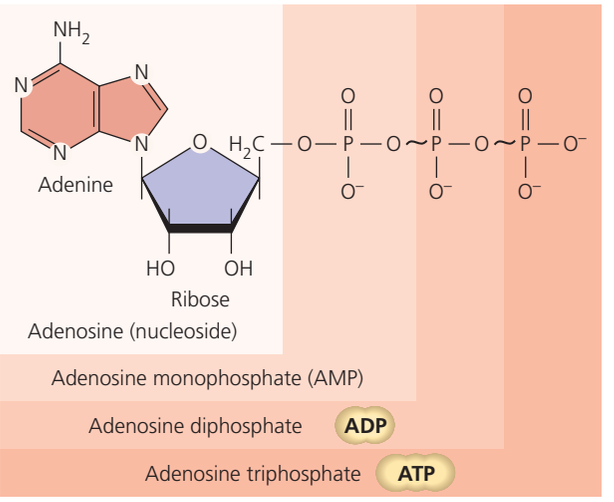
ATP (Adenosine Triphosphate)

Phosphate in nucleotides and other molecules is a highly reactive functional group and can form covalent bonds with other phosphate groups to make diphosphate and triphosphate molecules. Such molecules made from ribose nucleotides are important in many metabolic reactions. The names of these molecules indicate the nucleotide base and the number of phosphate groups they contain. Thus, cells make adenosine monophosphate (AMP) from the nitrogenous base adenine, ribose sugar, and one phosphate group; adenosine diphosphate (ADP), which has two phosphate groups; and **adenosine triphosphate** (ă-den′ō-sēn trī-fos′fāt) or **ATP,** which has three phosphate groups **(Figure 2.27)**.

ATP is the principal, short-term, recyclable energy supply for cells. When the phosphate bonds of ATP are broken, a significant amount of energy is released; in fact, more energy is released from phosphate bonds than is released from most other covalent bonds. For this reason, the phosphate-phosphate bonds of ATP are known as *high-energy bonds,* and to show these specialized bonds, ATP can be symbolized as

$$A—Ⓟ \sim Ⓟ \sim Ⓟ$$

Energy is released when ATP is converted to ADP and when phosphate is removed from ADP to form AMP, though the latter reaction is not as common in cells. Energy released from the phosphate bonds of ATP is used for important life-sustaining activities, such as synthesis reactions, locomotion, and transportation of substances into and out of cells.



▲ **Figure 2.27 ATP.** Adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the main short-term, recyclable energy supply for cells. Energy is stored in high-energy bonds between the phosphate groups. *What is the relationship between AMP and adenine ribonucleotide?*

Figure 2.27 *AMP and adenine ribonucleotide are two names for the same thing.*

Cells also use ATP as a structural molecule in the formation of *coenzymes.* Coenzymes such as *flavin adenine dinucleotide, nicotinamide nucleotide,* and *coenzyme A* function in many metabolic reactions (as discussed in Chapter 5).

A cell's supply of ATP is limited; therefore, an important part of cellular metabolism is to replenish ATP stores. (We discuss the important ATP-generating reactions in Chapter 5.)

TABLE 2.5 Comparison of Nucleic Acids

Characteristic	DNA	RNA
Sugar	Deoxyribose	Ribose
Purine nucleotides	A and G	A and G
Pyrimidine nucleotides	T and C	U and C
Number of strands	Double stranded in cells and in most DNA viruses; single stranded in parvoviruses	Single stranded in cells and in most RNA viruses; double stranded in reoviruses
Function	Genetic material of all cells and DNA viruses	Protein synthesis in all cells; genetic material of RNA viruses

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Atoms (pp. 27–29)

1. **Matter** is anything that takes up space and has mass. Its smallest chemical units, **atoms,** contain negatively charged **electrons** orbiting a nucleus composed of uncharged **neutrons** and positively charged **protons.**
2. An **element** is matter composed of a single type of atom.
3. The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom is its **atomic number.** The sum of the masses of its protons, neutrons, and electrons is an atom's **atomic mass,** which is estimated by adding the number of neutrons and protons (because electrons have little mass).
4. **Isotopes** are atoms of an element that differ only in the numbers of neutrons they contain.

Chemical Bonds (pp. 29–34)

1. The region of space occupied by electrons is an electron shell. The number of electrons in the outermost shell, or **valence** shell, of an atom determines the atom's reactivity. Most valence shells hold a maximum of eight electrons. Sharing or transferring valence electrons to fill a valence shell results in **chemical bonds.**
2. A chemical bond results when two atoms share a pair of electrons. The **electronegativities** of each of the atoms, which is the strength of their attraction for electrons, determines whether the bond between them will be a **nonpolar covalent bond** (equal sharing of electrons), a **polar covalent bond** (unequal sharing of electrons), or an **ionic bond** (giving up of electrons from one atom to another).
3. A **molecule** that contains atoms of more than one element is a **compound. Organic compounds** are those that contain carbon and hydrogen atoms.
4. An **anion** is an atom with an extra electron and thus a negative charge. A **cation** has lost an electron and thus has a positive charge. Ionic bonding between the two types of ions makes **salt.** When salts dissolve in water, their ions are called **electrolytes.**
5. **Hydrogen bonds** are relatively weak but important chemical bonds. They hold molecules in specific shapes and confer unique properties to water molecules.

Chemical Reactions (pp. 34–36)

1. **Chemical reactions** result from the making or breaking of chemical bonds in a process in which **reactants** are changed into **products.** Biochemistry involves chemical reactions of life.
2. **Synthesis reactions** form larger, more complex molecules. In **dehydration synthesis,** a molecule of water is removed from the reactants as the larger molecule is formed. **Endothermic reactions** require energy. **Anabolism** is the sum of all synthesis reactions in an organism.
3. **Decomposition reactions** break larger molecules into smaller molecules and are **exothermic** because they release energy. **Hydrolysis** is a decomposition reaction that uses water as one of the reactants. The sum of all decomposition reactions in an organism is called **catabolism.**
4. **Exchange reactions** involve exchanging atoms between reactants.
5. **Metabolism** is the sum of all anabolic, catabolic, and exchange chemical reactions in an organism.

Water, Acids, Bases, and Salts (pp. 36–39)

1. **Inorganic** molecules typically lack carbon.
2. **Water** is a vital inorganic compound because of its properties as a solvent, its liquidity, its great capacity to absorb heat, and its participation in chemical reactions.
3. **Acids** release hydrogen ions. **Bases** release hydroxyl anions. The relative strength of each is assessed on a logarithmic **pH scale,** which measures the hydrogen ion concentration in a substance.
4. **Buffers** are substances that prevent drastic changes in pH.

Organic Macromolecules (pp. 39–51)

1. Certain groups of atoms in common arrangements, called **functional groups,** are found in organic macromolecules. **Monomers** are simple subunits that can be covalently linked to form chainlike **polymers.**
2. **Lipids,** which include fats, phospholipids, waxes, and steroids, are **hydrophobic** (insoluble in water) macromolecules.

3. **Fat** molecules are formed from a glycerol and three chainlike fatty acids. **Saturated fatty acids** contain more hydrogen in their structural formulas than **unsaturated fatty acids,** which contain double bonds between some carbon atoms. If several double bonds exist in the fatty acids of a molecule of fat, it is a **polyunsaturated** fat.
4. **Phospholipids** contain two fatty acid chains and a phosphate functional group. The phospholipid head is **hydrophilic,** whereas the fatty acid portion of the molecule is hydrophobic.
5. **Waxes** contain a long-chain fatty acid covalently linked to a long-chain alcohol. Waxes, which are water insoluble, are components of cell walls and are sometimes used as energy storage molecules.
6. **Steroid** lipids such as cholesterol help maintain the structural integrity of membranes as temperature fluctuates.
7. **Carbohydrates** such as **monosaccharides, disaccharides,** and **polysaccharides** serve as energy sources, structural molecules, and recognition sites during intercellular interactions.
8. **Proteins** are structural components of cells, enzymatic catalysts, regulators of various activities, molecules involved in the transportation of substances, and defensive molecules. They are composed of **amino acids** linked by **peptide bonds,** and they possess primary, secondary, tertiary, and (sometimes) quaternary structures that affect their function. **Denaturation** of a protein disrupts its structure and subsequently its function.
9. **Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)** and **ribonucleic acid (RNA)** are unbranched macromolecular polymers of **nucleotides,** each composed of either deoxyribose or ribose sugar, ionized phosphate, and a nitrogenous base. Five different bases exist: **adenine, guanine, cytosine, thymine,** and **uracil.** DNA contains A, G, C, and T nucleotides. RNA uses U nucleotides instead of T nucleotides.

   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***The Structure of Nucleotides***
10. The structure of nucleic acids allows for genetic diversity, the correct copying of genes for their passage on to the next generation, and the accurate synthesis of proteins.
11. **Adenosine triphosphate (ATP),** which is related to adenine nucleotide, is the most important short-term energy storage molecule in cells. It is also incorporated into the structure of many coenzymes.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which the following structures have *no* electrical charge?
   a. protons
   b. electrons
   c. neutrons
   d. ions
2. The atomic mass of an atom most closely approximates the sum of the masses of all its
   a. protons.
   b. isotopes.
   c. electrons.
   d. protons and neutrons.
3. One isotope of iodine differs from another in
   a. the number of protons.
   b. the number of electrons.
   c. the number of neutrons.
   d. automic number.
4. Which of the following is *not* an organic compound?
   a. monosaccharide
   b. formaldehyde
   c. water
   d. steroid
5. Which of the following terms most correctly describes the bonds in a molecule of water?
   a. nonpolar covalent bond
   b. polar covalent bond
   c. ionic bond
   d. hydrogen bond
6. In water, cations and anions of salts dissociate from one another and become surrounded by water molecules. In this state, the ions are also called _____.
   a. electrically negative
   b. ionically bonded
   c. electrolytes
   d. hydrogen bonds
7. Which of the following can be most accurately described as a decomposition reaction?
   a. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ H_2O + 6\ CO_2$
   b. glucose + ATP → glucose phosphate + ADP
   c. $6\ H_2O + 6\ CO_2 \rightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2$
   d. A + BC → AB + C
8. Which of the following statements about a carbonated cola beverage with a pH of 2.9 is true?
   a. It has a relatively high concentration of hydrogen ions.
   b. It has a relatively low concentration of hydrogen ions.
   c. It has equal amounts of hydroxyl and hydrogen ions.
   d. Cola is a buffered solution.
9. Proteins are polymers of _____.
   a. amino acids
   b. fatty acids
   c. nucleic acids
   d. monosaccharides
10. Which of the following are hydrophobic organic molecules?
    a. proteins
    b. carbohydrates
    c. lipids
    d. nucleic acids

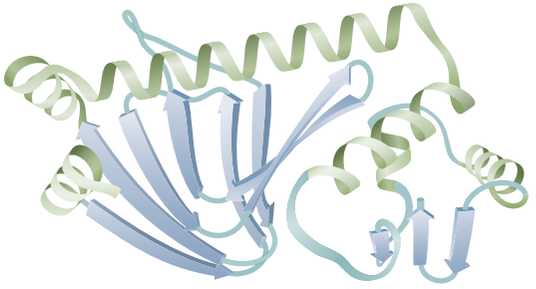
Fill in the Blanks

1. The outermost electron shell of an atom is known as the _____ shell.
2. The type of chemical bond between atoms with nearly equal electronegativities is called a(n) _____ bond.
3. The principal short-term energy storage molecule in cells is _____.
4. Common long-term storage molecules are _____, _____, _____, and _____.
5. Groups of atoms such as NH_2 or OH that appear in certain common arrangements are called _____.
6. The reverse of dehydration synthesis is _____.
7. Reactions that release energy are called _____ reactions.

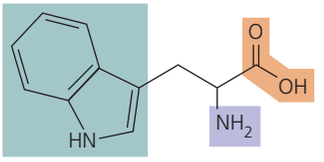
8. All chemical reactions begin with reactants and result in new molecules called _____.
9. The _____ scale is a measure of the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution.
10. A nucleic acid containing the base uracil would also contain _____ sugar.

Visualize It!

1. Label a portion of the molecule below where the primary structure is visible; label two types of secondary structure; circle the tertiary structure.



2. Shown is the amino acid tryptophan. Put the letter "C" at the site of every carbon atom. Label the amino group, the carboxyl group, and the side group.



Short Answer

1. List three main types of chemical bonds and give an example of each.
2. Name five properties of water that are vital to life.
3. Describe the difference(s) among saturated fatty acids, unsaturated fatty acids, and polyunsaturated fatty acids.
4. What is the difference between atomic oxygen and molecular oxygen?
5. Explain how the polarity of water molecules makes water an excellent solvent.

Critical Thinking

1. Anthrax is caused by a bacterium, *Bacillus anthracis*, that avoids the body's defenses against disease by synthesizing an outer glycoprotein covering made from D-glutamic acid. This covering is not digestible by white blood cells that normally engulf bacteria. Why is the covering indigestible?
2. Dehydrogenation is a chemical reaction in which a saturated fat is converted to an unsaturated fat. Explain why the name for this reaction is an appropriate one.
3. Two freshmen disagree about an aspect of chemistry. The nursing major insists that H^+ is the symbol for a hydrogen ion. The physics major insists that H^+ is the symbol for a proton. How can you help them resolve their disagreement?
4. When an egg white is heated, it changes from liquid to solid. When gelatin is cooled, it changes from liquid to solid. Both gelatin and egg white are proteins. From what you have learned about proteins, why can the gelatin be changed back to liquid but the cooked egg cannot?
5. When amino acids are synthesized in a test tube, D and L forms occur in equal amounts. However, cells use only L forms in their proteins. Occasionally, meteorites are found to contain amino acids. Based on these facts, how could NASA scientists determine whether the amino acids recovered from space are evidence of Earth-like extraterrestrial life or of nonmetabolic processes?
6. The poison glands of many bees and wasps contain acidic compounds. What common household chemical could be used to neutralize this poison?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes nucleic acids. You may use some terms more than once. For a sample concept map, see p. 93. Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Adenine (2)
Cytosine (2)
Deoxyribonucleotides
Deoxyribose
DNA
Double-stranded
Guanine (2)
Messenger RNA
Nitrogenous bases (2)
Phosphate
Ribonucleotides
Ribose
RNA
Ribosomal RNA
Single-stranded
Thymine
Transfer RNA
Uracil

3 Cell Structure and Function

Can a microbe be a magnet? The answer is yes, if it is a **magnetobacterium**.

Magnetobacteria are microorganisms with an unusual feature: cellular structures called *magnetosomes.* Magnetosomes are stored deposits (also called **inclusions**) of the mineral magnetite. These deposits align magnetobacteria with the lines of the Earth's magnetic field, much like a compass. In the Southern Hemisphere, magnetobacteria exist as south-seeking varieties; in the Northern Hemisphere, they exist as **north-seeking** varieties.

How do these bacteria benefit from magnetosomes? Magnetobacteria prefer environments with little or no oxygen, such as those that exist below the surfaces of land and sea. The magnetosomes point toward the **underground** magnetic poles, helping magnetobacteria move toward regions with little oxygen.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Magnetospirillum magnetotacticum, a spiral-shaped magnetobacterium, contains a clearly visible line of inclusions of magnetite, which together make a magnetosome.

All living things—including our bodies and the bacterial, protozoan, and fungal pathogens that attack us—are composed of living cells. If we want to understand disease and its treatment, therefore, we must first understand the life of cells. How pathogens attack our cells, how our bodies defend themselves, how current medical treatments assist our bodies in recovering—all of these activities have their basis in the biology of our, and our pathogens', cells.

In this chapter, we will examine cells and the structures within cells. We will discuss similarities and differences among the three major kinds of cells—bacterial, archaeal, and eukaryotic. The differences are particularly important because they allow researchers to develop treatments that inhibit or kill pathogens without adversely affecting a patient's own cells. We will also learn about cellular structures that allow pathogens to evade the body's defenses and cause disease.

Processes of Life

Learning Outcome

3.1 Describe four major processes of living cells.

Microbiology is the study of particularly small living things. That raises a question: What does living mean; how do we define life? Scientists once thought that living things were composed of special organic chemicals, such as glucose and amino acids, that carried a "life force" found only in living organisms. These organic chemicals were thought to be formed only by living things and to be very different from the inorganic chemicals of nonliving things.

The idea that organic chemicals could come only from living organisms had to be abandoned in 1828, when Friedrich Wöhler (1800–1882) synthesized urea, an organic molecule, using only inorganic reactants in his laboratory. Today we know that all living things contain both organic and inorganic chemicals and that many organic chemicals can be made from inorganic chemicals by laboratory processes. If organic chemicals can be made even in the absence of life, what is the difference between a living thing and a nonliving thing? What is life?

At first, this may seem a simple question. After all, you can usually tell when something is alive. However, defining "life" itself is difficult, so biologists generally avoid setting a definition, preferring instead to describe characteristics common to all living things. Biologists agree that all living things share at least four processes of life: growth, reproduction, responsiveness, and metabolism.

- **Growth.** Living things can grow; that is, they can increase in size.
- **Reproduction.** Organisms normally have the ability to reproduce themselves. Reproduction means that they increase in number, producing more organisms organized like themselves. Reproduction may be accomplished asexually (alone) or sexually with gametes (sex cells). Note that reproduction is an increase in number, whereas growth is an increase in size. Growth and reproduction often occur simultaneously. (We consider several methods of reproduction when we examine microorganisms in detail in Chapters 11–13.)
- **Responsiveness.** All living things respond to their environment. They have the ability to change themselves in reaction to changing conditions around or within them. Many organisms also have the ability to move toward or away from environmental stimuli—a response called *taxis.*
- **Metabolism.** Metabolism can be defined as the ability of organisms to take in nutrients from outside themselves and use the nutrients in a series of controlled chemical reactions to provide the energy and structures needed to grow, reproduce, and be responsive. Metabolism is a unique process of living things; nonliving things cannot metabolize. Cells store metabolic energy in the chemical bonds of *adenosine triphosphate* (ă-den´ō-sēn trī-fos´fāt), or *ATP.* (Major processes of microbial metabolism, including the generation of ATP, are discussed in Chapters 5–7.)

Table 3.1 shows how these characteristics, along with cell structure, relate to various kinds of microbes.

Organisms may not exhibit these processes at all times. For instance, in some organisms, reproduction may be postponed or curtailed by age or disease or, in humans at least, by choice.

TABLE 3.1 Characteristics of Life and Their Distribution in Microbes

Characteristic	Bacteria, Archaea, Eukaryotes	Viruses
Growth: increase in size	Occurs in all	Growth does not occur
Reproduction: increase in number	Occurs in all	Host cell replicates the virus
Responsiveness: ability to react to environmental stimuli	Occurs in all	Reaction to host cells seen in some viruses
Metabolism: controlled chemical reactions of organisms	Occurs in all	Viruses use host cell's metabolism
Cellular structure: membrane-bound structure capable of all of the above functions	Present in all	Viruses lack cytoplasmic membrane or cellular structure

Likewise, the rate of metabolism may be reduced, as occurs in a seed, a hibernating animal, or a bacterial endospore,[1] and growth often stops when an animal reaches a certain size. However, microorganisms typically grow, reproduce, respond, and metabolize as long as conditions are suitable. (Chapter 6 discusses the proper conditions for the metabolism and growth of various types of microorganisms.)

Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview

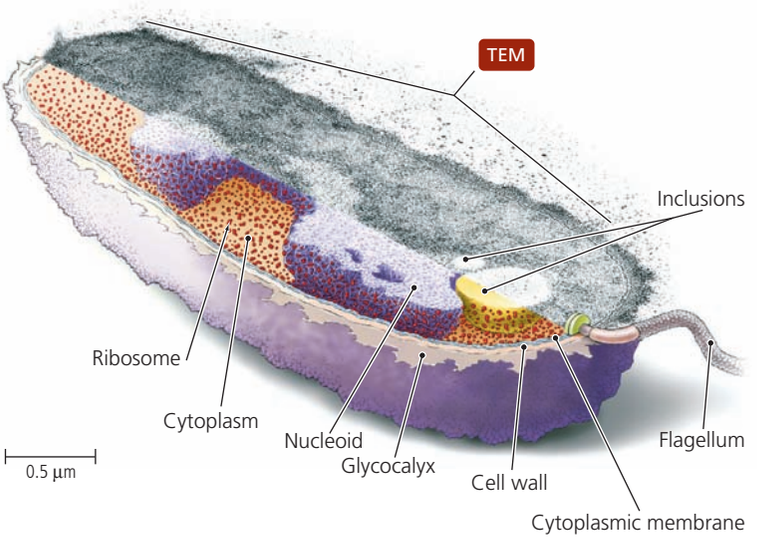
Learning Outcome

3.2 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.

In the 1800s, two German biologists, Theodor Schwann (1810–1882) and Matthias Schleiden (1804–1881), developed the theory that all living things are composed of cells. *Cells* are living entities, surrounded by a membrane, that are capable of growing, reproducing, responding, and metabolizing. The smallest living things are single-celled microorganisms.

There are many different kinds of cells **(Figure 3.1)**. Some cells are free-living, independent organisms; others live together in colonies or form the bodies of multicellular organisms. Cells also exist in various sizes, from the smallest bacteria to bird eggs, which are the largest of cells. All cells may be described as either *prokaryotes* (prō-kar´ē-ōts) or *eukaryotes* (yū-kar´ē-ōts).

Scientists categorize organisms based on shared characteristics into groups called *taxa*. "Prokaryotic" is a characteristic of organisms in two taxa—*domain Archaea* and *domain Bacteria*—but "prokaryote" is not itself a taxon. The distinctive feature of **prokaryotes** is that they can make proteins simultaneously to reading their genetic code because a typical prokaryote does not have a membrane surrounding its genetic material (DNA). In other words, a typical prokaryote does not have a nucleus **(Figure 3.2)**. (Researchers have discovered a few prokaryotes with internal membranes that look like nuclei, but further investigation is needed to determine what these structures are.) The word *prokaryote* comes from Greek words meaning "before nucleus." Moreover, electron microscopy has revealed that prokaryotes typically lack various types of internal structures bound with phospholipid membranes that are present in eukaryotic cells.

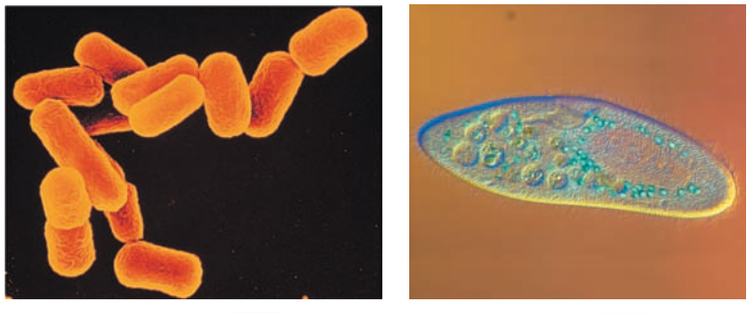


▲ **Figure 3.2 Typical prokaryotic cell.** Prokaryotes include archaea and bacteria. The artist has extended an electron micrograph to show three dimensions. Not all prokaryotic cells contain all these features.

Bacteria and archaea differ fundamentally in such ways as the type of lipids in their cytoplasmic membranes and in the chemistry of their cell walls. In many ways, archaea are more like eukaryotes than they are like bacteria. (Chapter 11 discusses archaea and bacteria in more detail.)

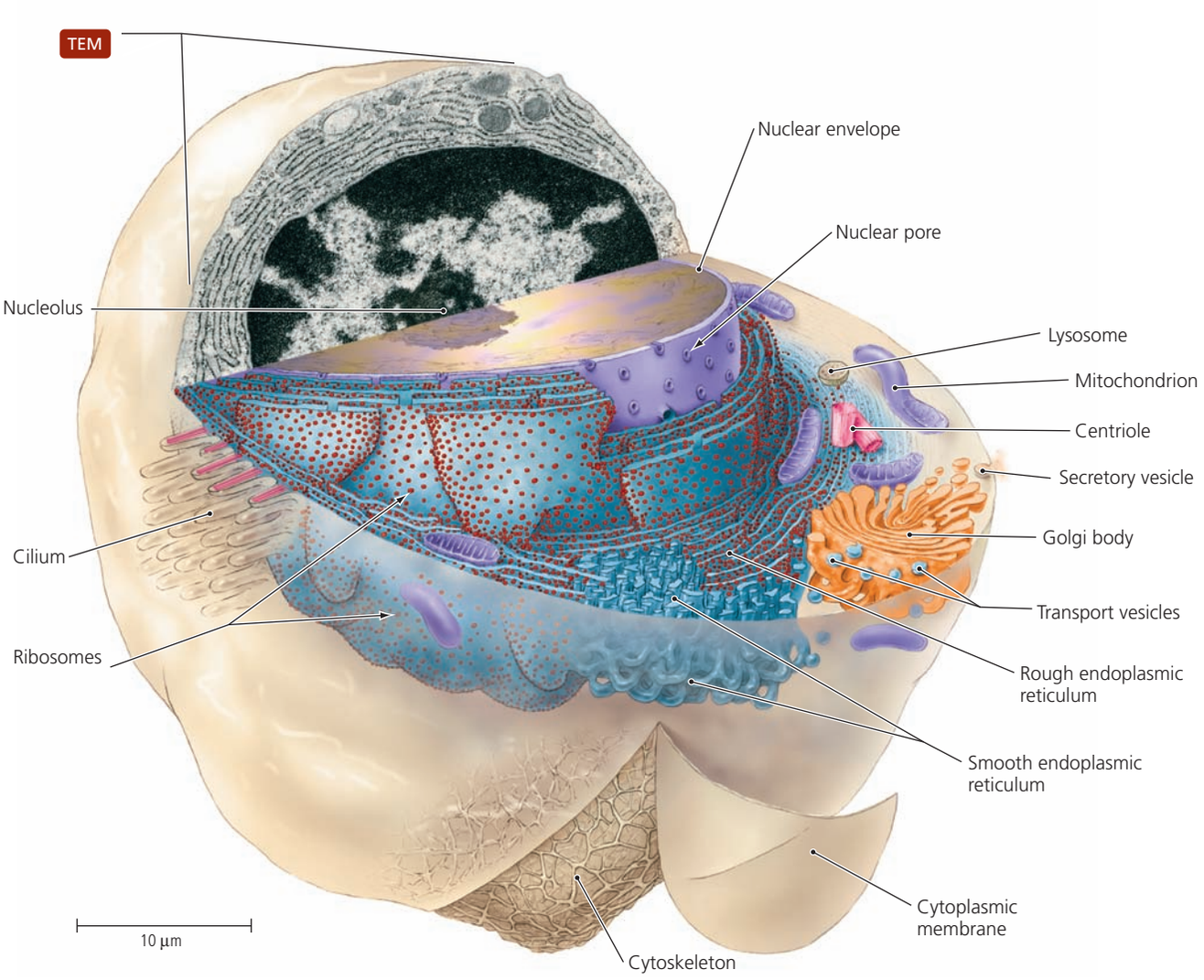
Eukaryotes have a membrane called a nuclear envelope surrounding their DNA, forming a nucleus **(Figure 3.3)**, which sets eukaryotes in *domain Eukarya*. Indeed, the term *eukaryote* comes from Greek words meaning "true nucleus." Besides the nuclear membrane, eukaryotes have numerous other internal membranes that compartmentalize cellular functions. These compartments are membrane-bound **organelles**—specialized structures that act like tiny organs to carry on the various functions of the cell. Organelles and their functions are discussed later in this chapter. The cells of algae, protozoa, fungi, animals, and plants are eukaryotic. Eukaryotes are usually larger and more complex than prokaryotes, which are typically 1.0 µm in diameter or smaller, as compared to 10–100 µm for eukaryotic cells **(Figure 3.4)**.

Although there are many kinds of cells, they all share the characteristic processes of life as previously described, as well as certain physical features. In this chapter, we will distinguish among bacterial, archaeal, and eukaryotic "versions" of physical features common to cells, including (1) external structures, (2) the cell wall, (3) the cytoplasmic membrane, and (4) the cytoplasm. We will also discuss features unique to each type. (Chapters 11, 12, and 19–23 examine further details of



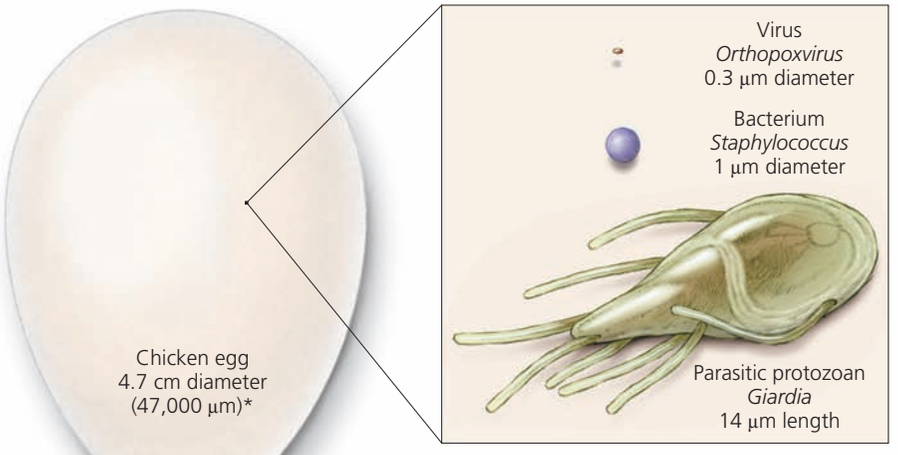
▲ **Figure 3.1 Examples of types of cells. (a)** *Escherichia coli* bacterial cells. **(b)** *Paramecium*, a single-celled eukaryote. Note the differences in magnification.

[1]Endospores are resting stages, produced by some bacteria, that are tolerant of environmental extremes.



▲ **Figure 3.3** **Typical eukaryotic cell.** Not all eukaryotic cells have all these features. The artist has extended the electron micrograph to show three dimensions. Note the difference in magnification between this cell and the prokaryotic cell in the previous figure. *Besides size, what major difference between prokaryotes and eukaryotes was visible to early microscopists?*

Figure 3.3 *Eukaryotic cells contain nuclei, which are visible with light microscopes, whereas prokaryotes lack nuclei.*



*Actually, the inset box on the egg would be too small to be visible. (Width of box would be about 0.002 mm.)

◀ **Figure 3.4** **Approximate size of various types of cells.** Birds' eggs are the largest cells. Note that *Staphylococcus*, a bacterium, is smaller than *Giardia*, a unicellular eukaryote. A smallpox virus *(Orthopoxvirus)* is shown only for comparison; viruses are not cellular.

prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms, their classification, and their ability to cause disease.)

Next, we explore characteristics of bacterial cells, beginning with external features and working into the cell.

External Structures of Bacterial Cells

Many cells have special external features that enable them to respond to other cells and their environment. In bacteria, these features include glycocalyces, flagella, fimbriae, and pili.

Glycocalyces

Learning Outcomes

3.3 Describe the composition, function, and relevance to human health of glycocalyces.

3.4 Distinguish capsules from slime layers.

Some cells have a gelatinous, sticky substance that surrounds the outside of the cell. This substance is known as a **glycocalyx** (plural: *glycocalyces*), which literally means "sweet cup." The glycocalyx may be composed of polysaccharides, polypeptides, or both. These chemicals are produced inside the cell and are extruded onto the cell's surface.

When the glycocalyx of a bacterium is composed of organized repeating units of organic chemicals firmly attached to the cell's surface, the glycocalyx is called a **capsule** (Figure 3.5a). In contrast, a loose, water-soluble glycocalyx is called a **slime layer** (Figure 3.5b).

Glycocalyces protect cells from desiccation (drying) and can also play a role in the ability of pathogens to survive and cause disease. For example, slime layers are often sticky and provide one means for bacteria to attach to surfaces as *biofilms*, which are aggregates of many bacteria living together on a surface. Oral bacteria colonize the teeth as a biofilm called dental plaque. The bacteria in the biofilm produce acid and cause *dental caries* (cavities).

The chemicals in many bacterial capsules can be similar to chemicals normally found in the body preventing bacteria from being recognized or devoured by defensive cells of the host. For example, the capsules of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs nū-mō´nē-ī) and *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (kleb-sē-el´ă nū-mō´nē-ī) enable these prokaryotes to avoid destruction by defensive cells in the respiratory tract and to cause pneumonia. Unencapsulated strains of these same bacterial species do not cause disease because the body's defensive cells destroy them.

Flagella

Learning Outcomes

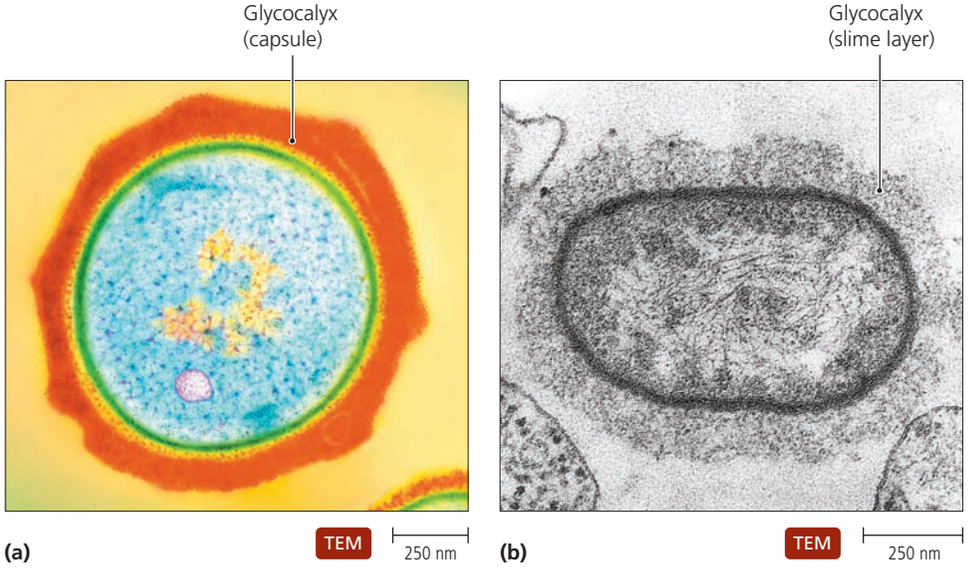
3.5 Discuss the structure and function of bacterial flagella.

3.6 List and describe four bacterial flagellar arrangements.

A cell's motility may enable it to flee from a harmful environment or move toward a favorable environment, such as one where food or light is available. The most notable structures responsible for such bacterial movement are flagella. Bacterial **flagella** (singular: *flagellum*) are long structures that extend beyond the surface of a cell and its glycocalyx and propel the cell through its environment. Not all bacteria have flagella, but for those that do, the flagella are very similar in composition, structure, and development. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Motility: Overview*

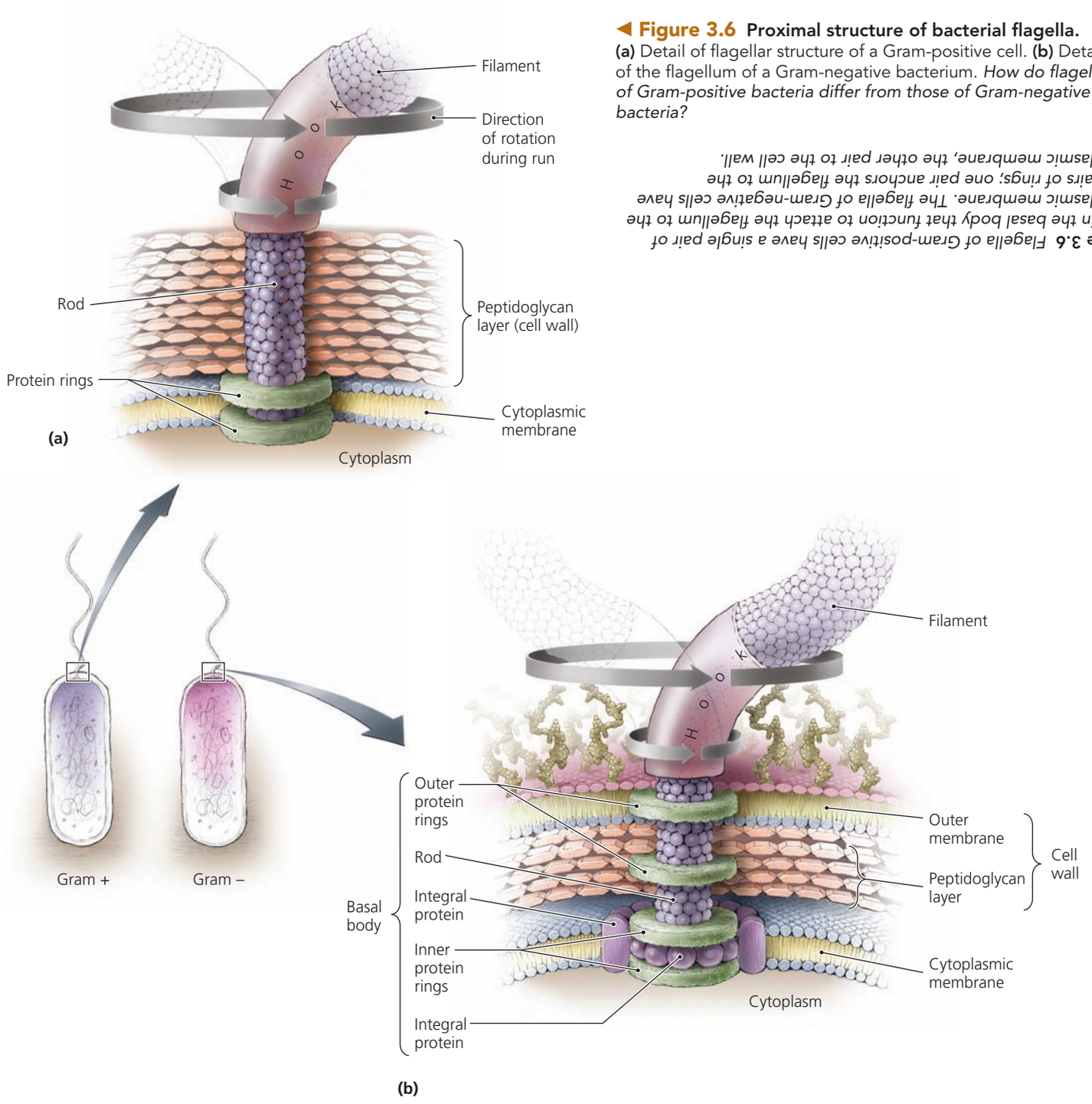
Structure

Bacterial flagella are composed of three parts: a long, thin *filament*, a *hook*, and a *basal body* (Figure 3.6). The hollow filament is a long hollow shaft, about 20 nm in diameter, that extends out into the cell's environment. It is composed of many identical



◀ **Figure 3.5** **Glycocalyces.** **(a)** Micrograph of a single cell of the bacterium *Staphylococcus*, showing a prominent capsule. **(b)** *Bacteroides*, a common fecal bacterium, has a slime layer surrounding the cell. *What advantage does a glycocalyx provide a cell?*

Figure 3.5 *A glycocalyx provides protection from drying and from being devoured; it may also help attach cells to one another and to surfaces in the environment.*

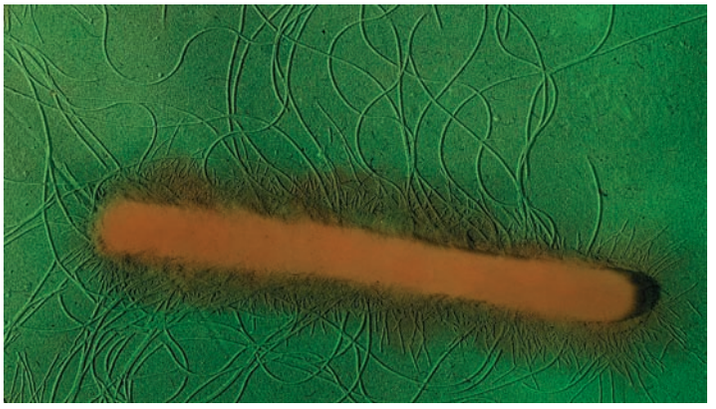


◀ Figure 3.6 Proximal structure of bacterial flagella. **(a)** Detail of flagellar structure of a Gram-positive cell. **(b)** Detail of the flagellum of a Gram-negative bacterium. *How do flagella of Gram-positive bacteria differ from those of Gram-negative bacteria?*

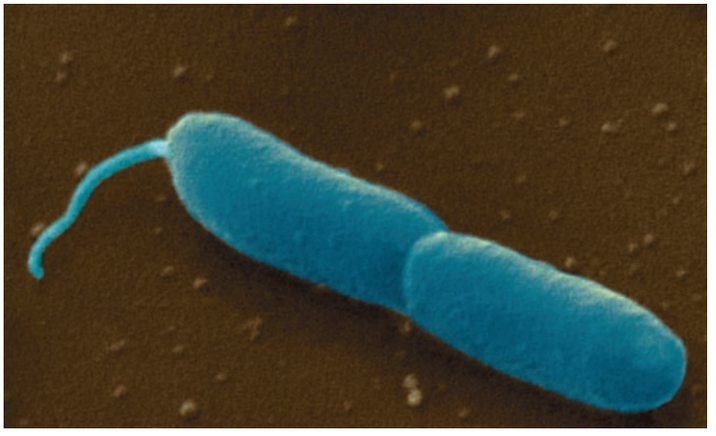
Figure 3.6 *Flagella of Gram-positive cells have a single pair of rings in the basal body that function to attach the flagellum to the cytoplasmic membrane. The flagella of Gram-negative cells have two pairs of rings; one pair anchors the flagellum to the cytoplasmic membrane, the other pair to the cell wall.*

globular molecules of a protein called *flagellin*. The cell secretes molecules of flagellin through the hollow core of the flagellum, to be deposited in a clockwise helix at the lengthening tip. Bacterial flagella sense external wetness, inhibiting their own growth in dry habitats.

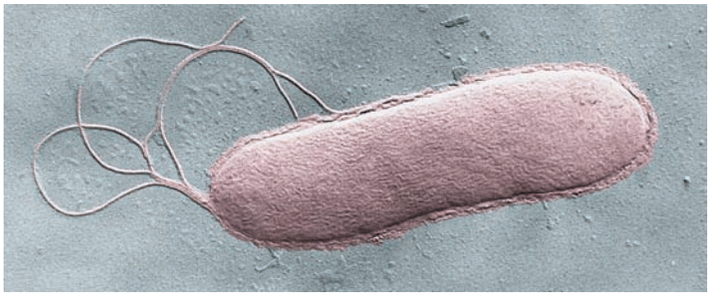
No membrane covers the filament of bacterial flagella. At its base, a filament inserts into a curved structure, the hook, which is composed of a different protein. The basal body, which is composed of still different proteins, anchors the filament and hook to the cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane by means of a rod and a series of either two or four rings of integral proteins. Together the hook, rod, and rings allow the filament to rotate 360°. Differences in the proteins associated with bacterial flagella vary enough to allow classification of species into groups (strains) called *serovars*. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Flagella: Structure***



(a) Peritrichous flagella



(b) Single polar flagellum



(c) Tuft of polar flagella

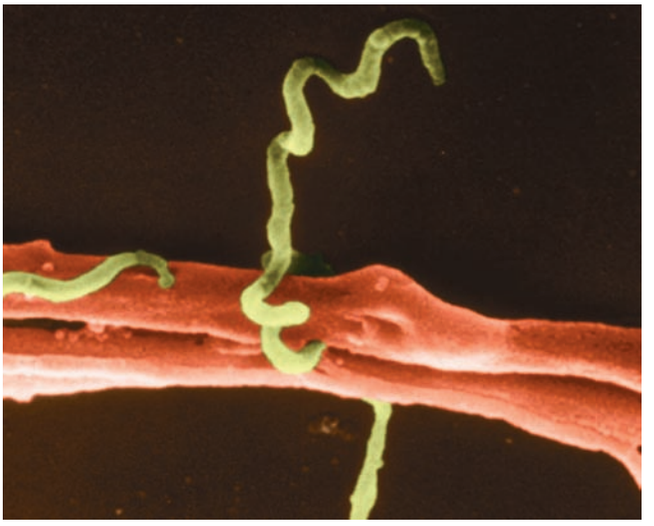
▲ **Figure 3.7** **Micrographs of basic arrangements of bacterial flagella.**

Arrangement

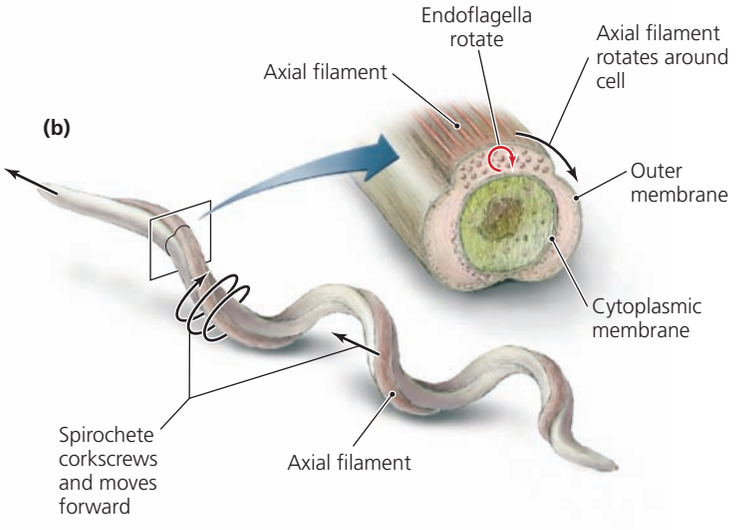
Bacteria may have one of several flagellar arrangements (Figure 3.7). Flagella that cover the surface of the cell are termed **peritrichous;**[2] in contrast, **polar** flagella are only at the ends. Some cells have tufts of polar flagella.

Some spiral-shaped bacteria, called *spirochetes* (spī´rō-kēts),[3] have flagella at both ends that spiral tightly around the cell instead of protruding into the surrounding medium. These flagella, called **endoflagella,** form an **axial filament** that wraps around the cell between its cytoplasmic membrane and an outer membrane (Figure 3.8). Rotation of endoflagella evidently causes the axial filament to rotate around the cell, causing the spirochete to "corkscrew" through its medium. *Treponema pallidum* (trep-ō-nē´mă pal´li-dŭm), the agent of syphilis, and *Borrelia burgdorferi* (bō-rē´lē-ă burg-dōr´fer-ē), the cause of Lyme disease, are notable spirochetes. Some scientists think that the corkscrew motility of these pathogens allows them to invade human tissues.

▶ **ANIMATIONS**: *Flagella: Arrangement; Spirochetes*



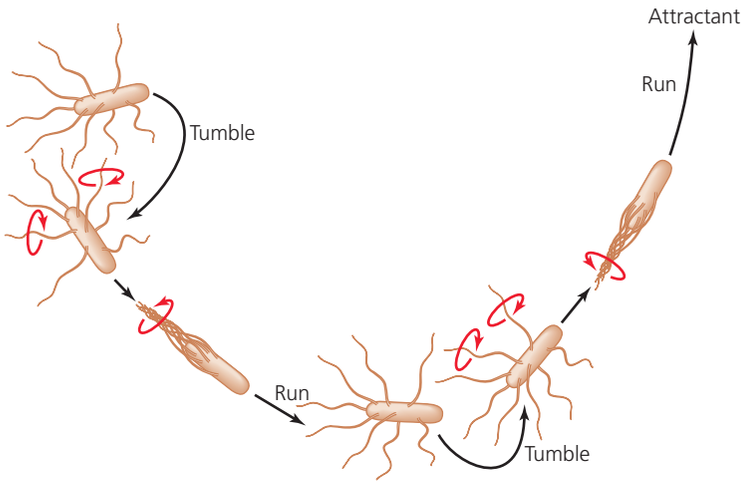
(a)



▲ **Figure 3.8** **Axial filament.** **(a)** Scanning electron micrograph of a spirochete, *Treponema pallidum*. **(b)** Diagram of axial filament wrapped around a spirochete. Cross section reveals that an axial filament is composed of endoflagella.

[2]From Greek *peri*, meaning "around," and *trichos*, meaning a "hair."

[3]From Greek *speira*, meaning coil, and *chaeta*, meaning "hair."



◀ **Figure 3.9 Motion of a peritrichous bacterium.** In peritrichous bacteria, runs occur when all of the flagella rotate counterclockwise and become bundled. Tumbles occur when the flagella rotate clockwise, become unbundled, and the cell spins randomly. In positive chemotaxis (shown), runs last longer than tumbles, resulting in motion toward the chemical attractant. *What triggers a bacterial flagellum to rotate counterclockwise, producing a run?*

Figure 3.9 *Favorable environmental conditions induce runs.*

Function

Although the precise mechanism by which bacterial flagella move is not completely understood, we do know that they rotate 360° like boat propellers rather than whipping from side to side. The flow of hydrogen ions (H^+) or of sodium ions (Na^+) through the cytoplasmic membrane near the basal body powers the rotation, propelling the bacterium through the environment at about 60 cell lengths per second—equivalent to a car traveling at 670 miles per hour! Flagella rotate at more than 100,000 rpm and can change direction from counterclockwise to clockwise.

Bacteria move with a series of "runs" interrupted by "tumbles." Counterclockwise flagellar rotation produces movements of a cell in one direction for some time; this is called a *run*. If more than one flagellum is present, the flagella align and rotate together as a bundle. Tumbles are abrupt, random changes in direction. Tumbles result from clockwise flagellar rotation where each flagellum rotates independently. Both runs and tumbles occur in response to stimuli.

Receptors for light or chemicals on the surface of the cell send signals to the flagella, which then adjust their speed and direction of rotation. A bacterium can position itself in a more favorable environment by varying the number and duration of runs and tumbles. The presence of favorable stimuli increases the number of runs and decreases the number of tumbles; as a result, the cell tends to move toward an attractant **(Figure 3.9)**. Unfavorable stimuli increase the number of tumbles, which increases the likelihood that it will move randomly in another direction, away from a repellent.

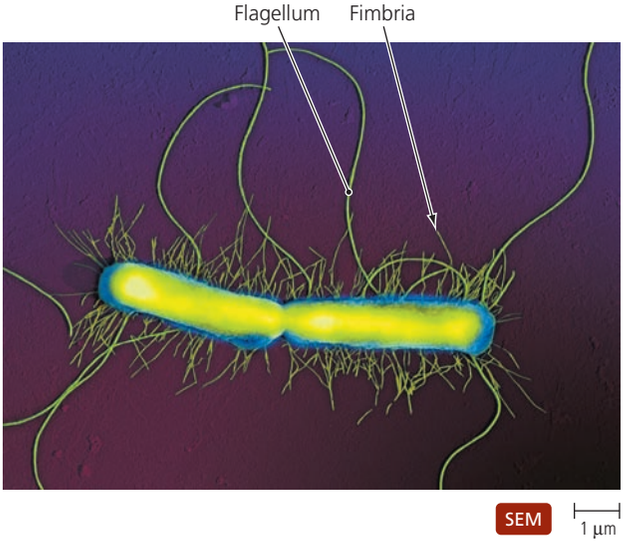
Movement in response to a stimulus is termed **taxis.** The stimulus may be either light **(phototaxis)** or a chemical **(chemotaxis).** Movement toward a favorable stimulus is *positive taxis,* whereas movement away from an unfavorable stimulus is *negative taxis.* For example, movement toward a nutrient would be *positive chemotaxis.* ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Flagella: Movement***

Fimbriae and Pili

Learning Outcome

3.7 Compare and contrast the structures and functions of fimbriae, pili, and flagella.

Many bacteria have rodlike proteinaceous extensions called **fimbriae** (fim´brē-ī; singular: *fimbria*). These sticky, bristlelike projections adhere to one another and to substances in the environment. There may be hundreds of fimbriae per cell, and they are usually shorter than flagella **(Figure 3.10)**. An example of a bacterium with fimbriae is *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă gonor-rē´ī), which causes gonorrhea. Pathogens must be able to adhere to their hosts if they are to survive and cause disease. This bacterium is able to colonize the mucous membrane of the reproductive tract by attaching with fimbriae. *Neisseria* cells that lack fimbriae are nonpathogenic.

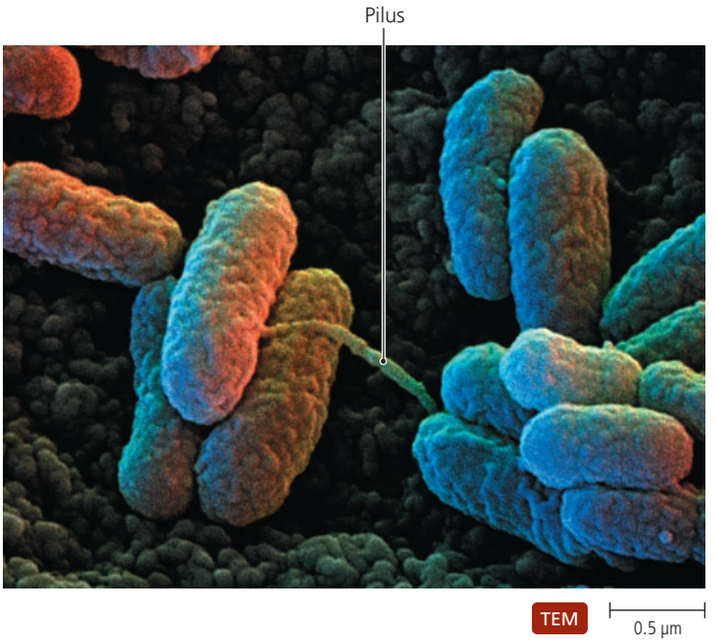


▲ **Figure 3.10 Fimbriae.** *Proteus vulgaris* has flagella and fimbriae.

Bacteria may use fimbriae to move across a surface via a process similar to pulling an object with a rope. The bacterium extends a fimbria, which attaches at its tip to the surface; then the bacterium retracts the fimbria, pulling itself toward the attachment point.

Fimbriae also serve an important function in **biofilms,** slimy masses of microbes adhering to a substrate by means of fimbriae and glycocalyces. Some fimbriae act as electrical wires, conducting electrical signals among cells in a biofilm. It has been estimated that at least 99% of bacteria in nature exist in biofilms. Researchers are interested in biofilms because of the roles they play in human diseases and in industry. (See **Highlight: Biofilms: Slime Matters.**)

A special type of fimbria is a **pilus** (pī´lus; plural: *pili,* pī´lī), also called *conjugation pilus.* Pili are longer than other fimbriae and usually shorter than flagella. Typically only one to a few pili are present per cell in bacteria that have them. Cells use pili to transfer DNA from one cell to the other via a process termed *conjugation* **(Figure 3.11)**. (Chapter 7 deals with conjugation in more detail.)



▲ **Figure 3.11** **Pili.** Two *Salmonella* cells are connected by a pilus. *How are pili different from bacterial flagella?*

Figure 3.11 *Bacterial flagella are flexible structures that rotate to propel the cell; pili are hollow tubes used to transfer DNA from one cell to another.*

Bacterial Cell Walls

Learning Outcomes

- 3.8 Describe common shapes and arrangements of bacterial cells.
- 3.9 Describe the sugar and peptide portions of peptidoglycan.
- 3.10 Compare and contrast the cell walls of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria in terms of structure and Gram staining.

The cells of most prokaryotes are surrounded by a **cell wall** that provides structure and shape to the cell and protects it from osmotic forces. In addition, a cell wall assists some cells in

HIGHLIGHT

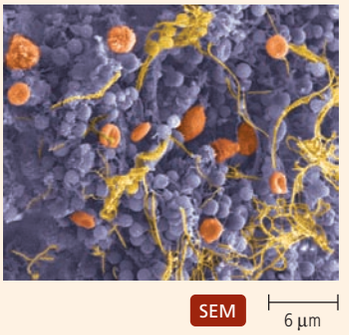
BIOFILMS: SLIME MATTERS

They form plaque on teeth; they are the slime on rocks in rivers and streams; and they can cause disease, clog drains, or help clean up hazardous waste. They are biofilms—organized, layered systems of bacteria and other microbes attached to a surface. Understanding biofilms holds the key to many important clinical and industrial applications.

Biofilm bacteria communicate via chemical and electrical signals that help them organize and form three-dimensional structures. The architecture of a biofilm provides protection that free-floating bacteria lack. For example, the lower concentrations of oxygen found in the interior of biofilms thwart the effectiveness of some antibiotics.

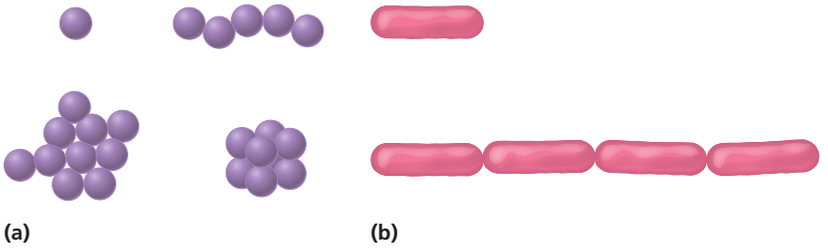
Furthermore, bacteria in biofilms behave in significantly different ways from individual, free-floating bacteria. For example, as a free-floating cell, the soil bacterium *Pseudomonas putida* propels itself through water with its flagella; however, once it becomes part of a biofilm, it turns off the genes for flagellar proteins and starts synthesizing pili instead. In addition, the genes for antibiotic resistance in *P. putida* are more active within cells in a biofilm than within a free-floating cell.

The more we understand biofilms, the more readily we can reduce their harmful effects or put them to good use. Biofilms account for about two-thirds of bacterial infections in humans, such as the serious lung infections suffered by cystic fibrosis patients. Biofilms are also the culprits in many industrial problems, including corroded pipes and clogged water filters,



Biofilm on medical tubing.

which cause millions of dollars of damage each year. Fortunately, not all biofilms are detrimental; some show potential as aids in preventing and controlling certain kinds of industrial pollution.



◀ **Figure 3.12 Bacterial shapes and arrangements.** **(a)** Spherical cocci may be in arrangements such as single, chains (streptococci), clusters (staphylococci), and cuboidal packets (sarcinae). **(b)** Rod-shaped bacilli may also be single or in arrangements such as chains.

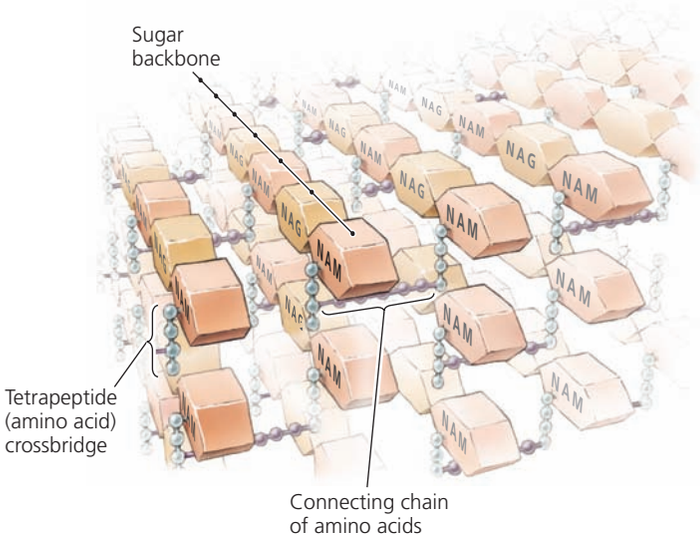
attaching to other cells or in resisting antimicrobial drugs. Note that animal cells do not have walls, a difference that plays a key role in treatment of many bacterial diseases with certain types of antibiotics. For example, penicillin attacks the cell wall of bacteria but is harmless to human cells, which lack walls.

Cell walls give bacterial cells characteristic shapes. Spherical cells, called cocci (kok′sī), may appear in various arrangements, including singly or in chains (streptococci), clusters (staphylococci), or cuboidal packets (sarcinae, sar´si-nī) **(Figure 3.12)**, depending on the planes of cell division. Rod-shaped cells, called bacilli (bă-sil´ī), typically appear singly or in chains.

Bacterial cell walls are composed of **peptidoglycan** (pep´ti-dō-glī´kan), a complex polysaccharide. Peptidoglycan in turn is composed of two types of regularly alternating sugar molecules, called N-*acetylglucosamine (NAG)* and N-*acetylmuramic acid (NAM)*, which are structurally similar to glucose. Millions of NAG and NAM molecules are covalently linked in chains in which NAG and NAM alternate. These chains are the "glycan" portions of peptidoglycan.

Chains of NAG and NAM are attached to other chains by crossbridges of four amino acids (tetrapeptides). **Figure 3.13** illustrates one possible configuration. These peptide cross bridges are the "peptido" portion of peptidoglycan. Depending on the bacterium, tetrapeptide bridges are either bonded to one another or held together by short *connecting chains* of other amino acids, as shown in Figure 3.13. Peptidoglycan covers the entire surface of a cell, which must insert millions of new NAG and NAM subunits if it is to grow and divide.

Scientists describe two basic types of bacterial cell walls as *Gram-positive* cell walls or *Gram-negative* cell walls. They distinguish Gram-positive and Gram-negative cells by the use of the Gram staining procedure (described in Chapter 4), which was invented long before the structure and chemical nature of bacterial cell walls were known.



▲ **Figure 3.13 Possible structure of peptidoglycan.** Peptidoglycan is composed of chains of NAG and NAM linked by tetrapeptide cross bridges and, in some cases, as shown here, connecting chains of amino acids to form a tough yet flexible structure. The amino acids of the cross bridges differ among bacterial species.

Gram-Positive Bacterial Cell Walls

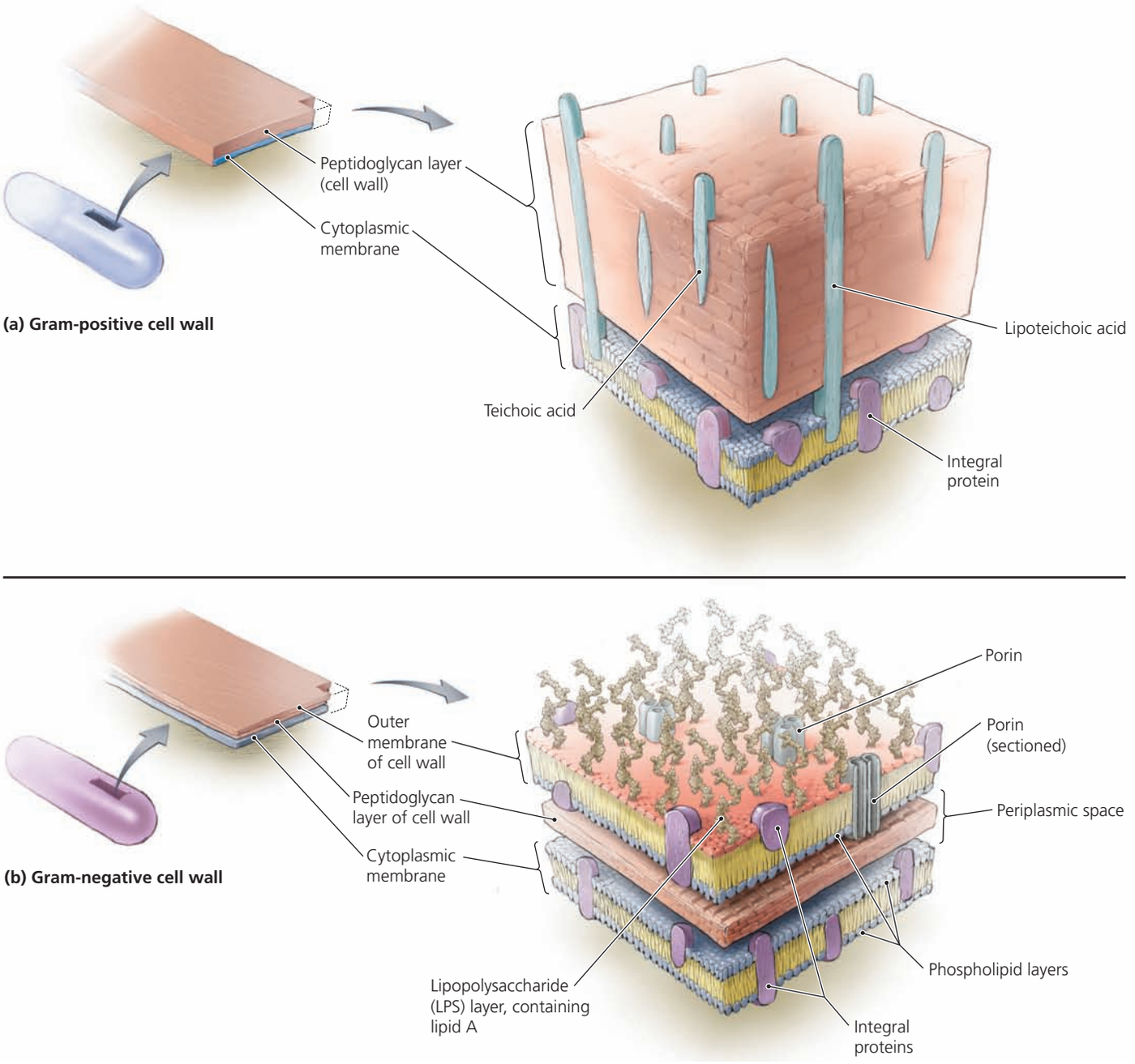
Learning Outcome

3.11 Compare and contrast the cell walls of acid-fast bacteria with typical Gram-positive cell walls.

Gram-positive bacterial cell walls have a relatively thick layer of peptidoglycan that also contains unique chemicals called *teichoic* (tī-kō´ik)[4] *acids*. Some teichoic acids are covalently linked to lipids, forming *lipoteichoic acids* that anchor the peptidoglycan to the cytoplasmic membrane **(Figure 3.14a)**. Teichoic acids have negative electrical charges, which help give the surface of a Gram-positive bacterium a negative charge and may play a role in the passage of ions through the wall. The thick cell wall of a Gram-positive bacterium retains the crystal violet dye used in the Gram staining procedure, so the stained cells appear purple under magnification.

Some additional chemicals are associated with the walls of some Gram-positive bacteria. For example, species of *Mycobacterium* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm), which include the causative agents of tuberculosis and leprosy, have walls with up to 60% mycolic acid, a waxy lipid. Mycolic acid helps these cells survive desiccation (drying out) and makes them difficult to stain with regular water-based dyes. Researchers have developed a special staining procedure called the *acid-fast stain* to stain these Gram-positive cells that contain large amounts of waxy lipids. Such cells are called *acid-fast bacteria* (see Chapter 4).

[4]From Greek *teichos*, meaning "wall."



▲ **Figure 3.14 Comparison of cell walls of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria.** **(a)** The Gram-positive cell wall has a thick layer of peptidoglycan and lipoteichoic acids that anchor the wall to the cytoplasmic membrane. **(b)** The Gram-negative cell wall has a thin layer of peptidoglycan and an outer membrane composed of lipopolysaccharide (LPS), phospholipids, and proteins. *What effects can lipid A have on human physiology?*

Figure 3.14 *Lipid A can cause shock, blood clotting, and fever in humans.*

Gram-Negative Bacterial Cell Walls

Learning Outcome

3.12 Describe the clinical implications of the structure of the Gram-negative cell wall.

Gram-negative cell walls have only a thin layer of peptidoglycan **(Figure 3.14b)**, but outside this layer is another, outer bilayer membrane composed of two different layers or leaflets. The inner leaflet of the outer membrane is composed of phospholipids and proteins, but the outer leaflet is made of **lipopolysaccharide (LPS).** Integral proteins called *porins* form channels through both leaflets of the outer membrane, allowing glucose and other monosaccharides to move across the membrane. The outer membrane is protective, allowing Gram-negative bacteria such as *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) to better survive in harsh environments.

LPS is a union of lipid with sugar. The lipid portion of LPS is known as **lipid A.** The erroneous idea that lipid A is *inside* Gram-negative cells led to the use of the term **endotoxin**[5] for this chemical. A dead cell releases lipid A when the outer membrane disintegrates, and lipid A may trigger fever, vasodilation, inflammation, shock, and blood clotting in humans. Because killing large numbers of Gram-negative bacteria with antimicrobial drugs releases large amounts of lipid A, which might threaten the patient more than the live bacteria, any internal infection by Gram-negative bacteria is cause for concern.

The Gram-negative outer membrane can also be an impediment to the treatment of disease. For example, the outer membrane may prevent the movement of penicillin to the underlying peptidoglycan, thus rendering the drug ineffectual against many Gram-negative pathogens.

Between the cytoplasmic membrane and the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria is a **periplasmic space** (see Figure 3.14b). The periplasmic space contains the peptidoglycan and *periplasm,* the name given to the gel between the membranes of these Gram-negative cells. Periplasm contains water, nutrients, and substances secreted by the cell, such as digestive enzymes and proteins involved in specific transport. The enzymes function to catabolize large nutrient molecules into smaller molecules that can be absorbed or transported into the cell.

Because the cell walls of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria differ, the Gram stain is an important diagnostic tool. After the Gram staining procedure, Gram-negative cells appear pink, and Gram-positive cells appear purple. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Bacterial Cell Walls***

Bacteria Without Cell Walls

A few bacteria, such as *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (mī´kō-plaz-mă nū-mō´nē-ī), lack cell walls entirely. In the past, these bacteria were often mistaken for viruses because of their small size and lack of walls. However, they do have other features of prokaryotic cells, such as prokaryotic ribosomes (discussed later in the chapter).

CRITICAL **THINKING**

After a man infected with the bacterium *Escherichia coli* was treated with the correct antibiotic for this pathogen, the bacterium was no longer found in the man's blood, but his symptoms of fever and inflammation worsened. What caused the man's response to the treatment? Why was his condition worsened by the treatment?

Bacterial Cytoplasmic Membranes

Beneath the glycocalyx and the cell wall is a **cytoplasmic membrane.** The cytoplasmic membrane may also be referred to as the *cell membrane* or a *plasma membrane.*

[5]From Greek *endo,* meaning "inside," and *toxikon,* meaning "poison."

Structure

Learning Outcomes

3.13 Diagram a phospholipid bilayer and explain its significance in reference to a cytoplasmic membrane.

3.14 Explain the fluid mosaic model of membrane structure.

Cytoplasmic membranes are about 8 nm thick and composed of phospholipids (see Figure 2.16) and associated proteins. Some bacterial membranes also contain sterol-like molecules, called *hopanoids,* that help stabilize the membrane.

The structure of a cytoplasmic membrane is referred to as a **phospholipid bilayer (Figure 3.15).** A phospholipid molecule is bipolar; that is, the two ends of the molecule are different. The phosphate-containing heads of each phospholipid molecule are *hydrophilic;*[6] that is, they are attracted to water at the two surfaces of the membrane. The hydrocarbon tails of each phospholipid molecule are *hydrophobic*[7] and huddle together with other tails in the interior of the membrane, away from water. Phospholipids placed in a watery environment naturally form a bilayer because of their bipolar nature.

About half of a bacterial cytoplasmic membrane is composed of *integral proteins* inserted amidst the phospholipids. Some integral proteins penetrate the entire bilayer; others are found in only half the bilayer. In contrast, *peripheral proteins* are loosely attached to the membrane on one side or the other. Proteins of cell membranes may act as recognition proteins, enzymes, receptors, carriers, or channels.

The **fluid mosaic model** describes our current understanding of membrane structure. The term *mosaic* indicates that the membrane proteins are arranged in a way that resembles the tiles in a mosaic, and *fluid* indicates that the proteins and lipids are free to flow laterally within a membrane. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Membrane Structure***

Function

Learning Outcomes

3.15 Describe the functions of a cytoplasmic membrane as they relate to permeability.

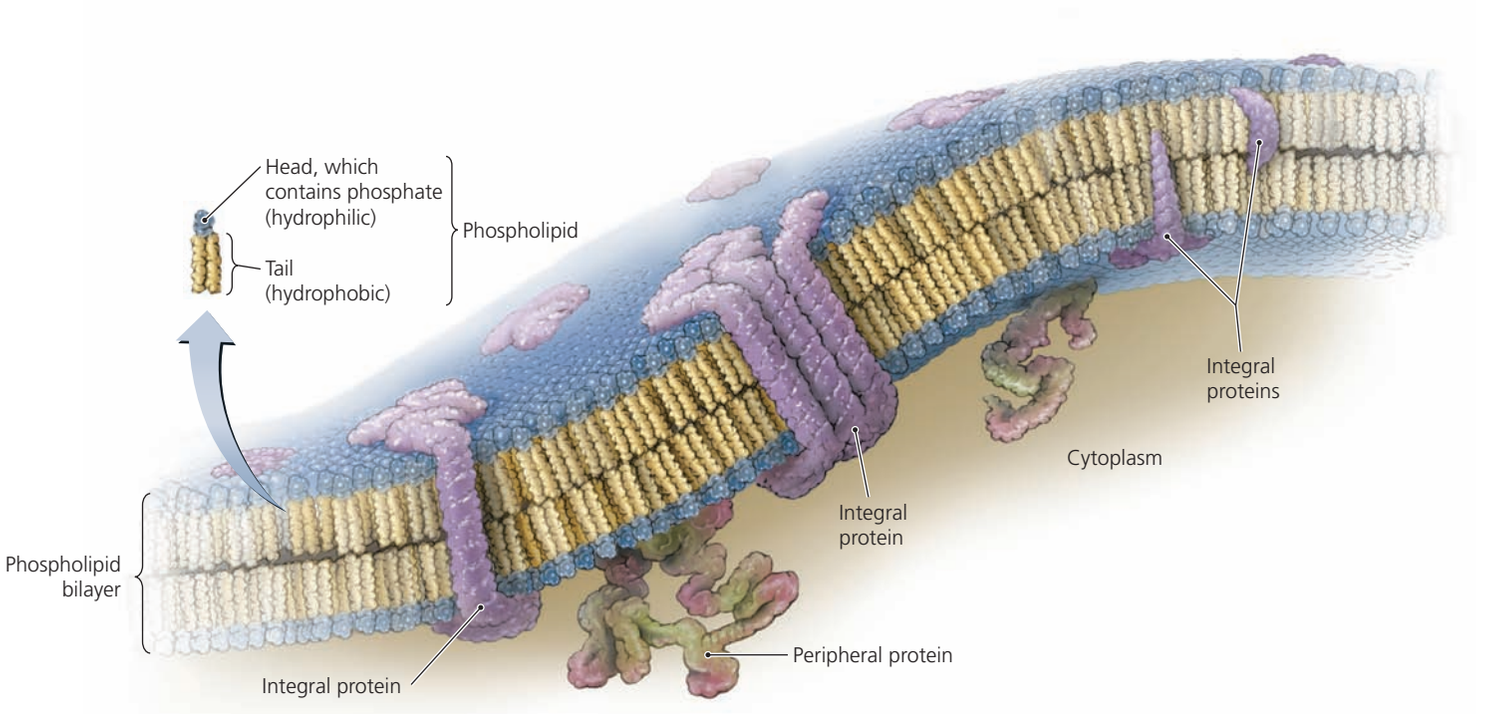
3.16 Compare and contrast the passive and active processes by which materials cross a cytoplasmic membrane.

3.17 Define *osmosis* and distinguish among isotonic, hypertonic, and hypotonic solutions.

A cytoplasmic membrane does more than separate the contents of the cell from the outside environment. The cytoplasmic membrane also controls the passage of substances into and out of the cell. Nutrients are brought into the cell, and wastes are removed. The membrane also functions in producing molecules for energy storage and for harvesting light energy in photosynthetic bacteria. (Energy storage and photosynthesis are discussed in Chapter 5.)

In its function of controlling the contents of the cell, the cytoplasmic membrane is **selectively permeable,** meaning

[6]From Greek *hydro,* meaning "water," and *philos,* meaning "love."
[7]From Greek *hydro,* meaning "water," and *phobos,* meaning "fear."



▲ **Figure 3.15** **The structure of a prokaryotic cytoplasmic membrane: a phospholipid bilayer.**

that it allows some substances to cross it while preventing the crossing of others. How does a membrane exert control over the contents of the cell and the substances that move across it?

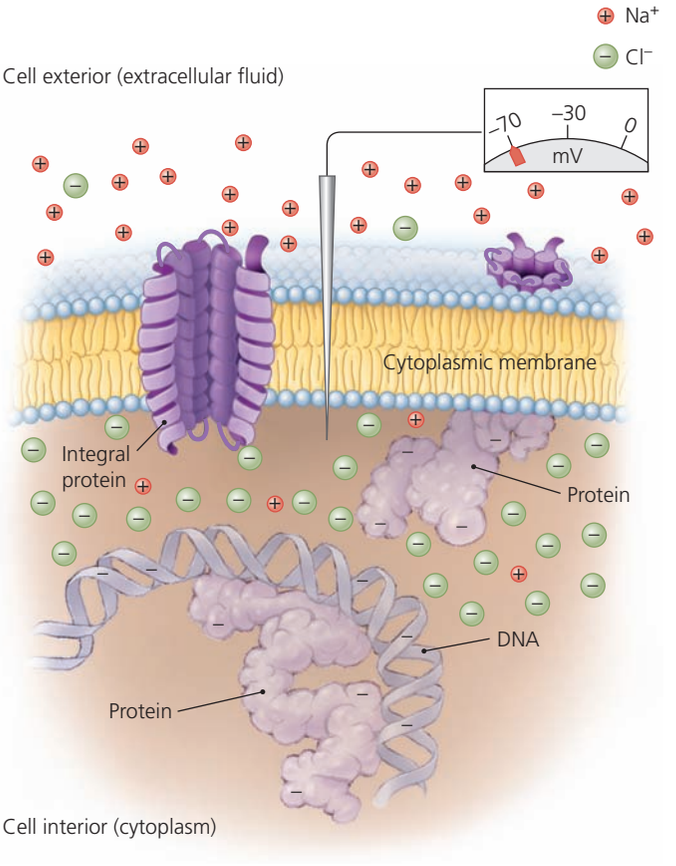
▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Membrane Permeability***

A phospholipid bilayer is naturally impermeable to most substances. Large molecules cannot cross through it; ions and molecules with an electrical charge are repelled by it; and hydrophilic substances cannot easily cross its hydrophobic interior. However, cytoplasmic membranes, unlike plain phospholipid bilayers in a scientist's test tube, contain proteins, and these proteins allow substances to cross the membrane by functioning as pores, channels, or carriers.

Movement across the cytoplasmic membrane occurs by either passive or active processes. Passive processes do not require the expenditure of a cell's metabolic energy store, whereas active processes require the expenditure of cellular energy, either directly or indirectly. Active and passive processes will be discussed shortly, but first you must understand another feature of selectively permeable cytoplasmic membranes: their ability to maintain a *concentration gradient*.

Membranes enable a cell to concentrate chemicals on one side of the membrane or the other. The difference in concentration of a chemical on the two sides of a membrane is its **concentration gradient** (also known as a *chemical gradient*).

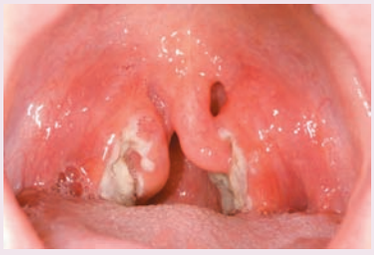
Because many of the substances that have concentration gradients across cell membranes are electrically charged chemicals, a corresponding **electrical gradient,** or voltage, also exists across the membrane **(Figure 3.16)**. For example, a greater concentration of negatively charged proteins exists inside the membrane, and positively charged sodium ions are more



▲ **Figure 3.16** **Electrical potential of a cytoplasmic membrane.** The electrical potential, in this case −70 mV, exists across a membrane because there are more negative charges inside the cell than outside it.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE BIG GAME



College sophomore Nadia is a star point guard for her school's basketball team. She is excited about the divisional finals Friday night—she's even heard rumors that a professional scout will be in the stands. On Thursday morning, she wakes up with a sore throat. Her forehead doesn't feel warm, so she forces herself to attend her Thursday classes; but when she wakes up on Friday morning, her throat is noticeably worse. Still, she forces herself to attend Friday morning class but feels tired and much worse by noon. It is downright painful to swallow, and she skips lunch.

Nearly crying, she heads back to the dorm and checks her temperature—101°F. Desperate, she walks to the student health center, where a nurse practitioner notices white spots on the back of Nadia's throat and on her tonsils. The divisional basketball game starts in six hours, but it only takes a few minutes for the nurse practitioner to perform a rapid streptococcal antigen test and determine that Nadia has streptococcal pharyngitis—strep throat. She will miss the big game.

Strep throat is caused by an encapsulated, Gram-positive bacterium, *Streptococcus pyogenes*. The only good news is that by taking the prescribed penicillin, Nadia should be ready for her next big game—hopefully, the quarterfinals.

1. How does the capsule of *Streptococcus* contribute to the bacterium's ability to cause disease?
2. What bacterial structures, besides the capsule, may be allowing *Streptococcus* to infect Nadia's throat?
3. Penicillin works by interrupting the formation of peptidoglycan. What bacterial structure contains peptidoglycan? In a Gram-positive organism like *Streptococcus*, is this structure typically thicker or thinner than it would be in a Gram-negative bacterium?

concentrated outside the membrane. One result of the segregation of electrical charges by a membrane is that the interior of a cell is usually electrically negative compared to the exterior. This tends to repel negatively charged chemicals and attract positively charged substances into cells. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Passive Transport: Principles of Diffusion***

Passive Processes

In passive processes, the electrochemical gradient provides the source of energy; the cell does not expend its energy reserve. Passive processes include diffusion, facilitated diffusion, and osmosis.

Diffusion **Diffusion** is the net movement of a chemical down its concentration gradient—that is, from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration. It requires no energy output by the cell, a common feature of all passive processes. In fact, diffusion occurs even in the absence of cells or their membranes. In the case of diffusion into or out of cells, only chemicals that are small or lipid soluble can diffuse through the lipid portion of the membrane **(Figure 3.17a)**. For example, oxygen, carbon dioxide, alcohol, and fatty acids can freely diffuse through the cytoplasmic membrane, but molecules such as glucose and proteins cannot.

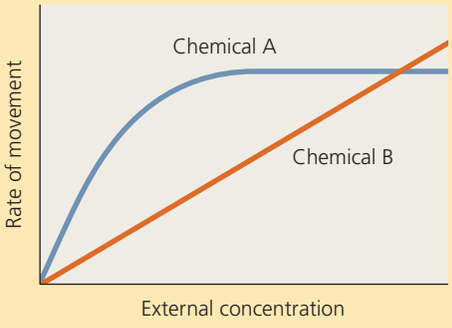
Facilitated Diffusion The phospholipid bilayer blocks the movement of large or electrically charged molecules, so they do not cross the membrane unless there is a pathway for diffusion. As we have seen, cytoplasmic membranes contain integral proteins. Some of these proteins act as channels or carriers to allow certain molecules to diffuse down their concentration gradients into or out of the cell. This process is called **facilitated diffusion** because the proteins facilitate the process by providing a pathway for diffusion. The cell expends no energy in facilitated diffusion; electrochemical gradients provide all of the energy necessary.

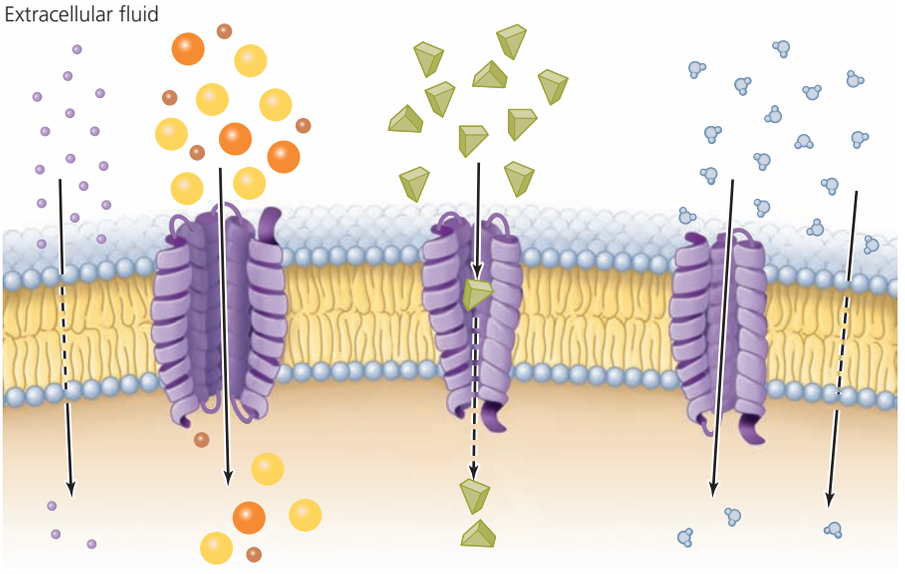
Some channel proteins allow the passage of a range of chemicals that have the right size or electrical charge **(Figure 3.17b)**. Other channel proteins, known as *permeases*, are more specific, carrying only certain substrates **(Figure 3.17c)**. A permease has a binding site that is selective for one substance.

CRITICAL THINKING

A scientist who is studying passive movement of chemicals across the cytoplasmic membrane of *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi measures the rate at which two chemicals diffuse into a cell as a function of external concentration. The results are shown in the following figure. Chemical A diffuses into the cell more rapidly than does B at lower external concentrations, but the rate levels off as the external concentration increases. The rate of diffusion of chemical B continues to increase as the external concentration increases.

1. How can you explain the differences in the diffusion rates of chemicals A and B?
2. Why does the diffusion rate of chemical A taper off?
3. How could the cell increase the diffusion rate of chemical A?
4. How could the cell increase the diffusion rate of chemical B?

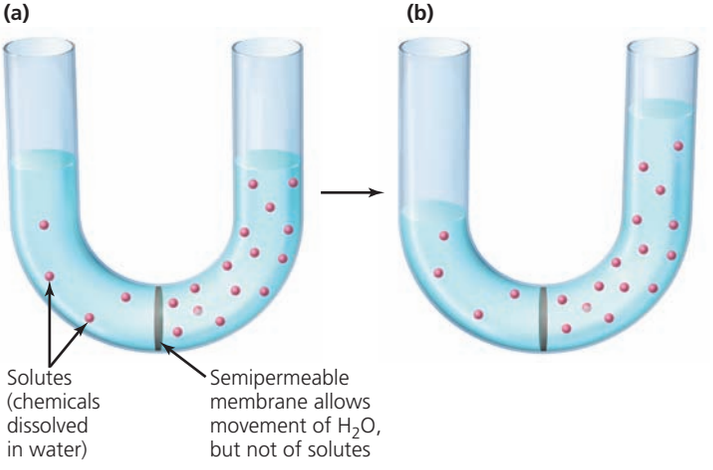




◀ **Figure 3.17 Passive processes of movement across a cytoplasmic membrane.** Passive processes always involve movement down an electrochemical gradient.

Osmosis When discussing simple and facilitated diffusion, we considered a solution in terms of the *solutes* (dissolved chemicals) it contains because it is those solutes that move into and out of the cell. In contrast, with osmosis it is useful to consider the concentration of the solvent, which in organisms is always water. **Osmosis** is the special name given to the diffusion of water across a semipermeable membrane—that is, across a membrane that is permeable to water molecules but not to most solutes that are present, such as proteins, amino acids, salts, or glucose **(Figure 3.17d)**. Because these solutes cannot freely penetrate the membrane, they cannot diffuse across the membrane, no matter how unequal their concentrations on either side may be. Instead, the water diffuses. Water molecules cross from the side of the membrane that contains a higher concentration of water (lower concentration of solute) to the side that contains a lower concentration of water (higher concentration of solute). In osmosis, water moves across the membrane until equilibrium is reached, or until the pressure of water is equal to the force of osmosis **(Figure 3.18)**.

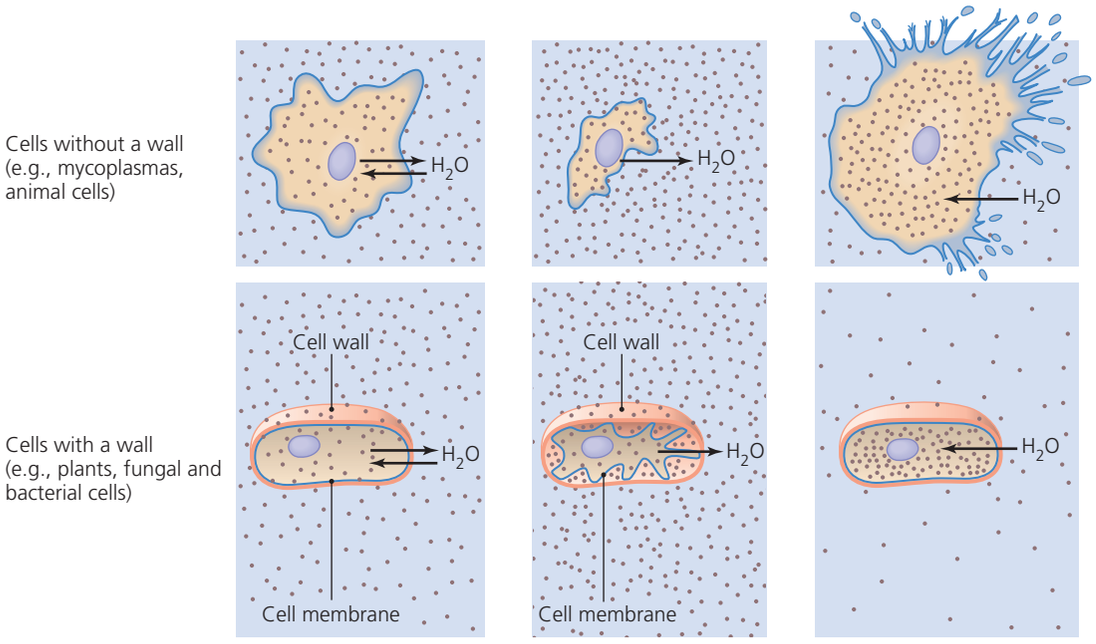
We commonly compare solutions according to their concentrations of solutes. When solutions on either side of a selectively permeable membrane have the same concentration of solutes, the two solutions are said to be **isotonic.**[8] In an isotonic situation, neither side of a selectively permeable membrane will experience a net loss or gain of water **(Figure 3.19a)**.



▲ **Figure 3.18 Osmosis, the diffusion of water across a semipermeable membrane. (a)** A membrane separates two solutions of different concentrations in a U-shaped tube. The membrane is permeable to water, but not to the solute. **(b)** After time has passed, water has moved down its concentration gradient until water pressure prevented the osmosis of any additional water. *Which side of the tube more closely represents a living cell?*

[8]From Greek *isos*, meaning "equal," and *tonos*, meaning "tone."

Figure 3.18 *The right-hand side represents the cell, because cells are typically hypertonic to their environment.*



◀ Figure 3.19 Effects of isotonic, hypertonic, and hypotonic solutions on cells. **(a)** Cells in isotonic solutions experience no net movement of water. **(b)** Cells in hypertonic solutions shrink because of the net movement of water out of the cell. **(c)** Cells in hypotonic solutions undergo a net gain of water. Animal cells burst because they lack a cell wall; in cells with a cell wall, the pressure of water pushing against the interior of the wall eventually stops the movement of water into the cell.

When the concentrations of solutions are unequal, the solution with the higher concentration of solutes is said to be **hypertonic**[9] to the other. The solution with a lower concentration of solutes is **hypotonic**[10] in comparison. Note that the terms *hypertonic* and *hypotonic* refer to the concentration of solute, even though osmosis refers to the movement of the *solvent*, which, in cells, is water. The terms *isotonic, hypertonic,* and *hypotonic* are relative. For example, a glass of tap water is isotonic to another glass of the same water, but it is hypertonic compared to distilled water, and hypotonic when compared to seawater. In biology, the three terms are traditionally used relative to the interior of cells. Most cells are hypertonic to their environments.

Obviously, a hypertonic solution, with its higher concentration of solutes, necessarily means a lower concentration of water; that is, a hypertonic solution has a lower concentration of water than does a hypotonic solution. Like other chemicals, water moves down its concentration gradient from a hypotonic solution into a hypertonic solution. A cell placed in a hypertonic solution will therefore lose water and shrivel **(Figure 3.19b)**.

On the other hand, water will diffuse into a cell placed in a hypotonic solution because the cell has a higher solutes-to-water concentration. As water moves into the cell, water pressure against its cytoplasmic membrane increases, and the cell expands **(Figure 3.19c)**. One function of a cell wall, such as the peptidoglycan of bacteria, is to resist further osmosis and prevent cells from bursting.

It is useful to compare solutions to the concentration of solutes in a patient's blood cells. Isotonic saline solutions administered to a patient have the same percent dissolved solute (in this case, salt) as do the patient's blood cells. Thus, the patient's intracellular and extracellular environments remain in equilibrium when an isotonic saline solution is administered. However, if the patient is infused with a hypertonic solution, water will move out of the patient's cells, and the cells will shrivel, a condition called *crenation.* Conversely, if a patient is infused with a hypotonic solution, water will move into the patient's cells, which will swell and possibly burst. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Passive Transport: Special Types of Diffusion***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

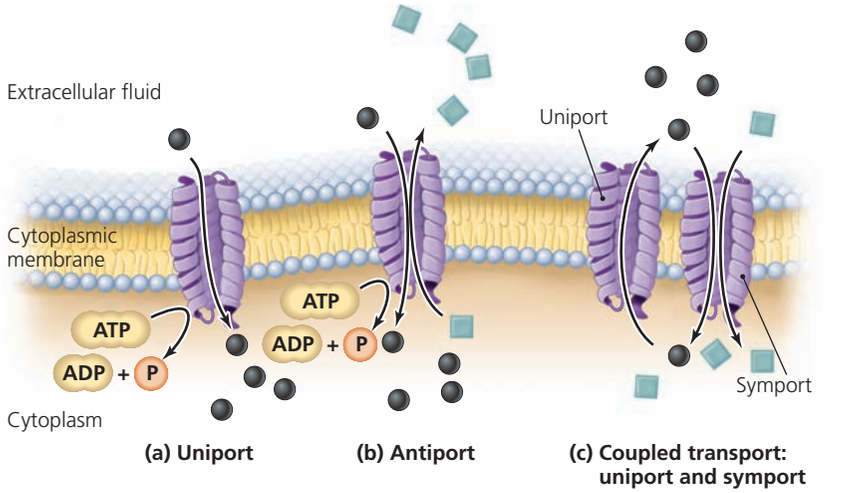
Solutions hypertonic to bacteria and fungi are used for food preservation. For instance, jams and jellies are hypertonic with sugar, and pickles are hypertonic with salt. How do hypertonic solutions kill bacteria and fungi that would otherwise spoil these foods?

Active Processes

As stated previously, active processes require the cell to expend energy stored in ATP molecules to move materials across the cytoplasmic membrane against their electrochemical gradient. This is analogous to moving water uphill. As we will see, ATP may be utilized directly during transport or indirectly at some other site and at some other time. Active processes in bacteria include *active transport* by means of carrier proteins and a special process termed *group translocation.* ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Active Transport: Overview***

Active Transport Like facilitated diffusion, **active transport** utilizes transmembrane permease proteins; however, the functioning of active transport proteins requires the cell to expend ATP to transport molecules across the membrane. Some such proteins are referred to as *gated channels* or *ports* because they are controlled.

[9]From Greek *hyper,* meaning "more" or "over."
[10]From Greek *hypo,* meaning "less" or "under."



◀ Figure 3.20 Mechanisms of active transport. (a) Via a uniport. **(b)** Via an antiport. **(c)** Via a uniport coupled with a symport. In this example, the membrane uses ATP energy to pump one substance out through a uniport. As this substance flows back into the cell, it brings another substance with it through the symport. *What is the usual source of energy for active transport?*

Figure 3.20 *ATP is the usual source of energy for active transport processes.*

When the cell is in need of a substance, the protein becomes functional (the gate "opens"). At other times, the gate is "closed."

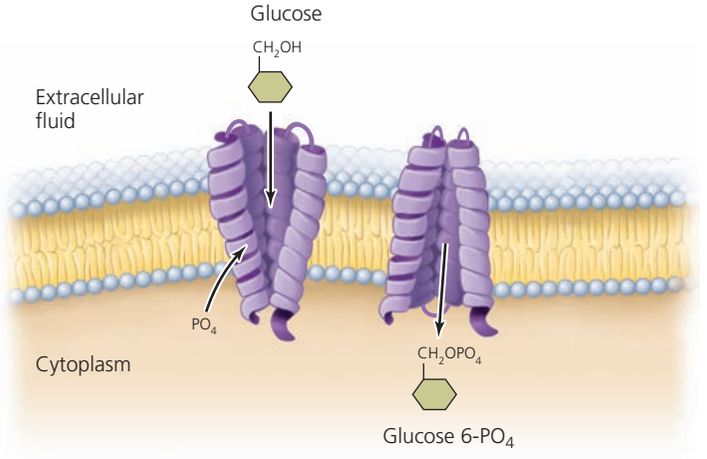
If only one substance is transported at a time, the permease is called a *uniport* **(Figure 3.20a)**. In contrast, *antiports* simultaneously transport two chemicals, but in opposite directions; that is, one substance is transported into the cell at the same time that a second substance is transferred out of the cell **(Figure 3.20b)**. In other types of active transport, two substances move together in the same direction across the membrane by means of a single carrier protein. Such proteins are known as *symports* **(Figure 3.20c)**.

In all cases, active transport moves substances against their electrochemical gradient. Typically, the protein acts as an ATPase—an enzyme that breaks down ATP into ADP and inorganic phosphate during transport, releasing energy that is used to move the chemical against its electrochemical gradient across the membrane.

With symports and antiports, one chemical's electrochemical gradient may provide the energy needed to transport the second chemical, a mechanism called *coupled transport* (Figure 3.20c). For example, H^+ moving into a cell down its electrochemical gradient by facilitated diffusion provides energy to carry glucose into the cell, against the glucose gradient. The two processes are linked by a symport. However, cellular energy may still be utilized for transport because the H^+ gradient can be previously established by the active pumping of H^+ to the outside of the cell by an H^+ uniport. The use of ATP is thus separated in time and space from the active transport of glucose, but ATP was still expended.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Active Transport: Types*

Group Translocation **Group translocation** is an active process that occurs only in some bacteria. In group translocation, the substance being actively transported across the membrane is chemically changed during transport **(Figure 3.21)**. The membrane is impermeable to the altered substance, trapping it inside the cell. Group translocation is very efficient at bringing substances into a cell. It can operate efficiently even if the external concentration of the chemical being transported is as low as 1 part per million (ppm).



▲ Figure 3.21 Group translocation. This process involves a chemical change in a substance as it is being transported. This figure depicts glucose being transported into a bacterial cell via group translocation.

One well-studied example of group translocation is the accumulation of glucose inside a bacterial cell. As glucose is transported across the bacterial cell membrane, it is phosphorylated; that is, a phosphate group is added to the glucose. The glucose is changed into glucose 6-phosphate, a sugar that cannot cross back out but can be utilized in the ATP-producing metabolism of the cell. Other carbohydrates, fatty acids, purines, and pyrimidines are also brought into bacterial cells by group translocation. A summary of bacterial transport processes is shown in Table 3.2.

Cytoplasm of Bacteria

Learning Outcomes

3.18 Describe bacterial cytoplasm and its basic contents.
3.19 Define *inclusion* and give two examples.
3.20 Describe the formation and function of endospores.

Cytoplasm is the general term used to describe the gelatinous material inside a cell. Cytoplasm is semitransparent, fluid, elastic, and aqueous. It is composed of cytosol, inclusions, ribosomes,

TABLE 3.2 Transport Processes Across Bacterial Cytoplasmic Membranes

	Description	Examples of Transported Substances
Passive transport processes	Processes require no use of energy by the cell; the electrochemical gradient provides energy.	
Diffusion	Molecules move down their electrochemical gradient through the phospholipid bilayer of the membrane.	Oxygen, carbon dioxide, lipid-soluble chemicals
Facilitated diffusion	Molecules move down their electrochemical gradient through channels or carrier proteins.	Glucose, fructose, urea, some vitamins
Osmosis	Water molecules move down their concentration gradient across a selectively permeable membrane.	Water
Active transport processes	Cell expends energy in the form of ATP to move a substance against its electrochemical gradient.	
Active transport	ATP-dependent carrier proteins bring substances into cell.	Na^+, K^+, Ca^{2+}, H^+, Cl^-
Group translocation	The substance is chemically altered during transport; found only in some bacteria.	Glucose, mannose, fructose

and, in many cells, a cytoskeleton. Some bacterial cells produce internal, resistant, dormant forms called endospores.

Cytosol

The liquid portion of the cytoplasm is called **cytosol.** It is mostly water, but it also contains dissolved and suspended substances, including ions, carbohydrates, proteins (mostly enzymes), lipids, and wastes. The cytosol of prokaryotes also contains the cell's DNA in a region called the **nucleoid.** Recall that a distinctive feature of prokaryotes is lack of a phospholipid membrane surrounding this DNA.

Most bacteria have a single, circular DNA molecule organized as a chromosome. Some bacteria, such as *Vibrio cholerae* (vib´rē-ō kol´er-ī), the bacterium that causes cholera, are unusual in that they have two chromosomes.

The cytosol is the site of some chemical reactions. For example, enzymes within the cytosol function to produce amino acids and degrade sugar.

Inclusions

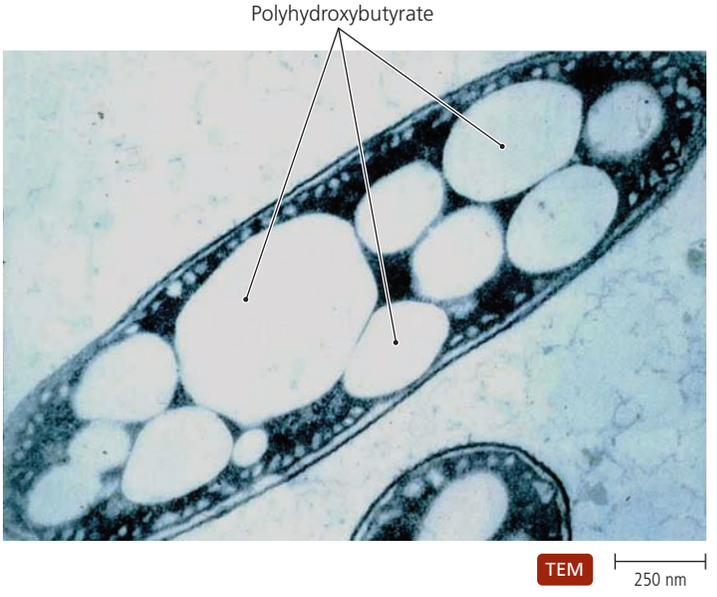
Deposits, called **inclusions,** are often found within bacterial cytosol. Rarely, a cell surrounds its inclusions with a polypeptide membrane. Inclusions may include reserve deposits of lipids, starch, or compounds containing nitrogen, phosphate, or sulfur. Such chemicals may be taken in and stored in the cytosol when nutrients are in abundance and then utilized when nutrients are scarce. The presence of specific inclusions is diagnostic for several pathogenic bacteria.

Many bacteria store carbon and energy in molecules of glycogen, which is a polymer of glucose molecules, or as a lipid polymer called *polyhydroxybutyrate (PHB)* **(Figure 3.22)**. Long chains of PHB accumulate as inclusion granules in the cytoplasm. Slight chemical modification of PHB produces a plastic that can be used for packaging and other applications (see **Beneficial Microbes: Plastics Made Perfect?**). PHB plastics are biodegradable, breaking down in a landfill in a few weeks rather than persisting for years as petroleum-based plastics do.

Many aquatic cyanobacteria (blue-green photosynthetic bacteria) contain inclusions called *gas vesicles* that store gases in protein sacs. The gases buoy the cells to the surface and into the light needed for photosynthesis. Other interesting inclusions are small crystals of magnetite stored by *magnetobacteria.* Infoldings of the cytoplasmic membrane surround the magnetite to form membrane-bound sacs.

Endospores

Some bacteria, notably *Bacillus* (ba-sil´ŭs) and *Clostridium* (klostrid´ē-ŭm), are characterized by the ability to produce unique structures called **endospores,** which are important for several



▲ **Figure 3.22** Granules of PHB in the bacterium *Azotobacter chroococcum.*

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

PLASTICS MADE PERFECT?

PHB bottle caps. One partially biodegraded in 60 days.

Petroleum-based plastics play a considerable role in modern life, appearing in packaging, bottles, appliances, furniture, automobiles, disposable diapers, and many other synthetic goods. Despite the good that plastic brings to our lives, there are problems with this artificial polymer.

Manufacturers make plastic from oil, exacerbating U.S. dependence on foreign supplies of crude oil. Consumers discard plastic, filling landfills with more than 15 million tons of plastic every year in the United States. Because plastic is artificial, microorganisms do not break it down effectively, and discarded plastic might remain in landfills for decades or centuries. What is needed is a functional "green" plastic—a plastic that is strong and light and that can be shaped and colored as needed, yet is more easily biodegradable.

Enter the bacteria. Many bacterial cells, particularly Gram-negative bacteria, use polyhydroxybutyrate (PHB) as a storage molecule and energy source, much as humans use fat. PHB and similar storage molecules turn out to be rather versatile plastics that are produced when bacteria metabolizing certain types of sugar are simultaneously deprived of an essential element, such as nitrogen, phosphorus, or potassium. The bacteria, faced with such a nutritionally stressed environment, convert the sugar to PHB, which they store as intracellular inclusions. Scientists harvest these biologically created molecules by breaking the cells open and treating the cytoplasm with chemicals to isolate the plastics and remove dangerous endotoxin.

Purified PHB possesses many of the properties of petrochemically derived plastic—its melting point, crystal structure, molecular weight, and strength are very similar. Further, PHB has a singular, overwhelming advantage compared to artificial plastic: PHB is naturally and completely biodegradable—bacteria catabolize PHB into carbon dioxide and water. The positive effect this would have on our overtaxed landfills would be tremendous, and replacing just half of the oil-based plastic used in the United States with PHB could reduce oil imports by more than 250 million barrels per year, improving our foreign trade balance and reducing our dependence on overseas oil suppliers.

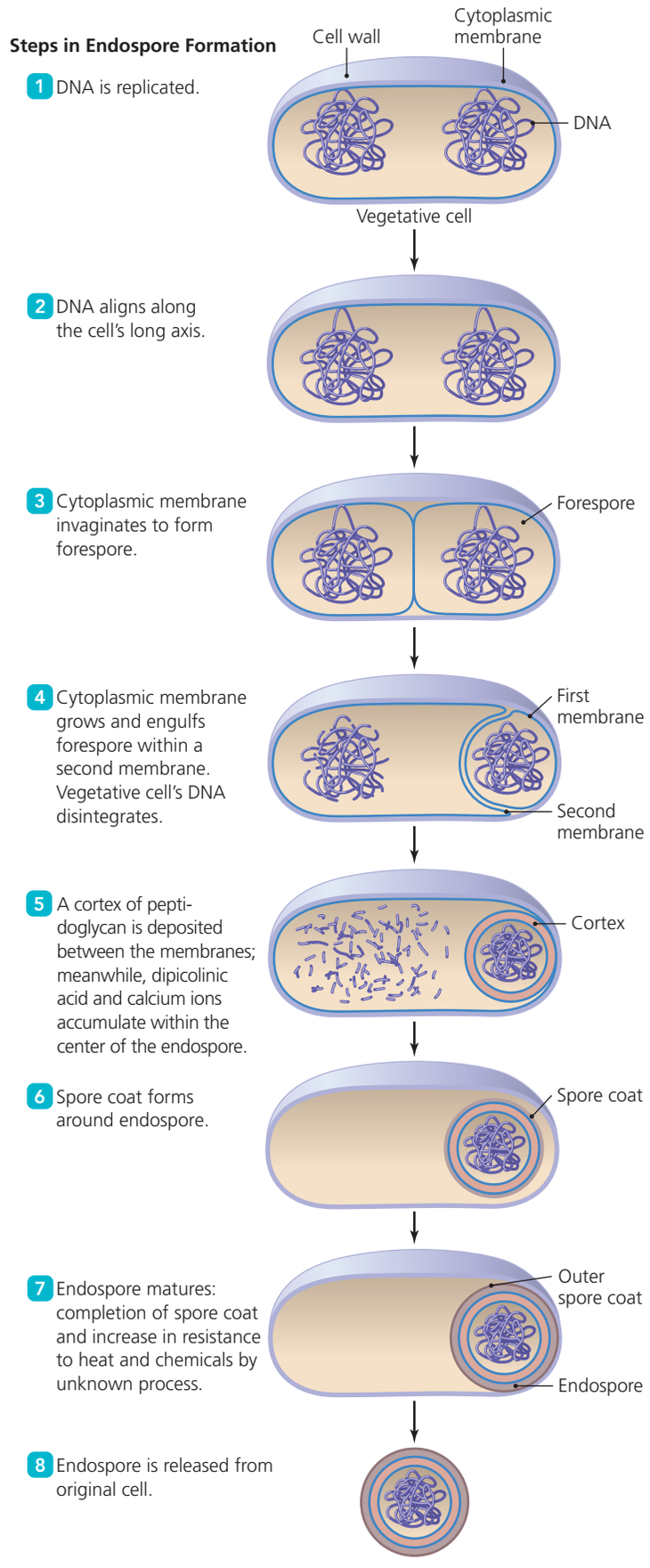
reasons, including their durability and potential pathogenicity. Though some people refer to endospores simply as "spores," endospores should not be confused with the reproductive spores of actinobacteria, algae, and fungi. A single bacterial cell, called a *vegetative* cell to distinguish it from an endospore, transforms into only one endospore, which then germinates to grow into only one vegetative cell; therefore, endospores are not reproductive structures. Instead, endospores constitute a defensive strategy against hostile or unfavorable conditions.

A vegetative cell normally transforms itself into an endospore only when one or more nutrients (such as carbon or nitrogen) are in limited supply. The process of endospore formation, called *sporulation,* requires 8 to 10 hours and proceeds in eight steps **(Figure 3.23)**. During the process, two membranes, a thick layer of peptidoglycan, and a spore coat form around a copy of the cell's DNA and a small portion of cytoplasm. The cell deposits large quantities of dipicolinic acid, calcium, and DNA-binding proteins within the endospore while removing most of the water. Depending on the species, a cell forms an endospore either *centrally, subterminally* (near one end), or *terminally* (at one end). Sometimes an endospore is so large it swells the vegetative cell.

Endospores are extremely resistant to drying, heat, radiation, and lethal chemicals. For example, they remain alive in boiling water for several hours; are unharmed by alcohol, peroxide, bleach, and other toxic chemicals; and can tolerate over 400 rad of radiation, which is more than five times the dose that is lethal to most humans. Endospores are stable resting stages that barely metabolize—they are essentially in a state of suspended animation—and they germinate only when conditions improve. Scientists do not know how endospores are able to resist harsh conditions, but it appears that the double membrane, spore coats, dipicolinic acid, calcium, and DNA-binding proteins serve to stabilize DNA and enzymes, protecting them from adverse conditions.

The ability to survive harsh conditions makes endospores the most resistant and enduring cells. In one case, scientists were able to revive endospores of *Clostridium* that had been sealed in a test tube for 34 years. This record pales, however, beside other researchers' claim to have revived *Bacillus* endospores from inside 250-million-year-old salt crystals retrieved from an underground site near Carlsbad, New Mexico. Some scientists question this claim, suggesting that the bacteria might be recent contaminants that entered through invisible cracks in the salt crystals. In any case, there is little doubt that endospores can remain viable for a minimum of tens, if not thousands, of years.

Endospore formation is a serious concern to food processors, health care professionals, and governments because endospores are resistant to treatments that inhibit other microbes, and because endospore-forming bacteria produce deadly toxins that cause such fatal diseases as anthrax, tetanus, and gangrene. (Chapter 9 considers techniques for controlling endospore formers.)



▲ **Figure 3.23 The formation of an endospore.** The steps depicted occur over a period of 8–10 hours.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Following the bioterrorist anthrax attacks in the fall of 2001, a news commentator suggested that people steam their mail for 30 seconds before opening it. Would the technique protect people from anthrax infections? Why or why not?

Nonmembranous Organelles

Learning Outcome

3.21 Describe the structure and function of ribosomes and the cytoskeleton.

As previously noted, prokaryotes do not usually have membranes surrounding their organelles. However, two types of *nonmembranous organelles* are found in direct contact with the cytosol in bacterial cytoplasm. Some investigators do not consider them to be true organelles because they lack a membrane, but other scientists consider them organelles. Nonmembranous organelles in bacteria include ribosomes and the cytoskeleton.

Ribosomes

Ribosomes are the sites of protein synthesis in cells. Bacterial cells have thousands of ribosomes in their cytoplasm, which gives cytoplasm a grainy appearance (see Figure 3.2). The approximate size of ribosomes—and indeed other cellular structures—is expressed in Svedbergs (S)[11] and is determined by their sedimentation rate—the rate at which they move to the bottom of a test tube during centrifugation. As you might expect, large, compact, heavy particles sediment faster than small, loosely packed, or light ones, and are assigned a higher number. Prokaryotic ribosomes are 70S; in contrast, the larger ribosomes of eukaryotes are 80S.

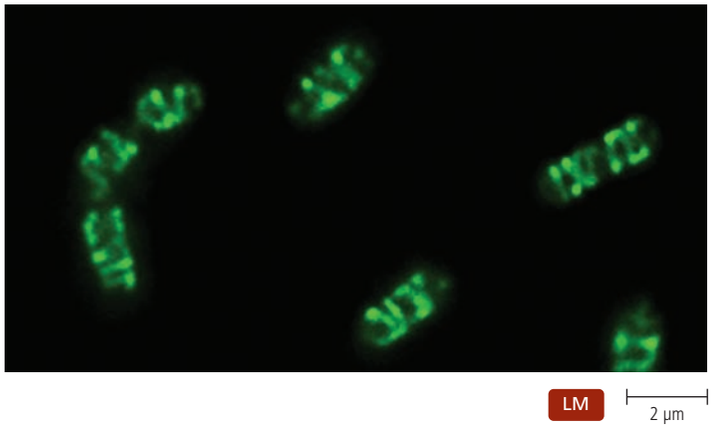
All ribosomes are composed of two subunits, each of which is composed of polypeptides and molecules of RNA called **ribosomal RNA (rRNA).** The subunits of prokaryotic 70S ribosomes are a smaller 30S subunit and a larger 50S subunit; the 30S subunit contains polypeptides and a single rRNA molecule, whereas the 50S subunit has polypeptides and two rRNA molecules. Because sedimentation rates depend not only on mass and size but also on shape, the sedimentation rates of subunits do not add up to the sedimentation rate of a whole ribosome.

Many antibacterial drugs act on bacterial 70S ribosomes or their subunits without deleterious effects on the larger 80S ribosomes of eukaryotic cells (see Chapter 10). This is why such drugs can stop protein synthesis in bacteria without affecting protein synthesis in a patient.

Cytoskeleton

Cells have an internal scaffolding called a **cytoskeleton,** which is composed of three or four types of protein fibers.

[11] Svedberg units are named for Theodor Svedberg, a Nobel Prize winner and the inventor of the ultracentrifuge.



▲ **Figure 3.24 A simple helical cytoskeleton.** The rod-shaped bacterium *Bacillus subtilis* has a helical cytoskeleton composed of only a single protein, which has been stained with a fluorescent dye.

Bacterial cytoskeletons play a variety of roles in the cell. For example, one type of cytoskeleton fiber wraps around the equator of a cell and constricts, dividing the cell into two. Another type of fiber forms a helix down the length of some cells **(Figure 3.24)**. Such helical fibers appear to play a role in the orientation and deposition of strands of NAG and NAM sugars in the peptidoglycan wall, thereby determining the shape of the cell. Other fibers help keep DNA molecules segregated to certain areas within bacterial cells. An unusual motile bacterium, *Spiroplasma* (spī´ro-plaz-mă), which lacks flagella, uses contractile elements of its cytoskeleton to swim through its environment.

We have considered bacterial cells. Next we turn our attention to archaea—the other prokaryotic cells—and compare them to bacterial cells.

External Structures of Archaea

Archaeal cells have external structures similar to those seen in bacteria. These include glycocalyces, flagella, and fimbriae. Some archaea have another kind of proteinaceous appendage called a *hamus.* We consider each of these in order beginning with the outermost structures—glycocalyces.

Glycocalyces

Learning Outcome

3.22 Compare the structure and chemistry of archaeal and bacterial glycocalyces.

Like those of bacteria, archaeal glycocalyces are gelatinous, sticky, extracellular structures composed of polysaccharides, polypeptides, or both. Scientists have not studied archaeal glycocalyces as much as those of bacteria, but archaeal glycocalyces function at a minimum in the formation of biofilms—adhering cells to one another, to other types of cells, and to nonliving surfaces in the environment. Organized glycocalyces (capsules) of bacteria and bacterial biofilms are often associated with disease, but researchers have not demonstrated such a link between archaeal capsules or biofilms and disease. Though some research has demonstrated the presence of archaea in some biofilms associated with oral gum disease, no archaeon has been shown conclusively to be pathogenic.

Flagella

Learning Outcomes

3.23 Describe the structure and formation of archaeal flagella.

3.24 Compare and contrast archaeal flagella with bacterial flagella.

Archaea use flagella to move through their environments, though at a slower speed than bacteria. An archaeal flagellum is superficially similar to a bacterial flagellum: it consists of a basal body, hook, and filament, each composed of protein. The flagellum extends outside the cell and is not covered by a membrane. The basal body anchors the flagellum in the cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane. As with bacterial flagella, archaeal flagella rotate like propellers.

However, scientists have discovered many differences between archaeal and bacterial flagella:

- Archaeal flagella are 10–14 nm in diameter, which is about half the thickness of bacterial flagella.
- Archaeal flagella lack a central channel; therefore, they grow with the addition of subunits at the base of the filament rather than at the tip.
- The proteins making up archaeal flagella share common amino acid sequences across archaeal species. These are very different from the amino acid sequences common to bacterial flagella.
- Sugar molecules are attached to the filaments of many archaeal flagella, a condition that is rare in bacteria.
- Archaeal flagella are powered with energy stored in molecules of ATP, whereas the flow of hydrogen ions across the membrane powers bacterial flagella.
- Archaeal flagella rotate together as a bundle both when they rotate clockwise and when they rotate counterclockwise. In contrast, bacterial flagella operate independently when rotating clockwise.

These differences indicate that archaeal flagella arose independently of bacterial flagella; they are *analogous* structures—having similar structure without having a common ancestor.

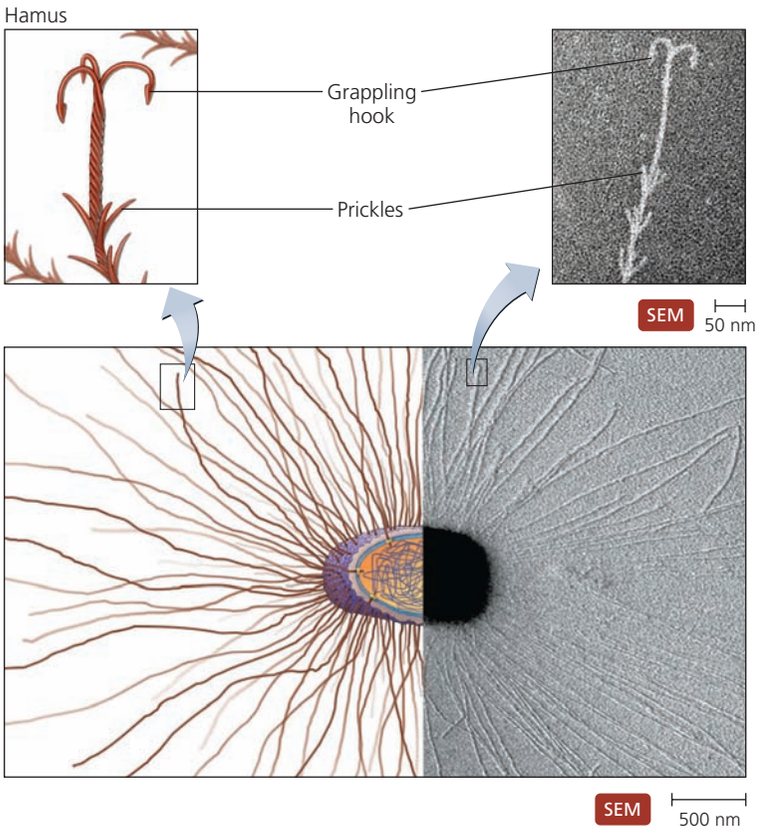
Fimbriae and Hami

Learning Outcomes

3.25 Compare the structure and function of archaeal and bacterial fimbriae.

3.26 Describe the structure and function of hami.

Many archaea have fimbriae—nonmotile, rodlike, sticky projections. As with bacteria, archaeal fimbriae are composed of protein and anchor the cells to one another and to environmental surfaces.



▲ **Figure 3.25 Archaeal hami.** Archaea use hami, which are shaped like grappling hooks on barbed wire, to attach themselves to structures in the environment.

Some archaea make unique proteinaceous, fimbriae-like structures called **hami**[12] (singular: *hamus*). More than 100 hami may radiate from the surface of a single archaeon **(Figure 3.25)**. Each hamus is a helical filament with tiny prickles sticking out at regular intervals, much like barbed wire. The end of the hamus is frayed into three distinct arms, each of which has a thickened end and bends back toward the cell to make the entire structure look like a grappling hook. Indeed, hami function to securely attach archaea to surfaces.

[12]From Latin *hamus*, meaning "prickle," "claw," "hook," or "barb."

Archaeal Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes

Learning Outcomes

3.27 Contrast types of archaeal cell walls with each other and with bacterial cell walls.

3.28 Contrast the archaeal cytoplasmic membrane with that of bacteria.

Most archaea, like most bacteria, have cell walls. All archaea have cytoplasmic membranes. However, there are distinct differences between archaeal and bacterial walls and membranes, further emphasizing the uniqueness of archaea.

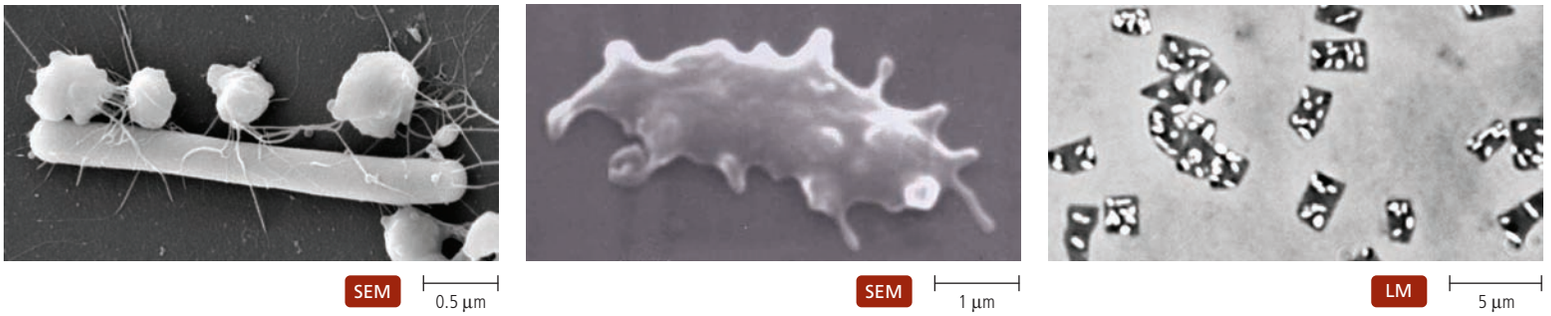
Archaeal cell walls are composed of specialized proteins or polysaccharides. In some species, the outermost protein molecules form an array that coats the cell like chain mail. All archaeal walls lack peptidoglycan, which is common to all bacterial cell walls.

Gram-negative archaeal cells have an outer layer of protein rather than an outer lipid bilayer as seen in Gram-negative bacteria. Gram-negative archaea still appear pink when Gram stained. Gram-positive archaea have a thick cell wall and Gram stain purple, like Gram-positive bacteria.

Archaeal cells are typically spherical or rod shaped, though irregularly shaped, needle-like, rectangular, and flattened square archaea exist **(Figure 3.26)**.

Archaeal cytoplasmic membranes are composed of lipids that lack phosphate groups and have branched hydrocarbons linked to glycerol by ether linkages rather than the ester linkages seen in bacterial membranes (see Table 2.3 on p. 40). Ether linkages are stronger in many ways than ester linkages, allowing archaea to live in extreme environments such as near-boiling water and hypersaline lakes. Some archaea—particularly those that thrive in very hot water—have a single layer of lipid composed of two glycerol groups covalently linked with branched hydrocarbon chains.

The archaeal cytoplasmic membrane maintains electrical and chemical gradients in the cell. It also functions to control



▲ **Figure 3.26 Representative shapes of archaea. (a)** Cocci, *Pyrococcus furiosus*, attached to rod-shaped *Methanopyrus kandleri*. **(b)** Irregularly shaped archaeon, *Thermoplasma acidophilum*. **(c)** Square archaeon, *Haloquadratum walsbyi*. *What are the stringlike extensions of* Pyrococcus?

Figure 3.26 *The extensions are fimbriae or hami.*

the import and export of substances from the cell using membrane proteins as ports and pumps, just as proteins are used in bacterial cytoplasmic membranes.

Cytoplasm of Archaea

Learning Outcome

3.29 Compare and contrast the cytoplasm of archaea with that of bacteria.

Cytoplasm is the gel-like substance found in all cells, including archaea. Like bacteria, archaeal cells have 70S ribosomes, a fibrous cytoskeleton, and circular DNA suspended in a liquid cytosol. Also like bacteria, they do not have membranous organelles.

However, archaeal cytoplasm differs from that of bacteria in several ways. For example, the ribosomes of archaea have proteins different from those of the ribosomes of bacteria; indeed, archaeal ribosomal proteins are more like those of eukaryotes. Scientists further distinguish archaea from bacteria in that archaea use different metabolic enzymes to make RNA and use a genetic code more similar to the code used by eukaryotes. (Chapter 7 discusses these genetic differences in more detail.) Table 3.3 contrasts features of archaea and bacteria.

To this point, we have discussed basic features of bacterial and archaeal prokaryotic cells. Next we turn our attention to eukaryotic cells. (Chapter 11 discusses the classification of prokaryotic organisms in more detail.)

External Structure of Eukaryotic Cells

Some eukaryotic cells have glycocalyces, which are similar to those of prokaryotes.

Glycocalyces

Learning Outcome

3.30 Describe the composition, function, and importance of eukaryotic glycocalyces.

Animal and most protozoan cells lack cell walls, but a cell may have a sticky **glycocalyx**[13] that is anchored to its cytoplasmic membrane via covalent bonds to membrane proteins and lipids. The functions of eukaryotic glycocalyces, which are not as structurally organized as prokaryotic capsules, include helping to anchor animal cells to each other, strengthening the cell surface, providing some protection against dehydration, and functioning in cell-to-cell recognition and communication. Glycocalyces are absent in eukaryotes that have cell walls, such as plants and fungi.

Eukaryotic Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes

Learning Outcomes

3.31 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic cell walls and cytoplasmic membranes.

3.32 Contrast exocytosis and endocytosis.

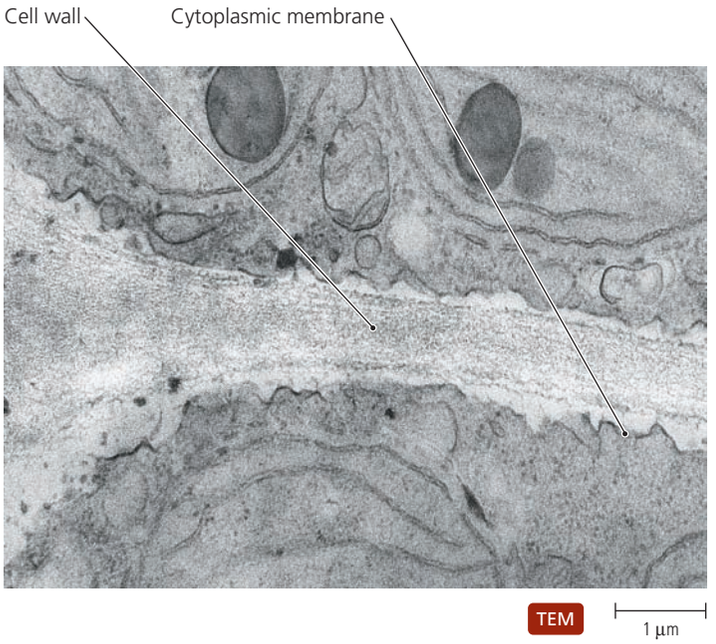
3.33 Describe the role of pseudopods in eukaryotic cells.

The eukaryotic cells of fungi, algae, and plants have cell walls. Recall that glycocalyces are absent from eukaryotes with cell walls; instead, the cell wall takes on one of the functions of a glycocalyx by providing protection from the environment. The wall also provides shape and support against osmotic

[13] From Greek *glykys*, meaning "sweet," and *kalyx*, meaning "cup" or "husk."

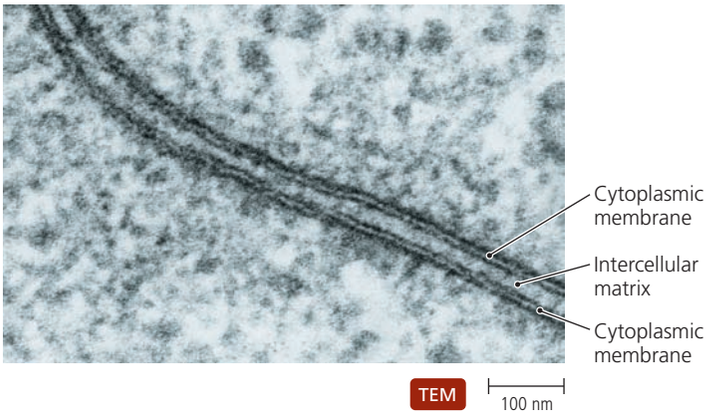
TABLE 3.3 Some Structural Characteristics of Prokaryotes

Feature	Archaea	Bacteria
Glycocalyx	Polypeptide or polysaccharide	Polypeptide or polysaccharide
Flagella	Present in some, 10–14 nm in diameter, grow at base, rotate both counterclockwise and clockwise as bundles	Present in some, about 20 nm in diameter, grow at the tip, rotate counterclockwise in bundles to cause runs, rotate independently clockwise to cause tumbles
Fimbriae	Proteinaceous, used for attachment and in formation of biofilms	Proteinaceous, used for attachment, gliding motility, and in formation of biofilms
Pili	None discovered	Present in some, proteinaceous, used in bacterial exchange of DNA
Hami	Present in some, used for attachment	Absent
Cell walls	Present in most, composed of polysaccharides (not peptidoglycan) or proteins	Present in most, composed of peptidoglycan—a polysaccharide
Cytoplasmic membrane	Present in all, membrane lipids made with ether linkages, some have single lipid layer	Present in all, phospholipids made with ester linkages in bilayer
Cytoplasm	Cytosol contains circular DNA molecule and 70S ribosomes, ribosomal proteins similar to eukaryotic ribosomal proteins	Cytosol contains at least a circular DNA molecule and 70S ribosomes with bacterial proteins



▲ **Figure 3.27** **A eukaryotic cell wall.** The cell wall of the red alga *Gelidium* is composed of layers of the polysaccharide called agar. *What is the function of a cell wall?*

Figure 3.27 *The cell wall provides support, protection, and resistance to osmotic forces.*



▲ **Figure 3.28** **Eukaryotic cytoplasmic membrane.** Note that this micrograph depicts the cytoplasmic membranes of two adjoining cells.

pressure. Most eukaryotic cell walls are composed of various polysaccharides but not the peptidoglycan seen in the walls of bacteria.

The walls of plant cells are composed of *cellulose,* a polysaccharide that is familiar to you as paper and dietary fiber. Fungi also have walls of polysaccharides, including cellulose, *chitin,* and/or *glucomannan.* The walls of algae **(Figure 3.27)** are composed of a variety of polysaccharides or other chemicals, depending on the type of alga. These chemicals include cellulose, proteins, *agar, carrageenan, silicates, algin, calcium carbonate,* or a combination of these substances. (Chapter 12 discusses fungi and algae in more detail.)

All eukaryotic cells have cytoplasmic membranes **(Figure 3.28)**. A eukaryotic cytoplasmic membrane, like those of bacteria, is a fluid mosaic of phospholipids and proteins, which act as recognition molecules, enzymes, receptors, carriers, or channels. Channel proteins for facilitated diffusion are more common in eukaryotes than in prokaryotes. Additionally, within multicellular organisms some membrane proteins serve to anchor cells to each other.

Eukaryotic cytoplasmic membranes may differ from prokaryotic membranes in several ways. Eukaryotic membranes contain steroid lipids *(sterols),* such as cholesterol in animal cells, that help maintain membrane fluidity. Paradoxically, at high temperatures sterols stabilize a phospholipid bilayer by making it less fluid, but at low temperatures sterols have the opposite effect—they prevent phospholipid packing, making the membrane more fluid.

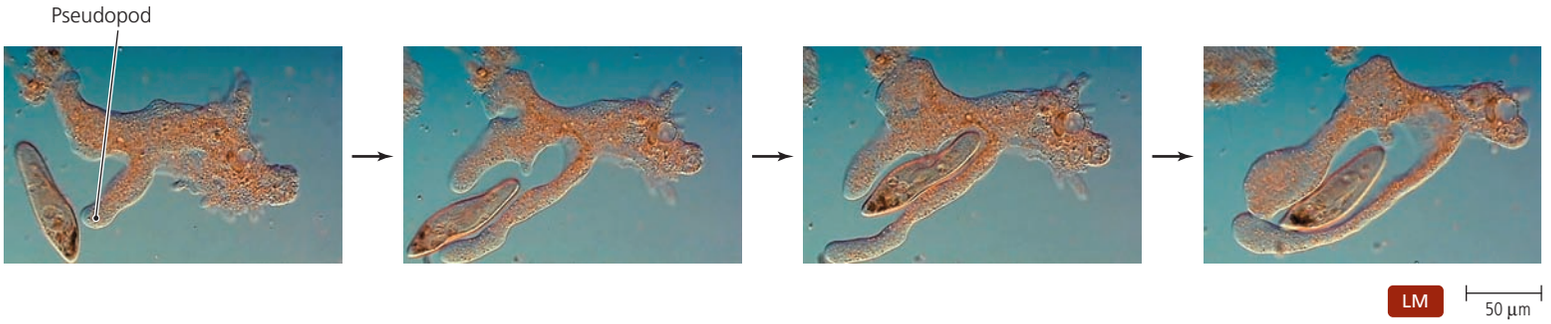
Eukaryotic cytoplasmic membranes may contain small, distinctive assemblages of lipids and proteins that remain together in the membrane as a functional group and do not flow independently amidst other membrane components. Such distinct regions are called **membrane rafts.** Eukaryotic cells use membrane rafts to localize cellular processes, including signaling the inside of the cell, protein sorting, and some kinds of cell movement. Some viruses, including those of AIDS, Ebola, measles, and flu, use membrane rafts to enter human cells or during viral replication. Researchers hope that blocking molecules in membrane rafts will provide a way to limit the spread of these viruses.

Eukaryotic cells frequently attach chains of sugar molecules to the outer surfaces of lipids and proteins in their cytoplasmic membranes; prokaryotes rarely do this. Sugar molecules may act in intercellular signaling, cellular attachment, and in other roles.

Like its prokaryotic counterpart, a eukaryotic cytoplasmic membrane controls the movement of materials into and out of a cell. Eukaryotic cytoplasmic membranes use both passive processes (diffusion, facilitated diffusion, and osmosis; see Figure 3.17) and active transport (see Figure 3.20). Eukaryotic membranes do not perform group translocation, which occurs only in some prokaryotes, but many perform another type of active transport—**endocytosis (Figure 3.29)**, which involves physical manipulation of the cytoplasmic membrane around the cytoskeleton. Endocytosis occurs when the membrane distends to form **pseudopods** (soo´dō-podz; false feet) that surround a substance, bringing it into the cell. Endocytosis is termed **phagocytosis** if a solid is brought into the cell and **pinocytosis** if only liquid is brought into the cell. Nutrients brought into a cell by endocytosis are then enclosed in a *food vesicle.* Vesicles and digestion of the nutrients they contain are discussed in more detail shortly. (The process of phagocytosis is more fully discussed in Chapter 15 as it relates to the defense of the body against disease.)

Some eukaryotes also use pseudopods as a means of locomotion. The cell extends a pseudopod, and then the cytoplasm streams into it, a process called *amoeboid action.*

Exocytosis, another solely eukaryotic process, is the reverse of endocytosis in that it enables substances to be exported from the cell. Not all eukaryotic cells can perform endocytosis or exocytosis.



▲ **Figure 3.29 Endocytosis.** Pseudopods extend to surround solid and/or liquid nutrients, which become incorporated into a food vesicle inside the cytoplasm. *What is the difference between phagocytosis and pinocytosis?*

Figure 3.29 *Phagocytosis is endocytosis of a solid; pinocytosis is endocytosis of a liquid.*

Table 3.4 lists some of the features of endocytosis and exocytosis.

Cytoplasm of Eukaryotes

Learning Outcomes

3.34 Compare and contrast the cytoplasm of prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

3.35 Identify nonmembranous and membranous organelles.

The cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells is more complex than that of either bacteria or archaea. The most distinctive difference is the presence of numerous membranous organelles in eukaryotes. However, before we discuss these membranous organelles, we will consider organelles of locomotion and other nonmembranous organelles in eukaryotes.

Flagella

Learning Outcome

3.36 Compare and contrast the structure and function of prokaryotic and eukaryotic flagella.

Structure and Arrangement

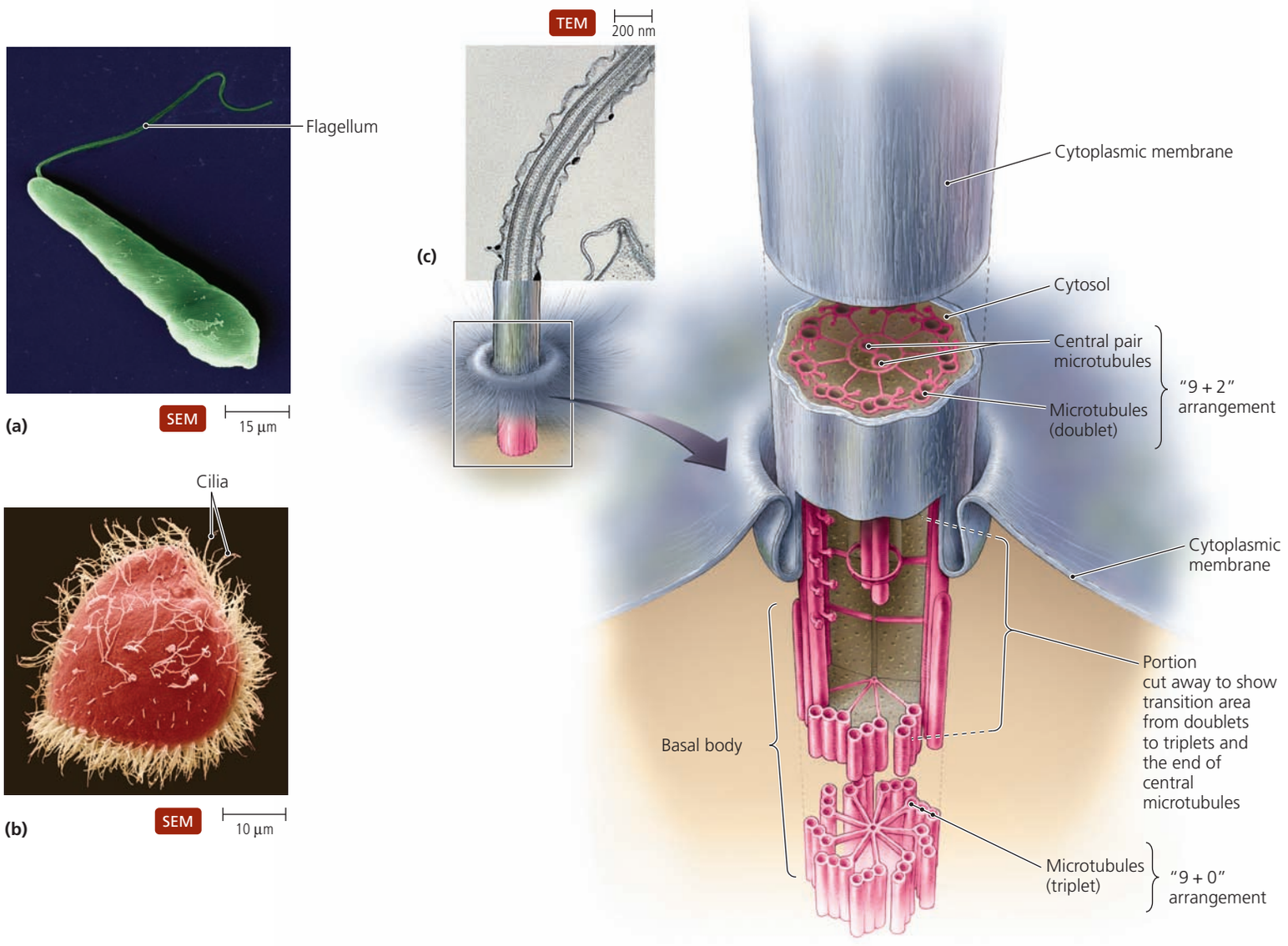
Some eukaryotic cells have whiplike extensions called **flagella.** Flagella of eukaryotes (Figure 3.30a) differ structurally and functionally from flagella of prokaryotes. First, eukaryotic flagella are within the cytoplasmic membrane; they are internal structures that push the cytoplasmic membrane out around them. Their basal bodies are in the cytoplasm. Second, the shaft of a eukaryotic flagellum is composed of molecules of a globular protein called *tubulin* arranged in chains to form hollow *microtubules*. Nine pairs of microtubules surround two microtubules in the center (Figure 3.30c). This "9 + 2" arrangement of microtubules is common to all flagellated eukaryotic cells, whether they are found in protozoa, algae, animals, or plants. The filaments of eukaryotic flagella are anchored in the cytoplasm by a basal body, but no hook connects the two parts, as in prokaryotes. The basal body has *triplets* of microtubules instead of pairs, and there are no microtubules in the center, so scientists say it has a "9 + 0" arrangement of microtubules. Eukaryotic flagella may be single or multiple and are generally found at one pole of the cell.

Function

The flagella of eukaryotes also move differently from those of prokaryotes. Rather than rotating like prokaryotic flagella, those of eukaryotes undulate rhythmically (Figure 3.31a). Some eukaryotic flagella push the cell through the medium (as occurs in animal sperm), whereas others pull the cell through the medium (as occurs in many protozoa). Positive and negative phototaxis and chemotaxis are seen in eukaryotic cells, but such cells do not move in runs and tumbles.

TABLE 3.4 Active Transport Processes Found Only in Eukaryotes: Endocytosis and Exocytosis

	Description	Examples of Transported Substances
Endocytosis: phagocytosis and pinocytosis	Substances are surrounded by pseudopods and brought into the cell. Phagocytosis involves solid substances; pinocytosis involves liquids.	Bacteria, viruses, aged and dead cells; liquid nutrients in extracellular solutions
Exocytosis	Vesicles containing substances are fused with cytoplasmic membrane, dumping their contents to the outside.	Wastes, secretions



▲ Figure 3.30 Eukaryotic flagella and cilia. (a) Micrograph of *Euglena*, which possesses a single flagellum. **(b)** Light micrograph of a protozoan, *Blepharisma*, which has numerous cilia. **(c)** Details of the arrangement of microtubules of eukaryotic flagella and cilia. Both flagella and cilia have the same internal structure. *How do eukaryotic cilia differ from flagella?*

Figure 3.30 *Flagella are longer and less numerous than cilia.*

Cilia

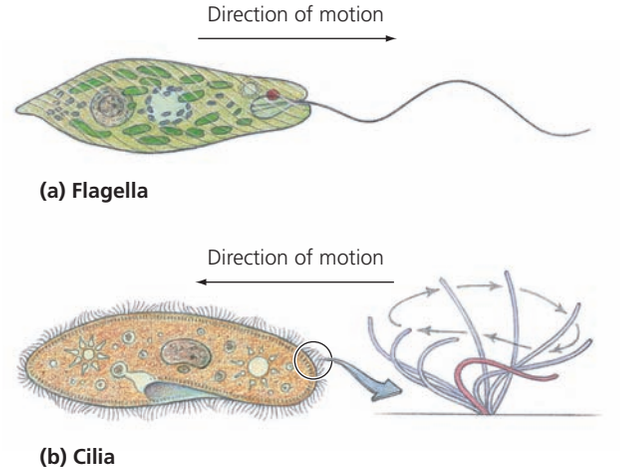
Learning Outcomes

3.37 Describe the structure and function of cilia.

3.38 Compare and contrast eukaryotic cilia and flagella.

Other eukaryotic cells move by means of motile, internal, hair-like structures called **cilia,** which extend the surface of the cell and are shorter and more numerous than flagella **(Figure 3.30b)**. No prokaryotic cells have cilia. Like flagella, cilia are composed primarily of tubulin microtubules, which are arranged in a "9 + 2" arrangement of pairs in their shafts and a "9 + 0" arrangement of triplets in their basal bodies.

A single cell may have hundreds or even thousands of motile cilia. Such cilia beat rhythmically, much like a swimmer doing a butterfly stroke **(Figure 3.31b)**. Coordinated beating of cilia propels single-celled eukaryotes through their environment. Cilia are also used within some multicellular eukaryotes to move substances in the local environment past the surface of the cell. For example, such movement of cilia helps cleanse the human respiratory tract of dust and microorganisms.



▲ Figure 3.31 Movement of eukaryotic flagella and cilia. **(a)** Eukaryotic flagella undulate in waves that begin at one end and traverse the length of the flagellum. **(b)** Cilia move with a power stroke followed by a return stroke. In the power stroke a cilium is stiff; it relaxes during the return stroke. *How is the movement of eukaryotic flagella different from that of prokaryotic flagella?*

Figure 3.31 *Eukaryotic flagella undulate in a wave that moves down the flagellum; the flagella of prokaryotes rotate about the basal body.*

Other Nonmembranous Organelles

Learning Outcomes

3.39 Describe the structure and function of ribosomes, cytoskeletons, and centrioles.

3.40 Compare and contrast the ribosomes of prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

3.41 List and describe the three filaments of a eukaryotic cytoskeleton.

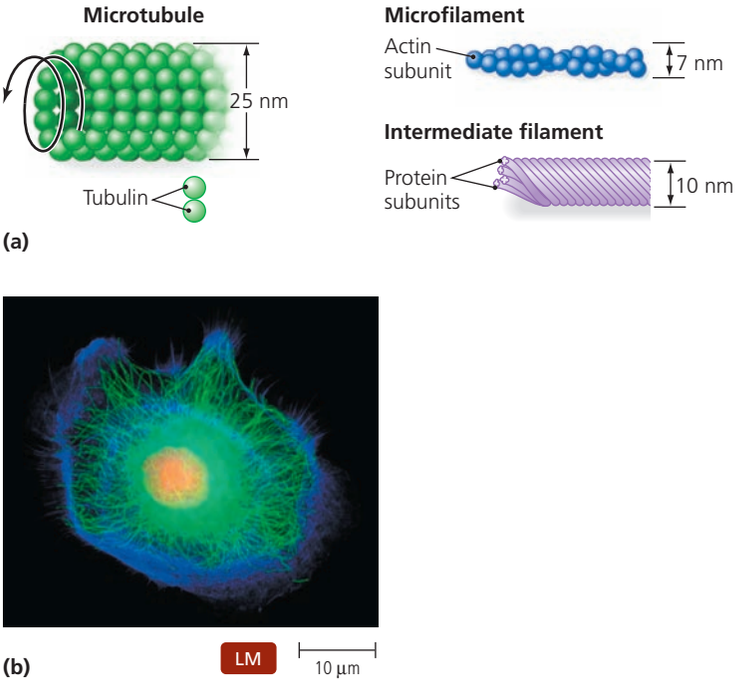
Here we discuss three nonmembranous organelles found in eukaryotes: ribosomes and cytoskeleton (both of which are also present in prokaryotes), and centrioles (which are present only in certain kinds of eukaryotic cells).

Ribosomes

The cytosol of eukaryotes, like that of prokaryotes, is a semitransparent fluid composed primarily of water containing dissolved and suspended proteins, ions, carbohydrates, lipids, and wastes. Within the cytosol of eukaryotic cells are protein-synthesizing **ribosomes** that are larger than prokaryotic ribosomes; instead of 70S ribosomes, eukaryotic ribosomes are 80S and are composed of 60S and 40S subunits. In addition to the 80S ribosomes found within the cytosol, many eukaryotic ribosomes are attached to the membranes of the endoplasmic reticulum (discussed shortly).

Cytoskeleton

Eukaryotic cells contain an extensive **cytoskeleton** composed of an internal scaffolding of fibers and tubules. The eukaryotic cytoskeleton acts to anchor organelles and functions in cytoplasmic streaming and in movement of organelles within the cytosol. Cytoskeletons in some cells enable the cell to contract,



▲ Figure 3.32 Eukaryotic cytoskeleton. The cytoskeleton of eukaryotic cells serves to anchor organelles, provides a "track" for the movement of organelles throughout the cell, and provides shape to animal cells. Eukaryotic cytoskeletons are composed of microtubules, microfilaments, and intermediate filaments. **(a)** Artist's rendition of cytoskeleton filaments. **(b)** Various elements of the cytoskeleton shown here have been stained with different fluorescent dyes. DNA in the nucleus is stained yellow-orange.

move the cytoplasmic membrane during endocytosis and amoeboid action, and produce the basic shapes of the cells.

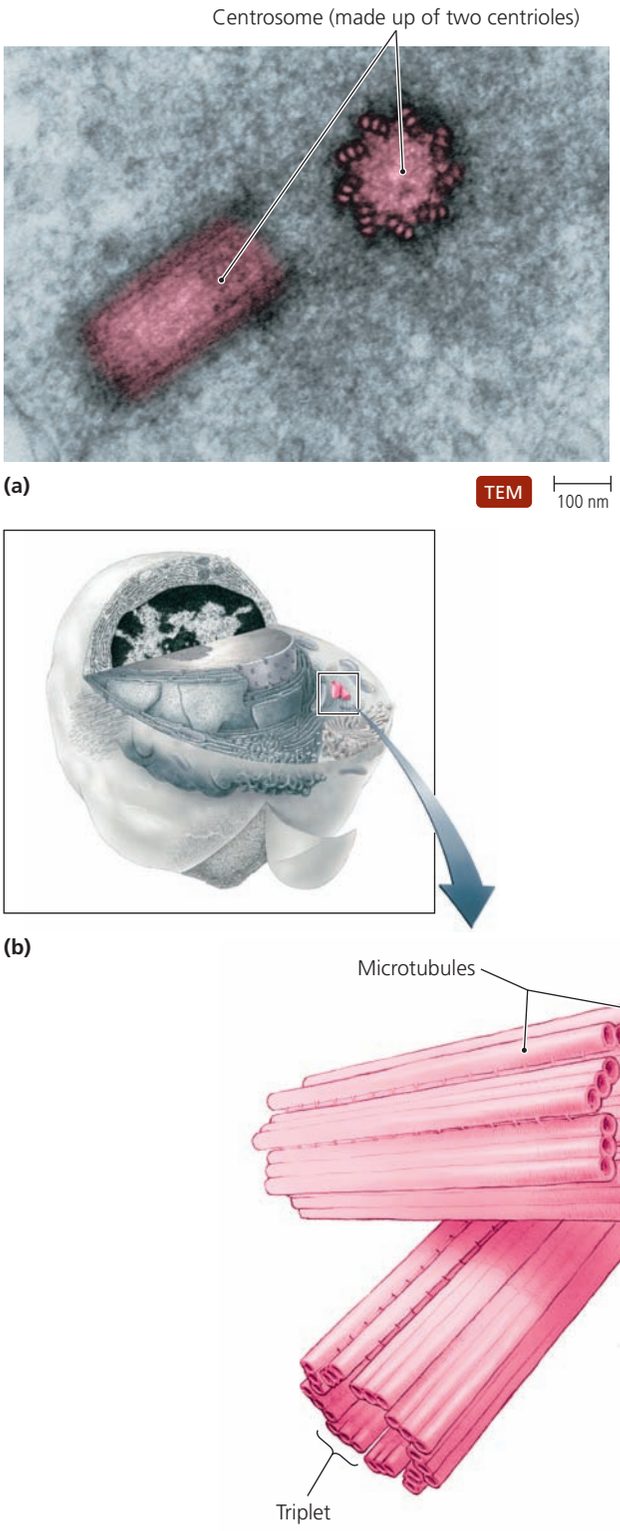
The eukaryotic cytoskeleton is made up of *tubulin microtubules* (also found in flagella and cilia), thinner *microfilaments* composed of *actin*, and *intermediate filaments* composed of various proteins **(Figure 3.32)**.

Centrioles and Centrosome

Animal cells and some fungal cells contain two **centrioles,** which lie at right angles to each other near the nucleus, in a region of the cytoplasm called the **centrosome (Figure 3.33)**. Plants, algae, and most fungi (and prokaryotes) lack centrioles but usually have a region of cytoplasm corresponding to a centrosome. Centrioles are composed of nine *triplets* of tubulin microtubules arranged in a way that resembles the "9 + 0" arrangement seen at the base of eukaryotic flagella and cilia.

Centrosomes play a role in *mitosis* (nuclear division), *cytokinesis* (cell division), and the formation of flagella and cilia. However, because many eukaryotic cells that lack centrioles, such as brown algal sperm and numerous one-celled algae, are still able to form flagella and undergo mitosis and cytokinesis, the function of centrioles is the subject of ongoing research.

Table 3.5 on p. 83 summarizes characteristics of nonmembranous organelles of cells and contrasts them with characteristics of membranous organelles, which we consider next.



▲ **Figure 3.33** **Centrosome.** A centrosome is a region of cytoplasm that in animal cells contains two centrioles at right angles to one another; each centriole has nine triplets of microtubules. **(a)** Transmission electron micrograph of centrosome and centrioles. **(b)** Artist's rendition of a centrosome. *How do centrioles compare with the basal body and shafts of eukaryotic flagella and cilia (see Figure 3.30c)?*

Figure 3.33 *Centrioles have the same "9 + 0" arrangement of microtubules that is found in the basal bodies of eukaryotic cilia and flagella.*

Membranous Organelles

Learning Outcomes

3.42 Discuss the function of each of the following membranous organelles: nucleus, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi body, lysosome, peroxisome, vesicle, vacuole, mitochondrion, and chloroplast.

3.43 Label the structures associated with each of the membranous organelles.

Eukaryotic cells contain a variety of organelles that are surrounded by phospholipid bilayer membranes similar to the cytoplasmic membrane. These membranous organelles include the nucleus, endoplasmic reticulum, Golgi body, lysosomes, peroxisomes, vacuoles, vesicles, mitochondria, and chloroplasts. Prokaryotic cells lack these structures.

Nucleus

The **nucleus** is usually spherical to ovoid and is often the largest organelle in a cell[14] **(Figure 3.34)**. Some cells have a single nucleus; others are multinucleate, while still others lose their nuclei. The nucleus is often referred to as "the control center of the cell" because it contains most of the cell's genetic instructions in the form of DNA. Cells that lose their nuclei, such as mammalian red blood cells, can survive for only a few months.

Just as the semiliquid portion of the cell is called cytoplasm, the semiliquid matrix of the nucleus is called **nucleoplasm.** Within the nucleoplasm may be one or more **nucleoli** (nooklē'ō-lī; singular: *nucleolus*), which are specialized regions where RNA is synthesized. The nucleoplasm also contains **chromatin,** which is a threadlike mass of DNA associated with special proteins called *histones* that play a role in packaging nuclear DNA. During mitosis (nuclear division), chromatin becomes visible as *chromosomes.* (Chapter 12 discusses mitosis in more detail.)

Surrounding the nucleus is a double membrane called the **nuclear envelope,** which is composed of two phospholipid bilayers, for a total of four phospholipid layers. The nuclear envelope contains **nuclear pores** that function to control the import and export of substances through the envelope.

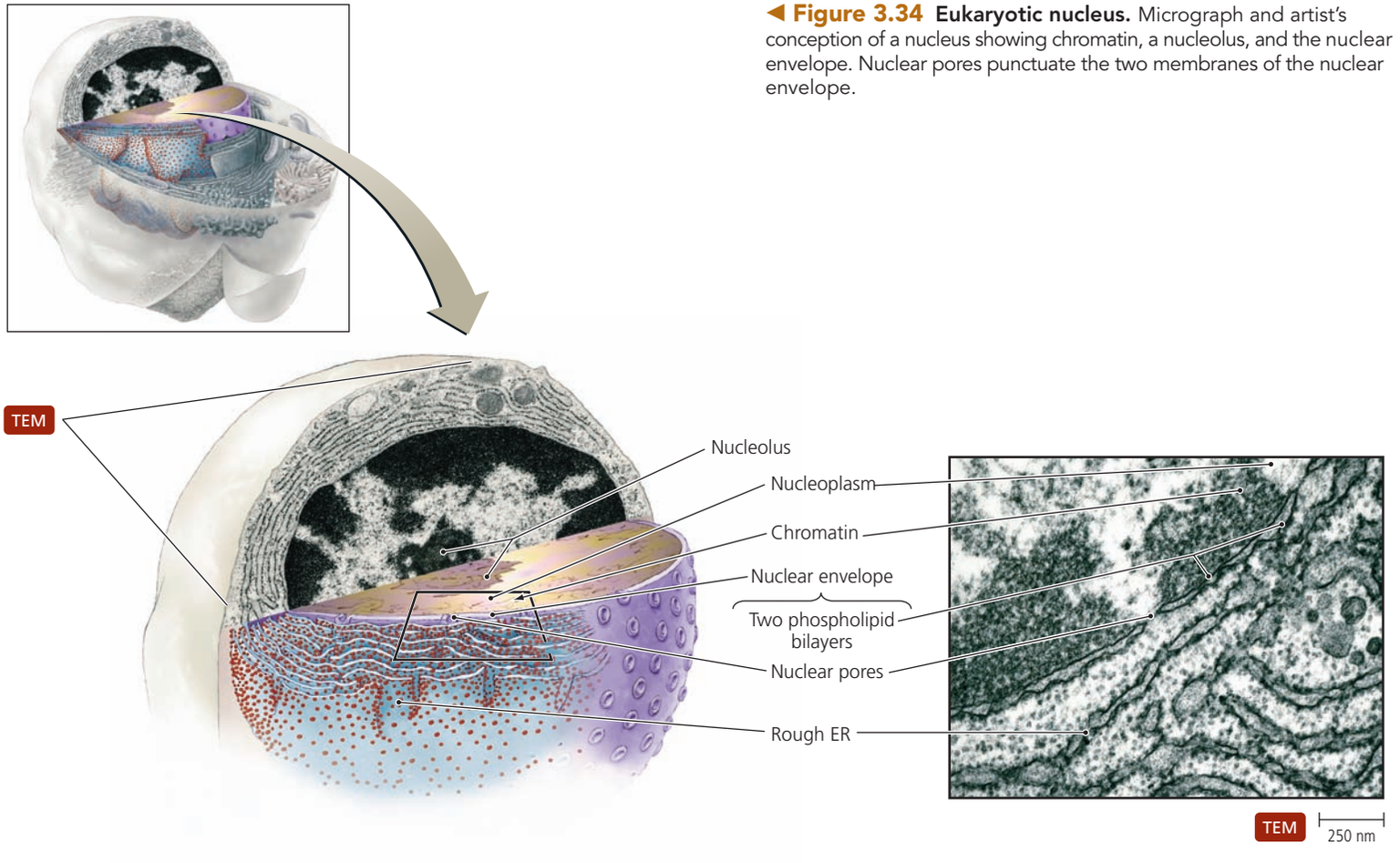
Endoplasmic Reticulum

Continuous with the outer membrane of the nuclear envelope is a netlike arrangement of flattened hollow tubules called **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** **(Figure 3.35)**. The ER traverses the cytoplasm of eukaryotic cells. Endoplasmic reticulum functions as a transport system and is found in two forms: **smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER)** and **rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER).** SER plays a role in lipid synthesis as well as transport. Rough endoplasmic reticulum is rough because ribosomes adhere to its outer surface. Proteins produced by ribosomes on the RER are inserted into the lumen (central canal) of the RER and transported throughout the cell.

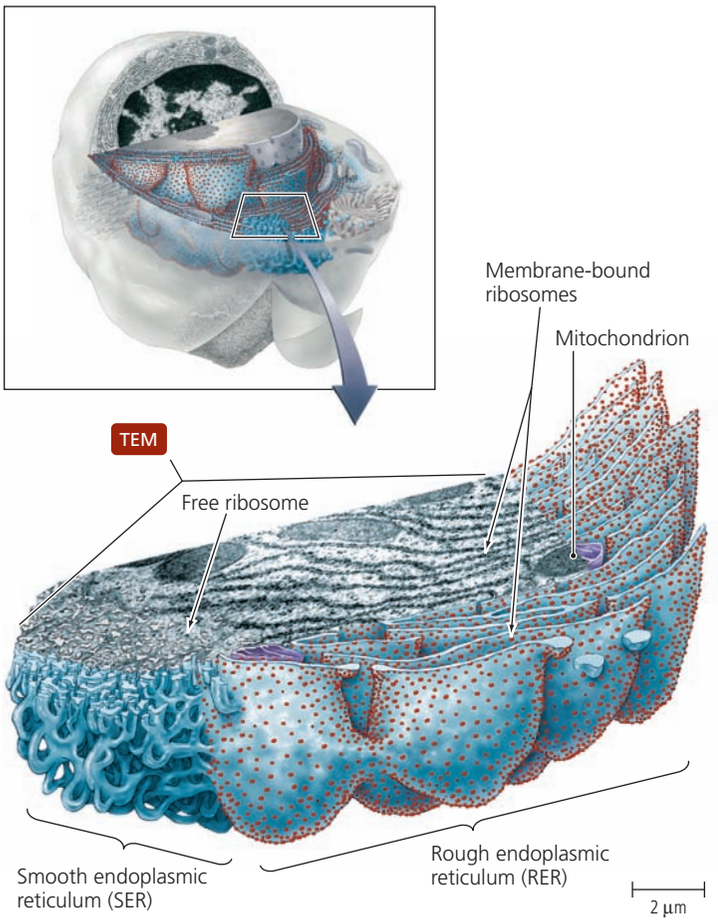
[14]Historically, the nucleus was not considered an organelle because it is large and not considered part of the cytoplasm.

TABLE 3.5 Nonmembranous and Membranous Organelles of Cells

	General Function	Prokaryotes	Eukaryotes
Nonmembranous Organelles			
Ribosomes	Protein synthesis	Present in all	Present in all
Cytoskeleton	Shape in prokaryotes; support, cytoplasmic streaming, and endocytosis in eukaryotes	Present in some	Present in all
Centrosome	Appears to play a role in mitosis, cytokinesis, and flagella and cilia formation in animal cells	Absent in all	Present in animals
Membranous Organelles	Sequester chemical reactions within the cell		
Nucleus	"Control center" of the cell	Absent in all	Present in all
Endoplasmic reticulum	Transport within the cell, lipid synthesis	Absent in all	Present in all
Golgi bodies	Exocytosis, secretion	Absent in all	Present in some
Lysosomes	Breakdown of nutrients, self-destruction of damaged or aged cells	Absent in all	Present in some
Peroxisomes	Neutralization of toxins	Absent in all	Present in some
Vacuoles	Storage	Absent in all	Present in some
Vesicles	Storage, digestion, transport	Absent in all	Present in all
Mitochondria	Aerobic ATP production	Absent in all	Present in most
Chloroplasts	Photosynthesis	Absent in all, though infoldings of cytoplasmic membrane called photosynthetic lamellae have same function in photosynthetic prokaryotes	Present in plants and algae



◀ **Figure 3.34 Eukaryotic nucleus.** Micrograph and artist's conception of a nucleus showing chromatin, a nucleolus, and the nuclear envelope. Nuclear pores punctuate the two membranes of the nuclear envelope.



▲ **Figure 3.35 Endoplasmic reticulum.** ER functions in transport throughout the cell. Ribosomes are on the surface of rough ER; smooth ER lacks ribosomes.

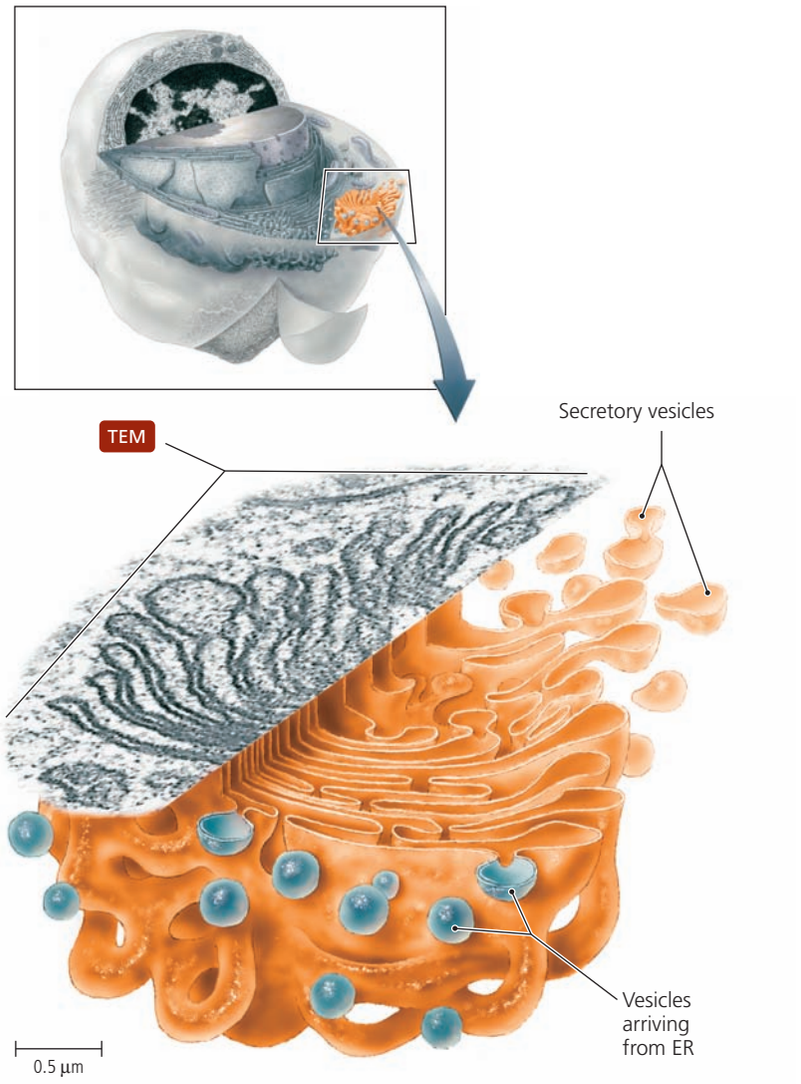
Golgi Body

A **Golgi**[15] **body** is like the "shipping department" of a cell: it receives, processes, and packages large molecules for export from the cell **(Figure 3.36)**. The Golgi body packages secretions in sacs called **secretory vesicles,** which then fuse with the cytoplasmic membrane before dumping their contents outside the cell via exocytosis. Golgi bodies are composed of a series of flattened hollow sacs that are circumscribed by a phospholipid bilayer. Not all eukaryotic cells contain Golgi bodies.

Lysosomes, Peroxisomes, Vacuoles, and Vesicles

Lysosomes, peroxisomes, vacuoles, and vesicles are membranous sacs that function to store and transfer chemicals within eukaryotic cells. Both **vesicle** and **vacuole** are general terms for such sacs. Large vacuoles are found in plant and algal cells that store starch, lipids, and other substances in the center of the cell. Often a central vacuole is so large that the rest of the cytoplasm is pressed against the cell wall in a thin layer **(Figure 3.37)**.

[15]Camillo Golgi was an Italian histologist who first described the organelle in 1898. This organelle is also known as a Golgi complex or Golgi apparatus and in plants and algae as a dictyosome.



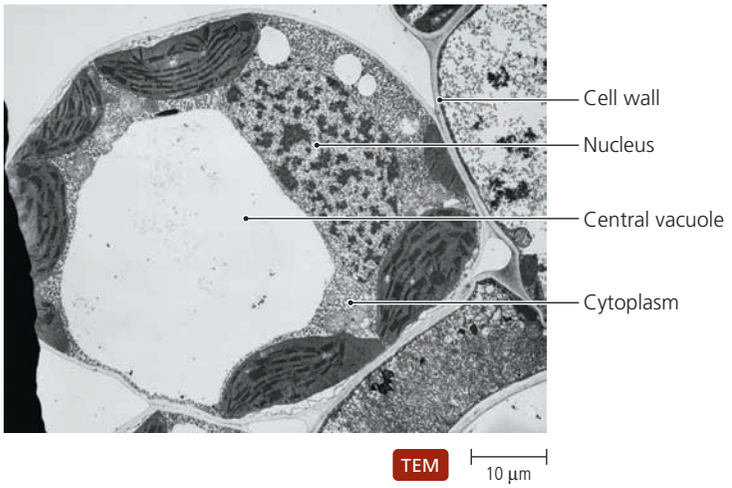
▲ **Figure 3.36 Golgi body.** A Golgi body is composed of flattened sacs. Proteins synthesized by ribosomes on RER are transported via vesicles to a Golgi body. The Golgi body then modifies the proteins and sends them via secretory vesicles to the cytoplasmic membrane, where they can be secreted from the cell by exocytosis.

Lysosomes, which are found in animal cells, contain catabolic enzymes that damage the cell if they are released from their packaging into the cytosol. The enzymes are used during the self-destruction of old, damaged, and diseased cells and to digest nutrients that have been phagocytized. For example, white blood cells utilize the digestive enzymes in lysosomes to destroy phagocytized pathogens **(Figure 3.38)**.

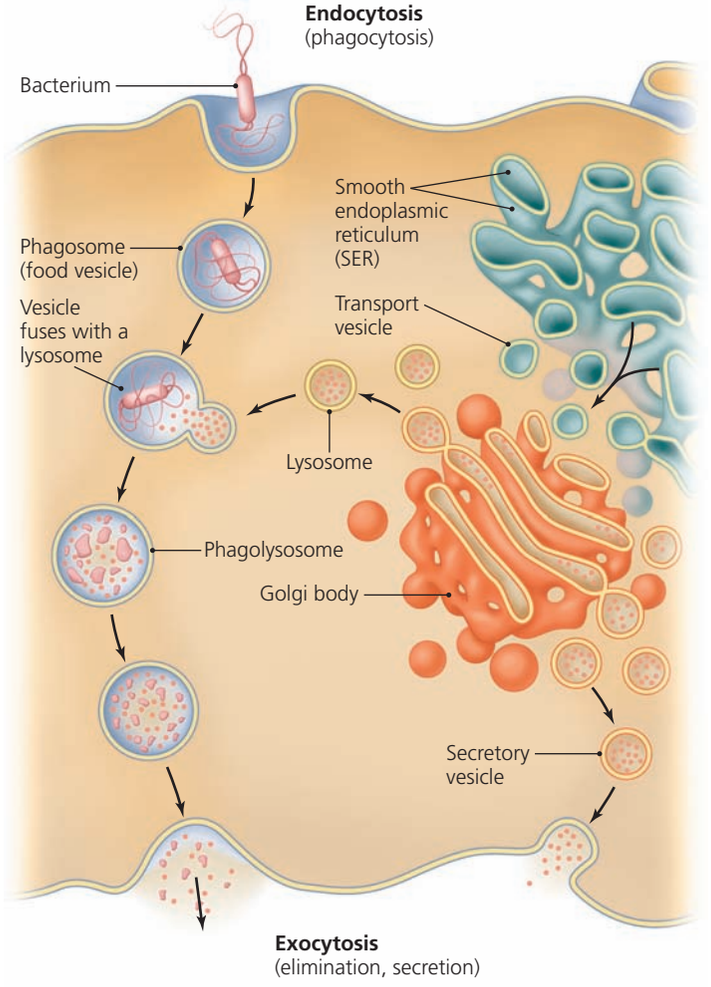
Peroxisomes are vesicles derived from ER. They contain *oxidase* and *catalase,* which are enzymes that degrade poisonous metabolic wastes (such as free radicals and hydrogen peroxide) resulting from some oxygen-dependent reactions. Peroxisomes are found in all types of eukaryotic cells but are especially prominent in the kidney and liver cells of mammals.

Mitochondria

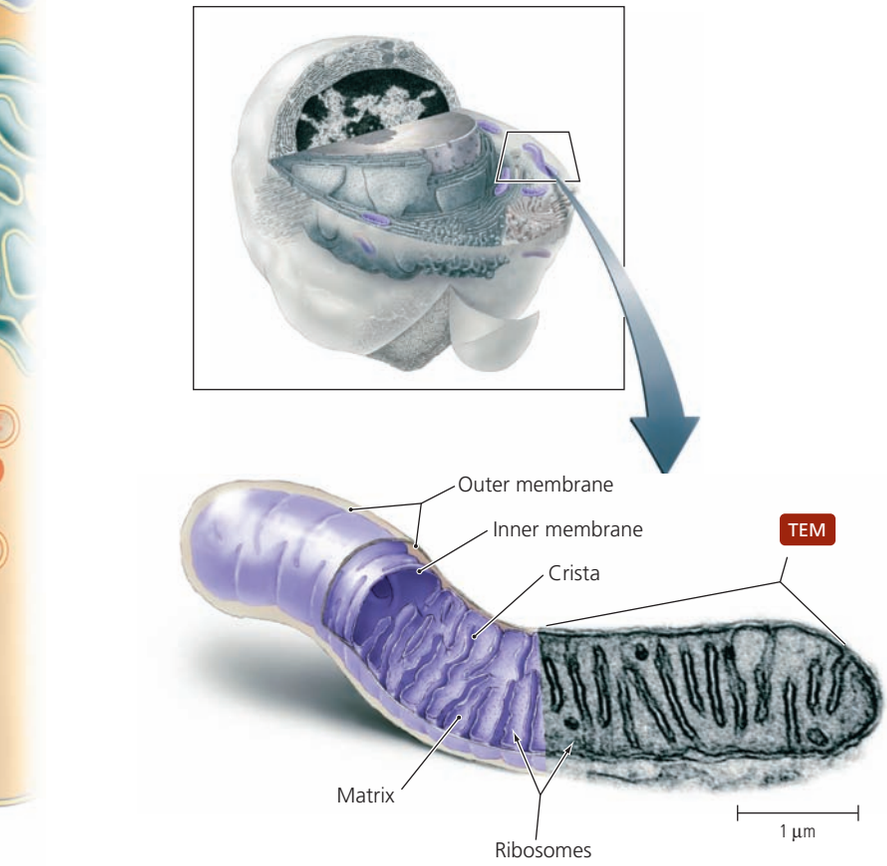
Mitochondria are spherical to elongated structures found in most eukaryotic cells **(Figure 3.39)**. Like nuclei, they have



◀ **Figure 3.37 Vacuole.** The large central vacuole of a plant cell, which constitutes a storehouse for the cell, presses the cytoplasm against the cell wall.



▲ **Figure 3.38 The roles of vesicles in endocytosis and exocytosis.** Before endocytosis, vesicles from the endoplasmic reticulum deliver digestive enzymes to a Golgi body, which then packages them into lysosomes. During endocytosis, phagocytized particles (in this case, a bacterium) are enclosed within a vesicle called a phagosome (food vesicle), which then fuses with a lysosome to form a phagolysosome vesicle. Once digestion within the phagolysosome is complete, the resulting wastes can be expelled from the cell via exocytosis. A Golgi body can also form secretory vesicles that deliver secretions outside the cell.



▲ **Figure 3.39 Mitochondrion.** Note the double membrane. The inner membrane is folded into cristae that increase its surface area. *What is the importance of the increased surface area of the inner membrane that cristae make possible?*

Figure 3.39 *The chemicals involved in aerobic ATP production are located on the inner membranes of mitochondria. Increased surface area provides more space for more chemicals.*

two membranes, each composed of a phospholipid bilayer. The inner membrane forms numerous folds called *cristae* that increase the inner membrane's surface area. Mitochondria are often called the "powerhouses of the cell" because their cristae produce most of the ATP in many eukaryotic cells. (The chemical reactions that produce ATP are discussed in Chapter 5.)

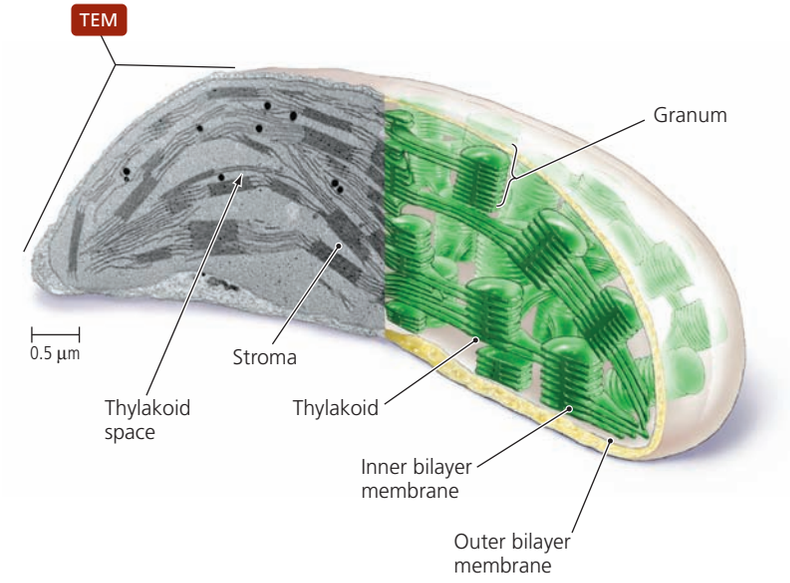
The interior matrix of a mitochondrion contains ("prokaryotic") 70S ribosomes and a circular molecule of DNA. This DNA contains genes for some RNA molecules and for a few mitochondrial polypeptides that are manufactured by mitochondrial ribosomes; however, most mitochondrial proteins are coded by nuclear DNA and synthesized by cytoplasmic ribosomes.

Chloroplasts

Chloroplasts are light-harvesting structures found in photosynthetic eukaryotes **(Figure 3.40)**. Like mitochondria and the nucleus, chloroplasts have two phospholipid bilayer membranes and DNA. Further, like mitochondria, chloroplasts can synthesize a few polypeptides with their own 70S ribosomes. The pigments of chloroplasts gather light energy to produce ATP and form sugar from carbon dioxide. Numerous membranous sacs called *thylakoids* form an extensive surface area for the biochemical and photochemical reactions of chloroplasts. The fluid between the thylakoids and the inner membrane is called the *stroma.* The space enclosed by the thylakoids is called the *thylakoid space.*

Photosynthetic prokaryotes lack chloroplasts and instead have infoldings of their cytoplasmic membranes called *photosynthetic lamellae.* (Chapter 5 discusses the details of photosynthesis.)

The functions of the nonmembranous and membranous organelles, and their distribution among prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, are summarized in Table 3.5 on p. 83.



▲ **Figure 3.40 Chloroplast.** Chloroplasts have an ornate internal structure designed to harvest light energy for photosynthesis.

Endosymbiotic Theory

Learning Outcomes

3.44 Describe the endosymbiotic theory of the origin of mitochondria, chloroplasts, and eukaryotic cells.

3.45 List evidence for the endosymbiotic theory.

Mitochondria and chloroplasts are semiautonomous; that is, they divide independently of the cell but remain dependent on the cell for most of their proteins. As we have seen, both mitochondria and chloroplasts contain a small amount of DNA and 70S ribosomes, and each can produce a few polypeptides with its own ribosomes. The presence of circular DNA, 70S ribosomes, and two bilipid membranes in these semiautonomous organelles led scientists to the **endosymbiotic**[16] **theory** for the formation of eukaryotic cells. This theory suggests that eukaryotes formed from the union of small aerobic[17] prokaryotes with larger anaerobic prokaryotes. The smaller prokaryotes were not destroyed by the larger cells but instead became internal parasites that remained surrounded by a vesicular membrane of the host.

According to the theory, the parasites eventually lost the ability to exist independently, but they retained a portion of their DNA, some ribosomes, and their cytoplasmic membranes. During the same time, the larger cell became dependent on the parasites for aerobic ATP production. According to the theory, the aerobic prokaryotes eventually evolved into mitochondria, and their cytoplasmic membranes became cristae. A similar scenario explains the origin of chloroplasts from phagocytized photosynthetic prokaryotes. The theory provides an explanation for the presence of 70S ribosomes and circular DNA within mitochondria and chloroplasts, and it accounts for the presence of their two membranes.

The endosymbiotic theory is widely accepted; however, it does not explain all of the facts. For example, the theory provides no explanation for the two membranes of the nuclear envelope, nor does it explain why only a few portions of proteins in mitochondria and chloroplasts are coded for and made in the organelles while the bulk of their proteins come from nuclear DNA and cytoplasmic ribosomes.

Table 3.6 summarizes features of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.

CRITICAL THINKING

Eukaryotic cells are almost always larger than prokaryotic cells. What structures might allow for their larger size?

[16] From Greek *endo*, meaning "inside," and *symbiosis*, meaning "to live with."

[17] *Aerobic* means "requiring oxygen;" *anaerobic* is the opposite.

TABLE 3.6 Comparison of Archaeal, Bacterial, and Eukaryotic Cells

Characteristic	Archaea	Bacteria	Eukaryotes
Nucleus	Absent in all	Absent	Present in all
Free organelles bound with phospholipid membranes	Absent in all	Present in few	Present; include ER, Golgi bodies, lysosomes, mitochondria, and chloroplasts
Glycocalyx	Present	Present as organized capsule or unorganized slime layer	Present, surrounding some animal cells
Motility	Present in some	Present in some	Some have complex undulating flagella and cilia composed of a "9 + 2" arrangement of microtubules; others move with amoeboid action using pseudopods
Flagella	Some have flagella, each composed of basal body, hook, and filament; flagella rotate	Some have flagella, each composed of basal body, hook, and filament; flagella rotate	Present in some
Cilia	Absent in all	Absent in all	Present in some
Fimbriae or pili	Present in some	Present in some	Absent in all
Hami	Present in some	Absent in all	Absent in all
Cell wall	Present in most, lacking peptidoglycan	Present in most; composed of peptidoglycan	Present in plants, algae, and fungi
Cytoplasmic membrane	Present in all	Present in all	Present in all
Cytosol	Present in all	Present in all	Present in all
Inclusions	Present in most	Present in most	Present in some
Endospores	Absent in all	Present in some	Absent in all
Ribosomes	Small (70S)	Small (70S)	Large (80S) in cytosol and on ER, smaller (70S) in mitochondria and chloroplasts
Chromosomes	Commonly single and circular	Commonly single and circular	Linear and more than one chromosome per cell

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Processes of Life (pp. 56–57)

1. All living things have some common features, including **growth,** an increase in size; **reproduction,** an increase in number; **responsiveness,** reactions to environmental stimuli; **metabolism,** controlled chemical reactions in an organism; and cellular structure.
2. Viruses are acellular and do not grow, self-reproduce, or metabolize.

Prokaryotic and Eukaryotic Cells: An Overview (pp. 57–59)

1. All cells can be described as either **prokaryotic** or **eukaryotic.** These descriptive terms help scientists categorize organisms in groups called taxa. Generally, prokaryotic cells make proteins simultaneously to reading the genetic code, and they lack a nucleus and organelles surrounded by phospholipid membranes. Domain Bacteria and domain Archaea are prokaryotic taxa.
2. Eukaryotes (domain Eukarya) have internal, membrane-bound **organelles,** including nuclei. Animals, plants, algae, fungi, and protozoa are eukaryotic.
3. Cells share common structural features. These include external structures, cell walls, cytoplasmic membranes, and cytoplasm.

External Structures of Bacterial Cells (pp. 59–63)

1. The external structures of bacterial cells include glycocalyces, flagella, fimbriae, and pili.
2. **Glycocalyces** are sticky external sheaths of cells. They may be loosely attached **slime layers** or firmly attached **capsules.** Glycocalyces prevent cells from drying out. Capsules protect cells from phagocytosis by other cells, and slime layers enable cells to stick to each other and to surfaces in their environment.
3. A prokaryotic **flagellum** is a long, whiplike protrusion of some cells composed of a basal body, hook, and filament. Flagella allow cells to move toward favorable conditions such as nutrients or light, or move away from unfavorable stimuli such as poisons.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Motility: Overview; Flagella: Structure*
4. Bacterial flagella may be **polar** (single or tufts) or cover the cell **(peritrichous)**. **Endoflagella,** which are special flagella of a spirochete, form an **axial filament,** located in the periplasmic space.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Flagella: Arrangement; Spirochetes*
5. **Taxis** is movement that may be either a positive response or a negative response to light **(phototaxis)** or chemicals **(chemotaxis).**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Flagella: Movement*
6. **Fimbriae** are extensions of some bacterial cells that function along with glycocalyces to adhere cells to one another and to environmental surfaces. A mass of such bacteria on a surface is termed a **biofilm.** Cells may also use fimbriae to pull themselves across a surface or to conduct signals to neighboring cells.
7. **Pili,** also known as conjugation pili, are hollow, nonmotile tubes of protein that allow bacteria to pull themselves forward and mediate the movement of DNA from one cell to another. Not all bacteria have fimbriae or pili.

Bacterial Cell Walls (pp. 63–66)

1. Most prokaryotic cells have **cell walls** that provide shape and support against osmotic pressure. Cell walls are composed primarily of polysaccharide chains.
2. Cell walls of bacteria are composed of a large, interconnected molecule of **peptidoglycan.** Peptidoglycan is composed of alternating sugar molecules called *N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG) and *N*-acetylmuramic acid (NAM).
3. A **Gram-positive** bacterial cell has a thick layer of peptidoglycan.
4. A **Gram-negative** bacterial cell has a thin layer of peptidoglycan and an external wall membrane with a **periplasmic space** between. This wall membrane contains **lipopolysaccharide (LPS),** which contains **lipid A,** which is also known as **endotoxin.** During an infection with Gram-negative bacteria, endotoxins can accumulate in the blood, causing shock, fever, and blood clotting.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Bacterial Cell Walls*
5. Acid-fast bacteria have waxy lipids in their cell walls.

Bacterial Cytoplasmic Membranes (pp. 66–71)

1. A **cytoplasmic membrane** is typically composed of phospholipid molecules arranged in a double-layer configuration called a **phospholipid bilayer.** Proteins associated with the membrane vary in location and function and are able to flow laterally within the membrane. The **fluid mosaic model** is descriptive of the current understanding of membrane structure.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Membrane Structure*
2. The **selectively permeable** cytoplasmic membrane prevents the passage of some substances while allowing other substances to pass through protein pores or channels, sometimes requiring carrier molecules.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Membrane Permeability*
3. The relative concentrations of a chemical inside and outside the cell create a **concentration gradient.** Differences of electrical charges on the two sides of a membrane create an **electrical gradient** across the membrane. The gradients have a predictable effect on the passage of substances through the membrane.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Passive Transport: Principles of Diffusion*
4. Passive processes that move chemicals across the cytoplasmic membrane require no energy expenditure by the cell. Molecular size and concentration gradients determine the rate of simple **diffusion. Facilitated diffusion** depends on the electrochemical gradient and carriers within the membrane that allow certain substances to pass through the membrane. **Osmosis** specifically refers to the diffusion of water molecules across a selectively permeable membrane.

5. The concentrations of solutions can be compared. **Hypertonic** solutions have a higher concentration of solutes than **hypotonic** solutions, which have a lower concentration of solutes. Two **isotonic** solutions have the same concentrations of solutes. In biology, comparisons are usually made with the cytoplasm of cells.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Passive Transport: Special Types of Diffusion*
6. Active transport processes require cell energy from ATP. **Active transport** moves a substance against its electrochemical gradient via carrier proteins. These carriers may move two substances in the same direction at once (symports) or move substances in opposite directions (antiports). **Group translocation** occurs in prokaryotes, during which the substance being transported is chemically altered in transit.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Active Transport: Overview, Types*

Cytoplasm of Bacteria (pp. 71–75)

1. **Cytoplasm** is composed of the liquid **cytosol** inside a cell plus nonmembranous organelles and inclusions. **Inclusions** in the cytosol are deposits of various substances.
2. Both prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells contain nonmembranous organelles.
3. The **nucleoid** is the nuclear region in prokaryotic cytosol. It has no membrane and usually contains a single circular molecule of DNA.
4. Inclusions include reserve deposits of lipids, starch, or compounds containing nitrogen, phosphate, or sulfur. Inclusions called gas vesicles store gases.
5. Some bacteria produce dormant, resistant **endospores** within vegetative cells.
6. **Ribosomes,** composed of protein and **ribosomal RNA (rRNA),** are nonmembranous organelles, found in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes, that function to make proteins. The 70S ribosomes of prokaryotes are smaller than the 80S ribosomes of eukaryotes.
7. The **cytoskeleton** is a network of fibers that appears to help maintain the basic shape of prokaryotes.

External Structures of Archaea (pp. 75–76)

1. Archaea form polysaccharide and polypeptide glycocalyces that function in attachment and biofilm formation but are evidently not associated with diseases.
2. Archaeal flagella differ from bacterial flagella. For example, archaeal flagella are thinner than bacterial flagella.
3. Archaeal flagella rotate together as a bundle in both directions and are powered by molecules of ATP.
4. Archaea may have fimbriae and grappling-hook-like **hami** that serve to anchor the cells to environmental surfaces.

Archaeal Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes (pp. 76–77)

1. Archaeal cell walls are composed of protein or polysaccharides but not peptidoglycan.
2. Phospholipids in archaeal cytoplasmic membranes are built with ether linkages rather than ester linkages, which occur in bacterial membranes.

Cytoplasm of Archaea (p. 77)

1. Gel-like archaeal cytoplasm is similar to the cytoplasm of bacteria, having DNA, ribosomes, and a fibrous cytoskeleton, all suspended in the liquid cytosol.
2. 70S ribosomes of archaea have proteins more similar to those of eukaryotic ribosomes than to bacterial ribosomes.

External Structure of Eukaryotic Cells (p. 77)

1. Eukaryotic animal and some protozoan cells lack cell walls but have **glycocalyces** that prevent desiccation, provide support, and enable cells to stick together.
2. Wall-less eukaryotic cells have glycocalyces, which are not found with eukaryotic cells that have walls.

Eukaryotic Cell Walls and Cytoplasmic Membranes (pp. 77–79)

1. Fungal, plant, algal, and some protozoan cells have cell walls composed of polysaccharides or other chemicals. Cell walls provide support, shape, and protection from osmotic forces.
2. Fungal cell walls are composed of chitin or other polysaccharides. Plant cell walls are composed of cellulose. Algal cell walls contain agar, carrageenan, algin, cellulose, or other chemicals.
3. Eukaryotic cytoplasmic membranes contain sterols such as cholesterol, which act to strengthen and solidify the membranes when temperatures rise and provide fluidity when temperatures fall.
4. **Membrane rafts** are distinct assemblages of certain lipids and proteins that remain together in the cytoplasmic membrane. Some viruses use membrane rafts during their infections of cells.
5. Some eukaryotic cells transport substances into the cytoplasm via **endocytosis,** which is an active process requiring the expenditure of energy from ATP. In endocytosis, **pseudopods**—movable extensions of the cytoplasm and membrane of the cell—surround a substance and move it into the cell. When solids are brought into the cell, endocytosis is called **phagocytosis;** the incorporation of liquids by endocytosis is called **pinocytosis.**
6. **Exocytosis** is the active export of substances out of a cell.

Cytoplasm of Eukaryotes (pp. 79–87)

1. Eukaryotic cytoplasm is characterized by membranous organelles, particularly a nucleus. It also contains nonmembranous organelles and cytosol.
2. Some eukaryotic cells have long, whiplike **flagella** that differ from the flagella of prokaryotes. They have no hook, and the basal bodies and shafts are arrangements of microtubules. Further, eukaryotic flagella are internal to the cytoplasmic membrane.
3. Some eukaryotic cells have **cilia,** which have the same structure as eukaryotic flagella but are much shorter and more numerous. Cilia are internal to the cytoplasmic membrane.
4. The 80S **ribosomes** of eukaryotic cells are composed of 60S and 40S subunits. They are found free in the cytosol and attached to endoplasmic reticulum. The ribosomes within mitochondria and chloroplasts are 70S.

5. The eukaryotic cytoskeleton is composed of microtubules, intermediate filaments, and microfilaments. It provides an infrastructure and aids in movement of cytoplasm and organelles.
6. **Centrioles,** which are nonmembranous organelles in animal and some fungal cells only, are found in a region of the cytoplasm called the **centrosome** and are composed of triplets of microtubules in a "9 + 0" arrangement. Centrosomes function in the formation of flagella and cilia and in cell division.
7. The **nucleus,** a membranous structure in eukaryotic cells, contains **nucleoplasm**, in which are found one or more **nucleoli** and **chromatin.** Chromatin consists of the multiple strands of DNA and associated histone proteins that become obvious as chromosomes during mitosis. **Nuclear pores** penetrate the four phospholipid layers of the **nuclear envelope** (membrane).
8. The **endoplasmic reticulum (ER)** functions as a transport system. It can be **rough ER (RER),** which has ribosomes on its surface, or **smooth ER (SER),** which lacks ribosomes.
9. A **Golgi body** is a series of flattened hollow sacs surrounded by phospholipid bilayers. It packages large molecules destined for export from the cell in **secretory vesicles,** which release these molecules from the cell via exocytosis.
10. **Vesicles** and **vacuoles** are general terms for membranous sacs that store or carry substances. More specifically, **lysosomes** of animal cells contain digestive enzymes, and **peroxisomes** contain enzymes that neutralize poisonous free radicals and hydrogen peroxide.
11. Four phospholipid layers surround **mitochondria,** site of production of ATP in a eukaryotic cell. The inner bilayer is folded into cristae, which greatly increase the surface area available for chemicals that generate ATP.
12. Photosynthetic eukaryotes possess **chloroplasts,** which are organelles containing membranous thylakoids that provide increased surface area for photosynthetic reactions.
13. The **endosymbiotic theory** explains why mitochondria and chloroplasts have 70S ribosomes, circular DNA, and two membranes. The theory states that the ancestors of these organelles were prokaryotic cells that were internalized by other prokaryotes and then lost the ability to exist outside their host—thus forming early eukaryotes.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. A cell may allow a large or charged chemical to move across the cytoplasmic membrane, down the chemical's electrical and chemical gradients, in a process called _____.
   a. active transport
   b. facilitated diffusion
   c. endocytosis
   d. pinocytosis
2. Which of the following statements concerning growth and reproduction is false?
   a. Growth and reproduction may occur simultaneously in living organisms.
   b. A living organism must reproduce to be considered alive.
   c. Living things may stop growing and reproducing yet still be alive.
   d. Normally, living organisms have the ability to grow and reproduce themselves.
3. A "9 + 2" arrangement of microtubules is seen in _____.
   a. archaeal flagella
   b. bacterial flagella
   c. eukaryotic flagella
   d. all prokaryotic flagella
4. Which of the following is most associated with diffusion?
   a. symports
   b. antiports
   c. carrier proteins
   d. endocytosis
5. Which of the following is *not* associated with prokaryotic organisms?
   a. nucleoid
   b. glycocalyx
   c. cilia
   d. circular DNA
6. Which of the following is true of Svedbergs?
   a. They are not exact but are useful for comparisons.
   b. They are abbreviated "sv."
   c. They are prokaryotic in nature but exhibit some eukaryotic characteristics.
   d. They are an expression of sedimentation rate during high-speed centrifugation.
7. Which of the following statements is true?
   a. The cell walls of bacteria are composed of peptidoglycan.
   b. Peptidoglycan is a fatty acid.
   c. Gram-positive bacterial walls have a relatively thin layer of peptidoglycan anchored to the cytoplasmic membrane by teichoic acids.
   d. Peptidoglycan is found mainly in the cell walls of fungi, algae, and plants.
8. Which of the following is *not* a function of a glycocalyx?
   a. It forms pseudopods for faster mobility of an organism.
   b. It can protect a bacterial cell from drying out.
   c. It hides a bacterial cell from other cells.
   d. It allows a bacterium to stick to a host.
9. Bacterial flagella _____.
   a. are anchored to the cell by a basal body
   b. are composed of hami
   c. are surrounded by an extension of the cytoplasmic membrane
   d. are composed of tubulin in hollow microtubules in a "9 + 2" arrangement
10. Which cellular structure is important in classifying a bacterial species as Gram positive or Gram negative?
    a. flagella
    b. cell wall
    c. cilia
    d. glycocalyx

11. A Gram-negative cell is moving uric acid across the cytoplasmic membrane against its chemical gradient. Which of the following statements is true?
    a. The exterior of the cell is probably electrically negative compared to the interior of the cell.
    b. The acid probably moves by a passive means such as facilitated diffusion.
    c. The acid moves by an active process such as active transport.
    d. The movement of the acid requires phagocytosis.
12. Gram-positive bacteria _____.
    a. have a thick cell wall, which retains crystal violet dye
    b. contain teichoic acids in their cell walls
    c. appear purple after Gram staining
    d. all of the above
13. Endospores _____.
    a. are reproductive structures of some bacteria
    b. occur in some archaea
    c. can cause shock, fever, and inflammation
    d. are dormant, resistant cells
14. Inclusions have been found to contain _____.
    a. DNA
    b. sulfur globules
    c. dipicolinic acid
    d. tubulin
15. Dipicolinic acid is an important component of _____.
    a. Gram-positive archaeal walls
    b. cytoplasmic membranes in eukaryotes
    c. endospores
    d. Golgi bodies

Matching

1. Match the structures on the left with the descriptions on the right. A letter may be used more than once or not at all, and more than one letter may be correct for each blank.

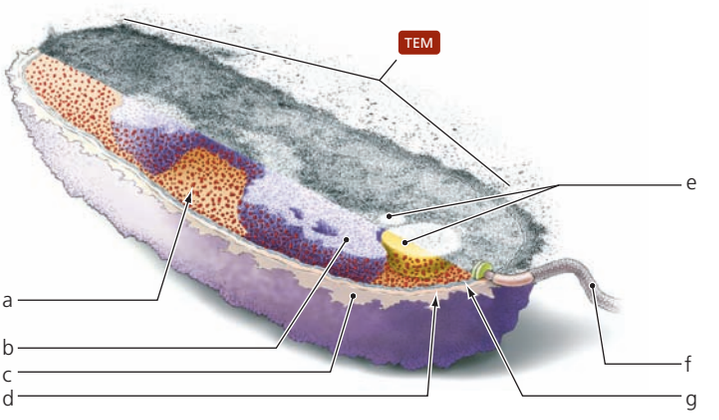
____ Glycocalyx	A. Bristlelike projections found in quantities of 100 or more
____ Flagella	B. Long whip
____ Axial filaments	C. Responsible for conjugation
____ Cilia	D. "Sweet cup" composed of polysaccharides and/or polypeptides
____ Fimbriae	E. Numerous "grappling-hook" projections
____ Pili	F. Responsible for motility of spirochetes
____ Hami	G. Extensions not used for cell motility
	H. Made of tubulin in eukaryotes
	I. Made of flagellin in bacteria

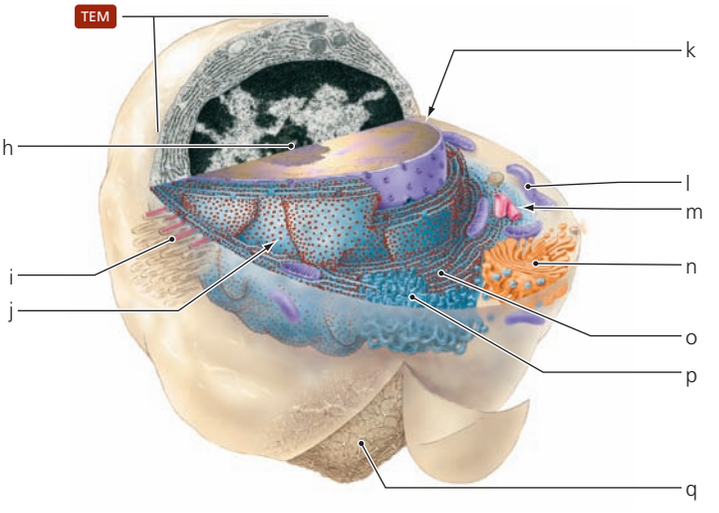
2. Match the term on the left with its description on the right. Only one description is intended for each term.

____ Ribosome	A. Site of protein synthesis
____ Cytoskeleton	B. Contains enzymes to neutralize hydrogen peroxide
____ Centriole	C. Functions as the transport system within a eukaryotic cell
____ Nucleus	D. Allows contraction of the cell
____ Mitochondrion	E. Site of most DNA in eukaryotes
____ Chloroplast	F. Contains microtubules in "9 + 0" arrangement
____ ER	G. Light-harvesting organelle
____ Golgi body	H. Packages large molecules for export from a cell
____ Peroxisome	I. Its internal membranes are sites for ATP production

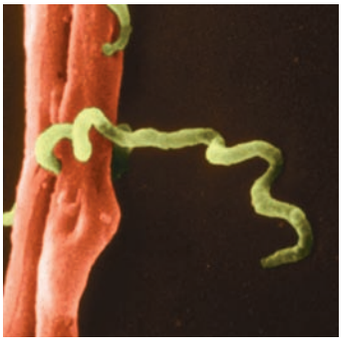
Visualize It!

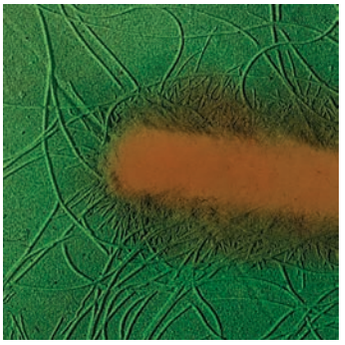
1. Label the structures of the following prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. With a single word or short phrase, explain the function of each structure.

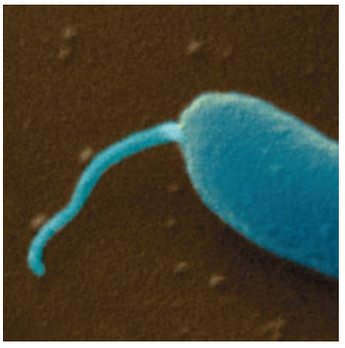




2. Label each type of flagellar arrangement.







Short Answer

1. Describe (or draw) an example of diffusion down a concentration gradient.
2. Sketch, name, and describe three flagellar arrangements in bacteria.
3. Define *cytosol.*
4. The term *fluid mosaic* has been used in describing the cytoplasmic membrane. How does each word of that phrase accurately describe our current understanding of a cell membrane?
5. A local newspaper writer has contacted you, an educated microbiology student from a respected college. He wants to obtain scientific information for an article he is writing about "life" and poses the following query: "What is the difference between a living thing and a nonliving thing?" Knowing that he will edit your material to fit the article, give an intelligent, scientific response.
6. What is the difference between growth and reproduction?
7. Compare bacterial cells and algal cells, giving at least four similarities and four differences.
8. Contrast a cell of *Streptococcus pyogenes* (a bacterium) with the unicellular protozoan *Entamoeba histolytica,* listing at least eight differences.
9. Differentiate among pili, fimbriae, and cilia, using sketches and descriptive labels.
10. Can nonliving things metabolize? Explain your answer.
11. How do archaeal flagella differ from bacterial flagella and eukaryotic flagella?
12. Contrast bacterial and eukaryotic cells by filling in the following table.

Characteristic	Bacteria	Eukaryotes
Size		
Presence of nucleus		
Presence of membrane-bound organelles		
Structure of flagella		
Chemicals in cell walls		
Type of ribosomes		
Structure of chromosomes		

13. What is the function of glycocalyces and fimbriae in forming a biofilm?
14. What factors may prevent a molecule from moving across a cell membrane?
15. Compare and contrast three types of passive transport across a cell membrane.
16. Contrast the following active processes for transporting materials into or out of a cell: active transport, group translocation, endocytosis, exocytosis.
17. Contrast symports and antiports.
18. Describe the endosymbiotic theory. What evidence supports the theory? Which features of eukaryotic cells are *not* explained by the theory?

Critical Thinking

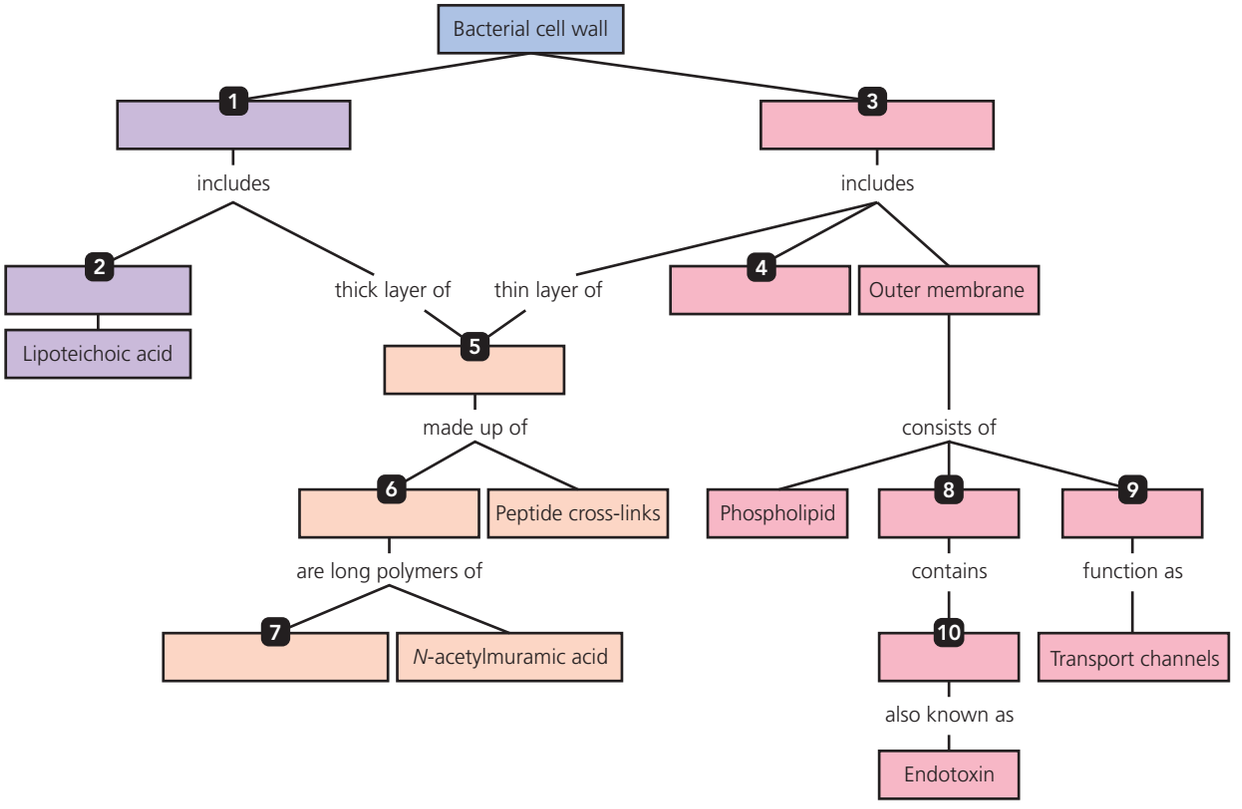
1. A scientist develops a chemical that prevents Golgi bodies from functioning. Contrast the specific effects the chemical would have on human cells versus bacterial cells.
2. Methylene blue binds to DNA. What structures in a yeast cell would be stained by this dye?
3. A new chemotherapeutic drug kills bacteria but not humans. Discuss the possible ways the drug may act selectively on bacterial cells.
4. Some bacterial toxins cause cells lining the digestive tract to secrete ions, making the contents of the tract hypertonic. What effect does this have on a patient's water balance?
5. A researcher carefully inserts an electrode into a plant cell. He determines that the electrical charge across the cytoplasmic membrane is –70 millivolts. Then he slips the electrode deeper into the cell across another membrane and measures an electrical charge of –90 millivolts compared to the outside. What large organelle is surrounded by the second membrane? Explain your answer.
6. Does Figure 3.2 best represent a Gram-positive or a Gram-negative cell? Defend your answer.
7. An electron micrograph of a newly discovered cell shows long projections with a basal body in the cell wall. What kind of projections are these? Is the cell prokaryotic or eukaryotic? How will this cell behave in its environment because of these projections?
8. An entry in a recent scientific journal reports positive phototaxis in a newly described species. What condition could you create in the lab to encourage the growth of these organisms?
9. A medical microbiological lab report indicates that a sample contained a biofilm and that one species in the biofilm was identified as *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*. Is this strain of *Neisseria* likely to be pathogenic? Why or why not?
10. A researcher treats a cell to block the function of SER only. Describe the initial effects this would have on the cell.

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes the bacterial cell wall. Use this map as a guide for chapters in which you are asked to draw your own maps, but know that all maps will be different because there are many ways to draw them. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Glycan chains
Gram-negative cell wall
Gram-positive cell wall
Lipid A
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS)
***N*-acetylglucosamine**
Peptidoglycan
Periplasm
Porins
Teichoic acids



4 Microscopy, Staining, and Classification

When we want to weigh ourselves, we just step on a bathroom scale. But what can we use to **measure** the mass of something as delicate as the cell wall of a microorganism? The answer is an interference **microscope**, which uses a split beam of light to form vertical light and dark bands across a specimen (see the photo). Where light rays have traveled through a specimen and slowed, the pattern of light and dark bands is shifted, and the amount of shift is directly proportional to the change in speed. That change in **speed** can then be correlated with the specimen's density; the denser the specimen, the slower light travels through it. In this way, we can "weigh" a cell wall—or a nucleus or a chloroplast or even a single chromosome.

This chapter explores the **illuminating** world of microscopes and the amazing lessons about microbial life that we continue to learn from them.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

A piece of cell wall from the marine red alga *Griffithsia pacifica* as seen through an interference microscope. The mass of the cell wall is 0.65 picogram per square micrometer. (A picogram equals 10^{-12} gram.)

Either the well was very deep, or she fell very slowly, for she had plenty of time as she went down to look about her, and to wonder what was going to happen next. . . . " Curiouser and curiouser!" cried Alice. . . .

—*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* by Lewis Carroll

Like Alice falling into Wonderland or traveling through a looking glass, scientists have entered the marvelous microbial world through advances in microscopy. With the invention of new laboratory techniques and the construction of new instruments, biologists are still discovering "curiouser and curiouser" wonders about the microbial world. In this chapter we will discuss some of the techniques microbiologists use to enter that world. We begin with a discussion of metric units as they relate to measuring the size of microbes. We then examine the instruments and staining techniques used in microbiology. Finally, we consider the classification schemes used to categorize the inhabitants of the microbial wonderland. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Microscopy and Staining: Overview***

Units of Measurement

Learning Outcomes

4.1 Identify the two primary metric units used to measure the diameters of microbes.

4.2 List the metric units of length in order, from meter to nanometer.

Microorganisms are small. This may seem an obvious statement, but it is one that should not be taken for granted. Exactly how small are they? How can we measure the width and length of microbes?

Typically, a unit of measurement is smaller than the object being measured. For example, we measure a person's height in feet or inches, not in miles. Likewise, the diameter of a dime is measured in fractions of an inch, not in feet. So, measuring the size of a microbe requires units that are smaller than even the smallest interval on a ruler marked with English units (typically 1/16 inch). Even smaller units, such as 1/64 inch or 1/128 inch, become quite cumbersome and very difficult to use when we are dealing with microorganisms.

So that they can work with units that are simpler and in standard use the world over, scientists use metric units of measurement. Unlike the English system, the metric system is a decimal system, so each unit is one-tenth the size of the next largest unit. Even extremely small metric units are much easier to use than the fractions involved in the English system.

The unit of length in the metric system is the *meter (m),* which is slightly longer than a yard. One-tenth of a meter is a *decimeter (dm),* and one-hundredth of a meter is a *centimeter (cm),* which is equivalent to about a third of an inch. One-tenth of a centimeter is a *millimeter (mm),* which is the thickness of a dime. A millimeter is still too large to measure the size of most microorganisms, but in the metric system we continue to divide by multiples of 10 until we have a unit appropriate for use. Thus, one-thousandth of a millimeter is a *micrometer (μm),* which is small enough to be useful in measuring the size of cells. One-thousandth of a micrometer is a *nanometer (nm),* a unit used to measure the smallest cellular organelles and viruses. A nanometer is one-billionth of a meter.

Table 4.1 presents these metric units and some English equivalents. (Refer to Figure 3.4 for a visual size comparison of a typical eukaryotic cell, prokaryotic cell, and virus particle.)

TABLE 4.1 Metric Units of Length

Metric Unit (abbreviation)	Meaning of Prefix	Metric Equivalent	U.S. Equivalent	Representative Microbiological Application of the Unit
Meter (m)	—[a]	1 m	39.37 in (about a yard)	Length of pork tapeworm, *Taenia solium* (e.g., 1.8–8.0 m)
Decimeter (dm)	1/10	0.1 m = 10^{-1} m	3.94 in	—[b]
Centimeter (cm)	1/100	0.01 m = 10^{-2} m	0.39 in; 1 in = 2.54 cm	Diameter of a mushroom cap (e.g., 12 cm)
Millimeter (mm)	1/1000	0.001 m = 10^{-3} m	—	Diameter of a bacterial colony (e.g., 2.3 mm); length of a tick (e.g., 5.7 mm)
Micrometer (μm)	1/1,000,000	0.000001 m = 10^{-6} m	—	Diameter of white blood cells (e.g., 5–25 μm)
Nanometer (nm)	1/1,000,000,000	0.000000001 m = 10^{-9} m	—	Diameter of a poliovirus (e.g., 25 nm)

[a]The meter is the standard metric unit of length.
[b]Decimeters are rarely used.

Microscopy

Learning Outcome

4.3 Define *microscopy*.

Microscopy[1] refers to the use of light or electrons to magnify objects. The science of microbiology began when Antoni van Leeuwenhoek (lā´ven-hŭk, 1632–1723) used primitive microscopes to observe and report the existence of microorganisms. Since that time, scientists and engineers have developed a variety of light and electron microscopes.

General Principles of Microscopy

Learning Outcomes

4.4 Explain the relevance of electromagnetic radiation to microscopy.

4.5 Define *empty magnification*.

4.6 List and explain two factors that determine resolving power.

4.7 Discuss the relationship between contrast and staining in microscopy.

General principles involved in both light and electron microscopy include the wavelength of radiation, the magnification of an image, the resolving power of the instrument, and contrast in the specimen.

Wavelength of Radiation

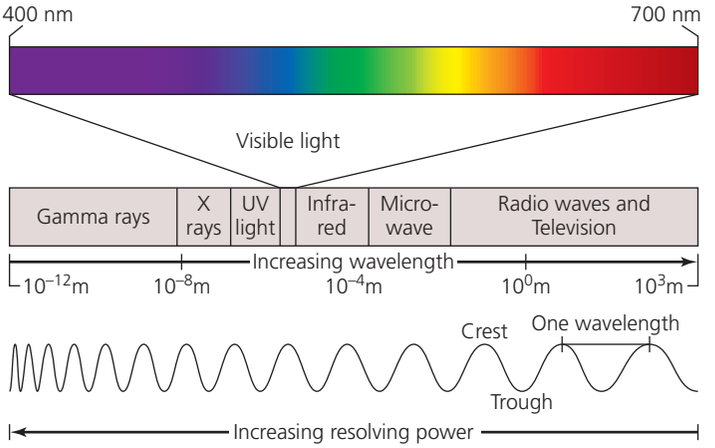
Visible light is one part of a spectrum of electromagnetic radiation that includes X rays, microwaves, and radio waves **(Figure 4.1)**. Note that beams of radiation may be referred to as either rays or waves. These various forms of radiation differ in **wavelength**—the distance between two corresponding parts of a wave. The human eye discriminates among different wavelengths of visible light and sends patterns of nerve impulses to the brain, which interprets the impulses as different colors. For example, we see wavelengths of 400 nm as violet and of 650 nm as red. White light, composed of many colors (wavelengths), has an average wavelength of 550 nm.

Electrons are negatively charged particles that orbit the nuclei of atoms. Besides being particulate, moving electrons act as waves, with wavelengths dependent on the voltage of an electron beam. For example, the wavelength of electrons at 10,000 volts (V) is 0.01 nm; that of electrons at 1,000,000 V is 0.001 nm. As we will see, using radiation of smaller wavelengths results in enhanced microscopy.

Magnification

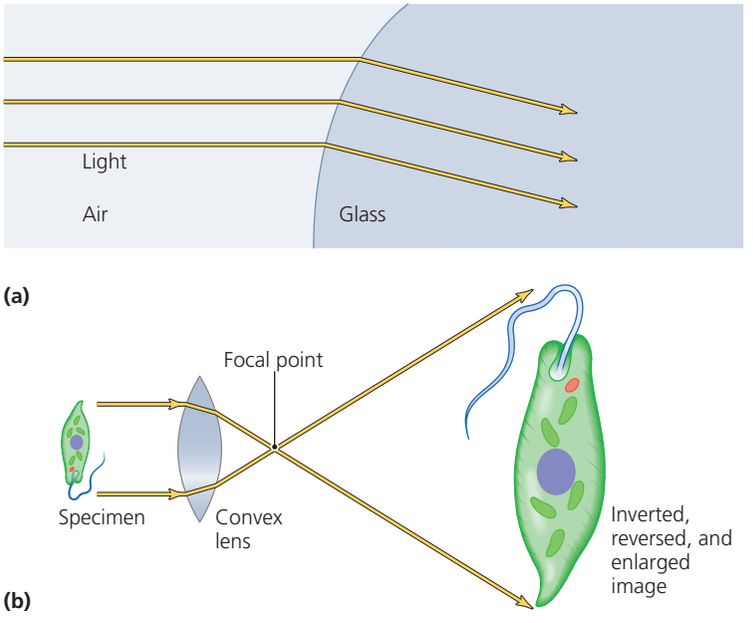
Magnification is the apparent increase in size of an object. It is indicated by a number and "×," which is read "times." For example, 16,000× is 16,000 times. Magnification results when a beam of radiation *refracts* (bends) as it passes through a lens. Curved glass lenses refract light, and magnetic fields refract electron beams. Let's consider the magnifying power of a glass lens that is convex on both sides.

[1] From Greek *micro*, meaning "small," and *skopein*, meaning "to view."

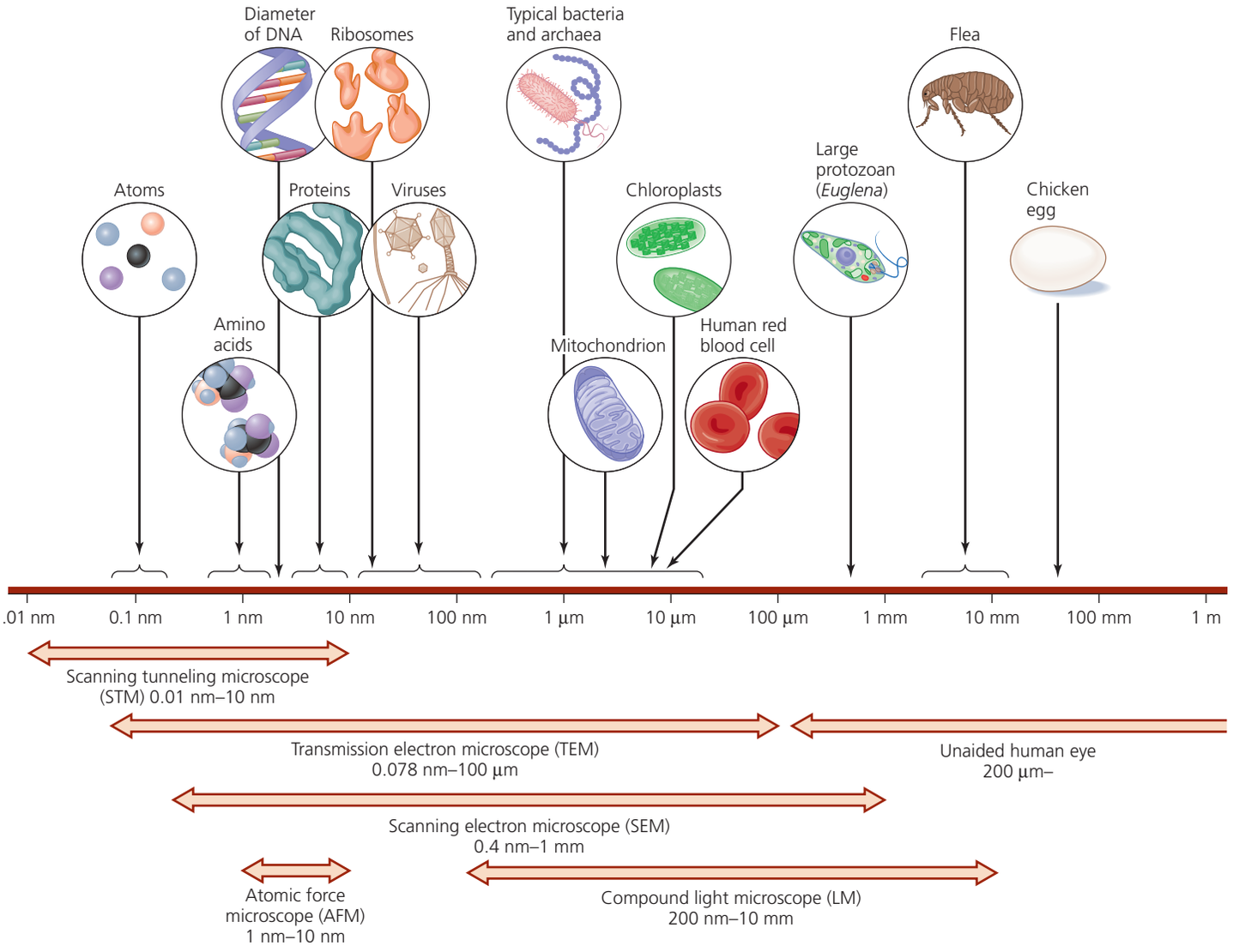


▲ **Figure 4.1 The electromagnetic spectrum.** Visible light is made up of a narrow band of wavelengths of radiation. Visible and ultraviolet (UV) light are used in microscopy.

A lens refracts light because the lens is *optically dense* compared to the surrounding medium (such as air); that is, light travels more slowly through the lens than through air. Think of a car moving at an angle from a paved road onto a dirt shoulder. As the right front tire leaves the pavement, it has less traction and slows down. Since the other wheels continue at their original speed, the car veers toward the dirt, and the line of travel bends to the right. Likewise, the leading edge of a light beam slows as it enters glass, and the beam bends **(Figure 4.2a)**. Light also bends as it leaves the glass and reenters the air.



▲ **Figure 4.2 Light refraction and image magnification by a convex glass lens.** **(a)** Light passing through a lens refracts (bends) because light rays slow down as they enter the glass, and light at the leading edge of a beam that strikes the glass at an angle slows first. **(b)** A convex lens focuses light on a focal point. The image is enlarged and inverted as light rays pass the focal point and spread apart.



▲ Figure 4.3 The limits of resolution (and some representative objects within those ranges) of the human eye and of various types of microscopes.

Because of its curvature, a lens refracts light rays that pass through its periphery more than light rays that pass through its center, so that the lens focuses light rays on a *focal point*. Importantly for the purpose of microscopy, light rays spread apart as they travel past the focal point and produce an enlarged, inverted image **(Figure 4.2b)**. The degree to which the image is enlarged depends on the thickness of the lens, its curvature, and the speed of light through its substance.

Microscopists could combine lenses to obtain an image magnified millions of times, but the image would be faint and blurry. Such magnification is said to be *empty magnification*. The properties that determine the clarity of an image, which in turn determines the useful magnification of a microscope, are *resolution* and *contrast*.

Resolution

Resolution, also called *resolving power*, is the ability to distinguish objects that are close together. An optometrist's eye chart is a test of resolution at a distance of 20 feet (6.1 m). Leeuwenhoek's microscopes had a resolving power of about 1 µm; that is, he could distinguish objects if they were more than about 1 µm apart, and objects closer together than 1 µm appeared as a single object. The better the resolution, the better the ability to distinguish two objects that are close to one another. Modern microscopes have fivefold better resolution than Leeuwenhoek's; they can distinguish objects as close together as 0.2 µm. **Figure 4.3** illustrates the size of various objects that can be resolved by the unaided human eye and by various types of microscopes.

Why do modern microscopes have better resolution than Leeuwenhoek's microscopes? A principle of microscopy is that resolution distance is dependent on (1) the wavelength of the electromagnetic radiation and (2) the **numerical aperture** of the lens, which refers to the ability of a lens to gather light.

Resolution distance is calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{resolution distance} = \frac{0.61 \times \text{wavelength}}{\text{numerical aperture}}$$

The resolution of today's microscopes is greater than that of Leeuwenhoek's microscopes because modern microscopes use shorter-wavelength radiation, such as blue light or electron beams, and because they have lenses with larger numerical apertures.

Contrast

Contrast refers to differences in intensity between two objects or between an object and its background. Contrast is important in determining resolution. For example, although you can easily distinguish two golf balls lying side by side on a putting green 15 m away, at that distance it is much more difficult to distinguish them if they are lying on a white towel.

Most microorganisms are colorless and have very little contrast whether one uses light or electrons. One way to increase the contrast between microorganisms and their background is to stain them. Stains and staining techniques are covered later in the chapter. As we will see, the use of light that is in *phase*—that is, in which all of the waves' crests and troughs are aligned—can also enhance contrast.

Light Microscopy

Learning Outcomes

- 4.8 Contrast simple and compound microscopes.
- 4.9 Compare and contrast bright-field microscopy, dark-field microscopy, and phase microscopy.
- 4.10 Compare and contrast fluorescence and confocal microscopes.

Several classes of microscopes use various types of light to examine microscopic specimens. The most common microscopes are *bright-field microscopes,* in which the background (or *field*) is illuminated. In *dark-field microscopes,* the specimen is made to appear light against a dark background. *Phase microscopes* use the alignment or misalignment of light waves to achieve the desired contrast between a living specimen and its background. *Fluorescence microscopes* use invisible ultraviolet light to cause specimens to radiate visible light, a phenomenon called *fluorescence.* Microscopes that use lasers to illuminate fluorescent chemicals in a thin plane of a specimen are called *confocal microscopes.* Next we examine each of these kinds of light microscope in turn.

Bright-Field Microscopes

There are two basic types of bright-field microscopes: *simple microscopes* and *compound microscopes*.

Simple Microscopes Leeuwenhoek first reported his observations of microorganisms using a simple microscope in 1674. A **simple microscope,** which contains a single magnifying lens, is more similar to a magnifying glass than to a modern microscope (see Figure 1.2). Though Leeuwenhoek did not invent the microscope, he was the finest lens maker of his day and produced microscopes of exceptional quality. They were capable of approximately 300× magnification and achieved excellent clarity, far surpassing other microscopes of his time.

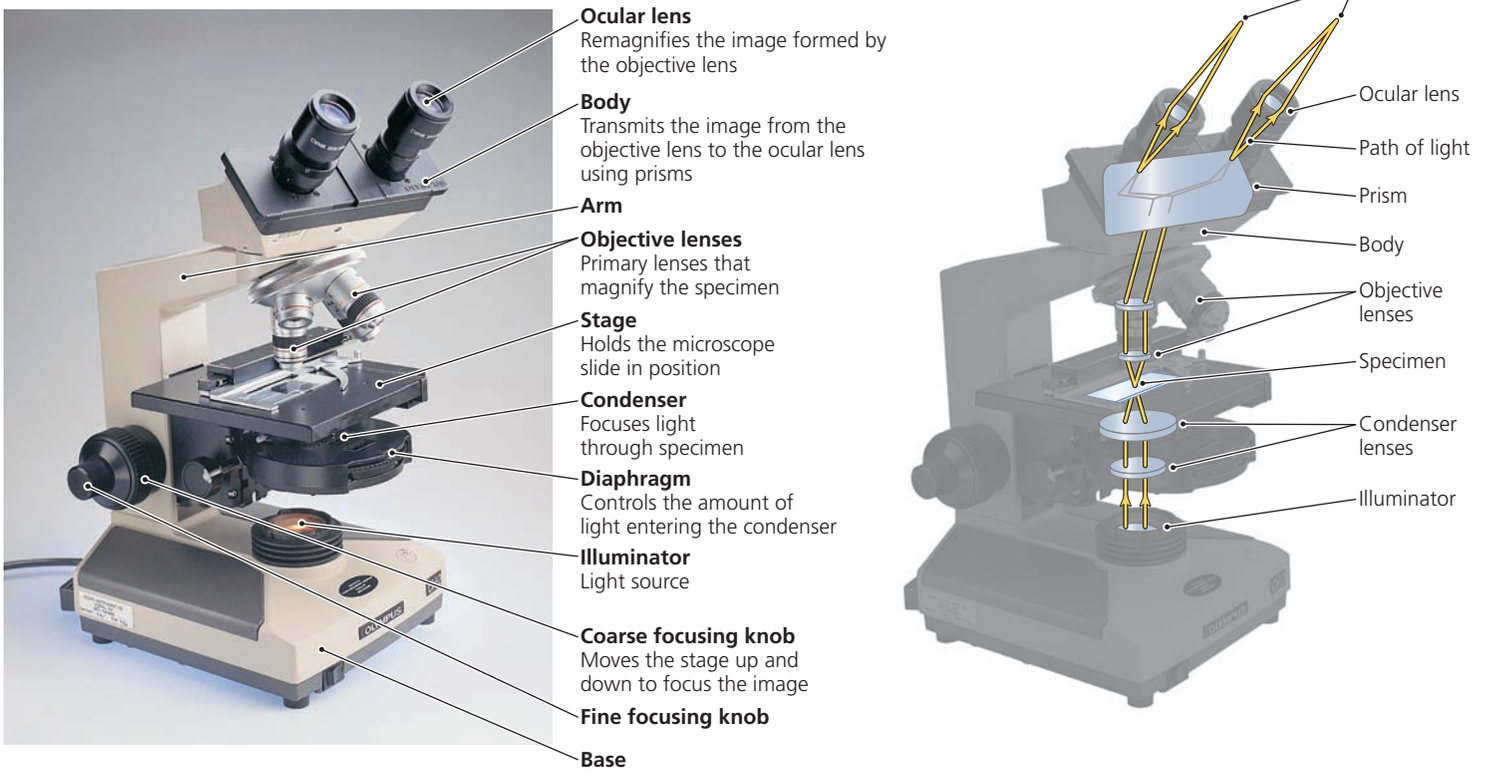
Compound Microscopes Simple microscopes have been replaced in modern laboratories by compound microscopes. A **compound microscope** uses a series of lenses for magnification **(Figure 4.4a)**. Many scientists, including Galileo Galilei (1564–1642), made compound microscopes as early as 1590, but it was not until about 1830 that scientists developed compound microscopes that exceeded the clarity and magnification of Leeuwenhoek's simple microscope.

In a basic compound microscope, magnification is achieved as light rays pass through a specimen and into an **objective lens,** which is the lens immediately above the object being magnified **(Figure 4.4b)**. An objective lens is really a series of lenses that not only create a magnified image but also are engineered to reduce aberrations in the shape and color of the image. Most light microscopes used in biology have three or four objective lenses mounted on a **revolving nosepiece.** The objective lenses on a typical microscope are *scanning objective lens* (4×), *low-power objective lens* (10×), *high-power lens* or *high dry objective lens* (40×), and *oil immersion objective lens* (100×).

An oil immersion lens increases not only magnification but also resolution. As we have seen, light refracts as it travels from air into glass and also from glass into air; therefore, some of the light passing out of a glass slide is bent so much that it bypasses the lens **(Figure 4.5a)**. Placing *immersion oil* between the slide and an *oil immersion objective lens* enables the lens to capture this light because light travels through immersion oil at the same speed as through glass. Because light is traveling at a uniform speed through the slide, the immersion oil, and the glass lens, it does not refract **(Figure 4.5b)**. Immersion oil increases the numerical aperture, which increases resolution, because more light rays are gathered into the lens to produce the image. Obviously, the space between the slide and the lens can be filled with oil only if the distance between the lens and the specimen, called the *working distance,* is small.

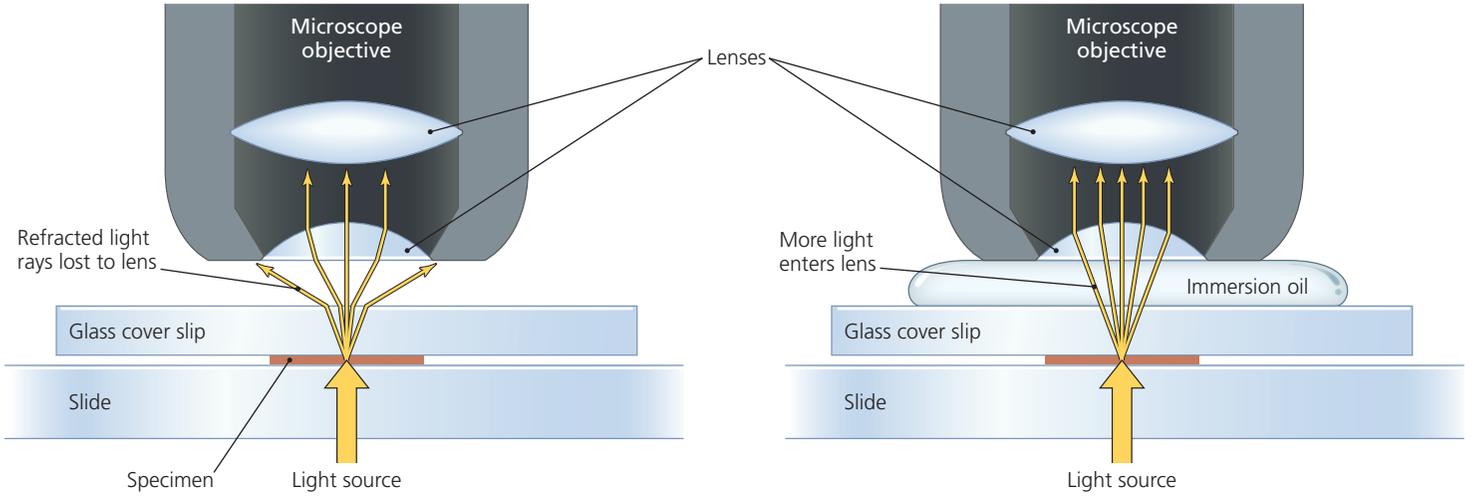
An objective lens bends the light rays, which then pass up through one or two **ocular lenses,** which are the lenses closest to the eyes. Microscopes with a single ocular lens are *monocular,* and those with two are *binocular.* Ocular lenses magnify the image created by the objective lens, typically another 10×.

The **total magnification** of a compound microscope is determined by multiplying the magnification of the objective lens by the magnification of the ocular lens. Thus, total magnification using a 10× ocular lens and a 10× low-power objective lens is 100×. Using the same ocular and a 100× oil immersion objective produces 1000× magnification. Some light microscopes,



▲ **Figure 4.4** **A bright-field, compound light microscope.** **(a)** The parts of a compound microscope, which uses a series of lenses to produce an image at up to 2000× magnification. **(b)** The path of light in a compound microscope; light travels from bottom to top. *Why can't light microscopes produce clear images that are magnified 10,000×?*

Figure 4.4 *Although it is possible for a light microscope to produce an image that is magnified 10,000×, magnification above 2000× is empty magnification because pairs of objects in the specimen are too close together to resolve with even the shortest-wavelength (blue) light.*



▲ **Figure 4.5** **The effect of immersion oil on resolution.** **(a)** Without immersion oil, light is refracted as it moves from the cover glass into the air. Part of the scattered light misses the objective lens. **(b)** With immersion oil. Because light travels through the oil at the same speed as it does through glass, no light is refracted as it leaves the specimen and more light enters the lens, which increases resolution.

using higher-magnification oil immersion objective lenses and ocular lenses, can achieve 2000× magnification, but this is the limit of useful magnification for light microscopes because their resolution is restricted by the wavelength of visible light.

Modern compound microscopes also have a **condenser lens** (or lenses), which directs light through the specimen, as well as one or more mirrors or prisms that deflect the path of the light rays from an objective lens to the ocular lens (see Figure 4.4b). Some microscopes have mirrors or prisms that direct light to a camera through a special tube. Photographs of such a microscopic image are called light **micrographs.**

▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *The Light Microscope*

Dark-Field Microscopes

Pale objects are best observed with **dark-field microscopes.** These microscopes utilize a *dark-field stop* in the condenser that prevents light from directly entering the objective lens **(Figure 4.6)**. Instead, light rays are reflected inside the condenser, so that they pass into the slide at such an oblique angle that they miss the objective lens. Only those light rays that are scattered by the specimen enter the objective lens and are seen, so the specimen appears light against a dark background. This increases contrast and enables observation of more details than are visible in bright-field microscopy. Dark-field microscopes are especially useful for examining small or colorless cells.

Phase Microscopes

Scientists use **phase microscopes** to examine living microorganisms or specimens that would be damaged or altered by attaching them to slides or staining them. Basically, phase microscopes treat one set of light rays differently from another set of light rays.

Light rays are said to be *in phase* when their crests and troughs are aligned and *out of phase* when their crests and troughs are not aligned **(Figure 4.7a)**. Light rays that are in phase reinforce one another, producing a brighter image, and light rays that are out of phase interfere with one another, producing a darker image. Light rays passing through a specimen naturally slow down and are shifted about 1/4 wavelength out of phase. A special filter called a *phase plate,* which is mounted in a phase objective lens, retards these rays another 1/4 wavelength, so that they are 1/2 wavelength out of phase with their neighbors. When the phase microscope lens brings the two sets of rays together, troughs of one wave interfere with the crests of the other—because they are out of phase **(Figure 4.7b)**—and contrast is created. There are two types of phase microscopes: phase-contrast and differential interference contrast microscopes.

Phase-Contrast Microscopes The simplest phase microscopes, **phase-contrast microscopes,** produce sharply defined images in which fine structures can be seen in living cells. These microscopes are particularly useful for observing cilia and flagella.

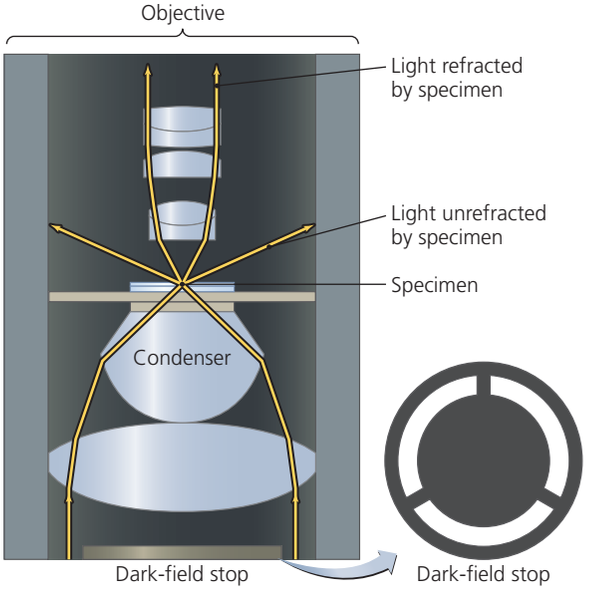
Differential Interference Contrast Microscopes **Differential interference contrast microscopes** (also called Nomarski[2] microscopes) create phase interference patterns. They also use prisms that split light beams into their component wavelengths (colors). This significantly increases contrast and gives the image a dramatic three-dimensional or shadowed appearance, almost as though light were striking the specimen from one side. This technique also produces unnatural colors, which enhance contrast.

Figure 4.8 illustrates the differences that can be observed in a single specimen when viewed using four different types of light microscopy.

Fluorescence Microscopes

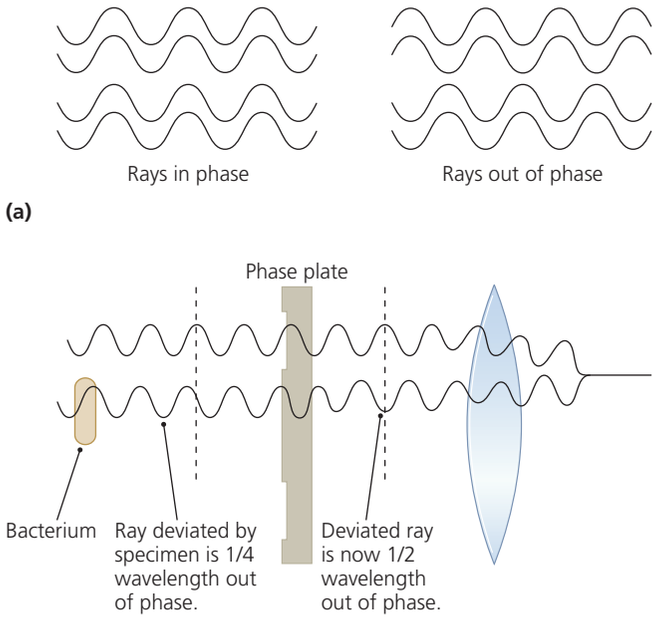
Molecules that absorb energy from invisible radiation (such as ultraviolet light) and then radiate the energy back as a longer, visible wavelength are said to be *fluorescent.* **Fluorescence microscopes** use an ultraviolet (UV) light source to fluoresce objects. UV light increases resolution because it has a shorter wavelength than visible light, and contrast is improved because fluorescing structures are visible against a black background.

Some cells—for example, the pathogen *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (soo-dō-mō´nas ā-roo-ji-nō´să)—and some cellular molecules (such as chlorophyll in photosynthetic organisms) are naturally



▲ **Figure 4.6 The light path in a dark-field microscope.** A dark-field stop prevents light from entering the specimen directly; only light rays that are scattered by the specimen reach the objective lens and can be seen. The resulting high-contrast image—a brightly lit specimen against a dark background—enhances resolution.

[2]After the French physicist Georges Nomarski, who invented the differential interference contrast microscope.

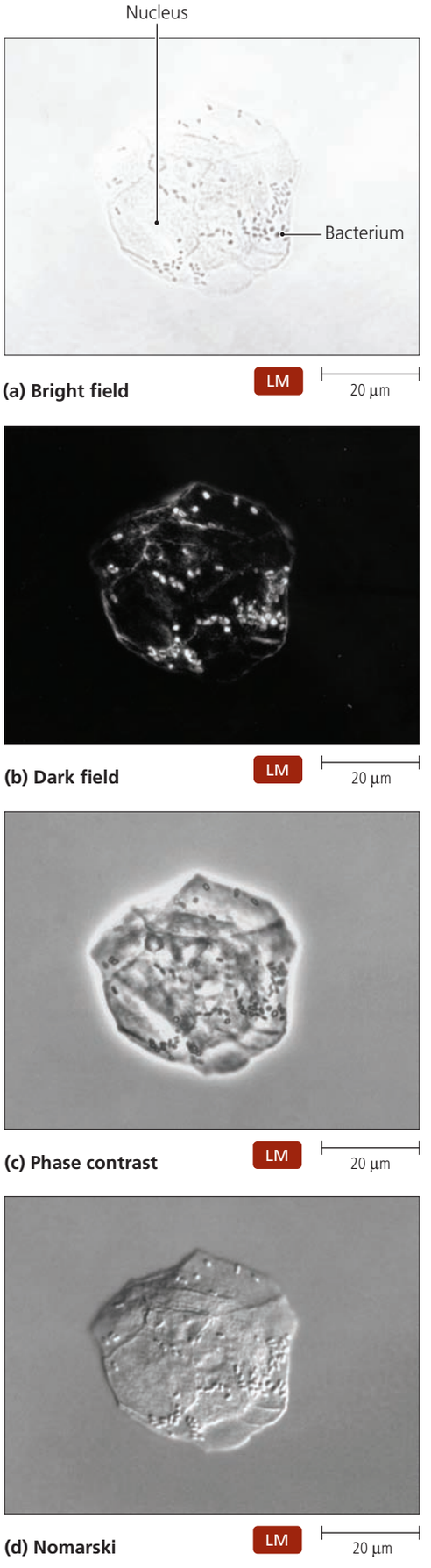


▲ Figure 4.7 Principles of phase microscopy. **(a)** Light rays that are in phase are aligned; their crests and troughs reinforce one another to produce a brighter image. Rays that are out of phase interfere with one another and produce a darker image. **(b)** Together, the regions of a specimen and a phase plate built into a phase objective lens slow some of the light rays such that they are 1/2 wavelength out of phase. These rays interfere with light rays that bypass the specimen, which produces contrast between the field and various regions of the specimen (see Figure 4.8c and d).

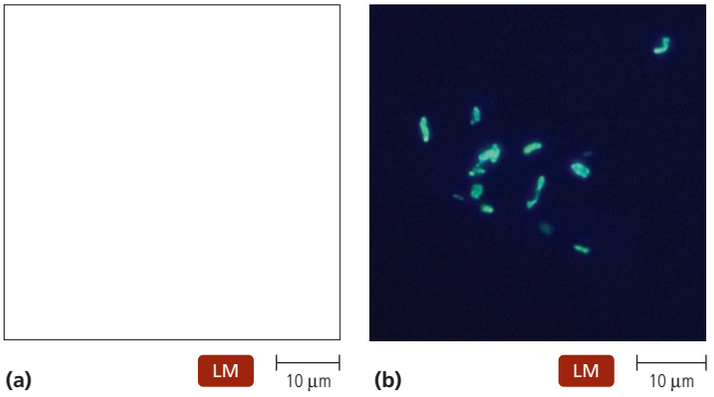
fluorescent. Other cells and cellular structures can be stained with fluorescent dyes. When these dyes are bombarded with ultraviolet light, they emit visible light and show up as bright orange, green, yellow, or other colors against a black background (see Figure 3.32b).

Some fluorescent dyes are specific for certain cells. For example, the dye fluorescein isothiocyanate attaches to cells of *Bacillus anthracis* (ba-sil´ŭs an-thrā´sis), the causative agent of anthrax, and appears apple green when viewed in a fluorescence microscope. Another fluorescent dye, auramine O, stains *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis; **Figure 4.9**).

Fluorescence microscopy is also used in a process called *immunofluorescence.* First, fluorescent dyes are covalently



▶ Figure 4.8 Four kinds of light microscopy. All four photos show the same human cheek cell and bacteria. **(a)** Bright-field microscopy reveals some internal structures. **(b)** Dark-field microscopy increases contrast between some internal structures and between the edges of the cell and the surrounding medium. **(c)** Phase-contrast microscopy provides greater resolution of internal structures. **(d)** Differential interference contrast (Nomarski) microscopy produces a three-dimensional effect.



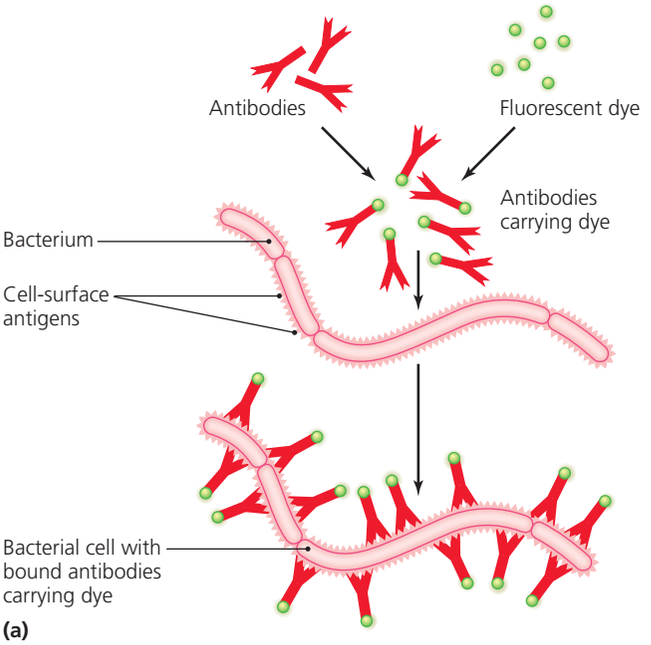
▲ **Figure 4.9 Fluorescence microscopy.** Fluorescent chemicals absorb invisible short-wavelength radiation and emit visible (longer-wavelength) radiation. **(a)** When viewed under normal illumination, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* cells stained with the fluorescent dye auramine O are invisible amid the mucus and debris in a sputum smear. **(b)** When the same smear is viewed under UV light, the bacteria fluoresce and are clearly visible.

linked to Y-shaped immune system proteins called *antibodies* **(Figure 4.10a)**. Given the opportunity, these dye-tagged antibodies will bind specifically to complementary-shaped *antigens*, which are portions of molecules that are present, for example, on the surface of microbial cells. When viewed under UV light, a microbial specimen that has bound dye-tagged antibodies becomes visible **(Figure 4.10b)**. In addition to identifying pathogens, including those that cause syphilis, rabies, and Lyme disease, scientists can use immunofluorescence to locate and make visible a variety of proteins of interest.

Confocal Microscopes

Confocal[3] **microscopes** also use fluorescent dyes or fluorescent antibodies, but these microscopes use ultraviolet lasers to illuminate the fluorescent chemicals in only a single plane that is no thicker than 1.0 µm; the rest of the specimen remains dark and out of focus. Visible light emitted by the dyes passes through a pinhole aperture that helps eliminate blurring that can occur with other types of microscopes and increases resolution by up to 40%. Each image from a confocal microscope is thus an "optical slice" through the specimen, as if it had been thinly cut. Once individual images are digitized, a computer is used to construct a three-dimensional representation, which can be rotated and viewed from any direction. Confocal microscopes have been particularly useful for examining the relationships among various organisms within complex microbial communities called biofilms (see **Highlight: Studying Biofilms in Plastic "Rocks"** on p. 104). Regular light microscopy cannot produce clear images of structures within a living biofilm, and removing surface layers from a biofilm would change the dynamics of a biofilm community. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Light Microscopy***

[3]From *coinciding focal* points of (laser) light.



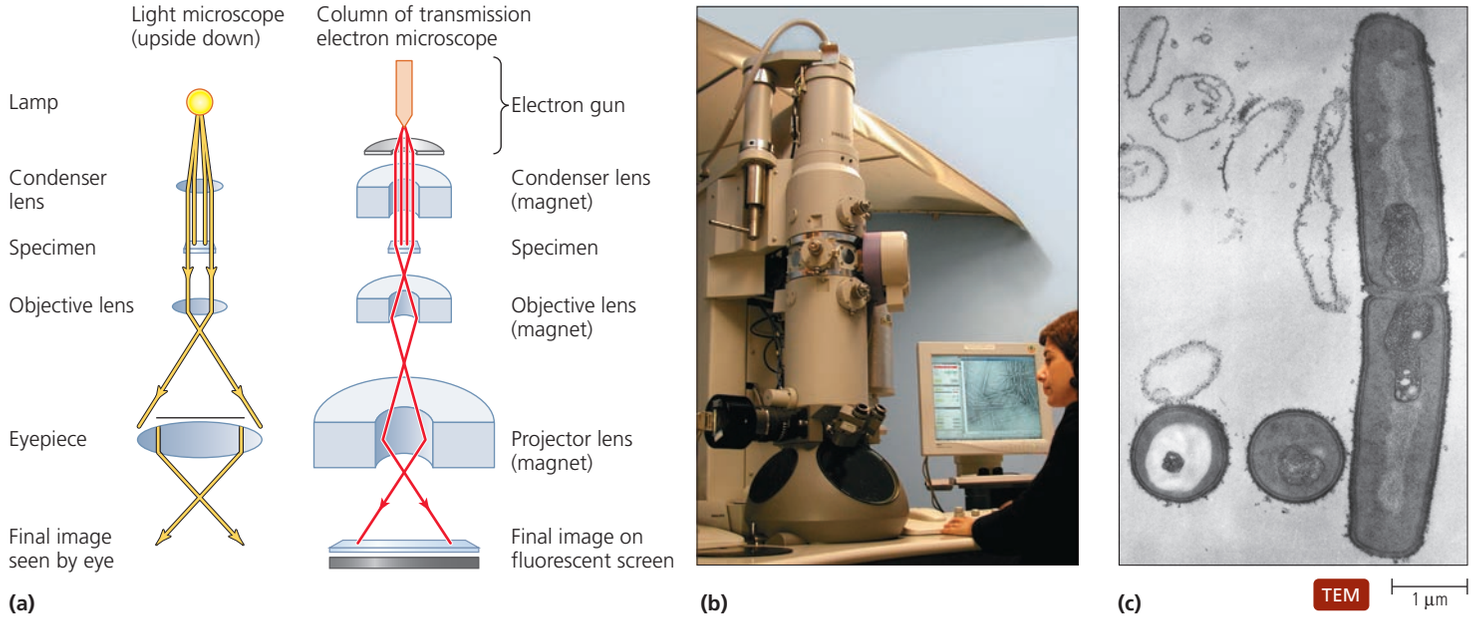
▲ **Figure 4.10 Immunofluorescence. (a)** After a fluorescent dye is covalently linked to an antibody, the dye-antibody combination binds to the antibody's target, making the target visible under fluorescent microscopy. **(b)** Immunofluorescent staining of *Yersinia pestis*, the causative agent of plague. The bacteria are brightly colored against a dark background.

Electron Microscopy

Learning Outcome

4.11 Contrast transmission electron microscopes with scanning electron microscopes in terms of how they work, the images they produce, and the advantages of each.

Even with the most expensive phase microscope using the best oil immersion lens with the highest numerical aperture, resolution is still limited by the wavelength of visible light. Because the shortest visible radiation (violet) has a wavelength of about 400 nm, structures closer together than about 200 nm cannot be distinguished using even the best light microscope. By contrast,



▲ Figure 4.11 A transmission electron microscope (TEM). (a) The path of electrons through a TEM, as compared to the path of light through a light microscope (at left, drawn upside down to facilitate the comparison). **(b)** TEMs are much larger than light microscopes. **(c)** Transmission electron image of a bacterium, *Bacillus subtilis*. A transmission electron micrograph reveals much internal detail not visible by light microscopy. *Why must air be evacuated from the column of an electron microscope?*

Figure 4.11 *Air would absorb electrons, so there would be no radiation to produce an image.*

electrons traveling as waves have wavelengths between 0.01 nm and 0.001 nm, which is one ten-thousandth to one hundred-thousandth the wavelength of visible light. The resolving power of electron microscopes is therefore much greater than that of light microscopes, and with greater resolving power comes the possibility of greater magnification.

Generally, electron microscopes magnify objects 10,000× to 100,000×, though millions of times magnification with good resolution is possible. Electron microscopes provide detailed views of the smallest bacteria, viruses, internal cellular structures, and even molecules and large atoms. Cellular structures that can be seen only by using electron microscopy are referred to as a cell's *ultrastructure.* Ultrastructural details cannot be made visible by light microscopy because they are too small to be resolved.

There are two general types of electron microscopes: *transmission electron microscopes* and *scanning electron microscopes.*

Transmission Electron Microscopes

A **transmission electron microscope (TEM)** generates a beam of electrons that ultimately produces an image on a fluorescent screen **(Figure 4.11a)**. The path of electrons is similar to the path of light in a light microscope. From their source, the electrons pass through the specimen, through magnetic fields (instead of glass lenses) that manipulate and focus the beam, and then onto a fluorescent screen that absorbs electrons, thereby changing some of their energy into visible light **(Figure 4.11b)**. Dense areas of the specimen block electrons, resulting in a dark area on the screen. In regions where the specimen is less dense, the screen fluoresces more brightly. As with light microscopy, contrast and resolution can be enhanced through the use of electron-dense stains, which are discussed later. The brightness of each region of the screen corresponds to the number of electrons striking it. Therefore, the image on the screen is composed of light and dark areas, much like a photographic negative.

The screen can be folded out of the way to enable the electrons to strike a photographic film, located in the base of the microscope. Prints made from the film are called *transmission electron micrographs* or *TEM images* **(Figure 4.11c)**. Such images can be colorized to emphasize certain features.

Matter, including air, absorbs electrons, so the column of a transmission electron microscope must be a vacuum, and the specimen must be very thin. Before thicker specimens such as whole cells can be examined, they must be dehydrated, embedded in plastic, and cut to a thickness of about 100 nm with a diamond or glass knife mounted in a slicing machine called an *ultramicrotome.* Such thin sections are placed on a small copper grid and inserted into the microscope through an air lock.

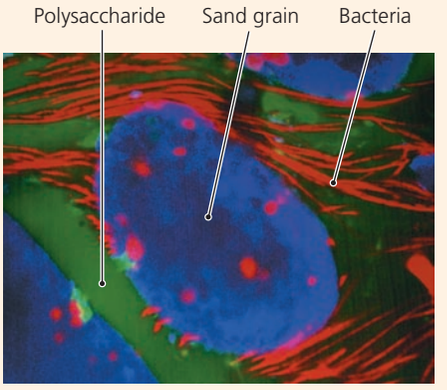
Because the vacuum and slicing of the specimens are required, transmission electron microscopes cannot be used to study living organisms. Dehydration and sectioning can also introduce shrinkage, distortion, and other *artifacts,* which are structures that appear in a TEM image but are not present in natural specimens.

HIGHLIGHT

STUDYING BIOFILMS IN PLASTIC "ROCKS"

Marine stromatolites are unique rock structures made up of calcium carbonate. The insides of these rock structures are teeming with bacterial communities organized into complex biofilms. These biofilms contain many different microorganisms, including cyanobacteria, aerobic heterotrophic bacteria, and sulfate-reducing bacteria.

To study how the tiny creatures in marine stromatolites interact with each other and their environment, researchers at the University of Southern California pulled samples of the biofilms out of the rock structures and fixed them in nontoxic resin. In some cases, specific sections of the microbial cells were stained using fluorescent probes, and then confocal microscopy was used to study cross sections of the communities. By embedding the bacteria in a resin while maintaining the biofilm structure, the researchers were able to watch the bacterial network in an almost natural state. This technique is versatile and can be used to study other microbial systems to gain further understanding of biofilm mechanics and composition.

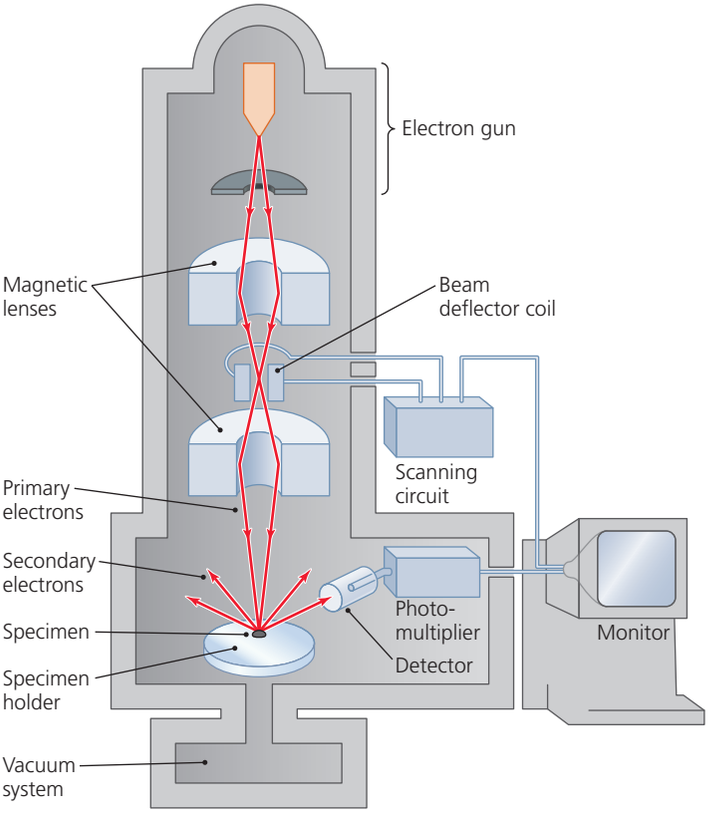


Marine stromatolite.

Scanning Electron Microscopes

A **scanning electron microscope (SEM)** also uses magnetic fields within a vacuum tube to manipulate a beam of electrons, called primary electrons **(Figure 4.12)**. However, rather than passing electrons through a specimen, the SEM rapidly focuses them back and forth across the specimen's surface, which has previously been coated with a metal such as platinum or gold. The primary electrons knock electrons off the surface of the coated specimen, and these scattered secondary electrons pass through a detector and a photomultiplier, producing an amplified signal that is displayed on a monitor. Typically, scanning microscopes are used to magnify up to 10,000× with a resolution of about 20 nm.

One advantage of scanning microscopy over transmission microscopy is that whole specimens can be observed because sectioning is not required. Scanning electron micrographs can be beautifully realistic and three-dimensional **(Figure 4.13)**. Two disadvantages of a scanning electron microscope are that it magnifies only the external surface of a specimen and that, like TEM, it requires a vacuum and thus can examine only dead organisms. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Electron Microscopy***



▲ **Figure 4.12 Scanning electron microscope (SEM).** The SEM uses magnetic lenses to focus a beam of primary electrons, which are scanned across the metal-coated surface of a specimen. Secondary electrons, knocked off the surface of the specimen by the primary electrons, are collected by a detector, and their signal is amplified and displayed on a monitor.

Probe Microscopy

Learning Outcome

4.12 Describe two variations of probe microscopes.

A relatively recent advance in microscopy utilizes minuscule, pointed electronic probes to magnify more than 100,000,000×. There are two variations of probe microscopes: *scanning tunneling microscopes* and *atomic force microscopes*.

Scanning Tunneling Microscopes

A **scanning tunneling microscope (STM)** passes a metallic probe, sharpened to end in a single atom, back and forth across and slightly above the surface of a specimen. Rather than scattering a beam of electrons into a detector, as in scanning electron microscopy, a scanning tunneling microscope measures the flow of electrons to and from the probe and the specimen's surface. The amount of electron flow, called a *tunneling current*, is directly proportional to the distance from the probe to the specimen's surface. A scanning tunneling microscope can measure distances as small as 0.01 nm and reveal details on the surface of a specimen at the atomic level **(Figure 4.14a)**. A requirement for scanning tunneling microscopy is that the specimen be electrically conductive.

Atomic Force Microscopes

An **atomic force microscope (AFM)** also uses a pointed probe, but it traverses the tip of the probe lightly on the surface of the specimen rather than at a distance. This might be likened to the way a person reads Braille. Deflection of a laser beam aimed at the probe's tip measures vertical movements, which when translated by a computer reveals the atomic topography.

Unlike tunneling microscopes, atomic force microscopes can magnify specimens that do not conduct electrons. They can also magnify living specimens because neither an electron beam nor a vacuum is required **(Figure 4.14b)**. Researchers have used these microscopes to magnify the surfaces of bacteria, viruses, proteins, and amino acids. Recent studies using atomic force microscopes have examined single living bacteria in three dimensions while they are dividing.

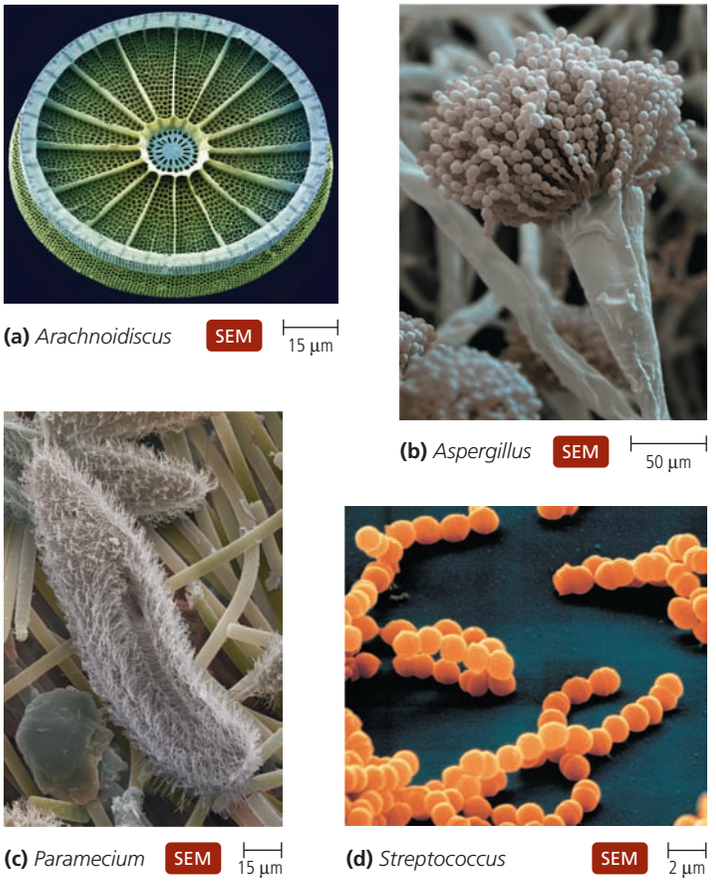
Table 4.2 summarizes the features of the various types of microscopes.

Staining

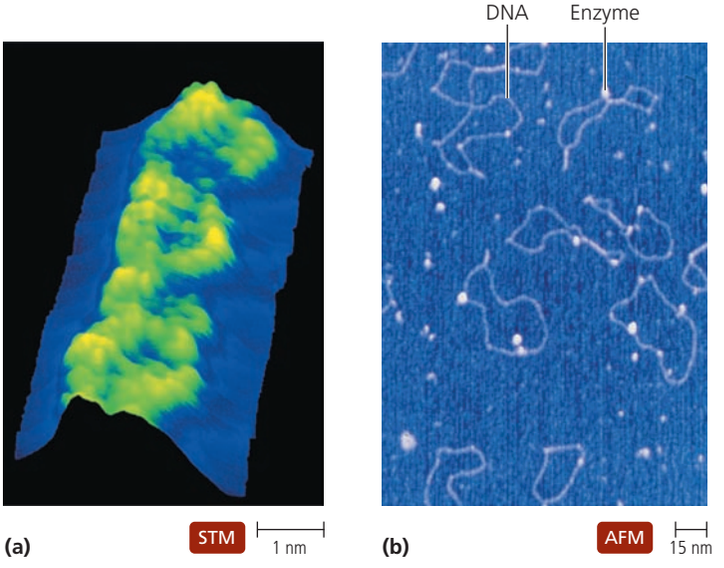
Earlier we discussed the difficulty of resolving two distant white golf balls viewed against a white background. If the balls were painted black, they could be distinguished more readily from the background and from one another. This illustrates why staining increases contrast and resolution.

Most microorganisms are colorless and difficult to view with bright-field microscopes. Microscopists use stains to make microorganisms and their parts more visible because stains increase contrast between structures and between a specimen and its background. Electron microscopy also requires that specimens be treated with stains or coatings to enhance contrast.

In this section we examine how scientists prepare specimens for staining and how stains work, and we consider seven kinds of stains used for light microscopy. We conclude with a look at staining for electron microscopy.

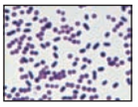
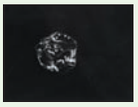
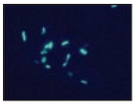
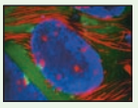
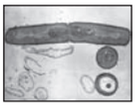
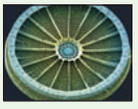
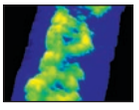
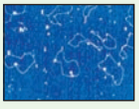


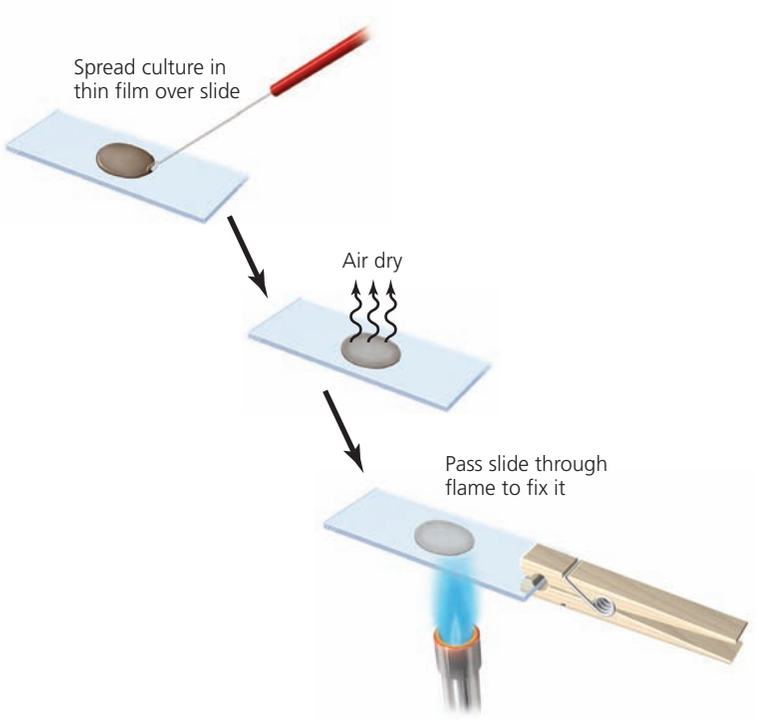
▲ **Figure 4.13 SEM images.** **(a)** *Arachnoidiscus*, a marine diatom (alga). **(b)** *Aspergillus*, a fungus. **(c)** *Paramecium*, a unicellular "animal" on top of rod-shaped bacteria. **(d)** *Streptococcus*, a bacterium.



▲ **Figure 4.14 Probe microscopy.** **(a)** Scanning tunneling microscopes reveal surface detail; in this case, three turns of a DNA double helix. **(b)** Plasmid DNA being digested by an enzyme, viewed through atomic force microscopy.

TABLE 4.2 Comparison of Types of Microscopes

Type of Microscope	Typical Image	Description of Image	Special Features	Typical Uses
Light microscopes		Useful magnification 1× to 2000×; resolution to 200 nm	Use visible light; shorter, blue wavelengths provide better resolution	
Bright field		Colored or clear specimen against bright background	Simple to use; relatively inexpensive; stained specimens often required	To observe killed stained specimens and naturally colored live ones; also used to count microorganisms
Dark field		Bright specimen against dark background	Uses a special filter in the condenser that prevents light from directly passing through a specimen; only light scattered by the specimen is visible	To observe living, colorless, unstained organisms
Phase contrast		Specimen has light and dark areas	Uses a special condenser that splits a polarized light beam into two beams, one of which passes through the specimen, and one of which bypasses the specimen; the beams are then rejoined before entering the oculars; contrast in the image results from the interactions of the two beams	To observe internal structures of living microbes
Differential interference contrast (Nomarski)		Image appears three-dimensional	Uses two separate beams instead of a split beam; false color and a three-dimensional effect result from interactions of light beams and lenses; no staining required	To observe internal structures of living microbes
Fluorescence		Brightly colored fluorescent structures against dark background	An ultraviolet light source causes fluorescent natural chemicals or dyes to emit visible light	To localize specific chemicals or structures; used as an accurate and quick diagnostic tool for detection of pathogens
Confocal		Single plane of structures or cells that have been specifically stained with fluorescent dyes	Uses a laser to fluoresce only one plane of the specimen at a time	Detailed observation of structures of cells within communities
Electron microscopes		Typical magnification 1000× to 100,000×; resolution to 0.001 nm	Use electrons traveling as waves with short wavelengths; require specimens to be in a vacuum, so cannot be used to examine living microbes	
Transmission		Monotone, two-dimensional, highly magnified images; may be color enhanced	Produces two-dimensional image of ultrastructure of cells	To observe internal ultrastructural detail of cells and observation of viruses and small bacteria
Scanning		Monotone, three-dimensional, surface images; may be color enhanced	Produces three-dimensional view of the surface of microbes and cellular structures	To observe the surface details of structures
Probe microscopes		Magnification greater than 100,000,000× with resolving power greater than that of electron microscopes	Uses microscopic probes that move over the surface of a specimen	
Scanning tunneling		Individual molecules and atoms visible	Measures the flow of electrical current between the tip of a probe and the specimen to produce an image of the surface at atomic level	To observe the surface of objects; provide extremely fine detail, high magnification, and great resolution
Atomic force		Individual molecules and atoms visible	Measures the deflection of a laser beam aimed at the tip of a probe that travels across the surface of the specimen	To observe living specimens at the molecular and atomic levels



▲ **Figure 4.15 Preparing a specimen for staining.** Microorganisms are spread in liquid across the surface of a slide using a circular motion. After drying in the air, the smear is passed through the flame of a Bunsen burner to fix the cells to the glass. Alternatively, chemical fixation can be used. *Why must a smear be fixed to the slide?*

Figure 4.15 *Fixation causes the specimen to adhere to the glass so that it does not easily wash off during staining.*

Preparing Specimens for Staining

Learning Outcome

4.13 Explain the purposes of a smear, heat fixation, and chemical fixation in the preparation of a specimen for microscopic viewing.

Many investigations of microorganisms, especially those seeking to identify pathogens, begin with light microscopic observation of stained specimens. **Staining** simply means coloring specimens with stains, which are also called dyes.

Before microbiologists stain microorganisms, they must place them on and then firmly attach them to a microscope slide. Typically, this involves making a *smear* and *fixing* it to the slide **(Figure 4.15)**. If the organisms are growing in a liquid, a small drop is spread across the surface of the slide. If the organisms are growing on a solid surface, such as an agar plate, then they are mixed into a small drop of water on the slide. Either way, the thin film of organisms on the slide is called a **smear.**

The smear is air-dried and then attached or fixed to the surface of the slide. In **heat fixation,** developed more than a hundred years ago by Robert Koch, the slide is gently heated by passing the slide, smear up, through the flame of a Bunsen burner. Alternatively, **chemical fixation** involves applying a chemical such as methyl alcohol to the smear for one minute. Desiccation (drying) and fixation kill the microorganisms, attach them firmly to the slide, and generally preserve their shape and size. It is important to smear and fix specimens properly so that they are not lost during staining.

Specimens prepared for electron microscopy are also dried because water vapor from a wet specimen would stop the electron beam. As we have seen, transmission electron microscopy requires that the desiccated sample also be sliced very thin, generally before staining. Specimens for scanning electron microscopy are coated, not stained.

Principles of Staining

Learning Outcome

4.14 Describe the uses of acidic and basic dyes, mentioning ionic bonding and pH.

Dyes used as microbiological stains for light microscopy are usually salts. A salt is composed of a positively charged *cation* and a negatively charged *anion.* At least one of the two ions in the molecular makeup of dyes is colored; this colored portion of a dye is known as the *chromophore.* Chromophores bind to chemicals via covalent, ionic, or hydrogen bonds. For example, methylene blue chloride is composed of a cationic chromophore, methylene blue, and a chloride anion. Because methylene blue is positively charged, it ionically bonds to negatively charged molecules in cells, including DNA and many proteins. In contrast, anionic dyes, for example, eosin, bind to positively charged molecules, such as some amino acids.

Anionic chromophores are also called **acidic dyes** because they stain alkaline structures and work best in acidic (low pH) environments. Positively charged, cationic chromophores are called **basic dyes** because they combine with and stain acidic structures; further, they work best under basic (higher pH) conditions. In microbiology, basic dyes are used more commonly than acidic dyes because most cells are negatively charged. Acidic dyes are used in negative staining, which is discussed shortly.

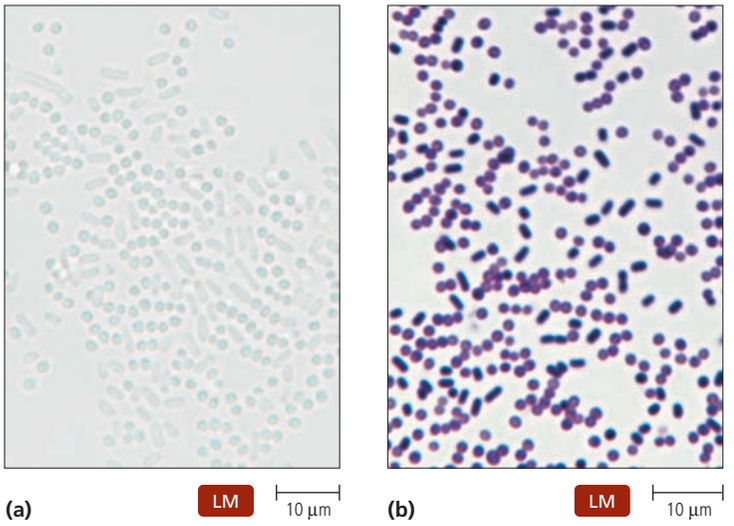
Some stains do not form bonds with cellular chemicals but rather function because of their solubility characteristics. For example, Sudan black selectively stains membranes because it is lipid soluble and accumulates in phospholipid bilayers.

Simple Stains

Learning Outcome

4.15 Describe the simple, Gram, acid-fast, and endospore staining procedures.

Simple stains are composed of a single basic dye, such as crystal violet, safranin, or methylene blue. They are "simple" because they involve no more than soaking the smear in the dye for 30–60 seconds and then rinsing off the slide with water. (A properly fixed specimen will remain attached to the slide despite this treatment.) After carefully blotting the slide dry, the microbiologist observes the smear under the microscope.



▲ **Figure 4.16 Simple stains.** Simply and quickly performed, simple stains increase contrast and allow determination of size, shape, and arrangement of cells. **(a)** Unstained *Escherichia coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus*. **(b)** Same mixture stained with crystal violet. Note that all cells, no matter their type, stain almost the same color with a simple stain because only one dye is used.

Simple stains are used to determine size, shape, and arrangement of cells **(Figure 4.16)**.

Differential Stains

Most stains used in microbiology are **differential stains,** which use more than one dye so that different cells, chemicals, or structures can be distinguished when microscopically examined. Common differential stains are the *Gram stain*, the *acid-fast stain*, the *endospore stain*, *Gomori methenamine silver stain*, and *hematoxylin and eosin stain*.

Gram Stain

In 1884, the Danish scientist Hans Christian Gram developed the most frequently used differential stain, which now bears his name. The **Gram stain** differentiates between two large groups of microorganisms: purple-staining Gram-positive cells and pink-staining Gram-negative cells. These cells differ significantly in the chemical and physical structures of their cell walls (see Figure 3.14). Typically, a Gram stain is the first step a medical laboratory technologist performs to identify bacterial pathogens.

Let's examine the Gram staining procedure as it was originally developed and as it is typically performed today, over a hundred years later. For the purposes of our discussion, we'll assume that a smear has been made on a slide and heat fixed and that the smear contains both Gram-positive and Gram-negative colorless bacteria. The classical Gram staining procedure has the following four steps **(Figure 4.17)**:

1. Flood the smear with the basic dye crystal violet for 1 minute and then rinse with water. Crystal violet, which is called the **primary stain,** colors all cells.
2. Flood the smear with an iodine solution for 1 minute and then rinse with water. Iodine is a **mordant,** a substance that binds to a dye and makes it less soluble. After this step, all cells remain purple.
3. Rinse the smear with a solution of ethanol and acetone for 10–30 seconds and then rinse with water. This solution, which acts as a **decolorizing agent,** breaks down the thin cell wall of Gram-negative cells, allowing the stain and mordant to be washed away; these cells are now colorless. Gram-positive cells, with their thicker cell walls, remain purple.
4. Flood the smear with safranin for 1 minute and then rinse with water. This red **counterstain** provides a contrasting color to the primary stain. Although all types of cells may absorb safranin, the resulting pink color is masked by the darker purple dye already in Gram-positive cells. After this step, Gram-negative cells now appear pink, whereas Gram-positive cells remain purple.

After the final step, the slide is blotted dry in preparation for microscopy.

The Gram procedure works best with young cells. Older Gram-positive cells bleach more easily than younger cells and can therefore stain pink, which makes them appear to be Gram-negative cells. Therefore, smears for Gram staining should come from freshly grown bacteria.

Microscopists have developed minor variations on Gram's original procedure. For example, 95% ethanol may be used to decolorize instead of Gram's ethanol-acetone mixture. In a three-step variation, safranin dissolved in ethanol simultaneously decolorizes and counterstains.

Acid-Fast Stain

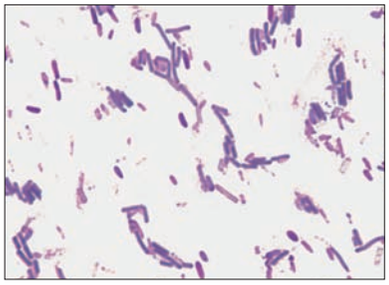
The **acid-fast stain** is another important differential stain because it stains cells of the genera *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia* (nō-kar´dē-ă), which cause many human diseases, including tuberculosis, leprosy, and other lung and skin infections. Cells of these bacteria have large amounts of waxy lipid in their cell walls, so they do not readily stain with the Gram stain.

Modern microbiological laboratories commonly use a variation of the acid-fast stain developed by Franz Ziehl (1857–1926) and Friedrich Neelsen (1854–1894) in 1883. Their procedure is as follows:

1. Cover the smear with a small piece of tissue paper to retain the dye during the procedure.
2. Flood the slide with the red primary stain, carbolfuchsin for several minutes while warming it over steaming water. In this procedure, heat is used to drive the stain through the waxy wall and into the cell, where it remains trapped.
3. Remove the tissue paper, cool the slide, and then decolorize the smear by rinsing it with a solution of hydrochloric acid (pH < 1.0) and alcohol. The bleaching action of acid-alcohol removes color from both non-acid-fast cells and the background. Acid-fast cells retain their red color because the acid cannot penetrate the waxy wall. The name of the

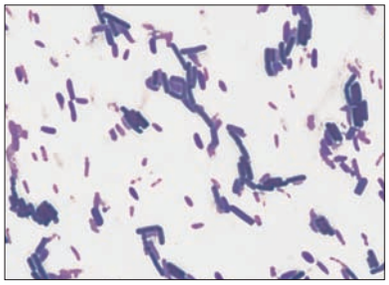
1 Slide is flooded with crystal violet for 1 min, then rinsed with water.

Result: All cells are stained purple.



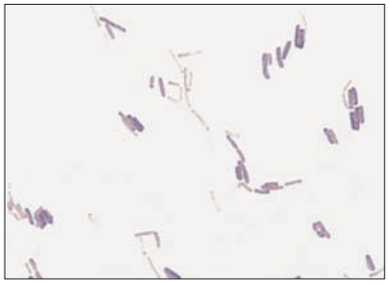
2 Slide is flooded with iodine for 1 min, then rinsed with water.

Result: Iodine acts as a mordant; all cells remain purple.



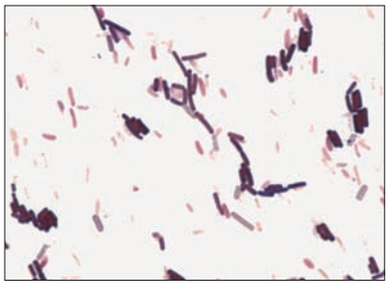
3 Slide is flooded with solution of ethanol and acetone for 10–30 sec, then rinsed with water.

Result: Smear is decolorized; Gram-positive cells remain purple, but Gram-negative cells are now colorless.

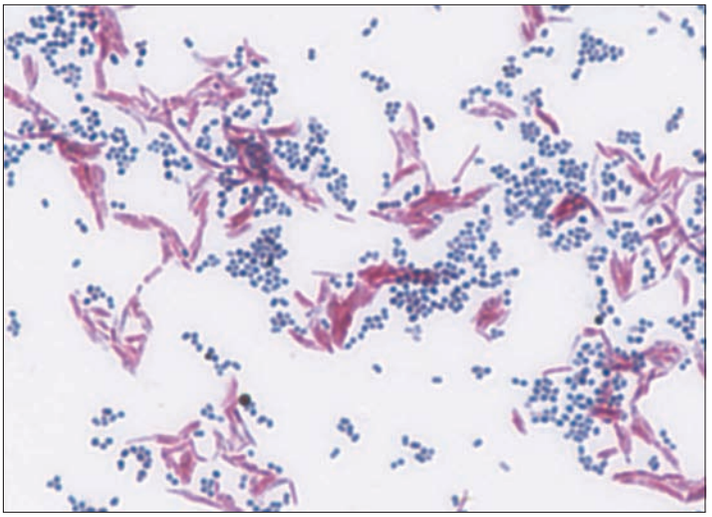


4 Slide is flooded with safranin for 1 min, then rinsed with water and blotted dry.

Result: Gram-positive cells remain purple, Gram-negative cells are pink.



▲ **Figure 4.17 The Gram staining procedure.** A specimen is smeared and fixed to a slide. The classical procedure consists of four steps. Gram-positive cells (in this case, *Bacillus cereus*) remain purple throughout the procedure; Gram-negative cells (here, *Escherichia coli*) end up pink.



▲ **Figure 4.18 Ziehl-Neelsen acid-fast stain.** Acid-fast cells such as these rod-shaped *Mycobacterium bovis* cells stain pink or red. Non-acid-fast cells—in this case, *Staphylococcus*—stain blue. *Why isn't the Gram stain utilized to stain Mycobacterium?*

Figure 4.18 *Cell walls of Mycobacterium are composed of waxy materials that repel the water-based dyes of the Gram stain.*

procedure is derived from this step; that is, the cells are colorfast in acid.

4. Counterstain with methylene blue, which stains only bleached, non-acid-fast cells.

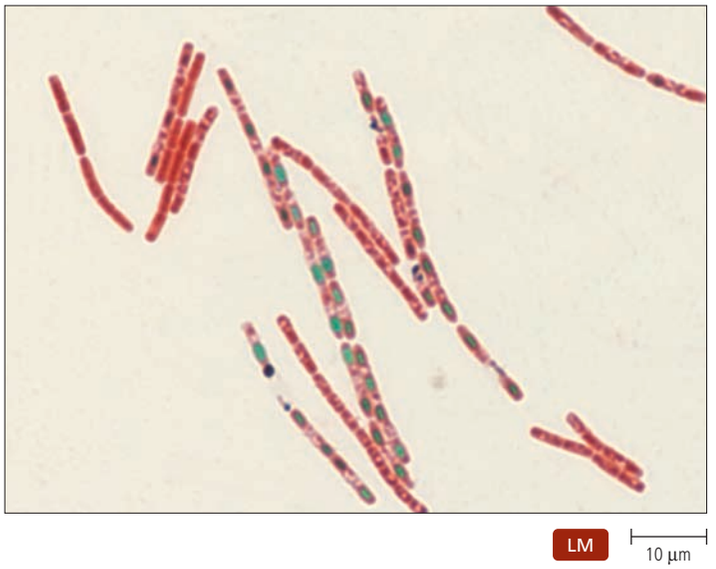
The Ziehl-Neelsen acid-fast staining procedure results in pink acid-fast cells, which can be differentiated from blue non-acid-fast cells, including human cells and tissue **(Figure 4.18)**. The presence of *acid-fast bacilli (AFBs)* in sputum is indicative of mycobacterial infection.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

In what ways are the Gram stain and the acid-fast staining procedures similar? In the acid-fast procedure, what takes the place of Gram's iodine mordant?

Endospore Stain

Some bacteria—notably those of the genera *Bacillus* and *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm), which contain species that cause such diseases as anthrax, gangrene, and tetanus—produce **endospores.** These dormant, highly resistant cells form inside the cytoplasm of the bacteria and can survive environmental extremes such as desiccation, heat, and harmful chemicals. Endospores cannot be stained by normal staining procedures because their walls are practically impermeable to all chemicals. The **Schaeffer-Fulton**



▲ **Figure 4.19** **Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain of *Bacillus anthracis*.** The nearly impermeable spore wall retains the green dye during decolorization. Vegetative cells, which lack spores, pick up the counterstain and appear red. *Why don't the spores stain red as well?*

Figure 4.19 *Heat from steam is used to drive the green primary stain into the endospores. Counterstaining is performed at room temperature, and the thick, impermeable walls of the endospores resist the counterstain.*

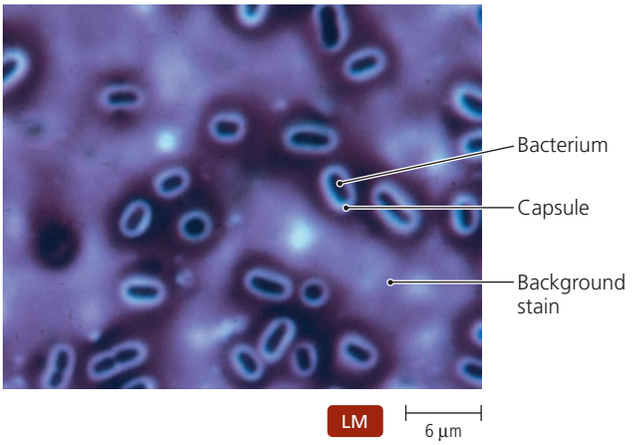
endospore stain uses heat to drive the primary stain, *malachite green*, into the endospore. After cooling, the slide is decolorized with water and counterstained with safranin. This staining procedure results in green-stained endospores and red-colored vegetative cells **(Figure 4.19)**.

Histological Stains

Laboratory technicians use two popular stains to stain histological specimens, that is, tissue samples. *Gomori*[4] *methenamine silver (GMS) stain* is commonly used to screen for the presence of fungi and the locations of carbohydrates in tissues. *Hematoxylin and eosin (HE) stain,* which involves applying the basic dye hematoxylin and the acidic dye eosin, is used to delineate many features of histological specimens, such as the presence of cancer cells.

Special Stains

Special stains are simple stains designed to reveal special microbial structures. There are three types of special stains: *negative stains, flagellar stains,* and *fluorescent stains* (which we already discussed in the section on fluorescent microscopy).



▲ **Figure 4.20** **Negative (capsule) stain of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*.** Notice that the acidic dye stains the background and does not penetrate the capsule.

Negative (Capsule) Stain

Most dyes used to stain bacterial cells, such as crystal violet, methylene blue, malachite green, and safranin, are basic dyes. These dyes stain cells by attaching to negatively charged molecules within them.

Acidic dyes, by contrast, are repulsed by the negative charges on the surface of cells and therefore do not stain them. Such stains are called **negative stains** because they stain the background and leave cells colorless. Eosin and nigrosin are examples of acidic dyes used for negative staining. A counterstain may be added to color the cells.

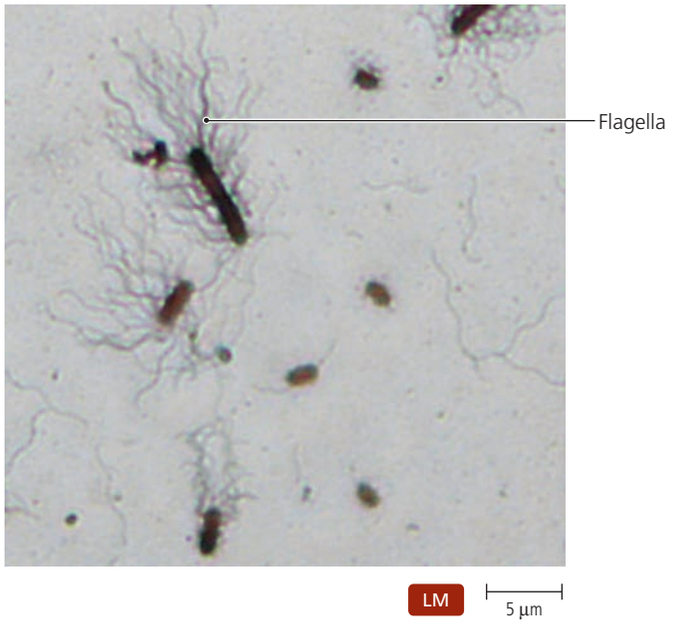
Negative stains are used primarily to reveal the presence of negatively charged bacterial capsules. Therefore, they are also called **capsule stains.** Encapsulated cells appear to have a halo surrounding them **(Figure 4.20)**.

Flagellar Stain

Bacterial flagella are extremely thin and thus normally invisible with light microscopy, but their presence, number, and arrangement are important in identifying some species, including some pathogens. Flagellar stains, such as pararosaniline and carbolfuchsin, and mordants, such as tannic acid and potassium alum, are applied in a series of steps. These molecules bind to the flagella, increase their diameter, and change their color, all of which increase contrast and make them visible **(Figure 4.21)**.

Stains used for light microscopy are summarized in Table 4.3. **Beneficial Microbes: Glowing Viruses** on p. 112 illustrates a unique kind of stain that uses viruses to stain particular strains of bacteria that are then viewed through a fluorescent microscope.

[4]Named for George Gomori, a noted Hungarian American histologist.



▲ **Figure 4.21 Flagellar stain of *Proteus vulgaris*.** Various bacteria have different numbers and arrangements of flagella, features that might be important in identifying some species. *How can the flagellar arrangement shown here be described?*

Figure 4.21 *Peritrichous.*

Staining for Electron Microscopy

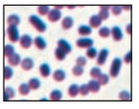
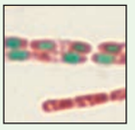
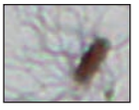
Learning Outcome

4.16 Explain how stains used for electron microscopy differ from those used for light microscopy.

Laboratory technicians increase contrast and resolution for transmission electron microscopy by using stains, just as they do for light microscopy. However, stains used for transmission electron microscopy are not colored dyes but instead chemicals containing atoms of heavy metals, such as lead, osmium, tungsten, and uranium, which absorb electrons. Electron-dense stains may bind to molecules within specimens, or they may stain the background. The latter type of negative staining is used to provide contrast for extremely small specimens, such as viruses and molecules.

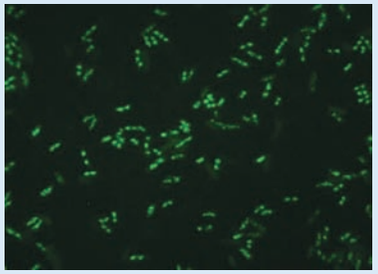
Stains for electron microscopy can be general in that they stain most objects to some degree, or they may be highly specific. For example, osmium tetroxide (O_sO_4) has an affinity for lipids and is thus used to enhance the contrast of membranes. Electron-dense stains can also be linked to antibodies to provide an even greater degree of staining specificity because antibodies bind only to their specific target molecules. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Staining***

TABLE 4.3 Some Stains Used for Light Microscopy

Type of Stain	Examples	Results	Typical Images	Representative Uses
Simple stains (use a single dye)	Crystal violet Methylene blue	Uniform purple stain Uniform blue stain		Reveals size, morphology, and arrangement of cells
Differential stains (use two or more dyes to differentiate between cells or structures)	Gram stain	Gram-positive cells are purple; Gram-negative cells are pink		Differentiates Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, which is typically the first step in their identification
	Ziehl-Neelsen acid-fast stain	Pink to red acid-fast cells and blue non-acid-fast cells		Distinguishes the genera *Mycobacterium* and *Nocardia* from other bacteria
	Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain	Green endospores and pink to red vegetative cells		Highlights the presence of endospores produced by species in the genera *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*
Special stains	Negative stain for capsules	Background is dark, cells unstained or stained with simple stain		Reveals bacterial capsules
	Flagellar stain	Bacterial flagella become visible		Allows determination of number and location of bacterial flagella

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

GLOWING VIRUSES



Fluorescent phages light up bacteria.

A bacteriophage is a virus that inserts its DNA into a bacterium. Commonly called a phage, it adheres only to a select bacterial strain for which each phage type has a specific adhesion factor. Many phages are so specialized for their particular bacterial strain that scientists have used phages to identify and classify bacteria. Such identification is called *phage typing.*

Scientists at San Diego State University have taken phage specificity a step further. They successfully linked a fluorescent dye to the DNA of phages of the bacterium *Salmonella* and used the phages to detect and identify *Salmonella* species. Such fluorescent phages rapidly and accurately detect specific strains of *Salmonella* in mixed bacterial cultures.

Fluorescent phages have advantages over fluorescent antibodies: unlike antibodies, phages are not metabolized by bacteria. Phages are also more stable over time and are not as sensitive to vagaries in temperature, pH, and ionic strength. Further, fluorescent phages have a long shelf life; they protect the fluorescent dye inside their phage coat until the dyed DNA is injected.

There are numerous uses for test kits using fluorescent phages. Environmental scientists could use them to detect bacterial contamination of streams and lakes, food processors could identify potentially fatal *Escherichia coli* strain O157:H7 in meat and vegetables, or homeland security agents could positively establish the presence or absence of bacteria used for biological warfare. Antibody-based kits frequently failed to accurately detect *Bacillus anthracis* used in the 2001 terrorist attacks. Fluorescent phage field kits should be much more robust and precise.

Classification and Identification of Microorganisms

Learning Outcome

4.17 Discuss the purposes of classification and identification of organisms.

Biologists classify organisms for several reasons: to bring a sense of order and organization to the variety and diversity of living things, to enhance communication, to make predictions about the structure and function of similar organisms, and to uncover and understand potential evolutionary connections. They sort organisms on the basis of mutual similarities into nonoverlapping groups called **taxa.**[5] **Taxonomy**[6] is the science of classifying and naming organisms. Taxonomy consists of *classification,* which is the assigning of organisms to taxa based on similarities; *nomenclature,* which is concerned with the rules of naming organisms; and *identification,* which is the practical science of determining that an isolated individual or population belongs to a particular taxon. In this book we concentrate on classification and identification.

Because all members of any given taxon share certain common features, taxonomy enables scientists both to organize large amounts of information about organisms and to make predictions based on knowledge of similar organisms. For example, if one member of a taxon is important in recycling nitrogen in the environment, it is likely that others in the group will play a similar ecological role. Similarly, a clinician might suggest a treatment against one pathogen based on what has been effective against another pathogen in the same taxon.

Identification of organisms is an essential part of taxonomy because it enables scientists to communicate effectively and be confident that they are discussing the same organism. Further, identification is often essential for treating groups of diseases, such as meningitis and pneumonia, which can be caused by pathogens as different as fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

In this section we examine the historical basis of taxonomy, consider modern advances in this field and briefly consider various taxonomic methods. This chapter also presents a general overview of the taxonomy of prokaryotes (which are considered in greater detail in Chapter 11); of animals, protozoa, fungi, and algae (Chapter 12); and of viruses, viroids, and prions (Chapter 13).

Linnaeus and Taxonomic Categories

Learning Outcomes

4.18 Discuss the difficulties in defining species of microorganisms.
4.19 List the hierarchy of taxa from general to specific.
4.20 Define binomial nomenclature.
4.21 Describe a few modifications of the Linnaean system of taxonomy.

Our current system of taxonomy began in 1753 with the publication of *Species Plantarum* by the Swedish botanist Carolus Linnaeus (1707–1778). Until his time, the names of organisms were often strings of descriptive terms that varied from country

[5]From Greek *taxis*, meaning "order."
[6]From *taxis* and Greek *nomos*, meaning "rule."

to country and from one scientist to another. Linnaeus provided a system that standardized the naming and classification of organisms based on characteristics they have in common. He grouped similar organisms that can successfully interbreed into categories called **species.**

The definition of *species* as "a group of organisms that interbreed to produce viable offspring" works relatively well for more complex, sexually reproducing organisms, but it is not satisfactory for asexual organisms, including most microorganisms. As a result, some scientists define a microbial species as a collection of *strains*—populations of cells that arose from a single cell—that share many stable properties, differ from other strains, and evolve as a group. Alternatively, biologists define a microbial species as cells that share at least 70% common sequences of DNA. Not surprisingly, these definitions sometimes result in disagreements and inconsistencies in the classification of microbial life. Some researchers question whether microbes exist as unique species at all.

In Linnaeus's system, which forms the basis of modern taxonomy, similar species are grouped into **genera**[7] and similar genera into still larger taxonomic categories. That is, genera sharing common features are grouped together to form **families;** similar families are grouped into **orders;** orders are grouped into **classes;** classes into **phyla;**[8] and phyla into **kingdoms** **(Figure 4.22)**.

All these categories, including species and genera, are taxa, which are hierarchical; that is, each successive taxon has a broader description than the preceding one, and each taxon includes all the taxa beneath it. The rules of nomenclature require that all taxa have Latin or Latinized names, in part because the language of science during Linnaeus's time was Latin and in part because using Latin ensures that no country or ethnic group has priority in the language of taxonomy. The name *Chondrus crispus* (kon´drŭs krisp´ŭs) describes the exact same algal species all over the world despite the fact that in England its common name is Irish moss, in Ireland it is carragheen, in North America it is curly moss, and it isn't really a moss at all!

When new microscopic, genetic, or biochemical techniques identify new or more detailed characteristics of organisms, a taxon may be split into two or more taxa. Alternatively, several taxa may be lumped together into a single taxon. For example, the genus "*Diplococcus*" has been united (synonymized) with the genus *Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs), and the name *Diplococcus pneumoniae* (nū-mō´nē-ī) has been changed to reflect this synonymy—to *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

Linnaeus assigned each species a descriptive name consisting of its genus name and a **specific epithet.** The genus name is always a noun, and it is written first and capitalized. The specific epithet always contains only lowercase letters and is usually an adjective. Both names, together called a *binomial,* are either printed in italics or underlined. Because the Linnaean system assigns two names to every organism, it is said to use **binomial**[9] **nomenclature.**

Consider the following examples of binomials. *Enterococcus faecalis* (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs fē-kā´lis)[10] is a fecal bacterium. Whereas *Enterococcus faecium* (fē-sē´ŭm) is in the same genus, it is a different species because of certain differing characteristics, so it is given a different specific epithet. Humans are classified as *Homo sapiens* (hō´mō sā´pē-enz); the genus name means "man," and the specific epithet means "wise." The genus *Homo* contains no other living species, but scientists have assigned some fossil remains to *Homo neanderthalensis* (nē-an´der-thol-en´sis).

Note that even though binomials are often descriptive of an organism, sometimes they can be misleading. For instance, *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flu-en´zī) does not cause influenza. In some cases, binomials honor people. Examples include *Pasteurella haemolytica* (pas-ter-el´ă hē-mō-lit´i-kă), a bacterium named after the microbiologist Louis Pasteur; *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō-lē), a bacterium named after the physician Theodor Escherich (1857–1911); and *Izziella abbottiae* (iz-ē-el´lă ab´ot-tē-ī), a marine alga named after the phycologist and taxonomist Isabella Abbott (1919–2010).

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Examine the binomials of the species discussed in this section. What do the genus names and specific epithets indicate about the organisms?

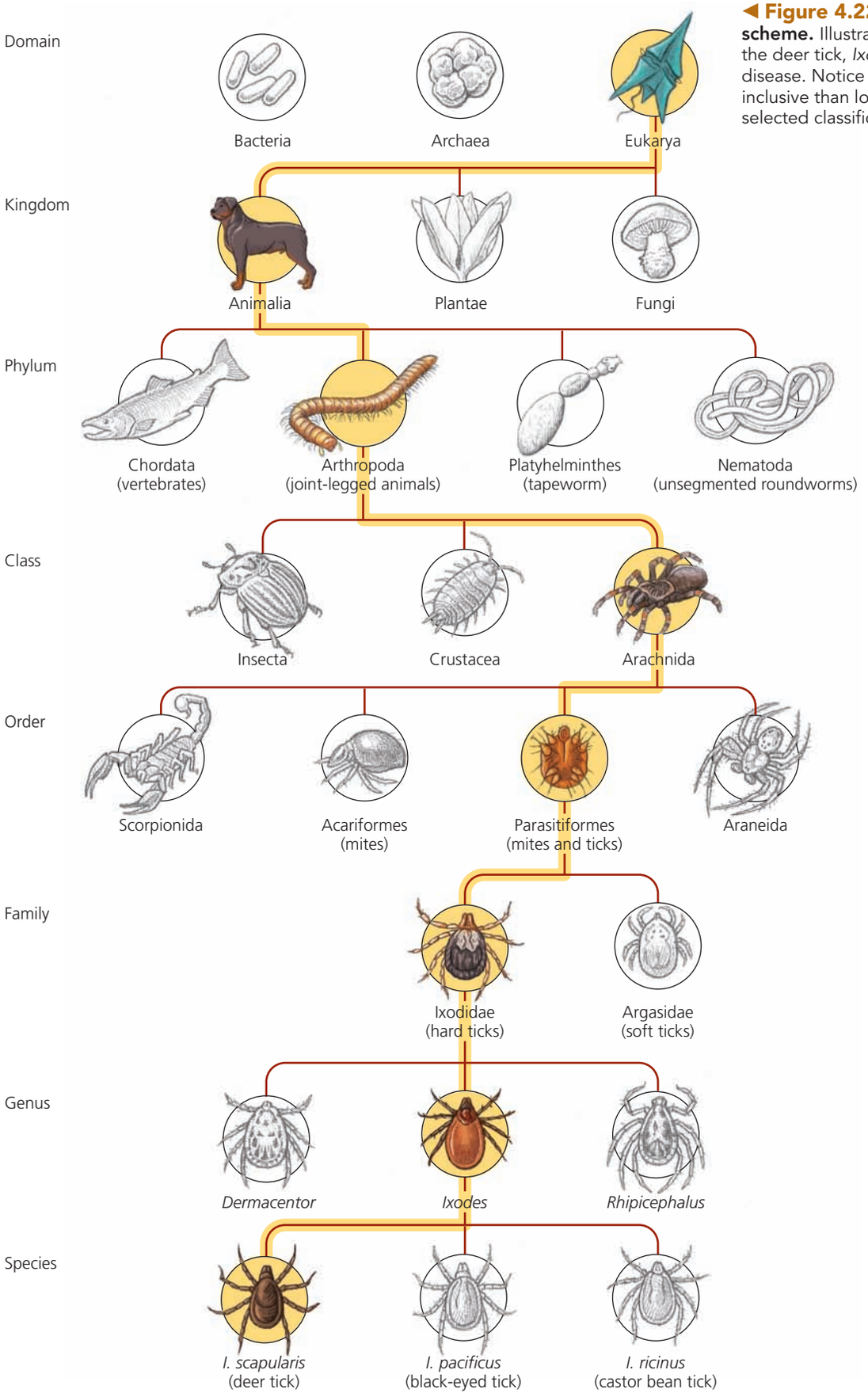
Most scientists still use the Linnaean system today, though significant modifications have been adopted. For example, scientists sometimes use additional categories, such as tribes, sections, subfamilies, and subspecies.[11] Further, Linnaeus divided all organisms into only two kingdoms (Plantae and Animalia), and he did not know of the existence of viruses. As scientists learned more about organisms, they adopted taxonomic schemes to reflect their advances in knowledge. For example, a widely accepted taxonomic approach was based on five kingdoms: Animalia, Plantae, Fungi, Protista, and Prokaryotae. Though widely accepted, this scheme grouped together in the kingdom Protista such obviously disparate organisms as massive brown seaweeds (kelps) and unicellular, animal-like microbes. Further, because it does not address the taxonomy of viruses or all the differences between microorganisms, scientists have proposed other taxonomic schemes that have from 4 to more than 50 kingdoms.

Sometimes students are upset that taxonomists do not agree about all the taxonomic categories or the species they contain, but it must be realized that classification of organisms reflects the state of our current knowledge and theories. Taxonomists change their schemes to accommodate new information, and not every expert agrees with every proposed modification.

Another significant development in taxonomy is a shift in its basic goal—from Linnaeus's goal of classifying and naming

[7]Plural of Latin *genus*, meaning "race" or "birth."
[8]Plural of *phylum*, from Greek *phyllon*, meaning "tribe." The term *phylum* is used for animals and bacteria; the corresponding taxon in mycology and botany is called a *division*.
[9]From Greek *bi*, meaning "two," and *nomos*, meaning "rule."

[10]From Greek *enteron*, meaning "intestine," and *kokkos*, meaning "berry," and Latin *faeces*.
[11]Subspecies, which are also called *varieties* or *strains*, differ only slightly from each other. Taxonomists disagree on how much difference between two microbes constitutes a strain versus a species.



◀ Figure 4.22 Levels in a Linnaean taxonomic scheme. Illustrated here are the taxonomic categories for the deer tick, *Ixodes scapularis*, the primary vector of Lyme disease. Notice that higher taxonomic categories are more inclusive than lower ones. To simplify the diagram, only selected classification possibilities are shown.

organisms as a means of cataloging them to the more modern goal of understanding the relationships among groups of organisms. Linnaeus based his taxonomic scheme primarily on organisms' structural similarities, and whereas such terms as *genus* and *family* may suggest the existence of some common lineage, he and his contemporaries thought of species as divinely created. However, when Charles Darwin (1809–1882) propounded his theory of the evolution of species by natural selection (a century after Linnaeus published his pivotal work on the taxonomy of plants), taxonomists came to consider that common ancestry largely explains the similarities among organisms in the various taxa. Today, most taxonomists agree that a major goal of modern taxonomy is to reflect a *phylogenetic*[12] *hierarchy;* that is, that the ways in which organisms are grouped should reflect their evolution from common ancestors.

Taxonomists' efforts to classify organisms according to their ancestry have resulted in reduced emphasis on comparisons of physical and chemical traits, and in greater emphasis on comparisons of their genetic material. Such work has led to a proposal to add a new, most inclusive taxon: the *domain.*

Domains

Learning Outcome

4.22 List and describe the three domains proposed by Carl Woese.

Carl Woese (1928–) labored for years to understand the taxonomic relationships among cells. Morphology (shape) and biochemical tests did not provide enough information to classify organisms fully, so for over a decade Woese painstakingly sequenced the nucleotides of the smaller subunits of ribosomal RNA (rRNA) in an effort to unravel the relationships among these organisms. Because these rRNA molecules are present in all cells and are crucial to protein synthesis, changes in their nucleotide sequences are presumably very rare.

In 1976 he sequenced rRNA from an odd group of prokaryotes that produce methane gas as a metabolic waste. Woese was surprised when their rRNA did not contain nucleotide sequences characteristic of bacteria. Repeated testing showed that methanogens, as they are called, were not like other prokaryotic or eukaryotic organisms. They were something new to science, a third branch of life, ushering microbiologists into a new and curious wonderland. Woese and his coworkers discovered that there are three basic types of ribosome, leading them to propose a new classification scheme in which a new taxon, called a **domain,** contains the Linnaean taxon of kingdom. The three domains identified by Woese—**Eukarya, Bacteria,** and **Archaea**—are based on three basic types of cells as determined by ribosomal nucleotide sequences.

Domain Eukarya includes all eukaryotic cells, all of which contain eukaryotic rRNA sequences. Domains Bacteria and Archaea include all prokaryotic cells. They contain bacterial and archaeal rRNA sequences, respectively, which differ significantly from one another and from those in eukaryotic cells. In addition to differences in rRNA sequences, cells of the three domains differ in many other characteristics, including the lipids in their cell membranes, transfer RNA (tRNA) molecules, and sensitivity to antibiotics. (The taxonomy of organisms within the three domains is discussed in Chapters 11 and 12, which cover prokaryotes and eukaryotes, respectively.)

Ribosomal nucleotide sequences further suggest that there may be at least 50 kingdoms of Bacteria and three kingdoms of Archaea. Further, scientists examining substances such as human saliva, water, soil, and rock regularly discover novel nucleotide sequences. When these sequences are compared to known sequences stored in a computer database, they cannot be associated with any previously identified organism. This suggests that many curious new forms of microbial life have never been grown in a laboratory and still await discovery.

Ribosomal nucleotide sequences have also given microbiologists a new way to define prokaryotic species. Some scientists propose that prokaryotes whose rRNA sequence differs from that of other prokaryotes by more than 3% be classified as a distinct species. Although this definition has the advantage of being precise, not all taxonomists agree with it.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Microbiologists have announced the discovery of over 30 new species of bacteria that thrive between the teeth and gums of humans. The bacteria could not be grown in the researchers' laboratories, nor were any of them ever observed via any kind of microscopy.

If they couldn't culture them or see them, how could the researchers know they had discovered new species? If they couldn't examine the cells for the presence of a nucleus, how did they determine that the organisms were prokaryotes and not eukaryotes?

Taxonomic and Identifying Characteristics

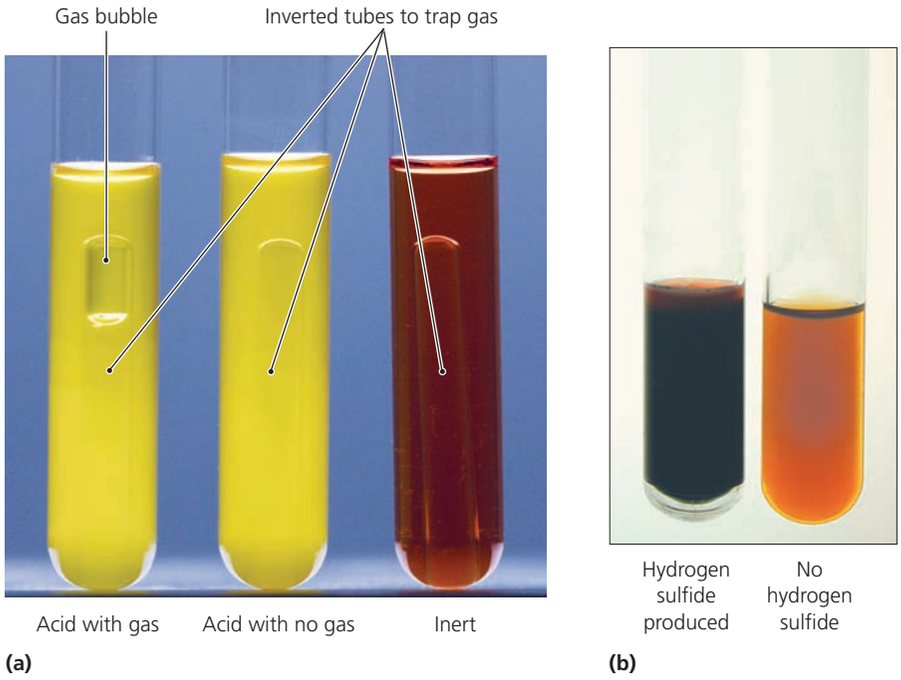
Learning Outcome

4.23 Describe five procedures taxonomists use to identify and classify microorganisms.

Other criteria and laboratory techniques used for classifying and identifying microorganisms are quite numerous and include macroscopic and microscopic examination of physical characteristics, differential staining characteristics, growth characteristics, microorganisms' interactions with antibodies, microorganisms' susceptibilities to viruses, nucleic acid analysis, biochemical tests, and organisms' environmental requirements, including the temperature and pH ranges of their various types of habitats. Clearly, then, microbial taxonomy is too broad a subject to cover in one chapter, and thus the details of the criteria for the classification of major groups are provided in subsequent chapters.

It is important to note that even though scientists may use a given technique to either classify or identify microorganisms, the criteria used to identify a particular organism are not always the same as those that were used to classify it. For example, even though medical laboratory scientists distinguish the genus *Escherichia* from other bacterial genera by its inability to utilize

[12]From Greek *phyllon*, meaning "tribe," and Latin *genus*, meaning "birth" (i.e., origin of a group).



◀ Figure 4.23 Two biochemical tests for identifying bacteria. (a) A carbohydrate utilization test. At left is a tube in which the bacteria have metabolized a particular carbohydrate to produce acid (which changes the color of a pH indicator, phenol red, to yellow) and gas, as indicated by the bubble. At center is a tube with another bacterium that metabolized the carbohydrate to produce acid but no gas. At right is a tube inoculated with bacteria that are "inert" with respect to this test. **(b)** A hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) test. Bacteria that produce H_2S are identified by the black precipitate formed by the reaction of the H_2S with iron present in the medium.

citric acid (citrate) as a sole carbon source, this characteristic is not vital in the classification of *Escherichia.*

Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, first published in 1923 and now in its ninth edition (1994), contains information used for the laboratory identification of prokaryotes. *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology* (second edition, 2001, 2005, 2009, 2010) is a similar reference work that is used for classification based on ribosomal RNA sequences, which taxonomists use to describe relationships among organisms. Each of these manuals is known as "Bergey's Manual."

Linnaeus did not know of the existence of viruses and thus did not include them in his original taxonomic hierarchy, nor are viruses assigned to any of the five kingdoms or Woese's three domains because viruses are acellular and generally lack rRNA. Virologists do classify viruses into families and genera, but higher taxa are poorly defined for viruses. (Chapter 13 further discusses viral taxonomy.)

With this background, let's turn now to some brief discussions of five types of information that microbiologists commonly use to distinguish among microorganisms: physical characteristics, biochemical tests, serological tests, phage typing, and analysis of nucleic acids.

Physical Characteristics

Many physical characteristics are used to identify microorganisms. Scientists can usually identify protozoa, fungi, algae, and parasitic worms based solely on their *morphology* (shape). Medical laboratory scientists can also use the physical appearance of a bacterial colony[13] to help identify microorganisms. As we have discussed, stains are used to view the size and shape of individual bacterial cells and to show the presence or absence of identifying features such as endospores and flagella.

Linnaeus categorized prokaryotic cells into two genera based on two prevalent shapes. He classified spherical prokaryotes in the genus "*Coccus,*"[14] and he placed rod-shaped cells in the genus *Bacillus.*[15] However, subsequent studies have revealed vast differences among many of the thousands of spherical and rod-shaped prokaryotes, and thus physical characteristics alone are not sufficient to classify prokaryotes. Instead, taxonomists rely primarily on genetic differences as revealed by metabolic dissimilarities and, more and more frequently, on rRNA sequences.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why is the genus name *"Coccus"* placed within quotation marks but not the genus name *Bacillus*?

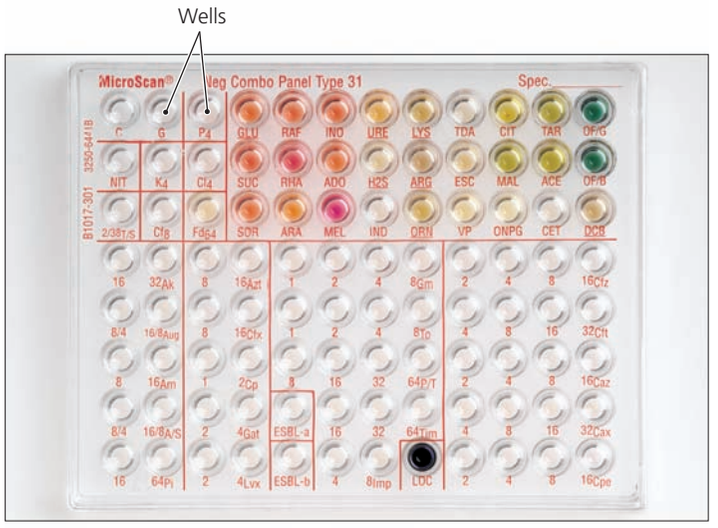
Biochemical Tests

Microbiologists distinguish many prokaryotes that are similar in microscopic appearances and staining characteristics on the basis of differences in their ability to utilize or produce certain chemicals. Biochemical tests include procedures that determine an organism's ability to ferment various carbohydrates; utilize various substrates, such as specific amino acids, starch, citrate, and gelatin; or produce waste products, such as hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) gas **(Figure 4.23)**. Differences in fatty acid composition of bacteria are also used to distinguish among bacteria.

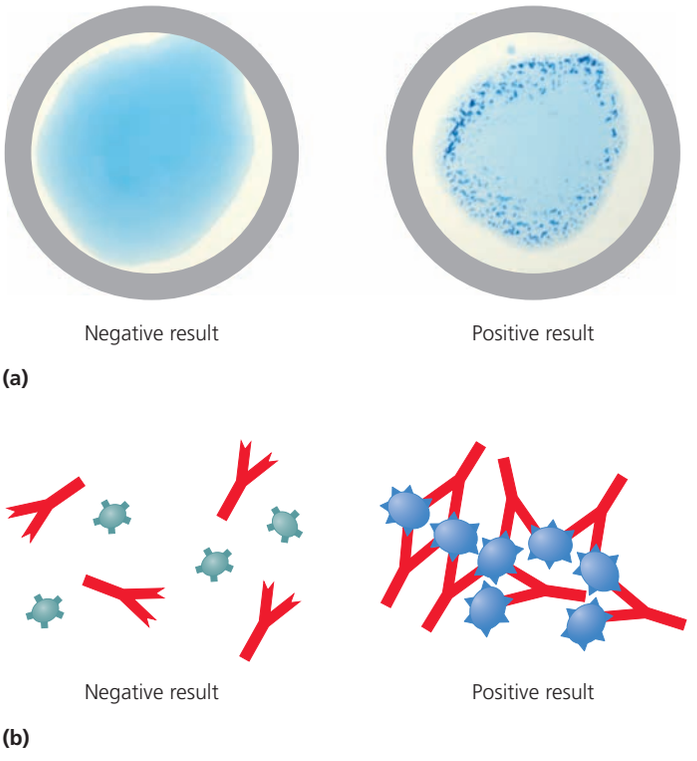
[13]A group of bacteria that has arisen from a single cell grown on a solid laboratory medium.

[14]From Greek *kokkos*, meaning "berry." This genus name has been supplanted by many genera, including *Staphylococcus*, *Micrococcus*, and *Streptococcus.*

[15]From Latin *bacillum*, meaning "small rod."



▲ **Figure 4.24 One tool for the rapid identification of bacteria, the automated MicroScan system.** A MicroScan panel, a plate containing numerous wells, each the site of a particular biochemical test. The instrument ascertains the identity of the organism by reading the pattern of colors in the wells after the biochemical tests have been performed.



▲ **Figure 4.25 An agglutination test, one type of serological test. (a)** In a positive agglutination test, visible clumps are formed by the binding of antibodies to their target antigens present on cells. **(b)** The processes involved in agglutination tests. In a negative result, antibody binding cannot occur because its specific target is not present; in a positive result, specific binding does occur. Note that agglutination occurs because each antibody molecule can bind simultaneously to two antigen molecules.

Obviously, biochemical tests can be used to identify only those microbes that can be grown under laboratory conditions.

Laboratory technicians utilize biochemical tests to identify pathogens, allowing physicians to prescribe appropriate treatments. Many tests require that the microorganisms be *cultured* (grown) for 12 to 24 hours though this time can be greatly reduced by the use of rapid identification tools. Such tools exist for many groups of medically important pathogens, such as Gram-negative bacteria in the family Enterobacteriaceae, Gram-positive bacteria, yeasts, and filamentous fungi. Automated systems for identifying pathogens use the results of a whole battery of biochemical tests performed in a plastic plate containing numerous small wells **(Figure 4.24)**. A color change in a well indicates the presence of a particular metabolic reaction, and the machine reads the pattern of colors in the plate to ascertain the identity of the pathogen.

Serological Tests

In the narrowest sense, serology is the study of serum, the liquid portion of blood after the clotting factors have been removed and an important site of antibodies. In its most practical application, serology is the study of antigen-antibody reactions in laboratory settings. Antibodies are immune system proteins that bind very specifically to target antigens (Chapter 16). In this section we briefly consider the use of serological testing to identify microorganisms.

Many microorganisms are *antigenic;* that is, within a host organism they trigger an immune response that results in the production of antibodies. Suppose, for example, that a scientist injects a sample of *Borrelia burgdorferi* (bō-rē´lē-ă burg-dōr´fer-ē), the bacterium that causes Lyme disease, into a rabbit. The bacterium has many surface proteins and carbohydrates that are antigenic because they are foreign to the rabbit. The rabbit responds to these foreign antigens by producing antibodies against them. These antibodies can be isolated from the rabbit's serum and concentrated into a solution known as an **antiserum.** Antisera bind to the antigens that triggered their production.

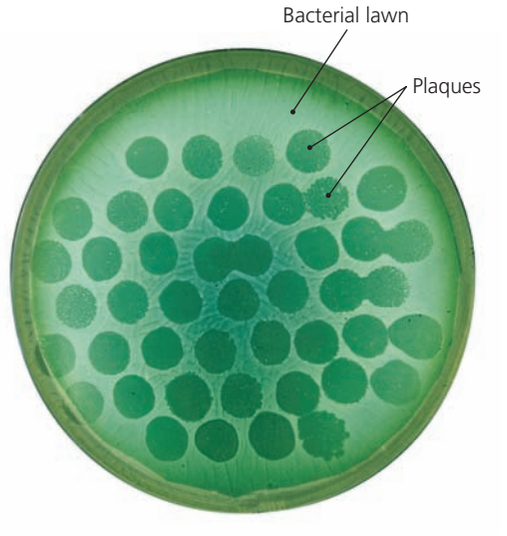
In a procedure called an **agglutination test,** antiserum is mixed with a sample that potentially contains its target cells. If the antigenic cells are present, antibodies in the antiserum will clump *(agglutinate)* the antigen **(Figure 4.25)**. Other antigens, and therefore other organisms, remain unaffected because antibodies are highly specific for their targets.

Antisera can be used to distinguish among species and even among strains of the same species. For example, a particularly pathogenic strain of *Escherichia coli* was classified and is identified by the presence of both antigen number 157 on its cell wall (designated O157 and pronounced "oh one five seven") and antigen number 7 on its flagella (designated H7). This pathogen, known as *E. coli* O157:H7, has caused several deaths in the United States over the past few years. (Chapter 17 examines other serological tests, such as *enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)* and *Western blotting*.)

Phage Typing

Bacteriophages (or simply **phages**) are viruses that infect and usually destroy bacterial cells. Just as antibodies are specific for their target antigens, phages are specific for the hosts they can infect. **Phage typing,** like serological testing, works because of such specificity. One bacterial strain may be susceptible to a particular phage while a related strain is not.

In phage typing, a technician spreads a solution containing the bacterium to be identified across a solid surface of growth medium and then adds small drops of solutions containing different types of bacteriophage. Wherever a specific phage is able to infect and kill bacteria, the resulting lack of bacterial growth produces within the bacterial lawn a clear area called a **plaque** (Figure 4.26). A microbiologist can identify an unknown bacterium by comparing the phages that form plaques with known phage-bacteria interactions.



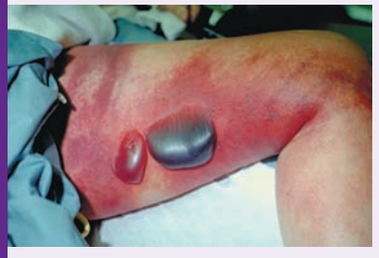
▲ **Figure 4.26 Phage typing.** Drops containing type A bacteriophages were added to this plate after its entire surface was inoculated with an unknown strain of *Salmonella*. After 12 hours of bacterial growth, clear zones, called plaques, developed where the phages killed bacteria. Given the great specificity of phage A for infecting and killing its host, the strain of bacterium can be identified as *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi.

Analysis of Nucleic Acids

As we have discussed, the sequence of nucleotides in nucleic acid molecules provides a powerful tool for classifying and identifying microbes. In many cases, nucleic acid analysis has confirmed classical taxonomic hierarchies. In other cases, as in

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

NECROTIZING FASCIITIS



Fever, chills, nausea, weakness, and general yuckiness. Carlos thought he was getting the flu. Further, he had pulled a cactus thorn from his leg the day before, and the tiny wound had swollen to a centimeter in diameter. It was red, extremely hot, and much more painful than such a puncture had a right to be. Everything was against him. He couldn't afford to miss days at work, but he had no choice.

He shivered in bed with fever for the next two days and suffered more pain than he had ever experienced, certainly more than the time he broke his leg. Even more than passing a kidney stone. The red, purple, and black inflammation on his leg had grown to the size of a baseball. It was hard to the touch and excruciatingly painful. He decided it was time to call his brother to take him to the doctor. That decision saved his life.

Carlos's blood pressure dropped severely, and he was unconscious by the time they arrived. The physician immediately admitted Carlos to the hospital, where the medical team raced to treat necrotizing fasciitis, commonly called "flesh-eating" disease. This reemerging disease is caused by group A *Streptococcus*, a serotype of Gram-positive bacteria also known as *S. pyogenes*. Group A strep invades through a break in the skin and travels along the fascia—the protective covering of muscles—producing toxins that destroy human tissues, killing 1500 people each year in the United States.

By cutting away all the infected tissue; using high-pressure, pure oxygen to inhibit bacterial growth; and applying antimicrobial drugs to kill the bacterium, the doctors stabilized Carlos. After months of skin grafts and rehabilitation, he returned to work, grateful to be alive. For more about necrotizing fasciitis, see p. 545.

Woese's discovery of domains, curious new organisms and relationships that were not obvious from classical methodologies have come to light. Techniques of nucleotide sequencing and comparison, such as *polymerase chain reaction (PCR)* (Chapter 8), are best understood after we have discussed microbial genetics (Chapter 7).

Determining the percentage of a cell's DNA that is guanine and cytosine, a quantity referred to as the cell's *G + C content* (or G + C percentage), has also become a part of prokaryotic taxonomy. Scientists express the content as follows:

$$\frac{G + C}{A + T + G + C} \times 100$$

G + C content varies from 20% to 80% among prokaryotes. Often (but not always) organisms that share characteristics have similar G + C content. Organisms that were once thought to be closely related but have widely different G + C percentages are invariably not as closely related as thought.

Taxonomic Keys

As we have seen, taxonomists, medical clinicians, and researchers can use a wide variety of information, including morphology, chemical characteristics, and results from biochemical, serological, and phage typing tests, in their efforts to identify microorganisms, including pathogens. But how can all these characteristics and results be organized so that they can be used efficiently to identify an unknown organism? All this information is often arranged in **dichotomous keys,** which contain a series of paired statements worded so that only one of two choices applies to any particular organism **(Figure 4.27)**. Based on which of the two statements applies, the key either directs the user to another pair of statements or provides the name of the organism in question. Note that more than one key can be created to enable the identification of a given set of organisms, but all such keys involve mutually exclusive, "either/or" choices that send the user along a path that leads to the identity of the unknown organism. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Dichotomous Keys: Overview, Sample with Flowchart, Practice***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A clinician obtains a specimen of urine from a patient suspected to have a bladder infection. From the specimen she cultures a Gram-negative, rod-shaped bacterium that ferments lactose in the presence of oxygen, utilizes citrate, and produces acetoin but not hydrogen sulfide. Using the key presented in Figure 4.27, identify the genus of the infective bacterium.

1a. Gram-positive cells..... Gram-positive bacteria
1b. Gram-negative cells..... 2

2a. Rod-shaped cells..... 3
2b. Non-rod-shaped cells..... Cocci and pleomorphic bacteria

3a. Can tolerate oxygen..... 4
3b. Cannot tolerate oxygen..... Obligate anaerobes

4a. Ferments lactose..... 5
4b. Cannot ferment lactose..... Non-lactose-fermenters

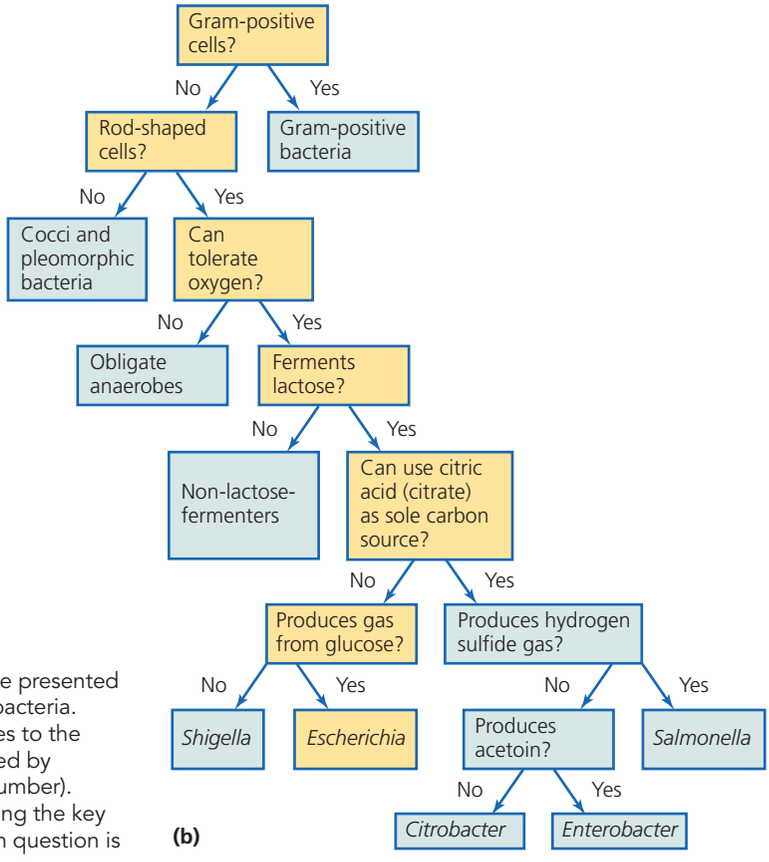
5a. Can use citric acid as a sole carbon source..... 6
5b. Cannot use citric acid alone..... 8

6a. Produces hydrogen sulfide gas..... *Salmonella*
6b. Does not produce hydrogen sulfide gas.... 7

7a. Produces acetoin..... *Enterobacter*
7b. Does not produce acetoin..... *Citrobacter*

8a. Produces gas from glucose..... *Escherichia*
8b. Does not produce gas from glucose..... *Shigella*

(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 4.27 Use of a dichotomous taxonomic key.** The example presented here involves identifying the genera of potentially pathogenic intestinal bacteria. **(a)** A sample key. To use it, choose the one statement in a pair that applies to the organism to be identified and then either refer to another key (as indicated by words) or go to the appropriate place within this key (as indicated by a number). **(b)** A flowchart that shows the various paths that might be followed in using the key presented in part (a). Highlighted is the path taken when the bacterium in question is *Escherichia*.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Microscopy and Staining: Overview*

Units of Measurement (p. 95)

1. The metric system is a decimal system in which each unit is one-tenth the size of the next largest unit.
2. The basic unit of length in the metric system is the meter.

Microscopy (pp. 96–105)

1. **Microscopy** refers to the passage of light or electrons of various **wavelengths** through lenses to **magnify** objects and provide **resolution** and contrast so that those objects can be viewed and studied.
2. Immersion oil is used in light microscopy to fill the space between the specimen and a lens to reduce light refraction and thus increase the **numerical aperture** and resolution.
3. Staining techniques and polarized light may be used to enhance **contrast** between an object and its background.
4. **Simple microscopes** contain a single magnifying lens, whereas **compound microscopes** use a series of lenses for magnification.
5. The lens closest to the object being magnified is the **objective lens,** several of which are mounted on a **revolving nosepiece.** The lenses closest to the eyes are **ocular lenses. Condenser lenses** lie beneath the stage and direct light through the slide.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *The Light Microscope*
6. The magnifications of the objective lens and the ocular lens are multiplied together to give **total magnification.**
7. A photograph of a microscopic image is a **micrograph.**
8. **Dark-field microscopes** provide a dark background for small or colorless specimens.
9. **Phase microscopes,** such as **phase-contrast** and **differential interference contrast** (Nomarski) microscopes, cause light rays that pass through a specimen to be out of phase with light rays that pass through the field, producing contrast.
10. **Fluorescence microscopes** use ultraviolet light and fluorescent dyes to fluoresce specimens and enhance contrast.
11. A **confocal microscope** uses fluorescent dyes in conjunction with computers to provide three-dimensional images of a specimen.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Light Microscopy*
12. A **transmission electron microscope (TEM)** provides an image produced by the transmission of electrons through a thinly sliced, dehydrated specimen.
13. A **scanning electron microscope (SEM)** provides a three-dimensional image by scattering electrons from the metal-coated surface of a specimen.
14. Minuscule electronic probes are used in **scanning tunneling microscopes** and in **atomic force microscopes** to reveal details at the atomic level.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Electron Microscopy*

Staining (pp. 105–112)

1. Preparing to **stain** organisms with dyes for light microscopy involves making a **smear,** or thin film, of the specimens on a slide and then either passing the slide through a flame **(heat fixation)** or applying a chemical **(chemical fixation)** to attach the specimens to the slide. **Acidic dyes** or **basic dyes** are used to stain different portions of an organism to aid viewing and identification.
2. **Simple stains** involve the simple process of soaking the smear with one dye and then rinsing with water. **Differential stains** such as the **Gram stain, acid-fast stain,** endospore stain, Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain, and the hemotoxylin and eosin (HE) stain use more than one dye to differentiate different cells, chemicals, or structures.
3. The Gram stain procedure includes use of a **primary stain,** a **mordant,** a **decolorizing agent,** and a **counterstain** that results in either purple (Gram-positive) or pink (Gram-negative) organisms, depending on the chemical structures of their cell walls.
4. The acid-fast stain is used to differentiate cells with waxy cell walls. **Endospores** are stained by the **Schaeffer-Fulton endospore** stain procedure.
5. Dyes that stain the background and leave the cells colorless are called **negative** (or **capsule stains**).
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Staining*

Classification and Identification of Microorganisms (pp. 112–119)

1. **Taxa** are nonoverlapping groups of organisms that are studied and named in **taxonomy.** Carolus Linnaeus invented a system of taxonomy, grouping similar interbreeding organisms into **species,** species into **genera,** genera into **families,** families into **orders,** orders into **classes,** classes into **phyla,** and phyla into **kingdoms.**
2. Linnaeus gave each species a descriptive name consisting of a genus name and **specific epithet.** This practice of naming organisms with two names is called **binomial nomenclature.**
3. Carl Woese proposed the existence of three taxonomic **domains** based on three cell types revealed by rRNA sequencing: **Eukarya, Bacteria,** and **Archaea.**
4. Taxonomists rely primarily on genetic differences revealed by morphological and metabolic dissimilarities to classify organisms. Species or strains within species may be distinguished by using **antisera**; **agglutination tests**; nucleic acid analysis, particularly G + C content; or **phage typing** with **bacteriophages,** in which unknown bacteria are identified by observing **plaques** (regions of a bacterial lawn where the phage has killed bacterial cells).
5. Microbiologists use **dichotomous keys,** which involve stepwise choices between paired characteristics, to help them identify microbes.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Dichotomous Keys: Overview, Sample with Flowchart, Practice*

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review below (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is smallest?
   a. decimeter
   b. millimeter
   c. nanometer
   d. micrometer
2. A nanometer is _____ than a micrometer.
   a. 10 times larger
   b. 10 times smaller
   c. 1000 times larger
   d. 1000 times smaller
3. Resolution is best described as _____.
   a. the ability to view something that is small
   b. the ability to magnify a specimen
   c. the ability to distinguish between two adjacent objects
   d. the difference between two waves of electromagnetic radiation
4. Curved glass lenses _____ light.
   a. refract
   b. bend
   c. magnify
   d. both a and b
5. Which of the following factors is important in making an image appear larger?
   a. the thickness of the lens
   b. the curvature of the lens
   c. the speed of the light passing through the lens
   d. all of the above
6. Which of the following is different between light microscopy and transmission electron microscopy?
   a. magnification
   b. resolution
   c. wavelengths
   d. all of the above
7. Which of the following types of microscopes produces a three-dimensional image with a shadowed appearance?
   a. simple microscope
   b. differential interference contrast microscope
   c. fluorescent microscope
   d. transmission electron microscope
8. Which of the following microscopes combines the greatest magnification with the best resolution?
   a. confocal microscope
   b. phase-contrast microscope
   c. dark-field microscope
   d. bright-field microscope
9. Negative stains such as eosin are also called _____.
   a. capsule stains
   b. endospore stains
   c. simple stains
   d. acid-fast stains
10. In the binomial system of nomenclature, which term is always written in lowercase letters?
    a. kingdom
    b. domain
    c. genus
    d. specific epithet

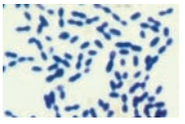
Fill in the Blanks

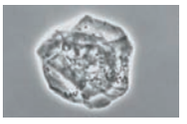
1. If an objective magnifies 40× and each binocular lens magnifies 15×, the total magnification of the object being viewed is _____.
2. The type of fixation developed by Koch for bacteria is _____.
3. Immersion oil _____ (increases/decreases) the numerical aperture, which _____ (increases/decreases) resolution because _____ (more/fewer) light rays are involved.
4. _____ refers to differences in intensity between two objects.
5. Cationic chromophores such as methylene blue ionically bond to _____ (positively/negatively) charged chemicals such as DNA and proteins.

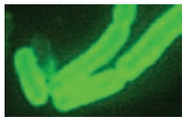
Visualize It!

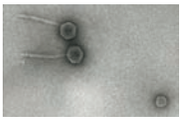
1. Label each photograph below with the type of microscope used to acquire the image.


a._____


b._____

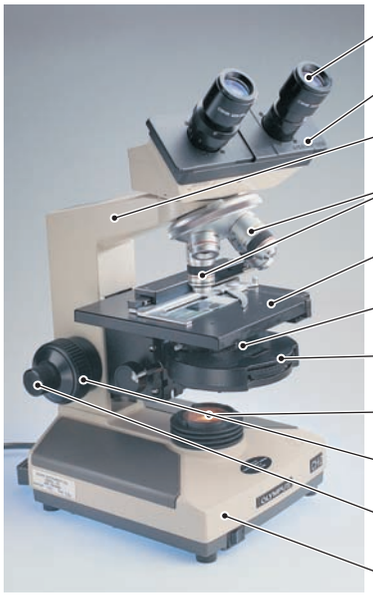

c._____


d._____


e._____


f._____

2. Label the microscope.


a._____
b._____
c._____
d._____
e._____
f._____
g._____
h._____
i._____
j._____
k._____

Short Answer

1. Explain how the principle "electrons travel as waves" applies to microscopy.
2. Critique the following definition of magnification given by a student on a microbiology test: "Magnification makes things bigger."
3. Why can electron microscopes magnify only dead organisms?
4. Put the following substances in the order they are used in a Gram stain: counterstain, decolorizing agent, mordant, primary stain.
5. Why is Latin used in taxonomic nomenclature?
6. Give three characteristics of a "specific epithet."
7. How does the study of the nucleotide sequences of ribosomal RNA fit into a discussion of taxonomy?
8. An atomic force microscope can magnify a living cell, whereas electron microscopes and scanning tunneling microscopes cannot. What requirement of electron and scanning tunneling microscopes precludes the imaging of living specimens?

Critical Thinking

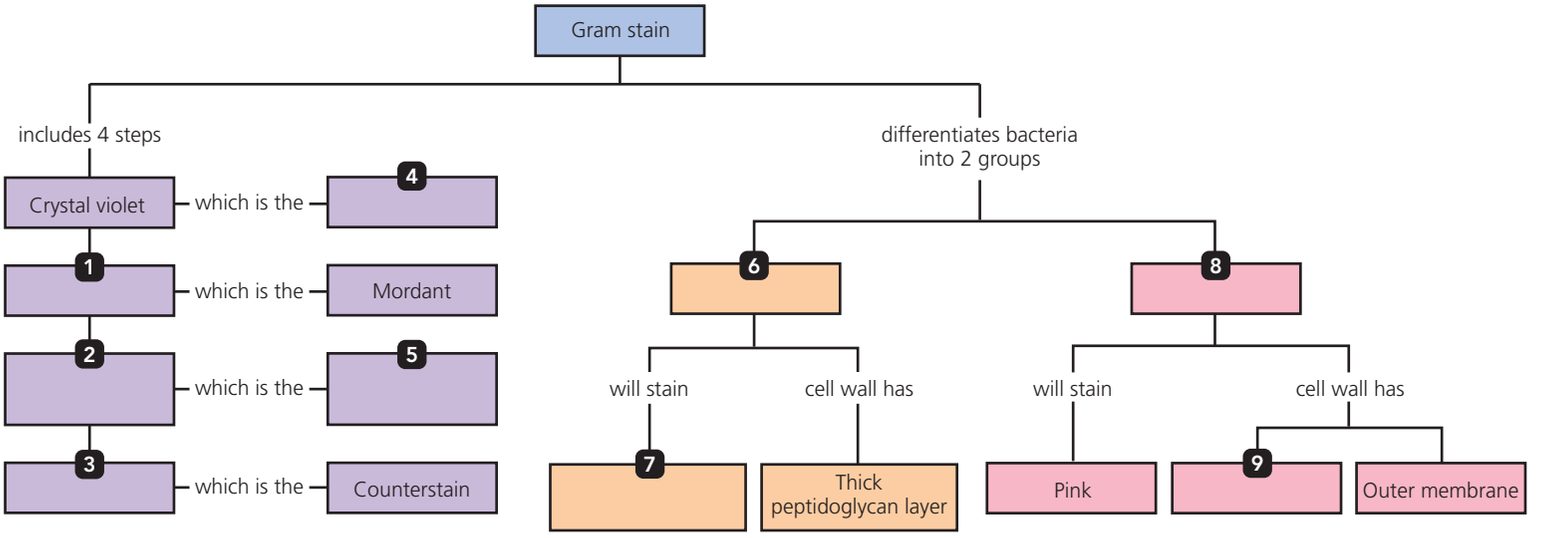
1. Miki came home from microbiology lab with green fingers and a bad grade. When asked about this, she replied that she was doing a Gram stain but that it never worked the way the book said it should. Christina overheard the conversation and said that she must have used the wrong chemicals. What dye was she probably using, and what structure does that chemical normally stain?
2. Why is the definition of *species* as "successfully interbreeding organisms" not satisfactory for most microorganisms?
3. With the exception of the discovery of new organisms, is it logical to assume that taxonomy as we currently know it will stay the same? Why or why not?
4. A novice microbiology student incorrectly explains that immersion oil increases the magnification of his microscope. What is the function of immersion oil?
5. A light microscope has 10× oculars and 0.3-µm resolution. Using the oil immersion lens (100×), will you be able to resolve two objects 400 nm apart? Will you be able to resolve two objects 40 nm apart?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes Gram stain. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Decolorizer
Ethanol and acetone
Gram-negative bacteria
Gram-positive bacteria
Iodine
Primary stain
Purple
Safranin
Thin peptidoglycan layer



5 Microbial Metabolism

The next time you bite into a delicious piece of chocolate, consider this: microbial **metabolism** played a key role in how that chocolate became delicious.

Chocolate comes from cacao seeds, found inside the pods of *Theobroma cacao* trees. After the **pods** are split open, the seeds and the surrounding pulp are scooped out and placed in heaps on top of plantain or banana leaves. The heaps are then covered and left to ferment for two to seven days. **Fermentation** occurs as microorganisms—including yeast and several kinds of bacteria—grow on the fleshy, sugary pulp. Bathed in fermenting pulp, the cacao seeds (which start off tasting bitter) begin to develop the flavors and colors that we associate with **chocolate**. After fermentation, the seeds are dried, roasted, and then processed further by chocolate manufacturers before becoming one of our favorite **desserts**.

In this chapter we will learn about many metabolic processes of microorganisms, including fermentation.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

This chapter has MicroFlix. Go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to view movie-quality animations for metabolism.

Microorganisms ferment sun-dried cacao seeds to begin the transformation of cacao into chocolate.

How do pathogens acquire energy and nutrients at the expense of a patient's health? How does grape juice turn into wine, and how does yeast cause bread to rise? How do disinfectants, antiseptics, and antimicrobial drugs work? When laboratory personnel perform biochemical tests to identify unknown microorganisms and help diagnose disease, what exactly are they doing?

The answers to all of these questions require an understanding of microbial **metabolism,**[1] the collection of controlled biochemical reactions that takes place within the microbe. While it is true that metabolism in its entirety is complex, consisting of thousands of chemical reactions and control mechanisms, the reactions are nevertheless elegantly logical and can be understood in a simplified form. In this chapter we will concern ourselves only with central metabolic pathways and energy metabolism.

Your study of metabolism will be manageable if you keep in mind that the ultimate function of an organism's metabolism is to reproduce the organism and that metabolic processes are guided by the following eight elementary statements:

- Every cell acquires *nutrients,* which are the chemicals necessary as building blocks and energy for metabolism.
- Metabolism requires energy from light or from the *catabolism* (kă-tab´o-lizm; breakdown) of acquired nutrients.
- Energy is often stored in the chemical bonds of *adenosine triphosphate (ATP).*
- Using *enzymes,* cells catabolize nutrient molecules to form elementary building blocks called *precursor metabolites.*
- Using precursor metabolites, other enzymes, and energy from ATP, cells construct larger building blocks in *anabolic* (an-ă-bol´ik; biosynthetic) reactions.
- Cells use enzymes and additional energy from ATP to anabolically link building blocks together to form macromolecules in *polymerization* reactions.
- Cells grow by assembling macromolecules into cellular structures such as ribosomes, membranes, and cell walls.
- Cells typically reproduce once they have doubled in size.

(We will discuss each aspect of metabolism in the chapters that most directly apply. For instance, we discussed the first step of metabolism—the active and passive transport of nutrients into cells—in Chapter 3. In this chapter we examine the importance of enzymes in catabolic and anabolic reactions, study the three ways that ATP molecules are synthesized, and show that catabolic and anabolic reactions are linked. We also examine the catabolism of nutrient molecules; the anabolic reactions involved in the synthesis of carbohydrates, lipids, amino acids, and nucleotides; and a few ways that cells control their metabolic activities. Genetic control of metabolism and the polymerization of DNA, RNA, and proteins are discussed in Chapter 7, and the specifics of cell division are covered in Chapters 11 and 12.)

[1] From Greek *metabole*, meaning "change."

Basic Chemical Reactions Underlying Metabolism

In the following sections we will examine the basic concepts of catabolism, anabolism, and a special class of reactions called *oxidation-reduction reactions.* The latter involve the transfer of electrons and energy carried by electrons between molecules. Then we will turn our attention briefly to the synthesis of ATP and energy storage before we discuss the organic catalysts called *enzymes,* which make metabolism possible. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Metabolism: Overview***

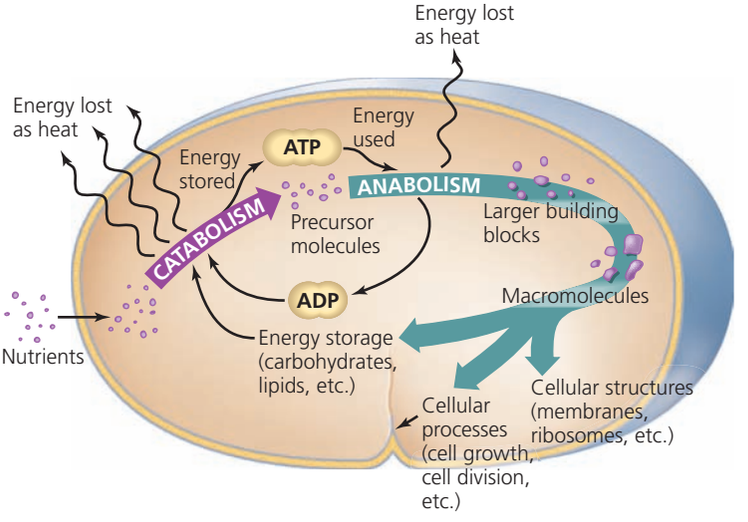
Catabolism and Anabolism

Learning Outcome

5.1 Distinguish among metabolism, anabolism, and catabolism.

Metabolism, which is all of the chemical reactions in an organism, can be divided into two major classes of reactions: **catabolism** and **anabolism** (Figure 5.1). A series of such reactions is called a *pathway.* Cells have *catabolic pathways,* which break larger molecules into smaller products, and *anabolic pathways,* which synthesize large molecules from the smaller products of catabolism. Even though catabolic and anabolic pathways are intimately linked in cells, it is often useful to study the two types of pathways as though they were separate.

When catabolic pathways break down large molecules, they release energy; that is, catabolic pathways are *exergonic* (ek-ser-gon´ik). Cells store some of this released energy in the bonds of ATP, though much of the energy is lost as heat. Another result of the breakdown of large molecules by catabolic pathways is the production of numerous smaller molecules,



▲ **Figure 5.1 Metabolism is composed of catabolic and anabolic reactions.** Catabolic reactions are exergonic—they release energy, some of which is stored in ATP molecules, though most of the energy is lost as heat. Anabolic reactions are endergonic—they require energy, typically provided by ATP. There is some heat loss in anabolism as well. The products of catabolism provide many of the building blocks (precursor metabolites) for anabolic reactions. These reactions produce macromolecules and cellular structures, leading to cell growth and division.

some of which are **precursor metabolites** of anabolism. Some organisms, such as *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē), can synthesize everything in their cells just from precursor metabolites; other organisms must acquire some anabolic building blocks from outside their cells as nutrients. Catabolic *pathways*, but not necessarily *individual* catabolic *reactions*, produce ATP, or metabolites, or both. An example of a catabolic pathway is the breakdown of lipids into glycerol and fatty acids.

Anabolic pathways are functionally the opposite of catabolic pathways in that they synthesize macromolecules and cellular structures. Because building anything requires energy, anabolic pathways are *endergonic* (en-der-gon´ik); that is, they require more energy than they release. The energy required for anabolic pathways usually comes from ATP molecules produced during catabolism. An example of an anabolic pathway is the synthesis of lipids for cell membranes from glycerol and fatty acids.

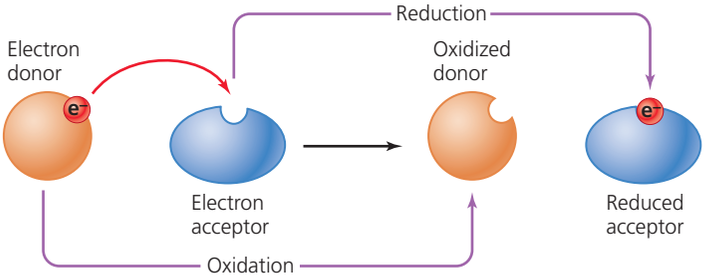
To summarize, a cell's metabolism involves both catabolic pathways that break down macromolecules to supply molecular building blocks and energy in the form of ATP, and anabolic pathways that use the building blocks and ATP to synthesize macromolecules needed for growth and reproduction.

Oxidation and Reduction Reactions

Learning Outcome

5.2 Contrast reduction and oxidation reactions.

Many metabolic reactions involve the transfer of electrons, which carry energy, from an *electron donor* (a molecule that donates an electron) to an *electron acceptor* (a molecule that accepts an electron). Such electron transfers are called **oxidation-reduction reactions,** or **redox reactions** (Figure 5.2). An electron acceptor is said to be *reduced.* This may seem backward, but electron acceptors are reduced because their gain in electrons reduces their overall electrical charge (i.e., they are more negatively charged). Molecules that lose electrons are said to be *oxidized* because frequently their electrons are donated to oxygen atoms. An acronym to help you remember these concepts is OIL RIG: oxidation involves loss; reduction involves gain.



▲ **Figure 5.2 Oxidation-reduction, or redox, reactions.** When electrons are transferred from donor molecules to acceptor molecules, donors become oxidized, and acceptors become reduced. *Why are acceptor molecules said to be reduced when they are gaining electrons?*

Figure 5.2 *"Reduction" refers to the overall electrical charge on a molecule. Because electrons have a negative charge, the gain of an electron reduces the molecule's overall charge.*

Reduction and oxidation reactions always happen simultaneously because every electron donated by one chemical is accepted by another chemical. A chemical may be reduced by gaining either a simple electron or an electron that is part of a hydrogen atom—which is composed of one proton and one electron. **Beneficial Microbes: Gold-Mining Microbes** describes an interesting example of how some prokaryotes are able to reduce gold dissolved in solution.

In contrast, a molecule may be oxidized in one of three ways: by losing a simple electron, by losing a hydrogen atom, or by gaining an oxygen atom. Biological oxidations often involve

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

GOLD-MINING MICROBES

Solid gold is gold in its reduced form.

Gold, as found in nature, exists in two forms: gold-ore deposits, which are gold in its reduced form, usually found near the Earth's crust, and gold dissolved in solution, as found in thermal springs and in seawater. Dissolved gold, which is gold in its oxidized forms, is largely useless to humans; it cannot be converted inexpensively into solid gold. Even though gold in either form is toxic when ingested by most living things, scientists have discovered that certain bacteria, such as *Ralstonia metallidurans*, can metabolize oxidized gold. When placed in a solution containing oxidized gold, these microorganisms reduce the gold and encase themselves in solid gold, which is their metabolic waste.

Entrepreneurial minds may wonder whether *Ralstonia* could be potentially profitable. Although it is true that a great deal of dissolved gold is found in thermal springs and oceans, the gold is very dilute—only minute amounts are present in very large volumes of water. Moreover, were someone to perfect a way of using microorganisms to convert dissolved gold to great quantities of solid gold, they would be wise to keep it to themselves: so much solid gold could become available that its market value would plunge dramatically.

the loss of hydrogen atoms; such reactions are also called *dehydrogenation* (dē-hī´drō-jen-ā´shŭn) *reactions.*

Electrons rarely exist freely in cytoplasm; instead, they orbit atomic nuclei. Therefore, cells use electron carrier molecules to carry electrons (often in hydrogen atoms) from one location in a cell to another. Three important electron carrier molecules, which are derived from vitamins, are **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$),** and **flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD).** Cells use each of these molecules in specific metabolic pathways to carry pairs of electrons. One of the electrons carried by either NAD^+ or $NADP^+$ is part of a hydrogen atom, forming NADH or NADPH. FAD carries two electrons as hydrogen atoms ($FADH_2$). Many metabolic pathways, including those that synthesize ATP, require such electron carrier molecules. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Oxidation-Reduction Reactions***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Arsenic is a poison that exists in two states in the environment—arsenite ($H_2AsO_3^-$) and arsenate ($H_2AsO_4^-$). Arsenite dissolves in water, making the water dangerous to drink. Arsenate is less soluble and binds to minerals, making this form of arsenic less toxic in the environment. Some strains of the bacterium *Thermus* oxidize arsenic in an aerobic environment but reduce arsenic under anaerobic conditions. In case of arsenic contamination of water, how could scientists use *Thermus* to remediate the problem?

ATP Production and Energy Storage

Learning Outcome

5.3 Compare and contrast the three types of ATP phosphorylation.

Nutrients contain energy, but that energy is spread throughout their chemical bonds and generally is not concentrated enough for use in anabolic reactions. During catabolism, organisms release energy from nutrients that can then be concentrated and stored in high-energy phosphate bonds of molecules such as ATP. This happens by a general process called *phosphorylation* (fos´fōr-i-lā´shŭn), in which inorganic phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) is added to a substrate. For example, cells phosphorylate adenosine diphosphate (ADP), which has two phosphate groups, to form adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which has three phosphate groups (see Figure 2.27).

As we will examine in the following sections, cells phosphorylate ADP to form ATP in three specific ways:

- *Substrate-level phosphorylation* (see p. 134), which involves the transfer of phosphate to ADP from another phosphorylated organic compound
- *Oxidative phosphorylation* (see p. 141), in which energy from redox reactions of respiration (described shortly) is used to attach inorganic phosphate to ADP
- *Photophosphorylation* (see pp. 149–151), in which light energy is used to phosphorylate ADP with inorganic phosphate

We will investigate each of these in more detail as we proceed through the chapter.

After ADP is phosphorylated to produce ATP, anabolic pathways use some energy of ATP by breaking a phosphate bond (which re-forms ADP). Thus, the cyclical interconversion of ADP and ATP functions somewhat like rechargeable batteries: ATP molecules store energy from light (in photosynthetic organisms) and from catabolic reactions and then release stored energy to drive cellular processes (including anabolic reactions, active transport, and movement). ADP molecules can be "recharged" to ATP again and again.

The Roles of Enzymes in Metabolism

Learning Outcomes

5.4 Make a table listing the six basic types of enzymes, their activities, and an example of each.

5.5 Describe the components of a holoenzyme, and contrast protein and RNA enzymes.

5.6 Define *activation energy, enzyme, apoenzyme, cofactor, coenzyme, active site,* and *substrate,* and describe their roles in enzyme activity.

5.7 Describe how temperature, pH, substrate concentration, and competitive and noncompetitive inhibition affect enzyme activity.

Chemical reactions occur when bonds are broken or formed between atoms. In catabolic reactions, a bond must be destabilized before it will break, whereas in anabolic reactions, reactants collide with sufficient energy for bonds to form between them. In anabolism, increasing either the concentrations of reactants or ambient temperatures increases the number of collisions and produces more chemical reactions; however, in living organisms, neither reactant concentration nor temperature is usually high enough to ensure that bonds will form. Therefore, the chemical reactions of life depend on *catalysts,* which are chemicals that increase the likelihood of a reaction but are not permanently changed in the process. Organic catalysts are known as **enzymes.** ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Enzymes: Overview***

Naming and Classifying Enzymes

The names of enzymes usually end with the suffix "-ase," and the name of each enzyme often incorporates the name of that enzyme's **substrate,** which is the molecule the enzyme acts on. Based on their mode of action, enzymes can be grouped into six basic categories:

- *Hydrolases* catabolize molecules by adding water in a decomposition process known as *hydrolysis.* Hydrolases are used primarily in the depolymerization of macromolecules.
- *Isomerases*[2] rearrange the atoms within a molecule but do not add or remove anything (so they are neither catabolic nor anabolic).

[2]An isomer is a compound with the same molecular formula as another molecule, but with a different arrangement of atoms.

TABLE 5.1 Enzyme Classification Based on Reaction Types

Class	Type of Reaction Catalyzed	Example
Hydrolase	Hydrolysis (catabolic)	Lipase—breaks down lipid molecules
Isomerase	Rearrangement of atoms within a molecule (neither catabolic nor anabolic)	Phosphoglucoisomerase—converts glucose 6-phosphate into fructose 6-phosphate during glycolysis
Ligase or polymerase	Joining two or more chemicals together (anabolic)	Acetyl-CoA synthetase—combines acetate and coenzyme A to form acetyl-CoA for the Krebs cycle
Lyase	Splitting a chemical into smaller parts without using water (catabolic)	Fructose-1,6-bisphosphate aldolase—splits fructose 1,6-bisphosphate into G3P and DHAP
Oxidoreductase	Transfer of electrons or hydrogen atoms from one molecule to another	Lactic acid dehydrogenase—oxidizes lactic acid to form pyruvic acid during fermentation
Transferase	Moving a functional group from one molecule to another (may be anabolic)	Hexokinase—transfers phosphate from ATP to glucose in the first step of glycolysis

- *Ligases,* or *polymerases,* join two molecules together (and are thus anabolic). They often use energy supplied by ATP.
- *Lyases* split large molecules (and are thus catabolic) without using water in the process.
- *Oxidoreductases* remove electrons from (oxidize) or add electrons to (reduce) various substrates. They are used in both catabolic and anabolic pathways.
- *Transferases* transfer functional groups, such as an amino group (NH_2), a phosphate group, or a two-carbon (acetyl) group, between molecules. Transferases can be anabolic.

Table 5.1 summarizes these types of enzymes and gives examples of each.

The Makeup of Enzymes

Many protein enzymes are complete in themselves, but others are composed of both protein and nonprotein portions. The proteins in these combinations are called **apoenzymes** (ap´ō-en-zīms). Apoenzymes are inactive if they are not bound to one or more of the nonprotein substances called **cofactors.** Cofactors are either inorganic ions (such as iron, magnesium, zinc, or copper ions) or certain organic molecules called **coenzymes** (ko-en´zīms). All coenzymes are either vitamins or contain vitamins, which are organic molecules that are required for metabolism but cannot be synthesized by certain organisms (especially mammals). Some apoenzymes bind with inorganic cofactors, some bind with coenzymes, and some bind with both. The binding of an apoenzyme and its cofactor(s) forms an active enzyme, called a **holoenzyme** (hol-ō-en´zīm; Figure 5.3).

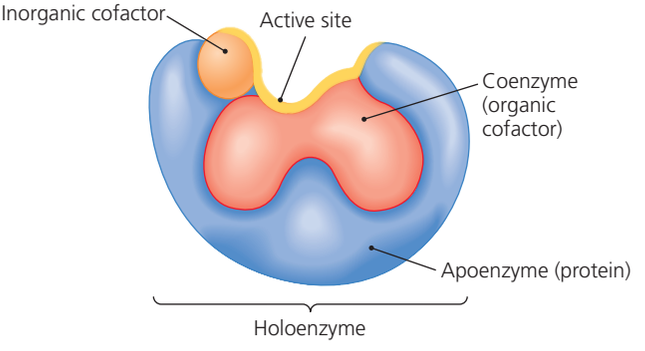
Table 5.2 lists several examples of inorganic cofactors and organic cofactors (coenzymes). Note that three important coenzymes are the electron carriers NAD^+, $NADP^+$, and FAD, which, as we have seen, carry electrons in hydrogen atoms from place to place within cells. We will examine more closely the roles of these coenzymes in the generation of ATP later in the chapter.

Not all enzymes are proteinaceous; some are RNA molecules called **ribozymes.** In eukaryotes, ribozymes process other RNA molecules by removing sections of RNA and splicing the remaining pieces together. Recently, researchers have discovered that the functional core of a ribosome is a ribozyme; therefore, given that ribosomes make all proteins, ribosomal enzymes make protein enzymes.

Enzyme Activity

Within cells, enzymes catalyze reactions by lowering the **activation energy,** which is the amount of energy needed to trigger a chemical reaction (Figure 5.4). Whereas heat can provide energy to trigger reactions, the temperatures needed to reach activation energy for most metabolic reactions are often too high to allow cells to survive, so enzymes are needed if metabolism is to occur. This is true regardless of whether the enzyme is a protein or RNA or whether the chemical reaction is anabolic or catabolic.

The activity of enzymes depends on the closeness of fit between the functional sites of an enzyme and its substrate. The shape of an enzyme's functional site, called its **active site,** is complementary to the shape of the substrate. Generally, the shapes and locations of only a few amino acids or nucleotides



▲ **Figure 5.3 Makeup of a holoenzyme.** The combination of a proteinaceous apoenzyme with one or more cofactors forms a holoenzyme, which is the active form. A cofactor is either an inorganic ion or a coenzyme, which is an organic cofactor derived from a vitamin. An apoenzyme is inactive unless it is bound to its cofactors. *Name four metal ions that can act as cofactors.*

Figure 5.3 *Iron, magnesium, zinc, and copper ions can act as cofactors.*

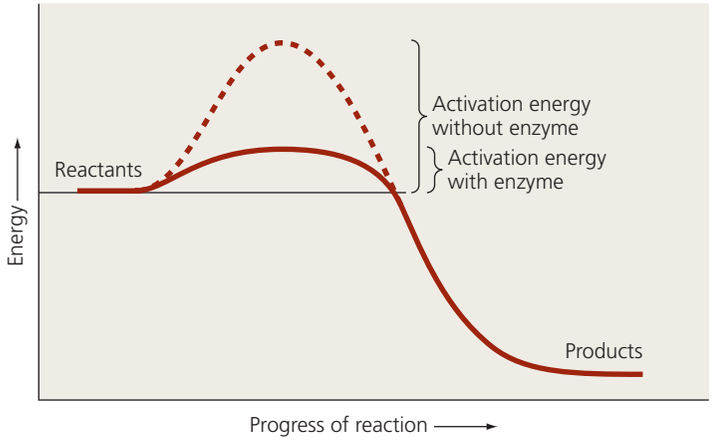
TABLE 5.2 Representative Cofactors of Enzymes

Cofactors	Examples of Use in Enzymatic Activity	Substance Transferred in Enzymatic Activity	Vitamin Source (of Coenzyme)
Inorganic (Metal Ion)			
Magnesium (Mg^{2+})	Forms bond with ADP during phosphorylation	Phosphate	None
Organic (Coenzymes)			
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+)	Carrier of reducing power	Two electrons and a hydrogen ion	Niacin (B_3)
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$)	Carrier of reducing power	Two electrons and a hydrogen ion	Niacin (B_3)
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD)	Carrier of reducing power	Two hydrogen atoms	Riboflavin (B_2)
Tetrahydrofolate	Used in synthesis of nucleotides and some amino acids	One-carbon molecule	Folic acid (B_9)
Coenzyme A	Formation of acetyl-CoA in Krebs cycle and beta-oxidation	Two-carbon molecule	Pantothenic acid (B_5)
Pyridoxal phosphate	Transaminations in the synthesis of amino acids	Amine group	Pyridoxine (B_6)
Thiamine pyrophosphate	Decarboxylation of pyruvic acid	Aldehyde group (CHO)	Thiamine (B_1)

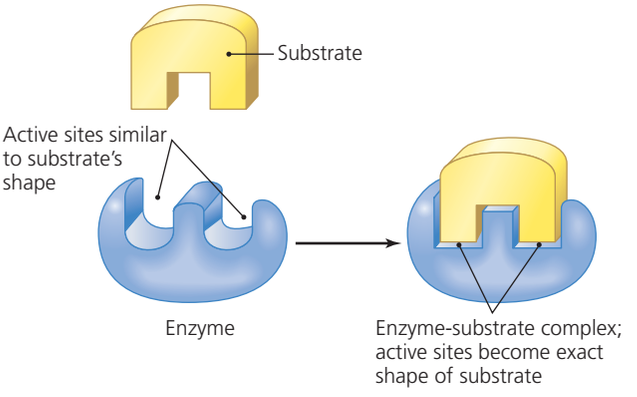
determine the shape of an enzyme's active site. A change in a single component—for instance, through mutation—can render an enzyme less effective or even completely nonfunctional.

Enzyme-substrate specificity, which is critical to enzyme activity, has been likened to the fit between a lock and key. This analogy is not completely apt because enzymes change shape slightly when they bind to their substrate, almost as if a lock could grasp its key once it had been inserted. This latter description of enzyme-substrate specificity is called the **induced-fit model** (Figure 5.5).

In some cases, several different enzymes possess active sites that are complementary to various portions of a single substrate molecule. For example, an important precursor metabolite called phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP) is the substrate for at least five enzymes. Depending on the enzyme involved, various products are produced from PEP. In one catabolic pathway, PEP is converted to pyruvic acid, whereas in a particular anabolic pathway, PEP is converted to the amino acid phenylalanine.



▲ **Figure 5.4 The effect of enzymes on chemical reactions.** Enzymes catalyze reactions by lowering the activation energy—that is, the energy needed to trigger the reaction.

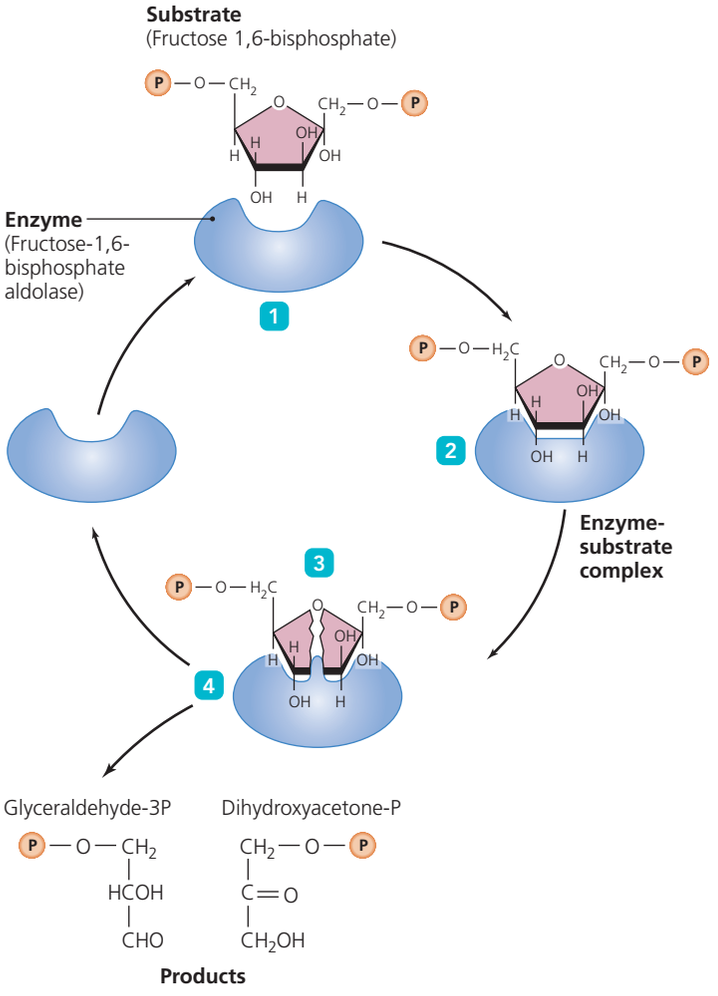


▲ **Figure 5.5 Enzymes fitted to substrates.** The induced-fit model of enzyme-substrate interaction. An enzyme's active site is generally complementary to the shape of its substrate, but a perfect fit between them does not occur until the substrate and enzyme bind to form a complex.

Although the exact ways that enzymes lower activation energy are not known, it appears that several mechanisms are involved. Some enzymes appear to bring reactants into sufficiently close proximity to enable a bond to form, whereas other enzymes change the shape of a reactant, inducing a bond to be broken. In any case, enzymes increase the likelihood that bonds will form or break.

The activity of enzymes is believed to follow the process illustrated in **Figure 5.6**, which depicts the catabolic lysis of a molecule called fructose 1,6-bisphosphate:

1. An enzyme associates with a specific substrate molecule having a shape that is complementary to that enzyme's active site.
2. The enzyme and its substrate bind to form a temporary intermediate compound called an enzyme-substrate complex. The binding of the substrate induces the enzyme to fit the shape of the substrate even more closely.
3. Bonds within the substrate are broken, forming two (and in some other reactions, more than two) products. (This is a catabolic reaction; in anabolic reactions, reactants are linked together to form products.)
4. The enzyme dissociates from the newly formed molecules, which diffuse away from the site of the reaction, and the enzyme resumes its original configuration and is ready to associate with another substrate molecule.



▲ **Figure 5.6 The process of enzymatic activity.** Shown here is the lysis of fructose 1,6-bisphosphate by the enzyme fructose-1,6-bisphosphate aldolase (a catabolic reaction). After the enzyme associates with the substrate 1, the two molecules bind to form an enzyme-substrate complex. 2 As a result of binding, the enzyme's active site is induced to fit the substrate even more closely; then, bonds within the substrate are broken 3, after which the enzyme dissociates from the two products 4. The enzyme resumes its initial shape and is then ready to associate with another substrate molecule. This entire process occurs 14 times per second at 37°C (body temperature).

Many factors influence the rate of enzymatic reactions, including temperature, pH, enzyme and substrate concentrations, and the presence of inhibitors. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Enzymes Steps in a Reaction***

Temperature As mentioned, higher temperatures tend to increase the rate of most chemical reactions because molecules are moving faster and collide more frequently, encouraging bonds to form or break. However, this is not entirely true of enzymatic reactions because the active sites of enzymes change shape as temperature changes. If the temperature rises too high or falls too low, an enzyme is often no longer able to achieve a fit with its substrate.

Each enzyme has an optimal temperature for its activity **(Figure 5.7a)**. The optimum temperature for the enzymes in the human body is 37°C, which is normal body temperature. Part of the reason certain pathogens can cause disease in humans is that the optimal temperature for the enzymes in those microorganisms is also 37°C. The enzymes of some other microorganisms, however, function best at much higher temperatures; this is the case for *hyperthermophiles*, organisms that grow best at temperatures above 80°C.

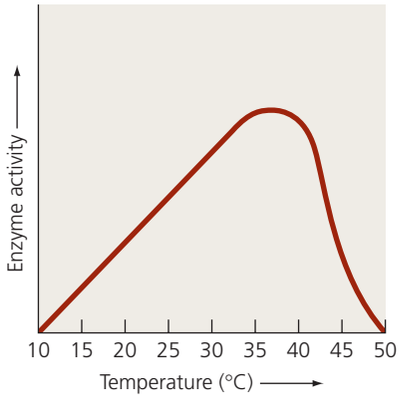
If temperature rises beyond a certain critical point, the noncovalent bonds within an enzyme (such as the hydrogen bonds between amino acids) will break, and the enzyme will **denature (Figure 5.8)**. Denatured enzymes lose their specific three-dimensional structure, so they are no longer functional. Denaturation is said to be *permanent* when an enzyme cannot regain its original three-dimensional structure once conditions return to normal, much like the irreversible solidification of the protein albumin when egg whites are cooked and then cooled. In other cases denaturation is *reversible*—the denatured enzyme's noncovalent bonds re-form on the return of normal conditions.

CRITICAL THINKING

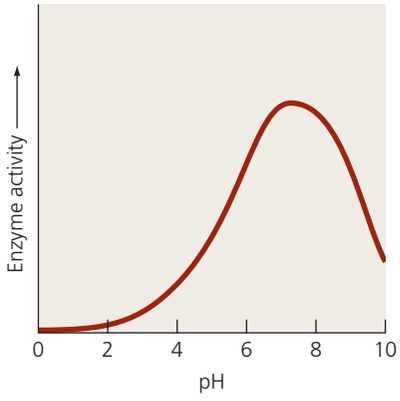
Explain why hyperthermophiles do not cause disease in humans.

pH Extremes of pH also denature enzymes when ions released from acids and bases interfere with hydrogen bonding and distort and disrupt an enzyme's secondary and tertiary structures. Therefore, each enzyme has an optimal pH **(Figure 5.7b)**.

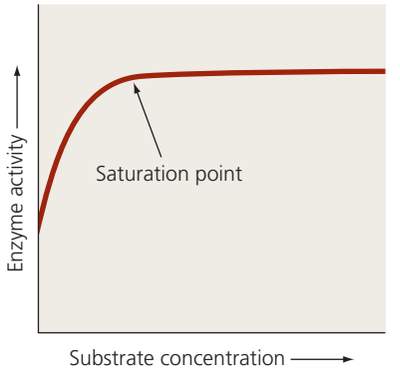
Changing the pH provides a way to control the growth of unwanted microorganisms by denaturing their proteins. For example, vinegar (acetic acid, pH 3.0) acts as a preservative in dill pickles, and ammonia (pH 11.5) can be used as a disinfectant.



(a) Temperature



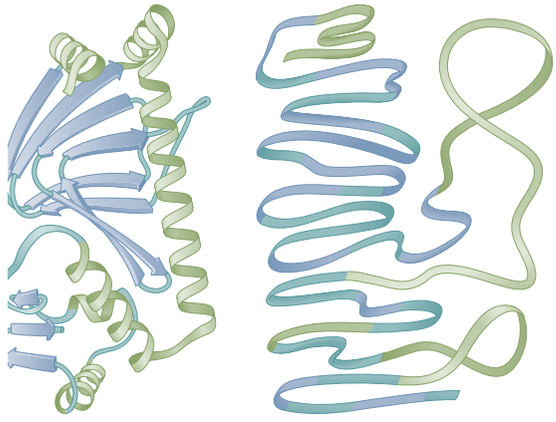
(b) pH



(c) Substrate concentration

▲ Figure 5.7 Representative effects of temperature, pH, and substrate concentration on enzyme activity. Effects on each enzyme will vary. **(a)** Rising temperature enhances enzymatic activity to a point, but above some optimal temperature an enzyme denatures and loses function. **(b)** Enzymes typically have some optimal pH, at which point enzymatic activity reaches a maximum. **(c)** At lower substrate concentrations, enzyme activity increases as the substrate concentration increases and as more and more active sites are utilized. At the substrate concentration at which all active sites are utilized, termed the *saturation point*, enzymatic activity reaches a maximum, and any additional increase in substrate concentration has no effect on enzyme activity. *What is the optimal pH of the enzyme shown in part (b)?*

Figure 5.7 *The enzyme's optimal pH is approximately 7.2.*



▲ Figure 5.8 Denaturation of protein enzymes. Breakage of noncovalent bonds (such as hydrogen bonds) causes the protein to lose its secondary and tertiary structure and become denatured; as a result, the enzyme is no longer functional.

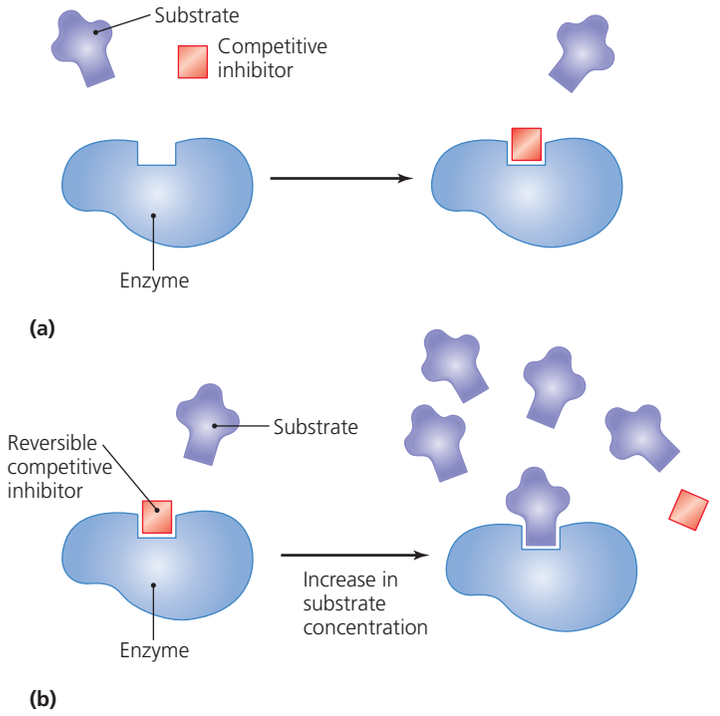
CRITICAL THINKING

In addition to extremes in temperature and pH, other chemical and physical agents denature proteins. These agents include ionizing radiation, alcohol, enzymes, and heavy-metal ions. For example, the first antimicrobial drug, arsphenamine, contained the heavy metal arsenic and was used to inhibit the enzymes of the bacterium *Treponema pallidum*, the causative agent of syphilis.

Given that both human and bacterial enzymes are denatured by heavy metals, how was arsphenamine used to treat syphilis without poisoning the patient? Why is syphilis no longer treated with arsenic-containing compounds?

Enzyme and Substrate Concentration Another factor that determines the rate of enzymatic activity within cells is the concentration of substrate present **(Figure 5.7c)**. As substrate concentration increases, enzymatic activity increases as more and more enzyme active sites bind more and more substrate molecules. Eventually, when all enzyme active sites have bound substrate, the enzymes have reached their saturation point, and the addition of more substrate will not increase the rate of enzymatic activity.

Obviously, the rate of enzymatic activity is also affected by the concentration of enzyme within cells. In fact, one way that organisms regulate their metabolism is by controlling the quantity and timing of enzyme synthesis. In other words, many enzymes are produced in the amounts and at the times they are needed to maintain metabolic activity. (Chapter 7 discusses the role of genetic mechanisms in regulating enzyme synthesis.) Additionally, eukaryotic cells control some enzymatic activities by compartmentalizing enzymes inside membranes so that certain metabolic reactions proceed physically separated from the rest of the cell. For example, white blood cells catabolize phagocytized pathogens using enzymes packaged within lysosomes.



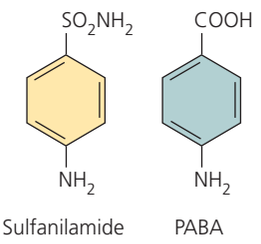
▲ **Figure 5.9 Competitive inhibition of enzyme activity.** **(a)** Inhibitory molecules, which are similar in shape to substrate molecules, compete for and block active sites. **(b)** Reversible inhibition can be overcome by an increase in substrate concentration.

Inhibitors Enzymatic activity can be influenced by a variety of inhibitory substances that block an enzyme's active site. Enzymatic inhibitors, which may be either competitive or noncompetitive, do not denature enzymes.

Competitive inhibitors are shaped such that they fit into an enzyme's active site and thus prevent the normal substrate from binding **(Figure 5.9a)**. However, such inhibitors do not undergo a chemical reaction to form products. Competitive inhibitors can bind permanently or reversibly to an active site. Permanent binding results in permanent loss of enzymatic activity; reversible competition can be overcome by an increase in the concentration of substrate molecules, increasing the likelihood that active sites will be filled with substrate instead of inhibitor **(Figure 5.9b)**. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Enzymes: Competitive Inhibition***

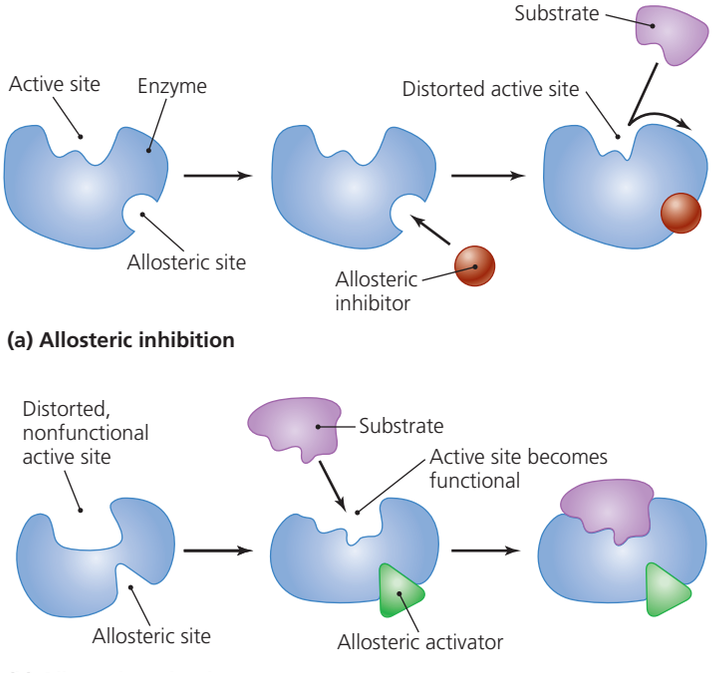
An example of competitive inhibition is the action of sulfanilamide, which has a shape similar to that of para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA).

Sulfanilamide has great affinity for the active site of an enzyme required in the conversion of PABA into folic acid, which is essential for DNA synthesis. Once sulfanilamide is bound to the enzyme, it stays bound. As a result, it prevents synthesis of folic acid. Sulfanilamide effectively inhibits bacteria that make folic acid. Humans do not synthesize folic acid—we must acquire it as a vitamin in our diets—so sulfanilamide does not affect us in this way.

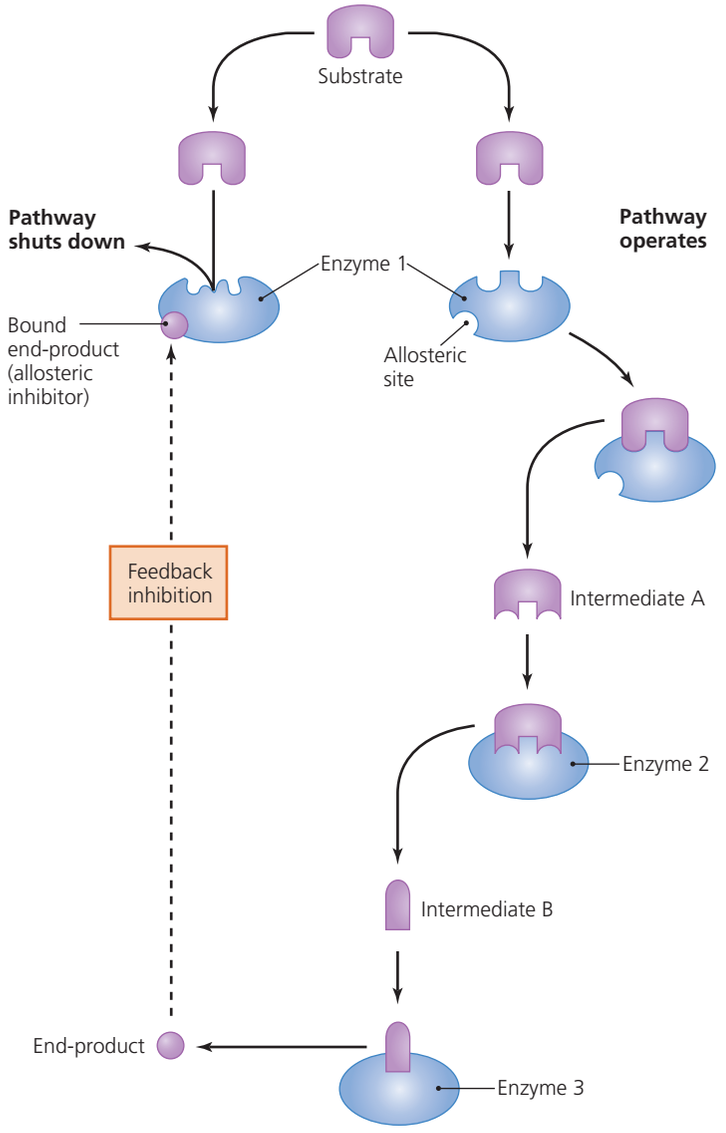


Noncompetitive inhibitors do not bind to the active site but instead prevent enzymatic activity by binding to an *allosteric* (al-ō-stār´ik) *site* located elsewhere on the enzyme. Binding at an allosteric site alters the shape of the active site so that substrate cannot be bound. Allosteric control of enzyme activity can take two forms: inhibitory and excitatory. *Allosteric (noncompetitive) inhibition* halts enzymatic activity in the manner just described **(Figure 5.10a)**. In *excitatory allosteric control,* the binding of certain activator molecules (such as a heavy-metal ion cofactor) to an allosteric site causes a change in shape of the active site, which activates an otherwise inactive enzyme **(Figure 5.10b)**. Some enzymes have several allosteric sites, both inhibitory and excitatory, allowing their function to be closely regulated. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Enzyme-Substrate Interaction: Noncompetitive Inhibition***

Cells often control the action of enzymes through **feedback inhibition** (also called *negative feedback* or *end-product inhibition*). Allosteric feedback inhibition functions in much the way a thermostat controls a heater. As the room gets warmer, a sensor inside the thermostat changes shape and sends an electrical signal that turns off the heater. Similarly, in metabolic feedback inhibition, the end-product of a series of reactions is an allosteric inhibitor of an enzyme in an earlier part of the



▲ **Figure 5.10 Allosteric control of enzyme activity.** **(a)** Allosteric (noncompetitive) inhibition results from a change in the shape of the active site when an inhibitor binds to an allosteric site. **(b)** Allosteric activation results when the binding of an activator molecule to an allosteric site causes a change in the active site that makes it capable of binding substrate.



▲ **Figure 5.11 Feedback inhibition.** The end-product of a metabolic pathway allosterically inhibits the initial step, shutting down the pathway.

pathway **(Figure 5.11)**. Because the product of each reaction in the pathway is the substrate for the next reaction, inhibition of the first enzyme in the series inhibits the entire pathway, thereby saving the cell energy. For example, in *Escherichia coli*, the presence of the amino acid isoleucine allosterically inhibits the first enzyme in the anabolic pathway that produces isoleucine. In this manner, the bacterium prevents the synthesis of isoleucine when the amino acid is already available. When isoleucine is depleted, the enzyme is no longer inhibited, and isoleucine production resumes.

To this point we have viewed the concept of metabolism as a collection of chemical reactions (pathways) that can be categorized as either catabolic (breaking down) or anabolic (building up). Because enzymes are required to lower the activation energy of these reactions, we examined them in some detail.

Energy is also critical to metabolism, so we examined redox reactions as a means of transferring energy within cells. We saw, for example, that redox reactions and carrier molecules are used to transfer energy from catabolic pathways to ATP, a molecule that stores energy in cells.

We will now consider how cells acquire and utilize metabolites, which are used to synthesize the macromolecules necessary for growth and, eventually, reproduction—the ultimate goal of metabolism. We will also consider in more detail the phosphorylation of ADP to make ATP.

Carbohydrate Catabolism

Learning Outcome

5.8 In general terms, describe the three stages of aerobic glucose catabolism (glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and an electron transport chain), including their substrates, products, and net energy production.

Many organisms oxidize carbohydrates as their primary energy source for anabolic reactions. Glucose is used most commonly, though other sugars, amino acids, and fats are also utilized, often by first being converted into glucose. Glucose is catabolized via one of two processes: either via *cellular respiration*[3]—a process that results in the complete breakdown of glucose to carbon dioxide and water—or via *fermentation*, which results in organic waste products.

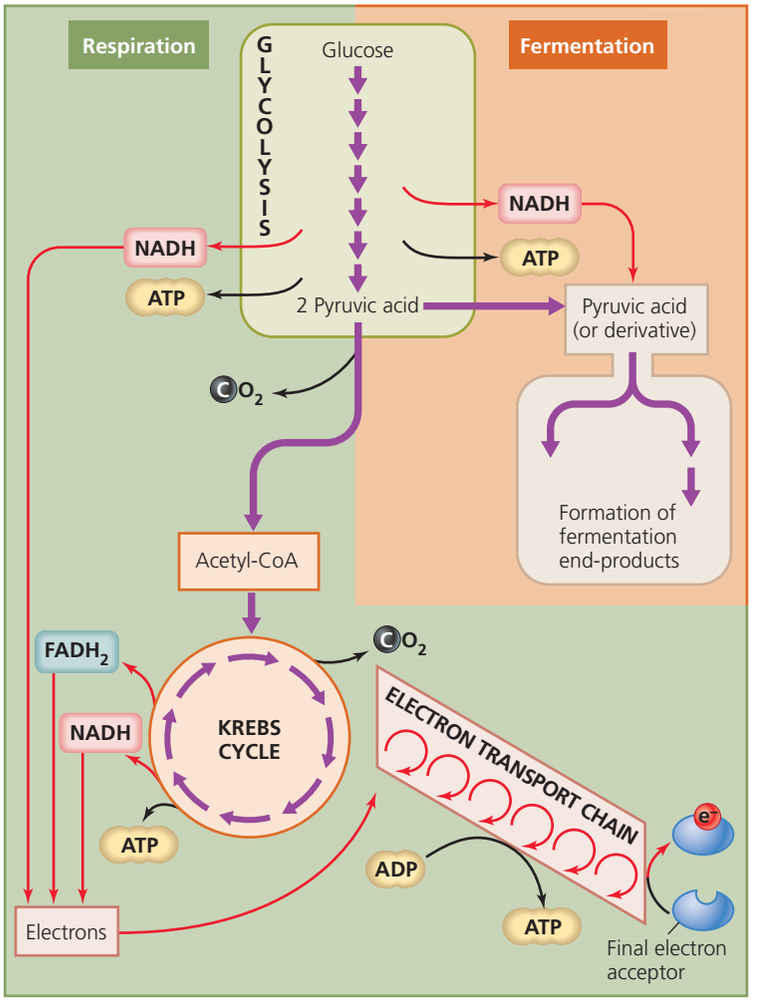
As shown in **Figure 5.12**, both cellular respiration and fermentation begin with *glycolysis* (glī-kol´i-sis), a process that catabolizes a single molecule of glucose to two molecules of pyruvic acid (also called pyruvate) and results in a small amount of ATP production. Respiration then continues via the *Krebs cycle* and an *electron transport chain*, which results in a significant amount of ATP production. Fermentation involves the conversion of pyruvic acid into other organic compounds. Because it lacks the Krebs cycle and an electron transport chain, fermentation results in the production of much less ATP than does respiration.

The following is a simplified discussion of glucose catabolism. To help understand the basic reactions in each of the pathways of glucose catabolism, pay special attention to three things: the number of carbon atoms in each of the intermediate products, the relative numbers of ATP molecules produced in each pathway, and the changes in the coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD as they are reduced and then oxidized back to their original forms.

Glycolysis

Glycolysis,[4] also called the *Embden-Meyerhof pathway* after the scientists who discovered it, is the first step in the catabolism of glucose via both respiration and fermentation. Glycolysis occurs

[3]Cellular respiration is often referred to simply as *respiration*, which should not be confused with breathing, also called respiration.
[4]From Greek *glukus*, meaning "sweet," and *lusis*, meaning to "loosen."



▲ **Figure 5.12 Summary of glucose catabolism.** Glucose catabolism begins with glycolysis, which forms pyruvic acid and two molecules of both ATP and NADH. Two pathways branch from pyruvic acid: respiration and fermentation. In aerobic respiration (shown here), the Krebs cycle and the electron transport chain completely oxidize pyruvic acid to CO_2 and H_2O, in the process synthesizing many molecules of ATP. Fermentation results in the incomplete oxidation of pyruvic acid to form organic fermentation products.

To see a 3-D animation on metabolism, go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area and watch the MicroFlix.

in most cells. In general, as its name implies, glycolysis involves the splitting of a six-carbon glucose molecule into two three-carbon sugar molecules. When these three-carbon molecules are oxidized to pyruvic acid, some of the energy released is stored in molecules of ATP and NADH. Cells can use many of the intermediate molecules in glycolysis as precursor metabolites. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Glycolysis: Overview*

Glycolysis, which occurs in the cytosol, can be divided into three stages involving a total of 10 steps **(Figure 5.13)**, each of which is catalyzed by its own enzyme:

1. *Energy-investment stage* (steps 1–3). As with money, one must invest before a profit can be made. In this case, the energy in two molecules of ATP is invested to phosphorylate a six-carbon glucose molecule and rearrange its atoms to form fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.
2. *Lysis stage* (steps 4 and 5). Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved into glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P)[5] and dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP). Each of these compounds contains three carbon atoms and is freely convertible into the other.
3. *Energy-conserving stage* (steps 6–10). G3P is oxidized to pyruvic acid, yielding two ATP molecules. DHAP is converted to G3P and also oxidized to pyruvic acid, yielding another two ATP molecules, for a total of four ATP molecules.

Details of the substrates and enzymes involved are provided in Appendix A on pp. A-5 to A-11. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Glycolysis: Steps*

Our study of glycolysis provides our first opportunity to study *substrate-level phosphorylation* (see steps 1, 3, 7, and 10). Let's examine this important process more closely by considering the 10th and final step of glycolysis.

Each of the two phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP) molecules produced in step 9 of glycolysis is a three-carbon compound containing a high-energy phosphate bond. In the presence of a specific holoenzyme (which requires a Mg^{2+} cofactor), the high-energy phosphate in PEP (one substrate) is transferred to an ADP molecule (a second substrate) to form ATP (step 10 and **Figure 5.14**); the direct transfer of the phosphate between the two substrates is the reason the process is called **substrate-level phosphorylation.** A variety of substrate-level phosphorylations occur in metabolism. As you might expect, each type has its own enzyme that recognizes both its substrate molecule and ADP.

In glycolysis, two ATP molecules are invested by substrate-level phosphorylation to prime glucose for lysis, and four molecules of ATP are produced by substrate-level phosphorylation. Therefore, a net gain of two ATP molecules occurs for each molecule of glucose that is oxidized to pyruvic acid. Glycolysis also yields two molecules of NADH.

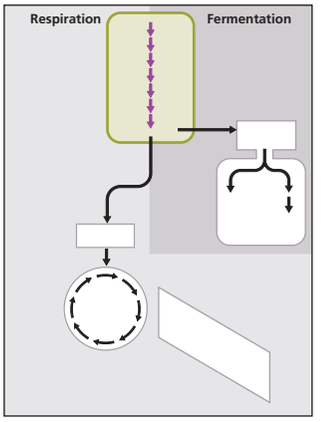
Cellular Respiration

Learning Outcomes

5.9 Discuss the roles of acetyl-CoA, the Krebs cycle, and electron transport in carbohydrate catabolism.
5.10 Contrast electron transport in aerobic and anaerobic respiration.
5.11 Identify four classes of carriers in electron transport chains.
5.12 Describe the role of chemiosmosis in oxidative phosphorylation of ATP.

After glucose has been oxidized via glycolysis or one of the alternate pathways considered shortly, a cell uses the resultant pyruvic acid molecules to complete either cellular respiration or fermentation (which we will discuss in a later section). Our topic here—**cellular respiration**—is a metabolic process that involves the complete oxidation of substrate molecules and then production of ATP by a series of redox reactions. The three stages of cellular respiration are (1) synthesis of acetyl-CoA, (2) the Krebs cycle, and (3) a final series of redox reactions, called an electron

[5] G3P is also known as phosphoglyceraldehyde or PGAL.



ENERGY-INVESTMENT STAGE

Step 1. Glucose is phosphorylated by ATP to form glucose 6-phosphate.

Steps 2 and 3. The atoms of glucose 6-phosphate are rearranged to form fructose 6-phosphate. Fructose 6-phosphate is phosphorylated by ATP to form fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

LYSIS STAGE

Step 4. Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved to form glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) and dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP).

Step 5. DHAP is rearranged to form another G3P.

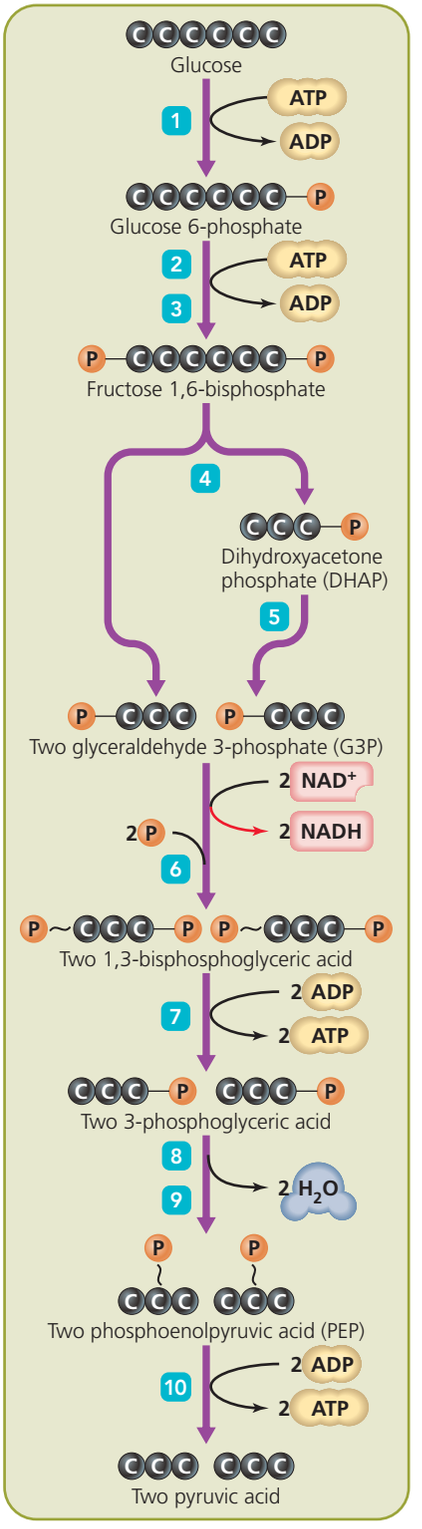
ENERGY-CONSERVING STAGE

Step 6. Inorganic phosphates are added to the two G3P, and two NAD^+ are reduced.

Step 7. Two ADP are phosphorylated by substrate-level phosphorylation to form two ATP.

Steps 8 and 9. The remaining phosphates are moved to the middle carbons. A water molecule is removed from each substrate.

Step 10. Two ADP are phosphorylated by substrate-level phosphorylation to form two ATP. Two pyruvic acid are formed.



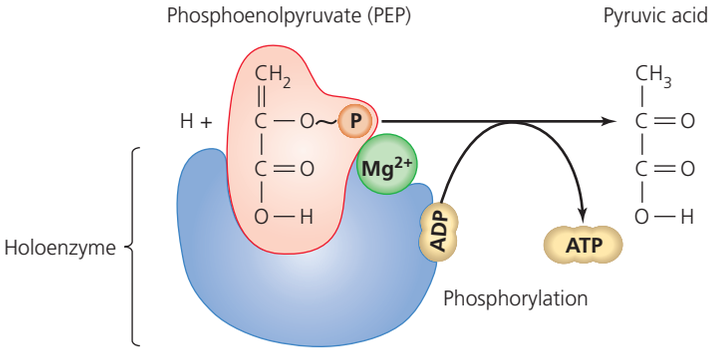
▶ **Figure 5.13 Glycolysis.** Glucose is cleaved and ultimately transformed into two molecules of pyruvic acid in this process (also known as the Embden-Meyerhof pathway). Four ATPs are formed and two ATPs are used, so a net gain of two ATPs results. Two molecules of NAD^+ are reduced to NADH. (For simplification, only carbon atoms and phosphate are shown. For details, see Appendix A.)

transport chain, that passes electrons to a chemical not derived from the cell's metabolism.

Synthesis of Acetyl-CoA

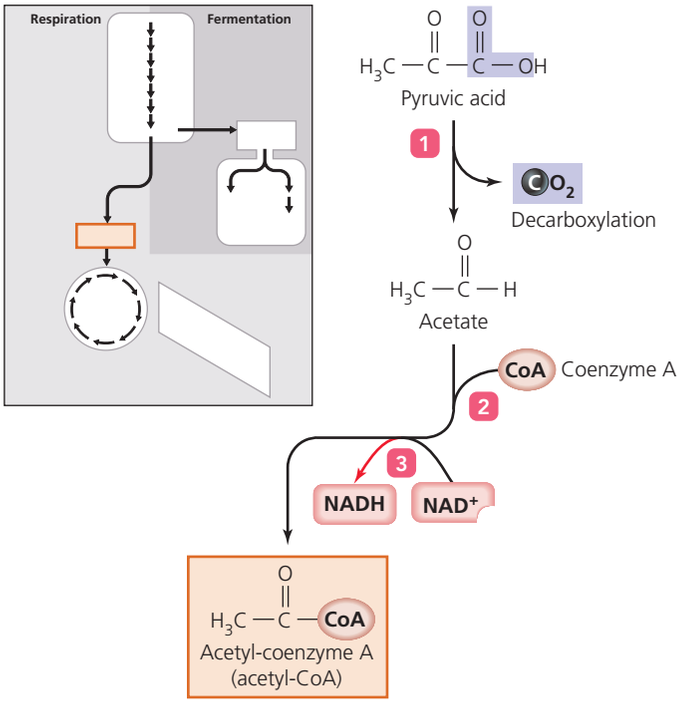
Before pyruvic acid (generated by glycolysis or an alternate pathway) can enter the Krebs cycle for respiration, it must first be converted to *acetyl-coenzyme A*, or **acetyl-CoA** (as´e-til kō-ā´; see Figure 5.12). Enzymes remove one carbon from pyruvic acid as CO_2 1 and join the remaining two-carbon acetate to *coenzyme A* with a high-energy bond 2 **(Figure 5.15)**. The removal of CO_2, called *decarboxylation*, requires a coenzyme derived from the vitamin thiamine. One molecule of NADH is also produced during this reaction 3.

Recall that two molecules of pyruvic acid were derived from each molecule of glucose. Therefore, at this stage, two



▲ Figure 5.14 Example of substrate-level phosphorylation. High-energy phosphate bonds are transferred from one substrate to another in this process. *What role does Mg^{2+} play in this reaction?*

Figure 5.14 *Mg^{2+} is a cofactor of the enzyme.*



▲ Figure 5.15 Formation of acetyl-CoA. The responsible enzyme acts in a stepwise manner to 1 remove CO_2 from pyruvic acid, 2 attach the remaining two-carbon acetate to coenzyme A, and 3 reduce a molecule of NAD^+ to NADH. Because glycolysis produces two molecules of pyruvic acid, two molecules of acetyl-CoA are produced.

molecules of acetyl-CoA, two molecules of CO_2, and two molecules of NADH are produced.

The Krebs Cycle

At this point in the catabolism of a molecule of glucose, a great amount of energy remains in the bonds of acetyl-CoA. The **Krebs cycle**[6] is a "circular" series of eight enzymatically catalyzed reactions that transfer much of this stored energy to the coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD (the cycle is diagrammed in **Figure 5.16** and presented in more detail in Appendix A on p. A-10). The two carbon atoms in acetate are oxidized, and the coenzymes are reduced. The Krebs cycle occurs in the cytosol of prokaryotes and in the matrix of mitochondria in eukaryotes. It is also known as the *tricarboxylic acid (TCA) cycle*, because many of its compounds have three carboxyl (—COOH) groups, and as the *citric acid cycle*, for the first compound formed in the cycle.

There are six types of reactions in the Krebs cycle:

- Anabolism (of citric acid; step 1)
- Isomerization (step 2)
- Redox reactions (steps 3, 4, 6, and 8)
- Decarboxylations (steps 3 and 4)
- Substrate-level phosphorylation (step 5)
- Hydration (step 7)

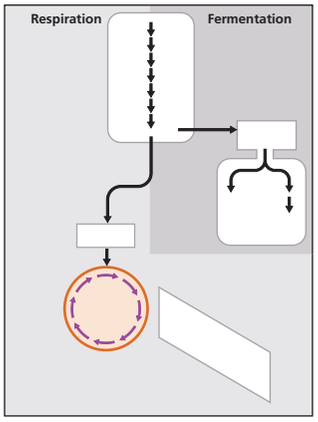
In the first step of the Krebs cycle, the splitting of the high-energy bond between acetate and coenzyme A releases enough energy to enable the binding of the freed two-carbon acetate to a four-carbon compound called oxaloacetic acid, forming the six-carbon compound citric acid (step 1).

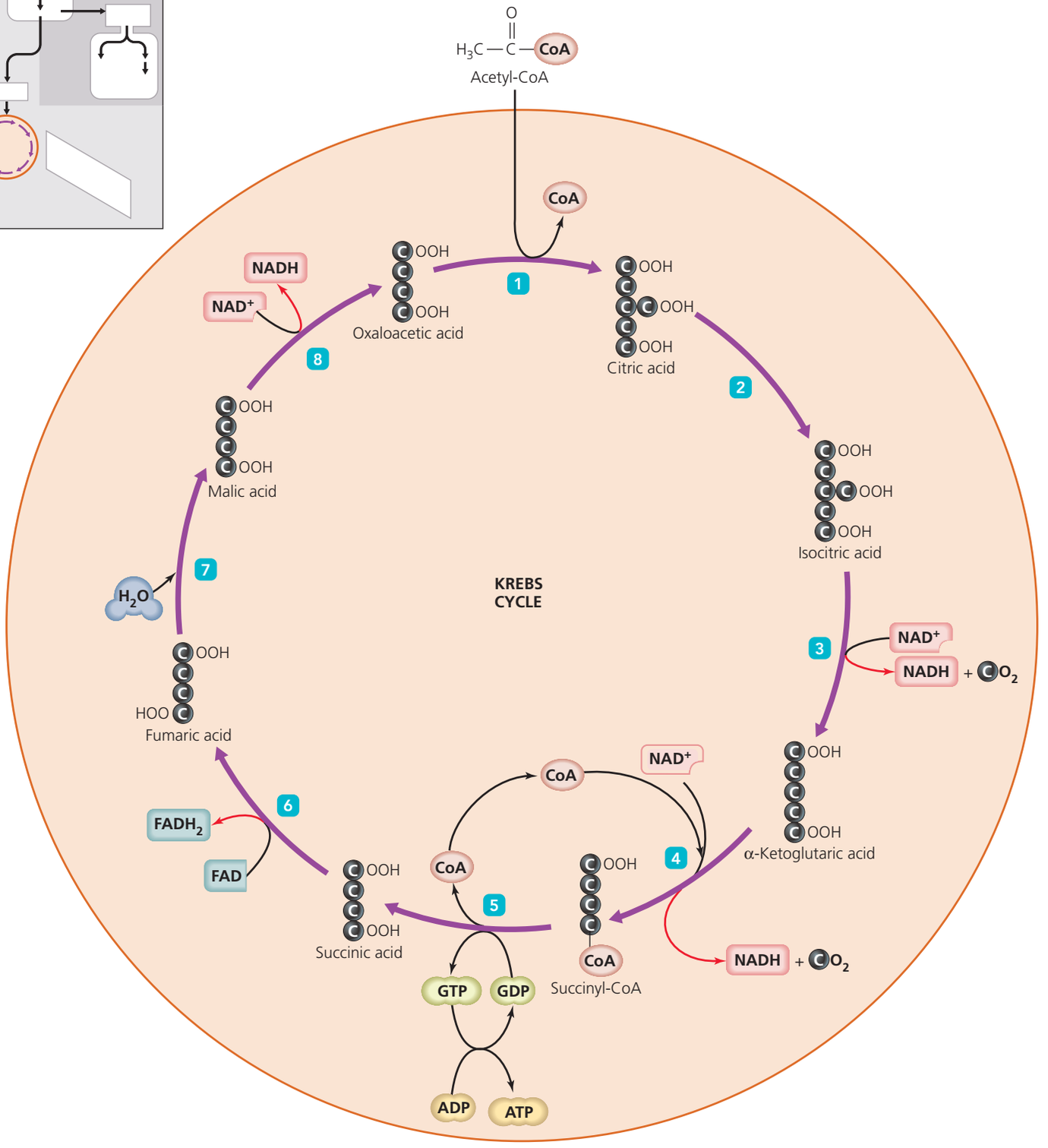
As you study Figure 5.16, notice that after isomerization (step 2), the decarboxylations of the Krebs cycle release two molecules of CO_2 for each acetyl-CoA that enters (steps 3 and 4). Thus, for every two carbon atoms that enter the cycle, two are lost to the environment. At this juncture in the respiration of a molecule of glucose, all six carbon atoms have been lost to the environment: two as CO_2 molecules produced in decarboxylation of two molecules of pyruvic acid to form two acetyl-CoA molecules, and four in CO_2 molecules produced in decarboxylations in the *two* turns through the Krebs cycle. (One molecule of acetyl-CoA enters the cycle at a time.)

For every two molecules of acetyl-CoA that pass through the Krebs cycle, two molecules of ATP are generated by substrate-level phosphorylation (step 5). A molecule of guanosine triphosphate (GTP), which is similar to ATP, can serve as an intermediary in this process. The two molecules of ATP produced by the Krebs cycle are a small amount compared to the energy available. Most of the energy is still in the electrons carried away by NADH and $FADH_2$.

Redox reactions reduce FAD to $FADH_2$ (step 6) and NAD^+ to NADH (steps 3, 4, and 8) so that for every two molecules of acetyl-CoA that move through the cycle, six molecules of NADH and two of $FADH_2$ are formed. In the Krebs cycle, little energy is captured directly in high-energy phosphate bonds, but much energy is transferred via electrons to NADH and $FADH_2$. These coenzymes are the most important molecules of respiration because they carry a large amount of energy that is subsequently used to phosphorylate ADP to ATP. Many of the intermediates of the Krebs cycle are also precursor metabolites; for example, cells can use oxaloacetic acid to make several kinds of amino acids (see Figure 5.31). ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Krebs Cycle: Overview, Steps*

[6]Named for biochemist Hans Krebs, who elucidated its reactions in the 1940s.





▲ **Figure 5.16 The Krebs cycle.** 1 Acetyl-CoA enters the Krebs cycle by joining with oxaloacetic acid to form citric acid, releasing coenzyme A. 2–4 Two oxidations and decarboxylations and the addition of coenzyme A once again yield succinyl-CoA. 5 Substrate-level phosphorylation produces ATP and again releases coenzyme A. 6–8 Further oxidations and rearrangements regenerate oxaloacetic acid, and the cycle can begin anew. Two molecules of acetyl-CoA enter the cycle for each molecule of glucose undergoing glycolysis.

Electron Transport

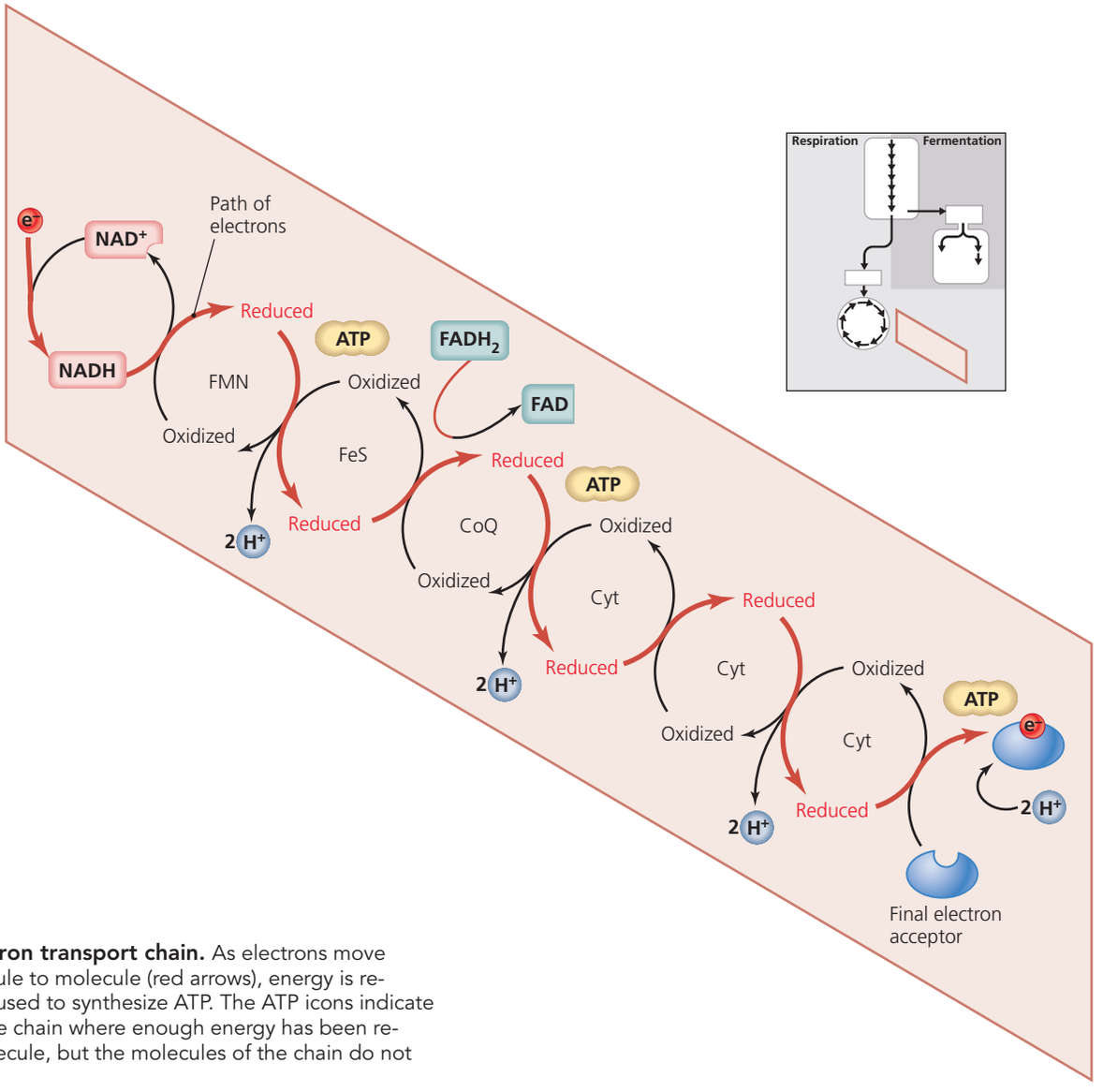
Scientists estimate that each day an average human synthesizes his or her own weight in ATP molecules and uses them for metabolism, responsiveness, growth, and cell reproduction. ATP turnover in prokaryotes is relatively as copious. The most significant production of ATP does not occur through glycolysis or the Krebs cycle, but rather through the stepwise release of energy from a series of redox reactions known as an **electron transport chain** (Figure 5.17). ► **ANIMATIONS:** *Electron Transport Chain: Overview*

An electron transport chain consists of a series of membrane-bound carrier molecules that pass electrons from one to another and ultimately to a *final electron acceptor.* Typically, as we have seen, electrons come from the catabolism of an organic molecule such as glucose; however, microorganisms called *lithotrophs* (lith´ō-trōfs) acquire electrons from inorganic sources such as H_2, NO^{2-}, or Fe^{2+}. (Chapter 6 discusses lithotrophs further.) In any case, carrier molecules pass electrons down the chain to the final acceptor like firefighters of old, who passed buckets of water from one to another until the last one threw the water on a fire. In electron transport, NAD^+ is an "empty bucket"; NADH is a "full bucket." As with a bucket brigade, the final step of electron transport is irreversible. Energy from the electrons is used to actively transport (pump) protons (H^+) across the membrane, establishing a *proton gradient* that generates ATP via a process called *chemiosmosis,* which we will discuss shortly.

To avoid getting lost in the details of electron transport, keep the following critical concepts in mind:

- Electrons pass sequentially from one membrane-bound carrier molecule to another, each time losing some energy. Eventually, they pass to a final acceptor molecule.
- The electrons' energy is used to pump protons across the membrane.

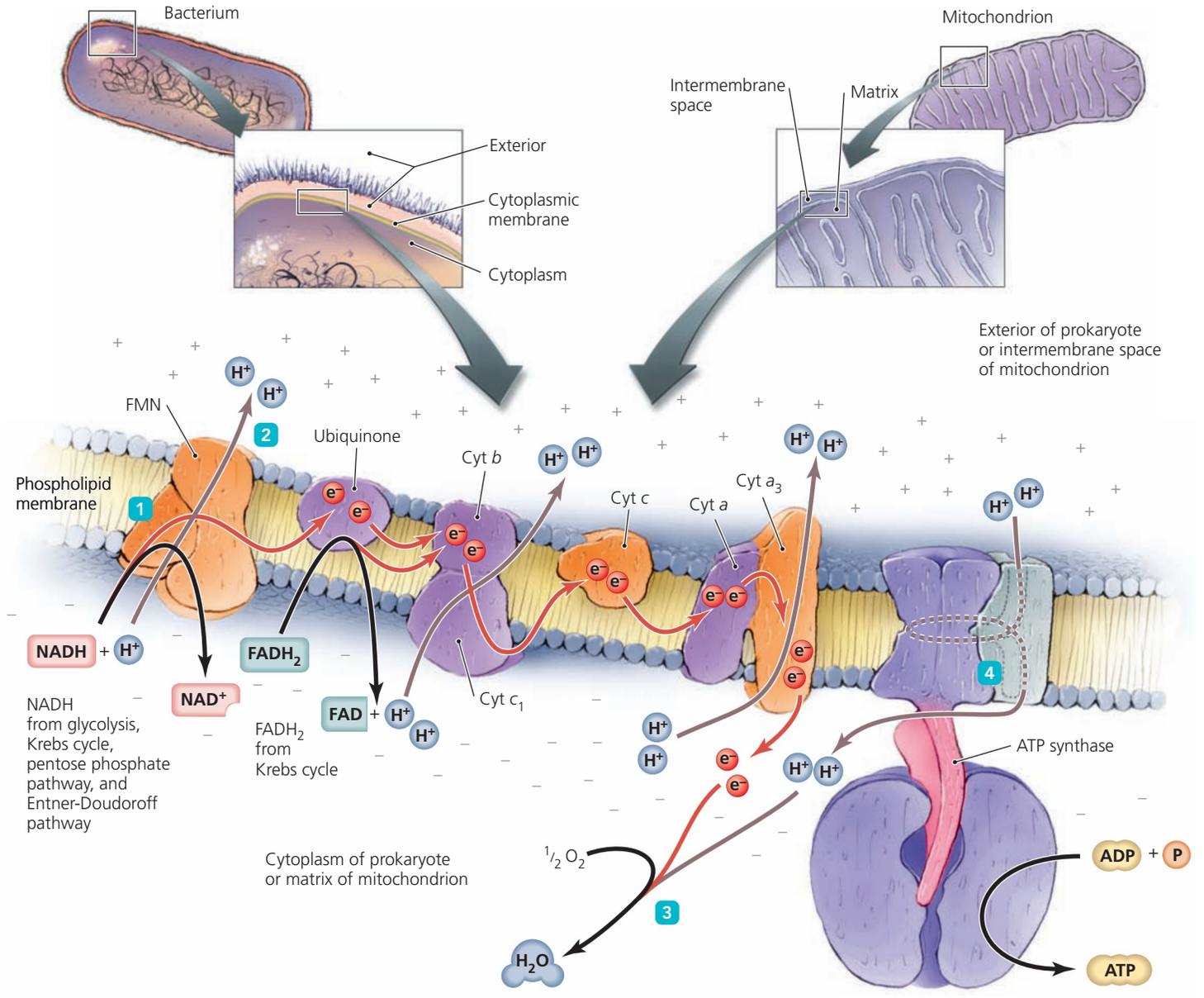
Electron transport chains are located in the inner mitochondrial membranes (cristae) of eukaryotes and in the cytoplasmic



▲ **Figure 5.17 An electron transport chain.** As electrons move down the chain from molecule to molecule (red arrows), energy is released. This energy can be used to synthesize ATP. The ATP icons indicate the approximate point in the chain where enough energy has been released to make an ATP molecule, but the molecules of the chain do not actually synthesize ATP.

membranes of prokaryotes (**Figure 5.18**). Though NADH and $FADH_2$ donate electrons as hydrogen atoms (electrons and protons), many carriers pass only the electrons down the chain. There are four categories of carriers in the transport chains:

- *Flavoproteins* are integral membrane proteins, many of which contain flavin, a coenzyme derived from riboflavin (B_2). One form of flavin is flavin mononucleotide (FMN), which is the initial carrier molecule of electron transport chains of mitochondria. The familiar FAD is a coenzyme for other flavoproteins. Like all carrier molecules in an electron transport chain, flavoproteins alternate between the reduced and oxidized states.



▲ Figure 5.18 One possible arrangement of an electron transport chain. Electron transport chains are located in the cytoplasmic membranes of prokaryotes and in the inner membranes of mitochondria in eukaryotes. The exact types and sequences of carrier molecules in electron transport chains vary among organisms. As electrons move down the chain (red arrows) 1, their energy is used to pump protons (H^+) across the membrane 2. Eventually the electrons pass to a final acceptor, in this case oxygen 3. The protons then flow through ATP synthase (ATPase), which phosphorylates ADP to make ATP 4. Approximately one molecule of ATP is generated for every two protons that cross the membrane. *Why is it essential that electron carriers of an electron transport chain be membrane bound?*

Figure 5.18 *The carrier molecules of electron transport chains are membrane bound for at least two reasons: (1) Carrier molecules need to be in fairly close proximity so they can pass electrons between each other. (2) The goal of the chain is the pumping of H^+ across a membrane to create a proton gradient; without a membrane, there could be no gradient.*

- *Ubiquinones* (yū-bik´wi-nōns) are lipid-soluble, nonprotein carriers that are so named because they are ubiquitous in cells. Ubiquinones are derived from vitamin K. In mitochondria, the ubiquinone is called *coenzyme Q*.
- *Metal-containing proteins* are a mixed group of integral proteins with a wide-ranging number of iron, sulfur, and copper atoms that can alternate between the reduced and oxidized states. Iron-sulfur proteins occur in various places in electron transport chains of various organisms. Copper proteins are found only in electron transport chains involved in photosynthesis (discussed shortly).
- *Cytochromes* (sī´tō-krōms) are integral proteins associated with *heme,* which is the same iron-containing, nonprotein, pigmented molecule found in the hemoglobin of blood. Iron can alternate between a reduced (Fe^{2+}) state and an oxidized (Fe^{3+}) state. Cytochromes are identified by letters and numbers based on the order in which they were identified, so their sequence in electron transport chains does not always seem logical. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Electron Transport Chain: The Process*** ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Electron Transport Chains***

The carrier molecules in electron transport chains are diverse—bacteria typically have different carrier molecules arranged in different sequences from those of archaea or the mitochondria of eukaryotes. Even among bacteria, the makeup of carrier molecules can vary. For example, the pathogens *Neisseria* (nī-se´rē-ă) and *Pseudomonas* (soo-dō-mō´nas) contain two cytochromes, *a* and a_3—together called *cytochrome oxidase*—that oxidize cytochrome *c;* such bacteria are said to be *oxidase positive.* In contrast, other bacterial pathogens, such as *Escherichia, Salmonella* (sal´mŏ-nel´ă), and *Proteus* (prō´tē-ŭs), lack cytochrome oxidase and are thus considered to be *oxidase negative.* Some bacteria, including *E. coli,* can even vary their carrier molecules under different environmental conditions.

Electrons carried by NADH enter a transport chain at a flavoprotein, and those carried by $FADH_2$ are introduced via a ubiquinone further down the chain. This explains why more molecules of ATP are generated from NADH than from $FADH_2$. Researchers do not agree on which carrier molecules are the actual proton pumps or on the number of protons that are pumped. Figure 5.18 shows one possibility.

In some organisms, the final electron acceptors are oxygen atoms, which, with the addition of hydrogen ions, generate H_2O; these organisms conduct **aerobic**[7] **respiration** and are called *aerobes.* **Highlight: Glowing Bacteria** on p. 141 describes an unusual aerobic bacterial electron transport system that produces light instead of ATP.

Other organisms, called *anaerobes,*[8] use other inorganic molecules (or rarely an organic molecule) instead of oxygen as the final electron acceptor and perform **anaerobic respiration.** The anaerobic bacterium *Desulfovibrio* (dē´sul-fō-vib´rē-ō), for example, reduces sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) to hydrogen sulfide gas (H_2S), whereas other anaerobes in the genera *Bacillus* (ba-sil´ŭs) and *Pseudomonas* utilize nitrate (NO_3^-) to produce nitrite ions (NO^{2-}), nitrous oxide (N_2O), or nitrogen gas (N_2). Some prokaryotes—particularly archaea called methanogens—reduce carbonate (CO_3^{2-}) to methane gas (CH_4). Medical laboratory scientists test for products of anaerobic respiration, such as nitrite, to help identify some species of bacteria. (As discussed more fully in Chapter 26, anaerobic respiration is also critical for the recycling of nitrogen and sulfur in nature.) ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Electron Transport Chain: Factors Affecting ATP Yield***

[7]From Greek *aer,* meaning "air" i.e., (oxygen), and *bios,* meaning "life."
[8]The Greek prefix *an* means "not."

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Figure 5.18 illustrates events in aerobic respiration where oxygen acts as the final electron acceptor to yield water. How would the figure be changed to reflect anaerobic respiration?

In summary, a number of redox reactions in glycolysis or alternate pathways and in the Krebs cycle strip electrons, which carry energy, from glucose molecules and transfer them to molecules of NADH and $FADH_2$. In turn, NADH and $FADH_2$ pass the electrons to an electron transport chain. As the electrons move down the electron transport chain, proton pumps use the electrons' energy to actively transport protons (H^+) across the membrane, creating a proton concentration gradient.

Recall, however, that the significance of electron transport is not merely that it pumps protons across a membrane but also that it ultimately results in the synthesis of ATP. We turn now to the process by which cells synthesize ATP using the proton gradient.

Chemiosmosis

Chemiosmosis is a general term for the use of ion gradients to generate ATP; that is, ATP is synthesized utilizing energy released by the flow of ions down their electrochemical gradient across a membrane. The term should not be confused with osmosis of water. To understand chemiosmosis, we need to review several concepts concerning diffusion and phospholipid membranes (see pp. 66–70 in Chapter 3).

Recall that chemicals diffuse from areas of high concentration to areas of low concentration and toward an electrical charge opposite their own. We call the composite of differences in concentration and charge an *electrochemical gradient.* Chemicals diffuse down their electrochemical gradients. Recall as well that membranes of cells and organelles are impermeable to most chemicals unless a specific protein channel allows their passage across the membrane. A membrane maintains an electrochemical gradient by keeping one or more chemicals in a higher concentration on one side. The blockage of diffusion creates potential energy, like water behind a dam.

Chemiosmosis uses the potential energy of an electrochemical gradient to phosphorylate ADP into ATP. Even though chemiosmosis is a general principle with relevance to both *oxidative phosphorylation* and *photophosphorylation,* here we consider it as it relates to oxidative phosphorylation.

HIGHLIGHT

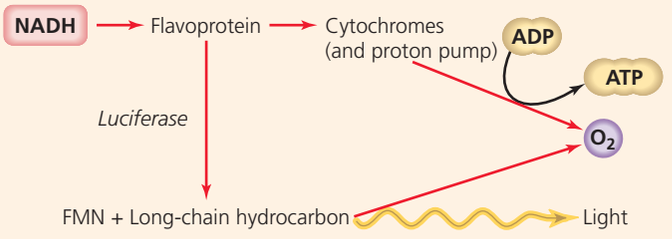
GLOWING BACTERIA

Bacteria in the genus *Photobacterium* possess an interesting electron tansport chain that generates light instead of ATP. These organisms can switch the flow of electrons from a standard electron transport chain (composed of cytochromes, proton pumps, and a final electron acceptor) to an alternate chain. Whereas the standard chain establishes a proton gradient that is used to synthesize ATP, the alternate chain uncouples electron transport from ATP synthesis: instead of transferring electrons to proton pumps, the alternate chain shunts the electrons to the coenzyme flavin mononucleotide (FMN). Then, in the presence of an enzyme called luciferase and a long-chain hydrocarbon, the alternate chain emits light as it transfers electrons to O_2 (see the diagram). The exact mechanism of bioluminescence is not known, but both FMN and the hydrocarbon are oxidized as oxygen is reduced.

Interestingly, free-living *Photobacterium* bacteria are not bioluminescent. However, when a multitude of bacteria signal their presence to one another (a situation called *quorum sensing*), primarily when colonizing the tissues of marine animals, the bacteria use their light-generating pathway. The animals gain from the association because the light produced serves as an attractant for mates and a warning against predators. One species, the "flashlight fish" (*Kryptophanaron alfredi*), has a special organ near its mouth that is specially adapted for the growth of luminescent bacteria. Enough light is generated from millions of bacteria that the fish can navigate over coral reefs at night and attract prey to their light. The light organ even has a membrane that descends like an eyelid to control the amount of light emitted.

Kryptophanaron alfredi.

It is not clear what the bacteria gain from this association. Presumably, the protection and nutrients the bacteria gain from the fish make up for the enormous metabolic cost that the bacteria incur in the form of lost ATP synthesis.



As we have seen, cells use the energy released in the redox reactions of electron transport chains to actively transport protons (H^+) across a membrane. Theoretically, an electron transport chain pumps three pairs of protons for each pair of electrons contributed by NADH, and it pumps two pairs of protons for each electron pair delivered by $FADH_2$. This difference results from the fact that NADH delivers electrons farther up the chain than does $FADH_2$; therefore, energy carried by $FADH_2$ is used to transport one-third fewer protons (see Figure 5.17). Because lipid bilayers are impermeable to protons, the transport of protons to one side of the membrane creates an electrochemical gradient known as a **proton gradient,** which has potential energy known as a *proton motive force*.

Protons, propelled by the proton motive force, flow down their electrochemical gradient through protein channels, called **ATP synthases (ATPases),** that phosphorylate molecules of ADP to ATP (see Figure 5.18 4). Such phosphorylation is called **oxidative phosphorylation** because the proton gradient is created by the oxidation of components of an electron transport chain.

In the past, scientists attempted to calculate the exact number of ATP molecules synthesized per pair of electrons that travel down an electron transport chain. However, it is now apparent that phosphorylation and oxidation are not directly coupled. In other words, chemiosmosis does not require exact constant relationships among the number of molecules of NADH and $FADH_2$ reduced, the number of electrons that move down an electron transport chain, and the number of molecules of ATP that are synthesized. Additionally, cells use proton gradients for other cellular processes, including active transport and bacterial flagellar motion, so not every transported electron results in ATP production.

Nevertheless, about 34 molecules of ADP per molecule of glucose are oxidatively phosphorylated to ATP via chemiosmosis: three from each of the 10 molecules of NADH generated from glycolysis, the synthesis of acetyl-CoA, and the Krebs cycle and two from each of the two molecules of $FADH_2$ generated in the Krebs cycle. Given that glycolysis produces a net two molecules of ATP by substrate-level phosphorylation and that the Krebs cycle produces two more, the complete aerobic oxidation of one molecule of glucose by a prokaryote can theoretically yield a net total of 38 molecules of ATP (Table 5.3 on p. 142). The theoretical net maximum for eukaryotic cells is generally given as 36 molecules of ATP because the energy from two ATP molecules is required to transport NADH generated by glycolysis in the cytoplasm into the mitochondria.

TABLE 5.3 Summary of Ideal Prokaryotic Aerobic Respiration of One Molecule of Glucose

Pathway	ATP Produced	ATP Used	NADH Produced	$FADH_2$ Produced
Glycolysis	4	2	2	0
Synthesis of acetyl-CoA and Krebs cycle	2	0	8	2
Electron transport chain	34	0	0	0
Total	40	2		
Net total	**38**			

CRITICAL THINKING

Suppose you could insert a tiny pH probe into the space between mitochondrial membranes. Would the pH be above or below 7.0? Why?

Alternatives to Glycolysis

Learning Outcome

5.13 Compare the pentose phosphate pathway and the Entner-Doudoroff pathway with glycolysis in terms of energy production and products.

The initial part of the catabolism of glucose can also proceed via two alternate pathways: the pentose phosphate pathway and the Entner-Doudoroff pathway. Though they yield fewer molecules of ATP than glycolysis, these alternate pathways reduce coenzymes and yield substrate metabolites that are needed in anabolic pathways. Next we briefly examine each of these alternate pathways.

Pentose Phosphate Pathway

The **pentose phosphate pathway** (sometimes called the *phosphogluconate pathway*) is named for the phosphorylated pentose (five-carbon) sugars—ribulose, xylulose, and ribose—that are formed from glucose 6-phosphate by enzymes in the pathway **(Figure 5.19)**. The pentose phosphate pathway is used primarily for the production of precursor metabolites used in anabolic reactions, including the synthesis of nucleotides for nucleic acids, of certain amino acids, and of glucose by *photosynthesis* (described in a later section). The pathway reduces two molecules of $NADP^+$ to NADPH and nets a single molecule of ATP from each molecule of glucose. NADPH is a necessary coenzyme for anabolic enzymes that synthesize DNA nucleotides, steroids, and fatty acids.

(Appendix A, on p. A-8, shows the details of the substrates and enzymes of the pentose phosphate pathway.)

Entner-Doudoroff Pathway

Many bacteria use glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway, but a few substitute the **Entner-Doudoroff pathway** **(Figure 5.20)** for glycolysis. This pathway, named for its discoverers, is a series of reactions that catabolize glucose to pyruvic acid using different enzymes from those used in either glycolysis or the pentose phosphate pathway.

Among organisms, only a very few bacteria use the Entner-Doudoroff pathway. These include the Gram-negative bacterium *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (ā-roo-ji-nō´să) and the Gram-positive bacterium *Enterococcus faecalis* (en-ter-ō-kok´ŭs fē-kā´lis). Like the pentose phosphate pathway, the Entner-Doudoroff pathway nets only a single molecule of ATP for each molecule of glucose, but it does yield precursor metabolites and NADPH. The latter is unavailable from glycolysis.

(Appendix A, on p. A-9, shows the Entner-Doudoroff pathway in more detail.)

CRITICAL THINKING

Even though *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Enterococcus faecalis* usually grow harmlessly, they can cause disease. Because these bacteria use the Entner-Doudoroff pathway instead of glycolysis to catabolize glucose, investigators can use clinical tests that provide evidence of the Entner-Doudoroff pathway to identify the presence of these potential pathogens.

Suppose you were able to identify the presence of any specific organic compound. Name a substrate molecule you would find in *Pseudomonas* and *Enterococcus* cells but not in human cells.

Fermentation

Learning Outcomes

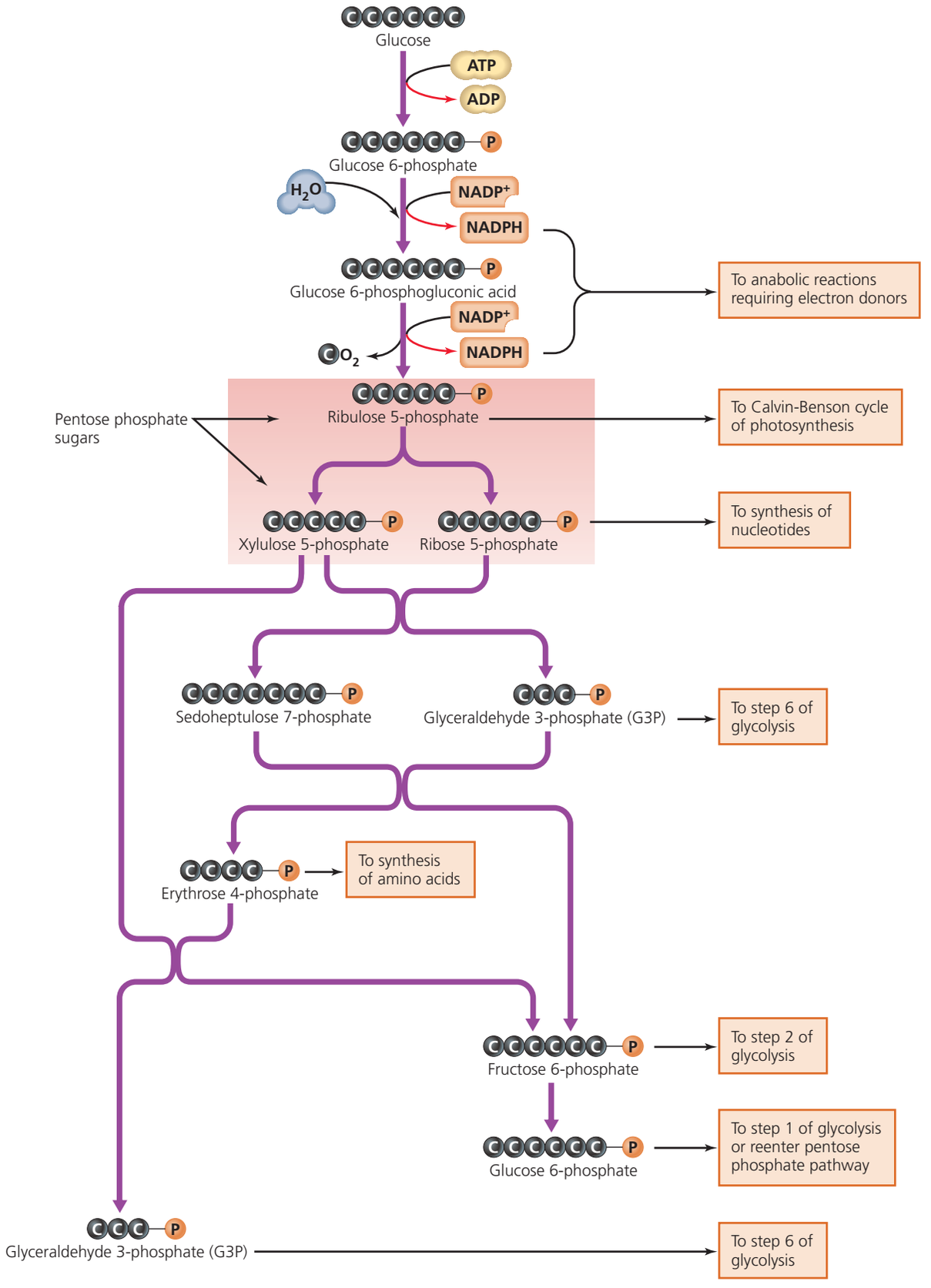
5.14 Describe fermentation and contrast it with respiration.

5.15 List three useful end products of fermentation and explain how fermentation reactions are used to identify bacteria.

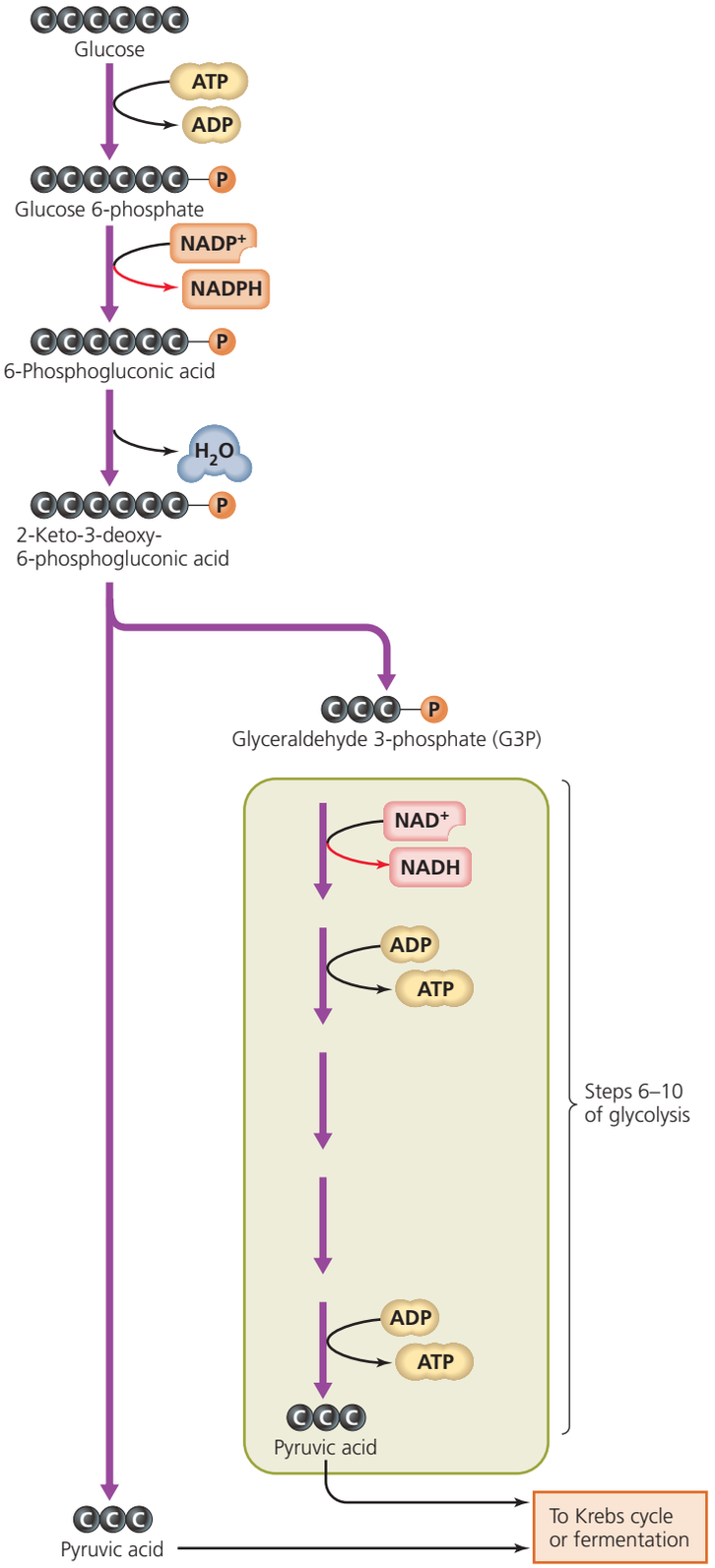
5.16 Discuss the use of biochemical tests for metabolic enzymes and products in the identification of bacteria.

Sometimes cells cannot completely oxidize glucose by cellular respiration. For instance, they may lack sufficient final electron acceptors, as in the case, for example, of an aerobic bacterium that lacks oxygen in the anaerobic environment of the colon. Electrons cannot flow down an electron transport chain unless oxidized carrier molecules are available to receive them at the end. Our bucket brigade analogy can help clarify this point.

Suppose the last person in the brigade did not throw the water but instead held onto two full buckets. What would happen? The entire brigade would soon consist of firefighters holding full buckets of water. An analogous situation occurs in an electron transport chain: All the carrier molecules are forced to remain in their reduced states when there is no final electron acceptor. Without the movement of electrons down the chain, protons cannot be transported, the proton motive force is lost, and oxidative phosphorylation of ADP to ATP ceases. Without sufficient ATP, a cell is unable to anabolize, grow, or divide.



▲ **Figure 5.19 The pentose phosphate pathway.** Energy captured during the pentose phosphate pathway is less than that from glycolysis, but the pathway produces ribose 5-phosphate and erythrose 4-phosphate, two metabolites necessary for synthesis of nucleotides and certain amino acids, respectively. Ribulose 5-phosphate, necessary for glucose synthesis in photosynthetic organisms, and NADPH, an electron carrier for anabolic reactions, are also produced.

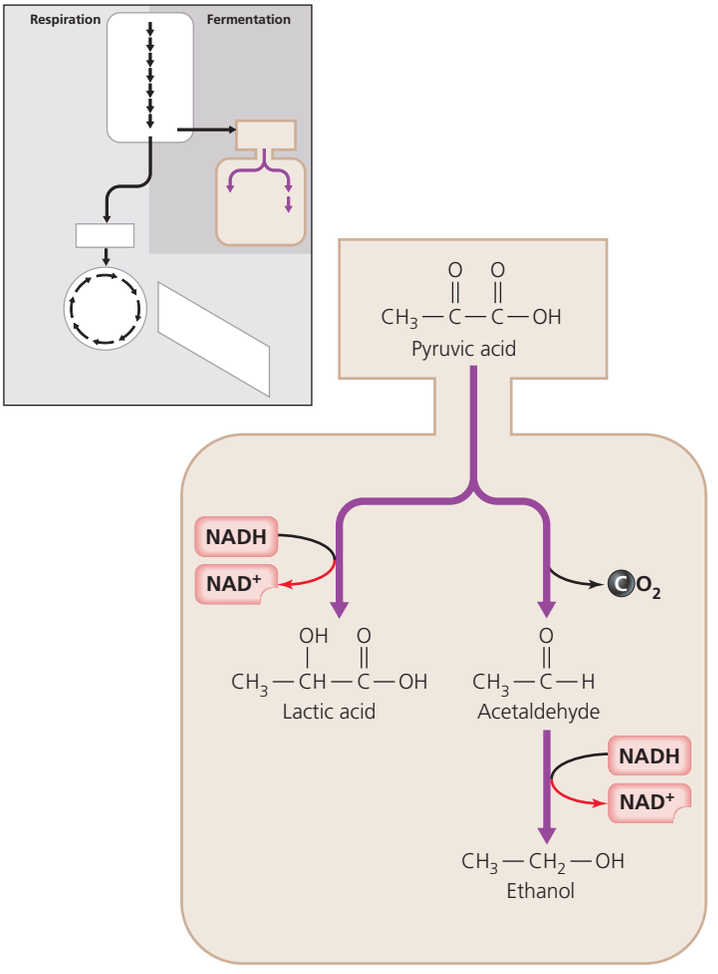


▲ **Figure 5.20 Entner-Doudoroff pathway.** A few bacteria use this alternate pathway for the oxidation of glucose to pyruvic acid. For simplicity, only carbon atoms and phosphate are shown. (For details see Appendix A, p. A-9.) *What potential pathogens use this pathway?*

Figure 5.20 *Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Enterococcus faecalis use the Entner-Doudoroff pathway.*

ATP could be synthesized in glycolysis and the Krebs cycle by substrate-level phosphorylation. After all, together these pathways produce four molecules of ATP per molecule of glucose. However, careful consideration reveals that glycolysis, formation of acetyl-CoA, and the Krebs cycle require a continual supply of oxidized NAD^+ molecules (see Figures 5.13, 5.15, and 5.16). Electron transport produces the required NAD^+ in respiration, but without a final electron acceptor, this source of NAD^+ ceases to be available. A cell in such a predicament must use an alternate source of NAD^+ provided by alternative pathways, called *fermentation pathways*.

In everyday language, fermentation refers to the production of alcohol from sugar, but in microbiology, fermentation has an expanded meaning. **Fermentation** is the partial oxidation of sugar (or other metabolites) to release energy using an organic molecule from within the cell as the final electron acceptor. In other words, fermentation pathways are metabolic reactions that oxidize NADH to NAD^+ while reducing cellular organic molecules. In contrast, respiration reduces externally acquired substances—oxygen in aerobic respiration and, in anaerobic respiration, some other inorganic chemical such as sulfate and nitrate or (rarely) an organic molecule. **Figure 5.21** illustrates two common fermentation pathways that reduce



▲ **Figure 5.21 Fermentation.** In the simplest fermentation reaction, NADH reduces pyruvic acid to form lactic acid. Another simple fermentation pathway involves a decarboxylation reaction and reduction to form ethanol.

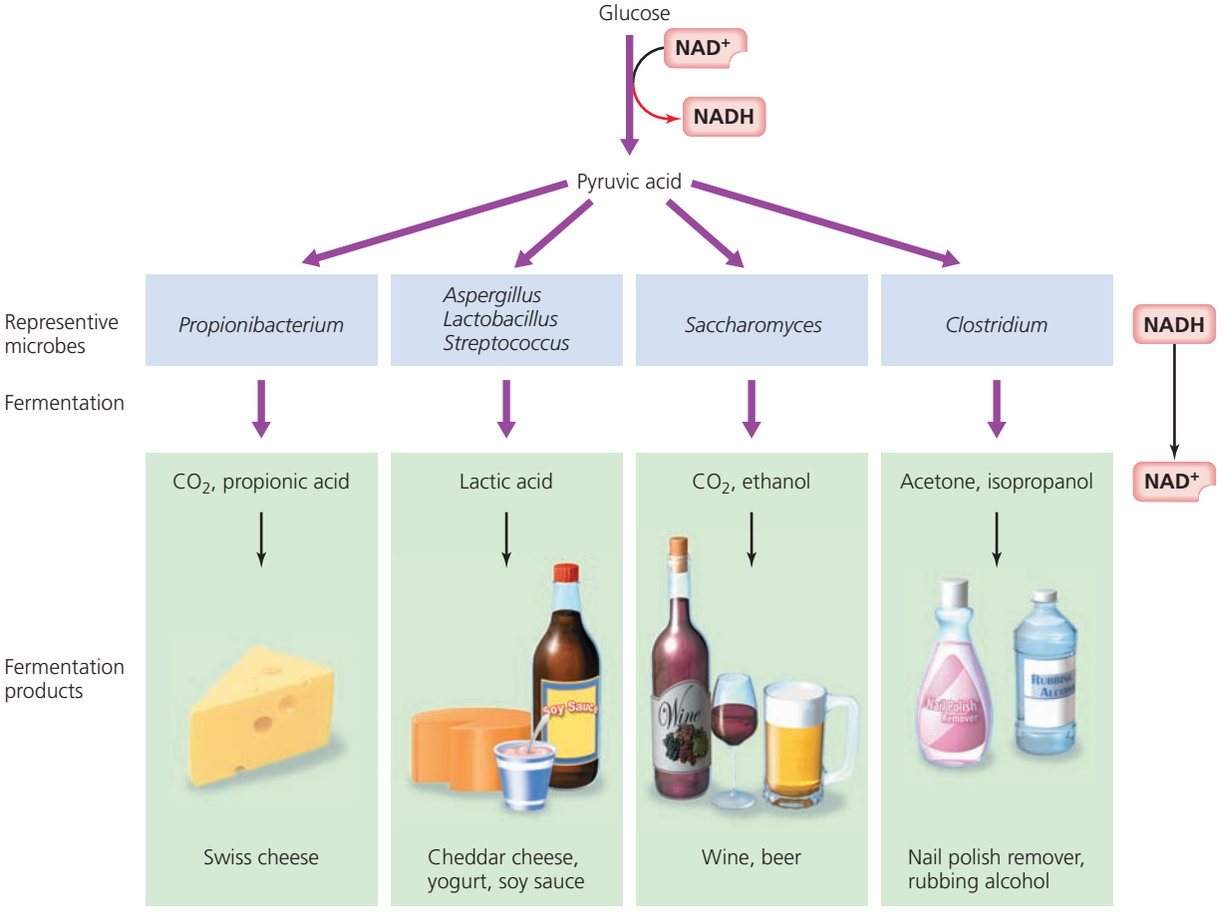
TABLE 5.4 Comparison of Aerobic Respiration, Anaerobic Respiration, and Fermentation

	Aerobic Respiration	Anaerobic Respiration	Fermentation
Oxygen required	Yes	No	No
Type of phosphorylation	Substrate-level and oxidative	Substrate-level and oxidative	Substrate-level
Final electron (hydrogen) acceptor	Oxygen	NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, CO_3^{2-}, or externally acquired organic molecules	Cellular organic molecules
Potential molecules of ATP produced per molecule of glucose	38 in prokaryotes, 36 in eukaryotes	2–36	2

pyruvic acid to lactic acid and ethanol, oxidizing NADH in the process.

The essential function of fermentation is the regeneration of NAD^+ for glycolysis so that ADP molecules can be phosphorylated to ATP. Even though fermentation pathways are not as energetically efficient as respiration (because much of the potential energy stored in glucose remains in the bonds of fermentation products), the major benefit of fermentation is that it allows ATP production to continue in the absence of cellular respiration. Table 5.4 compares fermentation to aerobic and anaerobic respiration with respect to four crucial aspects of these processes.

Microorganisms produce a variety of fermentation products depending on the enzymes and substrates available to each. Though fermentation products are wastes to the cells that make them, many are useful to humans, including ethanol (drinking alcohol) and lactic acid (used in the production of cheese, sauerkraut, and pickles) **(Figure 5.22)**.



▲ Figure 5.22 Representative fermentation products and the organisms that produce them. All of the organisms are bacteria except *Saccharomyces* and *Aspergillus*, which are fungi. *Why does Swiss cheese have holes, but cheddar does not?*

Figure 5.22 *Swiss cheese is a product of Propionibacterium, which ferments pyruvic acid to produce CO_2; bubbles of this gas cause the holes in the cheese. Cheddar is a product of Lactobacillus, which does not produce gas.*

Other fermentation products are harmful to human health and industry. For example, fermentation products of the bacterium *Clostridium perfringens* (klos-trid´ē-um per-frin´jens) are involved in the necrosis (death) of muscle tissue associated with gangrene. Pasteur discovered that bacterial contaminants in grape juice fermented the sugar into unwanted products such as acetic acid and lactic acid, which spoiled the wine (Chapter 1).

Fermentation products can be used to identify microbes. For example, *Proteus* ferments glucose but not lactose, whereas *Escherichia* and *Enterobacter* ferment both. Further, glucose fermentation by *Escherichia* produces mixed acids (acetic, lactic, succinic, and formic), whereas *Enterobacter* produces 2,3-butanediol. Common fermentation tests contain a carbohydrate and a pH indicator, which is a molecule that changes color as the pH changes. An organism that utilizes the carbohydrate causes a change in pH, causing the pH indicator to change color. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Fermentation***

In this section on carbohydrate catabolism, we have spent some time examining glycolysis, alternatives to glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and electron transport because these pathways are central to metabolism. They generate all of the precursor metabolites and most of the ATP needed for anabolism. We have seen that some ATP is generated in respiration by substrate-level phosphorylation (in both glycolysis and the Krebs cycle) but that most ATP is generated by oxidative phosphorylation via chemiosmosis utilizing the reducing power of NADH and $FADH_2$. We also saw that some microorganisms use fermentation to provide an alternate source of NAD^+.

Thus far we have concentrated on the catabolism of glucose as a representative carbohydrate, but microorganisms can also use other molecules as energy sources. In the next section we will examine catabolic pathways that utilize lipids and proteins.

Other Catabolic Pathways

Lipid and protein molecules contain abundant energy in their chemical bonds and can also be converted into precursor metabolites. These molecules are first catabolized to produce their constituent monomers, which serve as substrates in glycolysis and the Krebs cycle.

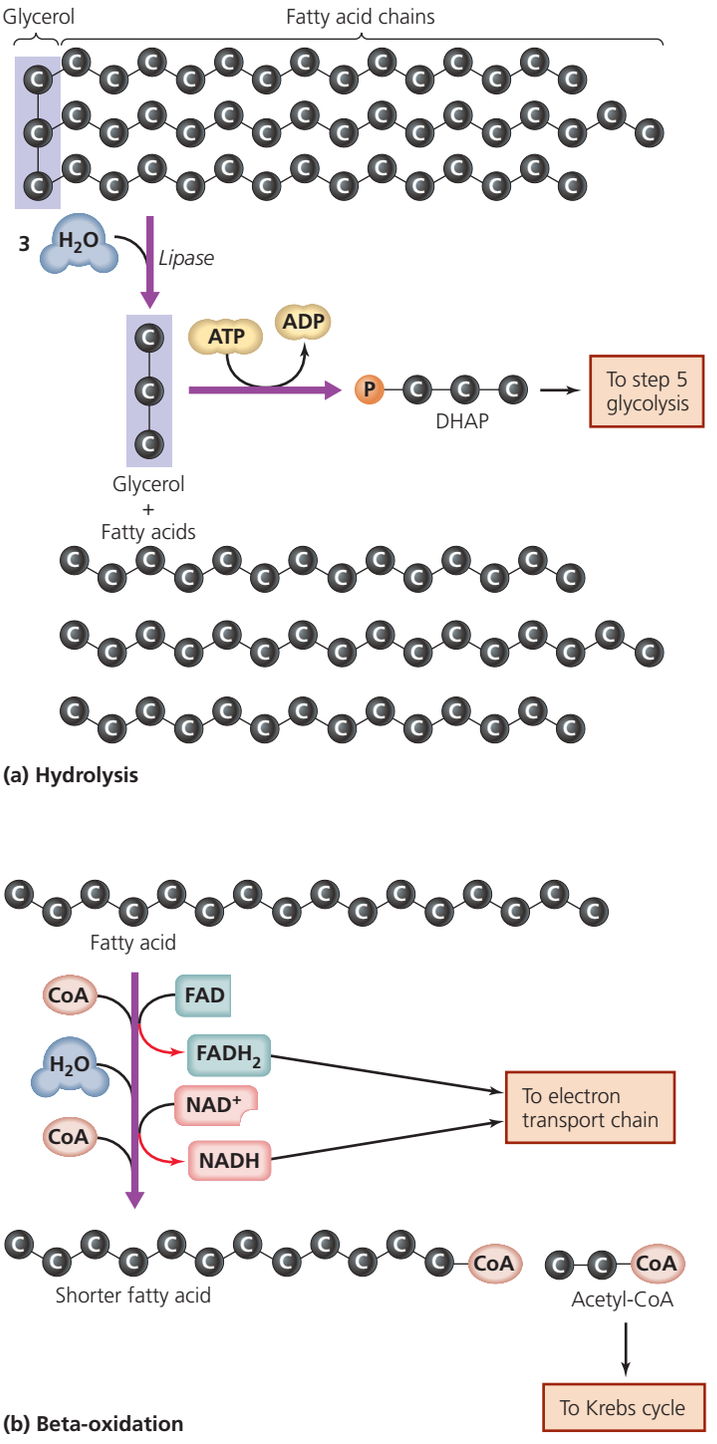
Lipid Catabolism

Learning Outcome

5.17 Explain how lipids are catabolized for energy and metabolite production.

The most common lipids involved in ATP and metabolite production are fats, which (as we saw in Chapter 2) consist of glycerol and fatty acids. In the first step of fat catabolism, enzymes called *lipases* hydrolyze the bonds attaching the glycerol to the fatty acid chains **(Figure 5.23a)**.

Subsequent reactions further catabolize the glycerol and fatty acid molecules. Glycerol is converted to DHAP, which, as one of the substrates of glycolysis, is oxidized to pyruvic acid (see Figure 5.13 4). The fatty acids are degraded in a catabolic process known as **beta-oxidation**[9] **(Figure 5.23b)**. In this process, enzymes repeatedly split off pairs of the hydrogenated



▲ **Figure 5.23 Catabolism of a fat molecule.** **(a)** Lipase breaks fats into glycerol and three fatty acids by hydrolysis. Glycerol is converted to DHAP, which can be catabolized via glycolysis and the Krebs cycle. **(b)** Fatty acids are catabolized via beta-oxidation reactions that produce molecules of acetyl-CoA and reduced coenzymes (NADH and $FADH_2$).

carbon atoms that make up a fatty acid and join each pair to coenzyme A to form acetyl-CoA, until the entire fatty acid has been converted to molecules of acetyl-CoA. Beta-oxidation also generates NADH and $FADH_2$, and more of these molecules are generated when the acetyl-CoA is utilized in the Krebs cycle to generate ATP (see Figure 5.16). As is the case for the Krebs cycle, the enzymes involved in beta-oxidation are located in the cytosol of prokaryotes and in the mitochondria of eukaryotes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How and where do cells use the molecules of NADH and $FADH_2$ produced during beta-oxidation?

Protein Catabolism

Learning Outcome

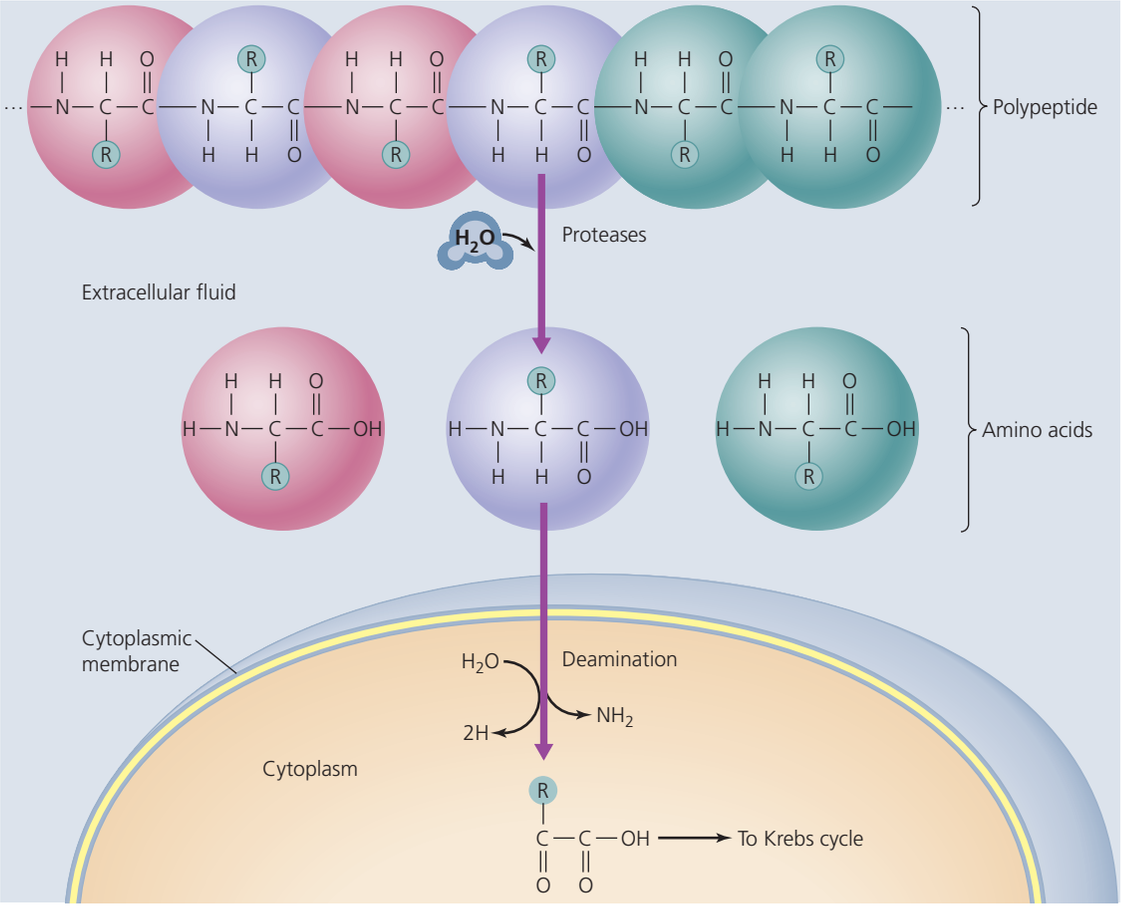
5.18 Explain how proteins are catabolized for energy and metabolite production.

[9]"Beta" is part of the name of this process because enzymes break the bond at the second carbon atom from the end of a fatty acid, and beta is the second letter in the Greek alphabet.

Some microorganisms, notably food-spoilage bacteria, pathogenic bacteria, and fungi, normally catabolize proteins as an important source of energy and metabolites. Most cells catabolize proteins and their constituent amino acids only when carbon sources such as glucose and fat are not available.

Generally, proteins are too large to cross cytoplasmic membranes, so prokaryotes typically conduct the first step in the process of protein catabolism outside the cell by secreting **proteases** (prō´tē-āz-ez)—enzymes that split proteins into their constituent amino acids **(Figure 5.24)**. Once released by the action of proteases, amino acids are transported into the cell, where special enzymes split off amino groups in a reaction called **deamination.** The resulting altered molecules enter the Krebs cycle, and the amino groups are either recycled to synthesize other amino acids or excreted as nitrogenous wastes such as ammonia (NH_3), ammonium ion (NH_4^+), or trimethylamine oxide (TMAO). As **Highlight: What's That Fishy Smell?** on p. 148 describes, TMAO plays an interesting role in the production of the odor we describe as "fishy."

Thus far, we have examined the catabolism of carbohydrates, lipids, and proteins. Now we turn our attention to the synthesis of these molecules, beginning with the anabolic reactions of photosynthesis.



▶ **Figure 5.24 Protein catabolism.** Secreted proteases hydrolyze proteins, releasing amino acids, which are deaminated after uptake to produce molecules used as substrates in the Krebs cycle. R indicates the side group, which varies among amino acids.

HIGHLIGHT

WHAT'S THAT FISHY SMELL?

Ever wonder why fish at the supermarket sometimes have that "fishy" smell? The reason relates to bacterial metabolism.

Trimethylamine oxide (TMAO) is an odorless, nitrogenous waste product of fish metabolism used to dispose of excess nitrogen (as amine groups) produced in the catabolism of amino acids. TMAO does not affect the smell, appearance, or taste of fresh fish; however, some bacteria use TMAO as a final electron acceptor in anaerobic respiration, reducing TMAO to trimethyl amine (TMA), a compound with a very definite—and, for most people, unpleasant—"fishy" odor. Thus, the "fishy" odor is really the odor of contaminating bacteria. A human nose is able to detect even a few molecules of TMA. Because bacterial degradation of fish begins as soon as a fish is dead, a fish that smells fresh probably is fresh, or was frozen while still fresh.

Photosynthesis

Learning Outcome

5.19 Define *photosynthesis.*

Many organisms use only organic molecules as a source of energy and metabolites, but where do they acquire organic molecules? Ultimately every food chain begins with anabolic pathways in organisms that synthesize their own organic molecules from inorganic carbon dioxide. Most of these organisms capture light energy from the sun and use it to drive the synthesis of carbohydrates from CO_2 and H_2O by a process called **photosynthesis.** Cyanobacteria, purple sulfur bacteria, green sulfur bacteria, green nonsulfur bacteria, purple nonsulfur bacteria, algae, green plants, and a few protozoa are photosynthetic. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Photosynthesis: Overview***

CRITICAL THINKING

Photosynthetic organisms are rarely pathogenic. Why?

Chemicals and Structures

Learning Outcome

5.20 Compare and contrast the basic chemicals and structures involved in photosynthesis in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

Photosynthetic organisms capture light energy with pigment molecules, the most important of which are **chlorophylls.** Chlorophyll molecules are composed of a hydrocarbon tail attached to a light-absorbing *active site* centered around a magnesium ion (Mg^{2+}) **(Figure 5.25a)**. The active sites are structurally similar to the cytochrome molecules found in electron transport chains, except that chlorophylls use Mg^{2+} rather than Fe^{2+}. Chlorophylls, typically designated with letters—for example, chlorophyll *a,* chlorophyll *b,* and bacteriochlorophyll *a*—vary slightly in the lengths and structures of their hydrocarbon tails and in the atoms that extend from their active sites. Green plants, algae, photosynthetic protozoa, and cyanobacteria principally use chlorophyll *a,* whereas green and purple bacteria use bacteriochlorophylls.

The slight structural differences among chlorophylls cause them to absorb light of different wavelengths. For example, chlorophyll *a* from algae best absorbs light with wavelengths of about 425 nm and 660 nm (violet and red), whereas bacteriochlorophyll *a* from purple bacteria best absorbs light with wavelengths of about 350 nm and 880 nm (ultraviolet and infrared). Because they best use light with differing wavelengths, algae and purple bacteria successfully occupy different ecological niches.

Cells arrange numerous molecules of chlorophyll and other pigments within a protein matrix to form light-harvesting matrices called **photosystems** that are embedded in cellular membranes called **thylakoids.** Thylakoids of photosynthetic prokaryotes are invaginations of their cytoplasmic membranes **(Figure 5.25b)**. The thylakoids of eukaryotes appear to be formed from infoldings of the inner membranes of chloroplasts, though thylakoid membranes and the inner membranes are not connected in mature chloroplasts (see Figure 3.40). Thylakoids of chloroplasts are arranged in stacks called *grana.* An outer chloroplast membrane surrounds the grana, and the space between the outer membrane and the thylakoid membrane is known as the *stroma.* The thylakoids enclose a narrow, convoluted cavity called the *thylakoid space.*

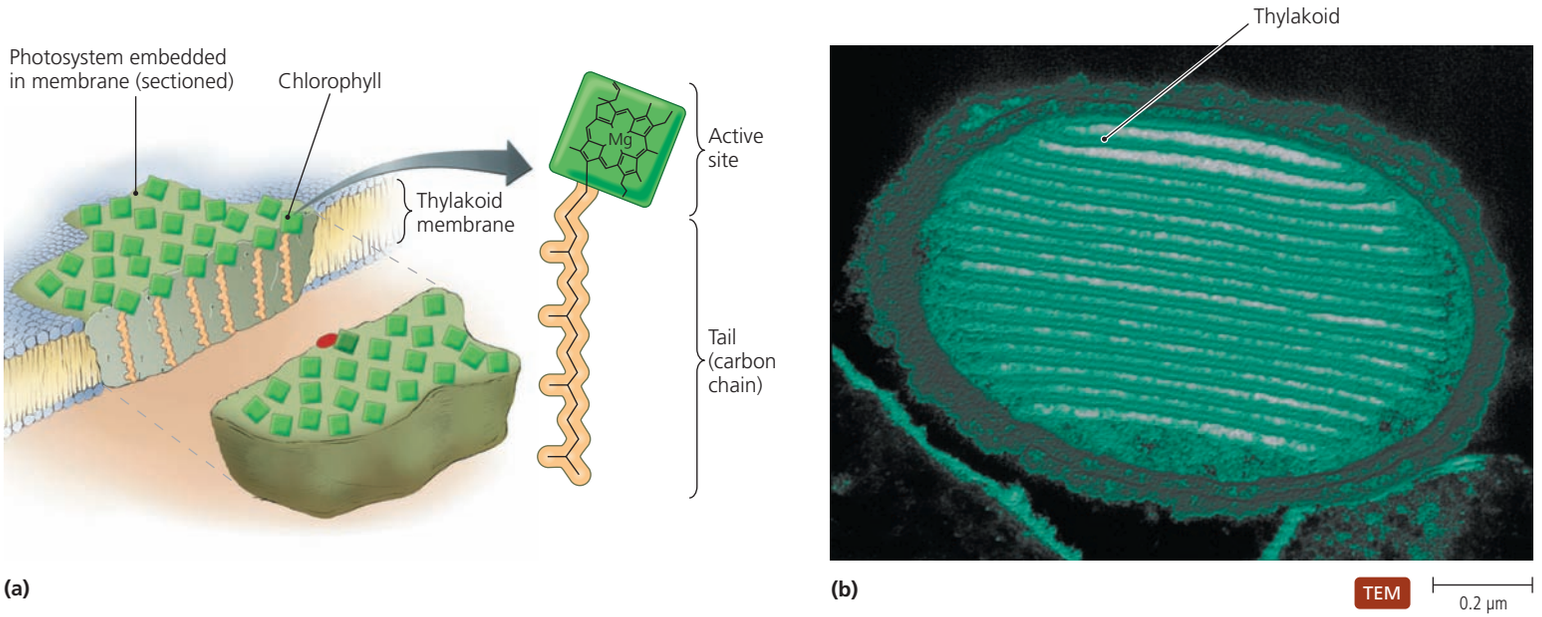
There are two types of photosystems, named photosystem I (PS I) and photosystem II (PS II), in the order of their discovery. Photosystems absorb light energy and use redox reactions to store this energy in molecules of ATP and NADPH. Because they depend on light energy, these reactions of photosynthesis are classified as **light-dependent reactions.** Photosynthesis also involves **light-independent reactions** that actually synthesize glucose from carbon dioxide and water. Historically, these reactions were called *light* and *dark reactions,* respectively, but this older terminology implies that light-independent reactions occur only in the dark, which is not the case. We first consider the light-dependent reactions of the two photosystems.

Light-Dependent Reactions

Learning Outcomes

5.21 Describe the components and function of the two photosystems, PS I and PS II.

5.22 Contrast cyclic and noncyclic photophosphorylation.



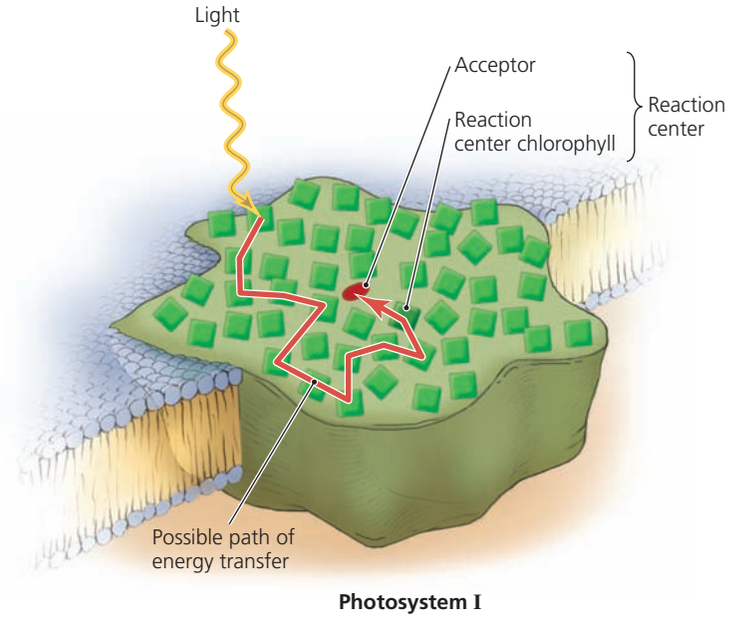
▲ **Figure 5.25 Photosynthetic structures in a prokaryote.** **(a)** Chlorophyll molecules are grouped together in thylakoid membranes to form photosystems. Chlorophyll contains a light-absorbing active site that is connected to a long hydrocarbon tail. The chlorophyll shown here is bacteriochlorophyll *a*; other chlorophyll types differ in the side chains protruding from the central ring. **(b)** Prokaryotic thylakoids are infoldings of the cytoplasmic membrane, here in a cyanobacterium.

The pigments of photosystem I absorb light energy and transfer it to a neighboring molecule within the photosystem until the energy eventually arrives at a special chlorophyll molecule called the **reaction center chlorophyll** (Figure 5.26). Light energy from hundreds of such transfers excites electrons in the reaction center chlorophyll, which passes its excited electrons to the reaction center's electron acceptor, which is the initial carrier of an electron transport chain. As electrons move down the chain, their energy is used to pump protons across the membrane, creating a proton motive force. In prokaryotes, protons are pumped out of the cell; in eukaryotes, they are pumped from the stroma into the interior of the thylakoids.

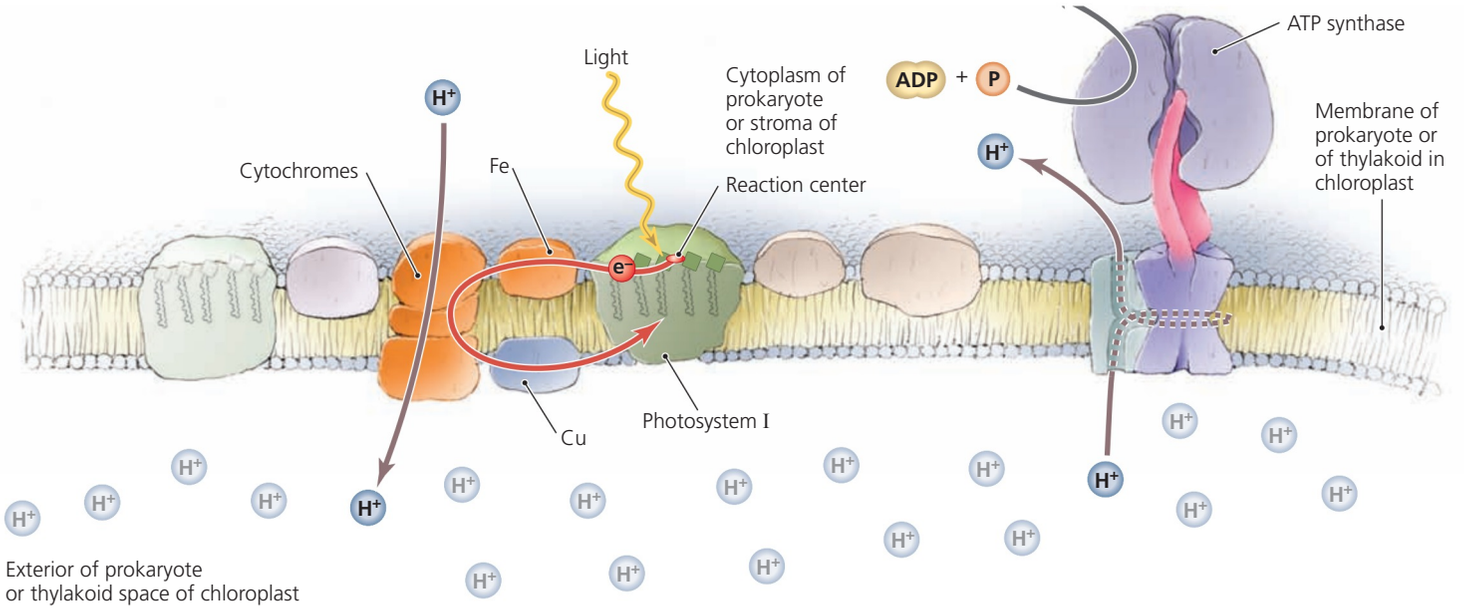
The proton motive force is used in chemiosmosis, in which, you should recall, protons flow down their electrochemical gradient through ATPases, which generate ATP. In photosynthesis, this process is called *photophosphorylation*, which can be either cyclic or noncyclic.

Cyclic Photophosphorylation

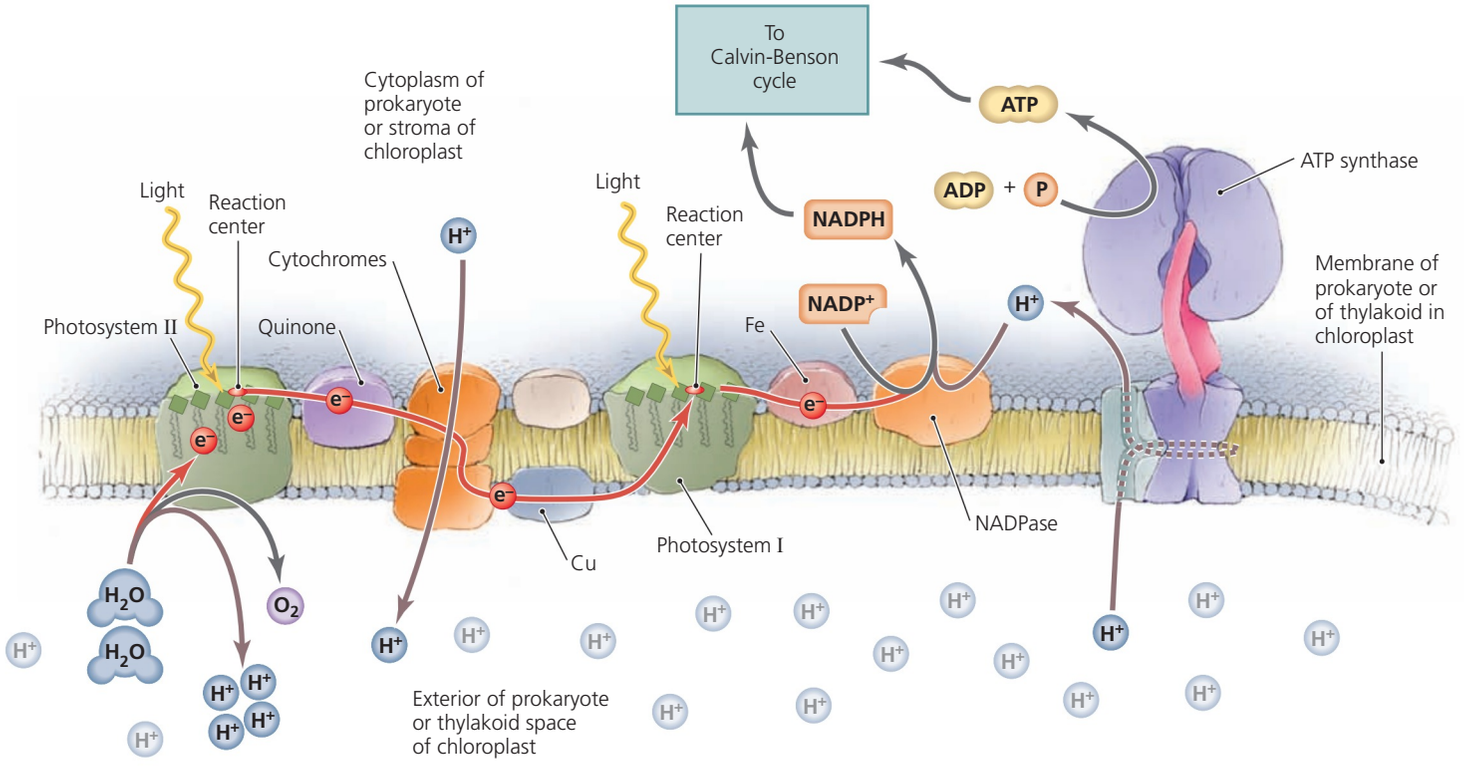
Electrons moving from one carrier molecule to another in a thylakoid must eventually pass to a final electron acceptor. In **cyclic photophosphorylation,** which occurs in all photosynthetic organisms, the final electron acceptor is the original reaction center chlorophyll that donated the electrons (Figure 5.27a). In other words, when light energy excites electrons in PS I, they pass down an electron transport chain and return to PS I. The energy from the electrons is used to establish a proton gradient that drives the phosphorylation of ADP to ATP by chemiosmosis. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Photosynthesis: Cyclic Photophosphorylation***



▲ **Figure 5.26 Reaction center of a photosystem.** Light energy absorbed by pigments anywhere in the photosystem is transferred to the reaction center chlorophyll, where it is used to excite electrons for delivery to the reaction center's electron acceptor.



(a) Cyclic photophosphorylation



(b) Noncyclic photophosphorylation

▲ Figure 5.27 The light-dependent reactions of photosynthesis: Cyclic and noncyclic photophosphorylation. (a) In cyclic photophosphorylation, electrons excited by light striking photosystem I travel down an electron transport chain (red arrows) and then return to the reaction center. **(b)** In noncyclic photophosphorylation, light striking photosystem II excites electrons that are passed to photosystem I, simultaneously establishing a proton gradient. Light energy collected by photosystem I further excites the electrons, which are used to reduce $NADP^+$ to NADPH via an electron transport chain. In oxygenic organisms, new electrons are provided by the lysis of H_2O (bottom left). In both types of photophosphorylation, the proton gradient drives the phosphorylation of ADP by ATP synthase (chemiosmosis).

TABLE 5.5 A Comparison of the Three Types of Phosphorylation

	Source of Phosphate	Source of Energy	Location in Eukaryotic Cell	Location in Prokaryotic Cell
Substrate-level phosphorylation	Organic molecule	High-energy phosphate bond of donor	Cytosol and mitochondrial matrix	Cytosol
Oxidative phosphorylation	Inorganic phosphate (PO_4^{3-})	Proton motive force	Inner membrane of mitochondrion	Cytoplasmic membrane
Photophosphorylation	Inorganic phosphate (PO_4^{3-})	Proton motive force	Thylakoid of chloroplast	Thylakoid of cytoplasmic membrane

Noncyclic Photophosphorylation

Some photosynthetic bacteria and all plants, algae, and photosynthetic protozoa utilize **noncyclic photophosphorylation** as well. (Exceptions are green and purple sulfur bacteria.) Noncyclic photophosphorylation, which requires both PS I and PS II, not only generates molecules of ATP but also reduces molecules of coenzyme $NADP^+$ to NADPH **(Figure 5.27b)**.

When light energy excites electrons of PS II, they are passed to PS I through an electron transport chain. (Note that photosystem II occurs first in the pathway and photosystem I second, a result of the naming of the photosystems in the order in which they were discovered, not the order in which they operate.) PS I further energizes the electrons with additional light energy and transfers them through an electron transport chain to $NADP^+$, which is thereby reduced to NADPH. The hydrogen ions added to NADPH come from the stroma or cytosol. NADPH subsequently participates in the synthesis of glucose in the light-independent reactions, which we will examine in the next section.

In noncyclic photophosphorylation, a cell must constantly replenish electrons to the reaction center of photosystem II. *Oxygenic* (oxygen-producing) organisms, such as algae, green plants, and cyanobacteria, derive electrons from the dissociation of H_2O (see Figure 5.27b). In these organisms, two molecules of water give up their electrons, producing molecular oxygen (O_2) as a waste product during photosynthesis. *Anoxygenic* photosynthetic bacteria get electrons from inorganic compounds such as H_2S, resulting in a nonoxygen waste such as sulfur.

Table 5.5 compares photophosphorylation to substrate-level and oxidative phosphorylation.

CRITICAL THINKING

We have seen that of the two ways ATP is generated via chemiosmosis—photophosphorylation and oxidative phosphorylation—the former can be cyclical, but the latter is never cyclical. Why can't oxidative phosphorylation be cyclical; that is, why aren't electrons passed back to the molecules that donated them?

To this point, we have examined the use of photosynthetic pigments and thylakoid structure to harvest light energy to produce both ATP and reducing power in the form of NADPH. Next we examine the light-independent reactions of photosynthesis. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Photosynthesis: Noncyclic Photophosphorylation***

Light-Independent Reactions

Learning Outcomes

5.23 Contrast the light-dependent and light-independent reactions of photosynthesis.

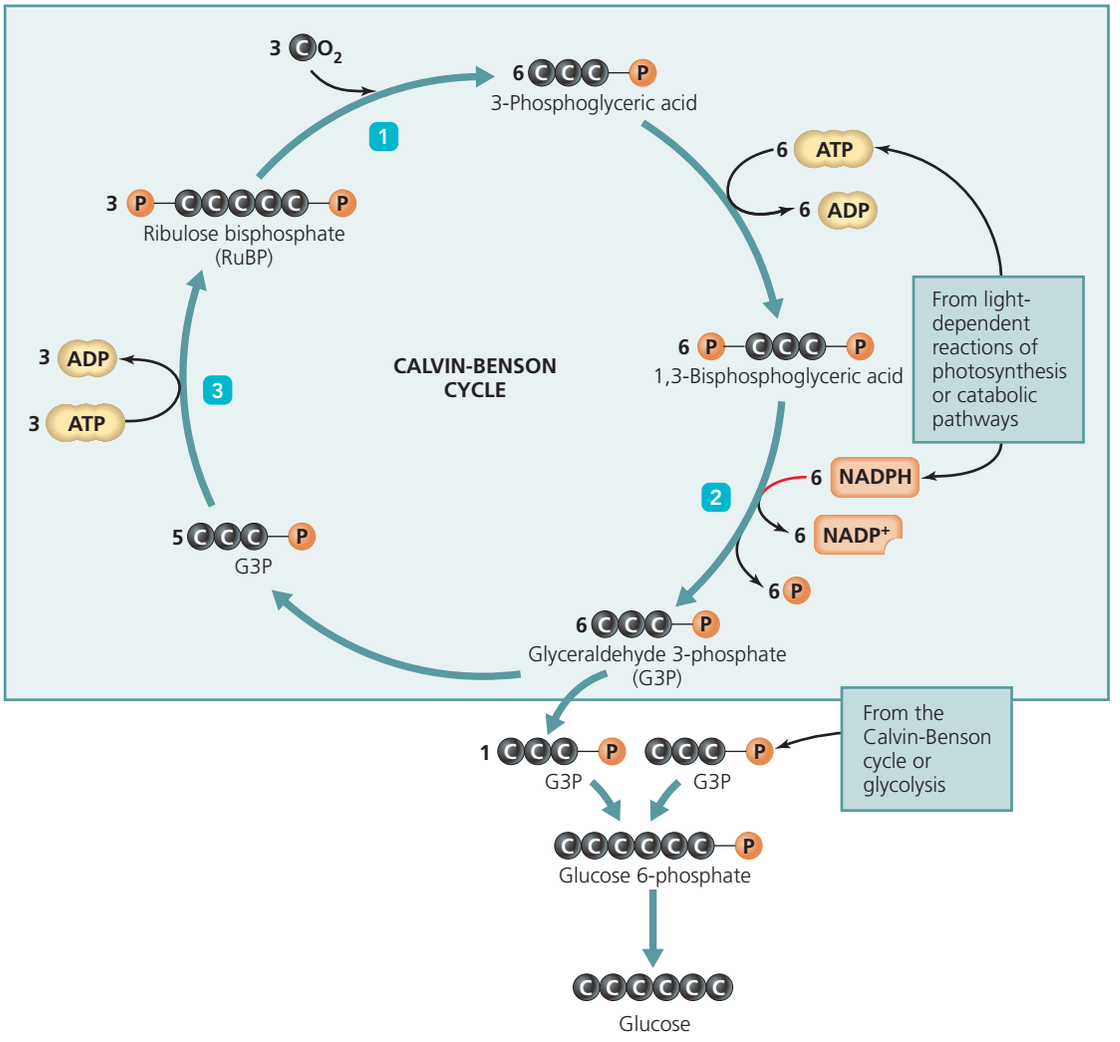
5.24 Describe the reactants and products of the Calvin-Benson cycle.

Light-independent reactions of photosynthesis do not require light directly; instead, they use large quantities of ATP and NADPH generated by the light-dependent reactions. The key reaction of the light-independent pathway of photosynthesis is **carbon fixation** by the **Calvin-Benson cycle,**[10] which involves the attachment of molecules of CO_2 to molecules of a five-carbon organic compound called ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate (RuBP). RuBP is derived initially from phosphorylation of a precursor metabolite produced by the pentose phosphate pathway (see Figure 5.19). The Calvin-Benson cycle is very endergonic—it requires a great deal of energy. Life on Earth is dependent on carbon fixation by this cycle.

The Calvin-Benson cycle is reminiscent of the Krebs cycle in that the substrates of the cycle are regenerated. It is helpful to notice the number of carbon atoms during each part of the three steps of the Calvin-Benson cycle **(Figure 5.28)**:

1. *Fixation of CO_2.* An enzyme attaches three molecules of carbon dioxide (three carbon atoms) to three molecules of RuBP (15 carbon atoms), which are then split to form six molecules of 3-phosphoglyceric acid (18 carbon atoms).
2. *Reduction.* Molecules of NADPH reduce the six molecules of 3-phosphoglyceric acid to form six molecules of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) (18 carbon atoms). These reactions require six molecules each of ATP and NADPH generated by the light-dependent reactions.
3. *Regeneration of RuBP.* The cell regenerates three molecules of RuBP (15 carbon atoms) from five molecules of G3P (15 carbon atoms). It uses the remaining molecule of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to synthesize glucose by reversing the reactions of glycolysis.

[10] Named for the men who elucidated its pathways.



◀ Figure 5.28 Simplified diagram of the Calvin-Benson cycle. 1 Fixation of CO_2. Three molecules of RuBP combine with three molecules of CO_2. 2 Reduction. The resulting molecules are reduced to form six molecules of G3P. 3 Generation of RuBP. Five molecules of G3P are converted to three molecules of RuBP, which completes the cycle. Two turns of the cycle also yield two molecules of G3P, which are polymerized to synthesize glucose 6-phosphate.

In summary, ATP and NADPH from the light-dependent reactions drive the synthesis of glucose from CO_2 in the light-independent reactions of the Calvin-Benson cycle. For every three molecules of CO_2 that enter the Calvin-Benson cycle, a molecule of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) leaves. Glycolysis is subsequently reversed to anabolically combine two molecules of G3P to synthesize glucose 6-phosphate. (A more detailed account of the Calvin-Benson cycle is given in Appendix A on p. A-11.) ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Photosynthesis: Light-Independent Reaction***

The processes of oxygenic photosynthesis and aerobic respiration complement one another to complete both a carbon cycle and an oxygen cycle. During the synthesis of glucose in oxygenic photosynthesis, water and carbon dioxide are used, and oxygen is released as a waste product; in aerobic respiration, oxygen serves as the final electron acceptor in the oxidation of glucose to carbon dioxide and water.

In this section we examined an essential anabolic pathway for life on Earth—photosynthesis, which produces glucose. Next we will consider anabolic pathways involved in the synthesis of other organic molecules.

Other Anabolic Pathways

Learning Outcome

5.25 Define *amphibolic reaction.*

Anabolic reactions are synthesis reactions. As such, they require energy and a source of precursor metabolites. ATP generated in the catabolic reactions of aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration, and fermentation and in the initial redox reactions of photosynthesis provides energy for anabolism. Glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the pentose phosphate pathway provide 12 basic precursor metabolites from which all macromolecules and cellular structures can be made (Table 5.6). Some microorganisms, such as *E. coli,* can synthesize all 12 precursors, whereas other organisms, such as humans, must acquire some precursors in their diets.

Many anabolic pathways are the reversal of the catabolic pathways we have discussed; therefore, much of the material that follows has *in a sense* been discussed in the sections on catabolism. Reactions that can proceed in either direction—toward catabolism or toward anabolism—are said to be **amphibolic reactions.** The following sections

TABLE 5.6 The Twelve Precursor Metabolites

	Pathway That Generates the Metabolite	Examples of Macromolecule Synthesized from Metabolite[a]	Examples of Functional Use
Glucose 6-phosphate	Glycolysis	Lipopolysaccharide	Outer membrane of cell wall
Fructose 6-phosphate	Glycolysis	Peptidoglycan	Cell wall
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P)	Glycolysis	Glycerol portion of lipids	Fats—energy storage
Phosphoglyceric acid	Glycolysis	Amino acids: cysteine, selenocysteine, glycine, and serine	Enzymes
Phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP)	Glycolysis	Amino acids: phenylalanine, tryptophan, and tyrosine	Enzymes
Pyruvic acid	Glycolysis	Amino acids: alanine, leucine, and valine	Enzymes
Ribose 5-phosphate	Pentose phosphate pathway	DNA, RNA, amino acid, and histidine	Genome, enzymes
Erythrose 4-phosphate	Pentose phosphate pathway	Amino acids: phenylalanine, tryptophan, and tyrosine	Enzymes
Acetyl-CoA	Krebs cycle	Fatty acid portion of lipids	Cytoplasmic membrane
a-Ketoglutaric acid	Krebs cycle	Amino acids: arginine, glutamic acid, glutamine, and proline	Enzymes
Succinyl-CoA	Krebs cycle	Heme	Cytochrome electron carrier
Oxaloacetate	Krebs cycle	Amino acids: aspartic acid, asparagine, isoleucine, lysine, methionine, and threonine	Enzymes

[a]Examples given apply to the bacterium *E. coli.*

discuss the synthesis of carbohydrates, lipids, amino acids, and nucleotides. (Chapter 7 covers anabolic reactions that are closely linked to genetics—the polymerizations of amino acids into proteins and of nucleotides into RNA and DNA.)

Carbohydrate Biosynthesis

Learning Outcome

5.26 Describe the biosynthesis of carbohydrates.

As we have seen, anabolism begins in photosynthetic organisms with carbon fixation by the enzymes of the Calvin-Benson cycle to form molecules of G3P. Enzymes use G3P as the starting point for synthesizing sugars, complex polysaccharides such as starch, cellulose for cell walls in algae, and peptidoglycan for cell walls of bacteria. Animals and protozoa synthesize the storage molecule glycogen.

Some cells are able to synthesize sugars from noncarbohydrate precursors such as amino acids, glycerol, and fatty acids by pathways collectively called *gluconeogenesis*[11] (glū´kō-nē-ō-jen´ĕ-sis; **Figure 5.29**). Most of the reactions of gluconeogenesis are amphibolic, using enzymes of glycolysis in reverse, but four of the reactions require unique enzymes. Gluconeogenesis is highly endergonic and can proceed only if there is an adequate supply of energy.

[11]From Greek *glukus*, meaning "sweet;" *neo*, meaning "new;" and *genesis*, meaning "generate."

CRITICAL THINKING

A scientist moves a green plant grown in sunlight to a room with 24 hours of artificial green light. Will this increase or decrease the plant's rate of photosynthesis? Why?

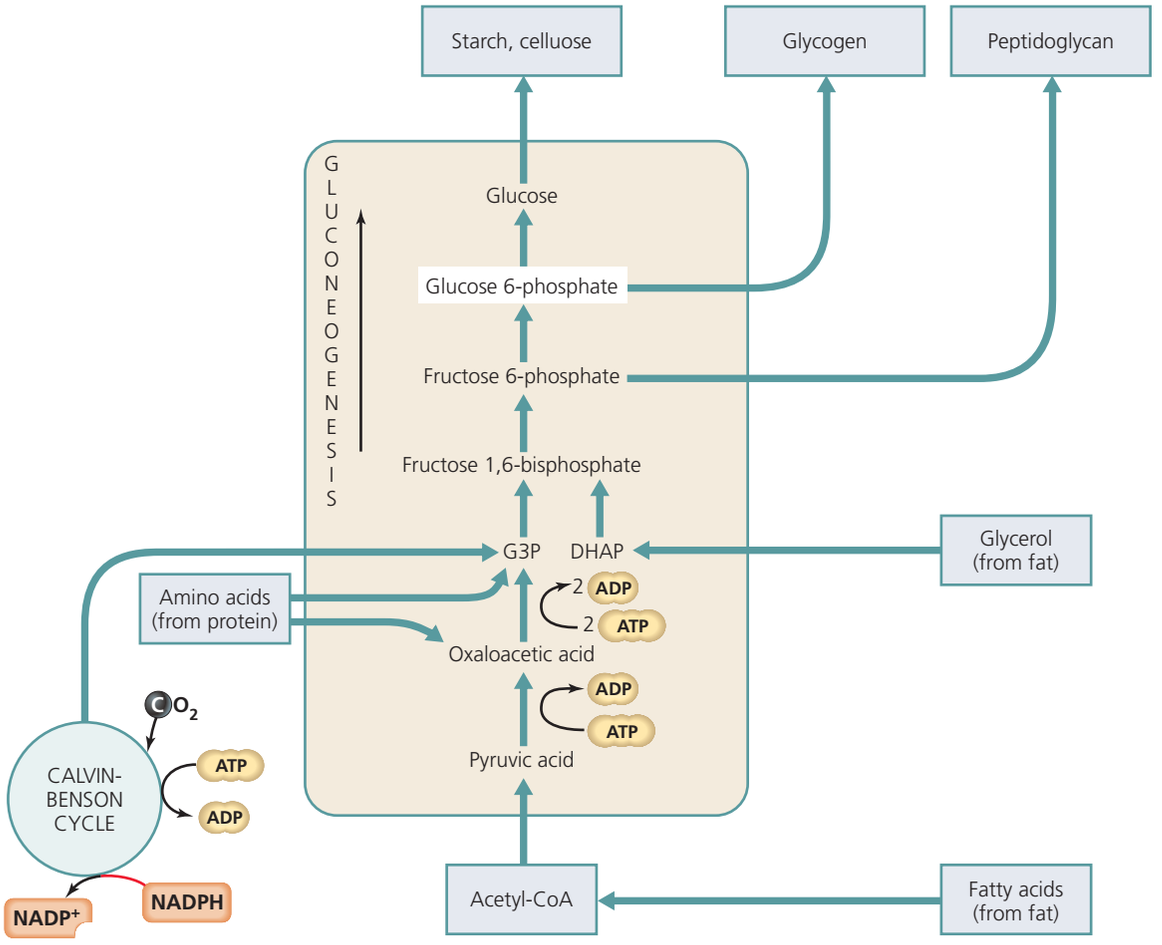
Lipid Biosynthesis

Learning Outcome

5.27 Describe the biosynthesis of lipids.

Lipids are a diverse group of organic molecules that function as energy storage compounds and as components of membranes (as we saw in Chapter 2). *Carotenoids,* which are reddish pigments found in many bacterial and plant photosystems, are also lipids.

Because of their variety, it is not surprising that lipids are synthesized by a variety of routes. For example, fats are synthesized in anabolic reactions that are the reverse of their catabolism—cells polymerize glycerol and three fatty acids **(Figure 5.30)**. Glycerol is derived from G3P generated by the Calvin-Benson cycle and glycolysis; the fatty acids are produced by the linkage of two-carbon acetyl-CoA molecules to one another by a sequence of endergonic reactions that effectively reverse the catabolic reactions of beta-oxidation. Other lipids, such as steroids, are synthesized in complex pathways involving polymerizations and isomerizations of sugar and amino acid metabolites.



◀ Figure 5.29 The role of gluconeogenesis in the biosynthesis of complex carbohydrates. Complex carbohydrates are synthesized from simple sugar molecules such as glucose, glucose 6-phosphate, and fructose 6-phosphate. Starch and cellulose are found in algae; glycogen is found in animals, protozoa, and fungi; and peptidoglycan is found in bacteria.

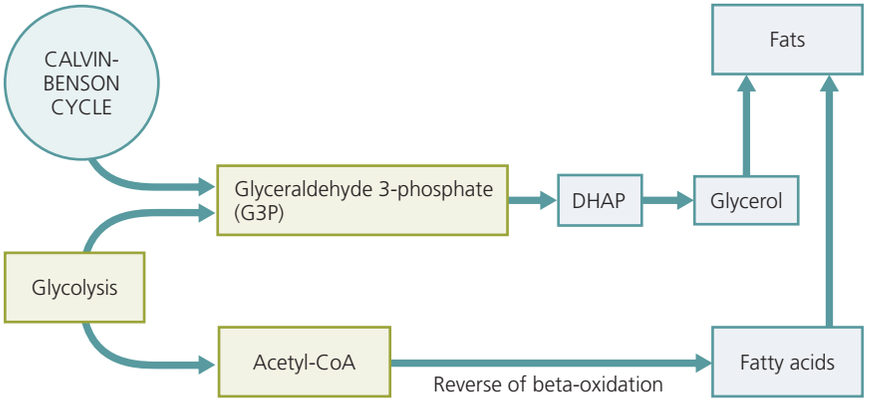
Mycobacterium tuberculosis (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis), the pathogen that causes tuberculosis, makes copious amounts of a waxy lipid called *mycolic acid*, which is incorporated into its cell wall. The arduous, energy-intensive process of making long lipid chains explains why this organism grows slowly and why tuberculosis requires a long course of treatment with antimicrobial drugs.

Amino Acid Biosynthesis

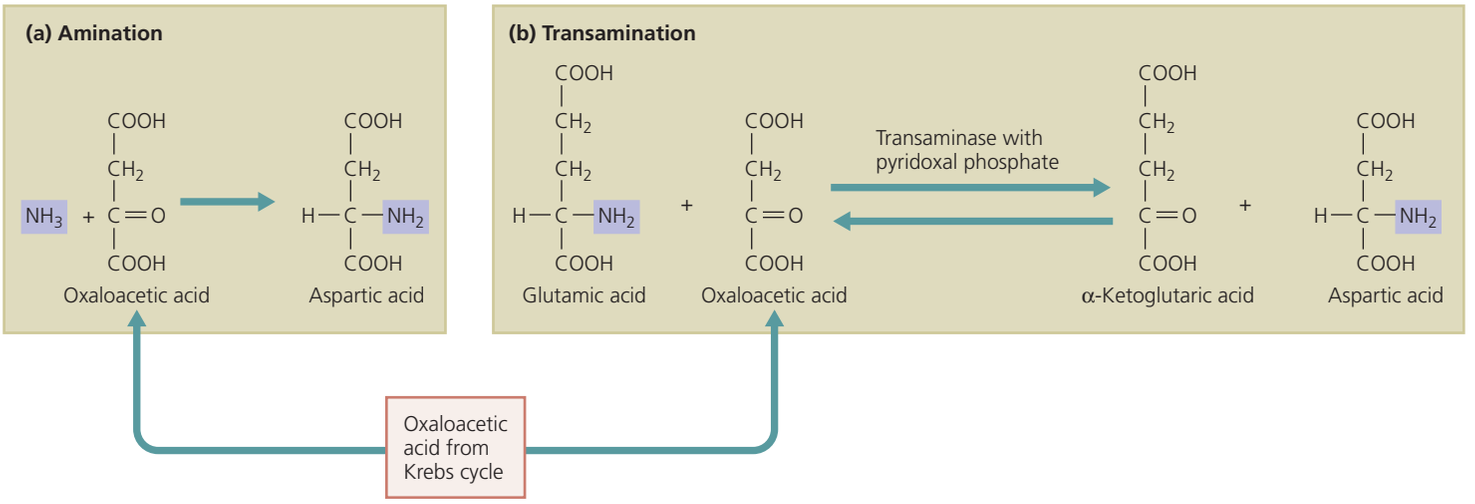
Learning Outcome

5.28 Describe the biosynthesis of amino acids.

Cells synthesize amino acids from precursor metabolites derived from glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the pentose phosphate pathway and from other amino acids. Some organisms (such as *E. coli* and most plants and algae) synthesize all their amino acids from precursor metabolites. Other organisms, including humans, cannot synthesize certain amino acids, called *essential amino acids;* they must be acquired in the diet. One extreme example is *Lactobacillus* (lak´tō-bă-sil´ŭs), a bacterium that ferments milk and produces some cheeses. This microorganism cannot synthesize any amino acids; it acquires all of them by catabolizing proteins in its environment.



◀ Figure 5.30 Biosynthesis of fat, a lipid. A fat molecule is synthesized from glycerol and three molecules of fatty acid, the precursors of which are produced in glycolysis.



▲ Figure 5.31 Examples of the synthesis of amino acids via amination and transamination. **(a)** In amination, an amine group from ammonia is added to a precursor metabolite. In this example, oxaloacetic acid is converted into the amino acid aspartic acid. **(b)** In transamination, the amine group is derived from an existing amino acid. In the example shown here, the amino acid glutamic acid donates its amine group to oxaloacetic acid, which is converted into aspartic acid. Note that transamination is a reversible reaction.

Precursor metabolites are converted to amino acids by the addition of an amine group. This process is called **amination** when the amine group comes from ammonia (NH_3); an example is the formation of aspartic acid from NH_3 and the Krebs cycle intermediate oxaloacetic acid **(Figure 5.31a)**. Amination reactions are the reverse of the catabolic deamination reactions we discussed previously. More commonly, however, a cell moves the amine group from one amino acid and adds it to a metabolite, producing a different amino acid. This process is called **transamination** because the amine group is transferred from one amino acid to another **(Figure 5.31b)**. All transamination enzymes use a coenzyme, *pyridoxal phosphate,* which is derived from vitamin B_6.

Ribozymes of ribosomes polymerize amino acids into proteins. (Chapter 7 examines this energy-demanding process because it is intimately linked with genetics.)

CRITICAL THINKING

What class of enzyme is involved in amination reactions? What class of enzyme catalyzes transaminations?

Nucleotide Biosynthesis

Learning Outcome

5.29 Describe the biosynthesis of nucleotides.

The building blocks of nucleic acids are nucleotides, each of which consists of a five-carbon sugar, a phosphate group, and a purine or pyrimidine base (see Figure 2.25a). Nucleotides are produced from precursor metabolites of glycolysis and the Krebs cycle **(Figure 5.32)**:

- The five-carbon sugars—ribose in RNA and deoxyribose in DNA—are derived from ribose 5-phosphate from the pentose phosphate pathway.
- The phosphate group is derived ultimately from ATP.
- Purines and pyrimidines are synthesized in a series of ATP-requiring reactions from the amino acids glutamine and aspartic acid derived from Krebs cycle intermediates, ribose 5-phosphate, and *folic acid.* The latter is synthesized by many bacteria and protozoa but is a vitamin for humans.

(Chapter 7 examines the anabolic reactions by which polymerases polymerize nucleotides to form DNA and RNA.)

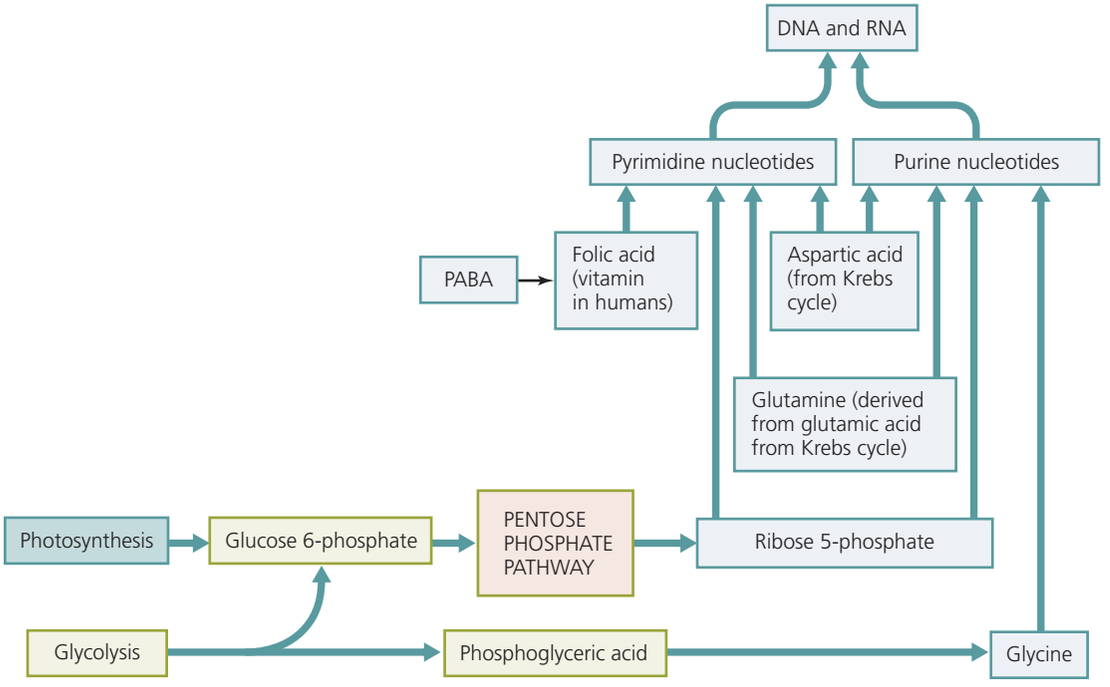
Integration and Regulation of Metabolic Functions

Learning Outcomes

5.30 Describe interrelationships between catabolism and anabolism in terms of ATP and substrates.

5.31 Discuss regulation of metabolic activity.

As we have seen, catabolic and anabolic reactions interact with one another in several ways. First, ATP molecules produced by catabolism are used to drive anabolic reactions. Second, catabolic pathways produce precursor metabolites to use as substrates for anabolic reactions. Additionally, most metabolic pathways are amphibolic; they function as part of either catabolism or anabolism as needed.



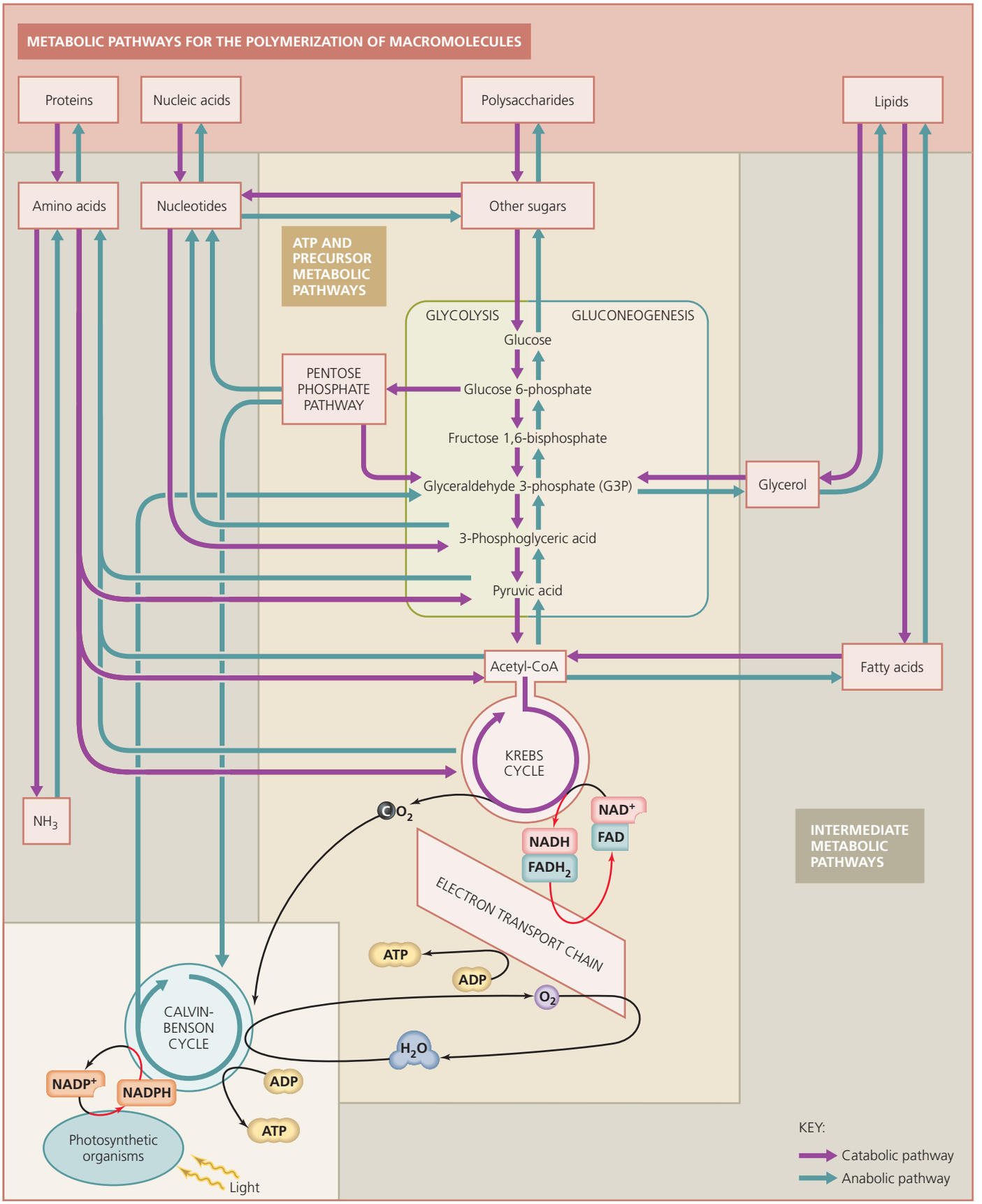
◀ Figure 5.32 The biosynthesis of nucleotides.

Cells regulate metabolism in a variety of ways to maximize efficiency in growth and reproductive rate. Among the mechanisms involved are the following:

- Cells synthesize or degrade channel and transport proteins to increase or decrease the concentration of chemicals in the cytosol or organelles.
- Cells often synthesize the enzymes needed to catabolize a particular substrate only when that substrate is available. For instance, the enzymes of beta-oxidation are not produced when there are no fatty acids to catabolize.
- If two energy sources are available, cells catabolize the more energy efficient of the two. For example, a bacterium growing in the presence of both glucose and lactose will produce enzymes only for the transport and catabolism of glucose. Once the supply of glucose is depleted, lactose-utilizing proteins are produced.
- Cells synthesize the metabolites they need, but they typically cease synthesis if a metabolite is available as a nutrient. For instance, bacteria grown with an excess of aspartic acid will cease the amination of oxaloacetic acid (see Figure 5.31).
- Eukaryotic cells keep metabolic processes from interfering with each other by isolating particular enzymes within membrane-bound organelles. For example, proteases sequestered within lysosomes digest phagocytized proteins without destroying vital proteins in the cytosol.
- Cells use inhibitory and excitatory allosteric sites on enzymes to control the activity of enzymes (see Figure 5.10).
- Feedback inhibition slows or stops anabolic pathways when the product is in abundance (see Figure 5.11).
- Cells regulate catabolic and anabolic pathways that use the same substrate molecules by requiring different coenzymes for each. For instance, NADH is used almost exclusively with catabolic enzymes, whereas NADPH is typically used for anabolism.

Note that these regulatory mechanisms are generally of two types: *control of gene expression,* in which cells control the amount and timing of protein (enzyme) production, and *control of metabolic expression,* in which cells control the activity of proteins (enzymes) once they have been produced.

Figure 5.33 schematically diagrams some of the numerous interrelationships among the metabolic pathways discussed in this chapter. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Metabolism: The Big Picture***



▲ **Figure 5.33** **Integration of cellular metabolism (shown in an aerobic organism).** Cells possess three major categories of metabolic pathways: pathways for the polymerization of macromolecules (proteins, nucleic acids, polysaccharides, and lipids), intermediate pathways, and ATP and precursor pathways (glycolysis, Krebs cycle, the pentose phosphate pathway, and the Entner-Doudoroff pathway [not shown]). Cells of photosynthetic organisms also have the Calvin-Benson cycle.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

This chapter has MicroFlix. Go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to view movie-quality animations for metabolism.

Basic Chemical Reactions Underlying Metabolism (pp. 125–133)

1. **Metabolism** is the sum of biochemical reactions within the cells of an organism, including **catabolism,** which breaks down molecules and releases energy, and **anabolism,** which synthesizes molecules and uses energy.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Metabolism: Overview*
2. **Precursor metabolites,** often produced in catabolic reactions, are used to synthesize all other organic compounds.
3. **Reduction** reactions are those in which electrons are added. The molecule that donates an electron is **oxidized.** If the electron is part of a hydrogen atom, an oxidation reaction is also called dehydrogenation. Oxidation and reduction reactions always occur in pairs called **oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Oxidation-Reduction Reactions*
4. Three important electron carrier molecules are **nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$),** and **flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD).**
5. Phosphorylation is the addition of phosphate to a molecule. Three types of phosphorylation form ATP: **Substrate-level phosphorylation** involves the transfer of phosphate from a phosphorylated organic compound to ADP. In **oxidative phosphorylation,** energy from redox reactions of respiration is used to attach inorganic phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) to ADP. **Photophosphorylation** is the phosphorylation of ADP with inorganic phosphate using energy from light.
6. Catalysts increase the rates of chemical reactions and are not permanently changed in the process. **Enzymes,** which are organic catalysts, are often named for their **substrates**—the molecules on which they act. Enzymes can be classified as hydrolases, isomerases, ligases (polymerases), lyases, oxidoreductases, or transferases, reflecting their mode of action.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Enzymes: Overview*
7. **Apoenzymes** are the portions of enzymes that may require one or more **cofactors** such as inorganic ions or organic cofactors (also called **coenzymes**). The combination of both apoenzyme and its cofactors is a **holoenzyme.** RNA molecules functioning as enzymes are called **ribozymes.**
8. **Activation energy** is the amount of energy required to initiate a chemical reaction.
9. Substrates fit into the specifically shaped **active sites** of the enzymes that catalyze their reactions.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Enzymes: Steps in a Reaction*
10. Enzymes may be **denatured** by physical and chemical factors such as heat and pH. Denaturation may be reversible or permanent.
11. Enzyme activity proceeds at a rate proportional to the concentration of substrate molecules until all the active sites are filled.
12. **Competitive inhibitors** block active sites and thereby block enzyme activity. **Noncompetitive inhibitors** attach to an allosteric site on an enzyme, altering the active site so that it is no longer functional.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Enzymes: Competitive Inhibition; Enzyme-Substrate Interaction: Noncompetitive Inhibition*
13. **Feedback inhibition** (negative feedback) occurs when the final product of a series of reactions is an allosteric inhibitor of some previous step in the series. Thus, accumulation of the end product "feeds back" into the series a signal that stops the process.

Carbohydrate Catabolism (pp. 133–146)

1. **Glycolysis** involves the splitting of a glucose molecule in a three-stage, 10-step process that ultimately results in two molecules of pyruvic acid and a net gain of two ATP and two NADH molecules.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Glycolysis: Overview, Steps*

2. **Cellular respiration** is a metabolic process that involves the complete oxidation of substrate molecules and the production of ATP following a series of redox reactions.
3. Two carbons from pyruvic acid join coenzyme A to form acetyl-coenzyme A **(acetyl-CoA),** which then enters the **Krebs cycle,** a series of eight enzymatic steps that transfer electrons from acetyl-CoA to coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Krebs Cycle: Overview, Steps*
4. An **electron transport chain** is a series of redox reactions that pass electrons from one membrane-bound carrier to another and then to a final electron acceptor. The energy from these electrons is used to pump protons across the membrane.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Electron Transport Chain: Overview*
5. The four classes of carrier molecules in electron transport systems are flavoproteins, ubiquinones, metal-containing proteins, and cytochromes.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Electron Transport Chain: The Process*
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Electron Transport Chains*
6. Aerobes use oxygen atoms as final electron acceptors in their electron transport chains in a process known as **aerobic respiration,** whereas anaerobes use other inorganic molecules (such as NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, and CO_3^{2-}, or rarely an externally acquired organic molecule) as the final electron acceptor in **anaerobic respiration.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Electron Transport Chain: Factors Affecting ATP Yield*
7. In **chemiosmosis,** ions flow down their electrochemical gradient across a membrane through **ATP synthase** (**ATPase**) to synthesize ATP.
8. A **proton gradient** is an electrochemical gradient of hydrogen ions across a membrane. It has potential energy known as a proton motive force.
9. Oxidative phosphorylation and photophosphorylation use chemiosmosis.
10. **Fermentation** is the partial oxidation of sugar to release energy using a cellular organic molecule rather than an electron transport chain as the final electron acceptor. End products of fermentation, which are often useful to humans and aid in laboratory identification of microbes, include acids, alcohols, and gases.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Fermentation*
11. The **pentose phosphate** and **Entner-Doudoroff pathways** are alternative means for the catabolism of glucose that yield fewer ATP molecules than does glycolysis. However, they produce precursor metabolites not produced in glycolysis.

Other Catabolic Pathways (pp. 146–147)

1. Lipids and proteins can be catabolized into smaller molecules, which can be used as substrates for glycolysis and the Krebs cycle.
2. **Beta-oxidation** is a catabolic process in which enzymes split pairs of hydrogenated carbon atoms from a fatty acid and join them to coenzyme A to form acetyl-CoA.
3. **Proteases** secreted by microorganisms digest proteins outside the microbes' cell walls. The resulting amino acids are moved into the cell and used in anabolism, or **deaminated** and catabolized for energy.

Photosynthesis (pp. 148–152)

1. **Photosynthesis** is a process in which light energy is captured by pigment molecules called **chlorophylls** (bacteriochlorophylls in some bacteria) and transferred to ATP and metabolites. **Photosystems** are networks of light-absorbing chlorophyll molecules and other pigments held within a protein matrix on membranes called **thylakoids.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Photosynthesis: Overview*
2. The redox reactions of photosynthesis are classified as **light-dependent reactions** and **light-independent reactions.**
3. A **reaction center chlorophyll** is a special chlorophyll molecule in a photosystem in which electrons are excited by light energy and passed to an acceptor molecule of an electron transport chain.
4. In **cyclic photophosphorylation,** the electrons return to the original reaction center after passing down the electron transport chain.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Photosynthesis: Cyclic Photophosphorylation*
5. In **noncyclic photophosphorylation,** photosystem II works with photosystem I, and the electrons are used to reduce $NADP^+$ to NADPH. In oxygenic photosynthesis, cyanobacteria, algae, and green plants replenish electrons to the reaction center by dissociation of H_2O molecules, resulting in the release of O_2 molecules. Anoxygenic bacteria derive electrons from inorganic compounds such as H_2S, producing waste such as sulfur.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Photosynthesis: Noncyclic Photophosphorylation*
6. In the light-independent pathway of photosynthesis, **carbon fixation** occurs in the **Calvin-Benson cycle,** in which CO_2 is reduced to produce glucose.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Photosynthesis: Light-Independent Reaction*

Other Anabolic Pathways (pp. 152–155)

1. **Amphibolic reactions** are metabolic reactions that are reversible—they can operate catabolically or anabolically.
2. Some cells are able to synthesize glucose from amino acids, glycerol, and fatty acids via a process called gluconeogenesis.
3. **Amination** reactions involve adding an amine group from ammonia to a metabolite to make an amino acid. **Transamination** occurs when an amine group is transferred from one amino acid to another.
4. Nucleotides are synthesized from precursor metabolites produced by glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and the pentose phosphate pathway.

Integration and Regulation of Metabolic Functions (pp. 155–156)

1. Cells regulate metabolism by control of gene expression or metabolic expression. They control the latter in a variety of ways, including synthesizing or degrading channel proteins and enzymes, sequestering reactions in membrane-bound organelles (seen in eukaryotes), and feedback inhibition.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Metabolism: The Big Picture*

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

For each of the phrases in questions 1–7, indicate the type of metabolism referred to, using the following choices:

a. anabolism only
b. both anabolism and catabolism (amphibolic)
c. catabolism only

1. Breaks a large molecule into smaller ones
2. Includes dehydration synthesis reactions
3. Is exergonic
4. Is endergonic
5. Involves the production of cell membrane constituents
6. Includes hydrolytic reactions
7. Includes metabolism
8. Redox reactions _____.
   a. transfer energy
   b. transfer electrons
   c. involve oxidation and reduction
   d. are involved in all of the above
9. A reduced molecule _____.
   a. has gained electrons
   b. has become more positive in charge
   c. has lost electrons
   d. is an electron donor
10. Activation energy _____.
    a. is the amount of energy required during an activity such as flagellar motion
    b. requires the addition of nutrients in the presence of water
    c. is lowered by the action of organic catalysts
    d. results from the movement of molecules
11. Coenzymes _____.
    a. are types of apoenzymes
    b. are proteins
    c. are inorganic cofactors
    d. are organic cofactors
12. Which of the following statements best describes ribozymes?
    a. Ribozymes are proteins that aid in the production of ribosomes.
    b. Ribozymes are nucleic acids that produce ribose sugars.
    c. Ribozymes store enzymes in ribosomes.
    d. Ribozymes process RNA molecules in eukaryotes.
13. Which of the following does *not* affect the function of enzymes?
    a. ubiquinone
    b. substrate concentration
    c. temperature
    d. competitive inhibitors
14. Most oxidation reactions in bacteria involve the _____.
    a. removal of hydrogen ions and electrons
    b. removal of oxygen
    c. addition of hydrogen ions and electrons
    d. addition of hydrogen ions
15. Under ideal conditions, the fermentation of one glucose molecule by a bacterium allows a net gain of how many ATP molecules?
    a. 2
    b. 4
    c. 38
    d. 0
16. Under ideal conditions, the complete aerobic oxidation of one molecule of glucose by a bacterium allows a net gain of how many ATP molecules?
    a. 2
    b. 4
    c. 38
    d. 0
17. Which of the following statements about the Entner-Doudoroff pathway is *false*?
    a. It is a series of reactions that synthesizes glucose.
    b. Its products are sometimes used to determine the presence of *Pseudomonas*.
    c. It is a pathway of chemical reactions that catabolizes glucose.
    d. It is an alternate pathway to glycolysis.
18. Reactions involved in the light-independent reactions of photosynthesis constitute the _____.
    a. Krebs cycle
    b. Entner-Doudoroff pathway
    c. Calvin-Benson cycle
    d. pentose phosphate pathway
19. The glycolysis pathway is basically _____.
    a. catabolic
    b. amphibolic
    c. anabolic
    d. cyclical
20. A major difference between anaerobic respiration and anaerobic fermentation is _____.
    a. in the use of oxygen
    b. that the former requires breathing
    c. that the latter uses organic molecules within the cell as final electron acceptors
    d. that fermentation only produces alcohol

Matching

1. ____ Occurs when energy from a compound containing phosphate reacts with ADP to form ATP
2. ____ Involves formation of ATP via reduction of coenzymes in the electron transport chain
3. ____ Begins with glycolysis
4. ____ Occurs when all active sites on substrate molecules are filled

A. Saturation
B. Oxidative phosphorylation
C. Substrate-level phosphorylation
D. Photophosphorylation
E. Carbohydrate catabolism

Fill in the Blanks

1. The final electron acceptor in cyclic photophosphorylation is _____.
2. Two ATP molecules are used to initiate glycolysis. Enzymes generate molecules of ATP for each molecule of glucose that undergoes glycolysis. Thus, a net gain of _____ molecules of ATP is produced in glycolysis.
3. The initial catabolism of glucose occurs by glycolysis and/or the _____ and _____ pathways.
4. _____ is a cyclic series of eight reactions involved in the catabolism of acetyl-CoA that yields eight molecules of NADH and two molecules of $FADH_2$.
5. The final electron acceptor in aerobic respiration is _____.
6. Three common inorganic electron acceptors in anaerobic respiration are _____, _____, and _____.

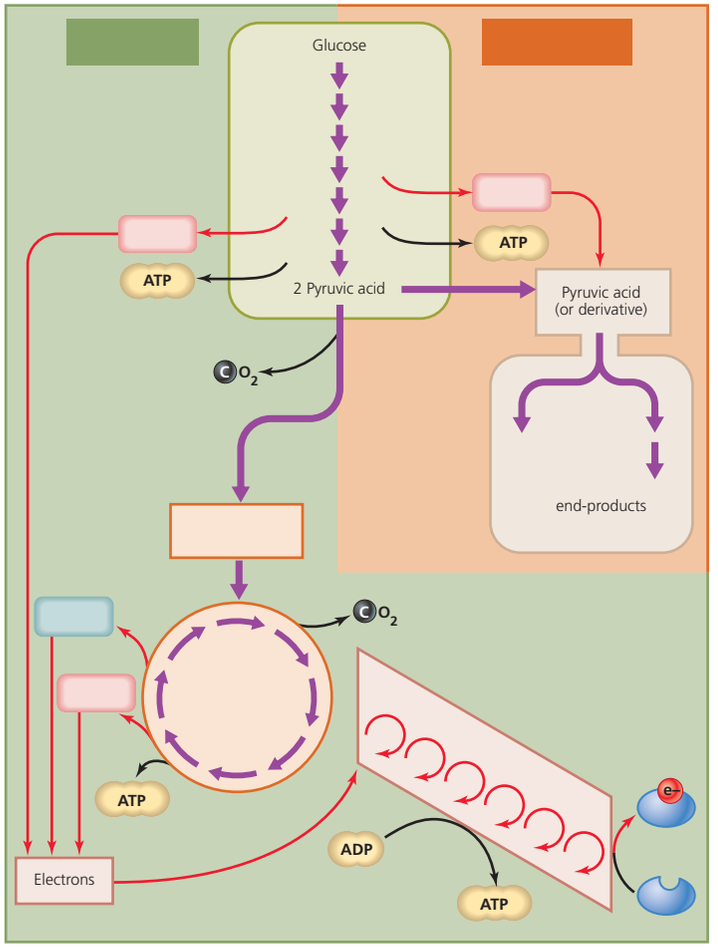
7. Chemolithotrophs *acquire* electrons from (organic/inorganic) _____ compounds.
8. Complete the following chart:

Category of Enzymes	Description
	Catabolizes substrate by adding water
Isomerase	
Ligase/polymerase	
	Moves functional groups such as an acetyl group
	Adds or removes electrons
Lyase	

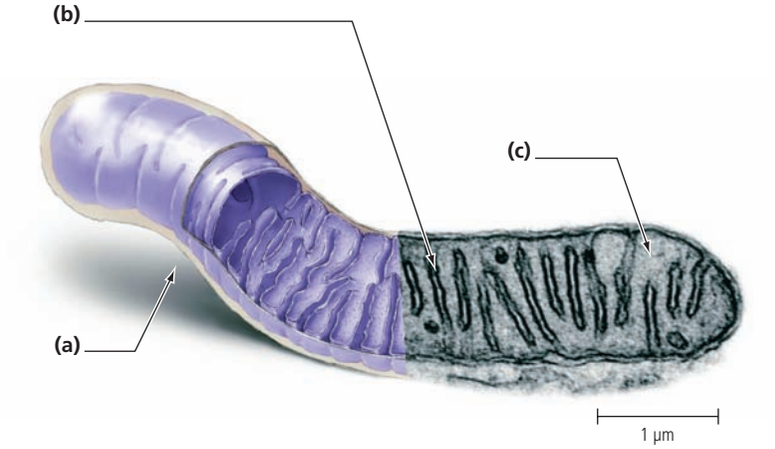
9. The use of a proton motive force to generate ATP is _____.
10. The main coenzymes that carry electrons in catabolic pathways are _____ and _____.

Visualize It!

1. Label the diagram below to indicate acetyl-CoA, electron transport chain, $FADH_2$, fermentation, glycolysis, Krebs cycle, NADH, and respiration. Indicate the net number of molecules of ATP that could be synthesized at each stage during bacterial respiration of one molecule of glucose.



2. Label the electron micrograph to indicate the location of glycolysis, the Krebs cycle, and electron transport chains.

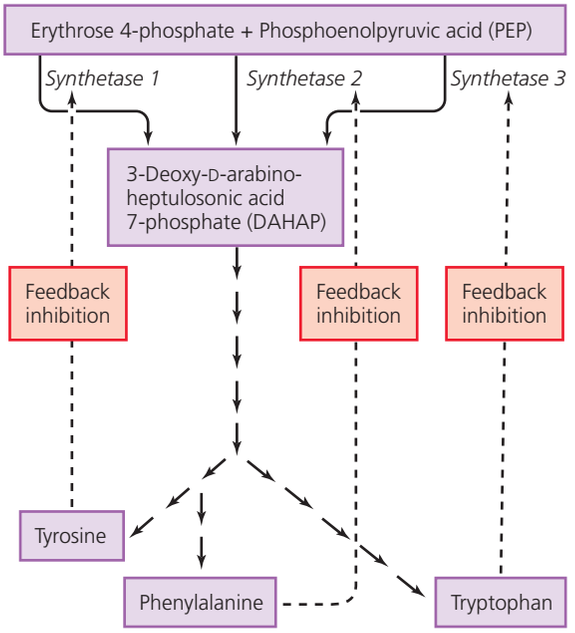


Short Answer

1. How does amination differ from transamination?
2. Why are enzymes necessary for anabolic reactions to occur in living organisms?
3. How do organisms control the rate of metabolic activities in their cells?
4. How does a noncompetitive inhibitor at a single allosteric site affect a whole pathway of enzymatic reactions?
5. Explain the mechanism of negative feedback with respect to enzyme action.
6. Facultative anaerobes can live under either aerobic or anaerobic conditions. What metabolic pathways allow these organisms to continue to harvest energy from sugar molecules in the absence of oxygen?
7. How does oxidation of a molecule occur without oxygen?
8. List at least four groups of microorganisms that are photosynthetic.
9. Why do we breathe oxygen and give off carbon dioxide?
10. Why do cyanobacteria and algae take in carbon dioxide and give off oxygen?
11. What happens to the carbon atoms in sugar catabolized by *Escherichia coli*?
12. How do yeast cells make alcohol and cause bread to rise?
13. Where specifically does the most significant production of ATP occur in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells?
14. Why are vitamins essential metabolic factors for microbial metabolism?
15. A laboratory scientist notices that a certain bacterium does not utilize lactose when glucose is available in its environment. Describe a cellular regulatory mechanism that would explain this observation.

Critical Thinking

1. Examine the biosynthetic pathway for the production of the amino acids tryptophan, tyrosine, and phenylalanine in the figure. Where do the initial reactants (erythrose 4-phosphate and PEP) originate?



2. Explain why an excess of all three amino acids mentioned in question 1 is required to inhibit production of DAHAP.
3. Why might an organism that uses glycolysis and the Krebs cycle also need the pentose phosphate pathway?
4. Describe how bacterial fermentation causes milk to sour.
5. *Giardia intestinalis* and *Entamoeba histolytica* are protozoa that live in the colons of mammals and can cause life-threatening diarrhea. Interestingly, these microbes lack mitochondria. What kind of pathway must they have for carbohydrate catabolism?
6. Two cultures of a facultative anaerobe are grown in the same type of medium, but one is exposed to air and the other is maintained under anaerobic conditions. Which of the two cultures will contain more cells at the end of a week? Why?
7. What is the maximum number of molecules of ATP that can be generated by a bacterium after the complete aerobic oxidation of a fat molecule containing three 12-carbon chains? (Assume that all the available energy released during catabolism goes to ATP production.)
8. In terms of its effects on metabolism, why is a fever over 40°C often life threatening?
9. Cyanide is a potent poison because it irreversibly blocks cytochrome a_3. What effect would its action have on the rest of the electron transport chain? What would be the redox state (reduced or oxidized) of ubiquinone in the presence of cyanide?
10. How are photophosphorylation and oxidative phosphorylation similar? How are they different?
11. Members of the pathogenic bacterial genus *Haemophilus* require NAD^+ and heme from their environment. For what purpose does *Haemophilus* use these growth factors?
12. Compare and contrast aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration, and fermentation.
13. Scientists estimate that up to one-third of Earth's biomass is composed of methanogenic prokaryotes in ocean sediments (*Science* 295:2067–2070). Describe the metabolism of these organisms.
14. A young student was troubled by the idea that a bacterium is able to control its diverse and complex metabolic activities even though it lacks a brain. How would you explain its metabolic control?
15. If a bacterium uses beta-oxidation to catabolize a molecule of the fatty acid arachidic acid, which contains 20 carbon atoms, how many acetyl-CoA molecules will be generated?
16. Some desert rodents rarely have water to drink. How do they get enough water for their cells without drinking it?
17. Why do fatty acids typically contain an even number of carbon atoms?
18. We have examined the total ATP, NADH, and $FADH_2$ production in the Krebs cycle for each molecule of glucose coming through Embden-Meyerhof glycolysis. How many of each of these molecules would be produced if the Entner-Doudoroff pathway were used instead of Embden-Meyerhof glycolysis?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes aerobic respiration. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

2 ATP (2)
34 ATP
Chemiosmosis
Electron transport chain
Glycolysis
Krebs cycle
Oxidative phosphorylation
Substrate-level phosphorylation (2)
Synthesis of acetyl-CoA

6 Microbial Nutrition and Growth

Green sulfur bacteria are obligate **anaerobes** that must derive the energy they need for metabolism from light. So what are green sulfur bacteria doing on the bottom of the Pacific Ocean one and a half miles from the surface? How is it possible that they can live at this inky depth where **sunlight** never penetrates?

Oceanographers have discovered that water around deep-sea hydrothermal vents emits an eerie glow in the visible spectrum of light. No one knows how this strange light forms—perhaps from chemical reactions in the vent seepage, perhaps from imploding gas bubbles released by the **superheated** water from the vent. Though the light is too dim to be seen by human eyes, **green sulfur bacteria** have pigments suitable for absorbing the specific wavelengths of vent light. Presumably the bacteria absorb enough energy to support their metabolism.

Under what conditions do microorganisms grow and survive? In this chapter we will study the requirements for **microbial** nutrition and growth.

Deep-sea hydrothermal vents, looking like plumes of smoke, eerily glow and support the growth of green, photosynthetic sulfur bacteria. Image from the IMAX film, *Volcanoes of the Deep Sea*.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Metabolism—the set of controlled chemical reactions within cells—is a major characteristic of all living things. The ultimate outcome of metabolic activity is reproduction, an increase in the number of individual cells or organisms. When speaking of the reproductive activities of microbes in general and of bacteria in particular, microbiologists typically use the term *growth,* referring to an increase in the size of a population of microbes rather than to an increase in size of an individual. The result of such microbial growth is either a discrete *colony,* which is an aggregation of cells arising from a single parent cell, or a *biofilm,* which is a collection of microbes living on a surface in a complex community. Put another way, the reproduction of individual microorganisms results in the growth of a colony or biofilm. Further, common expressions such as "The microorganisms *grow* in salt-containing media" are widely understood to mean that the organisms metabolize and reproduce rather than that they increase in size.

In this chapter we consider the characteristics of microbial growth from two different but related perspectives: We examine the requirements of microbes living in their natural settings, including their chemical, physical, and energy requirements, and we explore how microbiologists try to create similar conditions to grow microorganisms in the laboratory so that they can be transported, identified, and studied. We conclude by examining laboratory analysis of bacterial population dynamics and some techniques for measuring bacterial population growth.

Growth Requirements

Organisms use a variety of chemicals—called **nutrients**—to meet their energy needs and to build organic molecules and cellular structures. The most common of these nutrients are compounds containing necessary elements such as carbon, oxygen, nitrogen, and hydrogen. Like all organisms, microbes obtain nutrients from a variety of sources in their environment, and they must bring nutrients into their cells by passive and active transport processes (see Chapter 3). When they acquire their nutrients by living in or on another organism, they may cause disease as they interfere with their hosts' metabolism and nutrition.

Nutrients: Chemical and Energy Requirements

Learning Outcomes

6.1 Describe the roles of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, trace elements, and vitamins in microbial growth and reproduction.

6.2 Compare the four basic categories of organisms based on their carbon and energy sources.

6.3 Distinguish among anaerobes, aerobes, aerotolerant anaerobes, facultative anaerobes, and microaerophiles.

6.4 Explain how oxygen can be fatal to organisms by discussing singlet oxygen, superoxide radical, peroxide anion, and hydroxyl radical and describe how organisms protect themselves from toxic forms of oxygen.

6.5 Define *nitrogen fixation* and explain its importance.

We begin our examination of microbial growth requirements by considering three things all cells need for metabolism: a carbon source, a source of energy, and a source of electrons or hydrogen atoms.

Sources of Carbon, Energy, and Electrons

Organisms can be categorized into two broad groups based on their source of carbon. Organisms that utilize an inorganic source of carbon (i.e., carbon dioxide) as their sole source of carbon are called *autotrophs*[1] (aw´tō-trōfs), so named because they "feed themselves." More precisely, autotrophs make organic compounds from CO_2 and thus need not acquire carbon from organic compounds from other organisms. In contrast, organisms called *heterotrophs*[2] (het´er-ō-trōfs) catabolize reduced organic molecules (such as proteins, carbohydrates, amino acids, and fatty acids) they acquire from other organisms.

Organisms can also be categorized according to whether they use chemicals or light as a source of energy for such cellular processes as anabolism, intracellular transport, and motility. Organisms that acquire energy from redox reactions involving inorganic and organic chemicals are called *chemotrophs* (kēm´ō-trōfs). These reactions are either aerobic respiration, anaerobic respiration, or fermentation, depending on the final electron acceptor (see Chapter 5). Organisms that use light as their energy source are called *phototrophs*[3] (fō´tō-trōfs).

Thus, we see that organisms can be categorized on the basis of their carbon and energy sources into one of four basic groups: **photoautotrophs, chemoautotrophs, photoheterotrophs,** and **chemoheterotrophs** **(Figure 6.1)**. Plants, some protozoa, and algae are photoautotrophs, and animals, fungi, and other protozoa are chemoheterotrophs. Bacteria and archaea exhibit greater metabolic diversity than any other group, with members in all four groups.

Additionally, the cells of all organisms require electrons or hydrogen atoms for redox reactions. Hydrogen is the most common chemical element in cells, and it is so common in organic molecules and water that it is never a *limiting nutrient;* that is, metabolism is never interrupted by a lack of hydrogen. Hydrogen is essential for hydrogen bonding and in electron transfer. Heterotrophs acquire electrons (typically as part of hydrogen atoms) from the same organic molecules that provide them carbon and are called **organotrophs** (ōr´gān-ō-trōfs); alternatively, autotrophic organisms acquire electrons or hydrogen atoms from inorganic molecules (such as H_2, NO^{2-}, H_2S, and Fe^{2+}) and are called **lithotrophs**[4] (lith´ō-trōfs).

[1] From Greek *auto*, meaning "self," and *trophe*, meaning "nutrition."
[2] From Greek *hetero*, meaning "other," and *trophe*, meaning "nutrition."
[3] From Greek *photos*, meaning "light," and *trophe*, meaning "nutrition."
[4] From Greek *lithos*, meaning "rock," and *trophe*, meaning "nutrition."

Carbon source	Energy source: Light *(photo-)*	Energy source: Chemical compounds *(chemo-)*
Carbon dioxide *(auto-)*	***Photoautotrophs*** • Plants, algae, and cyanobacteria use H_2O to reduce CO_2, producing O_2 as a by-product • Green sulfur bacteria and purple sulfur bacteria do not use H_2O nor produce O_2	***Chemoautotrophs*** • Hydrogen, sulfur, and nitrifying bacteria, some archaea
Organic compounds *(hetero-)*	***Photoheterotrophs*** • Green nonsulfur bacteria and purple nonsulfur bacteria, some archaea	***Chemoheterotrophs*** • Aerobic respiration: most animals, fungi, and protozoa, and many bacteria • Anaerobic respiration: some animals, protozoa, bacteria, and archaea • Fermentation: some bacteria, yeasts, and archaea

◀ Figure 6.1 Four basic groups of organisms based on their carbon and energy sources. Additionally, organotrophs utilize electrons from organic molecules, and lithotrophs utilize electrons from inorganic molecules.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

The filamentous bacterium *Beggiatoa* gets its carbon from carbon dioxide and its electrons and energy from hydrogen sulfide. What is its nutritional classification?

Not all organisms are easy to classify. For instance, the single-celled eukaryote *Euglena granulata* typically uses light energy and gets its carbon from carbon dioxide. However, when it is cultured on a suitable medium in the dark, this microbe utilizes energy and carbon solely from organic compounds. What is the nutritional classification of *Euglena*?

Oxygen Requirements

Oxygen is essential for **obligate aerobes** because it serves as the final electron acceptor of electron transport chains, which produce most of the ATP in these organisms. By contrast, oxygen is a deadly poison for **obligate anaerobes.** How can oxygen be essential for one group of organisms and yet be a fatal toxin for others?

The key to understanding this apparent incongruity is understanding that neither atmospheric oxygen (O_2) nor covalently bound oxygen in compounds such as carbohydrates and water is poisonous. Rather, the toxic forms of oxygen are those that are highly reactive. They are toxic for the same reason that oxygen is the final electron acceptor for aerobes: They are excellent oxidizing agents, so they steal electrons from other compounds, which in turn steal electrons from still other compounds. The resulting chain of vigorous oxidations causes irreparable damage to cells by oxidizing important compounds, including proteins and lipids.

There are four toxic forms of oxygen:

- **Singlet oxygen ($^1O_2$).** Singlet oxygen is molecular oxygen with electrons that have been boosted to a higher energy state, typically during aerobic metabolism. Singlet oxygen is a very reactive oxidizing agent. Phagocytic cells, such as certain human white blood cells, use it to oxidize pathogens. Because singlet oxygen is also photochemically produced by the reaction of oxygen and light, phototrophic microorganisms often contain pigments called **carotenoids** (ka-rot´e-noyds) that prevent toxicity by removing the excess energy of singlet oxygen.
- **Superoxide radical (O_2^-).** A few superoxide radicals form during the incomplete reduction of O_2 during electron transport in aerobes and during metabolism by anaerobes in the presence of oxygen. Superoxide radicals are so reactive and toxic that aerobic organisms must produce enzymes called *superoxide dismutases* (dis´myu-tās-es) to detoxify them. These enzymes, which have active sites that contain metal ions—Zn^{2+}, Mn^{2+}, Fe^{2+}, Ni^{2+}, or Cu^{2+}, depending on the organism—combine two superoxide radicals and two protons to form hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) and molecular oxygen (O_2):

$$2\,O_2^- + 2\,H^+ \rightarrow H_2O_2 + O_2$$

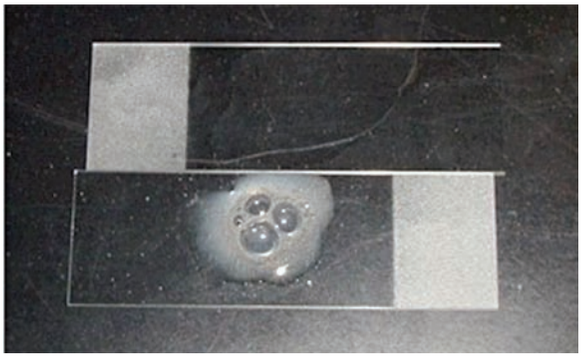
One reason that anaerobes are susceptible to oxygen is that they lack superoxide dismutase; they die as a result of the oxidizing reactions of superoxide radicals formed in the presence of oxygen.

- **Peroxide anion (O_2^{2-}).** Hydrogen peroxide formed during reactions catalyzed by superoxide dismutase (and during other metabolic reactions) contains peroxide anion, another highly reactive oxidant. It is peroxide anion that makes hydrogen peroxide an antimicrobial agent. Aerobes contain either catalase or peroxidase, enzymes that detoxify peroxide anion.

Catalase converts hydrogen peroxide to water and molecular oxygen:

$$2\,H_2O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O + O_2$$

A simple test for catalase involves adding a sample from a bacterial colony to a drop of hydrogen peroxide.



▲ **Figure 6.2 Catalase test.** The enzyme catalase converts hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen, the latter of which can be seen as visible bubbles. *Enterococcus faecalis* (above) is catalase negative, whereas *Staphylococcus epidermidis* (below) is catalase positive.

The production of bubbles of oxygen indicates the presence of catalase **(Figure 6.2)**.

Peroxidase breaks down hydrogen peroxide without forming oxygen, using a reducing agent such as the coenzyme NADH:

$$H_2O_2 + NADH + H^+ \rightarrow 2\,H_2O + NAD^+$$

Obligate anaerobes either lack both catalase and peroxidase or have only a small amount of them, so they are susceptible to the toxic action of hydrogen peroxide.

- **Hydroxyl radical (OH·).** Hydroxyl radicals result from ionizing radiation and from the incomplete reduction of hydrogen peroxide:

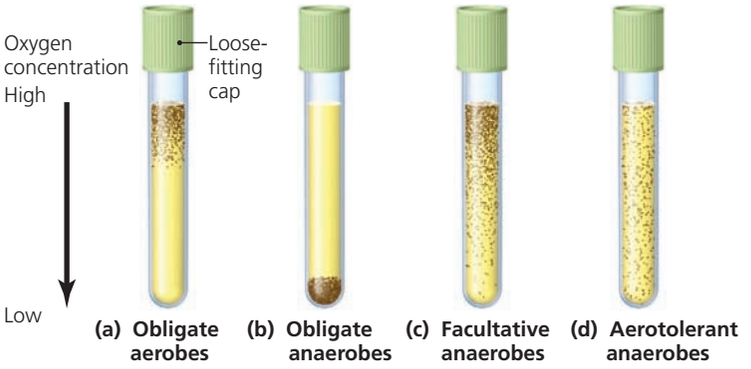
$$H_2O_2 + e^- + H^+ \rightarrow H_2O + OH\bullet$$

Hydroxyl radicals are the most reactive of the four toxic forms of oxygen, but because hydrogen peroxide does not accumulate in aerobic cells (because of the action of catalase and peroxidase), the threat of hydroxyl radical is virtually eliminated in aerobic cells.

Besides the enzymes superoxide dismutase, catalase, and peroxidase, aerobes use other antioxidants, such as vitamins C and E, to protect themselves against toxic oxygen products. These antioxidants provide electrons that reduce toxic forms of oxygen.

Not all organisms are either strict **aerobes** or **anaerobes;** many organisms can live in various oxygen concentrations between these two extremes. For example, some aerobic organisms can maintain life via fermentation or anaerobic respiration, though their metabolic efficiency is often reduced in the absence of oxygen. Such organisms are called **facultative anaerobes.** *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ā kō´lē) is an example of a facultatively anaerobic bacterium.

Aerotolerant anaerobes do not use aerobic metabolism, but they tolerate oxygen by having some of the enzymes that detoxify oxygen's poisonous forms. The lactobacilli that transform cucumbers into pickles and milk into cheese are aerotolerant. These organisms can be kept in a laboratory without the special conditions required by obligate anaerobes.



▲ **Figure 6.3 Using a liquid thioglycollate growth medium to identify the oxygen requirements of organisms.** The surface is exposed to atmospheric oxygen and is aerobic. Oxygen concentration decreases with depth; the bottom of the tube is anaerobic. **(a)** Obligate aerobes cannot survive below the depth to which oxygen penetrates the medium. **(b)** Obligate anaerobes cannot tolerate any oxygen. **(c)** Facultative anaerobes can grow with or without oxygen, but their ability to use aerobic respiration pathways enhances their growth near the surface. **(d)** Aerotolerant aerobes can grow equally well with or without oxygen; their growth is relatively evenly distributed throughout the medium. *Where in such a test tube would the growth zone be for a microaerophilic aerobe?*

Figure 6.3 *Microaerophiles would be found slightly below the surface but neither directly at the surface nor in the depths of the tube.*

Microaerophiles, such as the ulcer-causing pathogen *Helicobacter pylori*[5] (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter pī´lō-rē), require oxygen levels of 2% to 10%. This concentration of oxygen is found in the stomach. Microaerophiles are damaged by the 21% concentration of oxygen in the atmosphere, presumably because they have limited ability to detoxify hydrogen peroxide and superoxide radicals.

Microbial groups contain members with each of the five types of oxygen requirement. Algae, most fungi and protozoa, and many prokaryotes are obligate aerobes. A few yeasts and numerous prokaryotes are facultative anaerobes. Many prokaryotes and a few protozoa are aerotolerant, microaerophilic, or obligate anaerobes. The oxygen requirement of an organism can be identified by growing it in a medium that contains an oxygen gradient from top to bottom **(Figure 6.3)**.

Nitrogen Requirements

Another essential element is nitrogen, which is contained in many organic compounds, including the amine group of amino acids and as part of nucleotide bases. Nitrogen makes up about 14% of the dry weight of microbial cells.

Nitrogen is often a growth-limiting nutrient for many organisms; that is, their anabolism ceases because they do not have sufficient nitrogen to build proteins and nucleotides. Organisms acquire nitrogen from organic and inorganic nutrients. For example, most photosynthetic organisms can reduce nitrate (NO_3^-) to ammonium (NH_4^+), which can then be used

[5]From the semihelical shape of the cell and from Greek *pyle*, meaning "gate," in reference to *pylorus*, the distal portion of the stomach, which is the gate to the small intestine.

for biosynthesis. In addition, all cells recycle nitrogen from their amino acids and nucleotides.

Though nitrogen constitutes about 79% of the atmosphere, relatively few organisms can utilize nitrogen gas. A few bacteria, notably many cyanobacteria and *Rhizobium* (rī-zō´bē-ŭm), reduce nitrogen gas (N_2) to ammonia (NH_3) via a process called **nitrogen fixation.** Nitrogen fixation is essential for life on Earth because nitrogen fixers provide nitrogen in a usable form to other organisms. (Chapters 11 and 26 discuss nitrogen-fixing prokaryotes as well as nitrifying prokaryotes—those that oxidize nitrogenous compounds to acquire electrons for electron transport.)

Other Chemical Requirements

Together, carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen make up more than 95% of the dry weight of cells; phosphorus, sulfur, calcium, manganese, magnesium, copper, iron, and a few other elements constitute the rest. Phosphorus is a component of phospholipid membranes, DNA, RNA, ATP, and some proteins. Sulfur is a component of sulfur-containing amino acids, which bind to one another via disulfide bonds that are critical to the tertiary structure of proteins, and in vitamins such as thiamine (B_1) and biotin.

Other elements are called **trace elements** because they are required in very small ("trace") amounts. For example, a few atoms of selenium dissolved out of the walls of glass test tubes provide the total requirement for the growth of green algae in a laboratory. Other trace elements are usually found in sufficient quantities dissolved in water. For this reason, tap water can sometimes be used instead of distilled or deionized water to grow microorganisms in the laboratory.

Some microorganisms—for example, algae and photosynthetic bacteria—are lithotrophic photoautotrophs; that is, they can synthesize all of their metabolic and structural needs from inorganic nutrients. They have every enzyme and cofactor they need to produce all their cellular components. Most organisms, however, require small amounts of certain organic chemicals that they cannot synthesize in addition to those that provide carbon and energy. These necessary organic chemicals are called **growth factors** (Table 6.1). For example, vitamins are growth factors for some microorganisms. Recall that vitamins constitute all or part of many coenzymes. (Note that vitamins are not growth factors for microorganisms that can manufacture them, such as *E. coli*.) Growth factors for various microbes include some amino acids, purines, pyrimidines, cholesterol, NADH, and heme.

TABLE 6.1 Some Growth Factors of Microorganisms and Their Functions

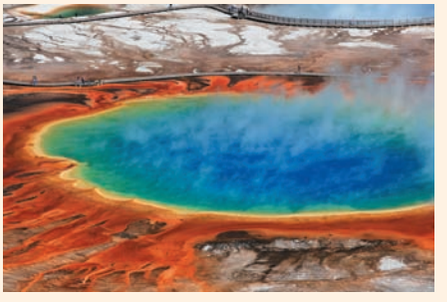
Growth Factor	Function
Amino acids	Components of proteins
Cholesterol	Used by mycoplasmas (bacteria) for cell membranes
Heme	Functional portion of cytochromes in electron transport system
NADH	Electron carrier
Niacin (nicotinic acid, vitamin B_3)	Precursor of NAD^+ and $NADP^+$
Pantothenic acid (vitamin B_5)	Component of coenzyme A
Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA)	Precursor of folic acid, which is involved in metabolism of one-carbon compounds and nucleic acid synthesis
Purines, pyrimidines	Components of nucleic acids
Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6)	Utilized in transamination syntheses of amino acids
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2)	Precursor of FAD
Thiamine (vitamin B_1)	Utilized in some decarboxylation reactions

HIGHLIGHT

HYDROGEN-LOVING MICROBES IN YELLOWSTONE'S HOT SPRINGS

If you have ever visited the geothermal springs at Yellowstone National Park, you may recall a "rotten-egg" odor caused by sulfur in the environment. Until recently, it was believed that microorganisms living in these springs used sulfur as their primary source of energy. Researchers at the University of Colorado at Boulder, however, have discovered that most of these microorganisms actually seem to live off hydrogen.

The researchers learned that the gene sequences of bacteria collected from the springs closely matched the gene sequences of other bacteria known to metabolize hydrogen. This was a surprise because many people assumed that the bacteria were sulfur dependent. But the results also made sense given the high-temperature environment of the springs. Sulfur-metabolizing microbes require oxygen, which is poorly soluble at high temperatures. Water temperatures in Yellowstone's springs often surpass 70°C, so it is understandable that microbes living in this environment would rely on hydrogen instead of sulfur.



Thermophilic bacteria, which can be distinguished by their orange-colored carotenoids, surround the Grand Prismatic Spring in Yellowstone National Park.

CRITICAL THINKING

Given that *Haemophilus ducreyi* is a chemoheterotrophic pathogen that requires heme as a growth factor, deduce how this bacterium phosphorylates most of its ADP to form ATP. Defend your answer.

Physical Requirements

Learning Outcome

6.6 Explain how extremes of temperature, pH, and osmotic and hydrostatic pressure limit microbial growth.

In addition to chemical nutrients, organisms have physical requirements for growth, including specific conditions of temperature, pH, osmolarity, and pressure.

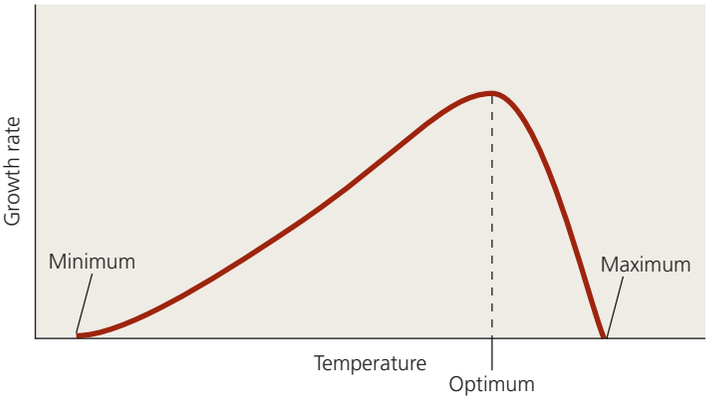
Temperature

Temperature plays an important role in microbial life through its effects on the three-dimensional configurations of biological molecules. Recall that to function properly, proteins require a specific three-dimensional shape that is determined in part by temperature-sensitive hydrogen bonds, which are more likely to form at lower temperatures and more likely to break at higher temperatures. When hydrogen bonds break, proteins denature and lose function. Additionally, lipids, such as those that are components of the membranes of cells and organelles, are temperature sensitive. If the temperature is too low, membranes become rigid and fragile; if the temperature is too high, the lipids become too fluid, and the membrane cannot contain the cell or organelle.

Because temperature plays an important role in the three-dimensional structure of many types of biological molecules, different temperatures have different effects on the survival and growth of microbes **(Figure 6.4)**. The lowest temperature at which an organism is able to conduct metabolism is called the *minimum growth temperature.* Note, however, that many microbes, particularly bacteria, survive (although they do not thrive) at temperatures far below this temperature despite the fact that cell membranes are less fluid and transport processes are too slow to support metabolic activity. The highest temperature at which an organism continues to metabolize is called the *maximum growth temperature;* when the temperature exceeds this value, the organism's proteins are permanently denatured, and it dies. The temperature at which an organism's metabolic activities produce the highest growth rate is the **optimum growth temperature.** Each organism thus survives over a *temperature range* within which its growth and metabolism are supported.

CRITICAL THINKING

Examine the graph in Figure 6.4. Note that the growth rate increases slowly until the optimum is reached, and then it declines steeply at higher temperatures. In other words, organisms tolerate a wider range of temperatures below their optimal temperature than they do above the optimum. Explain this observation.



(a)

(b)

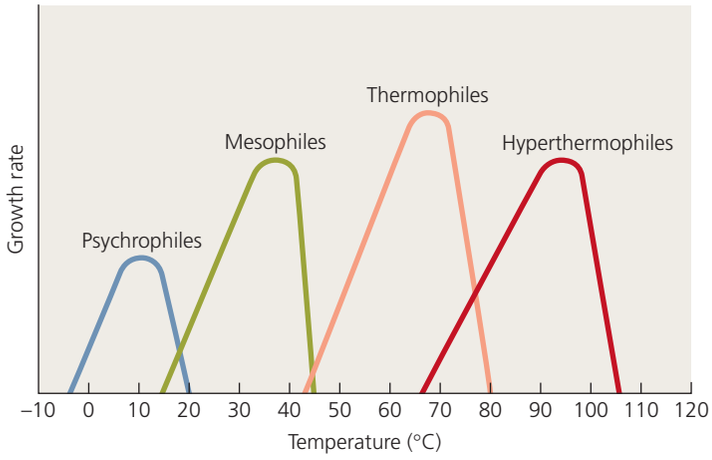
▲ Figure 6.4 The effects of temperature on microbial growth. **(a)** Minimum, optimum, and maximum growth temperatures as determined from a graph showing growth rate plotted against temperature. **(b)** Growth of *Escherichia coli* on nutrient agar after 18 hours of incubation at three different temperatures. *If microorganisms can survive at temperatures lower than their minimum growth temperature, then why is it called "minimum"?*

Figure 6.4 *The minimum growth temperature is defined as the lowest temperature that supports metabolism. Many organisms can survive at low temperatures but do not actively metabolize, grow, or reproduce.*

Based on their preferred temperature ranges—the temperatures within which their metabolic activity and growth are best supported—microbes can be categorized into four overlapping groups **(Figure 6.5)**. **Psychrophiles**[6] (sī´krō-fīls) grow best at temperatures below about 15°C and can even continue to grow at temperatures below 0°C. They die at temperatures much above 20°C. In nature, psychrophilic algae, fungi, archaea, and bacteria live in snowfields, ice, and cold water **(Figure 6.6)**. They do not cause disease in humans because they cannot survive at body temperature; some do cause food spoilage in refrigerators. Psychrophiles present unique challenges to laboratory investigations because they must be kept at cold temperatures. For example, microscope stages must be refrigerated, and the air temperatures needed to maintain living psychrophiles are uncomfortably cold for lab personnel.

Mesophiles[7] (mez´ō-fīls) are organisms that grow best in temperatures ranging from 20°C to about 40°C, though they can survive at higher and lower temperatures. Because normal body temperature is approximately 37°C, human pathogens are

[6]From Greek *psuchros,* meaning "cold," and *philos,* meaning "love."
[7]From Greek *mesos,* meaning "middle," and *philos,* meaning "love."

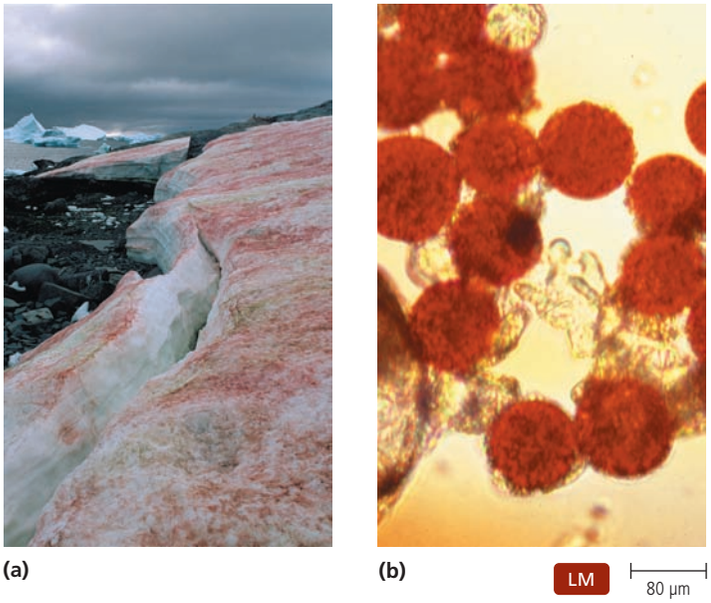


▲ **Figure 6.5** **Four categories of microbes based on temperature ranges for growth.** *Categorize the bacterium* Vibrio marinus, *which has an optimum growth temperature near 10°C.*

Figure 6.5 Vibrio marinus *is a psychrophile.*

mesophiles. *Thermoduric*[8] *organisms* are mesophiles that can survive brief periods at higher temperatures. Inadequate heating during pasteurization and canning can result in food spoilage by thermoduric mesophiles.

Thermophiles[9] (ther´mō-fīls) grow at temperatures above 45°C in habitats such as compost piles and hot springs. Some members of the Archaea, called **hyperthermophiles,** grow in water above 80°C; others live at temperatures above 100°C.[10] The current record holder is an archaeon, *Geogemma barossii* (jē´ō-jem-a ba-rōs´ē-ē). *Geogemma* grows and reproduces near submarine hot springs at temperatures between 85°C and 121°C and can survive for at least two hours at 130°C! Thermophiles and hyperthermophiles stabilize their proteins with extra hydrogen and covalent bonds between amino acids. Heat-stable enzymes are useful in industrial, engineering, and research applications. Heat-loving organisms do not cause disease because they "freeze" at body temperature. **Beneficial Microbes: A Nuclear Waste–Eating Microbe?** on p. 172 highlights an unusual thermophile that can also withstand radiation.



▲ **Figure 6.6** **An example of a psychrophile.** **(a)** The alga *Chlamydomonas nivalis* colors this summertime snowbank on Cuverville Island, Antarctica. **(b)** Microscopic view of the red-pigmented spores of *C. nivalis*.

CRITICAL THINKING

Over 100 years ago, doctors infected syphilis victims with malaria parasites to induce a high fever. Surprisingly, such treatment often cured the syphilis infection. Explain how this could occur.

pH

Organisms are sensitive to changes in acidity because hydrogen ions and hydroxyl ions interfere with hydrogen bonding within proteins and nucleic acids; as a result, organisms have ranges of acidity that they prefer and can tolerate. pH is a measure of the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution; that is, it is a measure of the acidity or alkalinity of a substance. A pH below 7.0 is acidic; the lower the pH value, the more acidic a substance is. Alkaline (basic) pH values are higher than 7.0.

Most bacteria and protozoa, including most pathogens, grow best in a narrow range around a neutral pH—that is, between pH 6.5 and pH 7.5, which is also the pH range of most tissues and organs in the human body; such microbes are thus called **neutrophiles** (nū´trō-fīls). By contrast, other bacteria and many fungi are **acidophiles** (ā-sid´ō-phīls), organisms that grow best in acidic habitats. One example of acidophilic microbes are the chemoautotrophic prokaryotes that live in mines and in water that runs through mine tailings (waste rock), habitats that have pHs as low as 0.0. These prokaryotes oxidize sulfur to sulfuric acid, further lowering the pH of their environment. Whereas *obligate acidophiles* require an acidic environment and die if the pH approaches 7.0, *acid-tolerant microbes* merely survive in acid without preferring it.

Many organisms produce acidic waste products that accumulate in their environment until eventually they inhibit further growth. For example, many cheeses are acidic because of lactic acid produced by fermenting bacteria and fungi. The low pH of these cheeses then acts as a preservative by preventing any further microbial growth. Other acidic foods, such as sauerkraut and dill pickles, are also kept from spoiling because most organisms cannot tolerate their low pH.

The normal acidity of certain regions of the body inhibits microbial growth and retards many kinds of infection. At one site, the vaginas of adult women, acidity results from the fermentation of carbohydrates by normal resident bacteria. If the growth of these normal residents is disrupted—for instance, by antibiotic

[8]From Greek *therme*, meaning "hot." The organisms are so named because of their ability to endure or tolerate heat.
[9]From Greek *therme*, meaning "hot," and *philos*, meaning "love."
[10]Water can remain a liquid above 100°C if it has a high salt content or is under pressure, such as occurs in geysers or deep ocean troughs.

therapy—the resulting higher pH may allow yeasts to grow and lead to a yeast infection. Another site, the stomach, is inhospitable to most microbes because of the normal production of stomach acid. However, the acid-tolerant bacterium *Helicobacter pylori* neutralizes stomach acid by secreting bicarbonate and urease, an enzyme that converts urea to ammonia, which is alkaline. The growth of *Helicobacter* is the cause of most gastric ulcers.

Alkaline conditions also inhibit the growth of most microbes, but **alkalinophiles** live in alkaline soils and water up to pH 11.5. For example, *Vibrio cholerae* (vib´rē-ō kol´er-ī), the causative agent of cholera, grows best outside of the body in water at pH 9.0.

Physical Effects of Water

Microorganisms require water; they must be in a moist environment if they are to be metabolically active. Water is needed to dissolve enzymes and nutrients; also, it is an important reactant in many metabolic reactions. Even though most cells die in the absence of water, some microorganisms—for example, the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis)—have cell walls that retain water, allowing them to survive for months under dry conditions. Additionally, the spores and cysts of some other single-celled microbes cease most metabolic activity in a dry environment for years; these cells are in essence in a state of suspended animation because they neither grow nor reproduce in their dry condition.

We now consider the physical effects of water on microbes by examining two topics: osmotic pressure and hydrostatic pressure.

Osmotic Pressure *Osmosis* is the diffusion of water across a membrane and is driven by unequal solute concentrations on the two sides of such a membrane. The *osmotic pressure* of a solution is the pressure exerted on a membrane by a solution containing solutes (dissolved material) that cannot freely cross the membrane. Osmotic pressure is related to the concentration of dissolved molecules and ions in a solution. Solutions with greater concentrations of such solutes are *hypertonic* relative to those with a lower solute concentration, which are *hypotonic.*

Osmotic pressure can have dire effects on cells. For example, a cell placed in freshwater (a hypotonic solution relative to the cell's cytoplasm) gains water from its environment and swells to the limit of its cell wall. Cells that lack a cell wall—animal cells and some bacterial, fungal, and protozoan cells—will swell until they burst in hypotonic solutions. By contrast, a cell placed in seawater, which is a solution containing about 3.5% solutes and thus hypertonic to most cells, loses water into the surrounding salt water. Such a cell can die from **crenation,** or shriveling of its cytoplasm. Osmotic pressure accounts for the preserving action of salt in jerky and salted fish and of sugar in jellies, preserves, and honey. In those foods, the salt and sugar are solutes that draw water out of any microbial cells that are present, preventing growth and reproduction.

Osmotic pressure restricts organisms to certain environments. Some microbes, called **obligate halophiles,**[11] are adapted to growth under high osmotic pressure such as exists in the Great Salt Lake and smaller salt ponds. They may grow in up to 30% salt and will burst if placed in freshwater. Other microbes are *facultative halophiles;* that is, although they do not require high salt concentrations, they can tolerate them. One potential bacterial pathogen, *Staphylococcus aureus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs o´rē-ŭs), can tolerate up to 20% salt, which allows it to colonize the surface of the skin—an environment that is too salty for most microbes. *S. aureus* causes a number of different skin and mucous membrane diseases ranging from pimples, sties, and boils to life-threatening scalded skin and toxic shock syndromes. (These diseases are covered more fully in Chapter 19.)

Hydrostatic Pressure Water exerts pressure in proportion to its depth. For every additional 10 m of depth, water pressure increases 1 atmosphere (atm). Therefore, the pressure at 100 m below the surface is 10 atm—10 times greater than at the surface. Obviously, the pressure in deep ocean basins and trenches, which are thousands of meters below the surface, is tremendous. Organisms that live under such extreme pressure are called **barophiles**[12] (bar´ō-fīls). Their membranes and enzymes do not merely tolerate pressure; they also depend on pressure to maintain their three-dimensional, functional shapes. Thus, barophiles brought to the surface quickly die because their proteins denature. Obviously, barophiles cannot cause diseases in humans, plants, or animals that do not live at great depths.

Associations and Biofilms

Learning Outcome

6.7 Describe how quorum sensing can lead to formation of a biofilm.

Organisms in a laboratory environment are living very differently from organisms in nature, which live in association with other individuals of their own and different species. The relationships between organisms can be viewed as falling along a continuum stretching from causing harm to providing benefits.

Relationships in which a microbe harms or even kills another organism are considered *antagonistic relationships.* Viruses are especially clear examples of antagonistic microbes; they require cells in which to replicate themselves and almost always kill their cellular hosts.

Beneficial relationships take at least two forms: synergistic relationships and symbiotic relationships. In *synergistic relationships,* the individual members of an association cooperate such that each receives benefits that exceed those that would result if each lived by itself, even though each member could live separately. In *symbiotic relationships,* organisms live in such close nutritional or physical contact that they become interdependent such that the members rarely (if ever) live outside the relationship. (Symbiotic relationships are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 14, particularly as they relate to the production of disease.)

Biofilms are examples of complex relationships among numerous microorganisms, often different species, attached to surfaces such as teeth (dental plaque), rocks in streams, shower curtains ("soap scum" is really a biofilm), implanted medical devices (e.g., catheters), and mucous membranes of the digestive

[11] From Greek *halos,* meaning "salt," and *philos,* meaning "love."
[12] From Greek *baros,* meaning "weight," and *philos,* meaning "love."

system. Biofilms are the primary residence of microorganisms in nature. For example, one study showed that more than 10 billion bacteria per square centimeter form the slippery biofilm on rocks in a streambed. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention estimates that biofilms cause up to 70% of bacterial diseases in industrialized countries, including kidney infections, tooth and gum decay, infections that occur with cystic fibrosis, and *nosocomial*[13] infections associated with implantation of medical devices. Cells within biofilms communicate and coordinate with one another, acting similar to a tissue in a multicellular organism.

Biofilm development can involve at least six steps **(Figure 6.7)**. Free-living cells 1 settle on a surface and attach 2. They develop a gooey, extracellular *matrix,* composed of DNA, proteins, and primarily the tangled fibers of polysaccharides of the cells' glycocalyces 3. This slimy matric adheres cells to one another, sticks the cells to their substrate, forms microenvironments within the biofilm, sequesters nutrients, forms water channels between groups of cells, and may protect individuals in a biofilm from environmental stresses, including ultraviolet radiation, antimicrobial drugs, and changes in pH, temperature, and humidity.

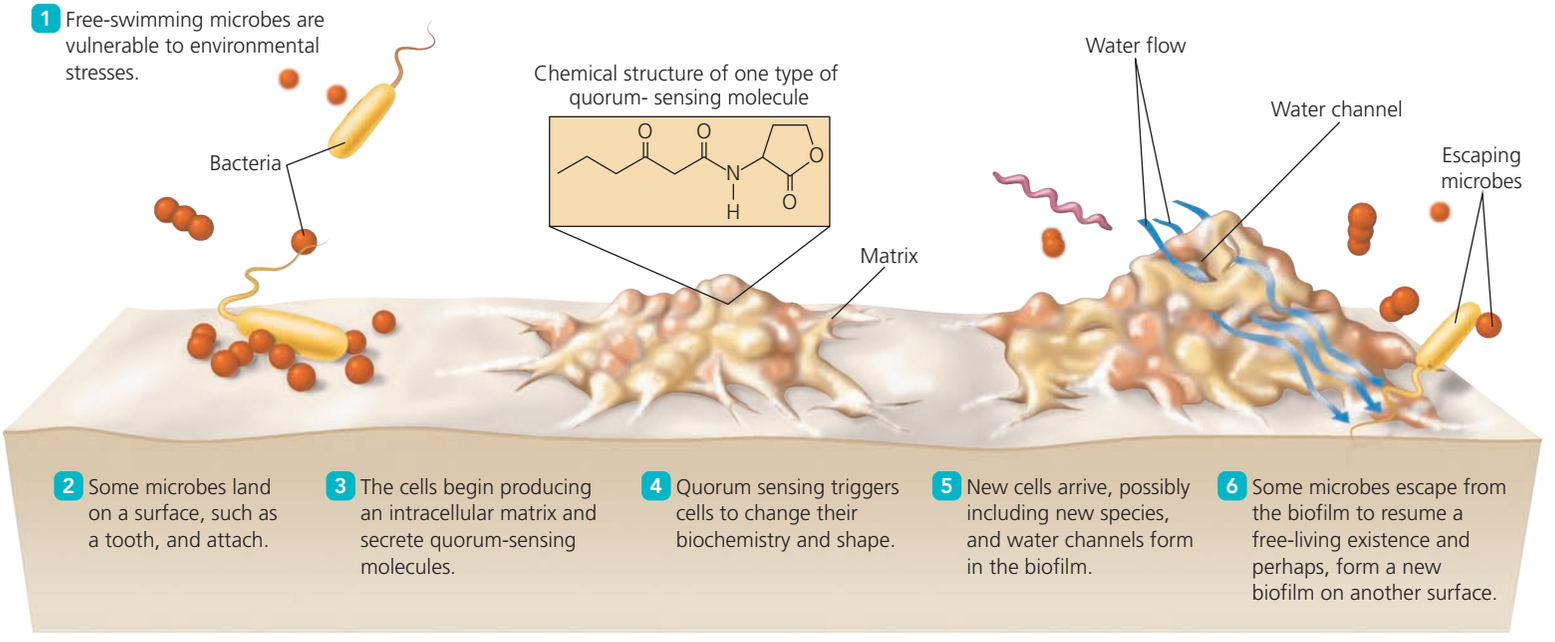
Biofilms form as a result of a process called **quorum sensing,** in which microorganisms respond to the density of nearby microorganisms. The microbes secrete *quorum-sensing molecules* that act to communicate number and types of cells among members of the biofilm 4. Many cells possess receptors for these signal molecules. When the density of microorganisms increases, the concentration of quorum-sensing molecules also increases such that more and more receptors bind these molecules. Once the binding exceeds a certain threshold amount, the expression of previously suppressed genes is triggered, and the result is that the microorganisms have new characteristics, such as the production of enzymes, changes in cell shape the formation of mating types, and the ability to form and maintain biofilms. Some researchers estimate quorum sensing may regulate 10% of the genes in a cell.

A matrix not only attaches a biofilm and positions the cells, but also may allow members of the biofilm to concentrate and conserve digestive enzymes, directing them against the underlying structure rather than having them diffuse away in the surrounding medium. New microbes can arrive and the synergistic relationships allowed in a biofilm continue to organize the biofilm community, so that individual members display metabolic and structural traits different from those expressed by the same cells living individually 5. Members assume different roles in different areas of a biofilm, much like cells and tissues of multicellular organisms have different functions in different parts of the body. Some individual cells or groups of cells in *streamers* may leave the biofilm 6.

Given that many microorganisms become more harmful when they are part of a biofilm, scientists are seeking ways to prevent biofilms from forming in the first place. Researchers have learned that drugs that block microbial cell receptors, thereby disrupting communication among cells, can inhibit biofilm formation and thus prevent disease. Such receptor-blocking drugs have successfully blocked biofilm formation and prevented disease in mice and are being considered for use in humans.

Another possible approach to preventing biofilm formation involves artificially amplifying quorum sensing while bacteria are still relatively few in number. Some pathogens hide within capsules and in blood clots, and only after they have multiplied

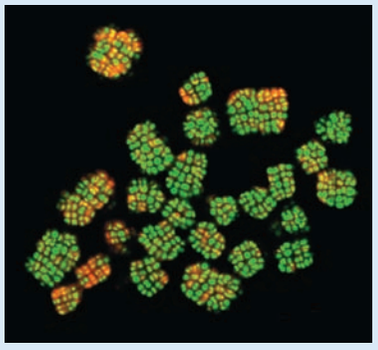
[13]Acquired in a health care setting, from Greek *nosos*, meaning "disease," and *komeo*, meaning "to take care of."



▲ **Figure 6.7 Biofilm development.** *Quorum sensing allows microbes to change their behavior in the presence of other microbes to form microbial communities called biofilms.*

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

A NUCLEAR WASTE–EATING MICROBE?



Kineococcus radiotolerans.

Gamma rays emitted by radioactive decay are usually deadly. However, some fungi and bacteria can survive being bombarded with radiation at levels higher than thousands of times what would kill a person. Currently, researchers are studying these organisms in the hope that we can use their biochemistry to develop ways to protect our cells from radiation and use the microbes to clean up nuclear wastes.

Microbes that can survive in extremely hostile environments are called *extremophiles.* Scientists have discovered amazing species of fungi in the genera *Wangiella* and *Cladosporium* inhabiting the walls of the damaged nuclear reactor in Chernobyl, Ukraine, which is considered the site of the worst nuclear accident in history. The fungi absorb radiation with the help of a pigment called *melanin*, the same pigment that colors human skin and hair. Incredibly, the fungi harness radioactive energy so as to grow faster—the first time we have discovered organisms that can use an energy source other than light or chemicals. Since radiation is available in space, perhaps future astronauts will be able to grow fungi as a continual food supply for long space voyages.

The bacterium *Kineococcus radiotolerans* is notable among radiation-tolerant extremophiles because it can also break down herbicides, chlorinated compounds, and other toxic substances. Researchers at the U.S. Department of Energy would like to shape *K. radiotolerans* into a biological tool that can clean up environments contaminated with radioactive wastes. Using microbes to break down toxic chemicals in the environment, a process known as bioremediation, is often cheaper, quicker, and more effective than conventional methods. *K. radiotolerans* could potentially slash the cost of nuclear cleanup.

significantly and formed a biofilm do they emerge and become "visible" to the immune system. With amplified quorum sensing, bacteria might produce certain proteins earlier in an infection cycle than normal, thus "revealing" themselves sooner to the immune system, which may then eliminate them before they can form biofilms and cause disease.

Dental plaque is a common biofilm that can lead to dental caries, or cavities. Plaque formation usually begins with colonization of the teeth by *Streptococcus mutans* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs mū´tanz). This bacterium breaks down carbohydrates, particularly the disaccharide sucrose (table sugar), to provide itself with nutrition and a glycocalyx. One of its enzymes catabolizes sucrose into its component monosaccharides—glucose and fructose—which the cell uses as energy sources. A second enzyme releases fructose as an energy source but polymerizes glucose into long, insoluble polysaccharide strands called glucan molecules, which form a sticky glycocalyx matrix around the bacterium. Glucan adheres *S. mutans* to the tooth, provides a home for other species of oral bacteria, and traps food particles. A biofilm has formed.

Bacteria in the biofilm digest nutrients and release acid, which is held against the teeth by the biofilm's matrix. The acid gradually eats away the minerals that compose the tooth, resulting in dental caries and eventually total loss of the teeth. The **Clinical Case Study: Cavities Gone Wild** deals with an especially severe case of a biofilm running amok in a small boy's mouth.

Culturing Microorganisms

One of Koch's postulates for demonstrating that a certain agent causes a specific disease requires that microorganisms be isolated and cultivated (Chapter 1). Medical laboratory personnel must also grow pathogens as a step in the diagnosis of many diseases. To cultivate or *culture* microorganisms, a sample called an **inoculum** (plural: *inocula*) is introduced into a collection of nutrients called a **medium.** Microorganisms that grow from an inoculum are also called a *culture;* thus, **culture** can refer to the act of cultivating microorganisms or to the microorganisms that are cultivated.

Cultures can be grown in liquid media called **broths** or on the surface of solid media. Cultures that are visible on the surface of solid media are called **colonies.** Bacterial and fungal colonies often have distinctive characteristics—including color, size, shape, elevation, texture, and appearance of the colony's margin (edge)—that taken together help identify the microbial species that formed the colony **(Figure 6.8)**.

Microbiologists obtain inocula from a variety of sources. *Environmental specimens* are taken from such sources as ponds, streams, soil, and air. *Clinical specimens* are taken from patients and handled in ways that facilitate the examination of microorganisms or testing for their presence. Another source of inocula is a culture originally grown from an environmental or clinical specimen and maintained in storage in a laboratory. Next we briefly examine clinical sampling.

Clinical Sampling

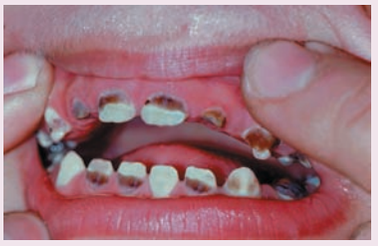
Learning Outcome

6.8 Describe methods for collecting clinical specimens from the skin and from the respiratory, reproductive, and urinary tracts.

Diagnosing and treating disease often depend on isolating and correctly identifying pathogens. Health care professionals must properly obtain samples from their patients and must then transport them quickly and correctly to a microbiology

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

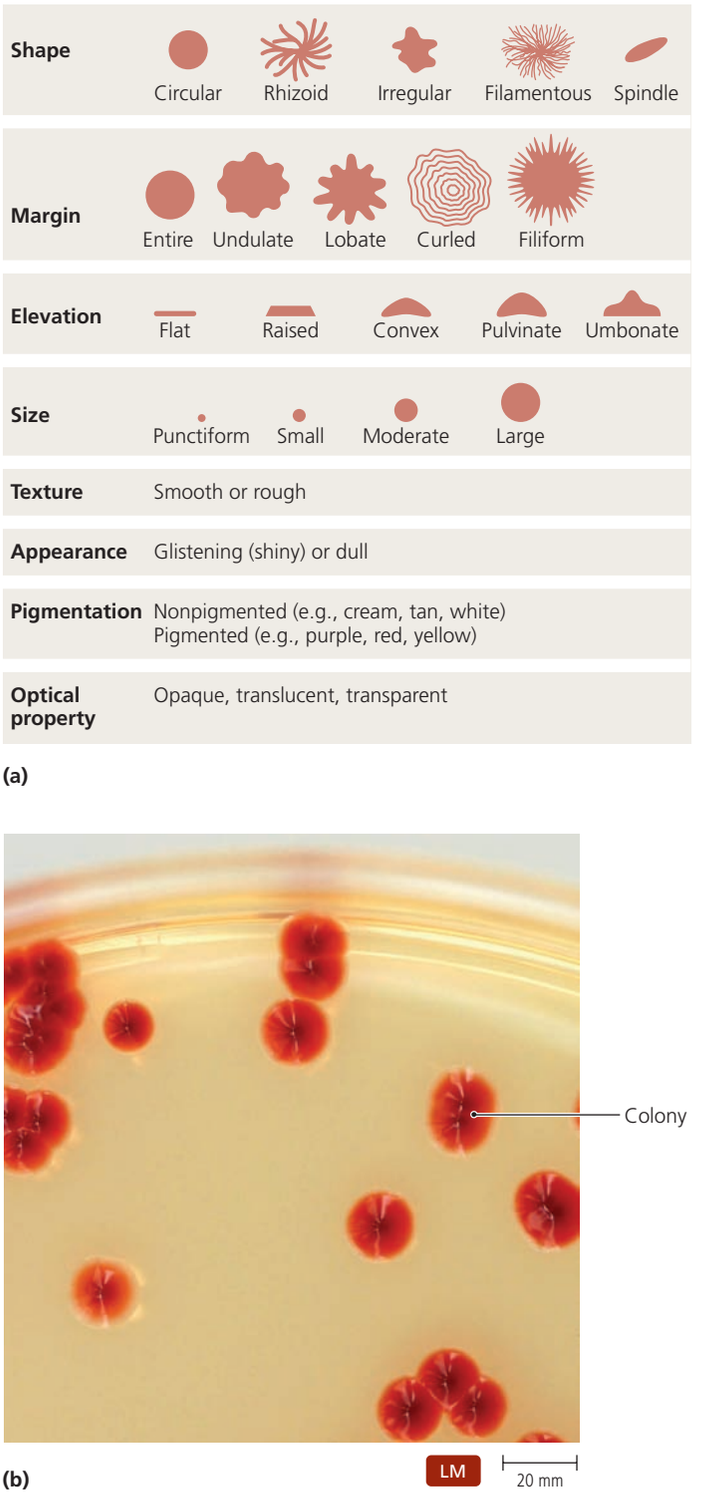
CAVITIES GONE WILD



Five-year-old Daniel appears to be shy. He always looks at the floor, has no friends, never plays with the other children, and will rarely speak to adults, and when he does speak, it is difficult to understand his broken enunciation. His skinny frame and the dark circles under his eyes make him appear malnourished. Daniel cries frequently and misses many days of school.

A speech specialist at school finds that only two of Daniel's teeth are healthy; all the others have rotted away to the gum line. The little guy is in constant pain and it hurts to chew. A doctor later determines that bacteria from the cavities in his mouth have entered his bloodstream and infected his heart, causing an irregular heartbeat and poor blood circulation.

1. How does knowledge of biofilms help explain the bulk of Daniel's problems?
2. What can Daniel, his parents, and health care professionals do to cure his diseases?
3. What nutrient should Daniel's parents eliminate from his diet to help prevent a repeat of his condition?
4. A recent study has shown that brushing does more than clean plaque from the teeth; it also disrupts associations between oral bacteria. How does this simple act help prevent the formation of biofilms?



▲ **Figure 6.8 Characteristics of bacterial colonies. (a)** Shape, margin, elevation (side view), size, texture, appearance, pigmentation (color), and optical properties are described by a variety of terms. **(b)** *Serratia marcescens* growing on an agar surface. These colonies are circular, entire, convex, large, smooth, shiny, red, and opaque.

laboratory for culture and identification. They must take care to prevent contaminating samples with microorganisms from the environment or other regions of the patient's body, and they must prevent infecting themselves with pathogens while sampling. In this regard, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has established a set of guidelines, called *standard precautions,* to protect health care professionals from contamination by pathogens.

In clinical microbiology, a **clinical specimen** is a sample of human material, such as feces, saliva, cerebrospinal fluid, or blood, that is examined or tested for the presence of microorganisms. As summarized in Table 6.2 on p. 174, health care professionals collect clinical specimens using a variety of techniques and equipment. Specimens must be properly labeled and promptly transported to a microbiological laboratory to avoid death of the pathogens and to minimize the growth of microbes normally found at the collection site. Clinical specimens are often transported in special *transport media* that are chemically formulated to maintain the relative abundance of different microbial species or to maintain an anaerobic environment.

TABLE 6.2 Clinical Specimens and the Methods Used to Collect Them

Type or Location of Specimen	Collection Method
Skin, accessible membrane (including eye, outer ear, nose, throat, vagina, cervix, urethra) or open wounds	Sterile swab brushed across the surface; care should be taken not to contact neighboring tissues
Blood	Needle aspiration from vein; anticoagulants are included in the specimen transfer tube
Cerebrospinal fluid	Needle aspiration from subarachnoid space of spinal column
Stomach	Intubation, which involves inserting a tube into the stomach, often via a nostril
Urine	In aseptic collection, a catheter is inserted into the bladder through the urethra; in the "clean catch" method, initial urination washes the urethra, and the specimen is midstream urine
Lungs	Collection of sputum either dislodged by coughing or acquired via a catheter
Diseased tissue	Surgical removal (biopsy)

Obtaining Pure Cultures

Learning Outcome

6.9 Describe the two most common methods by which microorganisms can be isolated for culture.

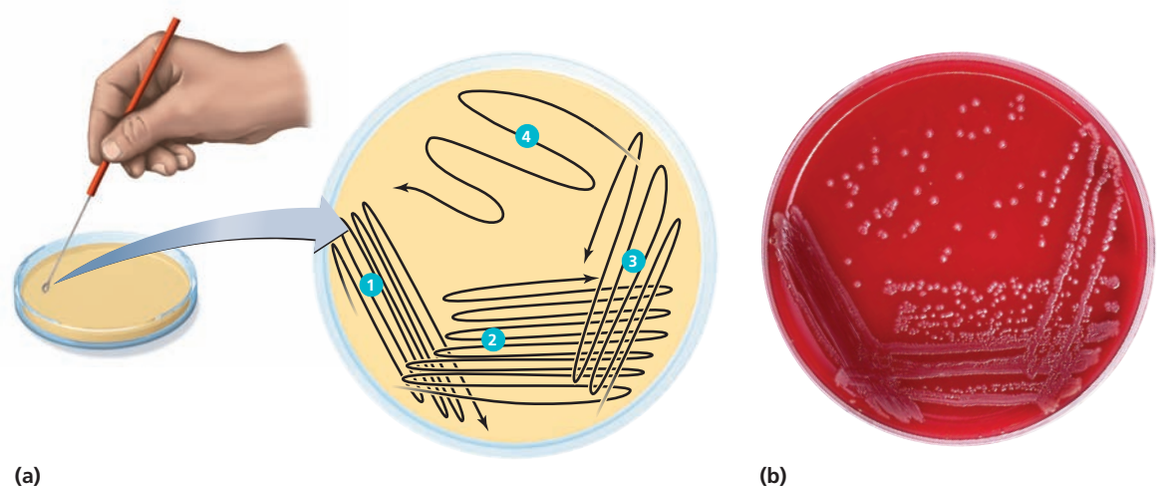
Clinical specimens are collected in order to identify a suspected pathogen, but they also contain *normal microbiota,* which are microorganisms associated with a certain area of the body without causing diseases (see Table 14.2 on p. 408). As a result, the suspected pathogen in a specimen must be isolated from the normal microbiota in culture. Scientists use several techniques to isolate organisms in **pure cultures,** that is, cultures composed of cells arising from a single progenitor. The word *axenic*[14] (ā-zen´ik) is also used to refer to a pure culture. The progenitor from which a particular pure culture is derived may be either a single cell or a group of related cells; therefore, the progenitor is termed a **colony-forming unit (CFU).**

In all microbiological procedures, care must be taken to reduce the chance of contamination, which occurs, for example, when instruments or air currents carry foreign microbes into culture vessels. All media, vessels, and instruments must be **sterile**—that is, free of any microbial contaminants. (Sterilization and *aseptic techniques,* which are designed to limit contamination, are discussed in Chapter 9.) Now we examine two common isolation techniques: streak plates and pour plates. We consider another method, *serial dilution,* in a later section.

Streak Plates

The most commonly used isolation technique in microbiological laboratories is the **streak-plate** method. In this technique, a sterile inoculating loop (or sometimes a needle) is used to spread an inoculum across the surface of a solid medium in *Petri*[15] *dishes,* which are clear, flat culture dishes with loose-fitting lids. The loop is used to lightly streak a set pattern that gradually dilutes the sample to a point that CFUs are isolated from one another **(Figure 6.9a)**. After an appropriate period of time called *incubation,* colonies develop from each isolate **(Figure 6.9b)**. The various types of organisms present are distinguished from one another by differences in colonial characteristics (see Figure 6.10b).

[14]From Greek *a,* meaning "no," and *xenos,* meaning "stranger."
[15]Named for Richard Petri, Robert Koch's assistant, who invented them in 1887.



(a) (b)

▲ **Figure 6.9 The streak-plate method of isolation. (a)** An inoculum is spread across the surface of an agar plate in a sequential pattern of streaks (as indicated by the numbers and arrows). The loop is sterilized between streaks. In streaks 2, 3, and 4, bacteria are picked up from a previous streak; thus the number of cells is diluted each time. **(b)** A streak plate showing colonies of *Escherichia coli* on blood agar.

Samples from each variety can then be inoculated in new media to establish axenic cultures.

CRITICAL THINKING

Using the terms in Figure 6.8a, describe the shape, margin, pigmentation, and optical properties of two bacterial colonies seen in Figure 6.10b.

Pour Plates

In the **pour-plate** technique, CFUs are separated from one another using a series of dilutions. There are various ways to perform pour-plate isolations. In one method, an initial 1-milliliter sample is mixed into 9.0 ml of medium in a test tube. After mixing, a new sample from this medium is then used to inoculate a second tube of liquid medium. The process is repeated to establish a series of dilutions **(Figure 6.10a)**. Samples from the more diluted media are mixed in Petri dishes with sterile, warm medium containing *agar*—a gelling agent derived from the cell walls of red algae. After the agar cools and solidifies, the filled dishes are called **Petri plates.** Isolated colonies—colonies that are separate and distinct from all others—form in the plates from CFUs that have been separated via the dilution series **(Figure 6.10b)**. One difference between this method and the streak-plate technique is that colonies form both at and below the surface of the medium. As before, pure cultures can be established from distinct colonies.

Isolation techniques work well only if a relatively large number of CFUs of the organism of interest are present in the initial sample and if the medium supports the growth of that microbe. As discussed later, special media and enriching techniques can be used to increase the likelihood of success.

Other Isolation Techniques

Streak plates and pour plates are used primarily to establish pure cultures of bacteria, but they can also be used for some fungi, particularly yeasts. Protozoa and motile unicellular algae are not usually cultured on solid media because they do not remain in one location to form colonies. Instead, they are isolated through a series of dilutions but remain in broth culture media. In cases of fairly large microorganisms, such as the protists *Euglena* (yū-glēn´ă) and *Amoeba* (am-ē´bă), hollow tubes with small diameters called *micropipettes* can be used to pick up a single cell that is then used to establish a culture.

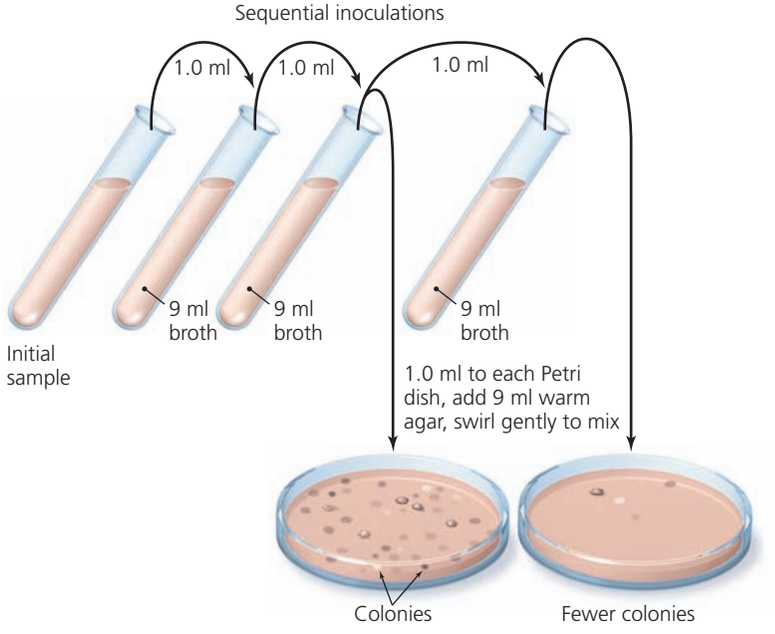
Culture Media

Learning Outcomes

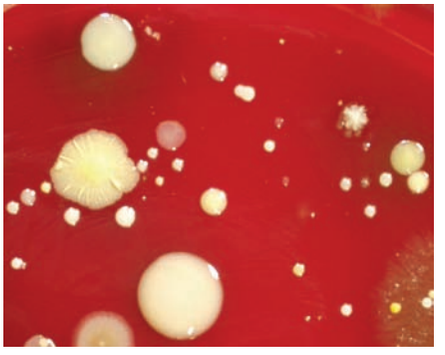
6.10 Describe six types of general culture media available for bacterial culture.

6.11 Describe enrichment culture as a means of enhancing the growth of less abundant microbes.

Culturing microorganisms can be an exacting science. Although some microbes, such as *E. coli*, are not particular about their nutritional needs and can be grown in a variety of media, bacteria and archaea, such as *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī) and *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flu-en´zī), require specific nutrients, including specific growth factors. The majority



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 6.10 The pour-plate method of isolation.** **(a)** After an initial sample is diluted through a series of transfers, the final dilutions are mixed with warm agar in Petri plates. Individual CFUs form colonies in and on the agar. **(b)** A portion of a plate showing the results of isolation.

of most microorganisms have never been successfully grown in any culture medium in part because scientists have concentrated their efforts on culturing commercially important species and pathogens. However, some pathogens, such as the syphilis bacterium *Treponema pallidum* (trep-ō-nē´mă pal´li-dŭm), have never been cultured in any laboratory medium despite over a century of effort.

A variety of media are available for microbiological cultures, and more are developed each year to support the needs of food, water, industrial, and clinical microbiologists. Most media are available from commercial sources and come in powdered forms that require only the addition of water to make broths. A common medium, for example, is *nutrient broth,* which contains powdered beef extract and peptones (short chains of amino acids produced by enzymatic digestion of protein) dissolved in water. For some purposes broths are adequate, but if solid media are needed, dissolving about 1.5% agar into hot broth, pouring the liquid mixture into an appropriate vessel, and allowing it to cool provides a solid surface to support colonial growth. Media made solid by the addition of agar to a broth have the word *agar* in their names; thus, *nutrient agar* is nutrient broth to which 1.5% agar has been added.

Agar, a complex polysaccharide derived from the cell walls of certain red algae, is a useful compound in microbiology for several reasons:

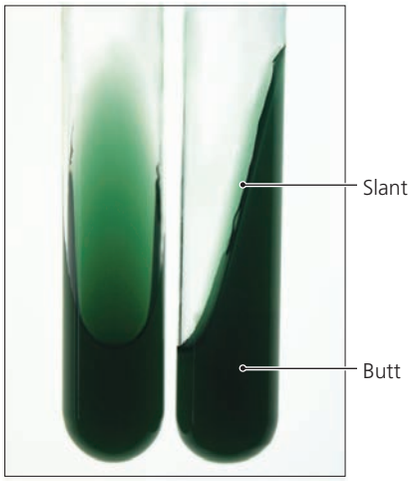
- Most microbes cannot digest agar; therefore, agar media remain solid even when bacteria and fungi are growing on them.
- Powdered agar dissolves in water at 100°C, a temperature at which most nutrients remain undamaged.
- Agar solidifies at temperatures below 40°C, so temperature-sensitive, sterile nutrients such as vitamins and blood can be added without detriment to cooling agar before it solidifies. Further, cooling liquid agar can be poured over most bacterial cells without harming them. The latter technique plays a role in the pour-plate isolation technique.
- Solid agar does not melt below 100°C; thus, it can even be used to culture some hyperthermophiles.

Still-warm liquid agar media can be poured into Petri dishes to make Petri plates. When warm agar media are poured into test tubes that are then placed at an angle and left to cool until the agar solidifies, the result is **slant tubes,** or **slants (Figure 6.11)**. The slanted surface provides a larger surface area for aerobic microbial growth while the butt of the tube remains almost anaerobic.

Next we examine six types of general culture media: defined media, complex media, selective media (including enrichment culture), differential media, anaerobic media, and transport media. It is important to note that these types of media are not mutually exclusive categories; that is, in some cases a given medium can belong to more than one category.

Defined Media

If microorganisms are to grow and multiply in culture, the medium must provide essential nutrients (including an appropriate energy source for chemotrophs), water, an appropriate oxygen level, and the required physical conditions (such as the correct pH and suitable osmotic pressure and temperature). A **defined medium** (also called a **synthetic medium**) is one in which the exact chemical composition is known. Table 6.3 gives a recipe for one example. Relatively simple defined media containing inorganic salts and a source of CO_2 (such as sodium bicarbonate) are available for autotrophs, particularly cyanobacteria and algae. Chemoheterotrophs require organic molecules, such as glucose, amino acids, and vitamins, which supply carbon and energy or are vital growth factors.



▲ **Figure 6.11 Slant tubes containing solid media.** In this case, citrate agar is the medium.

Organisms that require a relatively large number of growth factors are termed *fastidious.* Such organisms may be used as living assays for the presence of growth factors. For example, a scientist needing to know if a sample contains vitamin B_{12} could inoculate the sample with *Euglena granulata* (gran-yū-lă´tă), an organism that requires the vitamin. If the microbe grows, the vitamin is present in the sample. The amount of growth provides an estimate of the amount of vitamin present, scant growth indicating a small amount.

CRITICAL THINKING

Why have scientists been unable to axenically culture *Treponema pallidum* in a laboratory medium?

TABLE 6.3 Ingredients of a Representative Defined (Synthetic) Medium for Culturing *E. coli*

Glucose	1.0 g
Na_2HPO_4	16.4 g
KH_2PO_4	1.5 g
$(NH_4)_3PO_4$	2.0 g
$MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$	0.2 g
$CaCl_2$	0.01 g
$FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$	0.005 g
Distilled or deionized water	Enough to bring volume to 1 L

Complex Media

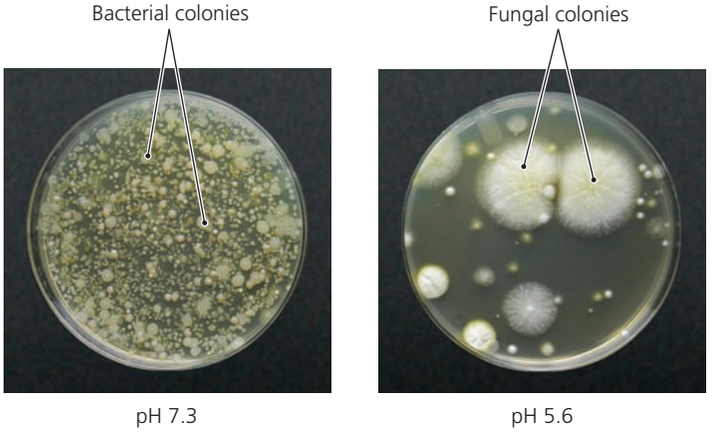
For most clinical cultures, defined media are unnecessarily troublesome to prepare. Most chemoheterotrophs, including pathogens, are routinely grown on **complex media** that contain nutrients released by the partial digestion of yeast, beef, soy, or proteins, such as casein from milk. The exact chemical composition of a complex medium is unknown because partial digestion releases many different chemicals in a variety of concentrations.

Complex media have advantages over defined media. Because a complex medium contains a variety of nutrients, including growth factors, it can support a wider variety of different microorganisms. Complex media are also used to culture organisms whose exact nutritional needs are unknown. Nutrient broth, Trypticase soy agar, and MacConkey agar are some common complex media. Blood is often added to complex media to provide additional growth factors, such as NADH and heme. Such a fortified medium is said to be *enriched* and can support the growth of many fastidious microorganisms.

Selective Media

Selective media typically contain substances that either favor the growth of particular microorganisms or inhibit the growth of unwanted ones. Eosin, methylene blue, and crystal violet dyes as well as bile salts are included in media to inhibit the growth of Gram-positive bacteria without adversely affecting Gram negatives. A high concentration of NaCl (table salt) in a medium selects for halophiles and for salt-tolerant bacteria, such as the pathogen *Staphylococcus aureus*. Sabouraud dextrose agar has a slightly low pH, which by inhibiting the growth of bacteria is selective for fungi **(Figure 6.12)**.

A medium can also become a selective medium when a single crucial nutrient is left out of it. For example, leaving glucose out of Trypticase soy agar makes the resulting medium selective for organisms that can meet all their carbon requirements by catabolizing amino acids.



▲ **Figure 6.12 An example of the use of a selective medium.** After the medium is inoculated with a diluted soil sample, acidic pH in Sabouraud dextrose agar (right) makes the medium selective for fungi by inhibiting the growth of bacteria. At left for comparison is a nutrient agar plate inoculated with an identical sample.

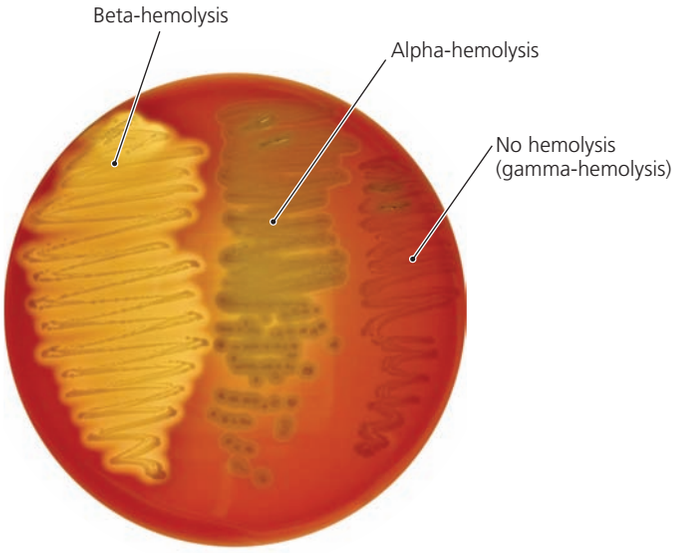
Enrichment Culture Bacteria that are present in small numbers may be overlooked on a streak plate or overwhelmed by faster-growing, more abundant strains. This is especially true of organisms in soil and fecal samples that contain a wide variety of microbial species. To isolate potentially important microbes that might otherwise be overlooked, microbiologists enhance the growth of less abundant organisms by a variety of techniques.

In the late 1800s, the Dutch microbiologist Martinus Beijerinck (1851–1931) introduced the most common of these methods, called simply **enrichment culture.** Enrichment cultures use a selective medium and are designed to increase very small numbers of a chosen microbe to observable levels. For example, suppose a microbiologist specializing in environmental cleanup wanted to isolate an organism capable of digesting crude oil to have on hand should it be required to clean an oil-soaked beach. Even though a sample of the beach sand might contain a few such organisms, it would also likely contain many millions of unwanted common bacteria. To isolate oil-utilizing microbes, the scientist would inoculate a sample of the sand into a tube of selective medium containing oil as the sole carbon source and then incubate it. Then a small amount of the culture would be transferred into a new tube of the same medium to be incubated again. After a series of such enrichment transfers, any remaining bacteria will be oil-utilizing organisms. Different species could be isolated by either streak-plate or pour-plate methods.

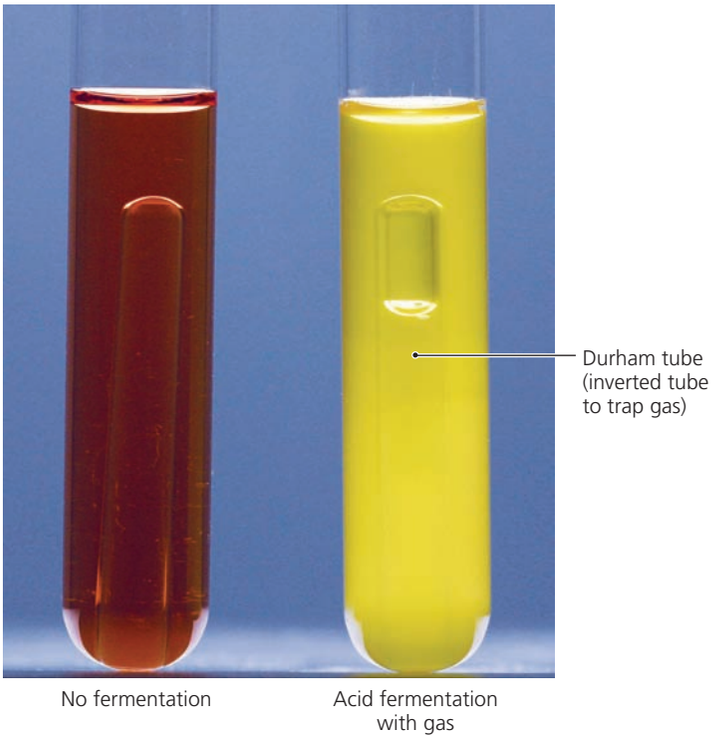
Cold enrichment is another technique used to enrich a culture with cold-tolerant species, such as *Vibrio cholerae,* the bacterium that causes cholera. Stool specimens or water samples suspected of containing the bacterium are incubated in a refrigerator instead of at 37°C. Cold enrichment works because *Vibrio* cells are much less sensitive to cold than are more common fecal bacteria, such as *E. coli;* therefore, *Vibrio* continues to grow in the cold while the other species are inhibited. The result of cold enrichment is a culture with a greater percentage of *Vibrio* cells than the original sample; the *Vibrio* cells can then be isolated by other methods.

Differential Media

Differential media are formulated such that either the presence of visible changes in the medium or differences in the appearance of colonies help microbiologists differentiate among the kinds of bacteria growing on the medium. Such media take advantage of the fact that different bacteria utilize the ingredients of any given medium in different ways. One example of the use of a differential medium involves the differences in organisms' utilization of red blood cells in blood agar **(Figure 6.13)**. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (nū-mō´nē-ī) partially digests (lyses) red blood cells, producing around its colonies a greenish-brown discoloration denoted *alpha-hemolysis.* By contrast, *Streptococcus pyogenes* (pī-oj´en-ēz) completely digests red blood cells, producing around its colonies clear zones termed *beta-hemolysis. Enterococcus faecalis* (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs fē-kă´lis) does not digest red blood cells, so the agar appears unchanged, a reaction called *gamma-hemolysis* even though no lysis occurs. In some differential media,



▲ Figure 6.13 The use of blood agar as a differential medium. *Streptococcus pyogenes* (left) completely uses red blood cells, producing a clear zone termed *beta-hemolysis*. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (middle) partially uses red blood cells, producing a discoloration termed *alpha-hemolysis*. *Enterococcus faecalis* (right) does not use red blood cells; the lack of any change in the medium around colonies is termed *gamma-hemolysis* even though no red cells are hemolyzed.



▲ Figure 6.14 The use of carbohydrate utilization tubes as differential media. Each tube contains a single kind of simple carbohydrate (a sugar) as a carbon source and the dye phenol red as a pH indicator. *Alcaligenes faecalis* in the tube on the left did not ferment this carbohydrate; because no acid was produced, the medium did not turn yellow. *Escherichia coli* in the tube on the right fermented the sugar, producing acid and lowering the pH enough to cause the phenol red to turn yellow. This bacterium also produced gas, which is visible as a small bubble in the Durham tube.

such as carbohydrate utilization broth tubes, a pH-sensitive dye changes color when bacteria metabolizing sugars produce acid waste products **(Figure 6.14)**. Some common differential complex media are described in **Table 6.4**.

Many media are both selective and differential; that is, they enhance the growth of certain species that can then be distinguished from other species by variations in their effect on the medium or by the color of colonies they produce. For example, bile salts and crystal violet in MacConkey agar both inhibit the growth of Gram-positive bacteria and differentiate lactose-fermenting from non-lactose-fermenting Gram-negative bacteria **(Figure 6.15)**. ► **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Bacterial Growth Media***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Examine the ingredients of MacConkey agar as listed in Table 6.4. Does this medium select for Gram-positive or Gram-negative bacteria? Explain your reasoning.

The sole carbon source in citrate medium is citric acid (citrate). Why might a laboratory microbiologist use this medium?

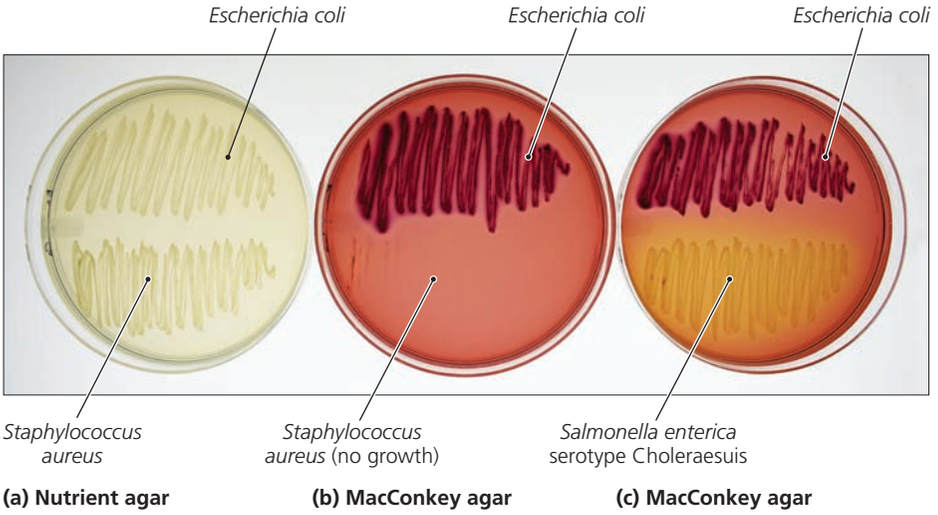
CRITICAL **THINKING**

Using as many of the following terms as apply—selective, differential, broth, solid, defined, and complex—categorize each of the media listed in Table 6.3 on p. 176 and Table 6.4 on p. 179.

Anaerobic Media

Obligate anaerobes require special culture conditions in that their cells must be protected from free oxygen. Anaerobes can be introduced with a straight inoculating wire into the anoxic (oxygen-free) depths of solid media to form a *stab culture*, but special media called **reducing media** provide better anaerobic culturing conditions. These media contain compounds, such as sodium thioglycolate, that chemically combine with free oxygen and remove it from the medium. Heat is used to drive absorbed oxygen from thioglycolate immediately before such a medium is inoculated.

The use of Petri plates presents special problems for the culture of anaerobes because each dish has a loose-fitting lid that allows the entry of air. For the culture of anaerobes, inoculated Petri plates are placed in sealable containers containing reducing chemicals **(Figure 6.16)**. Of course, the airtight lids of anaerobic culture vessels must be sealed so that oxygen cannot enter. Only anaerobes that can tolerate exposure to oxygen can be cultured by this method because inoculation and transfer occur outside the anaerobic environment. Laboratories that routinely study strict anaerobes have large anaerobic glove boxes, which are transparent, airtight chambers with special airtight rubber gloves, chemicals that remove oxygen, and air locks. These



▶ **Figure 6.15 The use of MacConkey agar as a selective and differential medium. (a)** Whereas both the Gram-positive *Staphylococcus aureus* and the Gram-negative *Escherichia coli* grow on nutrient agar, MacConkey agar **(b)** selects for Gram-negative bacteria and inhibits Gram-positive bacteria. **(c)** MacConkey agar also differentiates Gram-negative bacteria based on their ability to ferment lactose. The colonies of the lactose-fermenting *E. coli* are easily distinguished from those of the non-lactose-fermenting *Salmonella enterica* serotype Choleraesuis.

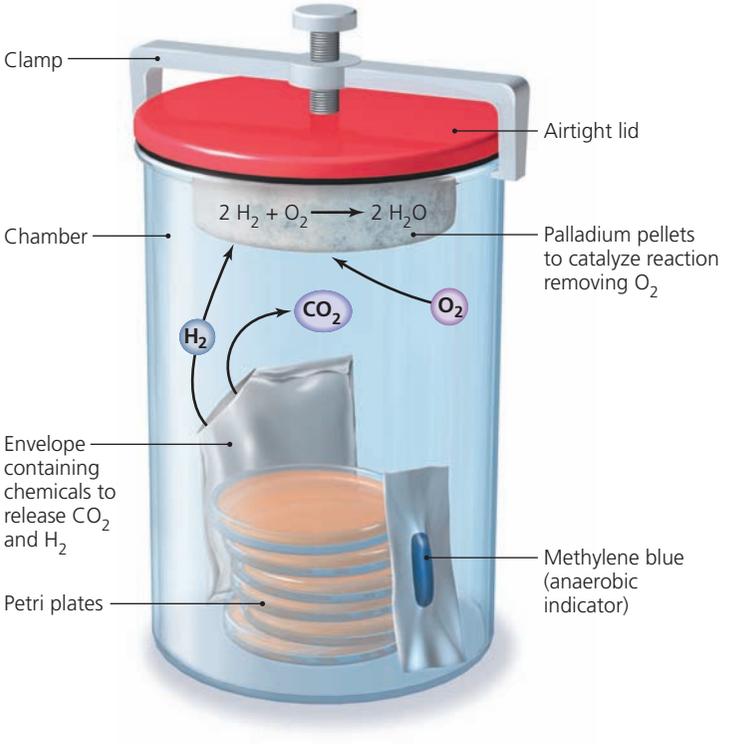
chambers allow scientists to manipulate equipment and anaerobic cultures in an oxygen-free environment.

Transport Media

Hospital personnel use special **transport media** to carry clinical specimens of feces, urine, saliva, sputum, blood, and other bodily fluids in such a way as to ensure that people are not infected and that the specimens are not contaminated. Speed in transporting clinical specimens to the laboratory is extremely important because pathogens often do not survive outside the body as long as normal microbiota. Stool and other specimens are transported in buffered media designed to maintain the ratios among different microorganisms. Anaerobic clinical

TABLE 6.4 Representative Differential Complex Media

Medium and Ingredients	Use and Interpretation of Results
MacConkey Medium	
Peptone (20.0 g) Agar (12.0 g) Lactose (10.0 g) Bile salts (5.0 g) NaCl (5.0 g) Neutral red (0.075 g) Crystal violet (0.001 g) Water to bring volume to 1 L	For the culture and differentiation of enteric bacteria based on the ability to ferment lactose Lactose fermenters produce red to pink colonies; non-lactose fermenters form colorless or transparent colonies
Blood Agar	
Agar (15.0 g) Pancreatic digest of casein (15.0 g) Papaic digest of soybean meal (5.0 g) NaCl (5.0 g) Water to bring volume to 950.0 ml Sterile blood (50.0 ml, added to medium after autoclaving and cooling)	For culture of fastidious microorganisms and differentiation of hemolytic microorganisms Partial digestion of blood: alpha-hemolysis; complete digestion of blood: beta-hemolysis; no digestion of blood: gamma-hemolysis



▲ **Figure 6.16 An anaerobic culture system.** The system utilizes chemicals to create an anaerobic environment inside a sealable, airtight jar. Methylene blue, which turns colorless in the absence of oxygen, indicates when the environment within the jar is anaerobic.

specimens can be transported for less than an hour in syringes from which the needles have been removed, but longer transport times require that the specimens be injected into anaerobic transport media.

Special Culture Techniques

Learning Outcome

6.12 Discuss the use of animal and cell culture and low-oxygen culture.

Not all organisms can be grown under the culture conditions we have discussed. Scientists have developed other techniques to culture many of these organisms.

Animal and Cell Culture

Microbiologists have developed animal and cell culture techniques for growing microbes for which artificial media are inadequate. The causative agents of leprosy and syphilis, for example, must be grown in animals because all attempts to grow them using standard culture techniques have been unsuccessful. *Mycobacterium leprae* (lep´rī) is cultured in armadillos, whose internal conditions (including a relatively low body temperature) provide the conditions this microbe prefers. Rabbits meet the culture needs for *Treponema pallidum*, the bacterium that causes syphilis. Because viruses and small bacteria called rickettsias and chlamydias are obligate intracellular parasites—that is, they grow and reproduce only within living cells—bird eggs and cultures of living cells are used to culture these organisms.

Low-Oxygen Culture

As we have discussed, many types of organisms prefer oxygen conditions that are intermediate between strictly aerobic and anaerobic environments. *Carbon dioxide incubators*, machines that electronically monitor and control CO_2 levels, provide atmospheres that mimic the environments of the intestinal tract, the respiratory tract, and other body tissues and thus are useful for culturing these kinds of organisms. Smaller and much less expensive alternatives to CO_2 incubators are *candle jars*. In these simple but effective devices, culture plates are sealed in a jar along with a lit candle; the flame consumes much of the O_2, replacing it with CO_2. The candle eventually extinguishes itself, creating an environment that is ideal for aerotolerant anaerobes, microaerophiles, and **capnophiles,** which are organisms such as *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* that grow best with a relatively high concentration of carbon dioxide (3–10%) in addition to low oxygen levels. Remaining oxygen in the jar prevents the growth of strict anaerobes. The use of packets of chemicals that remove most of the oxygen from the jar has replaced candles in modern microbiology labs.

CRITICAL THINKING

Beijerinck used the concept of enrichment culture to isolate aerobic and anaerobic nitrogen-fixing bacteria, sulfate-reducing bacteria, and sulfur-oxidizing bacteria. What kind of selective media could he have used for isolating each of these four types of microbes?

Preserving Cultures

Learning Outcome

6.13 Contrast refrigeration, deep freezing, and lyophilization as methods for preserving cultures of microbes.

To store living cells, a scientist slows the cells' metabolism to prevent the excessive accumulation of waste products and the exhaustion of all nutrients in a medium. **Refrigeration** is often the best technique for storing bacterial cultures for short periods of time.

Deep freezing and lyophilization are used for long-term storage of bacterial cultures. **Deep freezing** involves freezing the cells at temperatures from –50°C to –95°C. Deep-frozen cultures can be restored years later by thawing them and placing a sample in an appropriate medium.

Lyophilization (lī-of´i-li-zā´shŭn; freeze-drying) involves removing water from a frozen culture using an intense vacuum. Under these conditions, ice sublimates (directly becomes a gas) and is removed from cells without permanently damaging cellular structures and chemicals. Lyophilized cultures can last for decades and are revived by adding lyophilized cells to liquid culture media.

Growth of Microbial Populations

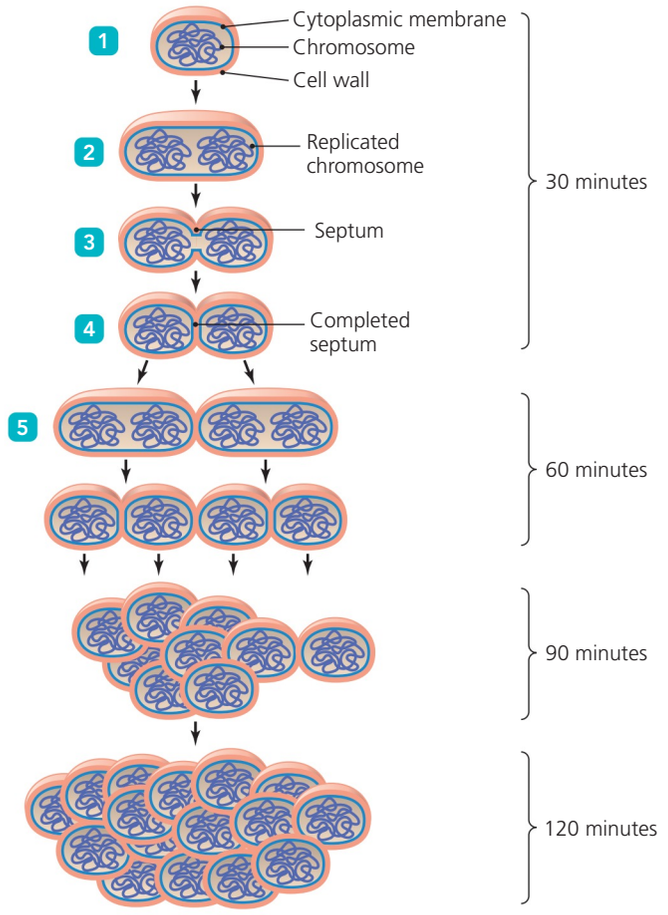
Learning Outcome

6.14 Describe binary fission as a means of reproduction.

Most unicellular microorganisms reproduce by *binary fission*, a process in which a cell grows to twice its normal size and divides in half to produce two daughter cells of equal size. Binary fission generally involves four steps, as illustrated in **Figure 6.17**, for a prokaryotic cell. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Bacterial Growth: Overview*

1. The cell replicates its chromosome (DNA molecule). The duplicated chromosomes are attached to the cytoplasmic membrane. (In eukaryotic cells, chromosomes are attached to microtubules.)
2. The cell elongates and growth between attachment sites pushes the chromosomes apart. (Eukaryotic cells segregate their chromosomes by the process of *mitosis*, described in Chapter 12.)
3. The cell forms a new cytoplasmic membrane and wall (septum) across the midline.
4. When the septum is completed, the daughter cells may remain attached as shown in the figure, or they may separate completely. When the cells remain attached, further binary fission in parallel planes produces a chain. When further divisions are in different planes, the cells become a cluster (as shown in the figure).
5. The process repeats. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Binary Fission*

(Other reproductive strategies of prokaryotes and eukaryotes are discussed in Chapters 11 and 12.) Here we consider the growth of populations by binary fission, using bacterial cultures as examples. We begin with a brief discussion of the mathematics of population growth.



▲ **Figure 6.17 Binary fission. (a)** The events in binary fission. All the cells may divide in parallel planes and remain attached to form a chain, or they may divide in different planes to form a cluster (as shown here). **(b)** Transmission electron micrograph of *Bacillus licheniformis* undergoing binary fission.

Generation Time

Learning Outcome

6.15 Explain what is meant by the generation time of bacteria.

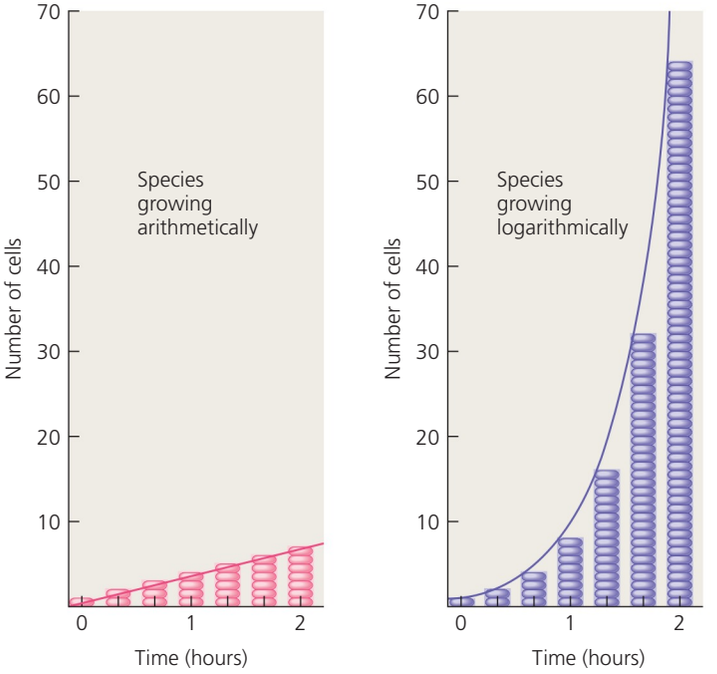
The time required for a bacterial cell to grow and divide is its **generation time.** Viewed another way, generation time is also the time required for a population of cells to double in number. Generation times vary among populations and are dependent on chemical and physical conditions. Under optimal conditions, some bacteria (such as *E. coli* and *S. aureus*) have a generation time of 20 minutes or less. For this reason, food contaminated with only a few of these organisms can cause food poisoning if not properly refrigerated and cooked. Most bacteria have a generation time of 1 to 3 hours, though some slow-growing species such as *Mycobacterium leprae* require more than 10 days before they double. (Appendix B presents the math required to calculate generation time for a population.)

Mathematical Considerations in Population Growth

Learning Outcome

6.16 Describe logarithmic growth.

With binary fission, any given cell divides to form two cells; then each of these new cells divides in two to make four, and then four become eight and so on. This type of growth, called **logarithmic growth** or **exponential growth**, produces very different results from simple addition, known as arithmetic growth. We can compare these two types of growth by considering what would happen over time to two identical hypothetical populations, as shown in **Figure 6.18**. In this case we assume that a hypothetical population of species A increases by adding one new cell every 20 minutes, whereas the cells of species B divide by



▲ **Figure 6.18 A comparison of arithmetic and logarithmic growth.** Given two hypothetical initial populations consisting of a single cell each, after 2 hours an arithmetically growing species will have seven cells, whereas a logarithmically growing species will have 64 cells.

binary fission every 20 minutes. After 20 minutes, each population, which started with a single cell, would have two cells; after 40 minutes, species A would have three cells, whereas species B would have four cells. At this point there is little difference in the growth of the two populations, but after 2 hours, the arithmetically growing species A would have only seven cells, whereas the logarithmically growing species B would have increased to 64 cells. Clearly, logarithmic growth can increase a population's size dramatically—after only 7 hours, species B will have over 2 million cells!

The number of cells arising from a single cell reproducing by binary fission is calculated as 2^n, where n is the number of generations; in other words, multiply 2 times itself n number of times. To calculate the total number of cells in a population, we multiply the original number of cells by 2^n. If, for example, species B had begun with three cells instead of one, then after 2 hours it would have 192 cells ($3 \times 2^6 = 3 \times 64 = 192$).

A visible culture of bacteria may consist of trillions of cells, so microbiologists use scientific notation to deal with the huge numbers involved. One advantage of scientific notation is that large numbers are expressed as powers of 10, making them easier to read and write. For example, consider our culture of species B. After 10 hours (30 generations) it would have 1,073,741,824 (2^{30}) cells. This large number can be rounded off and expressed more succinctly in scientific notation as 1.07×10^9. After 30 more generations, scientific notation would be the only practical way to express the huge number of cells in the culture, which would be 1.15×10^{18} (2^{60}). Such a number, if written out (the digits 115 followed by 16 zeros), would be impractically large. (Appendix B presents scientific notation in more detail.)

Phases of Microbial Population Growth

Learning Outcomes

6.17 Draw and label a bacterial growth curve.

6.18 Describe what occurs at each phase of a population's growth.

A graph that plots the numbers of organisms in a growing population over time is known as a **growth curve.** When drawn using an arithmetic scale on the *y*-axis, a plot of exponential growth presents two problems **(Figure 6.19a)**: it is difficult or impossible to distinguish numbers in early generations from the baseline, and as the population grows it becomes impossible to accommodate the graph on a single page.

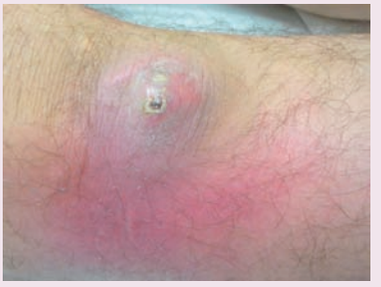
The solution to these problems is to replace the arithmetic scale on the *y*-axis with a logarithmic (log) scale **(Figure 6.19b)**. Such a log scale, in which each division is 10 times larger than the preceding one, can accommodate small numbers at the lower end of the graph and very large numbers at the upper end. This kind of graph is *semilogarithmic* because only one axis uses a log scale.

When bacteria are inoculated into a closed vessel of liquid medium, there are four distinct phases to a population's growth curve: the lag, log, stationary, and death phases **(Figure 6.20)**.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Bacterial Growth Curve*

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

BOILS IN THE LOCKER ROOM



For several weeks, faculty, students, and staff at Rayburn High School have been dealing with an epidemic of unsightly, painful boils and skin infections. Over 40 athletes have been too sore to play sports, and 13 students have been hospitalized. Nurses take clinical samples of the drainage of the infections from hospitalized students, and medical laboratory scientists culture the samples. Isolated bacterial colonies are circular, convex, and golden. The bacterium is Gram-positive, mesophilic, and facultatively halophilic and can grow with or without oxygen. The cells are spherical and remain attached in clusters.

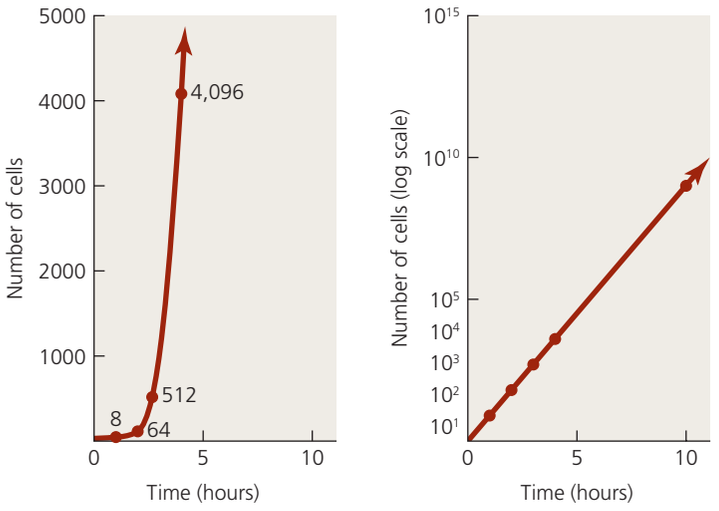
1. What color are the Gram-stained cells?
2. What does the term "facultatively halophilic" mean?
3. What is the scientific description of the bacterium's oxygen requirement?
4. If the bacterium divides every 30 minutes under laboratory conditions, how many cells would there be in a colony after 24 hours?

Lag Phase

During the **lag phase** the cells are adjusting to their new environment; most cells do not reproduce immediately but instead actively synthesize enzymes to utilize novel nutrients in the medium. For example, bacteria inoculated from a medium containing glucose as a carbon source into a medium containing lactose must synthesize two types of proteins: membrane proteins to transport lactose into the cell and the enzyme lactase to catabolize lactose. The lag phase can last less than an hour or can last for days, depending on the species and the chemical and physical conditions of the medium.

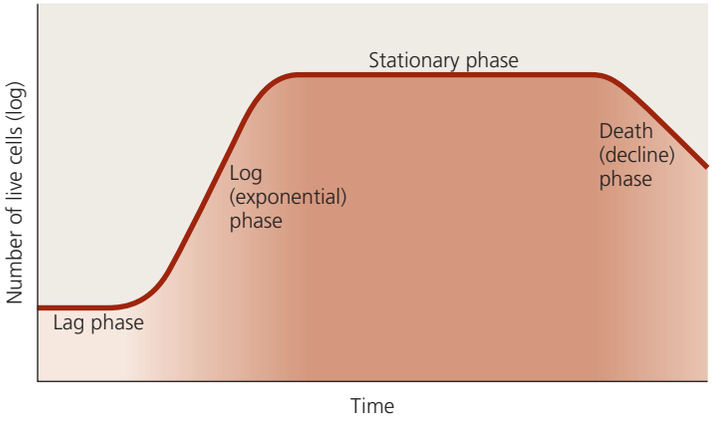
Log Phase

Eventually, the bacteria synthesize the necessary chemicals for conducting metabolism in their new environment, and they then enter a phase of rapid chromosome replication, growth, and reproduction. This is the **log phase,** so named because the population increases logarithmically, and the reproductive rate reaches a constant as DNA and protein syntheses are maximized.



▲ Figure 6.19 Two growth curves of logarithmic growth. The generation time for this *E. coli* population is 20 minutes. **(a)** An arithmetic graph. Using an arithmetic scale for the *y*-axis makes it difficult to ascertain actual numbers of cells near the beginning and impossible to plot points after only a short time. **(b)** A semilogarithmic graph. Using a logarithmic scale for the *y*-axis solves both of these problems. Note that a plot of logarithmic population growth using a logarithmic scale produces a straight line.

Researchers are interested in the log phase for many reasons. Populations in log phase are more susceptible to antimicrobial drugs that interfere with metabolism, such as erythromycin, and to drugs that interfere with the formation of cell structures, such as the inhibition of cell wall synthesis by penicillin. Populations in log phase are preferred for Gram staining because most cells' walls are intact—an important characteristic for correct staining. Further, because the metabolic rate of individual cells is at a maximum during log phase, this phase may be preferred for industrial and laboratory purposes.



▲ Figure 6.20 A typical microbial growth curve. The curve shows the four phases of population growth. *Why do cells trail behind their optimum reproductive potential during the lag phase?*

Figure 6.20 *During lag phase, cells are synthesizing the metabolic machinery and chemicals required for optimal reproduction.*

Stationary Phase

If bacterial growth continued at the exponential rate of the log phase, bacteria would soon overwhelm the Earth. This does not occur because as nutrients are depleted and wastes accumulate, the rate of reproduction decreases. Eventually, the number of dying cells equals the number of cells being produced, and the size of the population remains constant—hence the name **stationary phase.** During this phase, the metabolic rate of surviving cells declines.

Death Phase

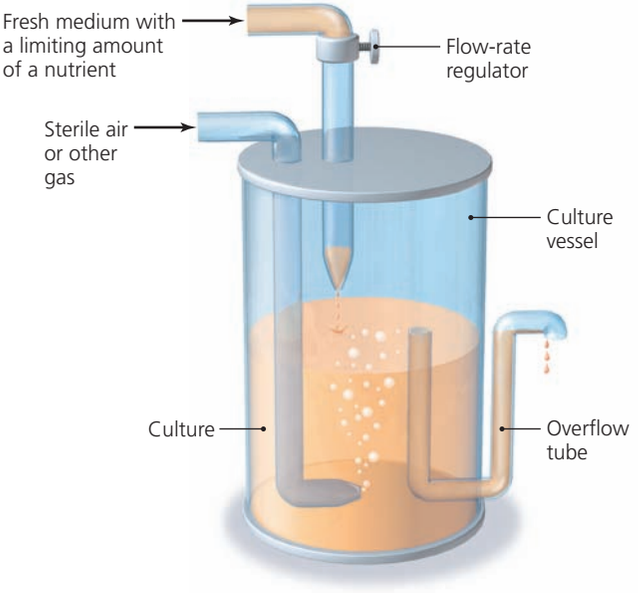
If nutrients are not added and wastes are not removed, a population reaches a point at which cells die at a faster rate than they are produced. Such a culture has entered the **death phase** (or *decline phase*). Bear in mind that during the death phase, some cells remain alive and continue metabolizing and reproducing, but the number of dying cells exceeds the number of new cells produced so that eventually the population decreases to a fraction of its previous abundance. In some cases all the cells die, whereas in others a few survivors may remain indefinitely. The latter case is especially true for cultures of bacteria that can develop resting structures called *endospores* (see Chapter 3).

Continuous Culture in a Chemostat

Learning Outcome

6.19 Explain how a chemostat can maintain a microbial culture in a continuous phase.

Researchers and industrialists can continuously maintain a particular phase of microbial population growth by using a special culture device called a **chemostat** (Figure 6.21). A chemostat is



▲ Figure 6.21 Schematic of chemostat. A microbial culture is continuously maintained in a predetermined phase, typically log phase, by controlling the amount and type of fresh medium added while removing an equal amount of old culture.

an open system; that is, fresh medium is continuously supplied while an equal amount of old medium (containing microbes) is removed. As nutrients enter the culture vessel of a chemostat, the cells can metabolize, grow, and reproduce but only to the extent that a limiting nutrient (e.g., a particular amino acid) is available. By controlling the amount of limiting nutrient entering the culture vessel, a chemostat maintains a culture in a particular phase, typically log phase. This is impossible in a closed system because as nutrients are depleted and wastes accumulate, the culture enters stationary phase and then death phase.

Chemostats make possible the study of microbial population growth at steady but low nutrient levels, such as might be found in biofilms. Such studies are essential to understand interactions of microbial species in nature and can reveal aspects of microbial interactions that are not apparent in a closed system. Scientists also use chemostats to maintain log phase population growth for experimental inquiries into aspects of microbial metabolism, such as enzyme activities. Food and industrial microbiologists use chemostats to maintain constant production of useful microbial products.

Measuring Microbial Reproduction

Learning Outcome

6.20 Contrast direct and indirect methods of measuring bacterial reproduction.

We have discussed the concepts of population growth and have seen that large numbers result from logarithmic growth, but we have not discussed practical methods of determining the size of a microbial population. Because of each cell's small size and incredible rate of reproduction, it is not possible to actually count every one in a population. For one thing, they grow so rapidly that their number changes during the count. Therefore, laboratory personnel must estimate the number of cells in a population by counting the number in a small, representative sample and then multiplying to estimate the number in the whole specimen. For example, if there are 25 cells in a microliter (µl) sample of urine, then there are approximately 25 million cells in a liter of urine.

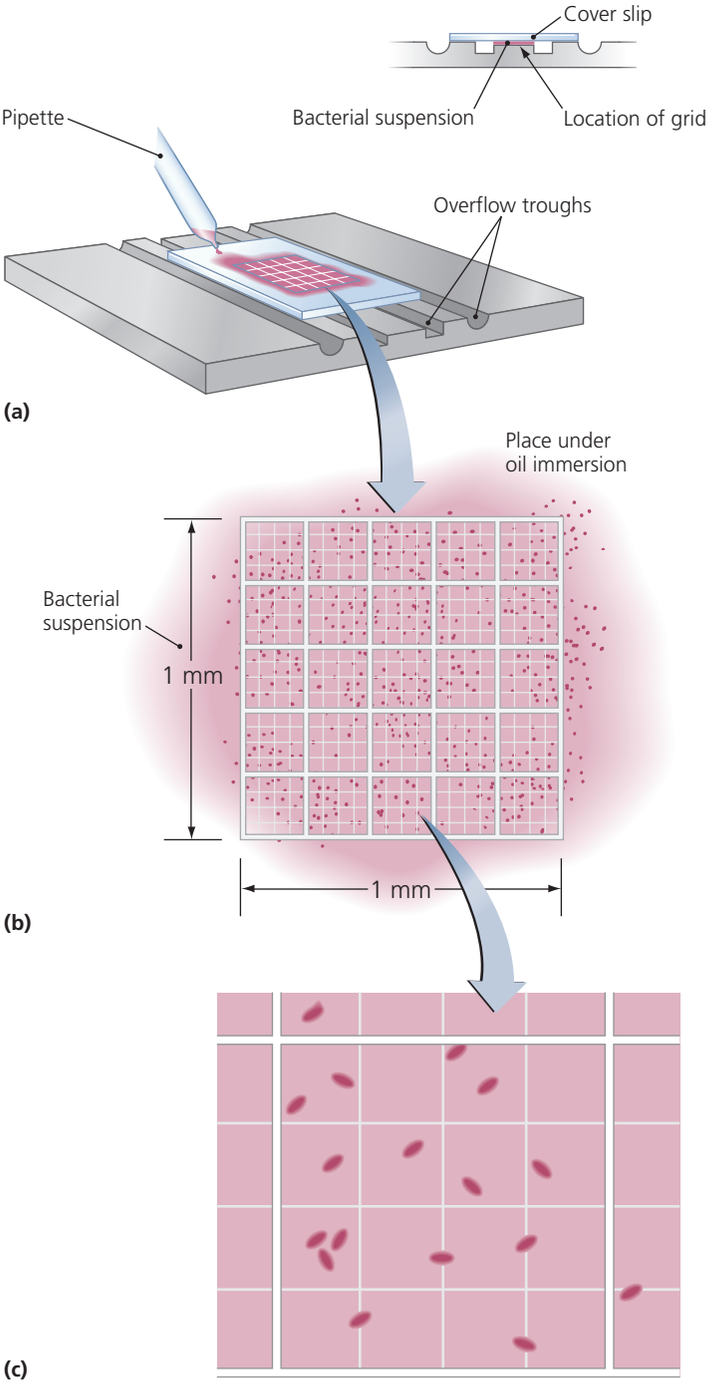
Estimating the number of microorganisms in a sample is useful for determining such things as the severity of urinary tract infections, the effectiveness of pasteurization and other methods of food preservation, the degree of fecal contamination of water supplies, and the effectiveness of particular disinfectants and antibiotics.

Microbiologists use either direct or indirect methods to estimate the number of cells. We begin with direct methods of measuring bacterial reproduction.

Direct Methods Not Requiring Incubation

It is possible to directly count cells without having to incubate cultures. Here we consider two such direct methods.

Microscopic Counts Microbiologists can count microorganisms directly through a microscope rather than inoculating them onto the surface of a solid medium. In this method, particularly suitable for stained prokaryotes and relatively large eukaryotes, a sample is placed on a *cell counter* (also called a *Petroff-Hausser counting chamber*), which is a glass slide composed of an etched grid positioned beneath a glass coverslip **(Figure 6.22)**. Because the coverslip is 0.02 mm above the grid,



▲ **Figure 6.22 The use of a cell counter for estimating microbial numbers. (a)** The counter is a glass slide with an etched grid that is exactly 0.02 mm lower than the bottom of the coverslip. A bacterial suspension placed next to the coverslip through a pipette moves under the coverslip and over the grid by capillary action. **(b)** View of a 1 mm^2 portion of the grid through the microscope. Each square millimeter of the grid has 25 large squares, each of which is divided into 16 small squares. **(c)** Enlarged view of one large square containing 15 cells. The number of bacteria in several large squares is counted and averaged. The calculations involved in estimating the number of bacteria per milliliter (cm^3) of suspension are described in the text.

the volume of bacterial suspension over a 1 mm^2 portion of the grid is 1 mm × 1 mm × 0.02 mm = 0.02 mm^3. Each 1 mm^2 grid contains 25 large squares, so a microbiologist can count the number of bacteria in several of the large squares and then calculate the mean number of bacteria per square. The number of bacteria per milliliter (cm^3) can be calculated as follows:

mean no. of bacteria per square × 25 squares
= no. of bacteria per 0.02 mm^3
no. of bacteria per 0.02 mm^3 × 50 = no. of bacteria per mm^3
no. of bacteria per mm^3 × 1000 = no. of bacteria per cm^3 (ml)

This means that one needs only to multiply the mean number of bacteria per square by 1,250,000 (25 × 50 × 1000) to calculate the number of bacteria per milliliter of bacterial suspension.

Direct microscopic counts are advantageous when there are more than 10,000,000 cells per milliliter or when a speedy estimate of population size is required. However, direct counts can be problematic because it is often difficult to differentiate between living and dead cells, and it is difficult to count motile microorganisms.

Electronic Counters A *Coulter*[16] *counter* is a device that directly counts cells as they interrupt an electrical current flowing across a narrow tube held in front of an electronic detector. This device is useful for counting the larger cells of yeast, unicellular algae, and protozoa; it is less useful for bacterial counts because of debris in the media and the presence of filaments and clumps of cells.

Flow cytometry is a variation of counting with a Coulter counter. A cytometer uses a light-sensitive detector to record changes in light transmission through the tube as cells pass. Scientists use this technique to distinguish among cells that have been differentially stained with fluorescent dyes or tagged with fluorescent antibodies. They can count bacteria in a solution and even count host cells that contain fluorescently stained intracellular parasites.

We have considered direct methods not requiring incubation. Now we consider methods with incubation.

Direct Methods Requiring Incubation

Among the many direct techniques are techniques requiring incubation—viable plate counts following dilution, membrane filtration, and the most probable number method. Direct techniques not requiring incubation include microscopic counts and electronic counting. We will consider each in turn.

Serial Dilution and Viable Plate Counts What if the number of cells in even a very small sample is still too great to count? If, for example, a 1-ml sample of milk containing 20,000 bacterial cells per milliliter were plated on a Petri plate, there would be too many colonies to count. In such cases, microbiologists make a **serial dilution,** which is the stepwise dilution of a liquid culture in which the dilution factor at each step is constant. The scientists plate a set amount of each dilution onto an agar surface and count the number of colonies resulting on a plate from each dilution. They count the colonies on plates with 25 to 250 colonies and multiply the number by the reciprocal of the dilution to estimate the number of bacteria per milliliter of the original culture. This method is called a **viable plate count** (Figure 6.23).

When a plate has fewer than 25 colonies, it is not used to estimate the number of bacteria in the original sample because the chance of underestimating the population increases when the number of colonies is small. Recall that the number of colonies on a plate indicates the number of CFUs that were inoculated onto the plate. This number differs from the actual number of cells when the CFUs are composed of more than one cell. In such cases, a viable plate count underestimates the number of cells present in the sample.

The accuracy of a viable plate count also depends on the homogeneity of the dilutions, the ability of the bacteria to grow on the medium used, the number of cell deaths, and the growth phase of the sample population. Thoroughly mixing each dilution, inoculating multiple plates per dilution, and using log-phase cultures minimize errors.

Membrane Filtration Viable plate counts allow scientists to estimate the number of microorganisms when the population is very large, but if the population density is very small—as is the case, for example, for fecal bacteria in a stream or lake—microbes are more accurately counted by **membrane filtration** (Figure 6.24). In this method, a large sample (perhaps as large as several liters) is poured (or drawn under a vacuum) through a membrane filter with pores small enough to trap the cells. The membrane is then transferred onto a solid medium, and the colonies present after incubation are counted. In this case, the number of colonies is equal to the number of CFUs in the original large sample.

CRITICAL THINKING

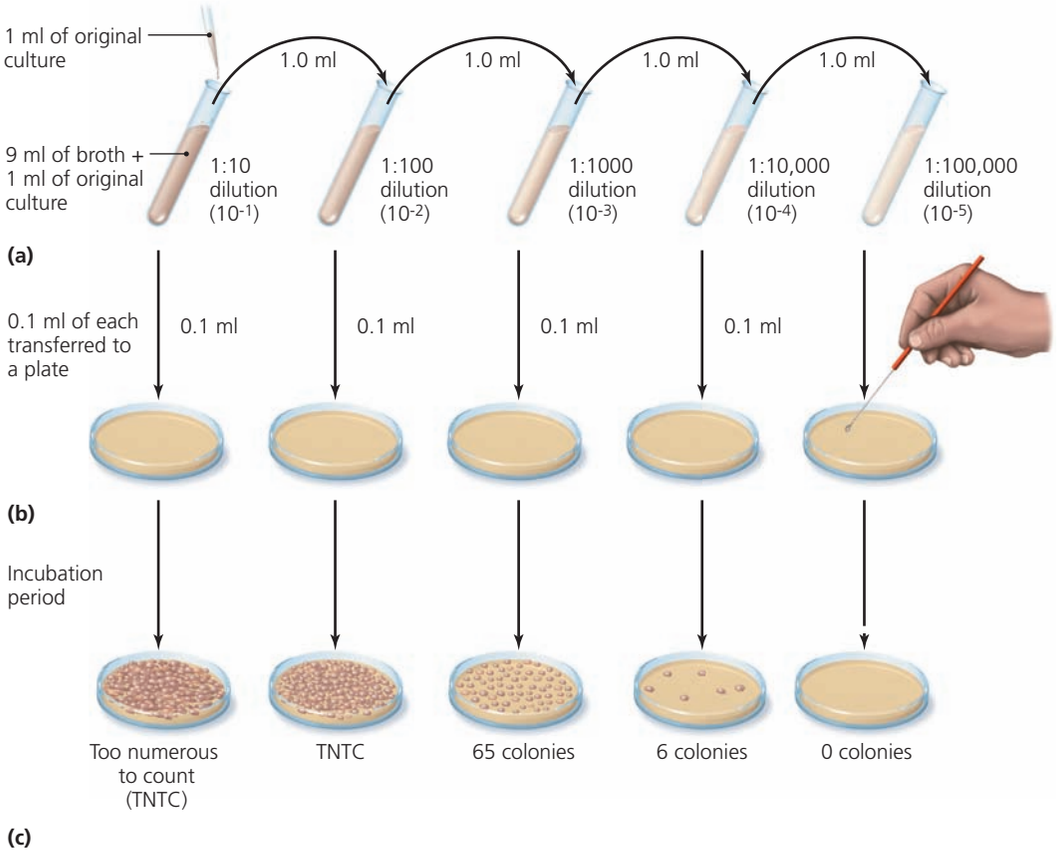
Viable plate counts are used to estimate population size when the density of microorganisms is high, whereas membrane filtration is used when the density is low. Why is a viable plate count appropriate when the density is high but not when the density is low?

Most Probable Number The **most probable number (MPN)** method is a statistical estimation technique based on the fact that the more bacteria are in a sample, the more dilutions are required to reduce their number to zero.

Let's consider an example of the use of the MPN method to estimate the number of fecal bacteria contaminating a stream. A researcher inoculates a set of test tubes of a broth medium with a sample of stream water. The more tubes that are used, the more accurate is the MPN method; even so, accuracy must be balanced against the time and cost involved in inoculating and incubating numerous tubes. Typically, a set of five tubes is inoculated.

The researcher also inoculates a set of five tubes with a 1:10 dilution and another set of five tubes with a 1:100 dilution of

[16]Named for Wallace Coulter, American inventor.



▲ Figure 6.23 A serial dilution and viable plate count for estimating microbial population size. (a) Serial dilutions. A series of 10-fold dilutions is made. **(b)** Plating. A 0.1-ml sample from each dilution is poured onto a plate and spread with a sterile rod. Alternatively, 0.1 ml of each dilution can be mixed with melted agar medium and poured into plates. **(c)** Counting. Plates are examined after incubation. Some plates may contain so many colonies that they are too numerous to count (TNTC). The number of colonies is multiplied by 10 (because 0.1 ml was plated instead of 1 ml) and then by the reciprocal of the dilution to estimate the concentration of bacteria in original culture—in this case, 65 colonies × 10 × 1000 = 650,000 bacteria/ml.

stream water. Thus, there are 15 test tubes—the first set of five tubes inoculated with undiluted sample, the second set with a 1:10 dilution, and the third set with a 1:100 dilution **(Figure 6.25)**.

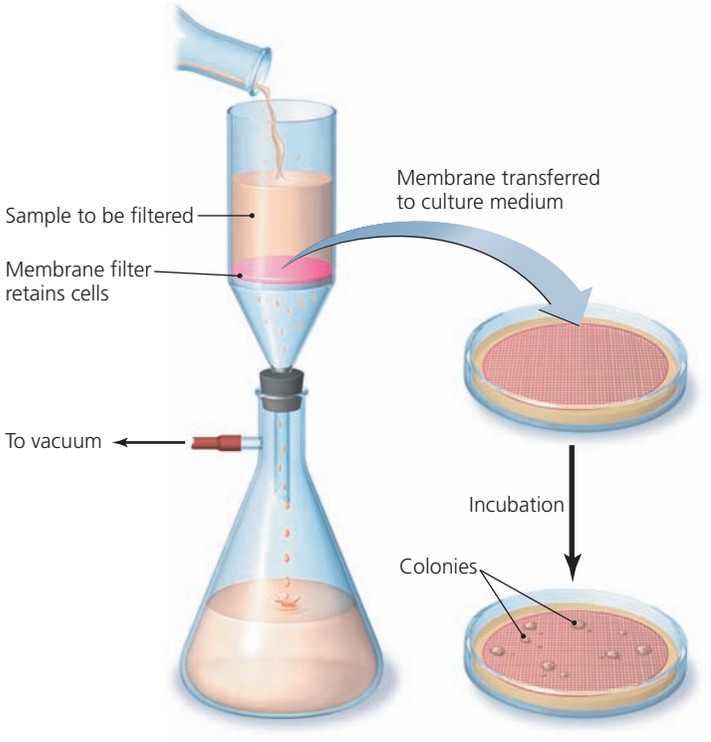
After incubation for 48 hours, the researcher counts the number of test tubes in each set that show growth. This generates three numbers in this example—growth occurs in four of the undiluted broth tubes, two of the 1:10 tubes, and in only one of the 1:100 tubes (4, 2, 1). The numbers are compared to the numbers in an MPN table (see **Table 6.5** on p. 188). How statisticians develop MPN tables is beyond the scope of our discussion, but they accurately estimate the number of cells in a solution. In this case the MPN table estimates that there were 26 bacteria per 100 ml of stream water.

The most probable number method is useful for counting microorganisms that do not grow on solid media, when bacterial counts are required routinely, and when samples of wastewater, drinking water, and food samples contain too few organisms to use a viable plate count. The MPN method is also used to count algal cells because algae seldom form distinct colonies on solid media.

Indirect Methods

It is not always necessary to count microorganisms to estimate population size or density. Industrial and research microbiologists use indirect methods that measure such variables as turbidity, metabolic activity, and dry weight instead of counting microorganisms, colonies, or MPN tubes. Scientists can also estimate population size and diversity by analyzing the unique sequences of DNA present in a sample.

Turbidity As bacteria reproduce in a broth culture, the broth often becomes *turbid* (cloudy) **(Figure 6.26a)**. Generally, the greater the bacterial population, the more turbid a broth will be. An indirect method for estimating the growth of a microbial population involves measuring changes in turbidity using

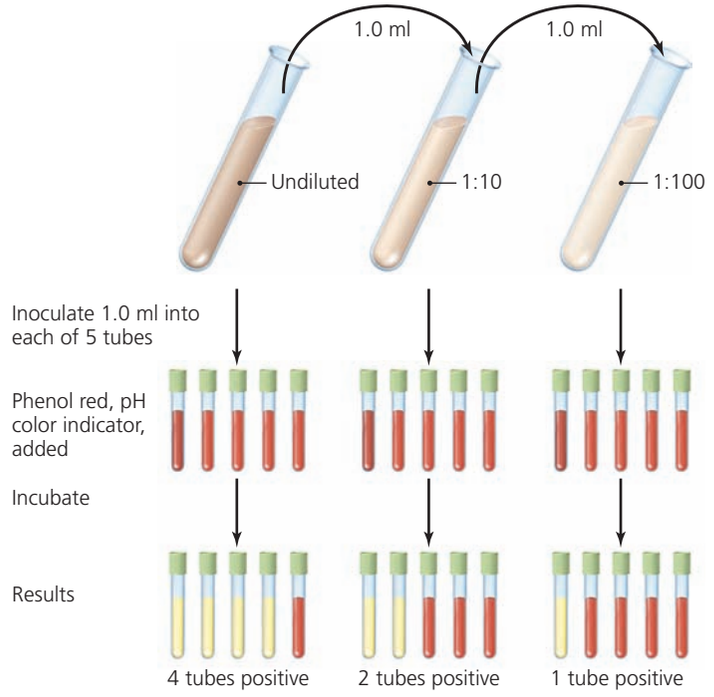


▲ Figure 6.24 The use of membrane filtration to estimate microbial population size. **(a)** After all the bacteria in a given volume of sample are trapped on a membrane filter, the filter is transferred onto an appropriate medium and incubated. The microbial population is estimated by multiplying the number of colonies counted by the volume of sample filtered. **(b)** Bacteria trapped on the surface of a membrane filter. **(c)** Colonies growing on a solid medium after being transferred from a membrane filter. Scientists use a superimposed grid to help them count the colonies. *If the colonies in (c) resulted from filtering 2.5 liters of stream water, what is the minimum number of bacteria per liter in the stream?*

Figure 6.24 $\frac{83 \text{ colonies}}{2.5 \text{ L}} = 33.2 \text{ colonies/L}$

a device called a *spectrophotometer* **(Figure 6.26b)**. Researchers most often use this method.

A spectrophotometer measures the amount of light transmitted through a culture under standardized conditions **(Figure 6.26c)**.



▲ Figure 6.25 The most probable number (MPN) method for estimating microbial numbers. Typically, sets of five test tubes are used for each of three dilutions. After incubation, the number of tubes showing growth in each set is used to enter an MPN table (see Table 6.5), which provides an estimate of the number of cells per 100 ml of liquid. *If the results were 5, 3, 1, what would be the most probable number of microorganisms in the original broth?*

Figure 6.25 *The MPN is 110/100 ml.*

The greater the concentration of bacteria within a broth, the more light will be absorbed and scattered and the less light will pass through and strike a light-sensitive detector. Generally, transmission is inversely proportional to the population size; that is, the larger the population grows, the less light will reach the detector.

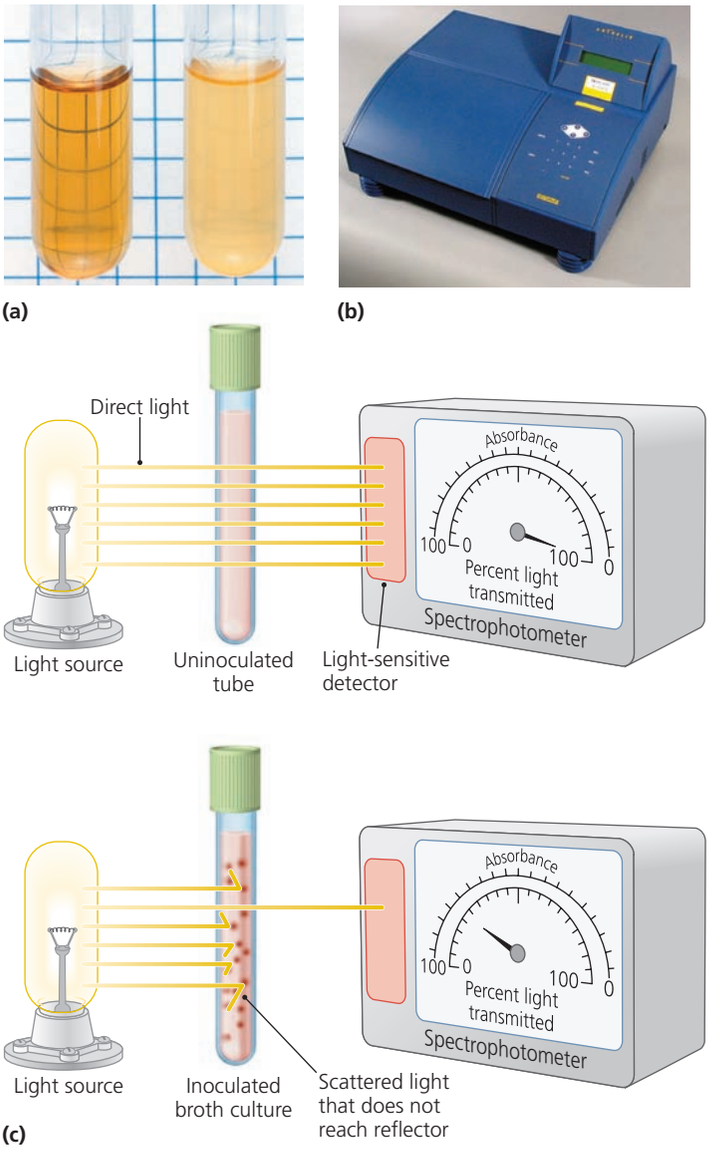
Scales on the gauge of a spectrophotometer report *percentage of transmission* and *absorbance*. These are two ways of looking at the same things; for example, 25% transmission is the same thing as 75% absorbance. Direct counts must be calibrated with transmission and absorbance readings to provide estimates of population size. Once these values are determined, spectrophotometry provides estimates of population size more quickly than any direct method.

The benefits of measuring turbidity to estimate population growth include ease of use and speed. However, the technique is useful only if the concentration of cells exceeds 1 million per milliliter; densities below this value generally do not produce turbidity. Further, the technique is accurate only if the cells are suspended uniformly in the medium. If they form either a *pellicle* (a film of cells at the surface) or a *sediment* (an accumulation of cells at the bottom), their number will be underestimated. Further, spectrophotometry does not distinguish between living and dead cells.

Metabolic Activity Under standard temperature conditions, the rate at which a population of cells utilizes nutrients and

TABLE 6.5 Most Probable Number Table (partial)

Number Out of Five Tubes Giving Positive Results in Three Dilutions			Most Probable Number of Bacteria per 100 ml
4	0	0	13
4	0	1	17
4	1	0	17
4	1	1	21
4	1	2	26
4	2	0	22
4	2	1	26
4	3	0	27
4	3	1	33
4	4	0	34
5	0	0	23
5	0	1	30
5	0	2	40
5	1	0	30
5	1	1	50
5	1	2	60
5	2	0	50
5	2	1	70
5	2	2	90
5	3	0	80
5	3	1	110
5	3	2	140
5	3	3	170
5	4	0	130
5	4	1	170
5	4	2	220
5	4	3	280
5	4	4	350



▲ **Figure 6.26 Turbidity and the use of spectrophotometry in indirectly measuring population size. (a)** Turbidity (right), an increased optical density or cloudiness of a solution. **(b)** A spectrophotometer. **(c)** The principle of spectrophotometry. After a light beam is passed through an uninoculated sample of the culture medium, the scale is set at 100% transmission. In an inoculated sample, the microbial cells absorb and scatter light, reducing the amount reaching the detector. The percentage of light transmitted is inversely proportional to population density.

produces wastes depends on their number. Once they establish the metabolic rate of a microorganism, scientists can indirectly estimate the number of cells in a culture by measuring changes in such things as nutrient utilization, waste production, or pH. Scientists studying environmental water samples often use this method.

Dry Weight The abundance of some microorganisms, particularly filamentous microorganisms, is difficult to measure by direct methods. Instead, these organisms are filtered from their culture medium, dried, and weighed. The *dry weight method* is suitable for broth cultures, but growth cannot be followed over time because the organisms are killed during the process.

Genetic Methods The majority of bacteria and archaea have not been grown in the laboratory, and representatives of most species are too few in number to study by direct observation. How do scientists estimate the number of such uncultured microbes?

Scientists can isolate unique DNA sequences representing uncultured prokaryotic species using genetic techniques such as *polymerase chain reaction (PCR)* and *hybridization* of DNA that codes for ribosomal RNA. For example, one study estimated that more than 100 billion bacteria and archaea, representing more than 10 million different species, are in a single gram of garden soil. (Chapter 8 discusses genetic methods in more detail.)

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Growth Requirements (pp. 164–172)

1. A colony, which is a visible population of microorganisms arising from a single cell or colony-forming unit living in one place, grows in size as the number of cells increases. Most microbes live as biofilms, that is, in association with one another on surfaces.
2. Chemical **nutrients** such as carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen are required for the growth of microbial populations.
3. **Photoautotrophs** use carbon dioxide as a carbon source and light energy to make their own food; **chemoautotrophs** use carbon dioxide as a carbon source but catabolize organic molecules for energy. **Photoheterotrophs** are photosynthetic organisms that acquire energy from light and acquire nutrients via catabolism of organic compounds; **chemoheterotrophs** use organic compounds for both energy and carbon. **Organotrophs** acquire electrons for redox reactions from organic sources, whereas **lithotrophs** acquire electrons from inorganic sources.
4. **Obligate aerobes** require oxygen molecules as the final electron acceptor of their electron transport chains, whereas **obligate anaerobes** cannot tolerate oxygen and must use an electron acceptor other than oxygen.
5. The four toxic forms of oxygen are **singlet oxygen ($^1O_2$)**, which is neutralized by pigments called **carotenoids; superoxide radicals (O_2^-),** which are detoxified by superoxide dismutase; **peroxide anion (O_2^{2-}),** which is detoxified by catalase or peroxidase; and **hydroxyl radicals (OH·),** the most reactive of the toxic forms of oxygen.
6. Microbes are described in terms of their oxygen requirements and limitations as strict **aerobes,** which require oxygen; as strict **anaerobes,** which cannot tolerate oxygen; as **facultative anaerobes,** which can live with or without oxygen; as **aerotolerant anaerobes,** which prefer anaerobic conditions but can tolerate exposure to low levels of oxygen; or as **microaerophiles,** which require low levels of oxygen.
7. Nitrogen, acquired from organic or inorganic sources, is an essential element for microorganisms. Some bacteria can reduce nitrogen gas into a more usable form via a process called **nitrogen fixation.**
8. In addition to the main elements found in microbes, very small amounts of **trace elements** are required. Vitamins are among the **growth factors,** which are organic chemicals required in small amounts for metabolism.
9. Though microbes survive within the limits imposed by a minimum growth temperature and a maximum growth temperature, an organism's metabolic activities produce the highest growth rate at the **optimum growth temperature.**
10. Microbes are described in terms of their temperature requirements as (from coldest to warmest) **psychrophiles, mesophiles, thermophiles,** or **hyperthermophiles.**
11. **Neutrophiles** grow best at neutral pH, **acidophiles** grow best in acidic surroundings, and **alkalinophiles** live in alkaline habitats.
12. Osmotic pressure can cause cells to die from either swelling and bursting or from **crenation** (shriveling). The cell walls of some microorganisms protect them from osmotic shock. **Obligate halophiles** require high osmotic pressure, whereas facultative halophiles do not require but can tolerate such conditions.
13. **Barophiles,** organisms that normally live under the extreme hydrostatic pressure at great depth below the surface of a body of water, often cannot live at the pressure found at the surface.
14. **Quorum sensing** is the process by which bacteria respond to changes in microbial density by utilizing signal and receptor molecules. **Biofilms,** which are communities of cells attached to surfaces, use quorum sensing.

Culturing Microorganisms (pp. 172–180)

1. Microbiologists culture microorganisms by transferring an **inoculum** from a clinical or environmental specimen into a **medium** such as **broth** or solid media. The microorganisms grow into a **culture.** On solid surfaces, cultures are seen as **colonies.**
2. A **clinical specimen** is a sample of human material. Standard precautions are the guidelines to protect health care professionals from infection.
3. **Pure cultures** (axenic cultures) contain cells of only one species and are derived from a **colony-forming unit (CFU)** composed of a single cell or group of related cells. To obtain pure cultures, **sterile** equipment and use of aseptic techniques are critical.

4. The **streak-plate** method allows CFUs to be isolated by streaking. The **pour-plate** technique isolates CFUs via a series of dilutions.
5. Petri dishes that are filled with solid media are called **Petri plates. Slant tubes (slants)** are test tubes containing agar media that solidified while the tube was resting at an angle.
6. A **defined medium** (also known as **synthetic medium**) provides exact known amounts of nutrients for the growth of a particular microbe. **Complex media** contain a variety of growth factors. **Selective media** either inhibit the growth of unwanted microorganisms or favor the growth of particular microbes. Microbiologists use **differential media** to distinguish among groups of bacteria. **Reducing media** provide conditions conducive to culturing anaerobes. **Transport media** are designed to move specimens safely from one location to another while maintaining the relative abundance of organisms and preventing contamination of the specimen or environment.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Bacterial Growth Media*
7. Special culture techniques include the use of animal and cell cultures, low-oxygen cultures, **enrichment cultures,** and **cold enrichment cultures.** A **capnophile** grows best with high CO_2 levels in addition to low oxygen levels.
8. Cultures can be preserved in the short term by **refrigeration** and in the long term by **deep freezing** and **lyophilization.**

Growth of Microbial Populations (pp. 180–188)

1. Bacteria grow by **logarithmic,** or **exponential, growth.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Bacterial Growth: Overview, Binary Fission*
2. A population of microorganisms doubles during its **generation time**—the time also required for a single cell to grow and divide.
3. A graph that plots the number of organisms growing in a population over time is called a **growth curve.** When organisms are grown in a broth and the growth curve is plotted on a semilogarithmic scale, the population's growth curve has four phases. In the **lag phase,** the organisms are adjusting to their environment. In the **log phase,** the population is most actively growing. In the **stationary phase,** new organisms are being produced at the same rate at which they are dying. In the **death phase,** the organisms are dying more quickly than they can be replaced by new organisms.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Bacterial Growth Curve*
4. A **chemostat** is a continuous culture device that maintains a desired phase of microbial population growth by adding limited amounts and kinds of nutrients while removing an equal amount of old medium.
5. Direct methods for estimating population size that do not require incubation are microscopic counts and electronic counters, including flow cytometry. Direct methods requiring incubation—include **serial dilution** with **viable plate counts, membrane filtration,** and the **most probable number (MPN)** method.
6. Indirect methods include measurements of turbidity, metabolic activity, and dry weight and analysis of numbers and kinds of unique genetic sequences.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following can grow in a Petri plate on a laboratory table?
   a. an anaerobic bacterium
   b. an aerobic bacterium
   c. viruses on an agar surface
   d. all of the above
2. This statement, "In the laboratory, a sterile inoculating loop is moved across the agar surface in a culture dish, thinning a sample and isolating individuals," describes which of the following?
   a. broth culture
   b. pour plate
   c. streak plate
   d. dilution plate
3. Superoxide dismutase _____.
   a. causes hydrogen peroxide to become toxic
   b. detoxifies superoxide radicals
   c. neutralizes singlet oxygen
   d. is missing in aerobes
4. The most reactive of the four toxic forms of oxygen is _____.
   a. the hydroxyl radical
   b. the peroxide anion
   c. the superoxide radical
   d. singlet oxygen
5. Microaerophiles that grow best with a high concentration of carbon dioxide in addition to a low level of oxygen are called _____.
   a. aerotolerant
   b. capnophiles
   c. facultative anaerobes
   d. fastidious
6. Which of the following is *not* a growth factor for various microbes?
   a. cholesterol
   b. water
   c. vitamins
   d. heme
7. Organisms that preferentially may thrive in icy waters are described as _____.
   a. barophiles
   b. thermophiles
   c. mesophiles
   d. psychrophiles
8. Barophiles _____.
   a. cannot cause diseases in humans
   b. live at normal barometric pressure
   c. die if put under high pressure
   d. thrive in warm air
9. Which of the following terms best describes an organism that cannot exist in the presence of oxygen?
   a. obligate aerobe
   b. facultative aerobe
   c. obligate anaerobe
   d. facultative anaerobe
10. In a defined medium, _____.
    a. the exact chemical composition of the medium is known
    b. agar is available for microbial nutrition
    c. blood may be included
    d. organic chemicals are excluded

11. Which of the following is most useful in representing population growth on a graph?
    a. logarithmic reproduction of the growth curve
    b. a semilogarithmic graph using a log scale on the *y*-axis
    c. an arithmetic graph of the lag phase followed by a logarithmic section for the log, stationary, and death phases
    d. none of the above would best represent a population growth curve

12. Which of the following methods is best for counting fecal bacteria from a stream to determine the safety of the water for drinking?
    a. dry weight
    b. turbidity
    c. viable plate counts
    d. membrane filtration

13. A Coulter counter is _____.
    a. a statistical estimation using 15 dilution tubes and a table of numbers to estimate the number of bacteria per milliliter
    b. an indirect method of counting microorganisms
    c. a device that directly counts microbes as they pass through a tube in front of an electronic detector
    d. a device that directly counts microbes that are differentially stained with fluorescent dyes

14. Lyophilization can be described as _____.
    a. freeze drying
    b. deep freezing
    c. refrigeration
    d. pickling

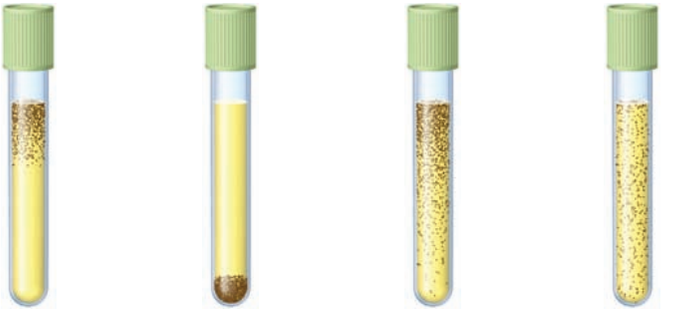
15. Quorum sensing is _____.
    a. the ability to respond to changes in population density
    b. a characteristic of most bacteria
    c. dependent on direct contact among cells
    d. associated with colonies on an agar plate

Fill in the Blanks

1. All cells require sources of _____, _____, and _____.
2. A toxic form of oxygen, _____ oxygen, is molecular oxygen with electrons that have been boosted to a higher energy state.
3. All cells recycle the essential element _____ from amino acids and nucleotides.
4. _____ are small organic molecules that are required in minute amounts for metabolism.
5. The lowest temperature at which a microbe continues to metabolize is called its _____.
6. Cells that shrink in hypertonic solutions such as salt water are responding to _____ pressure.
7. Obligate _____ exist in salt ponds because of their ability to withstand high osmotic pressure.
8. _____ pigments protect many phototrophic organisms from photochemically produced singlet oxygen.
9. Microbes that reduce N_2 to NH_3 engage in nitrogen _____.
10. A student observes a researcher streaking a plate numerous times, flaming the loop between streaks. The researcher is likely using the _____ method to isolate microorganisms.

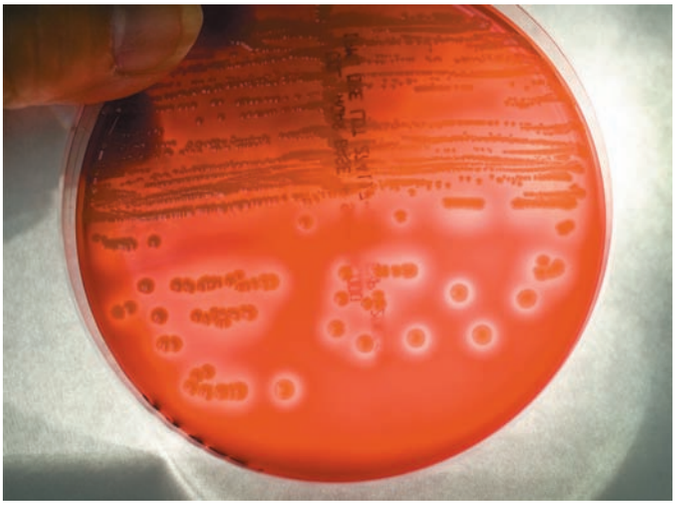
Visualize It!

1. Label each of these thioglycolate tubes to indicate the oxygen requirements of the microbes growing in them.



a. _____ b. _____ c. _____ d. _____

2. Describe the type of hemolysis shown by the pathogen *Staphylococcus aureus* pictured here. _____



Short Answer

1. High temperature affects the shape of particular molecules. How does this affect the life of a microbe?
2. Support or refute the following statement: Microbes cannot tolerate the low pH of the human stomach.
3. Explain quorum sensing and describe how it is related to biofilm formation.
4. Why must media, vessels, and instruments be sterilized before they are used for microbiological procedures?
5. Why is agar used in microbiology?
6. What is the difference between complex media and defined media?
7. Draw and label the four distinct phases of a bacterial growth curve. Describe what is happening within the culture as it passes through the phases.
8. If there are 47 cells in 1 µl of sewage, how many cells are there in a liter?

9. List three indirect methods of counting microbes.
10. List five direct methods of counting microbes.
11. Explain the differences among photoautotrophs, chemoautotrophs, photoheterotrophs, chemoheterotrophs, organotrophs, and lithotrophs.
12. Contrast the media described in Tables 6.3 and 6.4 on pp. 176 and 179. Why is *E. coli* medium described as defined, whereas MacConkey medium and blood agar are defined as complex?
13. How does a chemostat maintain a constant population size?

Critical Thinking

1. A scientist describes an organism as a chemoheterotrophic, aerotolerant, mesophilic, facultatively halophilic coccus. Describe the cell's metabolic and structural features in plain English.
2. Pasteurization is a technique that uses temperatures of about 72°C to neutralize potential pathogens in foods. What effect does this temperature have on the enzymes and cellular metabolism of pathogens? Why does the heat of pasteurization kill some microorganisms yet fail to affect thermophiles?
3. Two cultures of a facultative anaerobe are grown under identical conditions, except that one was exposed to oxygen and the other was completely deprived of oxygen. What differences would you expect to see between the dry weights of the cultures? Why?
4. Some organisms require riboflavin (vitamin B_2) to make FAD. For what purpose do they use FAD?
5. A scientist inoculates a bacterium into a complex nutrient slant tube. The bacterium forms only a few colonies on the slanted surface but grows prolifically in the depth of the agar. Describe the oxygen requirements of the bacterium.
6. How can regions within biofilms differ in their chemical content?
7. A scientific article describes a bacterium as an obligate microaerophilic chemoorganoheterotroph. Describe the oxygen and nutritional characteristics of the bacterium in everyday language.
8. Microorganisms require phosphorus, sulfur, iron, and magnesium for metabolism. What specifically are these elements used for in microbial metabolism? (Review Chapters 2 and 5.)
9. The bacterium *Desulforudis audaxviator* lives almost 2 miles underground, deriving energy from sulfate, acquiring electrons from hydrogen, and building organic molecules from inorganic carbon found in surrounding rocks. Describe the nutritional classifications of *D. audaxviator*.
10. Starting with 10 bacterial cells per milliliter in a sufficient amount of complete culture medium with a 1-hour lag phase and a 30-minute generation time, how many cells will there be in a liter of medium at the end of 2 hours? At the end of 7 hours?
11. Suppose you perform a serial dilution of 0.1-ml sample from a liter of culture medium as illustrated in Figure 6.23. The 10^{-3} plate gives 440 colonies, and the 10^{-4} plate gives 45 colonies. Calculate the approximate number of bacteria in the original liter.
12. How might the study of biofilms benefit humans.

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes culture media. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Blood agar
Differential
Enriched
Fastidious microorganisms
Fermentation broths (such as phenol red)
General purpose
MacConkey agar
Nutrient broth
Sabouraud agar
Selective
Selective and differential
Trypticase soy agar
Unwanted microorganisms
Visible differences between microorganisms

7 Microbial Genetics

Do genes hold the secrets to life? If we can identify all the **genes** in an organism and determine the functions of each, can we explain all of biological behavior? What genes do organisms have in common, and what genes make them unique? What genes cause certain microorganisms to be harmful or even deadly, and how can we develop drugs or techniques to target a **pathogen's** genes?

These are the kinds of questions that drive the dynamic world of genetic research. We now have complete genome maps, or genetic blueprints, of hundreds of viruses, bacteria, and other organisms. We even have mapped the human **genome**, which our knowledge of microbial genetics is helping us to analyze. For example, by studying the genes of the *Escherichia coli* bacterium and then identifying which genes we share, we can determine the roles these same genes play in humans. Genetically speaking, you may have much more in common with **microorganisms** than you think!

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

This chapter has MicroFlix. Go to MasteringMicrobiology to view movie-quality animations for DNA replication.

The familiar double helix of DNA, here illustrated by computer graphics, contains information needed to govern a cell's life.

Genetics is the study of inheritance and inheritable traits as expressed in an organism's genetic material. Geneticists study many aspects of inheritance, including the physical structure and function of genetic material, mutations, and the transfer of genetic material among organisms. In this chapter, we will examine these topics as they apply to microorganisms, the study of which has formed much of the basis of our understanding of human, animal, and plant genetics.

The Structure and Replication of Genomes

Learning Outcome

7.1 Compare and contrast the genomes of prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

The **genome** (jē´nōm) of a cell or virus is its entire genetic complement, including both its **genes**—specific sequences of nucleotides that code for RNA or polypeptide molecules—and nucleotide sequences that connect genes to one another. The genomes of cells and DNA viruses are composed solely of molecules of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), whereas RNA viruses use ribonucleic acid instead. (We will examine the genomes of viruses in more detail in Chapter 13.) The remainder of this chapter focuses on bacterial genomes—their structure, replication, function, mutation, and repair and how they compare and contrast with eukaryotic genomes and with the genomes of archaea. We begin by examining the structure of nucleic acids.

The Structure of Nucleic Acids

Learning Outcome

7.2 Describe the structure of DNA, and discuss how it facilitates the ability of DNA to act as genetic material.

Nucleic acids are polymers of basic building blocks called **nucleotides.** Each nucleotide is made up of phosphate attached to a *nucleoside* (see Figure 7.5a), which is in turn made up of a pentose sugar (ribose in RNA and deoxyribose in DNA) attached to one of five nitrogenous bases: guanine (G), cytosine (C), thymine (T), adenine (A), or uracil (U) (p. 49).

The bases of nucleotides hydrogen-bond to one another in specific ways called complementary **base pairs (bp):** in DNA, the complementary bases thymine and adenine bond to one another with two hydrogen bonds **(Figure 7.1a)**, whereas in RNA, uracil, not thymine, forms two hydrogen bonds with adenine **(Figure 7.1b)**. In both DNA and RNA, the complementary bases guanine and cytosine bond to one another with three hydrogen bonds **(Figure 7.1c)**.

Deoxyribonucleotides are linked through their sugars and phosphates to form the two backbones of a helical, double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) molecule **(Figure 7.1d)**. The carbon atoms of deoxyribose are numbered 1′ (pronounced "one prime") through 5′ ("five prime"). One end of a DNA strand is called the 5′ end because it terminates in a phosphate group attached to a 5′ carbon; the opposite (3′) end terminates with a hydroxyl group bound to a 3′ carbon of deoxyribose. The two strands are constructed similarly but are oriented in opposite directions to each other; one strand runs in a 5′ to 3′ direction, while the other runs 3′ to 5′. Scientists say the two strands are *antiparallel*. The base pairs extend into the middle of the molecule in a way reminiscent of the steps of a spiral staircase.

The lengths of DNA molecules are not usually given in metric units; instead, the length of a DNA molecule is expressed in base pairs. For example, the genome of the bacterium *Carsonella ruddii* (kar-son-el´ă rŭd´ē-ē) is 159,662 bp long, making it the smallest known cellular genome.

The structure of DNA helps explain its ability to act as genetic material. First, the linear sequence of nucleotides carries the instructions for the synthesis of polypeptides and RNA molecules—in much the way a sequence of letters carries information used to form words and sentences. Second, the complementary structure of the two strands allows a cell to make exact copies to pass to its progeny. We will examine the genetic code and DNA replication shortly.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

The chromosome of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is 4,411,529 bp long. A scientist who isolates and counts the number of nucleotides in its DNA molecule discovers that there are 2,893,963 molecules of guanine. How many molecules of the other three nucleotides are in the original DNA?

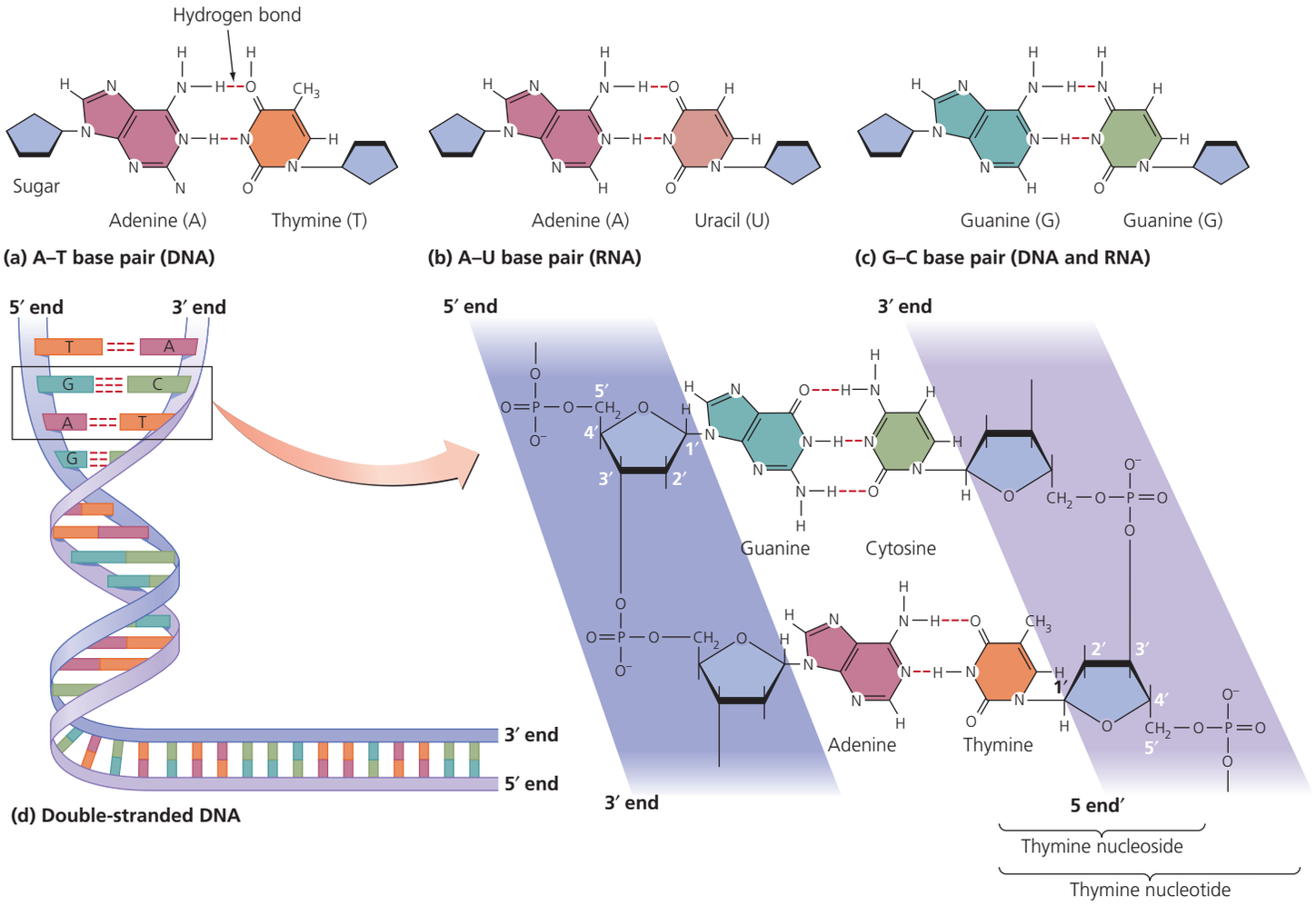
The amount of DNA in a genome can be extraordinary, as some examples will illustrate. The bacterium *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) is approximately 2 µm long and 1 µm in diameter, but its genome consists primarily of a 4.6×10^6 bp DNA molecule that is about 1600 µm long—800 times longer than the cell. The human genome has about 6 billion bp in 46 nuclear DNA molecules and numerous copies of a unique mitochondrial DNA molecule, and the entire genome would be about 3 meters (3,000,000 µm) long if all DNA molecules from a single cell were laid end to end. Most of a human cellular genome is packed into a nucleus that is typically only 5 µm in diameter. This is like packing 45 miles of thread into a golf ball and still being able to access any particular section of the thread. To understand how cells package such prodigious amounts of DNA into such small spaces, we must first understand that bacteria, archaea, and eukaryotes package DNA in different ways. We begin by examining the structure of prokaryotic genomes.

The Structure of Prokaryotic Genomes

The DNA of prokaryotic genomes is found in two structures: chromosomes and plasmids.

Prokaryotic Chromosomes

Prokaryotic cells, both bacterial and archaeal, package the main portion of their DNA, along with associated molecules of



▲ **Figure 7.1 The structure of nucleic acids.** Nucleic acids are polymers of nucleotides consisting of nucleosides (a pentose sugar and a nitrogenous base) bound to a phosphate. **(a)** Base pairing between the complementary bases adenine (A) and thymine (T) formed by two hydrogen bonds, found in DNA only. **(b)** Base pairing between adenine and uracil (U), found in RNA only. Notice the structural similarities between thymine and uracil. **(c)** Base pairing between the complementary bases guanine (G) and cytosine (C) formed by three hydrogen bonds, found in both DNA and RNA. **(d)** Double-stranded DNA, which consists of antiparallel strands of nucleotides held to one another by the hydrogen bonding between complementary bases. *What structures do DNA nucleotides and RNA nucleotides have in common?*

Figure 7.1 *Both DNA and RNA nucleotides are each composed of a pentose sugar, a phosphate, and a nitrogenous base.*

protein and RNA, as one or two distinct **chromosomes.**[1] Prokaryotic cells have a single copy of each chromosome and are called *haploid* cells.

A typical prokaryotic chromosome **(Figure 7.2a)** consists of a circular molecule of DNA localized in a region of the cytoplasm called the **nucleoid.** With few exceptions, no membrane surrounds a nucleoid, though the chromosome is packed in such a way that a distinct boundary is visible between the nucleoid and the rest of the cytoplasm. Chromosomal DNA is folded into loops that are 50,000 to 100,000 bp long **(Figure 7.2b)** held in place by molecules of protein and RNA. Archaeal DNA is wrapped around globular proteins called **histones.** The enzyme *gyrase* further folds and supercoils the entire prokaryotic chromosome like a skein of yarn into a compact mass.

For many years scientists thought that each prokaryote had only a single circular chromosome, but we now know that there are numerous exceptions. For example, *Epulopiscium*

[1]From Greek *chroma*, meaning "color" (because they typically stain darkly in eukaryotes, where they were first discovered), and *soma*, meaning "body."

(ep´yoo-lō-pis´sē-ŭm), a giant bacterium, has as many as hundreds of thousands of identical chromosomes. Some bacterial species contain two different chromosomes, and at least one member of such a pair may be linear. *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (ag´rō-bak-tēr´ē-um tū´me-fāsh-enz), a bacterium used to transfer genes into plants, is an example of a prokaryote with two chromosomes, one circular and one linear.

Plasmids

Learning Outcome

7.3 Describe the structure and function of plasmids.

In addition to chromosomes, many prokaryotic cells contain one or more **plasmids,** which are small molecules of DNA that replicate independently of the chromosome. Plasmids are usually circular and 1% to 5% of the size of a prokaryotic chromosome (see Figure 7.2b), ranging in size from a few thousand base pairs to a few million base pairs. Each plasmid carries information required for its own replication and often for one or more cellular traits. Typically, genes carried on plasmids are not essential for normal metabolism, for growth, or for cellular reproduction but can confer advantages to the cells that carry them.

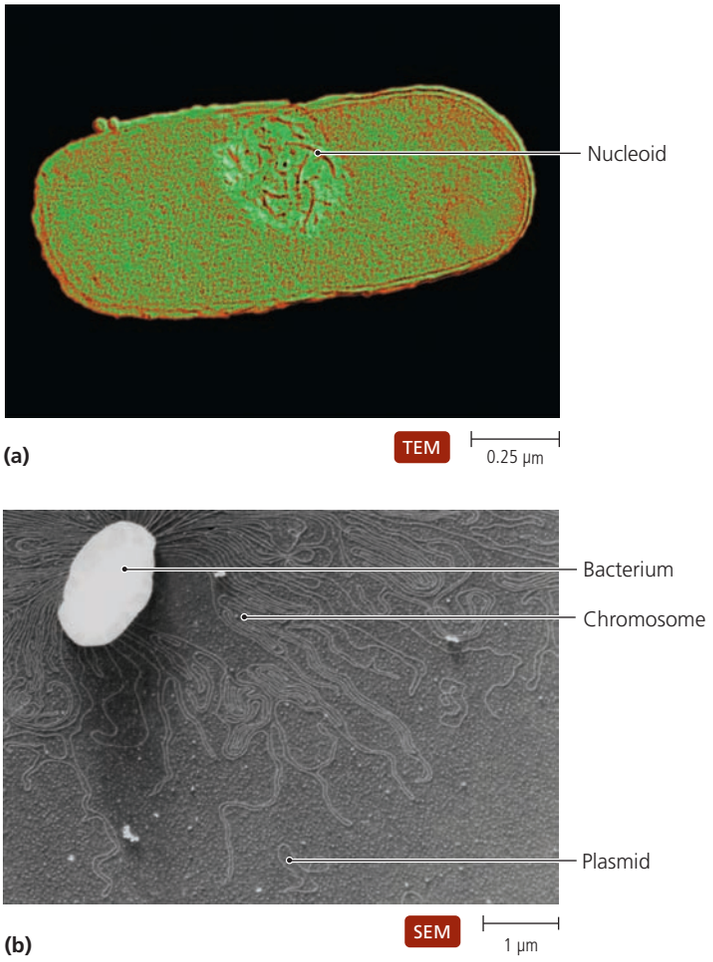
Researchers have identified many types of plasmids (sometimes called *factors*), including the following:

- *Fertility (F) plasmids* carry instructions for *conjugation,* a process by which some bacterial cells transfer DNA to other bacterial cells. We will consider conjugation in more detail near the end of this chapter.
- *Resistance (R) plasmids* carry genes for resistance to one or more antimicrobial drugs or heavy metals. By processes we will discuss shortly, certain cells can transfer resistance plasmids to other cells, which then acquire resistance to the same antimicrobial chemicals. One example of the effects of an R plasmid involves strains of *E. coli* that have acquired resistance to the antimicrobials ampicillin, tetracycline, and kanamycin from a strain of bacteria in the genus *Pseudomonas* (soo-dō-mō´nas).
- *Bacteriocin* (bak-tēr´ē-ō-sin) *plasmids* carry genes for proteinaceous toxins called *bacteriocins,* which kill bacterial cells of the same or similar species that lack the plasmid. In this way a bacterium containing this plasmid can kill its competitors.
- *Virulence plasmids* carry instructions for structures, enzymes, or toxins that enable a bacterium to become pathogenic. For example, *E. coli,* a normal resident of the human gastrointestinal tract, causes diarrhea only when it carries plasmids that code for certain toxins.

Now that we have examined the structure of prokaryotic genomes, we turn to the structure of eukaryotic genomes.

The Structure of Eukaryotic Genomes

Eukaryotic genomes consist of both nuclear and extranuclear DNA.



▲ **Figure 7.2 Bacterial genome. (a)** Bacterial chromosomes are packaged in a region of the cytosol called the nucleoid, which is not surrounded by a membrane. **(b)** The packing of a circular bacterial chromosome into loops, as seen after the cell was gently broken open to release the chromosome. Extrachromosomal DNA in the form of plasmids is also visible.

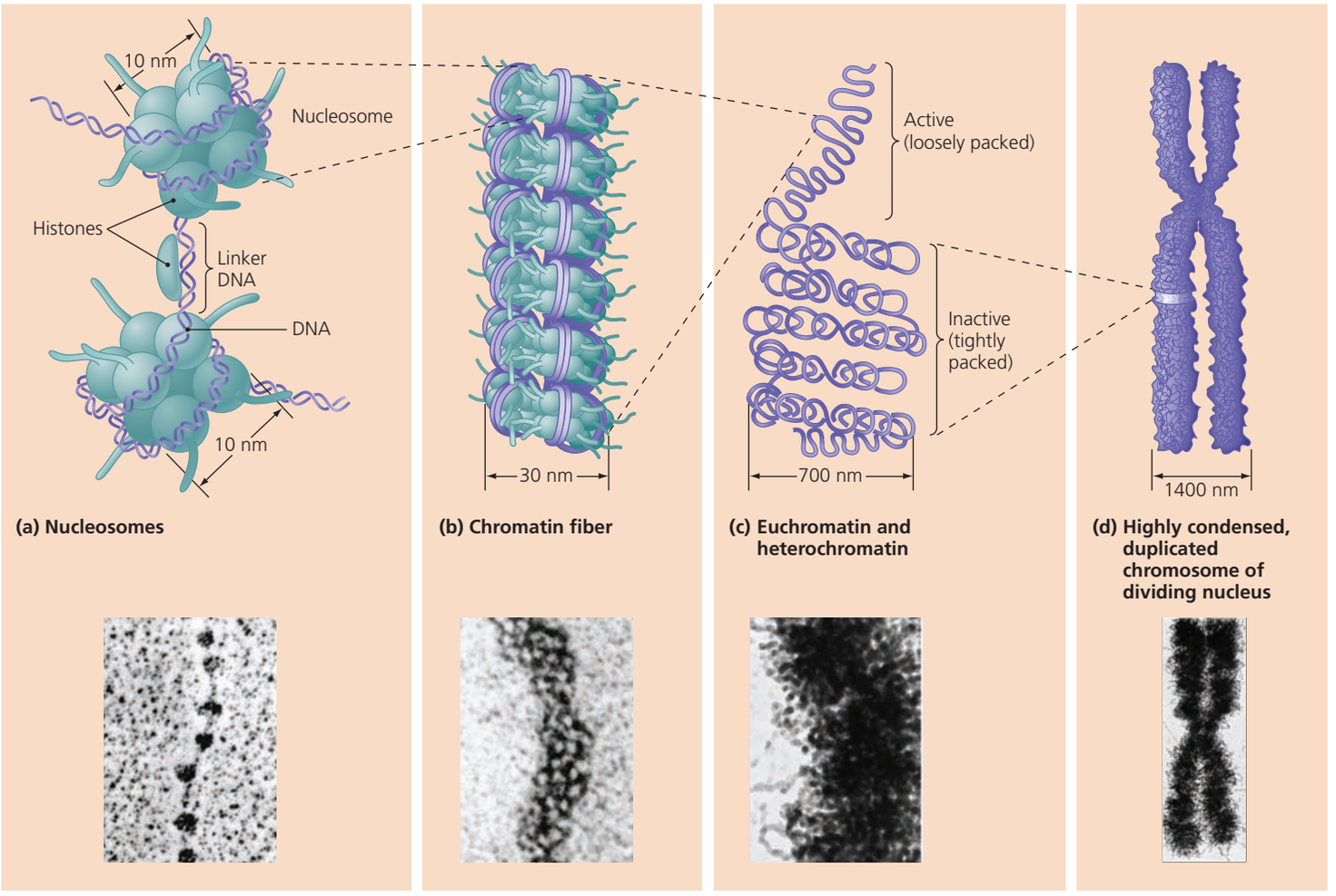
Nuclear Chromosomes

Learning Outcome

7.4 Compare and contrast prokaryotic and eukaryotic chromosomes.

Typically, eukaryotic cells have more than one nuclear chromosome in their genomes, though one species of Australian ant has a single chromosome per nucleus, and some eukaryotic cells, such as mammalian red blood cells, lose their chromosomes as they mature. Eukaryotic cells are often *diploid;* that is, they have two copies of each chromosome.

Eukaryotic chromosomes differ from their typical prokaryotic counterparts in that they are all linear (rather than circular) and are sequestered within a nucleus. A nucleus is an organelle surrounded by two membranes, which together are called the *nuclear envelope.* Given that a typical eukaryotic cell must package substantially more DNA than its prokaryotic counterpart, it



▲ Figure 7.3 Eukaryotic nuclear chromosomal packaging. **(a)** Histones stabilize and package DNA to form nucleosomes connected by linker DNA. **(b)** Nucleosomes clump to form chromatin fibers. **(c)** Chromatin fibers fold and are organized into active euchromatin and inactive heterochromatin. **(d)** During nuclear division (mitosis), duplicated chromatin fully condenses into a mitotic chromosome that is visible by light microscopy. If the nucleosomes were actually the size shown in the artist's illustration (a), the chromosome in (d) would be 20 m (about 65 feet) long.

is not surprising that nuclear chromosomes are more elaborate than those of prokaryotes.

Most eukaryotic chromosomes are composed of DNA and globular eukaryotic histones,[2] which are similar to archaeal histones. DNA, which has an overall negative electrical charge, wraps around the positively charged histones to form 10-nm-diameter beads called **nucleosomes** (Figure 7.3a). Nucleosomes clump with other proteins to form **chromatin fibers** that are about 30 nm in diameter (Figure 7.3b). Except during *mitosis* (nuclear division), chromatin fibers are dispersed throughout the nucleus and are too thin to be resolved without the extremely high magnification of electron microscopes. In regions of the chromosome where genes are active, the chromatin fibers are loosely packed to form *euchromatin* (yū-krō´mă-tin); inactive DNA is more tightly packed and is called *heterochromatin* (het´-er-ō-krō´mă-tin) (Figure 7.3c).

[2]Dinoflagellates, a group of single-celled aquatic microorganisms, are the only eukaryotes without histones.

Prior to mitosis, a cell replicates its chromosomes and then condenses them into pairs of chromosomes visible by light microscopy (Figure 7.3d). One molecule of each pair is destined for each daughter nucleus. (Chapter 12 discusses mitosis in more detail.) The net result is that each DNA molecule is packaged as a mitotic chromosome that is 50,000 times shorter than its extended length.

Extranuclear DNA of Eukaryotes

Not all of the DNA of a eukaryotic genome is contained in its nuclear chromosomes; most eukaryotic cells also have mitochondria, and plant, algal, and some protozoan cells have chloroplasts that also contain DNA. DNA molecules of mitochondria and chloroplasts are circular and resemble the circular chromosomes of prokaryotes. Genes located on these "prokaryotic" chromosomes code for about 5% of the RNA and polypeptides required for the organelle's replication and function; nuclear DNA codes for the remaining 95% of the organelle's RNA molecules and

TABLE 7.1 Characteristics of Microbial Genomes

	Bacteria	Archaea	Eukarya
Number of chromosomes	Single (haploid) copies of one or rarely two	One (haploid)	With one exception, two or more, typically diploid
Plasmids present?	In some cells; frequently more than one per cell	In some cells	In some fungi, algae, and protozoa
Type of nucleic acid	Circular or linear dsDNA	Circular dsDNA	Linear dsDNA in nucleus; circular dsDNA in mitochondria, chloroplasts, and plasmids
Location of DNA	In nucleoid of cytoplasm and in plasmids	In nucleoid of cytoplasm and in plasmids	In nucleus and in mitochondria, chloroplasts, and plasmids in cytosol
Histones present?	No, though chromosome is associated with a small amount of nonhistone protein	Yes	Yes

polypeptides. Some proteins have a quaternary structure formed from the association of individual polypeptides (see Figure 2.24). Interestingly, polypeptides coded by mitochondrial or chloroplast chromosomes do not alone constitute any functional proteins. Rather, they become functional only when associated with polypeptides coded by nuclear chromosomes.

In addition to the extranuclear DNA in their mitochondria, some fungi, algae, and protozoa carry plasmids. For instance, most strains of the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz se-ri-vis´ē-ī) contain about 70 copies of a plasmid known as a *2-μm circle*. Each 2-μm circle is about 6300 bp long and has four protein-encoding genes that are involved solely in replicating the plasmid and confer no other traits to the cell.

In summary, the haploid genome of a prokaryotic cell consists of both chromosomal DNA, which is usually in a single circular chromosome, and all extrachromosomal DNA in the form of plasmids that are present. In contrast, a eukaryotic genome consists of nuclear chromosomal DNA in one or more linear chromosomes, plus all the extranuclear DNA in mitochondria, chloroplasts, and any plasmids that are present. The genomes of prokaryotes and eukaryotes are compared and contrasted in Table 7.1.

CRITICAL THINKING

The endosymbiotic theory states that mitochondria and chloroplasts evolved from prokaryotes living within other prokaryotes (see p. 86). What aspects of the eukaryotic genome support this theory? What aspects do not support the theory?

DNA Replication

Learning Outcomes

7.5 Describe the replication of DNA as a semiconservative process.

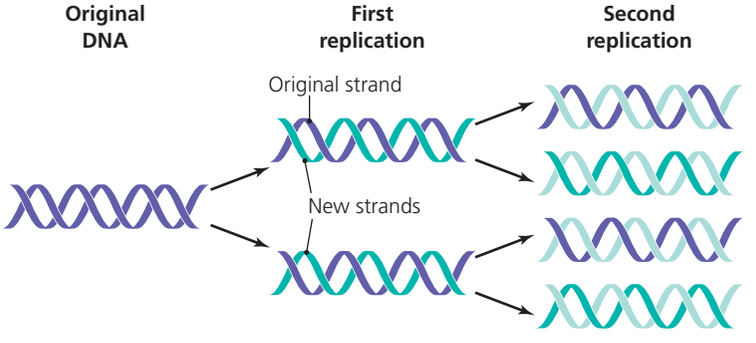
7.6 Compare and contrast the synthesis of leading and lagging strands in DNA replication.

DNA replication is an anabolic polymerization process that allows a cell to make copies of its genome. Though bacterial, archaeal, and eukaryotic cells package DNA differently, all three types employ similar mechanisms for DNA replication.

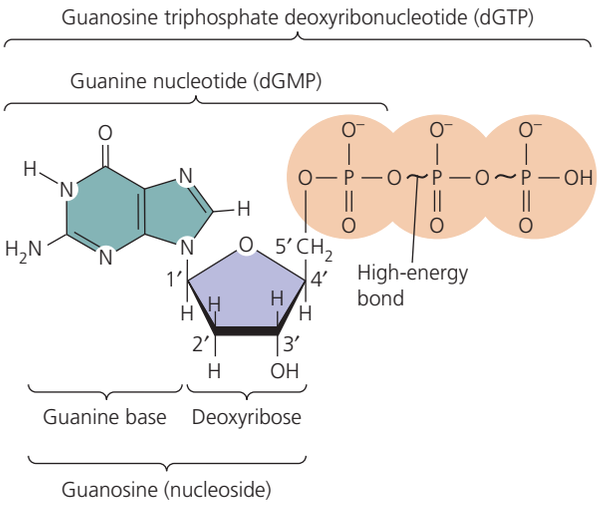
▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *DNA Replication: Overview*

The key to DNA replication is the complementary structure of the two strands: Adenine and guanine in one strand bond with thymine and cytosine, respectively, in the other. DNA replication is a simple concept—a cell separates the two original strands and uses each as a template for the synthesis of a new complementary strand. Biologists say that DNA replication is *semiconservative* because each daughter DNA molecule is composed of one original strand and one new strand **(Figure 7.4)**.

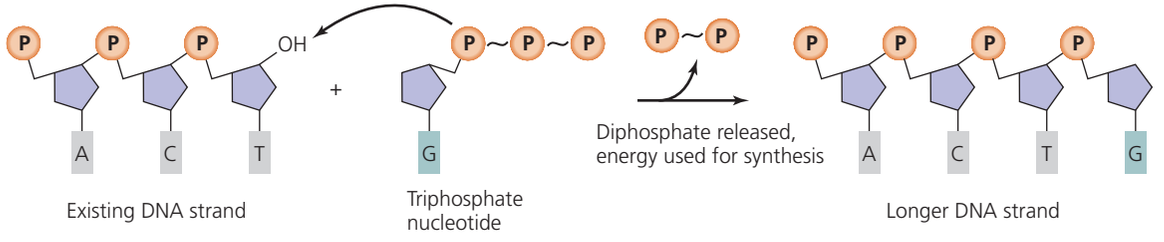
All polymerization processes require monomers (building blocks) and energy. *Triphosphate deoxyribonucleotides*—DNA nucleotides with three phosphate groups linked together by two high-energy bonds—serve both functions in DNA replication. In other words, the building blocks of DNA carry within themselves the energy required for DNA synthesis. The structure of guanosine triphosphate deoxyribonucleotide (dGTP) **(Figure 7.5)** differs from that of cytidine triphosphate (dCTP), thymidine triphosphate (dTTP), and adenosine triphosphate (dATP) only in the kind of base present. dATP has a structure similar to that of the energy storage molecule ATP, except that ATP is a ribonucleotide rather than a deoxyribonucleotide (see Figure 2.27). The following



▲ **Figure 7.4 Semiconservative model of DNA replication.** Each of the two strands of the original molecule serves as a template for the synthesis of a new, complementary strand.



(a)



(b)

◀ Figure 7.5 The dual role of triphosphate deoxyribonucleotides as building blocks and energy sources in DNA synthesis.
(a) Guanosine triphosphate deoxyribonucleotide (dGTP), like all the triphosphate monomers of DNA, is a nucleotide to which two additional phosphate groups are attached. **(b)** The energy required for DNA polymerization (the addition of nucleotide building blocks to a DNA strand) is carried by each triphosphate nucleotide in the high-energy bonds between phosphate groups. *What is the difference between dGTP and guanosine triphosphate ribonucleotide (rGTP)?*

Figure 7.5 *This molecule (dGTP) contains deoxyribose; rGTP contains ribose.*

sections focus on bacterial DNA replication and then consider small differences in the process in eukaryotes. Archaeal processes are not as well characterized and are not examined here.

Initial Processes in Bacterial DNA Replication

DNA replication begins at a specific sequence of nucleotides called an *origin*. An enzyme called DNA *helicase* locally "unzips" the DNA molecule by breaking the hydrogen bonds between complementary nucleotide bases, which exposes the bases in a *replication fork* (**Figure 7.6a**). Other protein molecules stabilize the separated single strands so that they do not rejoin while replication proceeds. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***DNA Replication: Forming the Replication Fork***

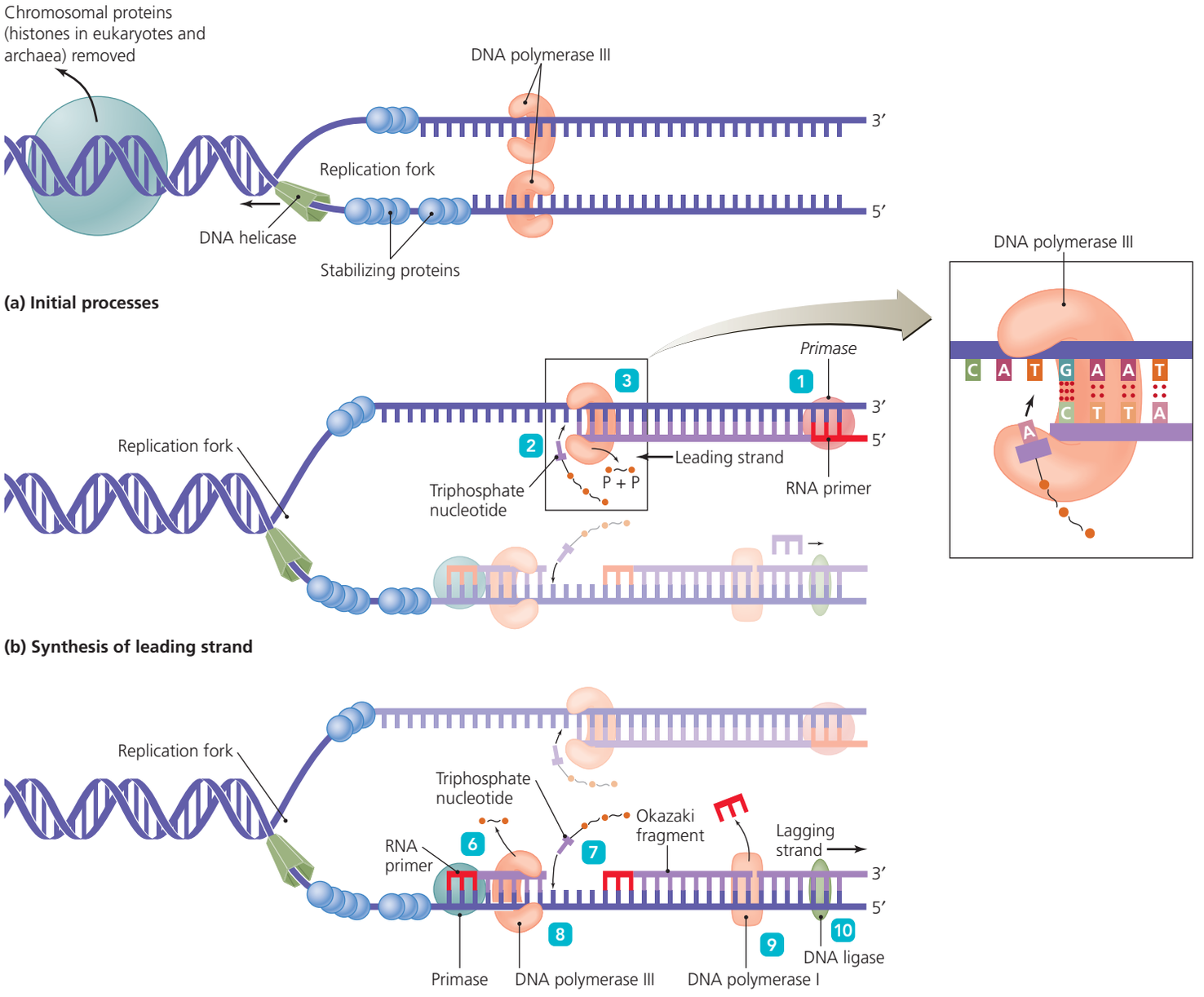
After helicase untwists and separates the strands, a molecule of an enzyme called *DNA polymerase* (po-lim´er-ās) binds to each strand. Scientists have identified five kinds of bacterial DNA polymerase. These five enzymes vary in their specific functions, but all of them share one important feature—they catalyze synthesis of DNA by the addition of new nucleotides only to a hydroxyl group at the 3′ end of a nucleic acid. **Beneficial Microbes: Life in a Hot Tub** on p. 201 describes a type of DNA polymerase that has become a mainstay of genomic investigations. All DNA polymerases replicate DNA by adding nucleotides in only one direction—5′ to 3′—like a jeweler stringing pearls to make a necklace, adding them one at a time, always moving from one end of the string to the other. DNA polymerase III is the usual enzyme of DNA replication in bacteria.

Because the two original (template) strands are antiparallel, cells synthesize new strands in two different ways. One new strand, called the **leading strand,** is synthesized continuously—5′ to 3′—as a single long chain of nucleotides. The other new strand, called the **lagging strand,** is also synthesizd 5′ to 3′ but in short segments that are later joined. We will consider synthesis of the leading strand before examining replication of the lagging strand even though the two processes occur simultaneously. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***DNA Replication: Replication Proteins***

Synthesis of the Leading Strand

A cell synthesizes a leading strand toward the replication fork in the following series of five steps, the first three of which are shown in **Figure 7.6b**:

1. An enzyme called *primase* synthesizes a short RNA molecule that is complementary to the template DNA strand. This *RNA primer* provides the 3′ hydroxyl group required by DNA polymerase III.
2. Triphosphate deoxyribonucleotides form hydrogen bonds with their complements in the parental strand. Adenine nucleotides bind to thymine nucleotides, and guanine nucleotides bind to cytosine nucleotides.
3. Using the energy in the high-energy bonds of the triphosphate deoxyribonucleotides, DNA polymerase III covalently joins them one at a time to the leading strand. DNA polymerase III can add about 500 to 1000 nucleotides per second to a new strand.



▲ Figure 7.6 DNA replication. (a) Initial processes. The cell removes proteins (called histones in eukaryotes and archaea) from the DNA molecule. Helicase unzips the double helix—breaking hydrogen bonds between complementary base pairs—to form a replication fork. **(b)** Continuous synthesis of the leading strand. DNA synthesis always moves in the 5′ to 3′ direction, so the leading strand is synthesized toward the replication fork. The numbers refer to the steps in the process, which are described in the text. (Steps 4 and 5, the proofreading function of DNA polymerase and the replacement of the RNA primer with DNA, are not shown.) **(c)** Discontinuous synthesis of the lagging strand, which proceeds moving away from the replication fork. Actual Okazaki fragments are about 1000 nucleotides long. *Why is DNA replication termed "semiconservative"?*

Figure 7.6 *"Semiconservative" refers to the fact that each of the daughter molecules retains one parental strand and has one new strand; in other words, each is half new and half old.*

To see a 3-D animation on DNA replication, go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area and watch the MicroFlix.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

LIFE IN A HOT TUB

Scientists replicate DNA of cells for a variety of tasks: studying gene action and regulation, elucidating relationships among various kinds of cells, detecting hereditary diseases, determining "genetic fingerprints" in such tasks as paternity tests, detecting pathogens, and diagnosing infectious diseases. All such studies use millions or billions of identical copies of DNA produced using a process called polymerase chain reaction (PCR). PCR enzymatically replicates DNA without using living cells.

The concept of PCR is relatively simple. As its inventor wrote in *Scientific American*, "Beginning with a single molecule of the genetic material DNA, the PCR can generate 100 billion similar molecules in an afternoon. The reaction is easy to execute. It requires no more than a test tube, a few simple reagents, and a source of heat." In the latter, however, lies a problem.

The temperature required to perform PCR is about 94°C. This temperature, which is almost that of boiling water, is the temperature required to break the hydrogen bonds of DNA and unzip the double helix, but this temperature also permanently denatures most DNA polymerase enzymes.

Enter *Thermus aquaticus*, a bacterium that thrives in hot springs such as those of Yellowstone National Park. Since this bacterium loves hot water, it is not surprising that its enzymes are heat stable, and its DNA polymerase—called Taq polymerase or Taq—was the first polymerase used for PCR replication of DNA. Though *Science* magazine declared Taq "Molecule of the Year" in 1989, scientists now have many other heat-stable polymerases from bacterial and archaeal hyperthermophiles available for PCR.

4 DNA polymerase III also performs a proofreading function (not shown). About one out of every 100,000 nucleotides is mismatched with its template; for instance, a guanine might become incorrectly paired with a thymine. DNA polymerase III recognizes most of these errors and removes the incorrect nucleotides before proceeding with synthesis. This role, known as the *proofreading exonuclease function*, acts like the backspace key on a keyboard, removing the most recent error. Because of this proofreading exonuclease function and other repair strategies beyond the scope of this discussion, only about one error remains for every 10 billion (10^{10}) bp replicated.

5 Another DNA polymerase—DNA polymerase I—replaces the RNA primer with DNA (not shown). Note that researchers named DNA polymerase enzymes in the order of their discovery, not the order of their actions.

Synthesis of the Lagging Strand

Because DNA polymerase III adds nucleotides only to the 3′ end of the new strand, the enzyme moves away from the replication fork as it synthesizes a lagging strand. As a result, the lagging strand is synthesized discontinuously and always lags behind the process occurring in the leading strand. The steps in the synthesis of a lagging strand are as follows **(Figure 7.6c)**:

6 Primase synthesizes RNA primers, but in contrast to its action on the leading strand, primase synthesizes multiple primers—one every 1000 to 2000 DNA bases of the template strand.

7 Nucleotides pair up with their complements in the template—adenine with thymine and cytosine with guanine.

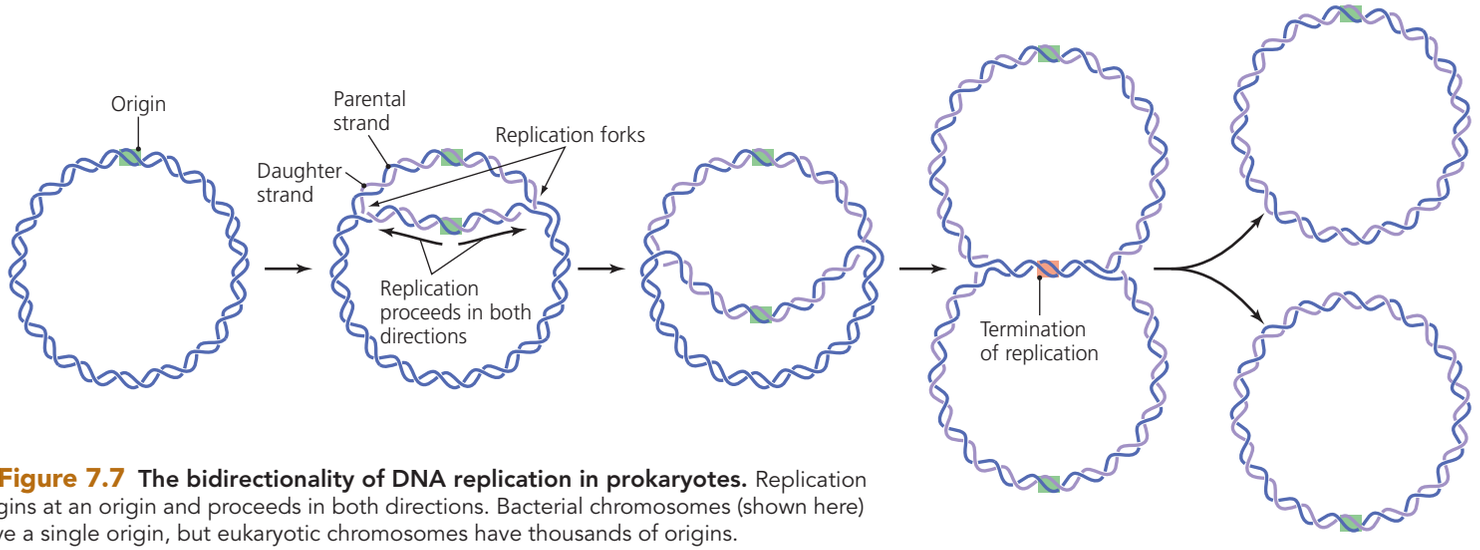
8 DNA polymerase III joins neighboring nucleotides and proofreads. In contrast to synthesis of the leading strand, however, the lagging strand is synthesized in discontinuous segments called *Okazaki fragments*, named for the Japanese scientist Reiji Okazaki (1930–1975), who first identified them. Each Okazaki fragment uses one of the new RNA primers, so each fragment consists of 1000 to 2000 nucleotides.

9 DNA polymerase I replaces the RNA primers of Okazaki fragments with DNA and proofreads the short DNA segment it has synthesized.

10 *DNA ligase* seals the gaps between adjacent Okazaki fragments to form a continuous DNA strand.

In summary, synthesis of the leading strand proceeds continuously toward the replication fork from a single RNA primer at the origin, following helicase and the replication fork down the DNA. The lagging strand is synthesized away from the replication fork discontinuously as a series of Okazaki fragments, each of which begins with its own RNA primer. All the primers are eventually replaced with DNA nucleotides, and ligase joins the Okazaki fragments.

As noted earlier, DNA replication is semiconservative; each daughter molecule is composed of one parental strand and one daughter strand. The replication process produces double-stranded daughter molecules with a nucleotide sequence



▲ **Figure 7.7 The bidirectionality of DNA replication in prokaryotes.** Replication begins at an origin and proceeds in both directions. Bacterial chromosomes (shown here) have a single origin, but eukaryotic chromosomes have thousands of origins.

identical to that in the original double helix, ensuring that the integrity of an organism's genome is maintained each time it is copied. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***DNA Replication: Synthesis***

Other Characteristics of Bacterial DNA Replication

DNA replication is *bidirectional;* that is, DNA synthesis proceeds in both directions from the origin. In bacteria, the process of replication proceeds from a single origin, so it involves two sets of enzymes, two replication forks, two leading strands, and two lagging strands **(Figure 7.7)**.

The unzipping and unwinding action of helicase introduces supercoils into the DNA molecule ahead of the replication forks. Excessive supercoiling creates tension on the DNA molecule—like your grandmother's overwound phone cord—and would stop DNA replication. The enzymes *gyrase* and *topoisomerase* remove such supercoils by cutting the DNA, rotating the cut ends in the direction opposite the supercoiling, and then rejoining the cut ends.

Bacterial DNA replication is further complicated by **methylation** of the daughter strands, in which a cell adds a methyl group (—CH_3) to one or two bases that are part of specific nucleotide sequences. Bacteria typically methylate adenine bases and only rarely a cytosine base.

Methylation plays a role in a variety of cellular processes, including the following:

- **Control of Genetic Expression.** In some cases, genes that are methylated are "turned off" and are not transcribed, whereas in other cases methylated genes are "turned on" and are transcribed.
- **Initiation of DNA Replication.** In many bacteria, methylated nucleotide sequences play a role in initiating DNA replication.
- **Protection Against Viral Infection.** Methylation at specific sites in a nucleotide sequence enables cells to distinguish their DNA from viral DNA, which lacks methylation. The cells can then selectively degrade viral DNA.
- **Repair of DNA.** The role of methylation in some DNA repair mechanisms is discussed later in the chapter (pp. 221–222).

Replication of Eukaryotic DNA

Eukaryotes replicate DNA in much the same way as do bacteria; helicases and topoisomerases unwind DNA, protein molecules stabilize single-stranded DNA, and molecules of DNA polymerase synthesize leading and lagging strands simultaneously. However, eukaryotic replication differs from prokaryotic replication in some significant ways:

- Eukaryotic cells use four different DNA polymerases to replicate DNA. DNA polymerase α initiates replication, including synthesis of a primer—the function performed by primase in bacteria. DNA polymerase δ elongates the leading strand, and DNA polymerase ε appears to be responsible for replicating the lagging strand. DNA polymerase γ replicates mitochondrial DNA.[3]
- The large size of eukaryotic chromosomes necessitates thousands of origins per molecule, each generating two replication forks; otherwise, the replication of eukaryotic genomes would take days instead of hours.
- Eukaryotic Okazaki fragments are shorter than those of bacteria—100 to 400 nucleotides long.
- Plant and animal cells methylate cytosine bases exclusively.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Hydrogen bonds between complementary nucleotides are crucial to the structure of dsDNA because they hold the two strands together. Why couldn't the two strands be effectively linked by covalent bonds?

We have examined the physical structure of cellular genes—the specific sequences of DNA nucleotides—and the way cells replicate their genes. Now we will consider how genes function and how cells control genetic expression.

[3]Greek letters α, δ, ε, and γ (alpha, delta, epsilon, and gamma) are equivalent to the numbers 1, 4, 5, and 3, corresponding to the order in which the polymerases were elucidated, not the order in which they act.

Gene Function

The first topic we must consider if we are to understand gene function is the relationship between an organism's genotype and its phenotype.

The Relationship Between Genotype and Phenotype

Learning Outcome

7.7 Explain how the genotype of an organism determines its phenotype.

The **genotype**[4] (jēn´ō-tīp) of an organism is the actual set of genes in its genome. A genotype differs from a genome in that a genome also includes nucleotides that are not part of genes, such as the nucleotide sequences that link genes together. At the molecular level, the genotype consists of all the series of DNA nucleotides that carry instructions for an organism's life. **Phenotype**[5] (fē´nō-tīp) refers to the physical features and functional traits of an organism, including characteristics such as structures, morphology, and metabolism. For example, the shape of a cell, the presence and location of flagella, the enzymes and cytochromes of electron transport chains, and membrane receptors that trigger chemotaxis are all phenotypic traits.

Genotype determines phenotype by specifying what kinds of RNA and which structural, enzymatic, and regulatory protein molecules are produced. Though genes do not code *directly* for such molecules as phospholipids or for behaviors such as chemotaxis, ultimately phenotypic traits result from the actions of RNA and protein molecules that are themselves coded by DNA.

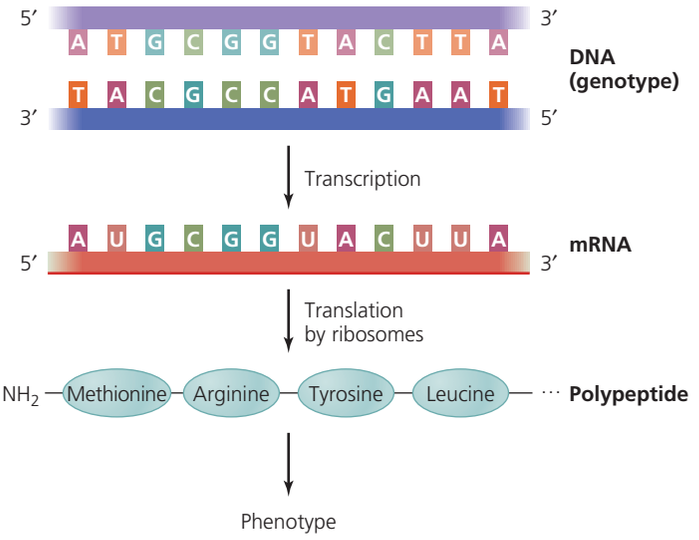
Not all genes are active at all times; that is, the information of a genotype is not always expressed as a phenotype. For example, *E. coli* activates genes for lactose catabolism only when it detects lactose in its environment.

The Transfer of Genetic Information

Learning Outcome

7.8 State the central dogma of genetics and explain the roles of DNA and RNA in polypeptide synthesis.

Cells must continually synthesize proteins required for growth, reproduction, metabolism, and regulation. This synthesis requires that they accurately transfer the genetic information contained in DNA nucleotide sequences to the amino acid sequences of polypeptides. However, cells do not transfer the information coded in DNA directly but first make an RNA copy of the gene. In this copying process, called **transcription,**[6] the information in DNA is copied as RNA nucleotide sequences; RNA molecules in ribosomes then synthesize polypeptides in a process called **translation.**[7] These processes make up the **central dogma** of genetics: DNA is transcribed to RNA, which is translated to form polypeptides **(Figure 7.8)**.



▲ **Figure 7.8 The central dogma of genetics.** A cell transcribes RNA from a DNA gene and then translates polypeptides using the code carried by the RNA molecules. Polypeptides determine phenotype by acting as structural, enzymatic, and regulatory proteins.

An analogy serves to illustrate the central dogma. Suppose you were trying to understand the following message (which is a portion of the oath of Hippocrates, written in the Greek alphabet):

ΔΙΑΙΤΗΜΑΣΙΤΕΧΡΗΣΟΜΑΙΕΠΩΦΕΛΕΙΝ
ΚΑΜΝΟΝΤΩΝΚΑΤΑΔΥΝΑΜΙΝΚΑΙΚΡΙΣΙΝΕΜΗΝ
ΕΠΙΔΗΛΗΣΕΙΔΕΚΑΙΑΔΙΚΙΗ

If the Greek alphabet is foreign to you, you might have the Greek characters *transcribed* into the familiar English alphabet as a first step in understanding the message:

Diaiteimasi te chreisomai ep ophelein kamnonton kata dunamin kai krisin emein epi deileisei de kai adikiei eirzein

Then you could begin the process of having the Greek words, now expressed in English letters, *translated* into English words:

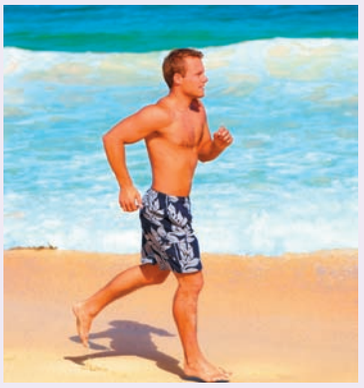
I will prescribe treatment to the best of my ability and judgment to help the sick and never for a harmful or illicit purpose

To a ribosome, DNA is like a foreign language written in a foreign alphabet. Thus, a cell must use processes analogous to those just described: It must first *transcribe* the "foreign alphabet" of DNA nucleotides (genes) into the more "familiar alphabet" of RNA nucleotides; then it must *translate* the message formed by these "letters" into the "words" (amino acids) that make up the "message" (a polypeptide). In this way a genotype can be expressed as a phenotype. There are a few exceptions to the central dogma. For example, some RNA viruses transcribe DNA from an RNA template—a process that is the reverse of cellular transcription.

[4]From Greek *genos*, meaning "race," and *typos*, meaning "type."
[5]From Greek *phainein*, meaning "to show."
[6]From Latin *trans*, meaning "across," and *scribere*, meaning "to write"—that is, to transfer in writing.
[7]From Latin *translatus*, meaning "transferred."

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

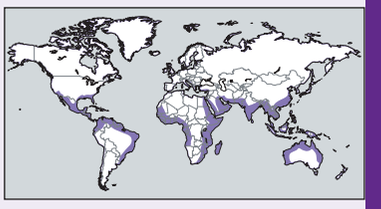
VIBRIO VULNIFICUS INFECTION



Greg enjoyed Florida's beaches; swimming in the warm water was his favorite pastime. Of course, the salt water did sting his leg where he had cut himself on some coral, but it didn't sting enough to stop Greg from enjoying the beach. He spent the afternoon jogging in the pure sand, throwing a disc, watching the people, drinking a few beers, and of course spending more time in the water.

That evening he felt chilled, a condition he associated with too much sun during the day, but by midnight he thought he must have caught a rare summertime flu. He was definitely feverish, extremely weak, and tired. His leg felt strangely tight, as though the underlying muscles were trying to burst though his skin.

The next morning he felt better, except for his leg. It was swollen, dark red, tremendously painful, and covered with fluid-filled blisters. The ugly sight motivated him to head straight for the hospital, a decision that likely saved his life.



Greg was the victim of an emerging pathogen, *Vibrio vulnificus*—a slightly curved, Gram-negative bacterium with DNA similar to that of *V. cholerae* (cholera bacterium). *V. vulnificus* lives in salty, warm water around the globe. Unlike the cholera bacterium, *V. vulnificus* is able to infect a person by penetrating directly into a deep wound, a cut, or even a tiny scratch. In a person, the multiplying bacterium secretes quorum-sensing molecules. When the cells sense that there is a certain population size (a quorum), they turn on some of their genes, allowing them to thrive in the body and cause disease.

Greg's doctor cut away the dead tissue and prescribed doxycycline and cephalosporin for two weeks. Greg survived and kept his leg. Half of the victims of *V. vulnificus* are not so lucky; they lose a limb or die. Who knew that a beach could be so dangerous? (For more about *Vibrio*, see pp. 622–625.)

In the following sections, we will examine the processes of transcription and translation. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Transcription Overview; Translation: Overview***

The Events in Transcription

Learning Outcome

7.9 Describe three steps in RNA transcription, mentioning the following: DNA, RNA polymerase, promoter, 5′ to 3′ direction, terminator, and Rho.

Cells transcribe five main types of RNA from DNA:

- **RNA primer** molecules for DNA polymerase to use during DNA replication
- **messenger RNA (mRNA)** molecules, which carry genetic information from chromosomes to ribosomes
- **ribosomal RNA (rRNA)** molecules, which combine with ribosomal polypeptides to form ribosomes—the organelles that synthesize polypeptides
- **transfer RNA (tRNA)** molecules, which deliver the correct amino acids to ribosomes based on the sequence of nucleotides in mRNA
- **regulatory RNA** molecules, which interact with DNA to control gene expression

We have already considered the role of RNA primer in DNA replication and will more closely examine the functions of the other types of RNA shortly. Next we examine transcription in bacteria and contrast it with eukaryotic transcription; archaeal processes are not as well known.

Transcription occurs in the nucleoid region of the cytoplasm in bacteria. The three steps of RNA transcription are (1) *initiation of transcription,* (2) *elongation of the RNA transcript,* and (3) *termination of transcription*. **Figure 7.9** depicts the events in transcription. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Transcription: The Process***

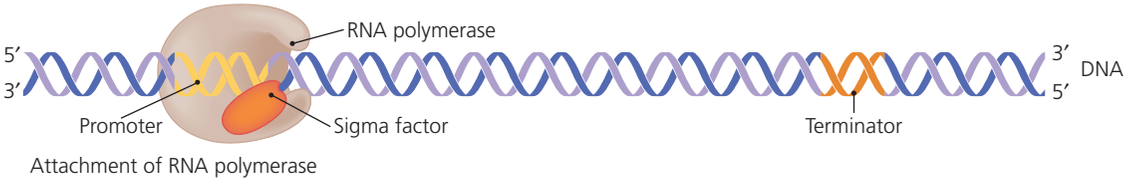
Initiation of Transcription

RNA polymerases—the enzymes that synthesize RNA—bind to specific DNA nucleotide sequences called **promoters,** each of which is located near the beginning of a gene and serves to initiate transcription (1a in Figure 7.9a). In bacteria, a polypeptide subunit of RNA polymerase called the *sigma factor* is necessary for recognition of a promoter. Once it adheres to a promoter sequence, an RNA polymerase unzips and unwinds the DNA molecule in the promoter region and then travels

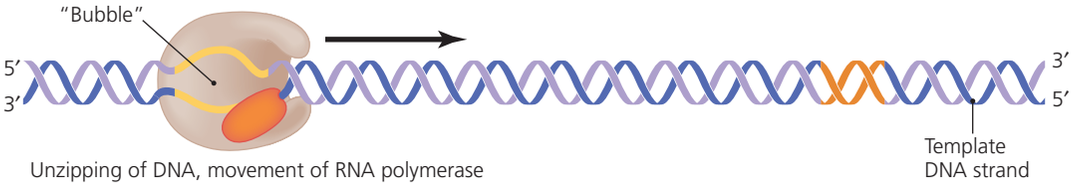
▶ **Figure 7.9** **The events in the transcription of RNA in prokaryotes.** **(a)** Initiation of transcription. **(b)** Elongation of the RNA transcript. **(c)** Termination of transcription: release of RNA polymerase by one of two methods. *What is the difference between a promoter sequence and an origin?*

Figure 7.9 *A promoter is a DNA sequence that initiates transcription; an origin is a point where DNA replication begins.*

1a RNA polymerase attaches nonspecifically to DNA and travels down its length until it recognizes a promoter sequence. Sigma factor enhances promoter recognition in bacteria.



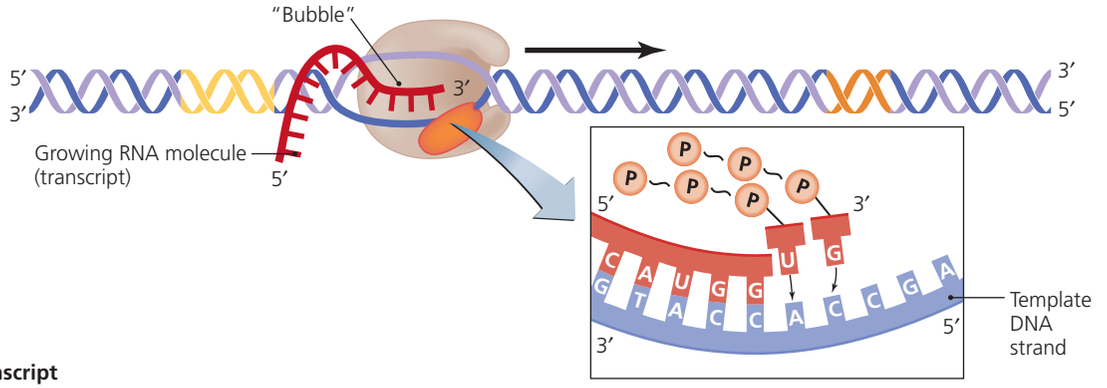
1b Upon recognition of the promoter, RNA polymerase unzips the DNA molecule beginning at the promoter.



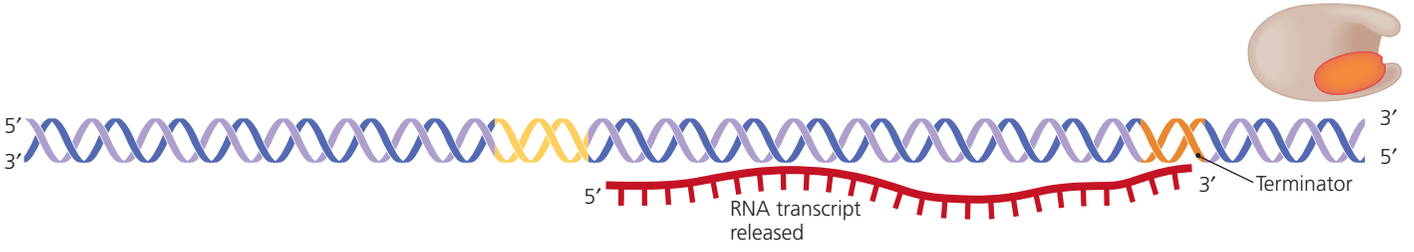
(a) Initiation of transcription

---

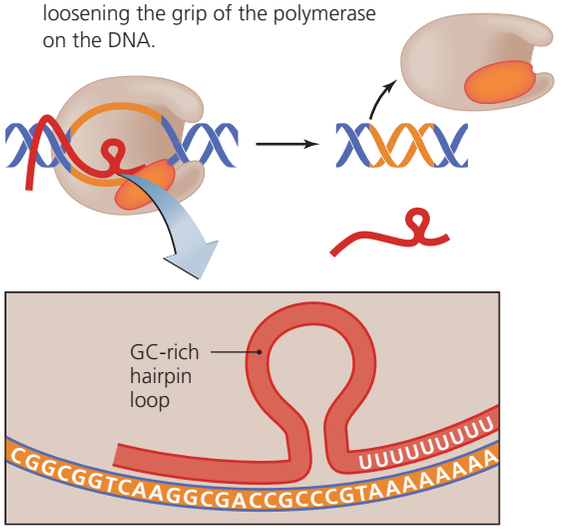
2 Triphosphate ribonucleotides align with their DNA complements and RNA polymerase links them together, synthesizing RNA. No primer is needed. The triphosphate ribonucleotides also provide the energy required for RNA synthesis.



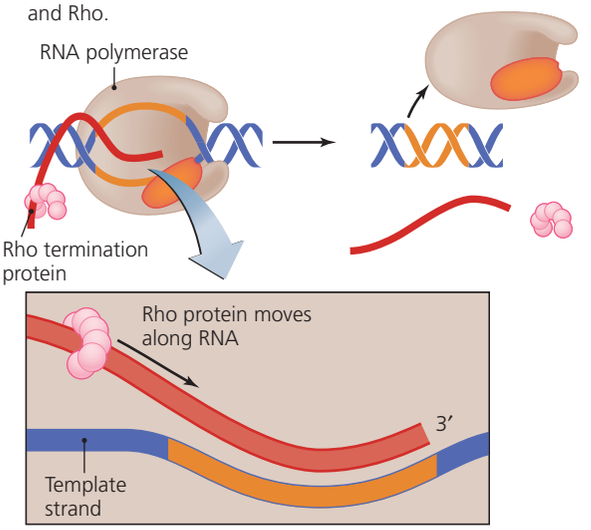
(b) Elongation of the RNA transcript



3a Self-termination: transcription of GC-rich terminator region produces a hairpin loop, which creates tension, loosening the grip of the polymerase on the DNA.



3b Rho-dependant termination: Rho pushes between polymerase and DNA. This causes release of polymerase, RNA transcript, and Rho.



(c) Termination of transcription: release of RNA polymerase

along the DNA, unzipping the double helix to form a "bubble" as it moves 1b.

A cell uses different sigma factors and different promoter sequences to provide some control over transcription. RNA polymerases using different sigma factors do not adhere equally strongly to all promoters; there is about a millionfold difference between the strongest attraction and the weakest one. The greater the attraction between a particular sigma factor and a promoter, the more likely that a particular gene will be transcribed; thus, variations in sigma factors and promoters affect the amounts and kinds of polypeptides produced.

Elongation of the RNA Transcript

RNA transcription does not actually begin in the promoter region but, rather, at a spot 10 nucleotides away. There, triphosphate ribonucleotides (rATP, rUTP, rGTP, and rCTP) align opposite their complements in the open DNA "bubble." RNA polymerase links together two adjacent ribonucleotide molecules using energy from the phosphate bonds of the first ribonucleotide (2 in Figure 7.9b). The enzyme then moves down the DNA strand, elongating RNA by repeating the process. Only one of the separated DNA strands is transcribed.

Many molecules of RNA polymerase may concurrently transcribe the same gene **(Figure 7.10)**. In this way, a prokaryotic cell simultaneously produces numerous identical copies of RNA from a single gene—much as many identical prints can be made from a single photographic negative.

Like DNA polymerase, RNA polymerase links nucleotides only to the 3′ end of the growing molecule; however, RNA polymerase differs from DNA polymerase in the following ways:

- RNA polymerase unwinds and opens DNA by itself; helicase is not required.
- RNA polymerase does not need a primer.
- RNA polymerase transcribes only one of the DNA strands.
- RNA polymerase is slower than DNA polymerase III, proceeding at a rate of about 50 nucleotides per second.
- RNA polymerase incorporates ribonucleotides instead of deoxyribonucleotides.
- Uracil nucleotides are incorporated instead of thymine nucleotides.
- The proofreading function of RNA polymerase is less efficient, leaving a base-pair error about every 10,000 nucleotides.

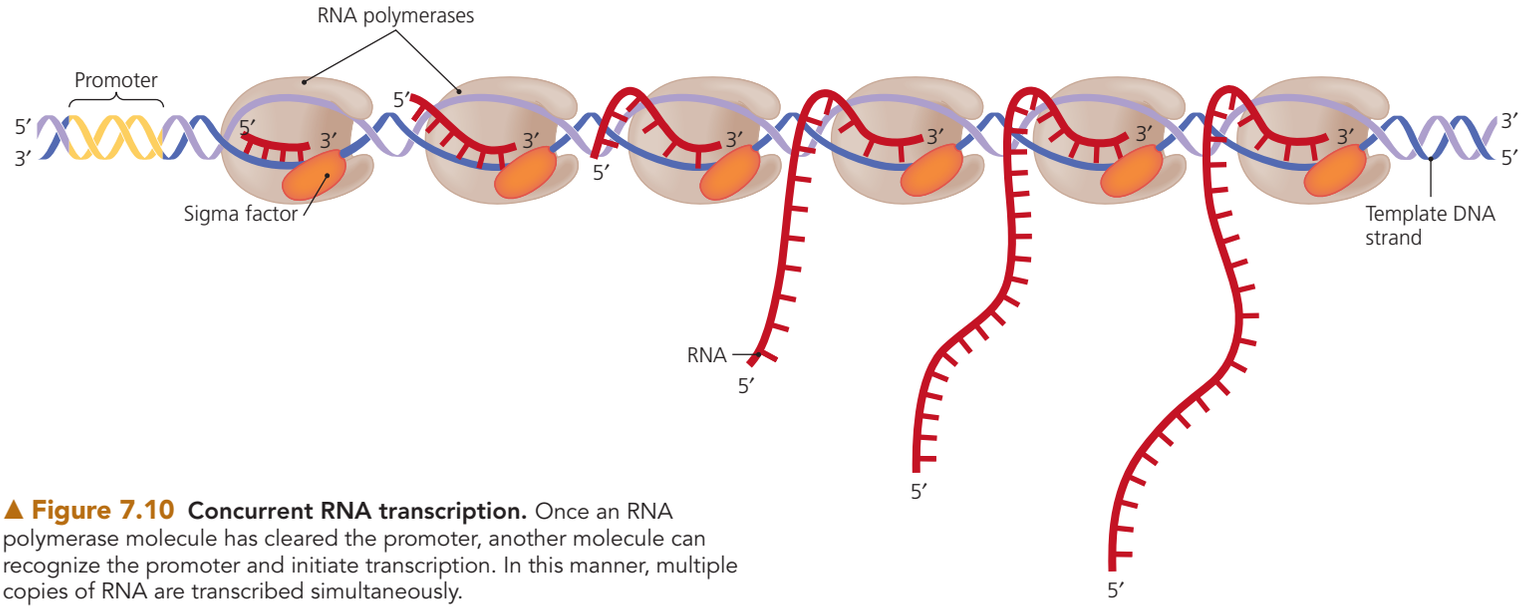
CRITICAL THINKING

On average, RNA polymerase makes one error for every 10,000 nucleotides it incorporates in RNA. By contrast, only one base-pair error remains for every 10 billion bp during DNA replication. Explain why the accuracy of RNA transcription is not as critical as the accuracy of DNA replication.

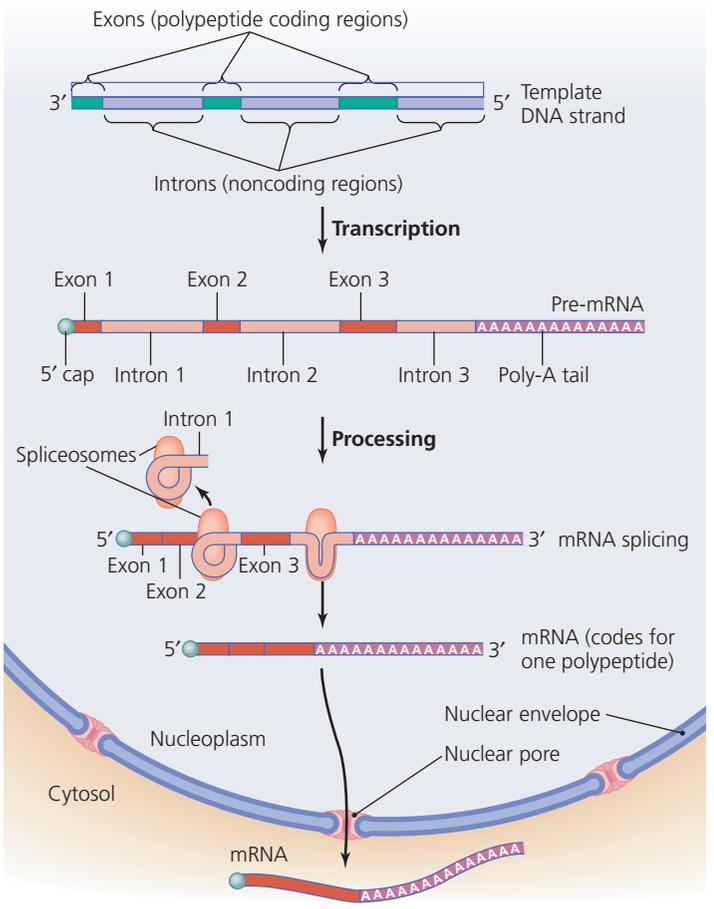
Termination of Transcription

Transcription terminates when RNA polymerase and the transcribed RNA are released from DNA (see Figure 7.9c). RNA polymerase is tightly associated with the DNA molecule and cannot be removed easily; therefore, the termination of transcription is complicated. Scientists have elucidated two types of termination processes in bacteria—those that are self-terminating and those that depend on the action of an additional protein called *Rho*. These processes of transcription termination should not be confused with termination of translation examined in a later section.

Self-Termination Self-termination occurs when RNA polymerase transcribes a **terminator** sequence of DNA composed of two symmetrical series: one that is very rich in guanine and cytosine bases, followed by a region rich in adenine bases (see 3a in Figure 7.9c). RNA polymerase slows down during transcription of the GC-rich portion of the terminator because the three



▲ **Figure 7.10 Concurrent RNA transcription.** Once an RNA polymerase molecule has cleared the promoter, another molecule can recognize the promoter and initiate transcription. In this manner, multiple copies of RNA are transcribed simultaneously.



▲ **Figure 7.11 Processing eukaryotic mRNA.** Within the nucleus, transcription produces pre-mRNA, which contains coding exons and noncoding introns. Enzymes cap the 5′ end with a modified guanine nucleotide and add hundreds of adenine nucleotides to the 3′ end, a process known as polyadenylation. Ribozymes further process pre-mRNA by removing introns and splicing together exons to form a molecule that codes for a single polypeptide. Eukaryotic mRNA then moves from the nucleus to the cytoplasm.

hydrogen bonds between each guanine and cytosine base pair make unwinding the DNA helix more difficult. This pause in transcription, which lasts about 60 seconds, provides enough time for the RNA molecule to form hydrogen bonds between its own symmetrical sequences, forming a hairpin loop structure that puts tension on the union of RNA polymerase and the DNA. When RNA polymerase transcribes the adenine-rich portion of the terminator, the relatively few hydrogen bonds between the adenine bases of DNA and the uracil bases of RNA cannot withstand the tension, and the RNA transcript breaks away from the DNA, releasing RNA polymerase.

Rho-Dependent Termination The second type of termination depends on the termination protein called Rho. Rho binds to a specific RNA sequence near the end of an RNA transcript. Rho moves toward RNA polymerase at the 3′ end of the growing RNA molecule, pushing between RNA polymerase and the DNA strand and forcing them apart; this releases RNA polymerase, the RNA transcript, and Rho (see 3b in Figure 7.9c).

Transcriptional Differences in Eukaryotes

Eukaryotic transcription differs from bacterial transcription in several ways. First, a eukaryotic cell transcribes RNA inside its nucleus, primarily in the region of the nucleus called the nucleolus, as well as inside any mitochondria and chloroplasts that are present. In contrast, transcription in prokaryotes occurs in the cytosol.

Another difference between eukaryotes and bacteria is that eukaryotes have three types of nuclear RNA polymerase—one for transcribing mRNA, one for transcribing the major rRNA gene, and one for transcribing tRNA and smaller rRNA molecules. Mitochondria use a fourth type of RNA polymerase. Further, several separate protein *transcription factors* at a time assist in binding eukaryotic RNA polymerase to promoter sequences, in contrast to a single sigma factor in bacteria. After initiating transcription, eukaryotic RNA polymerases shed most of the transcription factors and recruit another set of polypeptides called *elongation factors.*

Finally, eukaryotic cells must process mRNA before beginning polypeptide translation **(Figure 7.11)**. In general, the function of RNA processing is to aid in export from the nucleus, to stabilize mRNA in the cytoplasm, and to aid in translation. RNA processing involves three events:

1. **Capping.** The cell adds a modified guanine nucleotide to the 5′ end of the mRNA when the RNA molecule is about 30 nucleotides long.
2. **Polyadenylation.** When RNA polymerase reaches the end of a gene, termination proteins cleave the RNA molecule and add 100 to 250 adenine nucleotides, depending on the organism, to the 3′ end. Polyadenylation occurs without a DNA template.
3. **Splicing.** Newly capped and polyadenylated mRNA molecules are called *pre-messenger RNA* because they contain **introns,** which are noncoding sequences that may be thousands of nucleotides long. (Few prokaryotic mRNA molecules contain introns.) A cell removes introns to make functional mRNA containing only coding regions called **exons,** each of which is about 150 nucleotides long. The "in" in *intron* refers to *intervening* sequences (i.e., they lie between coding regions), whereas the "ex" in *exon* refers to the fact that these regions are *expressed*. Five small RNA molecules associate with about 300 polypeptides to form a *spliceosome* that acts as a ribozyme (ribosomal enzyme) to splice pre-mRNA into mRNA—it removes introns and splices the exons to produce a functional mRNA molecule that exits the nucleus.

Now that we have discussed how cells use DNA as the genetic material, maintain the integrity of their genomes through semiconservative replication, and transcribe RNA from DNA genes, we turn to the process of translation and the role of each type of RNA.

Translation

Learning Outcomes

7.10 Describe the genetic code in general and identify the relationship between codons and amino acids.

7.11 Describe the synthesis of polypeptides, identifying the roles of three types of RNA.

First nucleotide base (5′ position)	Second nucleotide base: U	Second nucleotide base: C	Second nucleotide base: A	Second nucleotide base: G	Third nucleotide base (3′ position)
U	UUU, UUC: Phenylalanine (Phe) UUA, UUG: Leucine (Leu)	UCU, UCC, UCA, UCG: Serine (Ser)	UAU, UAC: Tyrosine (Tyr) UAA: STOP UAG: STOP*	UGU, UGC: Cysteine (Cys) UGA: STOP & Selenocysteine (SeCys) UGG: Tryptophan (Trp)	U, C, A, G
C	CUU, CUC, CUA, CUG: Leucine (Leu)	CCU, CCC, CCA, CCG: Proline (Pro)	CAU, CAC: Histidine (His) CAA, CAG: Glutamine (Gln)	CGU, CGC, CGA, CGG: Arginine (Arg)	U, C, A, G
A	AUU, AUC, AUA: Isoleucine (Ile) AUG: START & Methionine (Met)	ACU, ACC, ACA, ACG: Threonine (Thr)	AAU, AAC: Asparagine (Asn) AAA, AAG: Lysine (Lys)	AGU, AGC: Serine (Ser) AGA, AGG: Arginine (Arg)	U, C, A, G
G	GUU, GUC, GUA, GUG: Valine (Val)	GCU, GCC, GCA, GCG: Alanine (Ala)	GAU, GAC: Aspartic acid (Asp) GAA, GAG: Glutamic acid (Glu)	GGU, GGC, GGA, GGG: Glycine (Gly)	U, C, A, G

*Also codes for a 22nd amino acid, pyrrolysine, in some prokaryotes.

▲ **Figure 7.12 The genetic code.** The table shows the set of mRNA codons and the amino acids for which they code. AUG not only is the start codon but also specifies methionine (Met) in eukaryotes and *N*-formylmethionine (fMet) in prokaryotes, mitochondria, and chloroplasts. Two codons (UAA and UAG) are stop codons that do not typically specify amino acids. UGA functions as a stop codon and also specifies selenocysteine.

Translation is the process whereby ribosomes use the genetic information of nucleotide sequences to synthesize polypeptides composed of specific amino acid sequences. Some proteins are simple polypeptides, whereas other proteins are composed of several polypeptides bound together in a quaternary structure (see Chapter 2).

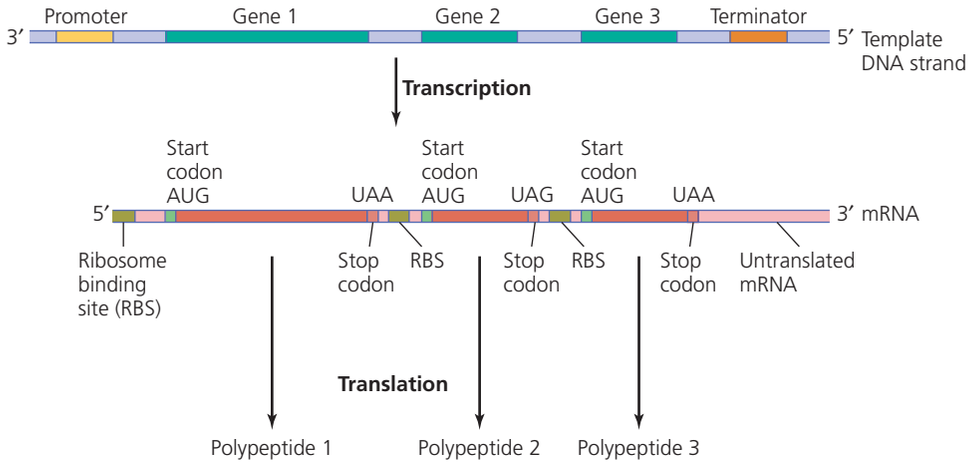
Ribosomes can be thought of as "polypeptide factories," so consider the following analogy between translation and a hypothetical automobile factory. Trucks deliver auto parts to the factory at the correct times and in the correct order to manufacture one of a large variety of automobile models, depending on instructions from corporate headquarters delivered by special courier. Similarly, molecules of tRNA (the trucks) deliver preformed amino acids (the parts) to a ribosome (the factory), which can manufacture an infinite variety of polypeptides (the car models) by assembling amino acids in the correct order according to the instructions from DNA (corporate headquarters) delivered via mRNA (the special courier).

How do ribosomes interpret the nucleotide sequence of mRNA to determine the correct order in which to assemble amino acids? To answer this question, we will consider the genetic code, examine in more detail the RNA molecules that participate in translation, and describe the specific steps of translation.

The Genetic Code

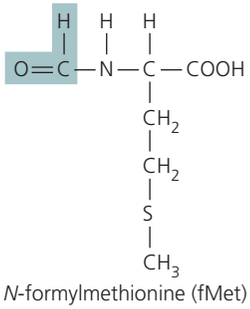
When geneticists in the early 20th century began to consider that DNA might be the genetic molecule, they were confronted with a problem: How can four kinds of DNA nucleotide bases—adenine, thymine, guanine, and cytosine (abbreviated A, T, G, and C)—specify the 21 different amino acids commonly found in proteins? If each nucleotide coded for a single amino acid, only four amino acids could be specified. Even if pairs of nucleotides served as the code—for instance, if AA, AT, and TA each specified a different amino acid—only 16 amino acids (i.e., 4^2) could be accommodated. Eventually scientists showed that genes are composed of sequences of three nucleotides that specify amino acids. For example, the DNA nucleotide sequence AAA specifies the amino acid phenylalanine, and GTA codes for histidine. There are 64 possible arrangements of the four nucleotides in triplets (4^3)—more than enough to specify 21 amino acids.

These examples are DNA triplets, but ribosomes do not directly access genetic information on a DNA molecule. Instead, molecules of mRNA carry the code to the ribosomes; therefore, scientists define the genetic code **(Figure 7.12)** as triplets of mRNA nucleotides called **codons** (kō´donz), which code for specific amino acids. UUU is a codon for phenylalanine, and CAU is a codon for histidine.



◀ Figure 7.13 A single prokaryotic mRNA can code for several polypeptides. Prokaryotes typically code for several related polypeptides via a single mRNA molecule. The mRNA molecule shown here has transcripts of three genes encoding three polypeptides. The transcript of each gene begins with a start codon and ends with a stop codon.

In most cases, 61 codons specify amino acids, and three codons—UAA, UAG, and UGA—instruct ribosomes to stop translating; however, under some conditions, UGA codes for a 21st amino acid, selenocysteine. Codon AUG also has a dual function, acting both as a start signal and as the codon for the amino acid methionine. In bacteria, mitochondria, and chloroplasts, AUG as a start codon codes for *N*-formylmethionine (fMet), a modified amino acid:


N-formylmethionine (fMet)

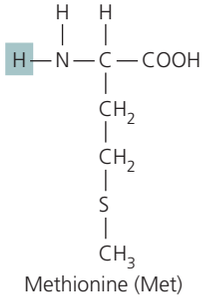

Methionine (Met)

TABLE 7.2 Some Exceptions to the Genetic Code

Codon	Usual Use	Alternative Use
AUA	Codes for isoleucine	Codes for methionine in mitochondria
UAG	STOP	Codes for glutamine in some protozoa and algae and for pyrrolysine, a 22nd amino acid found in some prokaryotes
CGG	Codes for arginine	Codes for tryptophan in plant mitochondria
UGA	STOP, selenocysteine	Codes for tryptophan in mitochondria and mycoplasmas (type of bacteria)

As you examine the genetic code, notice that it is redundant; that is, more than one codon is associated with every amino acid except methionine and tryptophan. With most redundant codons, the first two nucleotides determine the amino acid, and the third nucleotide is inconsequential. For example, the codons GUU, GUC, GUA, and GUG all specify the amino acid valine.

Interestingly, the genetic code is nearly universal; that is, with few exceptions, ribosomes in archaeal, bacterial, plant, fungal, protozoan, and animal cells use the same genetic code. Some exceptions are listed in Table 7.2. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Translation: Genetic Code***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A scientist isolates a molecule of mRNA with the following base sequence: CAUGUACGACAUAUGCAUA. What is the sequence of amino acids in the polypeptide synthesized by a bacterial ribosome from this message? What would be different if the message were translated in a mitochondrion instead?

Participants in Translation

As we have discussed, transcription produces messenger RNA, transfer RNA, and ribosomal RNA—each of which is involved in translation. We now discuss each kind of RNA in turn.

Messenger RNA Messenger RNA molecules carry genetic information from chromosomes to ribosomes as triplet sequences of RNA nucleotides (codons) that encode the order of amino acid sequences in a polypeptide. In prokaryotes a basic mRNA molecule contains sequences of nucleotides that are recognized by ribosomes: an AUG start codon, sequential codons for other amino acids in the polypeptide, and at least one of the three stop codons. A single molecule of prokaryotic mRNA often contains start codons and instructions for more than one polypeptide arranged in series (Figure 7.13). Because both transcription and the subsequent events of translation occur in the cytosol of prokaryotes, prokaryotic ribosomes can begin translation before transcription is finished.

Eukaryotic mRNA differs from prokaryotic mRNA in several ways:

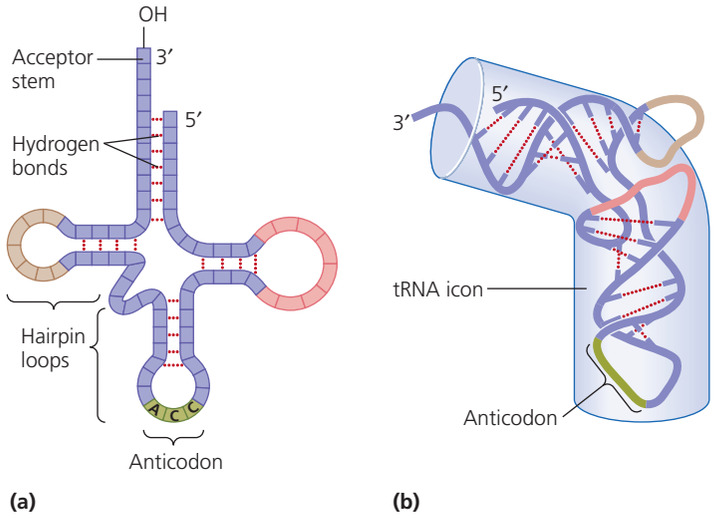
- As we have seen, eukaryotic cells extensively process pre-mRNA to make mRNA (see Figure 7.11).
- A molecule of eukaryotic mRNA contains instructions for only one polypeptide.
- Eukaryotic mRNA is not translated until it is fully transcribed and processed and has left the nucleus. In other words, transcription and translation of a molecule of eukaryotic mRNA do not occur simultaneously because eukaryotic ribosomes are located in the cytoplasm, while transcription occurs in the nucleus.

Transfer RNA A transfer RNA (tRNA) molecule is a sequence of about 75 ribonucleotides that curves back on itself to form three main hairpin loops held in place by hydrogen bonding between complementary nucleotides **(Figure 7.14a)**. Although transfer RNA molecules can be modeled simplistically by a cloverleaf structure, their three-dimensional shape is more complex **(Figure 7.14b)**. For simplicity, tRNA will be represented in subsequent figures by an icon shaped like the three-dimensional icon in Figure 7.14b.

A molecule of tRNA transfers the correct amino acid to a ribosome during polypeptide synthesis. To this end, tRNA has an **anticodon** (an-tē-kō´don) triplet in its bottom loop and an *acceptor stem* for a specific amino acid at its 3′ end. Specific enzymes in the cytoplasm *charge* each tRNA molecule; that is, they attach the appropriate amino acid to the acceptor stem.

Anticodons are complementary to mRNA codons, and each acceptor stem is designed to carry one particular amino acid, which varies with the tRNA. In other words, each transfer RNA carries a specific amino acid and recognizes mRNA codons only for that amino acid. A tRNA molecule is designated by a superscript abbreviation of its amino acid. For example, $tRNA^{Phe}$ carries phenylalanine, and $tRNA^{Ser}$ transfers serine.

The fact that 62 codons specify the 21 amino acids used by cells does not mean that there must be 62 anticodons on 62 different types of tRNA because many tRNA molecules recognize more than one codon. *E. coli*, for example, has only about 40 different tRNAs. The variability in codon recognition by tRNA is due to "wobble" of the anticodon's third nucleotide. Wobble, which is a change of angle from the normal axis of the molecule, allows the third nucleotide to hydrogen bond to a nucleotide other than its usual complement. For example, a guanine nucleotide in the third position normally bonds to cytosine, but it can wobble and also pair with uracil; therefore, whether a codon has cytosine or uracil in the third position makes no difference because the same tRNA recognizes either nucleotide in the third position. For example, the codons UUU and UUC specify the amino acid phenylalanine because the anticodon AAG recognizes both of them. Similarly, UCU and UCC code for serine, and UAU and UAC code for tyrosine. This redundancy in the genetic code helps protect cells against the effects of errors in replication and transcription.



▲ **Figure 7.14** **Transfer RNA.** **(a)** A two-dimensional "cloverleaf" representation of tRNA showing three hairpin loops held in place by intramolecular hydrogen bonding. **(b)** A three-dimensional drawing of the same tRNA. A specific amino acid attaches to the 3′ acceptor stem; the anticodon is a nucleotide triplet that is complementary to the mRNA codon for that amino acid. *Which amino acid would be attached to the acceptor stem of this tRNA?*

Figure 7.14 *UGG is the codon for tryptophan.*

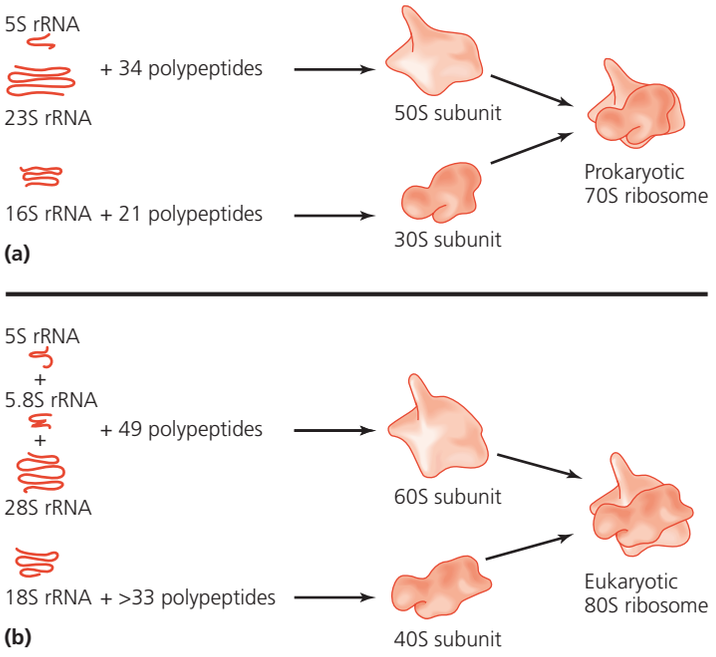
CRITICAL **THINKING**

We have seen that wobble makes the genetic code redundant in the third position for C and U. After reexamining the genetic code in Figure 7.12, state what other nucleotides in the third position appear to accommodate anticodon wobbling.

Ribosomes and Ribosomal RNA Prokaryotic ribosomes, which are also called 70S ribosomes based on their sedimentation rate in an ultracentrifuge, are extremely complex associations of ribosomal RNAs and polypeptides. Each ribosome is composed of two subunits: 50S and 30S **(Figure 7.15a)**. The 50S subunit is in turn composed of two rRNA molecules (23S and 5S) and about 34 different polypeptides, whereas the 30S subunit consists of one molecule of 16S rRNA and 21 ribosomal polypeptides. The ribosomes of mitochondria and chloroplasts are also 70S ribosomes composed of similar subunits and polypeptides.

In contrast, both the cytosol and the rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER) of eukaryotic cells have 80S ribosomes composed of 60S and 40S subunits **(Figure 7.15b)**. These subunits contain larger molecules of rRNA and more polypeptides than the corresponding prokaryotic subunits, though researchers do not agree on the exact number of polypeptides. The term *eukaryotic ribosome* is understood to mean only the 80S ribosomes of the cytosol and RER. Because the ribosomes of mitochondria and chloroplasts are 70S, they are "prokaryotic" ribosomes even though they are in eukaryotic cells.

The structural differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes play a crucial role in the efficacy and safety of antimicrobial drugs. Because erythromycin, for example, binds only to the 23S rRNA found in prokaryotic ribosomes, it has no effect

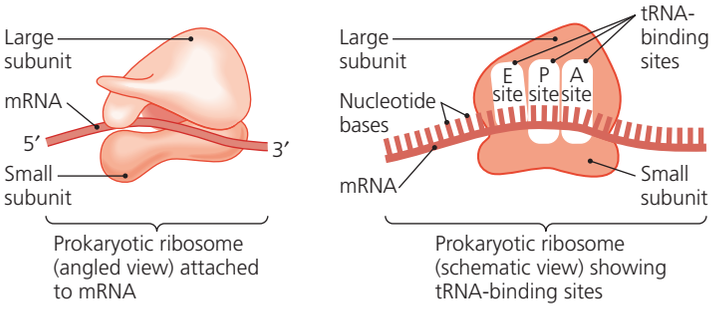


▲ **Figure 7.15 Ribosomal structures. (a)** The 70S prokaryotic ribosome, which is composed of polypeptides and three rRNA molecules arranged in 50S and 30S subunits. **(b)** The 80S eukaryotic ribosome, which is composed of molecules of rRNA and polypeptides, arranged in 60S and 40S subunits.

on eukaryotic 80S ribosomes and thus little deleterious effect on a patient. (Chapter 10 discusses antimicrobial drugs in more detail.)

The smaller subunit of a ribosome is shaped to accommodate three codons at one time—that is, nine nucleotide bases of a molecule of mRNA. Each ribosome also has three tRNA-binding sites that are named for their function **(Figure 7.16)**:

- The **A site** accommodates a tRNA delivering an *amino acid.*
- The **P site** holds a tRNA and the growing *polypeptide.*
- Discharged tRNAs *exit* from the **E site.**



▲ **Figure 7.16 Assembled ribosome and its tRNA-binding sites.** The A site accepts the tRNA carrying the next amino acid to be added to the growing polypeptide, whereas the P site holds the tRNA carrying the polypeptide. Empty tRNA molecules exit from the E site.

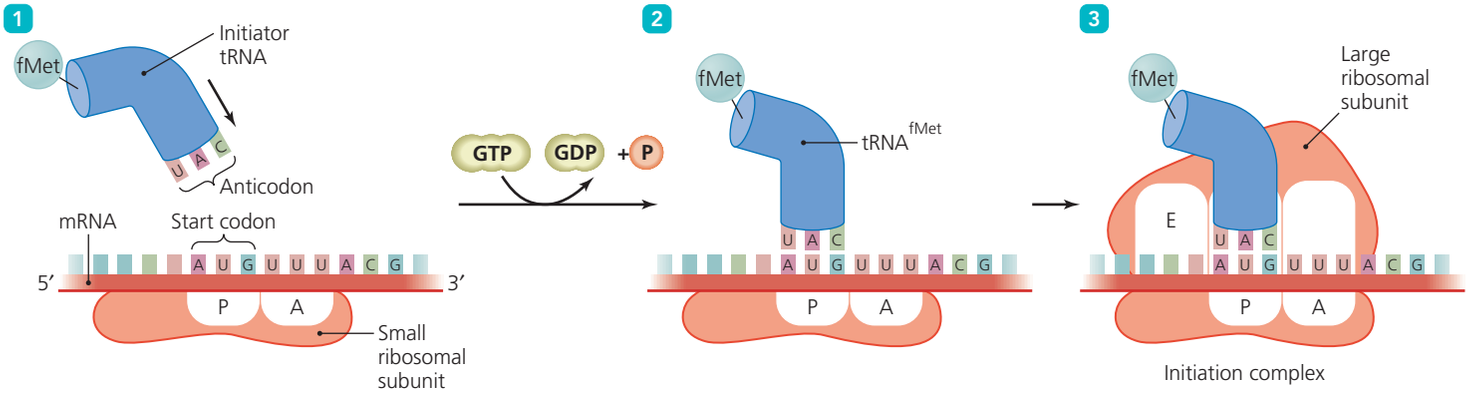
We will now examine translation, the process whereby ribosomes actually synthesize polypeptides using amino acids delivered by tRNAs in the sequence dictated by the order of codons in mRNA.

Events in Translation

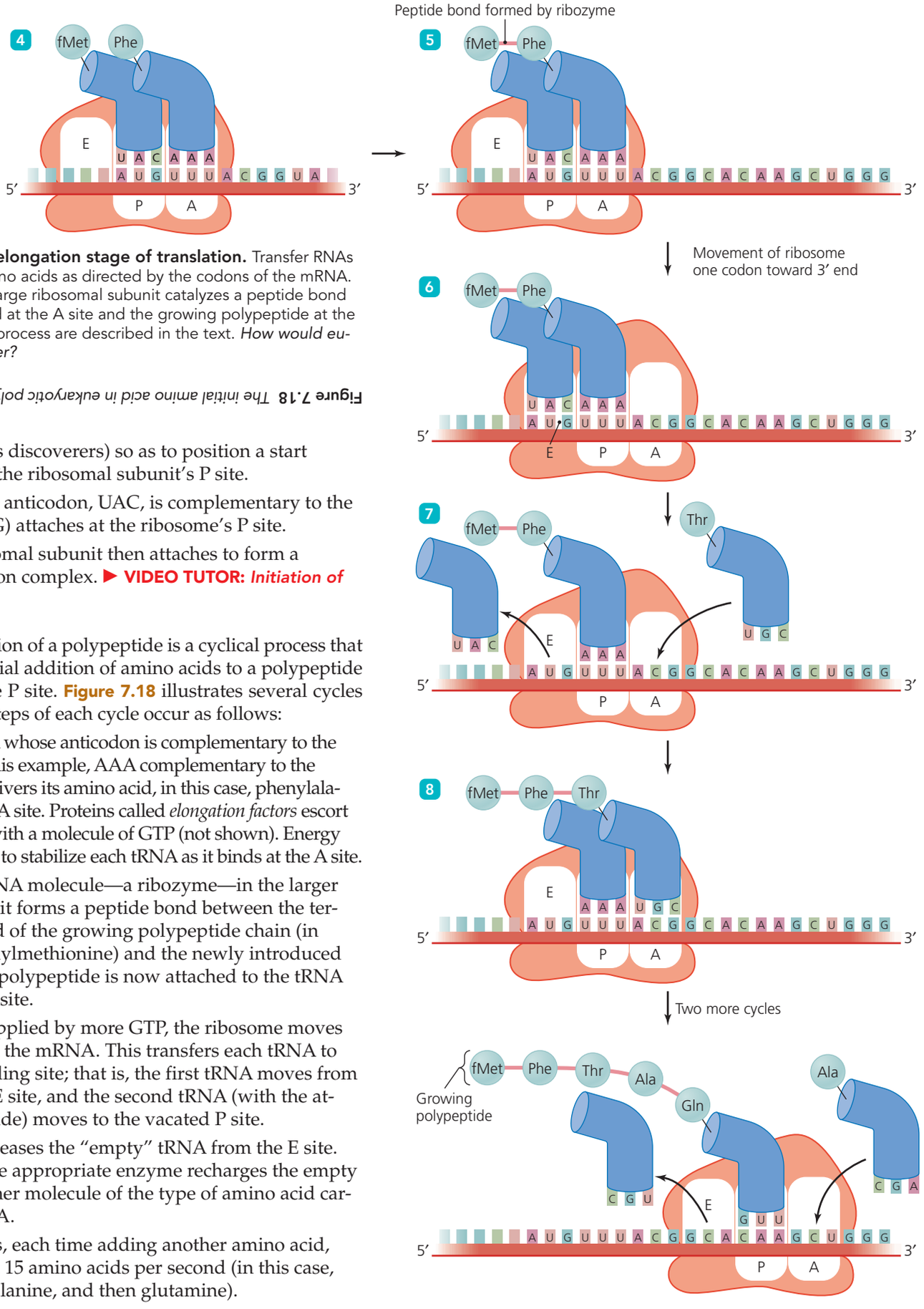
Molecular biologists divide translation into three stages: *initiation, elongation,* and *termination.* All three stages require additional protein factors that assist the ribosomes. Initiation and elongation also require energy provided by molecules of the ribonucleotide GTP, which are free in the cytosol (i.e., they are not part of an RNA molecule). Here we consider bacterial translation. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Translation: The Process***

Initiation During initiation, the two ribosomal subunits, mRNA, several protein factors, and $tRNA^{fMet}$ form an *initiation complex.* Initiation in prokaryotes may occur while the cell is still transcribing mRNA from DNA. The events of initiation in a bacterium are as follows **(Figure 7.17)**:

1. The smaller ribosomal subunit attaches to mRNA at a ribosome-binding site (also known as a Shine-Dalgarno



▲ **Figure 7.17 The initiation of translation in prokaryotes.** 1 The smaller ribosomal subunit attaches to mRNA at a ribosome-binding site near a start codon (AUG). 2 The anticodon of $tRNA^{fMet}$ aligns with the start codon on the mRNA; energy from GTP is used to bind the tRNA in place. 3 The larger ribosomal subunit attaches to form an initiation complex—a complete ribosome attached to mRNA.



▶ **Figure 7.18 The elongation stage of translation.** Transfer RNAs sequentially deliver amino acids as directed by the codons of the mRNA. Ribosomal RNA in the large ribosomal subunit catalyzes a peptide bond between the amino acid at the A site and the growing polypeptide at the P site. The steps in the process are described in the text. *How would eukaryotic translation differ?*

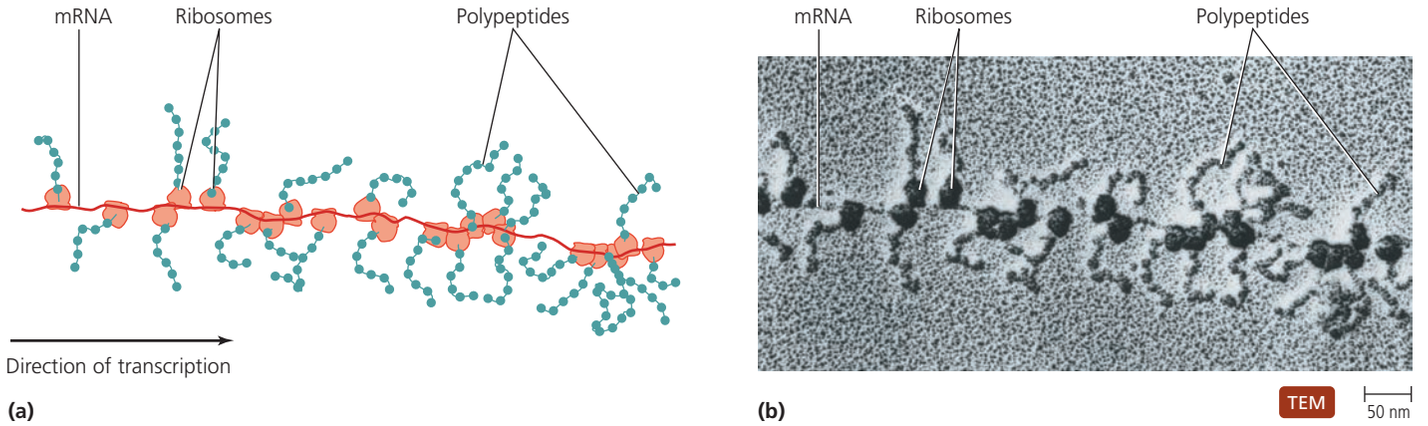
Figure 7.18 *The initial amino acid in eukaryotic polypeptide is methionine.*

sequence after its discoverers) so as to position a start codon (AUG) at the ribosomal subunit's P site.

2. $tRNA^{fMet}$ (whose anticodon, UAC, is complementary to the start codon, AUG) attaches at the ribosome's P site.
3. The larger ribosomal subunit then attaches to form a complete initiation complex. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Initiation of Translation***

Elongation Elongation of a polypeptide is a cyclical process that involves the sequential addition of amino acids to a polypeptide chain growing at the P site. **Figure 7.18** illustrates several cycles of the process. The steps of each cycle occur as follows:

4. The transfer RNA whose anticodon is complementary to the next codon—in this example, AAA complementary to the codon UUU—delivers its amino acid, in this case, phenylalanine (Phe), to the A site. Proteins called *elongation factors* escort the tRNA along with a molecule of GTP (not shown). Energy from GTP is used to stabilize each tRNA as it binds at the A site.
5. An enzymatic RNA molecule—a ribozyme—in the larger ribosomal subunit forms a peptide bond between the terminal amino acid of the growing polypeptide chain (in this case, *N*-formylmethionine) and the newly introduced amino acid. The polypeptide is now attached to the tRNA occupying the A site.
6. Using energy supplied by more GTP, the ribosome moves one codon down the mRNA. This transfers each tRNA to the adjacent binding site; that is, the first tRNA moves from the P site to the E site, and the second tRNA (with the attached polypeptide) moves to the vacated P site.
7. The ribosome releases the "empty" tRNA from the E site. In the cytosol, the appropriate enzyme recharges the empty tRNA with another molecule of the type of amino acid carried by that tRNA.
8. The cycle repeats, each time adding another amino acid, at a rate of about 15 amino acids per second (in this case, threonine, then alanine, and then glutamine).



▲ **Figure 7.19 In polkaryotes a polyribosome—one mRNA and many ribosomes and polypeptides. (a)** As each ribosome moves down the mRNA, the start codon (AUG) becomes available to another ribosome. In this manner, numerous identical polypeptides are translated simultaneously from a single mRNA molecule. **(b)** A polyribosome in a prokaryotic cell.

As elongation proceeds, ribosomal movement exposes the start codon, allowing another ribosome to attach behind the first one. In this way, one ribosome after another attaches at the start codon and begins to translate identical polypeptide molecules from the same message. Such a group of ribosomes, called a *polyribosome,* resembles beads on a string **(Figure 7.19)**.

Termination Termination does not involve tRNA; instead, proteins called *release factors* halt elongation. It appears that release factors somehow recognize stop codons and modify the larger ribosomal subunit in such a way as to activate another of its ribozymes that severs the polypeptide from the final tRNA (resident at the P site). The ribosome then dissociates into its subunits. Termination of translation should not be confused with termination of transcription covered in a previous section. The polypeptides released at termination may function alone as proteins, or they may function with other polypeptides in quaternary protein structures.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

If a scientist synthesizes a DNA molecule with the nucleotide base sequence TACGGGGGAGGGGGAGGGGGA and then uses it for transcription and translation, what would be the amino acid sequence of the product?

Translational Differences in Eukaryotes

Eukaryotic translation is similar to that of bacteria, with some notable differences, including the following:

- Initiation of translation in eukaryotes occurs when the small ribosomal subunit binds to the 5′ guanine cap rather than a specific nucleotide sequence.
- The first amino acid in eukaryotic polypeptides is methionine rather than formylmethionine.
- Ribosomes attached to membranes of endoplasmic reticulum (ER), forming rough ER (RER), can synthesize polypeptides into the cavity of the RER.

Archaeal translation is more similar to that of eukaryotes than to that of bacteria; however, archaea lack ER.

The processes we have examined thus far—how a cell replicates DNA, transcribes RNA, and translates RNA into polypeptides—are summarized in Table 7.3. Next we examine the way cells control the process of transcription.

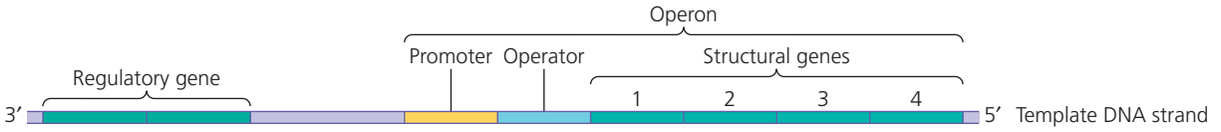
Regulation of Genetic Expression

Learning Outcomes

7.12 Explain the operon model of transcriptional control in prokaryotes.
7.13 Contrast the regulation of an inducible operon with that of a repressible operon and give an example of each.
7.14 Describe the use of microRNA, small interfering RNA, and riboswitches in genetic control.

TABLE 7.3 Comparison of Genetic Processes

Process	Purpose	Beginning Point	Ending Point (Termination)
Replication	To duplicate the cell's genome	Origin	Origin or the end of a linear DNA molecule
Transcription	To synthesize RNA	Promoter	Terminator
Translation	To synthesize polypeptides	AUG start codon	UAA, UAG, or UGA stop codons



▲ Figure 7.20 A polycistronic operon. An operon consists of genes, their promoter, and an operator. The genes code for enzymes and structures such as channel and carrier proteins. A separate regulatory gene that is not part of the operon codes for a protein that controls the operon.

Most of a bacterium's genes are expressed at all times; that is, they are constantly transcribed and translated and play a persistent role in the phenotype. Such genes code for RNAs and polypeptides that are needed in large amounts by the cell—for example, integral proteins of the cytoplasmic membrane, structural proteins of ribosomes, and enzymes of glycolysis.

Other genes are regulated so that the polypeptides they encode are synthesized only in response to a change in the environment. Protein synthesis requires a large amount of energy, which can be conserved if a cell forgoes production of unneeded polypeptides. For example, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (ā-roo-ji-nō´să), a potential pathogen of cystic fibrosis patients, can synthesize harmful proteins. Early in an infection, *Pseudomonas* does not produce the proteins: The body would respond defensively and eliminate the bacterium. Instead, the pathogen uses **quorum sensing**—a process whereby cells secrete quorum-sensing molecules into their environment and other cells detect these signals so as to measure their density. The result is that *Pseudomonas* cells synthesize harmful proteins only after there are numerous bacterial cells, overwhelming the body's defenses. **Emerging Disease Case Study: *Vibrio vulnificus* Infection** on p. 204 describes another case of quorum sensing.

Cells regulate polypeptide synthesis in many ways. They may initiate or stop transcription of mRNA or may stop translation directly.

Much of our knowledge of regulation has come from the study of microorganisms such as *E. coli.* We will examine two types of regulation of transcription in this bacterium—*induction* and *repression.* But before we examine these processes, we must first consider *operons*—special arrangements of prokaryotic genes that play roles in gene regulation.

The Nature of Prokaryotic Operons

As originally described, a prokaryotic **operon** consists of a promoter, a series of genes that code for enzymes and structures (such as channel proteins), and an adjacent regulatory element called an **operator** **(Figure 7.20)**, which controls movement of RNA polymerase. Operons are typically *polycistronic*, which means they can code for several polypeptides.

Inducible operons are not usually transcribed and must be activated by *inducers*, such as some quorum-sensing polypeptides. **Repressible operons** operate in reverse fashion—they are transcribed continually until deactivated by *repressors*, which bind to the operator and inhibit transcription. To clarify these concepts, let's examine an inducible operon and a repressible operon found in *E. coli.* ► **ANIMATIONS:** ***Operons: Overview***

The Lactose Operon, an Inducible Operon

The *lactose* (lac) *operon* of *E. coli* is an inducible operon and the first operon whose structure and action were elucidated. It includes a promoter, an operator, and three genes that encode proteins involved in the transport and catabolism of lactose sugar **(Figure 7.21a)**.

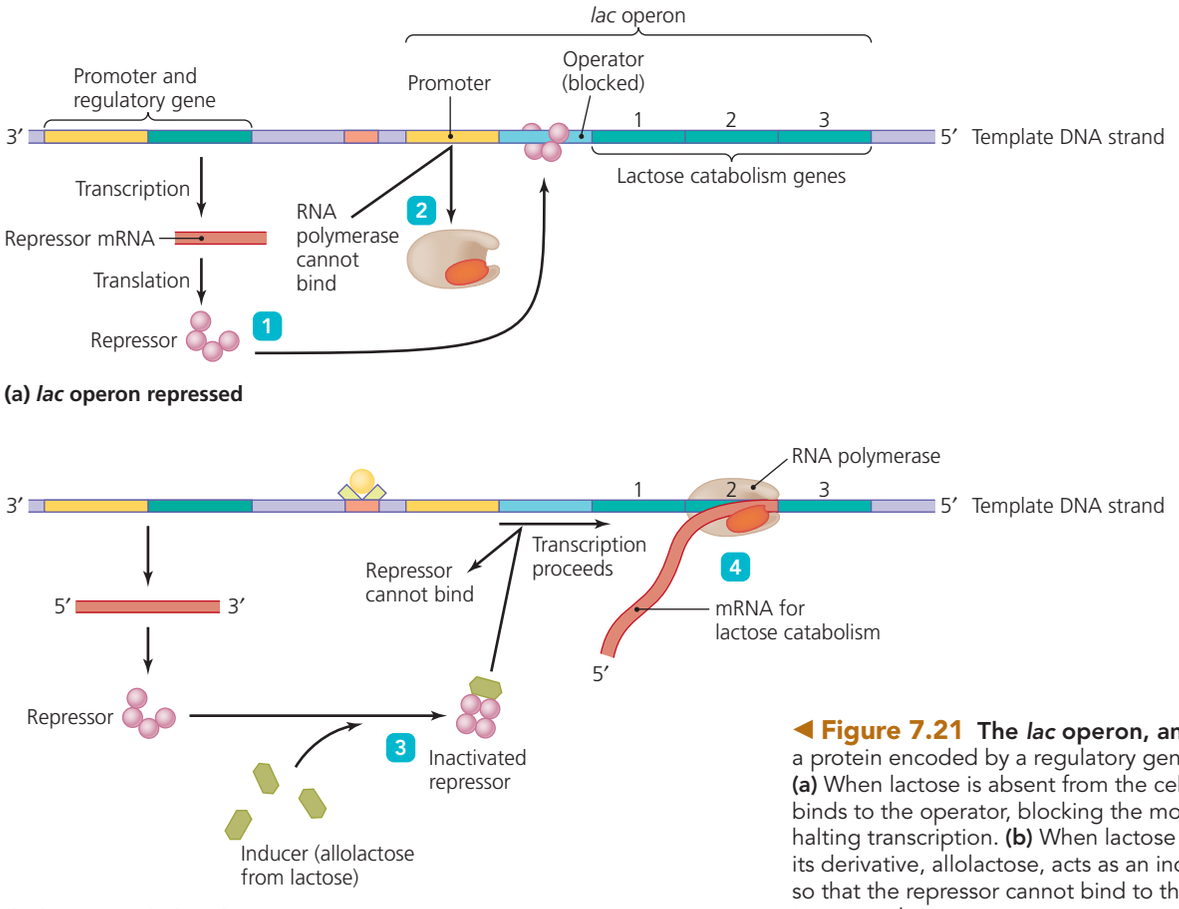
Repression and Induction The *lac* operon is controlled by a regulatory gene that is located outside the operon. The regulatory gene is constantly transcribed and translated to produce a repressor protein that attaches to DNA at the *lac* operator 1. This repressor prevents RNA polymerase from binding to the promoter, stopping synthesis of mRNA 2. Thus, the *lac* operon is usually inactive.

Under certain conditions, discussed shortly, *E. coli* takes in lactose whenever it becomes available and converts it to allolactose—an inducer that inactivates the repressor by changing the repressor's quaternary structure so that it can no longer attach to DNA (**Figure 7.21b** 3). This allows transcription of the three structural genes to proceed—the operon has been induced and can become active 4. Ribosomes then translate the newly synthesized mRNA to produce enzymes that catabolize lactose. Once the lactose supply has been depleted, there is no more inducer, and the repressor once again becomes active, suppressing transcription of the *lac* operon. In this manner, *E. coli* cells conserve energy by synthesizing enzymes for the catabolism of lactose only when lactose is available to them.

Positive Regulation by CAP Another condition must be met before *E. coli* transcribes its *lac* operon—glucose must be absent. *Lac* genes should not be transcribed when glucose is available because glucose is more efficiently catabolized than is lactose. Glucose does not directly inhibit transcription; instead, the small molecule *cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP)* is involved. When glucose is present, the cell does not synthesize much cAMP, so cAMP levels will be low; however, cAMP accumulates in *E. coli* when glucose is absent.

Cyclic AMP binds to an allosteric site of a regulatory protein, *catabolic activator protein (CAP),* which is then able to bind to a CAP-binding site on DNA near the *lac* operon's promoter. This action is necessary for RNA polymerase to bind effectively. Once bound, RNA polymerase transcribes the *lac* genes **(Figure 7.22)**. Thus, CAP-cAMP positively enhances *lac* transcription but only when the operon is also induced by allolactose.

Inducible operons are often involved in controlling catabolic pathways whose polypeptides are not needed unless a

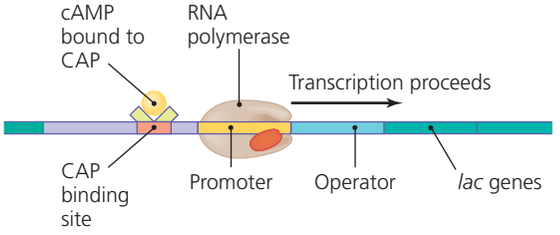


◀ **Figure 7.21 The *lac* operon, an inducible operon.** The repressor, a protein encoded by a regulatory gene, is constantly synthesized. **(a)** When lactose is absent from the cell's environment, the repressor binds to the operator, blocking the movement of RNA polymerase and halting transcription. **(b)** When lactose is present in the cell's environment, its derivative, allolactose, acts as an inducer by inactivating the repressor so that the repressor cannot bind to the operator, allowing transcription to proceed.

particular nutrient is available. Such operons can also be associated with production of harmful proteins (virulence proteins) by pathogens. A different situation occurs with anabolic pathways, such as those that synthesize amino acids. ▶**ANIMATIONS:** ***Operons: Induction***

The Tryptophan Operon, a Repressible Operon

E. coli can synthesize all the amino acids it needs for polypeptide synthesis; however, it can save energy by using amino acids available in its environment. In such cases, *E. coli* represses the genes for a given amino acid's synthetic pathway.

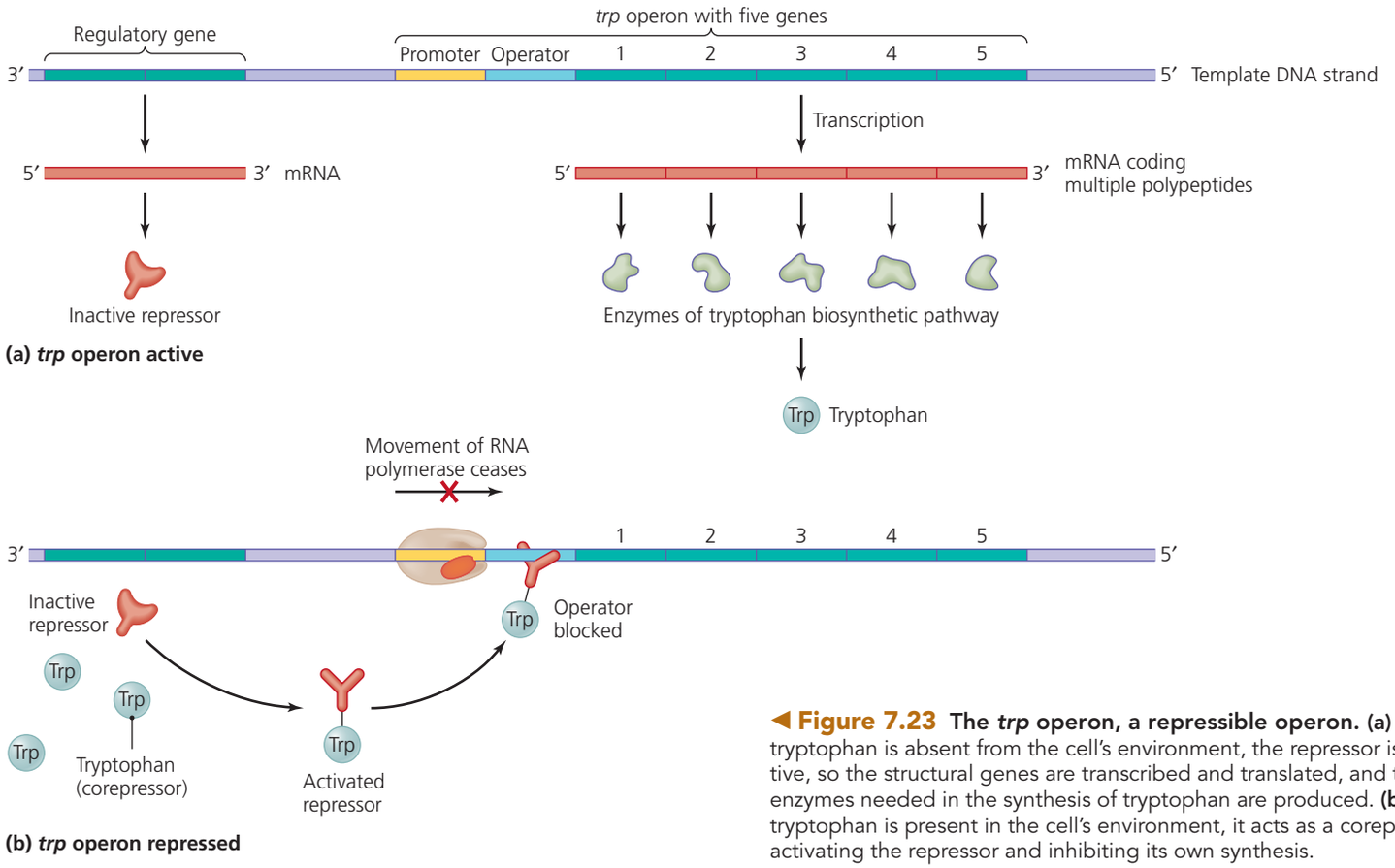


▲ **Figure 7.22 CAP-cAMP enhances *lac* transcription.** Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), accumulating in *E. coli* when glucose is absent, binds to catabolic activator protein (CAP). CAP-cAMP binds to a CAP-binding site of DNA, allowing RNA polymerase to effectively bind to the *lac* promoter and begin transcription.

The *tryptophan operon,* which is a polycistronic operon consisting of a promoter, an operator, and five genes that code for the enzymes involved in the synthesis of tryptophan, is an example of such a repressible operon. Just as with the *lac* operon, a regulatory gene codes for a repressor molecule that is constantly synthesized. In contrast to inducible operons, however, the repressor of repressible operons is normally inactive. Thus, in the case of the repressible *trp* operon, whenever tryptophan is not present in the environment, the *trp* operon is active: The appropriate mRNA is transcribed, the enzymes for tryptophan synthesis are translated, and tryptophan is produced **(Figure 7.23a)**.

When tryptophan is available, it activates the repressor by binding to it. The activated repressor then binds to the operator, halting the movement of RNA polymerase and halting transcription **(Figure 7.23b)**. In other words, tryptophan acts as a *corepressor* of its own synthesis.

Biochemical analyses have revealed numerous variations of repressor-operator regulatory control. For example, scientists have discovered operons that use dual regulatory proteins, multiple operons controlled by a single repressor, and operons with multiple operators. Furthermore, some operons are not merely on-off systems but can be fine-tuned so that transcription rates vary with the concentration of corepressors.



◀ **Figure 7.23 The *trp* operon, a repressible operon.** **(a)** When tryptophan is absent from the cell's environment, the repressor is inactive, so the structural genes are transcribed and translated, and the five enzymes needed in the synthesis of tryptophan are produced. **(b)** When tryptophan is present in the cell's environment, it acts as a corepressor, activating the repressor and inhibiting its own synthesis.

Table 7.4 summarizes how the basic characteristics of inducible and repressible operons relate to the regulation of transcription. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Operons: Repression***

RNA Molecules Can Control Translation

Besides inducing and repressing operons, cells can also use molecules of RNA to regulate translation of polypeptides. **Regulatory RNA** molecules include *microRNA, small interfering RNA,* and *riboswitches.*

Eukaryotic cells transcribe single-stranded RNA molecules about 22 nucleotides long called **microRNAs (miRNAs)**. Ribosomes do not translate microRNA molecules; rather, miRNA joins with regulatory proteins to form a *miRNA-induced silencing complex (miRISC).*

miRISC binds to messenger RNA that is complementary to the microRNA within the miRISC. Once bound, miRISC performs one of two functions: In some cases, miRISC cuts the messenger RNA molecule, rendering it useless. In other cases, miRISC remains bound to messenger RNA, effectively hiding the mRNA molecule from ribosomes. In both cases, no polypeptide is formed from the messenger RNA molecule; thus, miRNAs (associated with RISC) regulate gene expression by blocking translation. Eukaryotic cells use miRISC to regulate a number of processes, including embryogenesis, cell division, apoptosis (programmed cell death), blood cell formation, and development of cancer.

Another method of regulation involving RNA uses **small interfering RNA (siRNA).** siRNAs are about the same length as miRNAs but differ from miRNAs in that siRNAs are double stranded. Further, siRNAs may be complementary to mRNA, tRNA, or DNA. siRNAs unwind and join RISC proteins to form siRISC. siRISC appears to always bind to and cut the target nucleic acid. Scientists create siRNA molecules so as to artificially regulate gene expression in laboratory studies.

A **riboswitch** is another RNA molecule that helps regulate translation. Riboswitches change shape in response to environmental conditions such as changes in temperature or shifts in the concentration of specific nutrients, including vitamins,

TABLE 7.4 The Roles of Operons in the Regulation of Transcription

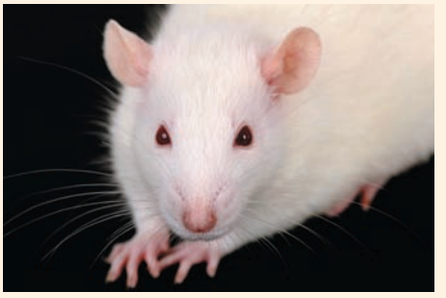
Type of Regulation	Type of Metabolic Pathway Regulated	Regulating Condition
Inducible operons	Catabolic pathways; production of virulence proteins	Presence of substrate of pathway, quorum-sensing polypeptides
Repressible operons	Anabolic pathways	Presence of product of pathway, quorum-sensing polypeptides

HIGHLIGHT

FLIPPING THE SWITCH: RNA INTERFERENCE

One of the most effective ways to find out what a gene does is to disable it and see what happens. Researchers know how to cut out portions of DNA to turn off genes, a process called "knocking out." They also have a method for silencing specific genes in cells via RNA. By stopping expression at the RNA level, researchers can see what happens when the gene is turned on but its resultant protein is not produced. The approach is called RNA interference (RNAi).

RNAi uses miRNAs or siRNAs that pinpoint a messenger RNA molecule, attach to it, and target it for destruction. In this way, researchers use RNAi to selectively terminate the generation of a protein and study the cellular response. For example, scientists have used RNAi to induce protection against hepatitis virus in laboratory rodents—perhaps RNAi may provide defense for people in the future.



nucleotide bases, or amino acids. Some mRNA molecules themselves act as riboswitches. When conditions warrant, riboswitch mRNA folds to either favor or block translation, depending on the need by the cell for the polypeptide it encodes. For example, messenger RNA for the virulence regulator of the plague bacterium *Yersinia pestis* (yer-sin´ē-ă pes´tis) folds in such a way as to prevent translation when the temperature is below human body temperature (37°C). When the bacterium enters a human, the mRNA refolds into a shape that allows translation, and virulence regulator is synthesized; plague ensues.

Mutations of Genes

Learning Outcome

7.15 Define *mutation.*

The phenotype of a cell is dependent on both the integrity and accurate control of its genes; however, the nucleotide sequences of genes are not always accurately maintained. A **mutation** is a change in the nucleotide base sequence of a genome, particularly its genes. Mutations of genes are almost always deleterious, though a few make no difference to the organism. Even more rarely a mutation leads to a novel property that improves the ability of an organism and its descendants to survive and reproduce. This is evolution in action. Mutations in unicellular organisms are passed on to the organism's progeny, but mutations in multicellular organisms typically are passed to offspring only if a mutation occurs in gametes (sex cells) or gamete-producing cells.

Types of Mutations

Learning Outcome

7.16 Define *point mutation* and describe three types.

Mutations range from large changes in an organism's genome, such as the loss or gain of an entire chromosome, to **point mutations,** in which just a single nucleotide base pair is affected. Point mutations include *substitutions* and *frameshift mutations* (*insertions* and *deletions*). The following analogy illustrates some types of mutations. Suppose that the DNA code was represented by the letters THECATATEELK. Grouping the letters into triplets (like codons) yields THE CAT ATE ELK. The substitution of a single letter could either change the meaning of the sentence, as in THE RAT ATE ELK, or result in a meaningless phrase, such as THE CAT RTE ELK. Insertion or deletion of a letter produces more serious changes, such as TRH ECA TAT EEL K (insertion) or TEC ATA TEE LK (deletion). Frameshift mutations can be caused by insertions or deletions because nucleotide triplets following the mutation are displaced, creating new sequences of codons that result in vastly altered polypeptide sequences. Frameshift mutations affect proteins much more seriously than mere substitutions because a frame shift affects all codons subsequent to the mutation.

Mutations can also involve *inversion* (THE ACT ATE KLE), *duplication* (THE CAT CAT ATE ELK ELK), or *transposition* (THE ELK ATE CAT). Such mutations and even larger deletions and insertions are **gross mutations.** ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Mutations: Types***

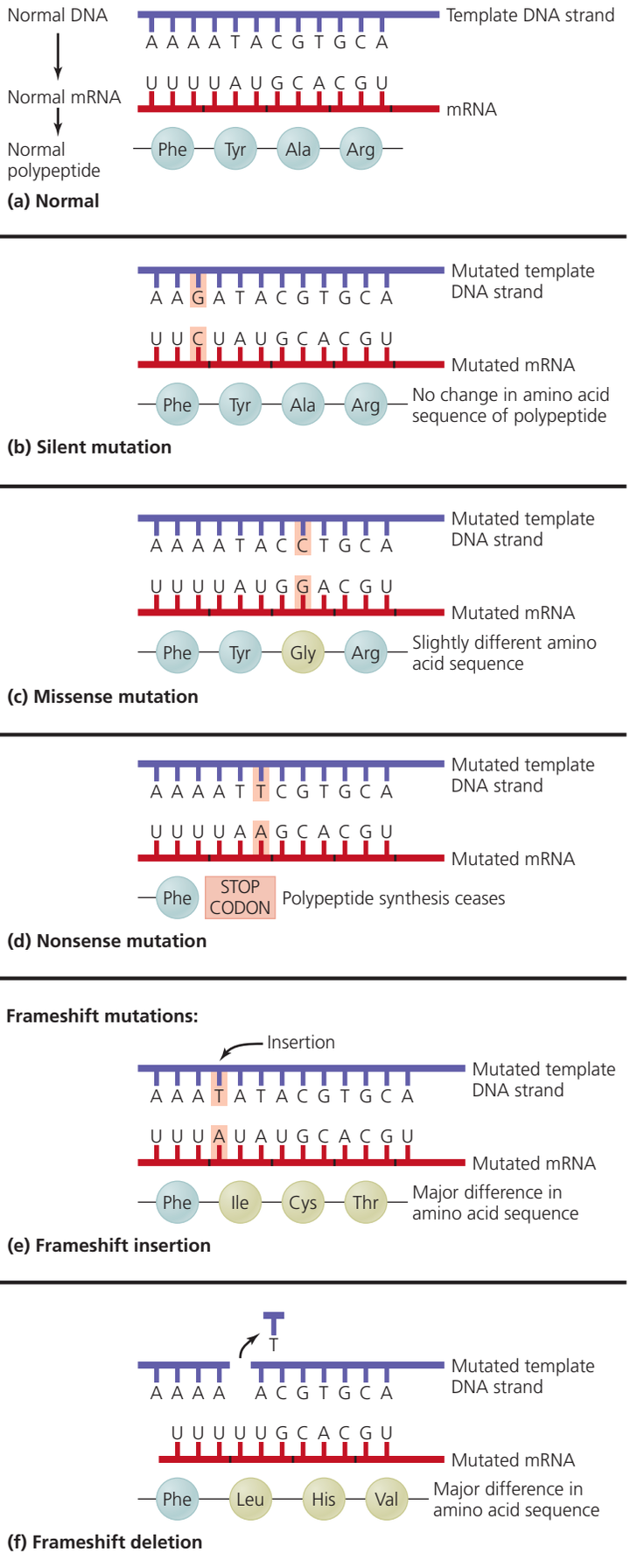
Effects of Point Mutations

Learning Outcome

7.17 List three effects of point mutations.

Some base-pair substitutions produce **silent mutations** because redundancy in the genetic code prevents the substitution from altering the amino acid sequence (compare **Figure 7.24a** and **b**). For example, when the DNA triplet AAA is changed to AAG, the mRNA codon will be changed from UUU to UUC; however, because both codons specify phenylalanine, there is no change in the phenotype—the mutation is silent because it affects the genotype only.

Of greater concern are substitutions that change a codon for one amino acid into a codon for a different amino acid. A change that specifies a different amino acid is called a **missense mutation** **(Figure 7.24c)**; what gets transcribed and translated makes sense but not the right sense. The effect of missense mutations depends on where in the protein the changed amino acid occurs. When the different amino acid is in a critical region of a protein, the protein becomes nonfunctional; however, when the different amino acid is in a less important region, the mutation may have no adverse effect.



▶ Figure 7.24 The effects of the various types of point mutations. Normal gene **(a)**. Base-pair substitutions can result in silent mutations **(b),** missense mutations **(c),** or nonsense mutations **(d).** Frameshift insertions **(e)** and frameshift deletions **(f)** usually result in severe missense or nonsense mutations because all codons downstream from the mutation are altered.

A third type of mutation occurs when a base-pair substitution changes an amino acid codon into a stop codon. This is called a **nonsense mutation (Figure 7.24d)**. Nearly all nonsense mutations result in nonfunctional proteins.

Frameshift mutations (i.e., insertions or deletions) typically result in drastic missense and nonsense mutations **(Figure 7.24e** and **f)** except when the insertion or deletion is very close to the end of a gene.

Table 7.5 on p. 219 summarizes the types and effects of point mutations.

CRITICAL THINKING

What DNA nucleotide triplet codes for codon UGU? Identify a base-pair substitution that would produce a silent mutation at this codon. Identify a base-pair substitution that would result in a missense mutation at this codon. Identify a base-pair substitution that would produce a nonsense mutation at this codon.

Mutagens

Learning Outcomes

7.18 Discuss how different types of radiation cause mutations in a genome.

7.19 Describe three kinds of chemical mutagens and their effects.

Mutations occur naturally during the life of an organism. Such *spontaneous mutations* result from errors in replication and repair as well as from *recombination* in which relatively long stretches of DNA move among chromosomes, plasmids, and viruses, introducing frameshift mutations. For example, we have seen that mismatched base pairing during DNA replication results in one error in every 10 billion (10^{10}) base pairs. Since an average gene has 10^3 base pairs, about one of every 10^7 (10 million) genes contains an error. Further, though cells have repair mechanisms to reduce the effect of mutations, the repair process itself can introduce additional errors. Physical or chemical agents called **mutagens** (myū´tă-jenz), which include radiation and several types of DNA-altering chemicals, induce mutations.

▶ ANIMATIONS: ***Mutagens***

Radiation

In the 1920s, Hermann Muller (1890–1967) discovered that X rays increased phenotypic variability in fruit flies by causing mutations. *Gamma rays* also damage DNA. X rays and gamma rays are *ionizing radiation;* that is, they energize electrons in atoms, causing some of the electrons to escape from their atoms (see Chapter 9). These free electrons strike other atoms, producing ions that can react with the structure of DNA, creating mutations. More seriously, electrons and ions can break the covalent

TABLE 7.5 The Types of Point Mutations and Their Effects

Type of Point Mutation	Description	Effects
Substitution	Mismatching of nucleotides or replacement of one base pair by another	*Silent mutation* if change results in redundant codon, as amino acid sequence in polypeptide is not changed. *Missense mutation* if change results in codon for a different amino acid; effect depends on location of different amino acid in polypeptide. *Nonsense mutation* if codon for an amino acid is changed to a stop codon.
Frameshift (insertion)	Addition of one or a few nucleotide pairs creates new sequence of codons	Missense and nonsense mutations
Frameshift (deletion)	Removal of one or a few nucleotide pairs creates new sequence of codons	Missense and nonsense mutations

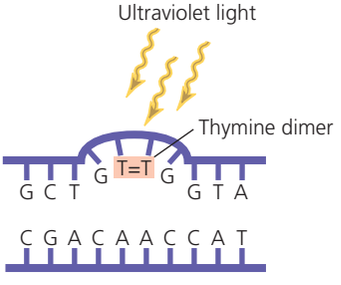
bonds between the sugars and phosphates of a DNA backbone, causing physical breaks in chromosomes and complete loss of cellular control.

Nonionizing radiation in the form of *ultraviolet (UV) light* is also mutagenic because it causes adjacent pyrimidine bases to covalently bond to one another, forming **pyrimidine dimers** (Figure 7.25). The presence of dimers prevents hydrogen bonding with nucleotides in the complementary strand, distorts the sugar-phosphate backbone, and prevents proper replication and transcription. Cells have several methods of repairing dimers (discussed shortly).

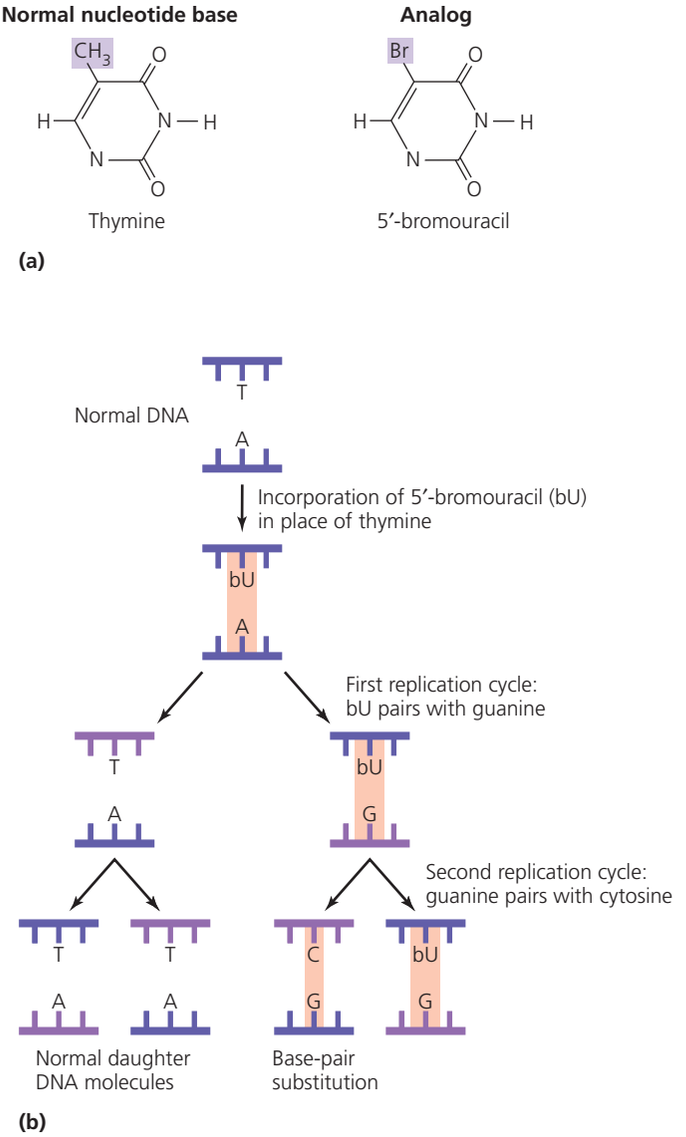
Chemical Mutagens

Here we consider three of the many basic types of mutagenic chemicals.

Nucleotide Analogs Compounds that are structurally similar to normal nucleotides are called **nucleotide analogs** (Figure 7.26a). When nucleotide analogs are available to replicating cells, they may be incorporated into DNA in place of normal nucleotides, where their structural differences either inhibit nucleic acid polymerases or result in mismatched base pairing. For example, when thymine is replaced by 5′-bromouracil, a wrong complement can form—5′-bromouracil can pair with guanine rather than with adenine, resulting in a point mutation (Figure 7.26b). (Figure 10.7 illustrates other nucleotide analogs.)



▲ **Figure 7.25 A pyrimidine (in this case, thymine) dimer.** Ultraviolet light causes adjacent pyrimidine bases (in this case, thymine bases) to covalently bond to each other, preventing hydrogen bonding with bases in the complementary strand. The resulting distortion of the sugar-phosphate backbone prevents proper replication and transcription.

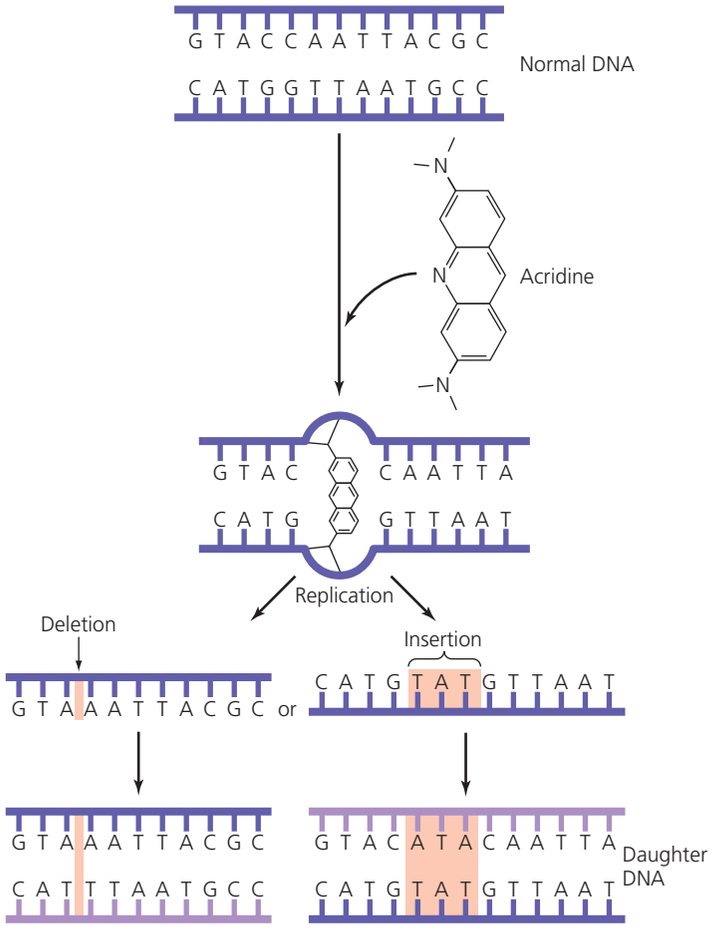


▲ **Figure 7.26 The structure and effects of a nucleotide analog.** **(a)** The structures of thymine and its nucleotide analog, 5′-bromouracil (bU). **(b)** When 5′-bromouracil is incorporated into DNA, the result is a point mutation. A single replication cycle results in one normal DNA molecule and one mutated molecule in which bU can pair with guanine. After a second replication cycle, a complete base-pair substitution has occurred in one of the four DNA molecules: CG has been substituted for TA.

Nucleotide (or nucleoside) analogs make potent antiviral and anticancer drugs because viruses and cancer cells typically replicate faster than normal cells. (Chapter 10 considers the use of analogs as antimicrobial agents.)

Nucleotide-Altering Chemicals Some chemical mutagens alter the structure of nucleotides. For example, a group of nucleotide-altering chemicals, called *aflatoxins,* are produced by *Aspergillus* (as-per-jil´ŭs) molds growing on grains and nuts. Aflatoxins catabolized in the liver can convert guanine nucleotides into thymine nucleotides so that a GC base pair is converted to a TA base pair, resulting in missense mutations and possibly cancer. The Food and Drug Administration prohibits excessive amounts of aflatoxins in human and animal food. Another example is *nitrous acid* (HNO_2), which removes the amine group of adenine, converting adenine into a guanine analog. When a cell replicates DNA containing this analog, an AT base pair is changed to a GC base pair in one daughter molecule—a base-pair-substitution mutation.

Frameshift Mutagens Still other mutagenic chemical agents insert or delete nucleotide base pairs, resulting in frameshift mutations. Examples of frameshift mutagens are *benzopyrene,* which is found in smoke; *ethidium bromide,* which is used to stain DNA; and *acridine,* one of a class of dyes commonly used as mutagens in genetic research. These chemicals are exactly the right size to slip between adjoining nucleotides in DNA, producing a bulge in the molecule **(Figure 7.27)**. When DNA polymerase copies the misshapen strands, one or more base pairs may be inserted or deleted in the daughter strand.



▲ **Figure 7.27 The action of a frameshift mutagen.** When DNA polymerase III passes the bulge caused by the insertion of acridine between the two DNA strands, it incorrectly synthesizes a daughter strand that contains either a deletion or an insertion mutation.

Frequency of Mutation

Learning Outcome

7.20 Discuss the relative frequency of deleterious and useful mutations.

Mutations are rare events. If they were not, organisms could not live or effectively reproduce themselves. As we have seen, about one of every 10 million (10^7) genes contains an error. Mutagens typically increase the mutation rate by a factor of 10 to 1000 times; that is, mutagens induce an error in one of every 10^6 to 10^4 genes.

Many mutations are deleterious because they code for nonfunctional proteins or stop transcription entirely. Cells without functional proteins cannot metabolize; therefore, deleterious mutations are removed from the population when the cells die. Rarely, however, a cell acquires a beneficial mutation that allows it to survive, reproduce, and pass the mutation to its descendants. This change in gene frequency in a population is evolution. For example, the tuberculosis bacterium has acquired a mutation that confers resistance to the antimicrobial drug rifampin. In patients taking rifampin, bacterial cells without resistance die, but the mutated cell survives and reproduces. As long as rifampin is present, cells with such a mutation have an advantage over cells without the mutation, and the population evolves resistance to rifampin.

DNA Repair

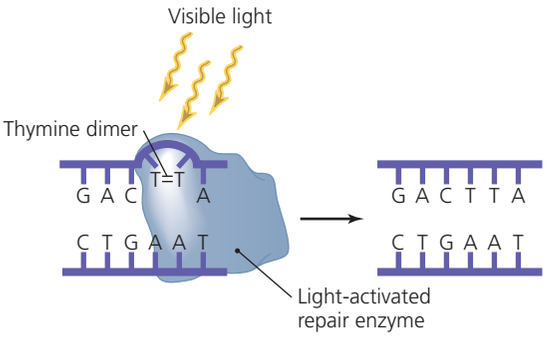
Learning Outcome

7.21 Describe light and dark repair of pyrimidine dimers, base-excision repair, mismatch repair, and the SOS response.

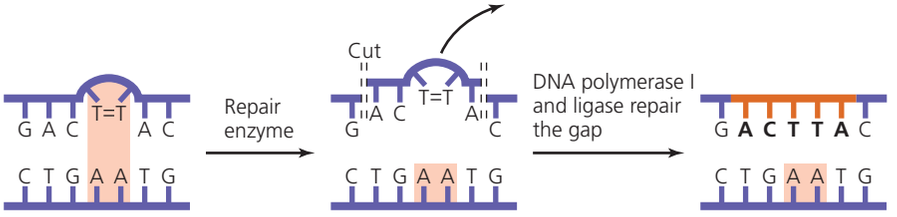
We have seen that mutations rarely convey an advantage; most mutations are deleterious. To respond to the dangers mutations pose, cells have numerous methods for repairing damaged DNA, including light and dark repair of pyrimidine dimers, base-excision repair, mismatch repair, and an SOS response.
▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Mutations: Repair*

Repair of Pyrimidine Dimers

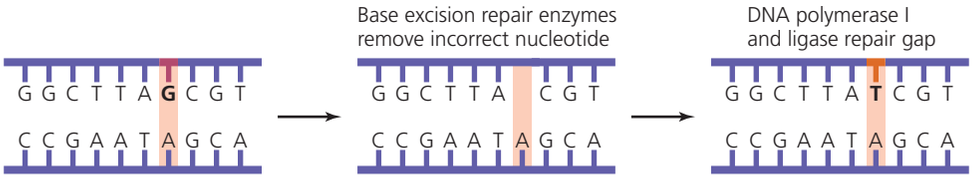
The most common type of mutation is a pyrimidine dimer caused by ultraviolet light. Many cells contain DNA *photolyase,* an enzyme that is activated by visible light to break pyrimidine dimers, reversing the mutation and restoring the original DNA sequence **(Figure 7.28a)**. This so-called **light repair** mechanism is advantageous for the cell, but it presents a difficulty to scientists



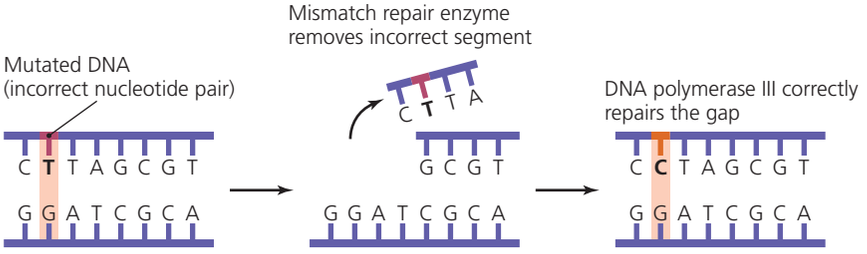
(a) Light repair



(b) Dark repair



(c) Base-excision repair



(d) Mismatch repair

◀ **Figure 7.28 DNA repair mechanisms. (a)** Light repair of pyrimidine dimers. A light-activated enzyme breaks pyrimidine-to-pyrimidine bonds. **(b)** Dark repair of dimers. After the repair enzyme removes the entire damaged section from one strand of DNA, DNA polymerase I and DNA ligase repair the breach. This mechanism is called dark repair because it does not require light; in fact, it operates in either light or darkness. **(c)** Base-excision repair, in which enzymes remove a segment with an incorrect base and DNA polymerase I fills the gap. **(d)** Mismatch repair, which involves total excision of an incorrect nucleotide.

studying UV-induced mutations—they must keep such strains in the dark, or the mutants revert to their normal form.

So-called **dark repair** involves a different repair enzyme—one that doesn't require light. Dark repair enzymes cut the damaged section of DNA from the molecule, creating a gap that is repaired by DNA polymerase I and DNA ligase (Figure 7.28b). Though called dark repair, this mechanism operates either in light or in the dark.

Base-Excision Repair

Rarely, DNA polymerase III incorporates an incorrect nucleotide during DNA replication. If the proofreading function of the polymerase does not repair the error, cells may use another enzyme system in a process called **base-excision repair.** This enzyme system excises the erroneous base, and then DNA polymerase I fills in the gap (Figure 7.28c).

Mismatch Repair

A similar repair mechanism is called **mismatch repair.** Mismatch repair enzymes scan newly synthesized DNA looking for mismatched bases, which they remove and replace (Figure 7.28d). How does the mismatch repair system determine which strand to repair? If it chose randomly, 50% of the time it would choose the wrong strand and introduce mutations. Mismatch repair enzymes, however, do not choose randomly. They distinguish a new DNA strand from an old strand because old strands are methylated. Recognition of an error as far as 1000 bp away from an unmethylated portion of DNA triggers the mismatch repair

enzymes. Once a new DNA strand is methylated, mismatch repair enzymes cannot correct any errors that remain.

SOS Response

Sometimes damage to DNA is so extreme that regular repair mechanisms cannot cope with the damage. In such cases, bacteria resort to what geneticists call an **SOS response** involving a variety of processes, such as the production of novel DNA polymerases (IV and V) capable of copying less-than-perfect DNA. These polymerases replicate DNA with little regard to the base sequence of the template strand. Of course, this introduces many new and potentially fatal mutations, but presumably SOS repair allows a few offspring of these bacteria to survive.

Identifying Mutants, Mutagens, and Carcinogens

Learning Outcomes

7.22 Contrast the positive and negative selection techniques for isolating mutants.

7.23 Describe the Ames test and discuss its use in discovering carcinogens.

If a cell does not successfully repair a mutation, it and its descendants are called **mutants.** In contrast, cells normally found in nature (in the wild) are called **wild-type** cells. Scientists distinguish mutants from wild-type cells by observing or testing for altered phenotypes. Because mutations are rare and nonfatal mutations are even rarer, mutants can easily be "lost in the crowd." Therefore, researchers have developed methods to recognize mutants amidst their wild-type neighbors.

Positive Selection

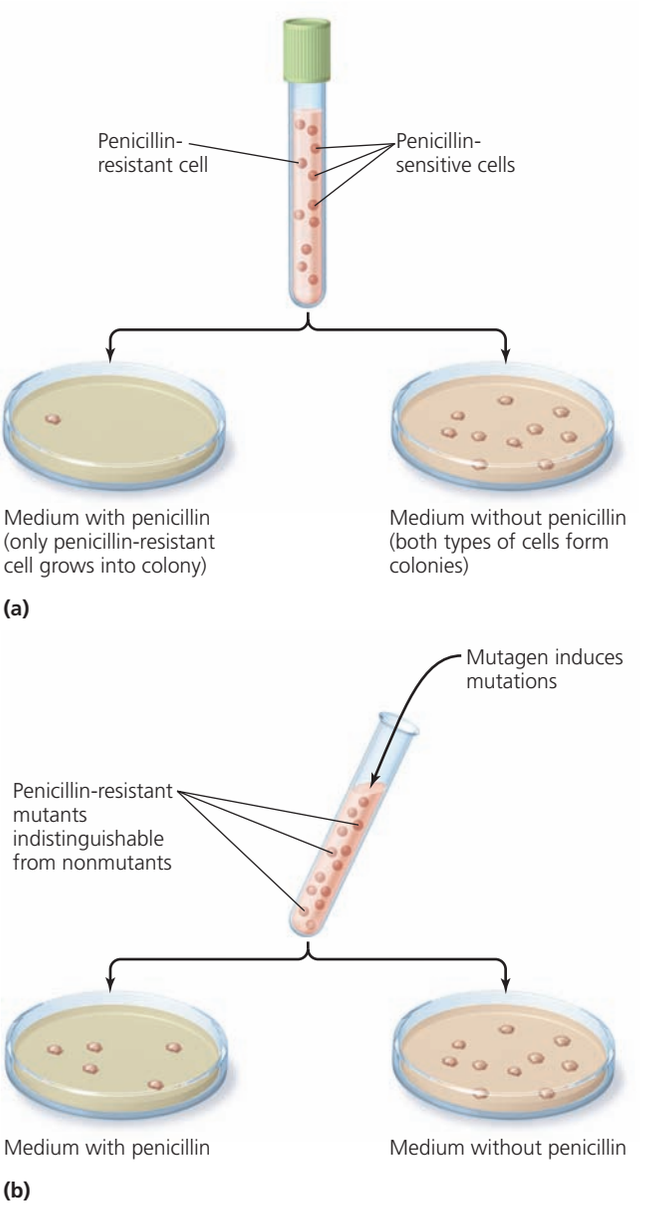
Positive selection involves selecting a mutant by eliminating wild-type phenotypes. Assume, for example, that researchers want to isolate penicillin-resistant bacterial mutants from a liquid culture. To do so, they spread the liquid medium, which contains mostly penicillin-sensitive cells but also the few penicillin-resistant mutants, onto medium that includes penicillin. Only the penicillin-resistant mutants multiply on this medium and produce visible colonies **(Figure 7.29a)**.

When a mutagenic agent is added to a liquid culture, it increases the number of mutants **(Figure 7.29b)**. While the researchers are isolating mutants, they can also determine the rate of mutation by comparing the number of mutant colonies formed after use of the mutagen with the number formed before treatment. The rate of mutation can be calculated as follows.

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c}\text{number of colonies}\\ \text{seen with use of mutagen}\end{array} - \begin{array}{c}\text{number of colonies}\\ \text{seen without use of mutagen}\end{array}}{\text{number of colonies seen without the use of mutagen}} \times 100\%$$

Negative (Indirect) Selection

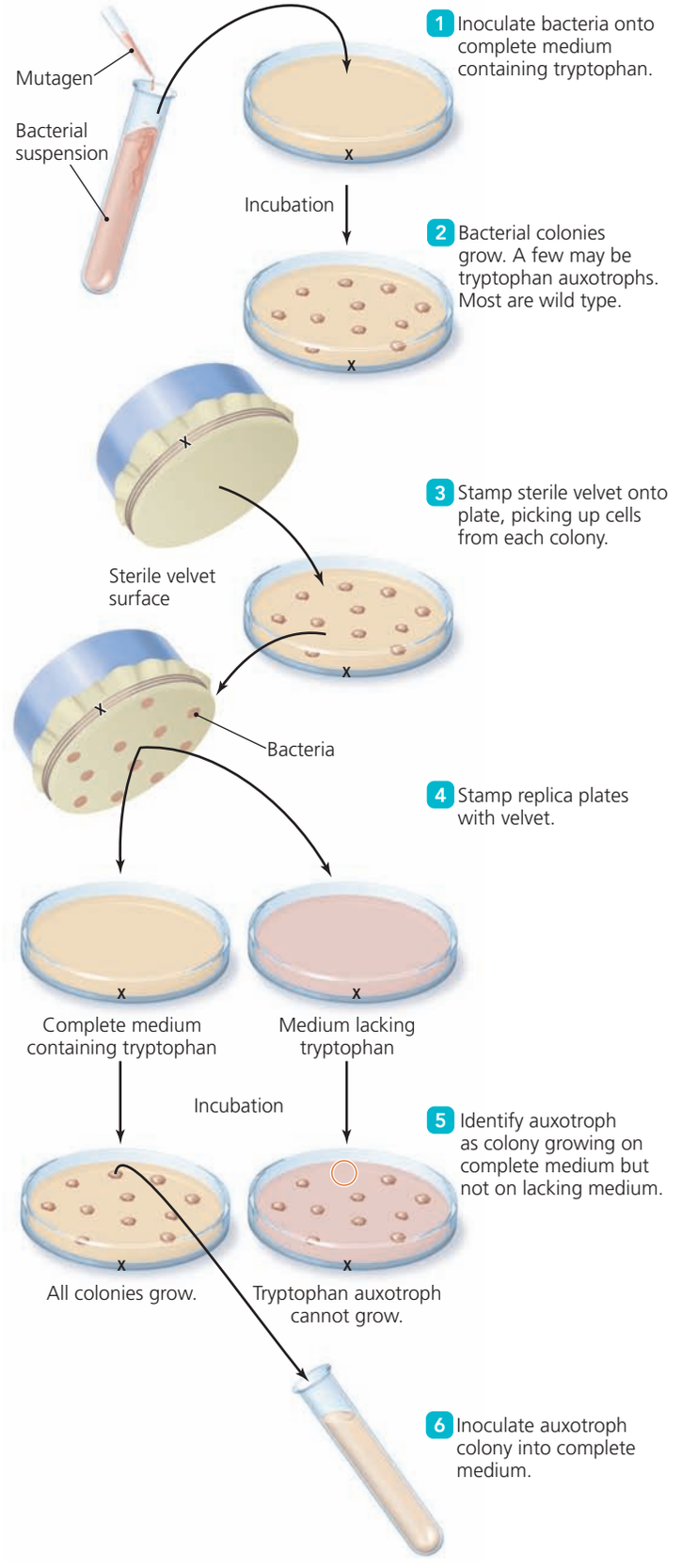
An organism with nutritional requirements that differ from those of its wild-type phenotype is known as an *auxotroph* (awk´sō-trōf).[8] For example, a mutant bacterium that has lost the ability to synthesize tryptophan is auxotrophic for this amino acid—it must acquire tryptophan from the environment. Obviously, if a researcher attempts to grow tryptophan auxotrophs on media lacking tryptophan, the bacteria will be unable to synthesize all its proteins and will die. Therefore, to isolate such auxotrophs, we must use a technique called **negative (indirect)**



▲ **Figure 7.29** **Positive selection of mutants.** Only mutants that are resistant to penicillin can survive on the plate containing the antibiotic. **(a)** Normally a population includes very few mutants. **(b)** Introduction of a mutagen increases the number of mutants and thus the number of colonies that grow in the presence of penicillin. *What is the rate of mutation induced by the mutagen in (b)?*

Figure 7.29 $\frac{5-1}{1} \times 100\% = 400\%$

[8] From Greek *auxein*, meaning "to increase," and *trophe*, meaning "nutrition."



▲ **Figure 7.30 The use of negative (indirect) selection to isolate a tryptophan auxotroph.** The plates are marked (in this case, with an X) so that their orientation can be maintained throughout the procedure. Researchers may have to inoculate hundreds of such plates to identify a single mutant.

selection. The process by which a researcher uses negative selection to culture a tryptophan auxotroph is as follows **(Figure 7.30)**.

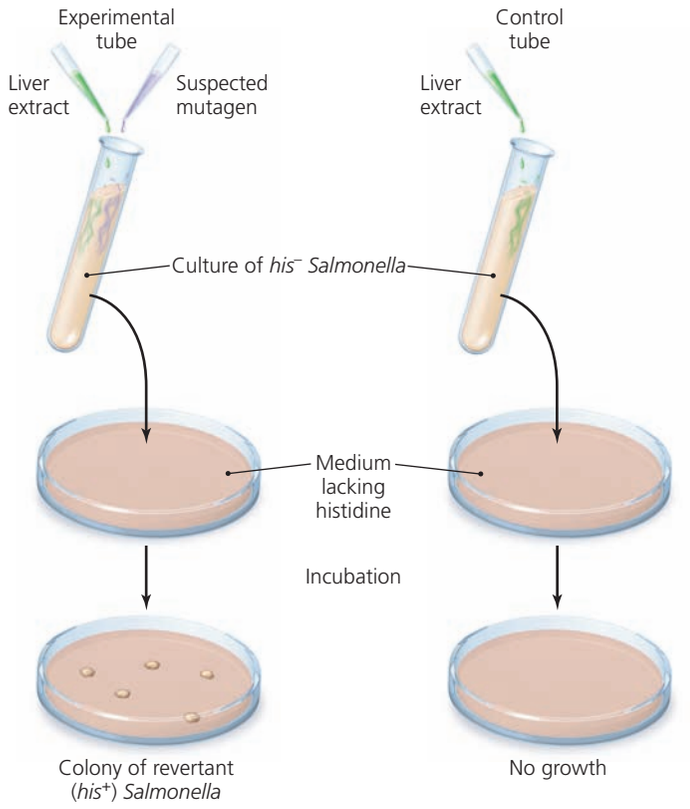
1. The researcher inoculates a sample of a bacterial suspension containing potential mutants onto a plate containing complete media (including tryptophan). The sample is diluted such that the plate receives only about 100 cells.
2. Both auxotrophs and wild-type cells reproduce and form colonies on the plate, but the colonies are indistinguishable.
3. The researcher picks up cells from all the colonies on the plate with a sterile velvet pad by pressing the pad onto the plate.
4. The researcher inoculates two new plates—one containing tryptophan, the other lacking tryptophan—by pressing the pad onto each of them. This technique is called *replica plating*.
5. After the plates have incubated for several hours, the researcher compares the two replica plates. Tryptophan auxotrophs growing on medium containing tryptophan are revealed by the absence of a corresponding colony on the plate lacking tryptophan.
6. The researcher takes cells of the auxotroph colony from the replica plate and inoculates them into a complete medium. The auxotroph is now isolated.

The Ames Test for Identifying Mutagens

Numerous chemicals in food, the workplace, and the environment in general have been suspected of being **carcinogenic** (kar´si-nō-jen´ik) mutagens; that is, of causing mutations that result in cancer. Because animal tests to prove that they are indeed carcinogenic are expensive and time consuming, researchers have used a fast and inexpensive method for screening mutagens called an **Ames test,** which is named for its inventor, Bruce Ames (1928–).

An Ames test uses mutant *Salmonella* (sal´mŏ -nel´ă) bacteria possessing a point mutation that prevents the synthesis of the amino acid histidine; in other words, they are histidine auxotrophs, indicated by the abbreviation *his*$^-$. To perform the test, an investigator mixes *his*$^-$ mutants with liver extract and the substance suspected to be a mutagen **(Figure 7.31)**. The presence of liver extract simulates the conditions in the body under which liver enzymes can turn harmless chemicals into mutagens. The researcher then spreads the treated bacteria on a solid medium lacking histidine. If the suspected substance does in fact cause mutations, some of the mutations will likely reverse the effect of the original mutation, producing revertant cells (designated *his*$^+$) that have regained the ability to synthesize histidine and thus can survive on a medium lacking histidine. Thus, the presence of colonies during an Ames test reveals that the suspected substance is mutagenic in *Salmonella.*

Given that DNA in all cells is very similar, the ability of a chemical to cause mutations in *Salmonella* indicates that it is likely to cause mutations in humans as well. Some mutations cause cancers, so a mutagenic chemical may also be carcinogenic. To prove that the substance can in fact cause cancer, scientists must test it in laboratory animals, a process that usually is warranted only if a chemical is mutagenic in *Salmonella.* Ames



▲ Figure 7.31 The Ames test. A mixture containing *his*⁻ *Salmonella* mutants, rat liver extract, and the suspected mutagen is inoculated onto a plate lacking histidine. Colonies will form only if a mutagen reverses the *his*⁻ mutation, producing revertant *his*⁺ organisms with the ability to synthesize histidine. A control tube that lacks the suspected mutagen demonstrates that reversion did not occur in the absence of the mutagen. *What is the purpose of liver extract in an Ames test?*

Figure 7.31 *Liver extract simulates conditions in the body by providing enzymes that may degrade harmless substances into mutagens.*

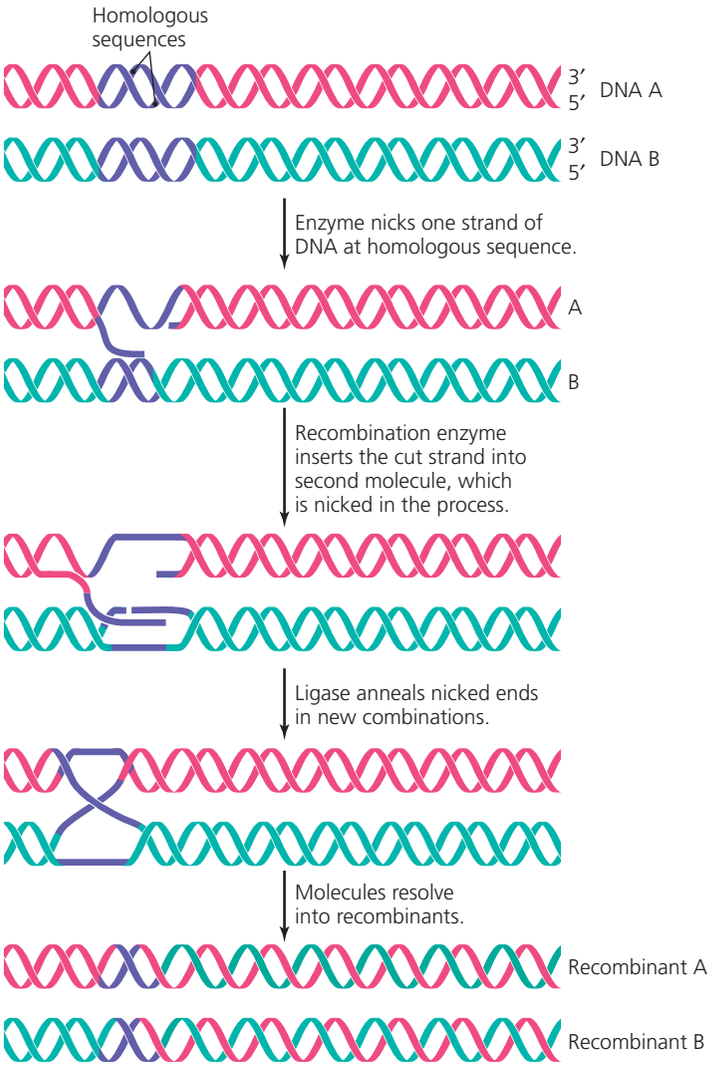
testing reduces the cost and time required to assay chemicals for carcinogenicity in animals.

Genetic Recombination and Transfer

Learning Outcome

7.24 Define *genetic recombination.*

Genetic recombination refers to the exchange of nucleotide sequences between two DNA molecules and often involves segments that are composed of identical or nearly identical nucleotide sequences called *homologous sequences.* Scientists have discovered a number of molecular mechanisms for genetic recombination, one of which is illustrated simply in **Figure 7.32**. In this type of recombination, enzymes nick one strand of DNA at the homologous sequence, and another enzyme inserts the nicked strand into the second DNA molecule. Ligase then reconnects the strands in new combinations, and the molecules resolve themselves into novel molecules. Such DNA molecules that



▲ Figure 7.32 Genetic recombination. Simplified depiction of one type of recombination between two DNA molecules. After an enzyme nicks one strand (here, strand A), a recombination enzyme rearranges the strands, and ligase seals the gaps to form recombinant molecules. *What is the normal function of ligase (during DNA replication)?*

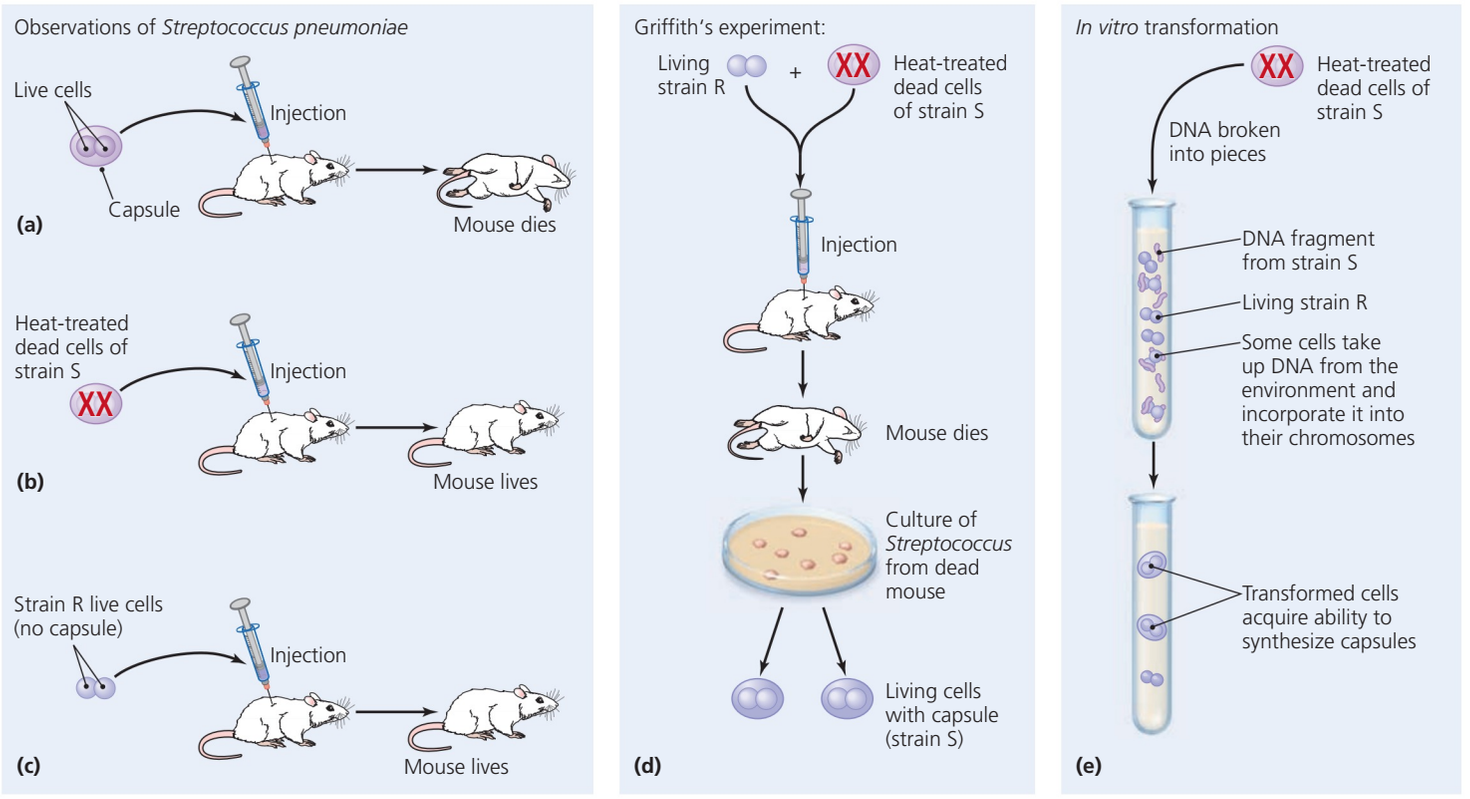
Figure 7.32 *Ligase functions to anneal Okazaki fragments during replication of the lagging strand.*

contain new arrangements of nucleotide sequences (and the cells that contain them) are called recombinants. (Chapter 12 discusses crossing over and the formation of gametes in more detail).

Horizontal Gene Transfer Among Prokaryotes

Learning Outcomes

7.25 Contrast vertical gene transfer with horizontal gene transfer.
7.26 Explain the roles of an F factor, F⁺ cells, and Hfr cells in bacterial conjugation.
7.27 Describe the structures and actions of simple and complex transposons.
7.28 Compare and contrast crossing over, transformation, transduction, and conjugation.



▲ **Figure 7.33 Transformation of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.** Griffith's observations revealed that **(a)** encapsulated strain S killed mice, **(b)** heating renders strain S harmless to mice, and **(c)** unencapsulated strain R did not harm mice. In Griffith's experiment **(d),** a mouse injected concurrently with killed strain S and live strain R (each harmless) died and was found to contain numerous living, encapsulated bacteria. **(e)** A demonstration that transformation of R cells to S cells also occurs *in vitro*.

As we have discussed, both prokaryotes and eukaryotes replicate their genomes and supply copies to their descendants. This is known as *vertical gene transfer*—the passing of genes to the next generation. In addition, many prokaryotes acquire genes from other microbes of the same generation—a process termed **horizontal (lateral) gene transfer.** In horizontal gene transfer, a **donor cell** contributes part of its genome to a **recipient cell,** which may be of a different species from the donor. Typically, the recipient cell inserts part of the donor's DNA into its own chromosome, becoming a recombinant cell. Cellular enzymes then usually degrade remaining unincorporated DNA. Horizontal gene transfer is a rare event, typically occurring in less than 1% of a population of prokaryotes. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Horizontal Gene Transfer: Overview***

Here we consider the three types of horizontal gene transfer: *transformation, transduction,* and *bacterial conjugation.*

Transformation

In **transformation,** a recipient cell takes up DNA from the environment, such as DNA that might be released by dead organisms. Frederick Griffith (1879–1941) discovered this process in 1928 while studying pneumonia caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs nū-mō´nē-ī). Griffith worked with two strains of *Streptococcus.* Cells of the first strain have protective capsules that enable them to escape a body's defensive white blood cells; thus, these encapsulated cells cause deadly septicemia when injected into mice **(Figure 7.33a)**. They are called *strain S* because they form *smooth* colonies on an agar surface. The application of heat kills such encapsulated cells and renders them harmless when injected into mice **(Figure 7.33b)**. In contrast, cells of the second strain (called *strain R* because they form *rough* colonies) are mutants that cannot make capsules. The unencapsulated cells of strain R are much less virulent, only infrequently causing disease **(Figure 7.33c)** because a mouse's defensive white blood cells quickly devour them.

Griffith discovered that when he injected both heat-killed strain S and living strain R into a mouse, the mouse died even though neither of the injected strains was harmful when administered alone **(Figure 7.33d)**. Further, and most significantly, Griffith isolated numerous living cells from the dead mouse, cells that had capsules. He realized that harmless, unencapsulated strain R bacteria had been transformed into deadly, encapsulated strain S bacteria. Subsequent investigations showed that transformation, by which cells take up DNA, also occurs *in vitro*[9] **(Figure 7.33e)**.

The fact that the living encapsulated cells retrieved at the end of this experiment outnumbered the dead encapsulated cells injected at the beginning indicated that strain R cells were not merely appropriating capsules released from dead strain S cells. Instead, strain R cells had acquired the capability of producing their own capsules by assimilating the capsule-coding genes of

[9]Latin, meaning within "glassware."

strain S cells. In 1944, Oswald Avery (1877–1955), Colin MacLeod (1909–1972), and Maclyn McCarty (1911–2005) extracted various chemicals from S cells and determined that the transforming agent was DNA. This discovery was one of the conclusive pieces of evidence that DNA is the genetic material of cells.

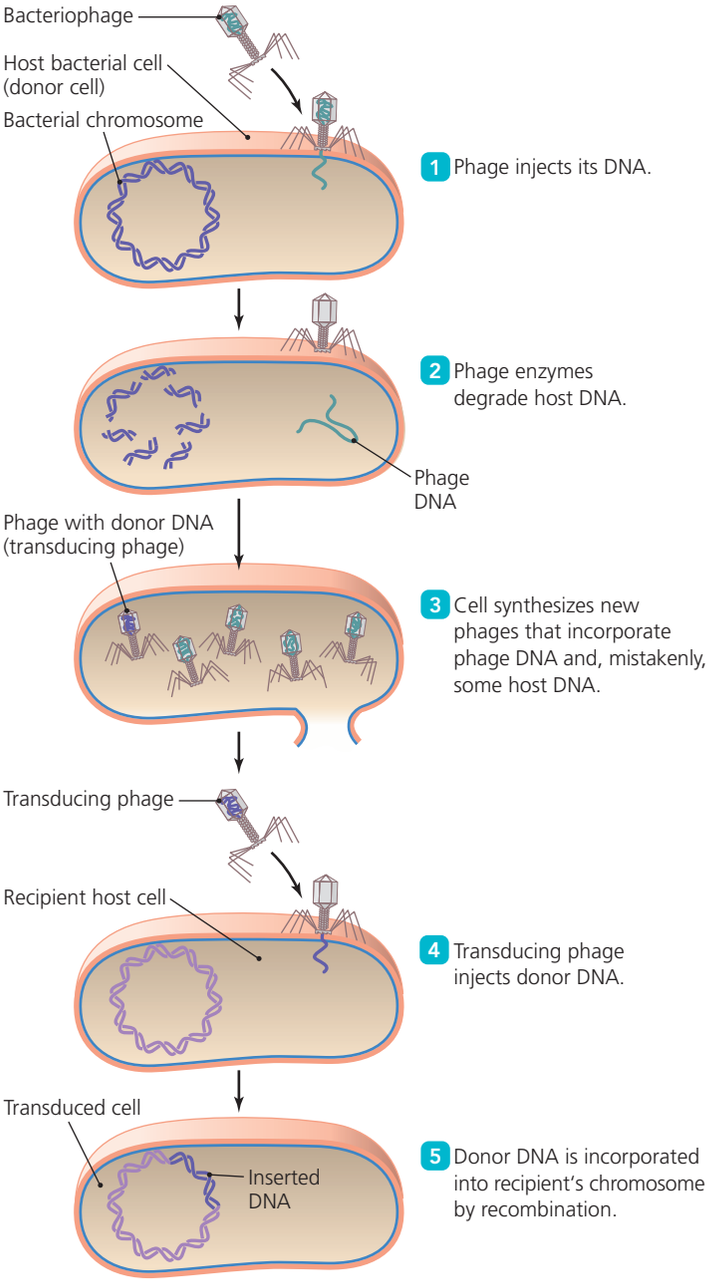
Cells that have the ability to take up DNA from their environment are said to be **competent.** Competence results from alterations in the cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane that allow DNA to enter the cell. Scientists have observed natural competence in of bacteria, including pathogens in *Streptococcus, Haemophilus* (hē-mof´i-lŭs), *Neisseria* (nī-se´rē-ă), *Bacillus* (ba-sil´ŭs), *Staphylococcus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs), and *Pseudomonas*. Scientists can also generate competence artificially in *Escherichia* and other bacteria by manipulating the temperature and salt content of the medium. Because competent cells take up DNA from any donor genome, competence and transformation are important tools in recombinant DNA technology, commonly called *genetic engineering*. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Transformation***

Transduction

A second method of horizontal gene transfer, called **transduction,** involves the transfer of DNA from one cell to another via a replicating virus. Transduction can occur either between prokaryotic cells or between eukaryotic cells; it is limited only by the availability of a virus capable of infecting both donor and recipient cells. Here we will consider transduction in bacteria.

A virus that infects bacteria is called a **bacteriophage** or simply a **phage** (fāj).[10] The process by which a phage participates in transduction is depicted in **Figure 7.34**. To replicate, a bacteriophage attaches to a bacterial host cell and injects its genome into the cell 1. Phage enzymes (enzymes coded by the phage's genome even though translated by bacterial ribosomes) degrade the cell's DNA 2. The phage genome now controls the cell's functions and directs it to synthesize new phage DNA and phage proteins. Normally, phage proteins assemble around phage DNA to form new phage particles, but some phages mistakenly incorporate remaining fragments of bacterial DNA that are about the same length as phage DNA. This forms **transducing phages** 3. Eventually the host cell lyses, releasing daughter and transducing phages. Transduction occurs when a transducing phage injects donor DNA into a new host cell (the recipient) 4. The recipient host cell incorporates the donated DNA into its chromosome by recombination 5.

In *generalized transduction,* the transducing phage carries a random DNA segment from a donor host cell's chromosome or plasmids to a recipient host cell. Generalized transduction is not limited to a particular DNA sequence. In *specialized transduction,* only certain host sequences are transferred (along with phage DNA). In nature, specialized transduction is important in transferring genes encoding for certain bacterial toxins—including those responsible for diphtheria, scarlet fever, and the bloody, life-threatening diarrhea caused by *E. coli* O157:H7—into cells that would otherwise be harmless. (Chapter 8 discusses the use of specialized transduction to intentionally insert genes into cells). ▶**ANIMATIONS:** ***Transduction: Generalized Transduction, Specialized Transduction***

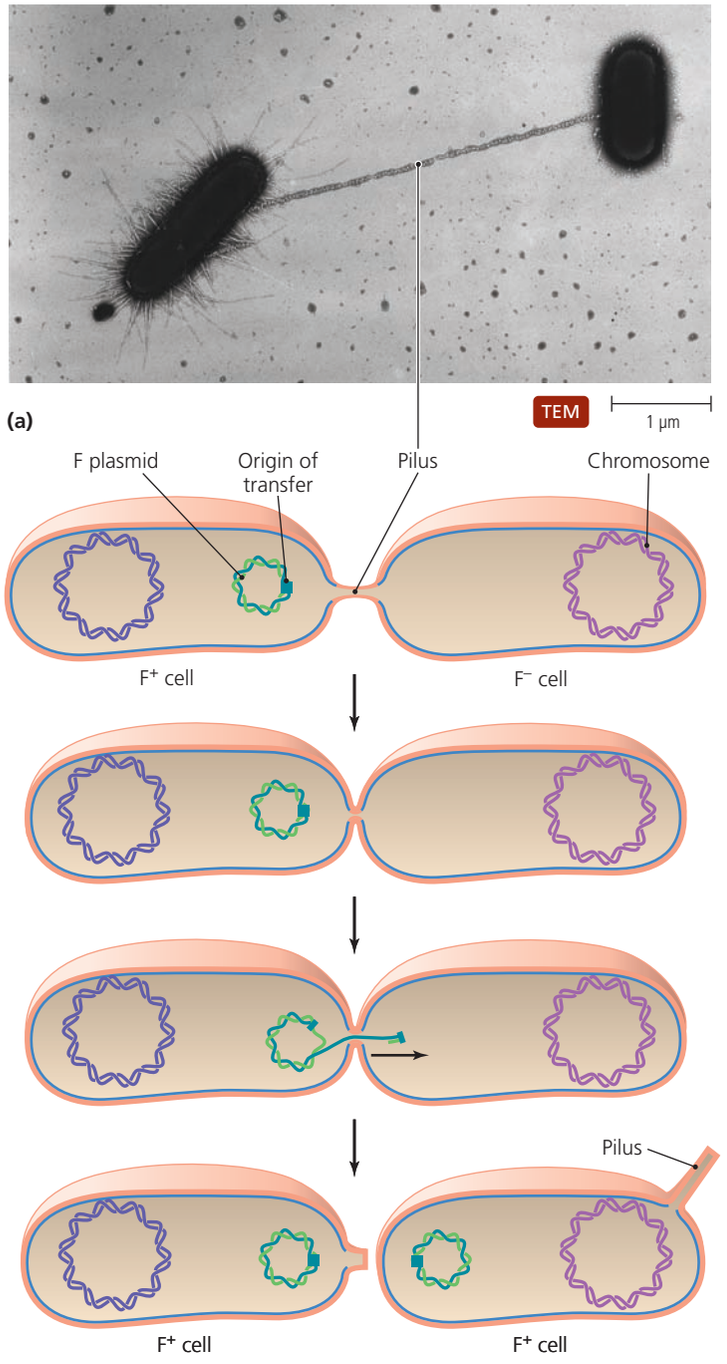


▲ **Figure 7.34 Transduction.** After a virus called a bacteriophage (phage) attaches to a host bacterial cell, it injects its genome into the cell and directs the cell to synthesize new phages. During assembly of new phages, some host DNA may be incorporated, forming transducing phages, which subsequently carry donor DNA to a recipient host cell.

Bacterial Conjugation

A third method of genetic transfer in bacteria is **conjugation.**[11] Unlike the typical donor cells in transformation and transduction, a donor cell in conjugation remains alive. Further, conjugation requires physical contact between donor and recipient cells. Scientists discovered conjugation between cells of *E. coli,*

[10] From Greek *phagein*, meaning "to eat."
[11] From Latin *conjugatus*, meaning "yoked together."



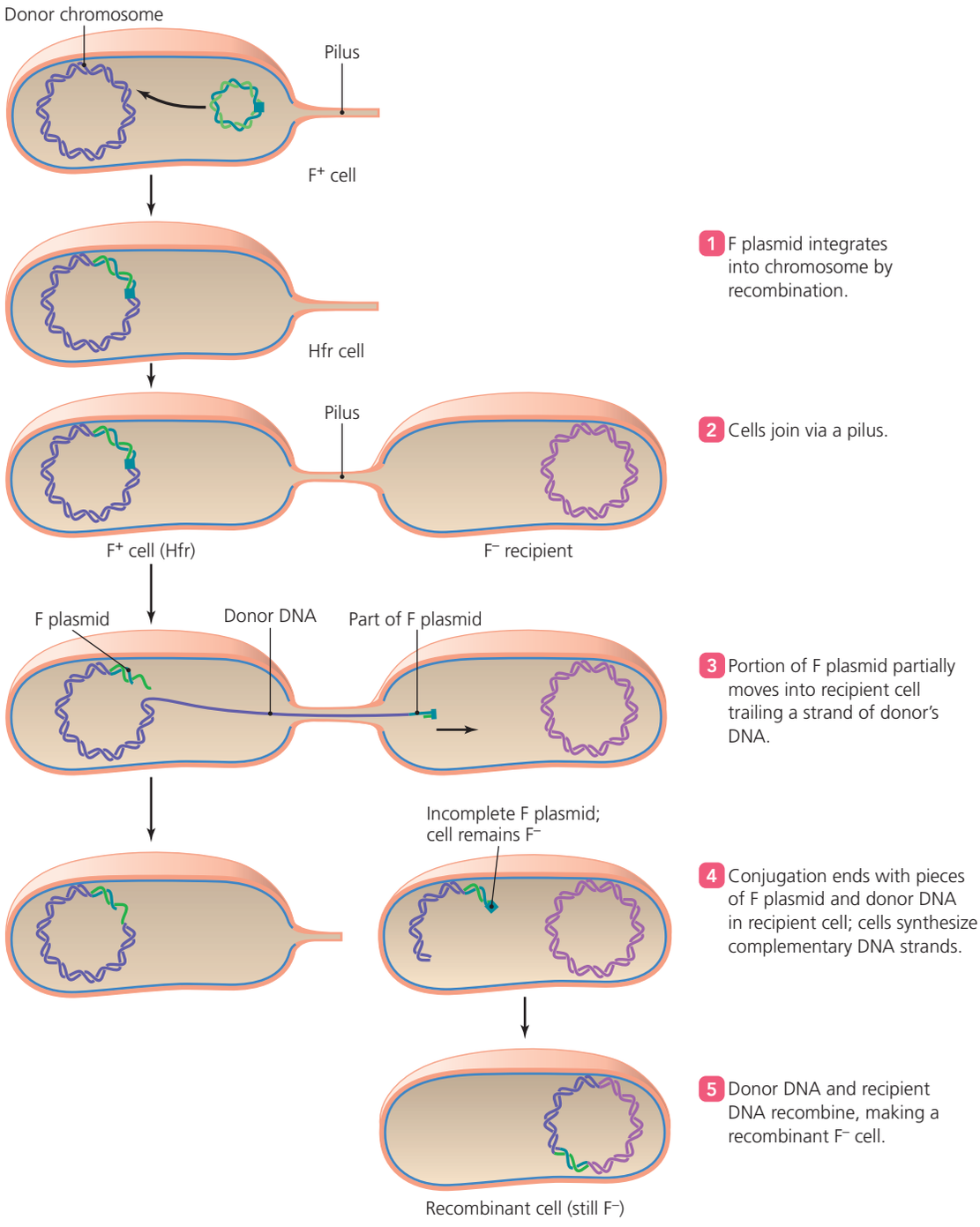
◀ **Figure 7.35 Bacterial conjugation.** A conjugation pilus connecting two cells mediates the transfer of DNA between the cells. **(a)** Two *E. coli* cells are connected by a pilus. **(b)** Artist's rendition of the process.

and it is best understood in this species. Thus, the remainder of our discussion will focus on conjugation in this bacterium. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Conjugation: Overview***

Conjugation is mediated by **pili** (pīlī; singular: *pilus*), also called *conjugation* or *sex pili*,[12] which are thin, proteinaceous tubes extending from the surface of a cell. The gene coding for conjugation pili is located on a plasmid called an **F (fertility) plasmid.** (Recall that a plasmid is a small, circular, extrachromosomal molecule of DNA; see Figure 7.2b.) Cells that contain an F plasmid are called *F^+ cells* ("ef plus"), and they serve as donors during conjugation. Recipient cells are *F^-*; that is, they lack an F plasmid and therefore have no pili. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Conjugation: F Factor***

The process of bacterial conjugation is illustrated in **Figure 7.35**. First, a sex pilus connects a donor cell (F^+) to a recipient cell (F^-) 1. The pilus may draw the cells together, though DNA transfer may occur when the cells are still more than 10 μm apart 2. A single strand of the F plasmid DNA transfers to the recipient beginning with a section called the *origin of transfer* 3.

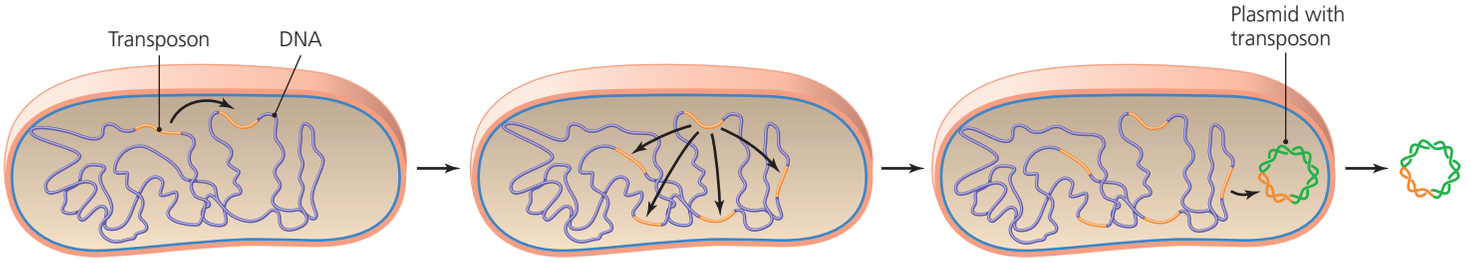
[12]Bacterial conjugation may resemble intercourse, but because no gametes are involved, it is not true sex.



▲ Figure 7.36 Conjugation involving an Hfr cell. An Hfr cell is formed when an F^+ cell integrates its F plasmid into its chromosome. Hfr cells donate a partial copy of their DNA and a portion of the F plasmid to a recipient, which is rendered a recombinant cell but remains F^-.

The F^- recipient then synthesizes a complementary strand of F plasmid DNA, becoming an F^+ cell 4. The donor cell also synthesizes a complementary plasmid DNA strand.

In some bacterial cells, an F plasmid does not remain independent in the cytosol but instead integrates at a specific DNA sequence in the cellular chromosome. Such cells, which are called **Hfr (high frequency of recombination) cells,** can conjugate with an F^- cell **(Figure 7.36)**. After the F plasmid has integrated 1 and the Hfr and F^- cells join via a sex pilus 2, DNA transfer begins at the origin of transfer of the F plasmid, carrying with it a copy of the donor's chromosome 3. In most cases, movement of the cells breaks the intercellular connection before an entire donor chromosome is transferred 4. Because the recipient receives only a portion of the F plasmid, it



(a) Jumping transposons. Transposons move from one place to another on a DNA molecule.

(b) Replicating transposons. Transposons may replicate while moving, resulting in more transposons in the cell.

(c) Transposons can move onto plasmids. Transposons moving onto plasmids can be transferred to another cell.

▲ **Figure 7.37 Transposition.** Transposons move from place to place within, among, and between chromosomes and plasmids. Plasmids can carry transposons to and from cells.

remains an F^- cell; however, it also acquires some chromosomal genes from the donor. Recombination can integrate the donor DNA into the recipient's chromosome 5. The recipient is now a recombinant cell that contains its own genes as well as some donor genes. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Conjugation: Hfr Conjugation*

Because an F plasmid integrates into chromosomes at only a few locations, the order in which genes are transferred is consistent. Scientists produced the first gene maps of bacterial chromosomes by noting the time, in minutes, required for a particular gene to transfer from donor cells to recipient cells. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Conjugation: Chromosome Mapping*

Conjugation occurs in several species of bacteria, which can be quite promiscuous; that is, conjugation can occur among bacteria of widely varying kinds and even between a bacterium and a yeast cell or between a bacterium and a plant cell. For example, the crown gall bacterium, *Agrobacterium*, transfers some of its genes into the chromosome of its host plant.

The natural transfer of genes by conjugation among diverse organisms heightens some scientists' concerns about the spread of resistance (R) plasmids among pathogens. These scientists note that antibiotic resistance developed by one pathogen can spread to other pathogens.

Table 7.6 summarizes the mechanisms of horizontal gene transfer in bacteria.

TABLE 7.6 Natural Mechanisms of Horizontal Genetic Transfer in Bacteria

Mechanism	Requirements
Transformation	Free DNA in the environment and a competent recipient
Transduction	Bacteriophage
Conjugation	Cell-to-cell contact and F plasmid, which is either in cytosol or incorporated into chromosome of donor (HFr) cell

Transposons and Transposition

Transposons[13] are segments of DNA, 700 to 40,000 bp in length, that transpose (move) themselves from one location in a DNA molecule to another location in the same or a different molecule.

American geneticist Barbara McClintock (1902–1992) discovered these "jumping genes" through a painstaking analysis of the colors of the kernels of corn. She discovered that the genes for kernel color were turned on and off by the insertion of transposons. Subsequent research has shown that transposons are found in many, if not all, prokaryotes and eukaryotes and in many viruses.

The result of the action of a transposon is termed **transposition;** in effect it is a kind of frameshift insertion (see Figure 7.24d). This "illegitimate" recombination does not need a region of homology, unlike other recombination events. Transposition occurs between plasmids and chromosomes and within and among chromosomes **(Figure 7.37)**. Further, plasmids can carry transposons from one cell to another. Fortunately, while transposons are common, transposition and the frameshift mutations it causes are relatively rare occurrences. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Transposons: Overview*

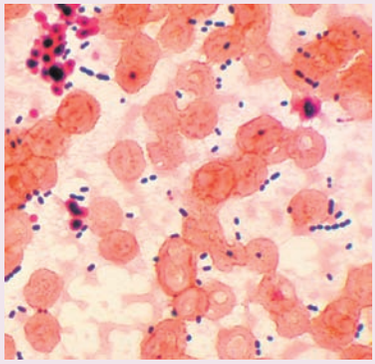
Transposons vary in their nucleotide sequences, but all of them contain palindromic sequences at each end. A *palindrome*[14] is a word, phrase, or sentence that has the same sequence of letters when read backward or forward—for example, "Madam, I'm Adam." In genetics, a palindrome is a region of DNA in which the sequence of nucleotides is identical to an inverted sequence in the complementary strand. For example, GAATTC is the palindrome of CTTAAG. Such a palindromic sequence is also known as an **inverted repeat (IR).**

The simplest transposons, called **insertion sequences (IS),** consist of no more than two inverted repeats and a gene that encodes the enzyme *transposase* **(Figure 7.38a)**. Transposase recognizes its own inverted repeat in a target site, cuts the DNA

[13]From *transposable* elements.
[14]From Greek *palin*, meaning "again," and *dramein*, meaning "to run."

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

DEADLY HORIZONTAL GENE TRANSFER



Sarah might have been 85 years old, but her mind was still sharp; it was her body that was failing. After she broke her hip by falling in the bathroom, she had succumbed to a series of complications that ultimately required admittance to a large university-associated hospital in New York City. Treatment necessitated a urinary catheter, a feeding tube, and intensive antibiotic therapy. While hospitalized, she acquired a life-threatening urinary tract infection of multi-drug-resistant (MDR) *Enterococcus faecium.*

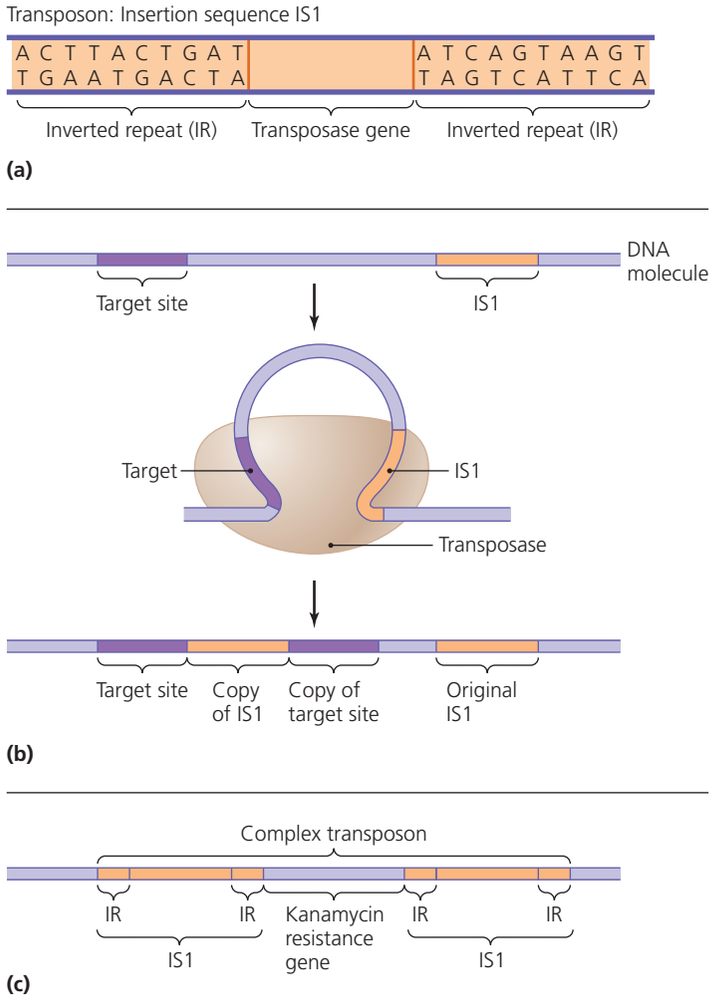
Enterococci are normal members of the microbiota of the colon, yet these Gram-positive bacteria have a propensity to acquire genes that convey resistance to antimicrobial drugs. As a result of such horizontal gene transfer, *E. faecium* has become an MDR bacterium—a strain resistant to many different kinds of antimicrobials. Drug-resistant enterococci are a leading cause of nosocomial infection.

Physicians treated Sarah with a series of antimicrobial drugs, including metronidazole, penicillin, erythromycin, ciprofloxacin, and vancomycin, but to no avail. After 90 days of hospitalization, she died.

1. Define *nosocomial infection.*
2. What is the likely source of infection?
3. List three ways by which *E. faecium* might have acquired genes for drug resistance.
4. How can hospital personnel prevent the spread of resistant *E. faecium* throughout the hospital?

at that site, and inserts the transposon (or a copy of it) into the DNA molecule at that site **(Figure 7.38b)**. Such transposition also produces a duplicate copy of the target site.

Complex transposons contain one or more genes not connected with transposition, such as genes for antibiotic resistance **(Figure 7.38c)**. *R plasmids* often contain transposons. R factors are of great clinical concern because they spread antibiotic resistance among pathogens. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Transposons: Insertion Sequences, Complex Transposons***



▲ **Figure 7.38** **Transposons. (a)** A simple transposon, or insertion sequence. Shown here is insertion sequence 1 (IS1), which consists of a gene for the enzyme transposase bounded by identical (though inverted) repeats of nucleotides. **(b)** Transposase recognizes its target site (elsewhere in the same DNA molecule, as shown here, or in a different DNA molecule; then it moves the transposon (or, as in the case of IS1, a copy of the transposon) to its new site. The target site is duplicated in the process. **(c)** A complex transposon, which contains genes not related to transposition. Shown here is Tn5, which consists of a gene for kanamycin resistance between two IS1 transposons.

CRITICAL THINKING

Suppose you are a scientist who wants to insert into your dog a gene that encodes a protein that protects dogs from heartworms. A dog's cells are not competent, so they cannot take up the gene from the environment; but you have a plasmid, a competent bacterium, and a related (though incompetent) F^+ bacterium that lives as an intracellular parasite in dogs. Describe a possible scenario by which you could use natural processes to genetically alter your dog to be heartworm resistant.

(Chapter 8 discusses how scientists have adapted the natural processes of transformation, transduction, conjugation, and transposition to manipulate the genes of organisms.)

MasteringMicrobiology®

Make the invisible visible:
Scan this QR code with your smart phone to engage with Dr. Bauman in a Video Tutor about Initiation of Translation. Then visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to test your knowledge with practice tests, animation quizzes, and clinical case studies!

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

This chapter has MicroFlix. Go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to view movie-quality animations for DNA replication.

The Structure and Replication of Genomes (pp. 194–203)

1. **Genetics** is the study of inheritance and inheritable traits. **Genes** are composed of specific sequences of nucleotides that code for polypeptides or RNA molecules. A **genome** is the sum of all the genes and linking nucleotide sequences in a cell or virus. Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells use DNA as their genetic material; some viruses use DNA, and other viruses use RNA.
2. The two strands of DNA are held together by hydrogen bonds between complementary **base pairs (bp)** of **nucleotides**. Adenine bonds with thymine, and guanine bonds with cytosine.
3. Bacterial and archaeal genomes consist of one (or, rarely, two or more) **chromosomes,** which are typically circular molecules of DNA associated with protein and RNA molecules, localized in a region of the cytosol called the **nucleoid**. Archaeal DNA organizes around globular proteins called **histones**. Prokaryotic cells may also contain one or more extrachromosomal DNA molecules called **plasmids,** which contain genes that regulate nonessential life functions, such as bacterial conjugation and resistance to antibiotics.
4. In addition to DNA, eukaryotic chromosomes contain eukaryotic histones and are arranged as **nucleosomes** (beads of DNA) that clump to form **chromatin fibers**. Eukaryotic cells may also contain extranuclear DNA in mitochondria, chloroplasts, and plasmids.
5. DNA replication is semiconservative; that is, each newly synthesized strand of DNA remains associated with one of the parental strands. After helicase unwinds and unzips the original molecule, synthesis of each of the two daughter strands—called the **leading strand** and the **lagging strand**—occurs from 5′ to 3′. Synthesis is mediated by enzymes that prime, join, and proofread the pairing of new nucleotides.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *DNA Replication: Overview, Forming the Replication Fork, Replication Proteins, Synthesis*
6. After DNA replication, **methylation** occurs. Methylation plays several roles, including the control of gene expression, the initiation of DNA replication, recognition of a cell's own DNA, and repair.

Gene Function (pp. 203–217)

1. The **genotype** of an organism is the actual set of genes in its genome, whereas its **phenotype** refers to the physical and functional traits expressed by those genes.
2. RNA has several forms. These include **RNA primer; messenger RNA (mRNA),** which carries genetic information from DNA to a ribosome; **transfer RNA (tRNA),** which carries amino acids to the ribosome; **ribosomal RNA (rRNA),** which, together with polypeptides, makes up the structure of ribosomes; and **regulatory RNA,** which interacts with DNA to control gene expression.
3. The **central dogma** of genetics states that genetic information is transferred from DNA to RNA to polypeptides, which function alone or in conjunction as proteins.
4. The transfer of genetic information begins with **transcription** of the genetic code from DNA to RNA, in which **RNA polymerase** links RNA nucleotides that are complementary to genetic sequences in DNA. Transcription begins at a region of DNA called a **promoter** (recognized by RNA polymerase) and ends with a sequence called a **terminator**. In bacteria, Rho protein may assist in termination, or termination may depend solely on the nucleotide sequence of the transcribed RNA.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Transcription: Overview, The Process*
5. Eukaryotic mRNA is synthesized as pre-messenger RNA. Before translation can occur, a spliceosome removes noncoding **introns** from pre-mRNA and splices together the **exons,** which are the coding sections.
6. In **translation,** the sequence of genetic information carried by mRNA is used by ribosomes to construct polypeptides with specific amino acid sequences.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Translation: Overview, Genetic Code, The Process*
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Initiation of Translation*

7. The genetic code consists of triplets of mRNA nucleotides, called **codons**. These bind with complementary **anticodons** on transfer RNAs (tRNAs), which are molecules that carry specific amino acids. Ribosomal RNA (rRNA) catalyzes the bonding of one amino acid to another to form a polypeptide. A sequence of nucleotides thus codes for a sequence of amino acids.

8. A ribosome contains three tRNA binding sites: an **A site** (associated with incoming amino acids), a **P site** (associated with elongation of the polypeptide), and an **E site** from which tRNA exits the ribosome.

9. Prokaryotes measure their cellular density by a process called **quorum sensing** in which cells secrete quorum-sensing molecules that neighboring cells detect.

10. An **operon** consists of a series of prokaryotic genes, a promoter, and in some cases an **operator** sequence, all controlled by one regulatory gene. The operon model explains gene regulation in prokaryotes.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Operons: Overview*

11. **Inducible operons** are normally "turned off" and are activated when the repressor no longer binds to the operator site, whereas **repressible operons** are normally "on" and are deactivated when the repressor binds to the operator site.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Operons: Induction, Repression*

12. Cells and some viruses use short **microRNAs (miRNAs)** in conjunction with proteins to form RNA silencing complexes (RISC) that attach to mRNA sequences to inhibit polypeptide translation.

13. Genetic expression can also be controlled with **riboswitches** or with **small interfering RNA (siRNA)** associated with protein in RISC.

Mutations of Genes (pp. 217–224)

1. A **mutation** is a change in the nucleotide base sequence of a genome. **Point mutations** involve a change in a single nucleotide base pair and include substitutions and two types of **frameshift mutations:** insertions and deletions.

2. **Gross mutations** include major changes to the DNA sequence, such as inversions, duplications, transpositions, and large deletions or insertions.

3. Mutations can be categorized by their effects as **silent, missense,** or **nonsense mutations**. Most mutations are spontaneous.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Mutations: Types*

4. Physical or chemical agents called **mutagens** can increase the normal rate of mutation. Physical mutagens include ionizing radiation, such as X rays and gamma rays, and nonionizing ultraviolet light. Ultraviolet light causes adjacent pyrimidine bases to bond to one another to form **pyrimidine dimers**. Mutagenic chemicals include **nucleotide analogs,** chemicals that are structurally similar to nucleotides and can result in mismatched base pairing, and chemicals that insert or delete nucleotide base pairs, producing frameshift mutations.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Mutagens*

5. Cells repair damaged DNA via **light repair** and **dark repair** of pyrimidine dimers, **base-excision repair,** and **mismatch repair**. When damage is so extensive that these mechanisms are overwhelmed, bacterial cells may resort to an **SOS response**.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Mutations: Repair*

6. Researchers have developed methods to distinguish **mutants,** which carry mutations, from normal **wild-type** cells. These methods include **positive selection, negative (indirect) selection,** and the **Ames test,** which is used to identify mutagens, which may be potential **carcinogens**.

Genetic Recombination and Transfer (pp. 224–230)

1. Organisms acquire new genes through **genetic recombination,** which is the exchange of segments of DNA. Crossing over occurs during gamete formation, part of sexual reproduction in eukaryotes.

2. Vertical gene transfer is the transmission of genes from parents to offspring. In **horizontal (lateral) gene transfer,** DNA from a **donor cell** is transmitted to a **recipient cell**. A **recombinant cell** results from genetic recombination between donated and recipient DNA. Transformation, transduction, and bacterial conjugation are types of horizontal gene transfer.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Horizontal Gene Transfer: Overview*

3. In **transformation,** a **competent** recipient prokaryote takes up DNA from its environment. Competence is found naturally or can be created artificially in some cells.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Transformation*

4. In **transduction,** a virus such as a **bacteriophage,** or **phage,** carries DNA from a donor cell to a recipient cell. Donor DNA is accidentally incorporated in such **transducing phages**.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Transduction: Generalized Transduction, Specialized Transduction*

5. In **conjugation,** an F^+ bacterium—that is, one containing an **F (fertility) plasmid**—forms a **pilus** (conjugation pilus) that attaches to an F^- recipient bacterium. Plasmid genes are transferred to the recipient, which becomes F^+ as a result.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Conjugation: Overview, F Factor, Hfr Conjugation, Chromosome Mapping*

6. **Hfr (high frequency of recombination) cells** result when an F plasmid integrates into a prokaryotic chromosome. Hfr cells form conjugation pili and transfer cellular genes more frequently than normal F^+ cells do.

7. **Transposons** are DNA segments that code for the enzyme transposase and have palindromic sequences known as **inverted repeats (IR)** at each end. Transposons move among locations in chromosomes in eukaryotes and prokaryotes—a process called **transposition**. The simplest transposons, known as **insertion sequences (IS),** consist only of inverted repeats and transposase. **Complex transposons** contain other genes as well.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Transposons: Overview, Insertion Sequences, Complex Transposons*

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer Questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is most likely the number of base pairs in a bacterial chromosome?
   a. 4,000,000 c. 400
   b. 4000 d. 40

2. Which of the following is a true statement concerning prokaryotic chromosomes?
   a. They typically have two or three origins of replication.
   b. They contain single-stranded DNA.
   c. They are located in the cytosol.
   d. They are associated in linear pairs.

3. A plasmid is _____.
   a. a molecule of RNA found in bacterial cells
   b. distinguished from a chromosome by being circular
   c. a structure in bacterial cells formed from plasma membrane
   d. extrachromosomal DNA

4. Which of the following forms ionic bonds with eukaryotic DNA and stabilizes it?
   a. chromatin c. histone
   b. bacteriocin d. nucleoid

5. Nucleotides used in the replication of DNA _____.
   a. carry energy
   b. are found in four forms, each with a deoxyribose sugar, a phosphate, and a base
   c. are present in cells as triphosphate nucleotides
   d. all of the above

6. Which of the following molecules functions as a "proofreader" for a newly replicated strand of DNA?
   a. DNA polymerase III c. helicase
   b. primase d. ligase

7. The addition of —CH_3 to a cytosine nucleotide after DNA replication is called _____.
   a. methylation c. transcription
   b. restriction d. transversion

8. In translation, the site through which tRNA molecules leave a ribosome is called the _____.
   a. A site c. P site
   b. X site d. E site

9. The Ames test _____.
   a. uses auxotrophs and liver extract to reveal mutagens
   b. is time intensive and costly
   c. involves the isolation of a mutant by eliminating wild-type phenotypes with specific media
   d. proves that suspected chemicals are carcinogenic

10. Which of the following methods of DNA repair involves enzymes that recognize and correct nucleotide errors in unmethylated strands of DNA?
    a. light repair of T dimers c. mismatch repair
    b. dark repair of P dimers d. SOS response

11. Which of the following is *not* a mechanism of natural genetic transfer and recombination?
    a. transduction c. transcription
    b. transformation d. conjugation

12. Cells that have the ability to take up DNA from their environment are said to be _____.
    a. Hfr cells c. genomic
    b. transposing d. competent

13. Which of the following statements is true?
    a. Conjugation requires a sex pilus extending from the surface of a cell.
    b. Conjugation involves a C factor.
    c. Conjugation is an artificial genetic engineering technique.
    d. Conjugation involves DNA that has been released into the environment.

14. Which of the following are called "jumping genes"?
    a. Hfr cells
    b. transducing phages
    c. palindromic sequences
    d. transposons

15. Although two cells are totally unrelated, one cell receives DNA from the other cell and incorporates this new DNA into its chromosome. This process is _____.
    a. crossing over of DNA from the two cells
    b. vertical gene transfer
    c. horizontal gene transfer
    d. transposition

16. Transcription produces _____.
    a. DNA molecules c. polypeptides
    b. RNA molecules d. palindromes

17. A nucleotide is composed of _____.
    a. a five-carbon sugar
    b. phosphate
    c. a nitrogenous base
    d. all of the above

18. In DNA, adenine forms _____ hydrogen bonds with _____.
    a. three/uracil c. two/thymine
    b. two/uracil d. three/thymine

19. A sequence of nucleotides formed during replication of the lagging DNA strand is _____.
    a. a palindrome c. a template strand
    b. an Okazaki fragment d. an operon

20. Which of the following is *not* part of an operon?
    a. operator c. origin
    b. promoter d. gene

21. Repressible operons are important in regulating prokaryotic _____.
    a. DNA replication c. rRNA processing
    b. RNA transcription d. sugar catabolism

22. Which of the following is part of each molecule of mRNA?
    a. palindrome c. anticodon
    b. codon d. base pair

23. Ligase plays a major role in _____.
    a. lagging strand replication
    b. mRNA processing in eukaryotes
    c. polypeptide synthesis by ribosomes
    d. RNA transcription

24. Before mutations can affect a population permanently, they must be _____.
    a. lasting
    b. inheritable
    c. beneficial
    d. all of the above

25. The *trp* operon is repressible. This means it is usually _____ and is directly controlled by _____.
    a. active/an inducer
    b. active/a repressor
    c. inactive/an inducer
    d. inactive/a repressor

Fill in the Blanks

1. The three steps in RNA transcription are _____, _____, and _____.
2. A triplet of mRNA nucleotides that specifies a particular amino acid is called a _____.
3. Three effects of point mutations are _____, _____, and _____.
4. Insertions and deletions in the genetic code are also called _____ mutations.
5. An operon consists of _____, _____, and _____ and is associated with a regulatory gene.
6. In general, _____ operons are inactive until the substrate of their genes' polypeptides is present.
7. A daughter DNA molecule is composed of one original strand and one new strand because DNA replication is _____.
8. A gene for antibiotic resistance can move horizontally among bacterial cells by _____, _____, and _____.
9. _____ are nucleotide sequences containing palindromes and genes for proteins that cut DNA strands.
10. _____ _____ is a recombination event that occurs during gamete formation in eukaryotes.
11. _____ RNA carries amino acids.
12. _____ RNA and _____ RNA are antisense; that is, they are complementary to another nucleic acid molecule.

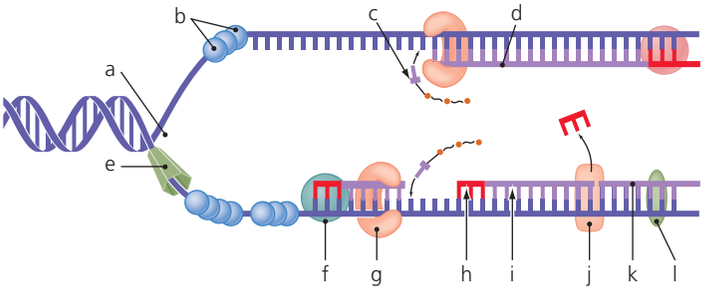
Short Answer

1. How does the genotype of a bacterium determine its phenotype? Use the terms *gene*, *mRNA*, *ribosome*, and *polypeptide* in your answer.
2. List several ways in which eukaryotic messenger RNA differs from prokaryotic mRNA.
3. Compare and contrast introns and exons.
4. Polypeptide synthesis requires large amounts of energy. How do cells regulate synthesis to conserve energy? Describe one specific example.
5. Describe the operon model of gene regulation.
6. Compare and contrast the structure and components of DNA and RNA in prokaryotes.
7. Besides the fact that it synthesizes RNA, how does RNA polymerase differ in function from DNA polymerase?
8. Describe the formation and function of mRNA, rRNA, and tRNA in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
9. Describe how DNA is packaged in both prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
10. Explain the central dogma of genetics.
11. Compare and contrast the processes of transformation, transduction, and conjugation.
12. Fill in the following table:

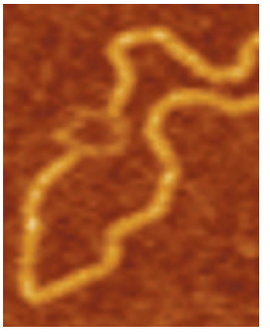
Process	Purpose	Beginning Point	Ending Point
Replication			Origin or end of molecule
Transcription		Promoter	
Translation	Synthesis of polypeptides		

Visualize It!

1. On the figure below, label DNA polymerase I, DNA polymerase III, helicase, lagging strand, leading strand, ligase, nucleotide (triphosphate), Okazaki fragment, primase, replication fork, RNA primer, and stabilizing proteins.

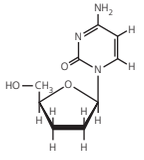


2. Label the portion of this phage DNA molecule that likely has a higher ratio of G-C base pairs.

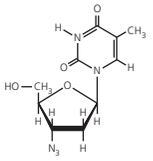


Critical Thinking

1. If molecules of mRNA have the following nucleotide base sequences, what will be the sequence of amino acids in polypeptides synthesized by eukaryotic ribosomes?
   a. AUGGGGAUACGCUACCCC
   b. CCGUACAUGCUAAUCCCU
   c. CCGAUGUAACCUCGAUCC
   d. AUGCGGUCAGCCCCGUGA
2. A scientist uses a molecule of DNA composed of nucleotides containing radioactive deoxyribose as a template for replication and transcription in a nonradioactive environment. What percentage of DNA strands will be radioactive after three DNA replication cycles? What percentage of RNA molecules will be radioactive?
3. Explain why an insertion of three nucleotides is less likely to result in a deleterious effect than an insertion of a single nucleotide.
4. How could scientists use siRNA to turn off a cancer-inducing gene?
5. The drugs ddC and AZT are used to treat AIDS.



ddC (2′,3′-dideoxycytidine)



AZT (3′-azido-2′,3′-dideoxythymidine)

   Based on their chemical structures, what is their mode of action?
6. Suppose that *E. coli* sustains a mutation in its gene for the *lac* operon repressor such that the repressor is ineffective. What effect would this have on the bacterium's ability to catabolize lactose? Would the mutant strain have an advantage over wild-type cells? Explain your answer.
7. A student claims that nucleotide analogs can be carcinogenic. Another student in the study group insists that nucleotide analogs are used to treat cancer. Explain why both students are correct.
8. Why is DNA polymerase so named?
9. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae,* the causative agent of diphtheria, secretes a toxin that enzymatically inactivates all molecules of elongation factor in a eukaryotic cell. What immediate and long-term effects does this have on cellular metabolism?
10. How can knowledge of nucleotide analogs be useful to a cancer researcher?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes point mutations. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Change in DNA sequence
Deleted
Deletion mutation
Effect on amino acid sequence
Frameshift
Incorrect amino acid substituted
Inserted
Insertion mutation
Missense mutation
No change in amino acid sequence
Nonsense mutation
One or few nucleotide base pairs
Premature termination of polypeptide
Silent mutation
Substituted
Substitution mutation

8 Recombinant DNA Technology

Recombinant DNA technology affects our lives in many ways. Genetically altered corn, soybeans, or canola are **ingredients** in over 60% of processed foods in the United States. Scientists now have the ability to take a gene from a bacterium and insert it into a corn plant, enabling the plant to produce a **toxin** that kills insects but is **harmless** to corn or humans. Geneticists have inserted daffodil and bacterial genes into rice to boost the grain's nutritional content, and they can insert growth hormone genes into salmon to make the fish grow faster. The possibilities are limitless, intriguing, and frequently controversial, as questions about safety and **environmental** impact arise. Could crops genetically altered to resist pests spread resistance genes to weeds? Could genetically modified foods introduce new allergens? What are the effects of these technologies on wildlife and human populations?

Despite the concerns, **recombinant** DNA technology holds much promise not only for the food industry and agriculture but for medicine as well. This chapter explores the fascinating field of recombinant DNA technology and the roles of microorganisms within it.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Vitamin A deficiency is responsible for millions of cases of blindness and thousands of deaths worldwide. Genetically modified rice plants can provide vitamin A in rice grains, saving millions of lives. However, such genetic modification is not without controversy.

This chapter examines how genetic researchers have adopted the natural enzymes and processes of DNA recombination, replication, transcription, transformation, transduction, and conjugation to manipulate genes for industrial, medical, and agricultural purposes. Together these techniques are termed *recombinant DNA technology*, commonly called "genetic engineering." We end the chapter with a discussion of the ethics and safety of these techniques.

The Role of Recombinant DNA Technology in Biotechnology

Learning Outcomes

8.1 Define *biotechnology* and *recombinant DNA technology.*
8.2 List several examples of useful products made possible by biotechnology.
8.3 Identify the three main goals of recombinant DNA technology.

Biotechnology—the use of microorganisms to make practical products—is not a new field. For thousands of years, humans have used microbes to make products such as bread, cheese, soy sauce, and alcohol. During the 20th century, scientists industrialized the natural metabolic reactions of bacteria to make large quantities of acetone, butanol, and antibiotics. More recently, scientists have adapted microorganisms for use in the manufacture of paper, textiles, and vitamins; to assist in cleaning up industrial wastes, oil spills, and radioactive isotopes; and to aid in mining copper, gold, uranium, and other metals. (Chapter 25 discusses some industrial and environmental applications of biotechnology.)

Until recently, microbiologists were limited to working with naturally occurring organisms and their mutants for achieving such industrial and medical purposes. Since the 1990s, however, scientists have become increasingly adept at intentionally modifying the genomes of organisms, by natural processes, for a variety of practical purposes. This is **recombinant DNA technology,** and it has expanded the possibilities of biotechnology in ways that seemed like science fiction only a few years ago. Today, scientists isolate specific genes from almost any so-called donor organism, such as a human, a plant, or a bacterium, and insert it into the genome of almost any kind of recipient organism.

Scientists who manipulate genomes have three main goals:

- *To eliminate undesirable phenotypic traits in humans, animals, plants, and microbes.* For example, scientists have inserted genes from microbes into plants to make them resistant to pests or freezing, and since 1999 they have cured some children born with a fatal and previously untreatable genetic disorder called severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID).
- *To combine beneficial traits of two or more organisms to create valuable new organisms,* such as laboratory animals that mimic human susceptibility to HIV.
- *To create organisms that synthesize products that humans need,* such as paint solvents, vaccines, antibiotics, enzymes, and hormones. For instance, gene therapists have successfully inserted the human gene for insulin into bacteria so that the bacteria synthesize human insulin, which is cheaper and safer than insulin derived from animals.

Recombinant DNA technology is not a single procedure or technique but rather a collection of tools and techniques scientists use to manipulate the genomes of organisms. In general, they isolate a gene from a cell, manipulate it *in vitro,*[1] and insert it into another organism. **Figure 8.1** illustrates the basic processes involved in recombinant DNA technology.

The Tools of Recombinant DNA Technology

Scientists use a variety of physical agents, naturally occurring enzymes, and synthetic molecules to manipulate genes and genomes. These tools of recombinant DNA technology include *mutagens, reverse transcriptase, synthetic nucleic acids, restriction enzymes,* and *vectors.* Scientists use these molecular tools to create *gene libraries,* which are a time-saving tool for genetic researchers.

Mutagens

Learning Outcome

8.4 Describe how gene researchers use mutagens.

Mutagens are physical and chemical agents that produce mutations (changes in nucleotide sequence of a genome). Scientists deliberately use mutagens to create changes in microbes' genomes so that the microbes' phenotypes are changed. They then select for and culture cells with characteristics considered beneficial for a given biotechnological application. For example, scientists exposed the fungus *Penicillium* (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm) to mutagenic agents and then selected strains that produce greater amounts of penicillin. In this manner, they developed a strain of *Penicillium* that secretes over 25 times as much penicillin as did the strain originally isolated by Alexander Fleming (1881–1955). Today, with recombinant DNA techniques (discussed shortly), researchers can isolate mutated genes rather than dealing with entire organisms.

The Use of Reverse Transcriptase to Synthesize cDNA

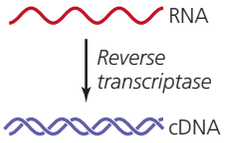
Learning Outcome

8.5 Explain the function and use of reverse transcriptase in synthesizing cDNA.

Transcription involves the transmission of genetic information from molecules of DNA to molecules of RNA (see Figure 7.9). The discovery of retroviruses, which have genomes consisting of RNA instead of DNA, led to the discovery of an unusual enzyme—**reverse transcriptase.** Reverse transcriptase creates a

[1] Latin, meaning "within glassware;" that is, in a laboratory.

flow of genetic information in the opposite direction from the flow in conventional transcription: it uses an RNA template to transcribe a molecule of DNA, which is called **complementary DNA (cDNA)** because it is complementary to an RNA template.



Because hundreds to millions of copies of mRNA exist for every active gene, it is frequently easier to produce a desired gene by first isolating the mRNA molecules that code for a particular polypeptide and then use reverse transcription to synthesize a cDNA gene from the mRNA template. Further, eukaryotic DNA is not normally expressible by prokaryotic cells, which cannot remove the introns (noncoding sequences) present in eukaryotic pre-mRNA. However, since eukaryotic mRNA has already been processed to remove introns, cDNA produced from it lacks noncoding sequences. Therefore, scientists can successfully insert cDNA into prokaryotic cells, making it possible for the prokaryotes to produce eukaryotic proteins such as human growth factor, insulin, or blood-clotting factors.

Synthetic Nucleic Acids

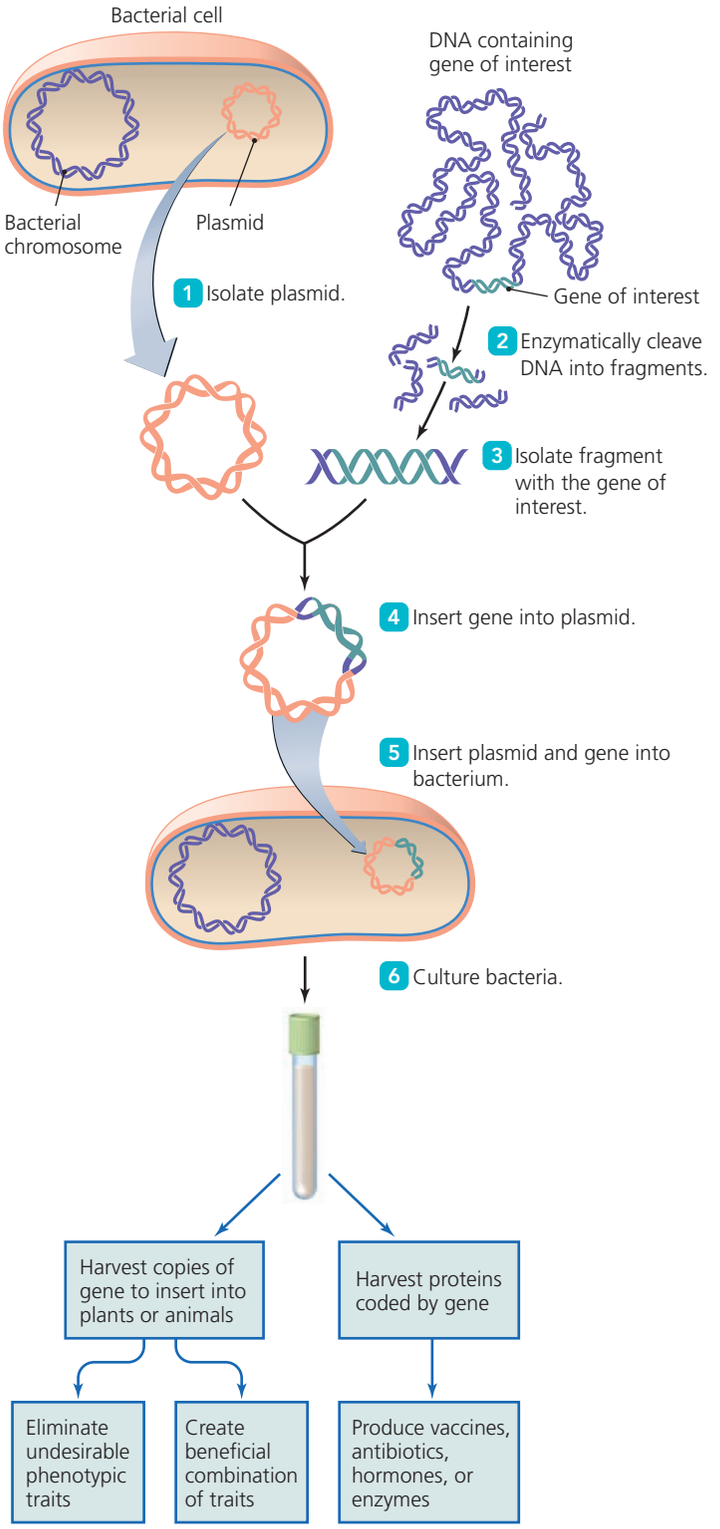
Learning Outcomes

8.6 Explain how gene researchers synthesize nucleic acids.
8.7 Describe three uses of synthetic nucleic acids.

The enzymes of DNA replication and RNA transcription function not only *in vivo*[2] but also function *in vitro*, making it possible for scientists to produce molecules of DNA and RNA in cell-free solutions for genetic research. In fact, scientists have so mechanized the processes of nucleic acid replication and transcription that they can produce molecules of DNA and RNA with any nucleotide sequence; all they must do is enter the desired sequence into a synthesis machine's four-letter keyboard. A computer controls the actual synthesis, using a supply of nucleotides and other required reagents. Nucleic acid synthesis machines synthesize molecules over 100 nucleotides long in a few hours, and scientists can join two or more of these molecules end to end with ligase to create even longer synthetic molecules.

Researchers have used synthetic nucleic acids in many ways, including the following:

- **Elucidating the Genetic Code.** Using synthetic molecules of varying nucleotide sequences and observing the amino acids in the resulting polypeptides, scientists elucidated the genetic code. For example, synthetic DNA consisting only of adenine nucleotides yields a polypeptide consisting solely of the amino acid phenylalanine. Therefore, the mRNA codon UUU (transcribed from the DNA triplet AAA) must code for phenylalanine (see Figure 7.12).



▲ **Figure 8.1** **Overview of recombinant DNA technology.**

- **Creating Genes for Specific Proteins.** Once they know the genetic code and the amino acid sequence of a protein, scientists can create a gene for that protein. In this manner, scientists synthesized a gene for human insulin. Of course, such a synthetic gene likely consists of a nucleotide

[2]Latin, meaning "in life" (i.e., within a cell).

sequence slightly different from that of its cellular counterpart because of the redundancy in the genetic code (see Figure 7.12).

- **Synthesizing DNA and RNA Probes to Locate Specific Sequences of Nucleotides. Probes** are nucleic acid molecules with a specific nucleotide sequence that have been labeled with radioactive or fluorescent chemicals so that their locations can be detected. The use of probes to locate specific sequences of nucleotides is based on the fact that any given nucleotide sequence will preferentially bond to its complementary sequence. Thus, a probe constructed with the nucleotide sequence ATGCT will bond to a DNA strand with the sequence TACGA, and the probe's label allows researchers to then detect the complementary site. Probes are essential tools for locating specific nucleic acid sequences such as genes for particular polypeptides.
- **Synthesizing Antisense Nucleic Acid Molecules.** Antisense nucleic acid molecules have nucleotide sequences that bind to and interfere with genes and mRNA molecules. Scientists are researching the use of antisense molecules to control genetic diseases.

CRITICAL THINKING

Even though some students correctly synthesize a fluorescent cDNA probe complementary to mRNA for a particular yeast protein, they find that the probe does not attach to any portion of the yeast's genome. Explain why the students' probe does not work.

Restriction Enzymes

Learning Outcomes

8.8 Explain the source and names of restriction enzymes.
8.9 Describe the importance and action of restriction enzymes.

An important development in recombinant DNA technology was the discovery of **restriction enzymes** in bacterial cells. Such enzymes cut DNA molecules and are restricted in their action—they cut DNA only at locations called *restriction sites.* Restriction sites are specific nucleotide sequences, which are usually *palindromes*[3]—they have the same sequence when read forward or backward. In nature, bacterial cells use restriction enzymes to protect themselves from phages by cutting phage DNA into nonfunctional pieces. The bacterial cells protect their own DNA by methylation[4] of some of their nucleotides, hiding the DNA from the restriction enzymes (see Chapter 7).

Researchers name restriction enzymes with three letters (denoting the genus and specific epithet of the source bacterium) and Roman numerals (to indicate the order in which enzymes from the same bacterium were discovered). In some cases, a fourth letter denotes the strain of the bacterium. Thus, *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) strain R produces the restriction enzymes *Eco*RI and *Eco*RII. *Hin*dIII is the third restriction enzyme isolated from *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flū-en´zī) strain Rd.

Scientists have discovered several hundred restriction enzymes and categorize them in two groups on the basis of types of cuts they make. The first type, as exemplified by *Eco*RI, makes staggered cuts of the two strands of DNA, producing fragments that terminate in mortise-like *sticky ends.* Each sticky end is composed of up to four nucleotides that form hydrogen bonds with its complementary sticky end **(Figure 8.2a)**. Scientists can use these bits of single-stranded DNA to combine pieces of DNA from different organisms into a single recombinant DNA molecule (the enzyme ligase unites the sugar-phosphate backbones of the pieces) **(Figure 8.2b)**. Other restriction enzymes, such as *Hin*dII and *Sma*I (from *Serratia marcescens,* ser-rat´ē-a mar-ses´enz), cut both strands of DNA at the same point, resulting in *blunt ends* **(Figure 8.2c)**. It is more difficult to make recombinant DNA from blunt-ended fragments because they are not sticky, but they have a potential advantage—blunt ends are nonspecific. This enables any two blunt-ended fragments, even those produced by different restriction enzymes, to be combined easily **(Figure 8.2d)**. In contrast, sticky-ended fragments bind only to complementary, sticky-ended fragments produced by the same restriction enzyme. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Action of Restriction Enzymes***

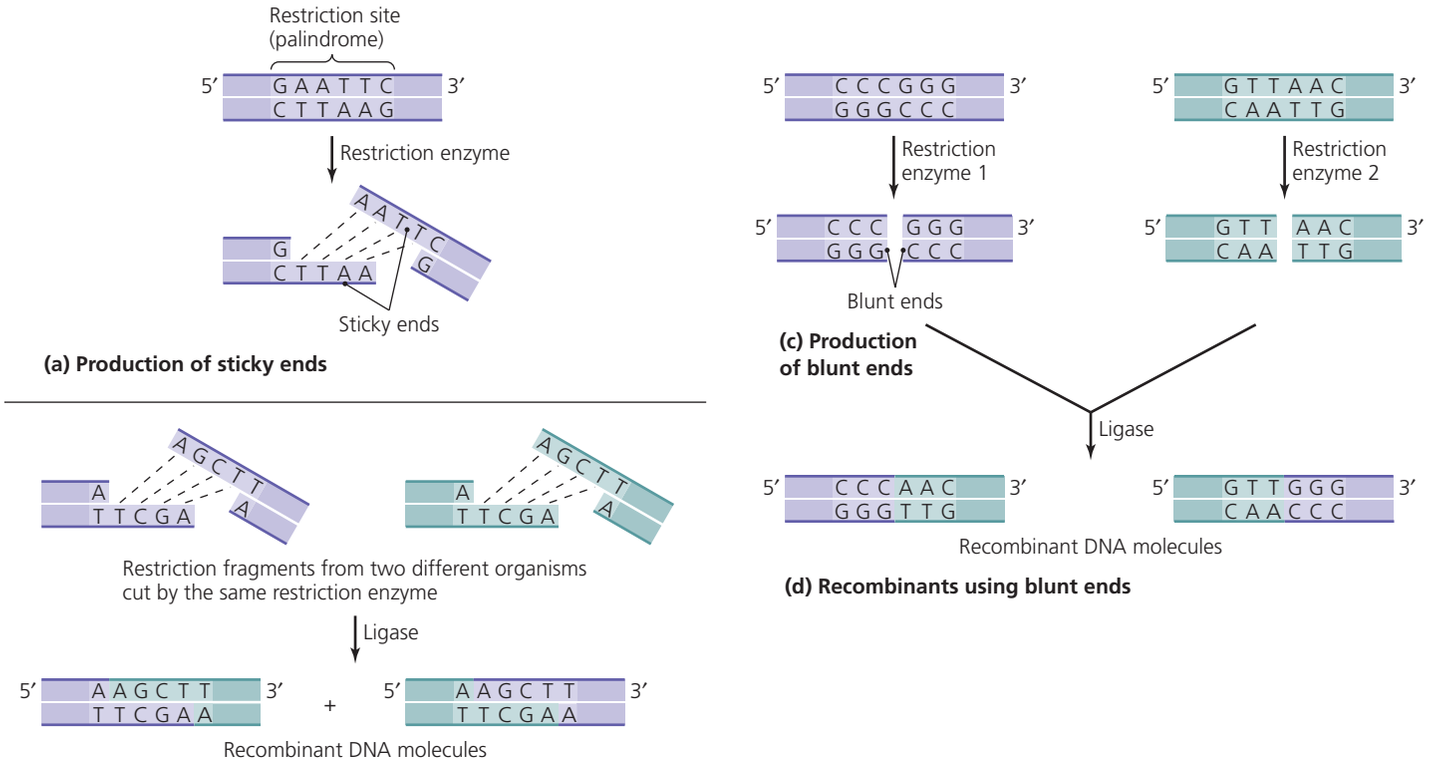
Table 8.1 identifies several restriction enzymes and their target DNA sequences. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Recombinant DNA Technology***

TABLE 8.1 Properties of Some Restriction Enzymes

Enzyme	Bacterial Source	Restriction Site[a]
*Bam*HI	*Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* H	G↓GATCC CCTAG↑G
*Eco*RI	*Escherichia coli* RY13	G↓AATTC CTTAA↑G
*Eco*RII	*E. coli* R245	CC↓GG GG↑CC
*Hin*dII	*Haemophilus influenzae* Rd	GTPy↓PuAC CAPu↑PyTG
*Hin*dIII	*H. influenzae* Rd	A↓AGCTT TTCGA↑A
*Hin*fI	*H. influenzae* Rf	G↓ANTC CTNA↑G
*Hpa*I	*H. parainfluenzae*	GTT↓AAC CAA↑TTG
*Msp*I	*Moraxella* sp.	CC↓GG GG↑CC
*Sma*I	*Serratia marcescens*	CCC↓GGG GGG↑CCC

[a]Arrows indicate sites of cleavage; Py = pyrimidine [either thymine (T) or cytosine (C)], Pu = purine [either adenine (A) or guanine (G)], N = any nucleotide (A, T, G, or C).

[3]From Greek *palin,* meaning "again," and *dramein,* meaning "to run."
[4]Adding a methyl group, —CH_3, to a chemical.



▲ Figure 8.2 Actions of restriction enzymes. Restriction enzymes recognize and cut both strands of a DNA molecule at a specific (usually palindromic) restriction site. **(a)** Certain restriction enzymes produce staggered cuts with complementary "sticky ends." **(b)** When two complementary sticky-ended fragments come from different organisms, their bonding (catalyzed by ligase) produces recombinant DNA. **(c)** Other restriction enzymes produce blunt-ended fragments. **(d)** A lack of specificity enables blunt-ended fragments produced by different restriction enzymes to be combined easily into recombinant DNA. *Which restriction enzymes act at the restriction sites shown?*

Figure 8.2 *(a) EcoRI, (b) HindIII, and (c) SmaI and HpaI.*

HIGHLIGHT

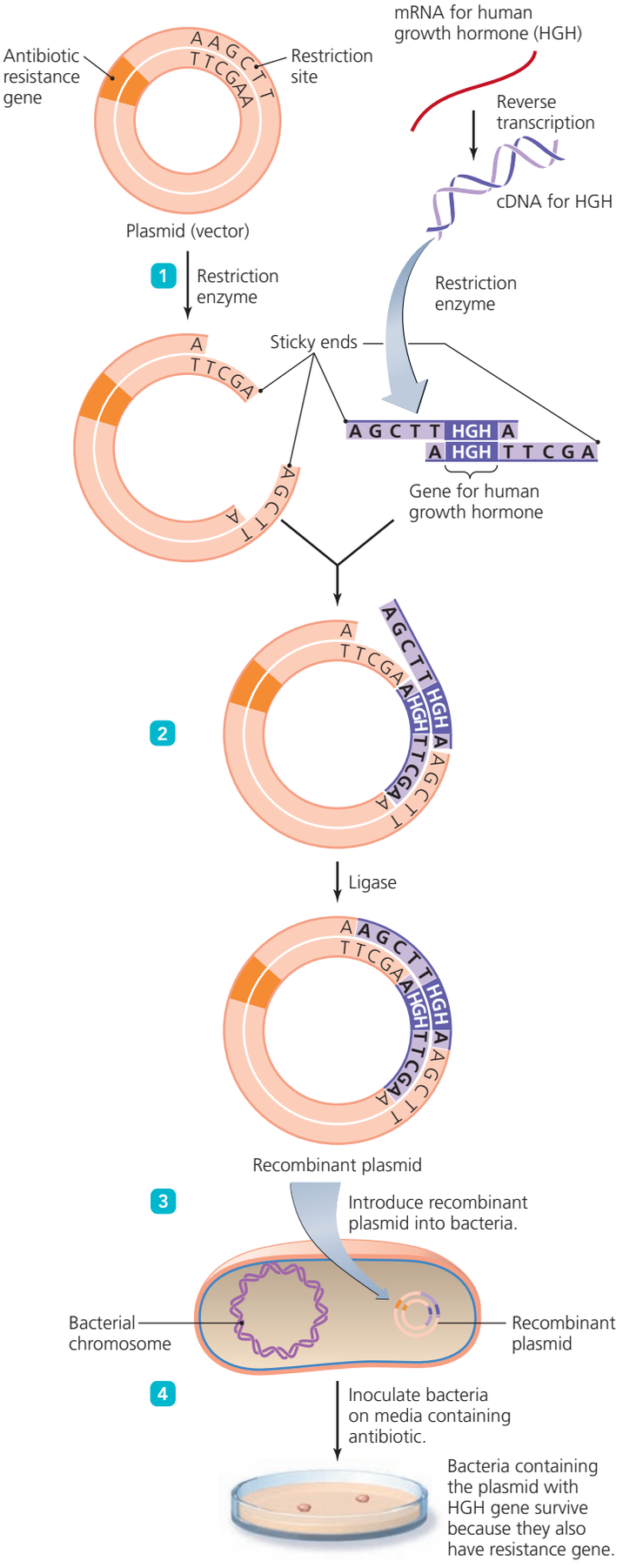
HOW DO YOU FIX A MOSQUITO?

Dengue is the most common mosquito-borne viral infection of humans in the world; 50 million cases occur every year. Twenty-five thousand people, mostly children, die with intense abdominal pain, severe internal bleeding, and circulatory collapse. Dengue is reemerging in Florida and Hawaii and in France and the Netherlands in Europe. There is no approved vaccine or specific treatment.

Dengue virus spreads through the bite of *Aedes aegypti* mosquitos that have previously bitten an infected person. Controlling mosquitoes is the way to combat dengue, but this is easier said than done. *Aedes* requires only a thin film of water about the thickness of a dime to breed, and adults often hide inside homes, especially in urban areas.

Recombinant DNA technology may provide a simple and effective way to rid a community of dengue. Scientists have introduced a sterility gene into male mosquitoes, effectively neutering them. When sterile males are released into the wild, and they breed with normal females, their offspring are sterile. This technique reduced by 80% the *Aedes* population in a test area on Grand Cayman, an island in the Caribbean, in 2010. With fewer mosquitoes to carry the dengue virus, the spread of dengue was halted in at least one town on the island.

***Aedes aegypti* mosquito.**



◀ Figure 8.3 An example of the process for producing a recombinant vector. In this case, the vector is a plasmid. *Which restriction enzyme was used in this example?*

Figure 8.3 *Hin*dIII.

Vectors

Learning Outcome

8.10 Define *vector* as the term applies to genetic manipulation.

One goal of recombinant DNA technology is to insert a useful gene into a cell so that the cell has a new phenotype—for example, the ability to synthesize a novel protein. To deliver a gene into a cell, researchers use **vectors,** which are nucleic acid molecules, such as viral genomes, transposons, and plasmids.

Genetic vectors share several useful properties:

- **Vectors Are Small Enough to Manipulate in a Laboratory.** Large DNA molecules the size of entire chromosomes are generally too fragile to serve as vectors.
- **Vectors Survive Inside Cells.** Plasmids, which are circular DNA, make good vectors because they are more stable than are linear fragments of DNA, which are typically degraded by cellular enzymes. However, some linear vectors, such as transposons and certain viruses, insert themselves rapidly into a host's chromosome before they can be degraded.
- **Vectors Contain a Recognizable Genetic Marker** so that researchers can identify the cells that have received the vector and thereby the specific gene of interest. Genetic markers can either be phenotypic markers, such as those that confer antibiotic resistance or code for enzymes that metabolize a unique nutrient, or radioactive or fluorescent labels.
- **Vectors Can Ensure Genetic Expression** by providing required genetic elements such as promoters.

An example of the process used to produce a vector containing a specific gene is depicted in **Figure 8.3**. After a given restriction enzyme cuts both the DNA molecule containing the gene of interest (in this example, the human growth hormone gene) and the vector DNA (here a plasmid containing a gene for antibiotic resistance as a marker) into fragments with sticky ends 1, ligase anneals the fragments to produce a recombinant plasmid 2. After the recombinant plasmid has been inserted into a bacterial cell 3, the bacteria are grown on a medium containing the antibotic 4; only those cells that contain the recombinant plasmid (and thus the human growth hormone gene as well) can grow on the medium.

Generally, viruses and transposons are able to carry larger genes than can plasmids. Researchers are developing vectors from adenoviruses, poxviruses, and a genetically modified form of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). HIV in particular might make an excellent vector because HIV inserts itself directly into human chromosomes; however, scientists must ensure that viral vectors do not insert DNA into the middle of a necessary gene, mutating and possibly killing their target cells.

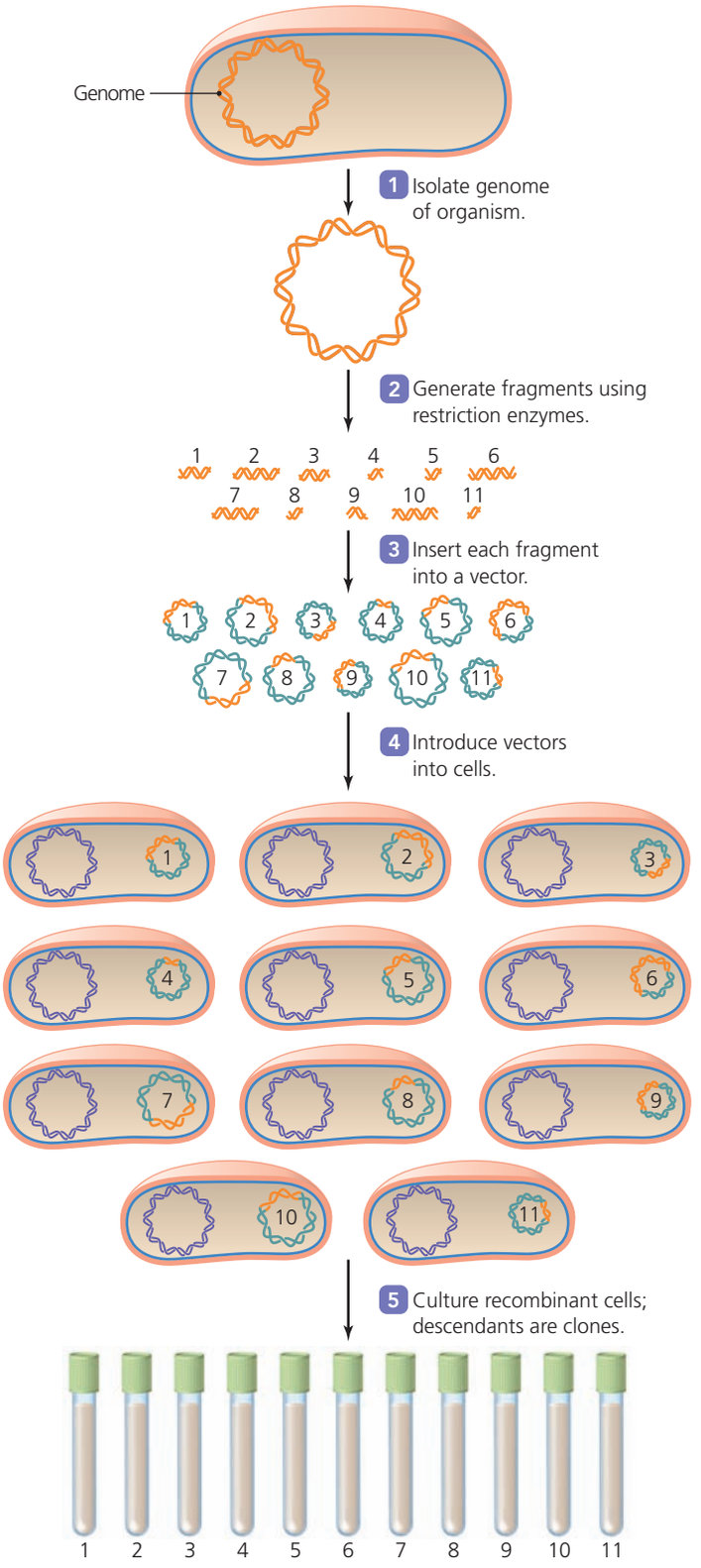
Gene Libraries

Learning Outcome

8.11 Explain the significance of gene libraries.

Suppose you were a scientist investigating the effects of the genes for 24 different kinds of interleukins (proteins that mediate certain aspects of immunity). Having to isolate the specific genes for each type of interleukin would require much time, labor, and expense. Your task would be made much easier if you could obtain the genes you need from a **gene library,** a collection of bacterial or phage clones—identical descendants—each of which contains a portion of the genetic material of interest. In effect, each clone is like one book in a library in that it contains one fragment (typically a single gene) of an organism's entire genome. Alternatively, a gene library may contain clones with all the genes of a single chromosome or of the full set of cDNA that is complementary to an organism's mRNA.

As depicted in **Figure 8.4**, genetic researchers can create each of the clones in a gene library by using restriction enzymes to generate fragments of the DNA of interest and then using ligase to synthesize recombinant vectors. They insert the vectors into bacterial cells, which are then grown on culture media. Once a scientist isolates a recombinant clone and places it in a gene library, the gene that the clone carries becomes available to other investigators, saving them the time and effort required to isolate that gene. Many gene libraries are now commercially available.



▲ **Figure 8.4 Production of a gene library.** A gene library is the population of all cells or phages that together contain all of the genetic material of interest. In this figure, each clone of cells carries a portion of a bacterium's genome.

Techniques of Recombinant DNA Technology

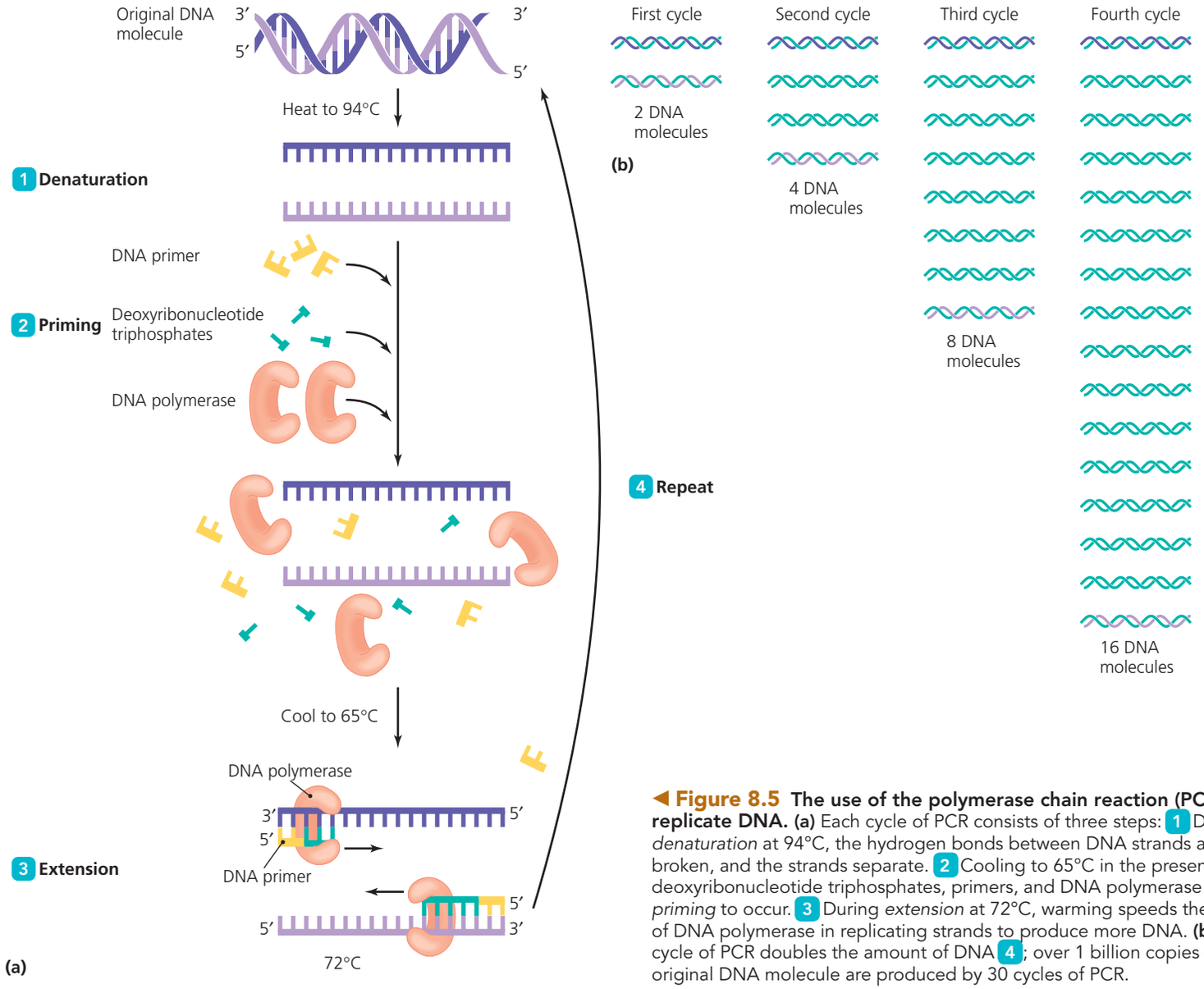
Scientists use the tools of recombinant DNA technology in a number of basic techniques to multiply, identify, manipulate, isolate, map, and sequence the nucleotides of genes.

Multiplying DNA *In Vitro*: The Polymerase Chain Reaction

Learning Outcome

8.12 Describe the purpose and application of the polymerase chain reaction.

The **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** is a technique by which scientists produce a large number of identical molecules of DNA *in vitro.* Using PCR, researchers start with a single molecule of DNA and generate billions of exact replicas within hours. Such rapid amplification of DNA is critical in a variety of situations. For example, epidemiologists used PCR to amplify the genome of a previously unknown pathogen that killed people in Hong Kong in 2003 with severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). The large number of identical DNA molecules produced by PCR allowed scientists to determine the nucleotide sequence, which was found to be similar to that of coronaviruses, until then thought to cause only mild colds. ► **ANIMATIONS:** ***Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR): Overview, Components***



◀ Figure 8.5 The use of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to replicate DNA. (a) Each cycle of PCR consists of three steps: 1 During *denaturation* at 94°C, the hydrogen bonds between DNA strands are broken, and the strands separate. 2 Cooling to 65°C in the presence of deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates, primers, and DNA polymerase allows *priming* to occur. 3 During *extension* at 72°C, warming speeds the action of DNA polymerase in replicating strands to produce more DNA. **(b)** Each cycle of PCR doubles the amount of DNA 4; over 1 billion copies of the original DNA molecule are produced by 30 cycles of PCR.

PCR is a repetitive process that alternately separates and replicates the two strands of DNA. Each cycle of PCR consists of the following three steps **(Figure 8.5a)**:

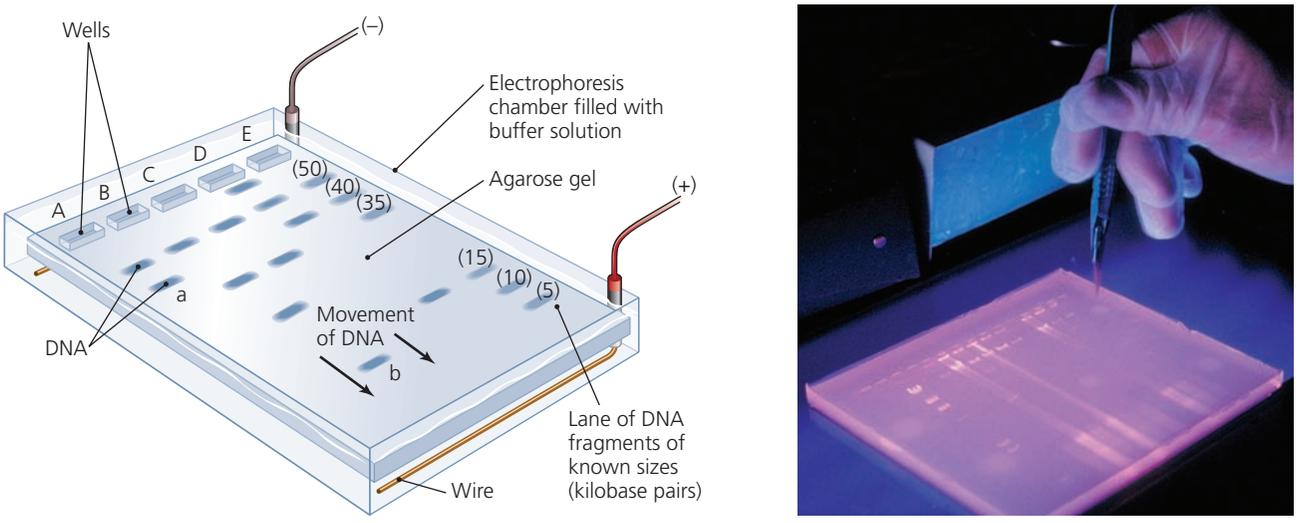
1 **Denaturation.** Exposure to heat (about 94°C) separates the two strands of the target DNA by breaking the hydrogen bonds between base pairs but otherwise leaves the two strands unaltered.

2 **Priming.** A mixture containing an excess of DNA primers (synthesized such that they are complementary to nucleotide sequences near the ends of the target DNA), DNA polymerase, and an abundance of the four deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates (A, T, G, and C) is added to the target DNA. This mixture is then cooled to about 65°C, enabling double-stranded DNA to re-form. Because there is an excess of primers, single strands are more likely to bind to a primer than to one another. The primers provide DNA polymerase with the 3′ hydroxyl group it requires for DNA synthesis.

3 **Extension.** Raising the temperature to about 72°C increases the rate at which DNA polymerase replicates each strand to produce more DNA. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***PCR: The Process***

These steps are repeated over and over 4, so the number of DNA molecules increases exponentially **(Figure 8.5b)**. After only 30 cycles—which requires only a few hours to complete—PCR produces over 1 billion identical copies of the original DNA molecule.

The process can be automated using a *thermocycler,* a device that automatically performs PCR by continuously cycling all the necessary reagents—DNA, DNA polymerase, primers, and triphosphate deoxynucleotides—through the three temperature regimes. A thermocycler uses DNA polymerase derived from hyperthermophilic archaea or bacteria, such as *Thermus aquaticus* (ther´mŭs a-kwa´ti-kŭs). This enzyme, called *Taq DNA polymerase* or simply *Taq,* is not denatured at 94°C, so the machine need not be replenished with DNA polymerase after each cycle.



▲ **Figure 8.6 Gel electrophoresis. (a)** After DNA is cleaved into fragments by restriction enzymes, it is loaded into wells, which are small holes cut into the agarose gel. DNA fragments of known sizes are often loaded into one well (in this case, E) to serve as standards. After the DNA fragments are drawn toward the positive electrode by an electric current, they are stained with a dye. **(b)** Ethidium bromide dye fluoresces under ultraviolet illumination to reveal the locations of DNA within a gel. *Compare the positions of the fragments in lanes A and B of the diagram to the positions of the fragments of known sizes. What sizes are the fragments labeled a and b?*

Figure 8.6 *a, 40 kilobase pairs. b, 10 kilobase pairs.*

Selecting a Clone of Recombinant Cells

Learning Outcome

8.13 Explain how researchers use DNA probes to identify recombinant cells.

Before recombinant DNA technology can have practical application, a scientist must be able to select and isolate recombinant cells that contain particular genes of interest. For example, once researchers have created a gene library, they must find the clone containing the DNA of interest. To do so, scientists use probes—which, as explained earlier in the chapter, bind specifically and exclusively to their complementary nucleotide sequences and have either radioactive or fluorescent markers. Researchers then isolate and culture cells that have the radioactive or fluorescent marker, which also aids in identifying the specific location of the genes of interest, as performed in a technique called *gel electrophoresis.*

Separating DNA Molecules: Gel Electrophoresis and the Southern Blot

Learning Outcome

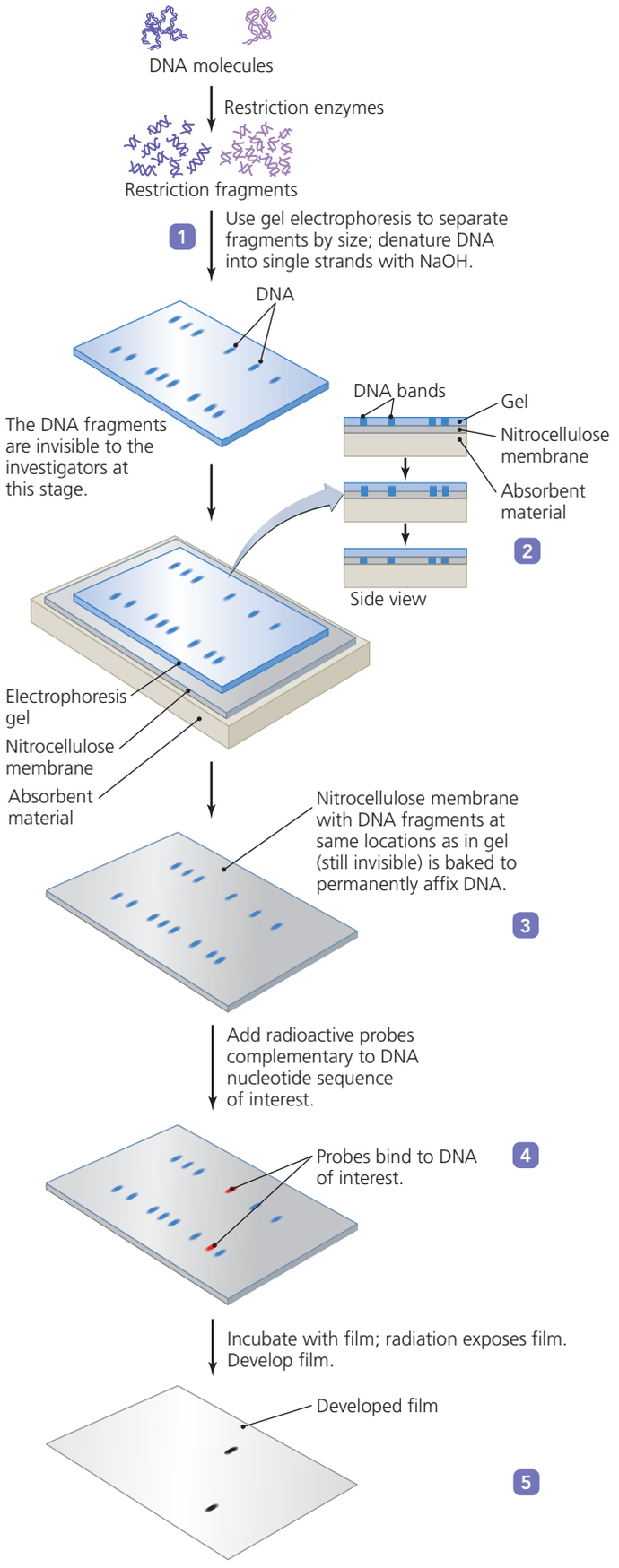
8.14 Describe the process and use of gel electrophoresis, particularly as it is used in a Southern blot.

Electrophoresis (ē-lek-trō-fōr-ē´sis) is a technique that involves separating molecules based on their electrical charge, size, and shape. In recombinant DNA technology, scientists use **gel electrophoresis** to isolate fragments of DNA molecules that can then be inserted into vectors, multiplied by PCR, or preserved in a gene library.

In gel electrophoresis, DNA molecules, which have an overall negative charge, are drawn through a semisolid gel by an electric current toward the positive electrode within an electrophoresis chamber (**Figure 8.6**). The gel is typically composed of a purified sugar component of agar, called *agarose,* which acts as a molecular sieve that retards the movement of DNA fragments down the chamber and separates the fragments by size. Smaller DNA fragments move faster and farther than larger ones. Scientists can determine the size of a fragment by comparing the distance it travels to the distances traveled by standard DNA fragments of known sizes.

As we have seen, DNA probes allow a researcher to find specific DNA sequences such as genes in a cell. Scientists could also use probes to localize specific sequences in electrophoresis gels, but because gels are flimsy and easily broken and deform as they dry, it is difficult to probe gels.

In 1975, Ed Southern (1938–) devised a method, called the **Southern blot,** to transfer DNA from agarose gels to nitrocellulose membranes, which are less delicate. The Southern blot technique begins with the procedures of gel electrophoresis just described (**Figure 8.7** 1). The DNA is denatured into single strands with NaOH. Once the DNA fragments have been separated by size, the liquid in the electrophoresis gel is blotted out 2. DNA is transferred and bonded with heat to a nitrocellulose membrane 3. Radioactive probes complementary to DNA



▲ **Figure 8.7 The Southern blot technique.** This method enables scientists to locate DNA sequences of interest.

sequences of interest are added 4. The probes expose photographic film, revealing the DNA of interest 5. A *northern blot* is a similar technique used to detect specific RNA molecules.

Researchers use Southern blots for a variety of purposes, including genetic "fingerprinting" (discussed shortly) and diagnosing infectious diseases. For example, scientists can detect the presence of genetic sequences unique to hepatitis B virus in a blood sample of an infected patient even before the patient shows symptoms or an immune response.

Scientists also use Southern blotting to demonstrate the incidence and prevalence in an environmental sample of archaea, bacteria, and viruses, particularly those that cannot be cultured.

DNA Microarrays

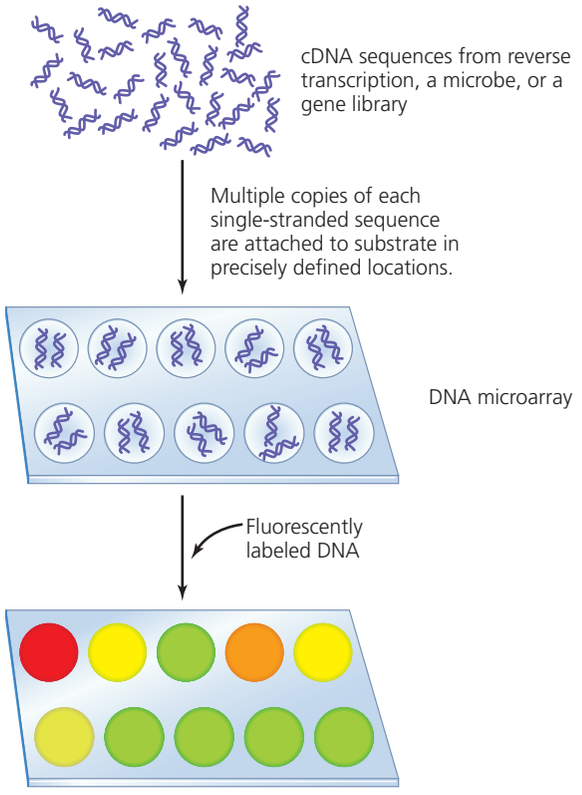
Learning Outcome

8.15 Describe the manufacture and use of DNA microarrays.

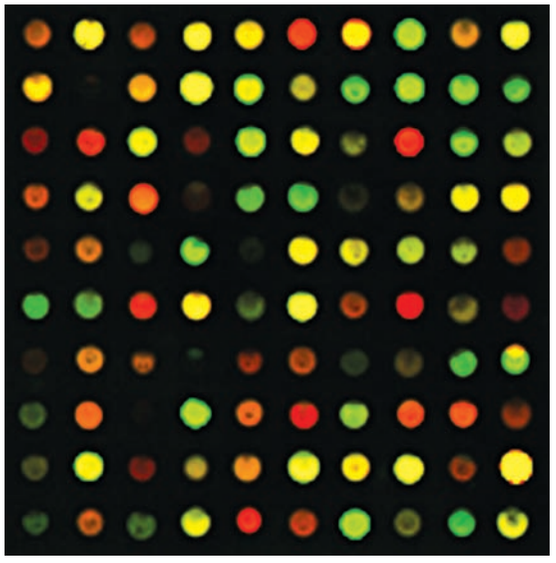
Another tool of biotechnology is a **DNA microarray.** An array consists of molecules of single-stranded DNA, either genetic DNA or cDNA, immobilized on glass slides, silicon chips, or nylon membranes. Robots, similar to those that construct computer chips, deposit PCR-derived copies of hundreds of thousands of different DNA sequences in precise locations on the array **(Figure 8.8)**. An array may consist of DNA from a single species (e.g., DNA microarrays containing sequences from all the genes of *E. coli* are available commercially), or a DNA array may contain sequences from numerous species. In any case, single strands of fluorescently labeled DNA in a sample washed over an array adhere only to locations on the array where there are complementary DNA sequences.

Scientists use DNA microarrays in a number of ways, including the following:

- **Monitoring Gene Expression.** One way organisms control metabolism is by controlling RNA transcription. Scientists use DNA microarrays to monitor which genes a cell is transcribing at a particular time by making fluorescently labeled cDNA from mRNA in the cell. These DNA strands bind to complementary DNA sequences on the array, and the location of fluorescence on the array at specific sites reveals which genes the cell was transcribing at the time. Researchers using DNA microarrays can monitor the expression of thousands of genes simultaneously and can compare and contrast genetic expression under different conditions. In the latter type of experiment, a different color of fluorescent dye is used to label DNA from microbes grown in each condition.
- **Diagnosing Infection.** DNA microarrays made with DNA sequences of numerous pathogens reveal the presence of those pathogens in medical samples.
- **Identifying Organisms in an Environmental Sample.** Microbial ecologists monitor the presence or absence of microbes in an environment by using microarrays of DNA from the organisms.



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 8.8 DNA microarray. (a)** Construction and use of a microarray. Multiple copies of single-stranded DNA with known sequences are affixed in precise locations on a glass slide, silicon chip, nylon membrane, or other substrate. Fluorescently labeled DNA washed over the microarray binds to complementary strands. **(b)** Photograph of a DNA microarray showing locations of differently labeled cDNA molecules.

Inserting DNA into Cells

Learning Outcome

8.16 List and explain three artificial techniques for introducing DNA into cells.

A goal of recombinant DNA technology is the insertion of a gene into a cell. In addition to using vectors and the natural methods of transformation of competent cells, transduction, and conjugation, scientists have developed several artificial methods to introduce DNA into cells, including the following:

- **Electroporation (Figure 8.9a).** Electroporation involves using an electrical current to puncture microscopic holes through a cell's membrane so that DNA can enter the cell from the environment. Electroporation can be used on all types of cells, though the thick-walled cells of fungi and algae must first be converted to *protoplasts,* which are cells whose cell walls have been enzymatically removed. Cells treated by electroporation repair their membranes and cell walls after a time.
- **Protoplast Fusion (Figure 8.9b).** When protoplasts encounter one another, their cytoplasmic membranes may fuse to form a single cell that contains the genomes of both "parent" cells. Exposure to polyethylene glycol increases the rate of fusion. The DNA from the two fused cells recombines to form a recombinant molecule. Scientists often use protoplast fusion for the genetic modification of plants.
- **Injection.** Two types of injection are used with larger eukaryotic cells. Researchers use a *gene gun* powered by a blank .22-caliber cartridge or compressed gas to fire tiny tungsten or gold beads coated with DNA into a target cell **(Figure 8.9c)**. The cell eventually eliminates the inert metal beads. In *microinjection,* a geneticist inserts DNA into a target cell with a glass micropipette having a tip diameter smaller than that of the cell or nucleus **(Figure 8.9d)**. Unlike electroporation and protoplast fusion, injection can be used on intact tissues such as in plant seeds.

In every case, foreign DNA that enters a cell remains in a cell's progeny only if the DNA is self-replicating, as in the case of plasmid and viral vectors, or if the DNA integrates into a cellular chromosome by recombination.

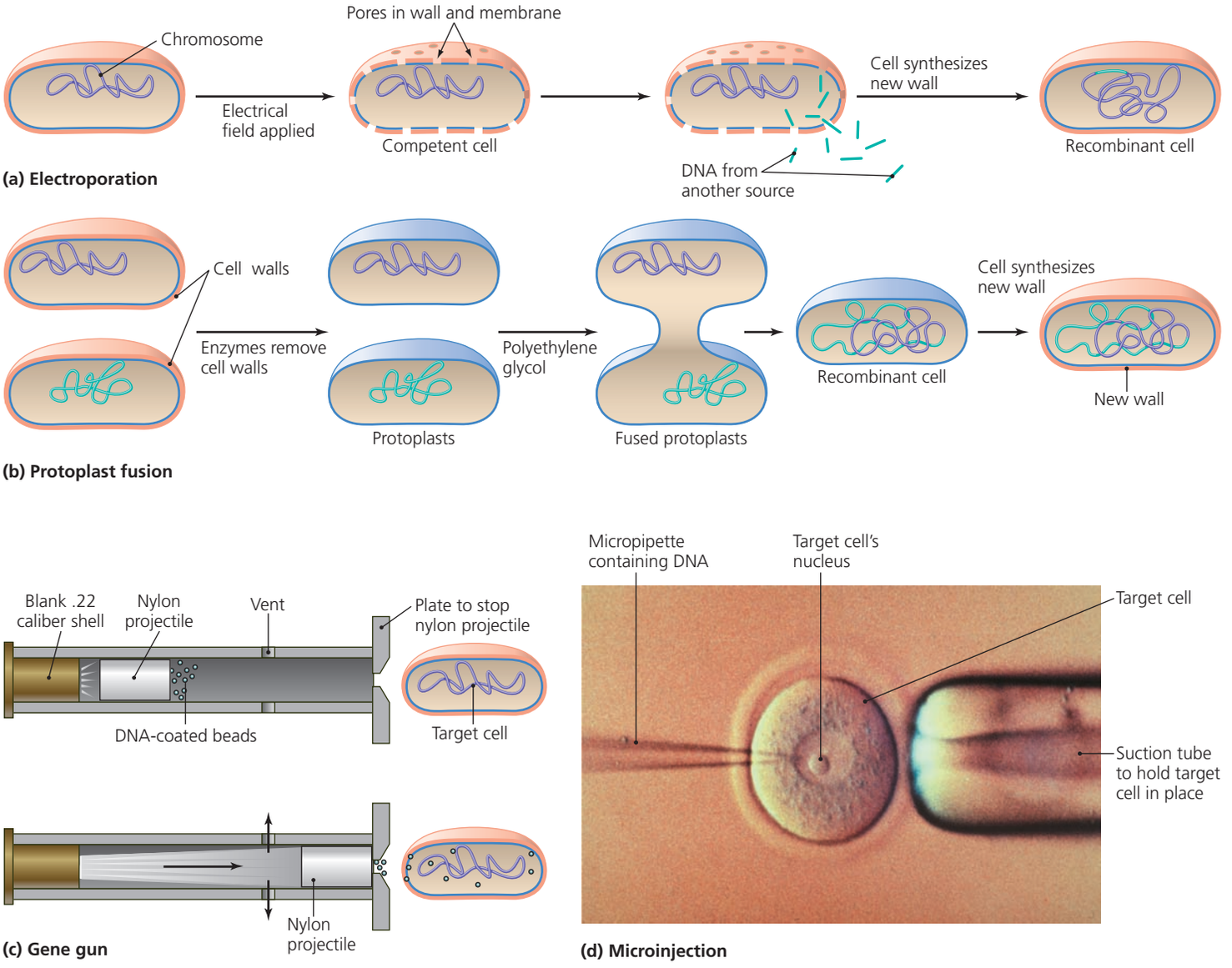
Applications of Recombinant DNA Technology

The importance of recombinant DNA technology lies not in the novelty, cleverness, or elegance of its procedures but in its wide range of applications. In this section we consider how recombinant DNA technology is used to solve various problems and create research, medical, and agricultural products.

Genetic Mapping

Learning Outcome

8.17 Describe genetic mapping and genomics and explain their usefulness.



▲ **Figure 8.9 Artificial methods of inserting DNA into cells.** **(a)** Electroporation, in which an electrical current applied to a cell makes it competent to take up DNA. **(b)** Protoplast fusion, in which enzymes digest cell walls to create protoplasts that fuse at a high rate when treated with polyethylene glycol. **(c)** A gene gun, which fires DNA-coated beads into a cell. **(d)** Microinjection, in which a solution of DNA is introduced into a cell through a micropipette.

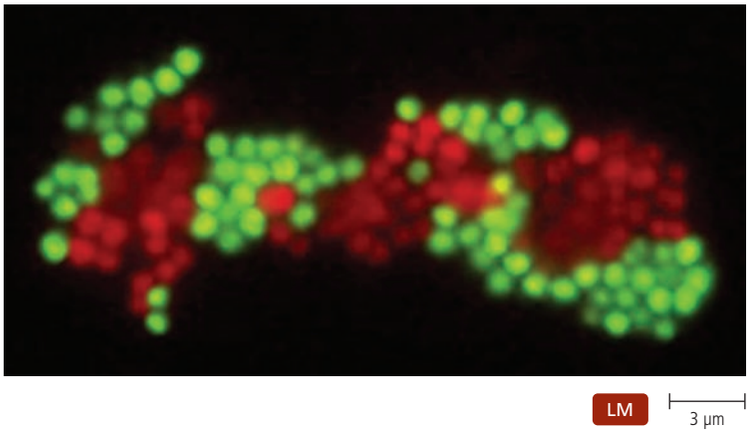
One application of these tools and techniques is **genetic mapping,** which involves locating genes on a nucleic acid molecule. Genetic maps provide scientists with useful facts, including information concerning an organism's metabolism and growth characteristics, as well as its potential relatedness to other microbes. For example, scientists have discovered a virus with a genetic map similar to those of certain hepatitis viruses. They named the new discovery *hepatitis G virus* because it presumably causes hepatitis, though it has not been demonstrated that the virus actually causes the disease.

Locating Genes

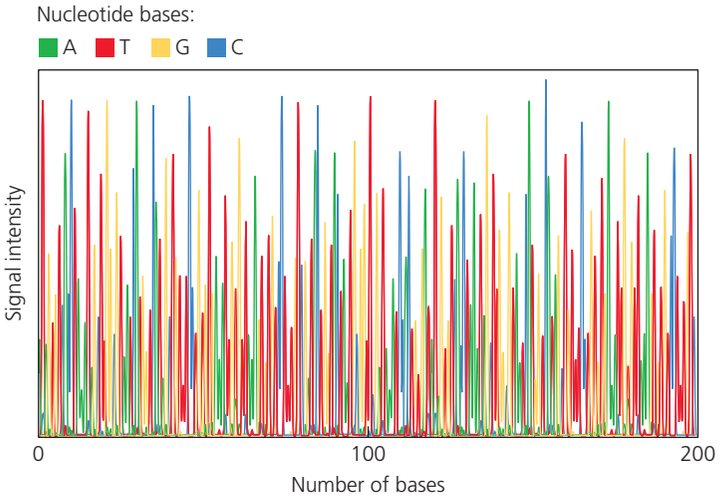
Until about 1970, scientists identified the specific location of genes on chromosomes by cumbersome, time-consuming, labor-intensive methods. Recombinant DNA techniques provide simpler and universal methods for genetic mapping.

One technique for locating genes, called *restriction fragmentation,* was one of the earliest applications of restriction enzymes. In this technique, which is used for mapping the relative locations of genes in plasmids and viruses, researchers compare DNA fragments resulting from cleavages by several restriction enzymes to determine each fragment's location relative to the others. If the researchers know the locations of specific genes on specific fragments, then elucidation of the correct arrangement of the fragments will reveal the relative locations of the genes on the entire DNA molecule.

Using this method, scientists first completed the entire gene map of a cellular microbe—the bacterium *H. influenzae*—in 1995. Since then, geneticists have elucidated complete gene maps of numerous viruses and prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.



▲ **Figure 8.10 Fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH).** Green-fluorescing cells are *Staphylococcus aureus*, whereas red-fluorescing cells are another species of *Staphylococcus*. The absence of fluorescence in some cells indicates another species is present in this blood sample.



▲ **Figure 8.11 Automated DNA sequencing.** Each colored line corresponds to a different nucleotide base; each peak indicates the location of a particular base. *What are the nucleotides in positions 100 and 200?*

Figure 8.11 *Thymine and cytosine.*

Often a scientist wants to know where in the environment, clinical sample, or biofilm a particular microbial species is located. When researchers know of a particular gene exclusive to that organism, they can locate the gene and thereby the microbe using *fluorescent* in situ *hybridization (FISH).*

In this method, scientists attach fluorescent chemicals to short, single strands of nucleic acid molecules that are complementary to the gene or its transcribed mRNA. Because complementary strands of nucleic acid best bind one another, these fluorescent probes hybridize with their complementary target. Scientists using fluorescent microscopes to view such probes can determine where the gene and its organism are located **(Figure 8.10)**. Using a number of different colors of fluorescent probes, researchers can locate numerous genes and the microbes that carry them simultaneously. FISH is used for a variety of purposes, including diagnosing disease, identifying microbes in environmental samples, and analyzing biofilms.

Nucleotide Sequencing

An exciting development in the world of genetics is **genomics,** the sequencing and analysis of the nucleotide bases of genomes. At first, scientists sequenced DNA molecules by selectively cleaving DNA at A, T, G, or C bases, separating the fragments by gel electrophoresis, and mapping the order in which the fragments occur in a complete DNA molecule. Such cumbersome sequencing was limited to short DNA molecules, such as those of plasmids.

Today, scientists use a faster technique that utilizes cDNA synthesized with nucleotides that have been tagged with four different fluorescent dyes—a different color for each nucleotide base; then an automated DNA sequencer determines the sequence of base colors emitted by the dyes **(Figure 8.11)**. Such machines, often running 24 hours a day for months, have sequenced the entire genomes of numerous viruses, bacteria, and eukaryotic organisms. Scientists reached a milestone in 2001 by sequencing the 3 billion nucleotide base pairs that constitute the human genome.

Elucidation of the gene sequences of pathogens, particularly those affecting hundreds of millions of people and those with potential bioterrorist uses, is a current priority of researchers. Scientists hope to use the information to develop novel drugs and more effective therapies and vaccines.

Another use for genomics is to relate DNA sequence data to protein function. For instance, scientists are investigating the genes and proteins of *Deinococcus radiodurans* (dī-nō-kok′ŭs rā-dē-ō-dur′anz), a microorganism that is remarkably resistant to damage of its DNA by radiation. Such studies may lead to methods of reversing genetic damage in cancer patients undergoing radiation therapy. Researchers are also investigating the genetic basis of the enzymes of psychrophiles, which are microorganisms that thrive at temperatures below 20°C. Such enzymes have potential applications in food processing and in the manufacture of drugs.

Table 8.2 summarizes the tools and techniques of recombinant DNA technology.

Environmental Studies

It is estimated that more than 99% of microorganisms have never been grown in a laboratory; indeed, scientists know them only by unique DNA patterns in electrophoresis gels and Southern blot membranes. For example, based on such unique DNA sequences, sometimes called signatures or DNA fingerprints, scientists have isolated over 500 species of bacteria from human mouths; however, they have been able to identify only about 150 of these. An understanding of the biology of the other 350 species may lead to a better understanding of tooth and gum decay, diagnosis of disease, and advances in oral health care.

Another application of genetics to environmental studies may have ramifications for global warming. Rice agriculture is possibly the largest human contributor of the so-called greenhouse gas methane to the atmosphere. Rice paddies, concentrated in Asia, contribute 50 million to 100 million metric tons of methane to the environment every year, though neither rice nor

TABLE 8.2 Tools and Techniques of Recombinant DNA Technology

Tool or Technique	Description	Potential Application
Mutagen	Chemical or physical agent that creates mutations	Creating novel genotypes and phenotypes
Reverse transcriptase	Enzyme from RNA retrovirus that synthesizes cDNA from an RNA template	Synthesizing a gene using an mRNA template
Synthetic nucleic acid	DNA molecule prepared *in vitro*	Creating DNA probes to localize genes within a genome
Restriction enzyme	Bacterial enzyme that cleaves DNA at specific sites	Creating recombinant DNA by joining fragments
Vector	Transposon, plasmid, or virus that carries DNA into cells	Altering the genome of a cell
Gene library	Collection of cells or viruses, each of which carries a portion of a given organism's genome	Providing a ready source of genetic material
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)	Produces multiple copies of a DNA molecule	Multiplying DNA for various applications
Gel electrophoresis	Uses electrical charge to separate molecules according to their size	Separating DNA fragments by size
Electroporation	Uses electrical current to make cells competent	Inserting a novel gene into a cell
Protoplast fusion	Fuses two cells to create recombinants	Inserting a novel gene into a cell
Gene gun	Blasts genes into target cells	Inserting a novel gene into a cell
Microinjection	Uses micropipette to inject genes into cells	Inserting a novel gene into a cell
Southern blot	Localizes specific DNA sequences on a stable membrane	Identifying a strain of pathogen
Nucleic acid probes	RNA or DNA molecules labeled with radioactive or fluorescent tags	Localizing specific genes in a Southern blot
Genetic mapping	Uses restriction enzymes to locate relative positions of restriction sites	Locating genes in an organism's genome
DNA sequencing	Determines the sequence of nucleotide bases in DNA	Comparing genomes of organisms
DNA microarray	Reveals presence of specific DNA or RNA molecules in a sample	Diagnosing infection

humans directly cause this deluge of methane. Scientists, having analyzed the DNA signatures of microbes in the soil, have determined that mud-dwelling, methane-producing archaea feed on carbohydrates released by the rice plants' roots. These archaea have not been isolated or grown in a laboratory. They are known only by their DNA signatures. Thus, the tools and techniques of recombinant DNA technology have revealed the source of a problem. Discovering that these organisms exist is certainly the first step in developing methods to reduce their impact on the environment.

Pharmaceutical and Therapeutic Applications

Learning Outcomes

8.18 Describe six potential medical applications of recombinant DNA technology.
8.19 Describe the steps and uses of genetic fingerprinting.
8.20 Define *gene therapy.*

Researchers now supplement traditional biotechnology with recombinant DNA technology to produce a variety of pharmaceutical and therapeutic substances and to perform a host of medically important tasks. Here we explore the use of recombinant DNA technology to synthesize selected proteins, produce vaccines, screen for genetic diseases, match DNA specimens to the organisms from which they came, treat genetic illnesses, and aid in organ transplantation.

Protein Synthesis

Scientists have inserted synthetic genes for insulin, for interferon (a natural antiviral chemical), and for other proteins into bacteria and yeast cells so that the microbes synthesize these proteins in vast quantities. In the past, such proteins were isolated from donated blood or from animals—labor-intensive processes that carry the risk of inducing allergies or of transferring pathogens, such as hepatitis B and HIV. "Genetically engineered" proteins are safer and less expensive than their naturally occurring counterparts.

Vaccines

Vaccines contain *antigens*—foreign substances such as weakened bacteria, viruses, and toxins that stimulate the body's immune system to respond to and subsequently remember these foreign materials. In effect, a vaccine primes the immune system to respond quickly and effectively when confronted with pathogens and their toxins. However, the use of some vaccines

entails a risk—they may cause the disease they are designed to prevent.

Scientists now use recombinant DNA technology to produce safer vaccines. Once they have inserted the gene that codes for a pathogen's antigens into a vector, they can inject the recombinant vector or the proteins it produces into a patient. Thus, the patient's immune system is exposed to a subunit of the pathogen—one of the pathogen's antigens—but not to the pathogen itself. Such **subunit vaccines** are especially useful in safely protecting against pathogens that either cannot be cultured or cause incurable fatal diseases. Hepatitis B vaccine is an example of a successful subunit vaccine. Scientists are also pursuing subunit vaccines against HIV.

A promising future approach to vaccination involves introducing genes coding for antigenic proteins of pathogens into common fruits or vegetables, such as bananas or beans. The immune systems of people or animals eating such altered produce would be exposed to the pathogen's antigens and theoretically would develop immunological memory against the pathogen. Such a vaccine would have the advantages of being painless and easy to administer, and vaccination would not require a visit to a health care provider. **Highlight: Vaccines on the Menu** focuses on such vaccines.

Another type of vaccination involves producing a recombinant plasmid carrying a gene from a pathogen and injecting the plasmid into a human whose body then synthesizes polypeptides characteristic of the pathogen. The polypeptides stimulate immunological memory within the human body, readying it to mount a vigorous immune response and prevent infection should it subsequently be exposed to the real pathogen. Clinical trials of such a vaccine against malaria have shown some promise.

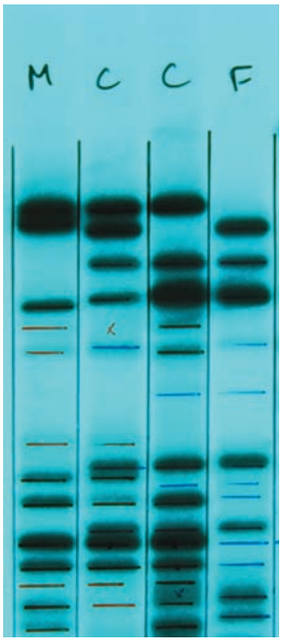
Genetic Screening

Genetic mutations cause some diseases, such as inherited forms of breast cancer and Huntington's disease. Laboratory technicians use DNA microarrays to screen patients, prospective parents, and fetuses for such mutant genes. This procedure, called **genetic screening,** can also identify viral DNA sequences in a patient's blood or other tissues. For instance, genetic screening can identify HIV in a patient's cells even before the patient shows any other sign of infection.

DNA Fingerprinting

Medical laboratory technicians and forensic investigators use gel electrophoresis and Southern blotting for so-called **genetic fingerprinting,** or *DNA fingerprinting*—identifying individuals or organisms by their unique DNA sequences.

DNA fingerprinting involves procuring a sample of DNA, making multiple copies of it via PCR, cutting the copies with restriction enzymes, and separating the fragments by gel electrophoresis to produce a unique pattern. The process is analogous to standard fingerprinting in that the pattern resulting from a particular DNA sample is unique, and it must be compared to patterns produced from other DNA molecules **(Figure 8.12)**, much like a standard fingerprint must be compared to known fingerprints. For example, the patterns from DNA collected at a crime scene either match or do not match a suspect's or victim's DNA, or the pattern from an environmental sample matches or does not match patterns from known organisms. Genetic fingerprinting is used to determine paternity; to connect blood, semen, or even single skin cells to a particular crime suspect; to identify badly damaged human remains; and to identify pathogens.



▲ **Figure 8.12 DNA fingerprinting.** Shown here is a partial X-ray image of bands of DNA from four family members: a mother (M), father (F), and two children (Cs). Each child shares some bands with each parent, proving they are indeed related. A similar process can be used to compare DNA bands from microbial specimens in order to identify a particular specimen.

Gene Therapy

An exciting use of recombinant DNA technology is **gene therapy,** in which missing or defective genes are replaced with normal copies. Scientists remove a few genetically defective cells—for example, cells that produce a defective protein—from a patient, insert normal genes, and replace the cells into the patient, curing the disease. Alternatively, plasmid, bacterial, or viral vectors could deliver genes directly to target cells within a patient.

Unfortunately, gene therapy has proven difficult in practice because of unexpected side effects. Specifically, some patients' immune systems react uncontrollably to the presence of vectors, resulting in the death of these patients. Nevertheless, doctors have successfully treated patients for severe combined immunodeficiency disease and a form of blindness. Other diseases that may respond well to gene therapy are cystic fibrosis, sickle-cell anemia, and some types of hemophilia and diabetes.

Medical Diagnosis

Clinical microbiologists use PCR, fluorescent genetic probes, and DNA microarrays in diagnostic applications. They examine specimens from patients for the presence of gene sequences unique to certain pathogens, such as particular hepatitis viruses,

HIGHLIGHT

VACCINES ON THE MENU

Wouldn't it be great if instead of giving your children painful shots, they could be immunized simply by eating a banana that stimulated their immune systems to fight off pathogenic viruses and bacteria? We aren't quite there yet, but scientists are making progress in developing genetically modified banana vaccines that are active against gastrointestinal viruses and bacteria, which together kill about 2 million children each year.

Researchers have isolated genes that code for certain critical proteins of the pathogens and put those genes into the genome of a potato. The edible vaccine protected mice against diarrhea-causing pathogens. Because only a few of the pathogens' genes are expressed, pathogens cannot form, cause disease, or be contagious. The drawback: The mice had to eat the potato raw.

Enter the banana. Bananas are tough and easily grown. The inside of a banana is sweet, sterile, and full of protein, and kids love to eat them raw. Besides bananas, foods under study include tomatoes, rice, wheat, soybean, and corn. Bananas are preferred because they last without refrigeration, their tough skins prevent contamination, and they taste better than raw potatoes or rice.

Potential advantages of edible vaccines are tremendous: Tasty vaccines would reduce children's fears of doctors. People in tropical areas could grow vaccines locally, sustainably, and inexpensively using local farming techniques. Edible vaccines would reduce the need for syringes, which are often in short supply in poorer parts of the world. We would bypass the expenses of transportation, storage, and refrigeration required for many injected vaccines.

Maybe, one day soon, a trip down the produce aisle will provide your family with more than just good nutrition; your immune system will also get a boost.

cytomegalovirus, human immunodeficiency virus, or the bacterial pathogens of gonorrhea, tuberculosis, and trachoma.

Xenotransplant

Xenotransplants[5] are animal cells, tissues, or organs introduced into the human body. For years physicians have performed xenotransplants, for instance, using valves from pig hearts to repair severely damaged human hearts. However, recombinant DNA technology may expand the possibilities. It is theoretically feasible to insert functional human genes into animals to direct them to produce organs and tissues for transplantation into humans. For example, scientists could induce pigs to produce humanlike cytoplasmic membrane proteins so that entire organs from pigs would not be rejected as foreign tissue by a transplant recipient.

Agricultural Applications

Learning Outcome

8.21 Identify six agricultural applications of recombinant DNA technology.

Recombinant DNA technology has been applied to the realm of agriculture to produce **transgenic organisms**—recombinant plants and animals that have been altered for specific purposes by the addition of genes from other organisms. The purposes for which transgenic organisms have been produced are many and varied and include herbicide resistance, tolerance to salty soils, resistance to freezing and pests, and improvements in nutritional value and yield. More than 15 million farmers in 29 countries grow transgenic crops on over 2.5 billion acres worldwide—more land than in the entire United States.

Herbicide Tolerance

The biodegradable herbicide *glyphosate* (Roundup) normally kills all plants—weeds and crops alike—by blocking an enzyme that is essential for plants to synthesize several amino acids. After scientists discovered and isolated a gene from *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (ag´rō-bak-tēr´ē-um tū´me-fā̄sh-enz) that conveys tolerance to glyphosate, they produced transgenic crop plants containing the gene. As a result of this application of recombinant DNA technology, farmers can now apply glyphosate to a field of transgenic plants to kill weeds without damaging the crop. An added benefit is that farmers do not need to till the soil to suppress weeds during the growing season, reducing soil erosion by 80%. Most of the soybeans, corn, and cotton grown in the United States are genetically modified in this manner to be "Roundup ready." Glyphosate-tolerant rice, wheat, sugar beets,

[5]From Greek *xenos*, meaning "stranger."

and alfalfa strains are also available, as are soybeans and corn tolerant of other herbicides.

Salt Tolerance

Years of irrigation have resulted in excessive salt buildup in farmland throughout the world, rendering the land useless for farming. Though salt-tolerant plants can grow under these conditions, they are not edible.

Scientists have now successfully removed the gene for salt tolerance from these plants and inserted it into tomato and canola plants to create food crops that can grow in soil so salty that it would poison normal crops. Not only do such transgenic plants survive and produce fruit, but they also remove salt from the soil, restoring the soil and making it suitable to grow unmodified crops as well. Researchers are now attempting to insert the gene for salt tolerance into rice, cotton, wheat, and corn.

Freeze Resistance

Ice crystals form more readily when bacterial proteins (from natural bacteria present in a field) are available as crystallization nuclei. Scientists have modified strains of the bacterium *Pseudomonas* (soo-dō-mō´nas) with a gene for a polypeptide that prevents ice crystals from forming. Crops sprayed with genetically modified bacteria can tolerate mild freezes, so the farmers no longer lose their crops to unseasonable cold snaps.

Pest Resistance

Strains of the bacterium *Bacillus thuringiensis* (ba-sil´ŭs thur-in-jē-en´sis) produce a protein that, when modified by enzymes in the intestinal tracts of insects, becomes **Bt toxin (Bt).** Bt binds to receptors lining the insect's digestive tract and causes the tissue to dissolve. Unlike some insecticides, Bt is naturally occurring, harmful only to insects, and biodegradable. Farmers, particularly organic growers, have used Bt for over 30 years to reduce insect damage to their crops.

Now, genes for Bt toxin have been inserted into a variety of crop plants, including potatoes, cotton, rice, and corn, so that they produce Bt for themselves. Insects feeding on such plants are killed, while humans and other animals that eat them are unharmed. By inserting genes for more than one type of Bt, scientists hope to forestall evolution of resistant insects.

Scientists have also developed crops that are resistant to microbial diseases. Two cases illustrate.

The water mold *Phytophthora infestans* (fī-tof´tho-ră in-fes´tanz) is the most devasting potato pathogen; it caused the great Irish potato famine of the 19th century, resulting in the deaths of at least a million people. The mold still causes many billions of dollars of crop damage each year. Scientists have now cloned genes from potato species resistant to *Phytophthora;* the cloned genes, multiplied by PCR, can be inserted into potato crops to reduce losses to farmers and increase available food for a growing world population.

Papaya ringspot virus causes devastating harm to papayas, mottling and malforming leaves, streaking fruit, and eventually killing the entire plant. Researchers centered at the University of Hawaii saved that state's papaya industry by inserting a gene for ringspot virus capsid into the papaya's genome. When the plant produces the viral protein, it triggers protection by an unknown mechanism against infection by the ringspot virus. Genetically modified plants grow normally **(Figure 8.13)**.

▲ **Figure 8.13 Genetically modified papaya plants.** Plants on the left are dying from ringspot virus infection. Those on the right are modified to produce viral protein, which prevents infection by the virus.

Improvements in Nutritional Value and Yield

Genetic researchers have increased crop and animal yields in several ways. For example, MacGregor tomatoes remain firm after harvest because the gene for the enzyme that breaks down pectin has been suppressed. This allows farmers to let the tomatoes ripen on the vine before harvesting and increases the tomatoes' shelf life. Scientists suppressed the gene indirectly by inserting a promoter in the noncoding DNA strand that allows transcription of antisense RNA. The antisense RNA then binds to the gene's mRNA, forming double-stranded RNA that makes it impossible to translate the pectin-catabolizing enzyme.

Another example of agricultural improvement involves bovine growth hormone (BGH), which when injected into cattle enables them to more rapidly gain weight and produce 10% more milk. Also, use of BGH reduces the fat content in beef. Though BGH can be derived from animal tissue, it is more economical to insert the BGH gene into bacteria so that they produce the hormone, which is then purified and injected into farm and ranch animals.

In yet another application, scientists have improved the nutritional value of rice by adding a gene for beta-carotene, which is a precursor to vitamin A. Vitamin A is required for human embryonic development and for vision in adults, and it is an important antioxidant that plays a role in ameliorating cancer and atherosclerosis (hardening of arteries).

Recombinant DNA technology has progressed to the point that scientists are now considering transplanting genes coding for entire metabolic pathways rather than merely genes encoding single proteins. For instance, researchers are attempting to transfer into corn and rice all the genes that bacteria use to convert

atmospheric nitrogen into nitrogenous fertilizer, in effect allowing the recombinant plants to produce their own fertilizer.

Recombinant DNA tools and techniques allow scientists to examine, compare, and manipulate the genomes of microorganisms, plants, animals, and humans for a variety of purposes, including gene mapping and forensic, medical, and agricultural applications. However, as with many scientific advances, concerns arise about the ethics and safety of genetic manipulations. The next section deals with these issues.

The Ethics and Safety of Recombinant DNA Technology

Learning Outcome

8.22 Discuss the pros and cons concerning the safety and ethics of recombinant DNA technology.

Recombinant DNA technology provides the opportunity to transfer genes among unrelated organisms, even among organisms in different kingdoms, but how safe and ethical is it? No change in agricultural practices has generated as much controversy. "Frankenfood" and "biological Russian roulette" are some of the terms opponents use to denigrate transgenic agricultural products and gene therapy. Critics of transgenic crops correctly state that the long-term effects of transgenic manipulations are unknown and that unforeseen problems arise from every new technology and procedure. Recombinant DNA technology may burden society with complex and unforeseen regulatory, administrative, financial, legal, social, medical, and environmental problems.

Critics also argue that natural genetic transfer through sexual reproduction and processes such as transformation and transduction could deliver genes from transgenic plants and animals into other organisms. For example, if a herbicide-resistant plant cross-pollinates with a related weed species, we might be cursed with a weed that is more difficult to kill. Opponents further express concern that transgenic organisms could trigger allergies or cause harmless organisms to become pathogenic. Some opponents of recombinant DNA technology desire a ban on all genetically modified products.

The U.S. National Academy of Sciences, the U.S. National Research Council, and 81 research projects conducted between 1985 and 2001 by the European Union have not revealed any risks to human health or the environment from genetically modified agricultural products beyond those found with conventional plant breeding. In fact, the European Union concluded in 2001 that "the use of more precise technology and the greater regulatory scrutiny probably make them [genetically modified foods] even safer than conventional plants and foods." Further, studies have shown that Bt crops spare harmless and beneficial insects that would be killed if pesticides were used. With fewer harmful insects to transmit fungi, Bt corn crops contain less cancer-causing fungal toxin, a potential benefit to human health.

As the debate continues, governments continue to impose standards on laboratories involved in recombinant DNA technology. These are intended to prevent the accidental release of altered organisms or exposure of laboratory workers to potential dangers. Additionally, genetic researchers often design organisms to lack a vital gene so that they should not survive for long outside a laboratory.

Unfortunately, biologists could apply the procedures used to create beneficial crops and animals to create biological weapons that are more infective and more resistant to treatment than their natural counterparts are. Though international treaties prohibit the development of biological weapons, *Bacillus anthracis* (an-thrā'sis) spores were used in bioterrorist attacks in the United States in 2001. Thankfully, the strain utilized was not genetically altered to realize its deadliest potential.

Emergent recombinant DNA technologies raise numerous other ethical issues. Should people be routinely screened for diseases that are untreatable or fatal? Who should pay for these procedures: individuals, employers, prospective employers, insurance companies, health maintenance organizations (HMOs), or government agencies? What rights do individuals have to genetic privacy? If entities other than individuals pay the costs involved in genetic screening, should those entities have access to *all* the genetic information that results? Should businesses be allowed to have patents on and make profits from living organisms they have genetically altered? Should governments be allowed to require genetic screening and then force genetic manipulations on individuals to correct perceived genetic abnormalities that some claim are the bases of criminality, manic depression, risk-taking behavior, and alcoholism? Should HMOs, physicians, or the government demand genetic screening and then refuse to provide services related to the birth or care of supposedly "defective" children?

We as a society will have to confront these and other ethical considerations as the genomic revolution continues to affect people's lives in many unpredictable ways.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

The Role of Recombinant DNA Technology in Biotechnology (p. 237)

1. **Biotechnology** is the use of microorganisms to make useful products. Historically these include bread, wine, beer, and cheese.
2. **Recombinant DNA technology** is a new type of biotechnology in which scientists change the genotypes and phenotypes of organisms to benefit humans.

The Tools of Recombinant DNA Technology (pp. 237–242)

1. The tools of recombinant DNA technology include mutagens, reverse transcriptase, synthetic nucleic acids, restriction enzymes, vectors, and gene libraries.
2. **Mutagens** are chemical and physical agents used to create changes in a microbe's genome to effect desired changes in the microbe's phenotype.
3. The enzyme **reverse transcriptase** transcribes DNA from an RNA template; genetic researchers use reverse transcriptase to make **complementary DNA (cDNA)**.
4. Scientists used synthetic nucleic acids to elucidate the genetic code, and they now use them to create genes for specific proteins and to synthesize DNA and RNA **probes** labeled with radioactive or fluorescent markers.
5. **Restriction enzymes** cut DNA at specific (usually palindromic) nucleotide sequences and are used to produce recombinant DNA molecules.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Recombinant DNA Technology*
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Action of Restriction Enzymes*
6. In recombinant DNA technology, a **vector** is a small DNA molecule (such as a viral genome, transposon, or plasmid) that carries a particular gene and a recognizable genetic marker into a cell.
7. A **gene library** is a collection of bacterial or phage clones, each of which carries a fragment (typically a single gene) of an organism's genome.

Techniques of Recombinant DNA Technology (pp. 242–246)

1. The **polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** allows researchers to replicate molecules of DNA rapidly.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR): Overview, Components, The Process*
2. **Gel electrophoresis** is a technique for separating molecules (including fragments of nucleic acids) by size, shape, and electrical charge.
3. The **Southern blot** technique allows researchers to stabilize DNA sequences from an electrophoresis gel and then localize them using DNA dyes or probes.
4. **DNA microarrays,** containing nucleotide sequences of thousands of genes, are used to monitor gene activity and the presence of microbes in patients and the environment.
5. Geneticists artificially insert DNA into cells by electroporation, protoplast fusion, or injection.
6. Fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH) uses fluorescent nucleic acid probes to localize specific genetic sequences.

Applications of Recombinant DNA Technology (pp. 246–253)

1. **Genomics** is the sequencing **(genetic mapping),** analysis, and comparison of genomes. Genetic sequencing has been sped up by an automated machine that distinguishes among fluorescent dyes attached to each type of nucleotide base.
2. Unique DNA sequences reveal the presence of microbes that have never been cultured in a laboratory.
3. Scientists synthesize **subunit vaccines** by introducing genes for a pathogen's polypeptides into cells or viruses. When the cells, the viruses, or the polypeptides they produce are injected into a human, the body's immune system is exposed to and reacts against relatively harmless antigens instead of the potentially harmful pathogen.
4. **Genetic screening** can detect infections and inherited diseases before a patient shows any sign of disease.
5. **Genetic fingerprinting** (DNA fingerprinting), which identifies unique sequences of DNA, is used in paternity investigations, crime scene forensics, diagnostic microbiology, and epidemiology.
6. **Gene therapy** cures various diseases by replacing defective genes with normal genes.
7. In **xenotransplants** involving recombinant DNA technology, human genes would be inserted into animals to produce cells, tissues, or organs for introduction into the human body.
8. **Transgenic** plants and animals have been genetically altered by the inclusion of genes from other organisms.
9. Agricultural uses of recombinant DNA technology include advances in herbicide tolerance, salt tolerance, freeze resistance, and pest resistance as well as improvements in nutritional value, yield, and shelf life.

The Ethics and Safety of Recombinant DNA Technology (p. 253)

1. Among the ethical and safety issues surrounding recombinant DNA technology are concerns over the accidental release of altered organisms into the environment and the potential for creating genetically modified biological weapons.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following statements is true concerning recombinant DNA technology?
   a. It will replace biotechnology in the future.
   b. It is a single technique for genetic manipulation.
   c. It is useful in manipulating genotypes but not phenotypes.
   d. It involves modification of an organism's genome.

2. A DNA gene synthesized from an RNA template is _____.
   a. reverse transcriptase
   b. complementary DNA
   c. recombinant DNA
   d. probe DNA

3. After scientists exposed cultures of *Penicillium* to agents X, Y, and Z, they examined the type and amount of penicillin produced by the altered fungi to find the one that is most effective. Agents X, Y, and Z were probably _____.
   a. recombinant cells
   b. competent
   c. mutagens
   d. phages

4. Which of the following is *false* concerning vectors in recombinant DNA technology?
   a. Vectors are small enough to manipulate outside a cell.
   b. Vectors contain a recognizable genetic marker.
   c. Vectors survive inside cells.
   d. Vectors must contain genes for self-replication.

5. Which recombinant DNA technique is used to replicate copies of a DNA molecule?
   a. PCR
   b. gel electrophoresis
   c. electroporation
   d. reverse transcription

6. Which of the following would be most useful in following gene expression in a yeast cell?
   a. Southern blot
   b. reverse transcription
   c. DNA microarray
   d. restriction enzymes

7. Which of the following techniques is used regularly in the study of genomics?
   a. Clones are selected using a vector with two genetic markers.
   b. Genes are inserted to produce an antigenic protein from a pathogen.
   c. Fluorescent nucleotide bases are sequenced.
   d. Defective organs are replaced with those made in animal hosts.

8. Restriction enzyme *Hha*I _____.
   a. recombines DNA
   b. cuts DNA at a specific nucleotide sequence
   c. is likely derived from *Haemophilus influenzae*
   d. all of the above

9. Which application of recombinant DNA technology involves the production of a distinct pattern of DNA fragments on a gel?
   a. genetic fingerprinting
   b. gene therapy
   c. genetic screening
   d. protein synthesis

10. A DNA microarray consists of _____.
    a. a series of clones containing the entire genome of a microbe
    b. recombinant microbial cells
    c. restriction enzyme fragments of DNA molecules
    d. single-stranded DNA localized on a substrate

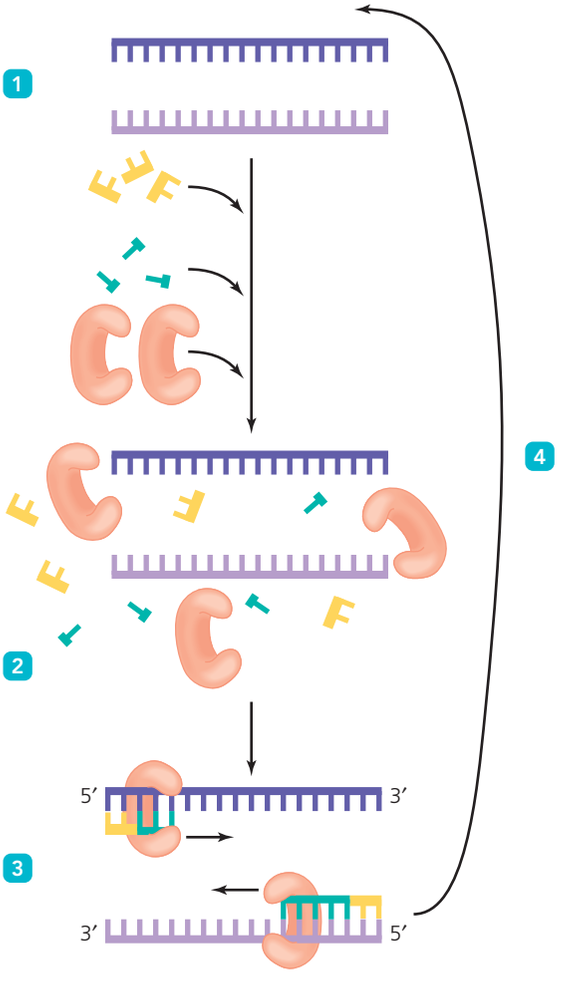
Modified True/False

Indicate which of the following are true and which are false. Rewrite any false statements to make them true by changing the underlined words.

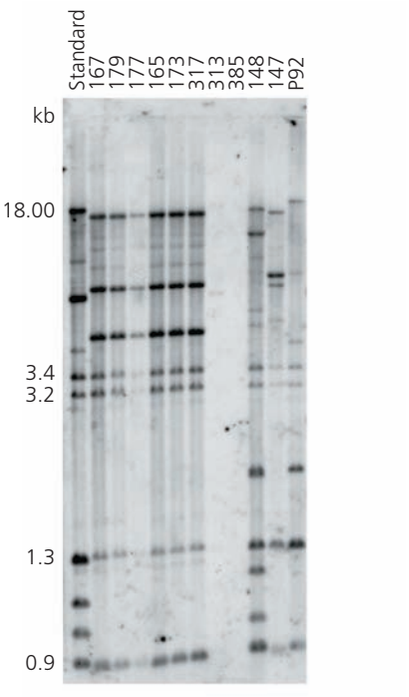
1. ____ Restriction enzymes <u>inhibit the movement of</u> DNA.
2. ____ Restriction enzymes act at <u>specific</u> nucleotide sequences within a double-stranded DNA molecule.
3. ____ <u>A thermocycler</u> separates molecules based on their size, shape, and electrical charge.
4. ____ Protoplast fusion is often used in the genetic modification of <u>plants</u>.
5. ____ Gel electrophoresis is used in <u>DNA microarrays</u>.

Visualize It!

1. Label the reagents and steps of PCR on the figure below. Indicate the temperature of the chemicals at each numbered step.



2. Using the "DNA fingerprint" result shown here, which patients can be diagnosed as having disease?



Short Answer

1. Describe three artificial methods of introducing DNA into cells.
2. Why is cloning a practical technique for medical researchers?
3. Describe three ways scientists use synthetic nucleic acids.
4. Describe a gene library and its usefulness.
5. List three potential problems of recombinant DNA technology.

Critical Thinking

1. Examine the restriction sites listed in Table 8.1 on p. 239. Which restriction enzymes produce restriction fragments with sticky ends? Which produce fragments with blunt ends?
2. A cancer-inducing virus, HTLV-1, inserts itself into a human chromosome, where it remains. How can a laboratory technician prove that a patient is infected with HTLV-1 even when there is no sign of cancer?
3. A thermocycler uses DNA polymerase from hyperthermophilic prokaryotes, but it cannot use DNA polymerase derived from *E. coli.* Why not?
4. How is the result of a Southern blot similar to the result of surveillance using a DNA microarray?
5. *Hha*I recognizes and cuts this DNA sequence at the sites indicated:

   ↓
   G-C-G-C
   C-G-C-G
   ↑

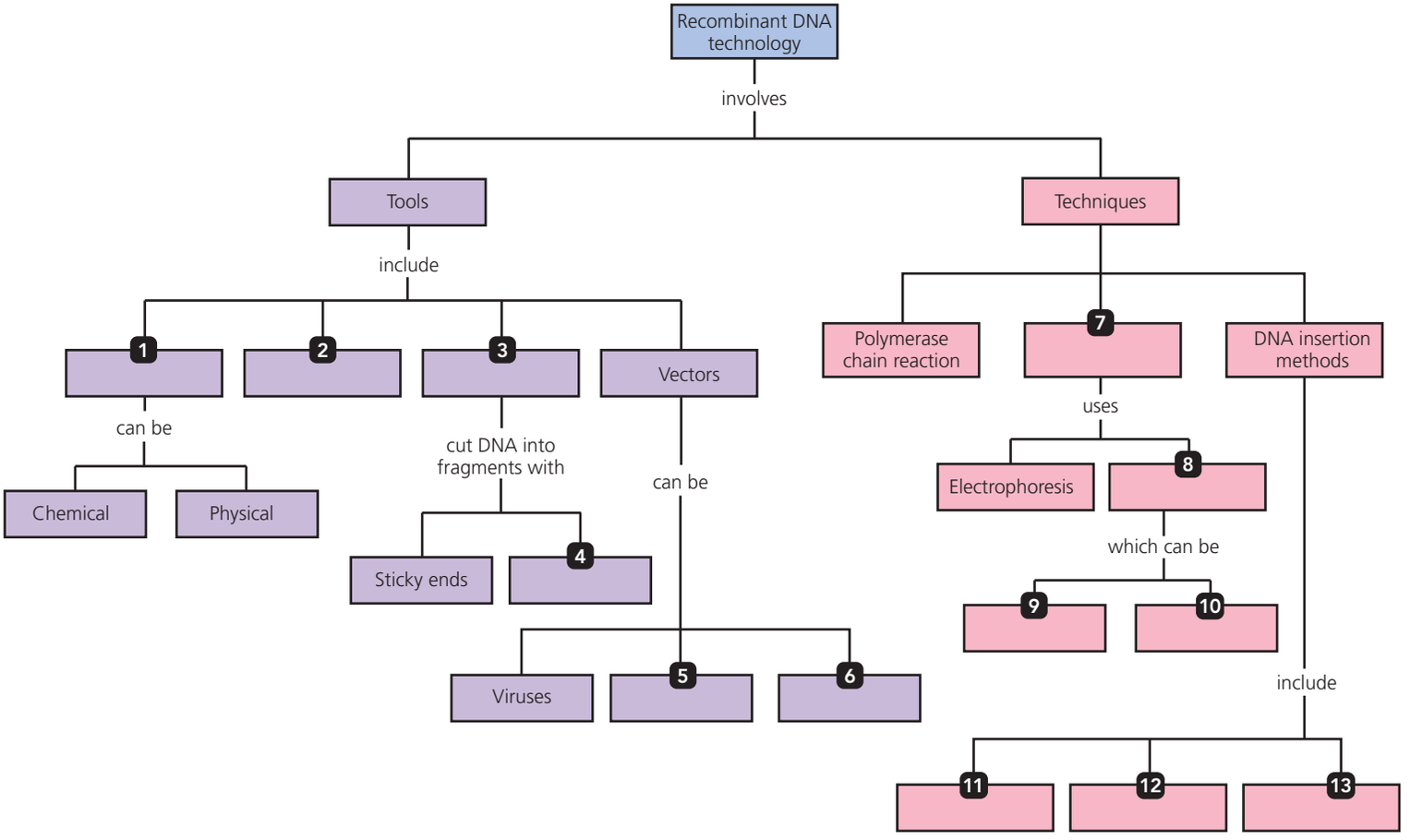
   Describe the fragments resulting from the use of this enzyme.
6. PCR replication of DNA is similar to bacterial population growth. If a scientist starts PCR with 15 DNA helices and runs the reaction for 15 cycles, how many DNA molecules will be present at the end? Show your calculations.
7. If a gene contains the sequence TACAATCGCATTGAA, what antisense RNA could be used to stop translation directly?
8. Suppose researchers learn that a particular congenital disease is caused by synthesis of a protein coded by a mutated gene. Describe a way in which recombinant DNA technology might be used to prevent translation of the protein.

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes recombinant DNA technology. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Blunt ends
DNA probes
Electroporation
Fluorescent
Injection
Mutagens
Plasmids
Protoplast fusion
Radioactive
Restriction enzymes
Reverse transcriptase
Southern blot
Transposons



9 Controlling Microbial Growth in the Environment

Millions of people wear contact lenses without complications. But the use of contact lenses is not completely without risk. Uncommon but serious infections, such as bacterial keratitis, have been linked to contact lens use. Infection by *Acanthamoeba*, a protozoan, can result from using contaminated lens care solutions or rinsing contact lenses in tap water. Bacteria can also proliferate on improperly cleaned lens storage cases, forming slimy biofilms.

To reduce the risk of microbial infection, people who wear contact lenses must care for and use them properly. Lenses should be chemically disinfected as directed by an optometrist and never rinsed in tap water or saliva. Lenses should not be left in the eyes longer than recommended. Lens-cleaning solutions should be discarded after their expiration dates. Storage cases should be rinsed daily with lens-cleaning solution and left to air-dry; periodically, they should be replaced altogether.

In this chapter we will study a wide variety of methods used to control microorganisms in our environment.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The eyes may be windows of the soul, but they can definitely be doors for pathogens. Care must be taken with contact lenses.

The control of microbes in health care facilities, in laboratories, and at home is a significant and practical aspect of microbiology. In this chapter we study the terminology and principles of microbial control, the factors affecting the efficacy of microbial control, and various chemical and physical means to control microorganisms and viruses. (One important aspect of microbial control—the use of antimicrobial drugs to assist the body's defenses against pathogens—will be considered in Chapter 10.)

Basic Principles of Microbial Control

Scientists, health care professionals, researchers, and government workers should use precise terminology when referring to microbial control in the environment. In the following sections we consider the terminology of microbial control, the concept of microbial death rates, and the action of antimicrobial agents.

Terminology of Microbial Control

Learning Outcomes

9.1 Contrast sterilization, disinfection, and antisepsis and describe their practical uses.
9.2 Contrast the terms *degerming*, *sanitization*, and *pasteurization*.
9.3 Compare the effects of *-static* versus *-cidal* control agents on microbial growth.

It is important for microbiologists, health care workers, and others to use correct terminology for describing microbial control. Although many of these terms are familiar to the general public, they are often misused.

In its strictest sense, **sterilization** refers to the removal or destruction of *all* microbes, including viruses and bacterial endospores, in or on an object. (The term does not apply to *prions*, which are infectious proteins, because standard sterilizing techniques do not destroy them.)

In practical terms, sterilization indicates only the eradication of harmful microorganisms and viruses; some innocuous microbes may still be present and viable in an environment that is considered sterile. For instance, *commercial sterilization* of canned food does not kill all hyperthermophilic microbes; however, because they do not cause disease and cannot grow and spoil food at ambient temperatures, they are of no practical concern. Likewise, some hyperthermophiles may survive sterilization by laboratory methods (discussed shortly), but they are of no practical concern to technicians because they cannot grow or reproduce under normal laboratory conditions.

The term **aseptic**[1] (ā-sep´tik) describes an environment or procedure that is free of contamination by *pathogens.* For example, vegetables and fruit juices are available in aseptic packaging, and surgeons and laboratory technicians use aseptic techniques to avoid contaminating a surgical field or laboratory equipment.

Disinfection[2] refers to the use of physical or chemical agents known as **disinfectants,** including ultraviolet light, heat, alcohol, and bleach, to inhibit or destroy microorganisms, especially pathogens. Unlike sterilization, disinfection does not guarantee that all pathogens are eliminated; indeed, disinfectants alone cannot inhibit endospores or some viruses. Further, the term *disinfection* is used only in reference to treatment of inanimate objects. When a chemical is used on skin or other tissue, the process is called **antisepsis**[3] (an-tē-sep´sis), and the chemical is called an **antiseptic.** Antiseptics and disinfectants often have the same components, but disinfectants are more concentrated or can be left on a surface for longer periods of time. Of course, some disinfectants, such as steam or concentrated bleach, are not suitable for use as antiseptics.

Degerming is the removal of microbes from a surface by scrubbing, such as when you wash your hands or a nurse prepares an area of skin for an injection. Though chemicals such as soap or alcohol are commonly used during degerming, the action of thoroughly scrubbing the surface may be more important than the chemical in removing microbes.

Sanitization[4] is the process of disinfecting places and utensils used by the public to reduce the number of pathogenic microbes to meet accepted public health standards. For example, steam, high-pressure hot water, and scrubbing are used to sanitize restaurant utensils and dishes, and chemicals are used to sanitize public toilets. Thus, the difference between *disinfecting* dishes at home and *sanitizing* dishes in a restaurant is the arena—private versus public—in which the activity takes place.

Pasteurization[5] is the use of heat to kill pathogens and reduce the number of spoilage microorganisms in food and beverages. Milk, fruit juices, wine, and beer are commonly pasteurized.

So far, we have seen that there are two major types of microbial control—sterilization, which is the elimination of all microbes, and antisepsis or disinfection, which each denote the destruction of vegetative (nonspore) cells and many viruses. Modifications of disinfection include degerming, sanitization, and pasteurization. Some scientists and clinicians apply these terms only to pathogenic microorganisms.

Additionally, scientists and health care professionals use the suffixes *-stasis/-static*[6] to indicate that a chemical or physical agent inhibits microbial metabolism and growth but does not necessarily kill microbes. Thus, refrigeration is bacteriostatic for most bacterial species; it inhibits their growth, but they can resume metabolism when the optimal temperature is restored. By contrast, words ending in *-cide/-cidal*[7] refer to agents that destroy or permanently inactivate a particular type of microbe; *virucides* inactivate viruses, *bactericides* kill bacteria, and *fungicides* kill fungal hyphae, spores, and yeasts. *Germicides* are chemical agents that destroy pathogenic microorganisms in general.

[1] From Greek *a*, meaning "not," and *sepsis*, meaning "decay."
[2] From Latin *dis*, meaning "reversal," and *inficere*, meaning "to corrupt."
[3] From Greek *anti*, meaning "against," and *sepsis*, meaning "putrefaction."
[4] From Latin *sanitas*, meaning "healthy."
[5] Named for Louis Pasteur, inventor of the process.
[6] Greek, meaning "to stand"—that is, to remain relatively unchanged.
[7] From Latin *cidium*, meaning "a slaying."

Table 9.1 summarizes the terminology used to describe the control of microbial growth.

CRITICAL THINKING

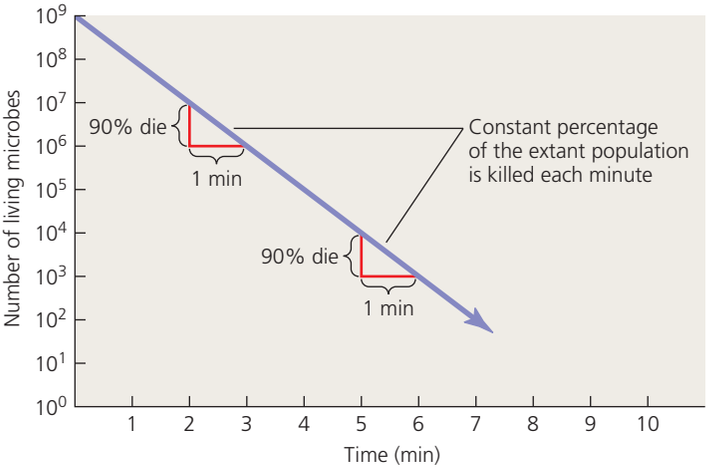
A student inoculates *Escherichia coli* into two test tubes containing the same sterile liquid medium, except the first tube also contains a drop of a chemical with an antimicrobial effect. After 24 hours of incubation, the first tube remains clear, whereas the second tube has become cloudy with bacteria. Design an experiment to determine whether this amount of the antimicrobial chemical is *bacteriostatic* or *bactericidal* against *E. coli*.

Microbial Death Rates

Learning Outcome

9.4 Define *microbial death rate* and describe its significance in microbial control.

Scientists define **microbial death** as the permanent loss of reproductive ability under ideal environmental conditions. One technique for evaluating the efficacy of an antimicrobial agent is to calculate the **microbial death rate,** which is usually found to be constant over time for any particular microorganism under a particular set of conditions (Figure 9.1). Suppose, for example, that a scientist treats a broth containing 1 billion (10^9) microbes with an agent that kills 90% of them in 1 minute. The most susceptible cells die first, leaving 100 million (10^8) hardier cells after the first minute. After another minute of treatment, another 90% die, leaving 10 million (10^7) cells that have even greater resistance to and require longer exposure to the agent before they die. Notice that in this case, each full minute decreases the number of living cells 10-fold. The broth will be sterile when all the cells are dead. When these results are plotted on a semilogarithmic graph—in which the *y*-axis is



▲ **Figure 9.1 A plot of microbial death rate.** Microbicidal agents do not simultaneously kill all cells. Rather, they kill a constant percentage of cells over time—in this case, 90% per minute. On this semilogarithmic graph, a constant death rate is indicated by a straight line. *How many minutes are required for sterilization in this case?*

Figure 9.1 *For this microbe under these conditions, this microbicidal agent requires 9 minutes to achieve sterilization.*

TABLE 9.1 Terminology of Microbial Control

Term	Definition	Examples	Comments
Antisepsis	Reduction in the number of microorganisms and viruses, particularly potential pathogens, on living tissue	Iodine; alcohol	Antiseptics are frequently disinfectants whose strength has been reduced to make them safe for living tissues.
Aseptic	Refers to an environment or procedure free of pathogenic contaminants	Preparation of surgical field; hand washing; flame sterilization of laboratory equipment	Scientists, laboratory technicians, and health care workers routinely follow standardized aseptic techniques.
-cide **-cidal**	Suffixes indicating destruction of a type of microbe	Bactericide; fungicide; germicide; virucide	Germicides include ethylene oxide, propylene oxide, and aldehydes.
Degerming	Removal of microbes by mechanical means	Hand washing; alcohol swabbing at site of injection	Chemicals play a secondary role to the mechanical removal of microbes.
Disinfection	Destruction of most microorganisms and viruses on nonliving tissue	Phenolics; alcohols; aldehydes; soaps	The term is used primarily in relation to pathogens.
Pasteurization	Use of heat to destroy pathogens and reduce the number of spoilage microorganisms in foods and beverages	Pasteurized milk and fruit juices	Heat treatment is brief to minimize alteration of taste and nutrients; microbes still remain and eventually cause spoilage.
Sanitization	Removal of pathogens from objects to meet public health standards	Washing tableware in scalding water in restaurants	Standards of sanitization vary among governmental jurisdictions.
-stasis **-static**	Suffixes indicating inhibition but not complete destruction of a type of microbe	Bacteriostatic; fungistatic; virustatic	Germistatic agents include some chemicals, refrigeration, and freezing.
Sterilization	Destruction of all microorganisms and viruses in or on an object	Preparation of microbiological culture media and canned food	Typically achieved by steam under pressure, incineration, or ethylene oxide gas.

logarithmic and the *x*-axis is arithmetic—the plot of microbial death rate is a straight line; that is, the microbial death rate is constant.

Action of Antimicrobial Agents

Learning Outcome

9.5 Describe how antimicrobial agents act against cell walls, cytoplasmic membranes, proteins, and nucleic acids.

There are many types of chemical and physical microbial controls, but their modes of action fall into two basic categories: those that disrupt the integrity of cells by adversely altering their cell walls or cytoplasmic membranes and those that interrupt cellular metabolism and reproduction by interfering with the structures of proteins and nucleic acids.

Alteration of Cell Walls and Membranes

A cell wall maintains cellular integrity by counteracting the effects of osmosis when the cell is in a hypotonic solution. If the wall is disrupted by physical or chemical agents, it no longer prevents the cell from bursting as water moves into the cell by osmosis (see Figure 3.19).

Beneath a cell wall, the cytoplasmic membrane essentially acts as a bag that contains the cytoplasm and controls the passage of chemicals into and out of the cell. Extensive damage to a membrane's proteins or phospholipids by any physical or chemical agent allows the cellular contents to leak out—which, if not immediately repaired, causes death.

In enveloped viruses, the envelope is a membrane composed of proteins and phospholipids that is responsible for the attachment of the virus to its target cell. Damage to the envelope by physical or chemical agents fatally interrupts viral replication. The lack of an envelope in nonenveloped viruses accounts for their greater tolerance of harsh environmental conditions, including antimicrobial agents.

Damage to Proteins and Nucleic Acids

Proteins regulate cellular metabolism, function as enzymes in most metabolic reactions, and form structural components in membranes and cytoplasm. As we have seen, a protein's function depends on an exact three-dimensional shape, which is maintained by hydrogen and disulfide bonds between amino acids. When these bonds are broken by extreme heat or certain chemicals, the protein's shape changes (see Figure 5.8). Such *denatured* proteins cease to function, bringing about cellular death.

Chemicals, radiation, and heat can also alter and even destroy nucleic acids. Given that the genes of a cell or virus are composed of nucleic acids, disruption of these molecules can produce fatal mutations. Additionally, that portion of a ribosome that actually catalyzes the synthesis of proteins is a *ribozyme*—that is, an enzymatic RNA molecule. For this reason, physical or chemical agents that interfere with nucleic acids also stop protein synthesis.

CRITICAL THINKING

Would you expect Gram-negative bacteria or Gram-positive bacteria to be more susceptible to antimicrobial chemicals that act against cell walls? Explain your answer, which you should base solely on the nature of the cells' walls (see Figure 3.14).

Scientists and health care workers have at their disposal many chemical and physical agents to control microbial growth and activity. In the next section we consider the factors and conditions that should be considered in choosing a particular control method as well as some ways to evaluate a method's effectiveness.

The Selection of Microbial Control Methods

Ideally, agents used for the control of microbes should be inexpensive, fast acting, and stable during storage. Further, a perfect agent would control the growth and reproduction of every type of microbe while being harmless to humans, animals, and objects. Unfortunately, such ideal products and procedures do not exist—every agent has limitations and disadvantages. In the next section we consider the factors that affect the efficacy of antimicrobial methods.

Factors Affecting the Efficacy of Antimicrobial Methods

Learning Outcomes

9.6 List factors to consider in selecting a microbial control method.

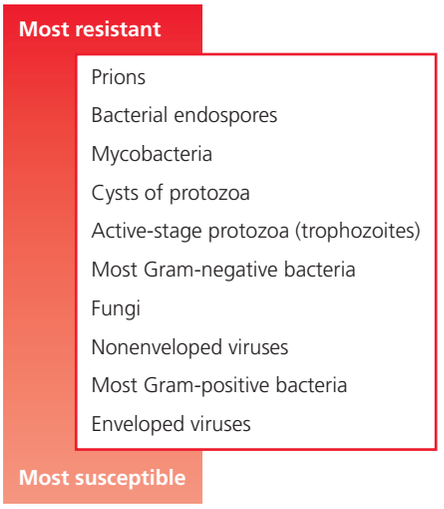
9.7 Identify the three most resistant groups of microbes and explain why they are resistant to many antimicrobial agents.

9.8 Discuss environmental conditions that can influence the effectiveness of antimicrobial agents.

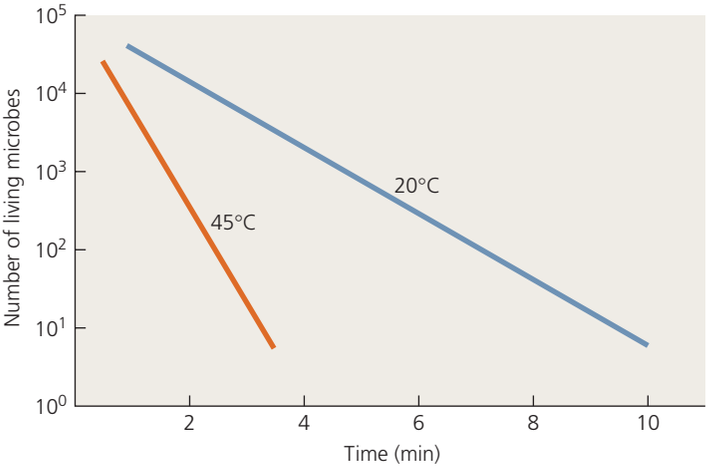
In each situation, microbiologists, laboratory personnel, and medical staff must consider at least three factors: the nature of the sites to be treated, the degree of susceptibility of the microbes involved, and the environmental conditions that pertain.

Site to Be Treated

In many cases, the choice of an antimicrobial method depends on the nature of the site to be treated. For example, harsh chemicals and extreme heat cannot be used on humans, animals, and fragile objects, such as artificial heart valves and plastic utensils. Moreover, when performing medical procedures, medical personnel must choose a method and level of microbial control based on the site of the procedure because the site greatly affects the potential for subsequent infection. For example, the use of medical instruments that penetrate the outer defenses of the body, such as needles and scalpels, carries a greater potential for infection, so they must be sterilized; however, disinfection



▲ **Figure 9.2 Relative susceptibilities of microbes to antimicrobial agents.** *Why are nonenveloped viruses generally more resistant than enveloped viruses?*



▲ **Figure 9.3 Effect of temperature on the efficacy of an antimicrobial chemical.** This semilogarithmic graph shows that the microbial death rate is higher at higher temperatures; to kill the same number of microbes, this disinfectant required only 2 minutes at 45°C but 7 minutes at 20°C.

Figure 9.2 *A phospholipid envelope is typically more fragile than a protein coat.*

may be adequate for items that contact only the surface of a mucous membrane or the skin. In the latter case, sterilization is required only if the patient is immunocompromised.

Relative Susceptibility of Microorganisms

Though microbial death rate is usually constant for a particular agent acting against a single microbe, death rates do vary—sometimes dramatically—among microorganisms and viruses. Microbes fall along a continuum from most susceptible to most resistant to antimicrobial agents. For example, *enveloped* viruses, such as HIV, are more susceptible to antimicrobial agents and heat than are *nonenveloped viruses*, such as poliovirus, because viral envelopes are more easily disrupted than the protein coats of nonenveloped viruses. The relative susceptibility of microbes to antimicrobial agents is illustrated in **Figure 9.2**.

Often, scientists and medical personnel select a method to kill the hardiest microorganisms present, assuming that such a treatment will kill more fragile microbes as well. The most resistant microbes include the following:

- Bacterial endospores. The endospores of *Bacillus* (ba-sil´ŭs) and *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) are the most resilent forms of life. They can survive environmental extremes of temperature, acidity, and dryness and can withstand many chemical disinfectants. For example, endospores have survived more than 20 years in 70% alcohol, and scientists have recovered viable endospores that were embalmed with Egyptian mummies thousands of years ago.
- Species of *Mycobacterium.* The cell walls of members of this genus, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī-kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis), contain a large amount of a waxy lipid. The wax allows these bacteria to survive drying and protects them from most water-based chemicals; therefore, medical personnel must use strong disinfectants or heat to treat whatever comes into contact with tuberculosis patients, including utensils, equipment, and patients' rooms.
- Cysts of protozoa. A protozoan cyst's wall prevents entry of most disinfectants, protects against drying, and shields against radiation and heat.

Prions, which are infectious proteins that cause degenerative diseases of the brain, are more resistant than any living thing.

The effectiveness of germicides can be classified as high, intermediate, or low, depending on their proficiency in inactivating or destroying microorganisms on medical instruments that cannot be sterilized with heat. *High-level germicides* kill all pathogens, including bacterial endospores. Health care professionals use them to sterilize invasive instruments such as catheters, implants, and parts of heart-lung machines. *Intermediate-level germicides* kill fungal spores, protozoan cysts, viruses, and pathogenic bacteria but not bacterial endospores. They are used to disinfect instruments that come in contact with mucous membranes but are noninvasive, such as respiratory equipment and endoscopes. *Low-level germicides* eliminate vegetative bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and some viruses; they are used to disinfect items that contact only the skin of patients, such as furniture and electrodes.

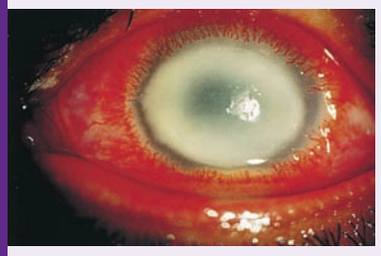
Environmental Conditions

Temperature and pH affect microbial death rates and the efficacy of antimicrobial methods. Warm disinfectants, for example, generally work better than cool ones because chemicals react faster at higher temperatures **(Figure 9.3)**. Acidic conditions enhance the antimicrobial effect of heat. Some chemical disinfectants, such as household chlorine bleach, are more effective at low pH.

Organic materials, such as fat, feces, vomit, blood, and the intercellular matrix of biofilms, interfere with the penetration

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

ACANTHAMOEBA KERATITIS



Tim liked the lake; in fact, his girlfriend suggested he was more fish than man. They spent all of their free time swimming, waterskiing, diving, and sunbathing, until Tim met a single-celled amoeba, *Acanthamoeba.*

Tim noticed something was wrong when his right eye began to hurt, turned red, and became so sensitive to light that he could not stand to be outside. Two days later, the pain was excruciating, like nothing Tim had ever experienced. It felt as if someone was pounding pieces of broken glass into the front of his eye while quickly inserting a thousand tiny needles into the back of the eye. With his eye swollen shut and tears flowing down his face, Tim sought medical aid.

The doctor diagnosed *Acanthamoeba* keratitis, which is inflammation of the covering of the eye (the cornea) caused by the amoeba. This eukaryotic microbe commonly lives in water, including rivers, hot springs, and lakes. When trapped under a contact lens, the amoeba can penetrate the eye to cause keratitis. Very occasionally, *Acanthamoeba* may also enter the body through the nasal mucous membrane or through a cut in the skin. It has become an emerging menace in our modern society because it can live in hot tubs, pools, shower heads, and sink taps.

The physician prescribed a solution of antiseptic agent that Tim had to drop into his eyes every 30 minutes, day and night, for three weeks. The treatment is painful and time consuming, but at least Tim retained his sight without needing a corneal transplant. He also learned to remove his contact lenses at the lake! (For more about *Acanthamoeba*, see p. 661.)

of heat, chemicals, and some forms of radiation, and in some cases these materials inactivate chemical disinfectants. For this reason, it is important to clean objects before sterilization or disinfection so that antimicrobial agents can thoroughly contact all the object's surfaces.

Biosafety Levels

Learning Outcome

9.9 Describe four levels of biosafety and give examples of microbes handled at each level.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has established guidelines for four levels of safety in microbiological laboratories dealing with pathogens. Each level raises personnel and environmental safety by specifying increasingly strict laboratory techniques, use of safety equipment, and design of facilities.

Biosafety Level 1 (BSL-1) is suitable for handling microbes, such as *E. coli,* not known to cause disease in healthy humans. Precautions in BSL-1 are minimal and include hand washing with antibacterial soap and washing surfaces with disinfectants.

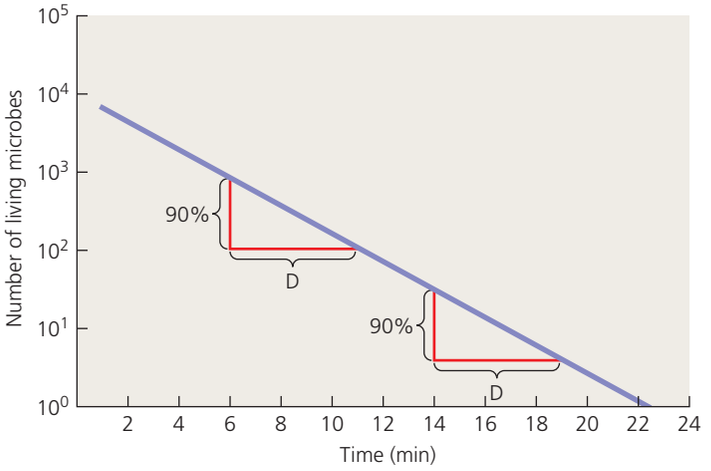
BSL-2 facilities are similar to those of BSL-1 but are designed for handling moderately hazardous agents, such as hepatitis and influenza viruses and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs o´rē-ŭs) (MRSA). Access to BSL-2 labs is limited when work is being conducted, extreme precautions are taken with contaminated sharp objects, and procedures that might produce aerosols are conducted within safety cabinets (see Figure 9.11).

BSL-3 is stricter, requiring that all manipulations be done within safety cabinets containing high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter BSL-3 also specifies special design features for the laboratory. These include entry through double sets of doors and ventilation such that air moves into the room only through an open door. Air leaving the room is HEPA-filtered before being discharged outside the room. BSL-3 is designed for experimentation on microbes such as tuberculosis and anthrax bacteria and viruses of yellow fever and Rocky Mountain spotted fever.

The most secure laboratories are *BSL-4* facilities, designated for working with dangerous or exotic microbes that cause severe or fatal diseases in humans, such as Ebola, smallpox, and Lassa fever viruses. BSL-4 labs are either separate buildings or completely isolated from all other areas of their buildings. Entry and exit are strictly controlled through electronically sealed airlocks with multiple showers, a vacuum room, an ultraviolet light room, and other safety precautions designed to destroy all traces of the biohazard. All air and water entering and leaving the facility are filtered to prevent accidental release. Personnel wear "space suits" supplied with air hoses **(Figure 9.4)**. Suits and the laboratory itself are pressurized such that microbes are swept away from workers.

Now that we have studied the terminology and general principles of microbial control and biosafety levels, we turn our attention to the actual physical and chemical agents available to scientists, medical personnel, and the general public to control microbial growth.

▲ **Figure 9.4** **A BSL-4 worker carrying Ebola virus cultures.**



▲ **Figure 9.5** **Decimal reduction time (D) as a measure of microbial death rate.** D is defined as the time it takes to kill 90% of a microbial population. Note that D is a constant that is independent of the initial density of the population. *What is the decimal reduction time of this heat treatment against this organism? What is the thermal death time?*

Figure 9.5 *D = 5 minutes; thermal death time = 22.5 minutes.*

Physical Methods of Microbial Control

Learning Outcome

9.10 Describe five types of physical methods of microbial control.

Physical methods of microbial control include exposure of the microbes to extremes of heat and cold, desiccation, filtration, osmotic pressure, and radiation.

Heat-Related Methods

Learning Outcomes

9.11 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of using moist heat in an autoclave and dry heat in an oven for sterilization.

9.12 Explain the use of *Bacillus stearothermophilus* endospores in sterilization techniques.

9.13 Explain the importance of pasteurization and describe three different pasteurization methods.

Heat is one of the older and more common means of microbial control. High temperatures denature proteins, interfere with the integrity of cytoplasmic membranes and cell walls, and disrupt the function and structure of nucleic acids. Heat can be used for sterilization, in which case all cells and viruses are deactivated, or for commercial preparation of canned goods. In so-called commercial sterilization, hyperthermophilic prokaryotes remain viable but are harmless because they cannot grow at the normal (room) temperatures in which canned foods are stored.

Though microorganisms vary in their susceptibility to heat, it can be an important agent of microbial control. As a result, scientists have developed concepts and terminology to convey these differences in susceptibility. **Thermal death point** is the lowest temperature that kills all cells in a broth in 10 minutes, and **thermal death time** is the time it takes to completely sterilize a particular volume of liquid at a set temperature.

As we have discussed, cell death occurs logarithmically. When measuring the effectiveness of heat sterilization, researchers calculate the **decimal reduction time (D),** which is the time required to destroy 90% of the microbes in a sample **(Figure 9.5)**. This concept is especially useful to food processors because they must heat foods to eliminate all the endospores of anaerobic *Clostridium botulinum* (bo-tū-lī´num), which could germinate and produce botulism toxin inside sealed cans. The standard in food processing is to apply heat such that a population of 10^{12} *C. botulinum* endospores is reduced to 10^0 (i.e., 1) endospore (a 12-fold reduction), which leaves only a very small chance that any particular can of food contains an endospore. Researchers have calculated that the D value for *C. botulinum* endospores at 121°C is 0.204 minute, so it takes 2.5 minutes (0.204 × 12) to reduce 10^{12} endospores to 1 endospore.

Moist Heat

Moist heat, which is commonly used to disinfect, sanitize, sterilize, and pasteurize, kills cells by denaturing proteins and destroying cytoplasmic membranes. Moist heat is more effective in microbial control than dry heat because water is a better conductor of heat than air. An example from your kitchen readily demonstrates this: you can safely stick your hand into an oven at 350°F for a few moments, but putting it into boiling water at the lower temperature of 212°F would burn you severely.

The first method we consider for controlling microbes using moist heat is boiling.

Boiling Boiling kills the vegetative cells of bacteria and fungi, the trophozoites of protozoa, and most viruses within 10 minutes at sea level. Contrary to popular belief, water at a rapid

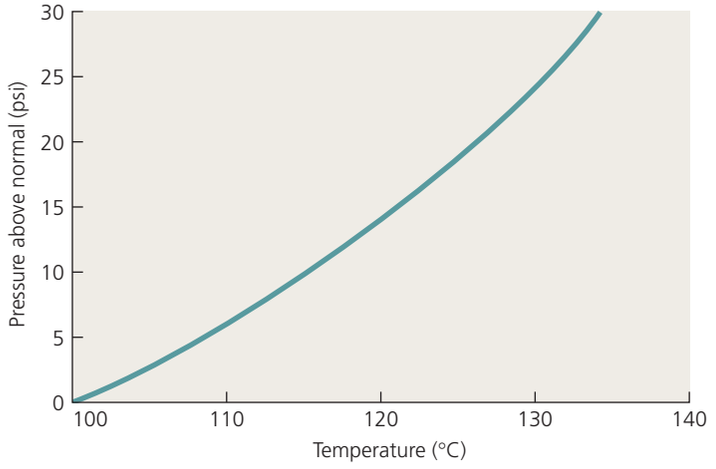
boil is no hotter than that at a slow boil; boiling water at normal atmospheric pressure cannot exceed boiling temperature (100°C at sea level) because escaping steam carries excess heat away. It is impossible to boil something more quickly simply by applying more heat; the added heat is carried away by the escaping steam. Boiling *time* is the critical factor. Further, it is important to realize that at higher elevations water boils at lower temperatures because atmospheric pressure is lower; thus, a longer boiling time is required in Denver than in Los Angeles to get the same antimicrobial effect.

Bacterial endospores, protozoan cysts, and some viruses (such as hepatitis viruses) can survive boiling at sea level for many minutes or even hours. In fact, because bacterial endospores can withstand boiling for more than 20 hours, boiling is not recommended when true sterilization is required. Boiling is effective for sanitizing restaurant tableware or disinfecting baby bottles.

Autoclaving Practically speaking, true sterilization using heat requires higher temperatures than that of boiling water. To achieve the required temperature, pressure is applied to boiling water to prevent the escape of heat in steam. The reason that applying pressure succeeds in achieving sterilization is that the temperature at which water boils (and steam is formed) increases as pressure increases **(Figure 9.6)**. Scientists and medical personnel routinely use a piece of equipment called an *autoclave* to sterilize chemicals and objects that can tolerate moist heat. Alternative techniques (discussed shortly) must be used for items that are damaged by heat or water, such as some plastics and vitamins.

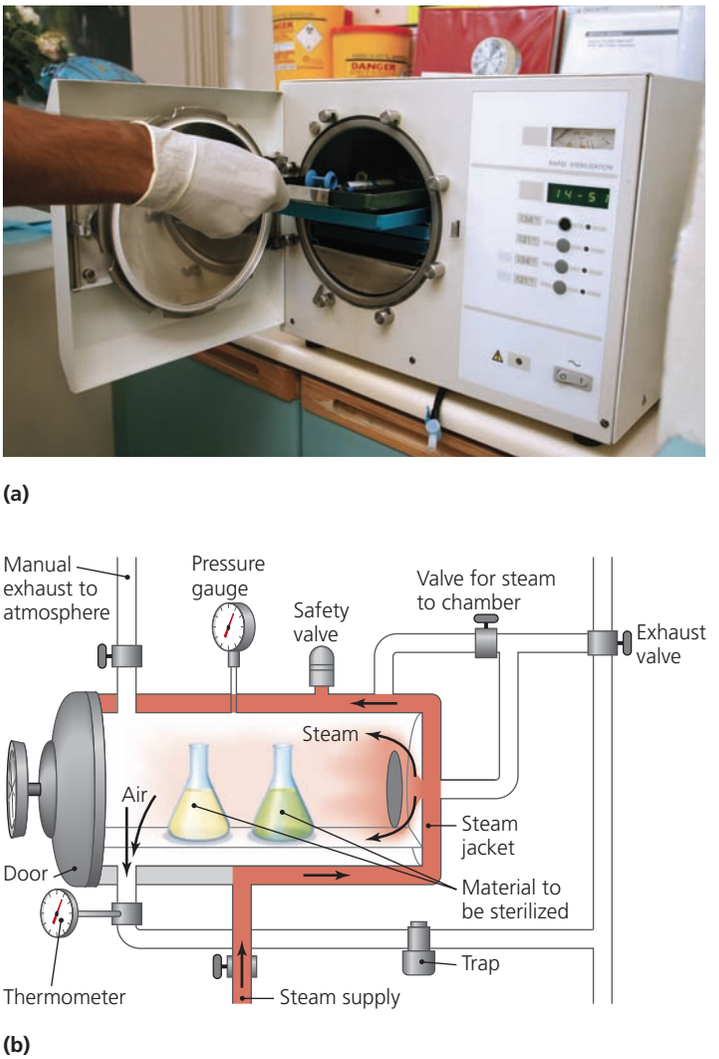
An **autoclave** consists of a pressure chamber, pipes to introduce and evacuate steam, valves to remove air and control pressure, and pressure and temperature gauges to monitor the procedure **(Figure 9.7)**. As steam enters an autoclave chamber, it forces air out, raises the temperature of the contents, and increases the pressure until a set temperature and pressure are reached.

Scientists have determined that a temperature of 121°C, which requires the addition of 15 pounds per square inch (psi)[8] of pressure above that of normal air pressure (see Figure 9.6), destroys all microbes in a small volume in about 10 minutes. Typically, an autoclave holds the pressure and temperature for 15 minutes to provide a margin of safety. Sterilizing large volumes of liquids or solids slows the process because they require more time for heat to penetrate. Thus, it requires more time to sterilize 1 liter of fluid in a flask than the same volume of fluid distributed into smaller tubes. Autoclaving solid substances, such as meat, also requires extra time because it takes longer for heat to penetrate to their centers.



▲ Figure 9.6 The relationship between temperature and pressure. Note that higher temperatures—and, in consequence, greater antimicrobial action—are associated with higher pressures. *Ultra-high-temperature pasteurization of milk requires a temperature of 134°C; what pressure must be applied to the milk to achieve this temperature?*

Figure 9.6 29 psi.



▲ Figure 9.7 An autoclave. **(a)** A photo of a laboratory autoclave. **(b)** A schematic of an autoclave, showing how it functions.

[8]The Standard International (SI) equivalent of 1 psi is 6.9×10^3 pascals.

Sterilization in an autoclave requires that steam be able to contact all liquids and surfaces that might be contaminated with microbes; therefore, solid objects must be wrapped in porous cloth or paper, not sealed in plastic or aluminum foil, both of which are impermeable to steam. Containers of liquids must be sealed loosely enough to allow steam to circulate freely, and all air must be forced out by steam. Since steam is lighter than air, it cannot force air from the bottom of an empty vessel; therefore, empty containers must be tipped so that air can flow out of them.

Scientists use several means to ensure that an autoclave has sterilized its contents. A common one is a chemical that changes color when the proper combination of temperature and time have been reached. Often such a color indicator is impressed in a pattern on tape or paper so that the word *sterile* or a pattern or design appears. Another technique uses plastic beads that melt when proper conditions are met.

A biological indicator of sterility uses endospores of the bacterium *Bacillus stearothermophilus* (ba-sil´ŭs ste-rō-ther-ma´fil-ŭs) impregnated into tape. After autoclaving, the tape is aseptically inoculated into sterile broth. If no bacterial growth appears, the original material is considered sterile. In a variation on this technique, the endospores are on a strip in one compartment of a vial that also includes a growth medium containing a pH color indicator. After autoclaving, a barrier between the two compartments is broken, putting the endospores into contact with the medium **(Figure 9.8)**. In this case, the absence of a color change after incubation indicates sterility. ► **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Principles of Autoclaving***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

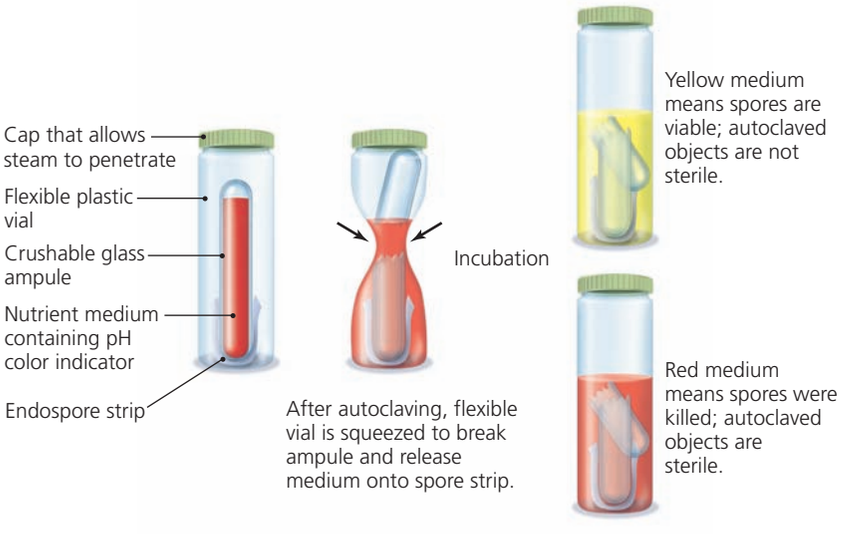
Where should you place a sterilization indicator within an autoclave? Explain your reasoning.

Pasteurization Louis Pasteur developed a method of heating beer and wine just enough to destroy the microorganisms that cause spoilage without ruining the taste. Today, pasteurization is also used to kill pathogens in milk, ice cream, yogurt, and fruit juices. *Brucella melitensis* (broo-sel´lă me-li-ten´sis), *Mycobacterium bovis* (bō´vis), and *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē), the causative agents of undulant fever, bovine tuberculosis, and one kind of diarrhea, respectively, are controlled in this manner.

Pasteurization is not sterilization. *Thermoduric* and *thermophilic*—heat-tolerant and heat-loving—prokaryotes survive pasteurization, but they do not cause spoilage over the relatively short times during which properly refrigerated and pasteurized foods are stored before consumption. In addition, such prokaryotes are generally not pathogenic.

The combination of time and temperature required for effective pasteurization varies with the product. Because milk is the most familiar pasteurized product, we consider the pasteurization of milk in some detail. Historically, milk was pasteurized by the *batch method* for 30 minutes at 63°C, but most milk processors today use a high-temperature, short-time method known as *flash pasteurization,* in which milk flows through heated tubes that raise its temperature to 72°C for only 15 seconds. This treatment effectively destroys all pathogens. *Ultra-high-temperature pasteurization* heats the milk to at least 135°C for only 1 second, but some consumers claim that it adversely affects the taste.

Ultra-High-Temperature Sterilization The dairy industry and other food processors can also use *ultra-high-temperature sterilization,* which involves flash heating milk or other liquids to rid them of all living microbes. The process involves passing the liquid through superheated steam at about 140°C for 1 to 3 seconds and then cooling it rapidly. Treated liquids can be stored indefinitely at room temperature without microbial spoilage, though chemical degradation after months of storage results in flavor changes. Small packages of dairy creamer served in restaurants are often sterilized by the ultra-high-temperature method. **Table 9.2** summarizes the dairy industry's use of moist heat for controlling microbes in milk.



◄ **Figure 9.8 Sterility indicators.** A commercial endospore-test ampule, which is included among objects to be sterilized. After autoclaving is complete, the medium, which contains a pH color indicator, is released onto the endospore strip when the ampule is broken. If the endospores are still alive, their metabolic wastes lower the pH, changing the color of the medium.

TABLE 9.2 Moist Heat Treatments of Milk

Process	Treatment
Historical (batch) pasteurization	63°C for 30 minutes
Flash pasteurization	72°C for 15 seconds
Ultra-high-temperature pasteurization	135°C for 1 second
Ultra-high-temperature sterilization	140°C for 1–3 seconds

Dry Heat

For substances such as powders and oils that cannot be sterilized by boiling or with steam or for materials that can be damaged by repeated exposure to steam (such as some metal objects), sterilization can be achieved by the use of dry heat, as occurs in an oven.

Hot air is an effective sterilizing agent because it denatures proteins and fosters the oxidation of metabolic and structural chemicals; however, in order to sterilize, dry heat requires higher temperatures for longer times than moist heat because dry heat penetrates more slowly. For instance, whereas an autoclave needs less than 15 minutes to sterilize an object at 121°C, an oven at the same temperature requires at least 16 hours to achieve sterility. Scientists typically use higher temperatures—171°C for 1 hour or 160°C for 2 hours—to sterilize objects in an oven, but objects made of rubber, paper, and many types of plastic oxidize rapidly (combust) under these conditions.

Complete incineration is the ultimate means of sterilization. As part of standard aseptic technique in microbiological laboratories, inoculating loops are sterilized by heating them in the flame of a Bunsen burner or with an electric heating coil until they glow red (about 1500°C). Health care workers incinerate contaminated dressings, bags, and paper cups, and field epidemiologists incinerate the carcasses of animals that have diseases such as anthrax or bovine spongiform encephalopathy (mad cow disease).

Refrigeration and Freezing

Learning Outcome

9.14 Describe the use and importance of refrigeration and freezing in limiting microbial growth.

In many situations, particularly in food preparation and storage, the most convenient method of microbial control is either refrigeration (temperatures between 0°C and 7°C) or freezing (temperatures below 0°C). These processes decrease microbial metabolism, growth, and reproduction because chemical reactions occur more slowly at low temperatures and because liquid water is not available at subzero temperatures. Note, however, that psychrophilic (cold-loving) microbes can multiply in refrigerated food and spoil its taste and suitability for consumption.

Refrigeration halts the growth of most pathogens, which are predominantly mesophiles. Notable exceptions are the bacteria *Listeria* (lis-tēr´ē-ă), which can reproduce to dangerous levels in refrigerated food, and *Yersinia* (yer-sin´ē-ă), which can multiply in refrigerated blood products and be passed on to blood recipients. (Chapters 20 and 21 discuss these pathogens in more detail.)

Slow freezing, during which ice crystals have time to form and puncture cell membranes, is more effective than quick freezing in inhibiting microbial metabolism, though microorganisms also vary in their susceptibility to freezing. Whereas the cysts of tapeworms perish after several days in frozen meat, many vegetative bacterial cells, bacterial endospores, and viruses can survive subfreezing temperatures for years. In fact, scientists store many bacteria and viruses in low-temperature freezers at −30°C to −80°C and are able to reconstitute the microbes into viable populations by warming them in media containing proper nutrients. Therefore, we must take care in thawing and cooking frozen food because it can still contain many pathogenic microbes.

Desiccation and Lyophilization

Learning Outcome

9.15 Compare and contrast desiccation and lyophilization.

Desiccation, or drying, has been used for thousands of years to preserve such foods as fruits, peas, beans, grain, nuts, and yeast **(Figure 9.9)**. Desiccation inhibits microbial growth because metabolism requires liquid water. Drying inhibits the spread of most pathogens, including the bacteria that cause syphilis, gonorrhea, and the more common forms of bacterial pneumonia and diarrhea. However, most molds can grow on dried raisins and apricots, which have as little as 16% water content.

Scientists use **lyophilization** (lī-of´i-li-zā´shŭn), a technique combining freezing and drying, to preserve microbes and other cells for many years. In this process, scientists instantly freeze a culture in liquid nitrogen or frozen carbon dioxide (dry ice); then they subject it to a vacuum that removes frozen water through a process called *sublimation,* in which the water is transformed directly from a solid to a gas. Lyophilization prevents the formation of large, damaging ice crystals. Although not all cells survive, enough are viable to enable the culture to be reconstituted many years later.

▲ **Figure 9.9 The use of desiccation as a means of preserving apricots in Pakistan.** In this time-honored practice, drying inhibits microbial growth by removing the water that microbes need for metabolism.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why is liquid water necessary for microbial metabolism?

Filtration

Learning Outcome

9.16 Describe the use of filters for disinfection and sterilization.

Filtration is the passage of a fluid (either a liquid or a gas) through a sieve designed to trap particles—in this case, cells or viruses—and separate them from the fluid. Researchers often use a vacuum to assist the movement of fluid through the filter **(Figure 9.10a)**. Filtration traps microbes larger than the pore size, allowing smaller microbes to pass through. In the late 1800s, filters were able to trap cells, but their pores were too large to trap the pathogens of such diseases as rabies and measles. These pathogens were thus named *filterable viruses,* which today has been shortened to *viruses.*[9] Now, filters with pores small enough to trap even viruses are available, so filtration can be used to sterilize such heat-sensitive materials as ophthalmic solutions, antibiotics, vaccines, liquid vitamins, enzymes, and culture media.

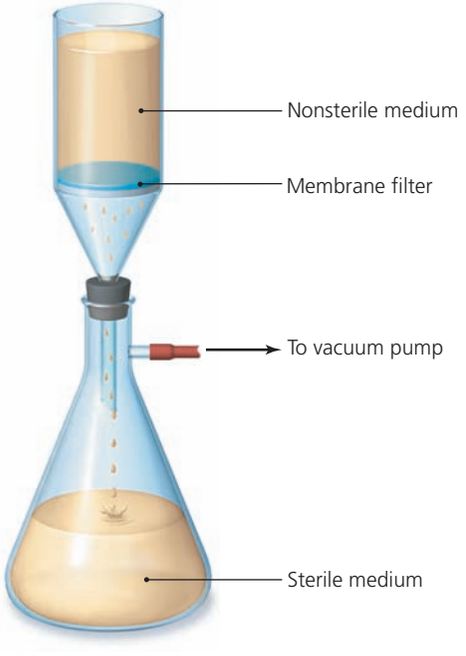
Over the years, filters have been constructed from porcelain, glass, cotton, asbestos, and diatomaceous earth, a substance composed of the innumerable glasslike cell walls of single-celled algae called diatoms. Scientists today typically use thin (only 0.1 mm thick), circular **membrane filters** manufactured of nitrocellulose or plastic and containing specific pore sizes ranging from 25 µm to less than 0.01 µm in diameter **(Figure 9.10b)**. The pores of the latter filters are small enough to trap small viruses and even some large protein molecules. Microbiologists also use filtration to estimate the number of microbes in a fluid by counting the number deposited on the filter after passing a given volume through the filter (see Figure 6.24). **Table 9.3** lists some pore sizes of membrane filters and the microbes they do not allow through.

Health care and laboratory workers routinely use filtration to prevent airborne contamination by microbes. Medical personnel wear surgical masks to prevent exhaled microbes from contaminating the environment, and cotton plugs are placed in culture vessels to prevent contamination by airborne microbes. Additionally, *high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters* are crucial parts of biological safety cabinets **(Figure 9.11)**, and HEPA filters are mounted in the air ducts of some operating rooms, rooms occupied by patients with airborne diseases such as tuberculosis, and rooms

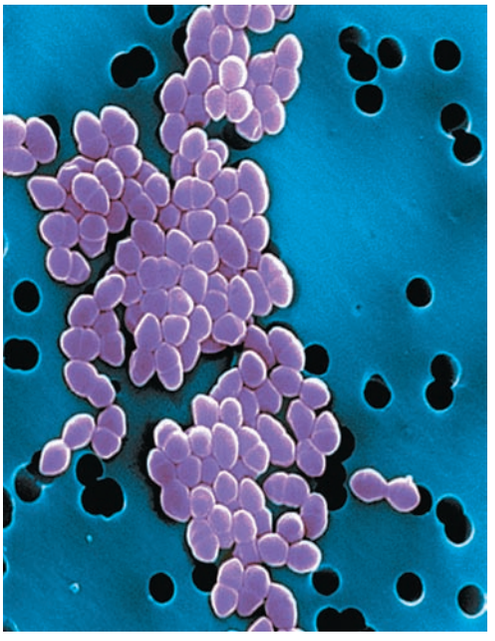
[9]Latin, meaning "poisons."

TABLE 9.3 Membrane Filters

Pore Size (µm)	Smallest Microbes That Are Trapped
5	Multicellular algae, animals, and fungi
3	Yeasts and larger unicellular algae
1.2	Protozoa and small unicellular algae
0.45	Largest bacteria
0.22	Largest viruses and most bacteria
0.025	Larger viruses and pliable bacteria (mycoplasmas, rickettsias, chlamydias, and some spirochetes)
0.01	Smallest viruses

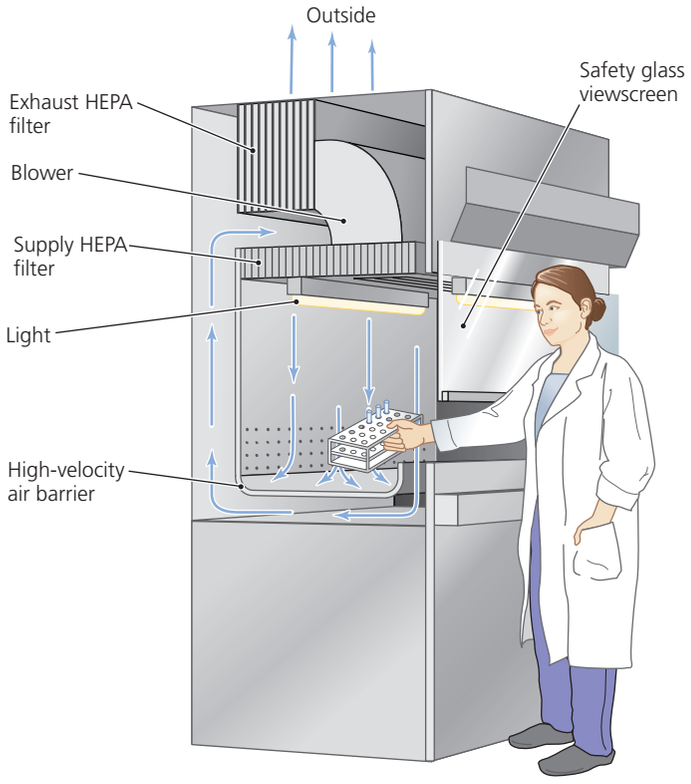


(a)



(b)

◀ **Figure 9.10 Filtration equipment used for microbial control. (a)** Assembly for sterilization by vacuum filtration. **(b)** Membrane filters composed of various substances and with pores of various sizes can be used to trap diverse microbes, here a bacterium known as vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE).



▲ **Figure 9.11 The roles of high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters in biological safety cabinets.** HEPA filters protect workers from exposure to microbes (by maintaining a barrier of filtered air across the opening of the cabinet). Hospital also use HEPA filters in air ducts of operating rooms and of the rooms of highly contagious or immunocompromised patients.

of immunocompromised patients, such as burn victims and AIDS patients.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A virologist needs to remove all bacteria from a solution containing viruses without removing the viruses. What size membrane filter should the scientist use?

Osmotic Pressure

Learning Outcome

9.17 Discuss the use of hypertonic solutions in microbial control.

Another ancient method of microbial control is the use of high concentrations of salt or sugar in foods to inhibit microbial growth by **osmotic pressure.** Osmosis is the net movement of water across a semipermeable membrane (such as a cytoplasmic membrane) from an area of higher water concentration to an area of lower water concentration. Cells in a hypertonic solution of salt or sugar lose water, and the cell shrinks (see Figure 3.19b). The removal of water inhibits cellular metabolism because enzymes are fully functional only in aqueous environments. Thus, osmosis preserves honey, jerky, jams, jellies, salted fish, and some types of pickles from most microbial attacks.

Fungi have a greater ability than bacteria to tolerate hypertonic environments with little moisture, which explains

HIGHLIGHT

MICROBES IN SUSHI?

Sushi—it makes you either squirm or salivate! Although technically the term refers to rice, it's generally understood to be bite-sized slices of raw fish served with rice. Long a staple of Japanese cuisine, sushi has become popular throughout the United States. But isn't eating raw fish dangerous? What methods of microbial control are applied in the preparation of sushi?

It's true that raw fish can contain harmful microorganisms. Parasitic roundworms called anisakids are commonly found in sushi and can cause gastrointestinal symptoms in humans. Accordingly, before fish can be served raw, the Food and Drug Administration requires that it be frozen at −20°C for seven days or at −37°C for 15 hours. Unfortunately, freezing does not kill all bacterial or viral pathogens. Consumers should be aware that they always assume some risk of food poisoning caused by such bacteria as *Staphylococcus aureus*, *E. coli*, and species of *Salmonella* and *Vibrio* whenever they eat any kind of raw food, including sushi, raw oysters, ceviche, or carpaccio.

Even though diners tend to fixate on the safety of raw fish, cooked rice left sitting at room temperature is also vulnerable to the growth of pathogens. To counter this potential problem, sushi rice is prepared with vinegar, which acidifies the rice. At pH values below 4.6, rice becomes too acidic to support the growth of most pathogens. Sushi bars can also reduce the risk posed by pathogens by keeping restaurant temperatures cool. Additionally, it is believed that wasabi, the fiery horseradish-like green paste commonly eaten with sushi, contains antimicrobial properties, although its antimicrobial action is not well understood.

With these antimicrobial precautions in place, the vast majority of diners consume sushi safely meal after meal (although pregnant women and people with compromised immune systems should avoid all raw seafood). When properly prepared, sushi is beautiful, low in calories, a source of heart-healthy omega-3 fatty acids—and very delicious.

why jelly in your refrigerator may grow a colony of *Penicillium* (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm) mold but is not likely to grow the bacterium *Salmonella* (sal´mŏ-nel´ă).

Radiation

Learning Outcome

9.18 Differentiate ionizing radiation from nonionizing radiation as they relate to microbial control.

Another physical method of microbial control is the use of **radiation.** There are two types of radiation: particulate radiation and electromagnetic radiation. Particulate radiation consists of high-speed subatomic particles, such as protons, that have been freed from their atoms. Electromagnetic radiation can be defined as energy without mass traveling in waves at the speed of light (3×10^5 km/sec). Electromagnetic energy is released from atoms that have undergone internal changes. The *wavelength* of electromagnetic radiation, defined as the distance between two crests of a wave, ranges from very short gamma rays; to X rays, ultraviolet light, and visible light; to long infrared rays; and, finally, to very long radio waves (see Figure 4.1). Though they are particles, electrons also have a wave nature, with wavelengths that are even shorter than gamma rays.

The shorter the wavelength of an electromagnetic wave, the more energy it carries; therefore, shorter-wavelength radiation is more suitable for microbial control than longer-wavelength radiation, which carries less energy and is less penetrating. Scientists describe all types of radiation as either *ionizing* or *nonionizing* according to its effects on the chemicals within cells.

Ionizing Radiation

Electron beams, gamma rays, and some X rays, all of which have wavelengths shorter than 1 nm, are **ionizing radiation** because when they strike molecules, they have sufficient energy to eject electrons from atoms, creating ions. Such ions disrupt hydrogen bonding, oxidize double covalent bonds, and create highly reactive hydroxyl radicals (see Chapter 6). These ions in turn denature other molecules, particularly DNA, causing fatal mutations and cell death.

Electron beams are produced by *cathode ray machines.* Electron beams are highly energetic and therefore very effective in killing microbes in just a few seconds, but they cannot sterilize thick objects or objects coated with large amounts of organic matter. They are used to sterilize spices, meats, microbiological plastic ware, and dental and medical supplies, such as gloves, syringes, and suturing material.

Gamma rays, which are emitted by some radioactive elements, such as radioactive cobalt, penetrate much farther than electron beams but require hours to kill microbes. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved the use of gamma irradiation for microbial control in meats, spices, and fresh fruits and vegetables **(Figure 9.12)**. Irradiation with gamma rays kills not only microbes but also the larvae and eggs of insects; it also kills the cells of fruits and vegetables, preventing both microbial spoilage and overripening.

▲ **Figure 9.12 A demonstration of the increased shelf life of food achieved by ionizing radiation.** The circular radura symbol is used in the United States to label irradiated foods.

Consumers have been reluctant to accept irradiated food. A number of reasons have been cited, including fear that radiation makes food radioactive and claims that it changes the taste and nutritive value of foods or produces potentially carcinogenic (cancer-causing) chemicals. Supporters of irradiation reply that gamma radiation passes through food and cannot make it radioactive any more than a dental X ray produces radioactive teeth, and they cite numerous studies that conclude that irradiated foods are tasty, nutritious, and safe.

X rays travel the farthest through matter, but they have less energy than gamma rays and require a prohibitive amount of time to make them practical for microbial control.

Nonionizing Radiation

Electromagnetic radiation with a wavelength greater than 1 nm does not have enough energy to force electrons out of orbit, so it is **nonionizing radiation.** However, such radiation does contain enough energy to excite electrons and cause them to make new covalent bonds, which can affect the three-dimensional structure of proteins and nucleic acids.

Ultraviolet (UV) light, visible light, infrared radiation, and radio waves are nonionizing radiation. Of these, only UV light has sufficient energy to be a practical antimicrobial agent. Visible light and microwaves (radio waves of extremely short wavelength) have little value in microbial control, though microwaves heat food, inhibiting microbial growth and reproduction if the food gets hot enough.

TABLE 9.4 Physical Methods of Microbial Control

Method	Conditions	Action	Representative Use(s)
Moist heat			
Boiling	10 min at 100°C	Denatures proteins and destroys membranes	Disinfection of baby bottles and sanitization of restaurant cookware and tableware
Autoclaving (pressure cooking)	15 min at 121°C	Denatures proteins and destroys membranes	Autoclave: sterilization of medical and laboratory supplies that can tolerate heat and moisture; pressure cooker: sterilization of canned food
Pasteurization	15 sec at 72°C	Denatures proteins and destroys membranes	Destruction of all pathogens and most spoilage microbes in dairy products, fruit juices, beer, and wine
Ultra-high-temperature sterilization	1–3 sec at 140°C	Denatures proteins and destroys membranes	Sterilization of dairy products
Dry heat			
Hot air	2 h at 160°C or 1 h at 171°C	Denatures proteins, destroys membranes, oxidizes metabolic compounds	Sterilization of water-sensitive materials, such as powders, oils, and metals
Incineration	1 sec at more than 1000°C	Oxidizes everything completely	Sterilization of inoculating loops, flammable contaminated medical waste, and diseased carcasses
Refrigeration	0–7°C	Inhibits metabolism	Preservation of food
Freezing		Inhibits metabolism	Long-term preservation of foods, drugs, and cultures
Desiccation (drying)	Varies with amount of water to be removed	Inhibits metabolism	Preservation of food
Lyophilization (freeze drying)	−196°C for a few minutes while drying	Inhibits metabolism	Long-term storage of bacterial cultures
Filtration	Filter retains microbes	Physically separates microbes from air and liquids	Sterilization of air and heat-sensitive ophthalmic and enzymatic solutions, vaccines, and antibiotics
Osmotic pressure	Exposure to hypertonic solutions	Inhibits metabolism	Preservation of food
Ionizing radiation (electron beams, gamma rays, X rays)	Seconds to hours of exposure (depending on wavelength of radiation)	Destroys DNA	Sterilization of medical and laboratory equipment and preservation of food
Nonionizing radiation (ultraviolet light)	Irradiation with 260-nm-wavelength radiation	Formation of thymine dimers inhibits DNA transcription and replication	Disinfection and sterilization of surfaces and of transparent fluids and gases

UV light with a wavelength of 260 nm is specifically absorbed by adjacent pyrimidine nucleotide bases in DNA, causing them to form covalent bonds with each other rather than forming hydrogen bonds with bases in the complementary DNA strand (see Figure 7.25). Such *pyrimidine* dimers distort the shape of DNA, making it impossible for the cell to accurately transcribe or replicate its genetic material. If dimers remain uncorrected, an affected cell may die.

The effectiveness of UV irradiation is tempered by the fact that UV light does not penetrate well. UV light is therefore suitable primarily for disinfecting air, transparent fluids, and the surfaces of objects, such as barber's shears and operating tables. Some cities use UV irradiation in sewage treatment. By passing wastewater past banks of UV lights, they reduce the number of bacteria without using chlorine, which might damage the environment.

Table 9.4 summarizes the physical methods of microbial control discussed in the previous pages.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

During the fall 2001 bioterrorist attack in which anthrax endospores were sent through the mail, one news commentator suggested that people should iron all their incoming mail with a regular household iron as a means of destroying endospores. Would you agree that this is a good way to disinfect mail? Explain your answer. Which disinfectant methods would be both more effective and more practical?

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control

Learning Outcome

9.19 Compare and contrast nine major types of antimicrobial chemicals and discuss the positive and negative aspects of each.

Although physical agents are sometimes used for disinfection, antisepsis, and preservation, more often chemical agents

are used for these purposes. As we have seen, chemical agents act to adversely affect microbes' cell walls, cytoplasmic membranes, proteins, or DNA. As with physical agents, the effect of a chemical agent varies with temperature, length of exposure, and the amount of contaminating organic matter in the environment. The effect also varies with pH, concentration, and freshness of the chemical. Chemical agents tend to destroy or inhibit the growth of enveloped viruses and the vegetative cells of bacteria, fungi, and protozoa more than fungal spores, protozoan cysts, or bacterial endospores. The latter are particularly resistant to chemical agents, as demonstrated by numerous failed attempts to decontaminate a U.S. Senate office building of anthrax endospores sent there by bioterrorists in 2001.

In the following sections we discuss nine major categories of antimicrobial chemicals used as antiseptics and disinfectants: *phenols, alcohols, halogens, oxidizing agents, surfactants, heavy metals, aldehydes, gaseous agents,* and *enzymes.* Some chemical agents combine one or more of these. Additionally, researchers and food processors sometimes use antimicrobials—substances normally used to treat diseases—as disinfectants.

Phenol and Phenolics

Learning Outcome

9.20 Distinguish between phenol and the types of phenolics and discuss their action as antimicrobial agents.

In 1867, Dr. Joseph Lister began using phenol **(Figure 9.13a)** to reduce infection during surgery. As stated previously, the efficacy of phenol remains one standard to which the actions of other antimicrobial agents can be compared.

Phenolics are compounds derived from phenol molecules that have been chemically modified by the addition of halogens or organic functional groups **(Figure 9.13b)**. For instance, chlorinated phenolics contain one or more atoms of chlorine and have enhanced antimicrobial action and a less annoying odor than phenol. Natural oils, such as pine and clove oils, are also phenolics and can be used as antiseptics.

Bisphenolics are composed of two covalently linked phenolics. Two examples of bisphenolics are *orthophenylphenol,* which is the active ingredient in the disinfectant Lysol, and *triclosan,* which is incorporated into numerous consumer products, including garbage bags, diapers, and cutting boards.

Phenol and phenolics denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes in a wide variety of pathogens. They are effective even in the presence of contaminating organic material, such as vomit, pus, saliva, and feces, and they remain active on surfaces for a prolonged time. For these reasons, phenolics are commonly used in health care settings, laboratories, and households.

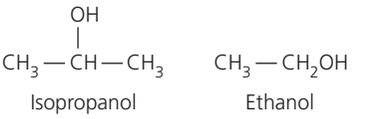
Negative aspects of phenolics include their disagreeable odor and possible side effects; for example, phenolics irritate the skin of some individuals. *Hexachlorophene* (see Figure 9.13b), which was once a popular household bisphenolic, was found to cause brain damage in infants. Now it is available only by prescription and is used in nurseries only in response to severe staphylococcal contamination.

Alcohols

Learning Outcome

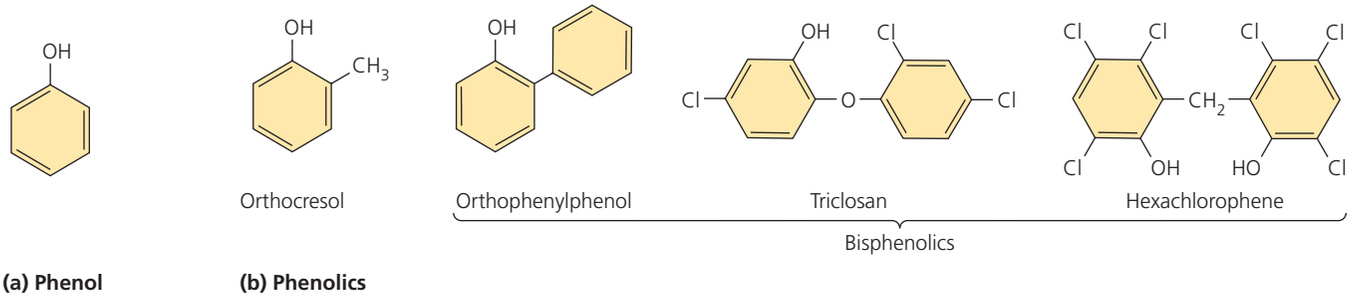
9.21 Discuss the action of alcohols as antimicrobial agents and explain why solutions of 70% to 90% alcohol are more effective than pure alcohols.

Alcohols are bactericidal, fungicidal, and virucidal against enveloped viruses; however, they are not effective against fungal spores or bacterial endospores. Alcohols are considered intermediate-level disinfectants. Commonly used alcohols include rubbing alcohol (isopropanol) and drinking alcohol (ethanol):



Isopropanol is slightly superior to ethanol as a disinfectant and antiseptic. *Tinctures* (tingk´chūrs), which are solutions of other antimicrobial chemicals in alcohol, are often more effective than the same chemicals dissolved in water.

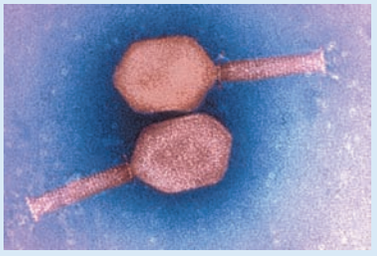
Alcohols denature proteins and disrupt cytoplasmic membranes. Surprisingly, pure alcohol is not an effective antimicrobial agent because the denaturation of proteins requires water; therefore, solutions of 70% to 90% alcohol are typically used to control microbes. Alcohols evaporate rapidly, which is advantageous in that they leave no residue but disadvantageous in that they may not contact microbes long enough to be effective. Alcohol-based antiseptics are more effective than soap in removing bacteria from hands but not effective against some viruses, such as diarrhea



▲ **Figure 9.13 Phenol and phenolics. (a)** Phenol, a naturally occurring molecule that is also called carbolic acid. **(b)** Phenolics, which are compounds synthesized from phenol, have greater antimicrobial efficacy with fewer side effects. Bisphenols are paired, covalently linked phenolics.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

HARD TO SWALLOW?



Bacteriophages.

Controlling bacteria in the environment is becoming more difficult because they are developing resistance to common disinfectants and antiseptics. So, scientists are turning to natural parasites of bacteria—bacteriophages, also simply called phages—to control bacterial contamination. *Bacteriophages,* which literally means "bacteria eaters," is the term for viruses that specifically attack particular strains of bacteria. Phages are like smart bombs; unlike disinfectants and most antimicrobial drugs, phages attack specific bacterial strains and leave neighboring bacteria unharmed. A phage injects its genetic material into a bacterial cell, causing the bacterial cell to produce hundreds of new phages that burst out of the bacterium and kill it. Researchers are developing phage solutions to control bacteria in medical settings, in food, and in patients.

In 2006, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the nonmedical use of a phage that specifically kills *Listeria monocytogenes,* which is frequently a bacterial contaminant of cheese and lunch meat. *Listeria* kills about 20% of people who get sick from ingesting it. The approved anti-*Listeria* phage is available in a solution that food processors, delicatessen owners, and consumers can spray on food to reduce the number of *Listeria* cells. Some people find the idea hard to swallow—deliberately contaminating food and equipment with viruses sounds like poor hygiene.

Proponents of using phages point out that an individual consumes millions of phages daily in water and food without ill effect. Indeed, phages in restaurants are more common than mustard and mayonnaise. Medical professionals in the former Soviet Union, particularly the country of Georgia, have used phages to successfully treat disease for over six decades without deleterious side effects.

causing noroviruses. Swabbing the skin with alcohol prior to an injection removes more microbes by physical action (degerming) than by chemical action.

Halogens

Learning Outcome

9.22 Discuss the types and uses of halogen-containing antimicrobial agents.

Halogens are the four very reactive, nonmetallic chemical elements: iodine, chlorine, bromine, and fluorine. Halogens are intermediate-level antimicrobial chemicals that are effective against vegetative bacterial and fungal cells, fungal spores, some bacterial endospores and protozoan cysts, and many viruses. Halogens are used both alone and combined with other elements in organic and inorganic compounds. Halogens exert their antimicrobial effect by unfolding and thereby denaturing essential proteins, including enzymes.

Iodine is a well-known antiseptic. In the past, backpackers and campers disinfected water with iodine tablets, but experience has shown that protozoan cysts can survive iodine treatment unless the iodine concentration is so great that the water is undrinkable. Knowledgeable campers now filter stream and lake water or carry bottled water.

Medically, iodine is used either as a tincture or as an *iodophor,* which is an iodine-containing organic compound that slowly releases iodine. Iodophors have the advantage of being long lasting and nonirritating to the skin. Betadine is an example of an iodophor used in medical institutions to prepare skin for surgery **(Figure 9.14)** and injections and to treat burns.

▲ Figure 9.14 Degerming in preparation for surgery on a hand. Betadine, an iodophor, is the antiseptic used here.

Municipalities commonly use *chlorine* in its elemental form (Cl_2) to treat drinking water, swimming pools, and wastewater from sewage treatment plants. Compounds containing chlorine are also effective disinfectants. Examples include *sodium hypochlorite* (NaOCl), which is household chlorine bleach, and *calcium hypochlorite.* The dairy industry and restaurants use these compounds to disinfect utensils, and the medical field uses them to disinfect hemodialysis systems. Household bleach diluted by adding two drops to a liter of water can be used in an emergency to make water safer to drink, but it does not kill all protozoan cysts, bacterial endospores, or viruses. *Chlorine dioxide* (ClO_2) is a gas that can be used to disinfect large spaces;

for example, it was used in the federal office buildings contaminated with anthrax spores following the 2001 bioterrorism attack. Chloramines—chemical combinations of chlorine and ammonia—are used in wound dressings, as skin antiseptics, and in some municipal water supplies. Chloramines are less effective antimicrobial agents than other forms of chlorine, but they release chlorine slowly and are thus longer lasting.

Bromine is an effective disinfectant in hot tubs because it evaporates more slowly than chlorine at high temperatures. Bromine is also used as an alternative to chlorine in the disinfection of swimming pools, cooling towers, and other water containers.

Fluorine in the form of fluoride is antibacterial in drinking water and toothpastes and can help reduce the incidence of dental caries (cavities). Fluorine works in part by disrupting metabolism in the biofilm of dental plaque.

Oxidizing Agents

Learning Outcome

9.23 Describe the use and action of oxidizing agents in microbial control.

Peroxides, *ozone*, and *peracetic acid* kill microbes by oxidizing their enzymes, thereby preventing metabolism. **Oxidizing agents** are high-level disinfectants and antiseptics that work by releasing oxygen radicals, which are particularly effective against anaerobic microorganisms. Health care workers use oxidizing agents to kill anaerobes in deep puncture wounds.

Hydrogen peroxide is a common household chemical that can disinfect and even sterilize the surfaces of inanimate objects such as contact lenses, but it is often mistakenly used to treat open wounds. Hydrogen peroxide does not make a good antiseptic for open wounds because *catalase*—an enzyme released from damaged human cells—quickly neutralizes hydrogen peroxide by breaking it down into water and oxygen gas, which can be seen as escaping bubbles. Though aerobes and facultative anaerobes on inanimate surfaces also contain catalase, the volume of peroxide used as a disinfectant overwhelms the enzyme, making hydrogen peroxide a useful disinfectant. Food processors use hot hydrogen peroxide to sterilize packages such as juice boxes.

Ozone (O_3) is a reactive form of oxygen that is generated when molecular oxygen (O_2) is subjected to electrical discharge. Ozone gives air its "fresh smell" after a thunderstorm. Some Canadian and European municipalities treat their drinking water with ozone rather than chlorine. Ozone is a more effective antimicrobial agent than chlorine, but it is more expensive, and it is difficult to maintain an effective concentration of ozone in water.

Peracetic acid is an extremely effective sporicide that can be used to sterilize surfaces. Food processors and medical personnel use peracetic acid to sterilize equipment because it is not adversely affected by organic contaminants, and it leaves no toxic residue.

Surfactants

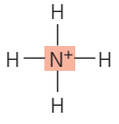
Learning Outcome

9.24 Define *surfactants* and describe their antimicrobial action.

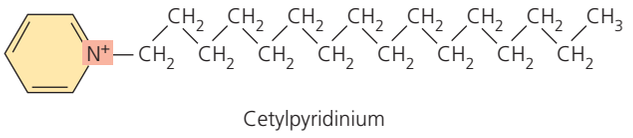
Surfactants are "surface active" chemicals. One of the ways surfactants act is to reduce the surface tension of solvents such as water by decreasing the attraction among molecules. One result of this reduction in surface tension is that the solvent becomes more effective at dissolving solute molecules.

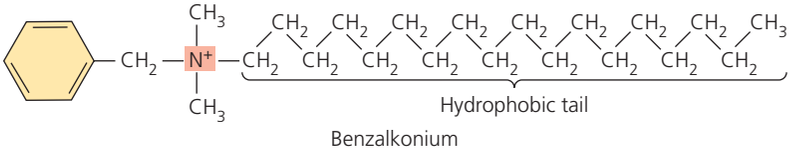
Two common surfactants involved in microbial control are soaps and detergents. One end of a soap molecule is hydrophobic because it is composed of fatty acids, and the other end is hydrophilic and negatively charged. When soap is used to wash skin, for instance, the hydrophobic ends of soap molecules are effective at breaking oily deposits into tiny droplets, and the hydrophilic ends attract water molecules; the result is that the tiny droplets of oily material—and any bacteria they harbor—are more easily dissolved in and washed away by water. Thus, soaps by themselves are good degerming agents though poor antimicrobial agents; when household soaps are antiseptic, it is largely because they contain antimicrobial chemicals.

Synthetic **detergents** are positively charged organic surfactants that are more soluble in water than soaps. The most popular detergents for microbial control are **quaternary ammonium compounds,** or **quats,** which are composed of an ammonium cation (NH_4^+) in which the hydrogen atoms are replaced by other functional groups or hydrocarbon chains **(Figure 9.15)**.



(a) Ammonium ion





(b) Quaternary ammonium ions (quats)

▲ **Figure 9.15 Quaternary ammonium compounds (quats).** Quats are surfactants in which the hydrogen atoms of an ammonium ion **(a)** are replaced by other functional groups **(b).**

Quats are not only antimicrobial but also colorless, tasteless, and harmless to humans (except at high concentrations), making them ideal for many industrial and medical applications. If your mouthwash foams, it probably contains a quaternary ammonium compound. Examples of quats are benzalkonium chloride (Zephiran) and cetylpyridinium chloride (used in Cepacol mouthwash).

Quats function by disrupting cellular membranes so that affected cells lose essential internal ions, such as potassium ions (K^+). Quats are bactericidal (particularly against Gram-positive bacteria), fungicidal, and virucidal against enveloped viruses, but they are not effective against nonenveloped viruses, mycobacteria, or endospores. The action of quaternary ammonium compounds is retarded by organic contaminants, and they are deactivated by soaps. Some pathogens, such as *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (soo-dō-mō´nas ā-roo-ji-nō´să), actually thrive in quats; therefore, quats are classified as low-level disinfectants.

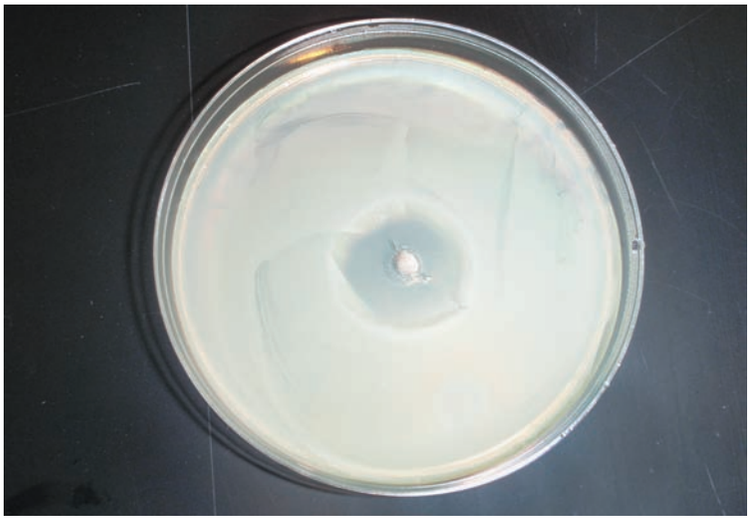
Heavy Metals

Learning Outcome

9.25 Define *heavy metals*, give several examples, and describe their use in microbial control.

Heavy-metal ions, such as ions of arsenic, zinc, mercury, silver, and copper, are antimicrobial because they combine with sulfur atoms in molecules of cysteine, an amino acid. Such bonding denatures proteins, inhibiting or eliminating their function. Heavy-metal ions are low-level bacteriostatic and fungistatic agents, and with few exceptions their use has been superseded by more effective antimicrobial agents. **Figure 9.16** illustrates the effectiveness of heavy metals in inhibiting bacterial reproduction on a Petri plate.

At one time, many states required that the eyes of newborns be treated with a cream containing 1% *silver nitrate* ($AgNO_3$) to prevent blindness caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī), which can enter babies' eyes while they pass through an infected birth canal. Today, silver nitrate has largely been displaced by other antimicrobial ointments that are less irritating and are also effective against other pathogens. Silver still plays an antimicrobial role in some surgical dressings, burn creams, and catheters.



▲ **Figure 9.16 The effect of heavy-metal ions on bacterial growth.** Zones of inhibition can form because ions of heavy metals, such as dental amalgam used in fillings and shown in the center of the plate, inhibit bacterial reproduction through their effects on protein function.

For over 70 years, drug companies used *thimerosal,* a mercury-containing compound, to preserve vaccines. In 1999, the U.S. Public Health Service recommended that alternatives be used because mercury is a metabolic poison, though the very small amount of mercury in vaccines is considered safe. Today only a few adult vaccines contain thimerosal. These include whole-cell pertussis and some vaccines against tetanus, flu, and meningococcal meningitis.

Copper, which interferes with chlorophyll, is used to control algal growth in reservoirs, fish tanks, swimming pools, and water storage tanks. In the absence of organic contaminants, copper is an effective algicide in concentrations as low as 1 ppm (part per million). In addition to copper, zinc and mercury are used to control mildew in paint.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

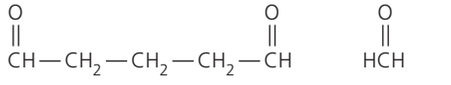
What common household antiseptic contains a heavy metal as its active ingredient?

Aldehydes

Learning Outcome

9.26 Compare and contrast formaldehyde and glutaraldehyde as antimicrobial agents.

Aldehydes are compounds containing terminal —CHO groups (see Table 2.3 on p. 40). *Glutaraldehyde,* which is a liquid, and *formaldehyde,* which is a gas, are highly reactive chemicals with the following structural formulas:



Glutaraldehyde Formaldehyde

Aldehydes function in microbial control by cross-linking amino, hydroxyl, sulfhydryl, and carboxyl organic functional groups, thereby denaturing proteins and inactivating nucleic acids.

Hospital personnel and scientists use 2% solutions of glutaraldehyde to kill bacteria, viruses, and fungi; a 10-minute treatment effectively disinfects most objects, including medical and dental equipment. When the time of exposure is increased to 10 hours, glutaraldehyde sterilizes. Although glutaraldehyde is less irritating and more effective than formaldehyde, it is more expensive as well.

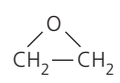
Morticians and health care workers use formaldehyde dissolved in water to make a 37% solution called *formalin.* They use formalin for embalming and to disinfect hospital rooms, instruments, and machines. Formaldehyde must be handled with care because it irritates mucous membranes and is carcinogenic (cancer causing).

Gaseous Agents

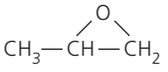
Learning Outcome

9.27 Describe the advantages and disadvantages of gaseous agents of microbial control.

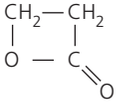
Many items, such as heart-lung machine components, sutures, plastic laboratory ware, mattresses, pillows, artificial heart valves, catheters, electronic equipment, and dried or powdered foods, cannot be sterilized easily with heat or water-soluble chemicals, nor is irradiation always practical for large or bulky items. However, they can be sterilized within a closed chamber containing highly reactive microbicidal and sporicidal gases such as *ethylene oxide, propylene oxide,* and *beta-propiolactone:*



Ethylene oxide



Propylene oxide



Beta-propiolactone

These gases rapidly penetrate paper and plastic wraps and diffuse into every crack. Over time (usually 4–18 hours), they denature proteins and DNA by cross-linking organic functional groups, thereby killing everything they contact without harming inanimate objects.

Ethylene oxide is frequently used as a gaseous sterilizing agent in hospitals and dental offices, and NASA uses the gas to sterilize spacecraft designed to land on other worlds lest they accidentally export earthly microbes. Large hospitals often use ethylene oxide chambers, which are similar in appearance to autoclaves, to sterilize instruments and equipment sensitive to heat.

Despite their advantages, gaseous agents are far from perfect: They can be extremely hazardous to the people using them. When administered, they must be combined with 10% to 20% nitrogen gas or carbon dioxide because they are often highly explosive. Moreover, they are extremely poisonous, so workers must extensively flush sterilized objects with air to remove every trace of the gas (which adds to the time required to use them). Finally, gaseous agents, especially beta-propiolactone, are potentially carcinogenic.

Enzymes

Learning Outcome

9.28 Describe the use of an enzyme to remove most bacteria from food and to remove prions from medical instruments.

Many organisms produce chemicals that inhibit or destroy a variety of fungi, bacteria, or viruses. Among these are **antimicrobial enzymes,** which are enzymes that act against microorganisms. For example, human tears contain the enzyme *lysozyme,* which is a protein that digests the peptidoglycan cell walls of bacteria, causing the bacteria to rupture because of osmotic pressure and thus protecting the eye from most bacterial infections.

Scientists, food processors, and medical personnel are researching ways to use natural and chemically modified antimicrobial enzymes to control microbes in the environment, inhibit microbial decay of foods and beverages, and reduce the number and kinds of microbes on medical equipment. For example, food processors use lysozyme to reduce the number of bacteria in cheese, and some vintners use lysozyme instead of poisonous sulfur dioxide (SO_2) to remove bacteria that would spoil wine.

One exciting development is the use of an enzyme to eliminate the prion that causes variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, also called mad cow disease. The brain, spinal cord, placenta, eye, liver, kidney, pituitary gland, spleen, lung, and lymph nodes, as well as cerebrospinal fluid, can harbor prions. Medical instruments contaminated by these highly infectious and deadly proteins may remain infectious even after normal autoclaving; boiling; exposure to formaldehyde, glutaraldehyde, or ethylene oxide; or 24 hours of dry heat at 160°C. Until recently, harsh methods, such as autoclaving in sodium hydroxide for 30 minutes or complete incineration, were required to eliminate prions. In 2006, the European Union approved the use of the enzyme *Prionzyme* to safely and completely remove prions on medical instruments. Prionzyme is the first certified, noncaustic chemical to target prions.

Antimicrobials

Learning Outcome

9.29 Describe the types of antimicrobials and their use in environmental control of microorganisms.

Antimicrobials include antibiotics, semisynthetics, and synthetics. Specifically, *antibiotics* are antimicrobial chemicals produced naturally by microorganisms. When scientists chemically modify an antibiotic, the agent is called a *semisynthetic.* Scientists have also developed wholly *synthetic* antimicrobial drugs. The main difference between these antimicrobials and the chemical agents we have discussed in this chapter is that antimicrobials are typically used for treatment of disease and not for environmental control of microbes. Nevertheless, some antimicrobials are used for control outside the body. For example, the antimicrobials *nisin* and *natamycin* are used to reduce the growth of bacteria and fungi, respectively, in cheese. (Chapter 10 discusses in more detail the nature and use of antimicrobials to treat infectious diseases.)

Table 9.5 on p. 277 summarizes the chemical methods of microbial control discussed in this chapter.

Methods for Evaluating Disinfectants and Antiseptics

Learning Outcome

9.30 Compare and contrast four methods used to measure the effectiveness of disinfectants and antiseptics.

With few exceptions, higher concentrations and fresher solutions of a disinfectant are more effective than more dilute, older solutions. We have also seen that longer exposure times ensure the deaths of more microorganisms. However, anyone using disinfectants must consider whether higher concentrations and longer exposures may damage an object or injure a patient.

Scientists have developed several methods to measure the efficacy of antimicrobial agents. These include the phenol coefficient, the use-dilution test, the Kelsey-Sykes capacity test, and the in-use test.

TABLE 9.5 Chemical Methods of Microbial Control

Method	Action(s)	Level of Activity	Some Uses
Phenol (carbolic acid)	Denatures proteins and disrupts cell membranes	Intermediate to low	Original surgical antiseptic; now replaced by less odorous and injurious phenolics
Phenolics (chemically altered phenol; bisphenols are composed of a pair of linked phenolics)	Denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes	Intermediate to low	Disinfectants and antiseptics
Alcohols	Denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes	Intermediate	Disinfectants, antiseptics, and as a solvent in tinctures
Halogens (iodine, chlorine, bromine, and fluorine)	Presumably denature proteins	Intermediate	Disinfectants, antiseptics, and water purification
Oxidizing agents (peroxides, ozone, and peracetic acid)	Denature proteins by oxidation	High	Disinfectants, antiseptics for deep wounds, water purification, and sterilization of food-processing and medical equipment
Surfactants (soaps and detergents)	Decrease surface tension of water and disrupt cell membranes	Low	Soaps: degerming; detergents: antiseptic
Heavy metals (arsenic, zinc, mercury, silver, copper, etc.)	Denature proteins	Low	Fungistats in paints; silver nitrate cream: surgical dressings, burn creams, and catheters; copper: algicide in water reservoirs, swimming pools, and aquariums
Aldehydes (glutaraldehyde and formaldehyde)	Denature proteins	High	Disinfectant and embalming fluid
Gaseous agents (ethylene oxide, propylene oxide, and beta-propiolactone)	Denature proteins	High	Sterilization of heat- and water-sensitive objects
Enzymes	Denature proteins	High against target substrate	Removal of prions on medical instruments
Antimicrobials (antibiotics, semisynthetics, and synthetics)	Act against cell walls, cell membranes, protein synthesis, and DNA transcription and replication	Intermediate to low	Disinfectants and treatment of infectious diseases

Phenol Coefficient

Joseph Lister (1827–1912) introduced the widespread use of phenol (also known as carbolic acid) as an antiseptic during surgery. Since then, researchers have evaluated the efficacy of various disinfectants and antiseptics by calculating a ratio that compares a given agent's ability to control microbes to that of phenol under standardized conditions. This ratio is referred to as the **phenol coefficient.** A phenol coefficient greater than 1.0 indicates that an agent is more effective than phenol, and the larger the ratio, the greater the effectiveness. For example, *chloramine,* a mixture of chlorine and ammonia, has a phenol coefficient of 133.0 when used against the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* and a phenol coefficient of 100.0 when used against *Salmonella enterica* (en-ter´i-kă). This indicates that chloramine is at least 133 times more effective than phenol against *Staphylococcus* but only 100 times more effective against *Salmonella.* Measurement of an agent's phenol coefficient has been replaced by newer methods because scientists have developed disinfectants and antiseptics much more effective than phenol.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

What is the phenol coefficient of phenol when used against *Staphylococcus?*

Use-Dilution Test

Another method for measuring the efficacy of disinfectants and antiseptics against specific microbes is the **use-dilution test.** In this test, a researcher dips several metal cylinders into broth cultures of bacteria and briefly dries them at 37°C. The bacteria used in the standard test are *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Salmonella enterica* serotype Choleraesuis (kol-er-a-su´is), and *S. aureus.* The researcher then immerses each contaminated cylinder into a different dilution of the disinfectants being evaluated. After 10 minutes, each cylinder is removed, rinsed with water to remove excess chemical, and placed into a fresh tube of sterile medium for 48 hours of incubation. The most effective agent is the one that entirely prevents microbial growth at the highest dilution.

The use-dilution test is the current standard test in the United States, though it was developed several decades ago before the appearance of many of today's pathogens, including hepatitis C virus, HIV, and antibiotic-resistant bacteria and protozoa. Moreover, the disinfectants in use at the time were far less powerful than many used today. Some government agencies have expressed concern that the test is neither accurate, reliable, nor relevant; therefore, the Association of Analytical Communities is developing a new standard procedure for use in the United States.

Kelsey-Sykes Capacity Test

The **Kelsey-Sykes capacity test** is the standard alternative assessment approved by the European Union to determine the capacity of a given chemical to inhibit bacterial growth. In this test, researchers add a suspension of a bacterium such as *P. aeruginosa* or *S. aureus* to a suitable concentration of the chemical being tested. Then at predetermined times, they move samples of the mixture into growth medium containing a disinfectant deactivator. After incubation for 48 hours, turbidity in the medium indicates that bacteria survived treatment. Lack of turbidity, indicating lack of bacterial reproduction, reveals the minimum time required for the disinfectant to be effective.

In-Use Test

Though phenol coefficient, use-dilution, and Kelsey-Sykes capacity tests can be beneficial for initial screening of disinfectants, they can also be misleading. These types of evaluation are measures of effectiveness under controlled conditions against one or, at most, a few species of microbes, but disinfectants are generally used in various environments against a diverse population of organisms that are often associated with one another in complex biofilms affording mutual protection.

A more realistic (though more time-consuming) method for determining the efficacy of a chemical is called an **in-use test.** In this procedure, swabs are taken from actual objects, such as operating room equipment, both before and after the application of a disinfectant or an antiseptic. The swabs are then inoculated into appropriate growth media that, after incubation, are examined for microbial growth. The in-use test allows a more accurate determination of the proper strength and application procedure of a given disinfection agent for each specific situation.

Development of Resistant Microbes

Many scientists are concerned that Americans have become overly preoccupied with antisepsis and disinfection, as evidenced by the proliferation of products containing antiseptic and disinfecting chemicals. For example, one can now buy hand soap, shampoo, toothpaste, hand lotion, foot pads for shoes, deodorants, and bath sponges that contain antiseptics, as well as kitty litter, cutting boards, scrubbing pads, garbage bags, children's toys, and laundry detergents that contain disinfectants. There is little evidence that the extensive use of such products adds to human or animal health, but it does promote the development of strains of microbes resistant to antimicrobial chemicals: While susceptible cells die, resistant cells remain to proliferate. Scientists have already isolated strains of pathogenic bacteria, including *M. tuberculosis, P. aeruginosa, E. coli,* and *S. aureus,* that are less susceptible to common disinfectants and antiseptics.

Highlight: Antibacterial Soap: Too Much of a Good Thing? discusses a controversy regarding the use of antibacterial soap.

HIGHLIGHT

ANTIBACTERIAL SOAP: TOO MUCH OF A GOOD THING?

Although soaps containing antimicrobial drugs are more effective than plain soaps in reducing the presence of microbes, there is concern that overuse of antimicrobials contributes to the evolution of resistant microorganisms: Antibacterial soaps kill off weaker bacteria, leaving stronger, more resistant strains to multiply. The CDC has taken a cautious stance, acknowledging the benefits of antimicrobial soaps in certain circumstances while agreeing that we need further research to determine whether such products may actually do more harm than good.

Who knew cleanliness could be so complicated? And in the meantime, what kind of soap should you use? Experts can't seem to agree on a single guideline, but the CDC recommends using mild, regular soap and washing in warm running water for at least 10 to 15 seconds in most cases. Antimicrobial soap should be reserved for limited applications: handling food, caring for newborns, and caring for high-risk patients.

MasteringMicrobiology®

Make the invisible visible:
Scan this QR code with your smart phone to engage with Dr. Bauman in a Video Tutor about Principles of Autoclaving. Then visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to test your knowledge with practice tests, animation quizzes, and clinical case studies!

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Basic Principles of Microbial Control (pp. 259–261)

1. **Sterilization** is the eradication of microorganisms and viruses; the term is not usually applied to the destruction of prions.
2. An **aseptic** environment or procedure is free of contamination by pathogens.
3. **Antisepsis** is the inhibition/killing of microorganisms (particularly pathogens) on skin or tissue by the use of a chemical **antiseptic,** whereas **disinfection** refers to the use of agents to inhibit microbes on inanimate objects.
4. **Degerming** refers to the removal of microbes from a surface by scrubbing.
5. **Sanitization** is the reduction of a prescribed number of pathogens from surfaces and utensils in public settings.
6. **Pasteurization** is a process using heat to kill pathogens and control microbes that cause spoilage of food and beverages.
7. The suffixes *-stasis* and *-static* indicate that an antimicrobial agent inhibits microbes, whereas the suffixes *-cide* and *-cidal* indicate that the agent kills or permanently inactivates a particular type of microbe.
8. **Microbial death** is the permanent loss of reproductive capacity. **Microbial death rate** measures the efficacy of an antimicrobial agent.
9. Antimicrobial agents destroy microbes either by altering their cell walls and membranes or by interrupting their metabolism and reproduction via interference with proteins and nucleic acids.

The Selection of Microbial Control Methods (pp. 261–263)

1. Factors affecting the efficacy of antimicrobial methods include the site to be treated, the relative susceptibility of microorganisms, and environmental conditions.
2. The CDC has established four biosafety levels (BSL) for microbiological laboratories. BSL-1 is minimal; BSL-4 requires special suits, rooms, and other precautions.

Physical Methods of Microbial Control (pp. 264–271)

1. **Thermal death point** is the lowest temperature that kills all cells in a broth in 10 minutes, whereas **thermal death time** is the time it takes to completely sterilize a particular volume of liquid at a set temperature. **Decimal reduction time (D)** is the time required to destroy 90% of the microbes in a sample.
2. An **autoclave** uses steam heat under pressure to sterilize chemicals and objects that can tolerate moist heat.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Principles of Autoclaving*
3. Pasteurization, a method of heating foods to kill pathogens and control spoilage organisms without altering the quality of the food, can be achieved by several methods: the historical (batch) method, flash pasteurization, and ultra-high-temperature pasteurization. The methods differ in their combinations of temperature and time of exposure.
4. Under certain circumstances, microbes can be controlled using ultra-high-temperature sterilization, dry-heat sterilization, incineration, refrigeration, or freezing.
5. Antimicrobial methods involving drying are **desiccation,** used to preserve food, and **lyophilization** (freeze drying), used for the long-term preservation of cells or microbes.
6. When used as a microbial control method, **filtration** is the passage of air or a liquid through a material that traps and removes microbes. Some **membrane filters** have pores small enough to trap the smallest viruses. HEPA (high-efficiency particulate air) filters remove microbes and particles from air.
7. The high **osmotic pressure** exerted by hypertonic solutions of salt or sugar can preserve foods such as jerky and jams by removing from microbes the water that they need to carry out their metabolic functions.
8. **Radiation** includes high-speed subatomic particles and even more energetic electromagnetic waves released from atoms. **Ionizing radiation** (wavelengths shorter than 1 nm) produces ions that denature important molecules and kill cells. **Nonionizing radiation** (wavelengths longer than 1 nm) is less effective in microbial control, although UV light causes pyrimidine dimers, which can kill affected cells.

Chemical Methods of Microbial Control (pp. 271–278)

1. **Phenolics,** which are chemically modified phenol molecules, are intermediate- to low-level disinfectants that denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes in a wide variety of pathogens.
2. **Alcohols** are intermediate-level disinfectants that denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes; they are used either as 70% to 90% aqueous solutions or in a tincture, which is a combination of an alcohol and another antimicrobial chemical.
3. **Halogens** (iodine, chlorine, bromine, and fluorine) are used as intermediate-level disinfectants and antiseptics to kill microbes by protein denaturation in water or on medical instruments or skin.
4. **Oxidizing agents** such as hydrogen peroxide, ozone, and peracetic acid are high-level disinfectants and antiseptics that release oxygen radicals, which are toxic to many microbes, especially anaerobes.
5. **Surfactants** include soaps, which act primarily to break up oils during degerming, and **detergents,** such as **quaternary ammonium compounds (quats),** which are low-level disinfectants.
6. **Heavy-metal ions,** such as arsenic, silver, mercury, copper, and zinc, are low-level disinfectants that denature proteins. For most applications they have been superseded by less toxic alternatives.
7. **Aldehydes** are high-level disinfectants that cross-link organic functional groups in proteins and nucleic acids. A 2% solution of glutaraldehyde or a 37% aqueous solution of formaldehyde (called formalin) is used to disinfect or sterilize medical or dental equipment and in embalming fluid.
8. Gaseous agents of microbial control, which include ethylene oxide, propylene oxide, and beta-propiolactone, are high-level disinfecting agents used to sterilize heat-sensitive equipment and large objects. These gases are explosive and potentially carcinogenic.
9. Many organisms use **antimicrobial enzymes** to combat microbes. Humans use them commercially in food preservation and as a noncaustic, nondestructive way to eliminate prions on medical instruments.
10. **Antimicrobials,** which include antibiotics, semisynthetics, and synthetics, are compounds that are typically used to treat diseases but can also function as intermediate-level disinfectants.
11. Four methods for evaluating the effectiveness of a disinfectant or antiseptic are the **phenol coefficient,** the **use-dilution test,** the **Kelsey-Sykes capacity test,** and the **in-use test,** which provides a more accurate determination of efficacy under real-life conditions.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. In practical terms in everyday use, which of the following statements provides the definition of *sterilization*?
   a. Sterilization eliminates organisms and their spores or endospores.
   b. Sterilization eliminates harmful microorganisms and viruses.
   c. Sterilization eliminates prions.
   d. Sterilization eliminates hyperthermophiles.
2. Which of the following substances or processes kills microorganisms on laboratory surfaces?
   a. antiseptics
   b. disinfectants
   c. degermers
   d. pasteurization
3. Which of the following terms best describes the disinfecting of cafeteria plates?
   a. pasteurization
   b. antisepsis
   c. sterilization
   d. sanitization
4. The microbial death rate is used to measure _____.
   a. the efficiency of a detergent
   b. the efficiency of an antiseptic
   c. the efficiency of sanitization techniques
   d. all of the above
5. Which of the following statements is true concerning the selection of an antimicrobial agent?
   a. An ideal antimicrobial agent is stable during storage.
   b. An ideal antimicrobial agent is fast acting.
   c. Ideal microbial agents do not exist.
   d. all of the above
6. The endospores of which organism are used as a biological indicator of sterilization?
   a. *Bacillus stearothermophilus*
   b. *Salmonella enterica*
   c. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
   d. *Staphylococcus aureus*
7. A company that manufactures an antimicrobial cleaner for kitchen counters claims that its product is effective when used in a 50% water solution. By what means might scientists best verify this statement?
   a. disk-diffusion test
   b. phenol coefficient
   c. filter paper test
   d. in-use test
8. Which of the following items functions most like an autoclave?
   a. a boiling pan
   b. an incinerator
   c. a microwave oven
   d. a pressure cooker
9. The preservation of beef jerky from microbial growth relies on which method of microbial control?
   a. filtration
   b. lyophilization
   c. desiccation
   d. radiation
10. Which of the following types of radiation is more widely used as an antimicrobial technique?
    a. electron beams
    b. visible light waves
    c. radio waves
    d. microwaves

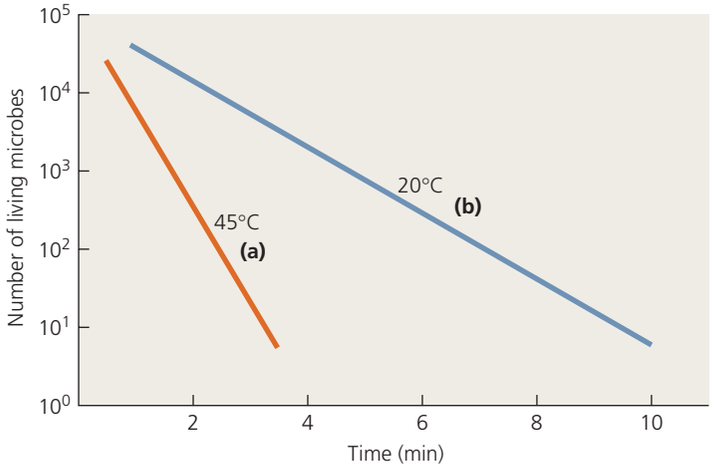
11. Which of the following substances would most effectively inhibit anaerobes?
    a. phenol
    b. silver
    c. ethanol
    d. hydrogen peroxide
12. Which of the following adjectives best describes a surgical procedure that is free of microbial contaminants?
    a. disinfected
    b. sanitized
    c. degermed
    d. aseptic
13. Biosafety Level 3 includes _____.
    a. double sets of entry doors
    b. pressurized suits
    c. showers in entryways
    d. all of the above
14. A sample of *E. coli* has been subjected to heat for a specified time, and 90% of the cells have been destroyed. Which of the following terms best describes this event?
    a. thermal death point
    b. thermal death time
    c. decimal reduction time
    d. none of the above
15. Which of the following substances is least toxic to humans?
    a. carbolic acid
    b. glutaraldehyde
    c. hydrogen peroxide
    d. formalin
16. Which of the following chemicals is active against bacterial endospores?
    a. copper ions
    b. ethylene oxide
    c. ethanol
    d. triclosan
17. Which of the following disinfectants acts against cell membranes?
    a. phenol
    b. peracetic acid
    c. silver nitrate
    d. glutaraldehyde
18. Which of the following disinfectants contains alcohol?
    a. an iodophor
    b. a quat
    c. formalin
    d. a tincture of bromine
19. Which antimicrobial chemical has been used to sterilize spacecraft?
    a. phenol
    b. alcohol
    c. heavy metal
    d. ethylene oxide
20. Which class of surfactant is most soluble in water?
    a. quaternary ammonium compounds
    b. alcohols
    c. soaps
    d. peracetic acids

Short Answer

1. Describe three types of microbes that are extremely resistant to antimicrobial treatment and explain why they are resistant.
2. Compare and contrast four tests that have been developed to measure the effectiveness of disinfectants.
3. Why is it necessary to use strong disinfectants in areas exposed to tuberculosis patients?
4. Why do warm disinfectant chemicals generally work better than cool ones?
5. Why are Gram-negative bacteria more susceptible to heat than Gram-positive bacteria?
6. Describe five physical methods of microbial control.
7. What is the difference between thermal death point and thermal death time?
8. Defend the following statement: "Pasteurization is not sterilization."
9. Compare and contrast desiccation and lyophilization.
10. Compare and contrast the action of alcohols, halogens, and oxidizing agents in controlling microbial growth.
11. Hyperthermophilic prokaryotes may remain viable in canned goods after commercial sterilization. Why is this situation not dangerous to consumers?
12. Why are alcohols more effective in a 70% solution than in a 100% solution?
13. Contrast the structures and actions of soaps and quats.
14. What are some advantages and disadvantages of using ionizing radiation to sterilize food?
15. How can campers effectively treat stream water to remove pathogenic protozoa, bacteria, and viruses?

Visualize It!

1. Calculate the decimal reduction time (D) for the two temperatures in the following graph.



2. Indian tradition holds that water stored in brass pitchers prevents disease. British and Indian scientists have discovered recently that there is some truth in the tradition. The researchers found that river water samples collected in India had fecal bacterial counts as high as 1 million bacteria per milliliter. However, the scientists could detect no bacteria in the water after storage for two days in traditional brass pitchers. Bacterial levels in plastic or earthenware containers remained high over the same period. How can brass, which is an alloy of copper mixed with zinc, make water safer to drink?

Critical Thinking

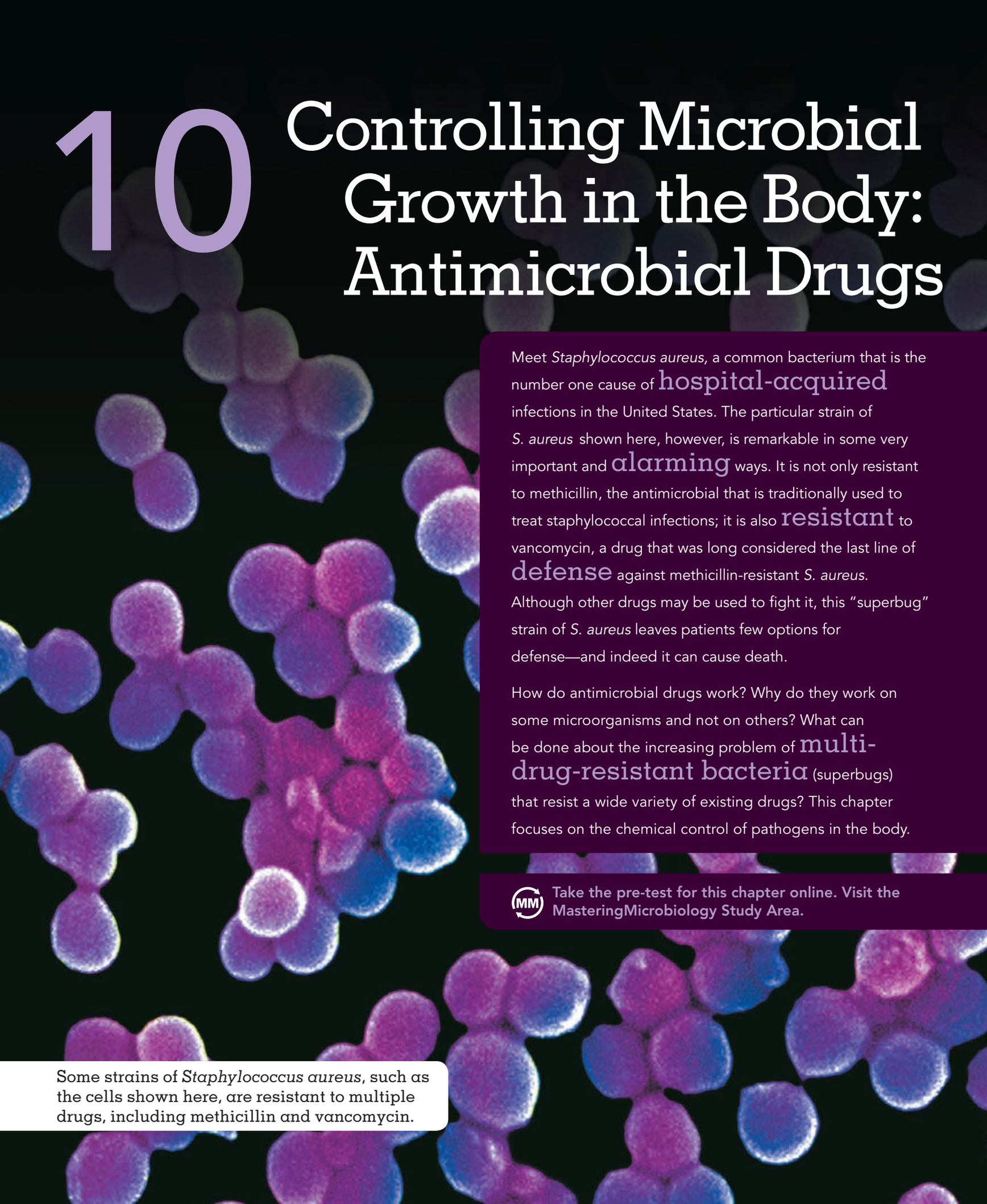
1. In 2004 a casino paid $28,000 for a grilled cheese sandwich that was purported to have an image of the Virgin Mary on it. The seller had stored the sandwich in a less-than-airtight box for 10 years without decay or the growth of mold. What antimicrobial chemical and physical agents might account for the longevity of the sandwich?
2. Is desiccation the only antimicrobial effect operating when grapes are dried in the sun to make raisins? Explain.
3. How long would it take to reduce a population of 100 trillion (10^{14}) bacteria to 10 viable cells if the D value of the treatment is 3 minutes?
4. Some potentially pathogenic bacteria and fungi, including strains of *Enterococcus, Staphylococcus, Candida,* and *Aspergillus,* can survive for one to three months on a variety of materials found in hospitals, including the cotton blends of scrub suits, nurses' clothes, lab coats, and plastics from splash aprons and computer keyboards. What can hospital personnel do to reduce the spread of these pathogens?
5. Over 1400 people developed severe diarrhea from the Saintpaul strain of *Salmonella enterica* in the summer of 2008; 286 were hospitalized, and at least two died. CDC epidemiologists determined that infection resulted from consumption of raw tomatoes, jalapeño peppers, or serrano peppers. Based on this chapter, what types of treatment are available to produce growers and packers? What other precautions could consumers have taken?
6. An over-the-counter medicated foot powder contains camphor, eucalyptus oil, lemon oil, and zinc oxide. Only one of the ingredients is a proven antimicrobial. Which one? How does it act against fungi?
7. The 2004 tsunami in the Indian Ocean and hurricanes in 2005 and 2008 in the United States severely contaminated water wells and disrupted water supply lines. What immediate steps should the people have taken to lessen the spread of waterborne illnesses such as cholera?
8. In what ways might it be argued that the widespread commercial use of antiseptics and disinfectants has hurt rather than helped American health?
9. Explain why quaternary ammonium compounds are not very effective against mycobacteria such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes moist heat applications to control microorganisms. For a sample concept map, see p. 93. Or complete this concept map online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

100°C, ≥ 10 min.
121°C, 15 psi, ≥ 15 min.
134°C, 1 sec.
140°C, 1–3 sec.
63°C, 30 min.
72°C, 15 sec.
Autoclave
Batch method (classic)
Boiling water
Equivalent treatments
Flash pasteurization
Fungi
Most viruses
Pasteurization
Protozoan trophozoites
Sterilization technique (2)
Thermoduric microorganisms (2)
Ultra-high-temperature pasteurization
Ultra-high-temperature sterilization
Vegetative bacterial cells

10 Controlling Microbial Growth in the Body: Antimicrobial Drugs



Meet *Staphylococcus aureus*, a common bacterium that is the number one cause of **hospital-acquired** infections in the United States. The particular strain of *S. aureus* shown here, however, is remarkable in some very important and **alarming** ways. It is not only resistant to methicillin, the antimicrobial that is traditionally used to treat staphylococcal infections; it is also **resistant** to vancomycin, a drug that was long considered the last line of **defense** against methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*. Although other drugs may be used to fight it, this "superbug" strain of *S. aureus* leaves patients few options for defense—and indeed it can cause death.

How do antimicrobial drugs work? Why do they work on some microorganisms and not on others? What can be done about the increasing problem of **multi-drug-resistant bacteria** (superbugs) that resist a wide variety of existing drugs? This chapter focuses on the chemical control of pathogens in the body.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Some strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*, such as the cells shown here, are resistant to multiple drugs, including methicillin and vancomycin.

Chemicals that affect physiology in any manner, such as caffeine, alcohol, and tobacco, are called *drugs.* Drugs that act against diseases are called *chemotherapeutic agents.* Examples include insulin, anticancer drugs, and drugs for treating infections—called **antimicrobial agents (antimicrobials),** the subject of this chapter.

In the pages that follow we'll examine the mechanisms by which antimicrobial agents act, the factors that must be considered in the use of antimicrobials, and several issues surrounding resistance to antimicrobial agents among microorganisms. First, however, we begin with a brief history of antimicrobial chemotherapy.

The History of Antimicrobial Agents

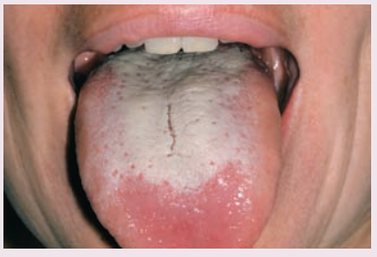
Learning Outcomes

10.1 Describe the contributions of Paul Ehrlich, Alexander Fleming, and Gerhard Domagk in the development of antimicrobials.

10.2 Explain how semisynthetic and synthetic antimicrobials differ from antibiotics.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

ANTIBIOTIC OVERKILL



A young woman was taking antibiotic pills for a urinary infection. Several days into her course of medication, she began to experience peculiar symptoms. At first they were hardly noticeable. Very quickly, however, they worsened and became embarrassing and unbearable.

She noticed a white coating on her tongue, bad breath, and an awful taste in her mouth. Despite persistent brushing and mouthwash applications, she was unable to completely remove the film. Furthermore, she had excessive vaginal discharges consisting of a cheeselike white substance. When she began to have vaginal itching, she finally decided it was time to seek help.

Reluctantly she revisited her personal physician and described the symptoms. Her doctor explained the symptoms and provided additional prescriptions to alleviate her distress.

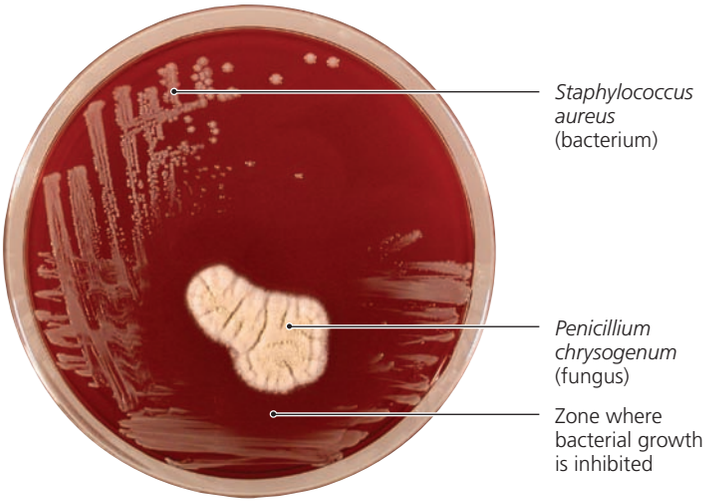
1. What happened to the young woman in this situation?
2. How had her body's defenses been violated?
3. How can she avoid a repeat of this situation?

The little girl lay struggling to breathe as her parents stood mutely by, willing the doctor to do something—anything—to relieve the symptoms that had so quickly consumed their four-year-old daughter's vitality. Sadly, there was little the doctor could do. The thick "pseudomembrane" of diphtheria, composed of bacteria, mucus, blood-clotting factors, and white blood cells, adhered tenaciously to her pharynx, tonsils, and vocal cords. He knew that trying to remove it could rip open the underlying mucous membrane, resulting in bleeding, possibly additional infections, and death. In 1902, there was little medical science could offer for the treatment of diphtheria; all physicians could do was wait and hope.

At the beginning of the 20th century, much of medicine involved diagnosing illness, describing its expected course, and telling family members either how long a patient might be sick or when they might expect her to die. Even though physicians and scientists had recently accepted the germ theory of disease and knew the causes of many diseases, very little could be done to inhibit pathogens, including *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (kŏ-rī´nē-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm dif-thi´rē-ī), and alter the course of infections. In fact, one-third of children born in the early 1900s died from infectious diseases before the age of five.

It was at this time that Paul Ehrlich (1854–1915), a visionary German scientist, proposed the term *chemotherapy* to describe the use of chemicals that would selectively kill pathogens while having little or no effect on a patient. He wrote of "magic bullets" that would bind to receptors on germs to bring about their death while ignoring host cells, which lacked the receptor molecules.

Ehrlich's search for antimicrobial agents resulted in the discovery of one arsenic compound that killed trypanosome parasites and another that worked against the bacterial agent of syphilis. A few years later, in 1928, the British bacteriologist Alexander Fleming (1881–1955) reported the antibacterial action of penicillin released from *Penicillium* (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm) mold, which creates a zone where bacteria don't grow **(Figure 10.1)**.



▲ **Figure 10.1 Antibiotic effect of the mold *Penicillium chrysogenum*.** Alexander Fleming observed that this mold secretes penicillin, which inhibits the growth of bacteria, as is apparent with *Staphylococcus aureus* growing on this blood agar plate.

Though arsenic compounds and penicillin were discovered first, they were not the first antimicrobials in widespread use: Ehrlich's arsenic compounds are toxic to humans, and penicillin was not available in large enough quantities to be useful until the late 1940s. Instead, *sulfanilamide,* discovered in 1932 by the German chemist Gerhard Domagk (1895–1964), was the first practical antimicrobial agent efficacious in treating a wide array of bacterial infections.

Selman Waksman (1888–1973) discovered other microorganisms that are sources of useful antimicrobials, most notably species of soil-dwelling bacteria in the genus *Streptomyces* (strep-tō-mī´sēz). Waksman coined the term **antibiotics** to describe antimicrobial agents that are produced naturally by an organism (**Highlight: Microbe Altruism: Why Do They Do It?**). In common usage today, "antibiotic" denotes an antibacterial agent, including synthetic compounds and excluding agents with antiviral and antifungal activity.

Other scientists produced **semisynthetics**—chemically altered antibiotics—that are more effective, longer lasting, or easier to administer than naturally occurring antibiotics. Antimicrobials that are completely synthesized in a laboratory are called **synthetics.** Most antimicrobials are either natural or semisynthetic.

Table 10.1 provides a partial list of common antibiotics and semisynthetics and their sources.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why aren't antibiotics effective against the common cold?

TABLE 10.1 Sources of Some Common Antibiotics and Semisynthetics

Microorganism	Antimicrobial
Fungi	
Penicillium chrysogenum	Penicillin
Penicillium griseofulvum	Griseofulvin
Acremonium[a] *spp.*[b]	Cephalothin
Bacteria	
Amycolatopsis orientalis	Vancomycin
Amycolatopsis rifamycinica	Rifampin
Bacillus licheniformis	Bacitracin
Bacillus polymyxa	Polymyxin
Micromonospora purpurea	Gentamicin
Pseudomonas fluorescens	Mupirocin
Saccharopolyspora erythraea	Erythromycin
Streptomyces griseus	Streptomycin
Streptomyces fradiae	Neomycin
Streptomyces aureofaciens	Tetracycline
Streptomyces venezuelae	Chloramphenicol
Streptomyces nodosus	Amphotericin B
Streptomyces avermitilis	Ivermectin

[a]This genus was formerly called *cephalosporium.*
[b]spp. is the abbreviation for multiple species of a genus.

HIGHLIGHT

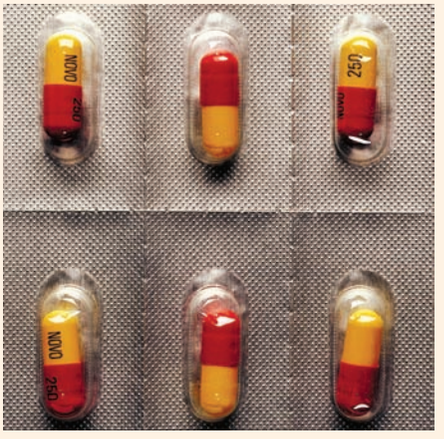
MICROBE ALTRUISM: WHY DO THEY DO IT?

We all know that antibiotics benefit humans, but what good are they to the microorganisms that secrete them? From the viewpoint of evolutionary theory, the answer might seem obvious: Antibiotics are weapons that confer an advantage to the secreting organisms in their struggle for survival. In reality, however, the answer is not so simple.

Antibiotics are members of an extremely diverse group of metabolic products known as *secondary metabolites,* which typically are complex organic molecules that are not essential for normal cell growth and reproduction and are produced only after an organism has already established itself in its environment. The production of secondary metabolites results in a metabolic cost for the cell; that is, producing antibiotics consumes energy and raw materials that the organism could use for growth and reproduction. Tetracycline, for example, is the end result of 72 separate enzymatic steps, and erythromycin requires 28 different chemical reactions—none of which appears to contribute to the normal growth or reproduction of *Streptomyces.* Therefore, the question can be modified: Of what use are metabolically "expensive" antibiotics to organisms that are already secure in their environment?

Adding to the conundrum is the fact that antimicrobials against bacteria have never been discovered in natural soil at high enough concentrations to be inhibitory to neighboring cells. For example, it is almost impossible to detect antibiotics produced by *Streptomyces* except when the bacteria are grown in a laboratory. Minimal and inconsequential quantities of antibiotics hardly give an adaptive edge.

Some scientists have suggested that antibiotics are evolutionary vestiges—leftovers of metabolic pathways that were once useful but no longer have a significant role. However, there should be tremendous selective pressure against the slightest



continued manufacture of complex antibiotics if they truly have little purpose for the microorganism. It is more likely that antibiotics are signals used for interbacterial communication within biofilms and that their antimicrobial action is coincidental. Further research is required before we may fully answer the question,"Why do microbes make antibiotics?"

Mechanisms of Antimicrobial Action

Learning Outcomes

10.3 Explain the principle of selective toxicity.

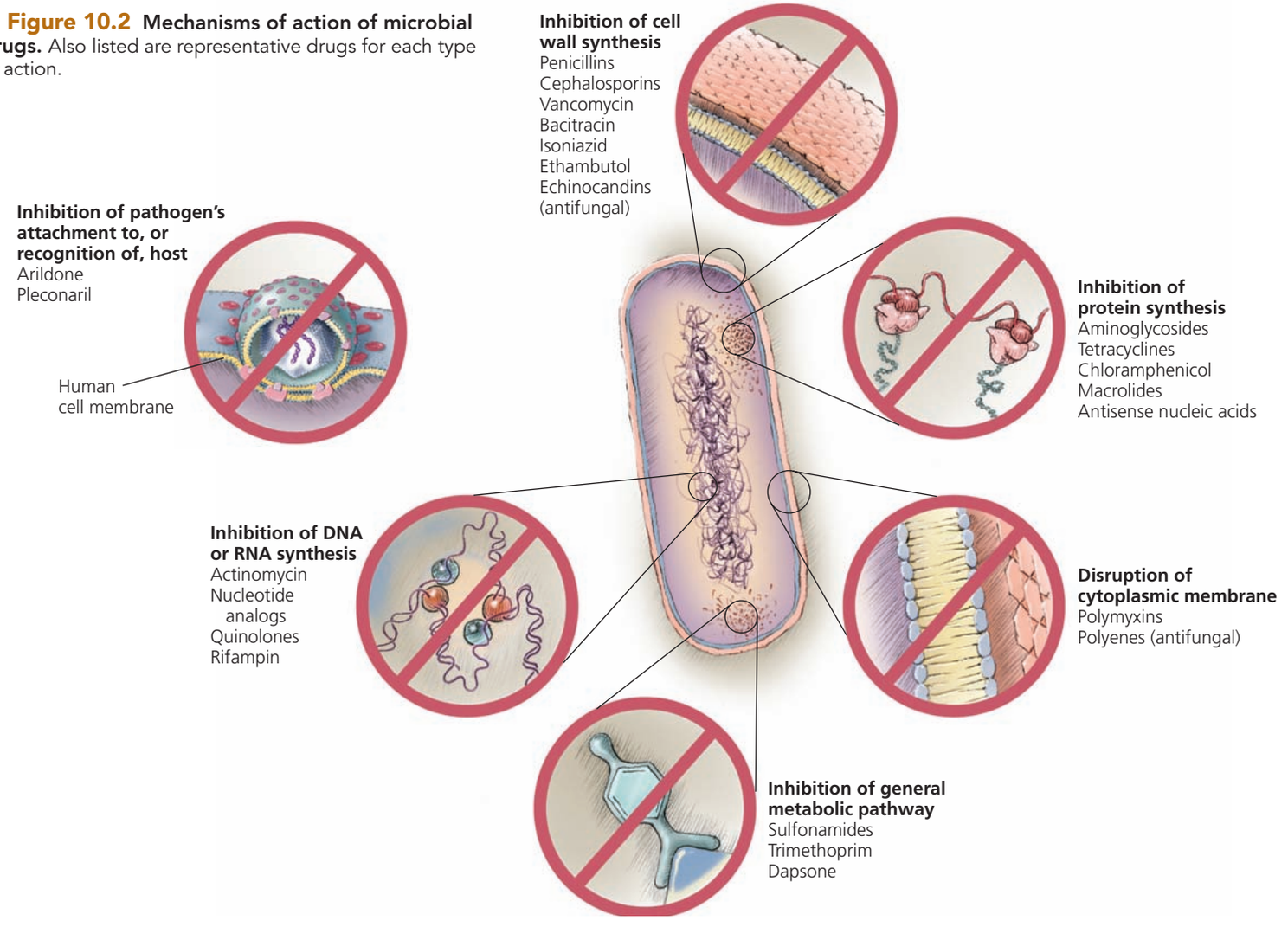
10.4 List six mechanisms by which antimicrobial drugs affect pathogens.

As Ehrlich foresaw, the key to successful chemotherapy against microbes is **selective toxicity;** that is, an effective antimicrobial agent must be more toxic to a pathogen than to the pathogen's host. Selective toxicity is possible because of differences in structure or metabolism between the pathogen and its host. Typically, the more differences, the easier it is to discover or create an effective antimicrobial agent.

Because there are many differences between the structure and metabolism of pathogenic bacteria and their eukaryotic hosts, antibacterial drugs constitute the greatest number and diversity of antimicrobial agents. Fewer antifungal, antiprotozoan, and anthelmintic drugs are available because fungi, protozoa, and helminths—like their animal and human hosts—are eukaryotic and thus share many common features. The number of effective antiviral drugs is also limited, despite major differences in structure, because viruses utilize their host cells' enzymes and ribosomes to metabolize and replicate. Therefore, drugs that are effective against viral replication are likely toxic to the host as well.

Although they can have a variety of effects on pathogens, antimicrobial drugs can be categorized into several general groups according to their mechanisms of action **(Figure 10.2)**:

- Drugs that inhibit cell wall synthesis. These drugs are selectively toxic to certain fungal or bacterial cells, which have cell walls, but not to animals, which lack cell walls.
- Drugs that inhibit protein synthesis (translation) by targeting the differences between prokaryotic and eukaryotic ribosomes.
- Drugs that disrupt unique components of the cytoplasmic membrane.
- Drugs that inhibit general metabolic pathways not used by humans.
- Drugs that inhibit nucleic acid synthesis.
- Drugs that block a pathogen's recognition of or attachment to its host.



► **Figure 10.2 Mechanisms of action of microbial drugs.** Also listed are representative drugs for each type of action.

In the following sections we examine these mechanisms in turn.

► **ANIMATIONS:** *Chemotherapeutic Agents: Modes of Action*

Inhibition of Cell Wall Synthesis

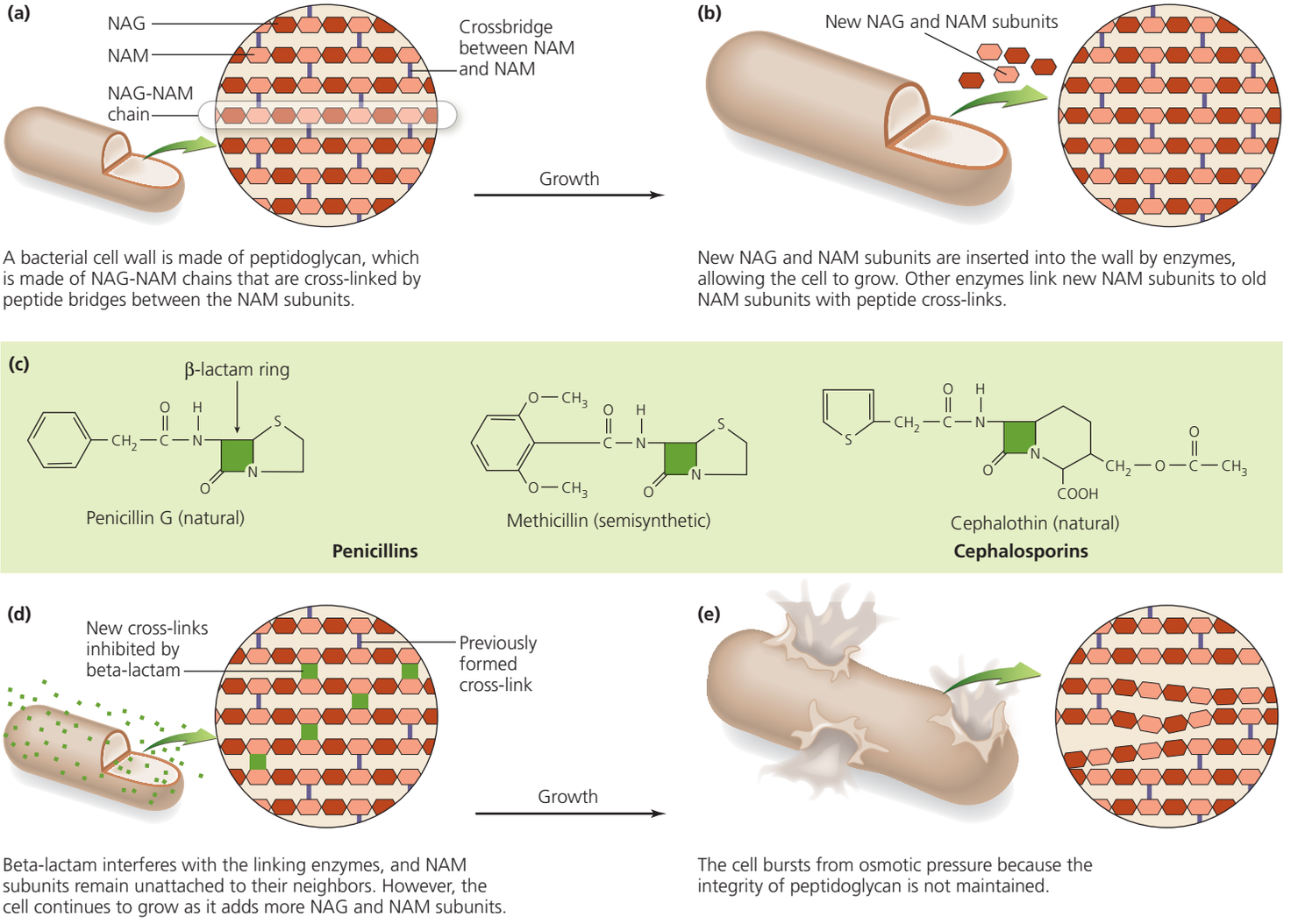
Learning Outcome

10.5 Describe the actions and give examples of drugs that affect the cell walls of bacteria and fungi.

A cell wall protects a cell from the effects of osmotic pressure. Both pathogenic bacteria and fungi have cell walls, which animals and humans lack. First, we examine drugs that act against bacterial cell walls.

Inhibition of Synthesis of Bacterial Walls

The major structural component of a bacterial cell wall is its peptidoglycan layer. Peptidoglycan is a huge macromolecule composed of polysaccharide chains of alternating *N*-acetylglucosamine (NAG) and *N*-acetylmuramic acid (NAM) molecules that are cross-linked by short peptide chains extending between NAM subunits (see Figure 3.13). To enlarge or divide, a cell must synthesize more peptidoglycan by adding new NAG and NAM subunits to existing NAG-NAM chains, and the new NAM subunits must then be bonded to neighboring NAM subunits **(Figure 10.3a** and **b)**.



▲ Figure 10.3 Bacterial cell wall synthesis and the inhibitory effects of beta-lactams on it.
(a) A schematic depiction of a normal peptidoglycan cell wall showing NAG-NAM chains and cross-linked NAM subunits. **(b)** A bacterium grows by adding new NAG and NAM subunits and linking new NAM subunits to older ones. **(c)** Structural formulas of some beta-lactam drugs. Their functional portion is the beta-lactam ring. **(d)** A schematic depiction of the effect of penicillin on peptidoglycan in preventing NAM-NAM cross-links. **(e)** Bacterial lysis due to the effects of a beta-lactam drug.
After a beta-lactam weakens a peptidoglycan molecule by preventing NAM-NAM cross-linkages, what force actually kills an affected bacterial cell?

Figure 10.3 Cells lyse because of osmotic movement of water into the cell.

Many common antibacterial agents act by preventing the cross-linkage of NAM subunits. Most prominent among these drugs are **beta-lactams** (such as penicillins, cephalosporins, and carbapenems), which are antimicrobials whose functional portions are called *beta-lactam (ß-lactam) rings* **(Figure 10.3c)**. Beta-lactams inhibit peptidoglycan formation by irreversibly binding to the enzymes that cross-link NAM subunits **(Figure 10.3d)**. In the absence of correctly formed peptidoglycan, growing bacterial cells have weakened cell walls that are less resistant to the effects of osmotic pressure. The underlying cytoplasmic membrane bulges through the weakened portions of cell wall as water moves into the cell, and eventually the cell lyses **(Figure 10.3e)**.

Chemists have made alterations to natural beta-lactams, such as penicillin G, to create semisynthetic derivatives such as methicillin (see Figure 10.3c), which are more stable in the acidic environment of the stomach, more readily absorbed in the intestinal tract, less susceptible to deactivation by bacterial enzymes, or more active against more types of bacteria.

Other antimicrobials such as **vancomycin** (van-kō-mī´sin), which is obtained from *Amycolatopsis orientalis* (am-ē-kō´la-topsis o-rē-en-tal´is), and **cycloserine,** a semisynthetic, disrupt cell wall formation in a different manner. They directly interfere with particular alanine-alanine bridges that link the NAM subunits in many Gram-positive bacteria. Those bacteria that lack alanine-alanine crossbridges are naturally resistant to these drugs. Still another drug that prevents cell wall formation, **bacitracin** (bas-i-trā´sin), blocks the transport of NAG and NAM from the cytoplasm out to the wall. Like beta-lactams, vancomycin, cycloserine, and bacitracin result in cell lysis due to the effects of osmotic pressure.

Since all these drugs prevent bacteria from *increasing* the amount of cell wall material but have no effect on existing peptidoglycan, they are effective only on bacterial cells that are growing or reproducing; dormant cells are unaffected.

Bacteria of the genus *Mycobacterium* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm), notably the agents of leprosy and tuberculosis, are characterized by unique, complex cell walls that have a layer of arabinogalactan–mycolic acid in addition to the usual peptidoglycan of prokaryotic cells. **Isoniazid** (ī-sō-nī´ă-zid), or **INH,**[1] and **ethambutol** (eth-am´boo-tol) disrupt the formation of this extra layer. Mycobacteria typically reproduce only every 12 to 24 hours, in part because of the complexity of their cell walls, so antimicrobial agents that act against mycobacteria must be administered for months or even years to be effective. It is often difficult to ensure that patients continue such a long regimen of treatment.

Inhibition of Synthesis of Fungal Walls

Fungal cell walls are composed of various polysaccharides containing a sugar, 1,3-D-glucan, that is not found in mammalian cells. A new class of antifungal drugs called **echinocandins,** among them *caspofungin,* inhibit the enzyme that synthesizes glucan; without glucan, fungal cells cannot make cell walls, leading to osmotic rupture.

[1]From *isonicotinic acid hydrazide*, the correct chemical name for isoniazid.

Inhibition of Protein Synthesis

Learning Outcome

10.6 Describe the actions and give examples of six antimicrobial drugs that interfere with protein synthesis.

Cells use proteins for structure and regulation, as enzymes in metabolism, and as channels and pumps to move materials across cell membranes. Thus, a consistent supply of proteins is vital for the active life of a cell. Given that all cells, including human cells, use ribosomes to translate proteins using information from messenger RNA templates, it is not immediately obvious that drugs could selectively target differences related to protein synthesis. However, prokaryotic ribosomes differ from eukaryotic ribosomes in structure and size: Prokaryotic ribosomes are 70S and composed of 30S and 50S subunits, whereas eukaryotic ribosomes are 80S with 60S and 40S subunits (see Figure 7.15).

Many antimicrobial agents take advantage of the differences between ribosomes to selectively target bacterial protein translation without significantly affecting eukaryotes. Note, however, that because some of these drugs affect eukaryotic mitochondria, which also contain 70S ribosomes like those of prokaryotes, such drugs may be harmful to animals and humans, especially the very active cells of the liver and bone marrow.

Understanding the actions of antimicrobials that inhibit protein synthesis requires an understanding of the process of translation because various parts of ribosomes are the targets of antimicrobial drugs. Both the 30S and 50S subunits of a prokaryotic ribosome play a role in the initiation of protein synthesis, in codon recognition, and in the docking of tRNA–amino acid complexes. The 50S subunit contains the enzymatic portion that actually forms peptide bonds (see Figure 7.17).

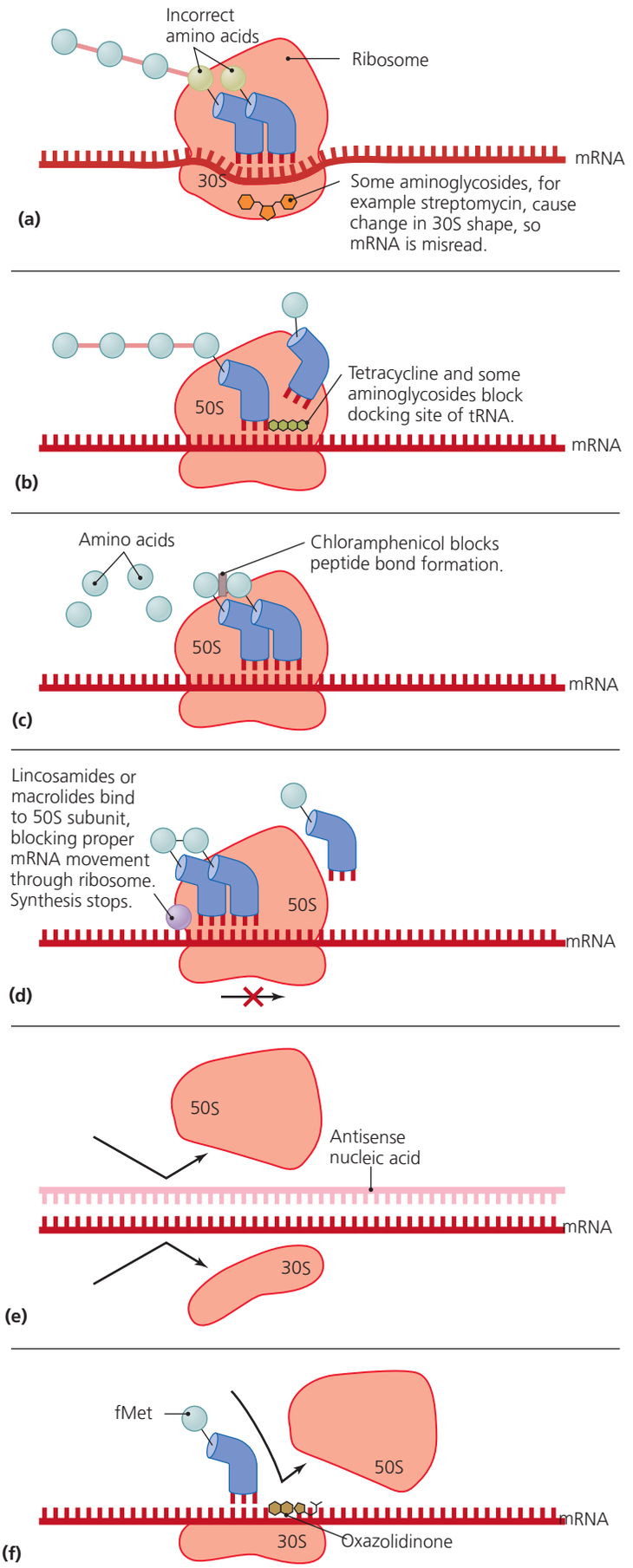
Among the antimicrobials that target the 30S ribosomal subunit are aminoglycosides and tetracyclines. **Aminoglycosides** (am´i-nō-glī´kō-sīds), such as *streptomycin* and *gentamicin,* change the shape of the 30S subunit, making it impossible for the ribosome to read the codons of mRNA correctly **(Figure 10.4a)**. Other aminoglycosides and **tetracyclines** (tet-ră-sī´klēns) block the tRNA docking site (A site), which then prevents the incorporation of additional amino acids into a growing polypeptide **(Figure 10.4b)**.

Other antimicrobials interfere with the function of the 50S subunit. **Chloramphenicol** and similar drugs block the enzymatic site of the 50S subunit **(Figure 10.4c)**, which prevents translation. **Lincosamides, streptogramins,** and **macrolides** (mak´rō-līds, such as *erythromycin*) bind to a different portion of the 50S subunit, preventing movement of the ribosome from one codon to the next **(Figure 10.4d)**; as a result, translation is frozen and protein synthesis is halted.

Mupirocin is a unique drug that selectively binds to the bacterial tRNA that carries the amino acid isoleucine ($tRNA^{Ile}$). It does not bind to any of the eukaryotic tRNA molecules. Binding prevents the incorporation of isoleucine into polypeptides, effectively crippling the bacterium's protein production.

▶ Figure 10.4 The mechanisms by which antimicrobials target prokaryotic ribosomes to inhibit protein synthesis. **(a)** Aminoglycosides change the shape of the 30S subunit, causing incorrect pairing of tRNA anticodons with mRNA codons. **(b)** Tetracyclines block the tRNA docking site (A site) on the 30S subunit, preventing protein elongation. **(c)** Chloramphenicol blocks enzymatic activity of the 50S subunit, preventing the formation of peptide bonds between amino acids. **(d)** Lincosamides or macrolides bind to the 50S subunit, preventing movement of the ribosome along the mRNA. **(e)** Antisense nucleic acids bind to mRNA, blocking ribosomal subunits. **(f)** Oxazolidinones inhibit initiation of translation. *Which tRNA anticodon should align with the codon CUG?*

Figure 10.4 *Anticodon GAC is the correct complement for the codon CUG.*



Physicians prescribe mupirocin in topical creams to treat skin infections.

Other drugs that block protein synthesis are **antisense nucleic acids** (Figure 10.4e). These RNA or single-stranded DNA molecules are designed to be complementary to specific mRNA molecules of pathogens. They block ribosomal subunits from attaching to that mRNA with no effect on human mRNA. *Fomivirsen* is the first of this class of drugs to be approved. It inactivates cytomegalovirus and is used to treat eye infections.

Oxazolidinones are antimicrobial drugs that work to stop protein synthesis by blocking initiation of translation (Figure 10.4f). Oxazolidinones are used as a last resort in treating infections of Gram-positive bacteria resistant to other antimicrobials, including vancomycin- and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs o´rē-ŭs). **▶ VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Actions of Some Drugs that Inhibit Prokaryotic Protein Synthesis***

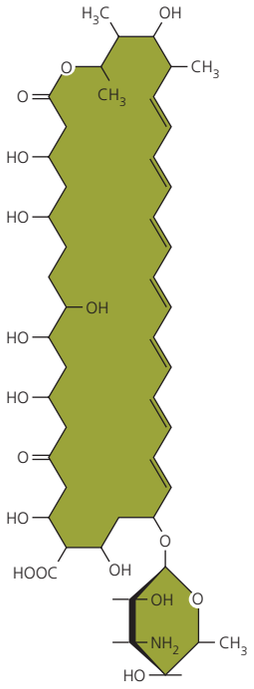
Disruption of Cytoplasmic Membranes

Learning Outcome

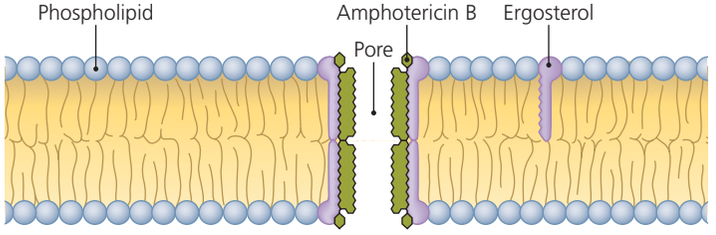
10.7 Describe the action of antimicrobial drugs that interfere with cytoplasmic membranes.

Some antibacterial drugs, such as the short polypeptide *gramicidin*, disrupt the cytoplasmic membrane of a targeted cell, often by forming a channel through the membrane, damaging its integrity. This is also the mechanism of action of a group of antifungal drugs called **polyenes** (pol-ē-ēns´). The polyenes *nystatin* and *amphotericin B* (Figure 10.5a) are fungicidal because they attach to *ergosterol*, a lipid constituent of fungal membranes (Figure 10.5b), in the process disrupting the membrane and causing lysis of the cell. The cytoplasmic membranes of humans are somewhat susceptible to amphotericin B because they contain cholesterol, which is similar to ergosterol, though cholesterol does not bind amphotericin B as well as does ergosterol.

Azoles, such as *fluconazole,* and **allylamines,** such as *terbinafine,* are two other classes of antifungal drugs that disrupt cytoplasmic membranes. They act by inhibiting the synthesis of ergosterol; without ergosterol, the cell's membrane does not remain intact, and the fungal cell dies. Azoles and allylamines are generally harmless to humans because human cells do not manufacture ergosterol.



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 10.5 Disruption of the cytoplasmic membrane by the antifungal amphotericin B.** **(a)** The structure of amphotericin B. **(b)** The proposed action of amphotericin B. The drug binds to molecules of ergosterol, which then congregate, forming a pore.

Most bacterial membranes lack sterols, so these bacteria are naturally resistant to polyenes, azoles, and allylamines; however, there are other agents that disrupt bacterial membranes. An example of these antibacterial agents is *polymyxin,* produced by *Bacillus polymyxa* (ba-sil´ŭs po-lē-miks´ă). Polymyxin is effective against Gram-negative bacteria, particularly *Pseudomonas* (soo-dō-mō´nas), but because it is toxic to human kidneys, it is usually reserved for use against external pathogens that are resistant to other antibacterial drugs.

Pyrazinamide disrupts transport across the cytoplasmic membrane of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (too-ber-kyū-lō´sis). The pathogen uniquely activates and accumulates the drug. Unlike many other antimicrobials, pyrazinamide is most effective against intracellular, nonreplicating bacterial cells.

Some antiparasitic drugs also act against cytoplasmic membranes. For example, *praziquantel* and *ivermectin* change the permeability of cell membranes of several types of parasitic worms.

Inhibition of Metabolic Pathways

Learning Outcomes

10.8 Explain the action of antimicrobials that disrupt synthesis of folic acid.

10.9 Define the term *analog* as it relates to antimicrobial drugs.

10.10 Describe the action of antiviral drugs: that interfere with metabolism.

Metabolism can be defined simply as the sum of all chemical reactions that take place within an organism. Whereas most living things share certain metabolic reactions—for example, glycolysis—other chemical reactions are unique to certain organisms. Whenever differences exist between the metabolic processes of a pathogen and its host, *antimetabolic agents* can be effective.

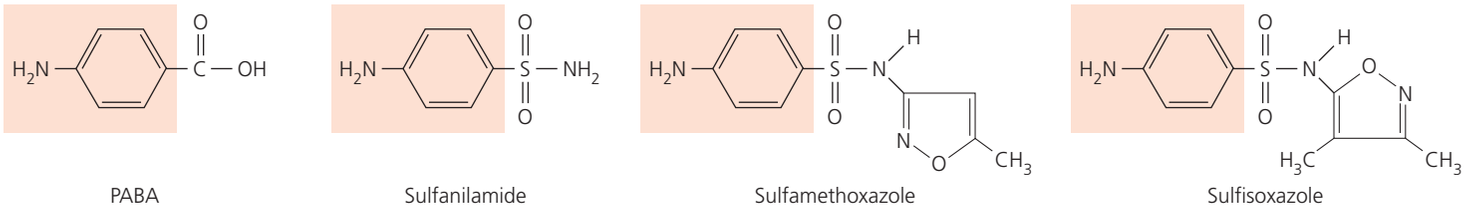
Various kinds of antimetabolic agents are available, including *atovaquone,* which interferes with electron transport in protozoa and fungi; heavy metals (such as arsenic, mercury, and antimony), which inactivate enzymes; agents that disrupt tubulin polymerization and glucose uptake by many protozoa and parasitic worms; drugs that block the activation of viruses; and metabolic antagonists, such as sulfanilamide, the first commercially available antimicrobial agent.

Sulfanilamide and similar compounds, collectively called **sulfonamides,** act as antimetabolic drugs because they are structural **analogs** of—that is, are chemically very similar to—*para-aminobenzoic acid* (*PABA;* **Figure 10.6a**). PABA is crucial in the synthesis of nucleotides required for DNA and RNA synthesis. Many organisms, including some pathogens, enzymatically convert PABA into dihydrofolic acid and then dihydrofolic acid into tetrahydrofolic acid (THF), a form of folic acid that is used as a coenzyme in the synthesis of purine and pyrimidine nucleotides **(Figure 10.6b)**. As analogs of PABA, sulfonamides compete with PABA molecules for the active site of the enzyme involved in the production of dihydrofolic acid **(Figure 10.6c)**. This competition leads to a decrease in the production of THF and thus of DNA and RNA. The end result of sulfonamide competition with PABA is the cessation of cell metabolism, which leads to cell death.

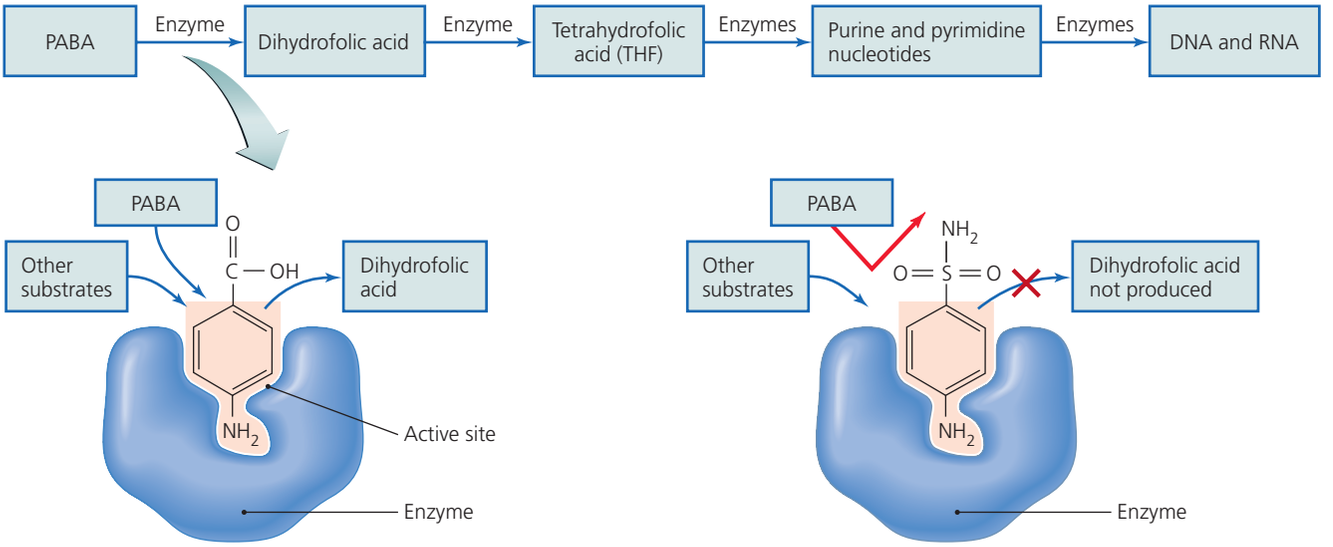
Note that humans do not synthesize THF from PABA; instead, we take simple folic acids found in our diets and convert them into THF. As a result, human metabolism is unaffected by sulfonamides.

Another antimetabolic agent, *trimethoprim,* also interferes with nucleic acid synthesis. However, instead of binding to the enzyme that converts PABA to dihydrofolic acid, trimethoprim binds to the enzyme involved in the conversion of dihydrofolic acid to THF, the second step in this metabolic pathway.

Some antiviral agents target the unique aspects of the metabolism of viruses. After attachment to a host cell, viruses must penetrate the cell's membrane and be uncoated to release viral genetic instructions and assume control of the cell's metabolic machinery. Some viruses of eukaryotes are uncoated as a result



(a) Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) and its structural analogs, the sulfonamides



(b) Role of PABA in folic acid synthesis in bacteria and protozoa

(c) Inhibition of folic acid synthesis by sulfonamide

▲ Figure 10.6 The antimetabolic action of sulfonamides in inhibiting nucleic acid synthesis. (a) Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA) and representative members of its structural analogs, the sulfonamides. The analogous portions of the compounds are shaded. **(b)** The metabolic pathway in bacteria and protozoa by which folic acid is synthesized from PABA. **(c)** The inhibition of folic acid synthesis by the presence of a sulfonamide, which deactivates the enzyme by binding irreversibly to the enzyme's active site.

of the acidic environment within phagolysosomes. *Amantadine, rimantadine,* and weak organic bases can neutralize the acid of phagolysosomes and thereby prevent viral uncoating; thus, these are antiviral drugs. Amantadine is used to prevent infections by influenza type A virus.

Protease inhibitors interfere with the action of protease—an enzyme that HIV needs near the end of its replication cycle. These drugs, when used as part of a "cocktail" of drugs including reverse transcriptase inhibitors (discussed shortly), have revolutionized treatment of AIDS patients in industrialized countries. Researchers have reduced the number of pills in the daily cocktail to just a few that contain all the drugs formerly found in 35 or more daily pills.

CRITICAL THINKING

It would be impractical and expensive for every American to take amantadine during the entire flu season to prevent influenza infections. For what group of people might amantadine prophylaxis be cost effective?

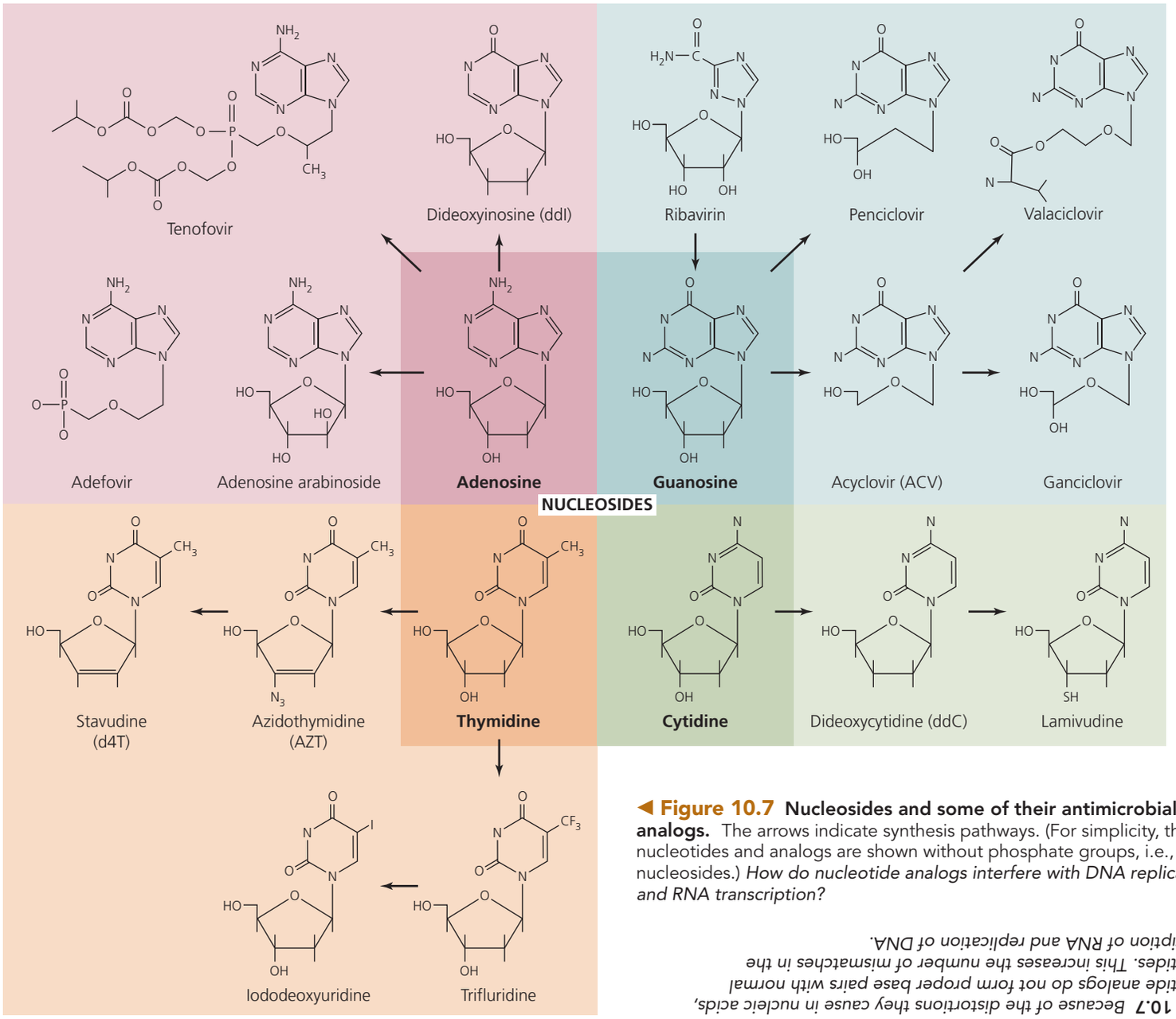
Inhibition of Nucleic Acid Synthesis

Learning Outcome

10.11 Describe the antimicrobial action of nucleotide and nucleoside analogs, quinolones, drugs that bind to RNA or DNA, and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.

The nucleic acids DNA and RNA are built from purine and pyrimidine nucleotides and are critical to the survival of cells. Several drugs function by blocking either the replication of DNA or its transcription into RNA.

Because only slight differences exist between the DNA of prokaryotes and eukaryotes, drugs that affect DNA replication often act against both types of cells. For example, *actinomycin* binds to DNA and effectively blocks DNA synthesis and RNA transcription not only in bacterial pathogens but in their hosts as well. Generally, drugs of this kind are not used to treat infections, though they are used in research of DNA replication and may be used judiciously to slow replication of cancer cells.



◀ **Figure 10.7 Nucleosides and some of their antimicrobial analogs.** The arrows indicate synthesis pathways. (For simplicity, the nucleotides and analogs are shown without phosphate groups, i.e., as nucleosides.) *How do nucleotide analogs interfere with DNA replication and RNA transcription?*

Figure 10.7 *Because of the distortions they cause in nucleic acids, nucleotide analogs do not form proper base pairs with normal nucleotides. This increases the number of mismatches in the transcription of RNA and replication of DNA.*

Other compounds that can act as antimicrobials by interfering with the function of nucleic acids are **nucleotide**[2] **analogs** or **nucleoside analogs,** which are molecules with structural similarities to the normal nucleotide building blocks of nucleic acids **(Figure 10.7)**. The structures of certain nucleotide or nucleoside analogs, such as the anti-AIDS drug AZT, enable them to be incorporated into the DNA or RNA of pathogens, where they distort the shapes of the nucleic acid molecules and prevent further replication, transcription, or translation. Nucleotide and nucleoside analogs are most often used against viruses because viral DNA polymerases are tens to hundreds of times more likely to incorporate nonfunctional nucleotides into nucleic acids than is human DNA polymerase. Additionally, complete viral nucleic acid synthesis is more rapid than cellular nucleic acid synthesis. These characteristics make viruses more susceptible to nucleotide analogs than their hosts are, though nucleotide analogs are also effective against rapidly dividing cancer cells.

The synthetic drugs called *quinolones*, including *fluoroquinolones*, are unusual because they are active against prokaryotic DNA specifically. These antibacterial agents inhibit *DNA gyrase,* an enzyme necessary for correct coiling and uncoiling of replicating bacterial DNA; they typically have little effect on eukaryotes or viruses.

[2]Nucleotides are composed of a pentose sugar, phosphate, and a nitrogenous base; nucleosides lack the phosphate.

Other antimicrobial agents function by binding to and inhibiting the action of RNA polymerases during the synthesis of RNA from a DNA template. Several drugs, including *rifampin* (rif´am-pin), bind more readily to prokaryotic RNA polymerase than to eukaryotic RNA polymerase; as a result, rifampin is more toxic to prokaryotes than to eukaryotes. Rifampin is used primarily against *M. tuberculosis* and other pathogens that metabolize slowly and thus are less susceptible to antimicrobials targeting active metabolic processes.

Clofazimine binds to the DNA of *Mycobacterium leprae* (lep´rī), the causative agent of leprosy, and prevents normal replication and transcription. It is also used to treat tuberculosis and other mycobacterial infections. *Pentamidine* and *propamidine isethionate* bind to protozoan DNA, inhibiting the pathogen's reproduction and development.

Reverse transcriptase inhibitors, which are part of AIDS cocktails, act against reverse transcriptase, which is an enzyme HIV uses early in its replication cycle to make DNA copies of its RNA genome (reverse transcription). Since people lack reverse transcriptase, the inhibitor does not harm patients.

Prevention of Virus Attachment

Learning Outcome

10.12 Describe the action of antimicrobial attachment antagonists.

Many pathogens, particularly viruses, must attach to their host's cells via the chemical interaction between attachment proteins on the pathogen and complementary receptor proteins on a host cell. Attachment of viruses can be blocked by peptide and sugar analogs of either attachment or receptor proteins. When these sites are blocked by analogs, viruses can neither attach to nor enter their hosts' cells. The use of such substances, called *attachment antagonists*, is an exciting new area of antimicrobial drug development. *Arildone* and *pleconaril* are antagonists of the receptor of polioviruses and some cold viruses. They block attachment of these viruses and deter infections.

Clinical Considerations in Prescribing Antimicrobial Drugs

Even though some fungi and bacteria commonly produce antibiotics, most of these chemicals are not effective for treating diseases because they are toxic to humans and animals, are too expensive, are produced in minute quantities, or lack adequate potency. The ideal antimicrobial agent to treat an infection or disease would be one that is as follows:

- Readily available
- Inexpensive
- Chemically stable (so that it can be transported easily and stored for long periods of time)
- Easily administered
- Nontoxic and nonallergenic
- Selectively toxic against a wide range of pathogens

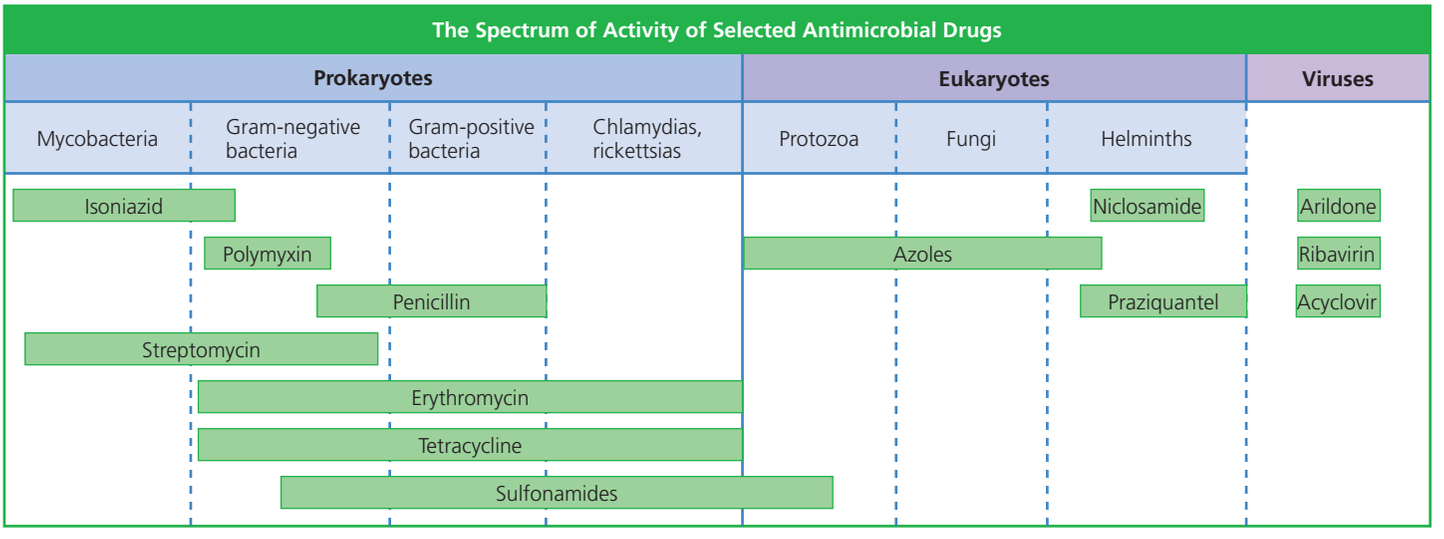
No agent has all of these qualities, so doctors and medical laboratory technicians must evaluate antimicrobials with respect to several characteristics: the types of pathogens against which they are effective; their effectiveness, including the dosages required to be effective; the routes by which they can be administered; their overall safety; and any side effects they produce. We consider each of these characteristics of antimicrobials in the following sections.

Spectrum of Action

Learning Outcome

10.13 Distinguish narrow-spectrum drugs from broad-spectrum drugs in terms of their targets and side effects.

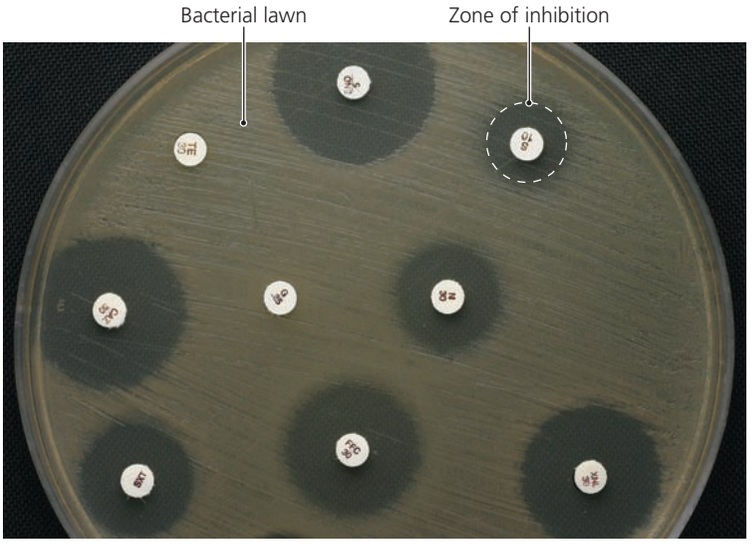
The number of different kinds of pathogens a drug acts against is known as its **spectrum of action** (Figure 10.8); drugs that work against only a few kinds of pathogens are **narrow-spectrum**



▲ **Figure 10.8 Spectrum of action for selected antimicrobial agents.** The more kinds of pathogens a drug affects, the broader its spectrum of action.

drugs, whereas those that are effective against many different kinds of pathogens are **broad-spectrum drugs.** For instance, because tetracycline acts against many different kinds of bacteria, including Gram negative, Gram positive, chlamydias, and rickettsias, it is considered a broad-spectrum antibiotic. In contrast, penicillin cannot easily penetrate the outer membrane of a Gram-negative bacterium to reach and prevent the formation of peptidoglycan, so its efficacy is limited largely to Gram-positive bacteria. Thus, penicillin has a narrower spectrum of action than tetracycline.

The use of broad-spectrum antimicrobials is not always as desirable as it might seem. Broad-spectrum antimicrobials can also open the door to serious secondary infections by transient pathogens or *superinfections* by members of the normal microbiota unaffected by the antimicrobial. This results because the killing of normal microbiota reduces *microbial antagonism,* the competition between normal microbes and pathogens for nutrients and space. Microbial antagonism reinforces the body's defense by limiting the ability of pathogens to colonize the skin and mucous membranes. Thus, a woman using erythromycin to treat strep throat (a bacterial disease) could develop vaginitis resulting from the excessive growth of *Candida albicans* (kan´did-ă al´bi-kanz), a yeast that is unaffected by erythromycin and is freed from microbial antagonism when the antibiotic kills normal bacteria in the vagina.



▲ **Figure 10.9 Zones of inhibition in a diffusion susceptibility (Kirby-Bauer) test.** In general, the larger the zone of inhibition around disks, which are impregnated with an antimicrobial agent, the more effective that antimicrobial is against the organism growing on the plate. The organism is classified as either susceptible, intermediate, or resistant to the antimicrobials tested based on the sizes of the zones of inhibition. *If all of these antimicrobial agents diffuse at the same rate and are equally safe and easily administered, which one would be the drug of choice for killing this pathogen?*

Figure 10.9 *The drug ENO, a fluoroquinolone found in the uppermost disk, is most effective.*

Effectiveness

Learning Outcome

10.14 Compare and contrast diffusion susceptibility, Etest, MIC, and MBC tests.

To effectively treat infectious diseases, physicians must know which antimicrobial agent is most effective against a particular pathogen. To ascertain the efficacy of antimicrobials, microbiologists conduct a variety of tests, including diffusion susceptibility tests, the minimum inhibitory concentration test, and the minimum bactericidal concentration test.

Diffusion Susceptibility Test

Diffusion susceptibility tests, also known as *Kirby-Bauer tests,* involve uniformly inoculating a Petri plate with a standardized amount of the pathogen in question. Then small disks of paper containing standard concentrations of the drugs to be tested are firmly arranged on the surface of the plate. The plate is incubated, and the bacteria grow and reproduce to form a "lawn" everywhere except the areas where effective antimicrobial drugs diffuse through the agar. After incubation, the plates are examined for the presence of a **zone of inhibition—**that is, a clear area where bacteria do not grow **(Figure 10.9)**. A zone of inhibition is measured as the diameter (to the closest millimeter) of the clear region.

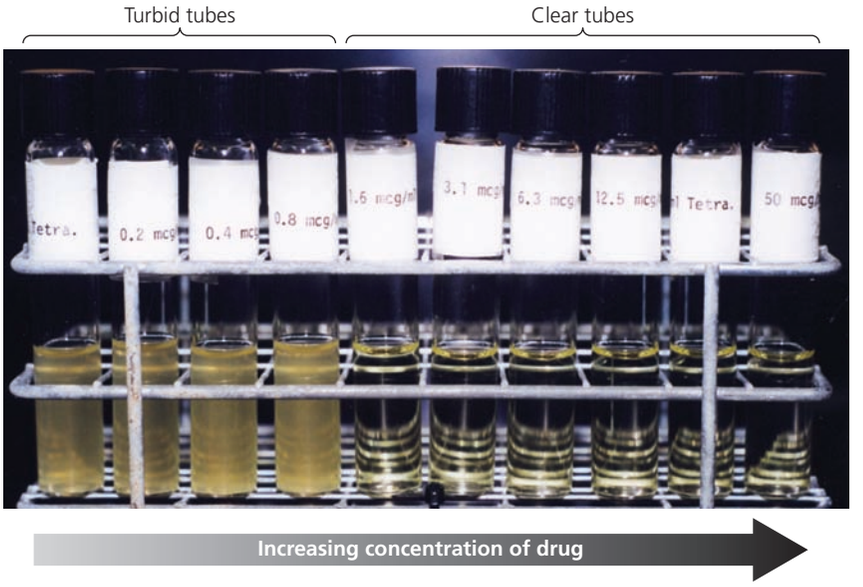
If all antimicrobials diffused at the same rate, then a larger zone of inhibition would indicate a more effective drug. Instead, drugs with low molecular weights generally diffuse more quickly and so might have a larger zone of inhibition than a more effective but larger molecule. The size of a zone of inhibition must be compared to a standard table for that particular drug before accurate comparisons can be made. Diffusion susceptibility tests enable scientists to classify pathogens as *susceptible, intermediate,* or *resistant* to each drug.

CRITICAL THINKING

Sometimes it is not possible to conduct a susceptibility test because of either a lack of time or an inability to access the bacteria (e.g., from an inner-ear infection). How could a physician select an appropriate therapeutic agent in such cases?

Minimum Inhibitory Concentration (MIC) Test

Once scientists identify an effective antimicrobial agent, they quantitatively express its potency as a **minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC),** often using the unit µg/ml. As the name suggests, the MIC is the smallest amount of the drug that will *inhibit* growth and reproduction of the pathogen. The MIC can be determined via a **broth dilution test,** in which a standardized amount of bacteria is added to serial dilutions of antimicrobial agents in tubes or wells containing broth. After incubation, turbidity (cloudiness) indicates bacterial growth; lack of turbidity indicates that the bacteria were either inhibited or killed by the antimicrobial agent **(Figure 10.10)**. Dilution tests can be conducted simultaneously in wells, and the entire process can be automated, with turbidity measured by special scanners connected to computers.

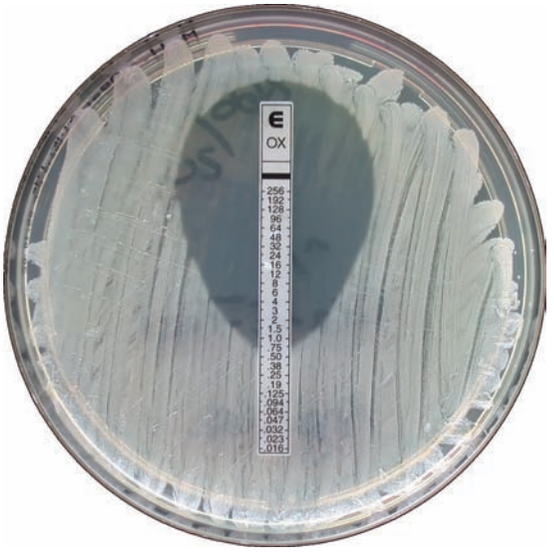


▶ **Figure 10.10 Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) test in test tubes.** *What is the MIC for the drug acting against this bacterium?*

Figure 10.10 *The MIC is 1.6 mcg (µg) per ml.*

Another test that determines minimum inhibitory concentration combines aspects of an MIC test and a diffusion susceptibility test. This test, called an **Etest,**[3] involves placing a plastic strip containing a gradient of the antimicrobial agent being tested on a plate uniformly inoculated with the organism of interest **(Figure 10.11)**. After incubation, an elliptical zone of inhibition indicates antimicrobial activity, and the minimum inhibitory concentration can be noted where the zone of inhibition intersects a scale printed on the strip.

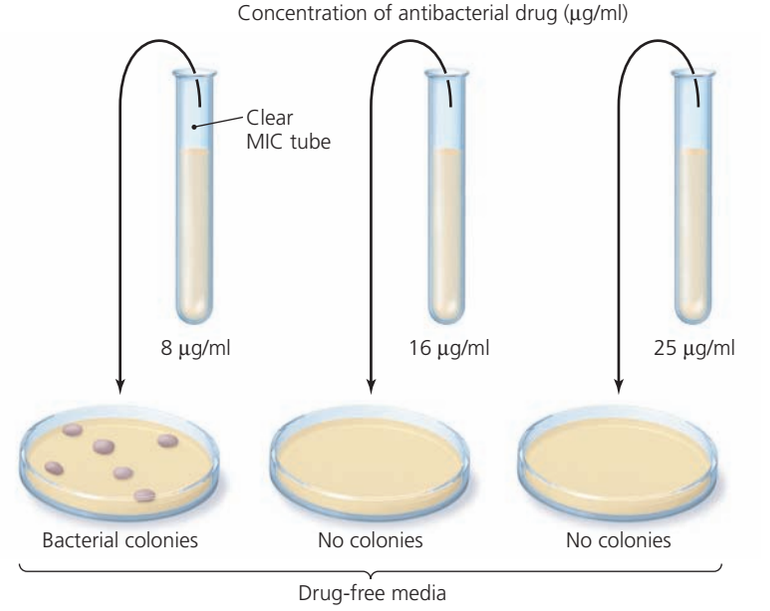
[3]The name *Etest* has no specific origin.



▲ **Figure 10.11 An Etest, which combines aspects of Kirby-Bauer and MIC tests.** The plastic strip contains a gradient of the antimicrobial agent of interest. The MIC is estimated to be the concentration printed on the strip where the zone of inhibition intersects the strip. In this example, the MIC is 0.75 µg/ml.

Minimum Bactericidal Concentration (MBC) Test

Similar to the MIC test is a **minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test,** though an MBC test determines the amount of drug required to kill the microbe rather than just the amount to inhibit it, as the MIC does. In an MBC test, samples taken from clear MIC tubes (or, alternatively, from zones of inhibition from a series of diffusion susceptibility tests) are transferred to plates containing a drug-free growth medium **(Figure 10.12)**. The appearance of bacterial growth in these subcultures after appropriate incubation indicates that at least some bacterial cells



▲ **Figure 10.12 A minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test.** In this test, plates containing a drug-free growth medium are inoculated with samples taken from zones of inhibition or from clear MIC tubes. After incubation, growth of bacterial colonies on a plate indicates that the concentration of antimicrobial drug (in this case, 8 µg/ml) is bacteriostatic. The lowest concentration for which no bacterial growth occurs on the plate is the minimum bactericidal concentration; in this case, the MBC is 16 µg/ml.

survived that concentration of the antimicrobial drug and were able to grow and multiply once placed in a drug-free medium. Any drug concentration at which growth occurs in subculture is *bacteriostatic,* not *bactericidal,* for that bacterium. The lowest concentration of drug for which no growth occurs in the subcultures is the minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC).

Routes of Administration

Learning Outcome

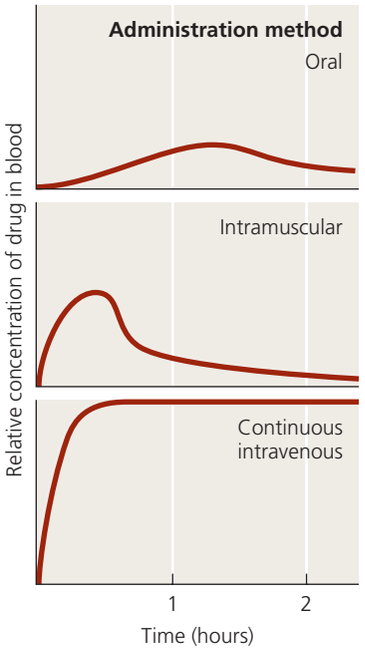
10.15 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the different routes of administration of antimicrobial drugs.

An adequate amount of an antimicrobial agent must reach a site of infection if it is to be effective. For external infections such as athlete's foot, drugs can be applied directly. This is known as *topical* or *local* administration. For internal infections, drugs can be administered *orally, intramuscularly (IM),* or *intravenously (IV).* Each route has advantages and disadvantages.

Even though the oral route is simplest (it requires no needles and is self-administered), the drug concentrations achieved in the body are lower than occur via other routes of administration **(Figure 10.13)**. Further, because patients administer the drug themselves, they do not always follow prescribed timetables.

IM administration via a hypodermic needle allows a drug to diffuse slowly into the many blood vessels within muscle tissue, but the concentration of the drug in the blood is never as high as that achieved by IV administration, which delivers the drug directly into the bloodstream through either a needle or a catheter (a plastic or rubber tube). The amount of a drug in the blood is initially very high for the IV route, but the concentration can rapidly diminish as the liver and kidneys remove the drug from the circulation, unless the drug is continuously administered. Physicians can administer non-antimicrobial chemicals that prolong an antimicrobial's life span in the body; for example, cilastatin inhibits a kidney enzyme that would destroy imipenem—a type of beta-lactam.

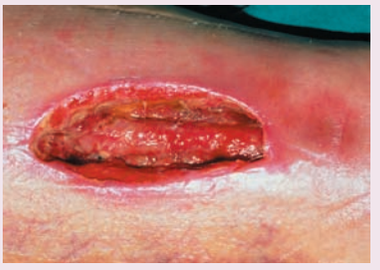
In addition to considering the route of administration, physicians must consider how antimicrobial agents are distributed to infected tissues by the blood. For example, an agent removed rapidly from the blood by the kidneys might be the drug of choice for a bladder infection but would not be chosen to treat an infection of the heart. Finally, given that blood vessels in the brain, spinal cord, and eye are almost impermeable to many antimicrobial agents (because the tight structure of capillary walls in these structures creates the blood-brain barrier), infections there are often difficult to treat.



▲ **Figure 10.13 The effect of route of administration on blood levels of a chemotherapeutic agent.** Although intravenous (IV) and intramuscular (IM) administration achieve higher drug concentrations in the blood, oral administration has the advantage of simplicity.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

BATTLING AN ENEMY



Like his father and grandfather before him, Ben is a marine sergeant and proud to serve his country. He is nearing the end of his second tour of duty in Afghanistan and is looking forward to returning home to his wife and two sons. However, two weeks before he is scheduled to leave, Ben is seriously wounded in a suicide bomber's attack and almost loses his leg. He initially responds well to treatment, but three days into his recovery, his wound is obviously infected and getting worse. His doctors need to act fast. They prescribe cephalexin, which is a semisynthetic cephalosporin. The nurse swabs the wound and sends a sample to the lab for a diffusion susceptibility test.

1. What does the term *semisynthetic* mean in reference to an antimicrobial drug?
2. What is the active site of the drug cephalexin called?
3. If the bacterium proves to be resistant to cephalexin, resistance is likely due to what enzyme?
4. What is another name for a diffusion susceptibility test?

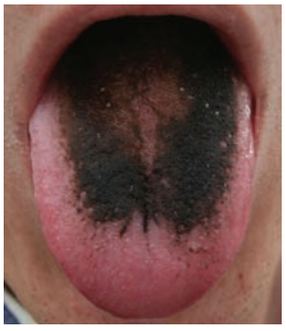
Safety and Side Effects

Learning Outcomes

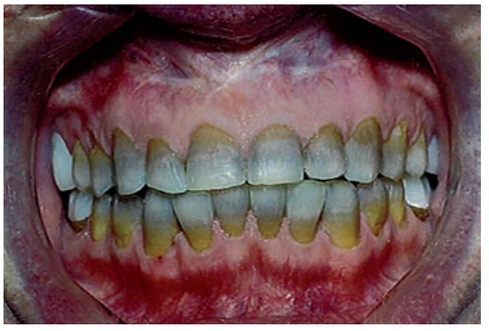
10.16 Identify three main categories of side effects of antimicrobial therapy.

10.17 Define *therapeutic index* and *therapeutic range.*

Another aspect of chemotherapy that physicians must consider is the possibility of adverse side effects. These fall into three main categories—toxicity, allergies, and disruption of normal microbiota.



(a)



(b)

◀ **Figure 10.14 Some side effects resulting from toxicity of antimicrobial agents. (a)** "Black hairy tongue," caused by the antiprotozoan drug metronidazole (Flagyl). **(b)** Discoloration and damage to tooth enamel caused by tetracycline. *Who should avoid taking tetracycline?*

Figure 10.14 *Pregnant women and children should not use tetracycline.*

Toxicity

Though antimicrobial drugs are ideally selectively toxic against microbes and harmless to humans, many antimicrobials in fact have toxic side effects. The exact cause of many adverse reactions is poorly understood, but drugs may be toxic to the kidneys, the liver, or nerves. For example, polymyxin and aminoglycosides can have fatally toxic effects on kidneys. Not all toxic side effects are so serious. *Metronidazole (Flagyl)*, an antiprotozoan drug, may cause a harmless temporary condition called "black hairy tongue," which results when the breakdown products of hemoglobin accumulate in the papillae of the tongue **(Figure 10.14a)**.

Doctors must be especially careful when prescribing drugs for pregnant women, as many drugs that are safe for adults can have adverse affects when absorbed by a fetus. For instance, tetracyclines form complexes with calcium that can become incorporated into bones and developing teeth, causing malformation of the skull and stained, weakened tooth enamel **(Figure 10.14b)**.

Researchers are able to estimate the safety of an antimicrobial drug by calculating the drug's **therapeutic index (TI)**, which is essentially a ratio comparing the dose of the drug that a patient can tolerate to the drug's effective dose. The higher the TI, the safer the drug. Clinicians refer to a drug's **therapeutic range (therapeutic window),** which is the range of concentrations of the drug that are effective without being excessively toxic.

Allergies

In addition to toxicity, some drugs trigger allergic immune responses in sensitive patients. Although relatively rare, such reactions may be life threatening, especially in an immediate, violent reaction called *anaphylactic shock*. For example, about 0.1% of Americans have an anaphylactic reaction to penicillin, resulting in approximately 300 deaths per year. However, not every allergy to an antimicrobial agent is so serious. Recent studies indicate that patients with mild allergies to penicillin frequently lose their sensitivity to it over time. Thus, an initial mild reaction to penicillin need not preclude its use in treating future infections. (Chapter 18 discusses allergies in more detail.)

Disruption of Normal Microbiota

Drugs that disrupt normal microbiota and their microbial antagonism of opportunistic pathogens may result in secondary infections. In instances when a member of the normal microbiota is not affected by a drug, it is an opportunistic pathogen and can overgrow, causing a disease. For example, long-term use of broad-spectrum antibacterials often results in explosions in the growth rate of *Candida albicans* in the vagina (vaginitis) or mouth (thrush) and the multiplication of *Clostridium difficile* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm di-fi´sēl) in the colon, causing a potentially fatal condition called *pseudomembranous colitis*. Such opportunistic pathogens are of great concern for hospitalized patients, who are often not only debilitated but also more likely to be exposed to pathogens with resistance to antimicrobial drugs—the topic of the next section.

Beneficial Microbes: Probiotics: The New Sheriff in Town on p. 298 focuses on how normal microbiota can help keep pathogens in check.

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs

Among the major challenges facing microbiologists today are the problems presented by pathogens that are resistant to antimicrobial agents (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: Community-Associated MRSA** on p. 298). In the sections that follow, we examine the development of resistant populations of pathogens, the mechanisms by which pathogens are resistant to antimicrobials, and some ways that resistance can be retarded.

The Development of Resistance in Populations

Learning Outcomes

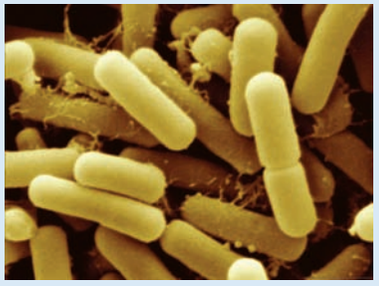
10.18 Describe how populations of resistant microbes can arise.

10.19 Describe the relationship between R plasmids and resistant cells.

Not all pathogens are equally sensitive to a given therapeutic agent; a population may contain a few organisms that are naturally either partially or completely resistant. Among bacteria, individual cells can acquire such resistance in two ways: through new mutations of chromosomal genes or by acquiring resistance

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

PROBIOTICS: THE NEW SHERIFF IN TOWN



Lactobacillus reuteri. SEM 1 μm

As overuse of antimicrobials has allowed more bacteria that are drug resistant to thrive, scientists are investigating alternative methods of combating microbial infections. One growing field of interest is *probiotics,* the use of microorganisms for health benefits.

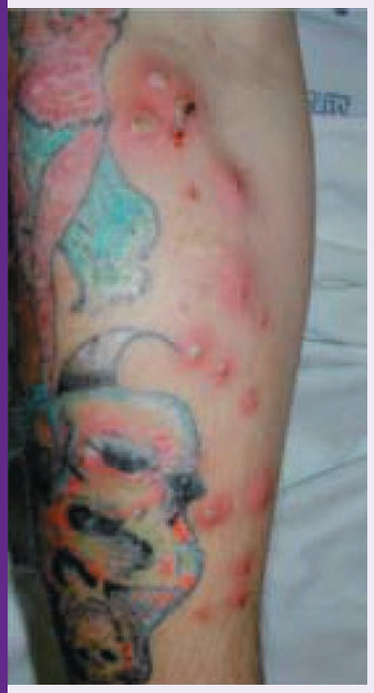
Probiotics include bacteria such as *Lactobacillus,* which may help reduce symptoms of diarrhea in children, relieve milk allergies, and alleviate certain respiratory infections. One of the central ideas behind probiotics is that "good" bacteria, such as *Lactobacillus* (which lives naturally and harmlessly in our intestines and other parts of the body), compete with harmful microorganisms for resources, keeping pathogenic microbes in check. Some evidence suggests that *Lactobacillus* also induces the expression of certain proteins that protect the intestines against harmful bacteria and viruses. Much more research remains to be done, but the preliminary findings are encouraging.

genes on extrachromosomal pieces of DNA called **R plasmids** (or *R factors*) via the processes of horizontal gene transfer—transformation, transduction, or conjugation. We focus here on resistance in populations of bacteria, but resistance is known to occur among protozoa and viruses.

The process by which a resistant strain of bacteria develops is depicted in **Figure 10.15**. In the absence of an antimicrobial drug, resistant cells are usually less efficient than their normal neighbors because they must expend extra energy to maintain resistance genes and proteins. Under these circumstances, resistant cells remain the minority in a population because they reproduce more slowly. However, when an antimicrobial agent is present, the majority of cells (which are sensitive to the antimicrobial) are inhibited or die

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

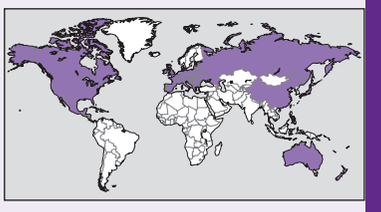
COMMUNITY-ASSOCIATED MRSA



Julie was proud and excited about her new tattoo; it was crunk! Jason, her boyfriend, had bought it as a gift for her 18th birthday, and she loved the way it covered her arm. A week later something else covered her arm . . . and his leg.

Julie and Jason had fallen victim to an emerging disease—community-associated, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (CA-MRSA) infection. Julie's arm was covered with red, swollen, painful, pus-containing lesions, and she had a fever.

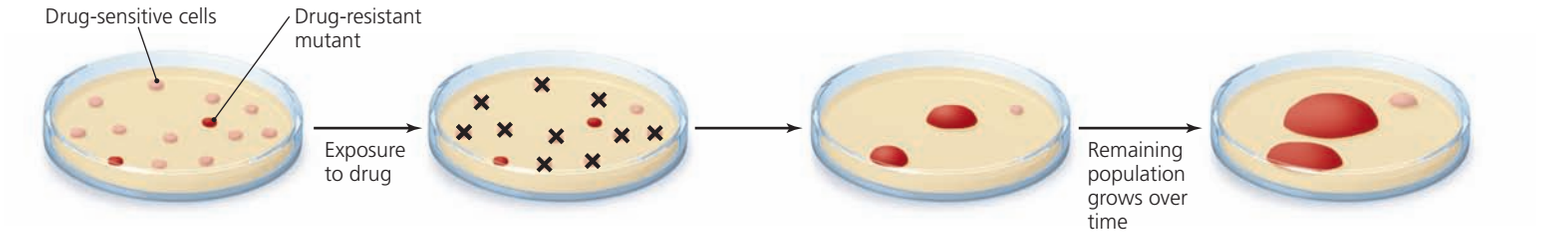
Jason thought he had a spider bite on Wednesday, but by Thursday morning a bright red line extended from his ankle to his groin.



He could barely walk, and then his condition worsened. By the weekend, he was hospitalized, and his fever hit 107°F during his 10 days there. MRSA had entered his blood (bacteremia) and infected his bones (osteomyelitis). Jason's pain was so severe that he wondered only when he might die to be free of the agony.

For years health care workers have battled nosocomial MRSA, which commonly afflicts patients in hospitals. Now, researchers are concerned that victims who have never been in a hospital are succumbing; MRSA has escaped hospitals and now travels in the community, including among athletes, students in middle schools, and customers of unsafe tattooists. The bacterium can be spread between individuals who share fomites—towels, razors, clothing, or sheets.

Physicians drained Julie's lesions and prescribed oral antimicrobials, including trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, levofloxacin, and clindamycin. Jason received intravenous vancomycin. Both eventually recovered, but her tattoo is now a reminder of a terrible experience and not a happy birthday. (For more about staphylococcal infections, see Chapter 19.)



▲ Figure 10.15 The development of a resistant strain of bacteria. **(a)** A bacterial population contains both drug-sensitive and drug-resistant cells, although sensitive cells constitute the vast majority of the population. **(b)** Exposure to an antimicrobial drug inhibits the sensitive cells; as long as the drug is present, reduced competition from sensitive cells facilitates the multiplication of resistant cells. **(c)** Eventually, resistant cells constitute the majority of the population. *Why do resistant strains of bacteria more often develop in hospitals and nursing homes than in college dormitories?*

Figure 10.15 *Resistant strains are more likely to develop in hospitals and other health care facilities because the extensive use of antimicrobial agents in those places inhibits the growth of sensitive strains and selects for the growth of resistant strains.*

while the resistant cells continue to grow and multiply, often more rapidly because they then face less competition. The result is that resistant cells soon replace the sensitive cells as the majority in the population. The bacterium has evolved resistance. It should be noted that the presence of the antimicrobial agent does not *produce* resistance but instead selects for the replication of resistant cells that were already present in the population. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Antibiotic Resistance: Origins of Resistance***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Enterococcus faecium is frequently resistant to vancomycin. Why might this be of concern in a hospital setting in terms of developing resistant strains of *other* genera of bacteria?

Mechanisms of Resistance

Learning Outcomes

10.20 List seven ways by which microorganisms can be resistant to antimicrobial drugs.

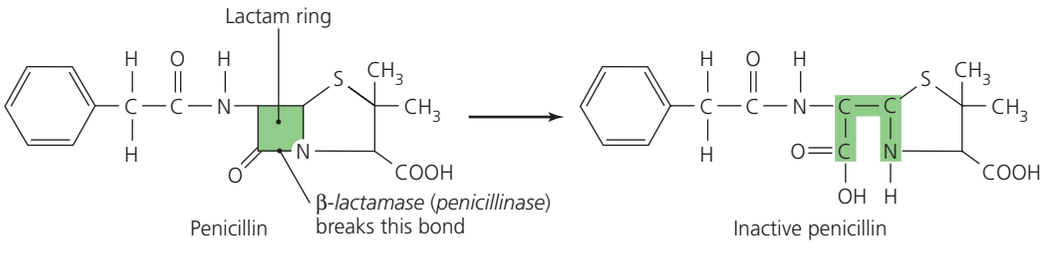
10.21 List two ways that genes for drug resistance are spread between bacteria.

The problem of resistance to antimicrobial drugs is a major health threat to our world. An "alphabet soup" of resistant pathogens and diseases plague health care professionals: MRSA,[4] VRSA,[5] VISA,[6] VRE,[7] MDR-TB[8], and XDR-TB[9] are just some of these.

How do microbes gain resistance to antimicrobial drugs? Consider the path a typical antimicrobial drug must take to affect a microbe: The drug must cross the cell's wall, then cross the cytoplasmic membrane to enter the cell; there the antimicrobial binds to its target (receptor) molecule. Only then can it inhibit or kill the microbe. Microbes gain resistance by blocking some point in this pathway. There are at least seven mechanisms of resistance:

- Resistant cells may produce an enzyme that destroys or deactivates the drug. This common mode of resistance is exemplified by **beta-(β) lactamases** (penicillinases), which are enzymes that break the beta-lactam rings of penicillin and similar molecules, rendering them inactive **(Figure 10.16)**. Many MRSA strains have evolved resistance to penicillin-derived antimicrobials in this manner. Over 200 different lactamases have been identified. Frequently their genes are located on R plasmids.
- Resistant microbes may slow or prevent the entry of the drug into the cell. This mechanism typically involves changes in the structure or electrical charge of the

[4]Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*.
[5]Vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus*.
[6]*S. aureus* with intermediate level of resistance to vancomycin.
[7]Vancomycin-resistant enterococci.
[8]Multi-drug-resistant tuberculosis.
[9]Extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis.



◀ Figure 10.16 How β-lactamase (penicillinase) renders penicillin inactive. The enzyme acts by breaking a bond in the lactam ring, the functional portion of the drug.

cytoplasmic membrane proteins that constitute channels or pores. Such proteins in the outer membranes of Gram-negative bacteria are called *porins* (see Figure 3.14b). Altered pore proteins result from mutations in chromosomal genes. Resistance against tetracycline and penicillin are known to occur via this mechanism.

- Resistant cells may alter the target of the drug so that the drug either cannot attach to it or binds it less effectively. This form of resistance is often seen against antimetabolites (such as sulfonamides) and against drugs that thwart protein translation (such as erythromycin).
- Resistant cells may alter their metabolic chemistry, or they may abandon the sensitive metabolic step altogether. For example, a cell may become resistant to a drug by producing more enzyme molecules for the affected metabolic pathway, effectively reducing the power of the drug. Alternatively, cells become resistant to sulfonamides by abandoning the synthesis of folic acid, absorbing it from the environment instead.
- Resistant cells may pump the antimicrobial out of the cell before the drug can act. So-called **efflux pumps,** which are typically powered by ATP, are often able to pump more than one type of antimicrobial from a cell. Some microbes become multi-drug resistant (perhaps to as many as 10 or more drugs) by utilizing resistance pumps.
- Bacteria within biofilms resist antimicrobials more effectively than free-living cells. Biofilms retard diffusion of the drugs and often slow metabolic rates of species making up the biofilm. Lower metabolic rates reduce the effectiveness of antimetabolic drugs.
- Some resistant strains of the bacterium *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* have a novel method of resistance against fluoroquinolone drugs that bind to DNA gyrase. These strains synthesize an unusual protein that forms a negatively charged, rodlike helix about the width of a DNA molecule. This protein, called *MfpA protein,* binds to DNA gyrase in place of DNA, depriving fluoroquinolone of its target site. This is the first method of antibiotic resistance that involves protecting the target of an antimicrobial drug rather than, say, changing the target or deactivating the drug. MfpA protein probably slows down cellular division of *M. tuberculosis,* but that is better for the bacterium than being killed. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Antibiotic Resistance: Forms of Resistance***

Despite decades of research, scientists and health care workers still do not fully comprehend what makes certain species, such as *Staphylococcus aureus,* more prone to developing resistance, how and with what frequency resistance to antimicrobials spreads through a population, or whether there are effective ways to limit proliferation of resistance. It has been shown that horizontal gene transfer, most often by *conjugation* and less often by *transformation*, accounts for the spread of antimicrobial resistance among the densely growing cells of biofilms. Often, several resistance genes travel together between cells.

Multiple Resistance and Cross Resistance

Learning Outcome

10.22 Define *cross resistance* and distinguish it from multiple resistance.

A given pathogen can acquire resistance to more than one drug at a time, especially when resistance is conferred by R plasmids, which are exchanged readily among bacterial cells. Such multiresistant strains of bacteria frequently develop in hospitals and nursing homes, where the constant use of many kinds of antimicrobial agents eliminates sensitive cells and encourages the development of resistant strains.

Multiple-drug-resistant pathogens (erroneously called *superbugs* in the popular press) are resistant to three or more types of antimicrobial agents. Multiple-drug-resistant strains of *Staphylococcus, Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs), *Enterococcus* (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs), *Pseudomonas, Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* and *Plasmodium* (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm) pose unique problems. Caregivers must treat infected patients without effective antimicrobials while taking care to protect themselves and others from infection.

Resistance to one antimicrobial agent may confer resistance to similar drugs, a phenomenon called **cross resistance.** Cross resistance typically occurs when drugs are similar in structure. For example, resistance to one aminoglycoside drug, such as streptomycin, may confer resistance to similar aminoglycoside drugs.

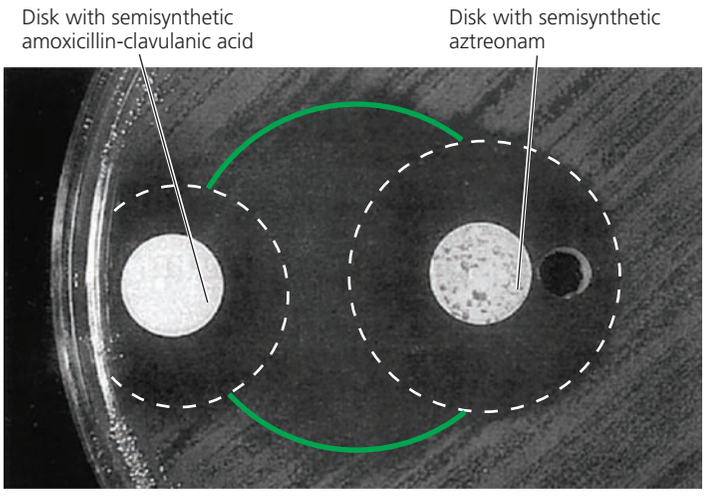
Retarding Resistance

Learning Outcome

10.23 Describe four ways that development of resistance can be retarded.

The development of resistant populations of pathogens can be averted in at least four ways. First, sufficiently high concentrations of the drug can be maintained in a patient's body for a long enough time to inhibit the pathogen, allowing the body's defenses to defeat them. Discontinuing a drug too early promotes the development of resistant strains. For this reason, it is important that patients finish their entire antimicrobial prescription and resist the temptation to "save some for another day."

A second way to avert resistance is to use antimicrobial agents in combination so that pathogens resistant to one drug will be killed by other drugs and vice versa. Additionally, one drug sometimes enhances the effect of a second drug in a process called **synergism** (sin´er-jizm) **(Figure 10.17)**. For example, the inhibition of cell wall formation by penicillin makes it easier for streptomycin molecules to enter bacteria and interfere with protein synthesis. Synergism can also result from combining an antimicrobial drug and a chemical, as occurs when *clavulanic acid* enhances the effect of penicillin by deactivating β-lactamase. (Not all drugs act synergistically; some combinations of drugs can be *antagonistic*—interfering with each other. For example, drugs that slow bacterial growth are antagonistic to the action of penicillin, which acts only against growing and dividing cells.)



▲ **Figure 10.17 An example of synergism between two antimicrobial agents.** The portion of the zone of inhibition outlined in green represents the synergistic enhancement of antimicrobial activity beyond the activities of the individual drugs (outlined in white). *What does clavulanic acid do?*

Figure 10.17 *Clavulanic acid deactivates β-lactamase, allowing penicillins to work.*

A third way to reduce the development of resistance is to limit the use of antimicrobials to necessary cases. Unfortunately, many antimicrobial agents are used indiscriminately, both in developed countries and in less developed regions, where many agents are available without a physician's prescription. In the United States, an estimated 50% of prescriptions for antibacterial agents to treat sore throats and 30% of prescriptions for ear infections are inappropriate because the diseases are viral, not bacterial. Likewise, because antibacterial drugs have no effect on cold and flu viruses, 100% of antibacterial prescriptions for treating these diseases are superfluous. The use of antimicrobial agents encourages the reproduction of resistant bacteria by limiting the growth of sensitive cells; therefore, inappropriate use of such drugs increases the likelihood that resistant strains of bacteria will multiply.

Finally, scientists can combat resistant strains by developing new drugs, in some cases by adding novel side chains to the original molecule. In this way, scientists develop semisynthetic *second-generation* drugs. If resistance develops to these drugs, *third-generation* drugs may be developed to replace them.

Alternatively, scientists search for new antimicrobials. Researchers explore diverse habitats, such as peat bogs, ocean sediments, garden soil, and people's mouths, for organisms that produce novel antibiotics. Researchers see potential in *bacteriocins*—antibacterial proteins coded by bacterial plasmids. Bacteria use bacteriocins to inhibit other bacterial strains; now we can do the same. Tinkering with these and other antibiotics is yielding promising new semisynthetics.

With the advent of genome sequencing and enhanced understanding of protein folding, some scientists predict that we are moving into a new era of antimicrobial drug discovery. They point out that researchers who know the exact shapes of microbial proteins should be able to design drugs complementary to those shapes—drugs that will inhibit microbial proteins without affecting humans.

Currently scientists are examining ways to inhibit the following: secretion systems, attachment molecules and their receptors, biofilm signaling molecules, and bacterial RNA polymerase.

Despite researchers' best efforts, other scientists wonder if drug developers can stay ahead of the development of resistance by pathogens.

Selected antimicrobial agents, their modes of action, clinical considerations, and other features are summarized in Tables 10.2 to 10.6. Particular use of antimicrobial drugs against specific pathogens is covered in the relevant chapters of this book.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

TO TREAT OR NOT TO TREAT?

A young Hispanic mother brought her frail infant to a southern Texas emergency room. While she waited, her baby began to have seizures. The staff stabilized the child, while the mother explained that the child had been ill for many days. Feverish at times, the infant had lost weight because she was too short of breath to nurse. Other family members were ill with bad coughs.

The girl was diagnosed with a form of tuberculosis (TB) that affected her brain. She was hospitalized and isolated. Health department officials discovered that two individuals had exposed the baby to TB: an uncle and her father, whom the mother had visited in a Mexican jail. Inmates from the jail carried a strain of TB that was resistant to several standard anti-tuberculosis drugs. It would take many weeks to determine which of the two strains was affecting the baby.

Doctors had to make a tough decision: Should they immediately begin treating the infant for the multi-drug-resistant strain (MDR-TB), which involves using five to seven different drugs with multiple and painful side effects for many months, or treat her for the more normal form of TB using a more typical and less stressful drug regimen for an equal length of time?

1. What issues must be considered to determine the drug therapy for the infant?
2. What treatment would you guess was used for the infant?

Reference: Adapted from *MMWR* 40:373–375, 1991.

TABLE 10.2 Antibacterial Drugs

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antibacterial Drugs That Inhibit Cell Wall Synthesis			
Bacitracin	Isolated from *Bacillus licheniformis* growing on a patient named Tracy; appears to have three modes of action: • Interference with the movement of peptidoglycan precursors through the bacterial cell membrane to the cell wall • Inhibition of RNA transcription • Damage to the bacterial cytoplasmic membrane The latter two modes of action have not been proven definitely	**Spectrum of action:** Gram-positive (G+) bacteria **Route of administration:** Topical **Adverse effects:** Toxic to kidneys	Resistance most often involves changes in bacterial cell membranes that prevent bacitracin from entering the cell
Beta-lactams Representative natural penicillins: Penicillin G Penicillin V Representative semisynthetic penicillin: Ampicillin Dicloxacillin Methicillin Representative semisynthetic carbepenem: Imipenem Representative natural cephalosporin: Cephalothin Representative semisynthetic cephalosporins: Cefixime Ceftriaxone Cefuroxime Cephalexin Representative semisynthetic monobactam: Aztreonam	Large number of natural and semisynthetic derivatives from the fungi *Penicillium* (penicillins) and *Acremonium* (cephalosporins); bind to and deactivate the enzyme that cross-links the NAM subunits of peptidoglycan Monobactams have only a single ring instead of the two rings seen in other beta-lactams	**Spectrum of action:** Natural drugs have limited action against most Gram-negative (G−) bacteria because they do not readily cross the outer membrane; semisynthetics have broader spectra of action Monobactams have a limited spectrum of action, affecting only aerobic, G− bacteria **Route of administration:** Penicillin V, a few cephalosporins (e.g., cephalexin), and monobactams: oral; penicillin G and many semisynthetics (e.g., methicillin, ampicillin, carbenicillin, cephalothin): IM or IV **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions against beta-lactams in some adults; monobactams are least allergenic	Develops in three ways in G− bacteria: • Change their outer membrane structure to prevent entrance of the drug • Modify the enzyme so that the drug no longer binds • Synthesize beta-lactamases that cleave the functional lactam ring of the drug; genes for lactamases are often carried on R plasmids
Cycloserine	Analog of alanine that interferes with the formation of alanine-alanine bridges between NAM subunits	**Spectrum of action:** Some G+ bacteria, mycobacteria **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Toxic to nervous system, producing depression, aggression, confusion, and headache	Some G+ bacteria enzymatically deactivate the drug
Ethambutol	Prevents the formation of mycolic acid; used in combination with other antimycobacterial drugs	**Spectrum of action:** Mycobacteria, including *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Resistance is due to random mutations of bacterial chromosomes that result in alteration of target site
Isoniazid (isonicotinic acid hydrazide, INH)	Analog of the vitamins nicotinamide and pyridoxine; blocks the gene for an enzyme that forms mycolic acid	**Spectrum of action:** Mycobacteria, including *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** May be toxic to liver	Resistance is due to random mutations of bacterial chromosomes that result in alteration of target site or overproduction of target molecules

TABLE 10.2 *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antibacterial Drugs That Inhibit Cell Wall Synthesis			
Vancomycin	Produced by *Amycolatopsis orientalis;* directly interferes with the formation of alanine-alanine bridges between NAM subunits	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against most G+ bacteria but generally reserved for use against strains resistant to other drugs such as methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) **Route of administration:** IV **Adverse effects:** Damage to ears and kidneys, allergic reactions	G− bacteria are naturally resistant because the drug is too large to pass through the outer membrane; some G+ bacteria (e.g., *Lactobacillus*) are naturally resistant because they do not form alanine-alanine bonds between NAM subunits
Antibacterial Drugs That Inhibit Protein Synthesis			
Aminoglycosides Representatives: Gentamicin Kanamycin Neomycin Paromomycin Spiramycin Streptomycin Tobramycin	Compounds in which two or more amino sugars are linked with glycosidic bonds; were originally isolated from species of the bacterial genera *Streptomyces* and *Micromonospora.* Inhibit protein synthesis by irreversibly binding to the 30S subunit of prokaryotic ribosomes, which either causes the ribosome to mistranslate mRNA, producing aberrant proteins, or causes premature release of the ribosome from mRNA, stopping synthesis. Also bactericidal by destroying outer membranes of G− bacteria	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against most G− bacteria and some protozoa **Route of administration:** IV; do not traverse blood-brain barrier **Adverse effects:** Toxic to kidneys and to auditory nerves, causing deafness	Uptake of these drugs is energy dependent, so anaerobes (with less ATP available) are less susceptible; aerobic bacteria alter membrane pores to prevent uptake or synthesize enzymes that alter or degrade the drug once it enters; rarely, bacteria alter the binding site on the ribosome; some bacteria make biofilms when exposed to the drugs
Chloramphenicol	Rarely used drug that binds to the 50S subunits of prokaryotic ribosomes, preventing them from moving along mRNA	**Spectrum of action:** Broad but rarely used except in treatment of typhoid fever **Route of administration:** Oral; traverses blood-brain barrier **Adverse effects:** In 1 of 24,000 patients, causes aplastic anemia, a potentially fatal condition in which blood cells fail to form; can also cause neurological damage	Develops via gene carried on an R plasmid that codes for an enzyme that deactivates drug
Lincosamides Representative: Clindamycin	Binds to 50S ribosomal subunit and stops protein elongation	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against G+ and anaerobic G− bacteria and some protozoa **Route of administration:** Oral or IV; does not traverse blood-brain barrier **Adverse effects:** Gastrointestinal distress, including nausea, diarrhea, vomiting, and pain	Develops via changes in ribosomal structure that prevent drug from binding; resistance genes are same as those of aminoglycosides
Macrolides Representatives: Azithromycin Clarithromycin Erythromycin Natamycin Telithromycin	Group of antimicrobials typified by a macrocyclic lactone ring; the most prescribed is erythromycin, which is produced by *Saccharopolyspora erythraea;* act by binding to the 50S subunit of prokaryotic ribosomes and preventing the elongation of the nascent protein	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against G+ and a few G− bacteria and fungi (natamycin) **Route of administration:** Oral; do not traverse blood-brain barrier **Adverse effects:** Nausea, mild gastrointestinal pain, vomiting; erythromycin increases risk of cardiac arrest	Develops via changes in ribosomal RNA that prevent drugs from binding, or via R plasmid genes coding for the production of macrolide-digesting enzymes; resistance genes are same as those of lincosamides
Mupirocin	Produced by *Pseudomonas fluorescens;* binds to bacterial $tRNA^{Ile}$, which prevents delivery of isoleucine to ribosomes, blocking polypeptide synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** Effective primarily against G+ bacteria **Route of administration:** Topical cream **Adverse effects:** None reported	Resistance develops from mutations that change the shape of $tRNA^{Ile}$

continued ▶

TABLE 10.2 Antibacterial Drugs *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antibacterial Drugs That Inhibit Protein Synthesis			
Oxazolidinones Representative: Linezolid	Synthetic; inhibits initiation of polypeptide synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** G+ bacteria **Route of administration:** Oral, IV **Adverse effects:** Rash, diarrhea, loss of appetite, constipation, fever	Method of resistance not known
Streptogramin Representatives: Quinupristin Dalfopristin	Binds to 50S ribosomal subunit, stops protein synthesis; the synergistic drugs quinupristin and dalfopristin are taken together	**Spectrum of action:** Broad but reserved for use against multiple-drug-resistant strains **Route of administration:** IV **Adverse effects:** Muscle and joint pain	Not known
Tetracyclines Representatives: Doxycycline Minocycline Tetracycline	Composed of four hexagonal rings with various side groups; prevent tRNA molecules, which carry amino acids, from binding to ribosomes at the 30S subunit's docking site	**Spectrum of action:** Most are broad: effective against many G+ and G− bacteria as well as against bacteria that lack cell walls, such as *Mycoplasma* **Route of administration:** Oral; crosses poorly into brain **Adverse effects:** Nausea, diarrhea, sensitivity to light; forms complexes with calcium, which stains developing teeth and adversely affects the strength and shape of bones	Develops in three ways; bacteria may: • Alter gene for pores in outer membrane such that new pore prevents drug from entering cell • Alter binding site on the ribosome to allow tRNA to bind even in presence of drug • Actively pump drug from cell
Antibacterial Drugs That Alter Cytoplasmic Membranes			
Gramicidin	Short polypeptide that forms pore across cytoplasmic membrane, allowing single-charged cations to cross freely	**Spectrum of action:** G+ bacteria **Route of administration:** Topical **Adverse effects:** Toxic (also forms pores in eukaryotic membranes)	Not known
Nisin	A bacteriocin naturally produced by *Lactococcus lactis*	**Spectrum of action:** G+ and G− bacteria in food **Route of administration:** Used as a preservative in food **Adverse effect**: None reported	Not known
Polymyxin	Produced by *Bacillus polymyxa;* destroys cytoplasmic membranes of susceptible cells	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against G+ bacteria, particularly *Pseudomonas,* and some amoebae **Route of administration:** Topical **Adverse effects:** Toxic to kidneys	Results from changes in cell membrane that prohibit entrance of the drug
Pyrazinamide	Disrupts membrane transport and prevents *Mycobacterium* from repairing damaged proteins	**Spectrum of action:** *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Malaise, nausea, diarrhea	Results from point mutations in bacterial gene for enzyme necessary to activate drug

TABLE 10.2 *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antibacterial Drugs That Are Antimetabolites			
Dapsone	Interferes with synthesis of folic acid	**Spectrum of action:** *M. leprae, M. tuberculosis* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Insomnia, headache, nausea, vomiting, increased heart rate	Not known
Sulfonamides Representatives: Sulfadiazine Sulfadoxine Sulfanilamide	Synthetic drugs; first produced as a dye; analogs of PABA that bind irreversibly to enzyme that produces dihydrofolic acid; synergistic with trimethoprim	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against G+ and G− bacteria and some protozoa and fungi; however, resistance is widespread **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Rare: allergic reactions, anemia, jaundice, mental retardation of fetus if administered in last trimester of pregnancy	*Pseudomonas* is naturally resistant because of permeability barriers; cells that require folic acid as a vitamin are also naturally resistant; chromosomal mutations result in lowered affinity for the drugs
Trimethoprim	Blocks second metabolic step in the formation of folic acid from PABA; synergistic with sulfonamides	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against G+ and G− bacteria and some protozoa and fungi; however, resistance is widespread **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions or liver damage in some patients	*Pseudomonas* is naturally resistant because of permeability barriers; cells that require folic acid as a vitamin are also naturally resistant; chromosomal mutations result in lowered affinity for the drug
Antibacterial Drugs That Inhibit Nucleic Acid Synthesis			
Clofazimine	Binds to DNA, preventing replication and transcription	**Spectrum of action:** Mycobacteria, especially *M. tuberculosis, M. leprae*, and *M. ulcerans* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Diarrhea, discoloration of skin and eyes	Not known
Fluoroquinolones Representatives: Ciprofloxacin Moxifloxacin Ofloxacin	Synthetic agents that inhibit DNA gyrase, which is needed to correctly replicate bacterial DNA; penetrate cytoplasm of cells	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: G+ and G− bacteria are affected **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Tendonitis, tendon rupture	Results from chromosomal mutations that lower affinity for drug, reduce its uptake, or protect gyrase from drug
Nitroimidazoles Representative: Metronidazole	Anaerobic conditions reduce the molecule, which then damages DNA and prevents its correct replication	**Spectrum of action:** Obligate anaerobic bacteria	Not known
Rifamycin Representatives: Rifampin Rifaximin	Natural and semisynthetic derivatives from *Amycolatopsis rifamycinica* that bind to bacterial RNA polymerase, preventing transcription of RNA; used with other antimicrobial bacterial drugs	**Spectrum of action:** Bacteriostatic against aerobic G+ bacteria; bactericidal against mycobacteria **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None of major significance	Results from chromosomal mutation that alters binding site on enzyme; G− bacteria are naturally resistant because of poor uptake

TABLE 10.3 Antiviral Drugs

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Attachment Antagonists			
Arildone Pleconaril	Blocks attachment molecule on host cell or pathogen	**Spectrum of action:** Picornaviruses (e.g., poliovirus, some cold viruses) **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Not known
Neuraminidase inhibitors Representatives: Oseltamivir Zanamivir	Prevent influenzaviruses from attaching to or exiting from cells	**Spectrum of action:** Influenzavirus **Route of administration:** Oral (oseltamivir) or aerosol (zanamivir) **Adverse effects:** None	Not known
Antiviral Drugs That Inhibit Viral Uncoating			
Amantadine	Neutralizes acid environment within phagolysosomes that is necessary for viral uncoating	**Spectrum of action:** Influenza A virus **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Toxic to central nervous system; results in nervousness, irritability, insomnia, and blurred vision	Mutation resulting in a single amino acid change in a membrane ion channel leads to viral resistance
Rimantadine	Neutralizes phagolysosomal acid, preventing viral uncoating	**Spectrum of action:** Influenza A virus **Route of administration:** Oral, adults only **Adverse effects:** Toxic to central nervous system; results in nervousness, irritability, insomnia, and blurred vision	Mutation resulting in a single amino acid change in a membrane ion channel leads to viral resistance
Antiviral Drugs That Inhibit Nucleic Acid Synthesis			
Acyclovir (ACV) Representative: Ganciclovir	Phosphorylation by virally coded kinase enzyme activates the drug; inhibits DNA and RNA synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** Viruses that code for kinase enzymes: herpes, Epstein-Barr, cytomegalovirus, varicella viruses **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Mutations in genes for kinase enzymes may render them ineffective at drug activation
Adenosine arabinoside	Phosphorylation by cell-coded kinase enzyme activates the drug; inhibits DNA synthesis; viral DNA polymerase more likely to incorporate the drugs than human DNA polymerase	**Spectrum of action:** Herpesvirus **Route of administration:** IV **Adverse effects:** Fatal to host cells that incorporate the drug into cellular DNA; anemia	Results from mutation of viral DNA polymerase
Nucleotide analogs Representatives (see also Figure 10.7): Adefovir Azidothymidine (AZT) Entecavir Lamivudine Tenofovir Valaciclovir	Phosphorylation by cell-coded kinase enzyme activates these drugs; inhibits DNA synthesis; viral reverse transcriptase more likely to incorporate these drugs; used in conjunction with protease inhibitor to treat HIV	**Spectrum of action:** HIV, hepatitis B virus **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Nausea, bone marrow toxicity	Results from mutation of viral reverse transcriptase
Ribavirin	Phosphorylation by virally coded kinase enzyme activates the drug; inhibits DNA and RNA synthesis; viral DNA polymerase more likely to incorporate the drugs	**Spectrum of action:** Respiratory syncytial, hepatitis C, influenza A, measles, some hemorrhagic fever viruses **Route of administration:** Oral, aerosol, IV **Adverse effects:** Perhaps harmful to developing fetus	Not known

TABLE 10.3 *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antiviral Drugs That Inhibit Protein Synthesis			
Antisense nucleic acids Representative: Fomivirsen	Complementary to mRNA; binding prevents protein synthesis by blocking ribosomes	**Spectrum of action:** Specific to species with complementary mRNA; fomivirsen specific against cytomegalovirus **Route of administration**: Fomivirsen injected weekly into eyes **Adverse effects**: Possible glaucoma	Not known
Antiviral Drugs That Inhibit Viral Proteins			
Protease inhibitors Representatives: Boceprevir Darunavir Fosamprenavir Telaprevir	Computer-assisted modeling of protease enzymes, which are unique to HIV and hepatitis C virus, allowed the creation of drugs that block the enzymes' active sites, often used in conjunction with drugs active against nucleic acid synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** HIV and hepatitis C **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Results from mutation in protease gene

TABLE 10.4 Antimicrobials Against Eukaryotes: Antifungal Drugs

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antifungal Drugs That Inhibit Cell Membranes			
Allylamines Representative: Terbinafine	Antifungal action due to inhibition of ergosterol synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** Fungi **Route of administration:** Oral, IV **Adverse effects:** Headache, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, liver damage, rash	Not known
Azoles Representatives: Fluconazole Itraconazole Ketoconazole Voriconazole	Antifungal action due to inhibition of synthesis of ergosterol, an essential component of fungal cytoplasmic membranes	**Spectrum of action:** Fungi and protozoa **Route of administration:** Topical, IV **Adverse effects:** Possibly causes cancer in humans	Mutation in gene for target enzyme
Polyenes Representatives: Amphotericin B Nystatin	Associate with molecules of ergosterol, forming a pore through the fungal membrane, which leads to leakage of essential ions from the cell; amphotericin B is produced by *Streptomyces nodosus*	**Spectrum of action:** Fungi, some amoebae **Route of administration:** Amphotericin B: IV; nystatin: topical **Adverse effects:** Chills, vomiting, fever	Rare; decrease in amount or change in chemistry of ergosterol
Other Antifungal Drugs			
Echinocandins Representative: Caspofungin	Inhibits synthesis of glucan subunit of fungal cell walls	**Specimen of action:** *Candida, Aspergillus* **Route of administration:** IV **Adverse effects:** Rash, facial swelling, respiratory spasms, gastrointestinal distress, toxic to human embryos	Results from mutation in glucan synthase gene
5-Fluorocytosine	Fungi, but not mammals, have an enzyme that converts this drug into 5-fluorouracil, an analog of uracil that inhibits RNA function	**Spectrum of action:** *Candida, Cryptococcus, Aspergillus* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Develops from mutations in the genes for enzymes necessary for utilization of uracil
Griseofulvin	Isolated from *Penicillium griseofulvum;* deactivates tubulin, preventing cytokinesis and segregation of chromosomes during mitosis (see Chapter 12)	**Spectrum of action:** Molds of skin infections **Route of administration:** Topical, oral **Adverse effects:** None	Not known

TABLE 10.5 Antimicrobials Against Eukaryotes: Anthelmintic Drugs

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Anthelmintic Drugs That Are Antimetabolites			
Benzimidazole derivatives Representatives: Albendazole Mebendazole Thiabendazole Triclabendazole	Inhibit microtubule formation and glucose uptake	**Spectrum of action:** Helminths, protozoa **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Possible diarrhea	Not known
Iodoquinol	Halogenated (iodine containing), possibly works by sequestering iron ions required by protozoan	**Spectrum of action:** *Entamoeba* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Neuropathy and blindness with prolonged use	Not known
Ivermectin **Metrifonate**	Produce flaccid paralysis by blocking neurotransmitters	**Spectrum of action:** Helminths **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions may result from antigens of dead helminths	Not known
Niclosamide	Inhibits oxidative phosphorylation of ATP by mitochondria	**Spectrum of action:** Cestodes **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Abdominal pain, nausea, diarrhea	Not known
Praziquantel	Changes membrane permeability to calcium ions, which are required for muscular contraction; induces complete muscular contraction in helminths	**Spectrum of action:** Cestodes, trematodes **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Not known
Pyrantel pamoate **Diethylcarbamazine**	Bind to neurotransmitter receptors, causing complete muscular contraction of helminths	**Spectrum of action:** Nematodes **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Not known
Anthelmintic Drugs That Inhibit Nucleic Acid Synthesis			
Niridazole	When partially catabolized by schistosome enzymes, binds to DNA, preventing replication	**Spectrum of action:** *Schistosoma*	Not known
Oltipraz	Possibly acts by reducing the supply of deoxyribonucleotides	**Spectrum of action:** *Schistosoma*	Not known
Oxamniquine	Schistosome enzyme activates drug, which then inhibits DNA synthesis	**Spectrum of action:** *Schistosoma*	Not known

TABLE 10.6 Antimicrobials Against Eukaryotes: Antiprotozoan Drugs

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antiprotozoan Drugs That Inhibit Protein Synthesis			
Lincosamides Representative: Clindamycin	Binds to 50S ribosomal subunit and stops protein elongation	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against some protozoa and G+ and anaerobic G− bacteria **Route of administration:** Oral or IV; does not traverse blood-brain barrier **Adverse effects:** Gastrointestinal distress, including nausea, diarrhea, vomiting, and pain	Develops via changes in ribosomal structure that prevent drug from binding; resistance genes are same as those of aminoglycosides

TABLE 10.6 *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antiprotozoan Drugs That Inhibit Protein Synthesis			
Paromomycin	Aminoglycoside that interferes with bacterial 30S ribosomal subunits. Its method of action against protozoa is not known	**Spectrum of action:** Effective against some protozoa, e.g., *Leishmania* and *Entamoeba* and most G− and G+ bacteria **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions in some patients; intestinal blockage	Decreased drug uptake due to altered cytoplasmic membrane
Antiprotozoan Drugs That Are Antimetabolites			
Artemisinin	Derived from Chinese wormwood shrub; interferes with heme detoxification and with Ca^{2+} transport	**Spectrum of action:** *Plasmodium* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Nausea, vomiting, itching, dizziness	Mutation in Ca^{2+} transporter gene
Atovaquone	Analog of coenzyme Q of several protozoa and of *Pneumocystis;* interrupts electron transport	**Spectrum of action:** Protozoa, (especially *Plasmodium*), *Pneumocystis* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Possible rash, diarrhea, headache	Cells modify the structure of their electron transport chain proteins
Benzimidazole derivatives Representatives: Albendazole Mebendazole	Inhibit microtubule formation and glucose uptake	**Spectrum of action:** Helminths, protozoa **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Possible diarrhea	Not known
Furazolidone	Appear to block a number of metabolic pathways, including carbohydrate metabolism and initiation of translation	**Spectrum of action:** Protozoa, Gram+, Gram− bacteria **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Possible nausea and vomiting	Not known
Heavy metals (e.g., Hg, As, Cr, Sb) Representatives: Meglumine antimonate Melarsoprol (contains As) Salvarsan (contains As) Sodium stibogluconate (contains Sb)	Deactivate enzymes by breaking hydrogen bonds necessary for effective tertiary structure; drugs containing arsenic were the first recognized selectively toxic chemotherapeutic agents	**Spectrum of action:** Metabolically active cells **Route of administration:** Topical, oral **Adverse effects:** Toxic to active cells, such as those of the brain, kidney, liver, and bone marrow	Not known
Iodoquinol	Mode of action unknown	**Spectrum of action:** Intestinal amoebae **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Fever, chills, rash	Not known
Lumefantrine	Synthetic drug that prevents detoxification of heme released from hemoglobin of damaged red blood cells	**Spectrum of action:** *Plasmodium* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Headache, dizziness, weakness	Not known
Nifurtimox	Interferes with electron transport	**Spectrum of action:** *Trypanosoma cruzi* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Abdominal pain, nausea	Not known
Nitazoxanide	Believed to interfere with anaerobic electron transport chain	**Spectrum of action:** Protozoa **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Gastrointestinal distress	Not known

continued ▶

TABLE 10.6 Antiprotozoan Drugs *continued*

Drug	Description and Mode of Action	Clinical Considerations	Method of Resistance
Antiprotozoan Drugs That Are Antimetabolites			
Proguanil **Pyrimethamine**	Block second metabolic step in the formation of folic acid from PABA; synergistic with sulfonamides	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against G+ and G− bacteria and some protozoa and fungi; however, resistance is widespread **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions in some patients	Cells that require folic acid as a vitamin are also naturally resistant; chromosomal mutations result in lowered affinity for the drugs
Sulfonamides Representatives: Sulfadiazine Sulfadoxine Sulfanilamide	Synthetic drugs; first produced as a dye; analogs of PABA that bind irreversibly to enzyme that produces dihydrofolic acid; synergistic with trimethoprim	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against G+ and G− bacteria and some protozoa and fungi; however, resistance is widespread **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Rare: Allergic reactions, anemia, jaundice, mental retardation of fetus if administered in last trimester of pregnancy	Cells that require folic acid as a vitamin are also naturally resistant; chromosomal mutations result in lowered affinity for the drugs
Suramin	Inhibits specific enzymes in some protozoa	**Spectrum of action:** *Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense* (eastern African variant) **Routine of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** None	Not known
Trimethoprim	Block second metabolic step in the formation of folic acid from PABA; synergistic with sulfonamides	**Spectrum of action:** Broad: effective against some protozoa, fungi, and some G+ and G− bacteria; however, resistance is widespread **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions in some patients	Cells that require folic acid as a vitamin are also naturally resistant; chromosomal mutations result in lowered affinity for the drugs
Antiprotozoan Drugs That Inhibit DNA Synthesis			
Eflornithine	Inhibits synthesis of precursors of nucleic acids	**Spectrum of action:** *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* (western African variant) **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Anemia, inhibition of blood clotting, nausea, vomiting	Not known
Nitroimidazoles Representatives: Benznidazole Metronidazole Tinidazole	Anaerobic conditions reduce the drug, which then appears to damage DNA, preventing correct replication and transcription	**Spectrum of action:** Protozoa **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Metronidazole and tinidazole cause cancer in laboratory rodents	Not known
Pentamidine	Binds to nucleic acids, inhibiting replication, transcription, and translation	**Spectrum of action:** Protozoa, including *Trypanosoma brucei gambiense* (western African variant) and *Pneumocystis* (fungus) **Route of administration:** IM, IV **Adverse effects:** Rash, low blood pressure, irregular heartbeat, kidney and liver failure	Not known
Quinolones Representatives: Natural quinine Semisynthetic quinines: Chloroquine Mefloquine Piperaquine Primaquine	Natural and semisynthetic drugs derived from the bark of cinchona tree; inhibit metabolism of malaria parasites by one or more unknown methods	**Spectrum of action:** *Plasmodium* **Route of administration:** Oral **Adverse effects:** Allergic reactions, visual disturbances	Results from the presence of quinoline pumps that remove the drugs from parasite's cells

MasteringMicrobiology®

Make the invisible visible:
Scan this QR code with your smart phone to engage with Dr. Bauman in a Video Tutor about Actions of Some Drugs that Inhibit Prokaryotic Protein Synthesis. Then visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to test your knowledge with practice tests, animation quizzes, and clinical case studies!

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

The History of Antimicrobial Agents (pp. 284–285)

1. Chemotherapeutic agents are chemicals used to treat diseases. Among them are **antimicrobial agents (antimicrobials),** which include **antibiotics** (biologically produced agents), **semisynthetics** (chemically modified antibiotics), and **synthetic** agents.

Mechanisms of Antimicrobial Action (pp. 286–293)

1. Successful chemotherapy against microbes is based on **selective toxicity,** that is, using antimicrobial agents that are more toxic to pathogens than to the patient.
2. Antimicrobial drugs affect pathogens by inhibiting cell wall synthesis, inhibiting the translation of proteins, disrupting cytoplasmic membranes, inhibiting general metabolic pathways, inhibiting nucleic acid synthesis, blocking the attachment of viruses to their hosts, or blocking a pathogen's recognition of its host.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Chemotherapeutic Agents: Modes of Action*
3. **Beta-lactams**—penicillins, cephalosporins—have a functional lactam ring. They prevent bacteria from cross-linking NAM subunits of peptidoglycan in the bacterial cell wall during growth. **Vancomycin** and **cycloserine** also disrupt cell wall formation in many Gram-positive bacteria. **Bacitracin** blocks NAG and NAM transport from the cytoplasm. **Isoniazid (INH)** and **ethambutol** block mycolic acid synthesis in the walls of mycobacteria. **Echinocandins** block synthesis of fungal cell walls.
4. Antimicrobial agents that inhibit protein synthesis include **aminoglycosides** and **tetracyclines,** which inhibit functions of the 30S ribosomal subunit, and **chloramphenicol, lincosamides, streptogramins,** and **macrolides,** which inhibit 50S subunits. Mupirocin stops polypeptide synthesis by binding to tRNA molecules that carry isoleucine. **Oxazolidinones** block initiation of translation. **Antisense nucleic acid** molecules also inhibit protein synthesis.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Actions of Some Drugs that Inhibit Prokaryotic Protein Synthesis*
5. **Polyenes, azoles,** and **allylamines** disrupt the cytoplasmic membranes of fungi. Polymyxin acts against the membranes of Gram-negative bacteria.
6. **Sulfonamides** are structural **analogs** of para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA), a chemical needed by some microorganisms but not by humans. The substitution of sulfonamides in the metabolic pathway leading to nucleic acid synthesis kills those organisms. Trimethoprim also blocks this pathway.
7. Drugs that inhibit nucleic acid replication in pathogens include actinomycin, **nucleotide and nucleoside analogs,** quinolones, and rifampin.

Clinical Considerations in Prescribing Antimicrobial Drugs (pp. 293–297)

1. Chemotherapeutic agents have a **spectrum of action** and may be classed as either **narrow-spectrum drugs** or **broad-spectrum drugs** depending on how many kinds of pathogens they affect.
2. **Diffusion susceptibility tests,** such as the Kirby-Bauer test, reveal which drug is most effective against a particular pathogen; in general, the larger the **zone of inhibition** around a drug-soaked disk on a Petri plate, the more effective the drug.
3. The **minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC),** usually determined by either a **broth dilution test** or an **Etest,** is the smallest amount of a drug that will inhibit a pathogen.
4. A **minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test** ascertains whether a drug is bacteriostatic and the lowest concentration of a drug that is bactericidal.
5. In choosing antimicrobials, physicians must consider effectiveness, how a drug is best administered—orally, intramuscularly, or intravenously—and possible side effects, including toxicity and allergic responses.
6. A drug's **therapeutic index (TI)** is essentially a ratio of the drug's tolerated dose to its effective dose. The higher the TI, the safer the drug.
7. Cinicians use the term **therapeutic range (therapeutic window)** to indicated the range if concentrations of a drug that are effective without being excessively toxic.

Resistance to Antimicrobial Drugs (pp. 297–301)

1. Some members of a pathogenic population may develop resistance to a drug because of extra DNA pieces called **R plasmids** or the mutation of genes. Microorganisms may resist a drug by producing enzymes such as **β-lactamase** that deactivate the drug, by inducing changes in the cell membrane that prevent entry of the drug, by altering the drug's target to prevent its binding, by altering the cell's metabolic pathways, by removing the drug from the cell with **efflux pumps,** or by protecting the drug's target by binding another molecule to it.

   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Antibiotic Resistance: Origins of Resistance, Forms of Resistance*

2. **Cross resistance** occurs when resistance to one chemotherapeutic agent confers resistance to similar drugs. **Multiple-drug-resistant pathogens** are resistant to three or more types of antimicrobial drugs.

3. **Synergism** describes the interplay between drugs that results in efficacy that exceeds the efficacy of either drug alone. Some drug combinations are antagonistic.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Diffusion and dilution tests that expose pathogens to antimicrobials are designed to _____.
   a. determine the spectrum of action of a drug
   b. determine which drug is most effective against a particular pathogen
   c. determine the amount of a drug to use against a particular pathogen
   d. both b and c

2. In a Kirby-Bauer susceptibility test, the presence of a zone of inhibition around disks containing antimicrobial agents indicates _____.
   a. that the microbe does not grow in the presence of the agents
   b. that the microbe grows well in the presence of the agents
   c. the smallest amount of the agent that will inhibit the growth of the microbe
   d. the minimum amount of an agent that kills the microbe in question

3. The key to successful chemotherapy is _____.
   a. selective toxicity
   b. a diffusion test
   c. the minimum inhibitory concentration test
   d. the spectrum of action

4. Which of the following statements is relevant in explaining why sulfonamides are effective?
   a. Sulfonamides attach to sterol lipids in the pathogen, disrupt the membranes, and lyse the cells.
   b. Sulfonamides prevent the incorporation of amino acids into polypeptide chains.
   c. Humans and microbes use PABA differently in their metabolism.
   d. Sulfonamides inhibit DNA replication in both pathogens and human cells.

5. Cross resistance is _____.
   a. the deactivation of an antimicrobial agent by a bacterial enzyme
   b. alteration of the resistant cells so that an antimicrobial agent cannot attach
   c. the mutation of genes that affect the cytoplasmic membrane channels so that antimicrobial agents cannot cross into the cell's interior
   d. resistance to one antimicrobial agent because of its similarity to another antimicrobial agent

6. Multiple-drug-resistant microbes _____.
   a. are resistant to all antimicrobial agents
   b. respond to new antimicrobials by developing resistance
   c. frequently develop in hospitals
   d. all of the above

7. Which of the following is most closely associated with a beta-lactam ring?
   a. penicillin
   b. vancomycin
   c. bacitracin
   d. isoniazid

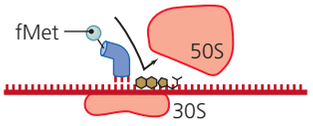
8. Drugs that act against protein synthesis include _____.
   a. beta-lactams
   b. trimethoprim
   c. polymyxin
   d. aminoglycosides

9. Which of the following statements is *false* concerning antiviral drugs?
   a. Macrolide drugs block attachment sites on the host cell wall and prevent viruses from entering.
   b. Drugs that neutralize the acidity of phagolysosomes prevent viral uncoating.
   c. Nucleotide analogs can be used to stop microbial replication.
   d. Drugs containing protease inhibitors retard viral growth by blocking the production of essential viral proteins.

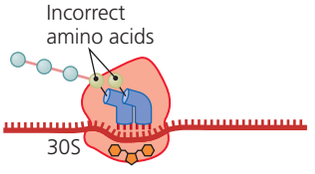
10. PABA is _____.
    a. a substrate used in the production of penicillin
    b. a type of β-lactamase
    c. molecularly similar to cephalosporins
    d. used to synthesize folic acid

Visualize It!

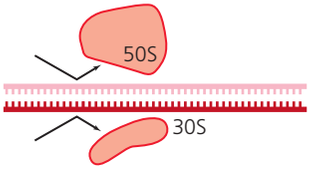
1. Label each figure below to indicate the class of drug that is stopping polypeptide translation.



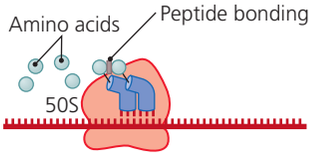
a. _____
block initiation.



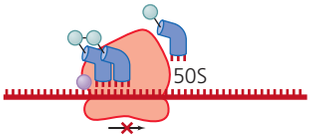
b. _____
change 30S subunit.



c. _____
block ribosome attachment.

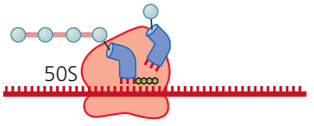


d. _____
inhibits peptide bonding.



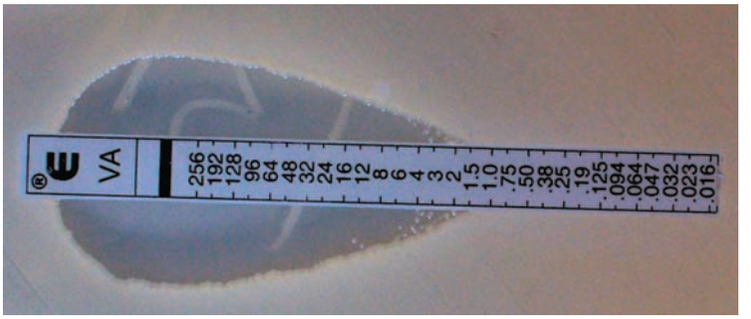
e. _____

f. _____
block ribosome movement.



g. _____
block tRNA docking.

2. What specific test for antimicrobial efficacy is shown? What does this test measure? What is the numerical result?



Short Answer

1. What characteristics would an ideal chemotherapeutic agent have? Which drug has these qualities?
2. Contrast narrow-spectrum and broad-spectrum drugs. Which are more effective?
3. Why is the fact that drug Z destroys the NAM portions of a cell's wall structure an important factor in considering the drug for chemotherapy?
4. Given that both human cells and pathogens synthesize proteins at ribosomal sites, how can antimicrobial agents that target this process be safe to use in humans?
5. Support or refute the following statement: antimicrobial agents produce resistant cells.
6. Given that resistant strains of pathogens are a concern to the general health of a population, what can be done to prevent their development?
7. Why are antiviral drugs difficult to develop?
8. A man has been given a broad-spectrum antibiotic for his stomach ulcer. What unintended consequences could arise from this therapy?
9. Compare and contrast the actions of polyenes, azoles, allylamines, and polymyxin.
10. What is the difference in drug action of synergists contrasted with that of antagonists?

Critical Thinking

1. AIDS is treated with a "cocktail" of several antiviral agents at once. Why is the cocktail more effective than a single agent? What is a physician trying to prevent by prescribing several drugs at once?
2. How does *Penicillium* escape the effects of the penicillin it secretes?
3. How might a colony of *Bacillus licheniformis* escape the effects of its own bacitracin?
4. Fewer than 1% of known antibiotics have any practical value in treatment of disease. Why is this so?
5. In the summer issue of *News of the Lepidopterists' Society* in 2000, a recommendation was made to moth and butterfly collectors to use antimicrobials to combat disease in the young of these insects. What are the possible ramifications for human health of such usage of antimicrobials?
6. Even though aminoglycosides such as gentamicin can cause deafness, there are still times when they are the best choice for treating some infections. What laboratory test would a clinical scientist use to show that gentamicin is the best choice to treat a particular *Pseudomonas* infection?
7. Your pregnant neighbor has a sore throat and tells you that she is taking some tetracycline she had left over from a previous infection. Give two reasons why her decision is a poor one.
8. Acyclovir has replaced adenosine arabinoside as treatment for herpes infections. Compare the ways these drugs are activated (see Table 10.3 on p. 306). Why is acyclovir a better choice?

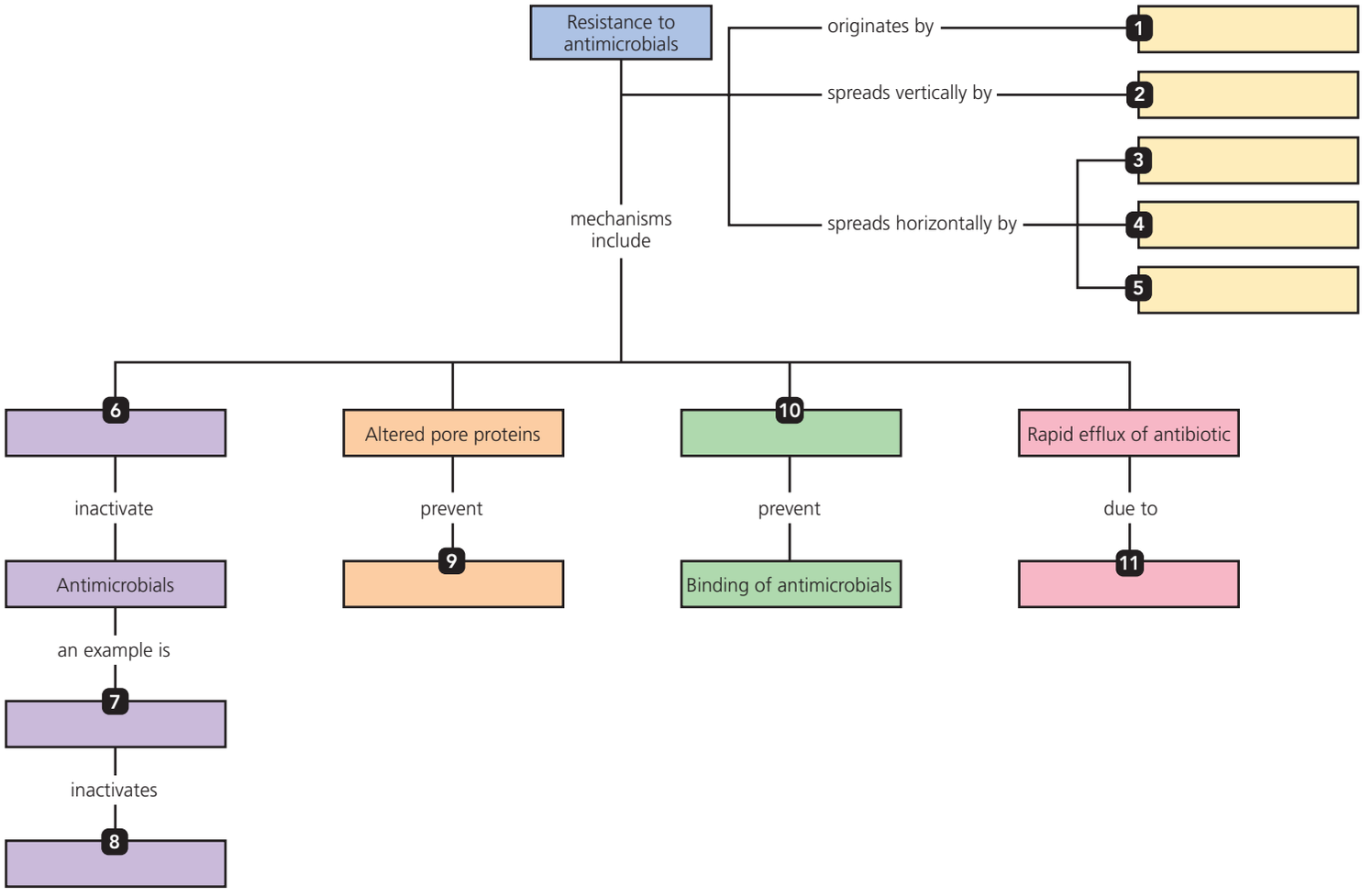
9. Why might amphotericin B affect the kidneys more than other human organs?
10. Antiparasitic drugs in the benzimidazole family inhibit the polymerization of tubulin. What effect might these drugs have on mitosis and flagella?
11. Your cousin reads in a blog that the Food and Drug Administration has approved an antimicrobial called tigecycline. The blog says that the drug is an analog of tetracycline. She asks you what that means and how the drug works. What should you tell your cousin?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes antimicrobial resistance. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Altered targets
Beta-lactamase
Cell division
Conjugation
Efflux pumps
Entry of antimicrobials into cell
Mutation
Pathogen's enzymes
Penicillin
Transduction
Transformation



11 Characterizing and Classifying Prokaryotes

Microbiologist Tony Walsby startled the scientific world by announcing the discovery of something no one had seen before: a rectangular-shaped prokaryote. This novel archeon was named *Haloarcola*, meaning "salt box," because of its unusual boxy shape and its habitat, the salt-encrusted Dead Sea. Until this extraordinary find, scientists had only seen spherical, rod-shaped, or spiral prokaryotes. *Haloarcula* was a surprise, one that forced scientists to reconsider some of their assumptions about prokaryotic life forms.

More recently, we have discovered species of archaea that may offer clues to whether there is life on other planets. And among the millions of unknown microorganisms that live on Earth, there may very well exist entirely new categories of life. The vast and diverse world of prokaryotes continues to surprise and amaze us.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The Dead Sea, the lowest point on the Earth's surface, is also one of the saltiest, but it isn't really dead—rectangular-shaped halophilic archaea live there.

Prokaryotes are by far the most numerous and diverse group of cellular microbes. Scientists estimate there are more than 6×10^{31} prokaryotes on Earth. If laid end to end, they would more than encircle the entire Milky Way galaxy. They thrive in various habitats: from Antarctic glaciers to thermal hot springs, from the colons of animals to the cytoplasm of other prokaryotes, from distilled water to supersaturated brine, and from disinfectant solutions to basalt rocks thousands of meters below the Earth's surface. In part because of such great diversity, only a very few prokaryotes have enzymes, toxins, or cellular structures that enable them to colonize humans or cause diseases. In this chapter we will begin by examining general prokaryotic characteristics and conclude with a survey of specific prokaryotic taxa. We will briefly mention human pathogens throughout the chapter. (More detailed discussion of disease-causing microbes is in Chapters 19–25.)

General Characteristics of Prokaryotic Organisms

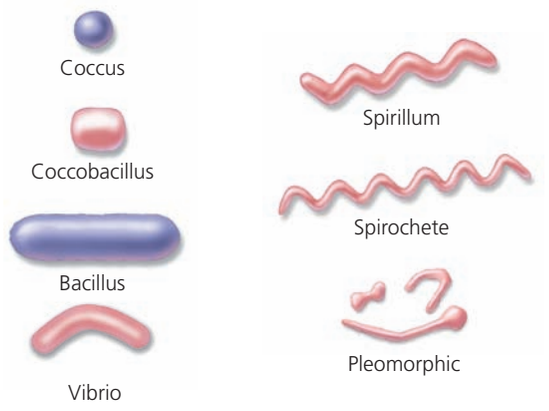
In this section, we consider prokaryotes' shapes, the ability of some to survive unfavorable conditions by forming resistant endospores, some reproduction strategies, and their spatial arrangement. (Chapters 3 and 5–7 consider other general characteristics of prokaryotic cells, including cellular structure, metabolism, growth, and genetics.)

Morphology of Prokaryotic Cells

Learning Outcome

11.1 Identify six basic shapes of prokaryotic cells.

Prokaryotic cells exist in a variety of shapes, or morphologies **(Figure 11.1)**. The three basic shapes are **coccus** (kok´ŭs, roughly spherical, plural *cocci*, kok´sī), **bacillus** (ba-sil´ŭs, rod-shaped, plural *bacilli*, bă-sil´ī), and **spiral.** Cocci are not all perfectly spherical; for example, there are pointed, kidney-shaped, and oval cocci. Similarly, bacilli vary in shape; for example, some bacilli are pointed, spindle shaped, or threadlike (filamentous). Spiral-shaped prokaryotes are either **spirilla,** which are stiff, or **spirochetes** (spī´rō-kētz), which are flexible. Curved rods are **vibrios,** and the term **coccobacillus** is used to describe cells that are intermediate in shape between cocci and bacilli, that is, when it is difficult to ascertain if a cell is an elongated coccus or a short bacillus. In addition to these basic shapes, there are star-shaped, triangular, and rectangular prokaryotes as well as prokaryotes that are **pleomorphic**[1] (plē-ō-mōr´fik); that is, they vary in shape and size.



▲ **Figure 11.1 Typical prokaryotic morphologies.** *What is one difference between a spirillum and a spirochete?*

Figure 11.1 *Generally, spirilla are stiff, whereas spirochetes are flexible.*

Endospores

Learning Outcome

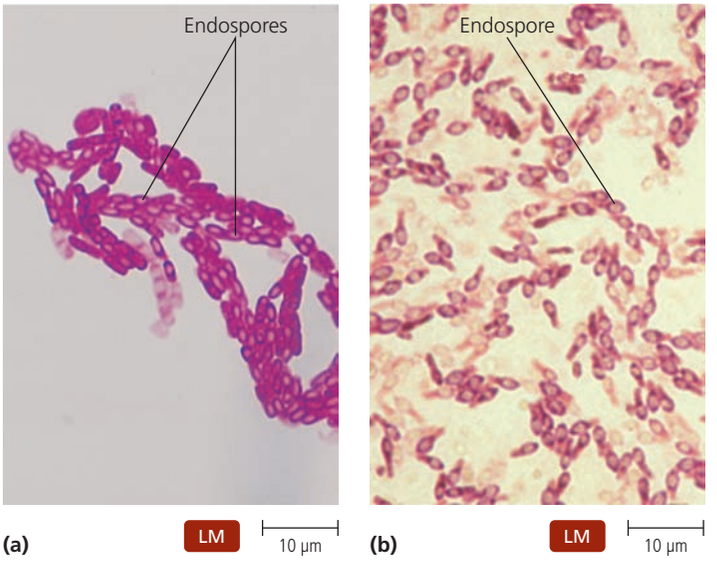
11.2 Describe the formation and function of bacterial endospores.

The Gram-positive bacteria *Bacillus* (ba-sil´ŭs) and *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) produce **endospores,** which are important for several reasons, including their durability and potential pathogenicity. Endospores constitute a defensive strategy against hostile or unfavorable conditions. They are stable resting stages that barely metabolize and germinate when conditions improve.

Though some people refer to endospores as "spores," endospores should not be confused with reproductive spores, such as those of algae and fungi. A single bacterial cell, called a *vegetative* cell to distinguish it from an endospore, transforms into only one endospore, which then germinates to grow into a single vegetative cell; therefore, endospores are not reproductive structures. No new cells are formed.

The process of endospore formation, called *sporulation,* requires 8 to 10 hours and proceeds in eight steps (see Figure 3.23). Depending on the species, a cell forms endospores either *centrally, subterminally* (near one end), or *terminally* (at one end) **(Figure 11.2)**.

[1]From Greek *pleon*, meaning "more," and *morphe*, meaning "form."



▲ **Figure 11.2 Locations of endospores. (a)** Central endospores of *Bacillus*. **(b)** Subterminal endospores of *Clostridium botulinum*. The enlarged endospores have swollen the vegetative cells that produced them.

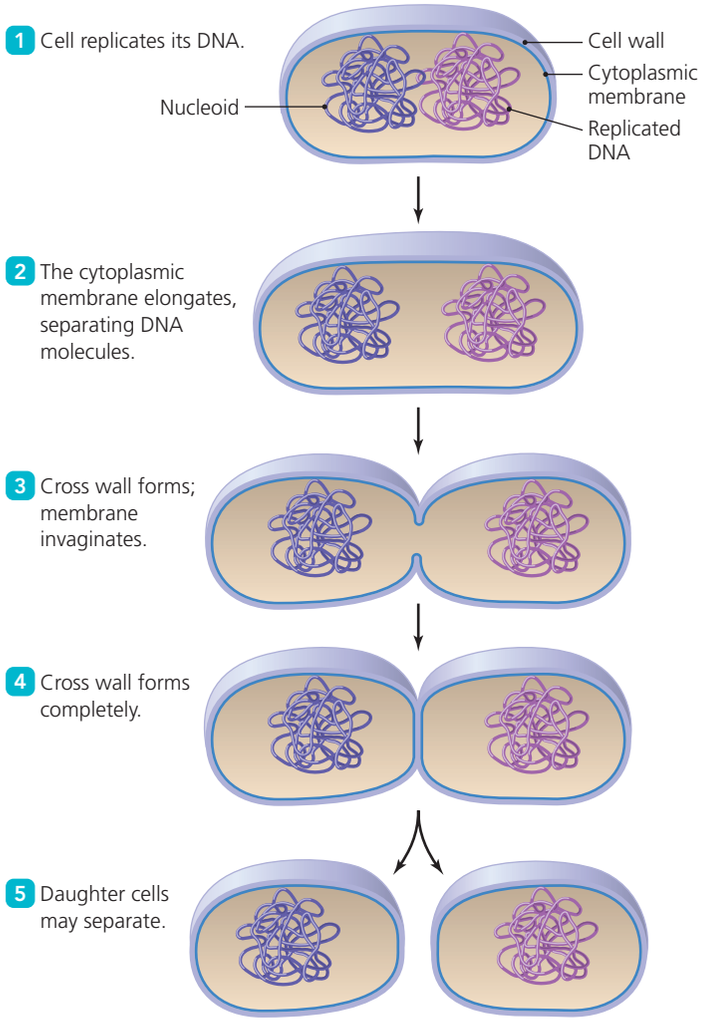
Food processors, health care professionals, and governments are concerned about endospore formation because endospores can resist our attempts to kill them and because many endospore-forming bacteria produce deadly toxins that cause fatal diseases, such as anthrax, tetanus, and gangrene.

Reproduction of Prokaryotic Cells

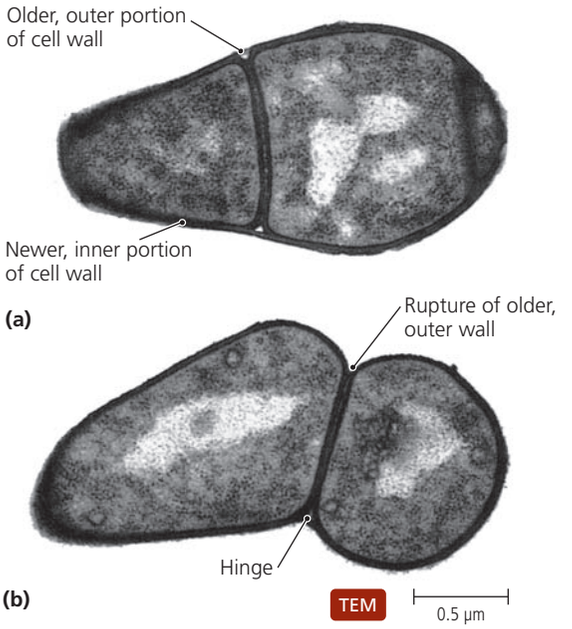
Learning Outcomes

11.3 List three common types of reproduction in prokaryotes.
11.4 Describe snapping division as a type of binary fission.

All prokaryotes reproduce asexually; none reproduce sexually. The most common method of asexual reproduction is **binary fission,** which proceeds as follows **(Figure 11.3)**: 1 The cell replicates its DNA; each DNA molecule is attached to the cytoplasmic membrane. 2 The cell grows, and as the cytoplasmic membrane elongates, it moves the daughter molecules of DNA apart. 3 The cell forms a cross wall, invaginating the cytoplasmic membrane. 4 The cross wall completely divides daughter cells. 5 The daughter cells may or may not separate. The parental cell disappears with the formation of progeny. ► **ANIMATIONS:** ***Bacterial Growth: Overview***



▲ **Figure 11.3** **Binary fission.**

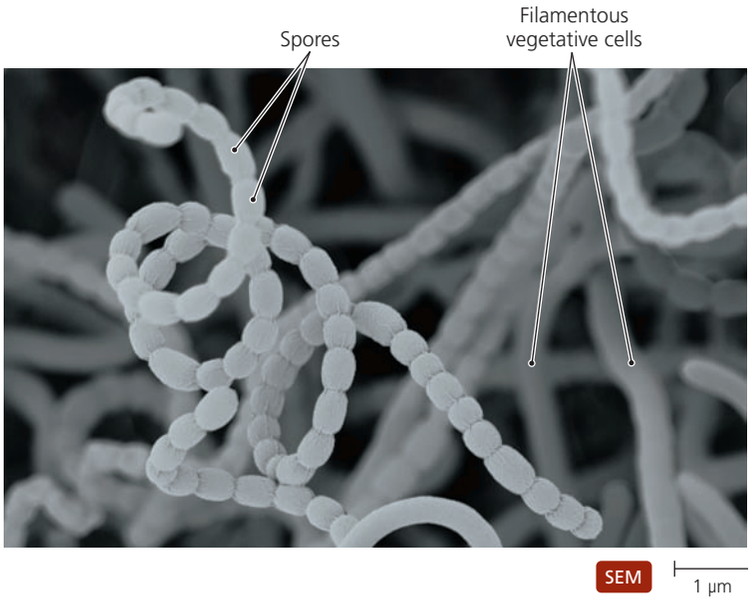


▲ **Figure 11.4** **Snapping division, a variation of binary fission.** **(a)** Only the inner portion of the cell wall forms a cross wall. **(b)** As the daughter cells grow, tension snaps the outer portion of the cell wall, leaving the daughter cells connected by a hinge of old cell wall material.

A variation of binary fission called **snapping division** occurs in some Gram-positive bacilli **(Figure 11.4)**. In snapping division, only the inner portion of a cell wall is deposited across the dividing cell. The thickening of this new cross wall puts tension on the outer layer of the old cell wall, which still holds the two cells together. Eventually, as the tension increases, the outer wall breaks at its weakest point with a snapping movement that tears it most of the way around. The daughter cells can then remain hanging together almost side by side being held at an angle by a small remnant of the original outer wall that acts like a hinge.

Some prokaryotes have other methods of reproduction. The parental cell retains its identity during and after these methods. The *actinomycetes* (ak´ti-nō-mī-sētz) produce reproductive cells called **spores** at the ends of their filamentous cells **(Figure 11.5)**. These are true spores and should not be confused with endospores. Each spore can develop into a clone of the original organism. Some reproduce by fragmentation into small motile filaments that glide away from the parental strand. Still other prokaryotes reproduce by **budding,** in which an outgrowth of the original cell (a bud) receives a copy of the genetic material and enlarges. Eventually the bud is cut off from the parental cell, typically while it is still quite small **(Figure 11.6)**.

Epulopiscium (ep´yoo-lō-pis´sē-ŭm), a "giant" bacterial symbiont of surgeonfish, and many of its relatives have a truly unique method of reproduction among prokaryotes: They give "birth" to as many as 12 live offspring that emerge from the body of their dead mother cell. The production of live offspring within a mother is called *viviparity,* and this is the first documented case of viviparous behavior in the prokaryotic world. In these bacteria, formation of internal offspring proceeds in a manner similar to the early stages of endospore formation.



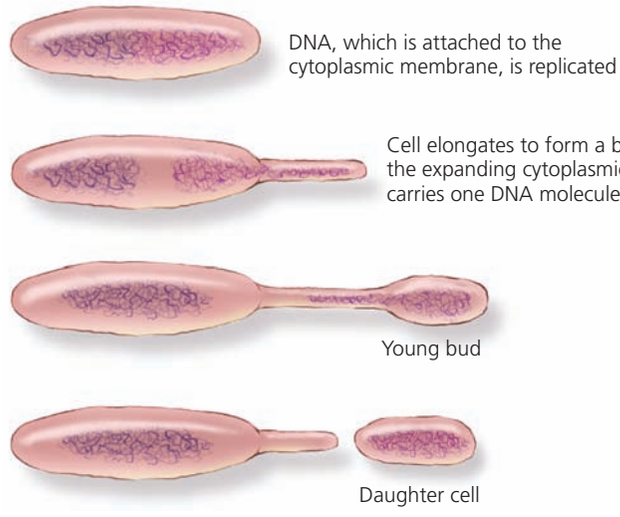
▲ **Figure 11.5 Spores of actinomycetes.** Filamentous vegetative cells produce chains of spores, shown here in *Streptomyces*.

Arrangements of Prokaryotic Cells

Learning Outcome

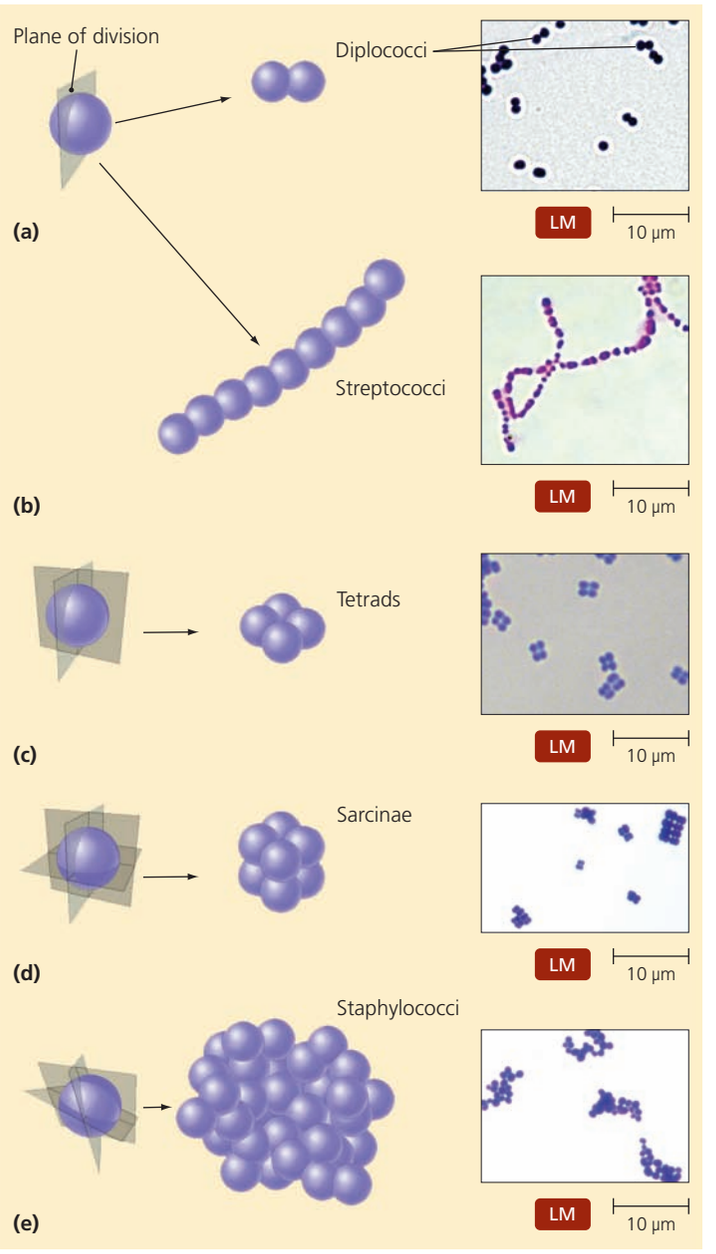
11.5 Draw and label five arrangements of prokaryotes.

The arrangements of prokaryotic cells result from two aspects of division during binary fission: the planes in which cells divide and whether or not daughter cells remain attached to each other. Cocci that remain attached in pairs are **diplococci** (Figure 11.7a), and long chains of cocci are called **streptococci**[2]



▲ **Figure 11.6 Budding.** *How does budding differ from binary fission?*

Figure 11.5 *In binary fission, the parent cell disappears with the formation of two equal-sized offspring; in contrast, a bud is often much smaller than its parent, and the parent remains to produce more buds.*

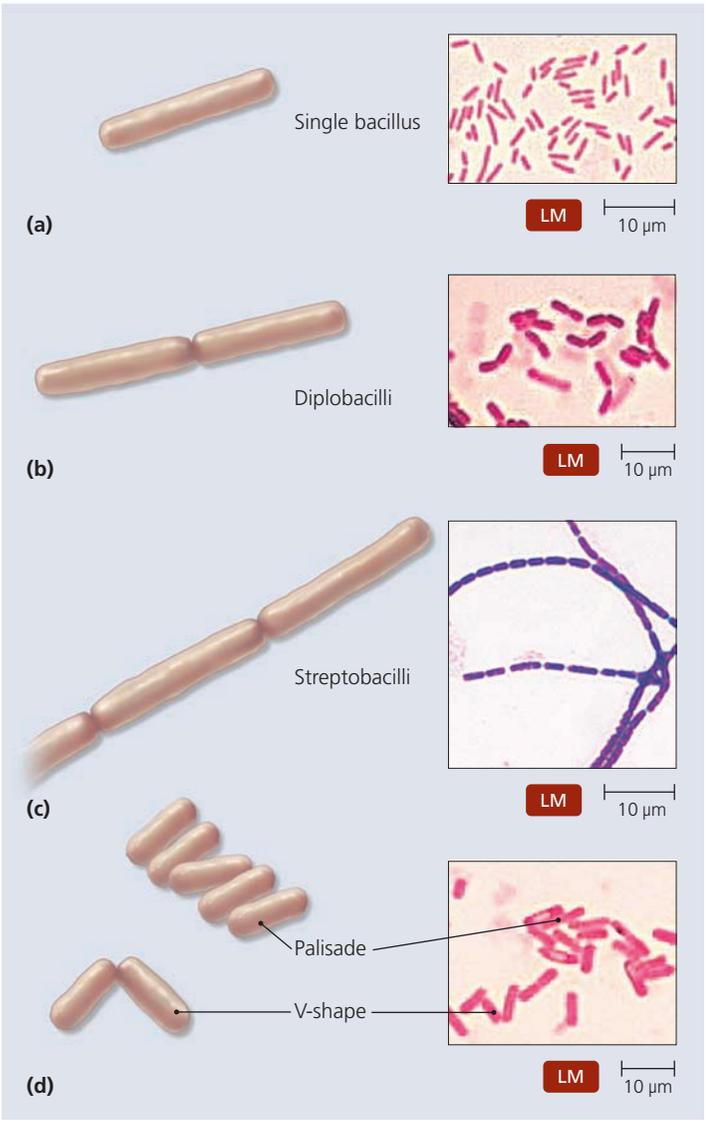


▲ **Figure 11.7 Arrangements of cocci. (a)** The diplococci of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. **(b)** The streptococci of *Streptococcus pyogenes*. **(c)** Tetrads, in this case of *Micrococcus luteus*. **(d)** The genus *Sarcina* is characterized by sarcinae. **(e)** The staphylococci of *Staphylococcus aureus*.

(Figure 11.7b). Some cocci divide in two planes and remain attached to form **tetrads** (Figure 11.7c); others divide in three planes to form cuboidal packets called **sarcinae**[3] (sar´si-nī) (Figure 11.7d). Clusters called **staphylococci**[4] (staf´i-lo-kok-sī), which look like bunches of grapes, form when the planes of cell division are random (Figure 11.7e).

Bacilli are less varied in their arrangements than cocci because bacilli divide transversely—that is, across their long axis.

[2]From Greek *streptos*, meaning "twisted" because long chains tend to twist.
[3]Latin for "bundles."
[4]From Greek *staphyle*, meaning "bunch of grapes."



▲ **Figure 11.8 Arrangements of bacilli. (a)** A single bacillus of *Escherichia coli*. **(b)** Diplobacilli in a young culture of *Bacillus cereus*. **(c)** Streptobacilli in an older culture of *Bacillus cereus*. **(d)** V-shapes and palisades of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

Daughter bacilli may separate to become single cells or stay attached as either pairs or chains **(Figure 11.8a–c)**. Because the cells of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* (kŏ-rī´nē-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm dif-thi´rē-ī), the causative agent of diphtheria, divide by snapping division, the daughter cells remain attached to form V-shapes and a side-by-side arrangement called a **palisade**[5] **(Figure 11.8d)**.

Descriptive words can be used to refer either to a general shape and/or arrangement or to a specific genus. Thus, the characteristic shape of the genus *Bacillus* is a rod-shaped bacterium, and the characteristic arrangement of bacteria in the genus *Sarcina* (sar´si-nă) is cuboidal. In such potentially confusing cases the meaning can be distinguished because genus names are always capitalized and italicized. In other cases, the arrangement uses the plural form, while a genus name is singular; thus, streptococci—spherical cells arranged in a chain—are characteristic of the genus *Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs).

▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Arrangements of Prokaryotic Cells***

[5]From Latin *palus*, meaning "stake," referring to a fence made of adjoining stakes.

Modern Prokaryotic Classification

Learning Outcomes

11.6 Explain the general purpose of *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*.

11.7 Discuss the veracity and limitations of any taxonomic scheme.

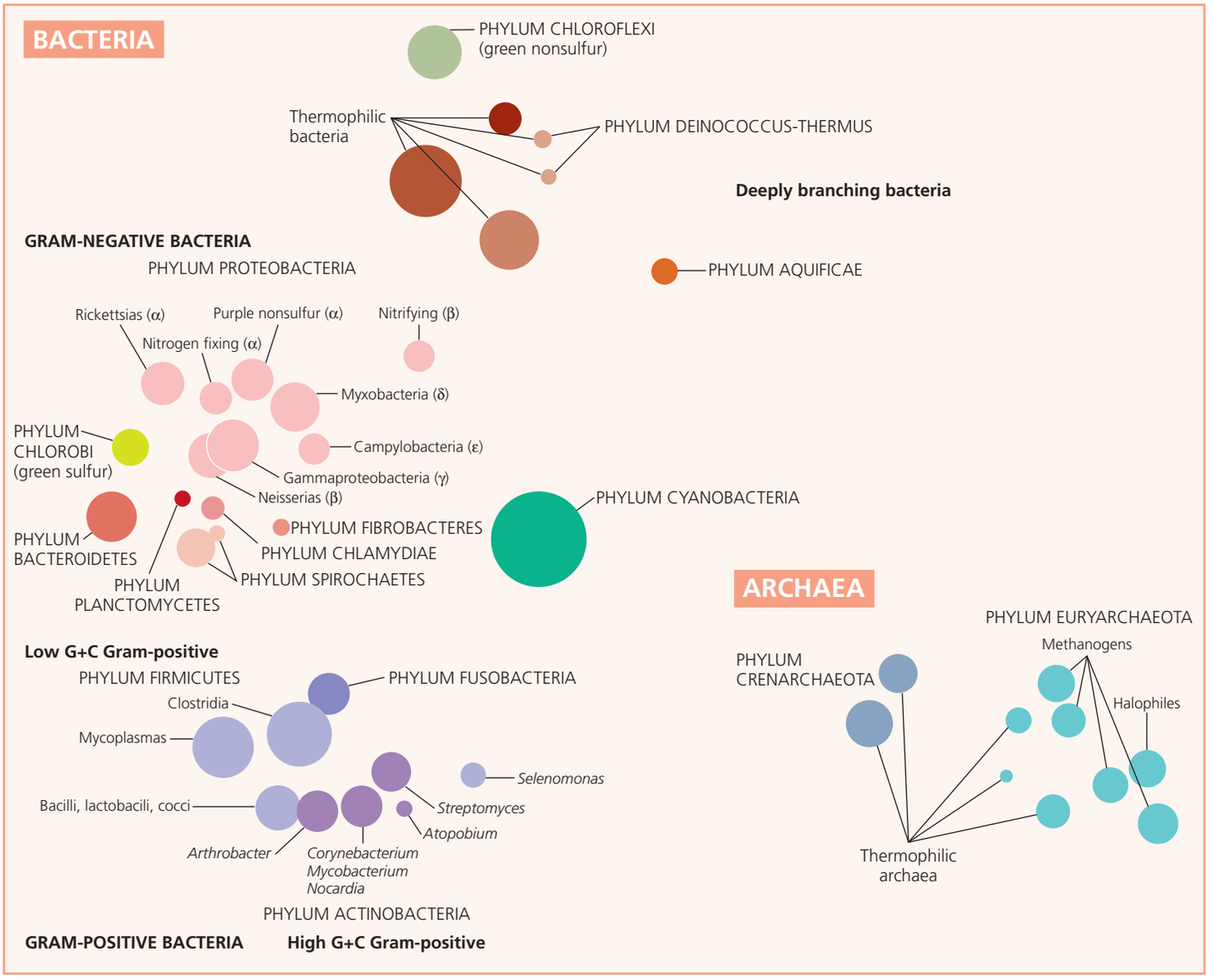
Scientists called *taxonomists* group similar organisms into categories called *taxa* (see pp. 112–115). At one time the smallest taxa of prokaryotes (i.e., genera and species) were based solely on growth habits and the characteristics we considered in the previous section, especially morphology and arrangement. More recently, the classification of living things has been based more on genetic relatedness. Accordingly, modern taxonomists place all organisms into three *domains*—Archaea (ar´kē-ă), Bacteria, and Eukarya—which are the largest, most inclusive taxa. Scientists recognize bacterial and archaeal (both prokaryotic) taxa primarily on the basis of similarities in RNA, DNA, and protein sequences.

The vast majority of prokaryotes—perhaps as many as 99.5%, and probably millions of species—have never been isolated or cultured and are known only from their ribosomal (rRNA) "fingerprints"; that is, they are known only from sequences of rRNA that do not match any known rRNA sequences. In light of this information, taxonomists now construct modern classification schemes of prokaryotes based primarily on the relative similarities of rRNA sequences found in various prokaryotic groups **(Figure 11.9)**.

Perhaps the most authoritative reference in modern prokaryotic systematics is *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology*, which classifies prokaryotes into 26 phyla—2 in Archaea and 24 in Bacteria. The five volumes of the second edition of *Bergey's Manual* discuss the great diversity of prokaryotes based in large part (but not exclusively) on their possible evolutionary relationships as reflected in their rRNA sequences.

Our examination of prokaryotic diversity in this text is for the most part organized to reflect the taxonomic scheme that appears in *Bergey's Manual*, but it is important to note that as authoritative as *Bergey's Manual* is, it is not an "official" list of prokaryotic taxa. The reason is that taxonomy is partly a matter of opinion and judgment, and not all taxonomists agree. Legitimately differing views often change as more information is uncovered and examined, so *Bergey's Manual* is merely a consensus of experts at a given time. More information about *Bergey's Manual* can be found on the textbook website at www.masteringmicrobiology.com.

In the following sections we examine representative prokaryotes if major phyla. We begin our exploration of prokaryotic diversity with a survey of archaea.



▲ **Figure 11.9 Prokaryotic taxonomy.** This scheme is based on relatedness according to rRNA sequences. The closer together the disks, the more similar are the rRNA sequences of the species within the group. The sizes of disks are proportional to the number of species known for that group. Note that archaea are distinctly separate from bacteria. The discussion in this chapter is based largely on the scheme depicted in this figure. Not all phyla are shown. (In phylum Proteobacteria, classes are indicated by a Greek letter: α = alpha, β = beta, γ = gamma, δ = delta, and ϵ = epsilon.) (Adapted from *Road Map to Bergey's*. 2002, Bergey's Manual Trust.)

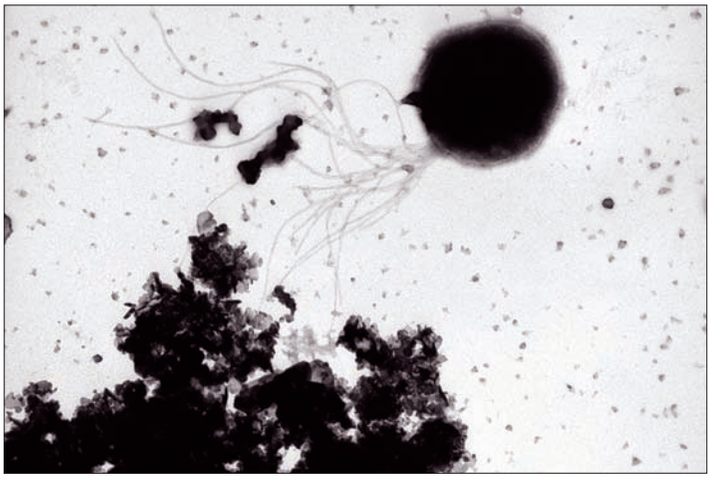
Survey of Archaea

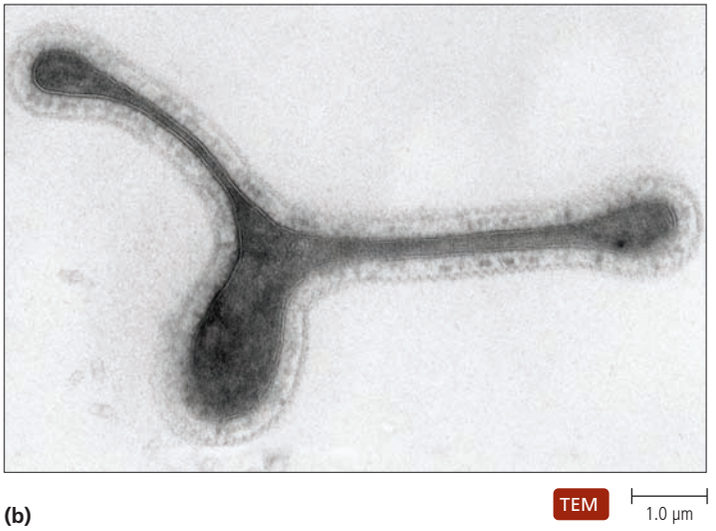
Learning Outcome

11.8 Identify the common features of microbes in the domain Archaea.

Scientists originally identified archaea as a distinct type of prokaryotes on the basis of unique rRNA sequences. Archaea also share other common features that distinguish them from bacteria:

- Archaea lack true peptidoglycan in their cell walls.
- Their cytoplasmic membrane lipids have branched or ring-form hydrocarbon chains, whereas bacterial membrane lipids have straight chains.
- The initial amino acid in their polypeptide chains, coded by the AUG start codon, is methionine (as in eukaryotes and in contrast to the *N*-formylmethionine used by bacteria).





▲ **Figure 11.10 Archaea. (a)** *Geogemma*, which has a tuft of flagella. **(b)** *Pyrodictium*, which has disk-shaped cells with filamentous extensions.

Archaea are currently classified in two phyla—Crenarchaeota (kren-ar´kē-ō-ta), and Euryarchaeota (ŭ-rē-ar´kē-ō-ta)—based primarily on rRNA sequences. Researchers have discovered RNA from several uncultured archaea that may represent other archaeal phyla, though there is no consensus on these taxa.

Archaea reproduce by binary fission, budding, or fragmentation. Known archaeal cells are cocci, bacilli, spirals, or pleomorphic **(Figure 11.10)**. Archaeal cell walls vary among taxa and are composed of a variety of compounds, including proteins, glycoproteins, lipoproteins, and polysaccharides; all lack peptidoglycan. Another interesting feature of archaea is that scientists have not proven that any archaeon causes disease.

Though most archaea live in moderate environmental conditions, some are *extremophiles,* which we discuss next, and *methanogens* (discussed shortly).

▲ **Figure 11.11 Some hyperthermophilic archaea live in hot springs.** Orange archaea thrive along the edge of this pool in Yellowstone National Park.

Extremophiles

Learning Outcome

11.9 Compare and contrast the two kinds of extremophiles discussed in this section.

Extremophiles are microbes that require what humans consider to be extreme conditions of temperature, pH, and/or salinity to survive. There are extremophilic bacteria as well as archaea. Prominent among the extremophiles are *thermophiles* and *halophiles.*

Thermophiles

Thermophiles[6] are prokaryotes whose DNA, RNA, cytoplasmic membranes, and proteins do not function properly at temperatures lower than about 45°C. Prokaryotes that require temperatures over 80°C are called **hyperthermophiles.** Most thermophilic archaea are in the phylum Crenarchaeota, though some are also found in the phylum Euryarchaeota.

Two representative genera of thermophilic archaea are *Geogemma* (jē´ō-jem-ă) and *Pyrodictium* (pī-rō-dik´tē-um; see Figure 11.10). These microorganisms live in acidic hot springs such as those found in deep ocean rifts and similar terrestrial volcanic habitats **(Figure 11.11)**. *Geogemma* is the current record holder for surviving high temperatures—it can survive 2 hours at 130°C! The cells of *Pyrodictium,* which live in deep-sea hydrothermal vents, are irregular disks with elongated protein tubules that attach them to grains of sulfur that they use as final electron acceptors in respiration.

Scientists use thermophiles and their enzymes in recombinant DNA technology applications because thermophiles' cellular structure and enzymes are stable and functional at temperatures that denature most proteins and nucleic acids and kill other cells. DNA polymerase from hyperthermophilic archaea makes possible the automated amplification of DNA in

[6]From Greek *thermos*, meaning "heat," and *philos*, meaning "love."

a thermocycler (see Chapter 8). Heat-stable enzymes are also ideal for many industrial applications, including their use as additives in laundry detergents.

Halophiles

Halophiles[7] are organisms that inhabit extremely saline habitats, such as the Dead Sea, the Great Salt Lake, and solar evaporation ponds used to concentrate salt for use in seasoning and for the production of fertilizer **(Figure 11.12)**. Halophiles can also colonize and spoil such foods as salted fish, sausages, and pork. Halophilic archaea are classified in the phylum Euryarchaeota.

The distinctive characteristic of halophiles is their absolute dependence on a salt concentration greater than 9% to maintain the integrity of their cell walls. Most halophiles grow and reproduce within an optimum range of 17% to 23% salt, and many species can survive in a saturated saline solution (35% sodium chloride). Many halophiles contain red to orange pigments that probably play a role in protecting them from intense sunlight.

The most studied halophile is *Halobacterium salinarium* (hā´lō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm sal-ē-nar´ē-um), which is an archaeon despite its name. It is a photoheterotroph, using light energy to drive the synthesis of ATP while deriving carbon from organic compounds. *Halobacterium* lacks photosynthetic pigments—chlorophylls and bacteriochlorophylls. Instead, it synthesizes purple proteins, called **bacteriorhodopsins** (bak-tēr´ē-ō-rō-dop´sinz), that absorb light energy to pump protons across the cytoplasmic membrane to establish a proton gradient. Cells use the energy of proton gradients to produce ATP (see Chapter 5). *Halobacterium* also rotates its flagella with energy from the proton gradient so as to position itself at the proper water depth for maximum light absorption.

▲ **Figure 11.12 The habitat of halophiles: highly saline water.** These are solar evaporation ponds near San Francisco. Halophiles often contain red to orange pigments, possibly to protect them from intense solar energy.

Methanogens

Learning Outcome

11.10 List at least four significant roles played by methanogens in the environment.

Methanogens are obligate anaerobes that convert CO_2, H_2, and organic acids into methane gas (CH_4). These microbes constitute the largest known group of archaea in the phylum Euryarchaeota. A few thermophilic methanogens are known. For example, *Methanopyrus*[8] (meth´a-nō-pī´rŭs) has an optimum growth temperature of 98°C and grows well in 110°C seawater around submarine hydrothermal vents. Scientists have also discovered halophilic methanogens.

Methanogens play significant roles in the environment by converting organic wastes in pond, lake, and ocean sediments into methane. Other methanogens living in the colons of animals are one of the primary sources of environmental methane. Methanogens dwelling in the intestinal tract of a cow, for example, can produce 400 liters of methane a day. Sometimes the production of methane in swamps and bogs is so great that bubbles rise to the surface as "swamp gas."

Methane is a so-called *greenhouse gas;* that is, methane in the atmosphere traps heat, which adds to global warming. It is about 25 times more potent as a greenhouse gas than carbon dioxide. Methanogens have produced about 10 trillion tons of methane—twice the known amount of oil, natural gas, and coal combined—that lies buried in mud on the ocean floor. If all the methane trapped in ocean sediments were released, it would wreak havoc with the world's climate.

Methanogens also have useful industrial applications. An important step in sewage treatment is the digestion of sludge by methanogens, and some sewage treatment plants burn methane to heat buildings and generate electricity.

Though we have concentrated our discussion on extremophiles and methanogens, most archaea live in more moderate habitats. For example, archaea make up about a third of the prokaryotic biomass in coastal Antarctic water, providing food for marine animals.

CRITICAL THINKING

A scientist who discovers a prokaryote living in a hot spring at 100°C suspects that it belongs to the archaea. Why does she think it might be archaeal? How could she prove that it is not bacterial?

Survey of Bacteria

As we noted previously, our survey of prokaryotes in this chapter reflects the classification scheme that is featured in the second edition of *Bergey's Manual.* Whereas the classification scheme for bacteria in the first edition of the *Manual* emphasized morphology, Gram reaction, and biochemical characteristics, the second edition bases its classification of bacteria largely on differences in 16S rRNA sequences. We begin

[7] From Greek *halos,* meaning "salt."
[8] From Greek *pyrus,* meaning "fire."

our survey of bacteria by considering the deeply branching and phototrophic bacteria.

Deeply Branching and Phototrophic Bacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.11 Provide a rationale for the name "deeply branching bacteria."

11.12 Explain the function of heterocysts in terms of both photosynthesis and nitrogen fixation.

Deeply Branching Bacteria

The **deeply branching bacteria** are so named because their rRNA sequences and growth characteristics lead scientists to conclude that these organisms are similar to the earliest bacteria; that is, they appear to have branched off the "tree of life" at an early stage. For example, the deeply branching bacteria are autotrophic, and early organisms must have been autotrophs because heterotrophs by definition must derive their carbon from autotrophs. Further, many of the deeply branching bacteria live in habitats similar to those some scientists think existed on the early Earth—hot, acidic, anaerobic, and exposed to intense ultraviolet radiation from the sun.

One representative of these microbes—the Gram-negative *Aquifex* (ăk´wē-feks), a bacterium in the phylum Aquificae—is considered to represent the earliest branch of bacteria. It is chemoautotrophic, hyperthermophilic, and microaerophilic, deriving energy and carbon from inorganic sources in very hot habitats containing little oxygen.

Another representative of deeply branching bacteria is *Deinococcus* (dī-nō-kok´ŭs), in phylum Deinococcus-Thermus, which grows as tetrads of Gram-positive cocci. Interestingly, the cell wall of *Deinococcus* has an outer membrane similar to that of Gram-negative bacteria, but the cells stain purple like typical Gram-positive microbes. *Deinococcus* is extremely resistant to radiation because of the way it packages its DNA and the presence of radiation-absorbing pigments, unique lipids within its membranes, and high cytoplasmic levels of manganese that protect its DNA repair proteins from radiation damage. Even when exposed to 5 million rad of radiation, which is enough energy to shatter its chromosome into hundreds of fragments, its enzymes can repair the damage. Not surprisingly, researchers have isolated *Deinococcus* from sites severely contaminated with radioactive wastes.

Phototrophic Bacteria

Phototrophic bacteria acquire the energy needed for anabolism by absorbing light with pigments located in thylakoids called *photosynthetic lamellae*. They lack the membrane-bound thylakoids seen in eukaryotic chloroplasts. Most phototrophic bacteria are also autotrophic—they produce organic compounds from carbon dioxide.

Phototrophs are a diverse group of microbes that are taxonomically confusing. Based on their pigments and their source of electrons for photosynthesis, phototrophic bacteria can be divided into five groups (though classified in four phyla):

- Blue-green bacteria (phylum Cyanobacteria)
- Green sulfur bacteria (phylum Chlorobi)
- Green nonsulfur bacteria (phylum Chloroflexi)
- Purple sulfur bacteria (phylum Proteobacteria)
- Purple nonsulfur bacteria (phylum Proteobacteria)

We consider them together in the following sections because of their common phototrophic metabolism.

Cyanobacteria **Cyanobacteria** are Gram-negative phototrophs that vary greatly in shape, size, and method of reproduction. They range in size from 1 µm to 10 µm in diameter and are either coccoid or disk shaped. Coccal forms can be single or arranged in pairs, tetrads, chains, or sheets **(Figure 11.13a, b)**; disk-shaped forms are often tightly appressed end to end to form filaments that can be either straight, branched, or helical and are frequently contained in a gelatinous glycocalyx called a *sheath* **(Figure 11.13c)**. Some filamentous cyanobacteria are motile, moving along surfaces by *gliding.* Cyanobacteria generally reproduce by binary fission, with some species also reproducing by motile fragments or by thick-walled spores called akinetes (ā-kin-ētz´; see Figure 11.13a).

Like plants and algae, cyanobacteria utilize chlorophyll *a* and are oxygenic (generate oxygen) during photosynthesis:

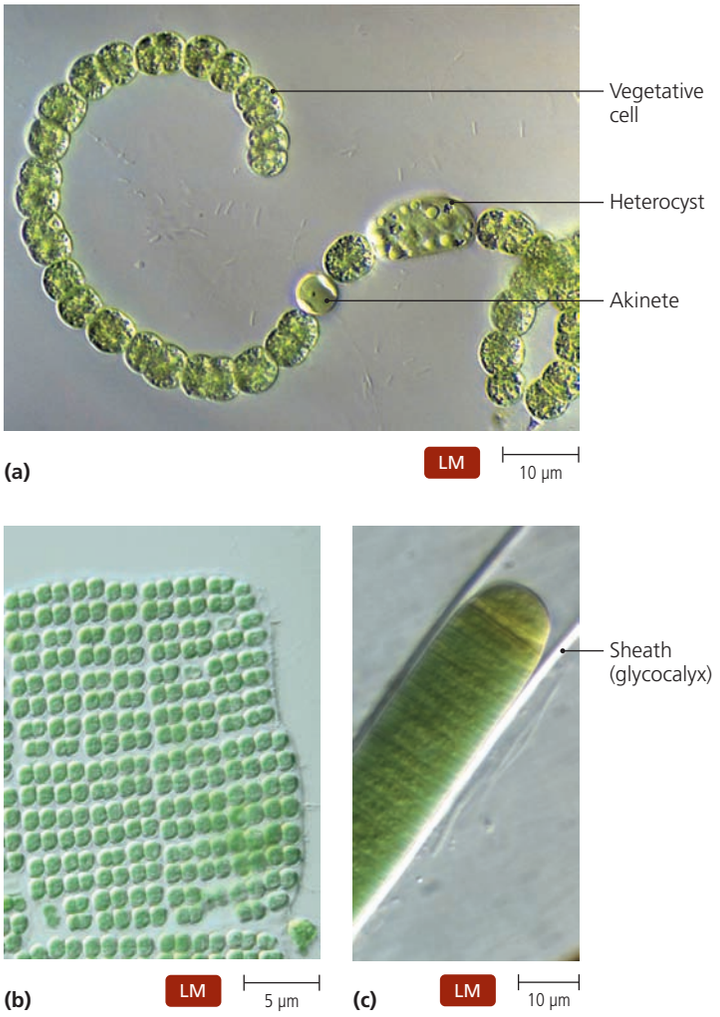
$$12\ H_2O + 6\ CO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{light}} C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ H_2O + 6\ O_2 \qquad (1)$$

For this reason, cyanobacteria were formerly called *blue-green algae;* however, the name *cyanobacteria* properly emphasizes their true bacterial nature: They are prokaryotic and have peptidoglycan cell walls. Additionally, they lack membranous cellular organelles such as nuclei, mitochondria, and chloroplasts.

Photosynthesis by cyanobacteria is thought to have transformed the anaerobic atmosphere of the early Earth into our oxygen-containing one, and according to the endosymbiotic theory, chloroplasts developed from cyanobacteria. Indeed, chloroplasts and cyanobacteria have similar rRNA and structures, such as 70S ribosomes and photosynthetic membranes.

Nitrogen is an essential element in proteins and nucleic acids. Though nitrogen constitutes about 79% of the atmosphere, relatively few organisms can utilize this gas. A few species of filamentous cyanobacteria as well as some proteobacteria (discussed later in the chapter) reduce nitrogen gas (N_2) to ammonia (NH_3) via a process called **nitrogen fixation.** Nitrogen fixation is essential for life on Earth because nitrogen fixers not only are able to enrich their own growth but also provide nitrogen in a usable form to other organisms.

Because the enzyme responsible for nitrogen fixation is inhibited by oxygen, nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria are faced with a problem—how to segregate nitrogen fixation, which is inhibited by oxygen, from oxygenic photosynthesis, which produces oxygen. Nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria solve this problem in one of two ways. Most cyanobacteria isolate the enzymes of

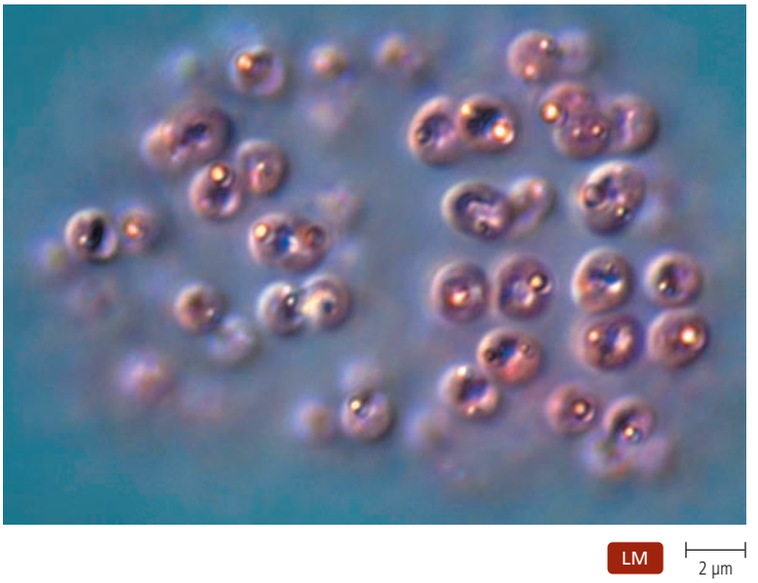


▲ **Figure 11.13** **Examples of cyanobacteria with different growth habits.** **(a)** *Anabaena*, which grows as a filament of cocci with differentiated cells. Heterocysts fix nitrogen; akinetes are reproductive cells. **(b)** *Merismopedia*, which grows as a flat sheet of cocci surrounded by a gelatinous glycocalyx. **(c)** *Oscillatoria*, which forms a filament of tightly appressed disk-shaped cells.

nitrogen fixation in specialized, thick-walled, nonphotosynthetic cells called **heterocysts** (see Figure 11.13a). Heterocysts transport reduced nitrogen to neighboring cells in exchange for glucose. A few types of cyanobacteria photosynthesize during daylight hours and fix nitrogen at night, thereby separating nitrogen fixation from photosynthesis in time rather than in space.

Highlight: From Cyanobacteria to Bats to Brain Disease? examines potential negative impacts of cyanobacteria in human health.

Green and Purple Phototrophic Bacteria Green and purple bacteria differ from plants, algae, and cyanobacteria in two ways: They use *bacteriochlorophylls* for photosynthesis instead of chlorophyll *a*, and they are *anoxygenic;* that is, they do not generate oxygen during photosynthesis. Green and purple phototrophic



▲ **Figure 11.14** **Deposits of sulfur within purple sulfur bacteria.** These bacteria oxidize H_2S to produce the granules of elemental sulfur evident in this photomicrograph. *Where do green sulfur bacteria deposit sulfur grains?*

Figure 11.14 *Green sulfur bacteria deposit sulfur grains externally.*

bacteria commonly inhabit anaerobic muds rich in hydrogen sulfide at the bottoms of ponds and lakes. These microbes are not necessarily green and purple in color; rather, the terms refer to pigments in some of the better-known members of the groups.

As previously indicated, the green and purple phototrophic bacteria include both sulfur and nonsulfur forms. Whereas nonsulfur bacteria derive electrons for the reduction of CO_2 from organic compounds such as carbohydrates and organic acids, sulfur bacteria derive electrons from the oxidation of hydrogen sulfide to sulfur, as follows:

$$12\ H_2S + 6\ CO_2 \xrightarrow{\text{light}} C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ H_2O + 12\ S \qquad (2)$$

Green sulfur bacteria deposit the resultant sulfur outside their cells, whereas purple sulfur bacteria deposit sulfur within their cells **(Figure 11.14)**.

At the beginning of the 20th century, a prominent question in biology concerned the origin of the oxygen released by photosynthetic plants. It was initially thought that oxygen was derived from carbon dioxide, but a comparison of photosynthesis in cyanobacteria (Equation 1 on p. 323) with that in sulfur bacteria (Equation 2) provided evidence that free oxygen is derived from water.

Whereas green sulfur bacteria are placed in phylum Chlorobi, green nonsulfur bacteria are members of phylum Chloroflexi. The purple bacteria (both sulfur and nonsulfur) are placed in three classes of phylum Proteobacteria, which is composed of Gram-negative bacteria and is discussed shortly. Table 11.1 summarizes the characteristics of phototrophic bacteria.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Photosynthesis: Comparing Prokaryotes and Eukaryotes***

TABLE 11.1 Characteristics of the Major Groups of Phototrophic Bacteria

	Phylum				
	Cyanobacteria	**Chlorobi**	**Chloroflexi**	**Proteobacteria**	**Proteobacteria**
Class	Cyanobacteria	Chlorobia	Chloroflexi	Gammaproteobacteria	Alphaproteobacteria and one genus in betaproteobacteria
Common name(s)	Blue-green bacteria ("blue-green algae")	Green sulfur bacteria	Green nonsulfur bacteria	Purple sulfur bacteria	Purple nonsulfur bacteria
Major photosynthetic pigments	Chlorophyll *a*	Bacteriochlorophyll *a* plus *c*, *d*, or *e*	Bacteriochlorophylls *a* and *c*	Bacteriochlorophyll *a* or *b*	Bacteriochlorophyll *a* or *b*
Types of photosynthesis	Oxygenic	Anoxygenic	Anoxygenic	Anoxygenic	Anoxygenic
Electron donor in photosynthesis	H_2O	H_2, H_2S, or S	Organic compounds	H_2, H_2S, or S	Organic compounds
Sulfur deposition	None	Outside of cell	None	Inside of cell	None
Nitrogen fixation	Some species	None	None	None	None
Motility	Nonmotile or gliding	Nonmotile	Gliding	Motile with polar or peritrichous flagella	Nonmotile or motile with polar flagella

Low G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.13 Discuss the lack of cell walls in mycoplasmas.

11.14 Identify significant beneficial or detrimental effects of the genera *Clostridium*, *Bacillus*, *Listeria*, *Lactobacillus*, *Streptococcus*, and *Staphylococcus*.

11.15 Describe the difference between low and high G+C content.

Now we turn our attention to various groups of Gram-positive bacteria, and to a different characteristic of microbes that is used in the classification of Gram-positive bacteria—*G + C content*. This is the percentage of all base pairs in a

HIGHLIGHT

FROM CYANOBACTERIA TO BATS TO BRAIN DISEASE?

The origins of many neurological diseases, such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Parkinson's disease, and Alzheimer's disease, remain mysterious. These diseases are characterized by paralysis, tremors, and sometimes dementia. In recent years, one of the more intriguing theories concerning their cause indicates that cyanobacteria might be a causative agent because cyanobacteria synthesize an unusual amino acid called β-methylamino-L-alanine (BMAA), which is a known neurotoxin.

Evidence for the hypothesis that BMAA from cyanobacteria is to blame for brain diseases comes from the Chamorro people, who live on the Pacific island of Guam and have had almost a 100-fold higher incidence of ALS than any other group. Chamorros once prized fruit bats as a dietary delicacy, consuming the bats whole—skin, wings, bones, and brains. Fruit bats feed on the seeds and fruits of cycad trees, and BMAA-secreting cyanobacteria inhabit specialized roots of cycads. Researchers hypothesize that the bats concentrate BMAA when they eat cycad seeds and that the Chamorros suffer from the chemical's neurotoxicity. When the Chamorros stopped eating bats (because the bats had become endangered), the number of ALS cases fell to the level seen in other societies.

Researchers have also discovered BMAA in the brains of Alzheimer's and Parkinson's patients. It is presumed that these patients acquire BMAA from drinking water where cyanobacteria live. Although controversial, the idea that cyanobacteria can trigger brain diseases has spawned research around the world.

genome that are guanine-cytosine base pairs—and is a useful criterion in classifying Gram-positive bacteria. Those with G + C content below 50% are considered "low G + C bacteria"; the remainder are considered "high G + C bacteria." Because taxonomists have discovered that Gram-positive bacteria with low G + C content have similar sequences in their 16S rRNA and that those with high G + C content also have rRNA sequences in common, they have assigned low G + C bacteria and high G + C bacteria to different phyla. We discuss the low G + C bacteria first.

The low G + C Gram-positive bacteria are classified within phylum Firmicutes (fer-mik´ū-tēz), which includes three groups: clostridia, mycoplasmas, and other low G + C Gram-positive bacilli and cocci. Next we consider these three groups in turn.

Clostridia

Clostridia are rod-shaped, obligate anaerobes, many of which form endospores. The group is named for the genus *Clostridium*,[9] which is important both in medicine—in large part because its members produce potent toxins that cause a variety of diseases in humans—and in industry because their endospores enable them to survive harsh conditions, including many types of disinfection and antisepsis. Examples of clostridia include *C. tetani* (te´tan-ē, which causes tetanus), *C. perfringens* (per-frin´jens; gangrene), *C. botulinum* (bo-tū-lī´num; botulism), and *C. difficile* (di-fi´sēl, severe diarrhea). (Chapter 19 examines these pathogens and the diseases they cause in greater detail.) **Beneficial Microbes: Botulism and Botox** describes how a deadly toxin produced by *C. botulinum* has been put to use for cosmetic purposes.

Microbes related to *Clostridium* include *Epulopiscium*, a giant bacterium that can be seen without a microscope (discussed on p. 317); sulfate-reducing microbes, which produce H_2S from elemental sulfur during anaerobic respiration; and *Selenomonas* (sĕ-lē´nō-mō´nas), a genus of vibrio-shaped bacteria that includes members that live as part of the biofilm (plaque) that forms on the teeth of warm-blooded animals. *Selenomonas* is unusual because even though it has a typical Gram-positive RNA sequence, it has a negative Gram reaction—it stains pink. Researchers have linked one species of *Selenomonas* to obesity (**Highlight: Your Teeth Might Make You Fat** on p. 328).

Mycoplasmas

A second group of low G + C bacteria are the **mycoplasmas**[10] (mī´kō-plaz´mas). These facultative or obligate anaerobes lack cell walls, meaning that they stain pink when Gram stained. Indeed, until their nucleic acid sequences proved their similarity to Gram-positive organisms, mycoplasmas were classified as Gram-negative microbes instead of in phylum Firmicutes with other low G + C Gram-positive bacteria.

Mycoplasmas are able to survive without cell walls in part because they colonize osmotically protected habitats, such as animal and human bodies, and because they have tough cytoplasmic membranes, many of which contain lipids called *sterols* that give the membranes strength and rigidity. Because they lack cell walls, they are pleomorphic. They were named "mycoplasmas" because their filamentous forms resemble the filaments of fungi. Mycoplasmas have diameters ranging from 0.2 µm to 0.8 µm, making them the smallest free-living cells, and many mycoplasmas have a terminal structure that is used for attachment to eukaryotic cells and that gives the bacterium a pearlike shape. They require organic growth factors, such as cholesterol, fatty acids, vitamins, amino acids, and nucleotides, which they acquire from their host or which must be added to laboratory media. When growing on solid media, most species form a distinctive "fried egg" appearance because cells in the center of the colony grow into the agar while those around the perimeter only spread across the surface **(Figure 11.15)**.

In animals, mycoplasmas colonize mucous membranes of the respiratory and urinary tracts and are associated with pneumonia and urinary tract infections. (Pathogenic mycoplasmas and the diseases they cause are discussed more fully in Chapter 19.)

Other Low G + C Bacilli and Cocci

A third group of low G + C Gram-positive organisms is composed of bacilli and cocci that are significant in environmental, industrial, and health care settings. Among the genera in this group are *Bacillus*, *Listeria* (lis-tēr´ē-ă), *Lactobacillus* (lak´tō-bă-sil´ŭs), *Streptococcus*, *Enterococcus* (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs), and *Staphylococcus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs). (Chapter 19 discusses the pathogens in these genera in greater detail.)

Bacillus The genus *Bacillus* includes endospore-forming aerobes and facultative anaerobes that typically move by means of peritrichous flagella. The genus name *Bacillus* should not be confused with the general term bacillus. The latter refers to any rod-shaped cell of any genus. Numerous species of *Bacillus* are common in soil.

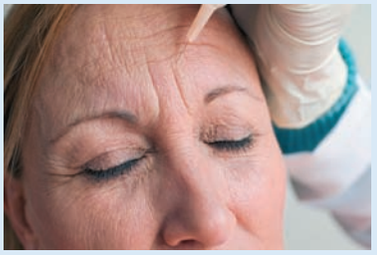
▲ **Figure 11.15 The distinctive "fried egg" appearance of *Mycoplasma* colonies.** This visual feature is unique to this group of bacteria when growing on an agar surface.

[9]From Greek *kloster*, meaning "spindle."

[10]From Greek *mycos*, meaning "fungus," and *plassein*, meaning "to mold."

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

BOTULISM AND BOTOX

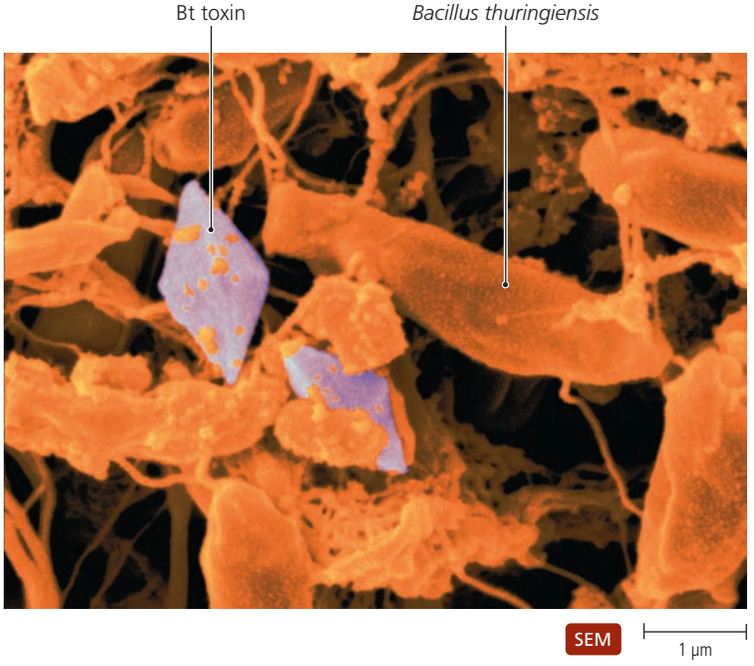


Clostridium botulinum produces botulinum toxins, some of the deadlier toxins known. When absorbed in the body, botulism toxins interfere with the release of the neurotransmitter that signals muscles to contract. As a result, muscle cells cannot contract, and a progressive paralysis spreads throughout the body. Death occurs if paralysis of respiratory muscles results in respiratory failure. This illness is called botulism (discussed in more detail in Chapter 19).

Purified type A botulinum toxin is marketed as Botox, extremely small doses of which are injected into facial muscles that cause skin wrinkles. The toxin paralyzes the muscles, smoothing the skin. Such treatments may last six months and must be repeated in order to maintain the desired effects.

Bacillus thuringiensis (thur-in-jē-en´sis) is beneficial to farmers and gardeners. During sporulation, this bacterium produces a crystalline protein that is toxic to caterpillars that ingest it **(Figure 11.16)**. Gardeners spray *Bt toxin*, as preparations of the bacterium and toxin are known, on plants to protect them from caterpillars. Scientists have achieved the same effect, without the need of spraying, by introducing the gene for Bt toxin into plants' chromosomes. Other beneficial species of *Bacillus* include *B. polymyxa* (po-lē-miks´ă) and *B. licheniformis* (lī-ken-i-for´mis), which synthesize the antibiotics polymyxin and bacitracin, respectively. (Chapter 10 discusses the production and effects of antibiotics in more detail.)

Bacillus anthracis (an-thrā´sis), which causes anthrax, gained notoriety in 2001 as an agent of bioterrorism. Its endospores either are inhaled or enter the body through breaks in the skin. When they germinate, the vegetative cells produce toxins that kill surrounding tissues (see pp. 550–552, Chapter 19). Untreated *cutaneous anthrax* is fatal in 20% of patients; untreated inhalational *anthrax* is generally 100% fatal without prompt aggressive treatment. Refrigeration prevents the excessive growth of this and other contaminants (see Chapter 9).



▲ **Figure 11.16 Crystals of Bt toxin, produced by the endospore-forming *Bacillus thuringiensis*.** The crystalline protein kills caterpillars that ingest it.

Listeria Another pathogenic low G + C Gram-positive rod is *Listeria monocytogenes* (mo-nō-sī-tah´je-nēz), which can contaminate milk and meat products. This microbe, which does not produce endospores, is notable because it continues to reproduce under refrigeration, and it can survive inside phagocytic white blood cells. *Listeria* rarely causes disease in adults, but it can kill a fetus in an infected woman when it crosses the placental barrier. It also causes meningitis[11] and bacteremia[12] when it infects immunocompromised patients, such as the aged and patients with AIDS, cancer, or diabetes.

Lactobacillus Organisms in the genus *Lactobacillus* are non-spore-forming rods normally found growing in the human mouth, stomach, intestinal tract, and vagina. These organisms rarely cause disease; instead, they protect the body by inhibiting the growth of pathogens—a situation called *microbial antagonism*. Lactobacilli are used in industry in the production of yogurt, buttermilk, pickles, and sauerkraut. (The **Beneficial Microbes: Probiotics** box on p. 298 in Chapter 10 discusses the growing role of *Lactobacillus* in promoting human health.)

Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus The genera *Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus* are diverse groups of Gram-positive cocci associated in pairs and chains (see Figure 11.7a and b). They cause numerous human diseases, including pharyngitis, scarlet fever, impetigo, fetal meningitis, wound infections, pneumonia, and diseases of the inner ear, skin, blood, and kidneys. In recent years, health care providers have become concerned over strains of multi-drug-resistant streptococci. Of particular

[11] Inflammation of the membranes covering the brain and spinal cord; from Greek *meninx*, meaning "membrane."
[12] The presence of bacteria, particularly those that produce disease symptoms, in the blood.

HIGHLIGHT

YOUR TEETH MIGHT MAKE YOU FAT

The Forsyth Institute is a nonprofit organization associated with Harvard Medical School in Boston. Scientists at the institute were instrumental in showing that dental cavities in children are caused by bacteria. This revolutionized oral health care. Now, their researchers may play a role in combating obesity.

No one questions that what you put between your teeth may cause obesity, but scientists at the institute have discovered an intriguing fact: What's on your teeth may be to blame as well. People with an oral bacterium related to the low G + C, Gram-positive clostridia are much more likely to be obese.

In fact, the presence of the bacterium *Selenomonas noxia* is an indicator of obesity 98.4% of the time. Lean people may have the bacterium as a rare member of their oral microbiota, but they have many fewer cells of the species than the obese have. The researchers do not know if the bacterium is a trigger of some pathology that leads to obesity or if the bacterium grows on the teeth as a result of obesity or a diet leading to obesity. Nevertheless, the presence of *S. noxia* in a child's mouth may serve as a biological warning sign that a child is at risk of developing an overweight condition, allowing parents and health providers to intervene earlier.

concern are so-called flesh-eating streptococci, which produce toxins that destroy muscle and fat tissue.

Staphylococcus Among the common inhabitants of humans is *Staphylococcus aureus*[13] (o´rē-ŭs), which is typically found growing harmlessly in clusters in the nasal passages. A variety of toxins and enzymes allow some strains of *S. aureus* to invade the body and cause such diseases as bacteremia, pneumonia, wound infections, food poisoning, toxic shock syndrome, and diseases of the joints, bones, heart, and blood.

The characteristics of the low G + C Gram-positive bacteria are summarized in the first part of Table 11.2. These bacteria, which are classified into three classes within phylum Firmicutes, include the anaerobic endospore-forming rod *Clostridium,* the pleomorphic *Mycoplasma,* the aerobic and facultative aerobic endospore-forming rod *Bacillus,* the non-endospore-forming rods *Listeria* and *Lactobacillus,* and the cocci *Streptococcus, Enterococcus,* and *Staphylococcus.*

Next we consider Gram-positive bacteria that have high G + C ratios.

High G + C Gram-Positive Bacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.16 Explain the slow growth of *Mycobacterium.*

11.17 Identify significant beneficial or detrimental properties of the genera *Corynebacterium, Mycobacterium, Actinomyces, Nocardia,* and *Streptomyces.*

Taxonomists classify Gram-positive bacteria with a G + C percentage greater than 50% in the phylum Actinobacteria, which includes species with rod-shaped cells (many of which are significant human pathogens) and filamentous bacteria, which resemble fungi in their growth habit and in the production of reproductive spores. Here we examine briefly some prominent high G + C Gram-positive bacteria. (The numerous pathogens in this group are discussed more fully in Chapter 19.)

Corynebacterium

Members of the genus *Corynebacterium* are pleomorphic—though generally rod shaped—aerobes and facultative anaerobes. They reproduce by snapping division, which often causes the cells to form V-shapes and palisades (see Figures 11.4 and 11.8d). Corynebacteria are also characterized by their stores of phosphate within inclusions called **metachromatic granules,** which stain differently from the rest of the cytoplasm when the cells are stained with methylene blue or toluidine blue. The best-known species is *C. diphtheriae,* which causes diphtheria.

Mycobacterium

The genus *Mycobacterium* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-um) is composed of aerobic species that are slightly curved to straight rods that sometimes form filaments. Mycobacteria grow very slowly, often requiring a month or more to form a visible colony on an agar surface. Their slow growth is partly due to the time and energy required to enrich their cell walls with high concentrations of long carbon-chain waxes called **mycolic acids,** which make the cells resistant to desiccation and to staining with water-based dyes. Microbiologists developed the *acid-fast stain* for mycobacteria because they are difficult to stain by standard staining techniques such as the Gram stain (see Chapter 4). Though some mycobacteria

[13]From Latin *aurum*, meaning "gold" because it produces yellow pigments.

TABLE 11.2 Characteristics of Selected Gram-Positive Bacteria

Phylum/Class	G + C Percentage	Representative Genera	Special Characteristics	Diseases
Firmicutes				
Clostridia	Low (less than 50%)	*Clostridium*	Obligate anaerobic rods; endospore formers	Tetanus
				Botulism
				Gangrene
		Epulopiscium	Giant rods	Severe diarrhea
		Selenomonas	Part of oral biofilm on human teeth; stain like Gram-negative bacteria (pink)	Dental caries
Mollicutes	Low (less than 50%)	*Mycoplasma*	Lack cell walls; pleomorphic; smallest free-living cells; stain like Gram-negative bacteria (pink)	Pneumonia
				Urinary tract infections
Bacilli	Low (less than 50%)	*Bacillus*	Facultative anaerobic rods; endospore formers	Anthrax
		Listeria	Contaminates dairy products	Listeriosis
		Lactobacillus	Produce yogurt, buttermilk, pickles, sauerkraut	Rare blood infections
		Streptococcus	Cocci in chains	Strep throat, scarlet fever, and others
		Staphylococcus	Cocci in clusters	Bacteremia, food poisoning, and others
Actinobacteria				
Actinobacteria	High (greater than 50%)	*Corynebacterium*	Snapping division; metachromatic granules in cytoplasm	Diphtheria
		Mycobacterium	Waxy cell walls (mycolic acid)	Tuberculosis and leprosy
		Actinomyces	Filaments	Actinomycosis
		Nocardia	Filaments; degrade pollutants	Lesions
		Streptomyces	Produce antibiotics	Rare sinus infections

are free living, the most prominent species are pathogens of animals and humans, including *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (too-ber-kyū-lō´sis) and *Mycobacterium leprae* (lep´rī), which cause tuberculosis and leprosy, respectively. Mycobacteria should not be confused with the low G + C mycoplasmas discussed earlier.

Actinomycetes

Actinomycetes (ak´ti-nō-mī-sētz) are high G + C Gram-positive bacteria that form branching filaments resembling fungi **(Figure 11.17)**. Of course, in contrast to fungi, the filaments of actinomycetes are composed of prokaryotic cells. As we have seen, some actinomycetes also resemble fungi in the production of chains of reproductive spores at the ends of their filaments. These spores should not be confused with endospores, which are resting stages and not reproductive cells. Actinomycetes may cause disease, particularly in immunocompromised patients. Among the important actinomycete genera are *Actinomyces* (which gives this group its name), *Nocardia*, and *Streptomyces*.

▲ **Figure 11.17** **The branching filaments of actinomycetes.** This photograph shows filaments of a colony of *Streptomyces* sp. growing on agar. *How do the filaments of actinomycetes compare to the filaments of fungi?*

Figure 11.17 *Filaments of actinomycetes are thinner than those of fungi, and they are composed of prokaryotic cells.*

Actinomyces Species of *Actinomyces* (ak´ti-nō-mī´sēz) are facultative capneic[14] filaments that are normal inhabitants of the mucous membranes lining the oral cavity and throats of humans. *Actinomyces israelii* (is-rā´el-ē-ē) growing as an opportunistic pathogen in humans destroys tissue to form abscesses and can spread throughout the abdomen, consuming every vital organ.

Nocardia Species of *Nocardia* (nō-kar´dē-ă) are soil- and water-dwelling aerobes that typically form aerial and subterranean filaments that make them resemble fungi. *Nocardia* is notable because it can degrade many pollutants of landfills, lakes, and streams, including waxes, petroleum hydrocarbons, detergents, benzene, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), pesticides, and rubber. Some species of *Nocardia* cause lesions in humans.

Streptomyces Bacteria in the genus *Streptomyces* (strep-tō-mī´-sēz) are important in several realms. Ecologically, they recycle nutrients in the soil by degrading a number of carbohydrates, including cellulose, lignin (the woody part of plants), chitin (outer skeletal material of insects and crustaceans), latex, aromatic chemicals (organic compounds containing a benzene ring), and keratin (the protein that forms hair, nails, and horns). The metabolic by-products of *Streptomyces* give soil its musty smell. Medically, *Streptomyces* species produce most of the important antibiotics, including chloramphenicol, erythromycin, and tetracycline (discussed in Chapter 10).

Table 11.2 on p. 329 includes a summary of the characteristics of the genera of high G + C Gram-positive bacteria (phylum Actinobacteria) discussed in this chapter.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A dichotomous key is a series of questions, each with only two possible answers, that is used to identify items such as genera (see p. 120). Design a key for all the genera of Gram-positive bacteria listed in Table 11.2 on p. 329.

To this point we have discussed archaea and deeply branching, phototrophic, and Gram positive bacteria. Now we turn our attention to the Gram-negative bacteria that are grouped together within the phylum Proteobacteria.

Gram-Negative Proteobacteria

Phylum **Proteobacteria**[15] constitutes the largest and most diverse group of bacteria (see Figure 11.9). Though they have a variety of shapes, reproductive strategies, and nutritional types, they are all Gram negative and share common 16S rRNA nucleotide sequences. The G + C percentage of Gram-negative species is not critical in delineating taxa of most Gram-negative organisms, so we will not consider this characteristic in our discussion of these bacteria.

[14]Meaning that they grow best with a relatively high concentration of carbon dioxide.
[15]Named for the Greek god *Proteus*, who could assume many shapes.

There are five distinct classes of proteobacteria, designated by the first five letters of the Greek alphabet—alpha, beta, gamma, delta, and epsilon. These classes are distinguished by minor differences in their rRNA sequences. Here we will focus our attention on species with novel characteristics as well as species with practical importance.

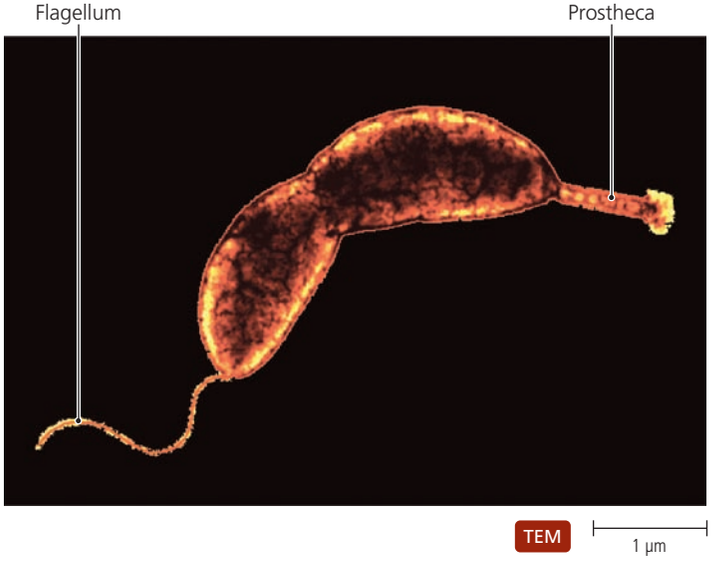
Alphaproteobacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.18 Describe the appearance and function of prosthecae in alphaproteobacteria.
11.19 Describe three genera of nitrogen fixing alphaproteobacteria and their association with crops or biofuels.
11.20 Describe nitrification and name a nitrifying bacterium.
11.21 Name two diseases caused by alphaproteobacteria.

Alphaproteobacteria are typically aerobes capable of growing at very low nutrient levels. Many have unusual methods of metabolism, as we will see shortly. They may be rods, curved rods, spirals, coccobacilli, or pleomorphic. Many species have unusual extensions called *prosthecae* (pros-thē´kē), which are composed of cytoplasm surrounded by the cytoplasmic membrane and cell wall **(Figure 11.18)**. They use prosthecae for attachment and to increase surface area for nutrient absorption. Some prosthecate species produce buds at the ends of the extensions.

Nitrogen Fixers Two genera of nitrogen fixers in the class Alphaproteobacteria—*Azospirillum* (ā-zō-spī´ril-ŭm) and *Rhizobium* (rī-zō´bē-ŭm)—are important in agriculture. They grow in association with the roots of plants, where they make atmospheric nitrogen (N_2) available to the plants as ammonia (NH_3), often called fixed nitrogen. *Azospirillum* associates with the outer surfaces of roots of tropical grasses, such as sugarcane. In addition to supplying nitrogen to the grass, this bacterium also



▲ **Figure 11.18 A prostheca.** This extension of an alphaproteobacterial cell increases surface area for absorbing nutrients and serves as an organ of attachment. This prosthecate bacterium, *Hyphomicrobium facilis*, also produces buds from its prostheca and has a flagellum.

▲ **Figure 11.19** **Nodules on pea plant roots.** *Rhizobium*, a nitrogen-fixing alphaproteobacterium, stimulates the growth of such nodules.

releases chemicals that stimulate the plant to produce numerous root hairs, increasing a root's surface area and thus its uptake of nutrients.

Rhizobium grows within the roots of leguminous plants, such as peas, beans, and clover, stimulating the formation of nodules on their roots **(Figure 11.19)**. *Rhizobium* cells within the nodules make ammonia available to the plant, encouraging growth. Scientists are actively seeking ways to successfully insert the genes of nitrogen fixation into plants such as corn, which requires large amounts of nitrogen.

Rhodopseudomonas palustris (rō-dō´soo-dō-mō´nas pal-us´tris) is another nitrogen-fixing alphaproteobacterium. Scientists are actively studying this bacterium because it can also reduce hydrogen, forming hydrogen gas (H_2), which can be used as a clean-burning fuel. Biofuel producers such as *R. palustris* may help relieve the world's dependence on oil and gas.

Nitrifying Bacteria Organisms need a source of electrons for redox reactions of metabolism (see Chapter 6). Bacteria that derive electrons from the oxidation of nitrogenous compounds are called **nitrifying bacteria**. These microbes are important in the environment and in agriculture, because they convert reduced nitrogenous compounds, such as ammonia (NH_3), into nitrate (NO_3)—a two-step process called **nitrification**. Nitrate moves more easily through soil and is therefore more available to plants.

The first step in nitrification is the oxidation of ammonia into nitrite (NO_2); the second step is further oxidation of nitrite into nitrate. No microbe can perform both reactions. Nitrifying alphaproteobacteria include species of *Nitrobacter* (nī-trō-bak´ter),which perform the second step of nitrification. The first step of nitrification is performed either by archaea or by betaproteobacteria.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Contrast the processes of nitrogen fixation and nitrification.

Purple Nonsulfur Phototrophs With one exception (the betaproteobacterium *Rhodocyclus*), purple nonsulfur phototrophs are classified as alphaproteobacteria. Purple nonsulfur bacteria grow in the upper layer of mud at the bottoms of lakes and ponds. As we discussed earlier, they harvest light as an energy source by using bacteriochlorophylls, and they do not generate oxygen during photosynthesis. Morphologically, they may be rods, curved rods, or spirals; some species are prosthecate. Refer to Table 11.1 on p. 325 to review the characteristics of all phototrophic bacteria.

Pathogenic Alphaproteobacteria Notable pathogens among the alphaproteobacteria include *Rickettsia* (ri-ket´sē-ă) and *Brucella* (broo-sel´lă).

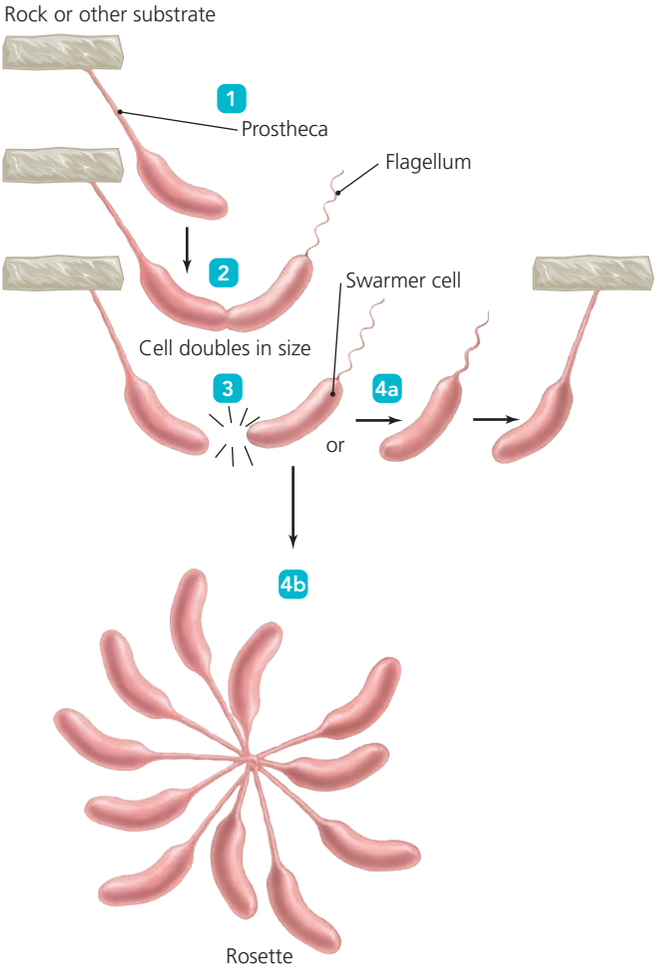
Rickettsia is a genus of small, Gram-negative, aerobic rods that live and reproduce inside mammalian cells and are typically transmitted through the bites of anthropods (fleas, lice, ticks, and mites). They cause a number of human diseases, including typhus and Rocky Mountain spotted fever. Rickettsias cannot use glucose as a nutrient; instead, they oxidize amino acids and Krebs cycle intermediates, such as glutamic acid and succinic acid. For this reason they are obliged to live within other cells where these nutrients are produced.

Brucella is a coccobacillus that causes *brucellosis,* a disease of mammals characterized by spontaneous abortions and sterility in animals. In contrast, infected humans suffer chills, sweating, fatigue, and fever. *Brucella* is notable because it survives phagocytosis by white blood cells—normally an important step in the body's defense against disease.

Other Alphaproteobacteria Other alphaproteobacteria are important in industry and the environment. For example, *Acetobacter* (a-sē´tō-bak-ter) and *Gluconobacter* (gloo-kon´ō-bak-ter) are used to synthesize acetic acid in the production of vinegar. *Caulobacter* (kaw´lō-bak-ter) is a common prosthecate rod-shaped microbe that inhabits nutrient-poor seawater and freshwater; it can also be found in laboratory water baths.

Caulobacter has a unique reproductive strategy **(Figure 11.20)**. A cell that has attached to a substrate with its prostheca 1 grows until it has doubled in size, at which time it produces a flagellum at its apex 2; it then divides by asymmetric binary fission 3. The flagellated daughter cell, which is called a swarmer cell, then swims away. The swarmer cell can either attach to a substrate with a new prostheca that replaces the flagellum 4a or attach to other swarmer cells to form a rosette of cells 4b. The process of reproduction repeats about every 2 hours. **Beneficial Microbes: A Microtube of Superglue** on p. 333 examines an amazing property of *Caulobacter* prosthecae.

Scientists are very interested in the usefulness of another alphaproteobacterium, *Agrobacterium* (ag´rō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm), which infects plants to form tumors called *galls* **(Figure 11.21)**. The bacterium inserts a plasmid (an extra chromosomal DNA molecule) that carries a gene for a plant growth hormone into a plant cell, which then makes extra growth hormone. Growth hormone causes the cells of the plant to proliferate into a gall and to produce nutrients for the bacterium. Scientists have discovered that they can insert almost any DNA sequence into the plasmid, making it an ideal vector for genetic manipulation of plants.



▲ **Figure 11.20** **Growth and reproduction of *Caulobacter*.** 1 A cell attached to a substrate by its prostheca. 2 Growth and production of an apical flagellum. 3 Division by asymmetrical binary fission to produce a flagellated daughter cell called a swarmer cell. 4a Attachment of a swarmer cell to a substrate by a prostheca that replaces the flagellum. 4b Swarmer cells can attach to one another to form rosettes.

Characteristics of selected members of the alphaproteobacteria are listed in Table 11.4 on p. 339.

Betaproteobacteria

Learning Outcome

11.22 Name three pathogenic and three useful betaproteobacteria.

Betaproteobacteria are another diverse group of Gram-negative bacteria that thrive in habitats with low levels of nutrients. They differ from alphaproteobacteria in their rRNA sequences, though metabolically the two groups overlap. One example of such metabolic overlap is seen with *Nitrosomonas* (nī-trō-sō-mō´nas), an important nitrifying soil bacterium that performs the first reaction of nitrification—the conversion of ammonia into nitrite. In this section we will discuss a few other interesting betaproteobacteria.

▲ **Figure 11.21** **A plant gall.** Infecting cells of *Agrobacterium* have inserted into a plant chromosome a plasmid carrying a plant growth hormone gene. The hormone causes the proliferation of undifferentiated plant cells. These gall cells synthesize nutrients for the bacteria.

Pathogenic Betaproteobacteria Species of *Neisseria* (nī-se´rē-ă) are Gram-negative diplococci that inhabit the mucous membranes of mammals and cause such diseases as gonorrhea, meningitis, pelvic inflammatory disease, and inflammation of the cervix, pharynx, and external lining of the eye.

Other pathogenic betaproteobacteria include *Bordetella* (bōr-dĕ-tel´ă), which is the cause of pertussis (whooping cough) (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: Pertussis** on p. 335), and *Burkholderia* (burk-hol-der´ē-ă), which recycles numerous organic compounds in nature. *Burkholderia* commonly colonizes moist environmental surfaces (including laboratory and medical equipment) and the respiratory passages of patients with cystic fibrosis. (Chapter 21 discusses these pathogens in more detail.)

Other Betaproteobacteria Members of the genus *Thiobacillus* (thī-ō-bă-sil´ŭs) are colorless sulfur bacteria that are important in recycling sulfur in the environment by oxidizing hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) or elemental sulfur (S^0) to sulfate (SO_4^{2-}). Miners use *Thiobacillus* to leach metals from low-grade ore, though the bacterium does cause extensive pollution when it releases metals and acid from mine wastes. (Chapter 26 discusses the sulfur cycle.)

Sewage treatment supervisors are interested in *Zoogloea* (zō´ō-glē-ă) and *Sphaerotilus* (sfēr-ō´til-us), two genera that form *flocs*—slimy, tangled masses of bacteria and organic matter in sewage. *Zoogloea* forms compact flocs that settle to the bottom of treatment tanks and assist in the purification process. *Sphaerotilus*, in contrast, forms loose flocs that do not settle

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

A MICROTUBE OF SUPERGLUE

Caulobacter crescentus.

A swarmer cell of the Gram-negative alphaproteobacterium *Caulobacter crescentus* attaches itself to an environmental substrate by secreting an organic adhesive from its prostheca as if it were a tube of glue. This polysaccharide-based bonding agent is the strongest known glue of biological origin, beating out such contenders as barnacle glue, mussel glue, and the adhesion of gecko lizard bristles.

One way scientists gauge adhesive strength is to measure the force required to break apart two glued objects. Commercial superglues typically lose their grip when confronted with a shear force of 18 to 28 newtons (N) per square millimeter.[a] Dental cements bond with strengths up to 30 N/mm^2, but *Caulobacter* glue is more than twice as adhesive. It maintains its grip up to 68 N/mm^2! That is equivalent to being able to hang an adult female elephant on a wall with a spot of glue the size of an American quarter. And remember, this bacterium lives in water, so its glue works even when submerged.

Scientists are researching the biophysical and chemical mechanisms that give this biological glue such incredible gripping power. One critical component of the glue is *N*-acetylglucosamine, one of the sugar subunits of peptidoglycan found in bacterial cell walls. Scientists are struggling to characterize the other molecules that make up the glue. The problem? They cannot pry the glue free to analyze it.

Some potential applications of such a bacterial superglue include use as a biodegradable suture in surgery, as a more durable dental adhesive, or to stick anti-biofilm disinfectants onto surfaces such as medical devices and ships' hulls.

[a]1 newton is the amount of force needed to accelerate a 1-kg mass 1 meter per second per second.

and thus impede the proper flow of waste through a treatment plant.

The characteristics of the genera of betaproteobacteria discussed in this section are summarized in Table 11.4 on p. 339.

Gammaproteobacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.23 Describe the gammaproteobacteria.

11.24 Describe the metabolism of the largest group of gammaproteobacteria.

11.25 Contrast gammaproteobacterial nitrogen fixers with alphaproteobacterial nitrogen fixers.

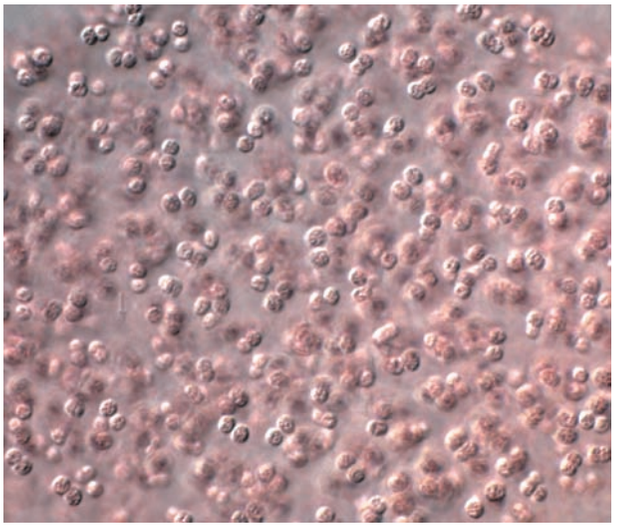
The **gammaproteobacteria** make up the largest and most diverse class of proteobacteria; almost every shape, arrangement of cells, metabolic type, and reproductive strategy is represented in this group. Ribosomal studies indicate that gammaproteobacteria can be divided into several subgroups:

- Purple sulfur bacteria
- Intracellular pathogens
- Methane oxidizers
- Facultative anaerobes that utilize Embden-Meyerhof glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway
- Pseudomonads, which are aerobes that catabolize carbohydrates by the Entner-Doudoroff and pentose phosphate pathways

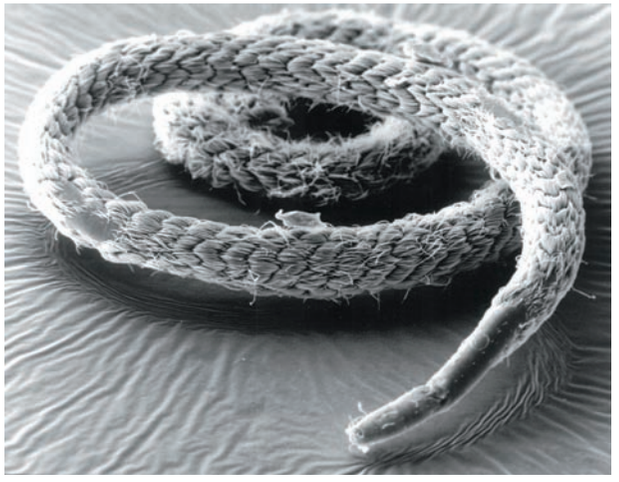
Here we will examine some representatives of these groups.

Purple Sulfur Bacteria Whereas the purple *non*sulfur bacteria are distributed among the alpha- and betaproteobacteria, **purple sulfur bacteria** are all gammaproteobacteria **(Figure 11.22a)**. Purple sulfur bacteria are obligate anaerobes that oxidize hydrogen sulfide to sulfur, which they deposit as internal granules. They are found in sulfur-rich zones in lakes, bogs, and oceans. Some species form intimate relationships with marine worms, covering the body of a worm like strands of a rope **(Figure 11.22b)**.

Intracellular Pathogens Organisms in the genera *Legionella* (lē-jŭ-nel´lă) and *Coxiella* (kok-sē-el´ă) are pathogens of humans that avoid digestion by white blood cells, which are normally part of a body's defense; in fact, they thrive inside these defensive cells. *Legionella* derives energy from the metabolism of amino acids, which are more prevalent inside cells than outside. *Coxiella* grows best at low pH, such as is found in the phagolysomes of white blood cells. The bacteria in these genera cause Legionnaires' disease and Q fever, respectively.



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 11.22** **Purple sulfur bacteria.** **(a)** These bacteria deposit sulfur granules internally. **(b)** Numerous bacteria on the surface of a nematode (roundworm) give the appearance of a rope.

Methane Oxidizers Gram-negative bacteria that utilize methane as a carbon source and as an energy source are called **methane oxidizers**. Like archaeal methanogens, bacterial methane oxidizers inhabit anaerobic environments worldwide, growing just above the anaerobic layers that contain methanogens, which generate methane. Methane is one of the so-called greenhouse gases that retains heat in the atmosphere, but methane oxidizers digest most of the methane in their local environment before it can adversely affect the world's climate.

Glycolytic Facultative Anaerobes The largest group of gammaproteobacteria is composed of Gram-negative, facultatively anaerobic rods that catabolize carbohydrates by glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway. This group, which is divided into three families (Table 11.3), contains numerous human pathogens. Members of the family Enterobacteriaceae, including *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē), are frequently used for laboratory studies of metabolism, genetics, and recombinant DNA technology. (Chapter 20 examines pathogenic gammaproteobacteria in detail.)

Pseudomonads Bacteria called **pseudomonads** are Gram-negative, aerobic, flagellated, straight to slightly curved rods that catabolize carbohydrates by the Entner-Doudoroff and pentose phosphate pathways. These organisms are noted for their ability to break down numerous organic compounds. Many of them are important pathogens of humans and animals and are involved in the spoilage of refrigerated milk, eggs, and meat because they can grow and catabolize proteins and lipids at 4°C. The pseudomonad group is named for its most important genus, *Pseudomonas* (soo-dō-mō´nas; Figure 11.23), which causes diseases such as urinary tract infections, external otitis (swimmer's ear), and lung infections in cystic fibrosis patients. Other pseudomonads, such as *Azotobacter* (ā-zō-tō-bak´ter) and *Azomonas* (ā-zō-mō´nas), are soil-dwelling, nonpathogenic nitrogen fixers; however, in contrast to nitrogen-fixing alphaproteobacteria, these gammaproteobacteria do not associate with the roots of plants.

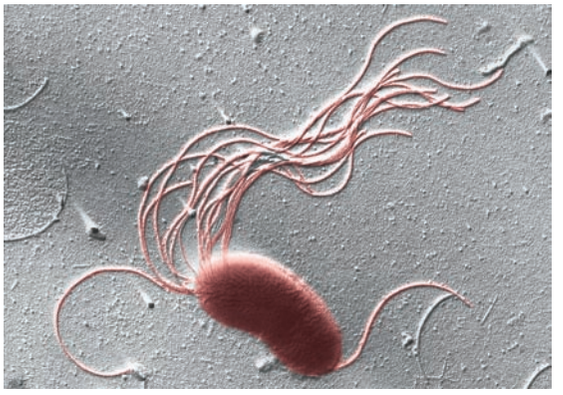
The characteristics of the members of the gammaproteobacteria discussed in this section are summarized in Table 11.4 on p. 339.

Deltaproteobacteria

Learning Outcome

11.26 List several members of the deltaproteobacteria.

The **deltaproteobacteria** are not a large assemblage, but, like other proteobacteria, they include a wide variety of metabolic types. *Desulfovibrio* (dē´sul-fō-vib´rē-ō) is a sulfate-reducing microbe that is important in recycling sulfur in the environment.



▲ **Figure 11.23** ***Pseudomonas*** **is distinguished by its polar flagella.**

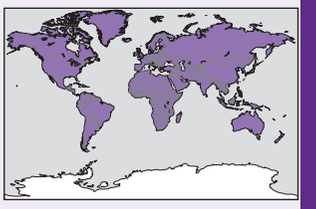
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

PERTUSSIS

Jeeyun was coughing again. She had been coughing off and on for two weeks. If she had thought of it, she might have noticed that the coughing spells began soon after her flight from New York, where she had visited her grandmother. Within a week of her return to California, she had developed coldlike signs—runny nose, sneezing, and a slight fever—but she didn't remember these things. What she did know was that the coughing was worse; her chest hurt from the constant hacking. Then the coughing broke two ribs.

The surprising pain caused Jeeyun to involuntarily urinate. When the coughing stopped, she vomited and fainted in a heap on the floor. This was no ordinary cough!

Jeeyun's roommate called 911. Later, emergency room staff at the hospital bandaged her chest to stabilize the broken ribs and diagnosed the cough as pertussis.



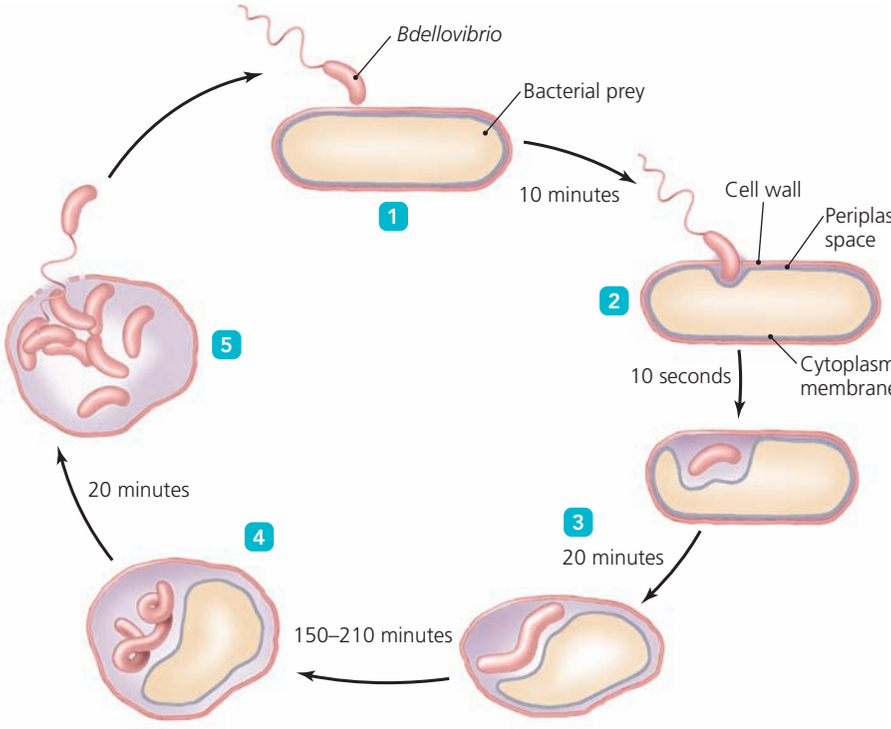
Pertussis, commonly known as whooping cough, is usually considered a childhood disease, but it can strike adults. Older patients seldom develop the characteristic "whooping" sound associated with gasping inhalation, but in Jeeyun's case, the severity and length of the coughing led to a speedy diagnosis.

Immunization is the only way to control pertussis, but adults have been lax in vaccinating children and receiving boosters for themselves. As a result, whooping cough is reemerging as a major problem in the industrialized world. Infected people spread *Bordetella* in respiratory droplets to their neighbors, as happened to Jeeyun in an airplane's cabin on a long flight. (For more about pertussis, see pp. 592–594.)

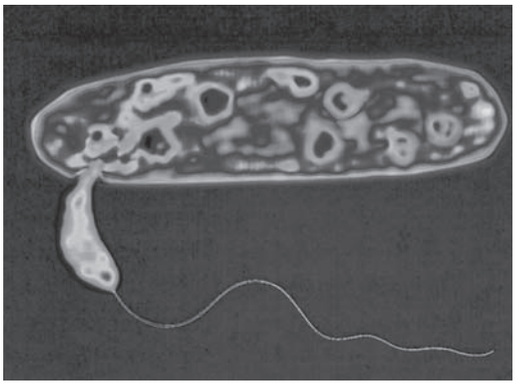
TABLE 11.3 Representative Glycolytic Facultative Anaerobes of the Class Gammaproteobacteria

Family	Special Characteristics	Representative Genera	Typical Human Diseases
Enterobacteriaceae	Straight rods; oxidase negative; peritrichous flagella or nonmotile	*Escherichia*	Gastroenteritis
		Enterobacter	(Rarely pathogenic)
		Serratia	(Rarely pathogenic)
		Salmonella	Enteritis
		Proteus	Urinary tract infection
		Shigella	Shigellosis
		Yersinia	Plague
		Klebsiella	Pneumonia
Vibrionaceae	Vibrios; oxidase positive; polar flagella	*Vibrio*	Cholera
Pasteurellaceae	Cocci or straight rods; oxidase positive; nonmotile	*Haemophilus*	Meningitis in children

It is also an important member of bacterial communities living in the sediments of polluted streams and sewage treatment lagoons, where its presence is often apparent by the odor of hydrogen sulfide that it releases during anaerobic respiration. Hydrogen sulfide reacts with iron to form iron sulfide, so sulfate-reducing bacteria, such as *Desulfovibrio*, play a primary role in the corrosion of iron pipes in heating systems, sewer lines, and other structures.



(a)



(b)

▲ Figure 11.24 ***Bdellovibrio*, a Gram-negative pathogen of other Gram-negative bacteria.** **(a)** Life cycle, including the elapsed times between events. **(b)** *Bdellovibrio* invading the periplasmic space of its host.

Bdellovibrio (del-lō-vib´rē-ō) is another deltaproteobacterium. It attacks and destroys other Gram-negative bacteria in a complex and unusual way **(Figure 11.24a)**:

1. A free *Bdellovibrio* swims rapidly through the medium until it attaches via fimbriae to a Gram-negative bacterium.
2. It rapidly drills through the cell wall of its prey by secreting hydrolytic enzymes and rotating in excess of 100 revolutions per second (**Figure 11.24b**).
3. Once inside, *Bdellovibrio* lives in the periplasmic space—the space between the cytoplasmic membrane and the outer membrane of the cell wall. It kills its host by disrupting the host's cytoplasmic membrane and inhibiting DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis.
4. The invading bacterium uses the nutrients released from its dying prey and grows into a long filament.
5. Eventually, the filament divides into as many as nine smaller cells at once, each of which, when released from the dead cell, produces a flagellum and swims off to repeat the process. Multiple fissions to produce many offspring is a rare form of reproduction.

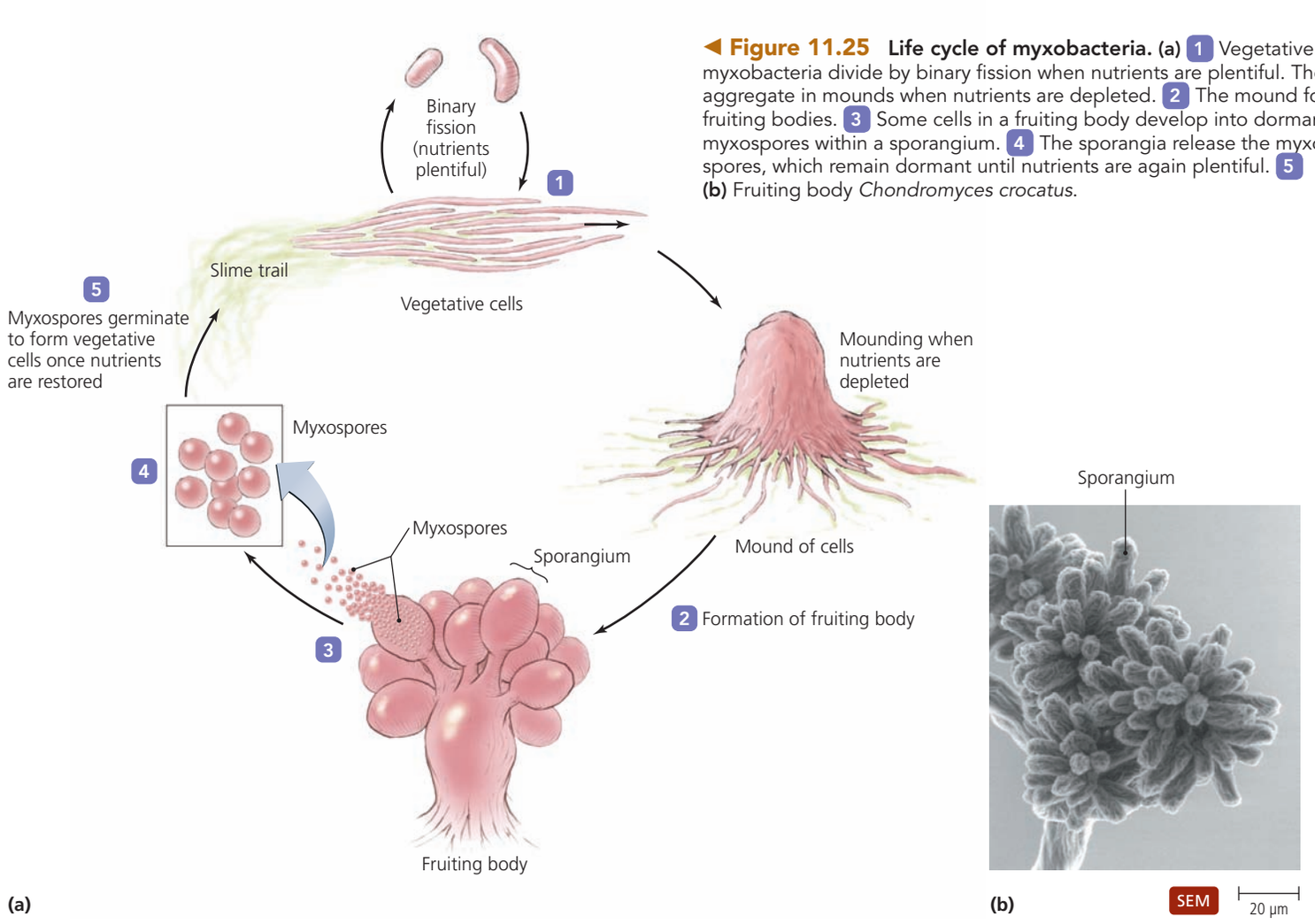
Myxobacteria are Gram-negative, aerobic, soil-dwelling bacteria with a unique life cycle for prokaryotes in that individuals cooperate to produce differentiated reproductive structures. The life cycle of myxobacteria can be summarized as follows **(Figure 11.25a)**:

1. Vegetative myxobacteria glide on slime trails through their environment, digesting yeasts and other bacteria or scavenging nutrients released from dead cells. When nutrients and cells are plentiful, the myxobacteria divide by binary fission; when nutrients are depleted, however, they aggregate by gliding into a mound of cells.
2. Myxobacteria within the mound differentiate to form a macroscopic *fruiting body* ranging in height from 50 µm to 700 µm.
3. Some cells within the fruiting body develop into dormant *myxospores* that are enclosed within walled structures called *sporangia* (singular: *sporangium*; **Figure 11.25b**).
4. The sporangia release the myxospores, which can resist desiccation and nutrient deprivation for a decade or more.
5. When nutrients are again plentiful, the myxospores germinate and become vegetative cells.

Myxobacteria live worldwide in soils that have decaying plant material or animal dung. Though certain species live in the arctic and others in the tropics, most myxobacteria live in temperate regions.

CRITICAL THINKING

What do the names *Desulfovibrio* and *Bdellovibrio* tell you about the shape of these deltaproteobacteria?



◀ Figure 11.25 Life cycle of myxobacteria. **(a)** 1 Vegetative myxobacteria divide by binary fission when nutrients are plentiful. They aggregate in mounds when nutrients are depleted. 2 The mound forms fruiting bodies. 3 Some cells in a fruiting body develop into dormant myxospores within a sporangium. 4 The sporangia release the myxospores, which remain dormant until nutrients are again plentiful. 5 **(b)** Fruiting body *Chondromyces crocatus*.

Epsilonproteobacteria

The taxon **Epsilonproteobacteria** includes Gram-negative rods, vibrios, or spirals. Important genera are *Campylobacter* (kam´pi-lō-bak´ter), which causes blood poisoning and inflammation of the intestinal tract, and *Helicobacter* (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter), which causes ulcers. (Chapter 21 examines these pathogens more fully.)

The characteristics of the delta- and epsilonproteobacteria are summarized in Table 11.4 on p. 339.

CRITICAL THINKING

Design a dichotomous key for the proteobacteria discussed in this chapter.

Other Gram-Negative Bacteria

Learning Outcomes

11.27 Describe the unique features of chlamydias and spirochetes.

11.28 Describe the ecological importance of bacteroids.

In the final section of this chapter we consider an assortment of Gram-negative bacteria that are classified in the second edition of *Bergey's Manual* into nine phyla that are grouped together for convenience rather than because of genetic relatedness. Species in six of the nine phyla are of relatively minor importance. Here we discuss representatives from the three phyla that are either of particular ecological concern or significantly affect human health: the chlamydias (phylum Chlamydiae), the spirochetes (phylum Spirochaetes), and the bacteroids (phylum Bacteroidetes) (see Figure 11.9).

Chlamydias

Microorganisms called **chlamydias** (kla-mid´ē-ăz) are small, Gram-negative cocci that grow and reproduce only within the cells of mammals, birds, and a few invertebrates. The smallest chlamydias—0.2 µm in diameter—are smaller than the largest viruses; however, in contrast to viruses, chlamydias have both DNA and RNA, cytoplasmic membranes, functioning ribosomes, reproduction by binary fission, and metabolic pathways. Like other Gram-negative prokaryotes, chlamydias have two membranes, but in contrast they lack peptidoglycan.

Because chlamydias and rickettsias share an obvious characteristic—both have a requirement for intracellular life—these two types of organisms were grouped together in a single taxon in the first edition of *Bergey's Manual.* Now, however, the rickettsias are classified with the alphaproteobacteria, and the chlamydias are in their own phylum. Chlamydias cause neonatal blindness, pneumonia, and a sexually transmitted disease called *lymphogranuloma venereum;* in fact, chlamydias are the most common sexually transmitted bacteria in the United States.

Chlamydias have a unique method of reproduction. After invading a host cell, a chlamydial cell forms an **initial body** (also called a *reticulate body*). The initial body grows and undergoes repeated binary fissions until the host cell is filled with initial bodies. These then change into **elementary bodies,** which contain electron-dense material and have rigid outer boundaries formed when they cross-link their two membranes with disulfide bonds. Each elementary body, which is relatively resistant to drying, is an infective stage. When the host cell dies, the elementary bodies are released to drift until they contact and attach to other host cells, triggering their own endocytosis by the new host cells. Once inside a host cell, elementary bodies transform back into initial bodies, and the cycle repeats. (The chlamydial life cycle is illustrated in Figure 21.6.)

Spirochetes

Spirochetes are unique helical bacteria that are motile by means of axial filaments—flagella-like structures that lie within the periplasmic space (see Figure 3.8b). When the axial filaments rotate, the entire cell corkscrews through the medium.

Spirochetes have a variety of types of metabolism and live in diverse habitats. They are frequently isolated from the human mouth, marine environments, moist soil, and the surfaces of protozoa that live in termites' guts. In the latter case, they may coat the protozoan so thickly that they look and act like cilia. The spirochetes *Treponema* (trep-ō-ne´mă) and *Borrelia* (bō-rē´lē-ā) cause syphilis and Lyme disease, respectively, in humans.

Bacteroids

Bacteroids are yet another diverse group of Gram-negative microbes that are grouped together on the basis of similarities in their rRNA nucleotide sequences. The group is named for *Bacteroides* (bak-ter-oy´dēz), a genus of obligately anaerobic rods that normally inhabit the digestive tracts of humans and animals. Bacteroids assist in digestion by catabolizing substances such as cellulose and other complex carbohydrates that are indigestible by mammals. About 30% of the bacteria isolated from human feces are *Bacteroides.* Some species of *Bacteroides* cause abdominal, pelvic, blood, and other infections. They are the most common anaerobic human pathogen, causing diarrhea, fever, foul-smelling lesions, gas, and pain.

Bacteroids in the genus *Cytophaga* (sī-tof´ă-gă) are aquatic, gliding, rod-shaped aerobes with pointed ends. These bacteria degrade complex polysaccharides, such as agar, pectin, chitin, and even cellulose, so they cause damage to wooden boats and piers; they also play an important role in the degradation of raw sewage. Their ability to glide allows these bacteria to position themselves at sites with optimum nutrients, pH, temperature, and oxygen levels. Organisms in *Cytophaga* differ from other gliding bacteria, such as cyanobacteria and myxobacteria, in that they are nonphotosynthetic and do not form fruiting bodies.

The characteristics of these groups of Gram-negative bacteria are listed in Table 11.4.

CRITICAL THINKING

Design a dichotomous key for the genera of Gram-negative bacteria listed in Table 11.4.

TABLE 11.4 Characteristics of Selected Gram-Negative Bacteria

Phylum/Class	Representative Members	Special Characteristics	Diseases
Proteobacteria			
Alphaproteobacteria	*Azospirillum*	Nitrogen fixer	
	Rhizobium	Nitrogen fixer	
	Nitrobacter	Nitrifying bacterium	
	Purple nonsulfur bacteria	Anoxygenic phototrophs	
	Rickettsia	Intracellular pathogen	Typhus and Rocky Mountain spotted fever
	Brucella	Coccobacillus	Brucellosis
	Acetobacter, Gluconobacter	Synthesize acetic acid	
	Caulobacter	Prosthecate bacterium	
	Agrobacterium	Causes galls in plants; vector for gene transfer in plants	
Betaproteobacteria	*Nitrosomonas*	Nitrifying bacterium	
	Neisseria	Diplococcus	Gonorrhea and meningitis
	Bordetella		Pertussis
	Burkholderia		Lung infection of cystic fibrosis patients
	Thiobacillus	Colorless sulfur bacterium	
	Zoogloea	Used in sewage treatment	
	Sphaerotilus	Blocks sewage treatment pipes	
Gammaproteobacteria	Purple sulfur bacteria		
	Legionella	Intracellular pathogen	Legionnaires' disease
	Coxiella	Intracellular pathogen	Q fever
	Methylococcus	Oxidizes methane	
	Glycolytic facultative anaerobes	Facultative anaerobes that catabolize carbohydrates via glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway	See Table 11.3 on p. 335
	Pseudomonas	Aerobe that catabolizes carbohydrates via Entner-Doudoroff and pentose phosphate pathways	Urinary tract infections, external otitis
	Azotobacter *Azomonas*	Nitrogen fixers not associated with plant roots	
Deltaproteobacteria	*Desulfovibrio*	Sulfate reducer	
	Bdellovibrio	Pathogen of Gram-negative bacteria	
	Myxobacteria	Reproduces by forming differentiated fruiting bodies	
Epsilonproteobacteria	*Campylobacter*	Curved rod	Gastroenteritis
	Helicobacter	Spiral	Gastric ulcers
Chlamydiae			
Chlamydiae	*Chlamydia*	Intracellular pathogen; lacks peptidoglycan	Neonatal blindness and lymphogranuloma venereum
Spirochaetes			
"Spirochaetes"[a]	*Treponema*	Motile by axial filaments	Syphilis
	Borrelia	Motile by axial filaments	Lyme disease
"Bacteroidetes"			
"Bacteroidetes"	*Bacteroides*	Anaerobe that lives in animal colons	Abdominal infections
"Sphingobacteria"	*Cytophaga*	Digests complex polysaccharides	

[a]The names of taxa in quotations are not officially recognized.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

General Characteristics of Prokaryotic Organisms (pp. 316–319)

1. Three basic shapes of prokaryotic cells are spherical **cocci,** rod-shaped **bacilli,** and **spirals.** Spirals may be stiff (**spirilla**) or flexible (**spirochetes**).
2. Other variations in shapes include **vibrios** (slightly curved rods), **coccobacilli** (intermediate to cocci and bacilli), and **pleomorphic** (variable shape and size).
3. Environmentally resistant **endospores** are produced within vegetative cells of the Gram-positive genera *Bacillus* and *Clostridium.* Depending on the species in which they are formed, the endospores may be terminal, subterminal, or centrally located.
4. Prokaryotes reproduce asexually by **binary fission, snapping division** (a type of binary fission), **spore** formation, and **budding.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Bacterial Growth: Overview*
5. Cocci may typically be found in groups, including long chains (**streptococci**), pairs (**diplococci**), foursomes (**tetrads**), cuboidal packets (**sarcinae**), and clusters (**staphylococci**).
6. Bacilli are found singly, in pairs, in chains, or in a **palisade** arrangement.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Arrangements of Prokaryotic Cells*

Modern Prokaryotic Classification (pp. 319–320)

1. Living things are now classified into three domains—Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya—based largely on genetic relatedness.
2. The most authoritative reference in modern prokaryotic systematics is *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology,* second edition, which classifies prokaryotes into two phyla of Archaea and 24 phyla of Bacteria. The organization of this text's survey of prokaryotes largely follows Bergey's classification scheme.

Survey of Archaea (pp. 320–322)

1. The domain Archaea includes **extremophiles,** microbes that require extreme conditions of temperature, pH, and/or salinity to survive.
2. **Thermophiles** and **hyperthermophiles** (in the phyla Crenarchaeota and Euryarchaeota) live at temperatures above 45°C and 80°C, respectively, because their DNA, membranes, and proteins do not function properly at lower temperatures.
3. **Halophiles** (phylum Euryarchaeota) depend on high concentrations of salt to keep their cell walls intact. Halophiles such as *Halobacterium salinarium* synthesize purple proteins called **bacteriorhodopsins** that harvest light energy to synthesize ATP.
4. **Methanogens** (phylum Euryarchaeota) are obligate anaerobes that produce methane gas and are useful in sewage treatment.

Survey of Bacteria (pp. 322–339)

1. **Deeply branching bacteria** have rRNA sequences thought to be similar to those of earliest bacteria. They are autotrophic and live in hot, acidic, and anaerobic environments, often with intense exposure to sun.
2. Phototrophic bacteria trap light energy with photosynthetic lamellae. The five groups of phototrophic bacteria are cyanobacteria, green sulfur bacteria, green nonsulfur bacteria, purple sulfur bacteria, and purple nonsulfur bacteria.
3. Many **cyanobacteria** reduce atmospheric N_2 to NH_3 via a process called **nitrogen fixation.** Cyanobacteria must separate (in either time or space) the metabolic pathways of nitrogen fixation from those of oxygenic photosynthesis because nitrogen fixation is inhibited by the oxygen generated during photosynthesis. Many cyanobacteria fix nitrogen in thick-walled cells called **heterocysts.**
4. Green and purple bacteria use bacteriochlorophylls for anoxygenic photosynthesis. Nonsulfur forms derive electrons from organic compounds; sulfur forms derive electrons from H_2S.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Photosynthesis: Comparing Prokaryotes and Eukaryotes*
5. The phylum Firmicutes contains bacteria with a G + C content (the percentage of all base pairs that are guanine-cytosine base pairs) of less than 50%. Firmicutes includes clostridia, mycoplasmas, and other low G + C cocci and bacilli.
6. Clostridia include the genus *Clostridium* (pathogenic bacteria that cause gangrene, tetanus, botulism, and diarrhea), *Epulopiscium*

(which is large enough to be seen without a microscope), and *Selenomonas* (often found in dental plaque).

7. **Mycoplasmas** are Gram-positive, pleomorphic, facultative anaerobes and obligate anaerobes that lack cell walls and therefore stain pink with Gram stain. They are frequently associated with pneumonia and urinary tract infections.
8. Low G + C Gram-positive bacilli and cocci important to human health and industry include *Bacillus* (which contains species that cause anthrax and food poisoning and includes beneficial Bt-toxin bacteria), *Listeria* (which causes bacteremia and meningitis), *Lactobacillus* (used to produce yogurt and pickles), *Streptococcus* (which causes strep throat and other diseases), *Enterococcus* (which can cause endocarditis and other diseases), and *Staphylococcus* (which causes a number of human diseases).
9. High G + C bacteria (*Corynebacterium, Mycobacterium,* and actinomycetes) are classified in phylum Actinobacteria.
10. Bacteria in *Corynebacterium* store phosphates in **metachromatic granules;** *C. diphtheriae* causes diphtheria.
11. Members of the genus *Mycobacterium,* including species that cause tuberculosis and leprosy, grow slowly and have unique, resistant cell walls containing waxy **mycolic acids.**
12. **Actinomycetes** resemble fungi in that they produce spores and form filaments; this group includes *Actinomyces* (normally found in human mouths), *Nocardia* (useful in degradation of pollutants), and *Streptomyces* (produces important antibiotics).
13. Phylum **Proteobacteria** is a very large group of Gram-negative bacteria divided into five classes—the alpha-, beta-, gamma-, delta-, and epsilonproteobacteria.
14. The **alphaproteobacteria** include a variety of aerobes, many of which have unusual cellular extensions called prosthecae. *Azospirillum* and *Rhizobium* are nitrogen fixers that are important in agriculture.
15. Some members of the alphaproteobacteria associate with plant roots and are **nitrifying bacteria,** which oxidize NH_3 to NO_3 via a process called **nitrification.** Nitrifying alphaproteobacteria are in the genus *Nitrobacter.*
16. Most purple nonsulfur phototrophs are alphaproteobacteria.
17. Pathogenic alphaproteobacteria include *Rickettsia* (typhus and Rocky Mountain spotted fever) and *Brucella* (brucellosis).
18. There are many beneficial alphaproteobacteria, including *Acetobacter* and *Gluconobacter,* both of which are used to synthesize acetic acid. *Caulobacter* is of interest in reproductive studies, and *Agrobacterium* is used in genetic recombination in plants.
19. The **betaproteobacteria** include the nitrifying *Nitrosomonas* and pathogenic species, such as *Neisseria* (gonorrhea), *Bordetella* (whooping cough), and *Burkholderia* (which colonizes the lungs of cystic fibrosis patients).
20. Other betaproteobacteria include *Thiobacillus* (ecologically important), *Zoogloea* (useful in sewage treatment), and *Sphaerotilus* (hampers sewage treatment).
21. The **gammaproteobacteria** constitute the largest class of proteobacteria; they include **purple sulfur bacteria,** intracellular pathogens, facultative anaerobes that utilize glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway, and pseudomonads.
22. Both *Legionella* and *Coxiella* are intracellular, pathogenic gammaproteobacteria.
23. **Methane oxidizers** are anaerobic bacteria that use methane for both carbon and energy.
24. Numerous human pathogens are facultatively anaerobic gammaproteobacteria that catabolize carbohydrates by glycolysis.
25. **Pseudomonads,** including pathogenic *Pseudomonas* and nitrogen-fixing *Azotobacter* and *Azomonas,* utilize the Entner-Doudoroff and pentose phosphate pathways for catabolism of glucose.
26. The **deltaproteobacteria** include *Desulfovibrio* (important in the sulfur cycle and in corrosion of pipes), *Bdellovibrio* (pathogenic to bacteria), and **myxobacteria.** The latter form stalked fruiting bodies containing resistant, dormant myxospores.
27. The **epsilonproteobacteria** include some important human pathogens, including *Campylobacter* and *Helicobacter.*
28. **Chlamydias** are Gram-negative cocci typified by the genus *Chlamydia;* they cause neonatal blindness, pneumonia, and a sexually transmitted disease. Within a host cell, chlamydias form **initial bodies,** which change into smaller **elementary bodies** released when the host cell dies.
29. **Spirochetes** are flexible, helical bacteria that live in diverse environments. *Treponema* (syphilis) and *Borrelia* (Lyme disease) are important spirochetes.
30. **Bacteroids** include *Bacteroides,* an obligate anaerobic rod that inhabits the digestive tract, and *Cytophaga,* an aerobic rod that degrades wood and raw sewage.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Modified True/False

For each of the following statements that is true, write "true" in the blank. For each statement that is false, write the word(s) that should be substituted for the underlined word(s) to make the statement correct.

1. _____ All prokaryotes reproduce <u>sexually</u>.
2. _____ A <u>bacillus</u> is a bacterium with a slightly curved rod shape.
3. _____ If you were to view <u>staphylococci</u>, you should expect to see clusters of cells.
4. _____ <u>Initial</u> bodies are stable resting stages that do not metabolize but will germinate when conditions improve.
5. _____ Archaea are classified into phyla based primarily on <u>tRNA</u> sequences.
6. _____ <u>Halophiles</u> inhabit extremely saline habitats such as the Great Salt Lake.

7. _____ Pigments located in thylakoids in phototrophic bacteria trap light energy for metabolic processes.
8. _____ Most cyanobacteria form heterocysts in which nitrogen fixation occurs.
9. _____ A giant bacterium that is large enough to be seen without a microscope is *Selenomonas*.
10. _____ When environmental nutrients are depleted, myxobacteria aggregate in mounds to form fruiting bodies.

Matching

Match the bacterium on the left with the term with which it is most closely associated.

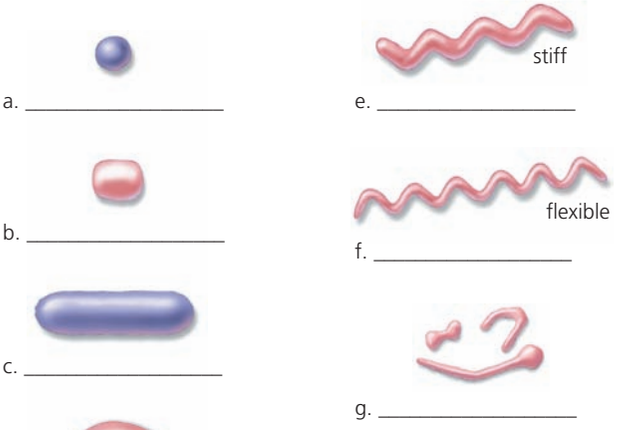
1.	_____ *Bacillus anthracis*	A.	wood damage
2.	_____ *Selenomonas*	B.	dental biofilm (plaque)
3.	_____ *Clostridium perfringens*	C.	gangrene
4.	_____ *Clostridium botulinum*	D.	botox
5.	_____ *Bacillus licheniformis*	E.	anthrax
6.	_____ *Streptococcus*	F.	lymphogranuloma venereum
7.	_____ *Streptomyces*	G.	leprosy
8.	_____ *Corynebacterium*	H.	tetracycline
9.	_____ *Gluconobacter*	I.	vinegar
10.	_____ *Bordetella*	J.	yogurt
11.	_____ *Zoogloea*	K.	impetigo
12.	_____ *Rhizobium*	L.	bacitracin
13.	_____ *Desulfovibrio*	M.	iron pipe corrosion
14.	_____ *Chlamydia*	N.	pertussis
15.	_____ *Cytophaga*	O.	nitrogen fixation
		P.	floc formation
		Q.	diphtheria

Multiple Choice

1. The type of reproduction in prokaryotes that results in a palisade arrangement of cells is called _____.
   a. pleomorphic division
   b. endospore formation
   c. snapping division
   d. binary fission
2. The thick-walled reproductive spores produced in the middle of cyanobacterial filaments are called _____.
   a. akinetes
   b. terminal endospores
   c. metachromatic granules
   d. heterocysts
3. Which of the following terms best describes stiff, spiral-shaped prokaryotic cells?
   a. cocci
   b. bacilli
   c. spirilla
   d. spirochetes
4. Endospores _____.
   a. can remain alive for decades
   b. can remain alive in boiling water
   c. exist in a state of suspended animation
   d. all of the above
5. *Halobacterium salinarium* is distinctive because _____.
   a. it is absolutely dependent on high salt concentrations to maintain its cell wall
   b. it is found in terrestrial volcanic habitats
   c. it photosynthesizes without chlorophyll
   d. it can survive 5 million rad of radiation
6. Photosynthetic bacteria that also fix nitrogen are _____.
   a. mycoplasmas
   b. spirilla
   c. bacteroids
   d. cyanobacteria
7. Which genus is the most common anaerobic human pathogen?
   a. *Bacteroides*
   b. *Spirochetes*
   c. *Chlamydia*
   d. *Methanopyrus*
8. Flexible spiral-shaped prokaryotes are _____.
   a. spirilla
   b. spirochetes
   c. vibrios
   d. rickettsias
9. Bacteria that convert nitrogen gas into ammonia are _____.
   a. nitrifying bacteria
   b. nitrogenous
   c. nitrogen fixers
   d. nitrification bacteria
10. The presence of mycolic acid in the cell wall characterizes _____.
    a. *Corynebacterium*
    b. *Listeria*
    c. *Nocardia*
    d. *Mycobacterium*

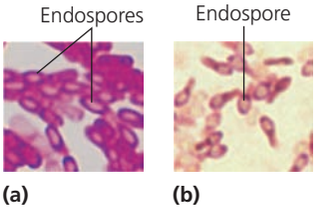
Visualize It!

1. Label the shapes of these prokaryotic cells.



a. _____
b. _____
c. _____
d. _____
e. _____
f. _____
g. _____

2. Describe the location of these endospores within their cells.



(a) (b)

Short Answer

1. Whereas the first edition of *Bergey's Manual* relied on morphological and biochemical characteristics to classify microbes, the new edition focuses on ribosomal RNA sequences. List several other criteria for grouping and classifying bacteria.
2. What are extremophiles? Describe two kinds and give examples.
3. Name and describe three types of bacteria mentioned in this chapter that "glide."
4. Name three groups of low G + C Gram-positive bacteria.
5. Compare and contrast bacterial and archaeal cells.
6. A student was memorizing the arrangements of bacteria and noticed that there are more arrangements for cocci than for bacilli. Why might this be so?
7. How is *Agrobacterium* used in recombinant DNA technology?
8. Name and describe five distinct classes of phylum Proteobacteria.
9. Explain why organisms formerly known as blue-green algae are now called cyanobacteria.
10. Contrast the processes of nitrification and nitrogen fixation.

Critical Thinking

1. A microbiology student described "deeply branching bacteria" as having a branched filamentous growth habit akin to *Streptomyces.* Do you agree with this description? Why or why not?
2. Iron oxide (rust) forms when iron is exposed to oxygen, particularly in the presence of water. Nevertheless, iron pipes typically corrode more quickly when they are buried in moist *anaerobic* soil than when they are buried in soil containing oxygen. Explain why this is the case.
3. Why is it that Gram-positive species don't have axial filaments?
4. Even though *Clostridium* is strictly an anaerobic bacterium, it can be isolated easily from the exposed surface of your skin. Explain how this can be.
5. Louis Pasteur said, "The role of the infinitely small in nature is infinitely large." Explain what he meant by using examples of the roles of microorganisms in health, industry, and the environment.
6. How are bacterial endospores different from the spores of actinomycetes?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes the domain Archaea. For a sample concept map, see page 93.
Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

>45°C
>80°C
17–25% salt
Acidophiles
Animal colons
Disease
Extremophiles
Great Salt Lake
Halophiles
Hydrothermal vents
Hyperthermophiles
Low pH
Methane
Methanogens
Peptidoglycan
Prokaryotes
Sewage treatment
Thermophiles

12 Characterizing and Classifying Eukaryotes

The mushrooms in this photo constitute only the tips of what may be the largest living **organism** on Earth—a fungus known as *Armillaria ostoyae* that lives 3 feet underground in Oregon's Malheur National Forest. Also known as a honey mushroom, it is 3.5 miles long, covers an area equivalent to 1665 football fields, and is estimated to be at least 2400 years old!

Amazingly, this "humongous fungus" began life as a **microscopic** spore. During its life span of over two millennia, it has used rootlike structures called rhizomorphic hyphae to draw water and nutrients from tree roots. Despite its gigantic proportions, its visible portions are ordinary mushrooms.

Fungi are **eukaryotes**—a vast category that also includes protozoa, algae, parasitic helminths, as well as all plants and animals. In this chapter we will take a closer look at the eukaryotic organisms of microbiological importance.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The world's largest organism is a fungus that lives underground. Its above-ground mushrooms are just its sporulating appendages.

Eukaryotic microbes include a fascinating and almost bewilderingly diverse assemblage. Eukaryotic microbes include unicellular and multicellular protozoa,[1] fungi,[2] algae,[3] water molds, and slime molds. Additionally, microbiologists study parasitic helminths[4] because they have microscopic stages, and they study arthropod vectors because they are intimately involved in the transmission of microbial pathogens. Eukaryotes include both human pathogens and organisms that are vital for human life. For example, one group of marine algae called diatoms and a set of protozoa called dinoflagellates (dī´nō-flaj´ĕ-lātz) provide the basis for the oceans' food chains and produce most of the world's oxygen. Eukaryotic fungi produce penicillin, and tiny baker's and brewer's yeasts are essential for making bread and alcoholic beverages.

Among the 20 most frequent microbial causes of death worldwide, six are eukaryotic, including the agents of malaria, African sleeping sickness, and amebic dysentery. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia, toxoplasmosis, and cryptosporidiosis—common afflictions of AIDS patients—are all caused by eukaryotic pathogens.

In previous chapters we discussed characteristics of *cells*—their metabolism, growth, and genetics. In this chapter we discuss eukaryotic *organisms* of interest to microbiologists—protozoa (single-celled "animals"), fungi, algae, water molds, and slime molds—and conclude with a brief discussion of the relationship of parasitic helminths and vectors to microbiology.

We begin by discussing general features of eukaryotic reproduction and classification; the following sections survey some representative members of microbiologically important eukaryotic groups, focusing on beneficial, environmentally significant, and unusual species. (Chapters 22 and 23 discuss fungal and parasitic agents and vectors of human disease in more detail.)

General Characteristics of Eukaryotic Organisms

Our discussion of the general characteristics of eukaryotes begins with a survey of the events in eukaryotic reproduction; then we consider some aspects of the complex matter of classifying the great variety of eukaryotic organisms.

Reproduction of Eukaryotes

Learning Outcomes

12.1 State four reasons why eukaryotic reproduction is more complex than prokaryotic reproduction.

12.2 Describe the phases of mitosis, mentioning chromosomes, chromatids, centromeres, and spindle.

12.3 Contrast meiosis with mitosis, mentioning homologous chromosomes, tetrads, and crossing over.

12.4 Distinguish among nuclear division, cytokinesis, and schizogony.

A unique characteristic of living things is the ability to reproduce themselves. Prokaryotic reproduction typically involves replication of DNA and binary fission of the cytoplasm to produce two identical offspring. Reproduction of eukaryotes is more complicated and varied than reproduction in prokaryotes for a number of reasons:

- Most of the DNA in eukaryotes is packaged with histone proteins as *chromosomes* in the form of *chromatin* (krō´ma-tin) *fibers* located within nuclei. The remaining DNA in eukaryotic cells is found in mitochondria and chloroplasts, organelles that reproduce by binary fission in a manner similar to prokaryotic reproduction. In this chapter we will discuss only the nuclear portion of eukaryotic genomes.
- Eukaryotes have a variety of methods of asexual reproduction, including binary fission, budding, fragmentation, spore formation, and *schizogony* (ski-zog´ō-nē) (discussed later).
- Many eukaryotes reproduce sexually—that is, via a process that involves the formation of sexual cells called *gametes*, and the subsequent fusion of two gametes to form a cell called a *zygote.*
- Additionally, algae, fungi, and some protozoa reproduce both sexually and asexually. (Animals generally reproduce only one way or the other.)

Eukaryotic reproduction involves two types of division: nuclear division and cytoplasmic division (also called cytokinesis). After we discuss the various aspects of these two types of division, we will consider schizogony.

Nuclear Division

Typically, a eukaryotic nucleus has either one or two complete copies of the chromosomal portion of a cell's genome. A nucleus with a single copy of each chromosome is called a **haploid,**[5] or 1*n*, nucleus, and one with two sets of chromosomes is a **diploid,**[6] or 2*n*, nucleus. Generally, each organism has a consistent number of chromosomes. For example, each haploid cell of the brewer's yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*[7] (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz se-ri-vis´ē-ī) has 16 chromosomes.

The cells of most fungi, many algae, and some protozoa are haploid, and the cells of most plants and animals and the remaining fungi, algae, and protozoa are diploid. Typically, gametes are haploid, and a zygote (formed from the union of gametes) is diploid.

A cell divides its nucleus so as to pass a copy of its chromosomal DNA to each of its descendants so that each new generation has the necessary genetic instructions to carry on life. There are two types of nuclear division—*mitosis* (mī-tō´sis) and *meiosis* (mī-ō´sis).

[1] From Greek *protos*, meaning "first," and *zoion*, meaning "animal."
[2] Plural of Latin *fungus*, meaning "mushroom."
[3] Plural of Latin *alga*, meaning "seaweed."
[4] From Greek *helmins*, meaning "worm."

[5] From Greek *haploos*, meaning "single."
[6] From Greek *diploos*, meaning "double."
[7] From Greek *sakcharon*, meaning "sugar," and *mykes*, meaning "fungus," and Latin *cerevisiae*, meaning "beer."

Mitosis Eukaryotic cells have two main stages in their life cycle: a stage called *interphase,*[8] during which the cells grow and eventually replicate their DNA, and a stage during which the cell's nucleus divides. In the type of nuclear division called **mitosis,**[9] which begins after the cell has duplicated its DNA such that there are two exact DNA copies (see Figure 7.6), the cell partitions its replicated DNA equally between two nuclei. Thus mitosis maintains the ploidy of the parent nucleus; that is, a haploid nucleus that undergoes mitosis forms two haploid nuclei, and a diploid nucleus that undergoes mitosis produces two diploid nuclei.

Mitosis has four phases: prophase,[10] metaphase,[11] anaphase,[12] and telophase.[13] The events of mitosis proceed as follows **(Figure 12.1a)**:

1. **Prophase.** The cell condenses its DNA molecules into visible threads called *chromatids* (krō´mă-tidz). Two identical chromatids, sister DNA molecules, are joined together in a region called a *centromere* to form one chromosome. Also during prophase, a set of microtubules is constructed in the cytosol to form a *spindle.* In most cells, the nuclear envelope disintegrates during prophase so that mitosis occurs freely in the cytosol; however, many fungi and some unicellular microbes (e.g., diatoms and dinoflagellates) maintain their nuclear envelopes so that mitosis occurs inside their nuclei.
2. **Metaphase.** The chromosomes line up on a plane in the middle of the cell and attach near their centromeres to microtubules of the spindle.
3. **Anaphase.** Sister chromatids separate and crawl along the microtubules toward opposite poles of the spindle. Each chromatid is now called a chromosome.
4. **Telophase.** The cell restores its chromosomes to their less compact, nonmitotic state, and nuclear envelopes form around the daughter nuclei. A cell may divide during telophase, but mitosis is nuclear division, not cell division.

Though certain specific events distinguish each of the four phases of mitosis, the phases are not discrete steps; that is, mitosis is a continuous process, and there are no clear boundaries between succeeding phases—one phase leads seamlessly to the next. For example, late anaphase and early telophase are indistinguishable.

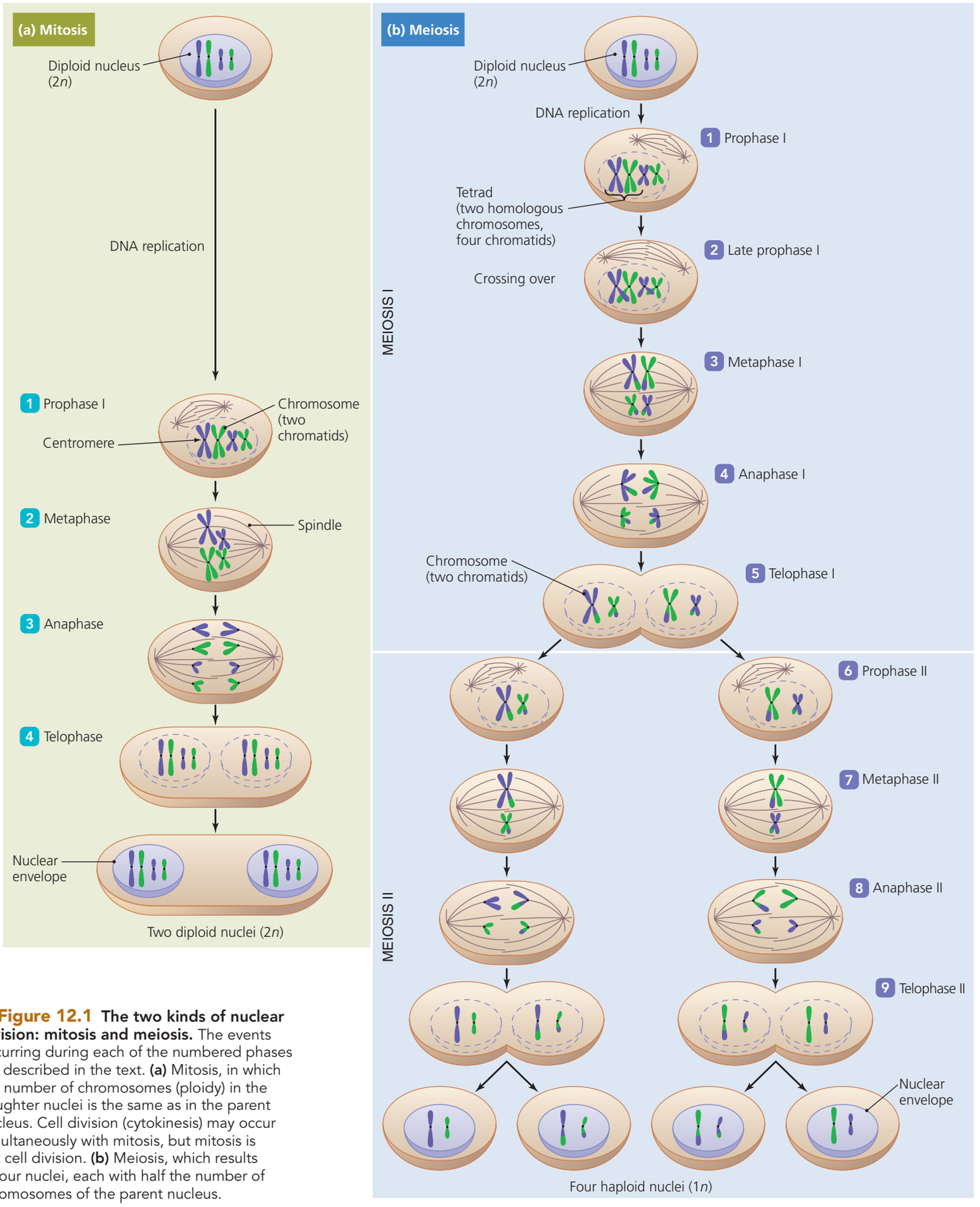
Students sometimes confuse the terms *chromosome* and *chromatid,* in part because early microscopists used the word *chromosome* for two different things. During prophase and metaphase, a chromosome consists of two chromatids (DNA molecules) joined at a centromere. However, during anaphase and telophase, the chromatids separate, and each chromatid is then called a chromosome. In other words, a "chromosome" is a pair of chromatids during the first two phases, while "chromatid" and "chromosome" are synonymous terms during the latter two phases of mitosis.

Meiosis In contrast to mitosis, **meiosis**[14] is nuclear division that involves the partitioning of chromatids into four nuclei such that each nucleus receives only half the original amount of DNA. Thus, diploid nuclei use meiosis to produce haploid daughter nuclei. Meiosis is a necessary condition for sexual reproduction (in which nuclei from two different cells fuse to form a single nucleus) because if cells lacked meiosis, each nuclear fusion to form a zygote would cause the number of chromosomes to double, and their number would soon become unmanageable.

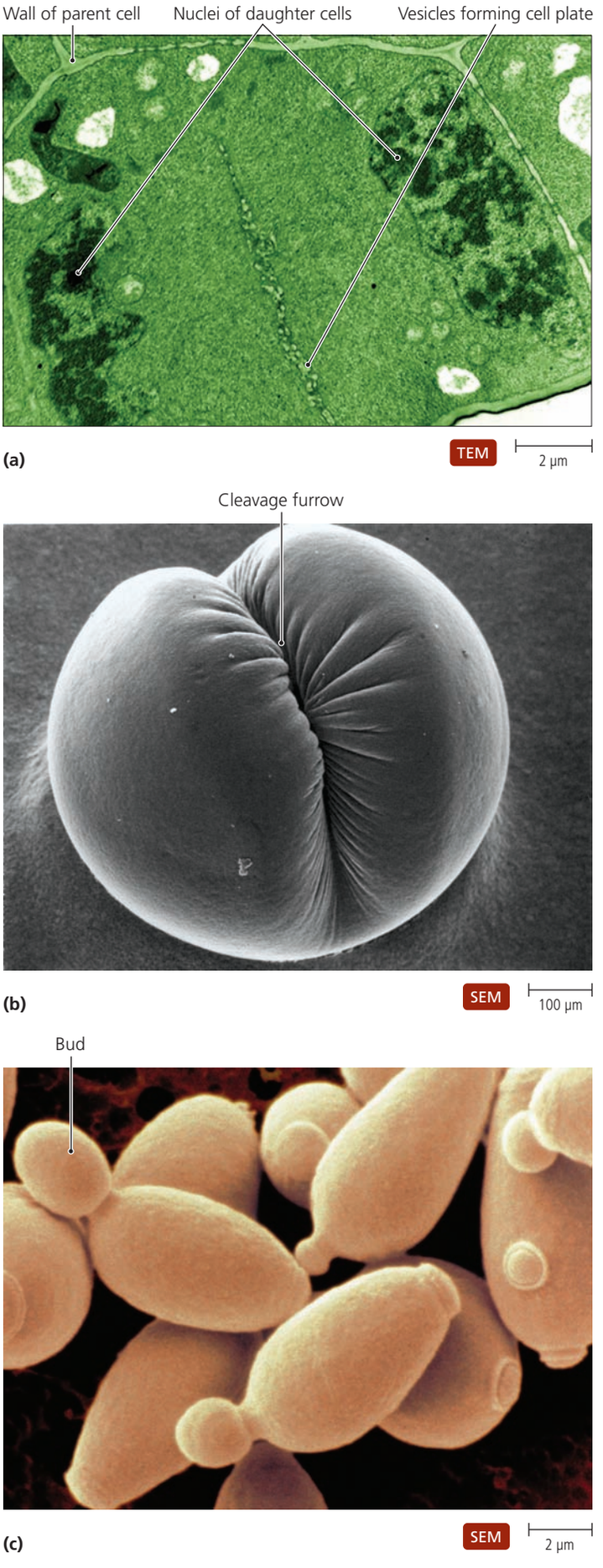
Meiosis occurs in two stages known as *meiosis I* and *meiosis II* **(Figure 12.1b).** As in mitosis, each stage has four phases, named prophase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase. The events in meiosis as they occur in a diploid nucleus proceed as follows:

1. **Early prophase I** (prophase of meiosis I). As with mitosis, DNA replication during interphase has resulted in pairs of identical chromatids, forming chromosomes. But now an additional pairing occurs: *homologous chromosomes*—that is, chromosomes carrying similar or identical genetic sequences—line up side by side. Because these are prophase chromosomes, each of them consists of two identical chromatids; therefore, four DNA molecules are involved in this pairing. An aligned pair of homologous chromosomes is known as a *tetrad.*
2. **Late prophase I.** Once tetrads have formed, the homologous chromosomes exchange sections of DNA in a random fashion via a process called *crossing over.* This results in recombinations of their DNA. It is because of meiotic crossing over that the offspring produced by sexual reproduction have different genetic makeups from their siblings. Prophase I can last for days or longer.
3. **Metaphase I.** Tetrads align on a plane in the center of the cell and attach to spindle microtubules. Metaphase I differs from metaphase of mitosis in that homologous chromosomes remain as tetrads.
4. **Anaphase I.** Chromosomes of the tetrads move apart from one another; however, in contrast to mitotic anaphase, sister chromatids remain attached to one another.
5. **Telophase I.** The first stage of meiosis is completed as the spindle disintegrates. Typically, the cell divides at this phase to form two cells. Nuclear envelopes may form. Each daughter nucleus is haploid, though each haploid chromosome consists of two chromatids.
6. **Prophase II.** Nuclear envelopes disintegrate, and new spindles form.
7. **Metaphase II.** The chromosomes align in the middle of each cell and attach to microtubules of the spindles.
8. **Anaphase II.** Sister chromatids separate as in mitosis.
9. **Telophase II.** Daughter nuclei form. The cells divide, yielding four haploid cells.

[8]Latin, meaning "between phases."
[9]From Greek *mitos,* meaning "thread," after the threadlike appearance of chromosomes during nuclear division.
[10]From Greek *pro,* meaning "before," and *phasis,* meaning "appearance."
[11]From Greek *meta,* meaning "in the middle."
[12]From Greek *ana,* meaning "back."
[13]From Greek *telos,* meaning "end."
[14]From Greek *meioun,* meaning "to make smaller."



▲ **Figure 12.1 The two kinds of nuclear division: mitosis and meiosis.** The events occurring during each of the numbered phases are described in the text. **(a)** Mitosis, in which the number of chromosomes (ploidy) in the daughter nuclei is the same as in the parent nucleus. Cell division (cytokinesis) may occur simultaneously with mitosis, but mitosis is not cell division. **(b)** Meiosis, which results in four nuclei, each with half the number of chromosomes of the parent nucleus.



▶ Figure 12.2 Different types of cytoplasmic division.
(a) Cytokinesis in a plant cell, in which vesicles form a cell plate.
(b) Cytokinesis as it occurs in animals, protozoa, and some fungi.
(c) Budding in yeast cells.

In summary, meiosis produces four haploid nuclei from a single diploid nucleus. Meiosis can be considered back-to-back mitoses without the DNA replication of interphase between them, though the four phases of meiosis I differ from those of mitosis. The phases of meiosis II are equivalent to those in mitosis. Additionally, crossing over during meiosis I produces genetic recombinations, ensuring that the chromosomes resulting from meiosis are different from the parental chromosomes. This provides genetic variety in the next generation. Table 12.1 on p. 350 compares and contrasts mitotic and meiotic nuclear divisions.

Cytokinesis (Cytoplasmic Division)

Cytoplasmic division—also called **cytokinesis** (sī´tō-ki-nē´sis)—typically occurs simultaneously with telophase of mitosis, though in some algae and fungi it may be postponed or may not occur at all. In these cases, mitosis produces multinucleate cells called **coenocytes** (sē´nō-sītz).

In plant and algal cells, cytokinesis occurs as vesicles deposit wall material at the equatorial plane between nuclei to form a *cell plate,* which eventually becomes a transverse wall between daughter cells **(Figure 12.2a)**. Cytokinesis of protozoa and some fungal cells occurs when an equatorial ring of actin microfilaments contracts just below the cytoplasmic membrane, pinching the cell in two **(Figure 12.2b)**. Single-celled fungi called *yeasts* form a bud, which receives one of the daughter nuclei and pinches off from the parent cell **(Figure 12.2c)**.

Schizogony

Some protozoa, such as *Plasmodium* (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm)—the cause of malaria—reproduce asexually within red blood cells and liver cells via a special type of reproduction called **schizogony** (ski-zog´ō-nē; **Figure 12.3**). In schizogony, multiple mitoses form a multinucleate **schizont** (skiz´ont); only then does cytokinesis occur, simultaneously releasing numerous uninucleate daughter cells called *merozoites* (mer-ō-zō´ītz). The body of an infected host responds to the release of huge numbers of merozoites with the cyclic fever and chills characteristic of malaria.

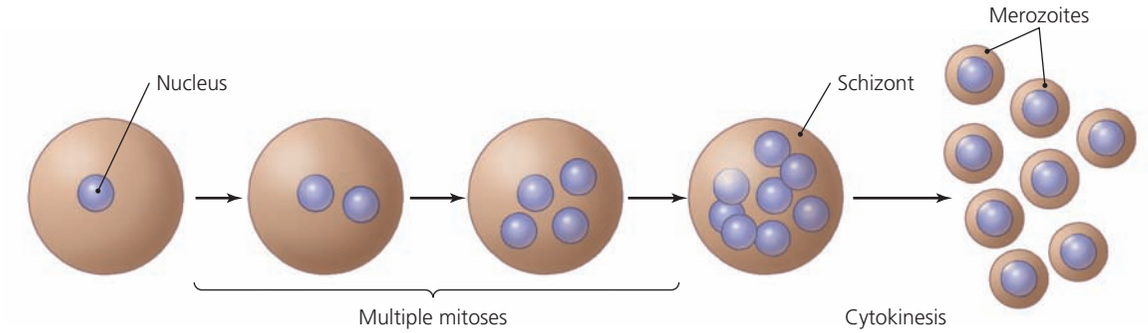
Classification of Eukaryotic Organisms

Learning Outcomes

12.5 Briefly describe the major groups of eukaryotes as they were first classified in the late 18th century and as they were classified in the late 20th century.

12.6 List some of the problems involved in the classification of protists in particular.

Historically, the classification of many eukaryotic microbes has been fraught with difficulty and characterized by change. Since the late 18th century, when Carolus Linnaeus (1707–1778) began modern taxonomy, until near the end of the 20th century, taxonomists grouped organisms together largely according to



◀ Figure 12.3 Schizogony. Sequential mitoses without intervening cytokineses produce a multinucleate schizont, which later undergoes cytokinesis to produce many daughter cells.

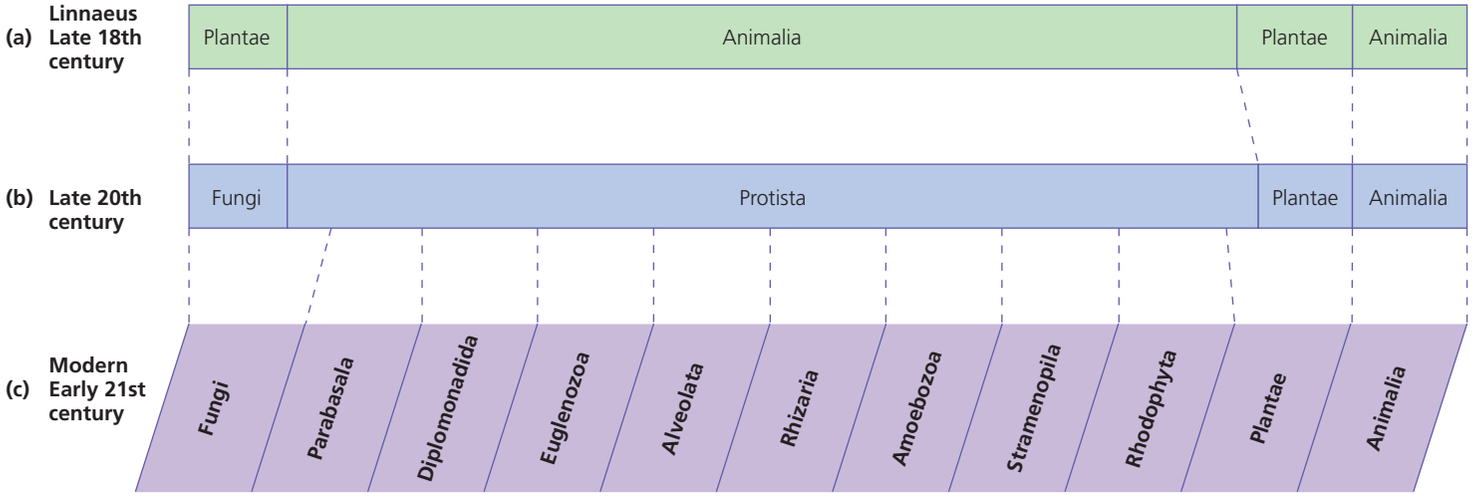
readily observable structural traits. Linnaeus classified unicellular algae and fungi as plants, and he classified protozoa—as the name suggests—as animals **(Figure 12.4a)**. By the late 20th century, taxonomists had placed fungi in their own kingdom and grouped protozoa and algae together within the kingdom Protista **(Figure 12.4b)**, though some taxonomists kept the green algae in the kingdom Plantae.

This scheme was troublesome, in part because the Protista included both large, photosynthetic, multicellular kelps and nonphotosynthetic unicellular protozoa. Adding to the confusion is the fact that taxonomists who classify plants use the term *divisions* to refer to the same taxonomic level that zoologists call *phyla.*

More recently, many taxonomists have abandoned classification schemes that are so strongly grounded in large-scale structural similarities in favor of schemes based on similarities in nucleotide sequences and cellular ultrastructure as revealed by electron microscopy. One of the most evident results of such taxonomic studies is that modern schemes no longer include the taxa "Protozoa" or "Protista"; instead, such eukaryotic microbes belong in several kingdoms.

Though no one classification scheme has garnered universal support and more thorough understanding based on new information will almost certainly dictate changes, many taxonomists favor a scheme similar to the one shown in **Figure 12.4c**. In this scheme, on which the discussions of eukaryotic microbes in this chapter are largely based, the organisms we commonly refer to as protozoa are classified in six kingdoms: Parabasala, Diplomonadida, Euglenozoa, Alveolata, Rhizaria, and Amoebozoa; fungi are in the kingdom Fungi; algae are distributed among the kingdoms Stramenopila, Rhodophyta, and Plantae; water molds are in the kingdom Stramenopila; and slime molds are in the kingdom Amoebozoa. As we study the eukaryotic microbes discussed in this chapter, bear in mind that because the relationships among eukaryotic microbes are not fully understood, not all taxonomists agree with this scheme, and new information will shape future alterations in our understanding of the taxonomy of eukaryotic microbes.

We begin our survey of eukaryotic microbes with the group of organisms commonly known as protozoa.



▲ Figure 12.4 The changing classification of eukaryotes over the centuries. (a) In the late 18th century, Linnaeus classified all organisms as either plants or animals. **(b)** In the late 20th century, taxonomists placed fungi in their own group and recognized a new kingdom, Protista. **(c)** Today, microbial eukaryotes are classified into numerous kingdoms based largely on their genetic relatedness. Though not all taxonomists would agree about every detail of this scheme, it forms the basis for the discussion of eukaryotic organisms in this chapter.

TABLE 12.1 Characteristics of the Two Types of Nuclear Division

	Mitosis	Meiosis
DNA replication	During interphase, before nuclear division	During interphase, before meiosis I begins
Phases	Prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase	Meiosis I—prophase I, metaphase I, anaphase I, telophase I Meiosis II—prophase II, metaphase II, anaphase II, telophase II
Formation of tetrads (alignment of homologous chromosomes)	Does not occur	Early in prophase I
Crossing over	Does not occur	Following formation of tetrads during prophase I
Number of accompanying cytoplasmic divisions that may occur	One	Two
Resulting nuclei	Two nuclei with same ploidy as the original	Four nuclei with half the ploidy of the original

Protozoa

Learning Outcome

12.7 List three characteristics shared by all protozoa.

The microorganisms called **protozoa** (prō-tō-zō´ă) are a diverse group defined by three characteristics: They are eukaryotic, are unicellular, and lack a cell wall. Note that "protozoa" is not a currently accepted taxon. With the exception of one subgroup (called apicomplexans), protozoa are motile by means of cilia, flagella, and/or pseudopodia. By these criteria, protozoa include a diverse assemblage of microbes. The scientific study of protozoa is *protozoology,* and scientists who study these microbes are *protozoologists.*

In the following sections we discuss the distribution, morphology, nutrition, reproduction, and classification of various groups of protozoa.

Distribution of Protozoa

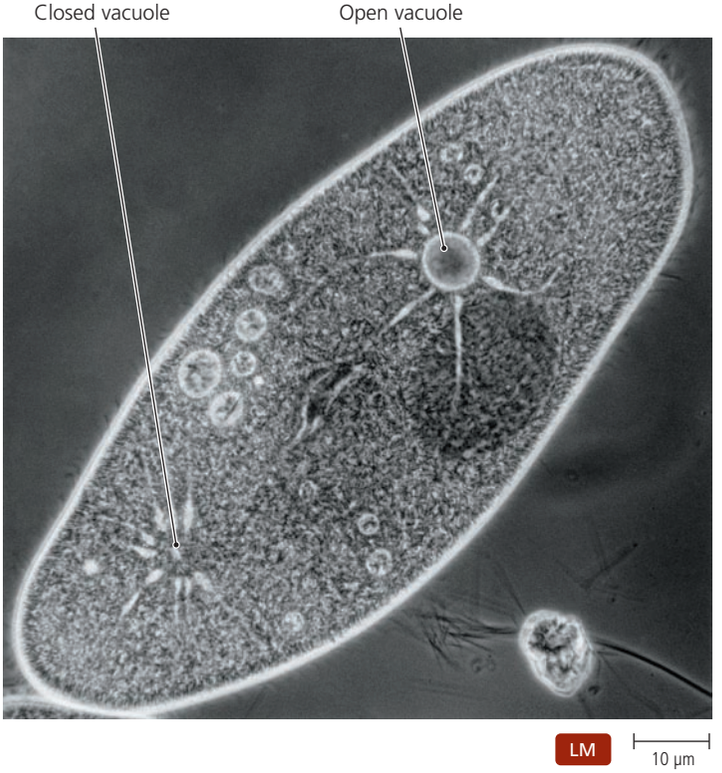
Protozoa require moist environments; most species live worldwide in ponds, streams, lakes, and oceans, where they are critical members of the *plankton*—free-living, drifting organisms that form the basis of aquatic food chains. Other protozoa live in moist soil, beach sand, and decaying organic matter, and a very few are pathogens—that is, disease-causing microbes—of animals and humans.

Morphology of Protozoa

Though protozoa have most of the features of eukaryotic cells (discussed in Chapter 3 and illustrated in Figure 3.3), this group of eukaryotic microbes is characterized by great morphological diversity. Indeed, taxonomists once used the variety in locomotory structures as a basis for classification. Locomotory structures no longer figure prominently in the taxonomic classification of protozoa because the presence of a given structure may not indicate evolutionary relatedness.

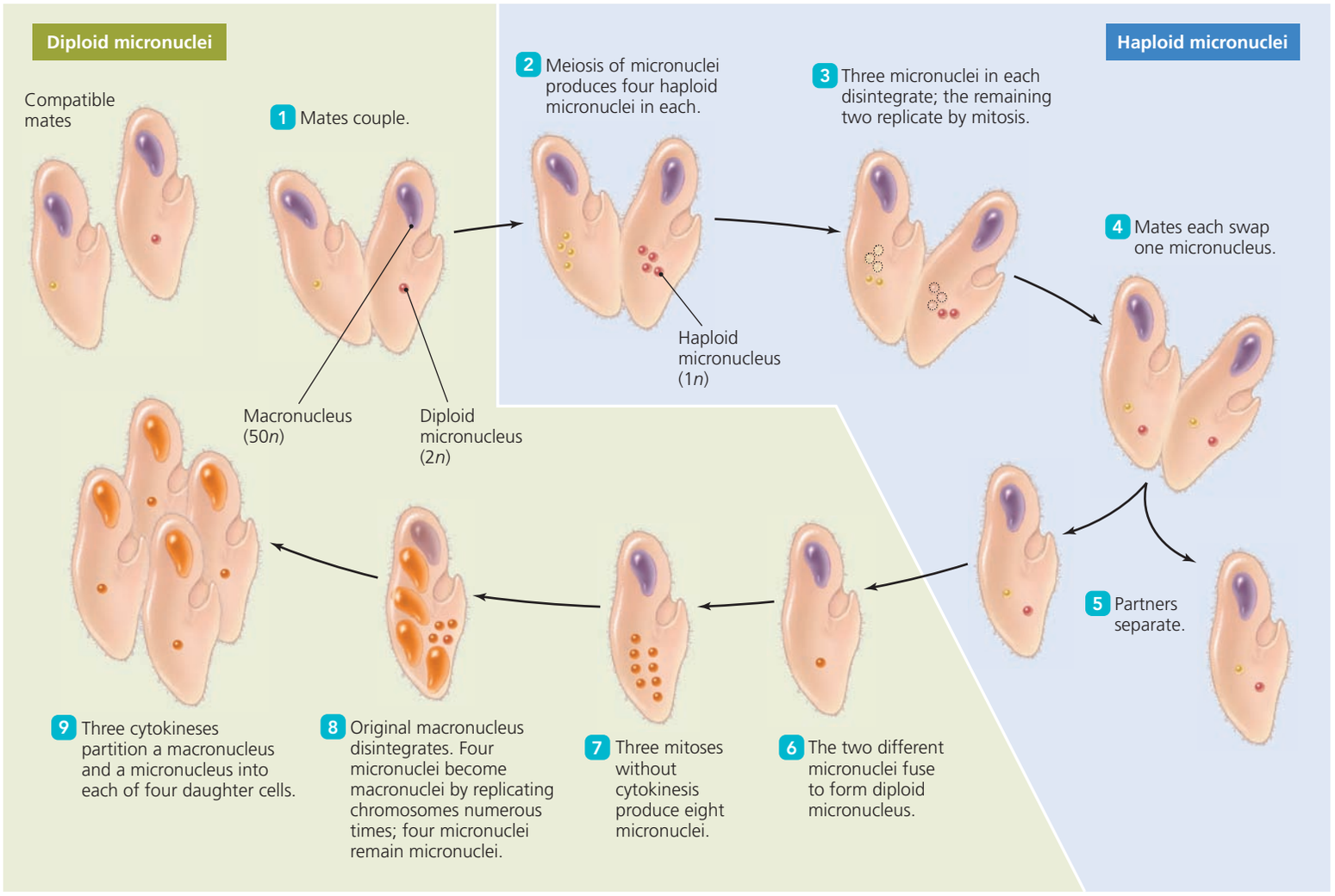
Some ciliates have two nuclei: a larger *macronucleus,* which contains many copies of the genome (often more than 50*n*) and controls metabolism, growth, and sexual reproduction, and a smaller *micronucleus,* which is involved in genetic recombination, sexual reproduction, and regeneration of macronuclei.

Protozoa also show variety in the number and kind of mitochondria they contain. Several groups lack mitochondria, whereas all the others have mitochondria with discoid or tubular cristae rather than the platelike cristae seen in animals, plants, fungi, and many algae. Additionally, some protozoa have *contractile vacuoles* that actively pump water from the cells, protecting them from osmotic lysis **(Figure 12.5)**.



▲ **Figure 12.5 Contractile vacuoles.** Many protozoa, such as *Paramecium*, have this prominent feature. Open vacuoles fill with water that entered the cell via osmosis; closed vacuoles are contracted, pumping the water out of the cell. *Is the environment in this case hypertonic, hypotonic, or isotonic to the cell? Explain.*

Figure 12.5 *The environment is hypotonic to the cell; water moves down its concentration gradient—into the cell—by osmosis.*



▲ **Figure 12.6 Sexual reproduction via conjugation in ciliates.** Shown here for *Paramecium*. Cells with haploid micronuclei are shown against a blue background; those with diploid micronuclei, against a green background.

All free-living aquatic and pathogenic protozoa exist as a motile feeding stage called a **trophozoite** (trof-ō-zō´īt), and many have a hardy resting stage called a **cyst,** which is characterized by a thick capsule and a low metabolic rate. Cysts of protozoa are not reproductive structures because one trophozoite forms one cyst, which later becomes one trophozoite. Such cysts allow intestinal protozoa to pass from one host to another and to survive harsh environmental conditions such as desiccation, nutrient deficiency, extremes of pH and temperature, and lack of oxygen.

Nutrition of Protozoa

Most protozoa are chemoheterotrophic; that is, they obtain nutrients by phagocytizing bacteria, decayed organic matter, other protozoa, or the tissues of a host; a few protozoa absorb nutrients from the surrounding water. Because the protozoa called dinoflagellates and euglenids (discussed shortly) are photoautotrophic, botanists historically classified them as algal plants rather than as protozoa.

Reproduction of Protozoa

Most protozoa reproduce asexually only, by binary fission or schizogony; a few protozoa also have sexual reproduction in which two individuals exchange genetic material. Some sexually reproducing protozoa become **gametocytes** (gametes) that fuse with one another to form a diploid **zygote.** Ciliates, such as *Paramecium* (par-ă-mē´sē-ŭm), reproduce sexually via a complex process called *conjugation* **(Figure 12.6)**, which involves the coupling of two compatible mating cells 1, meiosis of diploid micronuclei 2, loss of some haploid micronuclei 3, exchange of micronuclei between the coupled cells 4, uncoupling of the cells 5, fusion of haploid micronuclei to form a diploid micronucleus 6, three mitoses of the micronucleus to form eight micronuclei 7, disintegration of the macronucleus and the subsequent formation of a new macronucleus from four micronuclei 8, and three cytokineses to produce four daughter cells, each with one macronucleus and one micronucleus 9.

Classification of Protozoa

Learning Outcomes

12.8 Discuss the reasons for the many different taxonomic schemes for protozoa.
12.9 Identify several features of a typical euglenid.
12.10 Compare and contrast three types of alveolate.
12.11 Compare and contrast three types of amoeba.
12.12 Describe the life cycles of plasmodial and cellular slime molds.
12.13 Describe characteristic features of parabasalids, diplomonads, rhizaria, and amoebozoa.

As we have seen, over two centuries ago Linnaeus classified protozoa as animals; later taxonomists grouped protozoa into kingdom Protista. Furthermore, some taxonomists divided the protozoa into four groups based on the organisms' mode of locomotion: Sarcodina (motile by means of pseudopods), Mastigophora (flagella), Ciliophora (cilia), and Sporozoa (nonmotile). Other taxonomists lumped the first two groups together into a single group called Sarcomastigophora. Grouping of the protozoa according to locomotory features is still in common usage for many practical applications.

Taxonomists today recognize that these schemes do not reflect genetic relationships either between protozoa and other organisms or among protozoa. Accordingly, taxonomists continue to revise and refine the classification of protozoa based on 18S rRNA nucleotide sequencing and features made visible by electron microscopy. One such genetic scheme classifies protozoa into the six taxa Parabasala through Amoebozoa shown in Figure 12.4c, which different taxonomists consider kingdoms (as here), subkingdoms, or phyla.

In the following sections we will briefly discuss members of these six taxa of protozoa, formed largely according to similarities in nucleotide sequences and ultrastructure. We begin with parabasalids.

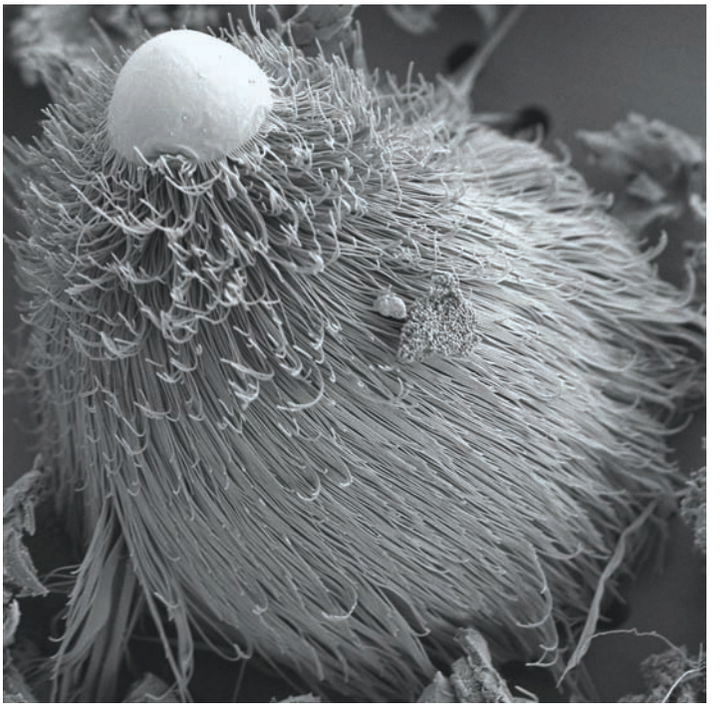
Parabasala

Parabasalids lack mitochondria, but each has a single nucleus and a *parabasal body,* which is a Golgi body–like structure. *Trichonympha* (trik-ō-nimf´ă), a parabasalid with numerous flagella **(Figure 12.7)**, inhabits the guts of termites, where it assists in the digestion of wood. Another well-known parabasalid is *Trichomonas* (trik-ō-mō´nas), which lives in the human vagina (see Figure 23.9). When the normally acidic pH of the vagina is raised, *Trichomonas* proliferates and causes severe inflammation that can lead to sterility. It is spread by sexual intercourse and is usually asymptomatic in males.

Diplomonadida

Because members of the group Diplomonadida[15] lack mitochondria, Golgi bodies, and peroxisomes, biologists once thought these organisms were descended from ancient eukaryotes that had not yet phagocytized the prokaryotic ancestors of mitochondria. More recently, however, geneticists have discovered

[15]From Greek *diploos,* meaning "double," and *monas,* meaning "unit," referring to two nuclei.



▲ **Figure 12.7** ***Trichonympha acuta*, a parabasalid with prodigious flagella.**

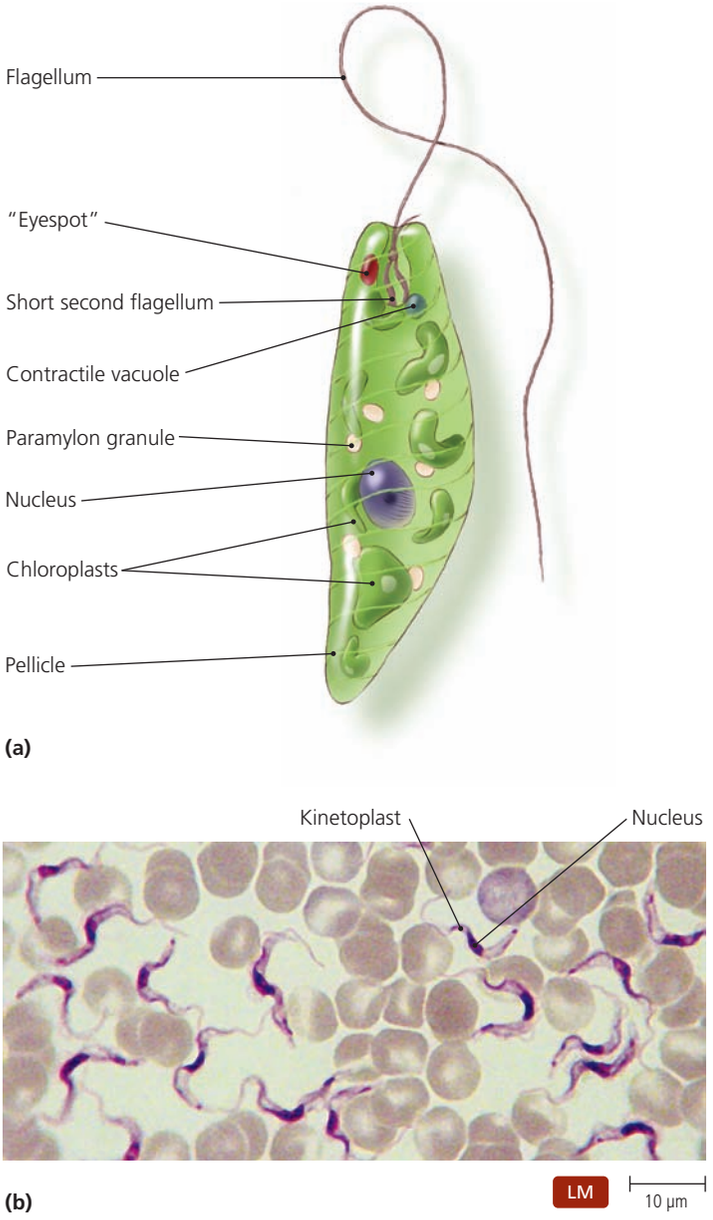
rudimentary *mitosomes* in the cytoplasm and mitochondrial genes in the nuclear chromosomes, a finding that suggests that diplomonads might be descended from typical eukaryotes that somehow lost their organelles.

Diplomonads have two equal-sized nuclei and multiple flagella. A prominent example is *Giardia* (jē-ar´dē-ă), a diarrhea-causing pathogen of animals and humans that is spread to new hosts when they ingest resistant *Giardia* cysts.

Euglenozoa

Part of the reason that taxonomists established the kingdom Protista in the 1960s was to create a "dumping ground" for *euglenids,* eukaryotic microbes that share certain characteristics of both plants and animals. More recently, based on similar 18S rRNA sequences, the presence of a crystalline rod of unknown function in the flagella, and the presence of mitochondria with disk-shaped cristae, some taxonomists have created a new taxon: kingdom Euglenozoa. The euglenozoa include euglenids and some flagellated protozoa called *kinetoplastids.*

Euglenids The group of euglenozoa called **euglenids,** which are named for the genus *Euglena* (yū-glēn´ă; **Figure 12.8a**), are photoautotrophic, unicellular microbes with chloroplasts containing light-absorbing pigments—chlorophylls *a* and *b* and carotene. For this reason, botanists historically classified euglenids in the kingdom Plantae. However, one reason for not including euglenids with plants is that euglenids store food as a unique polysaccharide called *paramylon* instead of as starch. Euglenids are similar to animals in that they lack cell walls, have flagella, are

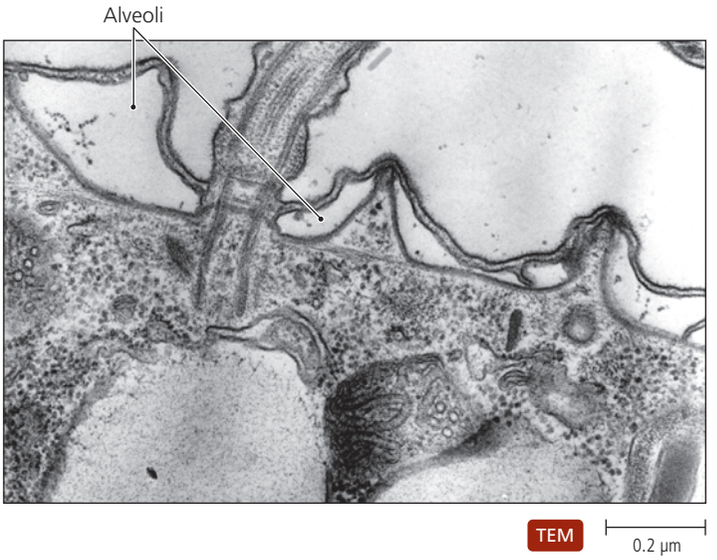


▲ Figure 12.8 Two representatives of the kingdom Euglenozoa. **(a)** The euglenid *Euglena*. Euglenids have characteristics that are similar to both plants and animals. **(b)** The kinetoplastid *Trypanosoma*. *What is the function of the kinetoplast in* Trypanosoma?

Figure 12.8 *A kinetoplast is mitochondrial DNA, which codes for some mitochondrial polypeptides.*

chemoheterotrophic phagocytes (in the dark), and move by using their flagella as well as by flowing, contracting, and expanding their cytoplasm. Such a squirming movement, which is similar to amoeboid movement but does not involve pseudopods, is called *euglenoid movement*.

A euglenid has a flexible, proteinaceous, helical *pellicle* that underlies its cytoplasmic membrane and helps maintain its shape. Typically each euglenid also has a red "eyespot," which plays a role in positive phototaxis by casting a shadow on a photoreceptor at the flagellar base, triggering movement in that direction.



▲ Figure 12.9 Membrane-bound alveoli found in some protozoa. Even though its function is not yet known, the alveolus is present in eukaryotic microbes with similar 18S rRNA sequences, indicating genetic relatedness and forming the basis of the group of eukaryotes called alveolates.

Euglenids reproduce by mitosis followed by longitudinal cytokinesis. They form cysts when exposed to harsh conditions.

Kinetoplastids Euglenozoa called **kinetoplastids** **(Figure 12.8b)** each have a single large mitochondrion that contains a unique region of mitochondrial DNA called a *kinetoplast*. As in all mitochondria, this DNA codes for some mitochondrial polypeptides.

Kinetoplastids live inside animals, and some are pathogenic. Among the latter are the genera *Trypanosoma* (tri-pan´ō-sō-mă) and *Leishmania* (lēsh-man´ē-ă), certain species of which cause potentially fatal diseases of mammals, including humans (see Chapter 23).

Alveolates

Alveolates (al-vē´ō-lātz) are protozoa with small membrane-bound cavities called alveoli[16] (al-vē´ō-lī) beneath their cell surfaces **(Figure 12.9)**. Scientists do not know the purpose of alveoli. Alveolates share at least one other characteristic—tubular mitochondrial cristae. This group is further divided into three subgroups: *ciliates*, *apicomplexans*, and *dinoflagellates*.

Ciliates As their name indicates, **ciliate** (sil´ē-āt) alveolates have cilia by which they either move themselves or move water past their cell surfaces. (The structure and function of cilia are discussed on p. 80.) Some ciliates are covered with cilia, whereas others have only a few isolated tufts. All ciliates are chemoheterotrophs and have two nuclei—one macronucleus and one micronucleus. Some taxonomists consider them the sole members of phylum Ciliophora.

[16]Latin, meaning "small hollows."

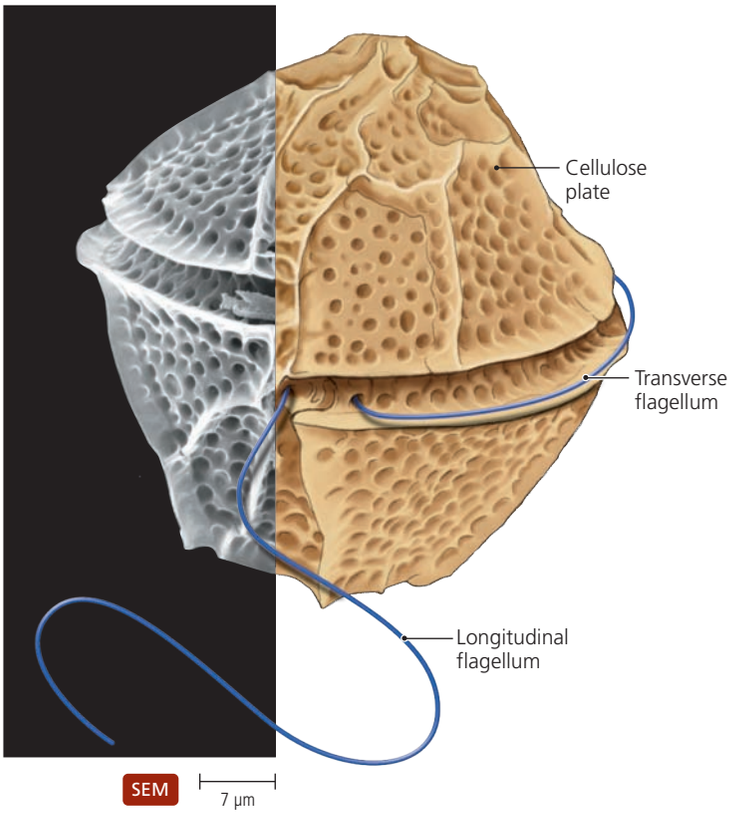
▲ Figure 12.10 **A predatory ciliate, *Didinium* (on left), devouring another ciliate, *Paramecium*.**

Notable ciliates include *Vorticella* (vōr-ti-sel´ă), whose apical cilia create a whirlpool-like current to direct food into its "mouth"; *Balantidium* (bal-an-tid´ē-ŭm), which is the only ciliate pathogenic to humans; and the carnivorous *Didinium* (dī-di´nē-ŭm), which phagocytizes other protozoa, such as the well-known pond-water ciliate *Paramecium* **(Figure 12.10)**. (Chapter 23 discusses *Balantidium* and its disease in more detail.)

Apicomplexans The alveolates called **apicomplexans** (ap-i-kom-plek´sănz) are all chemoheterotrophic pathogens of animals. The name of this group refers to the *complex* of special intracellular organelles, located at the *apices* of the infective stages of these microbes, that enables them to penetrate host cells. Examples of apicomplexans are *Plasmodium*, *Cryptosporidium* (krip-tō-spō-rid´-ē-ŭm), and *Toxoplasma* (tok-sō-plaz´mă), which cause malaria, cryptosporidiosis, and toxoplasmosis, respectively. (Chapter 23 considers representative apicomplexans and the diseases they cause in more detail.)

Dinoflagellates The group of alveolates called **dinoflagellates** are unicellular microbes that have photosynthetic pigments, such as carotene and chlorophylls *a*, c_1, and c_2. Like many plants and algae, their food reserves are starch and oil, and their cells are often strengthened by internal plates of cellulose. Even though botanists have historically classified the dinoflagellates as algae because dinoflagellates are photoautotrophic, taxonomists today note that their 18S rRNA sequences and the presence of alveoli indicate that dinoflagellates are more closely related to ciliates and apicomplexans than they are to either plants or algae. Interestingly, unlike other eukaryotic chromosomes, dinoflagellate chromosomes lack histone proteins.

Dinoflagellates make up a large proportion of freshwater and marine plankton. Motile dinoflagellates have two flagella of unequal length **(Figure 12.11)**. The transverse flagellum wraps around the equator of the cell in a groove in the cell wall, and its beat causes the cell to spin; the second flagellum extends posteriorly and propels the cell forward.



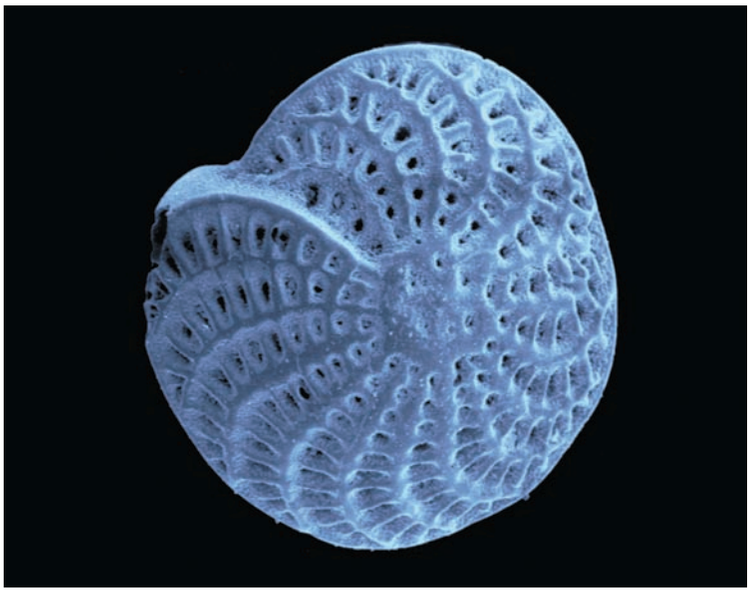
▲ Figure 12.11 ***Gonyaulax*, a motile armored dinoflagellate.** Dinoflagellates have two flagella. The transverse flagellum spins the cell; the longitudinal flagellum propels the cell forward.

Many dinoflagellates are bioluminescent—that is, able to produce light via metabolic reactions. When luminescent dinoflagellates are present in large numbers, the ocean water lights up with every crashing wave, passing ship, or jumping fish. Other dinoflagellates produce a red pigment, and their abundance in marine water is one cause of a phenomenon called a **red tide.**

Some dinoflagellates, such as *Gymnodinium* (jīm-nō-din´ē-um) and *Gonyaulax* (gon-ē-aw´laks), produce *neurotoxins*—poisons that can act against the human nervous system. Humans can become exposed when they eat shellfish that have ingested planktonic dinoflagellates and concentrated their toxins.

The neurotoxin of another dinoflagellate, *Pfiesteria*[17] (fes-tēr´ē-ă), may be even more potent: It has been claimed that the toxin poisons people who merely handle infected fish or breathe air laden with the microbes, resulting in memory loss, confusion, headache, respiratory difficulties, skin rash, muscle cramps, diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) calls such poisoning *possible estuary-associated syndrome (PEAS).*

[17] Named for dinoflagellate biologist Lois Pfiester.



▲ **Figure 12.12 Rhizaria called foraminifera have multichambered, snail-like shells of calcium carbonate.** Pseudopods not visible.

Rhizaria

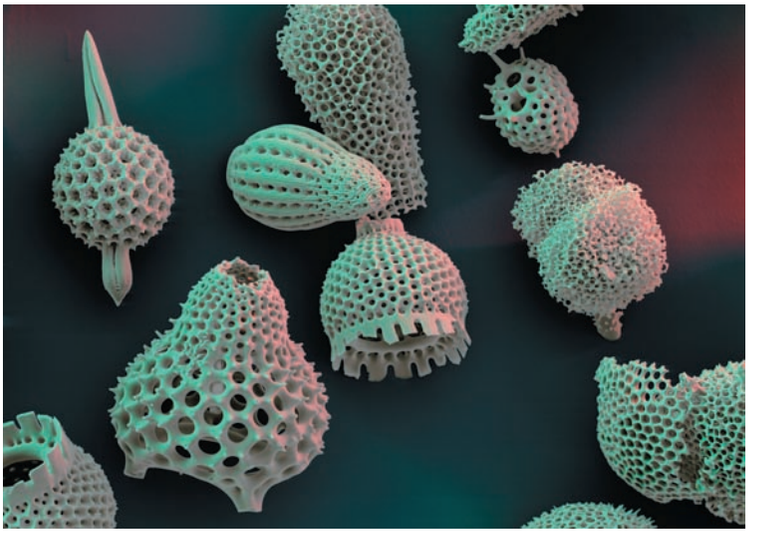
Unicellular eukaryotes called **amoebae**[18] are protozoa that move and feed by means of pseudopods (see Figure 3.29). Beyond this common feature and the fact that they all reproduce via binary fission, amoebae exhibit little uniformity. Some taxonomists currently classify amoebae into two kingdoms: Rhizaria and Amoebozoa. We consider them in order.

Rhizaria is a group of amoebae with threadlike pseudopods. A major taxon is composed of armored marine amoebae known as **foraminifera.** A foraminiferan has a porous shell composed of calcium carbonate arranged on an organic matrix in a snail-like manner **(Figure 12.12)**. Pseudopods extend through holes in the shell. Commonly, foraminifera live attached to sand grains on the ocean floor. Most foraminifera are microscopic, though scientists have discovered species several centimeters in diameter.

Over 90% of known foraminifera are fossil species, some of which form layers of limestone hundreds of meters thick. The great pyramids of Giza outside Cairo, Egypt, are built of foraminiferan limestone. Geologists correlate the ages of sedimentary rocks from different parts of the world by finding identical foraminiferan fossils embedded in them.

Amoebae called **radiolaria** make up another group of rhizaria, but they have ornate shells composed of silica (SiO_2, the mineral found in opal) **(Figure 12.13)** and live unattached as part of the marine plankton. Radiolarians reinforce their pseudopods with stiff internal bundles of microtubules so that the pseudopods radiate from the central body like spokes of a spherical wheel. The dead bodies of radiolarians settle to the bottom of the ocean, where they form ooze that is hundreds of meters thick in some locations.

[18]From Greek *ameibein*, meaning "to change."



▲ **Figure 12.13 Rhizaria called radiolarians have ornate shells of silica.** Pseudopods (not present in these dead specimens) extend through the holes.

Amoebozoa

Amoebozoa constitute a second kingdom of amoebae distinguished from rhizaria by having lobe-shaped pseudopods and no shells. Amoebozoa include the normally free-living amoebae *Naegleria* (nā-glē′rē-ă) and *Acanthamoeba* (ă-kan-thă-mē′bă), which can each cause diseases of the eyes or brains of humans and animals that swim in water containing them. Other amoebozoa, such as *Entamoeba* (ent-ă-mē′bă), always live inside animals, where they produce potentially fatal amebic dysentery. (Chapter 23 examines these pathogenic amoebae in more detail.)

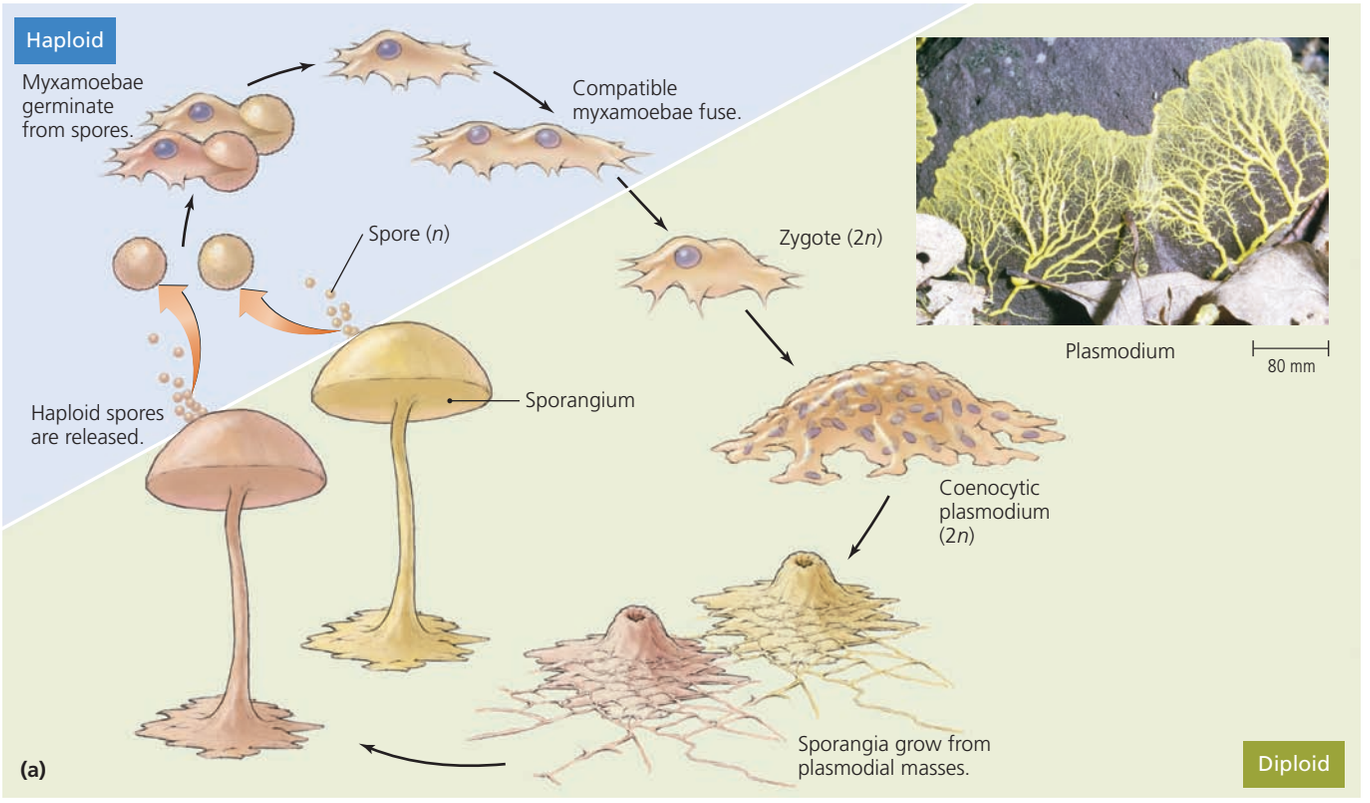
Taxonomists formerly considered another group of amoebozoa—**slime molds**—to be fungi, but the lobe-shaped pseudopods by which they feed and move as well as their nucleotide sequences show that they are amoebozoa. Scientists have identified two types of slime molds: *plasmodial molds* and *cellular slime molds.*

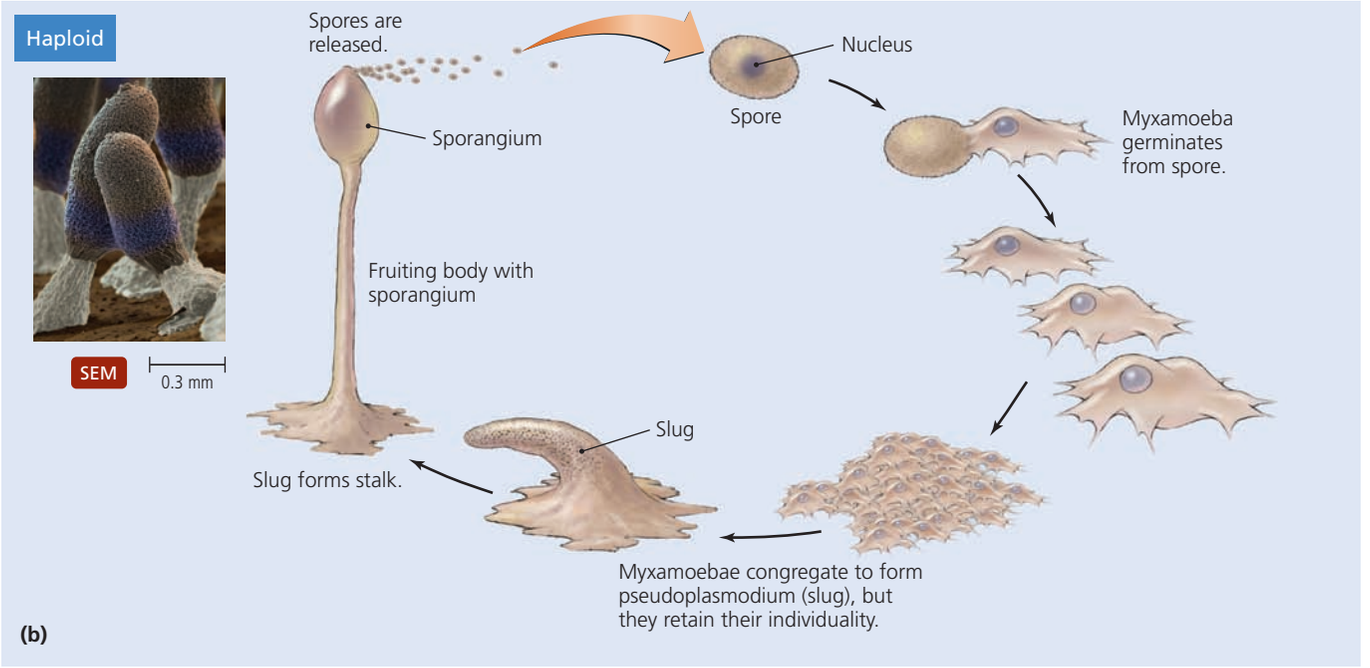
Slime molds differ from true fungi in two main ways:

- They lack cell walls, more closely resembling the amoebae in this regard.
- They are phagocytic rather than absorptive in their nutrition.

Species in the two groups of slime molds differ based on their morphology, reproduction, and 18S rRNA sequences. Slime molds are important to humans primarily as excellent laboratory systems for the study of developmental and molecular biology.

Plasmodial (Acellular) Slime Molds **Plasmodial slime molds,** also known as **acellular slime molds** (e.g., *Physarum,* fi-sar´um), exist as streaming, coenocytic, colorful filaments of cytoplasm that creep as amoebae through forest litter, feeding by phagocytizing organic debris and bacteria. The body, called a *plasmodium,* may contain millions of diploid nuclei and cover many square centimeters **(Figure 12.14a)**. Nutrients are distributed throughout the plasmodium by cytoplasmic streaming.





▲ Figure 12.14 Life cycles of slime molds. (a) A plasmodial (acellular) slime mold. Myxamoebae fuse to form a coenocytic plasmodium that feeds on organic debris and bacteria as the plasmodium creeps through its environment. Under adverse conditions, it produces sporangia that undergo meiosis to produce haploid spores. Compatible spores fuse to form a zygote that undergoes multiple mitoses, but not cytokinesis, to form a new plasmodium. **(b)** A cellular slime mold. Individual myxamoebae congregate during times of starvation to form a multicellular slug, which produces a stalked sporangium. Myxamoebae retain their individuality. The sporangium releases spores that germinate when conditions are more favorable. All phases are haploid.

When food or water is in short supply, the plasmodium divides into individual masses of cytoplasm, each of which produces a stalked sporangium. Meiosis occurs within the sporangia to generate haploid spores. These spores germinate to produce *myxamoebae,* which look and act like other unicellular amoebae; in the presence of water, however, myxamoebae produce flagella and swim about (not shown). When the water disappears, they become amoeboid again.

Compatible myxamoebae of opposite mating types fuse to form a diploid zygote. The nucleus of the zygote undergoes numerous mitoses—without cytokineses—to form a new coenocytic plasmodium.

Cellular Slime Molds Cellular slime molds, such as *Dictyostelium* (dik-tē-ō-stē´lē-um), exist as individual haploid myxamoebae that phagocytize bacteria, yeasts, dung, and decaying vegetation. **Figure 12.14b** illustrates their life cycle, all of which is haploid—there is no diploid phase. Myxamoebae reproduce by mitosis and cytokinesis when food is abundant; however, in scarcity, some secrete cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), which acts as a chemotactic attractant for other myxamoebae. The myxamoebae congregate into a sluglike *pseudoplasmodium,* which can migrate for several days. Unlike the true plasmodium of acellular slime molds, the cells of a pseudoplasmodial slug retain their individuality and can be separated mechanically.

Some cells of a pseudoplasmodium form a stalked sporangium; the remaining cells climb the stalk and become spores. In contrast to the spores of plasmodial slime molds, the spores of cellular slime molds do not result from meiosis and are not enclosed in a common wall.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why are cellular slime molds called "cellular"?

In summary, protozoa are a heterogeneous collection of single-celled, mostly chemoheterotrophic organisms that lack cell walls. Some taxonomists classify them in Parabasala, Diplomonadida, Euglenozoa, Alveolata, Rhizaria, and Amoebozoa, though their relationships with one another and with other eukaryotic organisms are still unclear. Table 12.2 on p. 358 summarizes the incredible diversity of these microbes.

We next turn our attention to another group of chemoheterotrophs, the fungi, which differ from the protozoa chiefly in that fungi have cell walls.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A dichotomous key is a series of questions, each with only two possible answers, that leads to the identification of items such as genera. Design a key for the kingdoms of protozoa discussed in this section.

Fungi

Learning Outcome

12.14 Cite at least three characteristics that distinguish fungi from other groups of eukaryotes.

Organisms in the kingdom **Fungi** (fŭn´jī), such as molds, mushrooms, and yeasts, are like most protozoa in that they are chemoheterotrophic; however, unlike protozoa, they have cell walls, which typically are composed of a strong, flexible, nitrogenous polysaccharide called **chitin.** (The chitin in fungi is chemically identical to that in the exoskeletons of insects and other arthropods, such as grasshoppers, lobsters, and crabs.) Fungi differ from plants in that they lack chlorophyll and do not perform photosynthesis; they differ from animals by having cell walls, although genetic sequencing of fungal and animal genomes has shown that fungi and animals are related. The study of fungi is *mycology,*[19] and scientists who study fungi are *mycologists.*

The Significance of Fungi

Learning Outcome

12.15 List five ways in which fungi are beneficial.

Fungi are extremely beneficial microorganisms. In nature, they decompose dead organisms (particularly plants) and recycle their nutrients. Additionally, the roots of about 90% of vascular plants form *mycorrhizae,*[20] which are beneficial associations between roots and fungi that assist the plants to absorb water and dissolved minerals.

Humans use fungi for food (mushrooms and truffles), in religious ceremonies (because of their hallucinogenic properties), and in the manufacture of foods and beverages, including bread, alcoholic beverages, citric acid (the basis of the soft drink industry), soy sauce, and some cheeses. Fungi also produce antibiotics, such as penicillin and cephalosporin; the immunosuppressive drug *cyclosporine,* which makes organ transplants possible; and *mevinic acids,* which are cholesterol-reducing agents.

Fungi are also important research tools in the study of metabolism, growth, and development and in genetics and biotechnology. For instance, based on their work with *Neurospora* (noo-ros´pōr-ă) in the 1950s, George Beadle (1903–1989) and Edward Tatum (1909–1975) developed their Nobel Prize–winning theory that one gene codes for one enzyme. Because of similar research, *Saccharomyces* (brewer's yeast) is the best-understood eukaryote and the first eukaryote to have its entire genome sequenced. (Chapter 26 highlights some uses of fungi in agriculture and industry.)

Not all fungi are beneficial—about 30% of known fungal species produce **mycoses** (mī-kō´sēz), which are fungal diseases of plants, animals, and humans. For example, Dutch elm disease is a mycosis of elm trees, and athlete's foot is a fungal disease of humans. Because fungi tolerate concentrations of salt, acid, and sugar that inhibit bacteria, fungi are responsible for the spoilage of fruit, pickles, jams, and jellies exposed to air.

[19]From Greek *mykes,* meaning "mushroom," and *logos,* meaning "discourse."
[20]From Greek *rhiza,* meaning "root."

TABLE 12.2 Characteristics of Protozoa

Category	Distinguishing Features	Representative Genera Mentioned in the Text
Parabasala	Parabasal body; single nucleus; lack mitochondria	*Trichomonas*
Diplomonadida	Two equal-sized nuclei; lack mitochondria, Golgi bodies, and peroxisomes	
Diplomonads	Multiple flagella	*Giardia*
Euglenozoa	Flagella with internal crystalline rod; disk-shaped mitochondrial cristae	
Euglenids	Photosynthesis; pellicle; "eyespot"	*Euglena*
Kinetoplastids	Single mitochondrion with DNA localized in kinetoplast	*Trypanosoma, Leishmania*
Alveolates	Alveoli (membrane-bound cavities underlying the cytoplasmic membrane); tubular cristae in mitochondria	
Ciliates	Cilia	*Balantidium, Paramecium, Didinium*
Apicomplexans	Apical complex of organelles	*Plasmodium, Cryptosporidium, Toxoplasma*
Dinoflagellates	Photosynthesis; two flagella; internal cellulose plates	*Gymnodinium, Gonyaulax, Pfiesteria*
Rhizaria	Threadlike pseudopods	
Foraminifera	Shells of calcium carbonate	
Radiolarians	Threadlike pseudopods, shells of silica	
Amoebozoa	Lobe-shaped pseudopods; no shells	
Free-living and parasitic forms	Do not form aggregates	*Naegleria, Acanthamoeba, Entamoeba*
Plasmodial (acellular) slime molds	Multinucleate body called plasmodium	*Physarum*
Cellular slime molds	Cells aggregate to form pseudoplasmodium but retain individual nature	*Dictyostelium*

In the following sections we will consider the basic characteristics of fungal morphology, nutrition, and reproduction before turning to a brief survey of the major groups of fungi.

Morphology of Fungi

Learning Outcome

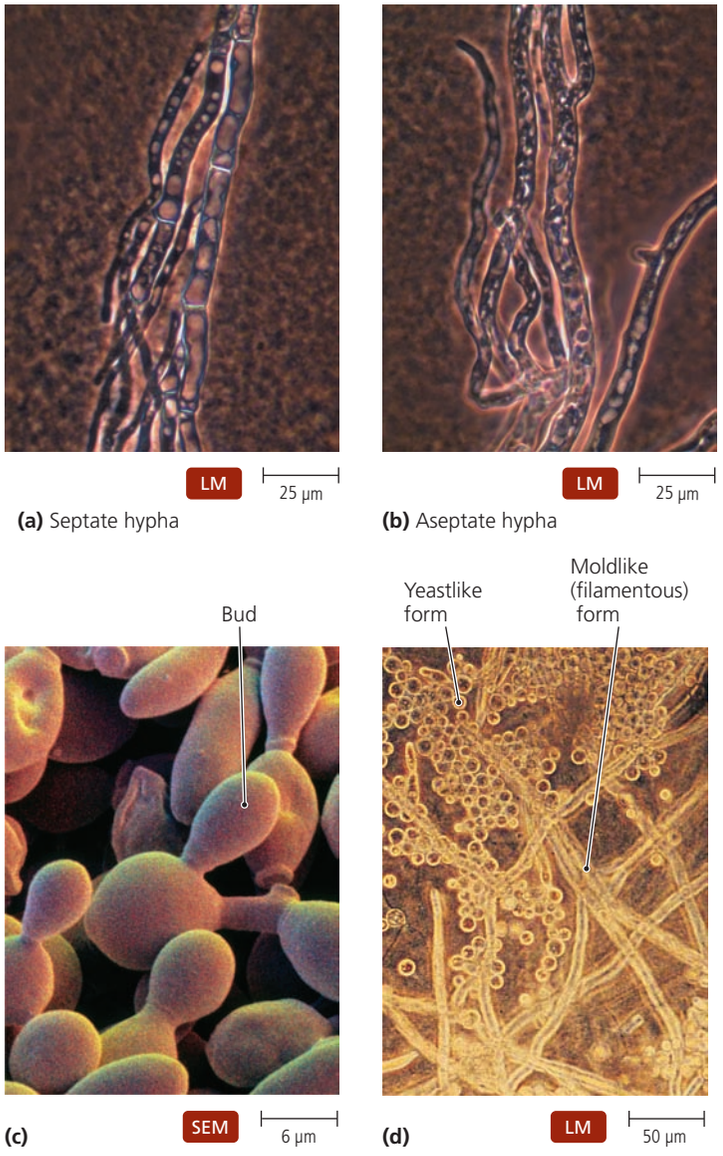
12.16 Distinguish among septate hyphae, aseptate hyphae, and mycelia.

The vegetative (nonreproductive) body of a fungus is called its **thallus**[21] (plural: *thalli*). The morphology of fungal thalli is variable. The thalli of *molds* are large and composed of long, branched, tubular filaments called **hyphae**.[22] Hyphae are either **septate** (divided into cells by cross walls called *septa*[23]; **Figure 12.15a**) or **aseptate** (not divided by septa; **Figure 12.15b**). Aseptate hyphae are *coenocytic* (multinucleate). The thalli of *yeasts* are typically small, globular, and composed of a single cell, which may have buds **(Figure 12.15c)**.

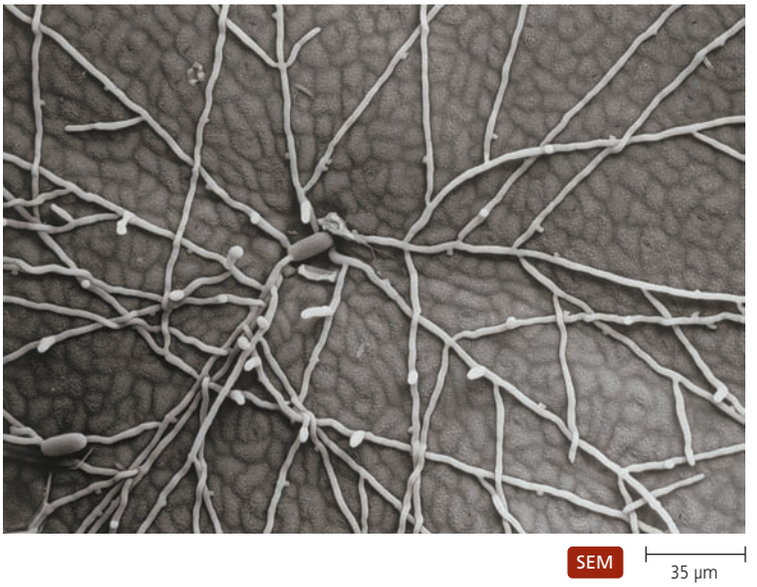
[21]From Greek *thallos*, meaning "young shoot."
[22]From Greek *hyphe*, meaning "weaving" or "web."
[23]Latin, meaning "partitions" or "fences."

In response to environmental conditions such as temperature or carbon dioxide concentration, some fungi produce both yeastlike thalli and moldlike thalli **(Figure 12.15d)**; fungi that produce two types of thalli are said to be **dimorphic** (which means "two-shaped"). Many medically important fungi are thermally dimorphic; that is, they change growth habits in response to the temperature in their immediate vicinity. Such fungi include *Histoplasma capsulatum* (his-tō-plaz´mă kap-soo-lā´tŭm), which causes a respiratory disease called histoplasmosis, and *Coccidioides immitis* (kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz im´mi-tis), which causes a flulike disease called coccidioidomycosis (kok-sid-ē-oy´dō-mī-kō´sis). Generally, the yeast form of a dimorphic fungal pathogen causes disease, whereas the filamentous form does not.

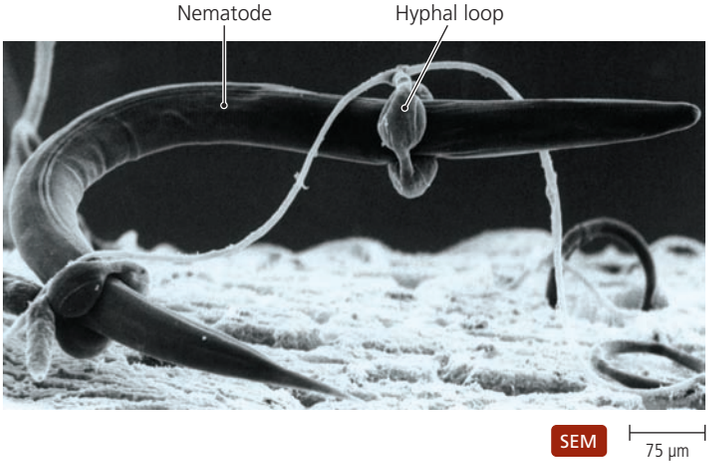
The thallus of a mold is composed of hyphae intertwined to form a tangled mass called a **mycelium** (plural: *mycelia;* **Figure 12.16**). Mycelia are typically subterranean and thus usually escape our notice, though they can be very large. In fact, as mentioned in the chapter opener, the largest known organisms on Earth are fungi in the genus *Armillaria,* the mycelia of which can spread through thousands of acres of forest to a depth of several feet and weigh many hundreds of tons. (In contrast, blue whales, the largest living animals, weigh only about 150 tons.) *Fruiting bodies,* such as puffballs and



▲ **Figure 12.15** **Fungal morphology.** **(a)** Septate hyphae have cross walls, **(b)** aseptate hyphae do not. **(c)** The thalli of *Saccharomyces* (baker's or brewer's yeast), which are unicellular and spherical to irregularly oval in shape. **(d)** The thalli of a dimorphic fungus, *Mucor rouxii*, showing both yeastlike and moldlike growth in response to environmental conditions.



▲ **Figure 12.16** **A fungal mycelium growing on a leaf.**



▲ **Figure 12.17** **Predation of a nematode by the fungus *Arthrobotrys*.** The fungus produces special looped hyphae that constrict when the worm contacts the inside of the loop. The fungus secretes enzymes that digest the nematode and then absorbs the resulting nutrients. *What is the more typical mode of nutrition found in fungi?*

Figure 12.17 *Most fungi are saprobic.*

mushrooms, are the reproductive structures of molds and are only small visible extensions of vast underground mycelia.

Nutrition of Fungi

Fungi acquire nutrients by absorption; that is, they secrete catabolic enzymes outside their thalli to break large organic molecules into smaller molecules, which they then transport into their thalli. Most fungi are **saprobes**[24] (sap´rōbz)—they absorb nutrients from the remnants of dead organisms—though some species trap and kill microscopic soil-dwelling nematodes (worms; **Figure 12.17**). Fungi that derive their nutrients from living plants and animals usually have modified hyphae called **haustoria**[25] (haw-stō´rē-ă), which penetrate the tissue of the host to withdraw nutrients. Absorptive nutrition is important in the role that fungi play as decomposers and recyclers of organic waste. Cytoplasmic streaming frequently transports nutrients and organelles, including nuclei, throughout a mycelium. Streaming between cells of septate mycelia occurs through pores in the septa.

Recently, scientists have discovered that fungi may use ionizing radiation (radioactivity) as an energy source for metabolism. Many fungi absorb radiation with a black pigment—melanin—and some appear to transform radiation into chemical energy, which the fungi then use to grow.

[24]From Greek *sapros*, meaning "rotten," and *bios*, meaning "life."

[25]From Latin *haustor*, meaning "someone who draws water from a well."

Most fungi are aerobic, though many yeasts (e.g., *Saccharomyces*) are facultative anaerobes that obtain energy from fermentation, such as occurs in the reactions that produce alcohol. Anaerobic fungi are found in the digestive systems of many herbivores, such as cattle and deer, where they assist in the catabolism of plant material.

Reproduction of Fungi

Learning Outcomes

12.17 Describe asexual reproduction in fungi.

12.18 List three basic types of asexual spores found in molds.

Whereas all fungi have some means of asexual reproduction involving mitosis followed by cytokinesis, most fungi also reproduce sexually. In the next sections we briefly examine asexual and sexual reproduction in fungi.

Budding and Asexual Spore Formation

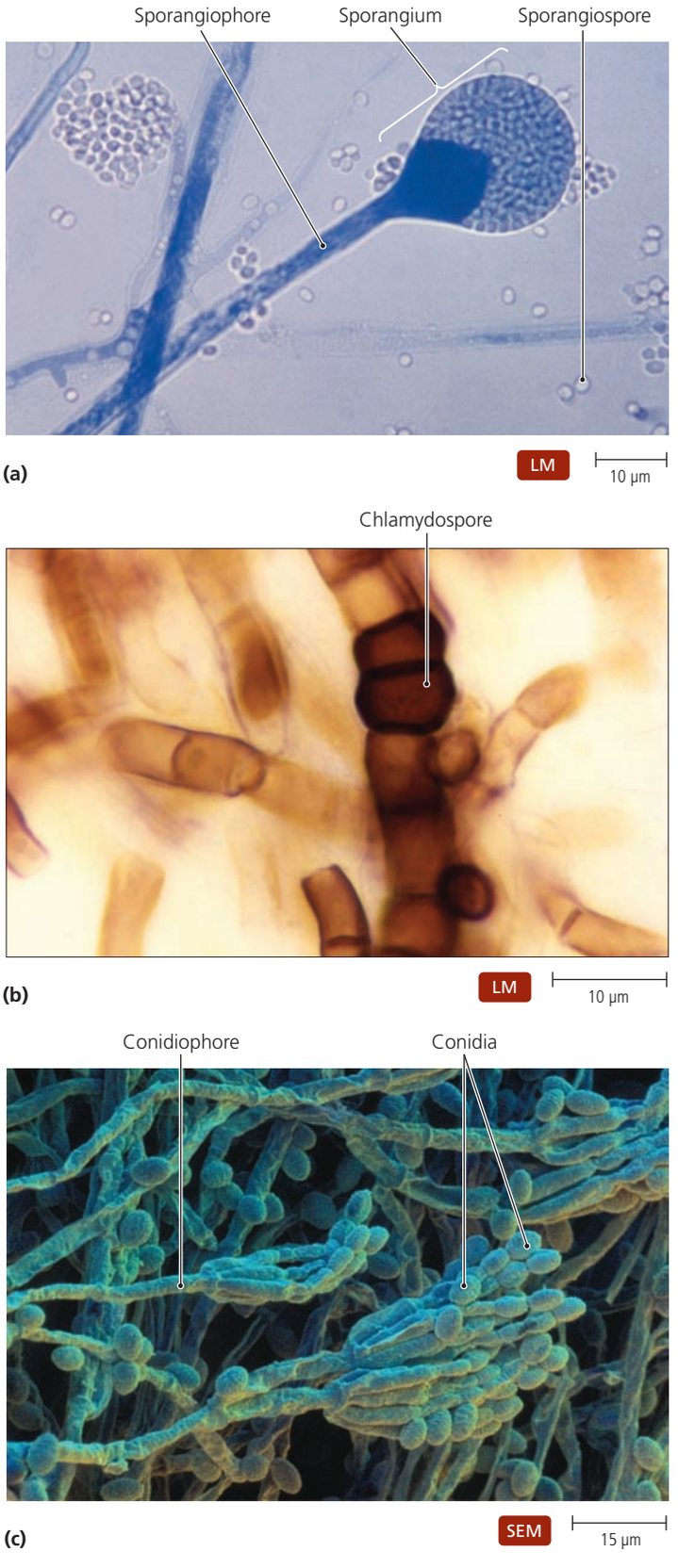
Yeasts typically bud in a manner similar to prokaryotic budding. Following mitosis, one daughter nucleus is sequestered in a small bleb (a blisterlike outgrowth) of cytoplasm that is isolated from the parent cell by the formation of a new wall (see Figure 12.15b). In some species, especially *Candida albicans* (kan´did-ă al´bi-kanz), which causes human oral thrush and vaginal yeast infections, a series of buds remain attached to one another and to the parent cell, forming a long filament called a *pseudohypha*. *Candida* invades human tissues by means of such pseudohyphae, which can penetrate intercellular cracks.

Filamentous fungi reproduce asexually by producing lightweight spores, which enable the fungi to disperse vast distances on the wind. Researchers have isolated fungal spores from wind currents many miles above the surface of the Earth. Scientists categorize the asexual spores of molds according to their mode of development:

- *Sporangiospores* form inside a sac called a *sporangium*,[26] which is often borne on a spore-bearing stalk, called a *sporangiophore*,[27] at either the tips or sides of hyphae **(Figure 12.18a)**.
- *Chlamydospores* form with a thickened cell wall inside hyphae **(Figure 12.18b)**.
- *Conidiospores* (also called *conidia*) are produced at the tips or sides of hyphae but not within a sac. There are many types of conidia, some of which develop in chains on stalks called *conidiophores* **(Figure 12.18c)**.

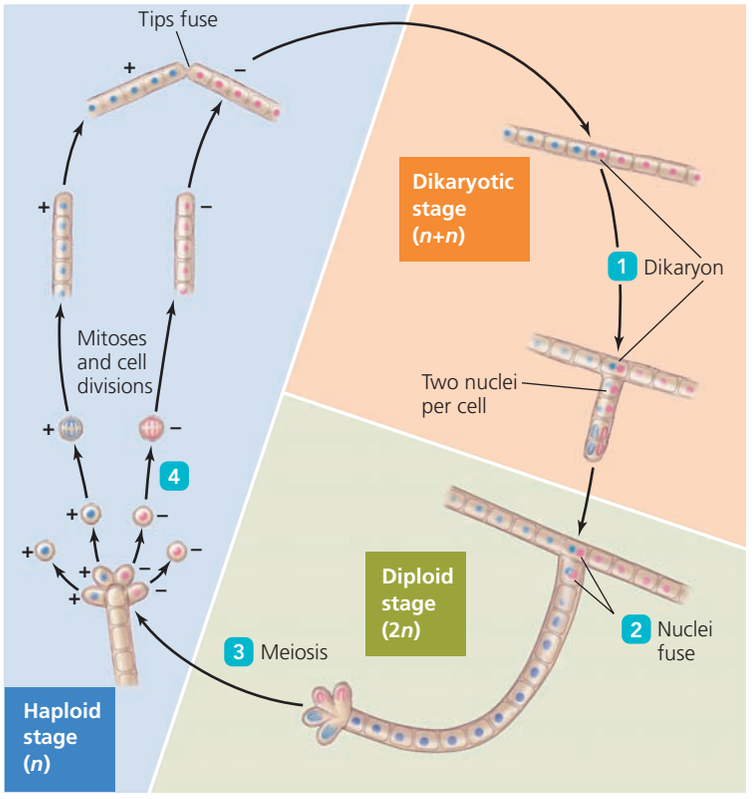
Medical lab technologists use the presence and type of asexual spores in clinical samples to identify many fungal pathogens.

[26]From Greek *spora*, meaning "seed," and *angeion*, meaning "vessel."
[27]From Greek *phoros*, meaning "bearing."



▲ Figure 12.18 Representative asexual spores of molds. **(a)** Sporangiospores, which develop within a sac called a sporangium that is borne on a sporangiophore, here of *Mucor*. **(b)** Chlamydospores are thick-walled spores that form inside hyphae, here of *Aureobasidum*. **(c)** Conidiospores (conidia) develop at the ends of hyphae, here of *Penicillium*. *How do conidia differ from sporangiospores?*

Figure 12.18 *Conidia are never enclosed in a sac.*



▲ Figure 12.19 The process of sexual reproduction in fungi. The steps in the process are described in the text. Haploid cells appear against a blue background, diploid cells against a green background, and dikaryotic cells against an orange background.

Sexual Spore Formation

Scientists designate fungal mating types as "+" and "−" rather than as male and female, in part because their thalli are morphologically indistinguishable. The process of sexual reproduction in fungi has four basic steps **(Figure 12.19)**:

1. Haploid (n) cells from a + thallus and a − thallus fuse to form a *dikaryon*, a cell containing both + and − nuclei. The dikaryotic stage is neither diploid nor haploid but instead is designated ($n + n$).
2. After a period of time that typically ranges from hours to years but can be centuries, a pair of nuclei within a dikaryon fuse to form one diploid ($2n$) nucleus.
3. Meiosis of the diploid nucleus restores the haploid state.
4. The haploid nuclei are partitioned into + and − spores, which reestablish + and − thalli by mitoses and cell divisions.

Fungi differ in the ways they form dikaryons and in the site at which meiosis occurs.

CRITICAL THINKING

Fungi tend to reproduce sexually when nutrients are limited or other conditions are unfavorable, but they reproduce asexually when conditions are more ideal. Why is this a successful strategy?

Classification of Fungi

Learning Outcomes

12.19 Compare and contrast the three divisions of fungi with respect to the formation of sexual spores.

12.20 Describe the deuteromycetes and explain why this group no longer constitutes a formal taxon.

In the following sections we will consider the four major subgroups into which taxonomists traditionally divided the kingdom Fungi. Three of these subgroups, which are taxa called *divisions* that are equivalent to phyla in other kingdoms, are based on the type of sexual spore produced (divisions Zygomycota, Ascomycota, and Basidiomycota); the fourth (the deuteromycetes) was a repository of fungi for which no sexual stage is known. We begin by considering the Zygomycota.

Division Zygomycota

Fungi in the division **Zygomycota** are coenocytic molds called zygomycetes (zī´gō-mī-sēts). Of the approximately 1100 species known, most are saprobes; the rest are obligate parasites of insects and other fungi.

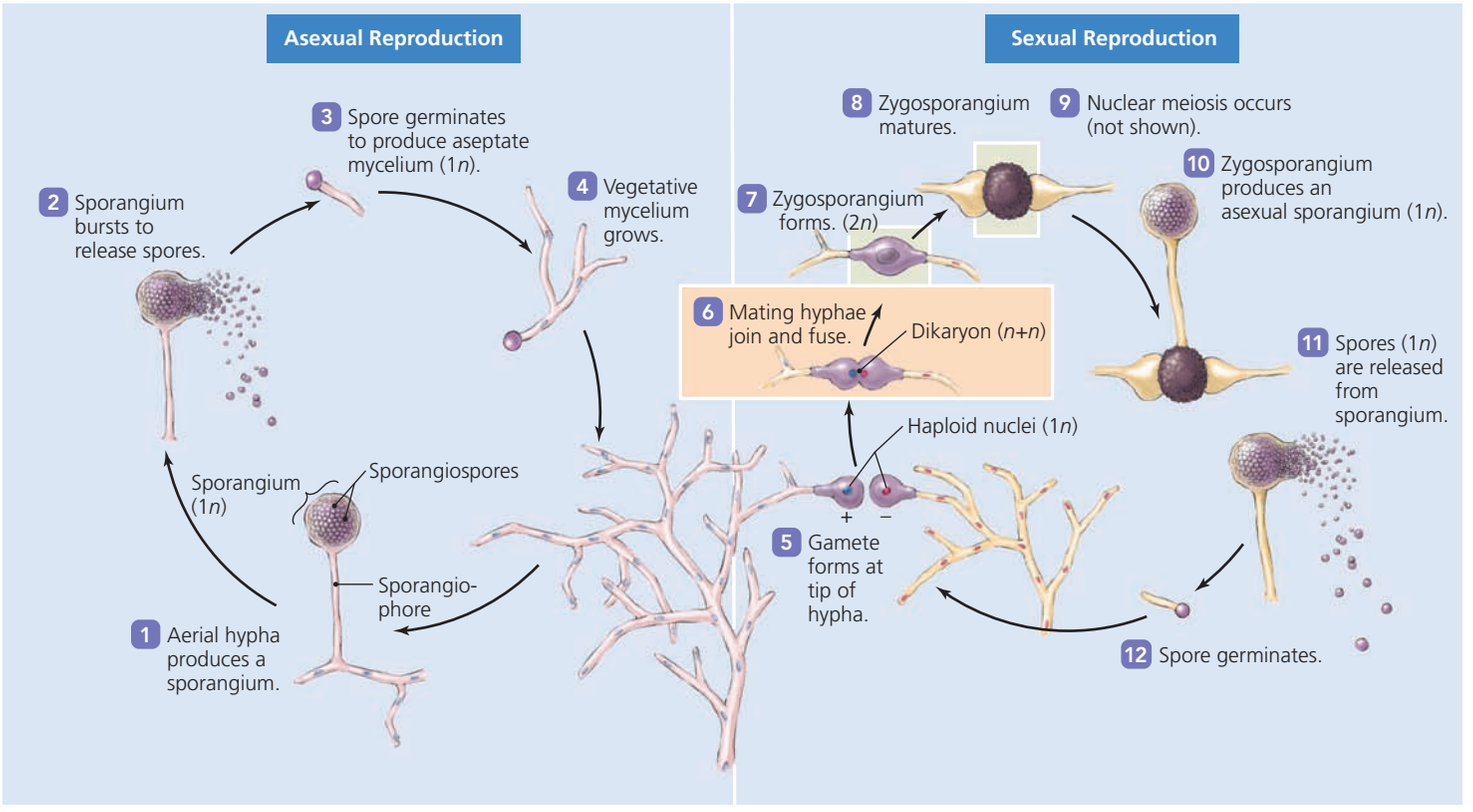
Figure 12.20 illustrates the life cycle of a typical zygomycete: the black bread mold *Rhizopus nigricans* (rī-zō´pŭs ni´gri-kans).[28] Zygomycetes reproduce asexually via sporangiospores 1 to 4, but the distinctive feature of most zygomycetes is the formation of sexual structures called **zygosporangia** (sometimes incorrectly termed zygospores). Zygosporangia of *R. nigricans* are black, rough-walled structures that develop from the fusion of sexually compatible hyphal tips 5 to 8. Like fungal spores, zygosporangia can withstand desiccation and other harsh environmental conditions.

Nuclei from one hypha (+) fuse with nuclei from the other hypha (−) to form many diploid nuclei within the zygosporangium. Each nucleus undergoes meiosis, but only one of the four meiotic daughters of each nucleus survives. The zygosporangium then produces a haploid sporangium, which is filled with haploid spores (true zygospores). The sporangium releases these spores, each of which germinates to produce either a + or a − mycelium. This completes the life cycle.

Microsporidia **Microsporidia** are small organisms that are difficult to classify. Until 2003, taxonomists thought microsporidia were protozoa, but genetic analysis indicates they are more similar to zygomycetes.

They are obligatory intracellular parasites; that is, organisms that must live within their hosts' cells. Microsporidia spread from host to host as small, resistant spores. An example is *Nosema* (nō-sē´mă), which is parasitic on insects, such as silkworms and honeybees. The Environmental Protection Agency has approved one species of *Nosema* as a biological control agent for grasshoppers. Seven genera of microsporidia, including *Nosema*, *Encephalatizoon* (en-sef-a-lat-e´zō-an), and *Microsporidium* (mī-krō-spor-i´dē-ŭm), are known to cause diseases

[28] From Greek *rhiza*, meaning "root," and *pous*, meaning "foot," and Latin *niger*, meaning "black."



▲ **Figure 12.20** **Life cycle of the zygomycete *Rhizopus*.** During the asexual cycle, the fungus reproduces via sporangiospores that germinate and produce hyphae. In the sexual cycle, the tips of + and − hyphae fuse and form a diploid zygosporangium that matures, undergoes meiosis, germinates, and produces a sporangium containing haploid sporangiospores, which germinate to form new mycelia.

in immunocompromised patients (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: Microsporidiosis** in Chapter 16 on p. 488).

Division Ascomycota

The division **Ascomycota** contains about 32,000 known species of molds and yeasts that are characterized by the formation of haploid **ascospores** within sacs called **asci.**[29] Asci occur in fruiting bodies called *ascocarps,* which have various shapes (**Figure 12.21**). Ascomycetes (as´kō-mī-sēts), as they are called, also reproduce asexually by conidiospores, as illustrated for a representative ascomycete *Penicillium* in **Figure 12.22** 1 to 4.

Sexual reproduction of an ascomycete proceeds as follows:

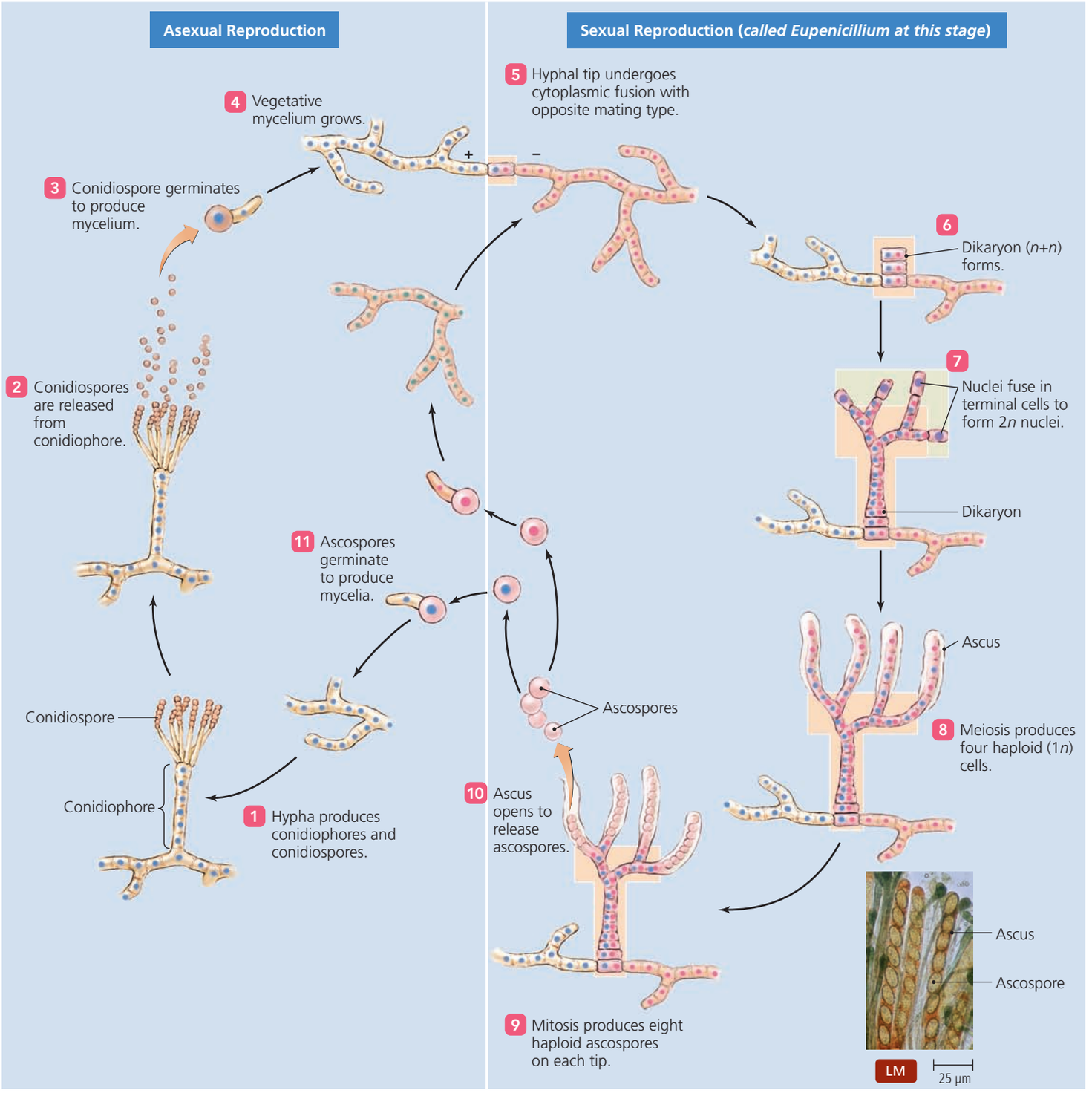
5 Multinucleate, hyphal tips of opposite mating types fuse to form a dikaryon.

6 The dikaryon reproduces to form hyphae whose cells are all dikaryotic.

7 In the dikaryon, nuclei of opposite mating types fuse to form a diploid nucleus.

▲ **Figure 12.21** **Ascocarps (fruiting bodies) of the common morel, *Morchella esculenta*, a delectable edible ascomycete.** The pits visible in this photograph are lined with asci, sacs that contain numerous ascospores.

[29]From Greek *askus*, meaning "wineskin."



▲ **Figure 12.22** **Life cycle of an ascomycete.**

8 Each diploid nucleus undergoes meiosis and cytokinesis to form four haploid cells within an ascus.

9 Each haploid cell may undergo mitosis and cytokinesis to form two haploid ascospores, resulting in eight ascospores, which line up inside the ascus.

10 The asci open to release their ascospores.

11 Each ascospore germinates to produce a + or – hypha.

Ascomycetes are familiar and economically important fungi. For example, most of the fungi that spoil food are ascomycetes. This group also includes plant pathogens, such as the causative agents of Dutch elm disease and chestnut blight, which have almost eliminated their host trees in many parts of the United States. *Claviceps purpurea* (klav´i-seps poor-poo´rē-ă) growing on grain produces *lysergic acid,* which causes abortions in cattle and hallucinations

in humans. *Aspergillus* can also infect humans (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: Aspergillosis** on p. 369).

On the other hand, many ascomycetes are beneficial. For example, *Penicillium* (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm) mold is the source of penicillin; *Saccharomyces,* which ferments sugar to produce alcohol and carbon dioxide gas, is the basis of the baking and brewing industries; and *truffles* (varieties of *Tuber*) grow as mycorrhizae in association with oak and beech trees to form culinary delights (see **Beneficial Microbes: Fungi for $3600 a Pound** on p. 367). As previously noted, another ascomycete, the pink bread mold *Neurospora* has been an important tool in genetics and biochemistry. Many ascomycetes partner with green algae or cyanobacteria to form *lichens,* which are discussed in more detail shortly.

Division Basidiomycota

A walk through fields and woods in most parts of the world may reveal mushrooms, puffballs, stinkhorns, jelly fungi, bird's nest fungi, or bracket fungi, all of which are the visible fruiting bodies of the almost 22,000 known species of fungi in the division **Basidiomycota.** Poisonous mushrooms are sometimes called *toadstools,* but there is no sure way to always distinguish an edible "mushroom" from a poisonous "toadstool" except by eating them—a truly risky practice!

Mushrooms and other fruiting bodies of *basidiomycetes* (ba-sid´ē-ō-mi-sēts) are called **basidiocarps** (Figure 12.23). The entire structure of a basidiocarp consists of tightly woven hyphae that extend into multiple, often club-shaped projections called *basidia,* the ends of which produce sexual *basidiospores* (typically four on each basidium). Figure 12.24 illustrates the life cycle of a poisonous mushroom (toadstool), *Amanita muscaria* (am-ă-nī´tă mus-ka´rē-ă).

Besides the edible mushrooms—most notably, cultivated *Agaricus* (a-gār´i-kus)—basidiomycetes affect humans in several ways. Most basidiomycetes are important decomposers that digest chemicals such as cellulose and lignin in dead plants and return nutrients to the soil. Many mushrooms produce toxins or hallucinatory chemicals. An example of the latter is *Psilocybe cubensis* (sil-ō-sī´bē kū-ben´sis), which produces *psilocybin,* a hallucinogenic chemical. The basidiomycete yeast *Cryptococcus neoformans* (krip-tō-kok´ŭs nē-ō-for´manz) is the leading cause of fungal meningitis. Other basidiomycetes are *rusts* and *smuts,* which cause millions of dollars in crop loss each year.

Deuteromycetes

As noted previously, the divisions Zygomycota, Ascomycota, and Basidiomycota are based on type of sexual spore produced. Because scientists have not observed sexual reproduction in all fungi, taxonomists in the middle of the 20th century created the division *Deuteromycota* (also called *imperfect fungi*) to contain the fungi whose sexual stages are unknown—either because they do not produce sexual spores or because their sexual spores have not been observed. More recently, however, the analysis of rRNA sequences has revealed that most deuteromycetes in fact belong in the division Ascomycota, and thus modern taxonomists have abandoned Deuteromycota as a formal taxon. Nevertheless, many medical laboratory technologists, health care practitioners, and scientists continue to refer to "deuteromycetes" because it is a traditional name.

▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Principles of Sexual Reproduction in Fungi***

Lichens

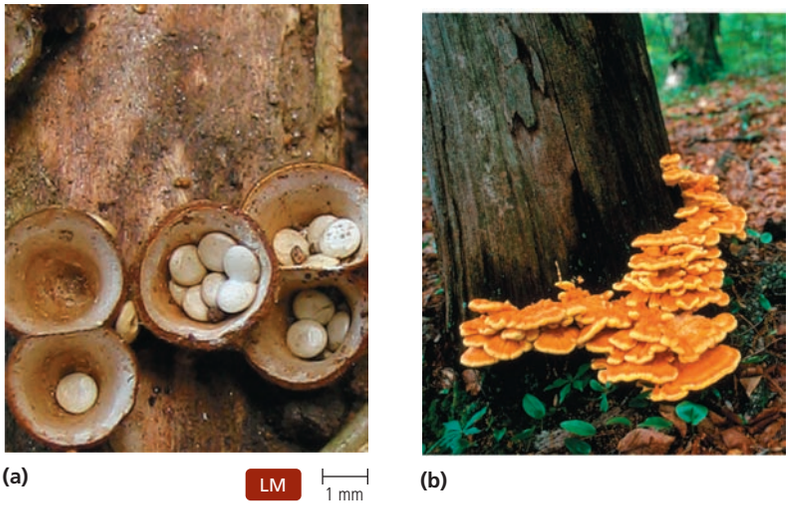
Learning Outcomes

12.21 Describe a lichen's members.

12.22 List several beneficial roles or functions of lichens.

A discussion of fungi is incomplete without considering **lichens,** which are partnerships between fungi and photosynthetic microbes—commonly cyanobacteria or, less frequently, green algae. In a lichen, the hyphae of the fungus, which is usually an ascomycete, surround the photosynthetic cells (Figure 12.25) and provide them nutrients, water, and protection from desiccation and harsh light. In return, each alga or cyanobacterium provides the fungus with products of photosynthesis—carbohydrates and oxygen. In some lichens, the phototroph releases 60% of its carbohydrates to the fungus.

The partnership in a lichen is not always mutually beneficial; in some lichens, the fungus produces haustoria that penetrate and kill the photosynthetic member. Such lichens are



◀ **Figure 12.23 Basidiocarps (fruiting bodies). (a)** Basidiospores, looking like flattened eggs in birds' nests, develop inside basidiocarps of the bird's nest fungus, *Crucibulum*. **(b)** The familiar shapes of bracket fungi and mushrooms are also basidiocarps of extensive mycelia. Shown here is *Laetiporus sulphureus*.

▶ Figure 12.24 Sexual life cycle of *Amanita muscaria*, a poisonous basidiomycete. *How can a novice distinguish edible from poisonous mushrooms?*

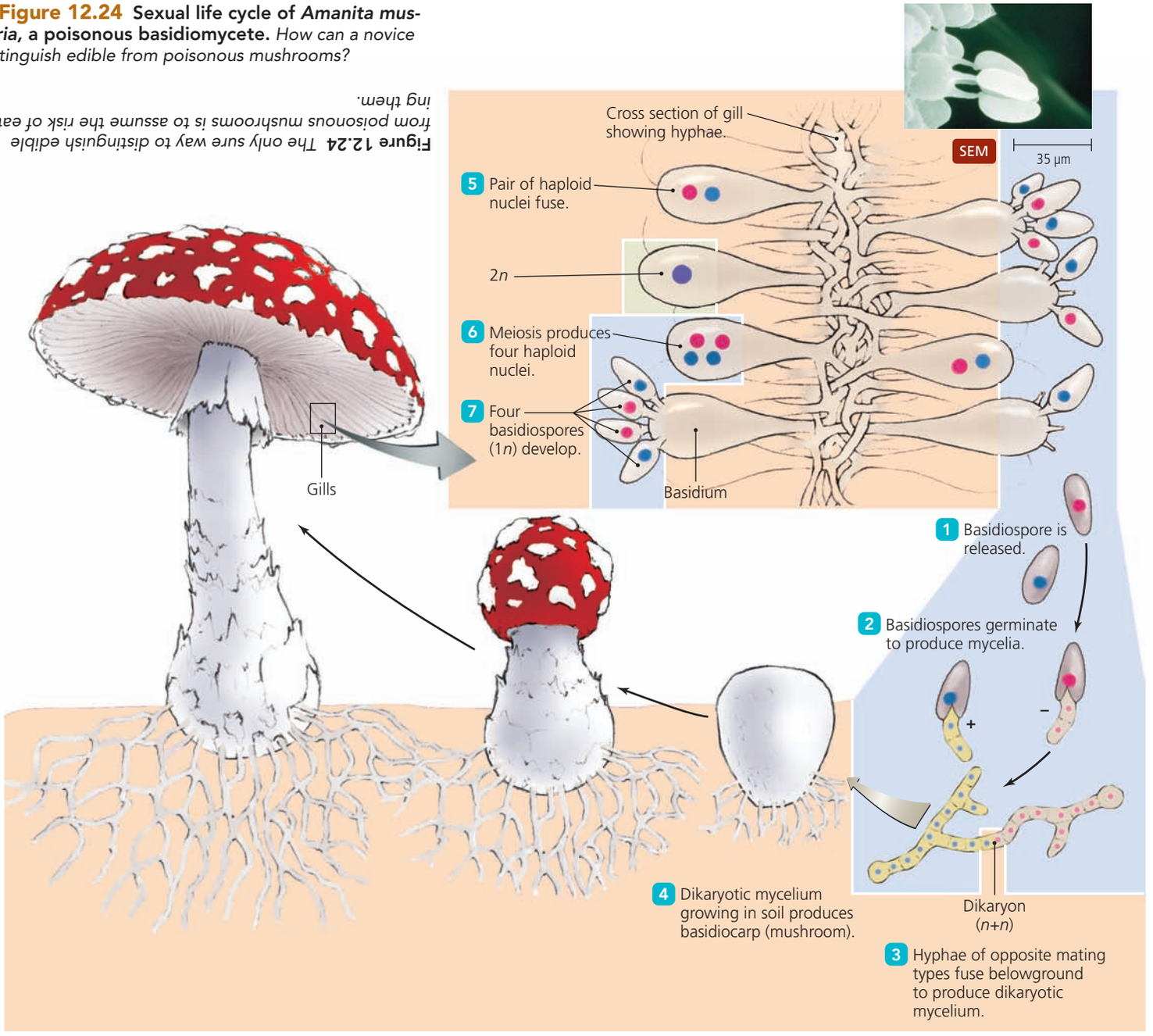


Figure 12.24 *The only sure way to distinguish edible from poisonous mushrooms is to assume the risk of eating them.*

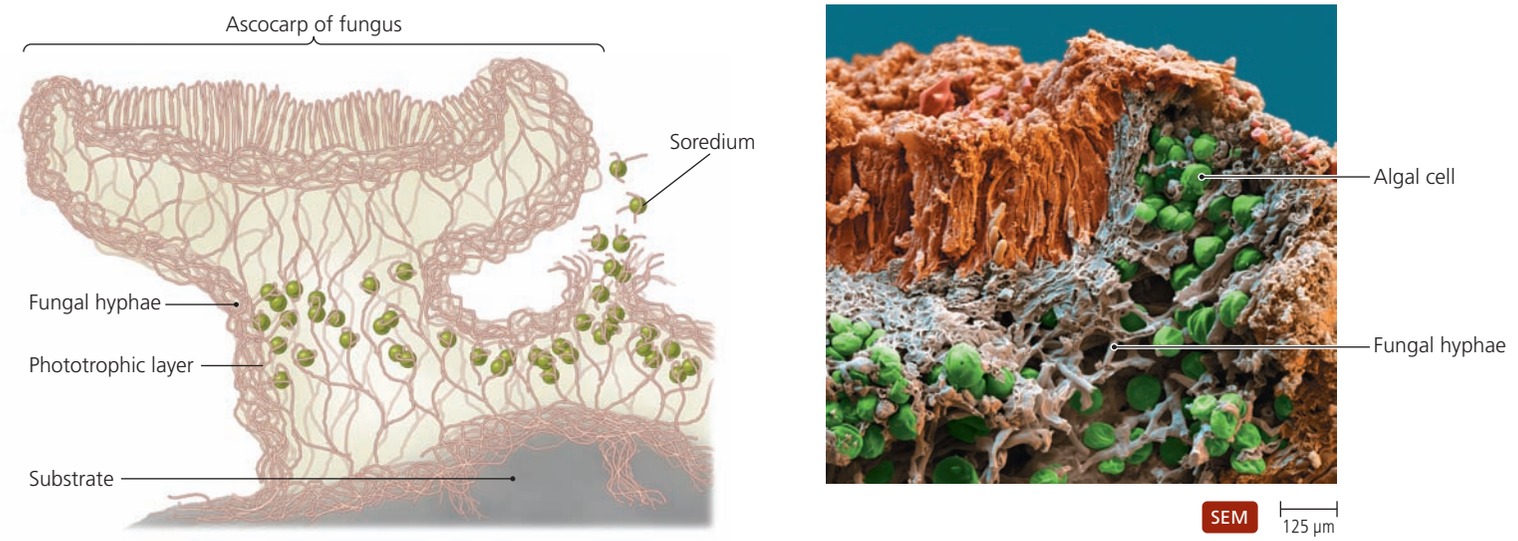
maintained only because the phototroph's cells reproduce faster than the fungus can devour them.

The fungus of a lichen reproduces by spores, which must germinate and develop into hyphae that capture an appropriate cyanobacterium or alga. Alternatively, wind, rain, and small animals disperse bits of lichen called *soredia*, which contain both phototrophs and fungal hyphae, to new locations where they can establish a new lichen if there is suitable substrate.

Scientists have identified over 14,000 species of lichens, which are abundant throughout the world, particularly in pristine unpolluted habitats, growing on soil, rocks, leaves, tree bark, other lichens, and even the backs of tortoises. Indeed, lichens grow in almost every habitat—from high-elevation alpine tundra to submerged rocks on the oceans' shores, from frozen Antarctic soil to hot desert climes. The only unpolluted places where lichens do not consistently grow are in the dark depths of the oceans and the black world of caves—after all, lichens require light.

Lichens grow slowly, but they can live for hundreds and possibly thousands of years. They occur in three basic shapes **(Figure 12.26)**:

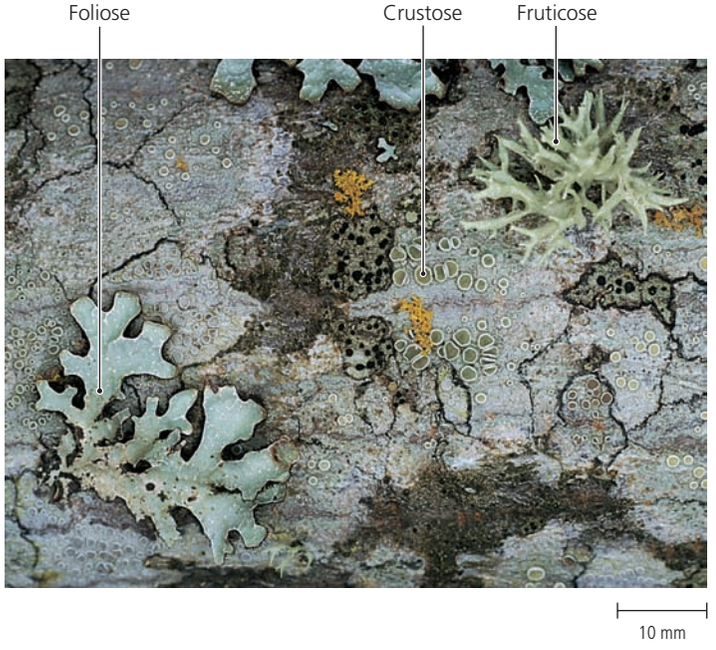
- *Foliose* lichens are leaflike, with margins that grow free from the substrate.
- *Crustose* lichens grow appressed to their substrates and may extend into the substrate for several millimeters.
- *Fruticose* lichens are either erect or are hanging cylinders.



▲ Figure 12.25 Makeup of a lichen. The hyphae of a fungus (most commonly an ascomycete) constitute the major portion of the thallus of the lichen. Cells of the photosynthetic member of the lichen are concentrated near the lichen's surface. Soredia, which are bits of fungus surrounding phototrophic cells, are the means by which some lichens propagate themselves. *Members of what two groups of photosynthetic microbes can be part of a lichen?*

Figure 12.25 *Cyanobacteria or green algae can join ascomycetes to form lichens.*

Lichens create soil from weathered rocks, and lichens containing nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria provide nitrogen to nutrient-poor environments. Many animals eat lichens; for example, reindeer and caribou subsist primarily on lichens throughout the winter. Birds use lichens for nesting materials, and some insects camouflage themselves with bits of living lichen. Humans also use lichens in the production of foods, dyes, clothing, perfumes, medicines, and the litmus of indicator paper. Because lichens will not grow well in polluted environments, ecologists use them as sensitive living assays for monitoring air pollution.



▲ Figure 12.26 Gross morphology of lichens. Crustose forms are flat and tightly joined to the substrate, here a branch; foliose forms are leaflike with free margins; and fruticose forms are either erect (as shown) or pendulant.

In the preceding sections, we have seen that fungi are chemoheterotrophic yeasts and molds that function primarily to decompose and degrade dead organisms. Some fungi are pathogenic, and others associate with cyanobacteria or algae to form lichens. All fungi reproduce asexually either by budding or via asexual spores, and most fungi also produce sexual spores, by which taxonomists classify them. Table 12.3 summarizes the characteristics of fungi.

TABLE 12.3 Characteristics of Fungi

Division and Type of Sexual Spore	Comments	Representative Genera
Zygomycota Zygospores	Coenocytic (aseptate)	*Rhizopus*
Ascomycota Ascospores	Septate; some associated with cyanobacteria or green algae to form lichens	*Claviceps, Neurospora, Penicillium, Saccharomyces, Tuber*
Basidiomycota Basidiospores	Septate	*Agaricus, Amanita, Cryptococcus*

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Design a dichotomous key for the genera of fungi discussed in this section.

Algae

Learning Outcome

12.23 Describe the distinguishing characteristic of algae.

The Romans used the word *alga* (al′ga) to refer to any simple aquatic plant, particularly one found in marine habitats. Their usage thus included the organisms we recognize as algae (al′jē), cyanobacteria, sea grasses, and other aquatic plants. Today, the word *algae* properly refers to simple, eukaryotic, phototrophic organisms that, like plants, carry out oxygenic photosynthesis using chlorophyll *a*. Algae differ from plants such as sea grass in having sexual reproductive structures in which every cell becomes a gamete. In plants, by contrast, a portion of the reproductive structure always remains vegetative.

Algae are not a unified group; rather, they differ widely in distribution, morphology, reproduction, and biochemical traits. Moreover, the word *algae* is not synonymous with any taxon; in the taxonomic scheme shown in Figure 12.4c, algae can be found in kingdoms Alveolata, Euglenozoa, Stramenopila, Rhodophyta, and Plantae. The study of algae is *phycology*,[30] and the scientists that study them are called *phycologists*.

Distribution of Algae

Even though some algae grow in such diverse habitats as in soil and ice, in intimate association with fungi as lichens, and on plants, most algae are aquatic, living in the *photic zone* (penetrated by sunlight) of fresh, brackish, and salt bodies of water.

[30]From Greek *phykos*, meaning "seaweed," and *logos*, meaning "discourse."

This watery environment provides some benefits and also presents some difficulties for photosynthetic organisms. Whereas most bodies of water contain sufficient dissolved chemicals to provide nutrients for algae, water also differentially absorbs longer wavelengths of light (including red light), so only shorter (blue) wavelengths penetrate more than a meter below the surface. This is problematic for algae because their primary photosynthetic pigment—chlorophyll *a*—captures red light. Thus, to grow in deeper waters, algae must have *accessory photosynthetic pigments* that trap the energy of penetrating, short-wavelength light and pass that energy to chlorophyll *a*. Members of the group of algae known as red algae, for example, contain a red pigment that absorbs blue light, enabling red algae to inhabit even the deepest parts of the photic zone.

Morphology of Algae

Algae can be unicellular or colonial, or they can have simple multicellular bodies called thalli, which are commonly composed of branched filaments or sheets. The thalli of large marine algae, commonly called seaweeds, can be relatively complex, with branched *holdfasts* to anchor them to rocks, stemlike *stipes*, and leaflike *blades*. The thalli of many of the larger marine algae are buoyed in the water by gas-filled bulbs called *pneumocysts* (see Figure 12.30). Though the thalli of some marine algae can surpass land plants in length, they lack the well-developed transport systems common to vascular plants.

Reproduction of Algae

Learning Outcome

12.24 Describe the alternation of generations in algae.

In unicellular algae, asexual reproduction involves mitosis followed by cytokinesis. In unicellular algae that reproduce sexually, each algal cell acts as a gamete and fuses with another such gamete to form a zygote, which then undergoes meiosis to return to the haploid state.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

FUNGI FOR $3600 A POUND

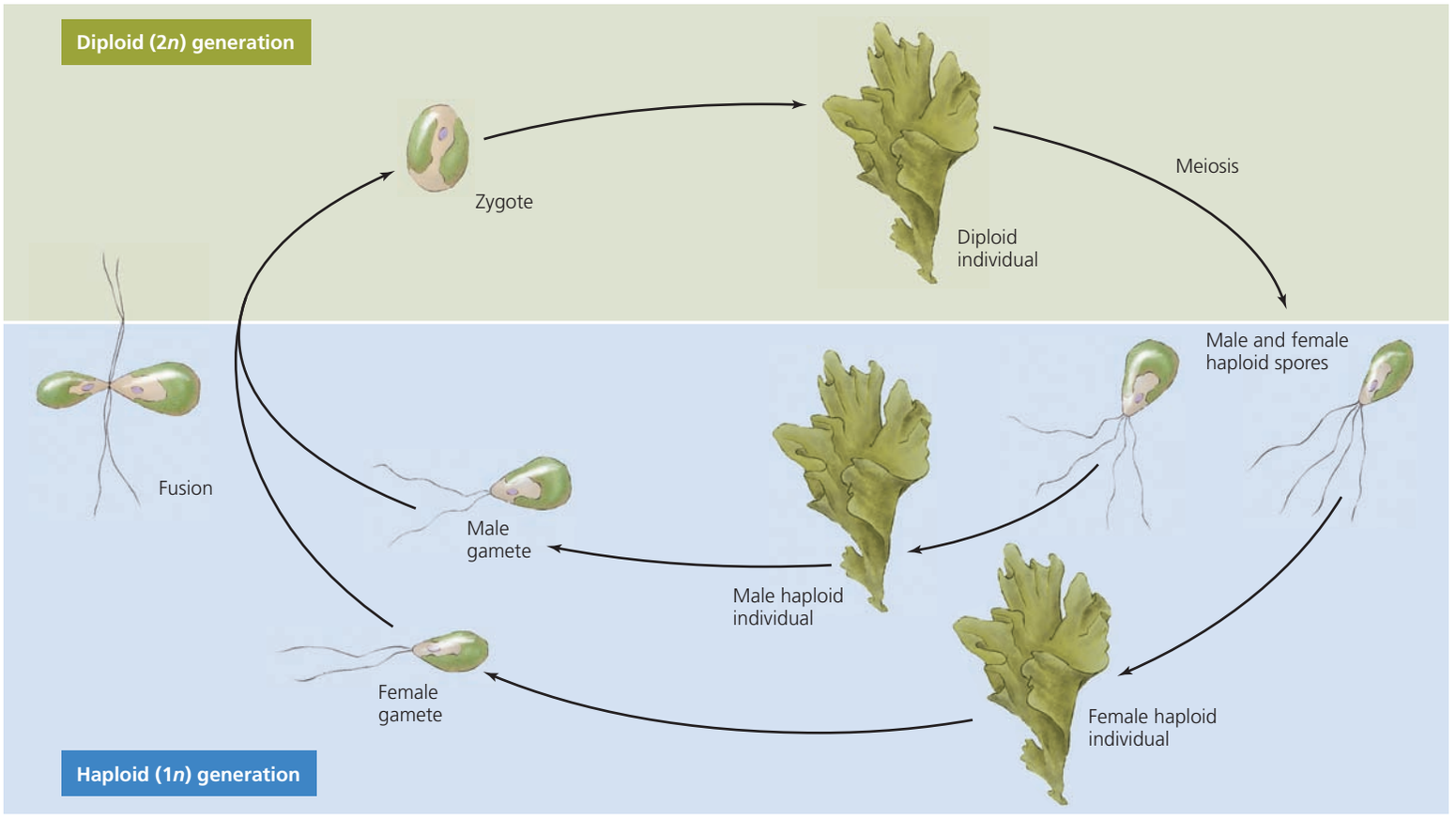
Tuber melanosporum.

Truffles—rare, intensely flavored ascomycetes that grow underground—are one of the most luxurious and expensive foods on Earth, selling on average for more than $800 per pound. There are many different varieties of truffles. The most coveted include *Tuber melanosporum*, a black truffle that is also known as the "black diamond," and *Tuber magnatum*, a white truffle that can sell for $3600 per pound!

Because truffles are very difficult to find, truffle hunters often use pigs and dogs trained to sniff them out. (Dogs are preferred because pigs are more likely to eat the truffles.) Dogs may be trained at the University of Truffle Hunting Dogs founded in 1880.

The underground habitat of truffles requires them to form symbiotic relationships with trees for nutrients and with animals, such as squirrels and chipmunks, for spore dispersal—the animals dig up the truffles and thus help spread the spores to other locations.

Incidentally, chocolate truffles derive only their name from their prized fungal counterparts.



▲ Figure 12.27 Alternation of generations in algae, as occurs in the green alga *Ulva*.
A diploid individual meiotically produces haploid spores that germinate and grow into male and female thalli. These haploid algae produce gametes that fuse to form a diploid zygote, which grows into a new diploid individual. Each generation can also reproduce asexually by fragmentation and by spores.

Multicellular algae may reproduce asexually by fragmentation, in which each piece of a parent alga develops into a new individual, or by motile or nonmotile asexual spores. As noted previously, in multicellular algae that reproduce sexually, every cell in the reproductive structures of the alga becomes a gamete—a feature that distinguishes algae from all other photosynthetic eukaryotes.

Many multicellular algae reproduce sexually with an **alternation of generations** of haploid and diploid individuals **(Figure 12.27)**. In such life cycles, diploid individuals undergo meiosis to produce male and female haploid spores that develop into haploid male and female thalli, which may look identical to the diploid thallus. In some algae, each of these thalli produces gametes that fuse to form a zygote, which grows into a new diploid thallus. Both haploid and diploid thalli may reproduce asexually as well.

Classification of Algae

Learning Outcomes

12.25 List four groups of algae and describe the distinguishing characteristics of each.

12.26 List several economic benefits derived from algae.

The classification of algae is not yet settled. Historically, taxonomists have used differences in photosynthetic pigments, storage products, and cell wall composition to classify algae into several groups that are named for the colors of their photosynthetic pigments: green algae, red algae, brown algae, golden algae, and yellow-green algae. The following sections present some of these groups. We begin with the green algae of the division Chlorophyta.

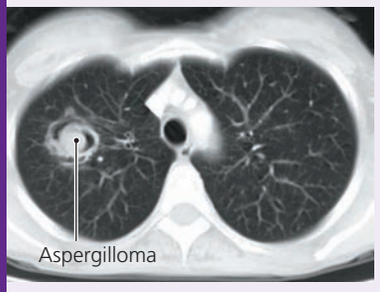
Division Chlorophyta (Green Algae)

Chlorophyta[31] are green algae that share numerous characteristics with plants—they have chlorophylls *a* and *b* and use sugar and starch as food reserves. Many have cell walls composed of cellulose, while others have walls of glycoprotein or lack walls entirely. In addition, the 18S rRNA sequences of green algae and plants are comparable. Because of the similarities, green algae are often considered to be the progenitors of plants, and in some taxonomic schemes the Chlorophyta are placed in the kingdom Plantae.

Most green algae are unicellular or filamentous (see Figure 1.7a in Chapter 1) and live in freshwater ponds, lakes, and pools, where they form green to yellow scum. Some multicellular forms grow in the marine intertidal zone—that is, in the region exposed to air during low tide.

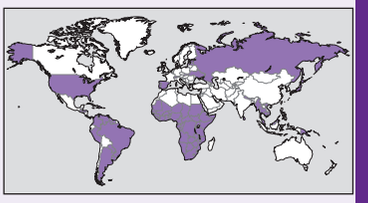
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

ASPERGILLOSIS



Matt was not in good shape, and it had nothing to do with his physique or time spent at the gym; it had to do with the ball of fungus in his right lung. That fungal sphere had started as a single spore of an ascomycete fungus called *Aspergillus*. The mold had formed a spherical mass of fungal hyphae that was invading the airways of his lung and slowly killing him. Such bronchopulmonary aspergillosis is a rare but increasingly frequent pathogen of the immunocompromised. Besides experiencing difficulty in breathing, fever, and chest pain, Matt most hated coughing up wads of bloody mucus—as if he were expelling the very fabric of his life. In fact, he literally was coughing up pieces of his lung.

Unfortunately for Matt, the disease had not yet peaked. *Aspergillus* had invaded his blood and was even now progressing toward his brain. Soon the signs and symptoms of invasive aspergillosis would be his—extreme tiredness, excessive weakness, severe headaches, and delirium. All would be his daily companions. He might also be paralyzed on one side of his body.



Matt spent four weeks in the hospital. The worst days were those when he was aware. The sheer terror of knowing his brain was being pierced by thin hyphal threads, digesting his personality away, was almost more than Matt could stand. He looked forward to the times he would lapse into unconsciousness, even though he knew that each period of wakefulness might be his last.

A medical miracle in the form of a new antifungal drug (voriconazole) brought Matt back to life. The invasive mold was defeated, and Matt returned home grateful, aware that life is precious and hopeful that no more spores floated his way.

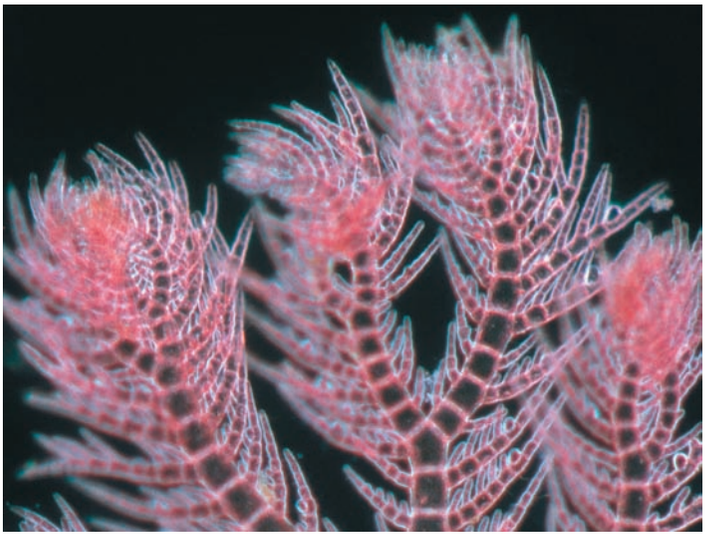
Prototheca (prō-tō-thē´kă) is an unusual green alga in that it lacks pigments, making it colorless. This chemoheterotrophic alga causes a skin rash in sensitive individuals. *Codium* (kō´dē-ŭm) is a member of a group of marine green algae that do not form cross walls after mitosis; thus, its entire thallus is a single, large, multinucleate cell. Some Polynesians dry and grind *Codium* for use as seasoning pepper. The green alga *Trebouxia* (tre-book'sē-a) is the most common alga found in association with fungi in lichens.

CRITICAL THINKING

Since *Prototheca* is colorless, how do scientists know that it is really a green alga?

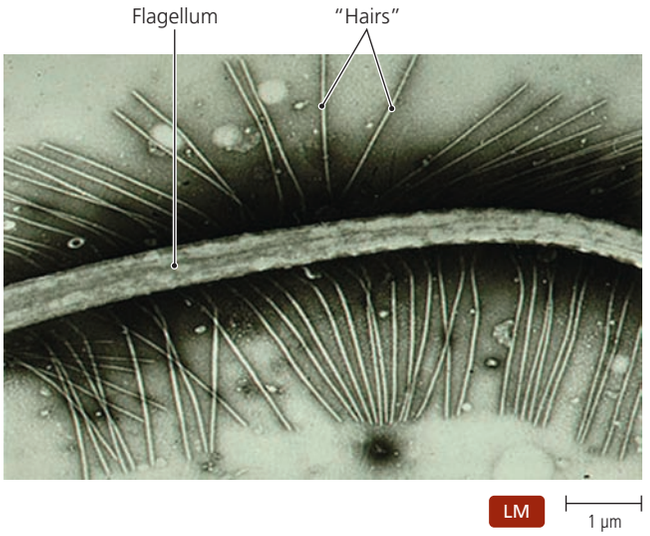
Kingdom Rhodophyta (Red Algae)

Algae of division **Rhodophyta,**[32] which had been placed historically in kingdom Plantae and then Protista, are now in their own kingdom—Rhodophyta. They are characterized by the red accessory pigment **phycoerythrin;** the storage molecule glycogen (also known as *floridean*[33] *starch*); cell walls of **agar** or **carrageenan** (kar-ă-gē'nan), sometimes supplemented with calcium carbonate; and nonmotile male gametes called *spermatia*. Phycoerythrin allows red algae to absorb short-wavelength blue light and photosynthesize at depths greater than 100 meters. Because the relative proportions of phycoerythrin and chlorophyll *a* vary, red algae range in color from green to black in the intertidal zone to red in deeper water **(Figure 12.28)**. Most red algae are marine, though a few freshwater genera are known.

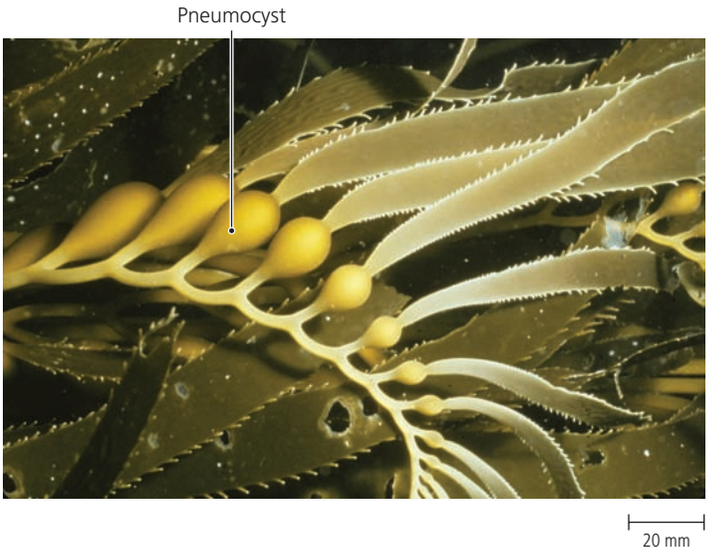


▲ **Figure 12.28** ***Pterothamnion plumula*, a red alga.**

[31] From Greek *chloros*, meaning "green," and *phyton*, meaning "plant."
[32] From Greek *rhodon*, meaning "rose."
[33] Named for a taxon of red algae, Florideophycidae.



▲ **Figure 12.29 Hairy flagellum.** The "hairy" flagellum of brown algae and other stramenopiles is distinctive.



▲ **Figure 12.30 Portion of the giant kelp *Macrocystis*, a brown alga.** A kelp's blades are kept afloat by pneumocysts.

The gel-like polysaccharides agar and carrageenan, once they have been isolated from red algae such as *Gelidium* (jel-li´dē-ŭm) and *Chondrus* (kon´drŭs), are used as thickening agents for the production of solid microbiological media and numerous consumer products, including ice cream, toothpaste, syrup, salad dressings, and snack foods. Some studies suggest that ingested carrageenan can induce inflammation of the colon.

Phaeophyta (Brown Algae)

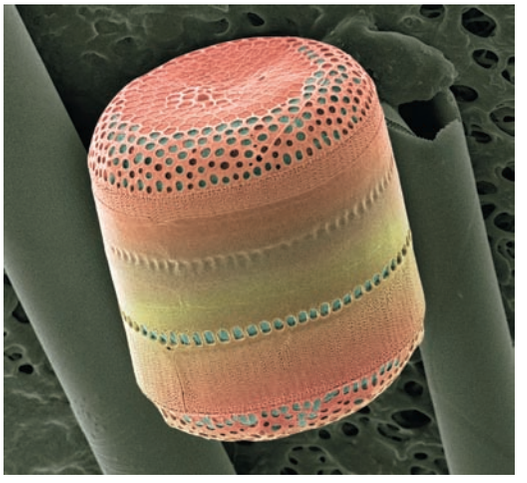
The **Phaeophyta**[34] are in kingdom Stramenopila[35] based in large part on their gametes being motile by means of two flagella—one whiplike and one with hollow projections giving it a "hairy" appearance **(Figure 12.29)**. They have chlorophylls *a* and *c*, carotene, and brown pigments called *xanthophylls* (zan´thō-fils). Depending on the relative amounts of these pigments, brown algae may appear dark brown, tan, yellow-brown, greenish brown, or green. Most brown algae are marine organisms, and some of the giant kelps, such as *Macrocystis* **(Figure 12.30)**, surpass the tallest trees in length though not in girth.

Brown algae use the polysaccharide *laminarin* and oils as food reserves and have cell walls composed of cellulose and **alginic acid** (alginate). Alginic acid is used in numerous foods as a thickening agent and in medicine in the preparation of dental impressions.

Chrysophyta (Golden Algae, Yellow-Green Algae, and Diatoms)

Chrysophyta[36] is a group of algae that are diverse with respect to cell wall composition and pigments. They are unified in using the polysaccharide *chrysolaminarin* as a storage product. Some additionally store oils. Modern taxonomists group these algae with brown algae and water molds (discussed shortly) in the kingdom Stramenopila based on similarities in nucleotide sequences and flagellar structure. Whereas some chrysophytes lack cell walls, others have ornate external coverings, such as scales or plates. One taxon of chrysophytes, Bacillariophyceae—the **diatoms** (dī´ă-tomz)—are unique in having silica cell walls composed of two halves called *frustules* that fit together like a Petri dish **(Figure 12.31)**.

Most chrysophytes are unicellular or colonial. All chrysophytes contain more orange-colored *carotene* pigment than they do chlorophylls *a* and *c*, accounting for the common names of two major classes of chrysophytes—*golden algae* and *yellow-green algae.*



▲ **Figure 12.31 *Coscinodiscus*, a diatom.** Diatoms have frustules, composed of silica and cellulose, that fit together like a Petri dish.

[34]From Greek *phaeo*, meaning "brown."
[35]From Latin *stramen*, meaning "straw," and *pilos*, meaning "hair."
[36]From Greek *chrysos*, meaning "gold."

Diatoms are a major component of marine *phytoplankton:* free-floating photosynthetic microorganisms that form the basis of food chains in the oceans. Further, because of their enormous number, diatoms are the major source of the world's oxygen. The silica frustules of diatoms contain minute holes for the exchange of gases, nutrients, and wastes with the environment. Organic gardeners use *diatomaceous earth,* composed of innumerable frustules of dead diatoms, as a pesticide against harmful insects and worms. Diatomaceous earth is also used in polishing compounds, detergents, and paint removers and as a component of firebrick, soundproofing products, swimming pool filters, and reflective paints.

In summary, algae are unicellular or multicellular photoautotrophs characterized by sexual reproductive structures in which every cell becomes a gamete. The colors produced by the combination of their primary and accessory photosynthetic pigments give them their common names and provide the basis of at least one classification scheme. **Table 12.4** summarizes the characteristics of the major groups of algae; the dinoflagellates and euglenids are included in the table because botanists historically classified these phototrophic protozoa as algae.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Design a dichotomous key for the genera of algae discussed in this section.

Water Molds

Learning Outcome

12.27 List four ways in which water molds differ from true fungi.

Scientists once classified the microbes commonly known as **water molds** as fungi because they resemble filamentous fungi in having finely branched filaments. However, water molds are not true molds; they are not fungi. Water molds differ from fungi in the following ways:

- They have tubular cristae in their mitochondria.
- They have cell walls of cellulose instead of chitin.
- Their spores have two flagella—one whiplike and one "hairy."
- They have true diploid bodies rather than haploid bodies.

Because water molds have "hairy" flagella and certain similarities in rRNA sequence to sequences of diatoms, other chrysophytes, and brown algae, taxonomists classify all these organisms in kingdom Stramenopila (see Figure 12.4c).

Water molds decompose dead animals and return nutrients to the environment **(Figure 12.32)**. Some species are detrimental pathogens of crops, such as grapes, tobacco, and soybeans. In 1845, the water mold *Phytophthora infestans* (fī-tof´tho-ră in-fes´tanz) was accidentally introduced into Ireland and devastated the potato crop, causing the great famine that killed over 1 million people and forced a greater number to emigrate the United States and Canada.

TABLE 12.4 Characteristics of Various Algae

Group (Common Name)	Kingdom	Pigments	Storage Product(s)	Cell Wall Component(s)	Habitat	Representative Genera
Chlorophyta (green algae)	Plantae	Chlorophylls *a* and *b*, carotene, xanthophylls	Sugar, starch	Cellulose or glycoprotein; absent in some	Fresh, brackish, and salt water; terrestrial	*Spirogyra* *Prototheca* *Codium* *Trebouxia*
Rhodophyta (red algae)	Rhodophyta	Chlorophyll *a*, phycoerythrin, phycocyanin, xanthophylls	Glycogen (floridean starch)	Agar or carrageenan, some with calcium carbonate	Mostly salt water	*Chondrus* *Gelidium* *Antithamnion*
Chrysophyta (golden algae, yellow-green algae, diatoms)	Stramenopila	Chlorophylls *a*, c_1 and c_2; carotene; xanthophylls	Chrysolaminarin, oils	Cellulose, silica, calcium carbonate	Fresh, brackish, and salt water; terrestrial; ice	*Stephanodiscus*
Phaeophyta (brown algae)	Stramenopila	Chlorophylls *a* and *c*, carotene, xanthophylls	Laminarin, oils	Cellulose and alginic acid	Brackish and salt water	*Macrocystis*
Pyrrhophyta (dinoflagellates)	Alveolata	Chlorophylls *a*, c_1, c_2; carotene	Starch, oils	Cellulose	Fresh, brackish, and salt water	*Gymnodinium* *Gonyaulax* *Pfiesteria*
Euglenophyta (euglenids)	Euglenozoa	Chlorophylls *a* and *b*, carotene	Paramylon, oils, sugar	Absent	Fresh, brackish, and salt water; terrestrial	*Euglena*

▲ **Figure 12.32** An example of the important role of water molds in recycling organic nutrients in aquatic habitats.

Other Eukaryotes of Microbiological Interest: Parasitic Helminths and Vectors

Learning Outcomes

12.28 Explain why microbiologists study large organisms, such as parasitic worms.

12.29 Discuss the inclusion of vectors in a study of microbiology.

Microbiologists are interested also in two other groups of eukaryotes, although they are not microorganisms. The first group are the parasitic *helminths,* commonly called parasitic worms. Microbiologists became interested in parasitic helminths because they observed the microscopic infective and diagnostic stages of the helminths—usually eggs or larvae (immature forms)—in samples of blood, feces, and urine. Thus, microbiologists study parasitic helminths in part because they must distinguish the parasites' microscopic forms from other microbes. (Chapter 14 discusses parasitism and other relationships that exist among microbes and other organisms.)

Microbiologists are also interested in **arthropod vectors**[37]—animals that carry pathogens and have segmented bodies, hard external skeletons, and jointed legs. Some arthropods are *mechanical vectors,* meaning they merely carry pathogens; others are *biological vectors,* meaning they also serve as hosts for microbial pathogens. Given that arthropods are small organisms (so small that we generally don't notice them until they bite us) and given that they produce numerous offspring, controlling arthropod vectors to eliminate their role in the transmission of important human diseases is an almost insurmountable task.

Disease vectors belong to two classes of arthropods: *Arachnida* and *Insecta.* Ticks and mites are arachnoid vectors. (Though spiders are also arachnids, they do not transmit diseases.) Insects account for the greatest number of vectors, and within this group are fleas, lice, flies (such as tsetse flies and mosquitoes), and true bugs (such as kissing bugs). **Figure 12.33** shows representatives of major types of arthropod vectors. Most vectors are found on a host only when they are actively feeding. Lice are the only arthropods that may spend their entire lives in association with a single individual host.

[37] From Latin *vectus*, meaning "carried."

Arachnids

Learning Outcomes

12.30 Describe the distinctive features of arachnids.

12.31 List five diseases vectored by ticks and two diseases vectored by mites.

All adult **arachnids** (ă-rak´nidz) have four pairs of legs. Both **ticks** and **mites** (commonly known as chiggers) go through a six-leg stage when they are juveniles, but they display the characteristic eight legs as adults. Ticks and mites resemble each other morphologically, having disk-shaped bodies. Ticks are roughly the size of a small rice grain, whereas mites are usually the size of sand grains.

Ticks are the most important arachnid vectors. They are distributed worldwide and serve as vectors for bacterial, viral, and protozoan diseases. Ticks are second only to mosquitoes in the number of diseases that they transmit. Hard ticks—those with a hard plate on their dorsal surfaces—are the most prominent tick vectors. They wait on stalks of grasses and brush for their hosts to come by. When a human, for example, walks past them, the ticks leap onto the person and begin searching for exposed skin. They use their mouthparts to cut holes in the skin and attach themselves with a gluelike compound to prevent being dislodged. As they feed on blood, their bodies swell to several times normal size. Some tick-borne diseases are Lyme disease, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, tularemia, relapsing fever, and tick-borne encephalitis.

Parasitic mites of humans live around the world, wherever humans and animals coexist. A few mite species transmit rickettsial diseases (rickettsial pox and scrub typhus) among animals and humans.

Insects

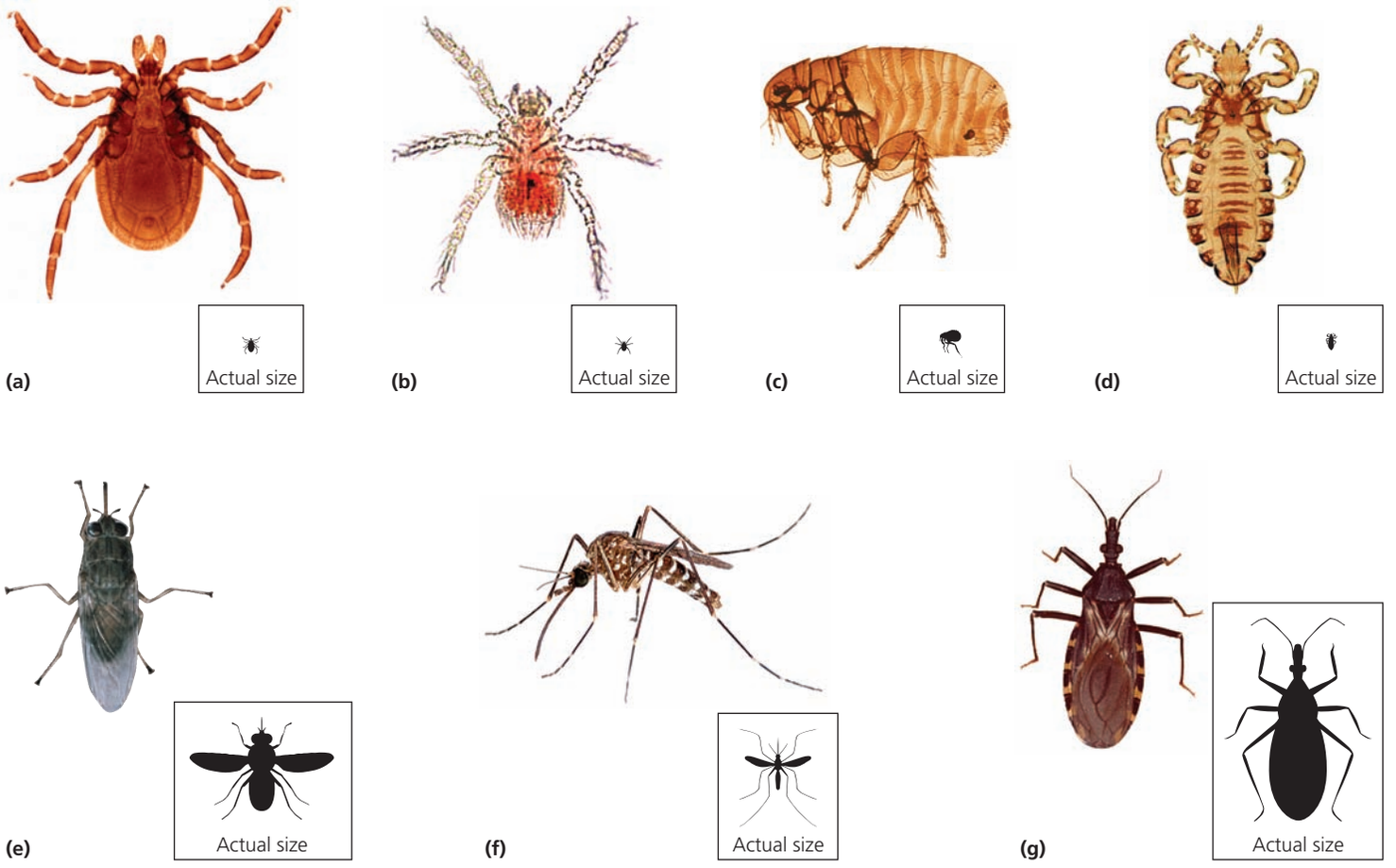
Learning Outcomes

12.32 Describe the general physical features of insects and the features specific to the various groups of insect vectors.

12.33 List diseases transmitted by fleas, lice, true flies, mosquitoes, and kissing bugs.

As adults, all **insects** have three pairs of legs and three body regions—head, thorax (chest), and abdomen. Adult insects are, however, far from uniform in appearance. Some have two wings, others have four wings, and others are wingless; some have long legs, some short; and some have biting mouthparts, whereas other have sucking mouthparts. Many insects have larval stages that look very different from the adults, complicating their identification.

The fact that many insects can fly has epidemiological implications. Flying insects have broader home ranges than nonflying insects, and some migrate, making control difficult.



▲ **Figure 12.33 Representative arthropod vectors.** Arachnid vectors include **(a)** ticks and **(b)** mites; insect vectors include **(c)** fleas, **(d)** lice, **(e)** true flies, such as this tsetse fly, **(f)** mosquitoes (a type of fly), and **(g)** true bugs.

Fleas are small, vertically flattened, wingless arthropods that are found worldwide, though some species have geographically limited ranges. Most are found in association with wild rodents, bats, and birds and are not encountered by humans. A few species, however, feed on humans. Cat and dog fleas are usually just pests (to the animal and its owner), but they can also serve as the intermediate host for a dog tapeworm, *Dipylidium* (dip-ĭ-lid´ē-ŭm). The most significant microbial disease transmitted by fleas is plague, carried by rat fleas.

Lice (singular: *louse*) are parasites that can also transmit disease. They are horizontally flat, soft-bodied, wingless insects found worldwide among humans and their habitations. They live in clothing and bedding and move onto humans to feed. Lice are most common among the poor and those living in severely overcrowded communities. Lice are the vectors involved in epidemic outbreaks of typhus in developing countries.

Flies are among the more common insects, and many different species are found around the world. Flies differ greatly in size, but all have at least two wings and fairly well developed body segments. Not all flies transmit disease, but those that do are usually bloodsuckers. Female sand flies (*Phlebotomus;* fle-bot´ō-mŭs) transmit leishmaniasis in North Africa, the Middle East, Europe, and parts of Asia. Tsetse flies (*Glossina;* glo-sī´nă) are limited geographically to tropical Africa, where they are found in brushy areas and transmit African sleeping sickness.

Mosquitoes are a type of fly, though they are morphologically distinct from other fly species. Female mosquitoes are thin and have wings, elongated bodies, long antennae, long legs, and a long proboscis for feeding on blood. Male mosquitoes do not feed on blood. Mosquitoes are found throughout the world, but particular species are geographically limited. Mosquitoes are the most important arthropod vectors of diseases, and they carry the pathogens that cause malaria, yellow fever, dengue fever, filariasis, viral encephalitis, and Rift Valley fever.

Kissing bugs are relatively large, winged, true bugs with cone-shaped heads and wide abdomens. They are called kissing bugs because of their tendency to take blood meals near the mouths of their hosts. Both sexes feed nocturnally while their victims sleep. Kissing bugs transmit disease in Central and South America. The most important disease they transmit is Chagas' disease.

MasteringMicrobiology®

Make the invisible visible:
Scan this QR code with your smart phone to engage with Dr. Bauman in a Video Tutor about Principles of Sexual Reproduction in Fungi. Then visit the Study MasteringMicrobiology Study Area to test your knowledge with practice tests, animation quizzes, and clinical case studies!

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

General Characteristics of Eukaryotic Organisms (pp. 345–349)

1. A typical eukaryotic nucleus may be **haploid** (having a single copy of each chromosome) or **diploid** (having two copies). It divides by **mitosis** in four phases—**prophase, metaphase, anaphase,** and **telophase**—resulting in two nuclei with the same ploidy as the original.
2. **Meiosis** is nuclear division that results in four nuclei, each with half the ploidy of the original.
3. A cell's cytoplasm divides by **cytokinesis** either during or after nuclear division.
4. **Coenocytes** are multinucleate cells resulting from repeated mitoses but postponed or no cytokinesis.
5. Some microbes undergo multiple mitoses by **schizogony** to form a multinucleate **schizont,** which then undergoes cytokinesis.
6. The classification of eukaryotic microbes is problematic and has changed frequently. Historical schemes based on similarities in morphology and chemistry have been replaced with schemes based on nucleotide sequences and ultrastructural features.

Protozoa (pp. 349–357)

1. **Protozoa** (studied by protozoologists) are eukaryotic, unicellular organisms that lack cell walls. Most of them are chemoheterotrophs.
2. A motile **trophozoite** is the feeding stage of a typical protozoan. A **cyst,** a resting stage that is resilient to environmental changes, is formed by some protozoa.
3. A few protozoa undergo sexual reproduction by forming **gametocytes** that fuse to form a **zygote.**
4. Protozoa may be classified into six groups: parabasalids, diplomonads, euglenozoa, alveolates, rhizaria, and amoebozoa.
5. Parabasalids (e.g., *Trichomonas*) are characterized by a Golgi body–like structure called a parabasal body.
6. Members of the Diplomonadida lack mitochondria, Golgi bodies, and peroxisomes.
7. Unicellular flagellated **euglenids** are euglenozoa that store food as paramylon, lack cell walls, and have eyespots used in positive phototaxis. Because they exhibit characteristics of both animals and plants, they are a taxonomic problem.
8. A **kinetoplastid** is a euglenozoan with a single, large, apical mitochondrion that contains a kinetoplast, which is a region of DNA.
9. Alveolates, with cavities called alveoli beneath their cell surfaces, include **ciliate** alveolates (characterized by cilia), **apicomplexans** (all are pathogenic), and **dinoflagellates** (responsible for **red tides**).
10. Protozoa that move and feed with pseudopods are **amoebae**, which are classified into two kingdoms: Rhizaria and Amoebozoa. Rhizaria include **foraminifera,** which have threadlike pseudopods and calcium carbonate shells, and **radiolaria,** which have threadlike pseudopods and silica shells.
11. Amoebozoa have lobe-shaped pseudopodia. The latter include free-living amoebae, parasitic amoebae, and slime molds. **Slime molds** lack cell walls and are phagocytic in their nutrition.
12. **Plasmodial** (acellular) **slime molds** are composed of multinucleate cytoplasm. **Cellular slime molds** are composed of myxamoebae that phagocytize bacteria and yeasts.

Fungi (pp. 357–366)

1. **Fungi** (studied by mycologists) are chemoheterotrophic eukaryotes with cell walls usually composed of **chitin.**
2. Most fungi are beneficial, but some produce **mycoses** (fungal diseases).
3. The nonreproductive body of a filamentous fungus (mold) or yeast (unicellular fungus) is a **thallus.** Mold thalli are composed of tubular filaments called **hyphae.**
4. Hyphae are described as either **septate** or **aseptate** depending on the presence of cross walls. A **mycelium** is a tangled mass of hyphae.
5. A **dimorphic** fungus has either type of thallus, depending on environmental conditions.
6. Most fungi are **saprobes**—they acquire nutrients by absorption from dead organisms; others get nutrients from living organisms using **haustoria** that penetrate host tissues.
7. Fungi reproduce asexually either by budding or via asexual spores, which are categorized according to their mode of development. Most fungi also reproduce sexually via sexual spores.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Principles of Sexual Reproduction in Fungi*
8. Most fungi in the division **Zygomycota** produce rough-walled **zygosporangia. Microsporidia** are intracellular parasites formerly

classified as protozoa but now classed with zygomycetes based on genetic analysis.

9. Fungi in the division **Ascomycota,** a group of economically important fungi, produce **ascospores** within sacs called **asci.**
10. Fungi of the division **Basidiomycota** have fruiting bodies called **basidiocarps** that include mushrooms, puffballs, and bracket fungi. Basidiocarps produce basidiospores at the ends of basidia.
11. Deuteromycetes (imperfect fungi) are an informal grouping of fungi having no known sexual stage.
12. **Lichens** are economically and environmentally important organisms composed of fungi living in partnership with photosynthetic microbes, either green algae or cyanobacteria.

Algae (pp. 367–371)

1. Algae (studied by phycologists) typically reproduce by an **alternation of generations** in which a haploid thallus alternates with a diploid thallus.
2. Large algae have multicellular thalli with stemlike stipes, leaflike blades, and holdfasts that attach them to substrates.
3. Division **Chlorophyta** contains green algae, which are metabolically similar to land plants.
4. **Rhodophyta,** red algae, contain the pigment **phycoerythrin,** the storage molecule floridean starch, and cell walls of **agar** or **carrageenan,** substances used as thickening agents.
5. **Phaeophyta,** brown algae, contain xanthophylls, laminarin, and oils. They have cell walls composed of cellulose and **alginic acid,** which is another thickening agent. A brown algal spore is motile by means of one "hairy" flagellum and one whiplike flagellum.
6. **Chrysophyta**—the golden algae, yellow-green algae, and **diatoms**—contain chrysolaminarin as a storage product. The silica cell walls of diatoms are arranged in nesting halves called frustules.

Water Molds (p. 371)

1. **Water molds** have tubular cristae in their mitochondria, cell walls of cellulose, spores having two different flagella, and diploid thalli. They are placed in the kingdom Stramenopila along with chrysophytes and brown algae.

Other Eukaryotes of Microbiological Interest: Parasitic Helminths and Vectors (pp. 372–373)

1. Parasitic helminths are significant to microbiologists in part because their infective stages are usually microscopic.
2. Also important to microbiologists are **arthropod vectors,** animals that carry and transmit pathogens. Mechanical vectors merely carry microbes; biological vectors also serve as microbial hosts.
3. **Ticks** and **mites** (chiggers) are **arachnids**—eight-legged arthropods.
4. **Insect** vectors include **fleas; lice;** bloodsucking **flies**, including **mosquitoes;** and **kissing bugs.**

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Haploid nuclei _____.
   a. contain one set of chromosomes
   b. contain two sets of chromosomes
   c. contain half a set of chromosomes
   d. are found in the cytosol of eukaryotic organisms

2. Which of the following sequences reflects the correct order of events in mitosis?
   a. telophase, anaphase, metaphase, prophase
   b. prophase, anaphase, metaphase, telophase
   c. telophase, prophase, metaphase, anaphase
   d. prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase

3. Which of the following statements accurately describes prophase?
   a. The cell appears to have a line of chromosomes across the midregion.
   b. The nuclear envelope becomes visible.
   c. The cell constructs microtubules to form a spindle.
   d. Chromatids separate and become known as chromosomes.

4. Multiple nuclear divisions without cytoplasmic divisions result in cells called _____.
   a. mycoses
   b. coenocytes
   c. haustoria
   d. a pseudohypha

5. Tubular filaments with cross walls found in large fungi are _____.
   a. septate hyphae
   b. aseptate hyphae
   c. aseptate haustoria
   d. dimorphic mycelia

6. The type of asexual fungal spore that forms within hyphae is called a _____.
   a. sporangiospore
   b. conidiospore
   c. blastospore
   d. chlamydospore

7. A phycologist studies which of the following?
   a. classification of eukaryotes
   b. alternation of generations in algae
   c. rusts, smuts, and yeasts
   d. parasitic worms

8. The stemlike portion of a seaweed is called its _____.
   a. thallus
   b. holdfast
   c. stipe
   d. blade

9. Carrageenan is found in the cell walls of which group of algae?
   a. red algae
   b. green algae
   c. dinoflagellates
   d. yellow-green algae

10. Chrysolaminarin is a storage product found in which group of microbes?
    a. dinoflagellates
    b. euglenids
    c. golden algae
    d. brown algae

11. Which of the following features characterizes diatoms?
    a. laminarin and oils as food reserves
    b. protective plates of cellulose in their cells
    c. chlorophylls *a* and *c* and carotene
    d. paramylon as a food storage molecule

12. Amoebae include microbes with _____.
    a. threadlike pseudopods
    b. eyespots
    c. parabasal bodies
    d. alveoli

13. The motile feeding stage of a protozoan is called _____.
    a. an apicomplexan
    b. a gametocyte
    c. a cyst
    d. a trophozoite

14. Which of the following is common to mitosis and meiosis?
    a. spindle
    b. crossing over
    c. tetrad of chromatids
    d. cytokinesis

15. Which taxon is characterized by "hairy" flagella?
    a. Apicomplexa
    b. Euglenozoa
    c. Alveolata
    d. Stramenopila

Matching

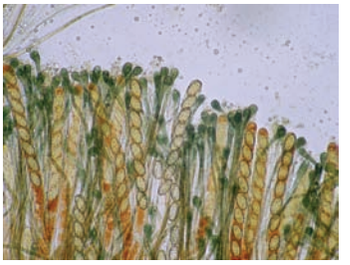
1. _____ Mitosis	A.	Cytoplasmic division
2. _____ Meiosis	B.	Diploid nuclei producing haploid nuclei
3. _____ Homologous chromosomes	C.	Results in genetic variation
4. _____ Crossing over	D.	Carry similar genes
5. _____ Cytokinesis	E.	Diploid nuclei producing diploid nuclei

1. _____ Chitin	A.	Fungal cell wall component
2. _____ Basidiospore	B.	Fungus + alga or bacterium
3. _____ Zygosporangium	C.	Fungal body
4. _____ Thallus	D.	Fungal spore formed in a sac
5. _____ Ascospore	E.	Diploid fungal zygote with a thick wall
6. _____ Lichen	F.	Fungal spore formed on club-shaped hypha

1. _____ Chlorophyta	A.	Foraminifera
2. _____ Rhodophyta	B.	Yellow-green algae
3. _____ Chrysophyta	C.	Green algae
4. _____ Phaeophyta	D.	Brown algae
5. _____ Rhizaria	E.	Red algae

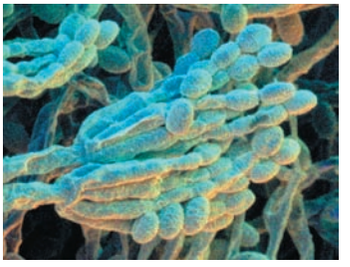
Visualize It!

1. Label the photos below with the type of fungal spore and indicate whether the spore is asexual or sexual.

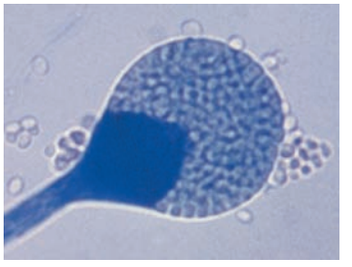


a. _____, _____

b. _____, _____

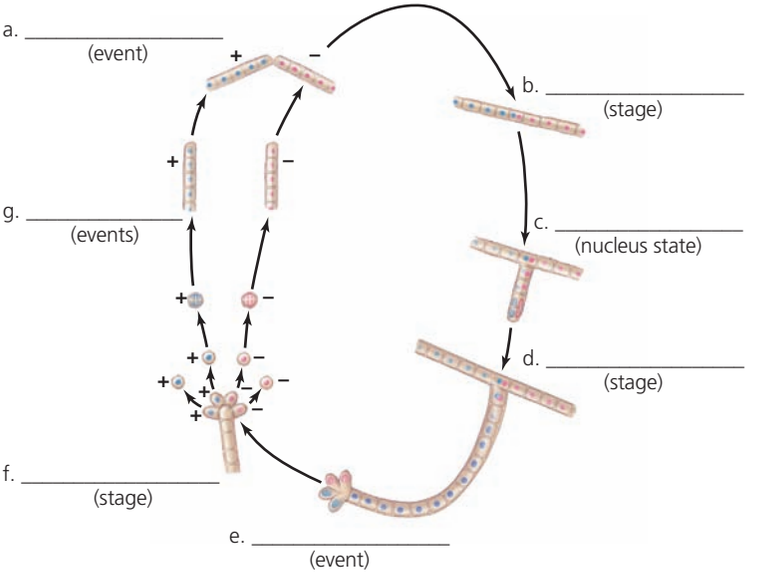


c. _____, _____



d. _____, _____

2. Describe the features of a general fungal life cycle.



Short Answer

1. Compare and contrast the following closely related terms:

   Chromatid and chromosome
   Mitosis and meiosis II
   Hypha and mycelium
   Algal thallus and fungal thallus
   Water mold and slime mold
2. How do fungi transport nutrients?
3. How are lichens useful in environmental protection studies?
4. What are the taxonomic challenges in classifying euglenids?
5. List several economic benefits of algae.
6. Why are relatively large animals, such as parasitic worms, studied in microbiology?
7. Why are microbiologists interested in macroscopic ticks, fleas, lice, and mosquitoes?
8. Name two ways that slime molds differ from true fungi.
9. What is the role of rRNA sequencing in the classification of eukaryotic microbes?
10. Describe the nuclear divisions that produce eight ascospores in an ascus.

Fill in the Blanks

1. The study of protozoa is called _____.
2. The study of fungi is called _____.
3. The study of algae is called _____.
4. Fungal diseases are called _____.
5. Amoebae with stiff pseudopods and silica shells are _____.

Critical Thinking

1. How are cysts of protozoa similar to bacterial endospores? How are they different?
2. The host of a home improvement show suggests periodically emptying a package of yeast into a drain leading to a septic tank. Explain why this would be beneficial.
3. Why doesn't penicillin act against any of the pathogens discussed in this chapter?
4. How can one distinguish a filamentous fungus from a colorless alga?
5. Why do scientists as a group spend more time and money studying protozoa than they do studying algae?
6. Why are there more antibacterial drugs than antifungal drugs?
7. Which type of metabolic pathways are present in protozoa that lack mitochondria (amoebae, diplomonads, and parabasalids)? Which metabolic pathways are absent?
8. Without reference to genetic sequences, mycologists are certain that none of the septate, filamentous deuteromycetes will be shown to make zygospores. How can they be certain when the sexual stages of deuteromycetes are still unknown?
9. Twenty years ago, *Pneumocystis jiroveci,* a pathogen of immunocompromised patients that causes pneumonia, was classified as a protozoan because it is a chemoheterotroph that lacks a cell wall. However, taxonomists today classify *Pneumocystis* as a fungus. Why do you think this pathogen has been reclassified as a fungus?
10. Explain why both dinoflagellates and euglenids were originally classified by zoologists as protozoa and by botanists as algae.

Concept Mapping

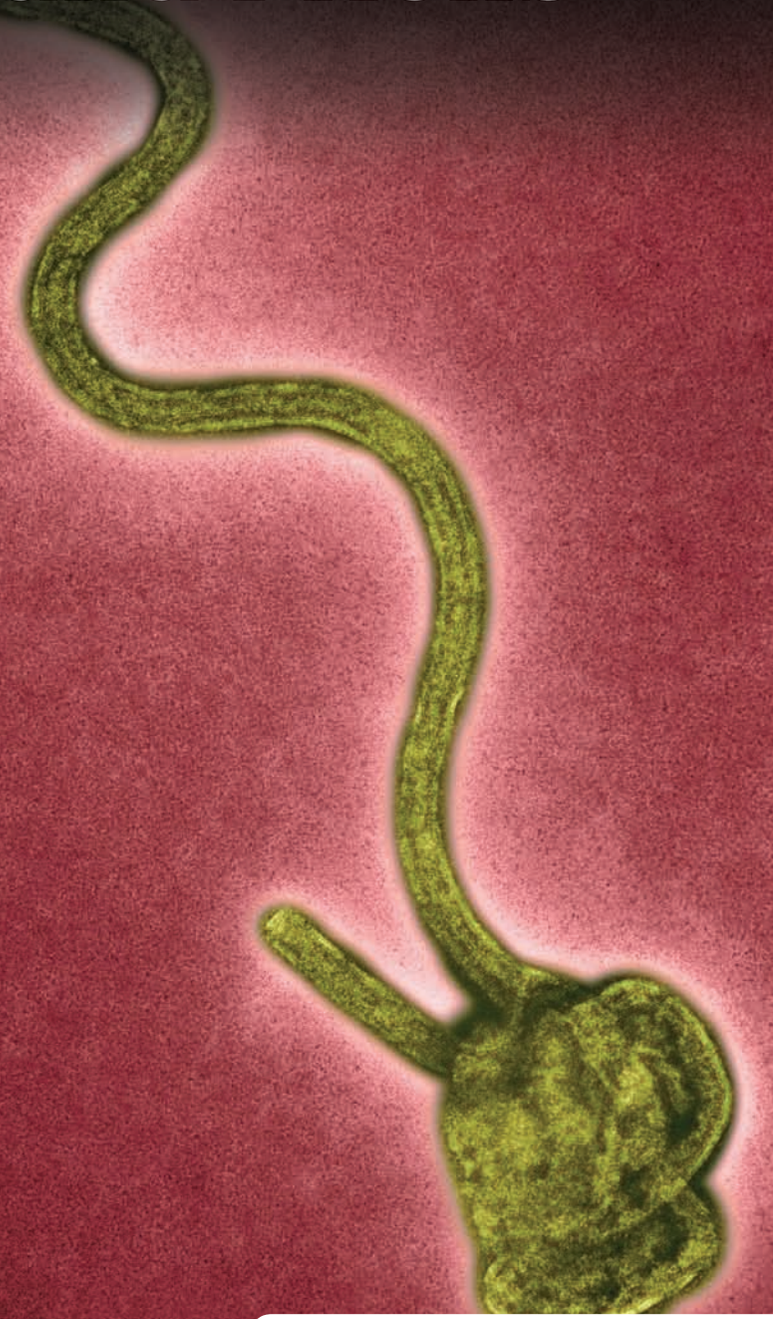
Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes eukaryotic microorganisms. For a sample concept map, see page 93. Or, complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Algae
Cell walls (3)
Cellulose
Chitin
Colonial
Cryptosporidium
Fungi
Giardia
Mold
Multicellular (2)
Photosynthetic
Plasmodium
Protozoa
Unicellular (3)
Yeasts

13 Characterizing and Classifying Viruses, Viroids, and Prions

In April 2007, the chief of a village in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC) developed a severe **fever**, and then he bled to death over a few days. Over a hundred people who attended his funeral also contracted the same **disease**. Eight months later in a neighboring village, a mother delivered her baby, but then both died of bloody diarrhea, and the nurse who cared for them was showing the same signs. Deadly **Ebola hemorrhagic fever** was on the prowl once again in the DRC.

Hemorrhagic fevers, smallpox, AIDS, SARS, **influenza**, common colds—many of the world's deadliest and most feared diseases, as well as many common diseases, are caused by viruses. However, not all **viruses** are harmful to humans. Some, such as bacteriophages, attack pathogens and have clinical use. This chapter is an introduction to viruses and other pathogenic particles called viroids and **prions**: how they infect cells, how they multiply, and how they differ from cellular pathogens.



Ebola virus, one of several hemorrhagic fever viruses, is one of the world's deadlier pathogens.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Not all pathogens are cellular. Many infections of humans, animals, and plants (and even of bacteria) are caused by **acellular** (noncellular) agents, including viruses and other pathogenic particles called viroids and prions. Although these agents are like some eukaryotic and prokaryotic microbes in that they cause disease when they invade susceptible cells, they are simple compared to a cell—lacking cell membranes and composed of only a few organic molecules. In addition to lacking a cellular structure, they lack most of the characteristics of life: They cannot carry out any metabolic pathway, they can neither grow nor respond to the environment, and they cannot reproduce independently but instead must utilize the chemical and structural components of the cells they infect. They must recruit the cell's metabolic pathways in order to increase their numbers.

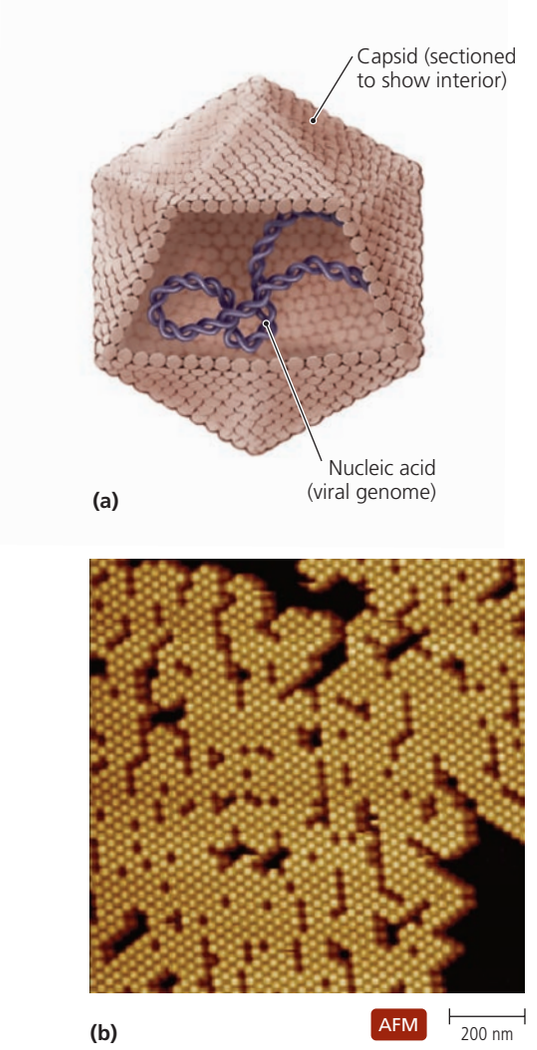
In this chapter we first examine a range of topics concerning viruses: what their characteristics are, how they are classified, how they replicate, what role they play in some kinds of cancers, how they are maintained in the laboratory, and whether viruses are alive. Then we consider the nature of viroids and prions.

Characteristics of Viruses

Viruses cause most of the diseases that still plague the industrialized world: the common cold, influenza, herpes, severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), and AIDS, to name a few. Although we have immunizations against many viral diseases and are adept at treating the symptoms of others, the characteristics of viruses and the means by which they attack their hosts make cures for viral diseases elusive. Throughout this section, we consider the clinical implications of viral characteristics.

We begin by looking at the characteristics viruses have in common. A **virus** is a minuscule, acellular, infectious agent usually having one or several pieces of nucleic acid—either DNA or RNA. The nucleic acid is the genetic material (genome) of the virus. Being acellular, viruses have no cytoplasmic membrane (though, as we will see, some viruses possess a membrane-like *envelope*). Viruses also lack cytosol and functional organelles. They are not capable of metabolic activity on their own; instead, once viruses have invaded a cell, they take control of the cell's metabolic machinery to produce more molecules of viral nucleic acid and viral proteins, which then assemble into new viruses via a process we will examine shortly.

Viruses have an extracellular and an intracellular state. Outside of a cell, in the extracellular state, a virus is called a **virion** (vir´ē-on). Basically, a virion consists of a protein coat, called a **capsid,** surrounding a nucleic acid core **(Figure 13.1a)**. Together the nucleic acid and its capsid are also called a *nucleocapsid*, which in many cases can crystallize like crystalline chemicals **(Figure 13.1b)**. Some virions have a phospholipid membrane called an **envelope** surrounding the nucleocapsid. The outermost layer of a virion (capsid or envelope) provides the virus both protection and recognition sites that bind to complementary chemicals on the surfaces of their specific host cells. Once a virus is inside, the intracellular state is initiated, and the capsid is removed. A virus without its capsid exists solely as nucleic acid but is still referred to as a virus.



▲ **Figure 13.1 Virions, complete virus particles, include a nucleic acid, a capsid, and in some cases an envelope. (a)** A drawing of a nonenveloped polyhedral virus containing DNA. **(b)** An atomic force microscope image of crystallized tobacco mosaic virus. Like many chemicals and unlike cells, some viruses can form crystals.

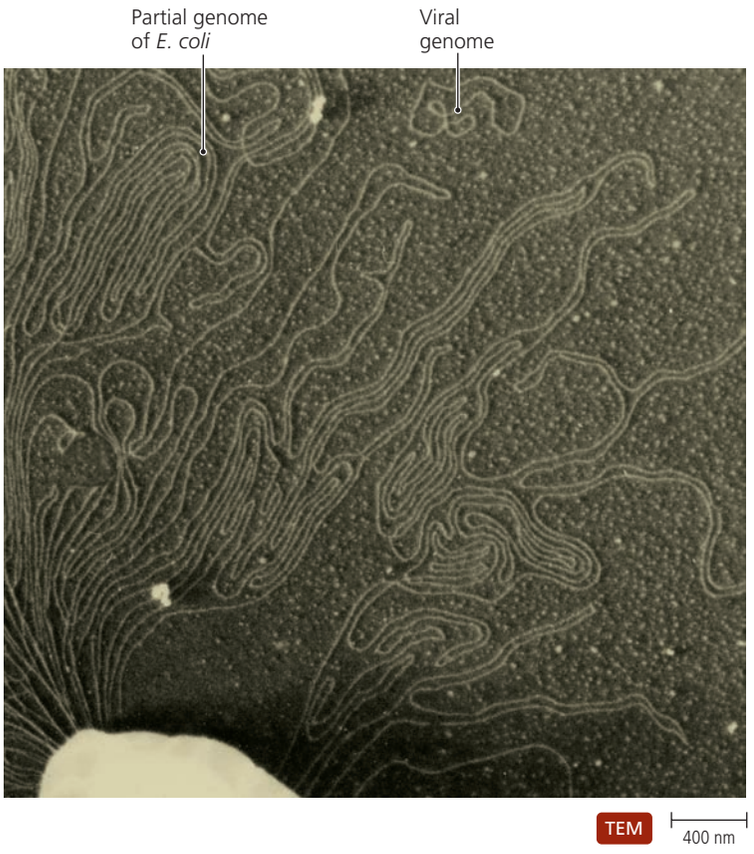
Now that we have examined ways in which viruses are alike, we will consider the characteristics that are used to distinguish different viral groups. Viruses differ in the type of genetic material they contain, the kinds of cells they attack, their size, the nature of their capsid coat, their shapes, and the presence or absence of an envelope.

Genetic Material of Viruses

Learning Outcome

13.1 Discuss viral genomes in terms of dsDNA, ssDNA, ssRNA, dsRNA, and number of segments of nucleic acid.

Viruses show more variety in the nature of their genomes than do cells. Whereas the genome of every cell is double-stranded DNA, the genome of a virus may be either DNA or RNA. The



▲ **Figure 13.2 The relative sizes of genomes.** A cell of *Escherichia coli* was ruptured to release the DNA.

primary way in which scientists categorize and classify viruses is based on the type of genetic material that makes up the viral genome.

Some viral genomes, such as those of herpesvirus and chicken pox virus, are double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), like the genomes of cells. Other viruses use either single-stranded RNA (ssRNA), single-stranded DNA (ssDNA), or double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) as their genomes. These molecules never function as a genome in any cell—in fact, ssDNA and dsRNA are almost nonexistent in cells. Further, the genome of any particular virus may be either linear and composed of several molecules of nucleic acid, as in eukaryotic cells, or circular and singular, as in most prokaryotic cells. For example, the genome of an influenzavirus is composed of eight linear segments of single-stranded RNA, whereas the genome of poliovirus is one molecule of single-stranded RNA.

Viral genomes are usually smaller than the genomes of cells. For example, the genome of the smallest bacterium (a species of Chlamydia) has almost 1000 genes, whereas the genome of virus MS2 has only three genes. **Figure 13.2** compares the genome of a virus with the genome of the bacterium *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē), which contains over 4000 genes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Some viral genomes, composed of single-stranded RNA, act as mRNA. What advantage might these viruses have over other kinds of viruses?

Hosts of Viruses

Learning Outcomes

13.2 Explain the mechanism by which viruses are specific for their host cells.

13.3 Compare and contrast viruses of fungi, plants, animals, and bacteria.

Most viruses infect only a particular host's cells. This specificity is due to the precise affinity of viral surface proteins or glycoproteins for complementary proteins or glycoproteins on the surface of the host cell. Viruses may be so specific that they infect not only a particular host but also a particular kind of cell in that host. For example, HIV (human immunodeficiency virus, the agent that causes AIDS) specifically attacks helper T lymphocytes (a type of white blood cell) in humans and has no effect on, say, human muscle or bone cells. By contrast, some viruses are *generalists;* they infect many kinds of cells in many different hosts. An example of a generalist virus is West Nile virus, which can infect most species of birds, several mammalian species, and some reptiles.

All types of organisms are susceptible to some sort of viral attack. There are viruses that infect archaeal, bacterial, plant, protozoan, fungal, and animal cells **(Figure 13.3)**. There is even a tiny virus that attacks a large virus. Most viral research and scientific study has focused on bacterial and animal viruses. A virus that infects bacteria is referred to as a **bacteriophage** (bak-tēr´ē-ō-fāj) or simply a **phage** (fāj). Scientists have determined that bacteriophages outnumber all bacteria, archaea, and eukaryotes put together. We will return our attention to bacteriophages and animal viruses later in this chapter.

Viruses of plants are less well known than bacterial and animal viruses, even though viruses were first identified and isolated from tobacco plants. Plant viruses infect many food crops, including corn, beans, sugarcane, tobacco, and potatoes, resulting in billions of dollars in losses each year. Viruses of plants are introduced into plant cells either through abrasions of the cell wall or by plant parasites, such as nematodes and aphids. After entry, plant viruses follow the replication cycle discussed below for animal viruses.

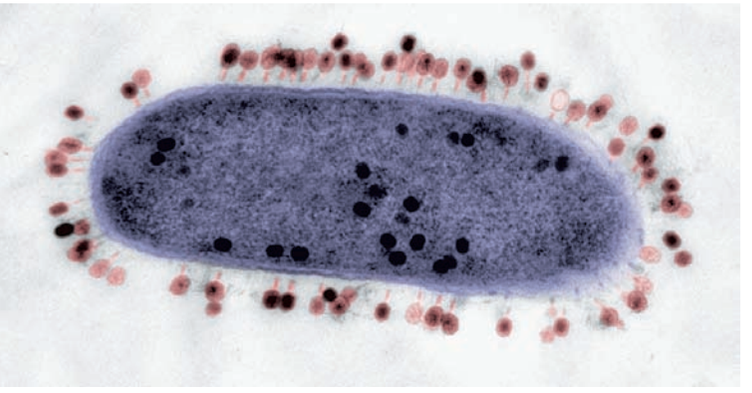
Fungal viruses have been little studied. We do know that fungal viruses are different from animal and bacterial viruses in that fungal viruses exist only within cells; that is, they seemingly have no extracellular state. Presumably, fungal viruses cannot penetrate a thick fungal cell wall. However, because fusion of cells is typically a part of a fungal life cycle, viral infections can easily be propagated by the fusion of an infected fungal cell with an uninfected one.

Not all viruses are deleterious. The box **Beneficial Microbes: Good Viruses? Who Knew?** on p. 382 illustrates some useful aspects of viruses in the environment.

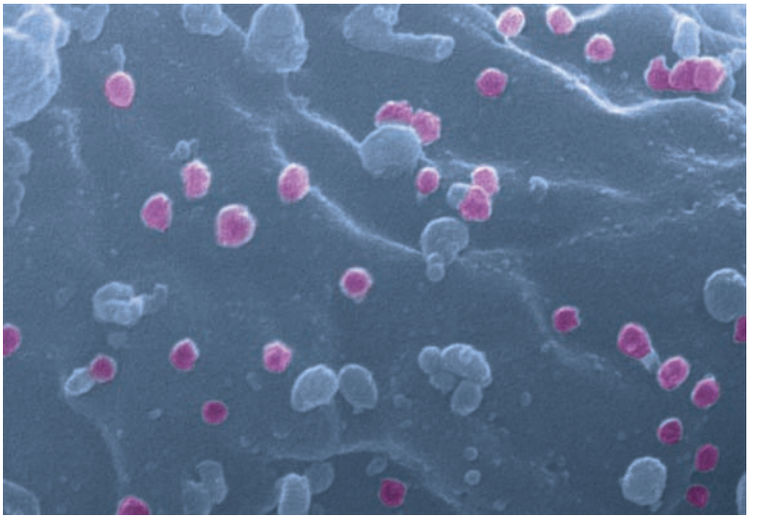
Sizes of Viruses

In the late 1800s, scientists hypothesized that the cause of many diseases, including polio and smallpox, was an agent smaller than a bacterium. They named these tiny agents "viruses," from the

(a)



(b) TEM 0.5 μm



(c) SEM 100 nm

▶ Figure 13.3 Some examples of plant, bacterial, and human hosts of viral infections. (a) Tobacco mosaic virus—the first virus isolated—causes yellow discolorations of tobacco leaves. **(b)** A bacterial cell (purple) under attack by bacteriophages (pink). **(c)** A human white blood cell's cytoplasmic membrane, to which HIV (pink) is attached.

Latin word for "poison." Viruses are so small that only a few can be seen by light microscopy. One hundred million polioviruses could fit side by side on the period at the end of this sentence. The smallest viruses have a diameter of 10 nm, whereas the largest virus—*Megavirus*—is about 500 nm in diameter, which is about the diameter of many bacterial cells. **Figure 13.4** compares the sizes of selected viruses to *E. coli* and a human red blood cell.

In 1892, Russian microbiologist Dmitri Ivanowski (1864–1920) first demonstrated that viruses are acellular with an experiment designed to elucidate the cause of tobacco mosaic disease. He filtered the sap of infected tobacco plants through a porcelain filter fine enough to trap even the smallest of bacterial cells. Viruses, however, were not trapped but instead passed through the filter with the liquid, which remained infectious to tobacco plants. This experiment proved the existence of an acellular disease-causing entity smaller than a bacterium. Tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) was isolated and characterized in 1935 by an American chemist, Wendell Stanley (1904–1971). The invention of electron microscopy allowed scientists to finally see TMV and other viruses.

Capsid Morphology

Learning Outcome

13.4 Discuss the structure and function of the viral capsid.

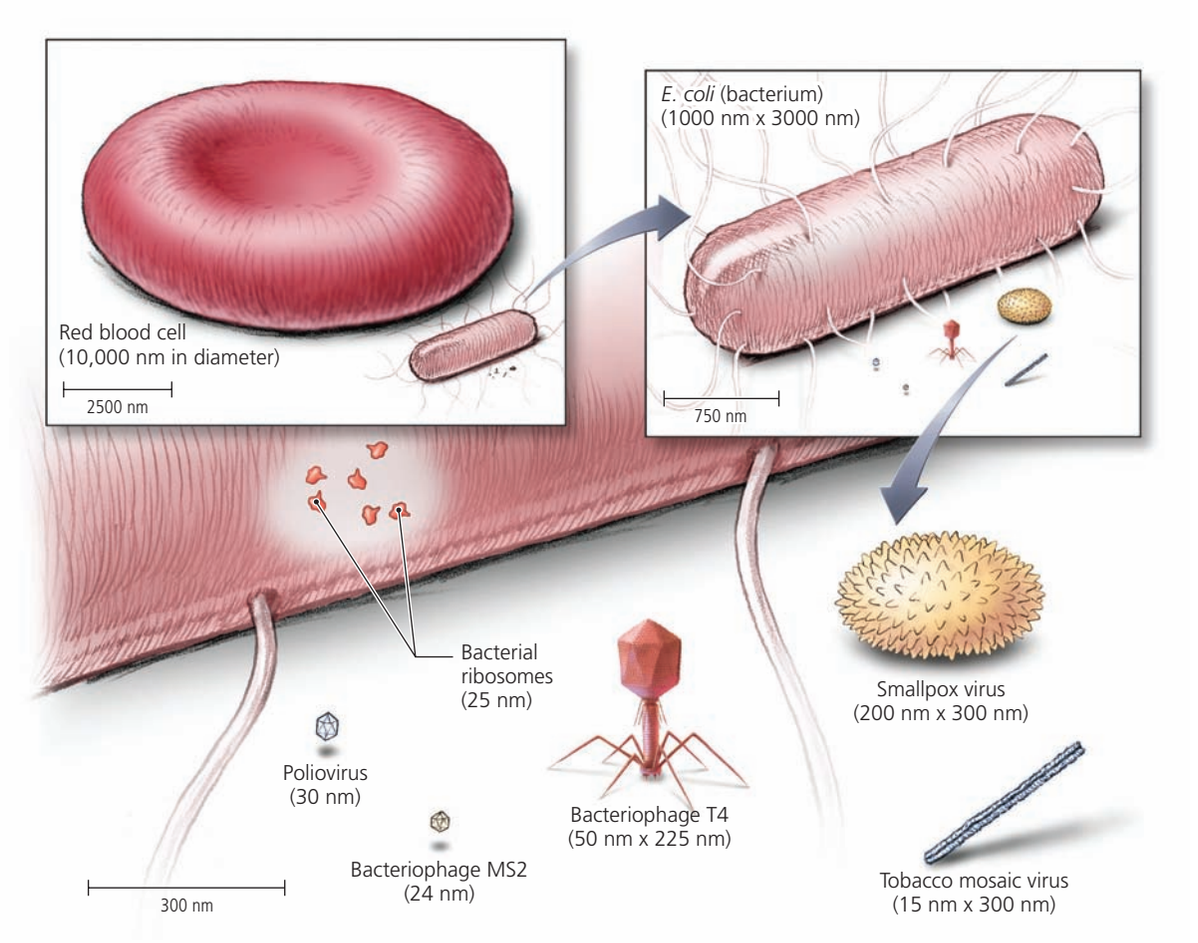
As we have seen, viruses have capsids—protein coats that provide both protection for viral nucleic acid and a means by which many viruses attach to their hosts' cells. The capsid of a virus is composed of proteinaceous subunits called **capsomeres** (or *capsomers*). Some capsomeres are composed of only a single type of protein, whereas others are composed of several different kinds of proteins. Recall that viral nucleic acid surrounded by its capsid is termed a *nucleocapsid*.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

In some viruses, the capsomeres act enzymatically as well as structurally. What advantage might this provide the virus?

Viral Shapes

The shapes of virions are also used to classify viruses. There are three basic types of viral shapes: helical, polyhedral, and complex **(Figure 13.5)**. The capsid of a helical virus is composed of capsomeres that bond together in a spiral fashion to form a tube around the nucleic acid. The capsid of a polyhedral virus is roughly spherical, with a shape similar to a geodesic dome. The most common type of polyhedral capsid is an icosahedron, which has 20 sides.



▲ **Figure 13.4** **Sizes of selected virions.** Selected viruses are compared in size to a bacterium, *Escherichia coli*, and a human red blood cell. *How can viruses be so small and yet still be pathogenic?*

Figure 13.4 *Viruses utilize a host cell's enzymes, organelles, and membranes to complete their replication cycle.*

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

GOOD VIRUSES? WHO KNEW?

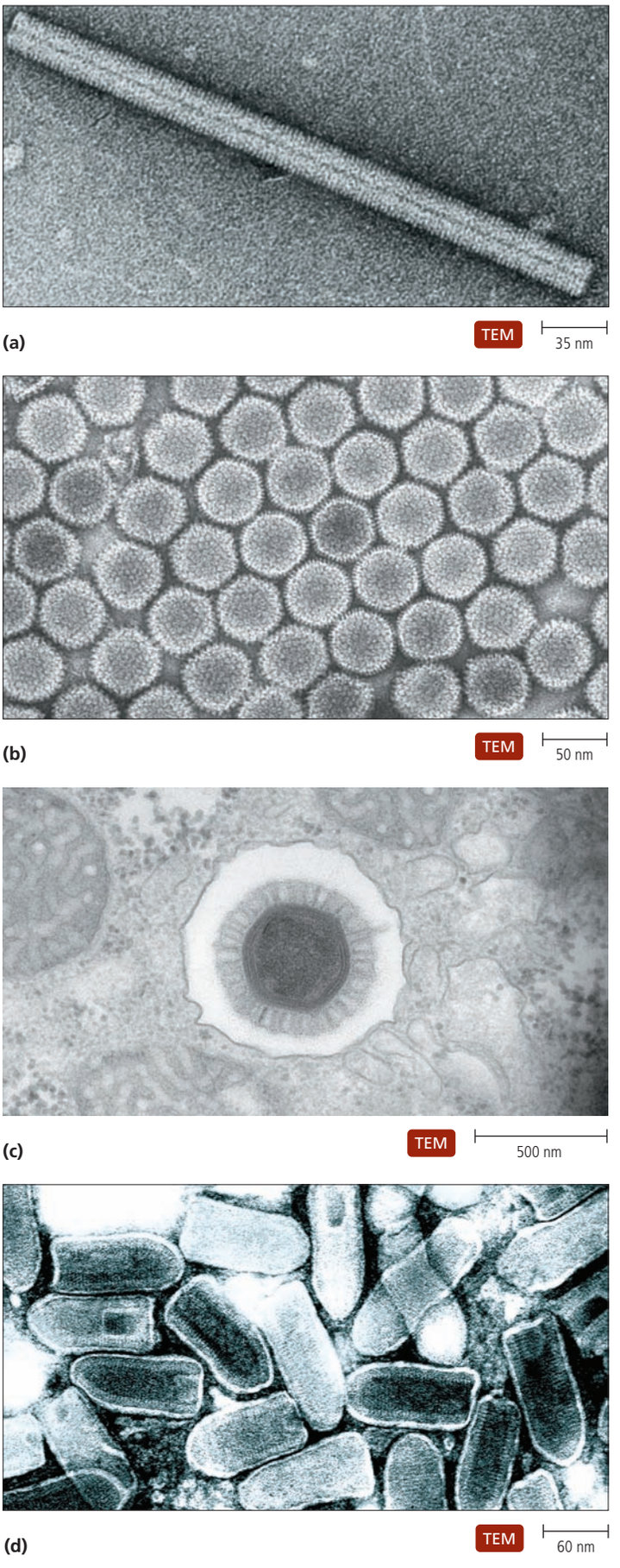
An algal bloom off the coast of Seattle, Washington.

Viruses, though normally pathogenic to their host cells, do have positive influences, including what appear to be extensive roles in the environment. Recent discoveries by the United Kingdom's Marine and Freshwater Microbial Biodiversity program demonstrate important ways viruses impact our world.

First: Scientists found that a previously unknown virus attacks a tiny marine alga that multiplies to form algal blooms consisting of hundreds of thousands to millions of algal cells per milliliter of water, which are visible from space (see photo). Algal blooms like these can deplete the water of oxygen at night, potentially harming fish and other marine life. The newly discovered virus stops blooms by killing the alga, a result that is good for animal life.

Second: When the algal cells die by this means, they release an airborne sulfate compound that acts to seed clouds. The resulting increased cloudiness noticeably shades the ocean, measurably lowering water temperature. Thus, a marine virus helps to reduce global warming!

Third: The researchers discovered a bacteriophage of oceanic cyanobacteria that transfers genes for photosynthetic machinery into its hosts' cells so that the cells' photosynthetic rate increases. There are up to 10 million of these viruses in a single milliliter of seawater, so researchers estimate that much of the oxygen we breathe may be attributable to the action of this virus on blue-green bacteria.



▶ **Figure 13.5 The shapes of virions. (a)** A helical virus, tobacco mosaic virus. The tubular shape of the capsid results from the tight arrangement of several rows of helical capsomeres. **(b)** Polyhedral virions of a virus that causes common colds. **(c)** Complex shape of *Megavirus*. **(d)** The complex shape of rabies virus, which results from the shapes of the capsid and bullet-shaped envelope.

Complex viruses have capsids of many different shapes that do not readily fit into either of the other two categories. An example of a complex virus is smallpox virus, which has several covering layers (including lipid) and no easily identifiable capsid. The complex shapes of many bacteriophages include icosahedral heads, which contain the genome, attached to helical tails with tail fibers. The complex capsids of such bacteriophages somewhat resemble NASA's lunar lander **(Figure 13.6)**.

The Viral Envelope

Learning Outcome

13.5 Discuss the origin, structure, and function of the viral envelope.

All viruses lack cell membranes (after all, they are not cells), but some, particularly animal viruses, have an envelope similar in composition to a cell membrane surrounding their capsids. Other viral proteins called *matrix proteins* fill the region between capsid and envelope. A virus with a membrane is an *enveloped virion* **(Figure 13.7)**; a virion without an envelope is called a *nonenveloped* or *naked virion*.

An enveloped virus acquires its envelope from its host cell during viral replication or release (discussed shortly). Indeed, the envelope of a virus is a portion of the membrane system of a host cell. Like a cytoplasmic membrane, a viral envelope is composed of a phospholipid bilayer and proteins. Some of the proteins are virally coded glycoproteins, which appear as spikes protruding outward from the envelope's surface (see Figure 13.7). Host DNA carries the genetic code required for the assembly of the phospholipids and some of the proteins in the envelope, while the viral genome specifies the other membrane proteins.

An envelope's proteins and glycoproteins often play a role in the recognition of host cells. A viral envelope does not perform other physiological roles of a cytoplasmic membrane, such as endocytosis or active transport.

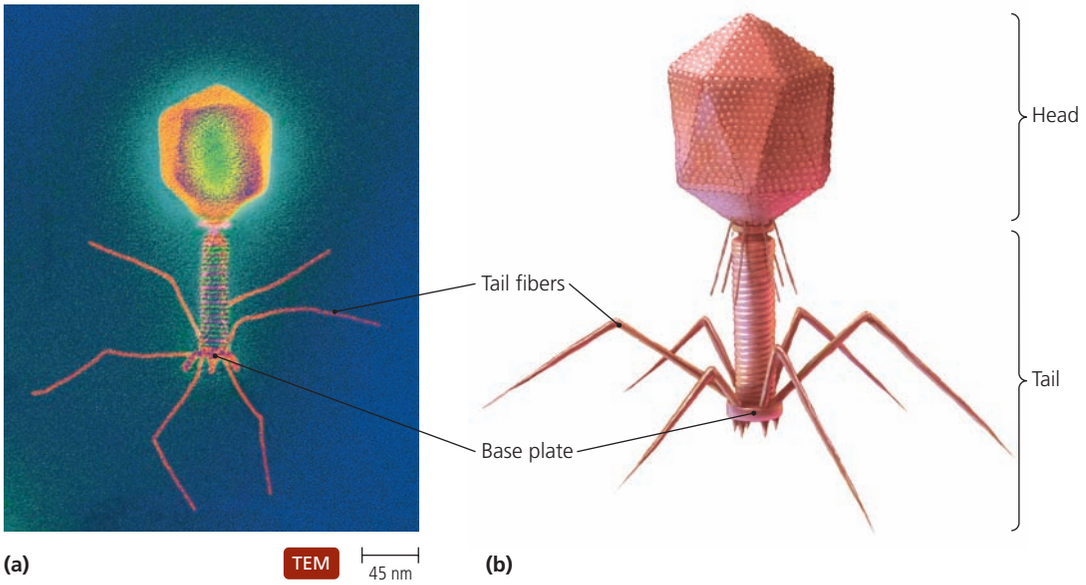
Table 13.1 on p. 385 summarizes the novel properties of viruses and how those properties differ from the corresponding characteristics of cells. Next we turn our attention to the criteria by which virologists classify viruses.

Classification of Viruses

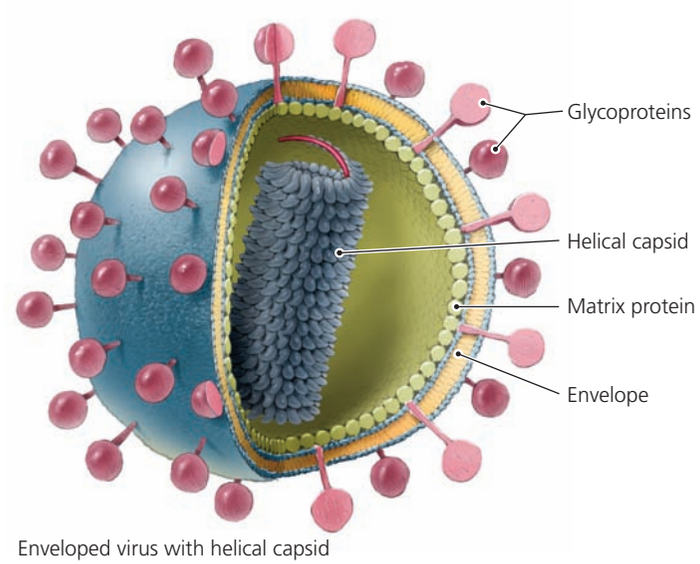
Learning Outcome

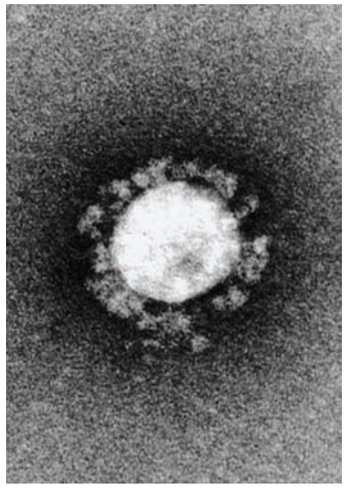
13.6 List the characteristics by which viruses are classified.

The International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses (ICTV) was established in 1966 to provide a single taxonomic scheme for viral classification and identification. Virologists classify viruses



◀ Figure 13.6 The complex shape of bacteriophage T4. It includes an icosahedral head and an ornate tail that enables viral attachment and penetration.





◀ Figure 13.7 Enveloped virion. Artist's rendition and electron micrograph of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) virus, an enveloped virus with a helical capsid.

by their type of nucleic acid, presence of an envelope, shape, and size. So far, they have established families for all viral genera, but only three viral orders are described. Taxonomists have not determined kingdoms, divisions, and classes for viruses because the relationships among viruses are not well understood.

Family names are typically derived either from special characteristics of viruses within the family or from the name of an important member of the family. For example, family *Picornaviridae* contains very small[1] RNA viruses, and *Hepadnaviridae* contains a DNA virus that causes hepatitis B. Family *Herpesviridae* is named for herpes simplex, a virus that can cause genital herpes. Table 13.2 lists the major families of human viruses, grouped according to the type of nucleic acid each contains.

Specific epithets for viruses are their common English designations written in italics. Accordingly, the nomenclature for two important viral pathogens, HIV and rabies virus, is as follows:

	HIV	Rabies Virus
Order	Not yet established	Mononegavirales
Family	*Retroviridae*	*Rhabdoviridae*
Genus	*Lentivirus* (len´ti-vı-rŭs)	*Lyssavirus* (lis´ă-vı-rŭs)
Specific epithet	*human immunodeficiency virus*	*rabies virus*

CRITICAL THINKING

Why has it been difficult to develop a complete taxonomy for viruses?

[1] *Pico* means one-trillionth, 10^{-12}.

TABLE 13.1 The Novel Properties of Viruses

Viruses	Cells
Inert macromolecules outside of a cell but become active inside a cell	Metabolize on their own
Do not divide or grow	Divide and grow
Acellular	Cellular
Obligate intracellular parasites	Most are free living
Contain either DNA or RNA, with few exceptions, such as *Cytomegalovirus* and *Mimivirus*	Contain both DNA and RNA
Genome can be dsDNA, ssDNA, dsRNA, or ssRNA	Genome is dsDNA
Usually ultramicroscopic in size, ranging from 10 nm to 500 nm	200 nm to 12 cm in diameter
Have a proteinaceous capsid around genome; some have an envelope around the capsid	Surrounded by a phospholipid membrane and often a cell wall
Replicate in an assembly-line manner using the enzymes and organelles of a host cell	Self-replicating by asexual and/or sexual means

TABLE 13.2 Families of Human Viruses

Family	Strand Type	Representative Genera (Diseases)
DNA Viruses		
Poxviridae	Double	*Orthopoxvirus* (smallpox)
Herpesviridae	Double	*Simplexvirus* (herpes type 1: fever blisters, respiratory infections; herpes type 2: genital infections); *Varicellovirus* (chicken pox); *Lymphocryptovirus,* Epstein-Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis, Burkitt's lymphoma); *Cytomegalovirus* (birth defects); *Roseolovirus* (roseola)
Papillomaviridae	Double	*Papillomavirus* (benign tumors, warts, cervical and penile cancers)
Polyomaviridae	Double	*Polyomavirus* (progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy)
Adenoviridae	Double	*Mastadenovirus* (conjunctivitis, respiratory infections)
Hepadnaviridae	Partial single and partial double	*Orthohepadnavirus* (hepatitis B)
Parvoviridae	Single	*Erythrovirus* (erythema infectiosum)
RNA Viruses		
Picornaviridae	Single, +[a]	*Enterovirus* (polio); *Hepatovirus* (hepatitis A); *Rhinovirus* (common cold)
Caliciviridae	Single, +	*Norovirus* (gastroenteritis)
Astroviridae	Single, +	*Astrovirus* (gastroenteritis)
Hepeviridae	Single, +	*Hepevirus* (hepatitis E)
Togaviridae	Single, +	*Alphavirus* (encephalitis); *Rubivirus* (rubella)
Flaviviridae	Single, +	*Flavivirus* (yellow fever); Japanese encephalitis virus (encephalitis); *Hepacivirus* (hepatitis C)
Coronaviridae	Single, +	*Coronavirus* (common cold, severe acute respiratory syndrome)
Retroviridae	Single, +, segmented	Human T cell leukemia virus (leukemia); *Lentivirus* (AIDS)
Orthomyxoviridae	Single, −[b], segmented	*Influenzavirus* (flu)
Paramyxoviridae	Single, −	*Paramyxovirus* (common cold, respiratory infections); *Pneumovirus* (pneumonia, common cold); *Morbillivirus* (measles); *Rubulavirus* (mumps)
Rhabdoviridae	Single, −	*Lyssavirus* (rabies)
Bunyaviridae	Single, −, segmented	*Bunyavirus* (California encephalitis virus); *Hantavirus* (pneumonia)
Filoviridae	Single, −	*Filovirus* (Ebola hemorrhagic fever); Marburg virus (hemorrhagic fever)
Arenaviridae	Single, −, segmented	*Lassavirus* (hemorrhagic fever)
Reoviridae	Double, segmented	*Orbivirus* (encephalitis); *Rotavirus* (diarrhea); *Coltivirus* (Colorado tick fever)

[a]Positive-sense (+RNA) is equivalent to mRNA; that is, it instructs ribosomes in protein translations.
[b]Negative-sense (−RNA) is complementary to mRNA; it cannot be directly translated.

Viral Replication

As previously noted, viruses cannot reproduce themselves because they lack the genes for all the enzymes necessary for replication, nor do they possess functional ribosomes for protein synthesis. Instead, viruses are dependent on their hosts' enzymes and organelles to produce new virions. Once a host cell falls under control of a viral genome, it is forced to replicate viral genetic material and translate viral proteins, including viral capsomeres and viral enzymes.

The replication cycle of a virus usually results in the death and lysis of the host cell. Because the cell undergoes lysis near the end of the cycle, this type of replication is called a **lytic replication cycle.** In general, a lytic replication cycle consists of the following five stages:

- **Attachment** of the virion to the host cell
- **Entry** of the virion or its genome into the host cell
- **Synthesis** of new nucleic acids and viral proteins by the host cell's enzymes and ribosomes
- **Assembly** of new virions within the host cell
- **Release** of the new virions from the host cell ▶**ANIMATIONS:** ***Viral Replication: Overview***

In the following sections we examine the events that occur in the replication of bacteriophages and animal viruses. We begin with lytic replication in bacteriophages, turn to a modification of replication (called lysogenic replication), and then consider the replication of animal viruses.

Lytic Replication of Bacteriophages

Learning Outcome

13.7 Sketch and describe the five stages of the lytic replication cycle as it typically occurs in bacteriophages.

Studies of phages revealed the basics of viral biology. Indeed, bacteriophages make excellent tools for the general study of viruses because they are easier and less expensive to culture than animal or human viruses. **Beneficial Microbes: Prescription Bacteriophages?** is an interesting side note on the potential use of bacteriophages as an alternative to antibiotics.

Here we examine the replication of a much-studied dsDNA phage of *E. coli* called *type 4 (T4)*. T4 virions are complex, having the polyhedral heads and helical tails seen in many bacteriophages. We begin with attachment, the first stage of replication **(Figure 13.8)**.

Attachment 1

Because phages, like all virions, are nonmotile, contact with a bacterium occurs by purely random collision, brought about as molecular bombardment and currents move virions through the environment. The structures responsible for the attachment of T4 to its host bacterium are its tail fibers. Attachment is dependent on the chemical attraction and precise fit between attachment proteins on the phage's tail fibers and complementary receptor proteins on the surface of the host's cell wall. The specificity of the attachment proteins for the receptors ensures that the virus will attach only to *E. coli*. Bacteriophages may attach to receptor proteins on bacterial cells' walls, flagella, or pili.

Entry 2

Now that phage T4 has attached to the bacterium's cell wall, it must still overcome the formidable barrier posed by the cell wall and cytoplasmic membrane if it is to enter the cell. T4 overcomes this obstacle in an elegant way. Upon contact with *E. coli,* T4 releases *lysozyme* (lī´sō-zīm), a protein enzyme carried within the capsid that weakens the peptidoglycan of the cell wall. The phage's tail sheath then contracts, forcing an internal hollow tube within the tail through the cell wall and membrane, much as a hypodermic needle penetrates the skin. The phage injects the genome through the tube and into the bacterium. The empty capsid, having performed its task, is left on the outside of the cell looking like an abandoned spacecraft.

Synthesis 3–4

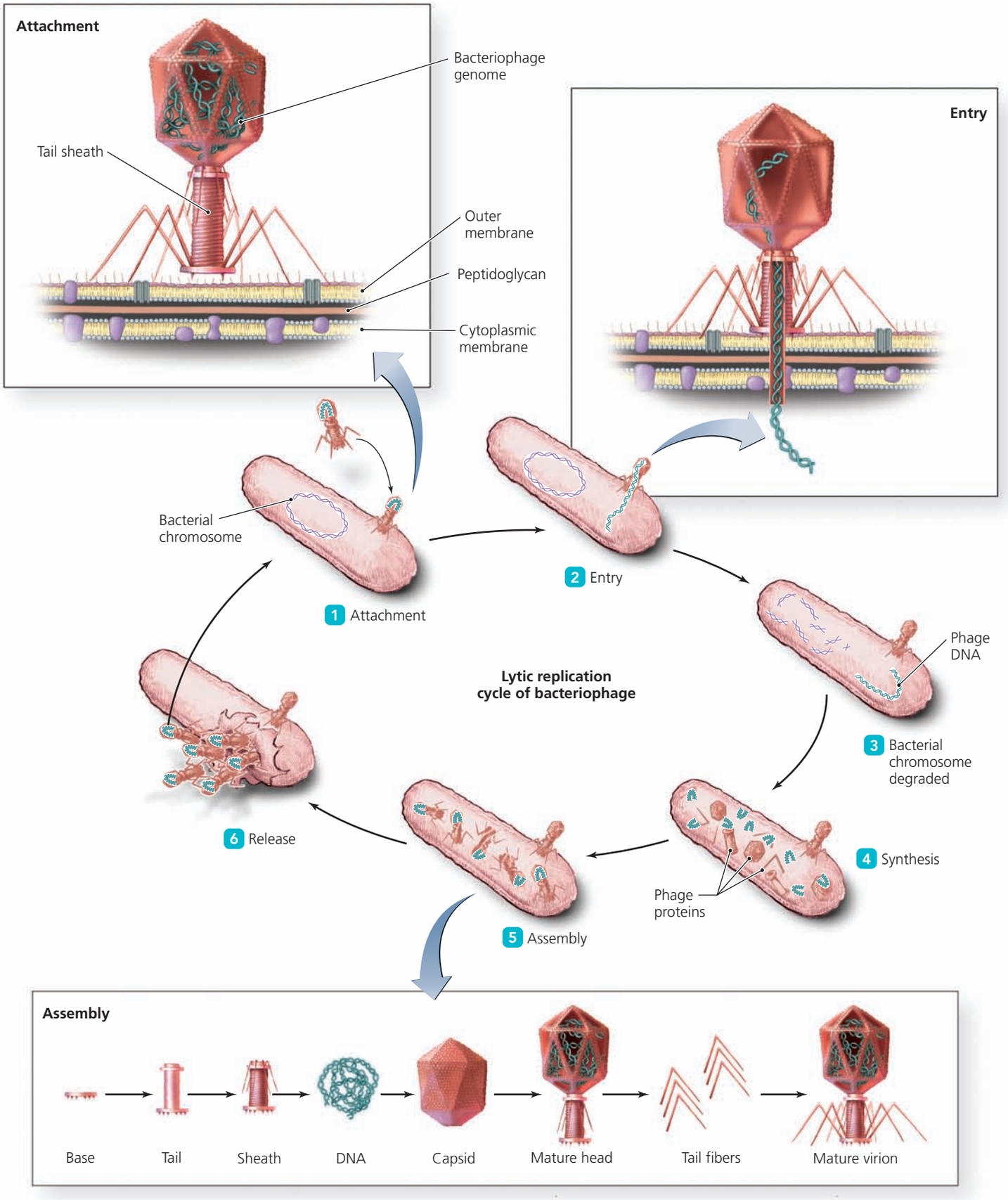
After entry, viral enzymes (either carried within the capsid or coded by viral genes and made by the bacterium) degrade the bacterial DNA into its constituent nucleotides. As a result, the bacterium stops synthesizing its own molecules and begins synthesizing new viruses under control of the viral genome.

For dsDNA viruses like T4, protein synthesis is straightforward and similar to cellular transcription and translation, except that mRNA is transcribed from viral DNA instead of cellular DNA. Translation by the host cell's ribosomes results in viral proteins, including head capsomeres, components of the tail, viral DNA polymerase (which replicates viral DNA), and lysozyme (which weakens the bacterial cell wall from within, enabling the virions to leave the cell once they have been assembled).

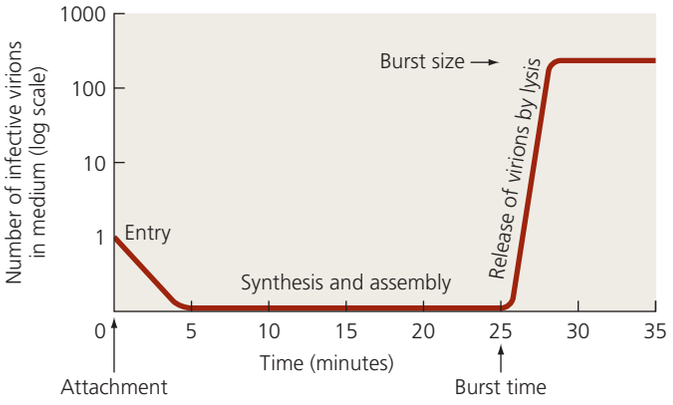
Assembly 5

Scientists do not understand completely how phages are assembled inside a host cell, but it appears that as capsomeres accumulate within the cell, they spontaneously attach to one another to form new capsid heads. Likewise, tails assemble and attach to heads, and tail fibers attach to tails, forming mature virions. Such capsid assembly is a spontaneous process, requiring little or no enzymatic activity. For many years it was assumed that all capsids formed around a genome in just such a spontaneous manner. However, recent research has shown that for some viruses, enzymes pump the genome into the assembled capsid under high pressure—five times that used in a paintball gun. This process resembles stuffing a strand of cooked spaghetti into a matchbox through a single small hole.

Sometimes a capsid assembles around leftover pieces of host DNA instead of viral DNA. A virion formed in this manner is still able to attach to a new host by means of its tail fibers, but instead of inserting phage DNA, it transfers DNA from the first host into a new host. This process is known as *transduction* (described in more detail in Chapter 7).



▲ **Figure 13.8 The lytic replication cycle in bacteriophages.** The phage shown in this illustration is T4, and the bacterium shown is *E. coli*. The circular bacterial chromosome is represented diagrammatically; in reality, it would be much longer.



▲ Figure 13.9 Pattern of virion abundance in lytic cycle. Shown is virion abundance over time for a single lytic replication cycle. New virions are not observed in the culture medium until synthesis, assembly, and release (lysis) are complete, at which time (the burst time) the new virions are released all at once. Burst size is the number of new virions released per lysed host cell.

Release 6

Newly assembled virions are released from the cell as lysozyme completes its work on the cell wall and the bacterium disintegrates. Areas of disintegrating bacterial cells in a lawn of bacteria in a Petri plate look as if the lawn were being eaten, and it was the appearance of these *plaques* that prompted early scientists to give the name *bacteriophage*, "bacterial eater," to these viruses.

For phage T4, the process of lytic replication takes about 25 minutes and can produce as many as 100 to 200 new virions for each bacterial cell lysed **(Figure 13.9)**. For any phage undergoing lytic replication, the period of time required to complete the entire process, from attachment to release, is called the *burst time*, and the number of new virions released from each lysed bacterial cell is called the *burst size*. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Virulent Bacteriophages* ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *The Lytic Cycle of Viral Replication*

CRITICAL THINKING

If a colony of 1.5 billion *E. coli* cells were infected with a single phage T4 and each lytic replication cycle of the phage produced 200 new phages, how many replication cycles would it take for T4 phages to overwhelm the entire bacterial colony? (Assume for the sake of simplicity that every phage completes its replication cycle in a different cell and that the bacteria themselves do not reproduce.)

Lysogeny

Learning Outcome

13.8 Compare and contrast the lysogenic replication cycle of viruses with the lytic cycle.

Not all viruses follow the lytic pattern of phage T4 we just examined. Some bacteriophages have a modified replication cycle in which infected host cells grow and reproduce normally for many generations before they lyse. Such a replication cycle is called a **lysogenic replication cycle** or **lysogeny** (lī-soj´ĕ-nē), and the phages are called **temperate phages** or *lysogenic phages*.

Here we examine lysogenic replication as it occurs in a much-studied temperate phage, *lambda phage,* which is another parasite of *E. coli.* A lambda phage has a linear molecule of dsDNA in a complex capsid consisting of an icosahedral head attached to a tail that lacks tail fibers **(Figure 13.10)**.

Figure 13.11 illustrates lysogeny with lambda phage. First, the virion randomly contacts an *E. coli* cell and attaches via its tail 1. The viral DNA enters the cell, just as occurs with phage T4, but the host cell's DNA is not destroyed, and the phage's genome does not immediately assume control of the cell. Instead, the virus remains inactive. Such an inactive bacteriophage is called a **prophage** (prō´fāj) 2. A prophage remains inactive by coding for a protein that suppresses prophage genes. A side effect of this repressor protein is that it renders the bacterium resistant to additional infection by other viruses of the same type.

Another difference between a lysogenic cycle and a lytic cycle is that the prophage is inserted into the DNA of the bacterium, becoming a physical part of the bacterial chromosome 3. For DNA viruses like lambda phage, this is a simple process of fusing two pieces of DNA: One piece of DNA, the virus, is fused to another piece of DNA, the chromosome of the cell. Every time the cell replicates its infected chromosome, the prophage is also replicated 4. All daughter cells of a lysogenic cell are thus infected with the quiescent virus. A prophage and its descendants may remain a part of bacterial chromosomes for generations or forever.

Lysogenic phages can change the phenotype of a bacterium, for example from a harmless form into a pathogen—a process called **lysogenic conversion.** Bacteriophage genes are responsible for toxins and other disease-evoking proteins found in the bacterial agents of diphtheria, cholera, rheumatic fever, and certain severe cases of diarrhea caused by *E. coli.*

At some later time a prophage might be excised from the chromosome by recombination or some other genetic event; it then reenters the lytic phase. The process whereby a prophage is excised from the host chromosome is called **induction** 5. Inductive agents are typically the same physical and chemical agents that damage DNA molecules, including ultraviolet light, X rays, and carcinogenic chemicals.

After induction, the lytic steps of synthesis 6, assembly 7, and release 8 resume from the point at which they stopped. The cell becomes filled with virions and breaks open.

Bacteriophages T4 and lambda demonstrate two replication strategies that are typical for many DNA viruses. RNA viruses and enveloped viruses present variations on the lytic and lysogenic cycles we have examined. We will next examine some of these variations as they occur with animal viruses. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Temperate Bacteriophages*

CRITICAL THINKING

What differences would you expect in the replication cycles of RNA phages from those of DNA phages? (Hints: Think about the processes of transcription, translation, and replication of nucleic acids. Also, note that RNA is not normally inserted into a DNA molecule.)

Replication of Animal Viruses

Learning Outcomes

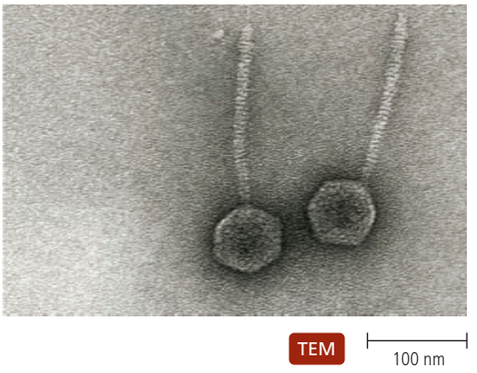
13.9 Explain the differences between bacteriophage replication and animal viral replication.

13.10 Compare and contrast the replication and synthesis of DNA, −RNA, and +RNA viruses.

13.11 Compare and contrast the release of viral particles by lysis and budding.

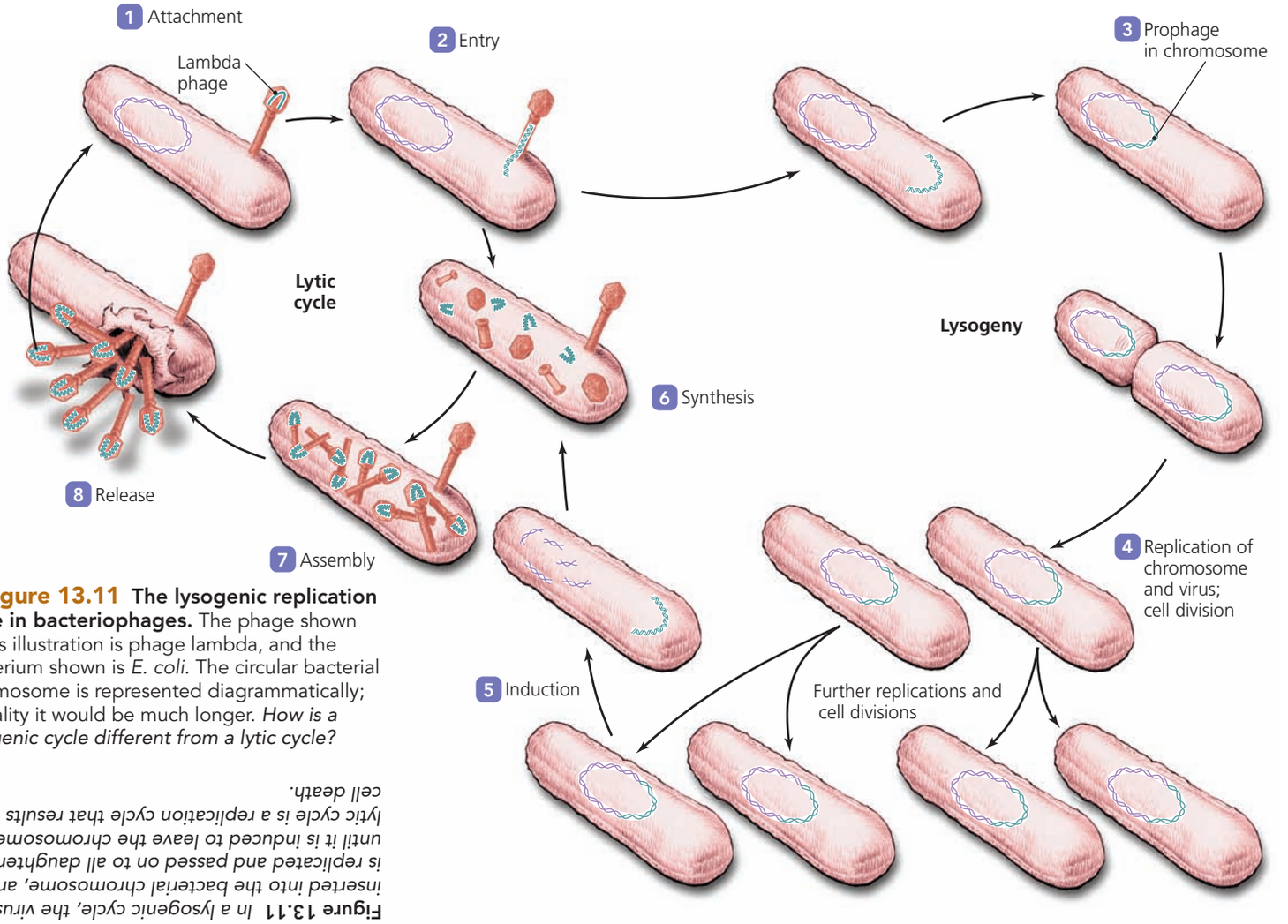
13.12 Compare and contrast latency in animal viruses with phage lysogeny.

Animal viruses have the same five basic steps in their replication pathways as bacteriophages—that is, attachment, entry, synthesis, assembly, and release. However, there are significant differences in the replication of animal viruses that result in part from the presence of envelopes around some of the viruses and in part from the eukaryotic nature of animal cells as well as their lack of a cell wall. **Highlight: The Threat of Avian Influenza** highlights an animal virus that is of great concern to health officials worldwide.



▲ **Figure 13.10 Bacteriophage lambda.** Note the absence of tail fibers. *Phage T4 attaches by means of molecules on its tail fibers. How does lambda phage, which lacks fibers, attach?*

Figure 13.10 *Lambda has attachment molecules at the end of its tail rather than on its tail fibers.*

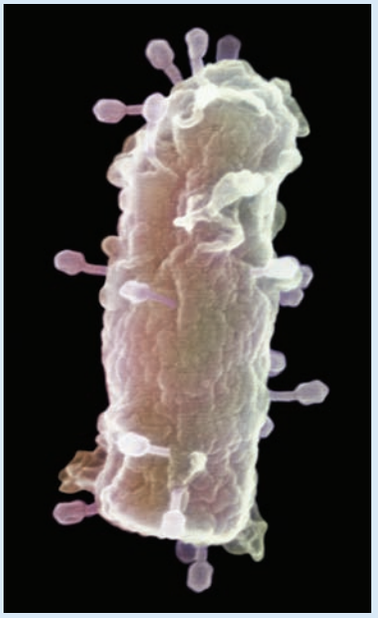


▲ **Figure 13.11 The lysogenic replication cycle in bacteriophages.** The phage shown in this illustration is phage lambda, and the bacterium shown is *E. coli*. The circular bacterial chromosome is represented diagrammatically; in reality it would be much longer. *How is a lysogenic cycle different from a lytic cycle?*

Figure 13.11 *In a lysogenic cycle, the virus is inserted into the bacterial chromosome, and it is replicated and passed on to all daughter cells until it is induced to leave the chromosome; a lytic cycle is a replication cycle that results in cell death.*

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

PRESCRIPTION BACTERIOPHAGES?



***Escherichia coli* infected with bacteriophages.**

In 1917, Canadian biologist Felix d'Herelle published a paper announcing the discovery of the *bacteriophage*, a virus that preyed on bacteria. In fact, half the bacteria on Earth succumb to phages every two days! D'Herelle felt that phages can be natural weapons against bacterial pathogens.

Phage therapy was used in the early 1900s to combat dysentery, typhus, and cholera but was largely abandoned in the 1940s in the United States, eclipsed by the development of antibiotics, such as penicillin. Phage therapy continued in the Soviet Union and Eastern Europe, where research is still centered. Today, motivated by the growing problem of antibiotic-resistant bacteria, scientists in the United States and Western Europe have renewed interest in investigating phage therapy.

A phage reproduces by inserting genetic material into a bacterium, causing the bacterium to build copies of the virus that burst out of the cell to infect other bacteria. A single phage can become 10 trillion phages within 2 hours, killing 99.9% of its host bacteria. Each type of phage attacks a specific strain of bacteria. This means that phage treatment is effective only if the phages are carefully matched to the disease-causing bacterium. It also means that phage treatment, unlike the use of antibiotics, can be effective without killing the body's helpful bacteria.

Introducing an active microbe into a patient does present some dangers, however. Phages can kill bacteria, but they can also make bacteria more lethal. A strain of *Escherichia coli* that is responsible for a deadly form of food poisoning, for example, has been observed to gain the ability to produce a toxic chemical from a phage genome that integrates itself into the bacterium's DNA. If a phage being used in therapy picked up a toxin-coding gene, the attempted cure could become lethal.

HIGHLIGHT

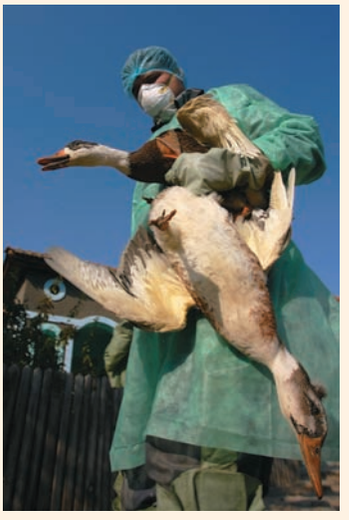
THE THREAT OF AVIAN INFLUENZA

In 1997, 18 people in Hong Kong contracted avian influenza, caused by the H5N1 strain of influenzavirus that spreads easily among chickens and other birds. At least half of these people caught the disease directly from birds, something that scientists had previously thought improbable. Human cases have had a death rate of over 60%. When people began dying of the illness, Hong Kong officials slaughtered all 1.5 million chickens within three days. That stopped a potential epidemic in Hong Kong, but it didn't stop the spread of the avian flu.

Avian flu virus very rarely spreads from one person to another. However, the possibility that this may change is of great concern to health officials worldwide. Avian flu viruses mutate quickly and can pick up genes from other flu viruses. If an avian flu virus picks up genes from a human flu virus, it could become a strain that spreads easily from person to person. In a worst-case scenario in this age of jet travel, such a strain of avian/human flu could cause a pandemic killing 2 million to 50 million people worldwide, according to the World Health Organization.

What should be done? In Asia, domesticated fowl have been slaughtered to prevent the virus from spreading. But while governments concentrated on culling domestic poultry, the virus spread to wild birds, such as geese, gray herons, and feral pigeons, and via wild birds it has spread throughout Asia, Europe, and Africa.

Scientists have developed a vaccine that they believe could protect against the H5N1 strain of the virus. Unfortunately, a government could stockpile vaccine for one strain of flu only to have the virus mutate into a new form against which the vaccine is ineffective.



In this section we examine the replication processes that are shared by DNA and RNA animal viruses, compare these processes with those of bacteriophages, and discuss how the synthesis of DNA and RNA viruses differ.

Attachment of Animal Viruses

As with bacteriophages, attachment of an animal virus is dependent on the chemical attraction and exact fit between proteins or glycoproteins on the virion and complementary protein or glycoprotein receptors on the animal cell's cytoplasmic membrane. Unlike the bacteriophages we have examined, animal viruses lack both tails and tail fibers. Instead, animal viruses typically have glycoprotein spikes or other attachment molecules on their capsids or envelopes.

Entry and Uncoating of Animal Viruses

Animal viruses enter a host cell shortly after attachment. Even though entry of animal viruses is not as well understood as entry of bacteriophages, there appear to be at least three different mechanisms: direct penetration, membrane fusion, and endocytosis.

Some naked viruses enter their hosts' cells by *direct penetration*—a process in which the viral capsid attaches and sinks into the cytoplasmic membrane, creating a pore through which the genome alone enters the cell **(Figure 13.12a)**. Poliovirus infects host cells via direct penetration.

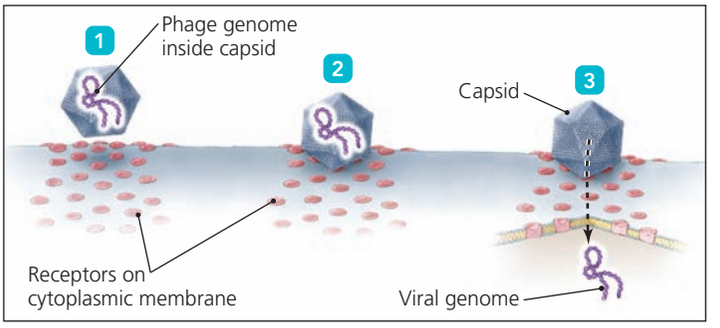
With other animal viruses, by contrast, the entire capsid and its contents (including the genome) enter the host cell by membrane fusion or endocytosis. With viruses using *membrane fusion*, including the measles virus, the viral envelope and the host cell membrane fuse, releasing the capsid into the cell's cytoplasm and leaving the envelope glycoproteins as part of the cell membrane **(Figure 13.12b)**.

Most enveloped viruses and some naked viruses enter host cells by triggering *endocytosis.* Attachment of the virus to receptor molecules on the cell's surface stimulates the cell to endocytize the entire virus **(Figure 13.12c)**. Adenoviruses (naked) and herpesviruses (enveloped) enter human host cells via endocytosis.

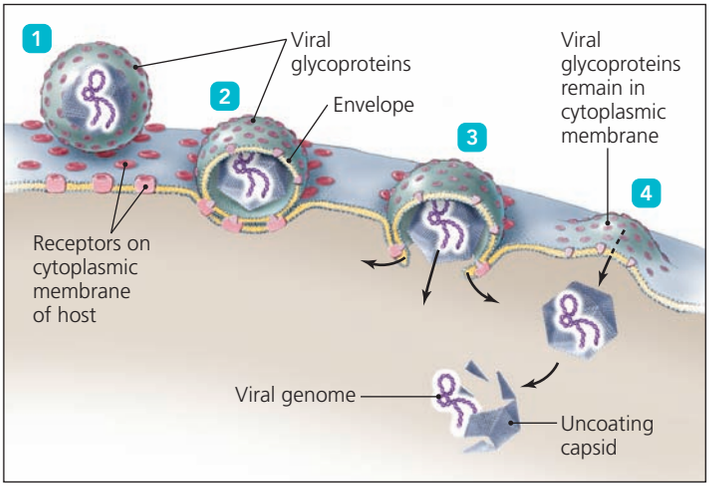
For those viruses that penetrate a host cell with their capsids intact, the capsids must be removed to release their genomes before the viruses can continue to replicate. The removal of a viral capsid within a host cell is called **uncoating,** a process that remains poorly understood. It apparently occurs via different means in different viruses; some viruses are uncoated within vesicles by cellular enzymes, whereas others are uncoated by enzymes within the cell's cytosol.

Synthesis of DNA Viruses of Animals

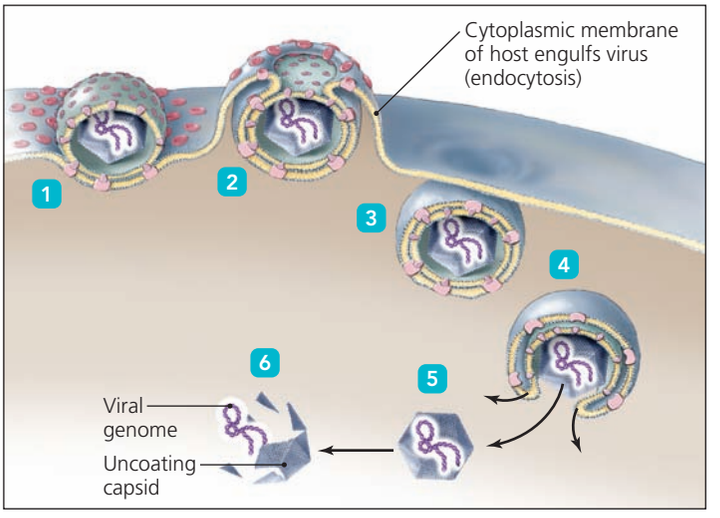
Synthesis of animal viruses also differs from synthesis of bacteriophages. Each type of animal virus requires a different strategy for synthesis that depends on the kind of nucleic acid involved—whether it is DNA or RNA and whether it is double stranded or single stranded. DNA viruses typically enter the nucleus, whereas most RNA viruses are replicated in the cytoplasm.



(a) Direct penetration



(b) Membrane fusion



(c) Endocytosis

▲ Figure 13.12 Three mechanisms of entry of animal viruses. **(a)** Direct penetration, a process whereby naked virions inject their genomes into their animal cell hosts. **(b)** Membrane fusion, in which fusion of the viral envelope and cell membrane dumps the capsid into the cell. **(c)** Endocytosis, in which attachment of a naked or an enveloped virus stimulates the host cell to engulf the entire virus. *After penetration, many animal viruses must be uncoated, but bacteriophages need not be. Why is this so?*

Figure 13.12 *Generally bacteriophages inject their DNA during penetration, so the capsid does not enter the cell.*

As we discuss the synthesis and assembly of each type of animal virus, consider the following two questions:

- How is mRNA—needed for the translation of viral proteins—synthesized?
- What molecule serves as a template for nucleic acid replication?

dsDNA Viruses Synthesis of new double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) virions is similar to the normal replication of cellular DNA and translation of proteins. The genomes of most dsDNA viruses enter the nucleus of the cell, where cellular enzymes replicate the viral genome in the same manner as they replicate host dsDNA—using each strand of viral DNA as a template for its complement. After messenger RNA is transcribed from viral DNA in the nucleus and capsomere proteins are made in the cytoplasm by host ribosomes, capsomeres enter the nucleus, where new virions spontaneously assemble. This method of replication is seen with herpes and papilloma (wart) viruses.

There are two well-known exceptions to this regimen of dsDNA viruses:

- Every part of a poxvirus is synthesized and assembled in the cytoplasm of the host's cell; the nucleus is not involved.
- The genome of hepatitis B viruses is replicated using an RNA intermediary instead of replicating DNA from a DNA template. In other words, the genome of hepatitis B virus is transcribed into RNA, which is then used as a template to make multiple copies of viral DNA genome. The latter process, which is the reverse of normal transcription, is mediated by a viral enzyme, *reverse transcriptase.*

(Chapter 24 discusses diseases of these two viruses.)

ssDNA Viruses A human virus with a genome composed of single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) is a parvovirus. Cells do not use ssDNA, so when a parvovirus enters the nucleus of a host cell, host enzymes produce a new strand of DNA complementary to the viral genome. This complementary strand binds to the ssDNA of the virus to form a dsDNA molecule. Transcription of mRNA, replication of new ssDNA, and viral assembly then follow the DNA virus pattern just described.

Synthesis of RNA Viruses of Animals

As previously noted, RNA is not used as genetic material in cells, so it follows that the synthesis of RNA viruses must differ significantly from typical cellular processes and from the replication of DNA viruses as well. There are four types of RNA viruses: positive-sense, single-stranded RNA (designated +ssRNA); retroviruses (a kind of +ssRNA virus); negative-sense, single-stranded RNA (–ssRNA); and double-stranded RNA (dsRNA). The synthesis process for these RNA viruses is varied and rather complex. We start with the synthesis of +ssRNA viruses.

Positive ssRNA Viruses Single-stranded viral RNA that can act directly as mRNA is called **positive-strand RNA (+RNA).** Ribosomes translate polypeptides using the codons of such RNA. An example of a +ssRNA virus is poliovirus. In many +ssRNA viruses, a complementary **negative-strand RNA (–RNA)** is transcribed from the +ssRNA genome by viral RNA polymerase; –RNA then serves as the template for the transcription of multiple +ssRNA genomes. Such transcription of RNA from RNA is unique to viruses; no cell transcribes RNA from RNA.

Retroviruses Unlike other +ssRNA viruses, the +ssRNA viruses called **retroviruses** do not use their genome as mRNA. Instead, retroviruses use a DNA intermediary that is transcribed from +RNA by reverse transcriptase carried within the capsid. This DNA intermediary then serves as the template for the synthesis of additional +RNA molecules, which act both as mRNA for protein synthesis and as genomes for new virions. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is a prominent retrovirus.

Negative ssRNA Viruses Other single-stranded RNA virions are –ssRNA viruses, which must overcome a unique problem. In order to synthesize a protein, a ribosome can use only mRNA (i.e., +RNA) because –RNA is not recognized by ribosomes. The virus overcomes this problem by carrying within its capsid an enzyme, *RNA-dependent RNA transcriptase,* which is released into the host cell's cytoplasm during uncoating and then transcribes +RNA molecules from the virus's –RNA genome. Translation of proteins can then occur as usual. The newly transcribed +RNA also serves as a template for transcription of additional copies of –RNA. Diseases caused by –ssRNA viruses include rabies and flu.

dsRNA Viruses Viruses that have double-stranded RNA use yet another method of synthesis. The positive strand of the molecule serves as mRNA for the translation of proteins, one of which is an RNA polymerase that transcribes dsRNA. Each strand of RNA acts as a template for transcription of its opposite, which is reminiscent of DNA replication in cells. Double-stranded RNA rotaviruses cause most cases of diarrhea in infants.

Figure 13.13 illustrates and **Table 13.3** summarizes the various strategies by which animal viruses are synthesized.

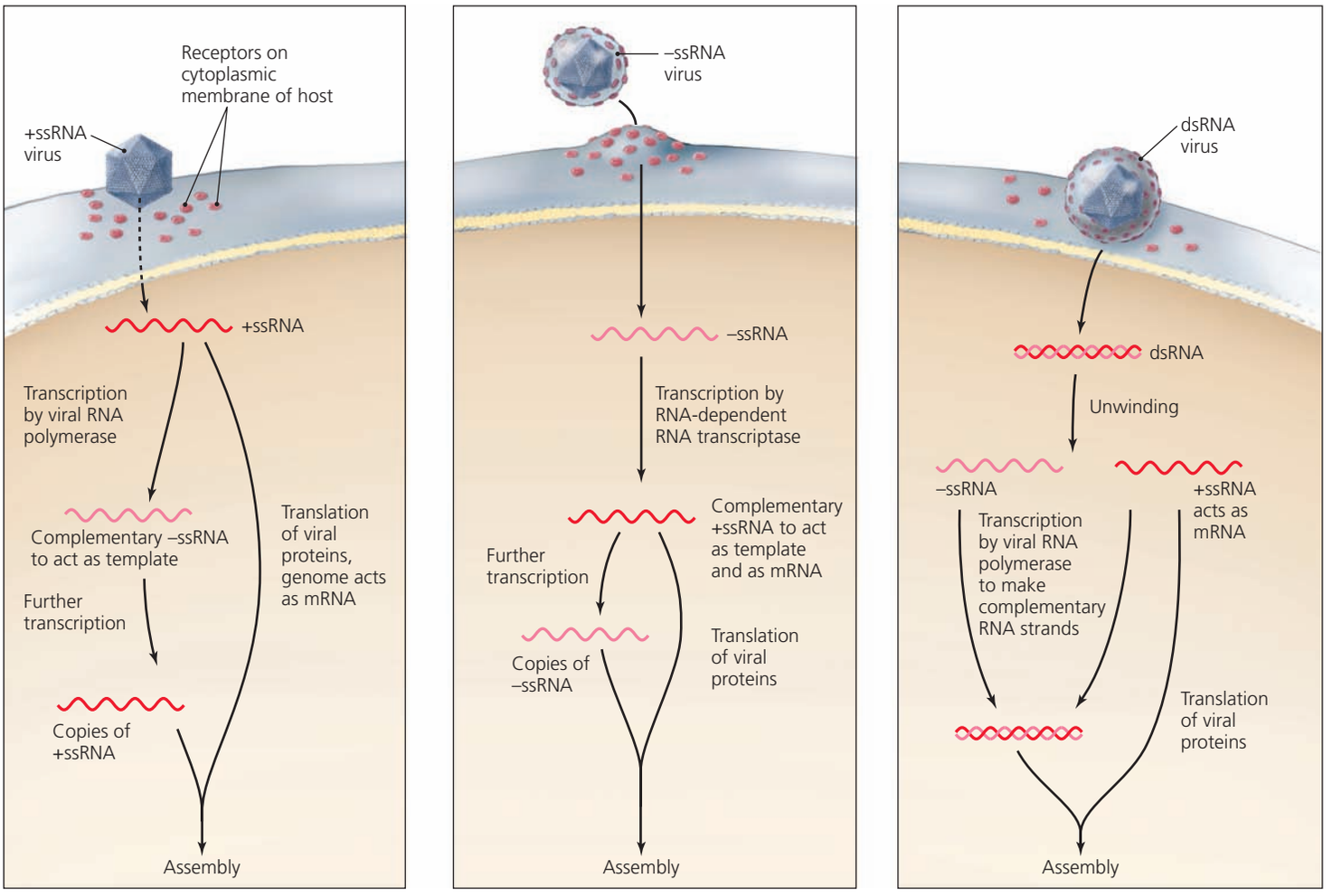
CRITICAL THINKING

Although many +ssRNA viruses use their genome directly as messenger RNA, +ssRNA retroviruses do not. Instead, their +RNA is transcribed into DNA by reverse transcriptase. What advantage do retroviruses gain by using reverse transcriptase?

Assembly and Release of Animal Viruses

As with bacteriophages, once the components of animal viruses are synthesized, they assemble into virions that are then released from the host cell. Most DNA viruses assemble in and are released from the nucleus into the cytosol, whereas most RNA viruses develop solely in the cytoplasm. The number of viruses produced and released depends on both the type of virus and the size and initial health of the host cell.

Replication of animal viruses takes more time than replication of bacteriophages. Herpesviruses, for example, require almost 24 hours to replicate, as compared to 25 minutes for hundreds of copies of bacteriophage T4.

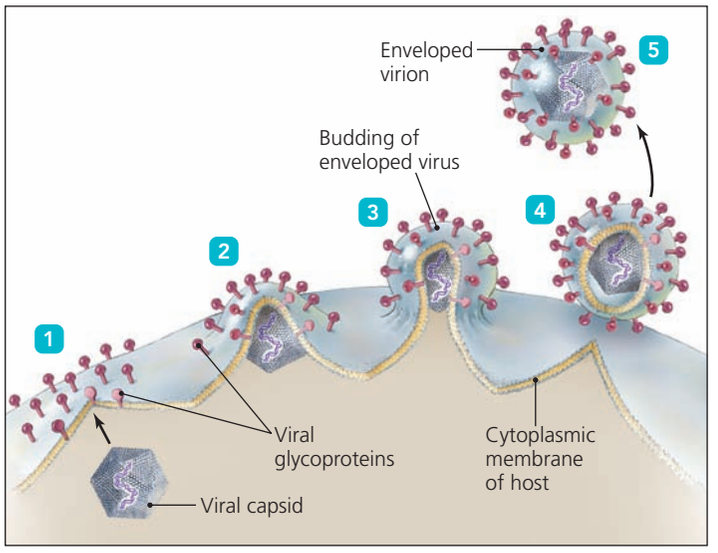


(a) Positive-sense ssRNA virus **(b) Negative-sense ssRNA virus** **(c) Double-stranded RNA virus**

▲ **Figure 13.13 Synthesis of proteins and genomes in animal RNA viruses.** **(a)** Positive-sense ssRNA virus, in which +ssRNA acts as mRNA and –ssRNA is the genome template. **(b)** Negative-sense ssRNA virus: transcription forms +ssRNA to serve both as mRNA and as template. **(c)** dsRNA virus genome unwinds so that the positive-sense strand serves as mRNA, and each strand serves as a template for its complement.

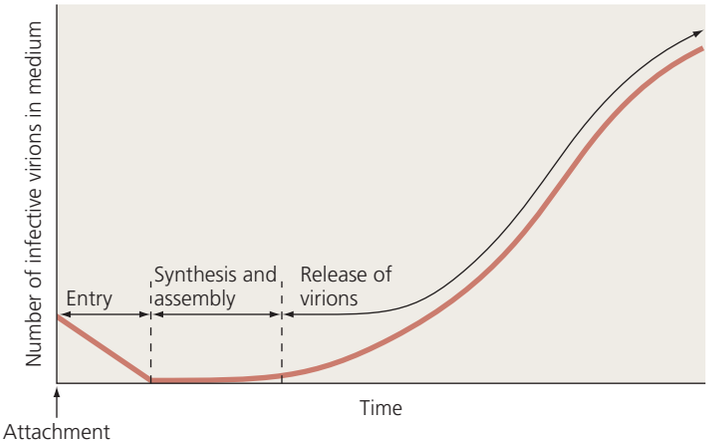
TABLE 13.3 Synthesis Strategies of Animal Viruses

Genome	How Is mRNA Synthesized?	What Molecule Is the Template for Genome Replication?
dsDNA	By RNA polymerase (in nucleus or cytoplasm of cell)	Each strand of DNA serves as template for its complement (except for hepatitis B, which synthesizes RNA to act as the template for new DNA)
ssDNA	By RNA polymerase (in nucleus of cell)	Complementary strand of DNA is synthesized to act as template
+ssRNA	Genome acts as mRNA	–RNA complementary to the genome is synthesized to act as template
+ssRNA *(Retroviridae)*	DNA is synthesized from RNA by reverse transcriptase; mRNA is transcribed from DNA by RNA polymerase	DNA
–ssRNA	By RNA-dependent RNA transcriptase	+RNA (mRNA) complementary to the genome
dsRNA	Positive strand of genome acts as mRNA	Each strand of genome acts as template for its complement



▲ Figure 13.14 The process of budding in enveloped viruses.
What term describes a nonenveloped virus?

Figure 13.14 *Naked.*



▲ Figure 13.15 Pattern of virion abundance in persistent infections. A generalized curve of virion abundance for persistent infections by budding enveloped viruses. Because the curve does not represent any actual infection, units for the graph's axes are omitted.

Enveloped animal viruses are often released via a process called **budding** (Figure 13.14). As virions are assembled, they are extruded through one of the cell's membranes—the nuclear, endoplasmic reticulum, or the cytoplasmic membrane. Each virion acquires a portion of membrane, which becomes the viral envelope. During synthesis, some viral glycoproteins are inserted into cellular membranes, and these proteins become the glycoprotein spikes on the surface of the viral envelope.

Because the host cell is not quickly lysed, as occurs in bacteriophage replication, budding allows an infected cell to remain alive for some time. Infections with enveloped viruses in which host cells shed viruses slowly and relatively steadily are called *persistent infections;* a curve showing virus abundance over time during a persistent infection lacks the burst of new virions seen in lytic replication cycles (Figure 13.15; compare to Figure 13.9).

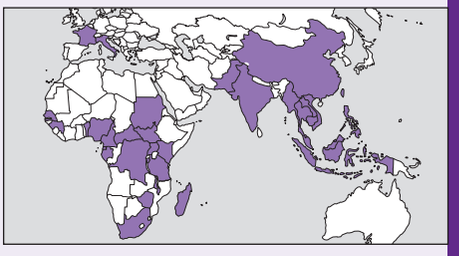
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

CHIKUNGUNYA

An old man arrived at the doctor's office in Ravenna, Italy, with a combination of signs and symptoms the physician had never heard of: a widespread, severe rash; difficulty in breathing; high fever; nausea; and extreme joint pain. Chikungunya (chik-en-gun´ya) had arrived in Europe.

Though scientists had known of chikungunya virus, which is related to equine encephalitis viruses, for over 50 years, most considered the tropical disease benign—a limited, mild irritation, not a catastrophe. Therefore, few researchers studied chikungunya virus or its disease. Now, they know better.

Over the past decade, chikungunya virus has spread throughout the nations of the Indian Ocean and across Africa. In 2006, officials on the French-owned island of La Réunion in the Indian Ocean reported 47,000 cases of chikungunya in a single week! That same year chikungunya reemerged in India for the first time in four decades with more than 1.5 million reported cases, and in 2010 it emerged in China. Why?



Aedes albopictus (Asian tiger mosquito), which carries the virus, has moved into temperate climates, including Europe and the United States, as the climate has warmed. With the mosquito comes the possibility of viral proliferation—the insects have spread the tropical disease as far north as Italy.

And our Italian patient? His crippling pain lasted for months, but he survived. Now that he knows about mosquito-borne chikungunya, he insists that his family and friends use mosquito repellent liberally. Officials in the rest of Europe and in the United States join in his concern: With the coming of *Ae. albopictus*, is incurable chikungunya far behind?

TABLE 13.4 A Comparison of Bacteriophage and Animal Virus Replication

	Bacteriophage	Animal Virus
Attachment	Proteins on tails attach to proteins on cell wall	Spikes, capsids, or envelope proteins attach to proteins or glycoproteins on cell membrane
Penetration	Genome is injected into cell or diffuses into cell	Capsid enters cell by direct penetration, fusion, or endocytosis
Uncoating	None	Removal of capsid by cell enzymes
Site of synthesis	In cytoplasm	RNA viruses in cytoplasm; most DNA viruses in nucleus
Site of assembly	In cytoplasm	RNA viruses in cytoplasm; most DNA viruses in nucleus
Mechanism of release	Lysis	Naked virions: exocytosis or lysis; enveloped virions: budding
Nature of chronic infection	Lysogeny, always incorporated into host chromosome, may leave host chromosome	Latency, with or without incorporation into host DNA; incorporation is permanent

Naked animal viruses may be released in one of two ways: Either they may be extruded from the cell by exocytosis, in a manner similar to budding but without the acquisition of an envelope, or they may cause lysis and death of the cell, reminiscent of bacteriophage release. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Viral Replication: Animal Viruses***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

If an enveloped virus were somehow released from a cell without budding, it would not have an envelope. What effect would this have on the virulence of the virus? Why?

Because viral replication uses cellular structures and pathways involved in the growth and maintenance of healthy cells, any strategy for the treatment of viral diseases that involves disrupting viral replication may disrupt normal cellular processes as well. This is one reason it is difficult to treat viral diseases. (The modes of action of some available antiviral drugs are discussed in Chapter 10; the body's naturally produced antiviral chemicals—interferons and antibodies—are discussed in Chapters 15 and 16.)

Latency of Animal Viruses

Some animal viruses, including chicken pox and herpes viruses, may remain dormant in cells in a process known as **latency;** the viruses involved in latency are called **latent viruses** or **proviruses.** Latency may be prolonged for years with no viral activity, signs, or symptoms. Though latency is similar to lysogeny as seen with bacteriophages, there are differences. Some latent viruses do not become incorporated into the chromosomes of their host cells, whereas lysogenic phages always do.

On the other hand, some animal viruses (e.g., HIV) are more like lysogenic phages in that they do become integrated into a host chromosome as a provirus. However, when a provirus is incorporated into its host DNA, the condition is permanent; induction does not occur in eukaryotes. Thus, an incorporated provirus becomes a permanent, physical part of the host's chromosome, and all descendants of the infected cell will carry the provirus.

Given that RNA cannot be incorporated directly into a chromosome molecule, how does the ssRNA of HIV become a provirus incorporated into the DNA of its host cell? HIV can become a permanent part of a host's chromosome because it, like all retroviruses, carries reverse transcriptase, which transcribes the genetic information of the +RNA molecule to a DNA molecule—which *can* become incorporated into the host cell's genome.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A latent virus that is incorporated into a host cell's chromosome is never induced; that is, it never emerges from the host cell's chromosome to become a free virus. Given that it cannot emerge from the host cell's chromosome, can such a latent virus be considered "safe"? Why or why not?

Table 13.4 compares the features of the replication of bacteriophages and animal viruses. Next we turn our attention to the part viruses can play in cancer, beginning with a brief consideration of the terminology needed to understand the basic nature of cancer.

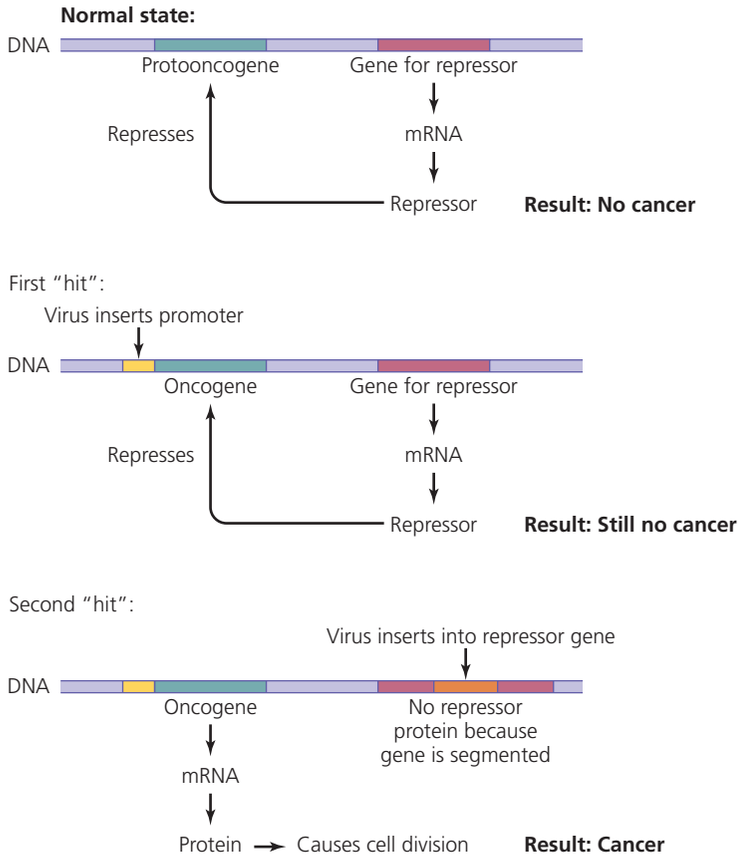
The Role of Viruses in Cancer

Learning Outcomes

13.13 Define the terms *neoplasia, tumor, benign, malignant, cancer,* and *metastasis.*

13.14 Explain in simple terms how a cell may become cancerous, with special reference to the role of viruses.

Under normal conditions, the division of cells in a mature multicellular animal is under strict genetic control; that is, the animal's genes dictate that some types of cells can no longer divide at all and that those that can divide are prevented from unlimited division. In this genetic control, either genes for cell division are "turned off" or genes that inhibit division are "turned on," or some combination of both these genetic events occurs. However, if something upsets the genetic control, cells begin to divide uncontrollably. This phenomenon of uncontrolled cell division in



▲ Figure 13.16 The oncogene theory of the induction of cancer in humans. The theory suggests that more than one "hit" to the DNA (i.e., any change or mutation), whether caused by a virus (as shown here) or various physical or chemical agents, is required to induce cancer.

a multicellular animal is called **neoplasia**[2] (nē-ō-plā´zē-ă). Cells undergoing neoplasia are said to be neoplastic, and a mass of neoplastic cells is a **tumor.**

Some tumors are **benign;** that is, they remain in one place and are not generally harmful, although occasionally such noninvasive tumors are painful and rob adjacent normal cells of space and nutrients. Other tumors are **malignant,** invading neighboring tissues and even traveling throughout the body to invade other organs and tissues to produce new tumors—a process called **metastasis** (mĕ-tas´tă-sis). Malignant tumors are also called **cancers.** Cancers rob normal cells of space and nutrients and cause pain; in some kinds of cancer, malignant cells derange the function of the affected tissues, until eventually the body can no longer withstand the loss of normal function and dies.

Several theories have been proposed to explain the role viruses play in the development of cancers. These theories revolve around the presence of *protooncogenes* (prō-tō-ong´kō-jēnz)—genes that play a role in cell division. As long as protooncogenes are repressed, no cancer results. However, activity of oncogenes (their name when they are active) or inactivation of oncogene repressors can cause cancer to develop. In most cases, several genetic changes must occur before cancer develops. Put another way, "multiple hits" to the genome must occur for cancer to result **(Figure 13.16)**.

A variety of environmental factors contribute to the inhibition of oncogene repressors and the activation of oncogenes. Ultraviolet light, radiation, certain chemicals called *carcinogens* (kar-si´nō-jenz), and viruses have all been implicated in the development of cancer.

Viruses cause 20% to 25% of human cancers in several ways. Some viruses carry copies of oncogenes as part of their genomes, other viruses promote oncogenes already present in the host, and still other viruses interfere with normal tumor repression when they insert (as proviruses) into repressor genes.

That viruses cause some animal cancers is well established. In the first decade of the 1900s, virologist F. Peyton Rous (1879–1970) proved that viruses induce cancer in chickens. Though several DNA and RNA viruses are known to cause about 15% of human cancers, the link between viruses and most human cancers has been difficult to document. Among the virally induced cancers in humans are Burkitt's lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, Kaposi's sarcoma, and cervical cancer. DNA viruses in the families *Adenoviridae, Herpesviridae, Hepadnaviridae, Papillomaviridae,* and *Polyomaviridae* and two RNA viruses in the family *Retroviridae* cause these and other human cancers. (Chapters 24 and 25 discuss diseases caused by DNA viruses and RNA viruses.)

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why are DNA viruses more likely to cause neoplasias than are RNA viruses?

Culturing Viruses in the Laboratory

Learning Outcomes

13.15 Describe some ethical and practical difficulties to overcome in culturing viruses.

13.16 Describe three types of media used for culturing viruses.

Scientists must culture viruses in order to conduct research and develop vaccines and treatments, but because viruses cannot metabolize or replicate by themselves, they cannot be grown in standard microbiological broths or on agar plates. Instead, they must be cultured inside suitable host cells, a requirement that complicates the detection, identification, and characterization of viruses. Virologists have developed three types of media for culturing viruses: media consisting of mature organisms (bacteria, plants, or animals), embryonated (fertilized) eggs, and cell cultures. We begin by considering the culture of viruses in organisms.

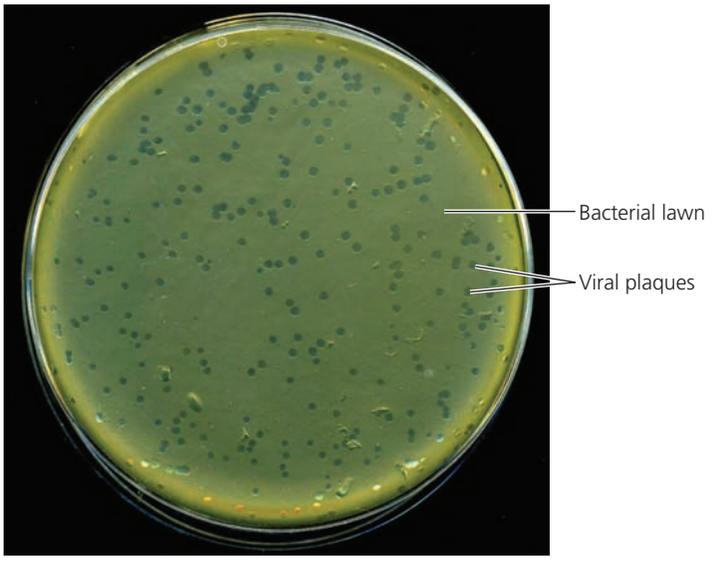
Culturing Viruses in Mature Organisms

Learning Outcomes

13.17 Explain the use of a plaque assay in culturing viruses in bacteria.

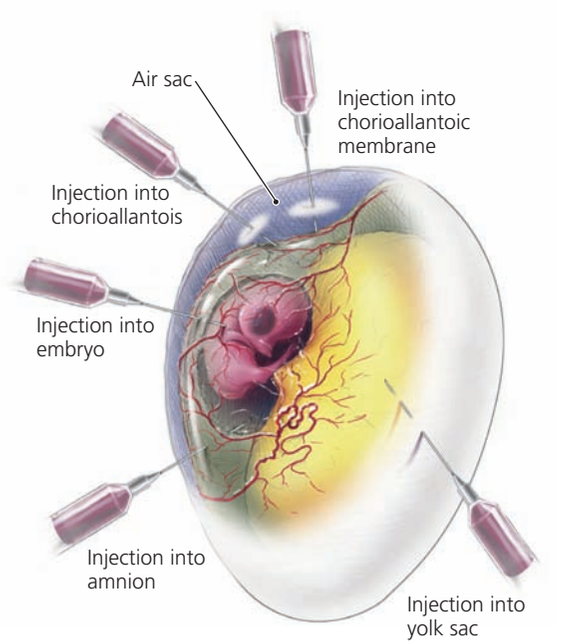
13.18 List three problems with growing viruses in animals.

[2]From Greek *neo*, meaning "new," and *plassein*, meaning "to mold."



▲ **Figure 13.17 Viral plaques in a lawn of bacterial growth on the surface of an agar plate.** *What is the cause of viral plaques?*

Figure 13.17 *Each plaque is an area in a bacterial lawn where bacteria have succumbed to phage infections.*



▲ **Figure 13.18 Inoculation sites for the culture of viruses in embryonated chicken eggs.** *Why are eggs often used to grow animal viruses?*

Figure 13.18 *Eggs are large, sterile, self-sufficient cells that contain a number of different sites suitable for viral replication.*

In the following sections we consider the use of bacterial cells as a virus culture medium before considering the issues involved in growing viruses in living animals.

Culturing Viruses in Bacteria

Most of our knowledge of viral replication has been derived from research on bacteriophages, which are relatively easy to culture because some bacteria are easily grown and maintained. Phages can be grown in bacteria maintained either in liquid cultures or on agar plates. In the latter case, bacteria and phages are mixed with warm (liquid) nutrient agar and poured in a thin layer across the surface of an agar plate. During incubation, bacteria infected by phages lyse and release new phages that infect nearby bacteria, while uninfected bacteria grow and reproduce normally. After incubation, the appearance of the plate includes a uniform bacterial lawn interrupted by clear zones called **plaques,** which are areas where phages have lysed the bacteria **(Figure 13.17)**. Such plates enable the estimation of phage numbers via a technique called **plaque assay,** in which virologists assume that each plaque corresponds to a single phage in the original bacterium-virus mixture.

Culturing Viruses in Plants and Animals

Plant and animal viruses can be grown in laboratory plants and animals. Recall that the first discovery and isolation of a virus was the discovery of tobacco mosaic virus in tobacco plants. Rats, mice, guinea pigs, rabbits, pigs, and primates have been used to culture and study animal viruses.

However, maintaining laboratory animals can be difficult and expensive, and this practice raises ethical issues for some. Growing viruses that infect only humans raises additional ethical complications. Therefore, scientists have developed alternative ways of culturing animal and human viruses using fertilized chicken eggs or cell cultures.

Culturing Viruses in Embryonated Chicken Eggs

Chicken eggs are a useful culture medium for viruses because they are inexpensive, are among the largest of cells, are free of contaminating microbes, and contain a nourishing yolk (which makes them self-sufficient). Most suitable for culturing viruses are chicken eggs that have been fertilized and thus contain a developing embryo. Embroyonic tissues (called membranes, which should not be confused with cellular membranes) provide ideal inoculation sites for growing viruses **(Figure 13.18)**. Researchers inject samples of virus into embryonated eggs at the sites that are best suited for the particular virus's replication.

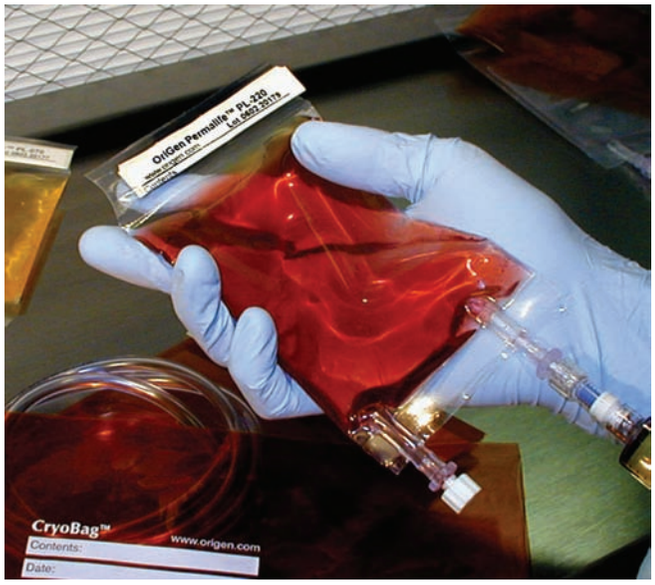
Vaccines against some viruses can also be prepared in egg cultures. You may have been asked if you are allergic to eggs before you received such a vaccine because egg protein may remain as a contaminant in the vaccine.

Culturing Viruses in Cell (Tissue) Culture

Learning Outcome

13.19 Compare and contrast diploid cell culture and continuous cell culture.

Viruses can also be grown in **cell culture,** which consists of cells isolated from an organism and grown on the surface of a medium



▲ **Figure 13.19 An example of cell culture.** The bag contains a colored nutrient medium for growing cells in which viruses can be cultured.

or in broth **(Figure 13.19)**. Such cultures became practical when antibiotics provided a way to limit the growth of contaminating bacteria. Cell culture can be less expensive than maintaining research animals, plants, or eggs, and it avoids some of the moral problems associated with experiments performed on animals and humans. Cell cultures are sometimes called *tissue cultures*, but the term *cell culture* is more accurate because only a single type of cell is used in the culture. (By definition, a tissue is composed of at least two kinds of cells.)

Cell cultures are of two types. The first type, **diploid cell cultures,** are created from embryonic animal, plant, or human cells that have been isolated and provided appropriate growth conditions. The cells in diploid cell culture generally last no more than about 100 generations (cell divisions) before they die.

The second type of culture, **continuous cell cultures,** are longer lasting because they are derived from tumor cells. Recall that a characteristic of neoplastic cells is that they divide relentlessly, providing a never-ending supply of new cells. One of the more famous continuous cell cultures is of HeLa cells, derived from a woman named *He*nrietta *La*cks, who died of cervical cancer in 1951. Though she is dead, Mrs. Lacks's cells live on in laboratories throughout the world.

It is interesting that HeLa cells have lost some of their original characteristics. For example, they are no longer diploid because they have lost many chromosomes. HeLa cells provide a semistandard[3] human tissue culture medium for studies on cell metabolism, aging, and (of course) viral infection.

[3]HeLa cells are "semistandard" because different strains have lost different chromosomes, and mutations have occurred over the years. Thus, HeLa cells in one laboratory may be slightly different from HeLa cells in another laboratory.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

HIV replicates only in certain types of human cells, and one early problem in AIDS research was culturing those cells. How do you think scientists are now able to culture HIV?

Are Viruses Alive?

Learning Outcome

13.20 Discuss aspects of viral replication that are lifelike and nonlifelike.

Now that we have studied the characteristics and replication processes of viruses, let's ask a question: Are viruses alive?

To be able to wrestle with the answer, we must first recall the characteristics of life: growth, self-reproduction, responsiveness, and the ability to metabolize, all within structures called cells. According to these criteria, viruses seem to lack the qualities of living things, prompting some scientists to consider them nothing more than complex pathogenic chemicals. For other scientists, however, at least three observations—that viruses use sophisticated methods to invade cells, have the means of taking control of their host cells, and possess genomes containing instructions for replicating themselves—indicate that viruses are the ultimate parasites because they use cells to make more viruses. According to this viewpoint, viruses are the least complex living entities.

In any case, viruses are right on the threshold of life—outside cells they do not appear to be alive, but within cells they direct the synthesis and assembly required to make copies of themselves.

What do you think? Are viruses alive?

Other Parasitic Particles: Viroids and Prions

Viruses are not the only submicroscopic entities capable of causing disorders within cells. In this section we will consider the characteristics of two molecular particles that infect cells: viroids and prions.

Characteristics of Viroids

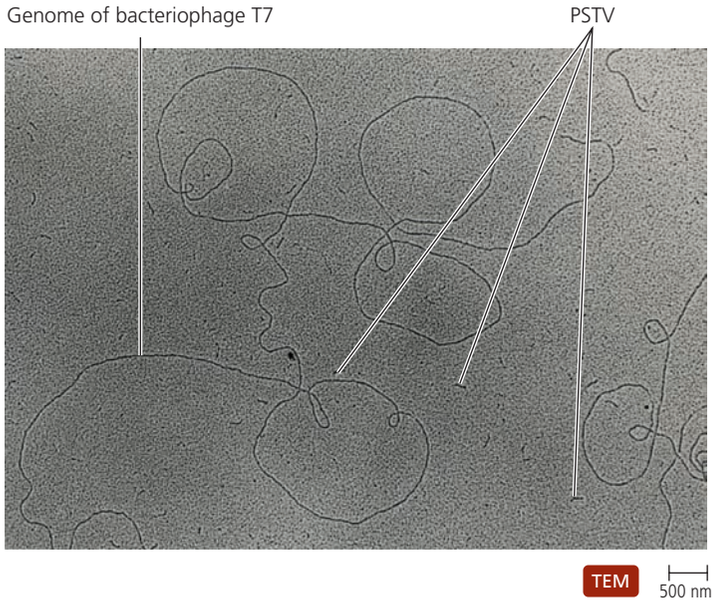
Learning Outcomes

13.21 Define and describe viroids.

13.22 Compare and contrast viroids and viruses.

Viroids are extremely small, circular pieces of RNA that are infectious and pathogenic in plants **(Figure 13.20)**. Viroids are similar to RNA viruses except that they lack capsids. Even though they are circular, viroids may appear linear because of hydrogen bonding within the molecule. Several plant diseases, including some of coconut palm, chrysanthemum, potato, cucumber, and avocado, are caused by viroids, including the stunting shown in **Figure 13.21**.

Viroidlike agents—infectious, pathogenic RNA particles that lack capsids but do not infect plants—affect some fungi. (They are not called viroids because they do not infect plants.) No animal diseases are known to be caused by viroidlike molecules, though the possibility exists that infectious RNA may be responsible for some diseases in humans.



▲ **Figure 13.20 The RNA strand of the small potato spindle tuber viroid (PSTV).** Also shown for comparison is the longer DNA genome of bacteriophage T7. *Compare both to the size of a bacterial genome in Figure 13.2. How are viroids similar to and different from viruses?*

Figure 13.20 *Viroids are similar to certain viruses in that they are infectious and contain a single strand of RNA; they are different from viruses in that they lack a proteinaceous capsid.*

▲ **Figure 13.21 One effect of viroids on plants.** The potatoes at right are stunted as the result of infection with PSTV viroids.

Characteristics of Prions

Learning Outcomes

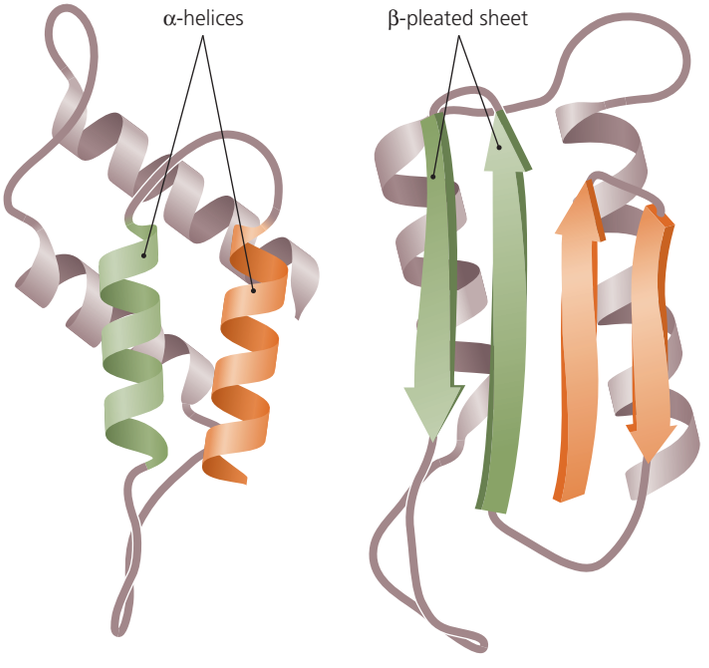
13.23 Define and describe prions, including their replication process.
13.24 Compare and contrast prions and viruses.
13.25 List four diseases caused by prions.

In 1982, Stanley Prusiner (1942–) described a proteinaceous infectious agent that was different from any other known infectious agent in that it lacked instructional nucleic acid. Prusiner named such agents of disease **prions** (prē´onz), for *pro*teinaceous *in*fective particles. Before his discovery, the diseases now known to be caused by prions were thought to be caused by what were known as "slow viruses," which were so named because 60 years might lapse between infection and the onset of signs and symptoms. Through experiments, Prusiner and his colleagues showed that prions are not viruses because they lack any nucleic acid. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Prions: Overview*

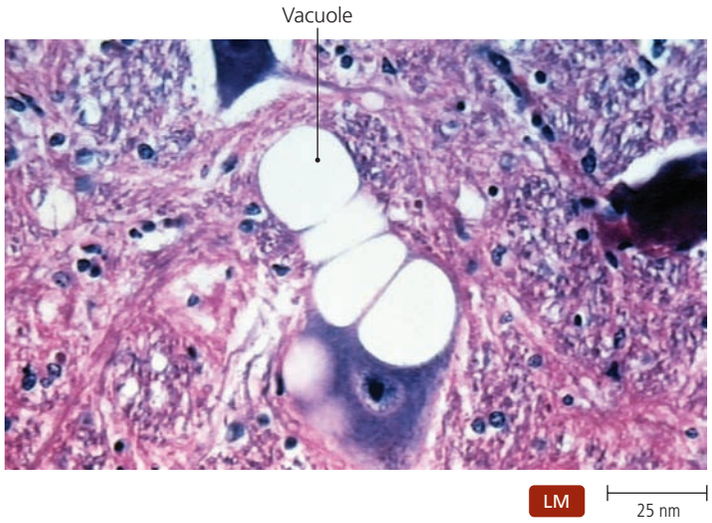
Some scientists resist the concept of prions because particles that lack any nucleic acid violate the "universal" rule of protein synthesis—that proteins are translated from a molecule of mRNA. Given that "infectious proteins" lack nucleic acid, how can they carry the information required to replicate themselves?

All mammals make a cytoplasmic membrane protein called *PrP*. PrP is anchored in lipid rafts and plays a role in the normal activity of the brain, though the exact function of PrP is unknown. The amino acid sequence in PrP is such that the protein can fold into two stable tertiary structures: The normal, functional structure of *cellular PrP* has several prominent α-helices, whereas a disease-causing form—*prion PrP*—is characterized by β-pleated sheets **(Figure 13.22)**.

Scientists have determined that prion PrP acts like a bad influence in a crowd of teenagers, encouraging molecules of normal, cellular PrP to misbehave by refolding into prion PrP molecules, which then clump together. As clumps of prion PrP propagate throughout the brain, neurons stop working properly and eventually die, leaving holes and a spongy appearance **(Figure 13.23)**. Because of this characteristic, clinicians call prion diseases



▲ **Figure 13.22 The two stable, three-dimensional forms of prion protein (PrP). (a)** Cellular prion protein (normal form) found in functional cells has a preponderance of alpha-helices. **(b)** Prion PrP (abnormal form), which has the same amino acid sequence, is folded to produce a preponderance of beta-pleated sheets.



▲ Figure 13.23 A brain showing the large vacuoles and spongy appearance typical in prion-induced diseases. Shown here is the brain of a sheep with the prion disease called scrapie.

spongiform encephalopathies (spŭn´ji-fōrm en-sef´ă-lop´ă-thēz).
▶ANIMATIONS: ***Prions: Characteristics***

Why don't prions develop in all mammals, given that all mammals have PrP? Under normal circumstances, it appears that other nearby proteins and polysaccharides in lipid rafts force PrP into the correct (cellular) shape. Mutations in the PrP gene can result in the initial formation of prion PrP, but human cellular PrP visually misfolds only if it contains methionine as the 129th amino acid. About 40% of humans have this type of PrP and are thus susceptible to prion disease.

Prions are associated with several diseases, including *bovine spongiform encephalitis* (*BSE,* so-called mad cow disease), *scrapie* in sheep, *kuru* (a human disease that has been eliminated), *chronic wasting disease (CWD)* in deer and elk, and *variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease*[4] *(vCJD)* in humans. The ingestion of infected tissue, transplants of infected tissue, or contact between infected tissue and mucous membranes or skin abrasions transmit these diseases. **▶ ANIMATIONS:** ***Prions: Diseases***

Normal cooking or sterilization procedures do not deactivate prions, though they are destroyed by incineration or by autoclaving in concentrated sodium hydroxide. The European Union recently approved the use of enzymes developed using biotechnology to remove prions from medical equipment.

There is no treatment for any prion disease, though the antimalarial drug quinacrine and the antipsychotic drug chlorpromazine forestall prion disease in mice. Human trials of these drugs are ongoing.

PrP proteins of different species are different, and at one time it was thought unlikely that prions could cross between species; however, an epidemic of BSE in Great Britain in the late 1980s resulted in the spread of prions to humans who ate infected beef. To prevent infection, most countries ban the use of animal-derived protein in animal feed. Unfortunately, this step was too late for more than 175 Europeans who developed fatal vCJD. (See **Clinical Case Study: Invasion from Within or Without?**)

Different prions may lie behind other neuronal diseases, such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS).

[4]"Variant" because it is derived from BSE prions in cattle, as opposed to the regular form of CJD, which is a genetic disease.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

INVASION FROM WITHIN OR WITHOUT?

A 32-year-old father of two small children lived in the midwestern United States. An avid hunter since childhood, the man visited annually with family and friends in Colorado for elk hunting. His job required frequent travel to Europe, where he enjoyed exotic foods.

In 1988, his wife recalls, he began having problems. Frequently he forgot to pick up things from the store or even that his wife had called him. Later that year, he was unable to complete paperwork at his business and had difficulty performing even basic math. In England on business, he had forgotten his home phone number in the United States and couldn't remember how to spell his name for directory assistance.

By September, his wife insisted he seek medical care. All the standard blood tests came back normal. A psychologist diagnosed depression, but a brain scan revealed spongiform changes. He was given six weeks to live because there is no treatment for this disease.

1. What is the likely diagnosis?
2. The man's wife wondered, "Can we catch this disease from my husband?" How would you respond?
3. Where and how was the man probably infected?

CRITICAL THINKING

Why did scientists initially resist the idea of an infectious protein?

In this chapter we have seen that humans, animals, plants, fungi, bacteria, and archaea are susceptible to infection by acellular pathogens: viruses, viroids, and prions. Table 13.5 summarizes the differences and similarities among these pathogenic agents and bacterial pathogens.

TABLE 13.5 Comparison of Viruses, Viroids, and Prions to Bacterial Cells

	Bacteria	Viruses	Viroids	Prions
Width	200–2000 nm	10–400 nm	2 nm	5 nm
Length	200–550,000 nm	20–800 nm	40–130 nm	5 nm
Nucleic acid?	Both DNA and RNA	Either DNA or RNA, never both	RNA only	None
Protein?	Present	Present	Absent	Present (PrP)
Cellular?	Yes	No	No	No
Cytoplasmic membrane?	Present	Absent (though some viruses do have a membranous envelope)	Absent	Absent
Functional ribosomes?	Present	Absent	Absent	Absent
Growth?	Present	Absent	Absent	Absent
Self-replicating?	Yes	No	No	Yes; transform PrP protein already present in cell
Responsiveness?	Present	Some bacteriophages respond to a host cell by injecting their genomes	Absent	Absent
Metabolism?	Present	Absent	Absent	Absent

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

1. Viruses, viroids, and prions are **acellular** disease-causing agents that lack cell structure and cannot metabolize, grow, self-reproduce, or respond to their environment.

Characteristics of Viruses (pp. 379–383)

1. A **virus** is a tiny infectious agent with nucleic acid surrounded by proteinaceous **capsomeres** that form a coat called a **capsid.** A virus exists in an extracellular state and an intracellular state. A **virion** is a complete viral particle, including a nucleic acid and a capsid, outside of a cell.
2. The genomes of viruses include either DNA or RNA. Viral genomes may be dsDNA, ssDNA, dsRNA, or ssRNA. They may exist as linear or circular and singular or multiple molecules of nucleic acid, depending on the type of virus.
3. A **bacteriophage** (or **phage**) is a virus that infects a bacterial cell.
4. Virions can have a membranous **envelope** or be naked—that is, without an envelope.

Classification of Viruses (pp. 383–385)

1. Viruses are classified based on type of nucleic acid, presence of an envelope, shape, and size.
2. The International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses (ICTV) has recognized viral family and genus names. With the exception of three orders, higher taxa are not established.

Viral Replication (pp. 386–395)

1. Viruses depend on random contact with a specific host cell type for replication. Typically a virus in a cell proceeds with a **lytic replication cycle** with five stages: **attachment, entry, synthesis, assembly,** and **release.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Overview*
2. Once attachment has been made between virion and host cell, the nucleic acid enters the cell. With phages, only the nucleic acid enters the host cell. With animal viruses, the entire virion often enters the cell, where the capsid is then removed in a process called **uncoating.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Animal Viruses*

3. Within the host cell, the viral nucleic acid directs synthesis of more viruses using metabolic enzymes and ribosomes of the host cell.
4. Assembly of synthesized virions occurs in the host cell, typically as capsomeres surround replicated or transcribed nucleic acids to form new virions.
5. Virions are released from the host cell either by lysis of the host cell (seen with phages and animal viruses) or by the extrusion of enveloped virions through the host's cytoplasmic membrane (called **budding**), a process seen only with certain animal viruses. If budding continues over time, the infection is persistent. An envelope is derived from a cell membrane.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Virulent Bacteriophages*
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *The Lytic Cycle of Viral Replication*
6. **Temperate phages** (lysogenic phages) enter a bacterial cell and remain inactive in a process called **lysogeny** or a **lysogenic replication cycle.** Such inactive phages are called **prophages** and are inserted into the chromosome of the cell and passed to its daughter cells. **Lysogenic conversion** results when phages carry genes that alter the phenotype of a bacterium. At some point in the generations that follow, a prophage may be excised from the chromosome in a process known as **induction.** At that point the prophage again becomes a lytic virus.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Viral Replication: Temperate Bacteriophages*
7. In **latency,** a process similar to lysogeny, an animal virus remains inactive in a cell, possibly for years, as part of a chromosome or in the cytosol. A **latent** virus is also known as a **provirus.** A provirus that has become incorporated into a host's chromosome remains there.
8. With the exception of hepatitis B virus, dsDNA viruses act like cellular DNA in transcription and replication.
9. Some ssRNA viruses have **positive-strand RNA (+RNA),** which can be directly translated by ribosomes to synthesize protein. From the +RNA, complementary **negative-strand RNA (–RNA)** is transcribed to serve as a template for more +RNA.
10. **Retroviruses,** such as HIV, are +ssRNA viruses that carry reverse transcriptase, which transcribes DNA from RNA. This reverse process (DNA transcribed from RNA) is reflected in the name retrovirus.
11. –ssRNA viruses carry an RNA-dependent RNA transcriptase for transcribing mRNA from the –RNA genome so that protein can then be translated. Transcription of RNA from RNA is not found in cells.
12. In dsRNA viruses, one strand of RNA functions as a genome, and the other strand functions as a template for RNA replication.

The Role of Viruses in Cancer (pp. 395–396)

1. **Neoplasia** is uncontrolled cellular reproduction in a multicellular animal. A mass of neoplastic cells, called a **tumor,** may be relatively harmless **(benign)** or invasive **(malignant).** Malignant tumors are also called **cancer. Metastasis** describes the spreading of malignant tumors. Environmental factors or oncogenic viruses may cause neoplasia.

Culturing Viruses in the Laboratory (pp. 396–398)

1. In the laboratory, viruses must be cultured inside mature organisms, in embryonated chicken eggs, or in cell cultures because viruses cannot metabolize or replicate alone.
2. When a mixture of bacteria and phages is grown on an agar plate, bacteria infected with phages lyse, producing clear areas called **plaques** on the bacterial lawn. A technique called **plaque assay** enables the estimation of phage numbers.
3. Viruses can be grown in two types of **cell cultures.** Whereas **diploid cell cultures** last about 100 generations, **continuous cell cultures,** derived from cancer cells, last longer.

Are Viruses Alive? (p. 398)

1. Outside of cells, viruses do not appear to be alive, but within cells, they exhibit lifelike qualities such as the ability to replicate themselves.

Other Parasitic Particles: Viroids and Prions (pp. 398–401)

1. **Viroids** are small circular pieces of RNA with no capsid that infect and cause disease in plants. Similar pathogenic RNA molecules have been found in fungi.
2. **Prions** are infectious protein particles that lack nucleic acids and replicate by converting similar, normal proteins into new prions. Diseases caused by prions are spongiform encephalopathies, which involve fatal neurological degeneration.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Prions: Overview, Characteristics, and Diseases*

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following is *not* an acellular agent?
   a. viroid
   b. virus
   c. rickettsia
   d. prion
2. Which of the following statements is true?
   a. Viruses move toward their host cells.
   b. Viruses are capable of metabolism.
   c. Viruses lack a cytoplasmic membrane.
   d. Viruses grow in response to their environmental conditions.
3. A virus that is specific for a bacterial host is called a _____.
   a. phage
   b. prion
   c. virion
   d. viroid
4. A naked virus _____.
   a. has no membranous envelope
   b. has injected its DNA or RNA into a host cell
   c. is devoid of capsomeres
   d. is one that is unattached to a host cell
5. Which of the following statements is *false*?
   a. Viruses may have circular DNA.
   b. dsRNA is found in bacteria more often than in viruses.
   c. Viral DNA may be linear.
   d. Typically, viruses have DNA or RNA but not both.
6. When a eukaryotic cell is infected with an enveloped virus and sheds viruses slowly over time, this infection is _____.
   a. called a lytic infection
   b. a prophage cycle
   c. called a persistent infection
   d. caused by a quiescent virus

7. Another name for a complete virus is _____.
   a. virion
   b. viroid
   c. prion
   d. capsid
8. Which of the following viruses can be latent?
   a. HIV
   b. chicken pox virus
   c. herpesviruses
   d. all of the above
9. Which of the following is *not* a criterion for specific family classification of viruses?
   a. the type of nucleic acid present
   b. envelope structure
   c. capsid type
   d. lipid composition
10. A clear zone of phage infection in a bacterial lawn is _____.
    a. a prophage
    b. a plaque
    c. naked
    d. a zone of inhibition

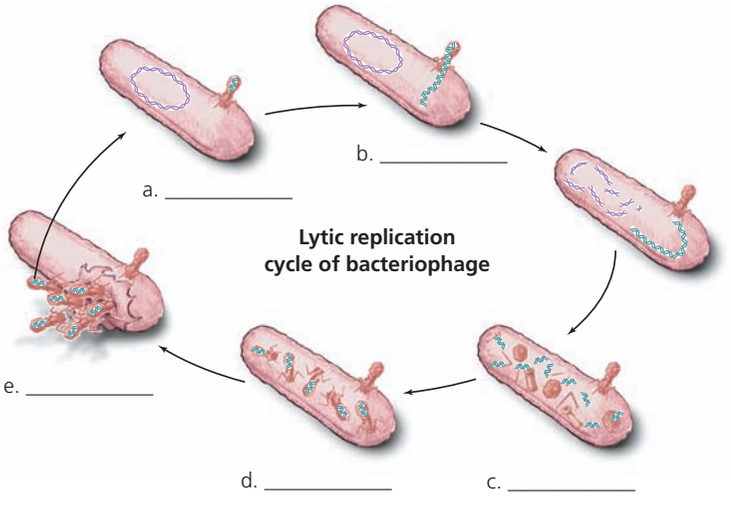
Matching

Match each numbered term with its description.

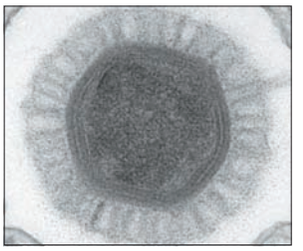
1.	____ uncoating	A.	dormant virus in a eukaryotic cell
2.	____ prophage	B.	a virus that infects a bacterium
3.	____ retrovirus	C.	transcribes DNA from RNA
4.	____ bacteriophage	D.	protein coat of virus
5.	____ capsid	E.	a membrane on the outside of a virus
6.	____ envelope	F.	complete viral particle
7.	____ virion	G.	inactive virus within bacterial cell
8.	____ provirus	H.	removal of capsomeres from a virion
9.	____ benign tumor	I.	invasive neoplastic cells
10.	____ cancer	J.	harmless neoplastic cells

Visualize It!

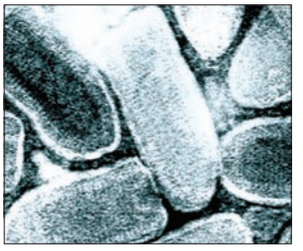
1. Label each step in the bacterioplage replication cycle below.



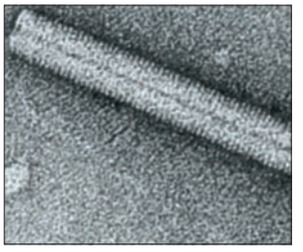
2. Identity the viral cupsid shapes.



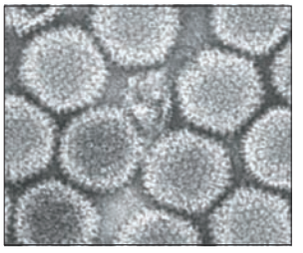
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

Short Answer

1. Compare and contrast a bacterium and a virus by writing either "Present" or "Absent" for each of the following structures.

Structure	Bacterium	Virus
Cell membrane		
Functional ribosome		
Cytoplasm		
Nucleic acid		
Nuclear membrane		

2. Describe the five phases of a generalized lytic replication cycle.
3. Why is it difficult to treat viral infections?

4. Describe four different ways that viral nucleic acid can enter a host cell.
5. Contrast lysis and budding as means of release of virions from a host cell.
6. What is the difference between a virion and a virus particle?
7. How is a provirus like a prophage? How is it different?
8. Describe lysogeny.
9. How are viruses specific for their host's cells?
10. Compare and contrast diploid cell culture and continuous cell culture.

Critical Thinking

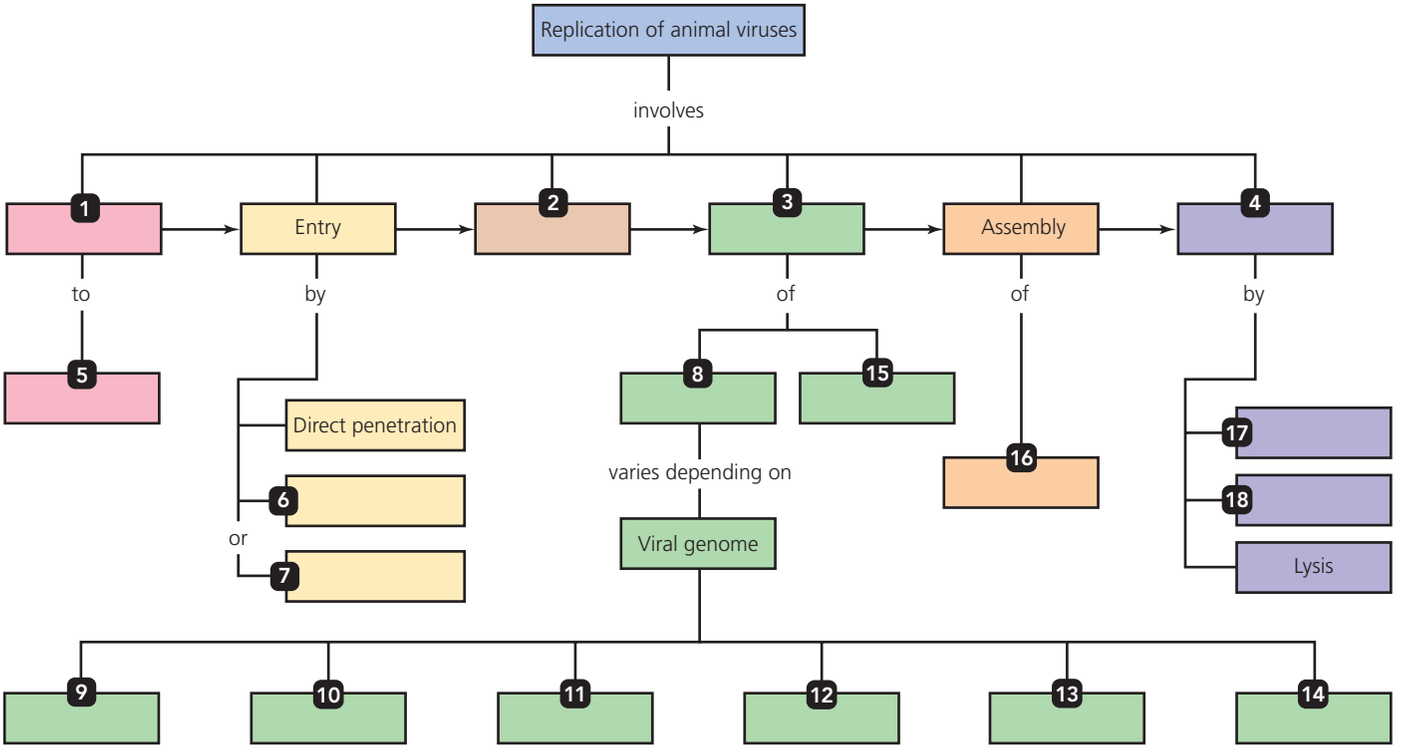
1. Small viruses typically have a single-stranded genome, whereas larger viruses usually have a double-stranded genome. What reasonable explanation can you offer for this observation?
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages to bacteriophages of the lytic and lysogenic reproductive strategies?
3. How are computer viruses similar to biological viruses? Are computer viruses alive? Why or why not?
4. Compare and contrast lysogeny by a prophage and latency by a provirus.
5. An agricultural microbiologist wants to stop the spread of a viral infection of a crop. Is stopping viral attachment a viable option? Why or why not?

Concept Mapping

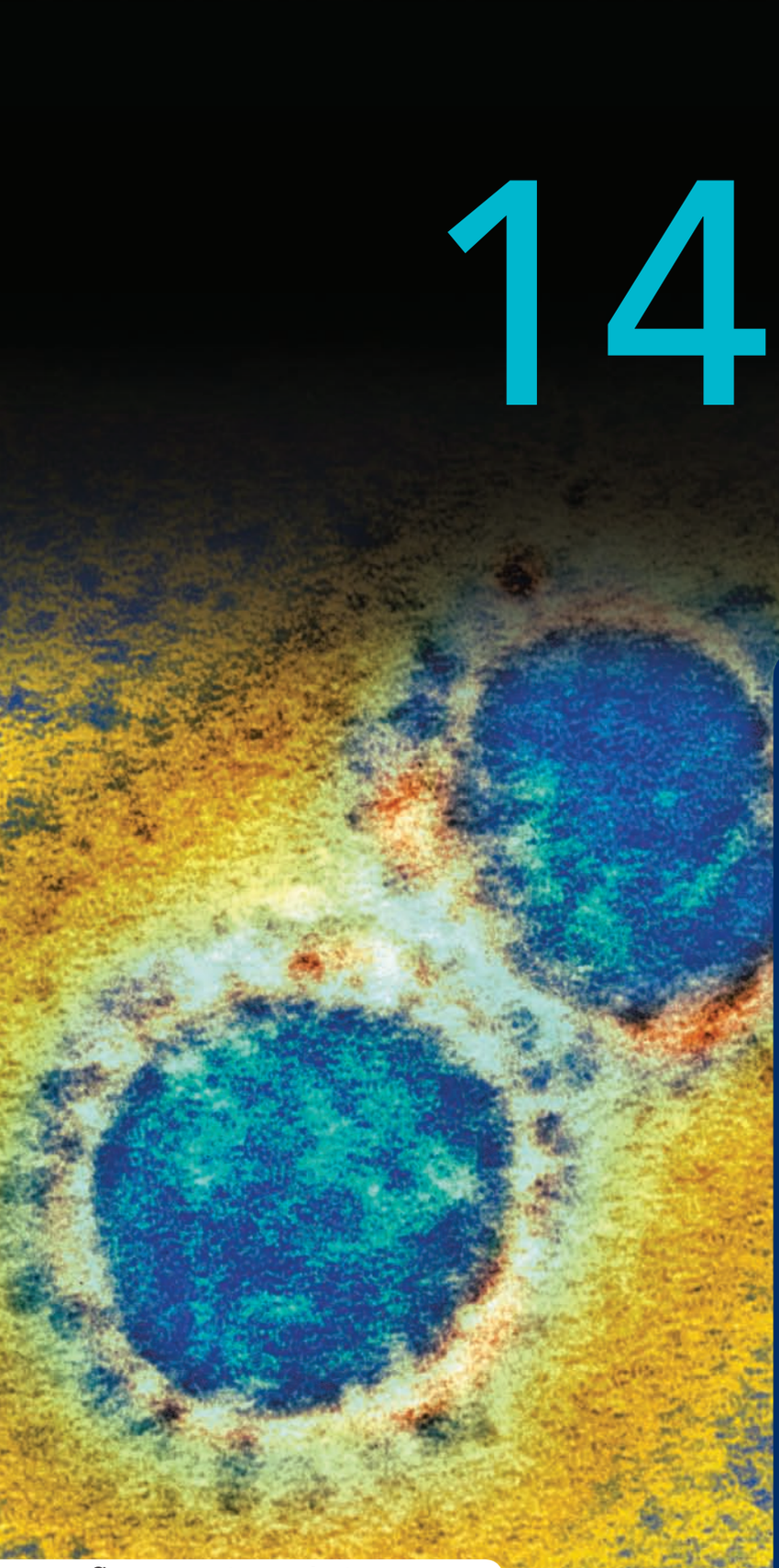
Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes the replication of animal viruses. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

+ssRNA
+ssRNA retrovirus
−ssRNA
Attachment
Budding
dsDNA
dsRNA
Endocytosis
Exocytosis
Fusion
Host cell
New virions
Release
ssDNA
Synthesis
Uncoating
Viral nucleic acid
Viral proteins



14 Infection, Infectious Diseases, and Epidemiology



Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) virus traveled halfway around the world in just weeks, providing health care workers and governments with unique opportunities to monitor and contain an epidemic.

A new **mysterious** illness began appearing in China's Guangdong province in the winter of 2002–2003. Characterized by fever, shortness of breath, and atypical pneumonia, the highly infectious illness spread rapidly, particularly among food handlers and hospital workers tending to the already stricken. Initially confined to China, the disease is believed to have begun its worldwide **spread** in February 2003, when a physician who had contracted the disease in Guangdong traveled to Hong Kong. During his stay in a Hong Kong hotel, the physician passed the disease on to at least 12 other hotel guests, including travelers who continued on to Canada, Singapore, and Vietnam, unknowingly advancing the disease's spread to these countries. By March 2003, the **disease** had a name—severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)—and the World Health Organization (WHO) issued a global **alert**, triggering quarantines, travel cancellations, and other measures intended to curb the spread of this new, sometimes-fatal disease. (See Chapter 25 for more information on SARS and the virus that causes it.)

How do microorganisms **infect** and cause disease in people? And how do experts investigate the transmission and spread of infectious diseases in populations? Read on.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

In this chapter, we examine how microbes directly affect our bodies. Bear in mind that most microorganisms are neither harmful nor expressly beneficial to humans—they live their lives, and we live ours. Relatively few microbes either directly benefit us or harm us.

We first examine the general types of relationships that microbes can have with the bodies of their hosts. Then we discuss sources of infectious diseases of humans, how microbes enter and attach to their hosts, the nature of infectious diseases, and how microbes leave hosts to become available to enter new hosts. Next we explore the ways that infectious diseases are spread among hosts. Finally, we consider *epidemiology*, the study of the occurrence and spread of diseases within groups of humans, and the methods by which we can limit the spread of pathogens within society.

▲ **Figure 14.1 Mutualism.** Wood-eating termites in the genus *Reticulitermes* cannot digest the cellulose in wood, but the protozoan *Trichonympha*, which lives in their intestines, can digest cellulose with the help of bacteria. The three organisms maintain a mutualistic relationship that is crucial for the life of the termite. *What benefits accrue to each of the symbionts in this mutualistic relationship?*

Figure 14.1 *The termite gets digested cellulose from the protozoa, which get a constant supply of wood pulp to digest, so the bacteria get a food source as well.*

Symbiotic Relationships Between Microbes and Their Hosts

Symbiosis (sim-bī-o´sis) means "to live together." Each of us has symbiotic relationships with countless microorganisms, although often we are completely unaware of them. The 10 trillion or so cells in your body provide homes for more than 100 trillion bacteria and fungi and even more viruses. We begin this section by considering the types of relationships between microbes and their hosts.

Types of Symbiosis

Learning Outcomes

14.1 Distinguish among the types of symbiosis, listing them in order from most beneficial to most harmful for the host.

14.2 Describe the relationships among the terms *parasite*, *host*, and *pathogen*.

Biologists see symbiotic relationships as a continuum from cases that are beneficial to both members of a pair to situations in which one member lives at a damaging expense to the other. In the following sections, we examine three conditions along the continuum: mutualism, commensalism, and parasitism.

Mutualism

In **mutualism** (mū´tū-ăl-izm), both members benefit from their interaction. For example, bacteria in your colon receive a warm, moist, nutrient-rich environment in which to thrive, while you absorb vitamin precursors and other nutrients released from the bacteria. In this example, the relationship is beneficial to microbe and human alike but is not required by either. Many of the bacteria could live elsewhere, and you could get vitamins from your diet.

Some mutualistic relationships provide such important benefits that one or both of the parties cannot live without the other. For instance, termites, which cannot digest the cellulose in wood by themselves, would die without a mutualistic relationship with colonies of wood-digesting protozoa and bacteria living in their intestines **(Figure 14.1)**. The termites provide wood pulp and a home to the protozoa, while the protozoa break down the wood within the termite intestines using enzymes from the bacteria, which live on the protozoa. The microbes share the nutrients released with the termites. **Beneficial Microbes: A Bioterrorist Worm** on p. 409 describes another mutualistic relationship.

Commensalism

In **commensalism** (kŏ-men´săl-izm), a second type of symbiosis, one member of the relationship benefits without significantly affecting the other. For example, *Staphylococcus epidermidis* (staf´i-lō-kok´us ep-i-der-mid´is) growing on the skin typically causes no measurable harm to a person. An absolute example of commensalism is difficult to prove because the host may experience unobserved benefits. In this example, *Staphylococcus* may inhibit pathogenic microbes from colonizing the skin.

Parasitism

Of concern to health care professionals is a third type of symbiosis called **parasitism**[1] (par´ă-si-tizm). A **parasite** derives benefit from its **host** while harming it, though some hosts sustain only slight damage. In the most severe cases, a parasite kills its host, in the process destroying its own home, which is not beneficial

[1] From Greek *parasitos*, meaning "one who eats at the table of another."

TABLE 14.1 The Three Types of Symbiotic Relationships

	Organism 1	Organism 2	Example
Mutualism	Benefits	Benefits	Bacteria in human colon
Commensalism	Benefits	Neither benefits nor is harmed	*Staphylococcus* on skin
Parasitism	Benefits	Is harmed	Tuberculosis bacteria in human lung

for the parasite. Therefore, parasites that allow their hosts to survive are more likely to spread. Similarly, hosts that tolerate a parasite are more likely to reproduce. The result over time will be *coevolution* toward commensalism or mutualism. Any parasite that causes disease is called a **pathogen** (path´ō-jen).

A variety of protozoa, fungi, and bacteria are microscopic parasites of humans. Larger parasites of humans include parasitic worms and biting arthropods,[2] including mites (chiggers), ticks, mosquitoes, fleas, and bloodsucking flies.

You should realize that microbes that are parasitic may become mutualistic or vice versa; that is, the relationships between and among organisms can change over time. Table 14.1 summarizes three types of symbiosis.

CRITICAL THINKING

Corals are colonial marine animals that feed by filtering small microbes from seawater in tropical oceans worldwide. Biologists have discovered that the cells of most corals are hosts to microscopic algae called zooxanthellae. Design an experiment to ascertain whether corals and zooxanthellae coexist in a mutual, commensal, or parasitic relationship.

Normal Microbiota in Hosts

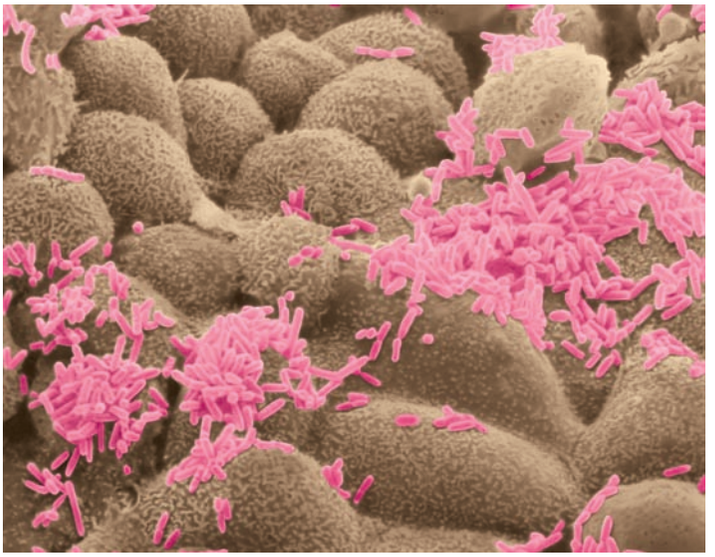
Learning Outcome

14.3 Describe the normal microbiota, including resident and transient members.

Even though many parts of your body are *axenic*[3] (ā-zen´ik) environments—that is, sites that are free of any microbes—other parts of your body shelter millions of mutualistic and commensal symbionts. Each square centimeter of your skin, for example, contains more than 3 million bacteria, and your large intestine contains 400 to 1000 kinds of microbes that outnumber your own cells many times. The microbes that colonize the surfaces of the body without normally causing disease constitute the body's **normal microbiota** (Figure 14.2), also sometimes called the *normal flora*[4] or the *indigenous microbiota*. The normal microbiota are of two main types: resident microbiota and transient microbiota.

Resident Microbiota

Resident microbiota remain a part of the normal microbiota of a person throughout life. These organisms are found on the skin and on the mucous membranes of the digestive tract, upper respiratory tract, distal[5] portion of the urethra,[6] and vagina. Table 14.2 on p. 408 illustrates these environments and lists some of the resident bacteria, fungi, and protozoa that live there. Most of the resident microbiota are commensal; that is, they feed on excreted cellular wastes and dead cells without causing harm.



▲ **Figure 14.2 An example of normal microbiota.** Bacteria (pink) colonize the human nasal cavity.

Transient Microbiota

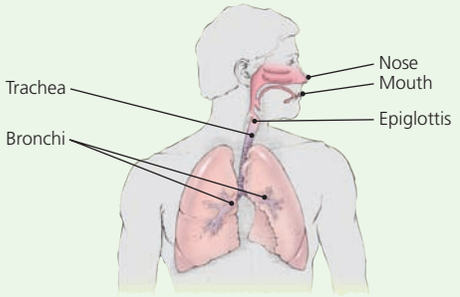
Transient microbiota remain in the body for only a few hours, days, or months before disappearing. They are found in the same locations as the resident members of the normal microbiota but cannot persist because of competition from other microorganisms, elimination by the body's defense cells, or chemical and physical changes in the body that dislodge them.

Acquisition of Normal Microbiota

You developed in your mother's womb without normal microbiota because you had surrounded yourself with an amniotic membrane and fluid, which generally kept microorganisms at bay, and because your mother's uterus was essentially an axenic environment.

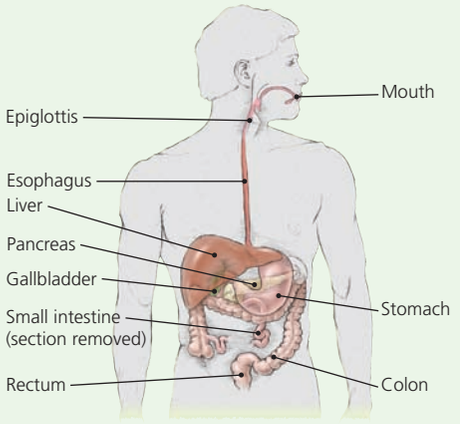
[2] From Greek *arthros*, meaning "jointed," and *pod*, meaning "foot."
[3] From Greek *a*, meaning "no," and *xenos*, meaning "foreigner."
[4] This usage of the term *flora*, which literally means "plants," derives from the fact that bacteria and fungi were considered plants in early taxonomic schemes. *Microbiota* is preferable because it properly applies to all microbes (whether eukaryotic or prokaryotic) and to viruses.
[5] *Distal* refers to the end of some structure, as opposed to *proximal*, which refers to the beginning of a structure.
[6] The tube that empties the bladder.

TABLE 14.2 Some Resident Microbiota[a]



Upper Respiratory Tract

Genera	Notes
Fusobacterium, Haemophilus, Lactobacillus, Moraxella, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus, Veillonella, Candida (fungus)	The nose is cooler than the rest of the respiratory system and has some unique microbiota. The microbiota of the trachea and bronchi are sparse compared to those of the nose and mouth. The alveoli of the lungs, which are too small to depict in this illustration, have no natural microbiota—they are axenic.

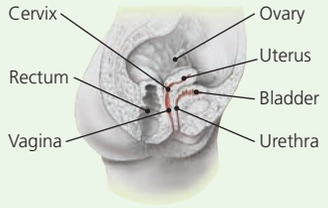


Upper Digestive Tract

Genera	Notes
Actinomyces, Bacteroides, Corynebacterium, Haemophilus, Lactobacillus, Neisseria, Staphylococcus, Treponema, Entamoeba (protozoan), *Trichomonas* (protozoan)	Microbes colonize surfaces of teeth, gingiva, lining of cheeks, and pharynx, and they are found in saliva in large numbers. Dozens of species have never been identified.

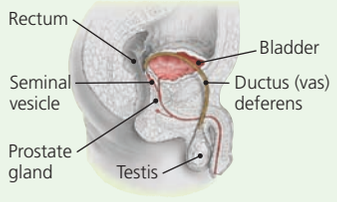
Lower Digestive Tract

Genera	Notes
Bacteroides, Bifidobacterium, Clostridium, Enterococcus, Escherichia, Fusobacterium, Lactobacillus, Proteus, Shigella, Candida (fungus), *Entamoeba* (protozoan), *Trichomonas* (protozoan)	The bacteria are mostly strict anaerobes, though some facultative anaerobes are also resident.



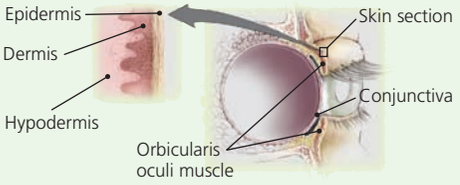
Female Urinary and Reproductive Systems

Genera	Notes
Bacteroides, Clostridium, Lactobacillus, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus, Candida (fungus), *Trichomonas* (protozoan)	Microbiota change as acidity in the vagina changes during menstrual cycle. The flow of urine prevents extensive colonization of the urinary bladder or urethra.



Male Urinary and Reproductive Systems

Genera	Notes
Bacteroides, Fusobacterium, Lactobacillus, Mycobacterium, Peptostreptococcus, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus	The flow of urine prevents extensive colonization of the urinary bladder or urethra.



Eyes and Skin

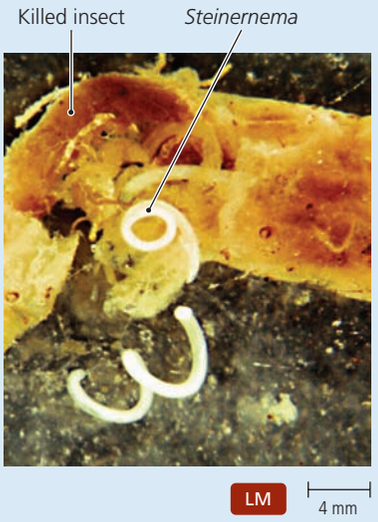
Genera	Notes
Skin: *Corynebacterium, Micrococcus, Propionibacterium, Staphylococcus, Candida* (fungus), *Malassezia* (fungus) Conjunctiva: *Staphylococcus*	Microbiota live on the outer, dead layers of the skin and in hair follicles and pores of glands. The deeper layers (dermis and hypodermis) are axenic. Tears wash most microbiota from the eyes, so there are few compared to the skin.

[a]Genera are bacteria unless noted.

Your normal microbiota began to develop when your surrounding amniotic membrane ruptured and microorganisms came in contact with you during birth. Microbes entered your mouth and nose as you passed through the birth canal, and your first breath was loaded with microorganisms that quickly established themselves in your upper respiratory tract. Your first meals provided the progenitors of resident microbiota for your colon, while *Staphylococcus* and other microbes transferred from the skin of both the medical staff and your parents began to colonize your skin. Although you continue to add to your transient microbiota, most of the resident microbiota was initially established during your first months of life.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

A BIOTERRORIST WORM



The worm *Steinernema* (white) kills by infecting insects with lethal *Xenorhabdus* bacteria.

Bioterrorism has been defined as the deliberate release of viruses, bacteria, or other germs to cause illness or death. A nematode worm, *Steinernema*, is by that definition a bioterrorist, releasing a mutualistic bacterial symbiont, *Xenorhabdus*.

Nematodes are microscopic, unsegmented, round worms that live in soil worldwide. *Steinernema* preys on insects, including ants, termites, and the immature stages of various beetles, weevils, worms, fleas, ticks, and gnats. *Steinernema* crawls into an insect's mouth or anus and then crosses the intestinal walls to enter the insect's blood. The worm then releases its symbiotic *Xenorhabdus*. This bacterium inactivates the insect's defensive systems; generates antibacterial compounds, which eliminate other bacteria; produces insecticidal toxins to kill the insect; and secretes digestive enzymes. The bacterial enzymes turn the insect's body into a slimy porridge of nutrients within 48 hours. Meanwhile, *Steinernema* nematodes mature, mate, and reproduce within the insect's liquefying body. The nematodes' offspring feed on the gooey fluid until they are old enough to emerge from the insect's skeleton but not before taking up a supply of bacteria for their own future bioterroist raids on new insect hosts.

This is a true mutualistic symbiosis: The nematode depends on the bacterium to kill and digest the insect host, while the bacterium depends on the nematode to deliver it to new hosts. Both benefit. Farmers, too, can benefit. They can use *Steinernema* and its bacterium to control insect pests without damaging their crops, animals, or people.

How Normal Microbiota Become Opportunistic Pathogens

Learning Outcome

14.4 Describe three conditions that create opportunities for normal microbiota to cause disease.

Under ordinary circumstances, normal microbiota do not cause disease. However, these same microbes may become harmful if an opportunity to do so arises. In this case, normal microbiota (or other normally harmless microbes from the environment) become **opportunistic pathogens,** or *opportunists.* Conditions that create opportunities for pathogens include the following:

- **Introduction of a Member of the Normal Microbiota into an Unusual Site in the Body.** As we have seen, normal microbiota are present only in certain body sites, and each site has only certain species of microbiota. If a member of the normal microbiota in one site is introduced into a site it normally does not inhabit, the organism may become an opportunistic pathogen. In the colon, for example, *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) is mutualistic, but should it enter the urethra, it becomes an opportunist that can produce disease.
- **Immune Suppression.** Anything that suppresses the body's immune system—including disease, malnutrition, emotional or physical stress, extremes of age (either very young or very old), the use of radiation or chemotherapy to combat cancer, or the use of immunosuppressive drugs in transplant patients—can enable opportunistic pathogens. AIDS patients often die from opportunistic infections that are typically controlled by a healthy immune system because HIV infection suppresses immune system function.
- **Changes in the Normal Microbiota.** Normal microbiota use nutrients, take up space, and release toxic waste products, all of which make it less likely that arriving pathogens can compete well enough to become established and produce disease. This situation is known as **microbial antagonism** or **microbial competition.** However, changes in the relative abundance of normal microbiota, for whatever reason, may allow a member of the normal microbiota to become an opportunistic pathogen and thrive. For example, when a woman must undergo long-term antimicrobial treatment for a bacterial blood infection, the antimicrobial may also kill normal bacterial microbiota in the vagina. In the absence of competition from bacteria, *Candida albicans* (kan´did-ă al´bi-kanz), a yeast and also a member of the normal vaginal microbiota, grows prolifically, producing an opportunistic vaginal yeast infection. Other conditions that can disrupt the normal microbiota are hormonal changes, stress, changes in diet, and exposure to overwhelming numbers of pathogens.

Now that we have considered the relationships of the normal microbiota to their hosts, we turn our attention to the movement of microbes into new hosts by considering aspects of human diseases.

TABLE 14.3 Some Common Zoonoses

Disease	Causative Agent	Animal Reservoir	Mode of Transmission
Helminthic			
Tapeworm infestation	*Dipylidium caninum*	Dogs	Ingestion of larvae transmitted in dog saliva
Fasciola infestation	*Fasciola hepatica*	Sheep, cattle	Ingestion of contaminated vegetation
Protozoan			
Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp.	Monkeys	Bite of *Anopheles* mosquito
Toxoplasmosis	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Cats and other animals	Ingestion of contaminated meat, inhalation of pathogen, direct contact with infected tissues
Fungal			
Ringworm	*Trichophyton* sp.	Domestic animals	Direct contact
	Microsporum sp.		
	Epidermophyton sp.		
Bacterial			
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Domestic livestock	Direct contact with infected animals, inhalation
Bubonic plague	*Yersinia pestis*	Rodents	Flea bites
Lyme disease	*Borrelia burgdorferi*	Deer	Tick bites
Salmonellosis	*Salmonella* spp.	Birds, rodents, reptiles	Ingestion of fecally contaminated water or food
Typhus	*Rickettsia prowazekii*	Rodents	Louse bites
Viral			
Rabies	*Lyssavirus* sp.	Bats, skunks, foxes, dogs	Bite of infected animal
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome	*Hantavirus* sp.	Deer mice	Inhalation of viruses in dried feces and urine
Yellow fever	*Flavivirus* sp.	Monkeys	Bite of *Aedes* mosquito

Reservoirs of Infectious Diseases of Humans

Learning Outcome

14.5 Describe three types of reservoirs of infection in humans.

Most pathogens of humans cannot survive for long in the relatively harsh conditions they encounter outside their hosts. If these pathogens are to enter new hosts, they must survive in some site from which they can infect new hosts. Sites where pathogens are maintained as a source of infection are called **reservoirs of infection.** In this section we discuss three types of reservoirs: animal reservoirs, human carriers, and nonliving reservoirs.

Animal Reservoirs

Many pathogens that normally infect either domesticated or sylvatic[7] (wild) animals can also affect humans. The more similar an animal's physiology is to human physiology, the more likely its pathogens are to affect human health. Diseases that spread naturally from their usual animal hosts to humans are called **zoonoses** (zō-ō-nō´sēz). Over 150 zoonoses have been identified throughout the world. Well-known examples include yellow fever, anthrax, bubonic plague, and rabies.

Humans may acquire zoonoses from animal reservoirs via a number of routes, including various types of direct contact with animals and their wastes, by eating animals, or via bloodsucking arthropods. Human infections with zoonoses are difficult to eradicate because extensive animal reservoirs are often involved. The larger the animal reservoir (i.e., the greater the number and types of infected animals) and the greater the contact between humans and the animals, the more difficult and costly it is to control the spread of the disease to humans. This is especially true when the animal reservoir consists of both sylvatic and domesticated animals. In the case of rabies, for example, the disease typically spreads from a sylvatic reservoir (often bats, foxes, and skunks) to domestic pets from which humans may be infected. The wild animals constitute a reservoir for the rabies virus, but transmission to humans can be limited by vaccinating domestic pets.

Table 14.3 provides a brief view of some common zoonoses. Humans are usually dead-end hosts for zoonotic pathogens—that is, humans do not act as significant reservoirs for the reinfection of animal hosts—largely because the circumstances under which zoonoses are transmitted

[7] From Latin *sylva*, meaning "woodland."

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A DEADLY CARRIER

In 1937, a man employed to lay water pipes was found to be the source of a severe epidemic of typhoid fever. The man, an asymptomatic carrier of *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi, the bacterium that causes typhoid, habitually urinated at his job site. In the process, he contaminated the town's water supply with bacteria from his bladder. Over 300 cases of typhoid fever developed, and 43 people died before the man was identified as the carrier.

1. How do you think health officials were able to identify the source of this typhoid epidemic?
2. Given that antibiotics were not generally available in 1937, how could health officials end the epidemic short of removing the man from the job site?

favor movement from animals to humans but not in the opposite direction. For example, animals do not often eat humans these days, and animals less frequently have contact with human wastes than humans have contact with animal wastes. Zoonotic diseases transmitted via the bites of blood-sucking arthropods are the most likely type to be transmitted back to animal hosts.

Human Carriers

Experience tells you that humans with active diseases are important reservoirs of infection for other humans. What may not be so obvious is that people with no obvious symptoms before or after an obvious disease may also be infective in some cases. Further, some infected people remain both asymptomatic and infective for years. This is true of tuberculosis, syphilis, and AIDS, for example. Whereas some of these **carriers** incubate the pathogen in their body and eventually develop the disease, others remain a continued source of infection without ever becoming sick. Presumably many such healthy carriers have defensive systems that protect them from illness. An example of such a carrier is given in **Clinical Case Study: A Deadly Carrier.**

Nonliving Reservoirs

Soil, water, and food can be **nonliving reservoirs** of infection. Soil, especially if fecally contaminated, can harbor *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) bacteria, which cause botulism, tetanus, and other diseases. Water can be contaminated with feces and urine containing parasitic worm eggs, pathogenic protozoa, bacteria, and viruses. Meats and vegetables can also harbor pathogens. Milk can contain many pathogens, which is why it is routinely pasteurized in the United States.

The Invasion and Establishment of Microbes in Hosts: Infection

In this section we examine events that occur when hosts are exposed to microbes from a reservoir, the sites at which microbes can gain entry into hosts, and the ways entering microbes become established in new hosts.

Exposure to Microbes: Contamination and Infection

Learning Outcome

14.6 Describe the relationship between contamination and infection.

In the context of the interaction between microbes and their hosts, **contamination** refers to the mere presence of microbes in or on the body. Some microbial contaminants reach the body in food, drink, or the air, whereas others are introduced via wounds, biting arthropods, or sexual intercourse. Several outcomes of contamination by microbes are possible. Some microbial contaminants remain where they first contacted the body (such as the skin or mucous membranes) without causing harm and subsequently become part of the resident microbiota; other microbial contaminants remain on the body for only a short time as part of the transient microbiota. Still others overcome the body's external defenses, multiply, and become established in the body; such a successful invasion of the body by a pathogen is called an **infection.** An infection may or may not result in disease; that is, it may not adversely affect the body.

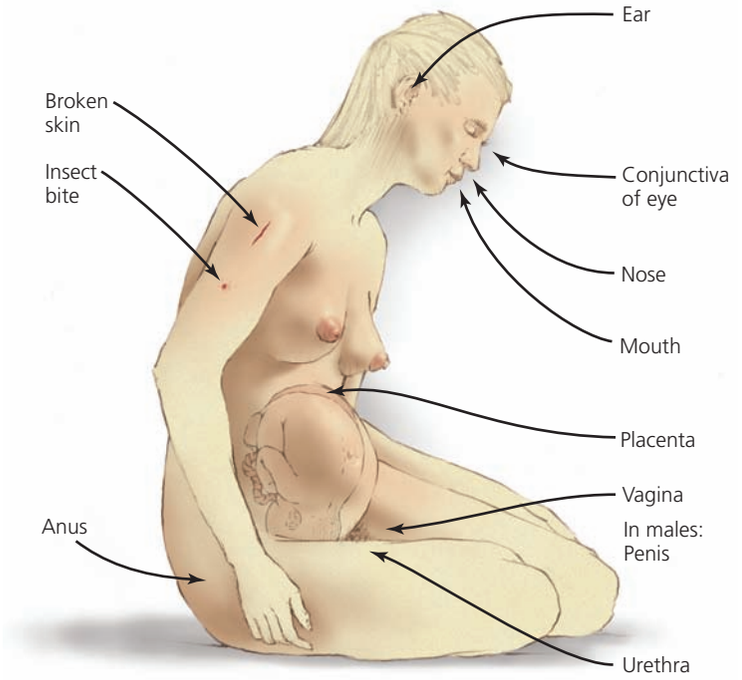
Next we consider in greater detail the various sites through which pathogens gain entry into the body.

Portals of Entry

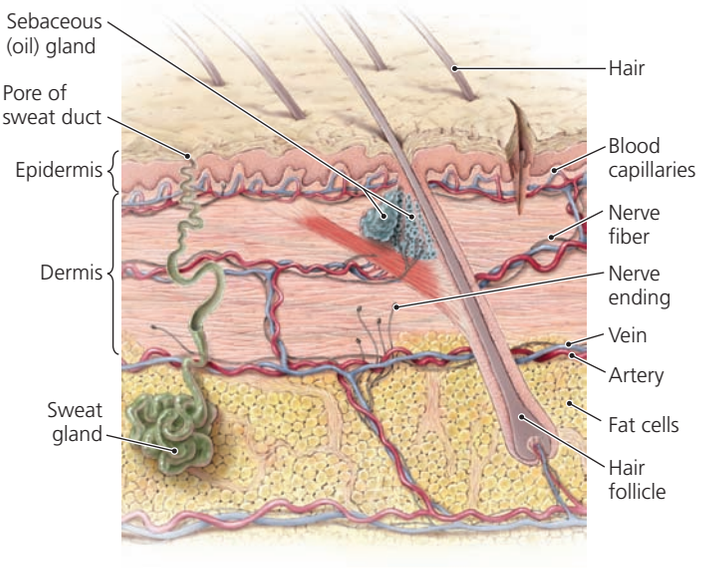
Learning Outcome

14.7 Identify and describe the portals through which pathogens invade the body.

The sites through which most pathogens enter the body can be likened to the great gates or portals of a castle because those sites constitute the routes by which microbes gain entry. Pathogens thus enter the body at several sites, called **portals of entry** (Figure 14.3), which are of three major types: the skin, the mucous membranes, and the placenta. A fourth entry point, the so-called *parenteral* (pă-ren´ter-ăl) *route,* is not a portal but a way of circumventing the usual portals. Next we consider each type in turn.



▲ **Figure 14.3 Routes of entry for invading pathogens.** The portals of entry include the skin, placenta, conjunctiva, and mucous membranes of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, urinary, and reproductive tracts. The parenteral route involves a puncture through the skin.



▲ **Figure 14.4 A cross section of skin.** The layers of cells constitute a barrier to most microbes as long as the skin remains intact. Some pathogens can enter the body through hair follicles, through the ducts of sweat glands, and parenterally.

Skin

Because the outer layer of skin is composed of relatively thick layers of tightly packed, dead, dry cells **(Figure 14.4)**, it forms a formidable barrier to most pathogens as long as it remains intact. Still, some pathogens can enter the body through natural openings in the skin, such as hair follicles and sweat glands. Abrasions, cuts, bites, scrapes, stab wounds, and surgeries open the skin to infection by contaminants. Additionally, the larvae of some parasitic worms are capable of burrowing through the skin to reach underlying tissues, and some fungi can digest the dead outer layers of skin, thereby gaining access to deeper, moister areas within the body.

Mucous Membranes

The major portals of entry for pathogens are the *mucous membranes,* which line all the body cavities that are open to the outside world. They include the linings of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, urinary, and reproductive tracts as well as the *conjunctiva* (kon-jŭnk-tī´vă), the thin membrane covering the surface of the eyeball and the underside of each eyelid. Like the skin, mucous membranes are composed of tightly packed cells, but unlike the skin, mucous membranes are relatively thin, moist, and warm, and their cells are living. Therefore, pathogens find mucous membranes more hospitable and easier portals of entry.

The respiratory tract is the most frequently used portal of entry. Pathogens enter the mouth and nose in the air, on dust particles, and in droplets of moisture. For example, the bacteria that cause whooping cough, diphtheria, pneumonia, strep throat, and meningitis, as well as some fungi, viruses, and protozoa, enter through the respiratory tract.

Surprisingly, many viruses enter the respiratory tract via the eyes. They are introduced onto the conjunctiva by contaminated fingers and are washed into the nasal cavity with tears. Cold and influenza viruses typically enter the body in this manner.

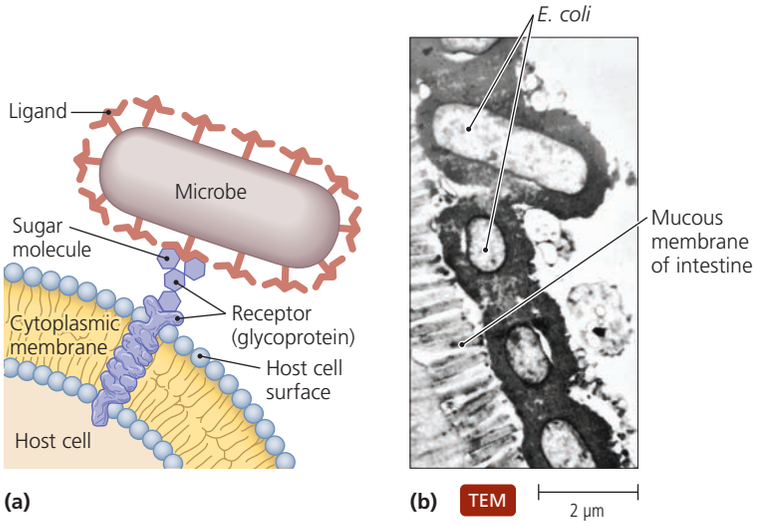
Some parasitic protozoa, helminths, bacteria, and viruses infect the body through the gastrointestinal mucous membranes. These parasites are able to survive the acidic pH of the stomach and the digestive juices of the intestinal tract. Noncellular pathogens called *prions* enter the body through oral mucous membranes.

Placenta

A developing embryo forms an organ, called the *placenta,* through which it obtains nutrients from the mother. The placenta is in such intimate contact with the wall of the mother's uterus that nutrients and wastes diffuse between the blood vessels of the developing child and of the mother, but because the two blood supplies do not actually contact each other, the placenta typically forms an effective barrier to most pathogens. However, in about 2% of pregnancies, pathogens cross the placenta and infect the embryo or fetus, sometimes causing spontaneous abortion, birth defects, or premature birth. Some pathogens that can cross the placenta are listed in **Table 14.4**.

The Parenteral Route

The **parenteral route** is not a portal of entry but instead a means by which the portals of entry can be circumvented. To enter the body by the parenteral route, pathogens must be deposited directly into tissues beneath the skin or mucous membranes, such as occurs in punctures by a nail, thorn, or hypodermic needle.



▲ **Figure 14.5 The adhesion of pathogens to host cells. (a)** An artist's rendition of the attachment of a microbial ligand to a complementary surface receptor on a host cell. **(b)** A photomicrograph of cells of a pathogenic strain of *E. coli* attached to the mucous membrane of the intestine. Although the thick glycocalyces (black) of the bacteria are visible, the bacteria's ligands are too small to be seen at this magnification.

Some experts include in the parenteral route breaks in the skin by cuts, bites, stab wounds, deep abrasions, or surgery.

The Role of Adhesion in Infection

Learning Outcomes

14.8 List the types of adhesion factors and the roles they play in infection.

14.9 Explain how a biofilm may facilitate contamination and infection.

After entering the body, symbionts must adhere to cells if they are to be successful in establishing colonies. The process by which microorganisms attach themselves to cells is called **adhesion** (ad-hē´zhŭn), or *attachment*. To accomplish adhesion, pathogens use **adhesion factors,** which are either specialized structures or attachment proteins. Examples of such specialized structures are adhesion disks in some protozoa and suckers and hooks in some helminths (see Chapter 23). In contrast, viruses and many bacteria have surface lipoprotein and glycoprotein molecules called *ligands* that enable them to bind to complementary receptors on host cells **(Figure 14.5)**. Ligands are also called *adhesins* on bacteria and *attachment proteins* on viruses. Adhesins are found on fimbriae, flagella, and glycocalyces of many pathogenic bacteria. Receptor molecules on host cells are typically glycoproteins containing sugar molecules such as mannose and galactose. If ligands or their receptors can be changed or blocked, infection can often be prevented.

The specific interaction of adhesins and receptors with chemicals on host cells often determines the specificity of pathogens for particular hosts. For example, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī) has adhesins on its fimbriae that adhere to cells lining the urethra and vagina of humans. Thus, this pathogen cannot affect other hosts.

Some bacteria, including *Bordetella* (bōr-dĕ-tel´ă; the cause of whooping cough) have more than one type of adhesin. Other pathogens, such as *Plasmodium* (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm; the cause of malaria), change their adhesins over time, helping the pathogen evade the body's immune system and allowing the pathogen to attack more than one kind of cell. Bacterial cells and viruses that have lost the ability to make ligands—whether as the result of some genetic change (mutation) or exposure to certain physical or chemical agents (as occurs in the production of some vaccines)—become harmless, or **avirulent** (ā-vir´ū-lent).

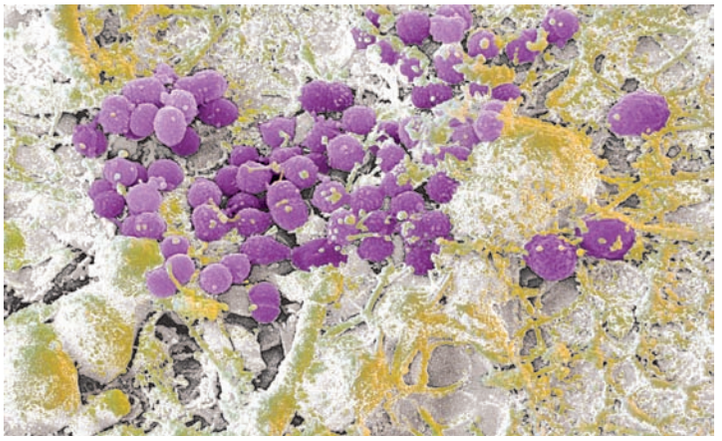
Some bacterial pathogens do not attach to host cells directly but instead interact with each other to form a sticky web of bacteria and polysaccharides called a **biofilm,** which adheres to a surface within a host. A prominent example of a biofilm is dental plaque **(Figure 14.6)**, which contains the bacteria that cause dental caries (tooth decay).

CRITICAL THINKING

If a mutation occurred in *Escherichia coli* that deleted the gene for an adhesin, what effect might it have on the ability of *E. coli* to cause urinary tract infections?

TABLE 14.4 Some Pathogens That Cross the Placenta

	Pathogen	Condition in the Adult	Effect on Embryo or Fetus
Protozoan	*Toxoplasma gondii*	Toxoplasmosis	Abortion, epilepsy, encephalitis, microcephaly, mental retardation, blindness, anemia, jaundice, rash, pneumonia, diarrhea, hypothermia, deafness
Bacteria	*Treponema pallidum*	Syphilis	Abortion, multiorgan birth defects, syphilis
	Listeria monocytogenes	Listeriosis	Granulomatosis infantiseptica (nodular inflammatory lesions and infant blood poisoning), death
DNA viruses	*Cytomegalovirus*	Usually asymptomatic	Deafness, microcephaly, mental retardation
	Erythrovirus	Erythema infectiosum	Abortion
RNA viruses	*Lentivirus* (HIV)	AIDS	Immunosuppression (AIDS)
	Rubivirus	German measles	Severe birth defects or death



▲ **Figure 14.6 Dental plaque.** This biofilm consists of bacteria that adhere to one another and to teeth by means of sticky capsules; extracellular, slimy matrix, and fimbriae.

The Nature of Infectious Disease

Learning Outcome

14.10 Compare and contrast the terms *infection, disease, morbidity, pathogenicity,* and *virulence.*

Most infections succumb to the body's defenses (discussed in detail in Chapters 15 and 16), but some infectious agents not only evade the defenses and multiply but also affect body function. By definition, all parasites injure their hosts. When the injury is significant enough to interfere with the normal functioning of the body, the result is termed **disease.** Thus, disease, also known as **morbidity,** is any change from a state of health.

Infection and disease are not the same thing. Infection is the invasion of a pathogen; disease results only if the pathogen multiplies sufficiently to adversely affect the body. Some illustrations will help to clarify this point. While caring for a patient, a nurse may become contaminated with the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* (o´rē-ŭs). If the pathogen is able to gain access to his body, perhaps through a break in his skin, he will become infected. Then, if the multiplication of *Staphylococcus* results in the production of a boil, the nurse will have a disease. Another example: A drug addict who shares needles may become contaminated and subsequently infected with HIV without experiencing visible change in body function for years. Such a person is infected but not yet diseased.

Manifestations of Disease: Symptoms, Signs, and Syndromes

Learning Outcome

14.11 Contrast symptoms, signs, and syndromes.

Diseases may become manifest in different ways. **Symptoms** are *subjective* characteristics of a disease that can be felt by the patient alone, whereas **signs** are *objective* manifestations of disease that can be observed or measured by others.

TABLE 14.5 Typical Manifestations of Disease

Symptoms (Sensed by the Patient)	Signs (Detected or Measured by an Observer)
Pain, nausea, headache, chills, sore throat, fatigue or lethargy (sluggishness, tiredness), malaise (discomfort), itching, abdominal cramps	Swelling, rash or redness, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, pus formation, anemia, leukocytosis/leukopenia (increase/decrease in the number of circulating white blood cells), bubo (swollen lymph node), tachycardia/bradycardia (increase/decrease in heart rate)

Symptoms include pain, headache, dizziness, and fatigue; signs include swelling, rash, redness, and fever. Sometimes pairs of symptoms and signs reflect the same underlying cause: Nausea is a symptom and vomiting a sign; chills are a symptom, whereas shivering is a sign. Note, however, that even though signs and symptoms may have the same underlying cause, they need not occur together. Thus, for example, a viral infection of the brain may result in both a headache (a symptom) and the presence of viruses in the cerebrospinal fluid (a sign), but viruses in the cerebrospinal fluid are not invariably accompanied by headache. Symptoms and signs are used in conjunction with laboratory tests to make diagnoses. Some typical symptoms and signs are listed in Table 14.5.

A **syndrome** is a group of symptoms and signs that collectively characterizes a particular disease or abnormal condition. For example, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is characterized by malaise, loss of certain white blood cells, diarrhea, weight loss, pneumonia, toxoplasmosis, and tuberculosis.

Some infections go unnoticed because they have no symptoms. Such cases are **asymptomatic,** or **subclinical,** infections. Note that even though asymptomatic infections by definition lack symptoms, in some cases certain signs may still be detected if the proper tests are performed. For example, leukocytosis (an excess of white blood cells) may be detected in a blood sample from an individual who feels completely healthy.

Table 14.6 lists some prefixes and suffixes used to describe various aspects of diseases and syndromes.

Causation of Disease: Etiology

Learning Outcomes

14.12 Define *etiology.*

14.13 List Koch's postulates, explain their function, and describe their limitations.

Even though our focus in this chapter is infectious disease, it's obvious that not all diseases result from infections. Some diseases are *hereditary,* which means they are genetically transmitted from parents to offspring. Other diseases, called *congenital*

TABLE 14.6 Terminology of Disease

Prefix/Suffix	Meaning	Example
carcino-	Cancer	Carcinogenic: giving rise to cancer
col-, colo-	Colon	Colitis: inflammation of the colon
dermato-	Skin	Dermatitis: inflammation of the skin
-emia	Pertaining to the blood	Viremia: viruses in the blood
endo-	Inside	Endocarditis: inflammation of lining of heart
-gen, gen-	Give rise to	Pathogen: giving rise to disease
hepat-	Liver	Hepatitis: inflammation of the liver
idio-	Unknown	Idiopathic: pertaining to a disease of unknown cause
-itis	Inflammation of a structure	Meningitis: inflammation of the meninges (covering of the brain); endocarditis
-oma	Tumor or swelling	Papilloma: wart
-osis	Condition of	Toxoplasmosis: being infected with *Toxoplasma*
-patho, patho-	Abnormal	Pathology: study of disease
septi-	Literally, *rotting;* refers to presence of pathogens	Septicemia: pathogens in the blood
terato-	Defects	Teratogenic: causing birth defects
tox-	Poison	Toxin: harmful compound

diseases, are diseases that are present at birth, regardless of the cause (whether hereditary, environmental, or infectious). Still other diseases are classified as *degenerative, nutritional, endocrine, mental, immunological,* or *neoplastic.*[8] The various categories of diseases are described in Table 14.7. Note that some diseases can fall into more than one category. For example, liver cancer, which is usually associated with infection by hepatitis B and D viruses, can be classified as both neoplastic and infectious.

The study of the cause of a disease is called **etiology** (ē-tē-ol´ō-jē). Because our focus here and in subsequent chapters is on infectious diseases, we next examine how microbiologists investigate the causation of infectious diseases, beginning with an examination of the work of Robert Koch.

[8]Neoplasms are tumors, which may either remain in one place (benign tumors) or spread (cancers).

TABLE 14.7 Categories of Diseases[a]

	Description	Examples
Hereditary	Caused by errors in the genetic code received from parents	Sickle-cell anemia, diabetes mellitus, Down syndrome
Congenital	Anatomical and physiological (structural and functional) defects present at birth; caused by drugs (legal and illegal), X-ray exposure, or infections	Fetal alcohol syndrome, deafness from rubella infection
Degenerative	Result from aging	Renal failure, age-related farsightedness
Nutritional	Result from lack of some essential nutrients in diet	Kwashiorkor, rickets
Endocrine (hormonal)	Due to excesses or deficiencies of hormones	Dwarfism
Mental	Emotional or psychosomatic	Skin rash, gastrointestinal distress
Immunological	Hyperactive or hypoactive immunity	Allergies, autoimmune diseases, agammaglobulinemia
Neoplastic (tumor)	Abnormal cell growth	Benign tumors, cancers
Infectious	Caused by an infectious agent	Colds, influenza, herpes infections
Iatrogenic[b]	Caused by medical treatment or procedures; are a subgroup of hospital-acquired diseases	Surgical error, yeast vaginitis resulting from antimicrobial therapy
Idiopathic[c]	Unknown cause	Alzheimer's disease, multiple sclerosis
Nosocomial[d]	Disease acquired in health care setting	*Pseudomonas* infection in burn patient

[a]Some diseases may fall in more than one category.
[b]From Greek *iatros,* meaning "physician."
[c]From Greek *idiotes,* meaning "ignorant person," and *pathos,* meaning "disease."
[d]From Greek *nosokomeion,* meaning "hospital."

Using Koch's Postulates

In our modern world, we take for granted the idea that specific microbes cause specific diseases, but this has not always been the case. In the past, disease was thought to result from a variety of causes, including bad air, imbalances in body fluids, or astrological forces. In the 19th century, Louis Pasteur, Robert Koch, and other microbiologists proposed the **germ theory of disease,** which states that disease is caused by infections of pathogenic microorganisms (at the time called *germs*).

But which pathogen causes a specific disease? How can we distinguish the pathogen, which causes a disease, from all the other biological agents (fungi, bacteria, protozoa, and viruses) that are part of the normal microbiota and are in effect "innocent bystanders"?

Koch developed a series of essential conditions, or *postulates,* that scientists must demonstrate or satisfy to prove that a particular microbe is pathogenic and causes a particular disease. Using his postulates, Koch proved that *Bacillus anthracis* (ba-sil´ŭs an-thrā´sis) causes anthrax and that *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī-kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis) causes tuberculosis.

To prove that a given infectious agent causes a given disease, a scientist must satisfy all of **Koch's postulates** (Figure 14.7):

1. The suspected agent (bacterium, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease.
2. That agent must be isolated and grown in pure culture.
3. The cultured agent must cause the disease when it is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible experimental host.
4. The same agent must be reisolated from the diseased experimental host.

It is critical that all the postulates be satisfied in order. The mere presence of an agent does not prove that it causes a disease. Although Koch's postulates have been used to prove the cause of many infectious diseases in humans, animals, and plants, inadequate attention to the postulates has resulted in incorrect conclusions concerning some disease causation. For instance, in the early 1900s *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flū-en´zī) was found in the respiratory systems of flu victims and identified as the causative agent of influenza based on its presence. Later, flu victims who lacked *H. influenzae* in their lungs were discovered. This discovery violated the first postulate, so *H. influenzae* cannot be the cause of flu. Today we know that an RNA virus causes flu and that *H. influenzae* was part of the normal microbiota of those early flu patients. (Later studies, correctly using Koch's postulates, showed that *H. influenzae* can cause an often-fatal meningitis in children.)

Exceptions to Koch's Postulates

Clearly, Koch's postulates are a cornerstone of the etiology of infectious diseases, but using them is not always feasible for the following reasons:

- Some pathogens cannot be cultured in the laboratory. For example, pathogenic strains of *Mycobacterium leprae* (lep´rī), which causes leprosy, have never been grown on laboratory media.
- Some diseases are caused by a combination of pathogens or by a combination of a pathogen and physical, environmental, or genetic cofactors. In such cases, the pathogen alone is avirulent, but when accompanied by another pathogen or the appropriate cofactor, disease results. For example, liver cancer can result when liver cells are infected by both the hepatitis B and hepatitis D viruses but seldom when only one of the viruses infects the cells.
- Ethical considerations prevent applying Koch's postulates to diseases and pathogens that occur in humans only. In such cases the third postulate, which involves inoculation of a healthy susceptible host, cannot be satisfied within ethical boundaries. For this reason, scientists have never attempted to apply Koch's postulates to prove that HIV causes AIDS; however, observations of fetuses that were naturally exposed to HIV by their infected mothers, as well as accidentally infected health care and laboratory workers, have in effect satisfied the third postulate.

Additionally, some circumstances may make satisfying Koch's postulates difficult:

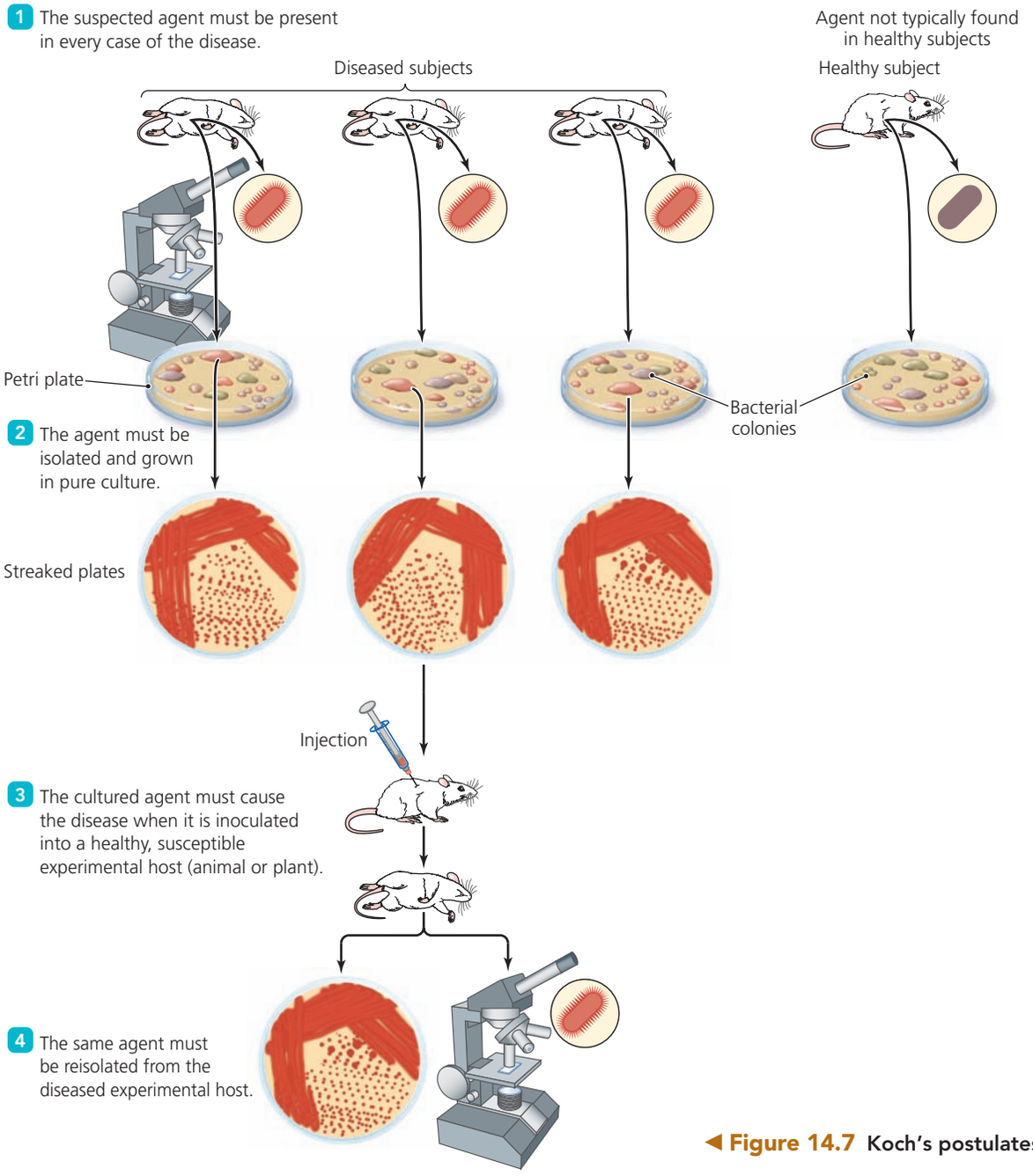
- It is not possible to establish a single cause for such infectious diseases as pneumonia, meningitis, and hepatitis because the names of these diseases refer to conditions that can be caused by more than one pathogen. For these diseases, laboratory technicians must identify the etiologic agent involved in any given case.
- Some pathogens have been ignored. For example, gastric ulcers were long thought to be caused by excessive production of stomach acid in response to stress, but the majority of such ulcers are now known to be caused by a long-overlooked bacterium, *Helicobacter pylori* (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter pī´lō-rē).

If Koch's postulates cannot be applied to a disease condition for whatever reason, how can we positively know the causative agent of a disease? *Epidemiological* studies, discussed later in this chapter, can give statistical support to causation theories but not absolute proof. For example, some researchers have proposed that the bacterium *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* (kla-mē-dof´ĭ-lă nū-mō´nē-ī) causes many cases of arteriosclerosis on the basis of the bacterium's presence in patients with the disease. Debate among scientists about such cases fosters a continued drive for knowledge and discovery. For example, we are still searching for the causes of Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, and Alzheimer's disease.

Virulence Factors of Infectious Agents

Learning Outcome

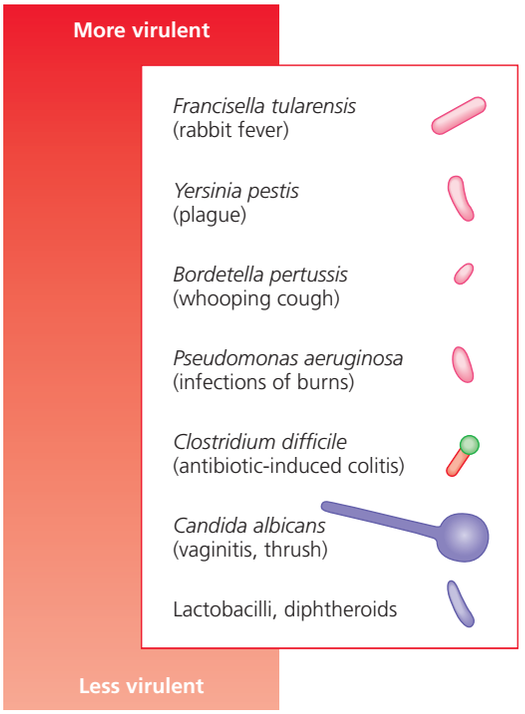
14.14 Explain how microbial extracellular enzymes, toxins, adhesion factors, and antiphagocytic factors affect virulence.



◀ **Figure 14.7** **Koch's postulates.**

Microbiologists characterize the disease-related capabilities of microbes by using two related terms. The ability of a microorganism to cause disease is termed **pathogenicity** (path´ō-jĕ-nis´i-tē), and the *degree* of pathogenicity is termed **virulence.** In other words, virulence is the relative ability of a pathogen to infect a host and cause disease. Neither term addresses the severity of a disease; the pathogen causing rabbit fever is highly virulent, but the disease is relatively mild. Organisms can be placed along a virulence continuum **(Figure 14.8)**; highly virulent organisms almost always cause disease, whereas less virulent organisms (including opportunistic pathogens) cause disease only in weakened hosts or when present in overwhelming numbers.

Pathogens have a variety of traits that interact with a host and enable the pathogen to enter a host, adhere to host cells, gain access to nutrients, and escape detection or removal by the immune system. These traits are collectively called **virulence factors.** Virulent pathogens have one or more virulence factors that nonvirulent microbes lack. We discussed two virulence factors—adhesion factors and biofilm formation—previously; now we examine three other virulence factors: extracellular enzymes, toxins, and antiphagocytic factors. Other virulence factors can be examined online at the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Virulence Factors: Inactivating Host Defenses***



▲ Figure 14.8 Relative virulence of some microbial pathogens. Virulence involves ease of infection and the ability of a pathogen to cause disease; the term does not indicate the seriousness of a disease.

Extracellular Enzymes

Many pathogens secrete enzymes that enable them to dissolve structural chemicals in the body and thereby maintain an infection, invade further, and avoid body defenses. **Figure 14.9a** illustrates the action of some extracellular enzymes of bacteria:

- Hyaluronidase and collagenase degrade specific molecules to enable bacteria to invade deeper tissues. Hyaluronidase digests hyaluronic acid, the "glue" that holds animal cells together, and collagenase breaks down collagen, the body's chief structural protein.
- Coagulase causes blood proteins to clot, providing a "hiding place" for bacteria within a clot.
- Kinases, such as staphylokinase and streptokinase, digest blood clots, allowing subsequent invasion of damaged tissues.

Many bacteria with these enzymes are virulent; mutant strains of the same species that have defective genes for these extracellular enzymes are usually avirulent.

Pathogenic eukaryotes also secrete enzymes that contribute to virulence. For example, fungi that cause "ringworm" produce *keratinase,* which enzymatically digests keratin—the main component of skin, hair, and nails. *Entamoeba histolytica* (ent-ă-mē´bă his-tō-li´ti-kă) secretes *mucinase* to digest the mucus lining the intestinal tract, allowing the amoeba entry to the underlying cells, where it causes amebic dysentery. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Virulence Factors: Penetrating Host Tissues***

Toxins

Toxins are chemicals that either harm tissues or trigger host immune responses that cause damage. The distinction between extracellular enzymes and toxins is not always clear because many enzymes are toxic and many toxins have enzymatic action. In a condition called **toxemia** (tok-sē´mē-ā), toxins enter the bloodstream and are carried to other parts of the body, including sites that may be far removed from the site of infection. There are two types of toxin: exotoxins and endotoxins.

Exotoxins Many microorganisms secrete **exotoxins** that are central to their pathogenicity in that they destroy host cells or interfere with host metabolism. Exotoxins are of three principal types:

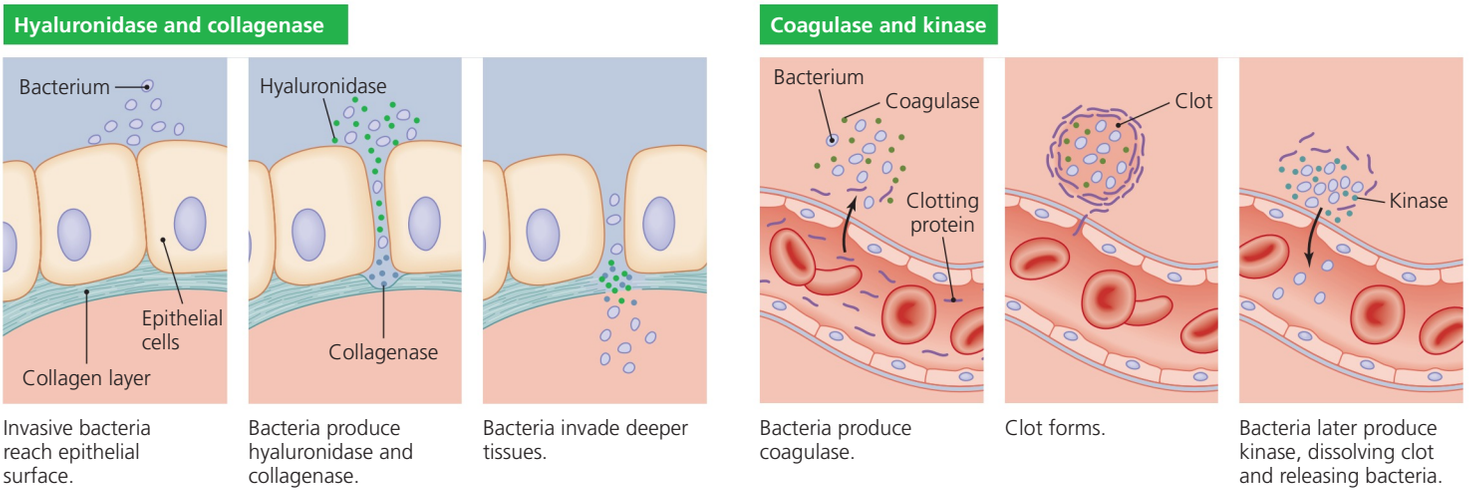
- *Cytotoxins,* which kill host cells in general or affect their function **(Figure 14.9b)**
- *Neurotoxins,* which specifically interfere with nerve cell function
- *Enterotoxins,* which affect cells lining the gastrointestinal tract

Examples of pathogenic bacteria that secrete exotoxins are the clostridia that cause gangrene, botulism, and tetanus; pathogenic strains of *S. aureus* that cause food poisoning and other ailments; and diarrhea-causing *E. coli, Salmonella enterica* (sal´mŏ-nel´ă en-ter´i-kă), and *Shigella* (shē-gel´lă) species. Some fungi and marine dinoflagellates (protozoa) also secrete exotoxins. Specific exotoxins are discussed in the chapters that examine specific diseases. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Virulence Factors: Exotoxins***

The body protects itself with **antitoxins,** which are protective molecules called *antibodies* that bind to specific toxins and neutralize them. Health care workers stimulate the production of antitoxins by administering immunizations composed of *toxoids,* which are toxins that have been treated with heat, formaldehyde, chlorine, or other chemicals to make them nontoxic but still capable of stimulating the production of antibodies. (Chapters 16 and 17 further discuss antibodies, toxoids, and immunizations.)

Endotoxin Gram-negative bacteria have an outer (wall) membrane composed of lipopolysaccharide, phospholipids, and proteins (see Figure 3.14). **Endotoxin,** also called **lipid A,** is the lipid portion of the membrane's lipopolysaccharide.

Endotoxin can be released when Gram-negative bacteria divide, die naturally, or are digested by phagocytic cells such as macrophages (see Figure 14.9b). Many types of lipid A stimulate the body to release chemicals that cause fever, inflammation, diarrhea, hemorrhaging, shock, and blood coagulation. Although infections by bacteria that produce exotoxins are generally more serious than infections with other bacteria, most Gram-negative pathogens can be potentially life threatening because the release of endotoxin from dead bacteria can produce serious, systemic effects in the host. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Virulence Factors: Endotoxins***



▲ Figure 14.9 Some virulence factors. **(a)** Extracellular enzymes. Hyaluronidase and collagenase digest structural materials in the body. Coagulase in effect "camouflages" bacteria inside a blood clot, whereas kinases digest clots to release bacteria. **(b)** Toxins. Exotoxins (including cytotoxin, shown here) are released from living pathogens and harm neighboring cells. Endotoxin is released from many dead Gram-negative bacteria and can trigger widespread disruption of normal body functions. **(c)** Antiphagocytic factors. Capsules, one antiphagocytic factor, can prevent phagocytosis or stop digestion by a phagocyte. *How can bacteria prevent a phagocytic cell from digesting them once they have been engulfed by pseudopods?*

Figure 14.9 *Some bacteria secrete a chemical that prevents the fusion of lysosomes with the phagosome containing the bacteria.*

TABLE 14.8 A Comparison of Bacterial Exotoxins and Endotoxin

	Exotoxins	Endotoxin
Source	Mainly Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria	Gram-negative bacteria
Relation to bacteria	Metabolic product secreted from living cell	Portion of outer (cell wall) membrane released upon cell death
Chemical nature	Protein or short peptide	Lipid portion of lipopolysaccharide (lipid A) of outer (cell wall) membrane
Toxicity	High	Low but may be fatal in high doses
Heat stability	Typically unstable at temperatures above 60°C	Stable for up to 1 hour at autoclave temperature (121°C)
Effect on host	Variable depending on source; may be cytotoxin, neurotoxin, enterotoxin	Fever, lethargy, malaise, shock, blood coagulation
Fever producing?	No	Yes
Antigenicity[a]	Strong: stimulates antitoxin (antibody) production	Weak
Toxoid formation for immunization?	By treatment with heat or fomaldehyde	Not feasible
Representative diseases	Botulism, tetanus, gas gangrene, diphtheria, cholera, plague, staphylococcal food poisoning	Typhoid fever, tularemia, endotoxic shock, urinary tract infections, meningococcal meningitis

[a]Refers to the ability of a chemical to trigger a specific immune response, particularly the formation of antibodies.

Table 14.8 summarizes differences between exotoxins and endotoxins.

Antiphagocytic Factors

Typically, the longer a pathogen remains in a host, the greater the damage and the more severe the disease. To limit the extent and duration of infections, the body's phagocytic cells, such as the white blood cells called macrophages, engulf and remove invading pathogens. Here we consider some virulence factors related to the evasion of phagocytosis, beginning with bacterial capsules. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Phagocytosis: Microbes That Evade It*

Capsules The capsules of many pathogenic bacteria (see Figure 3.5a) are effective virulence factors because many capsules are composed of chemicals normally found in the body (including polysaccharides); as a result, they do not stimulate a host's immune response. For example, hyaluronic acid capsules in effect deceive phagocytic cells into treating them and the enclosed bacteria as if they were a normal part of the body. Additionally, capsules are often slippery, making it difficult for phagocytes to surround and phagocytize them—their pseudopods cannot grip the capsule, much as wet hands have difficulty holding a wet bar of soap **(Figure 14.9c)**.

Antiphagocytic Chemicals Some bacteria, including the cause of gonorrhea, produce chemicals that prevent the fusion of lysosomes with phagocytic vesicles, allowing the bacteria to survive inside phagocytes (see Figure 14.9c). *Streptococcus pyogenes* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs pī-oj´en-ēz) produces a protein on its cell wall and fimbriae, called *M protein,* that resists phagocytosis and thus increases virulence. Other bacteria produce *leukocidins,* which are chemicals capable of destroying phagocytic white blood cells outright. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Virulence Factors: Hiding from Host Defenses* ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Some Virulence Factors*

The Stages of Infectious Diseases

Learning Outcome

14.15 List and describe the five typical stages of infectious diseases.

Following exposure and infection, a sequence of events called the **disease process** can occur. Many infectious diseases have five stages following infection: an incubation period, a prodromal period, illness, decline, and convalescence **(Figure 14.10)**.

Incubation Period

The **incubation period** is the time between infection and occurrence of the first symptoms or signs of disease. The length of the incubation period depends on the virulence of the infective agent, the infective dose (initial number of pathogens), the state and health of the patient's immune system, the nature of the pathogen and its reproduction time, and the site of infection. Some diseases have typical incubation periods, whereas for others the incubation period varies considerably. Table 14.9 lists incubation periods for selected diseases.

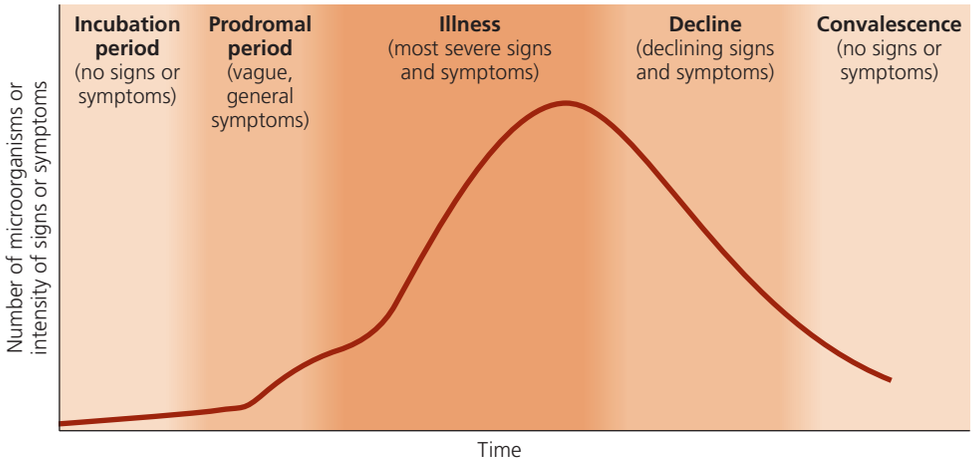
Prodromal Period

The **prodromal**[9] **period** (prō-drō´măl) is a short time of generalized, mild symptoms (such as malaise and muscle aches) that precedes illness. Not all infectious diseases have a prodromal stage.

Illness

Illness is the most severe stage of an infectious disease. Signs and symptoms are most evident during this time. Typically the patient's immune system has not yet fully responded to the

[9]From Greek *prodromos,* meaning "forerunner."



◀ **Figure 14.10 The stages of infectious diseases.** Not every stage occurs in every disease.

pathogens, and their presence is harming the body. This stage is usually when a physician first sees the patient.

Decline

During the period of **decline,** the body gradually returns to normal as the patient's immune response and/or medical treatment vanquish the pathogens. Fever and other signs and symptoms subside. Normally the immune response and its products (such as antibodies in the blood) peak during this stage. If the patient doesn't recover, then the disease is fatal.

Convalescence

During **convalescence** (kon-vă-les´ens), the patient recovers from the illness; tissues are repaired and returned to normal. The length of a convalescent period depends on the amount of damage, the nature of the pathogen, the site of infection, and the overall health of the patient. Thus, whereas recovery from staphylococcal food poisoning may take less than a day, recovery from Lyme disease may take years.

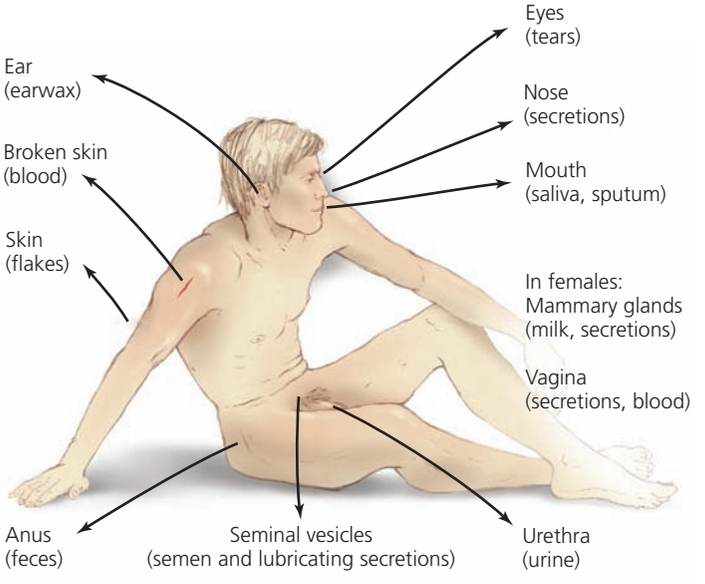
A patient is likely to be infectious during every stage of disease. Even though most of us realize we are infective during the symptomatic periods, many people are unaware that infections can be spread during incubation and convalescence as well. For example, a patient who no longer has any obvious herpes sores is always capable of transmitting herpesviruses. Good aseptic technique can limit the spread of many pathogens from recovering patients.

TABLE 14.9 Incubation Periods of Selected Infectious Diseases

Disease	Incubation Period
Staphylococcus foodborne infection	<1 day
Influenza	About 1 day
Cholera	2 to 3 days
Genital herpes	About 5 days
Tetanus	5 to 15 days
Syphilis	10 to 21 days
Hepatitis B	70 to 100 days
AIDS	1 to >8 years
Leprosy	10 to >30 years

The Movement of Pathogens Out of Hosts: Portals of Exit

Just as infections occur through portals of entry, so pathogens must leave infected patients through **portals of exit** in order to infect others (Figure 14.11). Many portals of exit are essentially identical to portals of entry. However, pathogens often exit hosts in materials that the body secretes or excretes. Thus, pathogens may



▲ **Figure 14.11 Portals of exit.** Many portals of exit are also portals of entry. Pathogens often leave the body via bodily secretions and excretions produced at those sites.

leave hosts in secretions (earwax, tears, nasal secretions, saliva, sputum, and respiratory droplets), in blood (via arthropod bites, hypodermic needles, or wounds), in vaginal secretions or semen, in milk produced by the mammary glands, and in excreted bodily wastes (feces and urine). As we will see, health care personnel must consider the portals of entry and exit in their efforts to understand and control the spread of diseases within populations.

Modes of Infectious Disease Transmission

Learning Outcomes

14.16 Contrast contact, vehicle, and vector transmission of pathogens.
14.17 Contrast *droplet transmission* and *airborne transmission*.
14.18 Contrast *mechanical* and *biological* vectors.

By definition, an infectious disease agent must be transmitted from either a reservoir or a portal of exit to another host's portal of entry. Transmission can occur by numerous modes that are somewhat arbitrarily categorized into three groups: contact transmission, vehicle transmission, and vector transmission.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Epidemiology: Transmission of Disease*

Contact Transmission

Contact transmission is the spread of pathogens from one host to another by direct contact, indirect contact, or respiratory droplets.

Direct contact transmission, including *person-to-person spread,* typically involves body contact between hosts. Touching, kissing, and sexual intercourse are involved in the transmission of such diseases as warts, herpes, and gonorrhea. Touching, biting, or scratching can transmit zoonoses such as rabies, ringworm, and tularemia from an animal reservoir to a human. The transfer of pathogens from an infected mother to a developing baby across the placenta is another form of direct contact transmission. Direct transmission within a single individual can also occur if the person transfers pathogens from a portal of exit directly to a portal of entry—as occurs, for example, when people with poor personal hygiene unthinkingly place fingers contaminated with fecal pathogens into their mouths.

Indirect contact transmission occurs when pathogens are spread from one host to another by **fomites** (fō´m i-tēz; singular: *fomes,* fō´mēz), which are inanimate objects that are inadvertently used to transfer pathogens to new hosts. Fomites include needles, toothbrushes, paper tissues, toys, money, diapers, drinking glasses, bedsheets, medical equipment, and other objects that can harbor or transmit pathogens. Contaminated needles are a major source of infection of the hepatitis B and AIDS viruses.

Droplet transmission is a third type of contact transmission. Pathogens can be transmitted within *droplet nuclei* (droplets of mucus) that exit the body during exhaling, coughing, and sneezing **(Figure 14.12)**. Pathogens such as cold and flu viruses may be spread in this manner. If pathogens travel more than 1 meter in respiratory droplets, the mode is considered to be *airborne transmission* (discussed shortly) rather than contact transmission.

▲ **Figure 14.12 Droplet transmission.** In this case, droplets are propelled, primarily from the mouth, during a sneeze. By convention, such transmission is considered contact transmission only if droplets transmit pathogens to a new host within 1 meter of their source. *By what portal of entry does airborne transmission most likely occur?*

Figure 14.12 *The most likely portal of entry of airborne pathogens is the respiratory mucous membrane.*

Vehicle Transmission

Vehicle transmission is the spread of pathogens via air, drinking water, and food, as well as bodily fluids being handled outside the body.

Airborne transmission involves the spread of pathogens farther than 1 meter to the respiratory mucous membranes of a new host via an **aerosol** (ār´ō-sol)—a cloud of small droplets and solid particles suspended in the air. Aerosols may contain pathogens either on dust or inside droplets. (Recall that transmission via droplet nuclei that travel less than 1 meter is considered to be a form of direct contact transmission.) Aerosols can come from sneezing and coughing, or they can be generated by such means as air-conditioning systems, sweeping, mopping, changing clothes or bed linens, or even from flaming inoculating loops in microbiology labs. Dust particles can carry *Staphylococcus, Streptococcus,* and *Hantavirus* (han´tā-vī-rŭs), whereas measles virus and tuberculosis bacilli can be transmitted in dried, airborne droplets. Fungal spores of *Histoplasma* (his-tō-plaz´mă) and *Coccidioides* (kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz) are typically inhaled.

Waterborne transmission is important in the spread of many gastrointestinal diseases, including giardiasis, amebic dysentery, and cholera. Note that water can act as a reservoir as well as a vehicle of infection. **Fecal-oral infection** is a major source of disease in the world. Some waterborne pathogens, such as *Schistosoma* (skis-tō-sō´mă) worms (see Chapter 23) and enteroviruses (see Chapter 25), are shed in the feces, enter

▲ **Figure 14.13** **Poorly refrigerated foods can harbor pathogens and transmit diseases.**

through the gastrointestinal mucous membrane or skin, and subsequently can cause disease elsewhere in the body.

Foodborne transmission involves pathogens in and on foods that are inadequately processed, undercooked, or poorly refrigerated **(Figure 14.13)**. Foods may be contaminated with normal microbiota (e.g., *E. coli* and *S. aureus*), with zoonotic pathogens such as *Mycobacterium bovis* (bō´vis) and *Toxoplasma* (tok-sō-plaz´mă), and with parasitic worms that alternate between human and animal hosts. Contamination of food with feces and pathogens such as hepatitis A virus is another kind of fecal-oral transmission. Because milk is particularly rich in nutrients that microorganisms use (protein, lipids, vitamins, and sugars), it would be associated with the transmission of many diseases from infected animals and milk handlers if it were not properly pasteurized.

Because blood, urine, saliva, and other bodily fluids can contain pathogens, everyone—but especially health care workers—must take precautions when handling these fluids in order to prevent **bodily fluid transmission.** Special care must be taken to prevent such fluids—all of which should be considered potentially contaminated with pathogens—from contacting the conjunctiva or any breaks in the skin or mucous membranes. Examples of diseases that can be transmitted via bodily fluids are AIDS, hepatitis, and herpes, which as we have seen can also be transmitted via direct contact.

Vector Transmission

Vectors are animals that transmit diseases from one host to another. Vectors can be either biological or mechanical.

Biological vectors not only transmit pathogens but also serve as hosts for the multiplication of a pathogen during some stage of the pathogen's life cycle. The biological vectors of diseases affecting humans are typically biting arthropods, including mosquitoes, ticks, lice, fleas, bloodsucking flies, bloodsucking bugs, and mites (see Figure 12.33). After pathogens replicate within a biological vector, often in its gut or salivary gland, the pathogens enter a new host through a bite. The bite site becomes contaminated with the vector's

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

TB IN THE NURSERY

In the early fall, a neonatal nurse in a large metropolitan hospital became ill with a cough and fever. His physician believed he had seasonal allergies and so treated him with cough suppressant, antihistamines, and aerosol steroids. He returned to work in the hospital's nursery.

Three weeks later his condition had worsened; his symptoms were complicated by shortness of breath and bloody sputum. Upon further questioning, his physician noted that he was working in the United States on a work visa and was a native of South Africa. He had a positive skin test for tuberculosis (TB) but had always believed this was his body's natural reaction to the TB vaccine he had received as a child. His chest X-ray films in the past had always been clear of infection.

This time, however, his sputum smear tested positive for acid-fast bacilli. He was diagnosed with active tuberculosis and began a standard drug regimen for TB. He was restricted from work and placed in respiratory isolation for six weeks, but during the three weeks that he had continued to work in the nursery, he exposed over 900 obstetric patients, including 620 newborns, to TB, an airborne infectious disease.

1. How can private physicians quickly assess their clients for the possibility of an infectious disease?
2. What policies should be in place at hospitals to protect patients from exposure to infectious staff members?
3. How could doctors' offices improve public knowledge and protect the public from infectious diseases like tuberculosis?

Reference: Adapted from *MMWR* 54:1280–1283, 2005.

feces, or the vector's bite directly introduces pathogens into the new host.

Mechanical vectors are not required as hosts by the pathogens they transmit; such vectors only passively carry pathogens to new hosts on their feet or other body parts. Mechanical vectors, such as houseflies and cockroaches, may introduce pathogens such as *Salmonella* and *Shigella* into drinking water and food or onto the skin.

Table 14.10 lists some arthropod vectors and the diseases they transmit. Table 14.11 summarizes the modes of disease transmission.

TABLE 14.10 Selected Arthropod Vectors

	Disease	Causative Agent (bacteria unless otherwise indicated)
Biological Vectors		
Mosquitoes		
Anopheles, *Aedes*	Malaria	*Plasmodium* spp. (protozoan)
	Yellow fever	*Flavivirus* sp. (virus)
	Elephantiasis	*Wuchereria bancrofti* (helminth)
	Dengue	*Flavivirus* spp. (virus)
	Viral encephalitis	*Alphavirus* spp. (virus)
Ticks		
Ixodes	Lyme disease	*Borrelia burgdorferi*
Dermacentor	Rocky Mountain spotted fever	*Rickettsia rickettsii*
Flea		
Xenopsylla	Bubonic plague	*Yersinia pestis*
	Endemic typhus	*Rickettsia prowazekii*
Louse		
Pediculus	Epidemic typhus	*Rickettsia typhi*
Bloodsucking flies		
Glossina	African sleeping sickness	*Trypanosoma brucei*
Simulium	River blindness	*Onchocerca volvulus* (helminth)
Bloodsucking bug		
Triatoma	Chagas' disease	*Trypanosoma cruzi* (protozoan)
Mite (chigger)		
Leptotrombidium	Scrub typhus	*Orientia tsutsugamushi*
Mechanical Vectors		
Housefly		
Musca	Foodborne infections	*Shigella* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *Escherichia coli*
Cockroaches		
Blatella, *Periplaneta*	Foodborne infections	*Shigella* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *Escherichia coli*

Classification of Infectious Diseases

Learning Outcomes

14.19 Describe the basis for each of the various classification schemes of infectious diseases.

14.20 Distinguish among acute, subacute, chronic, and latent diseases.

14.21 Distinguish among communicable, contagious, and noncommunicable infectious diseases.

Infectious diseases can be classified in a number of ways. No one way is "*the* correct way"; each has its own advantages. One scheme groups diseases based upon the body systems affected. A difficulty with this method of classification is that many diseases involve more than one organ system. For example, AIDS begins as a sexually transmitted infection (reproductive system) or a parenteral infection of the blood (cardiovascular system). It then becomes an infection of the lymphatic system as viruses invade lymphocytes. Finally, the syndrome involves diseases and degeneration of the respiratory, nervous, digestive, cardiovascular, and lymphatic systems.

Another classification system deals with diseases according to taxonomic groups. Chapters 19 to 25 examine diseases based on this approach.

Every disease (not just infectious diseases) can also be classified according to its longevity and severity. If a disease develops rapidly but lasts a relatively short time, it is called an **acute disease.** An example is the common cold. In contrast, **chronic diseases** develop slowly (usually with less severe symptoms) and are continual or recurrent. Infectious mononucleosis, hepatitis C, tuberculosis, and leprosy are chronic diseases. **Subacute diseases** have durations and severities that lie somewhere between acute and chronic. Subacute bacterial endocarditis, a disease of heart valves, is one example. **Latent diseases** are those in which a pathogen remains inactive for a long period of time before becoming active. Herpes is an example of a latent disease.

When an infectious disease comes from another infected host, either directly or indirectly, it is a **communicable disease.** Influenza, herpes, and tuberculosis are examples of communicable diseases. If a communicable disease is easily transmitted between hosts, as is the case for chicken pox or measles, it is also called a **contagious disease**. **Noncommunicable diseases** arise outside of hosts or from normal microbiota. In other words, they are not spread from one host to another, and diseased patients are not a source of contamination for others. Tooth decay, acne, and tetanus are examples of noncommunicable diseases. Table 14.12 defines these and other terms used to classify infectious diseases.

Yet another way in which all infectious diseases may be classified is by the effects they have on populations rather than on individuals. Is a certain disease consistently found in a given group of people or geographic area? Under what circumstances is it more prevalent than normal in a given geographic area? How prevalent is "normal"? How is the disease transmitted

TABLE 14.11 Modes of Disease Transmission

Mode of Transmission	Examples of Diseases Spread
Contact Transmission	
Direct contact: e.g., handshaking, kissing, sexual intercourse, bites	Cutaneous anthrax, genital warts, gonorrhea, herpes, rabies, staphylococcal infections, syphilis
Indirect contact: e.g., drinking glasses, toothbrushes, toys, punctures	Common cold, enterovirus infections, influenza, measles, Q fever, pneumonia, tetanus
Droplet transmission: e.g., droplets from sneezing (within 1 meter)	Whooping cough, streptococcal pharyngitis (strep throat)
Vehicle Transmission	
Airborne: e.g., dust particles or droplets carried more than 1 meter	Chicken pox, coccidioidomycosis, histoplasmosis, influenza, measles, pulmonary anthrax, tuberculosis
Waterborne: e.g., streams, swimming pools	*Campylobacter* infections, cholera, *Giardia* diarrhea
Foodborne: e.g., poultry, seafood, meat	Food poisoning (botulism, staphylococcal); hepatitis A, listeriosis, tapeworms, toxoplasmosis, typhoid fever
Vector Transmission	
Mechanical: e.g., on bodies of flies, roaches	*E. coli* diarrhea, salmonellosis, trachoma
Biological: e.g., lice, mites, mosquitoes, ticks	Chagas' disease, Lyme disease, malaria, plague, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, typhus fever, yellow fever

TABLE 14.12 Terms Used to Classify Infectious Diseases

Term	Definition
Acute disease	Disease in which symptoms develop rapidly and that runs its course quickly
Chronic disease	Disease with usually mild symptoms that develop slowly and last a long time
Subacute disease	Disease with time course and symptoms between acute and chronic
Asymptomatic disease	Disease without symptoms
Latent disease	Disease that appears a long time after infection
Communicable disease	Disease transmitted from one host to another
Contagious disease	Communicable disease that is easily spread
Noncommunicable disease	Disease arising from outside of hosts or disease from opportunistic pathogen
Local infection	Infection confined to a small region of the body
Systemic infection	Widespread infection in many systems of the body; often travels in the blood or lymph
Focal infection	Infection that serves as a source of pathogens for infections at other sites in the body
Primary infection	Initial infection within a given patient
Secondary infection	Infections that follow a primary infection; often by opportunistic pathogens

throughout a population? We next examine issues related to diseases at the population level.

Epidemiology of Infectious Diseases

Learning Outcome

14.22 Define *epidemiology.*

Our discussion so far has centered on the negative impact of microorganisms on *individuals.* Now we turn our attention to the effects of pathogens on *populations.* **Epidemiology**[10] (ep-i-dē-mē-ol´ō-jē) is the study of where and when diseases occur and how they are transmitted within populations. During the 20th century, epidemiologists expanded the scope of their work beyond infectious diseases to also consider injuries and deaths related to automobile and fireworks accidents, cigarette smoking, lead poisoning, and other causes; however, we will limit our discussion primarily to the epidemiology of infectious diseases. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Epidemiology: Overview***

Frequency of Disease

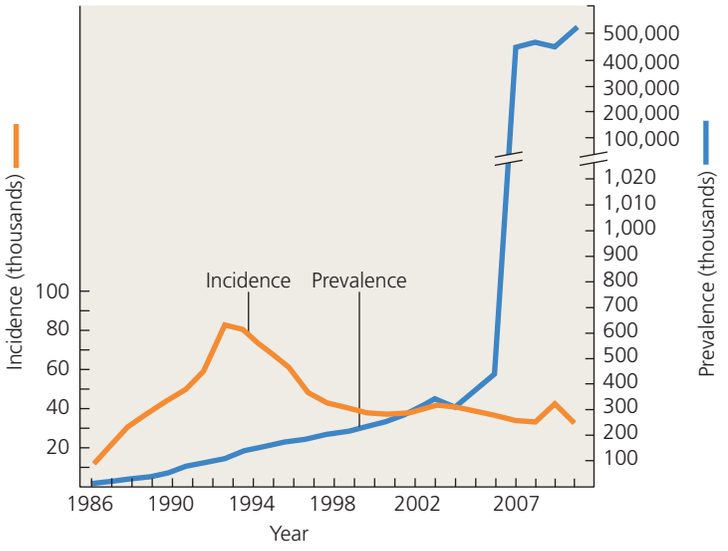
Learning Outcomes

14.23 Contrast incidence and prevalence.

14.24 Differentiate among the terms *endemic, sporadic, epidemic,* and *pandemic.*

Epidemiologists keep track of the occurrence of diseases by using two measures: incidence and prevalence. **Incidence** is the number of *new* cases of a disease in a given area or population

[10]From Greek *epidemios,* meaning "among the people," and *logos,* meaning "study of."



▲ Figure 14.14 Curves representing the incidence and the estimated prevalence of AIDS among U.S. adults. Note that the scales for the two curves are different. *Why can the incidence of a disease never exceed the prevalence of that disease?*

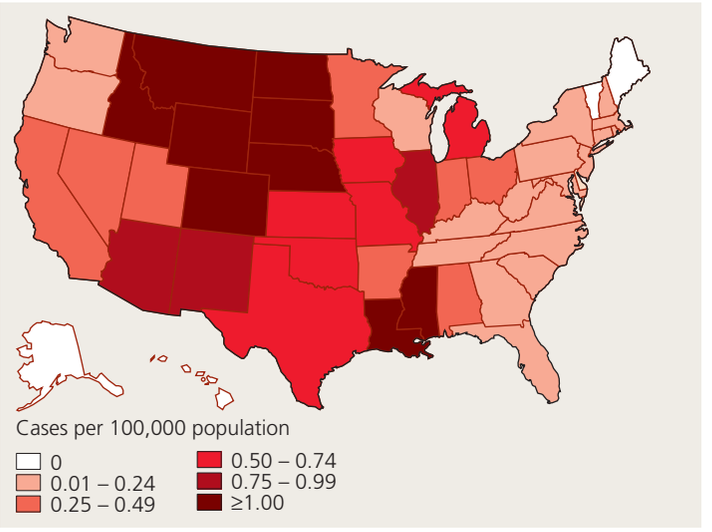
Figure 14.14 *Because prevalence includes all cases, both old and new, prevalence must always be larger than incidence.*

during a given period of time; **prevalence** is the *total number* of cases, both new and already existing, in a given area or population during a given period of time. In other words, prevalence is a cumulative number. Thus, for example, the reported number of new cases—the incidence—of AIDS in adults in the United States in 2009 was 42,959. However, the prevalence of AIDS in 2009 was about 450,000 because more than 400,000 patients who got the disease prior to 2009 still survived with the disease. **Figure 14.14** illustrates this relationship between incidence and prevalence.

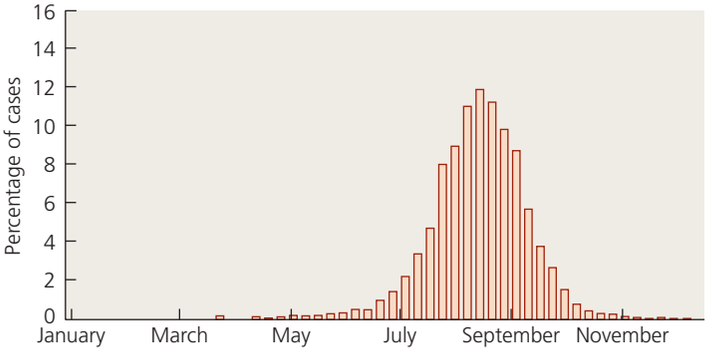
Epidemiologists report their data in many ways, including maps, graphs, charts, and tables **(Figure 14.15)**. Why do they report their data in so many different ways? Using a variety of formats enables epidemiologists to observe patterns that may give clues about the causes of or ways to prevent diseases. For example, West Nile virus encephalitis occurs across the United States, but when data are exported by age group, it becomes obvious that elderly Americans are most at risk.

The occurrence of a disease can also be considered in terms of a combination of frequency and geographic distribution **(Figure 14.16)**. A disease that normally occurs continually (at moderately regular intervals) at a relatively stable incidence within a given population or geographical area is said to be **endemic**[11] to that population or region. A disease is considered **sporadic** when only a few scattered cases occur within an area or population. Whenever a disease occurs at a greater frequency than is usual for an area or population, the disease is said to be **epidemic** within that area or population.

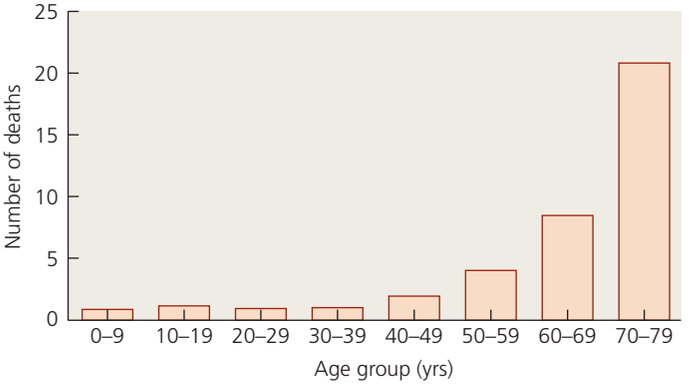
▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Epidemiology: Occurrence of Disease*



(a)



(b)

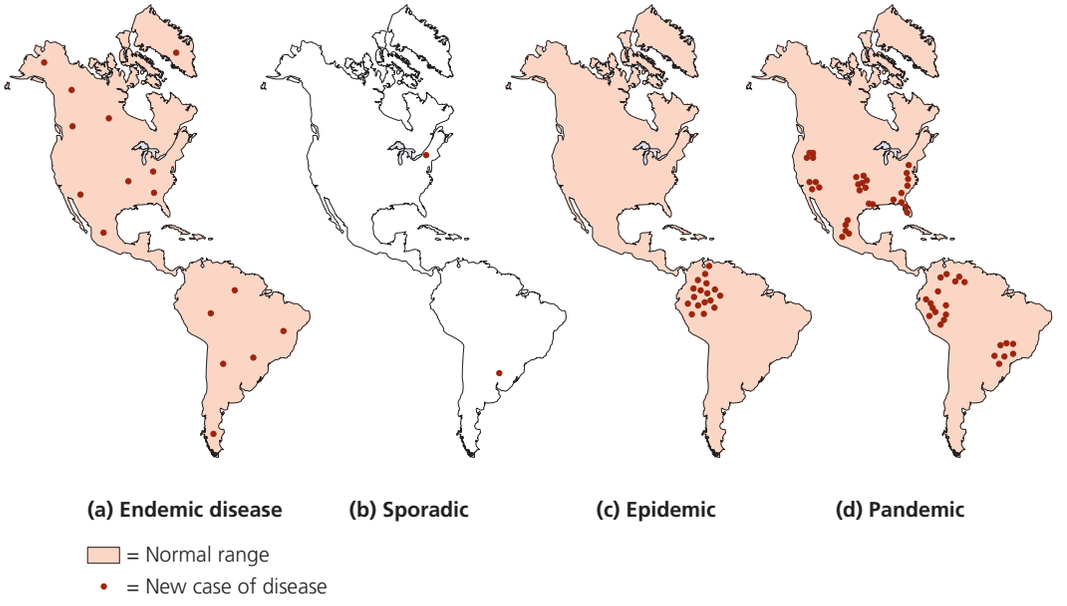


(c)

▲ Figure 14.15 Epidemiologists report data in a variety of ways. Here, incidence of cases of an emerging disease—West Nile virus disease—in which the virus invades the nervous system. Data for the decade 1999–2008 are presented. **(a)** Average annual incidence for the U.S. are on a map by state. **(b)** Percentage of cases by week of onset. **(c)** Percentage of deaths by age. *How do the data help support the idea that mosquitoes carry West Nile virus?*

Figure 14.15 *Most cases of the disease in late summer, when mosquitoes are likely biting and people are more likely to be outdoors.*

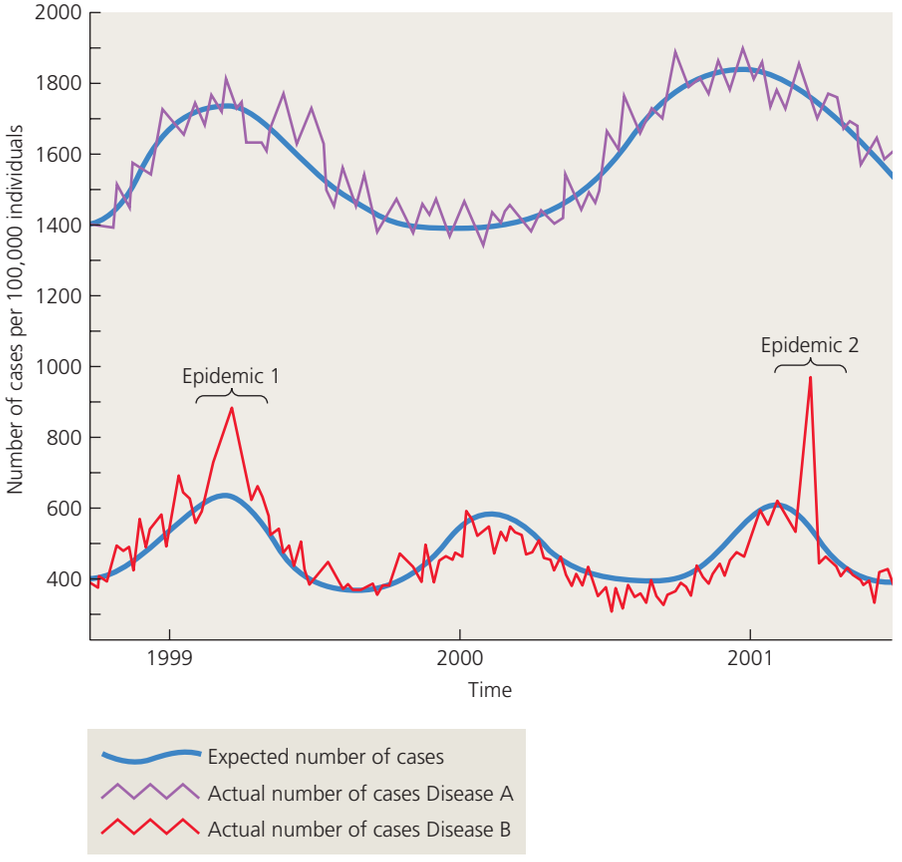
[11] From Greek *endemos*, meaning "native."



◀ Figure 14.16 Illustrations of the different terms for the occurrence of disease. **(a)** An endemic disease, which is normally present in a region. **(b)** A sporadic disease, which occurs irregularly and infrequently. **(c)** An epidemic disease, which is present in greater frequency than is usual. **(d)** A pandemic disease, which is an epidemic disease occurring on more than one continent at a given time. *Regardless of where you live, name a disease that is endemic, one that is sporadic, and one that is epidemic in your state.*

Figure 14.16 *Some possible answers: Flu is endemic in every state; tuberculosis is sporadic in most states; AIDS is epidemic in every state.*

The commonly held belief that a disease must infect thousands or millions to be considered an epidemic is mistaken. The time period and the number of cases necessary for an outbreak of disease to be classified as an epidemic are not specified; the important fact is that there are more cases than historical statistics indicate are expected. For example, fewer than 70 cases of an emerging disease—hemolytic uremic syndrome caused by a strain of *E. coli*—occurred in Germany in 2011, but because there are typically fewer than five cases annually, the 2011 outbreak was considered an epidemic. Thousands of cases of flu occurred in Germany in 2011, but there was no flu epidemic because the number of cases observed did not exceed the number expected. **Figure 14.17** illustrates how epidemics are defined according to the number



◀ Figure 14.17 Epidemics may have fewer cases than nonepidemics. These two graphs demonstrate the independence between the absolute number of cases and a disease's designation as an epidemic. Even though the number of cases of disease A always exceeds the number of cases of disease B, only disease B is considered epidemic—at those times when the number of cases observed exceeds the number of cases expected. *How can scientists know the normal prevalence of a given disease?*

Figure 14.17 *Scientists record every case of the disease so that they will have a "baseline" prevalence, which then becomes the expected prevalence for each disease.*

of expected cases and not according to the absolute number of cases.

If an epidemic occurs simultaneously on more than one continent, it is referred to as a **pandemic** (see Figure 14.16d). H1N1 flu, so-called swine flu, became pandemic worldwide in 2009.

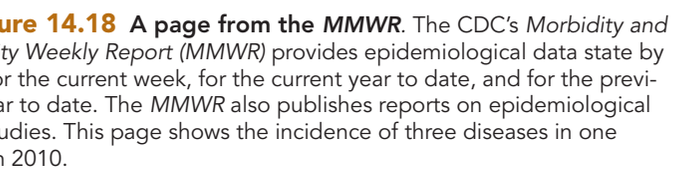
Obviously, for disease prevalence to be classified as either endemic, sporadic, epidemic, or pandemic, good records must be kept for each region and population. From such records, incidence and prevalence can be calculated, and then changes in these data can be noted. Health departments at the local and state levels require doctors and hospitals to report certain infectious diseases. Some are also nationally notifiable; that is, their occurrence must be reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in Atlanta, Georgia, which is the headquarters and clearinghouse for national epidemiological research. Nationally notifiable diseases are listed in Table 14.13. Each week the CDC reports the number of cases of most of the nationally notifiable diseases in the *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR)* (Figure 14.18).

Epidemiological Studies

Learning Outcome

14.25 Explain three approaches epidemiologists use to study diseases in populations.

Epidemiologists conduct research to study the dynamics of diseases in populations by taking three different approaches, called descriptive, analytical, and experimental epidemiology.



▶ **Figure 14.18 A page from the *MMWR*.** The CDC's *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR)* provides epidemiological data state by state for the current week, for the current year to date, and for the previous year to date. The *MMWR* also publishes reports on epidemiological case studies. This page shows the incidence of three diseases in one week in 2010.

Descriptive Epidemiology

Descriptive epidemiology involves the careful tabulation of data concerning a disease. Relevant information includes the location and time of cases of the disease as well as information about the patients, such as ages, gender, occupations, health histories, and socioeconomic groups. Because the time course and chains of transmission of a disease are an important part of descriptive epidemiology, epidemiologists strive to identify the **index case** (the first case) of the disease in a given area or population. Sometimes it is difficult or impossible to identify an index case because the patient has recovered, moved, or died.

The earliest descriptive epidemiological study was by John Snow (1813–1858), who studied a cholera outbreak in London in 1854. By carefully mapping the locations of the cholera cases in a particular part of the city, Snow found that the cases were clustered around the Broad Street water pump (Figure 14.19). This distribution of cases, plus the voluminous watery diarrhea of cholera patients, suggested that the disease was spread via contamination of drinking water by sewage.

Analytical Epidemiology

Analytical epidemiology investigates a disease in detail, including analysis of data acquired in descriptive epidemiological studies, to determine the probable cause, mode of transmission,

TABLE 14.13 Nationally Notifiable Infectious Diseases[a]

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)	Gonorrhea	Novel influenza A infections	Smallpox
Anthrax	Hansen disease (leprosy)	Pertussis	Streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome
Arboviral diseases	*Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome	Plague	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*, invasive disease
Botulism	Hemolytic uremic syndrome, postdiarrheal	Poliomyelitis	Syphilis
Brucellosis	Hepatitis A	Psittacosis	Tetanus
Chancroid	Hepatitis B	Q fever	Toxic-shock syndrome, nonstreptococcal
Chicken pox	Hepatitis C	Rabies, animal and human	Trichinosis
Chlamydia trachomatis, genital infections	HIV infection	Rubella	Tuberculosis
Cholera	Influenza-related infant deaths	Rubella, congenital syndrome	Tularemia
Coccidioidomycosis	Legionellosis	Salmonellosis	Typhoid fever
Cryptosporidiosis	Listeriosis	Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)	Vancomycin-intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus*
Cyclosporiasis	Lyme disease	Shiga-toxin-producing *Escherichia coli*	Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
Diphtheria	Malaria	Shigellosis	
Ehrlichiosis/anaplasmosis	Measles	Spotted fever rickettsiosis	
Giardiasis	Meningococcal disease		
	Mumps		

[a]Diseases for which hospitals, physicians, and other health care workers are required to report cases to state health departments that, then forward the data to the CDC.

Weekly/Vol.61/No.41 MMWR October 19, 2012

TABLE II. (*Continued*) Provisional cases of selected notifiable diseases, United States, weeks ending October 13, 2012, and October 15, 2011 (41st week)*

Reporting area	Giardiasis					Gonorrhea					*Haemophilus influenzae*, invasive† All ages, all serotypes				
	Current week	Previous 52 weeks		Cum 2012	Cum 2011	Current week	Previous 52 weeks		Cum 2012	Cum 2011	Current week	Previous 52 weeks		Cum 2012	Cum 2011
		Med	Max				Med	Max				Med	Max		
United States	127	252	495	10,223	13,256	2,487	6,099	7,030	240,844	250,787	19	64	151	2,465	2,682
New England	4	24	50	1,001	1,295	38	113	238	4,351	4,229	—	4	15	154	180
Connecticut	—	4	10	147	185	1	42	161	1,498	1,813	—	1	5	43	48
Maine	—	3	10	132	144	—	8	18	305	182	—	0	2	17	20
Massachusetts	—	13	25	488	614	30	49	89	1,966	1,829	—	2	8	80	85
New Hampshire	—	2	6	78	111	—	2	8	103	101	—	0	2	2	12
Rhode Island	—	0	10	37	62	4	9	35	400	261	—	0	2	7	10
Vermont	4	3	12	119	179	3	1	6	79	43	—	0	1	5	5
Mid. Atlantic	22	48	97	1,899	2,617	482	868	1,091	34,567	32,018	3	14	32	512	586
New Jersey	—	1	10	75	377	38	153	199	5,958	5,714	—	1	5	54	96
New York (Upstate)	17	16	51	678	835	152	137	440	5,797	4,483	—	3	19	133	146
New York City	—	16	24	660	755	87	272	348	10,662	11,225	—	3	9	136	146
Pennsylvania	5	12	30	486	650	205	298	398	12,150	10,596	3	5	16	189	198
E.N. Central	13	44	62	1,612	2,146	317	1,048	1,292	40,112	45,810	4	11	26	378	482
Illinois	—	6	14	258	339	10	281	389	10,370	13,433	—	3	7	103	143
Indiana	—	5	8	152	266	17	135	193	5,396	5,312	—	2	6	71	85
Michigan	2	11	19	387	419	164	241	375	8,721	10,118	1	1	4	53	56
Ohio	9	12	30	472	642	69	301	367	11,890	13,227	3	3	7	122	124
Wisconsin	2	8	20	343	480	57	91	143	3,735	3,720	—	1	5	29	74
W.N. Central	4	22	41	829	1,438	65	332	414	12,962	12,669	3	5	9	186	169
Iowa	2	5	11	202	230	6	36	87	1,498	1,528	—	0	1	—	1
Kansas	—	2	6	85	115	2	43	76	1,744	1,681	—	0	3	21	19
Minnesota	—	0	23	—	537	—	48	76	1,882	1,755	—	1	5	64	51
Missouri	2	7	13	250	274	56	155	204	6,293	6,065	3	1	6	66	61
Nebraska	—	3	11	149	157	—	26	52	878	998	—	0	3	22	26
North Dakota	—	1	15	46	35	1	5	13	204	193	—	0	3	13	10
South Dakota	—	2	7	97	90	—	12	23	463	449	—	0	0	—	1
S. Atlantic	29	45	102	1,733	2,115	874	1,418	1,960	56,307	61,135	7	15	39	628	601
Delaware	1	0	2	20	27	8	16	35	664	627	—	0	2	6	4
District of Columbia	—	1	5	42	46	33	45	117	1,869	2,022	—	0	1	2	—
Florida	22	21	49	848	949	300	375	470	15,361	15,720	4	4	11	188	191
Georgia	—	8	25	310	537	201	287	426	11,549	12,872	2	3	8	120	105
Maryland	3	5	11	195	215	107	103	219	4,071	4,860	—	1	6	71	74
North Carolina	N	0	0	N	N	—	285	548	10,618	13,545	1	1	9	82	66
South Carolina	—	2	6	91	95	122	149	391	6,156	6,333	—	1	5	52	64
Virginia	3	6	18	205	213	92	133	353	5,406	4,516	—	2	7	72	80
West Virginia	—	0	17	22	33	11	14	32	613	640	—	1	14	35	17
E.S. Central	3	3	11	123	136	133	523	816	21,448	21,458	1	4	12	153	175
Alabama	3	3	11	123	136	—	170	238	5,495	7,119	—	1	4	42	45
Kentucky	N	0	0	N	N	90	82	215	3,463	3,445	—	1	3	29	37
Mississippi	N	0	0	N	N	—	117	323	5,316	4,910	—	0	3	17	15
Tennessee	N	0	0	N	N	43	171	257	7,174	5,984	1	2	8	65	78
W.S. Central	4	5	15	219	284	93	847	1,132	33,323	38,678	—	3	10	130	114
Arkansas	4	2	6	73	98	92	83	123	3,521	3,845	—	0	2	22	29
Louisiana	—	4	9	146	186	—	149	369	4,757	6,560	—	1	4	41	44
Oklahoma	—	0	0	—	—	1	23	162	789	3,327	—	1	9	66	40
Texas	N	0	0	N	N	—	602	702	24,256	24,946	—	0	1	1	1
Mountain	3	21	43	857	1,060	183	227	323	9,268	8,765	—	5	16	203	227
Arizona	1	2	5	88	112	68	108	158	4,487	3,458	—	1	6	73	77
Colorado	—	7	19	242	360	51	35	78	1,335	1,848	—	1	5	34	49
Idaho	—	3	10	111	128	—	2	11	93	129	—	0	2	14	17
Montana	—	1	4	46	68	—	2	5	71	67	—	0	2	5	3
Nevada	1	1	5	72	64	55	41	64	1,605	1,604	—	0	2	16	15
New Mexico	—	1	7	61	89	7	34	61	1,329	1,419	—	1	4	34	34
Utah	—	4	12	207	203	2	7	18	322	205	—	0	4	24	31
Wyoming	1	1	2	30	36	—	0	4	26	35	—	0	1	3	1
Pacific	45	46	185	1,950	2,165	302	702	819	28,506	26,025	1	3	8	121	148
Alaska	2	2	6	74	82	4	13	26	521	816	1	0	2	12	21
California	27	30	58	1,257	1,390	228	596	713	24,222	21,343	—	1	5	36	37
Hawaii	—	0	2	21	33	—	11	20	363	555	—	0	3	16	23
Oregon	1	7	15	291	353	24	30	63	1,150	1,120	—	1	6	57	60
Washington	15	7	146	307	307	46	54	70	2,250	2,191	—	0	1	—	7
Territories															
American Samoa	—	0	0	—	—	—	0	0	—	—	—	0	0	—	—
C.N.M.I.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Guam	—	0	0	—	—	—	0	3	—	84	—	0	0	—	—
Puerto Rico	—	0	3	2	74	—	6	25	254	254	—	0	0	—	—
U.S. Virgin Islands	—	0	0	—	—	—	2	8	56	117	—	0	0	—	—

C.N.M.I.: Commonwealth of Northern Mariana Islands.
U: Unavailable. —: No reported cases. N: Not reportable. NN: Not Nationally Notifiable. Cum: Cumulative year-to-date counts. Med: Median. Max: Maximum.
* Case counts for reporting year 2012 are provisional and subject to change. For further information on interpretation of these data, see http://wwwn.cdc.gov/nndss/document/ProvisionalNationaNotifiableDiseasesSurveillanceData20100927.pdf. Data for TB are displayed in Table IV, which appears quarterly.
† Data for *H. influenzae* (age <5 yrs for serotype b, nonserotype b, and unknown serotype) are available in Table I.

▲ Figure 14.19 A map showing cholera deaths in a section of London, 1854. From the map he compiled, Dr. John Snow showed that cholera cases centered around the Broad Street pump. Snow's work was a landmark in epidemiological research.

and possible means of prevention of the disease. Analytical epidemiology may be used in situations where it is not ethical to apply Koch's postulates. Thus, even though Koch's third postulate has never been fulfilled in the case of AIDS (because it is unethical to intentionally inoculate a human with HIV), analytical epidemiological studies indicate that HIV causes AIDS and that it is transmitted primarily sexually.

Often analytical studies are *retrospective;* that is, they attempt to identify causation and mode of transmission after an outbreak has occurred. Epidemiologists compare a group of people who had the disease with a group who did not. The groups are carefully matched by factors such as gender, environment, and diet and then compared to determine which pathogens and factors may play a role in morbidity.

Experimental Epidemiology

Experimental epidemiology involves testing a hypothesis concerning the cause of a disease. The application of Koch's postulates is an example of experimental epidemiology. Experimental epidemiology also involves studies to test a hypothesis resulting from an analytical study, such as the efficacy of a preventive measure or certain treatment. For example, analytical epidemiological studies suggested that the bacterium *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* may contribute to arteriosclerosis, resulting in heart attacks. Some scientists have hypothesized that antibacterial drugs could prevent heart attacks by killing the causative agent. To test this hypothesis, the scientists administered either the antimicrobial drug azithromycin or a medicinally inactive placebo to 7700 patients, all of whom had a history of heart disease and were infected with *C. pneumoniae.* The researchers observed no significant difference in the number of heart attacks suffered by patients in the two groups over a two-year period. Thus, an experimental epidemiological study disproved a hypothesis suggested by an analytical epidemiological analysis.

Clinical Case Study: *Legionella* in the Produce Aisle illustrates the work of epidemiologists.

Hospital Epidemiology: Nosocomial Infections

Learning Outcomes

14.26 Explain how nosocomial infections differ from other infections.

14.27 Describe the factors that influence the development of nosocomial infections.

14.28 Describe three types of nosocomial infections and how they may be prevented.

Of special concern to epidemiologists and health care workers are nosocomial (nos-ō-kō´mē-ăl) infections and nosocomial diseases. **Nosocomial infections** are infections acquired by patients or health care workers while they are in health care facilities, including hospitals, dental offices, nursing homes, and doctors' waiting rooms. The CDC estimates that about 10% of American patients acquire a nosocomial infection each year. **Nosocomial diseases**—diseases acquired in a health care setting—increase the duration and cost of medical care and result in some 90,000 deaths annually in the United States. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Nosocomial Infections: Overview***

Types of Nosocomial Infections

When most people think of nosocomial infections, what likely comes to mind are **exogenous nosocomial infections** (eks-oj´ĕ-nŭs), which are caused by pathogens acquired from the health care environment. After all, hospitals are filled with sick people shedding pathogens from every type of portal of exit. However, we have seen that members of the normal microbiota can become opportunistic pathogens as a result of hospitalization or medical treatments such as chemotherapy. Such opportunists cause **endogenous nosocomial infections** (en-doj´ĕ-nŭs); that is, they arise from normal microbiota within the patient that become pathogenic because of factors within the health care setting.

Iatrogenic infections (ī-at-rō-jen´ik; literally meaning "doctor-induced" infections) are a subset of nosocomial infections that ironically are the direct result of modern medical procedures such as the use of catheters, invasive diagnostic procedures, and surgery.

Superinfections may result from the use of antimicrobial drugs that, by inhibiting some resident microbiota, allow others to thrive in the absence of competition. For instance, long-term antimicrobial therapy to inhibit a bacterial infection may allow *Clostridium difficile* (di-fi´sēl), a transient microbe of the colon, to grow excessively and cause a painful condition called

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

LEGIONELLA IN THE PRODUCE AISLE

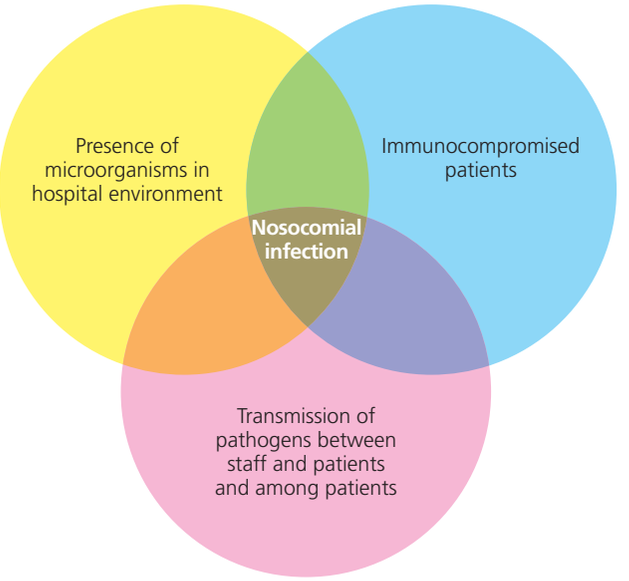
The Lousiana state health department has received reports of 33 cases of Legionnaires' disease in the town of Bogalusa (population 16,000). Legionnaires' disease, or legionellosis, is a potentially fatal respiratory disease caused by the growth of a bacterium, *Legionella pneumophila*, in the lungs of patients. The bacterium enters humans via the respiratory portal in aerosols produced by cooling towers, air conditioners, whirlpool baths, showers, humidifiers, and respiratory therapy equipment.

Epidemiologists begin trying to ascertain the source of Bogalusa's Legionnaires' disease outbreak by interviewing the victims and their relatives to develop complete histories and to identify areas of commonality among the victims that were lacking among nonvictims. Victims include a range of ages, occupations, hobbies, religions, and types and locations of dwellings. Although no significant differences are identified among the lifestyles, ages, or smoking habits of victims and nonvictims, one curious fact is discovered: all the victims did their grocery shopping at the same store. However, healthy individuals also shopped at that store.

The air-conditioning system of the grocery store proves to be free of *Legionella,* but the vegetable misting machine does not. The strain of *Legionella* isolated from the misting machine is identical to the strain recovered from the victims' lungs.

1. Would this outbreak be classified as endemic, epidemic, or pandemic?
2. Is this a descriptive, analytical, or experimental epidemiological study?
3. Knowing the epidemiology and causative agent of Legionnaires' disease, what questions would you ask of the victims or of their surviving relatives?
4. What, as an epidemiologist, would you examine at the store?
5. How did the victims become contaminated? Why didn't everyone who bought vegetables at the store get legionellosis? What could the owners of the store do to limit or prevent future infections?

Reference: Adapted from *MMWR* 39:108–109. 1990.



▲ **Figure 14.20 The interplay of factors that result in nosocomial infections.** Although nosocomial infections can result from any one of the factors shown, most nosocomial infections are the product of the interaction of all three factors.

pseudomembranous colitis. Such superinfections are not limited to health care settings.

Nosocomial infections most often occur in the urinary, respiratory, cardiovascular, and integumentary (skin) systems, though surgical wounds can become infected and result in nosocomial infections in any part of the body.

Factors Influencing Nosocomial Infections

Nosocomial infections arise from the interaction of several factors in the health care environment, which include the following **(Figure 14.20)**:

- Exposure to numerous pathogens present in the health care setting, including many that are resistant to antimicrobial agents
- The weakened immune systems of patients who are ill, making them more susceptible to opportunistic pathogens
- Transmission of pathogens among patients and health care workers—from staff and visitors, to patients, and even from one patient to another via activities of staff members (including invasive procedures and other iatrogenic factors)

Control of Nosocomial Infections

Aggressive control measures can noticeably reduce the incidence of nosocomial infections. These include disinfection; medical asepsis, including good housekeeping, hand washing, bathing, sanitary handling of food, proper hygiene, and precautionary measures to avoid the spread of pathogens among patients; surgical asepsis and sterile procedures, including thorough cleansing of the surgical field, use of sterile instruments, and use of sterile gloves, gowns, caps, and masks; isolation of particularly contagious or susceptible patients; and establishment of

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

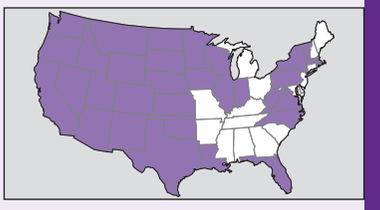
HANTAVIRUS PULMONARY SYNDROME

The deer mouse, *Peromyscus maniculatus*.

Doli was excited. Her Navajo basketball team had won the divisional championship for 1993, and she was high point (the high scorer) for the championship game. The thrill of the moment made her forget the argument with her parents earlier in the week about sweeping out the storage shed. They were champions, and life was good.

The next morning, Doli woke with deep muscle pain that she attributed to the exertions of the game. By noon she had a headache, nausea, and the chill associated with a fever. "The flu," her mother concluded, and sent Doli to bed with acetaminophen and plenty of fluids. Over the next few days, Doli's lungs began to congest; she struggled to breathe, and her heart raced. Doli was drowning in her own bodily fluid.

Desperately worried, Doli's parents drove her 60 miles to the Navajo medical center, where bewildered doctors provided respiratory and cardiac care while searching for answers. They discovered three patients in the surrounding counties with the same signs and symptoms; all had died. Doli's prognosis was the same: She was comatose.



Her blood platelet level had dropped precipitously. Excessive proteins were in her blood. Her kidneys' function was deteriorating. A week after her classmates had cheered their team's victory, they gathered to mourn their friend.

As heartbreaking as the deaths in this epidemic were, the cases advanced our medical understanding and put to use the power of modern epidemiology and genetic analysis. Within eight days of the initial case, epidemiologists had isolated a suspect virus, sequenced its genes, identified it as a previously unknown species of *Hantavirus*, and shown that the virus was the cause of the condition, which is now known as *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome (HPS). Scientists also showed that HPS is acquired when victims inhale the virus in aerosolized deer-mouse urine or feces stirred up by sweeping, a finding that enabled other residents of the region to take preventive measures. (For more about *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome, see p. 747.)

a nosocomial infection control committee charged with surveillance of nosocomial diseases and review of control measures.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Nosocomial Infections: Prevention***

Numerous studies have shown that the single most effective way to reduce nosocomial infections is effective hand washing by all medical and support staff. In one study, deaths from nosocomial infections were reduced by over 50% when hospital personnel followed strict guidelines about washing their hands frequently.

Epidemiology and Public Health

Learning Outcome

14.29 List three ways public health agencies work to limit the spread of diseases.

As you have likely realized by now, epidemiologists gather information concerning the spread of disease within populations so that they can take steps to reduce the number of cases and improve the health of individuals within a community. In the following sections we will examine how the various public health agencies share epidemiological data, facilitate the interruption of disease transmission, and educate the public about public health issues. Public health agencies also implement immunization programs (immunization is discussed in Chapter 17).

The Sharing of Data Among Public Health Organizations

Numerous agencies at the local, state, national, and global levels work together with the entire spectrum of health care personnel to promote public health. By submitting reports on incidence and prevalence of disease to public officials, physicians can subsequently learn of current disease trends. Additionally, public health agencies often provide physicians with laboratory and diagnostic assistance.

City and county health departments report data on disease incidence to state agencies. Because state laws govern disease reporting, state agencies play a vital role in epidemiological studies. States accumulate data similar to those in the *MMWR* and assist local health departments and medical practitioners with diagnostic testing for diseases such as rabies and Lyme disease.

Data collected by the states are forwarded to the CDC, which is but one branch of the U.S. Public Health Service, the national public health agency. In addition to epidemiological studies, the CDC and other branches of the Public Health Service conduct research in disease etiology and prevention, make recommendations concerning immunization schedules, and work with public health organizations of other countries.

The World Health Organization (WHO) coordinates efforts to improve public health throughout the world, particularly in poorer countries, and the WHO has undertaken ambitious projects to eradicate such diseases as polio, measles, and mumps. Some other current campaigns involve AIDS education, malaria control, and childhood immunization programs in poor countries.

The Role of Public Health Agencies in Interrupting Disease Transmission

As we have seen, pathogens can be transmitted in air, food, and water as well as by vectors and via fomites. Public health agencies work to limit disease transmission by a number of methods:

- Enforce standards of cleanliness in water and food supplies.
- Work to reduce the number of disease vectors and reservoirs.
- Establish and enforce immunization schedules (see Figure 17.3).
- Locate and prophylactically treat individuals exposed to contagious pathogens.
- Establish isolation and quarantine measures to control the spread of pathogens.

A water supply that is **potable** (fit to drink) is vital to good health. Organisms that cause dysentery, cholera, and typhoid fever are just some of the pathogens that can be spread in water contaminated by sewage. Filtration and chlorination processes are used to reduce the number of pathogens in water supplies. Local, state, and national agencies work to ensure that water supplies remain clean and healthful by monitoring both sewage treatment facilities and the water supply.

Food can harbor infective stages of parasitic worms, protozoa, bacteria, and viruses. National and state health officials ensure the safety of the food supply by enforcing standards in the use of canning, pasteurization, irradiation, and chemical preservatives and by insisting that food preparers and handlers wash their hands and use sanitized utensils. The U.S. Department of Agriculture also provides for the inspection of meats for the presence of pathogens, such as *E. coli* and tapeworms.

Milk is an especially rich food, and the same nutrients that nourish us also facilitate the growth of many microorganisms. In the past, contaminated milk has been responsible for epidemics of tuberculosis, brucellosis, typhoid fever, scarlet fever, and diphtheria. Today, public health agencies require the pasteurization of milk, and as a result disease transmission via milk has been practically eliminated in the United States.

Individuals should assume responsibility for their own health by washing their hands before and during food preparation, using disinfectants on kitchen surfaces, and using proper refrigeration and freezing procedures. It is also important to thoroughly cook all meats.

Public health officials also work to control vectors, especially mosquitoes and rodents, by eliminating breeding grounds, such as stagnant pools of water and garbage dumps. Insecticides have been used with some success to control insects.

Public Health Education

Diseases that are transmitted sexually or through the air are particularly difficult for public health officials to control. In these cases, individuals must take responsibility for their own health, and health departments can only educate the public to make healthy choices.

Colds and flu remain the most common diseases in the United States because of the ubiquity of the viral pathogens and their mode of transmission in aerosols and via fomites. Health departments encourage afflicted people to remain at home, use disposable tissues to reduce the spread of viruses, and avoid crowds of coughing, sneezing people. As we have discussed, hand washing is also important in preventing the introduction of cold and flu viruses onto the conjunctiva.

We as a society are faced with several epidemics of sexually transmitted diseases. Syphilis, gonorrhea, genital warts, and sexually transmitted AIDS are completely preventable if the chain of transmission is interrupted by abstinence or mutually faithful monogamy. Their incidence can be reduced but not eliminated by the use of condoms. Based on the premise that "an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure," public health agencies expend considerable effort in public campaigns to educate people to make good choices—those that can result in healthier individuals and improved health for the public at large.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Symbiotic Relationships Between Microbes and Their Hosts (pp. 406–409)

1. Microbes live with their hosts in **symbiotic** relationships, including **mutualism,** in which both members benefit; **parasitism,** in which a **parasite** benefits while the **host** is harmed; and more rarely **commensalism,** in which one member benefits while the other is relatively unaffected. Any parasite that causes disease is called a pathogen.
2. Organisms called **normal microbiota** live in and on the body. Some of these microbes are resident, whereas others are transient.
3. **Opportunistic pathogens** cause disease when the immune system is suppressed, when normal **microbial antagonism (competition)** is affected by certain changes in the body, or when a member of the normal microbiota is introduced into an area of the body unusual for that microbe.

Reservoirs of Infectious Diseases of Humans (pp. 410–411)

1. Living and nonliving continuous sources of infectious disease are called **reservoirs of infection.** Animal reservoirs harbor agents of **zoonoses,** which are diseases of animals that may be spread to humans via direct contact with the animal or its waste products or via an arthropod. Humans may be asymptomatic **carriers.**
2. **Nonliving reservoirs** of infection include soil, water, and inanimate objects.

The Invasion and Establishment of Microbes in Hosts: Infection (pp. 411–414)

1. Microbial **contamination** refers to the mere presence of microbes in or on the body or object. Microbial contaminants include harmless resident and transient members of the microbiota as well as pathogens, which after a successful invasion cause an **infection.**
2. **Portals of entry** of pathogens into the body include skin, mucous membranes, and the placenta. These portals may be bypassed via the **parenteral route,** by which microbes are directly deposited into deeper tissues.
3. Pathogens attach to cells—a process called **adhesion**—via a variety of structures or attachment proteins called **adhesion factors.** Some bacteria and viruses lose the ability to make adhesion factors called adhesins and thereby become **avirulent.**
4. Some bacteria interact to produce a sticky web of cells and polysaccharides called a **biofilm** that adheres to a surface.

The Nature of Infectious Disease (pp. 414–421)

1. **Disease,** also known as **morbidity,** is a condition sufficiently adverse to interfere with normal functioning of the body.
2. **Symptoms** are subjectively felt by a patient, whereas an outside observer can observe **signs.** A **syndrome** is a group of symptoms and signs that collectively characterizes a particular abnormal condition.
3. **Asymptomatic,** or **subclinical,** infections may go unnoticed because of the absence of symptoms, even though clinical tests might reveal signs of disease.
4. **Etiology** is the study of the cause of a disease.
5. Nineteenth-century microbiologists proposed the **germ theory of disease,** and Robert Koch developed a series of essential conditions called **Koch's postulates** to prove the cause of infectious diseases. Certain circumstances can make the use of these postulates difficult or even impossible.
6. **Pathogenicity** is a microorganism's ability to cause disease; **virulence** is a measure of pathogenicity. **Virulence factors,** such as adhesion factors, extracellular enzymes, toxins, and antiphagocytic factors, affect the relative ability of a pathogen to infect and cause disease.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Virulence Factors: Hiding from Host Defenses, Inactivating Host Defenses, Penetrating Host Tissues; Phagocytosis: Microbes That Evade It*
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Some Virulence Factors*
7. **Toxemia** is the presence in the blood of poisons called **toxins**. **Exotoxins** are secreted by pathogens into their environment. **Endotoxin,** also known as **lipid A,** is released from the cell wall of dead and dying Gram-negative bacteria and can have fatal effects.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Virulence Factors: Exotoxins, Endotoxins*
8. **Antitoxins** are antibodies the host forms against toxins.
9. The **disease process**—the stages of infectious diseases—typically consists of the **incubation period, prodromal period, illness, decline,** and **convalescence.**

The Movement of Pathogens Out of Hosts: Portals of Exit (pp. 421–422)

1. **Portals of exit,** such as the nose, mouth, and urethra, allow pathogens to leave the body and are of interest in studying the spread of disease.

Modes of Infectious Disease Transmission (pp. 422–424)

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Epidemiology: Transmission of Disease*

1. **Direct contact transmission** of infectious diseases involves person-to-person spread by body contact. When pathogens are transmitted via inanimate objects (called **fomites**), it is called **indirect contact transmission.**
2. **Droplet transmission** (a third type of contact transmission) occurs when pathogens travel less than 1 meter in droplets of mucus to a new host as a result of speaking, coughing, or sneezing.
3. **Vehicle transmission** involves **airborne, waterborne,** and **foodborne** transmission. **Aerosols** are clouds of water droplets that, travel more than 1 meter in airborne transmission. **Fecal-oral infection** can result from sewage-contaminated drinking water or

from ingesting fecal contaminants. **Bodily fluid transmission** is the spread of pathogens via blood, urine, saliva, or other fluids.

4. **Vectors** transmit pathogens between hosts. **Biological vectors** are animals, usually biting arthropods, that serve as both host and vector of pathogens. **Mechanical vectors** are not hosts to the pathogens they carry.

Classification of Infectious Diseases (pp. 424–425)

1. There are various ways in which infectious disease may be grouped and studied. When grouped by time course and severity, disease may be described as **acute, subacute, chronic,** or **latent.**
2. When an infectious disease comes either directly or indirectly from another host, it is considered a **communicable disease**. If a communicable disease is easily transmitted from a reservoir or patient, it is called a **contagious disease. Noncommunicable diseases** arise either from outside of hosts or from normal microbiota.

Epidemiology of Infectious Diseases (pp. 425–433)

1. **Epidemiology** is the study of where and when diseases occur and of how they are transmitted within populations.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Epidemiology: Overview*
2. Epidemiologists track the **incidence** (number of new cases) and **prevalence** (total number of cases) of a disease and classify disease outbreaks as **endemic** (usually present), **sporadic** (occasional), **epidemic** (more cases than usual), or **pandemic** (epidemic on more than one continent).
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Epidemiology: Occurrence of Disease*
3. **Descriptive epidemiology** is the careful recording of data concerning a disease; it often includes detection of the **index case**—the first case of the disease in a given area or population. **Analytical epidemiology** seeks to determine the probable cause of a disease. **Experimental epidemiology** involves testing a hypothesis resulting from analytical studies.
4. **Nosocomial infections** and **nosocomial diseases** are acquired by patients or workers in health care facilities. They may be **exogenous** (acquired from the health care environment), **endogenous** (derived from normal microbiota that become opportunistic while in the hospital setting), or **iatrogenic** (induced by treatment or medical procedures).
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Nosocomial Infections: Overview*
5. Health care workers can help protect their patients and themselves from exposure to pathogens by hand washing and other aseptic and disinfecting techniques.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Nosocomial Infections: Prevention*
6. Public health organizations, such as the World Health Organization (WHO), use epidemiological data to promulgate rules and standards for clean, **potable** water and safe food, to prevent disease by controlling vectors and animal reservoirs, and to educate people to make healthy choices concerning the prevention of disease.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. In which type of symbiosis do both members benefit from their interaction?
   a. mutualism
   b. parasitism
   c. commensalism
   d. pathogenesis
2. An axenic environment is one that _____.
   a. exists in the human mouth
   b. contains only one species
   c. exists in the human colon
   d. both a and c
3. Which of the following is *false* concerning microbial contaminants?
   a. Contaminants may become opportunistic pathogens.
   b. Most microbial contaminants will eventually cause harm.
   c. Contaminants may be a part of the transient microbiota.
   d. Contaminants may be introduced by a mosquito bite.
4. The most frequent portal of entry for pathogens is _____.
   a. the respiratory tract
   b. the skin
   c. the conjunctiva
   d. a cut or wound
5. The process by which microorganisms attach themselves to cells is _____.
   a. infection
   b. contamination
   c. disease
   d. adhesion
6. Which of the following is the correct sequence of events in infectious diseases?
   a. incubation, prodromal period, illness, decline, convalescence
   b. incubation, decline, prodromal period, illness, convalescence
   c. prodromal period, incubation, illness, decline, convalescence
   d. convalescence, prodromal period, incubation, illness, decline
7. Which of the following are most likely to cause disease?
   a. opportunistic pathogens in a weakened host
   b. pathogens lacking the enzyme kinase
   c. pathogens lacking the enzyme collagenase
   d. highly virulent organisms
8. The nature of bacterial capsules _____.
   a. causes widespread blood clotting
   b. allows phagocytes to readily engulf these bacteria
   c. affects the virulence of these bacteria
   d. has no effect on the virulence of bacteria
9. When pathogenic bacterial cells lose the ability to make adhesins, they typically _____.
   a. become avirulent
   b. produce endotoxin
   c. absorb endotoxin
   d. increase in virulence

10. A disease in which a pathogen remains inactive for a long period of time before becoming active is termed a(n) _____.
    a. subacute disease
    b. acute disease
    c. chronic disease
    d. latent disease

11. Which of the following statements is the best definition of a pandemic disease?
    a. It normally occurs in a given geographic area.
    b. It is a disease that occurs more frequently than usual for a geographical area or group of people.
    c. It occurs infrequently at no predictable time scattered over a large area or population.
    d. It is an epidemic that occurs on more than one continent at the same time.

12. Which of the following types of epidemiologists is most like a detective?
    a. a descriptive epidemiologist
    b. an analytical epidemiologist
    c. an experimental epidemiologist
    d. a reservoir epidemiologist

13. Consider the following case. An animal was infected with a virus. A mosquito bit the animal, was contaminated with the virus, and proceeded to bite and infect a person. Which was the vector?
    a. animal
    b. virus
    c. mosquito
    d. person

14. A patient contracted athlete's foot after long-term use of a medication. His physician explained that the malady was directly related to the medication. Such infections are termed _____.
    a. nosocomial infections
    b. exogenous infections
    c. iatrogenic infections
    d. endogenous infections

15. Which of the following phrases describes a contagious disease?
    a. a disease arising from fomites
    b. a disease that is easily passed from host to host in aerosols
    c. a disease that arises from opportunistic, normal microbiota
    d. both a and b

Fill in the Blanks

1. A microbe that causes disease is called a _____.
2. Infections that may go unnoticed because of the absence of symptoms are called _____ infections.
3. The study of the cause of a disease is _____.
4. The study of where and when diseases occur and how they are transmitted within populations is _____.
5. Diseases that are naturally spread from their usual animal hosts to humans are called _____.
6. Nonliving reservoirs of disease, such as a toothbrush, drinking glass, and needle, are called _____.
7. _____ infections are those acquired by patients or staff while in health care facilities.
8. The total number of cases of a disease in a given area is its _____.
9. An animal that carries a pathogen and also serves as host for the pathogen is a _____ vector.
10. Endotoxin, also known as _____, is part of the outer (wall) membrane of Gram-negative bacteria.

Visualize It!

1. Each map below shows the locations (dots) of cases of a disease that normally occurs in the Western Hemisphere. Label each map with a correct epidemiological description of the disease's occurrence.

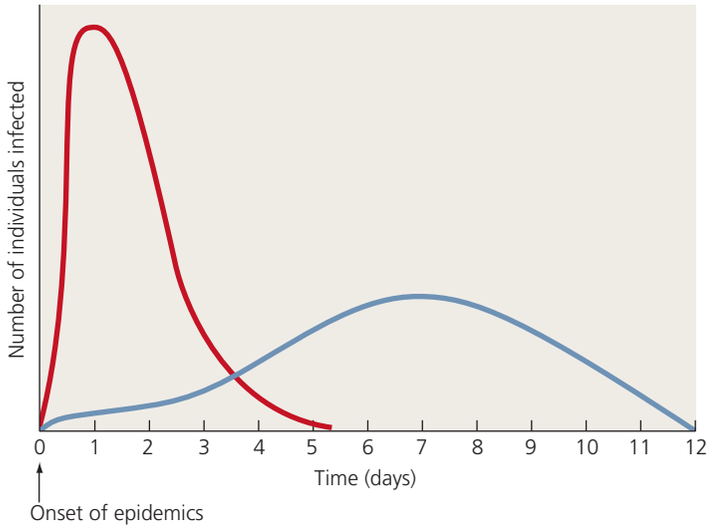
a. _____ b. _____ c. _____

Short Answer

1. List three types of symbiotic relationships and give an example of each.
2. List three conditions that create opportunities for pathogens to become harmful in a human.
3. List three portals through which pathogens enter the body.
4. List Koch's four postulates and describe situations in which not all may be applicable.
5. List in the correct sequence the five stages of infectious diseases.
6. Describe three modes of disease transmission.
7. Describe the parenteral route of infection.
8. In general, contrast transient microbiota with resident microbiota.
9. Contrast the terms *infection* and *morbidity.*
10. Contrast iatrogenic and nosocomial diseases.

Critical Thinking

1. Explain why Ellen H., a menopausal woman, may have developed gingivitis from normal microbiota.
2. Will P. died of *E. coli* infection after an intestinal puncture. Explain why this microbe, which normally lives in the colon, could kill this patient.
3. Examine the graph of the red epidemic and the blue epidemic. Neither red disease nor blue disease is treatable. A person with either disease is ill for only one day and recovers fully. Both epidemics began at the same time. Which epidemic affected more people during the first three days? What could explain the short time course for the red epidemic? Why was the blue epidemic longer lasting?



4. A 27-year-old female came to her doctor's office with a widespread rash, fever, malaise, and severe muscle pain. The symptoms had begun with a mild headache three days previously. She reported being bitten by a tick one week prior to that.

   The doctor correctly diagnosed Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF) and prescribed tetracycline. The rash and other signs and symptoms disappeared in a couple of days, but she continued on her antibiotic therapy for two weeks.

   Draw a graph showing the course of disease and the relative numbers of pathogens over time. Label the stages of the disease.
5. Over 30 children younger than three years of age developed gastroenteritis after visiting a local water park. These cases represented 44% of the park visitors in this age-group on the day in question. No older individuals were affected. The causative agent was determined to be a member of the bacterial genus *Shigella.* The disease resulted from oral transmission to the children.

   Based only on the information given, can you classify this outbreak as an epidemic? Why or why not? If you were an epidemiologist, how would you go about determining which pools in the water park were contaminated? What factors might account for the fact that no older children or adults developed disease? What steps could the park operators take to reduce the chance of future outbreaks of gastroenteritis?
6. A lichen is an intimate relationship between a fungus and a photosynthetic microbe in which the fungus delivers water and minerals to its partners while the partner delivers sugar to the fungus. Describe the relationship between the photosynthetic member of the lichen and the fungus in terms of the type of symbiosis.
7. Using the data in the **Clinical Case Study: *Legionella* in the Produce Aisle** on p. 431, calculate the incidence of Legionnaires' disease in Bogalusa, Louisiana.

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes disease transmission. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Airborne
Arthropods
Biological
Body
Contact transmission
Direct contact
Droplet transmission
Fomites
Foodborne
Indirect contact
Mechanical
Mosquito
Sneezing
Tick
Vector transmission
Vehicle transmission
Waterborne

15 Innate Immunity

Each day the equivalent of a room full of air enters your respiratory tract through your nose and mouth. With that air come dust, smoke, bacteria, viruses, fungi, pollen, soot, fuzz, sand, and more. Acting as a first line of defense, your respiratory mucous membrane uses nose hairs, ciliated epithelium, and mucus to cleanse the inhaled air of pathogens and certain harmful pollutants. Each day you swallow and subsequently digest about a liter of nasal mucus, along with the trapped pathogens and pollutants it contains. Still more mucus clumps around microbes and pollutants to form masses that may dry out or remain slimy, depending on how rapidly you're breathing and the humidity of the air. Yellowish or greenish mucus contains a large population of trapped bacteria, their waste products, and dead or dying defensive white blood cells.

Mucus is just one example of the body's general defenses against pathogens. The skin and certain protective cells, chemicals, and processes within the body are other ways the body limits early stages of infection by microbes. In this chapter we will focus on each of these aspects of the body's defenses.

Cilia, such as these lining the upper respiratory tract, move mucus and contaminants out of the body.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

A pathogen causes a disease only if it can (1) gain access, either by penetrating the surface of the skin or by entering through some other portal of entry; (2) attach itself to host cells; and (3) evade the body's defense mechanisms long enough to produce harmful changes. In this chapter we will examine the structures, processes, and chemicals that respond in a general way to protect the body from all types of pathogens.

An Overview of the Body's Defenses

Learning Outcomes

15.1 List and briefly describe the three lines of defense in the human body.

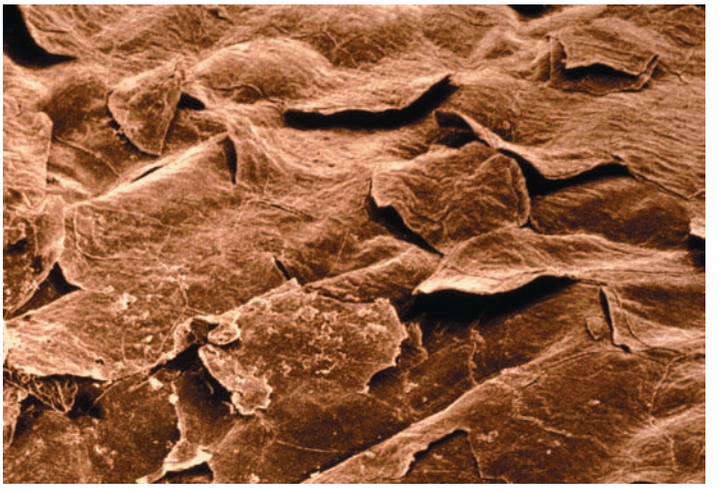
15.2 Explain the phrases *species resistance* and *innate immunity.*

Because the cells and certain basic physiological processes of humans are incompatible with those of most plant and animal pathogens, humans have what is termed **species resistance** to these pathogens. In many cases the chemical receptors that these pathogens require for attachment to a host cell do not exist in the human body; in other cases the pH or temperature of the human body is incompatible with the conditions under which these pathogens can survive. Thus, for example, all humans have species resistance both to tobacco mosaic virus and to the virus that causes feline immunodeficiency syndrome in members of the cat family.

Nevertheless, we are confronted every day with pathogens that can cause disease in humans. Bacteria, viruses, fungi, protozoa, and parasitic worms come in contact with your body in the air you breathe, in the water you drink, in the food you eat, and during the contacts you have with other people. Your body must defend itself from these potential pathogens and in some cases from members of your normal microbiota, which may become opportunistic pathogens.

It is convenient to cluster the structures, cells, and chemicals that act against pathogens into three main lines of defense, each of which overlaps and reinforces the other two. The first line of defense is composed chiefly of external physical barriers to pathogens, especially the skin and mucous membranes. The second line of defense is internal and is composed of protective cells, bloodborne chemicals, and processes that inactivate or kill invaders. Together, the first two lines of defense are called **innate immunity** because they are present at birth prior to contact with infectious agents or their products. Innate immunity is rapid and works against a wide variety of pathogens, including parasitic worms, protozoa, fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

By contrast, *lymphocytes,* which are the cells of the third line of defense, respond against unique species and strains of pathogens and alter the body's defenses such that they act more effectively upon subsequent infection with the same specific strain. For this reason, scientists call the third line of defense **adaptive immunity** (see Chapter 16). Now we turn our attention to the two lines of innate immunity. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Host Defenses: Overview***



▲ **Figure 15.1 A scanning electron micrograph of the surface of human skin.** Epidermal cells are dead and dry and slough off, providing an effective barrier to most microorganisms.

The Body's First Line of Defense

The body's initial line of defense is made up of structures, chemicals, and processes that work together to prevent pathogens from entering the body in the first place. Here we discuss the main components of the first line of defense: the skin and the mucous membranes of the respiratory, digestive, urinary, and reproductive systems. These structures provide a formidable barrier to the entrance of microorganisms. When these barriers are pierced, broken, or otherwise damaged, they become portals of entry for pathogens. In this section we examine aspects of the first line of defense, including the role of the normal microbiota.

The Role of Skin in Innate Immunity

Learning Outcome

15.3 Identify the physical and chemical aspects of skin that enable it to prevent the entrance of pathogens.

The skin—the organ of the body with the greatest surface area—is composed of two major layers: an outer **epidermis** and a deeper **dermis,** which contains hair follicles, glands, and nerve endings (see Figure 14.4). Both the physical structure and the chemical components of skin enable it to act as an effective defense.

The epidermis is composed of multiple layers of tightly packed cells. It constitutes a physical barrier to most bacteria, fungi, and viruses. Very few pathogens can penetrate the layers of epidermal cells unless the skin has been burned, broken, or cut.

The deepest cells of the epidermis continually divide, pushing their daughter cells toward the surface. As the daughter cells are pushed toward the surface, they flatten and die and are eventually shed in flakes **(Figure 15.1)**. Microorganisms that attach to the skin's surface are sloughed off with the flakes of

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

WHAT HAPPENS TO ALL THAT SKIN?

Dust mite. SEM 100 µm

Your body sheds tens of thousands of skin flakes every time you walk or move, and you shed at only a slightly lower rate when you stand still. That comes to about 10 billion skin cells per day, or 250 grams (about half a pound) of skin every year! What happens to all that skin?

Much of household dust is skin that you and your housemates have shed as you go about your lives. The skin flakes fall to the rug and upholstery, where they become food for microscopic mites that live sedentary and harmless lives waiting patiently for meals to rain down on them from above. They dwell not only in the rug but also in your mattress and pillow and even in the hair follicles of your eyebrows, benefiting you by catching skin cells cascading down your forehead before they can irritate your eyes.

By the way, house dust also contains mite feces and mite skeletons, which can trigger allergies. So after reading this chapter, you just might want to clean your carpet.

dead cells. **Beneficial Microbes: What Happens to All That Skin?** describes the fate of lost epidermal cells.

The epidermis also contains phagocytic cells called **dendritic**[1] **cells**. The slender, fingerlike processes of dendritic cells extend among the surrounding cells, forming an almost continuous network to intercept invaders. Dendritic cells both phagocytize pathogens nonspecifically and play a role in adaptive immunity (see Chapter 16).

The combination of the barrier function of the epidermis, its continual replacement, and the presence of phagocytic dendritic cells provides significant nonspecific defense against colonization and infection by pathogens.

The dermis also defends nonspecifically. It contains tough fibers of a protein called collagen. These give the skin strength and pliability to prevent jabs and scrapes from penetrating the dermis and introducing microorganisms. Blood vessels in the dermis deliver defensive cells and chemicals, which will be discussed shortly.

In addition to its physical structure, the skin has a number of chemical substances that nonspecifically defend against pathogens. Dermal cells secrete antimicrobial peptides, and sweat glands secrete perspiration, which contains salt, antimicrobial peptides, and lysozyme. Salt draws water osmotically from invading cells, inhibiting their growth and killing them.

Antimicrobial peptides (sometimes called *defensins*) are positively charged chains of 20 to 50 amino acids that act against microorganisms. Sweat glands secrete a class of antimicrobial peptides called *dermcidins.* Dermcidins are broad-spectrum antimicrobials that are active against many Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria and fungi. As expected of a peptide active on the surface of the skin, dermcidins are insensitive to low pH and salt. The exact mechanism of dermcidin action is not known.

Lysozyme (lī´sō-zīm) is an enzyme that destroys the cell walls of bacteria by cleaving the bonds between the sugar subunits of the walls. Bacteria without cell walls are more susceptible to osmotic shock and digestion by other enzymes within phagocytes (discussed later in the chapter as part of the second line of defense).

The skin also contains sebaceous (oil) glands, which secrete **sebum** (sē´bŭm), an oily substance that not only helps keep the skin pliable and less sensitive to breaking or tearing but also contains fatty acids that lower the pH of the skin's surface to about pH 5, which is inhibitory to many bacteria.

Although salt, defensins, lysozyme, and acidity make the surface of the skin an inhospitable environment for most microorganisms, some bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus epidermidis* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs ep-i-der-mid´is), find the skin a suitable environment for growth and reproduction. Bacteria are particularly abundant in crevices around hairs and in the ducts of glands; usually they are nonpathogenic.

In summary, the skin is a complex barrier that limits access by microbes.

CRITICAL THINKING

Some strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* produce exfoliative toxin, a chemical that causes portions of the entire outer layer of the skin to be sloughed off in a disease called scalded skin syndrome. Given that cells of the outer layer are going to fall off anyway, why is this disease dangerous?

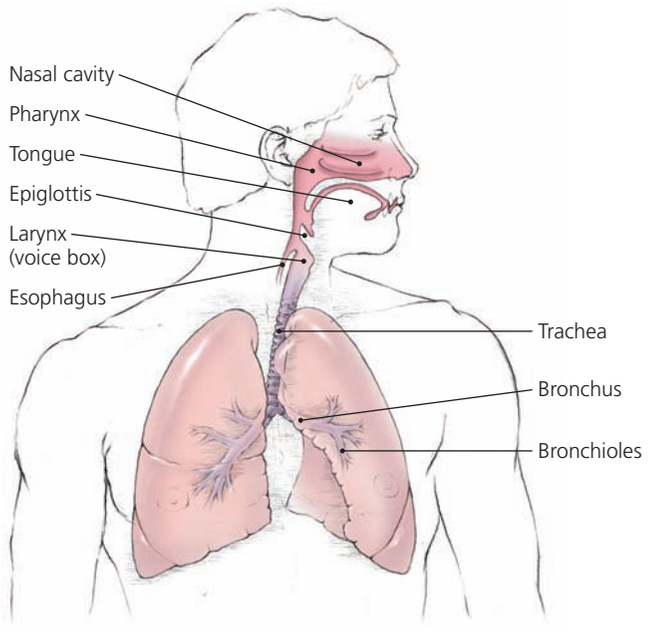
The Role of Mucous Membranes in Innate Immunity

Learning Outcomes

15.4 Identify the locations of the body's mucous membranes.
15.5 Explain how mucous membranes protect the body both physically and chemically.

Mucus-secreting (mucous) membranes, a second part of the first line of defense, cover all body cavities that are open to the outside

[1] From Greek *dendron*, meaning "tree," referring to their branched appearance.



▲ Figure 15.2 The structure of the respiratory system, which is lined with a mucous membrane. The epithelium of the trachea contains mucus-secreting goblet cells and ciliated cells whose cilia propel the mucus (and the microbes trapped within it) up to the larynx for removal. *What is the function of stem cells within the respiratory epithelium?*

Figure 15.2 *Stem cells in the respiratory epithelium undergo cytokinesis to form both ciliated cells and goblet cells to replace those lost during normal shedding.*

TABLE 15.1 The First Line of Defense: A Comparison of the Skin and Mucous Membranes

	Skin	Mucous Membrane
Number of cell layers	Many	One to a few
Cells tightly packed?	Yes	Yes
Cells dead or alive?	Outer layers: dead; inner layers: alive	Alive
Mucus present?	No	Yes
Relative water content	Dry	Moist
Defensins present?	Yes	With some
Lysozyme present?	Yes	With some
Sebum present?	Yes	No
Cilia present?	No	Trachea, uterine tubes
Constant shedding and replacement of cells?	Yes	Yes

environment. Thus, mucous membranes line the lumens[2] of the respiratory, urinary, digestive, and reproductive tracts. Like the skin, mucous membranes act nonspecifically to limit infection both physically and chemically.

Mucous membranes are moist and have two distinct layers: the *epithelium,* in which cells form a covering that is superficial (closest to the surface, in this case the lumen), and a deeper connective tissue layer that provides mechanical and nutritive support for the epithelium. Epithelial cells of mucous membranes are packed closely together, like those of the epidermis, but they form only a thin layer. Indeed, in some mucous membranes, the epithelium is only a single cell thick. Unlike surface epidermal cells, surface cells of mucous membranes are alive and play roles in the diffusion of nutrients and oxygen (in the digestive, respiratory, and female reproductive systems) and in the elimination of wastes (in the urinary, respiratory, and female reproductive systems).

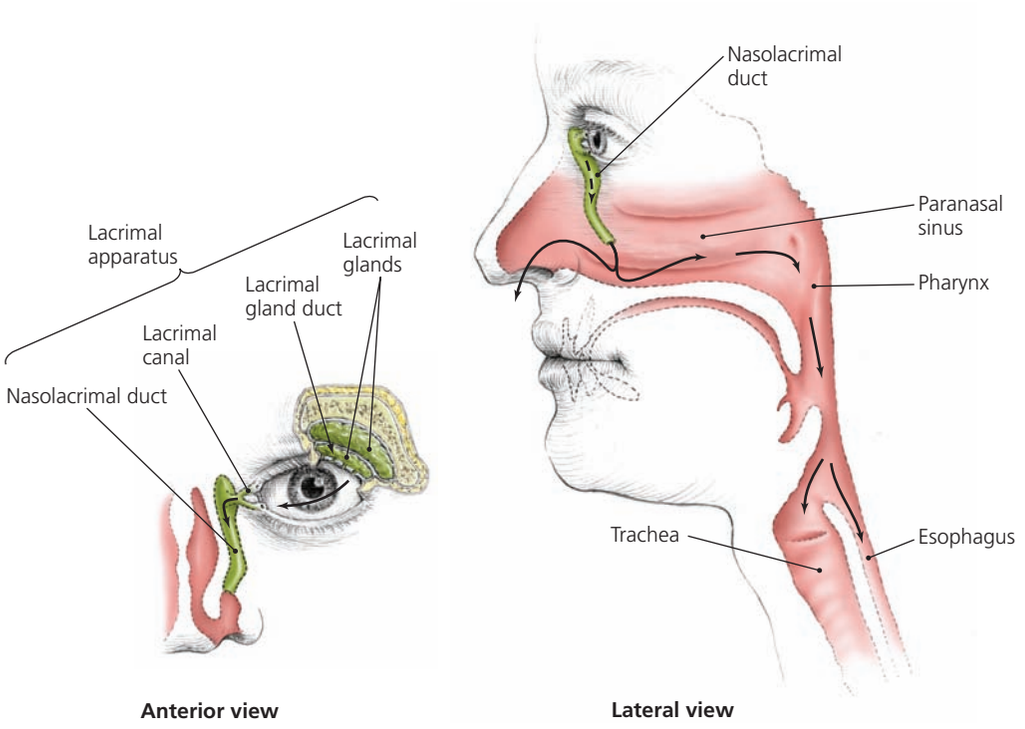
The thin epithelium on the surface of a mucous membrane provides a less efficient barrier to the entrance of pathogens than the multiple layers of dead cells found at the skin's surface. So how are microorganisms kept from invading through these thin mucous membranes? In some cases they are not, which is why some mucous membranes, especially those of the respiratory and reproductive systems, are common portals of entry for pathogens. Nevertheless, the epithelial cells of mucous membranes are tightly packed to prevent the entry of many pathogens, and the cells are continually shed and then replaced by **stem cells,** which are generative cells capable of dividing to form daughter cells of various types. One effect of mucousal shedding is that it carries attached microorganisms away.

Dendritic cells reside below the mucous epithelium to phagocytize invaders. These cells are also able to extend pseudopods between epithelial cells to "sample" the contents of the lumen, helping to prepare adaptive immune responses against particular pathogens that might breach the mucosal barrier (a subject covered more fully in Chapter 16).

In addition, the epithelia of some mucous membranes have still other means of removing pathogens. In the mucous membrane of the trachea, for example, the stem cells produce both *goblet cells,* which secrete an extremely sticky mucus that traps bacteria and other pathogens, and *ciliated columnar cells,* whose cilia propel the mucus and its trapped particles and pathogens up from the lungs **(Figure 15.2)**. The effect of the action of the cilia is often likened to that of an escalator. Mucus carried into the throat is coughed up and either swallowed or expelled. Because the poisons and tars in tobacco smoke damage cilia, the lungs of smokers are not properly cleared of mucus, so smokers may develop severe coughs as their respiratory tracts attempt to expel excess mucus from the lungs. Smokers also typically succumb to more respiratory pathogens because they are unable to effectively clear pathogens from their lungs.

In addition to these physical actions, mucous membranes produce chemicals that defend against pathogens. Nasal mucus contains lysozyme, which chemically destroys bacterial cell walls. Mucus also contains antimicrobial peptides (defensins). **Table 15.1** compares the physical and chemical actions of the skin and mucous membranes in the body's first line of defense.

[2] A lumen is a cavity or channel within any tubular structure or organ.



◀ Figure 15.3 The lacrimal apparatus. These structures (in green) function in the body's first line of defense by bathing the eye with tears. Arrows indicate the route tears take across the eye and into the throat. *Name an antimicrobial protein found in tears.*

Figure 15.3 *Tears contain lysozyme, an antimicrobial protein that acts against the peptidoglycan of bacterial cell walls.*

The Role of the Lacrimal Apparatus in Innate Immunity

Learning Outcome

15.6 Describe the lacrimal apparatus and the role of tears in combating infection.

The lacrimal apparatus is a group of structures that produce and drain away tears **(Figure 15.3)**. Lacrimal glands, located above and to the sides of the eyes, secrete tears into lacrimal gland ducts and onto the surface of the eyes. The tears either evaporate or drain into small lacrimal canals, which carry them into nasolacrimal ducts that empty into the nose. There, the tears join the nasal mucus and flow into the pharynx, where they are swallowed. The blinking action of eyelids spreads the tears and washes the surfaces of the eyes. Normally, evaporation and flow into the nose balance the flow of tears onto the eye. However, if the eyes are irritated, increased tear production floods the eyes, carrying the irritant away. In addition to their washing action, tears contain lysozyme, which destroys bacteria.

The Role of Normal Microbiota in Innate Immunity

Learning Outcome

15.7 Define *normal microbiota* and explain how they help provide protection against disease.

The skin and mucous membranes of the body are normally home to a variety of protozoa, fungi, bacteria, and viruses. These **normal microbiota** play a role in protecting the body by competing with potential pathogens in a variety of ways, a situation called **microbial antagonism.**

A variety of activities of the normal microbiota make it less likely that a pathogen can compete with them and produce disease. Microbiota consume nutrients, making them unavailable to pathogens. Additionally, normal microbiota can change the pH, creating an environment that is favorable for themselves but unfavorable to other microorganisms.

Further, the presence of microbiota stimulates the body's second line of defense (discussed shortly). Researchers have observed that animals raised in an *axenic*[3] (ā-zēn´ik) environment—that is, one free of all other organisms or viruses—are slower to defend themselves when exposed to a pathogen. Recent studies have shown that members of the normal microbiota in the intestines boost the body's production of antimicrobial substances.

Finally, the resident microbiota of the intestines improve overall health by providing several vitamins, including biotin and pantothenic acid (vitamin B_5), which are important in glucose metabolism; folic acid, which is essential for the production of the purine and pyrimidine bases of nucleic acids; and the precursor of vitamin K, which has an important role in blood clotting.

Other First-Line Defenses

Learning Outcome

15.8 Describe antimicrobial peptides as part of the body's defenses.

Besides the physical barrier of the skin and mucous membranes, there are other hindrances to microbial invasion. Among these are additional antimicrobial peptides and other processes and chemicals.

[3]From Greek *a*, meaning "no," and *xenos*, meaning "foreigner."

TABLE 15.2 Secretions and Activities That Contribute to the First Line of Defense

Secretion/Activity	Function
Digestive System	
Saliva	Washes microbes from teeth, gums, tongue, and palate; contains lysozyme, an antibacterial enzyme
Stomach acid	Digests and/or inhibits microorganisms
Gastroferritin	Sequesters iron being absorbed, making it unavailable for microbial use
Bile	Inhibitory to most microorganisms
Intestinal secretions	Digests and/or inhibits microorganisms
Peristalsis	Moves gastrointestinal (GI) contents through GI tract, constantly eliminating potential pathogens
Defecation	Eliminates microorganisms
Vomiting	Eliminates microorganisms
Urinary System	
Urine	Contains lysozyme; urine's acidity inhibits microorganisms; may wash microbes from ureters and urethra during urination
Reproductive System	
Vaginal secretions	Acidity inhibits microorganisms; contains iron-binding proteins that sequester iron, making it unavailable for microbial use
Menstrual flow	Cleanses uterus and vagina
Prostate secretion	Contains iron-binding proteins that sequester iron, making it unavailable for microbial use
Cardiovascular System	
Blood flow	Removes microorganisms from wounds
Coagulation	Prevents entrance of many pathogens
Transferrin	Binds iron for transport, making it unavailable for microbial use

Antimicrobial Peptides

As we saw in our examination of skin and mucous membranes, antimicrobial peptides (sometimes called defensins) act against microorganisms. Scientists have discovered hundreds of these antimicrobial peptides in organisms as diverse as silkworms, frogs, and humans. Besides being secreted onto the surface of the skin, antimicrobial peptides are found in mucous membranes and in neutrophils. These peptides act against a variety of potential pathogens, being triggered by sugar and protein molecules on the external surfaces of microbes. Some antimicrobial peptides act only against Gram-positive bacteria or Gram-negative bacteria, others act against both, and still others act against protozoa, enveloped viruses, or fungi.

Researchers have elucidated several ways in which antimicrobial peptides work. Some punch holes in the cytoplasmic membranes of the pathogens, and others interrupt internal signaling or enzymatic action. Some antimicrobial peptides are chemotactic factors that recruit leukocytes to the site.

Other Processes and Chemicals

Many other body organs contribute to the first line of defense by secreting chemicals with antimicrobial properties that are secondary to their prime function. For example, stomach acid is present primarily to aid digestion of proteins, but it also prevents the growth of many potential pathogens. Likewise, saliva contains lysozyme as well as a digestive enzyme; further, saliva physically washes microbes from the teeth. The contributions of these and other processes and chemicals to the first line of defense are listed in Table 15.2.

The Body's Second Line of Defense

Learning Outcome

15.9 Compare and contrast the body's first and second lines of defense against disease.

When pathogens succeed in penetrating the skin or mucous membranes, the body's second line of innate defense comes into play. Like the first line of defense, the second line operates against a wide variety of pathogens, from parasitic worms to viruses. But unlike the first line of defense, the second line includes no barriers; instead, it is composed of cells (especially phagocytes), antimicrobial chemicals (peptides, complement, interferons), and processes (inflammation, fever). Some cells and chemicals from the first line of defense play additional roles in the second line of defense. We will consider each component of the second line of defense in some detail shortly, but because many of them either are contained in or originate in the blood, we first consider the components of blood.

Defense Components of Blood

Learning Outcomes

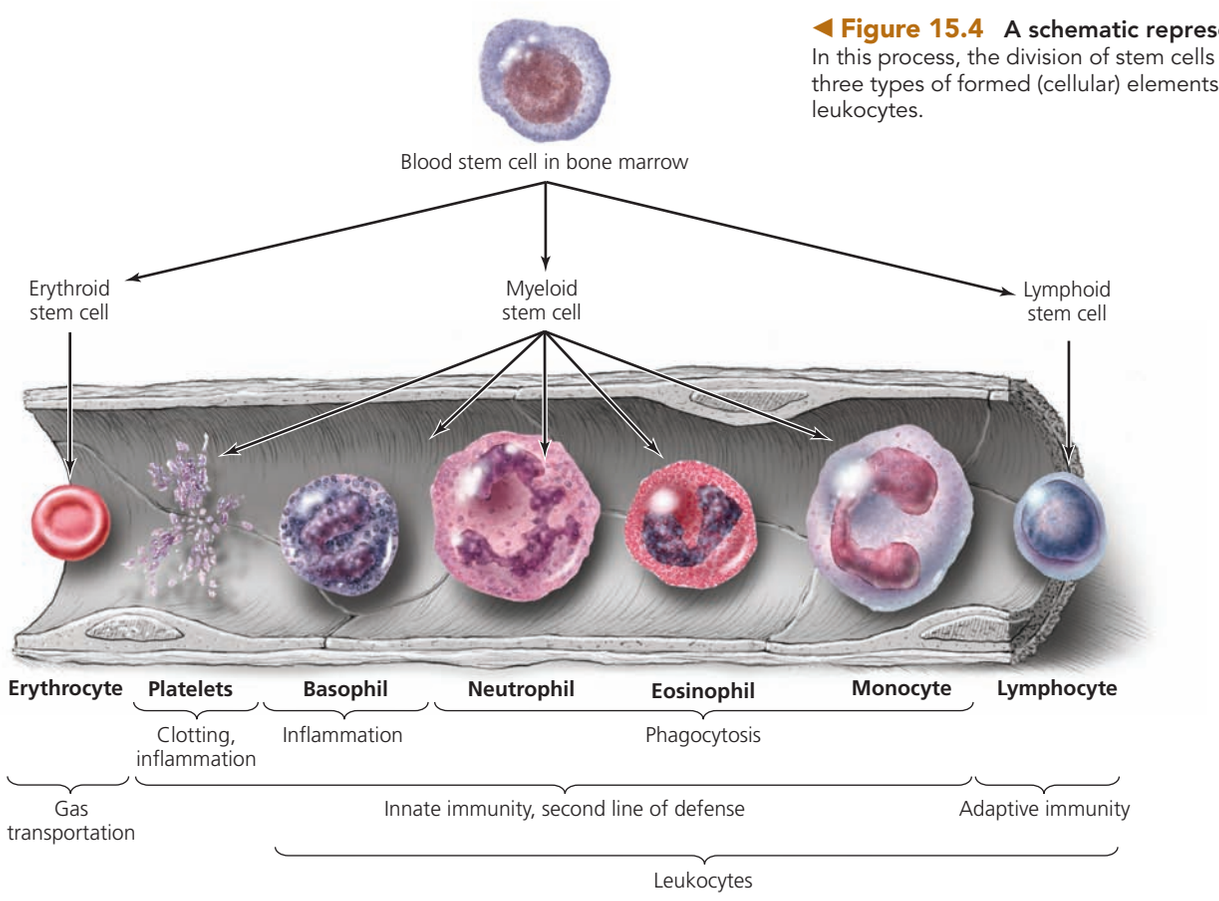
15.10 Discuss the components of blood and their functions in the body's defense.

15.11 Explain how macrophages are named.

Blood is a complex liquid tissue composed of cells and portions of cells within a fluid called *plasma.* We begin our discussion of the defense functions of blood by briefly considering plasma.

Plasma

Plasma is mostly water containing electrolytes (ions), dissolved gases, nutrients, and—most relevant to the body's defenses—a variety of proteins. Some plasma proteins are involved in inflammation (discussed later) and in blood clotting, a defense mechanism that reduces both blood loss and the risk of infection. When clotting factors have been removed from the plasma, as when blood clots, the remaining liquid is called *serum.*



◀ Figure 15.4 A schematic representation of hematopoiesis. In this process, the division of stem cells in the bone marrow produces three types of formed (cellular) elements: erythrocytes, platelets, and leukocytes.

Humans require iron for metabolism: it is a component of cytochromes of electron transport chains, functions as an enzyme cofactor, and is an essential part of hemoglobin—the oxygen-carrying protein of erythrocytes. Because iron is relatively insoluble, in humans it is transported in plasma to cells by a transport protein called *transferrin.* When transferrin-iron complexes reach cells with receptors for transferrin, the binding of the protein to the receptor stimulates the cell to take up the iron via endocytosis. Excess iron is stored in the liver bound to another protein called *ferritin.* Though the main function of iron-binding proteins is transporting and storing iron, they play a secondary, defensive role—sequestering iron so that it is unavailable to microorganisms.

Some bacteria, such as *Staphylococcus aureus* (o´rē-ŭs), respond to a shortage of iron by secreting their own iron-binding proteins called *siderophores.* Because siderophores have a greater affinity for iron than does transferrin, bacteria that produce siderophores can in effect steal iron from the body. In response, the body produces *lactoferrin,* which retakes the iron from the bacteria by its even greater affinity. Thus, the body and the pathogens engage in a kind of chemical "tug-of-war" for the possession of iron.

Some pathogens bypass this contest altogether. For example, *S. aureus* and related pathogens can secrete the protein *hemolysin,* which punches holes in the cytoplasmic membranes of red blood cells, releasing hemoglobin. Other bacterial proteins then bind hemoglobin to the bacterial membrane and strip it of its iron. *Neisseria meningitidis* (nī-se´rē-ă me-nin-ji´ti-dis), a pathogen that causes often fatal meningitis, produces receptors for transferrin and plucks iron from the bloodstream as it flows by.

Another group of plasma proteins, called *complement proteins,* is an important part of the second line of defense and is discussed shortly. Still other plasma proteins, called *antibodies* or *immunoglobulins,* are a part of adaptive immunity, the body's third line of defense.

Defensive Blood Cells: Leukocytes

Cells and cell fragments suspended in the plasma are called **formed elements.** In a process called *hematopoiesis,*[4] blood stem cells located principally in the bone marrow within the hollow cavities of the large bones produce three types of formed elements: **erythrocytes**[5] (ĕ-rith´rō-sīts), **platelets**[6] (plāt´letz), and **leukocytes**[7] (loo´kō-sīts) **(Figure 15.4)**. Erythrocytes, the most numerous of the formed elements, carry oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood. Platelets, which are pieces of large cells

[4]From Greek *haima,* meaning "blood," and *poiein,* meaning "to make."
[5]From Greek *erythro,* meaning "red," and *cytos,* meaning "cell."
[6]French for "small plates." Platelets are also called thrombocytes, from Greek *thrombos,* meaning "lump," and *cytos,* meaning "cell," though they are technically not cells but instead pieces of cells.
[7]From Greek *leuko,* meaning "white," and *cytos,* meaning "cell."

called *megakaryocytes* that have split into small portions of cytoplasm surrounded by cytoplasmic membranes, are involved in blood clotting. Leukocytes, the formed elements that are directly involved in defending the body against invaders, are commonly called white blood cells because they form a whitish layer when the components of blood are separated within a test tube.

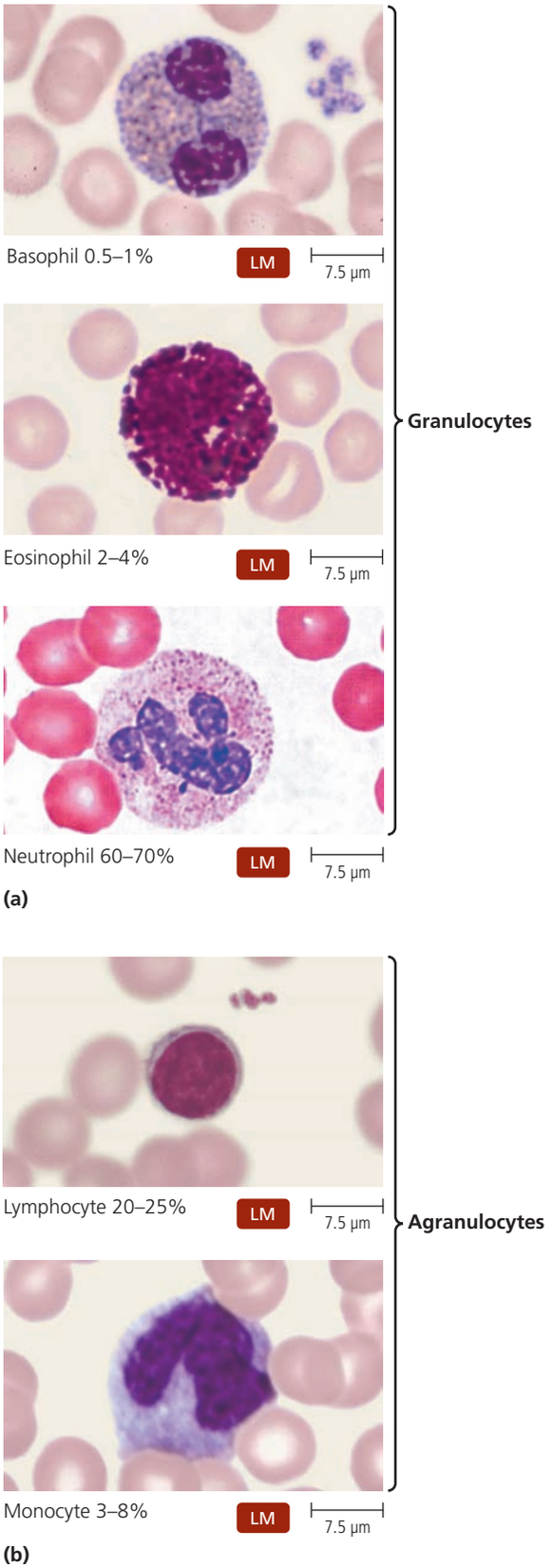
Based on their appearance in stained blood smears when viewed under the microscope, leukocytes are divided into two groups: *granulocytes* (gran´ū-lō-sītz) and *agranulocytes* (ā-gran´ū-lō-sītz) **(Figure 15.5)**.

Granulocytes have large granules in their cytoplasm that stain different colors depending on the type of granulocyte and the dyes used: **basophils** (bā´sō-fils) stain blue with the basic dye methylene blue, **eosinophils** (ē-ō-sin´ō-fils) stain red to orange with the acidic dye eosin, and **neutrophils** (noo´trō-fils), also known as *polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs),* stain lilac with a mixture of acidic and basic dyes. Both neutrophils and eosinophils phagocytize pathogens, and both can exit the blood to attack invading microbes in the tissues by squeezing between the cells lining capillaries (the smallest blood vessels). This process is called **diapedesis**[8] (dī´ă-pĕ-dē´sis). As we will see later in the chapter, eosinophils are also involved in defending the body against parasitic worms and are present in large number during many allergic reactions, though their exact function in allergies is disputed. Basophils can also leave the blood, though they are not phagocytic; instead, they release inflammatory chemicals, an aspect of the second line of defense that will be discussed shortly.

The cytoplasm of agranulocytes appears uniform when viewed via light microscopy, though granules do become visible with an electron microscope. Agranulocytes are of two types: **lymphocytes** (lim´fō-sītz), which are the smallest leukocytes and have nuclei that nearly fill the cells, and **monocytes** (mon´ō-sītz), which are large agranulocytes with slightly lobed nuclei. Although most lymphocytes are involved in adaptive immunity, *natural killer (NK) lymphocytes* function in innate defense and thus are discussed later in this chapter. Monocytes leave the blood and mature into **macrophages** (mak´rō-fāj-ĕz), which are phagocytic cells of the second line of defense. Their initial function is to devour foreign objects, including bacteria, fungi, spores, and dust as well as dead body cells.

Macrophages are named for their location in the body. *Wandering macrophages* leave the blood via diapedesis and perform their scavenger function while traveling throughout the body, including extracellular spaces. Other macrophages are fixed and do not wander. These include *alveolar* (al-vē´ō-lăr) *macrophages*[9] of the lungs and *microglia* (mī-krog´lē-ă) of the central nervous system. Fixed macrophages generally phagocytize within specific organs, such as the heart chambers, blood vessels, and lymphatic vessels. (The lymphatic system is discussed in Chapter 16.)

A special group of phagocytes are not white blood cells. These are the dendritic cells, mentioned previously, which are



▲ **Figure 15.5 Leukocytes as seen in stained blood smears.** **(a)** Granulocytes: basophil, eosinophil, and neutrophil. **(b)** Agranulocytes: lymphocyte and monocyte. The numbers are the normal percentages of each cell type among all leukocytes.

[8]From Greek *dia*, meaning "through," and *pedan*, meaning "to leap."
[9]Alveoli are small pockets at the end of respiratory passages where oxygen and carbon dioxide exchange occurs between the lungs and the blood.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

EVALUATING AN ABNORMAL CBC

CBC Profile

Name: Brown, Roger
Acct#: 04797747
Reg: 11/27/12

Age/Sex: 61/M
Status: ADM IN

Attend Dr: Kevin, Larry

SPEC #: 0303:AS:H00102T
COLL: 12 / 03 / 12-0620
RECD: 12 / 03 / 12-0647

STATUS: COMP
SUBM DR: Kevin, Larry

ENTERED: 12 / 03 / 12-0002
ORDERED: CBC W/ MAN DIFF

OTHER DR: NONE, PER PT
REQ #: 01797367

Test	Result	Normal range
CBC		
WBC (white blood cells)	0.8	4.8–10.8 K/mm3
RBC (red blood cells)	3.09	4.20–5.40 M/mm3
HGB (hemoglobin)	9.6	12.0–16.0 g/dL
HCT (hematocrit)	28.2	37.0–47.0 %
MCV	91.3	81.0–99.0 fL
MCH	31.1	27.0–31.0 pg
MCHC	34.1	32.0–36.0 g/dl
RDW	17.1	11.5–14.5 %
PLT (platelets)	21	150–450 K/mm3
MPV	8.7	7.4–10.4 fL
DIFF		
CELLS COUNTED	100	#CELLS
SEGS	39	
BAND	4	
LYMPH (lymphocytes)	41	
MONO (monocytes)	15	
EOS (eosinophils)	1	
NEUT# (# neutrophils)	0.3	1.9–8.0 K/mm3
LYMPH#	0.3	0.9–5.2 K/mm3
MONO#	0.1	0.1–1.2 K/mm3
EOS#	0.0	0–0.8 K/mm3
PLATELET EST	DECREASED	

Roger Brown, an African American cancer patient, received a chemotherapeutic agent as a treatment for his disease. The drug used to destroy the cancer also produced an undesirable condition known as bone marrow depression. The complete blood count (CBC) profile shown here indicates that this patient is in trouble. Review the lab values and answer the following questions.

1. Note that the platelet count is very low. How does this affect the patient? Discuss measures to protect him.
2. Note that the white blood cell count is abnormally low. With the second line of defense impaired, how should the first line of defense be protected?

multibranched cells plentiful throughout the body, particularly in the skin and mucous membranes. Dendritic cells await microbial invaders, phagocytize them, and inform cells of adaptive immunity that there is a microbial invasion.

Lab Analysis of Leukocytes Analysis of blood for diagnostic purposes, including white blood cell counts, is one task of medical lab technologists. The proportions of leukocytes, as determined in a **differential white blood cell count,** can serve as a sign of disease. For example, an increase in the percentage of eosinophils can indicate allergies or infection with parasitic worms; bacterial diseases typically result in an increase in the number of leukocytes and an increase in the percentage of neutrophils, whereas viral infections are associated with an increase in the relative number of lymphocytes. The ranges for the normal values for each kind of white blood cell, expressed as a percentage of the total leukocyte population, are shown in Figure 15.5.

CRITICAL THINKING

A medical laboratory technologist argues that granulocytes are a natural group, whereas agranulocytes are an artificial grouping. Based on Figure 15.4, do you agree or disagree with the lab tech? What evidence can you cite to justify your conclusion?

Now that we have some background concerning the defensive properties of plasma components and leukocytes, we turn our attention to the details of the body's second line of defense: phagocytosis, nonphagocytic killing by leukocytes, nonspecific chemical defenses, inflammation, and fever.

Phagocytosis

Learning Outcome

15.12 Name and describe the six stages of phagocytosis.

Phagocytosis, which means "eating by a cell," is a way that some microbes obtain nutrients (see Chapter 3), but **phagocytes** (fag´ō-sītz)—phagocytic defense cells of the body—use phagocytosis to rid the body of pathogens that have evaded the body's first line of defense. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Phagocytosis: Overview***

Phagocytosis is a complex process that is still not completely understood. For the purposes of our discussion, we will divide the continuous process of phagocytosis into six steps: chemotaxis, adherence, ingestion, maturation, killing, and elimination **(Figure 15.6)**.

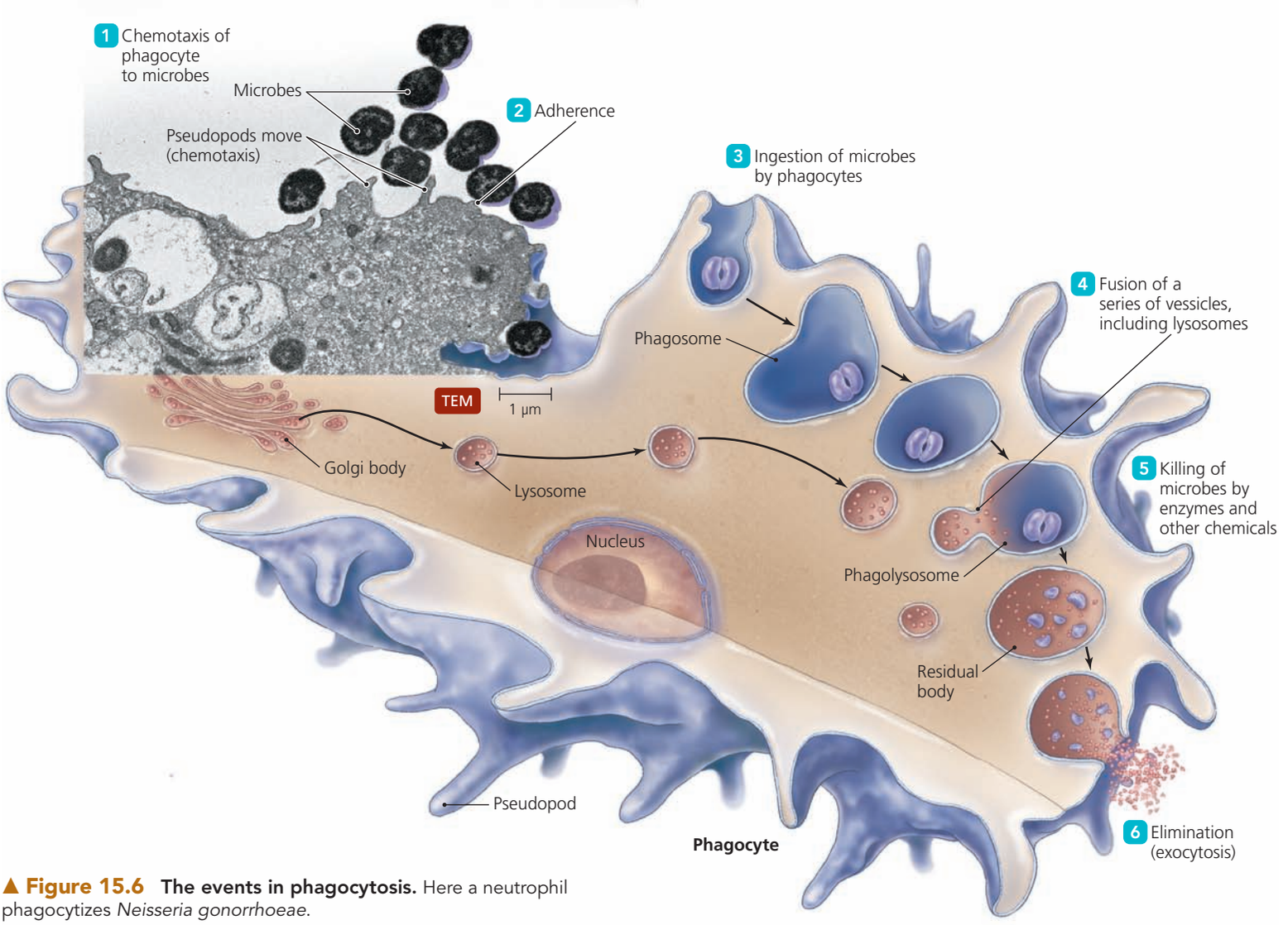
Chemotaxis

Chemotaxis is movement of a cell either toward a chemical stimulus (positive chemotaxis) or away from a chemical stimulus (negative chemotaxis). In the case of phagocytes, positive chemotaxis involves the use of *pseudopods* (soo´-dō-podz) to crawl toward microorganisms at the site of an infection 1. Chemicals that attract phagocytic leukocytes include microbial components and secretions, components of damaged tissues and white blood cells, and **chemotactic factors** (kem-ō-tak´tik). Chemotactic factors include defensins, peptides derived from complement (discussed later in this chapter), and chemicals called **chemokines** (kē´mō-kīnz), which are released by leukocytes already at a site of infection.

Adherence

After arriving at the site of an infection, phagocytes attach to microorganisms through the binding of complementary chemicals, such as glycoproteins, found on the membranes of cells 2.This process is called **adherence.**

Some bacteria have virulence factors, such as slippery capsules that hinder adherence of phagocytes. Such bacteria are



▲ **Figure 15.6 The events in phagocytosis.** Here a neutrophil phagocytizes *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.

more readily phagocytized if they are pushed up against a surface, such as connective tissue, the wall of a blood vessel, or a blood clot.

All pathogens are more readily phagocytized if they are first covered with antimicrobial proteins, such as complement proteins (discussed later) or the specific antimicrobial proteins called *antibodies* (discussed in Chapter 16). This coating process is called **opsonization**[10] (op´sŭ-nī-zā´shun), and the proteins are called **opsonins.** Generally, opsonins increase the number and kinds of binding sites on a microbe's surface.

Ingestion

After phagocytes adhere to pathogens, they extend *pseudopods* to surround the microbe 3. The encompassed microbe is internalized as the pseudopods fuse to form a food vesicle called a **phagosome.**

[10]From Greek *opsonein*, meaning "to supply food," and *izein*, meaning "to cause"; thus, loosely, "to prepare for dinner."

Phagosome Maturation and Microbial Killing

A series of membranous organelles within the phagocyte fuse with newly formed phagosomes to form digestive vesicles. One organelle, the lysosome, adds digestive chemicals to the maturing phagosome, which is now called a **phagolysosome** (fag-ŏ-lī´sō-sōm) 4. Phagolysosomes contain antimicrobial substances, such as highly reactive, toxic forms of oxygen, in an environment with a pH of about 5.5 due to the active pumping of H^+ from the cytosol. These factors, along with 30 or so different enzymes, such as lipases, proteases, nucleases, and a variety of others, destroy the engulfed microbes 5.

Most pathogens are dead within 30 minutes, though some bacteria contain virulence factors (such as M protein or waxy cell walls) that resist a lysosome's action. In the end, a phagolysosome is known as a *residual body.*

Elimination

Digestion is not always complete, and phagocytes eliminate remnants of microorganisms via *exocytosis,* a process that is essentially the reverse of ingestion 6. Some microbial components

are specially processed and remain attached to the cytoplasmic membrane of some phagocytes, particularly dendritic cells, a phenomenon that plays a role in the adaptive immune response (discussed in Chapter 16). ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Phagocytosis: Mechanism*

How is it that phagocytes destroy invading pathogens and leave the body's own healthy cells unharmed? At least two mechanisms are responsible for this:

- Some phagocytes have cytoplasmic membrane receptors for various microbial surface components lacking on the body's cells, such as cell wall components or flagellar proteins.
- Opsonins such as complement and antibody provide a signal to the phagocyte.

Nonphagocytic Killing

Learning Outcome

15.13 Describe the role of eosinophils, NK cells, and neutrophils in nonphagocytic killing of microorganisms and parasitic helminths.

Phagocytosis involves killing a pathogen once it has been ingested—that is, once it is inside the phagocyte. In contrast, eosinophils, natural killer cells, and neutrophils can accomplish killing without phagocytosis.

Killing by Eosinophils

As discussed earlier, eosinophils can phagocytize; however, this is not their usual mode of attack. Instead, eosinophils secrete antimicrobial chemicals. They attack parasitic helminths (worms) by attaching to the worm's surface, where they secrete extracellular protein toxins onto the surface of the parasite. These weaken the helminth and may even kill it. **Eosinophilia** (ē-ō-sin´ō-fil-e-ă), an abnormally high number of eosinophils in the blood, is often indicative of helminth infestation or allergies.

Besides their attacks against parasitic helminths, eosinophils have recently been discovered to use a never-before-seen tactic against bacteria: Lipopolysaccharide from Gram-negative bacterial cell walls triggers eosinophils to rapidly eject mitochondrial DNA, which combines with previously extruded eosinophil proteins to form a physical barrier. This extracellular structure binds to and then kills the bacteria. This is the first evidence that DNA can have antimicrobial activity, and scientists are investigating exactly how mitochondrial DNA acts as an antibacterial agent.

Killing by Natural Killer Lymphocytes

Natural killer lymphocytes (or **NK cells**) are another type of defensive leukocyte of innate immunity that works by secreting toxins onto the surfaces of virally infected cells and neoplasms (tumors). NK cells identify and spare normal body cells because the latter express membrane proteins similar to those on the NK cells. (The ability to distinguish one's own healthy cells from diseased cells and pathogens is discussed more fully in Chapter 16.)

Killing by Neutrophils

Neutrophils do not always devour pathogens; they can destroy nearby microbial cells without phagocytosis. They can do this in at least two ways. Enzymes in a neutrophil's cytoplasmic membrane add electrons to oxygen, creating highly reactive superoxide radical O_2^- and hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2). Another enzyme converts these into hypochlorite, the active antimicrobial ingredient in household bleach. These chemicals can kill nearby invaders. Yet another enzyme in the membrane makes nitric oxide, which is a powerful inducer of inflammation.

Scientists have recently discovered another way that neutrophils disable microorganisms in their vicinity. They generate webs of extracellular fibers nicknamed *NETs,* for *neutrophil extracellular traps.* Neutrophils synthesize NETs via a unique form of cellular suicide involving the disintegration of their nuclei. As the nuclear envelope breaks down, DNA and histones are released into the cytosol, and the mixing of nuclear components with cytoplasmic granule membranes and proteins forms NET fibers. Reactive oxygen species—superoxide and peroxide—then kill the neutrophil. The NETs are released from the dying cell as its cytoplasmic membrane ruptures. NETs trap both Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria, immobilizing them and sequestering them along with antimicrobial peptides, which kill the bacteria. Thus, even in their dying moments, neutrophils fulfill their role as defensive cells.

Nonspecific Chemical Defenses Against Pathogens

Learning Outcomes

15.14 Define *Toll-like receptors* and describe their action in relation to pathogen-associated molecular patterns.

15.15 Describe the location and functions of NOD proteins.

15.16 Explain the roles of interferons in innate immunity.

15.17 Describe the complement system, including its three activation pathways.

Chemical defenses augment phagocytosis in the second line of defense. The chemicals assist phagocytic cells either by enhancing other features of innate immunity or by directly attacking pathogens. Defensive chemicals include lysozyme and defensins (examined previously) as well as Toll-like receptors, NOD proteins, interferons, and complement.

Toll-Like Receptors (TLRs)

Toll-like receptors (TLRs)[11] are integral proteins of the cytoplasmic membranes of phagocytic cells. TLRs act as an early warning system, triggering your body's responses to a number of molecules that are shared by various bacterial or viral pathogens and are absent in humans. These microbial molecules include peptidoglycan, lipopolysaccharide, flagellin,

[11] *Toll* is a German word meaning "fantastic," originally referring to a gene of fruit flies, mutations of which cause the flies to look bizarre. Toll-like proteins are similar to fruit fly Toll in their amino acid sequence though not in their function.

TABLE 15.3 Toll-Like Receptors and Their Natural Microbial Binding Partners

TLR	PAMP (Microbial Molecule)
In Cytoplasmic Membrane	
TLR1	Bacterial lipopeptides and certain proteins in multicellular parasites
TLR2	Bacterial lipopeptides, lipoteichoic acid (found in Gram-positive cell wall), and cell wall of yeast
TLR4	Lipid A (found in outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria)
TLR5	Flagellin (bacterial flagella)
TLR6	Bacterial lipopeptides, lipoteichoic acid (found in Gram-positive cell wall), and cell wall of yeast
In Phagosome Membrane	
TLR3	Double-stranded RNA (found only in viruses)
TLR7	Single-stranded viral RNA
TLR8	Single-stranded viral RNA
TLR9	Unmethylated cytosine-guanine pairs of viral and bacterial DNA
Unknown Location	
TLR10	Unknown

unmethylated pairs of cytosine and guanine nucleotides from bacteria and viruses, double-stranded RNA, and single-stranded viral RNA. Such microbial components are collectively referred to as **pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs).**

Ten TLRs are known for humans. TLRs 1, 2, 4, 5, and 6 are found spanning cytoplasmic membranes, while TLRs 3, 7, 8, and 9 span phagosome membranes. Some TLRs act alone; others act in pairs to recognize a particular PAMP. For example, TLR3 binds to double-stranded RNA from viruses such as West Nile virus, and TLR2 and TLR6 in conjunction bind to lipoteichoic acid—a component of Gram-positive cell walls. Table 15.3 summarizes the PAMPs and the membrane locations of the 10 known TLRs of humans.

Binding of a PAMP to a Toll-like receptor initiates a number of defensive responses, including apoptosis (cell suicide) of an infected cell, secretion of inflammatory mediators or interferons (both discussed shortly), or production of chemical stimulants of adaptive immune responses (discussed in Chapter 16). If TLRs fail, much of immune response collapses, leaving the body open to attack by myriad pathogens.

Scientists are actively seeking ways to stimulate TLRs so as to enhance the body's immune response to pathogens and immunizations. In contrast, methods to inhibit TLRs may provide us with ways to counter inflammatory disorders and some hyperimmune responses.

NOD Proteins

NOD[12] proteins are another set of receptors for microbial molecules, such as PAMPs, but NOD proteins are located inside a cell rather than as part of a cell's cytoplasmic membrane. Scientists have studied NOD proteins that bind to components of Gram-negative bacteria's cell walls and RNA of viruses, such as those that cause AIDS, hepatitis C, and mononucleosis. NOD proteins trigger inflammation, apoptosis, and other innate immune responses against bacterial pathogens, though researchers are still elucidating their exact method of action. Mutations in NOD genes are associated with several inflammatory bowel diseases, including Crohn's disease.

Interferons

So far in this chapter we have focused primarily on how the body defends itself against bacteria and eukaryotes. Now we consider how chemicals in the second line of defense act against viral pathogens.

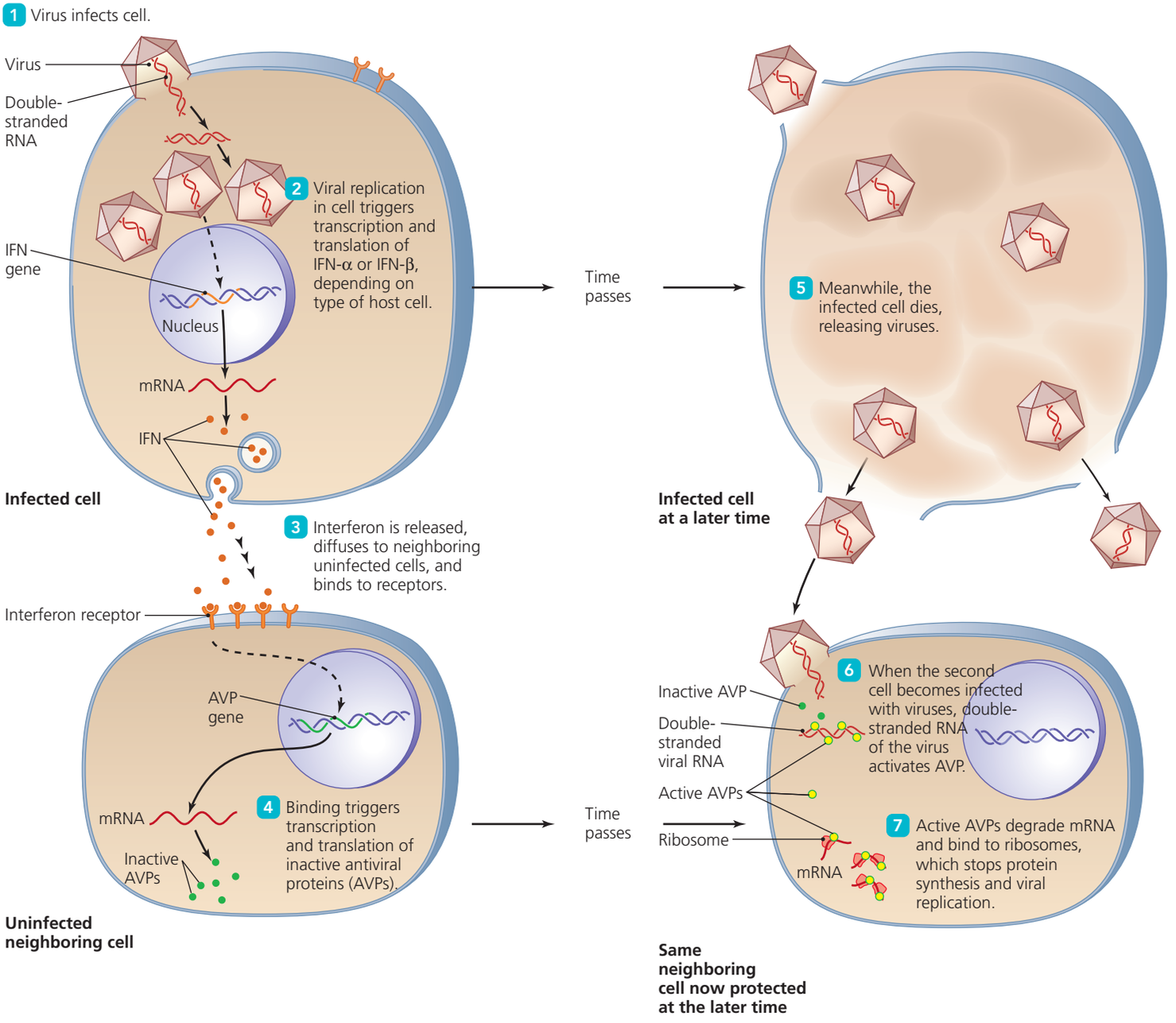
Viruses use a host's metabolic machinery to produce new viruses. For this reason, it is often difficult to interfere with virus replication without also producing deleterious effects on the host. **Interferons** (in-ter-fēr´onz) are protein molecules released by host cells to nonspecifically inhibit the spread of viral infections. Their lack of specificity means that interferons produced against one viral invader protect somewhat against infection by other types of viruses as well. However, interferons also cause malaise, muscle aches, chills, headache, and fever, which are typically associated with viral infections.

Different cell types produce one of two basic types of interferon when stimulated by viral nucleic acid binding to certain Toll-like receptors (TLR3, TLR7, or TLR8). Interferons within any given type share certain physical and chemical features, though they are specific to the species that produces them. In general, type I interferons—also known as alpha and beta interferons—are present early in viral infections, whereas type II (gamma) interferon appears somewhat later in the course of infection. Because their actions are identical, we examine alpha and beta interferons together before discussing gamma interferon.

Type I (Alpha and Beta) Interferons Within hours after infection, virally infected monocytes, macrophages, and some lymphocytes secrete small amounts of **alpha interferon (IFN-α);** similarly, fibroblasts, which are undifferentiated cells in such connective tissues as cartilage, tendon, and bone, secrete small amounts of **beta interferon (IFN-β)** when infected by viruses. The structures of alpha and beta interferons are similar, and their actions are identical.

Interferons do not protect the cells that secrete them—these cells are already infected with viruses. Instead, interferons activate natural killer lymphocytes and trigger protective steps in neighboring uninfected cells. Alpha and beta interferons bind

[12]Nucleotide-oligomerization domains, referring to their ability to bind a region of a finite number (oligomer) of DNA nucleotides.

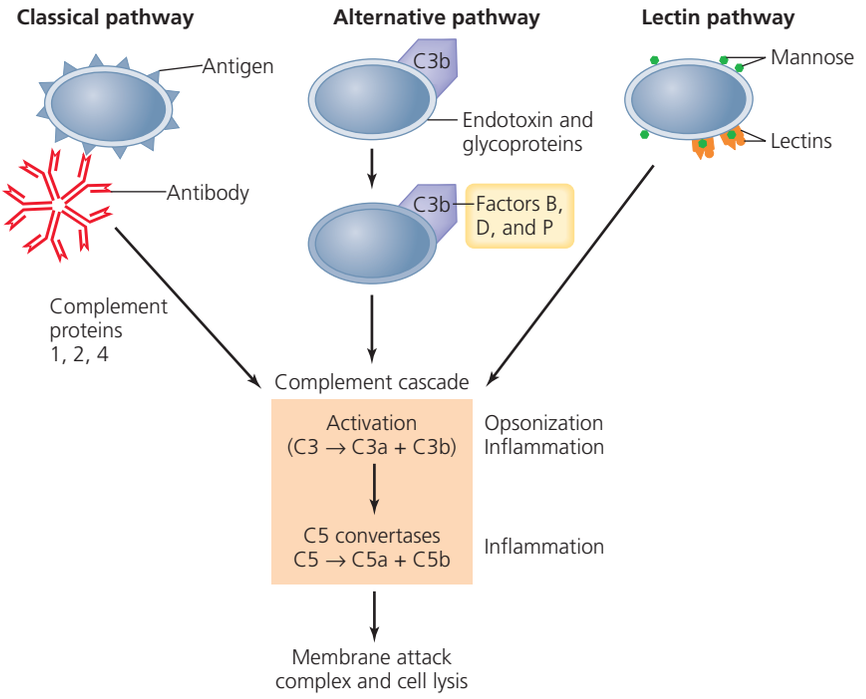


▲ **Figure 15.7** **The actions of alpha and beta interferons.**

to interferon receptors on the cytoplasmic membranes of neighboring cells. Such binding triggers the production of **antiviral proteins (AVPs),** which remain inactive within these cells until AVPs bind to viral nucleic acids, particularly double-stranded RNA, a molecule that is common among viruses but generally absent in eukaryotic cells **(Figure 15.7)**.

At least two types of antiviral proteins are produced: *oligoadenylate synthetase,* the action of which results in the destruction of mRNA, and *protein kinase,* which inhibits protein synthesis by ribosomes. Between them, these AVP enzymes essentially destroy the protein production system of the cell, preventing viruses from being replicated. Of course, cellular metabolism is also affected negatively. The antiviral state lasts three to four days, which may be long enough for a cell to rid itself of viruses but still a short enough period for the cell to survive without protein production.

Type II (Gamma) Interferon **Gamma interferon (IFN-γ)** is produced by activated T lymphocytes and by natural killer (NK) lymphocytes. Because T lymphocytes are usually activated as part of an adaptive immune response (see Chapter 16) days after an infection has occurred, gamma interferon appears later than either alpha or beta interferon. Its action in stimulating the activity of macrophages gives IFN-γ its other name: *macrophage*



▶ Figure 15.8 Pathways by which complement is activated. In the classical pathway, the binding of antibodies to antigens activates complement. In the alternative pathway, the binding of factors B, D, and P to endotoxin or glycoproteins in the cell walls of bacteria or fungi activates complement. The lectin pathway activates when lectins bind to microbial carbohydrates. *How did complement get that name?*

Figure 15.8 *Complement proteins add to—or complement—the action of antibodies.*

activation factor. Gamma interferon plays a small role in protecting the body against viral infections; mostly, IFN-γ regulates the immune system, as in its activation of phagocytic activity.

Table 15.4 summarizes various properties of interferons in humans.

As scientists learned more about the effects of interferons, many thought these proteins might be a universal weapon against viral infections, but viruses can interfere with the effects of interferon. Many variations of interferons in all three classes have been produced in laboratories using recombinant DNA technology in the hopes that antiviral therapy can be improved.

Complement

The **complement system**—or **complement** for short—is a set of serum proteins designated numerically according to the order of their discovery. These proteins initially act as opsonins and chemotactic factors and indirectly trigger inflammation and fever. The end result of full complement activation is lysis of foreign cells. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Complement: Overview***

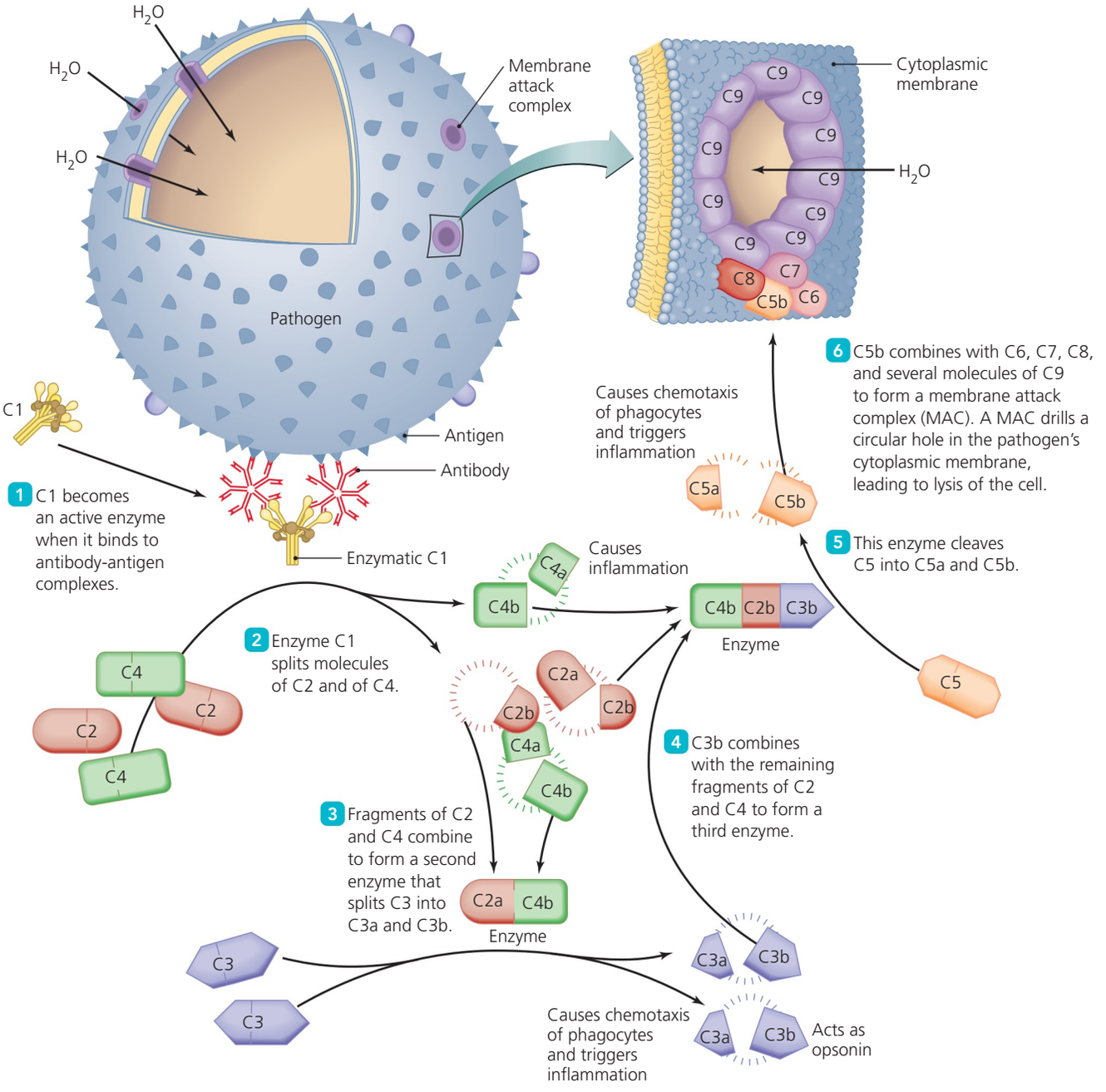
Complement is activated in three ways:

- In the *classical pathway,* antibodies activate complement.
- In the *alternative pathway,* pathogens or pathogenic products (such as bacterial endotoxins and glycoproteins) activate complement.
- In the *lectin pathway,* microbial polysaccharides bind to activating molecules.

As Figure 15.8 shows, the three pathways merge. Complement proteins react with one another in an amplifying sequence of chemical reactions in which the product of each reaction becomes an enzyme that catalyzes the next reaction many times over. Such reactions are called *cascades* because they progress in a way that can be likened to a rock avalanche in which one rock dislodges several other rocks, each of which dislodges many others until a whole cascade of rocks is tumbling down the mountain. The products of each step in the complement cascade initiate other reactions, often with wide-ranging effects in the body.

TABLE 15.4 The Characteristics of Human Interferons

	Type I		Type II
Property	**Alpha Interferon (IFN-α)**	**Beta Interferon (IFN-β)**	**Gamma Interferon (IFN-γ)**
Principal source	Epithelium, leukocytes	Fibroblasts	Activated T lymphocytes and NK lymphocytes
Inducing agent	Viruses	Viruses	Adaptive immune responses
Action	Stimulates production of antiviral proteins	Stimulates production of antiviral proteins	Stimulates phagocytic activity of macrophages and neutrophils
Other names	Leukocyte-IFN	Fibroblast-IFN	Immune-IFN, macrophage activation factor



▲ Figure 15.9 The classical pathway and complement cascade. Steps 2 to 6 are illustrated apart from the pathogen's membrane for clarity; in reality, the enzymes are associated with the site of C1 and antibodies on the membrane. The major functions of complement are opsonization and mediation of chemotaxis and inflammation. A membrane attack complex is a potent antimicrobial weapon that can form against a wide variety of bacterial and eukaryotic pathogens. *What proteins would be involved in activating a complement cascade if this were the alternative pathway?*

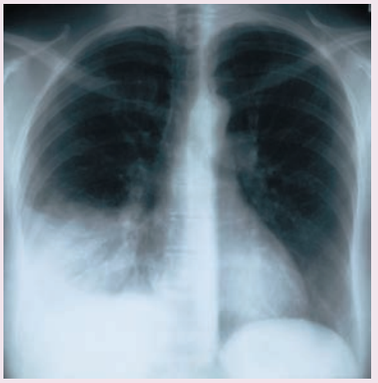
Figure 15.9 *Whereas the classical pathway of complement activation involves proteins C1, C2, and C4, the alternative pathway involves factors B, D, and P (properdin).*

The Classical Pathway Complement got its name from events in the originally discovered "classical" pathway. In this pathway the various proteins act to "complement," or act in conjunction with, the action of antibodies, which we now understand are part of adaptive immunity. As you study the depiction of the classical complement cascade in **Figure 15.9**, keep the following concepts in mind:

- Complement enzymes in early events cleave other complement molecules to form *fragments,* which are designated with lowercase letters. For example, inactive complement

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE STEALTH INVADER



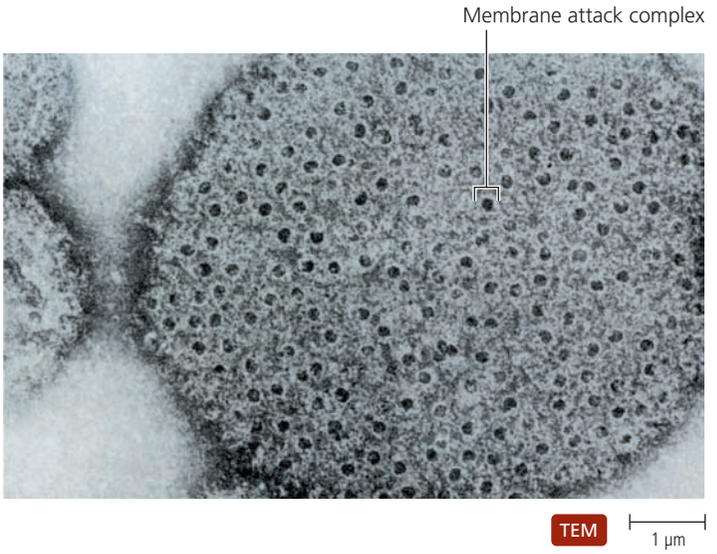
Tim is often seen walking around campus, hanging out at the coffee shop, laughing with friends, and, as he puts it, "investing time with the ladies." Tim started smoking in high school and has never tried to kick the habit. He jokes about the "smoker's cough" that has punctuated his conversations over the summer and start of the fall semester. Recently, the cough has been getting worse, his throat is scratchy, his head hurts, and he is tired all the time. Tim wonders if he has some long-lasting flu, though he hasn't had a fever. In October, after a month of progressively worse coughing, he's had enough; he heads to the campus clinic right after his morning classes.

The clinic physician notes the persistence and worsening of Tim's cough and that Tim has no fever. To rule out a bacterial infection, she orders a routine sputum culture (a test of material coughed up from Tim's lungs), which comes back negative. Tim is sent home with the advice to quit smoking.

A week later, he's back, coughing nonstop, short of breath, sweaty, and aching. A different doctor orders a chest X-ray exam and several blood tests. The X-ray film reveals fluid in Tim's lungs, and a blood test confirms an infection of *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*. Regular sputum testing doesn't detect this Gram-negative bacterium, which lacks cell walls and doesn't stain well.

Mycoplasma pneumoniae infects and disrupts the mucous membranes of the lungs, invading and disrupting the epithelium. Most patients get better on their own, but not Tim. Smoke has compromised the lungs' innate immunity. A course of an antimicrobial drug—azithromycin—clears Tim's lungs of the bacterium within a week. Tim decides to quit smoking.

1. Which Toll-like receptor (TLR) was involved in Tim's innate immune response to *Mycoplasma*?
2. Why didn't Tim's naturally occurring interferons help clear the infection?
3. What structures and chemicals normally fend off lung infections?
4. Why didn't Tim's innate lung defenses operate properly?



▲ **Figure 15.10** **Membrane attack complexes.** Transmission electron micrograph of a cell damaged by numerous punctures produced by membrane attack complexes.

protein 3 (C3) is cleaved into active fragments C3a and C3b.

- Most fragments have specific and important roles in achieving the functions of the complement system. Some combine to form new enzymes; some act to increase vascular permeability, which increases diapedesis; others enhance inflammation; and still others are involved as chemotactic factors, attracting phagocytes, or in opsonization.
- One end product of a full cascade is a **membrane attack complex (MAC),** which forms a circular hole in a pathogen's membrane. The production of numerous MACs **(Figure 15.10)** leads to lysis in a wide variety of bacterial and eukaryotic pathogens. Gram-negative bacteria, such as the bacterium causing gonorrhea, are particularly sensitive to the production of MACs via the complement cascade because their outer membranes are exposed and susceptible. In contrast, a Gram-positive bacterium, which has a thick layer of peptidoglycan overlying its cytoplasmic membrane, is typically resistant to the MAC-induced lytic properties of complement, though it is susceptible to the other effects of the complement cascade.

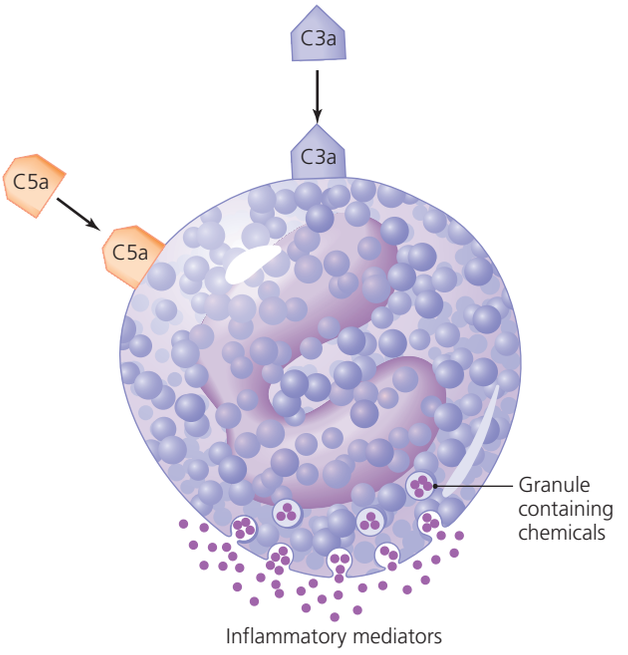
In addition to its enzymatic role, fragment C3b acts as an opsonin. Fragment C4b also acts as an opsonin. Fragments C3a and C5a function as chemotactic factors, attracting phagocytes to the site of infection. Along with C4a, they are also inflammatory agents that trigger increased vascular permeability and dilation. The inflammatory roles of these fragments are discussed in more detail shortly.

The Alternative Pathway The alternative pathway was so named because scientists discovered it second. As previously mentioned, antibodies bound to antigens are necessary for the

classical activation of complement, whereas activation of the alternative pathway occurs independently of antibodies. The alternative pathway begins with the cleavage of C3 into C3a and C3b. This naturally occurs at a slow rate in the plasma but proceeds no further because C3b is cleaved into smaller fragments almost immediately. However, when C3b binds to microbial surfaces, it stabilizes long enough for a protein called factor B to adhere. Another plasma protein, factor D, then cleaves factor B, creating an enzyme composed of C3b and Bb. This enzyme, which is stabilized by a third protein—factor P (properdin)—cleaves more molecules of C3 into C3a and C3b, continuing the complement cascade and the formation of MACs.

The alternative pathway is useful in the early stages of an infection, before the adaptive immune response has created the antibodies needed to activate the classical pathway.

The Lectin Pathway Researchers have discovered a third pathway for complement activation that acts through the use of *lectins*. Lectins are chemicals that bind to specific sugar subunits of polysaccharide molecules, in this case, to mannose sugar in mannan polysaccharide on the surfaces of fungi, bacteria, or viruses. Mannose is rare in mammals. Lectins bound to mannose act to trigger a complement cascade by cleaving C2 and C4. The cascade then proceeds like the classical pathway (see steps 3 to 6 in Figure 15.9). ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Complement: Activation, Results***



▲ **Figure 15.11 The stimulation of inflammation by complement.** Complement fragments C3a and C5a can each bind to platelets, basophils, and mast cells, causing them to release histamine, which in turn stimulates the dilation of arterioles.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A patient has a genetic disorder that makes it impossible for her to synthesize complement protein 8 (C8). Is her complement system nonfunctional? What major effects of complement could still be produced?

Inactivation of Complement We have seen that the complement system is nonspecific and that MACs can form on any cell's exposed membrane. How do the body's own cells withstand the action of complement? Membrane-bound proteins on the body's cells bind with and break down activated complement proteins, thereby interrupting the complement cascade before damage can occur.

Inflammation

Learning Outcome

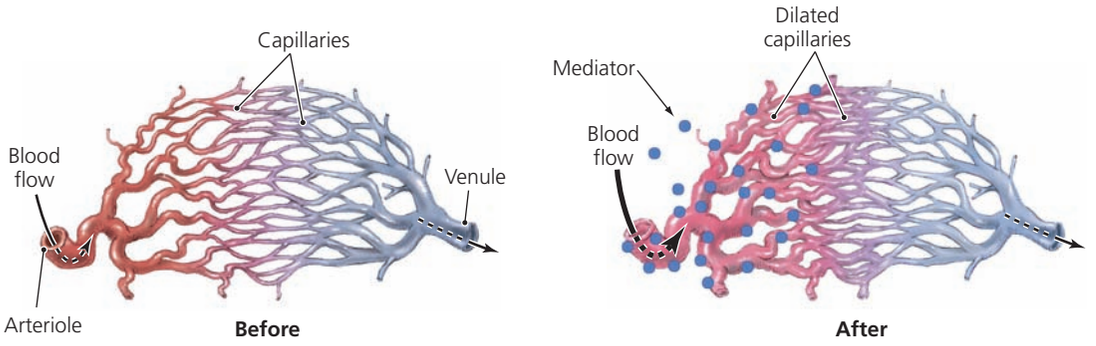
15.18 Discuss the process and benefits of inflammation.

Inflammation is a general, nonspecific response to tissue damage resulting from a variety of causes, including heat, chemicals, ultraviolet light (sunburn), abrasions, cuts, and pathogens. **Acute inflammation** develops quickly, is short lived, is typically beneficial, and results in the elimination or resolution of whatever condition precipitated it. Long-lasting **chronic inflammation** causes damage (even death) to tissues, resulting in disease. Both acute and chronic inflammation exhibit similar signs and symptoms, including redness in light-colored skin (rubor), localized heat (calor), edema (swelling), and pain (dolor). ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Inflammation: Overview***

It may not be obvious from this list of signs and symptoms that acute inflammation is beneficial; however, acute inflammation is an important part of the second line of defense because it results in (1) dilation and increased permeability of blood vessels, (2) migration of phagocytes, and (3) tissue repair. Although the chemical details of inflammation are beyond the scope of our study, we now consider these three aspects of acute inflammation. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Inflammation***

Dilation and Increased Permeability of Blood Vessels

Part of the body's initial response to an injury or invasion of pathogens is localized dilation (increase in diameter) of blood vessels in the affected region. The process of blood clotting triggers the conversion of a soluble plasma protein into a nine-amino-acid peptide chain called **bradykinin** (brad-e-kī´nin), which is a potent mediator of inflammation. Patrolling macrophages, using Toll-like receptors and NOD proteins to identify invaders, release other inflammatory chemicals, including **prostaglandins** (pros-tă-glan´dinz) and **leukotrienes** (loo-kō-trī´ēnz). Basophils, platelets, and specialized cells located in connective tissue—called **mast cells**—also release inflammatory mediators, such as **histamine** (his´tă-mēn), when they are exposed to complement fragments C3a or C5a **(Figure 15.11)**. Recall that these complement peptides were cleaved from larger polypeptides during the complement cascade.



◀ Figure 15.12 The dilating effect of inflammatory mediators on small blood vessels. The release of mediators from damaged tissue causes nearby arterioles to dilate. Vasodilation causes capillaries to expand and enables more blood to be delivered to the affected site. The increased blood flow causes the reddening and heat associated with inflammation.

Bradykinin and histamine cause vasodilation of the body's smallest arteries (arterioles) **(Figure 15.12)**. Vasodilation results in delivery of more blood to the site of infection, which in turn delivers more phagocytes, oxygen, and nutrients to the site. Inflammatory mediators cause cells that line blood vessels to make adhesion molecules, which are receptors for leukocytes. Bradykinin, prostaglandins, leukotrienes, and histamine also make small veins more permeable—that is, they cause cells lining the vessels to contract and pull apart, leaving gaps in the walls through which phagocytes can move into the damaged tissue and fight invaders **(Figure 15.13)**. Increased permeability also allows delivery of more bloodborne antimicrobial chemicals to the site.

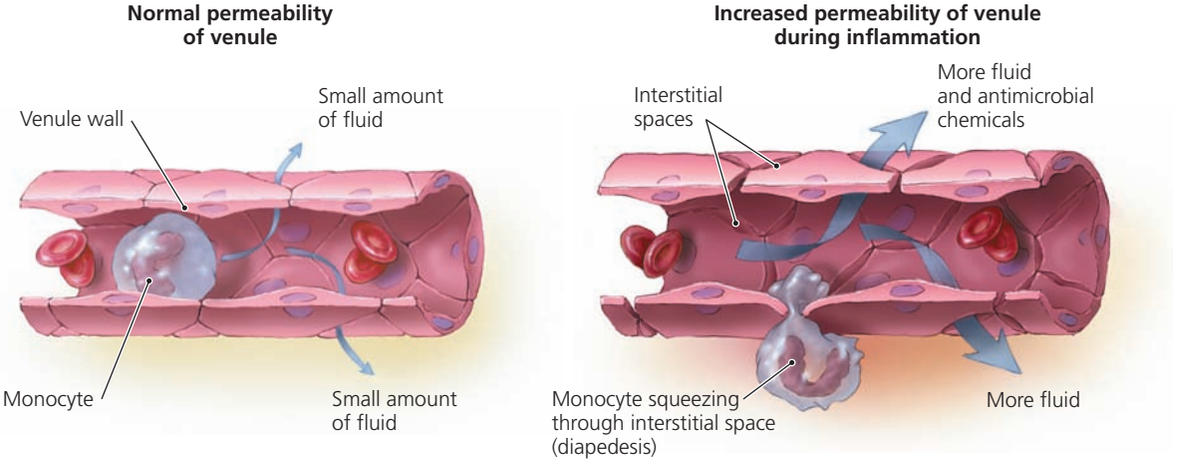
Dilation of blood vessels in response to inflammatory mediators results in the redness and localized heat associated with inflammation. At the same time, prostaglandins and leukotrienes cause fluid to leak from the more permeable blood vessels and accumulate in the surrounding tissue, resulting in edema, which is responsible for much of the pain of inflammation as pressure is exerted on nerve endings.

Vasodilation and increased permeability also deliver fibrinogen, the blood's clotting protein. Clots forming at the site of injury or infection wall off the area and help prevent pathogens and their toxins from spreading. One result is the formation of *pus*, a fluid containing dead tissue cells, leukocytes, and pathogens in the walled-off area. Pus may push up toward the surface and erupt, or it may remain isolated in the body, where it is slowly absorbed over a period of days. Such an isolated site of infection is called an **abscess.** Pimples, boils, and pustules are examples of abscesses.

The signs and symptoms of inflammation can be treated with antihistamines, which block histamine receptors on blood vessel walls, or with antiprostaglandins. One of the ways aspirin and ibuprofen reduce pain is by acting as antiprostaglandins.

Migration of Phagocytes

Increased blood flow due to vasodilation delivers monocytes and neutrophils to a site of infection. As they arrive, these leukocytes roll along the inside walls of blood vessels until they adhere to the receptors lining the vessels in a process called **margination.** They then squeeze between the cells of the vessel's wall (diapedesis) and enter the site of infection, usually within an hour of tissue damage. The phagocytes then destroy pathogens via phagocytosis.



▲ Figure 15.13 Increased vascular permeability during inflammation. The presence of bradykinin, prostaglandins, leukotrienes, or histamine causes cells lining venules to pull apart, allowing phagocytes to leave the bloodstream and more easily reach a site of infection. The leakage of fluid and cells causes the edema and pain associated with inflammation.

▶ Figure 15.14 An overview of the events in inflammation following a cut and infection. The process, which is characterized by redness, swelling, heat, and pain, ends with tissue repair. *In general, what types of cells are involved in tissue repair?*

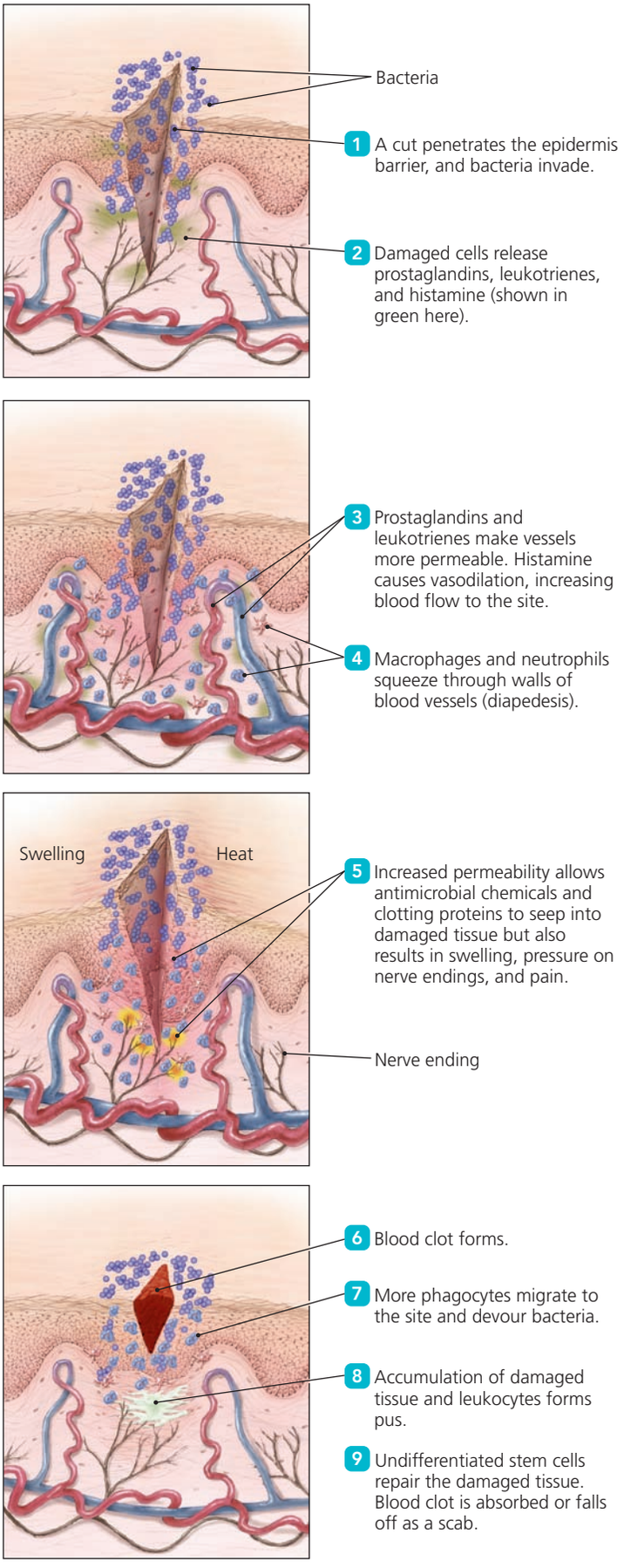


Figure 15.14 *Tissue repair is effected by cells that are capable of cytokinesis and differentiation. If fibroblasts are among them, scar tissue is laid down.*

As mentioned previously, phagocytes are attracted to the site of infection by chemotactic factors, including C3a, C5a, leukotrienes, and microbial components and toxins. The first phagocytes to arrive are often neutrophils, which are then followed by monocytes. Once monocytes leave the blood, they change and become wandering macrophages, which are especially active phagocytic cells that devour pathogens, damaged tissue cells, and dead neutrophils. Wandering macrophages are a major component of pus.

Tissue Repair

The final stage of inflammation is tissue repair, which in part involves the delivery of extra nutrients and oxygen to the site. Areas of the body where cells regularly undergo cytokinesis, such as the skin and mucous membranes, are repaired rapidly. Some other sites are not fully reparable and form scar tissue.

If the damaged tissue contains undifferentiated stem cells, tissues can be fully restored. For example, a minor skin cut is repaired to such an extent it is no longer visible. However, if cells called *fibroblasts* are involved to a significant extent, scar tissue is formed, inhibiting normal function. Some tissues, such as cardiac muscle and parts of the brain, do not replicate, and thus tissue damage cannot be repaired. As a result, these tissues remain damaged following heart attacks and strokes.

Figure 15.14 gives an overview of the entire inflammatory process. **Table 15.5** summarizes the chemicals involved in inflammation. **▶ ANIMATIONS:** ***Inflammation: Steps***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

While using a microscope to examine a sample of pus from a pimple, Maria observed a large number of macrophages. Is the pus from an early or a late stage of infection? How do you know?

Fever

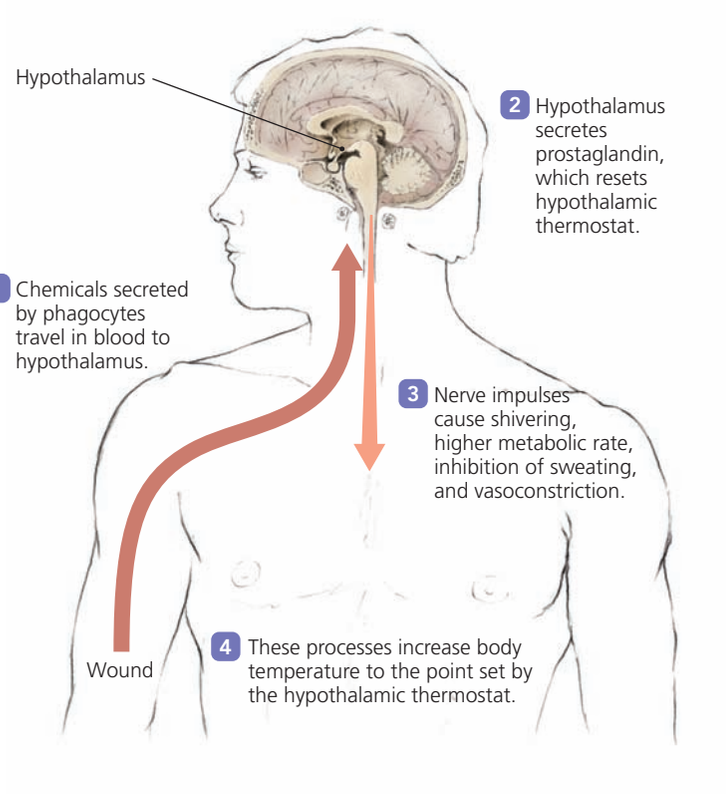
Learning Outcome

15.19 Explain the benefits of fever in fighting infection.

Fever is a body temperature above 37°C. Fever augments the beneficial effects of inflammation, but like inflammation it also has unpleasant side effects, including malaise, body aches, and tiredness.

The hypothalamus, a portion of the brain just above the brain stem, controls the body's internal (core) temperature. Fever results when the presence of chemicals called **pyrogens**[13]

[13]From Greek *pyr*, meaning "fire," and *genein*, meaning "to produce."



▲ Figure 15.15 One theoretical explanation for the production of fever in response to infection.

(pī´rō-jenz) trigger the hypothalamic "thermostat" to reset at a higher temperature. Pyrogens include bacterial toxins, cytoplasmic contents of bacteria that are released upon lysis, antibody-antigen complexes formed in adaptive immune responses, and pyrogens released by phagocytes that have phagocytized bacteria. Although the exact mechanism of fever production is not known, the following discussion and **Figure 15.15** present one possible explanation.

Chemicals produced by phagocytes 1 cause the hypothalamus to secrete prostaglandin, which resets the hypothalamic thermostat by an unknown mechanism 2. The hypothalamus then communicates the new temperature setting to other parts of the brain, initiating nerve impulses that produce rapid and repetitive muscle contractions (shivering), an increase in metabolic rate, and constriction of blood vessels of the skin 3. These processes combine to raise the body's core temperature until it equals the prescribed temperature setting 4. Because blood vessels in the skin constrict as fever progresses, one effect of inflammation (vasodilation) is undone. The constricted vessels carry less blood to the skin, causing it to appear paler and feel cold to the touch, even though the body's core temperature is higher. This symptom is the *chill* associated with fever.

Fever continues as long as pyrogens are present. As an infection comes under control and fewer active phagocytes are involved, the level of pyrogens decreases, the thermostat is reset to 37°C, and the body begins to cool by perspiring, lowering the metabolic rate, and dilating blood vessels in the skin. These processes, collectively called the *crisis* of a fever, are a sign that the infection has been overcome and that body temperature is returning to normal.

The increased temperature of fever enhances the effects of interferons, inhibits the growth of some microorganisms, and is thought to enhance the performance of phagocytes, the activity of cells of specific immunity, and the process of tissue repair. However, if fever is too high, critical proteins are denatured; additionally, nerve impulses are inhibited, resulting in hallucinations, coma, and even death.

Because of the potential benefits of fever, many doctors recommend that patients refrain from taking fever-reducing drugs unless the fever is prolonged or extremely high. Other physicians believe that the benefits of fever are too slight to justify enduring the adverse symptoms.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How do drugs such as aspirin and ibuprofen act to reduce fever? Should you take fever-reducing drugs or let a fever run its course?

Table 15.6 on p. 458 summarizes the barriers, cells, chemicals, and processes involved in the body's first two, nonspecific lines of defense.

TABLE 15.5 Chemical Mediators of Inflammation

Vasodilating chemicals	Histamine, serotonin, bradykinin, prostaglandins
Chemotactic factors	Fibrin, collagen, mast cell chemotactic factors, bacterial peptides
Substances with both vasodilating and chemotactic effects	Complement fragments C5a and C3a, interferons, interleukins, leukotrienes, platelet secretions

TABLE 15.6 A Summary of Some Nonspecific Components of the First and Second Lines of Defense (Innate Immunity)

First Line	Second Line						
Barriers and Associated Chemicals	**Phagocytes**	**Extracellular Killing**	**Complement**	**Interferons**	**Antimicrobial Peptides**	**Inflammation**	**Fever**
Skin and mucous membranes prevent the entrance of pathogens; chemicals (e.g., sweat, acid, lysozyme, mucus) enhance the protection	Macrophages, neutrophils, and eosinophils ingest and destroy pathogens	Eosinophils and NK lymphocytes kill pathogens without phagocytizing them	Components attract phagocytes, stimulate inflammation, and attack a pathogen's cytoplasmic membrane	Increase resistance of cells to viral infection, slow the spread of disease	Interfere with membranes, internal signaling, and metabolism; act against pathogens	Increases blood flow, capillary permeability, and migration of leukocytes into infected area; walls off infected region, increases local temperature	Mobilizes defenses, accelerates repairs, inhibits pathogens

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

An Overview of the Body's Defenses (p. 439)

1. Humans have **species resistance** to certain pathogens as well as three overlapping lines of defense. The first two lines of defense compose **innate immunity,** which is generally nonspecific and protects the body against a wide variety of potential pathogens. A third line of defense is **adaptive immunity,** which is a specific response to a particular pathogen.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Host Defenses: Overview*

The Body's First Line of Defense (pp. 439–443)

1. The first line of defense includes the skin, composed of an outer **epidermis** and a deeper **dermis. Dendritic cells** of the epidermis devour pathogens. Sweat glands of the skin produce salty sweat containing the enzyme called **lysozyme** and **antimicrobial peptides** (defensins), which are small peptide chains that act against a broad range of pathogens. **Sebum** is an oily substance of the skin that lowers pH, deterring the growth of many pathogens.
2. The mucous membranes, another part of the body's first line of defense, are composed of tightly packed cells that are replaced frequently by **stem cell** division and often coated with sticky mucus secreted by goblet cells.
3. **Microbial antagonism,** the competition between **normal microbiota** and potential pathogens, also contributes to the body's first line of defense.
4. Tears contain antibacterial lysozyme and also flush invaders from the eyes. Saliva similarly protects the teeth. The low pH of the stomach inhibits most microbes that are swallowed.

The Body's Second Line of Defense (pp. 443–458)

1. The second line of defense includes cells (especially **phagocytes**), antimicrobial chemicals (Toll-like receptors, NOD proteins, interferons, complement, lysozyme, and antimicrobial peptides), and processes (phagocytosis, information, and fever).

2. Blood is composed of **formed elements** (cells and parts of cells) within a fluid called **plasma.** Serum is that portion of plasma without clotting factors. The formed elements are **erythrocytes** (red blood cells), **leukocytes** (white blood cells), and **platelets.**

3. Based on their appearance in stained blood smears, leukocytes are grouped as either granulocytes (**basophils, eosinophils,** and **neutrophils**) or **agranulocytes** (**lymphocytes, monocytes**). When monocytes leave the blood, they become **macrophages**.

4. Basophils function to release histamine during inflammation, whereas eosinophils and neutrophils phagocytize pathogens. They exit capillaries via **diapedesis.**

5. Macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells are phagocytic cells of the second line of defense. Many are named for their location in the body, for example, alveolar macrophages (the lungs) and microglia (the nervous system).

6. A **differential white blood cell count** is a lab technique that indicates the relative numbers of leukocyte types; it can be helpful in diagnosing disease.

7. **Chemotactic factors,** such as chemicals called **chemokines,** attract phagocytic leukocytes to the site of damage or invasion. Phagocytes attach to pathogens via a process called **adherence.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Phagocytosis: Overview*

8. **Opsonization,** the coating of pathogens by proteins called **opsonins,** makes those pathogens more vulnerable to phagocytes. A phagocyte's pseudopods then surround the microbe to form a sac called a **phagosome,** which fuses with a lysosome to form a **phagolysosome,** in which the pathogen is killed.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Phagocytosis: Mechanism*

9. Leukocytes can distinguish the body's normal cells from foreign cells because leukocytes have receptor molecules for foreign cells' components or because the foreign cells are opsonized by complement or antibodies.

10. Eosinophils and **natural killer (NK) lymphocytes** attack nonphagocytically, especially in the case of helminth infections and cancerous cells. **Eosinophilia**—an abnormally high number of eosinophils in the blood—typically indicates such a helminth infection.

11. Microbial molecules called **pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)** bind to **Toll-like receptors (TLRs)** on host cells' membranes or to **NOD proteins** inside cells, triggering innate immune responses.

12. **Interferons (IFNs)** are protein molecules that inhibit the spread of viral infections. **Alpha interferons** and **beta interferons,** which are released within hours of infection, trigger **antiviral proteins** to prevent viral reproduction in neighboring cells. **Gamma interferons,** produced days after initial infection, activate macrophages and neutrophils.

13. The **complement system** is a set of proteins that act as chemotactic attractants, trigger inflammation and fever, and ultimately can effect the destruction of foreign cells via the formation of **membrane attack complexes (MACs),** which result in multiple, fatal holes in pathogens' membranes. Complement is activated by a classical pathway involving antibodies, by an alternative pathway triggered by bacterial chemicals, or by a lectin pathway triggered by mannose found on microbial surfaces.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Complement Overview, Activation, Results*

14. **Acute inflammation** develops quickly and damages pathogens, whereas **chronic inflammation** develops slowly and can cause tissue damage that can lead to disease. Signs and symptoms of inflammation include redness, heat, swelling, and pain.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Inflammation Overview, Steps*
    ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Inflammation*

15. The process of blood clotting triggers formation of **bradykinin**—a potent mediator of inflammation.

16. Macrophages with Toll-like receptors or NOD proteins release **prostaglandins** and **leukotrienes,** which increase permeability of blood vessels. **Mast cells,** basophils, and platelets release **histamine** when exposed to peptides from the complement system. Blood clots may isolate an infected area to form an **abscess,** such as a pimple or boil.

17. When leukocytes rolling along blood vessel walls reach a site of infection, they stick to the wall in a process called **margination** and then undergo diapedesis to arrive at the site of tissue damage. The increased blood flow of inflammation also brings extra nutrients and oxygen to the infection site to aid in repair.

18. **Fever** results when chemicals called **pyrogens,** including substances released by bacteria and phagocytes, affect the hypothalamus in a way that causes it to reset body temperature to a higher level. The exact process of fever and its control are not fully understood.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Phagocytes of the epidermis are called _____.
   a. microglia
   b. goblet cells
   c. alveolar macrophages
   d. dendritic cells

2. Mucus-secreting membranes are found in the _____.
   a. urinary system
   b. digestive cavity
   c. respiratory passages
   d. all of the above

3. The complement system involves _____.
   a. the production of antigens and antibodies
   b. serum proteins involved in nonspecific defense
   c. a set of genes that distinguish foreign cells from body cells
   d. the elimination of undigested remnants of microorganisms

4. The alternative complement activation pathway involves _____.
   a. factors B, D, and P
   b. the cleavage of C5 to form C9
   c. binding to mannose sugar
   d. recognition of antigens bound to specific antibodies

5. Complement must be inactivated because if it were *not*, _____.
   a. viruses could continue to multiply inside host cells using the host's own metabolic machinery
   b. necessary interferons would not be produced
   c. protein synthesis would be inhibited, thus halting important cell processes
   d. it could make holes in the body's own cells
6. The type of interferon present late in an infection is _____.
   a. alpha interferon
   b. beta interferon
   c. gamma interferon
   d. delta interferon
7. Interferons _____.
   a. do not protect the cell that secretes them
   b. stimulate the activity of macrophages
   c. cause muscle aches, chills, and fever
   d. all of the above
8. Which of the following is *not* targeted by a Toll-like receptor?
   a. lipid A
   b. eukaryotic flagellar protein
   c. single-stranded RNA
   d. lipoteichoic acid
9. Toll-like receptors (TLRs) act to _____.
   a. bind microbial proteins and polysaccharides
   b. induce phagocytosis
   c. cause phagocytic chemotaxis
   d. destroy microbial cells
10. Which of the following binds iron?
    a. lactoferrin
    b. siderophores
    c. transferrin
    d. all of the above

Modified True/False

Indicate which statements are true. Correct all false statements by changing the underlined words.

1. _____ The surface cells of the epidermis of the skin are <u>alive</u>.
2. _____ The surface cells of mucous membranes are <u>alive</u>.
3. _____ Wandering macrophagtes experience <u>diapedesis</u>.
4. _____ <u>Monocytes</u> are immature macrophages.
5. _____ <u>Lymphocytes</u> are large agranulocytes.
6. _____ <u>Phagocytes</u> exhibit chemotaxis toward a pathogen.
7. _____ In phagocytosis, adherence involves the binding between complementary chemicals on a phagocyte and on the membrane of a <u>body cell</u>.
8. _____ <u>Opsonization</u> occurs when a phagocyte's pseudopods surround a microbe and fuse to form a sac.
9. _____ Lysosomes fuse with phagosomes to form <u>peroxisomes</u>.
10. _____ A membrane attack complex drills circular holes in a <u>macrophage</u>.
11. _____ Rubor, calor, swelling, and dolor are associated with <u>fever</u>.
12. _____ Acute and chronic inflammation exhibit <u>similar</u> signs and symptoms.
13. _____ The <u>hypothalamus</u> of the brain controls body temperature.
14. _____ Defensins are <u>phagocytic parts</u> of the first line of defense.
15. _____ NETs are webs produced by <u>neutrophils</u> to trap microbes.

Matching

In the blank beside each cell, chemical, or process in the left column, write the letter of the line of defense that first applies. Each letter may be used several times.

1. ____ Inflammation
2. ____ Monocytes
3. ____ Lactoferrin
4. ____ Fever
5. ____ Dendritic cells
6. ____ Alpha interferon
7. ____ Mucous membrane of the digestive tract
8. ____ Neutrophils
9. ____ Epidermis
10. ____ Lysozyme
11. ____ Goblet cells
12. ____ Phagocytes
13. ____ Sebum
14. ____ T lymphocytes
15. ____ Antimicrobial peptides

A. First line of defense
B. Second line of defense
C. Third line of defense

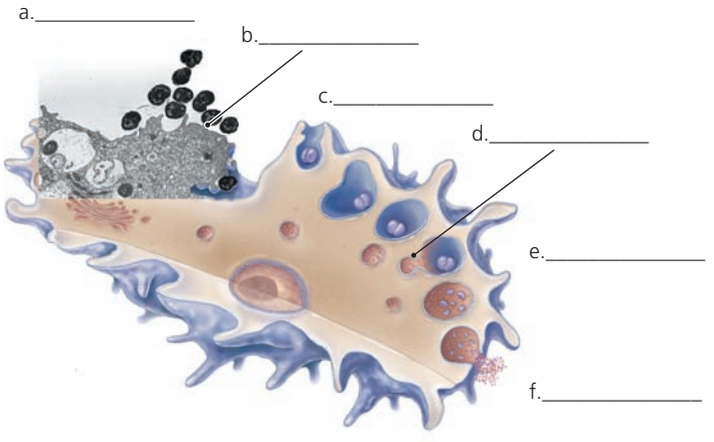
Write the letter of the description that applies to each of the following terms.

1. ____ Goblet cell
2. ____ Lysozyme
3. ____ Stem cell
4. ____ Dendritic cell
5. ____ Cell from sebaceous gland
6. ____ Bone marrow stem cell
7. ____ Eosinophil
8. ____ Alveolar macrophage
9. ____ Microglia
10. ____ Wandering macrophage

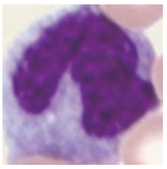
A. Leukocyte that primarily attacks parasitic worms
B. Phagocytic cell in lungs
C. Secretes sebum
D. Devours pathogens in epidermis
E. Breaks bonds in bacterial cell wall
F. Phagocytic cell in central nervous system
G. Generative cell with many types of offspring
H. Develops into formed elements of blood
I. Intercellular scavenger
J. Secretes mucus

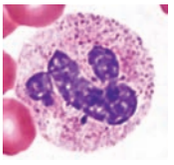
Visualize It!

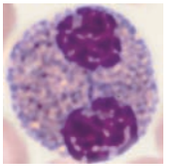
1. Label the steps of phagocytosis.

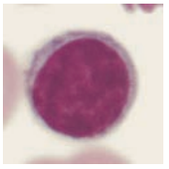


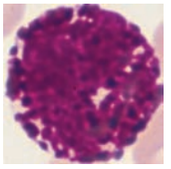
2. Name the cells.


a._____


b._____


c._____


d._____


e._____

Short Answer

1. In order for a pathogen to cause disease, what three things must happen?
2. How does a phagocyte "know" it is in contact with a pathogen instead of another body cell?
3. Give three characteristics of the epidermis that make it an intolerable environment for most microorganisms.
4. What is the role of Toll-like receptors in innate immune responses?
5. Describe the classical complement cascade pathway from C1 to the MAC.
6. How do NOD proteins differ from Toll-like receptors?

Critical Thinking

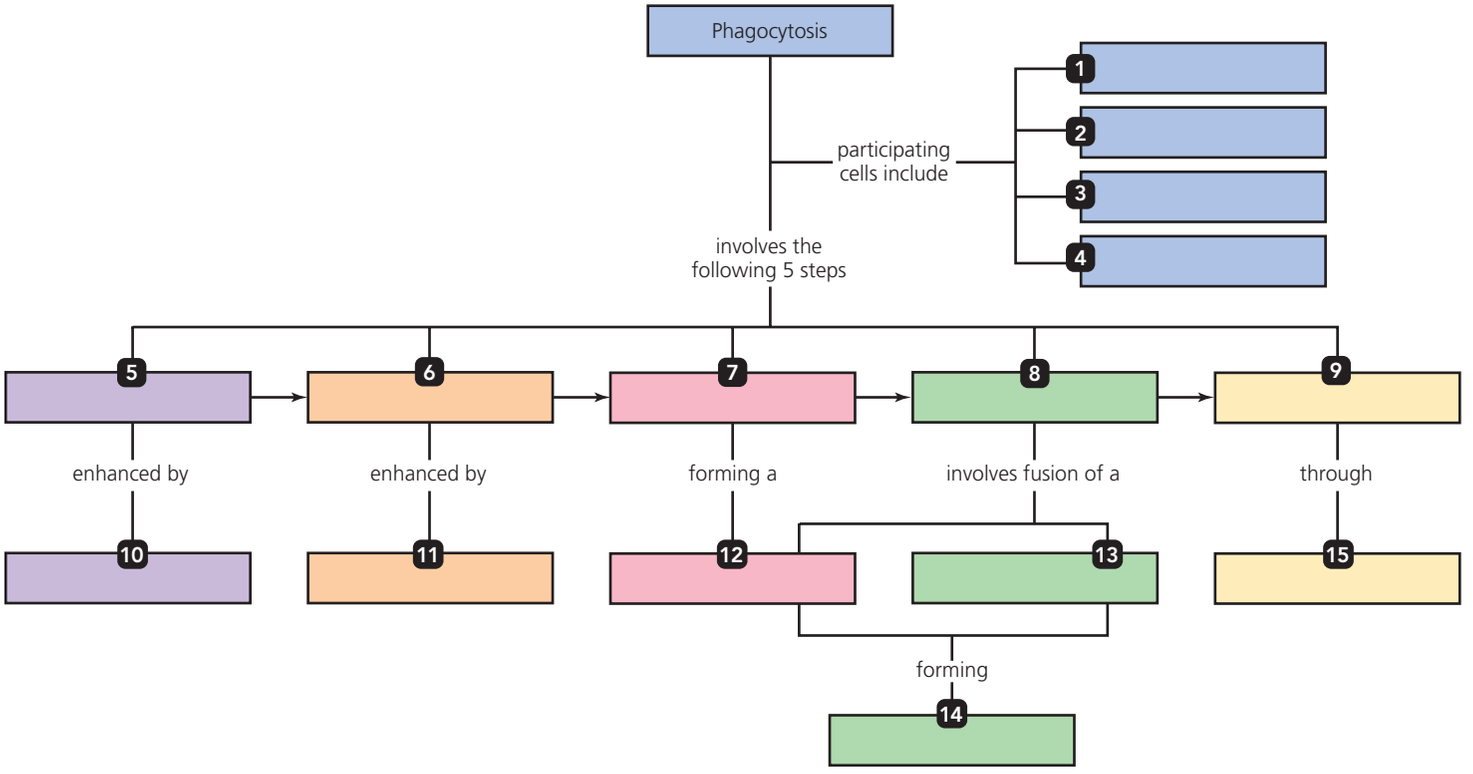
1. John received a chemical burn on his arm and was instructed by his physician to take an over-the-counter, anti-inflammatory medication for the painful, red, swollen lesions. When Charles suffered pain, redness, and swelling from an infected cut on his foot, he decided to take the same anti-inflammatory drug because his symptoms matched John's symptoms. How is Charles's inflammation like that of John? How is it different? Is it appropriate for Charles to medicate his cut with the same medicine John used?
2. What might happen to someone whose body did not produce C3? C5?
3. Mary, age 65, has had diabetes for 40 years, with resulting damage to the small blood vessels in her feet and toes. Her circulation is impaired. How might this condition affect her vulnerability to infection?
4. A patient's chart shows that eosinophils make up 8% of his white blood cells. What does this lead you to suspect? Would your suspicions change if you learned that the patient had spent the previous three years as an anthropologist living among an African tribe? What is the normal percentage of eosinophils?
5. There are two kinds of agranulocytes in the blood—monocytes and lymphocytes. Janice noted that monocytes are phagocytic and that lymphocytes are not. She wondered why two agranulocytes would be so different. What facts of hematopoiesis can help her answer her question?
6. A patient has a genetic disorder that prevents him from synthesizing C8 and C9. What effect does this have on his ability to resist bloodborne Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria? What would happen if C3 and C5 fragments were also inactivated?
7. Sweat glands in the armpits secrete perspiration with a pH close to neutral (7.0). How does this fact help explain body odor in this area as compared to other parts of the skin?
8. Scientists can raise "germ-free" animals in axenic environments. Would such animals be as healthy as their worldly counterparts?
9. Compare and contrast the protective structures and chemicals of the skin and mucous membranes.
10. Scientists are interested in developing antimicrobial drugs that act like the body's normal antimicrobial peptides. What advantage might such a drug have over antibiotics?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes phagocytosis. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Adherence
Chemotactic factors
Chemotaxis
Dendritic cells
Elimination
Eosinophils
Exocytosis
Ingestion
Killing
Lysosome
Macrophages
Neutrophils
Opsonins
Phagolysosome
Phagosome



16 Adaptive Immunity

Imagine that your friend has been bitten on the hand by a dog. The skin is broken, and the wound is deep. Your friend washes the **wound** with soap and water but does not use any of the more powerful antimicrobial agents that are available. Within 24 hours, his hand and arm are swollen, red, and painful, and he is feeling seriously ill. His body's inflammatory **response** is in full force as manifested by the swelling and pain, but it isn't strong enough to overcome the **virulent** invading microorganisms.

Fortunately, serious infections **trigger** the body's *adaptive immunity* in addition to general defense responses. In this chapter we will explore what happens when facets of adaptive immunity—especially lymphocytes—enter the **battle** against microbial invaders.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

This chapter has MicroFlix. Go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area for 3-D movie-quality animations on immunology.

White blood cells called lymphocytes (here colored red) roll along the inside walls of blood vessels. Lymphocytes are the main cells of adaptive immune defenses.

Inborn, or innate, immunity includes two lines of rapid defense against microbial pathogens (see Chapter 15). The first line includes intact skin and mucous membranes, whereas the second line includes phagocytosis, nonspecific chemical defenses (such as complement), inflammation, and fever. Innate defenses do not always offer enough protection in defending the body. Although the mechanisms of innate immunity are readily available and fast acting, they do not adapt to enhance the effectiveness of response to the great variety of pathogens confronting us—a fever is a fever, whether it is triggered by a mild flu virus or the deadly Ebola virus. The body augments the mechanisms of innate immunity with a third line of defense that destroys and targets specific invaders while becoming more effective in the process. This response is called *adaptive immunity.*

Overview of Adaptive Immunity

Learning Outcomes

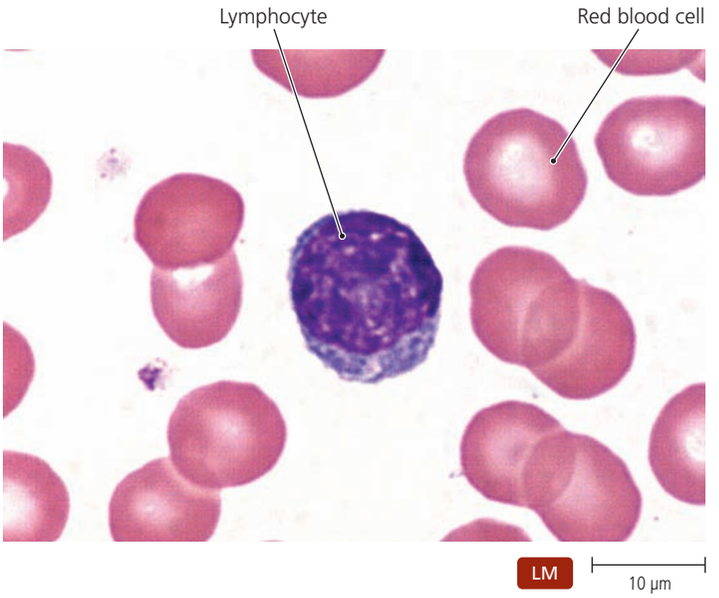
16.1 Describe five distinctive attributes of adaptive immunity.
16.2 List the two basic types of white blood cells involved in adaptive immunity.
16.3 List two basic divisions of adaptive immunity and describe their targets.

Adaptive immunity is the body's ability to recognize and then mount a defense against distinct invaders and their products, whether they are protozoa, fungi, bacteria, viruses, or toxins. *Immunologists*—scientists who study the cells and chemicals involved in immunity—are continually refining and revising our knowledge of adaptive immunity. In this chapter, we will examine some of what they have discovered.

Adaptive immunity has five distinctive attributes:

- **Specificity.** Any particular adaptive immune response acts against only one particular molecular shape and not against others. Adaptive immune responses are precisely tailored reactions against specific attackers, whereas innate immunity involves more generalized responses to pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs)—molecular shapes common to many microbes.
- **Inducibility.** Cells of adaptive immunity activate only in response to specific pathogens.
- **Clonality.** Once induced, cells of adaptive immunity proliferate to form many generations of nearly identical cells, which are collectively called *clones.*
- **Unresponsiveness to self.** As a rule, adaptive immunity does not act against normal body cells; in other words, adaptive immune responses are self-tolerant. Several mechanisms help ensure that immune responses do not attack the body itself.
- **Memory.** An adaptive immune response has "memory" for specific pathogens; that is, it adapts to respond faster and more effectively in subsequent encounters with a particular type of pathogen or toxin.

These aspects of adaptive immunity involve the activities of **lymphocytes** (lim´fō-sītz), which are a type of leukocyte (white blood cell) that acts against specific pathogens. Lymphocytes in their resting state are the smallest white blood cells, and each is characterized by a large, round, central nucleus surrounded by a thin rim of cytoplasm **(Figure 16.1)**. Initially, lymphocytes of humans form in the *red bone marrow,* located in the ends of long bones in juveniles and in the centers of adult flat bones such as the ribs and hip bones. These sites contain *blood stem cells (hematopoietic stem cells)*, which are cells that give rise to all types of blood cells, including lymphocytes (see Figure 15.4).



▲ **Figure 16.1 Lymphocytes play a central role in adaptive immunity.** A resting lymphocyte is the smallest leukocyte—slightly larger than a red blood cell.

Although lymphocytes appear identical in the microscope, scientists make distinctions between two main types—*B lymphocytes* and *T lymphocytes*—according to integral surface proteins that are part of each lymphocyte's cytoplasmic membrane. These proteins allow lymphocytes to recognize specific pathogens and toxins by their molecular shapes, and the proteins play roles in intercellular communication among immune cells.

Lymphocytes must undergo a maturation process. **B lymphocytes,** which are also called **B cells,** arise and mature in the red bone marrow of adults. **T lymphocytes,** also known as **T cells,** begin in bone marrow as well but do not mature there. Instead, T cells travel to and mature in the *thymus,* located in the chest near the heart in humans. T lymphocytes are so called because of the role the thymus plays in their maturation.

Adaptive immunity consists of many different immune responses that historically have been considered under two broad categories **cell-mediated immune responses** and **antibody immune responses.** Long-lived B and T lymphocytes in each of these categories retain the ability to fight specific pathogens—an ability sometimes called *immunological memory.* Cell-mediated immune responses are controlled and carried out by T cells and often act against *intracellular pathogens,* such as viruses replicating inside a cell. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Host Defenses: The Big Picture; Cell-Mediated Immunity: Overview***

B cells carry out antibody immune responses, though T cells play roles in regulating and fulfilling such immune responses. Antibody immune responses are often directed against extracellular pathogens and toxins. An *antibody* is a protective protein secreted by descendants of a B cell that recognize a specific biochemical shape. We will consider antibodies in more detail later. Scientists have also used another term for antibody immune responses—*humoral immune responses*[1]—because many antibody molecules circulate in the liquid portion of the blood. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Humoral Immunity: Overview***

Both cell-mediated and antibody immune responses are powerful defensive reactions that have the potential to severely and fatally attack the body's own cells. Therefore, the body must regulate adaptive immune responses to prevent damage; for example, an immune response requires multiple chemical signals before proceeding, thus reducing the possibility that an immune response will be randomly triggered against uninfected healthy tissue. Autoimmune disorders, hypersensitivities, or immunodeficiency diseases result when regulation is insufficient or overexcited. (Chapter 18 deals with such disorders.)

Elements of Adaptive Immunity

Just as the program at a dramatic presentation might present a synopsis of the performance and introduce the actors and their roles, the following sections present elements of adaptive immunity by describing the "stage" and introducing the "cast of characters" involved in adaptive immunity. We will examine the *lymphatic system*—the organs, tissues, and cells of adaptive immunity; then we consider the molecules, called *antigens,* that trigger adaptive immune responses; next, we take a look at *antibodies;* and finally we examine special *chemical signals* and *mediators* involved in coordinating and controlling a specific immune response.

First, we turn our attention to the "stage"—the lymphatic system, which plays an important role in the production, maturation, and housing of the cells that function in adaptive immunity.

The Tissues and Organs of the Lymphatic System

Learning Outcomes

16.4 Compare and contrast the flow of lymph with the flow of blood.

16.5 Describe the primary and secondary organs of the lymphatic system.

16.6 Describe the importance of red bone marrow, the thymus, lymph nodes, spleen, tonsils, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue.

The **lymphatic system** is composed of the *lymphatic vessels,* which conduct the flow of a liquid called *lymph,* and lymphatic cells, tissues, and organs, which are directly involved in adaptive immunity **(Figure 16.2a)**. Taken together, the components of the lymphatic system constitute a surveillance system that screens the tissues of the body—particularly possible points of entry such as the throat and intestinal tract—for foreign molecules. We begin by examining lymphatic vessels.

The Lymphatic Vessels and the Flow of Lymph

Lymphatic vessels form a one-way system that conducts *lymph* (pronounced "*limf*") from local tissues and returns it to the circulatory system. Most importantly for immune responses, lymph carries toxins and pathogens to areas where lymphocytes are concentrated.

Lymph is a colorless, watery liquid similar in composition to blood plasma; indeed, lymph arises from fluid that has leaked out of blood vessels into the surrounding intercellular spaces. Lymph is first collected by remarkably permeable *lymphatic capillaries* **(Figure 16.2b)**, which are located in most parts of the body (exceptions include the bone marrow, brain, and spinal cord). From the lymphatic capillaries, lymph passes into increasingly larger lymphatic vessels until it finally flows via two large *lymphatic ducts* into blood vessels near the heart. Unlike the cardiovascular system, the lymphatic system has no unique pump and is not circular; that is, lymph flows in one direction. One-way valves ensure that lymph flows only toward the heart as skeletal muscular activity squeezes the lymphatic vessels. Located at various points within the system of lymphatic vessels are about 1000 *lymph nodes,* which house white blood cells including B and T lymphocytes. These lymphocytes recognize and attack foreigners present in the lymph, allowing for immune system surveillance and interactions.

Lymphoid Organs

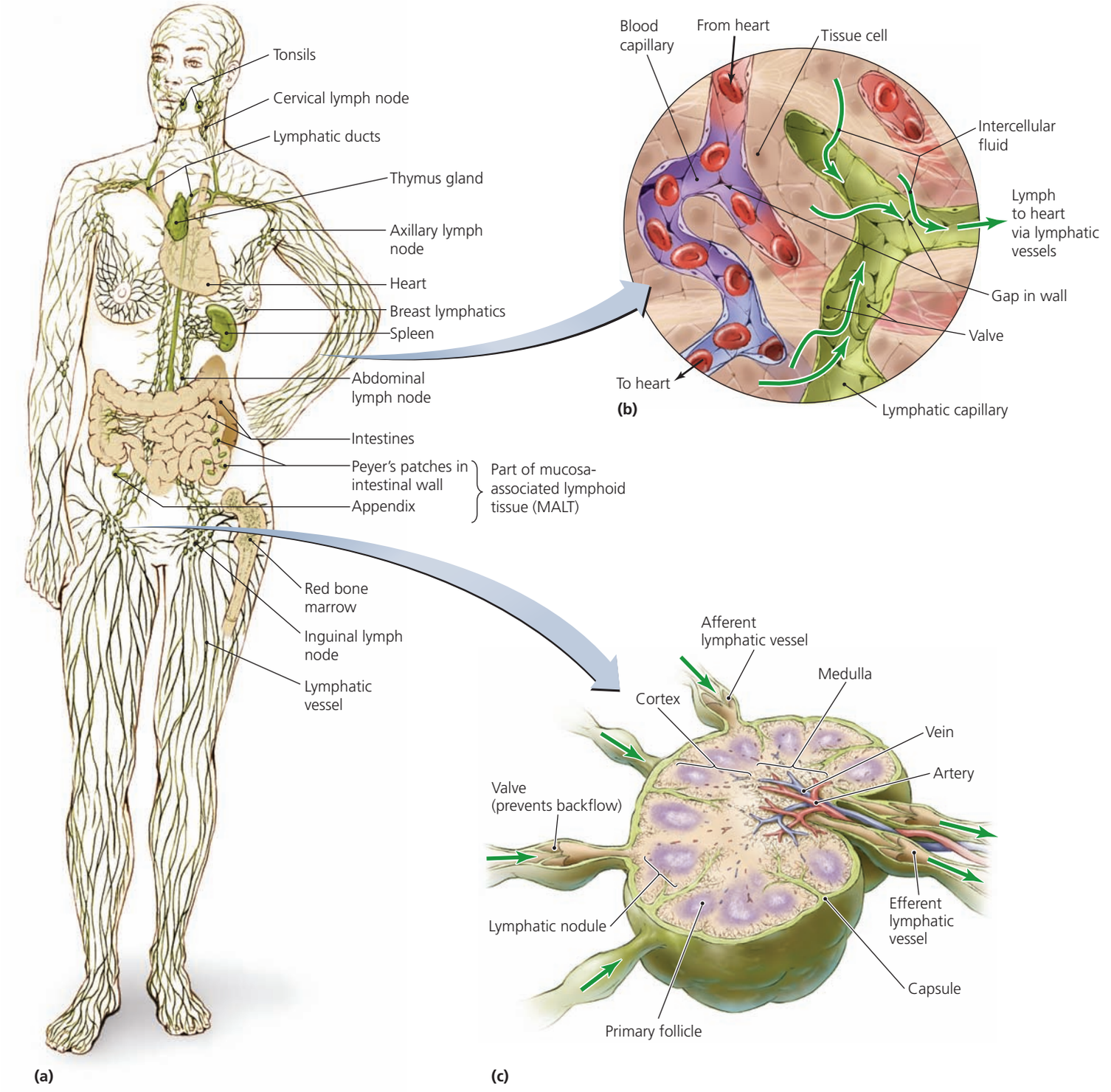
Once lymphocytes have arisen and matured in the *primary lymphoid organs* of the red bone marrow and thymus, they migrate to *secondary lymphoid organs* and *tissues,* including lymph nodes, spleen, and other less organized accumulations of lymphoid tissue, where they in effect lie in wait for foreign microbes. The hundreds of **lymph nodes** are located throughout the body but concentrated in the cervical (neck), inguinal (groin), axillary (armpit), and abdominal regions. Each lymph node receives lymph from numerous *afferent* (inbound) *lymphatic vessels* and drains lymph into just one or two *efferent* (outbound) *lymphatic vessels* **(Figure 16.2c)**. Essentially, lymph nodes are sites to facilitate interactions among immune cells and between immune cells and material in the lymph arriving from throughout the body.

A node has a medullary (central) maze of passages, which filter the lymph passing through and house numerous lymphocytes that survey the lymph for foreign molecules and mount specific immune responses against them. The cortex (outer) portion of a lymph node consists of a tough capsule surrounding *primary follicles,* which is where clones of B cells replicate.

CRITICAL THINKING

The cross-sectional area of the afferent lymphatic vessels arriving at a lymph node is greater than the cross-sectional area of the efferent lymphatics exiting the lymph node. The result is that lymph moves slowly through a lymph node. What advantage does this provide the body?

[1] From Latin *humor,* meaning "liquid," referring to bodily fluids such as blood.



▲ Figure 16.2 The lymphatic system. (a) The system consists of primary lymphoid organs—bone marrow (not shown) and thymus gland—and secondary lymphoid organs, including lymphatic vessels, lymph nodes, tonsils, and other lymphatic tissue. **(b)** Lymphatic capillaries collect lymph from intercellular spaces. **(c)** Afferent lymphatic vessels carry lymph into lymph nodes; efferent vessels carry it away. The cortex contains primary follicles centers, where B lymphocytes proliferate; the lymphocytes in the medulla encounter foreign molecules. *Why do lymph nodes enlarge during an infection?*

Figure 16.2 *During an infection, lymphocytes multiply profusely in lymph nodes. This proliferation and swelling cause lymph nodes to enlarge.*

The lymphatic system contains additional secondary lymphoid tissues and organs, including the spleen, the tonsils, and *mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT).* The spleen is similar in structure and function to lymph nodes, except that it filters blood instead of lymph. The spleen removes bacteria, viruses, toxins, and other foreign matter from the blood. It also cleanses the blood of old and damaged blood cells, stores blood platelets (which are required for the proper clotting of blood), and stores blood components, such as iron.

The tonsils and MALT lack the tough outer capsules of lymph nodes and the spleen, but they function in the same way by physically trapping foreign particles and microbes. MALT includes the appendix; lymphoid tissue of the respiratory tract, vagina, urinary bladder, and mammary glands; and discrete bits of lymphoid tissue called *Peyer's patches* in the wall of the small intestine. MALT contains most of the body's lymphocytes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

As part of the treatment for some cancers, physicians kill the cancer patients' dividing cells, including the stem cells that produce leukocytes, and then give the patients a bone marrow transplant from a healthy donor. Which cell is the most important cell in such transplanted marrow?

We are considering adaptive immunity in terms of a "play" taking place on the stage of the lymphatic system. Now, let's meet the "villain actors"—the foreign molecules that lymphocytes recognize.

Antigens

Learning Outcomes

16.7 Identify the characteristics of antigens that stimulate effective immune responses.

16.8 Distinguish among exogenous antigens, endogenous antigens, and autoantigens.

Adaptive immune responses are directed not against whole bacteria, fungi, protozoa, or viruses but instead against portions of cells, viruses, and even parts of single molecules that the body recognizes as foreign and worthy of attack. Immunologists call these biochemical shapes **antigens**[2] (an´ti-jenz). Lymphocytes bind to antigens and can then trigger adaptive immune responses. Antigens from pathogens and toxins are the "villains" of our story.

Properties of Antigens

Not every molecule is an effective antigen. Among the properties that make certain molecules more effective at provoking adaptive immunity are a molecule's *shape, size,* and *complexity.* The body recognizes antigens by the three-dimensional shapes of regions called **epitopes,** which are also known as *antigenic determinants* because they are the actual part of an antigen that determines an immune response **(Figure 16.3a)**.

In general, larger molecules with molecular masses (often called molecular weights) between 5000 and 100,000 daltons are better antigens than smaller ones. The most effective antigens are large foreign macromolecules, such as proteins and glycoproteins, but carbohydrates and lipids can be antigenic. Small molecules, especially those with a molecular mass under 5000 daltons, make poor antigens by themselves because they evade detection; however, they can become antigenic when bound to larger, carrier molecules (often proteins). For example, the fungal product penicillin is too small by itself (molecular mass: 302 daltons) to trigger a specific immune response. However, bound to a carrier protein in the blood, penicillin can become antigenic and trigger an allergic response in some patients.

Complex molecules make better antigens than simple ones because they have more epitopes, like a gemstone with its many facets. For example, starch, which is a very large polymer of repeating glucose subunits, is not a good antigen, despite its large size, because it lacks structural complexity. In contrast, complicated molecules, such as glycoproteins and phospholipids, have multiple distinctive shapes and novel combinations of subunits that cells of the immune system recognize as foreign.

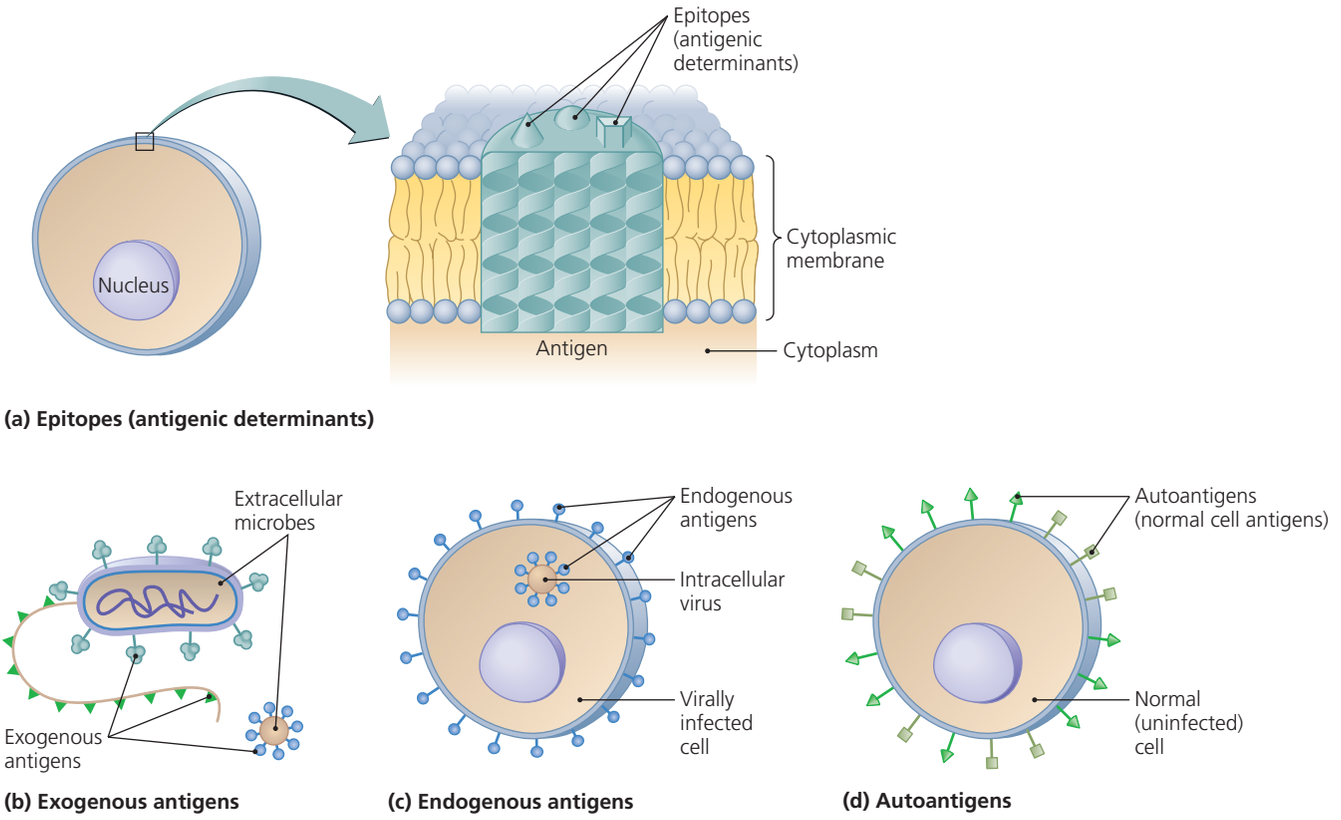
Examples of antigens include components of bacterial cell walls, capsules, pili, and flagella as well as the external and internal proteins of viruses, fungi, and protozoa. Many toxins and some nucleic acid molecules are also antigenic. Invading microorganisms are not the only source of antigens; for example, food may contain antigens called *allergens* that provoke allergic reactions, and inhaled dust contains mite feces, pollen grains, dander (flakes of skin), and other antigenic and allergenic particles. (Chapter 18 covers allergies in more detail.)

Types of Antigens

Though immunologists categorize antigens in various ways, one especially important way is to group antigens according to their relationship to the body:

- **Exogenous**[3] **antigens (Figure 16.3b)**. Exogenous (eks-oj´en-us) antigens include toxins and other secretions and components of microbial cell walls, membranes, flagella, and pili.
- **Endogenous**[4] **antigens (Figure 16.3c)**. Protozoa, fungi, bacteria, and viruses that reproduce inside a body's cells produce endogenous antigens. The immune system cannot assess the health of the body's cells; it responds to endogenous antigens only if the body's cells incorporate such antigens into their cytoplasmic membranes, leading to their external display.
- **Autoantigens**[5] **(Figure 16.3d)**. Antigenic molecules derived from normal cellular processes are autoantigens (or *self-antigens*). As we will discuss more fully in a later section, immune cells that treat autoantigens as if they were foreign

[2]From *anti*body *gen*erator; antibodies are proteins secreted during an antibody immune response that bind to specific regions of antigens.
[3]From Greek *exo*, meaning "without," and *genein*, meaning "to produce."
[4]From Greek *endon*, meaning "within."
[5]From Greek *autos*, meaning "self."



▲ Figure 16.3 Antigens, molecules that provoke a specific immune response. (a) Epitopes, or antigenic determinants, are three-dimensional regions of antigens whose shapes are recognized by cells of the immune system. **(b–d)** Categories of antigens based on their relationship to the body. Exogenous antigens originate from microbes located outside the body's cells; endogenous antigens are produced by intracellular microbes and are typically incorporated into a host cell's cytoplasmic membrane; autoantigens are components of normal body cells.

are normally eliminated during the development of the immune system. This phenomenon, called *self-tolerance,* prevents the body from mounting an immune response against itself.

So far, we have examined two aspects of immune responses in terms of an analogy to a stage play—the lymphoid organs and tissues provide the stage, and antigens of pathogens are the villains that induce an immune response with their epitopes (antigenic determinants). Next, we examine the activities of lymphocytes in more detail. Recall that B and T lymphocytes act against antigens; they are the "heroes" of the action. We begin by considering B lymphocytes.

B Lymphocytes (B Cells) and Antibodies

Learning Outcomes

16.9 Describe the characteristic of B lymphocytes that furnishes them specificity.

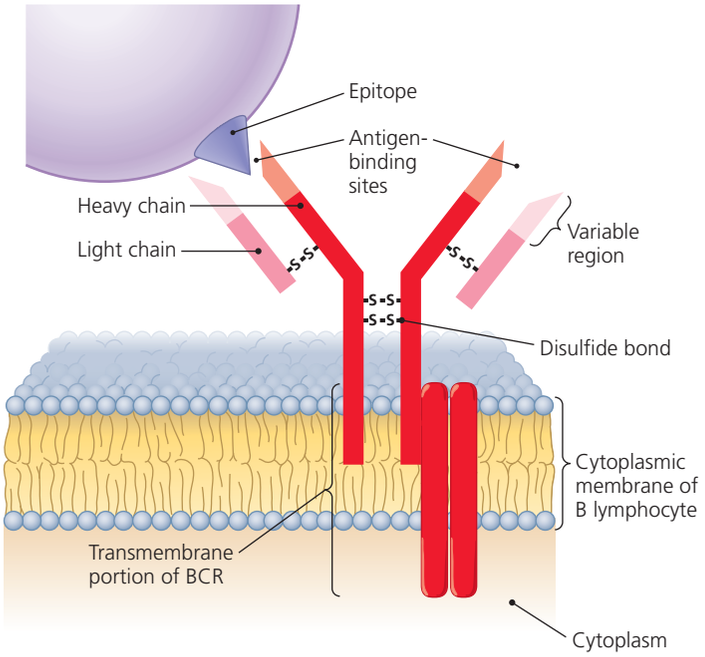
16.10 Describe the basic structure of an immunoglobulin molecule.

16.11 Contrast the structure and function of the five classes of immunoglobulins.

B lymphocytes are found in the spleen, in MALT, and in the primary follicles of lymph nodes. A small percentage of B cells circulates in the blood. The major function of B cells is the secretion of soluble antibodies, which we examine in more detail shortly. As we have established, B cells function in antibody immune responses, each of which is against only a particular epitope. There is a B cell to fight each different "villain." How is such specificity developed and maintained? Specificity comes from membrane proteins called *B cell receptors.*

Specificity of the B Cell Receptor (BCR)

The surface of each B lymphocyte is covered with about 500,000 identical copies of a protein called the **B cell receptor (BCR).** A BCR is a type of *immunoglobulin* (im´yū-nō-glob´yū-lin; Ig). A simple immunoglobulin contains four polypeptide chains—two identical longer chains called *heavy chains* and two identical shorter *light chains* **(Figure 16.4)**. The terms *heavy* and *light* refer to their relative molecular masses. Disulfide bonds, which are covalent bonds between sulfur atoms in two different amino acids, link the light chains to the heavy chains in such a way that a simple immunoglobulin looks like the letter Y. A BCR has two *arms* and a *transmembrane portion.* Each arm's end is a *variable region* because ends of each heavy and each light chain vary in amino acid sequence among B cells. The transmembrane portion anchors the BCR in the cytoplasmic membrane and consists of the stem of the Y (composed of the tails of the two heavy chains) and two other polypeptides.



▲ **Figure 16.4** **B cell receptor (BCR).** The B cell receptor is composed of a symmetrical, epitope-binding, Y-shaped protein in association with two transmembrane polypeptides.

Each B cell randomly generates a single BCR gene during its development in the bone marrow. Scientists estimate that there are fewer than 25,000 genes in a human cell, yet there are billions of different BCR proteins in an individual. Obviously, a person cannot have a separate gene for each BCR; instead, a developing B cell randomly recombines segments from three immunoglobulin regions of DNA and combines these segments to develop novel BCR genes. A cell may also randomly change its BCR genes to develop even more diversity. Each newly formed BCR gene codes for a specific and unique BCR. **Highlight: BCR Diversity: The Star of the Show** on p. 472 expands on the genetic explanation for the extensive BCR diversity.

All the BCRs of any particular cell are identical because the variable regions of every BCR on a single cell are identical—the two light chain variable regions are identical, and the two heavy chain variable regions are identical. Together the two variable regions form **antigen-binding sites** (see Figure 16.4). Antigen-binding sites are complementary in shape to the three-dimensional shape of an epitope and bind precisely to it. Exact binding between antigen-binding site and epitope accounts for the specificity of an antibody immune response.

Though all of the BCRs on a single B cell are the same, the BCRs of one cell differ from the BCRs of all other B cells, much as each snowflake is distinct from all others. Scientists estimate that each person forms no fewer than 10^9 and likely as many as 10^{13} B lymphocytes—each with its own BCR. Because an antigen (e.g., a bacterial protein) typically has numerous epitopes of various shapes, many different BCRs will recognize any particular antigen's epitopes, but each BCR recognizes only one epitope. BCR genes are randomly generated in sufficient numbers that the entire repertoire of BCRs (each carried by a particular B lymphocyte) is capable of recognizing the entire repertoire of thousands of millions of different epitopes. In other words, at least one BCR is fortuitously complementary to any given specific epitope that the body may or may not encounter.

An analogy will serve to clarify this point. Imagine a locksmith who has a copy of every possible key to fit every possible lock. If a customer arrives at the shop with a lock needing a key, the locksmith can provide it (though it may take a while to find the correct key). Similarly, you have a BCR complementary to every possible epitope in the environment, though you will encounter only some of them. For example, you have lymphocytes with BCRs complementary to epitopes of stingray venom, though it is unlikely you will ever be stabbed by a stingray.

When an antigenic epitope stimulates a specific B cell via the B cell's unique BCR, the B cell responds by undergoing cell division, giving rise to nearly identical offspring that secrete immunoglobulins into the blood or lymph. The immunoglobulins act against the epitope shape that stimulated the B cell. Activated, immunoglobulin-secreting B lymphocytes are called **plasma cells.** They have extensive rough endoplasmic reticulum and many Golgi bodies involved in the synthesis, packaging, and secreting of the immunoglobulins. Next we consider the structure and functions of the secreted immunoglobulins, which are called antibodies.

Specificity and Antibody Structure

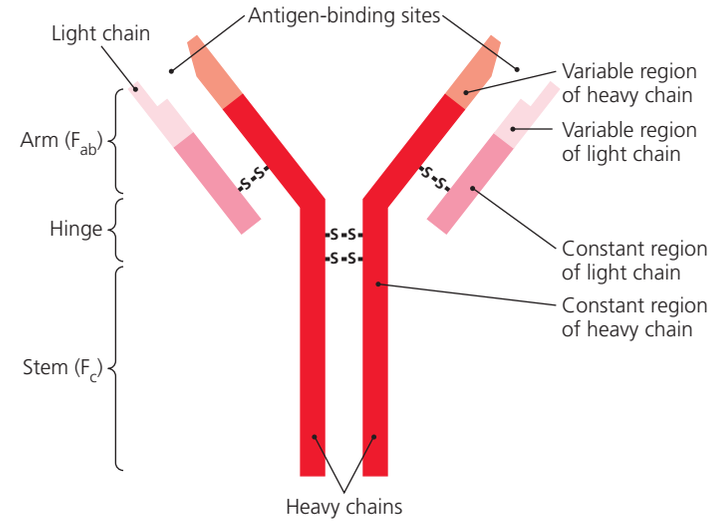
Antibodies are free immunoglobulins—not attached to a membrane—and similar to BCRs in shape. Antibodies are secreted and lack most of the transmembrane portions of BCRs **(Figure 16.5)**. Thus, a basic antibody molecule is Y-shaped with two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains. The antigen-binding sites of antibodies from a given plasma cell are identical to one another and to the antigen-binding sites of that cell's BCR; thus, antibodies carry the same specificity for an epitope as the BCR of the activated B cell.

Because the arms of an antibody molecule contain antigen-binding sites, they are also known as the F_{ab} *regions (fragment, antigen-binding)*. The angle between the arms and the stem can change because the point at which they join is hinge-like. An antibody stem, which is formed of the lower portions of the two heavy chains, is also called the F_c *region* (because it forms a *fragment* that is *crystallizable*).

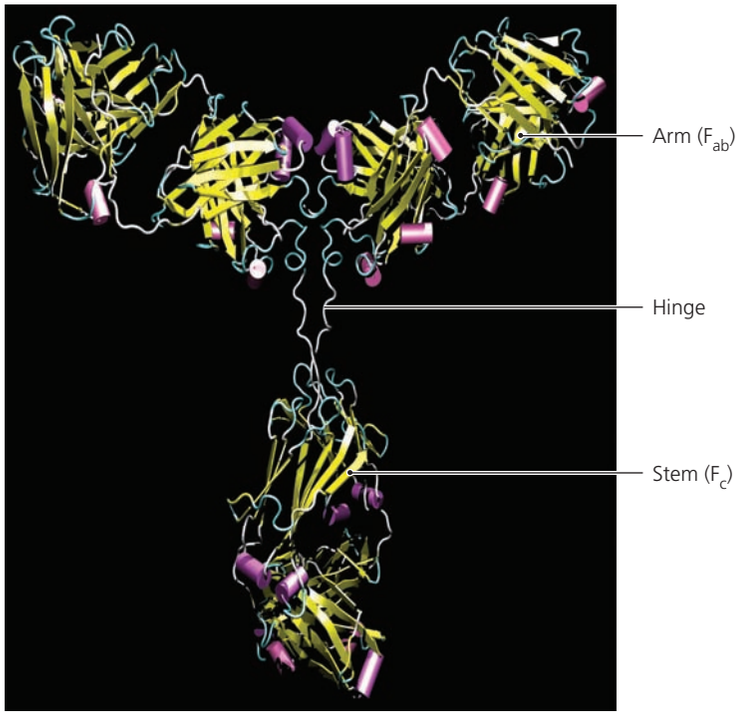
There are five basic types of stems (F_c regions), designated by the Greek letters *mu, gamma, alpha, epsilon,* and *delta*. A plasma cell attaches the gene for its heavy chain variable region to one of the five genes to form one of five classes of antibodies known as IgM, IgG, IgA, IgE, and IgD.

Antibody Function

As we have seen, antigen-binding sites of antibodies are complementary to epitopes; in fact, the shapes of the two can match so closely that most water molecules are excluded from the area of contact, producing a strong, noncovalent, hydrophobic interaction. Additionally, hydrogen bonds and other molecular attractions mediate antibody binding to epitope. The binding of antibody to epitope is the central functional feature of antibody



(a)



(b)

▲ Figure 16.5 Basic antibody structure. (a) Artist's rendition. Each antibody molecule, which is shaped like the letter Y, consists of two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains held together by disulfide bonds. Five different kinds of heavy chains form an antibody's stem (F_c region). The arms (F_{ab} regions) terminate in variable regions to form two antigen-binding sites. The hinge region is flexible, allowing the arms to bend in almost any direction. **(b)** Three-dimensional shape of an antibody based on X-ray crystallography. *Why are the two antigen-binding sites on a typical antibody molecule identical?*

Figure 16.5 *The amino acid sequences of the two light chains of an antibody molecule are identical, as are the sequences of the two heavy chains, so the binding sites—each composed of the ends of one light chain and one heavy chain—must be identical.*

moral adaptive immune responses. Once bound, antibodies function in several ways. These include activation of complement and inflammation, neutralization, opsonization, direct killing, agglutination, and antibody-dependent cytoxicity.

Activation of Complement and Inflammation Stems of two or more IgM antibodies bind to complement protein 1 (C1), activating it to become enzymatic. This begins the classical complement pathway, which releases inflammatory mediators. In addition, IgE bound to antigen attaches via its stem to most cells and eosinophils. Attachement triggers the release of inflammatory chemicals. This is what is seen in allergies. (Figures 15.9 and 15.10 more fully illustrate the defense reactions of complement activation and inflammation.)

Neutralization IgA antibodies can **neutralize** a toxin by binding to a critical portion of the toxin so that it can no longer harm the body. Similarly, antibodies can block adhesion molecules on the surface of a bacterium or virus, neutralizing the pathogen's virulence because it cannot adhere to its target cell **(Figure 16.6a)**.

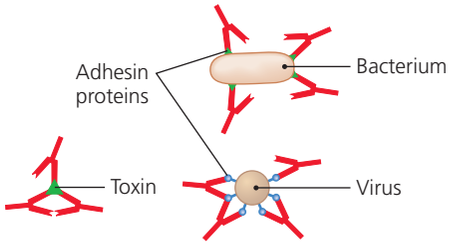
Opsonization Antibodies act as **opsonins**[6]—molecules that stimulate phagocytosis. Neutrophils and macrophages have receptors for the stems of IgG molecules; therefore, these leukocytes bind to the stems of antibodies. Once antibodies are so bound, the leukocytes phagocytize them, along with the antigens they carry, at a faster rate compared to antigens lacking bound antibody. Changing the surface of an antigen so as to enhance phagocytosis is called **opsonization** (op´sŏ-nī-zā´shŭn; **Figure 16.6b**).

Killing by Oxidation Recently, scientists have shown that some antibodies have catalytic properties that allow them to kill bacteria directly **(Figure 16.6c)**. Specifically, antibodies catalyze the production of hydrogen peroxide, ozone, and other potent oxidants that kill bacteria.

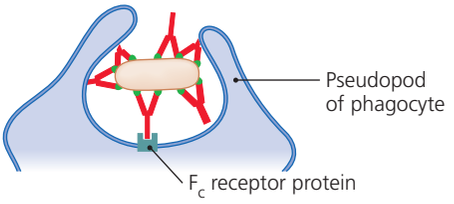
Agglutination Because each basic antibody has two antigen-binding sites, each can attach to two epitopes at once. Numerous antibodies can aggregate antigens together—a state called **agglutination** (ă-glū-ti-nā´shŭn; **Figure 16.6d**). Agglutination of soluble molecules typically causes them to become insoluble and precipitate. Agglutination may hinder the activity of pathogenic organisms and increases the chance that they will be phagocytized or filtered out of the blood by the spleen. (Chapter 17 examines some uses scientists make of the agglutinating nature of antibodies.)

Antibody-Dependent Cellular Cytoxicity (ADCC) Antibodies often coat a target cell by binding to epitopes all over the target's surface. The antibodies' stems can then bind to receptors on special lymphocytes called *natural killer lymphocytes (NK cells),*

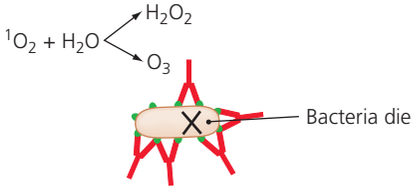
[6]From Greek *opsonein*, meaning "to supply food," and *izein*, meaning "to cause"; thus, loosely, "to prepare for dinner."



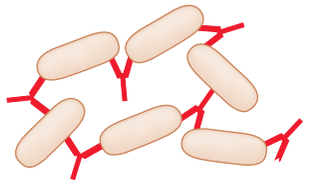
(a) Neutralization



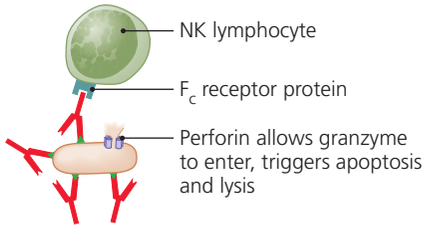
(b) Opsonization



(c) Oxidation



(d) Agglutination



(e) Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC)

▲ **Figure 16.6 Five functions of antibodies.** Drawings are not to scale. **(a)** Neutralization of toxins and microbes. **(b)** Opsonization. **(c)** Oxidation by toxic forms of oxygen such as $^1O_2$ (singlet oxygen), H_2O_2 (hydrogen peroxide), and O_3 (ozone). **(d)** Agglutination. **(e)** Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity. Antibodies have two other functions—activation of complement and participation in inflammation—(illustrated in Chapter 15).

which are neither B nor T cells. NK lymphocytes lyse target cells with proteins called **perforin** (per´fōr-in) and **granzyme** (gran´zīm). Perforin molecules form into a tubular structure in the target cell's membrane, forming a channel through which granzyme enters the cell and triggers **apoptosis**[7] (programmed cell suicide; Figure 16.6e). **Antibody-dependent cellular toxicity (ADCC)** is similar to opsonization in that antibodies cover the target cell; however, with ADCC the target dies by apoptosis, whereas with opsonization the target is phagocytized.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Humoral Immunity: Antibody Function*

Classes of Antibodies

Threats confronting the body can be extremely variable, so it is not surprising that there are several classes of antibody. The class involved in any given antibody immune response depends on the type of invading foreign antigens, the portal of entry involved, and the antibody function required. Here, we consider the structure and functions of the five classes of antibodies.

Every B cell begins by attaching its variable region gene to the gene for the mu stem and thus begins by making class M—**immunoglobulin M (IgM).** Most IgM is secreted during the initial stages of an immune response. A secreted IgM molecule is more than five times larger than the basic Y-shape because secreted IgM is a pentamer, consisting of five basic units linked together in a circular fashion via disulfide bonds and a short polypeptide *joining (J) chain* (see Table 16.1 on p. 474). Each IgM subunit has a conventional immunoglobulin structure, consisting of two light chains and two mu heavy chains. IgM is most efficient at complement activation, which also triggers inflammation, and can be involved in agglutination and neutralization.

In a process called **class switching,** a plasma cell then combines its variable region gene to the gene for a different stem and begins secreting a new class of antibodies. The most common switch is to the gene for heavy chain gamma; that is, the plasma cell switches to synthesizing immunoglobulin G.

Immunoglobulin G (IgG) is the most common and longest-lasting class of antibody in the blood, accounting for about 80% of serum antibodies, possibly because IgG has many functions. Each molecule of IgG has the basic Y-shaped antibody structure.

IgG molecules play a major role in antibody-mediated defense mechanisms, including complement activation, opsonization, neutralization, and antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). IgG molecules can leave blood vessels to enter extracellular spaces more easily than can the other immunoglobulins. This is especially important during inflammation because it enables IgG to bind to invading pathogens before they get into the circulatory systems. IgG molecules are also the only antibodies that cross a placenta to protect a developing child.

[7] Greek, meaning "falling off."

HIGHLIGHT

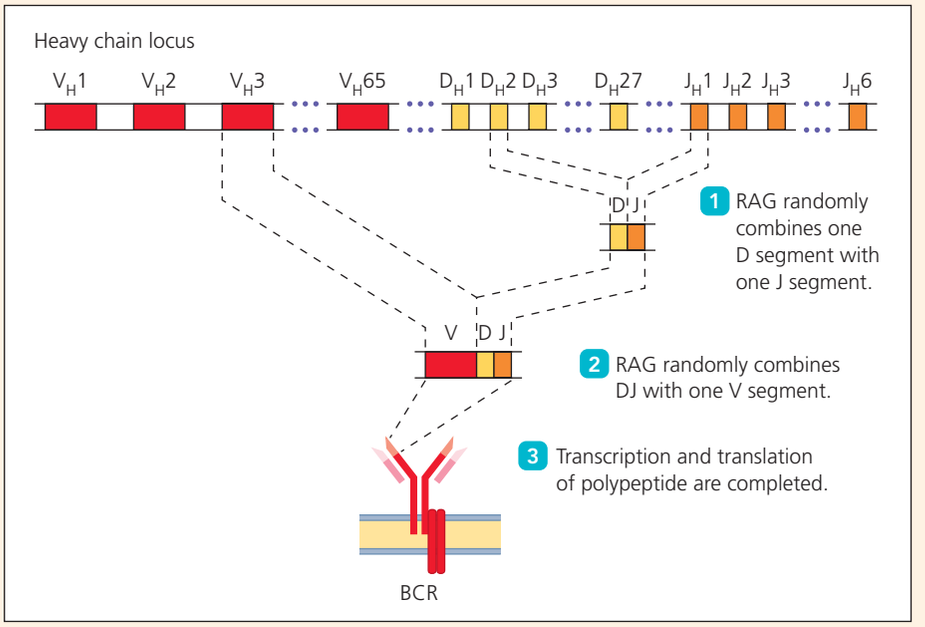
BCR DIVERSITY: THE STAR OF THE SHOW

How does your body generate billions of unique B cell receptor proteins (BCRs) so as to recognize the thousand of millions of foreign epitopes on pathogens that attack you? There isn't enough DNA in a cell to have individual genes for so many receptors. It would require several thousand times more DNA than you have. The answer to the problem of BCR diversity lies in the ingenious way in which B cells use their relatively small number of diverse BCR genes.

Genes for BCRs occur in discrete stretches of DNA called *loci* (singular: *locus*). Genes for the constant region are located downstream from loci for the variable regions. We will consider the variable region genes first because it is in the variable region that BCR diversity is greatest.

BCR variable region genes occur in three loci on each of two chromosomes—one locus for the heavy chain variable region and two loci (called *kappa* and *lambda*) for the light chain variable region. Each cell is diploid—having two of each type of chromosome—so there are six loci all together. However, a developing B cell uses only one chromosome's loci for each of its heavy and light chains. Once a locus on a particular chromosome is used, the other chromosome's corresponding locus is inhibited.

Each locus is divided further into distinct genetic segments coding for portions of its respective chain. The heavy chain variable region locus has three segments called *variable (V_H), diversity (D_H),* and *junction (J_H) segments.* In each of your developing B cells there are 65 variable segment genes, 27 diversity segment genes, and 6 junction segment genes. Each light chain variable region locus has an additional *variable segment (V_L)* and a *junction segment (J_L).* For the kappa locus, there are 40 variable segment genes and 5 junction genes. The lambda locus is less variable, having only 30 V genes and a single J gene.



A great variety of BCRs form during B cell maturation as the B cell uses an enzyme called RAG—the *recombination activating gene* protein—to randomly combine one of each kind of the various segments to form its BCR gene. An analogy will help your understanding of this concept. Imagine that you have a wardrobe consisting of 65 different pairs of shoes, 27 different shirts, and 6 different pairs of pants that can be combined to create outfits. You can choose any one pair of shoes, any one shirt, and any one pair of pants each day, so with these 98 pieces of clothing, you will potentially have 10,530 different outfits ($65 \times 27 \times 6$). Your roommate might have the same numbers of items but in different colors and styles; so between you, you will have twice as many potential outfits—21,060! Similarly, each developing B cell has 10,530 possible combinations of V_H, D_H, and J_H segments on each of its two chromosomes for a total of 21,060 possible heavy chain variable region gene combinations.

The developing B cell also uses RAG to recombine the segments of the light chain variable loci. Because there are 200 (40×5) possible kappa genes and 30 (30×1) possible lambda genes on each chromosome, there is a total of 460 possible light chain genes on the two chromosomes. Therefore, each B cell can make one of a possible 9,687,600 ($21,060 \times 460$) different BCRs using only 348 genetic segments in the heavy and light chain loci on its two chromosomes.

Still, these nearly 10 million different BCRs do not account for all the variability seen among BCRs. Each B cell creates additional diversity: RAG randomly removes portions of D and J segments before joining the two together. Another enzyme randomly adds nucleotides to each heavy chain VDJ combination, and B cells in the primary follicles of lymph nodes undergo random point mutations in their V regions. The result of RAG recombinations, random deletions, random insertions, and point mutations is tremendous potential variability. Scientists estimate that you may have about 10^{23} B cell receptor possibilities. That's one hundred billion trillion—a number 10 times greater than all the stars in the universe! Your B cells are indeed stars of the show.

Immunoglobulin A (IgA), which has alpha heavy chains, is the immunoglobulin most closely associated with various body secretions. Some of the body's IgA is a monomer with the basic Y-shape that circulates in the blood, constituting about 12% of total serum antibody. However, plasma cells in the tear ducts, mammary glands, and mucous membranes synthesize **secretory IgA,** which is composed of two monomeric IgA molecules linked via a J chain and another short polypeptide (called a *secretory component*). Plasma cells add secretory component during the transport of secretory IgA across mucous membranes. Secretory component protects secretory IgA from digestion by intestinal enzymes.

Secretory IgA agglutinates and neutralizes antigens and is of critical importance in protecting the body from infections arising in the gastrointestinal, respiratory, urinary, and reproductive tracts. IgA provides nursing newborns some protection against foreign antigens because mammary glands secrete IgA into milk. Thus, nursing babies receive antibodies directed against antigens that have infected their mothers and are likely to infect them as well.

Immunoglobulin E (IgE) is a typical Y-shaped immunoglobulin with two epsilon heavy chains. Because it is found in extremely low concentrations in serum (less than 1% of total antibody), it is not critical for most antibody functions. Instead, IgE antibodies act as signal molecules—they attach to receptors on eosinophil cytoplasmic membranes to trigger the release of cell-damaging molecules onto the surface of parasites, particularly parasitic worms. IgE antibodies also trigger mast cells and basophils to release inflammatory chemicals, such as histamine. In developed countries, IgE is more likely associated with allergies than with parasitic worms.

Immunoglobulin D (IgD) is characterized by delta heavy chains. IgD molecules are not secreted but are membrane-bound antigen receptors on B cells that are often seen during the initial phases of an antibody immune response. In this regard, IgD antibodies are like BCRs. Not all mammals have IgD, and animals that lack IgD show no observable ill effects; therefore, scientists do not know the exact function or importance of this class of antibody.

Table 16.1 on p. 474 compares the different classes of immunoglobulins and adds some details of antibody structure.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Two students are studying for an exam on the body's defensive systems. One of them insists that complement is part of the nonspecific second line of defense, but the partner insists that complement is part of an antibody immune response in the third line of defense. How would you explain to them that they are both correct?

In most cases, B cells do not act alone to mount an antibody immune response. Instead, they respond to antigens only with the assistance of certain T lymphocytes. We will continue discussion of the details of antibody immune responses after we consider the various T cells.

T Lymphocytes (T Cells)

Learning Outcomes

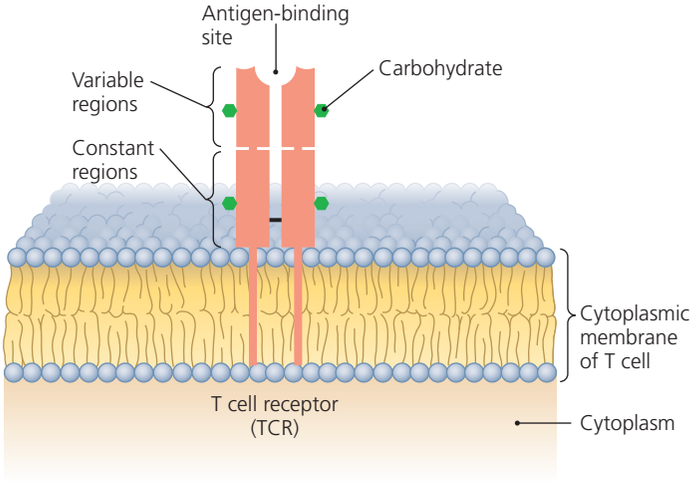
16.12 Describe the importance of the thymus to the development of T lymphocytes.
16.13 Describe the basic characteristics common to T lymphocytes.
16.14 Compare and contrast three types of T cells.

A human adult's red bone marrow produces T lymphocytes. Sticky, adhesive molecules coupled with the action of chemotactic molecules attract these lymphocytes to the thymus from blood vessels. T cells mature in the thymus under the influence of molecular signals from the thymus. Following maturation, T cells circulate in the lymph and blood and migrate to the lymph nodes, spleen, and Peyer's patches. They account for about 70% to 85% of all lymphocytes in the blood.

T lymphocytes are like B cells in their specificity. Each T cell has about half a million copies of a **T cell receptor (TCR)** on its cytoplasmic membrane. Each T cell randomly chooses and combines segments of DNA from TCR genes to create a novel gene that codes for that cell's unique and specific TCR. The random production of diverse TCRs accomplished by recombining TCR genes is similar to the way BCRs are produced.

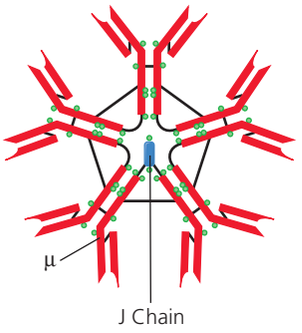
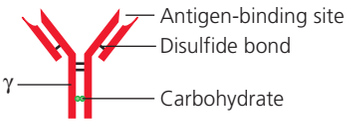
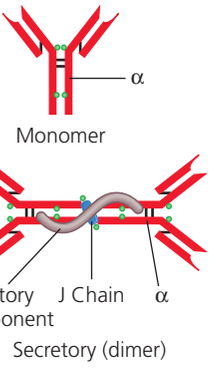
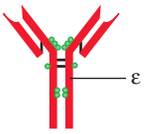
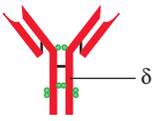
Specificity of the T Cell Receptor (TCR)

The terminal ends of TCRs are composed of variable regions that grant each cell's TCR a specific antigen-binding site **(Figure 16.7)**. Similarly to binding by a BCR, a TCR recognizes and binds to a complementary shape, but TCRs do not recognize epitopes directly. A TCR binds only to an epitope associated with a particular protein called *MHC protein,* which will be discussed shortly. There are at least 10^9 different TCRs—each specific TCR type on a different T cell—which is enough for every epitope–MHC protein.



▲ **Figure 16.7 A T cell receptor (TCR).** A TCR is an asymmetrical surface molecule composed of two polypeptides containing a single antigen-binding site between them.

TABLE 16.1 Characteristics of the Five Classes of Antibodies

	IgM	IgG	IgA	IgE	IgD
					
Structure, number of binding sites	Pentamer, 10	Monomer, 2	Monomer, 2 Dimer, 4	Monomer, 2	Monomer, 2
Type of heavy chain	Mu (μ)	Gamma (γ)	Alpha (α)	Epsilon (ε)	Delta (δ)
Functions	Monomer can act as BCR; pentamer acts in complement activation, neutralization, agglutination	Complement activation, neutralization, opsonization, production of hydrogen peroxide, agglutination, and antibody-dependent cellular toxicity (ADCC); crosses placenta to protect fetus	Neutralization and agglutination; dimer is secretory antibody	Triggers release of antiparasitic molecules from eosinophils and of histamines from basophils and mast cells (allergic reactions)	Unknown, but perhaps acts as BCR
Locations	Serum, B cell surface	Serum, mast cell surfaces	Monomer: serum Dimer: mucous membrane secretions (e.g., tears, saliva, mucus); milk	Serum, mast cell surfaces	B cell surface
Approximate half-life (time it takes for concentration to reduce by half) in blood	10 days	20 days	6 days	2 days	3 days
Percentage of serum antibodies	5–10%	80%	10–15%	<1%	<0.05%
Size (mass in kilodaltons)	970	150	Monomer: 160 Dimer: 385	188	184

Many T lymphocytes act primarily against body cells that harbor intracellular pathogens, such as viruses, though they also can act against body cells that produce abnormal cell-surface proteins (such as cancer cells). Because T cells act directly against antigens (they do not secrete immunoglobulins), their immune activities are called cell-mediated immune responses.

Types of T Lymphocytes

Immunologists recognize types of T cells based on surface glycoproteins and characteristic functions. These are *cytotoxic T cells, helper T cells,* and *regulatory T cells.*

Cytotoxic T Lymphocyte Every **cytotoxic T cell (Tc** or **CD8 cell)** is distinguished by copies of its own unique TCR as well as the presence of CD8 cell-surface glycoprotein. CD (for *cluster of differentiation*) glycoproteins are named with internationally accepted designations consisting of a number following the prefix. These numbers reflect the order in which the glycoproteins were discovered, not the order in which they are produced or function. As the name *cytotoxic T cell* implies, these lymphocytes directly kill other cells—those infected with viruses and other intracellular pathogens as well as abnormal cells, such as cancer cells.

Helper T Lymphocyte Immunologists distinguish **helper T cells (Th** or **CD4 cells)** by the presence of the CD4 glycoproteins. These cells are called "helpers" because their function is to assist in regulating the activity of B cells and cytotoxic T cells during immune responses by providing necessary

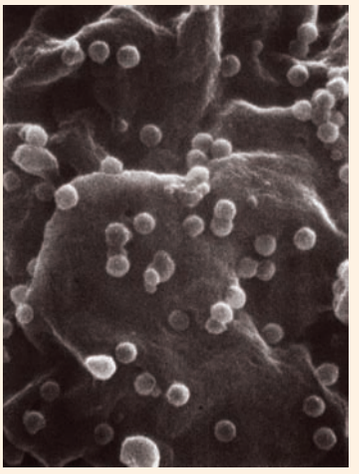
HIGHLIGHT

THE LOSS OF HELPER T CELLS IN AIDS PATIENTS

Neither B cells nor cytotoxic T cells respond effectively to most antigens without the participation of helper T cells because signals are passed more effectively among leukocytes when the CD4 molecules of helper T cells bind to certain leukocytes.

In order for viruses to enter cells and replicate, they must first attach to a specific protein on their target cells' surface (see Chapter 13). In the case of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the causative agent of AIDS, the surface protein to which it attaches is CD4, and its target cells are helper T cells. Once HIV enters a helper T cell, it, like other viruses, takes over the cell's protein-synthesizing machinery and directs the cell to produce more viruses.

Because helper T cells are essential to mounting an effective immune response, the body normally has a surplus of them—usually about three times as many as it needs. As a result, individuals infected with HIV can typically lose up to about two-thirds of their helper T cells before signs of immune deficiency appear. Cell-mediated immunity is usually affected first; even though B cells require the assistance of helper T cells to function optimally, they can still be stimulated directly by large quantities of antigen. Normal human blood typically contains about three CD4 helper T cells for every two CD8 cytotoxic T cells—a CD4-to-CD8 ratio of 3:2. During the course of HIV infection, however, CD4 helper T cells are lost, reducing the CD4-to-CD8 ratio such that individuals with full-blown AIDS may have a ratio lower than 1:7.



HIV budding from Th cells.

signals and growth factors. During an immune response, there are two main subpopulations of helper T cells: *type 1 helper T cells (Th1 cells),* which assist cytotoxic T cells and stimulate and regulate innate immunity, and *type 2 helper T cells (Th2 cells),* which function in conjunction with B cells. Immunologists distinguish Th1 from Th2 cells on the basis of their secretions and by characteristic cell-surface proteins.

Helper T cells secrete various soluble protein messengers called *cytokines* that regulate the entire immune system, both adaptive and innate portions. We will consider the types and effects of cytokines shortly. **Highlight: The Loss of Helper T Cells in AIDS Patients** describes some of the effects of the destruction of helper T cells in individuals infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Cell-Mediated Immunity: Helper T Cells***

Regulatory T Lymphocyte **Regulatory T cells (Tr cells),** previously known as *suppressor T cells,* repress adaptive immune responses and prevent autoimmune diseases. Tr cells express CD4 and CD25 glycoproteins. Scientists have not fully characterized the manner in which Tr cells work, but it is known that they are activated by contact with other immune cells and that they secrete some immunologically active chemicals called *cytokines,* which we examine in a subsequent section.

Table 16.2 compares and contrasts the features of various types of lymphocytes. We have considered the primary lymphocytes involved in immune responses. Now, we turn our attention to the way in which the body eliminates T cells and B cells that recognize normal body antigens by means of their BCRs and TCRs, respectively.

Clonal Deletion

Learning Outcomes

16.15 Describe apoptosis and explain its role in lymphocyte editing by clonal deletion.

16.16 Compare and contrast clonal deletion of T cells and clonal deletion of B cells.

Given that both T and B lymphocytes randomly generate the variable region shapes of their receptors (TCRs and BCRs, respectively), every population of maturing lymphocytes includes numerous

TABLE 16.2 Characteristics of Selected Lymphocytes

Lymphocyte	Site of Maturation	Representative Cell-Surface Glycoproteins	Selected Secretions
B cell	Red bone marrow	CD40 and distinctive BCR	Antibodies
Helper T cell type 1 (Th1)	Thymus	CD4, CCR5, and distinctive TCR	Interleukin 2, IFN-γ
Helper T cell type 2 (Th2)	Thymus	CD4, CCR3, CCR4, and distinctive TCR	Interleukin 4
Cytotoxic T cell (Tc)	Thymus	CD8, CD95L, and distinctive TCR	Perforin, granzyme
Regulatory T cell (Tr)	Thymus	CD4, CD25, and distinctive TCR	Cytokines, such as interleukin 10

cells with receptors complementary to normal body components—the autoantigens mentioned earlier. It is vitally important that specific immune responses not be directed against autoantigens; the immune system must be tolerant of "self." When self-tolerance is impaired, the result is an *autoimmune disease* (see Chapter 18).

The body eliminates self-reactive lymphocytes via **clonal deletion,** so named because elimination of a cell deletes its potential offspring (clones). In this process, lymphocytes are exposed to autoantigens, and those lymphocytes that react to autoantigens undergo *apoptosis* (programmed cell suicide) and are thereby deleted from the repertoire of lymphocytes. Apoptosis is the critical feature of clonal deletion and the development of self-tolerance. The result of clonal deletion is that surviving lymphocytes respond only to foreign antigens. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Clonal Deletion*

In humans, clonal deletion occurs in the thymus for T lymphocytes and in the bone marrow for B lymphocytes. Lymphocyte clonal deletion is slightly different in T cells than it is in B cells. We will examine each in turn.

Clonal Deletion of T Cells

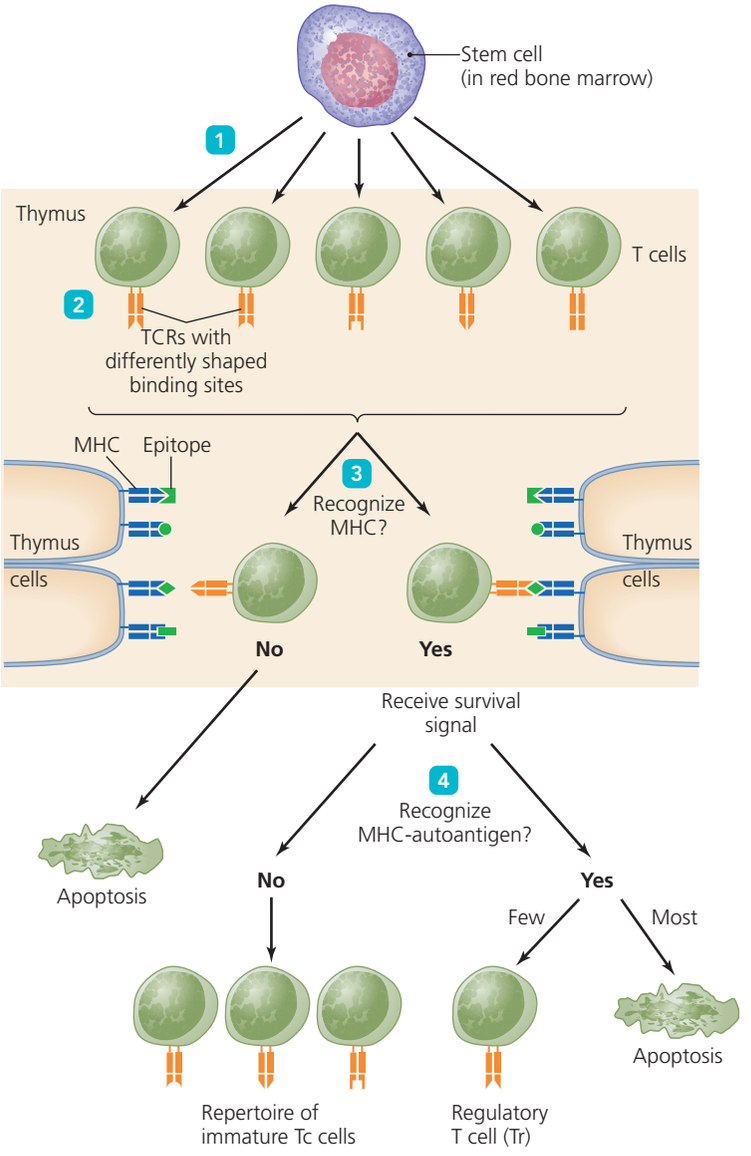
As we have seen, T cells recognize epitopes when the epitopes are bound to MHC protein. Young T lymphocytes spend about a week in the thymus being exposed to all of the body's natural epitopes through a unique feature of thymus cells. As a group, these cells express all of the body's normal proteins, including proteins that have no function in the thymus. For example, some thymus cells synthesize lysozyme, hemoglobin, and muscle cell proteins, though these proteins are not expressed externally to the cells. Rather, thymus cells process these autoantigens so as to express their epitopes in association with an MHC protein. Since the cells collectively synthesize polypeptides from the body's proteins, together they process and present all the body's autoantigens to young T cells.

Immature T cells undergo one of four fates **(Figure 16.8)**:

- Those T cells that do not recognize the body's MHC protein undergo apoptosis, in other words, clonal deletion. Since they do not recognize the body's own MHC protein, they will be of no use identifying foreign epitopes carried by MHC protein. T cells that do recognize the body's MHC protein receive a signal to survive.
- Those that subsequently recognize autoantigen in conjunction with MHC protein mostly die by apoptosis, further clonal deletion.
- A few of these "self-recognizing" T cells remain alive to become regulatory T cells.
- The remaining T cells are those that will recognize the body's own MHC protein in conjunction with foreign epitopes and not with autoantigens. These T lymphocytes become the repertoire of protective T cells, which leave the thymus to circulate in the blood and lymph.

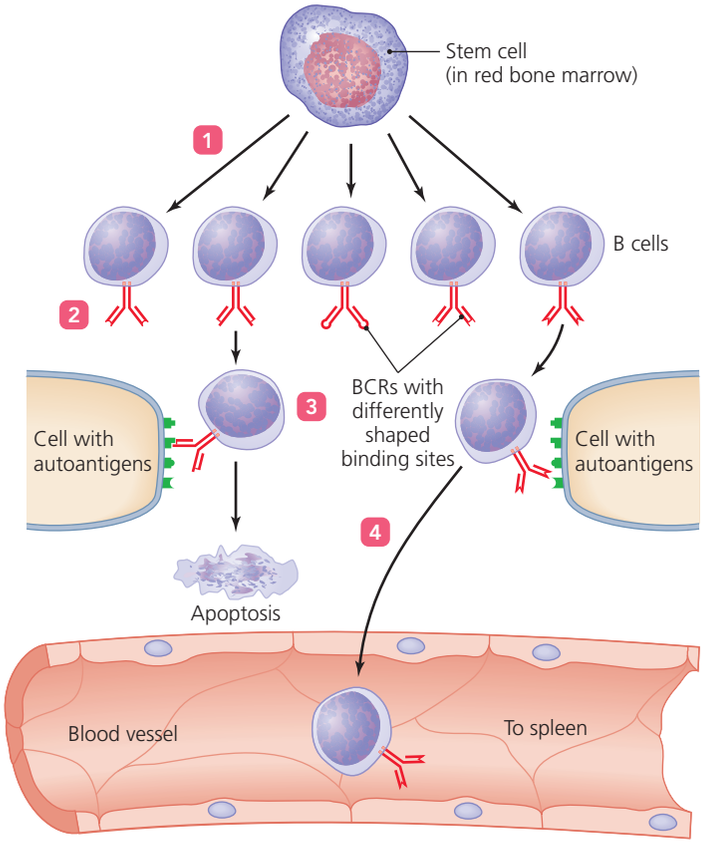
Clonal Deletion of B Cells

Clonal deletion of B cells occurs in the bone marrow in a similar fashion **(Figure 16.9)**, though self-reactive B cells may become inactive or change their BCR rather than undergo apoptosis. In any case, self-reactive B cells are removed from the active B cell repertoire so that the antibody immune response does not act against autoantigens. Tolerant B cells leave the bone marrow and travel to the spleen, where they undergo further maturation before circulating in the blood and lymph.



▲ **Figure 16.8 Clonal deletion of T cells.** 1 Stem cells in the red bone marrow generate a host of lymphocytes that move to the thymus. 2 In the thymus, each lymphocyte randomly generates a TCR with a particular shape. Note that each cell's TCR binding sites differ from those of other cells. 3 T cells pass through a series of "decision questions" in the thymus: Are their TCRs complementary to the body's MHC protein? If no, they undergo apoptosis—*clonal deletion*. If yes, they survive. 4 Do the surviving cells recognize MHC protein bound to any autoantigen? If no, they survive and become the repertoire of immature T cells. If yes, then most undergo apoptosis (more clonal deletion); a few survive as regulatory T cells (Tr).

Surviving B and T lymphocytes move into the blood and lymph, where they form the lymphocyte repertoire that scans for antigens. They communicate among one another and with other body cells via chemical signals called *cytokines*. In terms of our analogy of a stage play, there is dialogue among the cast of characters, but in our story the dialogue consists of chemical signals.



▲ **Figure 16.9 Clonal deletion of B cells.** 1 Stem cells in the red bone marrow generate a host of B lymphocytes. 2 Each newly formed B cell randomly generates a BCR with a particular shape. Note that each cell's BCR binding sites differ from those of other cells. 3 Cells whose BCR is complementary to some autoantigen bind with that autoantigen, stimulating the cell to undergo apoptosis. Thus, an entire set of potential daughter B cells (a clone) that are reactive with the body's own cells are eliminated—*clonal deletion*. 4 B cells with a BCR that is not complementary to any autoantigen are released from the bone marrow and into the blood. *Of the B cells shown, which is likely to undergo apoptosis?*

Figure 16.9 *The second and third B lymphocytes from the left will undergo apoptosis; their active sites are complementary to the second and fourth autoantigens from the top, respectively.*

Immune Response Cytokines

Learning Outcome

16.17 Describe five types of cytokines.

Cytokines (sī´tō-kīnz) are soluble regulatory proteins that act as intercellular messages when released by certain body cells, including those of the kidney, skin, and immune system. Here we are concerned with cytokines that signal among various immune leukocytes. For example, cytotoxic T cells (Tc) do not respond to antigens unless they are first signaled by cytokines.

Immune system cytokines are secreted by various leukocytes and affect diverse cells. Many cytokines are redundant; that is, they have almost identical effects. Such complexity has given rise to the concept of a *cytokine network*—a complex web of signals among all the cell types of the immune system. The nomenclature of cytokines is not based on a systematic relationship among them; instead, scientists named cytokines after their cells of origin, their function, and/or the order in which they were discovered. Cytokines of the immune system include the following substances:

- **Interleukins**[8] (in-ter-lū´kinz; **ILs**). As their name suggests, ILs signal among leukocytes, though cells other than leukocytes may also use interleukins. Immunologists named interleukins sequentially as they were discovered. Currently, scientists have identified about 35 interleukins.
- **Interferons** (in-ter-fēr´onz; **IFNs**). These proteins, which inhibit the spread of viral infections (as discussed in Chapter 15), may also act as cytokines. The most important interferon with such a dual function is gamma interferon (IFN-γ), which is a potent phagocytic activator secreted by type 1 helper T cells.
- **Growth factors.** These proteins stimulate leukocyte stem cells to divide, ensuring that the body is supplied with sufficient white blood cells of all types. The body can control the progression of an adaptive immune response by limiting the production of growth factors.
- **Tumor necrosis**[9] **factor (TNF).** Macrophages and T cells secrete TNF to kill tumor cells and to regulate immune responses and inflammation.
- **Chemokines** (kē´mō-kīnz). Chemokines are chemotactic cytokines; that is, they signal leukocytes to move—for example, to rush to a site of inflammation or infection or to move within tissues.

Table 16.3 summarizes some properties of selected cytokines.

[8]From Latin *inter*, meaning "between," and Greek *leukos*, meaning "white."
[9]From Latin *necare*, meaning "to kill."

TABLE 16.3 Selected Immune Response Cytokines

Cytokine	Representative Source	Representative Target	Representative Action
Interleukin 2 (IL-2)	Type 1 helper T (Th1) cell, cytotoxic T (Tc) cell	Tc cell	Cloning of Tc cell
Interleukin 4 (IL-4)	Type 2 helper T (Th2) cell	B cell	B cell differentiates into plasma cell
Interleukin 12 (IL-12)	Dendritic cell	Helper T (Th) cell	Th cell differentiates into Th1 cell
Gamma interferon (IFN-γ)	Th1 cell	Macrophage	Increases phagocytosis
Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)	Macrophages, T cells	Body tissues	Triggers inflammation or apoptosis

We have been considering adaptive immunity as a stage play. To this point, we have examined the "stage" (the tissues and organs of the lymphatic system) and the "cast of characters" involved in adaptive immunity. The latter are: antigens with their epitopes (the "villains"); and B cells with their BCRs, plasma cells and their antibodies, and T cells with their TCRs (the "heroes"). The dialogue consists of cytokines. Actors who would disrupt the play—those T cells and B cells that recognize autoantigens—have been eliminated by clonal deletion. Before we finish examining the processes involved in antibody and cell-mediated immune responses, we need to consider some other initial preparations the body makes before the "play" begins.

Preparation for an Adaptive Immune Response

The body equips itself for specific immune responses by making *major histocompatibility complex proteins* (MHC proteins) and processing antigens so that T lymphocytes can recognize epitopes. We will examine each of these preparations of adaptive immunity, beginning with the roles of the major histocompatibility complex.

The Roles of the Major Histocompatibility Complex and Antigen-Presenting Cells

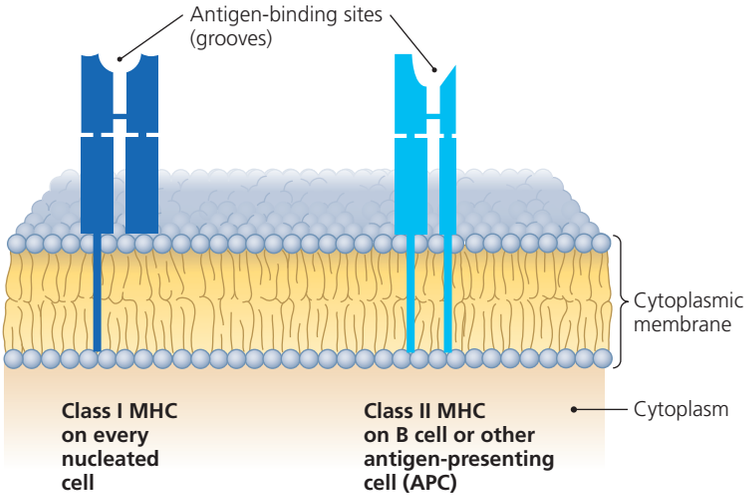
Learning Outcome

16.18 Describe the two classes of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) proteins with regard to their location and function.

When scientists first began grafting tissue from one animal into another so as to determine a method for treating burn victims, they discovered that if the animals were not closely related, the recipients swiftly rejected the grafts. When they analyzed the reason for such rapid rejection, they found that a graft recipient mounted a very strong immune response against a specific type of antigen found on the cells of unrelated grafts. When the antigen on a graft's cells was sufficiently dissimilar from antigens on the host's cells, as seen with unrelated animals, the grafts were rejected. This is how scientists came to understand how the body is able to distinguish "self" from "nonself."

Immunologists named these types of antigens *major histocompatibility*[10] *antigens* to indicate their importance in determining the compatibility of tissues in successful grafting. Further research revealed that major histocompatibility antigens are glycoproteins found in the membranes of most cells of vertebrate animals. Major histocompatibility antigens are coded by a cluster of genes called the **major histocompatibility complex (MHC).** In humans, an MHC is located on each copy of chromosome 6.

Because organ grafting is a modern surgical procedure with no counterpart in nature, scientists reasoned that MHC proteins must have some other "real" function. Indeed, immunologists have determined that MHC proteins in cytoplasmic membranes function to hold and position epitopes for presentation to T cells. Each MHC molecule has an *antigen-binding groove* that lies between two polypeptides. Inherited variations in the amino acid sequences of the polypeptides modify the shapes of MHC binding sites and determine which epitopes can be bound and presented. It is important to recall that TCRs recognize only epitopes that are bound to MHC molecules.



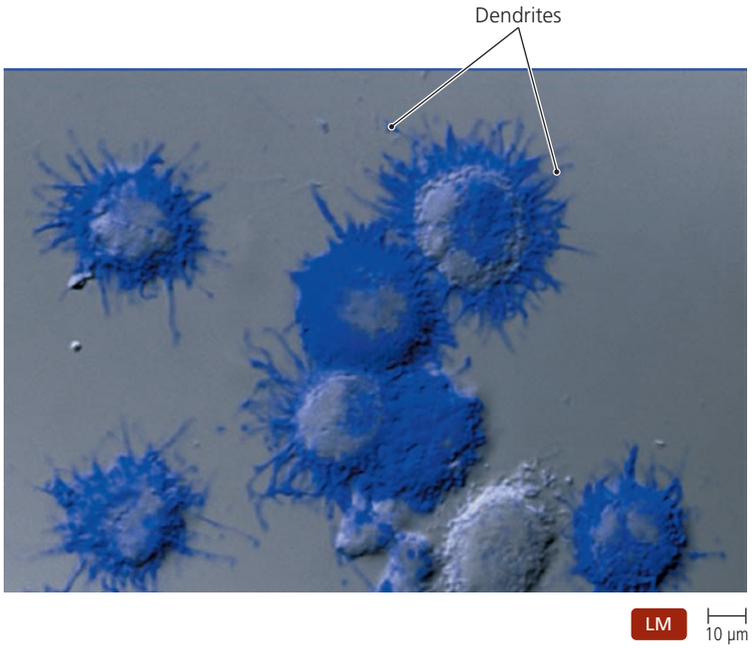
▲ **Figure 16.10 The two classes of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) proteins.** Each is composed of two polypeptides that form an antigen-binding groove. MHC class I glycoproteins are found on all cells except red blood cells. MHC class II glycoproteins are expressed only by B cells and special antigen-presenting cells (APCs).

MHC proteins are of two classes **(Figure 16.10)**. Class I MHC molecules are found on the cytoplasmic membranes of all cells except red blood cells. Special cells called **antigen-presenting cells (APCs)** also have class II MHC proteins. Professional antigen-presenting cells—those that regularly present antigen—are B cells, macrophages, and, most important, **dendritic cells,** which are so named because they have many long, thin cytoplasmic processes called *dendrites*[11] **(Figure 16.11)**. Phagocytic dendritic cells are found under the surface of the skin and mucous membranes. Some dendritic cells extend dendrites to a mucous surface to sample antigens, much like a submarine extends a periscope to get a view of surface activity. After acquiring antigens, dendritic cells migrate to lymph nodes to interact with B and T lymphocytes. Certain other phagocytes, such as *microglia* in the brain and *stellate macrophages* (formerly called *Kupffer cells*) in the liver, may also present antigen under certain conditions. These cells are termed *nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells.*

The cytoplasmic membrane of a professional APC has about 100,000 MHC II molecules, which vary in the epitopes they can bind. Their diversity is dependent on an individual's genotype. If an antigen fragment cannot be bound to an MHC molecule, it typically does not trigger an immune response. Thus, MHC molecules determine which antigen fragments might trigger immune responses.

[10]From Greek *histos*, meaning "tissue," and Latin *compatibilis*, meaning "agreeable."

[11]From Greek *dendron*, meaning "tree," referring to long cellular extensions that look like branches of a tree.



▲ **Figure 16.11** **Dendritic cells.** These important antigen-presenting cells in the body are found in the skin and mucous membranes. They have numerous thin cytoplasmic processes called dendrites.

Antigen Processing

Learning Outcomes

16.20 Explain the roles of antigen-presenting cells (e.g., dendritic cells and macrophages) and MHC molecules in antigen processing and presentation.

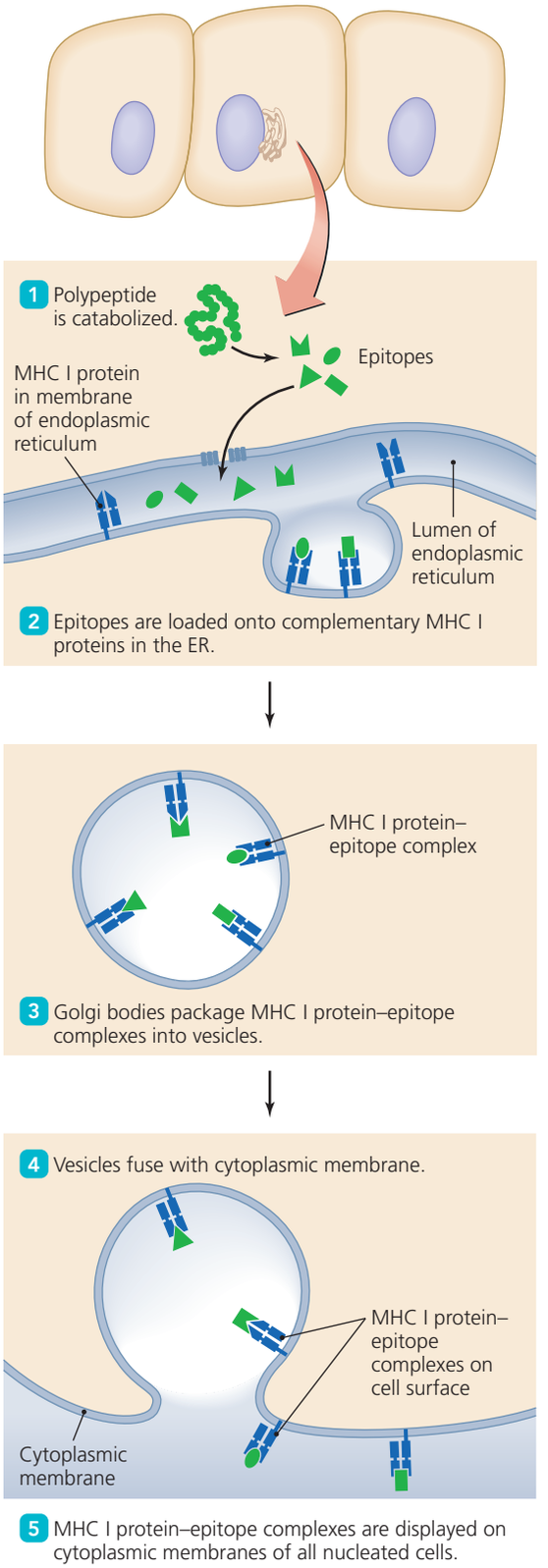
16.21 Contrast endogenous antigen processing with exogenous antigen processing.

Before MHC proteins can display epitopes, antigens must be processed. Antigen processing occurs via somewhat different processes according to whether the antigen is endogenous or exogenous. Recall that endogenous antigens come from the cells' cytoplasm or from pathogens living within the cells, whereas exogenous antigens have extracellular sources, such as lymph.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Antigen Processing and Presentation: Overview*

Processing Endogenous Antigens

Figure 16.12 illustrates the processing of endogenous antigens. A few molecules of each polypeptide produced within nucleated cells—including some polypeptides produced by intracellular bacteria or polypeptides coded by viruses—are catabolized into smaller pieces containing about 8 to 12 amino acids 1. These pieces, which will include epitopes of the polypeptides, move into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) and bind onto complementary antigen-binding grooves of MHC class I molecules that were previously inserted into the membrane of the ER 2. The ER membrane, now loaded with MHC class I proteins and epitopes, is then packaged by a Golgi body to form vesicles 3. The vesicle fuses with the cytoplasmic membrane 4. The result is that the cell displays the MHC I protein-epitope complex on the cell's surface 5. Each nucleated cell in



▲ **Figure 16.12** **The processing of T-dependent endogenous antigens.** Epitopes from all polypeptides synthesized within a nucleated cell load onto complementary MHC I proteins, which are exported to the cytoplasmic membrane.

the body displays epitopes from every kind of polypeptide inside that cell.

Processing Exogenous Antigens

Only antigen-presenting cells (APCs)—usually dendritic cells—process exogenous antigens. Processing these antigens from outside the body's cells differs from the processing done for antigens produced within cells **(Figure 16.13)**. First, a dendritic cell phagocytizes an invading pathogen and catabolizes the pathogen's molecules, producing peptide epitopes within a phagolysosome 1. Another vesicle, already containing MHC class II molecules in its membrane, fuses with the phagolysosome. MHC II molecules bind complementary epitopes 2. The vesicle then fuses with the cytoplasmic membrane 3, leaving MHC II–epitope complexes on the cell's surface 4. Empty MHC II molecules are not stable on a cell's surface; they degrade.

▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Antigen Processing and Presentation: Steps, MHC*

So far, we have set the stage for the immune system "play" by examining the organs, cells, secretions, and signaling molecules of the immune system as well as the preparatory steps of antigen processing, antigen presentation, and clonal deletion. We have seen that adaptive immunity is specific because of the precise and accurate fit of lymphocyte receptors with their complements; that adaptive immunity involves clones of B and T cells, which are unresponsive to self (because of clonal deletion); and that immune responses are inducible against foreign antigens. Now, we can examine cell-mediated and antibody immune responses in more detail. We begin with cell-mediated immunity.

Cell-Mediated Immune Responses

Learning Outcomes

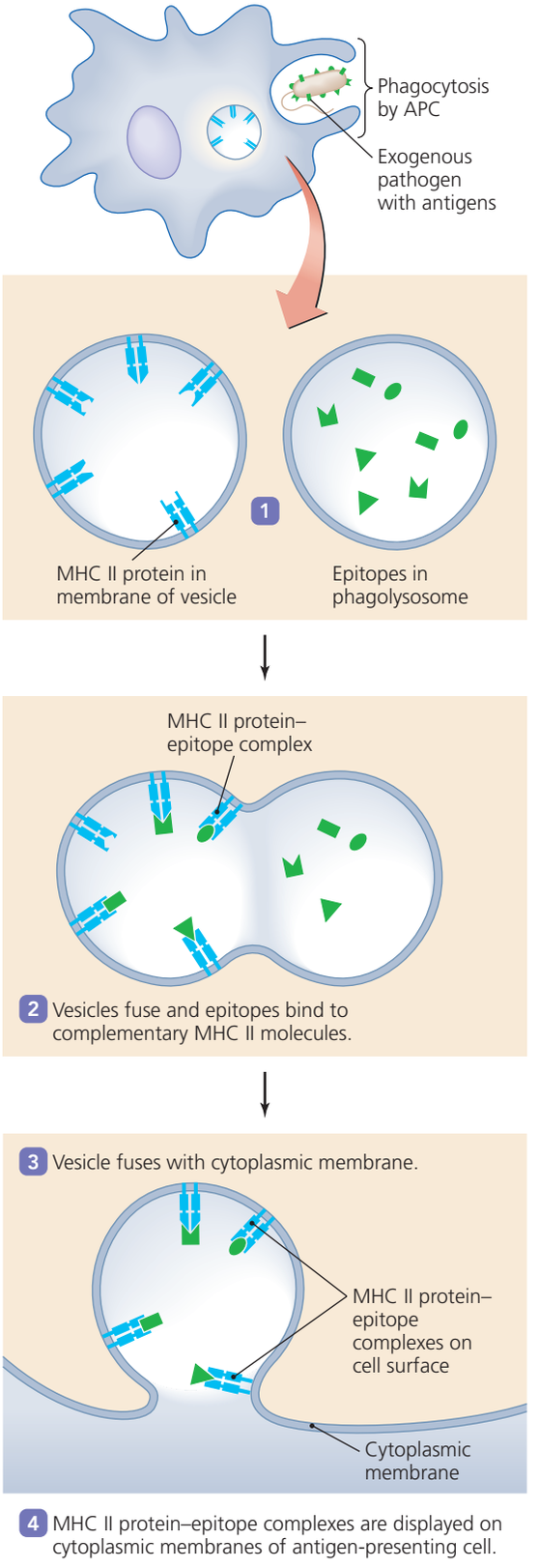
16.22 Describe a cell-mediated immune response.

16.23 Compare and contrast the two pathways of cytotoxic T cell action.

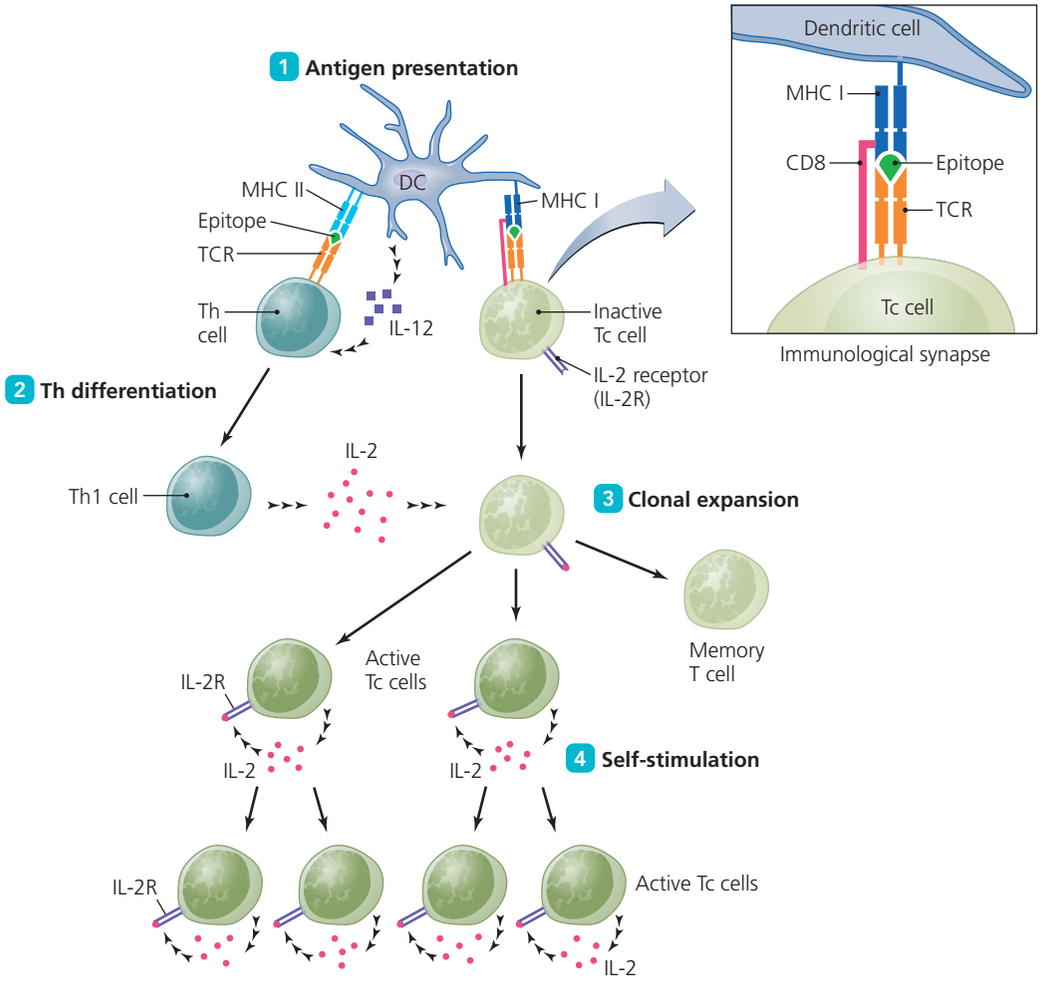
The body uses cell-mediated immune responses primarily to fight intracellular pathogens and abnormal body cells. Recall that inducibility and specificity are two hallmark characteristics of adaptive immunity. The body induces cell-mediated immune responses only against specific endogenous antigens. Given that many common intracellular invaders are viruses, our examination of cell-mediated immunity will focus on these pathogens. However, cell-mediated immune responses are also mounted against cancer cells, intracellular parasitic protozoa, and intracellular bacteria, such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis), which causes tuberculosis. **Highlight: Attacking Cancer with Lab-Grown T Cells** on p. 482 describes an experimental use of T cells to treat one form of cancer.

Activation of Cytotoxic T Cell Clones and Their Functions

The body initiates adaptive immune responses not at the site of an infection but rather in lymphoid organs, usually lymph nodes, where antigen-presenting cells interact with



▲ **Figure 16.13 The processing of T-dependent exogenous antigens.** Antigens arising outside the body's cells are phagocytized by an APC, which then loads epitopes into complementary antigen-binding grooves of MHC II molecules. The MHC II protein–epitope complexes are then displayed on the outside of the APC's cytoplasmic membrane.



▲ Figure 16.14 Activation of a clone of cytotoxic T (Tc) cells. 1 Antigen-presenting cells, here a dendritic cell, present epitopes in conjunction with MHC II protein to helper T cells and with MHC I to Tc cells. 2 Infected APCs secrete IL-12, which causes helper T cells to differentiate into Th1 cells. 3 Signaling from the APC and IL-2 from the Th1 cell activate Tc cells that recognize the MHC I protein–epitope complex. IL-2 triggers Tc cells to divide, forming a clone of active Tc cells as well as memory T cells. 4 Active Tc cells secrete IL-2, becoming self-stimulatory.

lymphocytes. The initial event in cell-mediated immunity is the activation of a specific clone of cytotoxic T cells, as depicted in **Figure 16.14**:

1 **Antigen presentation.** A virus-infected dendritic cell (the APC) migrates to a nearby lymph node where it presents virus epitopes in conjunction with the APC's MHC I protein. Because of the vast repertoire of randomly generated T cell receptors (TCRs), at least one cytotoxic T (Tc) cell will have a TCR complementary to the presented MHC I protein–epitope complex. This Tc cell binds to the dendritic cell to form a cell-cell contact site called an *immunological synapse*. CD8 glycoprotein of the Tc cell, which specifically binds to MHC I protein, stabilizes the synapse.

2

3 **Clonal expansion.** The dendritic cell imparts a second required signal in the immunological synapse. This signal, in conjunction with any IL-2 from a Th1 cell that may be present, activates the cytotoxic T (Tc) cell to secrete its own IL-2. Interleukin 2 triggers cell division by Tc cells. Activated Tc cells reproduce to form memory T cells (discussed shortly) and more Tc progeny—a process known as **clonal expansion.**

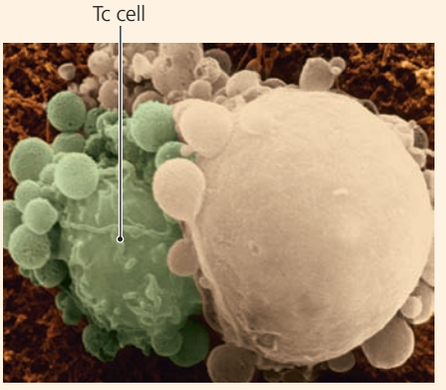
4

HIGHLIGHT

ATTACKING CANCER WITH LAB-GROWN T CELLS

The body naturally manufactures T cells that attack cancer cells, but it sometimes does not make enough of them to shrink tumors and effectively halt the tumor's progress. Researchers have taken samples of a patient's own cancer-fighting T cells and cloned them in a laboratory until they numbered in the billions. These billions of identical T cells have then been injected back into the individual that first produced them. Many patients treated this way have become "virtually cancer free," while tumors were substantially reduced in other patients.

Such therapy, called adoptive T cell therapy, remains experimental and is still some time away from becoming a generally accepted cancer treatment. Scientists do not yet understand why the therapy works in some patients and not others. To date, the therapy has been tested primarily against malignant melanoma, but planning to test it against other types of cancer is under way, and some scientists believe that a similar therapy may be effective against viral diseases such as hepatitis.



T cell (green) attacking a cancer cell.

As previously discussed, when any nucleated cell synthesizes proteins, it displays epitopes from them in the antigen-binding grooves of MHC class I molecules on its cytoplasmic membrane. Thus, when viruses are replicated inside cells, epitopes of viral proteins are displayed on the host cell's surface. An active Tc cell binds to an infected cell via its TCR, which is complementary to the MHC I protein–epitope complex, and via its CD8 glycoprotein, which is complementary to the MHC class I protein of the infected cell **(Figure 16.15a)**.

Cytotoxic T cells kill their targets through one of two pathways: the *perforin-granzyme pathway,* which involves the synthesis of special killing proteins, or the *CD95 pathway,* which is mediated through a glycoprotein found on the body's cells. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Cell-Mediated Immunity: Cytotoxic T Cells***

The Perforin-Granzyme Cytotoxic Pathway

The cytoplasm of cytotoxic T cells has vesicles containing two key protein cytotoxins—*perforin* and *granzyme,* which are also used by NK cells in conjunction with antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (discussed previously). When a cytotoxic T cell first attaches to its target, vesicles containing the cytotoxins release their contents. Perforin molecules aggregate into a channel through which granzyme enters, activating apoptosis in the target cell **(Figure 16.15b)**. Having forced its target to commit suicide, the cytotoxic T cell disengages and moves on to another infected cell.

CRITICAL THINKING

Why did scientists give the name "perforin" to a molecule secreted by Tc cells?

The CD95 Cytotoxic Pathway

The **CD95 pathway** of cell-mediated cytotoxicity involves an integral glycoprotein called *CD95* that is present in the cytoplasmic membranes of many body cells. Activated Tc cells insert *CD95L*—the receptor for CD95—into their cytoplasmic membranes. When an activated Tc cell comes into contact with its target, its CD95L binds to CD95 on the target, which then activates enzymes that trigger apoptosis, killing the target cells **(Figure 16.15c)**.

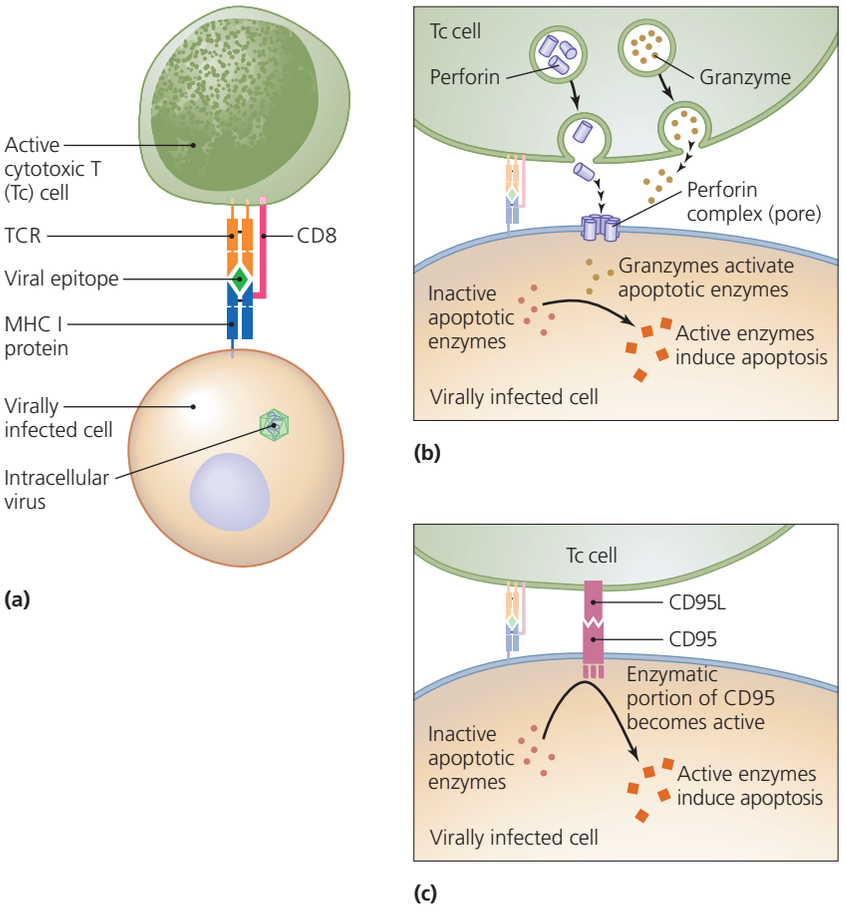
Memory T Cells

Learning Outcome

16.24 Describe the establishment of memory T cells.

Some activated T cells become **memory T cells,** which may persist for months or years in lymphoid tissues. If a memory T cell subsequently contacts an epitope–MHC I protein complex matching its TCR, it responds immediately (without a need for interaction with APCs) and produces cytotoxic T cell clones that recognize the offending epitope. These cells need fewer regulatory signals and become functional immediately. Further, since the number of memory T cells is greater than the number of T cells that recognized the antigen during the initial exposure, a subsequent cell-mediated immune response to a previously encountered antigen is much more effective than a primary response. An enhanced cell-mediated immune response upon subsequent exposure to the same antigen is called a **memory response.**[12]

[12]Sometimes also called anamnestic responses, from Greek *ana*, meaning "again," and *mimneskein*, meaning "to call to mind."



◀ Figure 16.15 A cell-mediated immune response. **(a)** The binding of a virus-infected cell by an active cytotoxic T (Tc) cell. **(b)** The perforin-granzyme cytotoxic pathway. After perforins and granzymes have been released from Tc cell vesicles, granzymes enter the infected cell through the perforin complex pore and activate the enzymes of apoptosis. **(c)** The CD95 cytotoxic pathway. Binding of CD95L on the Tc cell activates the enzymatic portion of the infected cell's CD95 such that apoptosis is induced.

T Cell Regulation

Learning Outcome

16.25 Explain the process and significance of the regulation of cell-mediated immunity.

The body carefully regulates cell-mediated immune responses so that T cells do not respond to autoantigens. As we have seen, T cells require several signals from an antigen-presenting cell to activate. If the T cells do not receive these signals in a specific sequence—like the sequence of numbers in a combination padlock—they will not respond. Thus, when a T cell and an antigen-presenting cell interact in an immunological synapse, the two cell types have a chemical dialogue that stimulates the T cell to fully respond to the antigen. If a T cell does not receive the signals required for its activation, it will "shut down" as a precaution against autoimmune responses.

Regulatory T (Tr) cells also moderate cytotoxic T cells by mechanisms that are beyond the scope of our discussion. Suffice it to say that Tr cells provide one more level of control over potentially dangerous cell-mediated immune responses.

Antibody Immune Responses

As we have discussed, the body induces antibody immune responses against the antigens of exogenous pathogens and toxins. Recall that inducibility is one of the main characteristics of adaptive immunity: antibody immunity activates only in response to specific pathogens. The following sections examine the activity of B lymphocytes in antibody immune responses.

Inducement of T-Independent Antibody Immunity

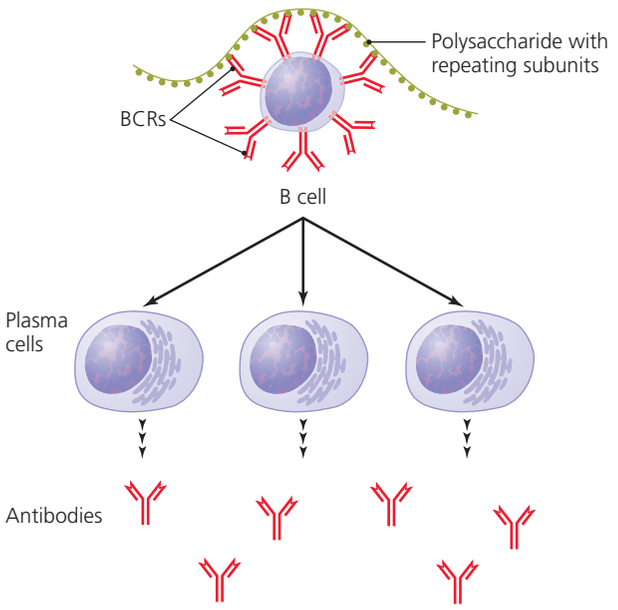
Learning Outcomes

16.26 Contrast T-dependent and T-independent antigens in terms of size and repetition of subunits.

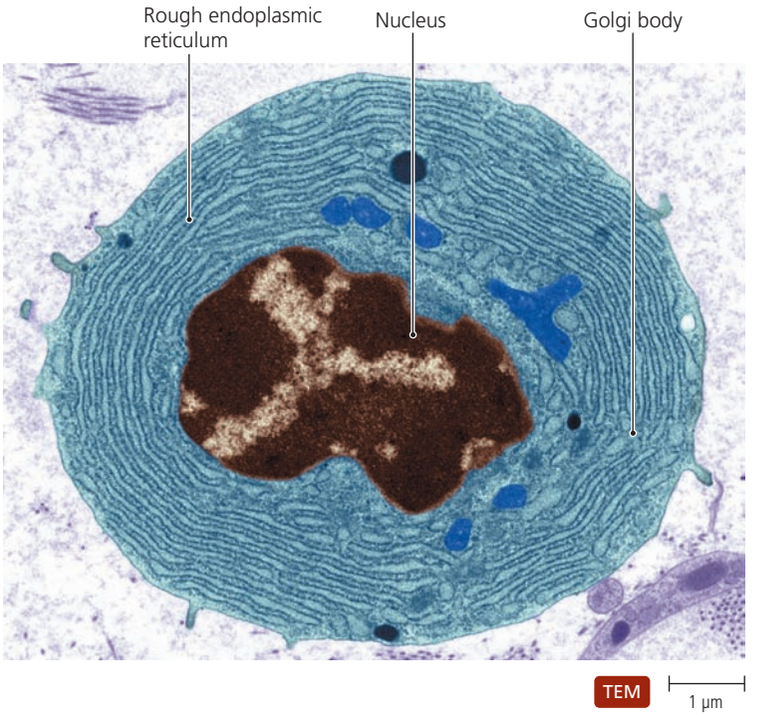
16.27 Describe the inducement and action of a T-independent antibody immune response.

A few large antigens have many identical, repeating epitopes. These antigens can induce an antibody immune response without the assistance of a helper T cell (Th cell); therefore, these antigens are called *T-independent antigens*, and they trigger response of **T-independent antibody immunity** (Figure 16.16).

The repeating subunits of T-independent antigens allow extensive cross-linking between numerous BCRs on a B cell, stimulating the B cell to proliferate. Simultaneous interaction between receptors on the B cell, mediators of innate immunity, and/or bacterial chemicals may facilitate activation of the B cell. Clones of the activated B cell become plasma cells, which have an extensive cytoplasm rich in rough endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi bodies and which secrete antibodies



▲ Figure 16.16 The effects of the binding of a T-independent antigen by a B cell. When a molecule with multiple repeating epitopes (such as the polysaccharide shown here) cross-links the BCRs on a B cell, the cell is activated: it proliferates, and its daughter cells become plasma cells that secrete antibodies.



▲ Figure 16.17 A plasma cell. Plasma cells are almost twice as large as inactive B cells and are filled with rough endoplasmic reticulum and Golgi bodies for the synthesis and secretion of antibodies.

(Figure 16.17). Though these events occur without the direct involvement of Th cells, cytokines, such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF), are required for some. T-independent antibody immune responses are fast because they do not depend on interactions with Th cells. Their speed is similar to that of innate immunity, but T-independent antibody immunity is relatively weak, disappears quickly, and induces little immunological memory.

T-independent responses are stunted in children, possibly because the repertoire and abundance of B cells is not fully developed in children; therefore, pathogens displaying T-independent antigens can cause childhood diseases, which are rare in adults. An example of such a T-independent antigen and its disease is the capsule of *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flū-en´zī) type B that causes most cases of meningitis in unvaccinated children. The capsules of other bacteria, lipopolysaccharide of Gram-negative cell walls, bacterial flagella, and the capsids (outer covering) of some viruses constitute other T-independent antigens.

Most antibody immune responses are of the T-dependent type. We consider them next.

Inducement of T-Dependent Antibody Immunity with Clonal Selection

Learning Outcomes

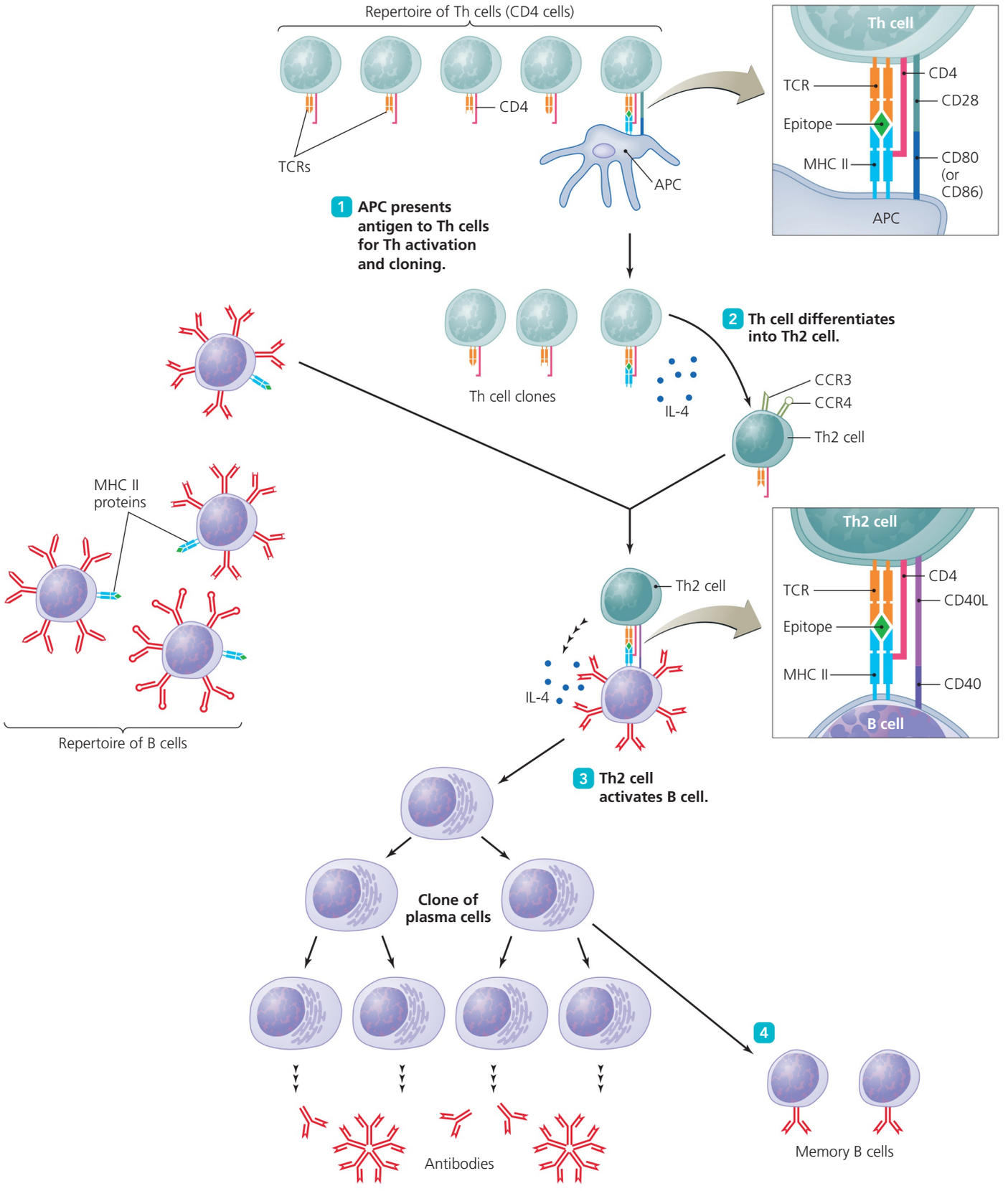
16.28 Describe the formation and functions of plasma cells and memory B cells.

16.29 Describe the steps and effect of clonal selection.

T-dependent antigens lack the numerous, repetitive, and identical epitopes and the large size of T-independent antigens, and immunity against them requires the assistance of helper T cells. **T-dependent antibody immunity** begins with the action of an antigen-presenting dendritic cell (APC). After endocytosis and processing of the antigen, the dendritic cell presents epitopes in conjunction with its MHC II proteins. This APC will induce the specific helper T (CD4) lymphocyte with a TCR complementary to the MHC II–epitope complex presented by the APC. The activated Th2 cell must in turn induce the specific B cell that recognizes the same antigen. Lymph nodes facilitate and cytokines mediate interactions among the antigen-presenting cells and lymphocytes, increasing the chance that the appropriate cells find each other.

Thus, a T-dependent antibody immune response involves a series of interactions among antigen-presenting cells, helper T cells, and B cells, all of which are mediated and enhanced by cytokines. Now we will examine each step in more detail **(Figure 16.18)**:

1 **Antigen presentation for Th activation and cloning.** A dendritic cell, after acquiring antigens in the skin or mucous membrane, moves via the lymph to a local lymph node. The trip takes about a day. As helper T (Th, CD4) cells pass through the lymph node, they survey all the resident APCs for complementary epitopes in conjunction with MHC II proteins. Antigen presentation depends on chance encounters between Th cells and the dendritic cells, but immunologists estimate that every lymphocyte browses the dendritic cells in every lymph node every day; therefore, complementary cells eventually find each other. Once they have established an immunological synapse, CD4



▲ Figure 16.18 A T-dependent antibody immune response. 1 Antigen presentation, in which an APC, typically a dendritic cell, presents antigen to a complementary Th cell. 2 Differentiation of the Th cell into a Th2 cell. 3 Activation of the B cell in response to secretion of IL-4 by the Th2 cell, which causes the B cell to differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells and 4 long-lived memory cells.

To see a 3-D animation on immunology, go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area and watch the MicroFlix.

molecules in membrane rafts of the Th cell's cytoplasmic membrane recognize and bind to MHC II, stabilizing the synapse.

As we saw in cell-mediated immune responses, helper T cells need further stimulation before they activate. The requirement for a second signal helps prevent accidental inducement of an immune response. As before, the APC imparts the second signal by displaying an integral membrane protein in the immunological synapse. This induces the Th cell to proliferate, producing a clone.

2 **Differentiation of helper T cells into Th2 cells.** In antibody immune responses, the cytokine interleukin 4 (IL-4) acts as a signal to the Th cells to become type 2 helper T cells (Th2 cells). Immunologists do not know the source of IL-4, but it may be secreted initially by innate cells, such as mast cells, or secreted later in a response by the Th cells themselves.

3 **Activation of B cell.** The repertoire of B cells and newly formed Th2 cells survey one another. A Th2 cell binds to the B cell with an MHC II protein–epitope complex that is complementary to the TCR of the Th2 cell. CD4 glycoprotein again stabilizes the immunological synapse.

Th2 cells secrete more IL-4, which induces the selected B cell to move to the cortex of the lymph node. A Th2 cell in contact with an MHC II protein–epitope on a B cell is stimulated, expresses new gene products, and inserts a protein called CD40L into its cytoplasmic membrane. CD40L binds to CD40, which is found on B cells. This provides a second signal in the immunological synapse, triggering B cell activation.

The activated B cell proliferates rapidly to produce a population of cells (clone) that make up a primary follide in the lymph node. The clone differentiates into two types of cells—*memory B cells* (discussed shortly) and antibody-secreting *plasma cells.* ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Humoral Immunity: Clonal Selection and Expansion***

Most members of a clone become **plasma cells.** The initial plasma cell descendants of any single activated B cell secrete antibodies with binding sites identical to one another and complementary to the specific antigen recognized by their parent cell. However, as the plasma cell clones replicate, the cells slightly modify their antigen-binding-site genes such that they secrete antibodies with slightly different variable regions. Plasma cells that secrete antibodies with a higher affinity for the epitope have a selective survival advantage over plasma cells secreting antibodies with a less good fit; that is, active B cells with BCRs that bind the epitope more closely survive at a higher rate. Thus, as the antibody immune response progresses, there are more and more plasma cells, secreting antibodies whose specificity gets progressively better.

Each plasma cell produces antibody. They begin by secreting IgM and then, through class switching, secrete IgG. Plasma cells are able to secrete their own weight in IgG every day. Some plasma cells later switch a second time and begin secreting IgA or IgE. As discussed previously, antibodies activate complement, trigger inflammation, agglutinate and neutralize antigen, act as opsonins, directly kill pathogens, and induce antibody-dependent cytoxicity.

Individual plasma cells are short lived, at least in part because of their high metabolic rate; they die within a few days of activation, although their antibodies can remain in body fluids for several weeks. Providentially, their descendants persist for years to maintain long-term adaptive responses.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

In general, what sorts of pathogens would successfully attack a patient with an inability to synthesize B lymphocytes?

Memory B Cells and the Establishment of Immunological Memory

Learning Outcome

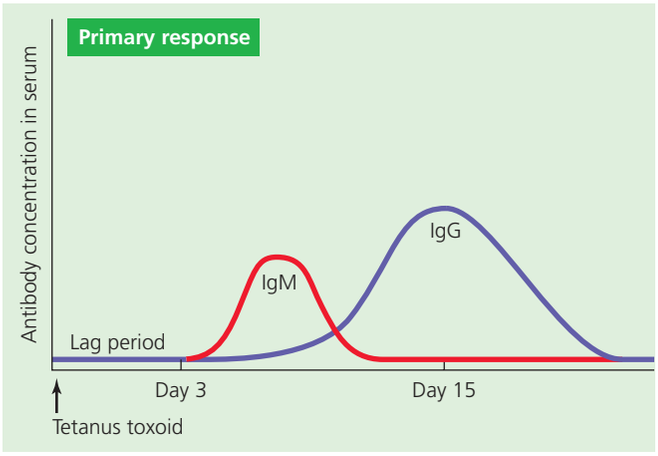
16.30 Contrast primary and secondary immune responses.

A small percentage of the cells produced during B cell proliferation do not secrete antibodies but survive as **memory B cells**—that is, long-lived cells with BCRs complementary to the specific epitope that triggered their production (Figure 16.18 4). In contrast to plasma cells, memory cells retain their BCRs and persist in lymphoid tissues, surviving for more than 20 years, ready to initiate antibody production if the same epitope is encountered again. Let's examine how memory cells provide the basis for immunization to prevent disease, using tetanus immunization as an example.

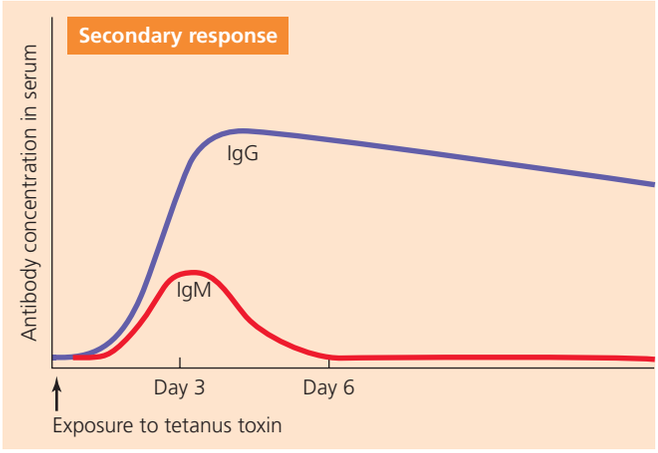
Because the body produces an enormous variety of B cells (and therefore BCRs), a few Th cells and B cells bind to and respond to epitopes of *tetanus toxoid* (deactivated tetanus toxin), which is used for tetanus immunization. In a **primary response** **(Figure 16.19a)**, relatively small amounts of antibodies are produced, and it may take days before sufficient antibodies are made to completely eliminate the toxoid from the body. Though some antibody molecules may persist for three weeks, a primary immune response basically ends when the plasma cells have lived out their normal life spans. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Humoral Immunity: Primary Immune Response***

Memory B cells, surviving in lymphoid tissue, constitute a reserve of antigen-sensitive cells that become active when there is another exposure to the antigen, in this case, toxin from infecting tetanus bacteria. Exposure may be many years later. Thus, tetanus toxin produced during the course of a bacterial infection will restimulate a population of memory cells, which proliferate and differentiate rapidly into plasma cells. The newly differentiated plasma cells produce large amounts of antibody within a few days **(Figure 16.19b)**, and the tetanus toxin is neutralized before it can cause disease. Because many memory cells recognize and respond to the antigen, such a **secondary immune response** is much faster and more effective than the primary response. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Humoral Immunity: Secondary Immune Response***

As you might expect, a third exposure (whether to tetanus toxin or to toxoid in an immunization booster) results in an even more effective response. Enhanced immune responses triggered by subsequent exposure to antigens are memory responses, which are the basis of *immunization.* (Chapter 17 discusses immunization in more detail.)



(a)



(b)

▲ Figure 16.19 The production of primary and secondary antibody immune responses. This example depicts some events following the administration of a tetanus toxoid in immunization. **(a)** Primary response. After the tetanus toxoid is introduced into the body, the body slowly removes the toxoid while producing memory B cells. **(b)** Secondary response. Upon exposure to active tetanus toxin during the course of an infection, memory B cells immediately differentiate into plasma cells and proliferate, producing a response that is faster and results in greater antibody production than occurs in the primary response.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Plasma cells are vital for protection against infection, but memory B cells are not. Why not?

In summary, the body's response to infectious agents seldom relies on one mechanism alone because this course of action would be far too risky. Therefore, the body typically uses several different mechanisms to combat infections. In the example from the chapter opener, the body's initial response to intruders was inflammation (a nonspecific, innate response), but a specific immune response against the invading microorganisms was also necessary. APCs phagocytize some of the invaders, process their epitopes, and induce clones of lymphocytes in both antibody and cell-mediated immune responses. Key to enduring protection are the facts that adaptive immunity is unresponsive to self and involves immunological memory brought about by long-lived memory B and T cells.

Cell-mediated adaptive immune responses involve the activity of cytotoxic T lymphocytes in killing cells infected with intracellular bacteria and viruses. Antibody adaptive immunity involves the secretion of specific antibodies that have a variety of functions. T-independent antibody immune responses are rare but can occur when an adult is challenged with T-independent antigens, such as bacterial flagella or capsules. In contrast, T-dependent antibody immune responses are more common. A T-dependent antibody immune response occurs when an APC binds to a specific Th cell and signals the Th cell to proliferate.

The relative importance of each of these pathways depends on the type of pathogen involved and on the mechanisms by which they cause disease. In any case, adaptive immune responses are specific, are inducible, involve clones, are unresponsive to self, and give the body long-term memory against their antigenic triggers. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Host Defenses: The Big Picture***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

What sorts of pathogens could successfully attack a patient with an inability to produce T lymphocytes?

Types of Acquired Immunity

Learning Outcome

16.31 Contrast active versus passive acquired immunity and naturally acquired versus artificially acquired immunity.

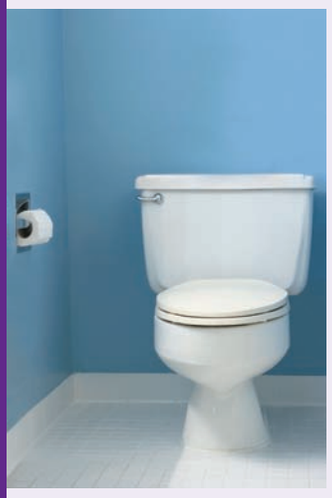
As we have seen, adaptive immunity is acquired during an individual's life. Immunologists categorize immunity as either naturally or artificially acquired. Naturally acquired immunity occurs when the body mounts an immune response against antigens, such as influenzaviruses or food antigens, encountered during the course of daily life. Artificial immunity is the body's response to antigens introduced in vaccines, as occurs with immunization against tetanus and flu. Immunologists further distinguish acquired immune responses as either *active* or *passive;* that is, either the immune system responds actively to antigens via antibody or cell-mediated responses or the body passively receives antibodies from another individual. Next we consider each of four types of acquired immunity.

Naturally Acquired Active Immunity

Naturally acquired active immunity occurs when the body responds to exposure to pathogens and environmental antigens by mounting specific immune responses. The body is naturally and actively engaged in its own protection. As we have seen, once an immune response occurs, immunological memory persists—on subsequent exposure to the same antigen, the immune response will be rapid and powerful and often provides the body complete protection.

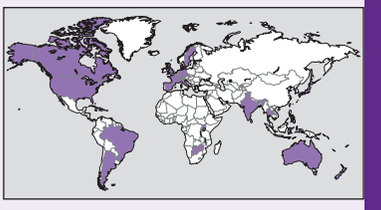
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

MICROSPORIDIOSIS



Darius is sick, which is not surprising for an HIV-infected man. But he is sick in several new ways. Sick of having to stay within 20 feet of a toilet. Sick of the cramping, the gas, the pain, and the nausea. Sick with irregular but persistent, watery diarrhea. He is losing weight because food is passing through him undigested. Most days over the past seven months have been disgusting despite his use of over-the-counter remedies, which provide a few days of intermittent relief. His belief that these normal days signaled the end of the ordeal have kept him from the doctor. But now his eyes have begun to hurt, and his vision is blurry. Whatever it is, it's attacking him at both ends. Time to get stronger drugs from his physician.

Microscopic examination of Darius's stool sample reveals that he is being assaulted by *Encephalitozoon intestinalis*, a member of a group of emerging pathogens called microsporidia. The single-celled pathogens are also seen on smears from Darius's nose and eyes. Microsporidia were long thought to be simple single-celled animals, but genetic analysis and comparison with other organisms reveal that they are closer to zygomycete yeasts.



Microsporidia appear to infect humans who engage in unprotected sexual activity, consume contaminated food or drink, or swim in contaminated water. People with active T cells rarely have symptoms; but people with suppressed immunity become easy targets for the fungus.

Microsporidia attack by uncoiling a flexible, hollow filament that stabs into a host cell and serves as a conduit for the microsporidium's cytoplasm to invade. In this way, the pathogens become intracellular parasites. They can destroy the intestinal lining, causing diarrhea, and spread to the eyes, muscles, or lungs.

Fortunately for Darius, an antimicrobial, albendazole, kills the parasite, and the effects of the infection are reversed. Unfortunately for Darius, the loss of helper T cells in AIDS means that another emerging, reemerging, or opportunistic infection is sure to follow.

Naturally Acquired Passive Immunity

Although newborns possess the cells and tissues needed to mount an immune response, they respond slowly to antigens. If required to protect themselves solely via naturally acquired active immunity, they might die of infectious disease before their immune systems were mature enough to respond adequately. However, they are not on their own; in the womb, IgG molecules cross the placenta from the mother's bloodstream to provide protection, and after birth, children receive secretory IgA in breast milk. Via these two processes, a mother provides her baby with antibodies that protect it during its early months. Because the baby is not actively producing its own antibodies, this type of protection is known as **naturally acquired passive immunity.**

Artificially Acquired Active Immunity

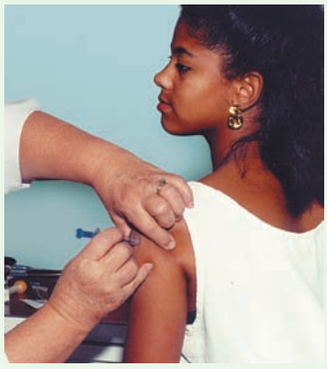
Physicians induce immunity in their patients by introducing antigens in the form of vaccines. The patients' own immune systems then mount active responses against the foreign antigens, just as if the antigens were part of a naturally acquired pathogen. Such **artificially acquired active immunity** is the basis of immunization (see Chapter 17).

Artificially Acquired Passive Immunotherapy

Active immunity usually requires days to weeks to develop fully, and in some cases such a delay can prove detrimental or even fatal. For instance, an active immune response may be too slow to protect against infection with rabies or exposure to rattlesnake venom. Therefore, medical personnel routinely harvest antibodies specific for toxins and pathogens that are so deadly or so fast acting that an individual's active immune response is inadequate. They acquire these antibodies from the blood of immune humans or animals, typically a horse. Physicians then inject such *antisera* or *antitoxins* into infected patients to confer **artificially acquired passive immunotherapy.** (Chapter 17 discusses this type of treatment in greater detail.)

Active immune responses, whether naturally or artificially induced, are advantageous because they result in immunological memory and protection against future infections. However, they are slow acting. Passive processes, in which individuals are provided fully formed antibodies, have the advantage of speed but do not confer immunological memory because B and T lymphocytes are not activated. Table 16.4 summarizes the four types of acquired immunity.

TABLE 16.4 A Comparison of the Types of Acquired Immunity

	Active	Passive
Naturally acquired	 The body responds to antigens that enter naturally, such as during infections.	 Antibodies are transferred from mother to offspring, either across the placenta (IgG) or in breast milk (secretory IgA).
Artificially acquired	 Health care workers introduce antigens in vaccines; the body responds with antibody or cell-mediated immune responses, including the production of memory cells.	 Health care workers give patients antisera or antitoxins, which are preformed antibodies obtained from immune individuals or animals.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

This chapter has MicroFlix .Go to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area. for 3-D movie-quality animations on immunology.

Overview of Adaptive Immunity (pp. 464–465)

1. **Adaptive immunity** is the ability of a vertebrate to recognize and defend against distinct species or strains of invaders. Adaptive immunity is characterized by specificity, inducibility, clonality, unresponsiveness to self, and memory.
2. **B lymphocytes (B cells)** attack extracellular pathogens in **antibody immune responses** (also called humoral immune responses), involving soluble proteins called antibodies. **T lymphocytes (T cells)** carry out **cell-mediated immune responses** against intracellular pathogens.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Humoral Immunity: Overview; Cell-Mediated Immunity: Overview; Host Defenses: The Big Picture*

Elements of Adaptive Immunity (pp. 465–478)

1. The **lymphatic system** is composed of **lymphatic vessels,** which conduct the flow of **lymph,** and lymphoid tissues and organs that are directly involved in specific immunity. The latter include **lymph nodes,** the thymus, the spleen, the tonsils, and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT). Lymphocytes originate in the red bone marrow. They mature in the marrow or in the thymus. Mature lymphocytes express characteristic membrane proteins. They migrate to and persist in various lymphoid organs, where they are available to encounter foreign invaders in the blood and lymph.
2. **Antigens** are substances that trigger specific immune responses. Effective antigen molecules are large, usually complex, stable, degradable, and foreign to their host. An **epitope** (or antigenic determinant) is the three-dimensional shape of a region of an antigen that is recognized by the immune system.
3. **Exogenous antigens** are found on microorganisms that multiply outside the cells of the body; **endogenous antigens** are produced by pathogens multiplying inside the body's cells.
4. Ideally, the body does not attack antigens on the surface of its normal cells, called **autoantigens;** this phenomenon is called self-tolerance.
5. B lymphocytes (B cells), which mature in the red bone marrow, make immunoglobulins (Ig) of two types—**B cell receptors (BCRs)** and **antibodies.** Immunoglobulins are complementary to epitopes and consist of two light chains and two heavy chains joined via disulfide bonds to form Y-shaped molecules. BCRs are inserted into the cytoplasmic membranes of B cells via a transmembrane polypeptide, whereas antibodies are secreted.
6. Together the variable regions of a heavy and a light chain form an **antigen-binding site,** and the upper portions of antibody molecules are called F_{ab} regions. Each B cell randomly selects (once in its life) genes for its F_{ab} region; therefore, the F_{ab} regions are called variable regions because they differ from cell to cell. Each basic antibody molecule has two antigen-binding sites and can potentially bind two epitopes.
7. Antibodies function in complement activation, inflammation, **neutralization** (blocking the action of a toxin or attachment of a pathogen), **opsonization** (enhanced phagocytosis), direct killing by oxidation, **agglutination,** and **antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC).**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Humoral Immunity: Antibody Function*
8. Antibodies are of five basic classes based upon their stems (F_c regions), which differ in their type of heavy chain.
9. **IgM,** a pentamer with 10 antigen-binding sites, is the predominant class of antibody produced first during a primary antibody response. **IgG** is the predominant antibody found in the bloodstream and is largely responsible for defense against invading bacteria. IgG can cross a placenta to protect the fetus. Two molecules of **IgA** are attached via J chains and a polypeptide secretory component to produce **secretory IgA,** which is found in milk, tears, and mucous membrane secretions. **IgE** triggers inflammation and allergic reactions. It also functions during helminth infections. **IgD** is found in cytoplasmic membranes of some animals.
10. Through a process called **class switching,** antibody-producing cells change the class of antibody they secrete, beginning with IgM and then producing IgG and then possibly IgA or IgE.
11. T cells have **T cell receptors (TCRs)** for antigens, mature under influence of signals from the thymus, and attack cells that harbor endogenous pathogens during cell-mediated immune responses.
12. In cell-mediated immunity, **cytotoxic T cells (Tc** or **CD8 cells)** act against infected or abnormal body cells, including virus-infected cells, bacteria-infected cells, some fungus- or protozoan-infected cells, some cancer cells, and foreign cells that enter the body as a result of organ transplantation.
13. Two types of **helper T (Th) cells**—Th1 and Th2—are characterized by **CD4.** They direct cell-mediated and antibody immune responses respectively.
    ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Cell-Mediated Immunity: Helper T Cells*
14. T cells that do not recognize MHC I protein and most T cells that recognize MHC I protein in conjunction with autoantigens are removed by **apoptosis.** This is **clonal deletion.** A few self-recognizing T cells are retained and become **regulatory T cells (Tr cells**). T cells that recognize MHC I protein but not autoantigens become the repertoire of immature T cells.
    ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Clonal Deletion*
15. B cells with B cell receptors that respond to autoantigens are selectively killed via apoptosis—further clonal deletion. Only B cells that respond to foreign antigens survive to defend the body.
16. **Cytokines** are soluble regulatory proteins that act as intercellular signals to direct activities in immune responses. Cytokines include **interleukin (ILs), interferons (IFNs), growth factors, tumor necrosis factors (TNFs),** and **chemokines.**

Preparation for an Adaptive Immune Response (pp. 478–480)

1. Nucleated cells display epitopes of their own proteins and epitopes from intracellular pathogens, such as viruses, on **major histocompatibility complex (MHC)** class I proteins.

2. The initial step in mounting an immune response is that antigens are captured, ingested, and degraded into epitopes by **antigen-presenting cells (APCs)**, such as B cells, macrophages, and **dendritic cells.** Epitopes are inserted into major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II proteins.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Antigen Processing and Presentation: Overview, Steps, MHC*

Cell-Mediated Immune Responses (pp. 480–483)

1. Once activated by dendritic cells, cytotoxic T cells (Tc cells) recognize abnormal molecules presented by MHC I protein on the surface of infected, cancerous, or foreign cells. Sometimes cytotoxic T cells require cytokines from Th1 cells.
2. Activated Tc cells reproduce to form memory T cells and more Tc progeny in a process called **clonal expansion.**
3. Cytotoxic T cells destroy their target cells via two pathways: the perforin-granzyme pathway, which kills the affected cells by secreting **perforins** and **granzymes,** or the **CD95 pathway,** in which CD95L binds to CD95 on the target cell, triggering target cell apoptosis. Cytotoxic T cells may also form **memory T cells,** which function in **memory responses.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Cell-Mediated Immunity: Cytotoxic T Cells*

Antibody Immune Responses (pp. 483–487)

1. T-independent antigens, such as bacterial capsules, trigger **T-independent antibody immune responses,** which are more common in adults than in children.
2. In **T-dependent antibody immunity,** an APC's MHC II protein–epitope complex activates a helper T cell (Th cell) bearing a complementary TCR. CD4 stabilizes the connection between the cells, which is an example of an immunological synapse. Interleukin 4 (IL-4) then induces the Th cell to become a type 2 helper T cell (Th2).
3. In **clonal selection,** an immunological synapse forms between the Th2 cell and a B cell bearing a complementary MHC II protein–epitope complex. The Th2 cell secretes IL-4, which induces the B cell to divide. Its offspring, collectively called a clone, become **plasma cells** or **memory B cells.**
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Humoral Immunity: Clonal Selection and Expansion*
4. Plasma cells live for only a short time but secrete large amounts of antibodies, beginning with IgM and class switching as they get older. Memory B cells migrate to lymphoid tissues to await a subsequent encounter with the same antigen.
5. The **primary response** to an antigen is slow to develop and of limited effectiveness. When that antigen is encountered a second time, the activation of memory cells ensures that the immune response is rapid and strong. This is a **secondary immune response.** Such enhanced antibody immune responses are memory responses.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Humoral Immunity: Primary Immune Response, Secondary Immune Response*

Types of Acquired Immunity (pp. 487–488)

1. When the body mounts a specific immune response against an infectious agent, the result is called **naturally acquired active immunity.**
2. The passing of maternal IgG to the fetus and the transmission of secretory IgA in milk to a baby are examples of **naturally acquired passive immunity.**
3. **Artificially acquired active immunity** is achieved by deliberately injecting someone with antigens in vaccines to provoke an active response, as in the process of immunization.
4. **Artificially acquired passive immunotherapy** involves the administration of preformed antibodies in antitoxins or antisera to a patient.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Antibodies function to _____.
   a. directly destroy foreign organ grafts
   b. mark invading organisms for destruction
   c. kill intracellular viruses
   d. directly promote cytokine synthesis
   e. stimulate T cell growth
2. MHC class II molecules bind to _____ and trigger _____.
   a. endogenous antigens, cytotoxic T cells
   b. exogenous antigens, cytotoxic T cells
   c. antibodies, B cells
   d. endogenous antigens, helper T cells
   e. exogenous antigens, helper T cells
3. Rejection of a foreign skin graft is an example of _____.
   a. destruction of virus-infected cells
   b. tolerance
   c. antibody-mediated immunity
   d. a secondary immune response
   e. a cell-mediated immune response
4. An autoantigen is _____.
   a. an antigen from normal microbiota
   b. a normal body component
   c. an artificial antigen
   d. any carbohydrate antigen
   e. a nucleic acid
5. Among the key molecules that control cell-mediated cytotoxicity are _____.
   a. perforin
   b. immunoglobulins
   c. complement
   d. cytokines
   e. interferons
6. Which of the following lymphocytes predominates in blood?
   a. T cells
   b. B cells
   c. plasma cells
   d. memory cells
   e. all are about equally prevalent

7. The major class of immunoglobulin found on the surfaces of the walls of the intestines and airways is secretory _____.
   a. IgG
   b. IgM
   c. IgA
   d. IgE
   e. IgD

8. Which cells express MHC class I molecules in a patient?
   a. red blood cells
   b. antigen-presenting cells only
   c. neutrophils only
   d. all nucleated cells
   e. dendritic cells only

9. In which of the following sites in the body can B cells be found?
   a. lymph nodes
   b. spleen
   c. red bone marrow
   d. intestinal wall
   e. all of the above

10. Tc cells recognize epitopes only when the latter are held by _____.
    a. MHC proteins
    b. B cells
    c. interleukin 2
    d. granzyme

Modified True/False

Mark each statement as either true or false. Rewrite false statements to make them true by changing the underlined words.

1. _____ MHC class II molecules are found on <u>T cells</u>.
2. _____ <u>Apoptosis</u> is the term used to describe cellular suicide.
3. _____ Lymphocytes with CD8 glycoprotein are <u>helper</u> T cells.
4. _____ <u>Cytotoxic T cells</u> secrete immunoglobulin.
5. _____ Secretion of antibodies by activated B cells is a form of <u>cell-mediated</u> immunity.

Matching

1. Match each cell in the left column with its associated protein from the right column.

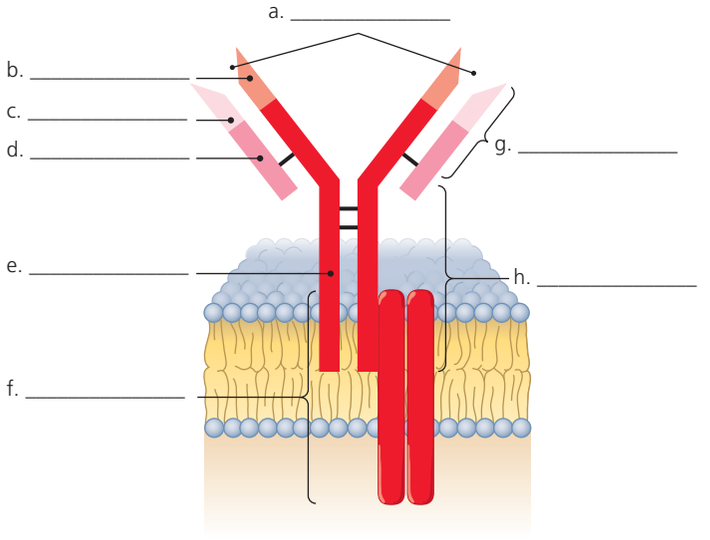
____ Plasma cell	A. MHC II molecule
____ Cytotoxic T cell	B. Interleukin 4
____ Th2 cell	C. Perforin and granzyme
____ Dendritic cell	D. Immunoglobulin

2. Match each type of immunity in the left column with its associated example from the right column.

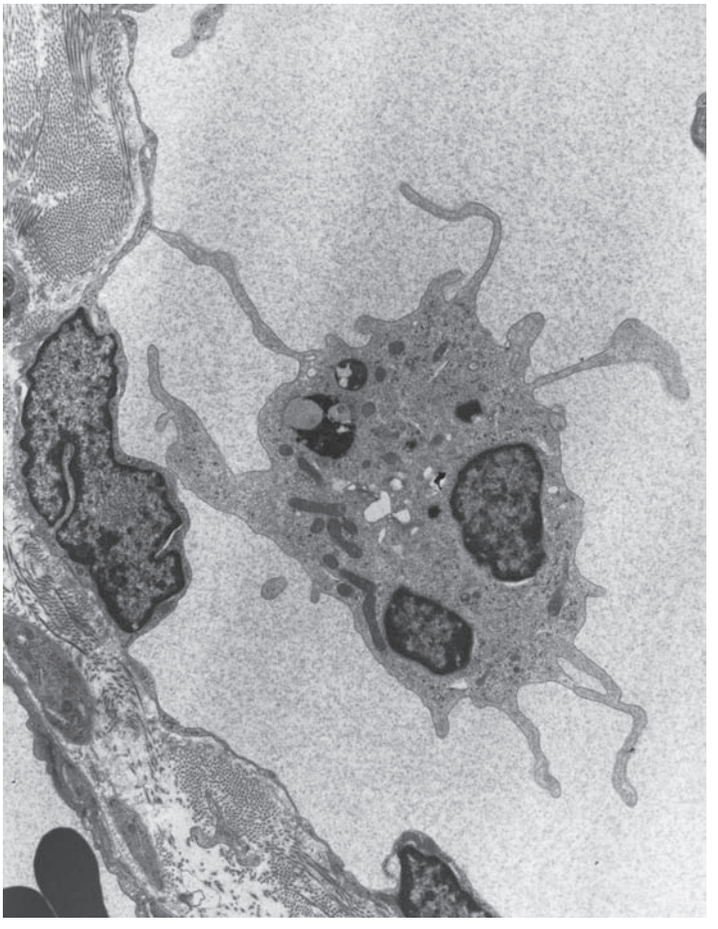
____ Artificially acquired passive immunotherapy	A. Production of IgE in response to pollen
____ Naturally acquired active immunity	B. Acquisition of maternal antibodies in breast milk
____ Naturally acquired passive immunity	C. Administration of tetanus toxoid
____ Artificially acquired active immunity	D. Administration of antitoxin

Visualize It!

1. Label the parts of the immunoglobulin below.



2. This is a transmission electron micrograph of a dendritic cell. Indicate where a scientist could find molecules of MHC I and MHC II. Label a pseudopod and a vesicle.



Short Answer

1. When is antigen processing an essential prerequisite for an immune response?
2. Why does the body have both antibody and cell-mediated immune responses?

Critical Thinking

1. Why is it advantageous for the lymphatic system to lack a pump?
2. Contrast innate defenses with adaptive immunity.
3. What is the benefit to the body of requiring the immune system to process antigen?
4. Scientists can develop genetically deficient strains of mice. Describe the immunological impairments that would result in mice deficient in each of the following: class I MHC, class II MHC, TCR, BCR, IL-2 receptor, and IFN-γ.
5. Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) preferentially destroys CD4 cells. Specifically, what effect does this have on antibody and cell-mediated immunity?
6. What would happen to a person who failed to make MHC molecules?
7. Why does the body make five different classes of immunoglobulins?
8. Some materials, such as metal bone pins and plastic heart valves, can be implanted into the body without fear of rejection by the patient's immune system. Why is this? What are the ideal properties of any material that is to be implanted?
9. What nonmembranous organelle is prevalent in plasma cells? What membranous organelle is prevalent?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes antibodies. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or, complete this map online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Agglutination
Antigens
Antigen-stimulated B cells
Death by Oxidation
IgA
IgD
IgE
IgG
IgM
Inflammation
Neutralization
Osponization
Phagocytosis (2)
Plasma cells
Secreted immunoglobulins
Target bacteria
Toxins
Viruses

17 Immunization and Immune Testing

A 13-month-old girl is brought into the hospital, coughing and crying. Her mother tells the pediatrician that she had noticed a mucous discharge pooling in the corners of her child's eyes the previous evening. The pediatrician checks the girl's medical record and notes that she has not yet received her first measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccination. The doctor then swabs the child's throat, arranges for a blood sample to be taken, and tells the mother that they are going to have the lab perform a "special immune test" to confirm the diagnosis: measles. Because the pediatrician has seen several children with measles in the past few weeks and the child's symptoms support the diagnosis, a nurse administers an intramuscular injection of immunoglobulin against measles. The nurse explains that this injection will protect the child against the most severe form of the illness, which can be fatal. The physician also schedules the daughter for a routine measles/mumps/rubella immunization. Mother and daughter return home to rest and recuperate.

How do immunoglobulins and vaccines work? How do immunological tests aid in the diagnosis of specific diseases? This chapter is an introduction to the important topics of immunization and immune testing.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Immunizations have done more to decrease human disease than any other medical advancement. Here, vaccine vials await shipment.

In this chapter we will discuss three applications of immunology: active immunization (vaccination), passive immunotherapy using immunoglobulins (antibodies), and immune testing. Vaccination has proven the most efficient and cost-effective method of controlling infectious diseases. Without the use of effective vaccines, millions more people worldwide would suffer each year from potentially fatal infectious diseases, including measles, mumps, and polio. The administration of immunoglobulins has further reduced morbidity and mortality from certain infectious diseases, such as hepatitis A and yellow fever, in unvaccinated individuals. Medical personnel also make practical use of the immune response as a diagnostic procedure. For example, the detection of antibodies to HIV in a person's blood indicates that the individual has been exposed to that virus and may develop AIDS. The remarkable specificity of antibodies also enables the detection of drugs in urine, recognition of pregnancy at early stages, and the identification or characterization of other biological material. The many tests developed for these purposes are the focus of the discipline of *serology* (sĕ-rol´ō-jē) and are discussed in the second half of this chapter.

Immunization

An individual may be made immune to an infectious disease by two artificial methods: *active immunization,* which involves administering antigens to a patient so that the patient actively mounts an adaptive immune response, and *passive immunotherapy,* in which a patient acquires temporary immunity through the transfer of antibodies formed by other individuals or animals (see Table 16.4 on p. 489).

In the following sections we will review the history of immunization before examining immunization and immunotherapy in more detail.

Brief History of Immunization

Learning Outcome

17.1 Discuss the history of vaccination from the 12th century through the present.

As early as the 12th century, the Chinese noticed that children who recovered from smallpox never contracted the disease a second time. They therefore adopted a policy of deliberately infecting young children with particles of ground smallpox scabs from children who had survived mild cases. By doing so, they succeeded in significantly reducing the population's overall morbidity and mortality from the disease. News of this procedure, called *variolation* (var´ē-ō-lā´shŭn), spread westward through central Asia, and the technique was widely adopted.

Lady Mary Montagu (1689–1762), the wife of the English ambassador to the Ottoman Empire, learned of the procedure, had it performed on her own children, and told others about it upon her return to England in 1721. As a result, variolation came into use in England and in the American colonies. Although effective and usually successful, variolation caused death from smallpox in 1% to 2% of recipients and in people exposed to recipients, so in time the procedure was outlawed.

Thus, when the English physician Edward Jenner demonstrated in 1796 that protection against smallpox could be conferred by inoculation with crusts from a person infected with cowpox—a related but very mild disease—the new technique was adopted. Because cowpox was also called *vaccinia*[1] (vak-sin´ē-ă), Jenner called the new technique **vaccination** (vak´si-nā´shŭn), and the protective inoculum a **vaccine** (vak-sēn´). Today we use the term **immunization** to refer to the administration of any antigenic inoculum, which are all called vaccines. For many years thereafter, vaccination against smallpox was widely practiced, even though no one understood how it worked or whether similar techniques could protect against other diseases.

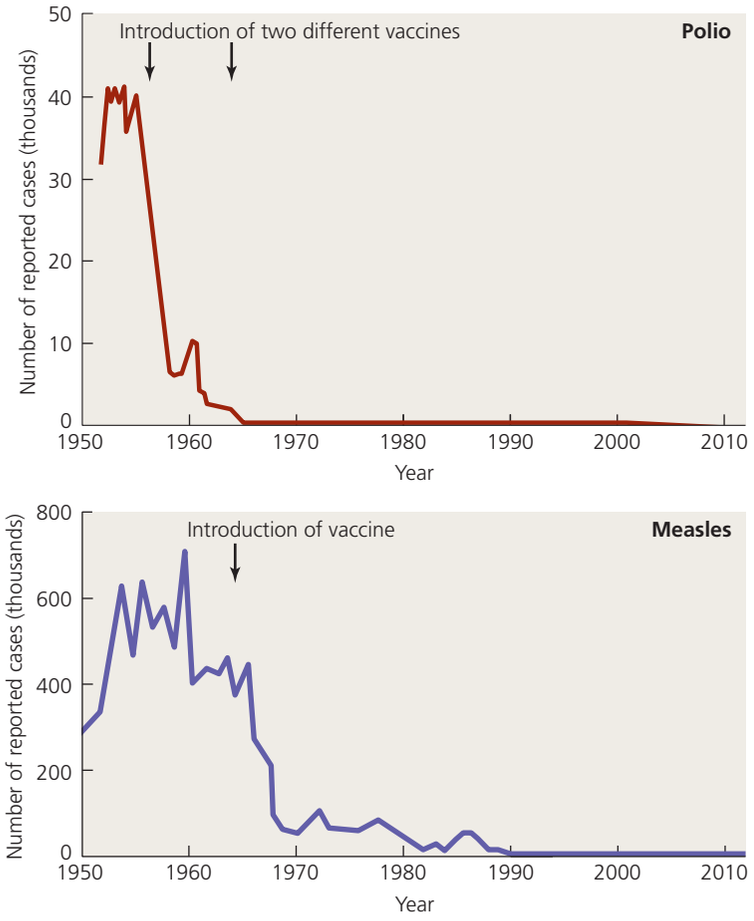
In 1879, Louis Pasteur conducted experiments on the bacterium *Pasteurella multocida* (pas-ter-el´ă mul-tŏ´si-da) and demonstrated that he could make an effective vaccine against this organism (which causes a disease in birds called fowl cholera). Once the basic principle of vaccine manufacture was understood, vaccines against anthrax and rabies rapidly followed. Once it was discovered that these vaccines provide protection through the actions of antibodies, the technique of transferring protective antibodies to susceptible individuals—that is, *passive immunotherapy* (im´ū-nō-thār´ă-pē)—was developed soon thereafter.

By the late 1900s, immunologists and health care providers had formulated vaccines that significantly reduced the number of cases of many infectious diseases **(Figure 17.1)**. We also have successful vaccines against some types of cancer. Health care providers, governments, and international organizations working together have rid the world of naturally occurring smallpox, and we hope for the worldwide eradication of polio, measles, mumps, and rubella. **Highlight: Why Isn't There a Cold Vaccine?** on p. 496 discusses why a vaccine for the common cold does not yet exist.

Even though immunologists have produced vaccines that protect people against many deadly diseases, a variety of political, social, economic, and scientific problems prevent vaccines from reaching all those who need them. In developing nations worldwide, over 3 million children still die each year from vaccine-preventable infectious diseases, primarily because of political obstacles. Additionally, some pathogens, such as the protozoa of malaria and the virus of AIDS, still frustrate attempts to develop effective vaccines against them. Furthermore, the existence of vaccine-associated risks—both medical risks (the low but persistent incidence of vaccine-caused diseases) and financial risks (the high costs of developing and producing vaccines and the risk of lawsuits by vaccine recipients who have adverse reactions)—has in recent years discouraged investment in new vaccines. Thus, although the history of immunization is marked by stunning advancements in public health, the future of immunization poses immense challenges.

Next we take a closer look at active immunization, commonly known as vaccination.

[1] From Latin *vacca*, meaning "cow."



▲ **Figure 17.1 The effect of immunization in reducing the prevalence of two infectious diseases in the United States.** Polio is no longer endemic in the United States. Measles is nearly eradicated.

Active Immunization

Learning Outcomes

17.2 Describe the advantages and disadvantages of five types of vaccines.

17.3 Describe three methods by which recombinant genetic techniques can be used to develop improved vaccines.

17.4 Delineate the risks and benefits of routine vaccination in healthy populations, mentioning contact immunity and herd immunity.

In the following subsections we examine types of vaccines, the roles of technology in producing modern vaccines, and issues concerning vaccine safety.

Vaccine Types

Scientists are constantly striving to develop vaccines of maximal efficacy and safety. In each case, a pathogen is altered or inactivated so that it is less likely to cause illness; however, not all types of vaccines are equally safe or effective. Effectiveness can be checked by measuring the antibody (IgG and IgM) level—called the **titer** (tī´ter)—in the blood. When the titer is low, antibody production can be bolstered by administration of more antigen—a *booster immunization.*

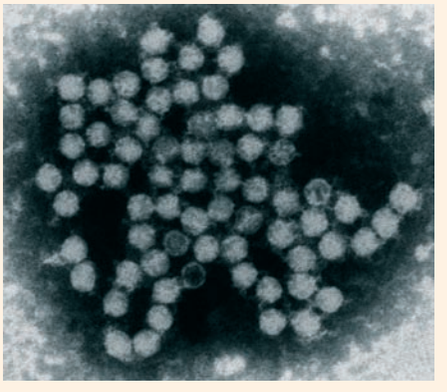
The general types of vaccines, each of which has its own combination of strengths and weaknesses, are attenuated (live) vaccines, killed (or inactivated) vaccines, toxoid vaccines, combination vaccines, and recombinant gene vaccines. Each of these is named for the type of antigen used in the inoculum.

Attenuated (Modified Live) Vaccines Virulent microbes are normally not used in vaccines because they cause disease. Instead, immunologists can reduce virulence so that, although still active, the pathogens no longer cause disease. The process of reducing virulence is called **attenuation** (ă-ten-ū-ā´shŭn). A common method for attenuating viruses involves raising them for numerous generations in tissue culture cells until the viruses

HIGHLIGHT

WHY ISN'T THERE A COLD VACCINE?

We have vaccines for the flu, so why don't we have a vaccine for the common cold? The reason is that whereas strains of only one influenzavirus cause flu, over 200 different adenoviruses, coronaviruses, and rhinoviruses are known to cause the common cold, and each of these viruses has its own distinct antigens and antigenic strains, making it extremely difficult to create a single vaccine to prevent them all. To further complicate matters, viruses can mutate, resulting in changes in their antigens; with over 200 different cold viruses in existence, such mutations create immense logistical challenges in vaccine development. Fortunately, the common cold typically lasts only a few days and is adequately treated with rest and self-care.



Rhinoviruses.

lose the ability to produce disease. Bacteria may be made avirulent by culturing them under unusual conditions or by using genetic manipulation.

Attenuated vaccines—those containing attenuated microbes—are also called *modified live vaccines.* Because they contain active but avirulent organisms or viruses, these vaccines cause very mild infections but no serious disease under normal conditions. Attenuated viruses in such a vaccine infect host cells and replicate; the infected cells then process endogenous viral antigens. Because modified live vaccines contain active microbes, a large number of antigen molecules are available to stimulate an immune response. Further, vaccinated individuals can infect those around them, providing **contact immunity**—that is, immunity beyond the individual receiving the vaccine.

Although usually very effective, attenuated vaccines can be hazardous because modified microbes may retain enough residual virulence to cause disease in immunosuppressed people. Pregnant women should not receive live vaccines because of the danger that the attenuated pathogen will cross the placenta and harm the fetus. Occasionally, modified viruses actually revert to wild type or mutate to a form that causes persistent infection or disease. For example, in 2000 a polio epidemic in the Dominican Republic and Haiti resulted from the reversion of an attenuated virus in oral polio vaccine to a virulent poliovirus. For this reason, we no longer use oral polio vaccine to immunize children in the United States.

Inactivated (Killed) Vaccines For some diseases, live vaccines have been replaced by **inactivated vaccines,** which are of two types: *whole agent vaccines* are produced with deactivated but whole microbes, whereas *subunit vaccines* are produced with antigenic fragments of microbes. Because neither whole agent nor subunit vaccines can replicate, revert, mutate, or retain residual virulence, they are safer than live vaccines. However, because they cannot replicate, multiple ("booster") doses must be administered to achieve full immunity, and immunized individuals do not stimulate contact immunity. Also, with whole agent vaccines, nonantigenic portions of the microbe occasionally stimulate a painful inflammatory response in some individuals. As a result, whole agent pertussis vaccine is now being replaced with a subunit vaccine called acellular pertussis vaccine.

When microbes are killed for use in vaccines, it is important that their antigens remain as similar to those of living organisms as possible. If chemicals are used for killing, they must not alter the antigens responsible for stimulating protective immunity. A commonly used inactivating agent is *formaldehyde,* which denatures proteins and nucleic acids.

Because the microbes of inactivated vaccines cannot reproduce, they do not present as many antigenic molecules to the body as do live vaccines; therefore, inactivated vaccines are antigenically weak. They are administered in high doses or in multiple doses, or incorporated with materials called **adjuvants**[2] (ad´joo-vănt*z*), substances that increase the effective antigenicity of the vaccine by stimulating immune cell receptors and their actions. Unfortunately, high individual doses and multiple dosing increase the risk of producing allergies, and the use of adjuvants to increase antigenicity may stimulate local inflammation.

Because all types of killed vaccines are recognized by the immune system as exogenous antigens, they stimulate an antibody immune response.

Toxoid Vaccines For some bacterial diseases, notably tetanus and diphtheria, it is more efficacious to induce an immune response against toxins than against cellular antigens. **Toxoid vaccines** (tok´soyd) are chemically or thermally modified toxins that are used in vaccines to stimulate active immunity. As with killed vaccines, toxoids stimulate antibody-mediated immunity. Because toxoids have few antigenic determinants, effective immunization requires multiple childhood doses as well as reinoculations every 10 years for life. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Vaccines: Function, Types***

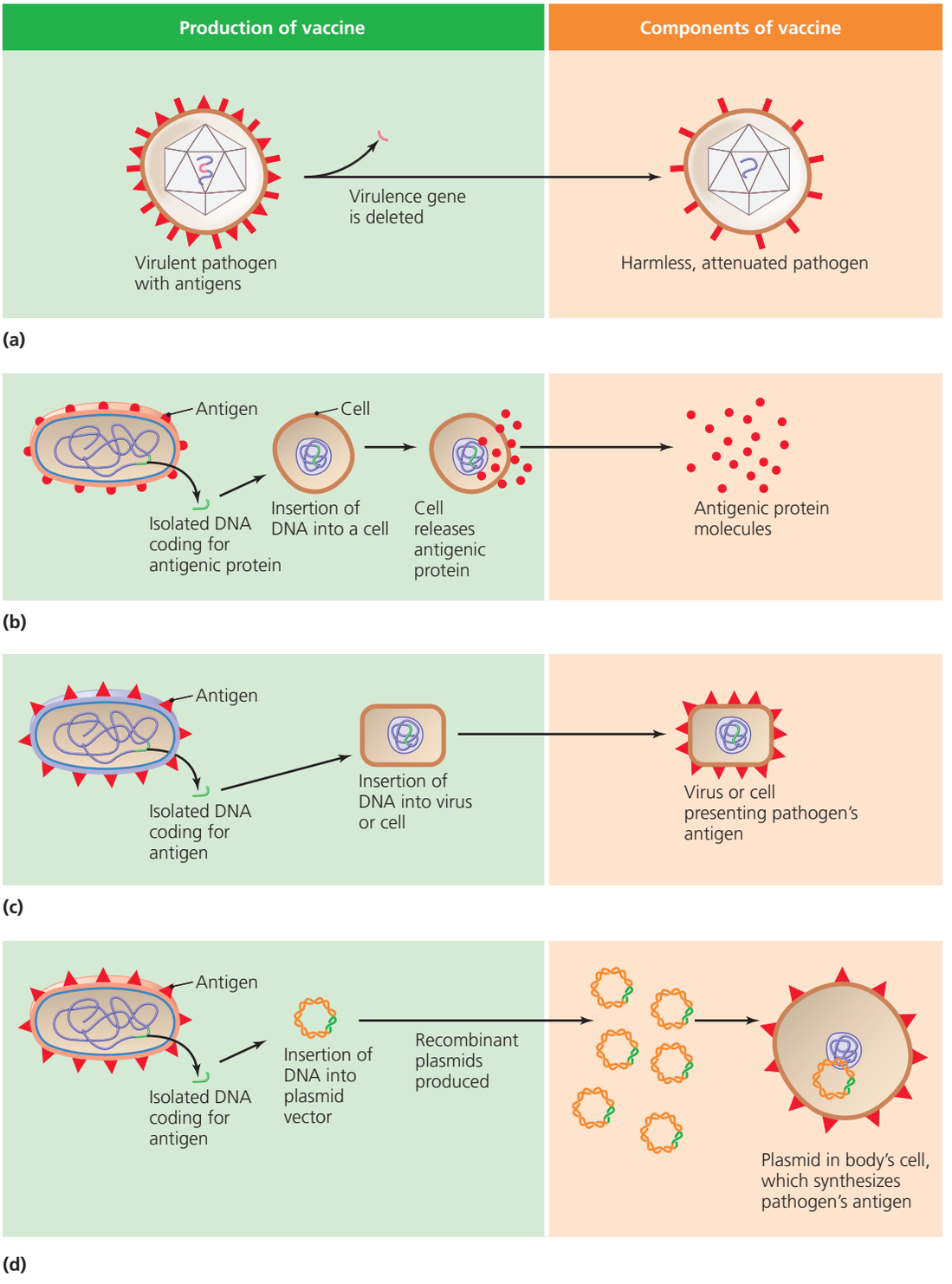
Combination Vaccines The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has approved several **combination vaccines** for routine use. These vaccines combine antigens from several toxoids and inactivated pathogens that are administered simultaneously. Examples include MMR—vaccine against measles, mumps, and rubella—and Pentacel, which is a vaccine against diphtheria, tetanus, pertussis (whooping cough), polio, and diseases of *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flū-en´zī).

Vaccines Using Recombinant Gene Technology Although live, inactivated, and toxoid vaccines have been highly successful in controlling infectious diseases, researchers are always seeking ways to make vaccines more effective, cheaper, and safer and to make new vaccines against pathogens that have been difficult to protect against. For example, scientists have developed a recombinant DNA vaccine against a fungus, *Blastomyces* (blas-tō-mī´sēz)—the first vaccine against a fungal pathogen. Scientists can also use a variety of genetic recombinant techniques to make improved vaccines. For example, they can selectively delete virulence genes from a pathogen, producing an irreversibly attenuated microbe, one that cannot revert to a virulent pathogen **(Figure 17.2a)**.

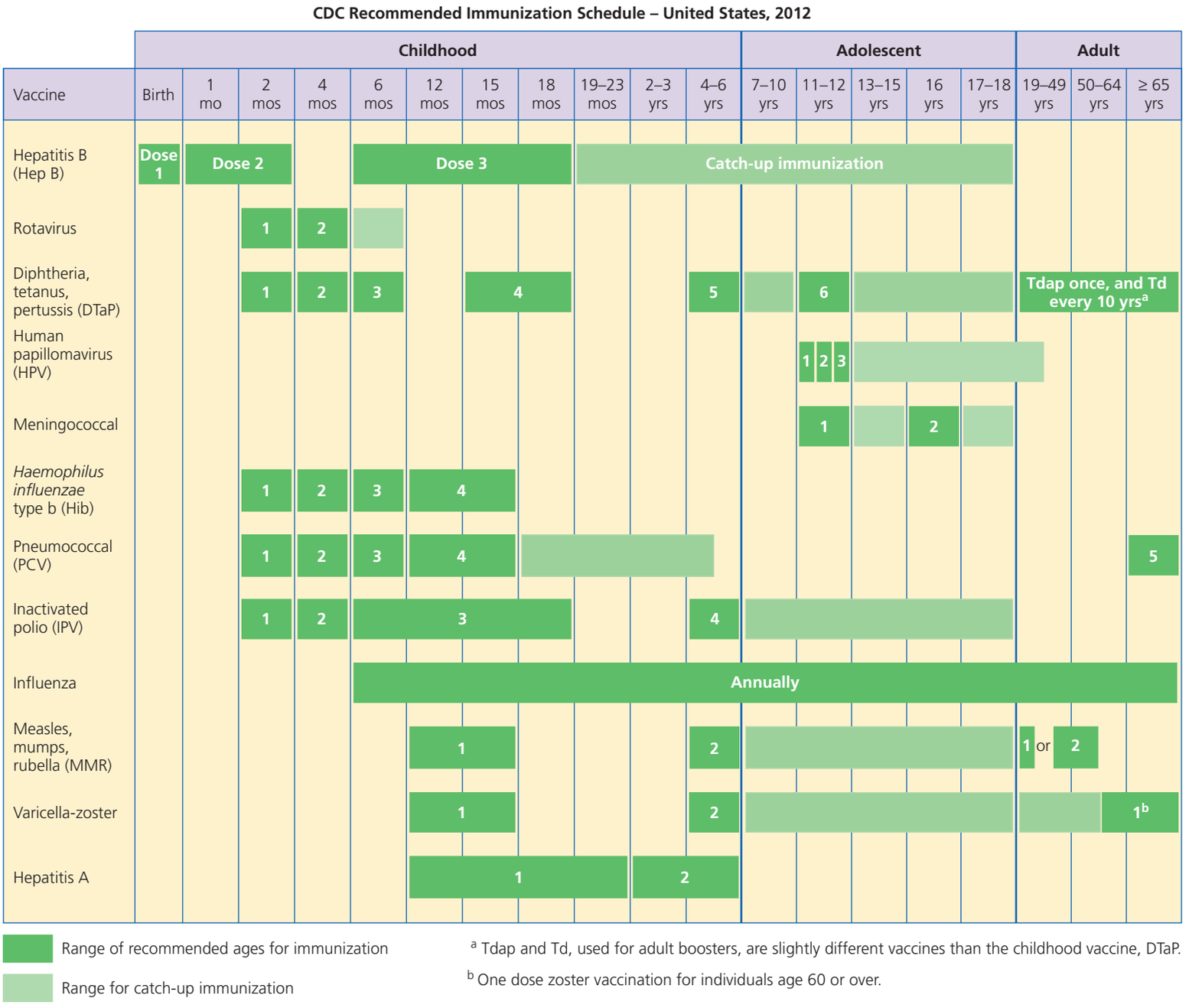
Scientists also use recombinant techniques to produce large quantities of very pure viral or bacterial antigens for use in vaccines. In this process, scientists isolate the gene that codes for an antigen and insert it into a bacterium, yeast, or other cell, which then expresses and releases the antigen **(Figure 17.2b)**. Vaccine manufacturers produce hepatitis B vaccine in this manner using recombinant yeast cells.

Alternatively, a genetically altered microbial cell or virus may express the antigen and act as a live vaccine **(Figure 17.2c)**. Experimental recombinant vaccines of this type have used adenoviruses, herpesviruses, poxviruses, and bacteria such as *Salmonella* (sal´mŏ-nel´ă). Vaccinia virus (cowpox virus) is often used because it is easy to administer by dermal scratching or orally and because its large genome makes inserting a new gene into it relatively easy. Another method results in the body's own cells expressing the antigen. The DNA coding for a pathogen's antigen can be inserted into a plasmid vector, which is then injected into the body **(Figure 17.2d)**. The body's cells take up

[2]From latin *adjuvo*, meaning "to help."



▲ Figure 17.2 Some uses of recombinant DNA technology for making improved vaccines. **(a)** Deletion of virulence gene(s) to create an attenuated pathogen for use in a vaccine. **(b)** Insertion of a gene that codes for a selected antigenic protein into a cell, which then produces large quantities of the antigen for use in a vaccine. **(c)** Insertion of a gene that codes for a selected antigenic protein into a cell or virus, which displays the antigen. The entire recombinant is used in a vaccine. **(d)** Injection of DNA containing a selected gene (in this case, as part of a plasmid) into an individual. Once some of this DNA is incorporated into the genome of a patient's cells, those cells synthesize and process the antigen, which stimulates an immune response.



▲ Figure 17.3 The CDC's recommended immunization schedule for the general population. Adult meningococcal vaccine is recommended for college students who live in dormitories.

the plasmid (with the antigen's DNA) and then transcribe and translate the gene to produce antigen, which triggers an immune response.

Vaccine Manufacture

Manufacturers mass-produce many vaccines by growing microbes in laboratory culture vessels, but because viruses require a host cell to reproduce, they are cultured inside chicken eggs. Availability of sterile eggs is thus critical for manufacturing viral vaccines such as flu vaccines. Because the vaccines are produced in eggs, physicians must withhold such immunizations from patients with egg allergies. Research on gene-based vaccines and development of vaccines in genetically modified plants may result in safer vaccines.

Recommended Immunizations

The CDC and medical associations publish recommended immunization schedules for children, adults, and special populations, such as health care workers and HIV-positive individuals. The recommendations are frequently modified to reflect changes in the relationships between pathogens and the human population. **Figure 17.3** highlights the general 2012 immunization schedules

TABLE 17.1 Principal Vaccines to Prevent Human Diseases

Vaccine	Disease Agent	Disease	Vaccine Type	Method of Administration
Recommended by CDC				
Hepatitis B	Hepatitis B virus	Hepatitis B	Inactive subunit from recombinant yeast	Intramuscular
Rotavirus	*Rotavirus*	Gastroenteritis	Attenuated, recombinant	Oral
Diphtheria/ tetanus/ acellular pertussis (DTaP)	Diphtheria toxin Tetanus toxin *Bordetella pertussis*	Diphtheria Tetanus Whooping cough	Toxoid Toxoid Inactivated subunit (inactivated whole also available)	Intramuscular
Human papillomavirus (HPV)	Human papillomaviruses	Genital warts, cervical cancer	Inactive recombinant	Intramuscular
Meningococcal	*Neisseria meningiditis*	Meningitis	Inactive	Subcutaneous or intramuscular
Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib)	*Haemophilus influenzae*	Meningitis, pneumonia, epiglottitis	Inactivated subunit	Intramuscular
Pneumococcal (PCV)	*Streptococcus pneumoniae*	Pneumonia	Inactivated subunit	Intramuscular
Polio	Poliovirus	Poliomyelitis	Inactivated (attenuated also available)	Subcutaneous or intramuscular (attenuated: oral)
Influenza	Influenzaviruses	Flu	Inactivated subunit	Intramuscular or oral
Measles/ mumps/ rubella (MMR)	Measles virus Mumps virus Rubella virus	Measles Mumps Rubella (German measles)	Attenuated Attenuated Attenuated	Subcutaneous
Varicella-zoster	Chicken pox virus	Chicken pox, shingles	Attenuated	Subcutaneous
Hepatitis A	Hepatitis A virus	Hepatitis A	Inactivated whole	Intramuscular
Available but Not Recommended for General Population in the United States				
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis*	Anthrax	Inactivated whole	Subcutaneous
BCG (bacillus of Calmette and Guérin)	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis, M. leprae*	Tuberculosis, leprosy	Attenuated	Intradermal
Japanese encephalitis vaccine	Japanese encephalitis virus	Encephalitis	Inactive	Subcutaneous
Rabies	Rabies virus	Rabies	Inactivated whole	Intramuscular or intradermal
Typhoid fever vaccine	*Salmonella enterica*	Typhoid fever	Attenuated (inactive also available)	Oral (inactive: subcutaneous or intramuscular)
Vaccinia (cowpox)	Smallpox virus, monkey pox virus	Smallpox, monkey pox	Attenuated	Subcutaneous
Yellow fever	Yellow fever virus	Yellow fever	Attenuated	Subcutaneous

recommended by the CDC. Table 17.1 lists facts concerning the types of vaccines available for immunizing against each of the diseases in the vaccination schedule as well as some other available vaccines. Vaccines against anthrax, cholera, plague, tuberculosis, and other diseases are available, but the CDC does not recommend them for the general U.S. population.

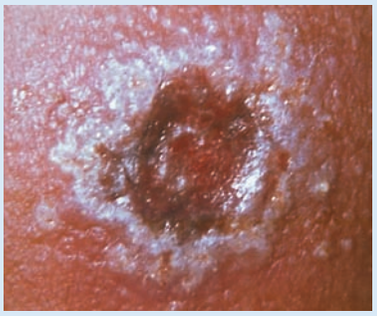
It is important that patients follow the recommended immunization schedule not only to protect themselves but also to provide society with **herd immunity.** Herd immunity is the protection provided all individuals in a population due to the inability of a pathogen to effectively spread when a large proportion of individuals (typically more than 75%) are resistant. When immunization compliance in a population has fallen, local epidemics have resulted.

Vaccine Safety

Health care providers must carefully weigh the risks associated with vaccines against their benefits. A common vaccine-associated

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

SMALLPOX: TO VACCINATE OR NOT TO VACCINATE?



Vaccinia necrosum.

Dr. Edward Jenner developed an early use for a beneficial microbe in medicine. Medical personnel in the United States followed Jenner's example by regularly administering cowpox virus—as the smallpox vaccine—to the general public until 1971, at which time the risk of contracting smallpox was deemed too low to justify required vaccinations. Indeed, in 1980 the World Health Assembly declared smallpox successfully eradicated from the natural world. However, recent concerns about the potential use of smallpox virus as an agent of bioterrorism has sparked debate about whether citizens should once again be vaccinated against it.

Although safe and effective for most healthy adults, for others the attenuated cowpox virus can result in serious side effects—even death. Individuals with compromised immune systems (such as AIDS patients or cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy) are considered to be at particularly high risk for developing adverse reactions. Pregnant women, infants, and individuals with a history of the skin condition eczema are also considered poor candidates for the vaccine. Though rare, adverse reactions to the vaccine may also develop in certain otherwise healthy individuals. The more serious side effects include vaccinia necrosum (characterized by progressive cell death in the area of vaccination) and encephalitis (inflammation of the brain). Approximately 1 in every 1 million individuals receiving cowpox virus as a vaccine for the first time develops a fatal reaction to it.

Is the risk of a bioterrorist smallpox attack great enough to warrant the exposure to the known risks of administering smallpox vaccine to the general population? If you were a public health official, what would you decide?

problem is mild toxicity. Some vaccines—especially whole agent vaccines that contain adjuvant—may cause pain at the injection site for several hours or days after injection. In rare cases, toxicity may result in general malaise and possibly a fever high enough to induce seizures. Although not usually life threatening, the potential for these symptoms may be sufficient to discourage people from being immunized or having their infants immunized.

A much more severe problem associated with immunization is the risk of *anaphylactic shock*, an allergic reaction that may develop to some component of the vaccine, such as egg proteins, adjuvants, or preservatives. Because people are rarely aware of such allergies ahead of time, recipients should remain for several minutes in the physician's office, where epinephrine is readily available to counter any signs of an allergic reaction.

A third major problem associated with immunization is that of residual virulence, which we previously discussed. Attenuated viruses occasionally cause disease not only in fetuses and immunosuppressed patients but also in healthy children and adults. A good example is the attenuated oral poliovirus vaccine (OPV), which was commonly used in the United States until the late 1990s. Though a very effective vaccine, it causes clinical poliomyelitis in 1 of every 2 million recipients or their close contacts. Medical personnel in the United States eliminated this problem by switching to inactivated polio vaccine (IPV).

Over the past two decades, lawsuits in the United States and Europe have alleged that certain vaccines against childhood diseases cause or trigger disorders such as autism, diabetes, and asthma. Extensive research has failed to substantiate these allegations. Vaccine manufacturing methods have improved tremendously in recent years, ensuring that modern vaccines are much safer than those in use even a decade ago. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has established a Vaccine Adverse Event Reporting System for monitoring vaccine safety.

The CDC and FDA have determined that the problems associated with immunization are far less serious than the suffering and death that would result if we stopped immunizing people. **Beneficial Microbes: Smallpox: To Vaccinate or Not to Vaccinate?** discusses the issues surrounding the administration of smallpox vaccinations to the general public.

Passive Immunotherapy

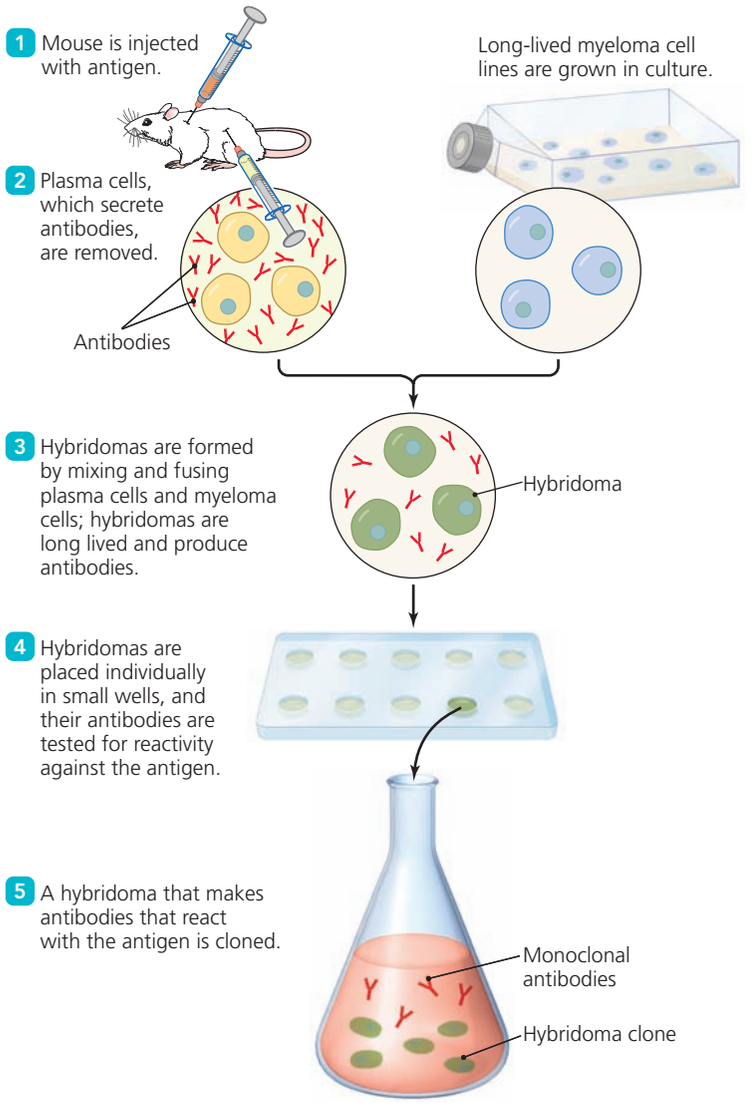
Learning Outcomes

17.5 Identify two sources of antibodies for use in passive immunotherapy.

17.6 Compare the relative advantages and disadvantages of active immunization and passive immunotherapy.

Passive immunotherapy (sometimes called *passive immunization*) involves the administration of antibodies to a patient. Physicians use passive immunotherapy when protection against a recent infection or an ongoing disease is needed quickly. Rapid protection is achieved because passive immunotherapy does not require the body to mount a response; instead, preformed antibodies are immediately available to bind to antigen, enabling neutralization and opsonization to proceed without delay. For example, in a case of botulism poisoning (caused by the toxin of *Clostridium botulinum* [klos-trid´ē-ŭm bo-tū-lī´num]), passive immunotherapy with preformed antibodies against the toxin can prevent death.

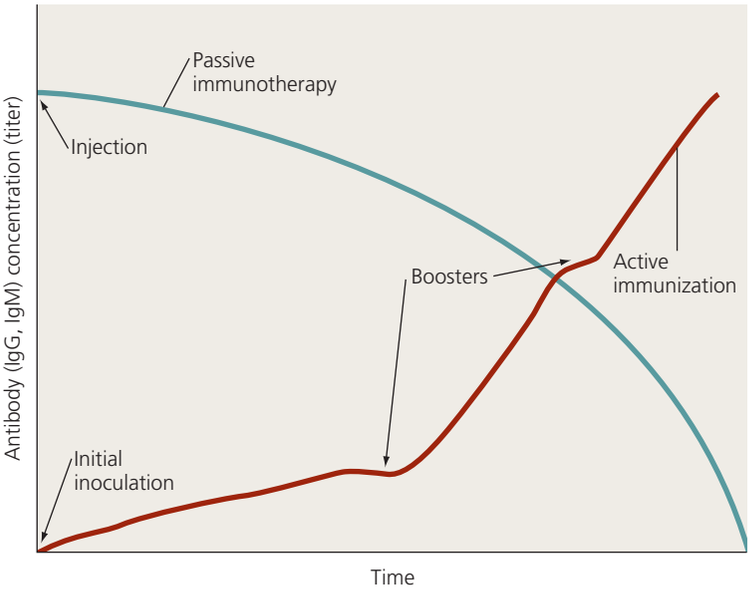
Antibodies directed against toxins are also called *antitoxins* (an-tē-tok´sinz); *antivenom (antivenin)* used to treat snakebites is an example of an antitoxin. In some cases, infections with certain



▲ Figure 17.4 The production of hybridomas. After a laboratory animal is injected with the antigen of interest 1, plasma cells are removed from the animal and isolated 2. When these plasma cells are fused with cultured cancer cells called myelomas, hybridomas result 3. Once the hybridomas are cultured individually and the hybridoma that produces antibodies against the antigen of interest is identified 4, it is cloned to produce a large number of hybridomas, all of which secrete identical antibodies called monoclonal antibodies 5.

viruses—hepatitis A and B, measles, rabies, Ebola, chicken pox, and shingles—are treated with antibodies directed against the causative viruses.

To acquire antibodies for passive immunotherapy, clinicians remove blood cells and clotting factors from the blood of donors; the result is *serum,* which contains a variety of antibodies—particularly gamma globulins. When used for passive immunotherapy, such serum is called **antiserum** (an-tē-sē´rŭm) or sometimes *immune serum.* Antisera are typically collected from human blood plasma donors or from large animals intentionally exposed to a pathogen of interest, because the large blood volume of the animals contains more antibodies than can be obtained from smaller animals. Pooled antisera from a group of human donors can be administered intravenously



▲ Figure 17.5 The characteristics of immunity produced by active immunization (red) and passive immunotherapy (green). Passive immunotherapy provides strong and immediate protection, but it disappears relatively quickly. Active immunity takes some time and may require additional booster inoculations to reach protective levels, but it is long lasting and capable of restimulation.

(intravenous immunoglobulins, IVIg) to treat immunodeficiencies and some autoimmune and inflammatory diseases.

Passive immunotherapy has the following limitations:

- Repeated injections of animal-derived antisera can trigger an allergic response called *serum sickness,* in which the recipient mounts an immune response against animal antigens found in the antisera.
- The patient may degrade the antibodies relatively quickly; therefore, protection is not long lasting.
- The body does not produce memory B cells in response to passive immunotherapy, so the patient is not protected against subsequent infections.

Scientists have overcome the limitations of antisera by developing **hybridomas** (hī-brid-ō´măz), which are tumor cells created by fusing antibody-secreting plasma cells with cancerous plasma cells called *myelomas* (mī-ĕ-lō´măz) **(Figure 17.4)**. Each hybridoma divides continuously (because of the cancerous plasma cell component) to produce clones of itself, and each clone secretes large amounts of a single antibody molecule. These identical antibodies are called **monoclonal antibodies** (mon-ō-klō´năl) because all of them are secreted by clones originating from a single plasma cell. Once scientists have identified the hybridoma that secretes antibodies complementary to the antigen of interest, they maintain it in tissue culture to produce the antibodies needed for passive immunotherapy. For example, physicians use such a monoclonal antibody to treat newborns infected with respiratory syncytial virus.

Active immunization and passive immunotherapy are used in different circumstances because they provide protection with different characteristics **(Figure 17.5)**. As just noted, passive immunotherapy with preformed antibodies is used whenever immediate

protection is required. However, because preformed antibodies are removed rapidly from the blood and no memory B cells are produced, protection is temporary, and the recipient becomes susceptible again. Active immunization provides long-term protection that is capable of restimulation. Thus, when initiated before any exposure to *Clostridium tetani* (te´tan-ē) has occurred, active immunization using a tetanus toxoid develops long-lasting protection that is readily available upon exposure to the toxin.

Serological Tests That Use Antigens and Corresponding Antibodies

Learning Outcomes

17.7 Define *serology*.
17.8 Describe several uses of serological tests.
17.9 In general terms, compare and contrast precipitation, agglutination, neutralization, complement fixation, and labeled antibody testing methods.

The determination of the presence of particular antigens or specific antibodies in blood serum is called **serology** (sĕ-rol´ō-jē). Scientists have developed a variety of serological tests to identify antigens or antibodies in serum. Serological methods range from simple manual procedures to complex and automated ones.

Serological tests have many uses. Epidemiologists review serological test results to monitor the spread of infection through a population. Physicians order relevant tests, which are conducted by medical laboratory scientists or technologists, to establish diagnoses. For example, when a physician suspects a patient might be infected by HIV and hepatitis B virus, the doctor orders both an anti-HIV test and a hepatitis B virus surface antigen test. The first determines the presence of antibodies against HIV in the serum—strong evidence that the patient is infected with HIV. The surface antigen test indicates infection with hepatitis B virus.

In the following sections, we examine various types of serological methods: precipitations, turbidimetry, nephelometry, agglutination, neutralization, and labeled antibody tests. Some of these procedures are presented for historical reasons—more accurate and faster modern tests have replaced them. For example, one modern method—*polymerase chain reaction (PCR)*—can amplify copies of genes. Thus, PCR enables testing for the presence of viral genetic material rather than the presence of antibodies against the viruses, allowing infection to be detected before the body produces antibodies.

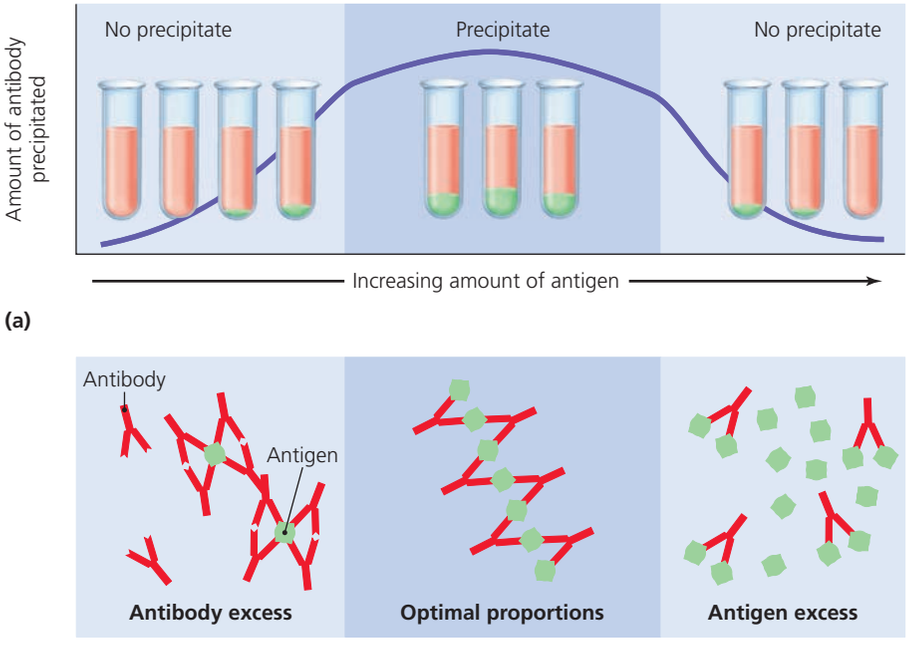
Precipitation Tests

Learning Outcomes

17.10 Describe the general principles of precipitation testing.
17.11 Describe the technique of immunodiffusion.
17.12 Discuss the production of anti-antibodies for immune testing.

One of the simplest of serological tests relies on the fact that when antigens and antibody are mixed in proper proportions, they form huge, insoluble, lattice-like complexes called precipitates. When, for example, a solution of a soluble antigen, such as that of the fungus *Coccidioides immitis* (kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz im´mi-tis), is mixed with an antiserum containing antibodies against the antigen, the mixture quickly becomes cloudy because of the formation of a precipitate consisting of antigen-antibody complexes, also called **immune complexes**.

When a given amount of antibody is added to each of a series of test tubes containing increasing amounts of antigen, the amount of precipitate increases gradually until it reaches a maximum **(Figure 17.6a)**. In test tubes containing still more antigen



▶ Figure 17.6 Characteristics of precipitation reactions. **(a)** When increasing amounts of antigen are placed in tubes containing a constant amount of antibody, precipitate forms only in tubes having moderate amounts of antigen. The overlay graph shows the amount of precipitate formed versus the amount of antigen present. **(b)** In the presence of excess antigen or antibody, immune complexes are small and soluble; only when antigen and antibody are in optimal proportions do large complexes form and precipitate.

molecules, the amount of precipitate declines; in fact, in test tubes containing antigen in great excess over antibody, no precipitate at all develops. Thus, a graph of the amount of precipitate versus the amount of antigen has a maximum in the middle values.

The reasons behind this pattern of precipitation reactions are simple. Complex antigens are generally multivalent—each possesses many epitopes—and antibodies have pairs of active sites and therefore can simultaneously cross-link the same epitope on two antigen molecules (see Chapter 16). When there is excess antibody, each antigen molecule is covered with many antibody molecules, preventing extensive cross-linkage and thus precipitation **(Figure 17.6b)**. Since there is no precipitation, an observer might conclude that there is no antigen in the solution—a negative test result. This is untrue; antigen is present. Such a *false negative* interpretation is called a *prozone phenomenon.*

When the reactants are in optimal proportions, the ratio of antigen to antibody is such that cross-linking and lattice formation are extensive. As this lattice grows, it precipitates.

In mixtures in which antigen is in excess, little or no precipitation occurs because there are few cross-linkages. Antibody-antigen complexes are small and soluble, so no precipitation occurs.

Because precipitation requires the mixing of antigen and antibody in optimal proportions, it is not possible to perform a precipitation test by combining just any two solutions containing these reagents. To ensure that the optimal concentrations of antibody and antigen come together, scientists historically have used a technique involving movement of the molecules through an agar gel: immunodiffusion.

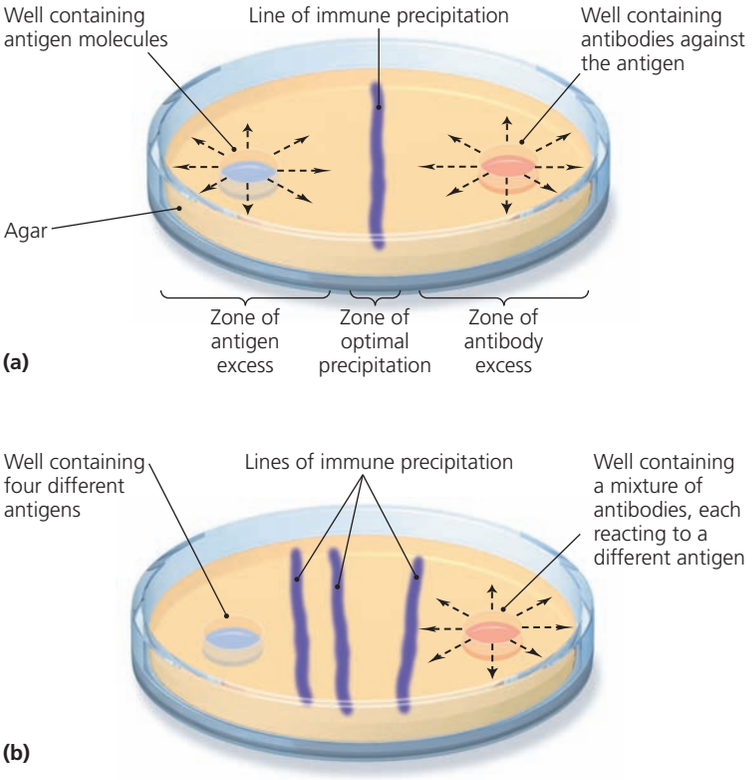
Immunodiffusion

In the precipitation technique called **immunodiffusion** (im´ū-nō-di-fu´zhŭn), a researcher cuts cylindrical holes called *wells* in an agar plate. One well is filled with a solution of antigen and the other with a solution of antibodies against the antigen. The antigen and antibody molecules diffuse in all directions out of the wells and into the surrounding agar, and where they meet in optimal proportions, a line of precipitation appears **(Figure 17.7a)**. If the solutions contain many different antigens and antibodies, each complementary pair of reactants reaches optimal proportions at different positions, and numerous lines of precipitation are produced—one for each interacting antigen-antibody pair **(Figure 17.7b)**. Such an immunodiffusion test has been used to indicate exposure to complex mixtures of antigens from fungal pathogens. Only exposed patients have serum antibodies—and show precipitation—against the fungal antigens, so physicians can monitor and treat such patients.

Turbidimetric and Nephelometric Tests

Turbidimitry and *nephelometry* are automated methods that measure the cloudiness of a solution, as occurs when antibodies and antigens are mixed together. As noted previously, when the concentrations of antibodies and antigens are optimal, the initial cloudiness is followed by precipitation.

In turbidimetry, a light detector measures the amount of light passing through a solution, whereas in nephelometry, the machine measures the amount of light reflected from the antigen-antibody complexes within the solution. Medical laboratory scientists use these methods to quantify the amounts of proteins, such as antibodies and complement, in serum.



▲ Figure 17.7 Immunodiffusion, a type of precipitation reaction. (a) Antigen and antibody placed in wells diffuse out and through the agar; where they meet in optimal proportions, a line of precipitation forms. **(b)** When multiple antigens and antibodies are placed in the wells, multiple lines of precipitation mark the sites where different antigen-antibody combinations occurred in optimal proportions. *Why did only three lines of precipitation occur when the antigen well contained four antigens?*

Figure 17.7 *None of the antibodies used in the test was complementary to the fourth antigen.*

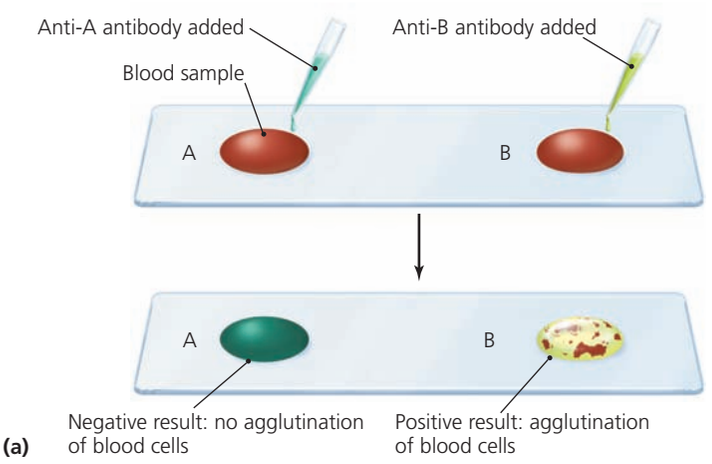
Agglutination Tests

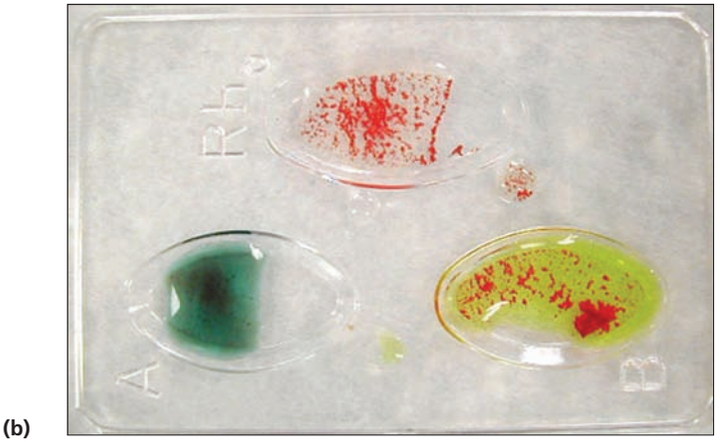
Learning Outcomes

17.13 Contrast agglutination and precipitation tests.

17.14 Describe how agglutination is used in immunological testing, including titration.

Not all antigens are soluble proteins that can be precipitated by antibody. Because of their multiple antigen-binding sites, antibodies can also cross-link particles, such as whole bacteria or antigen-coated latex beads, causing **agglutination** (ă-gloo-ti-nā´shŭn, clumping). The difference between agglutination and precipitation is that agglutination involves the clumping of insoluble particles, whereas precipitation involves the aggregation of soluble molecules. Agglutination reactions are sometimes easier to see and interpret with the unaided eye.





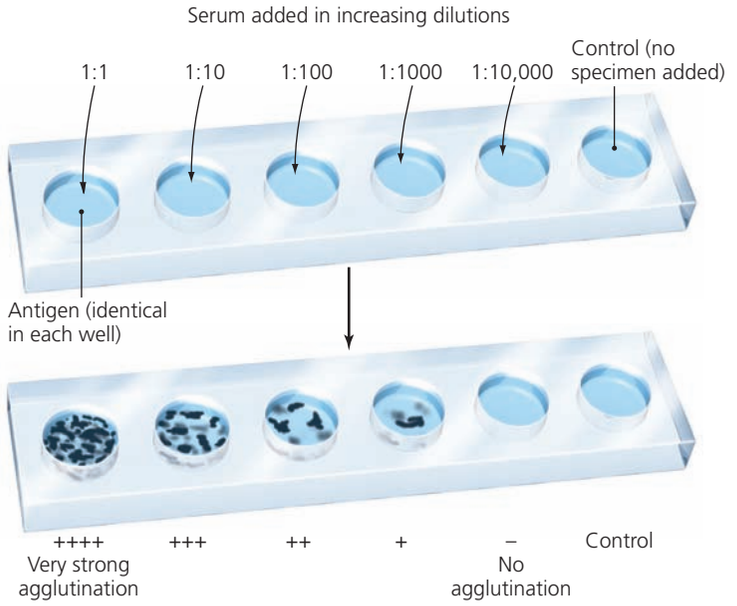
▲ Figure 17.8 The use of hemagglutination to determine blood types in humans. (a) Antibodies with active sites that bind to either of two surface antigens (antigen A or antigen B) of red blood cells are added to portions of a given blood sample. Where the antibodies react with the surface antigens, the blood cells can be seen to agglutinate, or clump together. **(b)** Photo of actual test, which also includes a test for Rh antigen, to be denoted positive (+) or negative (–). *What is the blood type of the person whose blood was used in this hemagglutination reaction?*

Figure 17.8 *The individual who donated the blood sample has type B+ blood.*

When the particles agglutinated are red blood cells, the reaction is called *hemagglutination* (hē-mă-gloo´ti-nā´shŭn). One use of hemagglutination is to determine blood type in humans. Blood is considered type A if the red blood cells possess surface antigens called A antigen, type B if they possess B antigens, type AB if they possess both antigens, and type O if they have neither antigen. In a hemagglutination reaction to determine blood type **(Figure 17.8)**, two portions of a given blood sample are placed on a slide. Anti-A antibodies are added to one portion and anti-B antibodies to the other; the antibodies agglutinate those blood cells that possess corresponding antigens.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Draw a picture showing, at *both the molecular and the cellular level*, IgM agglutinating red blood cells.



▲ Figure 17.9 Titration, the use of agglutination to quantify the amount of antibody in a serum sample. Serial dilutions of serum are added to wells containing a constant amount of antigen. At lower serum dilutions (higher concentrations of antibody), agglutination occurs; at higher serum dilutions, antibody concentration is too low to produce agglutination. The serum's titer is the highest dilution at which agglutination can be detected—in this case, 1:1000.

Another use of agglutination is in a type of test that determines the concentration of antibodies in a clinical sample. Although the simple *detection* of antibodies is sufficient for many purposes, it is often more desirable to measure the *amount* of antibodies in serum. By doing so, clinicians can determine whether a patient's antibody levels are rising, as occurs in response to the presence of active infectious disease, or falling, as occurs during the successful conclusion of a fight against an infection. One way of measuring antibody levels in blood sera is by **titration** (tī-trā´shŭn). In titration, the serum being tested undergoes a regular series of dilutions, and each dilution is then tested for agglutinating activity **(Figure 17.9)**. Eventually, the antibodies in the serum become so dilute that they can no longer cause agglutination. The highest dilution of serum giving a positive reaction is its **titer**, which is expressed as a ratio reflecting the dilution. Thus, a serum that must be greatly diluted before agglutination ceases (e.g., has been diluted a thousand-fold; that is, has a titer of 1:1000) contains more antibodies than a serum that no longer agglutinates after minimal dilution (has a titer of 1:10).

Neutralization Tests

Learning Outcomes

17.15 Explain the purpose of neutralization tests.
17.16 Contrast a viral hemagglutination inhibition test with a hemagglutination test.

Neutralization tests work because antibodies can *neutralize* the biological activity of many pathogens and their toxins. For example, combining antibodies against tetanus toxin with a sample of toxin renders the sample harmless to mice because the antibodies

have reacted with and neutralized the toxin. Next we briefly consider two neutralization tests that, although not simple to perform, effectively reveal the biological activity of antibodies.

Viral Neutralization

One neutralization test is **viral neutralization,** which is based on the fact that many viruses introduced into appropriate cell cultures will invade and kill the cells, a phenomenon called a *cytopathic effect* (seen in plaque formation; see Figure 13.17). However, if the viruses are first mixed with specific antibodies against them, their ability to kill cultured cells is neutralized. In a viral neutralization test, the lack of cytopathic effects when a mixture containing serum and a known pathogenic virus is introduced into a cell culture indicates the presence of antibodies against that virus in the serum. For example, if a mixture containing an individual's serum and a sample of hantavirus produces no cytopathic effect in a culture of susceptible cells, then it can be concluded that the individual's serum contains antibodies to hantavirus, and these antibodies neutralized the virus. Viral neutralization tests are sufficiently sensitive and specific to ascertain whether an individual has been exposed to a particular virus or viral strain, which may lead a physician to a diagnosis or treatment or to recommendations to prevent future infection or disease.

Viral Hemagglutination Inhibition Test

Because not all viruses are cytopathic—they do not kill their host cell—a neutralization test cannot be used to identify all viruses. However, many viruses (including influenzaviruses) have surface proteins that naturally clump red blood cells. (This natural process, called *viral hemagglutination,* must not be confused with the hemagglutination test we discussed previously—viral hemagglutination is not an antibody-antigen reaction.) Antibodies against influenzavirus inhibit viral hemagglutination; therefore, if serum from an individual stops viral hemagglutination, we know that the individual's serum contains antibodies to that particular strain of influenzavirus. Such **viral hemagglutination inhibition tests** can be used to detect antibodies against influenza, measles, mumps, and other viruses that naturally agglutinate red blood cells.

The Complement Fixation Test

Learning Outcome

17.17 Briefly explain the phenomenon that is the basis for a complement fixation test.

Activation of the classical complement system by antibody leads to the generation of membrane attack complexes (MACs) that disrupt cytoplasmic membranes (see Figure 15.9). This phenomenon is the basis for the **complement fixation test** (kom´plĕ-ment fik-sā´shŭn), which is a complex assay used to detect the presence of specific antibodies in an individual's serum. The test can detect the presence of small amounts of antibody—amounts too small to detect by agglutination—though complement fixation tests have been replaced by other serological methods such as ELISA (discussed shortly) or genetic analysis using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (see Figure 8.5).

Labeled Antibody Tests

Learning Outcomes

17.18 List three tests that use labeled antibodies to detect either antigen or antibodies.

17.19 Compare and contrast the direct and indirect fluorescent antibody tests and identify at least three uses for these tests.

17.20 Compare and contrast the methods, purposes, and advantages of ELISA and immunoblotting tests.

A different form of serological testing involves *labeled* (or *tagged*) *antibody tests,* so named because these tests use antibody molecules that are linked to some molecular "label" that enables them to be detected easily. Labels include radioactive chemicals, fluorescent dyes, and enzymes. Automated machines can detect and quantify labels. For example, gamma radiation detectors can count radioactive chemicals, and fluorescence microscopes can measure fluorescent labels. Labeled antibody tests using radioactive or fluorescent labels can be used to detect either antigens or antibodies. In the following sections we will consider fluorescent antibody tests, ELISA, and immunoblotting tests.

Fluorescent Antibody Tests

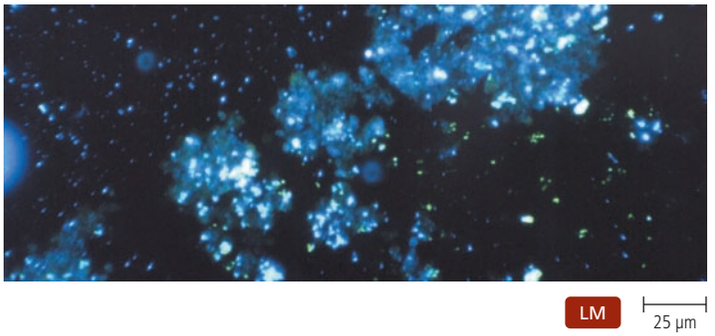
Fluorescent dyes are used as labels in several serological tests. Some fluorescent dyes can be chemically linked to an antibody without affecting the antibody's ability to bind antigen. When exposed to a specific wavelength of light (as in a fluorescence microscope), the fluorescent dye glows. Fluorescently-labeled antibodies are used in direct and indirect fluorescent antibody tests.

Direct fluorescent antibody tests identify the presence of antigen in a tissue. The test is straightforward: A scientist floods a tissue sample suspected of containing the antigen with labeled antibody, waits a short time to allow the antibody to bind to the antigen, washes the preparation to remove any unbound antibody, and examines it with a fluorescence microscope. If the suspected antigen is present, labeled antibody will adhere to it, and the scientist will see fluorescence. This is not a quantitative test—the amount of fluorescence observed is not directly related to the amount of antigen present.

Scientists use direct fluorescent antibody tests to identify small numbers of bacteria in patient tissues. This technique has been used to detect *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in sputum and rabies viruses infecting a brain. In one use, medical laboratory scientists employ a direct fluorescent antibody test to detect the presence of fungi in the lungs of a patient, corroborating a diagnosis of fungal pneumonia **(Figure 17.10).**

Indirect fluorescent antibody tests are used to detect the presence of specific antibodies in an individual's serum via a two-step process **(Figure 17.11a)**:

1. After an antigen of interest is fixed to a microscope slide, the individual's serum is added for long enough to allow serum antibodies, if present, to bind to the antigen. The serum is then washed off, leaving the antibodies bound to the antigen (but not yet visible).



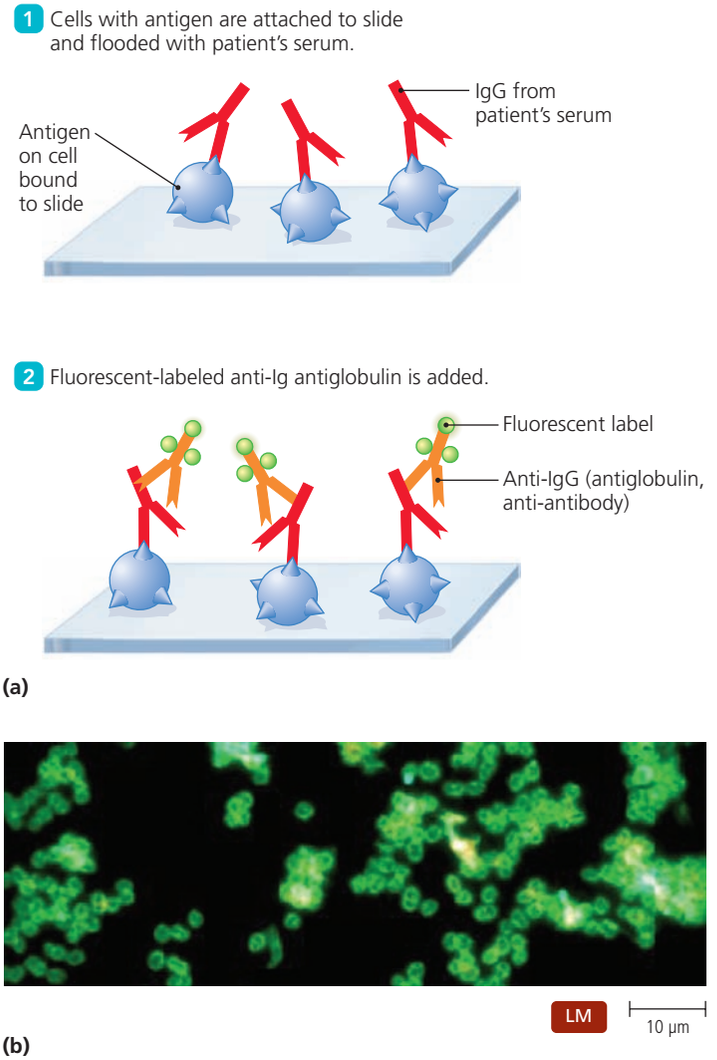
▲ **Figure 17.10 A direct fluorescent antibody test.** Fluorescence from labeled antibodies against antigens of the fungal pathogen *Histoplasma capsulatum* in a human lung.

2 Fluorescently-labeled antibodies against human antibodies (anti-human antibody antibodies) are added to the slide and bind to the antibodies already bound to the antigen. After the slide is washed to remove unbound anti-antibodies, it is examined with a fluorescence microscope.

The presence of fluorescence indicates the presence of the labeled anti-antibodies, which are bound to serum antibodies bound to the fixed antigen; thus, fluoresence indicates that the individual has serum antibodies against the antigen of interest.

Scientists can use indirect fluorescent antibody tests to detect antibodies against many viruses and some bacterial pathogens, including *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī), the causative agent of gonorrhea **(Figure 17.11b)**. The presence of antibodies indicates that the patients have been exposed to the pathogen and may need treatment or counseling on steps to take to lower their risk of future infection.

Scientists routinely identify and separate B and T types of white blood cells, such as lymphocytes, by using specific monoclonal antibodies produced against each cell type. The researchers can attach differently colored fluorescent dyes to the antibodies, allowing them to differentiate types of lymphocytes by the color of the dye attached to each type of antibody. Such identification tests can quantify the numbers and ratios of lymphocyte subsets, information critical in diagnosing and monitoring disease progression and effectiveness of treatment in patients with AIDS, other immunodeficiency diseases, leukemias, and lymphomas.



▲ **Figure 17.11 The indirect fluorescent antibody test.** This test detects the presence of a specific antibody in a patient's serum. **(a)** The test procedure. 1 Antigen is attached to the slide, which is then flooded with an individual's serum to allow specific antibodies in the serum to bind to the antigen. 2 After anti-antibodies labeled with fluorescent chemical are added and then washed off, the slide is examined with a fluorescence microscope. **(b)** A positive indirect antibody test, in which fluorescence indicates the presence of antibodies in an individual's serum against a particular antigen (here the gonorrhea bacterium).

ELISAs

In another type of labeled antibody test, called an **enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay** (im´ū-nō-sōr´bent as´sā; ELISA), or simply an *enzyme immunoassay (EIA)*, the label is not a dye but instead an enzyme that reacts with its substrate to produce a colored product that indicates a positive test. One form of ELISA is used to detect the presence and quantify the abundance of antibodies in serum—an example of indirect testing. An ELISA, which can take place in wells in commercially produced plates, has five basic steps with washes to remove excess chemicals between steps **(Figure 17.12)**:

1 Each of the wells in the plate is coated with antigen molecules in solution.

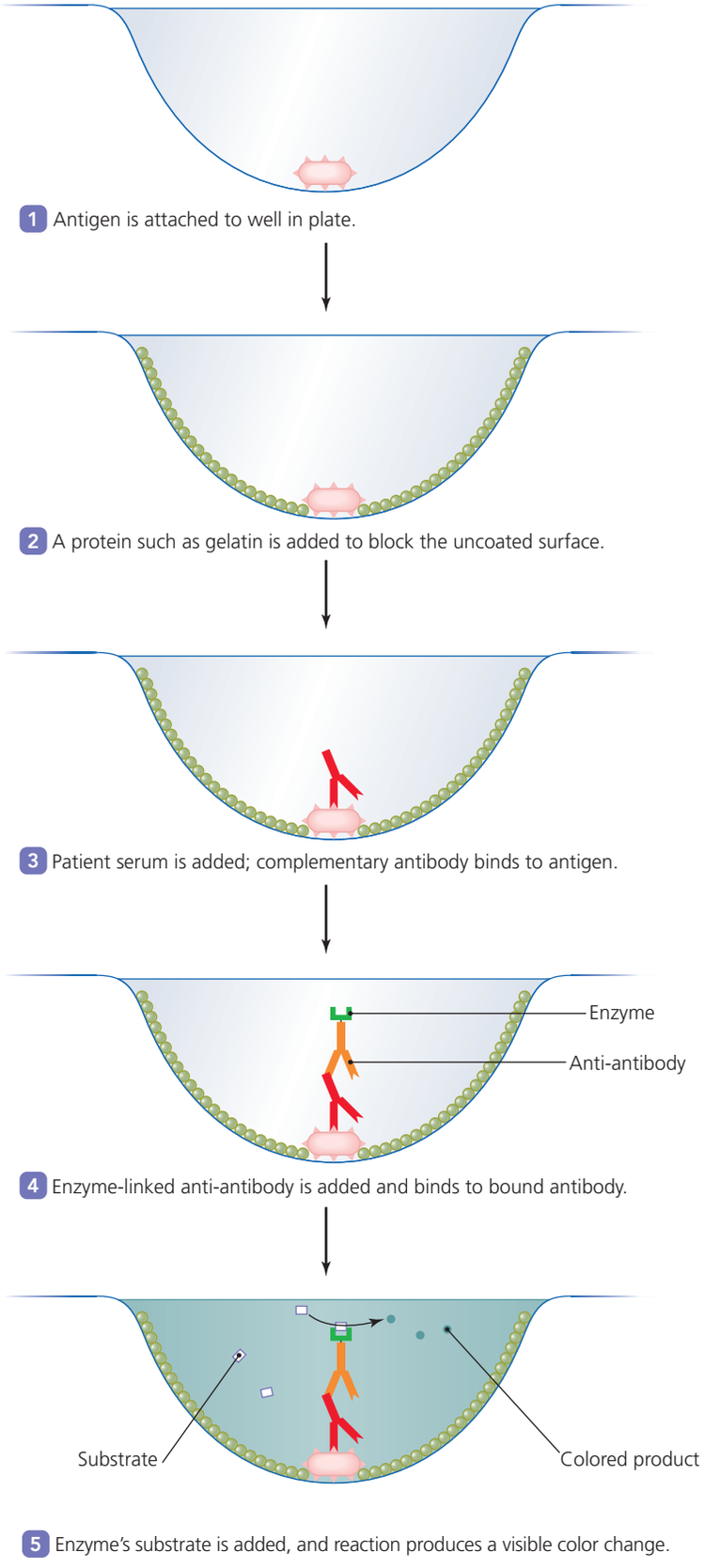
2 Excess antigen molecules are washed off, and another protein (such as gelatin) is added to the well to completely coat any of the surface not coated with antigen.

3 A sample of each of the sera being tested is added to a separate well. Whenever a serum sample contains antibodies against the antigen, they bind to the antigen affixed to the plate.

4 Anti-antibodies labeled with an enzyme are added to each well.

5 The enzyme's substrate is added to each well. The enzyme and substrate are chosen because their reaction results in products that cause a visible color change.

A positive reaction in a well, indicated by the development of color, can occur only if the labeled anti-antibody has bound to antibodies attached to the antigen of interest. The intensity of the color, which can be estimated visually or measured accurately using a spectrophotometer, is proportional to the amount of antibody present in the serum.



◀ Figure 17.12 The enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA). Shown is one well in a plate. The well is washed between steps. 1 Antigen added to the well attaches to it irreversibly. 2 After excess antigen is removed by washing, gelatin is added to cover any portion of the well not covered by antigen. 3 Test serum is added to the well; any specific antibodies in it bind to the antigen. 4 Enzyme-labeled anti-antibodies are added to the well and bind to any bound antibody. 5 The enzyme's substrate is added to the well, and the enzyme converts the substrate into a colored product; the amount of color, which can be measured via spectrophotometry, is directly proportional to the amount of antibody bound to the antigen.

ELISA has become a test of choice for many diagnostic procedures, such as determination of HIV infection, because of its many advantages:

- Like other labeled antibody tests, ELISA can detect either antibody or antigen.
- ELISAs are sensitive, able to detect very small amounts of antibody (or antigen).
- Unlike some diffusion and fluorescent tests, ELISA can quantify amounts of antigen or antibody. Knowing the amount of antigen or antibody in a patient's serum can provide information concerning the course of an infection or the effectiveness of a treatment.
- ELISAs are easy to perform.
- ELISAs are relatively inexpensive.
- ELISAs can simultaneously test many samples quickly at once.
- ELISAs lend themselves to efficient automation and can be read easily, either by direct observation or by machine.
- Plates coated with antigen and gelatin can be stored for testing whenever they are needed.

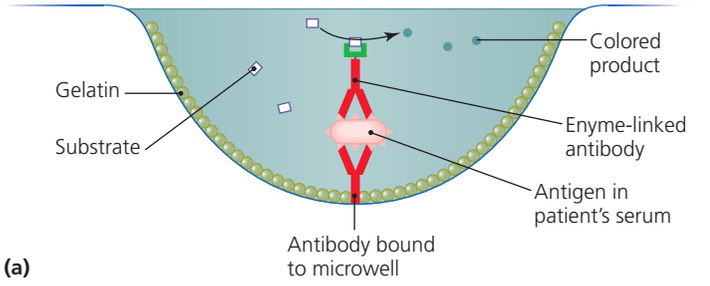
A modification of the ELISA technique, called an *antibody sandwich ELISA,* can be used to detect antigen **(Figure 17.13)**—an example of direct testing. In testing for the presence of HIV in blood serum, for example, the plates are first coated with antibody against HIV (instead of antigen). Then the sera from individuals being tested for HIV are added to the wells, and any HIV in the sera will bind to the antibody attached to the well. Finally, each well is flooded with enzyme-labeled antibodies specific to the antigen. The name "antibody sandwich ELISA" refers to the fact that the antigen being tested for is "sandwiched" between two antibody molecules. Such tests can also be used to quantify the amount of antigen in a given sample. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR: *ELISA***

CRITICAL **THINKING**

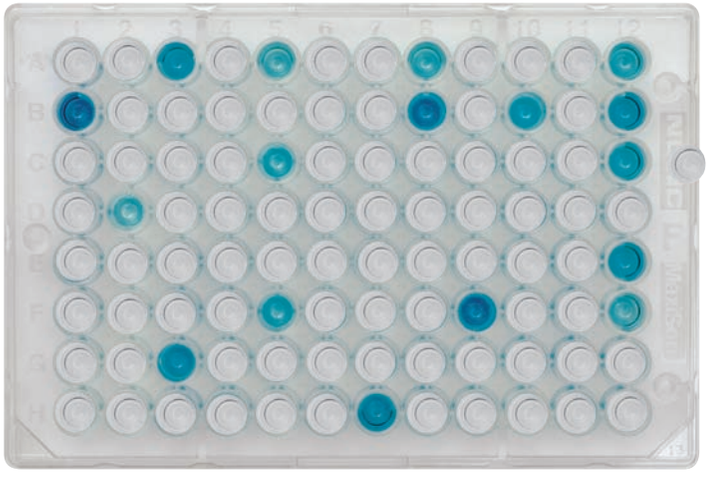
A diagnostician used an ELISA to show that a newborn had antibodies against HIV in her blood. However, six months later the same test was negative. How can this be?

Immunoblots

An **immunoblot** (also called a *western blot*) is a technique used to detect antibodies against multiple antigens in a complex mixture.



(a)



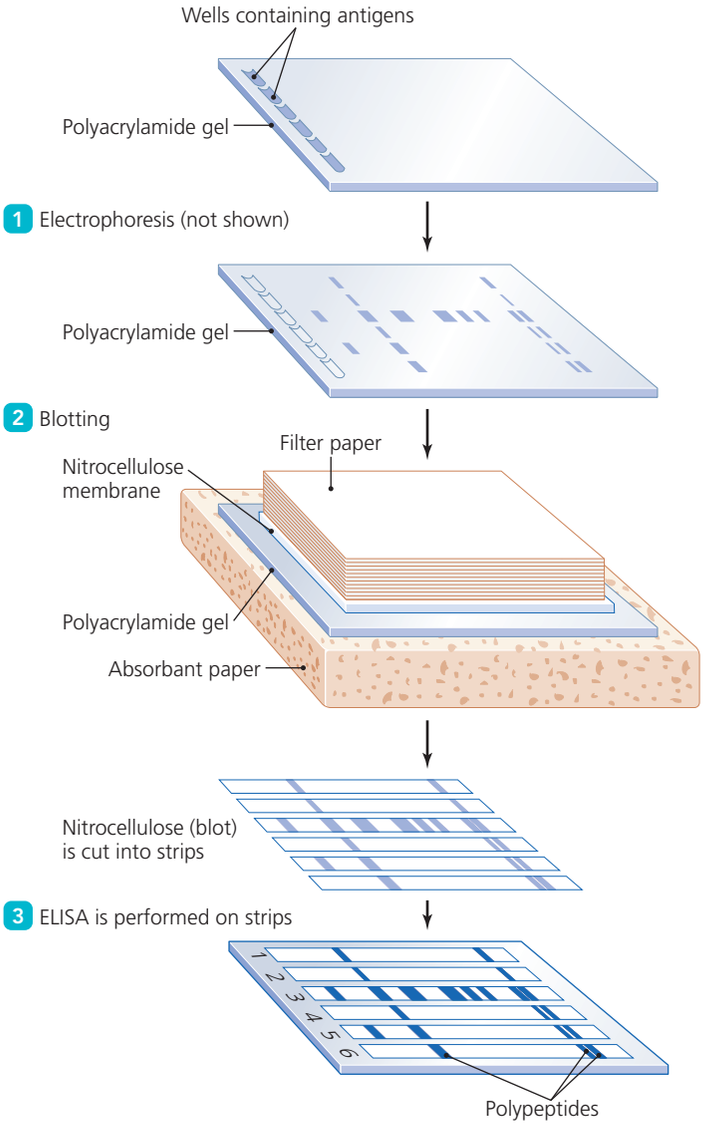
(b)

▲ Figure 17.13 An antibody sandwich ELISA. Because this variation of ELISA is used to test for the presence of antigen, antibody is attached to the well in the initial step. A second antibody sandwiches the antigen. **(a)** Artist's rendition. **(b)** Actual results. *How many wells are positive?*

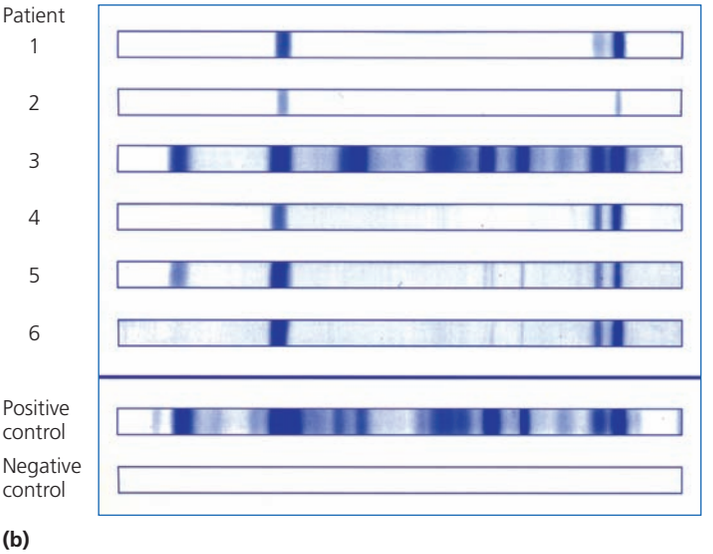
Figure 17.13 *Seventeen wells are positive.*

Immunoblotting tests are used to confirm the presence of proteins, including antibodies against pathogens. Physicians use immunoblots to verify the presence of HIV proteins or antibodies against the bacterium of Lymes disease in the blood serum of patients. Immunoblotting involves three steps **(Figure 17.14b)**:

1. **Electrophoresis.** Antigens in a solution (in this example, HIV proteins) are placed into wells and separated by gel electrophoresis. Each of the proteins in the solution is resolved into a single band, producing invisible protein bands.
2. **Blotting.** The protein bands are transferred to an overlying nitrocellulose membrane. This can be done by absorbing



(a)



(b)

▶ Figure 17.14 Immunoblotting. This technique demonstrates the presence of antibodies against multiple antigens in a complex mixture. **(a)** Steps in immunoblotting test. 1 Antigens are separated by gel electrophoresis. 2 Separated proteins are transferred to a nitrocellulose membrane. 3 Test solutions, enzyme-labeled anti-antibody, and the enzyme's substrate are added; color changes are detected wherever antibody in the test solutions has bound to proteins. **(b)** Real results of an immunoblot. Patient 3 tested positive.

the solution into absorbent paper—a process called blotting. The nitrocellulose membrane is then cut into strips.

3 **ELISA.** Each nitrocellulose strip is incubated with a test solution—in this example, samples from each of six individuals who are being tested for antibodies against HIV. After the strips are washed, an enzyme-labeled anti-antibody solution is added for a time; then the strips are washed again and exposed to the enzyme's substrate.

Color develops wherever antibodies against the HIV proteins in the test solutions have bound to their substrates, as shown in the positive control. In this example, the individual tested in strip 3 is positive for antibodies against HIV, whereas the other five individuals are negative for antibodies against HIV **(Figure 17.14b)**. Immunoblots are sensitive and can detect many types of proteins simultaneously. Colored bands common to all patients are normal serum proteins.

Point-of-Care Testing

Learning Outcomes

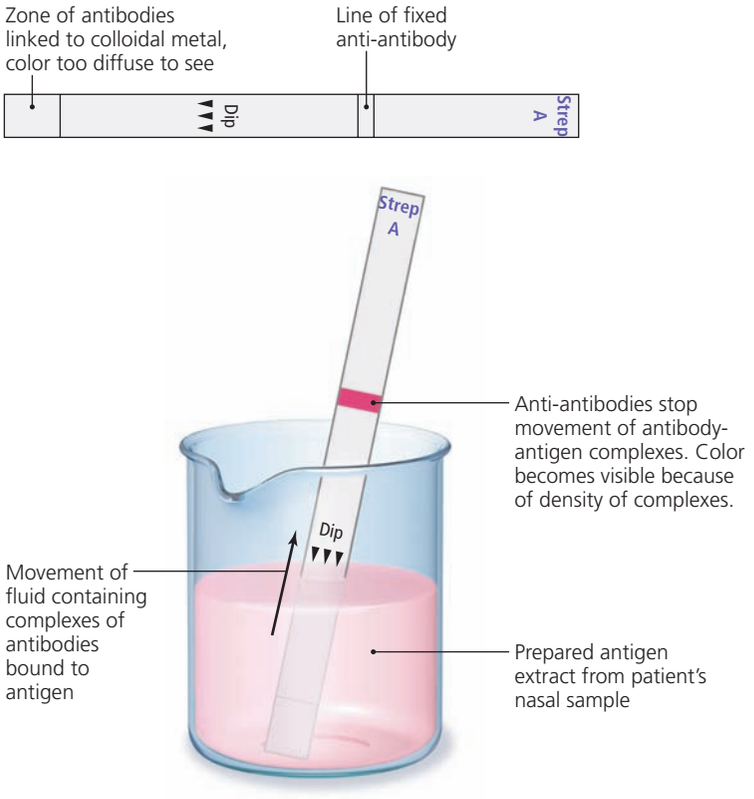
17.21 Discuss the benefits of using immunofiltration assays rather than an ELISA.

17.22 Contrast immunofiltration and immunochromatographic assays.

Recent years have seen the development of simple immunoassays that give clinicians useful results within minutes. These assays allow *point-of-care testing*; that is, health care providers do not have to send specimens to a laboratory for testing but can perform the test at the patient's bedside or in a doctor's office. Common point-of-care tests include *immunofiltration* and *immunochromatography assays.* These tests are not quantitative but rapidly give a positive or negative result, making them very useful in arriving at a quick diagnosis.

Immunofiltration assays (im´ū-nō-fil-trā´shŭn) are rapid ELISAs based on the use of antibodies bound to a membrane filter rather than to plates. Because of the large surface area of a membrane filter, reactions proceed faster and assay times are significantly reduced as compared to a traditional ELISA.

Immunochromatographic assays (im´ū-nō-krō´mat-ō-graf´ik) are faster and easier to read immunoassays. In these systems, an antigen solution (such as diluted blood or sputum) flowing through a porous material encounters antibody labeled with either pink colloidal[3] gold or blue colloidal selenium. Where antigen and antibody bind, colored immune complexes form in the fluid, which then flows through a region where the complexes encounter antibody against them, resulting in a clearly visible pink or blue line, depending on the label used. These assays are used for pregnancy testing, which tests for *human chorionic gonadotropin*—a hormone produced only by an embryo or fetus—and for rapid identification of infectious agents such as HIV, *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) O157:H7, group A *Streptococcus*, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), and influenzaviruses. In one adaptation, the antibodies are coated



▲ **Figure 17.15 Immunochromatographic dipstick.** The dipstick is impregnated with colloidal metal particles linked to movable antibodies against particular antigens at one end and anti-antibodies fixed in a line closer to the other end of the membrane.

on membrane strips, which serve as dipsticks. At one end, anti-antibodies are fixed in a line so that they cannot move in the membrane. The lower portion of the membrane is coated with antibodies against the antigen in question. These antibodies are linked to a color indicator in the form of a colloidal metal and are free to move in the membrane by capillary action.

Figure 17.15 illustrates the procedure used to test for the presence of group A *Streptococcus* in the nasal secretion of a patient. A laboratory scientist prepares a nasal swab from the patient so as to release *Streptococcus* antigens if they are present. She then dips the membrane into the solution. The membrane's antibodies bind to streptococcal antigens, forming complexes. The complexes move up the membrane by capillary action until they reach the line of anti-antibodies, where they bind and must stop because the anti-antibodies are chemically bound to the strip. Previously the complexes were invisible because they were dilute; now they are concentrated at the line of anti-antibodies and become visible, indicating that this patient has group A *Streptococcus* in his nose. Knowing that the infection is bacterial and not viral, the physician can prescribe antibacterial drugs. The procedure from antigen preparation to diagnosis takes less than 10 minutes.

Table 17.2 lists some antibody-antigen immune tests that can be used to diagnose selected bacterial and viral diseases.

[3] *Colloidal* refers to small particles suspended in a liquid or gas.

TABLE 17.2 Antibody-Antigen Immunological Tests and Some of Their Uses

Test	Use
Immunodiffusion (precipitation)	Diagnosis of syphilis, pneumococcal pneumonia
Agglutination	Blood typing; pregnancy testing; diagnosis of salmonellosis, brucellosis, gonorrhea, rickettsial infection, mycoplasma infection, yeast infection, typhoid fever, meningitis caused by *Haemophilus*
Viral neutralization	Diagnosis of infections by specific strains of viruses
Viral hemagglutination inhibition	Diagnosis of viral infections including influenza, measles, mumps, rubella, mononucleosis
Complement fixation	In the past, diagnosis of measles, influenza A, syphilis, rubella, rickettsial infections, scarlet fever, rheumatic fever, infections of respiratory syncytial virus and *Coxiella*
Direct fluorescent antibody	Diagnosis of rabies, infections of group A *Streptococcus*, identification of lymphocyte subsets
Indirect fluorescent antibody	Diagnosis of syphilis, mononucleosis
ELISA	Pregnancy testing; presence of drugs in urine; diagnosis of hepatitis A, hepatitis B, rubella; initial diagnosis of HIV infection
Immunoblot (western blot)	Confirmation of infection with HIV; diagnosis of Lyme disease

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Immunization (pp. 495–503)

1. The first **vaccine** was developed by Edward Jenner against smallpox. He called the technique **vaccination. Immunization** is a more general term referring to the use of vaccines against rabies, anthrax, measles, mumps, rubella, polio, and other diseases.
2. Individuals can be protected against many infections by either active immunization or passive immunotherapy.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Vaccines: Function*
3. Active immunization involves giving antigen in the form of either **attenuated vaccines, inactivated** (killed) **vaccines, toxoid vaccines,** or recombinant gene vaccines. Antibody **titer** refers to the amount of antibody produced.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Vaccines: Types*
4. Pathogens in attenuated vaccines are weakened so that they no longer cause disease, though they are still alive or active and can provide **contact immunity** in unimmunized individuals who associate with immunized people.
5. Inactivated vaccines are either whole agent or subunit vaccines and often contain **adjuvants,** which are chemicals added to increase their ability to stimulate active immunity.
6. Toxoid vaccines use modified toxins to stimulate antibody-mediated immunity.
7. A **combination vaccine** is composed of antigens from several pathogens so they can be administered to a patient at once.
8. Having a large proportion of immunized individuals (>75%) in a population interrupts disease transmission, providing protection to unimmunized individuals. Such protection is called **herd immunity.**
9. **Passive immunotherapy** (a type of passive immunization) involves administration of an **antiserum** containing preformed antibodies. Serum sickness results when the patient makes antibodies against the antiserum.
10. The fusion of myelomas (cancerous plasma cells) with plasma cells results in **hybridomas,** the source of **monoclonal antibodies,** which can be used in passive immunization.

Serological Tests That Use Antigens and Corresponding Antibodies (pp. 503–511)

1. **Serology** is the study and use of immunological assays on blood serum to diagnose disease or identify antibodies or antigens. Scientists use antibodies to find an antigen in a specimen and use antigen to find antibodies.
2. The simplest of the serological tests is a precipitation test, in which antigen and antibody meet in optimal proportions to form **immune complexes,** which are often insoluble. Often this test is performed in clear gels, where it is called **immunodiffusion.**
3. Automated light detectors can measure the cloudiness of a solution—an indication of the quantity of protein in the solution. Turbidimetry measures the passage of light through the solution, while nephelometry measures the amount of light reflected by protein in the solution.
4. **Agglutination** tests involve the clumping of antigenic particles by antibodies. The amount of these antibodies, called the **titer**, is measured by diluting the serum in a process called **titration.**
5. Antibodies to viruses or toxins can be measured using a **neutralization test,** such as a **viral neutralization** test. Infection by viruses that naturally agglutinate red blood cells can be demonstrated using a **viral hemagglutination inhibition test.**
6. The **complement fixation test** is a complex assay used to determine the presence of specific antibodies.
7. Fluorescently labeled antibodies—those chemically linked to a fluorescent dye—can be used in a variety of **direct** and **indirect fluorescent antibody** tests. The presence of labeled antibodies is visible through a fluorescence microscope.
8. **Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs)** are a family of simple tests that can be readily automated and read by machine. These tests are among the more common serological tests used. A variation of the ELISA is an **immunoblot** (western blot), which is used to detect antibodies against multiple antigens in a mixture.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***ELISA***
9. **Immunofiltration assays** and **immunochromatographic assays** are modifications of ELISA tests that can give much more rapid diagnostic results.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. To obtain immediate immunity against tetanus, a patient should receive _____.
   a. an attenuated vaccine of *Clostridium tetani*
   b. a modified live vaccine of *C. tetani*
   c. tetanus toxoid
   d. immunoglobulin against tetanus toxin (antitoxin)
   e. a subunit vaccine against *C. tetani*
2. Which of the following vaccine types is commonly given with an adjuvant?
   a. an attenuated vaccine
   b. a modified live vaccine
   c. a chemically killed vaccine
   d. an immunoglobulin
   e. an agglutinating antigen
3. Which of the following viruses was widely used in living vaccines?
   a. coronavirus
   b. poliovirus
   c. influenzavirus
   d. retrovirus
   e. myxovirus
4. When antigen and antibodies combine, maximal precipitation occurs when _____.
   a. antigen is in excess
   b. antibody is in excess
   c. antigen and antibody are at equivalent concentrations
   d. antigen is added to the antibody
   e. antibody is added to the antigen
5. An anti-antibody is used when _____.
   a. an antigen is not precipitating
   b. an antibody is not agglutinating
   c. an antibody does not activate complement
   d. an antigen is insoluble
   e. the antigen is an antibody
6. The many different proteins in serum can be analyzed by _____.
   a. an anti-antibody test
   b. a complement fixation test
   c. a precipitation test
   d. an agglutination test
   e. an immunodiffusion test
7. A direct fluorescent antibody test requires which of the following?
   a. heat-inactivated serum
   b. fluorescent serum
   c. immune complexes
   d. heated plasma
   e. antibodies against the antigen
8. An ELISA uses which of the following reagents?
   a. an enzyme-labeled anti-antibody
   b. a radioactive anti-antibody
   c. a source of complement
   d. an enzyme-labeled antigen
   e. an enzyme-labeled antibody
9. A direct fluorescent antibody test can be used to detect the presence of _____.
   a. hemagglutination
   b. specific antigens
   c. antibodies
   d. complement
   e. precipitated antigen-antibody complexes
10. Which of the following is a good test to detect rabies virus in the brain of a dog?
    a. agglutination
    b. hemagglutination inhibition
    c. virus neutralization
    d. precipitation
    e. direct fluorescent antibody

11. Attenuation is _____.
    a. the process of reducing virulence
    b. a necessary step in vaccine manufacture
    c. a form of variolation
    d. similar to an adjuvant

12. An antiserum is _____.
    a. an anti-antibody
    b. an inactivated vaccine
    c. formed of monoclonal antibodies
    d. the liquid portion of blood used for immunization

13. Monoclonal antibodies _____.
    a. are produced by hybridomas
    b. are secreted by clone cells
    c. can be used for passive immunization
    d. all of the above

14. The study of antibody-antigen interaction in the blood is _____.
    a. attenuation
    b. agglutination
    c. precipitation
    d. serology

15. Anti–human antibody antibodies are _____.
    a. found in immunocompromised individuals
    b. used in direct fluorescent antibody tests
    c. formed by animals reacting to human immunoglobulins
    d. an alternative method in ELISA

True/False

1. _____ Passive immunotherapy provides more prolonged immunity than active immunization.
2. _____ It is standard to attenuate killed virus vaccines.
3. _____ One single serological test is inadequate for an accurate diagnosis of HIV infection.
4. _____ ELISA is very easily automated.
5. _____ ELISA has basically replaced immunoblotting.

Matching

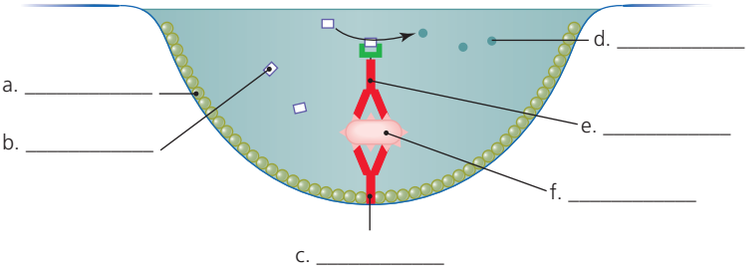
Match the characteristic in the first column with the therapy it most closely describes in the second column. Some choices may be used more than once.

1. _____ Induces rapid onset of immunity
2. _____ Induces mainly an antibody response
3. _____ Induces good cell-mediated immunity
4. _____ Increases antigenicity
5. _____ Uses antigen fragments
6. _____ Uses attenuated microbes

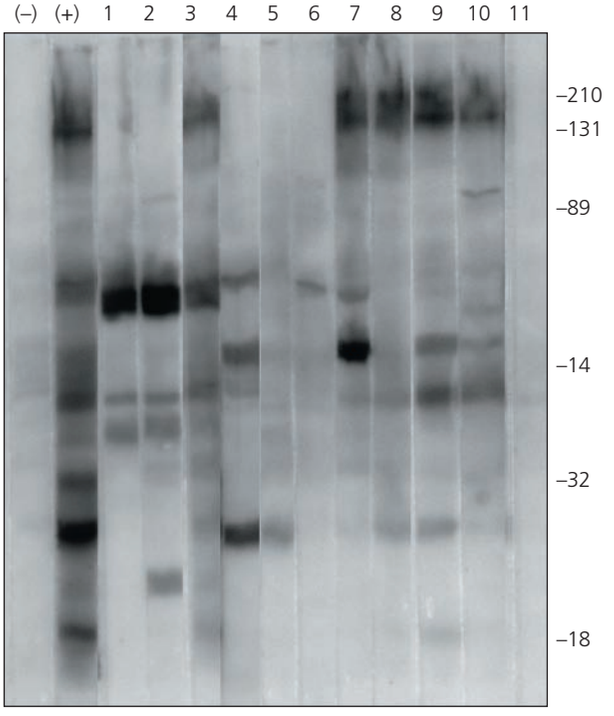
A. Attenuated viral vaccine
B. Adjuvant
C. Subunit vaccine
D. Immunoglobulin
E. Residual virulence

Visualize It!

1. Identify the chemicals represented by this artist's conception of an antibody sandwich ELISA.



2. The two columns on the left show negative and positive immunoblot results for a particular pathogen. The numbered columns are blots of samples from eleven patients. Which patients are most likely uninfected?



Short Answer

1. Compare and contrast the Chinese practice of variolation with Jenner's vaccination procedure.
2. What are the advantages and disadvantages of attenuated vaccines?
3. Compare the advantages and disadvantages of passive immunotherapy and active immunization.
4. How does precipitation differ from agglutination?
5. Explain how a pregnancy test works at the molecular level.
6. Compare and contrast herd immunity and contact immunity.
7. How does nephelometry differ from turbidimetry?

Critical Thinking

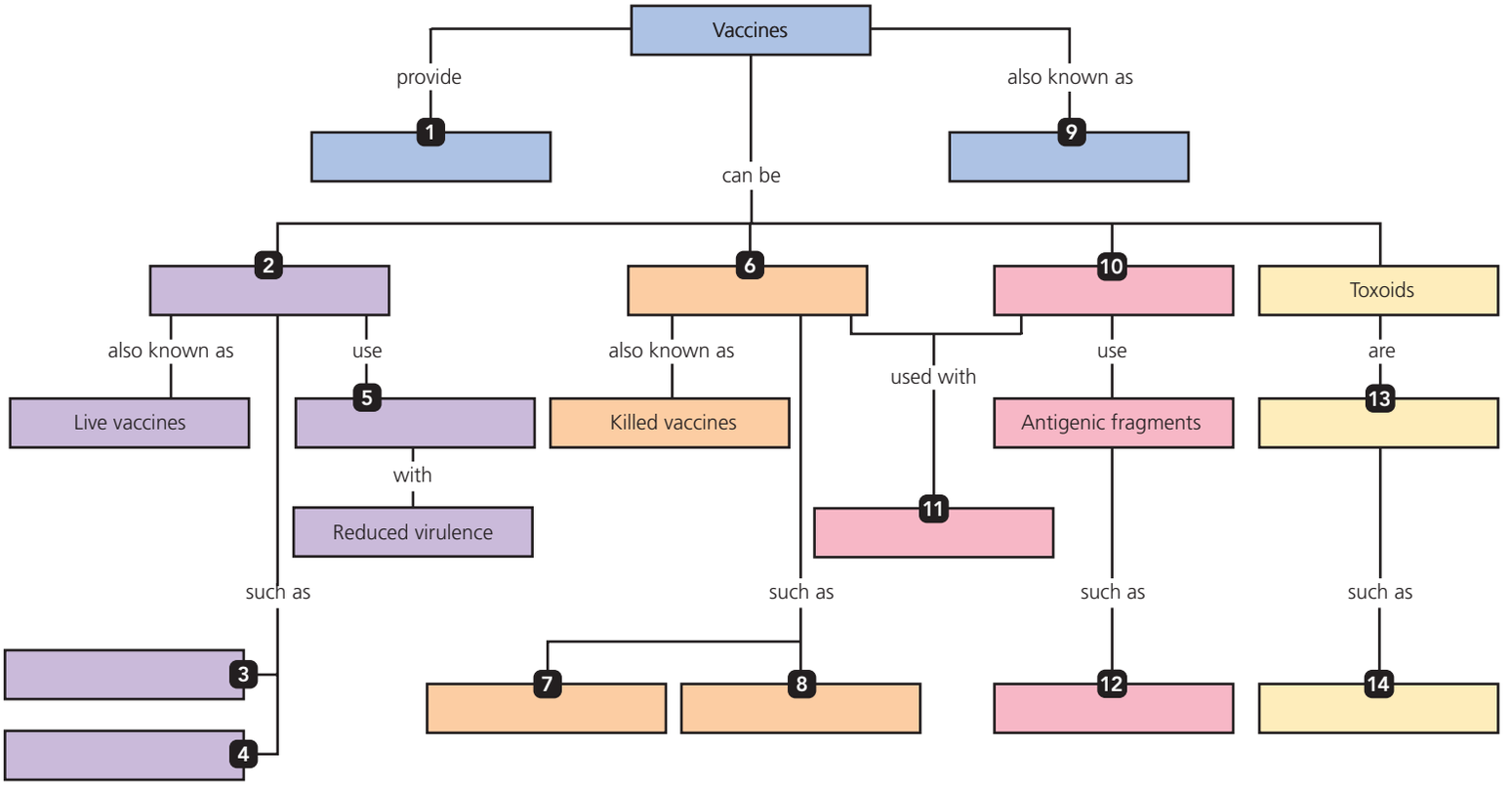
1. Is it ethical to approve the use of a vaccine that causes significant illness in 1% of patients if it protects immunized survivors against a serious disease?
2. Which is worse: to use a diagnostic test for HIV that may falsely indicate that a patient is not infected (false negative) or to use one that sometimes falsely indicates that a patient is infected (false positive)? Defend your choice.
3. Discuss the importance of costs and technical skill in selecting a practical serological test. Under what circumstances does automation become important?
4. What bodily fluids, in addition to blood serum, might be usable for immune testing?
5. Why might a serological test give a false-positive result?
6. Some researchers want to distinguish B cells from T cells in a mixture of lymphocytes. How could they do this without killing the cells?
7. Describe three ways by which genetic recombinant techniques could be used to develop safer, more effective vaccines.
8. How does a toxoid vaccine differ from an attenuated vaccine?
9. Explain why many health organizations promote breast-feeding of newborns. What risks are involved in such nursing?
10. Contrast a hemagglutination test with a viral hemagglutination inhibition test.
11. Sixty years ago, parents would have done almost anything to get a protective vaccine against polio for their children. Now parents fear the vaccine, not the disease. Why?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes vaccines. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Active immunity
Adjuvants
Attenuated vaccines
Hepatitis B vaccine
Immunizations
Inactivated vaccines
Measles vaccine
Microorganisms
Modified toxins
Pertussis
Polio
Subunit vaccines
Tetanus toxoid
Varicella vaccine



18 Immune Disorders

The attractive, glistening tripartite leaves and interesting fruit of poison ivy belie its allergic potential.

It is summer, and you are hiking along a densely wooded trail wearing shorts and a T-shirt. You spot a beautiful **wildflower** just a few feet away and wander briefly off the trail to get a better look, wading through knee-high foliage. The next morning, an itchy red **rash** has developed on both of your legs. Within days, the rash has progressed to painful, oozing blisters. You realize, unhappily, that you have contacted **poison ivy** and will be treating the blisters until they heal—typically within 14 to 20 days.

A poison ivy rash is caused by an **allergic** response to urushiol, a chemical that coats poison ivy leaves. About 85% of the population experiences an allergic reaction when exposed to urushiol. The body's **immune system** essentially overreacts to the urushiol: it identifies the chemical as a foreign substance and initiates an immune response that results in allergic contact dermatitis (inflammation of the skin). In the absence of an immune response, poison ivy would be harmless.

In this chapter we examine a variety of immune system disorders, including allergies and other immune **hypersensitivities**, autoimmune diseases, and immune deficiencies.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The immune system is an absolutely essential component of the body's defenses. However, if the immune system functions abnormally—either by overreacting or underreacting—the malfunction may cause significant disease, even death. If the immune system functions excessively, the body develops any of a variety of *immune hypersensitivities,* such as allergies. If the immune system attacks the body's own tissues, *autoimmune diseases* develop. If the immune system fails, *immunodeficiency* (im´ū-nō-dē-fish´en-sē) *disease* result. AIDS is a prime example. In this chapter we discuss each of these three categories of derangements of the immune system.

Hypersensitivities

Learning Outcome

18.1 Compare and contrast the four types of hypersensitivity.

Hypersensitivity (hī´per-sen-si-tiv´i-tē) may be defined as any immune response against a foreign antigen that is exaggerated beyond the norm. For example, most people can wear wool, smell perfume, or dust furniture without experiencing itching, wheezing, runny nose, or watery eyes. When these symptoms do occur, the person is said to be experiencing a hypersensitivity response. In the following sections we examine each of the four main types of hypersensitivity response, designated as type I through type IV.

Type I (Immediate) Hypersensitivity

Learning Outcomes

18.2 Describe the two-part mechanism by which type I hypersensitivity occurs.

18.3 Explain the roles of three inflammatory chemicals (mediators) released from mast cell granules.

18.4 Describe three disease conditions resulting from type I hypersensitivity mechanisms.

Type I hypersensitivities are localized or systemic (whole body) reactions that result from the release of inflammatory molecules (such as histamine) in response to an antigen. These reactions are termed *immediate hypersensitivity* because they develop within seconds or minutes following contact with antigens. They are also commonly called **allergies,**[1] and the antigens that stimulate them are called **allergens** (al´er-jenz).

In the next two subsections we will examine the two-part mechanism of a type I hypersensitivity reaction: sensitization upon initial contact with an allergen and the degranulation of sensitized cells.

Sensitization upon Initial Exposure to an Allergen

All of us are exposed to antigens in the environment, against which we typically mount immune responses that result in the production of antibodies of the gamma class (IgG). But when regulatory proteins (cytokines, especially interleukin 4) from type 2 helper T (Th2) cells stimulate B cells in allergic individuals, the B cells become plasma cells that produce class epsilon antibodies (IgE; **Figure 18.1a**). Typically, IgE is directed against parasitic worms, which rarely infect most Americans, so IgE is found at low levels in the blood serum. However, in allergic individuals plasma cells produce a significant amount of IgE in response to allergens.

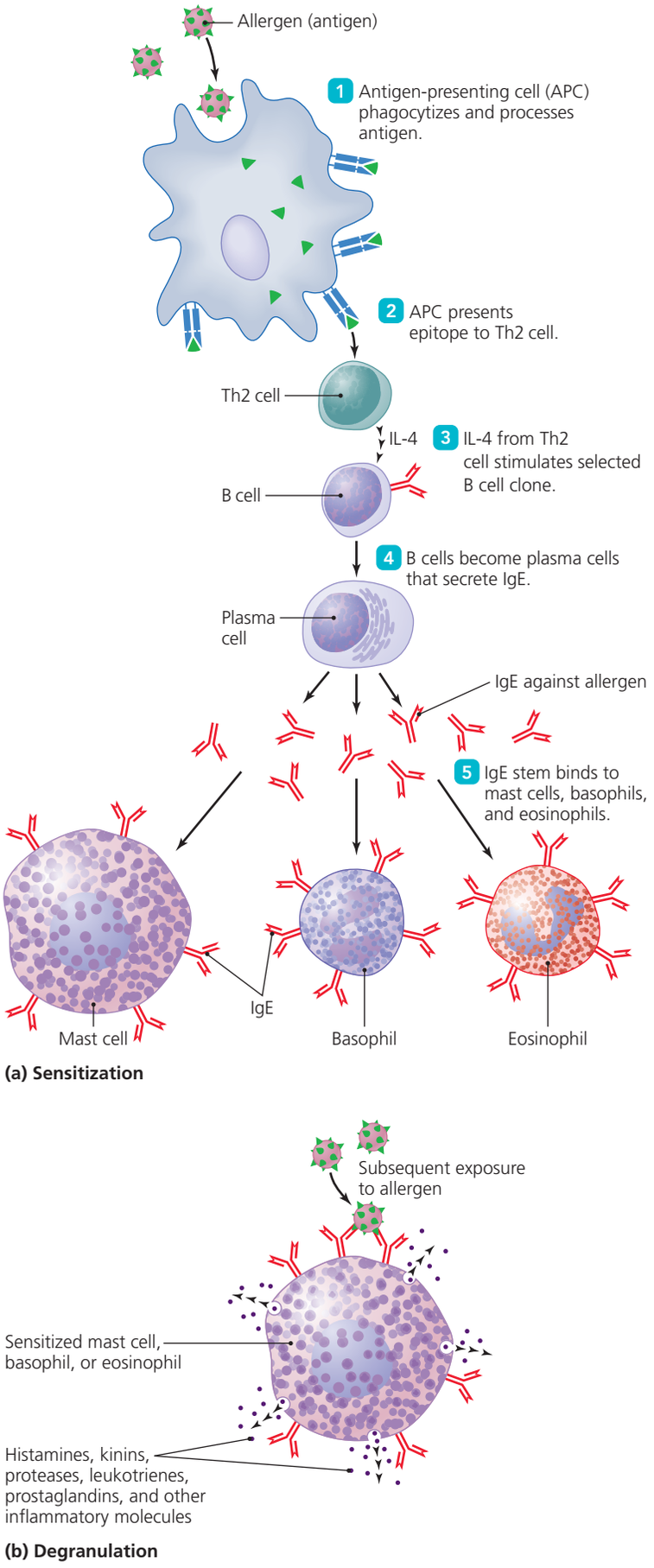
The precise reason that only some people produce high levels of IgE (and thereby suffer from allergies) is a matter of intense research. Many researchers report evidence for the *hygiene hypothesis,* which holds that children exposed to environmental antigens—such as dust mites, molds, parasitic worms, and pet hair—are less likely to develop allergies than children who have been sheltered from common environmental antigens. **Highlight: Can Pets Help Decrease Children's Allergy Risks?** examines the hygiene hypothesis. Conversely, other researchers have discovered evidence that that environmental factors sensitize people, making them hypersensitive and more likely to develop allergies.

[1]From Greek *allos,* meaning "other," and *ergon,* meaning "work."

HIGHLIGHT

CAN PETS HELP DECREASE CHILDREN'S ALLERGY RISKS?

A study headed by Dennis Ownby of the Medical College of Georgia suggests that children who grow up in households with two or more cats or dogs may be less likely to develop common allergies than children raised without pets. Researchers suspect that exposure to bacteria harbored by cats and dogs can suppress allergic reactions—not only to pets but also to other common allergens such as dust mites and grass. Ownby and his team studied 474 children from birth until six to seven years of age, at which point the children were tested for IgE against common allergens. They found that children exposed to two or more dogs or cats during their first year of life were, on average, 66–77% less likely to have antibodies to common allergens than were children exposed to only one or no pets during the same period. Exactly how the pets and/or their bacteria may suppress the allergic response remains unclear; perhaps stimulation of Th1 cells by pet allergens balances or counteracts the production of Th2 cells that would stimulate antibody immune response.



◀ Figure 18.1 The mechanisms of a type I hypersensitivity reaction. (a) Sensitization. After normal processing of an antigen (allergen) by an antigen-presenting cell 1, Th2 cells are stimulated to secrete IL-4 2. This cytokine stimulates a B cell 3, which becomes a plasma cell that secretes IgE 4, which then binds to and sensitizes mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils 5. (b) Degranulation. When the same allergen is subsequently encountered, its binding to the IgE molecules on the surfaces of sensitized cells triggers rapid degranulation and the release of inflammatory chemicals from the cells.

In any case, following initial exposure to allergens, the plasma cells of allergic individuals secrete IgE, which binds very strongly with its stem to three types of defense cells—*mast cells*, *basophils*, and *eosinophils*—sensitizing these cells to respond to future exposures to the allergen.

Degranulation of Sensitized Cells

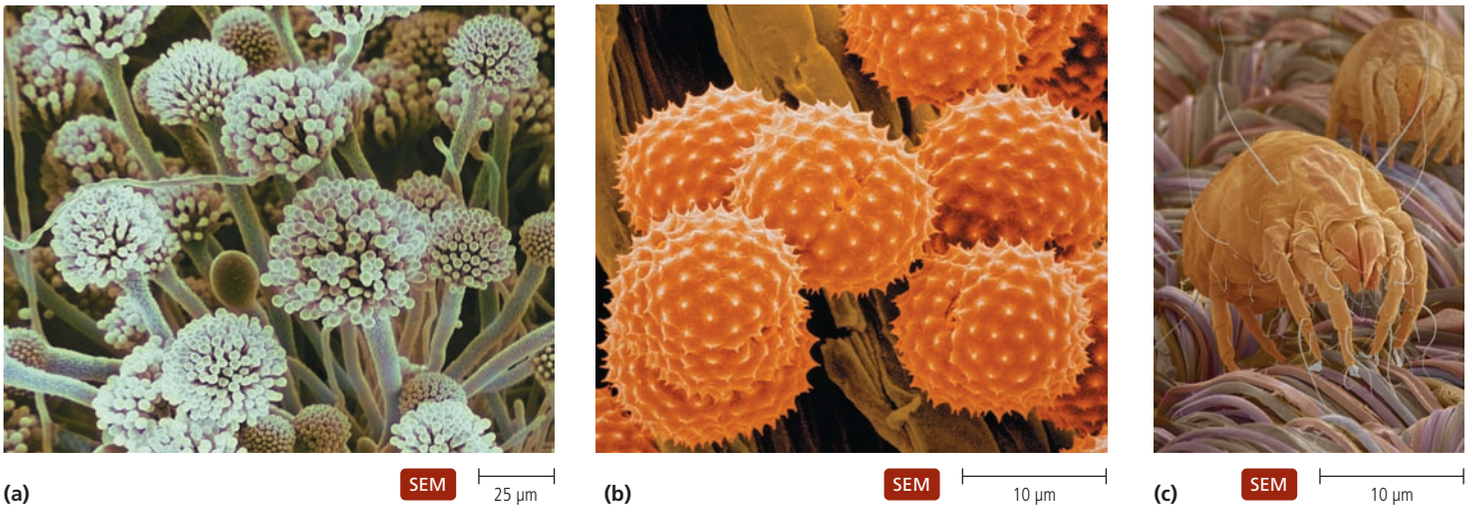
When the same allergen reenters the body, it binds to the active sites of IgE molecules on the surfaces of sensitized cells (described shortly). This binding triggers a cascade of internal biochemical reactions that causes the sensitized cells to release the inflammatory chemicals from their granules into the surrounding space—an event called *degranulation* (dē-gran-ū-lā´shŭn; **Figure 18.1b**). It is these inflammatory mediators that generate the characteristic symptoms of type I hypersensitivity reactions: respiratory distress, rhinitis (inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes commonly called "runny nose"), watery eyes, inflammation, and reddening of the skin.

The Roles of Degranulating Cells in an Allergic Reaction

Mast cells are specialized relatives of white blood cells, deriving from other stem cells in the bone marrow. They are distributed throughout the body in connective tissues other than blood. These large, round cells are most often found in sites close to body surfaces, including the skin and the walls of the intestines and airways. Their characteristic feature is cytoplasm packed with large granules that are loaded with a mixture of potent inflammatory chemicals.

One significant chemical released from mast cell granules is **histamine** (his´tă-mēn), a small molecule related to the amino acid histidine. Histamine stimulates strong contractions in the smooth muscles of the bronchi, gastrointestinal tract, uterus, and bladder, and it also makes small blood vessels dilate (expand) and become leaky. As a result, tissues in which mast cells degranulate become red and swollen. Histamine also stimulates nerve endings, causing itching and pain. Finally, histamine is an effective stimulator of bronchial mucus secretion, tear formation, and salivation.

Other triggers of allergies released by degranulating mast cells include **kinins** (kī´ninz), which are powerful inflammatory chemicals, and **proteases** (prō´tē-ās-ez)—enzymes that destroy nearby cells, activating the complement system, which in turn results in the release of still more inflammatory chemicals. Proteases account for more than half the proteins in a mast cell granule. In addition, the binding of allergens to IgE on mast cells activates other enzymes that trigger the production of **leukotrienes** (loo-kō-trī´ēnz)



▲ **Figure 18.2 Some common allergens. (a)** Spores of the fungus *Aspergillus* on stalks. **(b)** Pollen of *Ambrosia trifida* (ragweed), the most common cause of hay fever in the United States. **(c)** A house dust mite. Mites' fecal pellets and dead bodies may become airborne and trigger allergic responses.

and **prostaglandins** (pros-tă-glan´dinz), lipid molecules that are powerful inflammatory agents. Table 18.1 summarizes the inflammatory molecules released from mast cells.

Basophils, the least numerous type of leukocyte in blood, contain cytoplasmic granules that stain intensely with basic dyes (see Figure 15.5a) and are filled with inflammatory chemicals similar to those found in mast cells. Sensitized basophils bind IgE and degranulate in the same way as mast cells when they encounter allergens.

The blood and tissues of allergic individuals also accumulate many **eosinophils,** leukocytes that contain numerous cytoplasmic granules that stain intensely with a red dye called eosin and that function primarily to destroy parasitic worms. The process during type I hypersensitivity reactions that results in the accumulation of eosinophils in the blood—a condition termed *eosinophilia*—begins with mast cell degranulation, which releases peptides that stimulate the release of eosinophils from the bone marrow. Once in the bloodstream, eosinophils are attracted to the site of mast cell degranulation, where they themselves degranulate. Eosinophil granules contain unique inflammatory mediators and produce large amounts of leukotrienes, which increase movement from blood vessels and stimulate smooth muscle contraction, thereby contributing greatly to the severity of a hypersensitivity response.

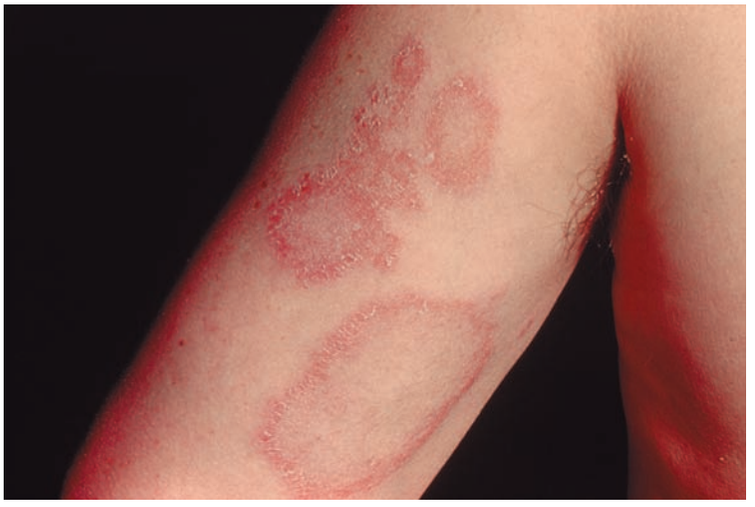
Clinical Signs of Localized Allergic Reactions

Type I hypersensitivity reactions are usually mild and localized. The site of the reaction depends on the portal of entry of the antigens. For example, inhaled allergens may provoke a response in the upper respiratory tract commonly known as **hay fever**—a local allergic reaction marked by a runny nose, sneezing, itchy throat and eyes, and excessive tear production. Fungal (mold) spores; pollens from grasses, flowering plants, and some trees; and feces and dead bodies of house dust mites are among the more common allergens (Figure 18.2).

If inhaled allergen particles are sufficiently small, they may reach the lungs. A type I hypersensitivity in the lungs can cause an episode of severe difficulty in breathing known as **asthma,** characterized by wheezing; coughing; excessive production of a thick, sticky mucus; and constriction of the smooth muscles of the bronchi. Asthma can be life threatening: without medical

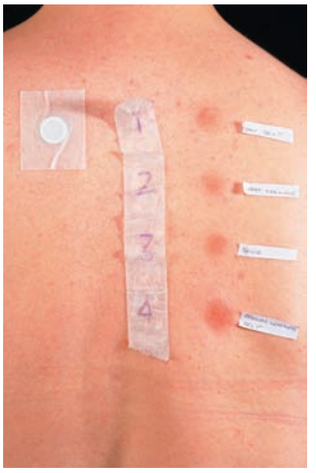
TABLE 18.1 Inflammatory Molecules Released from Mast Cells

Molecules	Role in Hypersensitivity Reactions
Released During Degranulation	
Histamine	Causes smooth muscle contraction, increased vascular permeability, and irritation
Kinins	Cause smooth muscle contraction, inflammation, and irritation
Proteases	Damage tissues and activate complement
Synthesized in Response to Inflammation	
Leukotrienes	Cause slow, prolonged smooth muscle contraction, inflammation, and increased vascular permeability
Prostaglandins	Some contract smooth muscle; others relax it



▲ **Figure 18.3 Urticaria.** These red, itchy patches on the skin are prompted by the release of histamine in response to an allergen. *What causes fluid to accumulate in the patches seen in urticaria?*

Figure 18.3 *The fluid accumulates because histamine from degranulated mast cells causes blood capillaries to become more permeable.*



▲ **Figure 18.4 Skin tests for diagnosing type I hypersensitivity.** The presence of redness and swelling at an injection site indicates sensitivity to the allergen injected at that site.

intervention, the increased mucus and bronchial constriction can quickly cause suffocation.

Other allergens—including latex, wool, certain metals, and the venom or saliva of wasps, bees, fire ants, deer flies, fleas, and other stinging or biting insects—may cause a localized inflammation of the skin. As a result of the release of histamine and other mediators, plus the ensuing leakage of serum from local blood vessels, the individual suffers raised, red areas called *hives* or **urticaria**[2] (er´ti-kar´i-ă; **Figure 18.3**). These lesions are very itchy because histamine irritates local nerve endings.

Clinical Signs of Systemic Allergic Reactions

Following a sensitized individual's contact with an allergen, many mast cells may degranulate simultaneously, releasing massive amounts of histamine and other inflammatory mediators into the bloodstream. The release of chemicals may exceed the body's ability to adjust, resulting in a condition called **acute anaphylaxis**[3] (an´ă-fi-lak´sis), or **anaphylactic shock.**

The clinical signs of acute anaphylaxis are those of rapid suffocation. Bronchial smooth muscle, which is highly sensitive to histamine, contracts violently. In addition, increased leakage of fluid from blood vessels causes swelling of the larynx and other tissues. The patient also experiences contraction of the smooth muscle of the intestines and bladder. Without immediate administration of *epinephrine* (ep´i-nef´rin; discussed shortly), an individual in anaphylactic shock may suffocate, collapse, and die within minutes.

A common cause of acute anaphylaxis is a bee sting in an allergic and sensitized individual. The first sting produces sensitization and the formation of IgE antibodies, and successive stings—which may occur years later—produce an anaphylactic reaction. Other allergens commonly implicated in acute anaphylaxis are certain foods (notoriously peanuts), vaccines, antibiotics such as penicillin, iodine dyes, local anesthetics, blood products, and certain narcotics such as morphine.

Diagnosis of Type I Hypersensitivity

Clinicians diagnose type I hypersensitivity with a test variously called *ImmunoCAP Specific IgE blood test, CAP RAST,* or *Pharmacia CAP,* in which suspected allergens are mixed with samples of the patient's blood. The specifics of the test are beyond the scope of this chapter, but basically the test detects the amount of IgE directed against each allergen. High levels of a specific IgE indicate a hypersensitivity against that allergen.

Alternatively, physicians diagnose type I hypersensitivity by injecting a very small quantity of a dilute solution of the allergens being tested into the skin. In most cases the individual is screened for more than a dozen potential allergens simultaneously, using the forearms as injection sites. When the individual tested is sensitive to an allergen, local histamine release causes redness and swelling at the injection site within a few minutes **(Figure 18.4)**.

Prevention of Type I Hypersensitivity

Prevention of type I hypersensitivity begins with *identification* and *avoidance* of the allergens responsible. Filtration of air and avoidance of rural areas during pollen season can reduce upper respiratory allergies provoked by some pollens. Encasing bed clothes in mite-proof covers, frequent vacuuming, and avoidance of home furnishings that trap dust (such as wall-to-wall carpeting and heavy drapes) can reduce the severity of other household allergies. A dehumidifier can reduce mold in a home. The best way for individuals to avoid allergic reactions to pets is to find out whether they are allergic before they get a pet. If an allergy develops afterward, they may have to find a new home for the animal.

[2]From Latin *urtica*, meaning "nettle."
[3]From Greek *ana*, meaning "away from," and *phylaxis*, meaning "protection."

HIGHLIGHT

WHEN KISSING TRIGGERS ALLERGIC REACTIONS

Individuals with particularly severe food allergies not only need to watch what they eat, they also need to watch who kisses them. In a study from the University of California at Davis, researchers found that of 316 patients with severe allergies to peanuts, tree nuts, and/or seeds, 20 (about 6%) reported developing allergic reactions after being kissed. In nearly all of the cases, the kisser had eaten nuts to which the allergic individual was sensitive. In some of the cases, the allergic individuals were so sensitive that they developed reactions even though the kissers had brushed their teeth or had consumed the nuts several hours earlier. Food allergists believe that the duration and intensity of a kiss may also be a factor—that is, longer kisses involving exchange of saliva may be more likely to elicit allergic reactions than a quick buss on the cheek. The moral of the story: if you have a severe food allergy, you might want to tell your romantic partner about it!

Food allergens can be identified and then avoided by using a medically supervised elimination diet in which foods are removed one at a time from the diet to see when signs of allergy cease. Peanuts and shellfish are among the foods more commonly implicated in anaphylactic shock; allergic individuals must avoid consuming even minute amounts (see **Highlight: When Kissing Triggers Allergic Reactions**). For example, individuals sensitized against shellfish can suffer anaphylactic shock from consuming meat sliced on an unwashed cutting board previously used to prepare shellfish. Some vaccines contain small amounts of egg proteins and should not be given to individuals allergic to eggs.

Health care workers should assess a patient's medical history carefully before administering penicillin, iodine dyes, and other potential allergens. Therapies such as antidotes and respiratory stimulants should be immediately available if a patient's sensitivity status is unknown.

In addition to avoidance of allergens, type I hypersensitivity reactions can be prevented by *immunotherapy* (im´ū-nō-thār´ă-pē), commonly called "allergy shots," which involves the administration of a series of injections of dilute allergen, usually once a week for many months. It is unclear just how allergy shots work, but they may change the helper T cell balance from Th2 cells to Th1 cells, reducing the production of antibodies, or they may stimulate the production of IgG, which binds antigen before the antigen can react with IgE on mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils. Immunotherapy reduces the severity of allergy symptoms by roughly 50% in about two-thirds of patients with upper respiratory allergies; however, the series of injections must be repeated every two to three years. Immunotherapy is not effective in treating asthma.

Treatment of Type I Hypersensitivity

One way to treat type I hypersensitivity is to administer drugs that specifically counteract the inflammatory mediators released by degranulating cells. Thus, **antihistamines** are administered to counteract histamine. However, because histamine is but one of many mediators released in type I hypersensitivity, antihistamines do not completely eliminate all clinical signs. Indeed, because antihistamines are essentially useless in patients with asthma, asthmatics are typically prescribed an inhalant containing *glucocorticoid* (gloo-kō-kōr´ti-koyd) and a *bronchodilator* (brong-kō-dī-lā´ter), which counteract the effects of inflammatory mediators.

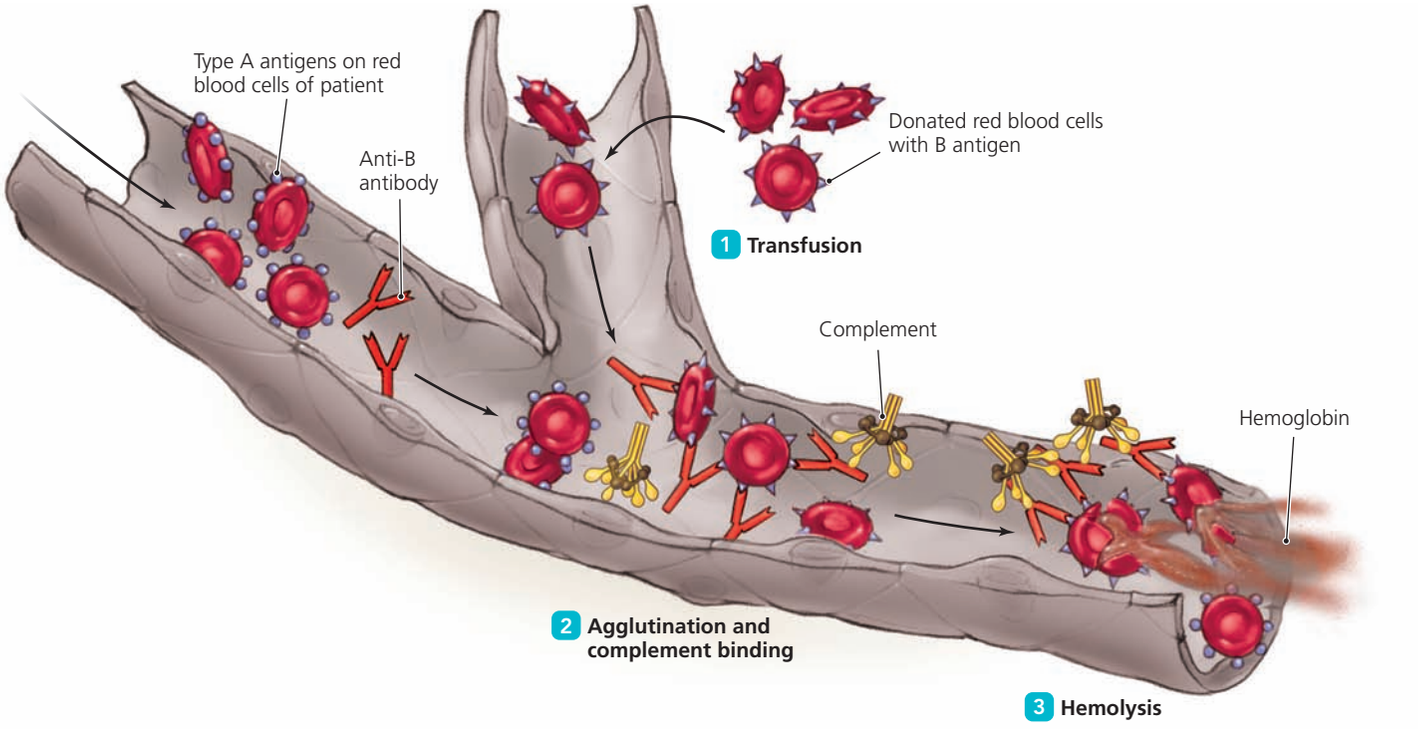
The hormone *epinephrine* quickly neutralizes many of the lethal mechanisms of anaphylaxis by relaxing smooth muscle tissue in the lungs, contracting smooth muscle of blood vessels, and reducing vascular permeability. Epinephrine is thus the drug of choice for the emergency treatment of both severe asthma and anaphylactic shock. Patients who suffer from severe type I hypersensitivities may carry a prescription epinephrine kit so that they can inject themselves before their allergic reactions become life threatening.

Type II (Cytotoxic) Hypersensitivity

Learning Outcomes

18.5 Discuss the mechanisms underlying transfusion reactions.
18.6 Construct a table comparing the key features of the four blood types in the ABO blood group system.
18.7 Describe the mechanisms and treatment of hemolytic disease of the newborn.

The second major form of hypersensitivity results when cells are destroyed by an immune response—typically by the combined activities of complement and antibodies. This *cytotoxic hypersensitivity* is part of many autoimmune diseases, which we will discuss later in this chapter, but the most significant examples of type II hypersensitivity are the destruction of donor red blood cells following an incompatible blood transfusion and the destruction of fetal red blood cells. We begin our



▲ **Figure 18.5** **Events leading to hemolysis.** One of the negative consequences of a transfusion reaction (here illustrated by a transfusion of type B blood into a patient with type A blood): When antibodies against a foreign ABO antigen combine with the antigen on transfused red blood cells 1, the cells are agglutinated, and the complexes bind complement 2. The resulting hemolysis releases large amounts of hemoglobin into the bloodstream 3 and produces additional negative consequences throughout the body.

discussion by focusing on these two manifestations of type II hypersensitivity.

The ABO System and Transfusion Reactions

Red blood cells have many different glycoprotein and glycolipid molecules on their surface. Some surface molecules of red blood cells, called **blood group antigens,** have various functions, including transportation of glucose and ions across the cytoplasmic membrane.

There are several sets of blood group antigens that vary in complexity. The ABO group system is most famous and consists of just two antigens arbitrarily given the names A antigen and B antigen. Each person's red blood cells have either A antigen, B antigen, both A and B antigens, or neither antigen. Individuals with neither antigen are said to have blood type O.

As you probably know, blood can be transfused from one person to another; however, if blood is transfused to an individual with a different blood type, then the donor's blood group antigens may stimulate the production of antibodies in the recipient. These bind to and eventually destroy the transfused cells. The result can be a potentially life-threatening *transfusion reaction.* Note that it is a blood recipient's own immune system that causes problems; the donated cells merely trigger the response.

Transfusion reactions, the most problematic of which involve the ABO group, develop as follows:

- If the recipient has preexisting antibodies to foreign blood group antigens, then the donated blood cells will be destroyed immediately—either the antibody-bound cells will be phagocytized by macrophages and neutrophils or the antibodies will agglutinate the cells and complement will rupture them, a process called *hemolysis* **(Figure 18.5)**. Hemolysis releases hemoglobin into the bloodstream, which may cause severe kidney damage. At the same time, the membranes of the ruptured blood cells trigger blood clotting within blood vessels, blocking them and causing circulatory failure, fever, difficulty in breathing, coughing, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. If the patient survives, recovery follows the elimination of all the foreign red blood cells.
- If the recipient has no preexisting antibodies to the foreign blood group antigens, then the transfused cells circulate and function normally, but only for a while—that is, until the recipient's immune system mounts a primary response against the foreign antigens and produces enough antibody to destroy the foreign cells. This happens gradually over a long enough time that the severe symptoms and signs mentioned above do not occur.

TABLE 18.2 ABO Blood Group Characteristics and Donor/Recipient Matches

ABO Blood Group	ABO Antigen(s) Present	Antibodies Present	Can Donate To	Can Receive From
A	A	Anti-B	A or AB	A or O
B	B	Anti-A	B or AB	B or O
AB	A and B	None	AB	A, B, AB, or O (universal recipient)
O	None	Both anti-A and anti-B	A, B, AB, or O (universal donor)	O

To prevent transfusion reactions, laboratory personnel must cross-match ABO blood types between donors and recipients. Before a recipient receives a blood transfusion, the red cells and serum of the donor can be mixed with the serum and red cells of the recipient. If any signs of clumping are seen, then that blood is not used, and an alternative donor is sought. Table 18.2 presents the characteristics of the ABO blood group and the compatible donor/recipient matches that can be made.

In most people, production of antibodies against foreign ABO antigens is stimulated not by exposure to foreign blood cells but instead by exposure to antigenically similar molecules found on a wide range of plants and bacteria. Individuals encounter and make antibodies against these antigens on a daily basis, but only upon receipt of a mismatched blood transfusion are they problematic.

CRITICAL THINKING

During the war in Afghanistan in 2012, an army corporal with type AB blood received a lifesaving blood transfusion from his sergeant, who had type O blood. Later the sergeant was involved in a traumatic accident and needed blood desperately. The corporal wanted to help but was told his blood was incompatible. Explain the immunological reasons the corporal could receive blood from but could not give blood to the sergeant.

The Rh System and Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn

Many decades ago, researchers discovered the existence of an antigen common to the red blood cells of humans and rhesus monkeys. They called this antigen, which transports anions and glucose across the cytoplasmic membrane, *rhesus* (rē´sŭs) antigen, or **Rh antigen.** Laboratory analysis of human blood samples eventually showed that the Rh antigen is present on the red blood cells of about 85% of humans; that is, about 85% of the population is *Rh positive* (*Rh*+), and about 15% of the population is *Rh negative* (*Rh*−).

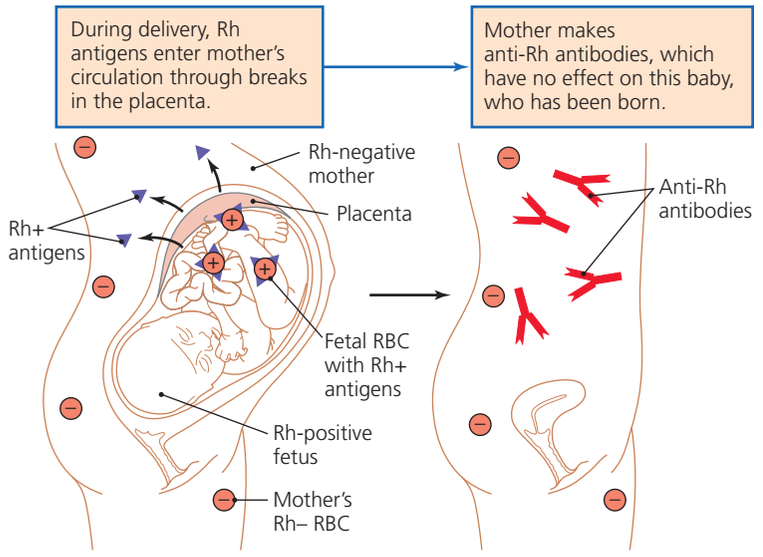
In contrast to the situation with ABO antigens, preexisting antibodies against Rh antigen do not occur. Although a transfusion reaction can occur in an Rh-negative patient who receives more than one transfusion of Rh-positive blood, such a reaction is usually minor because Rh antigen molecules are less abundant than A or B antigens. Instead, the primary problem posed by incompatible Rh antigen is the risk of **hemolytic**[4] **disease of the newborn** (hē-mō-lit´ik; Figure 18.6).

This hypersensitivity reaction develops when an Rh− mother is pregnant with an Rh+ baby (who inherited an Rh gene from its father). Normally, the placenta keeps fetal red blood cells separate from the mother's blood, so fetal cells do not enter the mother's bloodstream. However, in 20–50% of pregnancies—especially during the later weeks of pregnancy, during a clinical or spontaneous abortion, or during childbirth—fetal red blood cells escape into the mother's blood. The Rh− mother's immune system recognizes these Rh+ fetal cells as foreign and initiates an antibody immune response by developing antibodies against the Rh antigen. Initially, only IgM antibodies are produced, and because IgM is a very large molecule that cannot cross the placenta, no problems arise during this first pregnancy.

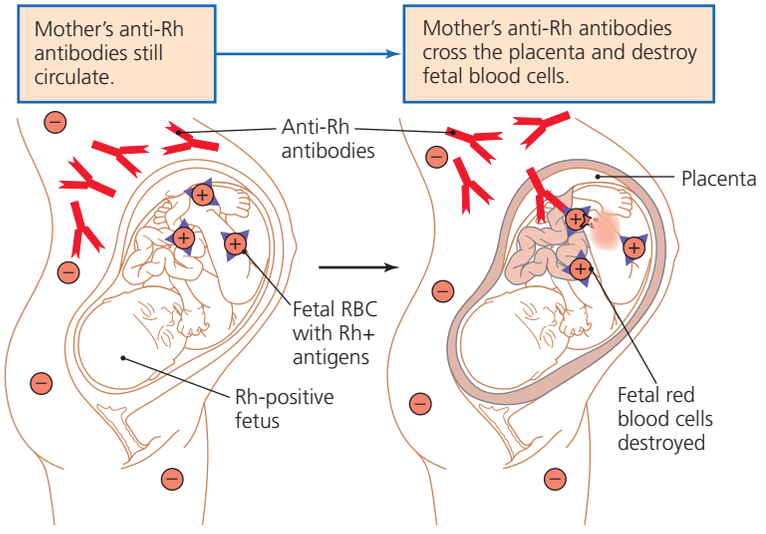
However, IgG antibodies can cross the placenta, so if during additional pregnancies the fetus is Rh+, anti-Rh IgG molecules produced by the mother cross the placenta and destroy the fetus's Rh+ red blood cells. Such destruction may be limited, or it may be severe enough—especially in a third or subsequent pregnancy—to cause grave problems. One classic feature of hemolytic disease of the newborn is severe *jaundice* from excessive bilirubin (bil-i-roo´bin), which is a yellowish blood pigment released during the degradation of hemoglobin from lysed red blood cells. The liver is normally responsible for removing bilirubin, but because of the immaturity of the fetal liver and overload from the hemolytic process, the bilirubin may instead be deposited in the brain, causing severe neurological damage or death during the last weeks of pregnancy or shortly after the baby's birth.

In the past, when prevention of hemolytic disease of the newborn was impossible, this terrible disease occurred in about 1 of every 300 births. Today, however, physicians can routinely and drastically reduce the number of cases of the disease by administering anti-Rh immunoglobulin (IgG), called *RhoGAM,* to Rh-negative women at 28 weeks into their pregnancy and also within 72 hours following abortion, miscarriage, or childbirth. Any fetal red cells that may have entered the mother's body are destroyed by RhoGAM before the fetal cells can trigger an immune response. As a result, sensitization of the mother does not occur, and future pregnancies are safer. ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** ***Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn***

[4]From Greek *haima*, meaning "blood," and *lysis*, meaning "destruction."



(a) First pregnancy



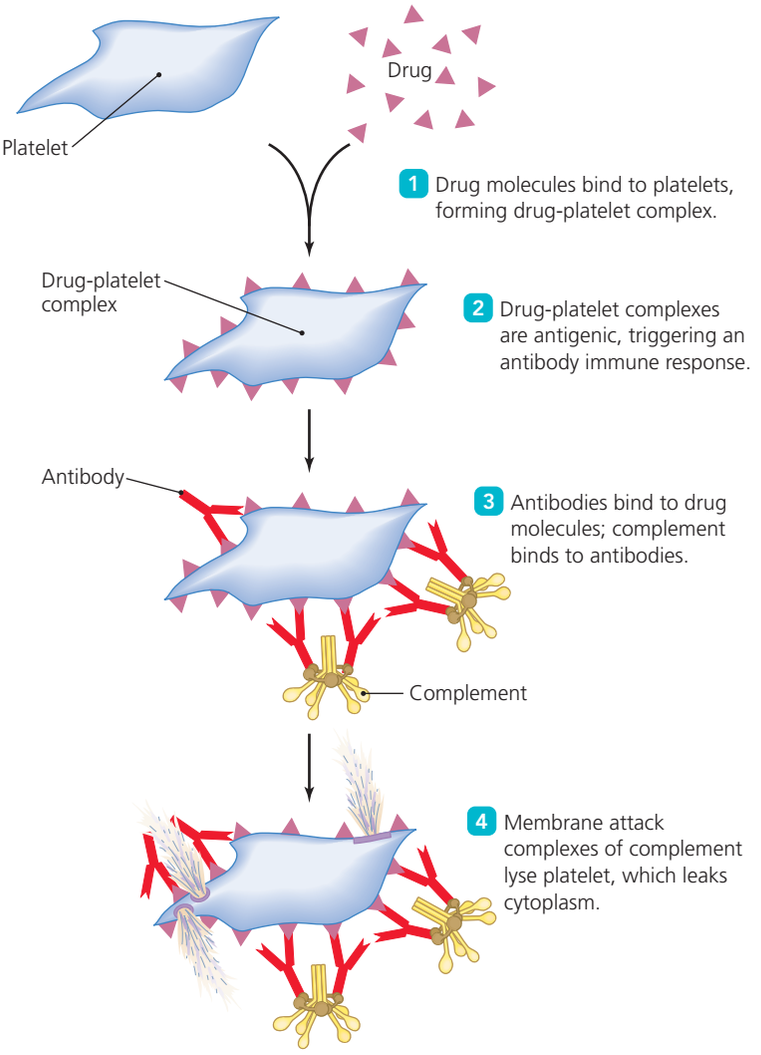
(b) Subsequent pregnancy

▲ Figure 18.6 Events in the development of hemolytic disease of the newborn. (a) During an initial pregnancy, Rh red blood cells from the fetus enter the Rh− mother's circulation, often during childbirth. As a result, the mother produces anti-Rh antibodies. (Antigens and antibodies are not shown to scale.) **(b)** During a subsequent pregnancy with another Rh child, anti-Rh IgG molecules cross the placenta and trigger destruction of the fetus's red blood cells. *How is it possible that the child of an Rh− mother is Rh+?*

Figure 18.6 *The father of the child is Rh positive.*

Drug-Induced Cytotoxic Reactions

Another kind of type II hypersensitivity involves cytotoxic reactions to drugs. Although the molecules of such drugs as quinine, penicillin, or sulfanilamide are too small to trigger an immune response by themselves, they can bind to larger molecules and become antigenic, stimulating production of antibodies.



▲ Figure 18.7 Events in the development of immune thrombocytopenic purpura. This disease results from a drug-induced type II (cytotoxic) hypersensitivity reaction. The destruction of platelets through the action of bound antibodies and complement produces the inhibition of blood clotting characteristic of this disease. *What is the similar disease resulting from type II destruction of red blood cells?*

Figure 18.7 *Hemolytic anemia is the type II destruction of red blood cells.*

When such antibodies and then complement bind to drug molecules already bound to blood platelets, the platelets are lysed, producing a disease called **immune thrombocytopenic**[5] **purpura** (thro´mbō-sī-tō-pē´nik pūrpū-ră; **Figure 18.7**). The destruction of the platelets inhibits the ability of the blood to clot correctly, which leads to the production of purple hemorrhages, called *purpura*[6] (pŭr´poo-ră), under the skin. Similar destruction of leukocytes is one form of *agranulocytosis,* and that of red blood cells is called *hemolytic anemia* (ă-nē´mē-ă).

[5] *Thrombocyte* is another name for platelet.
[6] From Latin, meaning "purple."

Type III (Immune Complex–Mediated) Hypersensitivity

Learning Outcomes

18.8 Outline the basic mechanism of type III hypersensitivity.
18.9 Describe hypersensitivity pneumonitis and glomerulonephritis.
18.10 List the signs and symptoms of rheumatoid arthritis.
18.11 Discuss the cause and signs of systemic lupus erythematosus.

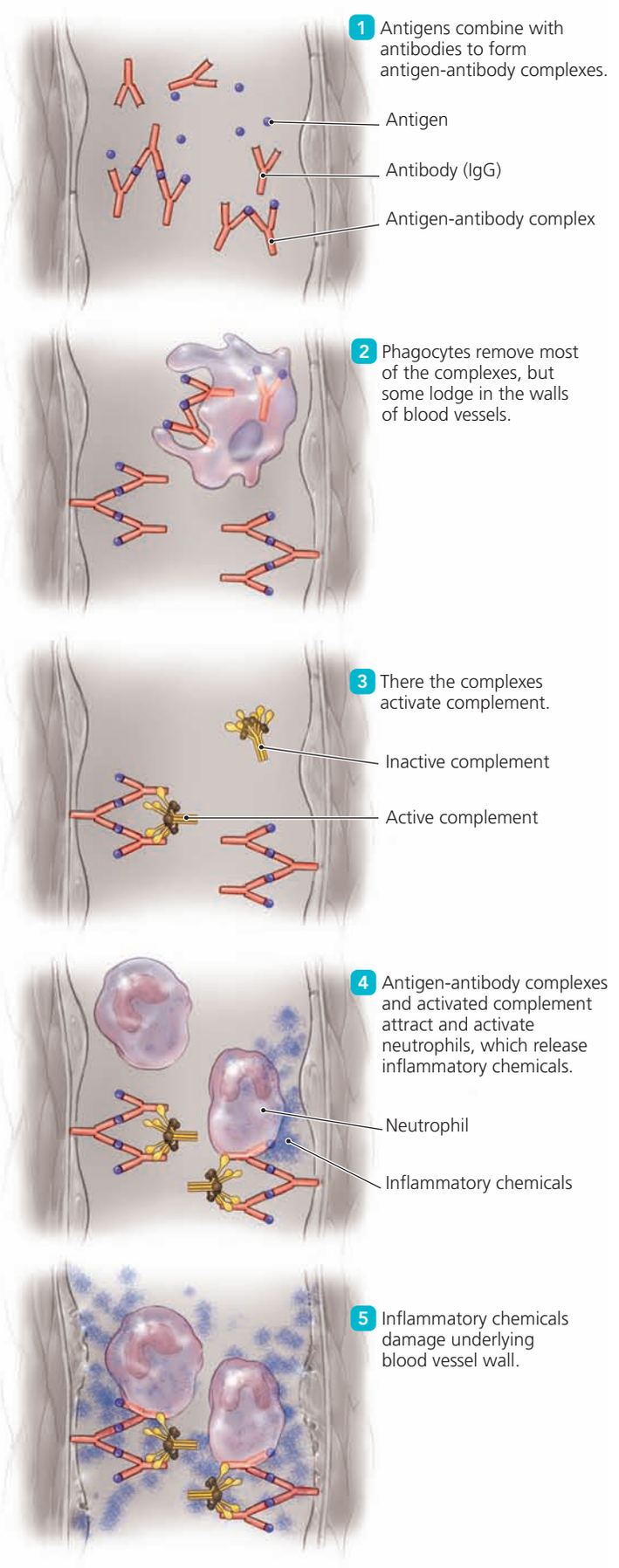
The formation of complexes of antigen bound to antibody, called **immune complexes,** initiates several molecular processes, including complement activation. Normally, immune complexes are removed from the body via phagocytosis. However, in *type III (immune complex–mediated) hypersensitivity* reactions, the immune complexes escape phagocytosis and so circulate in the bloodstream until they become trapped in organs, joints, and tissues (such as the walls of blood vessels). In these sites they trigger mast cells to degranulate, releasing inflammatory chemicals that damage the tissues. **Figure 18.8** illustrates the mechanism of type III reactions.

Type III hypersensitivities may be localized or may affect a number of body systems simultaneously. There is no cure for these diseases, though steroids that suppress the immune system may provide some relief. Two localized conditions resulting from immune complex–mediated hypersensitivity are hypersensitivity pneumonitis and glomerulonephritis; two systemic disorders are rheumatoid arthritis and systemic lupus erythematosus.

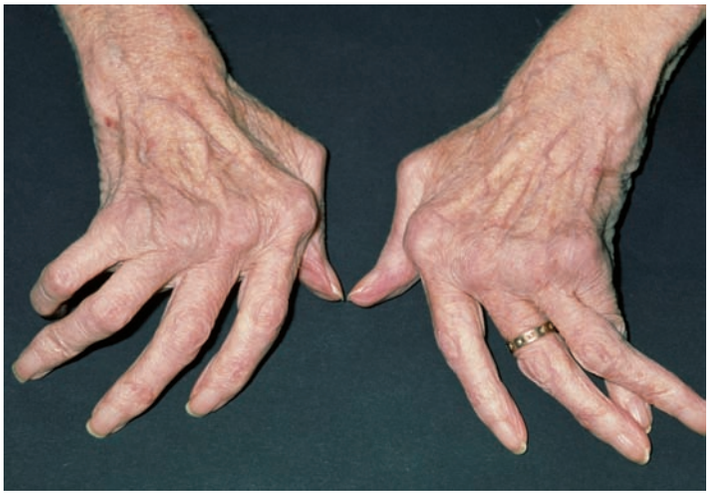
Hypersensitivity Pneumonitis

Type III hypersensitivities can affect the lungs, causing a form of pneumonia called **hypersensitivity pneumonitis** (noo-mō-nī´tus). Individuals become sensitized when minute mold spores or other antigens are inhaled deep into the lungs, stimulating the production of antibodies. A hypersensitivity reaction occurs when the subsequent inhalation of the same antigen stimulates the formation of immune complexes that then activate complement.

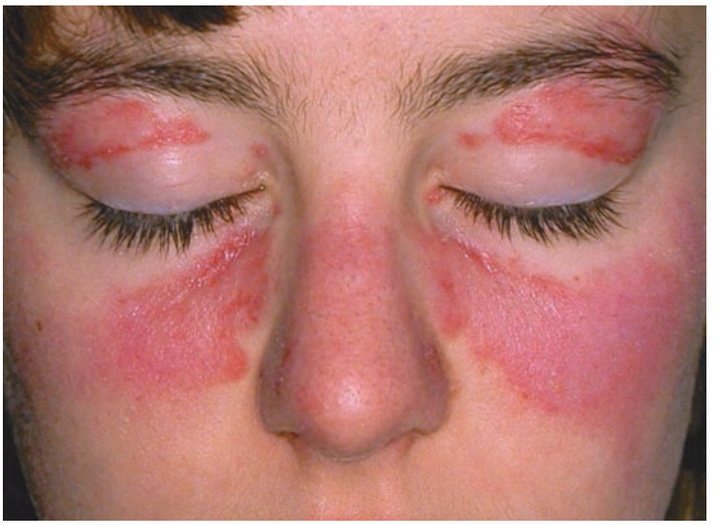
One form of hypersensitivity pneumonitis, called *farmer's lung,* occurs in farmers chronically exposed to spores from moldy hay. Many other syndromes in humans develop via a similar mechanism and are usually named after the source of the inhaled allergen. Thus, *pigeon breeder's lung* arises following exposure to the dust from pigeon feces, *mushroom grower's lung* is a response to the soil or fungal spores encountered in the growing of mushrooms, and *librarian's lung* results from inhaling dust from old books.



► **Figure 18.8 The mechanism of type III (immune complex–mediated) hypersensitivity.** After immune complexes form 1, the complexes that are not phagocytized lodge in certain tissues (in this case, the wall of a blood vessel) 2. Trapped complexes then activate complement 3, which attracts and activates neutrophils 4. The release of inflammatory chemicals from the activated neutrophils leads to the destruction of tissue 5.



▲ **Figure 18.9** **The crippling distortion of joints characteristic of rheumatoid arthritis.**



▲ **Figure 18.10** **The characteristic facial rash of systemic lupus erythematosus.** Its shape corresponds to areas most exposed to sunlight, which worsens the condition.

Glomerulonephritis

Glomerulonephritis (glō-mār´ū-lō-nef-rī´tis) occurs when immune complexes circulating in the bloodstream are deposited in the walls of *glomeruli,* which are networks of minute blood vessels in the kidneys. Immune complexes damage the glomerular cells, leading to enhanced local production of cytokines that trigger nearby cells to produce more of the proteins that underlie the cells, impeding blood filtration. Sometimes, the immune complexes are deposited in the center of the glomeruli, where they stimulate local cells to divide and compress nearby blood vessels, again interfering with kidney function. The net result is kidney failure; the glomeruli lose their ability to filter wastes from the blood, ultimately resulting in death.

Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA)

Rheumatoid arthritis (roo´mă-toyd ar-thrī´tis; **RA**) commences when B cells secrete IgM that binds to certain IgG molecules. IgM-IgG complexes are deposited in the joints, where they activate complement and mast cells, which release inflammatory chemicals. The resulting inflammation causes the tissues to swell, thicken, and proliferate into the joint, resulting in severe pain. As the altered tissue extends into the joint, the inflammation further erodes and destroys joint cartilage and the neighboring bony structure until the joints begin to break down and fuse; as a result, affected joints become distorted and lose their range of motion **(Figure 18.9)**. The course of rheumatoid arthritis is often intermittent; however, with each recurrence, the lesions and damage get progressively more severe.

The trigger of RA is not well understood. The fact that there are no animal models (because the disease appears to affect humans only) significantly hinders research on its cause. Many cases demonstrate that RA commonly follows an infectious disease in a genetically susceptible individual. Possession of certain immunity (MHC) genes appears to increase susceptibility.

Physicians treat rheumatoid arthritis by administering anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen to prevent additional joint damage and immunosuppressive drugs to inhibit the antibody immune response.

Systemic L.upus Erythematosus (SLE)

An example of type III hypersensitivity disease that affects multiple organs is **systemic lupus erythematosus** (loo´pŭs er-ĭ-thē´mă-tō-sus; **SLE**), often shortened to *lupus.* Patients with this generalized immunological disorder make antibodies against numerous self-antigens found in normal organs and tissues, giving rise to many different pathological lesions and clinical manifestations. One consistent feature of SLE is the development of such self-reactive antibodies, called autoantibodies, against nucleic acids, especially DNA. These autoantibodies combine with free DNA released from dead cells to form immune complexes that are deposited in glomeruli, causing glomerulonephritis and kidney failure. Thus, SLE is an immune complex–mediated hypersensitivity reaction. Immune complexes may also be deposited in joints, where they give rise to arthritis.

The disease's curious name—systemic lupus erythematosus—stems from two features of the disease: *Systemic* simply reflects the fact that it affects different organs throughout the body, *lupus* is Latin for wolf, and *erythematosus* refers to a redness of the skin, so these last two words describe the characteristic red, butterfly-shaped rash that develops on the face of many patients, giving them what is sometimes described as a wolf-like appearance **(Figure 18.10)**. This rash is caused by deposition of nucleic acid–antibody complexes in the skin and is worse in skin areas exposed to sunlight.

Although autoantibodies to nucleic acids are characteristic of SLE, many other autoantibodies are also produced. Autoantibodies to red blood cells cause hemolytic anemia, autoantibodies to platelets give rise to bleeding disorders, antilymphocyte antibodies alter immune reactivity, and autoantibodies against muscle cells cause muscle inflammation and, in some cases,

damage to the heart. Because of its variety of symptoms, SLE can be misdiagnosed.

The trigger of lupus is unknown, though a lupus-like disease can be induced by some drugs. It is likely that SLE has many causes.

Physicians treat lupus with immunosuppressive drugs that reduce autoantibody formation and with glucocorticoids that reduce the inflammation associated with the deposition of immune complexes. Scientists are currently testing a battery of novel drugs for treating lupus.

Type IV (Delayed or Cell-Mediated) Hypersensitivity

Learning Outcomes

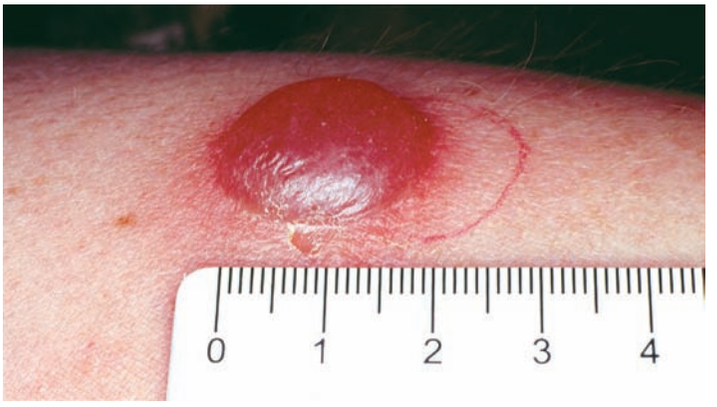
18.12 Outline the mechanism of type IV hypersensitivity.
18.13 Describe the significance of the tuberculin test.
18.14 Identify four types of grafts.
18.15 Compare four types of drugs commonly used to prevent graft rejection.

When certain antigens contact the skin of sensitized individuals, they provoke inflammation that begins to develop at the site only after 12–24 hours. Such **delayed hypersensitivity reactions** result not from the action of antibodies but rather from interactions among antigen, antigen-presenting cells, and T cells; thus, a type IV reaction is also called *cell-mediated hypersensitivity.* The delay in this cell-mediated response reflects the time it takes for macrophages and T cells to migrate to and divide at the site of the antigen. We begin our discussion of type IV reactions by considering two common examples: the tuberculin response and allergic contact dermatitis. Then we will consider two type IV hypersensitivity reactions involving the interactions between the body and tissues grafted to (transplanted into) it—graft rejection and graft-versus-host disease—before considering donor-recipient matching and tissue typing.

The Tuberculin Response

The **tuberculin response** (too-ber´kyū-lin) is an important example of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction in which the skin of an individual exposed to tuberculosis (TB) or tuberculosis vaccine reacts to a shallow injection of *tuberculin*—a protein solution obtained from *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis). Health care providers use the tuberculin test, also called a *Mantoux test* (mahn-too´) after the French physician who perfected it, to diagnose contact with antigens of *M. tuberculosis.*

When tuberculin is injected into the skin of a healthy, never-infected or unvaccinated individual, no response occurs. In contrast, when tuberculin is injected into someone currently or previously infected with *M. tuberculosis* or an individual previously immunized with tuberculosis vaccine, a red, hard swelling (10 mm or greater in diameter) indicating a positive tuberculin test develops at the site **(Figure 18.11)**. Such inflammation reaches its greatest intensity within 24–72 hours and may persist for several weeks before fading. Microscopic examination of the lesion reveals that it is infiltrated with lymphocytes and macrophages.



▲ **Figure 18.11 A positive tuberculin test, a type IV hypersensitivity response.** The hard, red swelling 10 mm or greater in diameter that is characteristic of the tuberculin response indicates that the individual has been vaccinated against *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* or is now or has been previously infected with the bacterium.

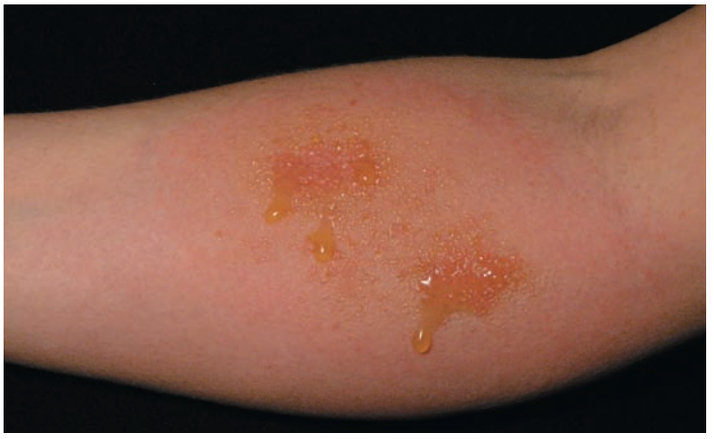
A tuberculin response is mediated by memory T cells. When an individual is first infected by or immunized against *M. tuberculosis,* the resulting cell-mediated immune response generates memory T cells that persist in the body. When a sensitized individual is later injected with tuberculin, phagocytic cells migrate to the site and attract memory T cells, which secrete a mixture of cytokines that attract still more T cells and macrophages, giving rise to a slowly developing inflammation. The macrophages ingest and destroy the injected tuberculin, allowing the tissues eventually to return to normal.

Allergic Contact Dermatitis

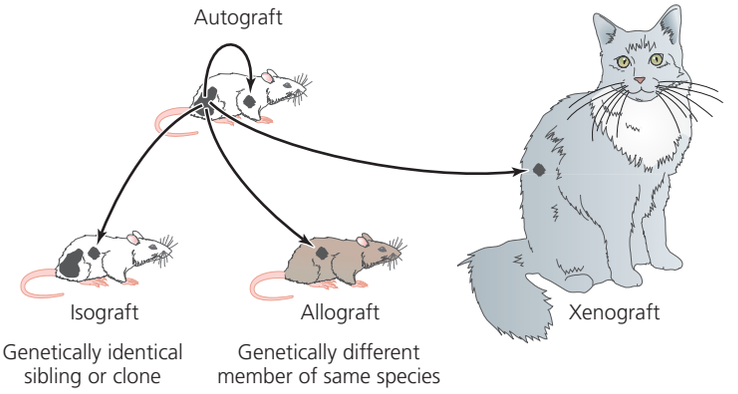
Urushiol (ŭ-rū´shē-ŏl), the oil of poison ivy (*Toxicodendron radicans,* toks´si-kō-den´dron rā´dē-kanz) and related plants, is a small molecule that becomes antigenic when it binds to almost any protein it contacts—including proteins in the skin of anyone who rubs against the plant. The body regards these chemically modified skin proteins as foreign, triggering a cell-mediated immune response and resulting in an intensely irritating skin rash called **allergic contact dermatitis** (der-mă-tī´tis). In severe cases, cytotoxic T lymphocytes (Tc cells) destroy so many skin cells that acellular, fluid-filled blisters develop **(Figure 18.12)**.

Other haptens that combine chemically with skin proteins can also induce allergic contact dermatitis. Examples include formaldehyde; some cosmetics, dyes, drugs, and metal ions; and chemicals used in the production of latex for hospital gloves and tubing.

Because T cells mediate allergic contact dermatitis, epinephrine and other drugs used for the treatment of immediate hypersensitivity reactions are ineffective. T cell activities and



▲ **Figure 18.12 Allergic contact dermatitis, a type IV hypersensitivity response.** The response in this case is to poison ivy. Note the large, acellular, fluid-filled blisters that result from the destruction of skin cells.



▲ **Figure 18.13 Types of grafts.** The names are based on the degree of relatedness between donor and recipient. Autografts are grafts moved from one location to another within a single individual. In isografts, the donor and recipient are either genetically identical siblings or clones. In allografts, the donor and recipient are genetically distinct individuals of the same species. In xenografts, the donor and recipient are of different species.

inflammation can, however, be suppressed by corticosteroid treatment. Good strategies for dealing with exposure to poison ivy include washing the area thoroughly and immediately with a strong soap and washing all exposed clothes as soon as possible.

Graft Rejection

A special case of type IV hypersensitivity is the rejection of **grafts** (or transplants), which are tissues or organs, such as livers, kidneys, or hearts, that have been transplanted, whether between sites within an individual or between a donor and an unrelated recipient. Even though advances in surgical technique enable surgeons to move grafts freely from site to site, grafts perceived as foreign by a recipient may undergo **graft rejection,** a highly destructive phenomenon that can severely limit the success of organ and tissue transplantation. Graft rejection is a normal immune response against foreign major histocompatibility complex (MHC) proteins on the surface of graft cells. The likelihood of graft rejection depends on the degree to which the graft is foreign to the recipient, which in turn is related to the type of graft.

Scientists name graft types according to the degree of relatedness between the donor and the recipient **(Figure 18.13)**. A graft is called an **autograft** (aw´tō-graft) when tissues are moved to a different location within the same individual. Autografts do not trigger immune responses because they do not express foreign antigens. Examples of autografts include the grafting of skin from one area of the body to another to cover a burn area or the use of a leg vein to bypass blocked coronary arteries.

Isografts (ī´sō-graftz) are grafts transplanted between two genetically identical individuals, that is, between identical siblings or clones. Because these individuals have identical MHC proteins, the immune system of the recipient cannot differentiate between the grafted cells and its own normal body cells. As a result, isografts are not rejected.

Allografts (al´ō-graftz) are grafts transplanted between genetically distinct members of the same species. Most grafts performed in humans are allografts. Because the MHC proteins of the allograft are different from those of the recipient, allografts typically induce a strong type IV hypersensitivity, resulting in graft rejection. Rejection must be stopped with immunosuppressive drugs if the graft is to survive.

Xenografts (zēn´ō-graftz) are grafts transplanted between individuals of different species. Thus, the transplant of a baboon's heart into a human is a xenograft. Because xenografts are usually very different from the tissues of the recipient, both biochemically and immunologically, they usually provoke a rapid, intense rejection that is very difficult to suppress. Therefore, xenografts from mature animals are not commonly used therapeutically.

Graft-Versus-Host Disease

Physicians often use bone marrow allografts as a component of the treatment for leukemias and lymphomas (cancers of leukocytes). In this procedure, physicians use total body irradiation combined with cytotoxic drugs to kill tumor cells in the patient's bone marrow. In the process, the patient's existing leukocytes are also destroyed, which completely eliminates the body's ability to mount any kind of immune response. Physicians then inject the patient with donated bone marrow, which produces a new set of leukocytes. Ideally, within a few months, a fully functioning bone marrow is restored.

Unfortunately, when they are transplanted, donated bone marrow T cells may regard the patient's cells as foreign, mounting an immune response against them and giving rise to a condition called **graft-versus-host disease**. If the donor and recipient mainly differ in MHC class I molecules, the grafted T cells attack all of the recipient's tissues, producing especially destructive lesions in the skin and intestine. If the donor and recipient differ mainly in MHC class II molecules, then the grafted T cells attack the antigen-presenting cells of the host, leading to immunosuppression and leaving the recipient vulnerable to

infections. The same immunosuppressive drugs used to prevent graft rejection (discussed shortly) can limit graft-versus-host disease.

Donor-Recipient Matching and Tissue Typing

Although it is usually not difficult to ensure that donor and recipient have identical blood groups, MHC compatibility is much harder to achieve. The reason is the very high degree of MHC variability, which ensures that unrelated individuals differ widely in their MHCs. In general, the more closely donor and recipient are related, the smaller their MHC difference. Given that in most cases an identical sibling is not available, it is usually preferable that grafts be donated by a parent or sibling possessing MHC antigens similar to those of the recipient.

In practice, of course, closely related donors are not always available. And even though a paired organ (such as a kidney) or a portion of an organ (such as liver tissue) may be available from a living donor, unpaired organs (such as the heart) almost always come from an unrelated cadaver. In such cases, attempts are made to match donor and recipient as closely as possible by means of *tissue typing*. Physicians examine the white cells of potential graft recipients to determine what MHC proteins they have. When a donor organ becomes available, it too is typed. Then the individual whose MHC proteins most closely match those of the donor is chosen to receive the graft. Though a perfect match is rarely achieved, the closer the match, the less intense the rejection process and the greater the chance of successful grafting. A match of 50% or less of the MHC proteins is usually acceptable for most organs, but near absolute matches are required for successful bone marrow transplants.

Table 18.3 summarizes the major characteristics of the four types of hypersensitivity.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A patient arrives at the doctor's office with a rash covering her legs. How could you determine whether the rash is a type I or a type IV hypersensitivity?

Next we turn our attention to the actions of various types of immunosuppressive drugs used in situations in which the immune system is overactive.

The Actions of Immunosuppressive Drugs

The development of potent immunosuppressive drugs has played a large role in the dramatic success of modern transplantation procedures. These drugs can also be effective in combating certain autoimmune diseases (discussed shortly). In the following discussion we consider four classes of immunosuppressive drugs: glucocorticoids, cytotoxic drugs, cylosporine, and lymphocyte-depleting therapies.

Glucocorticoids, sometimes called *corticosteroids* and commonly referred to as *steroids,* have been used as immunosuppressive agents for many years. Glucocorticoids such as *prednisone* (pred´ni-sōn) and *methylprednisolone* suppress the response of T cells to antigen and inhibit such mechanisms as T cell cytotoxicity and cytokine production. These drugs have a much smaller effect on B cell function.

Cytotoxic drugs inhibit mitosis and cytokinesis (cell division). Given that lymphocyte proliferation is a key feature of specific immunity, blocking cellular reproduction is a powerful although very nonspecific method of immunosuppression. Among the cytotoxic drugs that have been used, the following are noteworthy:

- *Cyclophosphamide* (sī-klō-fos´fă-mīd) cross-links daughter DNA molecules in mitotic cells, preventing their separation and blocking mitosis. It impairs both B cell and T cell responses.
- *Azathioprine* (ā-ză-thī´ō-prēn) is a purine analog; it competes with purines during the synthesis of nucleic acids, thus blocking DNA replication and suppressing both primary and secondary antibody responses.

Three other cytotoxic drugs used for immunosuppression include *mycophenolate mofetil,* which inhibits purine synthesis, and *brequinar sodium* and *leflunomide,* each of which inhibits pyrimidine synthesis and thereby inhibits cellular replication.

Drugs such as **cyclosporine** (sī-klō-spōr´ēn), a polypeptide derived from fungi, prevent production of interleukins and interferons by T cells, thereby blocking Th1 responses. Because cyclosporine acts only on activated T cells and has no effect on resting T cells, it is far less toxic than the nonspecific drugs previously described. When it is given to prevent allograft rejection, only activated T cells attacking the graft are suppressed. Because steroids have a similar effect, the combination of glucocorticoids

TABLE 18.3 The Characteristics of the Four Types of Hypersensitivity Reactions

Descriptive	Name	Cause	Time Course	Characteristic Cells Involved
Type I	Immediate hypersensitivity	Antibody (IgE) on sensitized cells' membranes binds antigen, causing degranulation	Seconds to minutes	Mast cells, basophils, and eosinophils
Type II	Cytotoxic hypersensitivity	Antibodies and complement lyse target cells	Minutes to hours	Red blood cells
Type III	Immune complex–mediated hypersensitivity	Nonphagocytized complexes of antibodies and antigens trigger mast cell degranulation	Several hours	Neutrophils
Type IV	Delayed hypersensitivity	T cells attack the body's cells	Several days	Activated T cells

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE FIRST TIME'S NOT THE PROBLEM

Steven, an eight-year-old boy, is brought to your office Monday morning by his father to have his upper arm checked for a possible infection. Dad is worried because the area of a bee sting on the boy's arm is getting more red, itchy, and tender. The father gave him some children's acetaminophen yesterday, which relieved the discomfort somewhat.

There is no history of medical problems or allergies, and the child takes no regular medication. The child is otherwise feeling well, and his father tells you he is playing and eating normally. There is no previous history of bee stings, and Steven proudly tells you he "hardly even cried" when he got stung.

There is a half-dollar-sized area on his left upper arm that is puffy and red, but there is no streaking or drainage, and the area does not appear to to be infected. Steven's temperature is normal, and his lungs are clear.

1. What type of hypersensitivity reaction is Steven manifesting?
2. What other over-the-counter medication might relieve the itching?
3. What mechanism is causing the signs and symptoms you are seeing?
4. Since the area is not infected, what future health risk for his son should the father be made aware of?
5. What can be done to determine future risk from a bee sting?
6. How would you recognize a severe allergic reaction?
7. What precautions can the family take to protect the boy from future reactions?

and cyclosporine is especially potent and can enhance survival of allografts.

Scientists have developed techniques involving relatively specific *lymphocyte-depleting therapies* in an attempt to reduce the many adverse side effects associated with the use of less specific immunosuppressive drugs. One technique involves administering an antiserum called *antilymphocyte globulin,* which is specific for lymphocytes. Another, more specific antilymphocyte technique uses monoclonal antibodies against CD3, which is found only on T cells. An even more specific monoclonal antibody is directed against the interleukin 2 receptor (IL-2R), which is expressed mainly on activated T cells. Such immunosuppressive therapies are effective in reversing graft rejection. Because they target a narrow range of cells, they produce fewer undesirable side effects than less specific drugs.

Table 18.4 lists some drugs and their actions for each of the four classes of the immunosuppressive drugs.

Autoimmune Diseases

Just as today's military must control its arsenal of sophisticated weapons to avert losses of its own soldiers from "friendly fire," the immune system must be carefully regulated so that it does not damage the body's own tissues. However, an immune system does occasionally produce antibodies and cytotoxic T cells that target normal body cells—a phenomenon called *autoimmunity.* Although such responses are not always damaging, they can give rise to **autoimmune diseases,** some of which are life threatening.

Causes of Autoimmune Diseases

Learning Outcome

18.16 Briefly discuss eight hypotheses concerning the causes of autoimmunity and autoimmune diseases.

Most autoimmune diseases appear to develop spontaneously and at random. Nevertheless, scientists have noted some common features of autoimmune disease. For example, they occur more often in older individuals, and they are also much more common in women than in men, although the reasons for this gender difference are unclear.

TABLE 18.4 The Four Classes of Immunosuppressive Drugs

Class	Examples	Action
Glucocorticoids	Prednisone, methylprednisolone	Anti-inflammatory; kills T cells
Cytotoxic drugs	Cyclophosphamide, azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, brequinar sodium, leflunomide	Blocks cell division nonspecifically
Cyclosporine	Cyclosporine	Blocks T cell responses
Lymphocyte-depleting therapies	Antilymphocyte globulin, monoclonal antibodies	Kills T cells nonspecifically, kills activated T cells, inhibits IL-2 reception

Hypotheses to explain the etiology of autoimmunity abound. They include the following:

- Estrogen may stimulate the destruction of tissues by cytotoxic T cells.
- During pregnancy, some maternal cells may cross the placenta and colonize the fetus. These cells are more likely to survive in a daughter than in a son and might trigger an autoimmune disease later in the daughter's life.
- Conversely, fetal cells may also cross the placenta and trigger autoimmunity in the mother.
- Environmental factors may contribute to the development of autoimmune disorders. Some autoimmune diseases—type 1 diabetes mellitus (dī-ă-bē´tēz mĕ-lī´tĕs) and rheumatoid arthritis, for example—develop in a few patients following their recovery from viral infections, though other individuals who develop these diseases have no history of such viral infections.
- Genetic factors may play a role in autoimmune diseases. MHC genes that in some way promote autoimmunity are found in individuals with autoimmune diseases, whereas MHC genes that somehow protect against autoimmunity may dominate in other individuals. MHC genes may also trigger autoimmune disease by preventing the elimination of some self-reactive T cells in the thymus.
- Some autoimmune diseases develop when T cells encounter self-antigens that are normally "hidden" in sites where T cells rarely go. For example, because sperm develop within the testes during puberty, long after the body has selected its T cell population, men may have T cells that recognize their own sperm as foreign. This is normally of little consequence because sperm are sequestered from the blood. But if the testes are injured, T cells may enter the site of damage and mount an autoimmune response against the sperm, resulting in infertility.
- Infections with a variety of microorganisms may trigger autoimmunity as a result of **molecular mimicry,** which occurs when an infectious agent has an epitope that is very similar or identical to a self-antigen. In responding to the invader, the body produces antibodies that are *autoantibodies* (antibodies against self-antigens), which damage body tissues. For example, children infected with some strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs pī-oj´en-ēz) may produce antibodies to heart muscle and so develop heart disease. Other strains of streptococci trigger the production of antibodies that cross-react with glomerular basement membranes and so cause kidney disease. It is possible that some virally triggered autoimmune diseases may also result from molecular mimicry.
- Other autoimmune responses may result from failure of the normal control mechanisms of the immune system. Thus, even though harmful, self-reactive T lymphocytes are normally destroyed via apoptosis triggered through the cell-surface receptor CD95 (see Figure 16.15), defects in CD95 can cause autoimmunity by permitting abnormal T cells to survive and cause disease.

Examples of Autoimmune Diseases

Learning Outcome

18.17 Describe a serious autoimmune disease associated with each of the following: blood cells, endocrine glands, nervous tissue, and connective tissue.

Regardless of the specific mechanism that causes an autoimmune disease, immunologists categorize them into two major groups: systemic autoimmune diseases such as lupus (discussed previously) and single-organ autoimmune diseases, which affect a single organ or tissue. Among the many single-organ autoimmune diseases recognized, common examples affect blood cells, endocrine glands, nervous tissue, or connective tissue.

Autoimmunity Affecting Blood Cells

Individuals with **autoimmune hemolytic anemia** produce antibodies against their own red blood cells. These autoantibodies speed up the destruction of the red blood cells, and the patient becomes severely anemic. Different hemolytic anemia patients make antibodies of different classes. Some patients make IgM autoantibodies, which bind to red blood cells and activate the classical complement pathway; the red blood cells are lysed, and degradation products from hemoglobin are released into the bloodstream. Other hemolytic anemia patients make IgG autoantibodies, which serve as opsonins that promote phagocytosis. In this case, red blood cells are removed by macrophages in the liver, spleen, and bone marrow. Even though these latter patients have no hemoglobin in their urine, they are still severely anemic.

The precise causes of all cases of autoimmune hemolytic anemia are unknown, but some cases follow infections with viruses or treatment with certain drugs, both of which alter the surface of red blood cells such that they are recognized as foreign and trigger an immune response.

Autoimmunity Affecting Endocrine Organs

Other common targets of autoimmune attack are the endocrine (hormone-producing) organs. For example, patients can develop autoantibodies or produce T cells against cells of the islets of Langerhans within the pancreas or against cells of the thyroid gland. In most cases, the ensuing autoimmune reaction results in damage to or destruction of the gland and in hormone deficiencies as endocrine cells are killed.

Immunological attack on the islets of Langerhans results in a loss of the ability to produce the hormone *insulin,* which leads to the development of **type 1 diabetes mellitus** (also known as *juvenile-onset diabetes*). As with other autoimmune diseases, the exact trigger of type 1 diabetes is unknown, but many patients endured a severe viral infection some months before the onset of diabetes. Additionally, some patients are known to have a genetic predisposition to developing type 1 diabetes that is associated with the possession of certain class I MHC molecules. Some physicians have been successful in delaying the onset of type 1 diabetes by treating at-risk patients with immunosuppressive drugs before damage to the islets of Langerhans becomes apparent.

An autoimmune response can lead to stimulation rather than to inhibition or destruction of glandular tissue. An example of this is **Graves' disease,** which involves the thyroid gland. This major endocrine gland located in the neck secretes iodine-containing hormones, which help regulate metabolic rate in the body. Like other autoimmune diseases, Graves' disease may be triggered by a viral infection in individuals with certain genetic backgrounds. Affected patients (usually women) make autoantibodies that bind to and stimulate receptors on the cytoplasmic membranes of thyroid cells, which elicits excessive production of thyroid hormone and growth of the thyroid gland. Such patients develop an enlarged thyroid gland—called a goiter—protruding eyes, rapid heartbeat, fatigue, and weight loss despite increased appetite. Physicians treat Graves' disease with antithyroid medicines or radioactive iodine or, in nonresponsive patients, by surgically removing most of the thyroid tissue.

Autoimmunity Affecting Nervous Tissue

Of the group of autoimmune diseases affecting nervous tissue, the most frequent is **multiple sclerosis** (sklĕ-rōsis; **MS**). The exact cause of MS is unknown, but it appears that a cell-mediated immune response against a bacterium or virus generates cytotoxic T cells that mistakenly attack and destroy the myelin sheaths that normally insulate brain and spinal cord neurons and increase the speed of nerve impulses along the length of the neurons. Consequently, MS patients experience deficits in vision, speech, and neuromuscular function that may be quite mild and intermittent or may ultimately lead to death.

Autoimmunity Affecting Connective Tissue

Rheumatoid arthritis (discussed previously) is another crippling autoimmune disease resulting from a type III hypersensitivity. Autoantibodies are formed against connective tissue in joints.

CRITICAL THINKING

A 43-year-old woman has been diagnosed with rheumatoid arthritis. Unable to find relief from her symptoms, she seeks treatment from a doctor in another country who injects antibodies and complement into her afflicted joints. Do you expect the treatment to improve her condition? Explain your reasoning.

Immunodeficiency Diseases

Learning Outcome

18.18 Differentiate primary from acquired immunodeficiencies and cite one disease caused by each form of immunodeficiency.

You may have noticed that during periods of increased emotional or physical stress you are more likely to have a cold or the flu. You are not imagining this phenomenon; stress has long been known to decrease the efficiency of the immune system. Similarly, chronic defects in the immune system typically first become apparent when affected individuals become sick more often from infections of opportunistic pathogens (or even of organisms not normally considered pathogens). Such opportunistic infections are the hallmarks of *immunodeficiency diseases,* which are conditions resulting from defective immune mechanisms.

Researchers have characterized a large number of immunodeficiency diseases in humans, which are of two general types:

- **Primary immunodeficiency diseases,** which are detectable near birth and develop in infants and young children, result from some genetic or developmental defect.
- **Acquired (secondary) immunodeficiency diseases** develop in later life as a direct consequence of some other recognized cause, such as malnutrition, severe stress, or infectious disease.

Next we consider each general type of immunodeficiency disease in turn.

Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases

Many different inherited defects have been identified in all of the body's lines of defense, affecting first and second lines of defense as well as antibody and cell-mediated immune responses.

One of the more important inherited defects in the second line of defense is **chronic granulomatous disease,** in which children have recurrent infections characterized by the inability of their phagocytes to destroy bacteria. The reason is that these children have an inherited inability to make reactive forms of oxygen, which are necessary to destroy phagocytized bacteria.

Most primary immunodeficiencies are associated with defects in the components of the third line of defense—adaptive immunity. For example, some children fail to develop any lymphoid stem cells whatsoever, and as a result they produce neither B cells nor T cells and cannot mount immune responses. The resulting defects in the immune system cause **severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID),** which is discussed in **Highlight: SCID: "Bubble Boy" Disease** on p. 532.

Other children suffer from T cell deficiencies alone. For example, **DiGeorge syndrome** results from a failure of the thymus to develop. Consequently, there are no T cells. The importance of T cells in protecting against viruses is emphasized by the observation that individuals with DiGeorge syndrome generally die of viral infections while remaining resistant to most bacteria. Physicians treat DiGeorge syndrome with a thymic stem cell transplant.

B cell deficiencies also occur in children. The most severe of the B cell deficiencies, called **Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia**[7] (ā-gam´ă-glob´ū-li-nē´mē-ă), is an inherited disease in which affected babies, usually boys, cannot make immunoglobulins. These children experience recurrent bacterial infections but are usually resistant to viral, fungal, and protozoan infections.

Inherited deficiencies of individual immunoglobulin classes are more common than a deficiency of all classes. Among these, IgA deficiency is the most common. Because affected children

[7] *Agammaglobulinemia* means "an absence of gamma globulin (IgG)."

HIGHLIGHT

SCID: "BUBBLE BOY" DISEASE

As a result of the widely publicized case of David Vetter—a Houston, Texas, resident commonly known as the "bubble boy" because he lived from birth until age 12 in a sterile, plastic-enclosed environment—*severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)* has been known as "bubble boy" disease since the 1970s. Like all SCID patients, David had no immune system—his body produced neither B cells nor T cells—so the slightest infection could be lethal. As a result, contact with him could occur only through a pair of antiseptic rubber gloves built into one of the walls of his plastic enclosure. At age 12, David underwent an experimental bone marrow transplant in the hope that marrow donated by his older sister would enable him to build up an immune system. Unfortunately, the donated cells turned out to be infected with Epstein-Barr virus (a common virus that causes mononucleosis), ultimately killing David.

Today, there is much more hope for patients with SCID. Virus-free bone marrow transplants are now possible. More recently, more than 20 children have undergone gene therapy, in which the gene for an enzyme (adenine deaminase) missing in SCID patients is inserted, via retroviral vectors, into clones of the patient's bone marrow cells. These genetically altered cells are then returned to the child, where they grow and synthesize sufficient enzyme to normalize the immune response. Though successful in several children studied in a French trial, the therapy was halted in 2002 after three children developed leukemia following treatment. Investigations into whether the illness was caused by the gene therapy are under way; however, scientists remain hopeful that gene therapy can achieve a cure for SCID—without side effects—in the near future.

David Vetter.

cannot produce secretory IgA, they experience recurrent infections in the respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts.

CRITICAL THINKING

Two boys have autoimmune diseases: One has Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia, and the other has DiGeorge syndrome. On a camping trip, each boy is stung by a bee, and each falls into poison ivy. What hypersensitivity reactions might each boy experience as a result of his camping mishaps?

Table 18.5 summarizes the major primary immunodeficiency diseases.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Diseases

Learning Outcomes

18.19 Describe five acquired conditions that suppress immunity.

18.20 Define *AIDS* and differentiate a disease from a syndrome.

Unlike inherited primary immunodeficiency diseases, acquired immunodeficiency diseases affect older individuals who had a previously healthy immune system.

Acquired immunodeficiencies result from a number of causes. In all humans the immune system (but especially T cell production) deteriorates with increasing age; as a result, older individuals normally have less effective immunity, especially cell-mediated immunity, than younger individuals, leading to an increased incidence of both viral diseases and certain types of cancer. Severe stress can also lead to immunodeficiencies by prompting the secretion of increased quantities of corticosteroids, which are toxic to T cells and thus suppress cell-mediated immunity. This is why, for example, cold sores may "break out" on the faces of students during final exams: The causative herpes simplex viruses, which are controlled by a fully functioning cell-mediated immune response, escape immune control in stressed individuals. Malnutrition and certain environmental toxins can also cause acquired immunodeficiency diseases by inhibiting the normal production of B cells and T cells.

Of course, the most significant example of the result of an acquired immunodeficiency is **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**. From the time of its discovery in 1981 among homosexual males in the United States to its emergence as a worldwide pandemic, no affliction has affected modern life as much.

AIDS is not a single disease but a **syndrome,** that is, a group of signs, symptoms, and diseases associated with a common

TABLE 18.5 Some Primary Immunodeficiency Diseases

Disease	Defect	Manifestation
Chronic granulomatous disease	Ineffective phagocytes	Uncontrolled infections
Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID)	A lack of T cells and B cells	No resistance to any type of infection, leading to rapid death
Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia	A lack of B cells and thus a lack of immunoglobulins	Death from overwhelming bacterial infections
DiGeorge syndrome	A lack of T cells and thus no cell-mediated immunity	Death from overwhelming viral infections

pathology. Currently, epidemiologists define this syndrome as the presence of several opportunistic or rare infections along with infection by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or as a severe decrease in the number of CD4 cells (<200/μL of blood) and a positive test showing the presence of HIV. The infections include diseases of the skin, such as shingles and disseminated (widespread) herpes; diseases of the nervous system, including meningitis, toxoplasmosis, and *Cytomegalovirus* (sī-tō-meg´ă-lō-vī´rŭs) disease; diseases of the respiratory system, such as tuberculosis, *Pneumocystis* (nū-mō-sis´tis) pneumonia, histoplasmosis, and coccidioidomycosis (kok-sid-ē-oy´dō-mī-kō-sis); and diseases of the digestive system, including chronic diarrhea, thrush, and oral hairy leukoplakia. A rare cancer of blood vessels called Kaposi's sarcoma is also commonly seen in AIDS patients. AIDS often results in dementia during the final stages. (Chapter 25 examines HIV and AIDS in detail.)

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

1. Immunological responses may give rise to inflammatory reactions called **hypersensitivities.** An immunological attack on normal tissues gives rise to autoimmune disorders. A failure of the immune system to function normally may give rise to immunodeficiency diseases.

Hypersensitivities (pp. 516–529)

1. Type I hypersensitivity gives rise to **allergies.** Antigens that trigger this response are called **allergens.**
2. Allergies result when allergens bind to IgE molecules that are already bound to **mast cells, basophils,** and **eosinophils.** This causes the sensitized cells to degranulate and release **histamine, kinins, proteases, leukotrienes,** and **prostaglandins.**
3. Depending on the amount of these molecules and the site at which they are released, the result can produce various clinical syndromes, including **hay fever, asthma, urticaria** (hives), or various other allergies. When the inflammatory mediators exceed the body's coping mechanisms, **acute anaphylaxis (anaphylactic shock)** may occur. The specific treatment for anaphylaxis is epinephrine.
4. Type I hypersensitivity can be diagnosed by skin testing and can be partially prevented by avoidance of allergens and immunotherapy. Some type I hypersensitivities are treated with **antihistamines.**
5. Type II cytotoxic hypersensitivities, such as incompatible blood transfusions and hemolytic disease of the newborn, result when cells are destroyed by an immune response.
6. Red blood cells have **blood group antigens** on their surface. If incompatible blood is transfused into a recipient, a severe transfusion reaction can result.

7. The most important of the blood group antigens is the ABO group, which is largely responsible for transfusion reactions.
8. Approximately 85% of the human population carries **Rh antigen,** which is also found in rhesus monkeys. If an Rh-negative pregnant woman is carrying an Rh-positive fetus, the fetus may be at risk of **hemolytic disease of the newborn,** in which antibodies made by the mother against the Rh antigen may cross the placenta and destroy the fetus's red blood cells. RhoGAM administered to pregnant Rh-negative women may prevent this disease.
   ▶ **VIDEO TUTOR:** *Hemolytic Disease of the Newborn*
9. Drugs bound to blood platelets may subsequently bind antibodies and complement, causing **immune thrombocytopenic purpura,** in which the platelets lyse.
10. In type III hypersensitivity, excessive amounts of **immune complexes** are deposited in tissues, where they cause significant tissue damage. Immune complexes deposited in the lung cause a **hypersensitivity pneumonitis,** of which the most common example is farmer's lung. If large amounts of immune complexes form in the bloodstream, they may be filtered out by the glomeruli of the kidney, causing **glomerulonephritis,** which can result in kidney failure.
11. In **rheumatoid arthritis,** immune complexes result in the growth of inflammatory tissue within joints.
12. **Systemic lupus erythematosus** (lupus) is a systemic, autoimmune, type III hypersensitivity in which autoantibodies bind to many autoantigens, especially the patient's DNA.
13. Type IV hypersensitivity, also known as **delayed hypersensitivity,** is a T cell–mediated inflammatory reaction that takes 24–72 hours to reach maximal intensity.
14. A good example of a delayed hypersensitivity reaction is the **tuberculin response,** generated when tuberculin, a protein extract of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* is injected into the skin of an individual who has been infected with or vaccinated against *M. tuberculosis.*
15. Another example of a type IV hypersensitivity reaction is **allergic contact dermatitis,** which is T cell–mediated damage to chemically modified skin cells. The best-known example is a reaction to poison ivy.
16. An organ or tissue **graft** can be made between different sites within a single individual (an **autograft**), between genetically identical individuals (an **isograft**), between genetically dissimilar individuals (an **allograft**), or between individuals of different species (a **xenograft**). Most surgical organ grafting involves allografts, which, if not treated with immunosuppressive drugs, lead to **graft rejection.**
17. In **graft-versus-host disease,** an organ donor's cells attack the recipient's body.
18. Commonly used immunosuppressive drugs include **glucocorticoids, cytotoxic drugs, cyclosporine,** and lymphocyte-depleting therapies, which involve treatment with antibodies against T cells or their receptors.

Autoimmune Diseases (pp. 529–531)

1. **Autoimmune diseases** may result when an individual begins to make autoantibodies or cytotoxic T cells against normal body components.
2. There are many hypotheses concerning the cause of autoimmune disease. One involves **molecular mimicry,** in which microorganisms with epitopes similar to self-antigens trigger autoimmune tissue damage. Others implicate estrogen, pregnancy, and environmental and genetic factors.
3. One group of autoimmune diseases involve only a single organ or cell type. Examples of such diseases include **autoimmune hemolytic anemia, type 1 diabetes mellitus, Graves' disease, multiple sclerosis,** and rheumatoid arthritis.
4. A second group of autoimmune diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematosus, involves multiple organs or body systems.

Immunodeficiency Diseases (pp. 531–533)

1. Immunodeficiency diseases may be classified as **primary immunodeficiency diseases,** which result from mutations or developmental anomalies and occur in young children, and **acquired** or **secondary immunodeficiency diseases,** which result from other known causes such as viral infections.
2. Examples of primary immunodeficiency diseases include **chronic granulomatous disease,** in which a child's neutrophils are incapable of killing ingested bacteria. Inability to produce both T cells and B cells is called **severe combined immunodeficiency disease.** In **DiGeorge syndrome,** the thymus fails to develop. In **Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia,** B cells fail to function.
3. **Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)** is a condition marked by the presence of HIV in conjunction with certain opportunistic infections or with fewer than 200 CD4 cells/μL of blood. AIDS is the most common acquired immunodeficiency disease.
4. A **syndrome** is a complex of signs, symptoms, and diseases with a common cause. AIDS is defined by a presence of a number of opportunistic infections in the presence of antibodies against HIV.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. The immunoglobulin class that mediates type I hypersensitivity is _____.
   a. IgA
   b. IgM
   c. IgG
   d. IgD
   e. IgE
2. The major inflammatory mediator released by degranulating mast cells in type I hypersensitivity is _____.
   a. immunoglobulin
   b. complement
   c. histamine
   d. interleukin
   e. prostaglandin

3. Hemolytic disease of the newborn is caused by antibodies against which major blood group antigen?
   a. MHC protein
   b. MN antigen
   c. ABO antigen
   d. rhesus antigen
   e. type II protein

4. Farmer's lung is a hypersensitivity pneumonitis resulting from _____.
   a. a type I hypersensitivity reaction to grass pollen
   b. a type II hypersensitivity to red cells in the lung
   c. a type III hypersensitivity to mold spores
   d. a type IV hypersensitivity to bacterial antigens
   e. none of the above

5. A positive tuberculin skin test indicates that a patient not immunized against tuberculosis _____.
   a. is free of tuberculosis
   b. is shedding *Mycobacterium.*
   c. has been exposed to tuberculosis antigens
   d. is susceptible to tuberculosis
   e. is resistant to tuberculosis

6. Which of the following is an autoimmune disease?
   a. a heart attack
   b. acute anaphylaxis
   c. farmer's lung
   d. graft-versus-host disease
   e. systemic lupus erythematosus

7. When a surgeon conducts a cardiac bypass operation by transplanting a piece of vein from a patient's leg to the same patient's heart, this is _____.
   a. a rejected graft
   b. an autograft
   c. an allograft
   d. a type IV hypersensitivity
   e. a cardiograft

8. A deficiency of both B cells and T cells is most likely _____.
   a. a secondary immunodeficiency
   b. a complex immunodeficiency
   c. an acquired immunodeficiency
   d. a primary immunodeficiency
   e. an induced immunodeficiency

9. Infection with HIV causes _____.
   a. primary immunodeficiency disease
   b. acquired hypersensitivity syndrome
   c. acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
   d. anaphylactic immunodeficiency diseases
   e. combined immunodeficiency diseases

10. What do medical personnel administer to counteract various type I hypersensitivities?
    a. antihistamine
    b. bronchodilator
    c. corticosteroid
    d. epinephrine
    e. all of the above

Modified True/False

Indicate whether each statement is true or false. If the statement is false, change the underlined word or phrase to make the statement true.

1. _____ <u>Cyclosporine</u> is released by degranulating mast cells.
2. _____ <u>Type III</u> hypersensitivity reactions may lead to the development of glomerulonephritis.
3. _____ ABO blood group antigens are found on <u>nucleated</u> cells.
4. _____ The tuberculin reaction is a <u>type I</u> hypersensitivity.
5. _____ Graft-versus-host disease can follow a bone marrow <u>isograft</u>.

Matching

Match the immune system complication in the first column with the types of hypersensitivities in the second column. Choices may be used more than once or not at all.

1. _____ Acute anaphylaxis
2. _____ Allergic contact dermatitis
3. _____ Systemic lupus erythematosus
4. _____ Allograft rejection
5. _____ AIDS
6. _____ Graft-versus-host disease
7. _____ Milk allergy
8. _____ Farmer's lung
9. _____ Asthma
10. _____ Hay fever

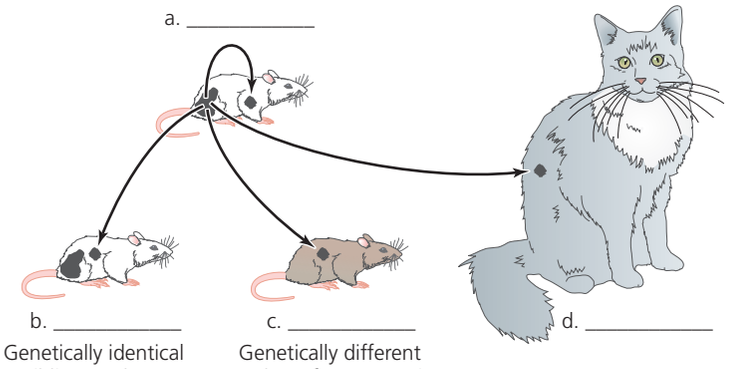
A. Type I hypersensitivity
B. Type II hypersensitivity
C. Type III hypersensitivity
D. Type IV hypersensitivity
E. Not a hypersensitivity

Short Answer

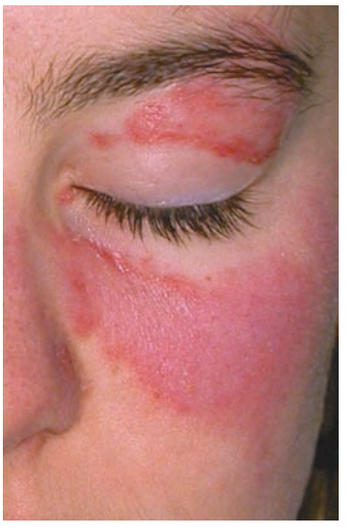
1. Why is AIDS more accurately termed a "syndrome" rather than a mere disease?
2. Why is a child born to an Rh+ mother not susceptible to Rh-related hemolytic disease of the newborn?
3. Why is a person who produces a large amount of IgE more likely to experience anaphylactic shock than a person who instead produces a large amount of IgG?
4. Contrast autografts, isografts, allografts, and xenografts.
5. Compare and contrast the functions of four classes of immunosuppressive drugs.

Visualize It!

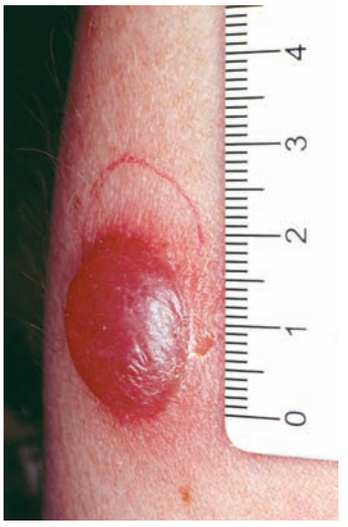
1. Label the four types of grafts on the figure below.



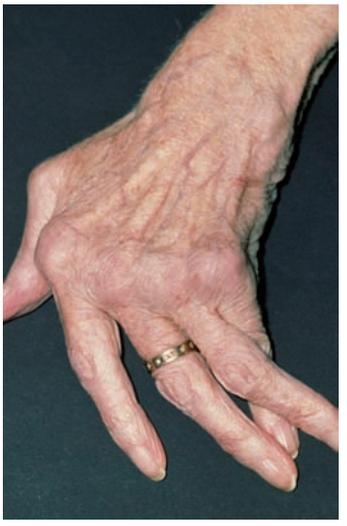
2. Identify the type of hypersensitivity reaction in each photo.



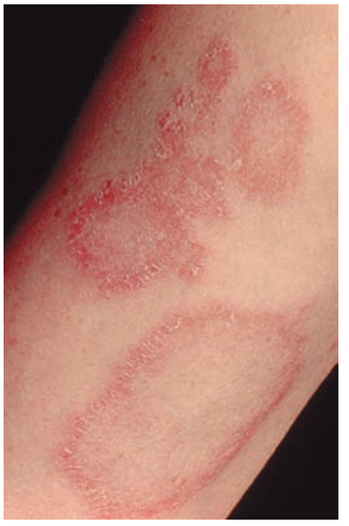
a. _____



b. _____



c. _____



d. _____

Critical Thinking

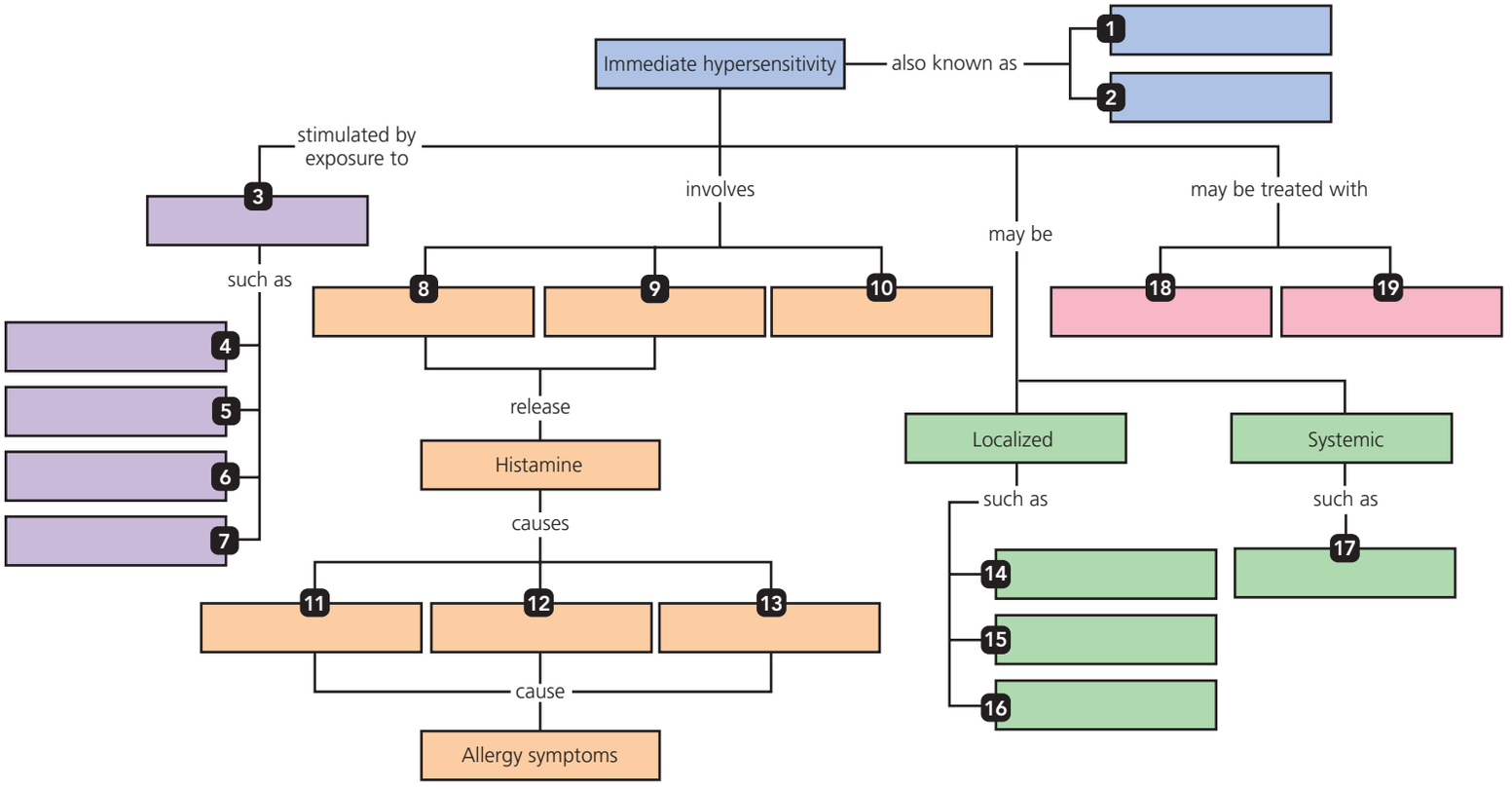
1. What possible advantages might an individual gain from making IgE?
2. Why can't physicians use skin tests similar to the tuberculin reaction to diagnose other bacterial diseases?
3. In both Graves' disease and juvenile onset diabetes mellitus, autoantibodies are directed against cytoplasmic membrane receptors. Speculate on the clinical consequences of an autoimmune response to estrogen receptors.
4. In general, people with B cell defects acquire numerous bacterial infections, whereas those with T cell defects get viral diseases. Explain why this is so.
5. What types of illnesses cause death in patients with combined immunodeficiencies or AIDS?
6. Because of the severe shortage of organ donors for transplants, many scientists are examining the possibility of using organs from nonhuman species such as pigs. What special clinical problems might be encountered when these xenografts are used?
7. Why do the blisters of positive tuberculin reactions resemble the blisters of poison ivy?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes immediate hypersensitivity. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Allergens
Anaphylactic shock
Anaphylaxis
Antihistamine
Asthma
Basophils
Bee venom
Dust mites
Epinephrine
Hay fever
IgE
Increased vascular permeability
Mast cells
Peanuts
Pollen
Smooth muscle contraction
Type I hypersensitivity
Urticaria
Vasodilation



19 Pathogenic Gram-Positive Bacteria

We are all familiar with **acne**, the common skin disorder characterized by pimples and other blemishes. But did you know that acne is typically caused by a **Gram-positive bacterium** called *Propionibacterium acnes*? *P. acnes* grows in the sebaceous (oil) glands of the skin. Teenagers are especially prone to developing acne because the hormonal changes of **adolescence** can trigger the production of excess oil, stimulating bacterial growth. The bacteria secrete chemicals that attract the body's **leukocytes**, which phagocytize the bacteria and trigger inflammation. Pus-filled pimples result when lymphocytes and dead bacteria clog the skin's pores.

In this chapter we will learn more about *P. acnes* and about other medically important **Gram-positive pathogens**, including *Staphylococcus, Streptococcus, Bacillus*, and *Clostridium*. A general characteristic of Gram-positive pathogens is that the disease symptoms they cause often result from the **toxins** they secrete.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Gram-positive *Propionibacterium acnes* is a major cause of teenagers' acne.

In this chapter we explore the major Gram-positive bacterial pathogens in more detail. Gram-positive bacteria stain purple when Gram stained and generally fall within the phylum Firmicutes. We will discuss the major pathogens of this group.

Taxonomists currently group Gram-positive bacteria into two major groups: low G + C Gram-positive bacteria and high G + C Gram-positive bacteria. As the names indicate, these classifications are based on the content of guanine-cytosine nucleotide base pairs versus adenine-thymine nucleotide base pairs in these organisms' DNA. Low G + C Gram-positive bacteria include three genera of pathogenic spherical cells (cocci): *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, and *Enterococcus;* three genera of pathogenic rod-shaped cells (bacilli): *Bacillus*, *Clostridium*, and *Listeria;* and the *mycoplasmas*, a group of bacteria that lack cell walls. Mycoplasmas have historically been classified as Gram-negative bacteria because they stain pink when Gram stained. However, studies of their nucleotide sequences have revealed that they are genetically more similar to low G + C Gram-positive bacteria.

The high G + C Gram-positive pathogens include rod-shaped genera *Corynebacterium*, *Mycobacterium*, and *Propionibacterium* and the filamentous, fungus-like *Nocardia* and *Actinomyces*.

We begin our discussion of Gram-positive bacteria with *Staphylococcus*.

Staphylococcus

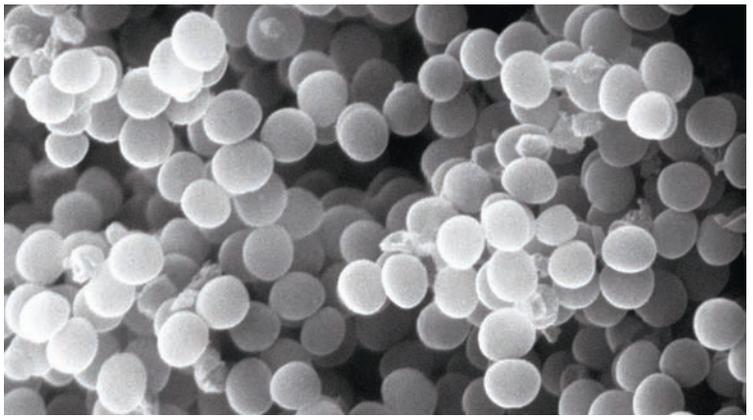
Bacteria in the genus *Staphylococcus* (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs) are living and reproducing on almost every square inch of your skin right now. They are normal members of every human's microbiota, which usually go unnoticed. However, they can be opportunistic pathogens, causing minor to life-threatening diseases.

Structure and Physiology

Learning Outcome

19.1 Contrast the virulence of *S. aureus* with that of *S. epidermidis* in humans.

Staphylococcus[1] is a genus of Gram-positive, facultatively anaerobic prokaryotes whose spherical cells are typically clustered in grapelike arrangements **(Figure 19.1)**. This arrangement results from two characteristics of cell division: cell divisions occur in successively different planes, and daughter cells remain attached to one another. Staphylococcal cells are 0.5–1.0 µm in diameter, nonmotile, and salt tolerant—they are capable of growing in media that are up to 10% NaCl, which explains how they tolerate the salt deposited on human skin by sweat glands. Additionally, they are tolerant of desiccation, radiation, and heat (up to 60°C for 30 minutes), allowing them to survive on environmental surfaces in addition to skin. Further, *Staphylococcus* synthesizes catalase—a characteristic that distinguishes this genus from other low G + C Gram-positive cocci.



▲ **Figure 19.1** ***Staphylococcus.*** Gram-positive cells appear in grapelike clusters.

Two species are commonly associated with staphylococcal diseases in humans:

- *Staphylococcus aureus*[2] (o´rē-ŭs) is the more virulent, producing a variety of disease conditions and symptoms depending on the site of infection.
- *Staphylococcus epidermidis* (e-pi-der-mid´is), as its name suggests, is a part of the normal microbiota of human skin, but it is an opportunistic pathogen in immunocompromised patients or when introduced into the body via intravenous catheters or on prosthetic devices, such as artificial heart valves.

Pathogenicity

Learning Outcome

19.2 Discuss the structural and enzymatic features and toxins of *Staphylococcus* that enable it to be pathogenic.

What are commonly called "staph" infections result when staphylococci breach the body's physical barriers (skin or mucous membranes); entry of only a few hundred bacteria can ultimately result in disease. The pathogenicity of *Staphylococcus* results from three features: structures that enable it to evade phagocytosis, the production of enzymes, and the production of toxins.

Structural Defenses Against Phagocytosis

The cells of *S. aureus* are uniformly coated with a protein, called *protein A*, that interferes with antibody immune responses by binding to the class G antibodies (IgG). Antibodies are opsonins—they enhance phagocytosis—precisely because phagocytic cells have receptors for antibody stems; therefore, protein A, by binding stems, effectively inhibits opsonization. Protein A also inhibits

[1]From Greek *staphle*, meaning "small bunch of grapes," and *kokkos*, meaning "a berry."
[2]Latin for "golden," for the golden color of its colonies growing on the surface of a solid medium.

the complement cascade, which is triggered by antibody molecules bound to antigen (see Figure 15.9).

The outer surfaces of most pathogenic strains of *S. aureus* also contain *bound coagulase,* an enzyme that converts the soluble blood protein fibrinogen into long, insoluble fibrin molecules, which are threads that form blood clots around the bacteria. Fibrin clots in effect hide the bacteria from phagocytic cells.

Both *S. aureus* and *S. epidermidis* also evade the body's defenses by synthesizing loosely organized polysaccharide slime layers (sometimes called capsules) that inhibit chemotaxis of and endocytosis by leukocytes, particularly neutrophils. The slime layer also facilitates attachment of *Staphylococcus* to artificial surfaces, such as catheters, shunts, artificial heart valves, and synthetic joints.

In summary, protein A, bound coagulase, and a slime layer allow *S. aureus* to evade the body's defenses, whereas *S. epidermidis* relies almost exclusively on its slime layer.

Enzymes

Staphylococci produce a number of enzymes that contribute to their survival and pathogenicity:

- *Cell-free coagulase,* like bound coagulase, triggers blood clotting. Cell-free coagulase does not act on fibrin directly but instead combines with a blood protein before becoming enzymatic and converting fibrinogen to fibrin threads. Only *S. aureus* synthesizes coagulase; *S. epidermidis* and other species of *Staphylococcus* are coagulase negative.
- *Hyaluronidase* breaks down hyaluronic acid, which is a major component of the matrix between cells. Hyaluronidase, found in 90% of *S. aureus* strains, enables the bacteria to spread between cells throughout the body.
- *Staphylokinase* (produced by *S. aureus*) dissolves fibrin threads in blood clots, allowing *S. aureus* to free itself from clots. Thus, *Staphylococcus* can escape the immune system by enclosing itself in a fibrin clot (via coagulase), and then, when space and nutrients become limiting, it can digest its way out of the clot with staphylokinase and spread to new locations.
- *Lipases* digest lipids, allowing staphylococci to grow on the surface of the skin and in cutaneous oil glands. All staphylococci produce lipases.
- *β-lactamase (penicillinase),* now present in over 90% of *S. aureus* strains, breaks down penicillin. Though β-lactamase plays no role in inhibiting the natural defenses of the body, it does allow the bacteria to survive treatment with beta-lactam antimicrobial drugs, such as penicillin and cephalosporin.

Toxins

Staphylococcus aureus and (less frequently) *S. epidermidis* also possess several toxins that contribute to their pathogenicity, including the following:

- *Cytolytic toxins.* So-called alpha, beta, gamma, and delta toxins are proteins, coded by chromosomal genes, that disrupt the cytoplasmic membranes of a variety of cells, including leukocytes (white blood cells). Leukocidin is a fifth cytolytic toxin that lyses leukocytes specifically, providing *Staphylococcus* with some protection against phagocytosis.
- *Exfoliative toxins.* Each of two distinct proteins causes the dissolution of epidermal *desmosomes* (intercellular bridge proteins that hold adjoining cytoplasmic membranes together), causing the patient's skin cells to separate from each other and slough off the body.
- *Toxic-shock syndrome (TSS) toxin.* This protein causes toxic-shock syndrome (discussed shortly).
- *Enterotoxins.* These five proteins (designated A through E) stimulate the intestinal muscle contractions, nausea, and intense vomiting associated with staphylococcal food poisoning. Enterotoxins are heat stable, remaining active at 100°C for up to 30 minutes.

TABLE 19.1 A Comparison of the Virulence Factors of Staphylococcal Species

	S. aureus	*S. epidermidis*
Protein A	+	–
Coagulase	+	–
Catalase	+	+
Hyaluronidase	+	–
Staphylokinase	+	–
Lipase	+	+
β-Lactamase (penicillinase)	+	–

Table 19.1 compares and contrasts the virulence factors of *S. aureus* and *S. epidermidis.*

Epidemiology

Staphylococcus epidermidis is ubiquitous on human skin, whereas *S. aureus* is commonly found only on moist skin folds. Both species also grow in the upper respiratory, gastrointestinal, and urogenital tracts of humans. Both bacteria are transmitted through direct contact between individuals as well as via fomites such as contaminated clothing, bedsheets, and medical instruments; as a result, proper hand-washing and aseptic techniques are essential in preventing their transfer in health care settings.

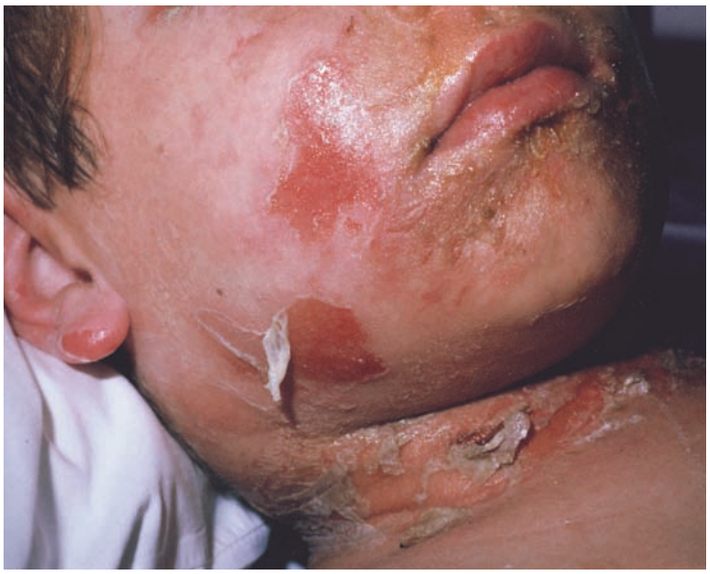
Staphylococcal Diseases

Learning Outcomes

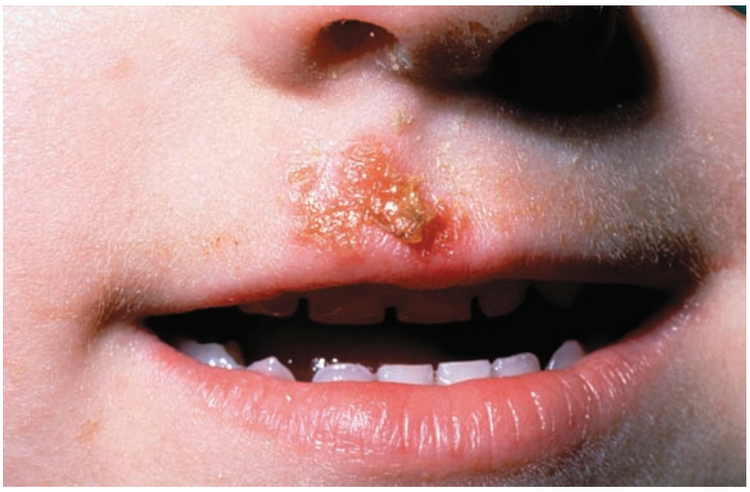
19.3 Describe the symptoms and prevention of staphylococcal food poisoning.

19.4 List and describe six pyogenic lesions caused by *Staphylococcus aureus.*

19.5 Discuss five systemic and potentially fatal diseases caused by *Staphylococcus.*



▲ **Figure 19.2 Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome.** Exfoliative toxin, produced by some strains of *Staphylococcus aureus*, causes reddened patches of the epidermis to slough off.



▲ **Figure 19.3 Impetigo.** Reddened patches of skin become pus-filled vesicles that eventually crust over.

Staphylococcus causes a variety of medical problems, depending on the site of infection, the immune state of its host, and the toxins and enzymes a particular species or strain secretes. Staphylococcal syndromes and diseases can be categorized as noninvasive, cutaneous, and systemic diseases.

Noninvasive Disease

Staphylococcus aureus is one of the more common causes of food poisoning (more specifically, this is food intoxication because disease is caused by enterotoxin-contaminated food rather than by invasion of bacteria). Commonly affected foods include processed meats, custard pastries, potato salad, and ice cream that have been contaminated with bacteria from human skin. (In *S. aureus* food poisoning, unlike many other forms of food poisoning, animals are not involved.) The food must remain at room temperature or warmer for several hours for the bacteria to grow, reproduce, and secrete toxin. Warming or reheating inoculated food does not inactivate enterotoxins, which are heat-stable, although heating does kill the bacteria. Food contaminated with staphylococci does not appear or taste unusual.

Symptoms, which include nausea, severe vomiting, diarrhea, headache, sweating, and abdominal pain, usually appear within four hours following ingestion. Consumed staphylococci do not continue to produce toxins, so the course of the disease is rapid, usually lasting 24 hours or less.

Cutaneous Diseases

Staphylococcus aureus causes localized *pyogenic*[3] (pī-ō-jen´ik) lesions. **Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome** is a reddening of the skin that typically begins near the mouth, spreads over the entire body, and is followed by large blisters that contain clear fluid lacking bacteria or white blood cells—consistent with the fact that the disease is caused by a toxin released by bacteria growing on the skin. Within two days the affected outer layer of skin (epidermis) peels off in sheets, as if it had been dipped into boiling water **(Figure 19.2)**. The seriousness of scalded skin syndrome results from secondary bacterial infections in denuded areas.

Small, flattened, red patches on the face and limbs, particularly of children whose immune systems are not fully developed, characterize **impetigo** (im-pe-tī´gō; **Figure 19.3**). The patches develop into pus-filled vesicles that eventually crust over. The pus is filled with bacteria and white blood cells, which distinguishes impetigo from scalded skin syndrome. *S. aureus* acting alone causes about 80% of impetigo cases; about 20% of cases also involve streptococci.

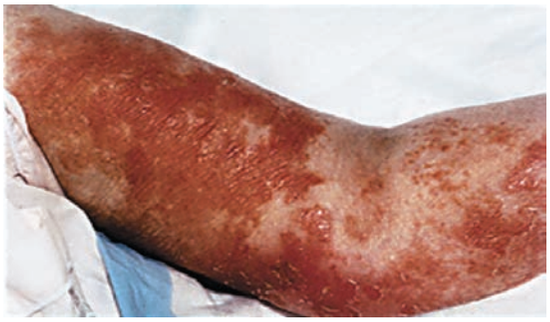
Folliculitis (fo-lik´ū-lī´tis) is an infection of a hair follicle in which the base of the follicle becomes red, swollen, and pus filled. When this condition occurs at the base of an eyelid, it is called a **sty.** A **furuncle** (fū´rŭng-kl) or boil is a large, painful, raised nodular extension of folliculitis into surrounding tissue. When several furuncles coalesce, they form a **carbuncle** (kar´bŭng-kl), which extends deeper into the tissues, triggering the fever and chills that are characteristic of innate immunity. As staphylococci spread into underlying tissues, multiple organs and systems can become involved.

Systemic Diseases

Staphylococcus aureus and, to a lesser extent, *S. epidermidis* cause a wide variety of potentially fatal systemic infections when they are introduced into deeper tissues of the body, including the blood, heart, lungs, and bones.

Toxic-Shock Syndrome (Non-streptococcal) When strains of *Staphylococcus* that produce TSS toxin grow in a wound or in an abraded vagina, the toxin can be absorbed into the blood

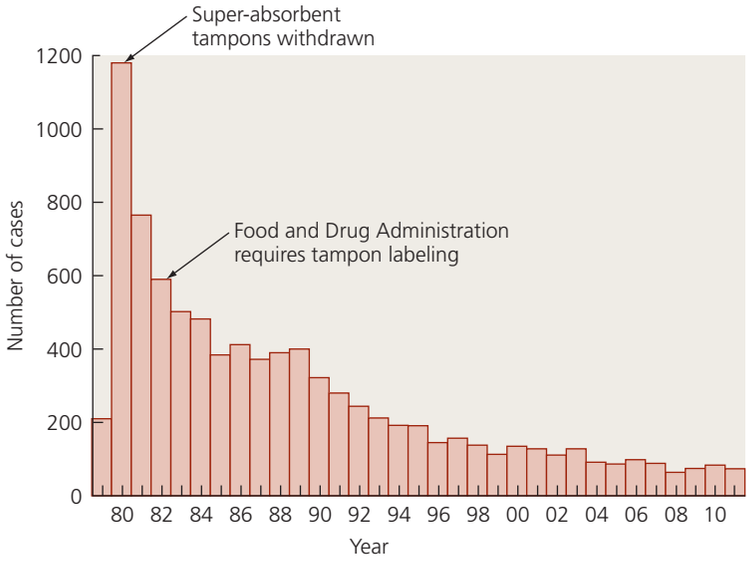
[3]From Greek *pyon*, meaning "pus," and *genein*, meaning "to produce."



▲ **Figure 19.4 Toxic-shock syndrome (TSS).** Fatal infections involve not only red rash (as shown here) but internal organs as well.

and cause **toxic-shock syndrome, non-streptococcal (TSS),** characterized by fever, vomiting, red rash, extremely low blood pressure, and loss of sheets of skin **(Figure 19.4)**. TSS is fatal to 5% of patients when their blood pressure falls so low that the brain, heart, and other vital organs have an inadequate supply of oxygen—a condition known as *shock*.

Toxic-shock syndrome occurs in both males and females, but in 1980 epidemiologists noted an epidemic of TSS among menstruating women. Researchers subsequently discovered that *S. aureus* grows exceedingly well in superabsorbent tampons, especially when the tampon remains in place for a prolonged period. As a result of the withdrawal of this type of tampon from the market, plus government-mandated reduction in the absorbency of all tampons and mandatory inclusion of educational information concerning the risks of TSS on every package of tampons, the number of cases of TSS declined rapidly **(Figure 19.5)**.



▲ **Figure 19.5 The incidence of toxic-shock syndrome in the United States since 1979.** *Use of what product puts women at increased risk of TSS?*

Figure 19.5 *Use of tampons is a risk factor for TSS.*

Bacteremia *S. aureus* is a common cause of **bacteremia** (bak-tēr-ē´mē-ă), the presence of bacteria in the blood. After staphylococci enter the blood from a site of infection, they travel to other organs of the body, which may become infected. Furuncles, vaginal infections, infected surgical wounds, and contaminated medical devices such as intravascular catheters have all been implicated in cases of bacteremia. Nosocomial (hospital-acquired) infections account for about half of all cases of staphylococcal bacteremia. Physicians fail to identify the initial site of infection in about a third of patients, but it is presumed to be an innocuous skin infection.

Endocarditis *S. aureus* may attack the lining of the heart (including its valves), producing a condition called **endocarditis**[4] (en´dō-kar-dī´tis). Typically, patients with endocarditis have nonspecific, flulike symptoms, but their condition quickly deteriorates as the amount of blood pumped from the heart drops precipitously. About 50% of patients with endocarditis do not survive.

Pneumonia and Empyema *Staphylococcus* in the blood can invade the lungs, causing **pneumonia** (noo-mō´nē-ă)—an inflammation of the lungs in which the alveoli (air sacs) and bronchioles (smallest airways) become filled with fluid. In 10% of patients with staphylococcal pneumonia, this fluid is pus—a condition known as **empyema**[5] (em-pī-ē´mă).

Osteomyelitis When *Staphylococcus* invades a bone, either through a traumatic wound or via the blood during bacteremia, it causes **osteomyelitis**[6] (os´tē-ō-mī-e-lī´tis)—inflammation of the bone marrow and the surrounding bone. Osteomyelitis is characterized by pain in the infected bone accompanied by high fever. In children the disease typically occurs in the growing regions of long bones, which are areas with well-developed blood supplies. In adults, osteomyelitis is more commonly seen in vertebrae.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Learning Outcomes

19.6 Describe how staphylococcal species are distinguished from one another during diagnosis.

19.7 Discuss briefly the history of staphylococcal resistance to antimicrobial drugs.

Physicians diagnose staphylococcal infection by detecting grapelike arrangements of Gram-positive bacteria isolated from pus, blood, or other fluids. If staphylococci isolated from an infection are able to clot blood, then they are coagulase-positive *S. aureus*. Coagulase-negative staphylococci are usually *S. epidermidis*, which is a normal part of the microbiota of the skin; their presence in a clinical sample is usually not indicative of a staphylococcal infection.

[4]From Greek *endon*, meaning "within;" *kardia*, meaning "heart;" and *itis*, meaning "inflammation."
[5]From Greek *en*, meaning "in," and *pyon*, meaning "pus."
[6]From Greek *osteon*, meaning "bone;" *myelos*, meaning "marrow;" and *itis*, meaning "inflammation."

During the latter half of the 20th century, genes for β-lactamase, which convey resistance to natural penicillin, spread among *Staphylococcus* species. Thus, 90% of staphylococci were susceptible to penicillin in 1945, but only 5% are susceptible today. For this reason, the semisynthetic form of penicillin—methicillin, which is not inactivated by β-lactamase—became the drug of choice for staphylococcal infections. Unfortunately, **methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)** has emerged as a major problem, initially in health care settings but now increasingly in day care centers, high school locker rooms, and prisons. In fact, more people die from MRSA than from HIV in the United States.

MRSA is also resistant to many other common antimicrobial drugs, including penicillin, macrolides, aminoglycosides, and cephalosporin; as a result, *vancomycin* has been used to treat MRSA infections. Physicians are very concerned about the increasing prevalence of **vancomycin-resistant *staphylococcus aureus* (VRSA).**

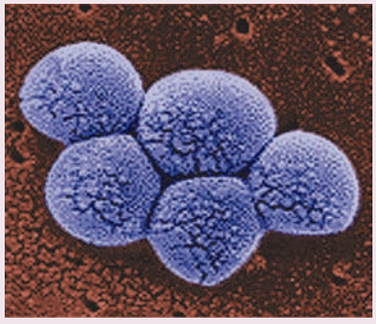
Clinical practice has shown how crucial it is that abscesses be drained of pus and cleansed if subsequent antibiotic therapy is to be effective. Systemic infections such as endocarditis and osteomyelitis require long-term therapy with antimicrobial drugs.

Because strains of *Staphylococcus* resistant to antimicrobial agents have become more common, especially in hospitals, it is imperative that health care workers take precautions against introducing the bacterium into patients. Of course, given that *Staphylococcus* is ubiquitous on human skin, staphylococcal infection cannot be eliminated. Fortunately, because a large inoculum is required to establish an infection, proper cleansing of wounds and surgical openings, attention to aseptic use of catheters and indwelling needles, and the appropriate use of antiseptics will prevent infections in most healthy patients. Health care workers with staphylococcal infections may be barred from delivery rooms, nurseries, and operating rooms. The most important measure for protecting against nosocomial infection is frequent hand washing.

Scientists are currently testing the efficacy and safety of a vaccine that has proven effective in protecting dialysis patients from *S. aureus* infections. Such immunization, if it proves safe and effective in preventing other infections, may have a significant effect on nosocomial disease. It would be especially good news for health care providers who are battling resistant strains of *Staphylococcus.*

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A FATAL CASE OF METHICILLIN-RESISTANT *S. AUREUS*



Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus.*

A five-year-old girl was admitted to the hospital with a temperature of 103°F and pain in her right hip. After pus was surgically drained from the hip joint, she was treated with a semisynthetic cephalosporin. Her physicians changed the antibiotic regimen after 24-hour cultures of blood and pus revealed the presence of MRSA. On the third day, she suffered respiratory failure and empyema and was placed on mechanical ventilation. She died from pulmonary hemorrhage and pneumonia after five weeks of hospitalization. The girl had been previously healthy with no recent hospitalizations. She had skinned her knee while learning to ride a bicycle two days before admittance to the hospital.

1. How might the girl have been infected?
2. How did her hip joint become infected?
3. Describe the series of diseases she suffered.
4. What was likely the second antibiotic she received?

Streptococcus

Learning Outcomes

19.8 Describe the classification of streptococcal strains.

The genus *Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs) is a diverse assemblage of Gram-positive cocci 0.5–1.2 μm in diameter and arranged in pairs or chains. They are catalase negative (unlike *Staphylococcus*), although they do synthesize peroxidase and thus are facultatively anaerobic.

Researchers differentiate species of *Streptococcus* using several different, overlapping schemes, including serological classification based on the reactions of antibodies to specific bacterial antigens, type of hemolysis (alpha, beta, or gamma; see Figure 6.13), cell arrangement, and physiological properties as revealed by biochemical tests. In this chapter we will largely use a serological classification scheme, developed by Rebecca Lancefield (1895–1981), that divides streptococci into serotype groups based on the bacteria's antigens (known, appropriately, as Lancefield antigens). The serotypes in this scheme include Lancefield groups A through H and K through V. Whereas the more significant streptococcal pathogens of humans are in groups A and B, two other significant streptococcal pathogens of humans lack Lancefield antigens. We begin our survey of the streptococci with group A *Streptococcus.*

Group A *Streptococcus:* *Streptococcus pyogenes*

Learning Outcomes

19.9 Describe two structures in *Streptococcus pyogenes* that enable this organism to survive the body's defenses.

19.10 Identify four enzymes and a type of toxin that facilitate the spread of *S. pyogenes* in the body.

19.11 Describe seven diseases caused by *S. pyogenes* and the treatments available.
19.12 Identify the conditions under which group A *Streptococcus* causes disease.

Group A *Streptococcus,* which is synonymously known as *S. pyogenes* (pī-oj´en-ēz), is a coccus that forms white colonies 1–2 mm in diameter surrounded by a large zone of beta-hemolysis after 24 hours on blood agar plates. Pathogenic strains of this species often form capsules. The following sections discuss the pathogenesis and epidemiology of this species, as well as the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of the diseases it causes.

Pathogenicity

Strains of *Streptococcus pyogenes* have a number of structures, enzymes, and toxins that enable them to survive as pathogens in the body.

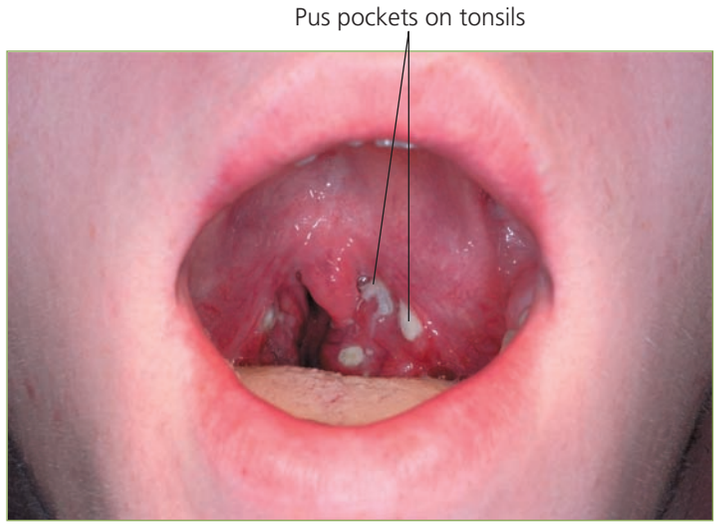
Two main structural features enable cells of *S. pyogenes* to evade phagocytosis:

- *M protein.* A membrane protein called *M protein* destabilizes complement, thereby interfering with opsonization and lysis.
- *Hyaluronic acid capsule.* Because hyaluronic acid is normally found in the body, white blood cells may ignore bacteria "camouflaged" by this type of capsule.

Researchers have identified two *streptokinases* that break down blood clots, presumably enabling group A *Streptococcus* to rapidly spread through infected and damaged tissues. Similarly, four distinct *deoxyribonucleases* depolymerize DNA that has been released from dead cells in abscesses, reducing the firmness of the pus surrounding the bacteria and facilitating bacterial spread. *C5a peptidase* breaks down the complement protein C5a (see Figure 15.9), which acts as a chemotactic factor. Thus, *S. pyogenes* decreases the movement of white blood cells into a site of infection. Finally, hyaluronidase facilitates the spread of streptococci through tissues by breaking down hyaluronic acid.

Group A *Streptococcus* secretes three distinct *pyrogenic toxins*[7] (pī-rō-jen´ik) that stimulate macrophages and helper T lymphocytes to release cytokines that in turn stimulate fever, a widespread rash, and shock. Because these toxins cause blood capillaries near the surface to dilate, producing a red rash, some scientists call them *erythrogenic*[8] *toxins* (e-rith-rō-jen´ik). The genes for these toxins are carried on temperate bacteriophages, so only lysogenized bacteria—bacteria in which a virus has become part of the bacterial chromosome—secrete the toxins. Fever-stimulating *pyrogenic* toxins should not be confused with pus-producing *pyogenic* toxins.

S. pyogenes also produces two different, membrane-bound proteins, called *streptolysins,* which lyse red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets; thus, these proteins interfere with the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood, immunity, and blood clotting. After group A *Streptococcus* has been phagocytized, it releases streptolysins into the cytoplasm of the phagocyte, causing lysosomes to release their contents, which lyses the phagocyte and releases the bacteria.



▲ **Figure 19.6** **Pharyngitis.**

Epidemiology

Group A *Streptococcus* frequently infects the pharynx or skin, but the resulting abscesses are usually temporary, lasting only until adaptive immune responses against bacterial antigens (particularly M protein and streptolysins) clear the pathogens. Typically, *Streptococcus pyogenes* causes disease only when normal competing microbiota are depleted, when a large inoculum enables the streptococci to gain a rapid foothold before antibodies are formed against them, or when adaptive immunity is impaired. Following colonization of the skin or a mucous membrane, *S. pyogenes* can invade deeper tissues and organs through a break in such barriers. People spread *S. pyogenes* among themselves via respiratory droplets, especially under crowded conditions, such as those in classrooms and day care centers.

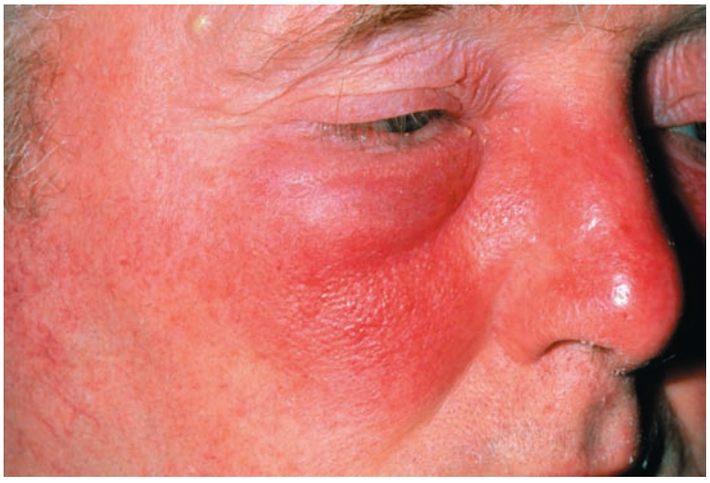
Before the discovery of antimicrobials, a major cause of human disease was group A streptococcal infection, which claimed the lives of millions. Because it is sensitive to antimicrobial drugs, its significance as a pathogen has declined, but group A streptococci still sicken thousands of Americans annually.

Group A Streptococcal Diseases

Group A *Streptococcus* causes a number of diseases, depending on the site of infection, the strain of bacteria, and the immune responses of the patient.

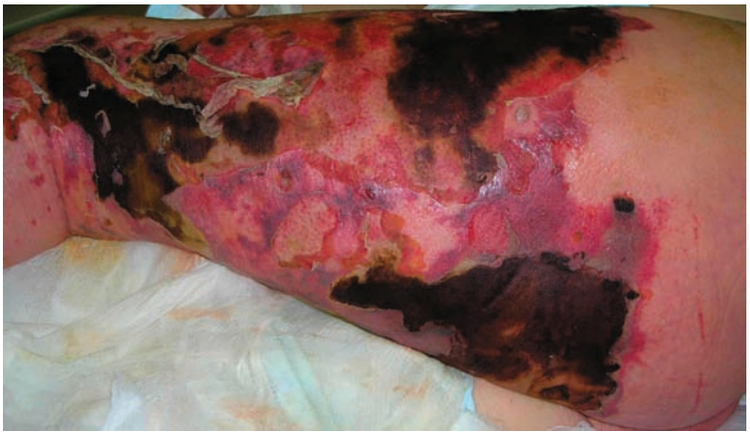
Pharyngitis A sore throat caused by streptococci, commonly known as "strep throat," is a kind of **pharyngitis** (far-in-jī´tis)—inflammation of the pharynx—that is accompanied by fever, malaise,[9] and headache. The back of the pharynx typically appears red, with swollen lymph nodes and *purulent* (pus-containing) abscesses covering the tonsils **(Figure 19.6)**. Some microbiologists

[7]From Greek *pyr,* meaning "fire," and *genein,* meaning "to produce."
[8]From Greek *erythros,* meaning "red," and *genein,* meaning "to produce."
[9]French, meaning "discomfort."



▲ **Figure 19.7** **Erysipelas.** The localized, pus-filled lesions are caused by group A streptococci *(Streptococcus pyogenes). What is the meaning of the word* pyogenes?

Figure 19.7 Pyogenes means pus producing.



▲ **Figure 19.8** **Necrotizing fasciitis.** So-called flesh-eating group A streptococci *(Streptococcus pyogenes)* cause this condition.

estimate that only 50% of patients diagnosed with strep throat actually have it; the rest have viral pharyngitis. Given that the symptoms and signs for the two diseases are identical, a sure diagnosis requires bacteriological or serological tests. Correct diagnosis is essential because bacterial pharyngitis is treatable with antibacterial drugs, which of course have no effect on viral pharyngitis.

Scarlet Fever The disease known as **scarlet fever** or as *scarlatina* often accompanies streptococcal pharyngitis when the infection involves a lysogenized strain of *S. pyogenes.* After one to two days of pharyngitis, pyrogenic toxins released by the streptococci trigger a diffuse rash that typically begins on the chest and spreads across the body. The tongue usually becomes strawberry red. The rash disappears after about a week and is followed by sloughing of the skin.

Pyoderma and Erysipelas A **pyoderma** (pī-ō-der´mă) is a confined, pus-producing lesion that usually occurs on the exposed skin of the face, arms, or legs. One cause is group A streptococcal infection following direct contact with an infected person or contaminated fomites. This condition is also known as *impetigo* because of its similar appearance to the staphylococcal disease of the same name. After a pus-filled lesion breaks open, it forms a yellowish crust. This stage is highly contagious, and scratching may convey bacteria to the surrounding skin, spreading the lesions.

When a streptococcal infection also involves surrounding lymph nodes and triggers pain and inflammation, the condition is called **erysipelas**[10] (er-i-sip´ĕ-las; **Figure 19.7**). Erysipelas occurs most commonly on the faces of children.

Streptococcal Toxic-Shock Syndrome Group A streptococci can spread, albeit rarely, from an initial site of infection, particularly in patients infected with HIV or suffering with cancer, heart disease, pulmonary disease, or diabetes mellitus. Such spread leads to bacteremia and severe multisystem infections producing **streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (STSS).** Patients experience inflammation at sites of infection as well as pain, fever, chills, malaise, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. These signs and symptoms are followed by increased pain, organ failure, shock—and over 40% of patients die.

Necrotizing Fasciitis Another serious disease caused by *S. pyogenes* is **necrotizing**[11] **fasciitis** (ne´kro-tī-zing fas-ē-ī´tis), sensationalized by the news media as "flesh-eating bacteria." In this disease, streptococci enter the body through breaks in the skin, secrete enzymes and toxins that destroy tissues, and eventually destroy muscle and fat tissue **(Figure 19.8)**. The bacteria spread deep within the body along the *fascia,* which are fibrous sheets of connective tissue surrounding muscles and binding them to one another—hence the word *fasciitis* in the disease's name. Necrotizing fasciitis also involves *toxemia* (toxins in the blood), failure of many organs, and death of more than 50% of patients.

Rheumatic Fever A complication of untreated *S. pyogenes* pharyngitis is **rheumatic fever** (rū-mat´ik), in which inflammation leads to damage of heart valves and muscle. Though the exact cause of the damage is unknown, it appears that rheumatic fever is not caused directly by *Streptococcus* but instead is an autoimmune response in which antibodies directed against streptococcal antigens cross-react with heart antigens. Damage to the heart valves may be so extensive that they must be replaced when the patient reaches middle age. Rheumatic fever was much more prevalent before the advent of antimicrobial drugs.

Glomerulonephritis For an undetermined reason, antibodies bound to the antigens of some strains of group A *Streptococcus* are not removed from circulation but instead accumulate in the *glomeruli* (small blood vessels) of the kidneys' *nephrons* (filtering units).

[10]From Greek *erythros*, meaning "red," and *pella*, meaning "skin."
[11]From Greek *nekros*, meaning "corpse."

The result is **glomerulonephritis** (glō-mār´ū-lō-nef-rī´tis)—inflammation of the glomeruli and nephrons—which obstructs blood flow through the kidneys and leads to hypertension (high blood pressure) and low urine output. Blood and proteins are often secreted in the urine. Young patients usually recover fully from glomerulonephritis, but progressive and irreversible kidney damage may occur in adults.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Because *Streptococcus* is not a normal member of the microbiota of the skin, the observation of Gram-positive bacteria in short chains or pairs in cutaneous specimens can provide a rapid preliminary diagnosis of pyoderma, erysipelas, and necrotizing fasciitis. In contrast, streptococci are normally in the pharynx, so their presence in a respiratory sample is of little diagnostic value; instead, physicians use an immunological test called a *rapid strep test* that identifies the presence of group A streptococcal antigens.

Penicillin is very effective against *S. pyogenes.* Erythromycin or cephalosporin is used to treat penicillin-sensitive patients. *S. pyogenes* is also susceptible to the topical antimicrobial bacitracin—a characteristic that distinguishes it from group B *Streptococcus* (discussed shortly). Necrotizing fasciitis must be treated with aggressive surgical removal of nonviable tissue and infecting bacteria. Because rheumatic fever and glomerulonephritis are the result of an immune response against group A streptococci, they cannot be treated directly; instead, the underlying infection must be arrested.

Antibodies against M protein provide long-term protection against *S. pyogenes.* However, antibodies directed against the M protein of one strain provide no protection against other strains; this explains why a person can have strep throat more than once.

Group B *Streptococcus: Streptococcus agalactiae*

Learning Outcomes

19.13 Contrast group B *Streptococcus* with group A *Streptococcus* in terms of structure.

19.14 Discuss the epidemiology, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of infections with *Streptococcus agalactiae.*

Group B *Streptococcus,* or *S. agalactiae* (a-ga-lak´tē-ī), is a Gram-positive coccus, 0.6–1.2 µm in diameter, that divides to form chains. Like group A *Streptococcus, S. agalactiae* is beta-hemolytic, but it can be distinguished from the former by three qualities: It has group-specific, polysaccharide cell wall antigens; it forms buttery colonies that are 2–3 mm in diameter and have a small zone of beta-hemolysis after 24 hours of growth on blood agar; and it is bacitracin resistant.

Pathogenicity

Even though *S. agalactiae* forms capsules, antibodies target its capsular antigens, so the capsules are not protective. For this reason *S. agalactiae* has a predilection for newborns who have not yet formed type-specific antibodies and whose mothers are uninfected (and so do not provide passive immunity across the placenta or in milk).

Group B streptococci produce enzymes—proteases (that catabolize protein), hemolysins (that lyse red blood cells), deoxyribonuclease, and hyaluronidase—that probably play a role in causing disease, though such a role has not been proven.

Epidemiology

Group B streptococci normally colonize the lower gastrointestinal (GI), genital, and urinary tracts. Diseases in adults primarily follow wound infections and childbirth, though group B *Streptococcus* is emerging as a significant pathogen in the elderly.

Sixty percent of newborns are inoculated with group B streptococcal strains either during passage through the birth canal or by health care personnel. Such infections do not cause disease when maternal antibodies have crossed the placenta, but mortality rates can exceed 50% in children of uninfected mothers. Infections in newborns less than one week old cause *early-onset disease;* infections occurring in infants one week to three months of age cause *late-onset disease.*

Diseases

Even though microbiologists initially described *Streptococcus agalactiae* as the cause of *puerperal*[12] *fever* (pyu-er´per-ăl; also called *childbirth fever*) in women, today the bacterium is most often associated with neonatal bacteremia, meningitis, and pneumonia, at least one of which occurs in approximately 3 of every 1000 newborns. Mortality has been reduced to about 5% as a result of rapid diagnosis and supportive care, but about 25% of infants surviving group B streptococcal meningitis have permanent neurological damage, including blindness, deafness, or severe mental retardation. Immunocompromised older patients are also at risk from group B streptococcal infections, and about 25% of them die from streptococcal diseases.

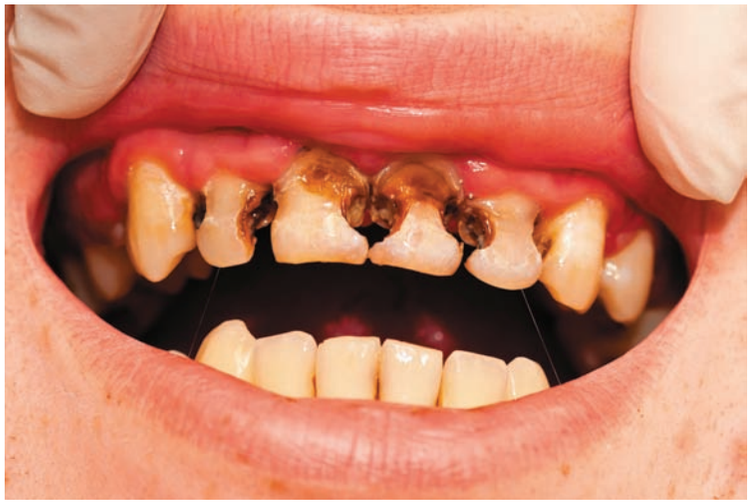
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Medical laboratory technologists identify group B streptococcal infections by means of ELISA tests utilizing antibodies directed against the bacteria's distinctive cell wall polysaccharides. Samples of clinical specimens can also be incubated in blood media containing the antimicrobial drug bacitracin, which inhibits the growth of other beta-hemolytic bacteria.

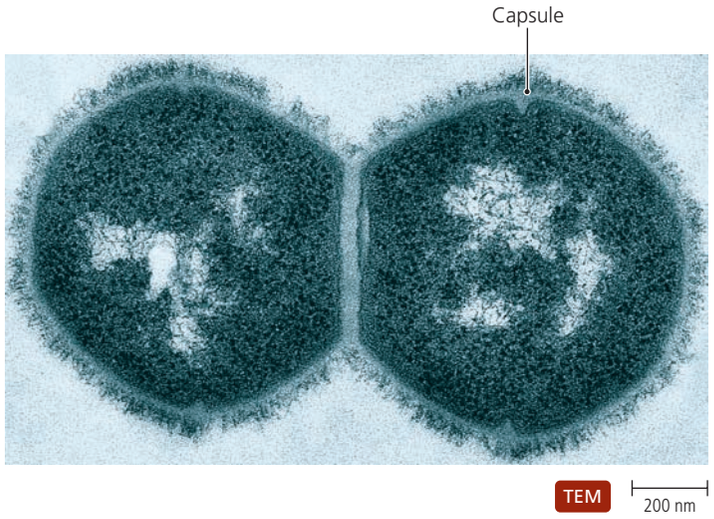
Penicillin or ampicillin work against group B *Streptococcus,* though some strains tolerate concentrations of the drugs more than 10 times greater than that needed to inhibit group A *Streptococcus.* For this reason, physicians may prescribe vancomycin instead of a penicillin.

The Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recommends prophylactic administration of penicillin at birth to children whose mothers' urinary tracts are colonized with group B streptococci. Implementation of this guideline in 1996 reduced early-onset disease morbidity and mortality by 70% by 2001. Additionally, physicians can immunize women against group B streptococci, preventing infection of future children.

[12] From Latin *puer,* meaning "child," and *pario,* meaning "to bring forth."



▲ **Figure 19.9 Dental caries.** Viridans streptococci and other bacteria in dental biofilms secrete acid that dissolves tooth enamel.



▲ **Figure 19.10** ***Streptococcus pneumoniae.*** Cells of this most common cause of pneumonia are paired and covered with a capsule. *What is pneumonia?*

Figure 19.10 Pneumonia is inflammation of the lungs, resulting in fluid buildup.

Other Beta-Hemolytic Streptococci

Learning Outcome

19.15 Contrast *Streptococcus equisimilis* and *S. anginosus* in terms of polysaccharide composition, diseases caused, and treatment.

Streptococcus equisimilis (ek-wi-si´mil-is) and *S. anginosus* (an-ji-nō´sŭs) are the only other pathogenic beta-hemolytic streptococci. Although members of both species typically have group C polysaccharides, some strains of *S. anginosus* have group F or group G antigens instead—an example of the confusing status of the classification of the streptococci.

S. equisimilis causes pharyngitis (and occasionally glomerulonephritis), but, unlike group A streptococci, these cases of pharyngitis never lead to rheumatic fever. *S. anginosus* produces pus-containing abscesses. Penicillin is effective against both species.

Alpha-Hemolytic Streptococci: The Viridans Group

Learning Outcome

19.16 Identify the normal sites of viridans streptococci in the human body and list three serious diseases they cause.

Many alpha-hemolytic streptococci lack group-specific carbohydrates, and thus they are not part of any Lancefield group. Instead, microbiologists classify them as the **viridans**[13] **streptococci** (vir´i-danz strep´tō-kok´sī) because many of them produce a green pigment when grown on blood media. The taxonomic relationships of these microorganisms are poorly understood; European and American microbiologists do not always agree about the names assigned to species, and some microbiologists place these microbes in a separate genus: *Abiotrophia* (ā´bī-ō-trō´fē-ă). Some of the names given by Americans to viridans streptococci are *S. mitis* (mĭ´tis) and *S. sanguis* (sang´wis). Members of the group are alpha-hemolytic and susceptible to penicillin.

Viridans streptococci normally inhabit the mouth, pharynx, GI tract, genital tract, and urinary tract of humans. They are opportunists that produce pus-filled abdominal lesions, and are one cause of dental **caries**[14] (kār´ēz; cavities). They stick to dental surfaces via an insoluble polysaccharide called *dextran,* which they produce from glucose. Large quantities of dextran allow viridans streptococci and other bacteria to colonize the enamel of teeth, forming biofilms known as *dental plaque* (see Figure 14.6). Streptococci and other bacteria in the biofilm produce acids that dissolve tooth enamel **(Figure 19.9)**. Viridans streptococci are not highly invasive, entering the blood only through surgical wounds and lacerations of the gums, including undetectable cuts produced by chewing hard candy, brushing the teeth, or dental procedures. Once in the blood, they can cause meningitis and endocarditis.

Streptococcus pneumoniae

Learning Outcomes

19.17 Describe how the structure of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* affects its pathogenicity.

19.18 Describe the route of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* through the body, describing the chemical and physical properties that allow it to cause pneumonia.

19.19 Discuss the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of pneumococcal diseases.

Louis Pasteur discovered *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (nū-mō´nē-ī) in pneumonia patients in 1881. The bacterium is a Gram-positive coccus, 0.5–1.2 µm in diameter, that forms short chains or, more commonly, pairs **(Figure 19.10)**. In fact, it was once classified in its own genus, "Diplococcus." Ninety-two different strains of

[13]From Latin *viridis,* meaning "green."
[14]Latin, meaning "dry rot."

S. pneumoniae, collectively called *pneumococci,* are known to infect humans.

Colonies of *S. pneumoniae* grown for 24 hours are 1–3 mm in diameter, round, mucoid, unpigmented, and dimpled in the middle because of the death of older cells. Colonies are alpha-hemolytic on blood agar when grown aerobically and beta-hemolytic when grown anaerobically. This bacterium lacks Lancefield antigens but does incorporate a species-specific teichoic acid into its cell wall.

Pathogenicity

Streptococcus pneumoniae is a normal member of the pharyngeal microbiota that can colonize the lungs, sinuses, and middle ear. Even though microbiologists have studied the pneumococci extensively—the entire genomes of more than 10 strains have been sequenced—they still do not fully understand their pathogenicity; nevertheless, certain structural and chemical properties are known to be required.

The cells of virulent strains of *S. pneumoniae* are surrounded by a polysaccharide capsule, which protects them from digestion after endocytosis. A capsule is required for virulence; unencapsulated strains are avirulent. Microbiologists distinguish 90 unique serotypes based on differences in the antigenic properties of the capsules among various strains.

In addition, cells of *S. pneumoniae* insert into their cell walls a chemical called *phosphorylcholine.* Its binding to receptors on cells in the lungs, in the meninges, and blood vessel walls stimulates the cells to engulf the bacteria. Together, the polysaccharide capsule and phosphorylcholine enable pneumococci to "hide" inside body cells. *S. pneumoniae* can then pass across these cells into the blood and brain.

Pathogenic pneumococci secrete *protein adhesin,* a little-understood protein that mediates binding of the cells to epithelial cells of the pharynx. From there the bacteria enter the lungs.

The body limits migration of bacteria into the lungs by binding the microbes with the active sites of secretory IgA. The rest of the antibody molecule then binds to mucus, trapping the bacteria, where they can be swept from the airways by the action of ciliated epithelium. The bacterium counteracts this defense by secreting *secretory IgA protease,* which destroys IgA, and *pneumolysin,* which binds to cholesterol in the cytoplasmic membranes of ciliated epithelial cells, producing transmembrane pores that result in the lysis of the cells. Pneumolysin also suppresses the digestion of endocytized bacteria by interfering with the action of lysosomes.

Epidemiology

Streptococcus pneumoniae grows in the mouths and pharynges of 75% of humans, without causing harm; however, when pneumococci travel to the lungs, they cause disease. Typically, the incidence of pneumococcal disease is highest in children and the elderly, groups whose immune responses are not fully active.

Pneumococcal Diseases

Streptococcus pneumoniae causes a variety of diseases, which we explore next.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Streptococcus pneumoniae

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Firmicutes, class "Bacilli," order Bacillales, family Streptococcaceae

Other names: Pneumococcus, formerly "Diplococcus pneumoniae"

Cell morphology and arrangement: Cocci in pairs

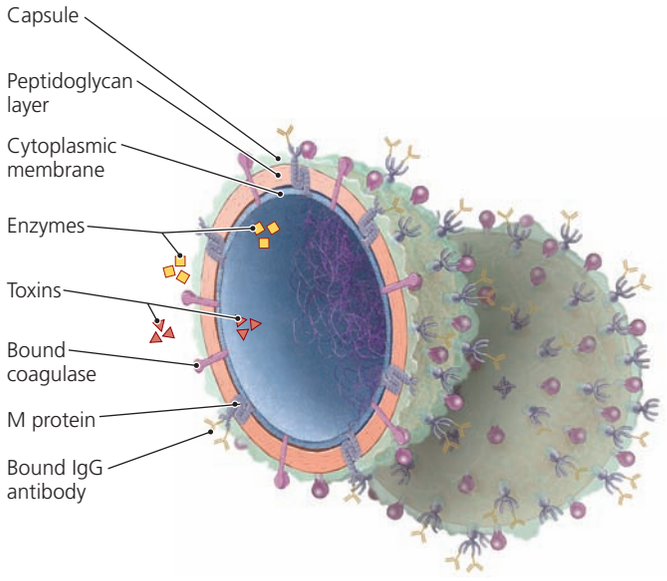
Gram reaction: Positive

Virulence factors: Polysaccharide capsule, phosphorylcholine, protein adhesin, secretory IgA protease, pneumolysin

Diseases caused: Pneumococcal pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis media, bacteremia, endocarditis, pneumococcal meningitis

Treatment for diseases: Penicillin, cephalosporin, erythromycin, chloramphenicol

Prevention of disease: Vaccine against 23 common strains is long lasting in adults with unimpaired immunity



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Pneumococcal Pneumonia The most prevalent disease caused by *S. pneumoniae* is **pneumococcal pneumonia** (nū-mō´nē-ă), which constitutes about 85% of all cases of pneumonia. The disease results when pneumococci are inhaled from the pharynx into lungs damaged either by a previous viral disease, such as influenza or measles, or by other conditions, such as alcoholism, congestive heart failure, or diabetes mellitus. As the bacteria multiply in the alveoli (air sacs), they damage the alveolar lining, allowing fluid, red blood cells, and leukocytes to enter the lungs. The leukocytes attack *Streptococcus,* in the process secreting inflammatory and pyrogenic chemicals. The onset of clinical symptoms is abrupt and includes a fever of 39–41°C and

severe shaking chills. Most patients have a productive cough, slightly bloody sputum, and chest pain.

Sinusitis and Otitis Media Following viral infections of the upper respiratory tract, *S. pneumoniae* can also invade the sinuses and middle ear, where it causes **sinusitis** (sī-nŭ-sī´tis; inflammation of the nasal sinuses) and **otitis media** (ō-tī´tis mē´dē-ă; inflammation of the middle ear). Pus production and inflammation in these cavities create pressure and pain. Sinusitis occurs in patients of all ages. Otitis media is more prevalent in children because their narrow auditory tubes connecting the pharynx with the middle ears are nearly horizontal, which facilitates the flow of infected fluid from the pharynx into the middle ears. The tubes become wider and more vertical when the shape of the head changes as children grow, making infection less likely in adults.

Bacteremia and Endocarditis *Streptococcus pneumoniae* can enter the blood either through lacerations (as might result from vigorous tooth brushing, chewing hard foods, or dental procedures) or as a result of tissue damage in the lungs during pneumonia. Bacteria generally do not enter the blood during sinusitis or otitis media. As with *Staphylococcus, S. pneumoniae* can colonize the lining of the heart, causing endocarditis. The heart valves, once involved, are typically destroyed.

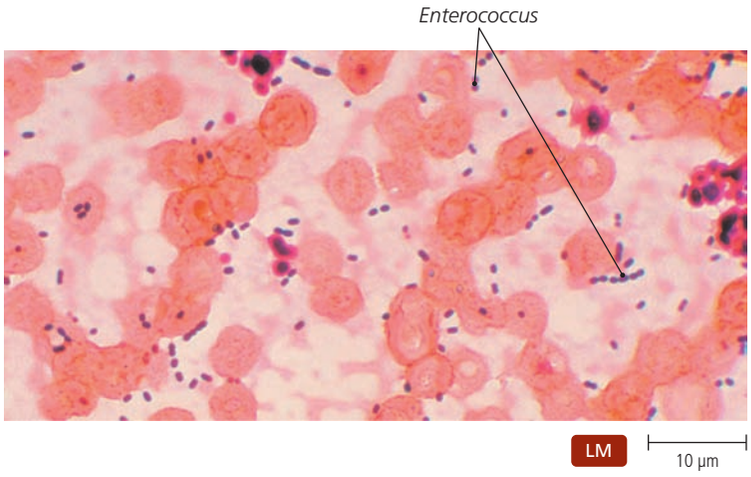
Pneumococcal Meningitis Pneumococci can spread to the meninges via bacteremia, during sinusitis or otitis media, or following head or neck surgery or trauma that opens a passage between the pharynx and the subarachnoid space of the meninges. The mortality rate of pneumococcal meningitis, which is primarily a disease of children, is up to 20 times that of meningitis caused by other microorganisms.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Medical laboratory technologists can quickly identify pneumococci in Gram stains of sputum smears and confirm their presence with the *Quellung*[15] *reaction,* in which anticapsular antibodies cause the capsule to swell. Antibodies against particular strains trigger Quellung reactions only against those strains. Antibody agglutination tests can also be used to identify specific strains. Culture of sputum samples is often difficult because pneumococci have fastidious nutritional requirements and cultures are often overgrown by normal oral microbiota. *S. pneumoniae* is sensitive to most antimicrobial drugs; therefore, samples for culture must be obtained before antibacterial therapy has begun. Laboratory technologists can distinguish pneumococcal colonies from other colonies of alpha-hemolytic strains by adding a drop of bile to a colony. Bile triggers chemicals present in pneumococci to lyse the cells, dissolving the colony in just a few minutes.

Penicillin has long been the drug of choice against *S. pneumoniae,* though penicillin-resistant strains have emerged in the last decade; about a third of pneumococcal isolates are now resistant. Cephalosporin, erythromycin, and chloramphenicol are also effective treatments.

Prevention of pneumococcal diseases is focused on a vaccine made from purified capsular material from the 23 most common pathogenic strains. The vaccine is immunogenic and long lasting in normal adults, but unfortunately it is not as efficacious in patients at greatest risk, such as the elderly, young children, and AIDS patients.



▲ **Figure 19.11** ***Enterococcus faecalis* in lung tissue.** The Gram-positive cells are arranged in pairs and short chains but (unlike *S. pneumoniae*) lack capsules. *Why are these bacteria called "enterococci"?*

Figure 19.11 *They are called "enterococci" because they are spherical bacteria that live in the intestinal tracts of animals.*

Enterococcus

Learning Outcome

19.20 Identify two species of *Enterococcus* and describe their pathogenicity and the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of their diseases.

We have discussed two Gram-positive cocci that are pathogenic in humans: catalase-positive *Staphylococcus* and catalase-negative *Streptococcus.* Now we turn our attention to another genus of Gram-positive, catalase-negative cocci—*Enterococcus* (enter-ō-kokŭs), so named because all enterococci are spherical and live in the intestinal tracts of animals. Lancefield classified enterococci with group D streptococci, but they differ significantly from other members of group D in that *Enterococcus* is unencapsulated, produces gas during fermentation of sugars, and is typically nonhemolytic (i.e., gamma-hemolytic). Because of these and other differences, microbiologists now classify *Enterococcus* as a separate genus.

Structure and Physiology

Enterococci form short chains and pairs; they do not form capsules **(Figure 19.11)**. Enterococci grow at temperatures up to 45°C, at pH as high as 9.6, and in 6.5% NaCl or 40% bile salt broths—all conditions that severely inhibit the growth of *Streptococcus.*

[15]German, meaning "swelling."

The two species that are significant pathogens of humans are *E. faecalis*[16] (fē-kăʹlis) and *E. faecium*[17] (fēʹsē-ŭm).

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Diseases

E. faecalis is ubiquitous in the human colon. *E. faecium* is found less often. Because both species lack structural and chemical elements that make them virulent, they are rarely pathogenic in the intestinal tract. Nevertheless, they do have the ability to adhere to human epithelial cells, and they secrete *bacteriocins*, which are chemicals that inhibit the growth of other bacteria.

E. faecalis and *E. faecium* can cause serious disease if they are introduced into other parts of the body, such as the lungs, urinary tract, or bloodstream, via poor personal hygiene or intestinal laceration. Enterococci account for about 10% of nosocomial infections and cause bacteremia, endocarditis, and wound infections.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Even though a Gram stain of *Enterococcus* looks similar to one of *S. pneumoniae*, the two genera can be distinguished readily in that *Enterococcus* is not sensitive to bile.

Enterococcal infections are very difficult to treat because strains resistant to frequently used antimicrobials—lactams, aminoglycosides, and vancomycin—are relatively common. This is particularly troublesome in that the genes for antimicrobial resistance occur on plasmids that can be transmitted to other bacteria.

It is difficult to prevent enterococcal infections, particularly in health care settings, where patients' immune systems are weakened. Health care workers should always use good hygiene and aseptic techniques to minimize the transmission of these microorganisms.

Table 19.2 summarizes the features of the major pathogenic, Gram-positive streptococci—*Streptococcus* and *Enterococcus*. Now we turn our attention to the Gram-positive pathogenic bacilli, beginning with the low G + C, endospore-forming genera *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*.

Bacillus

Scientists divide Gram-positive bacilli (rod-shaped cells) into endospore-forming and non-endospore-forming genera. The endospore-forming genera are *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*. In this section we examine *Bacillus anthracis*—one of the 51 species of *Bacillus* and a strict pathogen of animals and humans. The following section discusses *Clostridium*.

Structure, Physiology, and Pathogenicity

Learning Outcome

19.21 Identify the structural features of *Bacillus* that contribute to its pathogenicity.

Bacillus anthracis[18] (ba-silʹŭs an-thrāʹsis) is a large (1 μm × 3 − 5 μm), rod-shaped, facultatively anaerobic, endospore-forming bacterium that normally dwells in soil. Its cells are arranged singly, in pairs, or in chains (Figure 19.12). The tough external coat and the

[16]Latin, meaning "pertaining to feces."
[17]Latin, meaning "of feces."
[18]Greek, meaning "charcoal."

TABLE 19.2 Characteristics of Pathogenic Streptococci

Lancefield Group	Scientific Name	Hemolytic Pattern	Significant Characteristics	Characteristic Diseases
A	*S. pyogenes*	Large zone of beta-hemolysis	1- to 2-mm white colonies on blood agar; bacitracin sensitive	Pharyngitis, scarlet fever, pyoderma, erysipelas, streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome, necrotizing fasciitis, rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis
B	*S. agalactiae*	Small zone of beta-hemolysis	2- to 3-mm buttery colonies on blood agar; bacitracin resistant	Puerperal fever, neonatal bacteremia, meningitis, pneumonia
C	*S. equisimilis*	Large zone of beta-hemolysis	1- to 2-mm white colonies on blood agar	Pharyngitis, glomerulonephritis
C, F, or G	*S. anginosus*	Small zone of beta-hemolysis	1- to 2-mm white colonies on blood agar	Purulent abscess
—	*S. mutans*	Alpha-hemolysis	Viridans group (produce green pigment when grown on blood agar)	Dental caries; rarely bacteremia, meningitis, endocarditis
—	*S. pneumoniae*	Alpha-hemolysis (aerobic); beta-hemolysis (anaerobic)	Diplococci; capsule required for pathogenicity; bile sensitive	Pneumonia, sinusitis, otitis media, bacteremia, endocarditis, meningitis
D	*Enterococcus faecalis, E. faecium*	None (gamma-hemolysis)	Diplococci; no capsule; bile insensitive	Urinary tract infections, bacteremia, endocarditis, wound infections

▲ **Figure 19.12** ***Bacillus anthracis*** **as it appears in tissue.**

internal chemicals of endospores make these structures resistant to harsh environmental conditions, enabling *Bacillus* to survive in the environment for centuries or perhaps even longer. A vegetative (non-endospore) cell of *Bacillus* can survive in the body because it has multiple copies of a plasmid (nonchromosomal DNA) coding for a capsule, which is composed solely of glutamic acid. This capsule inhibits effective phagocytosis by white blood cells.

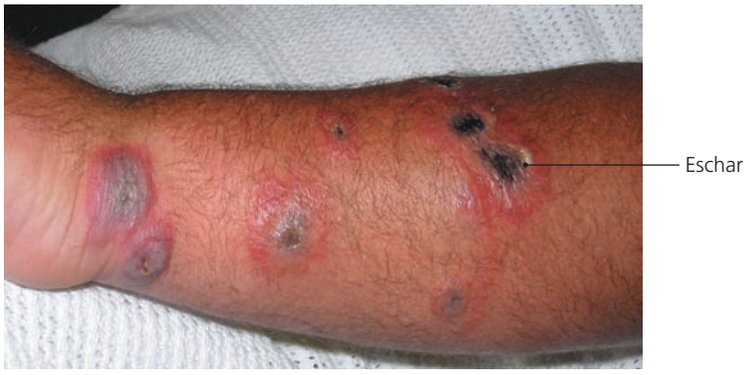
Pathogenic strains of *B. anthracis* cause disease because they contain multiple copies of another plasmid coding for *anthrax toxins*—three distinct polypeptides that work together in a lethal combination. The toxin genes are "turned on" by bicarbonate, a molecule found in blood. Seven copies of one toxin combine to form a protein pore that breaches the cytoplasmic membrane of a host cell. The other two toxins enter the cell through the pore. Once in the cell, the toxins interfere with intracellular signaling, severely affect cellular metabolism, and ultimately cause the cell to undergo apoptosis (programmed cell suicide). Scientists are investigating the precise mechanisms by which the three components of anthrax toxin work in hopes of developing techniques for neutralizing them. Anthrax can be deadly even after treatment, because antimicrobial drugs do not inactivate accumulated anthrax toxin.

Epidemiology

Learning Outcome

19.22 List three methods of transmission of anthrax.

Anthrax is primarily a disease of herbivores; humans contract the disease from infected animals. Anthrax is not normally transmitted from individual to individual but can invade via one of three routes: inhalation of endospores, inoculation of endospores into the body through a break in the skin, or ingestion of endospores. Ingestion anthrax is the normal means of transmission among animals but is rare in humans. In the 25 years between January 1976 and September 2001, only 15 cases of anthrax were reported in the United States; thus, epidemiologists suspected bioterrorism when over a dozen cases of anthrax were reported in New York, Florida, and Washington, D.C., in the fall of 2001.



▲ **Figure 19.13 Cutaneous anthrax.** Black eschars are characteristic of cutaneous anthrax.

Disease

Learning Outcomes

19.23 List and describe three clinical manifestations of *Bacillus anthracis* infections.

19.24 Identify the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of anthrax.

Bacillus anthracis causes only one disease—anthrax—but it can have three clinical manifestations. The first, *gastrointestinal anthrax*, is very rare in humans but is common in animals; it results in intestinal hemorrhaging and eventually death.

Cutaneous anthrax begins when a painless, solid, raised nodule forms on the skin at the site of infection. The cells in the affected area die, and the nodule spreads to form a painless, swollen, black, crusty ulcer called an *eschar* (*es´kar*; **Figure 19.13**). It is from the black color of eschars that anthrax, which means "charcoal" in Greek, gets its name. *B. anthracis* growing in the eschar releases anthrax toxin into the blood, producing toxemia. Untreated cutaneous anthrax is fatal for 20% of patients.

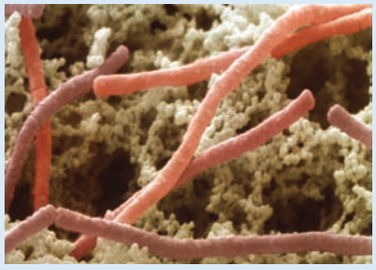
Inhalation anthrax is also rare in humans, as it requires inhalation of airborne endospores. After endospores germinate in the lungs, they secrete toxins that are absorbed into the bloodstream, producing toxemia. Early signs and symptoms include fatigue, malaise, fever, aches, and cough—all of which are common to many pulmonary diseases. In a later phase, victims of inhalation anthrax have a high fever and labored breathing due to localized swelling, and they go into shock. Historically, mortality rates have been high—approaching 100% even when treated—perhaps in part because the disease is often not suspected until it is irreversible and because antimicrobial drugs do not neutralize toxins released during the course of the disease. During the bioterrorism attack of 2001, physicians learned that early and aggressive treatment of inhalation anthrax with antimicrobial drugs accompanied by persistent drainage of fluid from around the lungs increased the survival rate to greater than 50%.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Large, nonmotile, Gram-positive bacilli in clinical samples from the lungs or skin are diagnostic. As mentioned previously, endospores are not typically seen in clinical samples but are produced after a few days in culture.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

MICROBES TO THE RESCUE?



***Lactobacillus*, a potential probiotic.**

The digestive tract is home to viruses, bacteria, protozoa, fungi, and parasitic helminths. The normal microbiota help protect the body by competing with pathogens for nutrients and space. Some research indicates that consumption of living microbes in food or dietary supplements may change the normal microbiota of the digestive tract. Such microbes may help ward off bowel problems such as irritable bowel syndrome, reduce incidence of yeast infection, alleviate symptoms of gastroenteritis, and shorten the duration of colds by 36 hours. Probiotics, as such microbes are called, are often bacteria used to ferment food, particularly species of *Lactobacillus* or the related genus *Bifidobacterium*. Despite anecdotal evidence and partial support from laboratory studies for the benefits of probiotics, it is unlikely that consumers can successfully change the makeup of their intestinal microbiota or that probiotics are really helpful.

Penicillin, erythromycin, chloramphenicol, and many other antimicrobial agents are effective against *B. anthracis*.

Prevention of naturally occurring disease in humans requires control of the disease in animals. Farmers in areas where anthrax is endemic must vaccinate their stock and bury or burn the carcasses of infected animals. Anthrax vaccine has proven effective and safe for humans but requires six doses over 18 months plus annual boosters. Researchers are developing an alternative vaccine.

Clostridium

Learning Outcome

19.25 Characterize the four major species of *Clostridium*.

Clostridium (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) is an anaerobic, Gram-positive, endospore-forming bacillus that is ubiquitous in soil, water, sewage, and the gastrointestinal tracts of animals and humans. Several species are significant human pathogens. Pathogenicity is due in great part to the ability of endospores to survive harsh conditions and to the secretion by vegetative cells of potent *histolytic toxins, enterotoxins* (toxins affecting the GI tract), and *neurotoxins*. The most common pathogenic clostridia are *C. perfringens, C. difficile, C. botulinum,* and *C. tetani*.

Clostridium perfringens

Learning Outcomes

19.26 Identify the mechanisms accounting for the pathogenesis of *Clostridium perfringens* infections.

19.27 Describe the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of *Clostridium perfringens* infections.

Clostridium perfringens (per-frin'jens), the clostridium most frequently isolated from clinical specimens, is a large, almost rectangular, Gram-positive bacillus. Although it is nonmotile, its rapid growth enables it to proliferate across the surface of laboratory media, resembling the spread of motile bacteria. Endospores are rarely observed either in clinical samples or in culture. *C. perfringens* type A, known by its specific antigens, is the most virulent serotype.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

C. perfringens produces 11 toxins that lyse erythrocytes and leukocytes, increase vascular permeability, reduce blood pressure, and kill cells, resulting in irreversible damage. Because *C. perfringens* commonly grows in the digestive tracts of animals and humans, it is nearly ubiquitous in fecally contaminated soil and water.

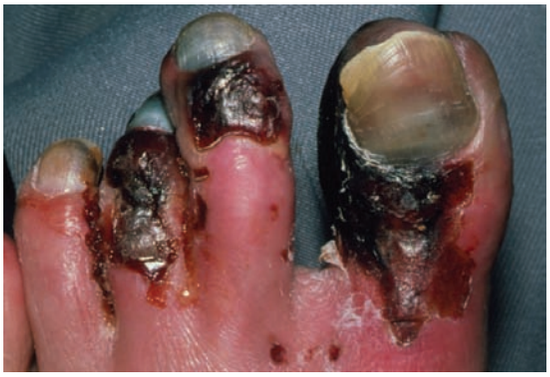
The severity of diseases caused by *C. perfringens* ranges from mild food poisoning to life-threatening illness. Clostridial food poisoning is a relatively benign disease characterized by abdominal cramps and watery diarrhea but not fever, nausea, or vomiting. It lasts for less than 24 hours. Such food poisoning typically results from the ingestion of large numbers (10^8 or more) of *C. perfringens* type A in contaminated meat.

C. perfringens is not invasive, but when some traumatic event (such as a surgical incision, a puncture, a gunshot wound, crushing trauma, or a compound fracture) introduces endospores into the body, they can germinate in the anaerobic environment of deep tissues. The immediate result is intense pain at the initial site of infection as clostridial toxins induce swelling and tissue death. The rapidly reproducing bacteria can then spread into the surrounding tissue, causing the death of muscle and connective tissue that is typically accompanied by the production of abundant, foul-smelling, gaseous, bacterial waste products—hence the common name for the disease: **gas gangrene**[19] **(Figure 19.14)**. Shock, kidney failure, and death can follow, often within a week of infection.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Medical laboratory technologists show that *Clostridium* is involved in food poisoning by demonstrating more than 10^5 bacteria in a

[19] From Greek *gangraina*, meaning "an eating sore."



▲ **Figure 19.14 Gas gangrene, a life-threatening disease caused by *Clostridium perfringens*.** The blackening is the result of the death of muscle tissue (myonecrosis), whereas the "bubbling" appearance results from the production of gaseous waste products by the bacteria.

gram of food or 10^6 cells per gram of feces. The appearance of gas gangrene is usually diagnostic by itself, though the detection of large Gram-positive bacilli is confirmatory.

Clostridial food poisoning is typically self-limiting—the pathogens and their toxins are eliminated in the resulting watery stool. In contrast, physicians must quickly and aggressively intervene to stop the spread of necrosis in gas gangrene by surgically removing dead tissue and administering large doses of antitoxin and penicillin. Oxygen applied under pressure may also be effective. Despite all therapeutic care, mortality of gas gangrene exceeds 40%.

It is difficult to prevent infections of *C. perfringens* because the organism is so common; however, refrigeration of food prevents toxin formation and reduces the chance of clostridial food poisoning. Alternatively, reheating contaminated food destroys any toxin that has formed. Given that gas gangrene occurs when endospores are introduced deep in the tissues, proper cleaning of wounds can prevent many cases.

Clostridium difficile

Learning Outcomes

19.28 Discuss the role of antimicrobial drugs in the development of gastrointestinal diseases caused by *Clostridium difficile*.

19.29 Discuss the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of *C. difficile* infections.

Clostridium difficile (di-fi´sēl) is a motile, anaerobic intestinal bacterium with cells about 1.5 µm in width and 3–6.5 µm in length that form oval, subterminal endospores. The bacterium produces two toxins (called toxins A and B) and the enzyme hyaluronidase.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

Although so-called *C. diff.* is a common member of the intestinal microbiota, it can be an opportunistic pathogen in patients treated with broad-spectrum antimicrobial drugs, such as penicillin and cephalosporin. In such patients, the normal proportions of different bacteria in the colon can be significantly altered. In many cases the hardy endospores of *C. difficile* germinate, enabling it to become the predominant intestinal bacterium, such that the toxins and enzymes it produces cause hemorrhagic death of the intestinal wall. In minor infections these lesions result in a recurrent, persistent, explosive diarrhea; however, in more serious cases, *C. difficile* produces life-threatening **pseudomembranous colitis,** in which large sections of the colon wall slough off, potentially perforating the colon, and leading to massive internal infection by fecal bacteria and eventual death. *C. diff.* is a major cause of death of elderly patients.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Diarrhea in patients undergoing antimicrobial therapy is suggestive of *C. difficile* infection, and laboratory microbiologists confirm the diagnosis either by isolating the organism from feces using selective media or by demonstrating the presence of the toxins via immunoassays.

Discontinuation of the implicated antimicrobial drug, which allows the microbiota to return to normal, usually resolves minor infections with *C. difficile.* More serious cases are treated with either oral vancomycin or metronidazole, though endospores survive such therapy in about a third of patients, causing a relapse. Further treatment of relapses with either drug is often successful.

C. difficile is frequently found in hospitals, and hospital personnel can easily transmit it between patients. Proper hygiene—particularly frequent hand washing—is critical for limiting nosocomial infections. Endospores survive ordinary floor cleaners; bleach is effective in killing them.

Clostridium botulinum

Learning Outcomes

19.30 Contrast the three manifestations of botulism.

19.31 Describe the use of mice in the diagnosis of botulism.

19.32 Describe three treatments of botulism and explain how to prevent it.

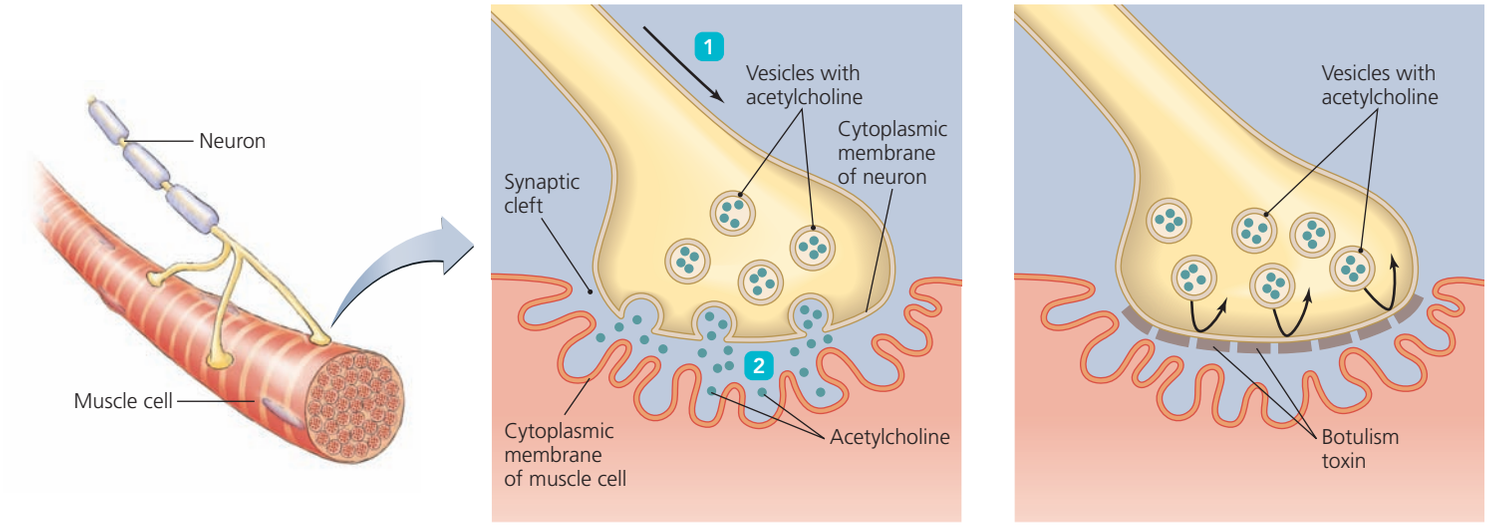
Clostridium botulinum[20] (bo-tū-lī´num) is an anaerobic, endospore-forming, Gram-positive bacillus that is common in soil and water worldwide. Its endospores survive improper canning of food, germinating to produce vegetative cells that grow and release into the jar or can a powerful neurotoxin that causes **botulism** (bot´ū-lizm).

Pathogenesis

Strains of *C. botulinum* produce one of seven antigenically distinct *botulism toxins* (A through G). Some scientists consider botulism toxins among the deadliest toxins known—30 grams of pure toxin would be enough to kill every person in the United States. Botulism toxins are extremely potent; even a small taste of contaminated food can cause full-blown illness or death.

Each of the seven toxins is a quaternary protein composed of a single neurologically active polypeptide associated with one or more nontoxic polypeptides that prevent the inactivation

[20] From Latin *botulus*, meaning "sausage."



(a) Normal neuromuscular junction

(b) Neuromuscular junction with botulism toxin present

▲ Figure 19.15 How botulism toxin acts at a neuromuscular junction. **(a)** Normal function at a neuromuscular junction. 1 A nerve impulse from the central nervous system causes vesicles filled with acetylcholine to fuse with the neuron's cytoplasmic membrane, 2 releasing acetylcholine into the synaptic cleft. The binding of acetylcholine to receptors on the muscle cell's cytoplasmic membrane stimulates a series of events that result in contraction of the muscle cell (not shown). **(b)** Botulism toxin blocks the fusion of the vesicles with the neuron's cytoplasmic membrane, thereby preventing secretion of the neurotransmitter into the synaptic cleft; as a result, the muscle cell does not contract.

of the toxin by stomach acid. To understand the action of botulism toxins, we must consider the way the nervous system controls muscle contractions.

Each of the many ends of a motor neuron (nerve cell that stimulates the body) forms an intimate connection with a muscle cell at a *neuromuscular junction;* however, the two cells do not actually touch—a small gap, called a *synaptic cleft,* remains between them **(Figure 19.15a)**. The neuron stores a chemical, called *acetylcholine,* in vesicles near its terminal cytoplasmic membrane. Acetylcholine is one of a family of chemicals called neurotransmitters that mediate communication among neurons and between neurons and other cells.

When a signal arrives at the terminal end of a motor neuron 1, the vesicles containing acetylcholine fuse with the neuron's cytoplasmic membrane, releasing acetylcholine into the synaptic cleft 2. Molecules of acetylcholine then diffuse across the cleft and bind to receptors on the cytoplasmic membrane of the muscle cell. The binding of acetylcholine to muscle cell receptors triggers a series of events inside the muscle cell that results in muscle contraction (not shown).

Botulism toxins act by binding irreversibly to neuronal cytoplasmic membranes, thereby preventing the fusion of vesicles and secretion of acetylcholine into the synaptic cleft **(Figure 19.15b)**. Thus, these neurotoxins prevent muscular contraction, resulting in a *flaccid paralysis.*

Epidemiology and Diseases

Botulism is not an infection but instead an *intoxication* (poisoning) caused by botulism toxin. Clinicians recognize three manifestations of botulism: foodborne botulism, infant botulism, and wound botulism. Fortunately, all three are rare.

About 25 cases of foodborne botulism occur in the United States each year, usually within one to two days following the consumption of toxin in home-canned foods or preserved fish. Contaminated food may not appear or smell spoiled. Patients are initially weak and dizzy and have blurred vision, dry mouth, dilated pupils, constipation, and abdominal pain, followed by a progressive paralysis that eventually affects the diaphragm. The patient remains mentally alert throughout the ordeal. In fatal cases, death results from the inability of muscles of respiration to effect inhalation; victims asphyxiate because they cannot inhale. Survivors recover very slowly as their nerve cells grow new endings over the course of months or years, replacing the debilitated termini.

In contrast to foodborne botulism, infant botulism results from the ingestion of endospores, which then germinate and colonize the infant's gastrointestinal (GI) tract. Infants are susceptible to colonization because their GI tracts do not have a sufficient number of benign microbiota to compete with *C. botulinum* for nutrients and space. Botulism toxin is absorbed into the blood from an infected infant's GI tract, causing nonspecific symptoms: crying, constipation, and "failure to thrive." Fortunately, paralysis and death are rare. About 100 cases of infant botulism are reported in the United States each year, though some cases reported as sudden infant death syndrome may be fatal infant botulism instead.

Wound botulism usually begins four or more days following the contamination of a wound by endospores. With the exception that the gastrointestinal system is not typically involved, the symptoms are the same as those of foodborne botulism.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Clostridium botulinum

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Firmicutes, class "Clostridia," order Clostridiales, family Clostridiaceae

Cell morphology and arrangement: Endospore-forming bacillus

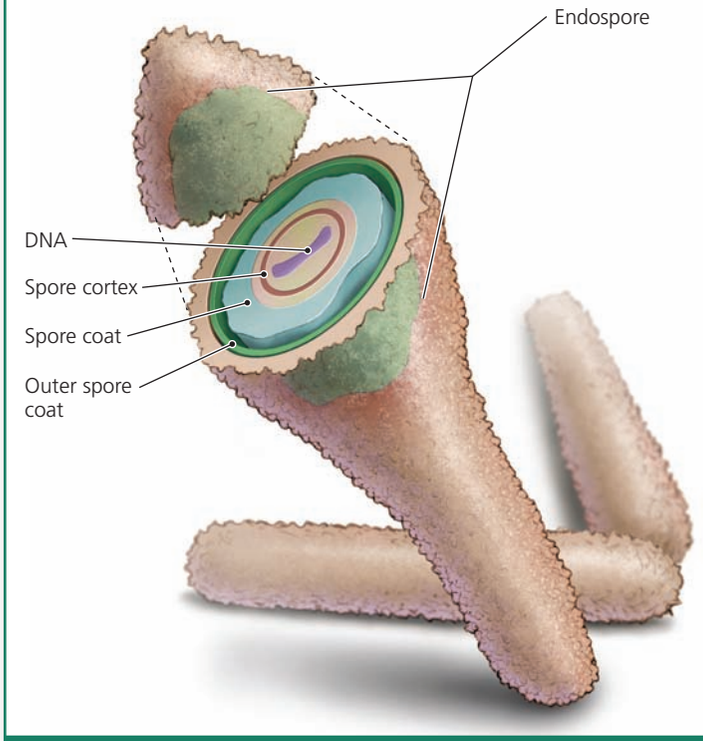
Gram reaction: Positive

Virulence factors: Endospore, botulism toxins A–G

Diseases caused: Foodborne botulism, infant botulism, and wound botulism

Treatment for diseases: Repeated washing of intestinal tract to remove *Clostridium*, administration of antitoxin (antibodies against the toxins), antimicrobial drugs used for cases of infant botulism and wound botulism; damage to nerve endings irreversible

Prevention of disease: Proper canning to kill endospores; refrigeration to prevent endospores from germinating; heating to 80°C for 20 minutes to destroy toxin; refrain from feeding honey to infants



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

The symptoms of botulism are diagnostic; culturing the organism from contaminated food, from feces, or from the patient's wounds confirms the diagnosis. Further, toxin activity can be detected by using a mouse bioassay. In this laboratory procedure, specimens of food, feces, and/or serum are divided into two portions. Botulism antitoxin is mixed with one of the portions, and the portions are then inoculated into two sets of mice. If the mice receiving the antitoxin survive while the other mice die, botulism is confirmed.

Treatment of botulism entails three approaches:

- Repeated washing of the intestinal tract to remove *Clostridium.*
- Administration of antibodies against botulism toxin to neutralize toxin in the blood before it can bind to neurons.
- Administration of antimicrobial drugs to kill clostridia in infant and wound botulism cases. (This approach is not effective in treating foodborne botulism, which results from the ingestion of toxin, not of the bacteria themselves.)

Note that damage resulting from any prior binding of toxin to any particular nerve ending is irreversible, so signs and symptoms of botulism may persist despite aggressive medical care.

Foodborne botulism is prevented by destroying all endospores in contaminated food by proper canning techniques, by preventing endospores from germinating by using refrigeration or establishing an acidic environment (pH < 4.5), or by destroying the toxin by heating to at least 80°C for 20 minutes or more. Because infant botulism is often associated with the consumption of honey, parents are advised not to feed honey to infants under age one because their intestinal microbiota are not sufficiently developed to inhibit the germination of *C. botulinum* endospores and their growth as toxin-producing vegetative cells.

Clostridium tetani

Learning Outcomes

19.33 Describe the epidemiology of tetanus.

19.34 List treatments for and preventive measures against *Clostridium tetani* infections.

Clostridium tetani[21] (te´tan-ē) is a small, motile, obligate anaerobe that produces a terminal endospore, giving the cell a distinctive lollipop appearance **(Figure 19.16)**. *C. tetani* is ubiquitous in soil, dust, and the GI tracts of animals and humans. Its vegetative cells are extremely sensitive to oxygen and live only in anaerobic environments, but its endospores survive for years. Its toxin causes the disease **tetanus.**

Pathogenesis

Contrary to popular belief, deep puncture wounds by rusty nails are not the only (or even primary) source of tetanus. Even a tiny break in the skin or mucous membranes can allow endospores of *C. tetani* access to an anaerobic environment in which they germinate, grow, and produce a fatal disease caused by **tetanospasmin** (tetanus toxin)—a potent neurotoxin released by *C. tetani* cells when they die. To understand the action of

[21] From Greek *tetanos*, meaning "to stretch."

▲ **Figure 19.16 Cells of *Clostridium tetani*, with terminal endospores.** The cells have a distinctive lollipop shape. *How does the location of C. tetani endospores distinguish this bacterium from Bacillus anthracis?*

Figure 19.16 *The endospores of C. tetani are terminal, whereas those of* Bacillus anthracis *are located centrally.*

tetanospasmin, we must further consider the control of muscles by the central nervous system.

As we have seen, the secretion of acetylcholine by motor neurons at neuromuscular junctions stimulates muscles to contract. Nerves can only stimulate muscles; there is no inhibitory neurotransmitter released at the junction that could relax a nuclear contraction. Instead, muscle cells naturally return to a relaxed state when the muscle remains unstimulated by the neurons. In contrast, a motor neuron can be inhibited by other neurons that released inhibitory neurotransmitters in the brain or spinal cord. In other words, inhibitory neurons of the central nervous system can inhibit motor neurons that then do not stimulate the muscle, which remains relaxed **(Figure 19.17a)**.

Tetanospasmin released from *C. tetani* is composed of two polypeptides held together by a disulfide bond. The heavier of the two polypeptides binds to a receptor on a neuron's cytoplasmic membrane. The neuron then endocytizes the toxin, removes the lighter of the two polypeptides, and transports the lighter portion to the central nervous system. There the small polypeptide enters an inhibitory neuron and blocks the release of inhibitory neurotransmitter. With inhibition blocked, excitatory activity is unregulated, and muscles are signaled to contract simultaneously **(Figure 19.17b)**. The result is that muscles on both sides of joints contract and do not relax. Opposing contractions can be so severe that they break bones.

Disease and Epidemiology

The incubation period of tetanus ranges from a few days to a week depending on the distance of the site of infection from the central nervous system. Typically the initial and diagnostic sign of tetanus is tightening of the jaw and neck muscles—which is why tetanus is also called *lockjaw*. Other early symptoms include sweating, drooling, grouchiness, and constant back spasms. If the toxin spreads to autonomic neurons, then heartbeat irregularities, fluctuations in blood pressure, and extensive sweating result. Spasms and contractions may spread to other muscles, becoming so severe that the arms and fists curl tightly, the feet curl down, and the body assumes a stiff backward arch as the heels and back of the head bend toward one another **(Figure 19.18)**. Complete, unrelenting contraction of the diaphragm results in a final inhalation; patients die because they cannot exhale.

Over a million cases of tetanus occur annually worldwide, mostly in less developed countries where vaccination is unavailable or medical care is inadequate. The effect of tetanospasmin is irreversible at any particular synapse, so recovery depends on the growth of new neuronal terminals to replace those affected. The mortality rate of tetanus is about 50% among all patients, though the mortality of neonatal tetanus, resulting most commonly from infection of the umbilical stump, exceeds 90%.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

The diagnostic feature of tetanus is the characteristic muscular contraction, which is often noted too late to save the patient. The bacterium itself is rarely isolated from clinical samples because it grows slowly in culture and is extremely sensitive to oxygen.

Treatment involves thorough cleaning of wounds to remove all endospores, immediate passive immunization with immunoglobulin directed against the toxin, the administration of antimicrobials such as penicillin, and active immunization with tetanus toxoid. Cleansing and antimicrobials eliminate the bacteria, whereas the immunoglobulin binds to and neutralizes tetanospasmin before it can attach to neurons. Active immunization stimulates the formation of antibodies that neutralize the toxin. Once the toxin binds to a neuron, treatment is limited to supportive care.

The number of cases of tetanus in the United States has steadily declined as a result of effective immunization with tetanus toxoid. The CDC currently recommends five doses beginning at two months of age, followed by a booster every 10 years for life.

In the previous two sections we examined two pathogenic, Gram-positive bacilli that form endospores: *Bacillus*, which is facultatively anaerobic, and *Clostridium*, which is anaerobic. Next we consider the low G + C, rod-shaped *Listeria* and the unusual low G + C mycoplasmas that Gram stain pink because they lack cell walls.

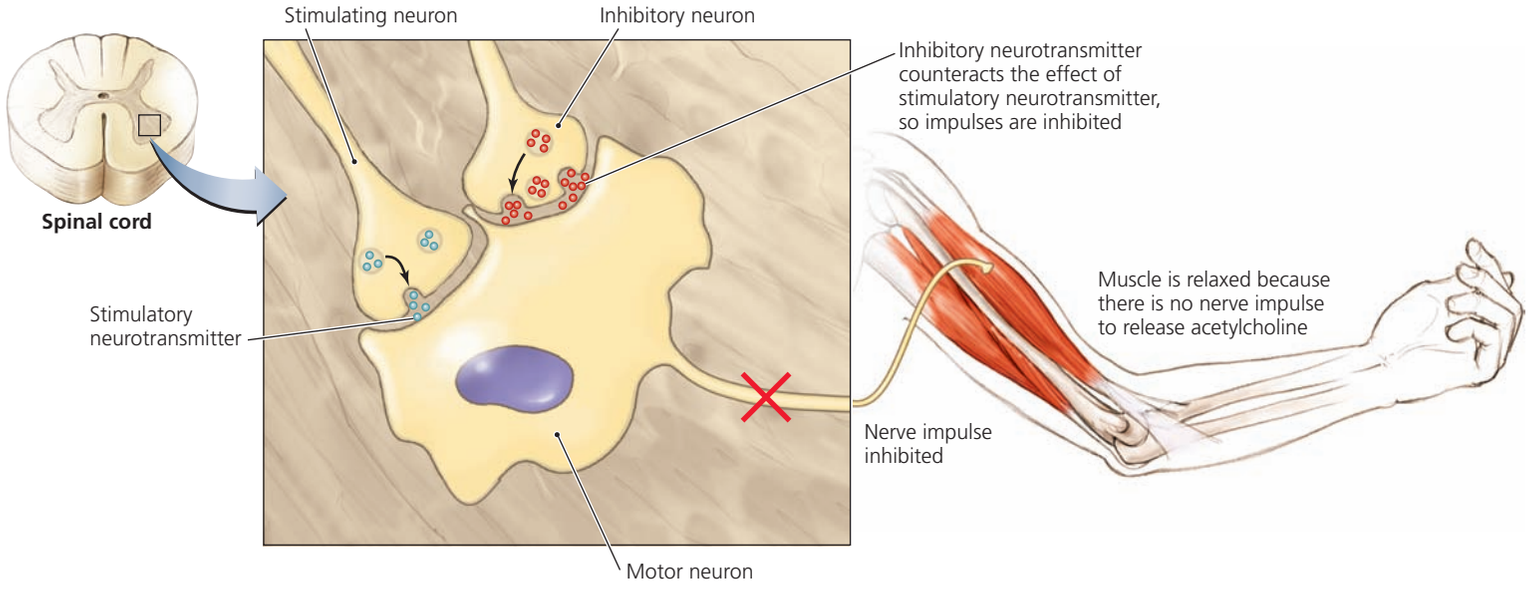
Listeria

Learning Outcomes

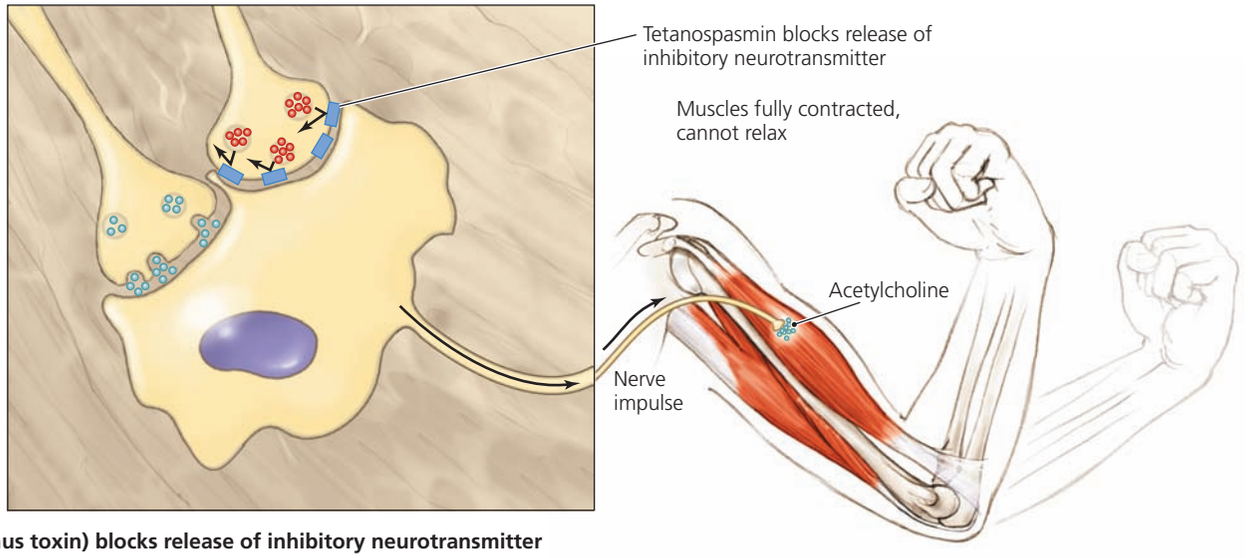
19.35 Describe the structures of *Listeria monocytogenes* that account for its pathogenicity.

19.36 Discuss the signs and symptoms, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of listeriosis.

Listeria monocytogenes (lis-tēr´ē-ă mo-nō-sī-tah´je-nēz) is a low G + C, Gram-positive, non-endospore-forming bacillus found in soil, water, mammals, birds, fish, and insects. It enters the body in contaminated food and drink.

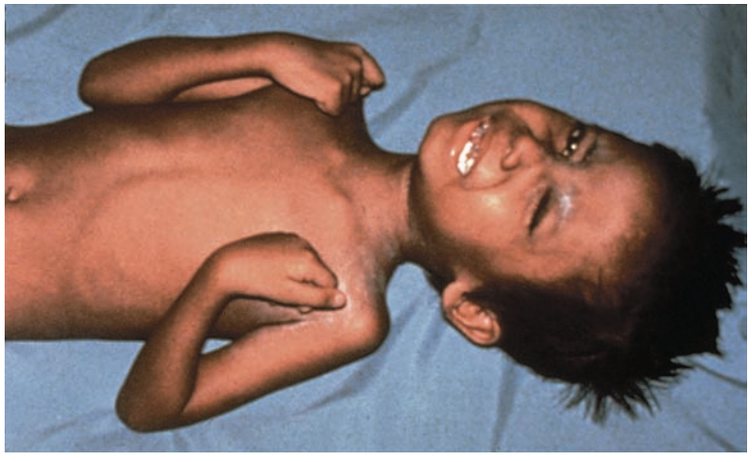


(a) Normal action of inhibitory neurotransmitter

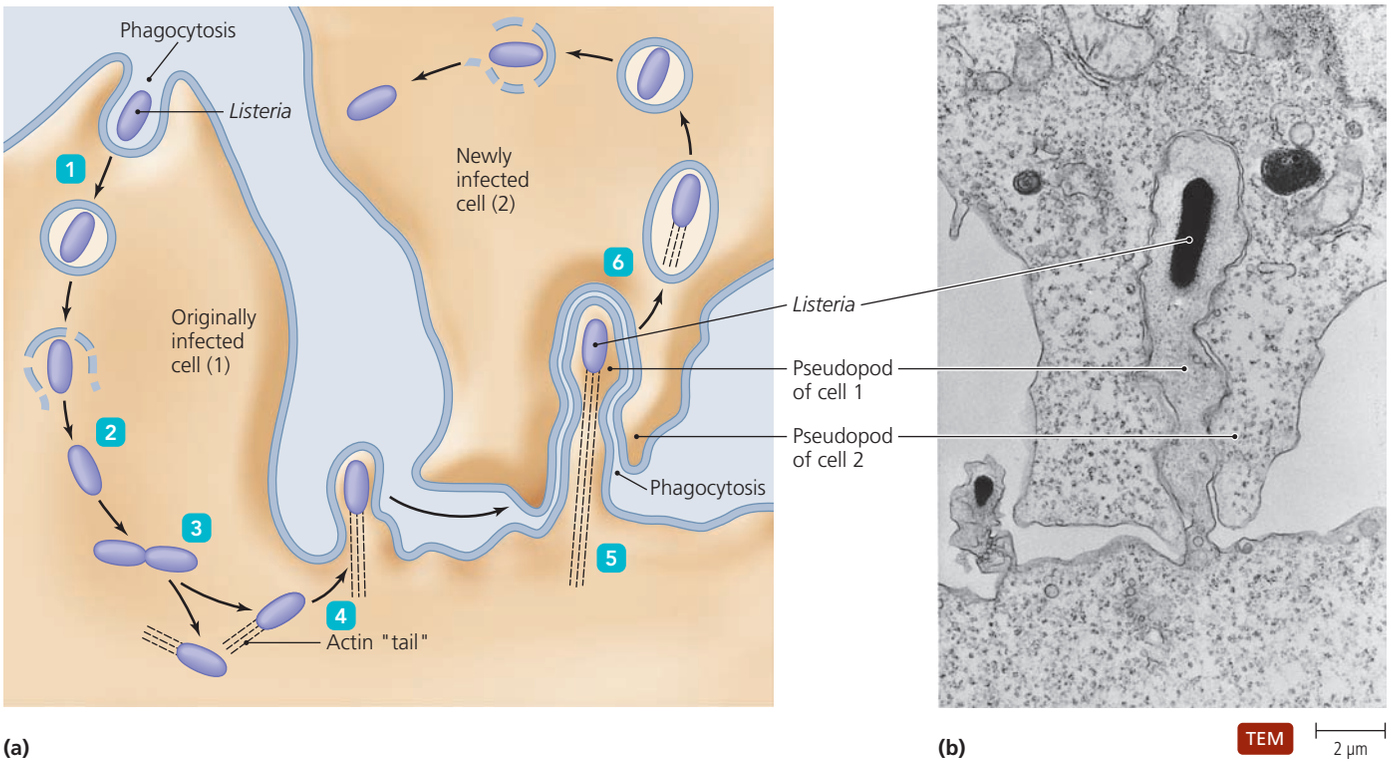


(b) Tetanospasmin (tetanus toxin) blocks release of inhibitory neurotransmitter

▲ Figure 19.17 The action of tetanospasmin (tetanus toxin) on a pair of antagonistic muscles. (a) Normally, when the muscle on one side of a joint is stimulated to contract, neurons controlling the antagonistic muscle are inhibited, so the antagonistic muscle relaxes. **(b)** Tetanospasmin blocks the inhibitory neurotransmitter. As a result, motor neurons controlling the antagonistic muscle are not inhibited but instead can generate nerve impulses that stimulate muscle contraction.



◀ Figure 19.18 A patient with tetanus. Prolonged muscular contractions result from the action of tetanus toxin.



▲ Figure 19.19 How *Listeria* avoids the host's immune system while infecting new cells. **(a)** After *Listeria* is initially endocytized 1, the intracellular bacterium escapes the phagosome 2 and reproduces within the phagocyte . The bacterium then polymerizes the host cell's actin filaments into a "tail" 3 that pushes the bacterium into a pseudopod 4 that is subsequently endocytized by a new host cell 5. **(b)** A photomicrograph showing the endocytosis of a pseudopod containing a *Listeria* cell.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

L. monocytogenes binds to the surfaces of a macrophage or a cell of the liver or gallbladder, triggering its own endocytosis to become a facultative intracellular parasite. Once inside a human cell's phagosome (see Figure 15.6), *Listeria* synthesizes a pore-forming protein, called *listeriolysin O*, that punctures the phagosome membrane, releasing the bacterium into the host cell's cytosol before a lysosome can fuse with the phagosome. *Listeria* then grows and reproduces in the cytosol, sheltered from the antibody immune response.

Listeria continues to avoid exposure to the immune system via a unique method of transferring itself to neighboring cells without having to leave host cells **(Figure 19.19)**. The pathogen polymerizes the host cell's actin molecules to form stiff actin filaments that lengthen and push the bacterium through the cytosol to the cell's surface, where it forms a pseudopod. A neighboring macrophage or epithelial cell then endocytizes the pseudopod, and *Listeria* once again "tunnels" its way out of the phagosome to continue its intracellular parasitic existence within a new host cell.

Listeria's virulence is directly related to its ability to live within cells, which is conferred by listeriolysin O and the membrane protein that triggers endocytosis; it produces no toxins or enzymes that make it virulent. Interestingly, some mRNA in *Listeria* is inactive until it is at 37°C in a human body. As a result, the bacterium reproduces rapidly only when it is in a host.

Listeria is rarely pathogenic in healthy adults, who experience either no symptoms or only a mild flulike illness. In contrast, infection in fetuses, newborns, the elderly, and immunocompromised patients (particularly those with suppressed cell-mediated immunity) can be quite severe. In these patients, *Listeria* travels via the bloodstream to the brain, causing meningitis and possibly death. Human-to-human transmission is limited to the transfer of *Listeria* from pregnant women to fetuses, leading to premature delivery, miscarriage, stillbirth, or meningitis in the newborn.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Because *Listeria* most commonly causes meningitis, clinicians look for it in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of people with symptoms of meningitis. Unfortunately, only a few *Listeria* cells are required to produce disease, so the bacterium is rarely seen in Gram-stained preparations of phagocytes.

Listeria can be cultured from blood and CSF specimens on many laboratory media, especially when a technique called *cold enrichment* is used. In this procedure, the specimen is held at 4°C—a temperature that inhibits most bacteria but not *Listeria*—and samples are periodically inoculated onto media. Even with

cold enrichment, colonies of *Listeria* may take four weeks or longer to become visible.

The bacterium exhibits a characteristic end-over-end "tumbling" motility that occurs at room temperature but not at 37°C. Tumbling motility is so distinctive that it can provide the basis for an initial diagnosis, although serological testing is required for positive identification.

Ampicillin and an aminoglycoside (such as gentamicin) is the recommended therapy for listeriosis. Prevention of infections is difficult because the organism is ubiquitous, though the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has recognized treatment of meat and cheese with bacteriophage against *Listeria* as a safe way to reduce the number of *Listeria* cells in food. Phage-treated food is safe for human consumption. Individuals at greatest risk should avoid undercooked vegetables, unpasteurized milk, undercooked meat, and all soft cheeses, such as feta, Brie, and Camembert. Aged cheeses made from raw milk should be particularly avoided because *Listeria* can grow during refrigeration. Further, people at a high risk of infection should thoroughly cook raw meat and heat prepared meats—including cold cuts, luncheon meats, and hot dogs—before consuming them.

Mycoplasmas

Learning Outcomes

19.37 List at least four characteristics of all mycoplasmas.

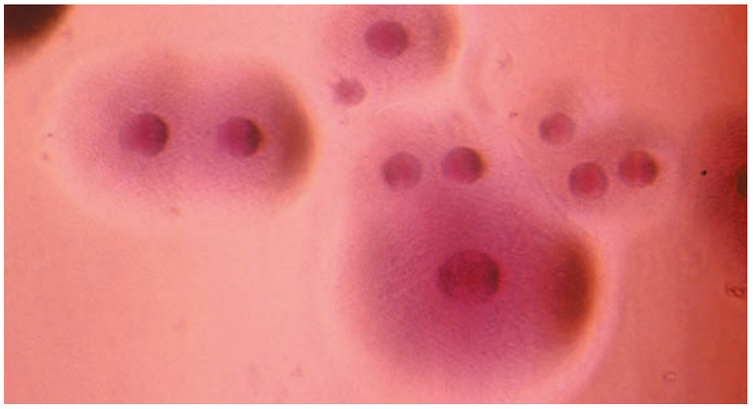
19.38 Explain why mycoplasmas have been classified with both Gram-negative and Gram-positive organisms.

19.39 Compare and contrast mycoplasmas and viruses.

Mycoplasmas[22] (mī´kō-plaz-măz) are unique bacteria named for their most common representative, the genus *Mycoplasma.* Bacteria in the genus *Ureaplasma* (yū-rē´ă-plaz-mă) are also part of this group. Mycoplasmas lack cytochromes (which are present in many other organisms' electron transport chains), enzymes of the Krebs cycle, and cell walls—indeed, they are incapable of synthesizing peptidoglycan and its precursors. Moreover, most mycoplasmas have *sterols* in their cytoplasmic membranes, a feature lacking in other prokaryotes. They are distinct from all other organisms in that the codon UGA neither serves as a stop codon nor codes for selenocysteine but instead codes for the amino acid tryptophan.

Before analysis of the nucleic acid sequences of mycoplasmal rRNA revealed that they are genetically Gram-positive organisms, mycoplasmas were classified in a separate phylum of Gram-negative bacteria—phylum Mollicutes. Modern taxonomists and the second edition of *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology* now categorize organisms in Mollicutes as a class of low G + C, Gram-positive bacteria in the phylum Firmicutes. Nevertheless, they appear pink when stained with the Gram stain (because they have no cell walls).

Because they lack cell walls, mycoplasmas are pleomorphic, taking on a variety of shapes, including cocci and thin, unicellular filaments up to 150 µm long that resemble the hyphae of fungi. Mycoplasmas are able to withstand osmotic stress despite having no walls because they colonize osmotically protected habitats, such as animal and human bodies, and the sterols in their membranes convey sufficient strength and rigidity.



▲ **Figure 19.20 Colonies of *Mycoplasma*.** The colonies resemble fried eggs, because central cells grow into the medium, while cells on the edges grow only on the surface.

Mycoplasmas have diameters ranging from 0.1 µm to 0.8 µm, making them the smallest *free-living* microbes—that is, those that can grow and reproduce independently of other cells. Originally, many mycoplasmas were thought to be viruses because their small, flexible cells enabled them to squeeze through the 0.45-µm pores of filters that were at one time used to remove bacteria from solutions; however, mycoplasmas contain both functional RNA and DNA, and they divide by binary fission—traits that viruses lack.

Mycoplasmas require organic growth factors, including cholesterol, fatty acids, vitamins, amino acids, and nucleotides; these factors must be either acquired from a host or supplied in laboratory media. With exception of the strictly aerobic *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (nū-mō´nē-ī), mycoplasmas are facultative anaerobes.

Most mycoplasmas form distinctive colonies on solid media that are so small they must often be viewed through a microscope. Colonies of most species resemble fried eggs, because the cells at the center of a colony tend to grow into the agar, whereas those at the periphery remain on the surface **(Figure 19.20)**. However, two important pathogenic mycoplasmas, *M. pneumoniae* and *Ureaplasma,* are exceptions in that their colonies do not resemble fried eggs.

Mycoplasmas can colonize mucous membranes of the respiratory and urinary tracts and are associated with pneumonia and urinary tract infections. Of the two genera that cause diseases in humans, *Mycoplasma* is unable to utilize urea (i.e., it is urease negative), whereas *Ureaplasma* does hydrolyze urea to form ammonia.

Over 100 species of *Mycoplasma* have been identified, but only a few cause significant diseases in humans. We begin our examination of these species with *M. pneumoniae.*

[22]From Greek *mycos*, meaning "fungus," and *plasma*, meaning "anything formed or molded."

Mycoplasma pneumoniae

Learning Outcome

19.40 Describe the damage done to respiratory epithelial cells by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae.*

Pathogenesis and Epidemiology

Mycoplasma pneumoniae **(Figure 19.21)** has an adhesive protein that attaches specifically to receptors located at the bases of cilia on epithelial cells lining the respiratory tracts of humans. Attachment causes the cilia to stop beating, and mycoplasmal colonization eventually kills the epithelial cells. This interrupts the normal removal of mucus from the respiratory tract, allowing colonization by other bacteria and causing a buildup of mucus that irritates the upper respiratory tract. Early symptoms of *M. pneumoniae* infections—including fever, malaise, headache, and sore throat—are not typical of other types of pneumonia; thus, the disease is called **primary atypical pneumonia.** The body subsequently responds with a persistent, unproductive cough in an attempt to clear the lungs.

Primary atypical pneumonia may last for several weeks, but it is usually not severe enough to require hospitalization or to cause death. Because symptoms can be mild, the disease is also sometimes called *walking pneumonia.*

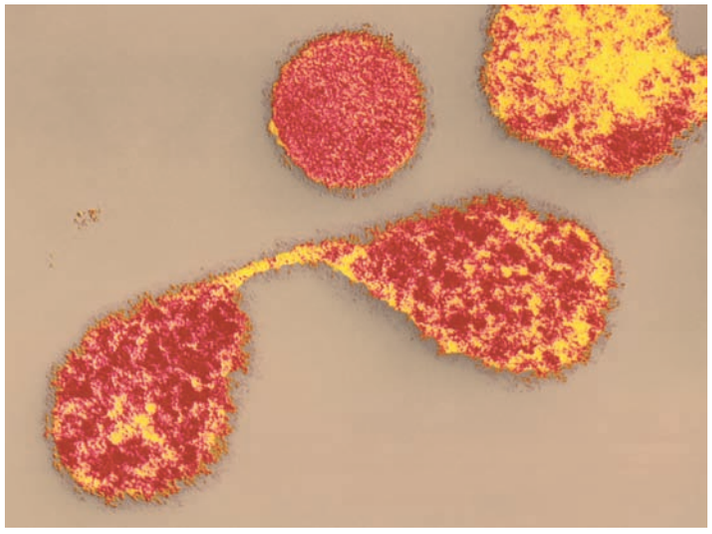
Nasal secretions spread *M. pneumoniae* among people in close contact, such as classmates and family members. The disease appears to be uncommon in children under age 5 or in adults older than 20, though it is probably the most common form of pneumonia seen in children 5 to 15 years old. However, because primary atypical pneumonia is not a reportable disease and is difficult to diagnose, the actual incidence of infection is unknown.

Primary atypical pneumonia occurs throughout the year. This lack of seasonality is in contrast to pneumococcal pneumonia (caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*), which is more commonly seen in the fall and winter.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Diagnosis is difficult because mycoplasmas are small and difficult to detect in clinical specimens or tissue samples. Further, mycoplasmas grow slowly in culture, requiring two to six weeks before colonies can be seen. As previously noted, the colonies of *M. pneumoniae* differ from the colonies of other mycoplasmas in lacking a fried egg appearance; instead, the colonies have a uniform granular appearance. Complement fixation, hemagglutination, and immunofluorescent tests are sometimes used to confirm a diagnosis, but such tests are nonspecific and are not by themselves positively diagnostic.

Physicians treat primary atypical pneumonia with macrolides (e.g., erythromycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, or tetracycline). Prevention is difficult because patients are often infectious for long periods of time without signs or symptoms, and they remain infectious even while undergoing antimicrobial treatment. Nevertheless, frequent hand antisepsis, avoidance of contaminated fomites, and reducing aerosol dispersion can limit the spread of the pathogen and the number of cases of disease. No vaccine against *M. pneumoniae* is available.



▲ **Figure 19.21** ***Mycoplasma pneumoniae.*** These bacteria are pleomorphic—they can assume many many shapes, because they lack a cell wall.

CRITICAL THINKING

Mycoplasma pneumoniae, like many pathogenic bacteria, is resistant to penicillin; however, unlike most resistant species, *Mycoplasma* does not synthesize β-lactamase. Explain why *Mycoplasma* is resistant to penicillin despite its inability to make β-lactamase.

Other Mycoplasmas

Learning Outcomes

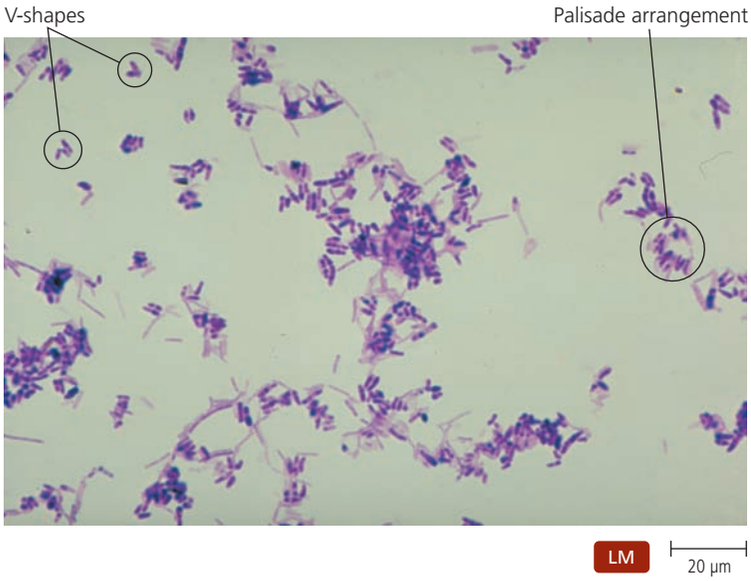
19.41 List three mycoplasmas associated with urinary and genital tract infections.

19.42 Describe pelvic inflammatory disease.

Three other mycoplasmas are associated with diseases of humans: *M. hominis* (ho´mi-nis), *M. genitalium* (jen-ē-tal´ē-ŭm), and *Ureaplasma urealyticum* (ū-rē´ă-li´ti-kŭm) often colonize the urinary and genital tracts of newborn girls, though such infections rarely persist through childhood. However, the incidence of genital reinfections increases after puberty as a result of sexual activity; approximately 15% of sexually active adult Americans (males and females) are currently infected with *M. hominis,* and 70% are infected with *Ureaplasma.*

M. genitalium and *U. urealyticum* cause *nongonococcal urethritis*—that is, inflammation of the urethra not caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī). By contrast, *M. hominis* can cause **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)** in women. Pelvic inflammatory disease is characterized by inflammation of the organs in the pelvic cavity, fever, and abdominal pain.

Infections of either *M. genitalium* or *U. urealyticum* are treated with erythromycin or tetracycline, whereas clindamycin is used to treat *M. hominis,* which is commonly resistant to tetracycline and erythromycin. Abstinence, mutually faithful monogamy, and proper use of condoms prevent the spread of these sexually transmitted organisms.



▲ **Figure 19.22 Gram-stained *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.** The characteristic arrangement of the cells results from the type of binary fission called snapping division.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why do pediatricians refrain from using tetracycline to treat mycoplasmal infections in children?

We have examined low G + C, pathogenic, Gram-positive cocci; endospore-forming bacilli; non-endospore-forming, rod-shaped *Listeria;* and wall-less mycoplasmas. Now we turn our attention to the high G + C, Gram-positive pathogens, beginning with *Corynebacterium.*

Corynebacterium

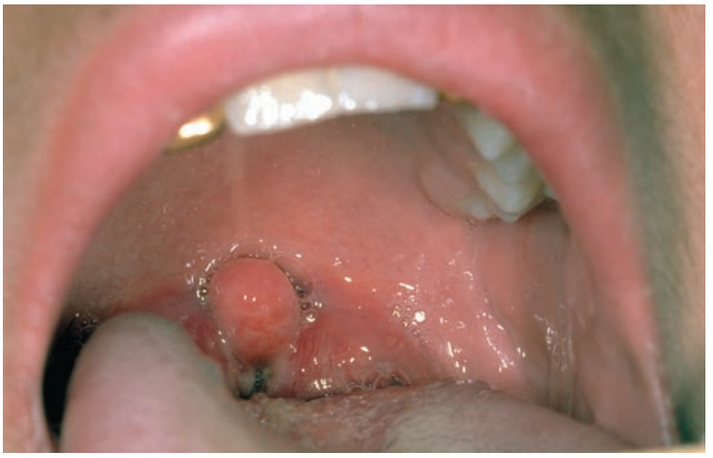
Learning Outcomes

19.43 Characterize the arrangements of *Corynebacterium* cells.
19.44 Describe the transmission of *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* and the effect of diphtheria toxin.
19.45 Discuss the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of diphtheria.

Corynebacterium (kŏ-rī´nē-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm) is a genus of high G + C, pleomorphic, non-endospore-forming bacteria that are ubiquitous on plants and in animals and humans, where they colonize the skin and the respiratory, gastrointestinal, urinary, and genital tracts. The bacteria divide via a type of binary fission called *snapping division,* in which daughter cells remain attached to form characteristic V-shapes and side-by-side *palisade* arrangements **(Figure 19.22)**. Although all species of corynebacteria can be pathogenic, the agent of diphtheria is most widely known.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

Corynebacterium diphtheriae[23] (dif-thi-rē´ī) is transmitted from person to person via respiratory droplets or skin contact. Diphtheria is endemic in poorer parts of the world that lack adequate immunization. The bacterium normally contains a lysogenic bacteriophage that codes for *diphtheria toxin,* which is directly responsible for the signs and symptoms of diphtheria. Cells lacking the phage do not produce toxin and are not pathogenic.



▲ **Figure 19.23 A pseudomembrane.** This feature is characteristic of diphtheria.

Diphtheria toxin inhibits synthesis of polypeptides in eukaryotes. Because the action of the toxin is enzymatic, a single molecule of toxin can completely block all polypeptide synthesis, resulting in cell death. Diphtheria toxin is thus one of the more potent toxins known.

Respiratory infections are most severe, resulting in the sudden and rapid signs and symptoms of **diphtheria** (dif-thē´rē-ă), including fever, pharyngitis, and the oozing of a fluid composed of intracellular fluid, blood clotting factors, leukocytes, bacteria, and the remains of dead cells of the throat. The fluid thickens into a *pseudomembrane* **(Figure 19.23)** that can adhere tightly to the underlying tissues, completely occluding the respiratory passages and resulting in death by suffocation.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Initial diagnosis is based on the presence of a pseudomembrane. Laboratory examination of the membrane or of tissue collected from the site of infection does not always reveal bacterial cells because the effects are due largely to the action of diphtheria toxin and not the cells directly. Culture of specimens on *Loffler's medium,* which was developed especially for the culture of *C. diphtheriae,* produces distinct colonial morphologies. Even though observations of these distinctive colonies are useful, absolute certainty of diagnosis results from an immunodiffusion assay, called an **Elek test,** in which antibodies against the toxin react with toxin in a sample of fluid from the patient.

The most important aspect of treatment is the administration of antitoxin (immunoglobulins against the toxin) to neutralize toxin before it binds to cells; once the toxin binds to a cell, it enters via endocytosis and kills the cell. Penicillin or

[23]From Greek *koryne*, meaning "club;" *bakterion*, meaning "small rod;" and *diphthera*, meaning "leather membrane."

erythromycin kills the bacterium, preventing the synthesis of more toxin. In severe cases, a blocked airway must be opened surgically or bypassed with a tracheostomy tube.

Because humans are the only known host for *C. diphtheriae,* the most effective way to prevent diphtheria is immunization. Before immunization, hundreds of thousands of cases occurred in the United States each year; in contrast, only 12 cases total were reported in the 15 years from 1997 to 2011. Toxoid (deactivated toxin) is administered in five injections as part of the DTaP vaccine, which combines diphtheria and tetanus toxoids with antigens of the pertussis bacterium, at 2, 4, 6, 18, and about 60 months of age, followed by booster immunizations with a slightly different vaccine (Tdap) every 10 years.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why must diphtheria and tetanus vaccines be boosted every 10 years?

Mycobacterium

Learning Outcome

19.46 Characterize mycobacteria in terms of endospore formation, cell wall composition, growth rate, and resistance to antimicrobial drugs.

Another devastating high G + C, non-endospore-forming pathogen is *Mycobacterium* (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm). Species in this genus have cell walls containing an abundance of a waxy lipid, called **mycolic acid** (mī-kol´ik), that is composed of chains of 60 to 90 carbon atoms. This unusual cell wall is directly responsible for the unique characteristics of this pathogen. Specifically, mycobacteria do the following:

- Grow slowly (because of the time required to synthesize numerous molecules of mycolic acid). The generation time varies from hours to several days.
- Are protected from lysis once they are phagocytized.
- Are capable of intracellular growth.
- Are resistant to Gram staining, detergents, many common antimicrobial drugs, and desiccation. Because mycobacteria stain only weakly with the Gram procedure (if at all), the acid-fast staining procedure was developed to differentially stain mycobacteria (see Figure 4.18).

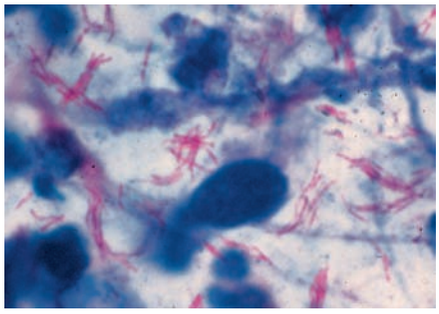
Even though almost 75 species of mycobacteria are known, most mycobacterial diseases in humans are caused by two species: *M. tuberculosis* and *M. leprae,* which cause tuberculosis and leprosy, respectively. *M. avium-intracellulare* and *M. ulcerans* cause emerging mycobacterial diseases.

Tuberculosis

Learning Outcomes

19.47 Identify two effects of cord factor of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*

19.48 Describe the transmission of *M. tuberculosis* and its subsequent action within the human body.



▲ **Figure 19.24** ***Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*** The pink appearance of the bacteria when prepared with an acid-fast stain. Note the corded growth (parallel alignments) of daughter cells, a result of the presence of cord factor in the cell walls of virulent strains.

19.49 Discuss the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of tuberculosis.

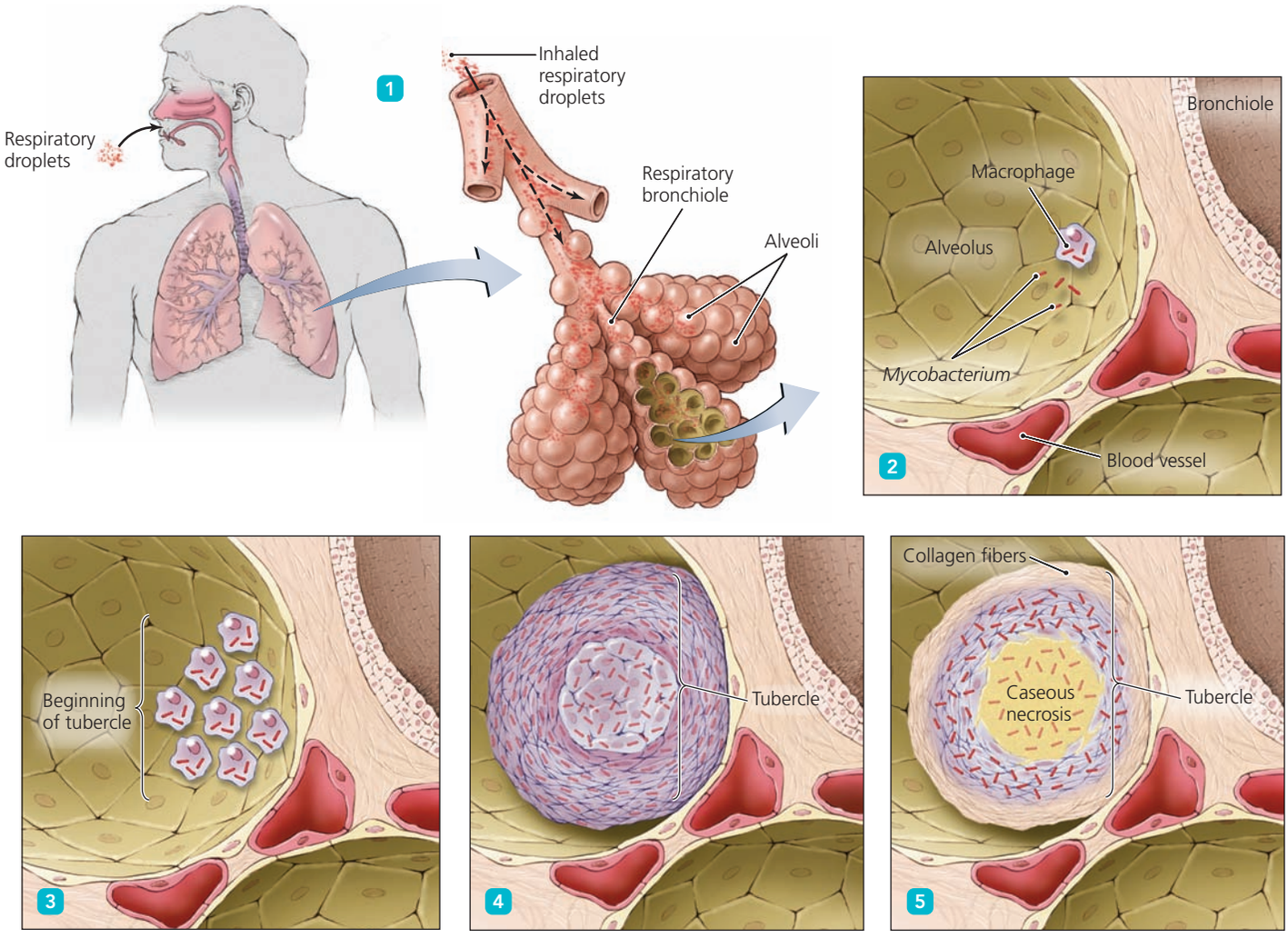
Tuberculosis (TB), the primary mycobacterial disease, is fundamentally a respiratory disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (too-ber-kyū-lō´sis). This bacterium forms dull-yellow raised colonies after growth for weeks on a special differential medium called Lowenstein-Jensen agar. Virulent strains of *M. tuberculosis* have a cell wall component, called **cord factor,** that produces strands of daughter cells that remain attached to one another in parallel alignments **(Figure 19.24)**. Cord factor also inhibits migration of neutrophils and is toxic to mammalian cells. Mutant mycobacteria that are unable to synthesize cord factor do not cause disease.

Pathogenesis and Disease

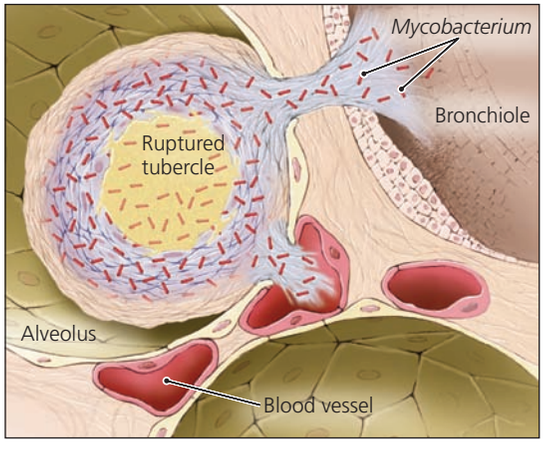
The waxy wall protects *Mycobacterium* from desiccation, and it can remain viable in dried aerosol droplets for eight months. The pathogen is not particularly virulent, as only about 5% of people infected with the bacterium develop disease; however, it kills about 50% of untreated diseased patients. Clinicians divide tuberculosis into three types: *primary TB, secondary* (or *reactivated*) *TB,* and *disseminated TB.*

Primary Tuberculosis Although *M. tuberculosis* can infect any organ, 85% of infections remain in the lungs. Primary infection, which typically occurs in children, involves the formation of small, hard nodules in the lungs called **tubercles** (too´ber-klz), which are characteristic of TB and give it its name. The five stages of a primary infection are as follows **(Figure 19.25a)**:

1. *Mycobacterium* typically infects the respiratory tract via inhalation of respiratory droplets formed when infected individuals talk, sing, cough, or sneeze. A respiratory droplet is about 5 mm in diameter and carries one to three bacilli. The minimum infectious dose is about 10 cells. *Mycobacterium* has adhesive pili that attach to an extracellular human protein, laminin.
2. Macrophages in the alveoli (air sacs) of the lungs phagocytize the pathogens but are unable to digest them in part



(a) Primary tuberculosis infection



(b) Secondary or reactivated tuberculosis

▲ Figure 19.25 Development of tuberculosis in the lungs. **(a)** The formation of tubercles in primary tuberculosis. **(b)** Events in secondary (reactivated) tuberculosis.

because the mycobacteria prevent fusion of lysosomes with phagosomes. *M. tuberculosis* also invades cells lining the alveoli.

3. The bacteria replicate freely within host cells, gradually killing them. Infected cells of the alveolar lining release chemokines that attract more macrophages. Bacteria released from dead macrophages are phagocytized by other macrophages, beginning the cycle anew. This stage of infection, which lasts for a few weeks, is typically asymptomatic or associated with a mild fever.
4. Infected macrophages present antigen to T lymphocytes, which produce lymphokines that attract and activate more macrophages and trigger inflammation. Tightly appressed macrophages surround the site of infection, forming a tubercle.
5. Other cells of the body deposit collagen fibers, enclosing infected macrophages and lung cells within the tubercle. Infected cells in the center of the tubercle die, releasing *M. tuberculosis* and producing *caseous*[24] *necrosis*—the death

[24]From Latin *caseus*, meaning "cheese."

of tissue that takes on a cheeselike consistency because of the presence of protein and fat released from dying cells. Sometimes, for an unknown reason, the center liquefies and subsequently becomes filled with air. Such a tubercle is called a *tuberculous cavity.*

In most patients the immune system reaches a stalemate with the bacterium at this juncture: The immune system is able to prevent further spread of the pathogen and stop the progression of the disease, but it is not able to rid the body of all mycobacteria. *M. tuberculosis* may remain dormant for decades within macrophages and in the centers of tubercles. If the immune system breaks the stalemate by killing all the mycobacteria, the body deposits calcium around the tubercles, which are then called *Ghon complexes.*

Secondary or Reactivated Tuberculosis Secondary tuberculosis results when *M. tuberculosis* breaks the stalemate, ruptures the tubercule, and reestablishes an active infection in which the bacteria spread through the lungs via the bronchioles **(Figure 19.25b)**. Reactivated TB is a common occurrence in TB-infected individuals with suppressed immune systems.

Disseminated Tuberculosis Disseminated TB results when some macrophages carry the pathogens via the blood and lymph to a variety of sites, including the bone marrow, spleen, kidneys, spinal cord, and brain. The signs and symptoms observed in disseminated TB correspond to complications arising at the various sites involved. The common name for TB in the early 1900s—*consumption*—reflects the wasting away of the body resulting from the involvement of multiple sites in disseminated TB.

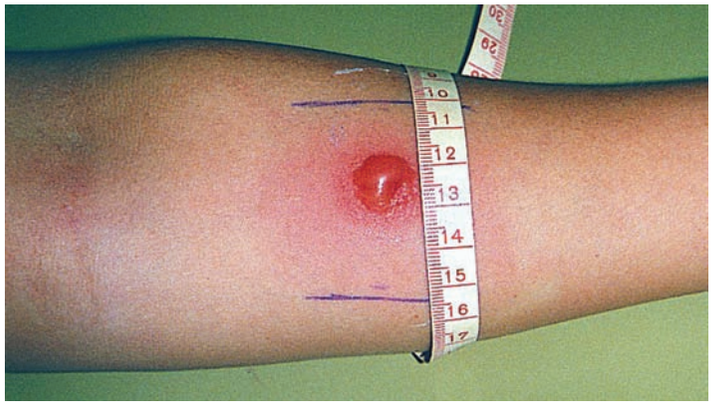
Epidemiology

Even though tuberculosis is on the decline in the United States, it is pandemic in other parts of the world, killing almost 2 million people annually. Over one-third of the world's population is infected with *M. tuberculosis,* and 10% of them develop a life-threatening case of tuberculosis. Patients with lowered immunity are at the greatest risk of infection; other risk factors include diabetes, poor nutrition, stress, crowded living conditions, alcohol and drug abuse, and smoking.

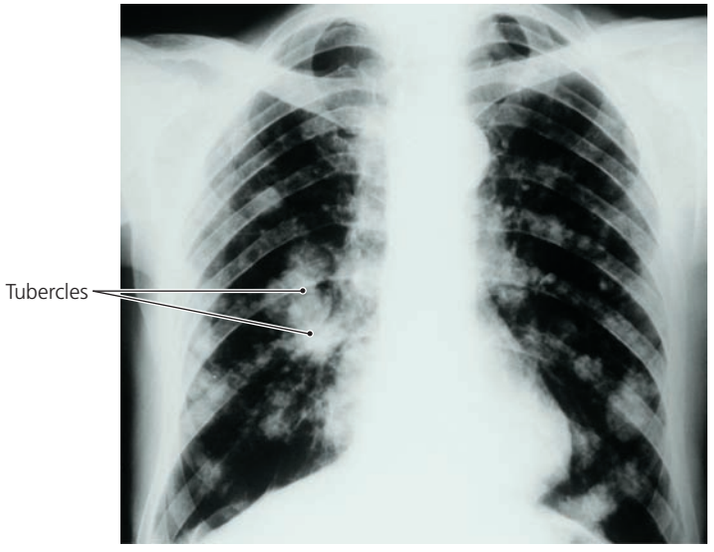
M. tuberculosis infects someone in the world every second. TB is prevalent in the countries of the former Soviet Union, where the breakdown of essential medical services has allowed a resurgence, and in Africa, where TB is the number one killer of AIDS patients.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

A **tuberculin skin test** is used to screen patients for possible exposure to tuberculosis. In this test, a health care worker injects about 0.1 ml of cell wall antigens from *M. tuberculosis* into a patient's skin. The appearance of a hard, red swelling at the test site within 24 to 72 hours is a positive test **(Figure 19.26a)**. The reaction is a type IV (cell-mediated) hypersensitivity response, indicating past infection or vaccination but not necessarily current disease.



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 19.26 Diagnosis of tuberculosis. (a)** The enlarged, reddened, and raised inoculation site of a positive tuberculin skin test. **(b)** An X ray of a tuberculosis patient showing white patches indicative of tubercles. *What does a positive tuberculin test indicate?*

Figure 19.26 *A positive tuberculin skin test indicates that a patient has cell-mediated memory against antigens of M. tuberculosis, as a result of either infection or immunization.*

A positive tuberculin skin test is not sufficient to distinguish patients who have been exposed to antigen but are currently uninfected, chronic carriers from patients with active disease. Chest X rays can reveal the presence of tubercles in the lungs **(Figure 19.26b)**; primary tuberculosis appears as tubercles in the lower and central areas of the lungs, whereas secondary tuberculosis more commonly appears higher in the lungs. The presence of acid-fast cells and cords in sputum (see Figure 19.24) confirms an active case of tuberculosis.

Common antimicrobials such as penicillin and erythromycin have little effect on *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* because it grows so slowly that the drugs are cleared from the body by the liver and kidneys before they have any significant effect.

Further, antimicrobial drugs have little impact on *M. tuberculosis* living within macrophages. The currently recommended treatment is a combination of four antimicrobials—isoniazid (INH), rifampin, pyrazinamide, and either streptomycin or ethambutol—for two months, followed by INH and rifampin alone for four more months.

Epidemiologists and physicians are concerned about strains of *M. tuberculosis* that are resistant to more than one of the standard antituberculosis drugs. Such *multi-drug-resistant (MDR)* strains have developed in many countries. For example, MDR strains account for over 10% of tuberculosis cases in Germany, Denmark, and New Zealand. No one knows the extent of MDR cases in developing countries, but it is suspected that the situation there is even worse. MDR-TB must be treated with more expensive antimicrobials, such as fluoroquinolones in combination with kanamycin, for as long as two years. This increases the cost of treatment as much as 100-fold over treatment of drug-sensitive TB.

And now, TB strains with resistance to the most effective anti-TB antimicrobials have emerged, especially in populations with high incidence of infection with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). These strains, called *extensively drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB),* may infect as many as 30,000 people per year in 41 countries, according to the World Health Organization (WHO). Researchers are urgently seeking new antimicrobials to treat MDR-TB and XDR-TB lest the progress made toward TB control and eradication be reversed.

The WHO and the CDC recommend a strategy of drug delivery called *Directly Observed Treatment, Shortcourse (DOTS),* in which health care workers observe patients to ensure they take their medications on schedule. Obviously, DOTS treatment is quite labor intensive and expensive.

Physicians use antibacterial drugs prophylactically to treat patients who have either shown a recent conversion from a negative to a positive tuberculin skin test or undergone significant exposure to active cases of tuberculosis. In countries where tuberculosis is common, health care workers immunize patients with *BCG*[25] vaccine, which is composed of attenuated *M. bovis* (bō´vis), a species that causes tuberculosis in cattle and is only rarely transmitted to humans via contaminated milk. The vaccine is not used for immunocompromised patients because it can cause disease.

Studies on the efficacy of TB vaccine vary widely from 80% protected to no protection at all. Nevertheless, the vaccine may reduce the spread of disease, and the WHO recommends all children be vaccinated at birth. In the United States, the cost of mass immunization is not warranted because of the relatively low prevalence of tuberculosis. Further, immunized patients may have a positive skin reaction for the rest of their lives, even if they have not been infected with *M. tuberculosis,* and such "false-positive" results would hinder the work of epidemiologists trying to track the spread of the disease.

[25]For "bacillus of Calmette and Guérin," named after the two French developers of the vaccine.

The prediction that tuberculosis would be eliminated in the United States by 2000 was not realized because of a resurgence of tuberculosis among AIDS patients and its subsequent spread to drug abusers and the homeless. Nevertheless, both renewed efforts to detect and stop infection and the implementation of DOTS reduced the number of reported U.S. cases in 2010 to the lowest incidence since reporting began in 1953.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why don't physicians try to prevent the spread of TB by simply administering prophylactic antimicrobial drugs to everyone living in endemic areas?

Leprosy

Learning Outcomes

19.50 Compare and contrast tuberculoid leprosy with lepromatous leprosy.

19.51 Discuss the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of leprosy.

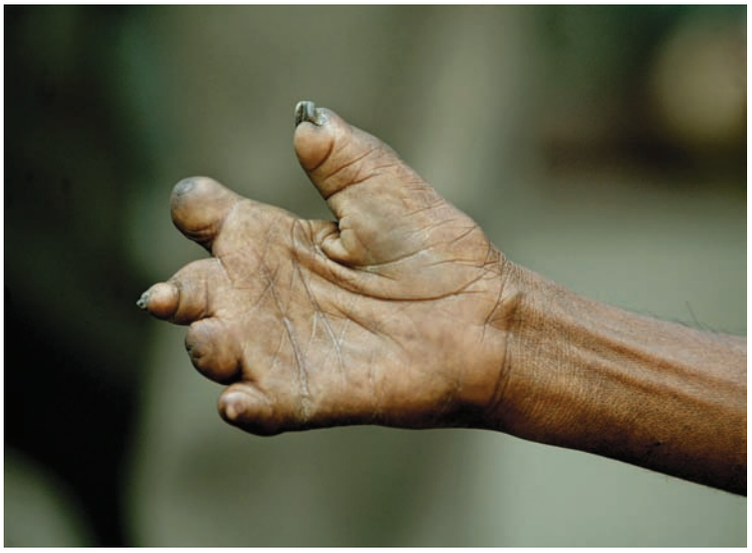
Mycobacterium leprae (lep´rī) causes **leprosy** (lep´rō-sē)—which is also called by the less dreaded name *Hansen's disease,* after Gerhard Hansen (1841–1912), a Norwegian bacteriologist who discovered its cause in 1873. *M. leprae* is a high G + C, Gram-positive bacillus. Because of the abundance of mycolic acid in the cell wall, these bacilli do not Gram stain purple and must instead be stained with an acid-fast stain. *M. leprae* grows best at 30°C, showing a preference for cooler regions of the human body, particularly peripheral nerve endings and skin cells in the fingers, toes, lips, and earlobes. The bacterium does not grow in cell-free laboratory culture, a fact that has hindered research and diagnostic studies. Armadillos, which have a normal body temperature of 30°C, are its only other known host and have proven valuable in studies on leprosy and on the efficacy of leprosy treatments.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

Leprosy has two different manifestations depending on the immune response of the patient: Patients with a strong cell-mediated immune response are able to kill cells infected with the bacterium, resulting in a nonprogressive form of the disease called *tuberculoid leprosy.* Regions of the skin that have lost sensation as a result of nerve damage are characteristic of this form of leprosy.

By contrast, patients with a weak cell-mediated immune response develop *lepromatous leprosy* (lep-rō´mă-tŭs; **Figure 19.27**), in which bacteria multiply in skin and nerve cells, gradually destroying tissue and leading to the progressive loss of facial features, digits (fingers and toes), and other body structures. Development of signs and symptoms is very slow; incubation may take years before the disease is evident. Death from leprosy is rare and usually results from the infection of leprous lesions by other pathogens.

Lepromatous leprosy is the more virulent form of the disease, but fortunately it is becoming relatively rare: In the 1990s



▲ **Figure 19.27** **Lepromatous leprosy can result in severe deformities.**

about 12 million cases were diagnosed annually worldwide, but by 2011 this number had decreased to 192,246.

Leprosy is transmitted via person-to-person contact. Given that the nasal secretions of patients with lepromatous leprosy are loaded with mycobacteria, infection presumably occurs via inhalation of respiratory droplets. Leprosy is not particularly virulent; individuals are typically infected only after years of intimate social contact with a victim.

Patients with leprosy are no longer quarantined because the disease is rarely transmitted and is fully treatable.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Diagnosis of leprosy is based on signs and symptoms of disease—a loss of sensation in skin lesions in the case of tuberculoid leprosy and disfigurement in the case of lepromatous leprosy. Diagnosis is confirmed by a positive skin test with leprosy antigen (similar to the tuberculin skin test) or through direct observation of acid-fast rods (AFRs) in tissue samples or nasal secretions (in the case of lepromatous leprosy).

As with *M. tuberculosis*, *M. leprae* quickly develops resistance to single antimicrobial agents, so therapy consists of administering multiple drugs, such as clofazimine, rifampin, or dapsone, for 12 months, though treatment can be lifelong for some patients.

BCG vaccine provides some protection against leprosy (as well as against tuberculosis), but prevention is achieved primarily by limiting exposure to the pathogen and by the prophylactic use of antimicrobial agents when exposure occurs. The WHO has set a goal to reduce the prevalence of leprosy below one case per 10,000 population. WHO epidemiologists predict that such a low prevalence will permanently interfere with the spread of the bacterium, and leprosy will be eliminated.

Other Mycobacterial Infections

Learning Outcome

19.52 Explain why the incidence of infections with *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare*, long thought to be harmless to humans, has been increasing.

Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare (ā´vē-ŭm in´tra-sel-yu-la´rē), which is commonly found in soil, water, and food, was long thought to be a harmless occasional member of the respiratory microbiota. However, the advent of the AIDS epidemic has unmasked it as an important opportunistic pathogen and the cause of an emerging disease that is the most common mycobacterial infection among AIDS patients in the United States. (*M. tuberculosis* is more common in countries where tuberculosis is epidemic.) Infections are believed to result from the ingestion of contaminated food or water; direct person-to-person transmission does not occur. The bacterium spreads throughout the body via the lymph.

In contrast to infections with other mycobacteria, *M. avium-intracellulare* simultaneously affects almost every organ of the body. In some tissues, every cell is packed with mycobacteria, and during the terminal stages of AIDS the blood is often filled with thousands of bacteria per milliliter. The disease remains asymptomatic until organ failure occurs on a massive scale.

Treatment consists of trial-and-error administration of antimicrobial agents; the disseminated nature of the infection often makes treatment ineffectual.

Emerging Disease Case Study: Buruli Ulcer examines another disease of mycobacteria.

Propionibacterium

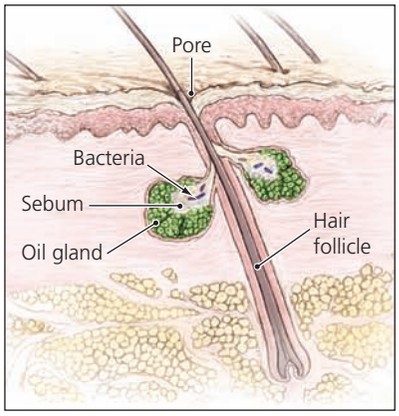
Learning Outcomes

19.53 Identify the species of *Propionibacterium* most commonly involved in infections of humans.

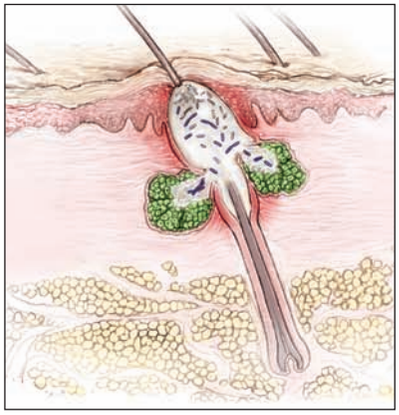
19.54 Explain the role of *P. acnes* in the formation of acne.

Propionibacteria are small, Gram-positive, anaerobic rods commonly found growing on the skin. They are so named because they produce propionic acid as a by-product of the fermentation of carbohydrates. The species most commonly involved in infections of humans is *Propionibacterium acnes* (prō-pē-on-i-bak-tēr-ē-ŭm ak´nēz), which causes **acne** in 85% of adolescents and young adults. The bacterium can also be an opportunistic pathogen in patients with intrusive medical devices such as catheters, artificial heart valves, artificial joints, and cerebrospinal fluid shunts.

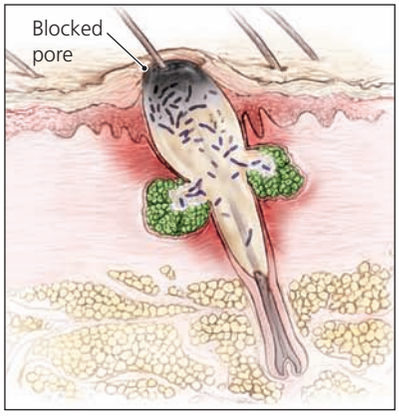
In its role in the development of acne **(Figure 19.28)**, *Propionibacterium* typically grows in the oil glands of the skin 1. Excessive production of oil—called sebum—is triggered by the hormones of adolescence, particularly testosterone in males. The excess oil stimulates the growth and reproduction of the bacterium, which secretes chemicals that attract leukocytes. The leukocytes phagocytize the bacteria and release chemicals that stimulate local inflammation. The combination of dead bacteria and dead and living leukocytes makes up the white pus associated with the pimples of acne 2. A blackhead is formed when a plug of dead and dying bacteria blocks the gland's pore 3.



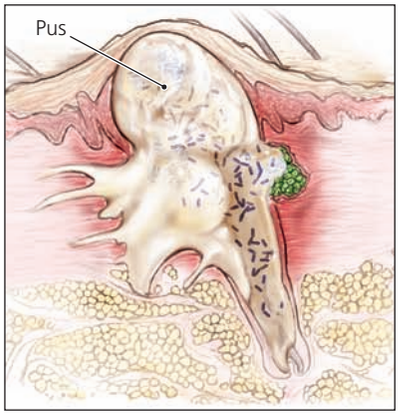
1 Normal skin
Oily sebum produced by glands reaches the hair follicle and is discharged onto the skin surface via the pore.



2 Whitehead
Inflamed skin swells over the pore when bacteria infect the hair follicle, causing the accumulation of colonizing bacteria and sebum.



3 Blackhead
Dead and dying bacteria and sebum form a blockage of the pore.



4 Pustule formation
Severe inflammation of the hair follicle causes pustule formation and rupture, producing cystic acne, which is often resolved by scar tissue formation.

▶ **Figure 19.28 The development of acne.** Normally, oily sebum produced by glands reaches the hair follicle and is discharged from the pore and onto the skin surface 1. When inflammation resulting from bacteria infecting the hair follicle causes the skin to swell over the pore, sebum and the colonizing bacteria accumulate to form a whitehead 2. The blockage of the pore by a plug of dead and dying bacteria and sebum produces a blackhead 3. When the inflammation of the follicle becomes severe enough, pustules form 4 and rupture, producing cystic acne, which is often resolved by the formation of scar tissue. *Which bacterial pathogen is a common cause of cystic acne?*

Figure 19.28 *Propionibacterium acnes is a common cause of acne.*

In *cystic acne,* a particularly severe form of the disease, bacteria form larger, inflamed pustules (cysts) 4 that rupture, triggering the formation of scar tissue.

There are many common misconceptions about acne. Cleaning the surface of the skin is not particularly effective in preventing the development of acne because the bacteria live deep in the sebaceous glands, though frequent cleansing may dry the skin, which helps loosen plugs from hair follicles. Scientists have not shown any connection between acne and diet, including chocolate or oily foods.

In most cases the immune system is able to control *Propionibacterium,* and no treatment is required. Dermatologists may prescribe antimicrobial drugs, such as erythromycin and clindamycin, which have proven effective in controlling the bacterium. However, long-term antibiotic use can destroy susceptible normal bacterial microbiota, making the individual more vulnerable to opportunistic fungal and bacterial infections that are resistant to antimicrobial drugs. *Retinoic acid (Accutane),* a derivative of vitamin A, inhibits the formation of body oil. Because this drug can cause intestinal bleeding, it is prescribed only for severe cases of acne. Further, it causes birth defects and thus should not be used by pregnant women.

In the previous few sections we have discussed pathogenic, non-endospore-forming, high G + C rods in the genera *Corynebacterium, Mycobacterium,* and *Propionibacterium.* Now we will consider filamentous, high G + C pathogens in the genera *Nocardia* and *Actinomyces.*

Nocardia and *Actinomyces*

Learning Outcome

19.55 Compare and contrast *Nocardia asteroides* and *Actinomyces* in terms of appearance, cell wall composition, and role in producing disease.

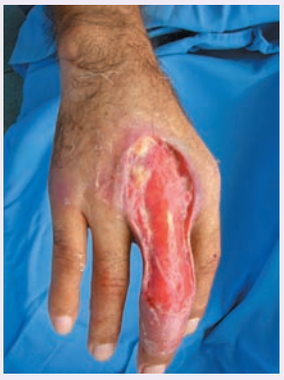
Nocardia and *Actinomyces* have elongated filamentous cells that resemble fungal hyphae. The cell walls of *Nocardia* contain mycolic acid, so the cells are difficult to Gram stain, but they are acid fast. *Actinomyces* stains purple in a Gram stain.

Nocardia asteroides

Nocardia asteroides (nō-kar´dē-ă as-ter-oy´dēz), a common inhabitant of soils rich in organic matter, is the most common pathogen in this genus, accounting for about 90% of infections.

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

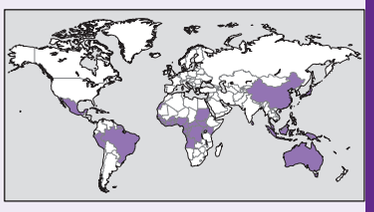
BURULI ULCER



Jacques liked living in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC)—opportunities abounded for exploration, adventure, and wildlife photography, the countryside was beautiful, and he found the people generally friendly. It was on a photographic excursion to the east that Jacques met a not-so-friendly resident of the DRC, an emerging mycobacterial pathogen.

The photographer thought little of the small scratch he received while documenting wildlife in the swamps along the great Congo River, but he should have been concerned; *Mycobacterium ulcerans* had found a new home in his hand. Jacques would pay a grievous price for his lack of care.

He continued to ignore the infection when it produced a small, painless nodule. He even ignored it when his finger swelled to twice its normal size; it was painless, and he could still meet his busy schedule. But the bacterium was producing a potent toxin known as mycolactone, which destroys cells below the skin, especially fat and muscle cells. Though his hand continued to swell, making it difficult to work normally, there still was no pain.

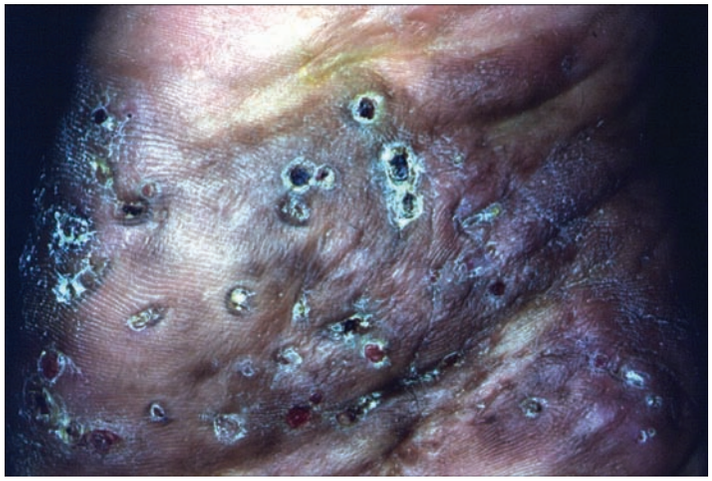


After six weeks of this condition, pain began suddenly and excruciatingly. The swollen finger ruptured, and a foul-smelling fluid saturated his camera. It was time to see a doctor.

The physician diagnosed Buruli ulcer, an emerging disease that affects more people each year as a result of human encroachment into the swamps where *M. ulcerans* lives. After two surgeries to remove dead tissue and the focus of the infection, several skin grafts, and two months of treatment with the antimicrobial drugs rifampicin and streptomycin, Jacques was released with scars that forever remind him of his adventure with *M. ulcerans*.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

N. asteroides is an opportunistic bacterial pathogen that infects numerous sites, including the lungs, skin, and central nervous system. Pulmonary infections develop following inhalation, cutaneous infections result from introduction of the bacteria into wounds, and infections of the central nervous system and other internal organs follow the spread of the bacterium in the blood.



▲ **Figure 19.29** A *Nocardia* infection.

In the lungs, *Nocardia* causes pneumonia accompanied by signs and symptoms typical of pulmonary infections—cough, shortness of breath, and fever. Cutaneous infections may produce **mycetoma,** a painless, long-lasting infection characterized by swelling, pus production, and draining sores **(Figure 19.29)**.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Microscopic examination of samples of skin, sputum, pus, or cerebrospinal fluid is usually sufficient to suspect infection with *Nocardia;* the presence of long, acid-fast, hypha-like cells is diagnostic. Treatment usually involves six weeks of an appropriate antimicrobial drug; sulfonamides are the drugs of choice. Although such treatment is usually sufficient for localized infections in patients with normal immune systems, the prognosis for immunocompromised patients with widespread infections is poor. Prevention of nocardial diseases involves avoiding exposure to the bacterium in soil, especially by immunocompromised patients.

Actinomyces

Actinomyces (ak´ti-nō-mī´sēz) is another genus characterized by hypha-like cells **(Figure 19.30a)**, as reflected in the name of the genus, which means "ray fungus" in Greek. Despite the name, *Actinomyces* is not a fungus but a bacterium. Unlike *Nocardia, Actinomyces* is not acid fast and stains purple when Gram stained.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

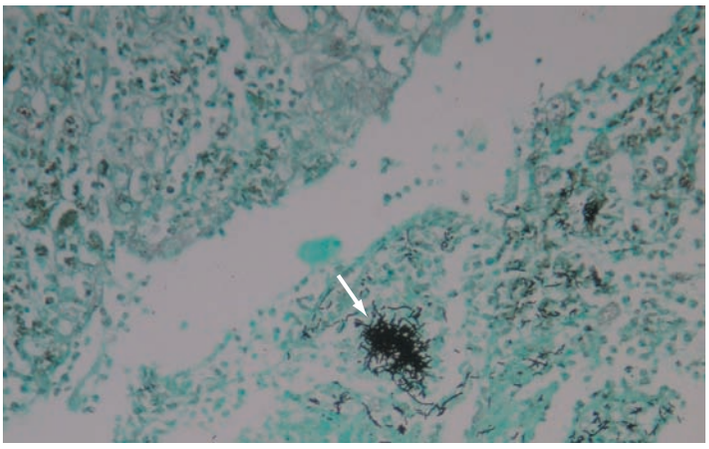
THIS COUGH CAN KILL

A jumbo jet finally takes off from the airport in Johannesburg, South Africa, and Lance relaxes in his business-class seat. The next stop, 16 hours later, will be Atlanta, Georgia. Lance has just spent six weeks interning with a South African law firm that specializes in human rights issues. His work took him to clients living in crowded conditions in several poor townships. Now Lance's thoughts turn to the upcoming fall term, when he will practically live in a study carrel, law books his constant companions.

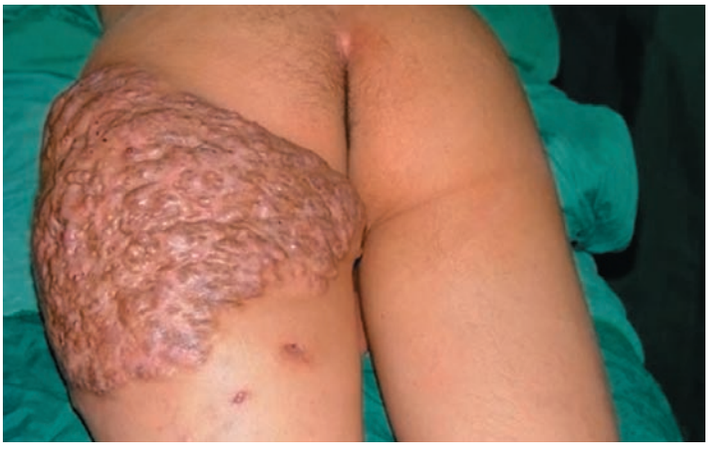
The deep coughing of a woman sitting beside him interrupts his reverie. He glances at her; she is thin and huddles against the armrest, looking pale and tired. She often rubs her chest as if it hurts. When the flight attendant offers the woman something to eat and drink, she turns everything down. Her loud, incessant coughing continues for the entire flight, interrupting Lance's sleep.

Four weeks later, Lance opens a letter from the state department of health and learns that he may have breathed in a potentially deadly bacterium on that flight from South Africa. The letter advises Lance to have a physician administer a skin test to determine if he has been infected, but it also tells him that he must wait eight more weeks before being tested.

1. What bacterium was Lance exposed to on the flight?
2. Why does he need to wait so long before being tested?
3. What is the name of the skin test?
4. If the skin test is positive, what will be the physician's recommendation to confirm the test?



(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 19.30** ***Actinomyces.*** **(a)** A Gomori methenamine silver stain of pus containing the bacteria, which resemble fungal hyphae (compare with Figure 12.15) and may form visible yellow aggregations that look like grains of sand. **(b)** Lesions of actinomycosis.

Colonies of *Actinomyces* form visible concretions resembling grains of sand. Even though the yellow of these multicellular structures has prompted the name "sulfur granules," they are in fact held together by calcium phosphate.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

Actinomyces is a normal member of the surface microbiota of human mucous membranes. It can become an opportunistic pathogen of the respiratory, gastrointestinal, urinary, and female genital tracts, and it sometimes causes dental caries (cavities). It also causes a disease called **actinomycosis** when it enters breaks in the mucous membranes resulting from trauma, surgery, or infection by other pathogens. Actinomycosis is characterized by the formation of multiple abscesses connected by channels in the skin or mucous membranes **(Figure 19.30b)**.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Diagnosis of actinomycosis is difficult because other organisms cause similar symptoms, and it is difficult to show that the presence of *Actinomyces* is not merely contamination from its normal site on the mucous membranes. Often a health care worker collects and crushes a "sulfur granule" to reveal the presence of filamentous cells.

Treatment involves surgical removal of the infected tissue and the administration of penicillin for 4 to 12 months. Prevention of *Actinomyces* infections involves good oral hygiene and the prolonged use of prophylactic antimicrobials if trauma or surgery broaches the mucous membranes.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Staphylococcus (pp. 539–543)

1. *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* are found on the skin and in the upper respiratory, gastrointestinal, and urogenital tracts. *S. aureus* is the more virulent, partly because of its production of various enzymes (including coagulase and staphylokinase) and several toxins.
2. Food poisoning is a noninvasive disease caused by *Staphylococcus.* Cutaneous diseases caused by *Staphylococcus* include **staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, impetigo, folliculitis, sties, furuncles,** and **carbuncles.**
3. Potentially fatal systemic infections caused by *Staphylococcus* include **toxic-shock syndrome, non-streptococca (TSS); bacteremia; endocarditis; pneumonia; empyema;** and **osteomyelitis.**
4. **Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA),** which is resistant to many antimicrobials including methicillin, is an emerging nosocomial and community-acquired threat. **Vancomycin-resistant *S. aureus* (VRSA)** is also emerging as a threat as vancomycin is used against MRSA.

Streptococcus (pp. 543–549)

1. Cells of **group A *Streptococcus*** *(Streptococcus pyogenes)* produce M protein and a hyaluronic acid capsule, each of which contributes to the virulence of the species. Enzymes and toxins produced by *S. pyogenes* dissolve blood clots, stimulate fever, and lyse blood cells.
2. The diseases caused by group A streptococci include **pharyngitis** ("strep throat"), **scarlet fever** (scarlatina), **pyoderma** (impetigo), **erysipelas, streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (STSS), necrotizing fasciitis** ("flesh-eating bacteria"), **rheumatic fever,** and **glomerulonephritis.**
3. Cells of **group B *Streptococcus*** *(S. agalactiae)* occur normally in the lower GI, genital, and urinary tracts. They are associated with neonatal diseases and are treated with penicillin.
4. The **viridans group** of alpha-hemolytic streptococci include members that inhabit the mouth, pharynx, GI tract, and genitourinary tracts; cause dental **caries** (cavities); and can enter the blood to cause bacteremia, meningitis, and endocarditis.
5. Virulent strains of *Streptococcus pneumoniae* are protected by polysaccharide capsules and phosphorylcholine in their cell walls. These bacteria secrete protein adhesin, secretory IgA protease, and pneumolysin, which lyses cells in the lungs.
6. **Pneumococcal pneumonia** is the most prevalent disease caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* infection. Other diseases include **sinusitis** (inflammation of the nasal sinuses), **otitis media** (inflammation of the middle ear), bacteremia, endocarditis, and meningitis.

Enterococcus (pp. 549–550)

1. *Enterococci* are normal members of the intestinal microbiota that can cause nosocomial bacteremia, endocarditis, and wound infections.

Bacillus (pp. 550–552)

1. *Bacillus anthracis* secretes anthrax toxin, which can cause three forms of **anthrax:** gastrointestinal anthrax (rare and fatal, with intestinal hemorrhaging), cutaneous anthrax (can be fatal if untreated), and inhalation anthrax (often fatal).

Clostridium (pp. 552–556)

1. *Clostridium perfringens* produces 11 toxins that lyse blood cells and cause diseases such as food poisoning and **gas gangrene.**
2. *Clostridium difficile* is an intestinal bacterium that can cause a self-limiting explosive diarrhea or a life-threatening **pseudomembranous colitis.**
3. *Clostridium botulinum* is an anaerobic, endospore-forming bacterium that can release an extremely poisonous toxin in improperly canned food, causing **botulism.** Infant botulism occurs when the pathogen grows in the gastrointestinal tract of an infant. Wound botulism results when the bacterial endospores germinate in surgical or traumatic wounds.
4. *Clostridium tetani* is a ubiquitous bacterium that enters the body via a break in the skin and causes **tetanus** due to the action of **tetanospasmin.** Immunization is effective in preventing this disease.

Listeria (pp. 556–559)

1. *Listeria monocytogenes* is rarely pathogenic but can cause severe disease in pregnant women, newborns, the elderly, and immunocompromised patients.

Mycoplasmas (pp. 559–561)

1. **Mycoplasmas,** the smallest free-living microbes, lack cell walls. They are mostly facultative anaerobes. The colonies of most mycoplasmas have a "fried egg" appearance.
2. *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* is a human pathogen that affects the epithelial cells of the respiratory tract and causes **primary atypical pneumonia** (walking pneumonia). It does not form "fried-egg" colonies on agar.
3. *Mycoplasma hominis* can cause **pelvic inflammatory disease** in women.
4. *Mycoplasma genitalium* and *Ureaplasma urealyticum* cause nongonococcal urethritis.
5. Venereal mycoplasmal diseases can be prevented by abstinence, mutually faithful monogamy, and the proper use of condoms.

Corynebacterium (pp. 561–562)

1. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae,* transmitted via respiratory droplets, contains a bacteriophage that codes for diphtheria toxin, which causes the symptoms of the potentially fatal disease **diphtheria.** Diagnosis results from an immunodiffusion assay called an **Elek test.**

Mycobacterium (pp. 562–566)

1. Cell walls of *Mycobacterium* contain **mycolic acid.** *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* with a cell wall component called **cord factor** causes **tuberculosis,** a disease in which the bacteria replicate within macrophages in the lungs and trigger the formation of small, hard nodules called **tubercles**. The **tuberculin skin test** screens for possible TB exposure.
2. *Mycobacterium leprae* causes **leprosy.** Tuberculoid leprosy is a nonprogressive form of the disease, whereas lepromatous leprosy results in progressive destruction of body structures.
3. *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* is an opportunistic pathogen that can become pathogenic in AIDS patients. It adversely affects almost every organ of the body.

Propionibacterium (pp. 566–567)

1. *Propionibacterium acnes* living in the sebaceous glands of the skin causes adolescent **acne.** The bacterium may also infect patients who have intrusive medical devices. Antimicrobial drugs are more effective than topical products in the treatment of acne.

Nocardia and *Actinomyces* (pp. 567–569)

1. The opportunistic pathogen *Nocardia asteroides* has elongated cells resembling fungal hyphae; it is acid fast because of the presence of mycolic acid in its cell wall. Cutaneous infections may produce **mycetoma.**
2. *Actinomyces* is another opportunistic pathogen with elongated cells, but it is not acid fast. It causes **actinomycosis.**

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Which of the following bacteria causes a type of food poisoning?
   a. *Streptococcus sanguis*
   b. *Clostridium tetani*
   c. *Staphylococcus aureus*
   d. *Streptococcus pyogenes*

2. How does *Staphylococcus aureus* affect the matrix between cells in the human body?
   a. *S. aureus* triggers blood clotting, which coats the matrix and inhibits cellular communication.
   b. *S. aureus* produces an enzyme that dissolves hyaluronic acid and thus enables it to pass between the cells.
   c. *S. aureus* possesses a hyaluronic acid capsule that causes leukocytes to ignore the bacterium as if it were camouflaged.
   d. *S. aureus* does not affect the matrix but instead produces a necrotizing agent that dissolves body cells.

3. Which of the following conditions is a systemic disease caused by *Staphylococcus*?
   a. impetigo
   b. folliculitis
   c. carbuncle
   d. toxic-shock syndrome

4. A bacterium associated with bacteremia, meningitis, and pneumonia in newborns is _____.
   a. *Staphylococcus aureus*
   b. *Staphylococcus epidermidis*
   c. *Streptococcus pyogenes*
   d. *Streptococcus agalactiae*

5. Which type of anthrax is much more common in animals than in humans?
   a. cutaneous anthrax
   b. inhalation anthrax
   c. gastrointestinal anthrax
   d. mucoid anthrax

6. Of the following genera, which can survive the harshest conditions?
   a. *Staphylococcus*
   b. *Clostridium*
   c. *Mycobacterium*
   d. *Actinomyces*

7. Pathogenic strains that have become resistant to antimicrobial drugs are found in which of the following genera?
   a. *Staphylococcus*
   b. *Mycobacterium*
   c. *Enterococcus*
   d. all of the above

8. The bacterium causing pseudomembranous colitis is _____.
   a. *Clostridium difficile*
   b. *Streptococcus pyogenes*
   c. *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare*
   d. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*

9. Mycoplasmas _____.
   a. lack cell walls
   b. are pleomorphic
   c. have sterol in their membranes
   d. all of the above

10. In which of the following diseases would a patient experience a pseudomembrane covering the tonsils, pharynx, and larynx?
    a. tuberculoid leprosy
    b. diphtheria
    c. arrhythmia
    d. tetanus

11. Which of the following is *not* characteristic of mycoplasmas?
    a. cytochromes
    b. sterols in cytoplasmic membranes
    c. use of UGA codon for tryptophan
    d. rRNA nucleotide sequences similar to those of Gram-positive bacteria

Matching

For each of the following diseases or conditions, indicate the genus (or genera) of bacterium that causes it.

1. ____ Scalded skin syndrome
2. ____ Osteomyelitis
3. ____ Pharyngitis
4. ____ Scarlet fever
5. ____ Pyoderma
6. ____ Rheumatic fever
7. ____ Glomerulonephritis
8. ____ Sinusitis
9. ____ Otitis media
10. ____ Anthrax
11. ____ Myonecrosis
12. ____ Diphtheria
13. ____ Leprosy
14. ____ Dental caries
15. ____ Acne

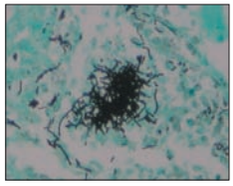
A. *Staphylococcus*
B. *Streptococcus*
C. *Mycobacterium*
D. *Listeria*
E. *Propionibacterium*
F. *Corynebacterium*
G. *Bacillus*
H. *Clostridium*
I. *Actinomyces*

Short Answer

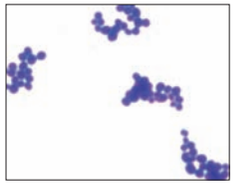
1. Why are mycoplasmas able to survive a relatively wide range of osmotic conditions, even though these bacteria lack cell walls?
2. *Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* was considered relatively harmless until the late 20th century, when it became common in certain infections. Explain how this bacterium's pathogenicity changed.
3. Contrast tuberculoid leprosy with lepromatous leprosy in terms of pathogenesis. How does the cellular immune response of a patient affect the form of the disease?
4. On a trans-atlantic flight, a Latvian passenger with tuberculosis sits next to a Canadian businessman, who later develops tuberculosis and dies. Trace the path of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* from a droplet of mucus leaving the European passenger to within the businessman and explain how the disease became fatal.
5. Explain how mice are used in the diagnosis of botulism poisoning.
6. Why do pediatricians recommend that children under one year never be fed honey?
7. Explain why Gram-positive mycoplasmas appear pink in a Gram-stained smear.
8. Explain the different actions of pyogenic and pyrogenic toxins.
9. Explain why *Staphylococcus epidermidis* is rarely pathogenic while the similar *S. aureus* is more commonly virulent.
10. Why did epidemiologists immediately suspect terrorism in the cases of anthrax in the fall of 2001?
11. Explain the action of the toxin of *Clostridium tetani.*
12. Why is mycolic acid a virulence factor for mycobacteria?
13. Compare and contrast mycoplasmas and viruses.

Visualize It!

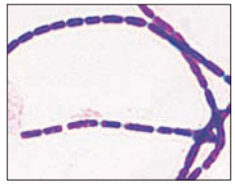
1. Match the genera of pathogens to their appearance in stained smears: *Actinomyces, Bacillus, Clostridium, Mycobacterium, Staphylococcus, Streptococcus.*



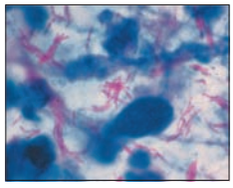
(a) Methenamine silver



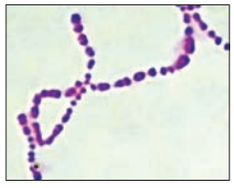
(b) Gram



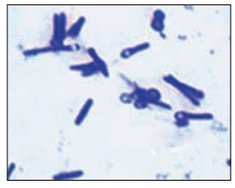
(c) Gram



(d) Acid fast

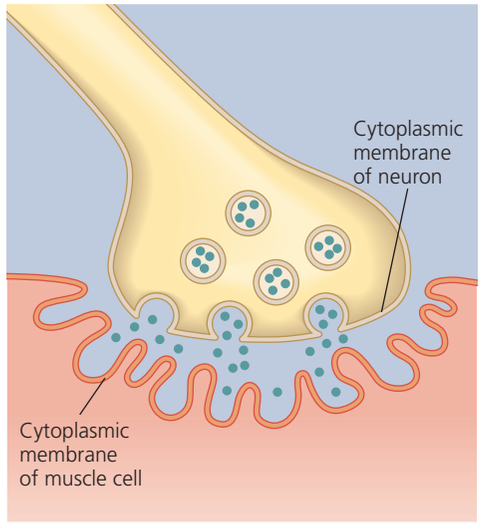


(e) Gram



(f) Gram

2. Label acetylcholine. Color the sites of action of botulism toxin on a nerve cell.



Critical Thinking

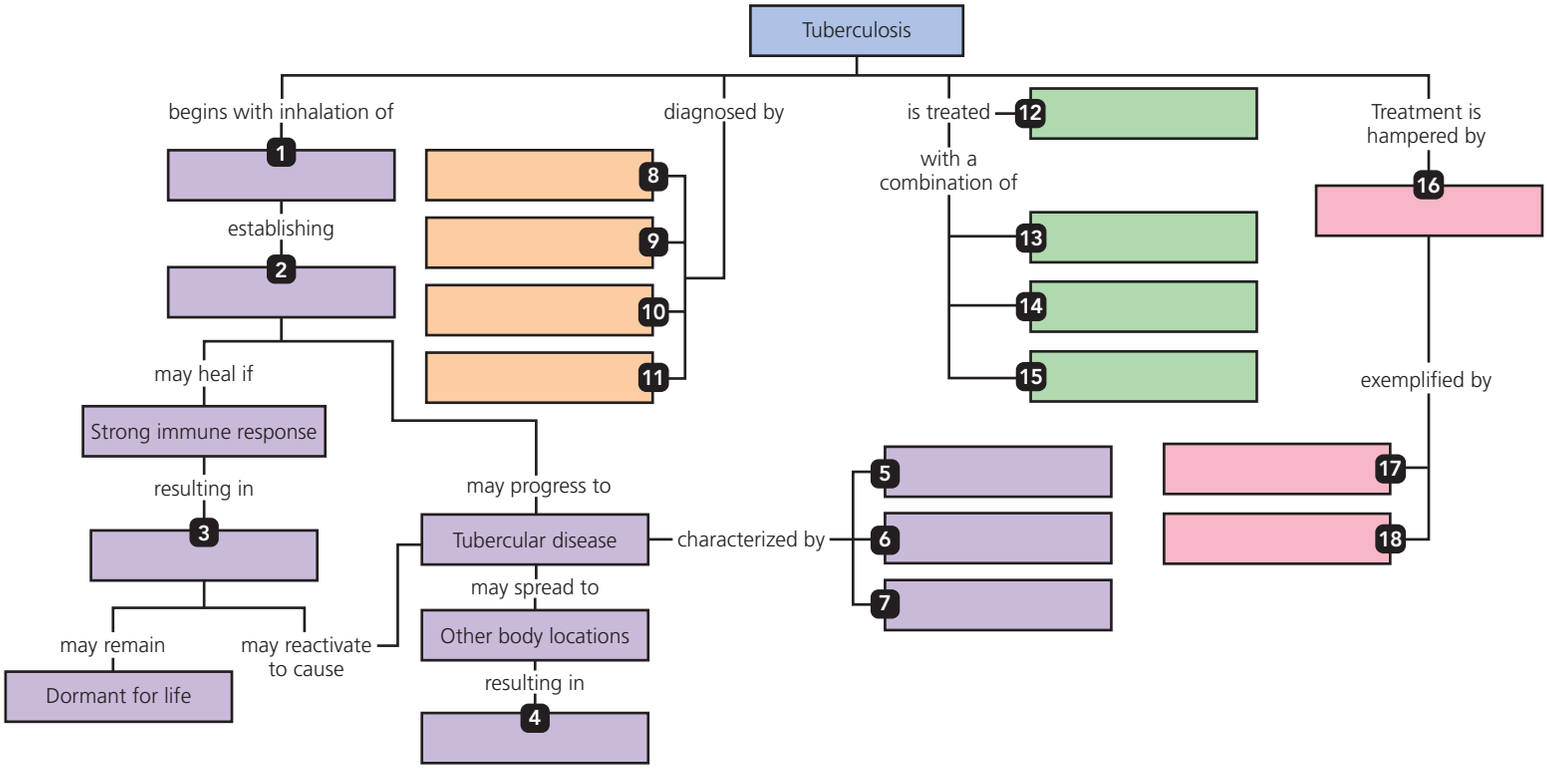
1. A few days after the death of a child hospitalized with a MRSA infection, another child who had been admitted to the hospital with viral pneumonia worsened and died. An autopsy revealed that the second child also died from complications of MRSA. By what route was the second child likely infected? What should hospital personnel do to limit the transfer of MRSA and other bacteria among patients?
2. An elderly man is admitted to the hospital with severe pneumonia, from which he eventually dies. What species is the most likely cause of his infection? What antimicrobial drug is effective against this species? How could the man have been protected from infection? Is the hospital staff at significant risk of infection from the man? Which groups of patients would be at risk if the man had visited their rooms before he died?
3. Botulism toxin can be used as an antidote for tetanus. Can tetanus toxin be used as an antidote for botulism? Why or why not?
4. A blood bank refused to accept blood from a potential donor who had just had his teeth cleaned by a dental hygienist. Why did they refuse the blood?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes tuberculosis. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Acid-fast stain of sputum
Antibiotic resistance
Blood-tinged sputum
Chest X ray
Cough
Culture on special media
Disseminated tuberculosis
Dormant infection
Ethambutol
Extensive lung damage
For 6–12 months
Isoniazid (INH)
MDR-TB
Mycobacterium tuberculosis
Primary infection
Rifampin
Tuberculin skin test
XDR-TB



20 Pathogenic Gram-Negative Cocci and Bacilli

A New Mexico couple vacationing in New York City fell ill with **flulike symptoms**. A few days later they were admitted to a hospital, suffering from chills and a high fever. The wife had developed a **"bubo"** (a severely swollen lymph node) on her thigh, leading doctors to suspect bubonic plague—the dreaded **"black death"** that killed one-third of all Europeans during the 14th century but had not been seen in New York City in over 100 years. Subsequent tests confirmed that they were indeed infected with *Yersinia pestis*, the causative bacterium of **plague**. The wife was administered antibiotics and recovered quickly, but her husband worsened, requiring **amputation** of both feet and hospitalization for three months. Authorities later determined that the couple had most likely contracted the disease from infected **fleas** encountered near their property in rural New Mexico.

Y. pestis is one example of a **Gram-negative pathogen**—a group that also includes the genera *Escherichia*, *Salmonella*, and *Legionella*. Gram-negative pathogens cause a wide variety of human diseases. In this chapter we study important Gram-negative **cocci and bacilli** and major human diseases they cause.

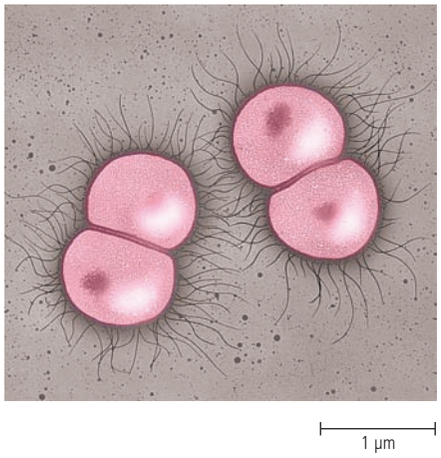
Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Yersina pestis, a Gram-negative, rod-shaped bacterium, causes one of history's more feared diseases—bubonic plague.

Numerous Gram-negative, cocci, bacilli, and coccobacilli are bacterial pathogens of humans. In fact, Gram-negative bacteria constitute the largest group of human bacterial pathogens, in part because the outer membrane of a Gram-negative bacterial cell wall contains lipid A (see Figure 3.14). Lipid A triggers fever, vasodilation, inflammation, shock, and **disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)**—the formation of blood clots within blood vessels throughout the body. Almost every Gram-negative bacterium that can breach the skin or mucous membranes, grow at 37°C, and evade the immune system can cause disease and death in humans; however, most of the Gram-negative bacteria that cause disease fall into fewer than 30 genera.

We have seen that it is possible to group these organisms according to a variety of criteria. Gram-negative bacteria are placed in *Bergey's Manual of Systematic Poacteriology* based largely on genomic similarities; here we primarily consider them according to a different organizational scheme, one that traditionally has been used for many clinical purposes—according to their shapes, oxygen requirements, and other biochemical properties.

First we survey the primary genus of Gram-negative cocci that are pathogenic to humans, then we consider 15 genera of pathogenic, facultatively anaerobic bacilli in the families Enterobacteriaceae and Pasteurellaceae, which account for almost half of all Gram-negative pathogens. Finally, we examine a heterogeneous collection of 10 genera of pathogenic, Gram-negative aerobic bacilli before concluding by considering two genera of strictly anaerobic pathogenic bacilli.



▲ **Figure 20.1 Artist's rendition of diplococci of *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.** *What function of gonococcal fimbriae contributes to the bacterium's pathogenicity?*

Figure 20.1 *The fimbriae act as adhesins, enabling gonococci to adhere to cells lining the cervix and urethra and to sperm, which allows* Neisseria *to travel far into the female reproductive tract.*

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Cocci: *Neisseria*

Neisseria (nī-se´rē-ă) is the only genus of Gram-negative cocci that regularly causes disease in humans. *Neisseria* is placed in the class Betaproteobacteria of the phylum Proteobacteria. Morphologically similar pathogenic bacteria in the genera *Moraxella* (mōr´ak-sel´ă) and *Acinetobacter* (as-i-nē´tō-bak´ter), considered coccobacilli, are now known to be more closely related to aerobic bacilli in class Gammaproteobacteria and thus are discussed in a later section.

Structure and Physiology of *Neisseria*

Learning Outcome

20.1 List three structural features of *Neisseria* that contribute to its pathogenicity.

The cells of all strains of *Neisseria* are nonmotile and typically arranged as diplococci (pairs) with their common sides flattened in a manner reminiscent of coffee beans **(Figure 20.1)**. In addition to their shape, these aerobic bacteria are distinguished from many other Gram-negative pathogens by being *oxidase positive* (see Figure 20.4); that is, their electron transport chains contain the enzyme *cytochrome oxidase*. Pathogenic strains of *Neisseria* also have fimbriae and polysaccharide capsules, as well as a major cell wall antigen called *lipooligosaccharide* (lip´ō-ol-i-gō-sak´a-rīd; *LOS*), composed of lipid A (endotoxin) and sugar molecules—all of which enable the bacteria to attach to and invade human cells. Cells of *Neisseria* that lack any one of these three structural features are typically avirulent.

In the laboratory, *Neisseria* is fastidious in its growth requirements. Microbiologists culture this bacterium on either autoclaved blood agar (called *chocolate agar* because of its appearance) or a selective medium called *modified Thayer-Martin medium*. *Neisseria* is particularly susceptible to drying and extremes of temperature. A moist culture atmosphere containing 5% carbon dioxide enhances their growth. Laboratory personnel may use sugar fermentation tests to distinguish among strains of *Neisseria;* pathogenic strains, for example, are unable to ferment maltose, sucrose, or lactose.

Two species of *Neisseria* are pathogenic to humans: the so-called gonococcus, *N. gonorrhoeae* (go-nor-rē´ī), which causes gonorrhea, and the meningococcus, *N. meningitidis* (me-nin-jī´ti-dis), which causes a type of meningitis.

The Gonococcus: *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

Learning Outcomes

20.2 Compare and contrast the symptoms of gonorrhea in men and women.

20.3 Discuss the difficulties researchers face in developing an effective vaccine against *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

Neisseria gonorrhoeae causes **gonorrhea** (gon-ō-rē´ă), which has been known as a sexually transmitted disease for centuries, although the disease was confused with syphilis until the 19th century. In the second century A.D., the Roman physician Claudius Galen named gonorrhea for what he thought was its cause—an

excess of semen (gonorrhea means "flow of seed" in Greek). The disease is sometimes called "clap" from an archaic French word *clapoir,* meaning brothel.

Gonorrhea occurs in humans only. Even though it is one of the more common sexually transmitted diseases in the United States, the number of cases among civilians has been declining over the past few decades **(Figure 20.2a)**. Most U.S. cases of gonorrhea occur in adolescents, particularly among those who engage in a promiscuous sexual lifestyle in several southeastern states **(Figure 20.2b)**. The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) has a goal to reduce the incidence of gonorrhea to below 19 cases per 100,000 population. This incidence will theoretically eliminate the disease in the United States.

The disease is more common among females than males. Whereas women have a 50% chance of becoming infected during a single sexual encounter with an infected man, men have only a 20% chance of infection during a single encounter with an infected woman. An individual's risk of infection increases with increasing numbers of sexual encounters.

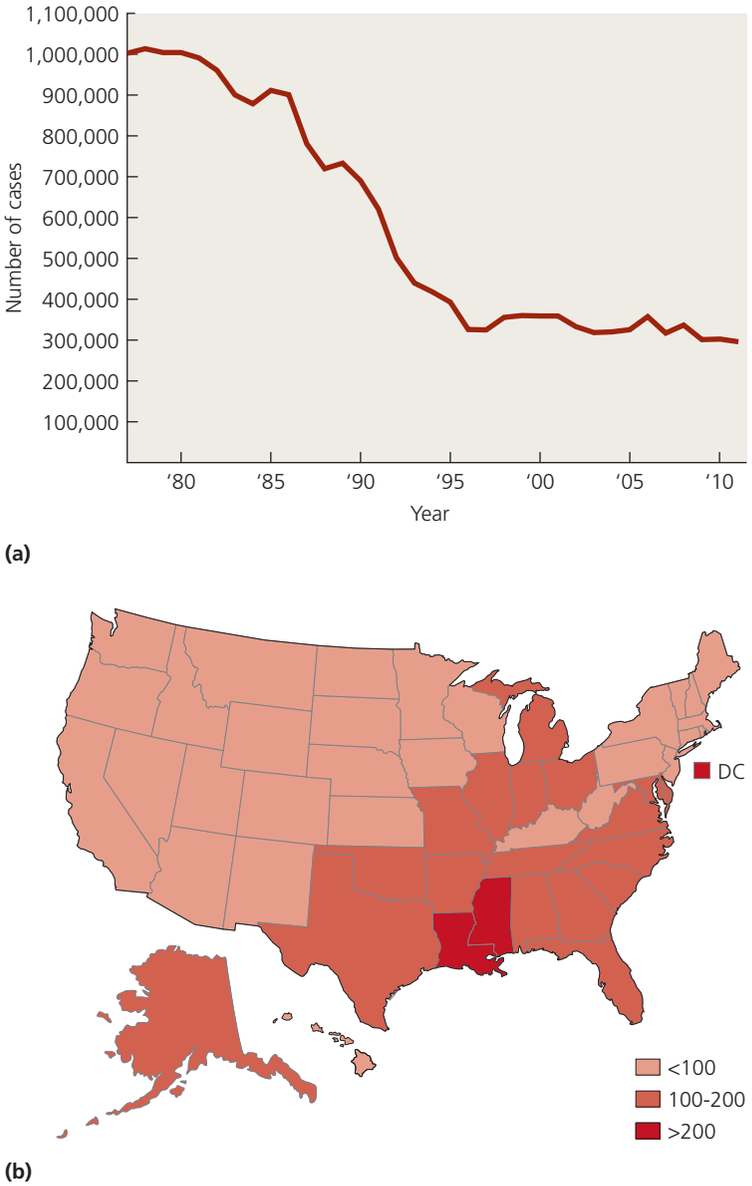
Gonococci adhere, via their fimbriae and capsules, to epithelial cells of the mucous membranes lining the genital, urinary, and digestive tracts of humans. As few as 100 pairs of cells can cause disease. The cocci protect themselves from the immune system by secreting a protease enzyme that cleaves secretory IgA in mucus. Further, endocytized bacteria survive and multiply within neutrophils. As the bacteria multiply, they invade deeper connective tissues, often while being transported intracellularly by phagocytes.

In men, gonorrhea is usually insufferably symptomatic—acute inflammation typically occurs two to five days after infection in the urethra of the penis, causing extremely painful urination and a purulent (pus-filled) discharge. Rarely, gonococci invade the prostate or epididymis, where the formation of scar tissue can render the man infertile. In contrast, recently acquired gonorrhea in women is often asymptomatic; about 50% of infected women have no symptoms or obvious signs of infection. Even when women do have symptoms, they often mistake them for a bladder infection or vaginal yeast infection.

Neisseria cannot attach to cells lining the vagina; instead, the bacteria most commonly infect the cervix of the uterus. Gonococci can infect deep in the uterus and even the uterine (Fallopian) tubes by "hitchhiking" to these locations on sperm to which they attach by means of fimbriae or LOS. In the uterine tubes they can trigger inflammation, fever, and abdominal pain—a condition known as **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID).** Chronic infections can lead to scarring of the tubes, resulting in *ectopic*[1] *pregnancies* or sterility.

Gonococcal infection of organs outside the reproductive tracts can also occur. Because a woman's urethral opening is close to her vaginal opening, the urethra can become infected with gonococci during sexual intercourse. Anal intercourse can lead to *proctitis* (inflammation of the rectum), and oral sexual intercourse can infect the pharynx or gums, resulting in *pharyngitis* and *gingivitis,* respectively. Oral and anal infections are most commonly seen in men who have sex with men. In very rare cases, gonococci enter the blood and travel to the joints, meninges, or heart, causing arthritis, meningitis, and endocarditis, respectively.

Gonococcal infection of a child during birth can result in inflammation of the cornea, *ophthalmia neonatorum* (inflammation of the conjunctiva in newborns), or blindness. Gonococci can also infect the respiratory tracts of newborns during their passage through the birth canal. Infection of older children with *N. gonorrhoeae* is strong evidence of sexual abuse by an infected adult.



▲ Figure 20.2 Incidence of gonorrhea in the United States. **(a)** The number of new cases annually, (incidence), 1977–2011. **(b)** The geographic distribution of cases reported in 2009. The incidences shown are the number of new cases per 100,000 individuals in each state. *What organism causes gonorrhea?*

Figure 20.2 Gonorrhea is caused by Neisseria gonorrhoeae.

[1]From Greek *ektopos*, meaning "out of place."

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Neisseria gonorrhoeae

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Proteobacteria, class Betaproteobacteria, order Neisseriales, family Neisseriaceae

Other names: Gonococcus

Cell morphology and arrangement: Cocci in pairs

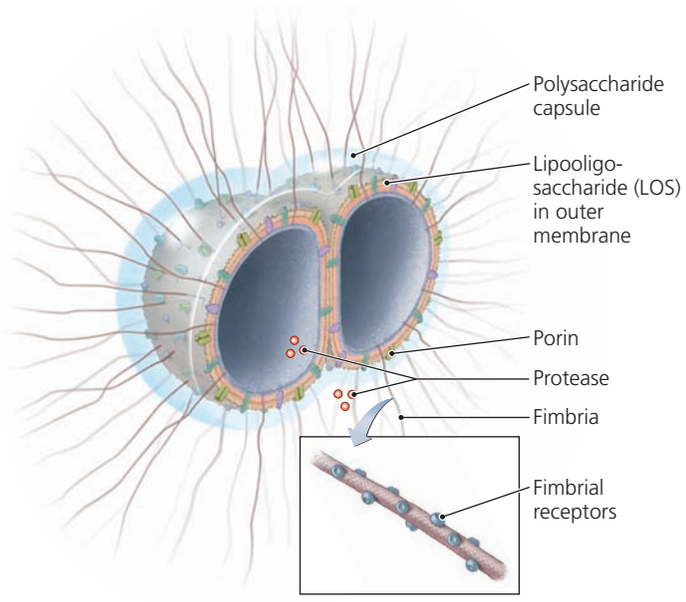
Gram reaction: Negative

Virulence factors: Capsule, fimbriae, and lipooligosaccharide adhere to human cells; IgA protease; can survive inside phagocytic cells; variable surface antigens

Diseases caused: Gonorrhea, pelvic inflammatory disease, ophthalmia neonatorum, proctitis, pharyngitis, gingivitis

Treatment for diseases: Cephalosporins

Prevention of disease: Sexual abstinence, mutually faithful monogamy, consistent and proper use of condoms



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

The presence of Gram-negative diplococci in pus from an inflamed penis is sufficient for a diagnosis of symptomatic gonorrhea in men. For diagnosis of asymptomatic cases of gonorrhea in men and women, commercially available genetic probes provide direct, accurate, rapid detection of *N. gonorrhoeae* in clinical specimens. Alternatively, the bacterium can be cultured on selective media, such as Thayer-Martin agar.

The treatment of gonorrhea has been complicated in recent years by the worldwide spread of gonococcal strains resistant to penicillin, tetracycline, erythromycin, and aminoglycosides. Currently, the CDC recommends broad-spectrum intramuscular cephalosporins to treat gonorrhea.

Long-term specific immunity against *N. gonorrhoeae* does not develop, and thus promiscuous people can be infected multiple times. This lack of immunity is explained in part by the highly variable surface antigens of this bacterium; immunity against one strain often provides no protection against other strains. Further, the existence of many different strains has prevented the development of an effective vaccine.

Except for the routine administration of antimicrobial agents to newborns' eyes, which successfully prevents ophthalmic disease, chemical prophylaxis is ineffective in preventing disease. In fact, the use of antimicrobials to prevent genital disease may select for hardier resistant strains, worsening the situation. The most effective methods of prevention, in order, are sexual abstinence; monogamy with an uninfected, faithful partner; and consistent and proper use of condoms. Efforts to stem the spread of gonorrhea focus on education, aggressive detection, and the screening of all sexual contacts of carriers.

CRITICAL THINKING

Penicillin-resistant strains of *N. gonorrhoeae* produce a plasmid-coded β-lactamase, which degrades penicillin. What changes in structure or metabolism could explain resistance to other antimicrobial drugs in this bacterium?

The Meningococcus: *Neisseria meningitidis*

Learning Outcomes

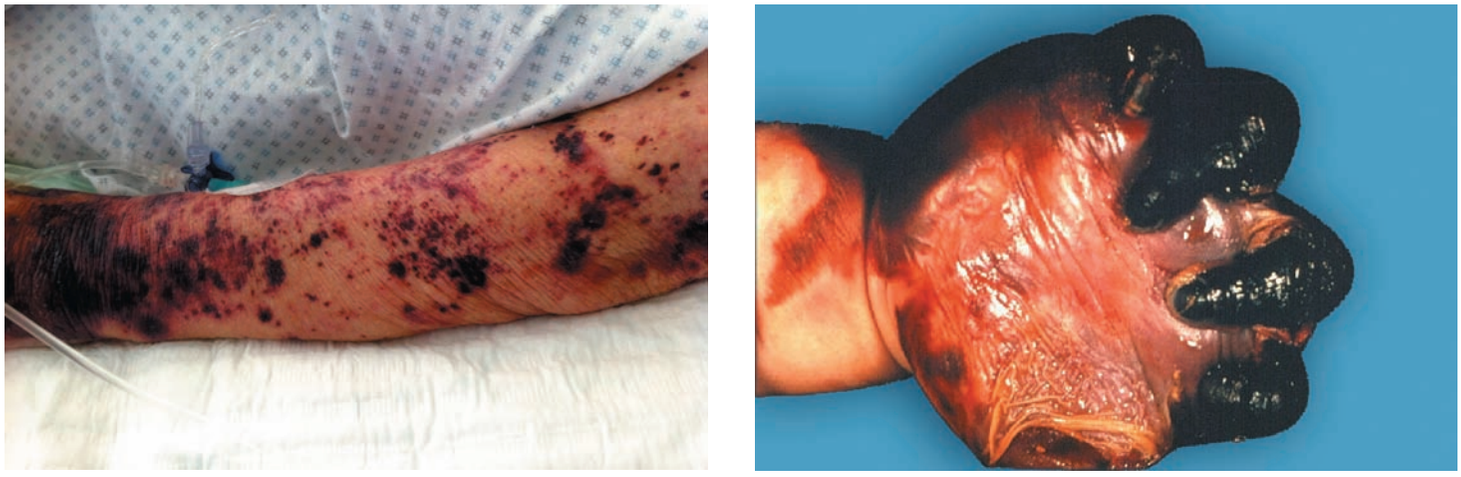
20.4 Describe how meningococci survive and thrive in humans.
20.5 Discuss the epidemiology of meningococcal diseases.

Neisseria meningitidis causes life-threatening diseases when it invades the blood or cerebrospinal fluid.

Pathogenicity, Epidemiology, and Disease

Of the 13 known antigenic strains of meningococci, strains known as A, B, C, and W135 cause most cases of disease in humans. The polysaccharide capsule of *N. meningitidis* resists lytic enzymes of the body's phagocytes, allowing phagocytized meningococci to survive, reproduce, and be carried throughout the body within neutrophils and macrophages. In the United States, the bacterium causes most cases of meningitis in children and adults under 20. Much of the damage caused by *N. meningitidis* results from *blebbing*—a process in which the bacterium sheds extrusions of outer membrane. The lipid A component of LOS thereby released into extracellular spaces triggers fever, vasodilation, inflammation, shock, and DIC.

N. meningitidis is a common member of the normal microbiota in the upper respiratory tracts of up to 40% of healthy people. As a result of crowded living conditions, meningococci are more prevalent in children and young adults from lower economic groups.



(a) (b)

▲ **Figure 20.3 Petechiae in meningococcal septicemia.** These lesions can be diffuse **(a)** or may coalesce in areas containing dead cells **(b).**

Respiratory droplets transmit the bacteria among people living in close contact, especially families, soldiers living in barracks, prisoners, and college students living in dormitories. In fact, meningococcal disease can be 23 times more prevalent in students living in dormitories than in the general population. Individuals whose lungs have been irritated by dust are more susceptible to airborne *Neisseria.* For example, annual outbreaks of meningococcal meningitis can kill tens of thousands in sub-Saharan Africa when dry winter winds create irritating dust storms. Even though meningococcal diseases occur worldwide, cases are relatively rare in countries with advanced health care systems and access to antimicrobial drugs.

The incidence of meningococcal disease in the United States is about 0.3 cases per 100,000 population. Most of these cases are meningitis, usually involving abrupt sore throat, fever, headache, stiff neck, vomiting, and convulsions. (Very young children may have only fever and vomiting.) Arthritis and partial loss of hearing occasionally result. Meningococcal meningitis can progress so rapidly that death results within six hours of the initial symptoms.

Meningococcal septicemia (blood poisoning) can also be life threatening. LOS may trigger shock, devastating blood coagulation in many organs and *petechiae* (pe-tē´kē-ē)—minute hemorrhagic skin lesions—on the trunk and lower extremities **(Figure 20.3a)**. Petechiae may coalesce and combine with regions of cell death to form large black lesions **(Figure 20.3b)**. In some patients, however, septicemia produces only mild fever, arthritis, and petechiae.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Because meningococcal meningitis constitutes a medical emergency, rapid diagnosis is critical. The demonstration of Gram-negative diplococci within cerebrospinal phagocytes is diagnostic for meningococcal disease. Physicians obtain a sample of cerebrospinal fluid using a needle inserted into the lower spinal canal—a procedure called a **spinal tap**. *N. meningitidis* can ferment maltose in laboratory culture, which distinguishes it from *N. gonorrhoeae.* Further, serological tests can demonstrate the presence of antibodies against *N. meningitidis,* though one strain (strain B) is relatively nonimmunogenic and therefore does not react well in such tests.

Despite the fact that meningococcal meningitis proceeds rapidly and is ordinarily 100% fatal when left untreated, immediate treatment with antimicrobial drugs has reduced mortality to less than 10%. Intravenously administered penicillin (a natural penicillin) is the drug of choice.

Because healthy, asymptomatic carriers are common, eradication of meningococcal disease is unlikely. Prevention involves prophylactic treatment with ceftriaxone, ciprofloxacin, or rifampin of anyone exposed to individuals with meningococcal disease, including family, classmates, day care center contacts, roommates, and health care workers. The CDC recommends immunization with a vaccine against strains A, C, and Y, though this vaccine cannot be used with children under two years old. As previously noted, strain B is weakly immunogenic, so immunity to it cannot be induced artificially and must instead develop following a natural infection.

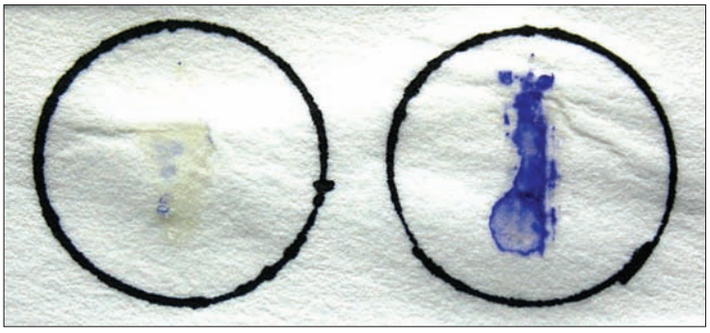
CRITICAL **THINKING**

Investigations of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* have clearly demonstrated that this pathogen can be transmitted among airline passengers; however, as of 2008, no cases of in-flight transmission of the similarly transmitted *N. meningitidis* had been reported to the CDC. What are some possible explanations for the lack of documented cases of in-flight transmission of meningocci?

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Facultatively Anaerobic Bacilli

Learning Outcome

20.6 Describe how members of the family Enterobacteriaceae are distinguished from members of the family Pasteurellaceae.



▲ **Figure 20.4 The oxidase test.** The test distinguishes members of the family Enterobacteriaceae (left), which are oxidase negative, from members of the family Pasteurellaceae, which are oxidase positive, as indicated by a purple color.

Two families of facultatively anaerobic bacilli and coccobacilli in the class Gammaproteobacteria—Enterobacteriaceae and Pasteurellaceae—contain most of the Gram-negative pathogens of humans. Scientists distinguish between members of the two families by performing an oxidase test: members of the Enterobacteriaceae are oxidase negative, whereas members of the Pasteurellaceae are oxidase positive **(Figure 20.4)**.

We begin our survey of these microorganisms by examining the family Enterobacteriaceae, which contains about 150 species in 41 genera, including some of the more important nosocomial pathogens of humans **(Figure 20.5)**.

The Enterobacteriaceae: An Overview

Learning Outcomes

20.7 Discuss how members of the family Enterobacteriaceae are distinguished in the laboratory.

20.8 List six virulence factors found in members of the family Enterobacteriaceae.

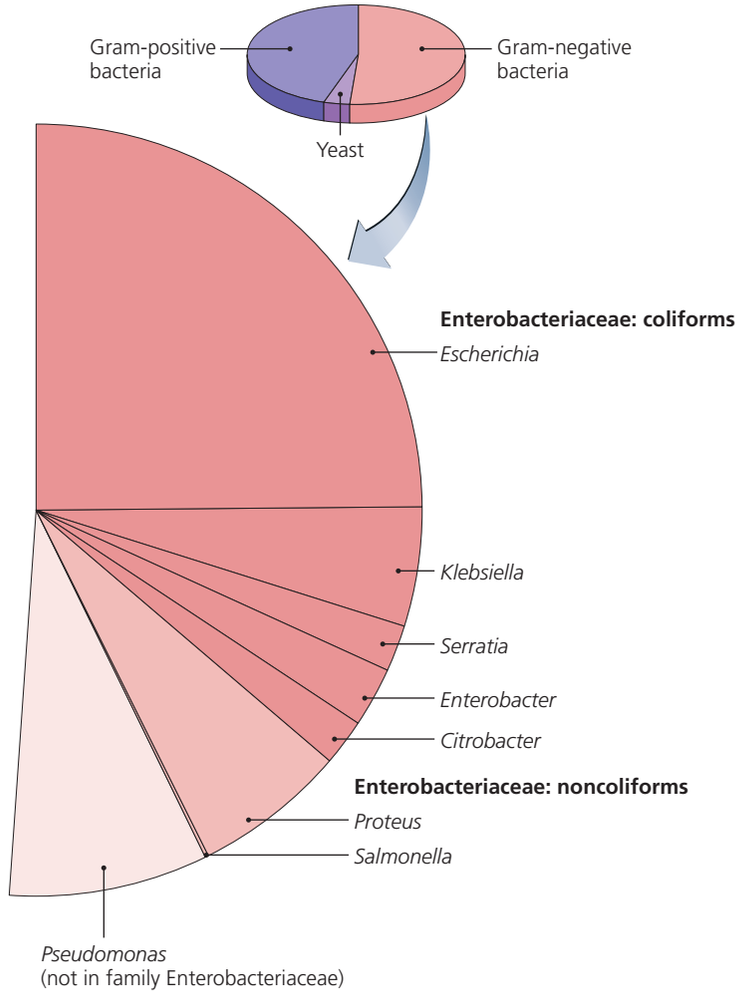
20.9 Describe the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of diseases of enteric bacteria.

As their name suggests, prokaryotes in the family **Enterobacteriaceae** (en´ter-ō-bak-tēr-ē-ā´sē-ē)—also called **enteric bacteria**—are members of the intestinal microbiota of most animals and humans. They are also ubiquitous in water, soil, and decaying vegetation. Some species are always pathogenic in humans, whereas others are opportunists normally found in the intestinal microbiota that become pathogenic when introduced into other body sites.

As a group, enteric bacteria are the most common Gram-negative pathogens of humans. Though most enteric bacteria can be pathogenic in humans, over 95% of the medically important species are in the 13 genera we discuss shortly.

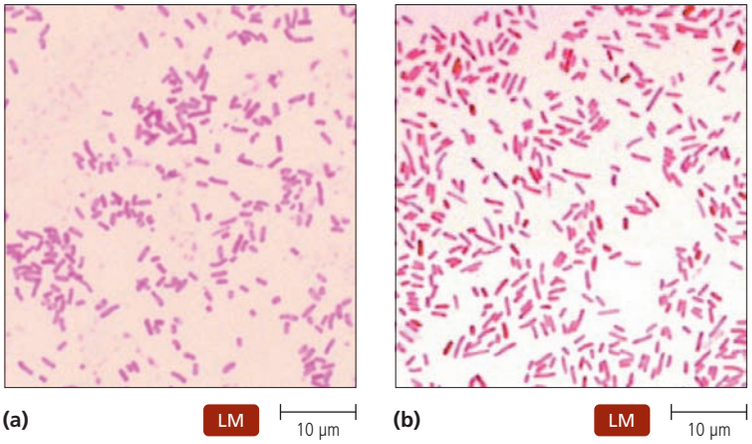
Structure and Physiology of the Enterobacteriaceae

Enteric bacteria are coccobacilli or bacilli that measure about 0.5 µm × 1.2 to 3 µm **(Figure 20.6)**. Those members that are motile have peritrichous flagella. Some have prominent capsules, whereas others have only a loose slime layer. All members of the

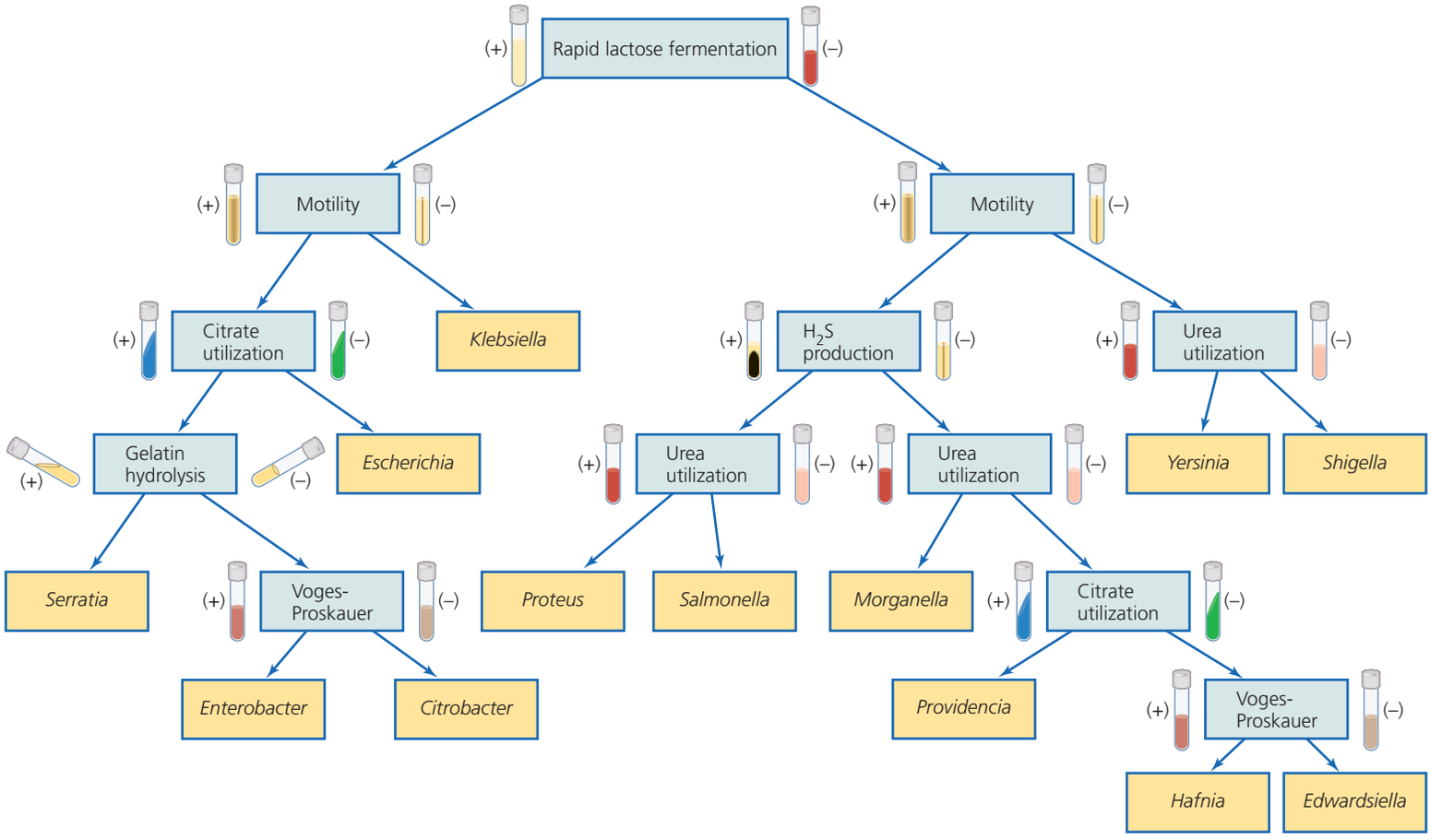


▲ **Figure 20.5 Relative causes of nosocomial infections in the United States.** Gram-negative bacteria in the family Enterobacteriaceae account for most nosocomial infections. *What is a nosocomial infection?*

Figure 20.5 *An infection acquired in a health care setting.*



▲ **Figure 20.6 Gram stains of bacteria in the family Enterobacteriaceae. (a)** *Enterobacter aerogenes*, a coccobacillus. **(b)** *Escherichia coli*, a bacillus. Note the similarity in staining properties.



▲ Figure 20.7 A dichotomous key for distinguishing among enteric bacteria. This key, based on biochemical tests and motility, is but one of many possible keys. *What characteristics do all enteric bacteria share?*

Figure 20.7 *All enteric bacteria are Gram-negative, oxidase negative, and able to metabolize nitrate to nitrite.*

family reduce nitrate to nitrite and ferment glucose anaerobically, though most of them grow better in aerobic environments. As previously noted, all of them are also oxidase negative.

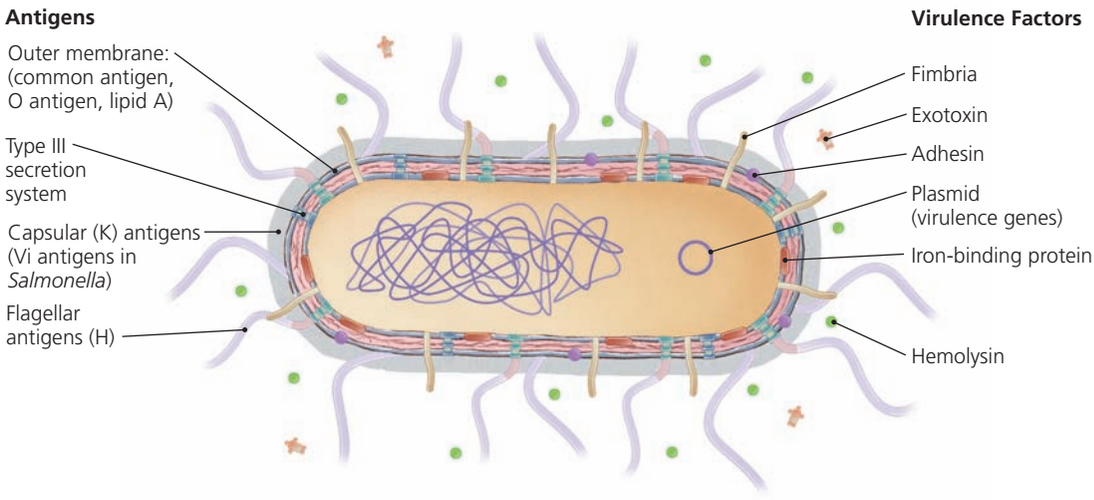
Given that all enteric bacteria are similar in microscopic appearance and staining properties, scientists traditionally distinguish among them by using biochemical tests, motility, and colonial characteristics on a variety of selective and nonselective media (e.g., MacConkey agar and blood agar). **Figure 20.7** presents one dichotomous key, based on motility and biochemical tests, for distinguishing among the 13 genera of enteric bacteria discussed in this chapter.

Pathogenicity of the Enterobacteriaceae

Members of the Enterobacteriaceae have an outer membrane that contains lipopolysaccharide composed of three antigenic components:

- A core polysaccharide, shared by all of the enteric bacteria and called *common antigen.*
- So-called *O polysaccharide,* which has various antigenic varieties among strains and species.
- Lipid A, which, when released in a patient's blood, can trigger fever, vasodilation, inflammation, shock, and DIC. Because of the presence of lipid A, most of the enteric bacteria can cause serious disease and death.

Other antigens of certain enteric bacteria include protein and polysaccharide capsular antigens called K antigens (called Vi antigens in *Salmonella*) and flagellar proteins called H antigens. By controlling the genetic expression of K and H antigens, alternately producing and not producing the antigens, the bacteria survive by evading their host's immune system. Scientists use serological identification of antigens to distinguish among strains and species of enteric bacteria. For example, *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, a potentially deadly bacterium, is so designated because of its antigenic components. The specificity of serological tests can also be used in diagnosis and in epidemiological studies to identify the source of a particular infecting agent.



▶ Figure 20.8 Antigens and virulence factors of typical enteric bacteria. *What is the function of a type III system?*

Figure 20.8 A type III secretion system is a virulence factor that enables enteric bacteria to insert chemicals directly into the cytosol of a eukaryotic cell.

Among the variety of virulence factors possessed by pathogenic enteric bacteria, some (for example, lipid A) are common to all genera, whereas others are unique to certain strains. Virulence factors seen in the Enterobacteriaceae include the following:

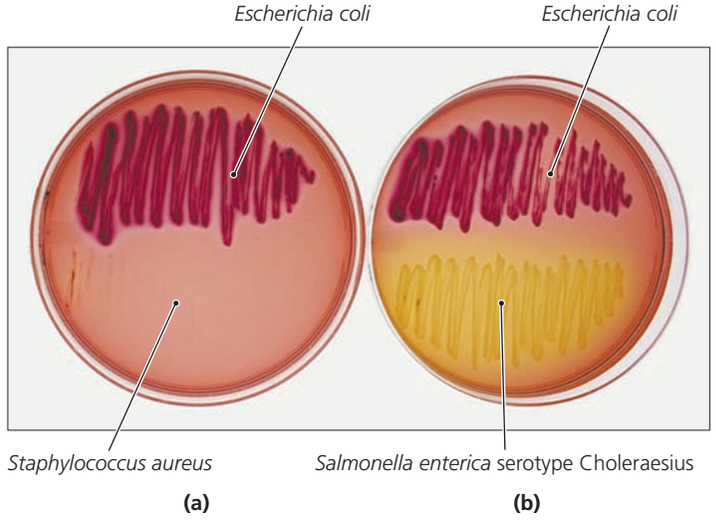
- *Capsules* that protect the bacteria from phagocytosis and antibodies, and provide a poorly immunogenic surface.
- *Fimbriae* and proteins called *adhesins*, which enable the bacteria to attach tightly to human cells.
- *Exotoxins* that cause a variety of symptoms such as diarrhea. The genes for exotoxins, fimbriae, and adhesins are frequently located on plasmids, which increases the likelihood that they will be transferred among bacteria.
- *Iron-binding compounds* called **siderophores** that capture iron and make it available to the bacteria.
- *Hemolysins,* which release nutrients such as iron by lysing red blood cells.
- A so-called *type III secretion system*, a complex structure composed of 20 different polypeptides that is synthesized by several pathogenic enteric species. Once assembled, the system spans the two membranes and peptidoglycan of the bacterial cell and inserts into a host cell's cytoplasmic membrane like a hypodermic needle. The bacterium then introduces proteins into the host cell. Because bacteria synthesize type III systems only after they have contacted a host cell, the proteins of a type III system are not exposed to immune surveillance.

Figure 20.8 illustrates the locations of the major types of antigens and virulence factors of enteric bacteria. ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** ***Virulence Factors: Enteric Pathogens***

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Diseases of the Enterobacteriaceae

The presence of enteric bacteria in urine, blood, or cerebrospinal fluid is always diagnostic of infection or disease. To culture members of the Enterobacteriaceae from clinical specimens, clinicians use selective and differential media such as eosin methylene blue (EMB) agar and MacConkey agar. In their role as selective media, these media inhibit the growth of many members of the normal microbiota, particularly Gram-positive bacteria, and allow the growth of enteric bacteria **(Figure 20.9a)**; in their role as differential media, they enable laboratory technicians to distinguish between enteric bacteria that can and cannot ferment lactose **(Figure 20.9b)**. Commercially available systems using sophisticated biochemical tests can accurately distinguish among enteric bacteria in 4 to 24 hours.

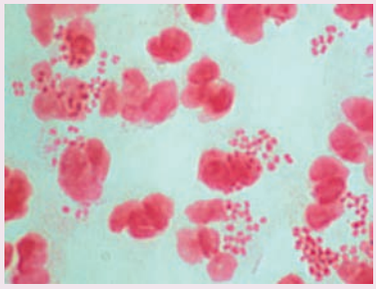
Treatment of diarrhea involves treating the symptoms with fluid and electrolyte replacement. Often, antimicrobial drugs are not used to treat diarrhea because diarrhea is typically self-limiting—expulsion of the organisms from the body is often a more effective therapy than the action of antimicrobials. Also, antimicrobial therapy can worsen the prognosis by killing



▲ Figure 20.9 The use of MacConkey agar. (a) This selective and differential medium allows growth of Gram-negative bacteria (here, *E. coli*) and inhibits Gram-positive bacteria (here, *S. aureus*). **(b)** Additionally, colonies of lactose-fermenters (here, *E. coli*) are pink, differentiating them from other enteric bacteria that do not ferment lactose (here, *S. enterica*).

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A PAINFUL PROBLEM



A 20-year-old male reports to his physician that he has experienced painful urination, as if he were urinating molten solder. He has also noticed a puslike discharge from his penis. A stained smear of the discharge is shown in the photo.

The patient reports having been sexually active with two or three women in the previous six months. Because his partners reported being "absolutely sure" that they wouldn't get pregnant and carried no sexually transmitted diseases, the patient had not used a condom.

1. What disease does this patient most likely have? What are the medical and common names for this disease?
2. How did the patient acquire the disease?
3. What could explain the lack of any history of sexually transmitted disease in his sexual partners?
4. What is the likely treatment?
5. Is the patient immune to future infections with this bacterium?

many bacteria at once, which releases a large amount of toxins, including lipid A.

Treatment of internal infections involves selection of an appropriate antimicrobial drug, which often necessitates a susceptibility test such as a Kirby-Bauer test (see Figure 10.9). Susceptible bacteria may develop resistance to antimicrobial drugs, presumably because enteric bacteria exchange plasmids readily; for example, many enterics can exchange DNA via conjugation. Antibiotics administered to control infections in the blood also kill the normal enteric bacteria, opening a niche for opportunistic resistant bacteria, such as the endospore-forming, Gram-positive bacterium *Clostridium difficile* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm di-fi´sēl).

Given that enteric bacteria are a major component of the normal microbiota, preventing infections with them is almost impossible. Health care practitioners give prophylactic antimicrobial drugs to patients whenever mucosal barriers are breached by trauma or surgery, while avoiding prolonged unrestricted use of antimicrobials, a practice that selects for resistant strains of bacteria. Good personal hygiene (particularly hand washing) and proper sewage control are important in limiting the risk of infection. Specific methods of control and prevention associated with particular genera of enteric bacteria are discussed in the following sections.

CRITICAL THINKING

Resistance to antimicrobial agents is more commonly seen in hospital-acquired infections with enteric bacteria than in community-based infections with the same species. Explain why this is so.

Scientists, researchers, and health care practitioners find it useful to categorize the pathogenic members of the Enterobacteriaceae into three groups:

- Coliforms, which rapidly ferment lactose, are part of the normal microbiota and may be opportunistic pathogens.
- Noncoliform opportunists, which do not ferment lactose.
- True pathogens.

In the next three sections we will examine the important members of the Enterobacteriaceae according to this scheme, beginning with opportunistic coliforms.

Coliform Opportunistic Enterobacteriaceae

Learning Outcomes

20.10 Compare and contrast *Escherichia, Klebsiella, Serratia, Enterobacter, Hafnia,* and *Citrobacter.*

20.11 Describe the pathogenesis and diseases of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7.

Coliforms (kol´i-formz) are defined as aerobic or facultatively anaerobic, Gram-negative, rod-shaped bacteria that ferment lactose to form gas within 48 hours of being placed in a lactose broth at 35°C. Coliforms are found in the intestinal tracts of animals and humans, in soil, and on plants and decaying vegetation. The presence of fecal coliforms in water is indicative of impure water and of poor sewage treatment. The most common of the opportunistic coliform pathogens are bacteria in the genera *Escherichia, Klebsiella, Serratia, Enterobacter, Hafnia,* and *Citrobacter.*

Escherichia coli

Escherichia coli (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē)—the most common and important of the coliforms—is well known as a laboratory research organism.

Scientists have described numerous O, H, and K antigens of *E. coli,* which epidemiologists use to identify particular strains. Some antigens, such as O157, O111, H8, and H7, are associated with virulence. Virulent strains also have genes (located on virulence plasmids) for fimbriae, adhesins, and a variety of exotoxins, enabling these strains to colonize human tissue and cause disease. Many bacteria share such plasmids among themselves.

E. coli is responsible for a number of diseases, including septicemia, urinary tract infections (UTIs), neonatal meningitis, pneumonia, and gastroenteritis. *E. coli* in the blood can colonize the lining of the heart, triggering inflammation and the destruction of heart valves (endocarditis).

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Escherichia coli

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Proteobacteria, class Gammaproteobacteria, order Enterobacteriales, family Enterobacteriaceae

Cell morphology and arrangement: Bacilli, single

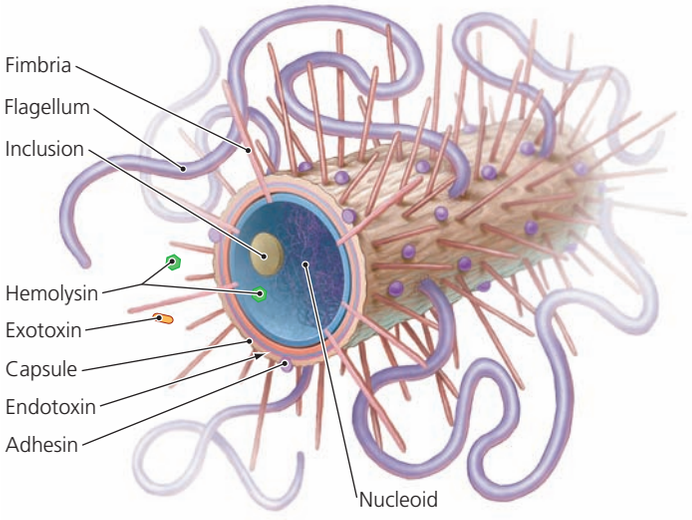
Gram reaction: Negative

Virulence factors: Capsule, fimbriae, endotoxin, adhesins, exotoxins (enterotoxins), type III secretion system; strain O157:H7 produces Shiga-like toxin

Diseases caused: Septicemia; UTIs, including hemolytic uremic syndrome; neonatal meningitis; gastroenteritis, including diarrhea and severe to fatal hemorrhagic colitis

Treatment for diseases: Various antimicrobials

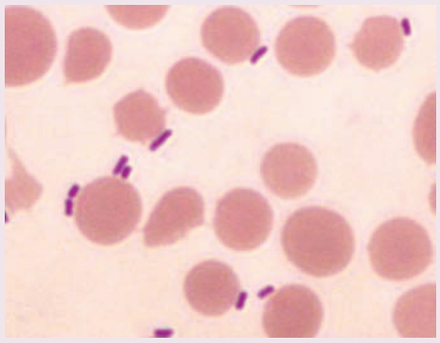
Prevention of disease: Prevent fecal contamination of food and water, good personal hygiene



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A HEART-RENDING EXPERIENCE



***E. coli* in a blood smear.** LM 7 µm

A construction worker in his mid-30s visited his physician complaining of shortness of breath and a persistent cough that had lasted more than three weeks. Upon examination the doctor noted that the client had a history of asthma and intravenous drug use. Believing him to have an upper respiratory disturbance, the physician ordered a steroid to reduce swelling in the airways.

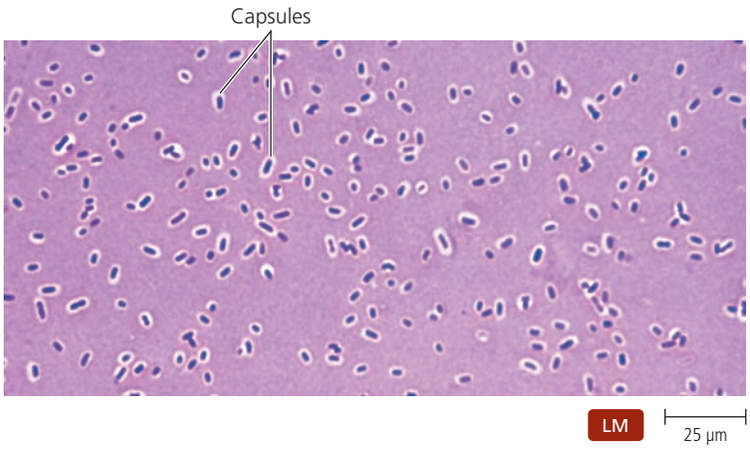
Two weeks later the construction worker's condition was worse, so he sought help at an emergency room (ER). When he arrived, his heart rate was accelerated, and he appeared to be dehydrated. The ER staff administered a rapid IV infusion of fluids, took blood for analysis, and X-rayed his chest. Shortly after the infusion, the man's respiratory situation deteriorated to the point that he was placed on a ventilator. The X ray revealed an abnormally enlarged heart and fluid throughout both lungs. The blood culture contained *Escherichia coli*.

1. How could the patient have gotten *E. coli* in his blood?
2. What had *E. coli* done to the inner structures of his heart?
3. What factors in the medical treatment may have exacerbated the disease? Why?

Gastroenteritis, the most common disease associated with *E. coli*, is often mediated by toxins released from the bacterium. The toxins bind to proteins on cells lining the intestinal tract and so are called *enterotoxins*. A portion of the toxin then enters the cell and triggers a series of chemical reactions that cause the loss of sodium, chloride, potassium, bicarbonate, and water from the cells, producing watery diarrhea, cramps, nausea, and vomiting. Enterotoxin-producing strains are common in developing countries and are important causes of pediatric diarrhea, accounting for up to a third of the cases of this life-threatening disease in some countries.

E. coli is the most common cause of non-nosocomial UTIs. Women, with their shorter urethras, are 15 times more likely to acquire UTIs than are men. Surprisingly, girls are less likely to acquire UTIs than are women, perhaps because of the hormonal influences of adulthood or an increased likelihood of UTIs following sexual intercourse. About 32% of adult women will suffer uncomplicated mild bladder infections by *E. coli* sometime during their lifetimes. In some cases, the bacterium ascends the ureters from the bladder, infecting the kidneys and causing a more serious disease called *acute pyelonephritis*, which involves fever, flank pain, bacteriuria (bacteria in the urine), profuse perspiration, nausea, and vomiting.

E. coli O157:H7, first described as a cause of human illness in 1982, is now the most prevalent strain of pathogenic *E. coli* in developed countries. The ingestion of as few as 10 organisms can result in disease, which ranges from bloody diarrhea, to



▲ **Figure 20.10** **The prominent capsule of *Klebsiella pneumoniae*.** *How does the capsule function as a virulence factor?*

Figure 20.10 *Capsules inhibit phagocytosis and intracellular digestion by phagocytic cells.*

severe or fatal hemorrhagic colitis, to a severe kidney disorder called *hemolytic uremic syndrome* in which renal function ceases.

Urinary tract and blood infections with this organism can be fatal, especially in children and immunocompromised adults. Most epidemics of *E. coli* O157:H7 have been associated with the consumption of undercooked ground beef or unpasteurized milk or fruit juice contaminated with feces. Despite its notoriety, fewer than 1 in 10 million deaths in the United States is caused by a U.S. citizen experiencing death or injury from strain O157:H7 in ground beef.

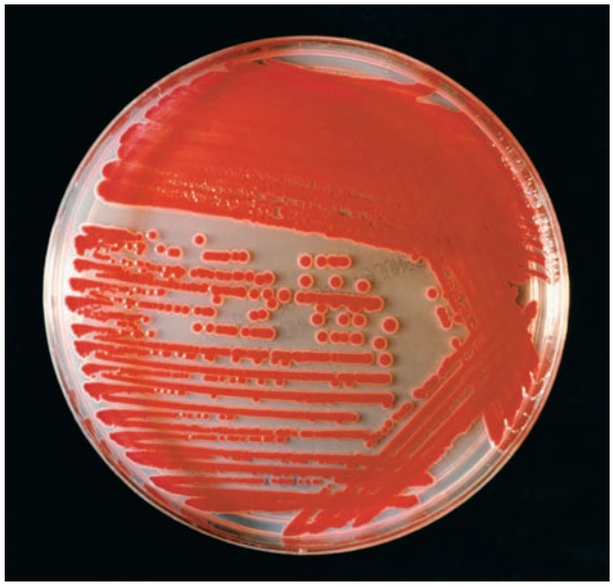
E. coli O157:H7 produces a type III secretion system through which it introduces two types of proteins into intestinal cells. Proteins of one type disrupt the cell's metabolism; proteins of the other type become lodged in the cell's cytoplasmic membrane, where they act as receptors for the attachment of additional *E. coli* O157:H7 bacteria. Such attachment apparently enables this strain of *E. coli* to displace normal, harmless strains.

E. coli O157:H7 also produces *Shiga-like toxin,* which inhibits protein synthesis in host cells. Shiga-like toxin, which was first identified in *Shigella* (discussed shortly), attaches to the surfaces of neutrophils and is spread by them throughout the body, causing widespread death of host cells and tissues. Antimicrobial drugs induce *E. coli* O157:H7 to increase its production of Shiga-like toxin, worsening the illness.

Klebsiella

Species of the genus *Klebsiella* (kleb-sē-el´ă) grow in the digestive and respiratory systems of humans and animals. They are nonmotile, and their prominent capsules **(Figure 20.10)** give *Klebsiella* colonies a mucoid appearance and protect the bacteria from phagocytosis, enabling them to become opportunistic pathogens.

The most commonly isolated pathogenic species is *K. pneumoniae* (nu-mō´nē-ī), which causes pneumonia and may be involved in bacteremia, meningitis, wound infections, and UTIs. Pneumonia caused by *K. pneumoniae* often involves destruction



▲ **Figure 20.11** **Red colonies of *Serratia marcescens*.** Color develops in colonies grown at room temperature.

of alveoli and the production of bloody sputum. Alcoholics and patients with compromised immunity are at greater risk of pulmonary disease because of their poor ability to clear aspirated oral secretions from their lower respiratory tracts.

Serratia

The motile coliform *Serratia marcescens* (se-rat´ē-a mar-ses´enz) produces a red pigment when grown at room temperature **(Figure 20.11)**. For many years, scientists considered *Serratia* to be totally benign; in fact, researchers intentionally introduced this bacterium into various environments to track the movement of bacteria in general. Using this method, scientists have followed the movement of *Serratia* from the mouth into the blood of dental patients and throughout hospitals via air ducts. In a series of tests performed between 1949 and 1968, the U.S. government released large quantities of *S. marcescens* into the air over New York City and San Francisco to mimic the movement of a discharged biological weapon.

Now, however, we know that *Serratia* can grow on catheters, in saline solutions, and on other hospital supplies and that it is a potentially life-threatening opportunistic pathogen in the urinary and respiratory tracts of immunocompromised patients. The bacterium is frequently resistant to antimicrobial drugs.

Enterobacter, Hafnia, and *Citrobacter*

Other motile coliforms that can be opportunistic pathogens are *Enterobacter* (en´ter-ō-bak´ter), *Hafnia* (haf´nē-ă), and *Citrobacter* (sit´rō-bak-ter). These bacteria, like other coliforms, ferment lactose and reside in the digestive tracts of animals and humans as well as in soil, water, decaying vegetation, and sewage. *Enterobacter* can be a contaminant of dairy products. All three genera are involved in nosocomial infections of the blood, wounds, surgical incisions, and urinary tracts of immunocompromised patients. Treatment of such infections can be difficult

▲ **Figure 20.12 The wavelike concentric rings of the swarming *Proteus microbilis*.** Swarming by the bacterium may create beauty, but it makes isolation of *Proteus* more difficult.

because these prokaryotes, especially *Enterobacter,* are often resistant to most antibacterial drugs.

Noncoliform Opportunistic Enterobacteriaceae

Learning Outcomes

20.12 Differentiate between coliform and noncoliform opportunists.

20.13 Describe the diseases caused by noncoliform opportunistic enteric bacteria.

The family Enterobacteriaceae also contains genera that cannot ferment lactose; several of these genera are opportunistic pathogens. These noncoliform opportunists include *Proteus, Morganella, Providencia,* and *Edwardsiella.*

Proteus

Like the mythical Greek god Proteus, who could change shape, the Gram-negative, facultative anaerobe *Proteus* (prō´tē-ŭs) is a typical rod-shaped bacterium with a few polar flagella when cultured in broth but differentiates into an elongated cell that swarms by means of numerous peritrichous flagella when cultured on agar. Swarming cells produce concentric wavelike patterns on agar surfaces **(Figure 20.12)**. The roles of the two morphologies in human infections are not clear.

Proteus mirabilis (mi-ra´bi-lis) is the most common species of *Proteus* associated with disease in humans, particularly with UTIs in patients with long-term urinary catheters. One study showed that 44% of catheterized patients had *P. mirabilis* growing in their urine.

In the presence of urea, as is found in the bladder, this microorganism releases a large amount of the enzyme *urease,* which breaks down urea into carbon dioxide and ammonia. Ammonia raises the pH of urine in the bladder and kidneys such that ions that are normally soluble at the acidic pH of urine (around pH 6.0) precipitate, often around bacterial cells, to form infection-induced kidney stones composed of magnesium ammonium phosphate or calcium phosphate. Kidney stones produced in this manner can contain hundreds of *P. mirabilis* cells.

Because *Proteus* is resistant to many antimicrobial drugs, health care workers must determine proper treatment following a susceptibility test. Researchers have been able to immunize mice against UTIs with *Proteus*. This success is encouraging to those seeking protection for patients who must have long-term urinary catheters.

Morganella, Providencia, and *Edwardsiella*

Nosocomial infections of immunocompromised patients by *Morganella* (mōr´gan-el´-ă), *Providencia* (prov´i-den´sē-ă), and *Edwardsiella* (ed´ward-sē-el´lă) are becoming more frequent. These organisms are primarily involved in UTIs. *Providencia* contains a plasmid that codes for urease and thus may trigger the formation of kidney stones.

Truly Pathogenic Enterobacteriaceae

Learning Outcomes

20.14 Describe the diseases caused by truly pathogenic enteric bacteria.

20.15 Contrast salmonellosis and shigellosis.

20.16 Describe the life cycle of *Yersinia pestis* and contrast bubonic and pneumonic plague.

Three important non-lactose-fermenting bacteria in the family Enterobacteriaceae are *Salmonella, Shigella,* and *Yersinia.* These genera are not considered members of the normal microbiota of humans because they are almost always pathogenic due to their numerous virulence factors. All three genera synthesize type III secretion systems through which they introduce proteins that inhibit phagocytosis, rearrange the cytoskeletons of eukaryotic cells, or induce apoptosis. We begin our discussion with *Salmonella,* which is the most common of the three pathogens.

Salmonella

Salmonella (sal´mŏ-nel´ă) is a genus of motile, Gram-negative, peritrichous bacilli that live in the intestines of virtually all birds, reptiles, and mammals and are eliminated in their feces. These bacteria do not ferment lactose, but they do ferment glucose, usually with gas production. They are urease negative and oxidase negative, and most produce hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Scientists have identified more than 2000 unique serotypes (strains) of *Salmonella.* Analysis of the DNA sequences of their genes indicates that all of them properly belong to a single species—*S. enterica* (en-ter´i-kă). This taxonomically correct approach has not been well received by researchers or medical professionals, so we will consider the various strains of this single species with modern terminology as well as according to their traditional specific epithets, such as *S. typhi* (tī´fē) and *S. paratyphi* (pa´ra-tī´fē).

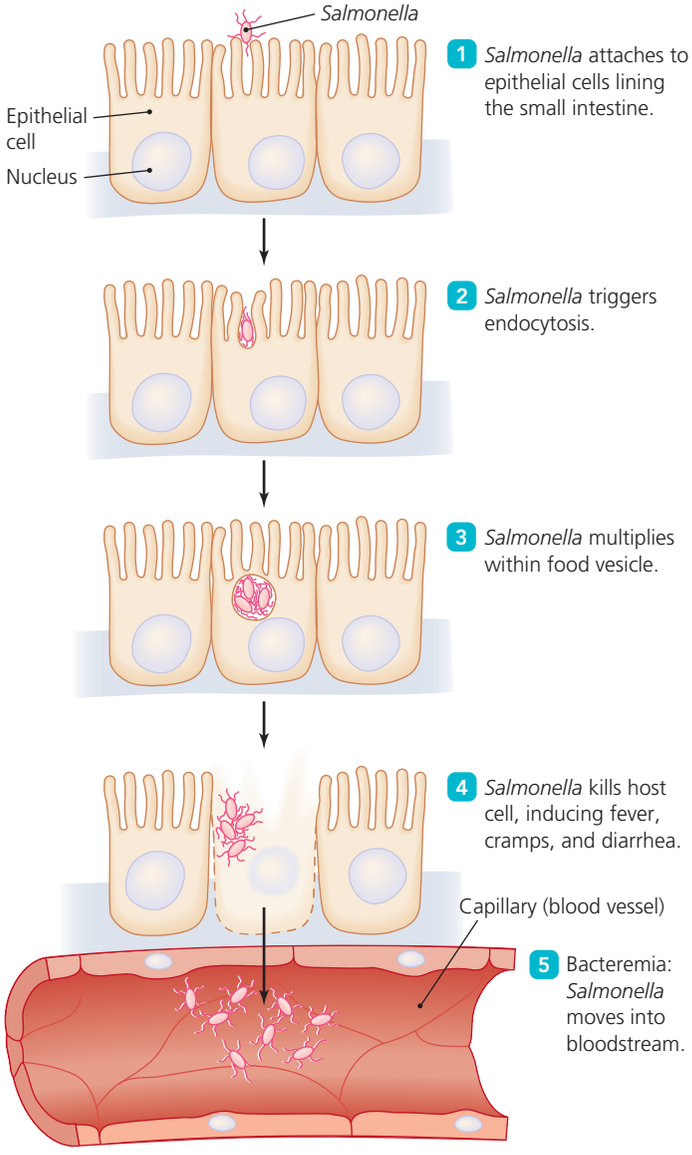
Most infections of humans with salmonellae result from the consumption of food contaminated with animal feces, often from pet reptiles. The pathogen is also common in foods containing

poultry or eggs—about one-third of chicken eggs are contaminated. *Salmonella* released during the cracking of an egg on a kitchen counter and inoculated into other foods can reproduce into millions of cells in just a few hours. Some strains, such as *S. enterica* serotype Dublin, are acquired through the consumption of inadequately pasteurized contaminated milk. Infections with fewer than 1 million cells of most strains of *Salmonella* are usually asymptomatic in people with healthy immune systems.

Larger infective doses can result in **salmonellosis** (sal´mo-nel-o´sis), which is characterized by nonbloody diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting. Fever, myalgia (muscle pain), headache, and abdominal cramps are also common. The events in the course of salmonellosis are depicted in **Figure 20.13**. After the salmonellae pass through the stomach, they attach to the cells lining the small intestine 1. The bacteria then use type III secretion systems to insert proteins into the host cells, inducing the normally nonphagocytic cells to endocytize the bacteria 2. The salmonellae then reproduce within endocytic vesicles 3, eventually killing the host cells 4 and inducing the signs and symptoms of salmonellosis. Cells of some strains can subsequently enter the blood, causing bacteremia 5 and localized infections throughout the body, including in the lining of the heart, the bones, and the joints.

Humans are the sole hosts of *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi *(S. typhi),* which causes **typhoid fever.** (A mild form of typhoid fever is also produced by serotype Paratyphi.) Infection occurs via the ingestion of food or water contaminated with sewage containing bacteria from carriers, who are often asymptomatic. (For the story of perhaps the most notorious asymptomatic carrier, see **Highlight: The Tale of "Typhoid Mary"** on p. 589.) An infective dose of *S. enterica* Typhi is only about 1000 to 10,000 cells. The bacteria pass through the intestinal cells into the bloodstream; there they are phagocytized but not killed by phagocytic cells, which carry the bacteria to the liver, spleen, bone marrow, and gallbladder. Patients typically experience gradually increasing fever, headache, muscle pains, malaise, and loss of appetite that may persist for a week or more. Bacteria may reproduce in the gallbladder and be released to reinfect the intestines, producing gastroenteritis and abdominal pain, and then a recurrence of bacteremia. In some patients the bacteria ulcerate and perforate the intestinal wall, allowing bacteria from the intestinal tract to enter the abdominal cavity and cause *peritonitis*. **Figure 20.14** contrasts the incidences of salmonellosis and typhoid fever in the United States since 1935.

Bacteriophages against *Salmonella* reduce the number of bacterial cells in food. Phage use is currently approved in Europe but not in the United States. Treatment for salmonellosis involves fluid and electrolyte replacement. Typhoid fever is treated with antimicrobial drugs such as ampicillin or ciprofloxacin. Physicians sometimes remove the gallbladder of a carrier to ensure that others are not infected. Researchers have developed vaccines that provide temporary protection for travelers to areas where typhoid fever is still endemic.

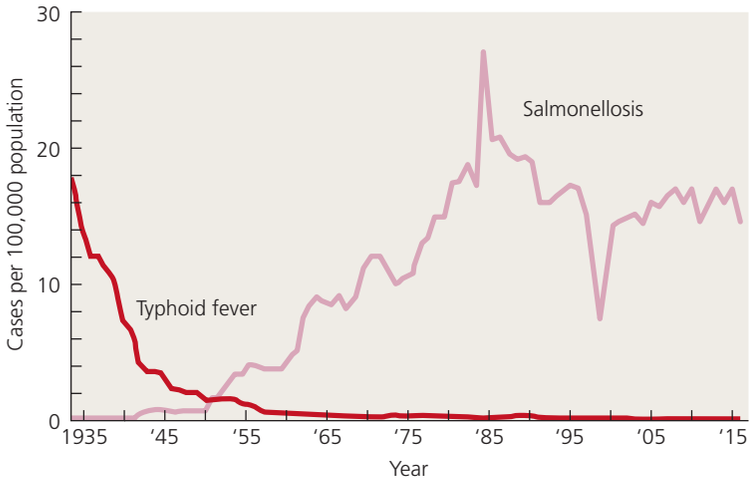


▲ **Figure 20.13** **The events in salmonellosis.**

Shigella

The genus *Shigella* (shē-gel´lă) contains Gram-negative, oxidase-negative, nonmotile pathogens of the family Enterobacteriaceae that are primarily parasites of the digestive tracts of humans. These bacteria produce a diarrhea-inducing enterotoxin, are urease negative, and do not produce hydrogen sulfide gas. Some scientists suggest that *Shigella* may actually be a strain of *E. coli* that has become nonmotile and oxidase negative, while other researchers go so far as to consider *Shigella* an invasive, toxin-producing *E. coli* that is cloaked in *Shigella* antigens. Still other scientists contend the converse—that *E. coli* is really a disguised species of *Shigella* that has acquired genes for flagella!

In any case, taxonomists have historically identified four well-defined species of *Shigella: S. dysenteriae* (dis-en-te´rē-ī), *S. flexneri* (fleks´ner-ē), *S. boydii* (boy´dē-ē), and *S. sonnei* (sōn´ne-ē). *Shigella sonnei* is most commonly isolated in industrialized nations, whereas *S. flexneri* is the predominant species in developing countries. All four species cause a severe form of dysentery called **shigellosis** (shig-ĕ-lō´sis), which is characterized by abdominal cramps, fever, diarrhea, and pus-containing, bloody stools.



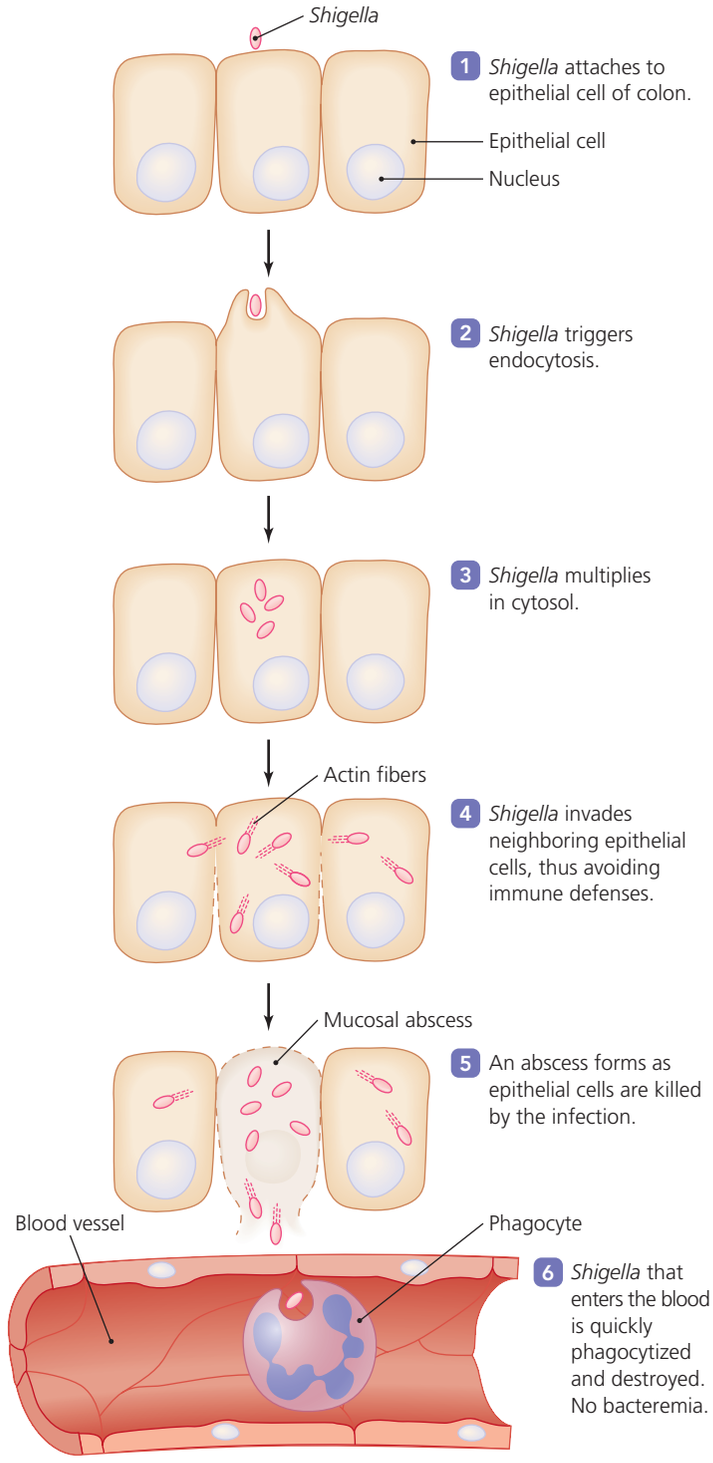
▲ Figure 20.14 The incidences of diseases caused by *Salmonella* in the United States. Whereas the incidence of typhoid fever has declined because of improved sewage treatment and personal hygiene, the incidence of reported cases of salmonellosis has increased. *What factors might explain the increase in the observed incidence of salmonellosis?*

Figure 20.14 *Since salmonellosis and typhoid fever are caused by the same species and transmitted the same way and the incidence of typhoid fever has decreased significantly, it is likely that the actual number of cases of salmonellosis has declined. The observed increase may be due to better diagnosis and reporting rather than to an actual increase in the number of cases.*

Shigellosis is primarily associated with poor personal hygiene and ineffective sewage treatment. People become infected primarily by ingesting bacteria on their own contaminated hands and secondarily by consuming contaminated food. *Shigella* is little affected by stomach acid, so an infective dose may be as few as 200 cells; therefore, person-to-person spread is also possible, particularly among children and among homosexual men.

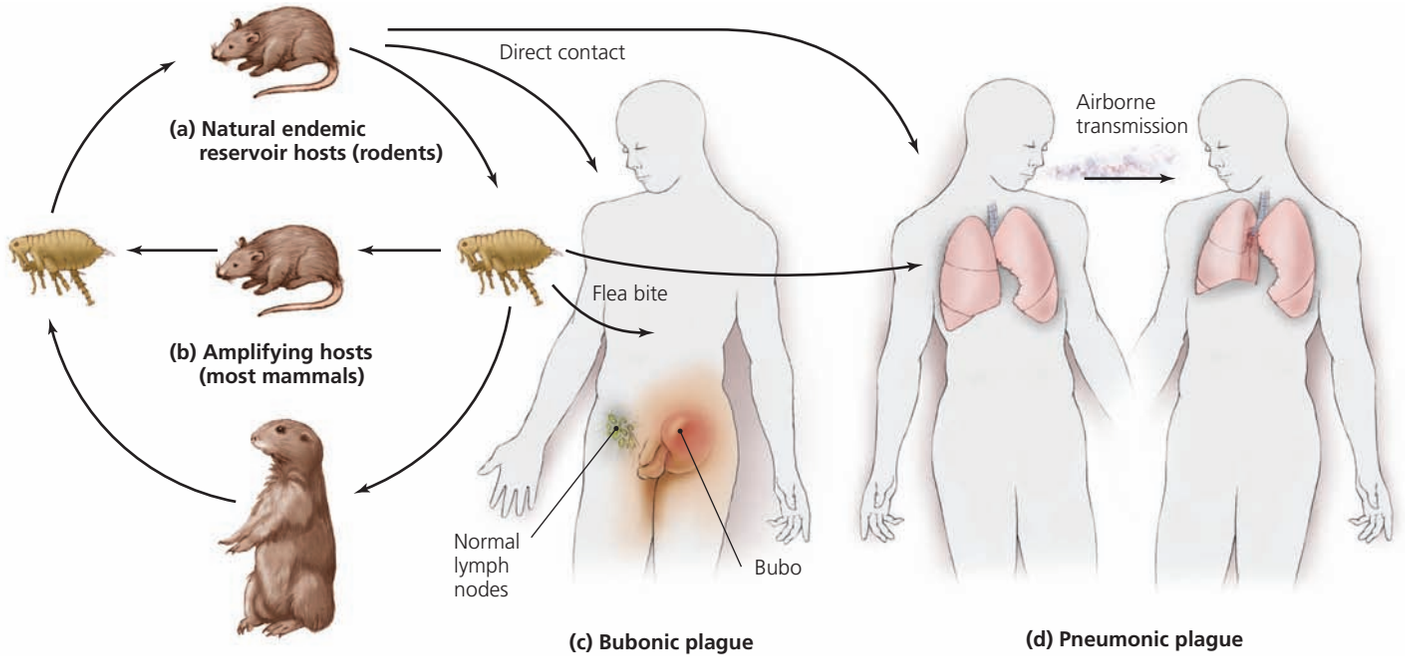
Initially, *Shigella* colonizes cells of the small intestine, causing an enterotoxin-mediated diarrhea; the main events in shigellosis, however, begin once bacteria invade cells of the large intestine **(Figure 20.15)**. When *Shigella* attaches to a large intestine epithelial cell 1, the cell is stimulated to endocytize the bacterium 2, which then multiplies within the cell's cytosol 3. (Note that this differs from salmonellosis, in which bacteria multiply within endocytic vesicles.) *Shigella* then polymerizes the host's actin fibers, which push the bacteria out of the host cell and into adjacent cells 4, in the process evading the host's immune system. As the bacteria kill host cells, abscesses form in the mucosa 5; any bacteria that enter the blood from a ruptured abscess are quickly phagocytized and destroyed 6, so bacteremia is rarely a part of shigellosis. About 10,000 cases of shigellosis are reported each year in the United States, but because mild cases are rarely reported, this figure may represent only 1% of the actual total.

Shigella dysenteriae secretes an exotoxin called **Shiga toxin,** which stops protein synthesis in its host's cells. Shiga toxin is similar to the Shiga-like toxin of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7. Shigellosis caused by *S. dysenteriae* is more serious than that caused by other species of *Shigella*, with a mortality rate as high as 20%. Shiga toxin kills more than 1 million people every year.



▲ Figure 20.15 The events in shigellosis.

Treatment of shigellosis involves replacement of fluids and electrolytes. The disease is usually self-limiting, but oral antimicrobial drugs, such as ciprofloxacin, sulfonamides, penicillin, or cephalosporin, can reduce the spread of *Shigella* to close contacts of the patient.



▲ Figure 20.16 The natural history and transmission of *Yersinia pestis*. This bacterium causes plague. **(a)** The natural endemic cycle of *Yersinia* among rodents. **(b)** The cycle involving amplifying mammalian hosts. **(c, d)** Humans develop one of two forms of plague as the result of the bite of infected fleas or direct contact with infected hosts. *Yersinia* can move from the bloodstream into the lungs to cause pneumonic plague, which can be spread between humans via the airborne transmission of the bacteria in aerosols. *Why is the plague so much less devastating today than it was in the Middle Ages?*

Figure 20.16 *Urban living has reduced contact between people and flea vectors living on wildlife and farm animals, improved hygiene and the use of insecticides have reduced contact with flea vectors living on pets, and antimicrobials are effective against* Y. pestis.

A recent live, attenuated vaccine against *S. flexneri* has been successful in preventing dysentery caused by this species, although the participants in the study experienced mild diarrhea and fever as a result of immunization. Researchers are working to perfect a vaccine that will not cause symptoms.

Yersinia

The genus *Yersinia* (yer-sin´ē-ă) contains three notable species—*Y. enterocolitica* (en´ter-ō-ko-lit´ĭ-kă), *Y. pseudotuberculosis* (soo-dō-too-ber-kyu-lō´sis), and *Y. pestis* (pes´tis)—that are normally pathogens of animals. All three species contain virulence plasmids that code for adhesins and type III secretion systems. The adhesins allow *Yersinia* to attach to human cells, after which the type III system is used to inject proteins that trigger apoptosis in macrophages and neutrophils.

Yersinia enterocolitica and *Y. pseudotuberculosis* are enteric pathogens acquired via the consumption of food or water contaminated with animal feces. *Y. enterocolitica* is a common cause of painful inflammation of the intestinal tract; such inflammation is accompanied by diarrhea and fever that can last for weeks or months. Involvement of the terminal portion of the small intestine can result in painful inflammation of the mesenteric lymph nodes, which mimics appendicitis. *Y. pseudotuberculosis* produces a less severe inflammation of the intestines.

Yersinia pestis is an extremely virulent, nonenteric pathogen that has two clinical manifestations: **bubonic plague** (boo-bon´ik) and **pneumonic plague** (noo-mō´nik). A major pandemic of plague that lasted from the mid-500s A.D. to the late 700s is estimated to have claimed the lives of more than 40 million people. This devastation was surpassed during a second pandemic that killed 30% to 60% of the population of Europe (25 million people) in just five years during the 14th century. A third major pandemic spread from China across Asia, Africa, Europe, and the Americas in the 1860s. So great was the devastation of these three great pandemics that the word "plague" still provokes a sense of dread today.

Rats, mice, and voles are the hosts for the natural endemic cycle of *Yersinia pestis* (Figure 20.16a); they harbor the bacteria but do not develop disease. Among rodents, fleas are the vectors for the spread of the bacteria. As the bacteria multiply within a flea, they block the esophagus such that the flea can no longer ingest blood from a host. The starving flea jumps from host to host seeking a blood meal and infecting a new host with each bite. When other animals—including prairie dogs, rabbits, deer, camels, dogs, and cats—become infected via flea bites, they act as *amplifying hosts* (Figure 20.16b); that is, they support increases in the numbers of bacteria and infected fleas, even though the amplifying hosts die from bubonic plague. Humans become infected either when bitten by infected fleas that have left their normal animal hosts

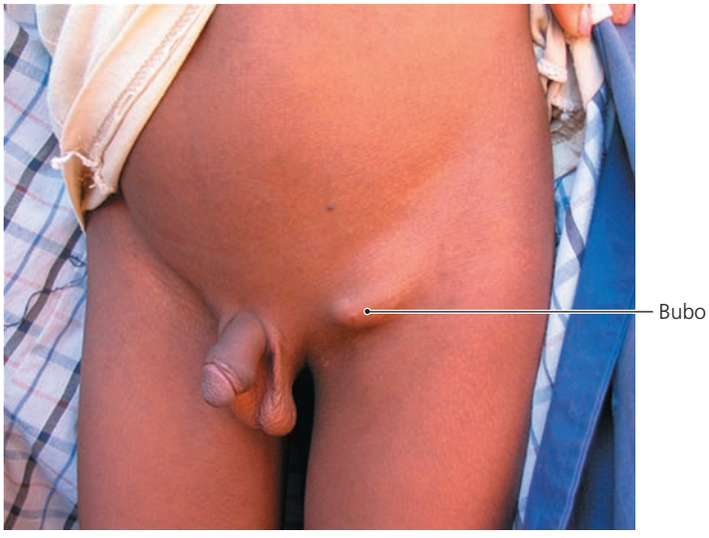
HIGHLIGHT

THE TALE OF "TYPHOID MARY"

Mary Mallon is one of the most famous cooks in history—but not for the tastiness of her dishes. An asymptomatic carrier of typhoid, Mary is believed to have caused outbreaks of typhoid fever in at least seven New York families for whom she worked as a private cook during the early 1900s. She first came to attention in 1906, when George Soper, a sanitation engineer hired to investigate an outbreak of typhoid fever in a wealthy Long Island household, became suspicious upon learning that the family's cook—Mary—had mysteriously disappeared three weeks after the illnesses began. Subsequent investigations revealed that Mary had a history of working in households whose members fell ill with typhoid. Public health authorities ultimately tracked Mary down and confirmed the presence of *Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi in her stool and gallbladder.

Uneducated and headstrong, Mary never quite believed that she could be the cause of so much sickness—perhaps because she never fell ill herself—and she refused to have her gallbladder removed, as authorities suggested. Deemed a public health hazard, Mary was quarantined in 1907 and not released until 1910, with the provision that she was never to work as a cook again. Within a few years, however, she was discovered in Manhattan, working as a food preparer, and still spreading typhoid. She was again detained and remained in quarantine until her death, from a stroke, in 1938.

A cook from the time of Typhoid Mary.



▲ **Figure 20.17 Bubo in an eight-year-old patient.** Such lymph nodes swollen by infection are a characteristic feature of bubonic plague.

or through direct contact with infected animals **(Figure 20.16c)**. Bubonic plague is not spread from person to person.

Bubonic plague is characterized by high fever and swollen, painful lymph nodes called *buboes*[2] **(Figure 20.17)**, which develop within a week of a flea bite. Untreated cases progress to bacteremia, which results in disseminated intravascular coagulation, subcutaneous hemorrhaging, and death of tissues, which may become infected with *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) and develop gangrene. Because of the extensive darkening of dead skin, plague has been called the "Black Death." Untreated bubonic plague is fatal in 50% of cases. Even with treatment, up to 15% of patients die. In fatal infections, death usually occurs within a week of the onset of symptoms.

Pneumonic plague occurs when *Yersinia* in the bloodstream infects the lungs. Disease develops very rapidly—patients develop fever, malaise, and pulmonary distress within a day of infection. Pneumonic plague can spread from person to person through aerosols and sputum **(Figure 20.16d)** and if left untreated is fatal in nearly 100% of cases.

Because plague is so deadly and can progress so rapidly, diagnosis and treatment must also be rapid. The characteristic symptoms, especially in patients who have traveled in areas where plague is endemic, are usually sufficient for diagnosis. Rodent control and better personal hygiene have almost eliminated plague in industrialized countries, although wild animals remain as reservoirs. Many antibacterial drugs, including streptomycin, gentamicin, tetracycline, and chloramphenicol, are effective against *Yersinia*.

In summary, **Figure 20.18** illustrates the general sites of infections by the more common members of the Enterobacteriaceae.

The Pasteurellaceae

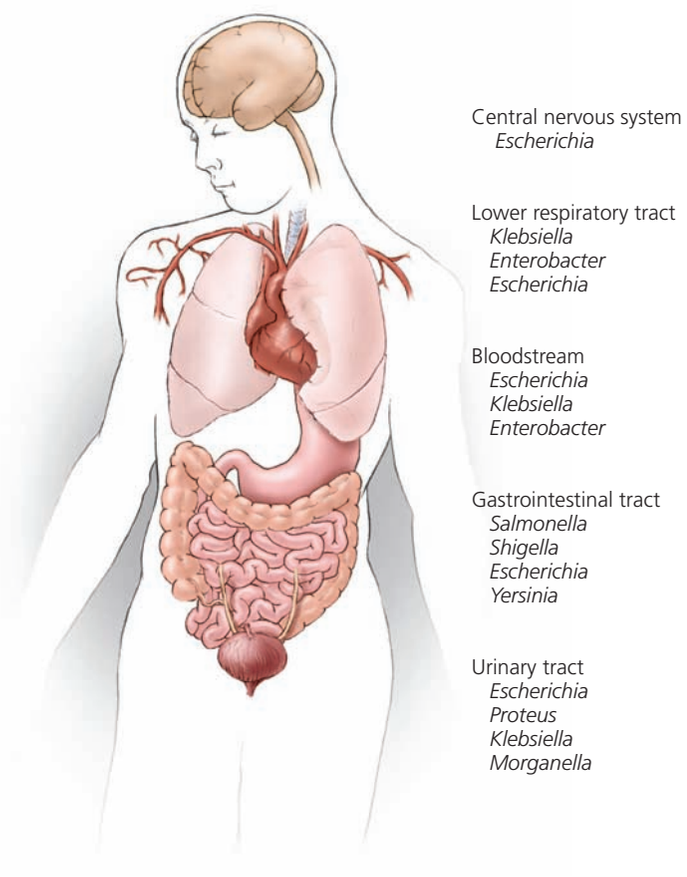
Learning Outcomes

20.17 Describe two pathogenic genera in the family Pasteurellaceae.

20.18 Identify and describe three diseases caused by species of *Haemophilus*.

In the previous sections we examined opportunistic and pathogenic Gram-negative, facultative anaerobes of the family Enterobacteriaceae, all of which are oxidase negative. Now we consider

[2]From Greek *boubon*, meaning "groin," referring to a swelling in the groin.



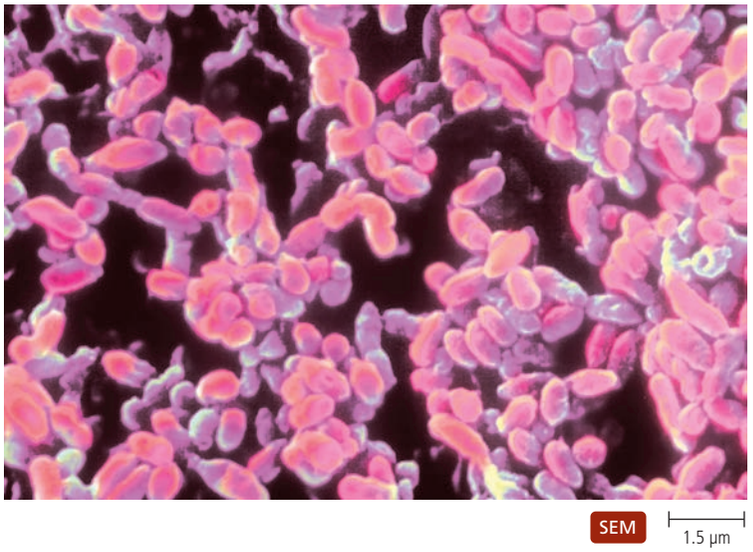
▲ **Figure 20.18 Sites of infection by some common members of the Enterobacteriaceae.** For each site, genera are listed in their relative order of prevalence.

another family of gammaproteobacteria—the **Pasteurellaceae** (pas-ter-el-ă´sē-ē), which contains species that are oxidase positive (see Figure 20.4). These microorganisms are mostly facultative anaerobes that are small, nonmotile, and fastidious in their growth requirements—they require heme or cytochromes. Two genera, *Pasteurella* and *Haemophilus*, contain most of this family's pathogens of humans.

Pasteurella

Pasteurella (pas-ter-el´ă) is part of the normal microbiota in the oral and nasopharyngeal cavities of animals, including domestic cats and dogs. Humans are typically infected via animal bites and scratches or via inhalation of aerosols from animals. Most cases in humans are caused by *P. multocida* (mul-tŏ´si-da), which produces localized inflammation and swelling of lymph nodes at the site of infection. Patients with suppressed immunity are at risk of widespread infection and bacteremia.

Diagnosis of infection with *Pasteurella* depends on identification of the bacterium in cultures of specimens collected from patients. As noted, *Pasteurella* is fastidious in its growth requirements, so it must be cultured on blood or chocolate agar (autoclaved blood agar). A wide variety of oral antibacterial drugs are effective against *Pasteurella*, including penicillins and fluoroquinolones.



▲ **Figure 20.19 *Haemophilus influenzae* is pleomorphic—it assumes many shapes.** *What simple lab test can be used to distinguish* Haemophilus *from* Escherichia?

Figure 20.19 *An oxidase test can distinguish* Haemophilus*, which is oxidase positive, from* Escherichia*, which is oxidase negative.*

Haemophilus

Haemophilus[3] (hē-mof´i-lŭs) species are generally small, sometimes pleomorphic bacilli **(Figure 20.19)** that require heme and NAD^+ for growth; as a result, they are obligate parasites, colonizing mucous membranes of humans and some animals. *Haemophilus influenzae* is the most notable pathogen in the genus, though *H. ducreyi* is an agent of a sexually transmitted disease. Other species in the genus primarily cause opportunistic infections.

Most strains of *Haemophilus influenzae* (in-flu-en´zī) have polysaccharide capsules that resist phagocytosis. Researchers distinguish among six strains by differences in the K antigens of the capsules. Type b usually causes 95% of *H. influenzae* diseases.

Belying its name, *H. influenzae* does not cause the flu; in fact, it is rarely found in the upper respiratory tract. Instead, *H. influenzae* b was the most common cause of meningitis in children 3 to 18 months of age before immunization brought it under control. The pathogen also causes inflammation of subcutaneous tissue, infantile arthritis, and life-threatening epiglottitis in children under four years old. In the latter disease, swelling of the epiglottis and surrounding tissues can completely block the pharynx.

Pediatricians diagnose *Haemophilus* meningitis by noting lethargy, altered crying, nausea, fever, vomiting, photophobia (intolerance of bright light), stiff neck, and possible seizures. Finding pleomorphic, Gram-negative cells in cerebrospinal fluid obtained by a spinal tap confirms a diagnosis.

Prompt treatment with intravenous cephalosporin is recommended for *Haemophilus* meningitis and epiglottitis. Over the past decade, the use of an effective vaccine—Hib, which is composed of capsular antigens conjugated to protein molecules—has virtually eliminated all disease caused by *H. influenzae* in

[3]From Greek *haima*, meaning "blood," and *philos*, meaning "love."

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A SICK CAMPER

An otherwise healthy 24-year-old woman goes to her doctor complaining of a sudden onset of high fever, chills, uneasiness, and a severe headace. She also shows the doctor a painful swelling she is experiencing in her groin area. The doctor asks her about recent travel. She reports that she returned two days prior from a weeklong camping and hiking trip in Texas.

1. How did the woman most likely contract the disease?
2. What are the potential problems associated with diagnosing this disease, and how crucial is prompt diagnosis?
3. The doctor asks you, as a nursing student rotating through his clinic, your opinion on the disease diagnosis and causative agent. What is your response?
4. How should the patient be treated?
5. Who should be notified once the diagnosis is confirmed? Why?

the United States. Cuban scientists have produced a synthetic polysaccharide vaccine that is cheaper and purer and that may help poorer countries eliminate the disease as well.

The incidence of infections with strains other than type b has remained fairly constant in the United States. These strains of *H. influenzae* cause a variety of diseases, including conjunctivitis, sinusitis, dental abscesses, middle-ear infections, meningitis, bronchitis, and pneumonia. Strain *aegyptius* causes Brazilian purpuric fever, an extremely rapid pediatric disease characterized by conjunctivitis that within a few days is followed by fever, vomiting, abdominal pain, shock, and death. The pathogenesis of this disease is not understood, but fortunately it is rare in the United States.

CRITICAL THINKING

Haemophilus influenzae was so named because researchers isolated the organism from flu patients. Specifically, how could a proper application of Koch's postulates have prevented misnaming this bacterium?

Thus far we have examined pathogenic Gram-negative cocci and the more commonly pathogenic, facultatively anaerobic, Gram-negative bacilli. Now we turn our attention to the pathogenic, Gram-negative, aerobic bacilli.

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Aerobic Bacilli

Pathogenic, Gram-negative, aerobic bacilli are a diverse group of bacteria in several classes of the phylum Proteobacteria. The following sections examine some of the more common species in the order they are presented in *Bergey's Manual: Bartonella* and *Brucella* in the class Alphaproteobacteria, *Bordetella* and *Burkholderia* in the class Betaproteobacteria, and several members of the class Gammaproteobacteria, including the pseudomonads (*Pseudomonas*, *Moraxella*, and *Acinetobacter*), *Francisella*, *Legionella*, and *Coxiella*.

Bartonella

Learning Outcome

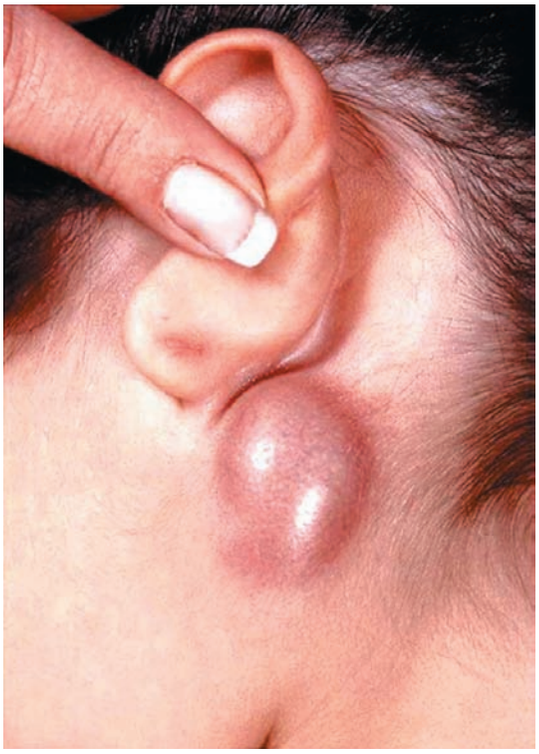
20.19 Distinguish among bartonellosis, trench fever, and cat scratch disease.

Members of *Bartonella* (bar-tō-nel´ă), a genus of aerobic bacilli in the class Alphaproteobacteria, are found in animals, but they are known to cause disease only in humans. They have fastidious growth requirements and must be cultured on special media such as blood agar. Many require prolonged incubation in a humid, 37°C atmosphere supplemented with carbon dioxide before they form visible colonies. Three species (formerly classified in the genus *Rochalimaea*) are pathogenic in humans.

Bartonella bacilliformis (ba-sil´li-for´mis) invades and weakens erythrocytes, causing **bartonellosis**—an often fatal disease characterized by fever, severe anemia, headache, muscle and joint pain, and chronic skin infections. Very small bloodsucking sand flies of the genus *Phlebotomus* (fle-bot´ō-mŭs) transmit the bacterium, so the disease is endemic only in Peru, Ecuador, and Colombia, where such flies live.

Bartonella quintana (kwin´ta-nă) causes **trench fever** *(five-day fever)*, which was prevalent among soldiers during World War I. Human body lice transmit the bacterium from person to person. Many infections are asymptomatic, although in other patients severe headaches, fever, and pain in the long bones characterize the disease. The fever can be recurrent, returning every five days, giving the disease its alternative name. *B. quintana* also causes two newly described diseases in immunocompromised patients: *Bacillary angiomatosis* is characterized by fever, inflamed nodular skin lesions, and proliferation of blood vessels. *Bacillary peliosis hepatis* is a disease in which patients develop blood-filled cavities in their livers.

Bartonella henselae (hen´sel-ī) causes **cat scratch disease** when the bacterium is introduced into humans through cat scratches and bites. Fleas may also transmit the bacterium from cats to people. Cat scratch disease has emerged as a relatively common and occasionally serious infection of children, affecting an estimated 22,000 children annually in the United States, particularly in warm and humid states. This disease involves prolonged fever and malaise, plus localized swelling at the site



▲ **Figure 20.20 Cat scratch disease.** The localized swelling at the site of cat scratches or bites is characteristic.

of infection **(Figure 20.20)** and of local lymph nodes for several months. Serological testing of individuals who exhibit these characteristic signs and symptoms following exposure to cats confirms a diagnosis of cat scratch disease.

Doxycycline, erythromycin, or azithromycin are used to treat most *Bartonella* infections, though there is a high rate of relapse.

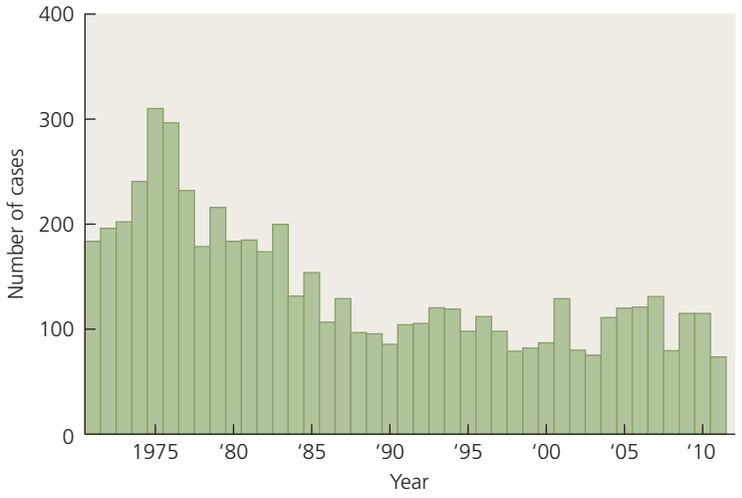
Brucella

Learning Outcome

20.20 Describe brucellosis.

Brucella (broo-sel´lă) is a genus of small, nonmotile, aerobic coccobacilli that lack capsules but survive phagocytosis by preventing lysosomes from fusing with phagosomes containing the bacterium. Analysis of rRNA nucleotide base sequences reveals that *Brucella* is closely related to *Bartonella* in the class Alphaproteobacteria. Although *Brucella*-caused diseases in humans have been ascribed to four species, rRNA analysis has revealed the existence of only a single true species: *Brucella melitensis* (me-li-ten´sis); the other variants are strains of this one species. Because the classical specific epithets are so well known, they are mentioned here.

In animal hosts, the bacterium lives as an intracellular parasite in organs such as the uterus, placenta, and epididymis, but these organs are not infected in humans. Typically, infections in animals are either asymptomatic or cause a mild disease—**brucellosis** (broo-sel-ō´sis)—though they can cause sterility or



▲ **Figure 20.21 The incidence of brucellosis in humans in the United States, 1971–2011.** The decline in cases is largely the result of improvements in livestock management.

abortion. Historically named *Brucella melitensis* infects goats and sheep; *B. abortus* (a-bort´us), cattle; *B. suis* (soo´is), swine; and *B. canis* (kā´nis), dogs, foxes, and coyotes.

Humans become infected either by consuming unpasteurized contaminated dairy products or through contact with animal blood, urine, or placentas in workplaces such as slaughterhouses, veterinary clinics, and feedlots. The bacterium enters the body through breaks in mucous membranes of the digestive and respiratory tracts.

Brucellosis in humans is characterized by a fluctuating fever—which gives the disease one of its common names: *undulant fever*—and chills, sweating, headache, myalgia, and weight loss. The disease in humans has been given a variety of other names, including *Bang's disease,* after microbiologist Bernhard Bang (1848–1932), who investigated the disease, and *Malta fever, rock fever of Gibraltar,* and *fever of Crete*, after localized epidemics in those locales.

Physicians treat brucellosis with doxycycline in combination with gentamicin, rifampin, or streptomycin. An attenuated vaccine for animals exists but is not used in humans because the vaccine can cause disease. Through the vaccination of uninfected domesticated animals and the slaughter of infected ones, the threat of brucellosis has been reduced for U.S. residents **(Figure 20.21)**.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why do physicians substitute trimethoprim and sulfanilamide for tetracycline when treating children and pregnant women infected with *Brucella*?

Bordetella

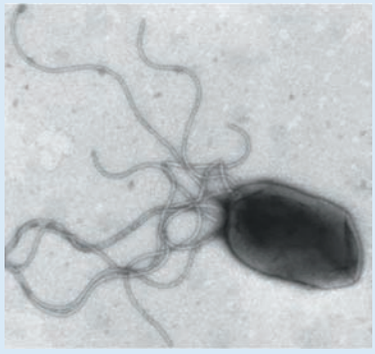
Learning Outcomes

20.21 Describe five virulence factors of *Bordetella pertussis*.

20.22 Identify the four phases of pertussis.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

NEW VESSELS MADE FROM SCRATCH?



Bartonella.

Bartonella henselae causes cat scratch disease in part by being able to live inside human red blood cells as well as in cells lining blood vessels. Scientists at Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center and the Harvard Medical School in Boston, Massachusetts, discovered recently that the bacterium triggers angiogenesis—the formation of new blood vessels—in infected tissues. Researchers speculate that the pathogen is increasing its food supply and habitat by stimulating the growth of new blood vessels.

How *Bartonella* manages to orchestrate angiogenesis is mysterious. We do know that the bacterium is more efficient in laboratory conditions than is vascular endothelial growth factor—the body's natural angiogenic cytokine. Perhaps it is more efficient in the body as well.

Scientists speculate that a full understanding of *Bartonella*'s method could be harnessed to induce angiogenesis to circumvent blocked arteries in the heart, to prompt tissues to make new blood vessels in damaged limbs, or to speed up wound healing by increasing blood supply to damaged tissues. Investigators continue to probe the genetic basis of the intercellular communication between bacteria and host cells that allow this intriguing phenomenon. Perhaps in the future this pathogenic microbe will benefit patients with blood vessels grown from "scratch."

Bordetella pertussis (bōr-dĕ-tel´ă per-tus´is) is a small, aerobic, nonmotile, Gram-negative coccobacillus in the class Betaproteobacteria that is responsible for the disease **pertussis,**[4] commonly called *whooping cough. B. parapertussis* causes a milder form of pertussis.

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

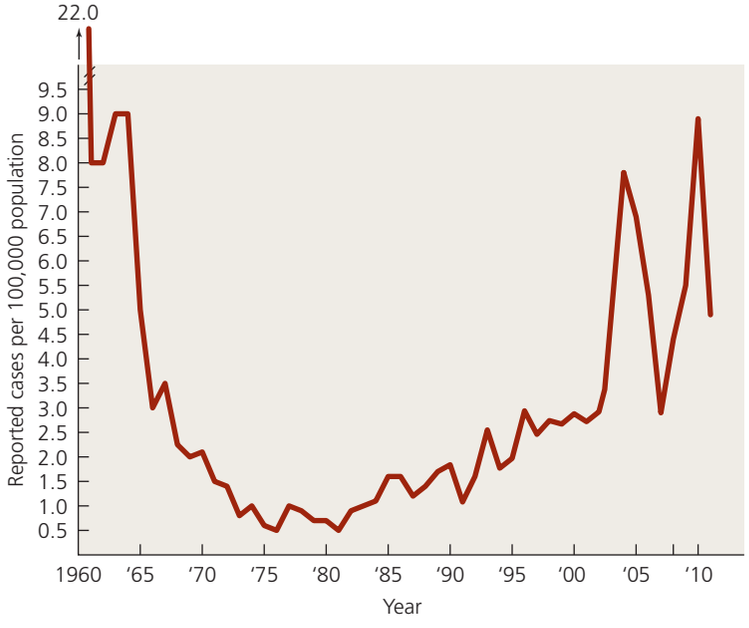
Bordetella pertussis causes disease by interfering with the action of ciliated epithelial cells of the trachea. Various adhesins and toxins mediate the disease.

The bacterium attaches to certain lipids in the cytoplasmic membranes of tracheal cells via two adhesins: *filamentous hemagglutinin* and *pertussis toxin*. Filamentous hemagglutinin also binds to certain glycoproteins on the cytoplasmic membranes of neutrophils, initiating phagocytosis of the bacteria. *B. pertussis* survives within phagocytes, in the process evading the immune system. Pertussis toxin causes infected cells to produce more receptors for filamentous hemagglutinin, leading to further bacterial attachment and phagocytosis.

Four *B. pertussis* toxins are the following:

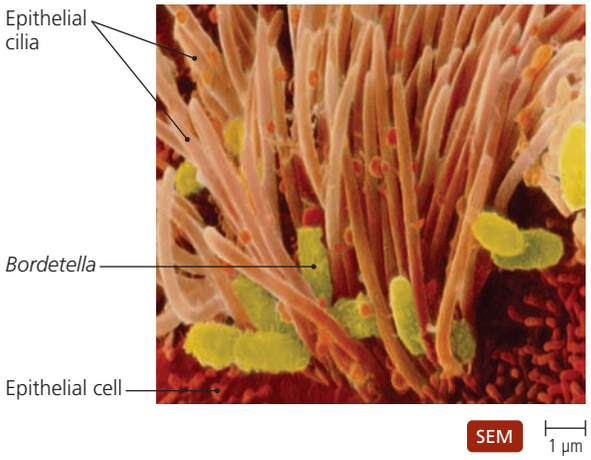
- *Pertussis toxin,* a portion of which interferes with the ciliated epithelial cell's metabolism, resulting in increased mucus production. (Note that pertussis toxin is both an adhesin and a toxin.)
- *Adenylate cyclase toxin,* which triggers increased mucus production and inhibits leukocyte movement, endocytosis, and killing. This function may provide protection for the bacterium early in an infection.
- *Dermonecrotic toxin,* which causes localized constriction and hemorrhage of blood vessels, resulting in cell death and tissue destruction.
- *Tracheal cytotoxin,* which at low concentrations inhibits the movement of cilia on ciliated respiratory cells, and at high concentrations causes the expulsion of the cells from the lining of the trachea.

Pertussis is considered a pediatric disease, as most cases are reported in children younger than five years old. More than 60 million children worldwide suffer from pertussis each year. There were over 27,000 reported cases in the United States in 2010 **(Figure 20.22)**. However, these figures may considerably underestimate the actual number of cases because patients with chronic

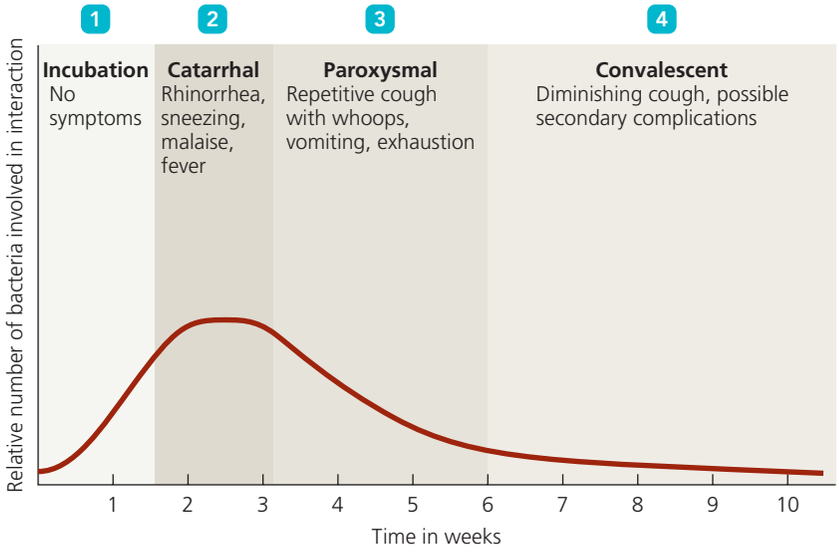


▲ **Figure 20.22** **Reported cases of pertussis in the United States, 1960–2011.**

[4]From Latin *per*, meaning "intensive," and *tussis*, meaning "cough."



▲ **Figure 20.23** ***Bordetella pertussis.*** The bacteria attach to and infect ciliated epithelial cells, such as these of the trachea, eventually causing the death of the cells.



▲ **Figure 20.24** **The approximate time course for the progression of pertussis.**

coughs are not routinely tested for infection with *Bordetella* and because the disease in older children and adults is typically less severe and is frequently misdiagnosed as a cold or influenza.

Pertussis begins when bacteria, inhaled in aerosols, attach to and multiply in ciliated epithelial cells **(Figure 20.23)**. Pertussis then progresses through four stages **(Figure 20.24)**:

1. During 7 to 10 days of **incubation** the bacteria multiply, but no symptoms are apparent.
2. The **catarrhal**[5] **phase** (kă-tă´răl) is characterized by signs and symptoms that resemble a common cold. During this phase, which lasts one to two weeks, the bacteria are most abundant and the patient is most infectious.
3. The **paroxysmal**[6] **phase** (par-ok-siz´mal) begins as the ciliary action of the tracheal cells is impaired, even as copious mucus is secreted. The condition worsens as ciliated cells are expelled. To clear the accumulating mucus, the body initiates a series of deep coughs, each of which is followed by a characteristic "whoop" caused by the intake of air through the congested trachea. Each day a patient may experience 40 to 50 coughing spells that often end with vomiting and exhaustion. During this phase, which can last two to four weeks, coughing may be so severe that oxygen exchange is limited such that the patient may turn blue or even die. Severe coughing breaks ribs of some patients.
4. During the **convalescent phase,** the number of bacteria present becomes quite small, the ciliated lining of the trachea grows back, and the severity and frequency of coughing diminish. During this phase, which typically lasts three to four weeks or longer, secondary bacterial infections (such as with *Staphylococcus* or *Streptococcus*) in the damaged epithelium may lead to bacteremia, pneumonia, seizures, and encephalopathy.

[5]From Greek *katarrheo*, meaning "to flow down."
[6]From Greek *paroxysmos*, meaning "to irritate."

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

The symptoms of pertussis are usually diagnostic, particularly when a patient is known to have been exposed to *Bordetella*. Even though health care workers can isolate *B. pertussis* from respiratory specimens, the bacterium is extremely sensitive to desiccation, so specimens must be inoculated at the patient's bedside onto *Bordet-Gengou* medium, which is specially designed to support the growth of this bacterium. If this is not practical, clinicians must use special transport media to get a specimen to a laboratory.

Treatment for pertussis is primarily supportive. By the time the disease is recognized the distinctive cough, the immune system has often already "won the battle." Recovery depends on regeneration of the tracheal epithelium, not reduction of the number of bacteria; therefore, although antibacterial drugs reduce the number of bacteria and the patient's infectivity to others, they have little effect on the course of the disease. The American Academy of Pediatrics recommends erythromycin for everyone in close contact with a whooping cough patient.

Given that *B. pertussis* has no animal or environmental reservoir and that effective vaccines (the P of DTaP and of Tdap) are available, whooping cough could be eradicated. Despite this possibility, over 10,000 cases occur each year in the United States. This is partly due to the refusal of parents to immunize their children and partly due to the fact that immunity, whether acquired artificially or naturally, lasts only about 10 years. The CDC urges parents to immunize their children and now recommends that all adults under age 65 receive one dose of acellular pertussis vaccine.

Burkholderia

Learning Outcome

20.23 Describe the advantageous metabolic features of *Burkholderia* as well as its pathogenicity.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

WHEN "HEALTH FOOD" ISN'T

In a single day, two 19-year-old women and one 20-year-old man sought treatment at a university health clinic, complaining of acute diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting. No blood was found in their stools. One of the women was found to have a urinary tract infection. All three had eaten lunch at a nearby health food store the previous day. The man had a sandwich with tomato, avocado, sprouts, pickles, and sunflower seeds. One woman had a pocket sandwich with turkey, sprouts, and mandarin oranges; the other woman had the lunch special, described in the menu as a "delightful garden salad of fresh organic lettuces, sprouts, tomatoes, and cucumbers with zesty raspberry vinaigrette dressing." All had bottled water to drink.

1. Which of the foods is the most likely source of the infections?
2. What media would you use to culture and isolate enteric contaminants in the food?
3. Which enteric bacteria could cause these symptoms?
4. How did the woman likely acquire the urinary tract infection?
5. What is the likely treatment?
6. What steps can the food store's manager and the students take to reduce the chance of subsequent infections?

Burkholderia cepacia (burk-hol-der´ē-ă se-pā´se-ă) is a soil-dwelling, aerobic, flagellated betaproteobacterium. *Burkholderia* is noteworthy for its ability to decompose a broad range of organic molecules, making it a likely bacterium to assist in the cleanup of contaminated environmental sites. For example, *Burkholderia* is capable of digesting polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and Agent Orange—an herbicide used extensively during the Vietnam War—which persist for long periods in the environment. Further, farmers can use *Burkholderia* to reduce the number of fungal infections of many plant crops, including peas, beans, alfalfa, canola, and cucumbers.

Unfortunately, *Burkholderia* can also grow in health care settings, metabolizing a variety of organic chemicals and resisting many antimicrobial drugs. The bacterium is one of the more important opportunistic pathogens of the lungs of cystic fibrosis patients, in whom it metabolizes the copious mucous secretions in the lungs. Evidence for patient-to-patient spread is clear, making it imperative that infected cystic fibrosis patients avoid contact with uninfected patients. *Burkholderia* is often resistant to many antimicrobial drugs; therefore, physicians must decide which drug to use on a case-by-case basis.

Another soil-dwelling species, *Burkholderia pseudomallei* (soo-dō-mal´e-ē), causes *melioidosis* (mel´ē-oy-dō´sis), which is an Asian and Australian tropical disease that is emerging as a threat in other locales (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: Melioidosis**). The CDC considers *B. pseudomallei* a potential agent of biological terrorism.

Pseudomonads

Learning Outcomes

20.24 Reconcile the apparent discrepancy between the ubiquitous distribution of pseudomonads with numerous virulence factors and the fact they cause so few diseases.

20.25 Identify three genera of opportunistic pathogenic pseudomonads.

20.26 Describe *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* as an opportunistic pathogen of burn victims and cystic fibrosis patients.

Pseudomonads (soo-dō-mō´nadz) are Gram-negative, aerobic bacilli in the class Gammaproteobacteria. Unlike the fastidious members of *Bartonella, Brucella,* and *Bordetella*, pseudomonads are not particular about their growth requirements. They are ubiquitous in soil, decaying organic matter, and almost every moist environment, including swimming pools, hot tubs, washcloths, and contact lens solutions. In hospitals they are frequently found growing in moist food, vases of cut flowers, sinks, sponges, toilets, floor mops, dialysis machines, respirators, humidifiers, and in disinfectant solutions. Some species can even grow using trace nutrients in distilled water. Pseudomonads utilize a wide range of organic carbon and nitrogen sources. The Entner-Doudoroff pathway is their major means of glucose catabolism rather than the more common Embden-Meyerhof pathway of glycolysis.

Here we examine three genera that are commonly isolated opportunistic pathogens—*Pseudomonas, Moraxella*, and *Acinetobacter*—beginning with the species of greatest medical importance: *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

Pseudomonas aeruginosa

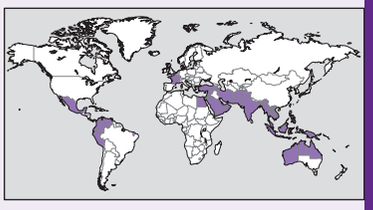
Pseudomonas aeruginosa (soo-dō-mō´nas ā-roo-ji-nō´sā) is somewhat of a medical puzzle in that even though it expresses a wide range of virulence factors, it rarely causes disease. This is fortunate because its ubiquity and inherent resistance to a wide range of antimicrobial agents would render a more virulent *Pseudomonas* a formidable challenge to health care professionals. That *P. aeruginosa* is *only* an opportunistic pathogen is testimony to the vital importance of the body's protective tissues, cells, and chemical defenses.

P. aeruginosa has fimbriae and other adhesins that enable its attachment to host cells. The fimbriae are similar in structure to those of *N. gonorrhoeae*. The bacterial enzyme *neuraminidase* modifies the fimbriae receptors on a host cell in such a way that attachment of fimbriae is enhanced. A mucoid polysaccharide capsule also plays a role in attachment, particularly in the respiratory system of cystic fibrosis patients

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

MELIOIDOSIS

Isabella felt lucky. How many community college students had the opportunity to help a professor do research in northern Australia's Kakadu National Park for a month, get college credit for the experience, and not have to pay for the trip? Though she was the oldest person on the trip and often felt her 45 years as they hiked the trails, she didn't complain. Of course things would have been better if it didn't seem to rain all the time in Australia and if the thorns didn't tear at her legs quite so regularly; still, the trip was an adventure.



A week after her return to Houston, Texas, Isabella developed a high fever (39.2°C) and general weakness. All other signs, including the results of blood work, appeared normal. The doctors, suspecting flu, told her to get plenty of rest and sent her home. Two days later Isabella was intermittently drowsy and confused, her breathing was labored, and a small cut on her leg was an inflamed, pus-filled lesion. She was admitted to the hospital and died the next day.

She died of melioidosis, an emerging disease caused by a Gram-negative bacterium, *Burkholderia pseudomallei*, which is endemic to the tropics of Southeast Asia and which appears to be spreading into more moderate climes. Isabella had been infected either via inhalation or through a cut on her leg. Even with treatment, nearly 90% of melioidosis patients die, including Isabella. (For more about melioidosis, see p. 595.)

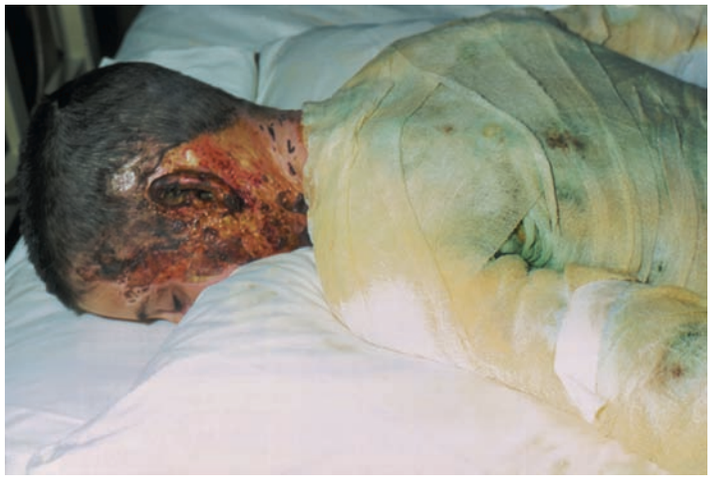
(as discussed shortly). The capsule also shields the bacterium from phagocytosis.

P. aeruginosa synthesizes other virulence factors, including toxins and enzymes. Lipid A (endotoxin) is prevalent in the cell wall of *Pseudomonas* and triggers fever, vasodilation, inflammation, shock, and other symptoms. Two toxins—*exotoxin A* and *exoenzyme S*—inhibit protein synthesis in eukaryotic cells, contributing to cell death and interfering with phagocytic killing. The enzyme *elastase* breaks down elastic fibers, degrades complement components, and cleaves IgA and IgG. The bacterium also produces a blue-green pigment, called *pyocyanin,* that triggers the formation of superoxide radical (O_2^-) and peroxide anion (O_2^{2-}) two reactive forms of oxygen that contribute to tissue damage in *Pseudomonas* infections.

Although a natural inhabitant of bodies of water and moist soil, *P. aeruginosa* is rarely part of the normal human microbiota. Nevertheless, because of its ubiquity and its virulence factors, this opportunistic pathogen colonizes immunocompromised patients and is involved in about 10% of nosocomial infections. Once it breaches the skin or mucous membranes, *P. aeruginosa* can successfully colonize almost any organ or system. It can be involved in urinary, ear, eye, central nervous system, gastrointestinal, muscle, skeletal, and cardiovascular infections. Infections in burn victims and cystic fibrosis patients are so common they deserve special mention.

Pseudomonas infections of severe burns are pervasive **(Figure 20.25)**. The surface of a burned area provides a warm, moist environment that is quickly colonized by this ubiquitous opportunist; almost two-thirds of burn victims develop environmental or nosocomial *Pseudomonas* infections.

P. aeruginosa also typically infects the lungs of cystic fibrosis (CF) patients, forming a biofilm that protects the bacteria

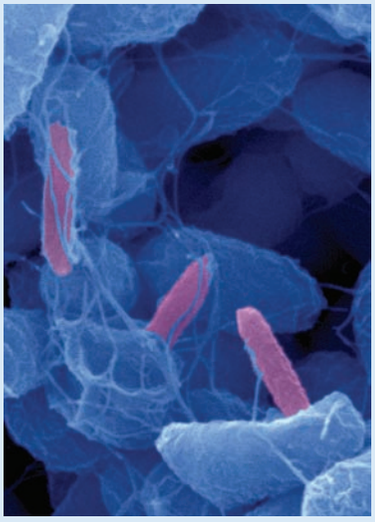


▲ Figure 20.25 A *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection. Bacteria growing under the bandages of this burn victim produce the green color. *What chemical is responsible for the blue-green appearance of this infection?*

Figure 20.25 *Pyocyanin, a blue-green pigment secreted by P. aeruginosa, produces the color.*

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

WHEN A BACTERIAL INFECTION IS A GOOD THING



Bdellovibrio **(pink) attacks** ***E. coli*** **(blue).**

Gram-negative bacteria are common opportunistic and nosocomial pathogens of the cardiovascular system, producing bacteremia, toxemia, endocarditis, and other serious conditions. However, Gram-negative bacteria can themselves be the target of bacterial pathogens, specifically cells of *Bdellovibrio* (del-lō-vib´rē-ō) and *Micavibrio* (mī-kă-vib´rē-ō). These Gram-negative predators are voracious devourers of other Gram-negative bacteria; in fact, their Gram-negative cousins are their only diet!

Bdellovibrio latches onto a Gram-negative bacterium such as *Escherichia coli* or the hard-to-treat *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, enters its prey's periplasm, digests its host, feasts, replicates, and lyses its victim. *Bdellovibrio* daughters quickly attack other cells, reducing the victim's population a hundredfold in short order.

Micavibrio also attaches to its victim's outer membrane, but it remains outside the cell, replicating by binary fission while literally sucking the life (and cytoplasm) from its target. The predators can attack both free-swimming and biofilm-associated Gram-negative bacteria.

Scientists hope to identify, isolate, and utilize the unusual enzymes that allow *Bdellovibrio* and *Micavibrio* to exclusively attach to and kill Gram-negative bacteria. Alternatively, researchers are considering using the bacterial predators as living antimicrobial poultices on skin or wound infections or as living, intravenous, antimicrobial treatments for cardiovascular infections—a patient would be infected to get rid of an infection.

from phagocytes. Such infections exacerbate the decline in pulmonary function in these patients by causing certain lung cells to synthesize large amounts of mucus. As the bacteria feed on the mucus, they signal host cells to secrete more of it, creating a positive feedback loop; the result of such *P. aeruginosa* infections is that cystic fibrosis patients are more likely to require hospitalization and more likely to die.

Diagnosis of *Pseudomonas* infection is not always easy because its presence in a culture may represent contamination acquired during collection, transport, or inoculation. Certainly, pyocyanin discoloration of tissues is indicative of massive infection.

Treatment of *P. aeruginosa* is also frustrating. The bacterium is notoriously resistant to a wide range of antibacterial agents, including antimicrobial drugs, soaps, antibacterial dyes, and quaternary ammonium disinfectants. In fact, *Pseudomonas* has been reported to live in solutions of antibacterial drugs and disinfectants.

Resistance of the bacterium is due to the ability of *Pseudomonas* to metabolize many drugs, to the presence of nonspecific proton/drug antiports that pump some types of drugs out of the bacterium, and to the ability of *Pseudomonas* to form biofilms, which resist the penetration of antibacterial drugs and detergents. Physicians treat infections with combinations of aminoglycoside, beta-lactam, and fluoroquinolone antimicrobials that have first proven efficacious against a particular isolate in a susceptibility test.

In summary, though *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is ubiquitous and possesses a number of virulence factors, the bacterium rarely causes disease in healthy individuals because it cannot normally penetrate the skin and mucous membranes or ultimately evade the body's other defenses. Only in debilitated patients does this opportunist thrive.

Moraxella and *Acinetobacter*

Moraxella (mōr´ak-sel´ă) and *Acinetobacter* are aerobic, short, plump bacilli that formerly were classified in the same family as *Neisseria*. Analysis of rRNA has shown that they are more properly classified as pseudomonads.

Moraxella catarrhalis (kă-tah´răl-is, formerly *Branhamella* [bran-hă-mel´ă] *catarrhalis*) is rarely pathogenic but can cause opportunistic infections of the sinuses, bronchi, ears, and lungs. The bacterium is susceptible to fluoroquinolones, erythromycin, tetracycline, and most other antibacterial drugs (with the exception of beta-lactams).

Acinetobacter grows in soil, water, and sewage and is only rarely associated with disease in humans, though it is often isolated from clinical specimens. It is an opportunistic pathogen that causes infections of the respiratory, urinary, and central nervous systems. Endocarditis and septicemia have also been reported in infections with *Acinetobacter.* It is often resistant to most antimicrobial drugs, so susceptibility tests must guide the choice of an effective treatment.

Francisella

Learning Outcomes

20.27 Describe the modes of transmission of *Francisella tularensis.*

20.28 List practical measures that can be taken to prevent infection by *F. tularensis.*

Francisella tularensis[7] (fran´si-sel´lă too-lă-ren´sis) is a very small (0.2 µm × 0.2 − 0.7 µm), nonmotile, strictly aerobic,

[7] Named for Tulare County, California.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

NIGHTMARE ON THE ISLAND

Peggy loves her time on The Island each year. Her parents had taken her every year to the resort destination as a girl, and now she was doing the same with her children. Their seaside home near Cape Cod, Massachusetts, was modest in comparison to some of the neighbors', but it had been in Peggy's family for over a hundred years, and she had fond remembrances from every stage of her life. One of Peggy's fondest memories is playing tag with her friends on the lawns of The Island's homes. Now, she smiles as she watches her eight-year-old son, Jacob, help the older son of one of her childhood girlfriends mow the grassy expanse. "Building memories—that's what it's about," she thought. Little does she know that some memories can build nightmares.

Three days later Jacob wakes up complaining of a scratchy throat, headache, and "soreness all over." Peggy is concerned about his dry cough and 103°F temperature. "A summer cold?" She keeps Jacob in bed, which isn't difficult because his breathing becomes more labored and painful. Two days later he begins coughing up blood and Peggy recognizes that this isn't an ordinary summertime cold.

She rushes Jacob to the local clinic, where the doctor orders immediate intravenous streptomycin and transport to a hospital on the mainland. The physician tells Peggy that Jacob is likely infected with the most virulent bacterium known. He questions her about Jacob's activities on the island: Has the boy touched any animals? Done any outdoor activities? Been bitten by a tick? "No, no, no." Then she recalls that Jacob helped mow the grass earlier in the week.

Within days, Jacob feels better and can answer questions. He tells the doctor that the lawnmower had run over the dried body of a small dead rabbit. The physician suspects the mower had spewed bacteria into the air; Jacob had inhaled a near-fatal dose.

The grassy lawn will no longer recall the fond memories of Peggy's childhood; instead, she will remember men in biohazard suits taking samples, documenting the nightmarish time she almost lost her son.

1. What bacterium infected Jacob?
2. What is the common name of the disease afflicting Jacob?
3. What do the laboratory scientists at the hospital determine about the Gram reaction of the bacterium?
4. Why didn't the physician use penicillin instead of streptomycin?

Gram-negative coccobacillus of the class Gammaproteobacteria that causes a zoonotic disease called **tularemia** (too-lă-rē´mē-ă). *F. tularensis* has a capsule that discourages (by unknown mechanisms) phagocytosis and intracellular digestion.

F. tularensis is found in temperate regions of the Northern Hemisphere living in water and as an intracellular parasite of animals and amoebae. Scientists do not know why it is not found below the equator. *Francisella* has an amazingly diverse assortment of hosts. It lives in mammals, birds, fish, bloodsucking ticks and insects, and amoebae. Indeed, one is hard pressed to find an animal that cannot be its host. The most common reservoirs in the United States are rabbits, muskrats, and ticks, which give the disease two of its common names—*rabbit fever* and *tick fever*.

Francisella is also incredibly varied in the ways it can be spread among hosts. Tularemia in humans is most often acquired either through the bite of an infected tick or via contact with an infected animal. The bacterium, by virtue of its small size, can pass through apparently unbroken skin or mucous membranes. Bloodsucking flies, mosquitoes, mites, and ticks also transmit *Francisella*, and humans can be infected by consuming infected meat, drinking contaminated water, or inhaling bacteria in aerosols produced during slaughter or in a laboratory. Fortunately, human-to-human spread does not occur.

Francisella is one of the more infectious of all bacteria: Infection requires as few as 10 organisms when transmitted by a biting arthropod or through unbroken skin or mucous membranes. For example, only about 10 cells must be inhaled to cause disease, although consumption of 10^8 cells in food or drink is necessary to contract the disease via the digestive tract.

Infections from bites, scratches, or through breaks in the skin cause lesions at the site of infection as well as swollen regional lymph nodes (buboes). Inhalation may produce buboes in the chest that put pressure on lungs and induce dry cough, pain during breathing, and death.

Only 137 cases were reported in 2011, but the actual number of infections was probably much higher considering its virulence, prevalence in animals, and multiple modes of transmission. Tularemia frequently remains unsuspected because its symptoms—fever, chills, headache, sore throat, muscle aches, and nausea—are not notably different from those of many other bacterial and viral diseases and because it is difficult to

confirm tularemia by using laboratory tests. Though it is typically innocuous, respiratory tularemia is fatal to more than 30% of untreated patients. Tularemia was removed from the list of nationally notifiable diseases in 1994, but concern about the possible use of *Francisella* by bioterrorists led officials in 2000 to relist it.

The bacterium produces beta-lactamase, so penicillins and cephalosporins are ineffective, but other antimicrobial drugs have been used successfully. Currently, intramuscular streptomycin is recommended for use against *Francisella*.

To prevent infection, people should avoid the major reservoirs of *Francisella* (rabbits, muskrats, and ticks), especially in endemic areas. They can protect themselves from tick bites by wearing long clothing with tight-fitting sleeves, cuffs, and collars and by using repellent chemicals. Because *Francisella* is not present in tick saliva but only in its feces, prompt removal of ticks can mitigate infection. Hikers and hunters should never handle ill-appearing wild animals or their carcasses and should wear gloves and masks when field dressing game.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Most U.S. cases of tularemia occur in the late spring and summer months, and few cases occur in January. Why might this be so?

Legionella

Learning Outcomes

20.29 Explain why *Legionella pneumophila* was unknown before 1976.

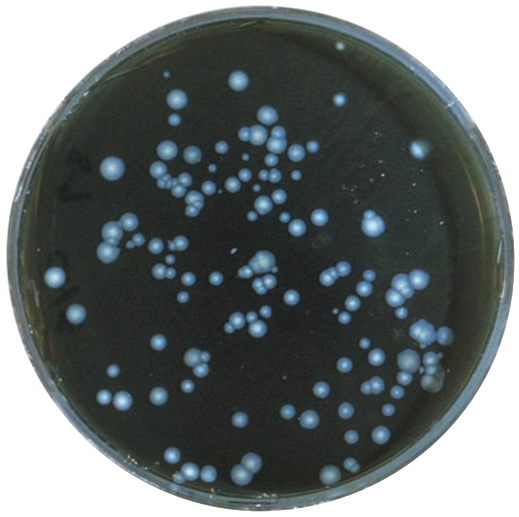
20.30 Describe the symptoms and treatment of Legionnaires' disease.

In 1976, celebration of the 200th anniversary of the Declaration of Independence was curtailed in Philadelphia when hundreds of American Legion members attending a convention were stricken with severe pneumonia; 29 died. After extensive epidemiological research, this disease—dubbed **Legionnaires' disease** or *legionellosis*—was found to be caused by a previously unknown pathogen, which was subsequently named *Legionella* (lē-jŭ-nel´lă).

Pathogenesis, Epidemiology, and Disease

To date, scientists have identified over 40 species of *Legionella*. These aerobic, slender, pleomorphic bacteria in the class Gammaproteobacteria are extremely fastidious in their nutrient requirements, and laboratory media must be enhanced with iron salts and the amino acid cysteine. **Figure 20.26** shows colonies growing on one commonly used medium—buffered charcoal yeast extract agar. *Legionella* species are almost universal inhabitants of water, but they had not been isolated previously because they stain poorly and cannot grow on common laboratory media. Nineteen species are known to cause disease in humans, but 85% of all infections in humans are caused by *L. pneumophila*[8] (noo-mō´fi-lă).

[8]From Greek *pneuma*, meaning "breath," and *philos*, meaning "love."



▲ **Figure 20.26** ***Legionella pneumophila* growing on buffered charcoal yeast extract agar.** This bacterium cannot be grown in culture without such special media.

Legionella pneumophila presented a conundrum for early investigators: How can such a fastidious bacterium be nearly ubiquitous in moist environmental samples? In the original epidemic, for example, *Legionella* was cultured from condensation in hotel air conditioning ducts, an environment that seems unsuitable for a microorganism with such demanding nutritional requirements. Investigations revealed that *Legionella* living in the environment invade freshwater protozoa, typically amoebae, and reproduce inside phagocytic vesicles. Thus, the bacteria survive in the environment much as they survive in humans—as intracellular parasites.

Protozoa release bacteria-filled vesicles into the environment; alternatively, *Legionella* forms exit pores through a host cell's vesicular membrane and then through its cytoplasmic membrane. Humans acquire the disease by inhaling *Legionella* in aerosols produced by showers, vaporizers, spa whirlpools, hot tubs, air conditioning systems, cooling towers, and grocery store misters. *Legionella* was not a notable pathogen until such devices provided a suitable means of transmitting the bacterium to humans.

Legionnaires' disease is characterized by fever, chills, a dry nonproductive cough, headache, and pneumonia. Complications involving the gastrointestinal tract, central nervous system, liver, and kidneys are common. If not promptly treated, pulmonary function rapidly decreases, resulting in death in 20% of patients with normal immunity. Mortality is much higher in immunocompromised individuals, particularly kidney and heart transplant recipients.

L. pneumophila also causes a flulike illness called *Pontiac fever* (after the Michigan city where it was first described). This disease has symptoms similar to those of Legionnaires' disease, but it does not involve pneumonia and is not fatal.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Diagnosis is made by fluorescent antibody staining or other serological tests that reveal the presence of *Legionella* in clinical

samples. The bacterium can also be cultured on suitable commercially available selective media such as buffered charcoal yeast extract.

Physicians use intravenous fluoroquinolone with azithromycin to treat Legionnaires' disease. Pontiac fever is self-limiting and requires no treatment.

Completely eliminating *Legionella* from water supplies is not feasible, as chlorination and heating are only moderately successful. However, the bacterium is not highly virulent, so reducing their number is typically a successful control measure.

Coxiella

Learning Outcomes

20.31 Explain how *Coxiella burnetii* survives desiccation.

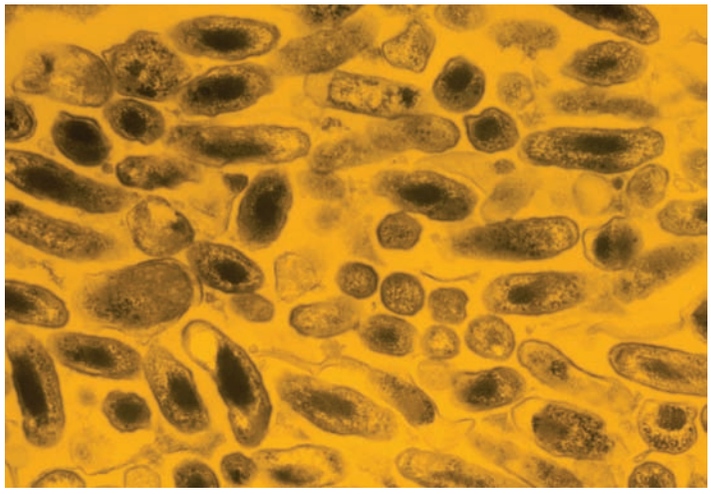
20.32 Describe the mode of transmission of Q fever.

Coxiella burnetii (kok-sē-el´ă ber-ne´tē-ē) is an extremely small, aerobic, obligate intracellular parasite **(Figure 20.27)** that grows and reproduces in the acidic environment within phagolysosomes. Its small size and dependence on the cytoplasm of eukaryotes for growth led early investigators to think it was a virus. However, its bacterial nature is unquestionable: It has a typical Gram-negative cell wall (albeit with minimal peptidoglycan), RNA and DNA (viruses typically have one or the other), functional ribosomes, and Krebs cycle enzymes. *Coxiella* was originally classified with other obligate intracellular bacteria called *rickettsias* (discussed in Chapter 21), but rRNA analysis reveals that *Coxiella* is more properly classified with *Legionella* in the class Gammaproteobacteria.

Coxiella forms an internal, stable, resistant *infective body* (sometimes called a spore) that is similar in structure and function to the endospores of some Gram-positive species. The infective body enables the bacterium to survive harsh environmental conditions (such as desiccation and heat) for years.

C. burnetii infects a wide range of mammalian and avian hosts and is transmitted among them by feeding ticks. Farm animals and pets are the reservoirs most often associated with disease in humans. Transmission to humans occurs infrequently via feeding ticks; instead, humans are most frequently infected by inhaling infective bodies that become airborne when released from dried tick feces or from the dried urine, feces, or placentas of host animals. Humans can also become infected by consuming contaminated unpasteurized milk and rarely from having sex with an infected person.

Most *Coxiella* infections are asymptomatic, though this bacterium can cause **Q fever,** so named because its cause was *questionable* (unknown) for many years. Q fever occurs worldwide, particularly among ranchers, veterinarians, and food handlers, and it may be either an acute or a chronic condition. Acute Q fever follows an incubation period of 20 days or more; besides a high fever, it involves severe headache, chills, muscle pain, and mild pneumonia. In chronic Q fever, months to years may pass from the time of infection until life-threatening endocarditis develops. Inflammation of the lungs and liver may occur simultaneously.



▲ **Figure 20.27** ***Coxiella burnetii.*** This intracellular pathogen grows and reproduces within phagolysosomes, here within one placental cell. An infective body of *Coxiella* can persist in the environment for years.

Q fever is diagnosed via serological testing. Physicians use long-term antimicrobial therapy to treat chronic Q fever. They have most studied doxycycline used with another antimicrobial, such as fluoroquinolone. The biggest problem in treating Q fever is getting antimicrobial drugs to work in the acidic environment of phagolysosomes, where the bacteria live. Researchers have developed an effective vaccine for Q fever, but it is not available in the United States. Prevention involves avoiding the inhalation of dust contaminated with barnyard and pet wastes.

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Anaerobic Bacilli

Learning Outcome

20.33 Compare and contrast *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* with one another and with other Gram-negative opportunists.

Over 50 species of strictly anaerobic Gram-negative bacteria are known to colonize the human body. Indeed, such anaerobic bacteria are the predominant microbiota of the gastrointestinal, urinary, reproductive, and lower respiratory tracts—they outnumber aerobic and facultatively anaerobic bacteria by a factor of 100 or more. The abundance of anaerobic bacteria in these locations is important for human health: They inhibit the growth of most pathogens, and in the intestinal tract they synthesize vitamins and vitamin precursors and assist in the digestion of food.

Relatively few of these anaerobic normal microbiota cause disease and then only when they are introduced into other parts of the body by trauma or surgery. Almost all of the opportunistic species are aerotolerant anaerobes; they produce catalase or superoxide dismutase, which are enzymes that

inactivate hydrogen peroxide and superoxide radicals. The more important anaerobic opportunists are *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella*.

Bacteroides

Bacteria in the genus *Bacteroides* (bak-ter-oy´dēz) are anaerobes that live as part of the normal microbiota of the intestinal tract and the upper respiratory tract. Being Gram negative, they have an outer wall membrane containing lipopolysaccharide. However, in contrast to the lipid A of other Gram-negative bacteria discussed in this chapter, the lipid A formed by members of this genus has little endotoxin activity.

The most important pathogen in this genus is *Bacteroides fragilis* (fra´ji-lis). It is associated with about 85% of gastrointestinal diseases, even though it accounts for only about 1% of the bacteria in the colon. *B. fragilis* is a pleomorphic bacillus that produces a number of virulence factors. It attaches to host cells via fimbriae and a polysaccharide capsule, the latter of which also inhibits phagocytosis. Should the bacteria become phagocytized, short-chain fatty acids produced during anaerobic metabolism inhibit the activity of lysosomes, enabling the bacteria to survive within phagocytes.

B. fragilis is frequently involved in a variety of conditions, including abdominal infections (e.g., those following a ruptured appendix), genital infections in females (e.g., pelvic abscesses), and wound infections of the skin (which can result in life-threatening necrosis of muscle tissue). It is also involved in about 5% of all cases of bacteremia.

If anaerobic bacteria are to be isolated from patients, clinicians must maintain anaerobic conditions while collecting specimens, transporting them to the laboratory, and culturing them. Selective media are often used to reveal the presence of these bacteria. For example, because *B. fragilis* grows well in the presence of bile, it can be cultured on bile-esculin agar in an anaerobic environment—conditions that inhibit aerobic and most anaerobic bacteria **(Figure 20.28)**. Metronidazole is the antimicrobial of choice for treating *Bacteroides* infections.

▲ **Figure 20.28** ***Bacteroides fragilis.*** The bacterium produces a black color on bile-esculin agar. Bile suppresses the growth of most aerobes and facultative anaerobes.

Prevotella

Members of the genus *Prevotella* (prev´ō-tel´ă) are also anaerobic, Gram-negative bacilli and were previously classified in *Bacteroides*. They differ from *Bacteroides* in that they are sensitive to bile; as a result, they do not grow in the intestinal tract but are instead found in the urinary, genital, and respiratory tracts as part of the normal microbiota. Their virulence factors, including adhesive and antiphagocytic capsules and proteases that destroy antibodies, make them potential pathogens.

Prevotella is involved with other Gram-negative bacteria in about half of all sinus and ear infections and in almost all periodontal infections. Additionally, these bacteria cause gynecological infections such as pelvic inflammatory disease, pelvic abscesses, and endometriosis; brain abscesses; and abdominal infections.

Treatment of *Prevotella* infections involves surgical removal of infected tissue and the use of intravenous corbapenem.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

1. Lipid A in the outer membranes of Gram-negative bacteria can stimulate symptoms of fever, vasodilation, and shock as well as blood clots throughout the body, a condition known as **disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).**

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Cocci: *Neisseria* (pp. 575–578)

1. *Neisseria* is a pathogenic, Gram-negative, oxidase-positive coccus; its virulence results from the presence of fimbriae, polysaccharide capsules, and lipooligosaccharide (containing lipid A) in its cell walls.
2. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* causes **gonorrhea,** a sexually transmitted disease of humans. In men it results in acute inflammation of the urethra, whereas in women it is generally asymptomatic. It can infect the uterus and uterine tubes to cause **pelvic inflammatory disease (PID).**
3. *Neisseria meningitidis* causes a type of meningitis; the bacterium is transmitted on respiratory droplets and is life threatening when it enters the bloodstream or central nervous system. Blebbing by the bacterium can release a dangerous level of lipid A.

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Facultatively Anaerobic Bacilli (pp. 578–591)

1. Members of the **Enterobacteriaceae,** the **enteric bacteria,** can be pathogenic, are oxidase negative, reduce nitrate to nitrite, and ferment glucose anaerobically. Their outer membranes contain a lipopolysaccharide, contributing to their virulence. Many produce **siderophores,** which capture iron and make it available to the bacteria.
   ▶ **ANIMATIONS:** *Virulence Factors: Enteric Pathogens*
2. Pathogenic enteric bacteria are grouped as coliform opportunists, noncoliform opportunists, and true pathogens. **Coliforms** are found in the intestinal tracts of animals and humans.
3. *Escherichia coli* is the most common and most widely studied coliform. It causes gastroenteritis, non-nosocomial urinary tract infections, fatal hemorrhagic colitis, and hemolytic uremic syndrome.
4. *Klebsiella, Serratia, Enterobacter, Hafnia,* and *Citrobacter* are genera of coliform bacteria. *K. pneumoniae* causes a type of pneumonia. All are involved in nosocomial infections.
5. Noncoliform opportunistic pathogens of the family Enterobacteriaceae include *Proteus* (urinary tract infections) and *Morganella, Providencia,* and *Edwardsiella,* which can cause nosocomial infections in immunocompromised patients.
6. Truly pathogenic enteric bacteria include *Salmonella enterica,* which causes **salmonellosis,** a serious form of diarrhea. *S. enterica* serotypes Typhi and Paratyphi cause **typhoid fever.**
7. Members of the genus *Shigella* cause **shigellosis,** a severe form of diarrhea. **Shiga toxin,** secreted by some *Shigella,* arrests protein synthesis in host cells.
8. Two enteric species, *Yersinia enterocolitica and Y. pseudotuberculosis,* cause different degrees of intestinal distress. The virulent, nonenteric *Y. pestis* causes **bubonic plague** and **pneumonic plague** and has had a major historical impact.
9. Two genera in the family *Pasteurellaceae—Pasteurella* and *Haemophilus*—are significant human pathogens. They differ from enteric bacteria by being oxidase positive.
10. *Haemophilus influenzae* causes infantile meningitis, epiglottitis, arthritis, and inflammation of the skin. Widespread immunization with Hib vaccine has almost eliminated disease caused by this pathogen in the United States. *H. ducreyi* is responsible for a sexually transmitted disease.

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Aerobic Bacilli (pp. 591–600)

1. *Bartonella* includes pathogenic aerobic bacilli. *B. bacilliformis,* transmitted by sand flies, causes **bartonellosis.** *B. quintana,* transmitted by lice, causes five-day fever, or **trench fever.** *B. henselae,* transmitted through cat scratches, bites, and fleas, causes **cat scratch disease.**
2. *Brucella,* transmitted in unpasteurized contaminated milk, causes **brucellosis,** also known as Bang's disease, undulant fever, Malta fever, and other names.
3. *Bordetella pertussis* is responsible for **pertussis** (whooping cough), a pediatric disease in which the ciliated epithelial cells of the trachea are damaged. After **incubation,** the disease progresses through three additional phases: the **catarrhal phase** resembles a cold; in the **paroxysmal stage** the patient coughs deeply to expel copious mucus from the trachea; and in the **convalescent phase** the disease subsides, but secondary bacterial infections may ensue.
4. *Burkholderia* can decompose numerous environmental pollutants and can assist farmers by inhibiting fungal pathogens of plants; however, the bacterium also grows in the lungs of cystic fibrosis patients.
5. **Pseudomonads** are ubiquitous opportunistic pathogens. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is involved in many nosocomial infections and is common in burn victims and cystic fibrosis patients. *Moraxella* and *Acinetobacter* are opportunistic pathogenic pseudomonads that rarely cause disease.
6. **Tularemia** (rabbit fever or tick fever) is a zoonotic disease caused by extremely virulent *Francisella tularensis,* which is so small that it can pass through apparently unbroken skin.
7. **Legionnaires' disease** (legionellosis) and Pontiac fever are caused by *Legionella,* a bacterium transmitted in aerosols such as those produced by air conditioning systems.
8. *Coxiella burnetii* lives in phagolysosomes of mammal and bird cells; its infective bodies are transmitted via aerosolized dried feces and urine to cause **Q fever.**

Pathogenic, Gram-Negative, Anaerobic Bacilli (pp. 600–601)

1. Gram-negative anaerobes—*Bacteroides* and *Prevotella*—are part of the normal microbiota of the intestinal, urinary, genital, and respiratory tracts.
2. Gram-negative anaerobes may cause disease as a result of virulence factors, such as capsules, fimbriae, and proteases, that degrade antibodies, particularly when the bacteria are introduced into novel sites in the body.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. The presence of lipid A in the outer membranes of Gram-negative bacteria _____.
   a. affects the formation of blood clots in the host
   b. causes these bacteria to be oxidase positive
   c. triggers the secretion of a protease enzyme to cleave IgA in mucus
   d. enables enteric bacteria to ferment glucose anaerobically

2. The only genus of Gram-negative cocci that causes significant disease in humans is _____.
   a. *Pasteurella*
   b. *Salmonella*
   c. *Klebsiella*
   d. *Neisseria*

3. Which of the following bacterial cells is most likely to be virulent?
   a. a cell with fimbriae and LOS
   b. a cell with a polysaccharide capsule and lipooligosaccharide
   c. a cell with fimbriae, lipooligosaccharide, and a polysaccharide capsule
   d. a cell with fimbriae but no capsule

4. Which of the following statements is true?
   a. PID is a severe type of diarrhea in which infection spreads from the intestines to the bloodstream.
   b. PID can result from *Neisseria* infection.
   c. PID is more common in men than women.
   d. Members of the family Enterobacteriaceae usually cause PID.

5. A coliform bacterium that contaminates dairy products is _____.
   a. *Bartonella*
   b. *Serratia*
   c. *Enterobacter*
   d. *Proteus*

6. Capsules of pathogenic enteric bacteria are virulence factors because they _____.
   a. capture iron from hemoglobin and store it in the bacteria
   b. release hemolysins that destroy red blood cells
   c. produce fimbriae that enable the bacteria to attach to human cells
   d. protect the bacteria from phagocytosis and from antibodies

7. Which of the following bacteria might be responsible for the formation of petechiae in a host?
   a. *Neisseria meningitidis*
   b. *Escherichia coli* O157:H7
   c. *Klebsiella*
   d. *Proteus mirabilis*

8. The pathogen *Haemophilus influenzae* b causes _____.
   a. meningitis in children
   b. upper respiratory flu
   c. endocarditis
   d. genital chancroid

9. Which of the following diseases is typically mild?
   a. Brazilian purpuric fever
   b. bartonellosis
   c. pediatric meningitis
   d. cat scratch disease

10. Which bacterium causes infections in many burn victims?
    a. *Moraxella catarrhalis*
    b. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
    c. *Escherichia coli*
    d. *Bartonella bacilliformis*

11. Which of the following statements is true of Q fever?
    a. For many years its cause was questionable.
    b. It was first described in 1976 during an outbreak in Quincy, Massachusetts.
    c. Researchers found it could be effectively treated with quinine.
    d. The sharp spikes of fever on patients' temperature charts resemble porcupine quills.

12. Which of the following is a bile-tolerant anaerobe?
    a. *Bacteroides*
    b. *Escherichia*
    c. *Shigella*
    d. *Prevotella*

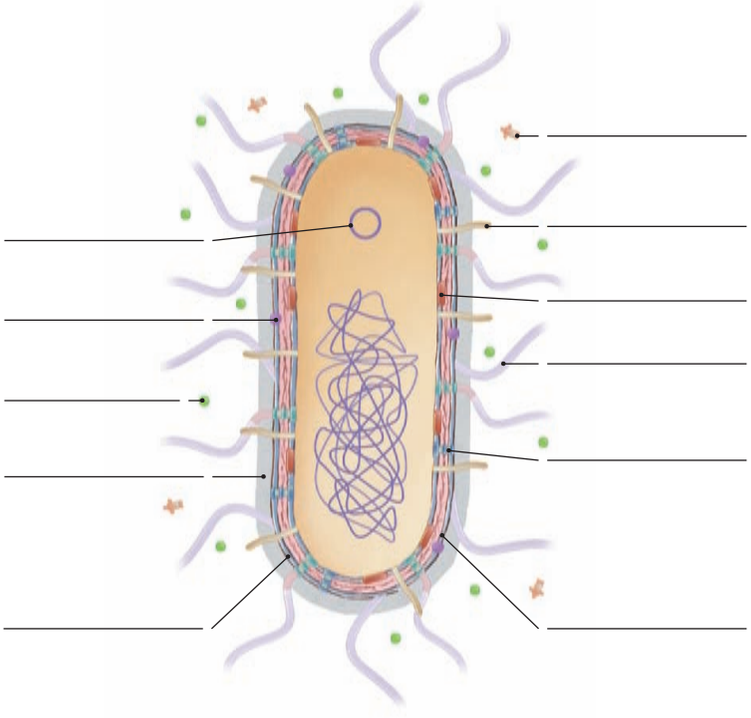
Matching

Match the bacteria with the disease (or symptoms) it causes.

1. ____	*Escherichia coli*	A. Bubonic plague
2. ____	*Klebsiella pneumoniae*	B. Typhoid fever
3. ____	*Proteus mirabilis*	C. Gastroenteritis
4. ____	*Salmonella enterica* serotype Typhi	D. Kidney stones
5. ____	*Shigella flexneri*	E. Pus-filled, bloody stools; cramps; fever; and diarrhea
6. ____	*Yersinia pestis*	F. Pneumonia

Visualize It!

1. Label the following drawing using these words: adhesin, exotoxin, H antigens, hemolysin, iron-binding protein, K antigens, lipid A, O antigen, fimbria, plasmid virulence genes, type III secretion system.



2. Shown is a MacConkey agar plate. Describe the Gram reaction and lactose fermentation of the bacteria shown.

Short Answer

1. A physician prescribes fluid replacement to treat a patient with diarrhea. Although tests showed that a pathogenic enteric bacterium was the cause of the intestinal distress, why was an antimicrobial drug not prescribed?
2. Distinguish among the pathogenicity of coliforms, noncoliforms, and truly pathogenic enteric bacteria.
3. Why do nurses place antimicrobial agents in babies' eyes at birth?
4. Statistics show that meningococcal diseases are more frequent in college dormitories and military barracks than in the population at large. Suggest an explanation of this observation.
5. Why might an alcoholic be susceptible to pulmonary disease?
6. Name six factors that facilitate the production of disease by *Bordetella pertussis.*
7. Given that pseudomonads are present in almost every moist environment, why do they cause less disease than other, less prevalent Gram-negative bacteria?
8. Although an effective vaccine is available to eradicate pertussis in the United States, why has the number of reported cases increased since the 1970s?
9. What two illnesses can be caused by *Legionella pneumophila*?
10. What attribute of *Coxiella burnetii* enables it to survive desiccation and heat for an extended time?
11. What virulence factors allow Gram-negative anaerobes to cause disease?
12. What single biochemical test result distinguishes gammaproteobacteria in the family Enterobacteriaceae from gammaproteobacteria in the family Pasteurellaceae?
13. Describe transovarian transmission of a pathogen.

Critical Thinking

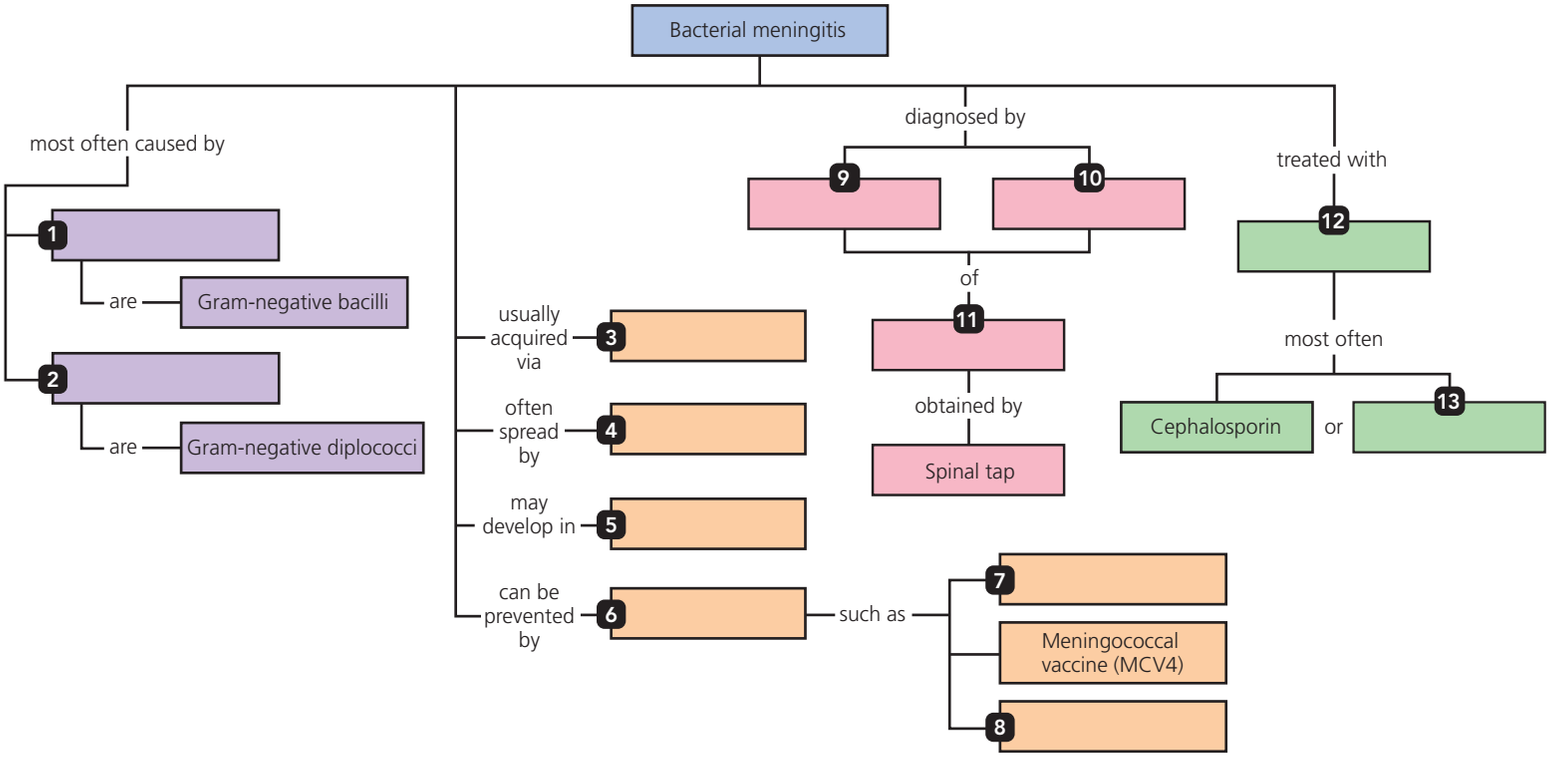
1. A three-year-old boy complains to his day care worker that his head hurts. The worker calls the child's mother, who arrives 30 minutes later to pick up her son. She is concerned that he is now listless and unresponsive, so she drives straight to the hospital emergency room. Though the medical staff immediately treats the boy with penicillin, he dies—only four hours after initially complaining of a headache. What caused the boy's death? Were the day care workers or the hospital staff to blame for his death? What steps should be taken to protect the other children at the day care facility?
2. An epidemiologist notices a statistical difference in the fatality rates between cases of Gram-positive bacteremia treated with antimicrobial drugs and treated cases of Gram-negative bacteremia—that is, patients with Gram-positive bacteremia are much more likely to respond to treatment and survive. Explain one reason why this might be so.
3. In one summer month, local physicians reported 11 cases of severe diarrhea in infants less than three years of age. All the children lived in the same neighborhood and played in the same park, which has a wading pool. Cultures of stool specimens from the children revealed a Gram-negative bacillus that gave negative results for the following biochemical tests: oxidase, lactose, urease, and hydrogen sulfide production. The organism was also nonmotile. What is the organism? How was it transmitted among the children? What could officials do to limit infections of other children?
4. Several years ago, epidemiologists noted that the number of cases of salmonellosis increased dramatically in the summer and was lower the rest of the year. In contrast, the number of cases of typhoid fever, caused by the same bacterium, was constant throughout the year. Explain these observations.
5. Most physicians maintain that the viral "stomach flu" is really a bacterial infection. Which genera of bacteria discussed in this chapter are good candidates for causing this disease?
6. A hunter reports to his physician that he has been suffering with fever, chills, malaise, and fatigue. What Gram-negative bacteria may be causing his symptoms? How can a laboratory scientist distinguish among these species?
7. Ear piercings resulted in a rash of infections in teenagers, all of whom reported having their ears pierced at a kiosk in a local mall. What bacterial species might be responsible? Investigators traced the infections to a bacterium living in a bottle of disinfectant and in a sink used by employees. What bacterium is the likely agent? Why was successful treatment difficult?
8. A 21-month-old child was admitted into the hospital with fever, severe abdominal cramps, and bloody diarrhea. The family revealed they had purchased an iguana one month previously and the child had helped clean the cage. What bacterium was the likely cause of diarrhea? What was the possible treatment? How could the family prevent a recurrence?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes bacterial meningitis. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

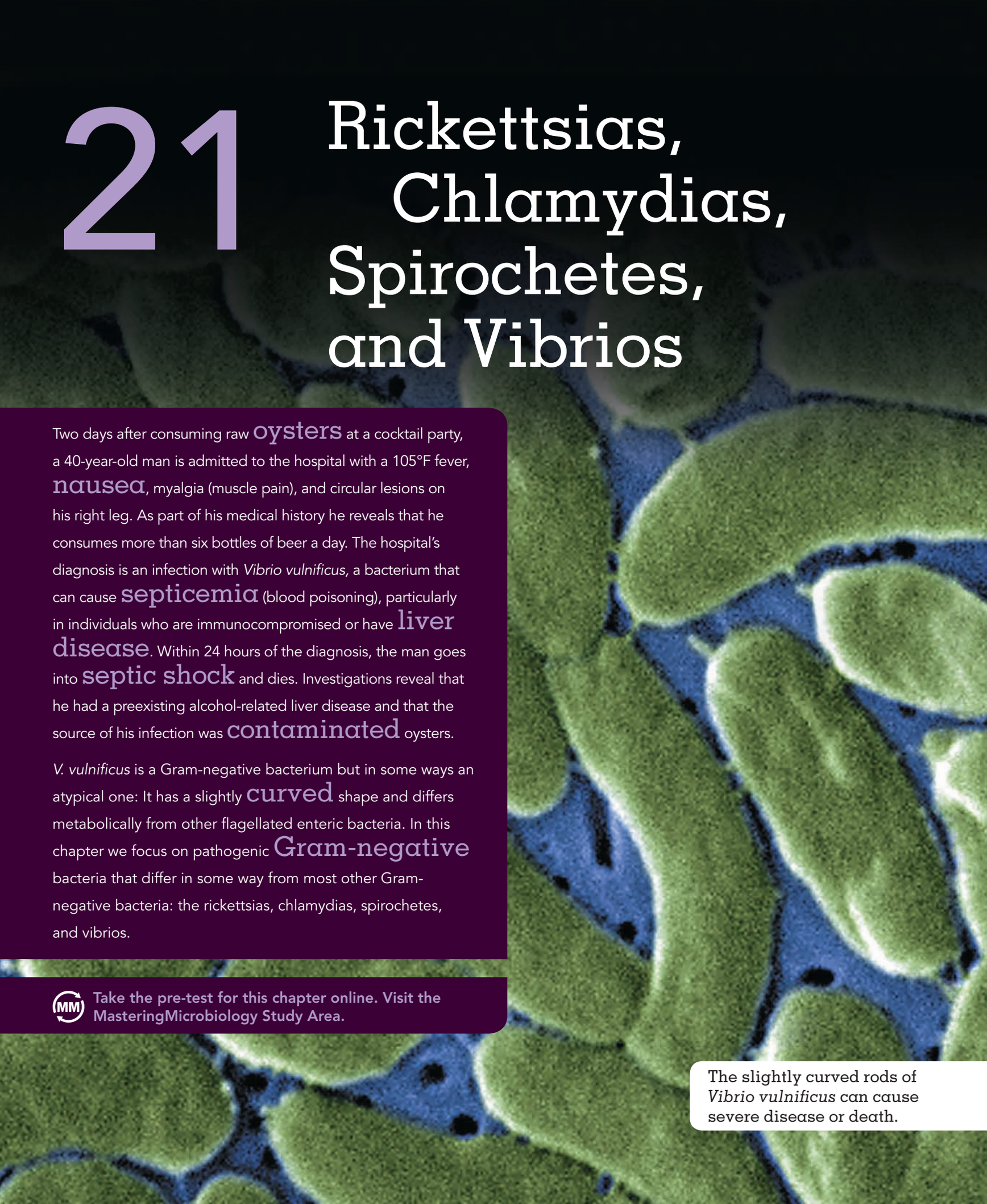
Antimicrobials
Cerebrospinal fluid
Gram stain
Haemophilus influenzae
Healthy carriers
Hib
Infants and young children
Meningococcal
Neisseria meningitidis
Penicillin G
Respiratory route
Serological test
Vaccines



21 Rickettsias, Chlamydias, Spirochetes, and Vibrios

Two days after consuming raw oysters at a cocktail party, a 40-year-old man is admitted to the hospital with a 105°F fever, nausea, myalgia (muscle pain), and circular lesions on his right leg. As part of his medical history he reveals that he consumes more than six bottles of beer a day. The hospital's diagnosis is an infection with *Vibrio vulnificus*, a bacterium that can cause septicemia (blood poisoning), particularly in individuals who are immunocompromised or have liver disease. Within 24 hours of the diagnosis, the man goes into septic shock and dies. Investigations reveal that he had a preexisting alcohol-related liver disease and that the source of his infection was contaminated oysters.

V. vulnificus is a Gram-negative bacterium but in some ways an atypical one: It has a slightly curved shape and differs metabolically from other flagellated enteric bacteria. In this chapter we focus on pathogenic Gram-negative bacteria that differ in some way from most other Gram-negative bacteria: the rickettsias, chlamydias, spirochetes, and vibrios.



The slightly curved rods of *Vibrio vulnificus* can cause severe disease or death.

A number of bacteria that stain pink in a Gram stain differ from typical Gram-negative organisms in morphology, growth habit, or reproductive strategy. One such group, the mycoplasmas, are genetically low G + C, Gram-positive bacteria that stain pink because they lack cell walls. Other unusual pathogens include the obligate intracellular rickettsias and chlamydias, the spiral-shaped spirochetes, and the slightly curved vibrios. Because of their unique features, these bacteria have traditionally been discussed separately—a tradition we continue here, beginning with the rickettsias.

Rickettsias

Rickettsias (ri-ket´sē-ăz) are tiny, Gram-negative, obligate intracellular parasites that synthesize only a small amount of peptidoglycan and thus appear almost wall-less. The group as a whole is named after the most common genus of them, *Rickettsia,* named for Howard Ricketts (1871–1910), who first identified rickettsias and described the transmission of one species via its tick vector. Rickettsias are extremely small (0.3 μm $\times$ 1.0 μm); in fact, they are not much bigger than a large virus. Because of their small size, rickettsias were originally considered viruses, but closer examination has revealed that they contain both DNA and RNA, functional ribosomes, and Krebs cycle enzymes and that they reproduce via binary fission—all characteristics of cells, not viruses.

Researchers have proposed several hypotheses to explain why rickettsias are obligate parasites, even though they have functional genes for protein synthesis, ATP production, and reproduction. Primary among these hypotheses is that rickettsias have very "leaky" cytoplasmic membranes and lose small cofactors (such as NAD^+) unless they are in an environment that contains an equivalent amount of these cofactors—such as the cytosol of a host cell.

Scientists classify rickettsias in the class Alphaproteobacteria of the bacterial phylum Proteobacteria based on the sequence of nucleotides in their rRNA molecules. At least four genera of rickettsias—*Rickettsia, Orientia, Ehrlichia,* and *Anaplasma*—cause diseases in humans. We begin our discussion with *Rickettsia.*

Rickettsia

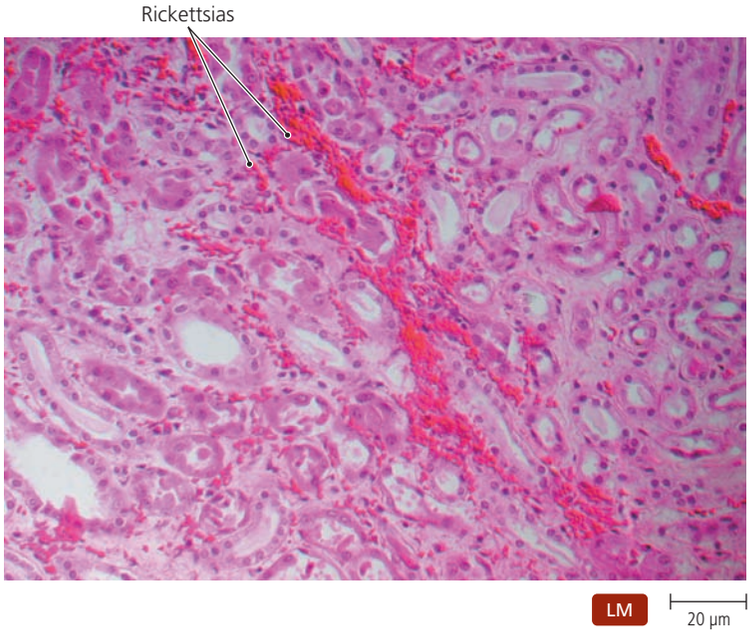
Learning Outcomes

21.1 List three species of *Rickettsia* that are responsible for human infections and identify their vectors.

21.2 Describe the rash and petechiae of spotted fever rickettsiosis (Rocky Mountain spotted fever, RMSF).

21.3 Explain the relationship between epidemic typhus and Brill-Zinsser disease.

Rickettsia is a genus of nonmotile, aerobic, intracellular parasites that live in the cytosol of their host cells. They possess minimal or no cell walls of peptidoglycan and an outer membrane of lipopolysaccharide with endotoxin activity. A loosely organized slime layer surrounds each cell. Rickettsias do not react well to the Gram stain, coloring only lightly pink, so scientists use special staining procedures such as *hematoxylin and eosin (H and E)* stain to visualize them **(Figure 21.1)**. Most human infections are by three species: *Rickettsia rickettsii* (ri-ket´sē-ē), *R. prowazekii* (prō-wă-ze´kē-ē), and *R. typhi* (tī´fē).



▲ **Figure 21.1 H and E stained *Rickettsia rickettsii*.** Rickettsias are intracellular parasites, here stained bright pink in cells lining kidney blood vessels.

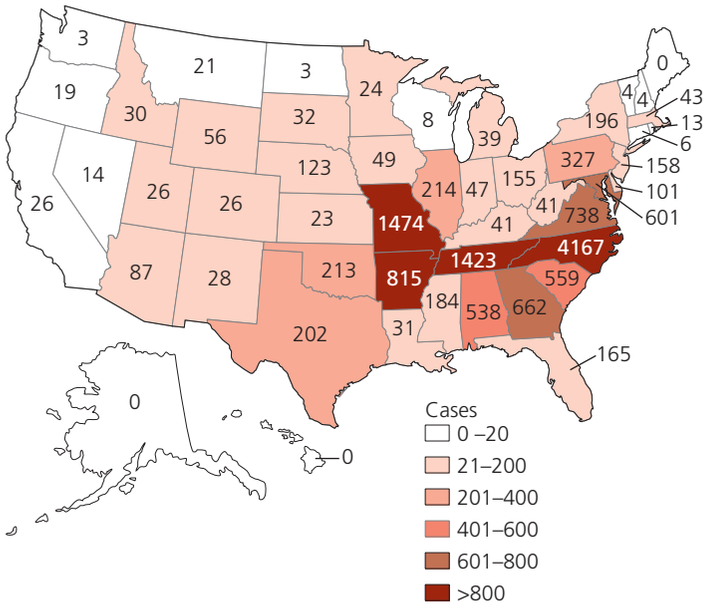
Arthropod vectors transmit all three species of *Rickettsia,* which enter host cells by stimulating endocytosis. Once inside a host cell, the microbes secrete an enzyme that digests the membrane of the endocytic vesicle, releasing the bacteria into the cytosol. As a result, rickettsias avoid the lysis that would ensue if a lysosome had merged with the endosome.

The pathogens grow and reproduce slowly, producing daughter cells only every 8 to 12 hours. *R. rickettsii* and *R. typhi* are continually released via exocytosis from long cytoplasmic extensions of host cells. In contrast, *R. prowazekii* gradually fills the host cell until the host cell lyses, releasing the parasites.

Outside of its host's cells, *Rickettsia* is unstable and dies quickly; therefore, rickettsias require vectors for transmission from host to host. Each rickettsial species is transmitted by different vectors, which also act as hosts and reservoirs.

Rickettsia rickettsii

R. rickettsii causes **spotted fever rickettsiosis** (principally **Rocky Mountain spotted fever, RMSF**), the most severe and most reported rickettsial illness. Even though the earliest reports of RMSF came from the Rocky Mountain states, the disease is actually more prevalent in the Appalachian Mountains,



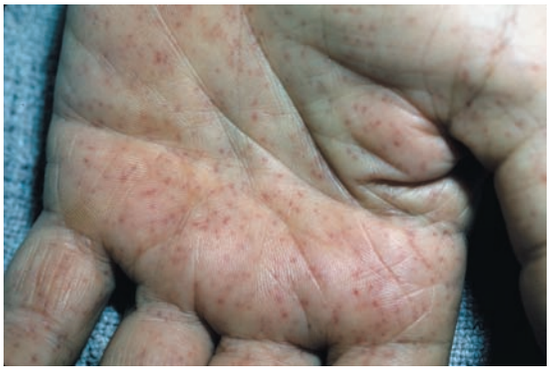
▲ **Figure 21.2** **Cases of spotted fever *rickettsiosis* in the United States, 1999–2011.**

Oklahoma, and the southeastern states **(Figure 21.2)**. Hard ticks in the genus *Dermacentor* (der-mă-sen´ter) transmit *R. rickettsii* among humans and rodents. The latter act as reservoirs. Male ticks infect female ticks during mating. Female ticks transmit the bacteria to eggs forming in their ovaries—a process called *transovarian transmission.*

R. rickettsii is typically dormant in the salivary glands of the ticks, and only when the arachnids feed for several hours are the bacteria activated. Active bacteria are released from the tick's salivary glands into the mammalian host's circulatory system, where they infect endothelial cells lining small blood vessels. In rare cases, humans become infected following exposure to tissues and fluids from crushed ticks or to tick feces.

R. rickettsii secretes no toxins, and disease is not the product of the host's immune response. Apparently, damage to the blood vessels leads to leakage of plasma into the tissues, which may result in low blood pressure and insufficient nutrient and oxygen delivery to the body's organs.

About a week after infection, patients experience fever, headache, chills, muscle pain, nausea, and vomiting. In most cases (90%), a spotted, nonitchy rash develops on the trunk and appendages **(Figure 21.3)**—including the palms and soles, sites not involved in rashes caused by the chickenpox or measles viruses. In about 50% of patients, the rash develops into subcutaneous hemorrhages called *petechiae* (pe-tē´kē-ē). In severe cases, the respiratory, central nervous, gastrointestinal, and renal systems fail. Encephalitis may also occur, producing language disorders, delirium, convulsions, coma, and death. Even with treatment, almost 5% of patients die. Patients recovering from life-threatening acute Rocky Mountain spotted fever may experience paralysis of the legs, hearing loss, and gangrenous secondary infections with *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm) that necessitate the amputation of fingers, toes, arms, or legs.



▲ **Figure 21.3** **The rash in a case of Rocky Mountain spotted fever.** The rash often occurs on the palms as well as on the trunk and appendages.

Serological tests such as latex agglutination and fluorescent antibody stains are used to confirm an initial diagnosis based on sudden fever and headache following exposure to hard ticks, plus a rash on the soles or palms. Nucleic acid probes of specimens from rash lesions provide specific and accurate diagnosis, but such tests are expensive and typically are performed only by trained technicians in special laboratories. Early diagnosis is crucial because prompt treatment often makes the difference between recovery and death.

Physicians treat Rocky Mountain spotted fever by carefully removing the tick and prescribing doxycycline for most adults or chloramphenicol for children and pregnant women. An effective vaccine is not available. Prevention of infection involves wearing tight-fitting clothing, using tick repellents, promptly removing attached ticks, and avoiding tick-infested areas, especially in spring and summer, when ticks are most voracious. It is impossible to eliminate the ticks in the wild, in part because they can survive without feeding for more than four years.

Until recently, clinicians considered *R. rickettsii* as the only rickettsia to cause a tick-borne spotted fever. **Emerging Disease Case Study: A New Cause of Spots** considers a newly recognized rickettsial pathogen.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why do most cases of Rocky Mountain spotted fever occur in May, June, and July?

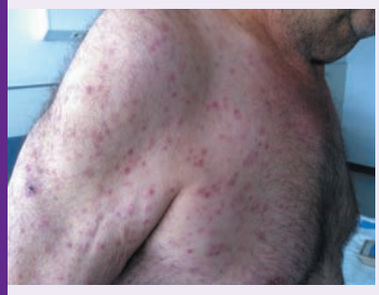
Rickettsia prowazekii

Rickettsia prowazekii causes **epidemic typhus,**[1] which is also called *louse-borne typhus* because it is vectored by the human body louse, *Pediculis humanus* (pĕ-dik´yu-lŭs hū-man´us; see Figure 12.33). *R. prowazekii* kills lice within two to three weeks, which prevents transovarian transmission but allows sufficient time for lice to transmit the bacterium between humans. In contrast to other rickettsias, *R. prowazekii* has humans as its primary hosts.

[1]From Greek *typhos*, meaning "stupor."

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

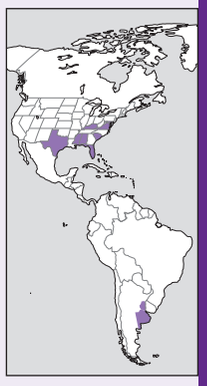
A NEW CAUSE OF SPOTS



Fifty-two-year old David has a good life. After 30 years serving the country as an army officer, he has retired to the Texas Gulf coast—a region of large oaks, mild winter weather, and great outdoor spaces. It's a great place to retire and enjoy hiking through the woods and meadows photographing wildlife. It would be nearly perfect if some of the wildlife didn't bite. Ubiquitous ants, pesky mosquitoes, and bloodsucking ticks seem to always be on the prowl.

It's a tick that brings him to his doctor today. The thing had bit him on his left shoulder, resulting in a huge boil that swelled and drained pus, though the lesion doesn't hurt at all. His primary care physician doesn't appear to be too concerned and prescribes amoxicillin for the boil.

Three days later, David is back but feeling much worse. He has suddenly developed fever, headache, muscle pains, fatigue, and an alarming rash over most of his body. The physician now suspects Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF), though it's relatively rare in Texas, and orders a laboratory test using anti–*Rickettsia rickettsii* antibodies. The test comes back negative; David is not infected with *R. rickettsii*. He does not have RMSF. The doctor takes a skin sample from the infected area and prescribes 100 mg of doxycycline twice daily for two weeks.



The rash resolves in a week and further polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing on bacteria found in the sample of skin reveals *R. parkeri*. In the United States, the Gulf coast tick, *Amblyomma maculatum*, is the vector for this bacterium that was long thought to be harmless to humans. David is one of the first of several dozen patients to tangle with this pathogen that is emerging as a threat in the southeast United States and in Argentina.

1. Why wasn't amoxicillin effective against the pathogen?
2. Why didn't the antibody test show *Rickettsia parkeri* infection?
3. What is PCR testing?
4. In a Gram-stained sample of David's skin, what color would the rickettsias be?

Epidemic typhus occurs in crowded, unsanitary living conditions that favor the spread of body lice; it is endemic in Central and South America and in Africa. It can recur many years (even decades) following an initial episode. The recurrent disease (called *Brill-Zinsser*[2] *disease*) is mild and brief and resembles murine typhus (discussed shortly).

Diagnosis is based on the observation of signs and symptoms—high fever, mental and physical depression, and a rash that lasts for about two weeks—following exposure to infected lice. Diagnosis must be confirmed by the demonstration of the bacterium in tissue samples using fluorescent antibody tests.

Epidemic typhus is treated with doxycycline or chloramphenicol. Prevention involves controlling lice populations and maintaining good personal hygiene. An attenuated vaccine against epidemic typhus is available for use in high-risk populations.

Rickettsia typhi

Rickettsia typhi causes **murine**[3] **typhus** (mū´rēn), which is so named because the major reservoir for the bacterium is rodents. The vectors for this disease, which is also known as *endemic typhus,* are fleas. The rat flea *Xenopsylla cheopis* (zen-op-sil´ă chē-op´is; see Figure 12.33) and the cat flea *Ctenocephalides felis* (tē-nō-se-fal´i-dez fē´lis; which also feeds on opossums, raccoons, and skunks) transmit the bacteria among the animal hosts and to humans. About 10 days following the bite of an infected flea, an abrupt fever, severe headache, chills, muscle pain, and nausea occur. A rash typically restricted to the chest and abdomen occurs in less than 50% of cases. The disease usually lasts about three weeks if left untreated and usually is not fatal.

Murine typhus is most often seen in the southern United States from Florida to California, and it is estimated that 50 cases occur annually, though the extent and incidence of the disease is not known because national notification requirements for murine typhus were discontinued in 1994. The disease is still endemic in every continent except Antarctica.

Diagnosis is initially based on signs and symptoms following exposure to fleas. An immunofluorescent antibody stain of a blood smear provides specific confirmation. Treatment is with doxycycline or chloramphenicol. Prevention, as with other rickettsial diseases, involves avoiding bites by the arthropod vectors, wearing protective clothing, and using chemical repellents. No vaccine is available for murine typhus.

[2]After physician Nathan Brill and bacteriologist Hans Zinsser, who studied the condition.
[3]From Latin *murinus*, meaning "relating to mice."

Orientia tsutsugamushi

Learning Outcome

21.4 Identify the causative agent, vector, and reservoir of scrub typhus.

The rickettsial organism *Orientia tsutsugamushi* (ōr-ē-en´tē-ă tsoo-tsoo-gă-mū´shē) was formerly classified in the genus *Rickettsia*, but taxonomists now assign it to the new genus *Orientia*. It differs from *Rickettsia* by having significantly different rRNA nucleotide sequences, a thicker cell wall, and a minimal slime layer. Mites of the genus *Leptotrombidium* (lep´tō-trom-bid´ē-ŭm), also known as red mites or chiggers, transmit *Orientia* among rodents and humans. Infected female mites transmit the bacterium to their offspring via transovarian transmission, and the offspring transmit it to a rodent or human while feeding. Because these arachnids feed on a host only once in their lives, an individual mite cannot transmit rickettsia directly from a rodent to a human. In addition to being the vector, mites are the only known reservoir of *Orientia*.

O. tsutsugamushi causes **scrub typhus,** a disease endemic to eastern Asia, Australia, and the western Pacific islands, including Japan. It occurs in the United States among immigrants who arrived from endemic areas. Scrub typhus is characterized by fever, headache, and muscle pain, all of which develop about 11 days after a mite bite. Less than half of patients with scrub typhus also develop a spreading rash on their trunks and appendages. In a few cases, death results from failure of the heart and the central nervous system.

Physicians treat scrub typhus in nonpregnant adults with doxycycline or macrolides. They treat children and pregnant women with azithromycin. No vaccine is available. Prevention involves avoiding exposure to mites by wearing appropriate clothing and using repellent chemicals.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why do physicians treating rickettsial diseases prescribe doxycycline for most adults but instead prescribe azithromycin for children and pregnant women?

Ehrlichia and *Anaplasma*

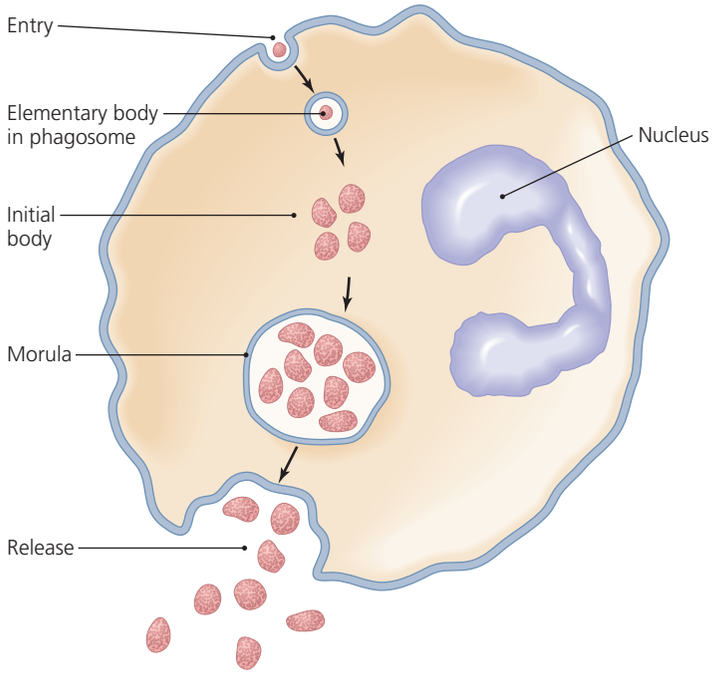
Learning Outcomes

21.5 Identify the diseases caused by *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma*, respectively.

21.6 Identify the three developmental stages of *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma*.

21.7 Discuss the difficulties in diagnosing ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis.

Ehrlichia chaffeensis (er-lik´ē-ă chaf-ē-en´sis) and *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* (an-ă-plaz´mă fag-ō-sī-to´fil-ŭm, previously called *Ehrlichia equi*, ē´kwē) cause **human monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME)** and **anaplasmosis** (previously human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, HGE), respectively. These two diseases are considered *emerging diseases* in the United States because they were unknown before 1987, and the number of reported cases has increased from a few per year in the 1980s to over 100 cases annually.



▲ **Figure 21.4 The growth and reproduction cycle of *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* in an infected leukocyte.** *If the rickettsia shown here is* Ehrlichia chaffeensis, *then what kind of leukocyte is it infecting?*

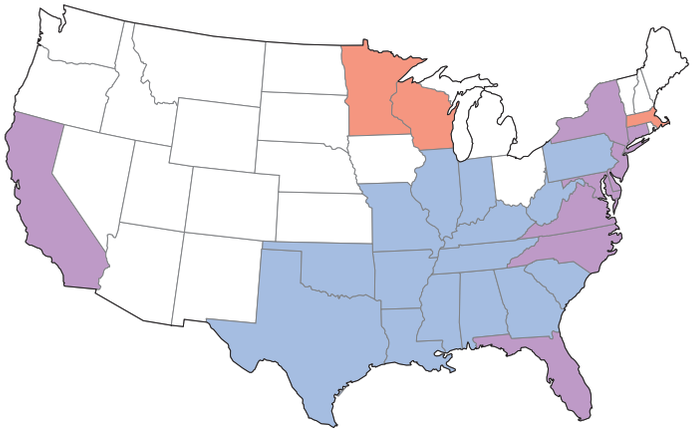
Figure 21.4 Ehrlichia chaffeensis *infects human monocytes.*

Ticks, including the Lone Star tick *(Amblyomma,* am-blē-ō´ma), the deer tick *(Ixodes, ik-*sō´dēz), and the dog tick *(Dermacentor),* transmit *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* to humans. Once in the blood, each bacterium triggers its own phagocytosis by a white blood cell (either a monocyte in HME or a neutrophil in anaplasmosis). Unlike *Rickettsia, Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* grow and reproduce within the host cell's phagosomes. Because the bacteria are killed if a phagosome fuses with a lysosome, the bacteria must somehow prevent fusion, but the mechanism is unknown. Inside a leukocyte the bacteria grow and reproduce through three developmental stages: an *elementary body,* an *initial body,* and a *morula* **(Figure 21.4)**. The release of the cells from the morula and into the blood makes them available to feeding ticks.

HME and anaplasmosis resemble Rocky Mountain spotted fever but without the rash, which only rarely occurs in ehrlichiosis or anaplasmosis. *Leukopenia* (loo-kō-pē´nē-ă), which is an abnormally low leukocyte count, is typically seen. Death from untreated HME is about 5%, and that from untreated anaplasmosis approaches 10%, especially in elderly patients.

Diagnosis of ehrlichiosis or anaplasmosis is difficult because the symptoms resemble those of other diseases. Physicians consider ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis in any case of otherwise unexplained acute fever in patients exposed to ticks in endemic regions **(Figure 21.5)**. Immunofluorescent antibodies against *Ehrlichia* or against *Anaplasma* can demonstrate the bacterium within blood cells, confirming the diagnosis.

Doxycycline and tetracycline are effective against both *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma,* but chloramphenicol is not. Treatment



▲ **Figure 21.5 The geographical distribution of ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis in the contiguous United States.** Blue indicates states where ehrlichiosis is endemic, orange where anaplasmosis is endemic, and purple where both diseases are endemic.

should start immediately, even before the diagnosis is confirmed by serological testing because the complications of infection and mortality rates increase when treatment is delayed. Prevention involves avoiding tick-infested areas, promptly removing ticks, wearing tight-fitting clothing, and using repellent chemicals. Vaccines against the two species are not available.

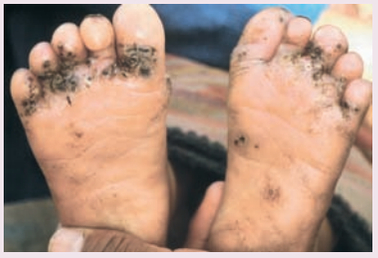
Table 21.1 summarizes the rickettsial species, vectors, reservoirs, and diseases.

CRITICAL THINKING

Explain the derivation of the name of the disease caused by *Ehrlichia* and of the old name for anaplasmosis.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

BLAME IT ON THE CHIGGERS



An 85-year-old man arrives one summer morning at the clinic of his Florida retirement community with severe headache, chills, muscle pain, and nausea. He reports that the symptoms developed quite suddenly. He has had no rash. During the interview the man states that he is a World War II veteran of the battle for Guadalcanal in the South Pacific, a golfer, and an avid bird watcher who spends many hours in the woods near his home. He had not noticed any fleas, ticks, or lice on his body, but he had been almost "eaten alive" by chiggers. His cat had a few fleas, but he had "gotten the little buggers." He had not been out of the United States in 40 years.

1. What rickettsial diseases might the man have?
2. What are the vectors for these diseases?
3. What diagnostic test(s) might verify the initial diagnosis?
4. Is the man's life in danger?
5. What drug will the physician likely prescribe?

Chlamydias

Learning Outcomes

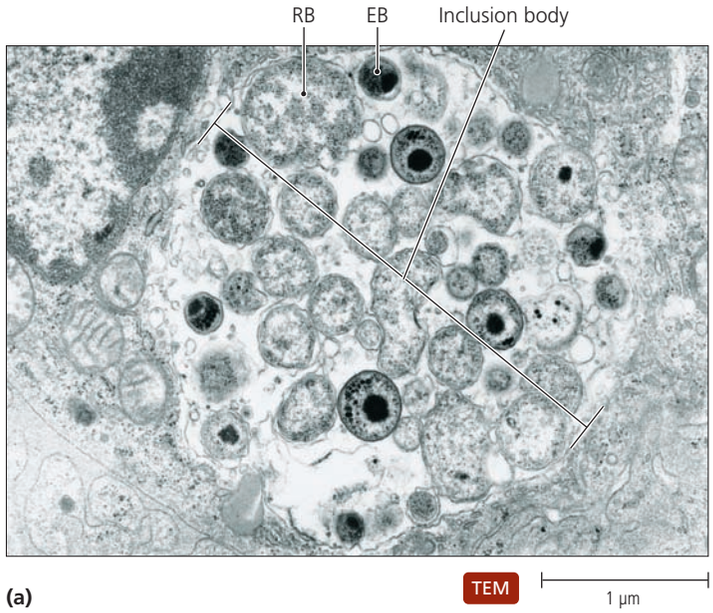
21.8 Describe the life cycle of chlamydias, including the two developmental forms.

21.9 Discuss the term *energy parasite* as it relates to chlamydias.

Chlamydias are a group of bacteria that vie with rickettsias for the title "smallest bacterium." Like rickettsias, chlamydias are nonmotile and grow and multiply only within vesicles in host cells. Scientists once considered chlamydias to be viruses because of their small size, obligate intracellular lifestyle, and ability to pass through 0.45-µm pores in filters, which were thought to trap all cells. However, chlamydias are cellular and possess DNA, RNA, and functional 70S ribosomes. Each chlamydial cell is surrounded by two membranes, similar to a typical Gram-negative bacterium but without peptidoglycan between the membranes—chlamydias

TABLE 21.1 Characteristics of Some Rickettsias

Organism	Primary Vectors	Reservoirs	Diseases
R. rickettsii	Hard ticks: wood tick *(Dermacentor andersoni)* and dog tick *(D. variabilis)*	Ticks, rodents	Spotted fever rickettsiosis (Rocky Mountain spotted fever)
R. prowazekii	Human body louse *(Pediculus humanus)*	Humans, squirrels, squirrel fleas	Epidemic (louse-borne) typhus
R. typhi	Rat flea *(Xenopsylla cheopis)* and cat flea *(Ctenocephalides felis)*	Rodents	Murine (endemic) typhus
Orientia tsutsugamushi	Mite (chigger; *Leptotrombidium* spp.)	Mites	Scrub typhus
Ehrlichia spp	Hard tick: Lone Star tick *(Amblyomma americanum)*	Ticks	Human monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME)
Anaplasma phagocytophilum	Hard tick: *Ixodes* spp	Ticks	Anaplasmosis



▶ **Figure 21.6 Development of chlamydias. (a)** An inclusion body containing elementary bodies and reticulate bodies, here of *Chlamydia* inside a human lung cell. **(b)** The life cycle of chlamydias. Times in parentheses refer to hours since infection.

lack cell walls. In contrast with rickettsias, chlamydias do not have arthropods as vectors or hosts. Because of their unusual features and unique rRNA nucleotide sequences, taxonomists now classify chlamydias in their own phylum: Chlamydiae.

Chlamydias have a unique developmental cycle involving two forms, both of which can occur within endocytic vesicles of a host cell **(Figure 21.6a)**: tiny (0.2–0.4 μm) cocci called **elementary bodies (EBs)** and larger (0.6–1.5 μm) pleomorphic **reticulate bodies (RBs).** Elementary bodies are relatively dormant, are resistant to environmental extremes, can survive outside cells, and are the infective forms. Reticulate bodies are noninfective, obligate intracellular forms that replicate via binary fission within phagosomes, where they survive by inhibiting the fusion of a lysosome with the phagosome. Chlamydias lack the metabolic enzymes needed to synthesize ATP, so they must depend on their host cells for the high-energy phosphate compounds they require; thus, chlamydias have been called *energy parasites.*

In the life cycle of chlamydias **(Figure 21.6b)**, once an EB attaches to a host cell 1, it enters by triggering its own endocytosis 2. Once inside the endosome, the EB converts into an RB 3, which then divides rapidly into multiple RBs 4. Once an infected vesicle becomes filled with RBs, it is called an **inclusion body.** About 21 hours after infection, RBs within an inclusion body begin converting back to EBs 5, and about 19 hours after that, the EBs are released from the host cell via exocytosis 6, becoming available to infect new cells and completing the life cycle.

Three chlamydias cause disease in humans. In order of the prevalence with which they infect humans, they are *Chlamydia trachomatis, Chlamydophila pneumoniae,* and *Chlamydophila psittaci.* We begin our discussion with the most common species—*C. trachomatis.*

Chlamydia trachomatis

Learning Outcomes

21.10 List the types of cells in the human body that are most often infected by *Chlamydia.*

21.11 Explain how sexually inactive children may become infected with *C. trachomatis.*

21.12 Describe the cause and symptoms of lymphogranuloma venereum.

21.13 Discuss the prevention of chlamydial infections.

Chlamydia trachomatis (kla-mid´ē-a tra-kō´ma-tis) has a very limited host range. One exceptional strain, which may eventually be classified as a separate species, causes pneumonia in mice, but all other strains are pathogens of humans.

Pathogenesis and Epidemiology

C. trachomatis enters a human body through abrasions and lacerations and infects a limited array of cells—those that have

receptors for elementary bodies, including cells of the conjunctiva and cells lining the mucous membranes of the trachea, bronchi, urethra, uterus, uterine (Fallopian) tubes, anus, and rectum. The clinical manifestations of chlamydial infection result from the destruction of infected cells at the site of infection and from the inflammatory response this destruction stimulates. Reinfection in the same site by the same or a similar strain triggers a vigorous hypersensitive immune response that can result in blindness, sterility, or sexual dysfunction.

Infection with *C. trachomatis* is the most commonly reported sexually transmitted disease in the United States; 1,307,893 cases were reported in 2011, but epidemiologists estimate that about 3.5 million asymptomatic cases go unreported annually. Sexually transmitted chlamydial infections are most prevalent among women under the age of 20 because they are physiologically more susceptible to infection.

Researchers further estimate that over 500 million people worldwide, particularly children, contract ocular infections with *C. trachomatis.* The pathogen can be transmitted from eye to eye via droplets, hands, contaminated fomites, or flies. Infected children also harbor the bacterium in their digestive and respiratory tracts, so the bacterium can be transmitted to other children or adults via fecal contamination and respiratory droplets. Children may also be infected during birth as they pass through an infected birth canal. Chlamydial eye infections are endemic in crowded, poor communities where people have inadequate personal hygiene, inadequate sanitation, or inferior medical care, particularly in the Middle East, North Africa, and India.

Diseases

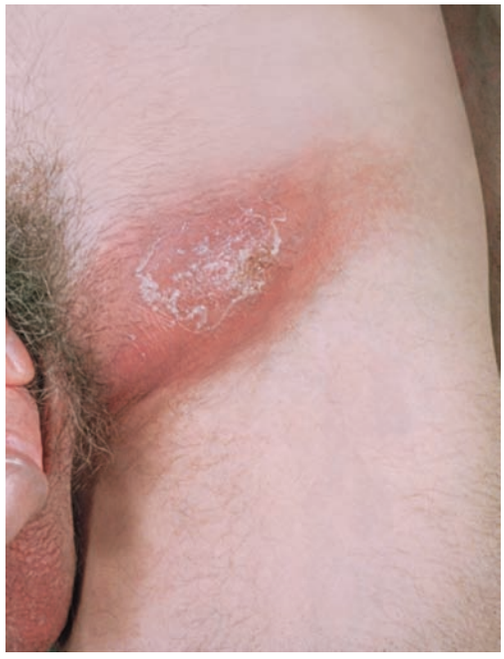
The diseases caused by the various strains of *Chlamydia trachomatis* are of two main types: sexually transmitted diseases and an ocular disease called trachoma.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases A transient genital lesion and swollen, painfully inflamed, inguinal lymph nodes (buboes) characterize **lymphogranuloma venereum**[4] (lim´fō-gran-ū-lō´mă ve-ne´rē-ŭm; **Figure 21.7**), which is caused by the so-called *LGV strain* of *C. trachomatis.* The initial lesion of lymphogranuloma venereum occurs at the site of infection on the penis, urethra, scrotum, vulva, vagina, cervix, or rectum. This lesion is often overlooked because it is small and painless and heals rapidly. Headache, muscle pain, and fever may also occur at this stage of the disease.

The second stage of the disease involves the development of buboes (swollen lymph nodes) associated with lymphatic vessels draining the site of infection. The buboes, which are accompanied by fever, chills, anorexia, and muscle pain, may enlarge to the point that they rupture, producing draining sores.

In a few cases, lymphogranuloma venereum proceeds to a third stage characterized by genital sores, constriction of the urethra, and genital elephantiasis. Arthritis may also occur during this third stage, particularly in young white males.

Although about 85% of genital tract infections in women are asymptomatic, more than 75% of infections in men have symptoms. Infected men also often have urethral inflammation, which cannot be distinguished from gonorrhea based on symptoms alone. Such chlamydial urethritis accounts for about 50% of cases of *nongonococcal urethritis.*



▲ **Figure 21.7 An advanced case of lymphogranuloma venereum in a man.** *Which microorganism causes lymphogranuloma venereum?*

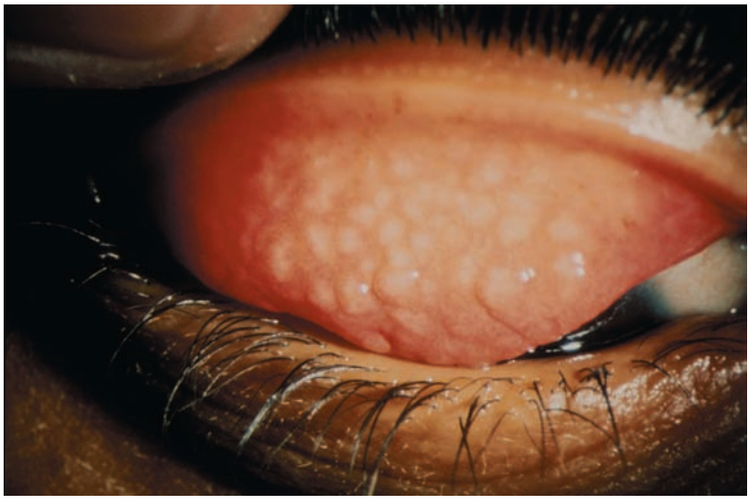
Figure 21.7 *Chlamydia trachomatis.*

Proctitis[5] may occur in men and women as a result of lymphatic spread of the bacterium from the vagina, vulva, cervix, or urethra to the rectum. About 15% of the cases of proctitis in homosexual men result from the spread of *C. trachomatis* via anal intercourse.

An immune response against reinfections of *C. trachomatis* in women can have serious consequences, causing pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). PID involves chronic pelvic pain; irreversible damage to the uterine tubes, uterus, and ovaries; and sterility.

Trachoma The so-called *trachoma strains* of *C. trachomatis* cause a disease of the eye called **trachoma** (trăk-kō´mă; **Figure 21.8**), which is the leading cause of nontraumatic blindness in humans. The pathogen multiplies in cells of the conjunctiva and kills them, triggering a copious, purulent[6] (pus-filled) discharge that causes the conjunctiva to become scarred. Such scarring in turn causes the patient's eyelids to turn inward such that the eyelashes abrade, irritate, and scar the cornea, triggering an invasion of blood vessels into this normally clear surface of the eye. A scarred cornea filled with blood vessels is no longer transparent, and the eventual result is blindness.

[4]From Latin *lympha*, meaning "clear water"; Latin *granulum*, meaning "a small grain"; Greek *oma*, meaning "tumor" (swelling); and Latin *Venus*, the goddess of sexual love.
[5]From Greek *proktos*, meaning "rectum," and *itis*, meaning "inflammation."
[6]From Latin *pur*, meaning "pus."



▲ **Figure 21.8** An eyelid afflicted with trachoma.

Trachoma is typically a disease of children who have been infected during birth. However, LGV strains of *C. trachomatis* may produce blindness by a similar process in adults when bacteria from the genitalia are introduced into the eyes via fomites or fingers.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

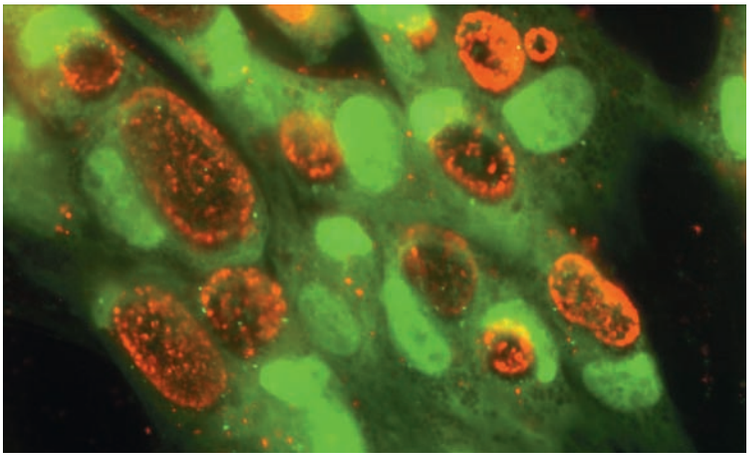
Diagnosis of chlamydial infection involves demonstration of bacteria inside cells from the site of infection. Specimens can be obtained from the urethra, vagina, or anus by inserting, rotating, and then removing a sterile swab. Giemsa-stained specimens may reveal bacteria or inclusion bodies within cells, but the most specific method of diagnosis involves amplifying the number of chlamydia by inoculating the specimen into a culture of susceptible cells. Laboratory technicians then demonstrate the presence of *Chlamydia* in the cell culture by means of specific fluorescent antibodies **(Figure 21.9)** or nucleic acid probes.

Physicians prescribe doxycycline for 21 days to eliminate genital infections of LGV strains of *C. trachomatis* in most adults and their sexual partners. Erythromycin is recommended for treatment of pregnant women. Trachoma strains of *C. trachomatis* infecting the eyes of newborns are treated with erythromycin or azithromycin cream for 10 to 14 days, whereas ocular infections with LGV strains in adults are treated with azithromycin cream for 7 days. Surgical correction of eyelid deformities may prevent the abrasion, scarring, and blindness that typically result from ocular infections.

Prevention of sexually transmitted chlamydial infections is best achieved by abstinence or faithful mutual monogamy. Condoms may provide some protection, though some researchers warn that irritation by condoms and their lubricants actually increases the likelihood of chlamydial infection. Blindness can be prevented only by prompt treatment with antibacterial agents and prevention of reinfection. Unfortunately, genital chlamydial infections are often asymptomatic and frequently occur among populations that have limited access to medical care.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why are penicillins and cephalosporins useless against *Chlamydia*?



▲ **Figure 21.9** **A direct fluorescent antibody test for *Chlamydia trachomatis*.** The bright red color reveals the presence of *Chlamydia* within cells; this result is diagnostic for a *C. trachomatis* infection. Green indicates human cells.

Chlamydophila pneumoniae

Learning Outcome

21.14 Describe three diseases associated with *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*.

Chlamydophila pneumoniae (kla-mē-dof´ĭ-lă nū-mō´nē-ī; formerly called *Chlamydia pneumoniae*) causes about 10% of U.S. cases of community-acquired pneumonia and 5% of the cases of bronchitis and sinusitis. Based primarily on circumstantial and epidemiological data, this chlamydia has also been implicated as a cause of some cases of atherosclerosis—lipid deposits on the walls of arteries and the first stage of arteriosclerosis, or hardening of the arteries. Most infections with *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* are mild, producing only malaise and a chronic cough, and do not require hospitalization. Some cases, however, are characterized by the development of a severe pneumonia that cannot be distinguished from primary atypical pneumonia, which is caused by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* (mī´kō-plaz-mă nū-mō´nē-ī).

Fluorescent antibodies demonstrate the intercellular presence of *C. pneumoniae,* which is diagnostic. Doxycycline or azithromycin for 14 days is used to treat infections of *C. pneumoniae,* but the drugs are not always effective, and infections may persist. Prevention of infection is difficult because the bacterium is ubiquitous and spreads via respiratory droplets.

Chlamydophila psittaci

Learning Outcome

21.15 Describe the diseases caused by *Chlamydophila psittaci*.

Chlamydophila psittaci (sit´ă-sē; formerly called *Chlamydia psittaci*) causes **ornithosis**[7] (ōr-ni-thō´sis), a disease of birds that

[7]From Greek *ornith*, meaning "bird."

can be transmitted to humans, in whom it typically causes flulike symptoms. In some cases severe pneumonia occurs, and rarely nonrespiratory conditions, such as endocarditis, hepatitis, arthritis, conjunctivitis, and encephalitis, are observed. The disease is sometimes called *psittacosis* or *parrot fever* because it was first identified in parrots (*psitakos* means "parrot" in Greek). Several dozen cases of ornithosis are reported in the United States annually, often in adults. Most likely this disease is underreported because symptoms are often mild and diagnosis is difficult. Zookeepers, veterinarians, poultry farmers, pet shop workers, and owners of pet birds are at greatest risk of infection.

Elementary bodies of *Chlamydophila psittaci* may be inhaled in aerosolized bird feces or respiratory secretions or ingested from fingers or fomites that have contacted infected birds. Pet birds may transmit the disease to humans via beak-to-mouth contact. Because very brief exposure to birds can be sufficient for the transmission of elementary bodies, some patients cannot recall having any contact with birds. Symptoms usually occur within 10 days of exposure to the chlamydias. Without treatment, the mortality rate of ornithosis is about 20%, but with treatment death is rare.

Because the symptoms of ornithosis are the same as those of many respiratory infections, diagnosis requires demonstration of *C. psittaci* by serological testing. Tetracycline or azithromycin for one week is the preferred treatment. Prevention involves wearing protective clothing when handling infected birds, 30-day quarantine of and tetracycline treatment for all imported birds, and preventive husbandry, in which bird cages are regularly cleaned and are positioned so as to prevent the transfer of feces, feathers, food, and other materials from cage to cage. No vaccine for either birds or humans is available.

Table 21.2 compares and contrasts the features of the smallest microbes—rickettsias, chlamydias, mycoplasmas, and viruses. Next we turn our attention to the spirochetes.

Spirochetes

Learning Outcome

21.16 Describe the morphology and locomotion of spirochetes.

Spirochetes (spī´rō-kētz), which means *coiled hairs* in Greek, are thin (0.1–0.5 µm in diameter), tightly coiled, helically shaped, Gram-negative bacteria that share certain unique features—most notably axial filaments. Axial filaments are composed of endoflagella located in the periplasmic space between the cytoplasmic membrane and the outer (wall) membrane (see Figure 3.8). As its axial filament rotates, a spirochete corkscrews through its environment—a type of locomotion thought to enable pathogenic spirochetes to burrow through their hosts' tissues. Mutants lacking endoflagella are rod shaped rather than helical, indicating that the axial filaments play a role in maintaining cell shape.

Taxonomists place spirochetes in their own phylum—Spirochaetes. Three genera, *Treponema, Borrelia,* and *Leptospira,* cause diseases in humans; we begin by discussing *Treponema.*

Treponema

Learning Outcomes

21.17 Describe the disease caused by *Treponema pallidum.*

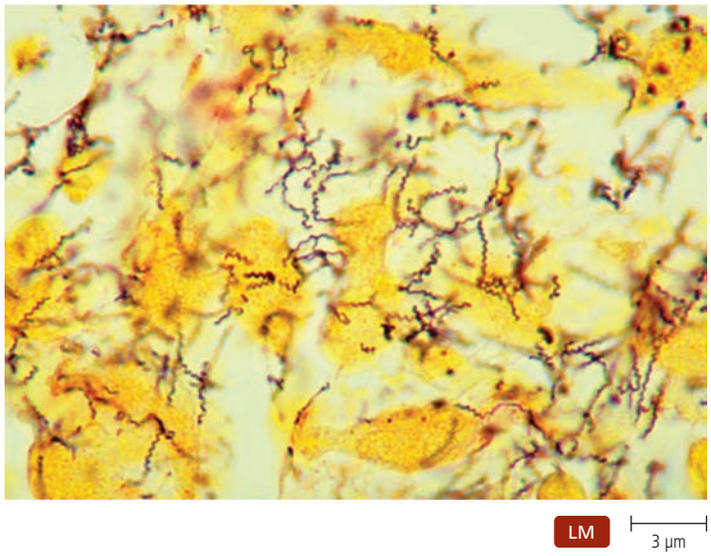
21.18 Describe the four phases of untreated syphilis and the treatment for each.

21.19 Describe the diseases caused by nonvenereal strains of *Treponema.*

Treponema (trep-ō-nē´mă) is a pathogen of humans only. Four types cause diseases, the most widespread of which is *Treponema pallidum pallidum* (i.e., subspecies, strain, or serotype *pallidum*). We will first examine this sexually transmitted pathogen and the venereal disease it causes, and then we will briefly consider the nonvenereal diseases caused by the other three strains—*T. pallidum endemicum, T. pallidum pertenue,* and *T. carateum.*

TABLE 21.2 Characteristics of the Smallest Microbes

Feature	Rickettsias	Chlamydias	Mycoplasmas	Viruses
Cellular structure	Small cells with little peptidoglycan in cell walls	Small, wall-less cells with two membranes	Small, wall-less, pleomorphic cells with sterol in cytoplasmic membranes	Acellular
Diameter	0.3 µm	EBs: 0.2–0.4 µm RBs: 0.6–1.5 µm	0.1–0.8 µm	0.01–0.3 µm
Lifestyle	Obligate intracellular parasites within cytosol	Obligate intracellular parasites within vesicles	Free-living	Obligate intracellular parasites within cytosol or nuclei
Replication	Binary fission	Binary fission of reticulate bodies	Binary fission	Chemical assembly
Nucleic acid(s)	Both DNA and RNA	Both DNA and RNA	Both DNA and RNA	DNA or RNA
Functional ribosomes	Present	Present	Present	Absent
Metabolism	Present	Present	Limited—lack Krebs cycle, electron transport chains, and enzymes for cell wall synthesis	Completely dependent on metabolic enzymes of host cell
ATP-generating system	Present	Absent	Present	Absent
Phylum	Proteobacteria	Chlamydiae	Firmicutes	None officially recognized



▲ **Figure 21.10** **Spirochetes of *Treponema pallidum pallidum*.** Here, stained with a silver stain.

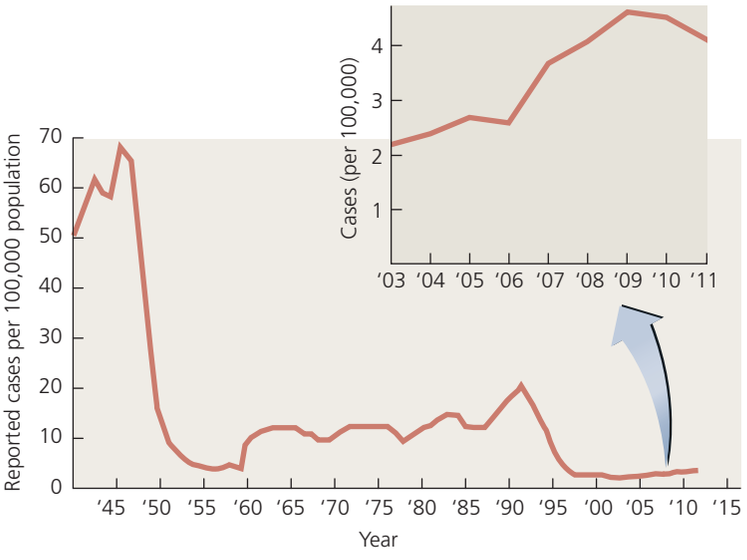
Treponema pallidum pallidum

Treponema pallidum pallidum (pal´li-dŭm), which is usually simply called *T. pallidum*, causes **syphilis.** Its flattened helical cells are so narrow (0.1 µm) that they are difficult to see by regular light microscopy in Gram-stained specimens. Therefore, scientists use phase-contrast or dark-field microscopy, or they intensify the contrast of the cells with dye linked to anti-treponemal antibodies or with special stains using silver atoms **(Figure 21.10)**.

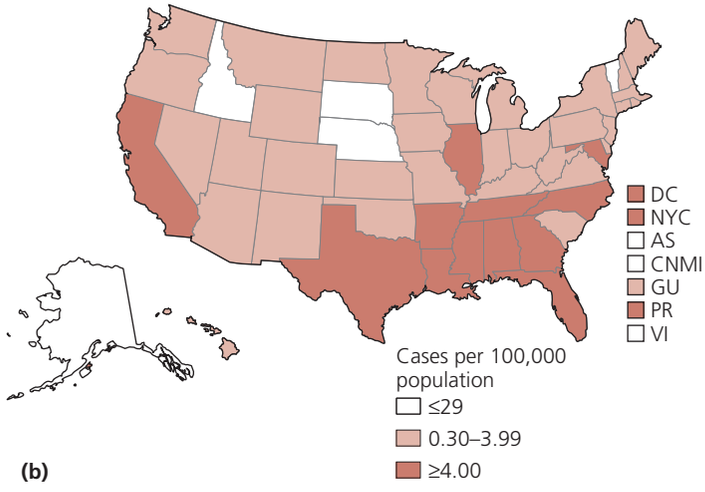
The bacterium lives naturally in humans only. It is destroyed by exposure to heat, disinfectants, soaps, drying, the concentration of oxygen in air, and pH changes, so it cannot survive in the environment. Scientists have not successfully cultured *T. pallidum* in cell-free media, though they have coaxed it to multiply in rabbits, monkeys, and rabbit epithelial cell cultures. Outside of humans it multiplies slowly (binary fission occurs once every 30 hours) and only for a few generations.

Pathogenicity and Epidemiology Scientists have had difficulty identifying the virulence factors of *T. pallidum* because the pathogen hasn't been cultured outside of cells. Researchers have used recombinant DNA techniques to insert genes from *Treponema* into *Escherichia coli* (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē) and have then isolated the proteins the genes coded. Apparently, some of these proteins enable *Treponema* to adhere to human cells. Virulent strains also produce hyaluronidase, which may enable *Treponema* to infiltrate intercellular spaces. The bacterium has a glycocalyx, which may protect it from phagocytosis by leukocytes.

Syphilis occurs worldwide. Europeans first recognized the disease in 1495, leading some epidemiologists to hypothesize that syphilis was brought to Europe from the Western Hemisphere by returning Spanish explorers. Another hypothesis is that *T. pallidum* evolved from a less pathogenic strain of *Treponema* endemic to North Africa and that its spread throughout Europe was coincidental to Europeans' explorations of the New World. In any case, the discovery and development of antimicrobial drugs over four centuries later has greatly reduced the number of syphilis



(a)



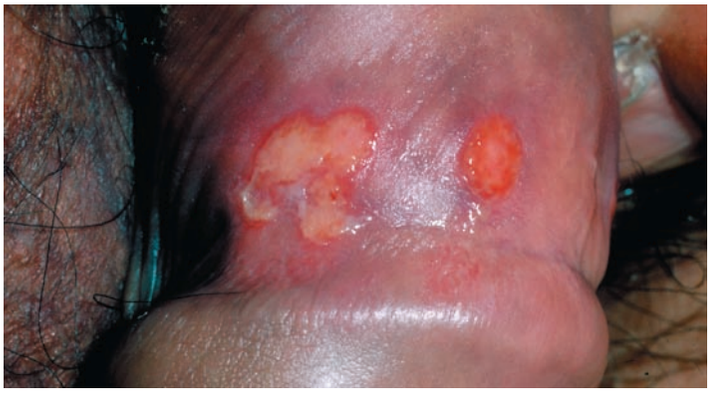
(b)

▲ **Figure 21.11** **The incidence of adult syphilis in the United States.** **(a)** Nationwide incidence of syphilis, 1941–2011. **(b)** Reported incidence of adult syphilis per 100,000 population, by state, 2009.

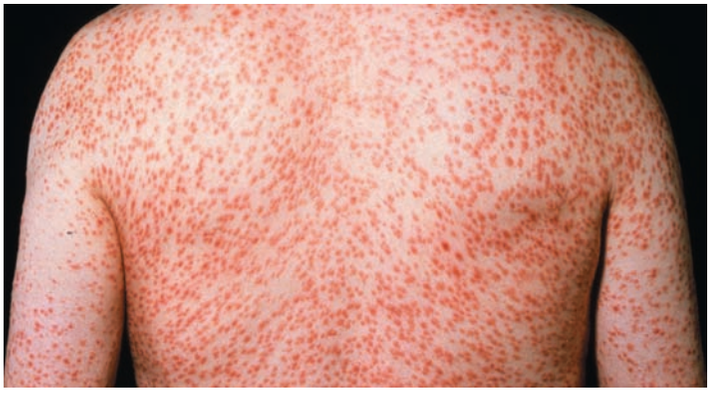
cases **(Figure 21.11a)**. The disease remains prevalent among sex workers, men who have sex with men, and users of illegal drugs. It occurs throughout the United States **(Figure 21.11b)**.

Because of its fastidiousness and sensitivity, *T. pallidum* is an obligate parasite of humans and is transmitted almost solely via sexual contact, usually during the early stage of infection, when the spirochetes are most numerous. The risk of infection from a single, unprotected sexual contact with an infected partner is 10% to 30%. *T. pallidum* can rarely spread through blood transfusion; it cannot spread by fomites such as toilet seats, eating utensils, or clothing.

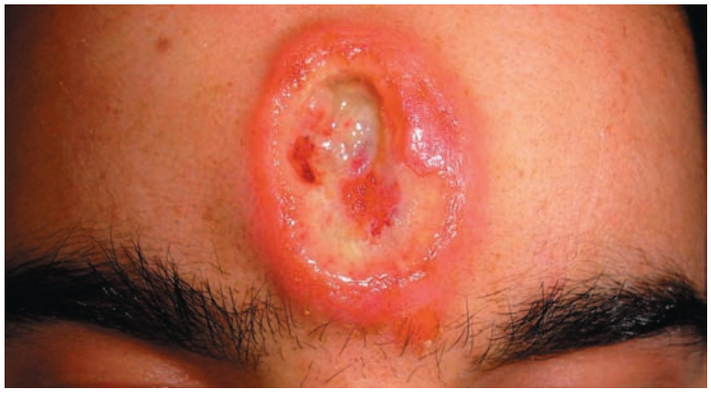
Disease Untreated syphilis has four phases: primary, secondary, latent, and tertiary syphilis. In *primary syphilis,* a small, painless, reddened lesion called a **chancre** (shan´ker) forms at the site of infection 10 to 21 days following exposure **(Figure 21.12a)**. Although chancres typically form on the external genitalia, about 20% form in the mouth, around the anus, or on the fingers, lips,



(a)



(b)



(c)

▲ **Figure 21.12** **The lesions of syphilis.** **(a)** A chancre, a hardened and painless lesion of primary syphilis that forms at the site of the infection, here the shaft of a penis. **(b)** A widespread rash characteristic of secondary syphilis. **(c)** A gumma, a painful rubbery lesion that often occurs on the skin or bones during tertiary syphilis.

or nipples. Chancres are often unobserved, especially in women, in whom these lesions frequently form on the cervix. The center of a chancre fills with serum that is extremely infectious because of the presence of millions of spirochetes. Chancres remain for three to six weeks and then disappear without scarring.

In about a third of cases, the disappearance of the chancre is the end of the disease. However, in most infections *Treponema* has invaded the bloodstream and spreads throughout the body to cause the symptoms and signs of *secondary syphilis:* sore throat, headache, mild fever, malaise, myalgia (muscle pain), lymphadenopathy (diseased lymph nodes), and a widespread rash **(Figure 21.12b)** that can include the palms and the soles of the feet. Although this rash does not itch or hurt, it can persist for months, and like the primary chancre, rash lesions are filled with spirochetes and are extremely contagious. People, including health care workers, can become infected when fluid from the lesions enters breaks in the skin, though such nonsexual transmission of syphilis is rare.

After several weeks or months the rash gradually disappears, and the patient enters a *latent (clinically inactive) phase* of the disease. The majority of cases do not advance beyond this point, especially in developed countries where antimicrobial drugs are in use.

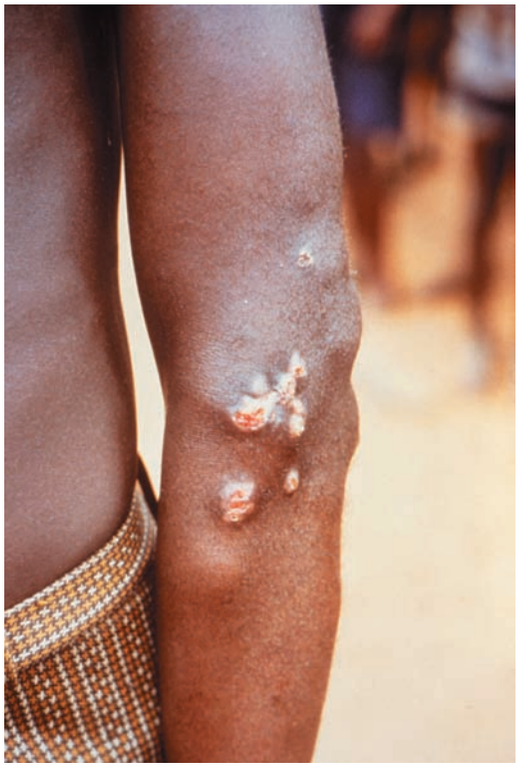
Latency may last 30 or more years, after which perhaps a third of the originally infected patients proceed to *tertiary syphilis.* This phase is associated not with the direct effects of *Treponema* but rather with severe complications resulting from inflammation and a hyperimmune response against the pathogen. Tertiary syphilis may affect virtually any tissue or organ and can cause dementia, blindness, paralysis, heart failure, and syphilitic lesions called **gummas** (gŭm´ăz), which are rubbery, painfully swollen lesions that can occur in bones, in nervous tissue, or on the skin **(Figure 21.12c)**.

Congenital syphilis results when *Treponema* crosses the placenta from an infected mother to her fetus. Transmission to the fetus from a mother experiencing primary or secondary syphilis often results in the death of the fetus. If transmission occurs while the mother is in the latent phase of the disease, the result can be a latent infection in the fetus that causes mental retardation and malformation of many fetal organs. After birth, newborns with latent infections usually exhibit a widespread rash at some time during their first two years of life.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention The diagnosis of primary, secondary, and congenital syphilis is relatively easy and rapid using specific antibody tests against antigens of *Treponema pallidum pallidum.* Spirochetes can be observed in fresh discharge from lesions but only when microscopic observations of clinical samples are made immediately—*Treponema* usually does not survive transport to a laboratory. Nonpathogenic spirochetes, which are a normal part of the oral microbiota, can yield false-positive results, so clinical specimens from the mouth cannot be tested for syphilis. Tertiary syphilis is extremely difficult to diagnose because it mimics many other diseases, because few (if any) spirochetes are present, and because the signs and symptoms may occur years apart and seem unrelated to one another.

Penicillin is the drug of choice for treating primary, secondary, latent, and congenital syphilis, but it is not efficacious for tertiary syphilis because this phase is caused by a hyperimmune response, not an active infection. Physicians try to desensitize patients who have penicillin allergy and afterward treat with penicillin.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention has established a national goal for control of syphilis: maintaining an incidence of fewer than 0.2 cases of syphilis per 100,000 population in every county in the United States. This measure should reduce the incidence of syphilis to the point that the disease will be eliminated in the United States. A vaccine against syphilis is not available, so abstinence, faithful mutual monogamy, and consistent and



▲ **Figure 21.13 Yaws.** The draining lesions are characteristic of the later stages of the disease.

proper condom usage are the primary ways to avoid contracting syphilis. All sexual partners of syphilis patients must be treated with prophylactic penicillin to prevent spread of the disease.

Nonvenereal Treponemal Diseases

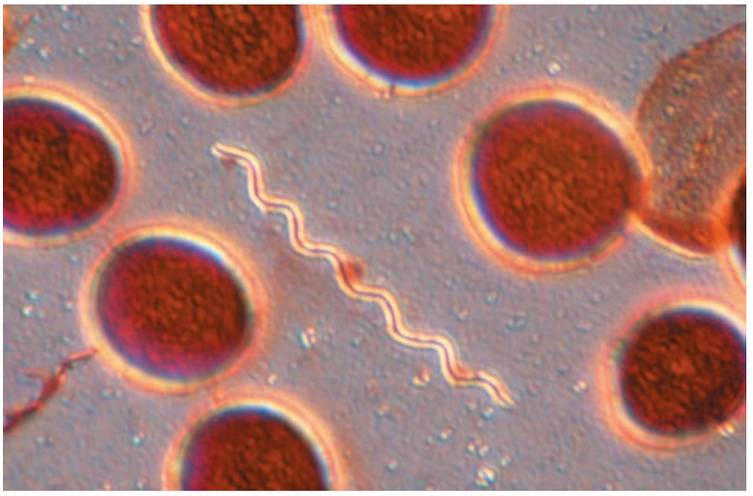
Other members of *Treponema* cause three nonsexually transmitted diseases in humans: bejel, yaws, and pinta. These diseases are seen primarily in impoverished children in Africa, Asia, and South America who live in unsanitary conditions. The spirochetes that cause these diseases look like *Treponema pallidum pallidum.*

T. pallidum endemicum (en-de´mi-kŭm) causes **bejel** (be´jel), a disease seen in children in Africa, Asia, and Australia. In bejel, the spirochetes are spread by contaminated eating utensils, so it is not surprising that the initial lesion is an oral lesion, which typically is so small that it is rarely observed. As the disease progresses, larger and more numerous secondary lesions form around the lips and inside the mouth. In the later stages of the disease, gummas form on the skin, bones, or nasopharyngeal mucous membranes.

T. pallidum pertenue[8] (per-ten´ū-ē) causes **yaws**, a disease of tropical South America, central Africa, and Southeast Asia that is characterized initially by granular skin lesions that, although unsightly, are painless. Over time the lesions develop into large, destructive, draining lesions of the skin, bones, and lymph nodes **(Figure 21.13)**. The disease is spread via contact with spirochetes in fluid draining from the lesions.

T. carateum[9] (kar-a´tē-ŭm) causes **pinta** (pēn´tă), a skin disease seen in children in Central and South America. The spirochetes

[8]Some taxonomists consider this organism to be a separate species: *T. pertenue.*



▲ **Figure 21.14** ***Borrelia burgdorferi.*** This Gram-negative spiral-shaped spirochete lives in the blood and causes Lyme disease.

are spread among the children by skin-to-skin contact. After one to three weeks of incubation, hard, pus-filled lesions called papules form at the site of infection; the papules enlarge and persist for months or years, resulting in scarring and disfigurement.

Physicians diagnose bejel, yaws, and pinta by their distinctive appearance in children from endemic areas. Clinicians can not detect spirochetes in specimens from the lesions of bejel, but they are present in patients with pinta and yaws.

Penicillin is the most favored antimicrobial agent for treating these three tropical diseases. Prevention involves limiting the spread of the bacteria by preventing contact with the lesions.

Borrelia

Learning Outcomes

21.20 Describe Lyme disease, its vector, and its causative agent.
21.21 Discuss the life cycle of the *Ixodes* tick as it relates to Lyme disease.
21.22 Compare and contrast the two types of relapsing fever, including their causes and vectors.

Members of the genus *Borrelia* (bō-rē´lē-ă) are lightly staining, Gram-negative spirochetes that are larger than species of *Treponema.* These spirochetes cause two diseases in humans: Lyme disease and relapsing fever.

Lyme Disease

In 1975, epidemiologists noted that the incidence of childhood rheumatoid arthritis in Lyme, Connecticut, was over 100 times higher than expected. Upon investigation, they discovered that ticks transmitted the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi*[10] (burg-dōr´fer-ē; **Figure 21.14**) to human hosts to cause what became known as Lyme disease. **Lyme disease** is

[9]Some taxonomists consider this organism to be a subspecies: *T. pallidum carateum.*
[10]Named for the French bacteriologist Amedee Borrel and a specialist in tick-borne diseases, Willy Burgdorfer.

characterized by dermatological, cardiac, and neurological abnormalities in addition to the observed arthritis. Infected children may have paralysis of one side of their face (Bell's palsy). Even though its discovery was relatively recent, retrospective epidemiological studies have shown that Lyme disease was present in the United States for decades before its discovery.

B. burgdorferi is an unusual bacterium in that it lacks iron-containing enzymes and iron-containing proteins in its electron transport chains. By utilizing manganese rather than iron, the spirochete circumvents one of the body's natural defense mechanisms: the lack of free iron in human tissues and fluids.

Hard ticks of the genus *Ixodes*—*I. scapularis* (scap-ū-lar´is) in the northeastern and central United States, *I. pacificus* (pas-i´fi-kŭs) on the Pacific coast, *I. ricinus* (ri-ki´nŭs) in Europe, and *I. persulcatus* (per-sool-ka´tŭs) in eastern Europe and Asia—are the vectors of Lyme disease. An understanding of the life cycle of these ticks is essential to an understanding of Lyme disease.

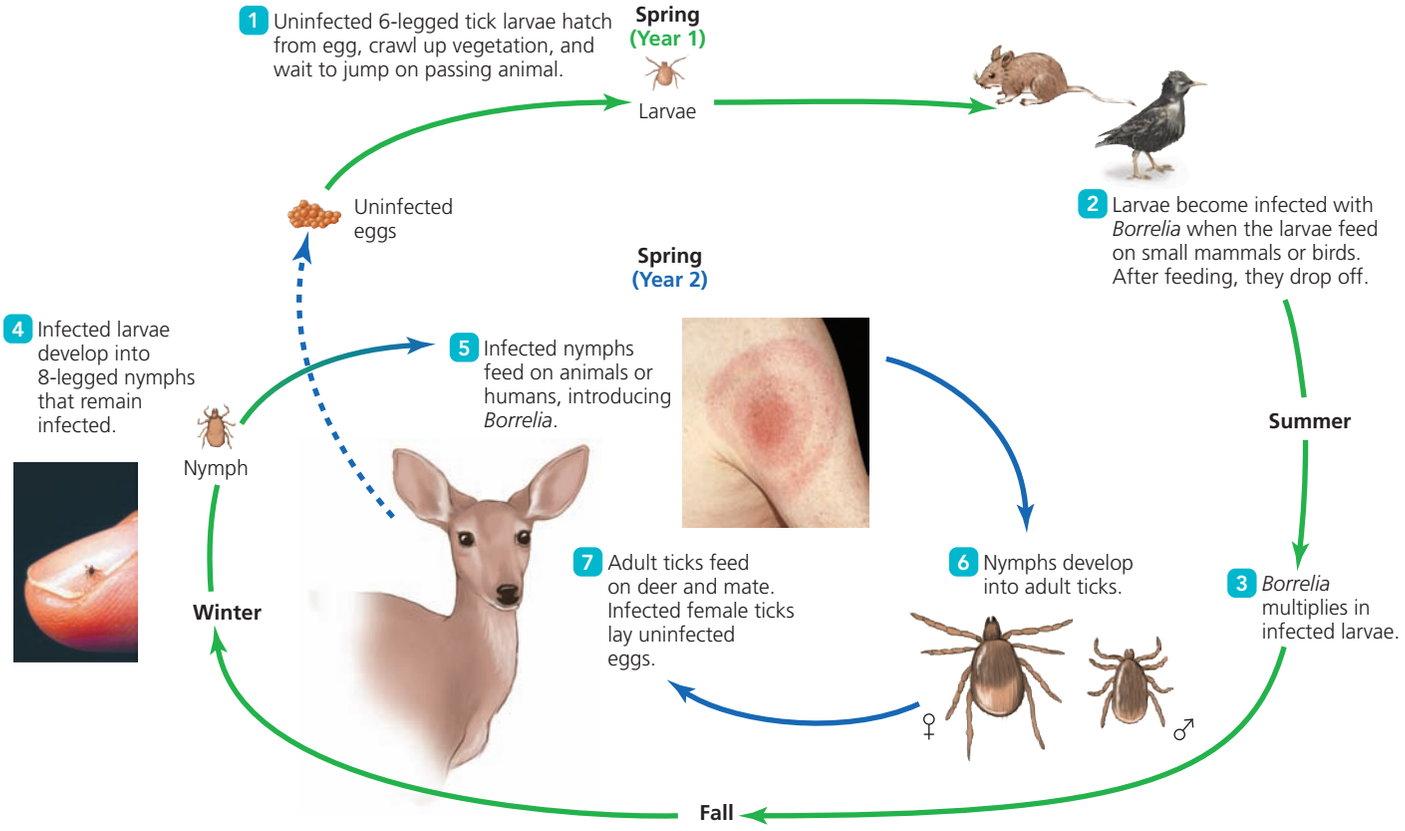
An *Ixodes* tick lives for two years, during which it passes through three stages of development: a six-legged larva, an eight-legged nymph, and an eight-legged adult. During each stage it attaches to an animal host for a single blood meal. After each of its three feedings, the tick drops off its host and lives in leaf litter or on brush.

The different stages of each species of *Ixodes* typically feed on different hosts. For example, the larvae and nymphs of *I. scapularis* tend to feed on deer mice and may feed on birds, whereas the adults most frequently feed on deer. In contrast, *I. pacificus* adults feed frequently on lizards, a host that does not support the growth of *Borrelia.* All stages of all species of *Ixodes* may feed on humans.

Transovarian transmission of *Borrelia* is rare, so ticks that hatch in the spring are uninfected **(Figure 21.15)** 1. Larvae become infected during their first blood meal 2. Over the winter, larvae digest their blood meals while *Borrelia* replicates in the ticks' guts 3.

In the spring of their second year, the ticks molt into nymphs 4 and feed a second time, infecting the new hosts with *Borrelia* via saliva 5. Uninfected nymphs can become infected at this time if they feed on an infected host. Laboratory studies have shown that infected ticks must remain on a host for 48 hours in order to transmit enough spirochetes to establish a *Borrelia* infection in that host.

Nymphs drop off and undergo further development into adults 6. In the fall, adult ticks feed a final time, mate, lay eggs, and die 7. Adults infected with *Borrelia* infect their hosts as they feed. Adult ticks are much larger than nymphs, so humans usually see and remove adults before they can transmit *Borrelia;* thus, nymphs most often infect humans.



▲ Figure 21.15 The life cycle of the deer tick *Ixodes* and its role as the vector of Lyme disease. *At what other stage, besides the nymph stage, can a tick infect a human with* B. burgdorferi?

Figure 21.15 *Adult ticks infected with* B. burgdorferi *can also infect humans during a blood meal.*

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Treponema pallidum

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Spirochaetes, class "Spirochaetes," order Spirochaetales, family Spirochaetaceae

Cell morphology and arrangement: Flattened spirochete

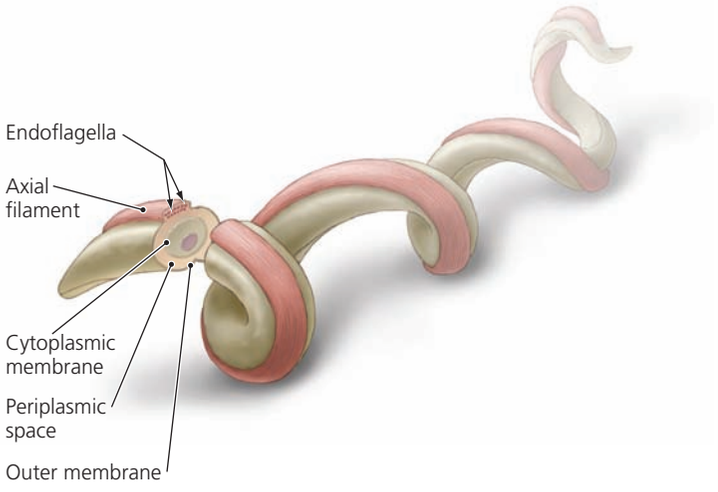
Gram reaction: Negative

Virulence factors: Adhesion proteins, corkscrew motility, glycocalyx, hyaluronidase

Diseases caused: Syphilis: primary syphilis is lesion at site of infection, secondary syphilis is body rash, tertiary syphilis can have widespread and varied signs and symptoms including gummas; strain *endemicum* causes bejel; strain *pertenue* causes yaws; related species *T. carateum* causes pinta

Treatment for diseases: Penicillin for primary and secondary syphilis; tertiary syphilis not treatable; penicillin, tetracycline, or chloramphenicol to treat bejel, yaws, and pinta

Prevention of disease: Abstinence, mutual monogamy, condom usage for syphilis; avoid contact with patients with other diseases



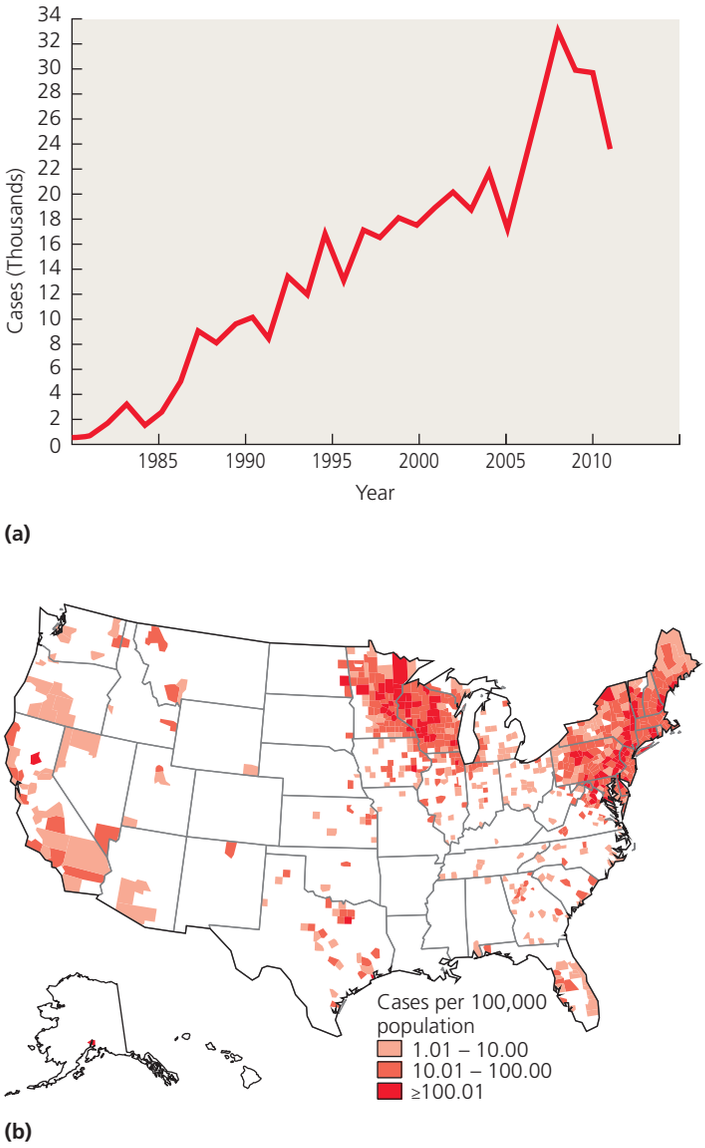
Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

CRITICAL THINKING

For what other pathogen discussed in this chapter is *Ixodes* also the vector?

Lyme disease mimics many other diseases, and its range of signs and symptoms is vast. The disease typically has three phases in untreated patients:

1. An expanding red rash, which often resembles a bull's-eye, occurs at the site of infection within 30 days. About 75% of patients have such a rash, which lasts for several weeks. Other early signs and symptoms include malaise, headaches, dizziness, stiff neck, severe fatigue, fever, chills, muscle and joint pain, and lymphadenopathy.



▲ **Figure 21.16 The occurrence of Lyme disease in the United States. (a)** Incidence of cases, 1982–2011. **(b)** The geographic distribution of the disease, 2009.

2. Neurological symptoms (e.g., meningitis, encephalitis, and peripheral nerve neuropathy) and cardiac dysfunction typify the second phase, which is seen in only 10% of patients.
3. The final phase is characterized by severe arthritis that can last for years.

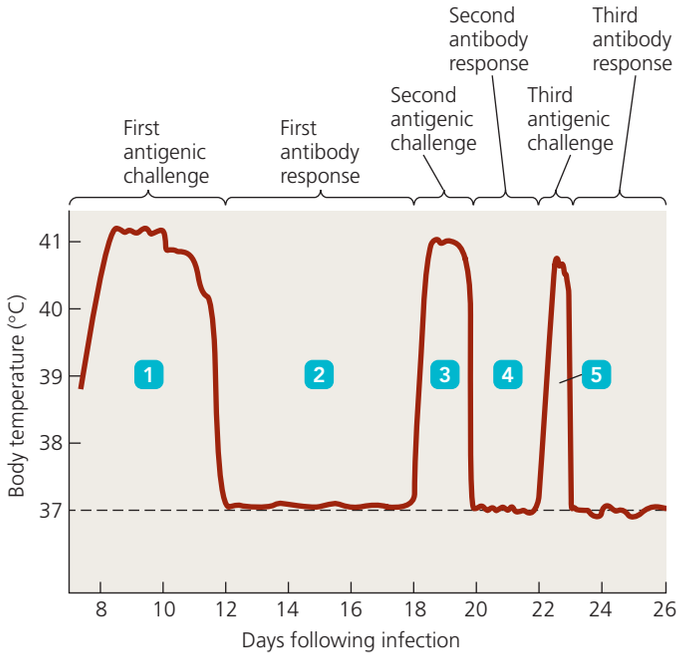
The pathological conditions of the latter phases of Lyme disease are due in large part to the body's immunological response; rarely is *Borrelia* seen in the involved tissue or isolated in cultures of specimens from these sites.

Two major events have contributed to the increase in cases of Lyme disease in the United States over the past decades (**Figure 21.16a**): The human population has encroached on woodland areas, and the deer population has been protected and even encouraged to feed in suburban yards. Thus, humans have been brought into closer association with deer ticks infected with *Borrelia*.

A diagnosis of Lyme disease, which is typically indicated by observations of its usual signs and symptoms, is rarely confirmed by detecting *Borrelia* in blood smears; instead, the diagnosis is confirmed through the use of serological tests.

Treatment with doxycycline or penicillin for two weeks effectively cures most cases of Lyme disease in the first phase. Treatment of later phases is more difficult because later symptoms result primarily from immune responses rather than the presence of the spirochetes.

People hiking, picnicking, and working outdoors in areas where Lyme disease is prevalent **(Figure 21.16b)** should take precautions to reduce the chances of infection, particularly during summer, when nymphs are feeding. People who must be in the woods should wear long-sleeved shirts and long, tight-fitting pants and should tuck the cuffs of their pants into their socks to deny ticks access to skin. Repellents containing *DEET* (*N,N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide), which is noxious to ticks, should be used. As soon as possible after leaving a tick-infected area, people should thoroughly examine their bodies for ticks or their bites. Though researchers have developed a vaccine against *B. burgdorferi,* it is not widely used because of the ready availability of other preventive measures and because the vaccine may produce the symptoms of Lyme disease in some patients.



▲ **Figure 21.17** **The time course of recurring episodes of fever in relapsing fevers.**

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Health departments recommend that outdoor enthusiasts wear light-colored pants while hiking in areas where *Ixodes* is endemic. Why?

Relapsing Fever

Other species of spirochetes in the genus *Borrelia* can cause two types of relapsing fever. A disease called **louse-borne relapsing fever** results when *Borrelia recurrentis* (re-kur-ren´tis) is transmitted between humans by the human body louse *Pediculus humanus.* A disease known as **tick-borne relapsing fever** occurs when any of several species of *Borrelia* are transmitted between humans by soft ticks in the genus *Ornithodoros* (or-ni-thod´ō-rŭs).

Lice become infected with *B. recurrentis* when they feed on infected humans, the only reservoir for this spirochete. When infected lice are crushed, spirochetes can infect bite wounds. Because lice live only a few months, maintenance of louse-borne relapsing fever in a population requires crowded, unsanitary conditions such as occur in poor neighborhoods and during wars and natural disasters. This relapsing fever occurs in central and eastern Africa and in South America.

In contrast to hard ticks, soft ticks of the genus *Ornithodoros* have a brief (fewer than 30 minutes), painless, nocturnal bite that can transmit tick-borne relapsing fever. The ticks can live for years between feedings and pass spirochetes to their offspring via transovarian transmission. Soft ticks can also transmit *Borrelia* spp. (species) to animals, particularly mice and rats. Ticks and rodents are reservoirs of infection. This relapsing fever has a worldwide distribution; in the United States it is found primarily in the West.

Both types of relapsing fever are characterized by recurrent episodes of septicemia and fever separated by symptom-free intervals—a pattern that results from the body's repeated efforts to remove the spirochetes, which continually change their antigenic surface components **(Figure 21.17)**. Within the first week of infection, the spirochetes induce a fever 1, which is associated with chills, myalgia, and headache. In response to infection, the body produces antibodies that are directed against the spirochetes' surface molecules; once the antibodies have targeted the spirochetes, phagocytes clear most pathogens from the blood, and the body's temperature returns to normal 2. However, some *Borrelia* evade the immune response by changing their antigenic surface molecules; when these spirochetes multiply, they induce a relapse of fever 3. The body mounts a second immune response, this time against the new antigens, eventually again clearing the blood of most spirochetes and again returning body temperature to normal 4. But a few spirochetes yet again change their antigenic components, leading to still another recurrence of fever, continuing the pattern 5.

Because of their relatively large size and abundance in the blood, observation of spirochetes in blood smears taken during periods of recurrent fever is the primary method of diagnosis.

Physicians successfully treat the relapsing fevers with doxycycline or, in pregnant women and children, with erythromycin. Prevention involves avoidance of ticks and lice, good personal hygiene, and the use of repellent chemicals. Effective rodent control is crucial to the control of endemic relapsing fever. Vaccines are not available.

Leptospira

Learning Outcome

21.23 Describe *Leptospira interrogans* and zoonotic leptospirosis.

The last of the three groups of spirochetes that infect humans is *Leptospira interrogans* (lep´tō-spī´ră in-ter´ră-ganz). The specific

epithet *interrogans* alludes to the fact that one end of the spirochete is hooked in a manner reminiscent of a question mark **(Figure 21.18)**. This thin, pathogenic spirochete is an obligate aerobe that is highly motile by means of two axial filaments, each of which is anchored at one end. Clinicians and researchers grow it on special media enriched with bovine serum albumin or rabbit serum.

L. interrogans normally occurs in many wild and domestic animals—in particular, rats, raccoons, foxes, dogs, horses, cattle, and pigs—in which it grows asymptomatically in the kidney tubules. Humans contract the zoonotic disease **leptospirosis** (lep´tō-spī-rō´sis) through direct contact with the urine of infected animals or indirectly via contact with the spirochetes in contaminated streams, lakes, or moist soil, environments in which the organisms can remain viable for six weeks or more. Person-to-person spread has not been observed.

After *Leptospira* gains initial access to the body through invisible cuts and abrasions in the skin or mucous membranes, it corkscrews its way through these tissues. It then travels via the bloodstream throughout the body, including the central nervous system, damaging cells lining the small blood vessels and triggering fever and intense pain. Infection may lead to hemorrhaging and to liver and kidney dysfunction. Eventually, the bacteremia resolves, and the spirochetes are found only in the kidneys. As the disease progresses, spirochetes are excreted in urine. Leptospirosis is usually not fatal.

Leptospirosis occurs throughout the world. National reporting in the United States has ceased in part because the disease is rare; a total of only 89 cases were reported in the last two years (1993–1994) that leptospirosis was listed as a nationally reportable disease.

Because *Leptospira* is very thin and does not stain well with Gram, silver, or Giemsa stain, specific antibody tests revealing the presence of the spirochete in clinical specimens are the preferred method of diagnosis. Intravenous penicillin is used to treat infections. Rodent control is the most effective way to limit the spread of *Leptospira,* but eradication is impractical because of the spirochete's many animal reservoirs. An effective vaccine is available for livestock and pets.

▲ **Figure 21.18** ***Leptospira interrogans.*** The spirochete has one end hooked like a question mark.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

A dichotomous key uses a series of questions, each with only two possible answers, to guide someone to identify an item, such as a genus. Design such a key for the spirochetes discussed in this chapter.

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Vibrios

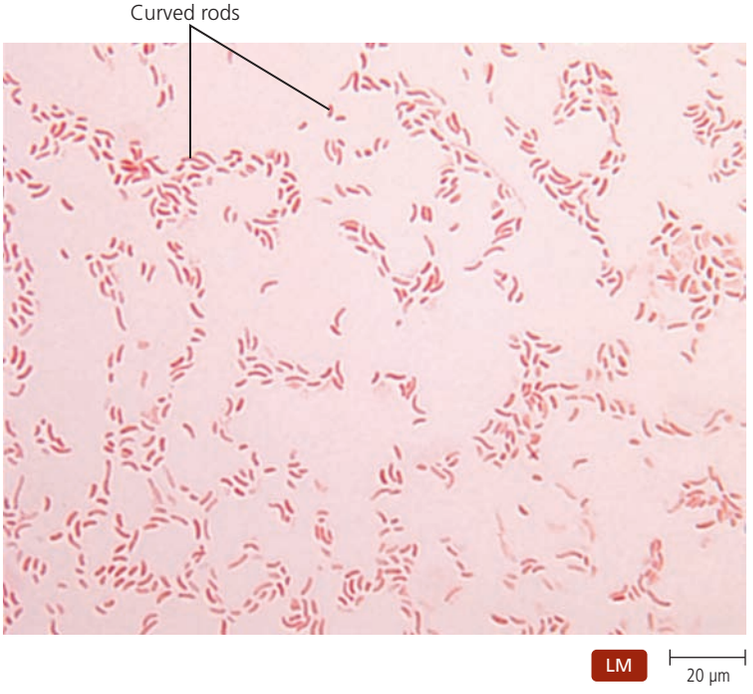
To this point, we have discussed a number of unrelated Gram-negative bacteria: rickettsias, chlamydias, and the spirochetes. We will now turn our attention to a final group—the slightly curved bacteria called *vibrios.* The more important pathogenic vibrios of humans are in the genera *Vibrio, Campylobacter,* and *Helicobacter.*

Vibrio

Learning Outcomes

21.24 Contrast *Vibrio* with enteric bacteria in terms of their flagella and biochemical properties.
21.25 Describe the action of cholera toxin in causing cholera.
21.26 Name three species of *Vibrio* and describe the resulting diseases.

Vibrio (vib´rē-ō) is a genus of Gram-negative, slightly curved bacilli in class Gammaproteobacteria and phylum Proteobacteria **(Figure 21.19)**. *Vibrio* shares many characteristics with enteric bacteria, such as *Escherichia* and *Salmonella,* including O polysaccharide antigens, which enable epidemiologists to distinguish among strains. *Vibrio* is oxidase positive and has a polar flagellum, unlike enteric bacteria, which are oxidase negative and



▲ **Figure 21.19** ***Vibrio cholerae.*** This bacterium causes cholera.

have peritrichous flagella. The bacterium appears to vibrate when moving—giving rise to the genus name.

Vibrio lives naturally in estuarine and marine environments worldwide. It prefers warm, salty, and alkaline water, and most pathogenic species can multiply inside shellfish. Eleven of the 34 species of *Vibrio* cause diseases in humans; of these, only *V. cholerae* (kol´er-ī) can survive in freshwater, making it the most likely species to infect humans (via contaminated drinking water). In the following sections we examine *V. cholerae* and the serious disease it causes.

Pathogenesis and Epidemiology of *Vibrio cholerae*

Vibrio cholerae, particularly strain O1 El Tor, causes **cholera** (kol´er-ă; sometimes called *epidemic cholera*), one of the world's more pernicious diseases. The science of epidemiology began with Dr. John Snow's efforts to understand and limit the 1854 cholera epidemic in London (see Chapter 14).

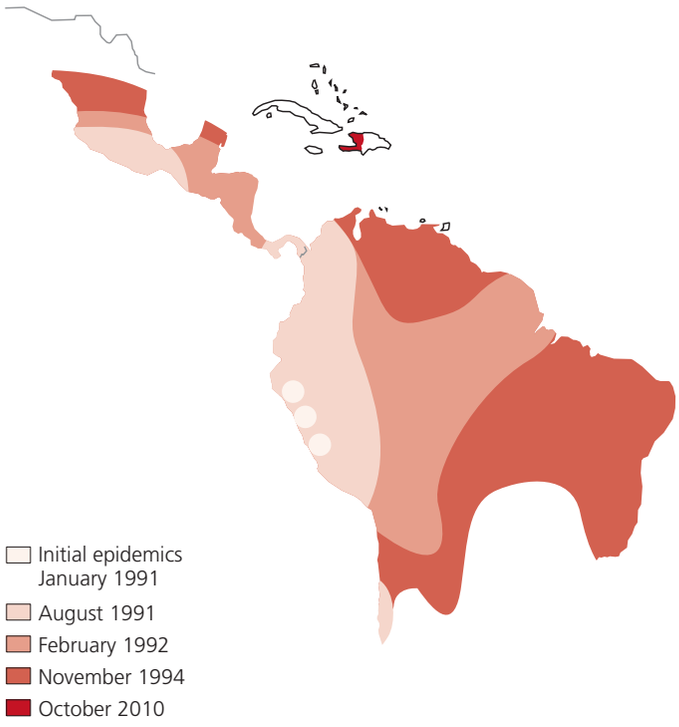
Ships have introduced the pathogen into the harbors of every continent through their practice of taking on ballast water in one port and dumping it in another; two world wars only exacerbated the situation. In the seven major pandemics that have occurred since 1800, millions of people have been sickened and thousands have died, causing significant socio-economic upheaval.

The seventh pandemic of O1 El Tor began in 1961 in Asia, spread to Africa and Europe in the 1970s and 1980s, and reached Peru in January 1991. **Figure 21.20** illustrates the progression of this cholera pandemic throughout Latin America in the first half of the 1990s. A new pandemic strain, *V. cholerae* O139 Bengal, arose in India in 1992 and is spreading across Asia; this strain is the first non-O1 strain capable of causing epidemic disease. Other strains of *V. cholerae* do not produce epidemic cholera, only milder gastroenteritis.

Humans become infected with *Vibrio cholerae* by ingesting contaminated food and water. Cholera is most frequent in communities with poor sewage and water treatment. After entering the digestive system, *Vibrio* is confronted with the inhospitable acidic environment of the stomach. Most cells die, which is why a high inoculum—at least 10^8 cells—is typically required for the disease to develop. Fewer cells can achieve infection in people who use antacids.

Recent research indicates that only the environment within a human body activates *Vibrio* virulence genes. Thus, *Vibrio* shed in feces is more virulent than its counterparts in the environment. Scientists hypothesize that such gene activation may explain the rapid, almost explosive, nature of cholera epidemics.

Although cholera infections may be asymptomatic or cause mild diarrhea, some result in rapid, severe, and fatal fluid and electrolyte loss. Symptoms usually begin two to three days following infection, with explosive watery diarrhea and vomiting. As the disease progresses, the colon is emptied, and the stool becomes increasingly watery, colorless, and odorless. The stool, which is typically flecked with mucus, is called *rice-water stool* because it resembles water poured off a pan of boiled rice. Some patients lose 1 liter of fluid an hour, resulting in a 50% loss of body weight over the course of infection.



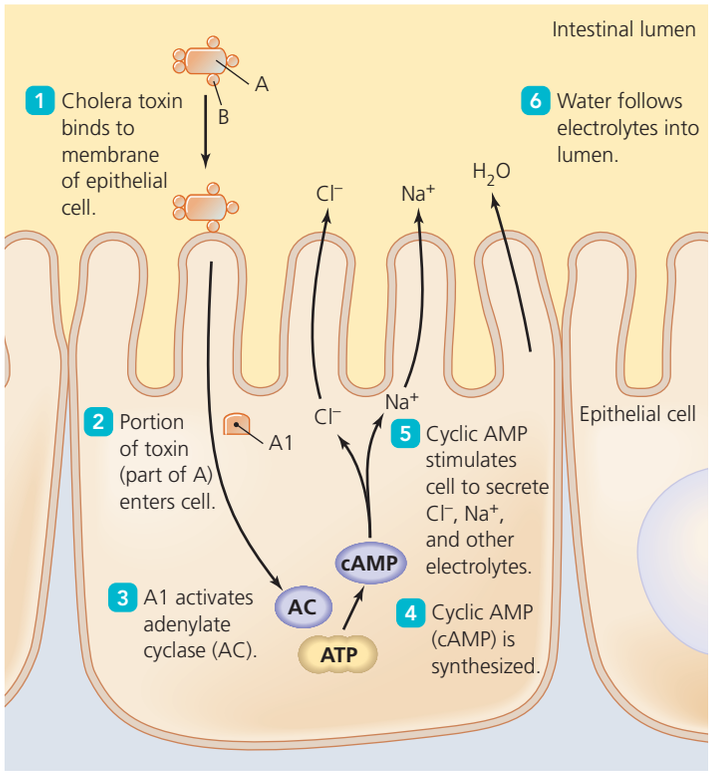
▲ **Figure 21.20 The spread of cholera.** The Latin American epidemics were caused by *Vibrio cholerae* O1 El Tor in the first half of the 1990s.

The most important virulence factor of *V. cholerae* is a potent exotoxin called **cholera toxin,** which is composed of five identical B subunits and a single A subunit. **Figure 21.21** illustrates the action of cholera toxin in producing the severe diarrhea that characterizes cholera. The process proceeds as follows:

1. One of the B subunits binds to a glycolipid receptor in the cytoplasmic membrane of an intestinal epithelial cell.
2. The A subunit is cleaved, and a portion (called A1) enters the cell's cytosol.
3. A1 acts as an enzyme that activates adenylate cyclase (AC).
4. Activated AC enzymatically converts ATP into cyclic AMP (cAMP).
5. cAMP stimulates the active secretion of excess amounts of electrolytes (sodium, chlorine, potassium, and bicarbonate ions) from the cell.
6. Water follows the movement of electrolytes from the cell and into the intestinal lumen via osmosis.

Severe fluid and electrolyte losses result in dehydration, metabolic acidosis (decreased pH of body fluids) due to loss of bicarbonate ions, hypokalemia,[11] and hypovolemic shock caused by reduced blood volume in the body. These

[11] From Greek *hypo*, meaning "under"; Latin *kalium*, meaning "potassium"; and Greek *haima*, meaning "blood."



▲ Figure 21.21 The action of cholera toxin in intestinal epithelial cells.

conditions can produce muscle cramping, irregularities in heartbeat, kidney failure, and coma. Death may occur within hours of onset.

Cholera mortality is 60% in untreated patients infected by strain O1; death can occur less than 48 hours after infection. Disease produced by strain O139 is even more severe. In nonfatal cases, cholera ends spontaneously after a few days as the pathogens and toxins are flushed from the system by the severe diarrhea.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Cholera

Rarely, an experienced observer may find the quick darting cells of *Vibrio* in the watery stool of a patient, but diagnosis is usually based on the characteristic diarrhea. *Vibrio* can be cultured on many laboratory media designed for stool cultures, but clinical specimens must be collected early in the disease (before the volume of stool dilutes the number of cells) and inoculated promptly because *Vibrio* is extremely sensitive to drying. Strains are distinguished by means of antibody tests specific for each antigenic variant.

Health care providers must promptly treat cholera patients with fluid and electrolyte replacement before hypovolemic shock ensues. Antimicrobial drugs are not as important as with many other bacterial diseases because they are lost in the watery stool; nevertheless, they may reduce the production of exotoxin and ameliorate the symptoms. Doxycycline is the drug of choice for most adults, ampicillin should be used for children.

Because *Vibrio cholerae* can grow in estuarine and marine water and because up to 75% of patients still asymptomatically harbor the pathogen, it is unlikely that cholera will be eradicated worldwide. Nevertheless, adequate sewage and water treatment can limit the spread of *Vibrio* and prevent epidemics.

The standard oral vaccine developed against the O1 strains of *V. cholerae* provides protection for at least two years. A new oral vaccine against both O1 and O139 provide longer-term protection in children. Antibiotic prophylaxis of those who travel to endemic areas has not proven effective. The infective dose for *V. cholerae* is high, so proper hygiene is the best protection.

Other Diseases of *Vibrio*

Vibrio parahaemolyticus (pa-ră-hē-mō-li´ti-kŭs) causes cholera-like gastroenteritis following ingestion of shellfish harvested from contaminated estuaries; fortunately, only rarely is it severe enough to be fatal. Typically the disease is characterized by a self-limiting, explosive diarrhea accompanied by headache, nausea, vomiting, and cramping for 72 hours.

V. vulnificus (vul-nif´i-kŭs) is responsible for septicemia (blood poisoning) following consumption of contaminated shellfish and for infections resulting from the washing of wounds with contaminated seawater. Wound infections are characterized by swelling and reddening at the site of infection and are accompanied by fever and chills. Infections with *V. vulnificus* are fatal for 50% of untreated patients; prompt treatment with doxycycline is effective.

Campylobacter jejuni

Learning Outcomes

21.27 List several possible reservoirs of *Campylobacter jejuni*.
21.28 Describe gastroenteritis caused by *Campylobacter jejuni*.

Campylobacter jejuni[12] (kam´pi-lō-bak´ter jē-jū´nē) is likely the most common cause of bacterial gastroenteritis in the United States. Like *Vibrio*, it is Gram negative, slightly curved, oxidase positive, and motile by means of polar flagella; however, genetic analysis has shown that this comma-shaped pathogen is properly classified in the class Epsilonproteobacteria (and not in Gammaproteobacteria). *Campylobacter* also differs from *Vibrio* in being microaerophilic and capneic.

Campylobacter infections are zoonotic—many domesticated animals, including poultry, dogs, cats, rabbits, pigs, cattle, and minks, serve as reservoirs. Humans acquire the bacterium by consuming food, milk, or water contaminated

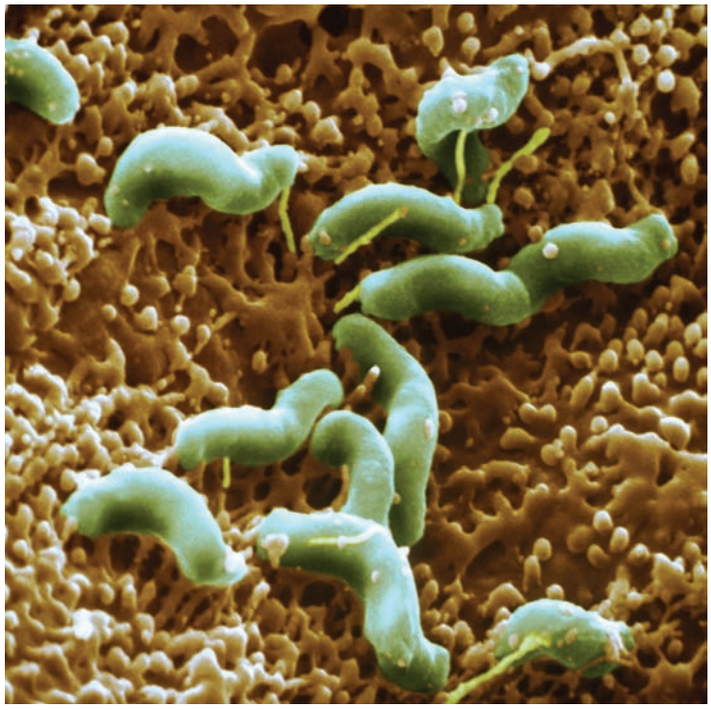
[12]From Greek *kampylos*, meaning "curved," and *jejunum*, the middle portion of the small intestine.

with infected animal feces. The most common source of infection is contaminated poultry. One study found that of dozens of Thanksgiving turkeys tested, 100% were contaminated with *Campylobacter.*

The pathogenicity of *C. jejuni* is not well understood, although the bacterium possesses adhesins, cytotoxins, and endotoxins that appear to enable colonization and invasion of the jejunum, ileum, and colon, producing bleeding lesions and triggering inflammation. Interestingly, nonmotile mutants are avirulent. *C. jejuni* infections commonly produce malaise, fever, abdominal pain, and bloody and frequent diarrhea—10 or more bowel movements per day are not uncommon. The disease is self-limiting; as bacteria are expelled from the intestinal tract, the symptoms abate, although a typical infection may last 7 to 10 days. Physicians may treat patients with azithromycin.

Scientists estimate that over 2.4 million cases of *Campylobacter* gastroenteritis occur each year in the United States—more than those caused by *Salmonella* and *Shigella* combined. However, *Campylobacter* gastroenteritis is not a reportable disease, so its actual incidence is unknown.

The number of infections can be reduced by proper food preparation, including thoroughly washing poultry carcasses, hands, and utensils that have contacted carcasses; cooking food sufficiently to kill bacteria; and pasteurizing cow's milk. Steps must also be taken to prevent contamination of the water supply with feces from stockyards, feedlots, and slaughterhouses.



▲ **Figure 21.22** ***Helicobacter pylori.*** The bacterium causes peptic ulcers.

Helicobacter pylori

Learning Outcomes

21.29 Discuss the major change in medical opinion concerning the cause of peptic ulcers.

21.30 Describe the effect of *Helicobacter pylori* on the lining of the human stomach.

Helicobacter pylori (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter pī´lō-rē) is a slightly helical, highly motile bacterium that colonizes the stomachs of its hosts **(Figure 21.22)**. Based on rRNA nucleotide sequences, *Helicobacter* is classified in the class Epsilonproteobacteria. It was originally placed in the genus *Campylobacter;* however, unlike *Campylobacter, Helicobacter* cannot reduce nitrate, has flagella, and is urease positive, a characteristic that is essential for colonizing the stomach.

Today, an idea that only a few years ago was very controversial—that *H. pylori* causes *gastritis*[13] and most **peptic ulcers,** which are erosions of the mucous membrane of the stomach or of the initial portion of the small intestine—is accepted as fact. What was once the prevailing view—that stress, alcohol consumption, spicy food, or excess stomach acid production caused ulcers—was discredited beginning in 1982, when Australian gastroenterologists Robin Warren (1937–) and Barry Marshall (1951–) detected *Helicobacter* colonizing the majority of their patients' stomachs. Following treatment with antibiotics, the bacteria and the ulcers disappeared. Dr. Marshall provided final proof of *H. pylori's* involvement by fulfilling Koch's postulates himself—he drank one of his cultures of *Helicobacter*! As he expected, he developed painful gastritis and was able to isolate *H. pylori* from his diseased stomach. His sacrifice was worth it: Marshall and Warren received the 2005 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for their discovery. Since then, scientists have shown that long-term infection with *Helicobacter* is a significant risk factor for stomach cancer.

H. pylori possesses numerous virulence factors that enable it to colonize the human stomach: a protein that inhibits acid production by stomach cells, flagella that enable the pathogen to burrow through mucus lining the stomach, adhesins that facilitate binding to gastric cells, enzymes that inhibit phagocytic killing, and urease, an enzyme that degrades urea, which is present in gastric juice, to produce highly alkaline ammonia, which neutralizes stomach acid.

The portal of entry for *H. pylori* is the mouth. Studies have shown that *H. pylori* in feces on the hands, in well water, or on fomites may infect humans. In addition, cat feces may be a source of infection.

[13]From Greek *gaster,* meaning "belly," and Greek *itis,* meaning "inflammation."

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Helicobacter pylori

Taxonomy: Domain Bacteria, phylum Proteobacteria, class Epsilonproteobacteria, order Campylobacterales, family Campylobacteraceae

Cell morphology and arrangement: Slightly helical bacillus

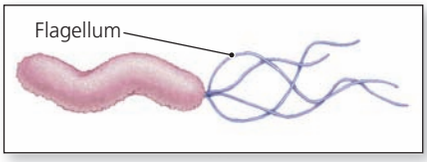
Gram reaction: Negative

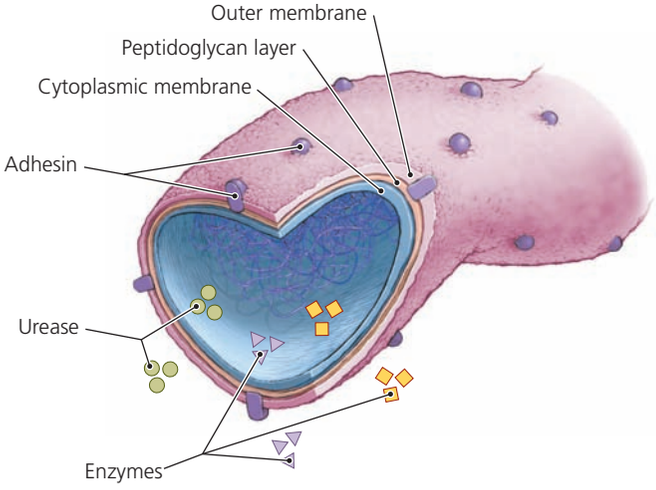
Virulence factors: Protein that inhibits acid production, urease, flagella, adhesins, antiphagocytic enzymes

Diseases caused: Peptic ulcer

Treatment for diseases: Antibacterial drugs in conjunction with drugs that inhibit acid production in the stomach

Prevention of disease: Good personal hygiene, adequate sewage treatment, water purification, proper food handling

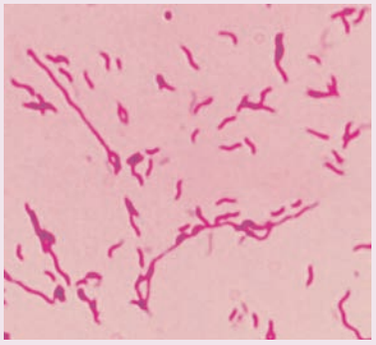




Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE CASE OF THE LACTOVEGETARIANS



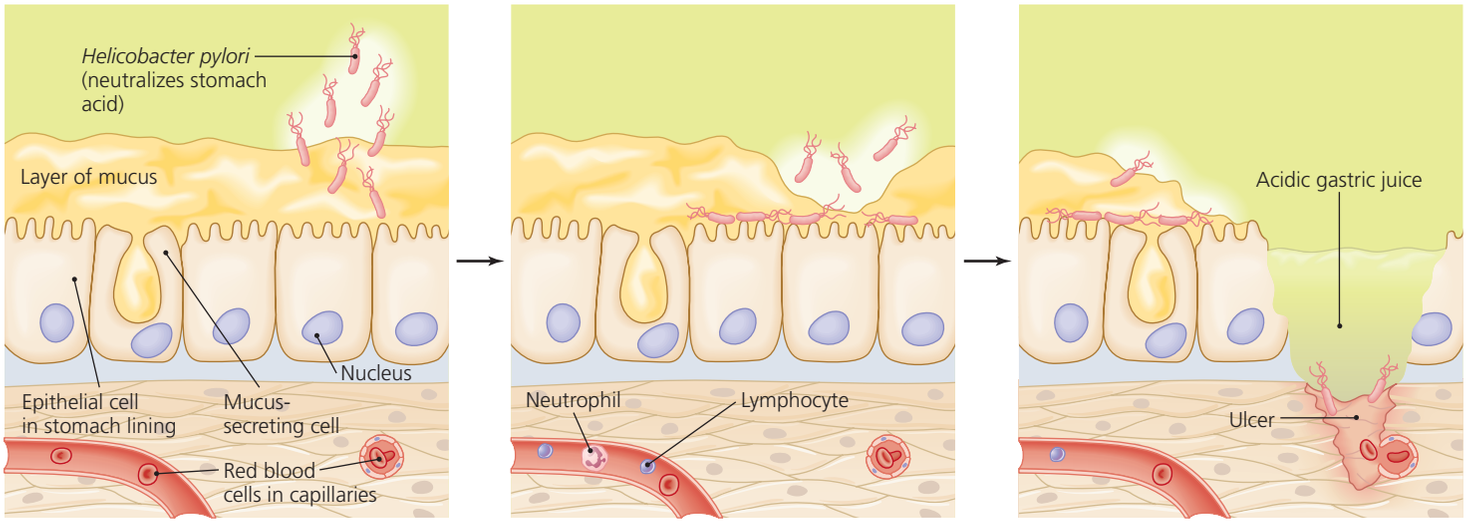
Two patients—a woman and her husband, ages 23 and 22, respectively—arrive at the health clinic one morning. They report having had severe abdominal cramps, grossly bloody diarrhea, nausea, and fever for 48 hours. Cultures of stool samples grown under microaerophilic, capneic conditions contain comma-shaped, Gram-negative bacilli. Both the patients are lactovegetarians and report being part of a "cow leasing" program at a local dairy in which patrons lease part of a cow's milk production so that they can drink natural, whole, raw milk. The couple devised the program so that they and several neighbors could circumvent state regulations prohibiting the sale of unpasteurized milk. Investigators obtained and cultured a milk sample from the dairy's bulk milk tank: The cultures contained the bacterium pictured.

1. What is the pathogen?
2. How did the couple become infected?
3. Are the couple's colleagues at work at risk of acquiring an infection from the couple?
4. What other foods that are common sources of this bacterium can be ruled out in this case?

The formation of a peptic ulcer occurs as follows **(Figure 21.23)**: The process begins when *H. pylori* (protected by urease) burrows through the stomach's protective layer of mucus to reach the underlying epithelial cells 1, where the bacteria attach to the cells' cytoplasmic membranes and multiply. A variety of factors—the triggering of inflammation by bacterial exotoxin and perhaps the destruction of mucus-producing cells by the bacteria—causes the layer of mucus to become thin 2, allowing acidic gastric juice to digest the stomach lining. Once the epithelial layer has been ulcerated by gastric juice, *H. pylori* gains access to the underlying muscle tissue and blood vessels 3. Those bacteria that are phagocytized survive in part through the actions of catalase and superoxide dismutase, enzymes that neutralize part of the phagocytes' killing mechanism.

The presence of *H. pylori* in specimens from the stomach can be demonstrated by a positive urease test within one to two hours of culturing; the bacterium can also be seen in Gram-stained specimens. Definitive identification is based on a series of biochemical tests.

Physicians treat ulcers with two antimicrobial drugs, such as metronidazole with tetracycline, given in combination with drugs that inhibit diarrhea and acid production, allowing the



▲ **Figure 21.23** **The role of *Helicobacter pylori* in the formation of peptic ulcers.**

stomach lining to regenerate. Prevention of infection involves good personal hygiene, adequate sewage treatment, water purification, and proper food handling.

Interestingly, research indicates that treating patients with antimicrobial drugs to remove their *H. pylori* may leave the patients more susceptible to esophageal cancer, asthma, and allergies.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Rickettsias (pp. 607–611)

1. **Rickettsias** are extremely small, Gram-negative, obligate intracellular parasites.
2. *Rickettsia rickettsii* causes **spotted fever rickettsiosis (Rocky Mountain spotted fever, RMSF),** a serious illness transmitted by ticks. Rash, malaise, petechiae, encephalitis, and death (in 5% of cases) characterize the disease.
3. *Rickettsia prowazekii* causes louse-borne or **epidemic typhus,** characterized by fever, depression, and rash. The disease may recur as Brill-Zinsser disease.
4. *Rickettsia typhi* causes endemic typhus, also called **murine typhus** because the major reservoir is rodents. Various fleas act as vectors to transmit the bacterium to humans.
5. Mites (chiggers) transmit *Orientia tsutsugamushi* to cause **scrub typhus,** which is characterized by a spreading rash.
6. *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* causes **human monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME),** and *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* causes **anaplasmosis.** These bacteria are transmitted to humans via the Lone Star tick, the deer tick, or the dog tick. The bacteria enter leukocytes and grow through three developmental stages: an elementary body, an initial body, and a morula.

Chlamydias (pp. 611–615)

1. Chlamydias are small, nonmotile, obligate intracellular parasites; their developmental cycle includes infectious **elementary bodies (EBs)** and noninfectious **reticulate bodies (RBs).** An endocytic vesicle full of RBs is called an **inclusion body.**
2. *Chlamydia trachomatis* enters the body through abrasions in mucous membranes of the genitalia, eyes, or respiratory tract. *Chlamydia* causes the most-reported sexually transmitted disease in the United States.
3. *Chlamydia trachomatis* causes **lymphogranuloma venereum.** The majority of infections in women are asymptomatic, whereas the majority of infections in men result in buboes, fever, chills, anorexia, and muscle pain. Other symptoms and signs may include proctitis (in men and women) and pelvic inflammatory disease and sterility (in women). *Chlamydia* infections can be prevented by abstinence or faithful mutual monogamy.
4. **Trachoma** is a serious eye disease that is caused by *C. trachomatis* and may result in blindness.
5. *Chlamydophila pneumoniae* causes bronchitis, pneumonia, and sinusitis.
6. *Chlamydophila psittaci* causes **ornithosis** (also called psittacosis or parrot fever), a respiratory disease of birds that can be transmitted to humans.

Spirochetes (pp. 615–622)

1. **Spirochetes** are helical bacteria with axial filaments that cause the organism to corkscrew, enabling it to burrow into a host's tissues.
2. **Syphilis** is caused by *Treponema pallidum pallidum,* a sexually transmitted obligate parasite of humans.
3. Primary syphilis is characterized by a **chancre,** a red lesion at the infection site. If *Treponema* moves from the chancre to the bloodstream, secondary syphilis results, causing rash, aches, and pains. After a period of latency, progression may occur to tertiary syphilis, characterized by swollen **gummas,** dementia, blindness, paralysis, and heart failure.
4. **Congenital syphilis** results when an infected mother infects her fetus.
5. Penicillin is used to treat all except tertiary syphilis; no vaccine is available.
6. *Treponema pallidum endemicum* causes **bejel,** an oral disease observed in children in Africa, Asia, and Australia.
7. *Treponema pallidum pertenue* causes **yaws,** a skin disease observed in South America, central Africa, and Southeast Asia.
8. *Treponema carateum* (*T. pallidum carateum*) causes **pinta,** a disfiguring skin disease observed in children in Central and South America.
9. *Borrelia burgdorferi* causes **Lyme disease,** a disease transmitted by ticks of the genus *Ixodes* and characterized by a bull's-eye rash, neurological and cardiac dysfunction, and severe arthritis.
10. Human body lice transmit *Borrelia recurrentis,* which causes **louse-borne relapsing fever** in Africa and South America. In the western United States, soft ticks transmit several different species of *Borrelia* causing **tick-borne relapsing fever.**
11. *Leptospira interrogans* causes **leptospirosis,** a zoonotic disease in humans transmitted via animal urine and characterized by pain, headache, and liver and kidney dysfunction.

Pathogenic Gram-Negative Vibrios (pp. 622–627)

1. *Vibrio* is a genus of Gram-negative curved bacteria with polar flagella that naturally live in marine environments.
2. *Vibrio cholerae* causes **cholera,** a disease contracted via the ingestion of contaminated food and water. Cholera has been pandemic through the centuries.
3. Via a series of biochemical steps, **cholera toxin**—an exotoxin produced by *Vibrio cholerae*—causes the movement of water out of the intestinal epithelium, resulting in potentially fatal diarrhea.
4. *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* enters the body via ingestion of shellfish from contaminated waters; it causes a milder form of cholera-like gastroenteritis.
5. *Vibrio vulnificus,* contracted either by ingestion of contaminated shellfish or by contamination of wounds with seawater, causes a potentially fatal blood poisoning.
6. *Campylobacter jejuni,* which is found in domestic animal reservoirs, commonly causes gastroenteritis when ingested in contaminated food, water, or milk.
7. Once *Helicobacter pylori* reduces the amount of mucus produced in the stomach, acidic gastric juice eats away the stomach lining, causing **peptic ulcers.**

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Most human infections caused by species of *Rickettsia* _____.
   a. are acquired from fomites
   b. could be prevented by handwashing
   c. are transmitted via vectors
   d. are sexually transmitted
2. The bacterium that causes spotted fever rickettsiosis (RMSF) is more likely to infect a human _____.
   a. if an infected tick feeds for several hours
   b. when an infected tick initially penetrates the skin
   c. when contaminated tick feces dry and become airborne
   d. if the human is exposed to rodent feces containing the bacterium

3. The most severe rickettsial illness is caused by _____.
   a. *Rickettsia typhi*
   b. *Rickettsia rickettsii*
   c. *Orientia tsutsugamushi*
   d. *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*

4. The smallest cellular microbes are _____.
   a. rickettsias
   b. mycoplasmas
   c. chlamydias
   d. both a and c

5. The most commonly reported sexually transmitted disease in the United States is caused by the bacterium _____.
   a. *Mycoplasma genitalium*
   b. *Chlamydia trachomatis*
   c. *Chlamydophila proctitis*
   d. *Ureaplasma urealyticum*

6. Which of the following diseases would be *least* likely in rural areas of the United States?
   a. epidemic typhus
   b. Rocky Mountain spotted fever
   c. murine typhus
   d. lymphogranuloma venereum

7. Treatment of chlamydial infections involves _____.
   a. erythromycin cream
   b. doxycycline creams
   c. surgical correction of eyelid deformities
   d. all of the above

8. Which of the following organisms is transmitted via sexual contact?
   a. *Treponema pallidum endemicum*
   b. *Treponema pallidum pertenue*
   c. *Treponema pallidum pallidum*
   d. *Treponema carateum*

9. Which of the following is *not* true of cholera?
   a. The causative agent lives naturally in marine water.
   b. There is an effective vaccine for cholera.
   c. Strain O1 El Tor has been responsible for several pandemics.
   d. Rice-water stool is a symptom.

10. During which stage of syphilis is penicillin ineffective?
    a. primary syphilis
    b. secondary syphilis
    c. tertiary syphilis
    d. all of the above

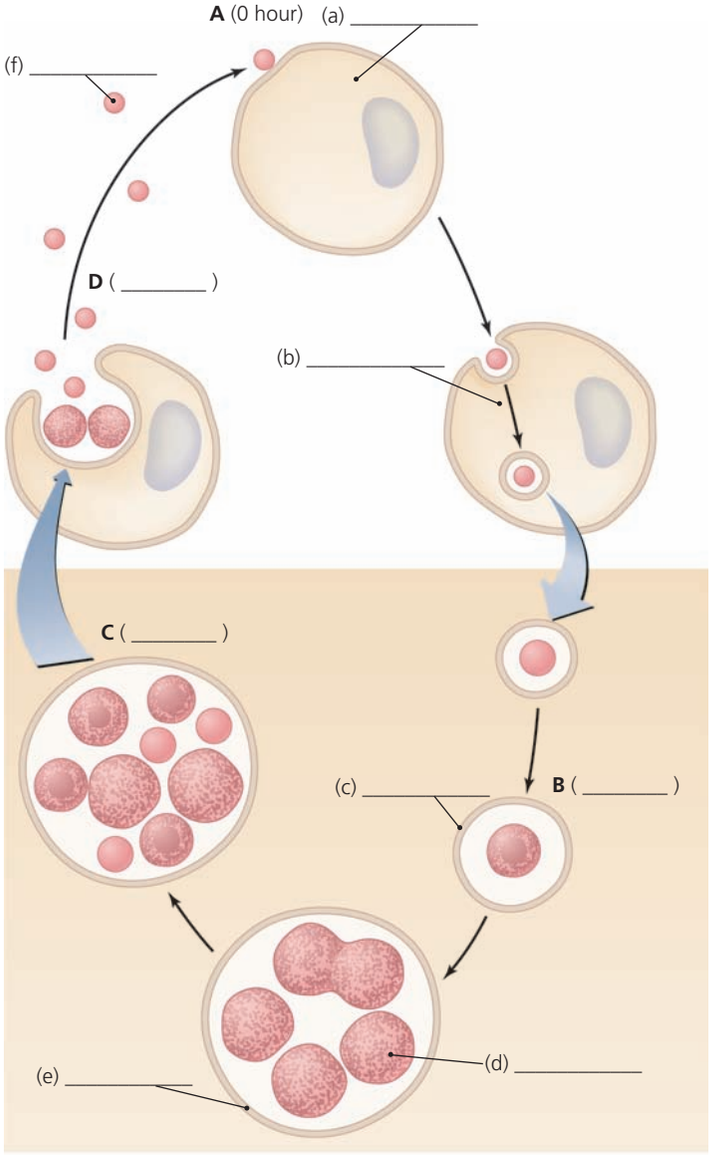
11. Two weeks after a backpacking trip in Tennessee, a hiker experienced flulike symptoms and noticed a red rash on his thigh. What is the likely cause of his illness?
    a. *Treponema pallidum pertenue*
    b. *Borrelia burgdorferi*
    c. *Borrelia recurrentis*
    d. *Leptospira interrogans*

12. The most common cause of bacterial gastroenteritis in the United States is _____.
    a. *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*
    b. *Campylobacter jejuni*
    c. *Helicobacter pylori*
    d. *Vibrio cholerae*

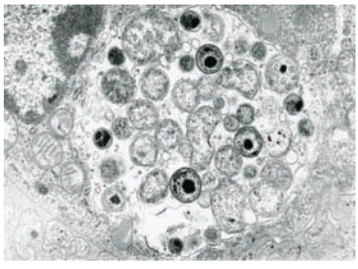
13. Historical journals have described gummas on patients. What disease most likely caused these lesions?
    a. ornithosis
    b. syphilis
    c. trachoma
    d. pneumonia

Visualize It!

1. Label the following stages and structures of the chlamydia life cycle: *elementary body, endocytosis, vesicle, host cell, inclusion body, reticulate body.* Indicate how many hours typically transpire at each lettered step.



2. Label inclusion, elementary, and reticulate bodies of *Chlamydia*.



Short Answer

1. Suggest a hypothesis to explain why rickettsias are obligate parasites.
2. Describe the three developmental stages of the bacteria *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma*.
3. Why have scientists had problems identifying the virulence factors of *Treponema pallidum pallidum*?
4. Describe the phases of untreated syphilis.
5. Discuss the prospects for the eradication of leptospirosis.
6. Beginning with the ingestion of water contaminated with *V. cholerae* O1 El Tor, describe the course of the disease it causes.

Matching

1. Match the disease with the causative pathogen.

_____ Spotted fever rickettsiosis	A. *Rickettsia typhi*
_____ Murine typhus	B. *Rickettsia prowazekii*
_____ Epidemic typhus	C. *Rickettsia rickettsii*
_____ Scrub typhus	D. *Orientia tsutsugamushi*
_____ HME	E. *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*

2. Match the pathogen with the vector responsible for transmitting it to humans.

_____ *Rickettsia typhi*	A. Rat flea
_____ *Rickettsia prowazekii*	B. Body louse
_____ *Rickettsia rickettsii*	C. Hard tick
_____ *Orientia tsutsugamushi*	D. Mite
_____ *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*	E. Soft tick
_____ *Borrelia burgdorferi*	
_____ *Borrelia recurrentis*	
_____ *Anaplasma phagocytophilum*	

3. Match the pathogen with the disease(s) it causes.

_____ *Chlamydophila psittaci*	A. Syphilis
_____ *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*	B. Trachoma
_____ *Chlamydia trachomatis*	C. Sinusitis
_____ *Treponema pallidum pallidum*	D. Lymphogranuloma venereum
_____ *Treponema pallidum pertenue*	E. Proctitis
_____ *Treponema pallidum endemicum*	F. Pelvic inflammatory disease
_____ *Treponema carateum*	G. Ornithosis
_____ *Borrelia burgdorferi*	H. Yaws
	I. Bejel
	J. Pinta
	K. Lyme disease

4. Match the following diseases with the causative bacterium.

_____ Peptic ulcers	A. *Vibrio cholerae*
_____ Gastroenteritis (various forms)	B. *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*
_____ Blood poisoning	C. *Vibrio vulnificus*
_____ Cholera	D. *Campylobacter jejuni*
	E. *Helicobacter pylori*

Critical Thinking

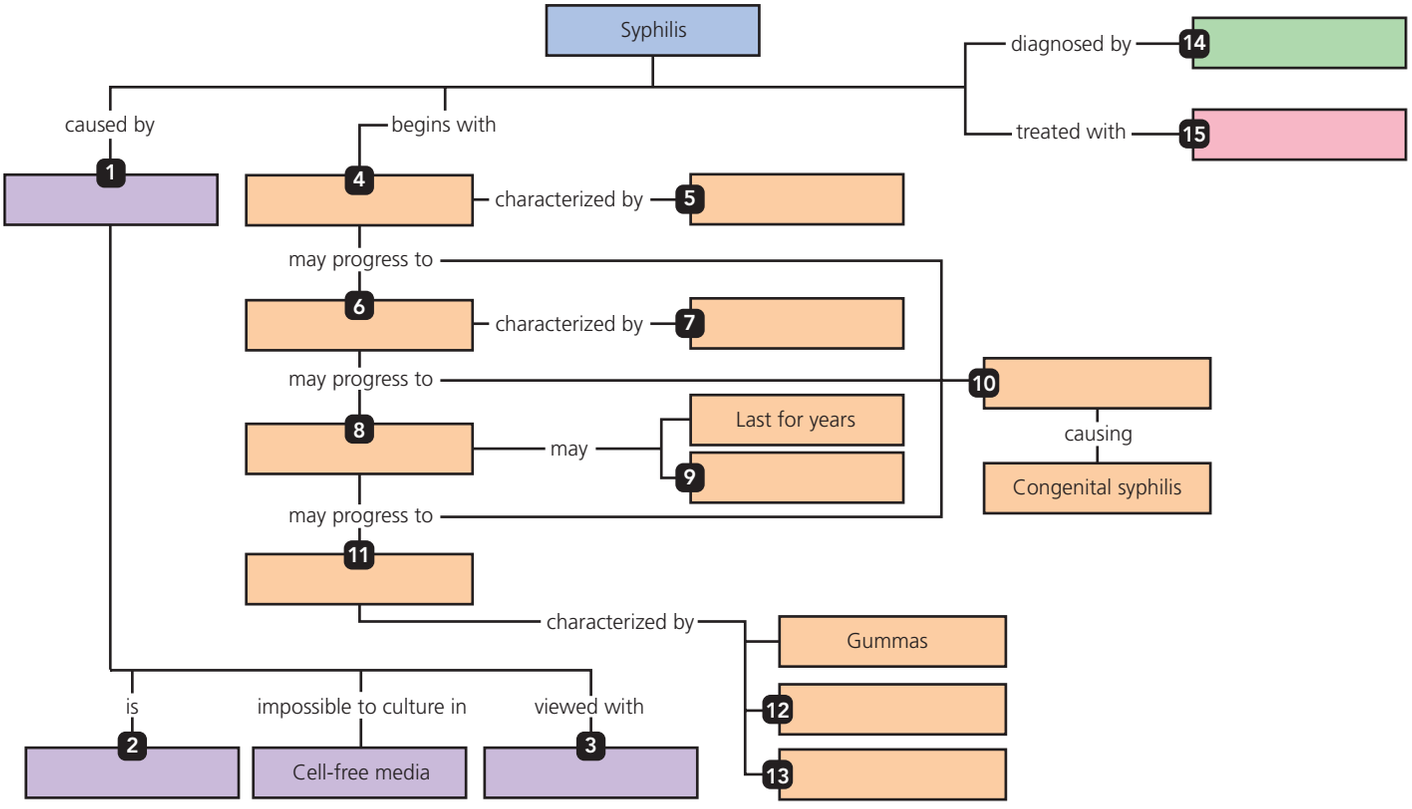
1. Why is it more difficult to rid a community of a disease transmitted by arthropods (e.g., Lyme disease or spotted fever rickettsiosis) than a disease transmitted via contaminated drinking water (e.g., cholera)?
2. Some scientists think that syphilis is a New World disease brought to Europe by returning Spanish explorers; others think that syphilis traveled the opposite way. Design an experiment to test the two hypotheses.
3. A patient arrives at a medical emergency room in Austin, Texas, complaining of 48 hours of severe abdominal cramping and persistent diarrhea. While waiting, he falls into a coma. He is admitted into the hospital but never regains consciousness; a week later he dies. No one else in his family is ill. They report that the man has not been out of the country but that they all dined at a seafood restaurant the night before the man became sick. He alone ate sea urchins. Culture of the man's stool reveals the presence of curved bacilli. What bacterium might account for the man's death?
4. Scientists discover a mutant strain of *Helicobacter pylori* that is urease negative. The strain is found to cause ulcers only in patients that either consume large quantities of antacids and/or take drugs to block acid production. Explain why only these patients develop ulcers when infected by the mutant strain.
5. Thirty-nine members of an extended family sought medical treatment for headaches, myalgia, and recurring fevers, each lasting about three days. The outbreak occurred shortly after a one-day family gathering in a remote, seldom-used mountain cabin in New Mexico. What disease did they contract? What causes this disease? What is the appropriate treatment? How could this family have protected itself?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes syphilis. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Body-wide rash
Cardiovascular syphilis
Chancre
Dark-field microscopy
Infect fetus in pregnant women
Latent stage
Neurosyphilis
Never progress
Penicillin
Primary syphilis
Secondary syphilis
Serological tests
Spirochete
Tertiary syphilis
Treponema pallidum



22 Pathogenic Fungi

The fungus *Microsporum* is beautiful when observed on a microscope slide, but it is much less welcome when found between the toes and on the soles of the feet, where it is one cause of the condition called *tinea pedis*—commonly known as "athlete's foot." Despite its name, this surface fungal disease with symptoms of itching, peeling, and other irritation affects athletes and nonathletes alike; having warm, moist feet is a much more important factor than being physically active. Because fungal spores are constantly being shed from the feet and onto bedding and furniture—and onto moist bathroom floors—athlete's foot is common among college students living in dorms. The spores are hardy; most survive for a long time in the environment, resisting desiccation, heat, cold, salt, acid, and even some antimicrobial cleansers. The best way to deal with athlete's foot is to keep your feet dry, change your socks frequently, use an antifungal cream, and wear a pair of flip-flops in public bathrooms.

In this chapter we examine this and other fungi that cause human diseases.

An ascomycete fungus, *Microsporum*, is one cause of athlete's foot, among other fungal skin diseases.

Medical mycology is the field of medicine that is concerned with the diagnosis, management, and prevention of fungal diseases, or **mycoses** (mī-kō´sēz). Most fungi exist as saprobes (absorbing nutrients from dead organisms) and function as the major decomposers of organic matter in the environment. More than 100,000 species of fungi have been classified in three divisions—Zygomycota, Ascomycota, and Basidiomycota—and of these, fewer than 200 have been demonstrated to cause diseases in humans.

This chapter is not arranged according to any taxonomic scheme (unlike other chapters in this text) because the classification of fungi is difficult. For example, most fungi have both a sexual stage, known as a *teleomorph,* and an asexual stage, known as an *anamorph.* The rules of taxonomy for fungi allow scientists to give each stage its own unique name. For example, the anamorph *Aspergillus* (as-per-jil´ŭs) is the same fungus as the teleomorph *Neosartorya* (nē-ō-sar-tōr´ya).

To minimize confusion, this chapter considers fungi using only a single name (usually the anamorph) and examines mycoses according to the site of disease. This convention is imperfect, as some fungi can invade tissues where they are not typically found. We also consider mycoses based on whether the fungus is a true pathogen (able to cause disease in people with normal immunity) or an opportunist. First, however, we will briefly consider some of the basic topics in medical mycology.

An Overview of Medical Mycology

Learning Outcome

22.1 Summarize some of the complexities of identifying and treating fungal infections.

Human mycoses are among the more difficult diseases to diagnose and treat properly. Signs of mycoses are often missed or misinterpreted, and once identified, fungi often prove to be remarkably resistant to antimicrobial agents. Before we begin our discussion of fungal diseases, therefore, it will be helpful to consider some of the characteristics that set fungal infections apart from other microbial infections.

The Epidemiology of Mycoses

Learning Outcomes

22.2 State the most significant mode of transmission for mycoses.

22.3 Explain why the actual prevalence of fungal infections is unknown.

Fungi and the spores they produce are almost everywhere in the environment—in soil, in water, and on or in most multicellular organisms, including plants and animals. They coat the surfaces of almost every object, whether made of wood, glass, metal, or plastic; thus, it is not surprising that most of us will experience a mycosis at some time.

Mycoses are typically acquired via inhalation, trauma, or ingestion; only very infrequently are fungi spread from person to person. Therefore, most mycoses are *not* contagious. Epidemics of mycoses can and do occur but not as a result of person-to-person contact. Instead, they result from mass exposure to some environmental source of fungi. For example, the cleanup of bird droppings near a building's air conditioning intake vents stirs up fungal spores in the droppings. The airborne spores could then be drawn inside the building and distributed throughout its duct system, potentially infecting numerous people.

One group of fungi that *are* contagious are *dermatophytes* (der´mă-tō-fītz), which live on the dead layers of skin and which may be transmitted between people via fomites (inanimate objects). Species of the genera *Candida* (kan´did-a) and *Pneumocystis* (nū-mō-sis´tis) also appear to be transmitted at least some of the time by contact among humans.

Because most mycoses are not contagious, they typically are not reportable; that is, neither local public health agencies nor the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) must be notified when they are diagnosed. Again, there are a few exceptions: Pathogenic fungi are usually reported in geographic areas where they are endemic, and certain opportunistic fungal pathogens of AIDS patients are also tracked.

The fact that most mycoses are not reportable creates a problem for epidemiologists. Without reliable data, it is impossible to track the effects of mycoses on the population, to ascertain their risks, and to identify actions to prevent them.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Discuss the relationship between the following two facts: (1) A huge number of fungal spores are present in the environment, and (2) fungal diseases are not typically acquired via contact with infected individuals. How does not relying on a host for transmission benefit a fungus?

Categories of Fungal Agents: True Fungal Pathogens and Opportunistic Fungi

Learning Outcomes

22.4 Compare and contrast true fungal pathogens with opportunistic fungi.

22.5 Identify factors that predispose people to opportunistic fungal infections.

Of all the fungi known to cause disease in humans, only four—*Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis, Histoplasma capsulatum,* and *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*—are considered true pathogens; that is, they can cause disease in otherwise healthy individuals. Other fungi, such as the common yeast, *Candida albicans* (al´bi-kanz), are *opportunistic fungi,* which lack genes for proteins that aid in colonizing body tissues, though they can take advantage of some weakness in a host's defenses to become established and cause disease. Thus, whereas true fungal pathogens can infect anyone, regardless of immune status, opportunists infect only weakened individuals.

Four main factors increase an individual's risk of experiencing opportunistic mycoses: invasive medical procedures,

medical therapies, certain disease conditions, and specific lifestyle factors (Table 22.1). Surgical insertion of devices such as heart-valve implants can introduce fungal spores and provide a site for fungal colonization, while a variety of medical therapies leave patients with a weakened or dysfunctional immune system. AIDS, diabetes, other serious illnesses, and malnutrition also lessen immunity. Poor hygiene results in reduced skin defenses, and IV drug use can directly introduce fungi into the blood. Note that many of the factors that contribute to opportunistic fungal infections involve the actions of medical personnel in health care settings; thus, correct antisepsis and medical procedures by health care providers play a crucial role in reducing the incidence of mycoses of opportunistic fungi.

In addition to differences in pathogenesis and matters related to host susceptibility, fungal pathogens and opportunists differ with respect to geographical distribution. Whereas the four pathogenic fungi are endemic to certain regions, primarily in the Americas, opportunistic fungi are distributed throughout the world.

Dermatophytes—fungi that normally live on the skin, nails, and hair—are the only fungi that do not fall comfortably into either the pathogenic or the opportunistic grouping. They are considered by some researchers to be "emerging" pathogens. Dermatophytes can infect all individuals, not just the immunocompromised, which makes them similar to the pathogens. They are not, however, intrinsically invasive, being limited to body surfaces. They also have a tendency to occur in people with the same predisposing factors that allow access by opportunistic fungi. For these reasons, dermatophytes will be discussed as opportunists rather than as pathogens.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Suggest a way in which each of the risk factors listed in Table 22.1 can be reduced or eliminated to limit opportunistic infections. What can a patient do? What can health care providers do?

Clinical Manifestations of Fungal Diseases

Learning Outcome

22.6 Describe three primary clinical manifestations of mycoses.

Fungal diseases are grouped into the following three categories of clinical manifestations:

- *Fungal infections,* which are the most common mycoses, are caused by the presence in the body of either true pathogens or opportunists. As previously noted, this chapter discusses mycoses according to general location within the body. Systemic mycoses are discussed first, followed by superficial, cutaneous, and subcutaneous mycoses.
- *Toxicoses* (poisonings) are acquired through ingestion, as occurs when poisonous mushrooms are eaten. Although relatively rare, toxicoses are discussed briefly near the end of the chapter.
- *Allergies* (hypersensitivity reactions) most commonly result from the inhalation of fungal spores and are the subject of the chapter's final section.

TABLE 22.1 Factors That Predispose Individuals to Opportunistic Mycoses

Factors	Examples
Medical procedures	Surgery; insertion of medical implants (heart valves, artificial joints); catheterization
Medical therapies	Immunosuppressive therapies accompanying transplantation; radiation and other cancer therapies; steroid treatments; long-term use of antibacterial agents
Disease conditions	Inherited immune defects; leukemia and lymphomas; AIDS; diabetes and other metabolic disorders; severe burns; preexisting chronic illnesses
Lifestyle factors	Malnutrition; poor hygiene; IV drug abuse

The Diagnosis of Fungal Infections

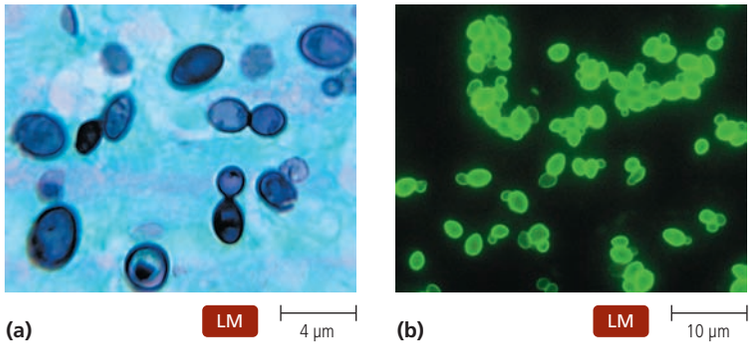
Learning Outcome

22.7 Discuss why the diagnosis of opportunistic fungal infections can be difficult.

Most patients reporting to a hospital emergency room with a severe respiratory illness are routinely tested for influenza, bacterial pneumonia, and perhaps tuberculosis; without some concrete reason to suspect a fungal infection, physicians may not look for them. However, if an emergency-room patient with respiratory distress reveals that she breeds exotic birds, she is much more likely to also be tested for mycoses. Thus, a patient's history—including occupation, hobbies, travel history, and the presence of preexisting medical conditions—is critical for diagnosis of most mycoses. Even when fungal infections are relatively obvious, as when distinctive mycelial growth is observed, definitive diagnosis requires isolation, laboratory culture, and morphological analysis of the fungus involved.

Microbiologists culture fungi collected from patients on *Sabouraud dextrose agar,* a medium that favors fungal growth over bacterial growth (see Figure 6.12). The appearance of colonies and the microscopic appearance of yeast cells, mycelia, or mold spores are usually diagnostic.

Several techniques are commonly used in identifying fungi. *Potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparations* dissolve keratin in skin cells, leaving only fungal cells for examination. *Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain* is used on tissue sections to stain fungal cells, black (other cells remain unstained; **Figure 22.1a**). *Direct immunofluorescence stain* can also be used to detect fungal cells in tissues **(Figure 22.1b)**; however, immunological tests, though very useful for other microbial infectious agents, are not always useful for fungi. Because fungi are so prevalent in the environment and many are part of the normal microbiota, it is often impossible to distinguish between actual infection and simple exposure.



▲ **Figure 22.1 Fungal stains. (a)** GMS (Gomori methenamine silver) stain. *Histoplasma capsulatum*, shown here, causes histoplasmosis. **(b)** Direct fluorescent stain of *Candida albicans.*

Diagnosis of opportunistic fungal infections is especially challenging. When a fungal opportunist infects tissues in which it is normally not found, it may display abnormal morphology that complicates identification. In addition, the fungi that produce pulmonary infections—the true pathogens and a few opportunists—produce symptoms and imaging profiles (X-ray studies, CT scans) that strongly resemble those of tuberculosis. Fungal masses may also resemble tumors.

Antifungal Therapies

Learning Outcome

22.8 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of fungicidal and fungistatic medications.

Mycoses are among the most difficult diseases to heal for two reasons. First, fungi generally possess the biochemical ability to resist T cells during cell-mediated immune responses. Second, fungi are biochemically similar to human cells, which means that most fungicides are toxic to human tissues. The majority of antifungal agents exploit one of the few differences between human and fungal cells—instead of cholesterol, the membranes of fungal cells contain a related molecule, *ergosterol.* Antifungal drugs target either ergosterol synthesis or its insertion into fungal membranes. However, cholesterol and ergosterol are not sufficiently different to prevent some damage to human tissues by such antifungal agents. Serious side effects associated with long-term use of almost all antifungal agents include anemia, headache, rashes, gastrointestinal upset, and serious liver and kidney damage.

The "gold standard" of antifungal agents is the fungicidal drug *amphotericin B,* considered the best drug for treating systemic mycoses and other fungal infections that do not respond to other drugs. Unfortunately, it is also one of the more toxic antifungal agents to humans. Some major anti-ergosterol alternatives to amphotericin B are the azole drugs—*ketoconazole, itraconazole,* and *fluconazole*—which are fungistatic (inhibitory) rather than fungicidal and less toxic to humans.

Three antifungal drugs that do not target ergosterol are griseofulvin, 5-fluorocytosine, and echinocandins. *Griseofulvin* interferes with microtubule formation and chromosomal separation in mitosis. Griseofulvin accumulates in the outer epidermal layers of the skin, preventing fungal penetration and growth. Since these skin cells are scheduled to die as they move toward the surface, griseofulvin's toxicity does not permanently damage humans. Patients generally tolerate the drug for the duration of treatment. For example, griseofulvin may be administered orally for up to a year to clear fungal infections of the nails without harming the patient.

5-Fluorocytosine is a nucleoside analog that inhibits RNA and DNA synthesis. Physicians give 5-fluorocytosine in conjunction with amphotericin B or an azole drug to treat infections of *Candida* and *Cryptococcus.*

Echinocandins inhibit the synthesis of 1,3-D-glucan, which is a sugar that makes up part of the cell wall of a fungus. This sugar does not occur in mammals; therefore, echinocandins are generally safe for adults. Echinocandins should not be used in pregnant women.

Treatment of opportunistic fungal infections in immunocompromised patients involves two steps: a high-dose treatment to eliminate or reduce the number of fungal pathogens, followed by long-term (usually lifelong) maintenance therapy involving the administration of antifungal agents to control ongoing infections and prevent new infections.

With just a few antifungal drugs being used for long periods and treating more and more patients, scientists predict that the drugs should select drug-resistant strains from the fungal population. Fortunately, this is rarely the case; naturally occurring resistance, especially against amphotericin B, is extremely rare, though researchers cannot explain why resistance does not develop as it does in bacterial populations under similar conditions of long-term use. Nevertheless, strains of *Candida, Cryptococcus,* and *Aspergillus* in AIDS patients, many of whom must remain on antifungal drugs for life, have developed some resistance against 5-fluorocytosine and the azole drugs.

Antifungal Vaccines

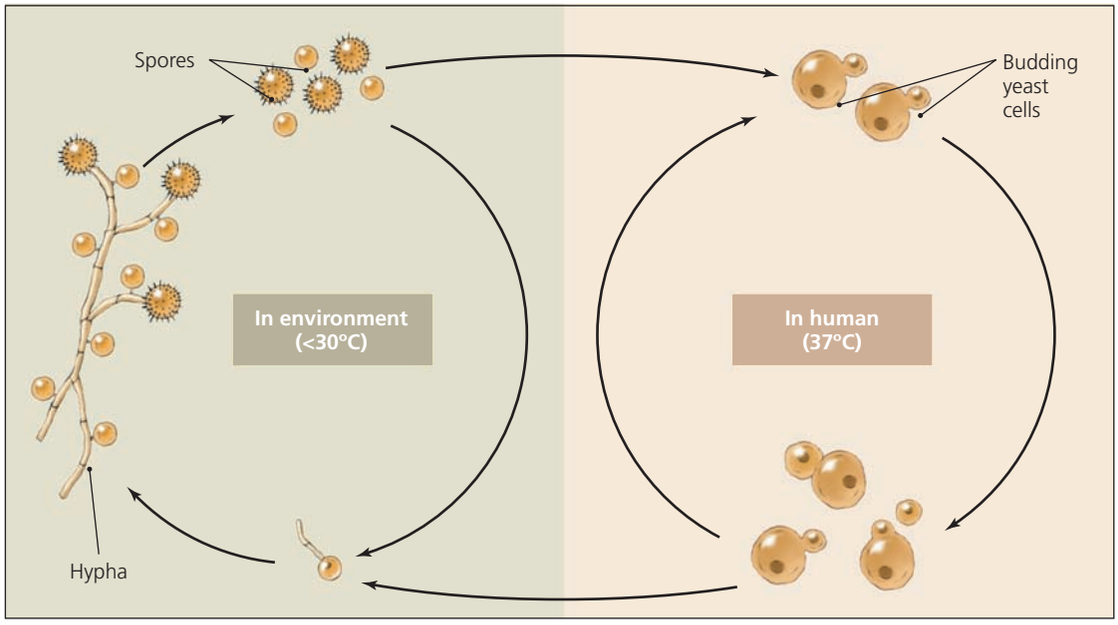
Learning Outcome

22.9 Explain why antifungal vaccines are difficult to develop.

Prevention of fungal infections generally entails avoiding endemic areas and keeping one's immune system healthy. Vaccines against fungi have been difficult to develop because fungal metabolism is similar to our own.

Scientists have developed attenuated vaccines against *Coccidioides,* but there is concern that the weakened microbe could revert to a virulent form and cause disease in immunized individuals. Recently, researchers used recombinant DNA to create a live vaccine that protects mice against a blastomycosis and have conjugated fungal antigens with diphtheria toxoid to create a vaccine against *Candida,* which is the most common fungus infecting AIDS patients. These new vaccines are safer than live, attenuated vaccines and more effective than killed vaccines.

Now that we have considered some of the basics of medical mycology, we turn our attention to the first category of important mycoses: systemic mycoses caused by the four truly pathogenic fungi.



▲ **Figure 22.2 The dimorphic nature of true fungal pathogens.** The mycelial form grows in the environment, and the yeast form grows within a human host. Shown here is *Histoplasma capsulatum*. *What are the other three genera of pathogenic, dimorphic fungi?*

Figure 22.2 *In addition to* Histoplasma, *members of the genera* Blastomyces, Coccidioides, *and* Paracoccidioides *are pathogenic fungi.*

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Pathogenic Fungi

Learning Outcomes

22.10 Compare and contrast the endemic areas for the four genera of pathogenic fungi that cause systemic mycoses.

22.11 Compare the clinical appearances of the diseases resulting from each of the four pathogenic fungi.

22.12 Identify the laboratory techniques used to distinguish among the four pathogenic fungi.

Systemic mycoses—those fungal infections that spread throughout the body—result from infections by one of the four pathogenic fungi: *Histoplama*, *Blastomyces*, *Coccidioides*, or *Paracoccidioides*. All are in the fungal division Ascomycota. These pathogenic fungi are uniformly acquired through inhalation, and all begin as a generalized pulmonary infection that then spreads via the blood to the rest of the body.

All four are also **dimorphic**[1] (dī-mōr´fik); that is, they can have two forms. In the environment, where the temperature is typically below 30°C, they appear as mycelial thalli composed of hyphae, whereas within the body (37°C) they grow as spherical yeasts **(Figure 22.2)**. The two forms differ not only structurally but also physiologically. Yeast forms are invasive because they express a variety of enzymes and other proteins that aid their growth and reproduction in the body. For example, they are tolerant of higher temperatures and are relatively resistant to phagocytic killing.

Dimorphic fungi are extremely hazardous to laboratory personnel, who must take specific precautions to avoid exposure to spores, particularly when culturing the organisms. Biological safety cabinets with HEPA filters (see Figure 9.11), protective clothing, and masks are required when working with these pathogens.

In the following sections we consider each of the systemic conditions caused by true fungal pathogens, beginning with histoplasmosis.

Histoplasmosis

Histoplasma capsulatum (his-tō-plaz´mă kap-soo-lā´tŭm), the causative agent of **histoplasmosis** (his´tō-plaz-mō´sis), is an ascomycete and the most common fungal pathogen affecting humans. *H. capsulatum* is particularly prevalent in the eastern United States along the Ohio River valley, but endemic areas also exist in Africa and South America **(Figure 22.3)**. *H. capsulatum* is found in moist soils containing high levels of nitrogen, such as from the droppings of bats and birds. Spores may become airborne and inhaled when soil containing the fungus is disturbed by wind or by human activities. Cutaneous inoculation can also lead to disease, but such infections are extremely rare.

[1]Form Greek *di*, meaning "two," and *morphe*, meaning "shape."

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Histoplasma capsulatum

Taxonomy: Domain Eukarya, Kingdom Fungi, phylum Ascomycota, class Ascomycetes, order Onygenales, family Onygenaceae

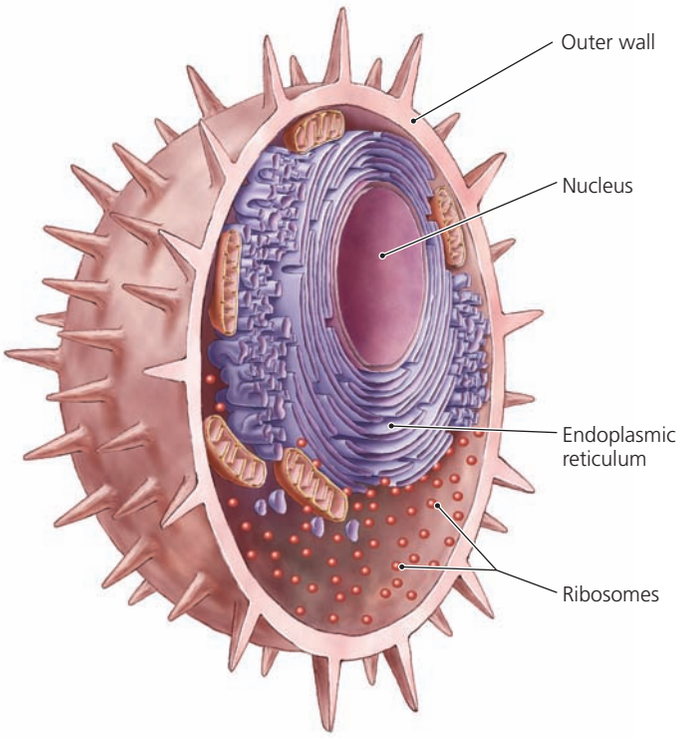
Morphology: Thermally dimorphic: <30°C, it forms septate hyphae, whereas at 37°C, it forms single-celled yeasts

Virulence factors: Survives phagocytosis to live inside macrophages, which can deliver the fungus throughout the body

Diseases caused: Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis, chronic cutaneous histoplasmosis, systematic histoplasmosis, ocular histoplasmosis

Treatment for diseases: Ketoconazole for mild infections; amphotericin B for more severe cases

Prevention of disease: Ninety percent of people living in endemic areas (Ohio River valley in North America, equatorial West Africa, and isolated areas of South America) have been infected. A healthy immune system limits course of disease.

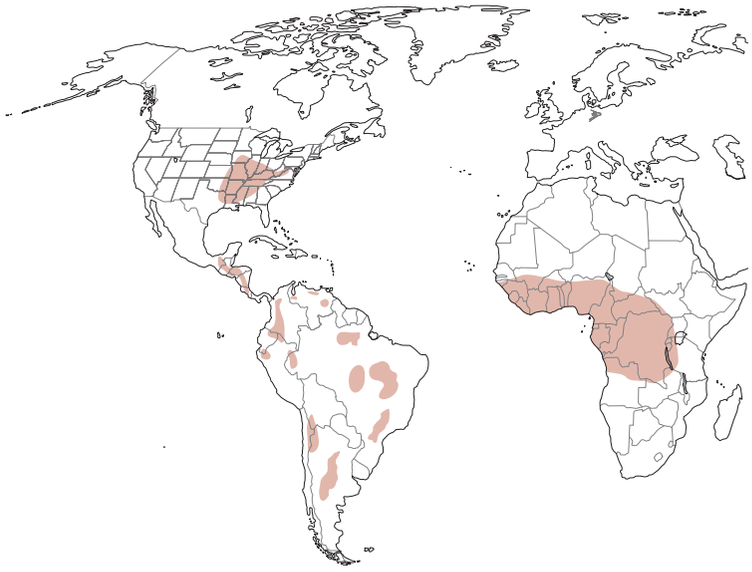


Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

CRITICAL THINKING

Statistically, men are more likely than women to contract histoplasmosis. What might explain this fact?

H. capsulatum is an intracellular parasite that survives inhalation and subsequent phagocytosis by macrophages in air sacs of the lungs. These macrophages then disperse the fungus beyond the lungs via the blood and lymph. Cell-mediated immunity eventually develops, clearing the organism from healthy patients.

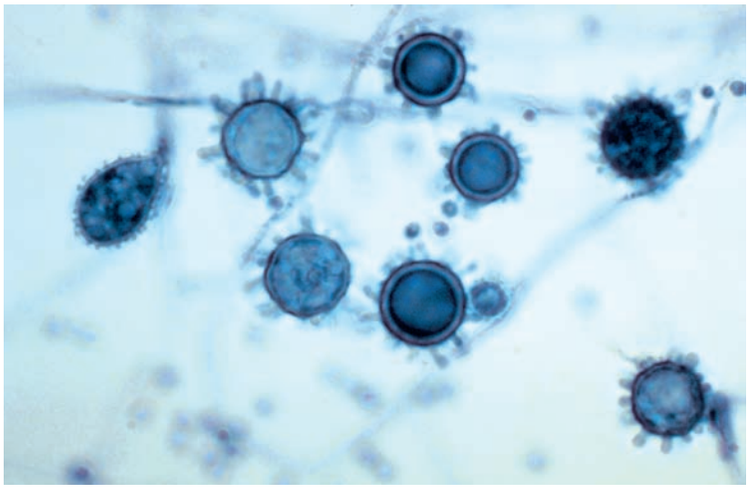


▲ **Figure 22.3** **Endemic areas for histoplasmosis.**

About 95% of individuals infected with pulmonary *Histoplasma* are asymptomatic, and their subclinical cases resolve without damage. Some individuals may experience mild or nonspecific respiratory symptoms (e.g., pains while breathing or mild coughing) that also disappear on their own. Slightly more pronounced symptoms—fever, night sweats, and weight loss—may occur in a few individuals. About 5% of patients develop clinical histoplasmosis, which manifests as one of four diseases:

- *Chronic pulmonary histoplasmosis* is characterized by severe coughing, blood-tinged sputum, night sweats, loss of appetite, and weight loss. It is often seen in individuals with preexisting lung disease. It can be mistaken for tuberculosis.
- *Chronic cutaneous histoplasmosis,* characterized by ulcerative skin lesions, can follow the spread of infection from the lungs.
- *Systemic histoplasmosis* can also follow if infection spreads from the lungs, but it is usually seen only in AIDS patients. This syndrome, characterized by enlargement of the spleen and liver, can be rapid, severe, and fatal.
- *Ocular histoplasmosis* is a type I hypersensitivity reaction against *Histoplasma* in the eye; it is characterized by inflammation and redness.

Diagnosis of histoplasmosis is based on the identification of the distinctive budding yeast in KOH- or GMS-prepared samples of skin scrapings, sputum, cerebrospinal fluid, or various tissues. The diagnosis is confirmed by the observation of dimorphism in cultures grown from such samples. Cultured *H. capsulatum* produces distinctively spiny spores that are also diagnostic **(Figure 22.4)**. Antibody tests are not useful



▲ **Figure 22.4** **The characteristic spiny spores of mycelial *Histoplasma capsulatum*.**

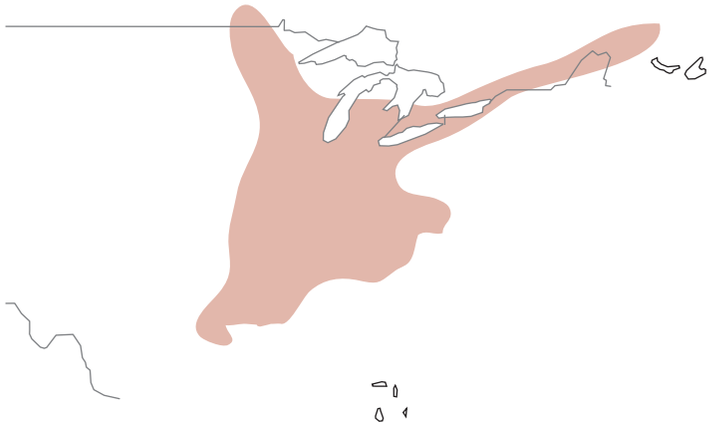
indicators of *Histoplasma* infection because many people have been exposed without contracting disease. In the endemic regions of the United States, close to 90% of the population tests positive for *H. capsulatum* exposure.

Infections in immunocompetent individuals typically resolve without treatment. When symptoms do not resolve, amphotericin B is prescribed. Ketoconazole can be used to treat mild infections. Maintenance therapy for AIDS patients is recommended.

Blastomycosis

Blastomycoses (blas´tō-mī-kō´sēz) are caused by another ascomycete, *Blastomyces dermatitidis* (blas-tō-mī´sēz der-mă-tit´i-dis), which is endemic across the southeastern United States north to Canada **(Figure 22.5)**. Outbreaks have also been reported in Latin America, Africa, Asia, and Europe. *B. dermatitidis* normally grows and sporulates in cool, damp soil rich in organic material, such as decaying vegetation and animal wastes. In humans, both recreational and occupational exposure occurs when fungal spores in soil become airborne and are inhaled. A relatively small inoculum can produce disease. The incidence of human infection is increasing in part because of increases in the number of immunocompromised individuals in the population.

Pulmonary blastomycosis is the most common manifestation of *Blastomyces* infection. After spores enter the lungs, they convert to yeast forms and multiply. Initial pulmonary lesions are asymptomatic in most individuals. If symptoms do develop, they are vague and include muscle aches, cough, fever, chills, malaise, and weight loss. Purulent (pus-filled) lesions develop and expand as the yeasts multiply, resulting in death of tissues and cavity formation. Rarely, a deep productive cough and chest pain accompany the



▲ **Figure 22.5** **Geographic distribution of *Blastomyces*.**

generalized symptoms. In otherwise healthy people, pulmonary blastomycosis typically resolves successfully, although it may become chronic. Respiratory failure and death occur at a high frequency among AIDS patients.

The fungus can spread beyond the lungs. *Cutaneous blastomycosis* occurs in 60% to 70% of cases and consists of generally painless lesions on the face and upper body **(Figure 22.6)**. The lesions can be raised and wartlike, or they may be craterlike if tissue death occurs. In roughly 30% of cases, the fungus spreads to the spine, pelvis, cranium, ribs, long bones, or subcutaneous tissues surrounding joints, a condition called *osteoarticular*[2] *blastomycosis* (os´tē-ō-ar-tik´ū-lar). About 40% of AIDS patients experience meningitis resulting from dissemination of *Blastomyces* to the central nervous system. Abscesses may form in other tissue systems as well.

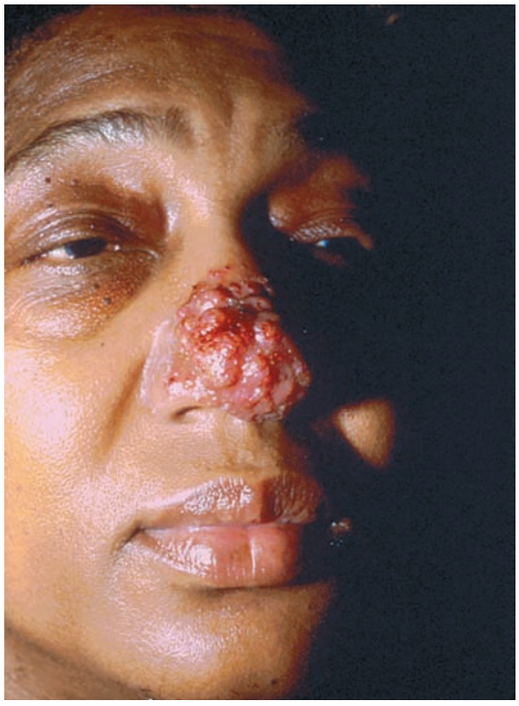
Diagnosis relies on identification of *B. dermatitidis* following culture or direct examination of various samples, such as sputum, bronchial washings, biopsies, cerebrospinal fluid, or skin scrapings. Observation of dimorphism in laboratory cultures coupled with microscopic examination is diagnostic.

Physicians treat blastomycoses with amphotericin B for 10 weeks or longer. Oral itraconazole may be used as an alternative but must be administered for a minimum of three to six months. Relapse is common in AIDS patients, and suppressive maintenance therapy with itraconazole is recommended.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Outbreaks of blastomycoses have occurred in Latin America even though the pathogen normally is not found there. Based on what you have read, explain why a few cases of blastomycosis might appear outside of Northern Hemisphere endemic areas.

[2]From Greek *osteon*, meaning "bone," and *arthron*, meaning "joint."



▲ **Figure 22.6** **Cutaneous blastomycosis in an American woman.** This condition typically results from the spread of *Blastomyces dermatitidis* from the lungs to the skin.

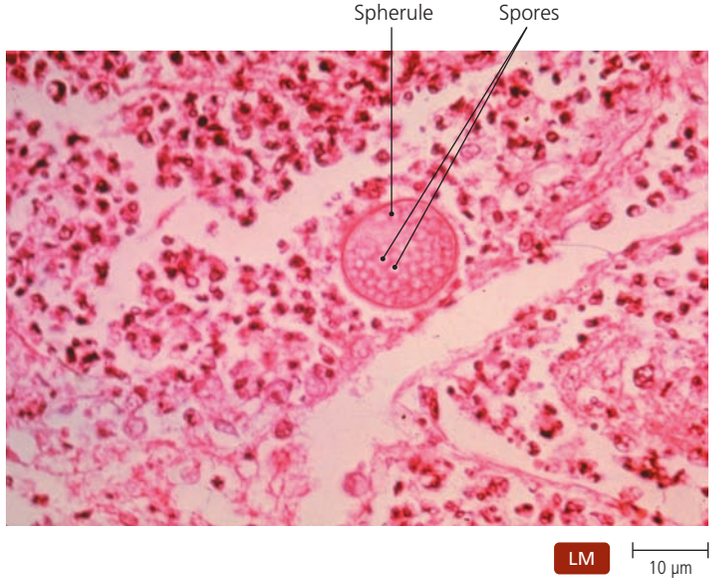
▲ **Figure 22.7** **Endemic areas of *Coccidioides*.**

Coccidioidomycosis

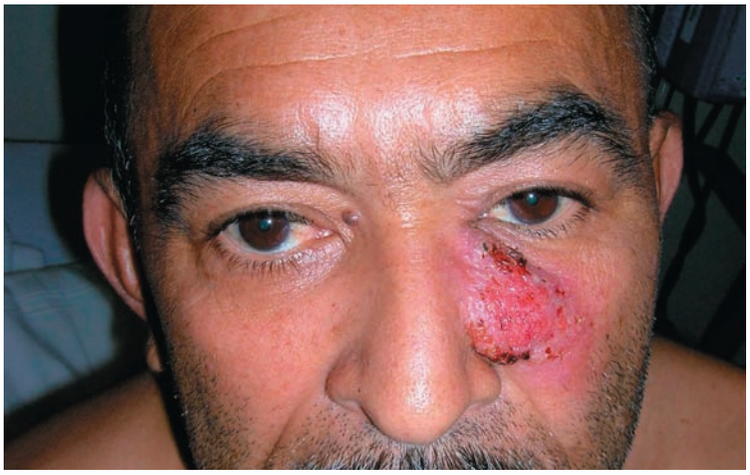
Coccidioidomycosis (kok-sid-ē-oy´dō-mī-kō-sis), caused by ascomycete *Coccidioides immitis* (kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz im´i-tis), is found almost exclusively in the southwestern United States (Arizona, California, Nevada, New Mexico, and Texas) and northern Mexico. Small, focally endemic areas also exist in semiarid parts of Central and South America **(Figure 22.7)**. Fungi can be recovered from desert soil, rodent burrows, archeological remains, and mines. Dust that coats materials from endemic areas, including Native American pots and blankets sold to tourists, can serve as a vehicle of infection. Infection rates in endemic areas have risen in recent years as a result of population expansion and increased recreational activities, such as the use of off-road vehicles in the desert. More ominous threats to human health, however, are windstorms and earthquakes, which can disturb large tracts of contaminated soil, spreading the fungal elements for miles downwind and exposing thousands of people.

In the warm and dry summer and fall months, particularly in drought cycles, *C. immitis* grows as a mycelium and produces sturdy chains of asexual spores called *arthroconidia.* When mature, arthroconidia germinate into new mycelia in the environment, but if inhaled, arthroconidia germinate in the lungs to produce a parasitic form called a *spherule* (sfer´ool; **Figure 22.8**). As each spherule matures, it enlarges and generates a large number of spores via multiple cleavages, until it ruptures and releases the spores into the surrounding tissue. Each spore then forms a new spherule to continue the cycle of division and release. This type of growth accounts for the seriousness of *Coccidioides* infection.

The major manifestation of coccidioidomycosis is pulmonary. About 60% of patients experience either no symptoms or mild, unremarkable symptoms that go unnoticed and typically



▲ **Figure 22.8** **Spherules of *Coccidioides immitis*.** Note the numerous spores within a spherule.



▲ **Figure 22.9 Coccidioidomycosis lesions in subcutaneous tissue.** Painless lesions result from the spread of *Coccidioides immitis* from the lungs.

▲ **Figure 22.10 The "steering wheel" formation of buds characteristic of *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*.**

resolve on their own. Other patients develop more severe infections characterized by fever, cough, chest pain, difficulty breathing, coughing up or spitting blood, headache, night sweats, weight loss, and pneumonia; in some individuals a diffuse rash may appear on the trunk. Occasionally the mild forms of the pulmonary disease become more chronic, in which cases the continued multiplication of spherules results in large, permanent cavities in the lungs similar to those seen in tuberculosis patients.

In a very small percentage of cases, generally in those who are severely immunocompromised, *C. immitis* spreads from the lungs to various other sites. Invasion of the central nervous system (CNS) may result in meningitis, headache, nausea, and emotional disturbance. Infection can also spread to the bones, joints, and painless subcutaneous tissues; subcutaneous lesions are inflamed masses of granular material **(Figure 22.9)**.

The diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis can be based on the identification of spherules in KOH- or GMS-treated samples collected from patients. Health care workers administer a *coccidioidin skin test* to screen patients for contact with *Coccidioides.* In the test, antigens of *Coccidioides* are injected under the skin. If the body has antibodies against the fungus—that is, the patient has been or is infected—then the site will become inflamed. Diagnosis is confirmed by the isolation of the mycelial form of *C. immitis* in laboratory culture or isolation of encapsulated yeasts in the patients' tissues.

Although infections in otherwise healthy patients generally resolve on their own without damage, amphotericin B is the drug of choice. CNS involvement is fatal without treatment. In AIDS patients, maintenance therapy with itraconazole or fluconazole is recommended to prevent relapse or reinfection. The wearing of protective masks in endemic areas can prevent exposure to spores, but constant, daily wearing of masks may be impractical for all but those whose occupations put them at clear risk of infection.

Paracoccidioidomycosis

Another ascomycete, *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* (par´ă-kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz bră-sil-ē-en´sis) causes **paracoccidioidomycosis** (par´ā-kok-sid-ē-oy´dō-mī-kō´sis), a chronic fungal disease similar to blastomycosis and coccidioidomycosis. *P. brasiliensis* is found in cool, damp soil from southern Mexico to regions of South America, particularly in Brazil. Because this fungus is far more geographically limited than the other true fungal pathogens, paracoccidioidomycosis is not a common disease. Those most at risk include farm workers in endemic areas.

Infections range from asymptomatic to systemic, and disease first becomes apparent as a pulmonary form that is slow to develop but manifests as chronic cough, fever, night sweats, malaise, and weight loss. The fungus almost always spreads, producing a chronic inflammatory disease of mucous membranes. Painful ulcerated lesions of the gums, tongue, lips, and palate progressively worsen over the course of weeks to months.

KOH or GMS preparations of tissue samples reveal yeast cells with multiple buds in a "steering wheel" formation that is diagnostic for this organism **(Figure 22.10)**. Laboratory culture at 25°C and at 37°C demonstrating dimorphism is confirmatory. Serological identification of antibodies also is useful. Treatment is with amphotericin B or ketoconazole.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

All of the true fungal pathogens manifest initially as a pulmonary disease. Explain how you could ascertain which of the four pathogens a patient has.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

WHAT'S AILING THE BIRD ENTHUSIAST?

A 64-year-old man arrives at a hospital emergency room with signs and symptoms of serious pulmonary infection. He complains of a deep cough, blood-tinged sputum, night sweats, and weight loss. His liver and spleen feel enlarged upon physical examination. X-ray studies of his chest suggest tuberculosis, but a tuberculin skin test is negative, as is an HIV test. The man, an Ohio native, has recently traveled to Africa and Asia. He is also an avid bird enthusiast who likes to feed pigeons. He also keeps many bird feeders on his balcony, which attracts numerous birds, and he spends an hour a day cleaning up bird droppings.

Skin tests are positive for histoplasmosis but inconclusive for coccidioidomycosis and blastomycosis.

1. What is the most likely infecting agent? How do you suppose this individual acquired the disease?
2. Is this disease unusual in people who work with birds?
3. Given that some tests were inconclusive, what other tests or lab work would aid in arriving at a specific diagnosis?
4. What treatment would most likely be prescribed?

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Opportunistic Fungi

Learning Outcome

22.13 Discuss the difficulties in diagnosing opportunistic fungal infections.

Opportunistic mycoses do not typically affect healthy humans because the fungi involved lack genes for virulence factors that make them actively invasive. Instead, opportunistic mycoses are limited to people with poor immunity. Because of the growing number of AIDS patients, opportunistic fungal infections have become one of the more significant causes of human disease and death. Even though any fungus can become an opportunist, five genera of fungi are routinely encountered: *Pneumocystis, Candida, Aspergillus, Cryptococcus,* and *Mucor.*

Opportunistic infections present a formidable challenge to clinicians. Because they appear only when their hosts are weakened, they often display "odd" clinical signatures; that is, their symptoms are often atypical, or they occur in individuals not residing in endemic areas for a particular fungus. Increased severity of symptoms is often a reflection of the poor immune status of the patient and frequently results in higher fatality rates, even if the fungus is normally nonthreatening.

In the following sections we consider some of the mycoses caused by the "classical" fungal opportunists, beginning with *Pneumocystis* pneumonia.

Pneumocystis Pneumonia

Learning Outcome

22.14 List the characteristics of *Pneumocystis* that distinguish it from other fungal opportunists.

Pneumocystis jiroveci (nū-mō-sis´tis jē-rō-vĕt´zē), an ascomycete of the normal respiratory microbiota formerly known as *P. carinii,* is one of the more common opportunistic fungal infections seen in AIDS patients. Prior to the AIDS epidemic, disease caused by *Pneumocystis* was extremely rare.

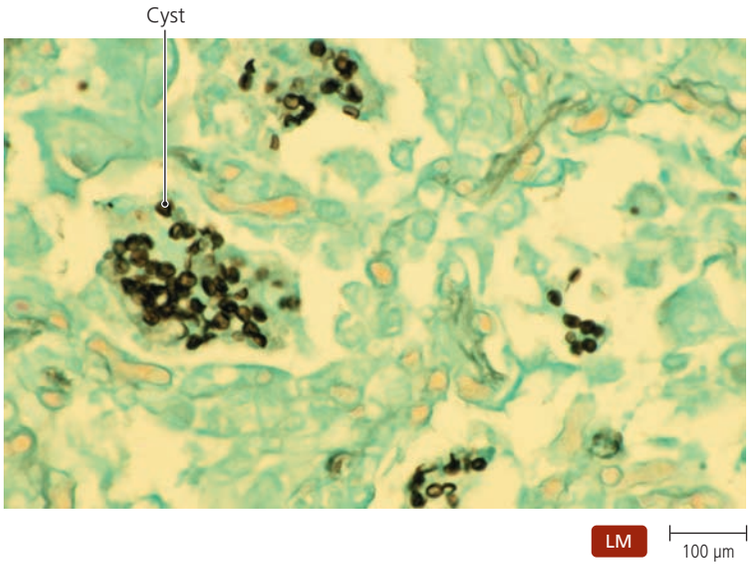
Even though the organism was first identified in 1909, little is known about it. Originally considered a protozoan, it has been reclassified as a fungus based on rRNA nucleotide sequences and biochemistry. Its morphological and developmental characteristics, however, still resemble those of protozoa more than those of fungi. Because *P. jiroveci* is an obligate parasite and cannot survive on its own in the environment, transmission most likely occurs through inhalation.

P. jiroveci is distributed worldwide in humans; based on serological confirmation of antibodies, the majority of healthy children (75%) have been exposed to the fungus by the age of five. In immunocompetent people, infection is asymptomatic, and generally clearance of the fungus from the body is followed by lasting immunity. However, some individuals may remain infected indefinitely; in such carriers the organism remains in the alveoli (air sacs of lungs) and can be passed in respiratory droplets.

Before the AIDS epidemic, the disease ***Pneumocystis* pneumonia** was observed only in malnourished, premature infants and debilitated elderly patients. Now, the disease is almost diagnostic for AIDS. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia is abbreviated **PCP,** which originally stood for *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia but now can be considered to stand for *P*neumocystis *p*neumonia.

Once the fungus enters the lungs of an AIDS patient, it multiplies rapidly, extensively colonizing the lungs because the patient's defenses are impaired. Widespread inflammation, fever, difficulty in breathing, and a nonproductive cough are characteristic. If left untreated, PCP involves more and more lung tissue until death occurs.

Diagnosis relies on clinical and microscopic findings. Chest X-ray studies usually reveal abnormal lung features. Stained smears of fluid from the lungs or from biopsies can reveal



▲ **Figure 22.11 Cysts of *Pneumocystis jiroveci* in lung tissue.** Such microscopic findings are diagnostic.

distinctive morphological forms of the fungus **(Figure 22.11)**. The use of fluorescent antibody on samples taken from patients is more sensitive and provides a more specific diagnosis.

Because the fungus has many of the characteristics of protozoa, both primary treatment and maintenance therapy are with the antiprotozoan drugs trimethoprim and sulfanilamide. Pentamidine, another antiprotozoan drug, is an alternative. The drugs may be aerosolized to allow for direct inhalation into the lungs.

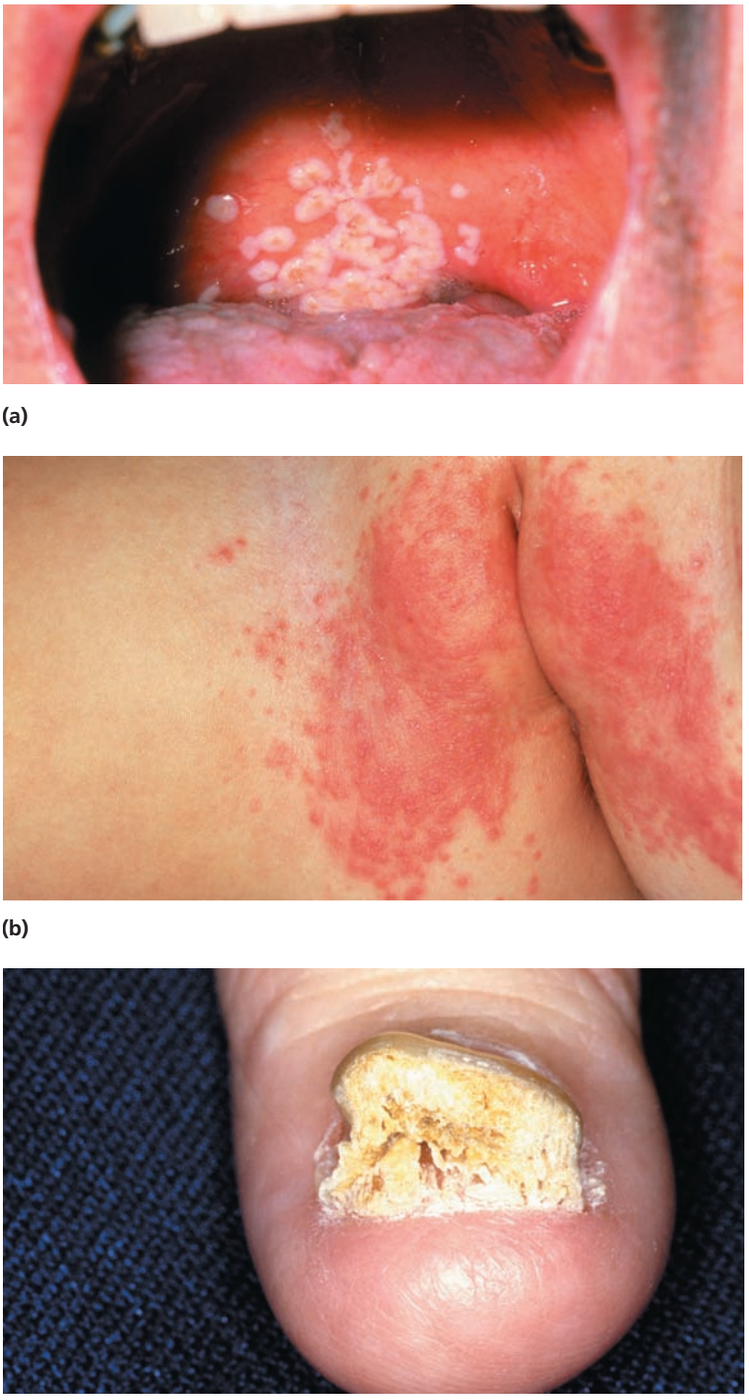
Candidiasis

Learning Outcome

22.15 Explain how candidiasis can develop from a localized infection to a systemic mycosis.

Candidiasis (kan-di-dī´ă-sis) is any opportunistic fungal infection or disease caused by various species of the genus *Candida*—most commonly *Candida albicans* (al´bi-kanz). Fungi in this genus of dimorphic ascomycetes are common members of the microbiota of the skin and mucous membranes; for example, the digestive tracts of 40% to 80% of all healthy individuals harbor *Candida* species. *Candida* is one of a very few fungi that can be transmitted between individuals. From its site as a normal inhabitant of the female reproductive tract, for example, it can be passed to babies during childbirth and to men during sexual contact.

Although *Candida* species can infect tissues in essentially every body system, producing a wide range of disease manifestations in humans **(Figure 22.12)**, in all cases the fungus is an opportunist. It is *Candida* that causes vaginal yeast infections, as the fungus grows prolifically when normal bacterial microbiota are inhibited due to changes in vaginal pH or use of antibacterial drugs. Localized, superficial infections are seen in individuals with impairment of the barrier function of the epithelial layers (generally newborns and the elderly).



(a)

(b)

(c)

▲ **Figure 22.12 Three of the many manifestations of candidiasis.** **(a)** Oropharyngeal candidiasis, or thrush. **(b)** Diaper rash. **(c)** Nail infection (onychomycosis).

Systemic disease is seen almost universally in immunocompromised individuals. Different segments of the population experience a given manifestation of candidiasis at different rates. For example, whereas oral candidiasis (thrush) is rare in healthy

TABLE 22.2 The Clinical Manifestations of Candidiasis

Type	Clinical Signs and Symptoms	Predisposing Factors
Oropharyngeal (thrush)	White plaques on the mucosa of the mouth, tongue, gums, palate, and/or pharynx	Diabetes, AIDS, cancers, various chemotherapeutic drug regimens
Cutaneous	Moist, macular red rash between skin folds	Moisture, heat, and friction of skin in skin folds and between digits, particularly in the obese
	Diaper rash: raised red rash, pustules in the gluteal region	Infrequently changed, soiled diapers
	Onychomycosis: painful red swelling around the nails, destruction of nail tissue, and loss of the nail	Immunocompromised individuals
Vulvovaginal	Creamy white, curdlike discharge, burning, redness, painful intercourse	Use of broad-spectrum antibiotics, pregnancy, diabetes, changes to the vaginal microbiota
Chronic mucocutaneous	Lesions associated with the skin, nails, and mucous membranes; severe forms may occur	Various metabolic problems relating to cell-mediated immunity (e.g., diabetes) in children
Neonatal and congenital	Meningitis, renal disorders, or generalized, bodywide, red, vesicular rash	Young age, low birth weight, use of antibiotics by the mother
Esophageal	White plaques along the esophagus, burning pain, nausea, and vomiting	AIDS, immunocompromised status
Gastrointestinal	Ulceration of the stomach and intestinal mucosa	Hematological cancers
Pulmonary	Generalized, nonspecific symptoms; often remains undiagnosed until autopsy	Infection spread from other types of candidiasis
Peritoneal	Fever, pain, tenderness	Indwelling catheters for dialysis or gastrointestinal perforation
Urinary tract	Urinary tract infection: painful urination, possible discharge	Chemotherapeutic drug regimens, catheterization, diabetes, preexisting bladder problems
	Renal: fever, pain, rigors, fungus ball	
Meningeal	Swelling of the meninges, fever, headache, stiffness of the neck	Spread of *Candida* during systemic infection
Hepatic and splenic	Fever, swelling of the liver and spleen, liver dysfunction, lesions and abscesses	Leukemia
Endocardial, myocardial, pericardial	Fever, heart murmur, congestive heart failure, anemia	Preexisting heart valve disease, catheterization plus use, of antibiotics, IV drug abuse, valve prosthetics
Ocular	Cloudy vision, lesions within the eye	Spread of candidiasis, indwelling catheters, IV drug abuse, trauma
Osteoarticular	Pain when weight is placed on joint	Spread of candidiasis, prosthetic implants
Candidemia	Antibiotic-resistant fevers, tachycardia, hypotension, skin lesions, small abscesses in various organ systems	IV or urinary catheters, use of antibacterial drugs, surgery, severe burns, antibacterial therapy

individuals and occurs in only about 5% of newborns, it affects 10% of the elderly and nearly all those infected with HIV once they develop clinical AIDS. Table 22.2 summarizes the wide variety of clinical manifestations of candidiasis.

Physicians diagnose candidiasis on the basis of signs and demonstration of clusters of budding yeasts (see Figure 22.1b) and *pseudohyphae,* which are series of buds remaining attached to the parent cell and appearing as a filamentous hypha (**Figure 22.13**).

In immunocompetent patients for whom excessive friction and body moisture in skin folds or preexisting diseases are the reasons for fungal colonization, resolution involves treating these underlying problems in addition to administering topical antifungal agents. Oral candidiasis in infants and children is treated with nystatin. Azole suppositories, creams, and/or oral administration of fluconazole are used for vaginal candidiasis.

The same infections in AIDS patients are much more difficult to treat because most superficial or mucous membrane infections in these patients do not respond well to topical antifungal treatments. Orally administered fluconazole is used for primary and maintenance therapy for candidiasis in AIDS patients. Invasive candidiasis requires treatment with amphotericin B and often with 5-fluorocytosine; fluconazole may be substituted for either drug.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Even though *Candida* species are not as virulent as some microbial pathogens, the fungus can still invade every human tissue. Propose a possible explanation for this observation.

▲ **Figure 22.13** ***Candida albicans.*** Buds of this yeast appear as distinctive pseudohyphae.

Aspergillosis

Learning Outcome

22.16 Describe the clinical manifestations of aspergillosis.

Aspergillosis (as´per-ji-lō-sis) is not a single disease but instead a term for several diseases resulting from the inhalation of spores of fungi in the genus *Aspergillus* (as-per-jil´ŭs) in the division Ascomycota. *Aspergillus* is found in soil, food, compost, agricultural buildings, and air vents of homes and offices worldwide. Although exposure to *Aspergillus* most commonly causes only allergies, more serious diseases can occur, and aspergillosis is a growing problem for AIDS patients. Because the fungi are so common in the environment, little can be done to prevent exposure to the spores.

Even though *Aspergillus* species can be opportunistic pathogens of almost all body tissues, these fungi are chiefly responsible for causing three clinical pulmonary diseases:

- *Hypersensitivity aspergillosis* manifests as asthma or other allergic symptoms and results most commonly from inhalation of *Aspergillus* spores. Symptoms may be mild and result in no damage, or they may become chronic, with recurrent episodes leading to permanent damage.
- *Noninvasive aspergillomas*—ball-like masses of fungal hyphae—can form in the cavities resulting from a previous case of pulmonary tuberculosis. Most cases are asymptomatic, though coughing of blood-tinged sputum may occur.
- *Acute invasive pulmonary aspergillosis* is more serious. Signs and symptoms, which include fever, cough, and pain, may present as pneumonia. Death of lung tissue can lead to significant respiratory impairment.

Aspergillus also causes nonpulmonary disease when aspergillomas form in paranasal sinuses, ear canals, eyelids **(Figure 22.14)**, the conjunctivas, eye sockets, or brain. Rarely, *cutaneous aspergillosis* results when the fungus is either introduced into the skin by trauma or spreads from the lungs in AIDS patients. Lesions begin as raised, red papules that progressively die. *Systemic aspergillosis,* which involves invasion of the major organ systems, occurs in AIDS patients and IV drug abusers. The fungus produces abscesses in the brain, kidneys, heart, bones, and gastrointestinal tract. Systemic aspergillosis is often fatal, especially when the brain is involved.

Clinical history and radiographs demonstrating abnormal lung structure are suggestive of aspergillosis, but diagnosis must be confirmed via laboratory techniques. The presence of septate hyphae and distinctive conidia in KOH- and GMS-prepared

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Aspergillus

Taxonomy: Domain Eukarya, Kingdom Fungi, phylum Ascomycota, class Ascomycetes, order Eurotiales, family Trichocomaceae; principally three species cause disease in humans: *A. fumigatus*, *A. niger*, and *A. flavus*

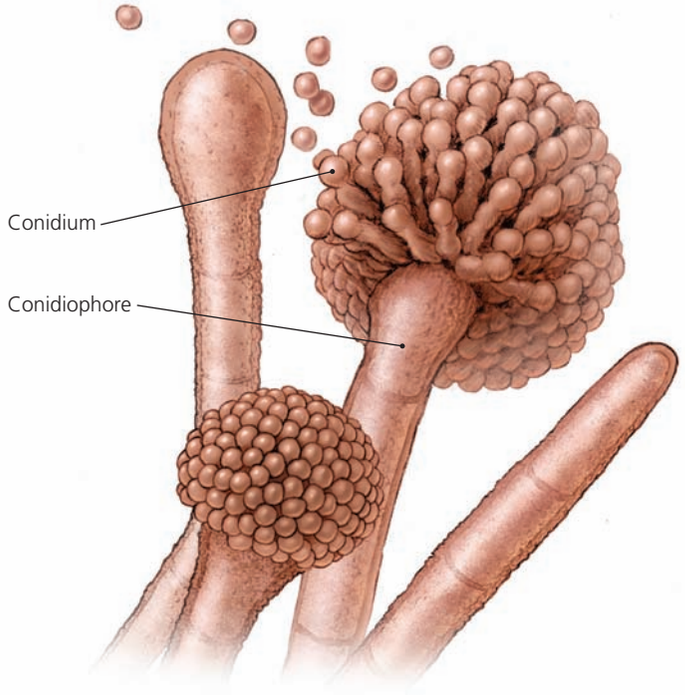
Morphology: Septate hyphae

Virulence factors: Allergenic surface molecules; opportunistic pathogen with little virulence except in immunocompromised patients

Diseases caused: Hypersensitivity aspergillosis (allergy), noninvasive aspergilloma, acute invasive pulmonary aspergillosis, cutaneous aspergillosis, systemic aspergillosis

Treatment for diseases: Allergy: anti-inflammatory drugs and desensitization to allergens; other disease: amphotericin B and surgical removal of aspergillomas

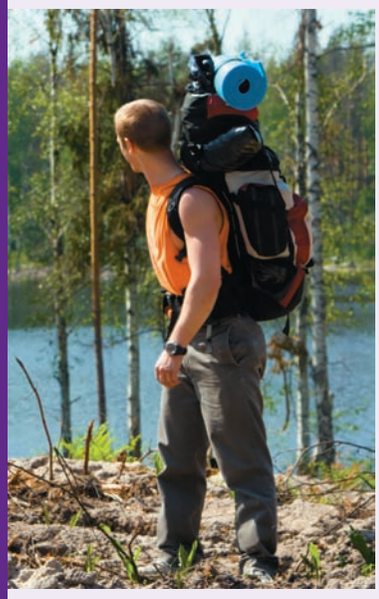
Prevention of disease: Maintain a healthy immune system.



MM **Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.**

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

PULMONARY BLASTOMYCOSIS



Phil was glad he had spent the summer fishing, hiking, and camping in western Ontario. Canada is beautiful, and he had needed time off from his two jobs and full schedule of nursing classes. Now he was back in college, and remembrances of Canada were helping him cope with the stress.

However, Phil didn't feel well. He was probably coming down with the flu—fever and chills, shivering and coughing, muscle aches, tiredness, a general feeling of yuckiness, and no runny nose; yes, it must be the flu. Or was it? He knew from microbiology class that many diseases of bacteria, protozoa, and viruses have flulike symptoms. Phil had forgotten fungi.

Phil tried every over-the-counter remedy, to no avail. He tried the health clinic on campus, but the antibiotics he received made things worse, not better. He was losing weight, and pus-filled, raised sores had appeared on his face, neck, and legs. More alarming: his testes were swollen and aching. This was getting serious.

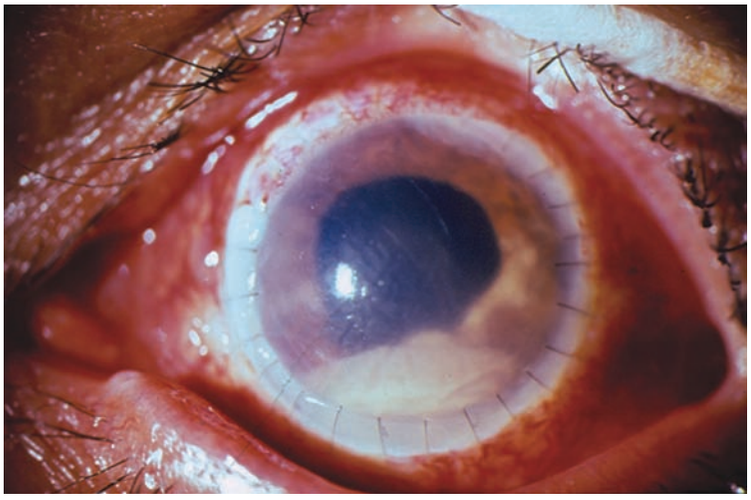
Blastomyces, an emergent, dimorphic fungus, was attacking Phil. Inhaled spores from hyphae growing on wet leaves primarily in Wisconsin and Ontario had germinated in Phil's lungs. The yeast phase was multiplying and spreading throughout his body, producing skin lesions that lasted for months, finally resolving into raised, wartlike scars.

Researchers don't know why blastomycosis is becoming more prevalent. Perhaps it has to do with better diagnosis and reporting, perhaps it has to do with a growing number of AIDS patients who are susceptible to infection, or perhaps it has to do with more people like Phil adventuring into the wilderness.

The good news is that with proper diagnosis, Phil got the treatment he needed—itraconazole for six months. He graduated, and now he is a nurse who knows that flulike symptoms can sometimes indicate serious fungal infection. (For more about pulmonary blastomycosis, see p. 638.)

samples taken from a patient are diagnostic. Immunological tests to detect antigens in the blood are confirmatory.

Treatment of hypersensitivity involves either the use of various allergy medications or desensitization to the allergen.



▲ **Figure 22.14** **An invasive aspergilloma in the eye.** *In what group of individuals is aspergillosis an emerging disease?*

Figure 22.14 Aspergillosis is an emerging disease of AIDS patients.

Invasive disease is treated by surgical removal of aspergillomas and surrounding tissues plus high-dose, intravenous administration of amphotericin B. Systemic infections must be treated with amphotericin B in conjunction with other antifungal agents. Maintenance therapy with itraconazole is suggested for preventing relapse in AIDS patients.

Cryptococcosis

Learning Outcome

22.17 Discuss the characteristics of *Cryptococcus* that contribute to the severity of cryptococcoses in immunocompromised patients.

A basidiomycete, *Cryptococcus neoformans* (krip-tō-kok´ŭs nē-ō-for´manz), is the primary species causing **cryptococcoses** (krip´-tō-kok-ō´sēz). Two varieties are known. *C. neoformans gattii* is found in Australia, Papua New Guinea, parts of Africa, the Mediterranean, India, Southeast Asia, parts of Central and South America, and southern California. It infects primarily immunocompetent individuals. *C. neoformans neoformans* is found worldwide and infects mainly AIDS patients. Approximately 50% of all cryptococcal infections reported each year are due to strain *neoformans*.

Human infections follow the inhalation of spores or dried yeast in aerosols from the droppings of birds. People who work

around buildings where birds roost are at increased risk of infection. Hospitals, convalescent homes, and other such facilities often place devices that deter the roosting of birds near air-intake vents in an effort to prevent *Cryptococcus*-contaminated air from entering a building.

The pathogenesis of *Cryptococcus* is enhanced by several characteristics of this fungus: the presence of a phagocytosis-resistant capsule surrounding the yeast form; the ability of the yeast to produce melanin, which further inhibits phagocytosis; and the organism's predilection for the central nervous system (CNS), which is isolated from the immune system by the so-called blood-brain barrier. Cryptococcal infections also tend to appear in terminal AIDS patients when little immune function remains.

Primary pulmonary cryptococcosis is asymptomatic in most individuals, although some individuals experience a low-grade fever, cough, and mild chest pain. In a few cases, *invasive pulmonary cryptococcosis* occurs, resulting in chronic pneumonia in which cough and pulmonary lesions progressively worsen over a period of years.

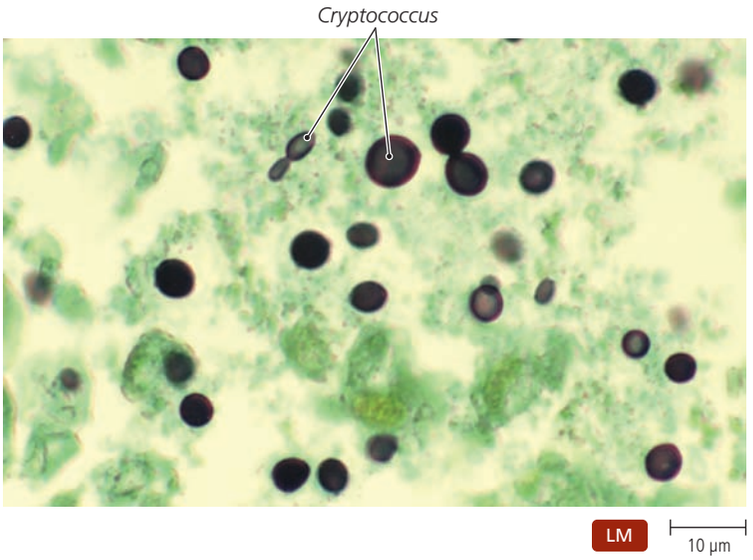
Cryptococcal meningitis, the most common clinical form of cryptococcal infection, follows dissemination of the fungus to the CNS. Symptoms develop slowly and include headache, dizziness, drowsiness, irritability, confusion, nausea, vomiting, and neck stiffness. In late stages of the disease, loss of vision and coma occur. Acute onset of rapidly fatal cryptococcal meningitis occurs in individuals with widespread infection.

Cryptococcoma (krip´tō-kok-ō´mă) is a very rare condition in which solid fungal masses form in the cerebral hemispheres, cerebellum, or (rarely) in the spinal cord. The symptoms of this condition, which can be mistaken for cerebral tumors, are similar to those of cryptococcal meningitis but also include motor and neurological impairment.

Cutaneous cryptococcosis may also develop. Primary infections manifest as ulcerated skin lesions or as inflammation of subcutaneous tissues. Infection may resolve on its own, but patients should be monitored for infection spreading to the CNS. Secondary cutaneous lesions occur following spread of *Cryptococcus* to other areas of the body. In AIDS patients, cutaneous cryptococcosis is the second most common manifestation of *Cryptococcus* infection (after meningitis). Lesions are common on the head and neck.

Diagnosis involves collecting specimen samples that correlate with the symptoms. GMS stains revealing the presence of encapsulated yeast in cerebrospinal fluid are highly suggestive of cryptococcal meningitis, even if no overt symptoms are present **(Figure 22.15)**. Recovery of *Cryptococcus* from respiratory secretions is generally not diagnostic because of general environmental exposure, but any patient testing positive for *C. neoformans* should be monitored for systemic disease. The preferred method of confirming cryptococcal meningitis is detection of fungal antigens in cerebrospinal fluid. In AIDS patients, antigens can be detected in serum as well.

Treatment for cryptococcoses is with amphotericin B and 5-fluorocytosine administered together for 6 to 10 weeks. The synergistic action of the two drugs allows lower doses of amphotericin B to be used, but toxicity is not completely eliminated. Although AIDS patients may appear well following primary treatment, the fungus typically remains and must be actively suppressed by lifelong use of oral fluconazole.



▲ **Figure 22.15 GMS stain of *Cryptococcus*.** Yeasts of this dimorphic fungus multiply in the lungs, as shown, and may spread to other parts of the body.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Compare and contrast the clinical features of cryptococcosis and PCP. Why are both of these diseases so dangerous to AIDS patients?

Zygomycoses

Learning Outcome

22.18 Describe the clinical forms of zygomycoses.

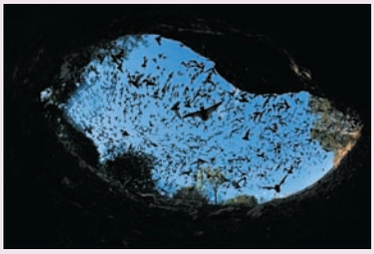
Zygomycoses (zī´gō-mī-kō´sez) are opportunistic fungal infections caused by various genera of fungi classified in the division Zygomycota, especially *Mucor* (or sometimes *Rhizopus* [rī-zō´pŭs] or *Absidia* [ab-sid´ē-ă]). All three have a worldwide distribution and are extremely common in soil, on decaying organic matter, or as contaminants that cause food spoilage (*Rhizopus* is the classic bread mold).

Zygomycoses are commonly seen in patients with uncontrolled diabetes, in people who inject illegal drugs, in some cancer patients, and in some patients receiving antimicrobial agents. Infections generally develop in the face and head area but can develop elsewhere and may spread throughout the bodies of severely immunocompromised individuals, resulting in the following conditions:

- *Rhinocerebral zygomycosis* begins with infection of the nasal sinuses following inhalation of spores. The fungus spreads to the mouth and nose, producing macroscopic cottonlike growths. *Mucor* can subsequently invade blood vessels, where it produces fibrous clots, causes tissue death, and subsequently invades the brain, which is fatal within days, even with treatment.
- *Pulmonary zygomycosis* follows inhalation of spores (as from moldy foods). The fungus kills lung tissue, resulting in the formation of cavities.
- *Gastrointestinal zygomycosis* involves ulcers in the intestinal tract.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

DISEASE FROM A CAVE



Nate lives an exciting life. His part of Kentucky is beautiful, and he has opportunities for adventure with his friends in Boy Scout Troop 138. They have been hiking, climbing, backpacking, and mountaineering and just 10 days ago had spent all night in a cave deep below the town. After watching what seemed like millions of bats rush and swoop out of the cave, the troop had entered the cavern system through another entrance—a "squeeze entrance." Nate wasn't sure what a squeeze entrance was until he had to inch forward for over a hundred feet with his arms stretched in front of him, pulling with his fingertips as his back scraped the ceiling. That had been the worst part. But, after clearing the entrance, the teenagers had explored, scrambled, and crawled the whole night. They had even eaten underground. It was extreme, though it was a little spooky—with bizarre geological formations, pools of ice-cold water, and total darkness—but the guys were still talking about the time they stayed up all night inside the Earth.

Today, though, Nate doesn't feel so excited. His nonproductive coughing hurts; he likely has a fever, though he feels cold; and he has red bumps on the skin of his legs. His dad takes him to the doctor, who prescribes a medicine that neither Nate nor his parents had heard of—keto-something.

1. What disease is troubling Nate?
2. What is the name of the drug that Nate is taking?
3. How did Nate contract the disease?
4. Is Nate contagious to any of his friends in Troop 138?
5. How likely is it that other teenagers from the troop are infected?
6. How likely is it that other troop members are diseased?

- *Cutaneous zygomycosis* results from the introduction of fungi through the skin after trauma (such as burns or needle punctures). Lesions range from pustules and ulcers to abscesses and dead patches of skin.

Diagnosis usually involves microscopic findings of fungus. Samples may be obtained from scrapings of lesions, lung aspirates, or biopsies. KOH- or GMS-stained tissue sections reveal hyphae with irregular branching and few septate divisions.

Treatment, which should begin as soon as infection is suspected, involves physical removal of infected tissues and management of predisposing factors. Amphotericin B administered intravenously for 8 to 10 weeks is the drug of choice for zygomycoses.

The Emergence of Fungal Opportunists in AIDS Patients

Learning Outcomes

22.19 Identify several emerging fungal opportunists seen among AIDS patients.

22.20 Identify the factors that contribute to the emergence of new fungal opportunists.

Immunosuppression is not unique to AIDS patients, but because HIV systematically destroys functional immunity, AIDS patients are extremely vulnerable to opportunistic fungal infections. In otherwise healthy people, immunosuppressive episodes are transitory and result from surgery, chemotherapy, or an acute illness. With AIDS, by contrast, immune dysfunction is permanent. For this reason, once an opportunistic infection is established in an AIDS patient, it is not likely ever to be cured fully. In fact, mycoses account for most deaths associated with AIDS. *Pneumocystis jiroveci, Candida albicans, Aspergillus fumigatus,* and *Cryptococcus neoformans* are so common in HIV-positive individuals that their mycoses are part of what defines end-stage AIDS.

The emergence of new fungal opportunists results from a combination of factors. First, the number of immunocompromised individuals is increasing as a result of the spread of AIDS. Then the widespread use of antifungal drugs in this enlarging group of immunocompromised individuals selects fungi resistant to the drugs. Thus, as the immunocompromised population grows, fungi can be expected to increasingly cause illness and death. An AIDS patient's lack of immunity allows a normally superficial fungus to gain access to internal systems, with significant, even fatal, results. Over the course of the past decade, several new fungal opportunists have been identified, including *Fusarium* spp. and *Penicillium marneffei*, which are ascomycetes, and *Trichosporon beigelii,* which is a basidiomycete.

Fusarium (fū-zā´rē-ŭm) species cause respiratory distress, disseminated infections, and *fungemia* (fungi in the bloodstream). These species also produce toxins that can accumulate to dangerous levels when ingested in food. *Fusarium* spp. are resistant to most antifungal agents.

Penicillium marneffei (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm mar-nef-ē´ī) is a dimorphic, invasive fungus that causes pulmonary disease upon inhalation. It is the third most frequent illness seen in AIDS patients in Southeast Asia (behind tuberculosis and cryptococcosis).

When *Trichosporon beigelii* (trik-ō-spōr´on bā-gĕl-ē´ē) enters an AIDS patient through the lungs, the gastrointestinal tract, or catheters, it causes a drug-resistant systemic disease that is typically fatal.

To combat the threat posed by these opportunists, health care providers maintain rigorous hygiene during medical procedures. Researchers are developing new therapies that limit immunosuppression in all patients, including those with AIDS.

Superficial, Cutaneous, and Subcutaneous Mycoses

Learning Outcome

22.21 Describe the general manifestations of superficial, cutaneous, and subcutaneous mycoses.

All the mycoses we discuss in the following sections are localized at sites at or near the surface of the body. They are the most commonly reported fungal diseases. All are opportunistic infections, but unlike those we have just discussed, they can be acquired both through environmental exposure and more frequently via person-to-person contact. Most of these fungi are not life threatening, but they often cause chronic, recurring infections and diseases.

Superficial Mycoses

Learning Outcome

22.22 Compare and contrast the clinical and diagnostic features of dermatophytosis and *Malassezia* infections.

Superficial mycoses are the most common fungal infections. They are confined to the outer, dead layers of the skin, nails, or hair, all of which are composed of dead cells filled with a protein called *keratin*—the primary food of these fungi. In AIDS patients, superficial mycoses can spread to cover significant areas of skin or become systemic.

Dermatophytoses

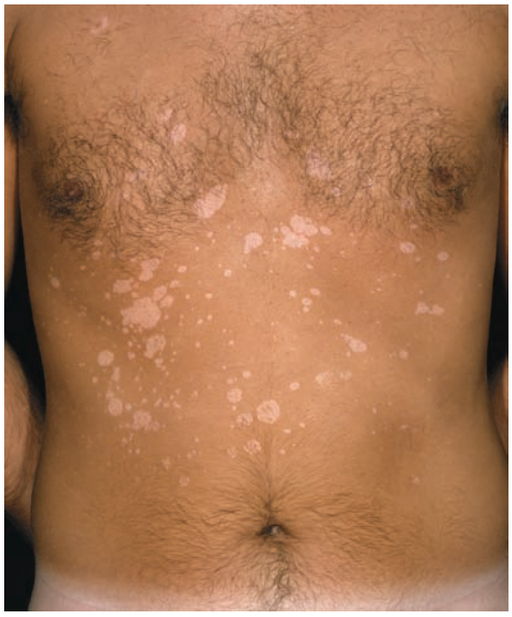
Dermatophytoses (der´mă-tō-fī-tō´sēz) are infections caused by dermatophytes, which are fungi that grow only on skin, nails, and hair. In the past, such infections were called *ringworms* because dermatophytes produce circular, scaly patches that resemble a worm lying just below the surface of the skin. Even though we know worms are not involved, the medical names for many dermatophytoses use the term *tinea* (tin´ē-a), which is Latin for "worm." Dermatophytes use keratin as a nutrient source and thus colonize only dead tissue. The fungi may provoke cell-mediated immune responses, which can damage living tissues. Dermatophytes are among the few contagious fungi; that is, fungi that spread from person to person. Spores and bits of hyphae are constantly shed from infected individuals, making recurrent infections common.

Three genera of ascomycetes are responsible for most dermatophytoses: (1) *Trichophyton* (trīk-ō-fī´ton) species, (2) *Epidermophyton floccosum* (ep´i-der-mof´i-ton flŏk´ŏ-sŭm), and (3) *Microsporum* (mī-kros´po-rŭm) species, which we discussed in the vignette at the beginning of the chapter. All three cause skin and nail infections, but *Trichophyton* species also infect hair. Rare subcutaneous infections occur in AIDS patients.

Dermatophytoses can have a variety of clinical manifestations, some of which are summarized in Table 22.3. Most such diseases are clinically distinctive and so common that they are readily recognized. KOH preparations of skin or nail scrapings

TABLE 22.3 Common Dermatophytoses

Disease	Agents	Common Signs	Source
Tinea pedis ("athlete's foot")	*Trichophyton rubrum; T. mentagrophytes* var. *interdigitale; Epidermophyton floccosum*	Red, raised lesions on and around the toes and soles of the feet; webbing between the toes is heavily infected	Human reservoirs in toe webbing; carpeting holding infected skin cells
Tinea cruris ("jock itch")	*T. rubrum; T. mentagrophytes* var. *interdigitale; E. floccosum*	Red, raised lesions on and around the groin and buttocks	Usually spreads from the feet
Tinea unguium (onychomycosis)	*T. rubrum; T. mentagrophytes* var. *interdigitale*	*Superficial white onychomycosis:* patches or pits on the nail surface *Invasive onychomycosis:* yellowing and thickening of the distal nail plate, often leading to loss of the nail	Humans
Tinea corporis	*T. rubrum; Microsporum gypseum; M. canis*	Red, raised, ringlike lesions occurring on various skin surfaces (tinea corporis on the trunk, tinea capitis on the scalp, tinea barbae of the beard)	Can spread from other body sites; can be acquired following contact with contaminated soil or animals
Tinea capitis	*M. canis; M. gypseum; T. equinum; T. verrucosum; T. tonsurans; T. violaceum; T. schoenleinii*	*Ectothrix invasion:* fungus develops arthroconidia on the outside of the hair shafts, destroying the cuticle *Endothrix invasion:* fungus develops arthroconidia inside the hair shaft without destruction *Favus:* crusts form on the scalp, with associated hair loss	Humans; can be acquired following contact with contaminated soil or animals



▲ **Figure 22.16** **Pityriasis.** The variably pigmented skin patches are caused by *Malassezia furfur.*

or hair samples reveal hyphae and arthroconidia, which confirm a diagnosis. Determination of a specific dermatophyte requires laboratory culture, but is usually unnecessary because treatment is the same for all.

Limited infections are treated with topical antifungal agents, but more widespread infections of the scalp or skin, as well as nail infections, must be treated with oral agents. Terbinafine, administered for 6 to 12 weeks, is effective in most cases. Chronic or stubborn cases are treated with griseofulvin until cured. **Clinical Case Study: Is It Athlete's Foot?** explores some of the difficulties in dealing with dermatophyte infections.

Malassezia Infections

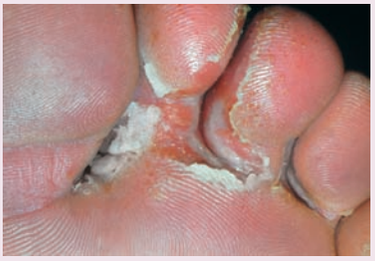
Malassezia furfur (mal-ă-sē´zē-ă fur´fur) is a dimorphic basidiomycete that is a normal member of the microbiota of the skin of humans worldwide. It feeds on the skin's oil and causes common, chronic superficial infections.

Infections with *M. furfur* result in **pityriasis** (pit-i-rī´ă-sis), characterized by depigmented or hyperpigmented patches of scaly skin resulting from fungal interference with melanin production **(Figure 22.16)**. This condition typically occurs on the trunk, shoulders, and arms, and rarely on the face and neck. KOH preparations of clinical specimens reveal masses of budding yeast and short hyphal forms that are diagnostic for *M. furfur.*

Superficial *Malassezia* infections are treated topically with solutions of antifungal imidazoles, such as ketoconazole shampoos. Alternatively, topical applications of zinc pyrithione, selenium sulfide lotions, or propylene glycol solutions can be used. Oral therapy with ketoconazole may be required to treat extensive infections or infections that do not respond to topical treatments. Relapses of *Malassezia* infections are common, and prophylactic topical treatment may be necessary. The skin takes months to regain its normal pigmentation following successful treatment of pityriasis.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

IS IT ATHLETE'S FOOT?



A 30-year-old man comes into a community clinic complaining of persistent redness, itching, and peeling skin on the soles of his feet and between his toes. He states that he works out daily and plays on several sports teams.

He concluded he has athlete's foot, but every over-the-counter antifungal agent he has tried has failed to cure his condition. He has finally come to the clinic because his toenails have begun to thicken, yellow, and detach from the nail bed. His condition is pictured.

1. Given the information here, can athlete's foot be diagnosed definitively? If not, what laboratory tests should be performed to identify the infecting organism?
2. What treatment is likely? Would the recommended treatment be different if two fungal species and not just one fungal species were present?

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Explain why many superficial fungal infections are chronic, recurring problems.

Cutaneous and Subcutaneous Mycoses

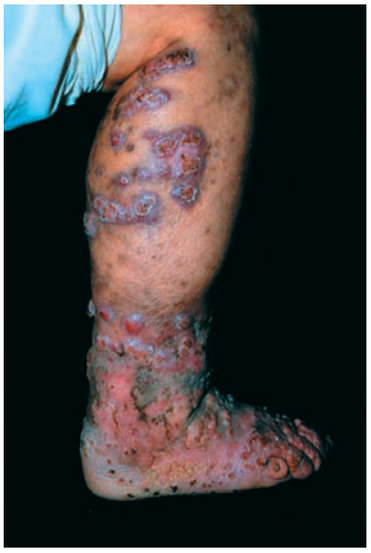
Learning Outcomes

22.23 Explain why cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses are not as common as superficial mycoses.

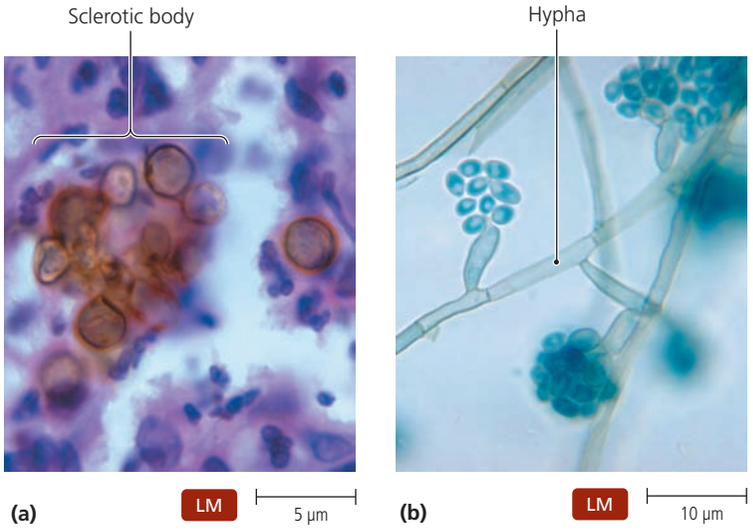
22.24 State the specific difference between chromoblastomycosis and phaeohyphomycosis.

22.25 Describe how the lesions of lymphocutaneous sporotrichosis correlate with its spread through the lymphatic system.

The fungi involved in cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses are common soil saprobes (organisms that live on dead organisms), but the diseases they produce are not as common as superficial mycoses because infection requires traumatic introduction of fungi through the dead outer layers of skin into the deeper, living tissue. Most lesions remain localized just below the skin, though infections may rarely become systemic.



◀ **Figure 22.17 A leg with extensive lesions of chromoblastomycosis.** In this case they are caused by *Fonsecaea pedrosoi*.



▲ **Figure 22.18 Microscopic differences between chromoblastomycosis and phaeohyphomycosis. (a)** Sclerotic bodies seen in chromoblastomycoses. **(b)** Hyphal forms found in tissues during phaeohyphomycosis, here caused by *Exophiala*.

Chromoblastomycosis and Phaeohyphomycosis

Chromoblastomycosis (krō´mō-blas´tō-mī-kō´sis) and **phaeohyphomycosis** (fē´ō-hī´fō-mī-kō´sis) are similar-appearing cutaneous and subcutaneous mycoses caused by dark-pigmented ascomycetes. Table 22.4 lists some ascomycetes that commonly cause these mycoses.

Initially, chromoblastomycosis uniformly presents as small, scaly, itchy, but painless lesions on the skin surface resulting from fungal growth in subcutaneous tissues near the site of inoculation. Over the course of years and decades, the lesions progressively worsen, becoming large, flat to thick, tough, and wartlike. They become tumorlike and extensive if not treated **(Figure 22.17)**. Inflammation, fibrosis, and abscess formation occur in surrounding tissues. The fungus can spread throughout the body.

Phaeohyphomycoses are more variable in presentation, involving colonization of the nasal passages and sinuses in allergy sufferers and AIDS patients or of the brains of AIDS patients. Fortunately, brain infection is the rarest form of phaeohyphomycosis and occurs only in the severely immunocompromised.

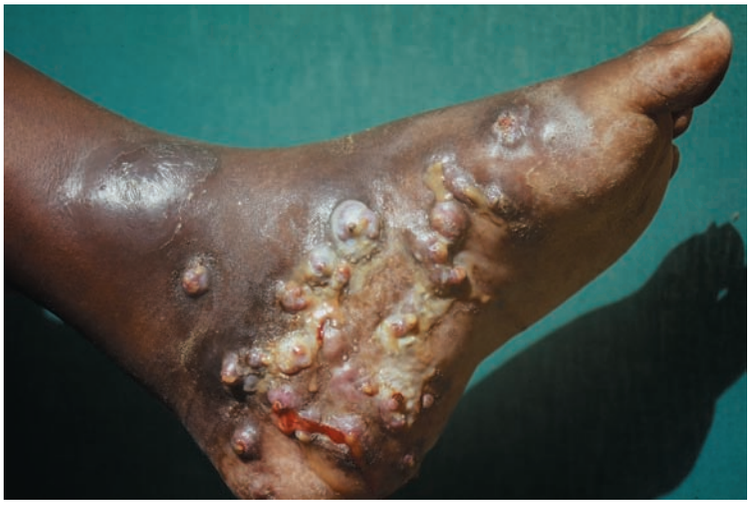
KOH preparations and GMS staining of skin scrapings, biopsy material, or cerebrospinal fluid reveal the key distinguishing feature between the two diseases: the microscopic morphology of the fungal cells within tissues. Tissue sections from chromoblastomycosis cases contain golden brown *sclerotic bodies* that are distinctive and distinguishable from budding yeast forms **(Figure 22.18a)**, whereas tissues from phaeohyphomycosis cases contain brown-pigmented hyphae **(Figure 22.18b)**. Determining the species of fungus causing these two diseases requires laboratory culture, macroscopic examination of colonies on agar, and microscopic examination of spores.

Both diseases are difficult to treat, especially in advanced cases. Some cases of phaeohyphomycosis can be treated with itraconazole, but the disease is permanently destructive to tissues. Chromoblastomycosis requires surgical removal of infected and surrounding tissues followed by antifungal therapy. Extensive lesions may require amputation. Thiabendazole and 5-fluorocytosine, given for 3 to 12 months, have been effective in some cases. The earlier treatment begins, the more likely it will be successful.

Despite the worldwide occurrence of the relevant fungi, the overall incidence of infection is relatively low. People who work daily in the soil with bare feet are at risk if they incur foot wounds. The simple act of wearing shoes would greatly reduce the number of infections.

TABLE 22.4 Some Ascomycete Genera of Cutaneous and Subcutaneous Mycoses

Chromoblastomycosis
Fonsecaea
Phialophora
Cladophialophora
Phaeohyphomycosis
Alternaria
Exophiala
Wangiella
Cladophialophora
Mycetoma
Madurella
Pseudallescheria
Exophiala
Acremonium
Sporotrichosis
Sporothrix



▲ **Figure 22.19 A mycetoma of the ankle.** Here it results from the invasion and destruction of bone and other tissues by the fungus *Madurella mycetomatis*.

Mycetomas

Fungal **mycetomas** (mī-sē-tō´măs) are tumorlike infections caused by fungi of several genera in the division Ascomycota (see Table 22.4). These fungi are distributed worldwide, but infection is most prevalent in countries near the equator. The cases that occur in the United States are almost always caused by *Pseudallescheria* (sood´al-es-kē-rē-ă) or *Exophiala* (ek-so-fi´ă-lă).

Mycetoma-producing fungi live in the soil and are introduced into humans via wounds caused by twigs, thorns, or leaves contaminated with fungi. As with chromoblastomycosis and phaeohyphomycosis, those who work barefoot in soil are most at risk, and wearing protective shoes or clothing can greatly reduce incidence.

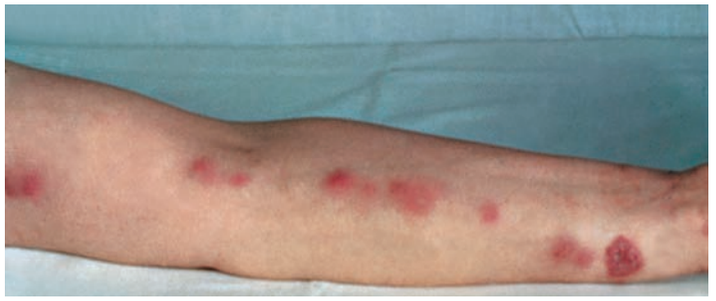
Infection begins near the site of inoculation with the formation of small, hard, subsurface nodules that slowly worsen and spread as time passes. Local swelling occurs, and ulcerated lesions begin to produce pus. Infected areas release an oily fluid containing fungal "granules" (spores and fungal elements). The fungi spread to more tissues, destroying bone and causing permanent deformity **(Figure 22.19)**.

A combination of the symptoms and microscopic demonstration of fungi in samples from the infected area is diagnostic for mycetomas. Laboratory culture of specimens produces macroscopic colonies that can be identified to species.

Treatment involves surgical removal of the mycetoma that may, in severe cases, involve amputation of an infected limb. Surgery is followed by one to three years of antifungal therapy with ketoconazole. Even combinations of surgery and antifungal agents are not always effective.

Sporotrichosis

Sporothrix schenckii (spōr´ō-thriks shen´kē-ē) is a dimorphic ascomycete that causes **sporotrichosis** (spōr´ō-tri-kō´sis), a subcutaneous infection usually limited to the arms or legs. *S. schenckii* resides in the soil and is most commonly introduced



▲ **Figure 22.20 Sporotrichosis on the arm.** The locations of these secondary, subcutaneous lesions correspond to the course of lymphatic vessels leading from sites of primary, surface lesions. *How is sporotrichosis contracted?*

Figure 22.20 *Sporotrichosis is contracted when the soilborne fungus is inoculated into the skin by thorn pricks and scratches.*

by thorn pricks or wood splinters. Avid gardeners, farmers, and artisans who work with natural plant materials have the highest incidence of sporotrichosis. Though distributed throughout the tropics and subtropics, most cases occur in Latin America, Mexico, and Africa. The disease is also common in warm, moist areas of the United States.

Sporotrichosis initially appears as painless, nodular lesions that form around the site of inoculation. With time, these lesions produce a pus-filled discharge, but they remain localized and do not spread. If the fungus enters the lymphatic system from a primary lesion, it gives rise to secondary lesions on the skin surface along the course of lymphatic vessels **(Figure 22.20)**. The fungus remains restricted to subcutaneous tissues and does not enter the blood.

Microscopic observation of pus or biopsy tissue stained with GMS can reveal budding yeast forms in severe infections, but often the fungus is present at a low density, making direct examination of clinical samples a difficult method of diagnosis. The patient's history and clinical signs plus the observation of the dimorphic nature of *S. schenckii* in laboratory culture are considered diagnostic for sporotrichosis.

Cutaneous lesions can be treated successfully with topical applications of saturated potassium iodide for several months. Itraconazole and terbinafine are also useful treatments. Prevention requires the wearing of gloves, long clothing, and shoes to prevent inoculation.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Make a dichotomous key to distinguish among all the fungal mycoses covered in the previous sections.

Fungal Intoxications and Allergies

Learning Outcomes

22.26 Compare and contrast mycotoxicosis, mycetismus, and fungal allergies.

22.27 Define *mycotoxin*.

Some fungi produce toxins or cause allergies. Fungal toxins, called **mycotoxins** (mī´kō-tok-sinz), are low-molecular-weight

metabolites that can harm humans and animals that ingest them, causing *toxicosis* (poisoning). **Mycotoxicosis** (mī´kō-tok-si-kō-sis) is caused by eating mycotoxins; the fungus itself is not present. **Mycetismus** (mī´sē-tiz´mŭs) is mushroom poisoning resulting from eating the fungus. Fungal *allergens* are usually proteins or glycoproteins that elicit hypersensitivity reactions in sensitive people who contact them.

Mycotoxicoses

Learning Outcome

22.28 Identify the most common group of mycotoxins.

Fungi produce mycotoxins during their normal metabolic activities. People most commonly consume mycotoxins in grains or vegetables that have become contaminated with fungi. Some mycotoxins can also be ingested in milk from a cow that has ingested toxin-contaminated feed. Up to 25% of the world's food supply is contaminated with mycotoxins, but only 20 of the 300 or so known toxins are ever present at dangerous levels. Long-term ingestion of mycotoxins can cause liver and kidney damage, gastrointestinal or gynecological disturbances, or cancers; each mycotoxin produces a specific clinical manifestation.

Aflatoxins (af´lă-tok´sinz) produced by the ascomycete *Aspergillus* are the best-known mycotoxins. Aflatoxins are fatal to many vertebrates and are carcinogenic at low levels when consumed continually. Aflatoxins cause liver damage and liver cancer throughout the world, but *aflatoxicosis* is most prevalent in the tropics, where mycotoxins are more common because of subsistence farming, poor food-storage conditions, and warm, moist conditions that foster the growth of *Aspergillus* in harvested foods.

Some mycotoxins are considered useful. Among them are ergot alkaloids, produced by some strains of another ascomycete, *Claviceps purpurea* (klav´i-seps poor-poo´rē-ă). For example, *ergometrine* is used to stimulate labor contractions and is used to constrict the mother's blood vessels after birth (when she is at risk of bleeding excessively). Another mycotoxin, *ergotamine,* is used to treat migraine headaches.

Mushroom Poisoning (Mycetismus)

Learning Outcome

22.29 Describe at least two types of mushroom poisoning.

Most mushrooms (the spore-bearing structures of certain basidiomycetes) are not toxic, though some produce extremely dangerous poisons capable of causing neurological dysfunction or hallucinations, organ damage, or even death. *Mushroom poisoning (mycetismus)* typically occurs when untrained individuals pick and eat wild mushrooms. Young children are especially attracted to colorful mushrooms, which can be poisonous. Poisonous mushrooms are commonly called *toadstools.*

The deadliest mushroom toxin is produced by the "death cap" mushroom, *Amanita phalloides* (am-ă-nī´tă fal-ōy´dēz; **Figure 22.21**). The death cap contains two related polypeptide toxins: *phalloidin,* which irreversibly binds actin within cells, disrupting cell structure, and *alpha-amanitin,* which inhibits mRNA synthesis. Both toxins cause liver damage.

◀ Figure 22.21 ***Amanita phalloides*, the "death cap" mushroom.**

Other deadly mushrooms include the false morel, *Gyromitra esculenta* (gī-rō-mē´tră es-kū-len´tă), which causes bloody diarrhea, convulsions, and death within two days after ingestion, and *Cortinarius gentilis* (kōr´ti-nar-ē-us jen´til-is), which causes excessive thirst, nausea, and kidney failure between three days and three weeks after ingestion.

Psilocybe cubensis (sil-ō-sī´bē kū-ben´sis) produces hallucinogenic *psilocybin,* and *Amanita muscaria* (mus-ka´rē-ă) produces two hallucinogenic toxins—*ibotenic acid* and *muscimol.* These toxins may also cause convulsions in children.

Treatment involves inducing vomiting followed by oral administration of activated charcoal to absorb toxins. Severe mushroom poisoning may necessitate a liver transplant.

Allergies to Fungi

Learning Outcome

22.30 Identify the types of hypersensitivity reactions that fungal allergens produce.

Fungal allergens are common and can be found both indoors and out. Over 80 genera of fungi have been demonstrated to trigger fungal allergies. Epidemiologists estimate that 3% to 10% of humans worldwide are affected. However, determining the specific cause of allergies is often difficult—the presence of spores in an environment does not necessarily mean that they are responsible for allergies. Because skin sensitivity testing (discussed in Chapter 18) is not performed on most people, the true impact of fungal allergens remains undetermined, even though they continue to be blamed for a variety of illnesses (see **Highlight: Does "Killer Mold" Exist?**).

Fungal spores dispersed in the air are common allergens. The concentrations of such spores may peak in autumn or spring, although they are present year-round. Fungal allergens typically cause type I hypersensitivities in which immunoglobulin E binds the allergen, triggering responses such as asthma, eczema, hay fever, and watery eyes and nose.

Less frequently, type III hypersensitivities result from chronic inhalation of particular fungal allergens. In these cases, allergens that have penetrated deep into the lungs encounter

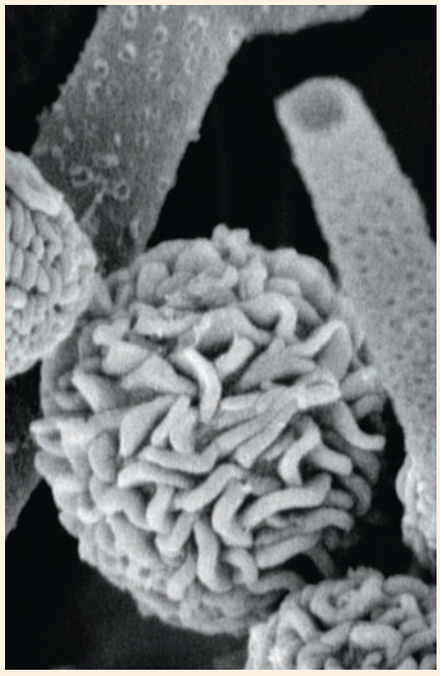
HIGHLIGHT

DOES "KILLER MOLD" EXIST?

In 1994, eight infants in Cleveland were hospitalized with life-threatening pulmonary hemorrhage. One child died. Each of the infants had lived in water-damaged buildings, and initial epidemiological investigations pointed at the black mold *Stachybotrys chartarum* as the agent responsible. The cases were widely reported in the media, and *Stachybotrys* became known as "killer black mold." Since then, the mold has been blamed for everything from "sick building syndrome" to asthma to other occurrences of pulmonary hemorrhage in infants.

A subsequent review of the Cleveland cases by the CDC, however, found serious shortcomings in the initial investigations. Significantly, *Stachybotrys* could not be recovered from any of the infants, and in most of the cases the level of mold in the water-damaged homes was below detection limits or statistically no different from levels in homes without water damage. In the numerous studies that have been conducted on *Stachybotrys* since 1994, none has established a direct causal relationship between the mold and infant deaths. Nor have researchers found any compelling relationship between *Stachybotrys* and any increased prevalence of asthma or other respiratory illnesses. Within the scientific community, "killer mold" remains an unproven moniker.

In approaching mold contamination of any kind, individuals should exercise their common sense. Some people are naturally sensitive to mold—*Stachybotrys* and others. Immunocompromised or allergy-prone individuals in particular may be at increased risk of experiencing adverse reactions to mold. Decisions regarding the more drastic methods of mold removal, such as burning down your house, should be cautiously and reflectively considered.



Stachybotrys chartarum.

complementary antibodies and form immune complexes in the alveoli that lead to inflammation, fibrosis, and in some cases death. Type III fungal hypersensitivities are associated with certain occupations, such as farming, in which workers are constantly exposed to fungal spores in moldy vegetation.

CRITICAL THINKING

Despite the fact that fungi are everywhere, fungal allergies are still not as common as allergies to pollen or dust mites. Propose an explanation to explain this observation.

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

An Overview of Medical Mycology (pp. 633–635)

1. **Medical mycology** is the study of the diagnosis, management, and prevention of **mycoses** (fungal diseases). Only a few fungi cause serious diseases in humans. The actual incidence of most mycoses is unknown because they are not reportable.
2. Most fungi are not considered contagious agents because they do not spread by human-to-human contact. The few exceptions include the **dermatophytes** and species of *Candida* and *Pneumocystis*.
3. True fungal pathogens are capable of actively invading the tissues of normal, healthy people. Opportunists infect only weakened patients.
4. Clinically, mycoses include infections, toxicoses, and hypersensitivity reactions. Infections can be superficial, cutaneous, subcutaneous, or systemic mycoses.
5. Diagnosis of mycoses usually correlates signs and symptoms with microscopic examination of tissues or laboratory cultures for identifying unique morphological features. Biochemical and immunological tests exist for some fungi.
6. Amphotericin B kills most fungi and can be used to treat most fungal infections, but because it is somewhat toxic to humans, long-term treatment with fungistatic drugs is often used instead.

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Pathogenic Fungi (pp. 636–640)

1. **Systemic mycoses**—fungal infections that spread throughout the body—are caused by one of four pathogenic, **dimorphic** fungi: *Paracoccidioides, Histoplasma, Blastomyces,* or *Coccidioides*. Whereas each is geographically limited, they all cause similar pulmonary diseases and can spread beyond the lungs.
2. *Histoplasma capsulatum,* which causes **histoplasmosis,** is associated primarily with bat and bird droppings in soil in the Ohio River valley. Generally, histoplasmosis is an occupationally acquired disease, but recreational exposure does occur. *H. capsulatum* can be carried from the lungs inside macrophages.
3. **Blastomycosis** is found in the eastern United States and is caused by *Blastomyces dermatitidis,* which normally lives in soil rich in organic material. *B. dermatitidis* almost always spreads beyond the lungs to produce cutaneous lesions.
4. *Coccidioides immitis,* which is limited to deserts, causes **coccidioidomycosis,** which is common in AIDS patients. Contaminated dust is a major source of transmission.
5. *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis* is found in Brazil and some other regions of South and Central America. It causes **paracoccidioidomycosis.** Following a pulmonary phase, the fungus spreads and creates permanently disfiguring lesions on the face and neck.
6. Pathogenic fungi are diagnosed by morphological analysis and by demonstration of dimorphism. Serological tests are also available. If treated promptly, they can be controlled.
7. Opportunistic infections are difficult to diagnose and treat successfully. AIDS patients require both primary treatment to curb infections and maintenance therapy to keep fungal pathogens and opportunists under control.

Systemic Mycoses Caused by Opportunistic Fungi (pp. 641–647)

1. *Pneumocystis jiroveci* causes ***Pneumocystis* pneumonia (PCP),** a leading cause of death in AIDS patients in the United States. The organism shows a blend of characteristics similar to those of both protozoans and fungi. PCP is debilitating because the fungus multiplies rapidly.
2. **Candidiasis,** caused by various species of *Candida,* is one of the most important pathogens of AIDS patients, but it can also cause infections in relatively healthy individuals. Disease ranges from superficial infections to systemic candidiasis.
3. **Aspergillosis** is a group of diseases caused by *Aspergillus* species, including noninvasive fungal balls in the lungs and invasive diseases that can be fatal. *Aspergillus* is very common in the environment, from which it is inhaled.
4. *Cryptococcus neoformans,* common in bird droppings and soil, causes **cryptococcoses,** which most frequently manifest as cryptococcal meningitis in AIDS patients. Other clinical manifestations are possible.
5. **Zygomycoses,** caused by *Mucor* and various other genera of zygomycetes, can involve the brain, resulting in death. Less severe infections also occur.
6. Diseases caused by *Pneumocystis, Candida, Aspergillus* spp., and *Cryptococcus* are defining illnesses of AIDS patients.
7. *Fusarium, Penicillium,* and *Trichosporon* are emerging opportunists. Factors contributing to their emergence include AIDS and the selective pressure of antifungal agents, which select for resistant strains of fungi.

Superficial, Cutaneous, and Subcutaneous Mycoses (pp. 648–651)

1. Superficial, cutaneous, and subcutaneous mycoses are caused by opportunistic fungi.
2. **Dermatophytoses** (tineas, ringworms) encompass superficial skin, nail, and hair infections caused by a variety of fungi transmitted from individual to individual. Three genera predominate: *Trichophyton, Microsporum,* and *Epidermophyton.*
3. *Malassezia furfur* is a fungus that infects the skin. Clinical manifestations include **pityriasis,** in which fungal growth disrupts melanin production to produce discolored patches.
4. Most superficial infections are diagnosed by simple clinical observation of symptoms; all can be treated successfully. Rarely are such infections severe or invasive, but they have a tendency to recur.
5. **Chromoblastomycosis** and **phaeohyphomycosis** are similar diseases resulting from infection with dark-pigmented fungi. Both are acquired by traumatic introduction of fungi into the skin. Lesions

may be extensive and can spread internally. The two diseases are distinguished by differences in fungal morphology in tissue sections.

6. **Mycetomas** are invasive and destructive infections following introduction of soil fungi through scrapes or pricks from vegetation. Cutaneous lesions can spread to adjacent bone and can be permanently damaging. Surgery or amputation is required to remove infected tissues.
7. **Sporotrichosis** also is acquired from inoculation of soil fungi by thorn pricks. Lymphatic dispersal of the organisms results in multiple lesions along the course of lymphatic vessels.

Fungal Intoxications and Allergies (pp. 651–653)

1. Fungal metabolism may result in **mycotoxins,** which if eaten can cause neurological and physiological damage and lead to death. **Mycetismus** results from eating mycotoxic mushrooms. Other foods contaminated with mycotoxins cause **mycotoxicosis.**
2. **Aflatoxins,** produced by *Aspergillus,* are well-known mycotoxins.
3. Fungal allergens (spores or other fungal elements) cause type I hypersensitivities or, more rarely, type III hypersensitivities.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except for Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. A fungus that can infect both healthy and immunocompromised patients is called _____.
   a. a true pathogen
   b. an opportunistic pathogen
   c. a commensal organism
   d. a symbiotic organism
2. Of the following fungi, which is usually transmitted from person to person?
   a. *Blastomyces dermatitidis*
   b. *Coccidioides immitis*
   c. *Tricophyton rubrum*
   d. *Aspergillus fumigatus*
3. Which of the following is not used to identify true fungal pathogens?
   a. growth at 25°C and 37°C to show dimorphism
   b. GMS staining of infected tissues
   c. serological testing
   d. clinical symptoms alone
4. Because amphotericin B is extremely toxic to humans, most clinicians prescribe it only for _____.
   a. dermatophyte infections
   b. *Malassezia* infections
   c. systemic infections
   d. mushroom poisoning
5. Ringworm is caused by a _____.
   a. helminth
   b. dermatophyte
   c. dimorphic fungus
   d. commensal fungus
6. Which of the following is considered a classical opportunistic fungus?
   a. *Blastomyces*
   b. *Histoplasma*
   c. *Fonsecaea*
   d. *Aspergillus*
7. Subcutaneous infections tend to be acquired through _____.
   a. inhalation and remain localized
   b. inhalation and become systemic
   c. trauma and remain localized
   d. trauma and become systemic
8. The term *dermatophyte* refers to _____.
   a. pathogenicity
   b. where a fungus grows
   c. method of spread
   d. pigmentation
9. Which of the following subcutaneous mycoses may exhibit respiratory and cerebral forms?
   a. chromoblastomycosis
   b. mycetoma
   c. phaeohyphomycosis
   d. sporotrichosis
10. Which of the following systemic mycoses is endemic to the deserts of the southwestern United States?
    a. blastomycosis
    b. coccidioidomycosis
    c. histoplasmosis
    d. paracoccidioidomycosis
11. A spherule stage is seen in humans infected with what organism?
    a. *Blastomyces dermatitidis*
    b. *Coccidioides immitis*
    c. *Histoplasma capsulatum*
    d. *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*
12. Of the following fungal diseases, which is found in almost all terminal AIDS patients?
    a. chromoblastomycosis
    b. blastomycosis
    c. candidiasis
    d. mycetoma
13. The number of mycoses worldwide is rising, in part, because _____.
    a. the number of fungi in the environment is rising
    b. the number of immunocompromised individuals in the population is rising
    c. fungi have become more pathogenic
    d. fungi are developing a new tendency to spread between people
14. Fungal allergens generally stimulate what type of reaction?
    a. type I hypersensitivity
    b. type II hypersensitivity
    c. type III hypersensitivity
    d. type IV hypersensitivity

15. A pathogenic feature of *Cryptococcus neoformans* is _____.
    a. production of destructive enzymes
    b. production of a capsule
    c. infection of immune cells
    d. variation of surface antigens to avoid immune system recognition
16. The most common manifestation of *Cryptococcus* infection in AIDS patients is _____.
    a. blindness
    b. cutaneous infection
    c. meningitis
    d. pneumonia
17. Bread mold can cause which disease?
    a. aspergillosis
    b. dermatophytosis
    c. mycetoma
    d. zygomycosis
18. Mycetismus is caused by _____.
    a. inhalation of fungal allergens
    b. ingestion of mushrooms
    c. traumatic inoculation of fungi beneath the skin
    d. close contact with infected individuals
19. One of the more poisonous mycotoxins is produced by _____.
    a. *Amanita phalloides*
    b. *Amanita muscaria*
    c. *Psilocybe cubensis*
    d. *Claviceps purpurea*
20. Which of the following predisposing factors would leave a patient with the greatest long-term risk of acquiring a fungal infection?
    a. invasive medical procedures
    b. AIDS
    c. chronic illness such as diabetes
    d. short-term treatment with antibacterial agents

Modified True/False

Indicate which of the following are true and which are false. Rewrite false statements to make them true by changing the nontaxonomic italicized word(s).

1. _____ Fungi are generally *not transmitted* from person to person.
2. _____ On the whole, fungal infections are relatively *easy* to treat.
3. _____ *Dermatophytes* are always contracted from the environment.
4. _____ Chromoblastomycosis and phaeohyphomycosis are both caused by *dark-pigmented* ascomycetes.
5. _____ *Sporotrichosis* is always caused by introduction of fungi beneath the skin by a thorn prick.
6. _____ Coccidioidomycosis does not occur normally outside the *Western Hemisphere.*
7. _____ Treatment of individuals with broad-spectrum antibacterial agents is a predisposing factor for *opportunistic* fungal infections.
8. _____ *Candida albicans* generally causes localized opportunistic infections but can become systemic, particularly in the *immunocompetent.*
9. _____ Relapse of fungal diseases is common in *AIDS patients.*
10. _____ *Almost everyone has* allergies to fungal elements.

Fill in the Blanks

1. Dimorphic fungi exist as _____ forms in the environment and as _____ forms in their hosts.
2. The true fungal pathogens are _____, _____, _____, and _____.
3. Many antifungal agents target the compound _____ in fungal cytoplasmic membranes.
4. _____ are tumor-like fungal infections.
5. Sporotrichosis is caused by the traumatic introduction of _____ _____ into the skin (give genus and species).
6. Which systemic mycosis is associated with bird droppings? _____ _____ (give genus and species).
7. The five most common agents of opportunistic fungal infections are _____, _____ , _____, _____, and _____.
8. Thrush is caused by _____ (genus name).
9. *Pneumocystis* was once classified as a _____, but now it is classified as a _____.
10. Ergot alkaloids are produced by some strains of the genus _____.

Matching

Match each of the following diseases with the manner(s) in which fungi enter the body. Answers can be used more than once.

A. Inhalation
B. Contact
C. Trauma
D. Ingestion

_____ Aspergillosis
_____ Candidiasis
_____ Chromoblastomycosis
_____ Coccidioidomycosis
_____ Cryptococcosis
_____ Dermatophytosis
_____ Histoplasmosis
_____ Hypersensitivity reactions
_____ Mushroom poisoning
_____ Mycetoma
_____ Sporotrichosis

Short Answer

1. Amphotericin B is considered the "gold standard" of antifungal agents. Technically, its mode of action works against most fungal infections. Why, then, isn't it prescribed for most fungal infections?
2. Discuss why it is difficult in many cases to determine the source of superficial fungal infections (i.e., from other humans, animals, or the environment).
3. Given that superficial fungal infections are only on the surface, why is it necessary to even try to identify the source of infection?
4. AIDS patients usually die of bacterial or fungal infections. Why do so many fungal infections appear in these individuals, and why are mycoses severe while fungi, for the most part, are benign residents of the environment?
5. How does mycotoxicosis differ from mycetismus?

Visualize It!

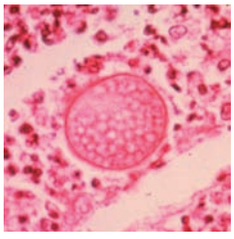
1. Color each map below to show the general area where each disease is endemic.

Blastomycosis

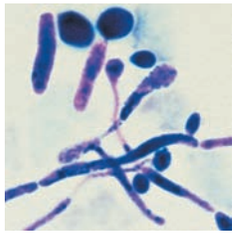
Coccidioidomycosis

Histoplasmosis

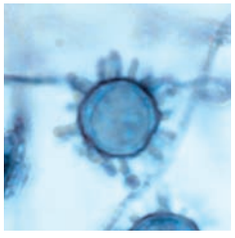
2. Identify these fungal genera.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Critical Thinking

1. Correlate the observation that the majority of fungal infections are caused by opportunists with the fact that most infections are acquired from the environment. How does this make the control and diagnosis of fungal infections difficult?
2. The four pathogenic fungi (*Blastomyces*, *Coccidioides*, *Histoplasma*, and *Paracoccidioides*) are all dimorphic. Antifungal agents, like all antimicrobials, are generally designed to target something specific about the organism to avoid harming human tissues. Propose how you could use the idea of dimorphism to produce new antifungal agents.
3. What actions could be taken to limit the contamination of foods with fungal toxins? Would these actions differ depending on where in the world the food is grown? Explain.
4. Onychomycoses are nail infections that can be caused by several species of fungi. Explain why these mycoses are so difficult to treat and why it is generally necessary to treat patients with oral antifungal agents for long periods of time.
5. What factors contribute to the pathogenicity of *Cryptococcus* infections?
6. Clinically, all fungi that cause subcutaneous mycoses produce lesions on the skin around the site of inoculation. What are some of the things you would look for when attempting to distinguish among them?
7. Given the various predisposing factors that make humans susceptible to opportunistic infections, how can health care providers curtail the rising incidence of such infections?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes systemic mycoses. For a sample concept map, see p. 93.
Or, complete this concept map online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

5-fluorocytosine
Amphotericin B (4)
Aspergillus species
Blastomyces dermatitidis
Candida albicans
Coccidioides immitis
Cryptococcal meningitis
Cryptococcus neoformans
Every body system
Fluconazole
Histoplasma capsulatum
Inhalation
Opportunistic fungi
Other organs
Paracoccidioides brasiliensis
Pathogenic fungi
Pneumocystis jiroveci
Pneumocystis pneumonia
Pulmonary disease
Respiratory infection
Trimethoprim/Sulfanilamide

23 Parasitic Protozoa, Helminths, and Arthropod Vectors

The next time you sit down to a nice meal containing **pork**, it's probably a good idea to make sure the meat is properly cooked—if not well done. One reason is that the muscles of pigs can be infected with **cysts** that are the immature stage of *Taenia solium*, a parasitic tapeworm commonly called the pork **tapeworm**. The cysts remain viable in undercooked pork, and in the human small intestine they develop into mature tapeworms, which can grow as long as 800 cm (more than 26 feet). Cysts of a similar tapeworm, *Taenia saginata* (the beef tapeworm), also develop in the **intestines** of humans who eat insufficiently cooked infected beef.

This chapter provides a brief survey of **parasitology**, the study of eukaryotic parasites—in particular, various protozoa and **helminths** (tapeworms, other flatworms called flukes, and roundworms). Because **parasitologists** also study arthropod vectors (including mites, ticks, flies, mosquitoes, and fleas), which are important in the transmission of a variety of infectious organisms, we consider **vectors** in the final section of the chapter.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Suckers and hooklets attach *Taenia* to its human host's intestinal wall. The body of the helminth is composed of segments, giving the worm its common name—tapeworm.

Parasites live, feed and grow in or on another organism at the expense of their host's metabolism. Sometimes no obvious damage is done to the host, but in other cases parasitism can lead to a host's death. Many protozoan and helminthic parasites exist worldwide, especially in the tropics and subtropics, and particularly among people living in rural, undeveloped, or overcrowded places. Parasitic diseases are also emerging as serious threats among developed nations in nontropical regions. This rise is due to many factors but can most generally be attributed to human migration, poor regulation and inadequate inspection of food and water supplies, and a changing world climate that alters parasites' transmission patterns, particularly those transmitted by vectors. As a whole, parasites infect billions of humans each year, making parasitic infections medically, socially, and economically important.

Parasitic infections often involve several hosts—a **definitive host** in which mature (often sexual) forms of the parasite are present and usually reproducing and, with many parasites, one or more **intermediate hosts** in which immature parasites undergo various stages of maturation. In general, parasites infect human hosts in one of three major ways: by being ingested, through vector-borne transmission, or via direct contact and penetration of the skin or mucous membranes **(Figure 23.1)**.

We begin our consideration of parasitic infections by discussing the protozoan parasites of humans.

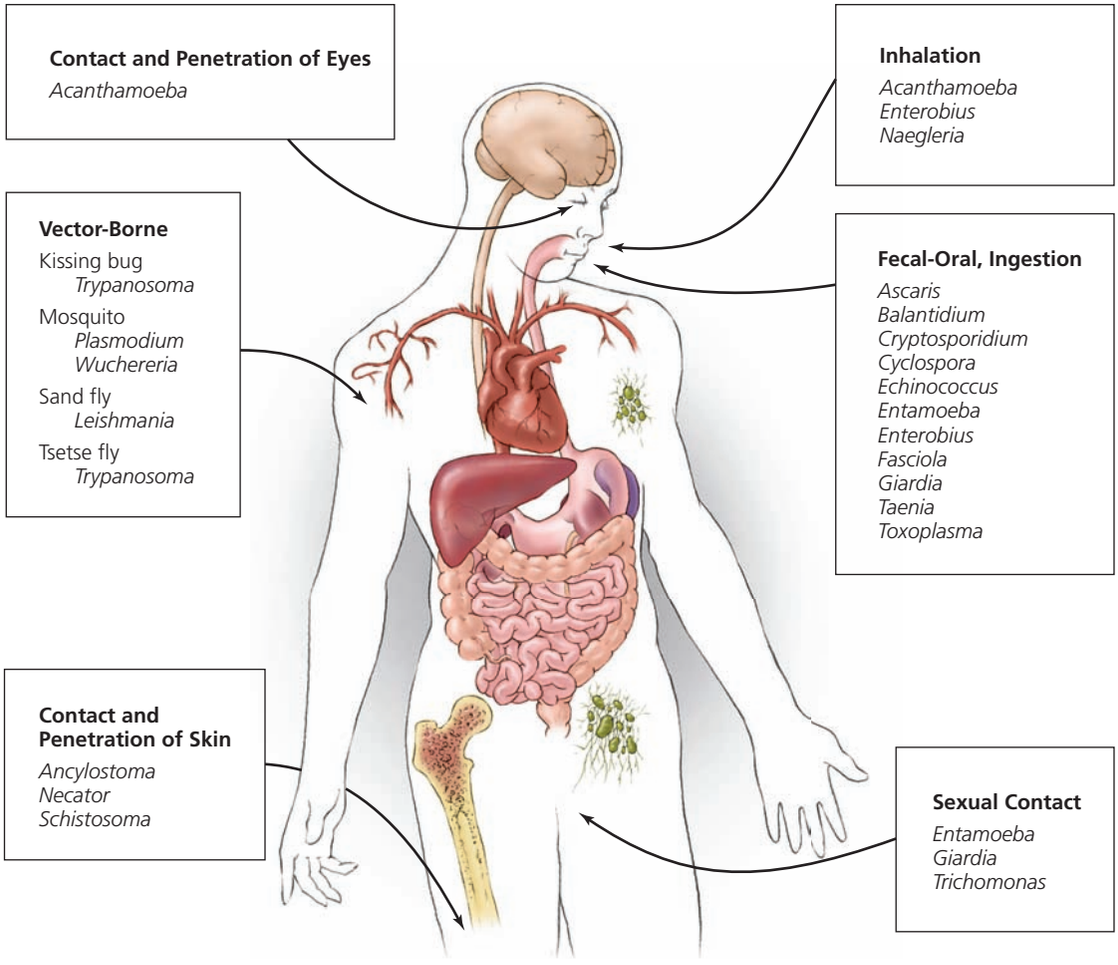
Protozoan Parasites of Humans

Learning Outcome

23.1 Describe the epidemiology of the more important protozoan parasites.

Protozoa are unicellular eukaryotes found in a wide range of habitats. Although the majority of protozoa are free living and do not adversely affect humans or animals, some are parasites that can cause debilitating and deadly diseases.

Among the many protozoa that enter the body via ingestion, most have two morphological forms: A feeding and reproducing stage called a *trophozoite*, which lives within the host, and a dormant *cyst* stage, which can survive in the environment and is infective to new hosts. Once ingested by a host, cysts undergo **excystment** and develop into new trophozoites,



▲ **Figure 23.1 The major routes by which humans acquire parasitic infections.** They are the fecal-oral route, the vector-borne route, and direct contact. Occasionally parasites are inhaled. Listed genera are discussed in the chapter.

which resume feeding and reproducing. In most cases, trophozoites undergo **encystment** before leaving the host in the feces, becoming available to infect other hosts.

This chapter presents the protozoa in four groups, an approach that is different from a taxonomic presentation (see Chapter 12). The scheme presented in this chapter reflects the largely obsolete but clinically useful classical groupings for these parasites, which were based primarily on mode of locomotion: the ciliates, the amoebae, the flagellates, and the typically nonmotile apicomplexans.

Ciliates

Learning Outcome

23.2 Describe the characteristics of *Balantidium coli*.

Ciliates (sil´ē-āts) are protozoa that in their trophozoite stages use cilia for locomotion, for acquiring food, or both. *Balantidium coli* (bal-an-tid´ē-ŭm kō´lē), a relatively large (50 µm × 100 µm) ciliate commonly found in animal intestinal tracts, is the only ciliate known to cause disease in humans. Pigs are its most common host, but it is also found in rodents and nonhuman primates. Humans become infected by consuming food or water contaminated with feces containing cysts.

Following ingestion, excystment occurs in the small intestine, releasing trophozoites that use their cilia to attach to (and then burrow through) the mucosal epithelium lining the intestine. Eventually, some trophozoites undergo encystment, and both cysts and trophozoites are shed in feces. Trophozoites die outside the body, but cysts are hardy and infective.

In healthy adults, *B. coli* infection is generally asymptomatic. For those in poor health, however, **balantidiasis** (bal´an-ti-dī´ă-sis) occurs. Persistent diarrhea, abdominal pain, and weight loss characterize the disease. Severe infections produce *dysentery* (frequent and painful diarrhea, often containing blood and mucus) and possibly ulceration and bleeding from the intestinal mucosa. *Balantidium* infection is rarely fatal.

Paradoxically, cysts are few and usually cannot be recovered from stool (fecal) samples, although they are the infective stage. Noninfective trophozoites, by contrast, can be detected, and their presence is diagnostic for the disease. Fresh stool samples must be used for diagnostic purposes because the trophozoites do not survive long outside the intestinal tract. The treatment of choice for balantidiasis is the antibacterial drug tetracycline, which does not kill *B. coli* directly but instead modifies the normal microbiota of the digestive tract such that the small intestine is unsuitable for infection by the ciliate.

Prevention of balantidiasis relies on good personal hygiene, especially for those who live around or work with pigs. Additionally, efficient water sanitation is necessary to kill cysts or remove them from drinking water.

Amoebae

Learning Outcome

23.3 Compare and contrast three amoebae that cause disease in humans.

Amoebae (ă-mē´bē, singular: *amoeba*, ă-mē´bă) are protozoa that have no truly defined shape and that move and acquire food through the use of pseudopods. Although amoebae are abundant throughout the world in freshwater, seawater, and moist soil, few cause disease. The most important amoebic pathogen is *Entamoeba*.

Entamoeba

Entamoeba histolytica (ent-ă-mē´bă his-tō-li´ti-kă) is carried asymptomatically in the digestive tracts of roughly 10% of the world's human population. When disease develops, it can be fatal, causing a worldwide annual mortality of over 100,000. Carriers predominate in less developed countries, especially in rural areas, where human feces are used to fertilize food crops and where water sanitation is deficient. Travelers, immigrants, and institutionalized populations are at greatest risk within industrialized nations. No animal reservoirs exist, but human carriers are sufficiently numerous to ensure continued transmission of the parasite.

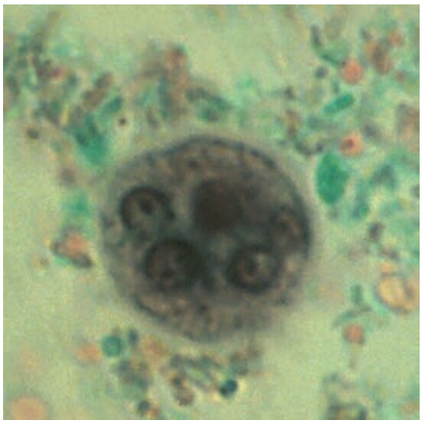
Infection occurs most commonly through the drinking of water contaminated with feces that contain cysts. The parasite can also be ingested following fecal contamination of hands or food or during oral-anal intercourse.

Excystment in the small intestine releases trophozoites that migrate to the large intestine and multiply. The organism uses pseudopods to attach to the intestinal mucosa, where it feeds and reproduces via binary fission. Both trophozoites and cysts are shed into the environment in feces, but the trophozoites die quickly, leaving infective cysts.

Depending on the health of the host and the virulence of the particular infecting strain, three types of **amebiasis** (ă-mē-bī´ă-sis) can result. The least severe form, *luminal amebiasis*, occurs in otherwise healthy individuals. Infections are asymptomatic; trophozoites remain in the lumen of the intestine, where they do little tissue damage. Invasive *amebic dysentery* is a more serious and more common form of infection characterized by severe diarrhea, colitis (inflammation of the colon), appendicitis, and ulceration of the intestinal mucosa. Bloody, mucus-containing stools and pain are characteristic of amebic dysentery, which affects about 500 million people worldwide. In the most serious disease, *invasive extraintestinal amebiasis*, trophozoites invade the peritoneal cavity and the bloodstream, which carries them throughout the body. Lesions of dead cells formed by the trophozoites occur most commonly in the liver but can also be found in the lungs, spleen, kidneys, and brain. Amebic dysentery and invasive extraintestinal amebiasis can be fatal, especially without adequate treatment.

Diagnosis is based on the identification of microscopic cysts or trophozoites **(Figure 23.2)** recovered from either fresh stool specimens or intestinal biopsies. Microscopic analysis is necessary to distinguish amebic dysentery from dysentery caused by bacteria. Serological identification using antibodies to detect antigens can aid in distinguishing *E. histolytica* from nonpathogenic amoebae.

For asymptomatic infections, an antibacterial aminoglycoside called paromomycin is effective. Physicians prescribe



▲ **Figure 23.2** **Cyst of *Entamoeba histolytica*.**

iodoquinol for symptomatic amebiasis. They may also prescribe other antibacterial agents at the same time to prevent secondary bacterial infections. The coupling of oral rehydration therapy with drug treatment is recommended and is vital in severe cases.

Several preventive measures interrupt the transmission of *Entamoeba*. Discontinuing the use of human wastes as fertilizer reduces the transmission of amebiasis. Normal methods of treating wastewater and drinking water are helpful but not completely effective because the infectious cysts are hardy. Effective processing of water requires extra chemical treatment, filtration, or extensive boiling to eliminate all cysts. Good personal hygiene can eliminate transmission via intimate contact.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Why are gastrointestinal diseases such as balantidiasis and amebic dysentery generally more severe in those who are already in poor health?

Acanthamoeba and *Naegleria*

Two other amoebae—*Acanthamoeba* (ă-kan-thă-mē´bă) and *Naegleria* (nā-glē´rē-ă)—cause rare and usually fatal infections of the brain. These amoebae are common free-living inhabitants of warm lakes, ponds, puddles, ditches, mud, and moist soil. They are also found in artificial water systems such as swimming pools, air-conditioning units, humidifiers, and dialysis units. Contact lens wearers who use tap water (as opposed to sterile saline solution) to wash and store their lenses create an additional focal point for infection. *Naegleria* may assume a flagellated form in addition to its amoeboid and cyst stages.

Acanthamoeba usually enters a host through cuts or scrapes on the skin, through the conjunctiva via abrasions from contact lenses or trauma, or through inhalation of contaminated water while swimming. *Acanthamoeba* trophozoites when inoculated into the eye can invade and perforate the eye, resulting in *keratitis*. Damage can be extensive enough to require corneal replacement. The more common disease caused by infection with *Acanthamoeba* is **amebic encephalitis** (inflammation of the brain), characterized by headache, altered mental state, and neurological deficit. Symptoms progressively worsen over a period of weeks until the patient dies.

Infection with *Naegleria* occurs when swimmers inhale water contaminated with trophozoites, which then invade the nasal mucosa and replicate. The trophozoites migrate to the brain, where they cause an **amebic meningoencephalitis** (inflammation of the brain and its membranes). Severe headache, fever, vomiting, and neurological tissue destruction lead to hemorrhage, coma, and usually death within three to seven days after the onset of symptoms.

Physicians diagnose *Acanthamoeba* and *Naegleria* infections by detecting trophozoites in corneal scrapings, cerebrospinal fluid, or biopsy material. Keratitis can be treated topically with anti-inflammatory drugs. Physicians treat *Acanthamoeba* encephalitis with pentamidine and *Naegleria* infection with amphotericin B, but by the time they have diagnosed the disease, it is almost always too late to begin effective treatment.

As both these amoebae are environmentally hardy, control and prevention of infection can be difficult. Swimmers and bathers should avoid waterways in which the organisms are known to be endemic. Nonsterile solutions should never be used to clean or store contact lenses. Swimming pools should be properly chlorinated and tested periodically to ensure their safety. Air-conditioning systems, dialysis units, and other devices that routinely use water should also be cleaned thoroughly and regularly to prevent amoebae from becoming resident.

Flagellates

Learning Outcomes

23.4 Contrast the life cycles of *Trypanosoma cruzi* and *Trypanosoma brucei*.

23.5 Describe the life cycle of *Leishmania* and the clinical forms of leishmaniasis.

23.6 Compare *Giardia* infections to those caused by *Entamoeba* and *Balantidium*.

23.7 Identify the risk factors and preventive measures for *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection.

In 1832, Charles Darwin (1809–1882) explored South America as one of the naturalists sailing aboard HMS *Beagle*. His explorations were to impact him profoundly—intellectually and medically. During the voyage he began to formulate his ideas concerning the evolution of species, and he was bitten by a bloodsucking bug that may have infected him with *Trypanosoma cruzi*, a flagellated protozoan that afflicted him for the rest of his life. The following sections explore this and other parasitic flagellates that infect humans.

Flagellates (flaj´e-lāts) are protozoa that possess at least one long flagellum, which is used for movement. The number and arrangement of the flagella are important features for determining the species of flagellate present within a host.

Here we will examine some parasitic kinetoplastids *(Trypanosoma* and *Leishmania)*, *Giardia* (a diplomonad), and *Trichomonas* (a parabasalid). We begin our discussion of the more important flagellate parasites with *Trypanosoma cruzi*.

Trypanosoma cruzi

Trypanosoma cruzi (tri-pan´ō-sō-mă kroo´zē) causes **Chagas' disease.** This disease, named for Brazilian doctor Carlos Chagas (1879–1934), is endemic throughout Central and South America. Localized outbreaks have also occurred in California and Texas. Opossums and armadillos are the primary reservoirs for *T. cruzi*, but most mammals, including humans, can harbor the organism. There are an estimated 8 million infected people worldwide. Transmission occurs through the bite of true bugs—a type of insect—in the genus *Triatoma* (trī-ă-tō´mă). These blood-sucking bugs feed preferentially from blood vessels in the lips, which gives the bugs their common name—kissing bugs.

Figure 23.3 illustrates the basic life cycle of *T. cruzi*. Within the hindgut of the kissing bug, a stage called *epimastigotes*[1] develop into infective *trypomastigotes* 1, which are shed in the bug's feces while the bug feeds on a mammalian host 2. When the host scratches the itchy wounds created by the bug bites, the trypomastigotes in the feces enter the nearby wounds 3. The trypomastigotes are then carried in the bloodstream throughout the body and penetrate certain cells, especially macrophages and heart muscle cells, where they transform into small, nonflagellated forms called *amastigotes* 4. The multiplication of these intracellular amastigotes via binary fission eventually causes the cells to rupture 5, releasing amastigotes that either infect other cells 6 or revert to trypomastigotes that circulate in the bloodstream 7. The circulating trypomastigotes are subsequently ingested by a kissing bug when it takes a blood meal 8. Within the midgut of the kissing bug, binary fission of the trypomastigotes produces epimastigotes 9, completing the cycle.

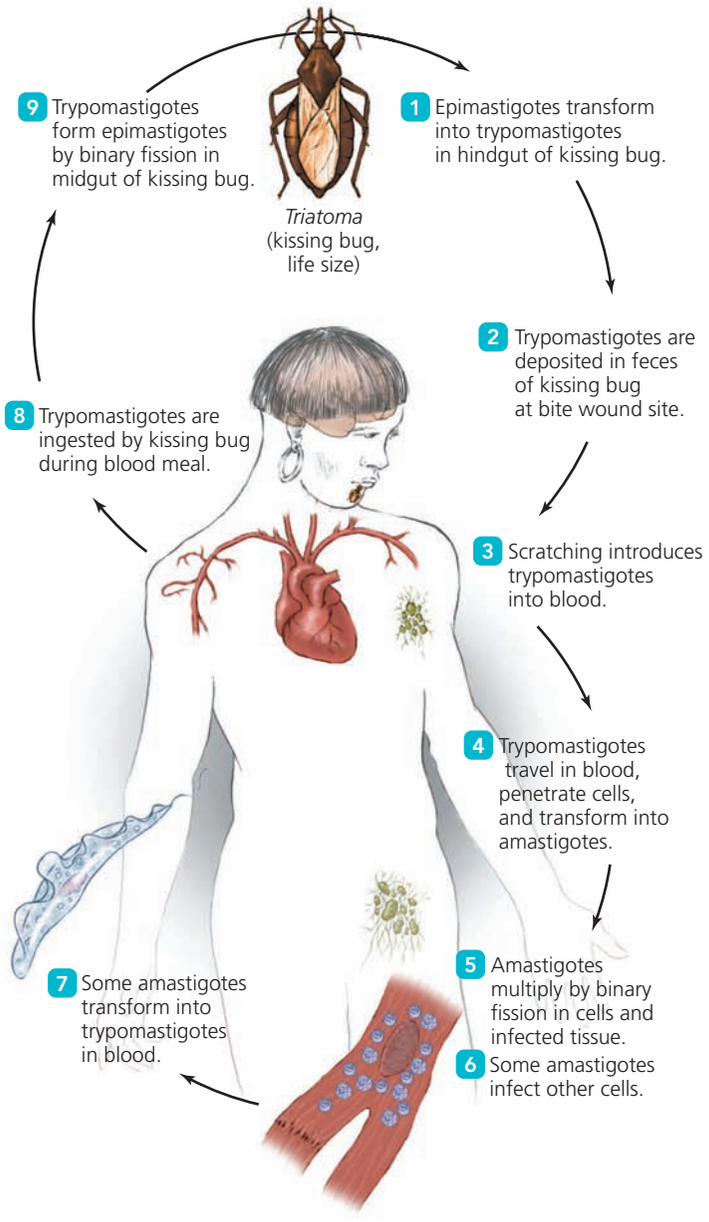
Chagas' disease progresses over the course of several months through the following four stages:

1. An acute stage characterized by *chagomas,* which are swellings at the sites of the bites
2. A generalized stage characterized by fever, swollen lymph nodes, myocarditis (inflammation of the heart muscle), and enlargement of the spleen, esophagus, and colon
3. A chronic stage, which is asymptomatic and can last for years
4. A symptomatic stage characterized primarily by congestive heart failure following the formation of *pseudocysts,* which are clusters of amastigotes in heart muscle tissue

Trypansoma-induced heart disease is one of the leading causes of death in Latin America.

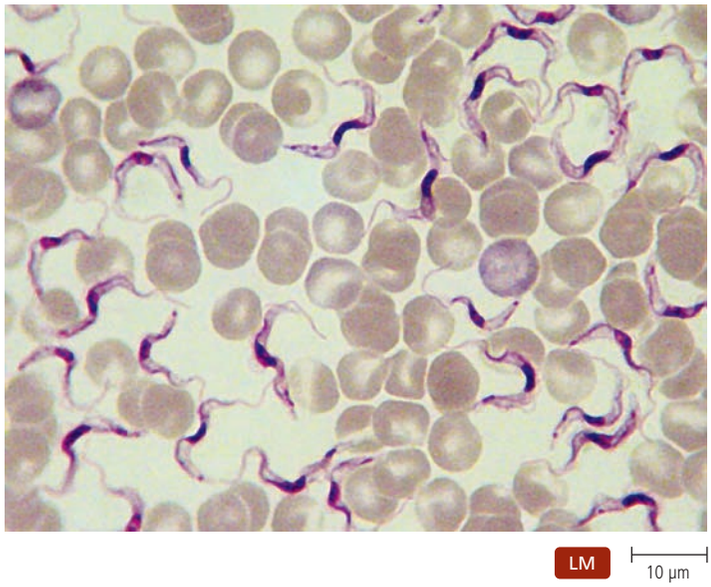
Microscopic identification of trypomastigotes or their antigens in blood, lymph, spinal fluid, or a tissue biopsy is diagnostic for *T. cruzi* **(Figure 23.4)**. Another simple and practical diagnostic method is *xenodiagnosis*. In this procedure, uninfected kissing bugs are allowed to feed on a person suspected of having a *T. cruzi* infection. Four weeks later, the bugs are dissected. The presence of parasites within the hindgut of the bug indicates the person is infected.

In its earliest stages, Chagas' disease can be treated with nifurtimox or benznidazole; late stages cannot be treated. Prevention of Chagas' disease involves replacing thatch and mud building materials, which provide homes for the bugs, with concrete and brick. The use of insecticides, both personally and in the home, and sleeping under insecticide-impregnated netting can prevent insect feeding. No vaccines exist for Chagas' disease.



▲ **Figure 23.3** **The life cycle of *Trypanosoma cruzi*.** *Triatoma*, the vector, is shown life size.

[1]From Greek *epi*, meaning "on," and *mastix*, meaning "whip." The flagellum of an epimastigote originates on the middle of the cell.



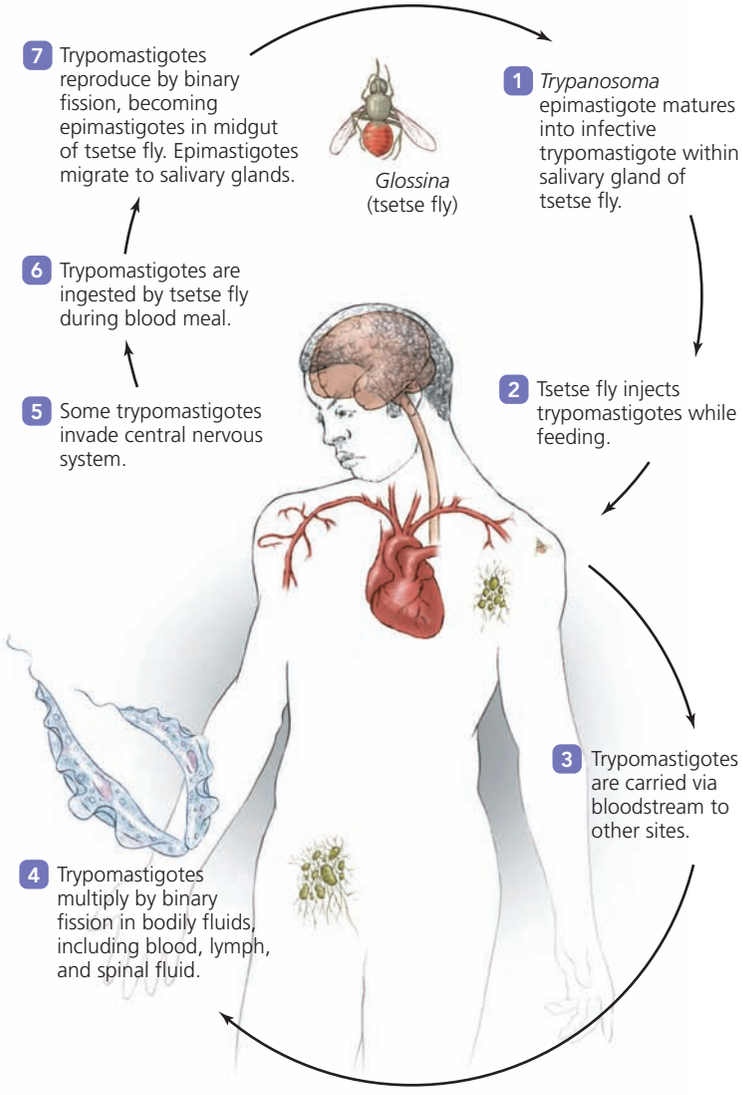
▲ **Figure 23.4** **Mature trypomastigotes of *T. cruzi* among erythrocytes.**

Trypanosoma brucei

Trypanosoma brucei (brūs´ē) causes **African sleeping sickness,** which afflicts more than 10,000 people annually in equatorial and subequatorial savanna, agricultural, and riverine areas of Africa. Its geographical range depends on the range of its insect vector, the tsetse (tset´sē) fly (*Glossina*, glo-sī´nă). There are two variants of *Trypanosoma brucei—T. brucei gambiense* (gam´bē-en´sē), which occurs primarily in western Africa, and *T. brucei rhodesiense* (rō-dē´zē-en´sē) in eastern and southern Africa.

Whereas cattle and sheep are the reservoirs for *T. brucei gambiense,* several species of wild animals apparently serve as reservoirs for *T. brucei rhodesiense*. Although humans usually become infected when bitten by tsetse flies previously infected while feeding on infected animals, flies may transmit both variants of *T. brucei* between humans.

The life cycle of *T. brucei* proceeds as follows **(Figure 23.5)**: Within the salivary gland of a male or female tsetse fly, a form of the parasite called an epimastigote matures into an infective trypomastigote 1. During the course of taking a blood meal from an animal or human, tsetse flies inject trypomastigotes into the wounds 2. Trypomastigotes then travel throughout the lymphatic and circulatory systems to other sites 3, where they reproduce by binary fission 4. Eventually, some trypomastigotes enter the central nervous system 5, while others continue to circulate in the blood, where they can be picked up by feeding tsetse flies 6. In the midgut of the fly, trypomastigotes multiply by binary fission, producing immature epimastigotes that migrate to the salivary glands 7, where they mature and become trypomastigotes that are infective to new hosts when the fly feeds once again.



▲ **Figure 23.5** **The life cycle of *Trypanosoma brucei.*** *Glossina* is shown life-size. *By which mode of transmission do trypanosomes infect humans?*

Figure 23.5 *Trypanosomes are transmitted to humans by arthropod vectors.*

The life cycle of *T. brucei* differs from that of *T. cruzi* in several ways:

- *T. brucei* matures in the salivary gland of the tsetse fly, whereas *T. cruzi* matures in the hindgut of the kissing bug.
- Tsetse flies directly inject *T. brucei.* In contrast, the host rubs *T. cruzi* found in a kissing bug's feces into a wound.
- *T. brucei* remains outside its hosts' cells, whereas amastigotes of *T. cruzi* live inside host cells.

Untreated African sleeping sickness progresses through three clinical stages. First, the wound created at the site of each fly bite becomes a lesion containing dead tissue and rapidly dividing parasites. Next, the presence of parasites in the blood triggers fever, swelling of lymph nodes, and headaches. Finally,

invasion of the central nervous system results in meningoencephalitis, characterized by headache, extreme drowsiness, abnormal neurological function, and coma. The patient will die perhaps within six months of onset of disease. Symptoms may take years to develop with *T. brucei rhodesiense* but begin within three to six months with *T. brucei gambiense*.

All *T. brucei* infections are characterized by cyclical waves of *parasitemia* (parasites in the blood) that occur roughly every 7 to 10 days. Although the presence of parasites in the blood is in itself serious, these cycles are particularly dangerous because with each wave of replication, *T. brucei* changes its surface glycoproteins and thus its surface antigens. The result is that by the time the host's immune system has produced antibodies against a given set of glycoproteins, the parasite has already produced a new set, continually leaving the host's immune system one step behind the parasite. Once infected, a patient is incapable of clearing the infection and never becomes immune.

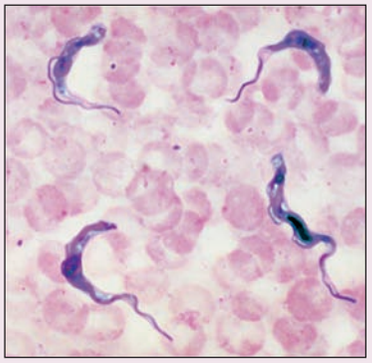
Microscopic observation of trypomastigotes in blood, lymph, spinal fluid, or a tissue biopsy is diagnostic for both strains of *T. brucei*. Trypomastigotes are long and thin with a single long flagellum running along the cell and extending past the posterior end. Trypomastigotes of *T. brucei* are less curled than those of *T. cruzi*.

African sleeping sickness is one of the few human diseases that is 100% fatal if not treated. Treatment must begin as soon as possible after infection. However, immediate treatment is rare because poor health care infrastructure in endemic areas often prevents identification of the disease at its earliest stages. Pentamidine or suramin is used to treat the early stages. Melarsoprol is used when the disease progresses to the central nervous system because this drug crosses the blood-brain barrier. Eflornithine, a newer and more expensive drug, is remarkably effective against *T. brucei gambiense* (but not against *T. brucei rhodesiense*). Private pharmaceutical companies guarantee availability of this drug through the World Health Organization to those who need it.

Clearing of tsetse fly habitats and broad application of insecticides have reduced the occurrence of African sleeping sickness in some localities. However, large-scale spraying of insecticides is impractical and expensive and may have disastrous long-term environmental consequences. Some countries release up to a million sterile male tsetse flies a week, outnumbering wild flies 10 to 1. Most female flies mate with sterile males and produce no offspring—some scientists call this birth control for tsetse flies. Some regions have eradicated tsetse flies using this method. Personal insecticide use is preferable, as is the use of insecticide-impregnated netting and long, loose-fitting clothing, which can prevent insect feeding. No vaccine currently exists for African sleeping sickness.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A PROTOZOAN MYSTERY



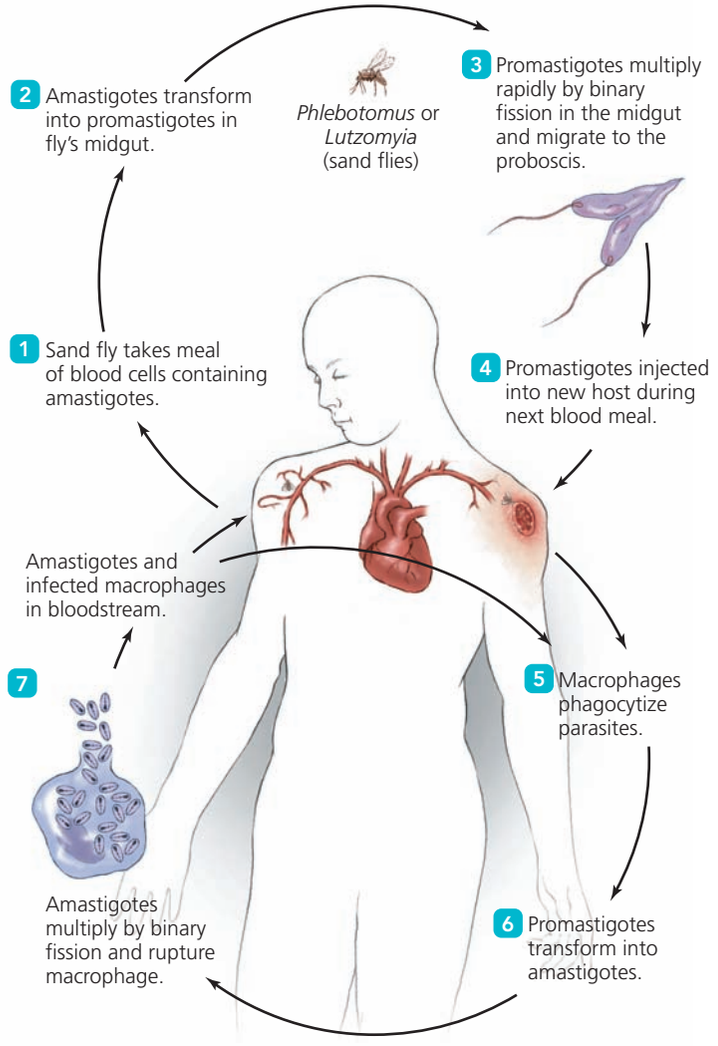
A 20-year-old student was admitted to his college's student health center with headaches and fever shortly after beginning the fall semester. He had spent his summer working with an international aid organization in Nigeria and had returned to the United States only a week earlier. Gross examination revealed a diffuse rash and numerous insect bites. The young man had spent most of his summer outdoors in rural areas, had taken no prophylactic antimalarial medication, and had spent some time on African game reserves working with the families of local guides. The patient could not specifically remember receiving any of the bite wounds on his body, and he did not always use insect repellent in the field. The young man was admitted to the local hospital, where intermittent fever, nausea, and headache continued. Initial blood smears proved negative for malaria.

1. What are some possible protozoan diseases the patient could have contracted in Africa?
2. Can this disease be identified from the symptoms alone?
3. Based on the pictured blood smear, what would you conclude about the cause of the disease?
4. What would the treatment be if the patient had tested positive for malaria?
5. What treatment would you now recommend?
6. What prevention would you have suggested to this individual?
7. Is there a local threat of anyone else contracting this disease from the young man?

Leishmania

Leishmania (lēsh-man´ē-ă) is a genus of kinetoplastid protozoa commonly hosted by wild and domestic dogs and small rodents. *Leishmania* is endemic in parts of the tropics and subtropics, including Central and South America, central and southern Asia, Africa, Europe, and the Middle East. **Leishmaniasis** (lēsh´mă-nī´ă-sis) is a **zoonosis**—a disease of animals transmitted to humans. Twenty-one of the 30 known species of *Leishmania* can infect humans.

Leishmania has two developmental stages: *amastigotes*, which lack flagella and multiply within a mammalian host's macrophages and monocytes (types of white blood cells), and *promastigotes*, each of which has a single anterior flagellum and develops extracellularly within a vector's gut. In the life cycle

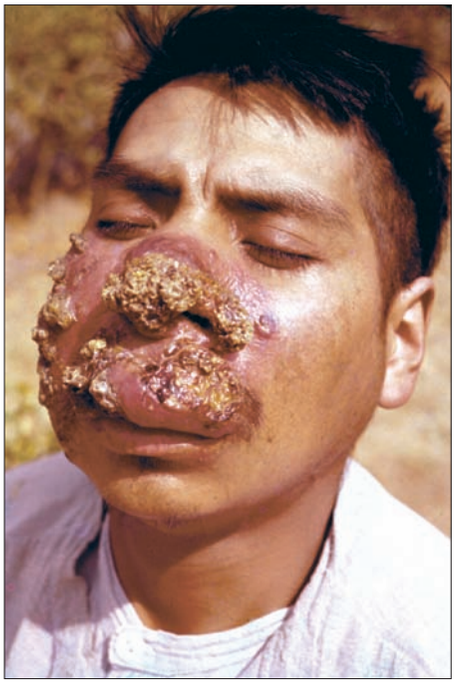


▲ **Figure 23.6** **The life cycle of *Leishmania*.** Sand fly is shown life-size. *What is the effect of amastigote replication on the host's immune system?*

Figure 23.6 *The loss of macrophages severely inhibits the host's immune response.*

of *Leishmania* **(Figure 23.6)**, a sand fly of the genera *Phlebotomus* (fle-bot´ō-mŭs) or *Lutzomyia* (lūts-ŏm´yē-a) ingests white blood cells containing amastigotes during a blood meal 1. The amastigotes are released from the phagocytes in the fly's midgut, where they transform into promastigotes 2. Rapidly dividing promastigotes fill the fly's digestive tract and migrate to the proboscis 3 so that each time the fly feeds, it injects promastigotes into a new host 4. Macrophages near the bite site phagocytize the promastigotes 5, which then transform into amastigotes 6. The amastigotes reproduce via binary fission until the macrophage ruptures, releasing amastigotes that circulate in the bloodstream and/or infect other macrophages 7, within which they can be ingested by another sand fly.

The clinical manifestations of leishmaniasis depend on the species of *Leishmania* and the immune response of the infected host. Upon initial infection, macrophages become activated but not sufficiently to kill the intracellular parasites.



▲ **Figure 23.7** **Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis.** The large skin lesions are permanently disfiguring.

The macrophages stimulate inflammatory responses that continue to be propagated by the infection of new macrophages. Depletion of macrophage numbers due to the reproduction of amastigotes decreases the efficiency of the immune response. The severity of the resulting immune dysfunction depends on the overall number of macrophages infected. Of the more than 1.5 million cases of leishmaniasis reported each year, over 45,000 are fatal.

Three clinical forms of leishmaniasis are commonly observed. *Cutaneous leishmaniasis* involves large painless skin ulcers that form around the bite wounds. Such lesions often become secondarily infected with bacteria. Scars remain when the lesions heal. *Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis* results when skin lesions enlarge to encompass the mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, or soft palate. Damage is severe and permanently disfiguring **(Figure 23.7)**. Neither of these forms of leishmaniasis is fatal. However, *visceral leishmaniasis* (also known as *kala-azar*) is fatal in 95% of untreated cases. In this disease, macrophages spread the parasite to the liver, spleen, bone marrow, and lymph nodes. Inflammation, fever, weight loss, and anemia increase in severity as the disease progresses. Visceral leishmaniasis is becoming increasingly problematic as an opportunistic infection among AIDS patients.

Microscopic identification of amastigotes in samples from cutaneous lesions, the spleen, or bone marrow is diagnostic of *Leishmania* infection. Immunoassays using antibodies to detect antigen can be used to confirm the diagnosis and to identify the strain. Molecular techniques such as PCR are needed to determine the species.

Most cases of leishmaniasis heal without treatment (though scars may remain) and confer immunity upon the recovered

patient. At one time, lesions were purposefully encouraged on the buttocks of small children to induce immunity and prevent lesions from leaving more visible scars. Treatment, which is required for more serious infections and for visceral leishmaniasis, generally involves administering paromomycin, sodium stibogluconate, or meglumine antimonate. Pentamidine has been used with some success to treat resistant strains of *Leishmania*.

Prevention is essentially limited to reducing exposure by controlling reservoir host and sand fly populations. For example, rodent nesting sites and burrows can be destroyed around human habitations to reduce contact with potentially infected populations. In some areas, infected dogs are destroyed. Spraying insecticide around homes can reduce the number of sand flies. Personal use of insect repellents, protective clothing, and netting further limits exposure. Scientists are testing a possible vaccine for leishmaniasis.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Given the regions of the world where *Leishmania* and HIV are endemic, would you expect the incidence of *Leishmania* to increase or decrease in the next decade? Explain your answer.

Giardia

Giardia intestinalis (jē-ar´dē-ă in-tes´ti-năl´is; previously called *G. lamblia*) is the causative agent of **giardiasis** (jē-ar-dī´ă-sis), one of the more common waterborne gastrointestinal diseases in the United States. *Giardia* lives in the intestinal tracts of animals and humans worldwide. The organism is very hardy and can also be found in water, in soil, on food, and on surfaces that have been contaminated with feces. The organism can survive for months in the environment because of the protective outer shell of its cyst.

Infection usually results from the ingestion of cysts in contaminated drinking water or accidental ingestion during swimming. Hikers, campers, and their pets are at particular risk because infected wild animals shed *Giardia* into mountain streams. Because beavers are common zoonotic sources of *Giardia*, giardiasis is sometimes referred to as "beaver fever." Even if humans avoid drinking stream water, they usually don't think twice about letting their dogs drink it. Unfortunately, it is often only a matter of time before the dog passes the protozoan to its owner. Alternatively, eating unwashed raw fruits or vegetables that have been contaminated by feces can lead to infection, as can contact with feces during sex. Giardiasis outbreaks in day care facilities are usually the result of children putting contaminated toys or eating utensils into their mouths.

Giardia has a life cycle similar to that of *Entamoeba*. Following ingestion, each cyst is triggered by acid in the stomach to release a trophozoite into the small intestine that begins multiplying via binary fission. Trophozoites either remain free in the lumen of the small intestine or attach to the intestinal mucosa via a ventral adhesive disk; they do not invade the intestinal wall. As trophozoites pass into the colon, encystment occurs. Cysts are immediately infective upon release, leading to a significant incidence of person-to-person and self-to-self transmission. Cysts survive and remain infective for several months.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Giardia intestinalis

Taxonomy: Nomenclature is in flux; one possibility, used in this book: domain Eukarya, kingdom Diplomonadida

Other names: Formerly called *Giardia lamblia*

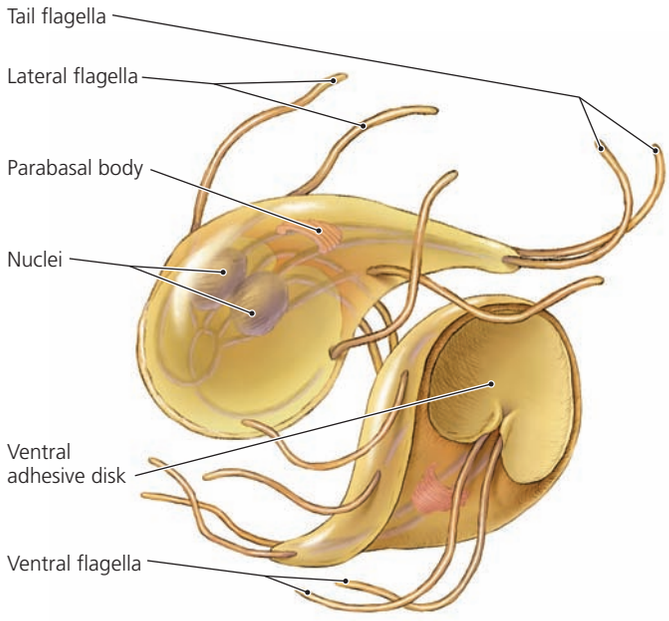
Morphology: Single-celled protozoan with four pairs of flagella and a ventral adhesive disk

Virulence factors: Adhesive disk, resistant cyst

Diseases caused: Giardiasis (form of diarrhea)

Treatment for disease: Metronidazole, oral rehydration, and electrolyte replacement

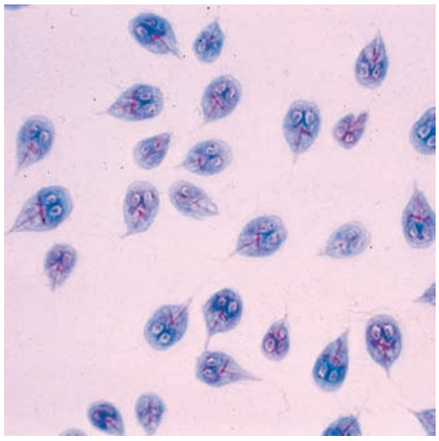
Prevention of disease: Sterilize water either chemically or via filtration (boiling generally not sufficient because of cysts); good personal hygiene to prevent consumption of cysts



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Giardiasis can range from an asymptomatic infection to significant gastrointestinal disease. Signs and symptoms, when they occur, include severe watery diarrhea, abdominal pain, bloating, nausea, vomiting, ineffective absorption of nutrients, and low-grade fever. Stools are foul smelling, usually with the "rotten-egg" smell of hydrogen sulfide. Incubation lasts roughly one to two weeks, and symptoms resolve after one to four weeks in normal, healthy adults. In extreme cases, the attachment of parasites to the intestinal mucosa causes superficial tissue damage, and fluid loss becomes life threatening. Chronic giardiasis can occur, often among animals.

Diagnosis of giardiasis, which involves direct microscopic examination of stool specimens, is based on the observation of



▲ **Figure 23.8** **Trophozoites of *Giardia intestinalis*.** Two nuclei make this diplomonad resemble a face.

flat, pear-shaped trophozoites that resemble a face when viewed from below **(Figure 23.8)**. In addition to the "face," which results from the pair of nuclei that resemble eyes, four pairs of flagella extending from the ventral surface may also be visible. Clinicians may need to examine several stool samples, as the parasites are shed only intermittently.

Tinidazole is the drug of choice for treatment of giardiasis, but this drug is not approved for use in the United States. Physicians in the United States usually prescribe metronidazole. If diarrhea is not present, treatment is often waived. Oral rehydration therapy may be required for severe cases of giardiasis or to treat very young children regardless of the severity of infection.

To prevent infection in regions where *Giardia* is endemic, filtering water is necessary. When hiking, neither humans nor their pets should drink unfiltered stream or river water. Most camping and hiking stores sell portable water filtration kits, making it unnecessary to carry bottled water. Filtered water should be used for cooking and cleaning eating utensils. In day care facilities, scrupulous hygiene practices and the separation of feeding and diaper-changing areas are essential to preventing transmission. Recovering patients should be extremely vigilant with their personal hygiene to avoid transmitting *Giardia* to family members and should avoid swimming for several weeks after recovery to ensure they do not shed parasites into the water.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How does the visually distinctive appearance of *Giardia* trophozoites improve the success of medical treatment of giardiasis as compared to that for amoebic infections?

Trichomonas

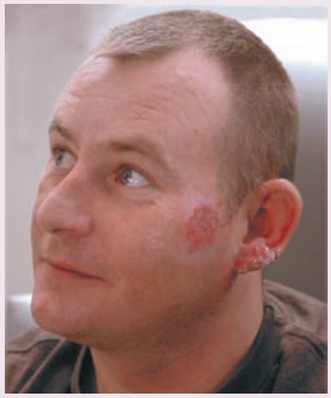
Trichomonas vaginalis (trik-ō-mō´nas va-jin-al´is) is globally distributed and is the most common protozoan causing disease in people of industrialized nations. The parasite lives on the vulvas and in the vaginas of women and in the urethras and prostates of men. This obligate parasite, which is incapable of surviving long outside a human host, is transmitted almost exclusively via sex. *T. vaginalis* occurs most frequently in people with a preexisting sexually transmitted disease, such as chlamydial infection, and in people with multiple sex partners.

In women, infection results in **vaginosis** (vaj-i-nō´sis), which is accompanied by a purulent (pus-filled) odorous discharge, vaginal and cervical lesions, abdominal pain, painful urination, and painful intercourse. Since inflammation is not typically involved, it is "vaginosis" rather than "vaginitis." Trophozoites feed on vaginal tissue, leading to erosion of the epithelium. *T. vaginalis* infection may cause inflammation of the urethra or bladder of men, but more typically men are asymptomatic.

Microscopic observation of actively motile trophozoites in vaginal and urethral secretions is diagnostic. The trophozoites are flat and possess five flagella and a sail-like undulating membrane **(Figure 23.9)**. An immunofluorescent assay can be performed when infection is suspected and microscopy is too insensitive. Patients and all their sexual partners must be

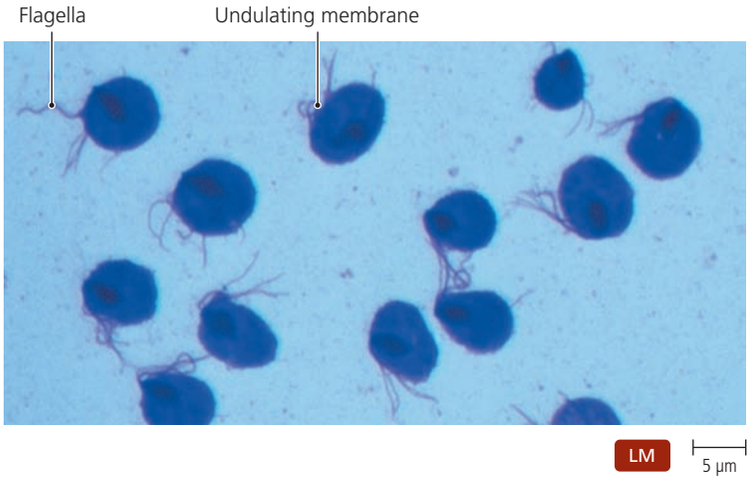
CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A SICK SOLDIER

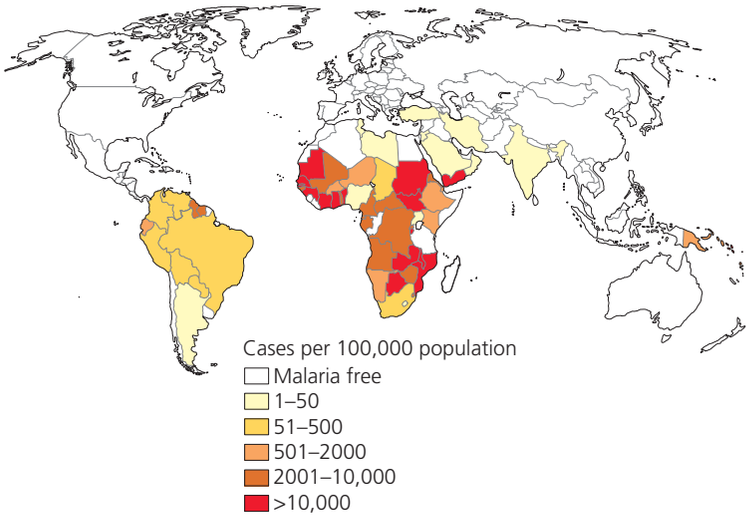


A 20-year-old soldier serving in Iraq reports to his medic and complains of several large painless sores on his head and face. Some of the ulcers have healed, leaving scars. A sample taken from a lesion and examined microscopically shows the presence of flagellated protozoa.

1. Can a diagnosis be made from this information? If so, what is the diagnosis?
2. What treatment should the medic order?
3. How did the soldier become infected?
4. The soldier asks how he can prevent this disease in the future. How should the medic respond?
5. The soldier is a strong, healthy 20-year-old with a fully functioning immune system. Why was his body not able to sufficiently fight off the parasite?



▲ **Figure 23.9 Trophozoites of *Trichomonas vaginalis*.** Five anterior flagella, one associated with an undulating membrane, characterize this parabasalid.



▲ **Figure 23.10 The reported geographical distribution and incidence of malaria.** The disease may be returning to areas from which it was once eradicated, including Europe and the United States.

treated to prevent reinfection. The nitroimidazole drugs are effective against *Trichomonas*, though some resistant strains exist. Prevention involves abstinence, mutual monogamy, or consistent and correct condom usage.

Apicomplexans

Learning Outcomes

23.8 Describe the life cycle of *Plasmodium* and relate malarial symptoms to stages in the life cycle.

23.9 Describe the clinical manifestations of *Toxoplasma gondii* infections.

23.10 Compare and contrast the intestinal diseases caused by *Cryptosporidium* and *Cyclospora*.

Apicomplexans (ap-i-kom-plek´sănz) are alveolate protozoa whose infective forms are characterized by an ornate complex of organelles at their apical ends, which gives the group its name. They have also been called *sporozoa* because during their life cycles they assume nonmotile, sporelike shapes, but this term is not accurate because the term *spores* correctly refers to reproductive structures of multicellular plants and fungi. All apicomplexans are parasites of animals, and all have complicated life cycles involving at least two types of hosts. A major feature of apicomplexan life cycles is *schizogony*—a form of asexual reproduction in which multinucleate *schizonts* form before the cells divide (see Figure 12.3).

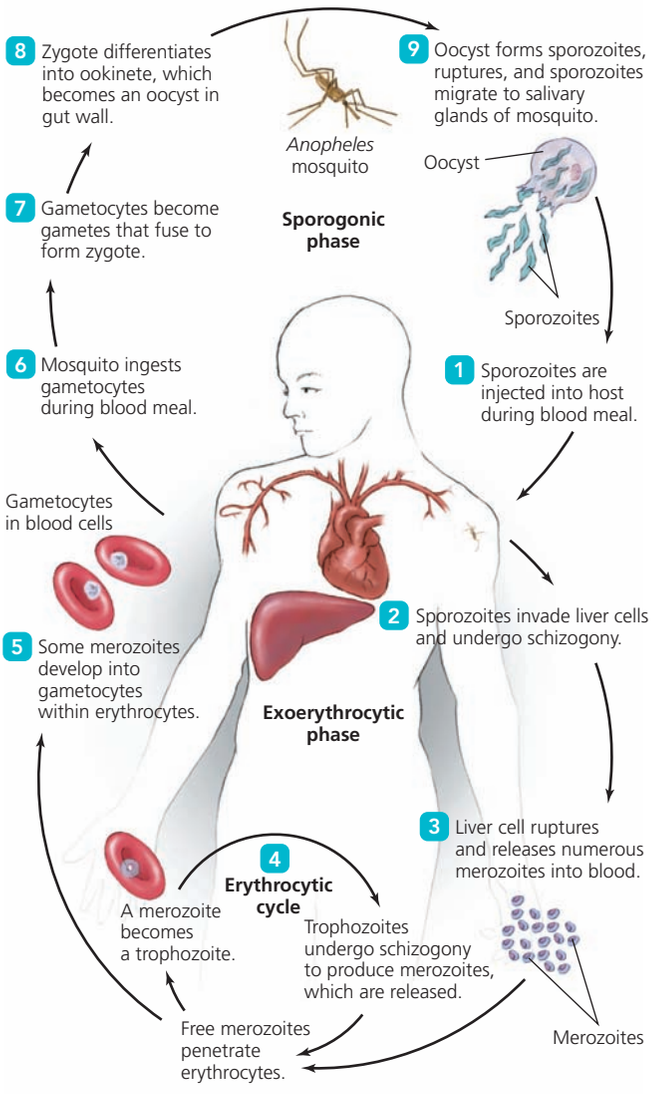
Plasmodium, Toxoplasma, Cryptosporidium, and *Cyclospora* are four important apicomplexan parasites. We begin our discussion with *Plasmodium*, the causative agent of malaria and the most infamous protozoan parasite in the world.

Plasmodium

Four species of *Plasmodium* (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm) typically cause **malaria** in humans: *P. falciparum* (fal-sip´ar-ŭm), *P. vivax* (vī´vaks), *P. ovale* (ō-vă´lē), and *P. malariae* (mă-lār´ē-ī). A fifth species, *P. knowlesi* (nō-les´ē), is an emerging human pathogen. Malaria is endemic in over 109 countries and territories throughout the tropics and subtropics, where the parasites' mosquito vector breeds **(Figure 23.10)**. The movement of infected individuals and mosquitoes continues to expand beyond these endemic areas, threatening to reintroduce *Plasmodium* into countries, including the United States, where mosquito eradication programs eliminated the disease decades ago. Some researchers estimate that over 500 million people are infected with *Plasmodium*, and about 900,000 (usually children) die annually, making malaria among the deadlier killers. Females of 60 different species of the mosquito genus *Anopheles* (ă-nof´ĕ-lēz) serve as vectors of *Plasmodium*. (Male *Anopheles* do not feed on blood.)

The life cycle of *Plasmodium* has three prominent stages **(Figure 23.11)**:

1. The **exoerythrocytic phase,** as its name indicates, occurs outside of red blood cells. During a blood meal on a human, an infected female mosquito injects a stage of *Plasmodium* called a *sporozoite* along with saliva containing an anticoagulant into the blood 1. Sporozoites reach the liver via the bloodstream and over the course of one to two weeks undergo schizogony within liver cells 2. Schizogony produces a *Plasmodium* stage called *merozoites* that proceed to rupture the liver cells and enter the blood 3. *P. ovale* and *P. vivax* are further capable of forming a "sleeping stage" called a *hypnozoite* (not shown), which can remain dormant in liver cells for years and be reactivated at any time, causing relapses of malaria.
2. The **erythrocytic cycle** 4 begins when free merozoites penetrate erythrocytes and become yet another stage, called *trophozoites,* that endocytize the erythrocytes' hemoglobin protein. Presence of trophozoites inside blood cells is the diagnostic sign of malaria. Trophozoites undergo schizogony to produce more merozoites that lyse erythrocytes, and the cycle continues to repeat. Lysis of



▲ Figure 23.11 The life cycle of *Plasmodium*. The exoerythrocytic phase and the erythrocytic cycle occur in humans, and the sporogonic phase in mosquitoes. *During which stage is malaria usually diagnosed in humans?*

Figure 23.11 *Malaria in humans is diagnosed during the parasite's erythrocytic cycle.*

erythrocytes occurs nearly simultaneously and cyclically—every 48 to 72 hours, depending on the species of *Plasmodium* involved. Most merozoites infect new erythrocytes, but some remain in red blood cells, where they develop into male and female *gametocytes* 5.

3. The **sporogonic phase** begins when a female mosquito feeding on an infected human ingests gametocytes within erythrocytes 6. Freed from erythrocytes within the mosquito's digestive tract, gametocytes develop into *gametes*, and male gametes fertilize female gametes to produce *zygotes* 7. A zygote differentiates into an *ookinete*, which penetrates the mosquito's gut wall and becomes an *oocyst*, which undergoes meiosis 8. Some 10 to 20 days later, the oocyst ruptures, releasing thousands of sporozoites that migrate to the mosquito's salivary glands 9. The mosquito then transmits the sporozoites to a new host during a blood meal, completing the parasite's life cycle. *Plasmodium* does not complete the sporogonic phase if the temperature is below 20°C.

People living in endemic areas and their descendants throughout the world have evolved to have one or more of the following genetic traits that increase their resistance to malaria:

- *Sickle-cell trait*. Individuals with this gene produce an abnormal type of hemoglobin called hemoglobin S (hemoglobin A is normal). Hemoglobin S causes erythrocytes to become sickle shaped, and somehow it also makes erythrocytes resist penetration by *Plasmodium.*
- *Hemoglobin C*. Humans with two genes for hemoglobin C are invulnerable to malaria. The mechanism by which this mutation provides protection is unknown.
- Genetic deficiency for the enzyme *glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase.* Trophozoites must acquire this enzyme from a human host before the trophozoite can synthesize DNA; thus, humans without the enzyme are spared malaria.
- Lack of so-called *Duffy*[2] antigens on erythrocytes. Because *P. vivax* requires Duffy antigens in order to attach to and infect erythrocytes, Duffy-negative individuals are resistant to this species.

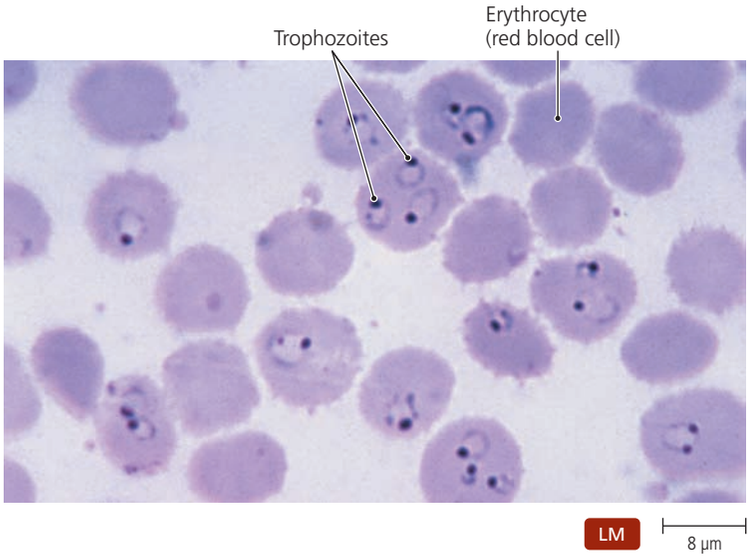
The severity of malaria caused by each species varies. *P. ovale* generally causes mild disease; *P. vivax* usually results in chronic malaria, with periodic recurrence of symptoms; and *P. malariae* and *P. falciparum* cause more serious malaria, with *P. falciparum* infection possibly fatal.

The general symptoms of malaria are associated with synchronous cycles of erythrocyte lysis. Two weeks after the erythrocytic cycle begins, sufficient numbers of parasites exist to cause symptoms of fever, chills, diarrhea, headache, and (occasionally) pulmonary or cardiac dysfunction. Fever correlates with erythrocyte lysis and most likely results from efforts of the immune system to remove cellular debris, toxins, and merozoites. Loss of erythrocytes leads to anemia, weakness, and fatigue. The inability of the liver to process the inordinate amount of hemoglobin released from dying erythrocytes results in *jaundice*.

P. falciparum causes a form of malaria called *blackwater fever,* which is characterized by extreme fever, large-scale erythrocyte lysis, renal failure, and dark urine discolored by excreted hemoglobin. Protozoan proteins inserted on the surfaces of infected erythrocytes cause erythrocytes to become rigid and inelastic such that they cannot squeeze through capillaries, blocking blood flow and causing small hemorrhages in various tissues (and ultimately tissue death). *Cerebral malaria* results when tissue death occurs in the brain. Falciparum malaria can be fatal within 24 hours of the onset of symptoms.

If a victim survives the acute stages of malaria, immunity gradually develops. Periodic episodes become less severe over time—unless the victim becomes immunocompromised, in which case episodes can return to original levels of severity.

[2]Named for the patient in which the antigen was discovered.



▲ **Figure 23.12 Trophozoites of *Plasmodium falciparum* inside erythrocytes.** Trophozoites often appear as a ring of cytoplasm with a dotlike nucleus.

Microscopy is most commonly used for diagnosing malaria because *Plasmodium* species can be readily identified and distinguished in blood smears. Ringlike trophozoites within erythrocytes are often the diagnostic stage **(Figure 23.12)**. Demonstrating antibodies against *Plasmodium* in the serum can also be used for differential diagnosis. However, because the symptoms might be confused with those of less severe infections, diagnosis may be missed in nonendemic areas unless a good case history, including travel history, is obtained.

Treatment varies by species and severity of symptoms. Currently, two drugs are used simultaneously; this is more effective and delays the development of resistance. Drug choices are constantly revised on the basis of effectiveness and the existence of resistant strains of *Plasmodium*. Historical antimalarial drugs include chloroquine, mefloquine, atovaquone sulfadoxine, and pyrimethamine. The World Health Organization recommends a combination of one of these historical drugs with a derivative from the drug artemisinin, which is made from a shrub used in traditional Chinese treatment of malaria. Antifever medication and blood transfusions may be required as supportive measures.

Control of malaria involves limiting contact with mosquitoes carrying *Plasmodium*. Widespread use of insecticides, drainage of wetlands, and removal of standing water can reduce mosquito breeding rates. Personal use of insect repellents, netting, and protective clothing reduces mosquito bites. Travelers to endemic areas can take preventive medication to avoid infection. Atovaquone and proguanil are drugs of choice and are usually taken several weeks before and after travel. Chloroquine is sometimes given prophylactically before travel to areas where *Plasmodium* is still susceptible to this drug. Several malaria vaccines are currently under development.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Plasmodium falciparum

Taxonomy: Nomenclature is in flux; one possibility, used in this book: domain Eukarya, kingdom Alveolata, phylum Apicomplexa, class Sporozoea, order Eucoccidiida, family Plasmodiidae

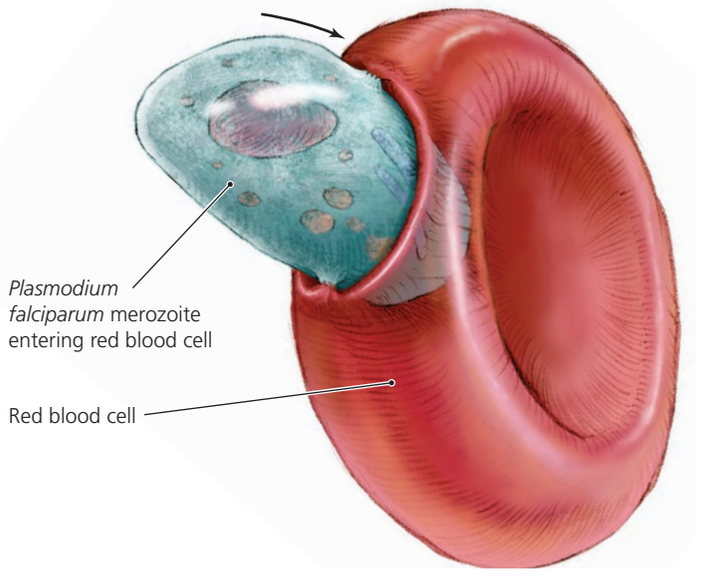
Morphology: Sporozoite (slender, elongate single cell); merozoite (oval single cell); trophozoite (ring of cytoplasm with a dotlike nucleus; "ring form"); ookinete (motile wormlike form); oocyte (spherical)

Virulence factors: Lives intracellularly

Diseases caused: Malignant tertian malaria—a form of malaria called blackwater fever

Treatment for disease: Two-drug combination composed of either chloroquine, mefloquine, atovaquone, sulfadoxine, or pyrimethamine administered with artemisinin

Prevention of disease: Mosquito control, avoid mosquito bites

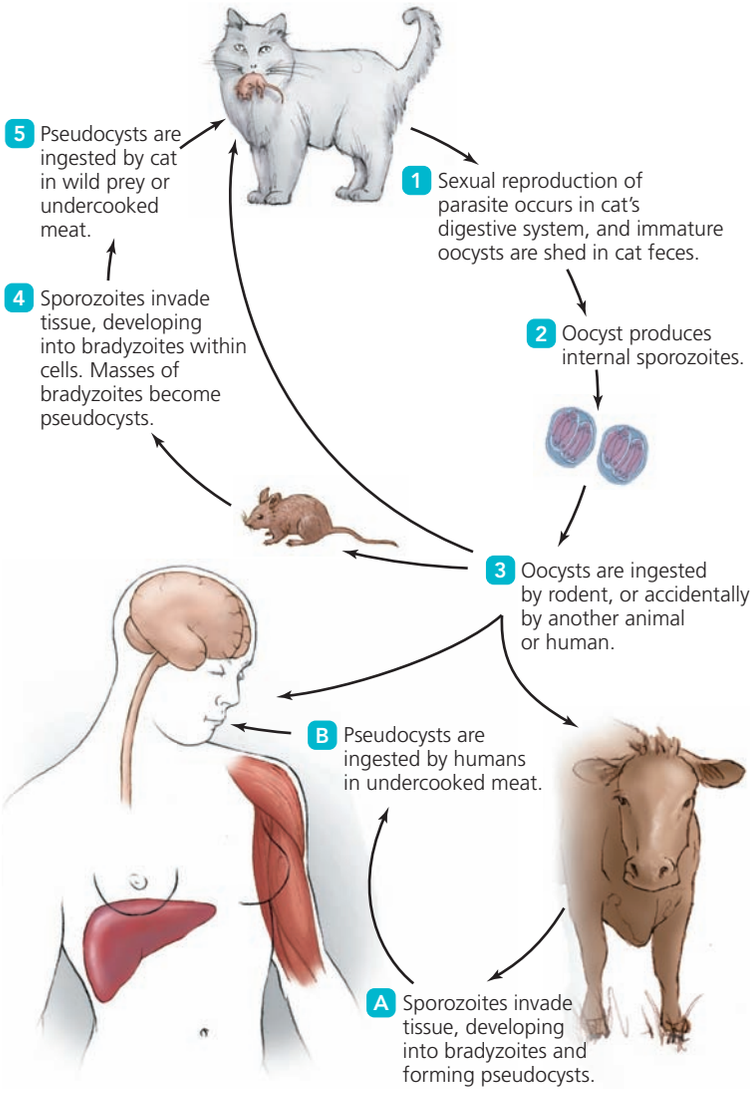


MM **Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.**

Toxoplasma

Toxoplasma gondii (tok-sō-plaz´mă gon´dē-ē) is one of the world's most widely distributed protozoan parasites—25% of the world's human population is infected. Wild and domestic mammals and birds are major reservoirs for *Toxoplasma,* and cats are the definitive host, in which the protozoan reproduces sexually.

Humans typically become infected by ingesting undercooked meat containing the parasite. People at greatest risk include butchers, hunters, and anyone who tastes food while preparing it. Ingestion or inhalation with contaminated soil can also be a source of infection. The protozoan can also cross a placenta to infect the fetus. Historically, contact with infected cats and their feces was proposed as a major risk for infection, but recent studies have shown that cats are not the major source of infection for humans because cats shed *Toxoplasma* only briefly.

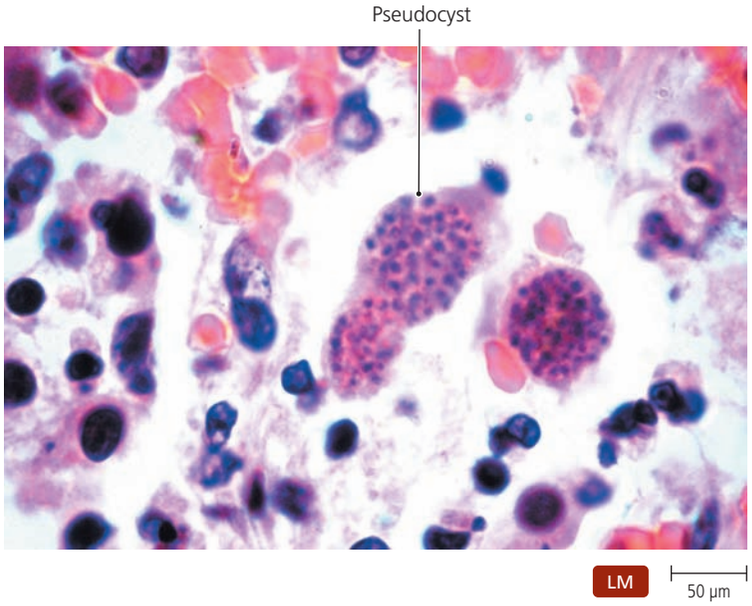


▲ Figure 23.13 **The life cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii*.** *Which two groups of humans are most at risk from toxoplasmosis?*

Figure 23.13 *AIDS patients and first-trimester fetuses are at greatest risk from toxoplasmosis.*

In the life cycle of *Toxoplasma* **(Figure 23.13)**, male and female gametes in a cat's digestive tract fuse to form zygotes, which develop into immature *oocysts* that are shed in the feces 1. During the few days a cat sheds oocysts, it can excrete up to 10 million per day. Oocysts survive in moist soil for several months, contaminating vegetation grown in this soil. As each oocyst matures, it produces *sporozoites* internally 2. When rodents ingest mature oocysts on vegetation 3, digestion releases the sporozoites, which invade the rodent's muscles, lymph nodes, digestive organs, and brain. Sporozoites proliferate asexually to produce *bradyzoites*. Thick walls form around masses of cells filled with bradyzoites to form *pseudocysts* 4.

Toxoplasma must return to a cat to reproduce, so pseudocysts preferentially form on and inhibit those parts of a rodent's brain that process cat odors and those that induce fear. With its fear of the smell of cats gone, the rodent is easily caught and



▲ Figure 23.14 **Pseudocysts of *Toxoplasma gondii*.** Pseudocysts contain bradyzoites and are one infective stage of this protozoan.

eaten 5. Bradyzoites released from digested pseudocysts infect the cat's intestinal cells, where the parasites become gametes, completing the life cycle.

Nonrodent animals (and occasionally people) become accidental hosts when they ingest oocysts containing sporozoites 3. These develop into pseudocysts containing bradyzoites A. Humans most often are infected by eating pseudocysts in undercooked meat B.

Although the majority of people infected with *T. gondii* have no symptoms, a small percentage develop **toxoplasmosis** (tok´sō-plaz-mō-sis), a fever-producing illness with headache, muscle pain, sore throat, and enlarged lymph nodes in the head and neck. Toxoplasmosis generally results in no permanent damage and is self-limiting, resolving spontaneously within a few months to a year. However, toxoplasmosis is more severe in two populations: AIDS patients and fetuses. In AIDS patients, symptoms are thought to result when tissue pseudocysts reactivate as the immune system fails. Spastic paralysis, blindness, myocarditis, encephalitis, and death result.

Transplacental transfer of *Toxoplasma* from mother to fetus is most dangerous in the first trimester of pregnancy; it can result in spontaneous abortion, stillbirth, or epilepsy, mental retardation, *microcephaly* (abnormally small head), inflammation of the retina, blindness, anemia, jaundice, and other conditions. Ocular infections may remain dormant for years, at which time blindness develops.

Physicians diagnose via microscopic identification of parasites in tissue biopsies **(Figure 23.14)** or via molecular identification of *T. gondii* genetic material or products in specimens using PCR, Southern blot, or DNA probes. Serology is the most common diagnostic method.

Asymptomatic patients do not need treatment for toxoplasmosis. For those with signs and symptoms, physicians in the United States prescribe pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine or clindamycin. Treatment of infected pregnant women prevents

most transplacental infections. More aggressive treatment may be needed for AIDS patients, including the addition of steroids to reduce tissue inflammation.

Controlling the incidence of *T. gondii* infection is difficult because so many hosts harbor the parasites. A vaccine for cats is currently under development to reduce the chance of pet-to-owner transmission. The best prevention is to thoroughly cook or deep-freeze meats and to avoid contact with contaminated soil.

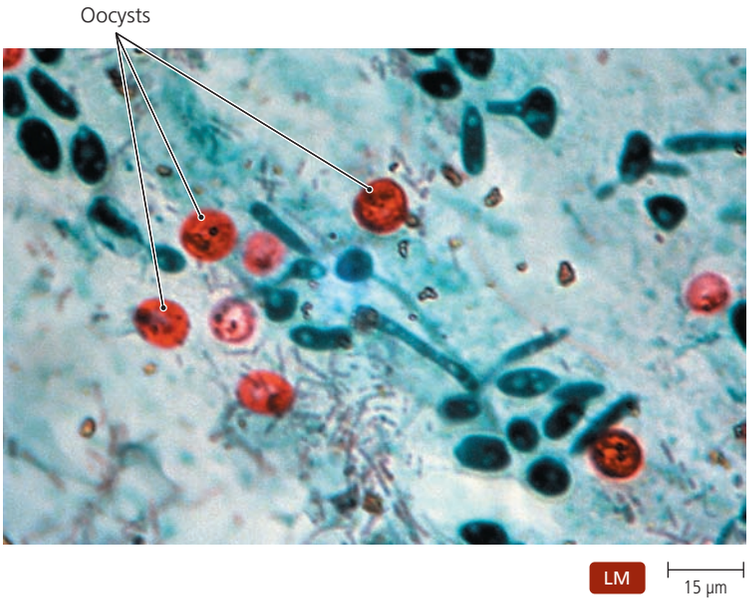
Cryptosporidium

***Cryptosporidium* enteritis** (krip´tō-spō-rid´ē-ŭm en-ter-ī´tis), also known as *cryptosporidiosis* (krip´tō-spō-rid-ē-ō´sis), is a zoonosis; that is, it is a disease of animals that is transmitted to people. *Cryptosporidium parvum* (par-vŭm), an apicomplexan, causes the disease. Once thought to infect only livestock and poultry, *Cryptosporidium* is carried asymptomatically by about 30% of people living in developing nations. It is estimated that most natural waterways in the United States are contaminated with the oocysts of *Cryptosporidium* from livestock wastes.

Infection most commonly results from drinking water contaminated with oocysts, but direct fecal-oral transmission resulting from poor hygienic practices also occurs, particularly in day care facilities. In the intestine, oocysts release sporozoites, which invade the intestinal mucosa and become intracellular parasites. Eventually, new oocysts are produced, released into the lumen of the intestine, and shed in the feces.

Signs and symptoms of *Cryptosporidium* enteritis include severe diarrhea that lasts from one to two weeks accompanied by headache, muscular pain, cramping, and severe fluid and weight loss. In HIV-positive individuals, chronic *Cryptosporidium* enteritis is life threatening and is one of the indicator diseases revealing that a person has AIDS.

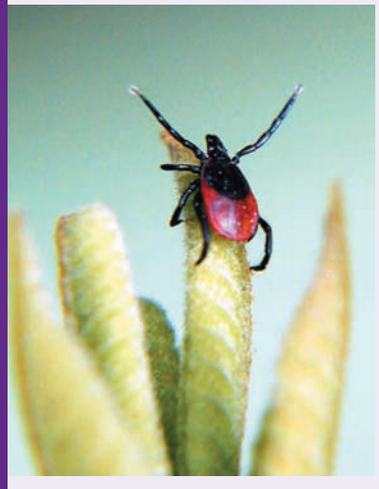
Most diagnostic techniques are not very sensitive for *Cryptosporidium,* but microscopic examination of concentrated fecal samples or biopsy material can reveal oocysts **(Figure 23.15)**.



▲ Figure 23.15 Oocysts of *Cryptosporidium parvum*. Here they are in a stained fecal smear.

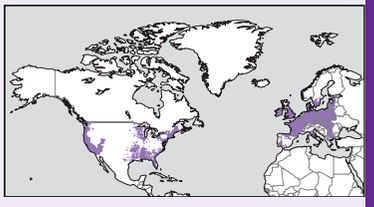
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

BABESIOSIS



Leslie hated being sick, but here she was on a fine summer day with a headache, muscle pains, and sore joints. It was just as well she didn't know that the worst was yet to come.

A small deer tick *(Ixodes scapularis)* had taken a blood meal from Leslie's leg six weeks before. The tick was so small and the bite so painless that Leslie was unaware of the attack. She was equally unaware that the tick had infected her with an apicomplexan parasite normally found in mice. *Babesia microti* was eating her red blood cells from the inside out.



Leslie became anemic, jaundiced, fatigued, and depressed, and she was losing weight. As she became weaker, she had trouble catching her breath, and within the week, her kidneys began to fail. Intermittent fever, shaking chills, drenching sweat, nausea, and anorexia came next. Leslie was utterly miserable, but with intensive medical care, including the use of the antimicrobials atovaquone, azithromycin, clindamycin, and quinine, she pulled through.

In the last decade, the number of reported cases of babesiosis has quadrupled. Perhaps this emerging disease is spreading because its tick vector has an expanded range due to global warming. Perhaps physicians are more aware of a disease whose incidence has been constant. Whatever the reason for our increased awareness of babesiosis, Leslie was grateful that she was diagnosed and treated effectively so that her nightmare could finally end.

TABLE 23.1 Key Features of Protozoan Parasites of Humans

Organism	Primary Diseases	Geographical Distribution	Mode of Transmission	Host Organisms
Ciliates				
Balantidium coli	Balantidiasis, dysentery	Worldwide	Fecal-oral	Pigs, rodents, primates, humans
Amoebae				
Entamoeba histolytica	Luminal amebiasis, amebic dysentery, invasive extraintestinal amebiasis	Worldwide	Fecal-oral	Humans
Acanthamoeba spp.	Ulcerative keratitis, amebic encephalitis	Worldwide	Contact	Humans
Naegleria	Primary amebic meningoencephalitis	Worldwide	Inhalation	Humans
Flagellates				
Trypanosoma cruzi	Chagas' disease	Central and South America	Kissing bug *(Triatoma)*	Opossums, armadillos, humans
Trypanosoma brucei	African sleeping sickness	Africa	Tsetse fly *(Glossina)*	Wild game, pigs, humans
Leishmania spp.	Cutaneous, mucocutaneous, or visceral leishmaniasis	Tropics, subtropics	Sand flies *(Phlebotomus, Lutzomyia)*	Canines, rodents, humans
Giardia intestinalis (lamblia)	Giardiasis	Developed nations, tropics	Fecal-oral	Humans, wild animals
Trichomonas vaginalis	Vaginosis	Developed nations	Sexual contact	Humans
Apicomplexans				
Plasmodium spp.	Malaria	Tropics, subtropics	Mosquitoes *(Anopheles)*	Humans
Toxoplasma gondii	Toxoplasmosis	Worldwide	Fecal-oral	Cats, livestock, humans
Cryptosporidium parvum	*Cryptosporidium* enteritis (cryptosporidiosis)	Worldwide	Fecal-oral	Livestock, poultry, humans
Cyclospora cayetanensis	Cyclosporiasis, gastrointestinal disorders	North, Central, and South America	Fecal-oral	Humans

Fluorescent-labeled antibodies reveal low concentrations of oocysts in appropriate specimens.

Treatment consists of oral rehydration therapy and paromomycin, azithromycin, or nitazoxanide. Drinking from rivers and streams should be avoided in areas where *Cryptosporidium* is found; filtration is required to remove oocysts from drinking water because they cannot be killed by chlorination. Good personal hygiene can eliminate fecal-oral transmission of the parasite.

Cyclospora

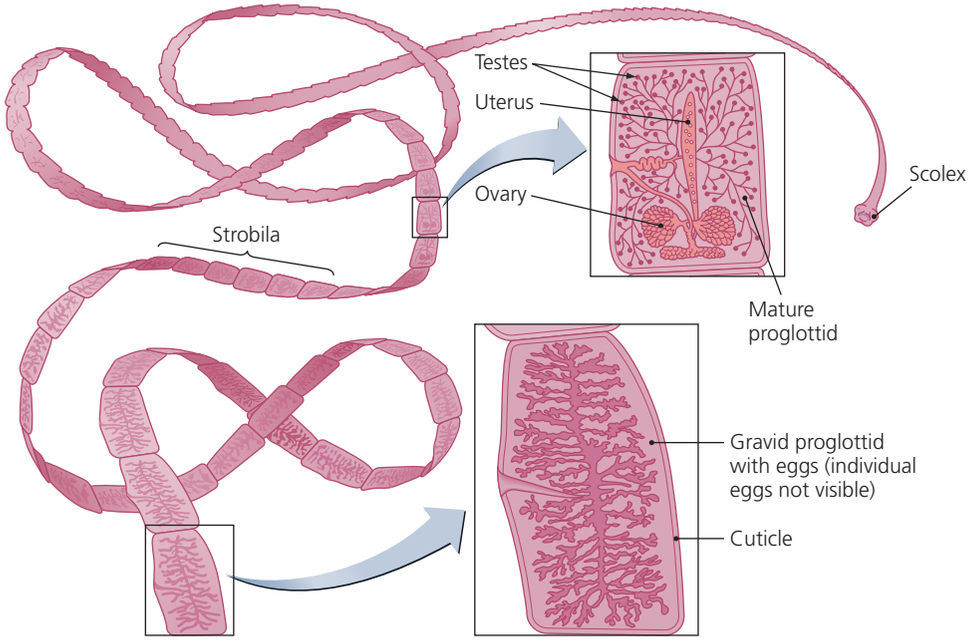
Cyclospora cayetanensis (sī-klō-spōr´ă kī´ē-tan-en´sis) is a waterborne apicomplexan that has been responsible for an emerging disease, *cyclosporiasis,* that has affected hundreds in the United States since the early 1980s. The disease is not transmitted between individuals; rather, it is acquired by eating or drinking oocysts in contaminated food or water. Outbreaks have been linked in particular to raspberries imported from Central and South America. The environmental reservoir for *Cyclospora* remains unknown.

Once *Cyclospora* enters the intestine, it invades the mucosal layer, causing symptoms, which develop after about a week. Manifestations include cramps, watery diarrhea, myalgia (muscle pain), and fever. Symptoms are more severe in AIDS patients, leading to severe dehydration and weight loss. The disease usually resolves in days or weeks in immunocompetent patients.

Microscopic examination of stool samples can sometimes reveal the presence of oocysts in extensive infections, but fluorescent DNA probes more reliably detect the presence of *Cyclospora. Cyclospora* infections are treated with trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole given in combination for seven days.

Reliable food testing does not currently exist but would be an important tool in preventing contaminated food from reaching U.S. consumers. The only reliable methods for reducing risk of infection in the United States are thoroughly washing fruits and vegetables prior to eating them raw. Cooking or freezing also kills many oocysts.

Table 23.1 lists the general characteristics of the protozoan parasites discussed in this chapter.



◀ Figure 23.16 Features of tapeworm morphology. Each tapeworm consists of an organ of attachment called a scolex, a neck, and a long chain of segments called proglottids.

Helminthic Parasites of Humans

Learning Outcome

23.11 Describe the general morphological and physiological features of parasitic worms.

Helminths are macroscopic, multicellular, eukaryotic worms found throughout the natural world, some in parasitic associations with other animals. They are not microorganisms, though microbiologists generally study them in part because the diagnostic signs of infestation—eggs or larvae—are microscopic.

Taxonomists divide parasitic helminths into three groups: *cestodes* (ses´tōdz), *trematodes* (trem´a-tōdz), and *nematodes* (nēm´a-tōdz).

The life cycles of parasitic helminths are complex. For many, intermediate hosts are required to support larval (immature) stages needed for the worms to reach maturity. Adult worms are either *dioecious,*[3] meaning that the male and female sex organs are in separate worms, or *monoecious,*[4] meaning that each worm has both sex organs. Monoecious organisms either fertilize each other during copulation or are capable of self-fertilization, depending on the species. Because most parasitic helminths release large numbers of fertilized eggs into the environment, transmission to new hosts is likely to occur.

Cestodes

Learning Outcomes

23.12 Describe the common features of the life cycles of tapeworms that infect humans.

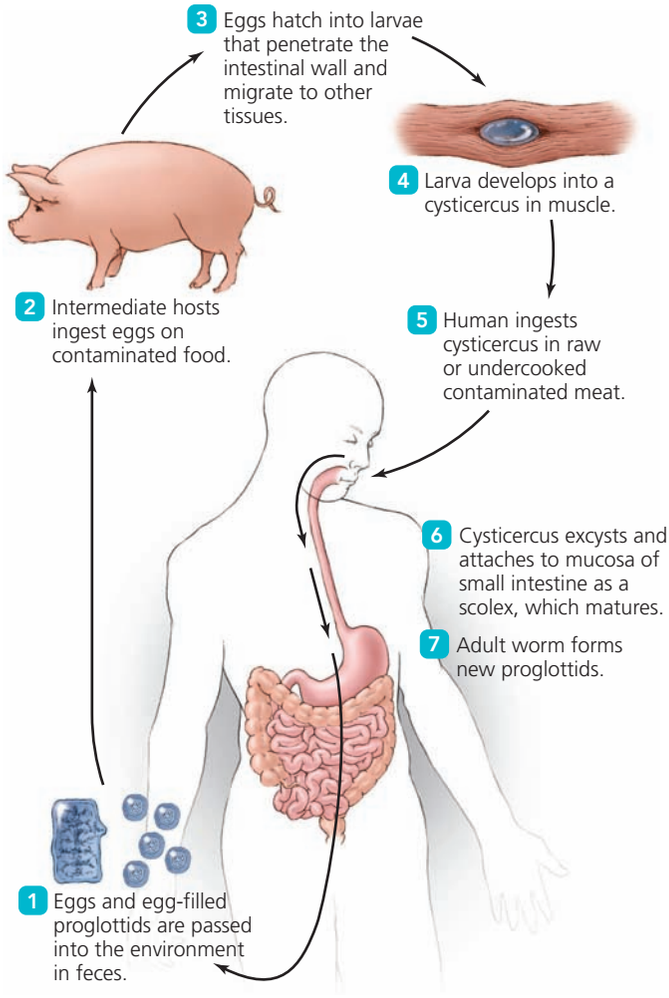
23.13 List the predominant modes of infection for *Taenia* and *Echinococcus* and suggest measures to prevent infection.

All **cestodes,** commonly called *tapeworms,* are flat, segmented, intestinal parasites that completely lack digestive systems. Though they differ in size when mature, all possess the same general body plan **(Figure 23.16)**. The **scolex** (skō´leks) is a small attachment organ that possesses suckers and/or hooks used to attach the worm to host tissues (see the photo at the beginning of the chapter). Anchorage is the only role of a scolex; there is no mouth. Cestodes acquire nutrients by absorption through the worm's *cuticle* (outer "skin").

Behind the scolex is the neck region. Body segments, called **proglottids** (prō-glot´idz), grow from the neck continuously as long as the worm remains attached to its host. New proglottids displace older ones, moving the older ones farther from the neck. Proglottids mature, producing both male and female reproductive organs. Thus, a chain of proglottids, called a *strobila* (strō´bi-lă; plural: *strobilae,* strō´bi-lī), reflects a sequence of development: Proglottids near the neck are immature, those in the middle are mature, and those near the end are *gravid*[5]—full of fertilized eggs. Each proglottid is monoecious and may fertilize other proglottids of the same or different tapeworm; a proglottid is not capable of fertilizing itself, although the tapeworm is self-fertile.

After fertilization occurs and the proglottids fill with eggs, gravid proglottids break off the strobila and pass out of the intestine along with feces. In a few cases, the proglottids rupture within the intestine, releasing eggs directly into the feces. Some tapeworms produce proglottids large enough to be obviously visible in stools.

[3]From Greek *di,* meaning "two," and *oikos,* meaning "house."
[4]From Greek *mono,* meaning "one," *and oikos,* meaning "house."
[5]From Latin *gravidus,* meaning "heavy"—that is, pregnant.



▲ Figure 23.17 A generalized life cycle of some tapeworms of humans. *Which species of* Taenia *is shown in this representation?*

Figure 23.17 *Taenia solium is illustrated, as indicated by the intermediate host being a pig.*

Generalized Tapeworm Life Cycle

The generalized life cycle of most tapeworms of humans is depicted in **Figure 23.17**. Gravid proglottids and/or eggs enter the environment in feces from infested humans, who are the definitive (primary) hosts 1. Intermediate (secondary) hosts, which vary with the species of tapeworm, become infected by ingesting vegetation contaminated with gravid proglottids or eggs 2. Eggs hatch into larvae within the intermediate host's intestine, and the larvae penetrate the intestinal wall and migrate to other tissues, often muscle 3, where the larvae develop into immature forms called **cysticerci** (sis-ti-ser´sī) 4. Cysticerci are generally harmless to intermediate hosts. Humans become infected by consuming undercooked meat containing cysticerci 5. A cysticercus excysts in the human's intestine to become a scolex that attaches to the intestinal wall and matures 6, developing into a new adult tapeworm 7, which eventually sheds gravid proglottids, completing the cycle.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

How might humans become intermediate hosts instead of definitive hosts?

Taenia

Taenia saginata (tē´nē-a sa-ji-na´ta), the beef tapeworm, and *Taenia solium* (sō´lī-um), the pork tapeworm, are so named because cattle and swine, respectively, serve as intermediate hosts. Both tapeworm species are distributed worldwide in areas where beef and pork are eaten. Poor, rural areas with inadequate sewage treatment and where humans and livestock live in close proximity have the highest incidence of human infection. Overall, *Taenia* infections in humans are rare in the United States.

Tapeworms attached to the intestinal epithelium can grow quite large. At maturity, *T. saginata* worms have 1000 to 2000 proglottids, each of which can contain 100,000 eggs. *T. solium* adults average 1000 proglottids, each of which contains about 50,000 eggs. An infested human passes strobilae of about six proglottids per day.

Rarely, humans become intermediate hosts of *T. solium* when they ingest eggs or gravid proglottids rather than cysticerci. Larvae released from the eggs become cysticerci in the human, who is thereby an accidental intermediate host. For the parasite this is a dead end. Humans are not intermediate hosts for *T. saginata*.

Most people actively shed strobilae without experiencing symptoms, though in some cases, nausea, abdominal pain, weight loss, and diarrhea accompany infestation. If the tapeworm is particularly large, blockage of the intestine is possible.

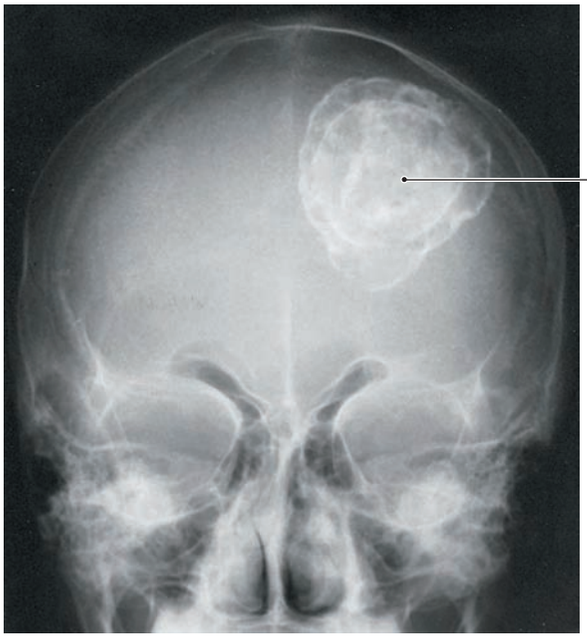
Diagnosis is achieved by microscopic identification of proglottids in fecal samples at least three months after infection. Examination of the scolex is required to differentiate between *T. saginata* and *T. solium*.

Normally, treatment is with praziquantel. Thoroughly cooking or freezing meat is the easiest method of prevention. Because cysticerci are readily visible in meat, giving it a "mealy" look, inspecting meat can reduce the chances of eating infected meat.

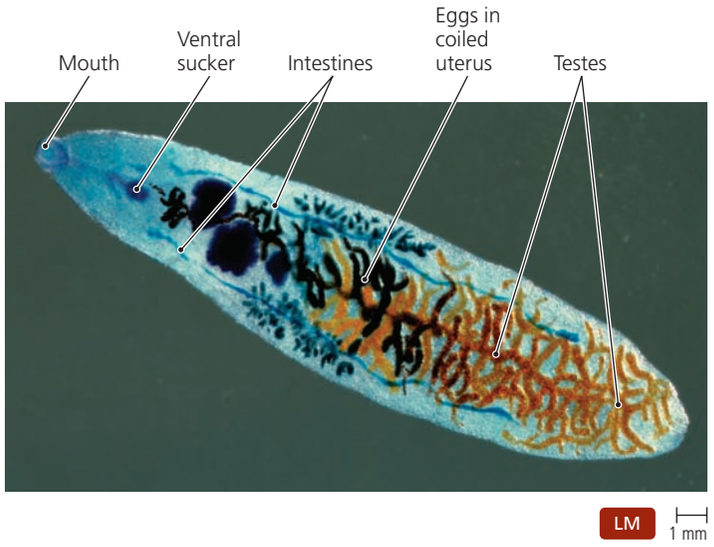
Echinococcus

Echinococcus granulosus (ĕ-kī´nō-kok´ŭs gra-nū-lō´sŭs) is an unusual tapeworm of canines in that its body consists of only three proglottids—one immature, one sexually mature, and one gravid. A gravid proglottid is released each time the neck forms a new immature proglottid. Canines are infected by eating cysticerci in various herbivorous hosts, such as cattle, sheep, and deer. Incidence is highest in areas wherever livestock are kept, including the western United States.

Humans become accidental intermediate hosts by consuming food or water contaminated with *Echinococcus* eggs shed in dogs' feces. The eggs release larvae into the intestine; the larvae invade the circulatory system and are carried throughout



▲ **Figure 23.18 X ray of hydatid cyst.** This large, calcified cyst is in the cerebrum of a 20-year-old man.



▲ **Figure 23.19 Some features of fluke morphology.** Note the sucker, which keeps the leaf-shaped flatworm attached to its host's tissues.

the body, where they form **hydatid**[6] (hī´da-tid) cysts and cause **hydatid disease.** Hydatid cysts form in any organ but occur primarily in the liver.

Over several years, hydatid cysts can calcify and enlarge to the size of grapefruits (20 cm in diameter), filling with fluid and several million granular *protoscoleces*. Each protoscolex is the potential scolex of a new worm, but since dogs do not normally eat humans, the protoscoleces of hydatid cysts in humans are a dead end for *Echinococcus*.

Symptoms of hydatid disease follow the enlargement of cysts in infected tissue and result from tissue dysfunction. For example, hydatid cysts in the liver produce abdominal pain and obstruction of the bile ducts. If a hydatid cyst ruptures, protoscoleces spread throughout the body via the bloodstream, and each protoscolex grows into a new hydatid cyst. Hydatid cysts in the brain, lungs, bones, heart, or kidneys can be fatal.

Diagnosis involves visualization of cyst masses using ultrasound, CT scan, or radiography **(Figure 23.18)**, followed by serological confirmation via immunoassays. Biopsies should be avoided, as rupture of a cyst can lead to the spread of protoscoleces.

Treatment involves surgery to remove cysts, followed by a benzimidazole anthelmintic drug, such as albendazole or mebendazole. Human infection is prevented by good hygiene practices to avoid fecal-oral transmission of eggs from infected dogs. It is also a good idea to avoid drinking untreated water from streams or other waterways in areas where foxes, coyotes, or wolves roam.

[6]From Greek *hydatis*, meaning "a drop of water," presumably in reference to the fluid that accumulates within hydatid cysts.

Trematodes

Learning Outcomes

23.14 Explain how the life cycles of blood flukes differ from those of other flukes.

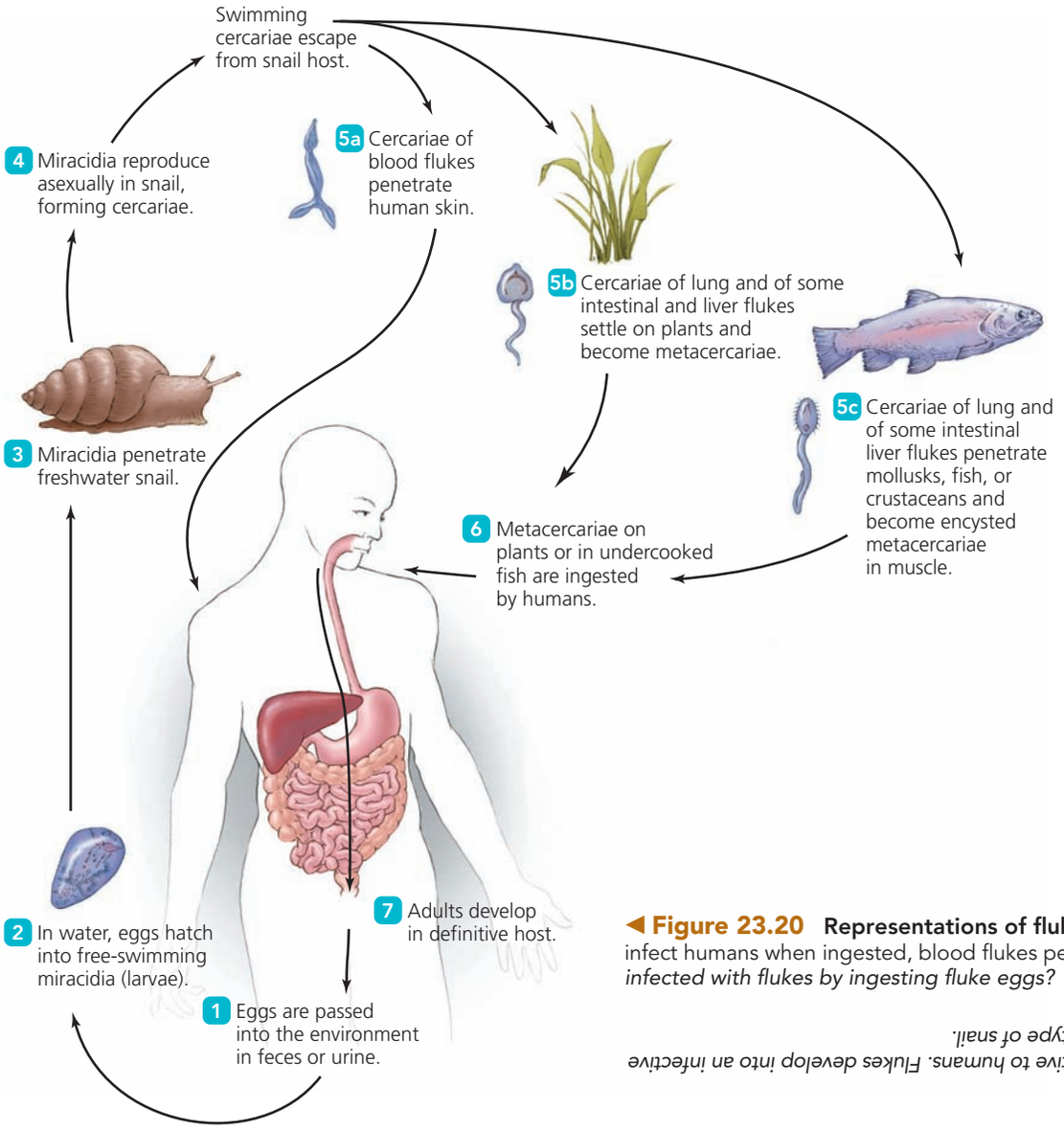
23.15 Discuss the life cycles and disease manifestations of *Schistosoma* and *Fasciola*.

Trematodes, commonly known as *flukes* (flūks), are flat, leaf-shaped worms **(Figure 23.19)**. A fluke has no anus and so has an incomplete digestive tract. A ventral sucker enables a parasite to attach to host tissues and obtain nutrients. The geographical distribution of flukes is extremely limited by the geographical distribution of the specific species of snails they require as intermediate hosts.

Researchers group flukes together according to the sites in the body they parasitize. The following sections examine some representative flukes, but first we consider common features of fluke life cycles.

Common Features of the Fluke Life Cycle

Flukes that cause disease in humans share similar complex life cycles **(Figure 23.20)**. Fluke eggs pass from the body in feces or urine, depending on the site of infestation 1. Eggs deposited in freshwater hatch to release free-swimming larvae called *miracidia* (mir-a-sid´ē-a) 2. Within 24 hours, miracidia actively seek out and burrow into a snail of a specific species 3. Two or three cycles of asexual reproduction within the snail produce larvae called *cercariae* (ser-kār´ē-ī) 4, which leave the snail as free-swimming forms. The next steps differ depending on whether the parasite is a blood, liver, lung, or intestinal fluke. In blood flukes, the cercariae aggressively seek out and penetrate the skin of humans 5a; in some intestinal and liver



◀ Figure 23.20 Representations of fluke life cycles. Whereas most flukes infect humans when ingested, blood flukes penetrate the skin. *Can a human become infected with flukes by ingesting fluke eggs?*

Figure 23.20 *No, fluke eggs are not infective to humans. Flukes develop into an infective stage only after development in a specific type of snail.*

flukes, cercariae encyst to become *metacercariae* on vegetation 5b, while in lung flukes and other intestinal and liver flukes, cercariae encyst to become metacercariae within a second intermediate host 5c. For liver, lung, and intestinal flukes, humans become infected by ingesting metacercariae 6. Once inside the definitive host, the parasites migrate to appropriate sites and develop into adults 7, which then produce perhaps 25,000 eggs per day that pass into the environment in feces or urine.

With the exception of one dioecious genus *(Schistosoma)*, all flukes are monoecious. They are not self-fertile.

Now, we consider examples of specific species of flukes, beginning with *Fasciola*, a liver fluke.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Compare the general tapeworm life cycle to the general fluke life cycle. What is similar? What is different?

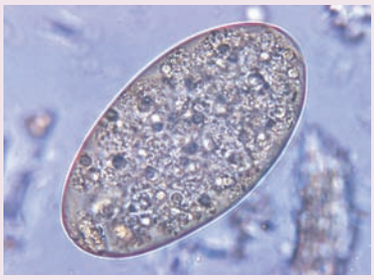
Representative Liver Fluke: *Fasciola*

Two species of liver fluke—*Fasciola hepatica* (fa-sē´ō-lă he-pa´ti-kă) and *F. gigantica* (ji-gan´ti-kă)—infect sheep and cattle worldwide. *Fasciola* also can infect humans, who become accidental definitive hosts when they ingest metacercariae encysted on aquatic vegetation such as watercress. Following excystment in the intestine, the larvae burrow through the intestinal wall, the peritoneal cavity, or the liver to reach the bile ducts, where they mature within three to four months.

Acute disease characterized by tissue death, abdominal pain, fever, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea accompanies the migration of the parasite from the intestine to the liver; chronic infection begins when flukes take up residence in the bile ducts. Symptoms coincide with episodes of bile duct obstruction and inflammation, and heavy infections cause liver failure. Lesions can occur in other tissues as well.

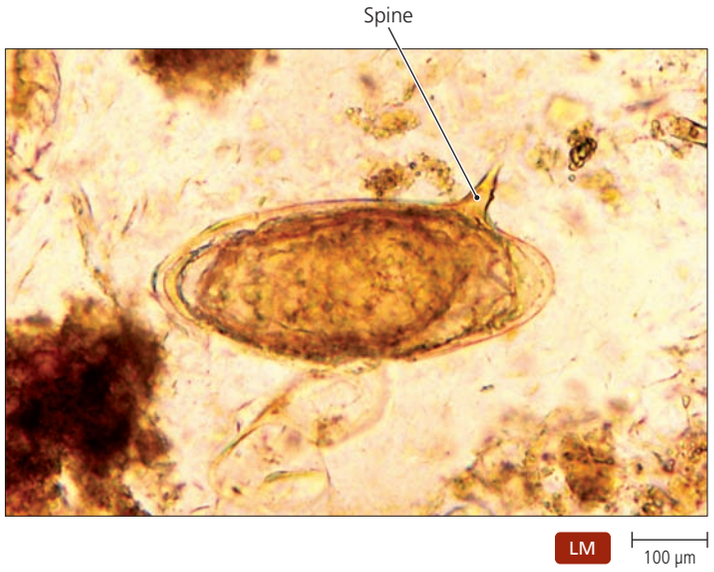
CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A FLUKE DISEASE?



A 40-year-old female of Cambodian descent was admitted to the hospital with fatigue, constipation, weight loss, abdominal pain, and abdominal swelling. Before the onset of symptoms, the woman was healthy, as were the majority of her close relatives. Laboratory testing indicated signs of liver dysfunction, prompting a CT scan. Multiple hepatic lesions and inflammation of the bile ducts were evident. Stool samples examined over several successive days revealed the presence of numerous eggs. The woman had visited Cambodia recently, but her symptoms had begun before she traveled there.

1. What type of patient history would you take? Why is this necessary and important?
2. What would you do to ascertain the parasite causing the woman's illness?
3. What is the treatment for this condition?
4. What type of preventive measures could have kept this woman disease free?
5. Are this woman's relatives at risk of contracting the disease from her?



▲ **Figure 23.21 An egg of *Schistosoma mansoni*, from a stool sample.** Distinctive spines characterize the eggs of blood flukes.

Diagnosis involves the correlation of symptoms and patient history with microscopic identification of eggs in fecal matter, although *Fasciola* eggs are not always readily distinguishable from those of other intestinal and liver flukes, and symptoms alone mimic other liver disorders. However, liver failure following the consumption of watercress or other raw vegetables grown in endemic areas is suggestive.

Treatment is dependent on accurate diagnosis, as *F. hepatica* does not respond to praziquantel as other flukes do. Oral triclabendazole is effective.

CRITICAL THINKING

Thoroughly cooking raw vegetables prior to consumption would kill the metacercariae of *Fasciola* and prevent infection. Why is this method of prevention not practical?

Blood Flukes: *Schistosoma*

Blood flukes in the genus *Schistosoma* (shis´tō-sō´mă) are dioecious and cause **schistosomiasis** (shis´tō-sō-mī´ă-sis)—a potentially fatal disease and one of the major public health problems in the world. A common name for the disease is "snail fever," which refers to the important role that snails play in the spread of the disease. The World Health Organization reports that over 230 million people require treatment for schistosomiasis worldwide every year. Of these, about 23 million suffer serious disease and 200,000 die. Most cases of schistosomiasis occur in sub-Saharan Africa, but *Schistosoma* is endemic in 77 countries. (See **Emerging Disease Case Study: Snail Fever Reemerges in China.**) Cases occur in the United States in immigrants from endemic countries and in tourists who contact untreated freshwater in those countries. However, human schistosomiasis does not spread because of good sewage treatment and because the appropriate snails do not live in the United States.

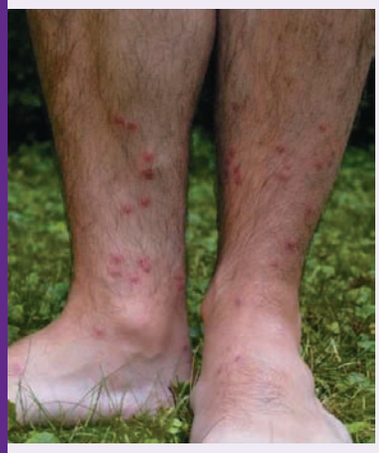
Three geographically limited species of *Schistosoma* infect humans:

- *S. mansoni* (man-sō´nē) is common to the Caribbean, Venezuela, Brazil, Arabia, and large areas of Africa.
- *S. haematobium* (hē´mă-tō´bē-ŭm) is found only in Africa and India.
- *S. japonicum* (jă-pon´i-kŭm) occurs in China, Taiwan, the Philippines, and Japan, although infections in Japan are relatively rare.

Humans are the principal definitive host for most species of *Schistosoma.* Cercariae burrow through the skin of humans who contact contaminated water while washing clothes and utensils, bathing, or swimming. The larvae enter the circulatory system, where they mature and mate. Females lay eggs, which have distinctive spines **(Figure 23.21)**, in the walls of the blood vessels. Muscle contractions in the blood vessels and organs of the human host move eggs to the lumen of the intestine (*S. mansoni*

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

SNAIL FEVER REEMERGES IN CHINA



Chen is concerned about his health. First, there was the rash covering his legs several weeks ago, and now he is definitely getting bigger. His wife calls him "Big Belly." Though some poor people in China might consider fat a good thing, Chen's increased size is actually accompanied by weight loss. Additionally, he has headaches, muscle pain, fever, vomiting, diarrhea, and—most alarming of all—blood in his urine. He suspects he has "snail fever" and so heads for the hospital.

The physicians inform him that "snail fever" is really a disease called schistosomiasis, which is caused by a parasitic helminth (worm)—the fluke *Schistosoma*. Actually, they explain, snails don't cause the disease, though immature flukes live in snails. Immature parasites had left their snail hosts and burrowed into Chen's legs while he was wading. His body's defensive reaction to this attack had produced the rash. Now, *Schistosoma* is attacking his liver, pancreas, and stomach.

It is good that he sees the doctor. Treatment with praziquantel, an anthelmintic drug, stops the attack and brings relief to Chen. Not every victim of schistosomiasis is so blessed; some people die a lingering and painful death.

Chen's grandparents would have been more familiar with the disease, which was nearly eradicated in the 1950s when the government put people to work clearing snails from lakes and streams. The disease is reemerging because economic stability allows the introduction of improved irrigation systems and the creation of more water reservoirs that provide a habitat for the snails that play host to *Schistosoma*.

and *S. japonicum*) or lumens of the urinary bladder and ureters (*S. haematobium*) to be eliminated into the environment.

A mild, temporary dermatitis called *swimmer's itch* may occur in the skin where cercariae burrow.

S. mansoni and *S. japonicum* infections become chronic when eggs lodge in the liver, lungs, brain, or other organs. Trapped eggs die and calcify in the liver, leading to tissue damage that is generally fatal. In *S. haematobium* infections, movement of eggs into the bladder and ureters results in blood in the urine, blockage due to long-term fibrosis and calcification, and, in some geographical regions, fatal bladder cancer.

Diagnosis is most effectively made by microscopic identification of spiny eggs in either stool or urine samples. The species of blood fluke causing a given infection can be ascertained from the shape of the egg and the location of its spine. If eggs are not seen but infection is suspected, immunological assays can be used to identify antigen.

The drug of choice for treatment of schistosomiasis is praziquantel. Prevention of infection depends on improved sanitation, particularly sewage treatment, and avoiding contact with contaminated water. A recombinant vaccine for *S. mansoni* is currently in clinical trials.

CRITICAL THINKING

Propose some additional methods that could be used to prevent transmission of *Schistosoma* infections to humans.

Nematodes

Learning Outcomes

23.16 Describe the common characteristics of nematodes.

23.17 Compare and contrast the three most common nematode infections of humans.

23.18 Discuss the life cycle of filarial nematodes and contrast it with the life cycles of intestinal nematodes.

Nematodes, or roundworms, are long, cylindrical worms that taper at each end, possess complete digestive tracts, and have a protective outer layer called a *cuticle.*

Features of the Life Cycle of Roundworms

Nematodes are highly successful parasites of almost all vertebrates, including humans. They have a number of reproductive strategies:

- Most intestinal nematodes shed their eggs into the lumen of the intestine, where they are eliminated with the feces. The eggs are then consumed by the definitive host either in contaminated food (particularly raw fruits and vegetables that grow close to the soil) or in contaminated drinking water.
- For a few intestinal nematodes, larvae hatch in the soil and actively penetrate the skin of new hosts. Once in the body, they travel a circuitous route (discussed in a later section) to the intestine.

- Other nematodes encyst in muscle tissue and are consumed in raw or undercooked meat.
- Mosquitoes transmit a few species of nematodes, called *filarial nematodes*, among hosts.

All nematodes are dioecious and develop through four larval stages either within eggs, in intermediate hosts, or in the environment before becoming adults. Adult, sexually mature stages are found only in definitive hosts. Copulation of male and female worms leads to the production of fertilized eggs and perpetuation of the cycle.

We examine representative intestinal and filarial nematodes in the following sections. We begin with the largest nematode parasite of humans, *Ascaris lumbricoides*.

Ascaris

Ascaris lumbricoides (as´kă-ris lŭm´bri-koy´dēz), the causative agent of **ascariasis** (as-kă-rī´ă-sis), is the most common nematode infection of humans worldwide, infecting approximately 1 billion people, primarily in tropical and subtropical regions. *Ascaris* is also the largest nematode to infect humans, growing as large as 30 cm in length. The nematode is endemic in rural areas of the southeastern United States.

Adult worms grow and reproduce in the small intestine, where females produce about 200,000 eggs every day. Eggs passed with feces can remain viable for years in moist, warm soil, where an embryo develops within each egg. After eggs are ingested in water or on vegetables, the larvae invade the intestinal wall to enter the circulatory or lymphatic systems. From there the larvae reach the lungs, where they develop through two more larval stages in approximately two weeks. The worms are then coughed up into the pharynx and swallowed. The parasites subsequently develop into adults in the intestine.

Most infections are asymptomatic, though if the worm burden (number of worms) is high, intestinal symptoms and signs can include abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and complete intestinal obstruction, which may be fatal. Transitory fever and pulmonary symptoms, including dry cough, difficulty in breathing, and bloody sputum, may occur during larval migration.

Diagnosis is made by the microscopic identification of eggs in the stool, larvae in sputum, or (rarely) by identification of adult worms passed in the stool or exiting via the nose or mouth—a distinctly unpleasant experience with larger worms **(Figure 23.22)**. The treatment of *Ascaris* with albendazole or mebendazole over one to three days is 90% effective. Surgery may be required to alleviate intestinal obstruction. Proper sanitation and hygiene, including treatment of sewage and drinking water, are important for prevention. Good personal hygiene and cooking practices are also important methods of preventing infection in endemic areas.

▲ **Figure 23.22** ***Ascaris lumbricoides.*** This mass of worms passed from a child in Kenya, Africa. Infestation also occurs in the southeastern United States.

Ancylostoma and *Necator*

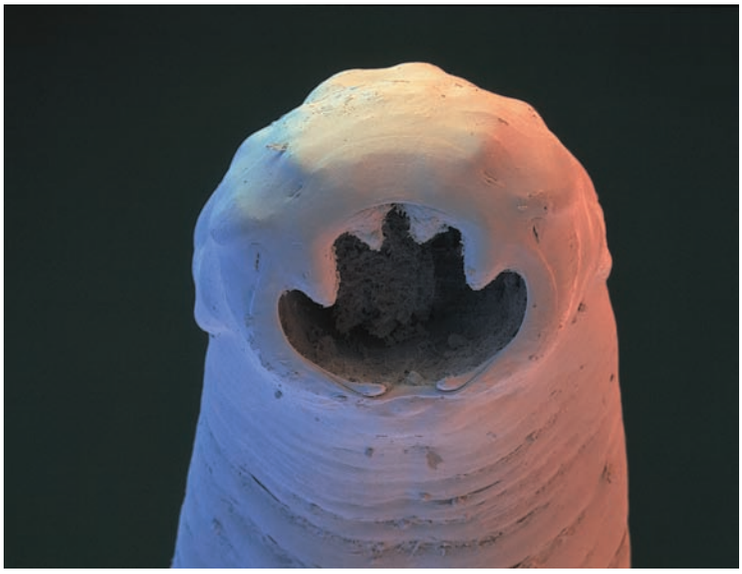
Hookworms, so called because adults resemble shepherd's hooks, are the second most common nematode infecting humans, responsible for more than 600 million infections worldwide, sucking the equivalent of all the blood from 1.5 million people per day. Two hookworms infect humans. *Ancylostoma duodenale* (an-si-los´tō-mă doo´ō-de-nā´lē) is distributed throughout Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Middle East, North Africa, and southern Europe. *Necator americanus* (nē-kā´tor ă-mer-i-ka´nŭs) predominates in the Americas and Australia but can be found in Asia and Africa as well.

Eggs passed in the stools of infected humans are deposited in soil, where they hatch in a couple of days if the soil is warm and moist. The initial larvae develop over a span of 5 to 10 days into infective larvae that can survive up to five weeks in soil. The larvae burrow through human skin and are carried by the circulatory system to the heart and the lungs. In the lungs, larvae burrow into the air cavity and migrate up the trachea to the esophagus, where they are swallowed. Larvae attach to the small intestine, mature into adults, and mate. Most adults survive in the intestine for one to two years or longer.

Adult worms have ghastly looking mouths **(Figure 23.23)** and suck the blood of their hosts, consuming as much as 150 µL of blood per day per worm. This results in chronic anemia, iron deficiency, and protein deficiency.

Itching, rash, and inflammation that can persist for several weeks characterize *ground itch,* which occurs at the site of skin penetration by larvae. Ground itch is generally worse with successive infections. Pulmonary symptoms can also occur.

Microscopic identification of eggs in the stool along with anemia and blood in the feces is diagnostic.



▲ **Figure 23.23** **Mouth of a hookworm.** The teeth allow the parasite to attach to the intestinal wall and feed on blood.

▲ **Figure 23.24** **Eggs of *Enterobius vermicularis*.** Note the characteristic flattening of one side of each egg.

Treatment is with albendazole, mebendazole, or pyrantel pamoate for several days. *N. americanus* is more difficult to treat effectively. Proper sanitation (sewage treatment) is essential for prevention. In areas where hookworm is endemic, going barefoot should be avoided to prevent exposure.

Enterobius

Enterobius vermicularis (en-ter-ō´bī-ŭs ver-mi-kū-lar´is) infects about 500 million people worldwide, particularly in temperate climates, in school-age children, and in conditions of overcrowding. *Enterobius* is the most common parasitic worm found in the United States, affecting 40 million Americans. It is commonly known as the pinworm, after the shape of the female worm's tail. Humans are the only host for *Enterobius.*

After mating in the colon, female pinworms migrate at night to the anus, where they deposit eggs perianally. Scratching dislodges eggs onto clothes or bedding, where they dry out, become aerosolized, and settle in water or on food that is then ingested. Alternatively, scratching deposits eggs on the skin and under the fingernails such that infected individuals can continually reinfect themselves by ingesting the eggs on their hands or in food. Adult worms mature in several weeks and live in the intestinal tract for approximately two months.

One-third of all *Enterobius* infections are asymptomatic. When symptoms do occur, intense perianal itching is the chief complaint. Scratching can lead to secondary bacterial infections. Rarely, worms enter a female's genital tract, where they can cause inflammation of the vulva.

Microscopy is used for diagnosis. In the morning, before bathing or defecation, transparent sticky tape is applied to the perianal area to collect the readily identifiable microscopic eggs **(Figure 23.24)**. Adult worms, if recovered, are also diagnostic.

Treatment is with an initial dose of pyrantel pamoate or mebendazole followed by a second treatment two weeks later to kill any newly acquired worms. Prevention of reinfection and spread to family members requires thorough laundering of all clothes and bedding of infected individuals. Further, infected individuals should not handle food to be consumed by others.

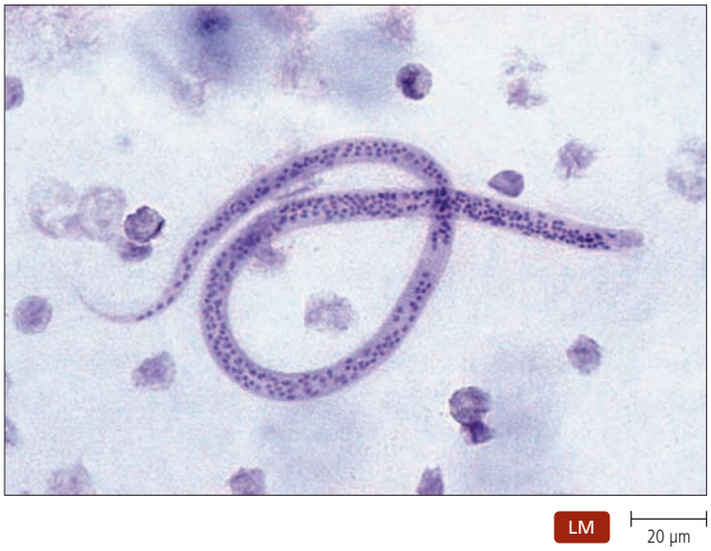
Wuchereria

Wuchereria bancrofti (voo-ker-e´rē-ă ban-krof´tē) is a *filarial nematode*—a type of nematode that infects not the intestinal tract of vertebrate hosts but rather the lymphatic system, causing **filariasis** (fil-ă-rī´ă-sis). *W. bancrofti* infects the lymphatic system of about 120 million people throughout the tropics of Africa, India, Southeast Asia, Indonesia, the Pacific Islands, South America, and the Caribbean. Female mosquitoes of the genera *Culex* (kyu´leks), *Aedes* (ā-ē´dēz), and *Anopheles* transmit the worm.

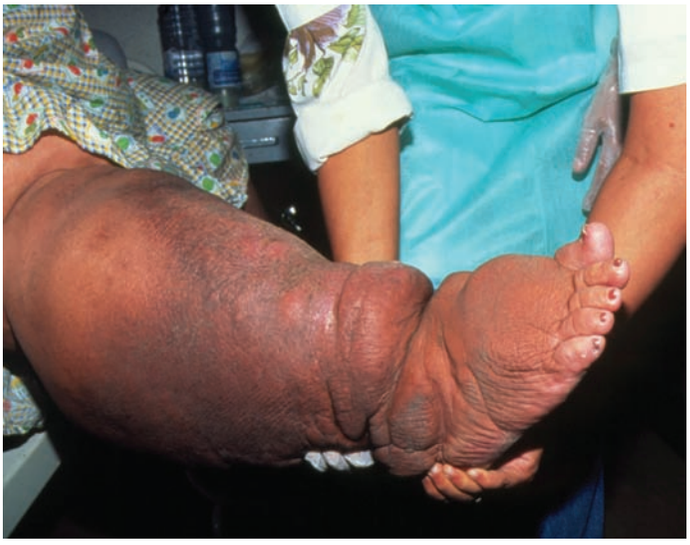
Mosquitoes ingest circulating larvae called *microfilariae* (mī´krō-fi-lar´ē-ī) while feeding on humans **(Figure 23.25)**. The microfilariae develop as larvae in the mosquito and eventually migrate to the salivary glands. When the mosquito next feeds, parasites are injected into a new person.

Larvae migrate via the circulatory system to deeper tissues, where they mature. Adults live and reproduce for up to 17 years in lymphatic vessels. During the day, microfilariae stay in capillaries of internal organs; they swim freely in the bloodstream only at night, coinciding with the feeding habits of most mosquitoes.

Filariasis remains asymptomatic for years. As the disease progresses, lymphatic damage occurs—subcutaneous tissues swell grotesquely because blocked lymphatic vessels cannot drain properly. The end result is **elephantiasis** (el-ĕ-fan-tī´ă-sis),



▲ **Figure 23.25** **A microfilaria of *Wuchereria bancrofti* in blood.**



▲ **Figure 23.26** **Elephantiasis in a leg.** This condition follows years of infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti*. *Adult* Wuchereria *are found in what human body system?*

Figure 23.26 *Adults of Wuchereria live in the lymphatic system.*

generally in the lower extremities, in which tissues enlarge and harden in areas where lymph has accumulated **(Figure 23.26)**. Elephantiasis can be further associated with secondary bacterial infections in affected portions of the body.

Diagnosis is made by the microscopic identification of microfilariae in the blood. Blood samples are collected at night, when microfilariae circulate. In addition to microscopy, immunoassays using antibodies to detect *W. bancrofti* antigens in the blood can be used for diagnosis.

Treatment with diethylcarbamazine in combination with albendazole effectively kills microfilariae and some adult worms.

Prevention relies on using insect repellents or mosquito netting; wearing loose, long, light-colored clothing; or remaining indoors when mosquitoes are most active. In endemic areas, particularly urban areas, eliminating standing water (a requirement of mosquitoes' life cycle) around human dwellings decreases mosquito numbers. Widespread spraying with insecticides to kill mosquitoes has reduced the prevalence of filariasis.

Table 23.2 summarizes the key features of the common helminthic parasites of humans.

Protozoan and helminthic diseases are found worldwide, and much of the world's population is at risk of infection. Many of the drugs used to treat parasitic diseases have been around for decades, and, whereas most remain effective, resistant parasites are occurring with greater frequency. No effective vaccines have been produced for any of the diseases discussed in this chapter. The only way to protect oneself, therefore, is to avoid exposure.

Arthropod Vectors

Learning Outcome

23.19 List the principal arthropod vectors of human pathogens and give one example of a pathogen transmitted by each.

Vectors are animals—usually *arthropods* (ar´thrō-podz)—that carry microbial pathogens. An **arthropod** is an animal with a segmented body, a hard exoskeleton (external skeleton), and jointed legs. Arthropods are extremely diverse and abundant—insects alone account for more than half of all the known species on Earth.

Some arthropods are *biological vectors*, meaning that they also serve as hosts for the pathogens they transmit. Given that arthropods are usually small organisms (so small that we don't notice them until they bite us) and given that they produce large numbers of offspring, controlling arthropod vectors to eliminate their role in the transmission of important human diseases is an almost insurmountable task.

Disease vectors belong to two classes of arthropods: *Arachnida* (ticks and mites) and the more common *Insecta* (fleas, lice, flies, and true bugs) (see Figure 12.33). Mosquitoes—a type of fly—are the most important vector of human diseases. Most arthropod vectors are found on a host only when they are actively feeding. Lice are the only vectors that may spend their entire lives in association with a single individual.

(Chapter 12 discusses vectors in more detail.)

TABLE 23.2 Key Features of Representative Helminthic Parasites of Humans

Organism	Primary Infection or Disease	Geographical Distribution	Mode of Transmission	Length of Adult Worms
Cestodes (Tapeworms)				
Taenia saginata; Taenia solium	Beef tapeworm infestation; pork tapeworm infestation	Worldwide with local endemic areas	Consumption of undercooked meat	*T. saginata:* 5–25 m; *T. solium:* 2–7 m
Echinococcus granulosus	Hydatid disease	Worldwide with local endemic areas	Consumption of eggs shed in dog feces	3–6 mm
Trematodes (Flukes)				
Fasciola hepatica; F. gigantica	Fascioliasis	*F. hepatica:* Europe, Middle East, Asia; *F. gigantica:* Asia, Africa, Hawaii	Consumption of watercress or lettuce	Up to 30 mm; up to 75 mm
Schistosoma spp.	Schistosomiasis	*S. mansoni:* Caribbean, South America, Arabia, Africa; *S. haematobium:* Africa, India; *S. japonicum:* eastern Asia	Direct penetration of the skin	7–20 mm
Nematodes (Roundworms)				
Ascaris lumbricoides	Ascariasis	Tropics and subtropics worldwide	Fecal-oral	Females: 20–35 cm; males: 15–30 cm
Ancylostoma duodenale, Necator americanus	Hookworm disease	*Ancylostoma:* Africa, Asia, the Americas, Middle East, North Africa, southern Europe; *Necator:* the Americas, Australia, Asia, Africa	Direct penetration of the skin	*Ancylostoma* females: 10–13 mm, males: 8–11 mm; *Necator* females: 9–11 mm, males: 7–9 mm
Enterobius vermicularis	Pinworm	Worldwide	Anal-oral and fecal-oral, inhalation	Females: 8–13 mm; males: 2–5 mm
Wuchereria bancrofti	Filariasis, elephantiasis	Worldwide, tropics	Mosquitoes	Females: 80–100 mm; males: 40 mm

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

1. **Parasitology** is the study of protozoan and helminthic parasites of animals and humans. All parasites have a **definitive host** in which adult or sexual stages reproduce, and many parasites also have one or more **intermediate hosts,** in which immature stages live.

Protozoan Parasites of Humans (pp. 659–673)

1. Many protozoa have two life stages: a trophozoite (feeding) stage and a dormant cyst stage. **Encystment** is the process of cyst formation; **excystment** refers to the process by which cysts become trophozoites.
2. *Balantidium coli* is the only **ciliate** to cause disease in humans. It is responsible for **balantidiasis,** usually a mild gastrointestinal illness.
3. **Amoebae** are protozoa that move and feed using pseudopods. *Entamoeba histolytica* is a relatively common protozoan parasite that causes **amebiasis,** which can be mild luminal amebiasis, more

severe amebic dysentery, or very severe invasive extraintestinal amebiasis, in which the parasite causes lesions in the liver, lungs, brain, and other organs.

4. *Acanthamoeba* and *Naegleria* are free-living amoebae that rarely infect humans. Both are acquired from water. *Acanthamoeba* causes keratitis and **amebic encephalitis,** which progresses slowly and is usually fatal. *Naegleria* causes a more rapid **amebic meningoencephalitis,** which is also fatal.

5. Parasitic **flagellates** include *Trypanosoma, Leishmania, Giardia,* and *Trichomonas.*

6. *Trypanosoma cruzi,* transmitted by the kissing bug *(Triatoma),* causes **Chagas' disease** in the Americas, where it is a frequent cause of heart disease. *T. brucei,* transmitted by the tsetse fly *(Glossina),* causes **African sleeping sickness.**

7. Both trypanosomes have similar life cycles. Epimastigotes in the insect gut develop into infective trypomastigotes introduced to the human host by the insect vector. *T. cruzi* trypomastigotes develop intracellularly in macrophages and heart muscle as amastigotes. *T. brucei* trypomastigotes remain in the blood, are antigenically variable, can spread to the CNS, and can be fatal.

8. Many species of *Leishmania* infect humans. Each parasite has two developmental stages: an intracellular amastigote in mammals and a promastigote form in sand flies, which transmit the disease. Three clinical forms of **leishmaniasis** are seen, each with increasing severity: cutaneous, mucocutaneous, and visceral. Leishmaniasis is a **zoonosis**—a disease of animals transmitted to humans.

9. *Giardia intestinalis* is a frequent cause of gastrointestinal disease **(giardiasis)** and is endemic worldwide. Giardiasis is rarely fatal.

10. *Trichomonas vaginalis* is the most common protozoan disease of humans. This sexually transmitted protozoan causes **vaginosis.** Prevention relies on abstinence, monogamy, and condom usage.

11. *Plasmodium* species, *Toxoplasma, Cryptosporidium,* and *Cyclospora* are all **apicomplexans,** in which sexual reproduction produces oocysts that undergo schizogony to produce various forms.

12. Five species of *Plasmodium* cause **malaria** and are transmitted by female *Anopheles* mosquitoes. The complex life cycle of *Plasmodium* has three stages: Sporozoites travel to the liver to initiate the **exoerythrocytic phase.** Rupture of liver cells releases merozoites from intracellular schizonts. Merozoites infect erythrocytes to initiate the **erythrocytic cycle.** The **sporogonic phase** in the mosquito has an oocyst that divides to form sporozoites, which are injected into humans when the mosquito feeds. Dormant hypnozoites are produced by *P. ovale* and *P. vivax*. *P. falciparum* produces the deadliest form of malaria. Several host traits influence whether an individual is susceptible to malaria.

13. *Toxoplasma gondii* causes **toxoplasmosis,** a disease of cats that can be acquired by other animals and humans, primarily via the consumption of meat containing the parasites. Toxoplasmosis is generally mild in humans, but *Toxoplasma* can cross the placenta to cause serious harm to fetuses.

14. Both *Cryptosporidium parvum* and *Cyclospora cayetanensis* cause waterborne gastrointestinal disease in the United States. *Cryptosporidium,* which causes ***Cryptosporidium*** **enteritis** (cryptosporidiosis), is resistant to standard water treatment methods. Cyclosporiasis is an emerging disease in the United States.

Helminthic Parasites of Humans (pp. 674–682)

1. **Helminths** are multicellular eukaryotic worms, some of which are parasitic.

2. **Cestodes** (tapeworms) all share similar morphologies and general life cycles. A **scolex** attaches the tapeworm to the intestine of its definitive host. From this extends a neck region from which **proglottids** grow. When fertilized eggs (sometimes within gravid proglottids) are eaten by an intermediate host, they hatch to release larval stages that invade tissues of the intermediate host and form **cysticerci**. When the cysticerci are eaten by a definitive host, they undergo development into adult tapeworms.

3. Humans are the definitive hosts of *Taenia saginata,* the beef tapeworm, and *Taenia solium,* the pork tapeworm. Humans become infected by eating cysticerci in undercooked beef or pork, respectively.

4. *Echinococcus granulosus* forms **hydatid** cysts to cause **hydatid disease** in humans who are accidental intermediate hosts when they ingest the helminth's eggs. The definitive host is a canine.

5. **Trematodes,** or flukes, are often divided into four groups: blood, intestinal, liver, and lung flukes. Eggs deposited in water hatch to release miracidia, which burrow into freshwater snails. Following asexual reproduction cercariae are released into the water. In intestinal, liver, and lung flukes, cercariae encyst on plants or in a second intermediate host as metacercariae, which are ingested by human hosts. Cercariae of blood flukes directly penetrate the skin of humans. After maturation occurs in the human, flukes release eggs back into the environment via the feces or urine.

6. *Fasciola* is a liver fluke. Humans acquire *Fasciola* by ingesting metacercariae on watercress or other vegetables.

7. Species of *Schistosoma* (blood flukes) affect millions of people worldwide, causing **schistosomiasis.** Three species infect humans: *S. mansoni, S. japonicum,* and *S. haematobium,* each of which is geographically limited. Extensive infections significantly damage the liver.

8. **Nematodes** are round, unsegmented worms with pointed ends.

9. *Ascaris lumbricoides,* the largest nematode to infect humans, causes **ascariasis,** which is the most common nematode disease of humans in the world. Eggs containing infective larvae are consumed with contaminated vegetables. The eggs hatch in the intestine, and larvae enter the lymphatic system. Worm migration through the body may be associated with various symptoms, but infections are usually not fatal.

10. *Ancylostoma duodenale* and *Necator americanus* are both hookworms, the second most common nematodes to infect humans worldwide. Eggs deposited in soil mature to form infective larvae that leave the egg and actively burrow through human skin to initiate infection. The circulatory system carries the worms through the lungs and heart. Eventually worms migrate up the respiratory tract to the pharynx, where they are swallowed. They become adults in the intestine, where they attach to the intestinal mucosa and feed on blood. Hookworm infection can lead to anemia and other blood-related dysfunction.

11. The pinworm *Enterobius vermicularis* is the most common parasitic worm infestation of humans in the United States and the third most common in the world. Eggs deposited in the perianal area are introduced into the mouth following scratching to reinfect

the human host. Transmission among family members is also common.

12. *Wuchereria bancrofti* is a filarial (threadlike) nematode of humans, causing **filariasis.** It lives in the lymphatic system, where adult worms block lymph flow, causing **elephantiasis,** in which lymph accumulates, especially in the lower extremities. Bacterial infections may ensue, and subcutaneous tissues harden, producing permanent disfigurement. The parasite is transmitted when microfilariae, which circulate in the blood, are picked up by feeding mosquitoes.

Arthropod Vectors (p. 682)

1. **Arthropods** are organisms with segmented bodies, jointed legs, and a hard exoskeleton. They are found worldwide in nearly all habitats, and some may serve as biological vectors for many organisms. Arthropod vectors are arachnids (adults having eight legs) or insects (adults having six legs).
2. Arachnid vectors include mites and ticks.
3. Insect vectors include fleas, lice, flies, and kissing bugs. Mosquitoes are the most important arthropod vectors of human diseases.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except for Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Parasitology is the study of _____.
   a. parasitic viruses
   b. parasitic prokaryotes
   c. parasitic fungi
   d. parasitic eukaryotes

2. The only ciliate to cause disease in humans is _____.
   a. *Naegleria*
   b. *Balantidium*
   c. *Fasciola*
   d. *Trypanosoma*

3. Which of the following organisms is regularly transmitted sexually?
   a. *Trichomonas*
   b. *Entamoeba*
   c. *Trypanosoma*
   d. *Enterobius*

4. *Leishmania* species are transmitted by _____.
   a. sand flies
   b. tsetse flies
   c. kissing bugs
   d. mosquitoes

5. Which of the following is the name of the intracellular infection stage of *Leishmania*?
   a. miracidia
   b. metacercaria
   c. bradyzoite
   d. amastigote

6. In malaria, which stage occurs in red blood cells?
   a. exoerythrocytic phase
   b. erythrocytic cycle
   c. sporogonic phase
   d. amastigote cycle

7. The definitive host for *Toxoplasma gondii* is _____.
   a. humans
   b. cats
   c. birds
   b. mosquitoes

8. Tapeworms are generally transmitted via _____.
   a. consumption of an intermediate host
   b. consumption of the definitive host
   c. vectors such as mosquitoes
   d. consumption of adult tapeworms

9. *Cryptosporidium* cannot be killed by routine boiling. Another parasite resistant to such boiling is _____.
   a. *Giardia*
   b. *Trypanosoma*
   c. *Toxoplasma*
   d. *Plasmodium*

10. The immature fluke stages that infect snail intermediate hosts are called _____.
    a. metacercariae
    b. cercariae
    c. cysticerci
    d. miracidia

11. The beef tapeworm is known by what scientific name?
    a. *Taenia solium*
    b. *Taenia saginata*
    c. *Ancylostoma duodenale*
    d. *Echinococcus granulosus*

12. *Enterobius vermicularis* is commonly called _____.
    a. hookworm
    b. pinworm
    c. whipworm
    d. tapeworm

13. The infective larvae of *Necator americanus* must pass through which human organ to mature?
    a. bladder
    b. brain
    c. lung
    d. liver

14. Both *Plasmodium* species and *Wuchereria bancrofti* can be carried by mosquitoes in the genus _____.
    a. *Aedes*
    b. *Anopheles*
    c. *Culex*
    d. *Ctenocephalides*

15. Which of the following arthropods is responsible for transmitting the most parasitic diseases?
    a. fleas
    b. ticks
    c. mosquitoes
    d. true bugs

16. The majority of cestodes are transmitted via _____.
    a. ingestion
    b. vectors
    c. direct contact
    d. inhalation

17. Which of the following is most effective in preventing infection by *Giardia?*
    a. sexual abstinence
    b. drinking only bottled water
    c. use of insect repellent
    d. cooking all food

18. The sporogonic phase of *Plasmodium* occurs in _____.
    a. red blood cells
    b. liver cells
    c. schizonts
    d. *Anopheles* mosquitoes

19. The tapeworm attachment organ is a _____.
    a. scolex
    b. proglottid
    c. strobila
    d. cuticle

20. Trophozoite-cyst conversion is vital to the life of _____.
    a. *Balantidium*
    b. *Entamoeba*
    c. *Giardia*
    d. all of the above

Modified True/False

Mark each statement as true or false. Rewrite the false statements to make them true by changing the underlined word(s).

1. _____ Sexual contact is the most common method of transmission of parasites.
2. _____ Examination of stool samples can reveal the presence of *Naegleria* parasites.
3. _____ *Trichomonas vaginalis* is the most common parasitic protozoan of humans in the industrialized world.
4. _____ *Trypanosoma brucei* is transmitted by tsetse flies, and *Trypanosoma cruzi* is transmitted by kissing bugs.
5. _____ *Plasmodium falciparum* causes the most serious form of malaria.
6. _____ Toxoplasmosis can be transmitted across a placenta.
7. _____ Humans can become intermediate hosts for *Taenia saginata.*
8. _____ *Fasciola hepatica* can be acquired by eating infected sheep.
9. _____ The number of cases of schistosomiasis has increased worldwide because of improved technology and economic stability in endemic areas.
10. _____ *Wuchereria bancrofti* is a filarial nematode that infects the lymphatic system.

Fill in the Blanks

1. *Balantidium coli* can be distinguished from *Entamoeba histolytica* microscopically because *B. coli* has _____.
2. _____ may be transmitted to humans from cat litter boxes.
3. African sleeping sickness is caused by *Trypanosoma* _____ but not by *Trypanosoma* _____ .
4. The parasitic amoeba _____ can be acquired by ingestion.
5. Both *Plasmodium vivax* and *P. ovale* can form dormant _____.
6. Of the parasitic helminths discussed in this chapter, the only one transmitted by mosquitoes is _____ .
7. The following helminths can directly penetrate the skin of humans to establish infection: _____, _____, and _____ (give genera only).
8. A trematode that can be acquired by eating raw or undercooked vegetables is _____ .
9. Hookworm disease is caused by _____ in the Middle East.
10. Both of the following parasites demonstrate nocturnal movement, which is important during diagnosis: _____ and _____ .

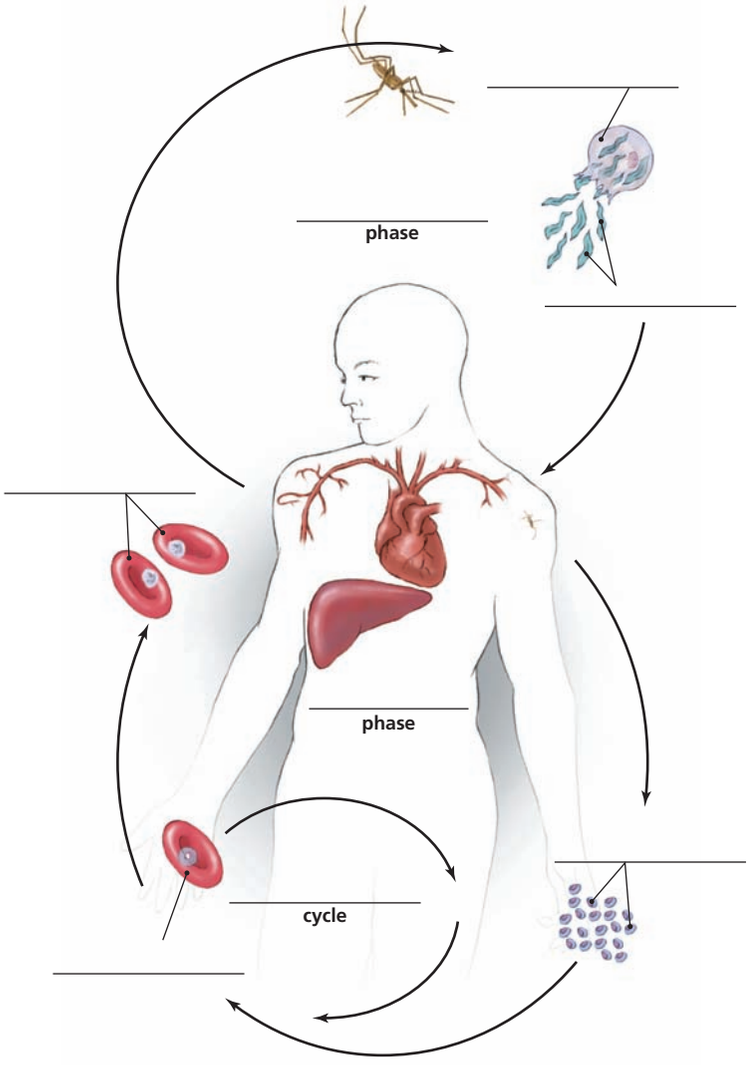
Matching

Match the terms with the correct organisms. Answers may be used more than once, and an organism may have more than one answer.

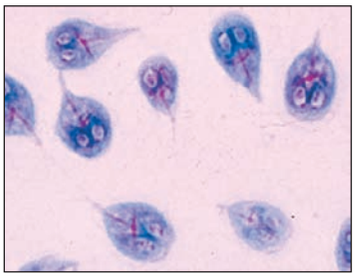
1.	_____ *Balantidium coli*	A.	Miracidia
2.	_____ *Echinococcus granulosus*	B.	Bradyzoites
3.	_____ *Fasciola* spp.	C.	Schizogony
4.	_____ *Leishmania* spp.	D.	Microfilaria
5.	_____ *Plasmodium falciparum*	E.	Hydatid cyst
6.	_____ *Plasmodium vivax*	F.	Cysticerci
7.	_____ *Taenia* spp.	G.	Trophozoites
8.	_____ *Toxoplasma gondii*	H.	Amastigotes
9.	_____ *Trypanosoma*	I.	Hypnozoites
10.	_____ *Wuchereria bancrofti*	J.	Trypomastigotes

Visualize It!

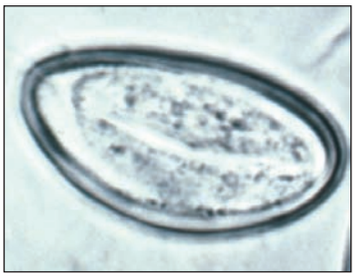
1. Label the three stages of the *Plasmodium* life cycle and label the forms of the parasite where indicated.



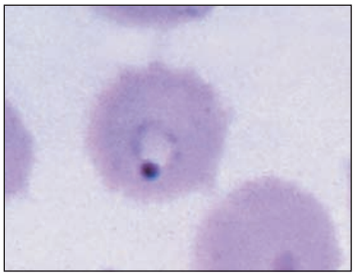
2. Identify the genera of the parasites in these clinical specimens.



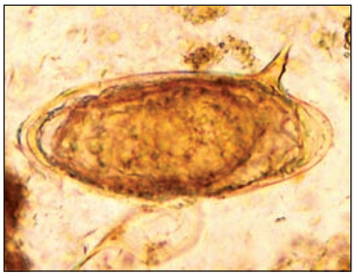
fecal
a. _____



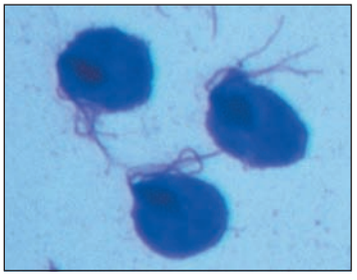
anal
b. _____



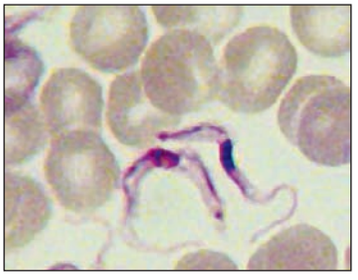
blood
c. _____



fecal
d. _____

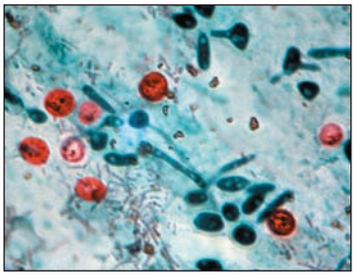


vaginal
e. _____



blood
f. _____

fecal
g. _____



fecal
h. _____

Short Answer

1. Why do insect vectors and animal reservoirs increase the difficulty of preventing and controlling parasitic infections in humans?
2. How is the transmission of the amoeba *Entamoeba* different from the transmission of the amoebae *Acanthamoeba* and *Naegleria*?

Critical Thinking

1. Compare *Entamoeba, Acanthamoeba,* and *Naegleria.* Based on incidence, which of these parasites is a threat to more people? Clinically, which is the most serious? Explain why your answer is not the same for both questions.
2. Explain how each of the following could lead to the reemergence of malaria in the United States: (a) global warming, (b) increased travel of individuals from endemic regions to the United States, (c) increased immigration of individuals from endemic regions to the United States, (d) regulations against the use of insecticides, and (e) laws protecting wetlands.
3. People who suffer from AIDS are severely immunocompromised because HIV destroys immune cells; thus, all the diseases in this chapter could be a threat to an AIDS patient. Which diseases, however, would specifically exacerbate the immune dysfunction of AIDS? Why?
4. Discuss why sickle-cell trait is advantageous to people living in areas where malaria is endemic but not advantageous in malaria-free areas.
5. Present a logical argument to explain the differences between the clinical manifestations of *Trypanosoma brucei* and *T. cruzi.* Relate your argument to the respective life cycles.
6. What feature of the life cycle of *T. brucei* makes it difficult to create a successful vaccine?
7. On July 10, a man in Palm Beach, Florida, was admitted to the hospital with a month long history of fever, chills, headache, and vomiting. A parasite was observed in a blood smear. What parasite causes these signs and symptoms? What is the treatment? Is this a rare disease in Florida?
8. In March 2009, a Peace Corps volunteer was evacuated from Malawi in Africa because of a two-week history of headaches, vision loss, and an episode of unconsciousness. Doctors discovered a granular swelling in his brain and eggs with peripheral spines in his urine. What is the diagnosis? What species is involved? What is the treatment?
9. Humans can accidentally become intermediate hosts of *Taenia solium*. Why is this is a dead end for the parasite?

Concept Mapping

Using the following terms, draw a concept map that describes intestinal protozoan parasites. For a sample concept map, see p. 93. Or, complete this concept map online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Amoebae
Apicomplexans
Balantidium coli
Ciliates
Cryptosporidium parvum
Cyclospora cayetanensis
Cysts
Diarrhea
Dormant stage
Entamoeba histolytica
Environment
Fecal-oral route
Flagellates
Giardia intestinalis
Livestock wastes
New host
Oocyst
People with AIDS
Reproducing/feeding stage
Trophozoites
Two morphological forms
Unknown
Water

24 Pathogenic DNA Viruses

Everyone reading this textbook has been infected by **DNA viruses** at one time or another. Fever blisters (cold sores), warts, chickenpox, infectious mononucleosis, and many types of colds are all caused by viruses that have DNA genomes. DNA viruses are also the cause of smallpox, **hepatitis B**, shingles, and genital **herpes**, and they are associated with some cancers. Fortunately, many of the more severe diseases caused by DNA viruses, including hepatitis B and **hepatic cancer**, are relatively rare. However, smallpox—a disease that has been successfully eradicated in nature—is once again a public health concern because of its potential as an agent of **bioterrorism**.

In this chapter we focus on a selection of medically important DNA viruses—the differences among them, the diseases they cause, and the ways they may be transmitted, treated, and prevented. (The general characteristics of DNA viruses were covered in Chapter 13.)

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Hepatitis B virus is a DNA virus that causes hepatitis and liver cancer.

DNA viruses that cause human diseases are grouped into seven families based on several factors, including the type of DNA they contain, the presence or absence of an envelope, size, and the host cells they attack. DNA viruses have either double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) or single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) for their genomes, and none of them contains functional RNA (see Chapter 13). Double-stranded DNA viruses belong to the families *Poxviridae, Herpesviridae, Papillomaviridae, Polyomaviridae,* and *Adenoviridae.* The family *Parvoviridae* contains viruses with ssDNA genomes. Viruses in the family *Hepadnaviridae* are unusual because they have a genome that is partly dsDNA and partly ssDNA. In the following sections we examine the infections and diseases caused by the viruses in each of these families.

Poxviridae

Learning Outcomes

24.1 Name two diseases caused by poxviruses and discuss their signs and symptoms.

24.2 Describe the progression of disease in poxvirus infections.

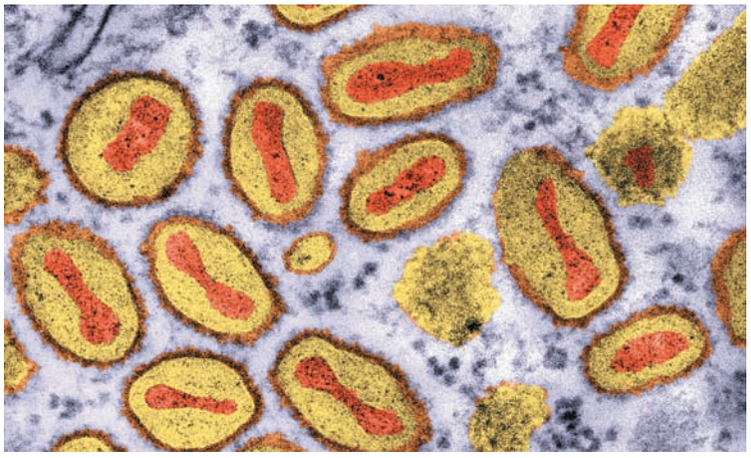
24.3 Discuss the historical importance of poxviruses in immunization and their use in disease eradication.

Poxviruses are double-stranded DNA viruses with complex capsids and envelopes **(Figure 24.1)**. They are the second largest of viruses, being up to 300 nm in diameter, which is just visible with high-quality, optical, ultraviolet light microscopes. Their large size allows them to be potential vectors for the introduction of genetic material in vaccinations and gene therapy.

Specific poxviruses infect many mammals, including mice, camels, elephants, cattle, and monkeys. (Note that chickenpox, discussed later in this chapter, is not caused by a poxvirus, nor does it occur in chickens; instead, it is caused by a herpesvirus that affects people.) Most animal poxviruses are species specific; they are unable to infect humans because they cannot attach to human cells, though a few poxviruses of monkeys, sheep, goats, and cattle can infect some humans because these people have surface proteins similar to proteins of those animals.

All poxviruses produce lesions that progress through a series of stages **(Figure 24.2)**. The lesions begin as flat, reddened **macules**[1] (mak´ūlz), which then become raised sores called **papules**[2] (pap´ūlz); when the lesions fill with clear fluid, they are called **vesicles,** which then progress to pus-filled **pustules**[3] (pŭs´choolz), which are also known as **pocks** or **pox.** These terms for the stages of poxvirus lesions are also used to describe the lesions of other skin infections. Poxvirus pustules dry up to form a crust, and because these lesions penetrate the dermis, they result in characteristic scars.

Infection with poxviruses occurs primarily through inhalation of viruses in droplets or dried crusts. Because the envelopes of poxviruses are relatively unstable outside a host's body, close contact is necessary for infection. The two main poxvirus diseases of humans are *smallpox* and *molluscum contagiosum.* Three diseases of animals—*orf* (sheep and goat pox), *cowpox,* and *monkeypox*—may be transmitted to humans as well.



▲ **Figure 24.1 Poxviruses.** Variola, the causative agent of smallpox, and vaccinia, the agent of cowpox, are in the genus *Orthopoxvirus.*

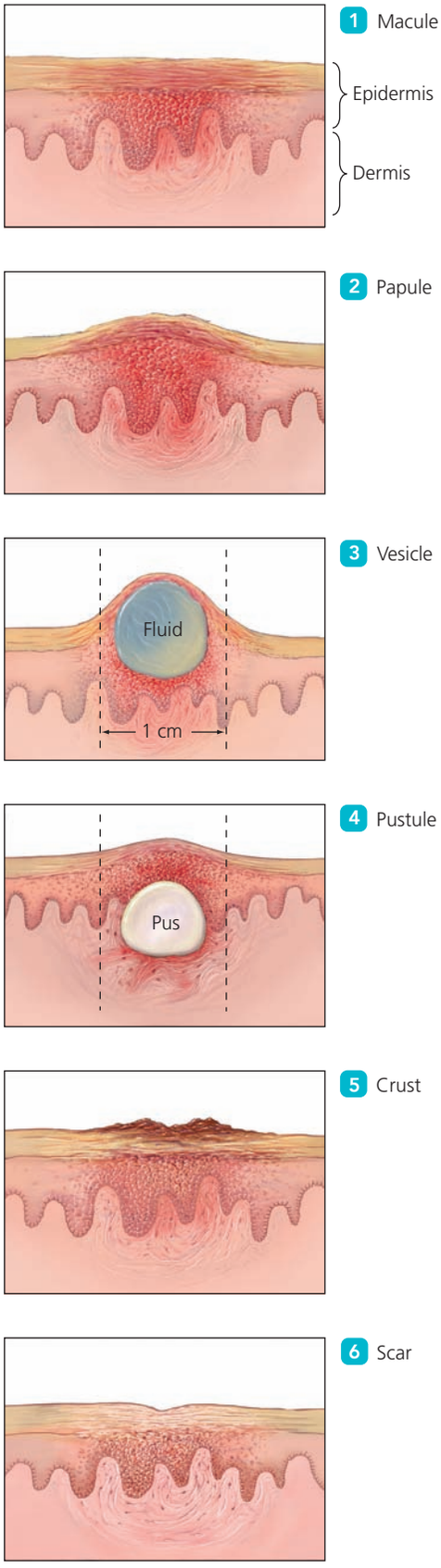
Smallpox

Smallpox has played important roles in the history of microbiology, immunization, epidemiology, and medicine. During the Middle Ages, 80% of the European population contracted smallpox. Later, European colonists introduced smallpox into susceptible Native Americans, resulting in the death of as many as 3.5 million people. Edward Jenner demonstrated immunization using the relatively mild cowpox virus to protect against smallpox. He was successful because the antigens of cowpox virus are chemically similar to those of smallpox virus so that exposure to cowpox results in immunological memory and subsequent resistance against both cowpox and smallpox.

Smallpox virus is in the genus *Orthopoxvirus.* Commonly known as **variola** (vă-rī´ō-lă), it exists in two forms, or strains. **Variola major** causes severe disease with a mortality rate of 20% or higher, depending upon the age and general health of the host; **variola minor** causes a less severe disease with a mortality rate of less than 1%. Both types of variola infect internal organs and produce fever—42°C (107°F) has been recorded—malaise, delirium, and prostration before moving via the blood stream to the skin, where they produce the recognizable pox **(Figure 24.3)**. Both strains also leave severe scars on the skin of survivors, especially on the face.

Smallpox is the first human disease to be eradicated globally in nature. In 1967, the World Health Organization (WHO) began an extensive campaign of identification and isolation of smallpox victims, as well as vaccination of their contacts, with the goal of completely eliminating the disease. The efforts of WHO were successful, and in 1980 smallpox was declared to be eradicated—one of the great accomplishments of 20th-century

[1]From Latin *maculatus*, meaning "spotted."
[2]From Latin *papula*, meaning "pimple."
[3]From Latin *pustula*, meaning "blister."



◀ Figure 24.2 The stages of the lesions in poxvirus infections. Red macules become hard papules, then fluid-filled vesicles that become pus-filled pustules (pox), which then crust over and leave characteristic scars. *Are the dried viruses in the crusts of smallpox and cowpox lesions infective?*

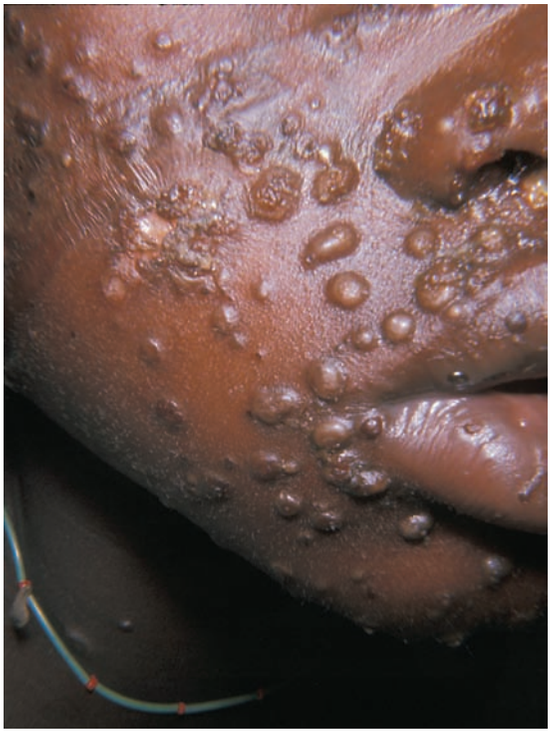
Figure 24.2 *Yes, the dried crusts of poxvirus lesions may contain active viruses. The Chinese used the viruses in crusts for variolation, an early attempt at vaccination.*

medicine. The factors that made it possible for smallpox to be eliminated included the following:

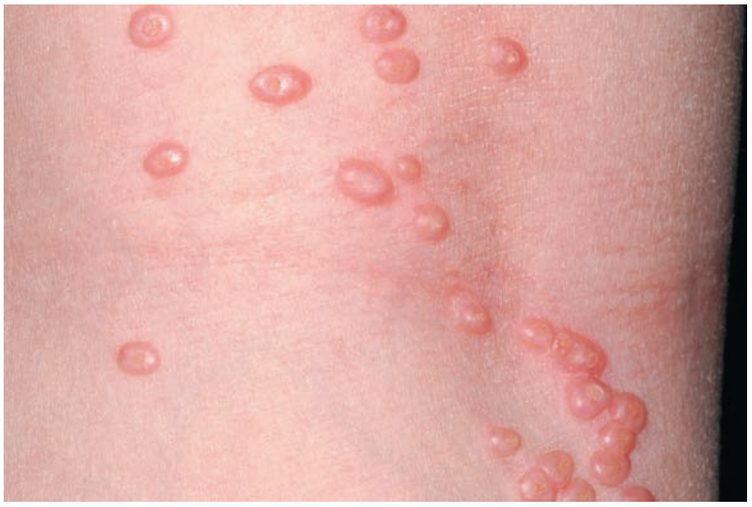
- An inexpensive, stable, and effective vaccine (vaccinia, cowpox virus) is available.
- Smallpox is specific to humans; there are no animal reservoirs.
- The severe, obvious signs and symptoms of smallpox enable quick and accurate diagnosis and quarantine.
- There are no asymptomatic cases.
- The virus is spread only via close contact.

Stocks of the virus are still maintained in laboratories in the United States and Russia as research tools for investigations concerning virulence, pathogenicity, protection against bioterrorism, vaccination, and recombinant DNA technology.

Routine vaccination against smallpox has ceased in the United States, though some health care workers and military



▲ Figure 24.3 Smallpox lesions. Facial scarring was often especially severe in smallpox.



▲ **Figure 24.4** **Lesions of molluscum contagiosum.** *Molluscipoxvirus*, a poxvirus, causes the pearly white to light pink, tumorlike lesions.

personnel were vaccinated following the 2001 bioterrorism attack. Studies have shown that older citizens who were vaccinated as children still retain some immunity. One-tenth the regular vaccine dose is effective for revaccination of these adults.

Now that smallpox vaccination has been discontinued in many countries, experts are concerned that the world's population is once again susceptible to smallpox epidemics if the virus were accidentally released from storage or used as a biological weapon. For this reason, many scientists advocate the destruction of all smallpox virus stocks; other scientists insist that we must maintain the virus in secure laboratories so that it is available for the development of more effective vaccines and treatments if the virus is disseminated in a bioterrorism attack.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

The World Health Organization (WHO), the United States, and Russia have repeatedly discussed the destruction of the two countries' stocks of the smallpox virus, but deadlines for destruction have been postponed numerous times. In the meantime, the entire genome of variola major has been sequenced. What reasons can governments cite for maintaining smallpox viruses? Should all laboratory stores of smallpox viruses be destroyed? Given that the genome of the virus has been sequenced and that DNA can be synthesized, would elimination of all laboratory stocks really be the extinction of the smallpox virus?

Molluscum Contagiosum

Another poxvirus, *Molluscipoxvirus*, causes **molluscum contagiosum** (mo-lŭs´kŭm kon-taj-ē-ō´sum), a skin disease characterized by smooth, waxy papules that frequently occur in lines where the patient has spread the virus by scratching **(Figure 24.4)**. Lesions may occur anywhere but typically appear on the face, trunk, and external genitalia.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Orthopoxvirus variola (Smallpox Virus)

Taxonomy: Family *Poxviridae*

Genome and morphology: Single molecule of double-stranded DNA; enveloped, brick-shaped or pleomorphic, complex capsid, 250 nm × 250–300 nm × 150–300 nm

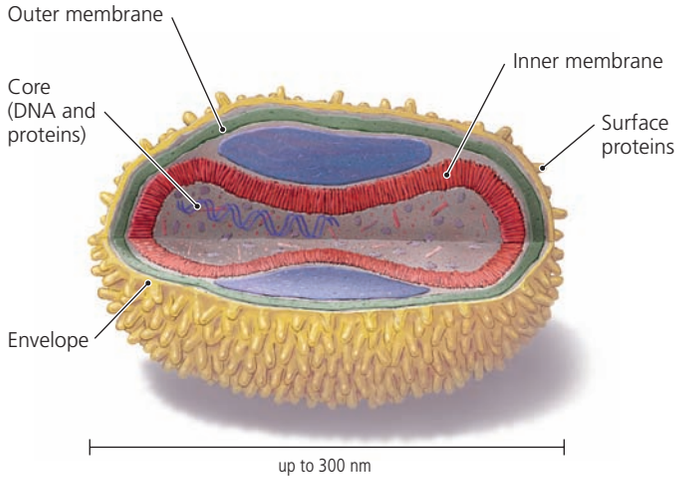
Host: Humans

Virulence factors: Remains very stable in aerosol form; highly contagious between people; can remain viable for as long as 24 hours

Disease caused: Smallpox

Treatment for disease: Administration of vaccine within four days of infection prevents disease in most patients; anticowpox immunoglobulins may be efficacious

Prevention of disease: Smallpox has been eliminated in nature and presumably could reappear only if released from secure storage facilities; if it were released, vaccination of exposed individuals and quarantine of patients would need to be implemented immediately



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Molluscum contagiosum occurs worldwide and is typically spread by contact among infected children, sexually active individuals (particularly adolescents), and AIDS patients. Treatment involves removing the infected nodules by chemicals or freezing, though people with normal immune systems heal within months without treatment. Sexual abstinence prevents the genital form of the disease. Condoms do not afford protection, as the virus can spread from and to areas not covered by the condom.

Other Poxvirus Infections

Poxvirus infections also occur in animals. Infections of humans with these animal viruses are usually relatively mild, resulting in pox and scars but little other damage. In the case of cowpox,

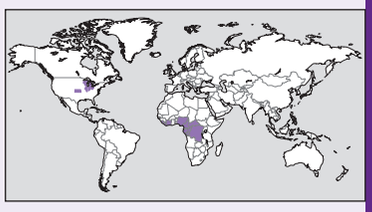
EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

MONKEYPOX

Jamal was excited about the pet he got for his birthday; he was the only boy at school who had a prairie dog! Common dogs were boring; his prairie dog could climb up the drapes, run through plastic tube mazes, and sit on Jamal's shoulder to eat. Doggie was the best. In fact, everything would be just about perfect if only Jamal weren't sick in bed.

Two weeks after his birthday Jamal was exhausted and felt terrible. He had fever accompanied by headache and muscle aches, so his mother had kept him home from school. Then the lymph nodes in his neck and armpits had swollen, and he had gotten frightening, large, raised lesions all over his face and hands. He was really sick.

For the next three weeks, the lesions had become crusty and then fallen off, only to be replaced by new lesions. Jamal felt awful and missed playing with Doggie, who had been confined to his cage, while Jamal stayed in bed. Jamal's doctor had been unable to diagnose the disease, but an infectious disease specialist had finally confirmed monkeypox—a disease named for monkeys who can get the disease. In reality, monkeypox is a disease of rodents, including prairie dogs. Final investigation revealed that the pet wholesaler who had supplied Doggie to Jamal's pet store in Illinois had also supplied African monkeys to stores in Texas. At least one of those monkeys had been infected with monkeypox virus—a virus closely related to smallpox virus. The monkey had infected Doggie who had infected Jamal.



Jamal was sick for four weeks, but monkeypox is not as virulent as smallpox, so Jamal recovered with only some scars as a reminder that not all unusual pets are a blessing.

the advent of milking machines has reduced the number of cases to near zero in the industrialized world. Other poxvirus infections, including those in sheep, goats, and monkeys, are less easily contracted by humans.

Transmission of these poxviruses to humans requires close contact with infected animals, similar to the contact Edward Jenner observed for milkmaids and cowpox. Still, an upsurge in the number of monkeypox cases in humans has been seen in the past decade. (See **Emerging Disease Case Study: Monkeypox.**) This may be the result of human encroachment into monkey habitats or changes in viral antigens. Some researchers speculate that the cessation of smallpox vaccination may also be involved because evidence suggests that smallpox vaccination also protects against monkeypox. Thus, the elimination of smallpox and the cessation of smallpox vaccination may have led to increased human susceptibility to monkeypox. Some scientists have recommended that smallpox vaccination be reinstated in areas where monkeypox is endemic.

Herpesviridae

The family *Herpesviridae* contains a large group of viruses with enveloped polyhedral capsids containing linear dsDNA. A herpesvirus attaches to a host cell's receptor and enters the cell through the fusion of its envelope with the cytoplasmic membrane. After the viral genome is replicated and assembled in the cell's nucleus, the virion acquires its envelope from the nuclear membrane and exits the cell via exocytosis or cell lysis.

Many types of herpesviruses infect humans, and their high infection rates make them the most prevalent of DNA viruses. Indeed, three types of herpesvirus—herpes simplex, varicella-zoster, and Epstein-Barr (discussed shortly)—infect 90% of the adult population in the United States, and several other herpesviruses have infection rates over 50%.

Herpesviruses are often *latent;* that is, they may remain inactive inside infected cells, often for years. Such latent viruses may reactivate as a result of aging, chemotherapy, immunosuppression, or physical and emotional stress, causing a recurrence of the manifestations of the diseases. Additionally, some latent herpesviruses insert into a host's chromosomes, where they may cause genetic changes and potentially induce cancer.

Besides causing the diseases for which the group is named (oral herpes and genital herpes), herpesviruses cause a variety of other diseases, including chickenpox, shingles, mononucleosis, and some cancers. **Human herpesviruses** have been assigned species names combining "HHV" (for "human herpesvirus") with numbers corresponding to the order in which they were discovered. Thus, the genus *Simplexvirus* contains two species (as discussed in the next section) known as HHV-1 and HHV-2. *Varicellovirus,* which causes chickenpox and shingles, is HHV-3; *Lymphocryptovirus,* also known as Epstein-Barr virus, is HHV-4; *Cytomegalovirus* is HHV-5; *Roseolovirus* is HHV-6; and *Rhadinovirus*—HHV-8—is associated with a particular type of

cancer in AIDS patients. All these viruses share similar capsids and genes but can be distinguished by genetic variations among them.

What about HHV-7? Scientists isolated this species of *Roseolovirus* in the 1980s from the T cells of an AIDS patient and identified it as HHV-7 on the basis of its genome, envelope, capsid, and antigens. At this time, no disease has been attributed to this herpesvirus. It is an *orphan virus*—a virus without a known disease.

Infections of *Human Herpesvirus 1* and *2*

Learning Outcomes

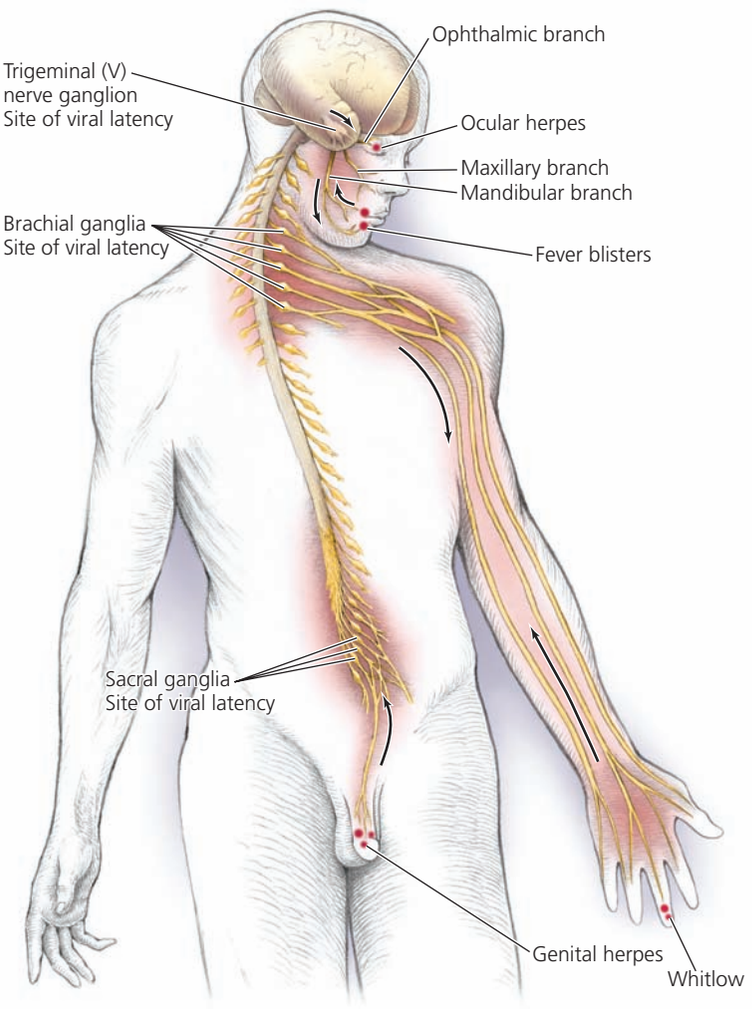
24.4 Describe the diseases caused by *human herpesvirus 1* and *2*, including their signs, symptoms, treatment, and prevention.

24.5 List conditions that may reactivate latent herpesviruses.

The name "herpes," which is derived from a Greek word meaning "to creep," is descriptive of the slowly spreading skin lesions that are seen with *human herpesvirus 1* (HHV-1) and *human herpesvirus 2* (HHV-2), which are in the genus *Simplexvirus.* They were known formerly as herpes simplex viruses (HSV-1 and HSV-2).

Latency and Recurrent Lesions

One of the more distressing aspects of herpes infections is the recurrence of lesions. About two-thirds of patients with HHV-1 or HHV-2 will experience recurrences during their lives as a result of the activation of latent viruses. After a primary infection, these herpesviruses often enter sensory nerve cells and are carried by cytoplasmic flow to the base of the nerve, where they remain latent in the trigeminal, sacral, or other ganglia[4] **(Figure 24.5)**. Such latent viruses may reactivate later in life as a result of immune suppression caused by stress, fever, trauma, sunlight, menstruation, or disease and travel down the nerve to produce recurrent lesions as often as every two weeks. Fortunately, the lesions of recurrent infections are rarely as severe as those of initial infections because of immunological memory.



▲ Figure 24.5 Sites of events in herpesvirus infections. Infections typically occur when viruses invade the mucous membranes of either the lips (for the fever blisters of oral herpes) or the genitalia (for genital herpes) or through broken skin of a finger (for a whitlow). Viruses may remain latent for years in the trigeminal, brachial, or sacral ganglia before traveling down nerve cells to cause recurrent symptoms in the lips, genitalia, fingers, or eyes. *What factors may trigger the reactivation of latent herpesviruses and the recurrence of symptoms?*

Figure 24.5 *Stress, fever, trauma, sunlight, menstruation, or diseases such as AIDS may cause recurrent symptoms as a result of immune suppression.*

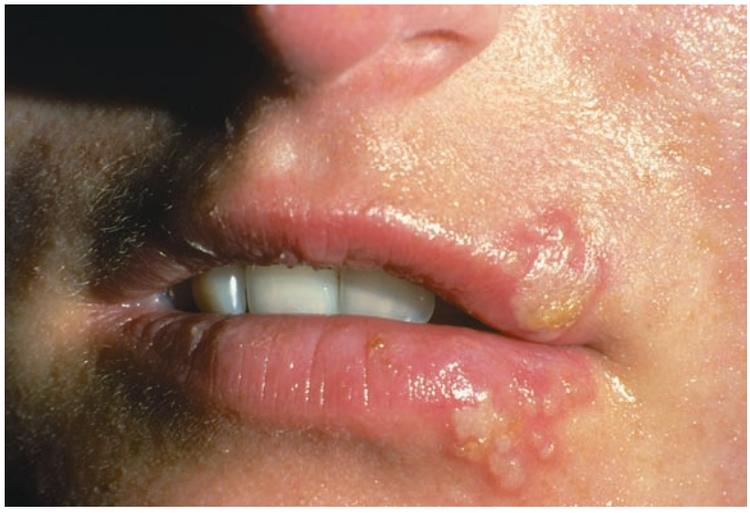
Types of HHV-1 and HHV-2 Infections

Historically, HHV-1 has also been known as "above the waist herpes," whereas HHV-2 has been known as "below the waist herpes." In the following subsections we consider the variety of infections caused by these two species.

Oral Herpes *Human herpesvirus 1* was the first human herpesvirus to be discovered. About two weeks after infection, the virions of HHV-1 produce painful, itchy skin lesions on the lips, called **fever blisters** or **cold sores** **(Figure 24.6)**, which last 7 to 10 days; initial infections may also be accompanied by flu-like signs and symptoms, including malaise, fever, and muscle pain. Severe infections in which the lesions extend into the oral cavity, called *herpetic gingivostomatitis,*[5] are most often seen in young patients and in patients with lowered immune function due to disease, chemotherapy, or radiation treatment. Young adults with sore throats resulting from other viral infections may also develop *herpetic pharyngitis.*

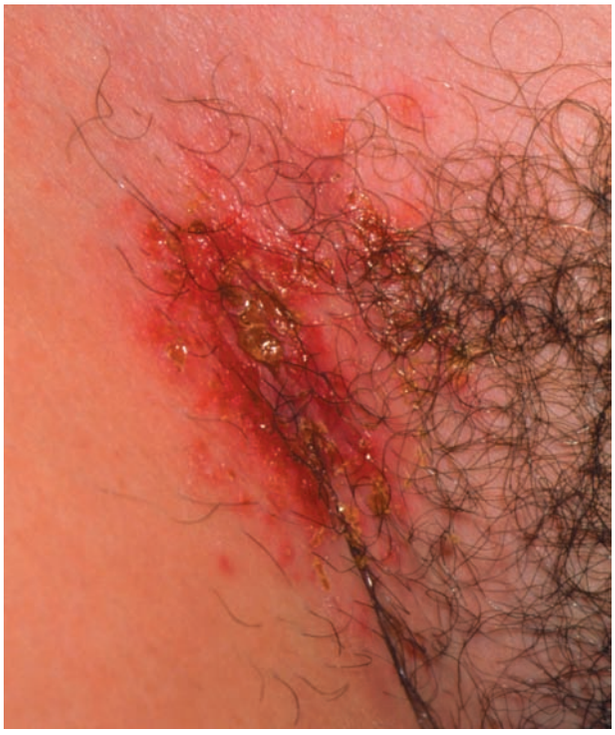
Genital Herpes HHV-1 can infect the genitalia. The virus causes about 15% of genital herpes lesions. The remainder are caused by *human herpesvirus 2.* HHV-2 differs slightly from

[4]A ganglion is a collection of nerve cell bodies containing the nuclei of the cells.
[5]From Latin *gingival*, meaning "gum"; Greek *stoma*, meaning "mouth"; and Greek *itis*, meaning "inflammation."



▲ **Figure 24.6** **Oral herpes lesions.** *Which is the more likely cause of these lesions, HHV-1 or HHV-2?*

Figure 24.6 *Approximately 90% of oral herpes lesions are caused by* human herpesvirus 1.



▲ **Figure 24.7** **Genital herpes lesions.** *Are these lesions caused by herpes type 1, or type 2?*

Figure 24.7 *Either type of herpes can cause genital lesions, but "below the waist" lesions are usually caused by HHV-2.*

HHV-1 in its surface antigens, primary location of infection, and mode of transmission. Type 2 herpes is usually associated with painful lesions on the genitalia **(Figure 24.7)** because the virions are typically transmitted sexually. However, HHV-2 can cause oral lesions when it infects the mouth. Thus, about 10% of oral cold sores result from HHV-2. The presence of HHV-2 in the oral region and of HHV-1 in the genital area is presumed to be the result of oral sex.

Ocular Herpes **Ocular herpes** (ok´yū-lăr) or *ophthalmic herpes* is an infection caused by latent herpesviruses **(Figure 24.8a)**. In ocular herpes, latent HHV-1 in the trigeminal ganglion travels down the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve instead of the mandibular or maxillary branches (see Figure 24.5). Symptoms and signs usually occur in only one eye and include a gritty feeling, conjunctivitis, pain, and sensitivity to light. The viruses may also cause corneal lesions. Recurrent ocular infections can lead to blindness as a result of corneal damage.

Whitlow An inflamed blister called a **whitlow**[6] (hwit´lō) may result if either HHV-1 or HHV-2 enters a cut or break in the skin of a finger **(Figure 24.8b)**. A whitlow usually occurs on only one finger. Whitlow is a hazard for children who suck their thumbs and for health care workers in the fields of obstetrics, respiratory care, gynecology, and dentistry who come into contact with lesions. Such workers should always wear gloves when treating patients with herpes lesions. Since a whitlow is also a potential source of infection, symptomatic personnel should not work with patients until the worker's whitlow has healed. The viruses involved in whitlow may become latent in brachial ganglia and cause recurrent lesions.

[6]From Scandinavian *whick*, meaning "nail," and *flaw*, meaning "crack."

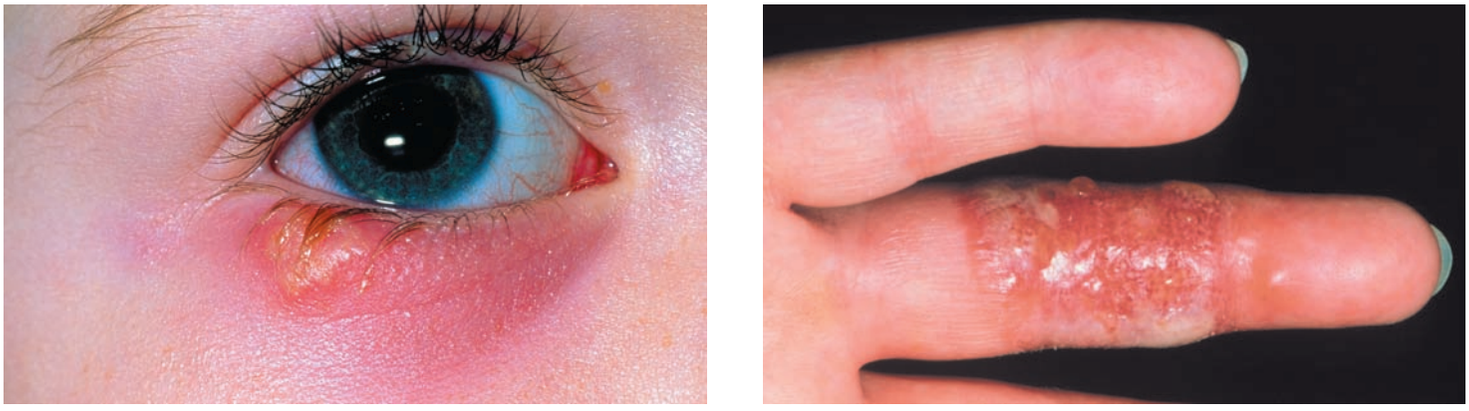
Neonatal Herpes Although most herpes simplex infections in adults are painful and unpleasant, they are not life threatening. This is not the case for herpes infections in newborns. HHV-2 is usually the species involved in neonatal herpes. Neonatal herpes infections can be severe, with a mortality rate of 30% if the infection is cutaneous or oral and of 80% if the central nervous system is infected.

A fetus can be infected *in utero* if the virus crosses the placental barrier, but it is more likely for a baby to be infected at birth through contact with lesions in the mother's reproductive tract. Also, mothers with oral lesions can infect their babies if they kiss them on the mouth. Pregnant women with herpes infections, even if asymptomatic, should inform their doctors. To protect the baby, delivery should be by cesarean section if genital lesions are present at the time of birth.

Other Herpes Simplex Infections Athletes may develop herpes lesions almost anywhere on their skin as a result of contact with herpes lesions during wrestling. *Herpes gladiatorum*, as this condition is called, is most often caused by HHV-1.

Human herpesviruses 1 and *2* may also cause other diseases, including encephalitis, meningitis, and pneumonia. Patients with severe immune suppression, such as those with AIDS, are most likely to develop these rare disorders.

Table 24.1 on p. 696 compares infections caused by herpes viruses.



(a) (b)

▲ **Figure 24.8** **Two manifestations of herpesvirus infections. (a)** Ophthalmic or ocular herpes, the result of the reactivation of latent viruses in the trigeminal ganglion. **(b)** A whitlow on a health provider's finger, resulting from the entry of herpesviruses through a break in the skin of the finger. *How can health care workers protect themselves from a whitlow?*

Figure 24.8 *Health providers should always wear gloves when treating patients who have herpes lesions on any part of their bodies.*

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of HHV-1 and HHV-2 Infections

HHV-1 and HHV-2 occur worldwide and are transmitted through close body contact. Active lesions are the usual source of infection, though asymptomatic carriers shed HHV-2 genitally. After entering the body through cracks or cuts in mucous membranes, viruses reproduce in epithelial cells near the site of infection and produce inflammation and cell death, resulting in painful, localized lesions on the skin. By causing infected cells to fuse with uninfected neighboring cells to form a structure called a *syncytium,* herpes virions spread from cell to cell, in the process avoiding the host's antibodies.

Initial infections with herpes simplex viruses are usually age specific. Primary HHV-1 infections typically occur via casual contact during childhood and usually produce no signs or symptoms; in fact, by age two, about 80% of children have been asymptomatically infected with HHV-1. Most HHV-2 infections, by contrast, are acquired between the ages of 15 and 29 as a result of sexual activity, making genital herpes one of the more common sexually transmitted infection in the United States.

Approximately 60% of adult Americans have been exposed to HHV-1. HHV-2 infects about 17% of Americans over age 12.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of HHV-1 and HHV-2 Infections

Physicians often diagnose herpes infections by the presence of their characteristic, recurring lesions, especially in the genital region and on the lips. Microscopic examination of infected tissue reveals syncytia. Positive diagnosis is achieved by serological testing that demonstrates the presence of viral antigen.

Infections with HHV-1 or HHV-2 are among the few viral diseases that can be controlled with chemotherapeutic agents, notably valaciclovir for both cold sores and genital herpes, and other nucleoside analogs (see Figure 10.7), such as iododeoxyuridine or trifluridine, for ocular herpes. Topical applications of the drugs limit the duration of the lesions and reduce viral shedding, though none of these drugs cures the diseases or frees nerve cells of latent viral infections. Evidence suggests that a daily oral dose of acyclovir over a period of 6 to 12 months can be effective in preventing recurrent genital herpes and in

TABLE 24.1 Comparative Epidemiology and Pathology of *Human Herpesvirus 1* and *2* Infections

	HHV-1 (HSV-1)	HHV-2 (HSV-2)
Usual diseases	90% of cold sores/fever blisters; whitlow	85% of genital herpes cases
Mode of transmission	Close contact	Sexual intercourse
Site of latency	Trigeminal and brachial ganglia	Sacral ganglia
Locations of lesions	Face, mouth, and rarely trunk	External genitalia and less commonly thighs, buttocks, and anus
Other complications	15% of genital herpes cases; pharyngitis; gingivostomatitis; ocular/ophthalmic herpes; herpes gladiatorum; 30% of neonatal herpes cases	10% of oral herpes cases; 70% of neonatal herpes cases

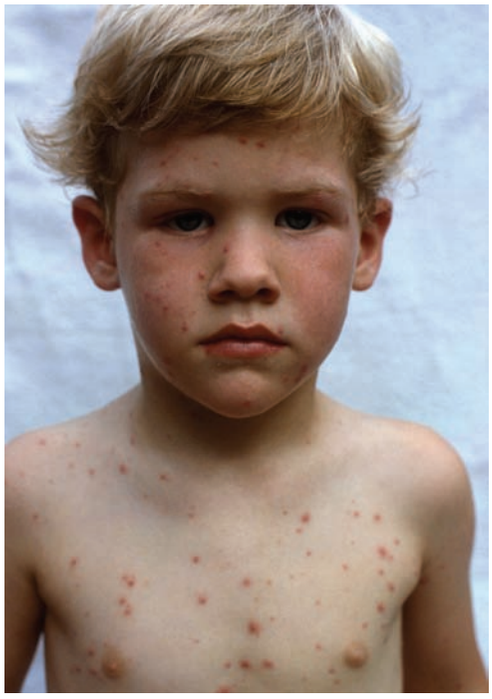
reducing the spread of herpes infections to sexual partners. Many obstetricians prescribe acyclovir during the final weeks of pregnancy for women with a history of genital herpes. (Chapter 10 examines the actions of these drugs.)

Health care workers can reduce their exposure to infection with herpes simplex by wearing latex gloves. Health providers with whitlows should not have contact with patients, especially newborns.

Sexual abstinence or faithful monogamy between uninfected partners is the only sure way of preventing genital infections. People with active lesions should abstain from sexual activity until the crusts have disappeared, and either male or female condoms should be used even in the absence of lesions because asymptomatic individuals still shed viruses. Herpes lesions in women are usually on the external genitalia, so use of a condom during sexual intercourse provides little protection for their partners. Some studies indicate that circumcision reduces by 25% the chance of getting genital herpes.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

After a patient complains that his eyes are extremely sensitive to light and feel gritty, his doctor informs him that he has ocular herpes. What causes ocular herpes? Which human herpesvirus, type 1 or type 2, is more likely to cause ocular herpes? Why?



▲ **Figure 24.9** **Characteristic chickenpox lesions.** *Varicellovirus* causes these thin-walled, fluid-filled vesicles on red bases.

Human Herpesvirus 3 (Varicella-Zoster Virus) Infections

Learning Outcome

24.6 Compare and contrast chickenpox in children with shingles in adults.

Human herpesvirus 3, commonly called **varicella-zoster virus (VZV),** takes its name from the two diseases it causes: *varicella,* which is typically a disease of children, and *herpes zoster,* which usually occurs in adults. Taxonomically, VZV is in the genus *Varicellovirus.* Note that the viral name is spelled differently than the disease.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of HHV-3 (VZV) Infections

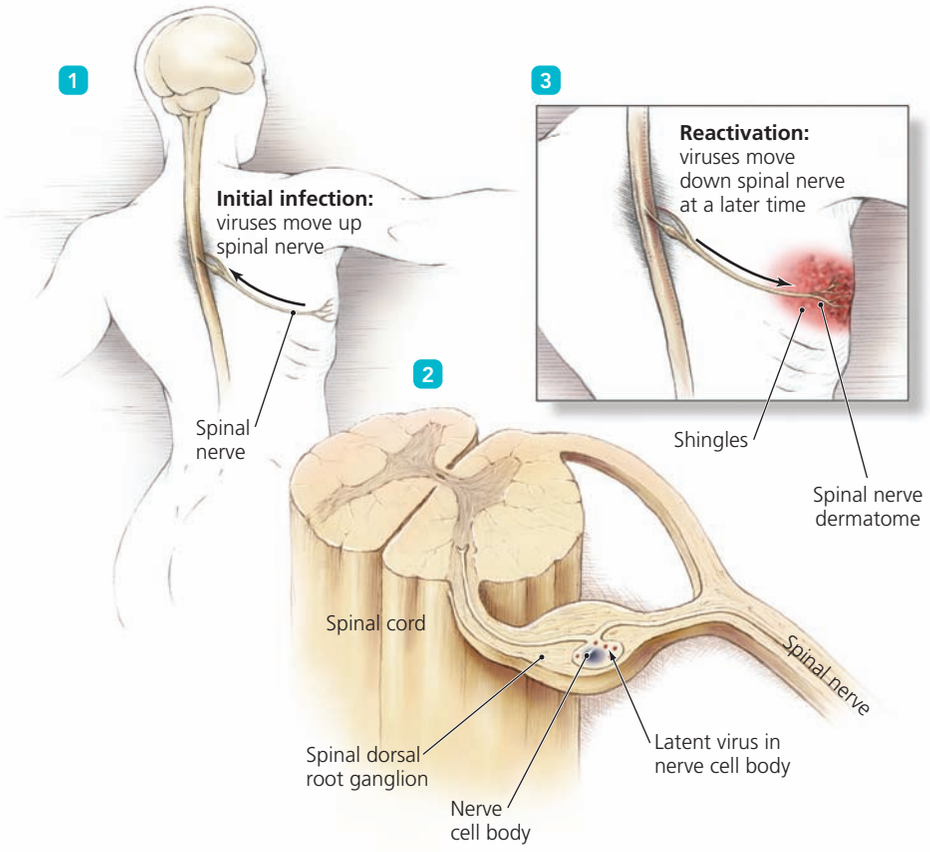
Varicella (var-i-sel´ă), commonly known as **chickenpox,** is a highly infectious disease most often seen in children. Viruses enter the body through the respiratory tract or eyes, replicate in cells at the site of infection, and then travel via the blood throughout the body, triggering fever, malaise, and skin lesions. Viruses are shed before and during the symptoms. Usually the disease is mild, though it is rarely fatal, especially if associated with secondary bacterial infections. Chickenpox is typically more severe in adults than in children, presumably because much of the tissue damage results from the patient's immune response, and adults have a more developed immune system than children do.

About two to three weeks after infection, characteristic skin lesions first appear on the back and trunk and then spread to the face, neck, and limbs **(Figure 24.9)**. In severe cases, the rash may spread into the mouth, pharynx, and vagina. Chickenpox lesions begin as macules, progress in one to two days to papules, and finally become thin-walled, fluid-filled vesicles on red bases, which have been called "dewdrops on rose petals." The vesicles turn cloudy, dry up, and crust over in a few days. Successive crops of lesions appear over a period of three to five days so that at any given time all stages can be seen. Viruses are shed through respiratory droplets and the fluid in lesions; dry crusts are not infective.

Like many herpesviruses, VZV can become latent within sensory nerves and may remain dormant for years. In about 15% of individuals who have had chickenpox, conditions such as stress, aging, or immune suppression cause the viruses to reactivate, travel down the nerve they inhabit, and produce an extremely painful skin rash near the distal end of the nerve **(Figure 24.10)**. This rash is known as **shingles** or **herpes zoster (Figure 24.11)**.

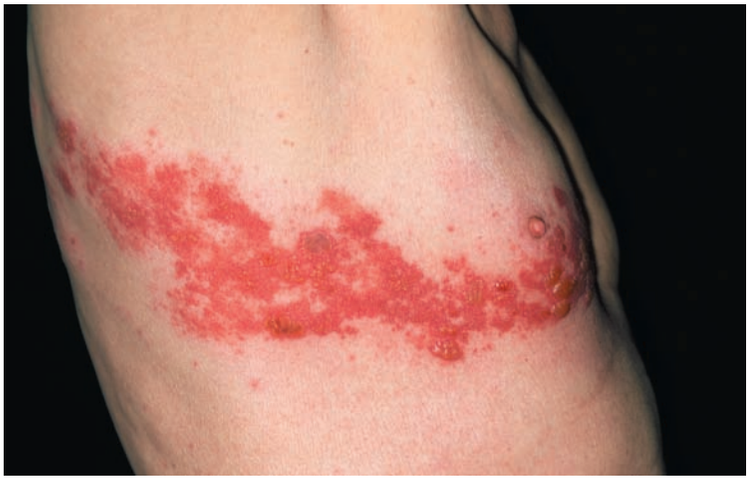
Zoster, a Greek word that means "belt," refers to the characteristic localization of shingle lesions along a band of skin, called a *dermatome,* which is innervated by a single sensory nerve. Shingles lesions form only in the dermatome associated with an infected nerve, and thus the lesions are localized and on the same side of the body as the infected nerve cell. Occasionally, lesions from latent infections of cranial nerves form in the eye, ear, or other part of the head. In some patients, the pain associated with shingles remains for months or years after the lesions have healed.

Unlike the multiple recurrences of herpes simplex lesions, shingles only occurs once or twice in an individual's life, usually



◀ **Figure 24.10 Latency and reactivation of varicella-zoster virus.** After initial infection, VZV can move up the spinal nerve and become latent in nerve cell bodies in spinal root ganglia. After subsequent reactivation (often years later), the viruses move down the spinal nerve to the skin, causing a rash known as shingles.

after age 45. Before vaccination became routine, the majority of children developed chickenpox, but only a small percentage of adults developed shingles, presumably because most individuals develop complete immunity to VZV following chickenpox and therefore never acquire shingles. The observation that VZV from the lesions of shingles can cause chickenpox in individuals who have not had chickenpox revealed that VZV causes both shingles and chickenpox.



▲ **Figure 24.11 Shingles, the rash caused by *Varicellovirus*.** These painful lesions occur on the dermatome innervated by an infected nerve.

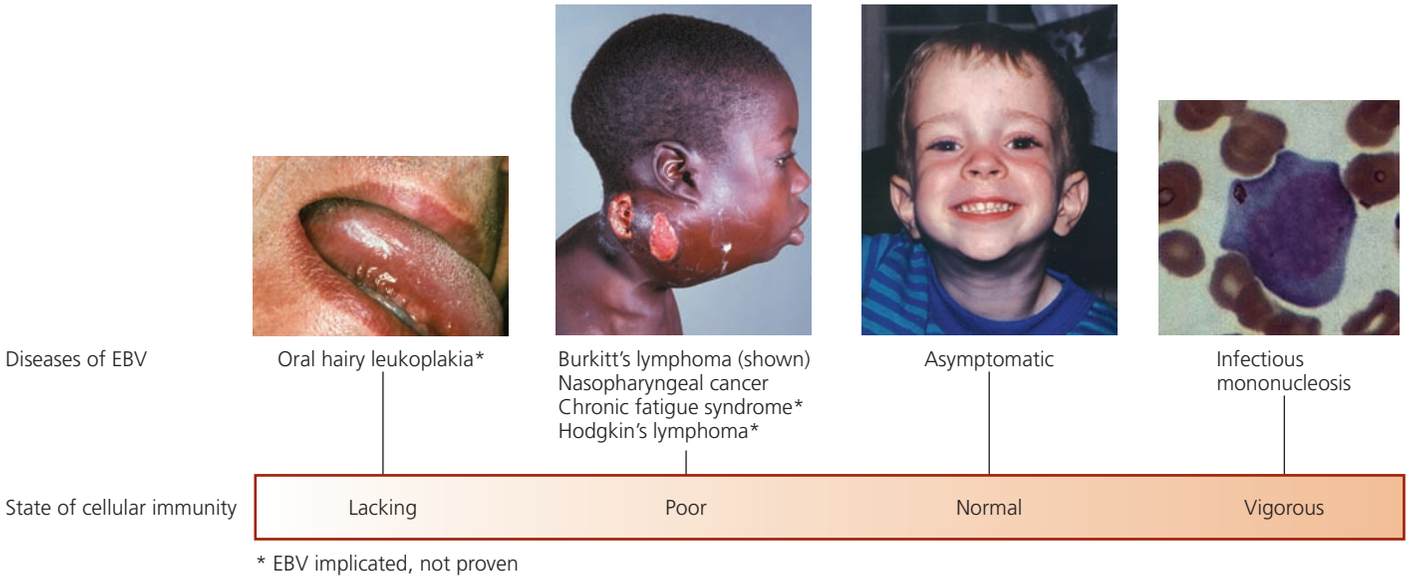
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of HHV-3 (VZV) Infections

Chickenpox is usually diagnosed from the characteristic appearance of the lesions. In contrast, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish shingles from other herpesvirus lesions, though the localization within a dermatome is characteristic. Antibody tests are available to verify diagnosis of VZV infection.

Uncomplicated chickenpox is typically self-limiting and requires no treatment other than relief of the symptoms with acetaminophen and antihistamines. Aspirin should not be given to children or adolescents with symptoms of chickenpox because of the risk of contracting Reye's syndrome, a condition associated with several viral diseases and aspirin usage.

Treatment of shingles involves management of the symptoms and bed rest. Nonadherent dressings and loose-fitting clothing may help prevent irritation of the lesions. Acyclovir provides relief from the painful rash for some patients, but it is not a cure.

It is difficult to prevent exposure to VZV because viruses are shed from patients before obvious signs appear. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved an attenuated vaccine, though the vaccine has caused some cases of shingles in Japan, and immunocompromised individuals



▲ Figure 24.12 Diseases associated with Epstein-Barr virus. Which disease results from infection with EBV appears to depend on the relative vigor of the host's cellular immune response, which itself can be related to age. Oral hairy leukoplakia, a precancerous change in the mucous membrane of the tongue, occurs in EBV-infected hosts with severely depressed cellular immunity (e.g., AIDS patients). Burkitt's lymphoma, a cancer of the jaw, occurs primarily in African boys whose immune systems have been suppressed by the malaria parasite. Nasopharyngeal cancer is most common in China. EBV is implicated in Hodgkin's lymphoma and chronic fatigue syndrome, which also are associated with impaired immune function. Asymptomatic EBV infections are typical for children exposed at a young age, before the immune response has become vigorous. Infectious mononucleosis, which is characterized by enlarged B lymphocytes with lobed nuclei, results from infection with EBV during adulthood, when the cellular immune response is vigorous.

are at risk of developing disease from the vaccine. Nevertheless, the benefits of vaccination appear to outweigh the risks, and the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommends two doses of chickenpox vaccine for all children who are least one year old and for adults up to age 50 who do not have evidence of immunity to chickenpox. A single dose of shingles vaccine is recommended for all adults over age 60.

Human Herpesvirus 4 (Epstein-Barr Virus) Infections

Learning Outcome

24.7 Describe the diseases associated with Epstein-Barr virus.

A fourth human herpesvirus is *Epstein-Barr virus (EBV),* which is in the genus *Lymphocryptovirus.* EBV is named after its codiscoverers. The official name for the species is *human herpesvirus 4,* or HHV-4.

Diseases Associated with HHV-4 (EBV) Infection

Like other herpesviruses, HHV-4 (EBV) is associated with a variety of diseases. First we consider two diseases EBV is known to cause—Burkitt's lymphoma and infectious mononucleosis—before discussing several other diseases for which EBV is implicated as a cause. As you read about the diseases with which EBV is associated, bear in mind that they are in part the result of the patient's immune status, which itself can be related to the patient's age.

In the 1950s, Denis Burkitt (1911–1993) described a malignant neoplasm of the jaw, primarily in African boys **(Figure 24.12)**, that appeared to be infectious. This cancer is now known as **Burkitt's lymphoma.** Intrigued by the idea of an infectious cancer, Michael Epstein (1921–) and Yvonne Barr (1932–) cultured samples of the tumors and isolated Epstein-Barr virus, the first virus shown to be responsible for a human cancer. (A way in which a latent virus such as EBV can trigger cancer was discussed in Chapter 13.)

Epstein-Barr virus also causes **infectious mononucleosis** (mon´ō-noo-klē-ō´sis; **mono**). Discovery of the connection between EBV and mono was accidental. A laboratory technician who worked with EBV and Burkitt's lymphoma contracted mononucleosis while on vacation. Upon her return to work, her serum was found to contain antibodies against EBV antigens. Serological studies of large numbers of college students have provided statistical verification that EBV causes mono.

EBV is an etiological agent of *nasopharyngeal cancer* in patients from southern China and is implicated as a cause of *chronic fatigue syndrome* in the U.S. population, *oral hairy leukoplakia* in AIDS patients, and *Hodgkin's lymphoma.* Chronic fatigue syndrome is associated with debilitating fatigue, memory loss, and enlarged lymph nodes. Hairy leukoplakia is a precancerous

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

GRANDFATHER'S SHINGLES

The Davises were excited about their newborn twin boys and couldn't wait to take them to see Mr. Davis's father. Grandfather Davis was excited to see his first grandsons as well and thought their visit might help take his mind off the pain of his shingles, which had suddenly appeared only days before.

1. What virus is responsible for Grandfather Davis's shingles?
2. What likely triggered his case of shingles?
3. Are the new parents at risk of catching shingles from Grandfather Davis?
4. Are the newborns at risk of contracting shingles from their grandfather? If Mrs. Davis asked your advice about visiting her father-in-law with the twins, what would you recommend?
5. Could the twins be vaccinated against shingles before the visit?

change in the mucous membrane of the tongue. Hodgkin's lymphoma is a treatable cancer of B lymphocytes that spreads from one lymph node to another.

CRITICAL THINKING

Whereas many doctors are convinced that Epstein-Barr virus causes chronic fatigue syndrome, others deny the association between EBV and the syndrome. Why is the etiology of chronic fatigue syndrome debated even though Epstein-Barr virus is present?

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of HHV-4 (EBV) Infections

Transmission of Epstein-Barr viruses usually occurs via saliva, often during the sharing of drinking glasses or while kissing. ("Kissing disease" is a common name for infectious mononucleosis.) After initially infecting the epithelial cells of the pharynx and parotid salivary glands, EBV virions enter the blood. In general, having viruses in the blood is called **viremia** (vī-rē´mē-ă). EBV invades B lymphocytes,[7] becomes latent, and immortalizes the B cells by suppressing *apoptosis* (programmed cell death). Infected B cells are one source of lymphomas, including Burkitt's and Hodgkin's lymphomas.

Infectious mononucleosis results from a "civil war" between the humoral and cellular branches of specific immunity: Cytotoxic T lymphocytes of the cell-mediated branch kill infected B lymphocytes. This "civil war" is responsible for the symptoms and signs of mono, including sore throat, fever, enlargement of the spleen and liver, and fatigue.

Seventy percent of Americans over the age of 30 have antibodies against EBV. As with other herpesviruses, the age of the host at the time of infection is a determining factor in the seriousness of the disease, in this case because the competence of cytotoxic T cells is in part related to age (see Figure 24.12). Infection during childhood, which is more likely to occur in countries with poor sanitation and inadequate standards of hygiene, is usually asymptomatic because a child's cellular immune system is immature and cannot cause severe tissue damage. Where living standards are higher, childhood infection is less likely, and the postponement of infection until adolescence or later results in a more vigorous cellular immune response that produces the signs and symptoms of mononucleosis.

Cofactors appear to play a role in the development of cancers by EBV. For example, Burkitt's lymphoma is almost exclusively limited to young males exposed to malaria parasites, and the restriction of EBV-induced nasopharyngeal cancer to certain geographical regions is suggestive of cofactors in food, environment, or the genes of regional populations.

Extreme disease, such as oral hairy leukoplakia, arises in individuals with a T cell deficiency, as occurs in malnourished children, the elderly, AIDS patients, and transplant recipients. These individuals are more susceptible to EBV because infected cells are not removed by cytotoxic T lymphocytes and therefore remain a site of virus proliferation.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of HHV-4 (EBV) Infections

Large, lobed, B lymphocytes with atypical nuclei and neutropenia are characteristic of EBV infection. Some diseases associated with EBV, such as hairy leukoplakia and Burkitt's lymphoma, are easily diagnosed by their characteristic signs. Other EBV infections, such as infectious mononucleosis, have symptoms common to many pathogens. Fluorescent antibodies directed against anti-EBV immunoglobulins or ELISA tests provide specific diagnosis.

Burkitt's lymphoma responds well to chemotherapy, and tumors can be removed from affected jaws of patients in geographic areas where surgery is available. Care of mono patients involves relief of the symptoms. Radiation or chemotherapy often successfully treats Hodgkin's lymphoma. There is no effective treatment for other EBV-induced conditions.

[7]These lymphocytes are also known as mononuclear leukocytes, from which the name mononucleosis is derived.

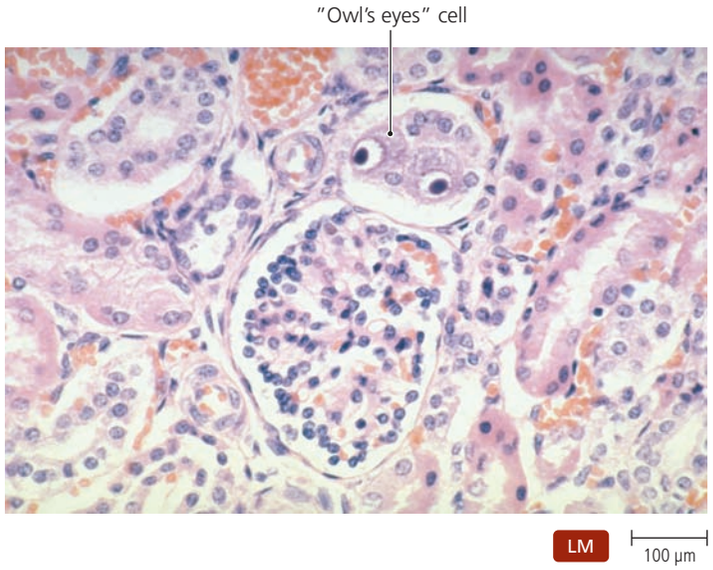
Prevention of EBV infection is almost impossible because the virus is widespread and transmitted readily in saliva. However, only a small proportion of EBV infections result in disease because either the immune system is too immature to cause cellular damage (in children) or cellular immunity is efficient enough to kill infected B lymphocytes.

Human Herpesvirus 5 (Cytomegalovirus) Infections

Learning Outcome

24.8 Describe the epidemiology of cytomegalovirus infection.

A fifth herpesvirus that affects humans is *Cytomegalovirus* (sī-tō-meg´ă-lō-vī´rŭs; CMV), so called because cells infected with this virus become enlarged. *Cytomegalovirus* infection is one of the more common infections of humans. Studies have shown that 50% of the adult population of the United States is infected with CMV; in some other countries, 100% of the population tests positive for antibodies against CMV. Like other herpesviruses we have studied, HHV-5 becomes latent in various cells, and infection by CMV lasts for life.



▲ **Figure 24.13 An owl's eyes cell.** The cell is diagnostic for cytomegalovirus infection. Such abnormally enlarged cells have enlarged nuclei and contain inclusion bodies that are sites of viral assembly.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of HHV-5 (CMV) Infections

CMV is transmitted in bodily secretions, including saliva, mucus, milk, urine, feces, semen, and cervical secretions. Individual viruses are not highly contagious, so transmission requires intimate contact involving a large exchange of secretion. Transmission usually occurs via sexual intercourse but can result from *in utero* exposure, vaginal birth, blood transfusions, and organ transplants. CMV infects 7.5% of all neonates, making it the most prevalent viral infection in this age-group.

Most people infected with CMV are asymptomatic, but fetuses, newborns, and immunodeficient patients are susceptible to severe complications of CMV infection. About 10% of congenitally infected newborns develop signs of infection, including enlarged liver and spleen, jaundice, microcephaly, and anemia. CMV may also be **teratogenic**[8] (ter´ă-tō-jen´ik)—that is, cause birth defects—when the virus infects *stem cells*[9] in an embryo or fetus. In the worst cases, mental retardation, hearing and visual damage, or death may result.

AIDS patients and other immunosuppressed adults may develop pneumonia, blindness (if the virus targets the retina), or *cytomegalovirus mononucleosis,* which is similar to infectious mononucleosis caused by Epstein-Barr virus. CMV diseases result from initial infections or from latent viruses.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of HHV-5 (CMV) Infections

Diagnosis of CMV-induced diseases is dependent on laboratory procedures that reveal the presence of abnormally enlarged cells and inclusions within the nuclei of infected cells **(Figure 24.13)**. Viruses and antibodies against them can be detected by ELISA tests and DNA probes. Treatment for fetuses and newborns with complications of CMV infection is difficult because in most cases damage is done before an infection is discovered.

Treatment of adults can also be frustrating. Interferon and gammaglobulin treatment can slow the release of CMV from adults but does not affect the course of disease. Physicians inject fomivirsen into an infected eye to inhibit CMV replication in retinal cells. Fomivirsen is an RNA molecule complementary to CMV mRNA. It works by binding to the mRNA, preventing translation of polypeptides critical for CMV replication. This stops progression of disease but does not eliminate the infection. There is no vaccine for preventing infection.

Abstinence, mutual monogamy, and use of condoms can reduce the chances of infection. Organs harvested for transplantation can be made safer by treatment with monoclonal antibodies against CMV, which passively reduces the CMV load before the organs are transplanted.

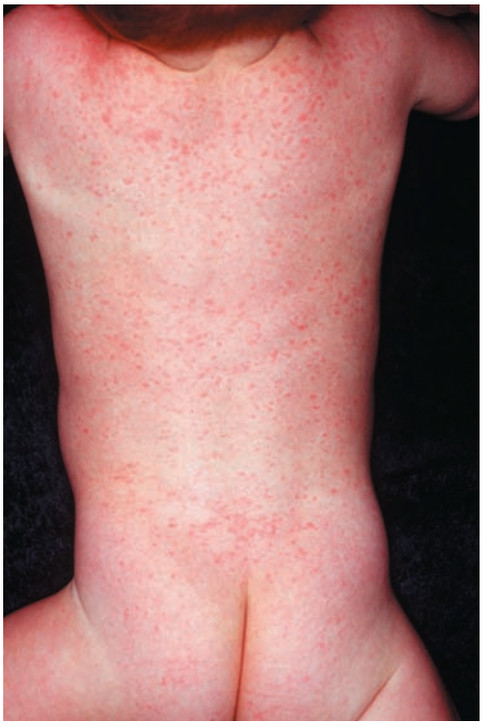
Other Herpesvirus Infections

Learning Outcome

24.9 Describe the diseases that are associated with HHV-6 and HHV-8.

Human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6), in the genus *Roseolovirus,* causes **roseola** (rō-zē´ō-lă). Roseola is a nearly universal endemic illness of children characterized by an abrupt fever, sore throat, enlarged lymph nodes, and a faint pink rash on the face, neck,

[8]From Greek *teratos,* meaning "monster."
[9]Formative cells, the daughter cells of which develop into several different types of mature cells.



▲ **Figure 24.14** **Roseola.** This rose-colored rash on the body results from infection with *human herpesvirus 6.*

trunk, and thighs **(Figure 24.14)**. The name of the disease is derived from the rose-colored rash.

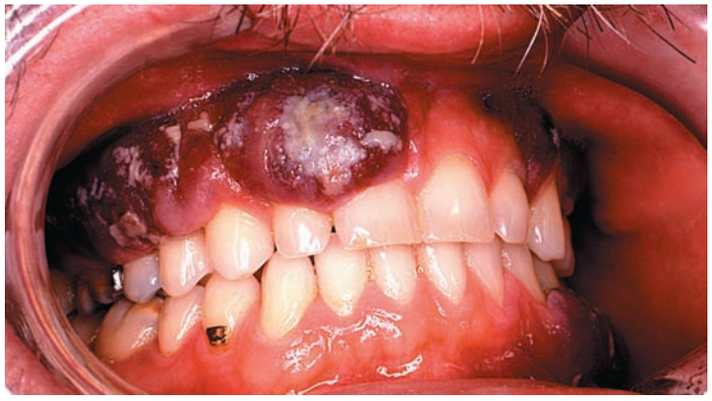
Some researchers have linked HHV-6 to multiple sclerosis (MS). These investigators point to the fact that over 75% of MS patients have antibodies against the virus, that patients with higher antibody levels are more likely to develop MS later in life, and that the brain lesions of MS patients typically contain HHV-6. Further, MS patients respond well to treatment with interferon. This evidence is not proof of causation, but it provides tantalizing ideas for further research.

HHV-6 may also cause mononucleosis-like symptoms and signs, including enlargement of lymph nodes. There is some evidence that *human herpesvirus 6* may also be a cofactor in the pathogenesis of AIDS; that is, infection with HHV-6 may make individuals more susceptible to AIDS.

Human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8, Rhadinovirus) causes Kaposi's sarcoma, a cancer often seen in AIDS patients **(Figure 24.15)**. The virus is not found in cancer-free patients or in normal tissues of victims and has been shown to make cells lining blood vessels cancerous.

Papillomaviridae and *Polyomaviridae*

Papillomaviruses and polyomaviruses each have a single molecule of double-stranded DNA contained in a small, naked, icosahedral capsid. They were previously classified in a single family, "Papovaviridae," but have recently been separated into two families, *Papillomaviridae* and *Polyomaviridae*, based in part on the different diseases they cause.



▲ **Figure 24.15** **Kaposi's sarcoma.** A rare and malignant neoplasia of blood and blood vessels, this cancer is most often seen in AIDS patients. *What observations support the hypothesis that Kaposi's sarcoma is caused by HHV-8?*

Figure 24.15 *HHV-8 is not found in healthy patients, but it is found in Kaposi tumor cells. The virus also causes some cells to become cancerous.*

Papillomavirus Infections

Learning Outcomes

24.10 Describe four kinds of warts associated with papillomavirus infections.

24.11 Describe the pathogenesis, treatment, and prevention of genital warts.

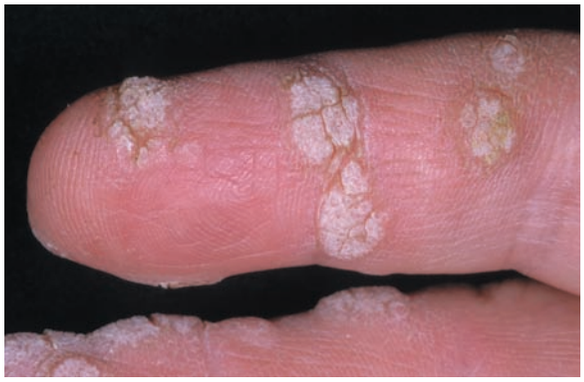
Papillomaviruses cause **papillomas** (pap-i-lō´măz), which are benign growths of the epithelium of the skin or mucous membranes commonly known as **warts.** Papillomas form on many body surfaces but are most often found on the fingers or toes *(seed warts);* deep in the soles of the feet *(plantar warts);* on the trunk, face, elbow, or knees *(flat warts);* or on the external genitalia *(genital warts)* **(Figure 24.16)**. Genital warts range in size from almost undetectable small bumps to giant, cauliflower-like growths called **condylomata acuminata**[10] (kon-di-lō´mah-tă ă-kyū-mi-nah´tă). Over 40 varieties of papillomaviruses cause warts in humans.

Although warts are often painful and unsightly, genital warts are even more distressing because of their association with an increased risk of cancer. Papillomaviruses of genital warts precipitate anal, vaginal, penile, and oral cancers as well as nearly all cervical cancer. Papillomavirus infections appear to double the risk of developing head and neck cancer and increase the risk of cancer in the tonsils fourteenfold.

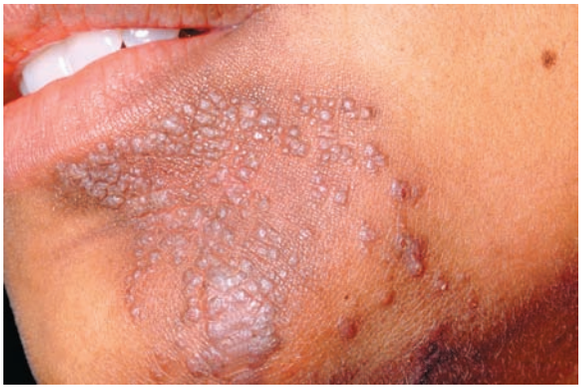
Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of Papillomavirus Infections

Papillomaviruses are transmitted via direct contact and, because they are stable outside the body, via fomites. They can also be spread from one location to another on a given person by a process called *autoinoculation.*

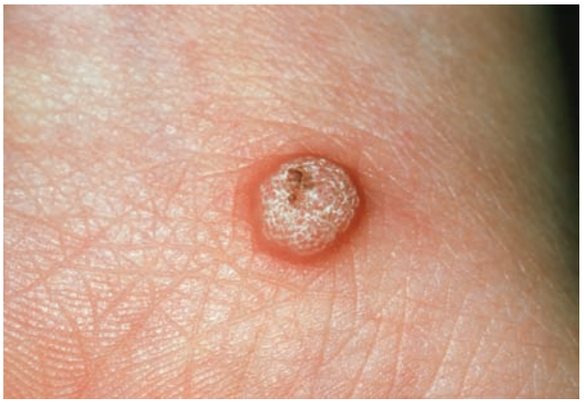
[10]From Greek *kondyloma*, meaning "knob," and Latin *acuminatus*, meaning "pointed."



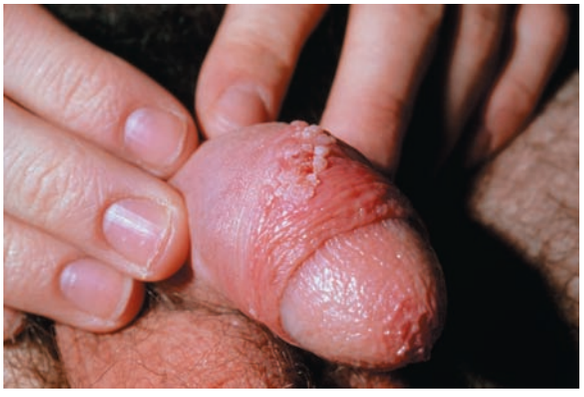
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

◀ Figure 24.16 The various kinds of warts, the lesions caused by infections with papillomaviruses. **(a)** Seed warts of the fingers. **(b)** Flat warts, which occur on the trunk, face, elbows, or knees. **(c)** Plantar warts occur on the soles of feet. **(d)** Condylomata acuminata on a penis. Such genital warts are considered precancerous.

Viruses that cause genital warts invade the skin and mucous membranes of the penis (particularly when it is uncircumcised), vagina, and anus during sexual intercourse. The incubation time from infection to the development of the wart usually is three to four months. Genital warts are among the more common sexually transmitted diseases. Over 500,000 new cases are reported each year in the United States, most among young adults.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Papillomavirus Infections

Diagnosis of warts is usually a simple matter of observation, though only DNA probes can elucidate the exact strain of papillomavirus involved. Warts usually regress over time as the cellular immune system recognizes and attacks virally infected cells. Cosmetic concerns and the pain associated with some warts may necessitate removing infected tissue via surgery, freezing, cauterization (burning), laser, or the use of caustic chemicals. These techniques are not entirely satisfactory because viruses may remain latent in neighboring tissue and produce new warts at a later time. Laser surgery has the added risk of causing viruses to become airborne; some physicians have developed warts in their noses after inhaling airborne viruses during laser treatment. Over-the-counter remedies containing salicylic acid often reduce and remove warts. One of the stranger treatments is also one of the more effective—cover a wart with duct tape for several weeks, and it will likely disappear. Scientists do not know why this method works.

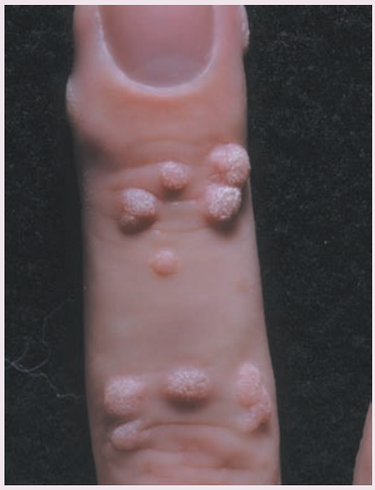
Effective treatment of cancers caused by papillomaviruses often depends on early diagnosis resulting from thorough inspection of the genitalia in both sexes, and in women by a Papanicolaou (Pap) smear to screen for cervical cancer. Treatment involves radiation or chemical therapy directed against reproducing tumor cells. Advanced cases of genital cancer necessitate removal of the entire diseased organ.

Prevention of most types of warts is difficult, but prevention of genital warts is possible by abstinence or mutual monogamy. Using recombinant DNA techniques, scientists have created a vaccine (Gardasil) that successfully prevents infection by the most common strains of sexually transmitted papillomaviruses, including the strains that cause most penile and cervical cancers. The CDC recommends three doses of HPV vaccine for 11- to 12-year-olds.

The evidence for the effectiveness of condoms in preventing the spread of genital wart viruses is equivocal—one study suggests that condoms reduce the risk of acquiring genital warts by 25% to 50%, whereas other studies have revealed no decrease in the acquisition of warts by condom users or their partners. Researchers have found that circumcised men and their female sexual partners have about 35% less chance of getting genital

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

A CHILD WITH WARTS



Ten-year-old Rudy has several large warts on the fingers of his right hand. They do not hurt, but their unsightly appearance causes him to shy away from people. He is afraid to shake hands, or to play with other children out of fear that he may transfer the warts to them. Initially, his mother tells him not to worry about them, but Rudy cannot help feeling self-conscious. Furthermore, Rudy fears that the warts may somehow spread on his own body. After consulting with a physician, Rudy and his mother decide to have the warts surgically removed.

1. Is it possible that Rudy's warts will spread to other parts of his body?
2. Is it possible for someone else to "catch" Rudy's warts by shaking his hand?
3. If Rudy's warts disappear without treatment, are they likely to return to the same sites on his hand?
4. Are Rudy's warts likely to become cancerous?
5. Following surgical removal of the warts, is there a chance that Rudy will develop warts again?

cancer than do uncircumcised men or their partners. This research suggests that if all men were circumcised, the worldwide incidence of cervical cancer would be reduced at least 43%.

Clinical Case Study: A Child with Warts concerns a young patient with papillomas.

Polyomavirus Infections

Learning Outcome

24.12 Describe two diseases caused by polyomavirus infection in humans.

The search for cancer-causing viruses led scientists to the discovery of a group of viruses capable of causing several different tumors in animals and humans. Researchers named these viruses **polyomaviruses** by combining *poly* (meaning "many") and *oma* (meaning "tumor").

Polyomaviruses cause other diseases as well. Two human polyomaviruses, the *BK* and *JC* viruses, are endemic worldwide. The initials are derived from the names of the patients from which the viruses were first isolated. Most everyone appears to be infected with BK and JC by age 15, probably via the respiratory route. The viruses initially infect lymphocytes, and what happens subsequently depends at least in part on the state of an individual's immune system. If the immune response is normal, latent infections are typically prevented; if the immune system is compromised, however, then latent infections can become established in the kidneys, where reactivation of the viruses leads to the release of new virions. In the case of BK virus, the new virions can cause potentially severe urinary tract infections.

In individuals with latent infections of JC virus, reactivated virions are shed from kidney cells into the blood, spreading the virions throughout the body. Virions that reach the brain of an immunosuppressed individual cause a rare and fatal disease called **progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML),** in which the viruses infect and kill cells called oligodendrocytes in the white matter of the central nervous system. Oligodendrocytes produce myelin, a white lipid that surrounds and insulates some nerve cells. As myelin in multiple sites is lost, PML patients progressively lose various brain functions, as the name of the disease implies, because the conduction of nerve impulses becomes increasingly impaired. Vision, speech, coordination, and cognitive skills are affected. Eventually paralysis and death result.

Beta interferon treatments can prevent kidney damage by BK. The receptor for JC virus is a serotonin receptor, so researchers hope that serotonin receptor inhibitors will block JC virus. Unfortunately, by the time a diagnosis can be made, damage to the brain is often severe and irreversible.

Adenoviridae

Learning Outcome

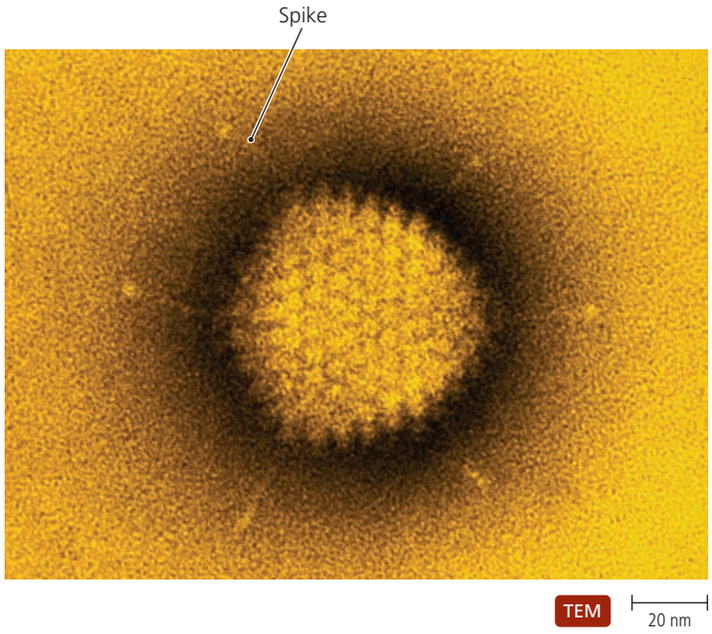
24.13 Discuss the epidemiology and pathogenicity of diseases caused by adenoviruses.

The last family of double-stranded DNA viruses we discuss is *Adenoviridae*. Adenoviruses have a single, linear dsDNA genome contained in a naked polyhedral capsid with spikes **(Figure 24.17)**. Adenoviruses are so named because they were first discovered infecting cultures of human adenoid[11] cells.

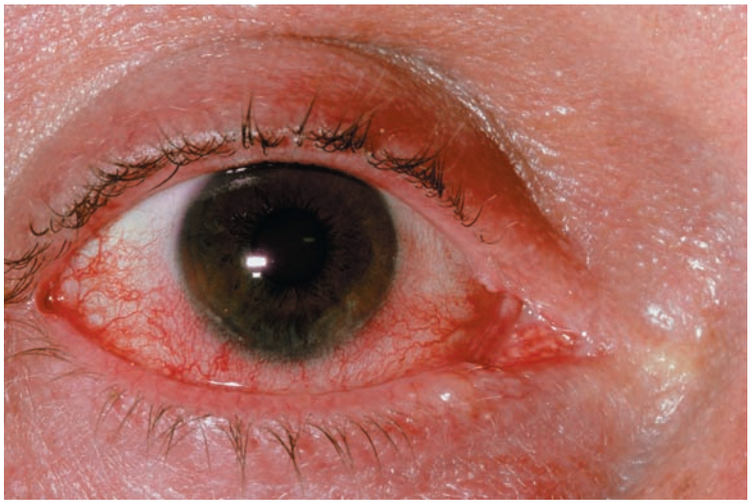
Adenoviruses are but one of the many causative agents of "common colds." Even though colds typically have a common set of signs and symptoms, their causes are quite varied. At least 30 different respiratory adenoviruses (DNA viruses) and over 100 RNA viruses cause colds.

Adenoviruses, which are spread via respiratory droplets, are very stable outside the body and can survive on fomites and in improperly chlorinated drinking water. Respiratory adenovirus infections become established when adenoviruses are taken into cells lining the respiratory tract via endocytosis. The

[11] Adenoids are swollen pharyngeal tonsils, which are masses of lymphatic tissue located in the pharynx, posterior to the nose.



▲ **Figure 24.17** **Adenovirus.** Notice the distinctive spikes.



▲ **Figure 24.18** **Adenoviral conjunctivitis (pinkeye).** *What signs and symptoms can result from infections with various adenoviruses?*

Figure 24.18 *Respiratory adenoviruses cause sore throat, cough, fever, headache, and malaise; intestinal adenoviruses cause mild diarrhea in children; still other adenoviruses cause conjunctivitis (pinkeye).*

resulting infections have a variety of manifestations, including sneezing, sore throat, cough, headache, and malaise. (Table 25.1 on p. 717 compares the signs and symptoms of colds with those of other respiratory infections.) For some reason, epidemics of respiratory adenoviruses occur on military bases but rarely under the similar conditions found in college dormitories.

Adenoviruses can also cause infections in other systems of the body. After entering cells lining the intestinal tract, intestinal adenoviruses can cause diarrhea in children. Still other adenoviruses infect the conjunctiva, resulting in conjunctivitis, which is also called *pinkeye* **(Figure 24.18)**. Human adenovirus 36 is suspected of being a cause of obesity in humans. **Highlight: Catch a Cold and Catch Obesity?** examines this interesting hypothesis.

Adenoviruses often produce semi-crystallized viral masses within the nuclei of infected cells (see Highlight box), a feature

HIGHLIGHT

CATCH A COLD AND CATCH OBESITY?

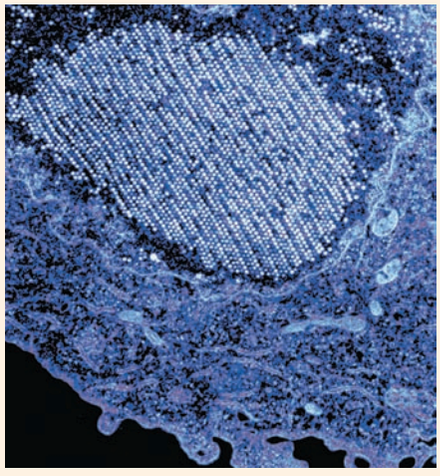
Your roommate sneezes, and you get infected with obesity. Sound far-fetched? If researchers at Louisiana State University in Baton Rouge are correct, many cases of obesity may be blamed on adenoviruses—a family of DNA viruses more usually associated with common colds.

Researchers have shown that human adenovirus 36 (Adv36) (and to a lesser extent its relatives Adv37 and Adv5) directly affects adipocytes (fat cells) in animals and humans. Adv36 is present in about 30% of obese people but in only about 11% of the nonobese, and infected laboratory animals gain more weight than their identical siblings eating the same amount of food.

In identical human twins where one sibling is infected with Adv36 and the other is not, the infected twins are heavier and fatter than their uninfected cotwins. At the cellular level, stem cells infected with Adv36 more frequently become adipocytes than do uninfected stem cells, and infected adipocytes make and store more fat than uninfected fat cells.

Even more exciting than this circumstantial evidence, the researchers have shown that Adv36 regulates a single gene in humans, a gene that is necessary and solely sufficient for fat production. Moreover, Adv36 enhances a cell's ability to take up glucose, which can then be anabolized into fat and stored.

Perhaps someday soon, more effective anti-cold remedies may also help you lose weight.



Semi-crystalline masses of adenoviruses replicating in the nucleus of an infected cell.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Adenovirus

Taxonomy: Family *Adenoviridae*

Genome and morphology: Single molecule of double-stranded DNA; naked icosahedral capsid, 60–90 nm with spikes

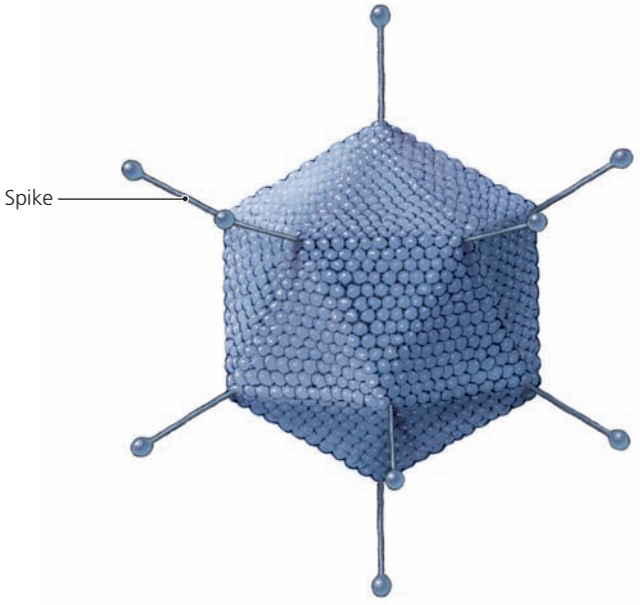
Host: Various species infect mammals, birds, frogs, or fungi

Virulence factors: Infection through aerosol, ingestion, hand-to-eye transfer, or sexual contact

Diseases caused: Respiratory illness, such as common cold, mild diarrhea, conjunctivitis

Treatment for disease: Gamma interferon for early stages

Prevention of disease: Get attenuated vaccine; avoid contact with infected people or contaminated food or beverage



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

that is diagnostic for adenoviral infections. Although this feature is similar in appearance to the nuclear inclusions seen in cytomegalovirus infections, adenoviruses do not cause infected cells to enlarge.

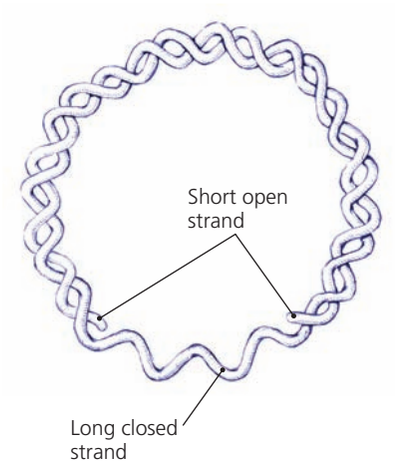
Adenovirus infection can be treated during the early stages with gamma interferon, and a live, attenuated vaccine is available. The vaccine is used only for military recruits.

Hepadnaviridae

Learning Outcome

24.14 Describe the unique feature of hepadnaviruses.

Viruses of the family *Hepadnaviridae*[12] are enveloped DNA viruses with icosahedral capsids that invade and replicate in liver cells. From these characteristics, human **hepatitis B virus (HBV)** acquires the name of its genus, *Orthohepadnavirus.* Its scientific species name, *hepatitis B virus,* is also its common name.



▲ **Figure 24.19 The genome of a hepadnavirus.** This unusual genome is composed of incompletely double-stranded DNA resulting from incomplete DNA replication.

The genome of a hepadnavirus is unique in that it is partly double-stranded DNA and partly single-stranded DNA **(Figure 24.19)**. The amount of ssDNA in a hepadnaviral genome varies. Some virions are almost entirely dsDNA, whereas others have a significant amount of ssDNA. How does this variation in genomic structure occur?

HBV replicates through an RNA intermediary, a phenomenon that is unique among DNA viruses. During replication, one strand of the DNA genome of hepatitis B virus is transcribed into RNA by an enzyme called *reverse transcriptase.* This process is the opposite of normal transcription, thus the name of the enzyme. The RNA molecule then serves as a template for a new DNA strand. The result is an RNA-DNA hybrid molecule. Next, the RNA is removed and a DNA complement of the DNA strand is synthesized, forming dsDNA. Incomplete dsDNA results when virions are assembled before the complementary DNA strand is completely copied. Thus, the earlier that assembly occurs, the more ssDNA will remain in the genome; the later that assembly occurs, the more complete replication will be, and the more dsDNA will be in the genome.

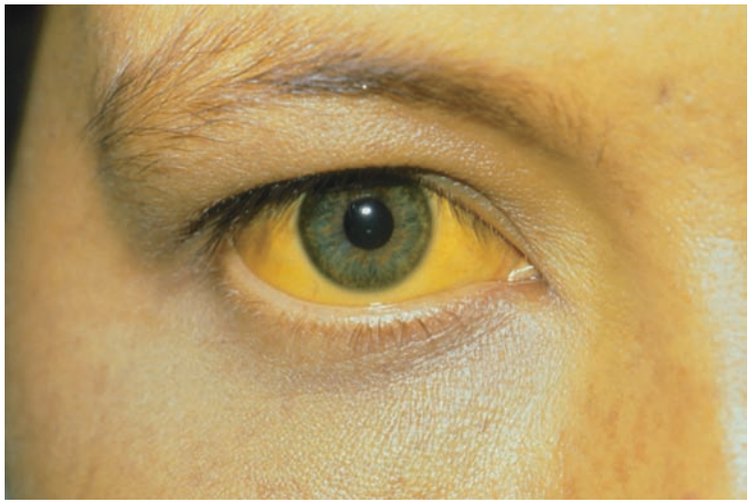
Hepatitis B Infections

Learning Outcome

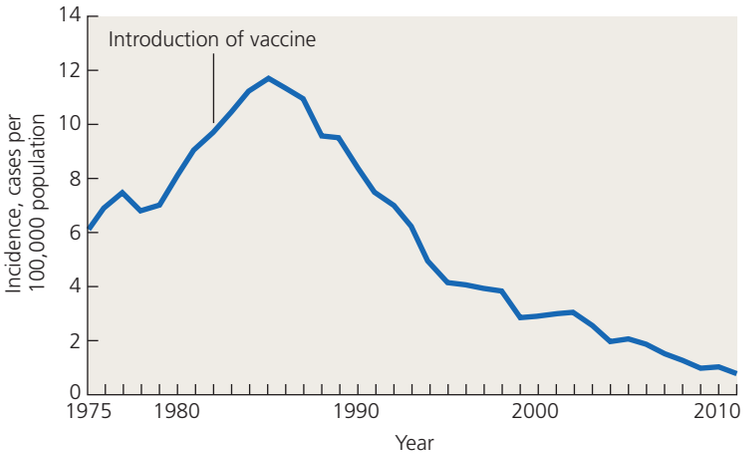
24.15 Describe the epidemiology, treatment, and prevention of hepatitis B infections.

Hepatitis (hep-ă-tī´tis) is an inflammatory condition of the liver. The liver has many functions, including making blood-clotting factors, storing sugar and other nutrients, assisting in the digestion of lipids, and removing wastes from the blood. When

[12] From Greek *hepar,* meaning "liver," and "DNA."



▲ **Figure 24.20** **Jaundice.** This condition is characterized by yellow skin and eyes. One cause of jaundice is liver damage by hepatitis B virus.



▲ **Figure 24.21** **Estimated incidence of acute hepatitis B in the United States.**

a patient's liver is severely damaged by viral infection, all these functions are disturbed. **Jaundice** (jawn´dis), a yellowing of the skin and eyes, occurs when a greenish-yellow waste product called *bilirubin* accumulates in the blood **(Figure 24.20)**. Hepatitis is also characterized by enlargement of the liver, abdominal distress, and bleeding into the skin and internal organs. The patient becomes stuporous and eventually goes into a coma as a result of the accumulation of nitrogenous wastes in the blood.

Hepatitis B virus is the only DNA virus that causes hepatitis; all other cases of viral hepatitis result from RNA viruses (see Table 25.3 on p. 720). Hepatitis B is also called *serum hepatitis.* HBV infection results in serious liver damage in less than 10% of cases, but co-infection with hepatitis D virus (an RNA virus also called *delta agent*) increases the risk of permanent liver damage.

Epidemiology and Pathogenesis of HBV Infections

Hepatitis B viruses replicate in liver cells and are released by exocytosis rather than cell lysis. Infected liver cells thus serve as a source for the continual release of virions into the blood, resulting in billions of virions per milliliter of blood. Virions in the blood are shed into saliva, semen, and vaginal secretions.

HBV is transmitted when infected bodily fluids, particularly blood, come into contact with breaks in the skin or mucous membranes. The viral load is typically so high and the infective dose so low that infection can result from sharing a razor or toothbrush, making it difficult to determine the source of infection. Improperly sterilized needles used in acupuncture, ear piercing, tattooing, intravenous drug usage, and blood transfusion have spread the virions, which can remain infective for at least a week outside the body. They may also be spread by sexual intercourse, especially anal intercourse, which can cause tearing of the rectal lining. Babies can become infected during childbirth.

Many infected individuals are asymptomatic, and most manifest only mild jaundice, low-grade fever, and malaise. Severe liver damage is most likely to result from such asymptomatic, chronic infections after 20 to 40 years. The CDC estimates that approximately 350 million people worldwide have chronic infections. The carrier state is age related: newborns are much more likely to remain chronically infected than are individuals infected as adults.

Today, fewer cases of hepatitis B are seen in the United States as a result of vaccination programs and safer sexual practices **(Figure 24.21)**. Still, approximately 3000 people die each year from hepatitis B infection.

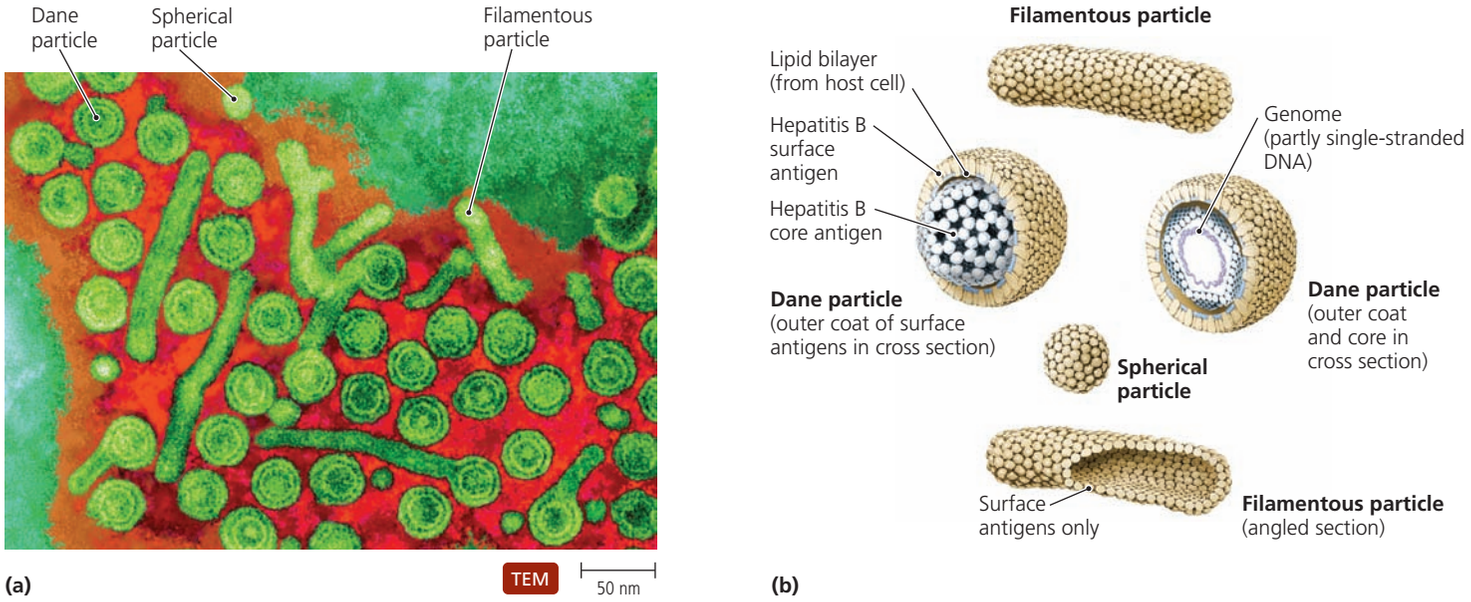
Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of HBV Infections

Laboratory diagnosis of hepatitis B infection involves the use of labeled antibodies to detect the presence of viral antigens released from HBV-infected cells. The bodily fluids of infected individuals contain copious amounts of viral protein of three forms: so-called *Dane particles, spherical particles,* and *filamentous particles* **(Figure 24.22)**. Dane[13] particles are complete and infective virions, whereas spherical and filamentous particles are merely capsids composed of surface antigens without genomes. Within infected individuals, the release of so much excess viral surface antigen in the form of spherical and filamentous particles in effect serves as a decoy: The binding of antibody to empty capsids reduces the effective antibody response against infective Dane particles. The large amount of viral antigen released provides one benefit to a patient: It ensures a plentiful substrate for binding labeled antibodies in diagnostic tests.

There is no universally effective treatment for hepatitis B, though alpha interferon, lamivudine, or entecavir help in 40% of cases. Liver transplant is the only treatment for end-stage chronic hepatitis B.

Prevention is possible because an effective vaccine is available. Three doses of HBV vaccine result in protection against

[13]Named for D. S. Dane, who discovered HBV using electron microscopy.



▲ Figure 24.22 The three types of viral particles produced by hepatitis B viruses. Dane bodies are complete virions, whereas filamentous particles and spherical particles are capsomeres that have assembled without genomes. **(a)** Micrograph. **(b)** Artist's rendition.

the virus in 95% of individuals. Several studies indicate that immunity against HBV lasts for at least 20 years and probably for life. The CDC recommends HBV immunization for all children because children are at a greater risk of chronic infection, life-threatening liver damage, and (as we will see shortly) liver cancer. Immunization is also recommended for high-risk groups, including health care workers, illegal drug users, people receiving blood or blood products, and the sexually promiscuous, especially those who engage in anal intercourse.

To prevent the spread of HBV, special care should be taken with needles and other sharp instruments in health care settings. Unlike most enveloped viruses, HBV is resistant to detergents, ether, freezing, acid, and moderate heat, but contaminated materials can be disinfected with 10% bleach solutions. Hepatitis B virus can transfer from mother to child, but immunization of the baby within 12 hours of birth usually prevents disease in the child. Abstinence or mutually faithful monogamy is the only sure way to prevent sexually transmitted infection.

The Role of Hepatitis B Virus in Hepatic Cancer

Learning Outcome

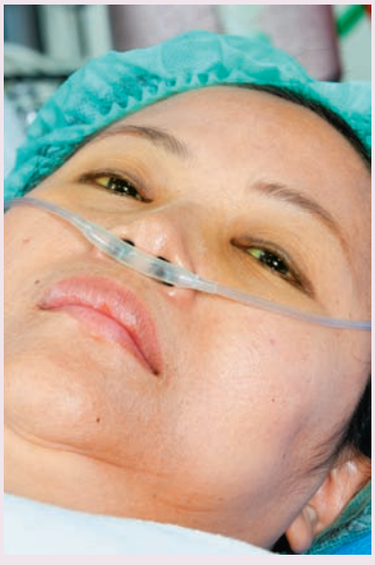
24.16 Describe evidence that hepatitis B virus causes hepatic cancer.

HBV has been shown to be associated with hepatic cancer based on the following evidence:

- Epidemiological studies reveal large numbers of hepatic cancer cases in geographic areas that also have a high prevalence of HBV.
- The HBV genome has been found integrated into hepatic cancer cells.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE EYES HAVE IT



Duyen presents herself to her campus health clinic at a liberal arts college in Oregon with a two-week history of nausea, low-grade fever, fatigue, and mild pain in her right upper abdominal quadrant. As a resident assistant in her dorm, she is aware that students with similar signs and symptoms have been diagnosed with flu for the past month. She greets the health care staff with a sheepish grin and tells them her self-diagnosis. The doctor takes one look at Duyen's eyes and skin, and realizes that this is not another case of influenza.

1. What is the name of the condition that alarms the doctor?
2. What disease does Duyen have?
3. How might Duyen have been infected?
4. Which DNA virus causes this disease?

- Hepatic cancer cells typically express HBV antigen.
- Chronic carriers of HBV are 200 times more likely to develop hepatic cancer than are noncarriers.

How does HBV produce cancer? Perhaps the gap in the double strand of DNA allows HBV to easily integrate into the DNA of a liver cell, in the process possibly activating oncogenes or suppressing oncogene repressor genes. Another theory is that repair and cell growth in response to liver damage proceeds out of control, resulting in cancer. In any case, because of its association with HBV, hepatic cancer may become the first cancer eliminated as a result of vaccination.

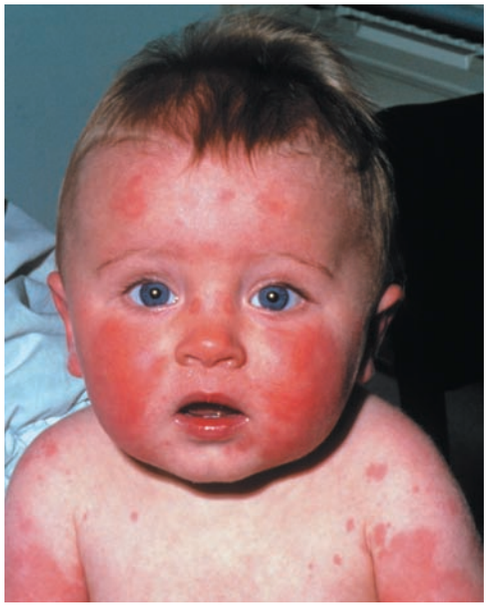
Parvoviridae

Learning Outcome

24.17 Describe the pathogenesis of erythema infectiosum.

Parvoviruses are the only pathogens of humans with a single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) genome. They are also the smallest of the DNA viruses and have an icosahedral capsid. They cause a number of endemic diseases of animals, including a potentially fatal disease of puppies.

The primary parvovirus of humans is *B19 virus* in the genus *Erythrovirus,* which is the cause of **erythema infectiosum** (er-ĭ-thē´mă in-fek-shē-ō´sŭm), also known as **fifth disease** because it was the fifth childhood rash[14] on a 1905 list. Erythema infectiosum, as the name implies, is an infectious reddening of the skin, beginning on the cheeks **(Figure 24.23)** and appearing later on the arms, thighs, buttocks, and trunk. The rash is distinctive in appearance and usually sufficient for diagnosis. As the rash progresses, earlier lesions fade, though they can reappear if the patient is exposed to sunlight. Sunlight aggravates the eruptions at all stages. No treatment is available.



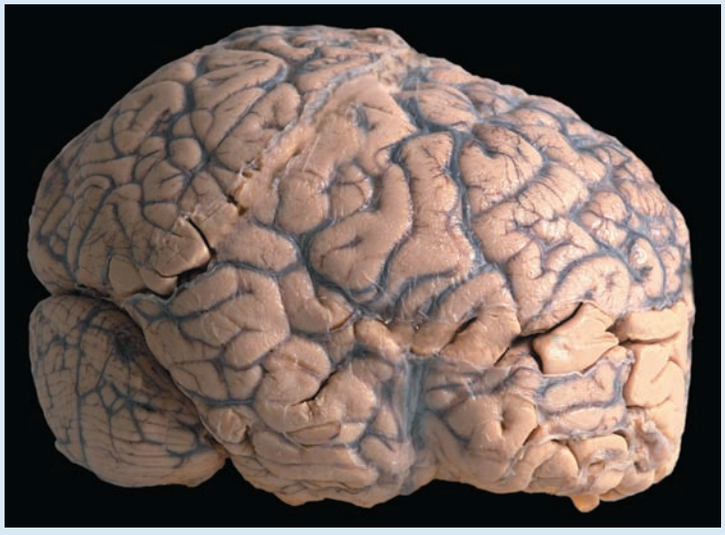
▲ Figure 24.23 A case of erythema infectiosum (fifth disease). Distinct reddening of facial skin that resembles the result of a slap is characteristic of this parvovirus-caused disease.

Table 24.2 on p. 710 summarizes features of DNA viruses of humans.

[14]The other four rashes are those of scarlet fever, rubella (German measles), roseola, and measles.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

COCAINE NO-BRAINER



Cocaine addiction is a major health and societal problem in America. The drug allows the accumulation of a neurotransmitter that stimulates an intense sense of joy and feelings of increased confidence. Simply understood, addiction results when people sense a physical or mental need for the effect. Chemical agents have proved disappointing for treating cocaine addiction, but a microbe may change this state of affairs.

Scientists at the Scripps Research Institute in La Jolla, California, have engineered a filamentous bacteriophage that displays cocaine-binding antibodies on its surface. In the central nervous system, the phage absorbs cocaine, preventing the drug from interacting with neurons and mitigating the cocaine's effect. The scientists chose a bacteriophage to deliver the antibodies because bacteriophages can enter directly into the brain through the nose. Perhaps soon addicts can snort a treatment.

TABLE 24.2 Taxonomy and Characteristics of DNA Viruses of Humans

Family	Strand Type	Enveloped or Naked	Capsid Symmetry	Size (diameter, nm)	Representative Genera (disease)
Poxviridae	Double	Enveloped	Complex	200–300	*Orthopoxvirus* (smallpox, cowpox), *Molluscipoxvirus* (molluscum contagiosum)
Herpesviridae	Double	Enveloped	Icosahedral	150–200	*Simplexvirus*—herpes, type 1 (fever blisters, respiratory infections, encephalitis), type 2 (genital infections), *Varicellovirus* (chickenpox), *Lymphocryptovirus* Epstein-Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis, Burkitt's lymphoma), *Cytomegalovirus* (birth defect), *Roseolovirus* (roseola)
Papillomaviridae	Double	Naked	Icosahedral	45–55	*Papillomavirus* (benign tumors, warts, cervical and penile cancers)
Polyomaviridae	Double	Naked	Icosahedral	45–55	*Polyomavirus* (progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy)
Adenoviridae	Double	Naked	Icosahedral	60–90	*Mastadenovirus* (conjunctivitis, respiratory infections)
Hepadnaviridae	Partial single and partial double	Enveloped	Icosahedral	42	*Orthohepadnavirus* (hepatitis B)
Parvoviridae	Single	Naked	Icosahedral	18–26	*Erythrovirus* (fifth disease)

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Poxviridae (pp. 690–693)

1. Poxviruses, among the largest of viruses, cause skin lesions that begin as flat, red **macules;** enlarge into **papules;** fill with clear fluid to become **vesicles;** and then become pus-filled **pustules,** also called **pocks** or **pox.** These crust over and may scar.
2. **Smallpox,** eradicated in nature by 1980, was caused by a poxvirus **(variola).** The smallpox virus strain commonly known as **variola minor** caused less severe cases of smallpox than **variola major.** Governments maintain smallpox viruses in secure laboratories as research tools for studies in pathogenicity, for vaccination and recombinant DNA technology, and as material for developing protection against bioterrorism attacks.
3. The poxvirus *Molluscipoxvirus* causes **molluscum contagiosum,** which results in tumorlike growths on the skin.
4. Although monkeypox and cowpox can infect humans, such infections are rare.

Herpesviridae (pp. 693–702)

1. Herpesviruses include viruses that cause fever blisters, genital herpes, chickenpox, shingles, mononucleosis, and cancer. Individual species are named **human herpesviruses 1** through **8** (HHV-1 through HHV-8).
2. *Human herpesvirus 1* (HHV-1), which was known previously as herpes simplex type 1 (HSV-1), and *human herpesvirus 2* (HHV-2) (previously HSV-2) typically produce painful skin lesions on lips and genitalia, respectively. Oral herpes lesions are called **fever blisters** or **cold sores.**
3. HHV-1 and HHV-2 enter sensory nerve cells, where they may remain latent for years. Lesions recur in about two-thirds of patients in response to emotional stress, sunlight, immune suppression, or other factors that stimulate the latent viruses to reactivate.

4. **Ocular herpes** usually affects one eye to various degrees, from recurring discomfort and light sensitivity to blindness.
5. A **whitlow** is an inflamed blister resulting from infection of HHV-1 and HHV-2 via a cut or break in the skin.
6. Infections of HHV-1 and HHV-2 are usually treatable and are often preventable.
7. **Varicella (chickenpox)** in children and **herpes zoster (shingles)** in adults are both caused by *human herpesvirus 3,* which is also known as **varicella-zoster virus (VZV),** in the genus *Varicellovirus.* Skin lesions progress from macules to papules to vesicles to crusts. Latent viruses in the sensory nerves can be activated in adults by stress, age, or immune suppression.
8. **Burkitt's lymphoma** is an infectious cancer caused by *human herpesvirus 4,* which is also known as **Epstein-Barr virus (EBV).** This herpesvirus also causes **infectious mononucleosis (mono).** EBV is also implicated in chronic fatigue syndrome, Hodgkin's lymphoma, nasopharyngeal cancer, and hairy leukoplakia seen in AIDS patients.
9. The *human herpesvirus 5,* cytomegalovirus (CMV), causes infected cells to enlarge. This virus is widespread, transmitted by bodily secretions, and often asymptomatic, though infections in immunosuppressed adults and congenitally infected newborns can be severe and may be fatal.
10. *Human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6)* causes **roseola,** a rose-colored rash on the face of children.
11. HHV-7 is an orphan virus; that is, it causes no known disease.
12. *Human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8)* causes Kaposi's sarcoma, a cancer often seen in AIDS patients.

Papillomaviridae and *Polyomaviridae* (pp. 702–704)

1. A **wart,** also known as a **papilloma,** is a benign growth of epithelium or mucous membrane caused by a papillomavirus. Seed warts are most often found on fingers or toes; plantar warts on the soles of the feet; flat warts on the trunk, face, elbow, or knees; and genital warts on the external genitalia. **Condylomata acuminata** are large, cauliflower-like genital warts.
2. **Polyomaviruses,** such as BK and JC viruses, infect the kidneys of most people but cause disease only in immunosuppressed patients. In these cases, BK viruses compromise kidney function, and JC viruses cause **progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML),** which results in severe, irreversible brain damage.

Adenoviridae (pp. 704–706)

1. Adenoviruses are one cause of the "common cold" and a cause of one form of conjunctivitis (pinkeye).

Hepadnaviridae (pp. 706–709)

1. Hepadnaviruses are unique in being partially dsDNA and partially ssDNA—a condition resulting from incomplete DNA replication involving an RNA intermediary.
2. **Hepatitis B virus (HBV)** infects the liver, is transmitted in blood and other bodily fluids, and is the only DNA virus that causes **hepatitis.** A vaccine against HBV is available, but no treatment is universally acceptable.
3. HBV is implicated as a cause of liver cancer.

Parvoviridae (p. 709)

1. **Parvoviruses,** the only genus of human pathogens with ssDNA genomes, include a virus that causes a fatal disease in puppies and *B19 virus,* which causes **erythema infectiosum (fifth disease),** a harmless red rash occurring in children.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except for Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. If the envelope of a particular virus were unstable outside the host's body, which of the following statements would you expect to be true concerning this virus?
   a. It would be a dsRNA virus.
   b. It would be transmitted by intimate contact.
   c. Touching a doorknob would easily transmit it.
   d. That virus would eventually cease to be a threat to the population.
2. For which of the following reasons are most animal poxviruses unable to infect humans?
   a. Affected animals are not in frequent contact with humans.
   b. The human immune system makes it impossible for the foreign viral particles to reproduce effectively.
   c. Attachment to human cells is unlikely.
   d. Human cells lack the necessary enzymes for infection.
3. The initial flat, red skin lesions of poxviruses are called _____.
   a. macules
   b. papules
   c. pustules
   d. pocks
4. Which of the following statements is true concerning variola major?
   a. It carries a mortality rate of less than 1%.
   b. It affects internal organs before appearing on the skin.
   c. It has been totally eradicated from the Earth.
   d. The skin lesions it causes are smooth, waxy, tumorlike nodules on the face.
5. Which of the following herpesvirus infections would be potentially most serious?
   a. a whitlow
   b. ocular herpes
   c. shingles
   d. cytomegalovirus in fetuses

6. A man experienced a laboratory accident in which he was infected with adenovirus. What signs or symptoms might he exhibit?
   a. sore throat
   b. headache
   c. pinkeye
   d. all of the above

7. Which of the following is an inflammatory condition of the liver?
   a. fifth disease
   b. PML
   c. seed warts
   d. hepatitis

8. Which of the following statements is *false*?
   a. B19 virus is the primary parvovirus of humans.
   b. Erythema infectiosum is caused by a parvovirus.
   c. In children, parvovirus infections are accompanied by a high mortality rate.
   d. Parvovirus infection in humans results in infectious reddening of the skin.

9. A distinguishing feature of poxvirus is _____.
   a. its large size
   b. a polyhedral capsid
   c. the type of RNA it contains
   d. the production of several types of warts

10. Monkeypox has been diagnosed in several humans in Zaire. What might be recommended to prevent further risk of infection?
    a. Catch the monkeys for inoculation with monkeypox vaccine.
    b. Remove infected tissues from humans with chemicals, by surgery, or by freezing.
    c. Reinstate smallpox vaccinations for the population of Zaire.
    d. The diagnosis must have been incorrect because humans are unaffected by monkeypox.

11. Which of the following viral families is most likely to contain viruses that exist in a latent state in humans?
    a. *Herpesviridae*
    b. *Poxviridae*
    c. *Adenoviridae*
    d. *Parvoviridae*

12. DNA viruses in which of the following families are relatively large and thus potentially well suited for vaccinations and the introduction of genetic material in gene therapy?
    a. *Herpesviridae*
    b. *Poxviridae*
    c. *Papillomaviridae*
    d. *Hepadnaviridae*

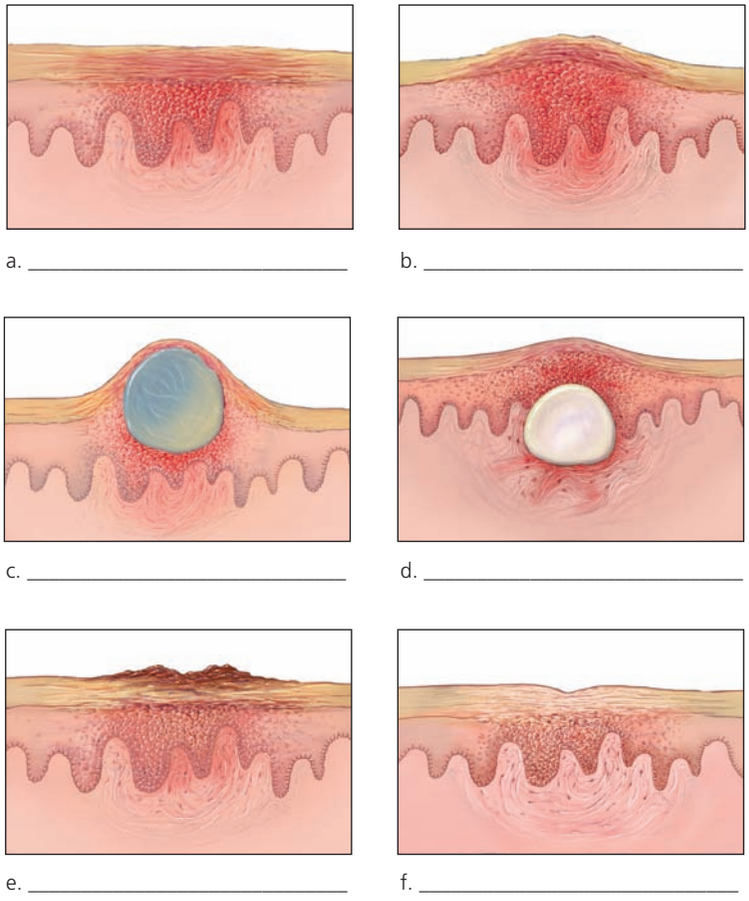
13. Being habitually careful not to touch or rub your eyes with unwashed hands would reduce your risk of contracting _____.
    a. chickenpox
    b. infectious mononucleosis
    c. seed warts
    d. a cold

14. *Human herpesvirus 2* _____.
    a. can cause genital herpes
    b. may infect a baby at birth
    c. causes about 10% of cold sores
    d. all of the above

15. Epstein-Barr virus _____.
    a. can be asymptomatic
    b. causes mononucleosis
    c. can cause cancer
    d. all of the above

Visualize It!

1. Label the successive stages of skin lesions as exemplified by smallpox.

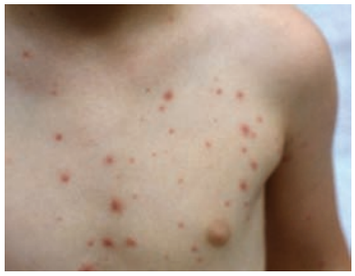


a. _____ b. _____

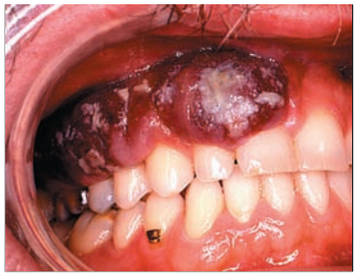
c. _____ d. _____

e. _____ f. _____

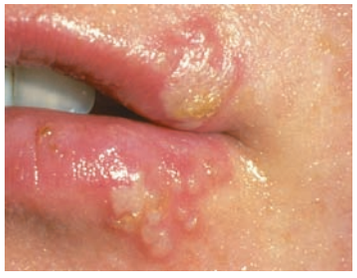
2. Name the disease shown in each photo.



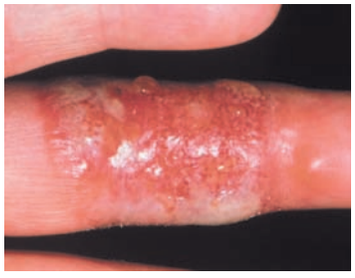
a. _____



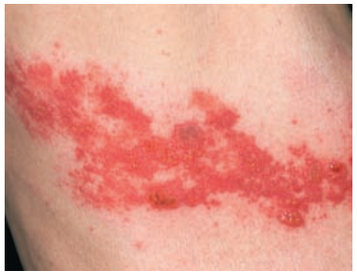
b. _____



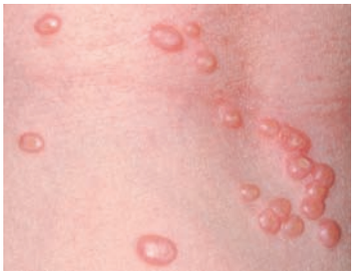
c. _____



d. _____



e. _____



f. _____

Short Answer

1. The Smith family seems to get fever blisters regularly. Suggest an explanation for this observation.
2. You have been given a large grant to do postgraduate research on live smallpox viruses. Where in the world would you find samples?
3. What was the difference in the effects of variola major and variola minor?
4. What observation led scientists to understand the relationship between shingles and chickenpox?
5. Most of the world's population has been infected with EBV by age one and shows no ill effects, even where medical care is poor. In contrast, individuals in industrialized countries are ordinarily infected after puberty, and these older patients tend to have more severe reactions to infection despite better overall health and access to medical care. Explain this apparent paradox.

Matching

In each of the blanks beside the diseases in the left column, write the letter of the viral family to which that disease's causative agent belongs. Answers may be used more than once.

____ Chickenpox
____ Smallpox
____ Cowpox
____ Molluscum contagiosum
____ HHV-1 infection
____ Whitlow
____ Shingles
____ Burkitt's lymphoma
____ Infectious mononucleosis
____ Chronic fatigue syndrome
____ Cytomegalovirus infection
____ Genital warts
____ Roseola
____ Plantar warts
____ Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
____ Common cold
____ Hepatitis B
____ Fifth disease

A. *Poxviridae*
B. *Herpesviridae*
C. *Papillomaviridae*
D. *Adenoviridae*
E. *Hepadnaviridae*
F. *Parvoviridae*
G. *Polyomaviridae*

Critical Thinking

1. Most DNA viruses replicate within nuclei of host cells, using host enzymes to replicate their DNA. In contrast, poxviruses replicate in the cytoplasm. What problem does this create for poxvirus replication? How could the virus overcome this problem?
2. Mrs. Rathbone called the pediatrician concerning her young daughter Rene, who had a rosy facial rash and coldlike sniffles for two weeks. What is the most likely cause of Rene's problem?
3. Certain features of smallpox viruses allowed them to be eradicated in nature. Which other DNA viruses are suitable candidates for eradication, and what features of their biology make them suitable candidates?
4. A 10-year-old girl at summer camp complains of fever, runny nose, cough, sore throat, and tiredness. Within several hours, 36 other girls report to the infirmary with the same signs and symptoms. Although the girls were assigned to several different cabins and ate in two different dining halls, all of them had participated in outdoor archery, had gone horseback riding, and had been swimming in the camp pool. Infection with what DNA virus could account for their symptoms? The facts point to a common

source of infection; what is it? What could the camp management do to limit such an outbreak in the future?

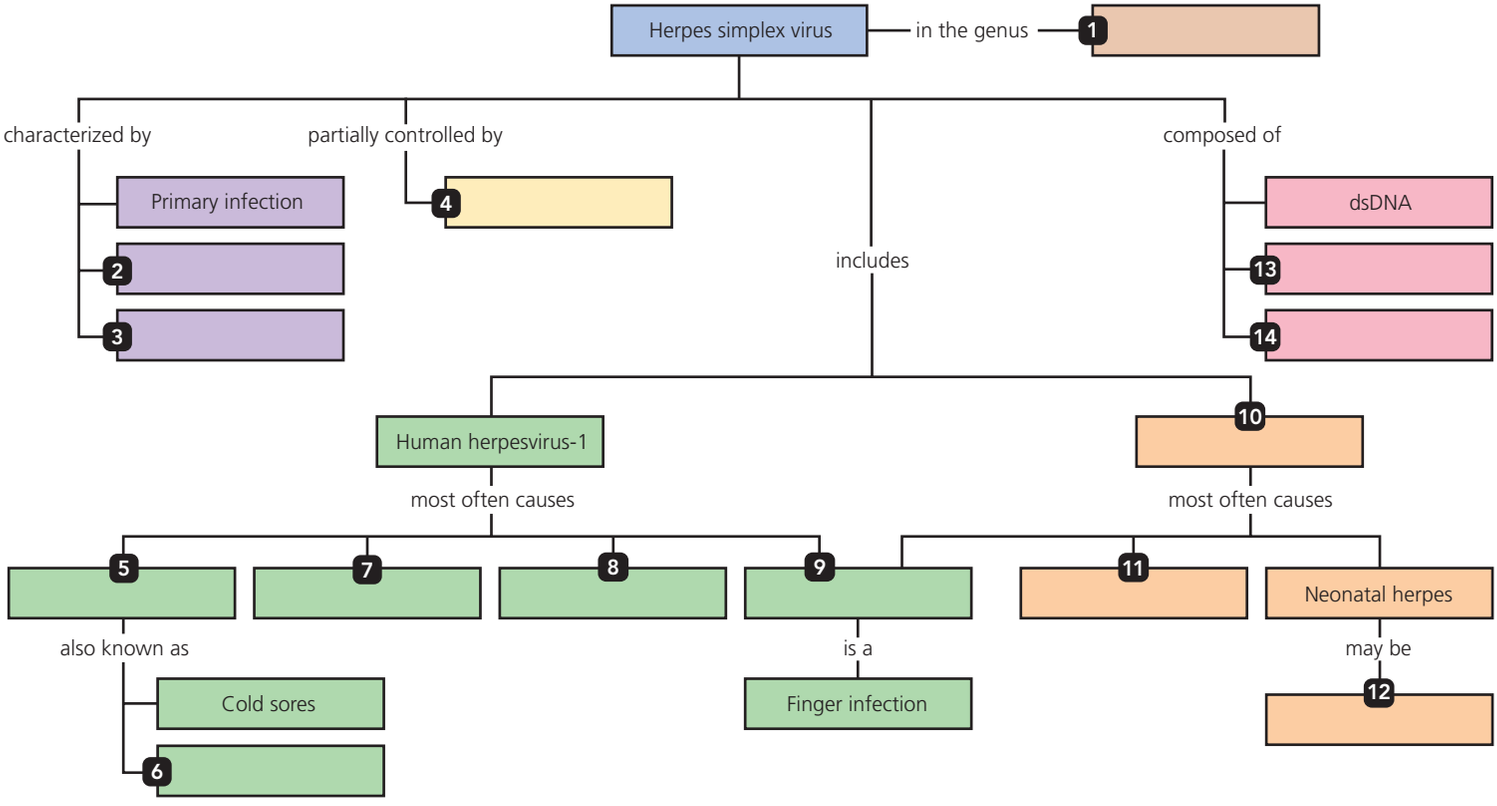
5. A week after spending their vacation rafting down the Colorado River, all five members of the Chen family developed cold sores on their lips. Their doctor told them that the lesions were caused by a herpesvirus. Mr. and Mrs. Chen were stunned: Isn't herpes a sexually transmitted disease? How could it have affected their young children?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes herpes simplex virus. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Acyclovir
Envelope
Fever blisters
Genital herpes
Gingivostomatitis
Herpetic whitlow
Human herpesvirus 2
Latency
Life threatening
Ocular herpes
Oral herpes
Polyhedral capsid
Recurrences
Simplexvirus



25 Pathogenic RNA Viruses

A patient lies delirious and near death in an African hospital, **bleeding** from his eyes and gums and into his digestive tract as a result of Marburg hemorrhagic fever. An AIDS patient in Europe continues his expensive daily **"cocktail"** of antiviral drugs. Passengers on a cruise ship suffering from severe diarrhea wish they had never eaten food infected with **noroviruses**. Thousands of people around the world go to bed with fever, sore throat, cough, and malaise, hoping to survive the **flu** season.

What do these diseases have in common? They are all caused by viruses that use RNA as their genetic material. The manifestations of **RNA** viral infection are widely variable and pose great challenges in diagnosis, treatment, and prevention. Although RNA viruses can also cause diseases in animals and plants, in this chapter we will focus on RNA viruses that cause human **diseases**.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The filamentous Marburg virus (pink), which is native to Africa, causes usually fatal hemorrhaging (bleeding).

All cells and all DNA viruses use DNA as their genetic material. In contrast, RNA viruses and viroids are the only agents that use RNA molecules to store their genetic information.

There are four basic types of RNA viruses (Chapter 13):

- Positive single-stranded RNA (+ssRNA) viruses
- Retroviruses (which are +ssRNA viruses that convert their genome to DNA once they are inside a cell)
- Negative single-stranded RNA (–ssRNA) viruses
- Double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) viruses

Positive RNA is RNA that can be used by a ribosome to translate protein; it is essentially mRNA. Negative RNA cannot be processed by a ribosome; it must first be transcribed as mRNA. (Chapter 13 examined the replication strategies of these four types of RNA viruses, and Table 13.3 on p. 393 summarizes the information.) In addition to grouping RNA viruses by the kind of RNA they contain, scientists also note that many RNA viruses have more than one molecule of RNA—in other words, their genomes are *segmented*.

RNA viruses of humans are categorized into 15 families on the basis of the following:

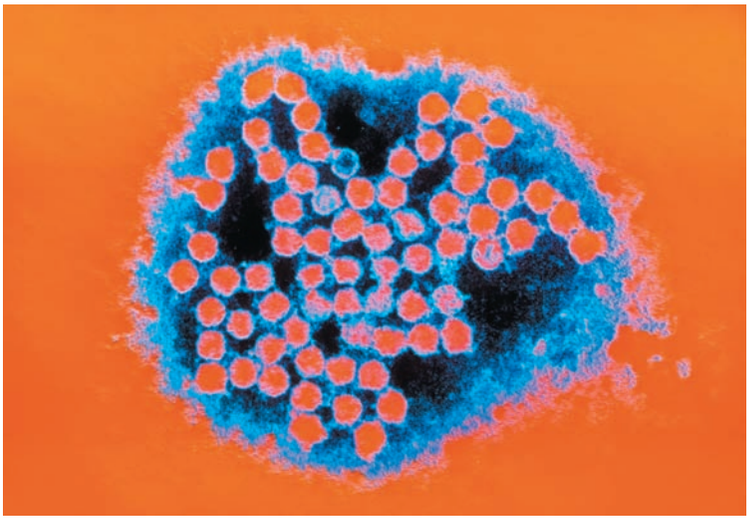
- Their genomic structure
- The presence of an envelope
- The size and shape of their capsid

Positive single-stranded RNA viruses of humans are classified into eight families: *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae, Hepeviridae, Togaviridae, Flaviviridae, Coronaviridae,* and *Retroviridae.* Negative single-stranded RNA viruses are in six families: *Paramyxoviridae, Rhabdoviridae, Filoviridae, Orthomyxoviridae, Bunyaviridae,* and *Arenaviridae.* The only family containing double-stranded RNA viruses is *Reoviridae*. We begin our discussion of pathogenic RNA viruses by considering four families of positive ssRNA viruses that lack envelopes.

Naked, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae,* and *Hepeviridae*

The families *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae,* and *Hepeviridae* contain positive single-stranded RNA viruses with naked polyhedral capsids. The family *Picornaviridae* is a large viral family containing many human pathogens, including viruses that cause common colds, poliomyelitis, and hepatitis A. Picornaviruses range in size from 22 to 30 nm in diameter, making them the smallest of animal viruses. Five hundred million picornaviruses could sit side by side on the head of a pin. Their small size and RNA genome are reflected in the name **picornavirus**[1] (pi-kōr-nă-vī´rus). Representative picornaviruses that cause human diseases are in the genera *Rhinovirus, Enterovirus,* and *Hepatovirus.*

Caliciviruses, astroviruses, and hepeviruses are generally larger than picornaviruses (27–40 nm in diameter) and have a six-pointed star shape; they cause gastrointestinal diseases.



▲ **Figure 25.1 Rhinoviruses (stained orange), the most common cause of colds.** The viruses are able to infect microvilli of nasal cells despite the layer of mucus. *What other types of viruses cause common colds?*

Figure 25.1 *Besides rhinoviruses (in the family Picornaviridae), adenoviruses, coronaviruses, reoviruses, and paramyxoviruses cause colds.*

In the following sections we will consider in turn three diseases caused by picornaviruses—common cold, polio, and hepatitis A—before examining diseases caused by caliciviruses, astroviruses, and hepeviruses.

Common Colds Caused by Rhinoviruses

Learning Outcome

25.1 Discuss treatment of the common cold.

Many Americans sniffle and sneeze their way through at least two colds each year. Though the symptoms of all colds are similar—sneezing, *rhinorrhea* (runny nose), congestion, mild sore throat, headache, malaise, and cough for 7 to 10 days—there is no single common cause of the "common cold." Rather, many different viruses, including picornaviruses, adenoviruses, coronaviruses, reoviruses, and paramyxoviruses, cause colds. However, the over 100 *serotypes* (varieties) of picornaviruses in the genus *Rhinovirus*, commonly known as **rhinoviruses**[2] (rī´nō-vī´rŭs-ĕz), cause most colds **(Figure 25.1)**. **Table 25.1** compares the symptoms of colds and other respiratory infections.

Epidemiology of *Rhinovirus* Infections

Rhinoviruses are limited to infecting the upper respiratory tract. They replicate best at a temperature of 33°C, which is the temperature of the nasal cavity.

[1] From Latin *pico*, meaning "small," and "RNA virus."
[2] From Greek *rhinos*, meaning "nose."

TABLE 25.1 Manifestations of Respiratory Infections

Ailment	Manifestations
Common cold (viral)	Sneezing, rhinorrhea, congestion, sore throat, headache, malaise, cough
Influenza (viral)	Fever, rhinorrhea, headache, body aches, fatigue, dry cough, pharyngitis, congestion
"Strep" throat (bacterial)	Fever, red and sore throat, swollen lymph nodes in neck
Viral pneumonia	Fever, chills, mucus-producing cough, headache, body aches, fatigue
Bacterial pneumonia	Fever, chills, congestion, cough, chest pain, rapid breathing, and possible nausea and vomiting
Bronchitis (viral or bacterial)	Mucus-producing cough, wheezing
Inhalation anthrax (bacterial)	Fever, malaise, cough, chest discomfort, vomiting
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)	High fever (>38°C), chills, shaking, headache, malaise, myalgia

Rhinoviruses are extremely infective—entry of a single virus into a person is sufficient to cause a cold in 50% of individuals. Symptomatic or not, an infected person can spread viruses by releasing them into the surrounding environment, where they are transmitted in aerosols produced by coughing or sneezing, via fomites (nonliving carriers of pathogens), or via hand-to-hand contact. Direct person-to-person contact is the most common means of transmitting these infections.

When cold symptoms are most severe, over 100,000 virions may be present in each milliliter of nasal mucus. They remain viable for hours outside the body. Infection often results from inoculation by hand into the mucous membranes of the eyes, where the viruses are washed by tears into the nasal cavity and readily infect nasal cells.

Although people of all ages are susceptible to rhinoviruses, people acquire some immunity against serotypes that have infected them in the past. For this reason, children typically have six to eight colds per year, younger adults have two to four, and adults over age 60 have one or fewer. An isolated population may acquire a certain amount of *herd immunity* (see Chapter 17) to specific varieties of rhinoviruses; however, new serotypes introduced into the population by outsiders or by mutations in the RNA of the viruses ensure that no group is free of all colds.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of *Rhinovirus* Infections

The manifestations of rhinoviruses are usually diagnostic (see Table 25.1), and laboratory tests are required only if the serotype is to be identified.

While many home remedies and over-the-counter medicines exist to treat the common cold, none prevents colds or provides a cure. Studies of one "cure"—large amounts of vitamin C—have yielded conflicting results: Some studies indicate no benefit, whereas others suggest a slight benefit for patients who are treated with vitamin C. A prescription remedy, pleconaril, taken at the onset of symptoms, reduces the seriousness and duration of colds caused by rhinoviruses. Antihistamines, decongestants, and pain relievers relieve the symptoms but do not reduce the duration of the disease. Rest and fluids allow the body to mount an effective immune response.

Because rhinoviruses do not share any common antigens that are accessible to the immune system, an effective vaccine for the common cold would have to immunize against hundreds of serotypes, which is impractical. Antisepsis is probably the most important preventive measure, especially if you have touched the hands of an infected person. Disinfection of fomites is also effective in limiting the spread of colds.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

As you have probably noticed, colds occur more frequently in the fall and winter. One explanation for this observation is that more people are crowded together in buildings when school starts and the weather cools. Design an experiment or epidemiological survey to test the hypothesis that crowded conditions explain the prevalence of colds in the fall and winter.

Diseases of Enteroviruses

Learning Outcomes

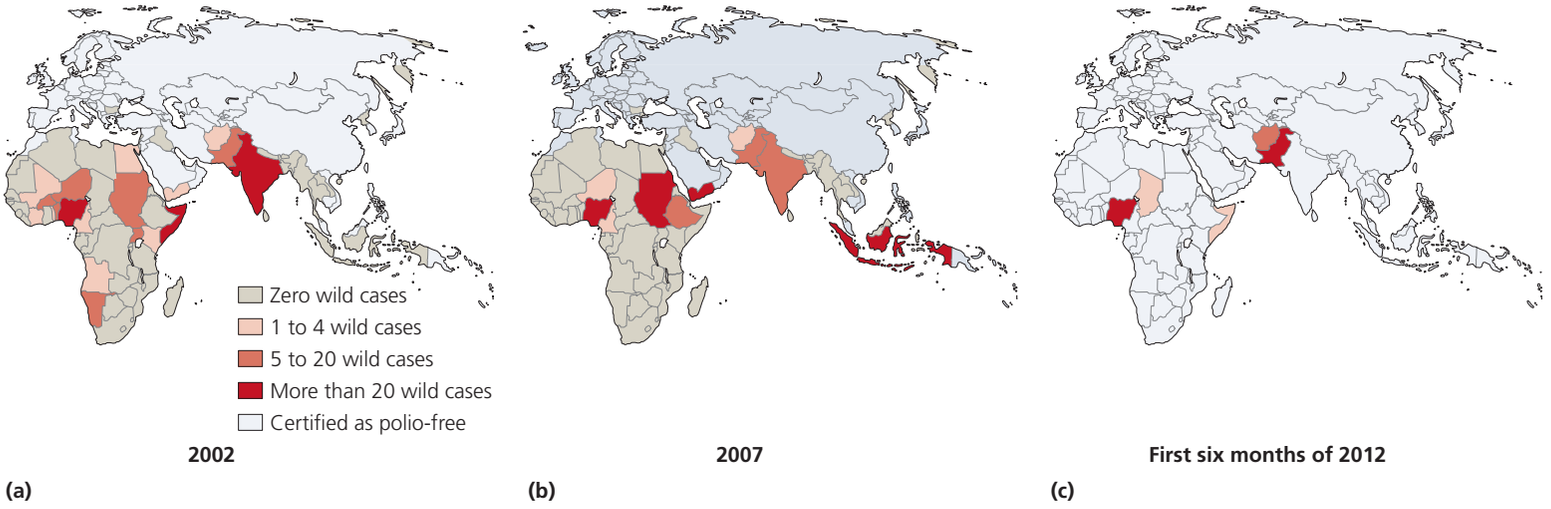
25.2 Describe the effects of polioviruses on humans.
25.3 Describe the contributions of Jonas Salk and Albert Sabin toward eliminating polio.
25.4 Compare and contrast the diseases caused by coxsackieviruses and echoviruses.

A second genus of picornaviruses is *Enterovirus.* Contrary to their name, **enteroviruses** do not usually cause diseases of the digestive system. They infect the pharynx and intestine, where they multiply in the mucosa and lymphatic tissue without causing symptoms. Instead, enteroviruses are so named because they are transmitted via the fecal-oral route. Enteroviruses spread from their initial sites of infection through the blood (viremia) and infect different target cells, depending on the particular virus. Enteroviruses are cytolytic,[3] killing their host cells. The clinical manifestations of enteroviruses depend on the viral serotype, the size of the infecting dose, the target organ, and the patient's health, gender, and age. There are three main types of enteroviruses: polioviruses, coxsackieviruses, and echoviruses.

Poliomyelitis

Many Americans still remember the dreaded **poliomyelitis** (pō´lē-ō-mī´ĕ-lī´tis), or **polio,** epidemics of the past, when hospitals were filled with crippled patients. Because polioviruses are stable for prolonged periods in swimming pools and lakes

[3]From Greek *cytos*, meaning "cell," and *lysis*, meaning "dissolution."



▲ **Figure 25.2** **Reports of naturally occurring polio.** **(a)** Cases in 2002. **(b)** Cases in 2007. **(c)** Cases in first half of 2012. The goal of global eradication of polio is within reach. No cases occurred in the Americas.

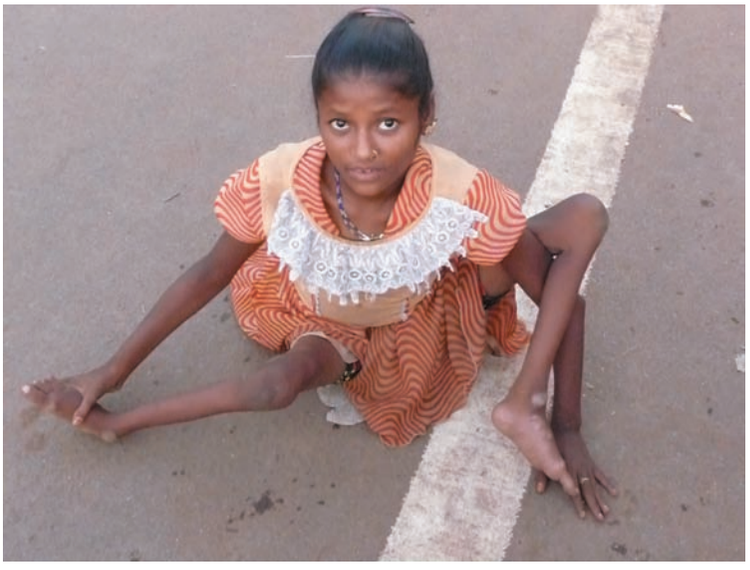
and can be acquired by swallowing contaminated water, parents in the 1930s and 1940s often feared to let their children swim. Thankfully, those days appear to nearly be over around the world. The last case of wild-type poliomyelitis in the Americas occurred in 1979 (though vaccine-induced polio occurred as recently as 2001). The World Health Organization (WHO) has worked for years to eradicate polio in Africa and Asia. Progress has been sporadic but hopeful **(Figure 25.2)**.

There are three serotypes of poliovirus. After being ingested and infecting pharyngeal and intestinal cells, any of these serotypes could cause one of the following four conditions:

- *Asymptomatic* infections. Most infections (almost 90%) are asymptomatic.
- *Minor polio,* which includes nonspecific symptoms such as temporary fever, headache, malaise, and sore throat. Approximately 5% of cases are minor polio.
- *Nonparalytic polio,* resulting from polioviruses invading the meninges and central nervous system, producing muscle spasms and back pain in addition to the general symptoms of minor polio. Nonparalytic polio occurs in about 2% of cases.
- *Paralytic polio,* in which the viruses invade cells of the spinal cord and motor cortex of the brain, producing paralysis by limiting nerve impulse conduction. The degree of paralysis varies with the type of poliovirus involved, the infective dose, and the health and age of the patient. In **bulbar poliomyelitis,** the brain stem and medulla are infected, resulting in paralysis of muscles in the limbs or of respiratory muscles. In most paralytic cases, complete recovery resulted after 6 to 24 months, but in some cases paralysis is lifelong **(Figure 25.3)**. Paralytic polio occurs in less than 2% of infections. Famous victims of paralytic polio include novelist Sir Walter Scott, President Franklin Delano Roosevelt, and violinist Itzhak Perlman **(Figure 25.4)**.

Postpolio syndrome is a crippling deterioration in the function of polio-affected muscles that occurs in up to 80% of recovered polio patients some 30 to 40 years after their original bout with poliomyelitis. This condition is not caused by a reemergence of polioviruses, as viruses are not present. Instead, the effects appear to stem from an aging-related aggravation of nerve damage that occurred during the original infection.

The near elimination of polio stands as one of the great achievements of 20th-century medicine. It was made possible by the development of two effective vaccines. Jonas Salk (1914–1995) developed an **inactivated polio vaccine (IPV)** in 1955. Six years later, it was replaced in the United States by a live, attenuated, **oral polio vaccine (OPV)** developed by Albert Sabin



▲ **Figure 25.3** **Polio can result in severe paralysis.**

◀ **Figure 25.4**
Violinist Itzhak Perlman. This world-famous violinist did not let paralytic polio stop him from achieving in his field of endeavor.

(1906–1993). Both vaccines are effective in providing immunity against all three strains of poliovirus, though OPV occasionally mutates into a virulent form and causes polio. Table 25.2 compares the advantages and disadvantages of the two vaccines.

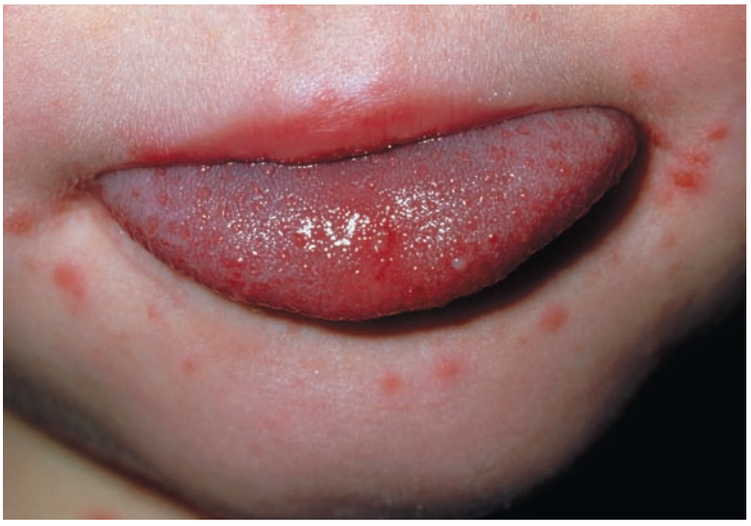
CRITICAL THINKING

Smallpox is the only disease that has been eradicated worldwide, though scientists are close to eradicating polio. What features do the smallpox and polio viruses share that has allowed medical science to rid the world of these diseases? Compare these features to those of rhinoviruses in discussing the likelihood of eliminating colds caused by rhinoviruses.

Other Diseases of Enteroviruses

The other enteroviruses that cause human disease are **coxsackieviruses**[4] and **echoviruses.** As with all enteroviruses, infection is by the fecal-oral route. Most infections are subclinical or result in mild fever, muscle aches, and malaise. There are two types of coxsackieviruses (type A and type B), each with several serotypes, as well as numerous serotypes of echoviruses, which cause a variety of human diseases.

Coxsackieviruses **Coxsackie A** viruses are associated with lesions and fever that last for a few days to weeks and are self-limiting. Several serotypes cause lesions of the mouth and pharynx called *herpangina* because of their resemblance to herpes lesions. Sore throat, pain in swallowing, and vomiting accompany herpangina.



▲ **Figure 25.5** **Lesions characteristic of hand-foot-and-mouth disease.** The malady is caused by a coxsackie A virus. *Why are coxsackieviruses considered enteroviruses when they do not cause infections of the gastrointestinal tract?*

Figure 25.5 *All enteroviruses, including coxsackievirus, are infective through the gastrointestinal tract, though they may affect other organ systems.*

Another serotype of coxsackie A virus causes *hand-foot-and-mouth disease*, mostly in children under age 10. The disease is aptly named because it involves lesions on the extremities and in the mouth (Figure 25.5). Yet another coxsackie A virus causes an extremely contagious *acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis.* Other coxsackie A viruses also cause some colds.

Coxsackie B viruses are associated with *myocarditis* (inflammation of the heart muscle) and *pericardial*[5] *infections.* The symptoms in young adults may resemble myocardial infarction (heart attack), though fever is associated with a coxsackie infection. Newborns are particularly susceptible to coxsackie B myocarditis resulting in a rapid onset of heart failure with a high mortality rate.

[4]From "Coxsackie," New York, where the virus was first isolated.
[5]The pericardium is the membrane that surrounds and protects the heart.

TABLE 25.2 Comparison of Polio Vaccines

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Salk vaccine: Inactivated polio vaccine (IPV)	Is effective and inexpensive; is stable during transport and storage; poses no risk of vaccine-related disease	Requires booster to achieve lifelong immunity; is injected and can be painful; requires higher community vaccination rate than does OPV
Sabin vaccine: Oral polio vaccine (OPV)	Induces secretory antibody response similar to natural infection; is easy to administer; can result in herd immunity	Requires boosters to achieve immunity; is more expensive than IPV; is less stable than IPV; can mutate to disease-causing form; poses risk of polio developing in immunocompromised patients

One type of coxsackie B virus causes *pleurodynia* (ploor-ō-din´ē-ă), also known as *devil's grip*. This disease involves the sudden onset of fever and unilateral, severe, low thoracic pain, which may be excruciating. Coxsackie B virus can be transmitted across a placenta to produce severe and sometimes fatal disseminated disease of the brain, pancreas, and liver in the fetus. Infection of the pancreas by coxsackie B is suspected to be a cause of *diabetes mellitus* because the viruses destroy cells in the islets of Langerhans that produce insulin.

Both coxsackie A and B viruses can cause *viral meningitis*, an acute disease accompanied by headache and, with type A infections, a skin rash. Coxsackievirus meningitis is usually self-limiting and uneventful unless the patient is less than one year old.

Echoviruses The name *echovirus* is derived from *enteric cytopathic human orphan* virus because these viruses are acquired intestinally and were not initially associated with any disease—they were *orphan viruses*. It is now known that echoviruses cause viral meningitis and some colds.

Epidemiology of *Enterovirus* Infections

Enteroviruses have a worldwide distribution and occur particularly in areas with inadequate sewage treatment. Transmission is by the fecal-oral route involving ingestion of contaminated food or water or oral contact with infected hands or fomites. For some reason, enterovirus diseases are more common in summer.

As we have seen, enteroviruses pose the greatest risk to fetuses and newborns, with the exception of poliovirus, which results in more serious symptoms in older children and young adults.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of *Enterovirus* Infections

Enterovirus infections are usually benign and have mild symptoms, so they are not often diagnosed except in severe cases such as paralytic polio and viral meningitis. The cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of viral meningitis patients has a normal glucose level, in contrast to that seen with bacterial meningitis. Viruses are rarely found in the CSF, so their presence there is diagnostic for viral meningitis; serological testing can confirm enterovirus infection.

No antiviral therapy is effective against enterovirus infection. Treatment involves support and limitation of pain and fever. Good hygiene and adequate sewage treatment can prevent infection with enteroviruses. No vaccines exist for coxsackievirus and echovirus infections, but effective vaccines do exist for polio. (Figure 17.3 summarizes current vaccination recommendations.)

Hepatitis A

Learning Outcomes

25.5 Describe the signs and symptoms of hepatitis.

25.6 Compare and contrast the five viruses that cause hepatitis.

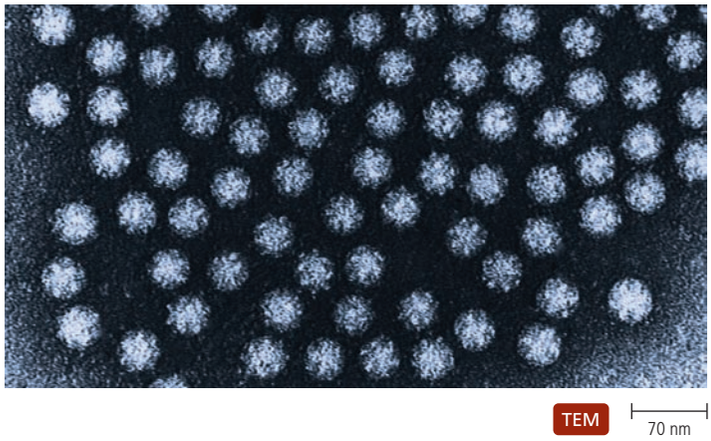
Like enteroviruses, **hepatitis A virus** (genus *Hepatovirus*), is transmitted through the fecal-oral route, but unlike enteroviruses it is not cytolytic. Hepatitis A virus can survive on surfaces such as countertops and cutting boards for days and resists common household disinfectants such as chlorine bleach.

Hepatitis A has an incubation period of about one month before fever, fatigue, nausea, anorexia, and jaundice abruptly start. As with hepatitis B (caused by a DNA virus), the patient's own cellular immune system kills infected liver cells, resulting in the signs and symptoms. Children are less likely than adults to develop symptoms because their cellular immune responses are still immature. Hepatitis A virus does not cause chronic liver disease, and complete recovery occurs 99% of the time. Patients release virions in their feces and are infective even without developing symptoms. To prevent hepatitis A, two doses of hepatitis A vaccine are recommended for all children and adults (see Figure 17.3).

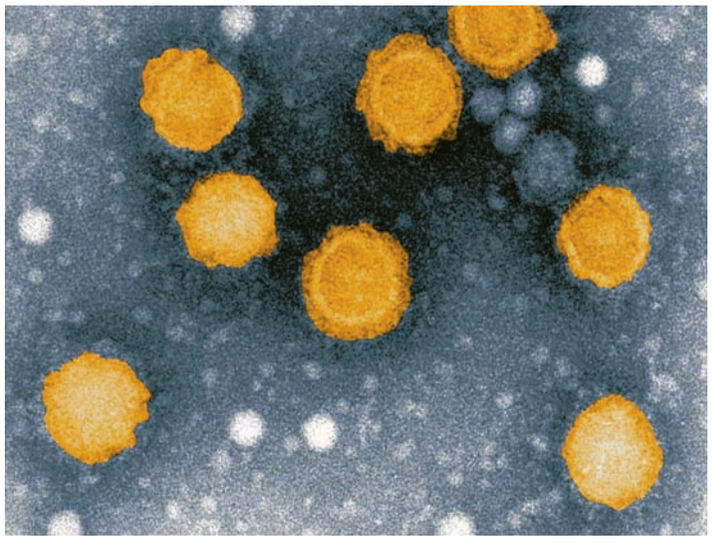
Table 25.3 compares five viruses known to cause viral hepatitis. Four of them (hepatitis A, C, D, and E) are RNA viruses discussed in this chapter. The fifth is hepatitis B virus (discussed in Chapter 24.)

TABLE 25.3 Comparison of Hepatitis Viruses

Feature	Hepatitis A	Hepatitis B	Hepatitis C	Hepatitis D	Hepatitis E
Common names of disease	Infectious hepatitis	Serum hepatitis	Non-A, non-B hepatitis; chronic hepatitis	Delta agent hepatitis	Hepatitis E, enteric hepatitis
Virus family	*Picornaviridae*	*Hepadnaviridae*	*Flaviviridae*	*Arenaviridae*	*Hepeviridae*
Genome	+ssRNA	dsDNA	+ssRNA	−ssRNA	+ssRNA
Envelope?	Naked	Enveloped	Enveloped	Enveloped	Naked
Transmission	Fecal-oral	Needles; sex	Needles; sex	Needles; sex	Fecal-oral
Severity (mortality rate)	Mild (<0.5%)	Occasionally severe (1–2%)	Usually subclinical (0.5–4%)	Requires coinfection with hepatitis B virus; may be severe (high)	Mild (1–2%) except in pregnant women (20%)
Chronic carrier state?	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Other disease associations	—	Hepatic cancer	Hepatic cancer	Cirrhosis	—



▲ **Figure 25.6** **Viruses of the families *Caliciviridae* and *Astroviridae* have naked, star-shaped capsids.**



▲ **Figure 25.7** **Togaviruses.** Each virus has a closely appressed envelope around its capsid.

Acute Gastroenteritis

Learning Outcome

25.7 Compare and contrast caliciviruses and astroviruses.

Two groups of small (about 30–40 nm in diameter), round viruses that cause acute gastroenteritis are **caliciviruses** (kă-lis´i-vī´rŭs-ĕz) and **astroviruses** (as´trō-vī´rŭs-ĕz), which are slightly larger than picornaviruses and have naked, star-shaped, polyhedral capsids **(Figure 25.6)**. Like enteroviruses, caliciviruses and astroviruses enter the body through the digestive system, but in contrast to enteroviruses they cause gastrointestinal disease. The capsids of caliciviruses have indentations, whereas those of astroviruses do not. Antigens of viruses in the two groups can be distinguished through serological tests. The incubation period for these two types of viruses is about 24 hours. Both caliciviruses and astroviruses have caused outbreaks of gastroenteritis in day care centers, schools, hospitals, nursing homes, restaurants, and on cruise ships. The symptoms resolve within 12 to 60 hours.

Caliciviruses cause diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting, though the symptoms of any given serotype vary from patient to patient. The best studied of the caliciviruses are **noroviruses,** first discovered in the stools of victims during an epidemic of diarrhea in Norwalk, Ohio. Noroviruses cause 90% of viral cases of gastroenteritis.

Astroviruses also cause diarrhea but no vomiting, and they are less likely to infect adults. In the United States, about three-fourths of children have antibodies against astroviruses by age seven.

There is no specific treatment for caliciviral or astroviral gastroenteritis except support and replacement of lost fluid and electrolytes. Prevention of infection involves adequate sewage treatment, purification of water supplies, frequent handwashing, and disinfection of contaminated surfaces and fomites.

Hepatitis E

Learning Outcome

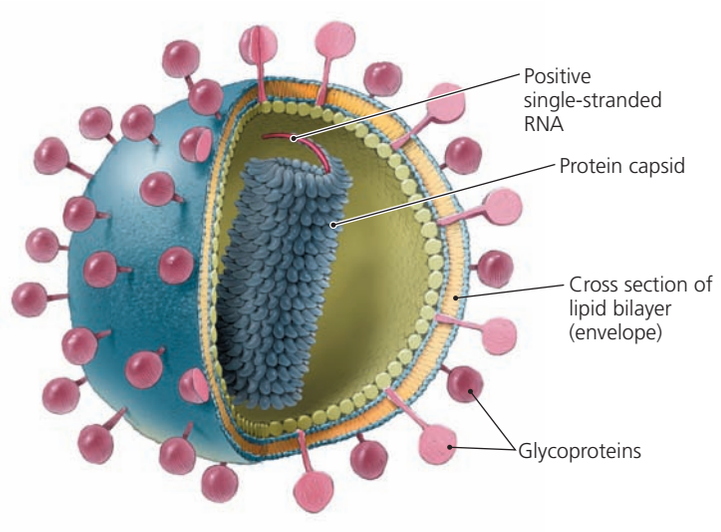
25.8 Describe the prevention of hepatitis E viral infection.

Hepatitis E virus (genus *Hepevirus*) was formerly considered a calicivirus based on structure and size (27–34 nm), but now it is placed in its own family, *Hepeviridae*. Hepatitis E virus infects the liver and causes **hepatitis E,** also known as *enteric hepatitis*. Hepatitis E is fatal to 20% of infected pregnant women. Doctors do not prescribe any specific medicine to treat hapatitis E, usually merely recommending rest, plenty of fluids, and good nutrition. The disease is self-limiting; that is, patients recover on their own. Prevention involves interrupting the fecal-oral route of infection with good personal hygiene, water purification, and sewage treatment.

So far we have considered naked, positive ssRNA viruses in the families *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae,* and *Hepeviridae.* Now we turn our attention to enveloped, positive ssRNA viruses.

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Togaviridae, Flaviviridae,* and *Coronaviridae*

Members of the *Togaviridae* and *Flaviviridae* are enveloped, icosahedral, positive, single-stranded RNA viruses. Flaviviruses are smaller and have a protein matrix between the capsid and envelope. Both flaviviruses and togaviruses differ from the viruses we examined previously in being enveloped (*toga* is Latin for "cloak"); however, the envelopes of togaviruses and flaviviruses are often tightly appressed to the capsids (like shrink wrapping), which allows individual capsomeres to be visualized **(Figure 25.7)**. Because most togaviruses and flaviviruses are



▲ **Figure 25.8** **Enveloped +ssRNA coronavirus.** Viruses in the family *Coronaviridae* have helical capsids, whereas viruses in the families *Togaviridae* and *Flaviviridae* have icosahedral capsids.

transmitted by arthropods (including mosquitoes, ticks, flies, mites, and lice), these viruses are designated **arboviruses**[6] (ar´bō-vī´rŭs-ĕz), and this shared characteristic is the reason taxonomists originally included the flaviviruses in family *Togaviridae.* However, differences in antigens, replication strategy, and RNA sequence indicate that flaviviruses belong in their own family. Thus, the term *arbovirus* has no taxonomic significance; some arboviruses are +ssRNA, some are –ssRNA, and some are dsRNA.

Viruses of the family *Coronaviridae* are also enveloped, positive, single-stranded RNA viruses. However, in contrast to togaviruses and flaviviruses, they have helical capsids **(Figure 25.8)**, and none are arthropod borne.

In this section we consider diseases of the arboviruses from the families *Togaviridae* and *Flaviviridae,* discuss the togaviruses and flaviviruses that are not transmitted via arthropods, and finally discuss the coronaviruses.

Diseases of +RNA Arboviruses

Learning Outcomes

25.9 Define *zoonosis* and *arbovirus.*
25.10 Compare and contrast EEE, WEE, and VEE.
25.11 Describe the transmission and spread of West Nile virus encephalitis.
25.12 Contrast the two types of dengue fever.
25.13 Discuss the signs, symptoms, and prevention of yellow fever.

Specific genera of mosquitoes and ticks transmit arboviruses among animal hosts, usually small mammals or birds, and into humans. Animal diseases that spread to humans are called **zoonoses,**[7] so these diseases are both arboviral and zoonotic. Arthropod vectors remain infected with arboviruses and are a continual source of new infections when they bite vertebrate hosts. In animals, virions are released from infected cells into the blood (viremia), but persistent viremia does not occur as readily in humans. Thus, humans are dead-end hosts for these zoonotic viruses.

Arboviruses enter target cells through endocytosis and replicate within them. Most cause mild, flulike symptoms in humans within three to seven days of infection. Arboviral disease does not usually proceed beyond this initial manifestation. Occasionally, however, arboviruses in the blood infect the brain, liver, skin, or blood vessels. Diseases associated with such second-stage infections include several kinds of encephalitis, dengue fever, and yellow fever.

Encephalitis

Different togaviruses cause **Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), Western equine encephalitis (WEE),** and **Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE).** As the names indicate, viral replication occurs in the brains of horses as well as in humans. The normal host for these viruses is either a bird (EEE, WEE, VEE) or a rodent (VEE) **(Figure 25.9)**. Of the three, EEE causes the most severe disease in humans, though any of them may produce fatal brain infections.

In 1999, hundreds of birds—mostly crows—suddenly began dying in the New York City area. At the same time, there were reports of people feeling ill with flulike symptoms after being bitten by mosquitoes. Seven of these patients developed viral encephalitis and died. As it turned out, all these events were related.

The culprit was West Nile virus. An arbovirus in the family *Flaviviridae* and endemic to Africa and Israel, West Nile virus had never before been seen in the Americas. After the initial outbreak, infected migratory birds carried the virus across the lower 48 United States. Mosquitoes further spread West Nile virus among bird populations, between birds and horses, and between birds and humans. Animals feeding on dead birds also become infected. Significant viremia with West Nile virus does not develop in humans, so humans are dead-end hosts except in cases of blood transfusion or organ transplant.

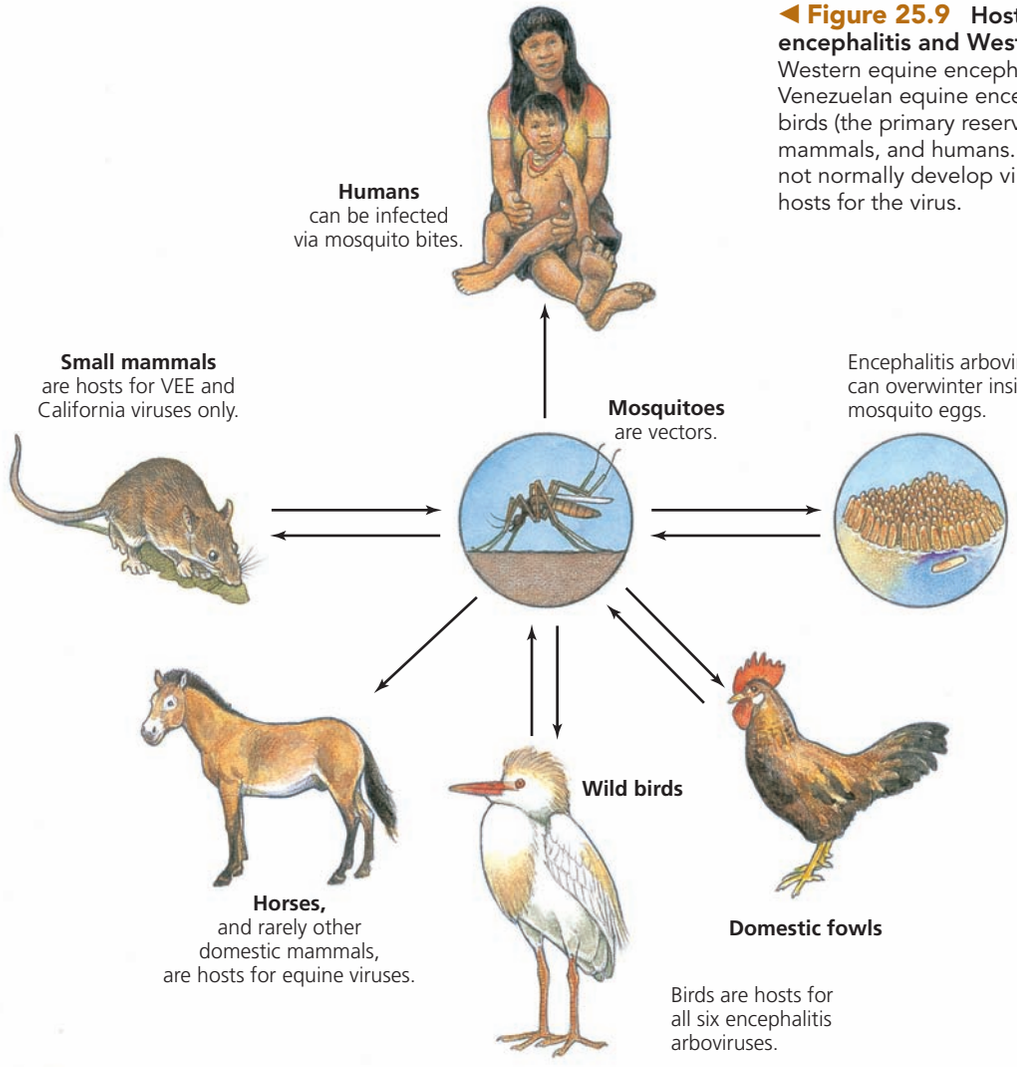
Eighty percent of infected humans have no symptoms; 20% have fever, headache, fatigue, and body aches. In the most severe cases—about 1 of 750 human infections—West Nile virus invades the nervous system to cause encephalitis, which may be fatal. **Figure 25.10** illustrates the number of human cases and deaths due to West Nile virus.

Other flaviviruses also cause usually benign viral encephalitis. These viruses include *St. Louis, Japanese,* and *Russian spring-summer* viruses.

Dengue Fever

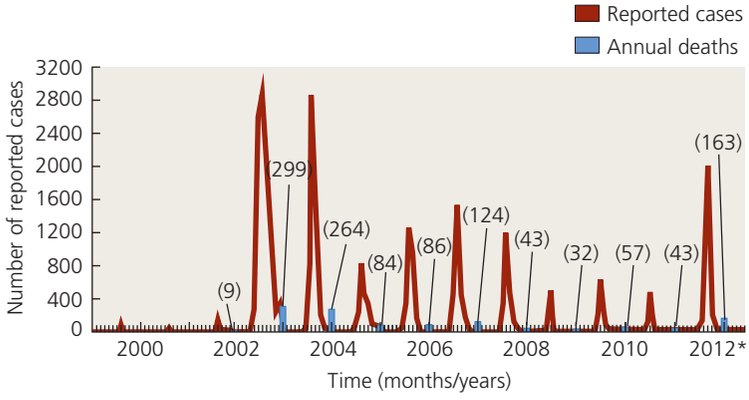
Aedes mosquitoes transmit the flavivirus that causes **dengue fever** (den´gā). The virus afflicts approximately 100 million people in tropical and subtropical areas of the world. Forty percent of the world's population lives in the range of *Aedes* and is thereby susceptible to infection with dengue virus **(Figure 25.11)**. The disease

[6] From arthropod *borne.*
[7] Plural of Greek *zoos,* meaning "animal," and *nosis,* meaning "disease."



◀ Figure 25.9 Hosts and transmission of viruses of equine encephalitis and West Nile encephalitis. Mosquitoes carry Western equine encephalitis (WEE), Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE) and West Nile viruses from wild birds (the primary reservoir) to domesticated birds, horses, other mammals, and humans. Except for rodents carrying VEE, mammals do not normally develop viremia with these viruses, making them dead-end hosts for the virus.

usually occurs in two phases separated by 24 hours of remission. First, the patient suffers for about a week from high fever, weakness, edema (swelling) of the extremities, and severe pain in the head, back, and muscles. The severity of the pain is indicated by the common name for the disease, *breakbone fever*. The second phase involves a return of the fever and a bright red rash. Dengue fever is self-limiting and lasts six or seven days.



▲ Figure 25.10 Human West Nile virus infections in the United States. Note the seasonal nature of the disease.

*Partial data through September 2012

Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a more serious disease caused by reinfection with the dengue virus, and it involves a hyperimmune response **(Figure 25.12)**. Inflammatory cytokines released by activated memory T cells cause rupture of blood vessels, internal bleeding, shock, and possibly death.

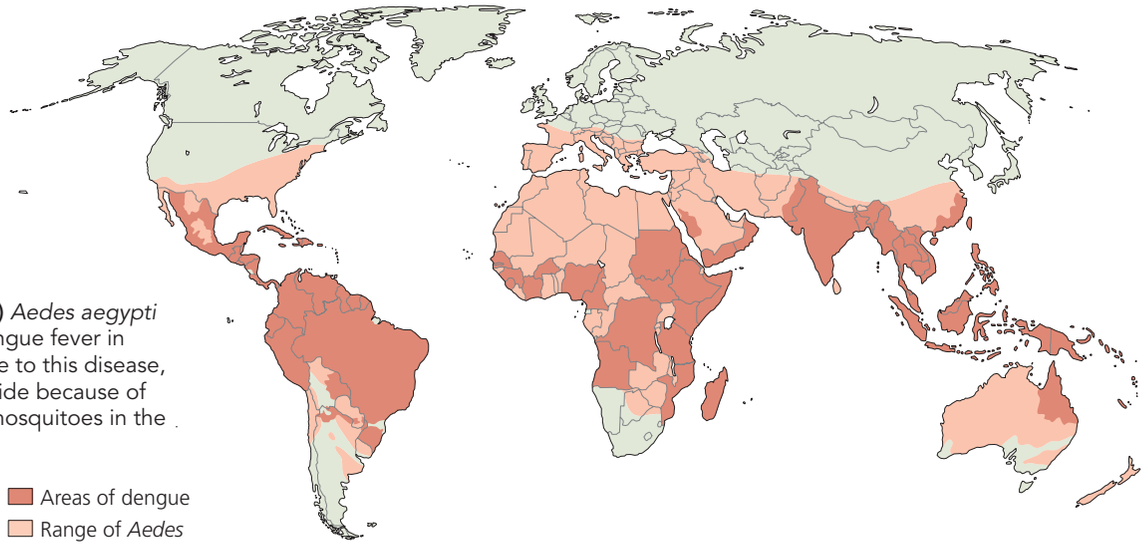
Dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever are epidemic in Asia, South America, and Mexico. Given that *Aedes* mosquitoes already live in the southern United States, dengue could potentially become established there if the virus were introduced into the United States by immigrants or returning travelers.

There is no treatment; scientists have developed an experimental vaccine that is promising. Mosquito control can limit the spread of the disease. **Beneficial Microbes: Eliminating Dengue** examines a novel approach to mosquito control.

Yellow Fever

Another flavivirus causes **yellow fever,** a disease involving degeneration of the liver, kidneys, and heart as well as massive hemorrhaging. Hemorrhaging in the intestines may result

(a)



(b)

▲ **Figure 25.11** **Dengue fever.** **(a)** *Aedes aegypti* mosquito. **(b)** Global distribution of dengue fever in 2012. The U.S. population is susceptible to this disease, which afflicts millions of people worldwide because of the presence of the disease's vectors, mosquitoes in the genus *Aedes*.

in "black vomit." Liver damage causes jaundice, from which the disease acquires its name and its nickname, "Yellow Jack." The mortality rate of yellow fever can approach 20%. Before the 1900s, yellow fever epidemics ravaged the Americas, killing thousands. In 1793, it killed over 4000 people in Philadelphia (then the capital of the United States), and during the Spanish-American War of 1898, it killed more American soldiers than bullets did. With mosquito control and the development of a vaccine in the 1900s, however, yellow fever has since been eliminated from the United States.

Yellow fever remains a significant disease, with 200,000 estimated cases and 30,000 deaths annually worldwide. A single dose of yellow fever vaccine provides protection to 95% of individuals, probably for their lifetimes.

Table 25.4 on p. 726 summarizes the arboviruses and their diseases, including additional viruses in families *Bunyaviridae* and *Reoviridae*.

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

ELIMINATING DENGUE

***Aedes aegypti*.**

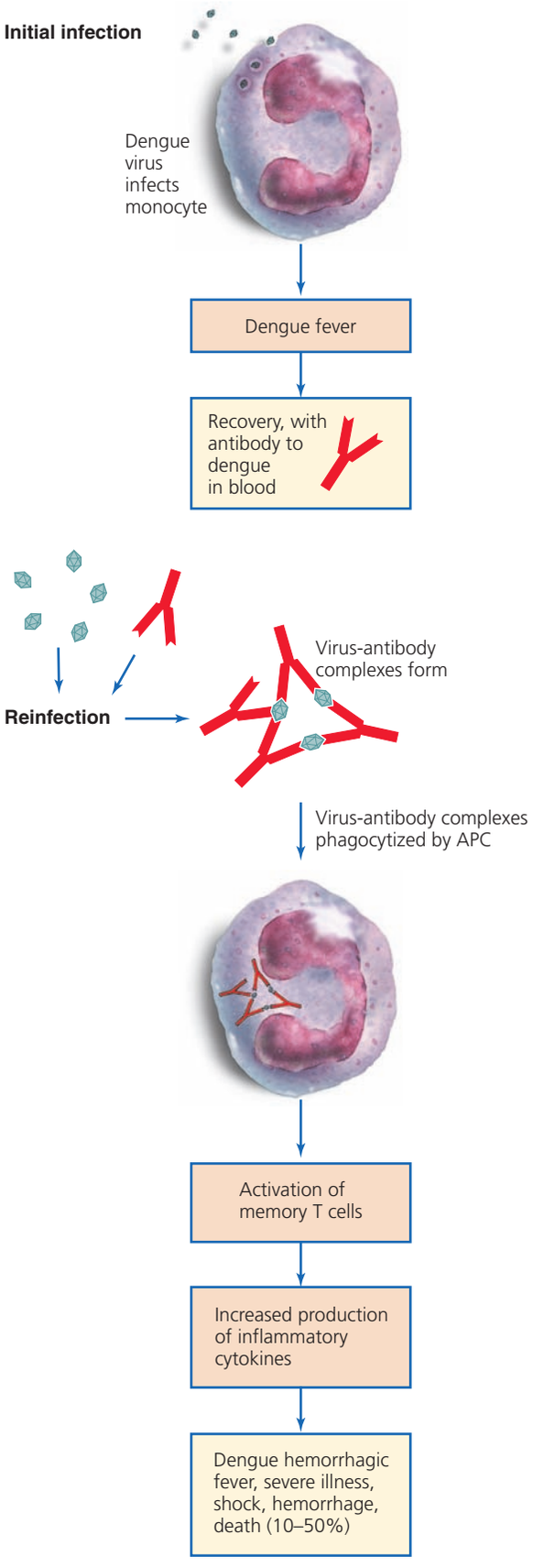
Aedes aegypti has distinctive stripes and a fierce bite. Unlike many mosquitoes, these aggressive bloodsuckers bite during the day. They prefer to live in urban areas, resting in the shade of houses and laying their eggs in modern containers holding a small amount of water, such as tires, cans, and water gutters. Almost 3 billion people share their neighborhoods with *Aedes*. Worst of all, these mosquitoes carry viruses that cause human diseases such as dengue.

There is no vaccine and no treatment for dengue, so prevention involves controlling the mosquitoes, which has had limited success, especially in developing countries. Enter Australian scientist Scott O'Neill and a novel beneficial microbe—a special strain of *Wolbachia pipientis*.

Wolbachia is a Gram-negative, intracellular parasite that infects about 70% of all insect species, including *Aedes* mosquitoes. *Wolbachia* often changes the biology of its insect hosts, and Dr. O'Neill's *Wolbachia*—strain *w*Mel—is not an exception. When male mosquitoes infected with *w*Mel mate with infected females, the females lay eggs normally, and all the offspring are infected with *Wolbachia*, which they get from their mother. However, when an infected male mates with an uninfected female, all her eggs are sterile. Thus, *Wolbachia* ensures its own reproductive success and limits mosquito reproduction.

It gets better! It turns out that dengue virus cannot live in infected mosquitoes for some reason. Since dengue virus cannot replicate in infected mosquitoes, the success of *Wolbachia* is the demise of the virus.

O'Neill and his collaborators have released thousands of infected mosquitoes in northern Australia and have successfully altered the mosquito population in the area so that they are unable to transmit dengue. The team plans to release hundreds of thousands of infected mosquitoes into neighborhoods in tropical developing nations with the goal of spreading *Wolbachia pipientis* strain *w*Mel throughout the world. They hope that this will eliminate the scourge of dengue forever.



◀ Figure 25.12 Pathogenesis of dengue hemorrhagic fever. The condition is a severe hyperimmune response to a second infection with dengue virus. Antigen-presenting cells phagocytize complexes of virus and antibodies (formed during the initial infection), which activates memory T cells. These release an abundance of lymphokines that induce hemorrhaging and shock.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Arbovirus Infections

Serological tests, such as ELISA and agglutination of latex beads to which arbovirus antigens are affixed, are used for the diagnosis of arboviral infections. The only treatment for arboviral diseases is to provide supportive care. Only acetaminophen is recommended for managing pain and fever associated with dengue infections, as the anticoagulant properties of aspirin could aggravate the hemorrhagic properties of dengue virus infections.

Prevention of infection involves control of the vectors, which has resulted in elimination of many arboviral diseases in certain geographic areas. Insect repellents and netting reduce infections with arboviruses.

Immunization is recommended for people traveling to areas where arboviral diseases are prevalent. Vaccines for humans are available against yellow fever, Japanese encephalitis, and Russian spring-summer encephalitis viruses. Animal vaccines against VEE, EEE, and West Nile encephalitis are also available. No vaccine is available for dengue.

CRITICAL THINKING

Suppose a vaccine for dengue that induced the production of memory T cells could be developed. After reviewing the characteristics of infection and reinfection, would you argue for or against the use of such a vaccine? Why or why not?

Other Diseases of Enveloped +ssRNA Viruses

Learning Outcomes

25.14 Describe the signs, effects, and prevention of rubella.
25.15 Compare and contrast hepatitis C with the other types of viral hepatitis.
25.16 Describe the structure of coronaviruses and the diseases they cause.

Rubella

Rubella (rū-bel´ă) virus *(Rubivirus)* shares the structure and reproductive strategy of other togaviruses, but unlike them it is transmitted by the respiratory route and not by arthropod vectors. **Rubella** is one of five childhood viral diseases that produce skin lesions. (The other four are measles, caused by a –ssRNA virus and discussed later in this chapter, and chickenpox, roseola, and fifth disease.) Rubella, first distinguished as a

TABLE 25.4 Diseases Caused by Arboviruses, by Viral Family

Disease	Vector	Natural Host(s)	Distribution	Symptoms
***Togaviridae* (enveloped, icosahedral, +ssRNA)**				
Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE)	*Aedes*, *Culex*, and *Culiseta* mosquitoes	Birds	Americas	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
Western equine encephalitis (WEE)	*Aedes* and *Culex* mosquitoes	Birds	Americas	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE)	*Aedes* and *Culex* mosquitoes	Rodents, horses	Americas	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
***Flaviviridae* (enveloped, icosahedral, +ssRNA)**				
Japanese encephalitis	*Culex* mosquitoes	Birds, pigs	Asia	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
West Nile encephalitis	*Aedes*, *Anopheles*, and *Culex* mosquitoes	Birds	Africa, Europe, Asia, North America	Flulike symptoms and potentially fatal encephalitis
St. Louis encephalitis	*Culex* mosquitoes	Birds	North America	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
Russian spring-summer encephalitis	*Ixodes* and *Dermacentor* ticks	Birds	Russia	Flulike symptoms and encephalitis
Dengue and dengue hemorrhagic fever	*Aedes* mosquitoes	Monkeys, humans	Worldwide, especially tropics	Severe pain, hemorrhaging, hepatitis, shock
Yellow fever	*Aedes* mosquitoes	Monkeys, humans	Africa, South America	Hepatitis, hemorrhagic fever, shock
Chikungunya	*Aedes* mosquitoes	Monkeys	Africa, Asia	Rash, nausea, joint pain
***Bunyaviridae* (enveloped, filamentous segmented, −ssRNA)**				
LaCrosse encephalitis	*Aedes* mosquitoes	Rodents, small mammals, birds	North America	Fever, rash, encephalitis
Rift Valley fever	*Aedes* mosquitoes	Sheep, goats, cattle	Africa, Asia	Hemorrhagic fever, encephalitis
Sand fly fever	*Phlebotomus* flies	Sheep, cattle	Africa	Hemorrhagic fever, encephalitis
Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever	*Hyalomma* ticks	Horses, cattle, goats, seabirds	Africa, Crimea	Hemorrhagic fever
***Reoviridae* (naked, dsRNA)**				
Colorado tick fever	*Dermacentor* ticks	Small mammals, deer	Western North America	Fever, chills, headache, photophobia, rash, and, in children, hemorrhage

separate disease by German physicians, is commonly known as "German measles" or "three-day measles."

Rubella infects only humans, entering the respiratory system and infecting cells of the upper respiratory tract. It spreads from there to lymph nodes and into the blood and then throughout the body. Afterward, the characteristic rash of flat, pink to red spots (macules) develops **(Figure 25.13)** and lasts about three days. Rubella in children is usually not serious, but adults may develop arthritis or encephalitis. Patients shed virions in respiratory droplets for approximately two weeks before and two weeks after the rash.

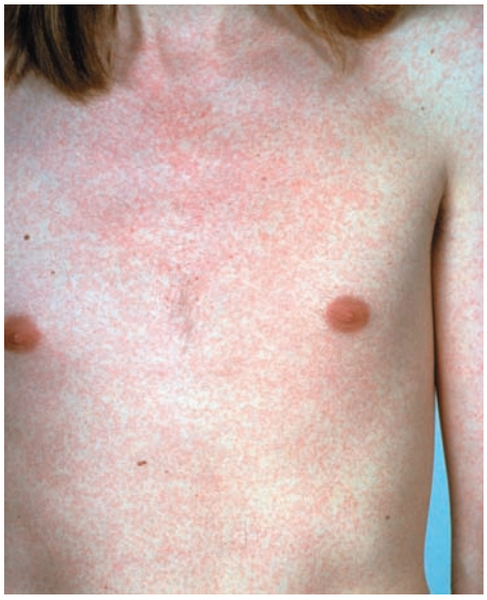
Rubella was not seen as a serious disease until 1941, when Norman Gregg (1892–1966), an Australian ophthalmologist, recognized that rubella infections of pregnant women resulted in severe congenital defects in their babies. These effects include cardiac abnormalities, deafness, blindness, mental retardation, microcephaly,[8] and growth retardation. Death of the fetus is also common. It is now known that a mother is able to transmit the virus across the placenta even if she is asymptomatic.

Diagnosis of rubella is usually made by observation and by serological testing for IgM against rubella. No treatment is available, but immunization has proven effective at reducing the incidence of rubella in industrialized countries **(Figure 25.14)**. The rubella vaccine is made from a live, attenuated virus and therefore should never be given to pregnant women or immunocompromised patients. Immunization is aimed at reducing the number of rubella cases that might serve to introduce rubella to pregnant women.

Hepatitis C

A flavivirus called **hepatitis C virus (HCV)** causes about 20% of the cases of hepatitis in the United States. About 4.1 million

[8]From Greek *mikro*, meaning "small," and *kephalos*, meaning "head."

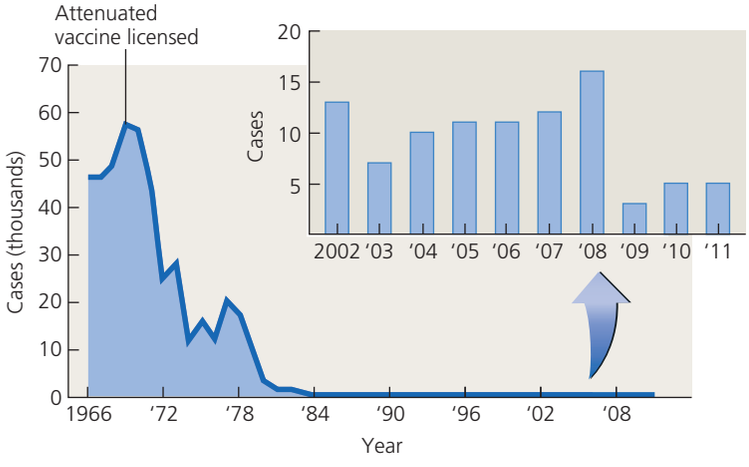


▲ **Figure 25.13** **The rash of rubella.** The disease, also known as German measles or three-day measles, is characterized by flattened red spots (macules).

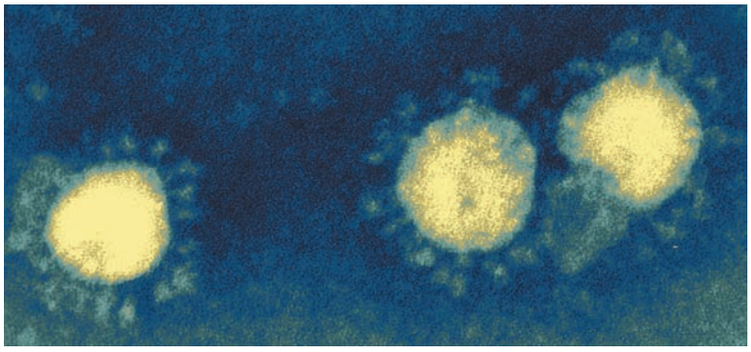
Americans are chronically infected by HCV, which is bloodborne and spread via needles, organ transplants, and sexual activity but not by arthropod vectors. In the past, blood transfusions accounted for many cases of hepatitis C, but testing blood for HCV has considerably reduced the risk of infection by this means.

Hepatitis C is a chronic disease often lasting for more than 20 years, with few if any symptoms. Severe liver damage (20% of cases) and liver failure (5% of cases) occur over time. Hepatic cancer can also result from HCV infection.

Alpha interferon, protease inhibitors (e.g., boceprevir or telaprevir), and ribavirin effectively reduce the number of hepatitis C viruses in some patients but are not cures. There is no vaccine for hepatitis C.



▲ **Figure 25.14** **The efficacy of vaccination against rubella.** The use of a live, attenuated virus vaccine has practically eliminated rubella in the United States.



▲ **Figure 25.15** **Coronaviruses.** These +ssRNA viruses have distinctive envelopes with glycoprotein spikes that resemble flares from the corona of the sun.

Diseases of Coronaviruses

Coronaviruses (kō-rō´nă-vī´rŭs-ĕz) are enveloped, positive, single-stranded RNA viruses with helical capsids. Their envelopes form corona-like halos around the capsids, giving these viruses their name **(Figure 25.15)**. Two coronaviruses cause colds and are the second most common cause of colds after picornavirus rhinoviruses. Coronaviruses are transmitted from epithelial cells of the upper respiratory tract in large droplets (sneezes and coughs) and, like rhinoviruses, replicate best at 33°C, which is the temperature of the nasal cavity.

In the winter of 2002–2003, a newly emerging disease, **severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS),** was first identified in China's Guangdong province. SARS initially taxed health care systems in several Asian countries, but unprecedented worldwide cooperation allowed epidemiologists to identify the virus, track its spread, sequence its genome, and investigate effective quarantine procedures faster than with any previous disease. In a few months, the disease had spread around the world. Amazingly, epidemiologists were able to trace the disease's global spread back to a single individual: an infected physician who had traveled from China to Hong Kong in order to attend his nephew's wedding and unwittingly spread the disease to other travelers.

SARS is characterized by symptoms of fever above 100.4°F (38°C), headache, general discomfort, and respiratory distress. The disease created widespread alarm because of its sudden emergence, highly infectious nature (it is spread by close person-to-person contact), initially unknown origin, and 10% mortality rate. SARS remains a potential problem in China.

No antiviral treatment or vaccine is available against coronaviral infections. Symptoms of colds can be alleviated with antihistamines and analgesics. Some physicians prescribe antiviral drugs, such as ribavirin or interferon, for SARS. Prevention of SARS involves reducing the spread of the SARS virus by quarantining patients and using face masks **(Figure 25.16)**.

Now we examine a unique type of +ssRNA—the retroviruses.

▲ **Figure 25.16 Prevention of SARS.** Ballet students in Hong Kong in 2003 donned face masks to slow the spread of SARS virus.

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses with Reverse Transcriptase: *Retroviridae*

Learning Outcomes

25.17 Explain how retroviruses do not conform to the central dogma of molecular biology.

25.18 Describe the steps of reverse transcription.

25.19 List two types of retroviruses.

Scientists have studied **retroviruses** (re´trō-vī´rŭs-ĕz) more than any other group of viruses because of their unique features and the diseases they cause. These viruses have polyhedral capsids with spiked envelopes 80 to 146 nm in diameter and genomes composed of two molecules of positive, single-stranded RNA. Each virion also contains two tRNA molecules and 10 to 50 copies of the enzymes *reverse transcriptase*, *protease*, and *integrase*, whose function will be described shortly.

The unique characteristic of retroviruses is that they do not conform to what is considered the *central dogma* of molecular biology. The central dogma is a principle that genetic information flows from DNA to RNA before being translated to proteins. Retroviruses[9] reverse this flow of information; that is, they transcribe DNA from RNA.

Retroviruses accomplish this amazing feat by means of a complex enzyme, **reverse transcriptase,** which transcribes double-stranded DNA from single-stranded RNA. Transcription occurs as the enzyme moves along an RNA molecule and can best be understood as occurring in three steps, though in reality the events occur simultaneously **(Figure 25.17)**:

1. An RNA-DNA hybrid is made from the +RNA genome using tRNA carried by the virion as a primer for DNA synthesis. The DNA portion of the hybrid molecule is negative, single-stranded DNA (–ssDNA); that is, it is a DNA nucleotide sequence that is opposite a genetic sequence.
2. The RNA portion of the hybrid molecule is degraded by reverse transcriptase, leaving the –ssDNA.
3. The reverse transcriptase transcribes a complementary +ssDNA strand to form double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), and the tRNA primer is removed.

The discovery of reverse transcriptase was a momentous event in biology, and it made possible an ongoing revolution in recombinant DNA technology and biotechnology. For example, it is much easier to isolate mRNA for a particular protein (e.g., human insulin) and then use reverse transcriptase to make a gene than it is to find the gene itself amid the DNA of 23 pairs of human chromosomes.

In the following sections we consider two types of retroviruses, both of which infect humans: those that are primarily oncogenic (genus *Deltaretrovirus*) and those that are primarily immunosuppressive (genus *Lentivirus*).

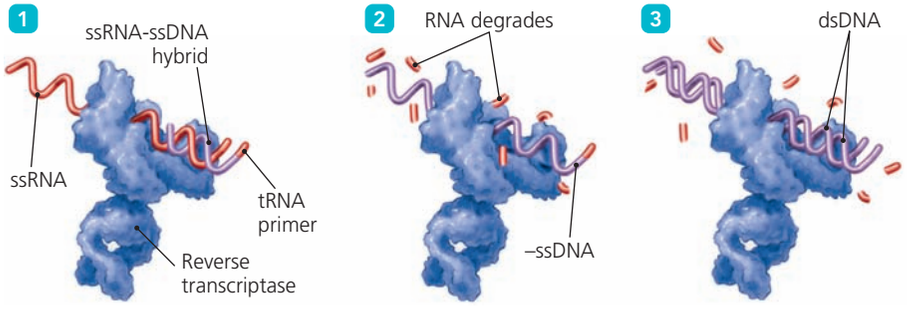
Oncogenic Retroviruses (*Deltaretrovirus*)

Learning Outcome

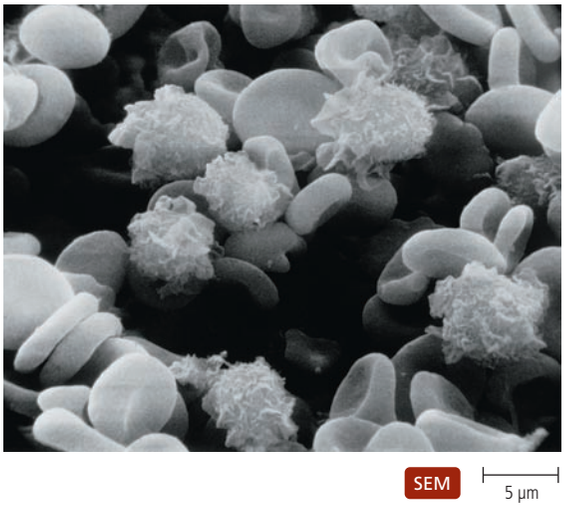
25.20 Describe how oncogenic viruses may induce cancer.

Retroviruses have been linked with cancer ever since they were first isolated from chicken neoplasias. In 1981, Robert Gallo

[9]From Latin *retro*, meaning "reverse."



◀ **Figure 25.17 Action of reverse transcriptase, depicted here as three distinct steps.** 1 The enzyme transcribes a complementary –ssDNA molecule to form a DNA-RNA hybrid. It uses tRNA brought from a previous host cell as a primer for transcription. 2 The RNA portion of the hybrid is degraded, leaving –ssDNA. 3 The enzyme synthesizes a complementary +ssDNA strand, forming dsDNA.



▲ **Figure 25.18 The characteristic extensions of the cytoplasmic membrane in hairy cell leukemia.** The cells appear ruffled.

(1937–) and his associates isolated the first human retrovirus, **human T-lymphotropic virus 1 (HTLV-1),** from a patient with *adult acute T-cell lymphocytic leukemia*, a cancer of humans. Since then, two other human retroviruses of this type have been discovered: HTLV-2, which causes a rare cancer called *hairy cell leukemia* because of distinctive extensions of the cytoplasmic membrane of infected cells (Figure 25.18), and HTLV-5, which has not been linked to cancer or any other disease.

HTLV-1 and HTLV-2 infect lymphocytes and are transmitted within these cells to other people via sexual intercourse, blood transfusion, and contaminated needles. HTLV-1 is found primarily in populations in Japan and the Caribbean and among African Americans. HTLV-2 is not as well studied as HTLV-1. An ELISA can reveal infection with an HTLV. As with many viral diseases, there is no specific antiviral treatment. Infections are chronic, and the long-term prognosis of patients is poor. Prevention involves the same changes in behavior needed to prevent HIV infection (see p. 735).

Oncogenic retroviruses cause cancer in various ways. For example, HTLV-1 codes for a protein, called *Tax,* that activates cell growth and division genes in helper T lymphocytes.

Immunosuppresive Retroviruses (*Lentivirus*) and Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome

Learning Outcomes

25.21 Differentiate between a disease and a syndrome, using AIDS as an example.
25.22 Describe the virions that cause AIDS.
25.23 Explain the roles of gp41 and gp120 in HIV infection.
25.24 Describe the relationship of helper T cells to the course of AIDS.
25.25 List four measures that can be effective in preventing AIDS.

From the time of its discovery in 1981 among homosexual males in the United States to its emergence as a worldwide pandemic, no affliction has affected modern life as much as **acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).** AIDS is not a single disease but a **syndrome,** that is, a complex of signs, symptoms, and diseases associated with a common cause. Currently, epidemiologists define AIDS as the presence of several opportunistic or rare infections along with infection by **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**, or as a severe decrease in the number of lymphocytes called helper T cells (<200/µL of blood) and a positive test showing the presence of HIV. Helper T cells are also known as CD4 cells because the protein CD4 is found in their membranes. The defining infections and diseases of AIDS include those of several bacteria, fungi, viruses, protozoa, and viruses as well as a rare cancer of blood vessels (Kaposi's sarcoma) and dementia (Table 25.5). It is important to note that HIV infection is not AIDS, though infection with HIV almost always leads to AIDS in untreated people.

There are two major types of HIV. Luc Montagnier (1932–) and his colleagues at the Pasteur Institute in Paris discovered **HIV-1** in 1983. This virus is more prevalent in the United States and in Europe. **HIV-2,** the prevalent strain in West Africa,

TABLE 25.5 Opportunistic Infections and Tumors of AIDS Patients

Type	Manifestations
Bacterial infections (19–21)[a]	Tuberculosis, especially extrapulmonary *(Mycobacterium)*
	Rectal gonorrhea *(Neisseria)*
	Recurrent fever and septicemia due to *Salmonella, Haemophilus,* or *Streptococcus*
Fungal infections (22)	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia
	Thrush, disseminated in trachea, lungs, esophagus *(Candida)*
	Histoplasmosis *(Histoplasma)*
Protozoal infections (23)	Toxoplasmosis *(Toxoplasma)*
	Chronic diarrhea *(Cryptosporidium, Isospora)*
Viral-induced tumors (24)	Kaposi's sarcoma (especially when associated with HHV-8)
	Lymphoma (induced by Epstein-Barr virus)
Viral infections (24)	Cytomegalovirus disseminated in brain, lungs, retina, etc.
	Human herpesvirus 1 and *2* disseminated in lungs, GI tract, etc.
	Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) (JC virus)
	Oral hairy leukoplakia (Epstein-Barr virus)
Others	Wasting disease; called *slim* in Africa (cause unknown)
	Dementia

[a]Numbers in parentheses refer to chapters where relevant material is discussed.

TABLE 25.6 Characteristics of HIV That Challenge the Immune System

Characteristic	Effect(s)
Retrovirus with a genome that consists of two copies of +ssRNA	Reassortment of viral genes possible; reverse transcription produces much mutation and thus genetic variation; genome integrates into host's chromosome
Targets helper T cells especially but also macrophages, dendritic cells, and muscle cells and possibly liver, nerve, and epithelial cells	Permanently infects key cells of host's immune system
Antigenic variability	Numerous antigenic variations due to mutations helps virus evade host's immune response
Induces formation of syncytia	Increases routes of infection; intracellular site helps virus evade immune detection

shares about 50% of its nucleic acid sequence with HIV-1. Note that the acronym HIV indicates that it is a virus. It is repetitious and incorrect to call this pathogen "HIV virus"; a more appropriate name is "AIDS virus" or simply HIV. Taxonomists classify HIV in the genus *Lentivirus,* family *Retroviridae.* Researchers have studied HIV-1 more thoroughly, so the following sections focus on this strain.

Structure of HIV

HIV-1 is a typical retrovirus in shape, components, and size (see **Microbe at a Glance: *Lentivirus human immunodeficiency virus* [HIV]**). Two antigenic glycoproteins characterize its envelope. The larger glycoprotein, named **gp120,**[10] is the primary attachment molecule of HIV. Its antigenicity changes during the course of prolonged infection, making it difficult for the body to make an effective antibody response against it. A smaller glycoprotein, **gp41,** promotes fusion of the viral envelope with the cytoplasmic membrane of a CD4 cell. Viral characteristics, including antigenic variability and the ability to fuse to host cells, interfere with the ability of the immune system to clear HIV from the body (Table 25.6).

Origin of HIV

Evidence suggests that HIV arose from mutation of a similar virus—*simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV)*—found in African monkeys, chimpanzees, and other simians; the nucleotide sequence of SIV is similar to those of the two strains of HIV. Based on mutation rates and the rate of antigenic change in HIV, researchers estimate that HIV may have emerged in the human population in Africa about 1930. Scientists have identified antibodies against HIV in human blood stored since 1959, though they did not document the first case of AIDS until 1981.

The relationships between the two types of HIV and SIV are not clear. HIV-1 and HIV-2 may be derived from different strains of SIV, or one type of HIV may be derived from the other. We may never know the exact evolutionary relationships among the immunodeficiency viruses.

[10] gp120 is short for glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 120,000 daltons.

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Lentivirus human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

Taxonomy: Family *Retroviridae*

Genome and morphology: Two molecules of positive single-stranded RNA; polyhedral capsid with spiked envelope, about 110 to 145 nm in diameter

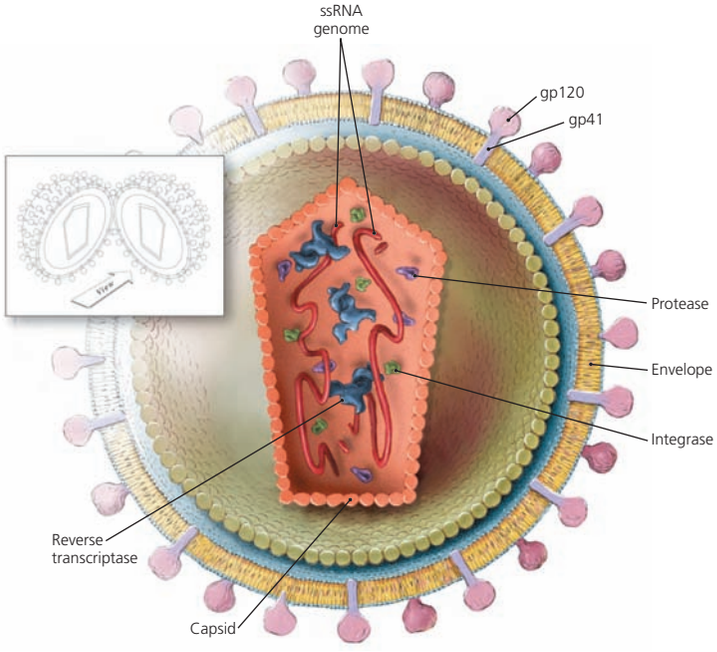
Host: Human

Virulence factors: Attaches to CD4 of helper T lymphocytes, vigorous mutation rate due to transcription errors of reverse transcriptase, latency

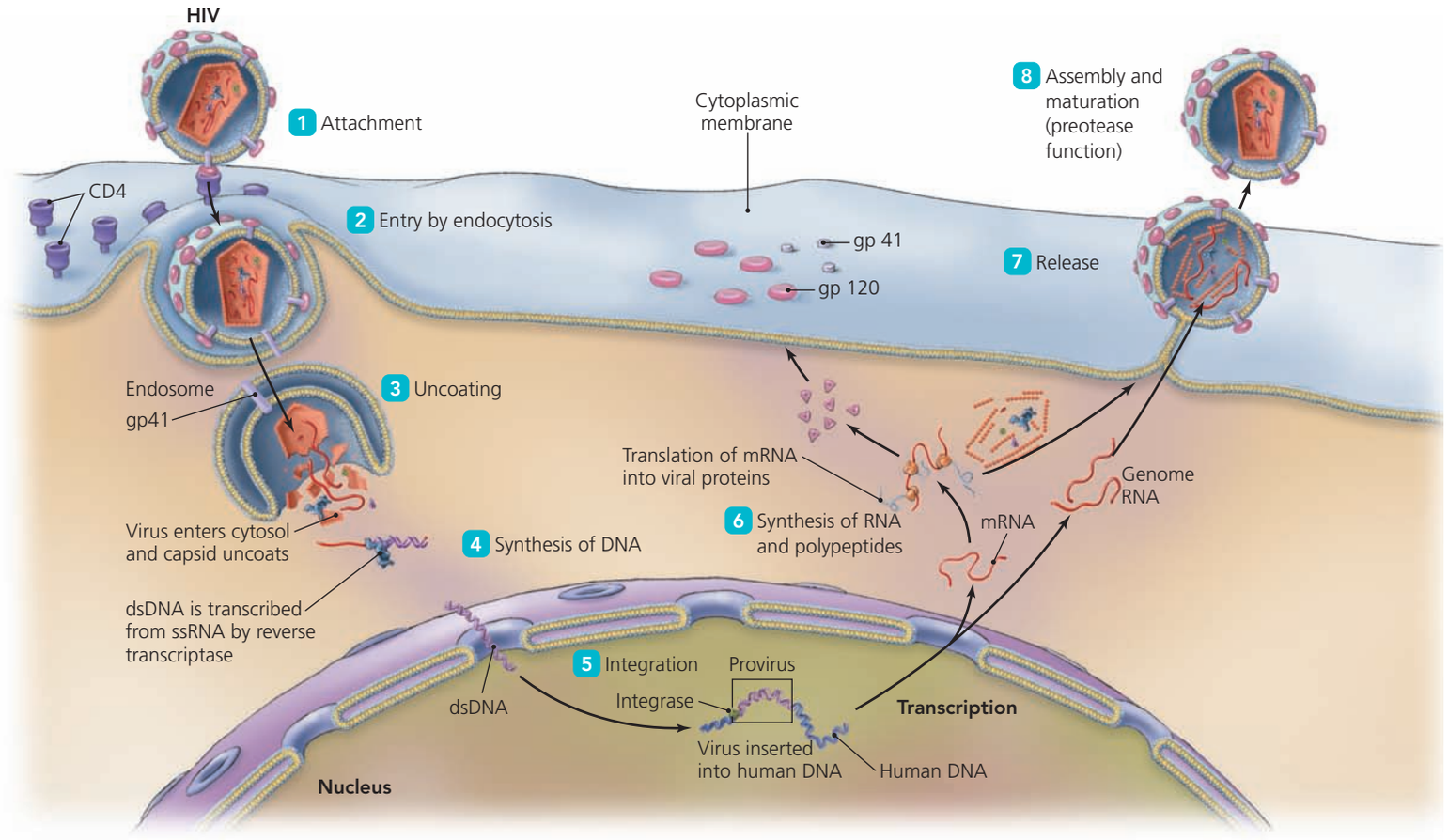
Syndrome caused: Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome

Treatment for disease: Antiretroviral therapy (ART), the so-called AIDS cocktail, composed of a variety of antiviral drugs, such as nucleoside analogs, protease inhibitors, and inhibitors of reverse transcriptase

Prevention of disease: Sexual abstinence; monogamy; refrain from sharing intravenous needles; correct, consistent condom usage can reduce but not eliminate risk of infection; male circumcision reduces risk of infection



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.



▲ Figure 25.19 The replication cycle of HIV. The artist's rendition depicts eight steps involved in the replication of the virus within a helper T cell. Photos show attachment and penetration (1–3) and the budding and release of a virion (4–6). *How does the replication of HIV differ from the replication of bacteriophage T4?*

Figure 25.19 *Bacteriophage T4 is a DNA virus; therefore, it does not have reverse transcription. Further, T4 does not integrate into a bacterium's chromosome; it assembles completely before being released from the cell; it has no envelope; and it does not carry enzymes.*

Replication of HIV

Human immunodeficiency virus replicates as a typical retrovirus. We can consider replication as occurring in seven steps (Figure 25.19). We first look at the eight-step replication process and then examine details of attachment and entry.

1 **Attachment.** HIV primarily attaches to four kinds of cells: helper T cells; cells of the macrophage lineage, including monocytes, macrophages, and microglia (special phagocytic cells of the central nervous system); smooth muscle cells, such as those in arterial walls; and dendritic cells. HIV can also rarely infect nerve cells, liver cells, and some epithelial cells.

Additionally, B lymphocytes adhere to HIV that has been covered with complement proteins. Though HIV does not infect these B cells, the B cells deliver HIV to helper T cells, which then become infected. Similarly, infected macrophages can pass HIV to helper T cells.

2 **Entry.** HIV triggers the cell to endocytose the virus; that is, the cell's cytoplasmic membrane forms a pocket and folds in to surround the virus, forming a vesicle holding the virus.

3 **Uncoating.** The viral envelope fuses with the vesicle's membrane, and the intact capsid of HIV enters the cytosol. The virus then uncoats the capsid and releases its two ssRNA molecules from the capsid into the cell's cytoplasm.

4 **Synthesis of DNA.** Reverse transcriptase, which has been released from the capsid, synthesizes double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) using viral ssRNA as a template (see Figure 25.17).

5 **Integration.** The dsDNA made by reverse transcriptase enters the nucleus and becomes part of a human DNA molecule. There it remains as a part of the cell for life—a condition known as **latency.**

6 **Synthesis of RNA and polypeptides.** An infected cell transcribes integrated HIV genes to produce messenger RNA and multiple copies of viral ssRNA that will act as genomes for new viruses. Ribosomes within the infected

cell translate mRNA to make viral-encoded polypeptides. These include attachment proteins, integrase, and a large polypeptide composed of inactive reverse transcriptase and capsomeres. The attachment proteins are inserted in the host's cytoplasmic membrane.

7 **Release.** Two molecules of genomic RNA, molecules of tRNA, and several viral polypeptides bud from the host's cytoplasmic membrane to form an immature virion.

8 **Assembly and maturation.** HIV that buds from a cell is nonvirulent because its capsid is not fully functional, and reverse transcriptase is inactive. **Protease**, a viral enzyme packaged in the virion, cleaves the large polypeptide to release reverse transcriptase and capsomeres. This action of protease, which occurs only after the virus has budded from the cell, allows final maturation of the viral capsid. HIV is now active.

Now, let us examine HIV replication in more detail.

Details of Attachment, Entry, and Uncoating

HIV uses gp120 and gp41 to attach to and enter target cells **(Figure 25.20)**. CD4[11] on a target cell's cytoplasmic membrane is the receptor for gp120; that is, gp120 attaches HIV to CD4 1. The CD4-gp120 complex binds to another membrane receptor, called *fusin* (also known as *CXCR4*), which triggers the cell's membrane to move out and surround the virus—a process called *endocytosis* 2. Endocytosis forms a bubble of membrane with the virus inside. This structure is called an *endosome* 3.

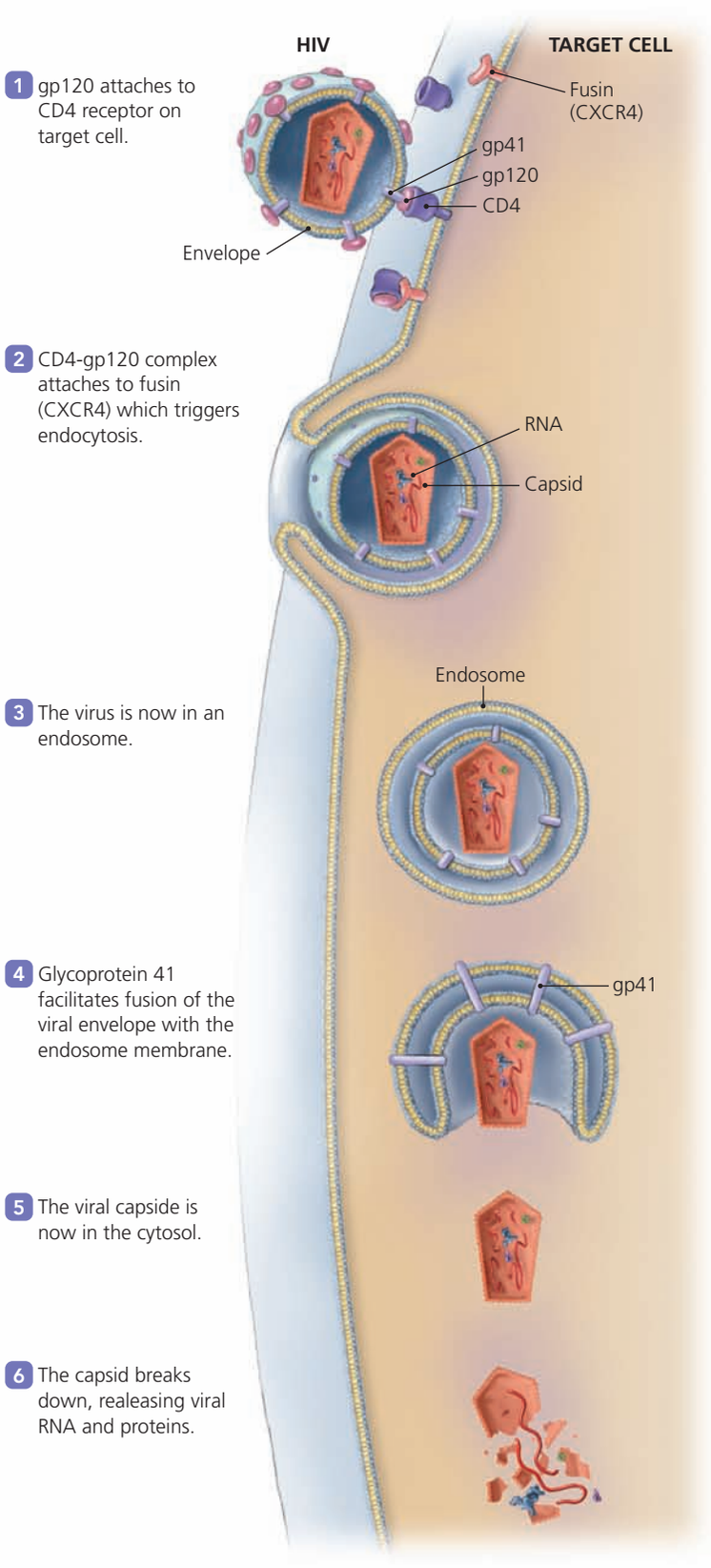
HIV remains intact within an endosome for about 30 minutes. Glycoprotein 41 on the viral envelope evidently then facilitates fusion of the envelope with the endosome membrane. The two fuse 4, and the viral capsid is introduced intact into the cell's cytosol 5. The viral capsid uncoats, releasing viral RNA and proteins 6.

Details of Synthesis and Latency

Reverse transcriptase, which was carried inside the capsid, becomes active in the cytosol. It uses tRNA as a primer to transcribe dsDNA from the ssRNA genome of the virus (see Figure 25.17 on p. 728). Reverse transcriptase is very error prone, making about five errors per genome. This generates multiple antigenic variations of HIV. Billions of variants may develop in a single patient over the course of the syndrome.

HIV is a latent virus. The dsDNA made by reverse transcriptase is known as a *provirus*, and it enters the nucleus. A viral enzyme known as **integrase** inserts the dsDNA provirus into a human chromosome. Once integrated, the provirus permanently remains part of the cellular DNA. It may remain dormant for years or be activated immediately, depending on its location in the human genome and the availability of promoter DNA sequences (see Figure 7.9). Infected macrophages and monocytes are major reservoirs of integrated HIV, and they serve as a means of distribution of the virus throughout the body.

[11]Scientists commonly name membrane proteins with letter-number combinations; CD4 stands for the fourth-discovered *cluster of differentiation*.



▲ **Figure 25.20 The process by which HIV attaches to and enters a host cell.** 1 Binding of gp120 to a CD4 receptor on the cell membrane. 2 Removal of the CD4-gp120 complex, allowing gp41 to attach to the cytoplasmic membrane. 3 Fusion of the lipid bilayers, introducing the capsid into the cytoplasm.

An infected cell replicates integrated DNA every time cellular DNA is replicated. In this way, HIV ends up infecting all progeny of infected cells. An infected cell may also transcribe integrated HIV to make viral messenger RNA molecules as well as entire RNA copies of the whole HIV genome.

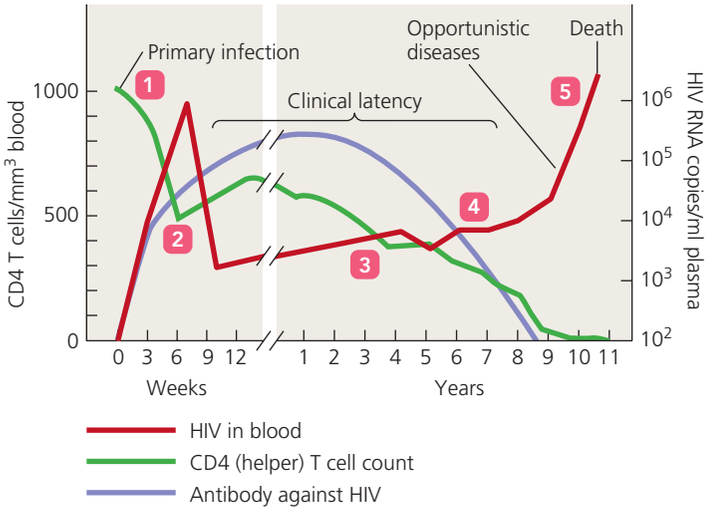
Details of Release, Assembly, and Maturation

HIV actively participates in its release from the cell. A viral protein selects a *lipid raft*—a region of regularly packed lipids—in the cytoplasmic membrane as the point of exit. As the virus blebs from the cell, components of the raft become the envelope of the virion. Once outside the cell, capsomeres organize to form an immature capsid, and viral *protease* cleaves a polypeptide within the capsid to release functional proteins. The proteins cause the virus to mature and become infective. *Protease inhibitors*—drugs that interfere with the function of protease—have become a standard therapeutic agent in the treatment of HIV infection and have significantly lengthened the life expectancy of patients.

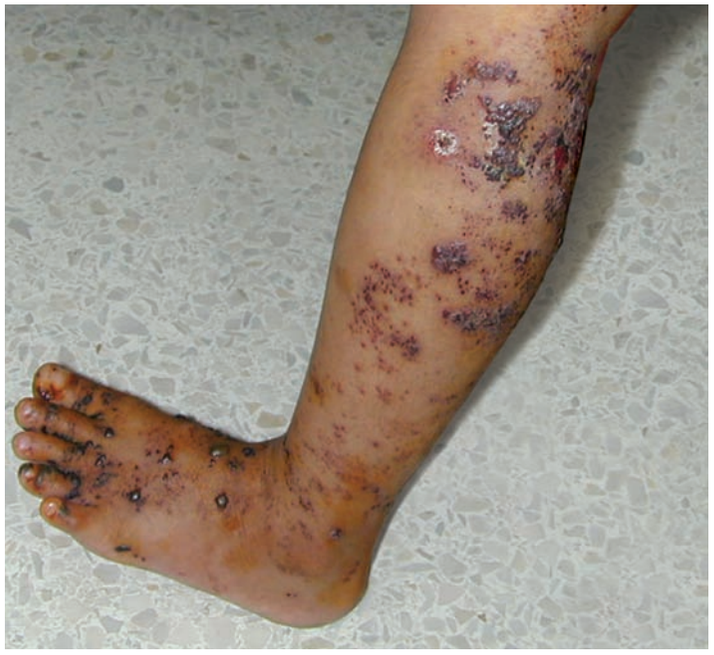
Pathogenesis of AIDS

Only human cells replicate HIV effectively, and, as its name indicates, the virus destroys a human's immune system. **Figure 25.21** illustrates the observation that the destruction of helper T (CD4) cells directly relates to the course of AIDS. Initially, there is a burst of virion production and release from infected cells 1. Fever, fatigue, weight loss, diarrhea, and body aches accompany this primary infection.

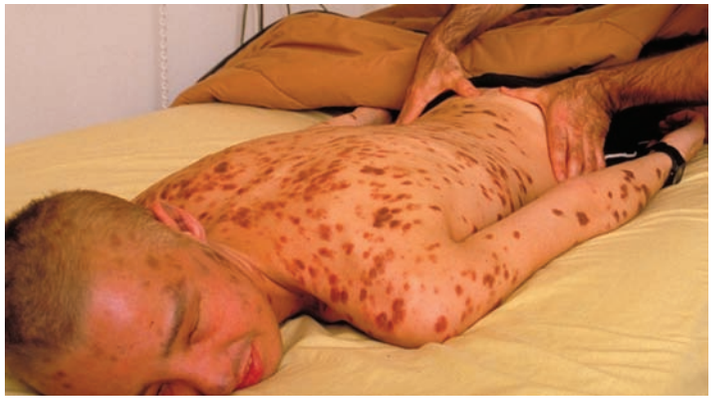
The immune system responds by producing antibodies, and the number of free virions (red line) plummets 2. The body and HIV are waging an invisible war with few signs or symptoms. During this period, the body destroys almost a billion virions each day, but the viruses and cytotoxic T cells kill about 100 million CD4 cells. No specific symptoms accompany this stage, and the patient is often unaware of the infection.



▲ Figure 25.21 The course of AIDS follows the course of helper T cell destruction. The circled numbers correspond to the steps described in the text.



(a)



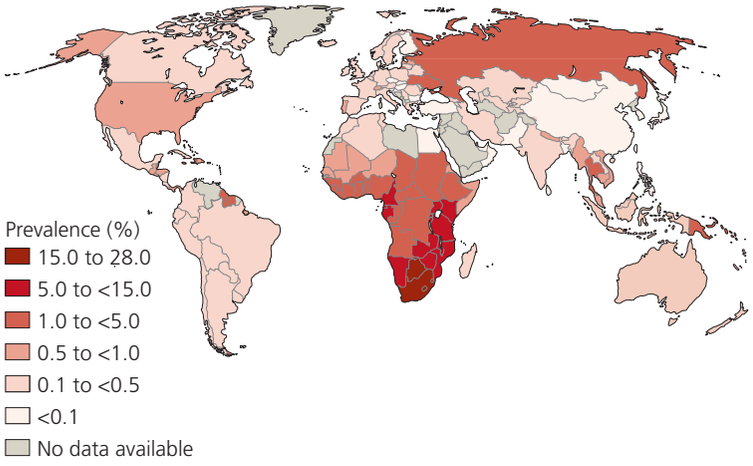
(b)

▲ Figure 25.22 **Some diseases associated with AIDS.** **(a)** Disseminated herpes. **(b)** Kaposi's sarcoma. *Which viruses cause herpes?*

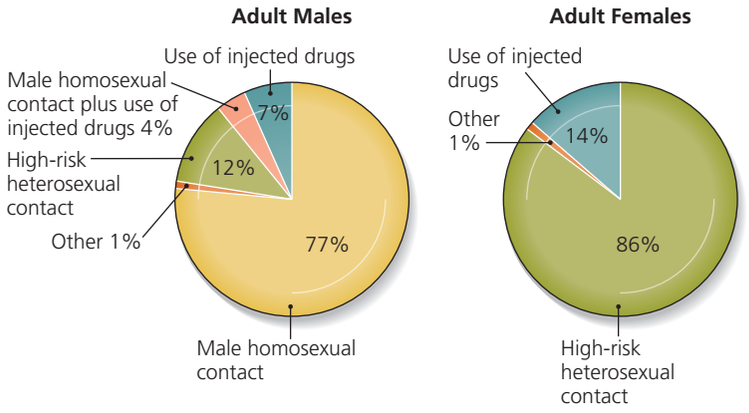
Figure 25.22 Human herpesviruses 1 and 2 cause herpes.

Integrated viruses continue to replicate and virions are released into the blood to such an extent that the body cannot make enough helper T cells (green line) 3. Over the course of 5 to 10 years, the number of helper T cells declines to a level that severely impairs the immune response. The rate of antibody formation (purple line) falls precipitously as helper T cell function is lost.

HIV production climbs (red line) 4, and the patient dies 5. Many of the diseases associated with the loss of immune function in AIDS (see Table 25.5 on p. 729) are nonlethal infections in other patients, but AIDS patients cannot effectively resist them. Diseases such as Kaposi's sarcoma, disseminated herpes, toxoplasmosis, and *Pneumocystis* pneumonia occur rarely except in AIDS patients **(Figure 25.22)**.



▲ **Figure 25.23 The global distribution of HIV/AIDS.** Figures indicate the estimated number of children and adults living with HIV/AIDS as of the end of 2010. Note the alarmingly high number of people infected in sub-Saharan Africa.



▲ **Figure 25.24 Modes of HIV transmission in people over 12 years of age in the United States during 2010.** Percentages represent the estimated proportions of HIV infections that result from each type of transmission. (Estimates are rounded to the nearest 1% and thus do not add up to 100%.)

Epidemiology of AIDS

Epidemiologists first identified AIDS in young male homosexuals in the United States, but now AIDS is worldwide. WHO estimated as of December 2009 that there were about 33.5 million HIV-infected people worldwide and that approximately 7000 new infections occur each day, including over 150 new cases in the United States daily. About a third of those infected have already developed AIDS; most of the rest will eventually develop the syndrome. The spread of AIDS in sub-Saharan Africa is particularly horrific **(Figure 25.23)**.

All body secretions of AIDS patients contain HIV; however, viruses typically exist in sufficient concentration to cause infection only in blood, semen, vaginal secretions, and breast milk. Virions may be free or inside infected leukocytes. Infected blood contains 1000 to 100,000 virions per milliliter, while semen has 10 to 50 virions per milliliter. Other secretions have lower concentrations and are less infective than blood or semen.

Infected fluid must be injected into the body or encounter a tear or lesion in the skin or mucous membranes. Because HIV is only about 90 nm in diameter, a break in the protective membranes of the body allowing entry of HIV may be too small to bleed or to see or feel. Sufficient numbers of virions must be transmitted to target cells to establish an infection, though scientists do not know the exact number of virions required. The number probably varies with the strain of HIV and the overall health of the patient's immune system.

HIV is transmitted primarily via sexual contact (including vaginal, anal, and oral sex, either homosexual or heterosexual) and intravenous drug abuse **(Figure 25.24)**. Blood transfusions, organ transplants, tattooing, and accidental medical needlesticks also transmit HIV, though rarely. For example, the risk of infection from a needlestick injury involving an HIV-infected patient is less than 1%. Mothers also transmit HIV to their babies across the placenta and in breast milk; HIV infects approximately one-third of babies born to HIV-positive women.

Behaviors that increase the risk of infection include the following:

- Anal intercourse, especially receptive anal intercourse
- Sexual promiscuity; that is, sex with more than one partner
- Intravenous drug use
- Sexual intercourse with anyone in the previous three categories

The mode of infection is unknown for a small number of AIDS patients, who are often unable or unwilling to answer questions about their sexual and drug abuse history. The CDC has documented a few cases of casual spread of HIV, including infections from sharing razors and toothbrushes and from mouth-to-mouth kissing. In all cases of casual spread, researchers suspect that small amounts of the donor's blood may have entered abrasions in the recipient's mouth.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention

Physicians diagnose AIDS on the basis of unexplained weight loss, fatigue, fever, and fewer than 200 CD4 lymphocytes per microliter[12] of blood combined with other signs and symptoms, which vary according to the diseases involved, and the demonstration of antibodies against HIV. Recall that by definition AIDS is the presence of one or more rare diseases and anti-HIV antibodies.

HIV itself is difficult to locate in a patient's secretions and blood because it becomes a provirus inserted into chromosomes and because for years it can be kept in check by the immune system. Therefore, diagnosis involves detecting antibodies against HIV in the blood using enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and Western blot testing. Most individuals develop antibodies within six months of infection, though some remain without detectable antibodies for up to three years. A positive test for antibodies does not mean that HIV is currently present or that the patient has or will develop AIDS; it merely indicates

[12]The normal value for CD4 cells is 500 to 700 cells/μL.

that the patient has been exposed to HIV. Doctors use a PCR test for HIV RNA to make a definitive diagnosis.

A small percentage of infected individuals, called *long-term nonprogressors,* do not develop AIDS even years or decades after infection. It appears that either these individuals are infected with defective virions, they have a mutated fusin receptor that does not bind effectively to HIV, or they have unusually well-developed immune systems.

Discovering a treatment for AIDS is an area of intense research and development. Currently physicians prescribe **antiretroviral therapy (ART),** previously known as *highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART).* ART is a "cocktail" of three or four antiviral drugs to reduce viral replication, including nucleotide analogs, integrase inhibitors, protease inhibitors (e.g., darunavir), and reverse transcriptase inhibitors. ART is expensive and generally must be taken on a strict schedule. Studies indicate that the therapy stops the replication of HIV because strains of the virus are unlikely to develop resistance to all of the drugs simultaneously. As long as treatment continues, a patient can live a relatively normal life; however, treatment is not a cure because the infection remains. Some scientists estimate that it would take 60 years on ART for all HIV-infected cells to die. In addition to ART, physicians manage and treat individual diseases associated with AIDS on a case-by-case basis. Doctors can use a PCR test for the presence of HIV RNA to measure the effectiveness of ART.

Researchers are working to develop methods that will prevent attachment of HIV to target cells, block the entry of HIV into cells, and halt HIV synthesis and release.

Progress in developing a vaccine against HIV has been disappointing. Among the problems that must be overcome in developing an effective vaccine are the following:

- A vaccine must generate both secretory antibody (IgA) to prevent sexual transmission and infection and cytotoxic T lymphocytes (to eliminate infected cells).
- Induction of synthesis of gamma class antibodies (IgG), a necessary function of a vaccine, can actually be detrimental to a patient. Because IgG-viral complexes bind to B cells and also remain infective inside phagocytic cells, a vaccine must stimulate cellular immunity more than humoral immunity so as to kill infected cells.
- HIV is highly mutable, generating antigenic variants that enable it to evade the immune response. Scientists estimate the diversity of HIV sequences found in one person at any one time is greater than the diversity of flu viruses in everyone worldwide during a full year.
- HIV can spread through syncytia (formed by gp41), thus moving from place to place while evading some immune surveillance.
- HIV infects and inactivates macrophages, dendritic cells, and helper T cells—cells that combat infections.
- Testing a vaccine presents ethical and medical problems because HIV is a pathogen of humans only. For example, researchers stopped a study in 1994 when HIV infected five volunteers despite their having received an experimental vaccine.

Scientists have developed a vaccine that protects monkeys from SIV disease but have not been able to translate this success into an effective vaccine for humans. In the meantime, individuals can slow the AIDS epidemic with personal decisions:

- Abstinence and mutually faithful monogamy between uninfected individuals are the only truly safe sexual behaviors. Studies have shown that whereas condoms reduce a heterosexual individual's risk of acquiring HIV by about 69%, the benefit of condom usage to a population can be undone by an overall increase in sexual activity that may result from a false sense of security that condoms provide safe sex.
- Use of new, clean needles and syringes for all injections, as well as caution in dealing with sharp, potentially contaminated objects, can reduce HIV infection rates. If clean supplies are not available, 10% household bleach deactivates HIV on surfaces uncontaminated by a large amount of organic material (blood, mucus).
- Antiviral drugs given to pregnant women have reduced transfer of HIV, across the placenta and in breast milk. Generally, HIV-infected mothers should not breast-feed their infants, though feeding with formula made with contaminated water is often more dangerous, triggering life-threatening diarrhea. WHO recommends formula only when it is "acceptable, feasible, affordable, sustainable, and safe."
- Screening blood, blood products, and organ transplants for HIV and anti-HIV antibodies has virtually eliminated the risk of HIV infection from these sources.
- Proper use of gloves, protective eyewear, and masks can prevent contact with infected blood.
- Researchers have determined that men who are circumcised reduce their risk of infection through sexual activity by at least 60%. Circumcision lowers their partner's risk by 30%.

We have considered positive single-stranded RNA viruses, including retroviruses. Now we turn our attention to negative single-stranded RNA viruses.

Enveloped, Unsegmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Paramyxoviridae, Rhabdoviridae,* and *Filoviridae*

Viruses of the families *Paramyxoviridae, Rhabdoviridae,* and *Filoviridae* are enveloped, helical, negative, single-stranded RNA (−ssRNA) viruses. Recall that a negative RNA genome cannot be directly translated because its information is nonsensical to a ribosome; however, −ssRNA is the complement of a readable sequence of nucleotides. Therefore, a −ssRNA virus must make a positive copy of its genome. The +ssRNA copy serves as mRNA for protein translation. The positive copy also serves as a template for transcription of more −ssRNA to be incorporated into new virions.

HIGHLIGHT

NIPAH VIRUS: FROM PIGS TO HUMANS

Many diseases become known to science either when people encroach on a pathogen's home territory and come into contact with natural hosts or when pathogens are introduced into geographical areas outside their historical range. Diseases resulting under such conditions are called *emerging diseases*. One example of an emerging disease is a new form of encephalitis that has appeared in Malaysia. The culprit: a never-before-identified virus now known as Nipah virus (genus *Henipavirus*) after the region in Malaysia in which it was discovered.

The victims of Nipah encephalitis experience high fever, severe headache, muscle pain, drowsiness, disorientation, convulsions, and coma. Seventy percent of them die. Serological investigations and RNA sequencing of the genome revealed that *Henipavirus* belongs to the family *Paramyxoviridae*. Victims contract Nipah virus from infected animals: 93% of Malaysian victims report occupational exposure to pigs.

How, then, do pigs become infected with Nipah virus? The prevailing theory involves human encroachment on bat habitats. Certain species of fruit bats are the natural hosts of Nipah virus. Highway workers pushing into these bats' rain forest habitats have disturbed their roosts, driving the bats into proximity with pig farms. The virus then "jumped" species and infected the pigs. Individuals working on pig farms or in slaughterhouses were subsequently infected either via the respiratory route or through breaks in their skin and mucous membranes.

Removing pigs to prevent the spread of Nipah virus.

There is no cure for Nipah encephalitis, but scientists have inserted genes for *Henipavirus* proteins into cowpox virus, which thereby becomes an effective recombinant vaccine that protects against infection.

Viruses in the family *Paramyxoviridae* have similar morphologies and antigens. They also share the ability to cause infected cells to fuse with their neighbors, forming giant, multinucleate **syncytia,** which enable virions to pass from an infected cell into neighboring cells and to evade immune surveillance and antibodies. The family *Paramyxoviridae* contains four genera that infect humans: *Morbillivirus* (measles virus), *Respirovirus* (two species of parainfluenza viruses), *Rubulavirus* (mumps virus and two other species of parainfluenza viruses), and *Pneumovirus* (respiratory syncytial virus). **Highlight: Nipah Virus: From Pigs to Humans** describes an emerging fatal disease caused by a newly identified genus in the *Paramyxoviridae.*

Rhabdoviruses *(Rhabdoviridae)* have bullet-shaped envelopes and include a variety of plant and animal pathogens. Rabies is the most significant pathogen among the rhabdoviruses.

Filoviruses *(Filoviridae)* are particularly significant because they are pathogens that cause a number of emerging and frightening diseases, including Ebola and Marburg hemorrhagic fevers.

Measles

Learning Outcome

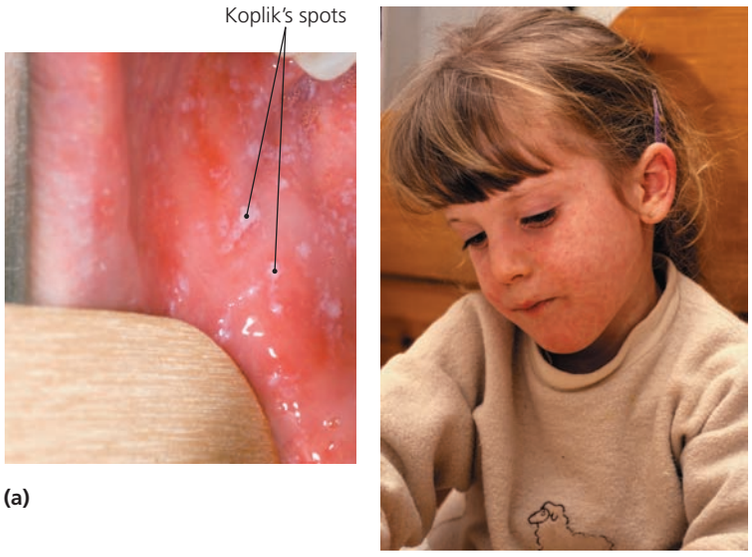
25.26 Describe the signs and symptoms of rubeola and SSPE and some ways of preventing them.

Measles virus causes one of five classical childhood diseases. **Measles,** also known in the United States as *rubeola*[13] or *red measles,* is one of the more contagious and serious childhood diseases, and it should not be confused with the generally milder rubella (German measles). Table 25.7 compares and contrasts measles and rubella.

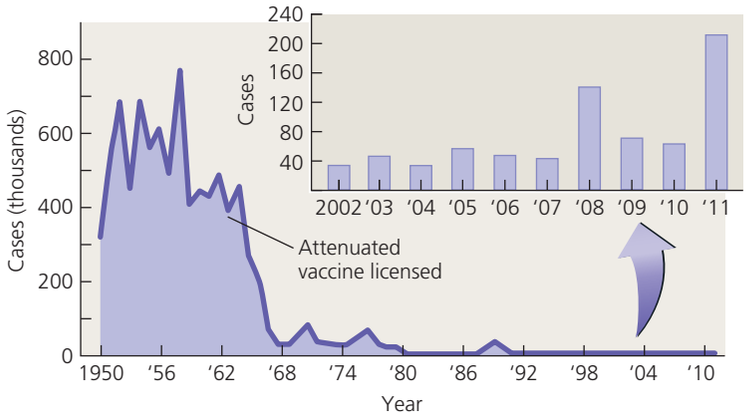
[13]Unfortunately, rubeola is the name given to rubella (German measles) in some other countries.

TABLE 25.7 A Comparison of Measles and Rubella

Disease	Causative Agent	Primary Patient(s)	Complications	Skin Rash	Koplik's Spots
Measles (also known as rubeola and red measles)	*Paramyxoviridae: Morbillivirus measles virus*	Child	Pneumonia, encephalitis, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis	Extensive	Present
Rubella (also known as German measles and three-day measles)	*Togaviridae: Rubivirus rubella virus*	Child, fetus	Birth defects	Mild	Absent



▲ **Figure 25.25** **Signs of measles.** **(a)** White Koplik's spots on the oral mucous membrane. **(b)** Raised lesions begin on the face and spread across the body. They may grow and fuse into large reddish patches.



▲ **Figure 25.26** **Measles cases in the United States since 1950.** The number of cases has declined dramatically since immunization began in 1963. *Why does the measles vaccine pose risks for immunocompromised contacts of vaccinated children?*

Figure 25.26 *Measles vaccine is a live attenuated vaccine and can cause disease in the immunocompromised.*

Epidemiology of Measles Infections

Coughing, sneezing, and talking spread measles virus in the air via respiratory droplets. The virus infects cells of the respiratory tract before spreading via lymph and blood throughout the body. In addition to the respiratory tract, the conjunctiva, urinary tract, small blood vessels, lymphatics, and central nervous system become infected.

Humans are the only host for measles virus, and a large, dense population of susceptible individuals must be present for the virus to spread. In the United States before vaccination was instituted, measles outbreaks occurred in one- to three-year epidemic cycles as the critical number of susceptible individuals increased in the population. More than 80% of susceptible patients exposed to the virus developed symptoms 7 to 13 days after exposure.

Signs and symptoms include fever, sore throat, headache, dry cough, and conjunctivitis. After two days of illness, lesions called **Koplik's spots** appear on the mucous membrane of the mouth **(Figure 25.25a)**. These lesions, which have been described as grains of salt surrounded by a red halo, last one to two days and provide a definitive diagnosis of measles. Red, raised (maculopapular) lesions then appear on the head and spread over the body **(Figure 25.25b)**. These lesions are extensive and often fuse to form red patches, which gradually turn brown as the disease progresses. Death may result.

Rare complications of measles include pneumonia, encephalitis, and the extremely serious **subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE).** SSPE is a slow, progressive disease of the central nervous system that involves personality changes, loss of memory, muscle spasms, and blindness. The disease begins 1 to 10 years after infection with measles virus and lasts a few years before resulting in death. A defective measles virus, which cannot make a capsid, causes SSPE. The virus replicates and moves from brain cell to brain cell via syncytia formation, limiting the functioning of infected cells and resulting in the symptoms. SSPE afflicts fewer than 7 measles patients in 1 million and is becoming much rarer as a result of vaccination of children.

An effective, live, attenuated vaccine for measles introduced in 1963 has eliminated measles as an endemic disease in the United States **(Figure 25.26)**; however, measles remains a cause of death in other countries.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Measles

The signs of measles, particularly Koplik's spots, are sufficient for diagnosis, but serological testing can confirm the presence of measles antigen in respiratory and blood specimens. No antiviral treatment is available.

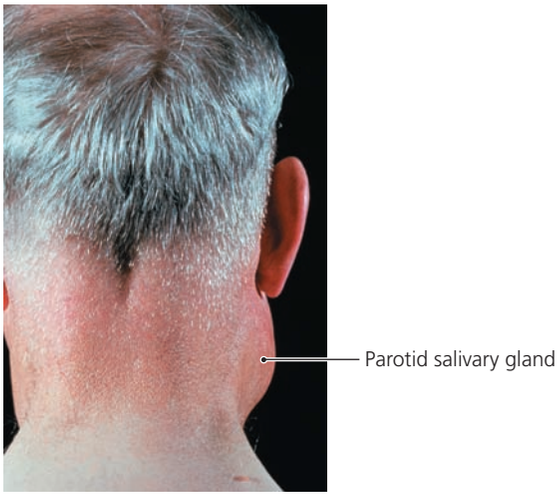
Measles vaccine, in combination with vaccines against mumps and rubella (MMR vaccine), is given to children in the United States who are less than 15 months old. The measles portion of the vaccine is effective 95% of the time but is boosted before grade school to ensure protection against measles introduced from outside the country. Eradication of measles worldwide is possible, but there is no consensus among politicians and scientists that eradication would be worth the cost.

Diseases of Parainfluenza Virus

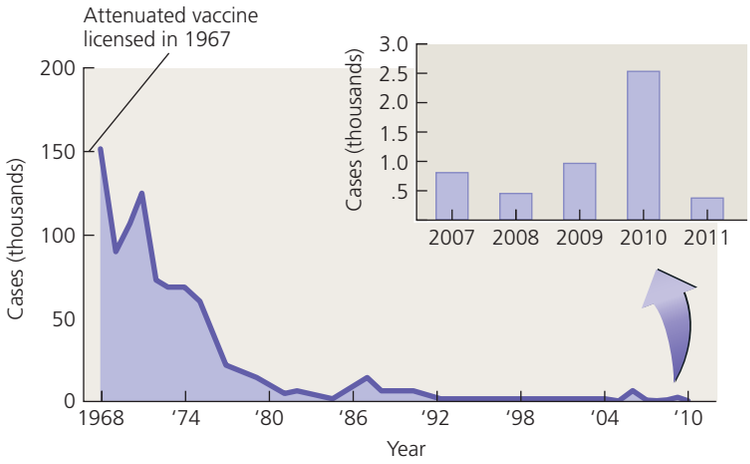
Learning Outcome

25.27 Identify the specific cause of croup.

Four strains of **parainfluenza viruses** (*Respirovirus*: human parainfluenza virus 1 and HPIV-3 *Rubulavirus*: HPIV-2 and HPIV-4) cause respiratory tract disease, particularly in young children. Respiratory droplets and person-to-person contact transmit the virions. HPIV-1, 2, and 3 are associated with lower respiratory



▲ **Figure 25.27** **Parotitis.** This inflammation of the parotid salivary glands is a common sign of mumps.



▲ **Figure 25.28** **Incidence of mumps in the United States.** Mumps cases have declined since vaccination began in 1967. *With which other vaccines is mumps vaccine administered?*

Figure 25.28 *The mumps vaccine is administered with the measles and rubella vaccines.*

infections, whereas HPIV-4 is limited to mild, upper respiratory tract infections. **Croup** (kroop), a severe condition characterized by inflammation and swelling of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi and a "seal bark" cough, is a childhood disease of HPIV-1 and-2 and rarely of other respiratory viruses.

Most patients recover from parainfluenza infections within two days. There is no specific antiviral treatment beyond support and careful monitoring to check that airways do not become completely occluded. If they do, *intubation,* insertion of a tube into the airways, is necessary. Immunization with deactivated virus is not effective, possibly because it fails to produce significant secretory antibody. Researchers have not developed a live attenuated vaccine against parainfluenza.

Mumps

The **mumps** virus *(Rubulavirus)* is another –ssRNA virus. Mumps virions are spread in respiratory secretions and infect cells of the upper respiratory system. As virions are released from these areas, viremia develops, and a number of other organs are infected, resulting in fever and pain in swallowing. The parotid salivary glands, located just in front of the ears under the skin covering the lower jaw, are particularly susceptible to the virus and become painfully enlarged, a condition known as *parotitis* **(Figure 25.27)**. In some patients, the mumps virus causes inflammation of the testes (orchitis), meningitis, pancreatitis, or permanent deafness in one ear. In many other patients, infection is asymptomatic. Recovery from mumps is typically complete, and the patient has effective lifelong immunity.

There is no specific treatment for mumps. However, because an effective attenuated vaccine (MMR) is available and humans are the only natural host for the virus, mumps has almost been eradicated in the industrialized world **(Figure 25.28)**. Epidemics of mumps in the late winter and early spring still occur in countries without vaccination programs, especially in densely populated areas.

Disease of Respiratory Syncytial Virus

Learning Outcome

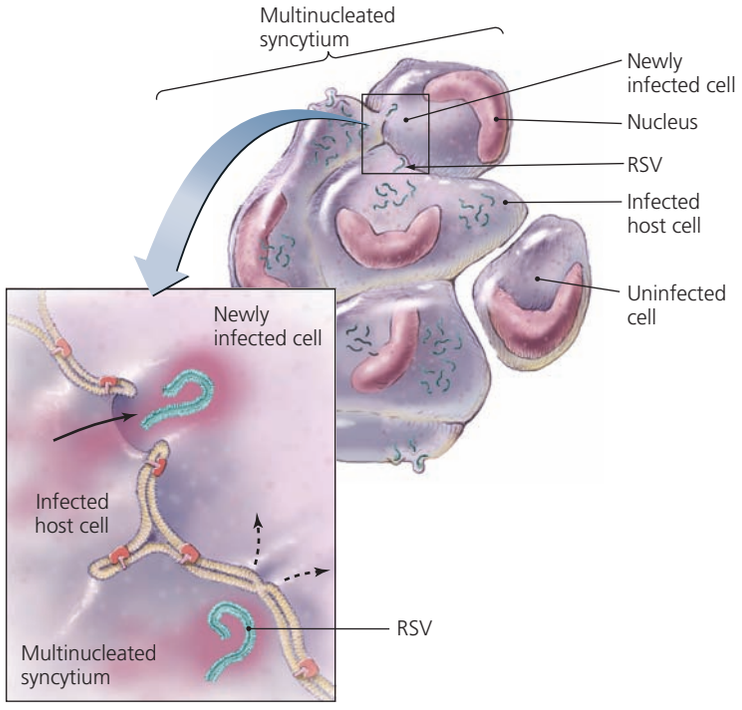
25.28 Compare the effects of RSV infection in infants and adults.

Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) in the genus *Pneumovirus* of the family *Paramyxoviridae* causes a disease of the lower respiratory tract, particularly in young children. As its name indicates, the virus causes formation of syncytia in the lungs **(Figure 25.29)**. Additionally, plugs of mucus, fibrin, and dead cells fill the smaller air passages, resulting in *dyspnea* (disp-nē´ă)—difficulty in breathing—and sometimes croup. RSV is the leading cause of fatal respiratory disease in infants and young children worldwide, especially those who are premature, immune impaired, or otherwise weakened. The disease in older children and adults is manifested as a cold or is asymptomatic. Most otherwise healthy people fully recover in one to two weeks.

Damage to the lungs is increased by the action of cytotoxic T cells and other specific immune responses to infection. Attempts at developing a vaccine with deactivated RSV have proven difficult because the vaccine enhances the severity of the cellular immune response and lung damage.

Epidemiology of RSV Infection

RSV is prevalent in the United States: epidemiological studies reveal that 65% to 98% of children in day care centers are infected by age three. Approximately 125,000 infants require hospitalization each year, and about 2000 die. The virus is transmitted on fomites, on hands, and less frequently via respiratory droplets. Because the virus is also extremely contagious, its introduction into a nursery can be devastating; therefore, good aseptic technique by health care workers and good hygiene by day care center employees, are essential. Hand washing and the use of gowns, goggles, masks, and gloves are important measures to reduce nosocomial infections.



▲ Figure 25.29 A syncytium forms when RSV triggers infected cells to fuse with uninfected cells. Virions moving through these large multinucleated cells can infect new cells, all the while evading the host's immune system.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of RSV Infection

Prompt diagnosis is essential if infected infants are to get the care they need. The signs of respiratory distress provide some diagnostic clues, but verification of RSV infection is made by serological testing. Specimens of respiratory fluid may be tested by immunofluorescence, ELISA, or complementary DNA probes.

Supportive treatment involves administration of oxygen. Antisense RNA has shown promise in reducing the spread of RSV infection.

Control of RSV is limited to attempts to prevent the spread of RSV by frequent hand washing.

Rabies

Learning Outcome

25.29 Describe the effects, treatment, and prevention of rabies.

Although the cry "Mad dog! Mad dog!" may not make you apprehensive, in the 19th century—before Pasteur developed a rabies vaccine and treatment—a bite from a rabid dog was a death sentence, and the cry "Mad dog!" often spawned panic. Few people survived rabies before Pasteur's pivotal work.

Rabies[14] virus is a negative, single-stranded RNA (–ssRNA) virus in the genus *Lyssavirus,* family *Rhabdoviridae.* Like viruses in the family *Paramyxoviridae,* all of the rhabdoviruses have helical capsids, but those of rhabdoviruses are supercoiled into cylinders, which gives them a striated appearance, and are surrounded by bullet-shaped envelopes **(Figure 25.30)**.

Glycoprotein spikes on the surface of the envelope serve as attachment proteins. Attachment to nerve cells triggers endocytosis, and rabies viruses then replicate in the cytoplasm of these cells. The virus is carried to the central nervous system via cytoplasmic flow within the neurons. The spinal cord and brain degenerate as a result of infection, though infected cells show little damage when examined microscopically. Viruses travel back to the periphery, including the salivary glands, through nerve cells. Viruses secreted in the saliva of infected mammals are typically the infective agents.

Initial signs and symptoms of rabies include pain or itching at the site of infection, fever, headache, malaise, and anorexia. Once

[14]From Latin *rabere*, meaning "rage" or "madness."

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

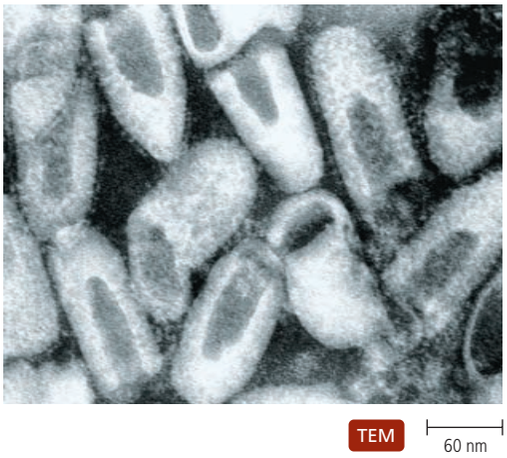
A THREAT FROM THE WILD

A man arrived at an emergency room with neurological disorders: uncontrolled facial twitching, anxiety, and feelings of fear. He also had a sore throat and difficulty in swallowing and complained of itching over his entire body. He remained alive for several days but became increasingly agitated and refused to drink because of the pain involved in swallowing. He vomited repeatedly, and his temperature rose to 106°F. He died one week after being admitted to the hospital.

An autopsy revealed dark-staining bodies in the cells of his brain and a raised antibody titer in his blood. There were no obvious bites or scratches on his skin, though interviews with friends and family indicated that a bat had landed on the man's face about a month before he was admitted to the hospital.

1. What did the man suffer from?
2. What were the antibodies against?
3. What were the dark-staining bodies in his brain cells?
4. What preventive measures might health care providers have used to save the man's life?

Reference: Adapted from *MMWR* 52:47–48. 2003.



▲ **Figure 25.30** **A rabies virus.** Note the bullet-shaped envelope.

viruses reach the central nervous system, neurological manifestations characteristic of rabies develop: **hydrophobia**[15] (triggered by the pain involved in attempts to swallow water), seizures, disorientation, hallucinations, and paralysis. Death results from respiratory paralysis and other neurological complications.

Epidemiology of Rabies

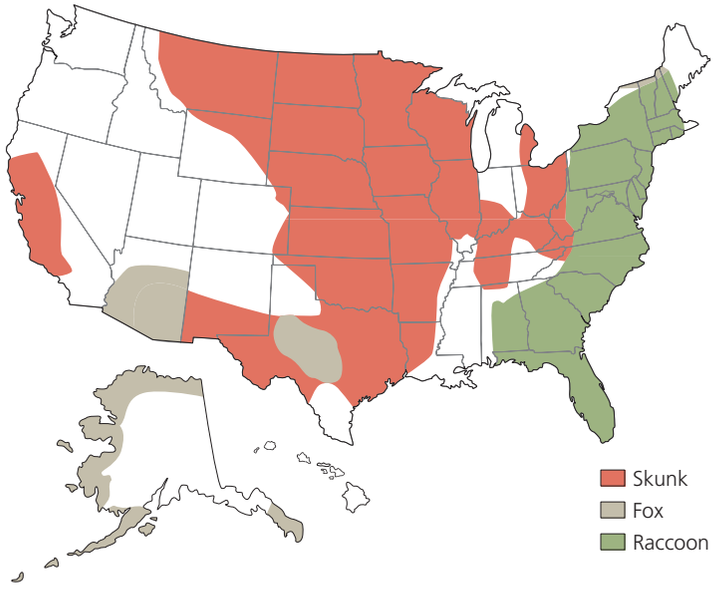
Rabies is a classical zoonosis of mammals, though not all mammals are reservoirs. Rodents, for instance, rarely get rabies. The distribution of rabies in humans follows the distribution in animals. The primary animals involved differ from locale to locale and change over time as a result of dynamics of animal populations and interactions among animals and humans. The main reservoir of rabies in urban areas is the dog. In the wild, rabies can be found in foxes, badgers, raccoons, skunks, cats, bats, coyotes, and feral dogs **(Figure 25.31)**. Bats are the source of most human cases of rabies in the United States, causing about 75% of cases between 1990 and 2012.

Transmission of rabies viruses in the saliva of infected animals usually occurs via a bite. Infection is also possible via the introduction of viruses into breaks in the skin or mucous membranes or rarely through inhalation.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Rabies

The neurological symptoms of rabies are unique and generally sufficient for diagnosis. Serological tests for antibodies can confirm a diagnosis. Postmortem laboratory tests are often conducted to determine whether a suspected animal in fact carries rabies virus. These tests include antigen detection by immunofluorescence and the identification of aggregates of virions (called **Negri bodies**) in the brain **(Figure 25.32)**. Unfortunately, by the time symptoms and antibody production occur, it is too late to intervene, and the disease will follow its natural course.

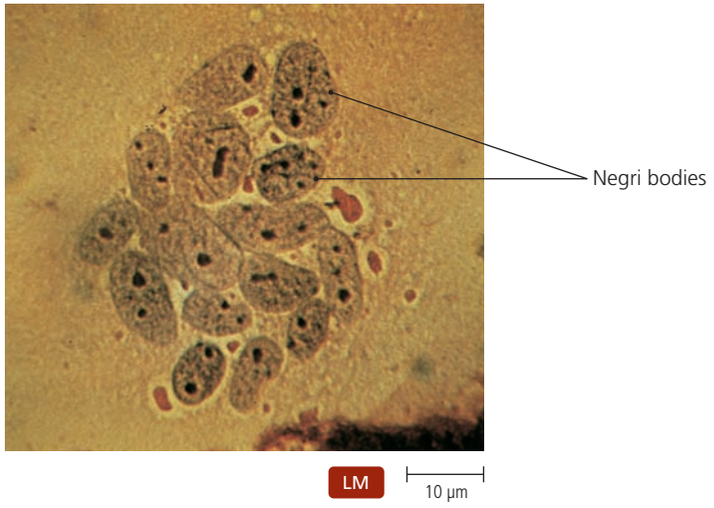
The rabies vaccine—*human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV)*—is prepared from deactivated rabies viruses cultured in human



▲ **Figure 25.31** **Predominant wildlife reservoirs for rabies by area.** Absence of a color does not indicate the absence of rabies in that region, only that no wildlife reservoir is predominant. Bats, for instance, harbor rabies throughout the country but are rarely the predominant reservoir in an area. Nevertheless, bats are the major source of human infection.

diploid cells. It is administered intramuscularly on days 0, 3, 7, and 14 after exposure. The vaccine can also be administered prophylactically to workers who regularly come into contact with animals (veterinarians, zookeepers, and animal control workers) and to people traveling to areas of the world where rabies is prevalent.

Treatment of rabies begins with treatment of the site of infection. The wound should be thoroughly cleansed with



▲ **Figure 25.32** **Negri bodies, a characteristic of rabies infection.** Here the viruses are in human cerebellum brain cells. *What are Negri bodies?*

[15]From Greek *hydro*, meaning "water," and *phobos*, meaning "fear."

Figure 25.32 *Negri bodies are stained aggregates of rabies virions.*

water and soap or another substance that deactivates viruses. WHO recommends anointing the wound with antirabies serum. Initial treatment also involves injection of *human rabies immune globulin (HRIG)*. Subsequent treatment involves five vaccine injections. Rabies is one of the few infections that can be treated with active immunization because the progress of viral replication and movement to the brain is slow enough to allow effective immunity to develop before disease develops.

Ultimately, control of rabies involves immunization of domestic dogs and cats and the removal of unwanted strays from urban areas. Little can be done to completely eliminate rabies in wild animals because rabies virus can infect so many species, though in the late 1990s an epidemic of rabies was stopped in southern Texas by the successful vaccination of the wild coyote population. This was accomplished by lacing meat with an oral vaccine and dropping it from airplanes into the coyotes' range.

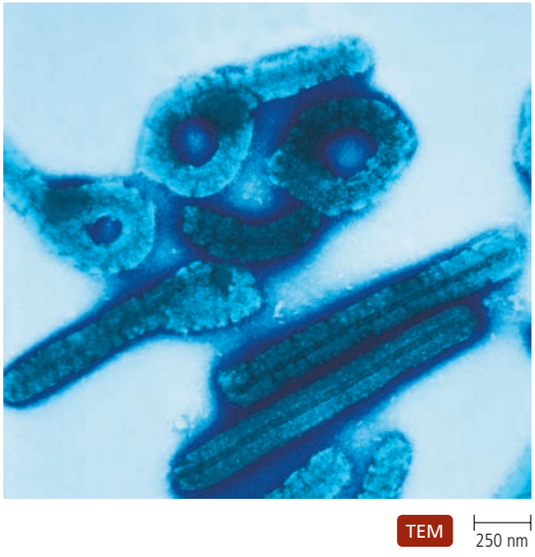
Hemorrhagic Fevers

Learning Outcome

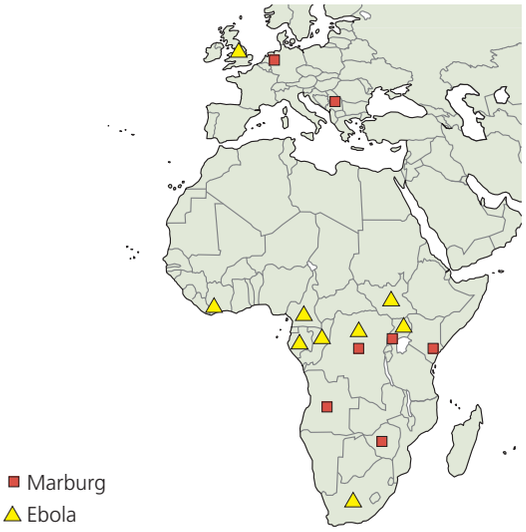
25.30 Describe the effects of filoviruses on the human body.

Filamentous viruses that cause **hemorrhagic fever** were originally placed in the *Rhabdoviridae* but have now been assigned to their own family, *Filoviridae,* primarily on the basis of the symptoms they cause. These enveloped viruses form long filaments, sometimes up to 14,000 nm long, that sometimes curve back upon themselves **(Figure 25.33)**.

There are two known filoviruses: Marburg virus and Ebola virus. **Marburg virus** was first isolated from laboratory workers in Marburg, Germany, and it has also been found in Zimbabwe, Kenya, Uganda, Angola, and the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC). Outbreaks of **Ebola virus** hemorrhagic fever were first recorded in the DRC in 1976 near the Ebola River. Ebola cases have also occurred in humans in Sudan, Ivory Coast, Gabon, Uganda, South Africa, Congo, and a single laboratory worker in England via an accidental needlestick **(Figure 25.34)**.



▲ **Figure 25.33** **Filamentous Ebola viruses.** Filoviruses can be up to 14,000 nm long.



▲ **Figure 25.34** **Sites in which localized human disease cases of Marburg and Ebola viruses are known to have occurred.**

The natural reservoirs of filoviruses appear to be fruit bats, but the initial method of transmission to humans is unknown. The virions attack many cells of the body, especially macrophages and liver cells. One predominant manifestation is uncontrolled bleeding under the skin and from every body opening as the internal organs are reduced to a jelly-like consistency. Hemorrhaging appears to be due to the synthesis of a virally coded glycoprotein that is expressed on the surface of infected cells lining blood vessels. The glycoprotein prevents neighboring cells from adhering to one another, allowing blood to leak out of the vessels. Headache and severe fever accompany this "meltdown." Up to 90% of human victims of Ebola die, and about 25% of Marburg victims die. Epidemics sometimes cease only when there are not enough living humans to sustain viral transmission.

Marburg and Ebola viruses spread from person to person via contaminated bodily fluids, primarily blood, and through the use of contaminated syringes. Even a small amount of infected blood contacting a mucous membrane or conjunctiva can induce disease. Ebola virus can also spread among monkeys through the air, but aerosol transmission from monkeys to humans or among humans has not been observed.

The symptoms of filovirus infection are diagnostic. Additionally, the typical curved virus filaments are found in the victim's blood. Investigators detect antigens and antibodies using immunofluorescence, ELISA, or radioactive immunoassay. Extreme caution must be exercised in dealing with Ebola and Marburg patients and their bodily fluids. In fact, Biosafety Level 4—which involve the use of complete "space suits" to protect laboratory workers from contact with blood, vomit, or any other bodily fluids that might be contaminated with virus

▲ **Figure 25.35 Working in a Biosafety Level 4 lab.** The "space suit," which is designed to completely prevent contact with pathogens, constitutes more than a physical barrier; should the material of the suit be breached, positive air pressure within the suit ensures that pathogens present will be blown back from the opening.

(Figure 25.35)—is mandatory. The only treatment for Ebola and Marburg fevers involves fluid replacement.

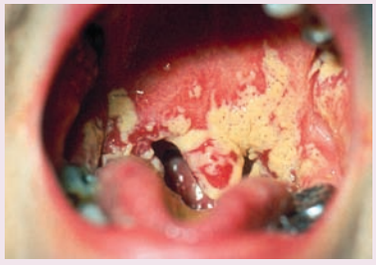
Scientists have developed a vaccine that protects monkeys from Ebola in as little as 28 days. Immunization involves injecting pieces of viral nucleic acid (both by themselves and inserted into adenovirus capsids) into the monkeys. It is not known whether the vaccine will fully protect humans.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Ebola hemorrhagic fever belongs to a group of diseases called "emerging diseases"—diseases that were previously unidentified or had never been identified in human populations. Emerging diseases are often first seen in less-developed countries such as the DRC. What factors may explain the emergence of new diseases in these countries?

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

THE SICK ADDICT



Thrush.

A 25-year-old male was admitted to the hospital with thrush, diarrhea, unexplained weight loss, and difficulty in breathing. Cultures of pulmonary fluid revealed the presence of *Pneumocystis jiroveci*. The man admitted to being a heroin addict and to sharing needles in a "shooting gallery."

1. What laboratory tests could confirm a diagnosis in this case?
2. How did the man most likely acquire the infection?
3. What changes to the man's immune system allowed the opportunistic infections of *Candida* (thrush) and *Pneumocystis* to arise?
4. What precautions should be taken with the patient's blood?

Enveloped, Segmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Orthomyxoviridae*, *Bunyaviridae*, and *Arenaviridae*

A second group of negative, enveloped, single-stranded RNA viruses differ from those in the previous section in having a **segmented genome;** that is, their capsids contain more than one molecule of nucleic acid. These viruses include the flu viruses of the family *Orthomyxoviridae* and hundreds of viruses in the families *Bunyaviridae* and *Arenaviridae* that normally infect animals but can be transmitted to humans.

Influenza

Learning Outcomes

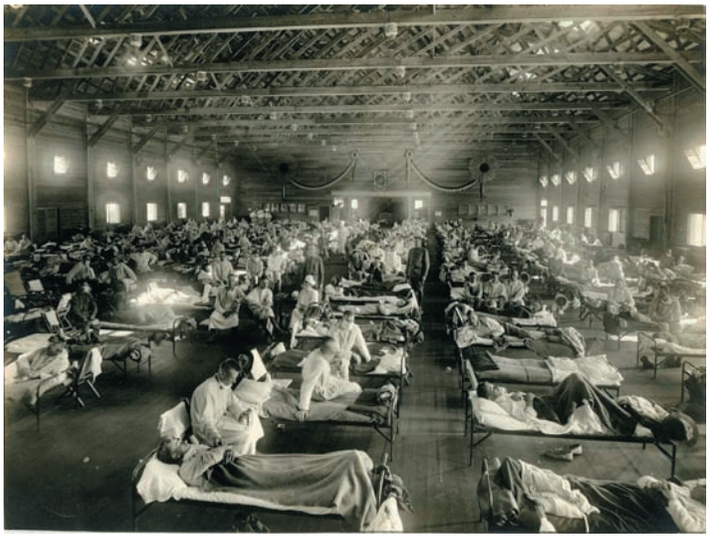
25.31 Describe the roles of hemagglutinin and neuraminidase in the replication cycle of influenzaviruses.

25.32 Explain the difference between *antigenic drift* and *antigenic shift*.

Imagine being the only elementary school child of your sex in your mid size town because all of your peers died six winters ago. Or imagine returning to college after a break, only to learn that half of your fraternity brothers had died during the previous two months. These vignettes are not fictional; they happened to relatives of this author during the great flu pandemic in the winter of 1918–1919 **(Figure 25.36)**. During that winter, half the world's 1.9 billion people were infected with a new, extremely virulent strain of influenza virus, and an estimated 50 million died during that one flu season. In some U.S. cities, 10,000 people died each week for several months. Could it happen again? In this section we will learn about the characteristics of influenzaviruses that enable flu—a common infection, second only to common colds—to produce such devastating epidemics and some ways to protect ourselves from the flu.

The causes of **influenza**[16] (in-flū-en´ză), or **flu,** are two species of orthomyxoviruses, designated types A and B. An

[16] *Influenza*, which is Italian for "influence," derives from the mistaken idea that the alignment of celestial objects caused, or "influenced," the disease.



▲ **Figure 25.36 A scene from the influenza pandemic of 1918–19.** Flu afflicted so many people in the United States that gymnasiums were used as hospital wards.

influenza virion contains a genome consisting of eight different –ssRNA molecules surrounded by a pleomorphic (many-shaped) lipid envelope studded with prominent glycoprotein spikes composed of either **hemagglutinin**[17] (hē´mă-glū´ti-nin; **HA**) or **neuraminidase** (nūr-ă-min´i-dāz; **NA**) **(Figure 25.37)**. Both HA and NA play roles in the attachment (and thus the

[17]The word *hemagglutinin* refers to these spikes' ability to attach to and clump (agglutinate) red blood cells.

▲ **Figure 25.37 Influenzaviruses budding from an infected cell.** *What are the types of glycoprotein spikes on influenzaviruses, and what is their relationship to viral strain?*

Figure 25.37 *Glycoprotein spikes on influenzaviruses are neuraminidase (NA) and hemagglutinin (HA); variations in these glycoproteins determine the strain of the virus.*

MICROBE AT A GLANCE

Influenzavirus A and *Influenzavirus B*

Taxonomy: Family *Orthomyxoviridae*

Genome and morphology: Eight molecules of negative single-stranded RNA in helical capsids, surrounded by an envelope

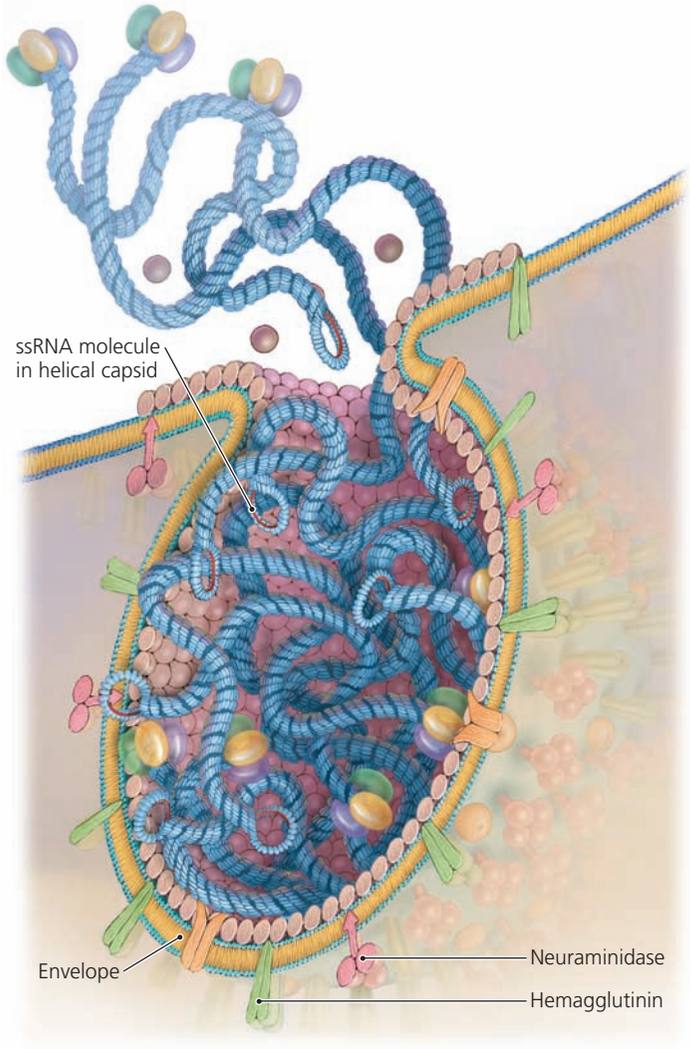
Hosts: Vertebrates, including humans, pigs, birds, horses, sea mammals

Virulence factors: Hemagglutinin and neuraminidase glycoproteins allow attachment to pulmonary cells where viruses induce their own endocytosis

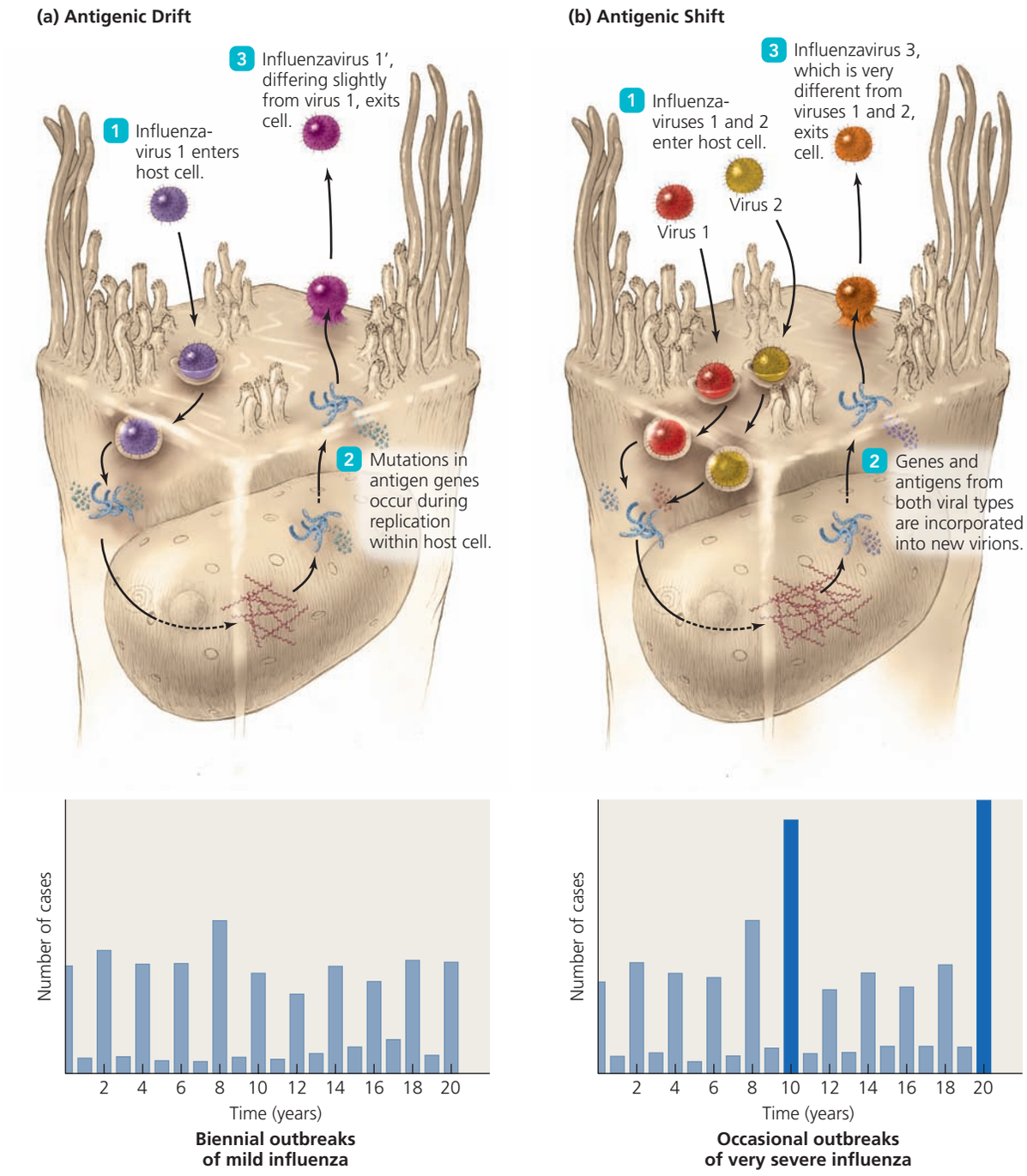
Syndrome caused: Influenza (flu)

Treatment for disease: Amantadine, oseltamivir, zanamivir

Prevention of disease: Annual vaccine provides protection against some strains



Download the Microbe at a Glance flashcards from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.



▲ Figure 25.38 The development of new strains of flu viruses. (a) Antigenic drift, which results from variation in the NA and HA spikes of a single strain of influenzavirus. **(b)** Antigenic shift, which occurs when RNA molecules from two or more influenzaviruses infecting a single cell are incorporated into a single virion. Because antigenic shift produces significantly greater antigenic variability than occurs in antigenic drift, antigenic shifts can result in major epidemics or pandemics.

virulence) of the viruses: NA spikes provide the virus access to cell surfaces by hydrolyzing mucus in the lungs, whereas HA spikes attach to pulmonary epithelial cells and trigger endocytosis. Because influenzaviruses rarely attack cells outside the lungs, so-called stomach flu is probably caused by enteroviruses and not by orthomyxoviruses.

The genomes of flu viruses are extremely variable, especially with respect to the genes that code for HA and NA. Mutations are responsible for the production of new strains of influenzavirus via processes known as antigenic drift and antigenic shift. **Antigenic drift** (an-ti-gen´ik) **(Figure 25.38a)** refers to the accumulation of HA and NA mutations within a

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

H1N1 INFLUENZA

Middle school is supposed to be a time of exploration, learning, and fun, but Maria was too sick to enjoy it. Her 104°F fever had lasted two very unpleasant days, but at last it had gone. For another two days she ached all over and was dizzy; her head felt as if it could explode at any moment; and the nausea, frequent vomiting, and extreme tiredness were unrelenting. For over a week her tired red eyes stared listlessly as she struggled to cope with a constantly running nose, severe sore throat, and a dry hacking cough. Would this onslaught never end? A newly emerging strain of influenza type A had a victim in its grasp.

Flu viruses infect birds, pigs, horses, and humans. These viruses normally mutate, producing slightly different strains every year—a process called antigenic drift. About once a decade, however, different strains of influenzaviruses infect a single cell, and within it they exchange major pieces of RNA, producing a new, quite different strain of virus—a process called antigenic shift. The virus attacking Maria was such a newly emerged influenzavirus, a strain that contained RNA from influenzaviruses of humans, birds, and swine in a novel combination. The virus, commonly called swine flu virus, is officially 2009A(H1N1).

This new strain can have devastating and sometimes fatal effects on hosts because it has antigenic combinations that the adaptive immune system has never seen before, necessitating a prolonged defensive response before the body can conquer the infection. When H1N1 flu cases reached epidemic levels on multiple continents by June 2009, the WHO declared a pandemic—the first flu pandemic since 1968. During this period, the well-known signs and symptoms of flu play out.

Maria was exhausted and weak for another two weeks, but she survived the flu, though many other patients were not so fortunate.

single strain of virus in a given geographic area. Such mutations produce relatively minor variations in spike glycoproteins. As a result of these minor changes in the virus's antigenicity, localized increases in the number of flu infections occur about every two years. **Antigenic shift** **(Figure 25.38b)** is a major antigenic change in influenza A resulting from the reassortment of genomes from different influenzavirus strains infecting the same host cells (either human hosts or animal hosts, including birds and pigs). On average, antigenic shift occurs in influenza A every 10 years. Asia is a major site of antigenic shift and the source of most pandemic strains because of the very high population densities of humans and domesticated birds and pigs there. However, the 2009 H1N1 pandemic strain resulted from genetic reassortment of four influenza A viruses in animals and humans, most likely in Mexico.

In 2005, researchers determined the genetic sequence of the 1918–1919 pandemic strain by analyzing preserved tissue from flu victims. They discovered that a combination of genes from influenza A viruses from birds, pigs, and humans caused the pandemic. The 2009 H1N1 strain contains many of the same genetic sequences as the 1918–1919 strain, leading epidemiologists to estimate that one-third of the world's population could be infected in a new pandemic. The outcome of the pandemic could be as severe as the 1918–1919 outbreak, despite vaccines, antiviral drugs, and modern health care facilities, because there are so many more people today, because we live closer together in urban areas, and because of international air travel, all making it easier for influenzaviruses to spread. **Emerging Disease Case Study: H1N1 Influenza** illustrates one patient's story.

Once virions are taken into epithelial cells lining the lung, the viral envelopes fuse with the membranes of cellular vesicles. Viruses multiply using positive-sense RNA molecules both for translation of viral proteins and as templates for transcription of new −ssRNA genomes.

During the process by which virions bud from the cytoplasmic membrane of infected cells (see Figure 25.37), NA keeps viral proteins from clumping. During budding, genomic segments are enveloped in a random manner such that each virion ends up with about 11 RNA molecules. However, to be functional, a virion must have at least one copy of each of the eight genomic segments. Numerous defective particles are released for every functional virion formed.

Deaths of epithelial cells infected with influenzaviruses eliminate the lungs' first line of defense against infection, its

epithelial lining. As a result, flu patients are more susceptible to secondary bacterial infection. One common infecting bacterium is *Haemophilus influenzae* (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flu-en´zī), which was mistakenly named because it was found in so many flu victims.

The signs and symptoms of flu—fever, malaise, headache, and myalgia (body aches)—are induced by cytokines released as part of the immune response. Rarely, flu viruses cause croup. The symptoms of influenza are compared to those of other respiratory infections in Table 25.1 on p. 717.

Epidemiology of Influenza

The changing antigens of orthomyxoviruses guarantee that there will be susceptible people, especially children, each flu season. Infection occurs primarily through inhalation of airborne viruses but can also occur via fomites.

Strains of influenza are named by type (A or B), location and date of original identification, and antigen (HA and NA). For example, A/Singapore/1/09 (H1N2) is influenza type A, isolated in Singapore in January 2009, which contains HA and NA antigens of type 1 and type 2, respectively. If the virus is isolated from an animal, the animal name is appended to the location. From these names, common names such as "Hong Kong flu" or "swine flu" arise. The number of different flu strains is almost infinite.

Every year millions of Americans are infected, and an estimated 64,000 Americans die annually of flu-related illness. Patients with weak immune systems, including the very young, the elderly, and those immunocompromised as a result of cancer therapy or disease, are particularly vulnerable.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Influenza

The manifestation of flu signs and symptoms during a community-wide outbreak of the flu is often sufficient for diagnosis of influenza. Laboratory tests such as immunofluorescence or ELISA can distinguish strains of flu virus.

Hundreds of millions of dollars are spent each year in the United States on antihistamines and pain relievers to alleviate flu symptoms. Aspirin and aspirin-like products should not be used to treat the symptoms of flu in children and teenagers because of increased risk of *Reye's syndrome*, a severe brain disorder associated with several viral diseases and aspirin usage.

Oseltamivir pills or inhaled zanamivir mist are neuraminidase inhibitors that block the release of virions from infected cells. These prescription drugs must be taken during the first 48 hours of infection because they cannot prevent the later immunopathogenic manifestations of the disease. Scientists using computer modeling of epidemics estimate that if a flu patient passes the virus to only one or two other people, then an epidemic can be stopped with antiviral drugs. However, health care workers and drug manufacturers would be overwhelmed if each sick person infected three or more contacts.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY

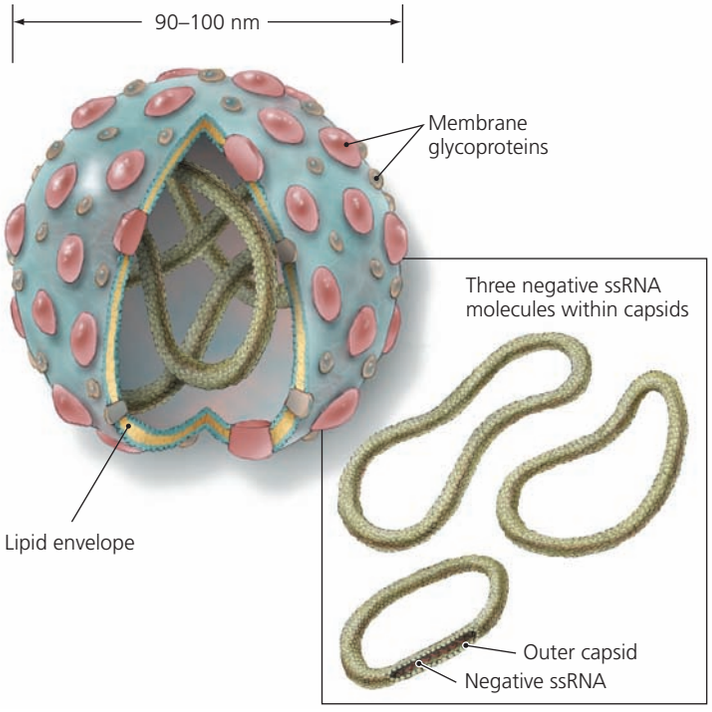
INFLUENZA

A 26-year-old man reports to his physician in late October, complaining of a sudden onset of fever, a dry cough, headache, and body aches. The man states that he received his flu shot 10 days prior and must have gotten the flu from the immunization. He also states that he had just returned two days before from a weeklong trip to Hong Kong. He mentions that a highlight of his trip was a visit to the farmers' market filled with fresh produce and livestock. A culture confirms that the patient is infected with influenzavirus.

1. How should the physician counter the patient's assertion that he "got the flu" from the vaccine?
2. Explain the occurrence of this influenza case before the onset of the recognized flu season.
3. Why might the patient have been infected with influenzavirus even after receiving a vaccine?
4. The culture indicates that this is a drastically different flu strain from those seen in recent years. What phenomenon explains this?
5. Will prescription drugs likely be effective in this patient's case? Why or why not?

The greatest success in controlling flu epidemics has come from culling infected birds and from immunization by injection or inhalation with multivalent vaccines, that is, vaccines that contain several antigens at once. WHO has personnel in Asia who track changes in the HA and NA antigens of emerging flu viruses. Newly discovered antigens are then used to create flu vaccine in advance of the next flu season in the United States. The vaccines are at least 70% effective but only against the viral antigens they contain.

Flu vaccines are made of deactivated viruses; therefore, contrary to many people's perception, you cannot get flu from the vaccine. However, you may get flu from strains of



▲ **Figure 25.39 A bunyavirus is an enveloped helical virion.** The genome consists of three −ssRNA molecules.

influenzavirus not included in the vaccine. Flu vaccine usually provides protection for no more than three years. Natural active immunity as a result of infection lasts much longer but is probably not lifelong.

Diseases of Bunyaviruses

Learning Outcome

25.33 Contrast hantaviruses with the other bunyaviruses.

Most **bunyaviruses** (bun´ya-vī´rŭs-ĕz) are zoonotic pathogens that are usually transmitted to humans by biting arthropods (mosquitoes, ticks, and flies); thus, they are arboviruses. Bunyaviruses have a segmented genome of three −ssRNA molecules **(Figure 25.39)**, which distinguishes them from the arboviruses we have already discussed in the families *Togaviridae* and *Flaviviridae*, which have unsegmented +ssRNA.

Epidemiology of Bunyavirus Infections

Four genera of *Bunyaviridae* contain human pathogens. The viruses of *Rift Valley fever, California encephalitis,* and *hemorrhagic fevers* are arboviruses and thus enter the blood through the bite of an arthropod, which establishes an initial viremia. The blood carries viruses to target organs, such as the brain, kidney, liver, or blood vessels. Each bunyavirus has a specific target, and different viruses cause encephalitis, fever, or rash. Most patients have mild symptoms, but symptomatic cases can be severe and fatal.

Hantaviruses are an exceptional type of bunyaviruses: They are not arboviruses but are transmitted to humans via inhalation of virions in dried mouse urine or feces. Two American strains[18] of hantaviruses infect the lungs only, causing a rapid, severe, and often fatal pneumonia called ***Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome** (han´tā-vī-rŭs; **HPS**). This syndrome was first recognized during an epidemic in the Four Corners[19] area of the United States in May 1993.

Bunyaviruses cause human diseases around the world. Each virus is typically found only in certain geographic areas. However, with modern travel patterns, viruses can be introduced into new areas relatively easily.

Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Bunyavirus Infections

Diseases caused by bunyavirus infections are indistinguishable from illnesses caused by several other viruses, so laboratory tests must be employed for diagnosis. ELISAs are used to detect viral antigens associated with Rift Valley fever, the LaCrosse strain of California encephalitis, and hemorrhagic fevers. Hantaviruses in the United States were first identified in patients' tissue using the *reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction*: Viral RNA was transcribed to DNA using retroviral reverse transcriptase, multiple copies of the DNA were generated through polymerase chain reaction, and the resulting strands were compared to known hantavirus sequences.

No specific treatment exists for most bunyavirus infections. Human disease caused by arboviruses is prevented by limiting contact with the vectors (the use of netting and insect repellents) and by reducing arthropod abundance (elimination of breeding sites and the use of insecticides). Rodent control is necessary to prevent *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome. A vaccine has been developed to protect humans and animals against Rift Valley fever, and ribavirin has proved effective in treating Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever.

Diseases of Arenaviruses

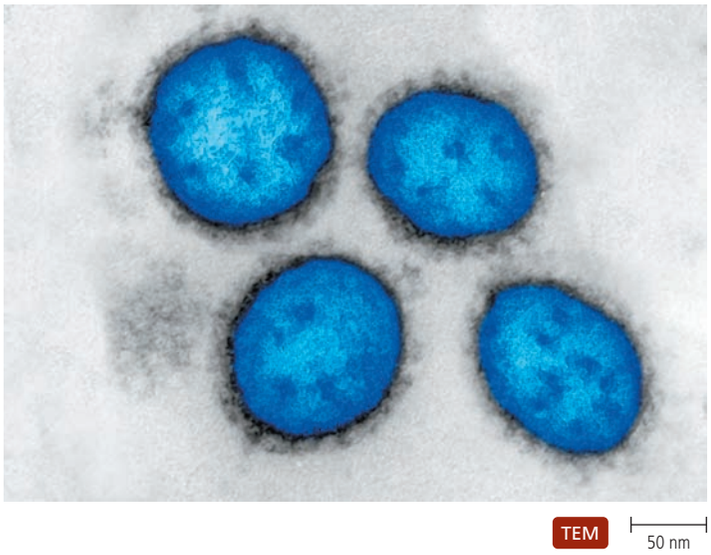
Learning Outcomes

25.34 Identify the distinguishing characteristics of arenaviruses.

25.35 Describe the unique feature of satellite viruses such as hepatitis D virus.

Arenaviruses[20] (ă-rē´nă-vī´rŭs-ĕz) are the final group of segmented, −ssRNA viruses we will consider. Their segmented genomes are each composed of two RNA molecules. Most

[18]Sin Nombre and Convict Creek strains.
[19]Four Corners is the geographic area where Arizona, Utah, New Mexico, and Colorado meet.
[20]From Greek *arenosa*, meaning "sandy."



▲ **Figure 25.40 The sandy appearance of arenaviruses.** The graininess results from the presence of numerous ribosomes within the capsid. Although the ribosomes are functional, the virions apparently do not use them.

arenaviruses contain ribosomes, which gives them a sandy appearance in electron micrographs **(Figure 25.40)**. The ribosomes are functional *in vitro*,[21] but there is no evidence that the viruses utilize them in nature.

Zoonoses

Arenaviruses cause zoonoses that include hemorrhagic fevers named for locales where they occur (**Lassa** in Africa, **Junin** in Argentina, **Sabiá** in Brazil, and **Machupo** in Bolivia) and **lymphocytic choriomeningitis** (lim-fō-sit´ik kō-rē-ō-men-in-jī´tis; **LCM**). Hemorrhagic fever viruses in the family *Arenaviridae* are endemic in rodent populations in Africa and South America. They cause severe bleeding under the skin and into internal organs. LCM virus has been found infecting pet hamsters in the United States. Contrary to its name, LCM is rarely associated with meningitis but more typically manifests with flulike symptoms.

Humans become infected through the inhalation of aerosols or consumption of contaminated food or from fomites. Lassa fever virus can be spread from human to human through contact with bodily fluids.

Diagnosis of arenaviral diseases is based on a combination of symptoms and immunoassay. Fluid samples from hemorrhagic patients are too dangerous for normal laboratories and instead must be processed in maximum biocontainment facilities. LCM samples can be handled with Biosafety Level 3 procedures (gown, mask, gloves, and labs with laminar flow hoods).

Supportive care is usually all that can be done for patients with arenavirus zoonoses, though ribavirin has shown some benefit in treating Lassa fever. Prevention of arenavirus disease involves rodent control and limiting contact with rodents, their droppings, and their dried urine.

Hepatitis D

Hepatitis D virus *(Deltavirus)*, which is also known as *delta agent*, is an arenavirus that causes hepatitis D and plays a role along with hepatitis B virus in triggering liver cancer. Delta agent is unusual in that it does not possess genes for the glycoproteins it requires to attach to liver cells. To become infective, it "steals" the necessary glycoprotein molecules from hepatitis B viruses that are simultaneously infecting the same liver cell. For this reason, hepatitis D virus is called a **satellite virus** because its replication cycle "revolves around" a helper virus.

Like hepatitis B virus, hepatitis D virus is spread in bodily fluids via sexual activity and the use of contaminated needles. Prevention involves the same precautions used to prevent infection with hepatitis B virus—abstinence, monogamy, condom usage, the use of sterile needles, and avoidance of accidental needlesticks. Since hepatitis D virus requires hepatitis B virus to become virulent, hepatitis B vaccine limits the spread of hepatitis D viruses.

Naked, Segmented dsRNA Viruses: *Reoviridae*

Learning Outcome

25.36 Discuss the meaning of the name "reovirus."

Reoviruses (rē´ō-vī´rŭs-ĕz) are respiratory and enteric viruses with naked icosahedral capsids. They are unique in being the only microbes, viral or cellular, with genomes composed of double-stranded RNA (dsRNA). Each virus contains 10 to 12 segments of dsRNA.

Reoviruses were originally orphan viruses—not initially associated with any diseases—though now many have been linked to specific conditions. The acronym *reo* is derived from *respiratory, enteric, orphan*. Reoviruses include *Rotavirus* and *Coltivirus*.

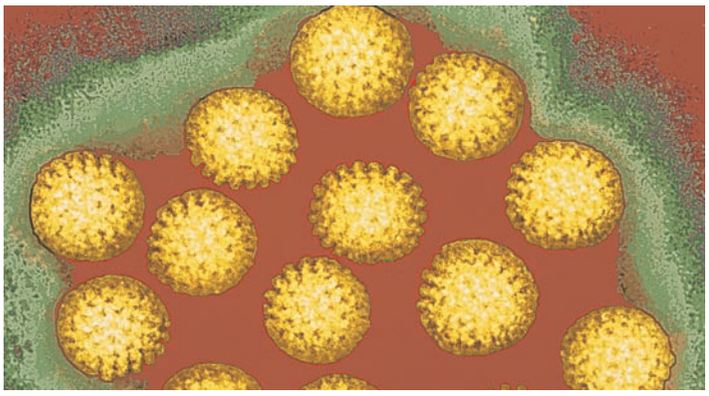
Rotaviruses

Learning Outcome

25.37 Describe the effects of rotavirus infections.

Rotavirus[22] (rō´tă-vī´rŭs) is an almost spherical reovirus with prominent glycoprotein spikes **(Figure 25.41)**. During replication, rotaviruses acquire and then lose an envelope. Even without envelopes, they function like enveloped viruses because glycoprotein spikes on their capsids act as attachment molecules that trigger endocytosis, a process common to enveloped viruses. Rotaviruses infect almost all children everywhere in the first few years of life via the fecal-oral route.

[21] From Latin *in*, meaning "within," and *vitreus*, meaning "glassware;" in other words "in the laboratory."
[22] From Latin *rota*, meaning "wheel."



▲ **Figure 25.41** **Rotaviruses.** The wheel-like appearance of rotaviruses, from which they get their name.

Rotaviruses are the most common cause of infantile gastroenteritis and account annually in the United States for about 55,000 cases of diarrhea in children requiring hospitalization as a result of fluid and electrolyte loss. In developing countries, rotaviruses account for an estimated 600,000 deaths annually from uncontrolled diarrhea **(Figure 25.42)**. Infected children may pass as many as 100 trillion virions per gram of stool.

Rotavirus infection is self-limiting, and treatment involves supportive care, such as replacement of lost water and electrolytes. Prevention of infection involves good personal hygiene, proper sewage treatment, and vaccination. The vaccine approved for use in the United States prevents 75% of rotavirus cases and reduces hospitalizations and deaths by more than 96%.

Coltiviruses

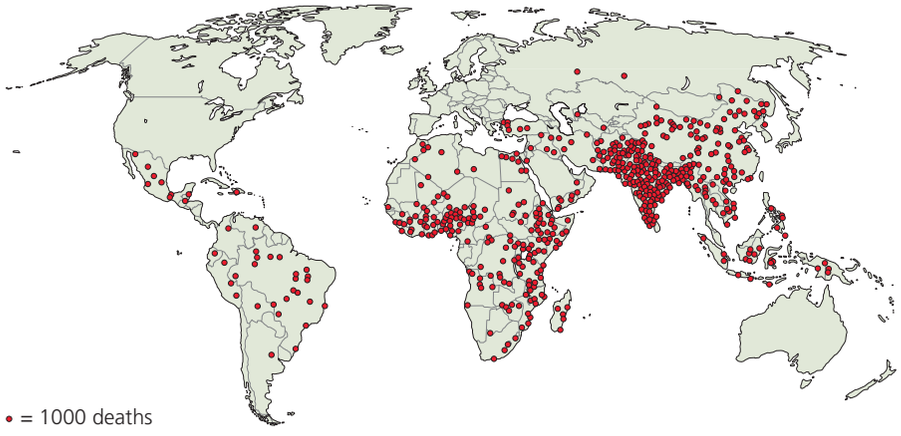
Learning Outcome

25.38 Discuss the most common disease caused by a coltivirus.

Coltivirus (kol´tē-vī´rŭs) is an arbovirus that causes a zoonosis, **Colorado tick fever** (see Table 25.4 on p. 726), for which these viruses are named. Colorado tick fever is usually a mild disease involving fever and chills, though severe cases can manifest as headache, photophobia, myalgia, conjunctivitis, rash, and, in children, hemorrhaging. Colorado tick fever should not be confused with Rocky Mountain spotted fever, a tickborne bacterial disease (discussed in Chapter 21). Colorado tick fever is self-limiting, but red blood cells in all stages of development retain the virus for some time. Patients should not donate blood for several months after recovery.

Health care providers diagnose Colorado tick fever by detecting antigens in the blood using ELISA or other immunoassays. As with many viral diseases, there is no specific treatment. Prevention involves limiting contact with infected ticks.

RNA viruses are a heterogeneous group of virions capable of causing diseases of varying severity, including several life-threatening ones. Table 25.8 on p. 750 summarizes the physical characteristics of most RNA viruses of humans as well as the diseases they cause. As we have seen, RNA viruses pose significant problems for health care personnel with respect to diagnosis, treatment, and prevention, and some of these viruses also pose threats to health care workers who must handle them. Emerging RNA viruses are of particular concern as people move deeper into rain forests and come into contact with new viral agents, but such viruses have also provided the impetus for expanded research into the fields of immunization and treatment of viral diseases.



◀ **Figure 25.42** **Deaths from rotaviral diarrhea (2008).** Mortality is most common in developing countries.

TABLE 25.8 Taxonomy and Characteristics of Human RNA Viruses

Family	Strand Type	Enveloped or Naked	Capsid Symmetry	Size (nm)	Representative Genera (Diseases)
Picornaviridae	Single, positive	Naked	Icosahedral	22–30	*Enterovirus* (polio) *Rhinovirus* (common cold) *Hepatovirus* (hepatitis A)
Caliciviridae	Single, positive	Naked	Icosahedral	35–40	*Norovirus* (acute gastroenteritis)
Hepeviridae	Single, positive	Naked	Icosahedral	27–34	*Hepevirus* (hepatitis E)
Astroviridae	Single, positive	Naked	Icosahedral	30	*Astrovirus* (gastroenteritis)
Togaviridae	Single, positive	Enveloped	Icosahedral	40–75	*Alphavirus* (encephalitis) *Rubivirus* (rubella)
Flaviviridae	Single, positive	Enveloped	Icosahedral	37–50	*Flavivirus* (yellow fever) *Hepacivirus* (hepatitis C)
Coronaviridae	Single, positive	Enveloped	Helical	80–160	*Coronavirus* (common cold, severe acute respiratory syndrome)
Retroviridae	Single, positive, segmented	Enveloped	Icosahedral	80–146	*Deltaretrovirus* (leukemia) *Lentivirus* (AIDS)
Paramyxoviridae	Single, negative	Enveloped	Helical	125–250	*Paramyxovirus* (colds, respiratory infections) *Pneumovirus* (respiratory syncytial disease, rarely croup or common cold) *Morbillivirus* (measles) *Rubulavirus* (mumps)
Rhabdoviridae	Single, negative	Enveloped	Helical	75 × 130–240	*Lyssavirus* (rabies)
Filoviridae	Single, negative	Enveloped	Helical	790–970	*Ebolavirus* (Ebola hemorrhagic fever) *Marburgvirus* (Marburg hemorrhagic fever)
Orthomyxoviridae	Single, negative, segmented	Enveloped	Helical	80–120	*Influenzavirus* (flu, rarely croup)
Bunyaviridae	Single, negative, segmented	Enveloped	Helical	90–100	*Bunyavirus* (encephalitis) *Hantavirus* (pneumonia)
Arenaviridae	Single, negative, segmented	Enveloped	Helical	50–300	*Lassavirus* (hemorrhagic fever) *Deltavirus* (hepatitis D)
Reoviridae	Double, segmented	Naked	Icosahedral	78–80	*Rotavirus* (diarrhea) *Coltivirus* (Colorado tick fever)

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Naked, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae,* and *Hepeviridae* (pp. 716–721)

1. RNA viruses and viroids are the only infective agents that use RNA molecules as their genetic material.
2. **Picornaviruses** are the smallest of animal viruses and include the **rhinoviruses** and **enteroviruses.** Rhinoviruses are extremely infective in the upper respiratory tract and cause most "common" colds. Enteroviruses, which are mostly cytolytic picornaviruses that infect via the fecal-oral route, include poliovirus, coxsackievirus, and echovirus.
3. **Poliomyelitis,** or **polio,** is a disease of varied degrees of severity from asymptomatic infections to **bulbar poliomyelitis,** to post-polio syndrome occurring 30 to 40 years after infection. Eradication of polio, due to effective immunization, is imminent.
4. Jonas Salk developed **inactivated polio vaccine (IPV)** in 1955. It was replaced by live **oral polio vaccine (OPV),** which was developed by Albert Sabin in 1961. Now, health professionals in many countries have switched back to IPV because OPV, which is a live, attenuated vaccine, can revert to a disease-causing form.
5. **Coxsackie A virus** causes lesions in the mouth and throat, respiratory infections, hand-foot-and-mouth disease, viral meningitis, and acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis. **Coxsackie B virus** causes myocarditis and pericardial infections, which may be fatal in newborns. In addition, coxsackie B viruses cause pleurodynia and viral meningitis and may be a cause of diabetes mellitus.
6. So-called orphan viruses are initially unassociated with a specific disease.
7. **Echoviruses** (enteric cytopathic human orphan viruses) cause viral meningitis and colds.
8. **Hepatitis A virus** is a noncytolytic picornavirus that infects liver cells but is rarely fatal.
9. **Caliciviruses** and **astroviruses** are small viruses that enter through the digestive system, multiply in the cells of the intestinal tract and cause gastroenteritis and diarrhea. **Noroviruses** are representative caliciviruses.
10. **Hepatitis E virus** causes **hepatitis E,** which is fatal to about 20% of infected, pregnant women.

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses: *Togaviridae, Flaviviridae,* and *Coronaviridae* (pp. 721–727)

1. Flaviviruses and most togaviruses are **arboviruses** (viruses transmitted by arthropods) and are enveloped, icosahedral, positive, ssRNA viruses that cause flulike symptoms, encephalitis, dengue, and yellow fever.
2. Various viruses, most transmitted via mosquito vectors, cause **zoonoses**—diseases of animals that are spread to humans. Those caused by togaviruses are **Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), Western equine encephalitis (WEE),** and **Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE).** A flavivirus causes West Nile encephalitis. All these may be fatal in humans.
3. **Dengue** and **dengue hemorrhagic fever** are endemic diseases in South America caused by flaviviruses and carried by the *Aedes* mosquito.
4. **Yellow fever,** which is contracted through the bite of a mosquito carrying a flavivirus, results in internal hemorrhaging and damage to liver, kidneys, and heart.
5. *Rubivirus,* a togavirus that is not transmitted by an arthropod vector, causes **rubella,** commonly known as "German measles" or "three-day measles." It can cause serious birth defects if the virus crosses the placenta into a fetus.
6. **Hepatitis C virus (HCV),** caused by a flavivirus and transmitted via the fecal-oral route, is a disease that often results in serious liver damage.
7. **Coronaviruses** have a corona-like envelope and cause colds as well as gastroenteritis in children. A newly discovered coronavirus causes **severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS).**

Enveloped, Positive ssRNA Viruses with Reverse Transcriptase: *Retroviridae* (pp. 728–735)

1. **Retroviruses** have **reverse transcriptase** and **integrase** enzymes. The first allows retroviruses to make dsDNA from RNA templates; the latter allows them to integrate into a host cell's chromosomes.
2. **Human T-lymphotropic viruses** are oncogenic retroviruses associated with cancer of lymphocytes. HTLV-1 causes adult acute T-cell lymphocytic leukemia; HTLV-2 causes hairy cell leukemia. Sexual intercourse, blood transfusion, and contaminated needles transmit them.
3. **Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)** is a condition defined by the presence of antibodies against **HIV** in conjunction with certain opportunistic infections or by HIV and a CD4 count below 200/μL of blood. A **syndrome** is a complex of signs and symptoms with a common cause.
4. **Human immunodeficiency viruses (HIV-1** or **HIV-2)** destroy the immune system. HIV is characterized by glycoproteins such as **gp120** and **gp41,** which enable attachment and have significant antigenic variability. The destruction of the immune system results in vulnerability to any infection.
5. HIV converts its genome into double-stranded DNA, which is integrated permanently into the host DNA—a condition called **latency**.
6. HIV affects helper T cells, macrophages, and dendritic cells. Using gp120, HIV fuses to a cell, uncoats, enters the cell, and transcribes dsDNA to become a provirus, which inserts into a cellular chromosome. After HIV is replicated and released, an internal viral enzyme, **protease,** cleaves a polypeptide, allowing

HIV to assemble and become virulent. HIV is spread primarily through contact with an infected individual's secretions or blood.

7. **Antiretroviral therapy (ART)** is a combination of antiviral drugs for the treatment of AIDS.

Enveloped, Unsegmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Paramyxoviridae, Rhabdoviridae,* and *Filoviridae* (pp. 735–742)

1. Paramyxoviruses can cause infected cells to fuse together into giant, multinucleate **syncytia**. One virus causes **measles** ("rubeola" or "red measles"), recognized by **Koplik's spots** in the mouth followed by lesions on the head and trunk. Complications of measles include **subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE),** a progressive fatal disease of the central nervous system. Immunization is effective and eradication is possible.
2. **Parainfluenza** viruses usually cause mild coldlike diseases, including **croup.** There is no effective vaccine.
3. **Mumps** virus is a paramyxovirus that causes painfully enlarged parotid glands. Mumps vaccine is very effective, and eradication is possible.
4. **Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)** is a paramyxovirus that affects the lungs and can be fatal in infants and young children, while in older children and adults the symptoms are similar to those of a cold.
5. **Rabies** is caused by a rhabdovirus—a bullet-shaped virus with glycoprotein spikes—that attaches to muscle cells, replicates, moves into nerve cells, and eventually causes brain degeneration. Infection usually results from bites by infected mammals. Symptoms include pain in swallowing (which results in **hydrophobia**), seizures, paralysis, and death. Rabies may be identified by aggregates of virions called **Negri bodies** in the brain of an affected mammal. Human and animal vaccines are effective.
6. **Marburg virus** and **Ebola virus** are filamentous viruses that cause **hemorrhagic fever**. There is no known treatment or prevention for hemorrhagic fever, though a vaccine has been effective in preventing disease in monkeys.

Enveloped, Segmented, Negative ssRNA Viruses: *Orthomyxoviridae, Bunyaviridae,* and *Arenaviridae* (pp. 742–748)

1. A **segmented genome** consists of more than one molecule of nucleic acid. The term usually refers to viruses, as the genomes of most of the known viral families are not segmented.
2. **Influenza (flu)** is caused by type A or B orthomyxoviruses, which enter lung cells by means of **hemagglutinin (HA)** and **neuraminidase (NA)** glycoprotein spikes. Gene mutations for HA and NA account for continual formation of new variants of flu viruses. **Antigenic drift** occurs every two or three years when a single strain mutates within a local population. **Antigenic shift** of influenza A virus occurs about every 10 years and results in reassortment of genomes from different strains of animal and human viruses infecting a common cell. Vaccines for the flu in any given flu season are prepared against newly identified variants.
3. **Bunyaviruses,** with three –ssRNA molecules as a genome, are zoonotic pathogens. They are usually arboviruses. Each bunyavirus has a specific target and may cause encephalitis, fever, rash, or death.
4. **Hantaviruses** are bunyaviruses that are transmitted to humans via inhalation of virions in dried mouse urine. They cause ***Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome.**
5. **Arenaviruses** are segmented –ssRNA viruses with apparently nonfunctional ribosomes. They cause **Lassa, Junin,** and **Machupo** hemorrhagic fevers; **lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCM);** and hepatitis D.
6. **Hepatitis D virus,** also known as delta agent, is a **satellite virus;** that is, it requires proteins coded by another virus (in this case hepatitis B virus) to complete its replication cycle.

Naked, Segmented, dsRNA Viruses: *Reoviridae* (pp. 748–749)

1. The **reoviruses** are unique in having double-stranded RNA as a genome. They include ***Rotavirus,*** which has glycoprotein spikes for attachment and causes potentially fatal infantile gastroenteritis, and *Coltivirus,* which causes **Colorado tick fever.**

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except for Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. A segmented genome is one that _____.
   a. has more than one strand of nucleic acid
   b. has double-stranded RNA
   c. has both RNA and DNA strands
   d. has both +ssRNA and –ssRNA molecules
2. What do viruses in the families *Picornaviridae, Caliciviridae, Astroviridae, Coronaviridae, Togaviridae, Flaviviridae,* and *Retroviridae* have in common?
   a. They are arboviruses.
   b. They are nonpathogenic.
   c. They have positive single-stranded RNA genomes.
   d. They have negative single-stranded RNA genomes.
3. The smallest animal viruses are in the family _____.
   a. *Caliciviridae*
   b. *Astroviridae*
   c. *Togaviridae*
   d. *Picornaviridae*
4. Which of the following viruses cause most colds?
   a. rhinoviruses
   b. parainfluenza viruses
   c. pneumoviruses
   d. bunyaviruses
5. Arboviruses are _____.
   a. zoonotic pathogens
   b. deactivated viruses used in vaccines
   c. viruses that are transmitted to humans via the bite of an arthropod
   d. found in arbors

6. Negri bodies are associated with which of the following?
   a. Marburg virus
   b. hantavirus
   c. coltivirus
   d. rabies virus

7. If mosquitoes were eradicated from an area, which of the following diseases would be most affected?
   a. mumps
   b. *hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome
   c. hepatitis E
   d. breakbone fever

8. Koplik's spots are oral lesions associated with _____.
   a. mumps
   b. measles
   c. flu
   d. colds

9. Which of the following is an accurate statement concerning zoonoses?
   a. They are animal diseases that spread to humans.
   b. They are diseases specifically transmitted by mosquitoes and ticks.
   c. They are mucus-borne viruses, which are transmitted in the droplets of moisture in a sneeze or cough.
   d. They are diseases that can be transmitted from humans to an animal population.

10. A horror movie portrays victims of biological warfare with uncontrolled bleeding from the eyes, mouth, nose, ears, and anus. What actual virus causes these symptoms?
    a. Ebola virus
    b. bunyavirus
    c. hantavirus
    d. human immunodeficiency virus

11. Reoviruses, such as rotaviruses and coltiviruses, are unique in _____.
    a. being naked
    b. having double-stranded RNA
    c. being both arboviruses and zoonotic
    d. having protein spikes

Matching

Match the diseases on the left with the infecting virus on the right.

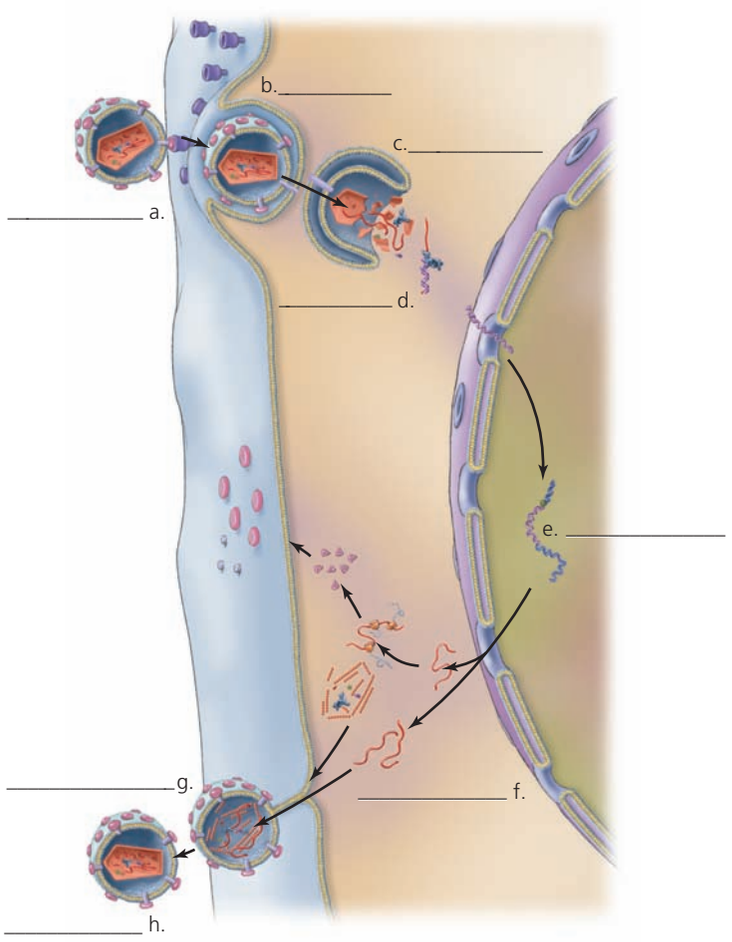
____ Myocarditis	A. Rhabdoviridae
____ Colorado tick fever	B. Paramyxoviridae
____ Rabies	C. Reoviridae
____ Influenza	D. Coronaviridae
____ Dengue fever	E. Togaviridae
____ German measles	F. Flaviviridae
____ Acute gastroenteritis	G. Orthomyxoviridae
____ Ebola virus	H. Orphan virus
____ RSV	I. Caliciviridae
____ Western equine encephalitis	J. Filoviridae
____ No known disease	K. Picornaviridae

True/False

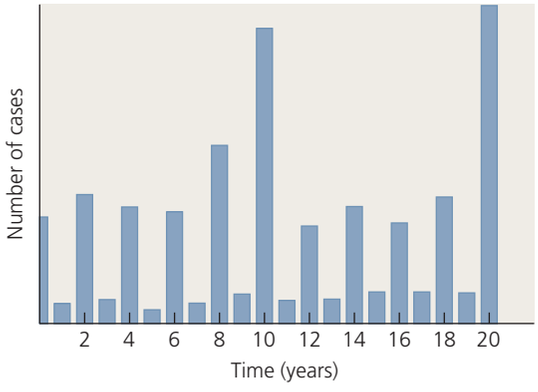
1. _____ A single virion is sufficient to cause a cold.
2. _____ All infections of polio are crippling.
3. _____ Postpolio syndrome is due to latent polioviruses that become active 30 to 40 years after the initial infection.
4. _____ Because the oral polio vaccine contains live attenuated viruses, mutations of these viruses can cause polio.
5. _____ A typical host for a togavirus is a horse.

Visualize It!

1. Label the steps in retroviral replication shown for HIV.



2. Label the flu epidemics. How can you best explain the biennial fluctuation in the number of cases? How can you explain the epidemics?



Short Answer

1. Why are humans considered "dead-end" hosts for many arboviruses?
2. Young Luis has skin lesions. His mother knows from microbiology class that five childhood diseases can produce spots. Name those five diseases and the viruses that cause each. List some questions to ask to determine which of these viruses Luis has.
3. The patient in room 519 exhibits yellowing skin and eyes, and it is suspected among the nursing staff that the diagnosis will be some kind of viral hepatitis. Make a chart of five kinds of hepatitis mentioned in this chapter, the infecting pathogen, how the patient might have become infected, and the relative degree of seriousness.
4. Why is AIDS more accurately termed a "syndrome" instead of a "disease"?
5. Consider the viruses you studied in this chapter. Which three would you rank as the deadliest?
6. Support or refute the following statement: "Rubeola is common and of little concern as a childhood disease."
7. Translate the following identification label on a vial of influenza virus: B/Kuwait/6/10 (H1N3).
8. Polio and smallpox have been eliminated as natural threats to human health in the United States. (Some risk from bioterrorism remains.) You have considered the features of these diseases that allowed them to be eliminated. From your studies of other viruses, what other viral diseases are candidates for elimination? Why hasn't AIDS been eliminated?
9. Several laboratory tests are used to identify viruses. From your study of this chapter alone, which tests would you surmise are the most common?
10. Why are there more cases of West Nile virus encephalitis in summer than in winter of every year?
11. Compare influenzavirus A 2009 (H1N1) to the 1918–1919 pandemic influenzavirus.

Critical Thinking

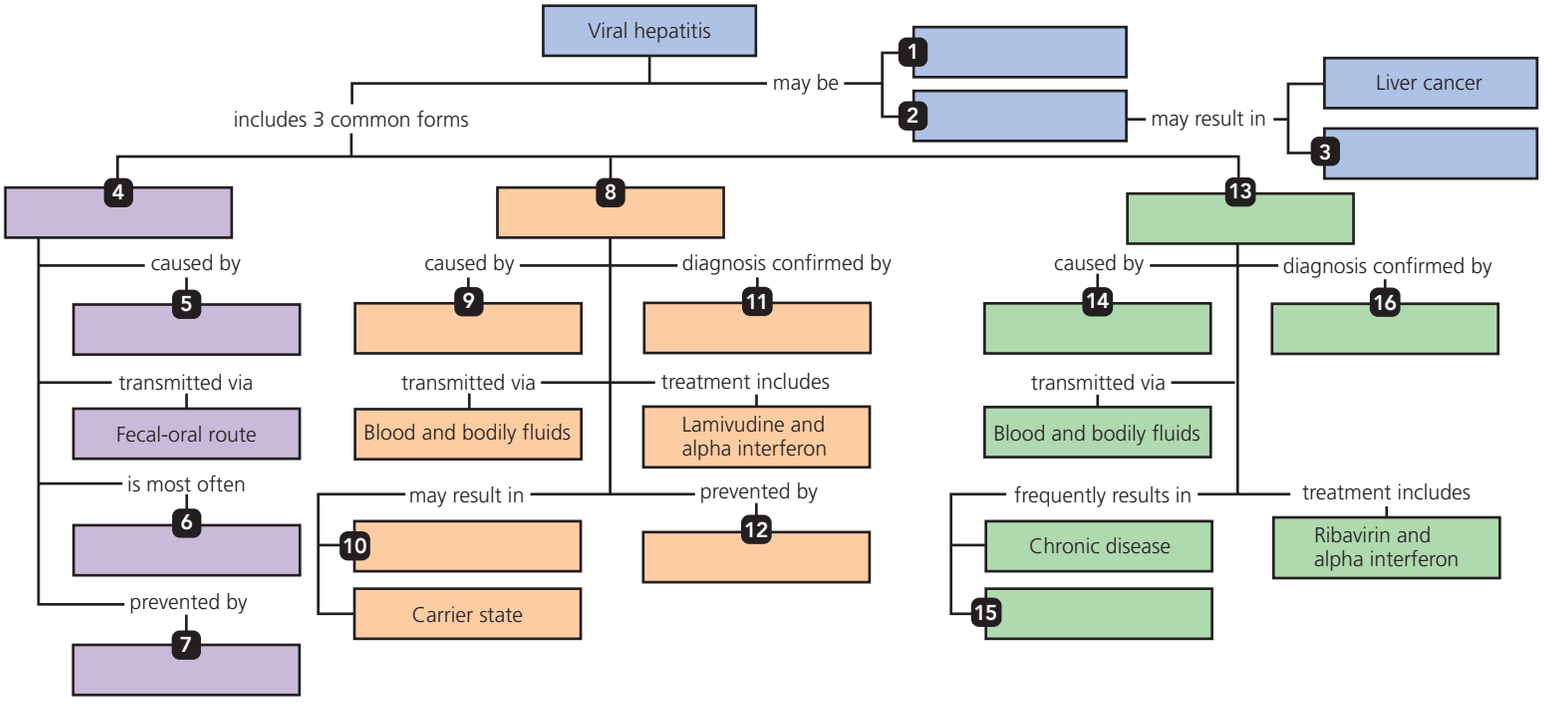
1. A dichotomous key uses a series of questions, each with only two possible answers, to guide the user to the identification of an item (see p. 119). Design a key for the RNA viruses discussed in this chapter.
2. A 20-year-old man is brought to a South Carolina hospital's emergency room suffering from seizures, disorientation, hallucinations, and an inordinate fear of water. His family members report that he had suffered with fever and headache for several days. The patient had been bitten by a dog approximately 12 days before admission. What disease does the patient have? Will a vaccine be an effective treatment? If the dog is found to be disease free, what wild animals are the likely source of infection in South Carolina? What treatment should the patient's family, coworkers, friends, and caregivers receive?
3. How did coltiviruses get their name?
4. Retroviruses such as HIV use RNA as a primer for DNA synthesis. Why is a primer necessary?
5. Alligator farms have reported significant loss of animals to West Nile virus. Since alligator hide is generally too thick for mosquitoes to feed, how can you explain the alligators' infections?
6. Reverse transcriptase is notoriously sloppy in making DNA copies from ssRNA templates. How do retroviruses survive when their genomes are subject to such shoddy replication?

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes viral hepatitis. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Acute
Blood test for antibodies (IgM)
Carrier state
Chronic
Chronic disease
Cirrhosis of the liver
Hepatitis A
Hepatitis A vaccine
Hepatitis A virus (HAV)
Hepatitis B
Hepatitis B vaccine
Hepatitis B virus (HBV)
Hepatitis C
Hepatitis C virus (HCV)
Mild
PCR or blood test for antibodies



26 Applied and Environmental Microbiology

To most of us, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is familiar as the **yeast** that makes bread rise and that produces alcoholic beverages, and these are two important roles of this microorganism in applied **microbiology**.

However, for millions of cancer sufferers, *Saccharomyces* may become a source of a lifesaving drug—**taxol**. Taxol is made by yew trees (genus *Taxus*), but there are not enough trees producing this anticancer drug to provide it to all patients who need it. Scientists using recombinant DNA technology are attempting to insert **genes** from *Taxus* into *Saccharomyces* so that the yeast is able to make the drug.

This chapter examines the astounding variety of ways we use microbes today, from food production to **medical treatments** to waste management to defense against bioterrorism—all topics in the fields of applied and environmental microbiology.

Take the pre-test for this chapter online. Visit the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

The yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* not only ferments sugar into alcohol and makes bread rise but also can be genetically modified to produce other useful products.

The metabolic activities of microorganisms shape much of our environment, and microbial reactions are essential to life on Earth. Bacteria and fungi in particular are capable of many metabolic processes that are useful to humans. In this chapter we examine some of the leading areas of applied microbiology as well as topics in the field of environmental microbiology. (Chapter 8 discusses some aspects of recombinant DNA technology to give organisms enhanced or new functions to make them more valuable in industry, agriculture, or medicine.)

Applied microbiology, the commercial use of microorganisms, encompasses two distinct fields: **food microbiology,** which includes the use of microorganisms in food production and the prevention of food spoilage and food-related illnesses, and **industrial microbiology,** which involves both the application of microbes to industrial manufacturing processes and solutions to environmental, health, and agricultural problems. **Environmental microbiology** explores where microorganisms are found in nature and how their activities affect other organisms (including humans) and the environment itself. We begin by considering food microbiology.

Food Microbiology

Microorganisms are involved in producing many of our favorite foods and beverages, from bread to wine to yogurt. Indeed, fermented foods are among some of the oldest foods known and are culturally very diverse. The characteristic flavors, aromas, and consistencies of such foods result from the presence of acids or sugars made by microbes during fermentation. Besides conferring taste and aroma, microbial metabolism also acts as a preservative, destroys many pathogenic microbes and toxins, and, in some cases, adds nutritional value in the form of vitamins or other nutrients. In the following sections, we explore how our knowledge of microbial growth and metabolism enables us to use microbes in food production and to control microbial activity that results in food spoilage.

The Roles of Microorganisms in Food Production

Learning Outcome

26.1 Describe how microbial metabolism can be manipulated for food production.

Bread

Saccharomyces cerevisiae (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz se-ri-vis´ē-ī) metabolizes sugars to leaven[1] bread. Bakers add the yeast to flour, salt, and other ingredients to make dough, which is kneaded to introduce oxygen. The dough rises when metabolic reactions release CO_2, producing expanding pockets within the dough. Ethanol produced by fermentation evaporates during baking. Sourdough bread is made using starter cultures consisting of yeast and lactic acid bacteria. Lactic acid produced by the bacteria gives sourdough its characteristic taste.

Biochemists use the word *fermentation* to refer to the partial oxidation of sugars to release energy using organic molecules as electron acceptors (see Chapter 5). In food microbiology, however, **fermentation** may refer to any desirable changes that occur to a food or beverage as a result of microbial growth. In contrast, **spoilage** denotes unwanted change to a food that occurs from undesirable metabolic reactions, the growth of pathogens, or the presence of unwanted microorganisms.

Fermentative microbes naturally occur on grains, fruits, and vegetables. In antiquity, people relied on these naturally occurring microbes to produce fermented foods and drinks. However, the same microbes are not always present on a food from harvest to harvest, yielding varying results. Most modern commercial food and beverage production relies on **starter cultures** composed of known microorganisms that perform specific fermentations consistently. In addition to an initial starter culture, *secondary cultures* may be added to further modify the flavor or aroma of foods. For example, the same starter culture is used to initiate formation of both Swiss cheese and blue cheese; the two cheeses differ because different secondary cultures are used in their production.

Fermented Vegetables

People around the world ferment many types of vegetables. Most of these vegetable products are the result of the actions of lactic acid bacteria, such as *Streptococcus* (strep-tō-kok´ŭs), *Leuconostoc* (loo´kō-nos-tŏk), *Lactobacillus* (lak´tō-bă-sil´ŭs), or *Lactococcus* (lak-tō-kok´us), which specifically produce lactic acid during fermentation. Lactic acid acidifies the food and produces a "sour" flavor.

Food products derived from the fermentation of cabbage include kimchi (kim-chē´) from Korea and sauerkraut. Soy sauce is made by the fermentation of soybeans and wheat by lactobacilli, yeast *(S. cerevisiae),* and the fungus *Aspergillus oryzae* (as-per-jil´ŭs o´ri-zī). Chocolate is derived from the fermentation of cacao seeds. Coffee production relies on natural fermentation to release the coffee bean from the outer layers of the coffee berry so that the bean can then be dried and roasted.

Pickles are another common fermented food. While people often equate "pickles" with cucumbers, other foods, such as beets and eggs, can also be pickled. *Pickling* refers to the process of preserving or flavoring foods with brine (saturated salt water) or acid. Microbial fermentation can be the source of the acid—as it is with dill pickles. Various spices can be added to the pickling solution to enhance taste. Because pickled foods are acidic, few pathogenic microorganisms survive, making pickling an excellent preservation method.

Fermented foods are not made for human consumption alone. *Silage,* a product used as animal feed on many farms, is made by the natural fermentation of potatoes, corn, grass, grain stalks, or other types of green foliage. The vegetation is cut up and stored in silos that are closed to air. Under such moist, anaerobic conditions, the vegetation in the silos ferments, producing many organic compounds that make the silage aromatic

[1] From Latin *levare*, meaning to "raise."

and tasty to livestock and more easily digested by them. Some farmers produce silage from baled hay and grasses wrapped in plastic.

Fermented Meat Products

Unless dried, cured, smoked, or fermented in some way, meat has a tendency to spoil rapidly. The combination of fermentation and drying or smoking has been used for centuries to preserve meats, particularly pork and beef. Dry sausages, such as salami and pepperoni, are made by grinding meat, mixing in various spices and starter cultures, allowing the mixture to ferment in the cold, and then stuffing it into casings. Fermented fish—common in Asian countries—are prepared by grinding fish in brine. Naturally occurring microbes ferment the mixture. The solids are removed and pressed to form a fish paste, while the liquid portion is drained off and mixed with flavoring agents to form fish sauce.

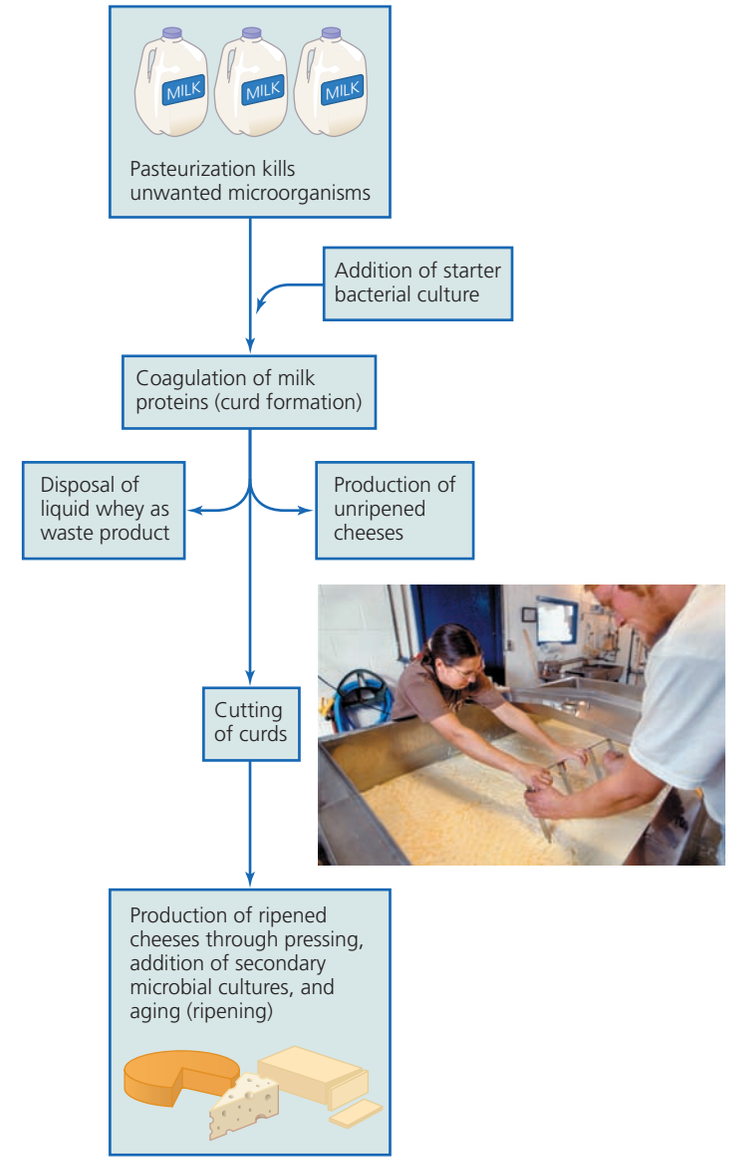
Fermented Dairy Products

Milk fermentation relies, for the most part, on the activities of lactic acid bacteria. Milk in an udder is sterile, but because milking introduces microorganisms, we pasteurize "raw" milk. The metabolic products of starter cultures give fermented milk products their characteristic textures and aromas.

Buttermilk is made from fat-free milk (skim milk) by adding a starter culture of *Lactococcus lactis* (lak´tis) subspecies *cremoris* (kre-mōr´is) and *Leuconostoc citrovorum* (sit-rō-vō´rum). Yogurt production utilizes starter cultures of *Streptococcus thermophilus* (ther-mo´fil-us) and *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* (bul-gā´ri-kŭs). Yogurt manufacturers mix pasteurized milk, milk solids, sweeteners, and other ingredients to a uniform consistency and then add the starter culture. They ferment the mix at 43°C and then cool it to stop microbial activity. They may add flavors prior to packaging.

Cheeses can be hard or soft and mild or sharp. Regardless of the end product, the cheese-making process typically begins with pasteurized milk **(Figure 26.1)**. A pound of cheese requires about 5 gallons of milk. Cultures of *Lactococcus lactis* coagulate protein in milk to form *curds* (solids) and *whey* (liquids). For cheeses sold as soon as they are made (called *unripened cheeses*, such as cottage cheese), the curd is removed, cut into small pieces, and packaged. Alternatively, the curdling process can be accelerated by the addition of the enzyme *rennin*, a type of protease (protein-digesting enzyme).

Other cheeses (so-called ripened cheeses) are aged until they have the desired texture or taste. Hard cheeses, such as Parmesan and cheddar, are pressed such that little water remains, while soft cheeses retain enough moisture to make them spreadable. Once the curds are pressed, the cheese is aged for months to years while continued microbial activity imparts characteristic smells and tastes. Cheese producers utilize numerous different microorganisms and their enzymes along with various ripening regimens and culture conditions to make numerous, distinct types of cheeses.



▲ Figure 26.1 The cheese-making process. The commercial production of all cheeses begins with the pasteurization of milk; the wide variety of cheeses available on the market results from the nature of subsequent processing steps. *Why do cheeses that are aged longer have more acidic, "sharper" tastes?*

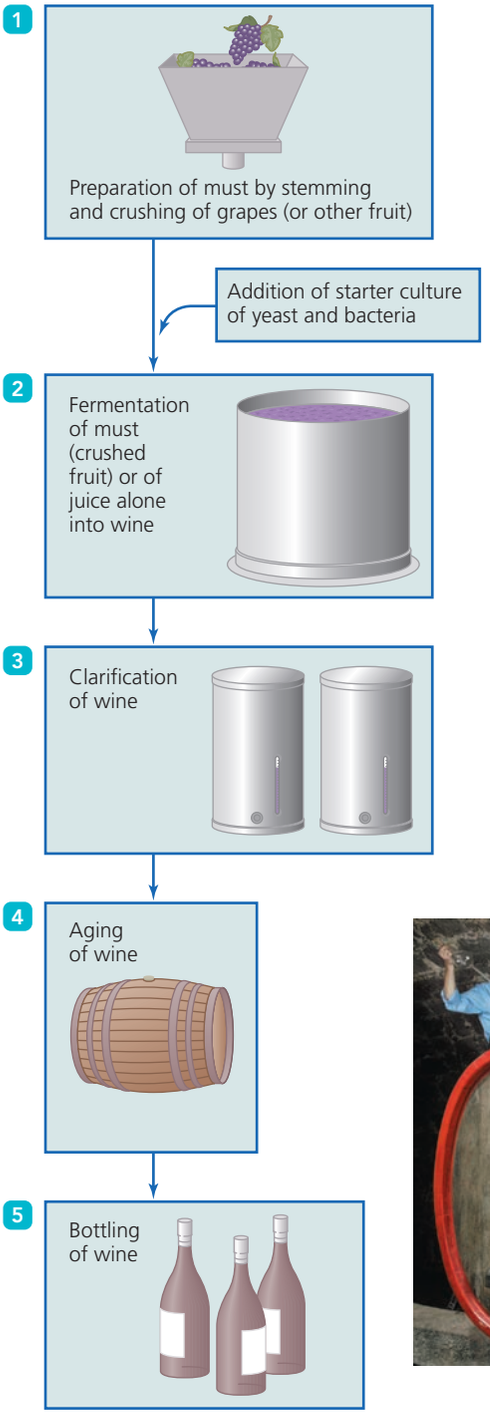
Figure 26.1 *Fermentation during aging results in continued production of acid; the longer the cheese is aged, the more acid produced and the "sharper" the taste.*

CRITICAL THINKING

Even though microbes are naturally present in raw milk, raw milk is not generally used for the production of cheeses. Why not?

Products of Alcoholic Fermentation

Alcoholic fermentation is the process by which various microorganisms convert simple sugars such as glucose into ethanol (drinking alcohol) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). These two products



▲ **Figure 26.2 The wine-making process.** Red wine is produced by fermenting must (fruit solids and juice) from dark grape varieties, whereas white wine results from the fermentation of juice alone from either dark or light grape varieties.

of fermentation take on different importance for different foods and beverages. As is the case for the production of fermented dairy products, manufacturers use specific starter cultures in the large-scale commercial applications of alcohol fermentation. In the next sections we consider the role of fermentation in the production of wine, spirits, beer, sake, and vinegar.

Wine and Spirits Generally, wine production proceeds as follows **(Figure 26.2)**:

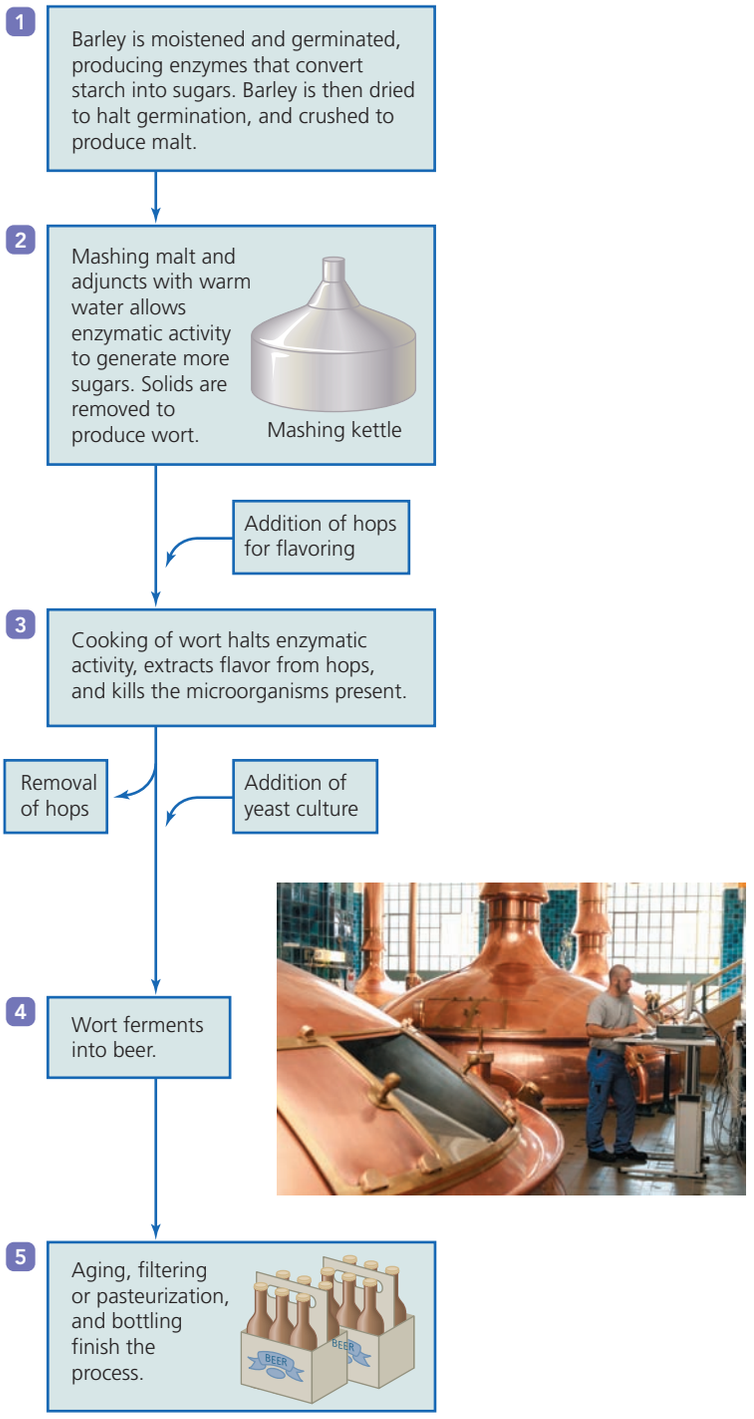
1. *Preparation of must.* Winemakers crush the fruit and remove the stems to form *must* (fruit solids and juices). They make red wines from the entire must of dark grapes, whereas they make white wines using only the juice of either dark or light grapes. Weather conditions and soil composition affect the sugar content of fruit, which in turn greatly affects the quality of the wine.
2. *Fermentation.* A thin film of bacteria and yeast naturally covers grapes and other fruit, and in some wineries these natural microbes produce the wine. However, in most commercial operations, vintners add sulfur dioxide (SO_2) to retard growth of naturally occurring bacteria and then add starter cultures of yeast and bacteria to ensure that wine of a consistent quality is generated from year to year. *Saccharomyces* ferments sugar in fruit juice to alcohol to make wine. *Leuconostoc* removes acids naturally present in grapes.
3. *Clarification.* Filtration or settling removes solids—a process called clarification.
4. *Aging.* Wine is aged in wooden barrels. Continued yeast metabolism and the leaching of compounds from the wood add taste and aroma.
5. *Bottling.* The wine is then bottled and distributed.

Dry wines are those in which all the sugar has fermented, whereas sweet or dessert wines retain some sugar. Most table wines have a final alcohol content of 10% to 12%, but fortified wines have an alcohol content of about 20% because distilled spirits (discussed next) are added. Sparkling wine is produced by the addition of sugar and a second fermentation that produces CO_2 inside the bottle.

Distilled spirits are made in a process similar to wine making in that *Saccharomyces* ferments fruits, grains, or vegetables. The difference is that during the aging process, the alcohol is concentrated by distillation. In this process, the liquid is heated to drive off the alcohol, which is then condensed and added back. The net result is an increase in the alcohol content (100-proof spirits are 50% alcohol). Brandies are made from fruit juices, whiskeys are made from cereal grains, and vodka is often made from potatoes.

Beer and Sake Beer is made from barley in the following steps **(Figure 26.3)**:

1. *Malting.* Barley is moistened and germinated, a process that produces catabolic enzymes, which convert starch into sugars, primarily maltose. Drying halts germination, and the barley is crushed to produce *malt*.
2. *Mashing.* Malt and additional sources of carbohydrate called adjuncts (such as starch, sugar, rice, sorghum, or corn) are combined with warm water, allowing enzymes released during malting to generate more sugars. The sugary liquid is called *wort*.
3. *Preparation for fermentation.* The brewer removes the spent grain from the wort and adds *hops*—the dried



▲ Figure 26.3 The beer-brewing process. The type of beer produced (ale, lager) is determined largely by the type of yeast used (top fermenting or bottom fermenting, respectively).

flower-bearing parts of the vinelike hops plant. The wort mixture is boiled to halt enzymatic activity, extract flavors from the hops, kill most microorganisms, and concentrate the mixture.

4 *Fermentation.* A starter culture of *Saccharomyces* is added to the wort. Most beers—called lagers—are made with the bottom-fermenting yeast *S. carlsbergensis* (karlz-bur-jen´sis). Other beers—called ales—are produced with the top-fermenting yeast *S. cerevisiae* (so called because the yeast floats in the vat).

5 *Aging.* The beer is aged, pasteurized or filtered, and bottled or canned. Beer has a considerably lower alcohol content (about 4%) than either wine or distilled spirits.

Sake (rice beer) is made from cooked rice in which the starch is first converted to sugar (by the fungus *Aspergillus oryzae*) and then the sugar is fermented by *Saccharomyces*. Sake has an alcohol content of about 14%.

Vinegar Vinegar[2] is produced when ethanol resulting from the fermentation of a fruit, grain, or vegetable is oxidized to acetic acid. *Acetic acid bacteria* such as *Acetobacter* (a-sē´tō-bak-ter) or *Gluconobacter* (gloo-kon´ō-bak-ter) perform this secondary metabolic conversion, generating about 4% acetic acid. Different flavors of vinegar are derived from different starting materials. Cider vinegar, for example, is made from apples.

Table 26.1 summarizes types of fermented foods along with the organisms involved in their production.

The Causes and Prevention of Food Spoilage

Learning Outcomes

26.2 Describe how food characteristics and the presence of microorganisms in food can lead to food spoilage.

26.3 List several methods for preventing food spoilage.

Whereas many chemical reactions involving food are desirable because they enhance taste, aroma, or preservation, other reactions are not. Spoilage of food involves adverse changes in nutritive value, taste, or appearance. Spoilage leads not only to economic loss but also potentially to illness and even death. In this section we examine the causes of food spoilage before considering ways to prevent it.

Causes of Food Spoilage

Foods may spoil because of inherent properties of the food itself. Such *intrinsic factors* include nutrient content, water activity, pH, and physical structure of the food as well as the competitive activities of microbial populations. Alternatively, food spoilage results from *extrinsic factors* that have nothing to do with the food itself but instead with the way it is processed or handled.

Intrinsic Factors in Food Spoilage The nutritional composition of food determines both the types of microbes present and whether they will grow. Some foods contain natural antimicrobial agents, such as the benzoic acid in cranberries, and thus are not prone to spoilage. In contrast, *fortified foods*—those enriched in vitamins and minerals to improve the health of humans—may inadvertently facilitate growth of microorganisms by providing more nutrients.

[2]From French *vinaigre*, meaning "sour wine."

TABLE 26.1 Some Fermented Foods and the Microorganisms Used in Their Production

Food	Starting Material	Representative Culture Microorganisms
Fermented Vegetables		
Sauerkraut/kimchi	Cabbage	Various lactic acid bacteria
Pickle	Cucumbers, peppers, beets	Various lactic acid bacteria
Soy sauce	Soybeans and wheat	*Aspergillus oryzae* and *Lactobacillus* spp.
Miso	Rice and soybeans or rice and other grains	*A. oryzae*, *Lactobacillus* spp., and *Torulopsis etchellsii*
Fermented Meat Products		
Dry salami	Pork, beef, chicken	Various lactic acid bacteria
Fish sauce/paste	Ground fish	Various naturally occurring bacteria
Fermented Dairy Products		
Milks		
Buttermilk	Pasteurized skim milk	*Lactococcus lactis* subspecies *cremoris* and *Leuconostoc citrovorum*
Yogurt	Pasteurized skim milk	*Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Lactobacillus bulgaricus*
Cheeses		
Cottage cheese	Pasteurized milk	*L. lactis*, including subspecies *cremoris*
Hard cheese (e.g., cheddar)	Milk curd	Starter culture as in cottage cheese without further additions
Soft cheese (e.g., Camembert)[a]	Milk curd	Starter culture as in cottage cheese plus *Penicillium camemberti*
Mold-ripened (e.g., Roquefort)	Milk curd	Starter culture as in cottage cheese plus *Penicillium roqueforti*
Animal Feed		
Silage	Corn, grains, vegetation	Various naturally occurring bacteria
Alcoholic Fermentations		
Wine	Grapes	*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Distilled spirits	Fruits, vegetables, grains	*S. cerevisiae*
Beer	Barley	*S. cerevisiae* or *S. carlsbergensis*
Sake	Cooked rice	*A. oryzae* and *Saccharomyces* spp.
Vinegar	Fruits, vegetables, grains	*S. cerevisiae* and *Acetobacter* or *Gluconobacter*
Bread	Flour, salt, etc.	*S. cerevisiae*

[a]In addition to being a soft cheese, Camembert is also a mold-ripened cheese.

Water activity refers to water that is not bound physically by solutes or to surfaces and is thus available to microbes. The water activity of pure water is set at 1.0, and most microbes require environments with a water activity of at least 0.90. Moist foods, such as fresh meat, with water activities near 0.90 support microbial growth, whereas dry foods (e.g., uncooked pasta) with water activities near zero do not support microbial growth. Food processors reduce water activity by drying foods or by adding salts or sugars. Thus, even though jam is moist, its sugar content is very high, and its water activity is too low to support much microbial growth.

Acidity of food can either be an intrinsic chemical property of the food, as in the case of citrus fruit, or result from fermentation, as with dill pickles. In either case, a pH below 5.0 typically reduces microbial growth except by a few molds or lactic acid bacteria. A pH closer to neutral (7.0) supports a wider range of microbial growth. Since the pH of most foods is close to neutral, pH is generally not a deterrent to spoilage microorganisms.

Physical structure is a visible intrinsic factor. Rinds or thick skins usually protect fruits and vegetables, and eggs have shells. These coverings are dry and nutritionally poor, and thus they support little microbial growth. If the outer covering is broken or cut, however, microbes can reach the moist interior of the food and cause it to rot.

Ground meat has more surface area and more oxygen and may have bacteria mixed within it during the grinding process. Thus, ground meat supports microbial growth and spoils faster than whole cuts of meat. In uncut meat, the largest volume of the meat is anaerobic and not exposed to microorganisms.

To some extent, microbial competition can also be an intrinsic factor in food spoilage, especially in fermented foods. Fermented foods are populated with large numbers of fermentative

bacteria but few pathogens because the latter do not readily grow in the environment produced by the fermenters. Furthermore, pathogens that require the rich nutrient levels found in the human body are not typically capable of growing on "lower-nutrient" foods.

Table 26.2 summarizes the effects of intrinsic factors on food spoilage.

Extrinsic Factors in Food Spoilage Extrinsic factors, including how food is processed, handled, and stored, also govern food spoilage. Microorganisms can enter food in a variety of ways; some are introduced accidentally during harvesting from soil or contaminated water, and commercial food processing introduces others. Mechanical vectors, such as flies, also deposit microbes onto food. However, most microbial contaminants leading to spoilage can be traced to improper handling by consumers. Methods to prevent the introduction of microbes into food or to limit their growth will be presented shortly.

CRITICAL THINKING

Describe the intrinsic and extrinsic factors that would contribute to the spoilage of butter, an apple, and a steak.

Classifying Foods in Terms of Potential for Spoilage

Based on the previous considerations, foods can be grouped into three broad categories, depending on their likelihood of spoilage. *Perishable* foods, such as milk, tend to be nutrient rich, moist, and unprotected by coverings. They need to be kept cold, or they spoil relatively quickly (within days). *Semiperishable* foods, such as tomato sauce, can be stored in sealed containers for months without spoiling as long as they are not opened. Once opened, however, they may spoil within several weeks. *Nonperishable* foods are usually dry foods, such as pasta, or canned goods that can be stored almost indefinitely without spoiling. Nonperishable foods are typically either nutritionally poor, dried, fermented, or preserved (discussed shortly).

Prevention of Food Spoilage

Food spoilage can begin during production, processing, packaging, or handling. Spoilage results in significant economic losses to producers—in the form of lost productivity, food recalls, and even the loss of jobs resulting from the shutdown of unsafe food processing facilities—but also to consumers in the form of medical expenses and time lost from work. In the next sections, we examine some of the many techniques used to prevent food spoilage: food processing methods, the use of preservatives, and attention to temperature and other storage conditions.

Food Processing Methods *Industrial canning* is a major food packaging methodology for preserving foods (Figure 26.4). After food is prepared by washing, sorting, and processing, it is packaged into cans or jars and subjected to high heat (115°C) under pressure for a given amount of time, depending on the food. This temperature is not that of a sterlizing autoclave in a microbiology laboratory, so the food must be heated longer. Autoclave temperature (121°C) would severely change the food's taste, texture, and nutritiousness. The heating is followed by rapid cooling. The heat kills vegetative mesophilic bacteria and destroys endospores formed by *Bacillus* (ba-sil´lŭs) and *Clostridium* (klos-trid´ē-ŭm). Although canning results in the elimination of most contaminating microorganisms, it does not sterilize food; hyperthermophilic microbes remain, but because they cannot grow at room temperature, they do not pose a threat.

▲ **Figure 26.4** **Industrial canning.** Food is processed, put into cans or jars, and heated under pressure for a length of time and a temperature sufficient to kill most microbes, including endospore-forming bacteria. *Why isn't the worker wearing a mask and gloves while handling open cans of food?*

Figure 26.4 *The food is about to be steam sterilized, so any introduced microbes will be killed.*

Spoilage can occur if the food is underprocessed or if mesophilic microbes contaminate the can during cooling or thereafter. The two most frequent contaminants found in canned goods are *Clostridium* spp. and coliforms, organisms that grow well anaerobically in low-acid foods. Contamination with the resistant endospores of *Clostridium* is especially problematic because if the cans or jars are not heated sufficiently, the endospores germinate, grow, and release toxins inside the sealed container (see Chapter 19, p. 553).

Pasteurization is less rigorous than canning and is used primarily with beer, wine, and dairy products because it does not degrade the flavor of these more delicate foods. By heating foods only enough to kill mesophilic, non-endospore-forming microbes (including most pathogens), pasteurization lowers the overall number of microbes, but because some microbes survive, pasteurized foods will spoil without refrigeration (see Chapter 9, p. 259).

Moisture is essential for microbial growth; therefore, desiccation (drying) is an excellent food preservation technique. Drying greatly reduces or eliminates microbial growth, but it does not kill bacterial endospores. Although drying by leaving foods in the sun is still used for some fruits, today most commercially dried foods are processed in ovens or heated drums that evaporate the water from the foods.

TABLE 26.2 Factors Affecting Food Spoilage

	Foods at Greatest Risk of Spoilage	Food at Least Risk of Spoilage
Intrinsic Factors		
Nutritional composition	Chemically rich or fortified foods (steak, bread, milk)	Chemically limited foods (flour, cereals, grains)
Water activity	Moist foods (meat, milk)	Dry foods or those with low water activity (pasta, jam)
pH	Foods with neutral pH (bread)	Foods with low pH (orange juice, pickles)
Physical structure	Foods without rinds, skins, or shells; ground meat	Foods with rinds, skins, or shells; intact foods
Microbial competition	Foods that lack natural microbe populations (ground beef)	Foods with resident microbial populations (pickles)
Extrinsic Factors		
Degree of processing	Unprocessed foods (raw milk, fruit)	Processed foods (pasteurized foods)
Amount of preservatives	Foods without preservatives (meats, natural foods)	Foods with either naturally occurring or added preservatives (garlic, spices, sulfur dioxide)
Storage temperature	Foods left in warm conditions	Foods kept cold
Storage packaging	Foods stored exposed	Foods wrapped or sealed

Lyophilization (lī-of´i-li-zā´shŭn), or *freeze drying,* involves freezing foods and then using a vacuum to draw off the ice crystals. Freeze-dried foods such as soups and sauces can be reconstituted by mixing with water.

Gamma radiation, produced primarily by the isotope cobalt-60, penetrates fruits, vegetables, and meats, including fish, poultry, and beef, to cause irreparable and fatal damage to the DNA of microbes. Such ionizing *irradiation* is controversial because some consumers believe erroneously that irradiated foods become radioactive, are less nutritious, or contain toxins. Nevertheless, because irradiation can achieve complete sterilization, it is used routinely to preserve some foods such as spices.

UV light is not ionizing and does not penetrate very far. It is used to treat packing and cooling water used in industrial canning and to treat work surfaces and utensils in industrial meat processing plants.

In *aseptic packaging,* paper or plastic containers that cannot withstand the rigors of canning or pasteurization are sterilized with hot peroxide solutions, UV light, or superheated steam. Then a conventionally processed food is added to the aseptic package, which is sealed without the need for additional processing.

The Use of Preservatives Humans have preserved foods with salt or sugar throughout history. Both chemicals draw water by osmosis out of foods and microbes alike, killing microbes on the food and retarding the growth of any subsequent microbial contaminants. Bacon is an example of a high-salt food; jellies are examples of high-sugar foods.

Whereas salt and sugar act by removing water, some natural preservatives actively inhibit microbial enzymes or disrupt cytoplasmic membranes. For example, garlic contains *allicin,* which inhibits enzyme function. Benzoic acid, produced naturally by cranberries, also interferes with enzymatic function. Cloves, cinnamon, oregano, and thyme (and, to some degree, sage and rosemary) produce oils that interfere with the functions of membranes of microorganisms.

As we have seen, fermentation preserves some foods by producing an acidic environment that is inhospitable to most microbes. For other foods such as meats, the use of wood smoke during the drying process introduces growth inhibitors that help preserve the food. Other naturally occurring and synthetic chemicals can be purposely added to foods as preservatives. Acceptable preservatives are harmless and do not alter the taste or appearance of the food to any great extent. Organic acids, such as benzoic acid, sorbic acid, and propionic acid, are commonly used in beverages, dressings, baked goods, and a variety of other foods. Gases, such as sulfur dioxide and ethylene oxide, are used to preserve dried fruit, spices, and nuts. All such chemical preservatives inhibit some aspect of microbial metabolism, but many do not actually kill microbes; in other words, they are *germistatic* rather than *germicidal.* Some chemicals work better against bacteria than against fungi and vice versa. Benzoic acid, for example, has a largely antifungal function and does not affect the growth of many bacteria.

Attention to Temperature During Processing and Storage In general, higher temperatures are desirable during food processing and preparation to prevent food spoilage, whereas lower temperatures are desirable for food storage. High temperatures, such as those of pasteurization, canning, or cooking, kill potential pathogens because proteins and enzymes become irreversibly denatured. However, heat does not inactivate many toxins; for example, botulism toxin may remain in cooked foods even when the bacteria that produced it are dead.

Unlike heat, cold rarely kills microbes but instead merely retards their growth by slowing metabolism. Even freezing fails to kill all microorganisms and may only lower the level of microbial contamination enough to reduce the likelihood of food poisoning after frozen foods have been thawed.

TABLE 26.3 Most Common Bacterial and Protozoan Agents of Foodborne Illnesses

Organism	Affected Food Products	Comments
Campylobacter jejuni	Raw and undercooked meats; raw milk; untreated water	Most common cause of diarrhea of all foodborne agents
Clostridium botulinum	Home-prepared foods	Produces a neurotoxin
Escherichia coli O157:H7	Meat; raw milk	Produces an enterotoxin
Listeria monocytogenes	Dairy products; raw and undercooked meats; seafood; produce	Common in soils and water, contamination from these sources occurs easily; grows at refrigerator temperature
Salmonella spp.	Raw and undercooked eggs; meat; dairy products; fruits and vegetables	Second most common cause of foodborne illness in the United States
Shigella spp.	Salads; milk and other dairy products; water	Third most common cause of foodborne illness in the United States
Staphylococcus aureus	Cooked high-protein foods	Produces a potent toxin that is not destroyed by cooking
Toxoplasma gondii	Meat (pork in particular)	Parasitic protozoan
Vibrio vulnificus	Raw and undercooked seafood	Causes primary septicemia (bacteria in the blood)
Yersinia enterocolitica	Pork; dairy products; produce	Causes generalized diarrhea and severe cramping that mimics appendicitis; grows at refrigerator temperature

To prevent food spoilage, foods should be prepared at sufficiently high temperatures and then stored under conditions that do not facilitate microbial growth. Wrapping leftovers or putting them in containers enables foods to be stored away from exposure to air or contact that could result in contamination. Storing foods in the cold of a refrigerator or freezer combines the protection of packaging with growth-inhibiting temperatures.

One microbe for which cold storage does not suppress growth is *Listeria monocytogenes* (lis-tēr´ē-ă mo-nō-sī-tah´je-nēz), the causative agent of listeriosis and a common environmental bacterium, which is prevalent in certain dairy products, such as soft cheeses. This bacterium grows quite well under refrigeration; therefore, it is best to prevent its entry into foods.

Foodborne Illnesses

Learning Outcome

26.4 Discuss the basic types of illnesses caused by food spoilage or food contamination and describe how they can be avoided.

Spoiled food, if consumed, can result in illness, but not all foodborne illnesses result from actual food spoilage. Foodborne illnesses may also result from the consumption of harmful microbes or their products in food.

Foodborne illnesses (*food poisoning*) can be divided into two types: **food infections,** caused by the consumption of living microorganisms, and **food intoxications,** caused by the consumption of microbial toxins instead of the microbes themselves. Typical signs and symptoms of food poisoning are generally the same regardless of the cause and include nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, fever, fatigue, and muscle cramps. Symptoms occur within 2 to 48 hours after ingestion, and the effects of the illness can linger for days. Most outbreaks of food poisoning are *common-source epidemics,* meaning that a single food source is responsible for many individual cases of illness.

The U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) estimates that about 48 million cases of food poisoning occur each year. Of these, about 128,000 people require hospitalization and 3000 die. Researchers identify the microbes involved in only about 14 million of the total cases. The U.S. Department of Agriculture estimates the economic cost of food poisoning—due to loss of productivity, medical expenses, and death—at roughly $5 billion to $10 billion per year.

More than 250 different foodborne diseases have been described. Table 26.3 lists 10 common causes of foodborne illness and their sources. Except for the protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii* (tok-sō-plaz´mă gon´dē-ē), all are bacterial agents. A few fungi (*Aspergillus* and *Penicillium*) and viruses (e.g., hepatitis A, noroviruses) also cause food poisoning.

CRITICAL THINKING

Suggest why neither the original food involved nor the organism responsible can ever be identified in more than 80% of food poisoning cases.

Industrial Microbiology

The potential uses of microorganisms for producing valuable compounds, as environmental sensors, and in the genetic modification of plants and animals makes industrial microbiology one of the more important fields of study within the microbiological sciences. In the sections that follow we will examine the use of microbes in industrial fermentation, in the production of several industrial products, in the treatment of water and wastewater, and in the disposal and cleanup of biological wastes.

The Roles of Microbes in Industrial Fermentations

Learning Outcome

26.5 Describe the role of genetically manipulated microorganisms in industrial and agricultural processes and the basics of industrial-scale fermentation.

In industry, the word *fermentation* is used differently than it is used in food microbiology or in the study of metabolism. *Industrial fermentations* involve the large-scale growth of particular microbes for producing beneficial compounds, such as amino acids and vitamins. Temperature, aeration, and pH are all regulated to maintain optimal microbial growth conditions. Generally, industrial fermentations start with the cheapest growth medium available, often the waste product from another process (such as whey from cheese production). Because of its scale, industrial fermentation is performed in huge vats that can be readily filled, emptied, and sterilized **(Figure 26.5)**. Vats are typically made from stainless steel so that they can be cleaned and sterilized more easily.

There are two types of industrial fermentation. In *batch production,* organisms ferment their substrate until it is exhausted, and then the end product is harvested all at once. In *continuous flow production,* the vat is continuously fed new medium while wastes and product are continuously removed. For this setup to work, the organism must secrete its product into the surrounding medium.

Industrial products are produced as either primary or secondary metabolites of the microorganisms. *Primary metabolites,* such as ethanol, are produced during active growth and metabolism because they are either required for reproduction or by-products of active metabolism. *Secondary metabolites,* such as penicillin, are produced after the culture has moved from log phase of growth and entered stationary phase, during which time the substances produced are not immediately needed for growth.

Recombinant DNA techniques are used for the production of *recombinant microorganisms*. (Chapter 8 examines these techniques and some of their uses.) Most genetically modified organisms used in industry have been specifically designed to produce a stable, high-yield output of desirable chemicals or to perform certain novel functions.

CRITICAL THINKING

Which process would you expect to yield more product from the same-size vats over the same amount of time: batch production or continuous flow production? Why?

▲ **Figure 26.5** **Fermentation vats.** Such large containers are used for growing microorganisms in the vast quantities needed for the large-scale production of many industrial, agricultural, and medical products. *Why are industrial fermentation vats made of stainless steel instead of wood?*

Figure 26.5 *Fermentation vats are made of stainless steel so that they can be cleaned more easily to avoid contamination of the product being produced.*

Industrial Products of Microorganisms

Learning Outcome

26.6 List some of the various commercial products produced by microorganisms.

Microorganisms, particularly bacteria, metabolically produce an incredible array of industrially useful chemicals, including enzymes, food additives and supplements, dyes, plastics, and fuels. Recombinant organisms add to this diversity by producing pharmaceuticals, such as human insulin, which are not normally manufactured by microbial cells. In the sections that follow we consider a variety of industrial products produced by microbes, including enzymes, alternative fuels, pharmaceuticals, pesticides, agricultural products, biosensors, and bioreporters.

Enzymes and Other Industrial Products

Enzymes are among the more important products made by microbes. Most are naturally occurring enzymes for which industrial uses have been devised. For example, amylase, produced by *Aspergillus oryzae,* is used as a spot remover. Pectinase, obtained from species of *Clostridium,* enzymatically releases cellulose fibers from flax, which are then made into linen. Proteases from a variety of microbes are used in meat tenderizers, spot removers, and cheese production. Streptokinases and hyaluronidase are used in medicine to dissolve blood clots and enhance the absorption of injected fluids, respectively. Microbes also make the enzymatic tools of recombinant DNA technology, including restriction enzymes, ligases, and polymerases.

Some products made naturally by microorganisms are useful to humans as food additives and food supplements. *Food additives* generally enhance a food in some way, such as by improving color or taste, whereas *food supplements* make up for nutritional deficiencies. Amino acids and vitamins are two

HIGHLIGHT

MAKING BLUE JEANS "GREEN"

Most blue denim today is colored with an indigo dye that has been synthetically created via a petroleum-based process because extracting the dye from indigo plants is labor intensive and expensive. Environmentalists are concerned that the potentially toxic by-products of the coal- and oil-dependent process pose risks to the environment.

To address such concerns, scientists have been investigating an alternative method of producing indigo using *E. coli*, which naturally produces the amino acid tryptophan, with a chemical structure very similar to that of indigo. Since 1983, scientists have known how to take advantage of this similarity and genetically alter *E. coli* so that the bacterium produces indigo instead. The problem? Bacterial synthesis of indigo was both slow and resulted in an unwanted red pigment that remained visible when the dye was used on denim.

These problems may soon be resolved. Scientists have succeeded in modifying the *E. coli* genome so that the red pigment is no longer produced. They have also boosted bacterial production of indigo by 60%. Though more work is needed to make the process economical, these results provide hope for environmentally sensitive blue jeans in the future.

important microbial products used as supplements. Vitamins are added directly to foods or sold as vitamin tablets. Amino acids are either sold in tablet form or combined to make new compounds, such as the sweetener aspartame (made from the amino acids phenylalanine and aspartic acid). Other organic acids, such as citric acid, gluconic acid, and acetic acid (vinegar), are also microbially produced to be used in food manufacturing. Citric acid is used as an antioxidant in foods, while gluconic acid is used medically to facilitate calcium uptake.

Other industrial products made by microbes include dyes, such as indigo, which makes denim jeans blue (see **Highlight: Making Blue Jeans "Green"**), and cellulose fibers used in woven fabrics. Microbially produced biodegradable plastics can replace nonbiodegradable, petroleum-based plastics. This is possible because many bacteria produce a carbon-based storage molecule called polyhydroxyalkanoate (PHA), a polymer with a structure similar to petroleum-based plastics. Even though such biodegradable plastics are expensive to manufacture, they have been commercially available since the early 1990s.

Alternative Fuels

Photosynthetic microorganisms use the energy in sunlight to convert CO_2 into carbohydrates that can be used as fuels—so-called biofuels. Other microorganisms convert biomass (organic materials such as plants or animal wastes) into renewable biofuels, including ethanol, methane, and hydrogen.

Ethanol, which is made during alcoholic fermentation and is the simplest alternative biofuel to synthesize, can be mixed with gasoline to make *gasohol*, which is used in existing cars. Currently, in the United States, food crops such as corn are fermented to ethanol, but production of alternative fuel from nonfood crops or crop wastes—for example, inedible switchgrass or corn stalks—may use less water, fertilizer, and food supplies.

All microorganisms synthesize hydrocarbons as part of their normal metabolism, but only some microbes produce hydrocarbons that could be useful fuels. The colonial alga *Botryococcus braunii* (bot´rē-ō-kok´ŭs brow´nē-ē), for example, produces hydrocarbons that account for 30% of its dry weight. The technology to harvest such hydrocarbons does not yet exist, but one day this alga may be an important source of fuel. One exception is the harvesting of methane gas, which can be collected and piped through natural gas lines to be used for cooking and heating. The largest potential source of methane is from landfills, where methanogens anaerobically convert wastes into methane via anaerobic respiration **(Figure 26.6).** Some communities already use methane from landfills to

▲ **Figure 26.6** **Collecting methane gas released from a landfill.** Such microbially produced methane could be an important alternative fuel source. *What are some potential benefits of renewable energy produced by microbes?*

Figure 26.6 *Microbial fuels may be easier to produce and less harmful to the environment.*

TABLE 26.4 Some Products of Recombinant DNA Technology Used in Medicine

Product	Modified Cell	Uses of Product
Interferons	*Escherichia coli*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*	To treat cancer, multiple sclerosis, chronic granulomatous disease, hepatitis, and warts
Interleukins	*E. coli*	To enhance immunity
Tumor necrosis factor	*E. coli*	In cancer therapy
Erythropoietin	Mammalian cell culture	To stimulate red blood cell formation; to treat anemia
Tissue plasminogen activating factor	Mammalian cell culture	To dissolve blood clots
Human insulin	*E. coli*	For diabetes therapy
Taxol	*E. coli*	In ovarian cancer therapy
Factor VIII	Mammalian cell culture	In hemophilia therapy
Macrophage colony stimulating factor	*E. coli*, *S. cerevisiae*	To stimulate bone marrow to produce more white blood cells; to counteract side effects of cancer treatment
Relaxin	*E. coli*	To ease childbirth
Human growth hormone	*E. coli*	To correct childhood deficiency of growth hormone
Hepatitis B vaccine	Carried on a plasmid of *S. cerevisiae*	To stimulate immunity against hepatitis B virus

produce energy. Methane can also be used as a fuel in properly equipped cars.

Although a variety of microbes release hydrogen as part of their normal metabolism, the hydrogen-producing metabolic pathway does not cost effectively produce fuel. An economically efficient method for the production of hydrogen fuel using sunlight and photosynthetic microbes would have widespread applications and enormous appeal, but much research is needed to develop technologies to produce hydrogen as a viable energy source.

Pharmaceuticals

Foremost among the pharmaceutical substances microorganisms produce are antimicrobial drugs. About 6000 antimicrobial substances have been described since penicillin was first produced during World War II. Of these, 100 or so have current medical applications. The bacteria *Streptomyces* (strep-tō-mī´sēz) and *Bacillus* and the fungus *Penicillium* synthesize the majority of useful antimicrobials, though recombinant DNA techniques enable the modification of other microbes to produce new versions of old drugs.

In addition to antimicrobials, genetically modified microbes are producing hormones and other cell regulators. Table 26.4 lists some products of recombinant DNA technology used in medicine.

Pesticides and Agricultural Products

Farmers use microbes and their products in a variety of agricultural applications, particularly with regard to crop management. *Bacillus thuringiensis* (thur-in-jē-en´sis) is one of the more widely used organisms because during sporulation it produces *Bt toxin*, which, when digested by the caterpillars of such pests as gypsy moths, diamondback moths, and tomato hornworms, destroys the lining of the insect's gut wall, eventually killing it. Bt toxin isolated from the bacterium can be spread as a dust on plants, but with recombinant DNA technology the Bt gene can be added to a plant's genome. In this way plants such as corn, soybeans, and cotton protect themselves by manufacturing their own Bt toxin. There is little evidence of insect resistance to this Bt toxin despite the fact that large tracts of farmland are devoted to raising Bt-toxin-expressing plants. Some people are leery of the prospect of transgenic foods derived from these plants, whereas others contend that the genetic manipulation of crops is crucial if we are to continue to feed the world's population. In any case, one thing is clear: The genetic manipulation of plants is big business.

Pseudomonas syringae (soo-dō-mō´nas sēr´in-jī) is another example of a bacterium with agricultural applications. This bacterium produces a protein that serves in the formation of ice crystals, but the protein is not essential to the survival of the organism, and scientists can remove its gene. When sprayed on crops such as strawberries, the strain lacking the gene, known as *P. syringae* ice$^-$ ("ice-minus"), inhibits the formation of ice, protecting the plants from freeze damage.

Table 26.5 on p. 768 lists selected industrial products produced by microorganisms and some of their uses.

Biosensors and Bioreporters

Among the relatively new applications of microorganisms to solve environmental problems are biosensors and bioreporters. **Biosensors** are devices that combine bacteria or microbial products (such as enzymes) with electronic measuring devices to detect other bacteria, bacterial products, or chemical compounds in the environment. **Bioreporters** are somewhat simpler sensors that are composed of microbes (again usually bacteria) with innate signaling capabilities, such as the ability to glow in the presence of biological or chemical compounds.

Currently, biosensors and bioreporters are used to detect the presence of environmental pollutants (e.g., petroleum) and to monitor efforts to remove harmful substances; they may

TABLE 26.5 Selected Industrial Products Produced by Microorganisms

Products Made	Use of Product
Enzymes	
Amylase, proteases	Spot removers
Streptokinase	Breakdown of blood clots
Restriction enzymes, ligases, polymerases	Molecular biology, recombinant DNA technology
Food Additives/Supplements	
Amino acids, vitamins	Health supplements
Citric acid	Antioxidant
Sorbic acid, lysozyme	Food preservatives
Other Industrial Products	
Indigo	Dye used in manufacturing clothes
Plastics	Biodegradable substitutes for petroleum-based plastics
Alternative Fuels	
Ethanol	Used in gasohol
Methane	Burned to generate heat and electricity
Hydrogen, hydrocarbons	Potential fuels
Pharmaceuticals	
Antimicrobial drugs	Treatment of bacterial infections
Insulin, human growth hormone	Replacement hormones
Taxol	Cancer treatment
Pesticides and Agricultural Products	
Bt toxin	Insecticide

also be useful in detecting bioterrorist attacks. Because bacteria are very sensitive to their environments, they can detect compounds in very small amounts. Biosensors and bioreporters could serve as early warning systems to give officials more time to respond by quickly detecting the metabolic waste products of weaponized biological agents.

Water Treatment

Learning Outcomes

26.7 Contrast water pollution and water contamination.
26.8 Describe two waterborne illnesses.
26.9 Explain how water for drinking and wastewater are treated to make them safe and usable.

Water Pollution

Water becomes polluted in three basic ways: *physically,* through the presence of particulate matter; *chemically,* from the presence of inorganic and organic compounds, usually derived from industrial activities or agricultural runoff; or *biologically,* through an overabundance of organisms or the presence of nonnative microorganisms. Many pollutants are not readily visible.

CRITICAL THINKING

In a polluted lake the microbes reproduced prolifically, died, and then sank to the bottom, "feeding" anaerobes in the sediment. Even though the surface water looks clear, why is it still unsafe to drink the lake water?

Although physical and chemical pollutants are important, of greater concern is biological contamination of water with human pathogens. They can cause significant human diseases, which can be prevented only through water treatment.

Waterborne Illnesses

Consumption of contaminated water, either as drinking water or in water added to foods, can result in a variety of bacterial, viral, or protozoan diseases (see **Emerging Disease Case Study: *Norovirus* Gastroenteritis**). Fungal water contaminants do not cause diseases.

Each year contaminated drinking water results in roughly 3 billion to 5 billion episodes of diarrheal disease worldwide, including over 3 million deaths among children ages five years or younger. Intoxication can also occur from the presence of microbial toxins in the water.

Water treatment removes most waterborne pathogens, so waterborne illnesses are generally rare in the United States as compared to countries with inadequate water treatment facilities. Outbreaks that do occur in the United States are *point-source infections,* in which a single source of contaminated water leads to illness in individuals that consume the water.

In some marine environments, eutrophic blooms of marine dinoflagellates, such as *Gonyaulax* (gon-ē-aw´laks) and *Gambierdiscus* (gam´bē-er-dis-kŭs), chemically pollute water with their toxins. These blooms are one cause of *red tides* because of the color often imparted to the water by the huge number of dinoflagellates. The toxins are absorbed and concentrated by shellfish, and human intoxication results from food consumption rather than water consumption.

Table 26.6 lists some common human waterborne pathogens and toxins.

Clean water is vital for people and their activities. In the following sections we consider the treatment of drinking water and the treatment of wastewater (sewage). In both cases, treatment is designed to remove microorganisms, chemicals, and other pollutants to prevent human illness.

Treatment of Drinking Water

Potable water is water that is considered safe to drink, but the term *potable* (pō´tăbl) does not imply that the water is devoid of all microorganisms and chemicals. Rather, it implies that the levels of microorganisms or chemicals in the water are low

EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDY

NOROVIRUS GASTROENTERITIS

Zack, Tran, Roy, and Justin were not happy roommates; in fact, things could not be much worse for the college friends. Each of the men had stomach cramps, fever, chills, muscle aches, extreme tiredness, nausea, and, most distressing, horrible diarrhea and persistent vomiting. They had been fighting over the toilet, and whoever wasn't in the bathroom often had his head in a trashcan. None of the four had left their suite for two days, being unable to venture more than a few feet from the bathroom. The friends had never experienced such an attack of gastroenteritis. *Norovirus* had arrived in the dorm.

Norovirus gastroenteritis afflicts people living in close quarters: prisoners, nursing home residents, vacationers on cruise ships, and students in college dormitories. People spread the virus on contaminated hands and fomites due to poor personal hygiene. Students often blame food services for the gastrointestinal distress, but noroviruses rarely travel in food, though they are often found in contaminated water.

The four roommates recovered as their bodies eliminated viruses from their digestive tracts. They also learned the value of hand washing, disinfecting bathrooms, and keeping the dorm room sanitized. (For more about *Norovirus*, see p. 721.)

TABLE 26.6 Selected Waterborne Agents and the Diseases They Cause

Organism	Disease
Bacteria	
Campylobacter jejuni	Acute gastroenteritis
Escherichia coli	Acute gastroenteritis
Salmonella spp.	Salmonellosis, typhoid fever
Shigella spp.	Shigellosis (bacterial dysentery)
Vibrio cholerae	Cholera
Viruses	
Hepatitis A virus	Infectious hepatitis
Norovirus	Acute gastroenteritis
Poliovirus	Poliomyelitis
Eukaryotic Parasites	
Cryptosporidium parvum	Cryptosporidiosis
Entamoeba histolytica	Amebic dysentery
Giardia intestinalis	Giardiasis
Schistosoma spp.	Schistosomiasis
Toxin Producers	
Gambierdiscus (ciguatoxin)	Fish poisoning
Gonyaulax (saxitoxin)	Paralytic shellfish poisoning

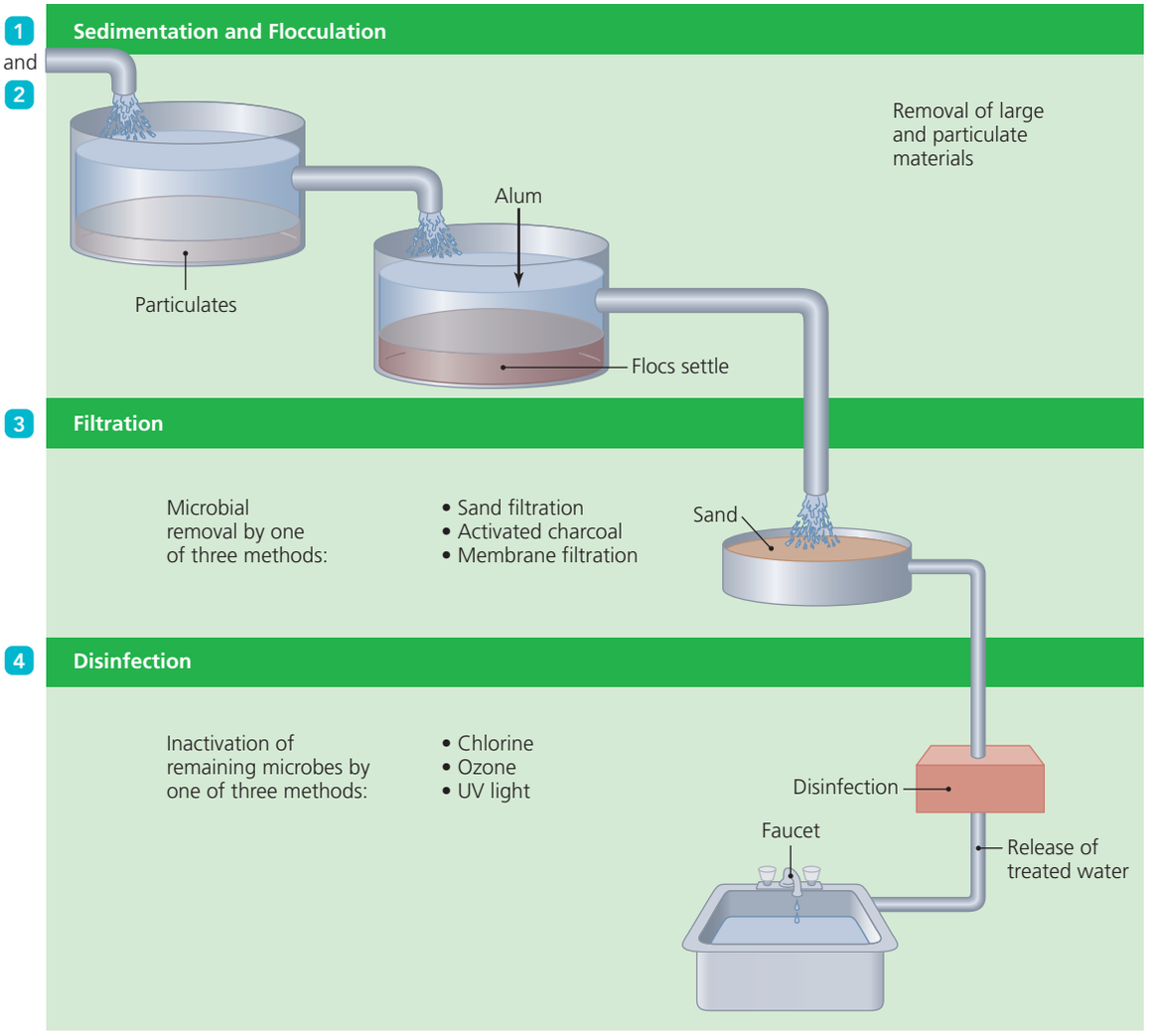
enough that they are not a health concern. Water that is not potable is **polluted;** that is, it contains organisms or chemicals in excess of acceptable values.

The permissible levels of microbes and chemicals in potable water varies from state to state. Nationally, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) requires that drinking water have a count of 0 (zero) coliform bacteria per 100 ml of water and that recreational waters have no more than 200 coliforms per 100 ml of water. Recall that coliforms are intestinal bacteria such as *E. coli.* The presence of coliforms in water indicates fecal contamination and thus an increased likelihood that disease-causing microbes are present.

The treatment of drinking water can be divided into four stages **(Figure 26.7)**:

1. **Sedimentation.** During sedimentation, water from drain pipes in a city is pumped into holding tanks where particulate materials (sand, silt, and organic material) settle.
2. **Flocculation.** The partially clarified water is then pumped into a secondary tank for *flocculation,* in which alum (aluminum potassium sulfate) added to the water joins with suspended particles and microorganisms to form large aggregates, called *flocs,* which also settle to the bottom of the tank. The water above the sediment is then pumped into a different tank for filtration.
3. **Filtration.** In this stage, the number of microbes is reduced by about 90% in one of several ways. One method uses sand and other materials to which microbes adhere and form biofilms that trap and remove other microbes. *Slow*

(a)



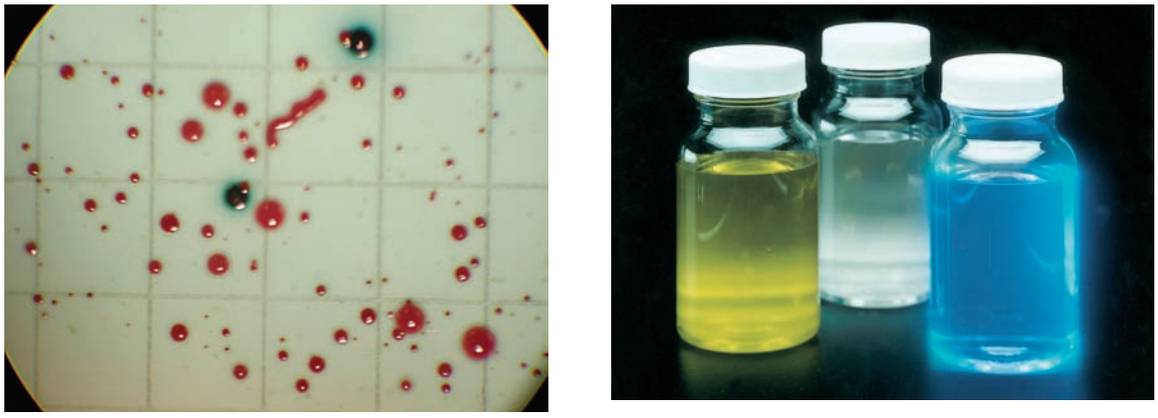
(b)

◀ Figure 26.7 The treatment of drinking water. **(a)** A water treatment facility. **(b)** The stages of water treatment: sedimentation, flocculation, filtration, and disinfection. *Why is it that chemical treatment cannot destroy most viruses?*

Figure 26.7 *Most chemicals are designed either to inhibit some aspect of active metabolism or to damage cellular structures; therefore, they do not damage acellular and nonmetabolizing viruses.*

sand filters are composed of a 1-meter layer of fine sand or diatomaceous earth and are used in smaller cities or towns to process 3 million gallons per acre of filter per day. Large cities use *rapid sand filters* that contain larger particles and gravel and can process 200 million gallons per acre per day. Both types of filters are cleaned by back-flushing with water. Two other filtration methods are *membrane filtration*, which uses a filter with a pore size of 0.2 µm, and filtration with *activated charcoal*, which provides the added benefit of removing some organic chemicals from the water.

4 **Disinfection.** In this stage, ozone, UV light, or chlorination is used to kill most microorganisms prior to release of the water for public consumption. Many European communities use ultraviolet light. Chlorine treatment is widely used in the United States in part because it is least expensive.



(a) (b)

▶ Figure 26.8 Two water quality tests. (a) Membrane filtration. The grid on the membrane makes it easier to count the colonies of fecal coliforms, which are green on this selective medium. **(b)** The ONPG and MUG tests. The yellow color of the ONPG bottle indicates the presence of coliforms, whereas the blue fluorescence in the MUG bottle indicates the presence of the coliform *E. coli*; the clear bottle is the negative control.

Chlorine gas, an oxidizing agent, is thought to kill bacteria, algae, fungi, and protozoa by denaturing their proteins within approximately 30 minutes of treatment. Chlorine levels must be constantly adjusted to reflect estimates of *microbial load,* the number of microbes in a unit of water—a higher load requires more chlorination. Chlorination does not kill all microbes: Most viruses are not inactivated by chlorine, and bacterial endospores and protozoan cysts are generally unaffected by any chemical treatment. Only mechanical filtration can completely remove all viruses, endospores, and cysts.

Water Quality Testing

Water quality testing is a technique that uses the presence of certain **indicator organisms** to indicate the possible presence of pathogens in water. Because the majority of waterborne illnesses are caused by fecal contamination, the presence of *E. coli* and other coliforms in water indicates a probability that pathogens are present as well. *E. coli* is consistently prevalent in human waste as long as (if not longer than) most pathogens and is easily detected.

Several testing methods can be used to assess water quality. One testing method is the membrane filtration method **(Figure 26.8a)**, which is simple to perform: A 100-ml water sample is poured through a fine membrane, which is then placed on selective media agar plates and incubated. Coliforms colonies exhibit unique characteristics. The colonies are then counted and reported as number of colonies per 100 ml. This method gives a total coliform count.

In another test, water samples are added to small bottles containing both *ONPG* (*o*-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactopyranoside) and *MUG* (4-methylumbelliferyl-β-D-glucuronide) as sole nutrients. Most coliforms produce β-galactosidase, an enzyme that reacts with ONPG to produce a yellow color, but the fecal coliform *E. coli* produces an additional enzyme, β-glucuronidase, which reacts with MUG to form a compound that fluoresces blue when exposed to long-wave UV light **(Figure 26.8b)**. This test allows for the rapid detection of coliforms but, as with MPN, does not give an actual number.

The presence of viruses and particular bacterial strains cannot be determined with these tests; their presence must be confirmed by genetic "fingerprinting" techniques, in which water samples are collected and enriched to cultivate the organisms present. The DNA content of the enriched sample is then genetically screened for the identification of potential pathogens.

Governments are currently reconsidering the use of coliform tests to indicate fecal contamination because some coliforms grow naturally on plants even when there is little fecal contamination, giving a false-positive result for fecal pollution. Regulators are considering replacing coliform tests with genetic assays that would specifically indicate the presence of *E. coli.*

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Explain how biosensors might be used for water quality testing. Would biosensors give more accurate identifications of the microorganisms present in water than an ONPG or MUG test? Is such specificity truly necessary?

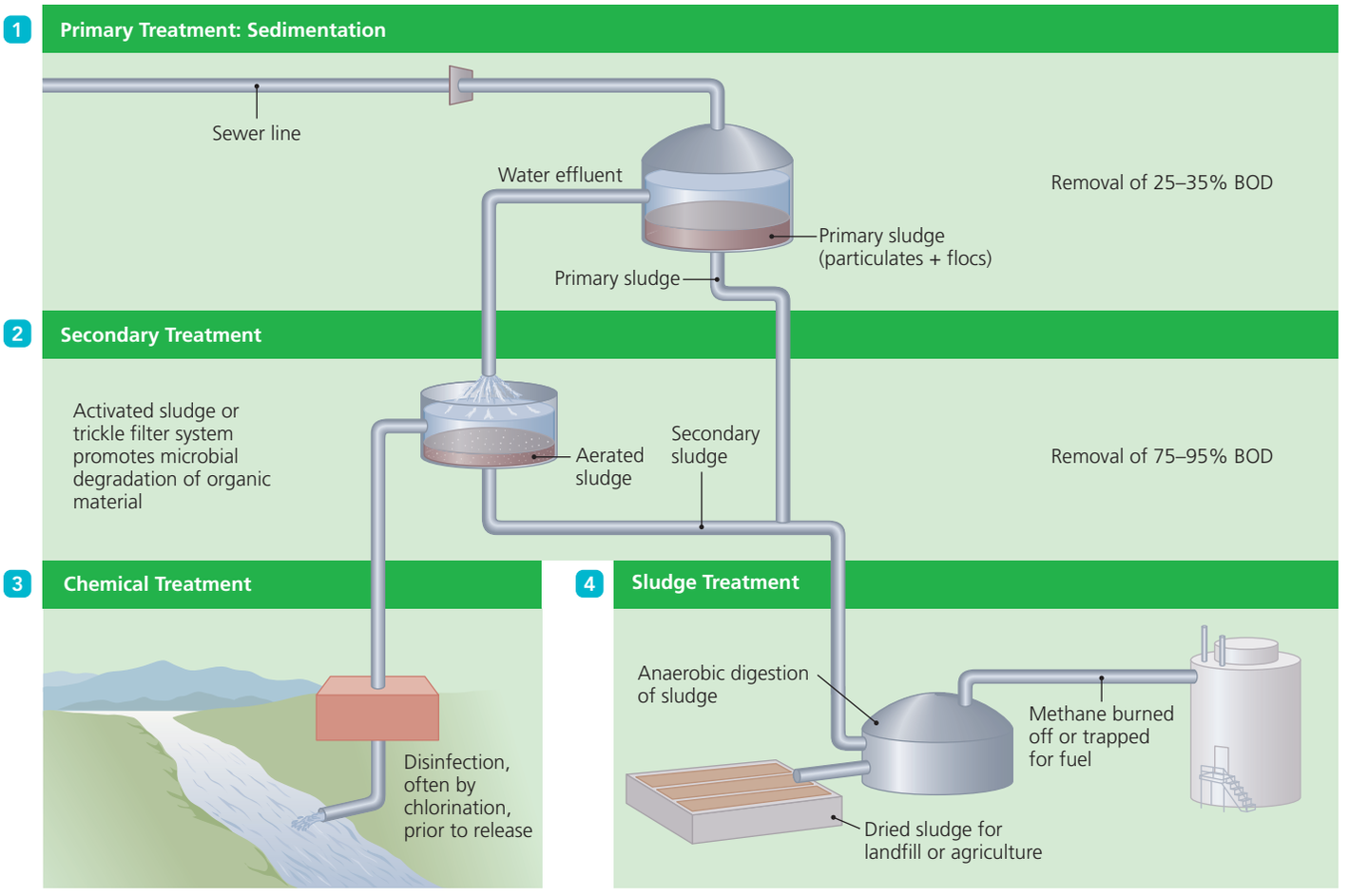
Treatment of Wastewater

Sewage, or **wastewater,** is typically defined as any water that leaves homes or businesses after being used for washing or flushed from toilets. (Some municipalities also include industrial water and rainwater as wastewater.) Wastewater contains a variety of contaminants, including suspended solids, biodegradable and nonbiodegradable organic and inorganic compounds, toxic metals, and pathogens. The objective of wastewater treatment is to remove or reduce these contaminants to acceptable levels.

At one time, "raw" (unprocessed) sewage was simply dumped into the nearest river or ocean; the idea was that wastes would be diluted to a point at which they would be harmless. Burgeoning populations and the realization that waterways were becoming increasingly polluted led to greater use of effective wastewater treatment processes.

Because sewage is mostly water (less than 1% solids), most sewage treatment involves the removal of microorganisms. A key concept in the processing of wastewater is reducing **biochemical oxygen demand (BOD),** which is a measure of the amount of oxygen required by aerobic bacteria to fully metabolize organic

(a)



(b)

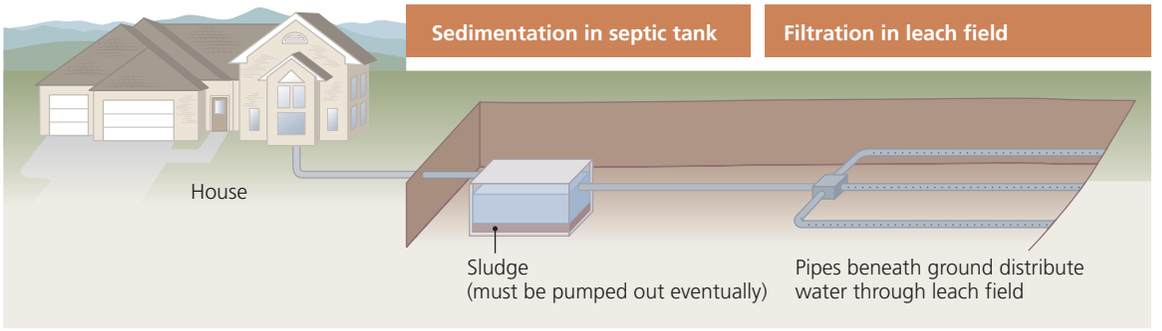
◀ **Figure 26.9 Traditional sewage treatment. (a)** A municipal wastewater treatment facility. **(b)** The traditional sewage treatment process. Microbial digestion during secondary treatment removes most of the biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) before the water is chemically treated and released; dried sludge is recycled as landfill.

wastes in water. This amount is proportional to the amount of waste in the water; the higher the concentration of degradable chemicals, the more oxygen is required to catabolize them and the higher the BOD. Effective wastewater treatment reduces the BOD to levels too low to support microbial growth, thus reducing the likelihood that pathogens will survive.

The following sections consider wastewater treatments of various types: the traditional sewage treatment used in municipal systems, treatments used in rural areas, a treatment used for agricultural wastes, and the use of artificial wetlands.

Municipal Wastewater Treatment Today, people living in larger U.S. towns and cities are usually connected to municipal sewer systems—pipes that collect wastewater and deliver it to sewage treatment plants for processing. Traditional sewage treatment consists of four phases **(Figure 26.9)**:

1. **Primary treatment.** Wastewater is pumped into settling tanks, where lightweight solids, grease, and floating particles are skimmed off and heavier materials settle onto the bottom as **sludge.** After alum is added as a flocculating agent, the sludge is removed, and the partially clarified



▶ Figure 26.10 A home septic system. After wastewater from the house enters the septic tank, solids settle out as sludge, and the effluent liquid is filtered by the soil in the leach fields.

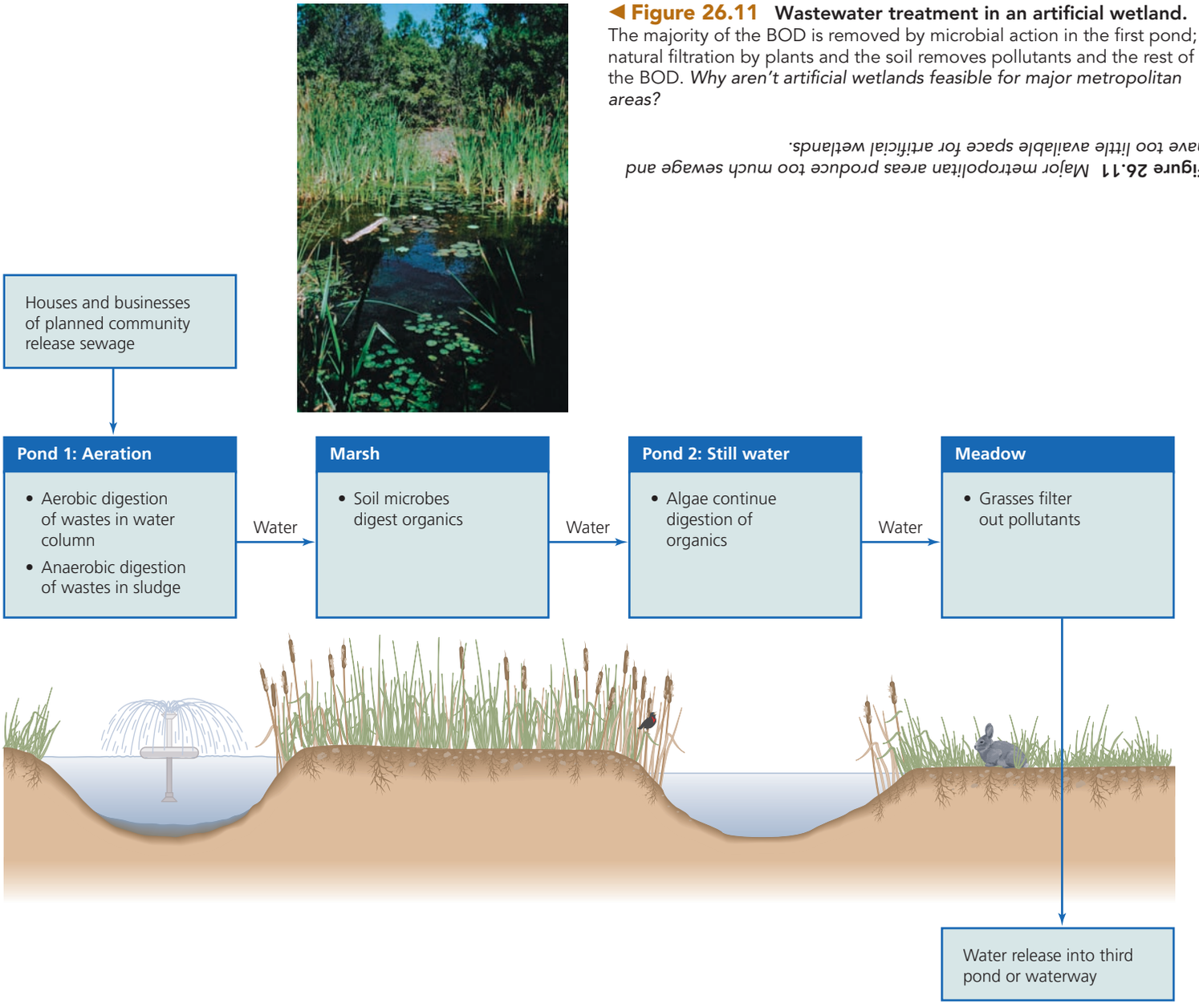
water is further treated. Primary treatment removes 25% to 35% of the BOD in the water.

2. **Secondary treatment.** The biological activity in this phase reduces the BOD to 5 % to 25% of the original. Most pathogenic microorganisms are also removed. The water is aerated to facilitate the growth of aerobic microbes that oxidize dissolved organic chemicals to CO_2 and H_2O. In an *activated sludge system*, aerated water is seeded with primary sludge containing a high concentration of metabolizing bacteria; flocculation also occurs during this step. Any remaining solid material settles and is added to the sludge from primary treatment. The combined sludge is pumped into anaerobic holding tanks. Some smaller communities accomplish secondary treatment using a *trickle filter system*, which is similar to the slow sand filters used in treating drinking water but less effective in removing BOD than activated sludge systems.
3. **Chemical treatment.** Water from secondary treatment is disinfected, usually by chlorination, after which the wastewater is either released into rivers or the ocean or, in some states, used to irrigate crops and highway vegetation. Some communities remove nitrates, phosphates, and any remaining BOD or microorganisms from the water by passing it over fine sand filters and/or activated charcoal filters. Nitrate is converted to ammonia and discharged into the air (removes roughly 50% of the nitrogen content), whereas phosphorus is precipitated using lime or alum (removes 70% of the phosphorus content). Such tertiary treatment is generally used in environmentally sensitive areas or in areas where the only outlet for the water is a closed-lake system.
4. **Sludge treatment.** Sludge is digested anaerobically in three steps: First, anaerobic microbes ferment organic materials to produce CO_2 and organic acids. Second, microbes metabolize these organic acids to H_2, more CO_2, and simpler organic acids, such as acetic acid. Finally, the simpler organic acids, H_2, and CO_2 are converted to methane gas. Any leftover sludge is then dried for use as landfill or fertilizer.

Nonmunicipal Wastewater Treatment Houses in rural areas, which typically are not connected to sewer lines, often use **septic tanks,** essentially the home equivalent of primary treatment **(Figure 26.10)**. Sewage from the house enters a sealed concrete holding tank. Solids settle to the bottom, and the liquid flows from the top of the tank into an underground *leach field* that acts as a filter. Sludge in the tank and organic chemicals in the water are digested by microorganisms. However, because the tank is sealed, it must occasionally be pumped out to remove sludge buildup. **Cesspools** are similar to septic tanks except that they are not sealed. As wastes enter a system of porous concrete rings buried underground, the water is released into the surrounding soil; solid wastes accumulate at the bottom and are digested by anaerobic microbes.

Treatment of Agricultural Wastes Farmers and ranchers often use **oxidation lagoons** to treat animal waste from livestock raised in feedlots—a penned area where animals are fattened for market. Oxidation lagoons accomplish the equivalent of primary and secondary sewage treatment. Wastes are pumped into deep lagoons and left to sit for up to three months, sludge settles to the bottom of the lagoon, and anaerobic microorganisms break down the sediment. The remaining liquid is pumped into shallow, secondary lagoons, where wave action aerates the water. Aerobic microorganisms, particularly algae, break down organic chemicals suspended in the water. Eventually, the microbes die, and the clarified water is released into rivers or streams. One problem with oxidation lagoons is that they are open, which can be dangerous if floodwaters inundate the lagoons and spread largely untreated animal wastes over a wide area.

Artificial Wetlands Since the 1970s, small planned communities and some factories have constructed **artificial wetlands** to treat wastewater. Wetlands use natural processes to break down wastes and to remove microorganisms and chemicals from water before its final release. Individual septic tanks are not needed; instead, wastewater flows into successive ponds where microbial digestion occurs **(Figure 26.11)**. The first pond in the series is aerated to allow aerobic digestion of wastes; anaerobic digestion occurs in the sludge at the bottom. The water then flows through marshland, where soil microbes further digest organic chemicals. A second pond, which is still and contains algae, removes additional organic material, and the water then passes through open meadowland, where grasses and plants trap pollutants. By the time the water reaches a final pond, most of the BOD and microorganisms have been removed, and the water can be released for recreational purposes or irrigation.



◀ Figure 26.11 Wastewater treatment in an artificial wetland. The majority of the BOD is removed by microbial action in the first pond; natural filtration by plants and the soil removes pollutants and the rest of the BOD. *Why aren't artificial wetlands feasible for major metropolitan areas?*

Figure 26.11 *Major metropolitan areas produce too much sewage and have too little available space for artificial wetlands.*

One drawback of an artificial wetland is that it requires considerable space—an artificial wetland to serve a small community can cover 50 acres of land or more.

Environmental Microbiology

Environmental microbiology is the study of microorganisms as they occur in their natural **habitats**—the physical localities in which organisms are found. Because of their vast metabolic capacities and adaptability, microbes flourish in every habitat on Earth, from Antarctic ice to boiling hot springs to bedrock.

In the following sections, we will explore the roles of microbes in the cycling of chemical elements in soil and aquatic habitats. First, however, we turn our attention to the relationships among microbes and between microbes and their habitats.

Microbial Ecology

Learning Outcomes

26.10 Define the terms used to describe microbial relationships within the environment.

26.11 Explain the influences of competition, antagonism, and cooperation on microbial survival.

Microorganisms use a variety of energy sources and grow under a variety of conditions. They adapt to changing conditions, compete with other organisms for scarce resources, and change their habitat in many ways. In some cases, their effects on the environment are undesirable from a human perspective, but in most cases they are beneficial and essential. The study of the interrelationships among microorganisms and the environment is called **microbial ecology.** The first aspects of microbial ecology

we will examine are the levels of microbial associations in the environment.

Levels of Microbial Associations in the Environment

A variety of terms are used to describe levels of microbial associations in the environment:

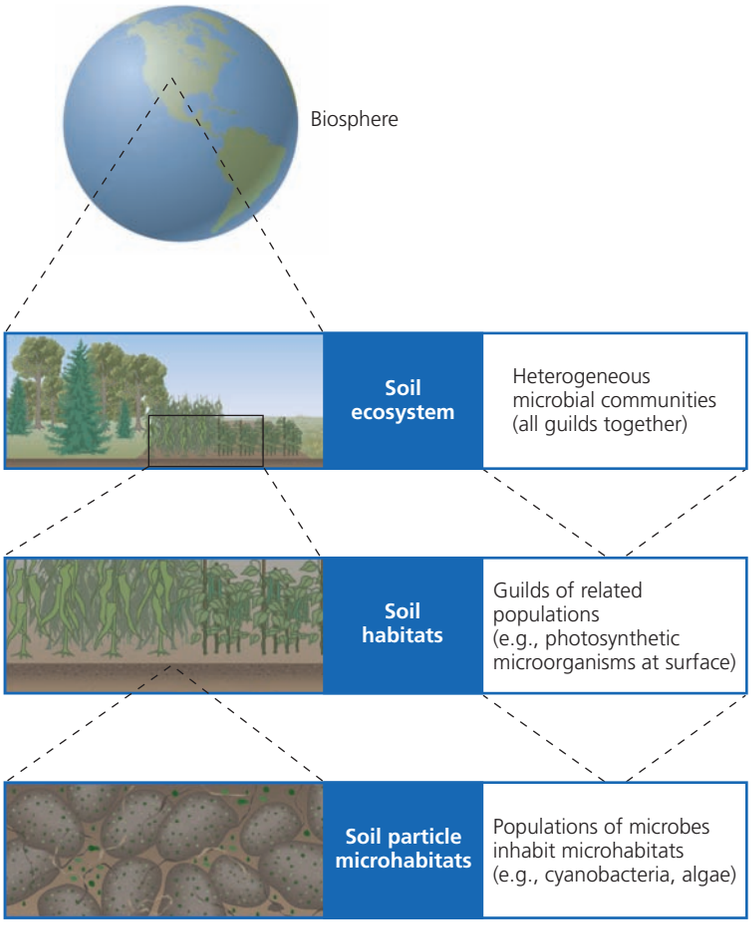
- Similar organisms produce a *population* (all the members of a single species) through reproduction.
- Populations of microorganisms performing metabolically related processes make up groups called *guilds.* For example, anaerobic fermenters in a habitat make up a guild.
- Sets of guilds constitute *communities* that are typically quite heterogeneous; a variety of relationships exist among the various populations and guilds. Only rarely—and usually only in extreme environments—does a community consist of a single population.
- Populations and guilds within a community typically reside in their own distinct *microhabitats*—specific small spaces where conditions are optimal for survival.
- Groups of microhabitats form habitats in which microorganisms interact with larger organisms and the environment. Together, the organisms, the environment, and the relationships between the two constitute an **ecosystem.**
- All of the ecosystems taken together constitute the *biosphere,* that region of Earth inhabited by living organisms.

To illustrate these concepts, consider a plot of garden soil **(Figure 26.12)**. Soil is composed of tiny particles of rock and organic material, each of which forms a microhabitat for populations of microorganisms. Populations are distributed among the soil particles according to the available light, moisture, and nutrients. Populations of photosynthetic microbes, for example, live near the top and form a photosynthetic guild, which provides nutrients to other guilds living deeper within the soil. A soil community is composed of all of these populations and guilds, whose activities are a major factor affecting soil quality. Garden soil is just one type of soil occupying the soil ecosystem, which in turn is just one ecosystem within the biosphere.

Ecologists use the term **biodiversity** to refer to the number of species living within a given ecosystem, whereas the term **biomass** refers to the mass of all organisms in an ecosystem. By either measure, microorganisms are the most abundant of all living things: The number of species of microbes exceeds the number of larger organisms, and the biomass of microorganisms living throughout the biosphere—including places that are uninhabitable by plants, animals, or humans—is enormous.

The Role of Adaptation in Microbial Survival

Lush ecosystems support great biodiversity, but many microorganisms live in harsh environments, where nutrient levels are low enough to limit growth. The harsher the environment, the more specially adapted a microbe must be to survive. Some environments cycle between periods of excess and depletion, and the microbes that live in them must be capable of adapting to



▲ **Figure 26.12** **The basic relationships among microorganisms and between microorganisms and the environment.**

such constantly varying conditions. *Extremophiles*—microbes adapted to extremely harsh temperatures, pH levels, and salt concentrations—are so adapted to extreme conditions that they cannot survive anywhere else.

Biodiversity can be held in check by *competition.* The best-adapted microorganisms have traits that provide them advantages in nutrient uptake, reproduction, response to environmental changes, or some other factor. *Antagonism,* in which a microbe makes some product that actively inhibits the growth of another, may also occur.

Although competition may limit biodiversity, rarely does a microorganism outcompete all other rivals; diversity is the norm, not the exception. Microbes use the waste products of other microbes for their own metabolism. Moreover, one microbe's metabolic activities sometimes make the environment more favorable for other microbes. Biofilms are examples of microbial cooperation.

The relationships among microorganisms and their environment constantly change; each microbe adapts to subtle changes in its environment. Most habitats support successions of microbial populations within a community. By studying how these successions occur, we learn much about the microbes' effects on the environment.

Bioremediation

Learning Outcome

26.12 Describe the process of bioremediation.

Each year Americans produce more than 150 million tons of solid wastes, accumulated from household, industrial, medical, and agricultural sources; most of it ends up in landfills. A landfill is essentially a large, open pit into which wastes are dumped, compacted, and buried. Soil microbes anaerobically break down biodegradable wastes; methanogens degrade organic molecules to methane. When a landfill is full, it is covered with soil and revegetated.

To prevent leaching of potentially hazardous materials into the soil and groundwater, a landfill pit is lined with clay or plastic, and sand and drainage pipes lining the bottom filter out small particulates and some microorganisms. Unfortunately, chemicals and hazardous compounds might still leak from landfills. Some of these substances are potentially carcinogenic (benzene, phenol, petroleum products), others are toxic (gasoline, lead), and still others are *recalcitrant* (resistant to decay, degradation, or reclamation by natural means).

The reason that one synthetic molecule is biodegradable while another is recalcitrant relates to chemical structure; sometimes a subtle variation—perhaps in a single atom or bond—can be enough to make a difference. Most recalcitrant molecules resist microbial degradation because the microbes lack enzymes capable of degrading them; after all, until very recently synthetic compounds didn't even exist.

Bioremediation is the use of organisms, particularly microorganisms, to clean up toxic, hazardous, or recalcitrant compounds by degrading them to harmless compounds. Although most naturally occurring organic compounds are eventually degraded by microorganisms, synthetic compounds are not always easily removed from the environment. Petroleum, pesticides, munitions, herbicides, and industrial chemicals that accumulate in soil and water are degraded only slowly by naturally existing microbes.

A widely known example of bioremediation is the microbial degradation of complex hydrocarbons released in an oil spill (see **Beneficial Microbes: Oil-Eating Microbes to the Rescue in the Gulf**). Cleanup crews can enhance bioremediation by applying nitrogen and phosphorus fertilizers.

The Problem of Acid Mine Drainage

Learning Outcome

26.13 Discuss the problem of acid mine drainage.

Acid mine drainage is a serious environmental problem resulting from the exposure of certain metal ores to oxygen and microbial action **(Figure 26.13)**. Coal deposits are often found associated with reduced metal compounds such as pyrite (FeS_2). Strip-mining for coal exposes pyrite to oxygen in the air, which oxidizes the iron, and bacteria such as *Thiobacillus* (thī-ō-bă-sil´ŭs) oxidize the sulfur. Rainwater then leaches the oxidized compounds from the soil to form sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) and iron hydroxide [$Fe(OH)_3$], which are carried into streams and rivers, reducing the pH enough (pH 2.5–4.5) to kill fish, plants, and other organisms. Such acidic water is also unfit for human consumption or recreational use. The EPA requires that strip mines be reburied as soon as possible to halt the processes.

Underground mining operations pose similar (but somewhat less severe) problems resulting from runoff from mine tailings, which are the low-grade ores remaining after the extraction of higher-grade ores. Typically, subsurface mines are backfilled as richer veins of minerals are depleted, thus limiting the exposure of iron sulfides to oxygen.

While acid mine drainage is generally devastating to the environment, some microbes—mostly archaea—actually

BENEFICIAL MICROBES

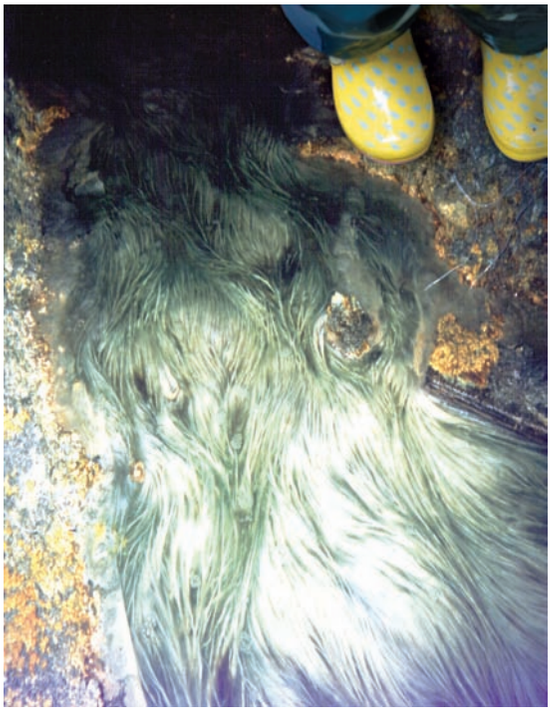
OIL-EATING MICROBES TO THE RESCUE IN THE GULF

In April 2010, the worst oil spill in U.S. history occurred when an oil rig explosion led to the release of millions of gallons of oil into the Gulf of Mexico. Environmentalists, government officials, oil-industry executives, and residents of the Gulf states immediately began efforts to minimize damage to the marine and wildlife habitats caused by this oil spill.

By August, the cleanup crews had removed only about 2% of the oil form the Gulf. The huge oil slick, however, had seemingly disappeared. Where did all the oil go? While some of the oil simply evaporated, scientists determined that a significant portion of the oil was devoured by oil-eating fungi and bacteria, such as *Alcanivorax*. *Alacanivorax* is a bacterium that is native to the Gulf region and is named for its voracious appetite for alkanes, which are a major component of petroleum. *Alcanivorax*, along with other native species of oil-eating bacteria and fungi, metabolized much of the oil, converting it into carbon dioxide and water. Scientists were heartened to see that oil-eating microbes grew and reproduced faster in the warm waters of the Gulf of Mexico than they did in the cool waters off the Alaskan coast where the *Exxon Valdez* spill occurred in 1989.

The long-term effects of the oil spill on the shores of the Gulf are not yet known, though the ecosystem has proved to be surprisingly resilient, thanks in part to the bioremediation efforts of oil-eating microbes.

▲ **Figure 26.13** **The effects of acid mine drainage.** Upon exposure to air, iron in water leached from mine tailings is oxidized to Fe^{3+}; the activity of iron-sulfur bacteria reduces the pH of the water to a level that is destructive to plants and animals.



▲ **Figure 26.14** **An acid-loving microbe.** The filamentous archaeon *Ferroplasma acidarmanus* growing as long filaments in acid mine runoff (pH −3.5) in California. The ore from this mine is rich in iron.

flourish in acidic conditions. One unique archaeal species, found in mine drainage in California, is *Ferroplasma acidarmanus* (fe´rō-plaz-ma a-sid´ar-mă-nŭs; **Figure 26.14**), which lives in a pH near zero and obtains its energy from oxidizing pyrite in mine sediments. Such an organism is just one example of the incredible diversity of microorganisms that colonize every habitat on Earth.

The Roles of Microorganisms in Biogeochemical Cycles

Learning Outcomes

26.14 Contrast the processes by which microorganisms cycle carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and trace metals.
26.15 Explain the work of microorganisms in the carbon cycle.
26.16 Contrast the actions of microbes involved in nitrogen fixation, nitrification, ammonification, denitrification, and anammox reactions.
26.17 Describe the reduction and oxidation of sulfur by microbes.
26.18 Explain the use of microbes in biomining.

Six chemical elements make up most macromolecules—the building blocks of cells. These are hydrogen, oxygen, carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, and phosphorus.

Most elements are tied up in chemical and physical forms unavailable to organisms. The release of many elements from rock, for example, requires years of degradation by rain, wind, and microbes, so these processes contribute little to the day-to-day availability of nutrients for living things. As a consequence, the actions of organisms in recycling elements are the major components of **biogeochemical cycles**—the processes by which organisms convert elements from one form to another, typically between oxidized and reduced forms. Microbes are the primary biological components of the biogeochemical cycles.

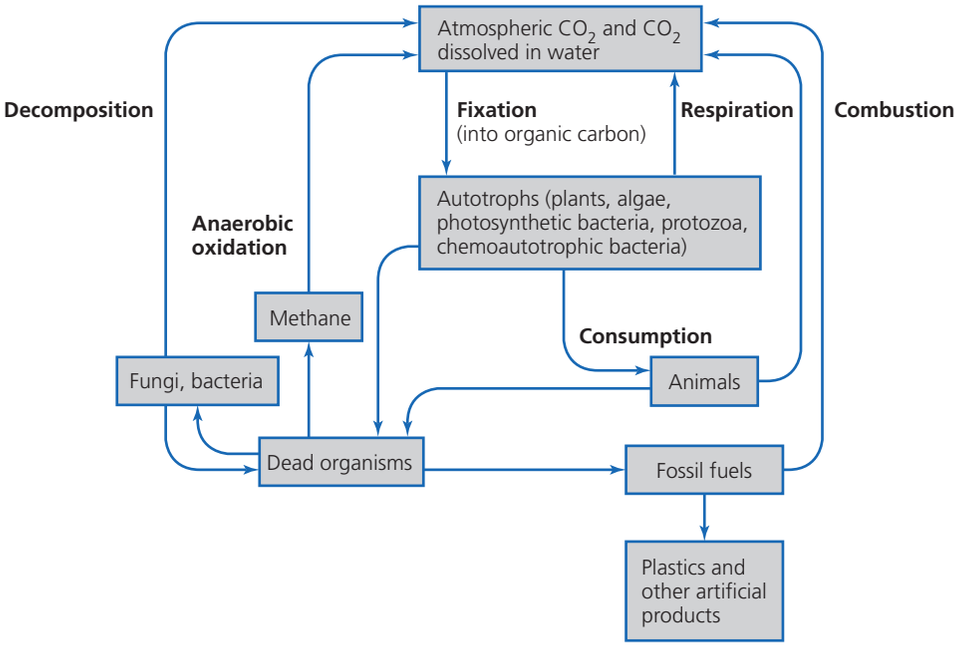
Biogeochemical cycling essentially entails three processes: (1) *production,* in which organisms called producers convert inorganic compounds into the organic compounds of biomass; (2) *consumption,* in which organisms called consumers feed on producers and other consumers, converting organic molecules to other organic molecules, and (3) *decomposition,* in which organisms called decomposers convert organic molecules in dead organisms back into inorganic compounds. As with all cycles, balance is critical. When one part of a cycle becomes skewed relative to other parts, a cycle becomes inefficient, often with detrimental effects.

The following sections examine the biogeochemical cycles for carbon, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and some trace metals.

The Carbon Cycle

Carbon is the fundamental element of all organic chemicals. The continual cycling of carbon in the form of organic molecules constitutes the majority of the **carbon cycle** (**Figure 26.15**). Carbon in rocks and sediments has a very low *turnover rate* (rate of conversion to other forms)—this form of carbon is incorporated into organic chemicals only slowly over long periods of time.

The start of the carbon cycle is autotrophy. Photoautotrophic *primary producers*—cyanobacteria, green and purple sulfur bacteria, green and purple nonsulfur bacteria, algae, photosynthetic protozoa, and plants—convert CO_2 to organic molecules



◀ Figure 26.15 Simplified carbon cycle. The most mobile form of carbon in the cycle is CO_2; this inorganic molecule is fixed by autotrophs, which incorporate its carbon into organic molecules.

via carbon fixation in the Calvin-Benson cycle (see Figure 5.28). Photoautotrophs are restricted to the surfaces of soil and water systems because phototrophs require light. Chemoautotrophs can also fix carbon but acquire energy from H_2S or other inorganic molecules; therefore, chemoautotrophs are found in a greater variety of habitats. However, they do not fix as much carbon as photoautotrophs and are not as important in the carbon cycle.

Heterotrophs catabolize some organic molecules for energy in respiration, resulting in the release of CO_2. Other organic molecules made by autotrophs are subsequently incorporated into the tissues of heterotrophs. There they remain until the organism dies, and decomposers catabolize the organic materials, releasing CO_2—the reverse of autotrophy. Waste products are also broken down by decomposers.

The release of CO_2 starts the cycle over again as primary producers fix CO_2 once more into organic material. A rough balance exists between CO_2 fixation and CO_2 release.

Scientists are concerned by a growing imbalance in the carbon cycle due to an overabundance of CO_2 in the atmosphere. The burning of fossil fuels and wood sends tons of CO_2 into the atmosphere each year. Furthermore, in waterlogged soils, sewage treatment plants, landfills, and the digestive systems of ruminants, methanogens actively release methane gas (CH_4), which can be photochemically transformed into CO (carbon monoxide) and CO_2. Methane-oxidizing bacteria, living in conjunction with methanogens, can also directly convert methane to CO_2. Worldwide, the rate of CO_2 production exceeds the rate at which it is being incorporated into organic material.

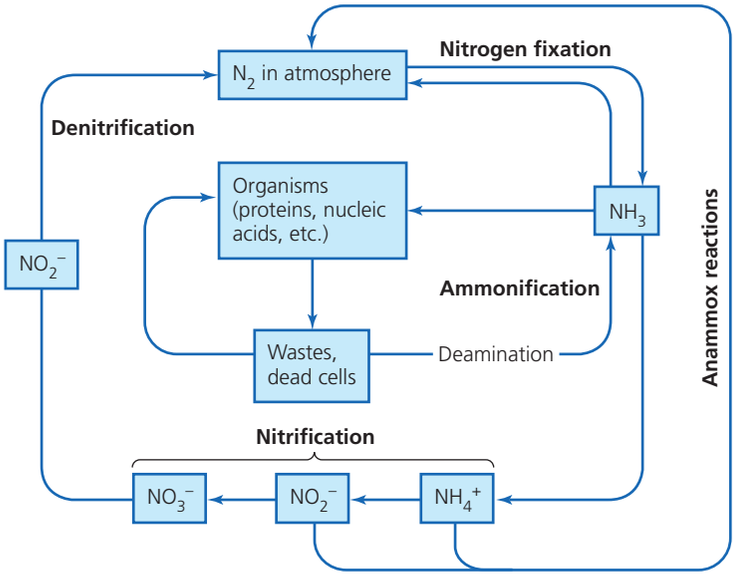
Carbon dioxide and methane are called "greenhouse gases" because their presence in the atmosphere prevents the escape of some infrared radiation into space, redirecting heat back to Earth, much as the glass panes of a greenhouse trap heat. Such global warming can cause climate change.

The Nitrogen Cycle

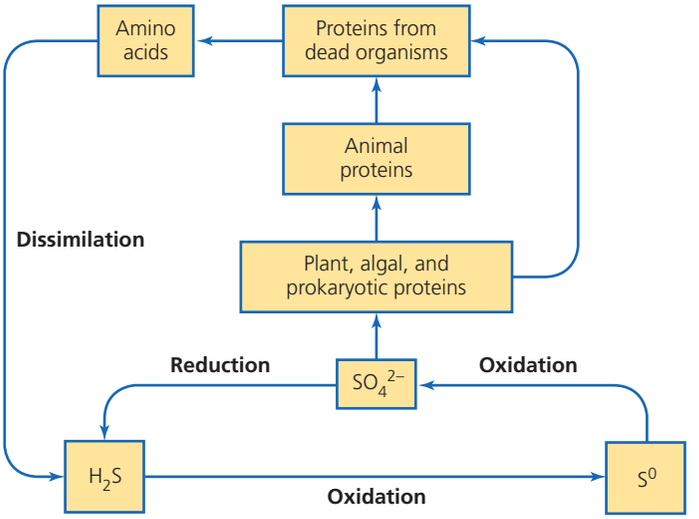
Nitrogen is an important nutritional element required by organisms as a component of proteins, nucleic acids, and other compounds. Most nitrogen in the environment is in the atmosphere as dinitrogen gas (N_2), which is unusable by most organisms. The majority of organisms acquire nitrogen as part of organic molecules or from soluble inorganic nitrogen compounds found in limited quantities in soil and water. These include nitrate, nitrite, and ammonia. Microbes cycle nitrogen atoms from dead organic materials and animal wastes to these soluble forms of nitrogen. They also cycle nitrogen between the biosphere and the atmosphere. **Figure 26.16** summarizes the basic processes involved in the **nitrogen cycle**—nitrogen fixation, ammonification, nitrification, denitrification, and anammox reactions.

Nitrogen fixation, a process whereby gaseous nitrogen (N_2) is reduced to ammonia (NH_3), is an energy-expensive process in which the extremely stable nitrogen-nitrogen triple bond is broken in a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme *nitrogenase.* A limited number of prokaryotes—but no eukaryotes—fix nitrogen.

Nitrogenase functions only in the complete absence of oxygen, a condition that presents no problem for anaerobes. Aerobic nitrogen fixers, on the other hand, must protect nitrogenase from oxygen. They can do this in a number of ways. For example, some aerobes use oxygen at such a high rate that it does not diffuse into the interior of the cell where nitrogenase is sequestered. Some cyanobacteria form thick-walled, nonphotosynthetic cells called *heterocysts* to protect nitrogenase from oxygen in the environment as well as from the oxygen generated during photo synthesis (see Figure 11.13a). Other cyanobacteria fix nitrogen only at night, when oxygen-producing photosynthesis does not occur, thereby separating nitrogen fixation from photosynthesis in time rather than in space.



▲ **Figure 26.16 Simplified nitrogen cycle.** Even though nitrogen gas (N_2) is the most common form of nitrogen in the environment, most organisms cannot use it; to become available, nitrogen from the atmosphere must be incorporated into organic compounds by the very few species of nitrogen-fixing organisms.



▲ **Figure 26.17 Simplified sulfur cycle.** The two main constituents of this cycle are hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) and sulfate (SO_4^{2-}), the fully reduced and oxidized forms of sulfur, respectively.

Nitrogen fixers may be free living or symbiotic. Among the free-living nitrogen fixers are aerobic species of *Azotobacter* (ā-zō-tō-bak´ter), anaerobic species of *Bacillus* and *Clostridium*, and deep-sea-dwelling communities of archaea and bacteria. When they die, these microbes release fixed nitrogen into the soil or water, where it becomes available to other organisms, notably plants. None of the free-living genera are directly associated with the plants they fertilize.

Symbiotic nitrogen fixers, in contrast, live in direct association with plants, forming *root nodules* on legumes (e.g., peas and peanuts; see Figure 11.19). The predominant genus of nitrogen-fixing, symbiotic bacteria is *Rhizobium* (rī-zō´bē-ŭm). In the symbiosis, the plants provide nutrients and an anaerobic environment in the nodules, while the bacteria provide usable nitrogen to the plant. Farmers do not have to apply nitrogen fertilizers to legume crops because nitrogen fixers provide enough.

Bacteria and fungi in the soil decompose wastes and dead organisms, disassembling proteins into their constituent amino acids, which then undergo *deamination* (removal of their amino groups). Amino groups are converted to ammonia (NH_3)—a process called **ammonification.** In dry or alkaline soils, NH_3 escapes as a gas into the atmosphere, but in moist soils, NH_3 is converted to ammonium ion (NH_4^+), which organisms absorb, or ammonium is oxidized.

In **nitrification,** ammonium is oxidized to nitrate (NO_3^-) via a two-step process requiring autotrophic archaea and bacteria. In the most well-studied nitrification pathway, species of the bacteria *Nitrosomonas* (nī-trō-sō-mō´nas) convert NH_4^+ to nitrite (NO_2^-), which is toxic to plants. Fortunately, *Nitrosomonas* spp. are usually found in association with species of the bacterium *Nitrobacter* (nī-trō-bak´ter) that rapidly convert nitrite to nitrate (NO_3^-), which is soluble and can be used by plants. The soluble nature of nitrate, however, means that it is leached from the soil by water and accumulates in groundwater, lakes, and rivers. Certain microorganisms in waterlogged soils perform **denitrification,** in which NO_3^- is oxidized to N_2 by anaerobic respiration. N_2 gas escapes into the atmosphere.

Scientists have recently discovered an important new aspect of the nitrogen cycle—*anaerobic ammonium oxidation,* or **anammox.** Anammox prokaryotes oxidize 30% to 50% of the world's ammonium into nitrogen gas using nitrite as an electron acceptor.

The Sulfur Cycle

The **sulfur cycle** involves moving sulfur between several oxidation states **(Figure 26.17)**. Bacteria decompose dead organisms releasing sulfur-containing amino acids into the environment. Sulfur released from amino acids is converted to its most reduced form, hydrogen sulfide (H_2S), by microorganisms via a process called sulfur *dissimilation.* H_2S is oxidized to elemental sulfur (S^0) and then to sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) under various conditions and by various organisms, including nonphotosynthetic autotrophs such as *Thiobacillus* and *Beggiatoa* (bej´jē-a-tō´a) and photoautotrophic green and purple sulfur bacteria. Sulfate is the most readily usable form of sulfur for plants and algae, which animals then eat. Anaerobic respiration by the bacterium *Desulfovibrio* (dē´sul-fō-vib´rē-ō) reduces SO_4^{2-} back to H_2S. Thus, the two major inorganic constituents of the sulfur cycle are H_2S and SO_4^{2-}.

The Phosphorus Cycle

Unlike nitrogen and sulfur, phosphorus undergoes little change in oxidation state in the environment. Phosphorus usually exists in the environment though often in a metabolically limited amount. Organisms typically use phosphorus in phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}). The **phosphorus cycle** involves the movement of phosphorus from insoluble to soluble forms available for uptake by

organisms and the conversion of phosphorus from organic to inorganic forms by pH-dependent processes. No gaseous form exists to be lost to the atmosphere, but dissolved phosphates do accumulate in water, particularly the oceans, and organic forms of phosphorus are deposited in surface soils following the decomposition of dead animals and plants.

Too much phosphorus can be a problem in a habitat; for example, agricultural fertilizers rich in phosphate are easily leached from fields by rain. The resulting runoff into rivers and lakes can result in **eutrophication** (yū-trō´fi-kā´shŭn)—the overgrowth of microorganisms (particularly algae and cyanobacteria) in nutrient-rich waters. Such overgrowth, called a *bloom,* depletes oxygen from the water, killing aerobic organisms, such as fish. Anaerobic organisms then take over the water system, leading to an increased production of H_2S and the release of foul odors. When excess phosphate (and nitrogen) are removed, such a water system recovers over time.

The Cycling of Metals

Metal ions, including Fe^{2+}, Zn^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Cd^{2+}, and Mg^{2+}, are important microbial nutrients. Though they are needed only in trace amounts, they can nonetheless be limiting factors in the growth of organisms. Many metals—including the most important trace metal, iron—are present in the environment in poorly soluble forms in rocks, soils, and sediments and are generally unavailable for uptake by organisms. The cycling of metal ions involves primarily a transition from an insoluble to a soluble form, allowing them to be used by organisms and to move through the environment.

Generally, oxidized metal ions (those having fewer electrons) dissolve more readily than reduced ions of the some metal. Miners have successfully used **biomining**—a process in which microbes (typically archaea) oxidize copper, gold, uranium, or other metals so that the metals dissolve in water. The miners can then extract the mineral-laden water and reduce the ions, which causes the metals to come out of solution where the miner can collect them.

Biogeochemical cycles are sustained by microorganisms, most of which live in soil. Next we examine aspects of soil microbes and their habitats.

Soil Microbiology

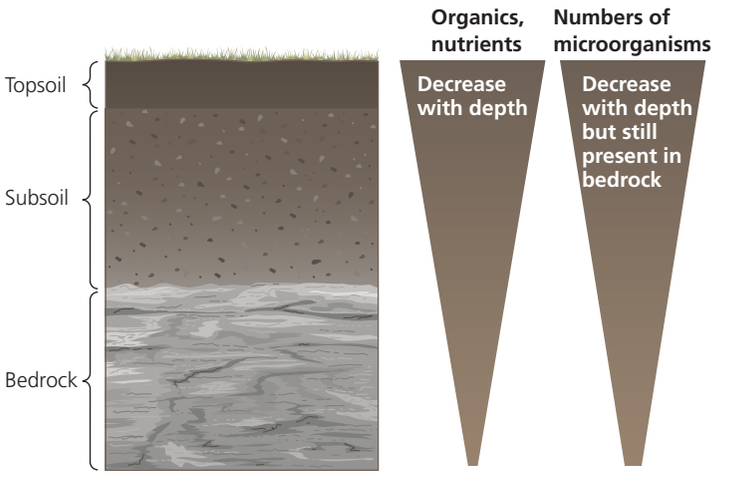
Learning Outcomes

26.19 Identify five factors affecting microbial abundance in soils.
26.20 Describe several human and plant diseases caused by soil microbes.

Soil microbiology examines the roles played by organisms living in soil. They rarely cause human disease, though plant pathogens are prevalent in soils and are agriculturally and economically important.

The Nature of Soils

Soil arises both from the weathering of rocks and through the actions of microorganisms, which produce wastes and organic materials needed to support more complex life forms, such as plants. Soil is composed of two major layers **(Figure 26.18)**: *topsoil,* which is rich in *humus* (organic chemicals), and *subsoil*, which is composed primarily of inorganic materials. Soil overlies bedrock, which contains little organic material. Most microorganisms are found in topsoil, where the richness of the organic deposits sustain a large biomass. Topsoil itself, however, is highly heterogeneous, and therefore different kinds and amounts of microbes are found in various soils around the world.



▲ **Figure 26.18 The soil layers and the distributions of nutrients and microorganisms within them.** Although topsoils in general are richer in nutrients and microbes than are subsoils, the nutrient and microbial content of topsoils is highly variable.

Factors Affecting Microbial Abundance in Soils

Several environmental factors influence the density and the composition of the microbial population within a soil, including the amount of water, oxygen content, acidity, temperature, and the availability of nutrients.

Moisture and oxygen content are closely linked in soils. Moisture is essential for microbial survival; microbes exhibit lower metabolic activity, are present in lower numbers, and are less diverse in dry soils than in moist soils. Because oxygen dissolves poorly in water, moist soils have a lower oxygen content than drier soils. When soil is waterlogged, microbial diversity declines and anaerobes predominate, even at the surface. Weather patterns also affect oxygen content, as the presence or absence of rain water determines moisture and thus dissolved oxygen.

The pH of a soil determines in part whether it is rich in bacteria or rich in fungi. Highly acidic and highly basic soils favor fungi over bacteria, though fungi typically prefer acidic conditions. Bacteria dominate when soil pH is closer to 7.

Most soil organisms are mesophiles and prefer temperatures between 20°C and 50°C. Thus, most soil microbes live quite well in areas where winters and summers are not too extreme. Psychrophiles grow only in consistently cold environments and cannot survive in soils that experience spring thawing; the opposite is true for thermophiles, which cannot survive where winters are harsh.

Nutrient availability also affects microbial diversity in soil habitats. Most soil microbes are heterotrophic, utilizing organic matter in the soil. The size of a microbial community is determined more by the amount of organic material than by the kind of organic material: any soil that has a relatively constant input of organic material, such as agricultural land, supports a wider array of microorganisms than soil that is more barren.

Microbial Populations in Soils

Because of the variety of soils, microbial populations differ tremendously from soil to soil and even within the same soil over the course of a season. Bacteria are numerous and diverse inhabitants of soil and are found in all soil layers, where they often form biofilms. Archaea are present in soils, but the inability to culture many of them has limited our ability to study them. The fungi are also a populous group of soil microorganisms. Free-living and symbiotic fungi are found only in topsoil, where they can form gigantic mycelia that cover acres. Viruses are active within soil microorganisms; they are rarely found free.

Some algae and protozoa also live in soils. Soil algae live on or near the surface because as photoautotrophs they require light. Protozoa are mobile and move through the soil, grazing on other microbes. For the most part, protozoa require oxygen and remain in the topsoil. Neither algae nor protozoa can withstand dramatic environmental changes or the introduction of pollutants.

Wherever present, microbes perform a variety of necessary functions. They cycle nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, and other elements, converting them into usable forms. Microbes degrade dead organisms and their wastes, and some can clean up industrial pollutants. Further, microbes produce an incredible variety of compounds that have potential human uses. Researchers search natural populations of microbes to discover species that produce valuable chemicals or have useful biological functions.

CRITICAL **THINKING**

Microbes are found mostly in topsoil, but some are found miles deep in bedrock. Nutritionally, how do deeply buried microbes survive?

Soilborne Diseases of Humans and Plants

Although the majority of soil microorganisms are harmless, there are exceptions. Soilborne infections of humans generally result from either direct contact with, ingestion of, or inhalation of microorganisms deposited in soil in animal or human feces or urine. In some cases the microbes live and replicate in the soil, but in most cases soil is simply a vehicle for moving the pathogen from one host to another. The majority of soilborne disease agents are fungal or bacterial. Few soil protozoa or viruses cause disease.

Soil pathogens include the bacterium *Bacillus anthracis* (an-thrā´sis), the causative agent of anthrax, which produces endospores shed from the skins of infected livestock. Endospores may remain dormant in soil for decades or centuries. Disturbing the soil can lead to infection if endospores enter cuts or abrasions on the skin (cutaneous anthrax) or are inhaled into the lungs (inhalation anthrax).

Histoplasma capsulatum (his-tō-plaz´mă kap-soo-lā´tŭm) is a fungus that causes histoplasmosis—a serious respiratory tract infection. *Histoplasma* grows in soil and is also deposited there as spores in the droppings of infected birds and bats. The spores can be inhaled by humans when contaminated soil is disturbed.

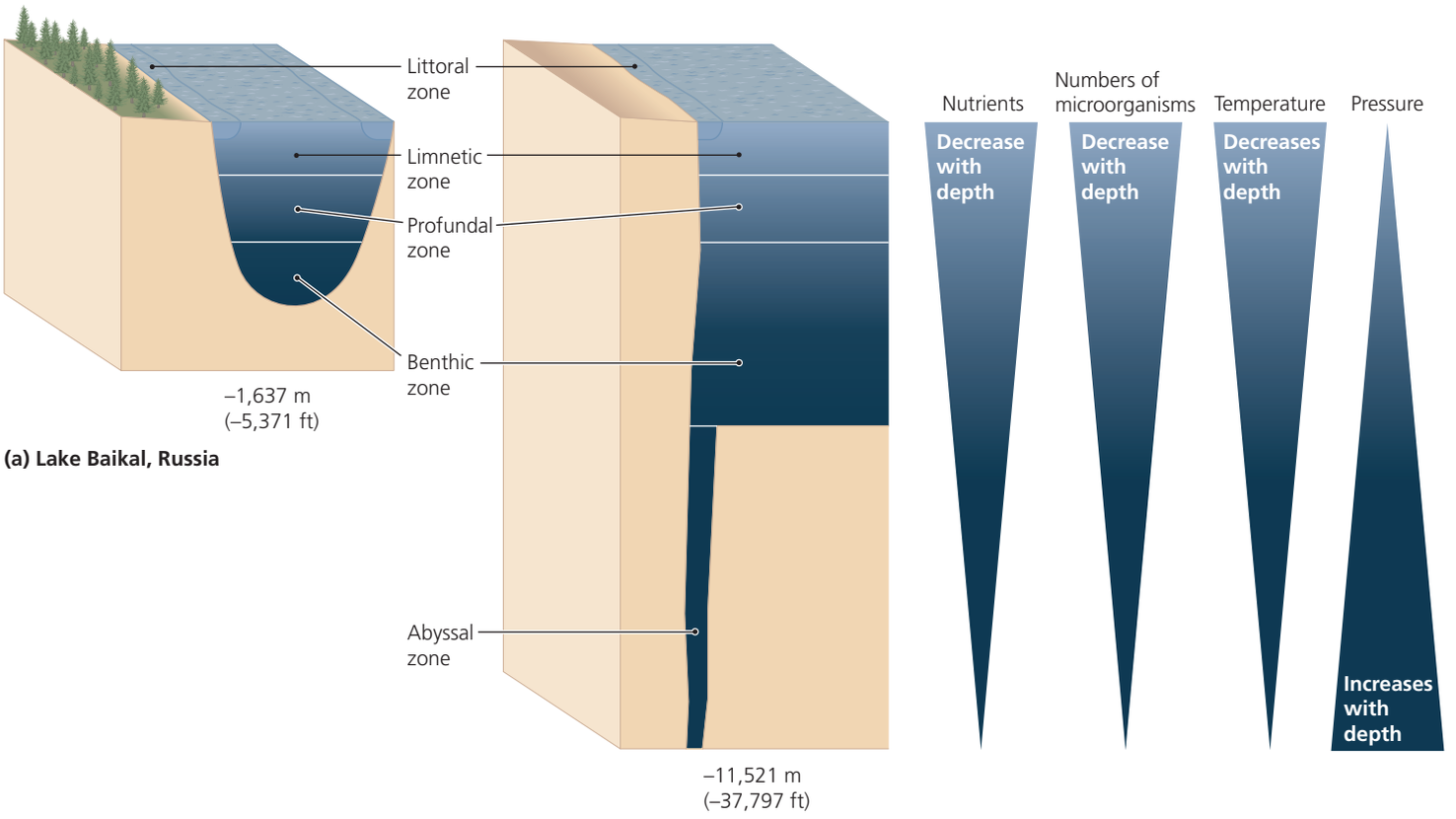
Hantavirus (han´tā-vī-rŭs) pulmonary syndrome is a life-threatening, viral respiratory disease acquired via the inhalation of soil contaminated by mouse droppings and urine containing *Hantavirus* (see Emerging Disease Case Study on p. 432). *Hantavirus* has been found throughout North America.

Soil contains many more plant pathogens than human pathogens. Microbial plant infections are generally characterized by one or more of the following signs: necrosis (rot), cankers/lesions, wilt (droopiness), blight (loss of foliage), galls (tumors), growth aberrations (too much or too little), or bleaching (loss of chlorophyll). Bacteria, fungi, and viruses all cause diseases in plants and spread either as airborne spores, through roots or wounds, or by insects.

Table 26.7 lists selected bacterial, fungal, and viral soilborne diseases of humans and plants.

TABLE 26.7 Selected Soilborne Diseases of Humans and Plants

Microorganism	Host	Disease
Bacteria		
Bacillus anthracis	Humans	Anthrax
Clostridium tetani	Humans	Tetanus
Agrobacterium tumefaciens	Plants	Crown gall disease
Ralstonia solanacearum	Plants	Potato wilt
Streptomyces scabies	Plants	Potato scab
Fungi		
Histoplasma capsulatum	Humans	Histoplasmosis
Blastomyces dermatitidis	Humans	Blastomycosis
Coccidioides immitis	Humans	Coccidioidomycosis
Polymyxa spp.	Plants	Root rot in cereals
Fusarium oxysporum	Plants	Root rot in many plants
Phytophthora cinnamomi	Plants	Potato blight; root rot in many plants
Viruses		
Hantavirus	Humans	*Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome
Tobacco mosaic virus	Plants	Necrotic spots in various plants
Soilborne wheat mosaic virus	Plants	Mosaic disease in winter wheat and barley



▲ Figure 26.19 Vertical zonation in deep bodies of water: (a) Lake Baikal, Russia, the world's deepest freshwater lake, and **(b)** the Mariana Trench in the Pacific Ocean, the deepest place in the ocean. Both deep lakes and oceans can be divided into zones that vary with respect to light penetration, concentration of nutrients, temperature, and pressure—and thus the types and abundance of microorganisms. *Why would a bacterium from the bottom of Lake Baikal die in the Mariana Trench?*

Figure 25.19 *A bacterium from the bottom of Lake Baikal could not survive the even greater pressure and the salinity of the seawater deep in the Mariana Trench.*

Aquatic Microbiology

Learning Outcome

26.21 Compare the characteristics and microbial populations of freshwater and marine ecosystems.

Aquatic microbiologists study microorganisms living in freshwater and marine environments. Compared to soil habitats, water ecosystems support fewer microbes overall because nutrients are diluted. Many organisms that live in aquatic systems exist in biofilms attached to surfaces. Biofilms allow aquatic organisms to concentrate enough nutrients to sustain growth; without forming biofilms, they likely would starve.

Types of Aquatic Habitats

Aquatic habitats are divided primarily into freshwater and marine systems. *Freshwater* systems, which are characterized by low salt content (about 0.05%), include groundwater, water from deep wells and springs, and surface water in the form of lakes, streams, rivers, shallow wells, and springs. *Marine* environments, characterized by a salt content of about 3.5%, encompass the open ocean and coastal waters, such as bays, estuaries, and lagoons.

Natural aquatic systems can be greatly affected by the release of so-called *domestic water,* which is water resulting from the treatment of sewage and industrial waste. Domestic water released into the environment affects water chemistry and the microorganisms living in the water. Changing levels of chemicals cause increases or decreases in microbial numbers. Furthermore, faulty treatment of sewage leads to contamination of natural water systems with pathogenic microorganisms.

Freshwater Ecosystems Microorganisms become distributed vertically within lake systems according to oxygen availability, light intensity, and temperature. Surface waters are high in oxygen, well lit, and warmer than deeper waters. In large lakes, wave action continually mixes nutrients, oxygen, and organisms, which allows efficient utilization of resources. In stagnant waters, oxygen is readily depleted, resulting in more anaerobic metabolism and poorer water quality.

Scientists observe four zones in deep lakes **(Figure 26.19a)**: The **littoral zone** (li´ter-al) is the area along the shoreline where

nutrients enter the lake. The littoral zone is shallow, and light penetrates it; most microbes live here. The **limnetic zone** (lim-net´ik) is the upper layer of water away from the shore. Photoautotrophs reside here and in the littoral zone. The **profundal zone** (prō-fun´dal) is the deeper water beneath the limnetic zone. It has a lower oxygen content and more diffuse light than the previous two zones. Some photosynthetic organisms, such as purple and green sulfur bacteria, perform anaerobic photosynthesis here. Beneath this is the **benthic zone** (bēn´thik), which encompasses deeper lake water and sediments. Anaerobic bacteria in the sediments produce H_2S, which is used by organisms nearer the surface.

In contrast to lakes, streams and rivers are more uniform because organisms and nutrients are swept along and mixed. Biofilms are particularly important in moving waterways, and the majority of organisms live toward the edges, where surfaces are available, currents are less severe, and organic materials enter the water.

Marine Ecosystems Marine ecosystems are typically nutrient poor, dark, cold, and subject to great pressure. Photoautotrophic prokaryotes, diatoms, dinoflagellates, and algae are found near the surface. Most marine waters are extreme environments inhabited only by highly specialized microorganisms. All microbes in marine systems must be salt tolerant and possess highly efficient nutrient-uptake mechanisms to compensate for the scarcity of nutrients.

As with freshwater lake systems, scientists delineate zones in the oceans **(Figure 26.19b)**. The majority of marine microorganisms are found in the littoral zone, where nutrient levels are high and light is available for photosynthesis. The benthic zone makes up the majority of the marine environment. Oceans have a fifth zone—the **abyssal zone** (a-bis´sal), which encompasses deep ocean trenches. Even though the benthic and abyssal zones have sparse nutrients, they still support microbial growth, particularly around **hydrothermal vents** located in the abyssal zone. Such vents spew superheated, nutrient-rich water, providing nutrients and an energy source for thermophilic chemoautotrophic anaerobes, which in turn support a variety of invertebrate and vertebrate animals.

Specialized Novel Aquatic Ecosystems In addition to the two broad categories of water systems just described, many distinctive aquatic ecosystems also exist, including salt lakes, iron springs, and sulfur springs. Each of these systems is inhabited by specialized microorganisms that are highly adapted to the conditions. The Great Salt Lake in Utah, for example, has a salt concentration of 5% to 7%, depending on its level, and contains the extreme halophile *Halobacterium salinarium* (hā´lō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm sal-ē-nar´ē-ŭm), an archaeal prokaryote that thrives in highly saline water.

Biological Warfare and Bioterrorism

The properties of microorganisms that allow scientists to manipulate organisms to make advancements in medicine, food production, and industry also enable humans to fashion microbes into *biological weapons,* which can be directed at people, livestock, or crops. **Bioterrorism,** the use of microbes or their toxins to terrorize human populations, is a topic of major concern in today's world. A topic of growing concern is **agroterrorism**—the use of microbes to terrorize humans by destroying the food supply. International treaties and laws of the United States, Great Britain, and other countries prohibit the use of biological weapons.

Assessing Microorganisms as Potential Agents of Warfare or Terror

Learning Outcomes

26.22 Identify the criteria used to assess microorganisms for potential use as biological weapons or agents of bioterrorism.

26.23 List the characteristics of microbes that make them threats as agents of biological warfare and bioterrorism.

Many microorganisms cause disease, but not all disease-causing organisms have potential as biological weapons. Governments establish criteria for evaluating the potential of microorganisms to be "weaponized." Establishing such criteria helps focus research and defense efforts where they are needed most and facilitates efforts to develop better response and deterrence capabilities.

Criteria for Assessing Biological Threats to Humans

In the United States, the assessment of a potential biological threat to humans is based on the following four criteria:

- *Public health impact.* This criterion relates to the ability of hospitals and clinics to deal effectively with numerous casualties. The more casualties, the more difficult it is for hospitals and clinics to effectively respond to the needs of all patients. If an agent causes numerous serious cases, emergency response systems could be overwhelmed and even cease to function. If an agent is highly lethal, proper disposal of bodies might become difficult, which would contribute to the spread of disease.
- *Delivery potential.* This criterion evaluates how easily an agent can be introduced into a population. The more people that can be infected at one time, the more devastating a primary attack. If an introduced agent spreads on its own through a population, secondary and tertiary waves of illness will augment the number of casualties. Also assessed as part of delivery potential are ease of mass production (the easier an agent is to produce in quantity, the greater its potential threat), availability (the more prevalent it is in the environment, the easier it is to obtain and weaponize), and environmental stability (the longer it remains infective once released, the greater the threat).
- *Public perception.* This criterion evaluates the effect of public fear on the ability of response personnel to control a disease outbreak following an attack. Agents with high mortality, few treatment options, and no vaccine instill greater fear into a populace, making quarantine (isolating infected and sick patients from the rest of the population) difficult

to enforce. The resulting chaos could dramatically decrease the ability of response personnel to control disease transmission and treat patients.

- *Public health preparedness.* This criterion assesses existing response measures and attempts to identify improvements needed in the health care infrastructure to prepare for a biological attack. Diagnosis and recognition involve proper surveillance and training medical personnel to ascertain whether an attack has occurred. Once an attack has been confirmed, predetermined responses are required to reduce confusion and allow rapid control of the situation. Public health preparedness also involves funding for research and development of new vaccines, treatments, and diagnostic capabilities.

When assessing a threat, each potential bioterrorist agent is given a score for each of the criteria. Agents with the highest total scores are considered the most serious threats.

Criteria for Assessing Biological Threats to Livestock and Poultry

The criteria used to evaluate biological threats to livestock and poultry are very similar to those used to evaluate potential threats to humans and include agricultural impact, delivery potential, and plausible deniability.

Infectious agents prove the most devastating for agricultural livestock kept in large herds or flocks. Many animal pathogens exist naturally in soil or are already endemic in livestock and poultry, so they can be easily obtained and readily grown in large quantities. The highly infectious nature of some agents means that by the time a disease is recognized, much of a herd is infected already, so all must be destroyed in an attempt to control the outbreak. Some pathogens persist even after the animals are destroyed. Many animal diseases are spread either by contact or by inhalation, thus making attack easier for a terrorist. Though highly contagious among animals, most are not infectious to humans, making them "safe" for terrorists to handle.

Criteria for Assessing Biological Threats to Agricultural Crops

Plant diseases are generally not as contagious as animal or human diseases. Threats to crops are evaluated on predicted extent of crop loss, delivery and dissemination potential, and containment potential.

Plant pathogens that either cause severe crop loss or produce toxins are considered the greatest threats. Such agents already exist in the environment and can be readily obtained; however, plant pathogens are not as easily mass-produced as animal agents. Plant pathogens that can be spread systematically through fields by natural means, such as through contaminated soil or by insects, could remain in the environment even after destruction of the target crop. Successive plantings in contaminated fields could result in continued crop loss for as long as the agent persists. Because the causes of many plant diseases are not easily diagnosed, widespread dissemination of such a pathogen could occur before response measures were instituted. Economic losses would be staggering, particularly given that embargos on affected crops would likely remain in place for years after an attack.

Known Microbial Threats

In the following sections we briefly discuss some of the microorganisms currently considered threats as agents of bioterrorism. Note that as threat assessments become more refined and technology advances, the list of known bioterrorist agents is likely to change.

Human Pathogens

The U.S. government categorizes biological agents that could be used against humans into three categories **(Table 26.8)**. *Category A agents* are those with the greatest potentials as weapons. *Category B agents* have some potential as weapons but for various reasons are not as dangerous as category A agents (most lack the potential to cause mass casualties). *Category C agents* are potential threats; not enough is currently known about them to determine their true potential as weapons.

Smallpox currently tops the list of bioterrorist threats. Fortunately, it is difficult for would-be terrorists to acquire viral samples for propagation; it also takes a high degree of skill, in addition to specific containment facilities, to work with smallpox virus. An effective vaccine is available, and the vaccine is effective when administered soon after infection.

Animal Pathogens

Biological agents against animals are also divided into categories, with category A agents being the most dangerous. Whereas many potential agents are spread via inhalation, others are spread by insect vectors, making them less likely to be used as weapons. Some agents infect wild animal populations in addition to livestock, potentially amplifying any outbreak that might occur.

Foot-and-mouth disease virus, the most dangerous of potential agroterrorism agents, affects all wild and domestic cloven-hoofed animals. The virus is spread by aerosols and by direct or indirect contact. Humans can transport it from herd to herd on their person, on farm equipment, or through the movement of animals between auctions and farms. Any appearance of foot-and-mouth disease on a farm requires destruction of entire herds, complete disinfection of all areas occupied by the herd, and disposal of all animals by burning or burial. A vaccine exists but not in sufficient quantities to protect all animals.

Plant Pathogens

Many plant pathogens exist, but the categorization of plant pathogens as terrorist agents lags behind similar efforts for humans and animals. Most potential agents are fungi whose dissemination could easily result in contamination of soils, which would be difficult to neutralize. Attacks against grains, corn, rice, and potatoes are considered the most dangerous, as they would have significant negative impacts on national economies

TABLE 26.8 Bioterrorist Threats to Humans

Disease	Agent	Natural Source
Category A Threats: Highest Priority		
Smallpox	Variola major *(Orthopoxvirus)*	None
Anthrax	*Bacillus anthracis* (bacterium)	Soil
Plague	*Yersinia pestis* (bacterium)	Small rodents
Botulism	*Clostridium botulinum* toxin (bacterial)	Soil
Tularemia	*Francisella tularensis* (bacterium)	Wild animals
Viral hemorrhagic fevers	Filoviruses and arenaviruses	Unknown in most cases
Category B Threats: Moderate		
Q fever (fever + flulike syndrome)	*Coxiella burnetii* (bacterium)	Sheep, goats, cattle
Brucellosis (severe flulike syndrome)	*Brucella* spp. (bacteria)	Livestock
Glanders (pulmonary syndrome)	*Burkholderia mallei* (bacterium)	Horses
Melioidosis (severe pulmonary syndrome)	*Burkholderia pseudomallei* (bacterium)	Horses, livestock, rodents, soil
Viral encephalitis	Alphaviruses	Rodents, birds
Typhus fever	*Rickettsia prowazekii* (bacterium)	Humans
Toxins (especially of *Clostridium perfringens* and Staphylococcus)	Various bacteria	Various
Psittacosis (pneumonia-like syndrome)	*Chlamydophila psittaci* (bacterium)	Birds
Food safety threats (including *Salmonella* spp., *Escherichia coli* O157:H7, *Shigella)*	Various bacteria and viruses	Soil or animals
Water safety threats (e.g., *Vibrio cholerae*, *Cryptosporidium parvum*)	Various bacteria and viruses	Water
Category C Threats: Low Risk		
Nipah virus (encephalitis)	*Henipavirus Nipah virus*	Bats
Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome	*Hantavirus*	Rodents, soil

and food supplies. All of the agents are naturally present, so detecting the difference between a natural outbreak and an intentional attack would be difficult.

Defense Against Bioterrorism

No defense can completely prevent a carefully planned biological attack against any group or nation. However, much can be done to limit the impact of an attack. The key is coupling *surveillance*—the active diagnosis and tracking of human, animal, and plant diseases—with *effective response protocols.*

Because category A human biological agents are not common, the appearance of more than a few scattered cases is highly suggestive that an attack of some kind has occurred. This is one reason the diseases of category A are *reportable;* that is, they must be reported to state departments of health whenever they occur. Active monitoring of reportable diseases allows epidemiologists to quickly determine when unusual outbreaks are occurring. Once an unexpected pattern is seen, diagnostic confirmation can be obtained and, if an attack is deemed to have occurred, appropriate responses implemented **(Figure 26.20)**. Such responses may entail forced quarantine, distribution of antimicrobial drugs, or mass vaccination.

Agroterrorism has become more of a concern with the realization that very little security protects the nation's agricultural enterprises. Livestock and poultry are routinely moved around

▲ **Figure 26.20 One aspect of the response to a bioterrorist attack.** Shown here are biohazard-suited personnel investigating at the time of anthrax-containing mail delivered in Washington, D.C., in October 2001.

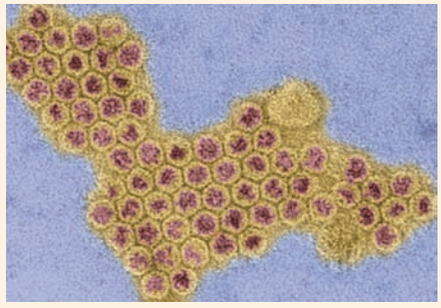
HIGHLIGHT

COULD BIOTERRORISTS MANUFACTURE VIRUSES FROM SCRATCH?

Researchers at the State University of New York at Stony Brook have managed an alarming achievement: They synthesized a fully functional poliovirus from materials that can be readily obtained from any of a number of molecular biology supply companies. After they pieced together sequences of RNA to form a full-length poliovirus genome, they successfully replicated and translated this material in cell-free extracts in test tubes. The resulting nucleic acids and proteins were then able to assemble spontaneously into fully infectious viral agents. The scientists began their work from genetic blueprints that exist in the public domain—in published journal articles and on Internet databases.

The ability to manufacture an infectious agent from scratch using preexisting, published knowledge is an unsettling development. Terrorists may be able to manufacture their own agents in similar fashion—rather than needing to steal agents from research facilities or isolate them from natural sources.

As a result of studies like that at Stony Brook, an ethical debate has arisen over whether such research should be pursued—and, if so, whether the details of such research should be published. Some argue that the pursuit and publication of such research unwittingly aids would-be terrorists; others argue that the dissemination of information is necessary for the effective sharing of research within the scientific community and for science to progress. What do you think?



Polioviruses.

the country without being tested for disease and without being quarantined prior to introduction into new herds or flocks. Infected animals could therefore spread disease as they pass from facility to facility. Compounding the problem is the fact that farms, ranches, auction houses, livestock shows, and irrigation facilities are all open to the public and impose few security measures to prevent purposeful infection of animals. It has been suggested that a step in defending against agroterrorism would be to restrict public access to such facilities. Additionally, effective screening of imported animals and plants would help prevent the introduction of foreign pathogens into the United States. Further, better diagnostic techniques, vaccines, and treatments need to be developed for animal pathogens.

The Roles of Recombinant Genetic Technology in Bioterrorism

Recombinant genetic technology could be used to create new biological threats or modify existing ones so that, for example, vaccines against them no longer work. Traits of various agents could be combined to create novel agents for which no immunity exists in the population.

In addition to the manipulation of existing threat agents, the techniques of recombinant DNA technology enable the synthesis of agents from scratch. Terrorists could, in theory, make their own microbes. To learn about the production of a completely manufactured poliovirus, see **Highlight: Could Bioterrorists Manufacture Viruses from Scratch?** Poliovirus is a relatively simple virus. There is no guarantee that such a process would work for more complex agents such as smallpox.

The techniques of recombinant genetic technology may also be used to thwart bioterrorism. Scientists can identify unique genetic sequences—"fingerprints" or signatures—of recombinants, which may aid in tracking biological agents and determining their source. Genetic techniques may also help in developing vaccines and treatments, and recombinant DNA technology could be used to create pathogen-resistant crops.

CRITICAL THINKING

Compare human, animal, and plant pathogens that could be used as biological agents in terms of environmental survivability. Why are animal and plant pathogens more common in environmental reservoirs than are human pathogens?

Chapter Review and Practice

Chapter Summary

Food Microbiology (pp. 757–769)

1. The commercial use of microorganisms is referred to as **applied microbiology** and includes two distinct fields: food microbiology and industrial microbiology.
2. **Food microbiology** involves the use of microorganisms in food production and the prevention of foodborne illnesses. In this context, **fermentations** involve desirable changes to food; **spoilage** involves undesirable changes to food.
3. Food fermentations involve the use of **starter cultures**—known organisms that carry out specific and reproducible fermentation reactions. For most of the great variety of fermented vegetables, meats, and dairy products, starter cultures of lactic acid bacteria are used. The acid produced results in "sour" flavors.
4. Alcoholic fermentations, usually performed by yeasts, convert sugars to ethanol and carbon dioxide. Alcoholic fermentation is used in the production of wine, distilled spirits, beer, vinegar, and bread.
5. Intrinsic factors of food spoilage are properties of the food itself, such as moisture content and physical structure, that determine how susceptible a food is to spoilage. Extrinsic factors of food spoilage include ways in which the food is handled.
6. Industrial processes preserve food via canning, pasteurization, drying, freeze drying **(lyophilization),** irradiation, and aseptic packaging techniques. Natural and artificial preservatives are added to some foods to inhibit microbial growth. In stores and at home, foods should be properly stored in appropriate containers, cold foods should be kept cold, foods should be cooked thoroughly, and leftovers should be refrigerated to reduce spoilage.
7. Food poisoning is a general term that describes instances of **food infections** (illnesses due to the consumption of living microbes) or **food intoxications** (illnesses due to the consumption of microbial toxins). Food poisoning frequently follows poor food handling.

Industrial Microbiology (pp. 764–774)

1. **Industrial microbiology** is concerned with the use of microorganisms for the production of commercially valuable materials. Such industrial fermentations synthesize desired products and can use genetically modified microbes.
2. Batch production is the growth of organisms followed by harvesting of the entire culture and its products. Continuous flow production involves the constant addition of nutrients to a culture and the removal of the products formed. Products may be either primary metabolites (produced during active growth) or secondary metabolites (produced during the stationary phase).
3. Microorganisms produce a variety of useful products, including enzymes, dyes, alternative fuels, plastics, pharmaceuticals, pesticides, biosensors, and bioreporters. Alternative fuels (biofuels) can be produced from products of photosynthesis or by fermentation of biomass into fuel. **Biosensors** combine microbes and electronics to detect microbial activity in the environment. **Bioreporters** use microbes alone as sensors.
4. **Potable** drinking water is derived via water treatment, which involves the removal of microbes and of organic and inorganic contaminants from water. **Polluted** water contains organisms or chemicals at unsafe levels. Some diseases result from consumption of polluted water or of food harvested from polluted water.
5. Water treatment involves four steps: **sedimentation, flocculation, filtration,** and **disinfection.** Sedimentation removes large materials. In flocculation, alum combines with suspended materials to make them precipitate. Filtration, using either slow or rapid sand filters, removes microorganisms and chemicals. Disinfection, usually chlorination, kills most microbes that remain after filtration. Water is potable following treatment if it has zero coliforms per 100 ml of water, as determined by one of several testing methods (MPN, membrane filtration, ONPG/MUG test).
6. **Wastewater** (sewage) refers to water used for washing or flushed from toilets. Wastewater treatment involves the removal of solids, organic chemicals, and microorganisms. **BOD (biochemical oxygen demand)** is a measure of the amount of oxygen required to fully metabolize organic wastes.
7. Municipal wastewater treatment involves four phases. Primary treatment entails sedimentation of large materials (primary **sludge**) and flocculation. Secondary treatment involves sedimentation of secondary sludge as well as the removal of microorganisms and organic material using activated sludge systems or trickle filters. In the third phase, effluent water is chemically treated (chlorinated) and released. In the fourth phase, primary and secondary sludge is digested and dried to produce landfill. Methane gas can also be recovered during the processing of sludge.
8. **Septic tanks** and **cesspools** are home equivalents of municipal wastewater treatment. After wastewater leaves the home, it is deposited in underground tanks. Sludge settles, and the water is released into the soil, where natural processes remove organic chemicals and microorganisms.

9. **Oxidation lagoons** are used by farmers and ranchers to process animal wastes. Waste is pumped into successive lagoons, where wastes are digested by microorganisms prior to the release of the water into natural water systems.
10. In **artificial wetlands**—found in some planned communities and industrial sites—ponds, marshes, and meadowland remove organic compounds, chemicals, and microorganisms from sewage as the water moves through them.

Environmental Microbiology (pp. 774–783)

1. Microorganisms live in microhabitats within larger **habitats,** or physical localities, in the environment. Organisms and habitats together form **ecosystems.** Single cells give rise to populations, populations performing similar functions form guilds, and many guilds together form a community of organisms living in a habitat. The study of the interactions of microorganisms among themselves and with their environment is **microbial ecology,** which is a part of **environmental microbiology** along with studies of microbial habitats.
2. All the ecosystems on Earth form the biosphere. **Biodiversity** describes the number of species living in a given ecosystem, whereas **biomass** refers to the quantity of all these species.
3. Microbes compete for the scarce resources that characterize the majority of habitats. Some microbes actively oppose the growth of other microbes (antagonism), but many microbes cooperate, forming complex biofilms.
4. **Bioremediation** is the use of microorganisms to metabolize toxins in the environment to reclaim soils and waterways. Industrial products are either biodegradable or recalcitrant (resistant to degradation by natural means). Recombinant DNA technology enables scientists to create microbes to degrade some recalcitrant chemicals.
5. Acid mine drainage is an environmental problem in places where ores contain iron. Microbial action on leached iron in water from mines results in the production of acid and ferric iron deposits that acidify water, which is destructive to most plant and animal life.
6. **Biogeochemical cycling** involves the movement of elements and nutrients from unusable forms to usable forms by the activities of microorganisms. These processes involve production of new biomass, consumption of existing biomass, and decomposition of dead biomass for reuse in the cycle. The four major biogeochemical cycles are the **carbon, nitrogen, sulfur,** and **phosphorus cycles.** The cycling of trace metals is also important.
7. In the **carbon cycle,** CO_2 is fixed by photoautotrophs and chemoautotrophs into organic molecules, which are used by other organisms. Organic carbon is converted back to CO_2 in aerobic respiration, by decomposition, and by combustion.
8. In the **nitrogen cycle,** nitrogen gas in the atmosphere is converted to ammonia via a process called **nitrogen fixation.** Ammonia may be converted to nitrate via a two-step process called **nitrification.** Organisms also use ammonia and nitrate to make nitrogenous compounds. Such compounds in wastes and dead cells are converted back to ammonia via **ammonification.** Nitrate can be converted to nitrogen gas by **denitrification. Anammox** prokaryotes oxidize ammonium anaerobically into nitrogen.
9. In the **sulfur cycle,** sulfur moves between several inorganic oxidation states (primarily H_2S, SO_4^{2-}, and S^0) and proteins.
10. The **phosphorus cycle** involves the conversion of PO_4^{3-} among organic and inorganic forms.
11. **Biomining** is a process that uses microorganisms (usually archaea) to oxidize metals in rocks to make a soluble ion. Mineral-laden water is collected and subjected to a reducing regimen, and the metal ions solidify.
12. **Eutrophication**—the overgrowth of microorganisms in aquatic systems—can result from the presence of excess nitrogen and phosphorus, which act as fertilizers. The overgrowth of microbes depletes the oxygen in the water, resulting in the death of fish and other animals.
13. Soil microbiology is the study of the roles of microbes in the ground. Soils are fairly diverse and differ greatly in nutrients, water content, pH, oxygen content, and temperature. Microbes inhabit topsoil in high numbers and are less abundant in deeper rock and sediments. Pathogenic microorganisms found in soil can be acquired through contact, but often disease follows the consumption of contaminated soil.
14. Aquatic habitats include freshwater and marine water systems. Scientists recognize four zones in freshwater based on temperature, light, and nutrient levels: the nutrient-rich **littoral zone** along the shore, the sunlit **limnetic zone** at and near the surface, the **profundal zone** just below the limnetic zone, and the **benthic zone** on the bottom, which is devoid of light and nutrients. Marine environments have the same four zones plus an **abyssal zone** (below the benthic zone), which is virtually devoid of life except around **hydrothermal vents.**
15. Microorganisms living in aquatic environments typically form biofilms to better accumulate nutrients that are limiting in most nonpolluted water systems.

Biological Warfare and Bioterrorism (pp. 783–786)

1. Of the relatively few microorganisms that can cause disease in humans, animals, and plants, some might be used to purposely infect individuals and are thus potential agents of biological warfare and **bioterrorism.** It is illegal to deploy such weapons. **Agroterrorism** is the deliberate infection of livestock or crops.
2. The degree to which an organism is considered a biological threat depends on several criteria concerning public health impact, dissemination or delivery potential, public perception, and public health preparedness.
3. Human, animal, and plant pathogens are categorized by threat level, with category A agents having the greatest potential to be used for bioterrorism and category C referring to agents whose threat potential needs further study.
4. Defense against bioterrorism begins with surveillance—the reporting and monitoring required for effective response to biological attacks. Diagnoses must be reliable, and efficient control measures must exist to limit the impact of any attack that occurs.
5. Recombinant genetic technology could potentially lead to the development of novel agents or the modification of existing agents to make them more difficult to control in the event of an attack. Such technology could also lead to potential vaccines, cures, or pathogen-resistant crops.

Questions for Review

Answers to the Questions for Review (except Short Answer questions) begin on p. A-1.

Multiple Choice

1. Food fermentations do all of the following except _____.
   a. give foods a characteristic taste
   b. lower the risk of food spoilage
   c. sterilize foods
   d. increase the shelf life of the food

2. Commercially produced beers and wines are usually fermented with the aid of _____.
   a. naturally occurring bacteria
   b. naturally occurring yeast
   c. specific cultured bacteria
   d. specific cultured yeast

3. Which of the following lists foods in order, from perishable to nonperishable?
   a. pasta, cheese, fruit, uncooked ground beef
   b. pasta, fruit, uncooked ground beef, cheese
   c. uncooked ground beef, fruit, cheese, pasta
   d. uncooked ground beef, fruit, pasta, cheese

4. Which of the following would be the best growth medium to use for industrial fermentations?
   a. corn
   b. synthetic medium made by hand
   c. whey from cheese production
   d. brewing mash

5. Biodegradable plastics are made from which of the following microbial metabolites?
   a. sludge
   b. PHA
   c. BOD
   d. alum

6. Strains of the bacterium *Pseudomonas syringae* have been identified as being capable of _____.
   a. producing plastics
   b. producing alternative fuels
   c. fermenting foods
   d. preventing ice formation

7. Which of the following is added during water or sewage treatment to promote flocculation?
   a. sludge
   b. PHA
   c. BOD
   d. alum

8. During chemical treatment of drinking water and wastewater, which of the following microbes is least likely to be inactivated or killed?
   a. algae
   b. viruses
   c. fungal spores
   d. bacteria

9. In which step is most of the organic content of sewage removed?
   a. primary treatment
   b. secondary treatment
   c. tertiary treatment
   d. sludge treatment

10. Microbial communities are composed of _____.
    a. single, pure populations
    b. all organisms in a locale
    c. mixed populations of organisms
    d. a biosphere

11. In the environment, nutrients are generally _____.
    a. limiting
    b. present in excess
    c. stable
    d. artificially induced

12. Most chemical elements exist in the environment as _____.
    a. usable forms in soil and rock
    b. usable forms in water
    c. unusable forms in soil and rock
    d. unusable forms in water

13. In the carbon cycle, microbes _____.
    a. convert CO_2 into organic material for consumption
    b. convert CO_2 into inorganic material for storage
    c. convert fossil fuels into usable organic compounds
    d. convert oxygen into water as a by-product of photosynthesis

14. Nitrification _____.
    a. converts organic nitrogen to NH_3
    b. converts NH_3 to NH_4^+
    c. converts NH_4^+ to NO_3^-
    d. converts NO_3^- to N_2

15. In aquatic environments, most microbial life is found in the _____.
    a. littoral zone
    b. limnetic zone
    c. profundal zone
    d. benthic zone
    e. abyssal zone

16. Which of the following diseases is *not* caused by category A biological weapons agents?
    a. smallpox
    b. plague
    c. Q fever
    d. tularemia

17. Of the following characteristics, which would contribute most to making a microorganism an effective biological warfare agent?
    a. is readily available in the environment
    b. can be spread by contact after original dissemination
    c. cannot be treated well outside of a hospital
    d. is easily identified by symptoms

18. Anammox reactions are _____.
    a. anaerobic and part of nitrogen cycling
    b. anaerobic and part of carbon cycling
    c. aerobic and part of sulfur cycling
    d. aerobic and part of metal ion oxidation

19. Industrial fermentation _____.
    a. always involves alcohol production
    b. involves the large-scale production of any beneficial compound
    c. refers to the oxidation of sugars using organic electron acceptors
    d. is any desirable change to food by microbial metabolism

20. Lyophilization in food preservation is by _____.
    a. cell lysis
    b. gamma radiation
    c. rapid heating
    d. freeze drying

Matching

Match each term with its correct definition.

1. ____ Organisms whose presence in water indicates contamination from feces
2. ____ Compound produced by a bacterium that kills insects
3. ____ Refers to water that is fit to drink
4. ____ Community of organisms surrounded by polysaccharides and attached to surfaces
5. ____ Used in the processing of animal wastes; mimics primary and secondary wastewater treatment
6. ____ Refers to compounds that are resistant to microbial degradation
7. ____ Water that is not bound by solutes
8. ____ Refers to quantity of all organisms present in an environment
9. ____ Process whereby pollutants accumulate to high levels in waterways, causing overgrowth and anaerobic conditions
10. ____ Process of reducing nitrogen from the atmosphere
11. ____ The process whereby organisms actively inhibit the growth of other organisms
12. ____ Undesirable fermentation reactions in food leading to poor taste, smell, or appearance
13. ____ Brief heating of foods during processing
14. ____ Descriptor of the level of organic material present in wastewater
15. ____ Fermentative products produced by microorganisms during stationary phase
16. ____ Process involving oxidation and then reduction of metals

A. Spoilage
B. Water activity
C. Coliforms
D. Pasteurization
E. Secondary metabolites
F. Bt toxin
G. Potable
H. BOD
I. Oxidation lagoon
J. Recalcitrant
K. Biomass
L. Antagonism
M. Biomining
N. Nitrogen fixation
O. Eutrophication
P. Biofilm

Modified True/False

Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false. Rewrite the phrase in italics to make a false statement true.

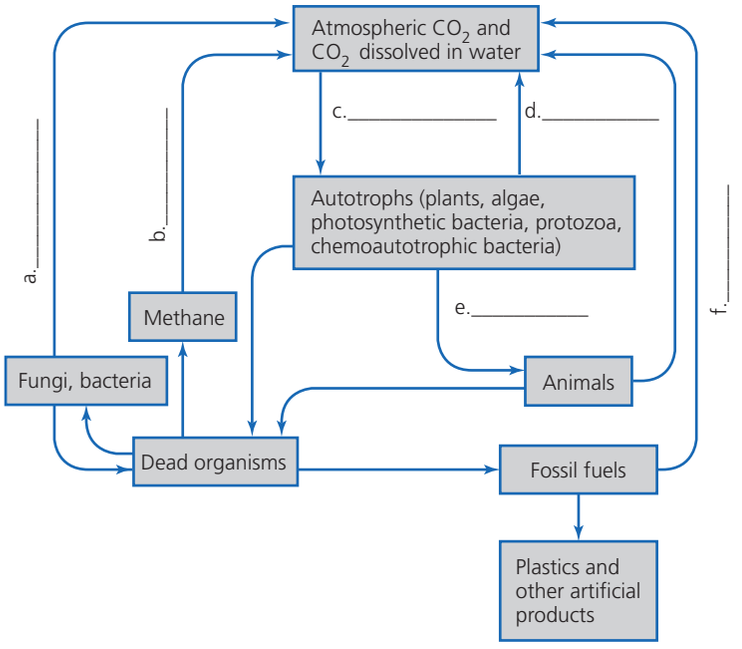
1. _____ The fermentation of dairy products relies on *mixed acid* fermentation.
2. _____ Sauerkraut production involves the *alcoholic* fermentation of cabbage.
3. _____ Pasteurization kills *mesophilic* microorganisms except endospore formers.
4. _____ Methane is a gas produced by microbial metabolism that can be used directly as a *fuel source.*
5. _____ The treatment of drinking water and sewage involves *similar* processes.
6. _____ *Recalcitrant* molecules can be degraded by naturally occurring microorganisms.
7. _____ Biofilms of microorganisms form in *aquatic* environments only.
8. _____ *Cooperation* is common among microorganisms living in microhabitats.
9. _____ Aquatic microorganisms are *more* prevalent near the surface than at the bottom of waterways.
10. _____ *Abyssal* organisms are found near shores of oceans.

Fill in the Blanks

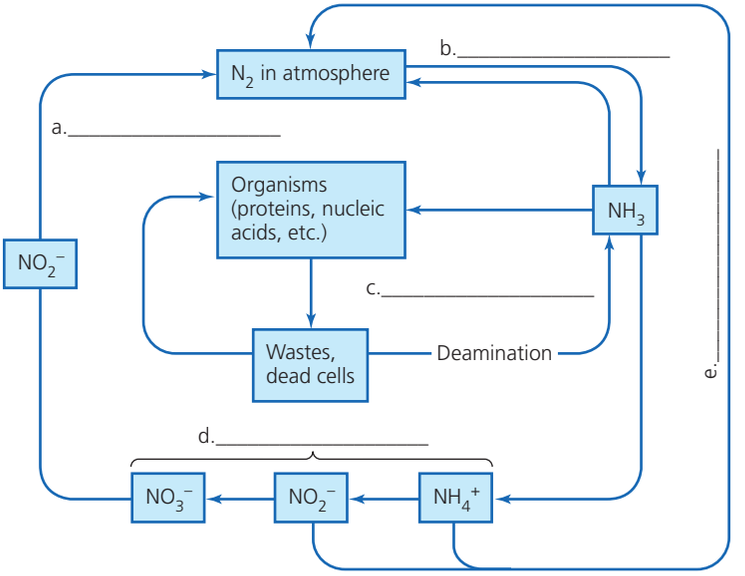
1. Intrinsic factors affecting food spoilage are properties of _____ rather than _____.
2. Leaving foods out at room temperature _____ the likelihood of food spoilage.
3. The two types of industrial fermentation equipment are designed for _____ production or _____ production.
4. Potable water is allowed to have _____ coliforms per 100 ml of water tested.
5. Leaching of compounds from mine tailings often results in the oxidation of two elements: _____ and _____.
6. Biogeochemical cycling involves three primary steps: _____, _____, and _____.
7. Nitrogen exists primarily as _____ in the environment.
8. Phosphorus exists primarily as _____ in the environment.
9. A _____ is a device composed of microbes and electronics used to detect other microbes or their products.
10. _____ is the amount of oxygen required by aerobic organisms to fully metabolize organic waste in water.

Visualize It!

1. Label the general phases in the carbon cycle.



2. Label the processes of the nitrogen cycle.



Critical Thinking

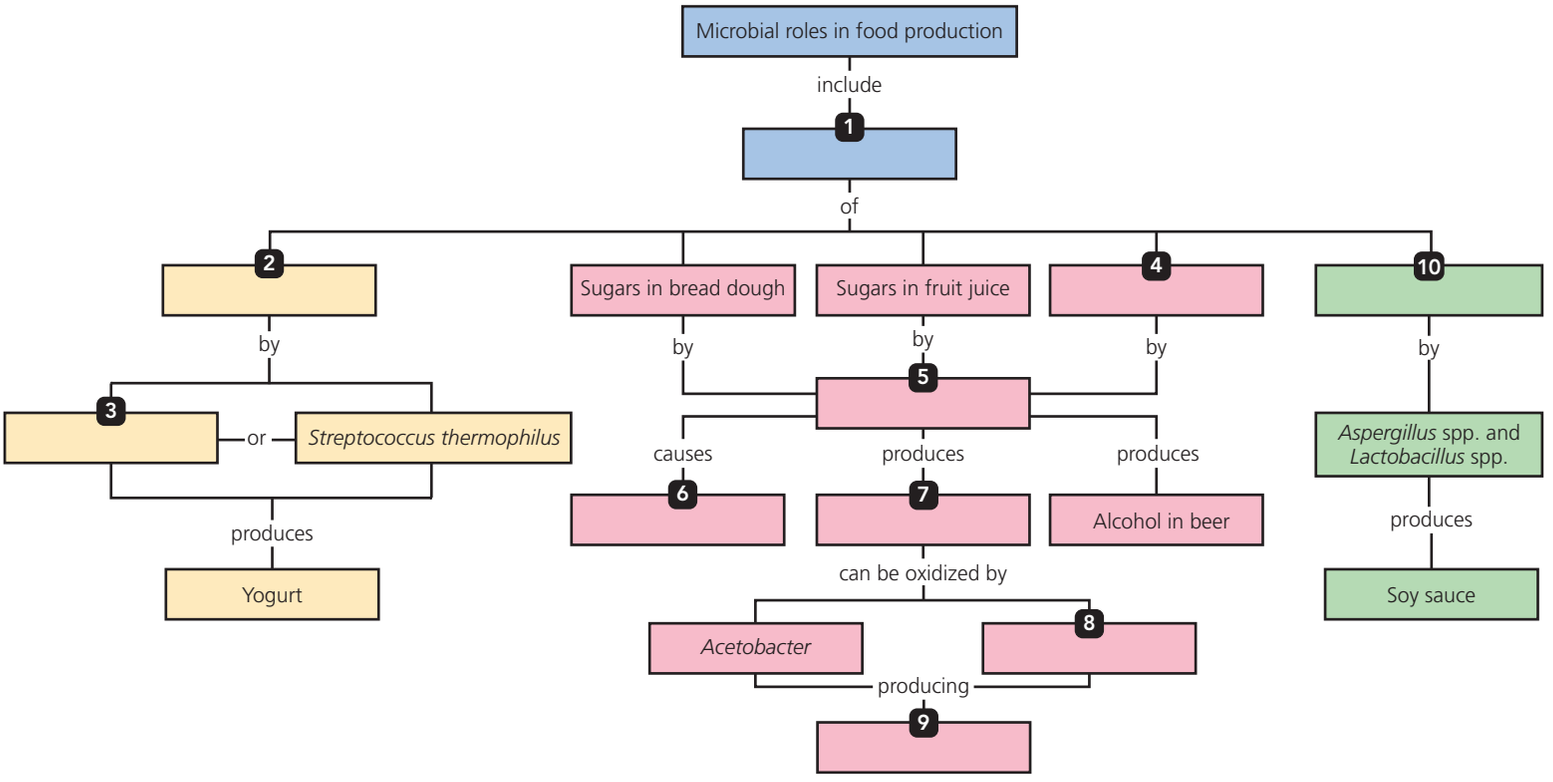
1. Why does the application of recombinant DNA technology to food production have the potential to enhance not only food quality but also food output? Given that it has the potential to feed more people, why are some people opposed to genetic modification of foods?
2. Given what you know about microbial nutrition and metabolism, explain why it is technically more difficult to achieve high yields of a secondary metabolite than of a primary metabolite.
3. Compare the types of alternative fuels that could be produced by microbes. Based on starting materials, which would provide the most renewable energy?
4. One way that farmers are attempting to prevent the development of widespread insect resistance to Bt toxin is by planting non-Bt-producing crops in fields adjacent to Bt-containing crops. Insects can infest both fields, but the insects eating the non-Bt plants should survive at a higher rate than those in the Bt-producing field. Why would this prevent the dissemination of resistance to Bt toxin among insects?
5. Even though water and wastewater undergo essentially the same forms of treatment, treated wastewater usually is not put into the water system from which drinking water is derived. Why not?
6. Take a critical look at the garbage in all of your wastebaskets. How much of the material present could possibly be degraded by microbes? How much could be recycled either at a recycling center or in compost? What is left if the degradable or recyclable materials were removed?
7. Given the amount of pollutants and disease-causing microbes that are in soil and water, why don't we see higher incidences of soilborne and waterborne illnesses?
8. Explain why influenzaviruses could be potentially devastating biological weapons.
9. Explain why sake—sometimes called rice wine—would be more accurately described as "rice beer."
10. Inexpensive bulk wines and wines that have been left exposed to air for too long often acquire a "vinegary" smell or taste. Explain why this is so.

Concept Mapping

Answers to Concept Mapping begin on p. A-1.

Using the following terms, fill in the following concept map that describes microbial roles in food production. You also have the option to complete this and other concept maps online by going to the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area.

Acetic acid in vinegar
Alcohol in wine
Bread to rise
Fermentation
Gluconobacter
Lactobacillus bulgaricus
Malt from grains
***Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (yeast)**
Soybeans and wheat
Sugars in milk



Answers

TO CHAPTER REVIEW AND PRACTICE

Answers to Multiple Choice, Fill in the Blanks, Matching, True/False, Visualize It!, and Concept Mapping questions are listed here. Answers to Short Answer and Critical Thinking questions are available for instructors only in the Instructor's Manual that accompanies this text.

CHAPTER 1

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. c; 3. d; 4. a; 5. c; 6. d; 7. a; 8. b; 9. d; 10. d

Fill in the Blanks
1. Martinus Beijerinck and Sergei Winogradsky; 2. Louis Pasteur and Eduard Buchner; 3. Paul Ehrlich; 4. Edward Jenner; 5. John Snow; 6. Robert Koch; 7. John Snow; 8. Louis Pasteur; 9. Louis Pasteur

Visualize It
1. a. cilium; b. flagellum; c. pseudopod; d. nucleus; 2. See Figure 1.12.

Matching
1. J; 2. H; 3. C; 4. C, H, K; 5. B; 6. A; 7. C; 8. E; 9. D; 10. D; 11. I; 12. L

CHAPTER 2

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. d; 3. c; 4. c; 5. b; 6. c; 7. a; 8. a; 9. a; 10. c

Fill in the Blanks
1. valence; 2. nonpolar covalent; 3. ATP; 4. fat, wax, amylase (starch), glycogen; 5. functional groups; 6. hydrolysis; 7. exothermic; 8. products; 9. pH; 10. ribose

Visualize It!
1. Primary structure: light blue strands. Secondary structure: green α-helices, gray β-pleated sheets. The entire molecule represents tertiary structure. 2. See Figure 2.21, every angle formed by lines without a lettered designation represents a carbon atom. Purple box = amino group, orange box = carboxyl group, blue box = side group

CHAPTER 3

Multiple Choice
1. b; 2. b; 3. c; 4. c; 5. c; 6. d; 7. a; 8. a; 9. a; 10. b; 11. c; 12. d; 13. d; 14. b; 15. c

Matching
1. D Glycocalyx; B,H,I Flagella; F Axial filaments; H Cilia; A Fimbriae; C,G Pili; E Hami; 2. A Ribosome; D Cytoskeleton; F Centriole; E Nucleus; I Mitochondrion; G Chloroplast; C Endoplasmic reticulum; H Golgi body; B Peroxisome

Visualize It!
1. a. cytoplasm—contains metabolic chemicals; b. nucleoid—site of DNA (genes); c. glycocalyx—adhesion; d. cell wall—protects against osmotic forces; e. inclusions—stored chemicals; f. flagellum—motility; g. cytoplasmic membrane—controls import and export; h. nucleolus—site of RNA synthesis; i. cilium—motility; j. 80S ribosomes—make proteins; k. nuclear envelope—bounds DNA (genes); l. mitochondrion—makes ATP (energy source); m. centriole—plays a role in cell division; n. Golgi body—packages secretions; o. rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER)—transports proteins; p. smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER)—lipid synthesis; q. cytoskeleton—helps maintain cell shape
2. (in order, top to bottom): axial filament (endoflagella), peritrichous, polar (tuft), polar (single)

Concept Mapping
1. Gram-positive cell wall; 2. Teichoic acids; 3. Gram-negative cell wall; 4. Periplasm; 5. Peptidoglycan; 6. Glycan chains; 7. *N*-acetylglucosamine; 8. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS); 9. Porin; 10. Lipid A

CHAPTER 4

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. d; 3. c; 4. d; 5. d; 6. d; 7. b; 8. a; 9. a; 10. d

Fill in the Blanks
1. 600X
2. heat fixation
3. increases, increases, more
4. Contrast
5. negatively

Visualize It!
1. a. scanning electron; b. bright-field light; c. phase-contrast light; d. fluorescent light; e. transmission electron; f. differential interference contrast (Nomarski);
2. See Figure 4.4.

Concept Mapping
1. Iodine; 2. Ethanol and acetone; 3. Safranin; 4. Primary stain; 5. Decolorizer; 6. Gram-positive bacteria; 7. Purple; 8. Gram-negative bacteria; 9. Thin peptidoglycan layer

CHAPTER 5

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. a; 3. c; 4. a; 5. a; 6. c; 7. b; 8. d; 9. a; 10. c; 11. d; 12. d; 13. a; 14. a; 15. a; 16. c; 17. a; 18. c; 19. a; 20. c

Matching
1. C; 2. B; 3. E; 4. A

Fill in the Blanks
1. the original reaction center chlorophyll; 2. 2; 3. pentose phosphate, Entner-Doudoroff; 4. The Krebs cycle; 5. Oxygen or 1/2 O_2; 6. NO_3^-, SO_4^{2-}, CO_3^{2-}; 7. inorganic;
8.

Category of enzyme	Description
Hydrolase	Catabolizes substrate by adding water
Isomerase	Rearranges atoms
Ligase/polymerase	Joins two molecules together
Transferase	Moves functional groups
Oxidoreductase	Adds or removes electrons
Lyase	Splits large molecules

9. chemiosmosis; 10. NAD^+, FAD

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 5.12.
2. a. Glycolysis (cytosol); b. Electron transport chains (cristae); c. Krebs cycle (matrix)

CHAPTER 6

Multiple Choice
1. b; 2. c; 3. b; 4. a; 5. b; 6. b; 7. d; 8. a; 9. c; 10. a; 11. b; 12. d; 13. c; 14. a; 15. a

Fill in the Blanks
1. carbon, energy, electrons; 2. singlet; 3. nitrogen; 4. Growth factors; 5. minimum growth temperature; 6. osmotic; 7. halophiles; 8. Carotenoid; 9. fixation; 10. streak plate

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 6.3; 2. Beta-hemolysis

CHAPTER 7

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. c; 3. d; 4. c; 5. d; 6. a; 7. a; 8. d; 9. a; 10. c; 11. c; 12. d; 13. a; 14. d; 15. c; 16. b; 17. d; 18. c; 19. b; 20. c; 21. b; 22. b; 23. a; 24. d; 25. b

Fill in the Blanks
1. initiation of transcription, elongation of the RNA transcript, termination of transcription; 2. codon; 3. silence, missense, nonsense; 4. frameshift; 5. promoter, operator, a series of genes; 6. inducible; 7. semiconservative; 8. transformation, transduction, bacterial conjugation; 9. Transposons; 10. Crossing over; 11. Transfer; 12. small interfering, micro

Visualize It!
1. a. replication fork; b. stabilizing proteins; c. Nucleotide (triphosphate); d. leading strand; e. helicase; f. primase; g. DNA polymerase III; h. RNA primer; i. Okazaki fragments; j. DNA polymerase I; k. lagging strand; l. DNA ligase;
2. GC base pairing is more stable than AT pairing because GC base pairs are held together by three hydrogen bonds. Therefore, the portion of the pictured molecule that appears as a single, thick structure has more GC base pairs than does the portion that has separated into two strands, forming a loop.

CHAPTER 8

Multiple Choice
1. d; 2. b; 3. c; 4. d; 5. a; 6. c; 7. c; 8. b; 9. a; 10. d

Modified True/False
1. *cut DNA at specific sites*; 2. True; 3. *Electrophoresis*; 4. True; 5. *Southern blotting*

Visualize It!
1. Step 1, denaturation: 94°C; step 2, priming: DNA primer, deoxyribonucleotide triphosphates, DNA polymerase, cool to 65°C; step 3, extension: same reagents as step 2, 72°C; step 4, repeat;
2. None of the DNA fingerprints exactly match the standard, but DNA from patients 167, 179, 165, 173, and 317 is very close; they likely have the disease. Patient 177 may be infected.

Concept Mapping
1. Mutagens; 2. Reverse transcriptase; 3. Restriction enzymes; 4. Blunt ends; 5–6. Transposons, Plasmids; 7. Southern blot; 8. DNA probes; 9–10. Radioactive, Fluorescent; 11–13. Electroporation, Protoplast fusion, Injection

CHAPTER 9

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. b; 3. d; 4. d; 5. d; 6. a; 7. d; 8. d; 9. c; 10. a; 11. d; 12. d; 13. a; 14. c; 15. c; 16. b; 17. a; 18. d; 19. d; 20. a

Visualize It!
1. a. 1 min; b. 2.5 minutes
2. Ions of copper and zinc from the brass have antimicrobial effects.

CHAPTER 10

Multiple Choice
1. d; 2. a; 3. a; 4. c; 5. d; 6. c; 7. a; 8. d; 9. a; 10. d

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 10.4; 2. Etest; antimicrobial sensitivity and minimum inhibitory concentration; 1.5 (unit unknown)

Concept Mapping
1. Mutation; 2. Cell division; 3–5. Transduction, Transformation, Conjugation; 6. Pathogen's enzymes; 7. Beta-lactamase; 8. Penicillin; 9. Entry of antimicrobials into cell; 10. Altered targets; 11. Efflux pumps

CHAPTER 11

Modified True/False
1. *asexually;* 2. *vibrio;* 3. True; 4. *Elementary;* 5. *rRNA;* 6. True; 7. True; 8. True; 9. *Epulopiscium*; 10. True

Matching
1. E; 2. B; 3. C; 4. D; 5. L; 6. K; 7. H; 8. Q; 9. I; 10. N; 11. P; 12. O; 13. M; 14. F; 15. A

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. a; 3. c; 4. d; 5. a; 6. d; 7. a; 8. b; 9. c; 10. d

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 11.1; 2. a) central b) subterminal

CHAPTER 12

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. d; 3. c; 4. b; 5. a; 6. d; 7. b; 8. c; 9. a; 10. c; 11. c; 12. a; 13. d; 14. a; 15. d

Matching
First section: 1. E; 2. B; 3. D; 4. C; 5. A
Second section: 1. A; 2. F; 3. E; 4. C; 5. D; 6. B
Third section: 1. C; 2. E; 3. B; 4. D; 5. A

Visualize It!
1. a. ascospore, sexual; b. basidiospore, sexual; c. conidia, asexual; d. sporangiospore, asexual;
2. See Figure 12.19.

Fill in the Blanks
1. protozoology; 2. mycology; 3. phycology; 4. mycoses; 5. radiolarians

CHAPTER 13

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. c; 3. a; 4. a; 5. b; 6. c; 7. a; 8. d; 9. d; 10. b

Matching
1. H; 2. G; 3. C; 4. B; 5. D; 6. E; 7. F; 8. A; 9. J; 10. I

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 13.8.
2. See Figure 13.5.

Concept Mapping
1. Attachment; 2. Uncoating; 3. Synthesis; 4. Release; 5. Host cell; 6–7. Endocytosis, Fusion; 8. Viral nucleic acid; 9–14. dsDNA; ssDNA; +ssRNA retrovirus; +ssRNA; –ssRNA; dsRNA 15. Viral proteins; 16. New virions; 17–18. Budding, Exocytosis

CHAPTER 14

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. b; 3. b; 4. a; 5. d; 6. a; 7. d; 8. c; 9. a; 10. d; 11. d; 12. b; 13. c; 14. d; 15. b

Fill in the Blanks
1. pathogen; 2. asymptomatic or subclinical; 3. etiology; 4. epidemiology; 5. zoonoses; 6. fomites; 7. Nosocomial; 8. prevalence; 9. biological; 10. lipid A

Visualize It!
1. a. Endemic (or sporadic); b. Epidemic; c. Pandemic

CHAPTER 15

Multiple Choice
1. d; 2. d; 3. b; 4. a; 5. d; 6. c; 7. d; 8. b; 9. a; 10. d

Modified True/False
1. *dead;* 2. True; 3. True; 4. True; 5. *monocytes;* 6. True; 7. *pathogen;* 8. *ingestion;* 9. *phagolysosomes;* 10. *pathogen's cytoplasmic membrane;* 11. *inflammation;* 12. True; 13. True; 14. *antimicrobial peptides;* 15. True

Matching
First section: 1. B; 2. B; 3. B; 4. B; 5. A; 6. B; 7. A; 8. B; 9. A; 10. A; 11. A; 12. B; 13. A; 14. C; 15. A
Second section: 1. J; 2. E; 3. G; 4. D; 5. C; 6. H; 7. A; 8. B; 9. F; 10. I

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 15.6.
2. See Figure 15.5

Concept Mapping
1–4. Neutrophils, Eosinophils, Dendritic cells, Macrophages; 5. Chemotaxis; 6. Adherence; 7. Ingestion; 8. Killing; 9. Elimination; 10. Chemotactic factors; 11. Opsonins; 12. Phagosome; 13. Lysosome; 14. Phagolysosome; 15. Exocytosis

CHAPTER 16

Multiple Choice
1. b; 2. e; 3. e; 4. b; 5. d; 6. a; 7. c; 8. d; 9. e; 10. a

Modified True/False
1. *antigen-presenting cells;* 2. True; 3. *cytotoxic;* 4. *Plasma cells;* 5. *antibody*

Matching
1. D Plasma cell; C Cytotoxic cell; B Th2 cell; A Dendritic cell; 2. D Artificially acquired passive immunotherapy; A Naturally acquired active immunity; B Naturally acquired passive immunity; C Artificially acquired active immunity

Visualize It!
1. See Figures 16.4 and 16.5; 2. MHC I and MHC II are found on the cytoplasmic membrane; pseudopods are the thin, finger-like extension of the cell; vesicles are the white structures within the cell.

CHAPTER 17

Multiple Choice
1. d; 2. c; 3. b; 4. c; 5. e; 6. e; 7. e; 8. a; 9. b; 10. e; 11. a; 12. d; 13. d; 14. d; 15. c

True/False
1. False; 2. False; 3. True; 4. True; 5. False

Matching
1. D; 2. C; 3. A; 4. B; 5. C; 6. A

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 17.13.
2. Patients 5, 6, and 11 are most likely uninfected; patients 1 and 7 may be uninfected. The other patients have likely been infected.

Concept Mapping
1. Active immunity; 2. Attenuated vaccines; 3–4. Measles vaccine, Varicella vaccine; 5. Microorganisms; 6. Inactivated vaccines; 7. Pertussis; 8. Polio; 9. Immunizations; 10. Subunit vaccines; 11. Adjuvants; 12. Hepatitis B vaccine; 13. Modified toxins; 14. Tetanus toxoid

CHAPTER 18

Multiple Choice
1. e; 2. c; 3. d; 4. c; 5. c; 6. e; 7. b; 8. d; 9. c; 10. e

Modified True/False
1. *Histamine, kinins, and/or proteases are;* 2. True; 3. *red blood cells or non-nucleated;* 4. *type IV or delayed;* 5. *allograft* or *xenograft*

Matching
1. A; 2. D; 3. C; 4. D; 5. E; 6. D; 7. A; 8. C; 9. A; 10. A

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 18.13.
2. a. systemic lupus erythematosus; b. positive tuberculin test; c. rheumatoid arthritis; d. urticaria

Concept Mapping
1–2. Type I hypersensitivity, Anaphylaxis; 3. Allergens; 4–7. Peanuts, Dust mites, Pollen, Bee venom; 8–9. Basophils, Mast cells; 10. IgE; 11–13. Smooth muscle contraction, Vasodilation, Increased vascular permeability; 14–16. Hay fever, Asthma, Urticaria; 17. Anaphylactic shock; 18–19. Antihistamine, Epinephrine

CHAPTER 19

Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. b; 3. d; 4. d; 5. c; 6. b; 7. d; 8. a; 9. d; 10. b; 11. a

Matching
1. A; 2. A; 3. B, F; 4. B; 5. B; 6. B; 7. B; 8. B; 9. B; 10. G; 11. B, H; 12. F; 13. C; 14. B, I; 15. E

Visualize It!
1. a. *Actinomyces*; b. *Staphylococcus*; c. *Bacillus*; d. *Mycobacterium*; e. *Streptococcus*; f. *Clostridium*;
2. See Figure 19.15.

Concept Mapping
1. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; 2. Primary infection; 3. Dormant infection; 4. Disseminated tuberculosis; 5–7. Cough, Blood-tinged sputum, Extensive lung damage; 8–11. Tuberculin skin test, Chest X ray, Acid-fast stain of sputum, Culture on special; media; 12. For 6–12 months; 13–15. Isoniazid (INH), Rifampin, Ethambutol; 16. Antibiotic resistance; 17–18. MDR-TB, XDR-TB

CHAPTER 20

Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. d; 3. c; 4. b; 5. c; 6. d; 7. a; 8. a; 9. d; 10. b; 11. a; 12. a

Matching
1. C; 2. F; 3. D; 4. B; 5. E; 6. A

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 20.8.

2. Top: Gram-negative, lactose negative; Bottom: Gram-negative, lactose positive

Concept Mapping
1. *Haemophilus influenzae*; 2. *Neisseria meningitides*; 3. Respiratory route;4. Healthy carriers; 5. Infants and young children; 6. Vaccines; 7–8. Hib vaccine, Pneumococcal vaccine (PCV); 9–10. Gram stain, Culture; 11. Cerebrospinal fluid; 12. Antimicrobials; 13. Penicillin G

CHAPTER 21
Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. a; 3. b; 4. d; 5. b; 6. a; 7. d; 8. c; 9. b; 10. c; 11. b; 12. b; 13. b

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 21.6b.
2. See Figure 21.6a

Matching
1. C spotted fever rickettsiosis; A Murine typhus; B Epidemic typhus; D Scrub typhus; E HME; 2. A *Rickettsia typhi*; B *Rickettsia prowazekii;* C *Rickettsia rickettsii*; D *Orientia tsutsugamushi;* C *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*; C *Borrelia burgdorferi;* B *Borrelia recurrentis*; C *Anaplasma phagocytophilum*; 3. G *Chlamydophila psittaci*; C *Chlamydophila pneumoniae*; B, D, E, F *Chlamydia trachomatis;* A *Treponema pallidum pallidum*; H *Treponema pallidum pertenue*; I *Treponema pallidum endemicum*; J *Treponema carateum*; K*Borrelia burgdorferi*; 4. E Peptic ulcers; A, B, D Gastroenteritis; C Blood poisoning; A Cholera

CHAPTER 22
Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. c; 3. d; 4. c; 5. b; 6. d; 7. c; 8. b; 9. c; 10. b; 11. b; 12. c; 13. b; 14. a; 15. b; 16. c; 17. d; 18. b; 19. a; 20. b

Modified True/False
1. True; 2. *difficult*; 3. *Systemic mycoses*; 4. True; 5. True; 6. True; 7. True; 8. *immunocompromised*; 9. True; 10. *3–10% of individuals have*

Fill in the Blanks
1. mycelial, yeast; 2. *Blastomyces dermatitidis, Coccidioides immitis, Histoplasma capsulatum, Paracoccidioides brasiliensis;* 3. ergosterol; 4. Mycetomas; 5. *Sporothrix schenckii*; 6. *Cryptococcus neoformans;* 7. *Aspergillus, Candida, Cryptococcus, Pneumocystis, Mucor;* 8. *Candida*; 9. protozoan, fungus; 10. *Claviceps*

Matching
A,C Aspergillosis; B Candidiasis; C Chromoblastomycosis; A Coccidioidomycosis; A Cryptococcosis; B Dermaphytosis; A,C Histoplasmosis; A Hypersensitivity reactions; D Mushroom poisoning; C Mycetoma; C Sporotrichosis

Visualize It!
1. See Figures 22.3, 22.5, and 22.7.
2. a. *Coccidioides*, b. *Candida*, c. *Histoplasma*.

CHAPTER 23
Multiple Choice
1. d; 2. b; 3. a; 4. a; 5. d; 6. b; 7. b; 8. a; 9. a; 10. d; 11. b; 12. b; 13. c; 14. b; 15. c; 16. a; 17. b; 18. d; 19. a; 20. d

Modified True/False
1. *Ingestion*; 2. *corneal scrapings, cerebrospinal fluid, or biopsy material*; 3. True; 4. True; 5. True; 6. True; 7. *Taenia solium*; 8. water plants; 9. True; 10. True

Fill in the Blanks
1. cilia; 2. *Toxoplasma gondii;* 3. *brucei, cruzi;* 4. *Entamoeba*; 5. hypnozoites; 6. *Wuchereria*; 7. *Ancylostoma, Necator, Schistosoma*; 8. *Fasciola;* **9.** *Ancylostoma;* 10. *Enterobius vermicularis* and *Wuchereria bancrofti*

Matching
1. G; 2. E; 3. A; 4. H; 5. C, G; 6. C, G, I; 7. F; 8. B; 9. J; 10. D

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 23.11.
2. a. *Giardia*, 2. *Enterobius*, c. *Plasmodium*, d. *Schistosoma*, e. *Trichomonas*, f. *Trypanosoma*, g. *Entamoeba*, h. *Cryptosporidium*

CHAPTER 24
Multiple Choice
1. b; 2. c; 3. a; 4. b; 5. d; 6. d; 7. d; 8. c; 9. a; 10. c; 11. a; 12. b; 13. d; 14. d; 15. d

Visualize It!
1. a. macule; b. papule; c. vesicle; d. pastule; e. crust; f. scar
2. a. chicken pox, b. Kaposi's sarcoma, c. oral herpes, d. whitlow, e. shingles, f. molluscum contagiosum

Matching
B Chickenpox; A Smallpox; A Cowpox; A Molluscum contagiosum; B HHV-1; B Whitlow; B Shingles; B Burkitt's lymphoma; B Infectious mononucleosis; B Chronic fatigue syndrome; B Cytomegalovirus; C Genital warts; B Roseola; C plantar warts; G progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy; D common cold; E hepatitis b; F fifth disease

Concept Mapping
1. *Simplexvirus*; 2. Latency; 3. Recurrences; 4. Acyclovir; 5. Oral herpes; 6. Fever blisters; 7–8. Gingivostomatitis, Ocular herpes; 9. Herpetic whitlow; 10. Human herpesvirus 2; 11. Genital herpes; 12. Life-threatening; 13–14. Polyhedral capsid, Envelope

CHAPTER 25
Multiple Choice
1. a; 2. c; 3. d; 4. a; 5. c; 6. d; 7. d; 8. b; 9. a; 10. a; 11.b

Matching
K Myocarditis; C Colorado tick fever; A Rabies; G Influenza; F Dengue fever; D German measles; I Acute gastroenteritis; J Ebola virus; B RSV; E Western equine encephalitis; H No known disease

True/False
1. True; 2. False; 3. False; 4. True; 5. True

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 25.19.
2. Flu epidemics occurred in years 10 and 20. The biennial fluctuation is due to antigenic drift; epidemics result from antigenic shift.

Concept Mapping
1. Acute; 2. Chronic; 3. Cirrhosis of the liver; 4. Hepatitis A; 5. Hepatitis A virus (HAV); 6. Mild; 7. Hepatitis A vaccine; 8. Hepatitis B; 9. Hepatitis B virus (HBV); 10. Chronic disease; 11. Blood test for antibodies (IgM); 12. Hepatitis B vaccine; 13. Hepatitis C; 14. Hepatitis C virus (HCV); 15. Carrier state; 16. PCR or blood test for antibodies

CHAPTER 26
Multiple Choice
1. c; 2. d; 3. c; 4. c; 5. b; 6. d; 7. d; 8. b; 9. b; 10. c; 11. a; 12. c; 13. a; 14. c; 15. a; 16. c; 17. b; 18. a; 19. b; 20. d

Matching
1. C; 2. F; 3. G; 4. P; 5. I; 6. J; 7. B; 8. K; 9. O; 10. N; 11. L; 12. A; 13. D; 14. H; 15. E; 16. M

Modified True/False
1. *lactic acid;* 2. *lactic acid;* 3. True; 4. True; 5. True; 6. *Biodegradable;* 7. True; 8. *Competition;* 9. True; 10. *Littoral*

Fill in the Blanks
1. the food, processing or handling; 2. increases; 3. batch production, continuous flow production; 4. zero; 5. iron, sulfur; 6. production, consumption, decomposition; 7. dinitrogen gas (N_2); 8. phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}); 9. biosensor; 10. BOD (biochemical oxygen demand)

Visualize It!
1. See Figure 26.15.
2. See Figure 26.16.

Concept Mapping
1. Fermentation; 2. Sugars in milk; 3. *Lactobacillus delbrueckii*; 4. Malt from grains; 5. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (yeast); 6. Bread to rise; 7. Alcohol in wine; 8. *Gluconobacter*; 9. Acetic acid in vinegar; 10. Soybeans and wheat

APPENDIX A

Metabolic Pathways

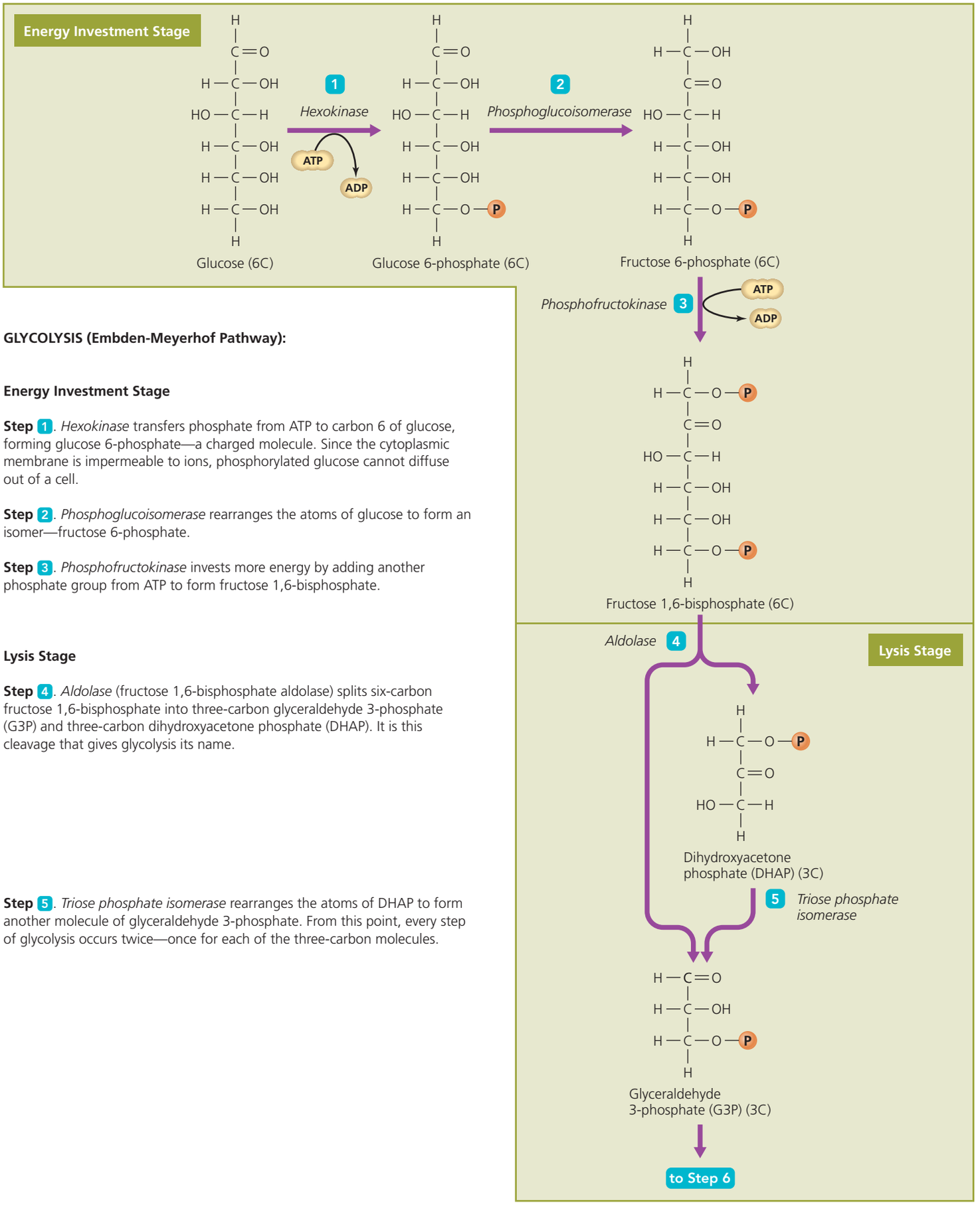
Glycolysis (Embden-Meyerhof Pathway) A–5

Pentose Phosphate Pathway A–7

Entner-Doudoroff Pathway A–8

Krebs Cycle A–9

Calvin-Benson Cycle A–10



GLYCOLYSIS (Embden-Meyerhof Pathway):

Energy Investment Stage

Step 1. *Hexokinase* transfers phosphate from ATP to carbon 6 of glucose, forming glucose 6-phosphate—a charged molecule. Since the cytoplasmic membrane is impermeable to ions, phosphorylated glucose cannot diffuse out of a cell.

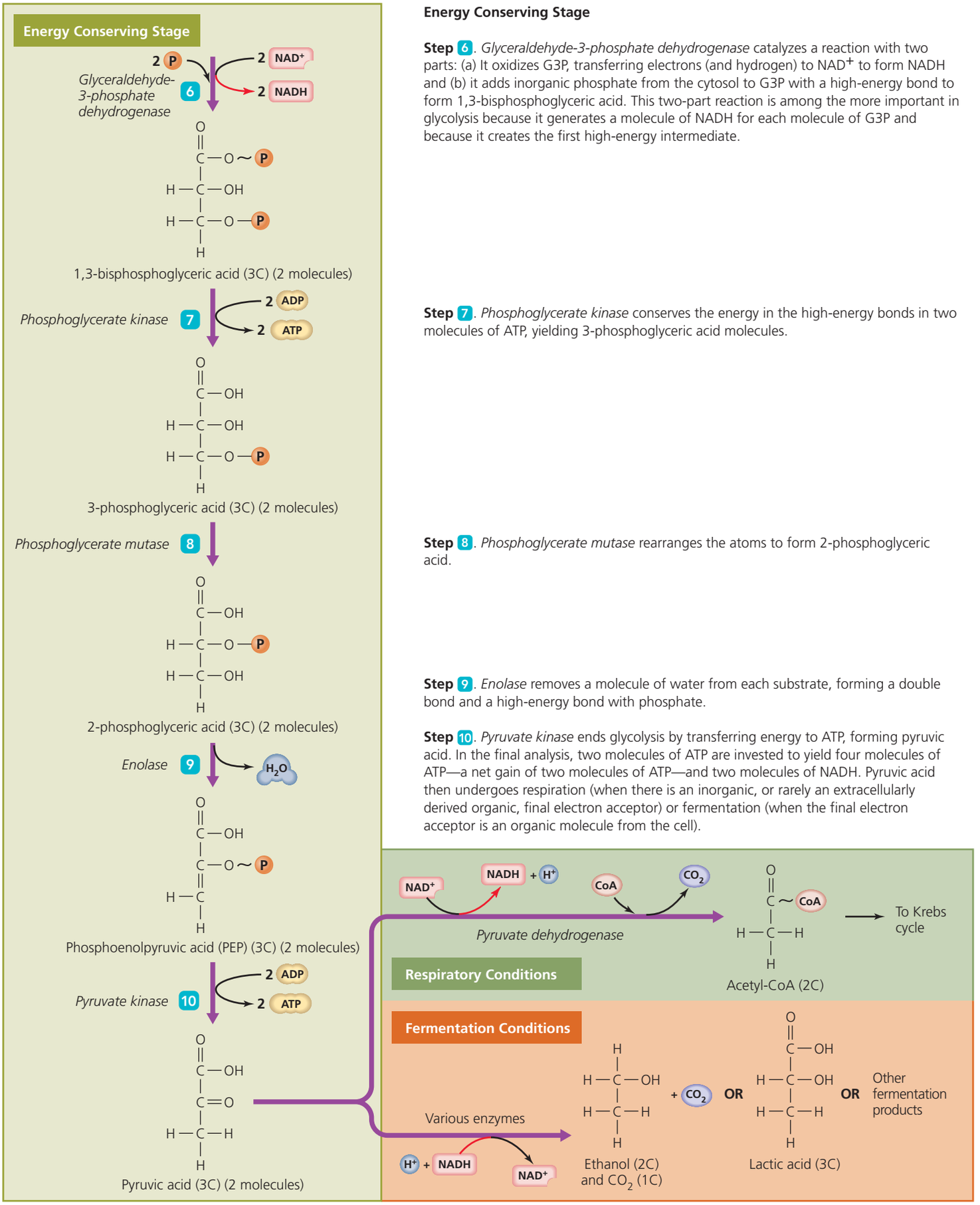
Step 2. *Phosphoglucoisomerase* rearranges the atoms of glucose to form an isomer—fructose 6-phosphate.

Step 3. *Phosphofructokinase* invests more energy by adding another phosphate group from ATP to form fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

Lysis Stage

Step 4. *Aldolase* (fructose 1,6-bisphosphate aldolase) splits six-carbon fructose 1,6-bisphosphate into three-carbon glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) and three-carbon dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP). It is this cleavage that gives glycolysis its name.

Step 5. *Triose phosphate isomerase* rearranges the atoms of DHAP to form another molecule of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate. From this point, every step of glycolysis occurs twice—once for each of the three-carbon molecules.



Energy Conserving Stage

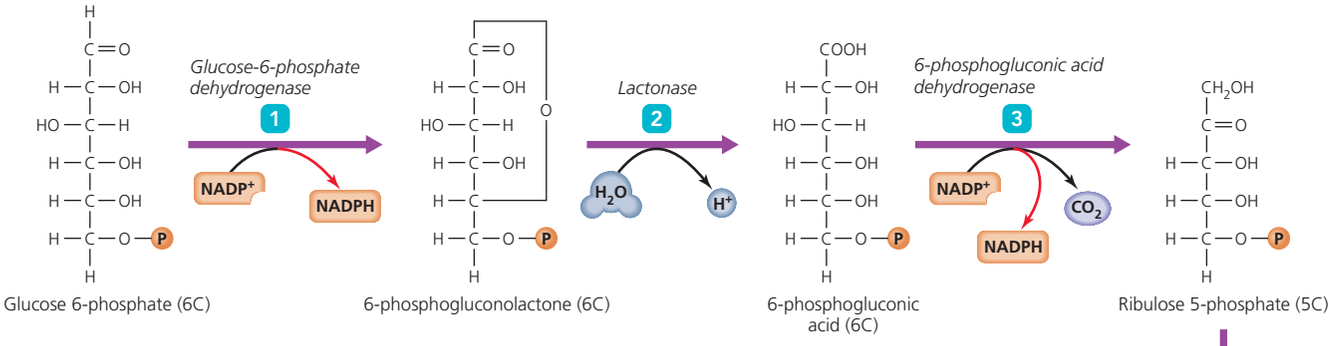
Step 6. *Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase* catalyzes a reaction with two parts: (a) It oxidizes G3P, transferring electrons (and hydrogen) to NAD^+ to form NADH and (b) it adds inorganic phosphate from the cytosol to G3P with a high-energy bond to form 1,3-bisphosphoglyceric acid. This two-part reaction is among the more important in glycolysis because it generates a molecule of NADH for each molecule of G3P and because it creates the first high-energy intermediate.

Step 7. *Phosphoglycerate kinase* conserves the energy in the high-energy bonds in two molecules of ATP, yielding 3-phosphoglyceric acid molecules.

Step 8. *Phosphoglycerate mutase* rearranges the atoms to form 2-phosphoglyceric acid.

Step 9. *Enolase* removes a molecule of water from each substrate, forming a double bond and a high-energy bond with phosphate.

Step 10. *Pyruvate kinase* ends glycolysis by transferring energy to ATP, forming pyruvic acid. In the final analysis, two molecules of ATP are invested to yield four molecules of ATP—a net gain of two molecules of ATP—and two molecules of NADH. Pyruvic acid then undergoes respiration (when there is an inorganic, or rarely an extracellularly derived organic, final electron acceptor) or fermentation (when the final electron acceptor is an organic molecule from the cell).



PENTOSE PHOSPHATE PATHWAY

Step 1. *Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase* oxidizes glucose 6-phosphate to 6-phosphogluconolactone by transferring hydrogen to $NADP^+$, forming NADPH.

Step 2. *Lactonase* adds hydroxide from a water molecule, forming 6-phosphogluconic acid.

Step 3. *6-phosphogluconic acid dehydrogenase* oxidizes this intermediate (transferring hydrogen to another molecule of NADPH) and removes a molecule of carbon dioxide to form ribulose 5-phosphate. This five-carbon phosphorylated sugar is used in the synthesis of nucleotides, certain amino acids, and glucose (via photosynthesis).

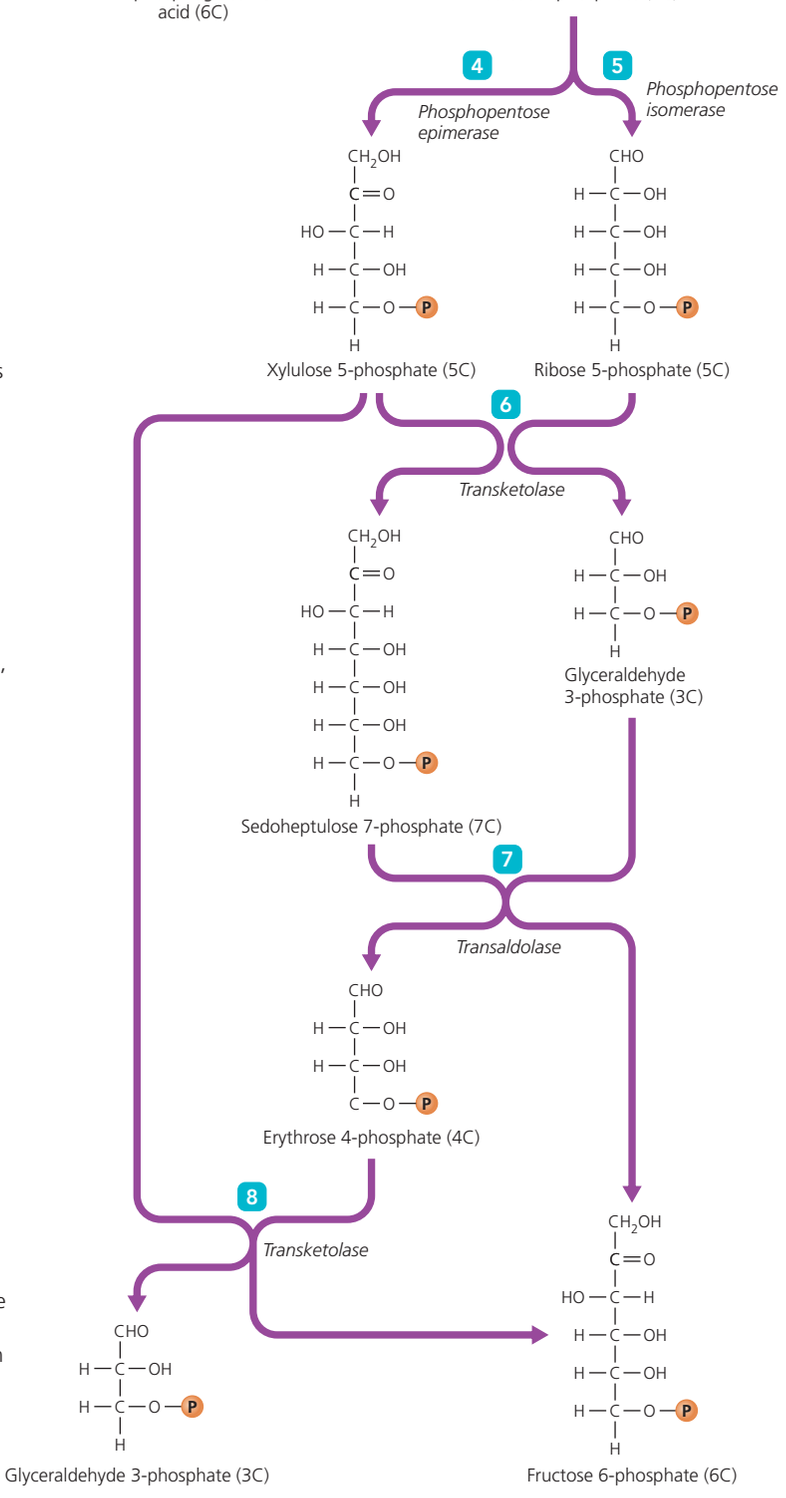
Step 4. *Phosphopentose epimerase* converts some molecules of ribulose 5-phosphate to xylulose 5-phosphate.

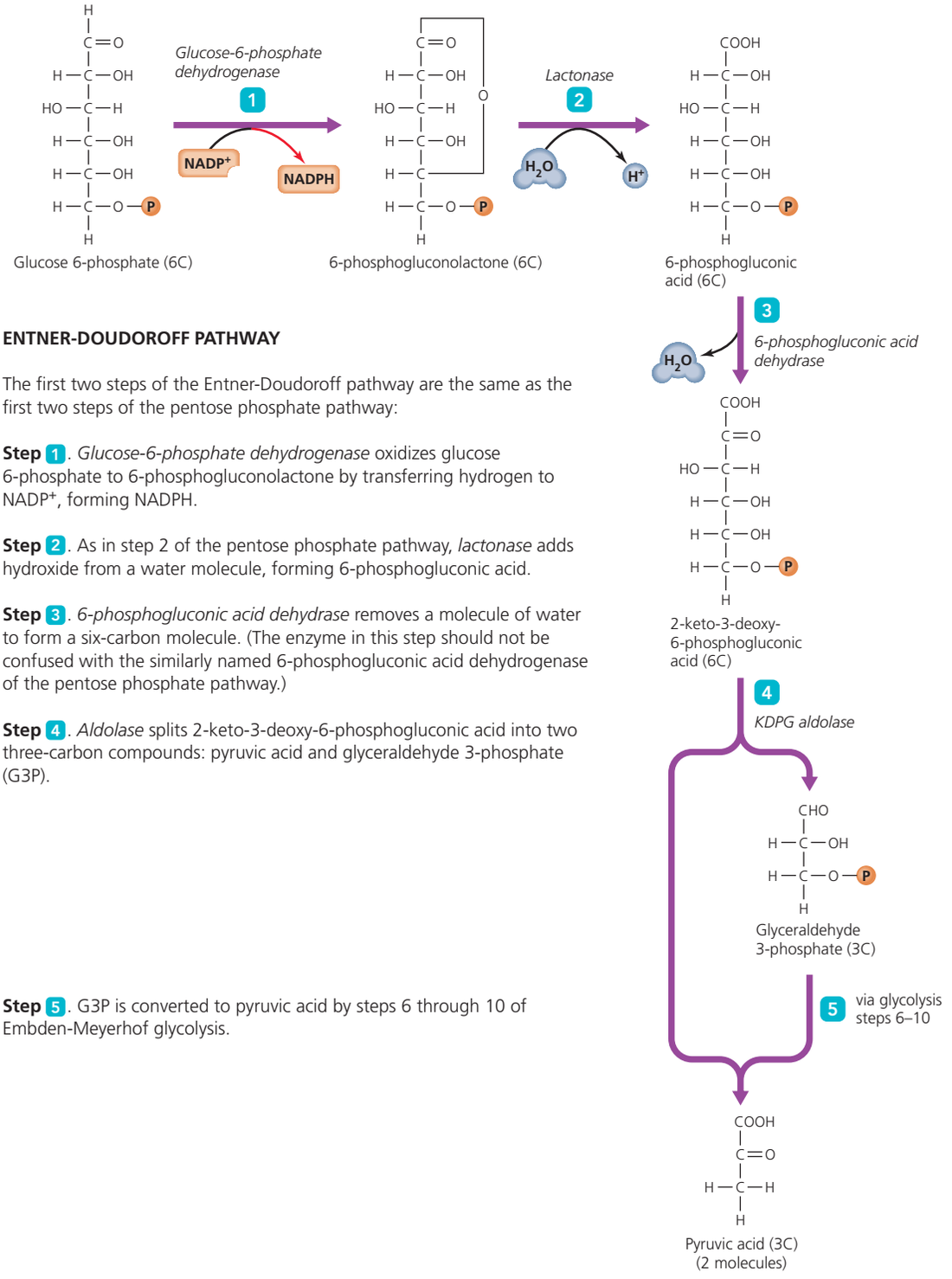
Step 5. Simultaneously, *phosphopentose isomerase* converts other molecules of ribulose 5-phosphate to ribose 5-phosphate.

Step 6. *Transketolase* catalyzes a reaction in which a two-carbon fragment from xylulose 5-phosphate is transferred to ribose 5-phosphate, forming seven-carbon sedoheptulose 7-phosphate and three-carbon glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P).

Step 7. *Transaldolase* then transfers a three-carbon fragment from sedoheptulose 7-phosphate to G3P, yielding four-carbon erythrose 4-phosphate and forming six-carbon fructose 6-phosphate.

Step 8. *Transketolase* transfers another two-carbon fragment from another molecule of xylulose 5-phosphate to erythrose 4-phosphate, forming another molecule of fructose 6-phosphate and another molecule of G3P. G3P enters glycolysis at step 6; fructose 6-phosphate can enter glycolysis at step 1 or may be converted into glucose 6-phosphate, which reenters the pentose phosphate pathway.





ENTNER-DOUDOROFF PATHWAY

The first two steps of the Entner-Doudoroff pathway are the same as the first two steps of the pentose phosphate pathway:

Step 1. *Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase* oxidizes glucose 6-phosphate to 6-phosphogluconolactone by transferring hydrogen to $NADP^+$, forming NADPH.

Step 2. As in step 2 of the pentose phosphate pathway, *lactonase* adds hydroxide from a water molecule, forming 6-phosphogluconic acid.

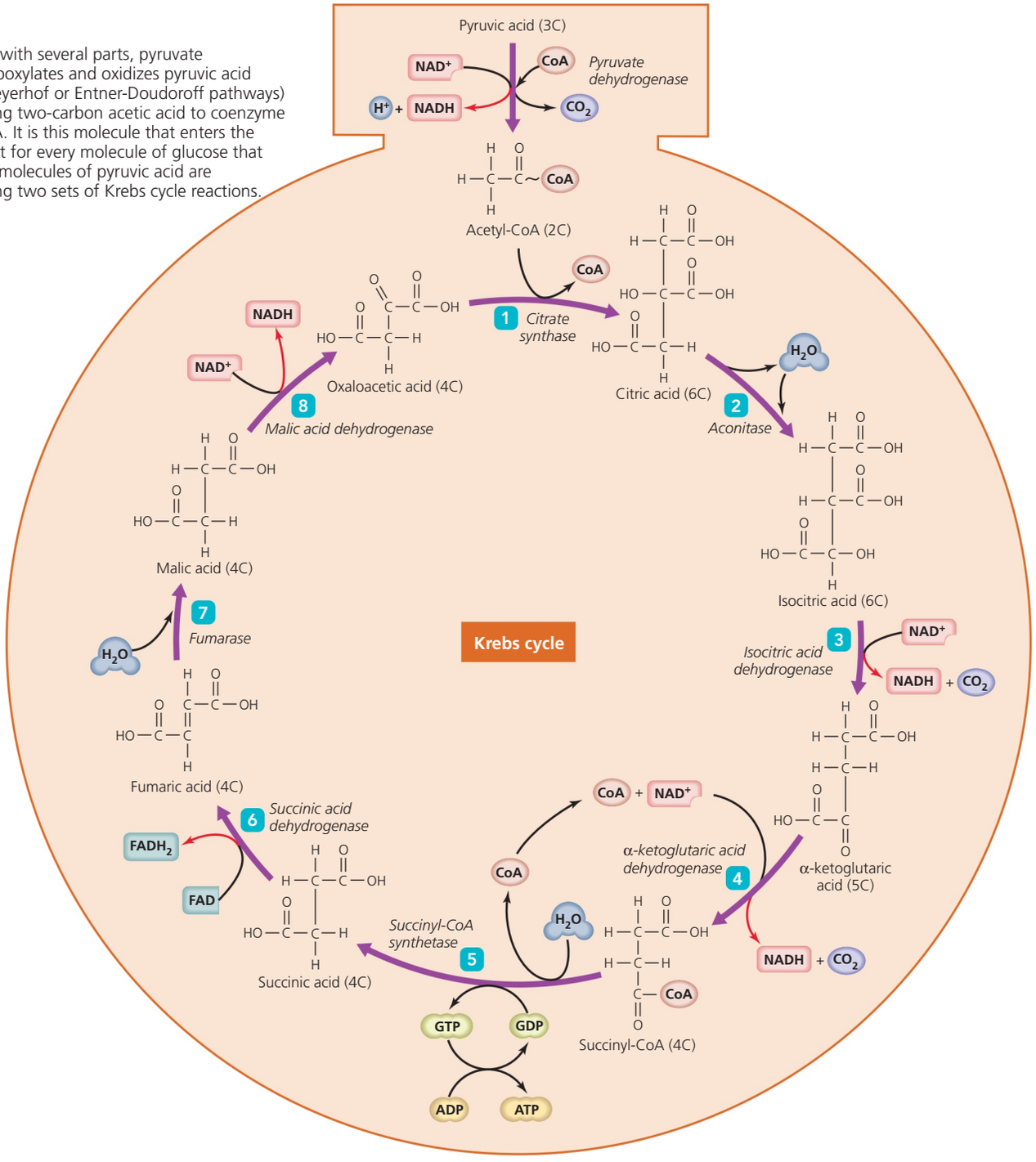
Step 3. *6-phosphogluconic acid dehydrase* removes a molecule of water to form a six-carbon molecule. (The enzyme in this step should not be confused with the similarly named 6-phosphogluconic acid dehydrogenase of the pentose phosphate pathway.)

Step 4. *Aldolase* splits 2-keto-3-deoxy-6-phosphogluconic acid into two three-carbon compounds: pyruvic acid and glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P).

Step 5. G3P is converted to pyruvic acid by steps 6 through 10 of Embden-Meyerhof glycolysis.

KREBS CYCLE

In a complex reaction with several parts, pyruvate dehydrogenase decarboxylates and oxidizes pyruvic acid (from the Embden-Meyerhof or Entner-Doudoroff pathways) and adds the remaining two-carbon acetic acid to coenzyme A, forming acetyl-CoA. It is this molecule that enters the Krebs cycle. Recall that for every molecule of glucose that enters glycolysis, two molecules of pyruvic acid are produced, necessitating two sets of Krebs cycle reactions.



Step 1. *Citrate synthase* adds the two carbons of acetic acid from acetyl-CoA to oxaloacetic acid, forming citric acid. This step gives the Krebs cycle its alternate name—the citric acid cycle.

Step 2. *Aconitase* forms an isomer, isocitric acid, by removing a molecule of water and then adding another molecule of water back.

Step 3. *Isocitric acid dehydrogenase* oxidizes and decarboxylates six-carbon isocitric acid to five-carbon α-ketoglutaric acid; a molecule of NADH is formed in the process.

Step 4. *α-ketoglutaric acid dehydrogenase* oxidizes and decarboxylates α-ketoglutaric acid to form a four-carbon fragment that is attached to coenzyme A, forming succinyl-CoA.

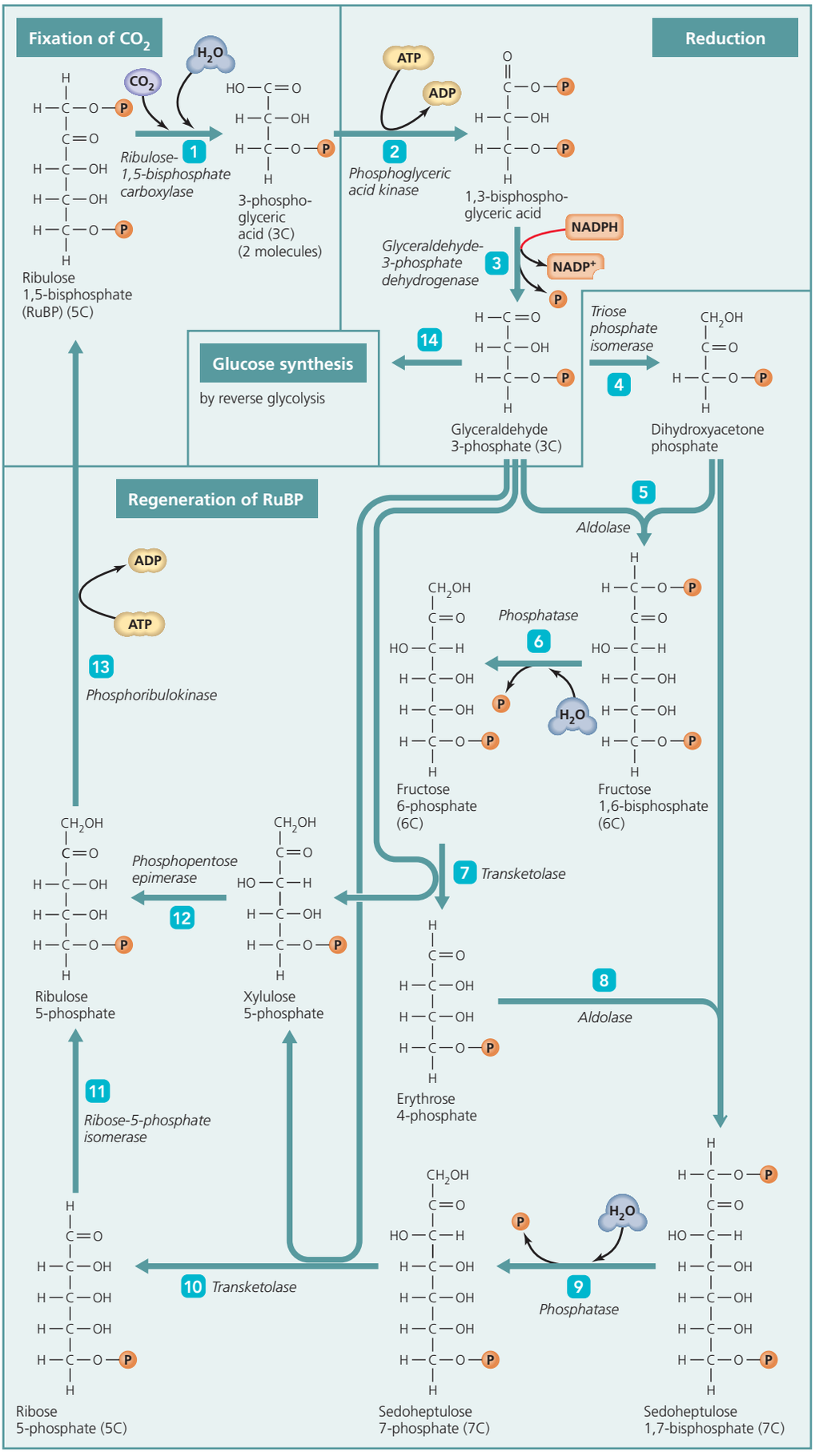
Step 5. *Succinyl-CoA synthetase* forms four-carbon succinic acid and simultaneously phosphorylates GDP to form GTP. The latter molecule subsequently phosphorylates ADP to ATP.

Step 6. *Succinic acid dehydrogenase* oxidizes succinic acid to four-carbon fumaric acid, forming a molecule of $FADH_2$.

Step 7. *Fumarase* rearranges the four carbons to form malic acid.

Step 8. *Malic acid dehydrogenase* oxidizes malic acid to reform oxaloacetic acid, completing the cycle and forming another molecule of NADH.

NADH and $FADH_2$ carry electrons to an electron transport chain.



CALVIN-BENSON CYCLE

Fixation of CO_2

Step 1. *Ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase* adds CO_2 and H_2O to five-carbon ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate (RuBP), forming a six-carbon intermediate (not shown) that is immediately split into two, three-carbon molecules of 3-phosphoglyceric acid.

Reduction

Step 2. *Phosphoglyceric acid kinase* phosphorylates phosphoglyceric acid at the expense of ATP to form 1,3-bisphosphoglyceric acid.

Step 3. *Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase* reduces (using NADPH) and removes one phosphate from 1,3-bisphosphoglyceric acid, forming glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P).

Regeneration of RuBP

Step 4. *Triose phosphate isomerase* changes some molecules of G3P to dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP).

Step 5. *Aldolase* combines a molecule of G3P and a molecule of DHAP to form fructose 1,6-bisphosphate.

Step 6. *Phosphatase* adds water and removes a phosphate group, forming fructose 6-phosphate.

Step 7. *Transketolase* combines fructose 6-phosphate with a molecule of G3P (from step 3) to form five-carbon xylulose 5-phosphate and four-carbon erythrose 4-phosphate.

Step 8. *Aldolase* rearranges the carbons of erythrose 4-phosphate and of a molecule of DHAP (from step 4), forming sedoheptulose 1,7-bisphosphate.

Step 9. *Phosphatase* adds water and removes a phosphate group to form sedoheptulose 7-phosphate.

Step 10. *Transketolase* combines this molecule with a molecule of G3P (from step 3) to form five-carbon ribose 5-phosphate and five-carbon xylulose 5-phosphate.

Step 11. *Ribose-5-phosphate isomerase* rearranges the atoms of ribose 5-phosphate to form its isomer—ribulose 5-phosphate.

Step 12. *Phosphatase epimerase* similarly rearranges the atoms of xylulose 5-phosphate, forming another molecule of ribulose 5-phosphate.

Step 13. *Phosphoribulokinase* phosphorylates ribulose 5-phosphate to regenerate ribulose bisphosphate (RuBP).

Step 14. For every three molecules of CO_2 that enter the Calvin-Benson cycle (at step 1), one molecule of G3P leaves the cycle to be used for the synthesis of glucose via the reversal of the early reactions of glycolysis.

APPENDIX B

Some Mathematical Considerations in Microbiology

Scientific Notation

Scientific notation (also called exponential notation) is a mathematical device developed to express numbers, particularly very small and very large numbers, in a manner that is convenient and readable. For example, 1.234×10^{-8} is much less cumbersome than 0.00000001234. Similarly, 5.67×10^{17} is more easily read than 567,000,000,000,000,000.

A number expressed in scientific notation is composed of a *coefficient,* which is always a number with only one whole number digit to the left of the decimal place, times 10 to some *exponential power.* In the examples above, the coefficients are 1.234 and 5.67 respectively. The exponents are −8 and 17 respectively.

To write a number in scientific notation, move the decimal point either right or left so that there is only one nonzero number to the left of it. For example,

454 becomes 4.54

In this case we moved the decimal point (which is understood to be at the end of a whole number) two places to the left. Since we moved two places left, the exponent will be positive 2, and the scientific notation is

$$4.54 \times 10^2$$

Similarly, 4,500,264.75 becomes 4.50026475×10^6 since we moved the decimal six places to the left.

As you would expect, when we have to move the decimal point to the right, as in 0.00562 (which becomes 5.62), then the exponent will be a negative number, in this case −3; therefore, $0.00562 = 5.62 \times 10^{-3}$.

Logarithms

A **logarithm** is the number of times a number, called the *base number,* must be multiplied by itself to get a certain number. For example, the number 10 must be multiplied by itself three times to get 1000 ($10 \times 10 \times 10$); therefore, the logarithm of 1000 in base 10 is 3. Similarly, the logarithm of 100,000 is 5. Though any number can be used as the base number, in microbiology, base 10 is commonly used. Microbiologists use base 10 logarithms to express pH values and the size of bacterial populations in culture.

When a number is expressed in scientific notation, the logarithm is the exponent when the coefficient is exactly 1. When the coefficient is a number other than 1, the logarithm must be calculated using the logarithm function on a calculator.

Generation Time

When bacteria and other microbes reproduce by binary fission, the number in the population doubles with each division cycle (generation). Such growth is called *logarithmic* (or *exponential*) *growth.*

The number in a population can be calculated as 2 (because each cell produces two offspring) multiplied by itself as many times as there are generations. In other words, the number of cells in a population arising from a single individual is expressed mathematically as

$$2^{\text{number of generations}}$$

A cell dividing for five generations would produce a population of 32 ($2^5 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 32$). When the population begins with more than one individual, then the final population equals

$$\text{original number of cells} \times 2^{\text{number of generations}}$$

For example, seven cells reproducing for five generations would produce a population of 224 cells ($7 \times 2^5 = 7 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 224$).

In most cases, microbiologists are not concerned with the number of generations required to produce a given population, but they do want to know the **generation time,** that is, the time required for a bacterial cell to grow and divide. This is also the time required for a population of cells to double in number. To calculate generation time, scientists must first calculate how many generations have been produced, knowing the beginning and ending population sizes. When population sizes are converted to logarithms, the number of generations is calculated as

$$\text{number of generations} = \frac{\text{logarithm (log) number of cells at the end of reproduction} - \text{log number of cells initially}}{\log 2}$$

Log 2 is used in the formula because each cell produces two offspring each time it divides. Log 2 = 0.301.

The number of generations is used to calculate generation time:

$$\text{generation time (min/generation)} = \frac{60 \text{ minutes} \times \text{number of hours}}{\text{number of generations}}$$

For example, if 100 bacteria multiply to produce a population of 3.28×10^6 cells in 7 hours, then the generation time for this bacterium is calculated as follows:

$$\text{number of generations} = \frac{\text{logarithm (log) number of cells at the end of reproduction} - \text{log number of cells initially}}{\log 2}$$

$$= \frac{\log (3.28 \times 10^6) - \log (100)}{\log 2}$$

$$= 15 \text{ generations}$$

$$\text{generation time (min/generation)} = \frac{60 \text{ minutes} \times \text{hours}}{\text{number of generations}}$$

$$= \frac{60 \text{ min} \times 7 \text{ h}}{15}$$

$$= 28 \text{ minutes/generation}$$

Glossary

A site In a ribosome, a binding site that accommodates tRNA delivering an amino acid.
Abscess An isolated site of infection such as a pimple, boil, or pustule.
Abyssal zone In marine habitats, the zone of water beneath the benthic zone, virtually devoid of life except around hydrothermal vents.
Acellular Noncellular.
Acetyl-CoA Combination of two-carbon acetate and coenzyme A.
Acid Compound that dissociates into one or more hydrogen ions and one or more anions.
Acid-fast bacilli (AFB) *(acid-fast fast rod, AFR)* Bacilli that retain stain during decolorization by acid-alcohol, particularly species of *Mycobacterium*.
Acid-fast rod (AFR) Bacilli that retain stain during decolorization by acid-alcohol, particularly species of *Mycobacterium*.
Acid-fast stain In microscopy, a differential stain used to penetrate waxy cell walls.
Acidic dye In microscopy, an anionic chromophore used to stain alkaline structures. Works most effectively in acidic environments.
Acidophile Microorganism requiring acidic pH.
Acne Skin disorder characterized by presence of whiteheads, blackheads, and, in severe cases, cysts; typically caused by infection with *Propionibacterium acnes*.
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) The presence of several opportunistic or rare infections along with infection by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or a severe decrease in the number of CD4 cells (<200/μL) along with a positive test showing the presence of HIV.
Acquired (secondary) immunodeficiency diseases Any of a group of immunodeficiency diseases that develop in older children, adults, and the elderly as a direct consequence of some other recognized cause, such as infectious disease.
Actinomycetes High G + C Gram-positive bacteria that form branching filaments and produce spores, thus resembling fungi.
Actinomycosis Disease caused by *Actinomyces*; characterized by formation of multiple, interconnected abscesses in skin or mucous membrane.
Activation energy The amount of energy needed to trigger a chemical reaction.
Active site Functional site of an enzyme, the shape of which is complementary to the shape of the substrate.
Active transport The movement of a substance against its electrochemical gradient via carrier proteins and requiring cell energy from ATP.
Acute anaphylaxis Condition in which the release of inflammatory mediators overwhelms the body's coping mechanisms.
Acute disease Any disease that develops rapidly but lasts only a short time, whether it resolves in convalescence or death.
Acute inflammation Type of inflammation that develops quickly, is short lived, and is usually beneficial.
Adaptive immunity Resistance against pathogens that acts more effectively upon subsequent infections with the same pathogen.
Adenine Ring-shaped nitrogenous base found in nucleotides of DNA and RNA.
Adenosine triphosphate (ATP) The primary short-term, recyclable energy molecule fueling cellular reactions.
Adherence Process by which phagocytes attach to microorganisms through the binding of complementary chemicals on the cytoplasmic membranes.
Adhesins Molecules that attach pathogens to their target cells.
Adhesion The attachment of microorganisms to host cells.
Adhesion factors A variety of structures or attachment proteins by which microorganisms attach to host cells.
Adjuvant Chemical added to a vaccine to increase its ability to stimulate active immunity.
Aerobe An organism that uses oxygen as a final electron acceptor.
Aerobic respiration Type of cellular respiration requiring oxygen atoms as final electron acceptors.
Aerosol A cloud of water droplets, which travels more than 1 meter in airborne transmission and less than 1 meter in droplet transmission.
Aerotolerant anaerobe Microorganism which prefers anaerobic conditions but can tolerate exposure to low levels of oxygen.
Aflatoxin Carcinogenic mycotoxin produced by *Aspergillus*.
African sleeping sickness Potentially fatal disease caused by a bite from a tsetse fly carrying *Trypanosoma brucei* and characterized by formation of a lesion at the site of the bite, followed by parasitemia and central nervous system invasion.
Agar Gel-like polysaccharide isolated from red algae and used as thickening agent.
Agglutination Aggregation (clumping) caused when antibodies bind to two antigens, perhaps hindering the activity of pathogenic microorganisms and increasing the chance that they will be phagocytized.
Agglutination test In serology, a procedure in which antiserum is mixed with a sample that potentially contains its target antigen.
Agranulocyte Type of leukocyte having a uniform cytoplasm lacking large granules.
Agroterrorism The use of microbes to terrorize humans by destroying the livestock and crops that constitute their food supply.
Airborne transmission Spread of pathogens to the respiratory mucous membranes of a new host via the air or in droplets carried more than 1 meter.
Alcohol Intermediate-level disinfectant that denatures proteins and disrupts cell membranes.
Aldehyde Compound containing terminal –CHO groups; used as a high-level disinfectant because it cross-links organic functional groups in proteins and nucleic acids.
Algae Eukaryotic unicellular or multicellular photosynthetic organisms with simple reproductive structures.
Alginic acid Cell wall polysaccharide of brown algae.
Alkalinophile Microorganism requiring alkaline pH environments.
Allergen An antigen that stimulates an allergic response.
Allergic contact dermatitis Type of delayed hypersensitivity reaction in which chemically modified skin proteins trigger a cell-mediated immune response.
Allergy An immediate hypersensitivity response against an antigen.
Allograft Type of graft in which tissues are transplanted from a donor to a genetically dissimilar recipient of the some species.
Allylamines Class of antifungal drugs that disrupt cytoplasmic membranes.
Alpha interferons (IFN-α) Interferons secreted by virally infected monocytes, macrophages, and some lymphocytes within hours after infection.
Alphaproteobacteria Class of aerobic Gram-negative bacteria in the phylum Proteobacteria capable of growing at very low nutrient levels.
Alternation of generations In algae, method of sexual reproduction in which diploid thalli alternate with haploid thalli.
Alveolar macrophage Fixed macrophage of the lungs.
Alveolates Protozoa with small membrane-bound cavities called alveoli beneath their cell surfaces.
Amebiasis A mild to severe dysentery that, if invasive, can cause the formation of lesions in the liver, lungs, brain, and other organs; caused by infection with *Entamoeba histolytica*.
Ames test Method for screening mutagens that is commonly used to identify potential carcinogens.
Amination Reaction involving the addition of an amine group to a metabolite to make an amino acid.
Amino acid A monomer of polypeptides.
Aminoglycoside Antimicrobial agent that inhibits protein synthesis by changing the shape of the 30S ribosomal subunit.
Ammonification Process by which microorganisms disassemble proteins in soil wastes into amino acids, which are then converted to ammonia.
Amoebae Protozoa that move and feed by pseudopods.
Amphibolic reaction A reversible metabolic reaction; that is, a reaction that can be catabolic or anabolic.
Anabolism All of the synthesis reactions in an organism taken together.
Anaerobe An organism that cannot tolerate oxygen.
Anaerobic respiration Type of cellular respiration not requiring oxygen atoms as final electron acceptors.

Analytical epidemiology Detailed investigation of a disease, including analysis of data to determine the probable cause, mode of transmission, and possible means of prevention.
Anammox Anaerobic ammonium oxidation, which is one aspect of the nitrogen cycle.
Anaphase Third stage of mitosis, during which sister chromatids separate and move to opposite poles of the spindle to form chromosomes. Also used for the comparable stage of meiosis.
Anaphylactic shock Condition in which the release of inflammatory mediators overwhelms the body's coping mechanisms, causing suffocation, edema, smooth muscle contraction, and often death.
Anaplasmosis *(human granulocytic anaplasmosis, HGA)* Tickborne disease caused by a rickettsia, *Anaplasma phagocytophilum*, manifesting with flu-like signs and symptoms. Formerly called human granulocytic ehrlichiosis.
Anion A negatively charged ion.
Anthrax Gastrointestinal, cutaneous, or pulmonary disease that is usually fatal without aggressive treatment; caused by ingestion, inoculation, or inhalation of spores of *Bacillus anthracis*.
Antibiotic Antimicrobial agent that is produced naturally by an organism.
Antibody *(immunoglobulin)* Proteinaceous antigen-binding molecule secreted by plasma cells.
Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) Process whereby natural killer lymphocytes (NK cells) lyse cells covered with antibodies.
Antibody immune response (humoral immune response) The immune response centered around B lymphocytes and immunoglobulins.
Anticodon Portion of tRNA molecule that is complementary to a codon on mRNA.
Antigen Molecule that triggers a specific immune response.
Antigen-binding site Site formed by the variable regions of a heavy and light chain of an antibody.
Antigen-presenting cell (APC) Dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells, which process antigens and activate cells of the immune system.
Antigenic determinant *(epitope)* The three-dimensional shape of a region of an antigen that is recognized by the immune system.
Antigenic drift Phenomenon that occurs every 2 to 3 years when a single strain of influenzavirus mutates within a local population.
Antigenic shift Major antigenic change that occurs on average every 10 years and results from the reassortment of genomes from different influenzavirus strains within host cells.
Antihistamines Drugs that specifically neutralize histamine.
Antimicrobial Any compound used to treat infectious disease; may also function as intermediate-level disinfectant.
Antimicrobial agent Chemotherapeutic agent used to treat microbial infection.
Antimicrobial-associated diarrhea Watery stools resulting from elimination of normal microbiota by antimicrobial drug therapy; most severe form is pseudomembranous colitis.
Antimicrobial enzyme Enzyme that acts against microbes.
Antimicrobial peptide *(defensin)* Chain of about 20 to 50 amino acids that acts against microorganisms.
Antiretroviral therapy (ART) A cocktail of antiviral drugs including nucleotide analogs, integrase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.
Antisense nucleic acid RNA or single-stranded DNA with a nucleotide sequence complementary to a molecule of mRNA; used to control translation of polypeptide.
Antisense RNA RNA with a nucleotide sequence complementary to a molecule of mRNA; used to control translation of polypeptide.
Antisepsis The inhibition or killing of microorganisms on skin or tissue by the use of a chemical antiseptic.
Antiseptic Chemical used to inhibit or kill microorganisms on skin or tissue.
Antiserum In serology, blood fluid containing antibodies that bind to the antigens that triggered their production.
Antitoxin Antibodies formed by the host that bind to and protect against toxins.
Antivenin (antivenom) Antitoxin used to treat snake bites.
Antiviral proteins Proteins triggered by alpha and beta interferons that prevent viral replication.
Apicomplexans In protozoan taxonomy, group of pathogenic alveolate protozoa characterized by the complex of special intracellular organelles located at the apices of the infective stages of these microbes.
Apoenzyme The protein portion of protein enzymes that is inactive unless bound to one or more cofactors.
Apoptosis Programmed cell suicide.
Applied microbiology Branch of microbiology studying the commercial use of microorganisms in industry and foods.
Arachnid Group of arthropods distinguished by the presence of eight legs, such as spiders, ticks, and mites.
Arboviral encephalitis Inflammation of the brain and/or meninges caused by viruses transmitted by bloodsucking arthropods.
Arboviruses Viruses that are transmitted by arthropods; they include members of several viral families.
Archaea (*Archaeon*, sing.) In Woese's taxonomy, domain that includes all prokaryotic cells having archaeal rRNA sequences.
Archaezoa Protozoa that lack mitochondria, Golgi bodies, chloroplasts, and peroxisomes.
Arenaviruses Group of segmented, negative ssRNA viruses that cause zoonotic diseases.
ART (antiretroviral therapy) A cocktail of antiviral drugs including nucleotide analogs, integrase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.
Arthropod Animal with a segmented body, hard exoskeleton, and jointed legs, including arachnids and insects.
Arthropod vector Animals with segmented bodies, external skeletons, and jointed legs that carry pathogens; vectors include ticks, mites, fleas, flies, and true bugs.
Artificial wetlands Use of successive ponds, marshes, and meadowlands to remove wastes from sewage as the water moves through the wetlands.
Artificially acquired active immunity Type of immunity that occurs when the body receives antigens by injection, as with vaccinations, and mounts a specific immune response.
Artificially acquired passive immunotherapy Treatment in which patient receives via injection preformed antibodies in antitoxins or antisera, which can destroy fast-acting and potentially fatal antigens, such as rattlesnake venom.
Ascariasis Symptomatic but not typically fatal disease caused by infection with the nematode *Ascaris lumbricoides*.
Ascomycota Division of fungi characterized by the formation of haploid ascospores within sacs called asci.
Ascospore Haploid germinating structure of ascomycetes.
Ascus Sac in which haploid ascospores are formed and from which they are released in fungi of the division Ascomycota.
Aseptate Lacking cross walls.
Aseptic Characteristic of an environment or procedure that is free of contamination by pathogens.
Aspergillosis Term for several localized and invasive diseases caused by infection with *Aspergillus* species.
Assembly In virology, fourth stage of the lytic replication cycle, in which new virions are assembled in the host cell.
Asthma Hypersensitivity reaction affecting the lungs and characterized by bronchial constriction and excessive mucus production.
Astroviruses Group of small, round enteric viruses that cause diarrhea, typically in children.
Asymptomatic *(subclinical)* Characteristic of disease that may go unnoticed because of absence of symptoms, even though clinical tests may reveal signs of disease.
Atom The smallest chemical unit of matter.
Atomic force microscope (AFM) Type of probe microscope that uses a pointed probe to traverse the surface of a specimen. A laser beam detects vertical movements of the probe, which a computer translates to reveal the atomic topography of the specimen.
Atomic mass *(atomic weight)* The sum of the masses of the protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.
Atomic number The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom.
ATP synthase (ATPase) Enzyme that phosphorylates ATP in oxidative phosphorylation and photophosphorylation.
Attachment In virology, first stage of the lytic replication cycle, in which the virion attaches to the host cell.
Attenuated vaccine Inoculum in which pathogens are weakened so that, theoretically, they no longer cause disease; residual virulence can be a problem.
Attenuation The process of reducing vaccine virulence.
Autoantigens Antigens on the surface of normal body cells.
Autoclave Device that uses steam heat under pressure to sterilize chemicals and objects that can tolerate moist heat.
Autograft Type of graft in which tissues are moved to a different location within the same patient.
Autoimmune disease Any of a group of diseases that result when an individual begins to make

autoantibodies or cytotoxic T cells against normal body components.
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia Disease resulting when an individual produces antibodies against his or her own red blood cells.
Avirulent Harmless.
Axenic Having only one organism present.
Axial filament In cell morphology, structure composed of rotating endoflagella that allows a spirochete to "corkscrew" through its medium.
Azoles Class of antifungal drugs that disrupt cytoplasmic membranes.

B cell B lymphocyte.
B cell receptor (BCR) Antibody integral to the cytoplasmic membrane and expressed by B lymphocytes.
B lymphocyte *(B cell)* Lymphocyte that arises and matures in the red bone marrow in adults and is found primarily in the spleen, lymph nodes, red bone marrow, and Peyer's patches of the intestines and that secretes antibodies.
Bacillus Rod-shaped prokaryotic cell.
Bacitracin Antimicrobial that blocks NAG and NAM secretion from the cytoplasm, prompting cell lysis.
Bacteremia The presence of bacteria in the blood; often caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Bacteria Prokaryotic microorganisms typically having cell walls composed of peptidoglycan. In Woese's taxonomy, domain which includes all prokaryotic cells having bacterial rRNA sequences.
Bacterial intoxication *(toxification)* Food poisoning caused by bacterial toxin.
Bacteriophage *(phage)* Virus that infects and usually destroys bacterial cells.
Bacteriorhodopsin Purple protein synthesized by *Halobacterium* that absorbs light energy to synthesize ATP.
Bacteroid Diverse group of Gram-negative microbes that have similar rRNA nucleotide sequences, such as *Bacteroides*.
Balantidiasis A mild gastrointestinal illness caused by *Balantidium coli*.
Barophile Microorganism requiring the extreme hydrostatic pressure found at great depth below the surface of water.
Base Molecule that binds with hydrogen ions when dissolved in water.
Base pair (bp) A complementary arrangement of nucleotides in a strand of DNA or RNA. For example, in both DNA and RNA, guanine and cytosine pair.
Base-excision repair Mechanism by which enzymes excise a section of a DNA strand containing an error, and then DNA polymerase fills in the gap.
Basic dye In microscopy, a cationic chromophore used to stain acidic structures. Works most effectively in alkaline environments.
Basidiocarp Fruiting body of basidiomycetes; includes mushrooms, puffballs, stinkhorns, jelly fungi, bird's nest fungi, and bracket fungi.
Basidiomycota Division of fungi characterized by production of basidiospores and basidiocarps.
Basophil Type of granulocyte that stains blue with the basic dye methylene blue.
Bejel Childhood disease caused by the spirochete *Treponema pallidum endemicum;* characterized by rubbery oral lesions.
Benign tumor Mass of neoplastic cells that remains in one place and is not generally harmful.
Benthic zone Bottom zone of freshwater or marine water, devoid of light and with scarce nutrients.
Beta interferons (IFN-β) Interferons secreted by virally infected fibroblasts within hours after infection.
Beta-lactam Antimicrobial whose functional portion is composed of beta-lactam rings, which inhibit peptidoglycan formation by irreversibly binding to the enzymes that cross-link NAM subunits.
Beta-lactamase Bacterial enzyme that breaks the beta-lactam rings of penicillin and similar molecules, rendering them inactive.
Beta-oxidation A catabolic process in which enzymes split pairs of hydrogenated carbon atoms from a fatty acid and join them to coenzyme A to form acetyl-CoA.
Betaproteobacteria Class of diverse Gram-negative bacteria in the phylum Proteobacteria capable of growing at very low nutrient levels.
Binary fission The most common method of asexual reproduction of prokaryotes, in which the parental cell disappears with the formation of progeny.
Binomial nomenclature The classification method used in the Linnaean system of taxonomy, which assigns each species both a genus name and a specific epithet.
Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) A measure of the amount of oxygen aerobic bacteria require to metabolize organic wastes in water.
Biochemistry Branch of chemistry that studies the chemical reactions of living things.
Biodiversity The number of species living in a given ecosystem.
Biofilm A slimy community of microbes growing on a surface.
Biogeochemical cycling The movement of elements and nutrients from unusable forms to usable forms because of the activities of microorganisms.
Biological vector Biting arthropod or other animal that transmits pathogens and serves as host for the multiplication of the pathogen during some stage of the pathogen's life cycle.
Biomass The quantity of all organisms in a given ecosystem.
Biomining The use of microbes to convert metals to soluble forms that can be more easily extracted.
Bioremediation The use of microorganisms to metabolize toxins in the environment to reclaim soils and waterways.
Bioreporter Type of biosensor composed of microbes with innate signaling capabilities.
Biosensor Device that combines bacteria or microbial products such as enzymes with electronic measuring devices to detect other bacteria, bacterial products, or chemical compounds in the environment.
Biosphere The region of Earth inhabited by living organisms.
Biotechnology Branch of microbiology in which microbes are manipulated to manufacture useful products.
Bioterrorism The use of microbes or their toxins to terrorize human populations.
Blastomycosis Pulmonary disease found in the southeastern United States, caused by infection with *Blastomyces dermatitidis*.
Blood group antigens The surface molecules of red blood cells.
Bodily fluid transmission Spread of pathogenic microorganisms via blood, urine, saliva, or other bodily fluids.
Botulism Potentially fatal intoxication with botulism toxin; three types include foodborne botulism, infant botulism, and wound botulism.
Bradykinin Peptide chain of nine amino acids that is a potent mediator of inflammation.
Broad-spectrum drug Antimicrobial that works against many different kinds of pathogens.
Bronchitis Inflammation of the bronchi.
Broth A liquid, nutrient-rich medium used for cultivating microorganisms.
Broth dilution test Test for determining the minimum inhibitory concentration in which a standardized amount of bacteria is added to serial dilutions of antimicrobial agents in tubes or wells containing broth.
Brucellosis Disease caused by *Brucella;* usually asymptomatic or mild, though it can result in sterility or abortion in animals.
Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia An inherited disease in which affected babies cannot make immunoglobulins and experience recurrent bacterial infections.
Bt toxin (Bt) Insecticidal poison produced by *Bacillus thuringiensis* bacteria.
Bubo Swollen inflamed lymph node.
Bubonic plague Severe systemic disease, fatal if untreated in 50% of patients, and characterized by fever, tissue necrosis, and the presence of buboes; caused by infection with *Yersinia pestis*.
Budding In prokaryotes and yeasts, reproductive process in which an outgrowth of the parent cell receives a copy of the genetic material, enlarges, and detaches. In virology, extrusion of enveloped virions through the host's cell membrane.
Buffer A substance, such as a protein, that prevents drastic changes in pH.
Bulbar poliomyelitis Infection of the brain stem and medulla resulting in paralysis of muscles in the limbs or respiratory system; caused by infection with poliovirus.
Bunyaviruses Group of zoonotic pathogens that have a segmented genome of three –ssRNA molecules and are transmitted to humans via arthropods.
Burkitt's lymphoma Infectious cancer of the jaw caused by infection with Epstein-Barr virus.

Caliciviruses Group of small, round enteric viruses that cause diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting.
Calor Heat.
Calvin-Benson cycle Stage of photosynthesis in which atmospheric carbon dioxide is fixed and reduced to produce glucose.
Cancer Disease characterized by the presence of one or more malignant tumors.
Candidiasis Term for several opportunistic diseases caused by infection with *Candida* species.
Candin Antifungal drug that inhibits cell wall synthesis.
Capnophile Microorganism that grows best with high levels of carbon dioxide in addition to low levels of oxygen.

Capsid A protein coat surrounding the nucleic acid core of a virion.
Capsomere A proteinaceous subunit of a capsid.
Capsule Glycocalyx composed of repeating units of organic chemicals firmly attached to the cell surface.
Capsule stain *(negative stain)* In microscopy, a staining technique used primarily to reveal bacterial capsules and involving application of an acidic dye that leaves the specimen colorless and the background stained.
Carbohydrate Organic macromolecule consisting of atoms of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen.
Carbon cycle Biogeochemical cycle in which carbon is cycled in the form of organic molecules.
Carbon fixation The attachment of atmospheric carbon dioxide to ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate (RuBP).
Carbuncle The coalescence of several *furuncles* extending deep into underlying tissues; caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus*.
Carcinogen Chemical capable of causing cancer.
Caries *(cavities)* Tooth decay; caused by viridans streptococci and other bacteria.
Carotenoid Plant pigment that acts as an antioxidant.
Carrageenan Gel-like polysaccharide isolated from red algae and used as thickening agent.
Carrier In human pathology, continuous asymptomatic human source of infection.
Catabolism All of the decomposition reactions in an organism taken together.
Catarrhal phase In pertussis, initial phase lasting 1 to 2 weeks and characterized by signs and symptoms resembling those of a common cold.
Cation A positively charged ion.
Cat scratch disease Common and occasionally serious infection in children; characterized by fever and malaise plus localized swelling; caused by infection with *Bartonella henselae*.
CD4 Distinguishing cytoplasmic membrane protein of helper T cells, which is the initial binding site of HIV.
CD4 cell *(helper T cell, Th cell)* In cell-mediated immune response, a type of cell characterized by CD4 cell-surface glycoprotein; regulates the activity of B cells and cytotoxic T cells.
CD8 Distinguishing cytoplasmic membrane protein of cytotoxic T cells.
CD8 cell (*cytotoxic T cell, Tc cell*) In cell-mediated immune response, type of cell characterized by CD8 cell-surface glycoprotein; secretes perforins and granzymes that destroy infected or abnormal body cells.
CD95 pathway In cell-mediated cytotoxicity, pathway involving CD95 protein that triggers apoptosis of infected cells.
Cell culture Cells isolated from an organism and grown on the surface of a medium or in broth. Viruses can be grown in a cell culture.
Cell wall In most cells, structural boundary composed of polysaccharide or protein chains that provides shape and support against osmotic pressure.
Cell-mediated immune response Immune response used by T cells to fight intracellular pathogens and abnormal body cells.
Cellular respiration Metabolic process that involves the complete oxidation of substrate molecules and production of ATP via a series of redox reactions.
Cellular slime mold Individual haploid myxamoeba that phagocytizes bacteria, yeasts, dung, and decaying vegetation.
Central dogma In genetics, fundamental description of protein synthesis that states that genetic information is transferred from DNA to RNA to polypeptides, which function alone or in conjunction as proteins.
Centrioles Nonmembranous organelles in animal cells that appear to function in the formation of flagella and cilia and in cell division.
Centrosome Region of a cell containing centrioles.
Cesspool Home equivalent of primary wastewater treatment in which wastes enter a series of porous concrete rings buried underground and are digested by microbes.
Cestodes *(tapeworms)* Group of helminths that are long, flat, and segmented and lack digestive systems.
Chagas' disease Potentially fatal disease caused by a bite from a kissing bug carrying *Trypanosoma cruzi* and characterized by the formation of swellings at the site of the bite, followed by fever, swollen lymph nodes, myocarditis, organ enlargement, and eventually congestive heart failure.
Chancre Painless red lesion that appears at the site of infection with *Treponema pallidum*, the agent of syphilis.
Chancroid Soft, painful, venereal ulcer at site of infection by *Haemophilus ducreyi*.
Chemical bond An interaction between atoms in which electrons are either shared or transferred in such a way as to fill their valence shells.
Chemical fixation In microscopy, a technique that uses methyl alcohol or formalin to attach a smear to a slide.
Chemical reaction The making or breaking of a chemical bond.
Chemiosmosis Use of ion gradients to generate ATP.
Chemoautotroph Microorganism that uses carbon dioxide as a carbon source and catabolizes organic molecules for energy.
Chemoheterotroph Microorganism that uses organic compounds for both energy and carbon.
Chemokine An immune system cytokine that signals leukocytes to rush to the site of inflammation or infection and activate other leukocytes.
Chemostat A continuous culture device controlled by adding fresh medium at the same rate old medium is removed.
Chemotactic factors Chemicals, such as peptides derived from complement and cytokines, that attract cells.
Chemotaxis Cell movement that occurs in response to chemical stimulus.
Chemotherapeutic agent Chemical used to treat disease.
Chemotherapy A branch of medical microbiology in which chemicals are studied for their potential to destroy pathogenic microorganisms.
Chickenpox *(varicella)* Highly infectious disease characterized by fever, malaise, and skin lesions, caused by infection with varicella-zoster virus.
Chitin Strong, flexible nitrogenous polysaccharide found in fungal cell walls and in the exoskeletons of insects and other arthropods.
Chlamydia Any of the small Gram-negative pathogenic cocci that grow and reproduce within the cells of mammals, birds, and a few invertebrates and that spread as eiementary bodies.
Chloramphenicol Antimicrobial drug that blocks the enzymatic site of the 50S ribosomal subunit, inhibiting polypeptide synthesis.
Chlorophyll Pigment molecule that captures light energy for use in photosynthesis.
Chlorophyta Green-pigmented division of algae that have chlorophylls *a* and *b,* store sugar and starch as food reserves, and have rRNA sequences similar to plants. Considered the progenitors of plants.
Chloroplast Light-harvesting organelle found in photosynthetic eukaryotes.
Cholera Disease contracted through the ingestion of food and water contaminated with *Vibrio cholerae* and characterized by vomiting and watery diarrhea.
Cholera toxin Exotoxin produced by *Vibrio cholerae* that causes the movement of water out of the intestinal epithelium.
Chromatin Threadlike mass of DNA and associated histone proteins that becomes visible during mitosis as chromosomes.
Chromatin fiber An association of nucleosomes and proteins found within the chromosomes of eukaryotic cells.
Chromoblastomycosis Cutaneous and subcutaneous disease characterized by lesions that can spread internally; caused by traumatic introduction of ascomycete fungi into the skin.
Chromosome A molecule of DNA associated with protein. In prokaryotes, typically circular and localized in a region of the cytosol called the nucleoid. In eukaryotes, chromosomes are threadlike and are most visible during mitosis and meiosis.
Chronic disease Any disease that develops slowly, usually with less severe symptoms, and is continual or recurrent.
Chronic granulomatous disease Primary immunodeficiency disease in which children have recurrent infections characterized by the development of large masses of inflammatory cells in lymph nodes, lungs, bones, and skin.
Chronic inflammation Type of inflammation that develops slowly, lasts a long time, and can cause damage (even death) to tissues resulting in disease.
Chrysophyta Division of algae including the golden algae, yellow-green algae, and diatoms.
Cilia Short, hairlike, rhythmically motile projections of some eukaryotic cells.
Ciliate In protozoan taxonomy, group of alveolate protozoa characterized by the presence of cilia in their trophozoite stages.
Class Taxonomical grouping of similar orders of organisms.
Class switching The process in which a plasma cell changes the type of antibody F_c region (stem) that it synthesizes and secretes.
Clinical laboratory scientist An expert in health care-related microbiological laboratory procedures who has at least a bachelor degree.
Clinical specimen Sample of human material, such as feces or blood, that is examined or tested for the presence of microorganisms.
Clonal deletion Process by which cells with receptors that respond to autoantigens are selectively killed via apoptosis.
Clonal expansion In immunology, the reproduction of activated lymphocytes.

Clonal selection In antibody immunity, recognition and activation only of B lymphocytes with BCRs complementary to a specific antigenic determinant.
Coccidioidomycosis Pulmonary disease found in the southwestern United States, caused by infection with *Coccidioides immitis*.
Coccobacillus A prokaryotic cell intermediate in shape between a sphere and a rod, such as an elongated coccus.
Coccus Spherical prokaryotic cell.
Codon Triplet of mRNA nucleotides that codes for specific amino acids. For example, AAA is a codon for lysine.
Coenocyte Multinucleate cell resulting from repeated mitosis but postponed or absent cytokinesis.
Coenzyme Organic cofactor.
Cofactor Inorganic ions or organic molecules that are essential for enzyme action.
Coinfection Condition in which a patient is infected simultaneously with hepatitis B and D viruses.
Cold enrichment Incubation of a specimen in a refrigerator to enhance the growth of cold-tolerant species.
Cold sore Common name for oral lesion of a herpesvirus.
Coliforms Enteric Gram-negative bacteria that ferment lactose to gas and are found in the intestinal tracts of animals and humans.
Colony Visible population of microorganisms living in one place; an aggregation of cells arising from a single parent cell.
Colony-forming unit (CFU) A single cell or group of related cells that produce a colony.
Colorado tick fever Zoonosis caused by *Coltivirus* that is typically characterized by mild fever and chills.
Combination vaccine Inoculum composed of antigens from several pathogens that are administered simultaneously.
Commensalism Symbiotic relationship in which one member benefits without significantly affecting the other.
Communicable disease Any infectious disease that comes either directly or indirectly from another host.
Competence Ability of a cell to take up DNA from the environment.
Competitive inhibitor Inhibitory substance that blocks enzyme activity by blocking active sites.
Complement fixation test A complex assay used to determine the presence of specific antibodies in serum.
Complement system Set of blood plasma proteins that act as chemotactic attractants, trigger inflammation and fever, and ultimately effect the destruction of foreign cells.
Complementary DNA (cDNA) DNA synthesized from an mRNA template using reverse transcriptase.
Complex medium Culturing medium that contains nutrients released by the partial digestion of yeast, beef, soy, or other proteins; thus, the exact chemical composition is unknown.
Complex transposon Transposon containing genes not connected with transposition.
Compound A molecule containing atoms of more than one element.
Compound microscope Microscope using a series of lenses for magnification.
Concentration gradient The difference in concentration of a chemical on the two sides of a membrane. Also called a *chemical gradient*.
Condenser lens In a compound microscope, a lens that directs light through the specimen as well as one or more mirrors that deflect the light's path.
Condyloma acuminata Large, cauliflower-like genital warts caused by infection with a papillomavirus.
Confocal microscope Type of light microscope that uses ultraviolet lasers to illuminate fluorescent chemicals in a single plane of the specimen.
Congenital syphilis Disease characterized by mental retardation, organ malformation, and, in some cases, death of the fetus of a woman infected with *Treponema pallidum*, the agent of syphilis.
Conjugation In genetics: method of horizontal gene transfer in which a bacterium containing a fertility plasmid forms a conjugation pilus that attaches and transfers plasmid genes to a recipient; in reproduction of ciliates: coupling of mating cells.
Conjugation pilus Proteinaceous, rodlike structure extending from the surface of a cell; mediates conjugation.
Conjunctivitis *(pinkeye)* Inflammation of the lining of an eyelid.
Consumption Tuberculosis; refers to wasting away of a body affected with TB at several sites.
Contact immunity Immunity conferred to an unvaccinated individual following contact with an individual vaccinated with an attenuated vaccine.
Contagious disease A communicable disease that is easily transmitted from a reservoir or patient.
Contamination The presence of microorganisms in or on the body or other site.
Continuous cell culture Type of cell culture created from tumor cells.
Contrast The difference in visual intensity between two objects, or between an object and its background.
Convalescence In the infectious disease process, final stage during which the patient recovers from the illness, and tissues and systems are repaired and return to normal.
Convalescent phase In pertussis, final phase lasting 3 to 4 weeks during which the ciliated lining of the trachea grows back and frequency of coughing spells diminishes, but secondary bacterial infections may ensue.
Cord factor A cell-wall component of pathogenic *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* that produces strands of daughter cells, inhibits migration of neutrophils, and is toxic to body cells.
Coronaviruses Group of enveloped ssRNA viruses that cause colds as well as severe acute respiratory syndrome.
Corticosteroids Another name for immunosuppressive agents that suppress the action of T cells.
Counterstain In a Gram stain, red stain that provides contrasting color to the primary stain, causing Gram-negative cells to appear pink.
Covalent bond The sharing of a pair of electrons by two atoms.
Coxsackieviruses Group of enteroviruses which cause a variety of diseases in humans, ranging from mild fever and colds to myocarditis and heart failure.
Crenation Shriveling of a cell caused by osmosis in a hypertonic environment.
Cristae Folds within the inner membrane of a mitochondrion that increase its surface area.
Cross resistance Phenomenon in which resistance to one antimicrobial drug confers resistance to similar drugs.
Crossing over Process in which portions of homologous chromosomes are recombined during the formation of gametes.
Croup Inflammation and swelling of the larynx, trachea, and bronchi and a "seal bark" cough, often caused by infection with a parainfluenza or rarely by other respiratory viruses.
Cryptococcosis Disease caused by the dimorphic fungus *Cryptococcus;* typically manifests as meningitis.
Cryptosporidiosis *(*Cryptosporidium *enteritis)* A gastrointestinal disease caused by infection with *Crytosporidium parvum;* in humans, characterized by diarrhea, fluid loss, and weight loss; may be fatal in HIV-positive patients.
Cryptosporidium **enteritis** *(cryptosporidiosis)* A gastrointestinal disease caused by infection with *Cryptosporidium parvum*; in humans, characterized by diarrhea, fluid loss, and weight loss; may be fatal in HIV-positive patients.
Culture Act of cultivating microorganisms or the microorganisms that are cultivated.
Cuticle Outer protective "skin" of a nematode.
Cyanobacteria Gram-negative photosystem bacteria that vary greatly in shape, size, and method of reproduction.
Cyclic photophosphorylation Return of electrons to the original reaction center of a photosystem after passing down an electron transport chain.
Cycloserine Semisynthetic antibiotic used to treat infections with Gram-positive bacteria.
Cyclosporine Immunosuppressive drug that inhibits action of activated T cells.
Cyst In protozoan morphology, the hardy resting stage characterized by a thick capsule and a low metabolic rate.
Cysticercus Immature tapeworm, usually in muscle of intermediate host.
Cytokines Proteins secreted by many types of cells that regulate adaptive immune responses.
Cytokinesis Division of a cell's cytoplasm.
Cytoplasm General term used to describe the semiliquid, gelatinous material inside a cell.
Cytoplasmic membrane Membrane surrounding all cells, and composed of a fluid mosaic of phospholipids and proteins.
Cytosine Ring-shaped nitrogenous base found in nucleotides of DNA and RNA.
Cytoskeleton Internal network of fibers contributing to the basic shape of eukaryotic and rod-shaped prokaryotic cells.
Cytosol The liquid portion of the cytoplasm.
Cytotoxic drugs Group of drugs that inhibit cells.
Cytotoxic T cell *(Tc cell, CD8 cell)* In cell-mediated immune response, type of cell characterized by CD8 cell-surface glycoprotein; secretes perforins and granzymes that destroy infected or abnormal body cells.

Dark-field microscope Microscope used for studying pale or small specimens; deflects light rays so that they miss the objective lens.
Dark repair Mechanism by which enzymes cut damaged DNA sections from a molecule, creating a gap that is repaired by DNA polymerase and DNA ligase.
Deamination Process in which amine groups are split from amino acids.

Death phase Phase in a growth curve in which the organisms are dying more quickly than they are being replaced by new organisms.
Decimal reduction time (D) The time required to destroy 90% of the microbes in a sample.
Decline In the infectious disease process, period in which the body gradually returns to normal as the patient's immune response and any medical treatments vanquish the pathogens.
Decolorizing agent In a stain, a solution that washes the primary stain away.
Decomposition reaction A chemical reaction in which the bonds of larger molecules are broken to form smaller atoms, ions, and molecules.
Deep-freezing Long-term storage of cultures at temperatures ranging from –50° C to –95° C.
Deeply branching bacteria Prokaryotic autotrophs with rRNA sequences and growth characteristics thought to be similar to those of earliest bacteria.
Defensins *(antimicrobial peptides)* Small peptide chains that act against a broad range of pathogens.
Defined medium *(synthetic medium)* Culturing medium of which the exact chemical composition is known.
Definitive host In the life cycle of parasites, host in which mature and sometimes sexual forms of the parasite are present and usually reproducing.
Degerming The removal of microbes from a surface by scrubbing.
Dehydration synthesis Type of synthesis reaction in which two smaller molecules are joined together by a covalent bond, and a water molecule is formed.
Delayed hypersensitivity reaction *(type IV hypersensitivity)* T cell-mediated inflammatory reaction that takes 24 to 72 hours to reach maximal intensity.
Deletion Type of mutation in which a nucleotide base pair is deleted.
Deltaproteobacteria Group of Proteobacteria that includes *Desulfovibrio*, *Bdellovibrio*, and myxobacteria.
Denaturation Process by which a protein's three-dimensional structure is altered, eliminating function.
Dendritic cells Cells of the epidermis and mucous membranes that devour pathogens.
Dengue fever Self-limiting but extremely painful disease caused by a flavivirus transmitted by *Aedes* mosquitoes.
Dengue hemorrhagic fever Potentially fatal disease involving a hyperimmune response to reinfection with dengue virus and causing ruptured blood vessels, internal bleeding, and shock.
Denitrification The conversion of nitrate into nitrogen gas by anaerobic respiration.
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) Nucleic acid consisting of nucleotides made up of phosphate, a deoxyribose pentose sugar, and an arrangement of the bases adenine, guanine, cytosine, and thymine.
Dermatophyte Fungus that normally lives on skin, nails, or hair.
Dermatophytoses Any of a variety of superficial skin, nail, and hair infections caused by dermatophytes.
Dermis The layer of the skin deep to the epidermis and containing hair follicles, glands, and nerve endings.
Descriptive epidemiology The careful recording of data concerning a disease.
Desiccation Inhibition of microbial growth by drying.
Detergent Positively charged organic surfactant.
Deuteromycetes Informal grouping of fungi having no known sexual stage.
Diapedesis *(emigration)* Process whereby leukocytes leave intact blood vessels by squeezing between lining cells.
Diatom Type of alga in the division Chrysophyta; has cell walls made of silica arranged in nesting halves called frustules.
Dichotomous key Method of identifying organisms in which information is arranged in paired statements, only one of which applies to any particular organism.
Differential interference contrast microscope Type of phase microscope that uses prisms to split light beams, giving images a three-dimensional appearance.
Differential medium Culturing medium formulated such that either the presence of visible changes in the medium or differences in the appearances of colonies help microbiologists differentiate among kinds of bacteria growing on the medium.
Differential stain In microscopy, a stain using more than one dye so that different structures can be distinguished. The Gram stain is the most commonly used.
Differential white blood cell count Lab technique that indicates the relative numbers of leukocytes.
Diffusion The net movement of a chemical down its concentration gradient.
Diffusion susceptibility test *(Kirby-Bauer test)* Simple, inexpensive test widely used to reveal which drug is most effective against a particular pathogen. Procedure involves inoculating a Petri plate uniformly with a standardized amount of the pathogen in question and arranging on the plate disks soaked in the drugs to be tested.
DiGeorge syndrome Failure of the thymus to develop, and thus, absence of T cells.
Dimorphic Having two forms; for example, dimorphic fungi have both yeastlike and moldlike thalli.
Dinoflagellate In protozoan taxonomy, group of unicellular, flagellated, alveolate protozoa characterized by photosynthetic pigments.
Dioecious Male and female sex organs are in separate individuals.
Diphtheria Mild to potentially fatal respiratory disease caused by diphtheria toxin following infection with *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.
Diphtheroids Generally nonpathogenic pleomorphic bacilli named for the similarity of their appearance to *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.
Diplococcus A pair of cocci.
Diploid A nucleus with two copies of each chromosome.
Diploid cell culture Type of cell culture created from embryonic animal, plant, or human cells that have been isolated and provided appropriate growth conditions.
Dipstick immunochromatographic assay Rapid modification of ELISA test in which an antigen solution flows through a porous strip, encountering labeled antibody; used for pregnancy testing and for rapid identification of infectious agents.
Direct antibody test Immune test allowing direct observation of the presence of antigen.
Direct contact transmission Spread of pathogens from one host to another involving body contact between the hosts.
Direct fluorescent antibody test Immune test allowing direct observation of the presence of antigen in a tissue sample flooded with labeled antibody.
Disaccharide Carbohydrate consisting of two monosaccharide molecules joined together.
Disease Any adverse internal condition severe enough to interfere with normal body functioning.
Disease process Definite sequence of events following contamination and infection.
Disinfectant Physical or chemical agent used to inhibit or destroy microorganisms on inanimate objects.
Disinfection The use of physical or chemical agents to inhibit or destroy microorganisms on inanimate objects. In water treatment, ozone, UV light, or chlorination kill most microorganisms.
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) The formation of blood clots within blood vessels throughout the body; triggered by lipid A.
DNA fingerprinting *(genetic fingerprinting)* Technique that identifies unique sequences of DNA to determine paternity; connect blood, semen, or skin cells to suspects in criminal investigations; or identify pathogens.
DNA microarray Numerous distinct ssDNA molecules bound to a substrate and used to probe for complementary sequences.
Dolor Pain.
Domain Any of three basic types of cell groupings distinguished by Carl Woese, containing the Linnaean taxon of *kingdoms*.
Donor cell In horizontal gene transfer, a cell that contributes part of its genome to a recipient.
Droplet transmission Spread of pathogens from one host to another via aerosols, which exit the body during exhaling, coughing, and sneezing and travel less than 1 meter.
Dysentery Disease characterized by severe diarrhea often with stools containing blood and mucus.
Dyspnea Difficulty in breathing.
Dysuria Painful urination.

E site In translation, site at which tRNA exits from the ribosome.
Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE) Potentially fatal infection of the brain caused by a togavirus.
Ebola virus Virus of Africa causing a type of hemorrhagic fever fatal in 90% of cases.
Echinocandin Antifungal drug that inhibits cell wall synthesis.
Echoviruses *(enteric cytopathic human orphan viruses)* Group of enteroviruses that cause viral meningitis and colds.
Ecosystem All of the organisms living in a particular habitat and the relationships between the two.
Efflux pump Transmembrane pump that removes antimicrobial drugs from a cell or from the periplasm.
Ehrlichiosis (*human monocytic ehrlichiosis, HME*) Tick-borne disease caused by a rickettsia, *Ehrlichia chaffeensis*, manifesting with flulike signs and symptoms. Also previously used to refer to human granulocytic ehrlichiosis, now called *anaplasmosis*.
Electrical gradient Voltage across a membrane created by the electrical charges of the chemicals on either side.
Electrochemical gradient The chemical and electrical gradients across a cell membrane.
Electrolyte Any hydrated cation or anion; can conduct electricity through a solution.

Electron A negatively charged subatomic particle.
Electron transport chain Series of redox reactions that pass electrons from one membrane-bound carrier to another and then to a final electron acceptor.
Electronegativity The attraction of an atom for electrons.
Elek test Immunodiffusion assay used to detect the presence of diphtheria toxin in a fluid sample.
Element Matter that is composed of a single type of atom.
Elementary bodies Infectious stage in the life cycle of chlamydias.
Elephantiasis Enlargement and hardening of tissues, especially in the lower extremities, where lymph has accumulated following infection with *Wuchereria bancrofti*.
Empyema In patients with staphylococcal pneumonia, the presence of pus in the alveoli of the lungs.
Encephalitis Inflammation of the brain.
Encystment In the life cycle of protozoa, stage in which cysts form in host tissues.
Endemic In epidemiology, a disease that occurs at a relatively stable frequency within a given area or population.
Endemic typhus *(murine typhus)* Disease transmitted by fleas and characterized by high fever, headache, chills, muscle pain, and nausea; caused by infection with *Rickettsia typhi*.
Endocarditis Potentially fatal inflammation of the endocardium; typically caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Endocytosis Active transport process, used by some eukaryotic cells, in which pseudopods surround a substance and move it into the cell.
Endoflagellum A special flagellum of spirochetes that spirals tightly around a cell rather than protruding from it.
Endogenous antigen Antigen produced by microbes that multiply inside the cells of the body.
Endogenous nosocomial infection An infection arising within a patient from opportunistic pathogens.
Endoplasmic reticulum (ER) Netlike arrangement of hollow tubules continuous with the outer membrane of the nuclear envelope and functioning as a transport system.
Endosome A sac formed during endocytosis containing the endocytized substance.
Endospore Environmentally resistant structure produced by the transformation of a vegetative cell of the Gram-positive genera *Bacillus* or *Clostridium*.
Endosymbiotic theory Proposal that eukaryotes were formed from the phagocytosis of small prokaryotes by larger prokaryotes, forming organelles.
Endothermic reaction Any chemical reaction that requires energy.
Endotoxin *(lipid A)* Potentially fatal toxin released from the lipopolysaccharide layer of the outer membrane of the cell wall of dead and dying Gram-negative bacteria.
Enrichment culture Technique used to enhance the growth of less abundant microorganisms by using a selective medium.
Enterobacteriaceae *(enteric bacteria)* Family of oxidase-negative Gram-negative bacteria, which can be pathogenic.
Enteroviruses Group of picornaviruses that are transmitted via the fecal-oral route but cause disease in any of a variety of target organs.
Entner-Doudoroff pathway Series of reactions that catabolize glucose to pyruvic acid using different enzymes from those used in either glycolysis or the pentose phosphate pathway.
Entry In virology, second stage of the lytic replication cycle, in which the virion or its genome enters the host cell.
Envelope In virology, membrane surrounding the viral capsid.
Environmental microbiology Branch of microbiology studying the role of microorganisms in soils, water, and other habitats.
Environmental specimen Sample of material taken from such sources as ponds, soil, or air and tested for the presence of microorganisms.
Enzyme An organic catalyst.
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays (ELISAs) A family of simple immune tests that use enzymatic products as a label and that can be readily automated and read by machine.
Eosinophil Type of granulocyte that stains red to orange with the acidic dye eosin.
Eosinophilia An abnormal blood condition in which the number of eosinophils is greater than normal.
Epidemic In epidemiology, a disease that occurs at a greater than normal frequency for a given area or population.
Epidemiology Study of the occurrence, distribution, and spread of disease in humans.
Epidermis The outermost layer of the skin.
Epididymitis Inflammation of the epididymis.
Epitope *(antigenic determinant)* The three-dimensional shape of a region of an antigen that is recognized by the immune system.
Epsilonproteobacteria Group of Gram-negative rods, vibrios, and spiraled bacteria in the phylum Proteobacteria.
Erysipelas Impetigo spreading to lymph nodes, accompanied by pain and inflammation and caused by infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Erythema infectiosum *(fifth disease)* Harmless red rash occurring in children and caused by infection with B19 virus.
Erythrocyte Red blood cell.
Erythrocytic cycle In the life cycle of *Plasmodium*, stage during which merozoites infect and cause lysis of erythrocytes.
Eschar Black, swollen, crusty, painless skin ulcer of anthrax.
Etest Test for determining minimum inhibitory concentration; a plastic strip containing a gradient of the antimicrobial agent being tested is placed on a plate inoculated with the pathogen of interest.
Ethambutol Antimicrobial drug that disrupts formation of arabinogalactan-mycolic acid by mycobacteria.
Etiology The study of the causation of disease.
Euglenids Protozoa that store food as paramylon, lack cell walls, and have eyespots used in positive phototaxis.
Eukarya In Woese's taxonomy, domain that includes all eukaryotic cells.
Eukaryote Any organism made up of cells containing a nucleus composed of genetic material surrounded by a distinct membrane. Classification includes animals, plants, algae, fungi, and protozoa.
Eutrophication The overgrowth of microorganisms in aquatic systems.
Evolution Changes in the genetic makeup of a population leading to the production of new varieties.
Exchange reaction Type of chemical reaction in which atoms are moved from one molecule to another by means of the breaking and forming of covalent bonds.
Excystment In the life cycle of protozoa, stage following ingestion by the host, in which cysts become trophozoites.
Exfoliative toxins Toxins of certain strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* that break down desmosomes in the skin, causing the outer layers of skin to slough off.
Exocytosis Active transport process, used by some eukaryotic cells, in which vesicles fuse with the cytoplasmic membrane and export their substances from the cell.
Exoerythrocytic phase In the life cycle of *Plasmodium*, stage during which infected mosquito injects sporozoites into the blood.
Exogenous antigen Antigen produced by microorganisms that multiply outside the cells of the body.
Exogenous nosocomial infection An infection caused by pathogens acquired from the health care environment.
Exon Coding sequence of mRNA. Exons are connected to produce a functional mRNA molecule.
Exothermic reaction Any chemical reaction that releases energy.
Exotoxin Toxin secreted by a pathogenic microorganism into its environment.
Experimental epidemiology The testing of hypotheses resulting from analytical epidemiology concerning the cause of a disease.
Exponential (logarithmic) growth Increase in size of a microbial population in which the number of cells doubles in a fixed interval of time.
Extensively drug-resistant (XDR) tuberculosis Tuberculosis caused by extensively drug-resistant *Mycobacterium*.
Extremophile Microbe that requires extreme conditions of temperature, pH, and/or salinity to survive.

F (fertility) plasmid *(F factor)* Small, circular, extrachromosomal molecule of DNA coding for conjugation pili. Bacterial cells that contain an F plasmid are called F^+ cells and serve as donors during conjugation.
F_C region The stem region of an antibody.
Facilitated diffusion Movement of substances across a cell membrane via protein channels.
Facultative anaerobe Microorganism that can live with or without oxygen.
Family Taxonomical grouping of similar genera of organisms.
Fats Compounds composed of three fatty acid molecules linked to a molecule of glycerol.
Fecal-oral infection Spread of pathogenic microorganisms in feces to the mouth, such as results from drinking sewage-contaminated water.
Fecal transplant Injection of feces into a patient, typically via an enema tube; used to restore normal microbiota of the colon especially in recurrent cases with *Clostridium difficile* infection.
Feedback inhibition *(negative feedback)* Method of controlling the action of enzymes in which the end product of a series of reactions inhibits an enzyme in an earlier part of the pathway.
Fermentation In metabolism, the partial oxidation of sugar to release energy using an endogenous organic

molecule rather than an electron transport chain as the final electron acceptor. In food microbiology, any desirable change to food or beverage induced by microbes.
Fever Body temperature above 37°C.
Fever blisters *(cold sores)* Painful, itchy lesions on the lips; characteristic of infection with *human herpesvirus 1*.
Filariasis Infection of the lymphatic system caused by a filarial nematode.
Filtration The passage of air or liquid through a material that traps and removes microbes. In water treatment, a process in which microbial biofilms on sand particles trap and remove other microbes.
Fimbriae Sticky, proteinaceous extensions of some bacterial cells that function to adhere cells to one another and to environmental surfaces.
Firmicutes Phylum of bacteria that includes clostridia, mycoplasmas, and low G + C Gram-positive bacilli and cocci.
Flagellates Group of protozoa that possess at least one long flagellum, generally used for movement.
Flagellum A long, whiplike structure protruding from a cell.
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD) Important vitamin-derived electron carrier molecule.
Flea Vertically flattened, bloodsucking, wingless insect; vector of some pathogens.
Flocculation Process in water treatment in which alum (aluminum ammonium sulfate) added to the water forms sediments with particles and microorganisms.
Fluid mosaic model Model describing the arrangement and motion of the proteins within the cytoplasmic membrane.
Fluorescent microscope Type of light microscope that uses an ultraviolet light source to fluoresce objects.
Fly Insect with transparent wings that are not hidden or covered, including mosquitoes; vectors for many pathogens.
Folliculitis Infection of a hair follicle by *Staphylococcus aureus*.
Fomes (pl. **fomites**) Objects inadvertently used to transfer pathogens to new hosts, such as a glass or towel.
Food infection Type of food poisoning in whch living organisms are consumed.
Food intoxication Type of food poisoning resulting from consumption of microbial toxin.
Food microbiology The use of microorganisms in food production and the prevention of foodborne illnesses.
Food vesicle Sac formed during endocytosis of a solid; also called an endosome or phagosome.
Foodborne transmission Spread of pathogenic microorganisms in or on foods that are poorly processed, undercooked, or improperly refrigerated.
Foraminifera Type of armored marine amoeba.
Formed elements Cells and cell fragments suspended in blood plasma.
Frameshift mutation Type of mutation in which nucleotide triplets subsequent to an insertion or deletion are displaced, creating new sequences of codons that result in vastly altered polypeptide sequences.
Functional group An arrangement of atoms common to all members of a class of organic molecules, such as the amine group found in all amino acids.
Fungi Eukaryotic organisms that have cell walls and obtain food from other organisms.
Furuncle A large, painful, nodular extension of folliculitis into surrounding tissue; may be caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus*.

Gametocyte In sexual reproduction of protozoa, cell that can fuse with another gametocyte to form a diploid zygote.
Gamma interferons (IFN-γ) Interferon produced by T lymphocytes and NK lymphocytes; activates macrophages and neutrophils days after an infection.
Gammaproteobacteria Largest and most diverse class of Proteobacteria, including purple sulfur bacteria, methane oxidizers, pseudomonads, and others.
Gas gangrene Death of muscle and connective tissues accompanied by gaseous waste, caused by *Clostridium perfringens*.
Gaseous agent High-level disinfecting gas used to sterilize heat-sensitive equipment and large objects.
Gastroenteritis Inflammation of the mucous membrane of the stomach and intestines.
GC content The percentage of a cell's DNA bases that are guanine and cytosine.
Gel electrophoresis Technique used in recombinant DNA technology to separate molecules by size, shape, and electrical charge.
Gene A specific sequence of nucleotides that codes for a polypeptide or an RNA molecule.
Gene library Collection of bacterial or phage clones, each of which carries a fragment of an organism's genome.
Gene therapy The use of recombinant DNA technology to insert a missing gene or repair a defective gene in human cells.
Genera Plural of genus.
Generation time Time required for a cell to grow and divide.
Genetic engineering The manipulation of genes via recombinant DNA technology for practical applications.
Genetic fingerprinting *(DNA fingerprinting)* Technique that identifies unique sequences of DNA to determine paternity; connect blood, semen, or skin cells to suspects in criminal investigations; or identify pathogens.
Genetic mapping Application of recombinant DNA technology in which genes are located on a nucleic acid molecule.
Genetic recombination The exchange of segments, typically genes, between two DNA molecules.
Genetic screening Procedure by which laboratory tests are used to screen patient and fetal DNA for mutant genes.
Genetics The study of inheritance and heritable traits as expressed in an organism's genetic material.
Genome The sum of all the genetic material in a cell or virus.
Genomics The sequencing, analysis, and comparison of genomes.
Genotype Actual set of genes in an organism's genome.
Genus Taxonomical grouping of similar species of organisms.
Germ theory of disease Hypothesis formulated by Pasteur in 1857 that microorganisms are responsible for disease.
German measles *(rubella)* Disease caused by infection with *Rubivirus* resulting in characteristic rash lasting about 3 days; mild in children but potentially teratogenic to fetuses of infected women.
Giardiasis A mild to severe gastrointestinal illness caused by ingestion of cysts of *Giardia intestinalis*.
Gingivitis Inflammation of the gums.
Glomerulonephritis Deposition of immune complexes in the walls of the glomeruli—networks of minute blood vessels in the kidneys—that may result in kidney failure; typically caused by infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Glucocorticoids *(corticosteroids)* Immunosuppressive agents, including prednisone and methylprednisolone, that suppress the response of T cells.
Glycocalyx (pl. **glycocalyces**) Sticky external sheath of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.
Glycolysis *(Embden-Meyerhof pathway)* First step in the catabolism of glucose via respiration and fermentation.
Goblet cells Mucus-secreting cells in the epithelium of mucous membranes.
Golgi body In eukaryotic cells, a series of flattened, hollow sacs surrounded by phospholipid bilayers and functioning to package large molecules for export in secretory vesicles.
Gonorrhea A sexually transmitted disease caused by infection with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*.
gp41 Antigenic HIV glycoprotein that promotes fusion of the viral envelope with a target cell.
gp120 Antigenic glycoprotein that is the primary attachment molecule of HIV.
Graft Tissue or organ transplanted to a new site.
Graft rejection Rejection of donated tissue or organs by a transplant recipient.
Graft-versus-host disease Disease resulting when donated bone marrow cells mount an immune response against the recipient's cells.
Gram-negative cell Generally, a prokaryotic cell having a wall composed of a thin layer of wall material, an external membrane, and a periplasmic space between; appears pink after the Gram-staining procedures.
Gram-positive cell Prokaryotic cell having a thick wall; in bacteria, composed of a thick layer of peptidoglycan containing teichoic acids; Gram-positive cells retain the crystal violet dye used in the Gram-staining procedure, appearing purple.
Gram stain Technique for staining microbial samples by applying a series of dyes that leave some microbes purple and others pink. Developed by Christian Gram in 1884.
Granulocyte Type of leukocyte having large granules in the cytoplasm.
Granzyme Protein molecule in the cytoplasm of cytotoxic T cells that causes an infected cell to undergo apoptosis.
Graves' disease Production of autoantibodies that stimulate excessive production of thyroid hormone and growth of the thyroid gland.
Gross mutation Major change in the nucleotide sequence of DNA resulting from inversions, duplications, transpositions, or large insertions or deletions of nucleotides.
Group A *Streptococcus* *(S. pyogenes)* A Gram-positive coccus that produces protein M and a hyaluronic acid capsule, both of which contribute to the pathogenicity of the species.
Group B *Streptococcus* *(S. agalactiae)* A Gram-positive coccus that normally resides in the lower

GI, genital, and urinary tracts but can cause disease in newborns.
Group translocation Active process, occurring in some prokaryotes, by which a substance being actively transported across a cell membrane is chemically changed during transport.
Growth An increase in size; in bacteriology, an increase in population.
Growth curve Graph that plots the number in a population over time.
Growth factor Organic chemical, such as a vitamin, required in very small amounts for metabolism. In immunology, an immune system cytokine that stimulates stem cells to divide, ensuring that the body is supplied with sufficient leukocytes of all types.
Guanine Ring-shaped nitrogenous base found in nucleotides of DNA and RNA.
Gumma Lesion that occurs in bones, in nervous tissue, or on skin in patients with tertiary syphilis.

HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy) A cocktail of antiviral drugs including nucleoside analogs, integrase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.
Habitat The physical localities in which organisms are found.
Halogen One of the four very reactive, nonmetallic chemical elements: iodine, chlorine, bromine, and fluorine. Used in disinfectants and antiseptics.
Halophile Microorganism requiring a saline environment (greater than 9% NaCl).
Hamus Proteinaceous, filamentous, helical extension of some archaeal cells that functions to attach the cells to one another and environmental surfaces.
Hansen's disease *(leprosy)* Disease caused by infection with *Mycobacterium leprae* that produces either a nonprogressive tuberculoid form or a progressive lepromatous form that destroys tissues, including facial features, digits, and other structures.
Hantavirus **pulmonary syndrome (HPS)** Rapid, severe, and often fatal pneumonia caused by infection with a *Hantavirus*.
Hantaviruses Group of bunyaviruses that are transmitted to humans via inhalation of virions in dried deer-mouse excreta and that cause *Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome.
Haploid A nucleus with a single copy of each chromosome.
Haustoria Modified hyphae that penetrate the tissue of the host to withdraw nutrients.
Hay fever Allergic reaction localized to the upper respiratory tract and characterized by nasal discharge, sneezing, itchy throat and eyes, and excessive tear production.
Heat fixation In microscopy, a technique that uses the heat from a flame to attach a smear to a slide.
Heavy-metal ions The ions of high-molecular-weight metals, such as arsenic, that are used as antimicrobial agents because they denature proteins. They have largely been replaced because they are also toxic to human cells.
Helminths Multicellular eukaryotic worms, some of which are parasitic.
Helper T cell *(Th cell, CD4 cell)* In cell-mediated immune response, a type of cell characterized by CD4 cell-surface glycoprotein; regulates the activity of B cells and cytotoxic T cells.
Hemagglutinin (HA) Component of glycoprotein spikes in the lipid envelope of influenzaviruses that help them attach to pulmonary epithelial cells.
Hemolytic disease of the newborn Disease that results when antibodies made by an Rh-negative woman cross the placenta and destroy the red blood cells of an Rh-positive fetus.
Hemorrhagic fever Viral syndrome characterized by fever, bleeding in the skin and mucous membranes, low blood pressure, and shock.
HEPA (high-efficiency particulate air) filter Filters built into biological safety cabinets; they prevent exposure to microbes by maintaining a barrier of moving filtered air across the cabinet's openings.
Hepatitis Inflammation of the liver.
Hepatitis A Inflammation of the liver resulting from infection with hepatitis A virus.
Hepatitis B Inflammatory condition of the liver caused by infection with hepatitis B virus and characterized by jaundice.
Hepatitis C Chronic inflammation of the liver that can cause permanent liver damage or hepatic cancer; caused by infection with hepatitis C virus.
Hepatitis D Inflammation of liver that can cause severe liver damage or hepatic cancer; caused by infection with hepatitis D virus.
Hepatitis E *(enteric hepatitis)* Inflammation of the liver, which is fatal in 20% of infected pregnant women; caused by hepatitis E virus.
Herd immunity Protection against illness provided to a population when a pathogen cannot spread because the majority of the group are resistant to the pathogen.
Herpangina Lesions of the mouth and pharynx caused by coxsackie A virus; resemble those of herpesvirus.
Herpes Painful, itchy skin lesions caused by herpesviruses.
Herpes zoster *(shingles)* Extremely painful skin rash caused by reactivation of latent varicella-zoster virus.
Heterocyst Thick-walled nonphotosynthetic cell of cyanobacteria; reduces nitrogen.
Hfr (high frequency of recombination) cell Cell containing an F plasmid that is integrated into the prokaryotic chromosome. Hfr cells form pili and transfer cellular genes more frequently than normal F^+ cells.
Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) A cocktail of antiviral drugs including nucleotide analogs, integrase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and reverse transcriptase inhibitors.
Histamine Inflammatory chemical released from damaged cells that causes vasodilation of capillaries.
Histone Globular protein found in eukaryotic and archaeal chromosomes.
Histoplasmosis Pulmonary, cutaneous, ocular, or systemic disease found in the Ohio River valley and caused by infection with *Histoplasma capsulatum*.
Holoenzyme The combination of an apoenzyme and its cofactors.
Horizontal (lateral) gene transfer Process in which a donor cell contributes part of its genome to a recipient cell, which may be a different species or genus from the donor.
Host In symbiosis, member of a parasitic relationship that supports the parasite.
Human herpesviruses Group of viruses of humans that cause skin lesions, which are often creeping; diseases include herpes, chickenpox, mononucleosis, and roseola.
Human immunodeficiency viruses Retroviruses that destroy the immune system.
Human T-lymphotropic viruses Group of oncogenic retroviruses associated with cancer of lymphocytes.
Humoral immune response (antibody immune response) The immune response centered around B lymphocytes and immunoglobulins.
Hybridomas Tumor cells created by fusing antibody-secreting plasma cells with cancerous plasma cells called *myelomas*.
Hydatid Fluid-filled.
Hydatid disease Potentially fatal disease caused by infection with the canine tapeworm *Echinococcus granulosus* and characterized by the presence of fluid-filled cysts in the liver or other tissues.
Hydrogen bond The electrical attraction between a partially charged hydrogen atom and a full or partial negative charge on a different region of the same molecule or another molecule. Hydrogen bonds confer unique properties to water molecules.
Hydrolysis A decomposition reaction in which a covalent bond is broken and the ionic components of water are added to the products.
Hydrophilic Attracted to water.
Hydrophobia Literally, a fear of water; symptom caused by painful swallowing characteristic of rabies infection.
Hydrophobic Insoluble in water.
Hydrothermal vent Vent in marine abyssal zone that spews superheated, nutrient-rich water.
Hydroxyl radical Most reactive of the toxic forms of oxygen.
Hypersensitivity Any immune response against a foreign antigen that is exaggerated beyond the norm.
Hypersensitivity pneumonitis A form of pneumonia.
Hyperthermophile Microorganism requiring temperatures above 80°C.
Hypertonic Characteristic of a solution having a higher concentration of solutes than another.
Hyphae Long, branched, tubular filaments in the thalli of molds.
Hypotonic Characteristic of a solution having a lower concentration of solutes than another.

Iatrogenic infections A subset of nosocomial infections that are the direct result of a medical procedure or treatment, such as surgery.
Illness In the infectious disease process, the most severe stage, in which signs and symptoms are most evident.
Immune complexes Antigen-antibody complexes.
Immune thrombocytopenic purpura Disease resulting when drugs bound to platelets bind antibodies and complement, causing the platelets to lyse.
Immunization Administration of an antigenic inoculum to stimulate an adaptive immune response and immunological memory.
Immunoblot *(western blot)* Variation of an ELISA test that can detect the presence of proteins, such as antibodies against multiple antigens.
Immunochromatographic assay Immune test in which antigen molecules form visible immune complexes with antibodies labeled with a colored substance.

Immunodiffusion An immune test in which antibodies and antigens diffuse from separate wells in agar to form a line of precipitate.
Immunofiltration assay Rapid modification of ELISA test using membrane filters rather than plates.
Immunoglobulin (Ig) *(antibody)* Proteinaceous antigen-binding molecule secreted by plasma cells.
Immunoglobulin A (IgA) The antibody class most commonly associated with various body secretions, including tears and milk. IgA pairs with a secretory component to form *secretory IgA*.
Immunoglobulin D (IgD) A membrane-bound antibody molecule found in some animals as a B cell receptor.
Immunoglobulin E (IgE) Signal antibody molecule that triggers the inflammatory response, particularly in allergic reactions and infections by parasitic worms.
Immunoglobulin G (IgG) The predominant antibody class found in the bloodstream and the primary defender against invading bacteria.
Immunoglobulin M (IgM) The second most common antibody class and the predominant antibody produced first during a primary humoral immune response.
Immunological synapse Interface between cells of the immune system that involves cell-to-cell signaling.
Immunology Study of the body's specific defenses against pathogens.
Immunophilins Immunosuppressive drugs, such as cyclosporine, that inhibit T cell function.
Immunotherapy Administration of antibodies (passive immunization) or dilute antigen so as to provide immunological protection against antigens.
Impetigo Presence of red, pus-filled vesicles on the face and limbs of children; caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Streptococcus pyogenes*.
Inactivated polio vaccine (IPV) Inoculum developed by Jonas Salk in 1955 for vaccination against poliovirus.
Inactivated vaccine Inoculum containing either whole agents or subunits and often adjuvants.
Incidence In epidemiology, the number of new cases of a disease in a given area or population during a given period of time.
Inclusion Deposited substance such as a lipid, gas vesicle, or magnetite stored within the cytosol of a cell.
Inclusion bodies In the life cycle of chlamydias, eukaryotic phagosomes full of chlamydial reticulate bodies.
Incubation period Stage in infectious disease process between infection and occurrence of the first symptoms or signs of disease. In a laboratory culture, the period between adding a sample to a plate and the development of colonies.
Index case In epidemiology, the first instance of the disease in a given area or population.
Indicator organisms Fecal microbe found in the environment that reveals potential contamination by feces.
Indirect contact transmission Spread of pathogens from one host to another via inanimate objects called *fomites*.
Indirect fluorescent antibody test Immune test allowing observation through a fluorescence microscope of the presence of antigen in a tissue sample flooded with labeled antibody.
Indirect selection *(negative selection)* Process by which auxotrophic mutants are isolated and cultured.
Induced-fit model Description of way in which an enzyme changes its shape slightly after binding to its substrate so as to bind it more tightly.
Inducible operon Type of operon that is not normally transcribed and must be activated by inducers.
Induction In virology, excision of a prophage from the host chromosome, at which point the prophage reenters the lytic phase.
Industrial microbiology Branch of microbiology in which microbes are manipulated to manufacture useful products.
Infection Successful invasion of the body by a pathogenic microorganism.
Infection control Branch of microbiology studying the prevention and control of infectious disease.
Infectious mononucleosis *(mono)* Disease characterized by sore throat, fever, fatigue, and enlargement of the spleen and liver; caused by infection with Epstein-Barr virus.
Influenza (flu) Infectious disease caused by two species of orthomyxoviruses and characterized by fever, malaise, headache, and myalgia; certain strains can be fatal.
Initial body *(reticulate body)* Reproductive structure of chlamydias that undergoes repeated binary fissions until the host cell is filled.
Innate immunity Resistance to pathogens conferred by barriers, chemicals, cells, and processes that remain unchanged upon subsequent infections with the same pathogens.
Inoculum Sample of microorganisms.
Inorganic chemical Molecule lacking carbon.
Insect Arthropod with three distinct body divisions: head, thorax, abdomen; vectors for some helminthic, protozoan, bacterial, and viral pathogens.
Insertion Type of mutation in which a base pair is inserted into a genetic sequence.
Insertion sequence (IS) A simple transposon consisting of no more than two inverted repeats and a gene that encodes the enzyme transposase.
Integrase Enzyme carried by the virions of HIV that allows integration into a human chromosome.
Interferons (IFNs) Protein molecules that inhibit the spread of viral infections.
Interleukins (ILs) Immune system cytokines that signal among leukocytes.
Intermediate host In the life cycle of parasites, host in which immature forms of the parasite are present and undergoing various stages of maturation.
Intoxication (bacterial) Food poisoning caused by bacterial toxin.
Intron Noncoding sequence of mRNA that is removed to make functional mRNA.
In-use test Method of evaluating the effectiveness of a disinfectant or antiseptic which tests efficacy under specific, real-life conditions.
Inverted repeat (IR) Palindromic sequence found at each end of a transposon.
Ion An atom or group of atoms that has either a full negative charge or a full positive charge.
Ionic bond A type of bond formed from the attraction of opposite electrical charges. Electrons are not shared.
Ionizing radiation Form of radiation with wavelengths shorter than 1 nm that are energetic enough to create ions by ejecting electrons from atoms.
Ischemia Local anemia due to interruption of blood supply by mechanical blockage.
Isograft Type of graft in which tissues are moved between genetically identical individuals (identical twins).
Isoniazid (INH) Antimicrobial drug that disrupts formation of arabinogalactan-mycolic acid by mycobacteria.
Isotonic Characteristic of a solution having the same concentration of solutes and water as another.
Isotopes Atoms of a given element that differ only in the number of neutrons they contain.

Jaundice Yellowing of skin and eyes due to accumulation of bilirubin in the blood.

Kelsey-Sykes capacity test Standard assessment approved by the European Union to determine the ability of a given chemical to inhibit microbial growth.
Keratitis Inflammation of the cornea.
Kinetoplastid Euglenozoan protozoan with a single large mitochondrion that contains an apical region of mitochondrial DNA called a *kinetoplast*.
Kingdom Taxonomical grouping of similar phyla of organisms.
Kinins Powerful inflammatory chemicals released by mast cells.
Kissing bug Blood-eating insect of family Reduviidae that seemingly prefers oral blood vessels.
Koch's postulates A series of steps, elucidated by Robert Koch, that must be taken to prove the cause of any infectious disease.
Koplik's spots Mouth lesions characteristic of measles.
Korarchaeota Phylum of archaea; known only from environmental RNA samples.
Krebs cycle Series of eight enzymatically catalyzed reactions that transfer stored energy from acetyl-CoA to coenzymes NAD^+ and FAD.

Lag phase Phase in a growth curve in which the organisms are adjusting to their environment.
Lagging strand Daughter strand of DNA synthesized in short segments that are later joined. Synthesis of the lagging strand always moves away from the replication fork and lags behind synthesis of the leading strand.
Laryngitis Inflammation of the larynx.
Latency In virology, process by which an animal virus, sometimes not incorporated into the chromosomes of the cell, remains inactive in the cell, possibly for years.
Latent disease Any disease in which a pathogen remains inactive for a long period of time before becoming active.
Latent virus *(provirus)* An animal virus that remains inactive in a host cell.
Lateral (horizontal) gene transfer Process in which a donor cell contributes part of its genome to a recipient cell, which may be a different species or genus from the donor.
Leading strand Daughter strand of DNA synthesized continuously toward the replication fork as a single long chain of nucleotides.
Legionnaires' disease *(legionellosis)* Severe pneumonia caused by infection with a *Legionella* species, usually *L. pneumophila*.

Leishmaniasis Any of three clinical syndromes caused by a bite from a sand fly carrying *Leishmania* and ranging from painless skin ulcers to disfiguring lesions to visceral leishmaniasis, which is systemic and fatal in 95% of untreated cases.
Lepromin test Assay utilizing antigens of *Mycobacterium leprae* used in diagnosis of leprosy.
Leprosy *(Hansen's disease)* Disease caused by infection with *Mycobacterium leprae* that produces either a nonprogressive tuberculoid form or a progressive lepromatous form that destroys tissues, including facial features, digits, and other structures.
Leptospirosis Zoonotic disease contracted by humans upon exposure to infected animals; characterized by pain, headache, and liver and kidney disease; caused by infection with *Leptospira interrogans*.
Leukocyte White blood cell.
Leukopenia Decrease in the number of white blood cells in the blood.
Leukotrienes Inflammatory chemicals released from damaged cells that increase vascular permeability.
Lichen Organism composed of a fungus living in partnership with photosynthetic microbes, either green algae or cyanobacteria.
Light-dependent reaction Reaction of photosynthesis requiring light.
Light-independent reaction Reaction of photosynthesis not requiring light and synthesizing glucose from carbon dioxide and water.
Light repair Mechanism by which prokaryotic DNA photolyase breaks the bonds between adjoining pyrimidine nucleotides, restoring the original DNA sequence.
Limnetic zone Sunlit, upper layer of freshwater or marine water away from the shore.
Lincosamides Antimicrobial drugs that bind to the 50S subunit of bacterial ribosomes, preventing ribosomal movement.
Lipid Any of a diverse group of organic macromolecules not composed of monomers and insoluble in water.
Lipid A The lipid component of lipopolysaccharide, which is released from dead Gram-negative bacterial cells and can trigger shock and other symptoms in human hosts.
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) Molecule composed of lipid A and polysaccharide found in the external membrane of Gram-negative cell walls.
Listeriosis Disease caused by *Listeria monocytogenes* and usually manifesting as meningitis and bacteremia.
Lithotroph Microorganism that acquires electrons from inorganic sources.
Littoral zone Shoreline zone of freshwater or marine water.
Log phase Phase in a growth curve in which the population is most actively growing.
Logarithmic (exponential) growth Increase in size of a microbial population in which the number of cells doubles in a fixed interval of time.
Louse (pl. *lice*) Sucking or biting parasitic insects that vector some bacterial pathogens.
Louse-borne relapsing fever Disease caused by *Borrelia recurrentis* transmitted between humans by the body louse *Pediculus humanus*.
Lyme disease Disease carried by ticks infected with *Borrelia burgdorferi* and characterized by a "bull's-eye" rash, neurologic and cardiac dysfunction, and severe arthritis.
Lymph Fluid found in lymphatic vessels that is similar in composition to blood serum and intercellular fluid.
Lymph nodes Organs that monitor the composition of lymph.
Lymphangitis Condition in which inflamed lymphatic vessels become visible as red streaks under the skin.
Lymphatic system Body system composed of lymphatic vessels and lymphoid tissues and organs.
Lymphatic vessels Tubes that conduct lymph.
Lymphocyte Type of small agranulocyte which originates in the red bone marrow and has nuclei that nearly fill the cell.
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis (LCM) Zoonosis caused by an arenavirus; characterized by flulike symptoms and rarely by meningitis.
Lymphogranuloma venereum Sexually transmitted disease caused by infection with *Chlamydia trachomatis* and leading in some cases to proctitis or, in women, pelvic inflammatory disease.
Lyophilization Removal of water from a frozen culture or other substance by means of vacuum pressure. Used for the long-term preservation of cells and foods.
Lysogenic conversion Change in phenotype due to insertion of a lysogenic bacteriophage into a bacterial chromosome.
Lysogenic phage Bacteriophage that does not immediately kill its host cell.
Lysogenic replication cycle *(lysogeny)* Process of viral replication in which a bacteriophage enters a bacterial cell, inserts into the DNA of the host, and remains inactive. The phage is then replicated every time the host cell replicates its chromosome. Later, the phage may leave the chromosome.
Lysosome Vesicle in animal cells that contains digestive enzymes.
Lysozyme Antibacterial protein secreted in sweat.
Lytic replication cycle Process of viral replication consisting of five stages ending with lysis of and release of new virions from the host cell.

Macrolide Antimicrobial agent that inhibits protein synthesis by inhibiting the ribosomal 50S subunits.
Macrophage Mature form of monocyte, which is a phagocyte of bacteria, fungi, spores, and dust, as well as dead cells.
Macule Any flat, reddened skin lesion; characteristic of early infection with a poxvirus.
Magnification The apparent increase in size of an object viewed via microscopy.
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) A cluster of genes, located on each copy of chromosome 6 in humans, that codes for membrane-bound glycoproteins called major histocompatibility antigens.
Malaise Feeling of general discomfort.
Malaria A mild to potentially fatal disease caused by a bite from an *Anopheles* mosquito carrying any of four species of *Plasmodium*; characterized by fever, chills, hemorrhage, and potential destruction of brain tissue.
Malignant tumor Mass of neoplastic cells that can invade neighboring tissues and may metastasize to cause tumors in distant organs or tissues.
Marburg virus Filamentous virus causing a type of hemorrhagic fever and fatal in 25% of cases.
Margination Process by which leukocytes stick to the walls of blood vessels at the site of infection.
Mast cells Specialized cells located in connective tissue that release histamine when they are exposed to complement.
Matter Anything that takes up space and has mass.
MDR TB (multi-drug-resistant TB) Tuberculosis caused by *Mycobacterium* resistant to at least isoniazid and rifampin.
Measles *(rubeola)* Contagious disease characterized by fever, sore throat, headache, dry cough, conjunctivitis, and lesions called Koplik's spots; caused by infection with *Morbillivirus*.
Mechanical vector Housefly, cockroach, or other animal that passively carries pathogens to new hosts on its feet or other body parts and is not infected by the pathogens it carries.
Medical technologist An expert in health care-related microbiological laboratory procedures.
Medium A collection of nutrients used for cultivating microorganisms.
Meiosis Nuclear division of diploid eukaryotic cells resulting in four haploid nuclei.
Membrane attack complexes (MACs) The end products of the complement cascade, which form circular holes in a pathogen's membrane.
Membrane filters Thin circles of nitrocellulose or plastic containing specific pore sizes, some small enough to trap viruses.
Membrane filtration Direct method of estimating population size in which a large sample is poured through a filter small enough to trap cells.
Membrane raft In a eukaryotic membrane, a distinct assemblage of lipids and proteins that remains together as a functional group.
Memory B cell B lymphocyte that migrates to lymphoid tissues to await a subsequent encounter with antigen previously encountered.
Memory T cell Type of T cell that persists in lymphoid tissues for months or years awaiting subsequent contact with an antigenic determinant matching its TCR, at which point it produces cytotoxic T cells.
Memory response The rapid and enhanced immune response to a subsequent encounter with a familiar antigen.
Meningitis Inflammation of the meninges, which can be caused by bacteria, viruses, fungi, or protozoa.
Meningoencephalitis Inflammation of the brain and of its meninges.
Mesophile Microorganism requiring temperatures ranging from 20°C to about 40°C.
Messenger RNA (mRNA) Form of ribonucleic acid that carries genetic information from DNA to a ribosome.
Metabolism The sum of all chemical reactions, both anabolic and catabolic, within an organism.
Metachromatic granules Inclusions of *Corynebacteria* that store phosphate and stain differently from the rest of the cytoplasm.
Metaphase Second stage of mitosis, during which chromosomes line up and attach to microtubules of the spindle. Also used for the comparable stage of meiosis.
Metastasis The spreading of malignant cancer cells to nonadjacent organs and tissues, where they produce new tumors.

Methane oxidizer Any Gram-negative bacterium that utilizes methane both as a carbon and as an energy source.
Methanogen Obligate anaerobe that produces methane gas.
Methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA) Strain of *S. aureus* that is resistant to many common antimicrobial drugs and has emerged as a major nosocomial problem.
Methylation Process in which a cell adds a methyl group to one or two bases that are part of specific nucleotide sequences.
Microaerophile Microorganism that requires low levels of oxygen.
Microbe An organism or virus too small to be seen without a microscope.
Microbial antagonism *(microbial competition)* Normal condition in which established microbiota use up available nutrients and space, reducing the ability of arriving pathogens to colonize.
Microbial death Permanent loss of reproductive capacity of a microorganism.
Microbial death rate A measurement of the efficacy of an antimicrobial agent.
Microbial ecology The study of the interactions of microorganisms among themselves and their environment.
Microbiota The group of microbes that normally inhabit the surfaces of the body without causing disease.
Microglia Fixed macrophages of the nervous system.
Micrograph A photograph of a microscopic image.
Microorganism An organism too small to be seen without a microscope.
MicroRNA (miRNA) Short (about 21-nucleotide) RNA molecule that binds to complementary segment of messenger RNA (mRNA), preventing translation.
Microscopy The use of light or electrons to magnify objects.
Microsporidia Unicellular, intracellular, parasitic fungi previously classified as protozoa.
Minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test An extension of the MIC test in which samples taken from clear MIC tubes are transferred to plates containing a drug-free growth medium and monitored for bacterial replication.
Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) The smallest amount of a drug that will inhibit a pathogen.
Mismatch repair Mechanism by which enzymes scan newly synthesized, nonmethylated DNA for mismatched bases, remove them, and replace them.
Missense mutation A substitution in a nucleotide sequence resulting in a codon that specifies a different amino acid: What is transcribed makes sense but not the right sense.
Mite Minute arachnid, which vectors *Orientia*, the agent of scrub typhus.
Mitochondria Spherical to elongated structures found in most eukaryotic cells that produce most of the ATP in the cell.
Mitosis Nuclear division of a eukaryotic cell resulting in two nuclei with the same ploidy as the original.
Mold A typically multicellular fungus that grows as long filaments called *hyphae* and reproduces by means of spores.
Molecular biology Branch of biology combining aspects of biochemistry, cell biology, and genetics to explain cell function at the molecular level, particularly via the use of genome sequencing.
Molecular mimicry Process in which microorganisms with epitopes similar to self-antigens trigger autoimmune tissue damage.
Molecule Two or more atoms held together by chemical bonds.
Molluscum contagiosum Skin disease caused by *Molluscipoxvirus;* characterized by smooth, waxy papules.
Monoclonal antibodies Identical antibodies secreted by a cell line originating from a single plasma cell.
Monocyte Type of agranulocyte that has slightly lobed nuclei.
Monoecious One individual contains both male and female organs.
Monomer A subunit of a macromolecule, such as a protein.
Monosaccharide *(simple sugar)* A monomer of carbohydrate, such as a molecule of glucose.
Morbidity Any change from a state of health.
Mordant In microscopy, a substance that binds to a dye and makes it less soluble.
Mosquito Type of fly with bloodsucking females; vector for many pathogens.
Most probable number (MPN) method Statistical estimation of the size of a microbial population based upon the dilution of a sample required to eliminate microbial growth.
Multi-drug-resistant (MDR) tuberculosis Tuberculosis caused by *Mycobacterium* resistant to at least isoniazid and rifampin.
Multiple drug resistance Lack of sensitivity to three or more antimicrobials by so-called superbugs.
Multiple sclerosis (MS) Autoimmune disease in which cytotoxic T cells attack and destroy the myelin sheath that insulates neurons.
Mumps Disease caused by infection with the mumps virus and characterized by fever, parotitis, pain in swallowing, and, in some cases, meningitis or deafness.
Mutagen Physical or chemical agent that introduces a mutation.
Mutant A cell with an unrepaired genetic mutation, or any of its descendants.
Mutation In genetics, a permanent change in the nucleotide base sequence of a genome.
Mutualism Symbiotic relationship in which both members benefit from their interaction.
Myalgia Muscle pain.
Mycelium Tangled mass of hyphae.
Mycetismus Mushroom poisoning.
Mycetoma Destructive, tumorlike infection of the skin, fascia, and/or bones of the hands or feet caused by mycelial fungi of several genera in the division Ascomycota.
Mycolic acid Long carbon-chain waxy lipid found in the walls of cells in the genus *Mycobacterium* that makes them resistant to desiccation and staining with water-based dyes.
Mycology The scientific study of fungi.
Mycoplasmas Class of low G + C bacteria that lack cytochromes, enzymes of the Krebs cycle, and cell walls and are pleomorphic.
Mycosis Fungal disease.
Mycotoxicosis Poisoning caused by eating food contaminated with fungal toxins.
Mycotoxins Secondary metabolites produced by fungi and toxic to humans.
Myxobacteria Gram-negative, aerobic, soil-dwelling bacteria with a unique life cycle including a stage of differentiation into fruiting bodies containing resistant myxospores.

Nanoarchaeum Small archaeon genus that possibly represents a fourth phylum of archaea; known only from environmental RNA samples.
Narrow-spectrum drug Antimicrobial that works against only a few kinds of pathogens.
Natural killer (NK) lymphocyte Type of defensive leukocyte of innate immunity that secretes toxins onto the surfaces of virally infected cells and neoplasms.
Naturally acquired active immunity Type of immunity that occurs when the body responds to exposure to antigens by mounting specific immune responses.
Naturally acquired passive immunity Type of immunity that occurs when a fetus, newborn, or child receives antibodies across the placenta or within breast milk.
Necrosis Death of a tissue or organ.
Necrotizing fasciitis Potentially fatal condition marked by toxemia, organ failure, and destruction of muscle and fat tissue following infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Negative feedback *(feedback inhibition)* Method of controlling the action of enzymes in which the end-product of a series of reactions inhibits an enzyme in an earlier part of the pathway.
Negative selection *(indirect selection)* Process by which auxotrophic mutants are isolated and cultured.
Negative stain *(capsule stain)* In microscopy, a staining technique used primarily to reveal bacterial capsules and involving application of an acidic dye that leaves the specimen colorless and the background stained.
Negative-strand RNA (–RNA) Viral single-stranded RNA transcribed from the +ssRNA genome by viral RNA polymerase.
Negri bodies Aggregates of virions in the brains of rabies patients.
Nematodes Group of round, unsegmented helminths with pointed ends that have a complete digestive tract.
Neoplasia Uncontrolled cell division in a multicellular animal.
Nephelometry Automated method that measures the cloudiness of a solution by quantifying the amount of light it scatters.
Neuraminidase (NA) Component of glycoprotein spikes in the lipid envelope of influenzaviruses that provides access to cell surfaces by hydrolyzing mucus in the lungs.
Neutralization Antibody function in which the action of a toxin or attachment of a pathogen is blocked.
Neutralization test Immune test that measures the ability of antibodies to neutralize the biological activity of pathogens and toxins.
Neutron An uncharged subatomic particle.
Neutrophil Type of granulocyte that stains lilac with a mixture of acidic and basic dyes.
Neutrophile Microorganism requiring neutral pH.
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+) Important vitamin-derived electron carrier molecule.

Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$) Important vitamin-derived electron carrier molecule.
Nitrification The process by which bacteria convert reduced nitrogen compounds such as ammonia into nitrate, which is more available to plants.
Nitrifying bacteria Chemoautotrophic bacteria that derive electrons from the oxidation of nitrogenous compounds.
Nitrogen cycle Biogeochemical cycle involving nitrogen fixation, ammonification, nitrification, denitrification, and anammox reactions.
Nitrogen fixation The conversion of atmo-spheric nitrogen to ammonia.
NOD protein In innate immunity, intracellular receptor for microbial component.
Noncommunicable disease An infectious disease that arises from outside of hosts or from normal microbiota.
Noncompetitive inhibitor Inhibitory substance that blocks enzyme activity by binding to an allosteric site on the enzyme other than the active site.
Noncyclic photophosphorylation The production of ATP by noncyclic electron flow.
Nonionizing radiation Electromagnetic radiation with a wavelength greater than 1 nm.
Nonliving reservoir of infection Soil, water, food, or inanimate object that is a continuous source of infection.
Nonpolar covalant bond Type of chemical bond in which there is equal sharing of electrons between atoms with similar electronegativities.
Nonsense mutation A substitution in a nucleotide sequence that causes an amino acid codon to be replaced by a stop codon.
Normal microbiota Microorganisms that colonize the surfaces of the human body without normally causing disease. They may be resident or transient.
Noroviruses Group of caliciviruses that cause diarrhea.
Nosocomial disease A disease acquired in a health care facility.
Nosocomial infection An infection acquired in a health care facility.
Nuclear envelope Double membrane composed of phospholipid bilayers surrounding a cell nucleus.
Nuclear pores Spaces in the nuclear envelope that function to control the transport of substances through it.
Nucleoid Region of the prokaryotic cytosol containing the cell's chromosome(s).
Nucleolus Specialized region in a cell nucleus where RNA is synthesized.
Nucleoplasm The semiliquid matrix of a cell nucleus.
Nucleoside Component of a nucleotide consisting of a nitrogenous base and a five-carbon sugar.
Nucleoside analog Chemical with a structure similar to a natural nucleoside.
Nucleosome Bead of DNA bound to histone in a eukaryotic chromosome.
Nucleotide Monomer of a nucleic acid, which is composed of a nucleoside and a phosphate.
Nucleotide analog Compound structurally similar to a normal nucleotide that can be incorporated into DNA; may result in mismatched base pairing.
Nucleus Spherical to ovoid membranous organelle containing a eukaryotic cell's primary genetic material.
Numerical aperture Measure of the ability of a lens to gather light.
Nutrient Any chemical, such as carbon, hydrogen, and so on, required for growth of microbial populations.

Objective lens In microscopy, the lens immediately above the object being magnified.
Obligate aerobe Microorganism that requires oxygen as the final electron acceptor of the electron transport chain.
Obligate anaerobe Microorganism that cannot tolerate oxygen and uses a final electron acceptor other than oxygen.
Obligate halophile Microorganism requiring high osmotic pressure.
Occult septicemia The condition of an unidentified bacterial pathogen being present in the blood and causing signs of illness.
Ocular herpes *(ophthalmic herpes)* Disorder characterized by conjunctivitis, a gritty feeling in the eye, and pain and characteristic of latent *human herpesvirus 1*.
Ocular lens In microscopy, the lens closest to the eyes. May be single *(monocular)* or paired *(binocular)*.
Operator Regulatory element in an operon where repressor protein binds to stop transcription.
Operon A series of genes, a promoter, and often an operator sequence controlled by one regulatory gene. The operon model explains gene regulation in prokaryotes.
Opportunistic pathogens Microorganisms that cause disease when the immune system is suppressed, when microbial antagonism is reduced, or when introduced into an abnormal area of the body.
Opsonin Antimicrobial protein that enhances phagocytosis.
Opsonization The coating of pathogens by proteins called *opsonins*, making them more vulnerable to phagocytes.
Optimum growth temperature Temperature at which a microorganism's metabolic activities produce the highest growth rate.
Oral polio vaccine (OPV) Inoculum developed by Albert Sabin in 1961 for vaccination against poliovirus.
Orchitis Inflammation of a testis.
Order Taxonomical grouping of similar families of organisms.
Organelle Cellular structure that acts as a tiny organ to carry out one or more cell functions.
Organic compounds Molecules that contain both carbon and hydrogen atoms.
Organotroph Microorganism that acquires electrons from organic sources.
Ornithosis *(parrot fever)* A respiratory disease of birds that can be transmitted to humans and is caused by infection with *Chlamydophila psittaci*.
Orphan virus A virus that has not been specifically linked to any particular disease.
Osmosis The diffusion of water molecules across a semipermeable membrane.
Osmotic pressure The pressure exerted across a selectively permeable membrane by the solutes in a solution on one side of the membrane. The osmotic pressure exerted by high-salt or high-sugar solutions can be used to inhibit microbial growth in certain foods.
Osteomyelitis Inflammation of the bone marrow and surrounding bone; often caused by infection with *Staphylococcus*.
Otitis media Inflammation of the middle ear, often caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Oxazolidinone Antibacterial drug that inhibits initiation of polypeptide synthesis in Gram-positive bacteria.
Oxidase test Chemical test for presence of cytochrome oxidase in a cell.
Oxidation lagoons Successive wastewaster treatment areas (lagoons) used by farmers and ranchers to treat animal wastes and from which water is released into natural water systems.
Oxidation-reduction reaction *(redox reaction)* Any metabolic reaction involving the transfer of electrons from an electron donor to an electron acceptor. Reactions in which electrons are accepted are called *reduction* reactions, whereas reactions in which electrons are donated are *oxidation* reactions.
Oxidative phosphorylation The use of energy from redox reactions to attach inorganic phosphate to ADP.
Oxidizing agent Antimicrobial agent that releases oxygen radicals.

P site In a ribosome, a binding site that holds a tRNA and the growing polypeptide.
Palisade In cell morphology, a folded arrangement of bacilli.
Pandemic In epidemiology, the occurrence of an epidemic on more than one continent simultaneously.
Papilloma *(wart)* Benign growth of the epithelium of the skin or mucous membranes.
Papule Any raised, reddened skin lesion that progresses from a macule; characteristic of infection with a poxvirus.
Parabasalid Group of single-celled, animal-like microorganisms that contain a Golgi-like parabasal body.
Paracoccidioidomycosis Pulmonary disease found from southern Mexico to South America caused by infection with *Paracoccidioides brasiliensis*.
Parainfluenzaviruses Group of enveloped, negative ssRNA viruses that cause respiratory disease, particularly in children.
Parasite A microbe that derives benefit from its host while harming it or even killing it.
Parasitism Symbiotic relationship in which one organism derives benefit while harming or even killing its host.
Parasitology The study of parasites.
Parenteral route A means by which pathogenic microorganisms can be deposited directly into deep tissues of the body, as in puncture wounds and hypodermic injections.
Paroxysmal phase In pertussis, second phase lasting 2 to 4 weeks and characterized by exhausting coughing spells.
Parvoviruses Group of extremely small, pathogenic ssDNA viruses.
Passive immunotherapy *(passive immunization)* Delivery of preformed antibodies against pathogens to patients.
Pasteurellaceae Family of gammaproteobacteria, two genera of which—*Pasteurella* and *Haemophilus*—are pathogenic.
Pasteurization The use of heat to kill pathogens and reduce the number of spoilage microorganisms in food and beverages.
Pathogen A microorganism capable of causing disease.

Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) Molecules that are shared by a variety of microbes, are absent in humans, and trigger immune responses.
Pathogenicity A microorganism's ability to cause disease.
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) Infection of the uterus and uterine tubes; may be caused by infection with any of several bacteria.
Pentose phosphate pathway Enzymatic formation of phosphorylated pentose sugars from glucose 6-phosphate.
Peptic ulcer Erosion of the mucous membrane of the stomach or duodenum, usually caused by infection with *Helicobacter pylori*.
Peptide bond A covalent bond between amino acids in proteins.
Peptidoglycan Large, interconnected polysaccharide composed of chains of two alternating sugars and crossbridges of amino acids. Main component of bacterial cell walls.
Perforin Protein molecule in the cytoplasm of cytotoxic T cells which forms channels (perforations) in an infected cell's membrane.
Periodontal disease Inflammation and infection of the tissues surrounding and supporting the teeth.
Periplasmic space In Gram-negative cells, the space between the cell membrane and the outer membrane containing peptidoglycan and periplasm.
Peritrichous Term used to describe a cell having flagella covering the cell surface.
Peroxide anion Toxic form of oxygen which is detoxified by catalase or peroxidase.
Peroxisome Vesicle found in all eukaryotic cells that degrades poisonous metabolic wastes.
Pertussis *(whooping cough)* Pediatric disease characterized by development of copious mucus, loss of tracheal cilia, and deep "whooping" cough; caused by infection with *Bordetella pertussis*.
Petechiae Subcutaneous hemorrhages.
Petri plate Dish filled with solid medium used in culturing microorganisms.
pH scale A logarithmic scale used for measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in a solution.
Phaeohyphomycosis Cutaneous and subcutaneous disease characterized by lesions that can spread internally; caused by traumatic introduction of ascomycetes into the skin.
Phaeophyta Brown-pigmented division of algae having cell walls composed of cellulose and alginic acid, a thickening agent.
Phage *(bacteriophage)* Virus that infects and usually destroys bacterial cells.
Phage typing Method of classifying microorganisms in which unknown bacteria are identified by observing plaques.
Phagocytes Cells, often leukocytes, that are capable of phagocytosis.
Phagocytosis Type of endocytosis in which solids are moved into the cell.
Phagolysosome Digestive vesicle formed by the fusing of a lysosome with a phagosome.
Phagosome A sac formed by a phagocyte's pseudopods; an intracellular food vesicle.
Pharyngitis *(strep throat)* Inflammation of the throat, often caused by infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Phase microscope Type of microscope used to examine living microorganisms or fragile specimens.
Phase-contrast microscope Type of phase microscope that produces sharply defined images in which fine structures can be seen in living cells.
Phenol coefficient Method of evaluating the effectiveness of a disinfectant or antiseptic that compares the agent's efficacy to that of phenol.
Phenolic Compound derived from phenol molecules that have been chemically modified to denature proteins and disrupt cell membranes in a wide variety of pathogens.
Phenotype The physical features and functional traits of an organism expressed by genes in the genotype.
Phospholipid Phosphate-containing lipid made up of molecules with two fatty acid chains.
Phospholipid bilayer Two layered structure of a cell's membranes.
Phosphorus cycle Biogeochemical cycle in which phosphorus is cycled between oxidation states.
Photoautotroph Microorganism which requires light energy and uses carbon dioxide as a carbon source.
Photoheterotroph Microorganism that requires light energy and gains nutrients via catabolism of organic compounds.
Photophosphorylation The use of energy from light to attach inorganic phosphate to ADP.
Photosynthesis Process in which light energy is captured by chlorophylls and transferred to ATP and metabolites.
Photosystem Network of light-absorbing chlorophyll molecules and other pigments held within a protein matrix on thylakoids.
Phototaxis Cell movement that occurs in response to light stimulus.
Phycoerythrin Red accessory pigment of photosynthesis in red algae.
Phycology Study of algae.
Phylum Taxonomical grouping of similar classes of organisms.
Picornaviruses Family of viruses that contain positive single-stranded RNA with naked polyhedral capsids; many are human pathogens.
Piedra Firm, irregular nodules on hair shafts caused by aggregates of fungal hyphae and spores.
Pilus *(conjugation pilus)* A tubule involved in bacterial conjugation.
Pinocytosis Type of endocytosis in which liquids are moved into the cell.
Pinta Childhood disease caused by the spirochete *Treponema carateum;* characterized by hard, pus-filled lesions.
Pinworm Common name of *Enterobius vermicularis*, whose adult female has a tail like a straight pin.
Pityriasis versicolor Condition characterized by depigmented or hyperpigmented patches of scaly skin resulting from infection with *Malassezia furfur*.
Plague Disease caused by *Yersinia pestis*, often manifesting with enlarged lymph nodes (bubonic plague) or with severe pulmonary distress (pneumonic plague).
Plaque In phage typing, the clear region within the bacterial lawn where growth is inhibited by bacteriophages.
Plaque assay Technique for estimating phage numbers in which each plaque corresponds to a single phage in the original bacterium/virus mixture.
Plasma The liquid portion of blood.
Plasma cells B cells that are actively fighting against exogenous antigens and secreting antibodies.
Plasmid A small, circular molecule of DNA that replicates independently of the chromosome. Each carries genes for its own replication and often for one or more nonessential functions such as resistance to antibiotics.
Plasmodial slime mold *(acellular slime mold)* Streaming, coenocytic, colorful filaments of cytoplasm that phagocytize organic debris and bacteria.
Platelet Cell fragments involved in blood clotting.
Platelet activating factor (PAF) Cytokine that is a potent trigger for blood coagulation.
Pleomorphic In cell morphology, term used to describe a variably shaped prokaryotic cell.
Pneumococcal pneumonia Inflammation of the lungs caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*—the pneumococcus.
Pneumococcus Common name of *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Pneumocystis **pneumonia (PCP)** Debilitating fungal pneumonia that is a leading cause of death in AIDS patients and is caused by opportunistic infection with *Pneumocystis jirovecii*.
Pneumonia Inflammation of the lungs; typically caused by infection with *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Pneumonic plague Fever and severe respiratory distress caused by infection of the lungs with *Yersinia pestis*; fatal if untreated in nearly 100% of cases.
Point mutation A genetic mutation affecting only one or a few base pairs in a genome. Point mutations include substitutions, insertions, and deletions.
Polar In cell morphology, pertaining to either end of a cell, such as polar flagella.
Polar covalent bond Type of bond in which there is unequal sharing of electrons between atoms with opposite electrical charges.
Poliomyelitis *(polio)* Infection of varied degrees of severity from asymptomatic to crippling and caused by infection with poliovirus.
Polluted Containing microorganisms or chemicals in excess of acceptable values.
Polyenes Group of antimicrobial drugs such as amphotericin B that disrupt the cytoplasmic membrane of targeted cells by becoming incorporated into the membrane and damaging its integrity.
Polymer Repeating chains of covalently linked monomers found in macromolecules.
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) Technique of recombinant DNA technology that allows researchers to produce a large number of identical DNA molecules *in vitro*.
Polyomavirus A cancer-causing virus.
Polysaccharide Carbohydrate polymer composed of several to thousands of covalently linked monosaccharides.
Polyunsaturated fat Triglyceride with several double bonds between adjacent carbon atoms in its fatty acids.
Portal of entry Entrance site of pathogenic microorganisms, including the skin, mucous membranes, and placenta.
Portal of exit Exit site of pathogenic microorganisms, including the nose, mouth, and urethra.
Positive selection Process by which mutants are selected by eliminating wild-type phenotypes.
Positive-strand RNA ($^{+}$RNA) Viral single-stranded RNA that can act directly as mRNA.

Postpolio syndrome Crippling deterioration of muscle function, likely due to aging-related aggravation of nerve damage by poliovirus.
Potable Fit to drink.
Pour-plate Method of culturing microorganisms in which colony-forming units are separated from one another using a series of dilutions.
Pox *(pocks; pustule)* Any raised, pus-filled skin lesion; characteristic of infection with a poxvirus.
Precursor metabolite Any of 12 molecules typically generated by a catabolic pathway and essential to the synthesis of organic macromolecules in cells.
Prevalence In epidemiology, the total number of cases of a disease in a given area or population during a given period of time.
Primary amebic meningoencephalopathy Often fatal inflammation of the brain characterized by headache, vomiting, fever, and destruction of neurological tissue; caused by infection with *Naegleria* or *Acanthamoeba*.
Primary atypical pneumonia So-called *walking pneumonia* characterized by mild respiratory symptoms that last for several weeks; caused by infection with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*.
Primary immunodeficiency diseases Any of a group of diseases detectable near birth and resulting from a genetic or developmental defect.
Primary response The slow and limited immune response to a first encounter with an unfamiliar antigen.
Primary stain In staining, the initial dye, which colors all cells.
Prion Proteinaceous infectious particle that lacks nucleic acids and replicates by converting similar normal proteins into new prions.
Probe Nucleic acid molecule with a specific nucleotide sequence that has been labeled with a radioactive or fluorescent chemical so that its location can be detected.
Prodromal period In the infectious disease process, the short stage of generalized, mild symptoms that precedes illness.
Products The atoms, ions, or molecules that remain after a chemical reaction is complete.
Profundal zone Zone of freshwater or marine water beneath the limnetic zone and above the benthic zone.
Proglottids Body segments of a tapeworm, produced continuously as long as the worm remains attached to its host.
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) Progressive, fatal disease in which JC virus (a polyomavirus) kills cells of the central nervous system.
Prokaryote Any unicellular microorganism that lacks a nucleus. Classification includes bacteria and archaea.
Promoter Region of DNA where transcription begins.
Prophage An inactive bacteriophage, which is inserted into a host's chromosome.
Prophase First stage of mitosis, during which DNA condenses into chromatids and the spindle apparatus forms. Also used for the comparable stage of meiosis.
Prostaglandins Inflammatory chemicals released from damaged cells that increase vascular permeability.
Protease Enzyme secreted by microorganisms that digests proteins into amino acids outside a microbe's cell wall; in inflammatory reactions, chemicals released by mast cells that activate the complement system; in virology, an internal viral enzyme that makes HIV virulent.
Protein A complex macromolecule consisting of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur and important to many cell functions.
Proteobacteria Phylum of prokaryotes that includes five classes (designated alpha, beta, gamma, delta, and epsilon) of Gram-negative bacteria sharing common 16S rRNA nucleotide sequences.
Proton A positively charged subatomic particle, which is also the nucleus of a hydrogen atom.
Proton gradient Electrochemical gradient of hydrogen ions across a membrane.
Protozoa Single-celled eukaryotes that lack a cell wall and are similar to animals in their nutritional needs and structure.
Provirus *(latent virus)* Inactive virus in an animal cell.
Pseudohyphae Long cellular extension of the yeast *Candida* that look like the filamentous hyphae of molds.
Pseudomembranous colitis Inflammation of the colon, which is covered by a membrane consisting of connective tissue and dead and dying cells; condition is last state of antimicrobial-associated diarrhea.
Pseudomonad Any Gram-negative, aerobic, rod-shaped bacterium in the class Gamma proteobacteria that catabolizes carbohydrates by the Entner-Doudoroff and pentose phosphate pathways.
Pseudopods Movable extensions of the cytoplasm and membrane of some eukaryotic cells.
Psychrophile Microorganism requiring cold temperatures (below 20°C).
Pure culture *(axenic culture)* Culture containing cells of only one species.
Purple sulfur bacteria Group of gammaproteobacteria, which are obligate anaerobes and oxidize hydrogen sulfide to sulfur.
Pustule *(pox)* Any raised, pus-filled skin lesion; characteristic of infection with a poxvirus.
Pyoderma Any confined, pus-producing lesion on the exposed skin of the face, arms, or legs; often caused by infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Pyrimidine dimer Mutation in which adjacent pyrimidine bases covalently bond to one another; caused by nonionizing radiation in the form of ultraviolet light.
Pyrogen Chemical that triggers the hypotha-lamic "thermostat" to reset at a higher temperature, inducing fever.

Q fever Fever caused by the bacterium *Coxiella burnetii;* cause was questionable (thus "Q") for many years.
Quaternary ammonium compound (quat) Detergent antimicrobial that is harmless to humans.
Quorum sensing Process by which bacteria measure their density in an environment by utilizing signal and receptor molecules.

Rabies Neuromuscular disease characterized by hydrophobia, seizures, hallucinations, and paralysis; fatal if untreated. Caused by infection with the rabies virus.
Radial immunodiffusion Type of immunodiffusion test in which an antigen solution is allowed to diffuse into agar containing specific concentrations of antibodies, causing a ring of precipitate to form.
Radiation The release of high-speed subatomic particles or waves of electromagnetic energy from atoms.
Reactants The atoms, ions, or molecules that exist at the beginning of a chemical reaction.
Reaction center chlorophyll In a photosystem, a chlorophyll molecule in which electrons excited by light energy are passed to an acceptor molecule that is the initial carrier of an electron transport chain.
Recipient cell In horizontal gene transfer, a cell that receives part of the genome of a donor cell.
Recombinant Cell or DNA molecule resulting from genetic recombination between donated and recipient nucleotide sequences.
Recombinant DNA technology Type of biotechnology in which scientists change the genotypes and phenotypes of organisms.
Recombinant vaccine Vaccine produced using recombinant genetic technology.
Red measles *(rubeola, measles)* Contagious disease characterized by fever, sore throat, headache, dry cough, conjunctivitis, and lesions called Koplik's spots caused by infection with *Morbillivirus*.
Red tide Abundance of red-pigmented dinoflagellates in marine water.
Redox reaction *(oxidation-reduction reaction)* Any metabolic reaction involving the transfer of electrons from an electron donor to an electron acceptor. Reactions in which electrons are accepted are called *reduction* reactions, whereas reactions in which electrons are donated are *oxidation* reactions.
Reducing medium Special culturing medium containing compounds that combine with free oxygen and remove it from the medium.
Regulatory RNA Form of ribonucleic acid used to control gene expression.
Regulatory T cell *(Tr cell, suppressor T cell)* Thymus-matured lymphocyte that serves to repress adaptive immune responses and prevent autoimmune diseases.
Release In virology, final stage of the lytic replication cycle, in which the new virions are released from the host cell, which lyses.
Reoviruses Group of naked, segmented, dsRNA viruses that cause respiratory and gastrointestinal disease.
Repressible operon Type of operon that is continually transcribed until deactivated by repressors.
Reproduction An increase in number.
Reservoir of infection Living or nonliving continuous source of infectious disease.
Resolution The ability to distinguish between objects that are close together.
Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection Disease caused by a virus in genus *Pneumovirus* that causes fusion of cells in the lungs and difficulty in breathing.
Responsiveness An ability to respond to environmental stimuli.
Restriction enzyme Enzyme that cuts DNA at specific nucleotide sequences and is used to produce recombinant DNA molecules.

Reticulate bodies Noninfectious stage in the life cycle of chlamydias.
Retrovirus Any +ssRNA virus that uses the enzyme reverse transcriptase carried within its capsid to transcribe DNA from its RNA.
Reverse transcriptase Complex enzyme that allows retroviruses to make dsDNA from RNA templates; used in recombinant DNA technology to make cDNA.
Revolving nosepiece Portion of a compound microscope on which several objective lenses are mounted.
Rh antigens Cytoplasmic membrane proteins common to the red blood cells of 85% of humans as well as rhesus monkeys.
Rheumatic fever A complication of untreated group A streptococcal pharyngitis in which inflammation leads to damage of the heart valves and muscle.
Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) A crippling, systemic autoimmune disease resulting from a type III hypersensitivity reaction in which antibody complexes are deposited in the joints, causing inflammation.
Rhinoviruses Group of picornaviruses that cause upper respiratory tract infection and the "common cold."
Rhodophyta Red algae, generally containing the pigment phycoerythrin, the storage molecule floridean starch, and cell walls of agar or carrageenan.
Ribonucleic acid (RNA) Nucleic acid consisting of nucleotides made up of phosphate, a ribose pentose sugar, and an arrangement of the bases adenine, guanine, cytosine, and uracil.
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA) Form of ribonucleic acid that, together with polypeptides, makes up the structure of ribosomes.
Ribosome Nonmembranous organelle found in prokaryotes and eukaryotes that is composed of protein and ribosomal RNA and functions to make polypeptides.
Riboswitch RNA molecule that changes shape in response to shifts in environmental conditions, which results in genetic regulation.
Ribozyme RNA molecule functioning as an enzyme.
Rickettsias Group of extremely small, Gram-negative, obligate intracellular parasites that appear almost wall-less.
RNA polymerase Enzyme that synthesizes RNA by linking RNA nucleotides that are complementary to genetic sequences in DNA.
RNA primer RNA molecule used by DNA polymerase or reverse transcriptase as a starting point for DNA synthesis.
Rocky Mountain spotted fever (RMSF) Serious illness caused by infection with *Rickettsia rickettsii* transmitted by ticks and characterized by rash, malaise, petechiae, encephalitis, and death in 5% of cases.
Roseola Endemic illness of children characterized by an abrupt fever, sore throat, enlarged lymph nodes, and faint pink rash; caused by infection with human herpesvirus 6.
Rotaviruses Group of reoviruses that cause a potentially fatal infantile gastroenteritis.
Rough endoplasmic reticulum (RER) Type of endoplasmic reticulum that has ribosomes adhering to its outer surface; these produce proteins for transport throughout the cell.
R plasmid Extrachromosomal piece of DNA containing genes for resistance to antimicrobial drugs.
Rubella *(German measles)* Disease caused by infection with *Rubivirus* resulting in characteristic rash lasting about 3 days; mild in children but potentially teratogenic to fetuses of infected women.
Rubeola *(measles, red measles)* Contagious disease characterized by fever, sore throat, headache, dry cough, conjunctivitis, and lesions called Koplik's spots, caused by infection with *Morbillivirus*.
Rubor Redness.

Salmonellosis A serious diarrheal disease resulting from consumption of food contaminated with the enteric bacterium *Salmonella*.
Salt A crystalline compound formed by ionic bonding of metallic with nonmetallic elements.
Sanitization The process of disinfecting surfaces and utensils used by the public.
Saprobe Fungus that absorbs nutrients from dead organisms.
Sarcina A cuboidal packet of cocci.
Satellite virus A virus, such as hepatitis D virus, that requires glycoproteins coded by another virus to complete its replication cycle.
Saturated fat A triglyceride in which all but the terminal carbon atoms are covalently linked to two hydrogen atoms.
Scabies Skin disease cause by a burrowing mite.
Scalded skin syndrome Reddening and blistering of the skin caused by infection with *Staphylococcus aureus*.
Scanning electron microscope (SEM) Type of electron microscope that uses magnetic fields within a vacuum tube to scan a beam of electrons across a specimen's metal-coated surface.
Scanning tunneling microscope (STM) Type of probe microscope in which a metallic probe passes slightly above the surface of the specimen, revealing surface details at the atomic level.
Scarlet fever Diffuse rash and sloughing of skin caused by infection with group A *Streptococcus*.
Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain In microscopy, staining technique that uses heat to drive a malachite green primary stain into an endospore.
Schistosomiasis A potentially fatal disease caused by infection with a blood fluke in the genus *Schistosoma*; may cause tissue damage in the liver, lungs, brain, or other organs.
Schizogony Special type of asexual reproduction in which the protozoan *Plasmodium* undergoes multiple mitoses to form a multinucleate schizont.
Schizont Multinucleate body that undergoes cytokinesis to release several cells.
Scientific method Process by which scientists attempt to prove or disprove hypotheses through observations of the outcomes of carefully controlled experiments.
Scolex Small attachment organ that possesses suckers and/or hooks used to attach a tapeworm to host tissues.
Sebum Oily substance secreted by the sebaceous glands of the skin that lowers pH.
Secondary immune response Enhanced immune response following a second contact with an antigen.
Secretory IgA The combination of IgA and a secretory component, found in tears, mucous membrane secretions, and breast milk, where it agglutinates and neutralizes antigens.
Secretory vesicle In eukaryotic cells, vesicles containing secretions packaged by the Golgi body that fuse to the cytoplasmic membrane and then release their contents outside the cell via exocytosis.
Sedimentation Settling of particulate matter; the first step in treating water for drinking.
Segmented genome Genetic material consisting of more than one molecule of nucleic acid, used particularly for viruses.
Selective medium Culturing medium containing substances that either favor the growth of particular microorganisms or inhibit the growth of unwanted ones.
Selective toxicity Principle by which an effective antimicrobial agent must be more toxic to a pathogen than to the pathogen's host.
Selectively permeable In cell physiology, characteristic of a membrane that allows some substances to cross while preventing the crossing of others.
Semisynthetic antimicrobial Antimicrobial that has been chemically altered.
Septate Characterized by the presence of cross walls.
Septic shock Extremely low blood pressure resulting from dilation of blood vessels triggered by bacteria or bacterial toxins.
Septic tank The home equivalent of primary wastewater treatment, consisting of a sealed concrete holding tank in which solids settle to the bottom and the effluent flows into a leach field that acts as a filter.
Septicemia *(sepsis)* The condition of pathogens being present in the blood and causing signs of illness.
Serial dilution A stepwise dilution of a liquid culture in which the dilution factor at each step is constant.
Serology The study and use of immunological tests to diagnose and treat disease or identify antibodies or antigens.
Serum Blood plasma with clotting factors removed.
Serum sickness Type III hypersensitivity resulting from antibodies directed against antisera.
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) Manifestation of infection by a coronavirus called SARS virus.
Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID) Primary immunodeficiency disease in children that affects both T cells and B cells and causes recurrent infections.
Sexually transmitted disease (STD) Disease resulting from a sexually transmitted infection.
Sexually transmitted infection (STI) Invasion of a pathogen into the body resulting from sexual activity.
Shiga toxin Exotoxin secreted by *Shigella dysenteriae* that stops protein synthesis in host cells.
Shigellosis A severe form of dysentery caused by any of four species of *Shigella*.
Shine-Dalgarno sequence The sequence of nucleotides in a molecule of mRNA where the smaller ribosomal subunit initiates translation. The sequence is named for its discoverers.
Shingles *(herpes zoster)* Extremely painful skin rash caused by reactivation of latent varicellazoster virus.
Shock Severe disturbance of blood circulation resulting in insufficient delivery of oxygen to vital organs.
Siderophore An iron-binding molecule released by some bacteria and fungi.
Signs In pathology, objective manifestations of a disease that can be observed or measured by others.

Silent mutation Mutation produced by base-pair substitution that does not change the amino acid sequence, because of the redundancy of the genetic code.
Simple microscope Microscope containing a single magnifying lens.
Simple stain In microscopy, a stain composed of a single dye such as crystal violet.
Singlet oxygen Toxic form of oxygen, neutralized by pigments called carotenoids.
Sinusitis Inflammation of the nasal sinuses; typically caused by *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
Slant tube (slant) Test tube containing agar media that solidified while the tube was resting at an angle.
Slime layer Loose, water-soluble glycocalyx.
Slime mold Eukaryotic microbe resembling a filamentous fungus but lacking a cell wall and phagocytizing rather than absorbing nutrients.
Sludge After primary treatment of wastewater, the heavy material remaining at the bottom of settling tanks.
Small interfering RNA (siRNA) RNA molecule complementary to a portion of a molecule of mRNA, tRNA, or a gene, rendering the target ineffective.
Smallpox Infectious disease eradicated in nature by 1980 and characterized by high fever, malaise, delirium, pustules, and death in about 20% of untreated cases.
Smear In microscopy, the thin film of organisms on the slide.
Smooth endoplasmic reticulum (SER) Type of endoplasmic reticulum that lacks ribosomes and plays a role in lipid synthesis and transport.
Snapping division A variation of binary fission in Gram-positive prokaryotes in which the parent cell's outer wall tears apart with a snapping movement to create the daughter cells.
SOS response Mechanism by which prokaryotic cells with extensive DNA damage use a variety of processes to induce DNA polymerase to copy the damaged DNA.
Southern blot Technique used in recombinant DNA technology that allows researchers to stabilize specific DNA sequences from an electrophoresis gel and then localize them using DNA dyes or probes.
Species Taxonomic category of organisms that can successfully interbreed.
Species resistance Property that protects a type of organism from infection by pathogens of other, very different organisms.
Specific epithet In taxonomy, latter portion of the descriptive name of a species.
Specific immunity The ability of a vertebrate to recognize and defend against distinct species or strains of invaders.
Spectrum of action The number of different kinds of pathogens a drug acts against.
Spinal tap Collection of cerebrospinal fluid from the lumbar regions for diagnostic purposes.
Spiral In cell morphology, a spiral-shaped prokaryotic cell.
Spirillus A stiff spiral-shaped prokaryotic cell.
Spirochetes Group of helical, Gram-negative bacteria with axial filaments that cause the organism to corkscrew, enabling it to burrow into a host's tissues.
Spliceosome Protein-RNA complex that removes introns from eukaryotic RNA.
Spoilage Any unwanted change to a food.
Spontaneous generation The theory that living organisms can arise from nonliving matter.
Sporadic In epidemiology, a disease that occurs in only a few scattered cases within a given area or population during a given period of time.
Spore Reproductive cell of actinomycetes and fungi.
Sporogonic phase In the life cycle of *Plasmodium*, stage during which sporozoites are produced in the mosquito's digestive tract, and migrate into the mosquito's salivary glands.
Sporotrichosis Subcutaneous infection usually limited to the arms and legs; lesions form around the site of infection with *Sporothrix schenckii*.
Spotted fever rickettsiosis Serious illness caused by infection with a rickettsial bacterium transmitted by ticks and characterized by rash, malaise, petechiae, and encephalitis, and death in 5% of cases.
Spp. Abbreviation used to indicate several species of a genus.
Staining Coloring microscopy specimens with stains called *dyes*.
Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome (SSSS) Disease caused by exfoliative toxin of *Staphylococcus aureus* in which epidermis peels off.
Staphylococcal toxic-shock syndrome Potentially fatal syndrome characterized by fever, vomiting, red rash, low blood pressure, and loss of sheets of skin, usually caused by systemic infection with strains of *Staphylococcus* that produce toxic shock syndrome toxins.
Staphylococcus A cluster of cocci.
Starter culture Group of known microorganisms that carry out specific and reproducible fermentation reactions.
Stationary phase Phase in a growth curve in which new organisms are being produced at the same rate at which older organisms are dying.
Stem cells Generative cells capable of dividing to form daughter cells of a variety of types.
Sterile Free of microbial contamination.
Sterilization The eradication of all organisms, including bacterial endospores and viruses, although not prions, in or on an object.
Steroid Lipids consisting of four fused carbon rings attached to various side chains and functional groups.
Streak-plate Method of culturing microorganisms in which a sterile inoculating loop is used to spread an inoculum across the surface of a solid medium in Petri dishes.
Streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (STSS) Shock produced by toxins of *Streptococcus* with manifestations similar to toxic-shock syndrome of *Staphylococcus*.
Streptococcus A chain of cocci.
Streptogramins Antimicrobial drugs that bind to the 50S ribosomal subunit and prevent ribosome movement along messenger RNA.
Structural analog Chemical that competes with a structurally similar molecule.
Sty Inflamed bacterial infection of the base of an eyelid.
Subacute disease Any disease that has a duration and severity that lies somewhere between acute and chronic.
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE) Slow, progressive disease of the central nervous system that results in memory loss, muscle spasms, and death several years after infection with a defective measles virus.
Subclinical *(asymptomatic)* Characteristic of disease that may go unnoticed because of absence of symptoms, even though clinical tests may reveal signs of disease.
Substitution Type of mutation in which a nucleotide base pair is replaced.
Substrate The molecule upon which an enzyme acts.
Substrate-level phosphorylation The transfer of phosphate to ADP from another phosphorylated organic compound.
Subunit vaccine Type of vaccine developed using recombinant DNA technology that exposes the recipient's immune system to a pathogen's antigens but not the pathogen itself.
Sulfonamide Antimetabolic drug that is a structural analog of para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA).
Sulfur cycle Biogeochemical cycle in which sulfur is cycled between oxidation states.
Superficial mycoses Fungal infections of the surface of the skin.
Superinfection Condition in which a patient infected with hepatitis B virus is subsequently infected with hepatitis D virus.
Superoxide radical Toxic form of oxygen that is detoxified by superoxide dismutase.
Surfactant Chemical that acts to reduce the surface tension of solvents such as water by decreasing the attraction among solvent molecules.
Symbiosis A continuum of close associations between two or more organisms that ranges from mutually beneficial to associations in which one member damages the other member.
Symptoms Subjective characteristics of a disease that can be felt by the patient alone.
Synapse In immunology, the interface between cells of the immune system that involves cell-to-cell signaling.
Syncytium Giant, multinucleated cell formed by fusion of virally infected cell to neighboring cells.
Syndrome A group of symptoms, signs, and diseases that collectively characterizes a particular abnormal condition.
Synergism Interplay between drugs that results in efficacy that exceeds the efficacy of either drug alone.
Synthesis In virology, the production of new viral proteins and nucleic acids using the metabolic machinery of the host cell; third stage of lytic replication cycle.
Synthesis reaction A chemical reaction involving the formation of larger, more complex molecules.
Synthetic drug Antimicrobial that has been completely synthesized in a laboratory.
Synthetic medium *(defined medium)* Culturing medium of which the exact chemical composition is known.
Syphilis Sexually transmitted disease caused by infection with *Treponema pallidum*.
Systemic diseases Diseases caused by microbes spread via the blood and lymph that affect other body systems.
Systemic lupus erythematosus *(lupus)* A systemic autoimmune disease in which the individual produces autoantibodies against numerous antigens, including nucleic acids.

T cell T lymphocyte.
Tc cell *(cytotoxic T cell, CD8 cell)* In cell-mediated immune response, type of cell characterized by CD8 cell-surface glycoprotein; secretes perforins and granzymes that destroy infected or abnormal body cells.
Th cell *(helper T cell, CD4 cell)* In cell-mediated immune response, a type of cell characterized by CD4 cell-surface glycoprotein; regulates the activity of B cells and cytotoxic T cells.
Tr cell *(regulatory T cell, suppressor T cell)* Thymus-matured lymphocyte that serves to repress adaptive immune responses and prevent autoimmune diseases.
T cell receptor (TCR) Antigen receptor generated in the cytoplasmic membrane of T lymphocytes.
T lymphocyte *(T cell)* Lymphocyte that matures in the thymus and acts primarily against endogenous antigens in cell-mediated immune responses.
T-dependent antigens Molecules that stimulate an immune response only with the involvement of a helper T cell.
T-dependent antibody immunity Adaptive immune response resulting in immunoglobulin production that requires the action of a specific helper T cell (Th2).
T-independent antigens Large molecules with repeating subunits that trigger an antibody immune response without the activation of T cells.
T-independent antibody immunity Adaptive immune response resulting in immunoglobulin production following cross-linking of BCRs on numerous B cells and lacking involvement of helper T cells.
Tapeworms *(cestodes)* Group of long, flat, and segmented helminths.
Taxa Nonoverlapping groups of organisms sorted on the basis of mutual similarities.
Taxis Cell movement that occurs as a positive or negative response to light or chemicals.
Taxonomic system A system for naming and grouping similar organisms together.
Taxonomy The science of classifying and naming organisms.
Telophase Final stage of mitosis, during which nuclear envelopes form around the daughter nuclei. Also used for the comparable stage of meiosis.
Temperate phage *(lysogenic phage)* Bacteriophage that does not immediately kill its host cell.
Teratogenic Characterized by an ability to cause birth defects.
Terminator Region of DNA where transcription ends.
Tetanospasmin Neurotoxin of *Clostridium tetani* that blocks the release of inhibitory neurotransmitters in the central nervous system.
Tetanus Potentially fatal infection with *Clostridium tetani*, which produces tetanospasmin, a potent neurotoxin.
Tetracycline Antimicrobial agent that inhibits protein synthesis by blocking the tRNA docking site.
Tetrad In genetics: two chromosomes, which are each made up of two DNA molecules, physically associated together during prophase I and metaphase I of meiosis; in cellular arrangements four cocci remaining attached following cell division.
Thallus Body of a fungus or alga.
Thermal death point The lowest temperature that kills all cells in a broth in 10 minutes.
Thermal death time The time it takes to completely sterilize a particular volume of liquid at a set temperature.
Thermophile Microorganism requiring temperatures above 45°C.
Thrombocytopenia Decrease in the number of platelets in the blood.
Thylakoid In photosynthetic cells, portion of cellular membrane containing light-absorbing photosystems.
Thymine Ring-shaped nitrogenous base found in nucleotides of DNA.
Tick Bloodsucking arachnid, which vectors a number of bacterial and viral pathogens.
Tickborne relapsing fever Disease caused by *Borrelia* spp. transmitted between humans by soft ticks.
Tincture Solution of antimicrobial chemical in alcohol.
Titer In serology, a measure of the level of antibody in blood serum, determined by titration and expressed as a ratio reflecting the dilution.
Titration Serial dilution of blood serum to test for agglutination activity.
Toll-like receptors (TLRs) Integral membrane proteins that bind to specific microbial chemicals.
Total magnification A multiple of the magnification achieved by the objective and ocular lenses of a compound microscope.
Toxemia Presence in the blood of poisons called *toxins*.
Toxic-shock syndrome (nonstreptococcal; TSS) Potentially fatal condition characterized by fever, vomiting, red rash, low blood pressure, and loss of sheets of skin, caused by systemic infection with strains of *Staphylococcus*.
Toxin Chemical that either harms tissues or triggers host immune responses that cause damage.
Toxoid vaccine Inoculum using modified toxins to stimulate antibody-mediated immunity.
Toxoplasmosis A disease affecting animals and caused by infection with *Toxoplasma gondii*. In humans, characterized by mild, febrile symptoms, but may be fatal in AIDS patients, and transplacental transmission may result in miscarriage, stillbirth, or severe birth defects.
Trace element Element required in very small amounts for microbial metabolism.
Trachoma Serious eye disease caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*.
Transamination Reaction involving transfer of an amine group from one amino acid to another.
Transcription Process in which the genetic code from DNA is copied as RNA nucleotide sequences.
Transducing phage Virus that transfers bacterial DNA from one bacterium to another.
Transduction Method of horizontal gene transfer in which DNA is transferred from one cell to another via a replicating virus.
Transfer RNA (tRNA) Form of ribonucleic acid that carries amino acids to the ribosome.
Transformation Method of horizontal gene transfer in which a recipient cell takes up DNA from the environment.
Transgenic organism Plant or animal that has been genetically altered by the inclusion of genes from other organisms.
Translation Process in which the sequence of genetic information carried by mRNA is used by ribosomes to construct polypeptides with specific amino acid sequences.
Transmission electron microscope (TEM) Type of electron microscope which generates a beam of electrons that passes through the specimen and produces an image on a fluorescent screen.
Transport medium A special type of medium used to move clinical specimens from one location to another while preserving the relative abundance of organisms and preventing contamination of the specimen or environment.
Transposition Mutation in which a genetic segment is transferred to a new position through the action of a DNA segment called a transposon.
Transposon Segment of DNA found in most prokaryotes, eukaryotes, and viruses that codes for the enzyme transposase and can move from one location in a DNA molecule to another location in the same or a different molecule.
Trematodes *(flukes)* Group of helminths that are flat, leaf-shaped, have incomplete digestive systems, and have oral and ventral suckers.
Trench fever A disease common among World War I soldiers; caused by the bacterium *Bartonella quintana*.
Trichomoniasis Inflammation of the genitalia caused by *Trichomonas vaginalis*.
Trophozoite The motile feeding stage of a protozoa.
Tubercle Hard pulmonary nodule resulting from infection with mycobacteria.
Tuberculin response Type of delayed hypersensitivity reaction in which the skin of an individual exposed to tuberculosis or tuberculosis vaccine reacts to a subcutaneous injection of tuberculin.
Tuberculin skin test Test for a delayed hypersensitivity reaction to a subcutaneous injection of tuberculin.
Tuberculosis (TB) A respiratory disease caused by infection with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; its disseminated form can result in wasting away of the body and death.
Tularemia Zoonotic disease causing fever, chills, malaise, and fatigue, and caused by infection with *Francisella tularensis*.
Tumor In the pathology of cancer, a mass of neoplastic cells. In inflammation, a symptom of swelling *(edema)*.
Tumor necrosis factor (TNF) An immune system cytokine secreted by macrophages and T cells to kill tumor cells and to regulate immune responses and inflammation.
Turbidimetry Automated method that measures the cloudiness of a solution by passing light through it.
Type 1 diabetes mellitus Immunological attack on the islets of Langerhans cells in the pancreas resulting in the inability to produce the hormone insulin.
Type III secretion systems Complex proteinaceous structure that inserts into target cells, forming a channel for the secretion of bacterial toxin or enzymes.
Typhoid fever Fever, headache, and malaise produced by infection with *Salmonella enterica* serotypes Typhi and Paratyphi; severe infections may cause peritonitis.

Typhus *(epidemic typhus, murine typhus, scrub typhus)* A group of diseases caused by rickettsias transmitted by arthropod vectors.

Uncoating In animal viruses, the removal of a viral capsid within a host cell.
Unsaturated fat A triglyceride with at least one double bond between adjacent carbon atoms, and thus at least one carbon atom bound to only a single hydrogen atom.
Uracil Ring-shaped nitrogenous base found in nucleotides of RNA.
Urticaria Hives.
Use-dilution test Method of evaluating the effectiveness of a disinfectant or antiseptic against specific microbes in which the most effective agent is the one that entirely prevents microbial growth at the highest dilution.

Vaccination Active immunization; specifically against smallpox.
Vaccine The inoculum used in active immunization.
Vacuole General term for membranous sac that stores or carries a substance in a cell.
Vaginosis Noninflammatory infection of the vagina.
Valence The combining capacity of an atom.
Vancomycin Antimicrobial drug that disrupts formation of Gram-positive bacterial cell walls by interfering with alanine-alanine crossbridges linking *N*-acetylglucosamine subunits.
Vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* **(VRSA)** Strain of *S. aureus* that is resistant to vancomycin and usually resistant to many common antimicrobial drugs as well.
Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease (vCJD) Dementia caused by a prion that destroys brain tissue such that the brain appears spongelike—full of holes.
Varicella (*chickenpox*) Highly infectious disease characterized by fever, malaise, and skin lesions, and caused by infection with varicella-zoster virus.
Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) Virus that causes chickenpox (varicella) and shingles (herpes zoster).
Variola Common name for the smallpox virus.
Variola major Variant of smallpox virus, which causes severe disease with a mortality rate of 20% or higher.
Variola minor Variant of smallpox virus, which causes less severe disease and mortality rate of less than 1%.
Vector In genetics and recombinant DNA technology, nucleic acid molecule such as a viral genome, transposon, or plasmid that is used to deliver a gene into a cell. In epidemiology, an animal (typically an arthropod) that transmits disease from one host to another.
Vegetations Bulky masses of platelets and clotting proteins that surround and bury the bacteria involved in endocarditis.
Vehicle transmission Spread of pathogens via air, drinking water, and food, as well as bodily fluids being handled outside the body.
Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE) Potentially fatal infection of the brain caused by a togavirus.
Vesicle General term for membranous sac that stores or carries a substance in a cell; in human pathology, any raised skin lesion filled with clear fluid.
Viable plate count Estimation of the size of a microbial population based upon the number of colonies formed when diluted samples are plated onto agar media.
Vibrio A slightly curved rod-shaped prokaryotic cell.
Viral hemagglutination inhibition test Immunetest commonly used to detect antibodies against influenza, measles, and other viruses that naturally agglutinate red blood cells.
Viral neutralization Test of serum for presence of antibodies against a particular virus in which test serum is mixed with the virus, and then the mixture is added to a cell culture. Survival of the cells indicates antibodies in the serum neutralized the viruses.
Viremia Viral infection of the blood.
Viridans streptococci Group of alpha-hemolytic streptococci, which produce a green pigment when grown on blood media and normally inhabit the mouth and throat, and the GI, genital, and urinary tracts.
Virion A virus outside of a cell, consisting of a proteinaceous capsid surrounding a nucleic acid core.
Viroid Extremely small, circular piece of RNA that is infectious and pathogenic in plants.
Virulence A measure of pathogenicity.
Virulence factors Enzymes, toxins, and other factors that affect the relative ability of a pathogen to infect and cause disease.
Virus Tiny infectious acellular agent with nucleic acid surrounded by proteinaceous capsomeres that form a covering called a capsid.
Viviparity Process by which live offspring are produced in the body of a mother.

Wandering macrophage Type of macrophage that leaves the blood via diapedesis to travel to distant sites of infection.
Warts *(papillomas)* Benign epithelial growths caused by papillomaviruses.
Wastewater *(sewage)* Any water that leaves homes or businesses after being used for washing or flushed from toilets.
Water mold Eukaryotic microbe resembling a filamentous fungus but having tubular cristae in their mitochondria, cell walls of cellulose, two flagella, and true diploid thalli.
Waterborne transmission Spread of pathogenic microorganisms via water.
Wavelength The distance between two corresponding points of a wave.
Wax Alcohol-containing lipid made up of molecules with one fatty acid chain.
Western blot test *(immunoblot)* Variation of an ELISA test that can detect the presence of antibodies against multiple antigens; used to verify the presence of antibodies against HIV in the serum of individuals who have tested positive by ELISA.
Western equine encephalitis (WEE) Potentially fatal infection of the brain caused by a togavirus.
Whitlow Inflamed blister that may result from infection with *human herpesvirus 1* or HHV-2 via a cut or break in the skin.
Whooping cough *(pertussis)* Pediatric disease characterized by development of copious mucus, loss of tracheal cilia, and deep "whooping" cough; caused by infection with *Bordetella pertussis*.
Wild-type cell A cell normally found in nature (in the wild); a nonmutant.
Wound Trauma to body's tissue.

XDR-TB Tuberculosis caused by extensively drug-resistant *Mycobacterium*.
Xenodiagnosis Method of diagnosing Chagas' disease in which an uninfected *Triatoma* vector is allowed to feed on a patient. Subsequent presence of trypanosomes in the bug's gut indicates the patient is infected.
Xenograft Type of graft in which tissues are transplanted between individuals of different species.
Xenotransplant Technique involving recombinant DNA technology in which human genes are inserted into animals to produce cells, tissues, or organs that are then introduced into the human body.

Yaws Large, destructive, pain-free lesions of the skin, bones, and lymph nodes caused by *Treponema pallidum pertenue*.
Yeast A unicellular, typically oval or round fungus that usually reproduces asexually by budding.
Yellow fever Often fatal hemorrhagic disease contracted through a mosquito bite carrying a flavivirus.

Zone of inhibition In a diffusion susceptibility test, a clear area surrounding the drug-soaked disk where the microbe does not grow.
Zoonoses Diseases that are naturally spread from usual animal host to humans.
Zygomycoses Opportunistic fungal infections caused by various genera of fungi classified in the division Zygomycota.
Zygomycota Division of fungi including coenocytic molds called zygomycetes. Most are saprobes.
Zygosporangium Thick, black, rough-walled sexual structure of zygomycetes that can withstand desiccation and other harsh environmental conditions.
Zygospores Haploid spores formed from the surviving nuclei within zygosporangia.
Zygote In sexual reproduction, diploid cell formed by the union of gametes.

This page intentionally left blank

Credits

Illustration Credits

All illustrations have been rendered by **Precision Graphics** unless noted otherwise.

CHAPTER 1 **1.10, 1.12, 1.14:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 2 **2.13, 2.14:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 3 **3.2, 3.3, 3.6, 3.8, 3.13–3.15, 3.30, 3.33–3.36, 3.39, 3.40:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics. **3.4, 3.31:** Darwen Hennings/Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics. **3.18:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC. **3.38:** Darwen Hennings.

CHAPTER 4 **4.2, 4.11, 4.12:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC/Precision Graphics. **4.4, 4.6, 4.7:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC. **4.22, 4.27:** Darwen Hennings/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 5 **5.18, 5.25–5.27:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 6 **6.3, 6.9, 6.10, 6.22, 6.23, 6.25, 6.26:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC. **6.24:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 7 **7.29:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC/Precision Graphics. **7.30, 7.31, 7.33:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 9 **9.8, 9.11:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC/Precision Graphics. **9.10:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 10 **10.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics. **10.12:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 11 **11.1, 11.6, 11.20, 11.25:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 12 **12.6, 12.8, 12.14, 12.19, 12.22, 12.24, 12.25, 12.27:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 13 **13.4, 13.6, 13.7, 13.8, 13.11, 13.12, 13.14, 13.18:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 14 **14.3, 14.4, 14.11, Table 14.2**: Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics. **14.7:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 15 **15.2–15.4, 15.13–15.15:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 16 **16.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 17 **17.4, 17.7:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC/Precision Graphics. **17.8, 17.9:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 18 **18.5, 18.8:** Cassio Lynm/Precision Graphics. **18.13:** J.B. Woolsey Associates, LLC.

CHAPTER 19 **19.17:** Cassio Lynm/Precision Graphics; **19.28:** Cassio Lynm; Microbe at a Glance **19.1** and **19.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 20 **20.8, 20.16, 20.18,** Microbe at a Glance **20.1** and **20.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 21 **21.15,** Microbe at a Glance **21.1** and **21.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 22 **22.2,** Microbe at a Glance **22.1** and **22.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 23 **23.1, 23.3, 23.5, 23.6, 23.13, 23.17, 23.20,** Microbe at a Glance **23.1** and **23.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 24 **24.2, 24.5, 24.10, 24.19, 24.22,** Microbe at a Glance **24.1** and **24.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics.

CHAPTER 25 **25.8, 25.12, 25.17, 25.20, 25.29, 25.38, 25.39,** Microbe at a Glance **25.1** and **25.2:** Kenneth Probst/Precision Graphics; **25.9:** Darwen Hennings/Precision Graphics.

Photo Credits

CHAPTER 1 **Opener:**Peter Parks/Image Quest Marine. **1.1:** Pfizer, Inc. **1.2:** Alan Shinn. **1.3:** Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **1.4:** L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **1.5a:** Jeremy Burgess / Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.5b:** Steve Gschmeissner/Photo Researchers, Inc.**1.6a:** M. I. Walker/NHPA/Photoshot. **1.6b:** M. I. Walker/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.6c:** Bruce J. Russell/Biomedia Associates. **1.7a:** M.I. Walker/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.7b:** Jan Hinsch/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.8:** Sinclair Stammers/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.9:** Lee D. Simon/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.11:** Images from the History of Medicine (NLM). **1.15** and **1.18:** National Library of Medicine. **1.16:** Kirk Hartwein. **1.17:** ASM/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.20:** Christine Case. **Beneficial Microbes 1.1:** Marc Vermeirsch/iStockphoto.com. **Clinical Case Study 1.1:** National Library of Medicine. **1.2:** Barry Marshall and Alfred Tay, The University of Western Australia. **Emerging Diseases 1.1.1**: Keith Weller/United States Department of Agriculture. **Highlight 1.1**: Chung Sung-Jun/Stringer/Getty Images. **End-of-Chapter 1.1**: M. I. Walker/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.2**: Bruce J. Russell/Biomedia Associates. **1.3**: M. I. Walker/NHPA/Photoshot.

CHAPTER 2 **Opener**: NASA Earth Observing System. **2.12b**: Felix B scher/AGE Fotostock America, Inc. **Beneficial Microbes 2.1**: Frank van den Bergh/iStockphoto.com. **Clinical Case Study 2.1**: Jonathan LittleJohn/Alamy.

CHAPTER 3 **Opener**: H. Sui and K. H. Downing, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory. **3.1a**: Dr. Gopal Murti/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.1b**: M.I. Walker/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.2. 3.3**: Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.5a**: Kari Louatmea/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.5b**: Bergey's Manual Trust. **3.7a**: Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.7b**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers. Inc. **3.7c**: American Phytopathological Society. **3.8**: ASM/Science Source / Photo Researchers. **3.10**: Thomas Deerinck/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.11**: David Scharf/ Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.22**: "From Influence of phenylacetic acid on poly-á-hydroxybutyrate (PHB) polymerization and cell elongation in Azotobacter chroococcum." M. P. Nuti, M. De Bertoldi, A .A. Lepidi *Canadian Journal of Microbiology*. 1972 Aug;18(8):1257–61. **3.24**: Rut Carballido-Lopez. **3.25bt**: Wiley-Blackwell. **3.26a**: Springer-Verlag GmbH & Co. **3.26b**: William Hixon & Dennis G. Searcy. **3.26c**, **3.27**: Mike Dyall-Smith (www.haloarchaea .com). **3.28, 3.33b, 3.34a-c**, **3.35a, 3.36a, 3.39ab**: Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.29a-d**: Donald L. Ferry (wolfbat359.com). **3.30a**: SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.30b**: Steve Gschmeissner/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.30c**: Omnikron/Science Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.32**: Jennifer Waters/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.33a**: Conly L. Rieder. **3.35b**: Wellcome Images. **3.36b, 3.37**: Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.40**: University of Wisconsin. **Beneficial Microbes 3.1**: Josh Reynolds /AP IMAGS. **Clinical Case Study 3.1**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Highlight 3.1**: Public Library of Science. **End-of-Chapter 3.1.1-2**: Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.1.2**: **3.2.1**: ASM/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.2.2**: Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc. **3.2.3**: American Phytopathological Society. **3.2.4**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 4 **Opener**: Robert Bauman. **4.4a**: Charles D. Winters/Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.8a-d, 4.9ab**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **4.10b**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **4.11b**: Seelevel.com. **4.11c**: Stanley C. Holt, University of Texas Health Science Center. **4.13a**: Steve Gschmeissner/Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.13bd**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.13c**: Andrew Syred/Photo Researchers, Inc. **1.14ab**: Veeco Instruments, Inc. **4.16ab**: Elisabeth Pierson, Pearson Education. **4.17.1-4, 4.18, 4.19**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **4.20**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc./ P. Birn. **4.21**, **4.23ab**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **4.24**: SIEMENS MEDICAL SOLUTIONS USA, INC. **4.25a**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **4.26**: Microbial Diseases Laboratory, Berkeley, CA. **Beneficial Microbes 4.1**: Yasunori Tanji, Tokyo, Institute of Technology, Dept. of Biotechnology. **Emerging Diseases 4.1**: Lawrence B. Stack, Emergency Medicine, Vanderbilt University, Nashville. **Highlight 4.1**: From: "Application of confocal and multi-photon imaging to geomicrobiology." T. Kawaguchi and A. W. Decho. *Bio-Rad Application Note* 30, 1-6, (2000). Courtesy of Bio-Rad Laboratories, Inc., © 2000. **End-of-Chapter 4.1.1**: Meckes/ Ottowas/Eye on Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.1.2**: John Durham/Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.1.3**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **4.1.4**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **4.1.5**: M. Wurtz, Biozentrum/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, **Inc.4.1.6**: M I Walker/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.2**: Charles D. Winters/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Table 4.2.1-5**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **4.2.6**: From: "Application of confocal and multi-photon imaging to geomicrobiology." T. Kawaguchi and A. W. Decho. *Bio-Rad Application Note* 30, 1-6, (2000). Courtesy of Bio-Rad Laboratories, Inc., © 2000. **4.2.7**: Stanley C. Holt. **4.2.8**: Steve Gschmeissner/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **4.2.9-10**: Veeco Instruments, Inc. **4.3.1**: Pearson Education. **4.3.2-4**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **4.3.5**: P. Birn/Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **4.3.6**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education.

CHAPTER 5 **Opener**: crolique/Shutterstock. **5.25b**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Beneficial Microbes 5.1**: Don Bendickson/Shutterstock. **Highlight 5.1.1**: Frederick R. McConnaughey/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Highlight 5.2**: ImageSource/AGE Fotostock. **End-of-Chapter 5.2**: Don W. Fawcett/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 6 **Opener**: Image from the IMAX film *Volcanoes of the Deep Sea*. Photo Courtesy: Rutgers University/The Stephen Low Company. **6.2**: Brenda Wellmeyer. **6.4b**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **6.6a**: Doug Allen/Nature Picture Library. **6.6b**: Wayne P. Armstrong (waynesword.palomar.edu). **6.8b**, **6.9b**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **6.10b**: Kirk Hartwein. **6.11**, **6.12ab**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **6.13**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **6.14**, **6.15a-c**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **6.17b**: Lee D. Simon/Photo Researchers, Inc. **6.24b**: From "Bismuth dimercaptopropanol (BisBAL) inhibits the expression of extracellular polysaccharides and proteins by Brevundimonas diminuta: implications for membrane microfiltration." A. R. Badireddy, S. Chellam, S. Yanina, P. Gassman, K. M. Rosso. *Biotechnol Bioeng*. 2008 Feb 15;99(3):634-43. **6.26a**: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs, NYC. **6.26b**: TOPAC. **Beneficial Microbes 6.1**: U.S. Department of Energy/Savannah River National Laboratory. **Clinical Case Study 6.1**: Martin S. Spiller, D.M.D (doctorspiller.com). **6.2**: Gregory Moran, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention **(CDC). Highlight 6.1**: J.W. Schaefer/ Fotol. **End-of-Chapter 6.2**: Mike Siegel/Seattle Times/MCT/Newscom.

CHAPTER 7 **Opener**: Alfred Pasieka/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **7.2a**: Klaus Boller/Photo Researchers, Inc. **7.2b**: Huntington Potter and David Dressler. **7.3a**: Barbara Hamkalo. **7.3b**: Elsevier Science Ltd. **7.3cd**: G. F. Bahr/Armed Forces Institute of Pathology. **7.19b**: E.V. Kiseleva. **7.35a**: Charles C. Brinton, Jr., University of Pittsburgh. **Beneficial Microbes 7.1**: Ed Austin and Herb Jones, National Park Service. **Clinical Case Study 7.1**: Mike Miller, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Emerging Diseases 7.1**: Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock. **Highlight 7.1**: Tomas Prokop/iStockphoto.com. **End-of-Chapter 7.2**: Jozef Adamcik.

CHAPTER 8 **Opener**: Elwynn@YAYMicro/age fotostock. **8.6b**: Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **8.8b**: Laurence Game/CSC, IC Microarray Centre, London. **8.9d**: U S Department of Energy Human Genome Program University of California, Irvine, CA. **8.10**: AdvanDx. **8.12**: D. Parker/ SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **8.13**: Dennis Gonsalves, Plant Pathologist, USDA-ARS-PBARC, Hilo, Hawaii. **Highlight 8.1**: James Gathany, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **8.2**: Werli Francois/Alamy. **End-of-Chapter 8.2**: From: "Candida parapsilosis characterization in an outbreak setting." DM Kuhn et al. *Emerg Infect Dis*. 2004 Jun;10(6):1074-81. Fig. 1.

CHAPTER 9 **Opener**: Gaetano Images/Alamy. **9.4**: Ramon Flick. **9.7a**: Photofusion Picture Library/Alamy Images. **9.9**: Jonathan Blair/National Geographic Stock. **9.10b**: Science Source/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **9.12**, **9.14**: Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs, NYC.

9.16: Robert Bauman. **Beneficial Microbes 9.1**: Scimat/Photo Researchers. **Emerging Diseases 9.1.1**: P. Garg, International Centre for Eye Health. **Highlight 9.1**: Ok.nazarenko/Shutterstock. **9.2**: Jiri Hera/Panther Media/age fotostock. **End-of-Chapter 92**: Rob Reed.

CHAPTER 10 **Opener**: Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **10.1**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **10.9**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **10.10**: Craig Warner/Albert Einstein College of Medicine. **10.11**: Microrao, JJMMC, Davangere, Karnataka, India. **10.14a**: Com4. **10.14b**: Beth Yarbrough. **10.17**: E. Vercauteren, Department of Microbiology, University Hospital, Antwerp, Belgium. **Beneficial Microbes 10.1**: Scimat/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 10.1**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **10.2**: Garry Watson / Photo Researchers Inc. **10.3**: Ariel Skelley/Getty Images, Inc. **Emerging Diseases 10.1.1**: Toledo-Lucas County Health Department. **Highlight 10.1**: Fotosearch.com, LLC. **End-of-Chapter 10.2**: Microrao, JJMMC, Davangere, Karnataka, India.

CHAPTER 11 **Opener**: Iconotec/Alamy Images. **11.2ab**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **11.4ab**: Terry A. Krulwich. **11.5**: Kim Findlay, John Innes Centre, Norfolk, UK. **11.7a**: Mike Dyall-Smith. **11.7b**: Eastman Kodak Company. **11.7cde**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **11.8a-d**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **11.10a**: From: "Extending the upper temperature limit for life." K. Kashefi, D. R. Lovley. *Science*. 2003 August 15; 301(5635): 934, fig1A. Reprinted with permission. © 2003 AAAS. **11.10b**: Reinhard Rachel. **11.11**: Sascha Burkard/Shutterstock. **11.12**: Nancy Nehring/iStockphoto.com. **11.13a**: Microbial Culture Collection, MCC-NIES, Japan. **11.13b**: Yuuji Tsukii, Hosei University, Tokyo, Japan. **11.13c**: Wayne Lanier. **11.14, 11.22a**: David J. Patterson. **11.15**: Francois Thiaucourt. **11.16**: SciMAT/Photo Researchers, Inc. **11.17**: David Berd, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **11.18**: Yves Brun. **11.19**: Seelevel.com. **11.21**: Custom Life Science Images/Alamy. **11.22b**: SEM Image by W. Urbancik, courtesy of Joerg Ott. **11.23**: Dr. Tony Brain/Photo Researchers, Inc. **11.24b**: Alfred Pasieka/Peter Arnold/Getty Images. **11.25b**: Ronald Garcia and Rolf M ller. **Beneficial Microbes 11.1**: Rick Gomez/Lithium/age fotostock. **11.2**: Yves Brun. **Emerging Diseases 11.1.1**: MIXA Co., LTD/Alamy Images. **Highlight 11.1**: Merlin D. Tuttle, Bat Conservation International, www.batcon.org. **11.2**: Alessio Orr—/Fotolia. **End-of-Chapter 11.2a**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **11.2b**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education.

CHAPTER 12 **Opener**: Arco ImagesGmbH/Alamy Images. **12.2a**: Dartmouth Electron Microscope Facility. **12.2b**: Michael V. Danilchik. **12.2c**: SciMAT/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.5**: Walter Dawn/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.7**: Patrick Keeling. **12.8b**: N. J. Wheeler, Jr., Centers for Disease Control. **12.9**: Guy Brugerolle, Universite Clermont-Ferrand. **12.10**: Meckes/Ottowas/Eye on Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.11b**: Biophoto Associates / Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.12**: www.mikrohamburg.de. **12.13**: Eye of Science / Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.14a**: Patrick W. Grace/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.14b**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.15ab**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **12.15c, 12.18c**: David Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.15d**: Christine Case. **12.16**: Jeremy Burgess/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.17**: N. Allin & G.L. Barron, University of Guelph/Biological Photo Service. **12.18a:**Lucile K. George, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **12.8b**: Buckman Laboratories International Inc. **12.21**: Guillaume Gouilloux/iStockphoto.com. **12.22**: Nino Santamaria. **12.23a**: CC-BY-SA photo: Phyzome. **12.23b**: Paul J. Fusco / Photo Researchers. **12.24**: Merton F. Brown and Harold G. Brotzman from the APS Slide collection. **12.25**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.26**: Fred Rhoades. **12.28**: D. P. Wilson/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.29**: D. J. Patterson, image used under license to MBL (micro*scope). **12.30**: Bob Evans/Getty Images. **12.31**: Steve Gschmeissner/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.32**: Fred Rhoades/Mycena Consulting. **12.33a**: Kent Wood/Photo Researchers, Inc. **12.33b**: Parasitology Laboratory/Department of Medical Technology, Faculty of Health Sciences, Kobe University School of Medicine. **12.33c**: World Health Organization (WHO)/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **12.33d**: From "Genetic Analysis of Lice Supports Direct Contact between Modern and Archaic Humans." D. L. Reed, V. S. Smith, S. L. Hammond, A. R. Rogers, D. H. Clayton, *PLoS Biology*. 2(11); e340. Photo by Vincent S. Smith. **12.33e**: Kim Taylor/Nature Picture Library. **12.33f**: Food and Environmental Hygiene Department of Hong Kong. **12.33g**: Marcelo de Campos Pereira, The Veterinary Parasitology Images Gallery. **Beneficial Microbes 12.1**: Pixelmania/Fotolia, LLC. **Emerging Diseases 12.1.1**: From "Pulmonary Aspergilloma: A Significant Cause of Life-Threatening Massive Hemoptysis." Z. A. Ali, A. Mahmoud, F. R. Krueger, S. Kapre, C. Mead. *Resident & Staff Physician*. 2008; 54(1):27-32; Fig. 2. **End-of-Chapter 12.1**: Nino Santamaria. **12.2** Merton F. Brown and Harold G. Brotzman from the APS Slide collection. **12.3**: David Scharf/Science Source/Photo Researchers Inc. **12.4**: Lucile K. George, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

CHAPTER 13 **Opener**: CAMR/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.1b**: Yu. G. Kuznetsov and A. McPherson, University of California, Irvine. **13.2:** Huntington Potter, Byrd Alzheimers Institute and University of South Florida and David Dressler, Oxford University and Balliol College. **13.3a**: From "Bismuth dimercaptopropanol (BisBAL) inhibits the expression of extracellular polysaccharides and proteins by Brevundimonas diminuta: implications for membrane microfiltration." A.R. Badireddy, S. Chellam, S. Yanina, P. Gassman, K.M. Rosso. *Biotechnol Bioeng*. 2008 Feb 15;99(3):634-43.**13.3b**: Kevin M. Rosso. **13.3c**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.5a**: Robley C. Williams, Jr., Vanderbilt University. **13.5b**: Biophoto Associate/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.5c**: Abergel Chantal, Information Genomique et Structurale UMR7256CNRS, Aix-Marseille Universit,.**13.5d**: Frederick A. Murphy, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston. **13.6a**: Department of Microbiology, Biozentrum, University of Basel/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.7**: Klaus Boller/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.10**: M. Wurtz, Biozentrum/ Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **13.17**: CC-BY-SA photo: Madboy. **13.19**: OriGen Biomedical. **13.20**: Theodor O. Diener, Agricultural Research Service, USDA. **13.21**: USDA/ARS/ Agricultural Research Service. **13.23**: James King-Holmes/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Beneficial Microbes 13.1**: NASA. **13.2**: Juergen Berger/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 13.1**: Yuri Arcurs/INSADCO Photography/Alamy. **Emerging Diseases 13.1.1**: James Gathany, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Highlight 13.1**: AP Images. **End-of-Chapter 13.1a**: Abergel Chantal, Information Genomique et Structurale UMR7256, CNRS, Aix-Marseille University.**13.1b**: Frederick A. Murphy, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston.**13.1c**: Robley C. Williams, Jr., Vanderbilt University. **13.1d**: Biophoto Associate/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 14 **Opener**: CAMR/A. Barry Dowsett / Photo Researchers. **14.1**: jeridu/iStockphoto.com. **14.2**: Tony Brain/Photo Researchers, Inc. **14.5b**: J. Willam Costerton, Montana State University. **14.6**: David Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc. **14.12**: Andrew Davidhazy, Photo Arts and Sciences at Rochester Institute of Technology. **14.13**: Akintunde Akinleye/REUTERS. **Beneficial Microbes 14.1**: Ralph E. Berry. **Clinical Case Study 14.1**: Bettmann/CORBIS. **14.2**: GlowImages/ Alamy. **14.3**: Vincent P. Walter/Pearson Education/PH College. **Emerging Diseases 14.1.1**: David Cappaert, Michigan State University, Bugwood.org.

CHAPTER 15 **Opener**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **15.1**: Davis Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc. **15.5ab**: Gwen V. Childs, Department of Neurobiology and Developmental Sciences, College of Medicine, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences, Little Rock, AR. **15.5c**: Michael Ross/Photo Researchers, Inc. **15.5de**: James O. Ballard. **15.6**: Alison K. Criss/University of Virginia Health Sciences Center. **15.1**: Sucharit Bhakdi. **Beneficial Microbes 15.1**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 15.2**: CNRI/Science Photo Library /Alamy. **End-of-Chapter 15.1**: Alison K. Criss/University of Virginia Health Sciences Center. **15.2ad**: James O. Ballard. **15.2b**: Michael Ross/Photo Researchers, Inc. **15.2ce**: Gwen V. Childs, Department of Neurobiology and Developmental Sciences, College of Medicine, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences, Little Rock, AR.

CHAPTER 16 **Opener**: CNRI/Photo Researchers, Inc. **16.1**: Michael Ross/Photo Researchers, Inc. **16.5b**: Tim Evans/Photo Researchers, Inc. **16.11**: Cecile Chalouni/Genentech, Inc. **16.17**: Steve Gschmeissner/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Emerging Diseases 16.1.1**: iStockphoto.com. **Highlight 16.1**: NIBSC/Photo Researchers, Inc. **16.2**: Andrejs Liepins/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **End-of-Chapter 16.2**: David M. Phillips/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Table 16.4.1**: PBWPIX/Alamy Images. **16.4.2**: Diane Macdonald/Stockbyte/Getty Images, Inc. **16.4.3**: Supri SUPRI/YH/REUTERS. **16.4.4**: Barbara Rice, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

CHAPTER 17 **Opener**: itsmejust/Shutterstock. **17.8b**: Karen E. Petersen. **17.1**: Libero Ajello/ Kaplan, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **17.11**: Maxine Jalbert and Dr. Leo Kaufman, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **17.12b**: Maxine Jalbert, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **17.13b**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **Beneficial Microbes 17.1**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Highlight 17.1**: Barry Dowsett and David A.J. Tyrrell. **End-of-Chapter 17.2**: From: "Seroprevalence of simian immunodeficiency virus in wild and captive born Sykes' monkeys (Cercopithecus mitis) in Kenya." BR Ellis et al. *Retrovirology*. 2004 Oct 28;1:34. Fig. 1.

CHAPTER 18 **Opener**: Thomas Photography LLC/Alamy. **18.2a**: Microfield Scientific/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.2b**: David Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.2c**: Andrew Syred / Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.3**: BISP/Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.4**: Medical-on-Line/Alamy. **18.9**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.10**: A. Doria and R.Rondinone, Dept. of Rheumatology, University of Padova, Italy. **18.11**: B. Lopez Oblare', www.fotogeriatria.net. **18.12**: Seelevel. com. **Clinical Case Study 18.1**: Scott Camazine/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Highlight 18.1**: Robert Bauman. **18.2**: Masson/Shutterstock. **18.3**: NASA/Johnson Space Center. **End-of-Chapter 18.1a**: A. Doria and R.Rondinone, Dept. of Rheumatology, University of Padova, Italy. **18.1b**: B. Lopez Oblare', www.fotogeriatria.net. **18.1c**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **18.1d**: BISP/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 19 **Opener**: Kwangshin Kim/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.1**: David M. Phillips/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.2**: From: "Images in clinical medicine. Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome." L. A. Schenfeld. *New England Journal of Medicine*. 2000 Apr 20; 342(16):1178, fig. 1. Used by permission of the Massachusetts Medical Society. **19.3**: BSIP/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.4**: From: "Evaluating the Febrile Patient with a Rash." H. McKinnon, T. Howard. *American Family Physician* 2000; 62:804-16, Fig. 6. **19.6**: Scott Camazine/Alamy Images. **19.7**: P. Marazzi/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.8**: From: "Late diagnosed necrotizing fasciitis as a cause of multiorgan dysfunction syndrome: A case report." P. Smuszkiewicz, I. Trojanowska, and H. Tomczak. *Cases J*. 2008 Aug 23;1(1):125. **19.9**: Kacso Sandor/Shutterstock. **19.10**: Vincent A. Fischetti, Rockefeller University, NY. **19.11, 19.18, 19.22**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **19.12**: A. Dowsett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.13**: Greater Southern Area Health Service, NSW Australia. **19.14**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.16**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education. **19.19b**: Daniel A. Portnoy. **19.2**: Michael Gabridge/CMSP/Newscom. **19.21**: Dr. Kari Lounatmaa/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.23**: Medical-on-Line/Alamy. **19.24, 19.26b**: Biophoto Associates/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.26a**: Princess Margaret Hospital/Dept. of Pediatrics. **19.27**: Rupak De Chowdhuri/Reuters. **19.29**: With permission from www.Dermnet.com. **19.30a**: Haitham Al Falah, General Surgery Dept., King Saud Medical Complex, Riyadh. **19.30b**: Copyright © The Regents of the University of California, Davis campus. Originally published in *Dermatology Online Journal.* "Actinomycosis: A rare soft tissue infection," Mohammad et al. *Dermatology Online Journal* 11 (3): 18. Fig. 1. All Rights Reserved. Used with permission. **Beneficial Microbes 19.1**: Andrew Syred/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 19.1**: CDC/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.2**: Blend Images/Photolibrary, Inc. **Emerging Diseases 19.1.1**: Fernando Caro, Dermatologist, Lima, Per£. **End-of-Chapter 19.1a**: Haitham Al Falah, General Surgery Dept., King Saud Medical Complex, Riyadh. **19.1b**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **19.1c**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **19.1d**: Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc. **19.1e**: Eastman Kodak Company. **19.1f**: Rich Robison, Pearson Education.

CHAPTER 20 **Opener**: A. Barry Dowsett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **20.1**: Chris Bjornberg / Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **20.3a**: Claus Henning Bley. **20.3b**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **20.4, 20.9ab**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education. **20.6a**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc./ Mike Press, RSBP SPAS. **20.6b**: University of Cambridge, Department of Pathology. **20.10**: M.I. Walker/Alamy Images. **20.11**: James A. Shapiro, University of Chicago. **20.12**: John J. Farmer, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **20.17**: Brook Yockey, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **20.19**: VEM/Photo Researchers, Inc.

20.20: From: "Cat Scratch Disease Lymphadenopathy" Tal Eidlitz-Markus, M.D., and Avraham Zeharia, M.D. *N Engl J Med* 2006; 354:e17April 27, 2006. **20.23**: NIBSC/Science Photo Library/ Photo Researchers, Inc. **20.25**: Leonard J. Morse. **20.26**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **20.27**: Moredun Animal Health Ltd/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **20.28**: www.troybio.com, BD Microbiology. **Beneficial Microbes 20.1**: From: "Bacteremia, Fever, and Splenomegaly Caused by a Newly Recognized Bartonella Species." Marina E. Eremeeva, et al. *N Engl J Med* 2007; 356:2381-2387, June 7, 2007. Fig. 1b. **20.2**: George O'Toole. **Clinical Case Study 20.1**: Norman Jacobs, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **20.2**: SEM by Daniel Kadouri and George O. Toole, colorized by Russell Monds, Dartmouth Medical School. **20.3**: Jill Fromer/iStockPhoto. **20.4**: ene/Shutterstock. **20.5**: Russell E. Enscore, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Emerging Diseases 20.1.1**: Microstock Man/Fotolia. **Highlight 20.1**: Minnesota Historical Society/CORBIS. **End-of-Chapter 20.1**: L. Brent Selinger, Pearson Education.

CHAPTER 21 **Opener**: Janice Carr, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **21.1**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc./ J L Carson. **21.3**: With permission from www.Dermnet.com. **21.6a**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **21.7**: Milton Reisch/CORBIS. **21.8**: Ben Adler, Australian Research Council Centre of Excellence in Structural and Functional Microbial Genomics, Monash University VIC, Australia. **21.9**: From: "Infectivity Assays For Chlamydia Trachomatis." M. Singla and B. Bal. *The Internet Journal of Microbiology*. 2006; 2(2); Fig. 2. **21.10**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **21.12a**: BSIP/Photoshot. **21.12b**: Custom Medical Stock Photo. **21.12c**: Copyright © The Regents of the University of California, Davis campus. Originally published in *Dermatology Online Journal*. "Solitary frontal ulcer: A syphilitic gumma." Andrade et al. *Dermatology Online Journal* 16 (9): 5 Fig. 1. All Rights Reserved. Used with permission. **21.13**: Peter Perine, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **21.14**: Michael Abbey/Photo Researchers, Inc. **21.15.1**: James Marshall/The Image Works. **21.15.2**: American Lyme Disease Foundation. **21.18**: Ben Adler. **21.19**: Gopal Murti/Photo Researchers, Inc. **21.22**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 21.1**: Vaughan Fleming / Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **21.20**: Robert Weaver, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Emerging Diseases 21.1**: From: "Rickettsiosis as Threat for the Traveller, Current Topics in Tropical Medicine," Alfonso J. Rodriguez-Morales (Ed.), Ar nzazu Portillo and Jos, A. Oteo (2012). ISBN: 978-953-51-0274-8, InTech, Available from: http://www.intechopen.com/books/current-topics-in-tropical-medicine/rickettsiosis-as-threat-for-the-traveller. **End-of-Chapter 21.1**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 22 **Opener**: Pr. Bouree/Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.1a**: Libero Ajello, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.1b**: Maxine Jalbert, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.4**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.6**: John W. Rippon, University of Chicago. **22.8**: Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.9**: From: "Dematology Photo Quiz." M. Miller *Resident and Staff Physician*. May 2006; (52)5; Fig. 1. **22.10**: Lucille K. Georg, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).**22.11**: Lois Norman, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.12ab**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.12c**: Edward H. Gill/Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **22.13**: John Durham / Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.14**: From: "Aspergillus fumigatus keratitis after laser in situ keratomileusis: a case report and review of post-LASIK fungal keratitis." F. Rahimi, M. N. Hashemian and M. T. Rajabi. *Eye*. 2007 Jun; 21(6):843–5; Fig. 1c. **22.15**: Edwin P. Ewing Jr., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.16**: With permission from www.Dermnet.com. **22.17**: From "Chromoblastomycosis." R. A Schwartz and E.Baran. eMedicine/Medscape. (http://emedicine.medscape.com/article/1092695-overview). **22.18a**: Libero Ajello, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.18b**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **22.19**: From: "Prise en charge des myc,tomes en Afrique de l'Ouest." M. Develoux, M. T. Dieng, A.Kane and B. Ndiaye. *Bull Soc Pathol Exot*, 2003; 96(5):376-382. **22.20**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **22.21**: Michael S. Nolan/AGE Fotostock. **Clinical Case Study 22.1**: Alamy Images. **22.2**: Philip Dalton/NaturePL.com. **22.3**: SPL/Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Emerging Diseases 22.1.1**: iStockphoto.com. **Highlight 22.1**: Electron Microscopy Center/North Dakota State University. **End-of-Chapter 22.2a**: Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.2b**: John Durham/Photo Researchers, Inc. **22.2c**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

CHAPTER 23 **Opener**: Andrew Syred/Photo Researchers, Inc. **23.2**: Lawrence R. Ash. **23.4**: Biology and Life Sciences Dept., Thiel College, Greenville, PA. **23.7**: Zuño Burstein, Dermatologia Sanitaria, Instituto de Medicina Tropical Daniel A. Carrion, Universidad Nacional Mayor de San Marcos, Lima, Peru. **23.8**: Waterborne Disease Prevention Branch, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.9**: J.L. Carson/Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **23.12, 23.21, 23.24**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.14**: Yale Rosen. **23.15**: From: "Three-step stool examination for cryptosporidiosis in 10 homosexual men with protracted watery diarrhea." P. Ma, R. Soave. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*. 1983 May; 137(5):824-828. Provided by the CDC. **23.18**: From: The Imaging of Tropical Diseases, by P. E. S. Palmer and M. M. Reeder. Springer. **23.19**: Eye of Science/Photo Researchers, Inc. **23.22**: Henty Bishop, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.23**: David Scharf/Photo Researchers, Inc. **23.25**: Steve J. Upton, Parasitology Research, Division of Biology, Kansas State University. **23.26**: Andy Crump, TDR, W.H.O./SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Clinical Case Study 23.1**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.2**: Leslie E. Kossoff/AP IMAGES. **23.3**: Mae Melvin, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Emerging Diseases 23.1**: Rebecca Ash. **23.2.1** : CC-BY-SA: User: Cornellier. **End-of-Chapter 23.2a** : Waterborne Disease Prevention Branch, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.2b-d**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **23.2e**: J.L. Carson/Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **23.2f**: Biology and Life Sciences Dept., Thiel College, Greenville, PA. **23.2g**: Lawrence R. Ash. **23.2h**: From: "Three-step stool examination for cryptosporidiosis in 10 homosexual men with protracted watery diarrhea." P. Ma, R. Soave. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*. 1983 May; 137(5):824-828. Provided by the CDC.

CHAPTER 24 **Opener**: Linda M Stannard/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.1**: Klaus Boller/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.3**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **24.4, 24.7, 24.8ab, 24.11**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.6**: Zara/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.9**: Historical Pictures Service/Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **24.12a**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.12b**: M.A. Ansary/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.12c**: Robert Bauman. **24.12d**: National Institutes of Health. **24.13**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **24.14**: Scott Camazine/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.15**: Scott Camazine / Alamy. **24.16a**: With permission from www.Dermnet.com. **24.16b**: Medical-on-Line/Alamy. **24.16c**: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.16d, 24.18**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers. **24.17**: M. Wurtz, Biozentrum, U. of Basel/SPL/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.20**: Garry Watsib/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.22**: Linda Stannard/UCT/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.23**: H. C. Robinson/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Beneficial Microbes 24.1**: Eric Florentin/Shutterstock. **Clinical Case Study 24.1**: Peter Sherrard/Getty Images, Inc. **24.2** : With permission from www.Dermnet.com. **24.3**: Apple's Eyes Studio/Shutterstock. **Emerging Diseases 24.1.1**: Henk Bentlage/Shutterstock. **Highlight 24.1**: Frederick A. Murphy, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston. **End-of-Chapter 24.2a**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **24.2b**: Scott Camazine/Alamy. **24.2c**: Zara/Photo Researchers, Inc. **24.2d-f**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc.

CHAPTER 25 **Opener**: Scott Camazine/Alamy Images. **25.1**: A. Barry Dowsett/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.3**: JoeGoaUk. **25.4**: Kathy Willnes/AP IMAGES. **25.5**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.6**: F. P. Williams/US EPA. **25.7:** Marion Sourisseau, Marie-Christine Pr€;vost, Olivier Schwartz, Institut Pasteur Paris. **25.11**: USDA/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.13**: Custom Medical Stock Photo, Inc. **25.15**: Kjell-Olof Hedlund/Smittskyddsinstitutet (SMI). **25.16**: Vincent Yu/AP IMAGES. **25.18**: Aaron Polliack / Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.22a**: Virat Sirisanthana, Department of Pediatrics, Chiang Mai University, Thailand. **25.22b**: A. Ramey/PhotoEdit Inc. **25.25a**: P. Marazzi/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.25b**: Niehoff/imagebroker/Alamy. **25.27**: Custom Medical Stock Photo/NMSB. **25.30**: Frederick A. Murphy. **25.32**: Biophoto Associates/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.33**: Science Source/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.35**: James Gathany, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **25.36**: Otis Historical Archives, NMHM. **25.37**: NIBSC/Photo Researchers, Inc. **25.40**: James Cavallini/BSIP SA/Alamy. **25.41**: Linda Stannard/Photo Researchers, Inc. **Beneficial Microbes 25.1**: James Gathanay, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **Clinical Case Study 25.1**: Biological Resources Division, U.S. Geological Survey. **25.2**: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). **25.3**: Mark Henley/Impact/age fotostock. **Emerging Diseases 25.1.1**: iStockphoto.com. **Highlight 25.1**: Andy Wong/AP IMAGES.

CHAPTER 26 **Opener**: SciMAT/Photo Researchers, Inc. **26.1**: The Patriot-News/Joe Hermitt / AP IMAGE. **26.2**: Paul Hudson/AGE Fotostock America, Inc. **26.3**: Arnd Wiegmann/REUTERS. **26.4**: EPA Photo/Attila Kisbenedek. **26.5**: Novo Nordisk Inc. **26.6**: Hector Mata/REUTERS. **26.7**: Andrey Kekyalyaynen/Shutterstock. **26.8a**: Central Virginia Governor's School for Science and Technology. **26.8b**: IDEXX Laboratories, Inc. **26.9**: JRC/Alamy Images. **26.11**: Albuquerque Tribune/Ross Coleman/AP IMAGES. **26.13**: Anna H. Kaksonen, Tampere University of Technology, Finland. **26.14**: K. J. Edwards/Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution. **26.14inset**: Radhoose/Shutterstock. **26.20**: Kenneth Lambert/AP IMAGES. **Beneficial Microbes 26.1**: U.S. Coast Guard. **Emerging Diseases 26.1.1**: Piotr Marcinski/Fotolia. **Highlight 26.1**: Seelevel.com. **26.2**: Dr. Klaus Boller/Photo Researchers, Inc.

This page intentionally left blank

Subject Index

NOTE: A *t* following a page number indicates tabular material, an *f* following a page number indicates a figure, and a *b* following a page number indicates a boxed feature.

A. *See* Adenine
A antigen, 505, 505*f*, 521, 522*t*
Abdominal infections, *Bacteroides fragilis* causing, 601
Abiogenesis (spontaneous generation), 7–10, 8*f*, 9*f*, 10*f*
Abiotrophia genus/spp., 547
ABO system, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*
Abscess, 455
  in group A streptococcal pharyngitis, 544, 544*f*
  Streptococcus anginosus causing, 547
Absidia genus/spp., 646
Absorbance, spectrophotometer measuring percentage of, 187, 188*f*
Abyssal zone, 782*f*, 783
Acanthamoeba genus/spp., 355, 358*t*, 661, 673*t*
  keratitis caused by, 258, 263*b*, 661, 673*t*
Accessory photosynthetic pigments, 367, 369
Acellular pertussis vaccine (DTaP), 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 594
Acellular (plasmodial) slime molds, 355, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
Acetic acid (vinegar), microbial production of, 13*t*, 146, 331, 760, 761*t*, 766
Acetobacter genus/spp., 331, 339*t*
  in vinegar production, 331, 760, 761*t*
Acetone
  in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
  microbial fermentation producing, 145*f*
Acetylcholine, botulism toxins affecting, 554, 554*f*
Acetyl-CoA (acetyl-coenzyme A), 128*t*, 153*t*, 157*f*
  in fat biosynthesis, 153, 154*f*
  in fat catabolism/beta-oxidation, 146*f*, 147
  in glucose catabolism, 128*t*, 134*f*, 135–136, 136*f*, 142*t*
  in Krebs cycle, 128*t*, 136, 137*f*, A-10
  synthesis of, 134*f*, 135–136, 136*f*, 142*t*
N-Acetylglucosamine (NAG), 43*f*, 64, 64*f*, 287, 287*f*
N-Acetylmuramic acid (NAM), 64, 64*f*, 287, 287*f*
  antimicrobials affecting, 287–288, 287*f*
ACh. *See* Acetylcholine
Acid(s), 37–38, 37*f*
  pH of, 37, 37*f*, 169
Acid-fast bacilli/rods, 64, 109, 109*f*
  in leprosy diagnosis, 566
Acid-fast stain, 64, 108–109, 109*f*, 111*t*, 328, 562, 562*f*
Acidic dyes, 107
Acidity. *See* pH
Acid mine drainage, 776–777, 777*f*
Acidophiles, pH range tolerated by, 38, 169
Acid rain, 38*b*
Acid-tolerant microbes, pH range tolerated by, 38, 169
Acinetobacter genus/spp., 597
Acne, 38, 538, 566–567, 567*f*
Acquired immunity, 487–488, 489*t*
  artificial, 487, 488, 489*t*. *See also* Immunization; Vaccines
    active/active immunization, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*, 502*f*. *See also* Immunization; Vaccines
    passive immunotherapy, 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
  natural, 487, 487–488, 489*t*
    active, 487, 489*t*
    passive, 488, 489*t*
Acquired immunodeficiency diseases, 531, 532–533. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 532–533, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*, 742*b*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
Acremonium genus/spp.
  antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 302*t*
  mycetoma caused by, 650*t*
Acridine, as frameshift mutagen, 220, 220*f*
Actin
  in cytokinesis, 348, 348*f*
  in eukaryotic cytoskeleton, 81, 81*f*
Actinobacteria (phylum), 320*f*, 328, 329*t*
Actinomyces genus/spp., 329*t*, 330, 568–569, 569*f*
Actinomyces israelii, 330
Actinomycetes, 329–330, 329*f*
  reproduction in, 317, 318*f*, 320
Actinomycin, mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 290
Actinomycosis, 569, 569*f*
Activated charcoal filters
  in wastewater treatment, 773
  in water treatment, 770, 770*f*
Activated sludge system, wastewater treatment and, 772*f*, 773
Activation energy, enzymes affecting, 128, 129*f*, 130
Active immunity
  artificially acquired/active immunization, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*, 502*f*. *See also* Immunization; Vaccines
  naturally acquired, 487, 489*t*
Active site
  chlorophyll, 148, 149*f*
  enzyme, 128–129, 128*f*, 129*f*
    inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
Active transport, 67, 70–71, 71*f*, 72*t*, 78, 79*f*, 79*t*
Acute anaphylaxis, 519
  antimicrobial drugs causing, 297
  food allergies causing, 520
  vaccines causing, 501
Acute disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis, 719
Acute inflammation, 454
ACV. *See* Acyclovir
Acyclovir, 292*f*, 293*f*, 306*t*
AD-36. *See* Adenovirus 36
Adaptation, microbial survival and, 775
Adaptive immunity, 439, 463–493
  acquired, 487–488, 489*t*
  antibody immune responses in, 483–487, 484*f*, 485*f*, 487*f*
  antigen processing in, 479–480, 479*f*, 480*f*
  cell-mediated responses in, 480–483, 481*f*, 482*b*, 483*f*
  defects in, 531
  elements of, 465–478. *See also specific element*
    antigens, 467–468, 468*f*
    B lymphocytes (B cells) and antibodies, 464, 468–473, 469*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*b*, 474*t*, 475*t*. *See also* Antibody immune responses; B lymphocytes
    clonal deletion, 475–476, 476*f*, 477*f*
    cytokines, 477–478, 477*t*
    lymphatic organs/tissues, 465–467, 466*f*
    T lymphocytes (T cells), 464, 473–475, 473*f*, 475*b*, 475*t*
  major histocompatibility complex in, 478, 478*f*, 479*f*
  overview of, 464–465, 464*f*
  preparation for, 478–480, 478*f*, 479*f*, 480*f*
ADCC. *See* Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity
Adefovir, 292*f*, 306*t*
Adenine (A), 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Adenosine, 292*f*
Adenosine arabinoside, 292*f*, 306*t*
Adenosine diphosphate. *See* ADP
Adenosine monophosphate. *See* AMP
Adenosine triphosphate. *See* ATP
Adenoviridae (adenoviruses), 385*t*, 690, 704–706, 705*b*, 705*f*, 706*b*, 710*t*
  common cold caused by, 704
  as genetic vectors, 241
Adenovirus 36, obesity and, 705, 705*b*
Adenylate cyclase toxin
  Bordetella pertussis pathogenicity and, 593
  Vibrio cholerae pathogenicity and, 623, 624*f*
Adherence, in phagocytosis, 446–447, 447*f*
Adhesins, 413
  Bordetella pertussis, 413, 593
  Enterobacteriaceae, 581, 581*f*
  Helicobacter pylori, 625, 626*b*
  Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 413
  Plasmodium, 413
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 595
  Streptococcus pneumoniae, 548, 548*b*
  Yersinia pestis, 588
Adhesion, 413, 413*f*, 414*f*. *See also* Attachment
Adhesion disks, 413
Adhesion factors, 413
Adipocytes, adenoviruses affecting, 705*b*
Adjuvants, for inactivated vaccines, 497
Administration route, antimicrobial drug, 296, 296*f*
Adoptive T cell therapy, 482*b*
ADP, 51, 51*f*, 157*f*
  in active transport, 71, 71*f*
  phosphorylation of, 127. *See also* Phosphorylation
    in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
    in chemiosmosis, 140, 141
    in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, A-6, A-7
    in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Adult acute T-cell lymphocytic leukemia, HTLV-1 causing, 729
Aedes mosquitoes, as disease vectors, 240*b*, 424*t*, 726*t*
  for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
  for chikungunya, 394*b*, 726*t*
  for dengue fever, 240*b*, 722, 724*b*, 724*f*, 726*t*
  recombinant DNA technology in control of, 240*b*
  for yellow fever, 16*b*, 726*t*
Aerobes/aerobic bacteria, 140, 141*b*, 166, 166*f*
  Gram-negative, 591–600
  obligate, 165, 166, 166*f*
Aerobic respiration, 140, 142*t*, 145*t*
Aerosols, airborne transmission of disease and, 422, 423*b*
Aerotolerant anaerobes, 166, 166*f*
  culturing, 178, 179*f*, 180
AFB. *See* Acid-fast bacilli
Aflatoxins, 652
  mutagenic/carcinogenic effects of, 220, 652
AFM. *See* Atomic force microscopy/microscopes
African sleeping sickness, 15*t*, 373, 663–664, 663*f*, 664*b*, 673*t*
AFRs (acid-fast rods). *See* Acid-fast bacilli
Agammaglobulinemia, Bruton-type, 531, 533*t*
Agar, 5, 175
  in algal cell wall, 5, 78, 78*f*, 369, 371*t*
  for cultures, 13–14, 174*f*, 175, 175*f*, 176, 176*f*, 177, 177*f*, 178, 178*f*, 179*f*
  nutrient, 176, 179*f*
Agaricus genus/spp., 364, 366*t*
Agarose, for gel electrophoresis, 244, 244*f*
Agglutination, antibody, 117, 117*f*, 470, 471*f*
  in blood typing/transfusion reactions, 505, 505*f*
  in serology, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
Agglutination tests, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
Aging
  in beer production, 760, 760*f*
  in wine and spirits production, 759, 759*f*
Agranulocytes, 445, 445*f*
Agranulocytosis, 523

Agricultural crops. *See also* Agricultural microbiology
  in alternative fuel production, 766
  biological threats to (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
    assessing, 784
    defense against, 785–786
  Burkholderia in protection of, 595
  genetically altered, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
    ethical/safety issues and, 253
Agricultural microbiology, 19*t*, 767, 768*t*
  crop threats (agroterrorism) and, 783, 784–785, 785*t*
    assessing, 784
    defense against, 785–786
  microbes in waste treatment and, 773
  recombinant DNA technology in, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
    Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
    ethical/safety issues and, 253
Agrobacterium genus/spp., 331, 332*f*, 339*t*
  conjugation in, 229
Agrobacterium gene, glyphosate tolerance and, 251
Agrobacterium tumefaciens
  chromosomes of, 196
  soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Agroterrorism, 783, 784–785, 785*t*. *See also* Bioterrorism
  assessing threat potential and, 784
  defense against, 785–786
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), 532–533, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*, 742*b*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
AIDS "cocktail," 715, 730*b*, 735
  drug resistance and, 735
AIDS virus. *See* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
Airborne transmission of disease, 422, 423*b*, 425*t*
Akinetes, of cyanobacteria, 323, 324*f*
Albendazole, 308*t*, 309*f*
Alcaligenes faecalis, culture of, 178*f*
Alcanivorax genus/spp., in bioremediation, 776*b*
Alcohol(s). *See also* Ethanol
  antimicrobial actions of, 272–273, 277*t*
Alcoholic beverages, microbial production of, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 13*t*, 145*f*, 758–760, 759*f*, 760*f*, 760*t*
Aldehydes, antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
Aldolase
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in glycolysis, A-6
Algae, 5, 6*f*, 367–371, 368*f*, 369*f*, 370*f*, 371*t*
  beneficial/industrial uses of, 5, 13*t*
  blue-green. *See* Cyanobacteria
  brown, 370, 370*f*, 371*t*
  cell walls of, 5, 78, 78*f*, 369, 371*t*
  classification of, 5, 349, 349*f*, 368–371, 371*t*
  cytokinesis in, 348, 348*f*
  distribution of, 367
  golden, 370–371, 371*t*
  green, 368–369, 371*t*
  hydrocarbons produced by, 766
  in lichens, 364, 366*f*
  morphology of, 367
  photosynthesis by, 5, 6*f*, 369
  red, 367, 369–370, 369*f*, 371*t*
  reproduction of, 367–368, 368*f*
  in soil, 781
  viruses killing, 382*b*
  yellow-green, 370–371, 371*t*
Algal blooms, 780
  intoxications caused by, 354, 768
  viruses affecting, 382*b*
Alginic acid/alginate/algin, in algal cell wall, 78, 370, 371*t*
Alkalinophiles, pH range tolerated by, 170
Alkalis. *See* Base(s) (chemical)
Allergens, 516, 518*f*
  avoidance of, 519–520
  fungal, 652, 652–653
  inhaled, 518
  sensitization upon initial exposure to, 516–517, 516*b*, 517*f*
  testing for, 519, 519*f*
Allergic contact dermatitis, 526–527, 527*f*
Allergic reactions/allergies, 516, 516–520, 516*b*, 517*f*, 518*f*, 518*t*, 519*f*, 520*b*, 529*b*
  to antimicrobial drugs, 297
    penicillin, 297, 467
  aspergillus causing, 644, 644*b*, 645
  clinical signs of
    in localized reaction, 518–519, 518*f*, 519*f*
    in systemic reactions, 519
  degranulation/degranulating cells in, 517, 517–518, 517*f*, 518*t*
  diagnosis of, 519, 519*f*
  to food, 520, 520*b*
  to fungi, 634, 652, 652–653, 653*b*
  initial exposure/sensitization and, 516–517, 516*b*, 517*f*
  poison ivy as, 515, 526, 527*f*
  prevention of, 519–520, 520*b*
  transgenic organisms and, 253
  treatment of, 520
  vaccines causing, 497, 499, 501
"Allergy shots," 520
Allicin, in garlic, food preservation and, 763
Allografts, 527, 527*f*
Allosteric (excitatory) activation, 132, 132*f*
Allosteric inhibition
  feedback, 132–133, 133*f*
  noncompetitive, 132, 132*f*
Allosteric site, 132, 132*f*
Allylamines, 307*t*
  mechanism of action of, 289, 307*t*
Alpha-amanitin, 652
Alpha(α)-carbon, amino acid, 46, 46*f*
Alpha F_c region/heavy chains, 469, 473, 474*t*
Alpha (α)-helices, 47, 48*f*
  in cellular PrP, 399, 399*f*
Alphahemolysis, by *Streptococcus pneumoniae,* 177, 178*f*, 548
Alpha-hemolytic streptococci (viridans group), 547, 547*f*
Alpha (α)-interferon, 449–450, 450*f*, 451*t*
Alpha (α)-ketoglutaric acid, 153*t*
  in Krebs cycle, 137*f*, A-10
  in transamination, 155*f*
Alphaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 325*t*, 330–332, 330*f*, 331*f*, 332*f*, 333*b*, 339*t*, 591, 607
  pathogenic, 331
Alphaviruses, 385*t*, 750*t*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
ALS. *See* Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
Alternaria genus/spp., phaeohyphomycosis caused by, 650*t*
Alternation of generations, 368, 368*f*
Alternative fuels, microbial production of, 766–767, 766*f*, 768*t*
Alternative pathway of complement activation, 451, 451*f*, 453–454
Alveolar macrophages, 445
Alveolata (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 367, 371*t*
Alveolates, 353–354, 353*f*, 354*f*, 358*t*
Alveoli, of protozoa, 353, 353*f*
Alzheimer's disease, BMAA/cyanobacteria and, 325*b*
Amanita genus/spp., 364, 365*f*, 366*t*, 652, 652*f*
Amanitin, alpha, 652
Amantadine, 306*t*
  mechanism of action of, 291, 306*t*
Amastigotes
  in *Leishmania* life cycle, 664, 665, 665*f*
  in *Trypanosoma cruzi* life cycle, 662, 662*f*
Amblyomma (Lone Star) ticks, as disease vector
  for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610, 611*t*
  for *Rickettsia parkeri* infection, 609*b*
Ambrosia trifida (ragweed), 518
Amebae. *See* Amoebae
Amebiasis, 660–661, 673*t*
Amebic dysentery, 355, 660, 673*t*
  waterborne transmission of, 660, 769*t*
Amebic encephalitis, *Acanthamoeba* causing, 661, 673*t*
Amebic meningoencephalitis, *Naegleria* causing, 661, 673*t*
Ames test, 223–224, 224*f*
Amination, 155, 155*f*
Amino acids, 46, 46*f*
  amination of, 155, 155*f*
  biosynthesis of, 154–155, 155*f*, 157*f*
  deamination of, 147, 147*f*
  essential, 154
  for microbial growth, 167*t*
  microbial production of, 765–766, 768*t*
  peptide bonds linking, 46–47, 47*f*
  in protein catabolism, 147, 147*f*, 148*b*, 157*f*
  sequence of (primary structure of protein), 47, 48*f*
  in sulfur cycle, 779, 779*f*
  transamination of, 155, 155*f*
Aminoglycosides, 303*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 289*f*, 303*t*
  toxicity of, 297, 303*t*
Amino group, 39, 40*t*
  in amino acids, 46, 46*f*
Ammonia, 37
  in amino acid biosynthesis, 155, 155*f*, 157*f*
  with chlorine (chloramine)
    antimicrobial action of, 274
    phenol coefficient of, 277
  nitrogen fixation producing, 778, 779, 779*f*
  wastewater treatment producing, 773
Ammonification, 779, 779*f*
Ammonium/ammonium ion, 37, 779, 779*f*
  in detergents, 274, 274*f*
Ammonium oxidation, anaerobic (anammox), in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
Amoebae, 355, 355–357, 355*f*, 356*f*, 660–661, 661*f*, 673*t*
  amebiasis caused by, 660–661, 673*t*
  in Amoebozoa, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
  free-living, 355, 358*t*
    meningoencephalopathy caused by, 661
  isolation of, 175
  in Rhizaria, 355, 355*f*, 358*t*
Amoeboid action, 78
Amoebozoa (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
AMP, 51, 51*f*
  cyclic (cAMP), in lactose *(lac)* operon regulation, 214, 215*f*
Amphibolic reactions, 152
Amphotericin B, 290*f*, 307*t*, 635
  mechanism of action of, 289, 290*f*, 307*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 307*t*
Ampicillin, 302*t*
Amplifying hosts, for *Yersinia pestis,* 588, 588*f*
Amycolatopsis orientalis, antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 288, 303*t*
Amycolatopsis rifamycinia, antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 305*t*
Amylase, microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
Amylose, 43, 45*f*
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, BMAA/cyanobacteria and, 325*b*
Anabaena genus/spp., 324*f*
Anabolism/anabolic pathways, 35, 125, 125*f*, 126, 152–153, 157*f*
  amino acid biosynthesis, 154–155, 155*f*, 157*f*
  carbohydrate biosynthesis, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
  integration and regulation of, 155–156, 157*f*
  lipid biosynthesis, 153–154, 154*f*, 157*f*
  nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
  photosynthesis, 148–152, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151*t*, 152*f*, 157*f*
Anaerobes/anaerobic bacteria, 140, 163, 166, 166*f*
  aerotolerant, 166, 166*f*
  culturing, 178–179, 179*f*, 180
  facultative, 166, 166*f*
    glycolytic, 334, 335*t*, 339*t*
    Gram-negative bacilli, 578–591
    yeasts, 11, 12*f*, 360

in fermentation, 11, 12*f*
obligate, 165, 166, 166*f*
Anaerobic ammonium oxidation (anammox), in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
Anaerobic glove box, 178–179
Anaerobic media, 178–179, 179*f*
Anaerobic respiration, 140, 145*t*
Analytical epidemiology, 428–430
Anammox (anaerobic ammonium oxidation), in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
Anamorph, 633
Anaphase, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Anaphylaxis/anaphylactic shock, 519
antimicrobial drugs causing, 297
food allergies causing, 520
vaccines causing, 501
Anaplasma genus/spp., 610, 610*f*
Anaplasmosis, 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*, 611*t*
Ancylostoma duodenale, 680–681, 683*t*
Anemia, hemolytic, 523
autoimmune, 530
Angiogenesis, *Bartonella henselae* in, 593*b*
Angiomatosis, bacillary, 591
Animal bites, *Pasteurella* infecting, 590
Animal cultures, 180
viral, 180, 397
Animal feed (silage), fermentation in production of, 757–758, 761*t*
Animalia (kingdom), 113, 114*f*, 349*f*
Animal pathogens, bioterrorism and, 784
assessing threat to livestock/poultry and, 784
Animal reservoirs, 410–411, 410*t*
Animal viruses, 380
latency of, 395, 395*t*
replication of, 389–395, 390*b*, 391*f*, 393*f*, 393*t*, 394*b*, 394*f*, 395*t*
assembly and release in, 392–395, 393*f*, 394*f*, 395*t*
attachment in, 391, 395*t*
antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
entry and uncoating in, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
persistent infection and, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
synthesis in, 391–392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
Animal wastes, oxidation lagoons in treatment of, 773
Anions, 33, 37, 37*f*, 107. *See also* Electrolytes
Anisakids, raw fish in transmission of, 269*b*
Anopheles mosquitoes, as disease vectors, 424*t*
for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
for filariasis *(Wuchereria bancrofti),* 681, 682
for malaria (*Plasmodium* species), 668, 670, 673*t*
Anoxygenic organisms
green and purple bacteria as, 324, 325*t*
noncyclic photophosphorylation in, 151
Antacids, bacteria in stomach affected by, 38, 39*b*
Antagonism, microbial, 170, 300. *See also* Competition, microbial
adaptation/survival and, 775
in innate immunity, 442
lactobacilli and, 327
opportunistic infections/superinfections and, 294, 297, 409, 430–431
Anthrax, 327, 410*t*, 551–552, 551*f*. *See also Bacillus anthracis*
bioterrorism and, 8*b*, 253, 327, 551, 785*t*
cutaneous, 327, 551, 781
discovery of cause of, 13
gastrointestinal, 551
immunization against, 500*t*
inhalation, 327, 551, 717*t*, 781
safe handling of bacteria causing, 263
soilborne transmission of, 781, 781*t*
toxins, 551
vaccine against, 500*t*, 552
Anti-A antibodies, blood typing/transfusion reactions and, 505, 505*f*, 522*t*
Anti-antibodies
in ELISAs, 507, 508*f*
in fluorescent antibody tests, 507, 507*f*
in immunochromatographic assays, 510, 510*f*
Antibacterial drugs, 302–305*t*. *See also* Antibiotics
mechanisms of action of, 286–293, 286*f*, 302–305*t*
Antibacterial soap, 278*b*
Anti-B antibodies, blood typing/transfusion reactions and, 505, 505*f*, 522*t*
Antibiotics, 276, 277*t*, 285, 285*t*, 302–305*t*. *See also specific drug and* Antimicrobial agents
adverse/side effects of, 284*b*, 296–297, 297*f*
discovery of, 20–21, 21*f*
mechanisms of action of, 286–293, 286*f*, 302–305*t*
microbial production of, 13*t*, 285, 285*b*, 285*t*
normal microbiota/opportunistic infection and, 284*b*, 294, 297, 298*b*, 409, 430–431
resistance to. *See* Resistance
spectrum of action of, 293–294, 293*f*, 302–305*t*
Antibodies, 46, 444, 465. *See also* Immunoglobulin(s)
antitoxins as, 418
binding of, 469–470
classes of, 471–473, 474*t*
deficient, 531–532, 533*t*
diagnostic uses and, 495. *See also* Antibody tests
fluorescent dye linked to, 102, 102*f*, 507
for antibody testing, 506–507, 507*f*
for confocal microscopy, 102, 104*b*
for fluorescence microscopy, 102, 102*f*
function of, 469–471, 471*f*
in immune response. *See* Antibody immune responses
labeled, in serology, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*
monoclonal
in fluorescent antibody tests, 507
immunosuppressive actions of, 529, 529*t*
in passive immunotherapy, 502, 502*f*
in passive immunotherapy, 488, 489*t*, 494, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
phagocytosis and, 447
plasma cell secretion of, 469, 483–484, 484*f*, 486
quantifying, titration for, 505, 505*f*
structure of, 468, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*
Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), 470–471, 471*f*
Antibody immune responses, 483–487, 484*f*, 485*f*, 487*f*
T-dependent, 484–486, 485*f*
T-independent, 483–484, 484*f*
Antibody tests, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 495, 503–510, 511*t*
agglutination tests, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
complement fixation test, 506, 511*t*
labeled antibody tests, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*
nephelometric tests, 504
neutralization tests, 505–506, 511*t*
point-of-care testing and, 510, 510*f*, 511*t*
precipitation tests, 503–504, 503*f*, 504*f*, 511*t*
sandwich ELISA, 508, 509*f*
turbidimetric tests, 504
Antibody titers, 505, 505*f*
booster immunization and, 496
Anticodons, 210, 210*f*
Antifungal drugs, 293*f*, 307*t*, 632, 635
cell walls affected by, 286, 286*f*, 288, 635
cytoplasmic membranes affected by, 286*f*, 289, 290*f*, 307*t*
Antigen(s), 467–468, 468*f*
B cell receptors recognizing, 469, 472*b*
blood group, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*
dye-tagged antibodies binding to
for fluorescence microscopy, 102, 102*f*
in serology, 506–507, 507*f*
of Enterobacteriaceae, 580, 581*f*
environmental, in type I hypersensitivity, 516, 516*b*
presentation of, 478, 478*f*, 479*f*. *See also* Antigen-presenting cells
in antibody immune responses, 484, 484–486, 485*f*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
processing of, 479–480, 479*f*, 480*f*
self (autoantigens), 467–468, 468*f*
autoimmunity and, 476, 530
graft rejection and, 478, 527
tolerance to, 464, 467–468. *See also* Self-tolerance
clonal deletion and, 475–476, 476*f*, 477*f*
serological tests and, 117, 117*f*
T-dependent, 484, 485*f*
processing of, 479–480, 479*f*, 480*f*
T-independent, 483, 484*f*
in vaccines, recombinant DNA technology in introduction of, 249–250, 251*b*, 497, 498*f*
Antigen-antibody complexes, 503, 524, 524*f*
in glomerulonephritis, 525, 545
in hypersensitivity pneumonitis, 524
in rheumatoid arthritis, 525
in systemic lupus erythematosus, 525
Antigen-antibody reactions
in serology, 117, 117*f*, 503–510, 511*t*. *See also* Serology
in taxonomy/microbial classification, 117, 117*f*
Antigen-binding groove, on MHC molecules, 478, 478*f*
Antigen-binding site
immunoglobulin/B cell receptor/antibody, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*
on MHC molecules, 478, 478*f*
T cell receptor, 473, 473*f*
Antigenic determinants (epitopes), 467, 468*f*
antibody binding to, 469–470
antigen-binding site complementarity and, 469, 469*f*
clonal deletion of T cells and, 476, 476*f*
MHC proteins and, 478
Antigenic drift, influenzavirus, 744–745, 744*f*, 745*b*
Antigenic shift, influenzavirus, 744*f*, 745, 745*b*
Antigen-presenting cells (APCs), 478, 478*f*, 479*f*, 481, 481*f*, 484–486, 485*f*
MHC proteins and, 478
Antigen tests, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 495, 503–510, 511*t*
agglutination tests, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
complement fixation test, 506, 511*t*
labeled antibody tests, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*
nephelometric tests, 504
neutralization tests, 505–506, 511*t*
point-of-care testing and, 510, 510*f*, 511*t*
precipitation tests, 503–504, 503*f*, 504*f*, 511*t*
turbidimetric tests, 504
Antigen wells
in enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 507, 508*f*
in immunodiffusion, 504
Antihelminthic drugs, 293*f*, 308*t*
Antihistamines, for type I hypersensitivity, 520
Antilymphocyte globulin, 529, 529*t*
Antimalarial drugs, 310*t*, 670, 670*b*
Antimicrobial agents/antimicrobials, 276, 277*t*, 283–314, 302–310*t*
allergies to, 297
antihelminthic, 308*t*
antiprotozoan, 309*t*, 310*t*
attachment affected by, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
biofilm prevention/disruption and, 171–172
candidiasis and, 294, 297
cell wall and, 64, 66, 261, 286, 286*f*, 287–288, 287*f*, 302–303*t*, 635
clinical considerations in prescribing, 293–297, 293*f*
combination therapy with, resistance and, 300, 301*f*
cytoplasmic membranes affected by, 261, 286, 286*f*, 289–290, 290*f*, 304*t*, 307*t*
discovery/history of, 20–21, 21*f*, 284–285, 284*f*, 285*b*, 285*t*
distribution of, 296
efficacy of, 294
evaluation of, 176–178
indiscriminate use of, 278, 278*b*, 301
mechanisms of action of, 261, 286–293, 286*f*, 302–310*t*
metabolic pathways affected by, 286, 286*f*, 290–291, 291*f*, 305*t*, 308*t*, 309*t*, 310*t*

Antimicrobial agents/antimicrobials (*Continued*)
microbial production/sources of, 13*t*, 285, 285*b*, 285*t*, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
new drug development and, 301
normal microbiota affected by, 284*b*, 297, 298*b*
probiotics and, 298*b*
nucleic acids affected by, 261, 286, 286*f*, 291–293, 292*f*, 305*t*, 308*t*
protein synthesis affected by, 261, 286, 286*f*, 288–289, 289*f*, 303–304*t*, 307*t*, 308–309*t*
resistance to, 278, 278*b*, 297–301, 298*b*, 299*f*, 300, 301*b*, 301*f*, 302–310*t*. *See also* Resistance
probiotics and, 298*b*
ribosomes and, 74, 210–211
routes of administration of, 296, 296*f*
safety/side effects/toxicity of, 284*b*, 296–297, 297*f*
selective toxicity and, 286, 297
semisynthetic, 276, 277*t*, 285, 285*t*
spectrum of action of, 293–294, 293*f*, 302–310*t*
synthetic, 276, 277*t*, 285
Antimicrobial-associated diarrhea (*C. difficile* pseudomembranous colitis), 297, 326, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
Antimicrobial chemoprophylaxis
for malaria, 670
for meningococcal infection, 578
for ophthalmia neonatorum, 275, 577
Antimicrobial enzymes, 276, 277*t*
Antimicrobial methods. *See also specific type and* Antimicrobial agents
action of, 261
chemical, 271–278, 277*t*
desiccation, 267, 267*f*, 271*t*
food preservation and, 762
efficacy of
evaluation of, 276–278
factors affecting, 261–263, 262*f*
filtration, 268–269, 268*f*, 268*t*, 269*f*, 271*t*
heat-related, 264–267, 264*f*, 265*f*, 266*f*, 267*t*, 271*t*
lyophilization, 267, 271*t*
food preservation and, 763
microbial death rates and, 260–261, 260*f*
microbial susceptibility and, 262, 262*f*
osmotic pressure, 269–270, 271*t*
physical, 264–271, 271*t*
principles of use of, 259–261, 260*f*, 260*t*
radiation, 270–271, 270*f*, 271*t*
food preservation and, 763
refrigeration/freezing, 267, 269*b*, 271*t*
food preservation and, 763–764
resistance and, 278, 278*b*. *See also* Resistance
selection of, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*b*, 264*f*
terminology used in, 259–260, 260*t*
treatment site and, 261–262
Antimicrobial peptides (defensins), 440, 443, 458*t*
Antimony, antimicrobial action of, 290
Antioxidants, 165–166, 166*f*
Antiparallel strands, DNA, 50, 194, 195*f*
Antiparasitic drugs, cytoplasmic membrane affected by, 290
Antiphagocytic chemicals/factors, 419*f*, 420
group A streptococcal pathogenicity and, 544
Pseudomonas aeruginosa pathogenicity and, 596
staphylococcal pathogenicity and, 540
Antiports, 71, 71*f*
Antiprotozoan drugs, 293*f*, 308–310*t*
Antiretroviral therapy (ART), 730*b*, 735
during pregnancy, 735
Anti-Rh antibodies, in hemolytic disease of newborns, 522
Antisense nucleic acids, 239
as antimicrobials, 286*f*, 289, 289*f*, 307*t*
Antisense RNA, yield/nutritional value of food and, 252
Antisepsis/antiseptics, 17, 18*f*, 259, 260*t*. *See also* Hygiene
chemical agents used for, 271–278, 277*t*
evaluation of efficacy of, 276–278
resistance and, 278, 278*b*
Antiserum (antisera), 117, 502
passive immunotherapy and, 488, 489*t*, 502
serologic tests and, 117
Antithamnion genus/spp., 371*t*
Antitoxins, 418
botulism, 501, 555, 555*b*
diphtheria, 561
passive immunotherapy and, 488, 489*t*, 501–503
Antivenom (antivenin), 501
Antiviral drugs, 293*f*, 306–307*t*
attachment affected by, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
nucleic acid synthesis affected by, 292, 292*f*, 306*t*
nucleotide/nucleoside analogs as, 292, 292*f*, 306*t*
protein synthesis affected by, 307*t*
viral metabolism affected by, 290–291
viral proteins inhibited by, 307*t*
Antiviral proteins (AVPs), 450, 450*f*
APCs. *See* Antigen-presenting cells
Apicomplexans, 354, 358*t*, 668–673, 673*t*
Apoenzymes, 128, 128*f*
Apoptosis
in ADCC, 471, 471*f*
NOD proteins in, 449
in self-tolerance/clonal deletion, 476, 476*f*, 477*f*
suppression of, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 700
TLRs/PAMPs in, 449
Applied microbiology, 19*t*, 756, 757–774
food microbiology, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757, 757–764
industrial microbiology/biotechnology, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Recombinant DNA technology
Aquarius remigis, 36*f*
Aquatic microbiology, 782–783, 782*f*
aquatic habitats and, 782–783, 782*f*
waterborne illnesses and, 768, 769*b*, 769*t*
water pollution and, 768, 769
Aquifex genus/spp., 323
Aquificae (phylum), 320*f*
Arachnida/arachnid vectors, 372, 373*f*, 682
Arachnoidiscus, 105*f*
Arboviruses, 722, 726*t*
bunyaviruses, 726*t*, 747, 747*f*, 750*t*
coltiviruses, 385*t*, 749, 750*t*
diagnosis/treatment/prevention of infection caused by, 725
encephalitis caused by, 722, 723*f*. *See also specific type*
immunization against, 725
reoviruses, 385*t*, 726*t*, 748–749
togaviruses and flaviviruses, 721–725, 721*f*, 723*f*, 724*b*, 724*f*, 725*f*, 726*t*, 750*t*
transmission of, 722, 723*f*
Archaea, 3–4, 4*f*, 57, 77*t*, 87*t*, 315, 320–322, 320*f*, 321*f*, 322*f*. *See also specific type*
cell walls of, 3, 76, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
chromosomes of, 87*t*, 194–196, 198*t*
classification of, 114*f*, 115, 319, 320–321, 320*f*
nucleotide sequencing and, 115, 321
cytoplasmic membranes of, 76–77, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
cytoplasm of, 77
as domain, 57, 114*f*, 115, 319, 320*f*
external structure of, 75–76
genomes of, 195, 198*t*
glycocalyces of, 75, 77*t*, 87*t*
life processes in, 56*t*
shapes of, 76, 76*f*
in soil, 781
temperature range of. *See* Thermophiles
translation in, 213
Arenaviridae (arenaviruses), 385*t*, 720*t*, 742, 747–748, 748*f*, 750*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Arildone, 306*t*
spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 306*t*
virus attachment affected by, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
Aristotle, spontaneous generation theory of, 8
Arithmetic growth, 181–182, 181*f*, 183*f*
Armillaria genus/spp., 344, 358
Arsenic, antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*, 284, 290, 309*f*
ART. *See* Antiretroviral therapy
Artemisinin, 309*f*
Arteriosclerosis, *Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae* causing, 430, 614
Arthritis
in Lyme disease, 620
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 613
rheumatoid, 525, 525*f*, 531
Arthrobacter genus/spp., 320*f*
Arthrobotrys genus/spp., 359*f*
Arthroconidia, of *Coccidioides immitis*, 639
Arthropod-borne viruses. *See* Arboviruses
Arthropod vectors, 372–373, 373*f*, 423–424, 424*t*, 658, 682
arbovirus diseases transmitted by, 721–722, 722, 723*f*
bunyavirus diseases transmitted by, 726*t*, 747
public health measures in control of, 433
rickettsial diseases transmitted by, 607
Artifacts, in transmission electron micrographs, 103
Artificially acquired active immunity/active immunization, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*, 502*f*. *See also* Immunization; Vaccines
Artificially acquired passive immunotherapy, 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
Artificial sweetener, microbial production of, 13*t*
Artificial wetlands, in wastewater treatment, 773–774, 774*f*
Ascariasis, 680, 680*f*, 683*t*
Ascaris lumbricoides, 680, 680*f*, 683*t*
Asci, 362, 362*f*, 363, 363*f*
Ascocarps, 362, 362*f*
Ascomycetes, 632*f*
Ascomycota (division)/ascomycetes, 361, 362–364, 362*f*, 363*f*, 366*t*, 367*b*, 633
chromoblastomycosis caused by, 650, 651*t*
in lichens, 364, 366*f*
mycetomas caused by, 650*t*, 651
phaeohyphomycosis caused by, 650, 650*f*, 650*t*
reproduction in, 362–363, 363*f*
sporotrichosis caused by, 650*t*, 651
Ascospores, 362, 363, 363*f*, 366*t*
Ascus (asci), 362, 362*f*, 363, 363*f*
Aseptate hyphae, 358, 359*f*
Aseptic/aseptic technique, 174, 259, 260*t*
Aseptic packaging, in food preservation, 259, 763
Asexual reproduction, 57
in algae, 367, 368
in eukaryotes, 345
in fungi, 360, 360*f*
ascomycetes, 362, 363*f*
zygomycetes, 361, 362*f*
in prokaryotes, 317, 317*f*, 318*f*
in protozoa, 351
Asexual spores, 4, 360, 360*f*. *See also* Spores
A site, ribosomal, 211, 211*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289*f*
Aspartic acid
in amination and transamination, 155, 155*f*
in nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*
Aspergilloma, 644, 644*b*, 645*f*
Aspergillosis, 369*b*, 644–645, 644*b*, 645*f*
Aspergillus genus/spp., 364, 369*b*, 518*f*, 633, 644–645, 644*b*, 645*f*, 647
aflatoxins produced by, 652
mutagenic/carcinogenic effects of, 220, 652
fermentation products of, 145*f*
Aspergillus oryzae
in amylase production, 765
fermentation products of, 761*t*
in sake production, 760
in vegetable fermentation, 757, 761*t*
Aspirin, Reye's syndrome and, 698, 746
Assembly
in animal virus replication, 392, 393*f*, 395*t*
in bacteriophage replication, 386, 387*f*, 395*t*
in HIV replication, 731*f*, 732, 733

Asthma, 518–519
  aspergillosis causing, 644
Astroviridae (astroviruses), 385*t*, 716, 721, 721*f*, 750*t*
Asymptomatic infection/disease, 414, 425*t*
Asymptomatic polio, 718. *See also* Poliomyelitis
Atherosclerosis, *Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae* infection and, 430, 614
Athlete(s), herpes infection in, 695
Athlete's foot (tinea pedis), 632, 648*t*, 649*b*
Atom(s), 27–29, 27*f*, 28*f*, 28*t*, 29*f*, 30*f*
  electronegativity of, 30, 32*f*
Atomic force microscopy/microscopes, 105, 105*f*, 106*t*
  resolving power of, 97*f*
Atomic mass/atomic weight, 27, 28*t*
Atomic number, 27, 28*t*
Atomic structure, 27, 27*f*
Atopobium genus/spp., 320*f*
Atovaquone, 309*f*
  for malaria prophylaxis, 670
  mechanism of action of, 290, 309*f*
ATP, 51, 51*f*, 125, 157*f*
  in active transport, 70, 71, 71*f*
  anabolic pathways requiring, 125, 125*f*, 127, 152, 157*f*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152, 152*f*, 157*f*, A-11
  catabolic pathways producing, 125, 125*f*, 126, 127, 133, 134*f*, 157*f*
  in cellular respiration, 133, 134, 134*f*
  in chemiosmosis, 140–141
  in electron transport chain, 134*f*, 138, 138*f*, 139*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*
  energy storage/release and, 51, 51*f*, 125, 125*f*, 126, 127
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, 142, 144*f*
  in fermentation, 133, 134*f*, 145
  in glycolysis, 133, 134, 134*f*, 135*f*, 142*t*, A-6, A-7
  in Krebs cycle, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-10
  in lipid catabolism, 146, 146*f*
  mitochondrial production of, 86
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 142, 143*f*
  in photophosphorylation/photosynthesis, 148, 149, 150*f*, 151, 157*f*
ATP synthases (ATPases), 141
  in active transport, 71
  in electron transport chain, 139*f*
  in photophosphorylation/photosynthesis, 149, 150*f*
Attachment, 386, 413, 413*f*, 414*f*. *See also specific organism*
  in animal virus replication, 391, 395*t*
  antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
  in bacteriophage replication, 226, 386, 387*f*, 395*t*
  in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
Attachment antagonists, 293, 306*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
Attachment fimbriae. *See* Fimbriae
Attachment proteins, 386, 413
  rabies virus, 739
Attenuated (live) vaccines, 496–497
  recombinant, 497, 498*f*
  residual virulence and, 497, 501
  safety of, 497, 501
Attenuation, in vaccine preparation, 496–497, 497, 498*f*
Atypical pneumonia, primary, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* causing, 453*b*, 560
Auramine O dye, 101
Aureobasidum genus/spp., asexual spores of, 360*f*
Autism, vaccination and, 501
Autoantibodies, 530
  to blood cells, 530
  in connective tissue disease, 531
  endocrine disorders and, 530, 531
  molecular mimicry and, 530
  in rheumatoid arthritis, 531
  in systemic lupus erythematosus, 525–526
Autoantigens (self-antigens), 467–468, 468*f*
  autoimmunity and, 476, 530
  graft rejection and, 478, 527
  tolerance to, 464, 467–468. *See also* Self-tolerance
    clonal deletion and, 475–476, 476*f*, 477*f*
Autoclave/autoclaving, in microbial control, 265–266, 265*f*, 271*t*
Autograft, 527, 527*f*
Autoimmune diseases, 476, 516, 529–531. *See also specific type*
Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, 530
Autoimmunity, 529. *See also* Autoimmune diseases
Autoinoculation, in papillomavirus infections, 702
Autotrophs, 164, 165*f*
  in carbon cycle, 777–778, 778*f*
  in nitrogen cycle, 779
  in sulfur cycle, 779
Auxotroph, identification of, 222–223, 223*f*
Avery, Oswald, 19, 226
Avian influenza, 390*b*
Avirulent organisms, 413
  attenuation for vaccines and, 497
    recombinant DNA technology in production of, 497, 498*f*
Avoidance therapy, allergies and, 519–520
AVPs. *See* Antiviral proteins
Axenic culture, 174. *See also* Pure culture
Axenic environment, 407
  defense mechanisms affected by, 442
Axial filament, 61, 61*f*, 338, 615, 620*b*
Azathioprine, 528, 529*t*
Azidothymidine (AZT/zidovudine), 292*f*, 306*t*
  mechanism of action of, 292, 306*t*
Azithromycin, 303*t*, 453*b*
Azoles, 307*t*, 635
  mechanism of action of, 289, 307*t*, 635
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 307*t*
Azomonas genus/spp., 334, 339*t*
Azospirillum genus/spp., 330–331, 339*t*
Azotobacter genus/spp., 334, 339*t*
  nitrogen fixation by, 334, 779
  PHB granules in, 72*f*
AZT. *See* Azidothymidine
Aztreonam, 302*t*

B19 virus, 709, 709*f*
  transplacental transmission of, 413*t*
Babesia microti, 672*b*
Babesiosis, 672*b*
Bacillariophyceae (diatoms), 5, 6*f*, 370–371, 370*f*, 371*t*
Bacillary angiomatosis, 591
Bacillary peliosis hepatis, 591
Bacilli (bacillus), 316, 316*f*, 320*f*, 329*t*
  arrangements of, 64, 64*f*, 318–319, 319*f*
  gram-negative. *See also specific agent*
    aerobic, 591–600
    anaerobic, 600–601
    facultatively anaerobic, 578–591
Bacillus genus/spp., 116, 320*f*, 326, 326–327, 329*t*, 550–552, 551*f*
  antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 290, 304*t*, 327
  beneficial, 327, 327*b*, 327*f*
  endospores of, 72, 109, 110*f*, 316, 316*f*, 326, 550, 551
    as sterilization indicator, 266
    susceptibility and, 262
  food contaminated by, canning and, 762
  nitrogen fixation by, 140, 779
  shape of organisms in, 319, 319*f*
Bacillus anthracis, 327, 410*t*, 550–552, 551*f*. *See also* Anthrax
  bioterrorism and, 253, 327, 551, 785*t*
  fluorescein isothiocyanate dye staining of, 101
  fluorescent phages in identification of, 112*b*
  immunization against, 500*t*, 552
  safe handling of, 263
  Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain of, 109–110, 110*f*
  soilborne transmission of, 781, 781*t*
Bacillus of Calmette and Guerin (BCG) vaccine, 500*t*
  for leprosy, 500*t*, 566
  for tuberculosis, 500*t*, 565
Bacillus cereus, 109*f*, 319*f*
Bacillus licheniformis
  antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 302*t*, 327
  binary fission in, 181*f*
Bacillus polymyxa, antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 290, 304*t*, 327
Bacillus stearothermophilus, as sterilization indicator, 266
Bacillus subtilis, cytoskeleton of, 75*f*
Bacillus thuringiensis, Bt toxin produced by, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767
Bacitracin, 288, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 302*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 302*t*, 327
Bacteremia. *See also* Septicemia
  Bacteroides fragilis causing, 601
  Enterobacteriaceae causing, 590*f*
  in leptospirosis, 622
  Listeria causing, 327
  meningococcal, 578, 578*f*
  pneumococcal, 549
  Salmonella causing, 586, 586*f*
  staphylococcal, 542
Bacteria, 3–4, 4*f*, 57, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320*f*, 322–338, 339*t*. *See also specific type*
  acid-fast, 64
  antimicrobials produced by, 13*t*, 285, 285*b*, 285*t*
  beneficial/industrial uses of, 4, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Applied microbiology; Beneficial microbes; Industrial microbiology
  cell walls of, 3, 63–66, 64*f*, 65*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    antimicrobials and, 64, 66, 286, 286*f*, 287–288, 287*f*, 302–303*t*
    peptidoglycan in, 3, 43, 64, 64*f*, 65*f*, 287, 287*f*
  chromosomes of, 72, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
  classification/identification of, 3–4, 112, 114*f*, 115–119, 319, 320*f*. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
    biochemical tests in, 116–117, 116*f*, 117*f*
    nucleotide sequencing and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*
    phage typing in, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
    physical characteristics and, 116
    serological tests and, 117, 117*f*
  colony formation by, 13–14, 14*f*, 164, 172, 173*f*
  conjugation in, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
  culturing viruses in, 397, 397*f*. *See also* Bacteriophage(s)
  cytoplasmic membranes of, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 290, 304*t*
  cytoplasm of, 71–75, 72*f*, 73*b*, 74*f*, 75*f*, 77*t*
  deeply branching, 320*f*, 323
  discovery of, 3, 3*f*
  DNA in, 72, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
    replication and, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*
  as domain, 57, 114*f*, 115, 319, 320*f*
  endospores of. *See* Endospores
  enteric. *See* Enterobacteriaceae
  external structure of, 59–66
  in fermentation, 11, 12*f*
  fimbriae/pili of, 62–63, 62*f*, 63*b*, 63*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*, 227, 227*f*, 228*f*
  flagella of, 59–62, 60*f*, 61*f*, 62*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    staining of, 110, 111*f*, 111*t*
  genomes of, 195–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
  glycocalyces of, 59, 59*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
  Gram-negative, 15, 15*f*, 320*f*, 330–338, 339*t*. *See also* Gram-negative bacteria
  Gram-positive, 15, 15*f*, 320*f*, 329*t*. *See also* Gram-positive bacteria
  horizontal (lateral) genetic transfer in, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
  life processes in, 56*t*
  luminescent, 141*b*
  magnetosomes in (magnetobacteria), 55, 72
  motility of, 59–62, 60*f*, 61*f*, 62, 62*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
  nitrifying, 320*f*, 331
  opportunistic infections caused by, in HIV infection/AIDS, 729*t*
  pathogenic. *See* Pathogen(s)
  phototrophic, 164, 165*f*, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*t*

Bacteria (*Continued*)
placenta crossed by, 413*t*
resistant strains of. *See* Resistance
size of, 4, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 58*f*, 382*f*
measuring, 95, 95*t*
in soil, 781
disease caused by, 781, 781*t*
soilborne diseases caused by, 781, 781*t*
transcription in, 204–207, 205*f*, 206*f*
transduction in, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
transformation in, 225–226, 225*f*, 229*t*
translation in, 207–213
antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 288–289, 289*f*
viruses infecting. *See* Bacteriophage(s)
viruses/viroids/prions compared with, 401*t*
waterborne illnesses caused by, 769*t*
zoonoses caused by, 410*t*
Bacterial food poisoning. *See* Food poisoning
Bacterial motility, 59–62, 60*f*, 61*f*, 62, 62*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
Bacterial pneumonia(s), manifestations of, 717*t*
Bacterial viruses. *See* Bacteriophage(s)
Bactericide/bactericidal drug, 259, 296. *See also* Antibiotics
Bacteriochlorophyll(s), 148, 324, 325*t*
green and purple bacteria using, 324, 325*t*
Bacteriocin(s), 46, 196, 301, 550
Bacteriocin plasmids, 196, 301
Bacteriology, 18*f*, 19*t*. *See also* Bacteria
Bacteriophage(s) (phages), 112*b*, 118, 226, 273*b*, 378, 381*f*, 390*b*
anti-*Listeria*, 273*b*, 559
beneficial effects of, 110, 112*b*, 273*b*, 382*b*, 390*b*
in cocaine addiction management, 709*b*
culture of, 397, 397*f*
fluorescent, 110, 112*b*
in identification/classification of bacteria, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
lysogenic, 388, 389*f*
in microbial control, 273*b*
replication of, 226, 226*f*, 395*t*
lysogenic, 388, 389*f*
lytic, 386, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*
shapes of, 383, 384*f*
sizes of, 382*f*
temperate, 388, 389*f*
therapeutic use of, 390*b*
Salmonella infection and, 586
in transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
Bacteriophage (phage) therapy, 390*b*
anti-*Listeria*, 273*b*, 559
Salmonella infection and, 586
Bacteriophage (phage) typing, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
Bacteriorhodopsins, 322
Bacteriostatic drug, 296
Bacteroides genus/spp., 338, 339*t*, 601, 601*f*
slime layer of, 59*f*
Bacteroidetes (phylum), 320*f*
Baker's yeast. *See Saccharomyces*
Balantidiasis, 660, 673*t*
Balantidium genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 660, 673*t*
Bang's disease (brucellosis), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
B antigen, 505, 505*f*, 521, 521*f*, 522*t*
Barophiles, 170
Barr, Yvonne, 699
Bartonella genus/spp., 591–592, 591*f*, 593*b*
Bartonellosis, 591
Basal body
of archaea flagellum, 75
of bacterial flagellum, 59, 60, 60*f*
of eukaryotic flagellum, 79, 80*f*
Base(s) (chemical), 37–38, 37*f*
pH of, 37*f*, 38, 169
Base(s) (nucleotide), 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Base-excision repair, 221, 221*f*
Base number, in logarithm, A-13
Base pairs (bp), 50, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
point mutations affecting, 217–218, 218*f*
in taxonomy/microbial classification, 325–326
Base-pair substitutions, 217–218, 219*t*. *See also* Mutations
Basic dyes, 107
Basidia, 364
Basidiocarps, 364, 364*f*, 365*f*. *See also* Mushroom(s)
Basidiomycota (division)/basidiomycetes, 361, 364, 364*f*, 365*f*, 633
Basidiospores, 364, 365*f*
Basophils, 444*f*, 445, 445*f*, 517
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 518
Bat(s)
BMAA/cyanobacteria and, 325*t*
hemorrhagic fever and, 741
histoplasmosis and, 636, 647*b*
Nipah virus infection and, 736*b*
rabies and, 739*b*, 740, 740*f*
Batch method, for pasteurization, 266, 267*t*
Batch production, in industrial fermentation, 765
B cell receptors (BCRs), 468–469, 469*f*, 472*b*, 475*t*
on memory B cells, 486
B cells. *See* B lymphocytes
BCG (bacillus of Calmette and Guerin) vaccine, 500*t*
for leprosy, 500*t*, 566
for tuberculosis, 500*t*, 565
BCR. *See* B cell receptors
Bdellovibrio genus/spp., 336, 336*f*, 339*t*
beneficial actions of, 597*b*
Beadle, George, 19, 357
"Beaver fever" (giardiasis), 666–667, 666*b*, 667*f*, 673*t*
Beef tapeworm *(Taenia saginata)*, 675, 683*t*
Beer, microbes/fermentation in production of, 7*b*, 145*f*, 759–760, 760*f*, 761*t*
Bee stings, allergic reaction/anaphylaxis caused by, 519, 529*b*
Beggiatoa genus/spp.
nutritional classification of, 165*b*
in sulfur cycle, 779
von Behring, Emil, 18*f*, 20
Beijerinck, Martinus, 14, 15*t*, 18*f*, 20, 177
Bejel, 618
Beneficial microbes, 1, 4, 7*b*, 13*t*
angiogenesis and, 593*b*
antibacterial phages and, 273*b*, 390*b*
antimicrobial drug production/delivery and, 13*t*
architecture-preservation and, 38*b*
bacteriophages, 110, 112*b*, 273*b*, 382*b*, 390*b*
biofilms and, 63*b*
bread/wine/beer production and, 7*b*, 13*t*, 757, 759, 759–760, 759*f*, 761*t*. *See also* Food microbiology
calcite formation and, 38*b*
clostridia/botulinum toxin and, 326, 327*b*
cocaine addiction and, 709*b*
dust mites and, 440*b*
fluorescent phages, 110, 112*b*
fungi as, 7*b*, 13*t*, 357, 652
glue production and, 333*b*
gold mining and, 126*b*
Gram-negative predators and, 597*b*
lactobacilli, 298*b*, 327
mutualistic symbiosis and, 406, 406*f*, 407*t*, 409*b*
mycotoxins, 652
nuclear waste clean-up and, 172*b*
plastics production and, 73*b*, 766, 768*t*
polymerase chain reaction and, 201*b*
probiotics and, 7*b*, 298*b*, 552*b*
smallpox vaccination and, 501*b*
truffles and, 367*b*
viruses, 378, 382*b*
yeasts, 4, 13*t*
Benign tumor, 396
Benthic zone, 782*f*, 783
Benzalkonium chloride, 274*f*, 275
Benzimidazoles, 308*t*, 309*f*
Benznidazole, 310*t*
Benzoic acid, in food preservation, 763
Benzopyrene, as frameshift mutagen, 220
Bergey's Manual of Determinative Bacteriology, 116
Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, 116, 319
Beta-carotene gene, insertion of into rice, 252
Betadine, antimicrobial action of, 273, 273*f*
Beta-hemolysis, by *Streptococcus pyogenes*, 177, 178*f*, 318*f*, 544, 550*t*
Beta-hemolytic streptococci, 547
Streptococcus agalactiae, 546, 550*t*
Streptococcus equisimilis and *Streptococcus anginosus*, 547, 550*t*
Streptococcus pyogenes, 543–546, 550*t*
Beta (β)-interferon, 449–450, 450*f*, 451*t*
Beta-lactam antibiotics, 302*t*
mechanism of action of, 287*f*, 288, 302*t*
resistance to, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 540*t*, 543
Beta (β)-lactamase, antimicrobial resistance and, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 540*t*, 543
Beta-lactam rings, 287*f*, 288
β-methylamino-l-alanine (BMAA), neurologic disease and, 325*b*
Beta-oxidation, of fatty acids, 146–147, 146*f*
Beta (β)-pleated sheets, 47, 48*f*
in prion PrP, 399, 399*f*
Beta-propiolactone, for gas sterilization, 276, 277*t*
Betaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 325*t*, 332–333, 339*t*, 575, 591
pathogenic, 332
Beverages, microbial production of, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*
Bifidobacterium, as probiotic, 552*b*
Bile, in host defense, 443*t*
Bile-esculin agar, for *Bacteroides* culture, 601, 601*f*
Bilirubin, accumulation of
in hemolytic disease of newborn, 522
in hepatitis, 707, 707*f*
Binary fission, 180–188, 181*f*, 317, 317*f*. *See also* Population (microbe), growth of
in myxobacteria, 336, 337*f*
Binocular microscope, 98, 99*f*
Binomials/binomial nomenclature, 113
Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), reduction of in wastewater treatment, 771–772, 772*f*, 773, 774*f*
Biochemistry, 11, 18–19, 35. *See also* Chemical reactions
in taxonomy/microbial classification, 116–117, 116*f*, 117*f*
Biodiversity, 775
Biofilm(s), 21, 59, 63*b*, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*, 413, 414*f*
adaptation/survival and, 775
in aquatic ecosystems, 782, 783
archaeal glycocalyces in formation of, 75
confocal microscopes for examination of, 102, 104*b*
dental plaque as, 59, 63*b*, 172, 173*b*, 413, 414*f*
Selenomonas in, 326, 328*b*
viridans streptococci in, 547, 547*f*
fimbriae in, 63, 63*b*
in-use test of organisms in, 278
Pseudomonas aeruginosa forming, 63*b*, 596–597
resistance and, 300
in soil, 781
water treatment and, 769
Biofuels, microbial production of, 766, 768*t*
Biogeochemical cycles, microorganisms in, 777–780, 778*f*, 779*f*
Biological vectors, 372, 423–424, 424*t*, 425*t*, 682. *See also* Arthropod vectors
Biological warfare/weapons, 783–786, 785*f*, 785*t*, 786*b*. *See also* Bioterrorism
recombinant DNA technology and, 253, 786, 786*b*
Bioluminescence, 141*b*, 354
Biomass, 775
in biofuel production, 766
Biomining, 780
Bioremediation, 19*t*, 20, 172*b*, 595, 776, 776*b*
Bioreporters, microbes as, 767–768
Biosafety, 263, 264*f*, 741–742, 742*f*
Biosensors, microbes as, 767–768
Biosphere, 775, 775*f*
Biotechnology/industrial microbiology, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Recombinant DNA technology
agricultural applications/products of. *See* Agricultural microbiology

alternative fuel production and, 766–767, 766*f*, 768*t*
enzyme production and, 765–766, 766*b*
fermentations and, 11, 765, 765*f*
pesticide production and, 13*t*, 767, 768*t*
pharmaceutical applications/products of, 13*t*, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
products of, 13*t*, 765–774, 768*t*
recombinant DNA technology in, 237, 765, 767*t*
water treatment and, 768–774
Bioterrorism, 783–786, 785*f*, 785*t*, 786*b*. *See also specific disease or agent*
animal pathogens and, 784
assessing threat potential and, 783–784
biosensors and bioreporters and, 767–768
defense against, 785–786, 785*f*
definition of, 783
emerging/reemerging diseases and, 8*b*
human pathogens and, 783–784, 784, 785*t*
known microbial threats and, 784–785, 785*t*
plant pathogens and (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
assessing threat potential and, 784
defense against, 785–786
recombinant genetic technology and, 253, 786, 786*b*
Bird(s)
arboviral encephalitis and, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
cryptococcosis and, 645–646
fungal infections and, 633, 634, 641*b*
histoplasmosis and, 636, 641*b*
West Nile encephalitis and, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
Bird flu, 390*b*
Bisphenolics, 272, 272*f*, 277*t*
BK virus, 704
"Black Death," 574, 589. *See also* Plague
"Black hairy tongue," metronidazole causing, 297, 297*f*
Blackhead, 566, 567*f*. *See also* Acne
Black mold, 653*b*
"Black vomit," in yellow fever, 16*b*, 724
Blackwater fever, 669. *See also* Malaria
Bladder infections, 15*t*, 583
Blades, of algal thalli, 367, 370*f*
Blastomyces genus/spp., 633, 638, 638*f*, 639*f*, 645*b*, 781*t*
recombinant DNA in vaccine development for, 497, 635
Blastomyces dermatitidis, 633, 638, 638*f*, 639*f*
Blastomycosis, 638, 638*f*, 639*f*, 645*b*
soilborne transmission of, 638, 781*t*
vaccine against, 497, 635
Blatella species, as disease vectors, 424*t*
Bleach. *See* Sodium hypochlorite
Blebbing, in meningococcal infection, 577
Blepharisma genus/spp., cilia of, 80*f*
Blindness
toxoplasmosis causing, 671
trachoma causing, 613, 614
Blood. *See also specific component*
bacterial infection of. *See* Bacteremia
defensive components of, 443–446, 443*t*, 444*f*, 445*f*, 446*b*, 458*t*
HIV infection of, 734
movement of, in host defense, 443*t*
as portal of exit/disease transmission and, 421*f*, 422
screening
for hepatitis, 727
for HIV, 735
Blood agar, 177, 178*f*, 179*t*
Blood cells. *See also specific type*
autoimmunity affecting, 530
defensive, 444–446, 444*f*, 445*f*, 446*b*
development of (hematopoiesis), 444, 444*f*
Blood clots. *See* Coagulation
Blood flukes (*Schistosoma* species), 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
waterborne transmission of, 678, 679, 679*b*, 683*t*, 769*t*
Blood group antigens, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*. *See also* ABO system
Blood poisoning. *See* Septicemia; Toxemia
Blood specimen, collection of, 174*t*
Blood stem cells, 444, 444*f*, 464. *See also* Stem cells
Bloodsucking bugs (true bugs), as disease vectors, 372, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682. *See also specific type*
in Chagas' disease *(Trypanosoma cruzi)*, 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Bloodsucking flies. *See* Flies
Blood transfusion
ABO system/transfusion reactions and, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*
in disease transmission, 727
Blood typing, hemagglutination tests in, 505, 505*f*
Blood vessels
dilation/increased permeability of, in inflammation, 454–455, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*
formation of (angiogenesis), *Bartonella henselae* in, 593*b*
Bloom(s), 780
intoxications caused by, 354, 768
viruses affecting, 382*b*
Blotting, in western blot test, 509–510, 509*f*
Blue dye, microbial production of, 766*b*
Blue-green bacteria/blue-green algae. *See* Cyanobacteria
Blunt ends, of restriction enzymes, 239, 240*f*
B lymphocytes/B cells, 464, 468–473, 469*f*, 470*f*, 471*f*, 472*b*, 474*t*, 475*t*
activation of, 485*f*, 486
in antibody immune responses, 464, 465
clonal deletion of, 476, 477*f*
clonal selection of, 484–486, 485*f*
deficient, 531, 533*t*
in HIV replication, 731
memory, 485*f*, 486, 487*f*
in mononucleosis, 699*f*, 700
receptors on, 468–469, 469*f*, 472*b*
immunological memory and, 486
BMAA. *See* Beta(β)-methylamino-l-alanine
Boceprevir, 307*t*
BOD. *See* Biochemical oxygen demand
Body defenses. *See* Host defenses
Body fluids, as portals of exit/disease transmission and, 421*f*, 422, 423
hemorrhagic fevers and, 741–742, 742*f*
HIV infection/AIDS and, 734
Body temperature
elevated. *See* Fever
hypothalamus in regulation of, 456–457, 457*f*
Bohr models/diagrams, 27, 27*f*, 28, 29*f*, 32*f*
Boil (furuncle), 182*b*, 541
Boiling, in microbial control, 264–265, 271*t*
Bond angles, 32, 32*f*
Bone infection (osteomyelitis), staphylococcal, 542
Bone marrow, 444, 444*f*, 465, 466*f*
B lymphocyte maturation in, 464
clonal deletion of B cells in, 476, 477*f*
lymphocytes formed in, 464
red, 464, 465, 466*f*
Bone marrow depression, chemotherapy causing, 446*b*
Bone marrow transplants
graft-versus-host disease and, 527–528
for SCID, 532*b*
Booster immunization, 486, 496, 497, 502*f*
for diphtheria, 562
for tetanus, 556
Bordetella genus/spp., 332, 339*t*, 418*f*, 592–594, 593*f*, 594*f*
adhesins produced by, 413, 593
immunization against, 335*b*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 594
pertussis (whooping cough) caused by, 332, 335*b*, 593–594, 593*f*
Bordet-Genou medium, for *Bordetella pertussis* culture, 594
Borrelia genus/spp., 338, 339*t*, 618–621, 618*f*, 619*f*, 620*f*, 621*f*
Borrelia burgdorferi, 410*t*, 618–621, 618*f*, 619*f*, 620*f*. *See also* Lyme disease
motility of, 61
serologic tests for, 117, 621
Botox. *See* Botulism (botulinum) toxins, type A
Botryococcus braunii, hydrocarbons produced by, 766
Bottling, in wine and spirits production, 759, 759*f*
Botulism, 326, 327*b*, 553–555, 554*f*, 555*b*, 764*t*
antitoxin, 501, 555, 555*b*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
sterilization in destruction of, 264, 555
type A, 327*b*
Bovine growth hormone (BGH), 252
Bovine spongiform encephalitis (BSE/mad cow disease), 21*b*, 47, 276, 400
bp. *See* Base pairs
Brachial ganglion, latent herpetic infection of, 694*f*
Bradykinin, blood vessels affected by, 454, 455
Bradyzoites, in *Toxoplasma* life cycle, 671, 671*f*
Branhamella (Moraxella) catarrhalis, 597
Brazilian purpuric fever, 591
Bread, microbes in production of, 7*b*, 13*t*, 757, 761*t*
Breakbone (dengue) fever, 240*b*, 722–723, 724*b*, 724*f*, 725*f*, 726*t*
Breast milk
immunoglobulins in, passively acquired natural immunity and, 488, 489*t*
as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
for HIV, 734, 735
Brequinar sodium, 528, 529*t*
Brewer's yeast. *See Saccharomyces*
Bright-field microscopy/microscopes, 98, 98–100, 99*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
compound, 98–100, 99*f*
resolving power of, 97*f*
simple, 2*f*, 98
Brill-Zinsser disease, 609
Broad-spectrum drugs, 294
Bromine, antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
Bronchitis, 717*t*
Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae causing, 614
Bronchodilators, for asthma, 520
Broth(s), 172
nutrient, 176, 177
turbid, microbial growth estimation and, 186–187, 188*f*
Broth dilution test, 294, 295*f*
Broth tubes, carbohydrate utilization, 116*f*, 178, 178*f*
Brown algae, 370, 370*f*, 371*t*
Bruce, David, 15*t*
Brucella genus/spp., 15*t*, 331, 339*t*, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
pasteurization in control of, 266
Brucellosis (undulant fever), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Bruton-type agammaglobulinemia, 531, 533*t*
BSE. *See* Bovine spongiform encephalitis
BSL-1 to 4 (biosafety levels), 263, 264*f*, 741–742, 742*f*
Bt toxins, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
Bubo/buboes
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 613, 613*f*
in plague, 574, 589, 589*f*
in tularemia, 598
Bubonic plague, 15*t*, 373, 410*t*, 418*f*, 574, 588–589, 588*f*, 589*f*. *See also* Plague
Buchner, Eduard, experiments in fermentation by, 11, 18*f*, 19
Budding, 4, 4*f*, 317, 318*f*, 348, 348*f*
fungus/yeast reproduction by, 4, 4*f*, 348, 348*f*, 360
virus release by, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
HIV, 731*f*, 732, 733
influenzavirus, 743*f*, 745
Buffers, 38
Bugs (true/bloodsucking bugs), as disease vectors, 372, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682. *See also specific type*
in Chagas' disease *(Trypanosoma cruzi)*, 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Bulbar poliomyelitis, 718. *See also* Poliomyelitis
"Bull's-eye" rash, in Lyme disease, 620

Subject Index

Bunyaviridae (bunyaviruses), 385*t*, 726*t*, 742, 747, 747*f*, 750*t*
encephalitis caused by, 726*t*, 747
Burkholderia genus/spp., 332, 339*t*, 594–595, 596*b*
bioremediation and, 595
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Burkitt's lymphoma, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) causing, 699, 699*f*, 700
Burn injury/wound, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection of, 418*f*, 596, 596*f*
Burst size, 388, 388*f*
Burst time, 388, 388*f*
Buruli ulcer, 568*b*
Buttermilk, fermentation in production of, 758, 761*t*

C. *See* Carbon; Cytosine; Complement
Cadmium, cycling of, 780
Calcite, *Myxococcus xanthus* forming, 38*b*
Calcium carbonate, in algal cell wall, 78, 369, 371*t*
Calcium hypochlorite, antimicrobial action of, 273, 448
Caliciviridae (caliciviruses), 385*t*, 716, 721, 721*f*, 750*t*
California encephalitis, 726*t*, 747
Calor, in inflammation, 454
Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152*f*, 157*f*, A-11
carbohydrate biosynthesis and, 153, 154*f*, A-11
lipid biosynthesis and, 153, 154*f*
cAMP. *See* Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
Campylobacter genus/spp./campylobacteria, 320*f*, 337, 339*t*, 624–625, 626*b*, 764*t*
food/waterborne transmission of, 624–625, 626*b*, 764*t*, 769*t*
CA-MRSA. *See* Community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
Cancer, 396, 396*f*
mutations causing, 223
T cell therapy for, 480, 482*b*
viruses in, 395–396, 396*f*
Epstein-Barr virus, 699, 699*f*, 700
hepatitis B virus, 689, 708–709
herpesviruses, 693, 702, 702*f*
HIV infection/AIDS and, 729*t*
papillomaviruses, 702, 703, 704
polyomaviruses, 704
retroviruses, 728, 728–729, 729*f*
Candida genus/spp., 642
budding in, 360, 643, 644*f*
identification of, 635*f*
in HIV infection/AIDS, 643
opportunistic infection/superinfection caused by, 294, 297, 409, 633, 642–643
oropharyngeal infection caused by (thrush), 418*f*, 642, 642*f*, 643, 643*t*
antimicrobial drug use and, 297
in HIV infection/AIDS, 643, 742*b*
transmission of, 633, 642
vaccine against, 635
vaginal, 294, 297, 418*f*, 642, 643*t*
Candida albicans, 4, 418*f*, 633, 642, 643*f*, 643*t*
Candidemia, 643*t*
Candidiasis, 642–643, 642*f*, 643*t*
antimicrobial therapy and, 294, 297
diagnosis of, 635*f*
oropharyngeal, 418*f*, 642, 642*f*, 643, 643*t*
vaginal, 294, 297, 418*f*, 642, 643*t*
Candle jars, 180
Canning, industrial, in food preservation, 762, 762*f*
CAP. *See* Catabolic activator protein
Capnophiles, culturing, 180
Capping, in transcription, 207
CAP RAST, 519
Capsids, viral, 379, 379*f*, 381, 384*f*, 750*t*
of enveloped positive single-stranded RNA viruses, 716, 721, 721*f*, 750*t*
Capsomeres/capsomers, 381
Capsule (polysaccharide), 59, 59*f*. *See also specific organism*
as antiphagocytic factor, 419*f*, 420
cryptococci and, 646
Enterobacteriaceae and, 580, 581
Francisella tularensis and, 598
Haemophilus influenzae and, 590
Klebsiella and, 59, 584, 584*f*
Neisseria and, 575, 577, 577*b*
Pseudomonas aeruginosa and, 595–596
staphylococci and, 540
streptococci and
group A streptococcus and, 544
group B streptococcus and, 546
pneumococcus *(Streptococcus pneumoniae)* and, 59, 548, 548*b*
stains, 110, 110*f*, 111*t*
Carbepenem, 302*t*
Carbohydrate(s), 42–45, 43*f*, 44*f*, 45*f*
biosynthesis of, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
catabolism of, 133–146, 134*f*, 142*t*, 145*t*, 157*f*. *See also* Glucose, catabolism of
Carbohydrate utilization broth tubes, 116*f*, 178, 178*f*
Carbohydrate utilization test, 116*f*
Carbolfuchsin
in acid-fast staining, 108
in flagellar staining, 110
Carbolic acid. *See* Phenol
Carbon, 28*t*, 30*f*, 777. *See also* Carbon dioxide
alpha (α), amino acid, 46, 46*f*
atomic number of, 27, 28*t*
isotopes of, 27–28, 28*f*
for microbial growth, 164, 165*f*
in nonpolar covalent bonds, 31, 31*f*, 32
recycling of, 20, 777–778, 778*f*
Carbon cycle, 20, 777–778, 778*f*
Carbon dioxide (CO_2). *See also* Carbon
in carbon cycle, 777–778, 778*f*
fixation of. *See* Carbon fixation
as greenhouse gas, 778
microbial fermentation producing, 145*f*
in microbial growth, 164, 165*f*
Carbon dioxide incubators, 180
Carbon fixation, 151, 152*f*
in light-independent photosynthesis/Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152*f*, A-11
Carbon isotopes, 12-14, 27–28, 28*f*
Carbonyl group, 40*t*
Carboxyl group, 40*t*
in amino acids, 46, 46*f*
Carbuncle, 541
carcino- (prefix), 415*t*
Carcinogens, 223, 396
identification of, 223–224, 224*f*
Cardiovascular system, in host defense, 443*t*
Caries (dental/cavities), 59, 172, 173*b*
viridans streptococci causing, 547, 547*f*
Carotene
in brown algae, 370
in chrysophytes, 370
in dinoflagellates, 354
in euglenids, 352
β-Carotene, gene for, insertion of into rice, 252
Carotenoids, 153
singlet oxygen affected by, 165
in thermophilic bacteria, 167*b*
Carrageenan, 369
in algal cell wall, 78, 369, 370, 371*t*
Carrier proteins
in active transport, 46, 70–71, 71*f*
antigenic response to molecules and, 467
in electron transport chains, 138, 138*f*, 140
in facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*
Carriers (disease), 411, 411*b*. *See also specific disease or organism*
of *Entamoeba histolytica*, 660
of hepatitis B, 707
of HHV-2, 696
of meningococcal infection, 578
of *Pneumocystis jiroveci*, 641
of typhoid, 411*b*, 586, 589*b*
Carsonella ruddii, genome size of, 194
Cascade, complement, 451, 451*f*, 452–453, 452*f*, 453*f*
staphylococcal protein A affecting, 539–540
Caseous necrosis, in tuberculosis, 563–564, 563*f*
Caspofungin, 288, 307*t*
Cat(s)/cat feces, *Toxoplasma* transmission and, 670, 671, 671*f*, 673*t*
Catabolic activator protein (CAP), in lactose *(lac)* operon regulation, 214, 215*f*
Catabolism/catabolic pathways, 36, 125, 125–126, 125*f*, 157*f*
carbohydrate/glucose, 133–146, 134*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*
integration and regulation of, 155–156, 157*f*
lipid, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
protein, 147, 147*f*, 148*b*, 157*f*
Catalase, 165–166, 166*f*
hydrogen peroxide affected by, 165–166, 166*f*, 274
in peroxisomes, 84
staphylococcal synthesis of, 539
test, 165–166, 166*f*
Catalysts, 46. *See also* Enzyme(s)
Catarrhal phase, of pertussis, 594, 594*f*
Category A, B, and C agents, in bioterrorism, 784, 785*t*
Cathode ray machines, in microbial control, 270
Cations, 33, 37, 37*f*, 107. *See also* Electrolytes
of salts, 38–39
Cat scratch disease, 20, 591–592, 592*f*
Caulobacter genus/spp., 331, 332*f*, *333b*, *339t*
Cavities (dental caries), 59, 172, 173*b*
viridans streptococci causing, 547, 547*f*
CBC (complete blood count), 446*b*
CCR glycoproteins, 475*t*
CD (cluster of differentiation) designations, 474
CD3, monoclonal antibodies against, 529
CD4, 474, 475, 475*b*, 475*t*. *See also* Helper T lymphocytes
T helper cell activation/cloning and, 484–486, 485*f*
CD4 to CD8 ratio, in HIV infection/AIDS, 475*b*
CD4 receptors, HIV replication and, 475*b*, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
CD4 T cells. *See* Helper T lymphocytes
CD8, 474, 475*t*, 481, 481*f*
CD8 T cells. *See* Cytotoxic T cells
CD40, 475*t*
in B cell activation, 485*f*, 486
CD40L, in B cell activation, 485*f*, 486
CD95, 482, 483*f*
defects in, autoimmunity and, 530
CD95 cytotoxic pathway, 482, 483*f*
CD95L, 482, 483*f*
CDC. *See* Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
cDNA. *See* Complementary DNA
Cefixime, 302*t*
Ceftriaxone, 302*t*
Cefuroxime, 302*t*
Cell(s), 57. *See also* Eukaryotes/eukaryotic cells; Prokaryotes/prokaryotic cells
life processes and, 56–57, 56*t*
size of, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 58*f*
measuring, 95, 95*t*
structure/function of, 55–93
cell walls. *See* Cell walls
cytoplasm
of eukaryotes, 79–86, 87*t*
of prokaryotes, 57*f*, 77*t*
archaea, 77, 77*t*
bacteria, 71–75, 72*f*, 73*b*, 74*f*, 75*f*, 77*t*
cytoplasmic membranes. *See also* Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes
eukaryotic, 58*f*, 78–79, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*
prokaryotic, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
archaeal, 76–77, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
bacterial, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*, 77*t*, 87*t*
endosymbiotic theory and, 86
external structure
of archaea, 75–76
of bacteria, 59–66
of eukaryotes, 77
types of, 57, 57*f*
viruses compared with, 385*t*

Subject Index

Cell counter, for microbial growth estimation, 184–185, 184*f*
Cell cultures, 180
  viral, 180, 397–398, 398*f*
Cell death, programmed. *See* Apoptosis
Cell division (cytokinesis), 348, 348*f*
  cancer and, 395–396
  centrosomes in, 81
Cell lysis
  in ADCC, 471, 471*f*
  in virus release, 386, 395, 395*t*. *See also* Lytic replication
Cell-mediated (type IV) hypersensitivity, 526–528, 526*f*, 527*f*, 528*t*
  allergic contact dermatitis as, 526–527, 527*f*
  donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
  graft rejection as, 527, 527*f*
  graft-versus-host disease and, 527–528
  tuberculin response as, 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*
Cell-mediated immune responses, 464, 480–483, 481*f*, 482*b*, 483*f*
Cell (cytoplasmic/plasma) membranes
  antimicrobials affecting, 261, 286, 286*f*, 289–290, 290*f*, 304*t*, 307*t*
  eukaryotic, 58*f*, 78–79, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*
  function of/movement across
    active processes in, 67, 70–71, 71*f*, 72*t*
    in bacterial cells, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*
    in eukaryotic cells, 78–79, 79*f*
    passive processes in, 67, 68–70, 69*f*, 70*f*, 72*t*
  permeability of, 66–67
  phospholipid bilayers forming, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
    cholesterol in, 41, 78
  prokaryotic, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    archaeal, 76–77, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
    bacterial, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    electron transport chains in, 138–139, 139*f*
  resistance and, 299–300
Cell nucleus, 57, 82, 83*f*, 83*t*, 87*t*, 196
Cell plate, 348, 348*f*
Cell suicide, programmed. *See* Apoptosis
Cellular cytotoxicity, antibody-dependent (ADCC), 470–471, 471*f*
Cellular inclusions
  in cytomegalovirus disease, 701, 701*f*
  in eukaryotic cells, 87*t*
  magnetite, 55, 72
  in prokaryotic cells, 57*f*, 87*t*
    archaea, 87*t*
    bacteria, 55, 72, 72*f*, 87*t*
Cellular PrP, 399, 399*f*
Cellular respiration, 133, 134–141, 134*f*
  acetyl-CoA synthesis and, 134*f*, 135–136, 136*f*, 142*t*
  aerobic, 140, 142*t*
  anaerobic, 140
  chemiosmosis and, 140–141
  electron transport in, 133, 134*f*, 138–140, 138*f*, 139*f*, 141*b*, 142*t*
  fermentation compared with, 134*f*, 144, 144*f*, 145*t*
  Krebs cycle in, 133, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*
Cellular slime molds, 355, 356*f*, 357, 358*t*
Cellulose, 43, 45*f*
  in cell walls, 43, 45*f*, 78
    algal, 78, 370, 371*t*
  microbial production of, 766
Cell walls
  antimicrobials and, 64, 66, 261, 286, 286*f*, 287–288, 287*f*, 302–303*t*, 635
  bacteria without, 3, 66
  of eukaryotic cells, 77–78, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*
    algae/diatoms, 5, 6*f*, 79*f*, 370
    fungi, 4, 78, 288
  of prokaryotic cells, 3, 57*f*, 63, 77*t*, 87*t*
    archaea, 3, 76, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
    bacteria, 3, 63–66, 64*f*, 65*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
      Gram-negative, 64, 65–66, 65*f*
      Gram-positive, 64, 65*f*
      peptidoglycan in, 3, 43, 64, 64*f*, 65*f*, 287, 287*f*
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)
  biosafety guidelines of, 263
  data sharing and, 432
  immunizations recommended by, 499–500, 499*f*
  Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report published by, 428, 429*f*
  notifiable diseases listed by/MMWR, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*
Central dogma, 203
  retrovirus and, 728
Central nervous system. *See* Nervous system/nervous tissue
Central vacuole, 84, 85*f*
Centrioles, 58*f*, 81, 82*f*
Centromere, 346, 347*f*
Centrosome, 81, 82*f*, 83*t*
Cepacol. *See* Cetylpyridinium chloride
Cephalexin, 296*b*, 302*t*
Cephalosporins, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 287*f*, 302*t*
  staphylococcal resistance to, 543*b*
Cephalosporium (Acremonium) genus/spp.
  antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 302*t*
  mycetoma caused by, 650*t*
Cephalothin, 287*f*, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 287*f*, 302*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 302*t*
Cercariae, in fluke life cycle, 676–677, 677*f*
  Schistosoma, 678
Cerebral malaria, 669
Cerebrospinal fluid
  analysis of in meningococcal meningitis, 578
  specimen collection/spinal tap and, 174*t*
Cervical cancer, HPV infection and, 702
  vaccination and, 499*f*, 500*t*, 703
Cesspools, 773
Cestodes (tapeworms), 5, 410*t*, 658, 674, 674–676, 674*f*, 675*f*, 676*f*, 683*t*
  beef *(Taenia saginata)*, 675, 683*t*
  dog *(Echinococcus granulosus)*, 675–676, 676*f*, 683*t*
  life cycle of, 675, 675*f*
  pork *(Taenia solium)*, 658, 675, 683*t*
Cetylpyridinium chloride, 274*f*, 275
CF. *See* Cystic fibrosis
CFU. *See* Colony-forming units
CGD. *See* Chronic granulomatous disease
Chagas' disease, 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Chagomas, 662
Chain, binary fission forming, 180, 181*f*
Chancre, in syphilis, 616–617, 617*f*
Channel proteins, 46, 78
  in active transport, 46, 70–71, 71*f*
  in facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*, 78
Charcoal, activated
  in wastewater treatment, 773
  in water treatment, 770
Cheese, microbial production of, 13*t*, 145*f*, 758, 758*f*, 761*t*
Chemical behavior, of atoms, electron configurations and, 28–29, 29*f*, 30*f*
Chemical bonds, 29–34, 34*t*
  angles of, 32, 32*f*
  electronegativity and, 30, 32, 32*f*, 33
  hydrogen, 34, 34*f*, 34*t*
  ionic, 33–34, 33*f*, 34*t*
  nonpolar covalent, 30–32, 31*f*, 34*t*
  peptide, 46–47, 47*f*
  polar covalent, 32, 32*f*, 34*t*
Chemical chemoprophylaxis. *See* Antimicrobial chemoprophylaxis
Chemical defense, in innate immunity, 443, 443*t*, 448–454, 449*t*, 450*t*, 451*f*, 451*t*, 452*f*, 453*b*, 458*t*. *See also* Complement; Interferon(s)
Chemical elements, 27, 28*t*
  for microbial growth, 164, 167
  periodic table of, 30*f*
Chemical fixation, 107
Chemical (concentration) gradient, 67
  diffusion and, 68, 69*f*
Chemical mutagens, 219–220, 219*f*
Chemical reactions, 18–19, 34–36, 35*f*. *See also specific type and* Chemistry
  enzymes in, 128–133, 129*f*, 130*f*
    allosteric control and, 132, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
    enzyme/substrate concentration and, 131, 131*f*
    inhibition and, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
    pH and, 130, 131*f*
    temperature and, 130, 131*f*
  in metabolism, 18–19, 125–133
Chemical requirements, for microbial growth, 167–168, 167*b*, 167*t*
Chemiosmosis, 138, 140–141
Chemistry, 26–54. *See also under Chemical and* Biochemistry
  atoms and, 27–29, 27*f*, 28*f*, 28*t*, 29*f*, 30*f*
  chemical bonds and, 29–34, 31*f*, 32*f*, 33*f*, 34*f*, 34*t*
  chemical reactions and, 34–36, 35*f*
  inorganic substances and (water/acids/bases/salts), 36–39
  organic substances and, 39–51, 40*t*
Chemoautotrophs, 164, 165*f*
  in carbon cycle, 778, 778*f*
Chemoheterotrophs, 164, 165*f*
Chemokine(s), 446, 477. *See also* Cytokine(s)
Chemoprophylaxis. *See* Antimicrobial chemoprophylaxis
Chemostat, 183–184, 183*f*
Chemotactic factors, 446, 457*t*
Chemotaxis, 62, 456
  in phagocytosis, 446, 447*f*
Chemotherapy/chemotherapeutic agents, 18, 18*f*, 19*t*, 284. *See also specific type and* Antimicrobial agents
  bone marrow depression caused by, 446*b*
  discovery/history of, 20–21, 21*f*, 284
  recombinant DNA technology and, 249–251
Chemotrophs, 164, 165*f*
Chest X rays, in tuberculosis diagnosis, 564, 564*f*
Chicken eggs
  embryonated, culturing viruses in, 397, 397*f*
    vaccine manufacture and, 397, 499
  Salmonella contamination of, 586
Chickenpox (varicella), 697, 697*f*, 698
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 698–699
    shingles and, 698
Chiggers (mites), as disease vectors, 372, 424*t*
  for scrub typhus *(Orientia tsutsugamushi)*, 610, 611*b*, 611*t*
Chikungunya/chikungunya virus, 8*b*, 394*b*, 726*t*
Childbirth (puerperal) fever, streptococcal, 16, 546
Chill(s), fever and, 457
Chitin, in fungal cell walls, 78, 357
Chlamydia(s), 169*f*, 337–338, 339*t*, 611–615, 612*f*, 613*f*, 614*f*, 615*t*. *See also under Chlamydia; Chlamydophila*
  animal/cell cultures for growth of, 180
  antimicrobials effective against, 293*f*
  arteriosclerosis caused by, 430, 614
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  comparison of with other small microbes, 615*t*
  LGV strain of *C. trachomatis*, 613
  sexually transmitted disease caused by, 613, 613*f*
  trachoma strain of, 613, 614
Chlamydiae (phylum), 320*f*, 338, 612, 615*t*
Chlamydospores, 360, 360*f*
Chloramine
  antimicrobial action of, 274
  phenol coefficient of, 277
Chloramphenicol, 303*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 289*f*, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*
Chlorine, 28*t*, 30*f*
  antimicrobial action of, 273, 277*t*
  in sodium chloride formation, 33, 33*f*
  in wastewater treatment, 273, 772*f*, 773
  in water treatment, 273, 770–771, 770*f*
Chlorine dioxide, antimicrobial action of, 273–274
Chlorobi (phylum), 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*
Chloroflexi (phylum), 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*

Chlorophyll(s), 148, 149*f*
  algae using, 367, 371*t*
    brown algae, 370, 371*t*
    chrysophytes, 370, 371*t*
    green algae, 368, 371*t*
    red algae, 367, 369, 371*t*
  cyanobacteria using, 323, 325*t*
  dinoflagellates using, 354, 371*t*
  euglenids using, 352, 371*t*
  fluorescent, 100
  phototrophic bacteria using, 323, 324, 325*t*
  reaction center, 149, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151
Chlorophyta (division), 368–369, 371*t*
Chloroplasts, 83*t*, 86, 86*f*, 148, 150*f*
  DNA in, 197–198
  in euglenids, 352, 353*f*
  evolution/endosymbiotic theory and, 86
Chloroquine, 310*t*
  for malaria prophylaxis, 670
Chocolate agar, for *Neisseria* culture, 575
Cholera, 12, 623–624, 623*f*, 624*f*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  discovery of cause/spread of, 17, 428, 430*f*
  immunization against, 624
  incubation period for, 421*t*
  toxin, 623, 624*f*
  waterborne transmission of, 17, 428, 430*f*, 623, 624, 769*t*
Cholesterol, 41
  in eukaryotic membranes, 41, 78
  for microbial growth, 167*t*
Chondrus genus/spp., 113, 370, 371*t*
Choriomeningitis, lymphocytic, 748
Chromatids, 346, 347*f*
Chromatin/chromatin fibers, 82, 83*f*, 197, 197*f*, 345
Chromoblastomycosis, 650, 650*f*, 650*t*
Chromophore, 107
Chromosomes, 82, 87*t*, 195, 198*t*
  archaeal, 87*t*, 194–196, 198*t*
  bacterial, 72, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
  in binary fission, 180, 181*f*
  eukaryotic/nuclear, 82, 87*t*, 196–197, 197*f*, 198*t*, 345
  homologous, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
  in nuclear division (mitosis/meiosis), 82, 197, 197*f*, 345–348, 347*f*, 350*t*
  prokaryotic, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
  transposition and, 229, 229*f*
Chronic disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Chronic fatigue syndrome, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699*f*, 700
Chronic granulomatous disease, 531, 533*t*
Chronic inflammation, 454
Chronic wasting disease, 400
Chrysolaminarin, 370
Chrysophyta, 370–371, 370*f*, 371*t*
-cide/-cidal (suffix), 259, 260*t*
Ciguatoxin (*Gambierdiscus* genus/spp.), waterborne illness caused by, 768, 769*t*
Cilastatin, 296
Cilia, 58*f*, 80, 80*f*, 81*f*, 87*t*
  protozoan, 4, 5*f*, 353, 354, 660
  respiratory, *Bordetella pertussis* affecting, 593
Ciliates, 350, 353–354, 354*f*, 358*t*, 660, 673*t*
  reproduction in, 351, 351*f*
Ciliophora (phylum), 352, 353
Ciprofloxacin, 305*t*
Circumcision
  genital warts and, 703–704
  HIV transmission and, 735
Citrate synthase, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Citric acid, microbial production of, 766, 768*t*
Citric acid (Krebs) cycle, 133, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-10
Citrobacter genus/spp., 584–585
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
CJD. *See* Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
Cladophialophora genus/spp.
  chromoblastomycosis caused by, 650*t*
  phaeohyphomycosis caused by, 650*t*
Cladosporium genus/spp., 172*b*
Clap. *See* Gonorrhea
Clarification, in wine and spirits production, 759, 759*f*
Clarithromycin, 303*t*
Class, 113, 114*f*
Class I major histocompatibility complex proteins, 478, 478*f*, 481, 481*f*, 483*f*
  antigen processing and, 479, 479*f*
Class II major histocompatibility complex proteins, 478, 478*f*, 481, 481*f*
  antigen processing and, 480, 480*f*, 484, 485*f*
Classical pathway of complement activation, 451, 451*f*, 452–453, 452*f*, 453*f*
Classification, 112. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
Class switching (immunoglobulin), 471
Claviceps purpurea, 363–364, 366*t*, 652
Clavulanic acid, synergistic effects of, 300, 301*f*
Clindamycin, 303*t*, 308*t*
Clinical specimens, for microbial culture, 172, 172–173, 174*t*
  transport media for, 173, 179–180
Clofazimine, 305*t*
  mechanism of action of, 293, 305*t*
Clonal deletion, 475–476, 476*f*, 477*f*
Clonal expansion, 481, 481*f*
Clonality, 464
Clonal selection, 484–486, 485*f*
Clones
  in adaptive immunity, 464
  in gene libraries, 242, 242*f*
  selection of, 244, 244*f*
Clostridium genus/spp./clostridia, 320*f*, 326, 327*b*, 328*b*, 329*t*, 552–556
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  botulinum toxins produced by, 326, 327*b*, 554, 554*f*, 555*b*, 764*t*
  endospores of, 72, 109, 264, 316, 316*f*, 326, 552, 553, 554, 555, 555*b*
    staining, 109–110
    sterilization in control of, 264, 555
    susceptibility and, 262
  fermentation products of, 145*f*, 146
  food contaminated by, 264, 552, 553, 554, 764*t*. *See also* Botulism
    canning and, 264, 762
  gas gangrene caused by *C. perfringens*, 15*t*, 552, 553, 553*f*
  immunization against, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 556
  nitrogen fixation by, 779
  obesity and, 328*b*
  in pectinase production, 765
  pseudomembranous colitis (superinfection) caused by *C. difficile*, 297, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
  soilborne transmission of, 411, 781*t*
  tetanus caused by *C. tetani*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 556
Clots (blood). *See* Coagulation
Clotting factor, *E. coli* in production of, 20
Clouds (electron shells), 28–29, 29*f*
Cluster, binary fission forming, 180, 181*f*
Cluster of differentiation (CD) designations, 474
CMV. *See Cytomegalovirus* genus/spp.
Coagulase, as virulence factor, 418, 419*f*
  staphylococcal, 540, 540*t*, 542
Coagulation
  disseminated intravascular (DIC), 575
  in host defense, 443*t*, 455, 456*f*
Coal mining, acid mine drainage and, 776
Cobalt-60, for food irradiation, 763
Cocaine addiction, bacteriophages in treatment of, 709*b*
Cocci (coccus), 116, 316, 316*f*, 320*f*
  archaeal, 76*f*
  arrangements of, 64, 64*f*, 318, 318*f*
  gram-negative, 575–578. *See also specific agent*
Coccidioides immitis, 358, 633, 639–640, 639*f*, 640*f*
  immunization against, 635
  soilborne transmission of, 639, 781*t*
Coccidioidomycosis, 358, 639–640, 639*f*, 640*f*
  soilborne transmission of, 639, 781*t*
Coccobacillus, 316, 316*f*
Cockroaches, as disease vectors, 424, 424*t*
Codium genus/spp., 369, 371*t*
Codons, 208, 208*f*, 209, 209*t*
Coefficient, in scientific notation, A-13
Coenocytes, 348
  aseptate hyphae as, 358
  zygomycetes as, 361, 366*t*
Coenzyme(s), 128, 128*f*
  ATP in formation of, 51
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Coenzyme A, 51, 129*t*
  in acetyl-CoA synthesis, 135, 136*f*
  in fat catabolism/beta-oxidation, 146*f*, 147
  in Krebs cycle, A-10
Coenzyme Q, in electron transport chain, 139*f*, 140
Coevolution. *See also* Evolution
  parasitism and, 407
Cofactors, 128, 128*f*, 129*t*
Cohesiveness, of water, 36, 36*f*
Coinfection, hepatitis B and hepatitis D, 707, 748
col-/colo- (prefix), 415*t*
Cold. *See* Freezing; Refrigeration
Cold (common), 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*
  adenoviruses causing, 704
  coronaviruses causing, 727, 750*t*
  immunization against, 496*b*, 717
  rhinoviruses causing, 385*t*, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*, 750*t*
Cold enrichment, 177
  Listeria detected by, 558–559
  Vibrio cholerae detected by, 177
Cold sore (oral herpes), 694, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
Cold vaccine, 496*b*, 717
Coliforms, 582–585, 583*b*, 584*f*. *See also Escherichia coli*
  fecal, 582
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
  water contaminated by, 582, 771, 771*f*
Colitis, pseudomembranous, *Clostridium difficile* causing, 297, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
Collagenase, as virulence factor, 418, 419*f*
Colon, normal microbiota of, 407, 408*t*
Colony, microbial, 13–14, 14*f*, 164, 172, 173*f*
Colony-forming units, 174
  microbial growth estimation affected by
    membrane filtration and, 185
    viable plate counts and, 185
  pour plate isolation and, 175, 175*f*
  streak plate isolation and, 174
Colorado tick fever, 726*t*, 749, 750*t*
Coltivirus genus/spp./coltiviruses, 385*t*, 749, 750*t*
Columnar cells, ciliated, in host defense, 441
Combination vaccines, 497
Combustion, in carbon cycle, 778*f*
Commensalism, 406, 407*t*
Commercial sterilization, 259, 264
Common antigen, 580, 581*f*
Common cold, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*
  adenoviruses causing, 704
  coronaviruses causing, 727, 750*t*
  immunization against, 496*b*, 717
  rhinoviruses causing, 385*t*, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*, 750*t*
Common-source epidemics, food poisoning and, 764
Communicable disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Communities (microbial), 20, 775, 775*f*
Community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*, 298*b*
Competent cells/competence, 226
Competition, microbial. *See also* Antagonism, microbial
  adaptation/survival and, 775
  food spoilage and, 761–762, 763*t*
  opportunistic pathogens and, 294, 297, 409, 430–431
Competitive inhibition/inhibitors, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
  antimicrobial action and, 132, 290, 291*f*
Complement/complement system, 46, 444, 447, 451–454, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453*f*, 458*t*

activation of, 451–454, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453*f*
antibodies in, 451, 451*f*, 452, 452*f*, 470
staphylococcal protein A affecting, 539–540
blood vessels affected by, 454, 454*f*
C1, 452*f*
antibody binding to, 470
C2, 452*f*, 454
C2a, 452*f*
C2b, 452*f*
C3, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453, 454
C3a, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453, 454
blood vessels affected by, 454, 454*f*
phagocyte migration and, 456
C3b, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453, 454
C4, 452*f*, 454
C4a, 452*f*, 453
C4b, 452*f*, 453
C5, 451*f*, 452*f*
C5a, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453
blood vessels affected by, 454, 454*f*
phagocyte migration and, 456
C5a peptidase, group A streptococcal pathogenicity and, 544
C5b, 451*f*, 452*f*
Complement cascade, 451, 451*f*, 452–453, 452*f*, 453*f*
in host defense, 444, 447, 451–454, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453*f*, 458*t*
in immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity, 524, 524*f*
inactivation of, 454
staphylococcal protein A affecting, 539–540
Complementarity
antigen-binding site, 469, 469*f*
DNA, replication and, 198
Complementary DNA (cDNA), 238
reverse transcriptase in synthesis of, 237–238
Complement fixation test, 506, 511*t*
Complement proteins, 444, 447, 451, 451*f*. *See also* Complement/complement system
Complete blood count (CBC), 446*b*
Complex media, 177, 179*t*
Complex transposons, 230, 230*f*
Complex viruses, 383, 383*f*
Compound, chemical bonds in formation of, 29
Compound microscopes, 98–100, 99*f*
resolving power of, 97*f*
Compromised host. *See* Immunocompromised host
Concentration (chemical) gradient, 67
diffusion and, 68, 69*f*
Condenser lenses, 99*f*, 100
for dark-field microscopes, 100, 100*f*
Condoms
in genital wart prevention, 703
in HIV prevention, 735
Condylomata acuminata (genital warts), 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
Confocal microscopy/microscopes, 98, 102, 104*b*, 106*t*
Congenital diseases, 414–415, 415*t*
candidiasis, 643*t*
cytomegalovirus, 701
rubella, 726
syphilis, 617
toxoplasmosis, 671
Conidiophores, 360, 360*f*, 363*f*
Conidiospores/conidia, 360, 360*f*
in ascomycete reproduction, 362, 363*f*
Conjugation, 63, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
antimicrobial resistance and, 229, 300
bacterial, 63, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
fertility (F) plasmids and, 196, 227–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
in protozoa, 351, 351*f*
Conjugation (sex) pili, 63, 63*f*, 77*t*, 227, 227*f*, 228*f*
Conjunctiva
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
trachoma affecting, 613, 614*f*
Conjunctivitis
adenoviruses causing (pinkeye), 705, 705*f*
coxsackie A virus causing (acute hemorrhagic conjunctivitis), 719
in newborn, gonococcal, 275, 576, 577
Connective tissue, autoimmunity affecting, 531
Constant region
immunoglobulin/B cell receptor/antibody, 470*f*, 472*b*
T cell receptor, 473*f*
Consumption/consumers, in biogeochemical cycling, 777
carbon cycle, 778*f*
Consumption (tuberculosis), 564. *See also* Tuberculosis
Contact dermatitis, allergic, 526–527, 527*f*
Contact immunity, 497
Contact lens use, *Acanthamoeba* keratitis and, 258, 263*b*, 661
Contact transmission of disease, 422, 422*f*, 425*t*
Contagious disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Contamination
microbial, 411
pure cultures and, 174
of water, 428, 430*f*, 433, 768. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Continuous cell cultures, for viruses, 398
Continuous flow production, in industrial fermentation, 765
Contractile vacuoles, in protozoa, 350, 350*f*
Contrast, 98. *See also* Staining
phase of light rays and, 98, 100, 101*f*
Contrast microscopy/microscopes
differential interference (Nomarski), 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
phase, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
Control groups, in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
Convalescence, 421, 421*f*
in pertussis, 594, 594*f*
Cooperation, microbial, adaptation/survival and, 775
Copper, 28*t*
antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
cycling of, 780
Copper proteins, in electron transport chains, 140
Cord factor, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* virulence and, 562
Corepressor, in tryptophan *(trp)* operon, 215, 216*f*
Core temperature
elevated. *See* Fever
hypothalamus in regulation of, 456–457, 457*f*
Cornea, trachoma affecting, 613
Coronaviridae (coronaviruses), 385*t*, 722, 722*f*, 727, 727*f*, 750*t*
SARS caused by, 242, 727, 728*f*, 750*t*
Cortex, lymph node, 465, 466*f*
Corticosteroids. *See also* Steroids
for allergic contact dermatitis, 527
for asthma, 520
immunosuppressive actions of, 528, 529*t*
Cortinarius gentilis, 652
Corynebacterium genus/spp., 15*t*, 284, 319, 319*f*, 320*f*, 328, 329*t*, 561–562, 561*f*
immunization against, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 561, 562
palisade arrangement in, 319, 319*f*, 328, 561, 561*f*
Coscinodiscus genus/spp., 370*f*
Coulter counter, 185
Counterstain
in acid-fast staining, 109
in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
in negative (capsule) stain, 110
in Schaeffer-Fulton endospore staining, 110
Coupled transport, 71, 71*f*
Covalent bonds, 30, 31*f*
in exchange/transfer reactions, 36
in hydrolysis, 35*f*, 36
nonpolar, 30–32, 31*f*, 34*t*
polar, 32, 32*f*, 34*t*
in synthesis reaction, 35, 35*f*
Cowpox, 690, 692–693
smallpox prevention and, 17, 495, 501*b*, 690, 691
Coxiella genus/spp., 333, 339*t*, 600, 600*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Coxsackie A virus, 719, 719*f*
Coxsackie B virus, 719–720
Crenarchaeota (phylum), 320*f*, 321
Crenation, 70, 170
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, variant, 21*b*, 47, 276, 400, 400*b*
Crimean–Congo hemorrhagic fever, 726*t*, 747
Cristae, 85*f*, 86
electron transport chains in, 138, 139*f*
Crop(s). *See also* Agricultural microbiology
in alternative fuel production, 766
biological threats to (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
assessing, 784
defense against, 785–786
Burkholderia in protection of, 595
genetically altered, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
ethical/safety issues and, 253
Crop management/yields, industrial microbiology/recombinant DNA technology and, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
ethical/safety issues and, 253
Cross bridges (peptide), 64, 64*f*
Crossing over, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Cross-matching, for blood transfusions, 522
Cross resistance, 300
Cross walls (septa), in hyphae, 358, 359*f*
Croup, 738
Crown gall disease, soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Crucibulum genus/spp., 364*f*
Crust, in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
Crustose lichens, 365, 366*f*
Cryptococcal (fungal) meningitis (cryptococcosis), 364, 646
Cryptococcoma, 646
Cryptococcosis, 645–646
Cryptococcus/Cryptococcus neoformans, 364, 366*t*, 645–646, 646*f*
meningitis caused by, 364, 646
Cryptosporidiosis, 354, 672–673, 672*f*, 673*t*, 769*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Cryptosporidium genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 672–673, 672*f*, 673*t*, 769*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
waterborne transmission of, 672, 769*t*
Crystal violet, 107, 108*f*, 111*t*
in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
CSF. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid
Ctenocephalides felis, as disease vector, in murine (endemic) typhus *(Rickettsia typhi)*, 609, 611*t*
Culex mosquitoes, as disease vectors
for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
for filariasis *(Wuchereria bancrofti)*, 681, 682
Culiseta mosquitoes, as disease vectors, for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
Culture (microbial), 172–180, 173*f*, 174*t*
animal, 180
for viruses, 180, 397
for biochemical testing, 117
cell, 180
for viruses, 180, 397–398, 398*f*
clinical sampling for, 172–173, 174*t*
continuous, in chemostat, 183–184, 183*f*
enrichment, 177
environmental sampling for, 172
low-oxygen, 180
media for, 172, 175–180, 176*f*. *See also* Culture media
preserving, 180
pure, 174–175, 174*f*, 175*f*
special techniques in, 180
viral, 180, 396–398, 397*f*, 398*f*
Culture media, 172, 175–180, 176*f*
anaerobic, 178–179, 179*f*
complex, 177, 179*t*

Culture media (*Continued*)
defined (synthetic), 176, 176*t*
differential, 177–178, 178*f*, 179*t*
enriched, 177
reducing, 178
selective, 177, 177*f*
selective and differential, 178, 179*f*
transport, 173, 179–180
Cuprum. *See* Copper
Curds, in cheese production, 758, 758*f*
Cutaneous anthrax, 327, 551, 781. *See also* Anthrax
Cutaneous aspergillosis, 644, 644*b*
Cutaneous blastomycosis, 638, 639*f*
Cutaneous candidiasis, 643*t*
Cutaneous cryptococcosis, 646
Cutaneous histoplasmosis, 636, 637
Cutaneous infections, 182*b*. *See also* Skin, diseases/infections of
Cutaneous leishmaniasis, 665, 667*b*, 673*t*
Cutaneous membrane. *See* Skin
Cutaneous mycoses, 649–651, 650*f*, 650*t*, 651*f*
Cutaneous sporotrichosis, 651, 651*f*
Cutaneous zygomycosis, 647
Cuticle
roundworm, 679
tapeworm, 674, 674*f*
CWD. *See* Chronic wasting disease
CXCR4 (fusin), in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*
in long-term nonprogressors, 735
Cyanobacteria (phylum), 320*f*, 323, 325*t*
Cyanobacteria (blue-green bacteria), 320*f*, 323, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*b*, 325*t*
bacteriophage of, oxygen production and, 382*b*
gas vesicles in, 72
in lichens, 364, 365, 366
neurologic disease caused by, 325*b*
nitrogen fixation by, 167, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*t*, 778
photosynthesis by, 323
pH range tolerated by, 38
Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), in lactose *(lac)* operon regulation, 214, 215*f*
Cyclic photophosphorylation, 149, 150*f*
Cyclophosphamide, 528, 529*t*
Cycloserine, 288, 302*t*
mechanism of action of, 288, 302*t*
Cyclospora genus/spp., 673, 673*t*
Cyclospora cayetanesis, 673, 673*t*
Cyclosporiasis, 673, 673*t*
Cyclosporine, 357, 528–529, 529*t*
Cysteine, 46*f*
Cystic acne, 566, 567*f*. *See also* Acne
Cysticerci, tapeworm, 675, 675*f*
Cystic fibrosis
Burkholderia infections and, 595
Pseudomonas infections and, 596–597
Cystitis (bladder infection), 15*t*
E. coli causing, 583
Cyst stage
of cestodes
Echinococcus (hydatid), 676, 676*f*
Taenia solium, 658
of protozoa, 351, 659
Acanthamoeba and *Naegleria,* 661
Entamoeba histolytica, 660, 661*f*
Giardia, 666
susceptibility and, 262, 262*f*
Cytidine, 292*f*
Cytochrome(s), in electron transport chains, 139*f*, 140, 141*b*
Cytochrome oxidase, 140
in *Neisseria,* 140, 575
Cytokine(s), 475, 476, 477–478, 477*t*. *See also specific type*
Cytokine network, 477
Cytokinesis (cytoplasmic division), 348, 348*f*
centrosomes in, 81
Cytolytic toxins, staphylococcal, 540
Cytomegalovirus genus/spp., 693, 701, 701*f*, 710*t*
mononucleosis, 701
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 701
Cytometry, flow, for microbial growth estimation, 185
Cytopathic effect, viral neutralization tests and, 506
Cytophaga genus/spp., 338, 339*t*
Cytoplasm, 71–72. *See also* Cytosol; Inclusion(s); Organelles
division of (cytokinesis), 348, 348*f*
centrosomes in, 81
in eukaryotic cells, 79–86, 87*t*
in prokaryotic cells, 57*f*, 77*t*
archaea, 77, 77*t*
bacteria, 71–75, 72*f*, 73*b*, 74*f*, 75*f*, 77*t*
Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes
antimicrobials affecting, 261, 286, 286*f*, 289–290, 290*f*, 304*t*, 307*t*
eukaryotic, 58*f*, 78–79, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*
function of/movement across
active processes in, 67, 70–71, 71*f*, 72*t*
in bacterial cells, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*
in eukaryotic cells, 78–79, 79*f*
passive processes in, 67, 68–70, 69*f*, 70*f*, 72*t*
permeability of, 66–67
phospholipid bilayers forming, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
cholesterol in, 41, 78
prokaryotic, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
archaeal, 76–77, 77*t*, 87*t*, 320
bacterial, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*, 77*t*, 87*t*
electron transport chains in, 138–139, 139*f*
resistance and, 299–300
Cytosine (C), 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Cytoskeleton, 74, 83*t*
of bacteria/prokaryotic cells, 74–75, 75*f*, 83*t*
of eukaryotic cells, 58*f*, 81, 81*f*, 83*t*
Cytosol
in archaea, 77, 87*t*
in bacteria, 72, 87*t*
in eukaryotic cells, 81, 87*t*
Cytotoxic drugs, immunosuppressive actions of, 528, 529*t*
Cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity, 520–523, 521*f*, 522*t*, 523*f*, 528*t*
ABO system/transfusion reactions and, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*
drug-induced, 523, 523*f*
Rh system/hemolytic disease of newborn and, 522, 523*f*
Cytotoxicity, antibody-dependent cellular (ADCC), 470–471, 471*f*
Cytotoxic T cells (Tc cells), 474, 475*t*
activation/function of, 480–482, 481*f*, 483*f*
CD95 pathway used by, 482, 483*f*
perforin-granzyme pathway used by, 482, 483*f*
regulation of, 483
Cytotoxin(s), 418, 419*f*
tracheal, 593

D. *See* Decimal reduction time
d4T. *See* Stavudine
Dairy products. *See also* Cheese; Milk
Brucella contamination of, 592
fermented, 145*f*, 758, 758*f*, 761*t*
pasteurization in microbial control and, 266. *See also* Pasteurization
Dalfopristin, 304*t*
Dalton (atomic mass unit), 27, 28*t*
Dane particles, 707, 708*f*
Dapsone, 305*t*
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 305*t*
Dark-field microscopy/microscopes, 98, 100, 100*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
Dark-field stop, 100, 100*f*
Dark reactions. *See* Light-independent reactions
Dark repair, 221, 221*f*
Darunavir, 307*t*
Darwin, Charles, 115, 661. *See also* Evolution
Data sharing, by public health agencies, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*, 432–433
Daughter cells
in binary fission, 180, 181*f*, 317, 317*f*
in cytokinesis, 348, 348*f*
in protozoal conjugation, 351, 351*f*
Daughter nuclei, 346, 347*f*, 348, 360
ddC. *See* Dideoxycytidine
ddI. *See* Dideoxyinosine
Deamination, 147, 147*f*
in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
"Death-cap mushroom," 652, 652*f*
Death (decline) phase, of microbial growth, 183, 183*f*
Decarboxylation
in acetyl-CoA synthesis, 135, 136*f*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Decimal reduction time (D), 264, 264*f*
Decimeter (dm), 95, 95*t*
Decline phase of disease, 421, 421*f*
Decline (death) phase of microbial growth, 183, 183*f*
Decolorizing agent
in acid-fast staining, 108
in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
in Schaeffer-Fulton endospore staining, 110
Decomposition/decomposers, in biogeochemical cycling, 777
carbon cycle, 778, 778*f*
Decomposition reactions, 35–36, 35*f*
Deep-freezing, for culture preservation, 180
Deeply branching bacteria, 320*f*, 323
Deer mouse, in *Hantavirus* transmission, 432*b*, 747
Deer ticks. *See also Ixodes* ticks; Tick(s)
as disease vectors
for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610, 611*t*
for Lyme disease *(Borrelia burgdorferi),* 619, 619*f*, 620*f*, 621
life cycle of, 619, 619*f*
taxonomic categories for, 114*f*
DEET (*N,N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide), in Lyme disease prevention, 621
Defecation, in host defense, 443*t*
Defensins (antimicrobial peptides), 440, 443, 458*t*
Defined (synthetic) media, 176, 176*t*
Definitive host, 659
for flukes, 677, 677*f*, 678
for nematodes (roundworms), 679, 680
for tapeworms, 675, 675*f*
Degenerative diseases, 415, 415*t*
Degerming, 259, 260*t*
Degranulation/degranulating cells, in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517–518, 517*f*, 518*t*
Dehydration synthesis, 35, 35*f*
of fats, 40
in peptide bond formation, 46, 47*f*
of polysaccharides, 43
of sucrose, 43, 44*f*
Dehydrogenation reactions, 127. *See also* Oxidation
Deinococcus genus/spp./*Deinococcus radiodurans,* 323
radiation resistance of, 248, 323
Deinococcus-thermus (phylum), 320*f*, 323
Delayed (type IV) hypersensitivity, 526–528, 526*f*, 527*f*, 528*t*
allergic contact dermatitis as, 526–527, 527*f*
donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
graft rejection as, 527, 527*f*
graft-versus-host disease and, 527–528
tuberculin response as, 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*
Deletion (frameshift mutation), 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
Delivery potential, assessing biological threats and, 783
Delta agent (hepatitis D virus), 720*t*, 748, 750*t*
hepatitis B virus coinfection and, 707, 748
Delta F_c region/heavy chains, 469, 473, 474*t*
Deltaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 334–336, 336*f*, 339*t*
Deltaretrovirus genus/spp., 728, 728–729, 729*f*, 750*t*
Deltavirus genus/spp. (delta agent), 720*t*, 748, 750*t*
hepatitis B virus coinfection and, 707, 748
Dementia, in Creutzfeldt-Jakob/variant Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease, 21*b*, 400*b*
Denaturation
DNA, in polymerase chain reaction, 243, 243*f*
protein/enzyme, 48, 130, 131*f*
antimicrobial action and, 261
Dendrites, 478, 479*f*

Dendritic cells, 440, 478, 479*f*. *See also* Antigen-presenting cells
in antibody immune responses, 484, 484–486, 485*f*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
HIV affecting, 730*t*, 731, 735
in host defense, 440, 441, 445–446, 478, 479*f*
Dengue fever/dengue hemorrhagic fever, 240*b*, 722–723, 724*b*, 724*f*, 725*f*, 726*t*
Dengue viruses, 240*b*, 722–723, 724*b*, 724*f*, 725*f*
Denitrification, 779, 779*f*
Dental caries (cavities), 59, 172, 173*b*
viridans streptococci causing, 547, 547*f*
Dental plaque (biofilm), 59, 63*b*, 172, 173*b*, 413, 414*f*
Selenomonas in, 326, 328*b*
viridans streptococci in, 547, 547*f*
Deoxyribonucleases
group A streptococci *(Streptococcus pyogenes)* producing, 544
group B streptococci *(Streptococcus agalactiae)* producing, 546
Deoxyribonucleic acid. *See* DNA
Deoxyribonucleoside, 49
Deoxyribose, 42, 49, 49*f*, 194
Dermacentor ticks
as disease vectors, 424*t*
for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610
for Rocky Mountain spotted fever *(Rickettsia rickettsii)*, 608, 611*t*
taxonomic classification of, 114*f*
Dermatitis, allergic contact, 526–527, 527*f*
dermato- (prefix), 415*t*
Dermatomes, shingles lesions following, 697, 698*f*
Dermatophytes, 410*t*, 634, 648–649, 648*t*, 649*b*
as emerging pathogens, 634
transmission of, 633
Dermatophytoses/ringworm, 410*t*, 648–649, 648*t*, 649*b*
Dermicidins, 440
Dermis, 412*f*, 439
in host defense, 440
Dermonecrotic toxin, 593
Descriptive epidemiology, 428, 430*f*
Desiccation
in microbial control/food preservation, 267, 267*f*, 271*t*, 762
in specimen preparation, 107
Desmosomes, staphylococcal exfoliative toxin affecting, 540
Desulfovibrio genus/spp., 140, 334–335, 339*t*
in sulfur cycle, 334, 335, 779
Detergents, 274–275, 274*f*, 277*t*
Deuteromycota (division)/deuteromycetes, 361, 364
Devil's grip (pleurodynia), coxsackie B virus causing, 720
Dextran, viridans streptococci producing, 547
D forms, 46, 47*f*
dGTP. *See* Guanosine triphosphate nucleotide
DHAP. *See* Dihydroxyacetone phosphate
d'Herelle, Felix, 390*b*
DHF. *See* Dengue fever/dengue hemorrhagic fever
Diabetes mellitus
coxsackie B virus infection and, 720
type I, autoimmunity in, 530
Diapedesis, 445, 455, 456*f*
Diaper rash, candidal, 642*f*
Diarrhea. *See also specific cause and* Dysentery; Foodborne illnesses
adenoviruses causing, 705
antimicrobial-associated *(C. difficile)* (pseudomembranous colitis), 297, 326, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
astroviruses causing, 721, 721*f*, 750*t*
caliciviruses causing, 721, 721*f*
Campylobacter jejuni causing, 624–625, 626*b*
in cholera, 12, 623
Clostridium difficile causing, 297, 326, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
contaminated drinking water causing, 768
in cryptosporidiosis, 672
Cyclospora causing, 673
E. coli causing, 584
Enterobacteriaceae causing, 581–582
in giardiasis, 666, 666*b*
Norovirus causing, 715, 721, 750*t*, 769*b*
rotaviruses causing, 749, 749*f*, 750*t*
Salmonella causing, 586, 586*f*
in shigellosis, 15*t*, 586, 587
traveler's, 15*t*
Vibrio cholerae causing, 12, 623
Vibrio parahaemolyticus causing, 624
Diatom(s), 5, 6*f*, 370–371, 370*f*, 371*t*
Diatomaceous earth, 371
microbial production of, 13*t*, 371
DIC. *See* Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Dichotomous keys, 119, 119*f*
for Enterobacteriaceae, 580*f*
Dicloxacillin, 302*t*
Dictyostelium genus/spp., 357, 358*t*
Dideoxycytidine (ddC), 292*f*
Dideoxyinosine (ddI), 292*f*
Didinium genus/spp., 354, 354*f*, 358*t*
Diethylcarbamazine, 308*t*
N,N-Diethyl-*m*-toluamide. *See* DEET
Differential interference contrast (Nomarski) microscopy/microscopes, 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
Differential media, 177–178, 178*f*, 179*t*
Differential stains, 108–110, 109*f*, 110*f*, 111*t*. *See also specific type*
Differential white blood cell count, 446, 446*b*
Diffusion, 68, 69*f*, 72*t*
facilitated, 68, 69*f*, 72*t*
Diffusion susceptibility (Kirby-Bauer) tests, 294, 294*f*, 296*b*
DiGeorge syndrome, 531, 533*t*
Digestive system
in host defense, 442, 443*t*
microbial diseases of. *See* Foodborne illnesses; Gastroenteritis
normal microbiota of, 408*t*
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
Digestive vesicles (phagolysosomes), 85*f*, 447, 447*f*
Dihydrofolic acid, antimicrobials affecting, 290, 291*f*
Dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP)
in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
in fat catabolism, 146, 146*f*
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, A-6
Dikaryon, 361, 361*f*
in ascomycete reproduction, 362, 363*f*
Dilutions
in MPN method, 185–186, 187*f*
in pour-plate technique, 175, 175*f*
serial, 185, 186*f*
Dilution tests
broth, 294, 295*f*
use, 277
Dimers, ultraviolet light causing formation of, 219, 219*f*, 271
repair of, 220–221, 221*f*
Dimorphic fungi, 358, 359*f*, 636, 636*f*
Dinitrogen gas, 778. *See also* Nitrogen
Dinoflagellates, 354, 354*f*, 358*t*, 371*t*
blooms of, intoxications caused by, 354, 768
Dioecious, 674
Dipeptide, 47, 47*f*
Diphtheria, 14, 15*t*, 284, 328, 561–562, 561*f*
immunization against, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 561, 562
Diphtheria antitoxin, 561
Diphtheria toxin, 561
Diphtheria toxoid, 562
Diphtheroids, 418*f*
Diplobacilli, 319*f*
Diplococcus genus/spp./diplococci, 113, 318, 318*f*. *See also Neisseria* genus/spp.; *Streptococcus pneumoniae*
Diploid cell(s), 196
Diploid cell cultures, for viruses, 398
Diploid cell vaccine, human (HDCV), 470. *See also* Rabies vaccine
Diploid nucleus, 345, 347*f*
in fungal reproduction, 361, 361*f*, 362, 362*f*, 363, 363*f*
Diplomonadida (kingdom)/diplomonads, 349, 349*f*, 352, 358*t*
Dipylidium caninum, 410*t*
Direct contact transmission of disease, 422, 425*t*
Direct fluorescent antibody tests, 506, 507*f*, 511*t*
for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, 614, 614*f*
Direct immunofluorescence stain, for fungi, 634, 635*f*
Directly Observed Treatment, Shortcouse (DOTS), for tuberculosis, 565
Disaccharides, 43, 44*f*
Disease, 414. *See also* Infection/infectious diseases
biofilm manipulation in prevention of, 171–172
categories of, 415, 415*t*
causes of (etiology), 11–16, 15*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 414–416, 415*t*, 417*f*
defenses against, 20–21. *See also* Host defenses; Immune response
nonspecific (innate immunity), 438–462, 458*t*. *See also* Innate immunity
specific (adaptive immunity), 439, 463–493. *See also* Adaptive immunity
diagnosis/treatment of
clinical sampling and, 172, 172–173, 174*t*
recombinant DNA techniques and, 250–251
DNA microarrays, 245
epidemiology of, 17, 18*f*, 19*t*, 425–433. *See also* Epidemiology
frequency of, 425–428, 426*f*, 427*f*, 428*t*, 429*f*
germ theory of, 13, 20, 416
manifestations of, 414, 414*t*
prevention of, 16–18
probiotics in, 7*b*, 298*b*
reportable, monitoring, bioterrorism defense and, 785
terminology of, 415*t*
Disease process, 420
Disease surveillance, bioterrorism defense and, 785
Disease vectors. *See* Vectors, in disease transmission
Disinfection/disinfectants, 17, 259, 260*t*
chemical agents, 259, 271–278, 277*t*
evaluation of efficacy of, 276–278
resistance and, 278, 278*b*
in wastewater treatment, 772*f*, 773
in water treatment, 770–771, 770*f*
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 575
Dissimilation, sulfur, 779, 779*f*
Dissociation (ionization), 33, 33*f*, 36
Distilled spirits, fermentation in production of, 759, 761*t*
Distribution, antimicrobial drug, 296
Disulfide bridges, 48, 48*f*
Diversity, B cell receptor, 469, 472*b*
Diversity (D_H) gene segment, 472*b*
Divisions, 349
classification of algae into, 368
classification of fungi into, 361, 366*t*
DNA, 49–51, 50*f*, 51*t*
antimicrobial activity of, 448
in archaea, 87*t*, 194–196, 198*t*
autoantibodies against, in systemic lupus erythematosus, 525
automated sequencing of, 248, 248*f*, 249*t*. *See also* Nucleotide sequencing
in bacteria, 72, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
in chloroplasts, 197–198
classification and, 113, 119
complementary (cDNA), 238
reverse transcriptase in synthesis of, 237–238
double helix structure of, 50, 50*f*, 105*f*, 193, 194, 195*f*
hydrogen bonds and, 34
double-stranded, 50, 194, 195*f*, 198*t*
in viruses, 380, 385*t*, 690. *See also* Double-stranded DNA viruses
eukaryotic, 82, 87*t*, 196–198, 197*f*, 198*t*, 345

DNA (*Continued*)
extranuclear, 197–198
function of, 50
hybridization of, 188
with fluorescent probes, 248, 248*f*
insertion of into cells, 246, 247*f*
vaccine development and, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
antifungal vaccines and, 635
mitochondrial, 197–198
in killing by eosinophils, 448
in nuclear division (mitosis/meiosis), 345–348, 347*f*, 350*t*
prokaryotic, 72, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
recombinant. *See* Recombinant DNA technology
in recombinant vaccines, 497, 498*f*
repair of, 220–222, 221*f*
methylation and, 202, 221–222
replication of, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*, 213*t*
antimicrobials affecting, 286*f*, 291–293, 292*f*, 305*t*, 310*t*
in binary fission, 180, 181*f*
eukaryotic DNA and, 202
polymerase chain reaction and, 201*b*, 242–243, 243*f*, 249*t*
prokaryotic/bacterial DNA and, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*
single-stranded, in viruses, 380, 385*t*, 690. *See also* Single-stranded DNA viruses
structure of, 50, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
synthesis of, 155, 156*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 286*f*, 305*t*, 310*t*
synthetic, 238–239, 249*t*
in transduction, 226, 226*f*
in transformation, 225, 225*f*, 226, 229*t*
viral, 379, 379–380
synthesis of, 391–392, 393*t*, 395*t*
in dsDNA viruses, 392, 393*t*
in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 732
in ssDNA viruses, 392, 393*t*
DNA fingerprinting, 248, 250, 250*f*
bioterrorism defense and, 786
Southern blots for, 245
in water quality testing, 771
DNA gyrase. *See* Gyrase
DNA helicases, 199, 200*f*, 202
DNA ligase
in DNA repair, 221, 221*f*
in genetic recombination, 224, 224*f*
in lagging strand synthesis, 200*f*, 201
DNA microarrays, 245, 246*f*, 249*t*
for genetic screening, 250
DNA photolyase, 220
DNA polymerases, 199, 200*f*, 201*b*
antimicrobials affecting, 292
in DNA repair, 221, 221*f*
in eukaryotic DNA replication, 202
in lagging strand synthesis, 200*f*, 201
in leading strand synthesis, 199, 200*f*, 201
in polymerase chain reaction, 201*b*, 243, 243*f*
DNA primer, in polymerase chain reaction, 243, 243*f*
DNA probes, 249*t*. *See also* Probe(s)
synthetic nucleic acids in synthesis of, 239
DNA sequencing. *See* Genomics; Nucleotide sequencing
DNA viruses, 380, 385*t*, 689–714, 710*t*. *See also specific type*
adenoviruses *(Adenoviridae),* 385*t*, 690, 704–706, 705*b*, 705*f*, 706*b*, 710*t*
assembly of, 392, 395*t*
hepadnaviruses *(Hepadnaviridae),* 384, 385*t*, 690, 706–709, 706*f*, 707*f*, 708*b*, 708*f*, 710*t*
herpesviruses *(Herpesviridae),* 384, 385*t*, 690, 693–702, 694*f*, 710*t*
papillomaviruses *(Papillomaviridae),* 385*t*, 690, 702, 702–704, 703*f*, 704*b*, 710*t*
parvoviruses *(Parvoviridae),* 385*t*, 690, 709, 709*f*, 710*t*
pathogenic, 689–714, 710*t*
placenta crossed by, 413*t*
polyomaviruses *(Polyomaviridae),* 385*t*, 690, 702, 704, 710*t*
poxviruses *(Poxviridae),* 385*t*, 690, 690–693, 690*f*, 691*f*, 692*b*, 692*f*, 693*b*, 710*t*
synthesis in, 391–392, 393*t*, 395*t*
Dog tapeworms *(Echinococcus granulosus),* 675–676, 676*f*, 683*t*
Dog ticks. *See Dermacentor* ticks; Tick(s)
Dolor, in inflammation, 454
Domagk, Gerhard, 20–21, 285
Domains, 57, 114*f*, 115, 319, 320*f*
Domestic water, 782
Donor cell, in horizontal (lateral) gene transfer, 225, 228–229
Donor organs, rejection of
donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
MHC antigen discovery and, 478
Donor-recipient matching
blood transfusions and, 522
prevention of graft rejection and, 528
DOTS. *See* Directly Observed Treatment, Shortcouse
Double covalent bond, 30, 31*f*
Double helix, of DNA, 50, 50*f*, 105*f*, 193, 194, 195*f*
hydrogen bonds and, 34
Double-stranded DNA, 50, 194, 195*f*, 198*t*
in viruses, 380, 385*t*, 690
Double-stranded DNA viruses, 380, 385*t*, 690, 710*t*
synthesis in, 392, 393*t*
Double-stranded RNA viruses, 380, 385*t*, 716, 748–749, 750*t*
naked segmented, 748–749, 750*t*
synthesis in, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
Doxycycline, 304*t*
Drain opener, microbial production of, 13*t*
Drinking (potable) water, 433, 768–769
contamination of, 428, 430*f*, 433, 768. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
testing quality of, 771, 771*f*
treatment of, 768–771, 770*f*
Droplet nuclei, 422
Droplet transmission of disease, 422, 422*f*, 423*b*, 425*t*
Drug(s), 284. *See also specific type and* Antimicrobial agents
Drug abuse, HIV infection/AIDS and, 734, 734*f*, 742*b*
Drug administration routes, 296, 296*f*
Drug allergies, 297, 467
Drug distribution, 296
Drug-induced cytotoxic (type II) hypersensitivity, 523, 523*f*
Drug resistance. *See* Resistance
Dry heat, in microbial control, 267, 271*t*
Drying (desiccation)
in microbial control/food preservation, 267, 267*f*, 271*t*, 762
in specimen preparation, 107
Dry weight method, for microbial growth estimation, 188
dsDNA. *See* Double-stranded DNA
dsDNA viruses. *See* Double-stranded DNA viruses
dsRNA viruses. *See* Double-stranded RNA viruses
DTaP (acellular pertussis) vaccine, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 594
Duffy antigens, absence of, malaria resistance and, 669
Duplication (mutation), 217
Durham tube, 178*f*
Dust mites, 440*b*, 518*f*
Dye(s)
microbial production of, 766, 766*b*
for specimen preparation. *See* Staining
Dysentery. *See also specific causative agent and* Diarrhea
amebic, 355, 660, 673*t*
waterborne transmission of, 660, 769*t*
in balantidiasis, 660, 673*t*
Dyspnea, in respiratory syncytial virus infection, 738
Ear(s)
as portal of entry, 412*f*
as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Ear infections, *Prevotella* causing, 601
Eastern equine encephalitis (EEE), 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
Ebola virus/Ebola hemorrhagic fever, 378, 385*t*, 741–742, 741*f*, 750*t*
safe handling and, 263, 264*f*, 741–742, 742*f*
EBs. *See* Elementary bodies
EBV. *See* Epstein-Barr virus
Echinocandins, 288, 307*t*, 635
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 307*t*
Echinococcus granulosus, 675–676, 676*f*, 683*t*
Echoviruses, 719, 720
E. coli. *See Escherichia coli*
Ecological microbiology, 18*f*, 774–775, 775*f*
adaptation/survival and, 775
associations and
levels of, 775, 775*f*
microbial growth and, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*
*Eco*RI restriction enzyme, 239, 239*t*
*Eco*RII restriction enzyme, 239, 239*t*
Ecosystems, 1, 775, 775*f*
aquatic
freshwater, 782, 782–783, 782*f*
marine, 782, 782*f*, 783
specialized, 783
Ectopic pregnancy, pelvic inflammatory disease and, 576
Ectothrix invasion, in tinea capitis, 648*t*
Edema, in inflammation, 454
Edible vaccines, 250, 251*b*
Edwardsiella genus/spp., 580*f*, 585
EEE. *See* Eastern equine encephalitis
Efficacy
of antimicrobial drugs, 294
of antimicrobial methods
antisepsis and disinfection, 276–278
factors affecting, 261–263, 262*f*
microbial death rate and, 260
Efflux pumps, 300
Eflornithine, 310*t*
for *Trypanosoma brucei,* 664
Eggs
culturing viruses in, 397, 397*f*
vaccine manufacture and, 397, 499
Salmonella contamination of, 586
Ehrlich, Paul, 18, 18*f*, 20, 284
Ehrlichia genus/spp., 610–611, 610*f*, 611*t*
Ehrlichia equi. *See Anaplasma phagocytophilum*
Ehrlichiosis, 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*, 611*t*
EIA. *See* Enzyme immunoassay
80S ribosomes. *See* Eukaryotic ribosomes
Elastase, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* producing, 596
Electrical gradient, 67–68, 67*f*. *See also* Electrochemical gradient
Electrochemical gradient, 140
in active processes, 71, 71*f*
in chemiosmosis, 140, 141
in passive processes/diffusion, 68, 69*f*
Electrolytes, 33–34, 39
Electromagnetic radiation, 270. *See also* Radiation; Ultraviolet light
in microbial control, 270–271, 270*f*, 271*t*
Electromagnetic spectrum, microscopy and, 96, 96*f*
Electron(s), 27, 27*f*
atomic mass of, 27, 28*t*
chemical bonds and, 29–34, 31*f*, 32*f*, 33*f*, 34*t*
configurations of, behavior of atom and, 28–29, 29*f*, 30*f*
in microbial growth, 164
in oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions, 126, 126*f*
primary, in scanning electron microscopy, 104
Electron acceptor, 126, 126*f*
chlorophyll reaction center, 149, 149*f*
final. *See* Final electron acceptor
Electron beams
in microbial control, 270, 271*t*
in scanning electron microscopy, 104

in scanning tunneling microscopy, 105
in transmission electron microscopy, 103
Electron carrier molecules, 127, 138, 138*f*, 140
Electron configurations, 28–29, 29*f*, 30*f*
Electron-dense stains, 111
Electron donor, 126, 126*f*
Electronegativity, 30, 32*f*
in ionic bonds, 33
in nonpolar covalent bonds, 30, 32*f*
in polar covalent bonds, 32
Electronic counters, for microbial growth estimation, 185
Electron microscopy/microscopes, 102–104, 103*f*, 104*f*, 105*f*
resolving power of, 97*f*
staining specimens for, 111
preparation and, 107
Electron shells/clouds, 28–29, 29*f*
Electron transport/electron transport chain, 133, 134*f*, 138–140, 138*f*, 139*f*, 141*b*, 142*t*, 157*f*
in photosynthesis, 149
Electrophoresis, 244, 244*f*, 249*t*
in Southern blot, 244–245, 245*f*
in western blot, 509
Electroporation, 246, 247*f*, 249*t*
Elek test, in diphtheria, 561
Element(s) (chemical), 27, 28*t*
for microbial growth, 164, 167
periodic table of, 30*f*
Elementary bodies
chlamydias forming, 338, 612, 612*f*
in *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* growth/reproduction, 610, 610*f*
Elephantiasis
in filariasis, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 613
Elimination, in phagocytosis, 447–448, 447*f*
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), 117, 507–508, 508*f*, 511*t*
antibody sandwich, 508, 509*f*
in HIV diagnosis, 508, 734
in western blot, 509*f*, 510
Elongation
RNA transcript, 205*f*, 206, 206*f*
in translation, 212–213, 212*f*, 213*f*
Elongation factor, 207, 212
Embden-Meyerhof pathway (glycolysis), 133–134, 134*f*, 135*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-6 to A-7
alternatives to, 142
lipid biosynthesis and, 153, 154*f*
Embryonated chicken eggs, culturing viruses in, 397, 397*f*
vaccine manufacture and, 397, 399
Emerging/reemerging diseases, 1, 8*b*, 736*b*
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 263*b*
aspergillosis, 369*b*
babesiosis, 672*b*
blastomycosis, 645*b*
Buruli ulcer, 568*b*
Chikungunya, 8*b*, 394*b*
community-associated MRSA, 298*b*
dengue, 240*b*
dermatophytoses, 634
ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610
filovirus infections, 736
fungal opportunists in HIV infection/AIDS and, 641, 647, 729*t*
influenza, 8*b*, 745, 745*b*
malaria, 668
melioidosis, 595, 596*b*
microsporidiosis, 488*b*
monkeypox, 8*b*, 693*b*
necrotizing fasciitis, 118*b*
Nipah encephalitis, 8*b*, 736*b*
Norovirus gastroenteritis, 715, 721, 750*t*, 769*b*
pertussis (whooping cough), 8*b*, 335*b*, 594
Plasmodium infection, 668
polio, 8*b*, 717–719, 718*f*, 719*f*
Rickettsia parkeri infection, 609*b*
schistosomiasis, 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS), 8*b*, 242, 405, 717*t*, 727, 728*f*
variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 21*b*
Vibrio vulnificus infection, 204*b*
West Nile encephalitis, 8*b*, 426*f*
-emia (suffix), of, 415*t*
Emigration (diapedesis), 445, 455, 456*f*
Empty magnification, 97
Empyema, 542
Encephalitis
amebic, *Acanthamoeba* causing, 661, 673*t*
arboviral, 722, 723*f*. *See also specific type*
bunyaviruses causing, 726*t*, 747, 750*t*
flaviviruses/togaviruses causing, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Japanese, 385*t*, 722, 726*t*
immunization against, 500*t*
Nipah, 8*b*, 736*b*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
smallpox vaccine and, 501*b*
Encephalitozoon genus/spp., 361, 488*b*
Encephalopathies, spongiform, 400, 400*b*, 400*f*
bovine (BSE/mad cow disease), 21*b*, 47, 276, 400
Encystment, 660
Endemic disease, 426, 427*f*
Endemic (murine) typhus, 609, 611*t*
Endergonic pathways, 126
endo- (prefix), 415*t*
Endocarditis
candidal, 643*t*
pneumococcal, 549
staphylococcal, 542
Endocrine (hormonal) diseases, 415, 415*t*
autoimmunity and, 530–531
Endocytosis, 78, 79*f*, 79*t*, 85*f*
in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*
Endoflagella/axial filaments, 61, 61*f*, 338, 615, 620*b*
Endogenous antigens, 467, 468*f*
processing of, 479–480, 479*f*
Endogenous nosocomial infections, 430, 431, 431*f*
Endoplasmic reticulum, 82, 83*t*, 84*f*
rough, 58*f*, 82, 84*f*
smooth, 58*f*, 82, 84*f*, 85*f*
Endosome, in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*
Endospores, 57, 72–74, 74*f*, 87*t*, 109, 316–317, 316*f*. *See also specific organisms*
antimicrobial susceptibility and, 262, 262*f*
Bacillus, 72, 109, 110*f*, 316, 316*f*, 326, 550, 551
clostridial, 72, 109, 316, 316*f*, 326, 552, 553, 554, 555, 555*b*
botulism and, 264, 553, 554, 555, 555*b*
tetanus and, 555, 556, 556*f*
death phase of microbial growth and, 183
food contamination and, 264, 553, 554, 555, 555*b*, 762
industrial canning and, 762, 762*f*
in soilborne diseases, 781
staining, 109–110, 110*f*, 111*t*
as sterilization indicator, 266, 266*f*
Endosymbiotic theory, 86
Endothermic reactions, 35, 35*f*
Endothrix invasion, in tinea capitis, 648*t*
Endotoxin (lipid A), 66, 418, 419*f*, 420*t*, 575
in Enterobacteriaceae, 580, 581*f*
in *Neisseria*, 575, 577
in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, 596
Shiga-like, 584
End-product inhibition (feedback inhibition/negative feedback), 132–133, 133*f*
Energy. *See also* ATP
activation, enzymes affecting, 128, 129*f*, 130
in anabolic and catabolic pathways, 125, 126
decomposition reactions producing, 35–36, 35*f*
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, 142*t*, A-6, A-7
for microbial growth, 164, 165*f*
storage/release of
ATP and, 51, 51*f*, 125, 125*f*, 126
fats and, 40
synthesis reactions requiring, 35, 35*f*
Energy parasites, chlamydias as, 612
Enriched media, 177
Enrichment culture, 177
Entamoeba genus/spp., 355, 358*t*, 660–661, 661*f*, 673*t*
amebiasis caused by, 660–661, 673*t*
virulence factors of, 418
waterborne transmission of, 660, 661, 769*t*
Entecavir, 306*t*
Enteric bacteria. *See* Enterobacteriaceae
Enteric cytopathic human orphan virus (echovirus), 719, 720
Enteric hepatitis (hepatitis E), 720*t*, 721, 750*t*
Enteritis, *Cryptosporidium*, 672–673, 673*t*
Enterobacter genus/spp., 335*t*, 584–585
nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Enterobacteriaceae, 334, 335*t*, 579–589, 579*f*, 580*f*, 581*f*. *See also specific types*
coliforms, 582–585, 583*b*, 584*f*
nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
culturing, 581, 581*f*
dichotomous key for identification of, 580*f*
diseases caused by, 581–582
noncoliforms, 585, 585*f*
nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
opportunistic, 582–585
oxidase test and, 579, 579*f*
pathogenic, 585–589
sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
virulence/pathogenicity of, 580–581, 581*f*
Enterobius vermicularis (pinworm), 681, 681*f*, 683*t*
Enterococcus genus/spp./enterococci, 326, 327–328, 549–550, 549*f*, 550*t*
culture of, 177–178, 178*f*
Entner-Doudoroff pathway used by, 142, 144*f*
resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 230*b*, 300, 550
vancomycin resistance and, 268*f*, 550
Enterotoxin(s), 418
clostridial, 552
in *E. coli* gastroenteritis, 583
in *Shigella* diarrhea, 586, 587
in staphylococcal intoxication (food poisoning), 540, 541, 764, 764*t*
Enterovirus genus/spp./enteroviruses, 717–720, 750*t*
poliomyelitis (polio) caused by, 385*t*, 717–719, 718*f*, 719*f*, 750*t*
Entner-Doudoroff pathway, 142, 144*f*, A-9
Entry
in infection. *See* Portals of entry
virus
in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*
in bacteriophage replication, 386, 387*f*, 388, 389*f*
in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
Envelope
nuclear, 57, 58*f*, 82, 83*f*, 196
viral/enveloped viruses/virions, 379, 383, 384*f*
antimicrobial action/susceptibility and, 261, 262, 262*f*
budding in release and, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
entry of host cell and, 391, 391*f*
negative ssRNA viruses
segmented, 742–748, 750*t*
unsegmented, 735–742
persistent infections and, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
positive ssRNA viruses, 721–727, 750*t*
with reverse transcriptase (retroviruses), 716, 728–735, 750*t*
Environment
antimicrobial efficacy affected by, 262–263, 262*f*
autoimmunity and, 530
microbial population of soil and, 780
response to, as characteristic of life, 56, 56*t*
role of microbes in, 20, 774–783. *See also* Environmental microbiology

Environmental antigens, in type I hypersensitivity, 516, 516*b*
Environmental microbiology, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 757, 774–783. *See also* Bioremediation
  aquatic microbiology and, 782–783, 782*f*
  biogeochemical cycles and, 777–780, 778*f*, 779*f*
  DNA microarrays in, 245, 246*f*, 249*t*, 250
  microbial ecology and, 18*f*, 774–775, 775*f*
  recombinant DNA technology and, 236, 248–249
  soil microbiology and, 780–781, 780*f*, 781*t*
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), water standards set by, 769
Environmental specimens, for microbial culture, 172
Enzyme(s), 46, 125, 127–133
  active site of, 128–129, 128*f*, 129*f*
    inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
  activity of, 128–133, 129*f*, 130*f*
    allosteric control of, 132, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
    enzyme/substrate concentration and, 131, 131*f*
    inhibition of, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
    pH affecting, 130, 131*f*
    temperature affecting, 130, 131*f*
  antimicrobial, 276, 277*t*
  denaturation of, 130, 131*f*
  extracellular, as virulence factors, 418, 419*f*. *See also specific enzyme and specific organism*
  in fermentation, Buchner's demonstration of, 11, 18*f*
  makeup of, 128, 128*f*
  in metabolism, 11, 125
  microbial production of, 765–766, 766*b*, 768*t*
  naming/classification of, 127–128, 128*t*
  restriction. *See* Restriction enzymes
  substrate specificity and, 129, 129*f*
    inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
Enzyme cofactors, 128, 128*f*, 129*t*
Enzyme immunoassay (EIA), 507–508, 508*f*. *See also* Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 117, 507–508, 508*f*, 511*t*
  antibody sandwich, 508, 509*f*
  in HIV diagnosis, 508, 734
  in western blot, 509*f*, 510
Enzyme-substrate specificity, 129, 129*f*
  inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
Eosin
  in histological stain, 110
  in negative stain, 110
Eosinophil(s), 444*f*, 445, 445*f*, 458*t*, 517
  in innate immunity/host defense, 445, 448, 458*t*
  in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 518
Eosinophilia, 448
EPA (Environmental Protection Agency), water standards set by, 769
Epidemic cholera. *See* Cholera
Epidemic disease, 426–428, 427*f*
  common-source, food poisoning and, 764
Epidemic relapsing (louse-born) fever, 621, 621*f*
Epidemic (louse-born) typhus, 608–609, 611*t*
Epidemiology, 17, 18*f*, 19*t*, 425–433
  analytical, 428–430
  bioterrorism defense and, 785
  descriptive, 428, 430*f*
  disease frequency and, 425–428, 426*f*, 427*f*, 428*t*, 429*f*
  experimental, 430, 431*b*
  hospital, 430–432, 431*f*. *See also* Nosocomial infections
  Koch's experiments/postulates and, 14–15, 18*f*, 416, 417*f*, 430
  public health and, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*, 432–433, 432*b*
  research studies used in, 428–430, 430*f*, 431*b*
Epidermis, 412*f*, 439
  in host defense, 439–440
  in staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, 541, 541*f*
Epidermophyton genus/spp., 410*t*, 648, 648*t*
Epiglotitis, *Haemophilus influenzae* causing, 590
Epimastigotes
  in *Trypanosoma brucei* life cycle, 663, 663*f*
  in *Trypanosoma cruzi* life cycle, 662, 662*f*
Epinephrine, for anaphylactic shock/type I hypersensitivity, 519, 520
Epithelium, mucous, in host defense, 441
Epithet, specific, 113
Epitopes (antigenic determinants), 467, 468*f*
  antibody binding to, 469–470
  antigen-binding site complementarity and, 469, 469*f*
  clonal deletion of T cells and, 476, 476*f*
  MHC proteins and, 478
Epsilon antibodies. *See* Immunoglobulin E
Epsilon F_c region/heavy chains, 469, 473, 474*t*
Epsilonproteobacteria, 320*f*, 337, 339*t*, 624
Epstein-Barr virus (EBV/human herpesvirus 4), 693, 699–701, 699*f*
Epulopiscium genus/spp., 326, 329*t*
  genome of, 195–196
  reproduction in, 317
Equine encephalitis, Eastern (EEE)/Western (WEE)/Venezuelan (VEE), 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
ER. *See* Endoplasmic reticulum
Ergometrine, 652
Ergosterol, in fungal membrane
  antifungal drugs affecting, 635
  drugs affecting, 289, 290*f*, 307*t*
Ergot alkaloids, 652
Ergotamine, 652
Erysipelas, 545, 545*f*
Erythema infectiosum (fifth disease), 709, 709*f*
  placental transmission of, 413*t*
Erythrocyte(s) (red blood cells), 444, 444*f*
  in malaria/*Plasmodium* life cycle, 668–669, 669, 669*f*, 670*b*, 670*f*
Erythrocytic cycle, in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 668–669, 669*f*
Erythrogenic toxins. *See* Pyrogenic (erythrogenic) toxins
Erythromycin, 285*b*, 303*t*
  mechanism of action of, 288, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*b*, 285*t*, 303*t*
  resistance to, 300
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 303*t*
Erythropoietin, recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Erythrose 4-phosphate, 153*t*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
  in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Erythrovirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 709, 710*t*
Eschar, in cutaneous anthrax, 551, 551*f*
Escherichia genus/spp., 335*t*
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
  sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Escherichia coli, 15*t*, 57*f*, 108*f*, 109*f*, 113, 319*f*, 334, 579*f*, 582–584, 583*b*
  cell walls of, 65
  clotting factor produced by, 20
  conjugation/conjugation pili in, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*
  culture of, 174*f*, 175, 176*t*, 178*f*, 179*f*
  diseases caused by
    foodborne, 764*t*
    traveler's diarrhea, 15*t*
    waterborne, 769*t*
  DNA microarray of, 245
  gene expression regulation in, 214–216, 215*f*, 216*f*
  genes/genome of, 193
  Gram-negative predators and, 597*b*
  growth curve of, 183*f*
  as indicator organism, 771, 771*f*
  in indigo production, 766*b*
  isoleucine inhibition in, 133
  lambda phage of, 388, 389*f*
    replication of, 388, 389*f*
  metabolism in, 126
  O157:H7, 117, 580, 582, 583–584, 764*t*
    bioterrorism and, 785*t*
    fluorescent phages in identification of, 112*b*
    operons in, 214–216, 215*f*, 216*f*
    pasteurization in control of, 266
    pharmaceuticals produced by, 767*t*
    in recombinant DNA technology/genetic engineering, 20, 767*t*
    restriction enzymes produced by, 239, 239*t*
    safe handling of, 263
    size of, 57*f*, 382*f*
    T4 (type 4) bacteriophage of, 382*f*, 384*f*
      replication of, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*
    temperature affecting growth of, 168*f*
    virulence of, 582
    water contamination/waterborne transmission and, 769*t*, 771, 771*f*
E site, ribosomal, 211, 211*f*
Esophageal candidiasis, 643*t*
Essential amino acids, 154
Ester group, 40*t*
Esters, in fat synthesis, 40, 41*f*
Estrogen, autoimmunity and, 530
Etest, 295, 295*f*
Ethambutol, 288, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 302*t*
Ethanol (ethyl alcohol)
  in acid-fast staining, 108
  antimicrobial action of, 272
  fermentation producing, 144, 144*f*, 145, 145*f*, 758
    as alternative fuel source, 766, 768*t*
    beverage production and, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 13*t*, 145, 145*f*, 758–760, 759*f*, 760*f*, 761*t*
  in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
Ether group, 40*t*
Ethidium bromide, as frameshift mutagen, 220
Ethyl alcohol. *See* Ethanol
Ethylene oxide, for gas sterilization, 276, 277*t*
Etiology, 11–16, 15*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 414–416, 415*t*, 417*f*
  definition of, 13, 415
Euchromatin, 197, 197*f*
Euglena genus/spp., 352, 353*f*, 358*t*, 371*t*
  flagellum of, 80*f*, 353*f*
  isolation of, 175
  nutritional classification of, 165*b*
  for vitamin B_{12} identification, 178
Euglenids, 352, 352–353, 353*f*, 358*t*, 371*t*
Euglenoid movement, 353
Euglenophyta, 371*t*. *See also* Euglenids
Euglenozoa (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 352–353, 352*f*, 358*t*, 367, 371*t*
Eukarya (domain), 57, 114*f*, 115, 319
Eukaryotes/eukaryotic cells, 4, 57, 58*f*, 87*t*, 344–377. *See also specific type*
  antimicrobials effective against, 293*f*, 307–310*t*
  cell walls of, 77–78, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*
  characteristics of, 345–348, 347*f*, 348*f*, 349*f*, 350*t*
  chromosomes of, 82, 87*t*, 196–197, 197*f*, 198*t*, 345
  classification of, 114*f*, 115, 348–349, 349*f*
    nucleotide sequencing and, 115
  cytoplasmic membrane of, 58*f*, 78–79, 78*f*, 79*f*, 87*t*. *See also* Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes
  cytoplasm of, 79–86, 87*t*
  DNA of, 196–198, 197*f*, 198*t*, 345
    replication and, 202
  endosymbiotic theory of formation of, 86
  external structure of, 77
  genomes of, 196–198, 197*f*, 198*t*
  glycocalyces of, 77, 87*t*
  life processes in, 56*t*
  mRNA of, 207*f*, 210
  reproduction of, 345–348, 347*f*, 348*f*, 349*f*, 350*t*
  size of, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 58*f*
    measuring, 95, 95*t*
  transcription in, 207, 207*f*
  translation in, 213
Eukaryotic ribosomes, 58*f*, 81, 87*t*, 210, 211*f*
Euryarchaeota (phylum), 320*f*, 322
Eutrophication, phosphorus and, 780
Evolution
  antibiotic production by microbes and, 285*b*
  antimicrobial development and, 301
  archaeal classification and, 320, 320*f*, 321
  bacterial classification and, 320*f*

Subject Index

Brucella classification and, 592
Campylobacter classification and, 624
chlamydia classification and, 611
of chloroplasts, 86
chrysophyte classification and, 370
crop resistance to pests and, 252, 252*f*, 767
cyanobacteria and, 323
Darwin's theory of, 115
of diplomonads, 352
endosymbiotic theory and, 86
eukaryotic classification and, 349, 349*f*
flavivirus classification and, 722
fungal classification and, 361, 364
green algae/plants and, 368
Helicobacter classification and, 625
of HIV, 730
influenzaviruses and, 744–745, 744*f*, 745*b*
of mitochondria, 86
mutations and, 220
cold virus/cold vaccine and, 496*b*
mycoplasma classification and, 559
Orientia classification and, 610
osmotic pressure tolerance and, 170
parasitism and, 407
Pneumocystis jiroveci classification and, 641
prokaryotic classification and, 319, 320*f*
protozoan classification and, 352, 353, 354, 355
resistant microbes and, 220, 278, 278*b*, 298–299
ribosomal RNA relationships and, 115, 116
rickettsia classification and, 607
Salmonella classification and, 586
taxonomy/microbial classification and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
virus classification and, 380
water mold classification and, 371
Exchange (transfer) reactions, 36
Excitatory (allosteric) activation, 132, 132*f*
Excystment, 659–660
Exergonic pathways, 125
Exfoliative toxin, 540
Exocytosis, 78, 79*t*, 85*f*
in phagocytosis, 85*f*, 447–448, 447*f*
in virus release, 395, 395*t*
Exoenzyme S, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* producing, 596
Exoerythrocytic phase, in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 668, 669*f*
Exogenous antigens, 467, 468*f*
processing of, 480, 480*f*
Exogenous nosocomial infections, 430, 431, 431*f*
Exons, 207, 207*f*
Exophiala genus/spp.
mycetoma caused by, 650*t*, 651
phaeohyphomycosis caused by, 650*t*
Exothermic reactions, 35, 35*f*
Exotoxin(s), 418, 419*f*, 420*t*. *See also specific type*
Enterobacteriaceae producing, 581, 581*f*
Exotoxin A, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* producing, 596
Experiment(s), in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
Experimental epidemiology, 430, 431*b*
Exponential (logarithmic) growth, 181–182, 181*f*, A-13 to A-14
growth curves of, 182, 183*f*
Exponential (scientific) notation, 182, A-13
Exponential (log) phase, of microbial growth, 182–183, 183*f*
Exponential power, in scientific notation, A-13
Extension, in polymerase chain reaction, 243, 243*f*
Extensively drug-resistant (XDR) tuberculosis, 565
Extracellular enzymes, as virulence factors, 418, 419*f*. *See also specific enzyme and specific organism*
Extracellular pathogens. *See also* Bacteria; Fungi
antibodies/B cells attacking, 465
Extraintestinal amebiasis, invasive, 660, 673*t*
Extranuclear DNA, 197–198
Extreme thermophiles (hyperthermophiles), 130, 169, 169*f*, 321, 321*f*
commercial sterilization and, 259, 264
in polymerase chain reaction, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
Extremophiles, 172*b*, 321–322, 321*f*, 775
Eye(s)
lacrimal apparatus of, in host defense, 442, 442*f*
microbial diseases of
Acanthamoeba keratitis, 258, 263*b*, 661, 673*t*
candidal, 643*t*
Chlamydia trachomatis causing (trachoma), 613–614, 614, 614*f*
herpetic, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*
normal microbiota of, 408*t*
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
for parasites, 659*f*
as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
"Eyespot," in euglenids, 353, 353*f*

F_{ab} region, 469, 470*f*
F_c region, 469, 470*f*
Facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*, 72*t*
Factor(s). *See* Plasmids
Factor VIII, recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Factor B of complement activation, 451*f*, 454
Factor D of complement activation, 451*f*, 454
Factor P of complement activation, 451*f*, 454
Facultative anaerobes, 166, 166*f*
glycolytic, 334, 335*t*, 339*t*
Gram-negative, 578–591
yeasts as, 11, 12*f*, 360
Facultative halophiles, 170
FAD (flavin adenine dinucleotide), 51, 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
in electron transport chain, 138*f*, 139, 139*f*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
$FADH_2$, 127, 157*f*
in beta-oxidation, 146*f*, 147
in chemiosmosis, 141
in electron transport chain, 138*f*, 139, 139*f*, 140, 142*t*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, A-10
Families, 113, 114*f*
for viruses, 384, 384*t*, 385*t*
Farmer's lung, 524
Fascia, streptococcal infection affecting, 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
Fasciitis, necrotizing ("flesh-eating disease"), 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
Fasciola genus/spp. (liver flukes), 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
Fascioliasis, 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
Fastidious organisms, 176
Fat(s), 40, 41*f*, 44*t*
biosynthesis of, 40, 153–154, 154*f*, 157*f*
catabolism of, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
Fat cells, adenoviruses affecting, 705*b*
Fatigue (chronic fatigue syndrome), HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699*f*, 700
Fatty acids, 40, 41*f*, 44*t*
beta-oxidation of, 146–147, 146*f*
biosynthesis of, 40, 157*f*
in fat biosynthesis, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
fat catabolism/beta-oxidation and, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
in fats, 40, 41*f*, 44*t*
in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*
Favus, in tinea capitis, 648*t*
F^+ cells, 227, 227*f*, 228, 228*f*
F^- cells, 227, 227*f*, 228, 228*f*
F_{ab} region of antibodies, 469, 470*f*
F_c region of antibodies, 469, 470*f*
Fecal coliforms
as indicator organisms, 771, 771*f*
water contaminated by, 582, 771, 771*f*
Fecal-oral infection
parasitic infection and, 659*f*
waterborne transmission in, 422–423
Feces, as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422, 422–423
Feedback inhibition (negative feedback/end-product inhibition), 132–133, 133*f*
Fermentation/fermentation pathways, 7*b*, 10–11, 12*f*, 124, 133, 134*f*, 142–146, 143*f*, 145*f*, 145*t*
alcoholic, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 13*t*, 144, 144*f*, 145*f*, 758–760, 759*f*, 760*f*, 761*t*
bacteria in, 11, 12*f*
in carbohydrate/glucose catabolism, 133, 134*f*, 142–146, 143*f*, 145*f*, 145*t*
causes of, 10–11, 12*f*
cellular respiration compared with, 134*f*, 144, 144*f*, 145*t*
definition of, 144
in food microbiology, 13*t*
alcoholic beverage production and, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 13*t*, 145, 145*f*, 758–760, 759*f*, 760*f*, 761*t*
bread production and, 7*b*, 13*t*, 757, 761*t*
dairy products and, 145*f*, 758, 758*f*
food preservation and, 763
food spoilage and, 761–762
meat product production/preservation and, 758, 761*t*
vegetable preparation and, 757–758, 761*t*
industrial, 11, 765, 765*f*
microbial identification and, 146
products of, 7*b*, 13*t*, 145–146, 145*f*
yeasts in, 7*b*, 13*t*
Fermentation tests, 146
Fermentation vats, 765, 765*f*
Ferritin, in host defense, 444
Ferroplasma acidarmarnus, 777, 777*f*
Ferrum. *See* Iron
Fertility (F) plasmids, 196, 227–229, 227*f*, 228*f*
Fetus. *See also* Newborn; Pregnancy
maternal antimicrobial use affecting, 297, 297*f*
transmission of disease to, 412, 412*f*, 413*t*
coxsackie B virus, 720
cytomegalovirus infection, 701
herpesvirus infection, 695
HIV, 413*t*, 734
ART during pregnancy and, 735
rubella, 413*t*, 726
syphilis, 413*t*, 617
toxoplasmosis, 413*t*, 670, 671, 671–672
Fever, 456–457, 457*f*, 458*t*
in malaria, 669
pyrogenic toxins and, 457, 544
in relapsing fever, 621, 621*f*
Fever blisters (oral herpes), 694, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
Fever of Crete (brucellosis), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Fibrinogen, in inflammation, 455
Fibrobacteres (phylum), 320*f*
Fibroblasts, in tissue repair, 456
Fifth disease (erythema infectiosum), 709, 709*f*
placental transmission of, 413*t*
Filament
of archaeal flagellum, 75
of bacterial flagellum, 59, 59–60, 60*f*
axial, 61, 61*f*, 338
of eukaryotic flagella, 79
Filamentous hemagglutinin, *Bordetella pertussis* producing, 593
Filamentous particles, hepatitis B virus, 707, 708*f*
Filarial nematodes, 680, 681
Wuchereria, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
Filariasis, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
Filoviridae (filoviruses), 385*t*, 735, 736, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*, 750*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Filterable viruses, 15. *See also* Viruses
Filtration, 268
in microbial control, 268–269, 268*f*, 268*t*, 269*f*, 271*t*
wastewater treatment and, 772*f*, 773
water treatment and, 769–770, 770*f*
Fimbriae
archaeal, 75–76, 77*t*, 87*t*
bacterial, 62–63, 62*f*, 63*b*, 77*t*, 87*t*
of Enterobacteriaceae, 581, 581*f*
of *Neisseria*, 575, 575*f*
gonococcal virulence and, 62, 577*b*
of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, 595
Final electron acceptor, 138, 138*f*, 140, 145*t*
in cyclic photophosphorylation, 149, 149*f*
fermentation pathways and, 143, 145*t*

Fingerprinting. *See* DNA fingerprinting
Firmicutes (phylum), 320*f*, 326, 329*t*, 539, 559, 615*t*
FISH. *See* Fluorescent *in situ* hybridization
Fish
  fermentation of, 761*t*
  raw, anisakids transmitted in, 269*b*
  TMA causing odor in, 148*b*
Fish poisoning, 769*t*
Fission, binary, 180–188, 181*f*, 317, 317*f*. *See also* Population (microbe), growth of
5-day fever, 591
Five-kingdom taxonomic scheme, 113, 116
Five prime (5′) end, of nucleic acid, 49, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
Fixation
  carbon, 151, 152*f*, 778*f*
    in light-independent photosynthesis/Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152*f*, A-11
  chemical, 107
  heat, 107, 107*f*
  nitrogen, 167, 323, 778–779, 779*f*
    by alphaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 330–331, 331*f*, 339*t*
    by cyanobacteria, 167, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*t*, 778
  of specimen, 107, 107*f*
Fixed nitrogen. *See* Fixation, nitrogen
Flaccid paralysis, botulism toxins causing, 554
Flagella
  antigens, 580, 581*f*, 582
  of brown algae, 370, 370*f*
  of dinoflagellates, 354, 354*f*
  of eukaryotic cells, 79, 80*f*, 81*f*
  of myxamoebae/slime molds, 357
  of parabasalids, 352, 352*f*
  of prokaryotic cells, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    archaea, 75, 77*t*, 87*t*
    bacteria, 59–62, 60*f*, 61*f*, 62*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
  of protozoa, 4, 5*f*, 352, 352*f*, 353, 353*f*
  staining of, 110, 111*f*, 111*t*
  of *Trichomonas vaginalis,* 667, 668*f*
  of water molds, 371
Flagellates, 661–668, 673*t*
Flagellin, 60
Flagyl. *See* Metronidazole
"Flashlight fish," 141*b*
Flash pasteurization, 266, 267*t*
Flat warts, 702, 703*f*
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), 51, 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
  in electron transport chain, 138*f*, 139, 139*f*
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Flavin mononucleotide (FMN), in electron transport chain, 138*f*, 139, 139*f*, 141*b*
Flaviviridae (flaviviruses), 385*t*, 410*t*, 720*t*, 721–722, 726*t*, 750*t*
  yellow fever caused by, 15*t*, 410*t*, 723–724, 726*t*, 750*t*
Flavoproteins, in electron transport chains, 139, 139*f*, 140, 141*b*
Fleas, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
  for murine (endemic) typhus *(Rickettsia typhi),* 609, 611*t*
  for plague *(Yersinia pestis),* 574, 588, 588*f*
Fleming, Alexander, 18*f*, 20, 21*f*, 237, 284
"Flesh-eating disease" (necrotizing fasciitis), 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
Flies, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
  for African sleeping sickness *(Trypanosoma brucei),* 373, 663, 663*f*, 673*t*
  for bartonellosis, 591
  for leishmaniasis, 373, 665, 665*f*, 666, 673*t*
Flocs/flocculation, in water treatment, 769, 770*f*
  betaproteobacteria and, 332–333
Flora, normal. *See* Normal microbiota
Floridean starch, 369
Flow cytometry, for microbial growth estimation, 185
Flu. *See* Influenza
Fluconazole, 307*t*, 635
  mechanism of action of, 289, 307*t*
Fluid mosaic model, of membrane structure, 66
Flukes (trematodes), 674, 676–679, 676*f*, 677*f*, 678*b*, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
  blood (*Schistosoma* species), 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
  liver (*Fasciola* species), 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
Fluorescein isothiocyanate, 101
Fluorescence, 98, 100
Fluorescence microscopy/microscopes, 98, 100–102, 102*f*, 106*t*
Fluorescent antibodies/antigens, 102, 102*f*
  for confocal microscopy, 102, 104*b*
  for fluorescence microscopy, 102, 102*f*
  for serology. *See* Fluorescent antibody tests
Fluorescent antibody tests, 506–507, 507*f*, 508*f*, 511*t*, 614, 614*f*
Fluorescent dyes, 101, 102*f*
  for confocal microscopy, 102, 104*b*
  for fluorescent microscopy, 101, 102*f*
  for phages, 112*b*
Fluorescent *in situ* hybridization (FISH), 248, 248*f*
Fluorescent phages, 112*b*
Fluoridation, water, prevention of tooth decay and, 274
Fluoride, antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
Fluorine, 30*f*
  antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
5-Fluorocytosine, 307*t*, 635
Fluoroquinolones, 305*t*
  mechanism of action of, 292, 305*t*
  resistance to, 300
Flu shot/vaccine (influenza immunization), 390*b*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 746–747
FMD. *See* Foot-and-mouth disease
FMN (flavin mononucleotide), in electron transport chain, 138*f*, 139, 139*f*, 141*b*
Focal infection, definition of, 425*t*
Focal point, light refraction and image magnification and, 96*f*, 97
Folic acid
  antimicrobials affecting, 132, 290, 291*f*
  in nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*
Foliose lichens, 365, 366*f*
Folliculitis, 541
Fomites, 422
  adenoviruses transmitted by, 704
  dermatophytes transmitted by, 633
  papillomaviruses transmitted by, 702
  respiratory syncytial virus transmitted by, 738
  rhinoviruses/common cold transmitted by, 717
Fomivirsen, 289, 307*t*
Fonsecaea/Fonsecaea pedrosoi, chromoblastomycosis caused by, 650*f*, 650*t*
Food
  agroterrorism and, 783, 784, 784–785, 785–786, 785*t*
  allergic reactions/anaphylactic shock and, 520, 520*b*
  genetically altered, 236, 252–253
    ethical/safety issues and, 253
  microbes in production of, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757–760, 758*f*, 759*f*, 760*f*
  as nonliving reservoir, 411, 423, 423*f*, 433
  nutritional value of, recombinant DNA technology affecting, 236, 252–253
    ethical/safety issues and, 253
  processing of
    endospore contamination and, 762, 762*f*
    spoilage and, 762, 762–764, 763*t*
  safety of, 433. *See also* Agroterrorism; Foodborne illnesses
  spoilage of. *See* Food spoilage
  for vaccine delivery, 250, 251*b*
Food additives, microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
Foodborne illnesses, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433, 764, 764*t*. *See also specific causative agent or specific type*
  amebiasis, 660–661
  bioterrorism and, 783, 784, 784–785, 785–786, 785*t*
  Brucella causing, 592
  Campylobacter causing, 624–625, 626*b*, 764*t*
  clostridial/botulism, 264, 327*b*, 552, 553, 554, 764*t*
  Cyclospora causing, 673
  Escherichia coli causing, 764*t*
  Fasciola (liver flukes) causing, 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
  infections, 764, 764*t*
  intoxications, 764, 764*t*
  Listeria causing, 327, 556, 559, 764, 764*t*
  mycotoxins causing, 652
  prions causing, 47
  roundworms (nematodes) causing, 679, 680
  Salmonella causing (salmonellosis/typhoid fever), 15*t*, 505–506, 586*f*, 587*f*, 589*b*, 764*t*
  Shigella causing (shigellosis), 15*t*, 587, 764*t*
  staphylococcal, 541, 764*t*
    incubation period for, 421*t*
  tapeworm (cestode) infestation, 675, 675*f*, 683*t*
  Toxoplasma causing (toxoplasmosis), 670, 671, 671*f*
  traveler's diarrhea, 15*t*
  Vibrio causing, 623, 624, 764*t*
  Yersinia causing, 588, 764*t*
Foodborne transmission of disease, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433. *See also* Foodborne illnesses
Food infections. *See* Foodborne illnesses, infections
Food intoxications. *See* Foodborne illnesses, intoxications
Food microbiology, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757, 757–764
  decimal reduction time and, 264, 264*f*
  endospore formation and, 73, 317
  foodborne illnesses and, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433, 764, 764*t*
  food production and, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757–760, 758*f*, 759*f*, 760*f*
  food spoilage and, 757, 760–764, 763*t*. *See also* Food spoilage
  pH tolerance and, 169
Food poisoning, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433, 764, 764*t*. *See also* Foodborne illnesses
Food spoilage, 757, 760–764, 763*t*
  extrinsic factors in, 760, 762, 763*t*
  illnesses associated with, 764
  intrinsic factors in, 760, 760–762, 763*t*
  potential for, food classified by, 762
  prevention of, 762–764. *See also specific method*
Food supplements, microbial production of, 765–766, 768*t*
Food supply, agroterrorism and, 783, 784, 784–785, 785–786, 785*t*
Food vesicle (phagosome), 78, 85*f*, 447, 447*f*
Foot-and-mouth disease virus, bioterrorism and, 784
Foraminifera, 355, 355*f*, 358*t*
Formaldehyde
  antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
  covalent bonds in formation of, 30, 31, 31*f*
  in vaccine preparation, 497
Formalin, antimicrobial action of, 275
Formed elements, 444. *See also* Blood cells
Fortified foods, intrinsic spoilage factors and, 760
Fosamprenavir, 307*t*
Foxes, rabies and, 740, 740*f*
F (fertility) plasmids, 196, 227–229, 227*f*, 228*f*
Fracastoro, Girolamo, 12
Fragmentation, in algal reproduction, 368, 368*f*
Fragments, in complement activation, 452–453, 452*f*
Frameshift mutagens, 220, 220*f*
Frameshift mutations, 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
  chemicals causing, 220, 220*f*
  deletion, 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
  insertion, 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
  transposition as, 229
Francisella genus/spp., 418*f*, 597–599, 598*b*
  bioterrorism and, 599, 785*t*
Free-living amoebae, 355, 358*t*
  meningoencephalopathy caused by, 661
Free-living nitrogen fixers, 779
Freeze-drying (lyophilization)
  for culture preservation, 180, 267, 271*t*
  for food preservation, 763
Freeze resistance, recombinant DNA technology and, 252, 767

Freezing
in culture preservation, 180, 267, 271*t*
in food preservation/microbial control, 267, 271*t*, 763
raw fish and, 269*b*
Freshwater ecosystems, 782, 782–783, 782*f*
Fructose, 43
Fructose 1,6-bisphosphate, 128*t*, 130, 134, 135*f*, 157*f*
in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
lysis of, 130, 130*f*
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, A-6
Fructose 6-phosphate, 153*t*
in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
in glycolysis, 153*t*, A-6
in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Fruit bats. *See* Bat(s)
Fruiting bodies
of ascomycetes (ascocarps), 362, 362*f*
of basidiomycotes, 364, 364*f*, 365*f*
of molds, 358–359
of myxobacteria, 336, 337*f*
Frustules, 370, 370*f*, 371
Fruticose lichens, 365, 366*f*
Fuels, alternative, microbial production of, 766–767, 766*f*, 768*t*
Fumarase, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Fumaric acid, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Functional groups, 39, 40*t*
Fungal allergens, 652, 652–653
Fungal spores, 632
Fungal toxins, 651–652, 652
Fungal viruses, 380
Fungemia, *Fusarium* causing, 647
Fungi, 4, 4*f*, 357–367, 366*t*, 367*b*, 632–657. *See also specific organism*
allergies to, 634, 652, 652–653, 653*b*
antimicrobials affecting, 293*f*
antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 357
beneficial/industrial uses of, 7*b*, 13*t*, 357
cell walls of, 4, 78, 288
antimicrobial agents affecting, 286, 286*f*, 288, 635
classification of, 4, 114*f*, 349, 349*f*, 361–367, 366*t*
culture of, 177, 177*f*, 634
cytokinesis in, 348, 348*f*
diseases/infections caused by, 357, 410*t*, 632–657. *See also* Mycoses
categories of agents causing (pathogenic/opportunistic), 633–634, 634*t*
clinical manifestations of, 634
cutaneous/subcutaneous, 649–651, 650*t*
diagnosis of, 634–635, 635*f*
epidemiology of, 633
immunization against, 635
infections, 634
intoxications/allergies, 634, 651–652, 652
opportunistic, 633–634, 634*t*, 641–647. *See also* Opportunistic mycoses
in HIV infection/AIDS, 641, 647, 729*t*
soilborne diseases, 781*t*
superficial, 648–649, 648*t*
systemic
opportunistic fungi causing, 641–647
pathogenic fungi causing, 636–640, 636*f*
treatment of, 635. *See also* Antifungal drugs
zoonoses, 410*t*
drug resistance and, 635
hypertonic environments tolerated by, 269–270
imperfect, 364
in lichens, 364, 365, 366*f*
morphology of, 358–359, 359*f*
nutrition of, 359–360, 359*f*
opportunistic, 633–634, 634*t*, 641–647
in HIV infection/AIDS, 641, 647, 729*t*
pathogenic, 357, 410*t*, 633, 636–640, 636*f*. *See also* Fungi, diseases/infections caused by
pH range tolerated by, 38
reproduction of, 360–361, 360*f*, 361*f*
significance of, 357–358
in soil, 781
disease caused by, 781*t*
susceptibility of, 262*f*
vaccines against, 635
recombinant DNA in development of, 497, 635
Fungi (kingdom), 113, 114*f*, 349, 349*f*, 357, 361
Fungicides, 259. *See also* Antifungal drugs
Furazolidone, 309*f*
Furuncle (boil), 182*b*, 541
Fusarium genus/spp., 647
soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Fusin (CXCR4), in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*
in long-term nonprogressors, 735
Fusobacteria (phylum), 320*f*

G + C ratio, 119, 325–326, 329*t*
high, 320*f*, 326, 328–330, 329*f*, 329*t*, 539
low, 320*f*, 325–328, 326, 326*f*, 327*b*, 327*f*, 328*b*, 329*t*, 539
taxonomy/microbial classification and, 119, 320*f*, 325–326, 329*t*, 539
G. *See* Guanine
G3P. *See* Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate
Galen, Claudius, 575
Gallo, Robert, 728–729
Galls, 331, 332*f*
Gambierdiscus genus/spp., blooms of, intoxications caused by, 768, 769*t*
Gametes, 345
protozoan, 351
in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 669, 669*f*
in *Toxoplasma* life cycle, 671
Gametocytes, protozoan, 351
in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 669, 669*f*
Gamma F_c region/heavy chains, 469, 474*t*
Gamma-hemolysis, by *Enterococcus faecalis*, 177, 178*f*, 549
Gamma (γ)-interferon (macrophage activation factor), 450–451, 451*t*, 477, 477*t*
Gammaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 325*t*, 333–334, 334*f*, 335*t*, 339*t*, 579, 591, 600
Gamma radiation
Kineococcus radiotolerans resistance to, 172*b*
for microbial control/food preservation, 270, 270*f*, 271*t*, 763
mutagenic effects of, 218–219
Ganciclovir, 292*f*, 306*t*
Ganglia/ganglion (neuronal), latent herpesviruses in, 694, 694*f*
Gangrene (gas), 15*t*, 326, 552, 553, 553*f*
Garlic, allicin in, food preservation and, 763
Gartner, A. A., 15*t*
Gas(es), antimicrobial action of, 276, 277*t*
Gas gangrene, 15*t*, 326, 552, 553, 553*f*
Gasohol, 766
Gas sterilization, 276, 277*t*
Gastric acid
in host defense, 443, 443*t*
antacids affecting, 38, 39*b*
ulcers and, 38, 170
Gastric ulcer, 22*b*, 38, 170. *See also* Peptic ulcers
Gastritis, *Helicobacter pylori* infection and, 625
Gastroenteritis. *See also* Diarrhea; Foodborne illnesses; Waterborne illnesses
astroviruses causing, 721, 721*f*, 750*t*
caliciviruses causing, 721, 721*f*
Campylobacter jejuni causing, 624–625, 626*b*, 764*t*, 769*t*
cryptosporidiosis, 672–673, 673*t*, 769*t*
Escherichia coli causing, 583–584, 590*f*, 769*t*
giardiasis, 666, 666*b*
Norovirus causing, 715, 721, 750*t*, 769*b*
rotaviruses causing, 749, 749*f*, 750*t*
Salmonella causing (salmonellosis/typhoid fever), 15*t*, 586, 586*f*, 587*f*, 589*b*, 590*f*, 769*t*
Shigella causing (shigellosis), 15*t*, 586–588, 587*f*, 590*f*
traveler's diarrhea, 15*t*
Vibrio causing, 12, 623, 624. *See also* Cholera
Vibrio parahaemolyticus causing, 624
Gastroferritin, in host defense, 443*t*
Gastrointestinal anthrax, 551. *See also* Anthrax
Gastrointestinal candidiasis, 643*t*
Gastrointestinal (digestive) tract
in host defense, 442, 443*t*
microbial diseases of. *See also* Foodborne illnesses; Gastroenteritis
Bacteroides causing, 601
normal microbiota of, 407, 408*t*
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
Gastrointestinal zygomycosis, 646
Gas vesicles, 72
Gated channels/ports, in active transport, 70–71, 71*f*
GDP, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Gel electrophoresis, 244, 244*f*, 249*t*. *See also* Electrophoresis
in Southern blot, 244–245, 245*f*
Gelidium genus/spp., 78*f*, 370, 371*t*
gen-/-gen (prefix or suffix), 415*t*
Gene(s), 19, 193, 194. *See also* Genetics
expression of. *See* Gene expression
function of, 203–217, 217*b*
insertion of into cells, 246, 247*f*
vaccine development and, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
locating, for genetic mapping, 247–248, 248*f*
mutations of. *See* Mutations
regulatory, 214, 214*f*, 215, 215*f*
synthetic, 238–239
Gene activation, in cholera, 623
Gene expression. *See also* Transcription; Translation
control of, 213–217, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*, 217*b*
DNA microarrays in monitoring of, 245
genetic screening and, 250
genotype and phenotype and, 203
methylation affecting, 202
vectors affecting, 241
Gene gun, for DNA insertion into cells, 246, 247*f*, 249*t*
Gene libraries, 242, 242*f*, 249*t*
Genera. *See* Genus
Generation time, 181, A-13 to A-14
Gene sequencing. *See* Genetic mapping; Genomics; Nucleotide sequencing
Gene therapy, 20, 250
for severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 237, 250, 532*b*
Genetic code, 208–209, 208*f*, 209*t*
synthetic nucleic acids in elucidation of, 238
Genetic engineering/recombinant DNA technology, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 226, 236–257, 238*f*, 765
in agriculture, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
ethical/safety issues and, 253
applications of, 246–253, 248*f*, 250*f*, 251*b*, 252*f*, 765
in biotechnology, 237, 765
bioterrorism and, 253, 786, 786*b*
competent cells and, 226
diagnostic applications of, 250–251
for DNA fingerprinting, 250, 250*f*. *See also* Genetic fingerprinting
in environmental studies, 236, 248–249
ethics of, 253
for gene therapy, 250
for genetic mapping, 246–248, 248*f*, 249*t*
for genetic screening, 250
hyperthermophiles in, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
industrial uses of, 237, 765, 767*t*, 768*t*
pharmaceutical/therapeutic uses of, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
for protein synthesis, 249
safety of, 236, 253
techniques of, 242–246, 243*f*, 244*f*, 245*f*, 246*f*, 247*f*, 249*t*
tools of, 237–242, 239*t*, 240*b*, 240*f*, 241*f*, 242*f*, 249*t*
microbial production of, 765
in vaccine production, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
antifungal vaccines and, 407, 635
for xenotransplants, 251

Genetic fingerprinting, 248, 250, 250*f*
  bioterrorism defense and, 786
  Southern blots for, 245
  in water quality testing, 771
Genetic information, transfer of, 203–213, 203*f*, 213*t*. *See also* Transcription; Translation
Genetic mapping, 193, 246–248, 248*f*, 249*t*
Genetic markers, in vectors, 241
Genetic recombination/transfer, 224–230, 224*f*, 230*b*. *See also* Recombinant DNA technology
  horizontal (lateral) gene transfer and, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
  mutations caused by, 218
  transposons/transposition and, 229–230, 229*f*, 230*f*
Genetics, 18*f*, 19, 19*t*, 194
  central dogma of, 203
  microbial, 18*f*, 19, 19*t*, 193–235. *See also specific aspect*
    DNA replication and, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*, 213*t*
    eukaryotic genomes and, 196–198, 197*f*, 198*t*
    gene function and, 203–217, 217*b*
    genome structure and replication and, 194–202, 198*t*
    genotype/phenotype relationship and, 203
    information transfer and, 203–213, 203*f*, 213*t*. *See also* Transcription; Translation
    mutations and, 217–224
    nucleic acid structure and, 194, 195*f*
    prokaryotic genomes and, 195–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
    recombination and transfer and, 224–230, 224*f*, 230*b*
  regulation of gene expression and, 213–217, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*, 217*b*
Genetic screening, 250
  ethical issues and, 253
Gene transfer
  horizontal (lateral), 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
    antimicrobial resistance and, 230*b*, 300
    bacterial conjugation, 63, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
    transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
    transformation, 225–226, 225*f*, 229*t*
  vertical, 225
Genital herpes, 689, 694–695, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
  diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 696–697
  incubation period for, 421*t*
Genital ulcers, herpesvirus. *See* Genital herpes
Genital warts, 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
Genomes, 19, 193, 194–202, 198*t*. *See also specific organism*
  DNA replication and, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*, 213*t*
  eukaryotic, 196–198, 197*f*, 198*t*
  manipulation of. *See* Recombinant DNA technology
  nucleic acid structure and, 194, 195*f*
  prokaryotic (bacterial and archaeal), 195–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
  sequencing. *See* Genomics
  viral, 379, 379–380, 379*f*
    segmented, 716, 742
Genomics (genome/nucleotide sequencing), 19–20, 248, 248*f*, 249*t*. *See also* Genetic mapping
  microbial classification and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
  in microbial growth estimation, 188
Genotype, 203
Gentamicin, 303*t*
  mechanism of action of, 288, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 303*t*
Genus (genera), 113, 114*f*
  binomial nomenclature and, 113
Geogemma/Geogemma barossii, 169, 321, 321*f*
German measles. *See* Rubella
Germicides, 259
  effectiveness of, 262
  in food preservation, 763
Germistatic chemicals, in food preservation, 763
Germ theory of disease, 13, 20, 416
Ghon complexes, 564
Giardia genus/spp., 352, 358*t*, 666–667, 666*b*, 667*f*, 673*t*, 769*t*
  size of, 58*f*
Giardiasis, 666–667, 666*b*, 667*f*, 673*t*
  waterborne transmission of, 666, 666*b*, 667, 769*t*
Gingivitis, gonococcal, 576
Gingivostomatitis, herpetic, 694
Glanders, bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Glass lenses. *See* Lenses
Gliding
  Cytophaga movement by, 338
  phototrophic bacteria movement by, 323, 325*t*
Global warming
  carbon dioxide and methane and, 322, 334
  recombinant DNA technology in study of, 248–249
  viruses affecting, 382*b*
Glomerulonephritis, 525
  after streptococcal infection, 545–546
Glomerulus (glomeruli), 525
  immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity affecting, 525
Glossina (tsetse) flies, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*
  for African sleeping sickness, 373, 663, 663*f*, 673*t*
Glove box, anaerobic, 178–179
Glucan
  in fungal cell walls, 288
    echinocandin mechanism of action and, 635
  in tooth decay, 172
Glucocorticoids. *See also* Corticosteroids; Steroid
  for asthma, 520
  immunosuppressive actions of, 528, 529*t*
Glucomannan, in fungal cell walls, 78
Gluconeogenesis, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
Gluconic acid, microbial production of, 766
Gluconobacter genus/spp., 331, 339*t*
  in vinegar production, 331, 760, 761*t*
Glucose, 42, 42–43, 43*f*
  biosynthesis of, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
  catabolism of, 133–146, 134*f*, 142*t*, 145*t*, 157*f*
    cellular respiration in, 133, 134–141, 134*f*, 145*t*
      acetyl-CoA synthesis and, 128*t*, 134*f*, 135–136, 136*f*, 142*t*
      chemiosmosis and, 140–141
      electron transport and, 134*f*, 138–140, 138*f*, 139*f*, 142*t*
      Krebs cycle and, 133, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, A-10
    Entner-Doudoroff pathway in, 142, 144*f*, A-9
    fermentation in, 133, 134*f*, 142–146, 143*f*, 145*f*, 145*t*
    glycolysis in, 133, 133–134, 134*f*, 135*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-6 to A-7
      alternatives to, 142
    pentose phosphate pathway in, 142, 143*f*, A-8
  phosphorylation of
    as exchange reaction, 36
    group translocation and, 71, 71*f*
Glucose 6-phosphate, 153*t*
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in glycolysis, A-6
  group translocation and, 71, 71*f*
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 142, 143*f*, 157*f*, A-8
Glucose 6-phosphate dehydrogenase
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, malaria resistance and, 669
Glue, *Caulobacter*, 333*b*
Glutamine/glutamic acid, 46*f*
  in nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*
  in transamination, 155*f*
Glutaraldehyde, antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P), 153*t*, 157*f*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152, 152*f*, A-11
  in carbohydrate biosynthesis/gluconeogenesis, 153, 154*f*
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in fat synthesis, 153, 154*f*
  in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, A-6
  in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
  in glycolysis, A-7
Glycerol, 40, 41*f*
  in fat catabolism, 146, 146*f*, 157*f*
  in fat synthesis, 40, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
  in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*
Glycine, 46*f*
Glycocalyx (glycocalyces). *See also* Capsule
  of eukaryotic cells, 77, 87*t*
  of prokaryotic cells, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
    archaea, 75, 77*t*, 87*t*
    bacteria, 59, 59*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
Glycogen, 42, 43, 45*f*, 72, 153, 154*f*
  in algae (floridean starch), 369
Glycolysis, 133, 133–134, 134*f*, 135*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-6 to A-7
  alternatives to, 142
  lipid biosynthesis and, 153, 154*f*
Glycolytic facultative anaerobes, 334, 335*t*, 339*t*
Glycoproteins, 48
  in adherence (phagocytosis), 446
  in algal cell walls, 368, 371*t*
  HIV, 730, 730*b*
    in replication, 732, 732*f*, 735
  influenza virus, 743, 743*b*, 743*f*, 744
  rabies virus, 739
  rotavirus, 748, 749*f*
  in viral envelope, 383, 384*f*, 394, 394*f*
Glyphosate, tolerance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 251–252
GMS stain. *See* Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain
Goblet cells, in host defense, 441
Goiter, 531
Gold, 27
  microbial reduction of, 126*b*
Golden Age of Microbiology, 7–18, 15*t*, 18*f*
Golden algae, 370–371, 371*t*
Golgi body/complex/apparatus, 58*f*, 83*t*, 84, 84*f*, 85*f*
Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain, for fungi, 110, 634, 635*f*
Gonococcus. *See* Gonorrhea; *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
Gonorrhea, 15*t*, 575–577, 576*f*, 577*b*, 582*b*. *See also Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
  drug-resistant, 577
  indirect fluorescent antibody test in diagnosis of, 507, 507*f*
Gonyaulax genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 371*t*
  blooms of, intoxications caused by, 768, 769*t*
gp41, 730, 730*f*
  in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*, 735
gp120, 730, 730*f*
  in HIV replication, 732, 732*f*
Grafts, 527, 527*f*
  rejection of, 527, 527*f*
    donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
    immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
    MHC antigen discovery and, 478
Graft-versus-host disease, 527–528
Gramicidin, 304*t*
  mechanism of action of, 289, 304*t*
Gram-negative archaea, cell walls of, 76
Gram-negative bacteria, 15, 15*f*, 320*f*, 330–338, 339*t*, 574–605. *See also specific agent*
  aerobic bacilli, 591–600
  anaerobic bacilli, 600–601
  antibacterials effective against, 293*f*
  bacterial predators of, 597*b*
  cell walls of, 64, 65–66, 65*f*
  cocci (*Neisseria* species), 575–578
  endotoxins released by, 418, 419*f*, 420*t*
  facultatively anaerobic bacilli, 578–591
  flagella of, 60*f*

nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
pathogenic
cocci and bacilli, 574–605
vibrios, 622–627
proteobacteria, 320*f*, 330–337, 339*t*
staining, 108, 109*f*
susceptibility of, 262*f*
Gram-positive archaea, cell walls of, 76
Gram-positive bacteria, 15, 15*f*, 320*f*, 325–330, 329*t*, 538–573. *See also specific agent*
antibacterials effective against, 293*f*
cell walls of, 64, 65*f*
flagella of, 60*f*
high G + C, 320*f*, 326, 328–330, 329*f*, 329*t*, 539
low G + C, 320*f*, 325–328, 326, 326*f*, 327*b*, 327*f*, 328*b*, 329*t*, 539
staining, 108, 109*f*
susceptibility of, 262*f*
Gram stain, 15–16, 15*f*, 66, 108, 109*f*, 111*t*
Grana (granum), chloroplast, 86*f*, 148
Granulocytes, 445, 445*f*
Granulomatous disease, chronic, 531, 533*t*
Granzyme, 471, 471*f*, 482, 483*f*
Graves' disease, autoimmunity and, 531
Gravid proglottids, tapeworm, 674, 674*f*, 675, 675*f*
Green algae, 368–369, 371*t*
in lichens, 364
Greenhouse gas
carbon dioxide as, 778
methane as, 322, 334, 778
recombinant DNA in study of, 248–249
Green phototrophic bacteria, 324
nonsulfur, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*
sulfur, 163, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*, 779
Griffithsia pacifica, 94
Griseofulvin, 307*t*, 635
microbial production of, 285*t*, 307*t*
Gross mutations, 217
Ground itch, 680
Group A streptococcus *(Streptococcus pyogenes)*, 318*f*, 543–546, 550*t*
autoimmunity and, 530
culture of, 177, 178*f*
diseases caused by, 544–546, 544*f*, 545*f*, 550*t*
diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 546
necrotizing fasciitis/"flesh-eating disease," 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
pharyngitis, 68*b*, 544–545, 544*f*, 717*t*
rheumatic fever and, 545
toxic-shock syndrome (STSS), 545
immunochromatographic assays in identification of, 510, 510*f*
transmission of, 544
virulence factors of, 420, 544
Group B streptococcus *(Streptococcus agalactiae)*, 546, 550*t*
Group C streptococcus, 550*t*
Group D streptococcus, 550*t*
Group F streptococcus, 550*t*
Group G streptococcus, 550*t*
Group translocation, 70, 71, 71*f*, 72*t*
Growth
as characteristic of life, 56, 56*t*
microbial, 56*t*, 163–192. *See also* Microbial growth
Growth curve, 182, 183*f*
Growth factors, 167, 167*t*, 477
fastidious organisms for identification of, 176
Growth hormone
bovine (BGH), 252
human, microbial production of, 13*t*, 767*t*, 768*t*
GTP, in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Guanine (G), 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Guanosine, 292*f*
Guanosine triphosphate (GTP), in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Guanosine triphosphate nucleotide (dGTP), in DNA replication, 198, 199*f*
Guilds, 775, 775*f*
Gummas, in syphilis, 617, 617*f*
Gymnodinium genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 371*t*
Gyrase/DNA gyrase, 195, 202
quinolones/fluoroquinolones affecting, 292, 305*t*
resistance and, 300
Gyromitra esculenta, 652

H1N1 influenzavirus ("swine flu"), 8*b*, 745*b*
as pandemic, 428, 745
H5N1 strain, of influenzavirus, 390*b*
HA. *See* Hemagglutinin
HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy). *See* Antiretroviral therapy
Habitats, microbial, 774, 775, 775*f*. *See also* Environmental microbiology
aquatic, 782–783, 782*f*
Haemophilus genus/spp., 168, 335*t*, 590–591, 590*f*
sexually transmitted, 590
Haemophilus influenzae, 113, 590–591, 590*f*, 746
immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 590–591
meningitis caused by, 484, 590
restriction enzymes produced by, 239, 239*t*
genetic mapping and, 247
strain *aegyptius*, 591
type b, 590
vaccine against, 590–591
Hafnia genus/spp., 584–585
Hair, 412*f*
Hairy-cell leukemia, HTLV-2 causing, 729, 729*f*
Hairy leukoplakia, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699–700, 699*f*, 700
Haloarcola genus/spp., 315
Halobacterium salinarium, 322, 783
Halogens, antimicrobial action of, 273–274, 273*f*, 277*t*
Halophiles, 170, 315, 320*f*, 322, 322*f*, 783
Haloquadra walsbyi, 76*f*
Hami (hamus), 76, 76*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*
Hand-foot-and-mouth disease, 719, 719*f*
Handwashing, in infection prevention/control, 16–17, 18*f*, 432
common cold and, 717
respiratory syncytial virus and, 738, 739
Hansen's disease (leprosy), 329, 562, 565–566, 566*f*
immunization against (BCG vaccine), 500*t*, 566
incubation period for, 421*t*, 565
Hantavirus, 385*t*, 410*t*, 432*b*, 747, 750*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
pulmonary syndrome, 410*t*, 432*b*, 747, 750*t*
soilborne transmission of, 781, 781*t*
H antigens, 580, 581*f*
of *E. coli*, 582
Haploid cell(s), 195
Haploid nucleus, 345, 347*f*
in fungal reproduction, 361, 361*f*, 362*f*, 363, 363*f*
Haptens, in allergic contact dermatitis, 526
Haustoria, 359
lichens and, 364
HAV. *See* Hepatitis A virus
Hay fever, 518, 518*f*
HBV. *See* Hepatitis B virus
HCV. *See* Hepatitis C virus
HDCV. *See* Human diploid cell vaccine for rabies
HDV. *See* Hepatitis D virus
Health care setting, infections acquired in. *See* Nosocomial infections
Heart disease
candidal, 643*t*
Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae causing, 430, 614
Trypanosoma-induced, 662
Heat, localized, in inflammation, 454
Heat fixation, 107, 107*f*
Heat-related microbial control methods, 264–267, 264*f*, 265*f*, 266*f*, 267*t*, 271*t*. *See also specific type*
in food preservation, 264, 266, 763–764. *See also* Pasteurization
Heavy chains, immunoglobulin/B cell receptor/antibody, 468, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*, 472*b*
Heavy metals/heavy metal ions, antimicrobial action of, 275, 275*f*, 277*t*, 290, 309*f*
HeLa cell culture, 398
Helical viruses, 381, 383*f*, 384*f*
Helicases, DNA, 199, 200*f*, 202
Helicobacter genus/spp., 337, 339*t*
Helicobacter pylori, 166, 170, 625–627, 625*f*, 626*b*, 627*f*
gastric ulcers and, 38, 170
pH range tolerated by, 38, 170
Helix
(α) 47, 48*f*
in cellular PrP, 399, 399*f*
double, of DNA, 50, 50*f*, 105*f*, 193, 194, 195*f*
hydrogen bonds and, 34
Helminths (parasitic worms), 5, 6*f*, 372, 658, 674–682, 674*f*, 683*t*. *See also specific type*
antimicrobials affecting, 293*f*, 308*t*. *See also* Antihelminthic drugs
diseases caused by, 410*t*
eosinophils/eosinophilia and, 448
zoonoses caused by, 410*t*
Helper T lymphocytes (Th cells), 474–475, 475*b*, 475*t*
activation/cloning of, 484–486, 485*f*
in antibody immune responses, 484, 484–486, 485*f*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
differentiation of, 481, 481*f*, 485*f*, 486
in HIV infection/AIDS, 380, 475*b*, 533, 729, 730*b*
attachment and, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
course of infection and, 733, 733*f*
type 1 (Th1), 475, 475*t*, 481, 481*f*
type 2 (Th2), 475, 475*t*
in antibody immune responses, 484, 485*f*, 486
Hemagglutination, 505, 505*f*. *See also* Viral hemagglutination
Hemagglutinin
filamentous, *Bordetella pertussis* producing, 593
influenzavirus, 743–744, 743*b*
mutations in, 744–745, 744*f*, 745*b*
Hematopoiesis, 444, 444*f*
Hematopoietic stem cells, 444, 444*f*, 464
Hematoxylin and eosin stain, 110
for *Rickettsia*, 607, 607*f*
Heme
cytochromes associated with, in electron transport chains, 139*f*, 140
Haemophilus influenzae requiring, 590
for microbial growth, 167*t*
Hemoglobin C, malaria resistance and, 669
Hemoglobin S, malaria resistance and, 669
Hemolysin, 444
Enterobacteriaceae producing, 581, 581*f*
group B streptococci *(Streptococcus agalactiae)* producing, 546
Hemolysis, in transfusion reaction, 521, 521*f*
Hemolytic anemia, 523
autoimmune, 530
Hemolytic disease of newborn, 522, 523*f*
Hemolytic uremic syndrome
E. coli O157:H7 causing, 584
epidemic of, 427
Hemorrhagic conjunctivitis, acute, 719
Hemorrhagic fevers, 715, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*
arenavirus, 748
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
bunyavirus, 726*t*, 747
Crimean–Congo, 726*t*
dengue, 240*b*, 723, 725*f*, 726*t*
Ebola, 378, 385*t*, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*, 750*t*
filovirus, 385*t*, 735, 736, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*
Marburg, 385*t*, 715, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*, 750*t*
Henipavirus genus/spp., 736*b*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
HEPA (high-efficiency particulate air) filters, in microbial control, 268–269, 269*f*
biosafety and, 263, 268–269, 269*f*
Hepacivirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 750*t*

Hepadnaviridae (hepadnaviruses), 384, 385*t*, 690, 706–709, 706*f*, 707*f*, 708*b*, 708*f*, 710*t*, 720*t*
genome of, 706, 706*f*
hepat- (prefix), 415*t*
Hepatic cancer, hepatitis B virus and, 689, 707–708
Hepatic candidiasis, 643*t*
Hepatitis, 720*t*
safe handling of viruses causing, 263
type A, 720, 720*t*
immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*
type B, 689, 706, 706–709, 707*f*, 708*b*, 708*f*, 720*t*
hepatic cancer and, 689, 708–709
hepatitis D virus coinfection and, 707, 748
immunization against. *See* Hepatitis B virus vaccine
incubation period for, 421*t*
type C (non-A/non-B), 720*t*, 726–727, 750*t*
type D, 720*t*, 748, 750*t*
hepatitis B coinfection and, 707, 748
type E (enteric), 720*t*, 721, 750*t*
Hepatitis A virus, 385*t*, 720, 720*t*, 750*t*
waterborne transmission of, 769*t*
Hepatitis A virus vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 720
Hepatitis B virus, 385*t*, 689, 706, 706–709, 707*f*, 708*b*, 708*f*, 720*t*
hepatic cancer and, 689, 708–709
hepatitis D virus coinfection and, 707, 748
synthesis in, 392, 706
Hepatitis B virus vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 707, 707–708
recombinant DNA in production of, 250, 497, 767*t*
Hepatitis C virus, 720*t*, 726–727, 750*t*
Hepatitis D virus (delta agent), 720*t*, 748, 750*t*
hepatitis B virus coinfection and, 707, 748
Hepatitis E virus, 720*t*, 721, 750*t*
Hepatitis G virus, genetic mapping in identification of, 247
Hepatovirus genus/spp./hepatitis A virus, 385*t*, 720, 720*t*, 750*t*
waterborne transmission of, 769*t*
Hep B vaccine. *See* Hepatitis B virus vaccine
Hepeviridae (hepeviruses), 385*t*, 716, 720*t*, 721, 750*t*
Hepevirus genus/spp., 721, 750*t*
Herbicide tolerance, recombinant DNA technology and, 251–252
Herd immunity, 500
common cold and, 717
Hereditary diseases, 414, 415*t*
d'Herelle, Felix, 390*b*
Herpangina, 719
Herpes gladiatorum, 695
Herpes infections, 689, 693–702, 694*f*
of eye, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*
genital, 689, 694–695, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 696–697
incubation period for, 421*t*
in HIV infection/AIDS, 695, 733, 733*f*
latency/recurrence and, 693, 694, 694*f*, 700, 701
neonatal, 695
oral, 694, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
Herpes simplex viruses. *See* Herpes infections; Human herpesvirus(es) 1 and 2; *Simplexvirus* genus/spp.
Herpesviridae (herpesviruses), 384, 385*t*, 690, 693–702, 694*f*, 710*t*. *See also* Herpes infections
latency/recurrence and, 693, 694, 694*f*, 700, 701
replication of, 392
synthesis in, 392
Herpes zoster (shingles), 697–698, 698*f*, 700*b*
vaccine for, 699
Herpetic gingivostomatitis, 694
Herpetic pharyngitis, 694
Herpetic whitlow, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*, 696*t*
HE (H and E) stain. *See* Hematoxylin and eosin stain
Heterochromatin, 197, 197*f*
Heterocysts, 324, 324*f*
in cyanobacteria, 778
Heterotrophs, 164, 165*f*
in carbon cycle, 778
HEV. *See* Hepatitis E virus
Hexachlorophene, 272, 272*f*
Hexokinase, in glycolysis, 128*t*, A-6
Hexoses, 42, 43
Hfr (high frequency of recombination) cells, 228–229, 228*f*
HGE. *See* Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis
HHV. *See* Human herpesvirus
Hib vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*
Hierarchy, phylogenetic, 115. *See also* Evolution
High-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters
biosafety and, 263, 268–269, 269*f*
in microbial control, 268–269, 269*f*
High-energy phosphate bonds, ATP release and, 51, 125, 127
in substrate-level phosphorylation, 134, 136*f*
High frequency of recombination (Hfr) cells, 228–229, 228*f*
High G + C Gram-positive bacteria, 320*f*, 326, 328–330, 329*f*, 329*t*, 539
High-level germicides, 262
Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART). *See* Antiretroviral therapy
High-power/high dry objective lens, 98
Hind restriction enzymes, 239, 239*t*
*Hin*fI restriction enzyme, 239*t*
Hinge region, immunoglobulin, 469, 470*f*
Histamine
in inflammation, blood vessels affected by, 454, 455, 456*f*
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 516, 517, 517*f*, 518*t*, 519
Histidine auxotrophs, in Ames test, 223–224, 224*f*
Histological stains, 110
Histolytic toxins, clostridial, 552
Histones, 82, 195, 197, 197*f*, 198*t*
Histoplasma capsulatum, 358, 633, 635*f*, 636–638, 636*f*, 637*b*, 637*f*, 638*f*
direct fluorescent antibody test in detection of, 507
soilborne transmission of, 636, 781, 781*t*
Histoplasmosis, 358, 636–638, 637*b*, 637*f*
diagnosis of, 507, 635*f*, 637–638
soilborne transmission of, 636, 781, 781*t*
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 381*f*, 533, 729, 730*b*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
CD4/CD4 (helper) T cells and, 380, 475*b*, 533, 729, 730*b*, 733, 733*f*
classification of, 384*t*, 730
as genetic vector, 241
immune system challenges and, 730, 730*t*
origin of, 730
replication of, 731–733, 731*f*, 732*f*
resistance and, 735
structure of, 730, 730*b*, 730*t*
synthesis in, 392, 731, 731*f*, 732
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 734
ART during pregnancy and, 735
vaccine development and, 250, 735
HIV-1, 729
HIV-2, 729–730
Hives (urticaria), in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 519, 519*f*
HIV infection/AIDS, 532–533, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*, 742*b*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV
aspergillosis in, 644, 645
blastomycosis in, 638
candidiasis in, 643
coccidioidomycosis in, 640
course of infection and, 733, 733*f*
cryptococcosis in, 645, 646
cryptosporidiosis in, 672
Cyclospora infection in, 673
cytomegalovirus infection in, 701
diagnosis of, 734–735
ELISA in, 508, 734
western blot in, 509, 509*f*, 510, 734
drug resistance and, 735
epidemiology of, 430, 734, 734*f*
hairy leukoplakia in, 699, 699–700, 699*f*, 700
helper T lymphocytes in, 380, 475*b*, 533, 729, 730*b*
attachment and, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
HHV-1 and HHV-2 infections and, 695
HHV-6 infection and, 702
histoplasmosis in, 637
incidence of, 426, 426*f*
incubation period for, 421*t*
Kaposi's sarcoma in, 533, 702, 702*f*, 733, 733*f*
leishmaniasis in, 665
mycobacterial infections in, 566
opportunistic infections/tumors in, 409, 533, 647, 729*t*, 733, 733*f*. *See also specific type*
fungal infections, 641, 647, 729*t*
pathogenesis of, 733, 733*f*
Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP) in, 641, 742*b*
pregnancy and, 413*t*, 734, 735
prevalence of, 426, 426*f*
prevention of, 735
toxoplasmosis in, 671, 672
transmission of, 734, 734*f*
transplacental, 413*t*, 734
ART during pregnancy and, 735
treatment of, 735
tuberculosis and, 565, 566
vaccine development and, 250, 735
virus causing. *See* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
HME. *See* Human monocytic ehrlichiosis
Hodgkin's lymphoma, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699*f*, 700
Holdfasts, of algal thalli, 367
Holoenzymes, 128, 128*f*
Homologous chromosomes, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Homologous sequences, in genetic recombination, 224
Honey, infant botulism and, 555
Honey mushroom *(Armillaria ostoyae)*, 344
Hook
of archaea flagellum, 75
of bacterial flagellum, 59, 60
Hookworms (*Ancylostoma* and *Necator*), 680–681, 681*f*, 683*t*
Hopanoids, 66
Hops, in beer production, 759–760, 760*f*
Horizontal (lateral) gene transfer, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
antimicrobial resistance and, 230*b*, 300
bacterial conjugation, 63, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
transformation, 225–226, 225*f*, 229*t*
Horses, arboviral encephalitis and, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*. *See also* Equine encephalitis
Hospital-acquired infections. *See* Nosocomial infections
Hospital epidemiology, 430–432, 431*f*. *See also* Nosocomial infections
Hospital microbiology, 18*f*, 430–432, 431*f*
Host(s)
amplifying, for *Yersinia pestis*, 588, 588*f*
movement of microbes into, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*t*. *See also* Infection; Portals of entry
movement of microbes out of, 421–422, 421*f*
for parasites, 406–407, 659
symbiotic relationships with microbes and, 170
of viruses, 380, 381*f*
Host defenses, 20–21, 438. *See also* Immune response
adaptive immunity, 439, 463–493. *See also* Adaptive immunity
innate immunity, 438–462, 458*t*. *See also* Innate immunity
proteins in, 46, 443
species resistance and, 439
Hot air, in microbial control, 267, 271*t*
Houseflies, as disease vectors, 424, 424*t*
*Hpa*I restriction enzyme, 239*t*
HPIV. *See* Human parainfluenza viruses
HPS. *See Hantavirus* pulmonary syndrome
HPV. *See* Human papillomaviruses
HPV vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*
HRIG. *See* Human rabies immune globulin
HSV. *See* Human herpesvirus(es) 1 and 2

Subject Index

HTLV. *See* Human T-lymphotrophic virus(es)
Human adenovirus 36, obesity and, 705, 705*b*
Human chorionic growth hormone, immunochromatographic assays for, 510
Human diploid cell vaccine (HDCV), 740. *See also* Rabies vaccine
Human genome, 193
  sequencing of. *See* Genomics
Human granulocytic ehrlichiosis (anaplasmosis/HGE), 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*, 611*t*
Human growth hormone, microbial production of, 13*t*, 767*t*, 768*t*
Human herpesvirus(es), 693. *See also specific type*
Human herpesvirus(es) 1 (HHV-1) and 2 (HHV-2), 693, 694–697, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*f*, 696*t*
  diagnosis/treatment/prevention of infections caused by, 696–697
  epidemiology and pathogenesis of infections caused by, 696, 696*t*
  genital infection and, 689, 694–695, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
    diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 696–697
    incubation period for, 421*t*
  in HIV infection/AIDS, 695, 733, 733*f*
  latency/recurrent lesions and, 694, 694*f*
  neonatal infection and, 695
  ocular/ophthalmic infection and, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*
  oral infection and, 694, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
  whitlow caused by, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*, 696*t*
Human herpesvirus 3 (HHV-3), 693, 697–699, 697*f*, 698*f*. *See also* Varicella-zoster virus
Human herpesvirus 4 (HHV-4), 693, 699–701, 699*f*
Human herpesvirus 5 (HHV-5), 693, 701, 701*f*. *See also* *Cytomegalovirus* genus/spp.
Human herpesvirus 6 (HHV-6), 693, 701–702, 702*f*. *See also* *Roseolovirus* genus/spp.
Human herpesvirus 7 (HHV-7), 694
Human herpesvirus 8 (HHV-8), 693–694, 702, 702*f*
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 381*f*, 533, 729, 730*b*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
  CD4/CD4 (helper) T cells and, 380, 475*b*, 533, 729, 730*b*, 733, 733*f*
  classification of, 384*t*, 730
  as genetic vector, 241
  immune system challenges and, 730, 730*t*
  origin of, 730
  replication of, 731–733, 731*f*, 732*f*
  resistance and, 735
  structure of, 730, 730*b*, 730*t*
  synthesis in, 392, 731, 731*f*, 732
  transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 734
    ART during pregnancy and, 735
  type 1, 729
  type 2, 729–730
  vaccine development and, 250, 735
Human insulin, microbial production of, 13*t*, 237, 249, 767*t*, 768*t*
Human monocytic ehrlichiosis (HME), 610–611, 610*f*, 611*f*, 611*t*
Human papillomaviruses, 385*t*, 690, 702, 702–704, 703*f*, 704*b*, 710*t*
  cervical cancer and, 702
  genital warts caused by, 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
Human papillomavirus vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 703
Human parainfluenza viruses, 737–738
Human pathogens, bioterrorism and, 784, 785*t*
  assessing threat potential and, 783–784
Human rabies immune globulin (HRIG), 740
Human T cell leukemia virus, 385*t*
Human T-lymphotrophic virus(es) (HTLV), 729, 729*f*
Humoral immune response, 465. *See also* Antibody immune responses
Humus, in topsoil, 780
Hyalomma ticks, as disease vectors, for arboviruses, 726*t*
Hyaluronic acid capsule, group A streptococcal pathogenicity and, 544
Hyaluronidase/hyaluronic acid
  microbial production of, 765
  as virulence factor, 418, 419*f*
  of group A streptococci, 544
  of group B streptococci, 546
  of staphylococci, 540, 540*t*
  of *Treponema*, 616
Hybridization, 188
  with fluorescent probes, 248, 248*f*
Hybridomas, in passive immunotherapy, 502, 502*f*
Hydatid cysts/hydatid disease, 676, 676*f*, 683*t*
Hydrocarbons, microbial production of, 766, 768*t*
Hydrochloric acid, in acid-fast staining, 108
Hydrogen, 28*t*, 30*f*
  as alternative fuel, microbial production of, 767, 768*t*
  atomic number of, 27, 28*t*
  covalent bonds in formation of, 30, 31, 31*f*, 34. *See also* Hydrogen bonds
  electrons of, 29, 30*f*
  for microbial growth, 164, 167*b*
Hydrogen bonds, 34, 34*f*, 34*t*
  nucleic acid, 34, 49, 50, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
  water cohesiveness and, 36, 36*f*
Hydrogen ions, 37, 37*f*
  acid-base balance and, 37–38
Hydrogen peroxide
  antimicrobial action of, 165, 166, 274, 277*t*
    peroxide anion and, 165–166, 166*f*
  in killing by neutrophils, 448
Hydrogen sulfide (H_2S)
  sulfate-reducing microbes producing, 116*f*, 140
  in sulfur cycle, 779, 779*f*
Hydrolases, 127, 128*t*
Hydrolysis, 35*f*, 36, 127, 128*t*
  of disaccharides, 43, 44*f*
  in fat catabolism, 146, 146*f*
  of sucrose, 43, 44*f*
Hydrophilic molecules, in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
Hydrophobia, in rabies, 639*b*, 740
Hydrophobic molecules, 39–50
  in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
Hydrostatic pressure, microbial growth affected by, 170
Hydrothermal vents, 26, 63, 783
Hydroxyl group, 39, 40*t*
Hydroxyl ions, 37, 37*f*
  acid base balance and, 37–38
Hydroxyl radicals, 166
Hygiene, infection control/prevention and, 16–17. *See also* Infection control
  Lister's contribution/antisepsis and, 17, 18*f*
  Nightingale's contribution/nursing and, 17, 17*f*, 18*f*
  Semmelweis' contribution/handwashing and, 16–17, 18*f*
  Snow's contribution/epidemiology and, 17, 18*f*, 428, 430*f*, 623
Hygiene hypothesis, 516, 516*b*
Hypersensitivity, 516, 516–529, 528*t*, 529*b*. *See also* *specific type*
  immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
  type I (immediate), 516–520, 516*b*, 517*f*, 518*f*, 518*t*, 519*f*, 520*b*, 528*t*, 529*b*. *See also* Allergic reactions
  type II (cytotoxic), 520–523, 521*f*, 522*t*, 523*f*, 528*t*
  type III (immune–complex mediated), 524–526, 524*f*, 525*f*, 528*t*
    fungal allergens causing, 652–653
  type IV (delayed/cell-mediated), 526–528, 526*f*, 527*f*, 528*t*
Hypersensitivity aspergillosis, 644, 644*b*, 645
Hypersensitivity pneumonitis, 524
Hyperthermophiles, 130, 169, 169*f*, 321, 321*f*
  commercial sterilization and, 259, 264
  in polymerase chain reaction, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
Hypertonic solutions, 70, 70*f*, 170
  food preservation/microbial control and, 269–270
Hyphae, 4*f*, 358, 359*f*, 361, 362*f*, 363, 363*f*
  in lichens, 364, 365, 366*f*
  in phaeohyphomycosis, 650, 650*f*
Hyphomicrobium facilis, 330*f*
Hypnozoites, in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 668
Hypochlorite, antimicrobial action of, 273, 448
Hypothalamus, body temperature controlled by, 456–457, 457*f*
Hypothesis, in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
Hypotonic solutions, 70, 70*f*, 170

Iatrogenic diseases, 415*t*
  infection, 430, 431, 431*f*
Ibotenic acid, 652
Ice-minus, 767
ICTV (International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses), 383
Identification (microbe), 112, 115–119, 116*f*, 117*f*, 118*f*, 119*f*. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
idio- (prefix), 415*t*
Idiopathic diseases, 415*t*
IFNs. *See* Interferon(s)
Ig. *See* Immunoglobulin(s)
IL(s). *See* Interleukin(s)
IL-2R. *See* Interleukin 2 receptor
Illness phase of disease, 420–421, 421*f*
IM. *See* Intramuscular (IM) drug administration
Imipenem, 296, 302*t*
Immediate (type I) hypersensitivity, 516–520, 516*b*, 517*f*, 518*f*, 518*t*, 519*f*, 520*b*, 528*t*, 529*b*
  to antimicrobial drugs, 297
    penicillin, 297, 467
  clinical signs of
    in localized reaction, 518–519, 518*f*, 519*f*
    in systemic reactions, 519
  degranulation/degranulating cells in, 517, 517–518, 517*f*, 518*t*
  diagnosis of, 519, 519*f*
  fungal allergens causing, 652
  initial exposure/sensitization and, 516–517, 516*b*, 517*f*
  prevention of, 519–520, 520*b*
  transgenic organisms and, 253
  treatment of, 520
  vaccines causing, 497, 499, 501
Immersion oil, 98, 99*f*
Immortal B cells, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 700
Immune complexes, 503, 524, 524*f*
  in glomerulonephritis, 525, 545
  in hypersensitivity pneumonitis, 524
  in rheumatoid arthritis, 525
  in systemic lupus erythematosus, 525
Immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity, 524–526, 524*f*, 525*f*, 528*t*
  fungal allergens causing, 652–653
Immune disorders, 515–537. *See also specific type*
  autoimmune diseases, 516, 529–531
  hypersensitivities, 516, 516–529, 516*b*, 520*b*, 528*t*, 529*b*. *See also* Allergic reactions; Hypersensitivity
  immunodeficiency diseases, 516, 531–533, 532*b*, 533*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
  immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
Immune globulin, human rabies, 740
Immune hypersensitivity, 516, 516–529, 516*b*, 520*b*, 528*t*, 529*b*. *See also* Hypersensitivity
Immune response (immunity)
  acquired, 487–488, 489*t*
  adaptive, 439, 463–493. *See also* Adaptive immunity
  antibody, 464, 483–487, 484*f*, 485*f*, 487*f*
  cell-mediated, 464, 480–483, 481*f*, 482*b*, 483*f*
  contact, 497
  defects in (immunodeficiency diseases), 516, 531–533, 532*b*, 533*t*. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
  diagnostic uses and, 495
  herd, 500
    common cold and, 717
  innate, 438–462, 458*t*. *See also* Innate immunity
  preparation for, 478–480, 478*f*, 479*f*, 480*f*
  species resistance and, 439
Immune serum. *See* Antiserum

Immune suppression
  nosocomial infections and, 430, 431, 431*f*
  opportunistic pathogens/infections and, 409, 532, 634, 634*t*, 647
Immune system cytokines. *See* Cytokines
Immune testing, 503–510, 511*t*. *See also specific test and* Serology
  agglutination tests in, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
  complement fixation test in, 506, 511*t*
  labeled antibody tests in, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*
  nephelometric tests in, 504
  neutralization tests in, 505–506, 511*t*
  point-of-care testing and, 510, 510*f*, 511*t*
  precipitation tests in, 503–504, 503*f*, 504*f*, 511*t*
  turbidimetric tests in, 504
Immune thrombocytopenic purpura, 523, 523*f*
Immunity. *See* Immune response (immunity)
Immunization, 17, 20, 486, 487*f*, 495, 495–503, 496*f*. *See also specific organism or disease and* Vaccines
  active/artificially acquired immunity and, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*, 502*f*
  CDC recommendations for, 499–500, 499*f*
  history of, 17, 495, 496*b*, 496*f*
  memory cells and, 486, 487*f*
  passive (passive immunotherapy), 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
Immunoblots (Western blots), 117, 508–510, 509*f*, 511*t*
ImmunoCAP Specific IgE blood test, 519
Immunochromatographic assays, 510, 510*f*
Immunocompromised host. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
  aspergillosis in, 644, 645
  candidiasis in, 642–643
  cryptococcosis in, 645, 646
  cytomegalovirus infection in, 701
  Listeria infection in, 558, 559
  Morganella/Providencia/Edwardsiella infection in, 585
  nosocomial infections and, 430, 431, 431*f*
  opportunistic pathogens/infections and, 409, 532, 634, 634*t*, 647. *See also specific type*
  Pneumocystis pneumonia in, 641
  Pseudomonas infection in, 596
  Vibrio vulnificus infection and, 606
  zygomycoses in, 646
Immunodeficiency diseases, 516, 531–533, 532*b*, 533*t*
  acquired (secondary), 531, 532–533. *See also* HIV infection/AIDS
  opportunistic infections and, 409, 532, 634, 634*t*, 647
  primary, 531, 531–532, 532*b*, 533*t*
  severe combined, 237, 250, 531, 532*b*, 533*t*
Immunodiffusion, 504, 504*f*, 511*t*
Immunofiltration assays, 510
Immunofluorescence, 101–102, 102*f*
Immunoglobulin(s), 444, 468. *See also* Antibodies
  classes of, 469, 471–473, 474*t*
  deficient, 531–532, 533*t*
  in passive immunotherapy, 488, 489*t*, 494, 495
  plasma cell secretion of, 469, 483–484, 484*f*, 486
  structure of, 468, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*
Immunoglobulin A (IgA), 469, 473, 474*t*
  deficiency of, 531–532
  in neutralization, 470
  plasma cell secretion of, 486
  secretory, 473, 474*t*
    naturally acquired passive immunity and, 488, 489*t*
    protease against
      gonococcal pathogenicity and, 576, 577*b*
      pneumococcal pathogenicity and, 548, 548*b*
Immunoglobulin D (IgD), 469, 473, 474*t*
Immunoglobulin E (IgE), 469, 473, 474*t*
  in complement activation/inflammation, 470, 473, 474*t*
  plasma cell secretion of, 486
  in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 473, 474*t*, 516, 516*b*, 517, 517*f*
  testing for, 519, 519*f*
Immunoglobulin G (IgG), 469, 471, 474*t*
  in naturally acquired passive immunity, 488, 489*t*
  plasma cell secretion of, 486
Immunoglobulin M (IgM), 469, 471, 474*t*
  in complement activation/inflammation, 470, 471
  plasma cell secretion of, 486
Immunological diseases, 415, 415*t*
Immunological memory, 464, 482, 486, 487, 487*f*
Immunological synapse, 481, 481*f*
  B cell activation and, 486
  T cell regulation in, 483
  T helper cell activation/cloning and, 484–486
Immunology/immunologists, 17, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 464. *See also* Immune response
Immunosuppressive drugs, 528–529, 529*t*
  in diabetes prevention, 530
Immunosuppressive retroviruses, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*. *See also* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
Immunotherapy
  passive, 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
  for type I hypersensitivity, 520
Imperfect fungi, 364
Impetigo
  staphylococcal, 541, 541*f*
  streptococcal, 545
Inactivated polio vaccine (IPV/Salk vaccine), 499*f*, 500*t*, 501, 718–719, 719*t*
Inactivated (killed) vaccines, 497
  adjuvants for, 497
Incidence of disease, 425–426, 426*f*
Incineration, in microbial control, 267, 271*t*
Inclusion(s), cellular
  in cytomegalovirus disease, 701, 701*f*
  in eukaryotic cells, 87*t*
  magnetite, 55, 72
  in prokaryotic cells, 57*f*, 87*t*
    archaea, 87*t*
    bacteria, 55, 72, 72*f*, 87*t*
Inclusion bodies
  chlamydias forming, 612, 612*f*
  in cytomegalovirus infection, 701, 701*f*
Incubation
  measurement techniques not requiring, 184–185, 184*f*
  measurement techniques requiring, 185–186, 186*f*, 187*f*, 188*t*
  in streak plate method of isolation, 174
Incubation period, 420, 421*f*, 421*t*
  for leprosy, 421*t*, 565
  for pertussis, 594, 594*f*
  for tetanus, 421*t*, 556
Index case, 428
Indicator organisms, in water quality testing, 771
Indigenous microbiota, 407. *See also* Normal microbiota
Indigo, microbial production of, 766, 766*b*, 768*t*
Indirect contact transmission of disease, 422, 425*t*
Indirect fluorescent antibody tests, 506–507, 507*f*, 511*t*
Indirect (negative) selection, of mutants, 222–223, 223*f*
Induced fit model, 129, 129*f*
Inducers, in operon, 214, 215*f*
Inducibility, in adaptive immunity, 464, 480, 483
Inducible operons, 214, 214–215, 215*f*, 216*t*
  lactose *(lac)* operon as, 214–215, 215*f*
Induction, in lysogeny, 388, 389*f*
Industrial canning, in food preservation, 762, 762*f*
Industrial fermentations, 11, 765, 765*f*
Industrial microbiology/biotechnology, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Recombinant DNA technology
  acid mine drainage and, 776–777, 777*f*
  agricultural applications/products of. *See* Agricultural microbiology
  alternative fuel production and, 766–767, 766*f*, 768*t*
  bioremediation and, 19*t*, 20, 172*b*, 776, 776*b*
  biosensors and bioreporters and, 767–768
  enzyme production and, 765–766, 766*b*
  fermentations and, 11, 765, 765*f*
  pesticide production and, 13*t*, 767, 768*t*
  pharmaceutical applications/products of, 13*t*, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
  products of, 13*t*, 765–774, 768*t*
  recombinant DNA technology in, 237, 765, 767*t*, 768*t*
  water treatment and, 768–774
Infant. *See* Newborn
Infant botulism, 554, 555
Infection, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*f*, 413*t*, 414*f*. *See also* Infection/infectious diseases
Infection/infectious diseases, 13, 405–437, 415*t*. *See also specific type and specific causative agent*
  adhesion in, 413, 413*f*, 414*f*
  animal reservoirs of, 410–411, 410*t*
  autoimmunity and, 530
  causes (etiology) of, 11–16, 15*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 414–416, 415*t*, 417*f*
  classification of, 424–425, 425*t*
  defenses against, 20–21
  diagnosis of
    clinical sampling and, 172, 172–173, 174*t*
    recombinant DNA techniques in, 250–251
      DNA microarrays, 245
  epidemiology of, 17, 18*f*, 19*t*, 425–433. *See also* Epidemiology
  exposure to microbes and, 411
  fever and, 456–457, 457*f*, 458*t*
  germ theory of, 13, 20, 416
  human carriers of, 411, 411*b*
  iatrogenic, 430, 431, 431*f*
  manifestations of, 412, 414, 414*t*
  microbe–host symbiosis and, 406–409, 406*f*, 407*f*, 407*t*, 408*t*, 409*b*
  nature of, 414–422
  nonliving reservoirs of, 411
  nosocomial, 16, 283, 430–432, 431*f*
    horizontal gene transfer and, 230*b*
  notifiable, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*
  opportunistic, 294, 297, 430–431
  persistent, enveloped viruses causing, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
  portals of entry and, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*t*
  portals of exit and, 421–422, 421*f*
  prevention of, 16–18
    probiotics in, 7*b*, 298*b*
  public health records/policies and, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*, 432–433, 432*b*
  reservoirs of, 410–411, 410*t*, 411*b*
  stages of, 420–421, 421*f*, 421*t*
  terminology of, 415*t*
  transmission modes of, 422–424, 422*f*, 423*b*, 423*f*, 424*t*, 425*t*
    public health in interruption and, 433
  virulence and, 416–420, 418*f*, 419*f*, 420*t*
Infection control, 17, 18*f*, 19*t*
  handwashing in, 16–17, 18*f*
  Lister's contribution and, 17, 18*f*
  Nightingale's contribution and, 17, 17*f*, 18*f*
  nosocomial infections and, 431–432
  public health policies/education and, 433
  Semmelweis' contribution and, 16–17, 18*f*
  Snow's contribution/epidemiology and, 17, 18*f*, 428, 430*f*, 623
Infectious hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis, type A
Infectious mononucleosis (mono)
  cytomegalovirus causing, 701
  HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) causing, 699, 699*f*, 700
  HHV-6 infection and, 702
Infective body, *Coxiella* forming, 600, 600*f*
Inflammation, 454–456, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*, 458*t*
  antibodies in, 470
  fever and, 456–457, 457*f*, 458*t*
  NOD proteins in, 449
  TLRs/PAMPs in, 449
Inflammatory mediators, 454–455, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*
  in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517*f*, 518*t*

Subject Index

Influenza, 715, 717*t*, 742–747, 743*f*, 744*f*, 745*b*, 746*b*, 750*t*
  avian, 390*b*
  diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 746–747
  epidemiology of, 746, 746*b*
  H1N1 ("swine"), 8*b*, 428, 745, 745*b*
  immunization against, 390*b*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 746–747
  incubation period for, 421*t*
Influenzavirus, 385*t*, 715, 742, 742–743, 743*b*, 743*f*, 744*f*, 746*b*, 750*t*
  H1N1 strain of, 8*b*, 428, 745, 745*b*
  H5N1 strain of, 390*b*
  immunization against, 390*b*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 746–747
  pandemics caused by, 428, 742, 743*f*, 744*f*, 745
  safe handling of, 263
  transmission of, 746, 746*b*
Influenza virus vaccine, 390*b*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 746–747
Ingestion, in phagocytosis, 447, 447*f*
INH. *See* Isoniazid
Inhalation. *See also* Respiratory system
  parasitic infection and, 659*f*
Inhalation anthrax, 327, 551, 717*t*, 781. *See also* Anthrax
  bioterrorism and, 551
Inhaled allergens, 518
Inhibition, zone of, 21*f*
  in diffusion susceptibility test, 294, 294*f*
  in Etest, 295, 295*f*
  in minimum bactericidal concentration test, 295, 295*f*
Inhibition/inhibitors
  allosteric, 132–133, 133*f*
  enzyme, 132–133, 132*f*, 133*f*
    competitive, 132, 132*f*
      antimicrobial action and, 132, 290, 291*f*
    feedback, 132–133, 133*f*
    noncompetitive, 132, 132*f*
Inhibitory neurotransmitter, tetanospasmin (tetanus toxin) affecting, 556, 557*f*
Initial (reticulate) bodies
  in chlamydial growth/reproduction, 338, 612, 612*f*
  in *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* growth/reproduction, 610, 610*f*
Initiation
  DNA replication, 199, 200*f*
    methylation affecting, 202
  transcription, 204–206, 205*f*
  translation, 211–212, 211*f*, 213
    antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289, 289*f*
Initiation complex, 211, 211*f*
Injection
  for DNA insertion into cells, 246, 247*f*
  intramuscular (IM)/intravenous (IV), for drug administration, 296, 296*f*
Innate immunity, 438–462, 458*t*
  antimicrobial peptides (defensins) in, 440, 443, 458*t*
  blood/blood cells in, 443–446, 443*t*, 444*f*, 445*f*, 446*b*, 458*t*. *See also specific blood component*
  chemicals/secretions in, 443, 443*t*, 458*t*
  complement/complement system in, 451–454, 451*f*, 452*f*, 453*f*, 454*f*, 458*t*
  fever in, 456–457, 457*f*, 458*t*
  inflammation in, 454–456, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*, 458*t*
  interferons in, 449–451, 450*f*, 451*t*, 458*t*
  lacrimal apparatus in, 442, 442*f*
  mucous membranes/mucus in, 412, 412*f*, 440–441, 441*f*, 441*t*, 453*b*, 458*t*
  NOD proteins in, 449
  nonphagocytic killing in, 448, 458*t*
  normal microbiota in, 442
  phagocytosis in, 446–448, 447*f*, 458*t*
  skin in, 412, 412*f*, 439–440, 439*f*, 440*b*, 441*t*, 458*t*
  toll-like receptors (TLRs) in, 448–449, 449*t*, 453*b*
Inoculum/inocula, 172, 174, 174*f*
Inorganic molecules/chemicals, 36–39. *See also* Acid(s); Base(s); Salt(s); Water
Insecta/insect vectors, 372, 372–373, 373*f*, 682. *See also specific type*
Insecticides, microbial production of, 13*t*, 767, 768*t*
Insertion (frameshift mutation), 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
  transposition as, 229
Insertion sequences (IS), 229–230, 230*f*
Insulin
  autoimmunity affecting production of, 530
  microbial production of, 13*t*, 237, 249, 767*t*, 768*t*
Integral protein(s)
  in cell walls, 65, 65*f*
  in cytoplasmic membrane, 66, 67*f*
    facilitated diffusion and, 68, 69*f*
  in electron transport chains, 139, 139*f*, 140
Integral protein rings, bacterial flagellar motion and, 60, 60*f*
Integrase, 728
  HIV, 730*b*
    replication and, 731*f*, 732
Integrase inhibitors, for HIV infection/AIDS, 735
Integration, in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 733, 733*f*
Interference, RNA (RNAi), 217*b*
Interference (differential interference contrast/Nomarski) microscopy/microscopes, 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
Interferon(s), 449–451, 450*f*, 451*t*, 458*t*, 477, 477*t*
  in adaptive immunity, 477, 477*t*
  alpha (α), 449–450, 450*f*, 451*t*
  beta (β), 449–450, 450*f*, 451*t*
  gamma (γ) (macrophage activation factor), 450–451, 451*t*, 477, 477*t*
  in innate immunity, 449–451, 450*f*, 451*t*, 458*t*
    TLRs/PAMPs and, 449
  recombinant DNA in production of, 249, 767*t*
Interleukin(s), 477, 477*t*
  recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Interleukin 2 (IL-2), 477*t*, 481, 481*f*
Interleukin 2 receptor (IL-2R)
  in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
  monoclonal antibodies against, 529
Interleukin 4 (IL-4), 477*t*
  in B cell activation, 485*f*, 486
  in helper T cell differentiation, 485*f*, 486
Interleukin 12 (IL-12), 477*t*
Intermediate filaments, in eukaryotic cytoskeleton, 81, 81*f*
Intermediate hosts, 659*f*
  for flukes, 677, 677*f*
  for tapeworms, 675, 675*f*
Intermediate-level germicides, 262
Internal carbonyl group, 40*t*
International Committee on Taxonomy of Viruses (ICTV), 383
Interphase, 346, 350*t*
Intestinal secretions, in host defense, 443*t*
Intestines. *See* Gastrointestinal (digestive) tract
Intoxications
  contaminated food causing, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433, 764, 764*t*. *See also* Foodborne illnesses
    botulism, 264, 327*b*, 553, 554, 764*t*
  contaminated water causing, 769*t*. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
  fungi causing, 634, 651–652, 652
    mushroom poisoning, 364, 652
Intracellular pathogens, 333. *See also* Viruses
  T cells/cell-mediated immune responses and, 464, 474, 480–483, 481*f*, 482*b*, 483*f*
Intramuscular (IM) drug administration, 296, 296*f*
Intravenous (IV) drug abuse, HIV infection/AIDS and, 734, 734*f*, 742*b*
Intravenous (IV) drug administration, 296, 296*f*
Intravenous immunoglobulins (IVIg), 502
Introns, 207, 207*f*
Intubation, 738
In-use test, 278
Invasive extraintestinal amebiasis, 660, 673*t*
Invasive pulmonary cryptococcosis, 646
Inversion (mutation), 217
Inverted repeat (IR), 229, 230*f*
Iodine, 28*t*
  antimicrobial action of, 273, 273*f*, 277*t*
  in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
Iododeoxyuridine, 292*f*
Iodophors, antimicrobial action of, 273, 273*f*
Iodoquinol, 308*t*, 309*f*
Ion(s), 33. *See also specific type*
Ionic bonds, 33–34, 33*f*, 34*t*
Ionization (dissociation), 33, 33*f*, 36
Ionizing radiation. *See also* Radiation
  as energy source for fungi, 359
  in microbial control/food preservation, 270, 270*f*, 271*t*, 763
  mutagenic effects of, 218–219, 219*f*
IPV. *See* Inactivated polio vaccine
IR. *See* Inverted repeat
Iron, 28*t*, 444
  acid mine drainage and, 776
  cycling of, 780
  in electron transport chains, 140
  in host defense, 444
Iron-binding compounds, of Enterobacteriaceae, 581, 581*f*
Iron hydroxide, acid mine drainage and, 776
Iron-sulfur proteins, in electron transport chains, 140
Irradiation. *See* Radiation
IS. *See* Insertion sequences
Islets of Langerhans, autoimmunity affecting, 530
Isocitric acid, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Isocitric acid dehydrogenase, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Isografts, 527, 527*f*
Isolation (microbe), 13, 172
  for pure culture, 174–175, 174*f*, 175*f*
Isoleucine
  feedback inhibition and, 138
  tRNA, mupirocin affecting, 288, 303*t*
Isomer, 127
Isomerases, 127, 128*t*
Isomerization, in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*
Isoniazid, 288, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 302*t*
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 302*t*
Isonicotinic acid hydrazide. *See* Isoniazid
Isopropanol
  antimicrobial actions of, 272
  microbial fermentation producing, 145*f*
Isotonic solutions, 69, 70*f*
Isotopes, 27–28, 28*f*
  radioactive, 28
-itis (suffix), 415*t*
Itraconazole, 307*t*, 635
IV. *See under Intravenous*
Ivanowski, Dmitri, 14, 15*t*, 18*f*, 381
Ivermectin, 308*t*
  mechanism of action of, 290, 308*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*
IVIg. *See* Intravenous immunoglobulins
Ixodes ticks
  as disease vectors, 424*t*
    for arboviral encephalitis, 726*t*
    for babesiosis, 672*b*
    for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610, 611*t*
    for Lyme disease *(Borrelia burgdorferi)*, 619, 619*f*, 621
  life cycle of, 619, 619*f*
  taxonomic classification of, 114*f*
Izziella abbottiae, 113

Japanese encephalitis, 385*t*, 722, 726*t*
Japanese encephalitis vaccine, 500*t*
Jaundice
  in hemolytic disease of newborn, 522
  in hepatitis B, 707, 707*f*, 708*b*
  in malaria, 669
  in yellow fever, 16*b*, 724
J (joining) chain, 471, 473, 474*t*
JC virus, 704
Jenner, Edward, 17, 18*f*, 20, 495, 501*b*, 690
"Jock itch" (tinea cruris), 648*t*
Joining (J) chain, 471, 473, 474*t*
"Jumping genes," 229. *See also* Transposons
Junction (J_H) heavy chain gene segment, 472*b*

Junction (J_L) light chain gene segment, 472*b*
Junin hemorrhagic fever, 748
Juvenile-onset diabetes, autoimmunity in, 530

Kala-azar (visceral leishmaniasis), 665, 673*t*
Kalium. *See* Potassium
Kanamycin, 303*t*
K antigens, 580, 581*f*
  of *E. coli*, 582
  of *Haemophilus influenzae*, 590
Kaposi's sarcoma, 533, 702, 702*f*, 733, 733*f*
Kappa genes, BCR, 472*b*
Kelps, 5, 370, 370*f*
Kelsey-Sykes capacity test, 278
Keratin, superficial mycoses and, 648
Keratinase, 418
Keratitis, 258
  Acanthamoeba, 258, 263*b*, 661, 673*t*
Ketoconazole, 307*t*, 635
α–Ketoglutaric acid, 153*t*
  in Krebs cycle, 137*f*, A-10
  in transamination, 155*f*
Kidneys. *See also under Renal*
  immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity affecting, 525
  in leptospirosis, 622
  after streptococcal infection, 545–546
Killing
  nonphagocytic, 448, 458*t*
  in phagocytosis, 447, 447*f*
Kimchi, fermentation in production of, 757
Kinases, as virulence factors, 418, 419*f*
Kineococcus radiotolerans, 172*b*
Kinetoplast, 353, 353*f*
Kinetoplastids, 352, 353, 353*f*, 358*t*
Kingdoms, 113, 114*f*, 115, 349, 349*f*
Kinins, in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517*f*, 518*t*
Kirby-Bauer (diffusion susceptibility) tests, 294, 294*f*, 296*b*
  for Enterobacteriaceae, 581
Kissing bugs *(Triatoma)*, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 424*t*
  in Chagas' disease *(Trypanosoma cruzi)*, 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Kissing disease. *See* Mononucleosis
Kitasato, Shibasaburo, 15*t*, 18*f*, 20
Klebs, Edwin, 14, 15*t*
Klebsiella genus/spp., 335*t*, 584, 584*f*
  capsules of, 59, 584, 584*f*
    staining of, 110*f*
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
  sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Knocking out, 217*b*
Koch, Robert, 13, 13*f*, *14f*, *18f*, 107, 416
Koch's postulates, 14–15, 18*f*, 416, 417*f*
  exceptions to, 416, 430
KOH (potassium hydroxide) preparations, fungi identified by, 634
Koplik's spots, 736*t*, *737*, *737f*
Krebs cycle, 133, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-10
Kryptophanaron alfredi ("flashlight fish"), 141*b*
Kupffer cells (stellate macrophages), 478
Kuru, 400

Labeled antibody tests, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*. *See also specific type*
lac operator, 214, 215*f*
lac operon, 214–215, 215*f*
Lacrimal apparatus, in host defense, 442, 442*f*
LaCrosse encephalitis, 726*t*, 747
β-Lactam antibiotics, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 287*f*, 288, 302*t*
  resistance to, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 540*t*, 543
β-Lactamase, antimicrobial resistance and, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 540*t*, 543
β-Lactam rings, 287*f*, 288
Lactic acid, microbial fermentation producing, 144*f*, 145, 145*f*, 146
  bread production and, 757
  cheese production and, 758, 761*t*
  vegetable fermentation and, 757, 761*t*
Lactic acid dehydrogenase, 128*t*
Lactobacillus genus/spp./lactobacilli, 320*f*, 326, 327, 329*t*, 418*f*
  beneficial uses/as probiotic and, 298*b*, 327, 552*b*
  fermentation products of, 145*f*, 761*t*
    vegetable fermentation and, 757, 761*t*
Lactobacillus bulgaricus, in yogurt production, 758, 761*t*
Lactococcus genus/spp.,
  in cheese production, 758, 761*t*
  in vegetable fermentation, 757
  subspecies *cremoris*, in buttermilk production, 758, 761*t*
Lactoferrin, in host defense, 444
Lactonase
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Lactose, 43
Lactose *(lac)* operon, 214–215, 215*f*
Lactovegetarians, 626*b*
Lagging strand, in DNA replication, 199, 200*f*, 201–202
Lagoons, oxidation, in wastewater treatment, 773
Lag phase, of microbial growth, 182, 183*f*
Lambda genes, BCR, 472*b*
Lambda phage, 388, 389*f*
  replication of, 388, 389*f*
Lamellae, photosynthetic, 86
Laminarin, 370
Lamivudine, 292*f*, 306*t*
Lancefield antigens, 543, 550*t*
Landfills
  bioremediation and, 776
  microbial production of methane and, 766–767, 766*f*
Langerhans, islets of, autoimmunity affecting, 530
Large intestine (colon), normal microbiota of, 407, 408*t*
Lasers
  atomic force microscopes using, 105
  confocal microscopes using, 98, 102
Lassa fever virus/Lassa hemorrhagic fever, 385*t*, 748, 750*t*
  safe handling and, 263
Latency
  animal virus, 395, 395*t*. *See also* Latent viruses
  herpesvirus, 693, 694, 694*f*, 700, 701
  HIV, 395, 731, 732–733, 733*f*
  polyomavirus, 704
  varicella-zoster virus, 697–698, 698*f*
Latent disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Latent phase, in syphilis, 617
Latent viruses (proviruses), 395. *See also* Latency
Lateral (horizontal) gene transfer, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
  antimicrobial resistance and, 230*b*, 300
  bacterial conjugation, 63, 226–229, 227*f*, 228*f*, 229*t*
  transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
  transformation, 225–226, 225*f*, 229*t*
Laundry enzymes, microbial production of, 13*t*
Laws/theories, in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
LCM. *See* Lymphocytic choriomeningitis
Leach fields, 773, 773*f*
Leading strand, in DNA replication, 199, 200*f*
Lectin pathway of complement activation, 451, 451*f*, 454
van Leeuwenhoek, Antoni, 2–3, 2*f*, 6, 18*f*, 98
Leflunomide, 528, 529*t*
Legionella genus/spp., 333, 339*t*, 431*b*, 599–600, 599*f*
Legionnaires' disease (legionellosis), 333, 431*b*, 599–600, 599*f*
Leishmania genus/spp., 353, 358*t*, 664–666, 665*f*, 673*t*
Leishmaniasis, 373, 664–666, 665*f*, 667*b*, 673*t*
Lenses
  in compound microscope, 98, 99*f*
  numerical aperture of, resolution affected by, 98
    immersion oil and, 98
  refraction of light/magnification and, 96–97, 96*f*
Lentivirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*, 750*t*. *See also* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
  transplacental transmission of, 413*t*
Lepromatous leprosy, 565–566, 566*f*
Leprosy (Hansen's disease), 329, 562, 565–566, 566*f*
  immunization against (BCG vaccine), 500*t*, 566
  incubation period for, 421*t*, 565
Leptospira genus/spp., 621–622, 622*f*
Leptospirosis, 622
Leptotrombidium species, as disease vectors, 424*t*
  for scrub typhus *(Orientia tsutsugamushi)*, 610, 611*t*
Leuconostoc genus/spp.
  in vegetable fermentation, 757
  in wine and spirits production, 759
Leuconostoc citrovorum, in buttermilk production, 758, 761*t*
Leukemia
  adult acute T-cell lymphocytic, HTLV-1 causing, 729
  hairy-cell, HTLV-2 causing, 729, 729*f*
Leukocidins, 420
  staphylococcal, 540
Leukocyte(s) (white blood cells), 444–446, 444*f*, 445*f*
  in inflammation, 456, 456*f*
  lab analysis of, 446, 446*b*
  polymorphonuclear. *See* Neutrophil(s)
Leukoencephalopathy, progressive multifocal (PML), 704
Leukopenia, in ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610
Leukoplakia, hairy, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699–700, 699*f*, 700
Leukotrienes
  in inflammation
    blood vessels affected by, 454, 456*f*
    phagocyte migration and, 456
  in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517–518, 517*f*, 518*t*
L forms, 46, 47*f*
LGV strain, of *C. trachomatis*, 613
Librarian's lung, 524
Libraries (gene), 242, 242*f*, 249*t*
Lice, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
  for epidemic relapsing fever *(Borrelia recurrentis)*, 621
  for epidemic typhus *(Rickettsia prowazekii)*, 608, 609, 611*t*
  for trench fever *(Bartonella quintana)*, 591
Lichens, 364, 364–367, 366*f*
Life processes/characteristics, 56–57, 56*t*
  in bacteria/archaea/eukaryotes, 56*t*
  in viruses, 56*t*, 398
Ligands, as adhesion factors, 413. *See also* Adhesins; Attachment proteins
Ligases, 128, 128*t*
  DNA
    in DNA repair, 221, 221*f*
    in genetic recombination, 224, 224*f*
    in lagging strand synthesis, 200*f*, 201
  microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
Light
  electron transport chain producing, 140, 141*b*
  in phase/out of phase, 100, 101*f*
  refraction of, image magnification and, 96–97, 96*f*
    oil immersion lens affecting, 98, 99*f*
  transmission of, spectrophotometer measuring, 187, 188*f*
  wavelengths of
    chlorophyll absorption and, 148
    microscopy and, 96, 96*f*
Light chains, immunoglobulin/B cell receptor/antibody, 468, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*, 472*b*
Light-dependent reactions, 148, 148–151, 149*f*, 150*f*
Light-independent reactions, 148, 151–152, 152*f*
Light microscopy/microscopes, 98–102, 99*f*, 100*f*, 101*f*, 102*f*, 106*t*
  bright-field, 98, 98–100, 99*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
  confocal, 98, 102, 104*b*, 106*t*

dark-field, 98, 100, 100*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
differential interference contrast (Nomarski), 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
fluorescence, 98, 100–102, 102*f*, 106*t*
phase, 98, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
resolving power of, 97*f*
stains used for, 105–111, 111*t*
Light reactions. *See* Light-dependent reactions
Light repair, 220–221, 221*f*
Limiting nutrient, 164
nitrogen as, 166–167
Limnetic zone, 782*f*, 783
Lincosamides, 303*t*, 308*t*
mechanism of action of, 288, 289*f*, 303*t*, 308*t*
Linezolid, 304*t*
Linnaean system of taxonomy, 3, 18*f*, 112–115, 114*f*, 348–349, 349*f*
Linoleic acid, 44*t*
Lipase(s)
in fat catabolism, 128*t*, 146, 146*f*
as virulence factors of staphylococci, 540, 540*t*
Lipid(s), 39–42. *See also specific type*
biosynthesis of, 40, 153–154, 154*f*, 157*f*
catabolism of, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
Lipid A (endotoxin), 66, 418, 419*f*, 420*t*, 575
in Enterobacteriaceae, 580, 581*f*
in *Neisseria*, 575, 577
in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, 596
Lipid rafts, 733
Lipooligosaccharide (LOS), in *Neisseria* cell walls, 575
gonococcal virulence and, 577*b*
meningococcal virulence and, 577
Lipopolysaccharide (LPS). *See also* Endotoxin
in Gram-negative cell walls, 65–66, 65*f*
Lipoproteins, 48
Lipoteichoic acids, in Gram-positive cell walls, 64, 65*f*
Lister, Joseph, 17, 18*f*, 272, 277
Listeria genus/spp., 326, 327, 329*t*, 556–559, 558*f*
anti-*Listeria* phage in control of, 273*b*, 559
food/drink contaminated by, 327, 556, 559, 764, 764*t*
growth in refrigerated products and, 267, 327, 559, 764
meningitis caused by, 327, 558
placenta crossed by, 327, 413*t*, 558
transmission of, 558
Listeriolysin O, 558
Listeriosis, 327, 556–559, 764
placental transmission of, 327, 413*t*, 558
Lithotroph(s), 138, 164, 165*f*, 167
Lithotrophic photoautotrophs, 167
Littoral zone, 782–783, 782*f*
Liver
cancer of, hepatitis and, 689, 708–709
candidal infection of, 643*t*
Fasciola (liver fluke) infection and, 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
hepatitis A affecting, 720
hepatitis B affecting, 706–707, 707*f*, 708–709
hepatitis C affecting, 727
in mushroom poisoning, 652
Vibrio vulnificus infection and, 606
Liver flukes (*Fasciola* species), 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
Livestock, assessing biological threats to, 784
Local drug administration, 296
Local infection, definition of, 425*t*
Lockjaw, 556. *See also* Tetanus
Loffler's medium, for *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* culture, 561
Logarithm(s), A-13
Logarithmic (exponential) growth, 181–182, 181*f*, A-13 to A-14
growth curves of, 182, 183*f*
Log phase, of microbial growth, 182–183, 183*f*
Lone Star *(Amblyomma)* tick, as disease vector
for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610, 611*t*
for *Rickettsia parkeri* infection, 609*b*
Long-term nonprogressors, in HIV infection, 735
LOS. *See* Lipooligosaccharide
Louse. *See* Lice
Louse-borne (epidemic) relapsing fever, 621, 621*f*
Louse-borne (epidemic) typhus, 608–609, 611*t*
Lowenstein-Jensen agar, for *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* culture, 562
Lower respiratory system. *See* Lung(s); Respiratory system
Low G + C Gram-positive bacteria, 320*f*, 325–328, 326, 326*f*, 327*b*, 327*f*, 539
obesity and, 328*b*, 329*t*
Low-level germicides, 262
Low-oxygen cultures, 180
Low-power objective lens, 98
LPS. *See* Lipopolysaccharide
LSD (lysergic acid), *Claviceps purpurea* producing, 363
Luciferase, 141*b*
Lumefantrine, 309*t*
Luminal amebiasis, 660, 673*t*
Luminescence
bacterial, 141*b*
electron transport chain producing, 140, 141*b*
protozoal, 354
Lung(s). *See also* Respiratory system
Enterobacteriaceae infections and, 590*f*
immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity affecting, 524
respiratory syncytial virus infections and, 738–739, 739*f*
smoking affecting, infections and, 453*b*
specimen collection from, 174*t*
in tuberculosis, 562–564, 563*f*
Lupus (systemic lupus erythematosus), 525–526, 525*f*
Lutzomyia genus/spp., leishmaniasis transmitted by, 665, 665*f*, 673*t*
Lyases, 128, 128*t*
Lyme disease, 338, 410*t*, 618–621, 618*f*, 619*f*, 620*f*
Lymph/lymph flow, 465, 466*f*
Lymphatic system, 465–467, 466*f*. *See also* Lymph nodes
Wuchereria infection of, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
Lymphatic vessels, 465, 466*f*
Lymph nodes, 465, 466*f*
inflamed (buboes)
in lymphogranuloma venereum, 613, 613*f*
in plague, 589, 589*f*
Lymphocryptovirus genus/spp., 693, 699, 710*t*. *See also* Epstein-Barr virus
Lymphocyte(s), 444*f*, 445, 445*f*, 464, 464*f*. *See also* B lymphocytes; T lymphocytes
in adaptive immunity, 439, 463, 464–465, 464*f*
in innate immunity, 439, 445, 458*t*
natural killer (NK cells), 445, 448, 458*t*, 470–471, 471*f*
Lymphocyte-depleting therapies, 529, 529*t*
Lymphocytic choriomeningitis, 748
Lymphogranuloma venereum, 338, 613, 613*f*
Lymphoid organs, 465, 466*f*
Lymphoma, Burkitt's/Hodgkin's, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699*f*, 700
Lyophilization (freeze-drying)
for culture preservation, 180, 267, 271*t*
for food preservation, 763
Lysergic acid, *Claviceps purpurea* producing, 363
Lysogenic conversion, 388
Lysogenic phages, 388, 389*f*
Lysogeny/lysogenic replication cycle, 388, 389*f*
Lysol. *See* Orthophenylphenol
Lysosomes, 58*f*, 83*t*, 84, 85*f*
Lysozyme, 276, 386, 440, 441, 443
Lyssavirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 410*t*, 739, 750*t*
infection caused by, 410*t*. *See also specific virus and* Rabies virus
Lytic replication, 386, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*

MAC. *See* Membrane attack complexes
MacConkey agar, 177, 178, 179*f*, 179*t*
for Enterobacteriaceae culture, 581, 581*f*
Machupo hemorrhagic fever, 748
MacLeod, Colin, 19, 226
Macrocystis genus/spp., 370, 370*f*, 371*t*
Macrolides, 303*t*
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 289*f*, 303*t*
Macromolecules. *See also specific type*
organic, 39–51, 40*t*, 125. *See also specific type*
polymerization of, 157*f*
Macronucleus, in protozoa, 350, 351, 351*f*
Macrophage(s), 445, 456, 456*f*, 458*t*. *See also* Phagocytes; Phagocytosis
alveolar, 445
stellate (Kupffer cells), 478
wandering, 445, 456
Macrophage activation factor (gamma-interferon), 450–451, 451*t*, 477, 477*t*
Macrophage colony stimulating factor, recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Macule(s)
in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
in rubella, 726, 727*f*
Mad cow disease, 21*b*, 47, 276, 400
Madurella genus/spp., mycetoma caused by, 650*t*, 651*f*
"Magic bullet," 18, 20
Magnesium, 28*t*, 30*f*
in chlorophyll, 148
cycling of, 780
as enzyne cofactor, 129*t*
Magnetite, cellular inclusions of, 55, 72
Magnetobacteria, 55, 72
Magnetosomes, 55
Magnetospirillum magnetotacticum, 55
Magnification, 96–97, 96*f*
for compound microscope, 98
for electron microscope, 103
empty, 97
oil immersion lens affecting, 98
total, 98–100
Major histocompatibility antigens, 478. *See also* Major histocompatibility complex proteins
Major histocompatibility complex, 478, 478*f*, 479*f*
autoimmunity and, 530
Major histocompatibility complex binding sites, 478, 478*f*
Major histocompatibility complex proteins, 473, 478, 478*f*, 481, 481*f*, 483*f*
antigen processing and, 479–480, 479*f*, 480*f*
clonal deletion of T cells and, 476, 476*f*
donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
graft-versus-host disease and, 527–528
rheumatoid arthritis and, 525, 531
transplantation/rejection and, 478, 527
Malachite green, in Schaeffer-Fulton endospore staining, 110
Malaria, 14, 15*t*, 354, 410*t*, 668–670, 668*f*, 669*f*, 670*b*, 670*f*, 673*t*
vaccine development and, 250, 670
Malassezia/Malassezia furfur, 649, 649*f*
Malic acid, in Krebs cycle, A-10
Malignant tumor, 396. *See also* Cancer
Mallon, Mary, 589*b*
MALT (mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue), 466*f*, 467
Malt/malting, in beer production, 759, 760*f*
Malta fever (brucellosis), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Maltose (malt sugar), 43
Manganese, 28*t*
Mannose, in lectin pathway, 451*f*, 454
Mantoux (tuberculin) test, 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*
Marburg virus/Marburg hemorrhagic fever, 385*t*, 715, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*, 750*t*
Margination, 455
Marine ecosystems, 782, 782*f*, 783
Marshall, Barry, 625
Mashing, in beer production, 759, 760*f*
Mastadenovirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 710*t*
Mast cell(s), 454, 517
in inflammation, 454
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517*f*

Subject Index

Mastigophora, 352
Matrix
  of biofilm, 171, 171*f*
  of mitochondrion, 85*f*, 86
Matrix proteins, 383, 384*f*
Matter, definition of, 27
Maturation, in HIV replication, 731*f*, 732, 733
Maximum growth temperature, 168, 168*f*
MBC test. *See* Minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test
McCarty, Maclyn, 19, 226
McClintock, Barbara, 229
MDR-TB (multi-drug-resistant tuberculosis), 220, 300, 301*b*, 565
Measles (rubeola/red measles), 494, 736, 736–737, 736*t*, 737*f*, 750*t*
  immunization against, 494, 496*f*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 737. *See also* Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine
Measles, German. *See* Rubella
Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine, 494, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 726, 727*f*, 737, 738, 738*f*
  contraindications to during pregnancy, 726
Measles virus, 385*t*, 736, 736–737, 736*t*, 737*f*, 750*t*
Measurement, units of, 95, 95*t*
Meat/pork
  contaminated
    tapeworm infection and, 658, 675, 675*f*, 683*t*
    toxoplasmosis caused by, 670, 671, 671*f*, 673*t*
    variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease caused by, 21*b*, 400*b*
  fermentation in production/preservation of, 758, 761*t*
Mebendazole, 308*t*, 309*f*
Mechanical vectors, 372, 424, 424*t*, 425*t*. *See also* Arthropod vectors
Mediators, inflammatory, 454–455, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*
  in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517*f*, 518*t*
Medical microbiology, 19*t*. *See also* Pharmaceutical microbiology
Medical mycology, 633, 633–651. *See also* Mycoses
  antifungal therapies and, 635
  antifungal vaccines and, 635
  categories of fungal agents and (pathogenic/opportunistic), 633–634, 634*t*
  clinical manifestations of fungal disease and, 634
  diagnosis of fungal infections and, 634–635, 635*f*
  epidemiology of mycoses and, 633
Medium (culture), 172, 175–180, 176*f*. *See also* Culture media
Medulla, lymph node, 465, 466*f*
Mefloquine, 310*t*
Megakaryocytes, 445
Megavirus, 381, 383*f*
Meglumine, 309*f*
Meiosis I and II, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Melanin, 172*b*
  Cryptococcus producing, 646
Melanoma, adoptive T cell therapy against, 482*b*
Melarsoprol, 309*f*
Melioidosis, 595, 596*b*
  bioterrorism and, 595, 785*t*
Membrane(s). *See also* Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes; Mucous membranes
  cutaneous. *See* Skin
  phospholipid bilayers forming, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
    cholesterol in, 41, 78
Membrane attack complexes (MAC), 451*f*, 452*f*, 453, 453*f*
  complement fixation test and, 506
Membrane filters/filtration
  in microbial control, 268, 268*f*, 268*t*
    water treatment and, 770, 770*f*
  in microbial growth estimation, 185, 187*f*, 268
  in water quality testing, 771, 771*f*
Membrane fusion, in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
Membrane proteins, 66, 67*f*
  in electron transport chains, 139, 139*f*, 140
  in facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*
Membrane rafts, 78
Membranous organelles, 82–86, 83*t*, 87*t*. *See also specific type*
Memory (immunological), 464, 482, 486, 487*f*
Memory B cells, 485*f*, 486, 487*f*
Memory response, 482
Memory T cells, 481, 481*f*, 482
  tuberculin response mediated by, 526
Meningeal candidiasis, 643*t*
Meningitis
  in blastomycosis, 638
  candidal, 643*t*
  coxsackieviruses causing, 720
  cryptococcal (fungal meningitis/cryptococcosis), 364, 646
  Haemophilus influenzae causing, 484, 590
  Listeria causing, 327, 558
  Neisseria meningitidis causing (meningococcal), 15*t*, 577–578
    immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 578
  Streptococcus pneumoniae causing (pneumococcal), 549
Meningococcal septicemia, 578, 578*f*
Meningococcal vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 578
Meningococcus. *See Neisseria meningitidis*
Meningoencephalitis
  in African sleeping sickness *(Trypanosoma brucei)*, 664
  amebic, *Naegleria* causing, 661, 673*t*
Menstruation/menstrual flow, as host defense, 443*t*
Mental disease, 415, 415*t*
Mercury, antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*, 290, 309*f*
Merozoites, 348, 349*f*
  in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 348, 668, 669*f*, 670*b*
Mesophiles, 168–169, 169*f*
Messenger RNA (mRNA), 209–210
  antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289, 289*f*
  eukaryotic, 207*f*, 210
  interferons affecting, 450, 450*f*
  prokaryotic, 209, 209*f*
  as riboswitch, 217
  in transcription, 204, 207, 207*f*
  in translation, 208, 208*f*, 209–210, 209*f*, 211–212, 211*f*
  in viral synthesis, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
    HIV, 731–732, 731*f*
Metabolic activity, in microbial growth estimation, 187–188
Metabolic expression, control of, 156
Metabolism, 11, 18–19, 18*f*, 19*t*, 36, 124–162, 157*f*. *See also specific compound*
  acid-base balance/pH range and, 37–38
  amino acid biosynthesis, 154–155, 155*f*, 157*f*
  antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 290–291, 291*f*, 305*t*, 308*t*, 309*t*, 310*t*
  ATP production/energy storage and, 125, 125*f*, 126, 127, 157*f*
  biochemistry in study of, 18–19
  carbohydrate biosynthesis, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
  carbohydrate catabolism, 133–146, 134*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*
  catabolism and anabolism and, 125, 125–126, 125*f*, 157*f*. *See also* Anabolism; Catabolism
  as characteristic of life, 56, 56*t*
  chemical reactions underlying, 18–19, 125–133
  enzymes in, 11, 127–133. *See also* Enzyme(s)
  integration/regulation of functions of, 155–156, 157*f*
  lipid biosynthesis, 153–154, 154*f*, 157*f*
  lipid catabolism, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
  nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
  oxidation and reduction reactions and, 125, 126–127, 126*b*, 126*f*
  pathways for, 125, 157*f*, A-5 to A-11. *See also specific type*
  photosynthesis and, 148–152, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151*t*, 152*f*, 157*f*
  protein catabolism, 147, 147*f*, 148*b*, 157*f*
  rate of, microbial growth estimation and, 187–188
  in resistant cells, 300
Metabolites
  precursor, 125, 126, 152, 153*t*, 157*f*
    for amino acid conversion, 154, 155, 155*f*
    Entner-Doudoroff pathway producing, 142, 144*f*
    in nucleic acid biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*
    pentose phosphate pathway producing, 142, 143*f*
  primary, of industrial fermentation, 765
  secondary
    antibiotics as, 285*b*
    of industrial fermentation, 765
Metacercariae, in fluke life cycle, 677, 677*f*
Metachromatic granules, in corynebacteria, 328
Metal-containing proteins, in electron transport chains, 140
Metal ions
  antimicrobial action of, 275, 275*f*, 277*t*
  cycling of, 780
Metalloproteins, 48
Metastasis, 396
Methane
  as alternative fuel source, microbial production of, 766–767, 766*f*, 768*t*
  covalent bonds in formation of, 31*f*
  as greenhouse gas, 322, 334, 778
    recombinant DNA in study of, 248–249
  methanogens producing, 115, 140, 322
  rice agriculture producing, global warming and, 248–249
Methane oxidizers, 334
Methanogens, 115, 140, 320*f*, 322
Methanopyrus genus/spp., 76*f*, 322
Methenamine silver stain, for fungi, 110, 634, 635*f*
Methicillin, 287*f*, 288, 302*t*
  mechanism of action of, 287*f*, 302*t*
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 283, 299, 543, 543*b*
  community-associated, 298*b*
  safe handling of, 263
Methionine
  in archaea, 320
  prion diseases and, 400
Methyl alcohol, for specimen preparation, 107
Methylation
  in DNA replication, 202
  mismatch repair and, 221–222
Methylene blue, 107, 111*t*
  in acid-fast staining, 109
Methylococcus genus/spp., 339*t*
Methylprednisolone, 528, 529*t*
4-Methylumbilliferyl-β-D-glucoronide (MUG) water quality test, 771, 771*f*
Metric units of measurement, 95, 95*t*
Metrifonate, 308*t*
Metronidazole, 305*t*, 310*t*
  toxicity of, 297, 297*f*, 310*t*
Mevinic acids, fungi producing, 357
MfpA protein, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* resistance and, 300
MHC. *See* Major histocompatibility complex
Micavibrio genus/spp., beneficial actions of, 597*b*
Mice, in *Hantavirus* transmission, 432*b*, 747
Microaerophiles, 166
  culturing, 180
Microarrays, DNA, 245, 246*f*, 249*t*
  for genetic screening, 250
Microbes/microorganisms, 1, 3. *See also* Microbiology
  adaptation in survival of, 775
  in aquatic habitats, 782–783, 782*f*
  association and biofilms of, 63*b*, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*, 413, 414*f*. *See also* Biofilm(s); Microbial associations
  beneficial, 4, 7*b*, 13*t*. *See also specific organism and* Beneficial microbes
  in biogeochemical cycles, 777–780, 778*f*, 779*f*

bioterrorism and, 783–786, 785*f*, 785*t*, 786*b*. *See also* Bioterrorism
classification of, 3–5, 4*f*, 5*f*, 6*f*, 112–119, 112*b*. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
evolution/nucleotide sequencing and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
culturing, 172–180, 173*f*, 174*t*. *See also* Culture (microbial)
death of, 260. *See also* Microbial death rate
discovery of, 3, 3*f*
evolution of. *See* Evolution
genetics of. *See* Genetics, microbial
growth of. *See* Microbial growth
identification of, 112, 115–119, 116*f*, 117*f*, 118*f*, 119*f*. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
culture in, 172–180, 173*f*, 174*t*
DNA microarrays in, 245
industrial uses of, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Industrial microbiology
isolation of, 13
in pure cultures, 174–175, 174*f*, 175*f*
life processes in, 56–57, 56*t*
microscopes for observation of. *See* Microscopy
movement of into hosts, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*t*. *See also* Infection; Portals of entry
movement of out of hosts, 421–422, 421*f*
normal. *See* Normal microbiota
pathogenic, 13, 20. *See also specific type and* Pathogen(s)
pH range and, 38, 39*b*, 169–170
recombinant, 765
resistant. *See* Resistance
role of in environment, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 757, 774–783. *See also* Environmental microbiology
size of, 4, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 58*f*
measuring, 95, 95*t*
in soil, 780–781, 780*f*, 781*t*
diseases caused by, 781, 781*t*
spontaneous generation (abiogenesis) of, 7–10, 8*f*, 9*f*, 10*f*
susceptibility of to antimicrobial agents, 262, 262*f*. *See also* Resistance
symbiotic relationships with hosts and, 406–409, 406*f*, 407*f*, 407*t*, 408*t*, 409*b*
in water, levels allowed, 769
chlorine disinfection and, 771
Microbial adaptation, survival and, 775
Microbial antagonism, 170, 300. *See also* Microbial competition
adaptation/survival and, 775
in innate immunity, 442
lactobacilli and, 327
opportunistic infections/superinfections and, 294, 297, 409, 430–431
Microbial associations, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*. *See also* Biofilm(s)
levels of in environment, 775, 775*f*
Microbial competition. *See also* Microbial antagonism
adaptation/survival and, 775
food spoilage and, 761–762, 763*t*
opportunistic pathogens and, 294, 297, 409, 430–431
Microbial control. *See* Antimicrobial agents; Antimicrobial methods; Microbial growth, control of
Microbial cooperation, adaptation/survival and, 775
Microbial cultures. *See* Culture (microbial)
Microbial death rate, 260–261, 260*f*
environmental conditions affecting, 262–263, 262*f*
susceptibility of organisms and, 262
thermal methods of microbial control and, 264, 264*f*
Microbial ecology, 18*f*, 774–775, 775*f*
adaptation/survival and, 775
associations and
levels of, 775, 775*f*
microbial growth and, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*
Microbial genetics. *See* Genetics, microbial
Microbial growth, 56*t*, 163–192
arithmetic, 181–182, 181*f*
growth curves of, 182, 183*f*
continuous culture in chemostat and, 183–184, 183*f*
control of
actions of agents/methods used in, 261
bacteriophages in, 273*b*
in body, 283–314. *See also* Antimicrobial agents
chemical methods for, 271–278, 277*t*
in environment, 258–282. *See also* Antimicrobial methods
microbial death rates and, 260–261, 260*f*
physical methods for, 264–271, 271*t*
principles of, 259–261, 260*f*, 260*t*
selection of methods for, 261–263, 262*f*, 263*b*, 264*f*
terminology of, 259–260, 260*t*
in culture, 172–180, 173*f*. *See also* Culture (microbial)
generation time and, 181, A-13 to A-14
logarithmic (exponential), 181–182, 181*f*, A-13 to A-14
growth curves of, 182, 183*f*
mathematical considerations in, 181–182, 181*f*, A-13 to A-14
measuring, 184–188
direct methods for, 184–186, 184*f*, 186*f*, 187*f*, 188*t*
indirect methods for, 187–188, 188*f*
phases of, 182–183, 183*f*
of populations, 180–188
requirements for, 164–172
associations and biofilms and, 170–172, 171*f*, 173*b*. *See also* Biofilm(s)
in environment, 163–192
in environment, 775, 775*f*
nutrients (chemical and energy), 164–168, 165*f*, 166*f*, 167*b*, 167*t*
physical, 168–169, 168*f*, 169*f*, 172*b*
Microbial growth curve, 182, 183*f*
Microbial load, in water, 769
chlorine disinfection and, 771
Microbial metabolism, 18–19, 18*f*, 19*t*, 124–162, 157*f*. *See also specific compound and* Metabolism
amino acid biosynthesis, 154–155, 155*f*, 157*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 290–291, 291*f*, 305*t*, 308*t*, 309*t*, 310*t*
ATP production/energy storage and, 125, 125*f*, 126, 127, 157*f*
carbohydrate biosynthesis, 153, 154*f*, 157*f*
carbohydrate catabolism, 133–146, 134*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*
catabolism and anabolism and, 125, 125–126, 125*f*, 157*f*. *See also* Anabolism; Catabolism
as characteristic of life, 56, 56*t*
chemical reactions underlying, 18–19, 125–133
enzymes in, 11, 127–133. *See also* Enzyme(s)
integration/regulation of functions of, 155–156, 157*f*
lipid biosynthesis, 153–154, 154*f*, 157*f*
lipid catabolism, 146–147, 146*f*, 157*f*
nucleotide biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
oxidation and reduction reactions and, 125, 126–127, 126*b*, 126*f*
pathways for, 125, 157*f*, A-5 to A-11. *See also specific type*
photosynthesis and, 148–152, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151*t*, 152*f*, 157*f*
protein catabolism, 147, 147*f*, 148*b*, 157*f*
in resistant cells, 300
Microbial morphology, 18*f*
in taxonomy/classification, 116
Microbial resistance. *See* Resistance
Microbiology
agricultural, 19*t*, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767, 768*t*. *See also* Agricultural microbiology
crop threats (agroterrorism) and, 783, 784–785, 785*t*
assessing, 784
defense against, 785–786
recombinant DNA technology in, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
ethical/safety issues and, 253
applied, 19*t*, 756, 757–774
food microbiology, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757, 757–764
industrial microbiology/biotechnology, 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Industrial microbiology; Recombinant DNA technology
aquatic, 782–783, 782*f*
bioterrorism and, 783–786, 785*f*, 785*t*, 786*b*. *See also* Bioterrorism
chemistry of, 26–54. *See also* Chemistry
ecological, 18*f*, 774–775, 775*f*
environmental, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 757, 774–783
fields of, 18, 19*t*. *See also specific type*
food, 7*b*, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 757, 757–764
history of, 1–25
early years, 2–7
Golden Age, 7–18, 15*t*, 18*f*
modern age, 18–21, 19*t*
hospital, 18*f*, 430–432, 431*f*
industrial (biotechnology), 11, 13*t*, 18*f*, 19*t*, 237, 757, 764–774, 768*t*. *See also* Industrial microbiology; Recombinant DNA technology
mathematical considerations in, 181–182, 181*f*, A-13 to A-14
medical, 19*t*
pharmaceutical, 18*f*, 19*t*, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 756, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
public health, 19*t*, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*, 432–433, 432*b*
soil, 780–781, 780*f*, 781*t*
Microbiota, normal. *See* Normal microbiota
Microcephaly, maternal toxoplasmosis causing, 671
Micrococcus luteus, 318*f*
Microfilaments, in eukaryotic cytoskeleton, 81, 81*f*
Microfilariae, of *Wuchereria bancrofti*, 681, 682, 682*f*
Microglia/microglial cells, 445, 478
Micrographs
light, 100
transmission electron, 103, 103*f*
Microhabitats, 775, 775*f*
Microinjection, for DNA insertion into cells, 246, 247*f*, 249*t*
Micrometer (μm), 95, 95*t*
Micromonospora purpurea, antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 303*t*
Micronucleus, in protozoa, 350, 351, 351*f*
Microorganisms. *See* Microbes/microorganisms
Micropipettes
for DNA insertion into cells, 246, 247*f*, 249*t*
for microbial isolation, 175
MicroRNAs, 216
Microscopic counts, for microbial growth estimation, 184–185, 184*f*
Microscopy/microscopes, 96–105, 106*t*. *See also specific type*
atomic force, 105, 105*f*, 106*t*
bright-field, 98, 98–100, 99*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
confocal, 98, 102, 104*b*, 106*t*
dark-field, 98, 100, 100*f*, 101*f*, 106*t*
differential interference contrast (Nomarski), 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
electron, 102–104, 103*f*, 104*f*, 105*f*, 106*t*
fluorescence, 98, 100–102, 102*f*, 106*t*
Leeuwenhoek's development of, 2–3, 2*f*, 98
light, 98–102, 99*f*, 100*f*, 101*f*, 102*f*, 106*t*
phase, 98, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
phase-contrast, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
principles of, 96–98, 96*f*, 97*f*
probe, 104–105, 105*f*, 106*t*
resolving power of, 97–98, 97*f*
scanning electron, 104, 104*f*, 105*f*, 106*t*
scanning tunneling, 105, 105*f*, 106*t*
stains used for, 105–111, 111*t*
transmission electron, 103, 103*f*, 106*t*
Microsporidia/microsporidiosis, 361–362
as emerging/reemerging infection, 488*b*
Microsporidium genus/spp., 361

Microsporum genus/spp., 410*t*, 632, 632*f*, 648, 648*t*
Microtubules, tubulin
in centrioles, 81, 82*f*
in cilia, 80, 80*f*
in cytoskeleton, 81, 81*f*
in eukaryotic flagella, 79, 80*f*
in flagellum, 79
griseofulvin mechanism of action and, 635
MIC test. *See* Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) test
Migration, phagocyte, 455–456, 456*f*
Milk
Campylobacter jejuni contamination of, 624, 625, 626*b*
Coxiella contamination of, 600
fermentation of, 758, 758*f*, 761*t*
as nonliving disease reservoir, 411, 433
pasteurization/safety and, 11, 266, 433
Salmonella contamination of, 586
Milk curds, in cheese production, 758, 758*f*
Milk sugar (lactose), 43
Mimicry, molecular, 530
Mine tailings, acid mine drainage and, 776
Minimum bactericidal concentration (MBC) test, 295–296, 295*f*
Minimum growth temperature, 168, 168*f*
Minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) test, 294–295, 295*f*
Minocycline, 304*t*
Minor polio, 718. *See also* Poliomyelitis
Miracidia, in fluke life cycle, 676, 677*f*
miRNA-induced silencing complex (miRISC), 216
miRNAs. *See* Micro RNAs
Mismatch repair, 221–222, 221*f*
Miso, fermentation in production of, 761*t*
Missense mutations, 217, 218*f*, 219*t*
Mites
as disease vectors, 372, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
for scrub typhus *(Orientia tsutsugamushi)*, 610, 611*b*, 611*t*
dust, 440*b*
Mitochondria, 58*f*, 83*t*, 84–86, 85*f*
endosymbiotic theory and, 86
in protozoa, 350
Mitochondrial DNA, 197–198
in killing by eosinophils, 448
Mitochondrial membranes, 85–86, 85*f*
electron transport chains in, 138, 139*f*
Mitochondrial ribosomes, 85*f*, 86
Mitosis, 180, 197, 197*f*, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
centrosomes in, 81
chromatin fibers during, 197, 197*f*
chromosomes in, 82, 197, 197*f*, 345–348, 347*f*, 350*t*
Mitosomes, 352
mm (millimeter), 95, 95*t*
MMR. *See* Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine
MMWR *(Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report)*, 428, 429*f*
Modified live vaccines (attenuated/live vaccines), 496–497
recombinant, 497, 497*f*
residual virulence and, 497, 501
safety of, 497, 501
Modified Thayer-Martin medium, for *Neisseria* culture, 575
Moist heat, in microbial control, 264–266, 265*f*, 266*f*, 267*t*, 271*t*
Moisture, in soil, microbial survival and, 780
Mold(s), 4, 4*f*. *See also* Fungi
allergies caused by, 652–653, 653*b*
asexual spores of, 360, 360*f*
coenocytic, zygomycetes, 361, 366*t*
slime, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
cellular, 355, 356*f*, 357, 358*t*
classification of, 349, 349*f*, 355
plasmodial (acellular), 355, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
thalli of, 358, 359*f*
water, 371, 372*f*
classification of, 349, 349*f*, 371
resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252
Molecular biology/techniques, 19–20. *See also* Biotechnology/industrial microbiology; Recombinant DNA technology
microbial production of indigo and, 766, 766*b*
RNA interference and, 217*b*
vaccine development and, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
Molecular formula, 31
Molecular mimicry, 530
Molecule, chemical bonds in formation of, 29
nonpolar covalent bonds, 30–32, 31*f*, 34*t*
polar covalent bonds, 32, 32*f*, 34*t*
Mollicutes, 329*t*, 559
Molluscipoxvirus, 692, 692*f*, 710*t*
Molluscum contagiosum, 690, 692, 692*f*
Molybdenum, 28*t*
Monkeypox, 8*b*, 690, 693, 693*b*
immunization against, 500*t*
Mono. *See* Mononucleosis
Monobactams, 302*t*
Monoclonal antibodies
in fluorescent antibody tests, 507
immunosuppressive actions of, 529, 529*t*
in passive immunotherapy, 502, 502*f*
Monocular microscope, 98
Monocytes, 444*f*, 445, 445*f*, 456
Monoecious, 674
Monomer(s), 42
Mononucleosis (mono)
cytomegalovirus causing, 701
HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) causing, 699, 699*f*, 700
HHV-6 infection and, 702
Monosaccharides, 42–43, 43*f*
Monounsaturated fatty acids, 41*f*, 44*t*
Moraxella (Branhamella) genus/spp., 597
Morbidity, 414. *See also* Disease
Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR), 428, 429*f*
Morbillivirus genus/spp./measles virus, 385*t*, 736, 736–737, 736*t*, 737*f*, 750*t*
Morchella esculenta, 362*f*
Mordants
in flagellar staining, 110
in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
Morganella genus/spp., 585
sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Morphology, 18*f*
in taxonomy/microbial classification, 116
Morula, in *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* growth/reproduction, 610, 610*f*
Mosaic disease, wheat, soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Mosquitoes, as disease vectors, 240*b*, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
for arboviruses, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
dengue fever and, 240*b*, 722, 724*b*, 724*f*, 726*t*
encephalitis and, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
West Nile virus and, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
yellow fever and, 16*b*, 726*t*
for chikungunya, 8*b*, 394*b*, 726*t*
for filarial nematodes, 680, 681, 682, 683*t*
for malaria (*Plasmodium* species), 668, 668*f*, 669, 669*f*, 670, 670*b*, 673*t*
recombinant DNA technology in control of, 240*b*
Most probable number (MPN), for microbial growth estimation, 185–186, 187*f*, 188*t*
Motility
cellular, 87*t*. *See also* Cilia; Flagella
in phototrophic bacteria, 323, 325*t*
Mouth
normal microbiota of, 408*t*
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
for *Helicobacter pylori*, 625
as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Moxifloxacin, 305*t*
MPN. *See* Most probable number
M protein, 420, 447, 544
mRNA. *See* Messenger RNA
MRSA. *See* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MS. *See* Multiple sclerosis
*Msp*I restriction enzyme, 239*t*
Mucinase, 418
Mucocutaneous candidiasis, 643*t*
Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 665, 665*f*, 673*t*
Mucor genus/spp., 359*f*, 646
asexual spores of, 360*f*
Mucosa-associated lymphatic tissue (MALT), 466*f*, 467
Mucous membranes
in host defense, 412, 412*f*, 440–441, 441*f*, 441*t*, 453*b*, 458*t*
as portals of entry, 412, 412*f*, 441
specimen collection from, 174*t*
Mucus, in host defense, 438, 441
Mu F_c region/heavy chains, 469, 471, 474*t*
MUG (4-methylumbelliferyl-β-D-glucuronide) water quality test, 771, 771*f*
Multi-drug resistance/multiple-drug-resistant pathogens, 283, 300
efflux pumps and, 300
Enterococcus faecium, 230*b*, 550
in tuberculosis (MDR-TB), 220, 300, 301*b*, 565
Multiple sclerosis (MS)
autoimmunity and, 531
HHV-6 and, 702
Mumps virus, 385*t*, 736, 737, 738, 738*f*, 750*t*
immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 738, 738*f*. *See also* Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine
Municipal wastewater treatment/municipal sewer systems, 772–773, 772*f*
Mupirocin, 303*t*
mechanism of action of, 288–289, 303*t*
microbial production of, 285*t*, 303*t*
Murine (endemic) typhus, 609, 611*t*
Musca genus/spp., as disease vectors, 424*t*
Muscimol, 652
Muscle contraction, in tetanus, 556, 557*f*
Muscles
tapeworm encystment in, 675, 675*f*
tetanus toxin affecting, 556, 557*f*
Mushroom(s), 344, 357, 364. *See also* Basidiomycota
honey *(Armillaria ostoyae)*, 344
Mushroom grower's lung, 524
Mushroom poisoning, 364, 652
Must, in wine making, 759, 759*f*
Mutagens, 218–220, 219*f*
frameshift, 220, 220*f*
identification of, 222–224, 222*f*, 223*f*, 224*f*
radiation, 218–219, 219*f*
in recombinant DNA technology, 237, 249*t*
Mutants, 222
identification of, 222–224, 222*f*, 223*f*, 224*f*
Mutations, 217–224
agents (mutagens) causing, 218–220, 219*f*
BCR diversity and, 472*b*
calculating rate of, 222
DNA repair and, 220–222, 221*f*
effects of, 217–218, 218*f*
frameshift, 217, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
chemicals causing, 220, 220*f*
transposition as, 229
frequency of, 220
gross, 217
identification of mutants/mutagens/carcinogens and, 222–224, 222*f*, 223*f*, 224*f*
missense, 217, 218*f*, 219*t*
nonsense, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
point, 217, 217–218, 218*f*, 219*t*
screening for, 250
ethical issues and, 253
silent, 217, 218*f*, 219*t*
spontaneous, 218
transposition as, 217, 229
types of, 217, 218*f*
Mutualism, 406, 406*f*, 407*t*, 409*b*
Mycelium/mycelia, 358, 359*f*, 361, 362*f*, 363*f*
Mycetismus (mushroom poisoning), 364, 652

Mycetomas
  fungal, 650*t*, 651, 651*f*
  Nocardia causing, 568, 568*f*
Mycobacterium genus/spp./mycobacteria, 320*f*, 328–329, 329*t*, 562–566, 562*f*, 568*b*
  acid-fast staining of, 108–109, 109*f*, 562, 562*f*
  antimicrobials effective against, 293*f*
  BCG vaccine made from *M. bovis*, 565
  mycolic acid in cell walls of, 64, 288, 328, 562
  pasteurization in control of, 266
  susceptibility of, 262, 262*f*
Mycobacterium leprae, 329, 562, 565–566. *See also* Leprosy
  animal culture for growth of, 180
  clofazimine affecting, 293, 305*t*
  immunization against (BCG vaccine), 500*t*, 566
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 14, 329, 562, 562–565, 562*f*, 563*f*, 564*f*. *See also* Tuberculosis
  auramine O dye staining, 101
  direct fluorescent antibody test in detection of, 506
  disseminated infection caused by, 564
  HIV infection/AIDS and, 565, 566
  immunization against (BCG vaccine), 500*t*, 565
  mycolic acid/waxes and, 41, 153, 288
  primary pulmonary infection caused by, 562–564, 563*f*
  pyrazinamide affecting, 290
  resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 220, 300, 301*b*, 565
  safe handling of, 263
  secondary/reactivated infection caused by, 563*f*, 564
  susceptibility of, 262
  tuberculin test in detection of, 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*, 565
  water needs and, 170
Mycolactone, 568*b*
Mycolic acid, in *Mycobacterium* cell walls, 64, 288, 328, 562
  Mycobacterium leprae, 288, 565
  Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 41, 154, 288
Mycology/mycologists, 18*f*, 19*t*, 357. *See also* Fungi
  medical, 633, 633–651. *See also* Mycoses
    antifungal therapies and, 635
    antifungal vaccines and, 635
    categories of fungal agents and (pathogenic/opportunistic), 633–634, 634*t*
    clinical manifestations of fungal disease and, 634
    diagnosis of fungal infections and, 634–635, 635*f*
    epidemiology of mycoses and, 633
Mycophenolate mofetil, 528, 529*t*
Mycoplasma genus/spp./mycoplasmas, 320*f*, 326, 326*f*, 329*t*, 453*b*, 559–561, 559*f*, 560*f*, 615*t*
  absence of cell wall and, 66, 326, 559
  comparison of with other small microbes, 615*t*
  pneumonia caused by, 453*b*, 560
  sterol in membranes of, 41, 326, 559
Mycorrhizae, 357
Mycoses, 357, 633, 633–651. *See also specific type*
  categories of agents causing (pathogenic/opportunistic), 633–634, 634*t*
  clinical manifestations of, 634
  cutaneous/subcutaneous, 649–651, 650*f*, 650*t*, 651*f*
  diagnosis of, 634–635, 635*f*
  epidemiology of, 633
  immunization against, 635
  infections, 634
  opportunistic, 633–634, 634*t*, 641–647. *See also* Opportunistic mycoses
    in HIV infection/AIDS, 641, 647, 729*t*
  pathogenic, 633, 636–640, 636*f*
  superficial, 648–649, 648*t*
  systemic, 636
    opportunistic, 641–647
    pathogenic, 636–640, 636*f*
  treatment of, 635. *See also* Antifungal drugs
Mycotoxicoses, 652
Mycotoxins, 651–652, 652
Myelin sheaths, autoimmune destruction of, in multiple sclerosis, 531
Myelomas, in hybridoma production, 502, 502*f*
Myocardial candidiasis, 643*t*
Myocarditis, coxsackie B virus causing, 719
Myonecrosis (gas gangrene), 15*t*, 326, 552, 553, 553*f*
Myxamoebae, of slime molds, 356*f*, 357
Myxobacteria, 336, 337*f*, 339*t*
Myxococcus xanthus, beneficial uses of, 38*b*

NA. *See* Neuraminidase
N-acetylglucosamine (NAG), 43*f*, 64, 64*f*, 287, 287*f*
N-acetylmuramic acid (NAM), 64, 64*f*, 287, 287*f*
  antimicrobials affecting, 287–288, 287*f*
NAD^+ (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide), 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
  in electron transport chains, 138, 138*f*, 139*f*
  fermentation and, 144, 144*f*, 145, 145*f*
  Haemophilus influenzae requiring, 590
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
NADH, 127, 157*f*
  acetyl-CoA synthesis producing, 135, 136*f*, 142*t*
  in beta-oxidation, 146*f*, 147
  in chemiosmosis, 141, 141*b*
  in electron transport chain, 138, 139, 139*f*, 140, 142*t*
  in fermentation, 144, 144*f*, 145, 145*f*
  glycolysis producing, 134, 135*f*, 142*t*, A-7
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, A-10
  for microbial growth, 167*t*
$NADP^+$ (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate), 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 142, 143*f*, A-8
  in photophosphorylation, 150*f*, 151
  in photosynthesis, 150*f*, 151
NADPH, 127, 157*f*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152, 152*f*, A-11
  Entner-Doudoroff pathway producing, 142, 144*f*, A-9
  in noncyclic photophosphorylation, 150*f*, 151
  pentose phosphate pathway producing, 142, 143*f*, A-8
  in photosynthesis, 148, 150*f*, 151
Naegleria genus/spp., 355, 358*t*, 661, 673*t*
NAG. *See N*-acetylglucosamine
Nail infection, candidal, 642*f*
Naked (nonenveloped) viruses/virions, 383
  antimicrobial action/susceptibility of, 261, 262, 262*f*
  entry/uncoating of, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
  positive ssRNA, 716–721, 750*t*
  release of, 395, 395*t*
  segmented dsRNA, 748–749, 750*t*
NAM. *See N*-acetylmuramic acid
Nanometer (nm), 95, 95*t*
Narrow-spectrum drugs, 293–294
Nasal cavity, normal microbiota of, 407*f*, 408*t*
Nasopharyngeal cancer, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699*f*, 700
Natamycin, 276, 303*t*
Natrium. *See* Sodium
Natural killer lymphocytes (NK cells/lymphocytes), 445, 448, 458*t*, 470–471, 471*f*
Naturally acquired immunity
  active, 487, 489*t*
  passive, 488, 489*t*
Necator americanus, 680–681, 683*t*
Necrosis, tissue, gas gangrene and, 552, 553, 553*f*
Necrotizing fasciitis ("flesh-eating disease"), 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
Needham, John T., experiments in spontaneous generation by, 8–9
Needles, contaminated
  hepatitis B transmission and, 708
  HIV infection/AIDS and, 734, 735, 742*b*
Negative chemotaxis, 446
Negative feedback (feedback/end-product inhibition), 132–133, 133*f*
Negative (indirect) selection, of mutants, 222–223, 223*f*
Negative-sense ssRNA viruses, synthesis in, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
Negative (capsule) stains, 110, 110*f*, 111*t*
Negative-strand RNA, 392, 716
Negative strand RNA viruses, 716
  segmented, 742–748
  synthesis in, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
  unsegmented, 735–742
Negative taxis, 62
Negri bodies, 740, 740*f*
Neisser, Albert, 15*t*
Neisseria genus/spp./neisserias, 320*f*, 332, 339*t*, 575–578, 575*f*, 577*b*
Neisseria gonorrhoeae (gonococcus), 15*t*, 575–577, 575*f*, 577*b*, 582*b*. *See also* Gonorrhea
  adhesins produced by, 413
  culturing, 180, 575
  eye infection caused by, 275, 576, 577
  fimbriae on, 62, 577*b*
  indirect fluorescent antibody test in detection of, 507, 507*f*
  resistant strains of, 577
Neisseria meningitidis (meningococcus), 15*t*, 577–578, 578*f*
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 578
  iron needs of, 444
  meningitis caused by, 15*t*, 577–578
  septicemia/bacteremia caused by, 578, 578*f*
  vaccine against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 578
Nematodes (roundworms), 674, 679–682, 680*f*, 681*f*, 682*f*, 683*t*
  Ascaris, 680, 680*f*, 683*t*
  filarial/*Wuchereria*, 680, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
  hookworms (*Ancylostoma* and *Necator*), 680–681, 681*f*, 683*t*
  mutualism in, 409*b*
  pinworms (*Enterobius*), 681, 681*f*, 683*t*
  predation by fungi and, 359, 359*f*
Neomycin, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 303*t*
Neonatal candidiasis, 642, 643, 643*t*
Neonatal herpes, 695
Neonate. *See* Newborn
Neoplasia/neoplasms, 396, 415, 415*t*. *See also* Cancer
Neosartorya genus/spp., 633
Nephelometry, 504
Nerve(s)
  botulism affecting, 554, 554*f*
  leprosy affecting, 565
Nervous system/nervous tissue
  autoimmunity affecting, 531
  microbial diseases of
    BMAA/cyanobacteria causing, 325*b*
    Enterobacteriaceae causing, 590*f*
    toxins and. *See* Neurotoxins
NETs (neutrophil extracellular traps), 448
Neuraminidase
  influenzavirus, 743–744, 743*b*
    mutations in, 744–745, 744*f*, 745*b*
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 595
Neuraminidase inhibitors, 306*t*, 746
Neuromuscular junction, botulism toxins affecting, 327*b*, 554, 554*f*
Neurospora genus/spp., microbial genetics research and, 19, 357, 364, 366*t*
Neurotoxins, 418
  clostridial, 552
    Clostridium botulinum producing, 326, 327*b*, 553, 554, 554*f*, 764*t*. *See also* Botulism (botulinum) toxins
    Clostridium tetani producing, 555–556. *See also* Tetanospasmin
  cyanobacteria producing, 325*b*
  dinoflagellates producing, 354
Neurotransmitters
  botulism toxins affecting, 327*b*, 554, 554*f*
  tetanus toxin affecting, 556, 557*f*

Neutralization, antibody, 470, 471*f*, 505–506
Neutralization tests, 505–506, 511*t*
Neutron(s), 27, 27*f*
  atomic mass of, 27, 28*t*
Neutrophil(s), 444*f*, 445, 445*f*, 458*t*
  in inflammation, 456, 456*f*, 458*t*
  pathogens affected by, 448
Neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs), 448
Neutrophile(s), pH range tolerated by, 169
Newborn
  candidiasis in, 642, 643, 643*t*
  coxsackie B virus myocarditis in, 719
  cytomegalovirus infection in, 701
  gonococcal infection in, 275, 576, 577
  hemolytic disease of, 522, 523*f*
  hepatitis B in, 707, 708
  herpes infection in, 695
  HHV-1 and HHV-2 infection in, 695
  HIV transmission to, 413*t*, 734
    ART during pregnancy and, 735
  naturally acquired passive immunity in, 488, 489*t*
  ophthalmia neonatorum in, 566, 577
  rubella infection in, 726
  Streptococcus agalactiae (group B streptococcus) infection in, 546
  syphilis in, 617
  toxoplasmosis in, 671
  trachoma in, 614
NGU. *See* Nongonococcal urethritis
NH_3. *See* Ammonia
NH_4^+. *See* Ammonium/ammonium ion
Niacin (nicotinic acid/vitamin B_3), for microbial growth, 167*t*
Niclosamide, 308*t*
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 308*t*
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
  in electron transport chains, 138, 138*f*, 139*f*
  fermentation and, 144, 144*f*, 145, 145*f*
  Haemophilus influenzae requiring, 590
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$), 127, 128, 129*t*, 157*f*
  in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
  in Entner-Doudoroff pathway, A-9
  in pentose phosphate pathway, 142, 143*f*, A-8
  in photophosphorylation, 150*f*, 151
  in photosynthesis, 150*f*, 151
Nicotinamide nucleotide, 51
Nicotinic acid (niacin), for microbial growth, 167*t*
Nifurtimox, 309*t*
Nigrosin, 110
"9 + 0" arrangement, in cilia/flagella, 79, 80, 80*f*
"9 + 2" arrangement, in cilia/flagella, 79, 80, 80*f*
Nipah virus/Nipah encephalitis/Nipah fever, 8*b*, 736*b*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Niridazole, 308*t*
Nisin, 276, 304*t*
Nitazoxanide, 309*t*
Nitrates
  in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
  wastewater treatment producing, 773
Nitrification, 331, 779, 779*f*
Nitrifying bacteria, 320*f*, 331
Nitrites
  in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
  production of, 140
Nitrobacter genus/spp., 331, 339*t*
  in nitrification, 331, 779
Nitrogen, 28*t*, 30*f*, 778
  for microbial growth, 166–167
  recycling of, 20, 778–779, 779*f*
Nitrogenase, in nitrogen fixation, 778
Nitrogen cycle, 20, 778–779, 779*f*
Nitrogen fixation, 167, 323, 778–779, 779*f*
  by alphaproteobacteria, 320*f*, 330–331, 331*f*, 339*t*
  by cyanobacteria, 167, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*t*, 778
Nitrogenous wastes, 147, 148*b*
Nitroimidazoles, 305*t*, 310*t*
Nitrosomonas genus/spp., 332, 339*t*
  in nitrification, 332, 779
Nitrous acid, mutagenic effects of, 220
NK cells/lymphocytes (natural killer lymphocytes), 445, 448, 458*t*, 470–471, 471*f*
N,N-diethyl-*m*-toluamide. *See* DEET
Nocardia genus/spp., 320*f*, 329*t*, 330, 567–568, 568*f*
  acid-fast staining of, 108–109, 109*f*
NOD proteins, 449
Nomarski (differential interference contrast) microscopy/microscopes, 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
Nomenclature, 112, 113. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
  binomial, 113
Non-A/non-B hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis, type C
Noncoliform Enterobacteriaceae, 585, 585*f*
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
Noncommunicable disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Noncompetitive inhibition/inhibitors, 132, 132*f*
Noncyclic photophosphorylation, 151, 152*f*
Nonenveloped (naked) viruses/virions, 383
  antimicrobial action/susceptibility and, 261, 262, 262*f*
  entry/uncoating of, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
  positive ssRNA, 716–721, 750*t*
  release of, 395, 395*t*
  segmented dsRNA, 748–749, 750*t*
Nongonococcal urethritis (NGU)
  Chlamydia trachomatis causing, 613
  mycoplasmas causing, 560
Noninvassive aspergillomas, 644, 644*b*
Nonionizing radiation. *See also* Radiation
  in microbial control, 270–271, 271*t*
  mutagenic effects of, 219
Nonliving reservoirs, 411
Nonmembranous organelles, 83*t*. *See also specific type*
  in bacteria/prokaryotic cells, 74–75, 75*f*, 83*t*
  in eukaryotic cells, 81, 81*f*, 82*f*, 83*t*
Nonmunicipal wastewater treatment, 773, 773*f*
Nonparalytic polio, 718. *See also* Poliomyelitis
Nonperishable food, 762
Nonpolar covalent bonds, 30–32, 31*f*, 34*t*
Nonprofessional antigen-presenting cells, 478
Nonsense mutations, 218, 218*f*, 219*t*
Non-streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (TSS), 541–542, 542*f*
Nonsulfur bacteria
  green, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*
  purple, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*, 331, 339*t*
Nonvenereal treponemal diseases, 618, 618*f*
Normal microbiota (normal flora), 174, 407–408, 407*f*, 408*t*. *See also specific structure or organism*
  acquisition of, 407–408
  antimicrobials affecting, 284*b*, 297, 298*b*
    probiotics and, 298*b*
  coliforms, 582–585, 583*b*, 584*f*
  disease caused by, 294, 409, 430–431. *See also* Opportunistic pathogens
  in innate immunity, 442
Norovirus genus/spp./noroviruses, 385*t*, 715, 721, 750*t*
  gastroenteritis caused by, 715, 721, 750*t*, 769*b*
  waterborne transmission of, 769*b*, 769*t*
Northern blot, 244
Nose
  normal microbiota of, 407*f*, 408*t*
  as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Nosema genus/spp., 361
Nosepiece, revolving, 98
Nosocomial diseases, 415*t*, 430
Nosocomial infections, 16, 283, 430–432, 431*f*, 579*f*
  biofilms causing, 171
  Clostridium difficile causing, 553
  enterococcal, 550
  gram-negative bacteria causing, 579*f*
  horizontal gene transfer and, 230*b*
  Morganella/Providencia/Edwardsiella causing, 585
  Pseudomonas aeruginosa causing, 579*f*, 596
  respiratory syncytial virus, 738
  staphylococcal bacteremia, 542
Notifiable diseases, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*
Nuclear chromosomes, 82, 87*t*, 196–197, 197*f*, 198*t*
Nuclear division, 345–348, 347*f*, 350*t*. *See also* Meiosis; Mitosis
Nuclear envelope, 57, 58*f*, 82, 83*f*, 196
Nuclear pores, 58*f*, 82, 83*f*
Nuclear waste, *Kineococcus radiotolerans* in remediation of, 172*b*
Nucleic acid(s), 49–51, 49*f*, 50*f*, 51*f*, 51*t*, 198*t*. *See also* DNA; Nucleotides; RNA
  antimicrobials affecting, 261, 286, 286*f*, 291–293, 292*f*, 305*t*
    antihelminthic drugs, 308*t*
    antiprotozoan drug, 310*t*
    antiviral agents, 292, 292*f*, 306*t*
  autoantibodies against, in systemic lupus erythematosus, 525
  function of, 50–51
  hydrogen bonds in formation of, 34, 49, 50, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
  microbial classification and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
  structure of, 49–50, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
  synthesis of, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
  synthetic, in recombinant DNA technology, 238–239, 249*t*
  viral, 379, 379–380, 379*f*, 380*f*
    synthesis of, 391–392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
Nucleic acid hybridization. *See* Hybridization
Nucleic acid probes, 239, 249*t*
  in clone selection, 244, 244*f*
  synthetic nucleic acids in synthesis of, 239
Nucleic acid sequencing. *See* Nucleotide sequencing
Nucleic acid synthesis machines, 238
Nucleocapsid, 379, 381
Nucleoid, 57*f*, 72, 195, 196*f*
Nucleoli (nucleolus), 58*f*, 82, 83*f*, 207
Nucleoplasm, 82, 83*f*
Nucleoproteins, 48
Nucleoside(s), 49, 194, 199*f*
Nucleoside analogs
  as antifungals, 635
  as antimicrobials, 220, 292, 292*f*
Nucleosomes, 197, 197*f*
Nucleotide(s), 49, 49*f*, 194
  biosynthesis of, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
    antimicrobials affecting, 261
    pentose phosphate pathway in, 142, 143*f*, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
  chemicals altering, mutagenic effects of, 220
  sequencing. *See* Nucleotide sequencing
Nucleotide analogs, 219, 219*f*
  as antimicrobial agents, 220, 286*f*, 292, 292*f*, 306*t*
  for HIV infection/AIDS, 735
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 306*t*
  mutagenic effects of, 219–220, 219*f*
Nucleotide bases, 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Nucleotide sequencing, 19–20, 248, 248*f*, 249*t*
  microbial classification and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
  in microbial growth estimation, 188
  new antimicrobial development and, 301
Nucleus. *See also under Nuclear*
  atomic, 27, 27*f*
  cell/eukaryotic, 57, 82, 83*f*, 83*t*, 87*t*, 196
  division of, 345–348, 347*f*, 350*t*. *See also* Meiosis; Mitosis
Numerical aperture of lens, resolution affected by, 98
  immersion oil and, 98
Nursing, Florence Nightingale and infection prevention and, 17, 17*f*, 18*f*
Nutrient(s)
  cycling of, 780
  food spoilage and, 760, 763*t*

Subject Index

improving value of, recombinant DNA technology and, 236
limiting, 164
nitrogen as, 166–167
for metabolism, 125, 127. *See also* Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes, function of/movement across
for microbial growth, 164–167, 165*f*, 166*f*, 167*b*, 167*t*
in soil, microbial diversity and, 775, 781
Nutrient agar, 176, 179*f*
Nutrient broth, 176, 177
Nutrition, microbial, 163–192. *See also* Microbial growth
Nutritional diseases, 415, 415*t*
Nutritional value of food, recombinant DNA technology affecting, 236, 252–253
ethical/safety issues and, 253
Nystatin, mechanism of action of, 289

O_3. *See* Ozone
O antigen (O polysaccharide), 580, 581*f*
of *E. coli,* 582
of *Vibrio,* 622
Obesity
human adenovirus 36 and, 705*b*
Selenomonas noxia and, 326, 328*b*
Objective lens, 98, 99*f*
Obligate acidophiles, pH range tolerated by, 169
Obligate aerobes, 165
Obligate anaerobes, 165
culture of, 178–179, 179*f*
Obligate halophiles, 170
Ocular infections
Acanthamoeba causing, 258, 263*b*, 661, 673*t*
candidal, 643*t*
Chlamydia trachomatis causing, 613–614, 614, 614*f*
herpetic, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*
histoplasmosis, 637
Ocular lenses, 98, 99*f*
Ofloxacin, 305*t*
OH. *See* Hydroxyl radical
Oil glands, 412*f*
in host defense, 440
Oil immersion objective lens, 98, 99*f*
Oil spills, bioremediation in clean up of, 776, 776*b*
Okazaki fragments, 200*f*, 201, 202
Oleic acid, 44*t*
Oligoadenylate synthetase, 450
Oltipraz, 308*t*
-oma (suffix), 415*t*
Oncogenes, 396, 396*f*
Oncogenic retroviruses, 728, 728–729, 729*f*
ONPG (*o*-nitrophenyl-β-D-galactopyranoside) water quality test, 771, 771*f*
Onychomycosis
Candida causing, 642*f*
dermatophytes causing (tinea unguium), 648*t*
Oocysts
of *Cryptosporidium,* 672, 672*f*
of *Cyclospora,* 673
of *Plasmodium,* 669, 669*f*
of *Toxoplasma,* 671, 671*f*
Ookinetes, in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 669, 669*f*
Operator, in operon, 214, 214*f*, 215, 215*f*, 216*f*
Operons, 214–216, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*
inducible (lactose), 214, 214–215, 215*f*, 216*t*
repressible (tryptophan), 214, 215–216, 216*f*, 216*t*
Ophthalmia neonatorum, 275, 576, 577
Ophthalmic/ocular herpes, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*
Opportunistic mycoses, 633–634, 634*t*, 641–647. *See also specific type*
diagnosis of, 635
in HIV infection/AIDS, 641, 647, 729*t*
systemic, 641–647
treatment of, 635
Opportunistic pathogens (opportunists), 297, 409, 430–431. *See also specific organism or disease*
anaerobic bacilli, 600–601
antimicrobial therapy and, 284*b*, 294, 297, 298*b*, 409, 430–431
enteric
coliform, 582–585, 583*b*, 584*f*
noncoliform, 585, 585*f*
fungi, 633–634, 634*t*, 641–647
in HIV infection/AIDS, 409, 533, 647, 729*t*, 733, 733*f*
immunodeficiency and, 409, 532, 634, 634*t*, 647
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 595–597
Opsonins, 447, 470
antibodies as, 447, 470, 471*f*
complement as, 446, 451, 451*f*
Opsonization, 447, 451*f*, 452*f*, 470, 471*f*
staphylococcal protein A affecting, 539
Optical density, light refraction and image magnification and, 96, 96*f*
Optimum growth temperature, 168, 168*f*
OPV. *See* Oral polio vaccine
Oral candidiasis. *See* Oropharyngeal candidiasis
Oral drug administration, 296, 296*f*
Oral hairy leukoplakia, HHV-4 (Epstein-Barr virus) and, 699, 699–700, 699*f*, 700
Oral herpes (fever blisters/cold sores), 694, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*t*
Oral polio vaccine (OPV/Sabin vaccine), 497, 718–719, 719*t*
safety of, 497, 501
Orbivirus genus/spp., 385*t*
Orchitis, mumps virus causing, 738
Orders, 113, 114*f*
for viruses, 384, 384*t*
Orf, 690
Organelles, 57, 83*t*, 87*t*. *See also specific type*
membranous, 82–86, 83*t*, 87*t*
nonmembranous, 83*t*, 87*t*
in bacteria/prokaryotic cells, 74–75, 75*f*, 83*t*
in eukaryotic cells, 81, 81*f*, 82*f*, 83*t*
Organic acids, 37
Organic compounds, 26, 39–51, 40*t*. *See also specific type*
functional groups and, 39, 40*t*
Organic phosphate group, 40*t*
in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*
Organotrophs, 164, 165*f*
Orientia genus/spp., 610, 611*t*
Origin
in DNA replication, 199, 200*f*, 202
of transfer (conjugation), 227, 227*f*, 228
Ornithodoros ticks, as disease vectors, for epidemic relapsing fever *(Borrelia recurrentis),* 621
Ornithosis (psittacosis), 614–615
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Oropharyngeal candidiasis (thrush), 418*f*, 642, 642*f*, 643, 643*t*
antimicrobial drug use and, 297
in HIV infection/AIDS, 643, 742*b*
Orphan viruses
enteric cytopathic human (echovirus), 719, 720
HHV-7 as, 694
respiratory enteric orphan (reoviruses), 385*t*, 726*t*, 748–749
Orthocresol, 272
Orthohepadnavirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 705, 710*t*. *See also* Hepatitis B virus
Orthomyxoviridae (orthomyxoviruses), 385*t*, 742, 742–743, 743*b*, 743*f*, 744*f*, 750*t*. *See also* Influenza; Influenzavirus
Orthophenylphenol, 272, 272*f*
Orthopoxvirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 690, 692*b*, 710*t*. *See also Poxviridae* (poxviruses)
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
size of, 58*f*, 710*t*
Oscillatoria genus/spp., 324*f*
Oseltamivir, 306*t*, 746
-osis (suffix), 415*t*
Osmium tetraoxide, 111
Osmosis, 69–70, 69*f*, 72*t*, 170, 269
Osmotic pressure, 170
microbial growth affected by, 170, 269–270, 271*t*
antimicrobial drug effect on cell walls and, 288
Osteoarticular blastomycosis, 638
Osteoarticular candidiasis, 643*t*
Osteomyelitis, staphylococcal, 542
Otitis media, pneumococcal, 549
Owl's eye cells, in cytomegalovirus disease, 701*f*
Oxaloacetate/oxaloacetic acid, 153*t*
in amination and transamination, 155, 155*f*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*, A-10
Oxamniquine, 308*t*
Oxazolidinones, 304*t*
mechanism of action of, 289, 289*f*, 304*t*
Oxidase
in *Neisseria,* 140, 575
in pasteurellae, 580, 580*f*, 590
in peroxisomes, 84
in *Vibrio,* 622
negative/positive bacteria, 140, 575
Oxidase test, 579, 579*f*
Oxidation, 126–127, 126*f*. *See also* Oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions
anaerobic ammonium (anammox), in nitrogen cycle, 779, 779*f*
antibody killing by, 470, 471*f*
beta, of fatty acids, 146–147, 146*f*
in carbon cycle, 778*f*
Oxidation lagoons, in wastewater treatment, 773
Oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions, 125, 126–127, 126*f*
in electron transport, 138–140, 138*f*, 139*f*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*
in microbial growth, 164
Oxidative phosphorylation, 127, 141, 145*t*, 151*t*
chemiosmosis and, 140–141
Oxidizing agents, antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
Oxidoreductases, 128, 128*t*
Oxygen, 28*t*, 29, 30*f*
atomic number of, 27, 28*t*
covalent bonds in formation of, 30, 31*f*
as final electron acceptor, 140, 145, 165
microbial cultures and, 180
microbial growth requirements and, 165–166, 166*f*
singlet, 165
in soil, microbial survival and, 780
toxic forms of, 165–166
Oxygen demand, biochemical (BOD), reduction of in wastewater treatment, 771–772, 772*f*, 773, 774*f*
Oxygenic organisms
noncyclic photophosphorylation in, 151
phototrophic bacteria as, 323, 325*t*
Oysters, contaminated, *Vibrio vulnificus* causing food poisoning and, 39*b*, 606
Ozone, antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
water treatment and, 274, 770, 770*f*

PABA. *See* Para-aminobenzoic acid
Pain, in inflammation, 454
Palindromes/palindromic sequences, 239, 240*f*
Palisades, 319, 319*f*
in *Corynebacterium,* 319, 319*f*, 328, 561, 561*f*
Palmitic acid, 44*t*
PAMPs. *See* Pathogen-associated molecular patterns
Pancreas, autoimmunity affecting, 530
Pandemic, 427*f*, 428
influenza, 428, 742, 743*f*, 744*f*, 745
Panencephalitis, subacute sclerosing (SSPE), 737
Papaya ringspot virus infection, resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252, 252*f*
Papillomas (warts), 702–704, 703*f*, 704*b*
genital, 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
Papillomaviridae (papillomaviruses), 385*t*, 690, 702, 702–704, 703*f*, 704*b*, 710*t*
synthesis in, 392
vaccine against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 703

Papule(s), in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
Para-aminobenzoic acid (PABA)
  for microbial growth, 167*t*
  structural analogs of, antimicrobial action of, 132, 290, 291*f*
Parabasala (kingdom)/parabasalids, 349, 349*f*, 352, 352*f*, 358*t*
Parabasal body, 352
Paracoccidioides brasiliensis, 633, 640, 640*f*
Paracoccidioidomycosis, 640
Parainfluenzaviruses, 737–738
Paralysis, botulism toxins causing, 327*b*, 554
Paralytic polio, 718, 718*f*, 719*f*. *See also* Poliomyelitis
Paralytic shellfish poisoning, 769*t*
Paramecium genus/spp., 57*f*, 350*f*, 351, 358*t*
Paramylon, in euglenids, 352, 353*f*
Paramyxoviridae (paramyxoviruses), 385*t*, 735, 736, 736*b*, 750*t*
Pararosaniline, in flagellar staining, 110
Parasitemia, in African sleeping sickness *(Trypanosoma brucei),* 664
Parasites, 406–407, 407*t*, 658, 659, 659*f*
  amoebae as, 358*t*
  energy, chlamydias as, 612
  hosts of, 406–407, 659
  protozoan, 659–673, 659*f*, 673*t*. *See also* Protozoa
  size of, 58*f*
  sushi (raw fish) in transmission of, 269*b*
  transmission of to humans, 659, 659*f*
  waterborne diseases caused by, 769*t*
Parasitology/parasitologists, 18*f*, 19*t*, 658
Parenteral route, pathogen entry into host and, 411, 412–413
Parkinson's disease, BMAA/cyanobacteria and, 325*b*
Paromomycin, 303*t*, 309*f*
Parotitis, in mumps, 738, 738*f*
Paroxysmal phase, of pertussis, 594, 594*f*
Parrot fever (ornithosis/psittacosis), 614–615
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Particulate radiation, 270. *See also* Radiation
Parvoviridae (parvoviruses), 385*t*, 690, 709, 709*f*, 710*t*
  synthesis in, 392
  transplacental transmission of B19, 413*t*
Passive immunity
  artificially acquired (immunotherapy), 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
  naturally acquired, 488, 489*t*
Passive immunotherapy, 488, 489*t*, 495, 501–503, 502*f*
Passive transport processes, 67, 68–70, 69*f*, 70*f*, 72*t*
Pasteur, Louis, 9, 9*f*, 13, 17, 18, 18*f*, 20, 113, 266, 495
  experiments in fermentation by, 11, 12*f*, 18, 146
  experiments in spontaneous generation by, 9, 9*f*, 10*f*
  germ theory and, 13, 20, 416
Pasteurella genus/spp., 113, 590
  development of vaccine for, 495
Pasteurellaceae, 335*t*, 589–591
  oxidase test and, 580, 580*f*, 590
Pasteurization, 11, 18*f*, 259, 260*t*, 266, 267*t*, 271*t*, 433, 762
  ultra-high-temperature, 265*f*, 266, 267*t*
patho-/-patho (prefix or suffix), 415*t*
Pathogen(s), 13, 20, 193, 407. *See also specific type*
  animal, bioterrorism and, 784
    assessing threat to livestock/poultry and, 784
  asepsis and, 259, 260*t*
  biosafety levels and, 263, 264*f*, 741–742, 742*f*
  in bioterrorism, 784
    assessing threat potential and, 783–784
  extracellular. *See also* Bacteria; Fungi
    antibodies/B cells attacking, 465
  human, in bioterrorism, 784, 785*t*
    assessing threat potential and, 783–784
  intracellular, 333. *See also* Viruses
    T cells/cell-mediated immune responses and, 464, 474, 480–483, 481*f*, 482*b*, 483*f*
  Koch's postulates and, 14–15, 18*f*, 416, 417*f*
  movement of into hosts, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*t*
  movement of out of hosts, 421–422, 421*f*
  pasteurization in elimination of, 11, 18*f*, 259, 260*t*, 266, 433, 762
  plant, in bioterrorism (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
    assessing threat potential and, 784
    defense against, 785–786
  vaccination against, 17, 20, 486, 487*f*, 495, 495–503, 496*f*
  virulence of, 416–420, 418*f*, 419*f*, 420*t*
Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), 449
Pathogenicity, 417. *See also* Virulence
Pauling scale, 32*f*
PCP. *See Pneumocystis* pneumonia
PCR. *See* Polymerase chain reaction
PEAS. *See* Possible estuary-associated syndrome
Pectinase, microbial production of, 765
Pediculus genus/spp. (lice), as disease vectors, 372, 373, 424*t*
  for epidemic relapsing fever *(Borrelia recurrentis),* 621
  for epidemic typhus *(Rickettsia prowazekii),* 608, 609, 611*t*
  for trench fever *(Bartonella quintana),* 591
Peliosis hepatis, bacillary, 591
Pellicle
  of euglenids, 353, 353*f*
  microbial growth estimates and, 187
Pelvic infections, *Bacteroides fragilis* causing, 601
Pelvic inflammatory disease
  chlamydial, 613
  gonococcal, 576
  mycoplasmal, 560
Penciclovir, 292*f*
Penetration
  direct, in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
  in HIV replication, 731*f*
Penicillin, 287*f*, 302*t*
  allergic reaction to, 297, 467
  discovery of, 20, 21*f*, 284
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 287*f*, 288, 302*t*
  Penicillium producing, 4, 4*f*, 21*f*, 237, 284, 284*f*, 285*t*, 302*t*, 364
  resistance to, 302*t*
    beta-(β) lactamase and, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 543
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 294, 302*t*
  for syphilis, 617
Penicillinase (beta []-lactamase), antimicrobial resistance and, 299, 299*f*, 302*t*, 540, 540*t*, 543
Penicillium genus/spp.
  in cheese production, 761*t*
  penicillin produced by, 4, 4*f*, 21*f*, 237, 284, 284*f*, 285*t*, 302*t*, 364, 366*t*
  reproduction in, 360*f*
Penicillium griseofulvin, 285*t*, 307*t*
Penicillium marneffei, 647
Penicillium roqueforti, in cheese production, 761*t*
Pentacel, 497
Pentamidine, 310*t*
  mechanism of action of, 293, 310*t*
Pentose(s), 42
  in nucleotides, 49, 49*f*
Pentose phosphate pathway, 142, 143*f*, 157*f*, A-8
  in nucleotide biosynthesis, 142, 143*f*, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
PEP. *See* Phosphoenolpyruvic acid
Peptic ulcers
  formation of, 626, 627*f*
  Helicobacter pylori infection and, 625–627, 626*b*, 627*f*
Peptide bonds, 46–47, 47*f*
Peptide cross bridges, 64, 64*f*
Peptidoglycan, 43, 64, 64*f*
  in bacterial cell wall, 3, 43, 64, 64*f*, 65*f*, 287*f*
    antimicrobials and, 66, 287–288, 287*f*
Peracetic acid, antimicrobial action of, 274, 277*t*
Percentage of transmission/percentage of absorbance, spectrophotometer measuring, 187, 188*f*
Perforin-granzyme cytotoxic pathway, 471, 471*f*, 482, 483*f*
Pericardial infection
  in candidiasis, 643*t*
  coxsackie B virus causing, 719
Peridinium genus/spp., 354*f*
Periodontal infections, *Prevotella* causing, 601
Peripheral proteins, in cytoplasmic membrane, 66, 67*f*
Periplaneta genus/spp., as disease vectors, 424*t*
Periplasm, 66
Periplasmic space, 65*f*, 66
Perishable foods, 762
Peristalsis, in host defense, 443*t*
Peritonitis
  candidal, 643*t*
  Salmonella causing, 586
Peritrichous flagellum/bacterium, 61, 61*f*, 62*f*
Permeability
  blood vessel, in inflammation, 454–455, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*
  cell membrane, selective, 66–67
Permeases
  in active transport, 70
  in facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*
Peromyscus maniculatus, in *Hantavirus* transmission, 432*b*, 747
Peroxide(s), antimicrobial action of, 165, 166, *166f*, *274*, 277*t*
  food preservation and, 763
Peroxisomes, 83*t*, 84
Persistent infections, enveloped viruses causing, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
Person-to-person spread of disease, 422
Pertussis (whooping cough), 8*b*, 332, 335*b*, 418*f*, 593–594, 593*f*
  immunization against, 335*b*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 594
Pertussis toxin, 593
Pesticides, microbial production of, 13*t*, 767, 768*t*
Pest resistance, recombinant DNA technology and, 236, 252, 252*f*, 767
  Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
Pet(s)
  allergy risks and, 516, 516*b*
  salmonellosis and, 585
Petechiae
  in meningococcal septicemia, 578, 578*f*
  in Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 608
Petri dishes, 14, 174, 174*f*, 176
Petri plates, 175, 175*f*, 176
  in anaerobic cultures, 178, 179*f*
Petroff-Hauser counting chamber, 184–185, 184*f*
Pfiesteria genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 371*t*
Pfiesteria toxin, 354
pH, 37, 37*f*
  antimicrobial efficacy affected by, 262–263
  enzymatic activity affected by, 130, 131*f*
  of food, spoilage and, 169, 761, 763*t*
  microbial growth affected by, 169–170
  microbial identification by fermentation and, 146
  microorganism tolerance of ranges of, 38, 39*b*, 169–170
  of skin, in host defense, 440
  soil, microbial population affected by, 780
  vaginal, microbial growth and, 169–170
PHA. *See* Polyhydroxyalkanoate
pH buffers, 38
Phaeohyphomycosis, 650, 650*f*, 650*t*
Phaeophyta, 370, 370*f*, 371*t*
Phage(s) (bacteriophages), 112*b*, 118, 226, 273*b*, 378, 381*f*, 390*b*
  beneficial effects of, 110, 112*b*, 273*b*, 382*b*, 390*b*
  in cocaine addiction management, 709*b*
  culture of, 397, 397*f*
  fluorescent, 110, 112*b*
  in identification/classification of bacteria, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
  lysogenic, 388, 389*f*
  in microbial control, 273*b*
  replication of, 226, 226*f*, 395*t*

Subject Index

lysogenic, 388, 389*f*
lytic, 386, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*
shapes of, 383, 384*f*
sizes of, 382*f*
temperate, 388, 389*f*
in transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
Phage clones, in gene libraries, 242, 242*f*
Phage therapy, 390*b*
Salmonella infection and, 586
Phage typing, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
Phagocytes, 445–446, 446, 458*t*. *See also* Macrophage(s); Phagocytosis
migration of, 455–456, 456*f*
Phagocytosis, 78, 79*t*, 85*f*, 446–448, 447*f*
evasion of, virulence factors and, 419*f*, 420. *See also specific organism or disorder and* Antiphagocytic chemicals/factors
in host defense, 446–448, 447*f*
Phagolysosomes, 85*f*, 447, 447*f*
Phagosome (food vesicle), 78, 85*f*, 447, 447*f*
Phalloidin, 652
Pharmaceutical microbiology, 18*f*, 19*t*, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 756, 767, 767*t*, 768*t*
Pharmacia CAP, 519
Pharyngitis
in diphtheria, 561
gonococcal, 576
herpetic, 694
streptococcal, 68*b*, 544–545, 544*f*, 717*t*
group A streptococci causing, 544–545, 544*f*
rheumatic fever and, 545
Streptococcus equisimilis causing, 547
Phase microscopy/microscopes, 98, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
differential interference contrast (Nomarski), 94, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
phase-contrast, 100, 101*f*, 106*t*
Phase plate, 100, 101*f*
PHB. *See* Polyhydroxybutyrate
Phenol/phenolics, 17, 272, 272*f*, 277*t*
Phenol coefficient, 277
Phenotype, 203
Phenylalanine, 46*f*
Phialophora genus/spp., chromoblastomycosis caused by, 650*t*
Phlebotomus genus/spp.
bartonellosis transmitted by, 591
leishmaniasis transmitted by, 373, 665, 665*f*, 673*t*
sand fly fever transmitted by, 726*t*
Phosphate
in ATP production, 51, 127. *See also* Phosphorylation
in phosphorus cycle, 779
Phosphate bonds, ATP release and, 51, 51*f*, 125
in substrate-level phosphorylation, 134, 136*f*
Phosphate (organic) group, 40*t*
in nucleotides, 49, 49*f*
in phospholipids, 41, 42*f*
Phosphoenolpyruvic acid (PEP), 129, 153*t*
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, A-7
Phosphogluconate (pentose phosphate) pathway, 142, 143*f*, 157*f*, A-8
in nucleotide biosynthesis, 142, 143*f*, 155, 156*f*, 157*f*
3-Phosphoglyceric acid, 153*t*, 157*f*
in Calvin-Benson cycle, 151, 152*f*, A-11
in glycolysis, A-7
Phospholipid bilayers, 41, 42*f*, 66, 67*f*
cholesterol in, 41, 78
in nuclear envelope, 82, 83*f*
permeability of, 67
in viral envelope, 379, 383
Phosphorus, 28*t*, 30*f*, 779
for microbial growth, 167
wastewater treatment producing, 773
Phosphorus cycle, 779–780
Phosphorylation, 127, 145*t*, 151*t*. *See also* Photophosphorylation
as exchange reaction, 36
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, 136*f*
oxidative, 127, 141, 145*t*, 151*t*
chemiosmosis and, 140–141
substrate-level, 127, 134, 136*f*, 145*t*, 151*t*
in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, 136*f*
in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*
Phosphorylcholine, in *Streptococcus pneumoniae* cell wall, 548, 548*b*
Photic zone, algae in, 367
Photoautotrophs, 164, 165*f*
in carbon cycle, 777–778, 778*f*
lithotrophic, 167
in sulfur cycle, 779
Photobacterium genus/spp., electron transport chain of, 141*b*
Photoheterotrophs, 164, 165*f*
Photolyase, 220
Photophosphorylation, 127, 149, 150*f*, 151*t*
chemiosmosis and, 140
cyclic, 149, 150*f*
noncyclic, 150*f*, 151
Photosynthesis, 148–152, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151*t*, 152*f*, 157*f*
by algae, 5, 6*f*, 369
in carbon cycle, 778*f*
chemicals and structures in, 148, 149*f*
chloroplasts in, 86, 86*f*, 148
by cyanobacteria, 323, 325*t*
by lichens, 364
light-dependent reactions in, 148, 148–151, 149*f*, 150*f*
light-independent reactions in, 148, 151–152, 152*f*
nitrogen fixation and, 778
pentose phosphate pathway and, 142, 143*f*
by phototrophic bacteria, 323, 324, 325*t*
Photosynthetic lamellae, 86, 323
Photosynthetic pigments. *See also* Chlorophyll(s)
accessory, 367, 369
phototrophic bacteria using, 323, 324, 325*t*
Photosystem(s) (PS), 148–149, 149*f*, 150*f*
Phototaxis, 62
Phototrophic bacteria/phototrophs, 164, 165*f*, 323–324, 324*f*, 325*t*
in lichens, 364–365, 366*f*
Phycoerythrin, 369
Phycology/phycologists, 18*f*, 19*t*, 367. *See also* Algae
Phylogenetic hierarchy, 115. *See also* Evolution
Phylum (phyla), 113, 114*f*, 320*f*, 349
Physarum genus/spp., 355, 358*t*
resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252
soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Phytoplankton, 371
Pickles, fermentation in production of, 757, 761*t*
Picornaviridae (picornaviruses), 384, 385*t*, 716, 750*t*. *See also specific type*
common cold caused by, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*
hepatitis A caused by, 720, 720*t*
polio caused by, 717–719, 718*f*, 719*f*, 719*t*
PID. *See* Pelvic inflammatory disease
Pigeon breeder's lung, 524
Pili (conjugation/sex pili), 63, 63*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*, 227, 227*f*, 228*f*
Pimple, 566, 567*f*. *See also* Acne
Pinkeye, 705, 705*f*. *See also* Conjunctivitis
Pinocytosis, 78, 79*t*
Pinta, 618
Pinworm *(Enterobius vermicularis),* 681, 681*f*, 683*t*
Piperaquine, 310*t*
Pityriasis, 649, 649*f*
Placenta, as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*, 413*t*. *See also* Transplacental transmission
for HIV, 413*t*, 734
ART during pregnancy and, 735
for rubella, 413*t*, 726
for syphilis, 413*t*, 617
for toxoplasmosis, 413*t*, 670, 671, 671–672
Plague
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
bubonic, 15*t*, 373, 410*t*, 418*f*, 588–589, 588*f*, 589*f*
pneumonic, 588, 588*f*, 589
Planctomycetes (phylum), 320*f*
Plankton, 350, 354
Plant(s)
cell walls in, 78
culturing viruses in, 397
cytokinesis in, 348, 348*f*
diseases of
in biological warfare (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
assessing threat potential and, 784
defense against, 785–786
soilborne, 781, 781*t*
viroids causing, 398, 399*f*
Plantae (kingdom), 113, 114*f*, 349, 349*f*, 367, 368, 371*t*
Plantar warts, 702, 703*f*
Plant galls, 331, 332*f*
Plant pathogens, bioterrorism and (agroterrorism), 783, 784–785, 785*t*
assessing threat potential and, 784
defense against, 785–786
Plant viruses, 380, 381*f*
Plaque(s), 388, 397, 397*f*
in phage typing, 118, 118*f*
Plaque (dental/biofilm), 59, 63*b*, 172, 173*b*, 413, 414*f*
Selenomonas in, 326, 328*b*
viridans streptococci in, 547, 547*f*
Plaque assay, 397
Plasma, 443
in host defense, 443–444
Plasma cells, 469, 483–484, 484*f*, 485*f*, 486
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 516, 517*f*
Plasma membrane. *See* Cell (cytoplasmic/plasma) membranes
Plasma proteins, in host defense, 46, 443
Plasmids, 196, 196*f*, 198, 198*t*
bacteriocin, 196, 301
fertility (F), 196, 227–229, 227*f*, 228*f*
as genetic vectors, 241, 241*f*, 249*t*
resistance (R), 196, 229, 230, 298
multiple resistance and, 300
transposition and, 229, 229*f*, 230
in vaccine development, 250, 497–499, 498*f*
virulence, 196
Plasmodial (acellular) slime molds, 355, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
Plasmodium, of slime mold, 355, 356*f*, 357
Plasmodium genus/spp., 4, 15*t*, 354, 358*t*, 410*t*, 668–670, 668*f*, 669*f*, 670*b*, 670*f*, 673*t*
adhesins produced by, 413
life cycle/reproduction of, 348, 349*f*, 668–669, 669*f*
malaria caused by, 4, 15*t*, 410*t*, 668–670, 668*f*, 669*f*, 670*b*, 670*f*, 673*t*
resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 300, 670
Plastics, microbial production of, 72, 72*f*, 73*b*, 766, 768*t*
Platelet(s), 444, 444–445, 444*f*
in immune thrombocytopenic purpura, 523, 523*f*
Pleconaril, 306*t*
virus attachment affected by, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
Pleomorphic forms, 316, 316*f*. *See also specific type* of mycoplasmas, 326, 559
Pleurodynia, coxsackie B virus causing, 720
PML. *See* Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
PMNs (polymorphonuclear leukocytes). *See* Neutrophil(s)
Pneumococcal infection, 548–549, 548*b*
immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 548*b*, 549
meningitis, 549
pneumonia, 15*t*, 59, 547, 548–549
Pneumococcal vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 548*b*, 549
Pneumococci/pneumococcus. *See Streptococcus pneumoniae*
Pneumocystis genus/spp., 641
transmission of, 633
Pneumocystis jiroveci (Pneumocystis carinii), 641–642, 642*f*, 742*b*
Pneumocysts, of algal thalli, 367, 370*f*
Pneumolysin, pneumococcal pathogenicity and, 548, 548*b*

Pneumonia, 15*t*
bacterial, manifestations of, 717*t*
Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae causing, 614
cryptococcal, 646
in HIV infection/AIDS, 641, 742*b*
Klebsiella pneumoniae causing, 584
Legionella pneumophila causing, 431*b*, 599–600
mycoplasmal (primary atypical/walking), 453*b*, 560
Nocardia causing, 568
pneumococcal, 15*t*, 59, 547, 548–549
Pneumocystis (PCP), 641–642, 642*f*, 742*b*
staphylococcal, 542
viral, manifestations of, 717*t*
Pneumonic plague, 588, 588*f*, 589. *See also* Plague
Pneumonitis, hypersensitivity, 524
Pneumovirus genus/spp./respiratory syncytial virus, 385*t*, 736, 738–739, 739*f*, 750*t*
Pock(s) (pustules), in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
Point mutations, 217, 217–218, 218*f*, 219*t*
Point-of-care testing, 510, 510*f*
Point-source infections, 768
Poisonings. *See* Toxicoses
Poison ivy, 515, 526, 527*f*
Polar covalent bonds, 32, 32*f*, 34*t*
Polar flagella, 61, 61*f*
Poliomyelitis (polio), 717–719, 718*f*, 719*f*, 750*t*
immunization against, 496*f*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 501, 718–719, 719*t*
naturally occurring, 718, 718*f*
reemergence of, 8*b*
vaccine-induced, 718
waterborne transmission of, 717–718, 769*t*
Polio vaccine, 496*f*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 718, 718–719, 719*t*
inactivated (IPV/Salk), 499*f*, 500*t*, 501, 718–719, 719*t*
oral (OPV/Sabin), 497, 718–719, 719*t*
safety of, 497, 501
polio (vaccine-induced polio) and, 718
Poliovirus, 717–719, 718*f*, 719*f*, 750*t*
bioterrorism and, 786*b*
size of, 382*f*
synthesis in, 392
waterborne transmission of, 717–718, 769*t*
Pollution, water, 768, 776, 769. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
Polyadenylation, in transcription, 207, 207*f*
Polycistronic operon, 214, 214*f*, 215
Polyenes, 307*t*
cytoplasmic membranes affected by, 286*f*, 289, 307*t*
Polyhedral viruses, 381, 383*f*
Polymerase(s), 128, 128*t*. *See also* DNA polymerases; RNA polymerase
microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), 119, 188, 201*b*, 242–243, 243*f*, 249*t*
for HIV diagnosis, 734
hyperthermophiles in, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
reverse transcriptase, for hantavirus detection, 747
Polymerization, 125, 157*f*
DNA replication and, 198
nucleic acid structure and, 49, 50*f*
Polymorphonuclear leukocytes. *See* Neutrophil(s)
Polymyxa genus/spp., soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Polymyxin, 304*t*
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 290, 304*t*
microbial production of, 285*t*, 290, 304*t*, 327
spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 304*t*
toxicity of, 297, 304*t*
Polyomaviridae (polyomaviruses), 385*t*, 690, 702, 704, 710*t*
Polypeptides, 47
synthesis of
DNA/RNA in, 194, 197–198, 208. *See also* Transcription; Translation
elongation and, 212–213, 212*f*, 213*f*
in HIV replication, 731–732, 731*f*
regulation of, 213–217, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*, 217*b*
Polyribosome, 213, 213*f*
Polysaccharides, 43–45, 45*f*, 76. *See also* Carbohydrate(s)
microbial virulence and. *See* Capsule
Polyunsaturated fatty acids, 40, 44*t*
Pontiac fever, 599
Population, pathogens affecting, 425–433. *See also* Epidemiology
Porins, in Gram-negative cell walls, 65, 65*f*
resistance and, 300
Pork tapeworm *(Taenia solium)*, 658, 675, 683*t*
Portals of entry, 411–413, 412*f*, 413*t*
Portals of exit, 421–422, 421*f*
Ports, in active transport, 70–71, 71*f*
Positive chemotaxis/taxis, 62
in phagocytosis, 446, 447*f*
Positive selection, of mutants, 222, 222*f*
Positive single-stranded RNA viruses, 716, 750*t*
enveloped, 721–727, 750*t*
with reverse transcriptase (retroviruses), 716, 728–735, 750*t*
naked, 716–721, 750*t*
synthesis in, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
Positive-strand RNA, 392, 716
Possible estuary-associated syndrome (PEAS), 354
Postpolio syndrome, 718
Potable (drinking) water, 433, 768–769
contamination of, 428, 430*f*, 433, 768. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
testing quality of, 771, 771*f*
treatment of, 768–771, 770*f*
Potassium alum, in flagellar staining, 110
Potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparations, fungi identified by, 634
Potato blight, soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Potato pathogens, 399*f*, 781*t*,
resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252
soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Poultry
assessing biological threats to, 784
Campylobacter jejuni contamination of, 625
Salmonella contamination of, 586
Pour plates, 175, 175*f*
Pox (pocks/pustules), in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
Poxviridae (poxviruses), 385*t*, 690, 690–693, 690*f*, 691*f*, 692*b*, 692*f*, 693*b*, 710*t*
as genetic vectors, 241
synthesis in, 392
transmission of, 693
Prairie dogs, monkeypox transmitted by, 693*b*
Praziquantel, 308*t*
mechanism of action of, 290, 308*t*
spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 308*t*
Precipitation tests, 503–504, 503*f*, 504*f*, 511*t*
Precursor metabolites, 125, 126, 152, 153*t*, 157*f*
for amino acid conversion, 154, 155, 155*f*
Entner-Doudoroff pathway producing, 142, 144*f*
in nucleic acid biosynthesis, 155, 156*f*
pentose phosphate pathway producing, 142, 143*f*
Prednisone, 528, 529*t*
Pregnancy. *See also* Transplacental transmission
antimicrobial drug use during, 297, 297*f*
attenuated (live) vaccines contraindicated in, 497, 501
autoimmunity and, 530
chlamydial infection during, 614
cytomegalovirus disease during, 701
ectopic, pelvic inflammatory disease and, 576
gonorrhea during, 275, 576, 577
herpes infection during/neonatal herpes, 695
HIV infection/AIDS and, 413*t*, 734, 735
Listeria infection during, 327, 413*t*, 558
placental disease transmission and, 412, 412*f*, 413*t*. *See also* Transplacental transmission
Rh system/hemoloytic disease of newborn and, 522, 523*f*
rubella/rubella vaccination during, 726
Streptococcus agalactiae (group B streptococcus) infection during, 546
syphilis during, 617
toxoplasmosis during, 413*t*, 670, 671, 671–672
Pregnancy tests, immunochromatographic, 510
Pre-messenger RNA, 207, 207*f*
Preservatives, food, 763
Pressure cooking (autoclaving), in microbial control, 265–266, 265*f*, 271*t*
Prevalence of disease, 426, 426*f*
Prevotella genus/spp., 601
Primaquine, 310*t*
Primary amebic meningoencephalitis, *Naegleria* causing, 661, 673*t*
Primary atypical (mycoplasmal) pneumonia, 453*b*, 560
Primary follicles, lymph node, 465, 466*f*
Primary host. *See* Definitive host
Primary immune response, 486, 487*f*
Primary immunodeficiency diseases, 531, 531–532, 532*b*, 533*t*
Primary infection, definition of, 425*t*
Primary lymphoid organs, 465, 466*f*
Primary metabolites, of industrial fermentation, 765
Primary producers, in carbon cycle, 777–778, 778*f*
Primary pulmonary cryptococcosis, 646
Primary stain
in acid-fast staining, 108
in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
in Schaeffer-Fulton endospore staining, 110
Primary structure of protein, 47, 48*f*
Primary syphilis, 616–617, 617*f*
Primary tuberculosis, 562–564, 563*f*
Primase
in lagging strand synthesis, 200*f*, 201
in leading strand synthesis, 199, 200*f*
Priming, in polymerase chain reaction, 243, 243*f*
Prion(s), 47, 276, 378, 399–400, 399*f*, 400*b*, 400*f*, 401*t*
bacteria/viruses/viroids compared with, 401*t*
disease caused by, 47
enzyme for elimination of, 276
portals of entry used by, 412
sterilization ineffective against, 259, 276
susceptibility of, 262, 262*f*
Prionzyme, 276
Probe(s), in genetics, 239, 244, 244*f*
Probe microscopy/microscopes, 104–105, 105*f*, 106*t*
Probiotics, 7*b*, 298*b*, 552*b*
Proctitis
Chlamydia trachomatis causing, 613
gonococcal, 576
Prodromal period, 420, 421*f*
Production/producers, in biogeochemical cycling, 777
Profundal zone, 782*f*, 783
Proglottids, tapeworm, 674, 674*f*, 675, 675*f*
Programmed cell death/suicide. *See* Apoptosis
Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML), 704
Proguanil, for malaria prophylaxis, 310*t*, 670
Prokaryotes/prokaryotic cells, 3–4, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*, 113, 315–343. *See also* Archaea; Bacteria
arrangements of, 318–319, 318*f*, 319*f*
cell walls of, 3, 57*f*, 63, 77*t*, 87*t*
characteristics of, 57, 77*t*, 316–319, 316*f*, 317*f*, 318*f*, 319*f*
chromosomes of, 87*t*, 194–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
classification of, 115, 319, 320*f*
biochemical tests in, 116–117, 116*f*, 117*f*
cytoplasmic membrane of. *See* Cytoplasmic (cell/plasma) membranes
cytoplasm of, 57*f*, 71–75, 72*f*, 73*b*, 74*f*, 75*f*, 77, 77*t*
genomes of, 195–196, 196*f*, 198*t*
horizontal (lateral) gene transfer among, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
life processes in, 56*t*
morphology of, 316, 316*f*
operons, 214-216, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*
reproduction of, 317, 317*f*, 318*f*

Subject Index

size of, 4, 4*f*, 57, 57*f*, 58*f*
measuring, 95, 95*t*
transcription in, 204–207, 205*f*, 206*f*
translation in, 207–213
Prokaryotic ribosomes, 57*f*, 74, 83*t*, 87*t*, 210, 211*f*, 288
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289*f*
archaeal, 77, 87*t*
bacterial, 74, 87*t*
Promastigotes, in *Leishmania* life cycle, 664, 665, 665*f*
Promoter
in operon, 214, 214*f*, 215, 215*f*, 216*f*
in transcription, 204, 205*f*, 206*f*
Proofreading exonuclease function, 201
Propamidine isethionate, mechanism of action of, 293
Properdin (factor P), 451*f*, 454
Prophage, 388, 389*f*
induction of, 388, 389*f*
Prophase
meiosis, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
mitosis, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Propionibacterium genus/spp., 38, 538, 566–567, 567*f*
fermentation products of, 145*f*
Propionic acid, microbial fermentation producing, 145*f*, 566
Propylene oxide, for gas sterilization, 276, 277*t*
Prostaglandins
in fever, 457, 457*f*
in inflammation, blood vessels affected by, 454, 456*f*
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517*f*, 518, 518*t*
Prostate gland secretions, in host defense, 443*t*
Prosthecae, 330, 330*f*, 331, 332*f*, 333*b*
Protease(s), 728
group B streptococci *(Streptococcus agalactiae)* producing, 546
HIV, 730*b*, 732, 733
microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
in protein catabolism, 147, 147*f*
secretory IgA
gonococcal infection and, 576, 577*b*
pneumococcal infection and, 548, 548*b*
in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 517, 517*f*, 518*t*
Protease inhibitors, 307*t*
for HIV infection/AIDS, 733, 735
mechanism of action of, 291, 307*t*
Protein(s), 45–48, 46*f*, 47*f*, 48*f*. *See also specific type and* Amino acids
antiviral (AVPs), 450, 450*f*
catabolism of, 147, 147*f*, 148*b*, 157*f*
complement. *See* Complement
denaturation of, 48, 130, 131*f*
antimicrobial action and, 261
enzymes. *See* Enzyme(s)
genes for, synthetic nucleic acids in creation of, 238–239
in Gram-negative cell walls, 65, 65*f*, 76
in host defense/offense, 46, 443
matrix, 383, 384*f*
membrane, 66, 67*f*
in facilitated diffusion, 68, 69*f*
regulatory, 46
structural, 45–46
structure of, 47–48, 48*f*
function and, 46, 47, 48
synthesis of. *See* Protein synthesis
transport, 46, 68, 69*f*
Protein A, staphylococcal pathogenicity/virulence and, 539–540, 540*t*
Protein synthesis, 157*f*. *See also* Amino acids, biosynthesis of
in animal viruses, 391–392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
antimicrobials affecting, 261, 286, 286*f*, 288–289, 289*f*, 303–304*t*
antiprotozoan drugs, 308–309*t*
antiviral drugs, 307*t*
in bacteriophage replication, 386, 387*f*, 395*t*
protein kinase affecting, 450
recombinant DNA technology in, 249
regulation of, 157*f*
in ribosomes, 74
Proteobacteria (phylum), 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*, 330–337, 339*t*, 591, 615*t*. *See also* Gram-negative bacteria
alpha, 320*f*, 325*t*, 330–332, 330*f*, 331*f*, 332*f*, 333*b*, 339*t*, 591, 607
beta, 320*f*, 325*t*, 332–333, 339*t*, 575, 591
delta, 320*f*, 334–336, 336*f*, 339*t*
epsilon, 320*f*, 337, 339*t*, 624
gamma, 320*f*, 325*t*, 333–334, 334*f*, 335*t*, 339*t*, 579, 591
Proteus genus/spp., 335*t*, 585, 585*f*
fimbriae and flagella of, 62*f*
flagellar stain of, 111*f*
nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Protista (kingdom), 113, 349, 349*f*, 352
Proton gradient, 138, 141, 141*b*
halobacteria establishing, 322
in photosynthesis, 149
Protooncogenes, 396, 396*f*
Protoplasts
for electroporation, 246, 249*t*
fusion of, 246, 247*f*
Protoscoleces, of hydatid cysts, 676
Prototheca genus/spp., 369, 371*t*
Protozoa, 4–5, 5*f*, 350–357, 358*t*, 659–673, 673*t*. *See also* Parasites
antimicrobials effective against, 293*f*, 308–310*t*
classification of, 4–5, 349, 349*f*, 352–357, 358*t*
cysts of, 351
cytokinesis in, 348, 348*f*
diseases caused by, 410*t*
distribution of, 350
locomotive structures of, 4, 5*f*, 350
morphology of, 350–351, 350*f*
nutrition of, 351
opportunistic infections caused by, in HIV infection/AIDS, 729*t*
pathogenic, 350
placenta crossed by, 413*t*
reproduction of, 351, 351*f*
sizes of, 58*f*
in soil, 781
susceptibility of, 262, 262*f*
in termites (mutualism), 352, 406, 406*f*
zoonoses caused by, 410*t*
Providencia genus/spp., 585
Proviruses (latent viruses), 395. *See also* Latency
Prozone phenomenon, 504
PS. *See* Photosystem(s)
Pseudallescheria genus/spp., mycetoma caused by, 650*t*, 651
Pseudocysts
in Chagas' disease, 662
of *Toxoplasma,* 671, 671*f*
Pseudohyphae, 360, 643, 644*f*
Pseudomembrane, in diphtheria, 284, 561, 561*f*
Pseudomembranous colitis, *Clostridium difficile* causing, 297, 418*f*, 430–431, 553
Pseudomonads, 333, 334, 334*f*, 595–597, 596*f*
Entner-Doudoroff pathway used by, 142, 144*f*, 595
nosocomial infection caused by, 595, 596
Pseudomonas genus/spp., 334, 334*f*, 339*t*, 418*f*, 595–597, 596*f*
crop freeze resistance and, 252, 767
Entner-Doudoroff pathway used by, 142, 144*f*, 595
fluorescent, 100
gene expression regulation in, 214
in Kelsey-Sykes capacity test, 278
nitrogen produced by, 140
nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*, 596
resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 300, 597
in use-dilution test, 277
Pseudomonas fluorescens, antimicrobials produced by, 285*t*, 303*t*
Pseudomonas putida, in biofilm, 63*b*
Pseudomonas syringae, in agricultural microbiology, 767
Pseudoplasmodium, 356*f*, 357
Pseudopods
in endocytosis/phagocytosis, 78, 79*f*, 446, 447, 447*f*
in motility, 78
of protozoa, 4, 5*f*
amoebae, 355, 355*f*, 660
Psilocybe cubensis, 364, 652
Psilocybin, 364, 652
P site, ribosomal, 211, 211*f*
Psittacosis (ornithosis), 614–615
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
PSTV. *See* Potato spindle tuber viroid
Psychrophiles, 168, 169*f*
growth of in refrigerated food, 168, 267
Pterothamnion plumula, 369*f*
Public health, 19*t*
assessing biological threats and impact and, 783
preparedness and, 784
epidemiology and, 428, 428*t*, 429*f*, 432–433, 432*b*
Puerperal (childbirth) fever, streptococcal, 16, 546
Pulmonary anthrax, 327, 551, 717*t*, 781. *See also* Anthrax
bioterrorism and, 551
Pulmonary aspergillosis, acute invasive, 644, 644*b*, 645
Pulmonary blastomycosis, 638, 645*b*
Pulmonary candidiasis, 643*t*
Pulmonary coccidioidomycosis, 639–640
Pulmonary cryptococcosis, 646
Pulmonary histoplasmosis, 637
Pulmonary paracoccidioidomycosis, 640
Pulmonary tuberculosis, 562–564, 563*f*
Pulmonary zygomycosis, 646
Pure culture, 174–175, 174*f*, 175*f*
Purification (water), 768–771, 770*f*
Purines, 49, 49*f*
biosynthesis of, 155, 156*f*
for microbial growth, 167*t*
Purple phototrophic bacteria, 324
nonsulfur, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*, 331, 339*t*
sulfur, 323, 324, 324*f*, 325*t*, 333, 334*f*, 339*t*, 779
Purpura, 523
immune thrombocytopenic, 523, 523*f*
Purpuric fever, Brazilian, 591
Purulent abscesses
in group A streptococcal pharyngitis, 544, 544*f*
Streptococcus anginosus causing, 547
Pus, 455, 456*f*
Pustule(s)
in acne, 566, 567*f*
in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
Pyelonephritis, *E. coli* causing, 583
Pyocyanin, in *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infection, 597
Pyoderma (streptococcal impetigo), 545
Pyogenic lesions, staphylococcal, 541, 541*f*
Pyrantel pamoate, 308*t*
Pyrazinamide, 304*t*
mechanism of action of, 290, 304*t*
Pyridoxal phosphate, 129*t*
in transamination, 155, 155*f*
Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6), for microbial growth, 167*t*
Pyrimethamine, 310*t*
Pyrimidine(s), 49, 49*f*
biosynthesis of, 155, 156*f*
for microbial growth, 167*t*
Pyrimidine dimers, ultraviolet light causing formation of, 219, 219*f*, 271
repair of, 220–221, 221*f*
Pyrite, acid mine drainage and, 776
Pyrococcus furiosus, 76*f*
Pyrodictium genus/spp., 321, 321*f*
Pyrogenic (erythrogenic) toxins, 457
group A streptococcal pathogenicity and, 544
in scarlet fever, 545
Pyrogens, 456–457, 457*f*

Pyrrhophyta, 371*t*. *See also* Dinoflagellates
Pyruvate kinase, in glycolysis, A-7

Q fever, 333, 600, 785*t*
Quaternary ammonium compounds (quats), 274–275, 274*f*
Quaternary structure of protein, 48, 48*f*
Quellung reaction, 549
Quinine, 310*t*
Quinolones, 310*t*. *See also* Fluoroquinolones
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 292, 310*t*
Quinupristin, 304*t*
Quorum sensing, 141*b*, 171, 171*f*, 214
  amplification of, biofilm prevention/disruption and, 171–172

R (residue), 39
RA. *See* Rheumatoid arthritis
Rabbit fever (tularemia), 418*f*, 598–599, 598*b*, 785*t*
Rabies, 410*t*, 739–741, 739*b*, 740*f*, 750*t*
  immunization against, 500*t*,
  treatment, 740
Rabies virus, 383*f*, 410*t*, 739–741, 739*b*, 740*f*, 750*t*
  classification of, 384*t*, 739
  direct fluorescent antibody test in detection of, 506
Radiation
  Deinococcus resistance to, 248, 323
  as energy source for fungi, 359
  Kineococcus radiotolerans resistance to, 172*b*
  in microbial control/food preservation, 270–271, 270*f*, 271*t*, 763
  mutagenic effects of, 219, 219*f*
    DNA repair and, 220–221, 221*f*
  wavelengths of
    microbial control and, 270
    microscopy and, 96, 96*f*
Radiolaria, 355, 355*f*, 358*t*
RAG (recombination activating gene) protein, 472*b*
Ragweed *(Ambrosia trifida)*, 518
Ralstonia genus/spp., 126*b*, 781*t*
Rapid identification tests, 117, 117*f*, 546
Rash. *See also* Skin, diseases/infections of
  in chickenpox, 697, 697*f*
  in Lyme disease, 620
  in measles, 736*t*, 737, 737*f*
  in *Rickettsia parkeri* infection, 609*b*
  in *Rickettsia rickettsii* infection (Rocky Mountain spotted fever), 608, 608*f*
  in roseola, 701–702, 702*f*
  in rubella, 726, 727*f*, 736*t*
  in shingles, 697, 698*f*
  in syphilis, 617, 617*f*
    congenital infection and, 617
RBs. *See* Reticulate (initial) bodies
Reaction center chlorophyll, 149, 149*f*, 150*f*, 151
Recalcitrant substances, bioremediation and, 776
Recombinant DNA technology/genetic engineering, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 224-226, 236–257, 237, 238*f*, 765. *See also* Molecular biology/techniques
  in agriculture, 236, 251–253, 252*f*, 767
    Bt toxin and, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
    ethical/safety issues and, 253
  applications of, 246–253, 248*f*, 250*f*, 251*b*, 252*f*, 765
  in biotechnology, 237, 765
  bioterrorism and, 253, 786, 786*b*
  competent cells and, 226
  diagnostic applications of, 250–251
  for DNA fingerprinting, 250, 250*f*. *See also* Genetic fingerprinting
  in environmental studies, 236, 248–249
  ethics of, 253
  for gene therapy, 250
  for genetic mapping, 246–248, 248*f*, 249*t*
  for genetic screening, 250
  hyperthermophiles in, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
  industrial uses of, 237, 765, 767*t*, 768*t*
  for pharmaceutical/therapeutic uses, 249–251, 250*f*, 251*b*, 767, 767*t*
  for protein synthesis, 249
  safety of, 236, 253
  techniques of, 242–246, 243*f*, 244*f*, 245*f*, 246*f*, 247*f*, 249*t*
  tools of, 237–242, 239*t*, 240*b*, 240*f*, 241*f*, 242*f*, 249*t*
    microbial production of, 765
  in vaccine production, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
    antifungal vaccines and, 407, 635
  for xenotransplants, 251
Recombination (genetic), 224–230, 224*f*, 230*b*. *See also* Recombinant DNA technology
  horizontal (lateral) gene transfer and, 224–229, 229*t*, 230*b*
  mutations caused by, 218
  transposons/transposition and, 229–230, 229*f*, 230*f*
Recombination activating gene (RAG) protein, 472*b*
Red algae, 367, 369–370, 369*f*, 371*t*
Red bone marrow, 465, 466*f*
  B lymphocyte maturation in, 464
  lymphocytes formed in, 464
Red measles. *See* Measles
Redox (oxidation-reduction) reactions, 125, 126–127, 126*f*
  in electron transport, 138–140, 138*f*, 139*f*
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*
  in microbial growth, 164
Red tide, 354, 768
Reducing media, 178
Reemerging diseases, 8*b*. *See also* Emerging/reemerging diseases
Refraction, image magnification and, 96–97, 96*f*, 99*f*
Refrigeration
  for culture preservation, 180, 267
  in food preservation/microbial control, 267, 271*t*, 763–764
    Listeria resistance to, 267, 327, 559, 764
Regulatory gene, 214, 214*f*, 215, 215*f*
Regulatory proteins, 46
Regulatory RNA, in transcription, 204, 216–217
Regulatory T cells (Tr cells), 475, 475*t*, 483
  clonal deletion and, 476, 476*f*
Rejection, transplant (graft), 527, 527*f*
  donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
  immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
  MHC antigens and, 478, 527
Relapsing fever, 621, 621*f*
Relaxin, recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Release
  in animal virus replication, 394–395, 394*f*, 395*t*
  in bacteriophage replication, 386, 387*f*, 388
  in HIV replication, 731*f*, 732, 733
Release factors, in translation, 213
Rennin, in curdling process, 758
Reoviridae (reoviruses), 385*t*, 726*t*, 748–749, 750*t*
Repair
  DNA, 220–222, 221*f*
    methylation and, 202, 221–222
  tissue, 456, 456*f*
Replica plating, in negative (indirect) selection, 223, 223*f*
Replication
  DNA, 198–202, 198*f*, 199*f*, 200*f*, 201*b*, 202*f*, 213*t*. *See also* DNA, replication of
  viral, 386–395, 395*t*. *See also* Viral replication
Replication fork, 199, 200*f*, 202, 202*f*
Reportable diseases, monitoring, bioterrorism defense and, 785
Repressible operons, 214, 215–216, 216*f*, 216*t*
  tryptophan *(trp)* operon as, 215–216, 216*f*
Repressor protein/repressors
  in lysogeny, 388
Reptiles (pet), salmonellosis and, 585
RER. *See* Rough endoplasmic reticulum
Reservoirs of infection, 410–411, 410*t*, 411*b*
Resident microbiota, 407, 408*t*. *See also* Normal microbiota
Residual body, 447
Residual virulence, vaccine safety and, 497, 501
Resistance (host). *See* Host defenses
Resistance (microbial), 278, 278*b*, 297–301, 298*b*, 299*f*, 301*b*, 301*f*, 302–310*t*. *See also specific organism*
  antibacterial soap use and, 278*b*
  biofilms and, 300
  choice of control method and, 262, 262*f*
  conjugation and, 229, 300
  cross, 300
  development of, 278, 297–299, 299*f*
  diffusion susceptibility tests in determination of, 294, 294*f*, 296*b*
  endospores and, 73
  horizontal gene transfer and, 230*b*, 300
  mechanisms of, 299–300, 299*f*
  multiple drug, 283, 310*b*. *See also* Multi-drug resistance
  mutations and, 220, 297
  nosocomial infections and, 230*b*, 431
  plasmids (R plasmids/factors) and, 196, 229, 230, 298
    multiple resistance and, 300
    transposons and, 230, 230*f*
  probiotics and, 298*b*
  retarding, 300–301, 301*b*
  transposons and, 229, 230, 230*f*
Resistance (disease), species, 439
Resistance (R) plasmids/factors, 196, 229, 230, 298
  multiple resistance and, 300
  transposons and, 230, 230*f*
Resolution distance, 98
Resolution/resolving power, 97–98, 97*f*. *See also specific type of microscope*
  immersion oil affecting, 98, 99*f*
Respiration
  in carbon cycle, 778, 778*f*
  cellular. *See* Cellular respiration
Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV/*Pneumovirus*), 385*t*, 736, 738–739, 739*f*, 750*t*
Respiratory system. *See also under Pulmonary*
  adenovirus infection of, 704–705
  anthrax affecting, 327, 551, 717*t*, 781. *See also* Anthrax
    bioterrorism and, 551
  aspergillosis affecting, 644, 644*b*, 645
  blastomycosis affecting, 638, 645*b*
  candidal infection of, 643*t*
  coccidioidomycosis affecting, 639–640
  cryptococcal infection of, 646
  Enterobacteriaceae infection of, 590*f*
  histoplasmosis affecting, 637
  in host defense, 438, 441, 441*f*
  in immune complex–mediated (type III) hypersensitivity, 524
  manifestations of infection of, 717*t*
  normal microbiota of, 408*t*
  paracoccidioidomycosis affecting, 640
  parainfluenza virus infection of, 737–738
  as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*, 441
    for parasites, 659*f*
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
  respiratory syncytial virus infection of, 738–739, 739*f*
  rhinovirus infection of, 716–717, 717*t*
  tuberculosis affecting, 562–564, 563*f*
  Yersinia infection of (pneumonic plague), 588, 588*f*, 589
  zygomycosis affecting, 646
Respirovirus genus/spp., 736, 737–738
Responsiveness, as characteristic of life, 56, 56*t*
Restriction enzymes, 239, 239*t*, 240*f*, 249*t*
  gene library production and, 242, 242*f*
  in genetic mapping, 247–248, 249*t*
  microbial production of, 239, 239*t*, 765, 768*t*
Restriction fragmentation, for genetic mapping, 247–248
Restriction sites, 239, 239*t*, 240*f*
Reticulate (initial) bodies
  in chlamydial growth/reproduction, 338, 612, 612*f*

Subject Index

in *Ehrlichia* and *Anaplasma* growth/reproduction, 610, 610*f*
Retinoic acid, for acne, 567
Retrospective studies, analytical studies as, 430
Retroviridae (retroviruses), 237, 385*t*, 716, 728–735, 750*t*
immunosuppressive, 728, 729–735, 729*t*, 730*b*, 730*t*, 731*f*, 732*f*, 733*f*, 734*f*. *See also* HIV (human immunodeficiency virus)
oncogenic, 728, 728–729, 729*f*
synthesis in, 392, 393*t*
Reverse transcriptase, 237–238, 249*t*, 728, 728*f*. *See also Retroviridae*
in cDNA synthesis, 237–238
in hepatitis B virus synthesis, 392, 706
HIV, 395, 730*b*, 731, 731*f*, 732
inhibition of, 293
in recombinant DNA technology, 237–238, 249*t*
in retrovirus synthesis, 392, 393*t*
RNA viruses with, 716, 728–735. *See also Retroviridae*
Reverse transcriptase inhibitors
for HIV infection/AIDS, 735
mechanism of action of, 293
Reverse transcriptase polymerase chain reaction, for hantavirus detection, 747
Reye's syndrome, aspirin use and, 698, 746
R factors. *See* R (resistance) plasmids/factors
Rhabdoviridae (rhabdoviruses), 385*t*, 735, 736, 739, 750*t*
Rhadinovirus genus/spp., 693–694, 702
Rh antigen (Rhesus antigen), 522, 523*f*
Rheumatic fever, streptococcal infection and, 545
Rheumatoid arthritis, 525, 525*f*, 531
Rhinocerebral zygomycosis, 646
Rhinorrhea, in common cold, 716
Rhinovirus genus/spp./rhinoviruses, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*, 750*t*
common cold caused by, 385*t*, 716–717, 716*f*, 717*t*, 750*t*
Rhizaria (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 355, 355*f*, 358*t*
Rhizobium genus/spp., 331, 331*f*, 339*t*
nitrogen fixation by, 167, 779
Rhizopus genus/spp., 361, 362*f*, 366*t*, 646
Rho-dependent termination, of transcription, 205*f*, 207
Rhodocyclus, 331
Rhodophyta (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 367, 369–370, 369*f*, 371*t*
Rhodopseudomonas palustris, 331
RhoGAM, 522
Rh system, hemolytic disease of newborn and, 522, 523*f*
Ribavirin, 292*f*, 306*t*
spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 306*t*
Riboflavin (vitamin B_2), for microbial growth, 167*t*
Ribonucleic acid. *See* RNA
Ribonucleotide, 49
Ribose, 49, 49*f*, 194
Ribose 5-phosphate, 153*t*
in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
in nucleotide synthesis, 155, 156*f*
in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Ribosomal enzymes, 128
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), 74, 188, 210–211, 211*f*
microbial taxonomy and, 115, 116
in transcription, 204
in translation, 210–211, 211*f*
Ribosomes, 83*t*, 87*t*, 208, 210–211, 211*f*
antimicrobial drugs and, 74, 210–211
eukaryotic, 58*f*, 81, 83*t*, 87*t*, 210, 211*f*
microbial taxonomy and, 115, 116
mitochondrial, 85*f*, 86
prokaryotic, 57*f*, 74, 83*t*, 87*t*, 210, 211*f*, 288
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289*f*
archaeal, 77, 87*t*
bacterial, 74, 87*t*
on rough endoplasmic reticulum, 82, 84*f*
in translation, 208, 210–211, 211*f*, 212–213, 213, 213*f*
Riboswitch, 216–217
Ribozymes, 128
antimicrobial agents affecting, 261
in transcription, 207, 207*f*
in translation, 212, 212*f*
Ribulose 5-phosphate
in Calvin-Benson cycle, A-11
in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Rice
microbial contamination of, 269*b*
recombinant DNA technology and greenhouse gas production and, 248–249
nutritional value and, 236, 252
Rice beer (sake), fermentation in production of, 760, 761*t*
Rice-water stool, in cholera, 12, 623
Rickettsia(s), 320*f*, 607–611, 607*f*, 608*f*, 609*b*, 610*f*, 611*f*, 611*t*, 615*t*
animal/cell cultures for growth of, 180
antimicrobials effective against, 293*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
classification of, 338
comparison of with other small microbes, 615*t*
Rickettsia genus/spp., 331, 339*t*, 410*t*, 607–609, 607*f*, 608*f*, 609*b*, 611*t*
Rickettsia tsutsugamushi. *See Orientia tsutsugamushi*
Rickettsiosis, spotted fever, 607–608, 608*f*, 611*t*
Rifampin, 305*t*
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 293, 305*t*
microbial production of, 285*t*, 305*t*
resistance to, 220, 305*t*
Rift Valley fever, 726*t*, 747
Rimantadine, 306*t*
mechanism of action of, 291, 306*t*
Ringspot virus infection, resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252, 252*f*
Ringworm (dermatophytoses), 410*t*, 648–649, 648*t*, 649*b*
RMSF. *See* Rocky Mountain spotted fever
RNA, 49–51, 51*t*
antisense, yield/nutritional value of food and, 252
function of, 51
HIV, 731–732, 731*f*, 732, 735
messenger (mRNA), 209–210
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289, 289*f*
eukaryotic, 207*f*, 210
interferons affecting, 450, 450*f*
prokaryotic, 209, 209*f*
as riboswitch, 217
in transcription, 204, 207, 207*f*
in translation, 208, 208*f*, 209–210, 209*f*, 211–212, 211*f*
in viral synthesis, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
HIV, 731–732, 731*f*
micro, 216
negative-strand, 392, 716
positive-strand, 392, 716
regulatory, in transcription, 204, 216–217
ribosomal (rRNA), 74, 188, 210–211, 211*f*
microbial taxonomy and, 115, 116
in transcription, 204
in translation, 210–211, 211*f*
small interfering (siRNA), 216
structure of, 50, 194, 195*f*
synthesis of, 155, 156*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 286*f*, 291–293, 292*f*, 305*t*
in HIV replication, 731–732, 731*f*, 732
synthetic, 238–239
transcription of, 203, 204–207, 205*f*, 206*f*, 207*f*, 213*t*. *See also* Transcription
transfer (tRNA), 210, 210*f*
in HIV replication, 732
ribosomal binding sites for, 211, 211*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289*f*
in transcription, 204
in translation, 210, 210*f*, 211–212, 211*f*, 212*f*
in translation control, 216–217
viral, 379, 379–380
synthesis of, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
in viroids, 398, 399*f*
RNA-dependent RNA transcriptase, 392, 393*t*
RNA interference (RNAi), 217*b*
RNA polymerase, 204–206, 205*f*, 206, 206*f*, 207
antimicrobials affecting, 293
operon regulation and, 214, 215, 215*f*, 216*f*
in synthesis of RNA viruses, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*
RNA primer
in lagging strand synthesis, 200*f*, 201
in leading strand synthesis, 199, 200*f*
transcription of, 204
RNA probes, 249*t*. *See also* Probe(s)
synthetic nucleic acids in synthesis of, 239
RNA transcript, elongation of, 205*f*, 206, 206*f*
RNA transcriptase, RNA-dependent, 392, 393*t*
RNA viruses, 380, 385*t*, 715–755, 750*t*. *See also specific type*
assembly of, 392, 395*t*
cancer caused by, 728, 728–729, 729*f*
double-stranded, 716, 748–749, 750*t*
pathogenic, 715–755
single-stranded, 380, 385*t*, 716, 750*t*
negative, 716, 750*t*
enveloped
segmented, 742–748, 750*t*
unsegmented, 735–742
positive, 716, 750*t*
enveloped, 721–727, 750*t*
with reverse transcriptase (retroviruses), 716, 728–735, 750*t*
naked, 716–721, 750*t*
synthesis in, 392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*
Rochalimaea genus/spp, 591. *See also under Bartonella*
Rock fever of Gibraltar (brucellosis), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 607–608, 608*f*, 611*t*
safe handling of microbes causing, 263
Rodents. *See also* Fleas
in arboviral encephalitis transmission, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
in *Borrelia recurrentis* transmission, 621
in *Hantavirus* transmission, 432*b*, 747
in *Rickettsia typhi* transmission, 609, 611*t*
in *Toxoplasma* transmission, 671, 671*f*
in *Yersinia pestis* transmission, 588, 588*f*
Root nodules, in nitrogen fixation, 330, 331, 331*f*, 779
Root rot, soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Roseolovirus genus/spp., 693, 701–702, 702*f*, 710*t*
Rotaviruses, 385*t*, 748–749, 749*f*, 750*t*
synthesis in, 392
Rotavirus vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*, 749
Rough endoplasmic reticulum, 58*f*, 82, 84*f*
Roundup. *See* Glyphosate
Roundworms (nematodes), 674, 679–682, 680*f*, 681*f*, 682*f*, 683*t*
Ascaris, 680, 680*f*, 683*t*
filarial/*Wuchereria*, 680, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*
hookworms (*Ancylostoma* and *Necator*), 680–681, 681*f*, 683*t*
mutualism in, 409*b*
pinworms *(Enterobius)*, 681, 681*f*, 683*t*
predation by fungi and, 359, 359*f*
R (resistance) plasmids/factors, 196, 229, 230, 298
multiple resistance and, 300
transposons and, 230, 230*f*
rRNA. *See* Ribosomal RNA
RSV. *See* Respiratory syncytial virus
Rubbing alcohol. *See* Isopropanol
Rubella (German/three-day measles)/rubella virus, 385*t*, 725–726, 727*f*, 736*t*, 750*t*
immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 726, 727*f*. *See also* Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 726
Rubeola (measles/red measles), 494, 736, 736–737, 736*t*, 737*f*, 750*t*
immunization against, 494, 496*f*, 499*f*, 500*t*, 737
Rubivirus genus/spp./rubella virus, 385*t*, 725–726, 727*f*, 736*t*, 750*t*. *See also* Rubella
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 726

Rubor, in inflammation, 454
RuBP. *See* Ribulose 1,5-bisphosphate
Rubulavirus genus/spp./mumps virus, 385*t*, 736, 737, 738, 738*f*, 750*t*
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 738, 738*f*. *See also* Measles/mumps/rubella (MMR) vaccine
Runs, in bacterial motility, 62, 62*f*
Russian spring–summer encephalitis, 722, 726*t*
Rusts, 364

S. *See* Sulfur; Svedbergs
Sabía hemorrhagic fever, 748
Sabin vaccine (oral polio vaccine/OPV), 497, 718–719, 719*t*
  safety of, 497, 501
Sabouraud dextrose agar, 177, 177*f*, 634
Saccharomyces genus/spp., 357, 359*f*, 360, 364, 366*t*
  chromosomes in, 345
  fermentation products of, 145*f*, 761*t*
    beer and sake, 7*b*, 760, 760*f*
    bread, 7*b*, 757, 761*t*
    wine and spirits, 7*b*, 759, 761*t*
  pharmaceuticals produced by, 285*t*, 303*t*, 756, 767*t*
  plasmids of, 198
  as probiotic, 7*b*
  vegetable fermentation and, 757
Safranin, 107
  in Gram staining, 108, 109*f*
  in Schaeffer-Fulton endospore staining, 110
Sake, fermentation in production of, 7*b*, 760
Salami, fermentation in production of, 758, 761*t*
Saliva
  in host defense, 443, 443*t*
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Salivary glands, mumps affecting, 738
Salk, Jonas, 718
Salk vaccine (inactivated polio vaccine/IPV), 499*f*, 500*t*, 501, 718–719, 719*t*
Salmonella genus/spp./*Salmonella enterica*, 15*t*, 335*t*, 410*t*, 585–586, 586*f*, 587*f*
  in Ames test, 223–224, 224*f*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  carriers of, 411*b*, 586, 589*b*
  conjugation pili in, 63*f*
  fluorescent phages in identification of, 112*b*
  foodborne transmission of, 15*t*, 505–506, 586*f*, 587*f*, 589*b*, 764*t*
  immunization against, 500*t*, 586
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
  phage typing in identification of, 118*f*
  salmonellosis/typhoid fever caused by, 15*t*, 410*t*, 586, 586*f*, 587*f*, 589*b*, 764*t*, 769*t*
  serotype Choleraesuis *(Salmonella choleraesuis)*
    culture of, 179*f*
    in use-dilution test, 277
  serotype Dublin, 586
  serotype Paratyphi *(Salmonella paratyphi)*, 586
  serotype Typhi *(Salmonella typhi)*, 15*t*, 118*f*, 586, 589*b*
  sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
  Vi antigens produced by, 580, 581*f*
  waterborne transmission of, 411*b*, 586, 769*t*
Salmonellosis, 15*t*, 410*t*, 586, 586*f*, 587*f*, 769*t*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Salt tolerance, in plants, recombinant DNA technology and, 252
Salvarsan, 309*f*
Sand filters
  in wastewater treatment, 773
  in water treatment, 769–770, 770*f*
Sand flies, as disease vectors
  for bartonellosis, 591
  for leishmaniasis, 373, 665, 665*f*, 666, 673*t*
  for sand fly fever, 726*t*
Sanitization, 259, 260*t*
Saprobes, fungi as, 359, 633
Sarcina genus/spp., shape of organisms in, 318*f*, 319
Sarcinae (arrangement), 64, 64*f*, 318, 318*f*
Sarcodina, 352
Sarcoma, Kaposi's, 533, 702, 702*f*, 733, 733*f*
Sarcomastigophora, 352
SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome), 8*b*, 242, 405, 717*t*, 727, 728*f*, 750*t*
Satellite virus, hepatitis D virus as, 748
Saturated fatty acids, 40, 41*f*, 42*f*, 44*t*
Saturation point, enzyme/substrate effect on enzymatic activity and, 131, 131*f*
Sauerkraut, fermentation in production of, 757, 761*t*
Saxitoxin (*Gonyaulax* genus/spp.), waterborne illness caused by, 768, 769*t*
Scalded skin syndrome, staphylococcal, 541, 541*f*
Scanning electron microscopy/microscopes, 104, 104*f*, 105*f*, 106*t*
  resolving power of, 97*f*
Scanning objective lens, 98
Scanning tunneling microscopy/microscopes, 105, 105*f*, 106*t*
  resolving power of, 97*f*
Scar(s)
  in poxvirus infection, 690, 691*f*
  tissue repair and, 456
Scarlet fever (scarlatina), 545
Schaeffer-Fulton endospore stain, 109–110, 110*f*, 111*t*
Schistosoma genus/spp. (blood flukes), 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
  waterborne transmission of, 678, 679, 679*b*, 683*t*, 769*t*
Schizogony, 345, 348, 349*f*, 668
  in *Plamsodium* life cycle, 348, 668, 669*f*
Schizonts, 348, 349*f*, 668
SCID. *See* Severe combined immunodeficiency disease
Scientific method, 9–10, 10*f*
  study of fermentation and, 11, 12*f*
Scientific (exponential) notation, 182, A-13
Sclerotic bodies, in chromoblastomycosis, 650, 650*f*
Scolex, tapeworm, 674, 674*f*
Scrapie, 47, 400, 400*f*
Scrub typhus, 610, 611*b*, 611*t*
Seaweeds, 5, 367
Sebaceous glands, 412*f*
  in host defense, 440
Sebum, 440, 566
  acne and, 566, 567*f*
  in host defense, 440
Secondary cultures, in commercial food/beverage production, 757
Secondary hosts. *See* Intermediate hosts
Secondary immune response, 486, 487*f*
Secondary infection, 297, 425*t*. *See also* Opportunistic pathogens
Secondary lymphoid organs, 465–466, 466*f*
Secondary metabolites
  antibiotics as, 285*b*
  of industrial fermentation, 765
Secondary structure of protein, 47, 48*f*
Secondary syphilis, 617, 617*f*
Second-generation drugs, 301
Secretions, as portals of exit, 421*f*, 422
Secretion system, type III. *See* Type III secretion system
Secretory component, 473, 474*t*
Secretory IgA, 473, 474*t*
Secretory IgA protease
  gonococcal infection and, 576, 577*b*
  pneumococcal infection and, 548, 548*b*
Secretory vesicles, 58*f*, 84, 85*f*
Sediment, microbial growth estimates and, 187
Sedimentation, in water treatment, 769, 770*f*
Sedimentation rate, 74
Seed warts, 702, 703*f*
Segmented genome, RNA virus, 716, 742
Selective media, 177, 177*f*, 178, 179*f*
Selective permeability, cell membrane, 66–67
Selective toxicity, 286, 297
Selenium, for microbial growth, 167
Selenocysteine, 46*f*
Selenomonas genus/spp., 320*f*, 326, 328*b*, 329*t*
Self-stimulation, in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
Self-termination, of transcription, 205–206, 205*f*
Self-tolerance, 464, 467–468
  autoimmunity and, 476, 530
  clonal deletion and, 475–476, 476*f*, 477*f*
  complement inactivation and, 454
SEM. *See* Scanning electron microscopy/microscopes
Semen, as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Semiconservative DNA replication, 198, 198*f*, 201–202
Semilogarithmic graph, 182
Semi-perishable food, 762
Semisynthetic antimicrobial, 276, 277*t*, 285, 285*t*. *See also* Antibiotics; Antimicrobial agents
  new drug development and, 301
Semmelweis, Ignaz, 16–17, 18*f*
Sensitization, in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 516–517, 516*b*, 517*f*
Sepsis. *See* Septicemia
Septa (cross walls), in hyphae, 358, 359*f*
septi- (prefix), 415*t*
Septicemia, 606. *See also* Bacteremia
  meningococcal, 578, 578*f*
  Vibrio vulnificus causing, 606, 624
Septic shock, 606
Septic tanks, 773, 773*f*
SER. *See* Smooth endoplasmic reticulum
Serial dilution, 185, 186*f*
Serology, 18*f*, 19*t*, 20, 495, 503–510, 511*t*
  agglutination tests in, 117, 117*f*, 504–505, 505*f*, 511*t*
  complement fixation test in, 506, 511*t*
  labeled antibody tests in, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*
  nephelometric tests in, 504
  neutralization tests in, 505–506, 511*t*
  point-of-care testing and, 510, 510*f*, 511*t*
  precipitation tests in, 503–504, 503*f*, 504*f*, 511*t*
  in taxonomy/microbial classification, 117, 117*f*
  turbidimetric tests in, 504
Serotypes, 716
Serovars, 60
Serratia genus/spp., 335*t*, 173*f*, 584, 584*f*
  nosocomial infection caused by, 579*f*
  restriction enzymes produced by, 239, 239*t*
Serum, 443, 502
  for passive immunotherapy. *See* Antiserum
  study of. *See* Serology
Serum hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis, type B
Serum sickness, 502
70S ribosomes. *See* Prokaryotic ribosomes
Severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)/SARS virus, 8*b*, 242, 405, 717*t*, 727, 728*f*, 750*t*
Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), 237, 250, 531, 532*b*, 533*t*
Sewage
  treatment of, 771–774, 772*f*, 773*f*, 774*f*
    disease prevention and, 17, 433
    domestic water and, 782
  water contamination by, 428, 430*f*, 433
Sewer systems, municipal, 772–773, 772*f*
Sex (conjugation) pili, 63, 63*f*, 77*t*, 87*t*, 227, 227*f*, 228*f*
Sexual abuse, gonorrhea in child and, 576
Sexually transmitted infections/diseases. *See also specific disease*
  Chlamydia trachomatis infection, 613, 613*f*
  cytomegalovirus infection, 701
  genital herpes, 694–695, 695*f*, 696, 696–697, 696*t*
  genital warts, 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
  gonorrhea, 575–577, 576*f*, 577*b*, 582*b*
  Haemophilus ducreyi causing, 590
  hepatitis B, 707, 708
  HIV infection/AIDS, 734, 734*f*, 735
  mycoplasma causing, 560
  parasitic, 659*f*
  syphilis, 616–618, 616*f*, 617*f*, 620*b*
  trichomoniasis, 667–668
Sexual reproduction, 57
  in algae, 367, 368, 368*f*

in eukaryotes, 345
in fungi, 361, 361*f*
ascomycetes, 362, 363*f*
zygomycetes, 361, 362*f*
in protozoa, 351, 351*f*
Sexual spores, 4, 361, 361*f*. *See also* Spores
Sheath, of cyanobacteria, 323, 324*f*
Sheep and goat pox (orf), 690
Shell, valence, 29
Shellfish
toxin contamination of, 768, 769*t*
Vibrio contamination of, 624
Shiga-like toxin, *E. coli* O157:H7 producing, 584, 587
Shigella genus/spp., 335*t*, 586–588, 587*f*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
foodborne transmission of, 15*t*, 587, 764*t*
sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
vaccine development and, 588
waterborne transmission of, 587, 769*t*
Shigellosis, 15*t*, 586–588, 587*f*
immunization against, 588
waterborne transmission of, 587, 769*t*
Shine-Dalgarno sequence (ribosome binding site), 211–212, 211*f*
Shingles (herpes zoster), 697–698, 698*f*, 700*b*
vaccine for, 699
Shock
anaphylactic. *See* Anaphylaxis/anaphylactic shock
in non-streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome, 542
septic, 606
in streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome, 545
"Sick building syndrome," 653*b*
Sickle-cell trait, malaria resistance and, 669
Siderophores, 444, 581
Sigma factor, 204, 205, 205*f*, 206*f*
Signs of disease, 414, 414*t*
Silage, fermentation in production of, 757–758, 761*t*
Silent mutations, 217, 218*f*, 219*t*
Silicates, in algal cell wall, 78, 370, 371*t*
Silver, antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
Silver nitrate, 275
Simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV), 730
vaccine development and, 735
Simple microscope, 2*f*, 98
Simple stains, 107–108, 108*f*, 111*t*
Simplexvirus genus/spp., 385*t*, 710*t*. *See also* Herpes infections; *Herpesviridae*
latency/recurrence and, 694, 694*f*
types 1 and 2 (HHV-1/HHV-2), 693, 694–697, 694*f*, 695*f*, 696*f*, 696*t*. *See also* Human herpesvirus(es) 1 and 2
Simulium flies, as disease vectors, 424*t*
Singlet oxygen, 165
Sinusitis
Chlamydophila (Chlamydia) pneumoniae causing, 614
pneumococcal, 549
Prevotella causing, 601
siRNA. *See* Small interfering RNA
SIV (simian immunodeficiency virus), 730
vaccine development and, 735
Skin
diseases/infections of, 182*b*. *See also specific type and under Cutaneous*
acne, 38, 538, 566–567, 567*f*
actinomycosis, 569, 569*f*
fungal (mycoses), 649–651, 650*f*, 650*t*, 651*f*
mycetoma (fungal), 650*t*, 651, 651*f*
mycetoma *(Nocardia)*, 568, 568*f*
staphylococcal, 541, 541*f*
in host defense, 412, 412*f*, 439–440, 439*f*, 440*b*, 441*t*, 458*t*
normal microbiota of, 407, 408*t*
staphylococci, 406, 539, 540, 542
as portal of entry, 412, 412*f*
for parasites, 659*f*
as portal of exit, 421*f*
specimen collection from, 174*t*, 182*b*
structure of, 412, 412*f*, 439–440, 439*f*
Skin tests
for leprosy, 566
for tuberculosis (tuberculin response), 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*
BCG vaccine affecting, 565
for type I hypersensitivity, 519, 519*f*
Skunk(s), rabies and, 740, 740*f*
Slant tubes/slants, 176, 176*f*
SLE. *See* Systemic lupus erythematosus
Sleeping sickness, African, 15*t*, 373, 663–664, 663*f*, 664*b*, 673*t*
Slime layer, 59, 59*f*. *See also* Capsule
of *Rickettsia*, 607
staphylococcal, 540
Slime molds, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
cellular, 355, 356*f*, 357, 358*t*
classification of, 349, 349*f*, 355
plasmodial (acellular), 355, 355–357, 356*f*, 358*t*
Slow sand filters, in water treatment, 769–770
Slow viruses. *See* Prion(s)
Sludge, wastewater treatment and, 772, 772*f*, 773
Slug (pseudoplasmodium), 356*f*, 357
Small interfering RNA (siRNA), 216
Small intestine, normal microbiota of, 408*t*
Smallpox, 8*b*, 689, 690, 690–692, 691*f*, 692*b*
bioterrorism and, 8*b*, 501*b*, 689, 692, 784, 785*t*
Smallpox vaccination, 500*t*, 501*b*, 690–692, 692*b*
history/discovery of, 17, 501*b*, 690
monkeypox prevention and, 693
Smallpox virus (variola), 17, 689, 690–692, 691*f*, 692*b*
bioterrorism and, 8*b*, 501*b*, 689, 692, 784, 785*t*
safe handling of, 263
shape of, 383
size of, 58*f*, 382*f*
Smears, preparation of, 107, 107*f*
Smoking, compromised immunity and, 441, 453*b*
Smooth endoplasmic reticulum, 58*f*, 82, 84*f*, 85*f*
Smuts, 364
Snail(s), in fluke life cycle, 676, 677*f*
Schistosoma, 678, 679b
Snail fever (schistosomiasis), 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
waterborne transmission of, 678, 679, 679*b*, 683*t*, 769*t*
Snapping division, 317, 317*f*
by *Corynebacterium*, 319, 319*f*, 328, 561, 561*f*
Snow, John, 17, 18*f*, 428, 430*f*, 623
Soap, 274, 277*t*
antibacterial, 278*b*
Sodium chloride
in sweat, host defense and, 440
Sodium hypochlorite, antimicrobial action of, 273, 448
Soil
microorganisms living in, 780–781, 780*f*, 781*t*
diseases caused by, 781, 781*t*
as nonliving disease reservoir, 411
Soilborne wheat mosaic virus, 781*t*
Soil microbiology, 780–781, 780*f*, 781*t*
bioremediation in landfills and, 776
Solute(s), in passive transport processes, 68, 69*f*, 70, 70*f*
Solutions, isotonic/hypertonic/hypotonic, 69–70, 70*f*, 170, 269
Solvent(s)
in passive transport processes, 69, 69*f*, 70, 70*f*
water as, 33*f*, 36
Soredia, 365, 366*f*
Sore throat. *See* Pharyngitis
SOS response, in DNA repair, 222
Southern blot, 244–245, 245*f*, 249*t*
Soy sauce, fermentation in production of, 13*t*, 145*f*, 757, 761*t*
Species resistance, 439
Specific epithet, 113
Specificity
in adaptive immunity, 464, 480
antibody structure and, 469, 470*f*
B cell receptor, 468–469, 469*f*
T cell receptor, 473–474, 473*f*
enzyme-substrate, 129, 129*f*
inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
Specimen collection, for culture
clinical sampling, 172, 172–173, 174*t*
environmental sampling, 172
Spectrophotometer, in microbial growth estimation, 187, 188*f*
Spectrum of action, of antimicrobial drug, 293–294, 293*f*, 302–310*t*
Spermatia, 369
Sphaerotilus genus/spp., 332–333, 339*t*
Spherical particles, hepatitis B virus, 707, 708*f*
Spherule, *Coccidioides immitis* forming, 639, 639*f*
Sphingobacteria, 339*t*
Spinal tap, 174*t*, 578
Spindle, 346, 347*f*
Spiral-shaped prokaryotes, 316, 316*f*
Spirilla (spirillum), 316, 316*f*
Spirochaetes (phylum), 320*f*, 615
Spirochete(s), 316, 316*f*, 338, 615–618, 616*f*, 617*f*, 618*f*, 620*b*
endoflagella/axial filaments of, 61, 61*f*, 338, 615
Spirogyra genus/spp., 6*f*, 371*t*
Spiroplasma genus/spp., cytoskeleton of, 75
Spleen, 466*f*, 467
Splenic candidiasis, 643*t*
Spliceosome, 207, 207*f*
Splicing, in transcription, 207, 207*f*
Spongiform encephalopathies, 400, 400*b*, 400*f*
bovine (BSE/mad cow disease), 21*b*, 47, 276, 400
Spontaneous generation (abiogenesis), 7–10, 8*f*, 9*f*, 10*f*
Spontaneous mutations, 218
Sporadic disease, 426, 427*f*
Sporangiophores, 360, 360*f*
Sporangiospores, 360, 360*f*, 361, 362*f*
Sporangium/sporangia, 360, 360*f*
of myxobacteria, 336, 337*f*
of slime mold, 356*f*, 357
of zygomycete, 361, 362*f*
Spores. *See also specific organism and* Endospores
fungal, 632
reproductive, 4, 4*f*, 317, 318*f*
asexual, 4, 360, 360*f*
sexual, 4, 361, 361*f*
Sporogonic phase, in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 669, 669*f*
Sporothrix/Sporothrix schenckii, sporotrichosis caused by, 650*t*, 651
Sporotrichosis, 650*t*, 651, 651*f*
Sporozoa, 352, 668. *See also* Apicomplexans
Sporozoites
in *Cryptosporidium parvum* life cycle, 672
in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 668, 669, 669*f*
in *Toxoplasma* life cycle, 671, 671*f*
Spotted fever
rickettsiosis, 607–608, 608*f*, 611*t*
Rocky Mountain (RMSF), 607–608, 608*f*, 611*t*
ssDNA viruses. *See* Single-stranded DNA viruses
SSPE. *See* Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
ssRNA viruses. *See* Single-stranded RNA viruses
SSSS. *See* Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome
Stab culture, 178
Stachybotrys chartarum, 653*b*
Staining, 105–111, 111*t*, 112*b*
acid-fast stain and, 64, 108–109, 109*f*, 111*t*, 562, 562*f*
differential stains and, 108–110, 109*f*, 110*f*, 111*t*
for electron microscopy, 111
endospore stain and, 109–110, 110*f*, 111*t*
flagellar stain and, 110, 111*f*, 111*t*
fluorescent dyes for, 101, 102*f*
Gram stain and, 15–16, 15*f*, 66, 108, 109*f*, 111*t*
histological, 110
for light microscopy, 105–111, 111*t*
negative (capsule) stain and, 110, 110*f*, 111*t*
principles of, 107
simple stains and, 107–108, 108*f*, 111*t*
special stains and, 110*f*, 110–111*f*
specimen preparation for, 107, 107*f*
Standard precautions, 173
Stanley, Wendell, 381

Staphylococcal intoxication (food poisoning), 541, 764*t*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  incubation period for, 421*t*
Staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome, 541, 541*f*
Staphylococci (arrangement), 64, 64*f*, 318, 318*f*
Staphylococcus genus/spp./staphylococci, 318*f*, 326, 328, 329*t*, 539–543, 539*f*
  capsule of, 59*f*
  as commensal/normal flora, 406, 539, 540, 542
  diseases caused by, 540–543, 541*f*, 542*f*, 543*b*
    diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 542–543
  food intoxication/poisoning caused by, 541, 764*t*
    incubation period for, 421*t*
  pathogenicity/virulence factors of, 539–540, 540*t*
  resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 283, 298*b*, 299, 300, 543, 543*b*
  size of, 58*f*, 539
  in upper respiratory system, 540
Staphylococcus aureus, 15*f*, 108*f*, 283, 318*f*, 328, 539
  culture of, 177, 179*f*
  food intoxication/poisoning caused by, 541, 764*t*
  iron needs of, 444
  in Kelsey-Sykes capacity test, 278
  methicillin-resistant (MRSA), 283, 298*b*, 299, 543, 543*b*
    safe handling of, 263
  osmotic pressure affecting growth of, 170
  resistant strains of, 283, 298*b*, 299, 300, 543, 543*b*
  skin infection caused by, 170, 541, 541*f*
  toxic-shock syndrome caused by, 541–542, 542*f*
  toxins of, 540
    bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  transmission of, 540
  in use-dilution test, 277
  vaccine development and, 543
  vancomycin resistance and, 283, 543
Staphylococcus epidermidis, 539
  as commensal/normal flora, 406, 539, 540, 542
  toxins of, 540
Staphylokinase, as virulence factor, 418, 540, 540*t*
Starch, 42
  floridean, 369
  plant (amylose), 43, 45*f*
Starter cultures, in commercial food/beverage production, 757, 761*t*
-stasis/-static (suffix), 259, 260*t*
Stationary phase, of microbial growth, 183, 183*f*
STDs. *See* Sexually transmitted infections/diseases
Steam, in autoclaving, 265, 266
Steinernema genus/spp., mutualism in, 409*b*
Stellate macrophages (Kupffer cells), 478
Stem cells, 464
  blood, 444, 444*f*, 464
  cytomegalovirus infection of, teratogenic effects of, 701
  in epithelial cell replacement, 441
  in hematopoiesis/hematopoietic, 444, 444*f*, 464
  tissue repair and, 456, 456*f*
Stephanodiscus genus/spp., 371*t*
Stereoisomers, 46, 47*f*
Sterility (infertility), pelvic inflammatory disease and, 576
Sterilization, 174, 259, 260*t*, 264, 271*t*
  with autoclave, 265–266, 265*f*, 271*t*
  commercial, 259, 264
  gas, 276, 277*t*
  indicators of, 266, 266*f*
  ultra-high-temperature, 266, 267*t*, 271*t*
Steroids, 41, 43*f*. *See also* Corticosteroids
  for allergic contact dermatitis, 527
  for asthma, 520
  immunosuppressive actions of, 528, 529*t*
  synthesis of, 153
Sterols
  in eukaryotic membranes, 41, 78
  in mycoplasma membranes, 41, 326, 559
STIs. *See* Sexually transmitted infections/diseases
St. Louis encephalitis, 722, 726*t*
STM. *See* Scanning tunneling microscopy/microscopes
Stomach, specimen collection from, 174*t*
Stomach acid
  bacteria in stomach affected by, 170
  in host defense, 443, 443*t*
    antacids affecting, 38, 39*b*
  ulcers and, 38, 170
Stomach flu. *See* Gastroenteritis
Stramenopila (kingdom), 349, 349*f*, 367, 370, 371, 371*t*
Streak plates, 174–175, 174*f*
Streamers, biofilm, 171, 171*f*
"Strep throat" (streptococcal pharyngitis), 68*b*, 544–545, 544*f*, 717*t*
  rheumatic fever and, 545
Streptobacilli, 319
Streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome (STSS), 545
Streptococci (arrangement), 64, 64*f*, 318, 318*f*
Streptococcus genus/spp./streptococci, 4*f*, 318*f*, 319, 326, 327–328, 329*t*, 543–549
  alpha-hemolytic (viridans), 547, 547*f*
  beta-hemolytic, 544, 546, 547
  fermentation products of, 145*f*, 761*t*
    vegetable fermentation and, 757
  glomerulonephritis after infection with, 545–546
  Lancefield groups in classification of, 543, 550*t*. *See also specific type under Group*
  pharyngitis caused by, 68*b*, 544–545, 544*f*, 717*t*
    rheumatic fever and, 545
  puerperal fever caused by, 16, 546
  resistant/multiple-drug-resistant strains of, 300, 327–328
  in tooth decay, 172
  in yogurt production, 758, 761*t*
Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcus), 15*t*, 318*f*, 547–549, 547*f*, 548*b*, 550*t*
  capsules of, 59, 548, 548*b*
  culture of, 177, 178*f*
  diseases caused by, 548–549, 548*b*, 550*t*
    pneumonia, 15*t*, 59, 547, 548–549
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 548*b*, 549
  microbial genetics research and, 19
  transformation of, 225–226, 225*f*
  transmission of, 548
Streptococcus pyogenes (group A streptococcus), 318*f*, 543–546, 550*t*
  autoimmunity and, 530
  culture of, 177, 178*f*
  diseases caused by, 544–546, 544*f*, 545*f*, 550*t*
    diagnosis/treatment/prevention of, 546
    necrotizing fasciitis/"flesh-eating disease," 118*b*, 328, 545, 545*f*
    pharyngitis, 68*b*, 544–545, 544*f*, 717*t*
      rheumatic fever and, 545
    toxic-shock syndrome (STSS), 545
  immunochromatographic assays in identification of, 510, 510*f*
  transmission of, 544
  virulence factors of, 420, 544
Streptogramins, 304*t*
  mechanism of action of, 288, 304*t*
Streptokinase(s), 544
  microbial production of, 765, 768*t*
  as virulence factor, 418
    for group A streptococci, 544
Streptolysins, 544
Streptomyces genus/spp., 320*f*, 329*t*, 330
  antimicrobials produced by, 285, 285*b*, 285*t*, 303*t*, 330, 767
Streptomycin, 303*t*
  mechanism of action of, 288, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 303*t*
  spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 303*t*
Strip-mining, acid mine drainage and, 776
Strobila, 674, 674*f*
Stroma, chloroplast, 86, 86*f*, 148
Stromatolites, 104*b*
STSS. *See* Streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome
Subacute disease, definition of, 424, 425*t*
Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE), 737
Subclinical infection, 414
Subcutaneous mycoses, 640, 640*f*, 649–651, 650*f*, 650*t*, 651*f*
Sublimation, in lyophilization, 267
Subsoil, 780, 780*f*
Subspecies, 113
Substitutions (mutation), 217–218, 219*t*
Substrate, 127
  concentration of, enzyme activity and, 131, 131*f*
  enzyme specificity and, 129, 129*f*
    inhibition and, 132, 132*f*
Substrate-level phosphorylation, 127, 134, 136*f*, 145*t*, 151*t*
  in glycolysis, 134, 135*f*, 136*f*
  in Krebs cycle, 136, 137*f*
Subunit vaccines, 250, 497
Sudan black dye, 107
Sugars. *See also* Carbohydrate(s)
  in food preservation/microbial control, 170, 269, 763
  simple (monosaccharides), 42–43, 43*f*
Suicide, cell (programmed). *See* Apoptosis
Sulfanilamide, 21, 285, 291*f*, 305*t*, 310*t*
  competitive inhibition/mechanism of action and, 132, 290
Sulfhydryl group, 40*t*
Sulfur, 28*t*, 30*f*
  acid mine drainage and, 332, 776
  for microbial growth, 167
  recycling of, 20, 779, 779*f*
Sulfur bacteria
  colorless *(Thiobacillus)*, 332, 339*t*, 779
  green, 163, 320*f*, 323, 324, 325*t*, 779
  purple, 323, 324, 324*f*, 325*t*, 333, 334*f*, 339*t*, 779
  in sulfur cycle, 779
Superbugs, 283, 300. *See also* Multiple-drug-resistant pathogens
Supercoils, in DNA replication, 202
Superficial mycoses, 648–649, 648*t*
Superinfections, 430–431. *See also* Opportunistic pathogens
  antimicrobial therapy and, 294, 430–431
Superoxide dismutases, 165
Superoxide radicals, 165, 448
Suppressor T cells. *See* Regulatory T cells
Surfactants, 274, 274*f*
Surveillance, bioterrorism defense and, 785
Susceptibility, 262, 262*f*
  diffusion susceptibility tests in determination of, 294, 294*f*, 296*b*
Sushi, anisakids transmitted in, 269*b*
Svedberg (S), 74
"Swamp gas," 322
Swarmer cell, 331, 333*b*
Sweat/sweat glands, 412*f*
  in host defense, 440
Sweetener, artificial, microbial production of, 13*t*
Swelling, in inflammation, 454
Swimmer's itch, 679
"Swine flu." *See* H1N1 influenza
Symbiosis/symbiotic relationships, 170, 406–409, 406*f*, 407*f*, 407*t*, 408*t*, 409*b*
  nitrogen fixers and, 779
Symports, 71, 71*f*
Synapses, immunological, 481, 481*f*
  T cell regulation in, 483
  T helper cell activation/cloning and, 484–486
Synaptic cleft, botulism toxins affecting, 554, 554*f*
Syncytia
  herpes infection and, 696
  HIV infection and, 735
  paramyxovirus infection and, 736
  respiratory syncytial virus infection and, 738, 739*f*

Syndrome
AIDS as, 532–533, 729
definition of, 414
Synergistic relationship/synergism, 170
resistance and, 300, 301*f*
Synthesis
in animal virus replication, 391–392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
in bacteriophage replication, 386, 387*f*
in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 732
Synthetic antimicrobials, 276, 277*t*, 285. *See also* Antibiotics; Antimicrobial agents
Synthetic gene, 238–239
Synthetic (defined) media, 176, 176*t*
Synthetic nucleic acids, in recombinant DNA technology, 238–239
Syphilis, 338, 616–618, 616*f*, 617*f*, 620*b*. *See also* *Treponema pallidum pallidum*
congenital, 617
incubation period for, 421*t*
transplacental transmission of, 413*t*, 617
Systemic infection
aspergillosis, 644, 644*b*, 645
definition of, 425*t*
fungal
opportunistic fungi causing, 641–647
pathogenic fungi causing, 636–640, 636*f*
histoplasmosis, 637
mycotic, 636
opportunistic fungi causing, 641–647
pathogenic fungi causing, 636–640, 636*f*
staphylococcal, 541–542, 542*f*
Systemic lupus erythematosus, 525–526, 525*f*

T. *See* Thymine
T4 (type 4) bacteriophage, 382*f*, 384*f*
replication of, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*
Taenia genus/spp., 658, 675, 683*t*
Tagged antibody tests, 506–510, 507*f*, 508*f*, 509*f*, 511*t*. *See also specific type*
Tampon use, toxic-shock syndrome and, 542, 542*f*
Tannic acid, in flagellar staining, 110
Tapeworms (cestodes), 5, 410*t*, 658, 674, 674–676, 674*f*, 675*f*, 676*f*, 683*t*
beef *(Taenia saginata),* 675, 683*t*
dog *(Echinococcus granulosus),* 675–676, 676*f*, 683*t*
life cycle of, 675, 675*f*
pork *(Taenia solium),* 658, 675, 683*t*
Taq polymerase, 201*b*
Taxa, 57, 112, 113, 319, 320*f*. *See also* Taxonomy/microbial classification
Taxis, 62
Taxol, microbial production of, 756, 767*t*, 768*t*
Taxonomy/microbial classification, 18*f*, 112, 319, 320*f*
bacterial classification and. *See* Bacteria, classification/identification of
biochemical tests in, 116–117, 116*f*, 117*f*
categories in, 112–115, 114*f*
eukaryotic classification and. *See* Eukaryotes/eukaryotic cells, classification of
evolution/nucleotide sequencing and, 20, 113, 115, 116, 118–119, 167*b*, 319, 320*f*
historical basis of, 3, 112–115, 114*f*
identifying characteristics in, 115–119, 116*f*, 117*f*, 118*f*, 119*f*
keys, 119, 119*f*
Linnaean, 3, 18*f*, 112–115, 114*f*, 348–349, 349*f*
morphology/physical characteristics in, 116
phage typing in, 112*b*, 118, 118*f*
serological tests in, 117, 117*f*
viral classification and. *See* Viruses, classification of
TB. *See* Tuberculosis
Tc. *See* Cytotoxic T cells
TCA cycle. *See* Tricarboxylic acid (TCA/Krebs) cycle
T-cell lymphocytic leukemia, adult acute, HTLV-1 causing, 729
T cell receptor (TCR), 473–474, 473*f*
in antibody immune responses, 484, 485*f*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
T cells. *See* T lymphocytes
T cell therapy, 480, 482*b*
TCR. *See* T cell receptor
Tdap vaccine, 499*f*, 562, 594
T-dependent antigens, 484, 485*f*
processing of, 479–480, 479*f*, 480*f*
Td vaccine, 499*f*, 500*t*
Tears
in host defense, 442, 442*f*
as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Teeth
decay of (dental caries), 59, 172, 173*b*
viridans streptococci causing, 547, 547*f*
Streptococcus mutans growth on, 172
Teichoic acids, in Gram-positive cell walls, 64, 65*f*
Teleomorph, 633
Telophase, 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
TEM. *See* Transmission electron microscopy/microscopes
Temperate phages, 388, 389*f*. *See also* Lysogeny/lysogenic replication cycle
Temperature
hypothalamus in regulation of, 456–457, 457*f*
enzymatic activity affected by, 130, 131*f*
during food processing/storage, spoilage and, 763–764, 763*t*
microbial growth affected by, 167*b*, 168–169, 168*f*, 169*f*
soil, microbial population affected by, 780
thermophiles and, 167*b*, 169, 169*f*, 321
terato- (prefix), 415*t*
Teratogenicity, of cytomegalovirus, 701
Termination
transcription, 205*f*, 206–207
translation, 213
Terminator sequence, 205*f*, 206
Termites, protozoa *(Trichonympha)* in, 352, 406, 406*f*
Tertiary structure of protein, 47–48, 48*f*
Tertiary syphilis, 617, 617*f*
Tetanospasmin (tetanus toxin), 555–556
Tetanus, 15*t*, 326, 555, 556
immunization against, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 556
memory cells as basis of, 486, 487*f*
incubation period for, 421*t*, 556
soilborne transmission of, 781*t*
Tetracyclines, 285*b*, 304*t*
fetal toxicity of, 297, 297*f*
mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 289*f*, 304*t*
microbial production of, 285*b*, 285*t*
spectrum of action of, 293*f*, 294, 304*t*
Tetrads (arrangement), 318, 318*f*
Tetrads (chromosomal), 346, 347*f*, 350*t*
Tetrahydrofolate/tetrahydrofolic acid (THF), 129*t*
antimicrobials affecting, 290, 291*f*
Th1 cells. *See* Helper T lymphocytes (Th cells), type 1
Th2 cells. *See* Helper T lymphocytes (Th cells), type 2
Thallus/thalli
algal, 367
fungal, 358, 359*f*, 361
Thayer-Martin medium, modified, for *Neisseria* culture, 575
T-helper (Th) cells. *See* Helper T lymphocytes
Theories/laws, in scientific method, 10, 10*f*
Therapeutic index, 297
Thermal death point, 264, 264*f*
Thermal death time, 264, 264*f*
Thermocycler, for polymerase chain reaction, 243
Thermoduric organisms, 169, 266
Thermophiles/thermophilic organisms, 167*b*, 169, 169*f*, 172*b*, 266, 320*f*, 321–322, 321*f*
extreme (hyperthermophiles), 130, 169, 169*f*, 321, 321*f*
commercial sterilization and, 259, 264
in polymerase chain reaction, 201*b*, 243, 321–322
Thermoplasma acidophilum, 76*f*
Thermus genus/spp., 127, 201*b*, 243
Thimerosal, 275
Thiobacillus genus/spp., 332, 339*t*
pH affected by, 38
in sulfur cycle, 332, 779
acid mine drainage and, 332, 776
Third-generation drugs, 301
Three-day measles. *See* Rubella
Three prime (3′) end, of nucleic acid, 49, 50*f*, 194, 195*f*
Thrush (oropharyngeal candidiasis), 418*f*, 642, 642*f*, 643, 643*t*
antimicrobial drug use and, 297
in HIV infection/AIDS, 643, 742*b*
Thylakoids, 86, 86*f*, 148, 149*f*, 150*f*
Thylakoid space, 86, 86*f*, 148
Thymine (T), 49, 49*f*, 50, 50*f*, 194
Thymine dimer, ultraviolet light causing, 219*f*
Thymus, 465, 466*f*
absence of, in DiGeorge syndrome, 531
clonal deletion of T cells in, 476, 476*f*
T lymphocyte maturation in, 464, 473, 476, 476*f*
Thyroid hormone, autoimmunity affecting production of, 531
TI. *See* Therapeutic index
Tick(s)
as disease vectors, 372, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682
for arboviruses, 722, 726*t*
for ehrlichiosis and anaplasmosis, 610, 611*t*
for epidemic relapsing fever *(Borrelia recurrentis),* 621
for Lyme disease *(Borrelia burgdorferi),* 618, 619, 619*f*, 620*f*, 621
for rickettsial diseases, 608, 609*b*, 611*t*
for Rocky Mountain spotted fever, 608, 611*t*
for tularemia, 598
taxonomic classification of, 114*f*
Tick fever (tularemia), 418*f*, 598–599, 598*b*
bioterrorism and, 599, 785*t*
Tincture of iodine, antimicrobial action of, 273
T-independent antibody immunity, 483–484, 484*f*
T-independent antigens, 483, 484*f*
Tinea (dermatophytoses), 410*t*, 648–649, 648*t*, 649*b*
Tissue, diseased, specimen collection from, 174*t*
Tissue cultures. *See* Cell cultures
Tissue plasminogen activating factor, recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Tissue repair, 456, 456*f*
Tissue typing, prevention of graft rejection and, 528
Titer, antibody, 505, 505*f*
booster immunization and, 496
Titration, 505, 505*f*
TLRs. *See* Toll-like receptors
T lymphocytes/T cells, 464, 473–475, 475*b*, 475*t*
in allergic contact dermatitis, 526–527
cancer-fighting, 480, 482*b*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 464, 480–482, 481*f*
clonal deletion of, 476, 476*f*
cytotoxic, 474, 475*t*. *See also* Cytotoxic T cells
activation/function of, 480–482, 481*f*
deficient, 531, 533*t*
helper, 474–475, 475*b*, 475*t*, 481, 481*f*. *See also* Helper T lymphocytes
in HIV infection/AIDS, 380, 475*b*, 533, 729, 730*b*
attachment and, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
course of infection and, 733, 733*f*
memory, 481, 481*f*, 482
tuberculin response mediated by, 526
receptors on, 473–474, 473*f*
in cell-mediated immune responses, 481, 481*f*
regulation of, 483
regulatory (Tr cells/suppressor T cells), 475, 475*t*, 483
TMA. *See* Trimethylamine
TMV. *See Tobamovirus* (tobacco mosaic virus)
TNF. *See* Tumor necrosis factor
Toadstools, 364, 365*f*
Tobacco mosaic disease, 14–15, 15*t*, 381, 381*f*
Tobamovirus (tobacco mosaic virus), 15, 15*t*, 379*f*, 381, 381*f*, 383*f*
size of, 382*f*
soilborne transmission of, 781*t*

Subject Index

Togaviridae (togaviruses), 385*t*, 721–722, 721*f*, 726*t*, 750*t*
encephalitis caused by, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
Tolerance, to autoantigens. *See* Self-tolerance
Toll-like receptors (TLRs), 448–449, 449*t*, 453*b*
interferons and, 449
Tonsils, 466*f*, 467
Tooth decay (dental caries), 59, 172, 173*b*
viridans streptococci causing, 547, 547*f*
Topoisomerase, 202. *See also* Gyrase/DNA gyrase
Topsoil, 780, 780*f*
Torulopsis etchellsii, vegetable fermentation and, 761*t*
Total magnification, 98–100
tox- (prefix), 415*t*
Toxemia (blood poisoning), 418. *See also* Septicemia
in necrotizing fasciitis, 545
Toxicity, antimicrobial drug, 284*b*, 297, 297*f*
selective, 286, 297
Toxicodendron radicans (poison ivy), allergic reaction to, 515, 526, 527*f*
Toxicoses (poisonings)
food poisoning, 423, 423*f*, 425*t*, 433, 764, 764*t*. *See also* Foodborne illnesses
fungi causing, 634, 651–652, 652
mushroom poisoning, 364, 652
water, 769*t*. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
Toxic-shock syndrome
non-streptococcal (TSS), 542, 542*f*
streptococcal (STSS), 545
Toxins, 418, 538. *See also specific type and* Endotoxin; Exotoxins
adenylate cyclase
Bordetella pertussis pathogenicity and, 593
Vibrio cholerae pathogenicity and, 623, 624*f*
anthrax, 551
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
botulism/botulinum. *See* Toxins, clostridial/botulism/botulinum
Bt, 252, 327, 327*f*, 767, 768*t*
cholera, 623, 624*f*
clostridial/botulism/botulinum, 326, 327*b*, 552, 553, 554, 554*f*, 555*b*, 764*t*
bioterrorism and, 785*t*
dermonecrotic, 593
diphtheria, 561
food poisoning caused by, 764, 764*t*. *See also* Foodborne illnesses
fungal, 651–652, 652
neurologic diseases caused by. *See* Neurotoxins
pertussis, 593
of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa,* 596
pyrogenic (erythrogenic), 457, 544, 545
Shiga, 587
Shiga-like, 584
staphylococcal, 540
streptococcal, 544
tetanus. *See* Tetanospasmin
as virulence factors, 418, 419*f*
waterborne illnesses and, 769*t*. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
Toxoid vaccines, 418, 497
diphtheria, 562
tetanus, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 556
immunological memory and, 486, 487*f*
Toxoplasma genus/spp., 354, 358*t*, 670–672, 671*f*, 673*t*, 764*t*
Trachea, in host defense, 441, 441*f*
Tracheal cytotoxin, 593
Trachoma, 613–614, 614, 614*f*
Transaldolase, in pentose phosphate pathway, A-8
Transamination, 155, 155*f*
Transcription, 203, 203*f*, 204–207, 205*f*, 206*f*, 207*f*, 213*t*, 237
antimicrobials affecting, 291–293, 292*f*
in bacteria, 204–207, 205*f*, 206*f*
concurrent, 206, 206*f*
DNA microarrays in monitoring of, 245
in eukaryotes, 207, 207*f*
operons in regulation of, 214–216, 214*f*, 215*f*, 216*f*, 216*t*
reverse, 238, 728, 728*f*. *See also* Reverse transcriptase
Transcription factors, 207
Transducing phages, 226, 226*f*
Transduction, 226, 226*f*, 229*t*
bacteriophage replication and, 226, 226*f*, 386, 387*f*
Transferases, 128, 128*t*
Transfer (exchange) reactions, 36
Transferrin, in host defense, 443*t*, 444
Transfer RNA (tRNA), 210, 210*f*
in HIV replication, 732
ribosomal binding sites for, 211, 211*f*
antimicrobials affecting, 288, 289*f*
in transcription, 204
in translation, 210, 210*f*, 211–212, 211*f*, 212*f*
Transformation, 225–226, 225*f*, 229*t*
antimicrobial resistance and, 300
Transfusion
ABO system/transfusion reactions and, 521–522, 521*f*, 522*t*
hepatitis C virus transmitted by, 727
Transgenic organisms, in agricultural microbiology, 251
ethical/safety issues and, 253
Transient microbiota, 407. *See also* Normal microbiota
Translation, 203, 203*f*, 207–213, 213*t*
antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 288–289, 289*f*
in bacteria, 207–213
in eukaryotes, 213
events in, 211–213, 211*f*, 212*f*, 213*f*
genetic code and, 208–209, 208*f*, 209*t*
participants in, 209–211, 209*f*, 210*f*, 211*f*
RNA in control of, 216–217, 217*b*
Translocation, group, 70, 71, 71*f*, 72*t*
Transmission electron microscopy/microscopes, 103, 103*f*, 106*t*
resolving power of, 97*f*
staining for, 111
Transovarian transmission
in Rocky Mountain spotted fever *(Rickettsia rickettsii),* 608
in scrub typhus *(Orientia),* 610
Transplacental transmission, 412, 412*f*, 413*t*
of coxsackie B virus, 720
of cytomegalovirus, 701
of herpesvirus, 695
of HIV, 413*t*, 734
ART during pregnancy and, 735
of rubella, 413*t*, 726
of syphilis, 413*t*, 617
of toxoplasmosis, 413*t*, 670, 671, 671–672
Transplantation, rejection and, 527, 527*f*
donor-recipient matching/tissue typing and, 528
immunosuppressive drugs and, 528–529, 529*t*
MHC antigen discovery and, 478
Transportation proteins, 46
Transport media, 173, 179–180
Transport processes
active, 67, 70–71, 71*f*, 72*t*
in bacterial cells, 66–71, 67*f*, 68*b*, 69*f*, 70*f*, 71*f*, 72*t*
passive, 67, 68–70, 69*f*, 70*f*, 72*t*
Transport vesicles, 58*f*, 85*f*
Transposons, 229–230, 229*f*, 230*f*
complex, 230, 230*f*
as genetic vectors, 241, 249*t*
simple (insertion sequences), 229–230, 230*f*
Tr cells. *See* Regulatory T cells
Trebouxia genus/spp., 369, 371*t*
Trematodes (flukes), 674, 676–679, 676*f*, 677*f*, 678*b*, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
blood (*Schistosoma* species), 678–679, 678*f*, 679*b*, 683*t*
liver (*Fasciola* species), 410*t*, 677–678, 678*b*, 683*t*
Trench fever, 591
Treponema genus/spp., 338, 339*t*, 615–618, 616*f*, 617*f*, 618*f*, 620*b*
Triatoma genus/spp. (kissing bugs), as disease vectors, 372, 373, 424*t*
for Chagas' disease, 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Tricarboxylic acid (TCA/Krebs) cycle, 133, 134*f*, 136, 137*f*, 142*t*, 157*f*, A-10
Trichomonas/Trichomonas vaginalis, 352, 358*t*, 667–668, 668*f*, 673*t*
Trichonympha genus/spp., 352, *352f, 406f*
Trichophyton genus/spp., 410*t*, 648, 648*t*
Trichosporon beigelii, 647
Trickle filter system, in wastewater treatment, 772*f*, 773
Trigeminal nerve ganglion, latent herpes infection of, 694, 694*f*
tRNA. *See* Transfer RNA
Trophozoites, 351, 659
in *Acanthamoeba* infection, 661
in *Balantidium coli* infection, 660
in *Entamoeba histolytica* infection, 660
in *Giardia* infection, 666, 667, 667*f*
in *Naegleria* infection, 661
in *Plasmodium* infection, 668, 669*f*, 670, 670*f*
susceptibility of, 262*f*
in *Trichomonas* infection, 667, 668*f*
True (bloodsucking) bugs, as disease vectors, 372, 373*f*, 424*t*, 682. *See also specific type*
in Chagas' disease *(Trypanosoma cruzi),* 373, 662, 662*f*, 673*t*
Truffles, 357, 364, 367*b*
Trypanosoma genus/spp., 353, 353*f*, 358*t*, 661, 663–664, 664*f*, 673*t*
Trypomastigotes
in *Trypanosoma brucei* life cycle, 663, 663*f*, 664
in *Trypanosoma cruzi* life cycle, 662, 662*f*, 663*f*
Trypticase soy agar, 177
Tryptophan auxotroph, identification of, 222–223, 223*f*
Tryptophan *(trp)* operon, 215–216, 216*f*
Tsetse *(Glossina)* flies, as disease vectors, 372, 373, 373*f*, 424*t*
for African sleeping sickness, 373, 663, 663*f*, 673*t*
TSS. *See* Non-streptococcal toxic-shock syndrome
Tsutsugamushi fever (scrub typhus), 610, 611*b*, 611*t*
Tubercles, 562, 563*f*, 564, 564*f*
Tuberculin skin test/tuberculin response, 526, 526*f*, 564, 564*f*
BCG vaccine affecting, 565
Tuberculoid leprosy, 565
Tuberculosis, 14, 329, 562, 562–565, 562*f*, 563*f*, 564*f*, 569*b*. *See also Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
discovery of cause of, 14
disseminated, 564
extensively drug-resistant (XDR), 565
HIV infection/AIDS and, 565, 566
immunization against (BCG vaccine), 500*t*, 565
primary, 562–564, 563*f*
reemergence of, 8*b*
resistant/multiple-drug-resistant, 220, 300, 301*b*, 565
safe handling of bacteria causing, 263
secondary/reactivated, 563*f*, 564
transmission of, 422, 423*b*, 564, 569*b*
Tuber genus/spp., 364, 366*t*, 367*b*
Tubulin microtubules
in centrioles, 81, 82*f*
in cilia, 80, 80*f*
in cytoskeleton, 81, 81*f*
in flagellum, 79
griseofulvin mechanism of action and, 635
Tularemia (rabbit fever), 418*f*, 598–599, 598*b*
bioterrorism and, 599, 785*t*
Tumbles, in bacterial motility, 62, 62*f*
Listeria using, 559
Tumor, 396, 415*t*. *See also* Cancer; Neoplasia
Tumor necrosis factor, 477, 477*t*
recombinant DNA in production of, 767*t*
Tunneling current, 105
Turbidimitry, 504

Subject Index

Turbidity, in microbial growth estimation, 186–187, 188*f*
Turnover rate, in carbon cycle, 777
Type III secretion system, of Enterobacteriaceae, 581, 581*f*
  E. coli O157:H7, 584
  Salmonella, 586
  Yersinia, 588
Typhoid fever, 15*t*, 586, 587*f*, 589*b*
  carriers of, 411*b*, 586, 589*b*
  immunization against, 500*t*, 586
  waterborne transmission of, 411*b*, 586, 769*t*
"Typhoid Mary," 589*b*
Typhus, 373, 410*t*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  epidemic (louse-borne), 608–609, 611*t*
  murine (endemic), 609, 611*t*
  scrub, 610, 611*b*, 611*t*

U. *See* Uracil
Ubiquinones, in electron transport chains, 139*f*, 140
Ulcers
  gastric, 22*b*, 38, 170
  in gastrointestinal zygomycosis, 646
  genital, herpesvirus. *See* Genital herpes
  peptic
    formation of, 626, 627*f*
    Helicobacter pylori infection and, 625–627, 626*b*, 627*f*
Ultra-high-temperature pasteurization, 265*f*, 266, 267*t*
Ultra-high-temperature sterilization, 266, 267*t*, 271*t*
Ultramicrotome, 103
Ultrastructure, 103
Ultraviolet light. *See also* Light
  fluorescent/confocal microscopes using, 100, 101, 102
  in microbial control, 270–271, 271*t*
    food preservation and, 763
    water treatment and, 271, 770, 770*f*
  mutagenic effects of, 219, 219*f*
    DNA repair and, 220–221, 221*f*
Ulva genus/spp., alternation of generations in, 368*f*
Uncoating
  in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
  antiviral drugs affecting, 306*t*
  in HIV replication, 731, 731*f*, 732, 732*f*
Undulant fever (brucellosis), 15*t*, 331, 592, 592*f*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Uniports, 71, 71*f*
Ureaplasma genus/spp., 559, 560. *See also Mycoplasma* genus/spp./mycoplasmas
Urease
  Helicobacter pylori producing, 625, 626, 626*b*
  Proteus producing, 585
Urethra
  normal microbiota of, 408*t*
  as portal of entry, 412*f*
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Urinary system
  in host defense, 443*t*
  normal microbiota of, 408*t*
Urinary tract infections
  candidal, 643*t*
  chlamydial infection, 613
  Enterobacteriaceae causing, 590*f*
  Escherichia coli causing, 583, 590*f*
  gonorrhea, 576, 582*b*
  Morganella/Providencia/Edwardsiella causing, 585, 590*f*
  nongonococcal (NGU)
    Chlamydia trachomatis causing, 613
    mycoplasmas causing, 560
  Proteus causing, 585, 590*f*
Urine
  in host defense, 443*t*
  leptospirosis transmission via, 622
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Urine specimen, collection of, 174*t*
Urticaria, in type I (immediate) hypersensitivity, 519, 519*f*
Urushiol, allergic reaction to (poison ivy), 515, 526, 527*f*
Use-dilution test, 277
UTIs. *See* Urinary tract infections
UV light. *See* Ultraviolet light

Vaccination, 17, 20, 495. *See also* Immunization; Vaccines
Vaccine-preventable disease, 495
Vaccines, 17, 20, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*. *See also specific type and specific organism or disease*
  artificially acquired immunity and, 488, 489*t*, 495, 496–501, 496*f*, 500*t*, 501*b*, 502*f*
  attenuated (live), 496–497
    recombinant, 497, 497*f*
    residual virulence and, 497, 501
    safety of, 497, 501
  CDC recommendations for, 499–500, 499*f*
  combination, 497
  edible, 250, 251*b*
  egg cultures for preparation of, 397, 499
  history/discovery of, 17, 495, 496*b*, 496*f*
  inactivated (killed), 497
    adjuvants for, 497
  manufacture of, 499
  recombinant DNA technology in production of, 249–250, 251*b*, 497–499, 498*f*
  safety of, 497, 500–501, 501*b*
  subunit, 250, 497
  thimerosal in, 275
  toxoid, 418, 497
    tetanus, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 556
      immunological memory and, 486, 487*f*
  types of, 496–499
  whole agent, 497
Vaccinia, 495
  smallpox vaccine and, 17, 495, 500*t*, 501*b*, 691
Vacuoles, 83*t*, 84, 85*f*
  contractile, in protozoa, 350, 350*f*
Vacuum filtration, in microbial control, 268, 268*f*
Vagina
  candidiasis in, 294, 297, 418*f*, 642, 643*t*
    antimicrobial therapy and, 294, 297
  normal microbiota of, 408*t*
  pH of, microbial growth and, 169–170
  as portal of entry, 412*f*
  as portal of exit, 421*f*, 422
Vaginosis, *Trichomonas* causing, 667–668, 673*t*
Valence, definition of, 29
Vancomycin, 288, 303*t*
  enterococcal resistance and, 268*f*, 550
  mechanism of action of, 286*f*, 288, 303*t*
  microbial production of, 285*t*, 288, 303*t*
  Staphylococcus aureus resistance and, 283, 543
Variable region
  immunoglobulin/B cell receptor/antibody, 468, 469, 469*f*, 470*f*, 472*b*
  T cell receptor, 473, 473*f*
Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 21*b*, 47, 276, 400, 400*b*
Varicella (chickenpox), 697, 697*f*, 698
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*
    shingles and, 698
Varicella-zoster virus (VZV), 697–699, 697*f*, 698*f*
  immunization against, 499*f*, 500*t*, 698–699
    shingles and, 698
  latency/recurrent infection and, 697–698, 698*f*
Varicellovirus genus/spp., 693, 698*f*, 710*t*. *See also* Varicella-zoster virus
Variola (smallpox) virus, 17, 689, 690–692, 691*f*, 692*b*
  bioterrorism and, 8*b*, 501*b*, 689, 692, 784, 785*t*
  safe handling of, 263
  shape of, 383
  size of, 58*f*, 382*f*
  vaccination against. *See* Smallpox vaccination
Variolation, 495
Vascular system. *See* Blood vessels
Vasodilation, in inflammation, 454–455, 454*f*, 455*f*, 456*f*, 457*t*
vCJD. *See* Variant Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
Vectors
  in disease transmission, 423–424, 424*t*, 425*t*, 658, 659*f*. *See also specific disease and specific vector*
    arthropod, 372–373, 373*f*, 423–424, 424*t*, 658, 659*f*, 682, 721–722, 722, 723*f*
    public health measures in control of, 433
  genetic (recombinant), 241, 241*f*, 249*t*
VEE. *See* Venezuelan equine encephalitis
Vegetables, fermented, 757–758, 761*t*
Vegetative cells, 73, 316, 316*f*
Vehicle transmission of disease, 422–423, 423*b*, 423*f*, 425*t*
Venereal diseases. *See* Sexually transmitted infections/diseases
Venezuelan equine encephalitis (VEE), 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
Vertical gene transfer, 225
Vesicle(s), 83*t*, 84, 85*f*
  digestive (phagolysosomes), 85*f*, 447, 447*f*
  food (phagosome), 78, 85*f*, 447*f*
  gas, 72
  secretory, 58*f*, 84, 85*f*
  transport, 58*f*, 85*f*
Vesicle (skin lesion), 690, 691*f*, 697, 697*f*
Viable plate counts, 185, 186*f*
Vi antigens, 580, 581*f*
Vibrio(s), 316, 316*f*, 335*t*, 622–628
Vibrio cholerae, 622*f*, 623–624, 623*f*, 624*f*. *See also* Cholera
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  chromosomes of, 72
  culturing, 177, 624
  immunization against, 624
  pH range tolerated by, 170
  strain O1 El Tor, 623, 623*f*, 624
  strain O139 Bengal, 623, 624
  waterborne transmission of, 17, 428, 430*f*, 623, 624, 769*t*
Vibrio parahaemolyticus, 624
Vibrio vulnificus, 204*b*, 606, 624, 764*t*
  antacids affecting, 39*b*
Vinegar (acetic acid), microbial production of, 13*t*, 146, 331, 760, 761*t*, 766
Viral envelope, 379, 383, 384*f*. *See also* Envelope, viral
Viral hemagglutination, 506, 511*t*
Viral hemorrhagic fevers, 715, 741–742, 741*f*, 742*f*. *See also* Hemorrhagic fevers
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
Viral hepatitis. *See* Hepatitis
Viral meningitis, coxsackieviruses causing, 720
Viral neutralization, 506, 511*t*
Viral pneumonia, manifestations of, 717*t*
Viral proteins, antiviral drugs affecting, 307*t*
Viral replication, 386–395, 395*t*
  of animal viruses, 389–395, 390*b*, 391*f*, 393*f*, 393*t*, 394*b*, 394*f*
    assembly and release in, 392–395, 393*f*, 394*f*, 395*t*
    attachment in, 391, 395*t*
      antimicrobials affecting, 286, 286*f*, 293, 306*t*
    entry and uncoating in, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
    persistent infection and, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
    synthesis in, 391–392, 393*f*, 393*t*, 395*t*
  of bacteriophages, 226, 226*f*, 395*t*
    lysogenic, 388, 389*f*
    lytic, 386, 386–388, 387*f*, 388*f*, 390*b*
Viremia, 700
  in arboviral infection, 722
  in bunyavirus infection, 747
  in Epstein-Barr virus infection, 700
  in mumps, 738

Viridans streptococci, 547, 547*f*
Virion(s), 379, 379*f*. *See also* Viruses
  enveloped, 379, 383, 384*f*. *See also* Envelope, viral
  nonenveloped (naked), 383. *See also* Nonenveloped (naked) viruses/virions
  shapes of, 381–383, 383*f*, 384*f*
Viroid(s), 378, 398, 399*f*, 401*t*
  bacteria/viruses/prions compared with, 401*t*
Viroidlike agents, 398
Virucides, 259. *See also* Antiviral drugs
Virulence, 416–420, 418*f*, 419*f*, 420*t*. *See also specific organism*
  attenuation of for vaccines, 496–497
    recombinant DNA technology and, 497, 498*f*
  residual, vaccine safety and, 497, 501
Virulence plasmids, 196
Viruses, 5–6, 6*f*, 15, 268, 378, 379, 379–398, 385*t*, 401*t*, 615*t*. *See also specific type and under Viral*
  in bacterial identification/classification, 112*b*
  bacteria/viroids/prions compared with, 401*t*
  beneficial/industrial uses of, 378, 382*b*
  bioterrorism and, recombinant genetic technology in creation of, 786, 786*b*
  in cancer, 395–396, 396*f*, 728, 728–729, 729*f*
    HIV infection/AIDS and, 729*t*
  capsids of, 379, 379*f*, 381, 750*t*
  characteristics of, 379–386, 379*f*, 385*t*
  culturing, 396–398, 397*f*, 398*f*
    animal cultures for, 180, 397
    bacteria for, 397, 397*f*
    cell/tissue cultures for, 180, 397–398, 398*f*
    embryonated chicken eggs for, 397, 397*f*, 499
    plants for, 397
    for vaccines, 499
  discovery of, 15
  DNA, 380, 385*t*, 689–714, 710*t*
  enveloped, 379, 383, 384*f*. *See also* Envelope, viral
    budding in release and, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
    entry of host cell and, 391, 391*f*
    persistent infections caused by, 394, 394*f*, 395*t*
    susceptibility of, 261, 262, 262*f*
  filtration in control of, 268
  fungal, 380
  genetic material of, 379–380, 379*f*, 380*f*
  as genetic vectors, 241, 249*t*
  genomes of, segmented, 716, 742
  hosts of, 380, 381*f*
  interferons and, 449–451, 450*f*, 451*t*, 458*t*
  life processes in, 56*t*, 398
  methylation affecting, 202
  nonenveloped (naked), 383
    antimicrobial action/susceptibility and, 261, 262, 262*f*
    entry/uncoating of, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
    positive ssRNA, 716–721, 750*t*
    release of, 395, 395*t*
    segmented dsRNA, 748–749, 750*t*
  novel properties of, 385*t*
  nucleic acids of, 379, 379–380, 379*f*, 380*f*
  plant, 380, 381*f*
  replication of, 386–395, 395*t*. *See also* Viral replication
  shapes of, 381–383, 383*f*, 384*f*
  sizes of, 6*f*, 58*f*, 380–381, 382*f*
  slow. *See* Prion(s)
  in soil, 781
    disease caused by, 781*t*
  T cells/cell-mediated immune responses and, 464, 474, 480–483, 481*f*, 483*f*
  in transduction, 226, 226*f*
  uncoating of
    in animal virus replication, 391, 391*f*, 395*t*
    antiviral agents affecting, 306*t*
  waterborne illness caused by, 769*t*
  zoonoses caused by, 410*t*
Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar), 665, 673*t*
Vitamin(s)
  for microbial growth, 167
  microbial production of, 13*t*, 765–766, 768*t*
Viviparity, 317
Vomiting, in host defense, 443*t*
Vorticella genus/spp., 354
VRE (vancomycin-resistant enterococci), 268*f*, 550
VRSA (vancomycin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), 283, 543
V-shapes, in *Corynebacterium*, 319, 319*f*, 561, 561*f*
Vulvovaginal candidiasis, 294, 297, 418*f*, 642, 643*t*
  antimicrobial therapy and, 294, 297
VZV. *See* Varicella-zoster virus

Walking pneumonia (primary atypical/mycoplasmal pneumonia), 453*b*, 560
Wandering macrophages, 445, 456
Wangiella genus/spp., 172*b*
  phaeohyphomycosis caused by, 650*t*
Warts (papillomas), 702–704, 703*f*, 704*b*
  genital, 702, 703, 703–704, 703*f*
Wastewater
  drinking water contamination and, 428, 430*f*, 433
  treatment of, 771–774, 772*f*, 773*f*, 774*f*
    disease prevention and, 17, 433
    domestic water and, 782
Wasting (chronic wasting disease), 400
Water, 36–37, 36*f*. *See also* Aquatic microbiology
  bond angle for, 32, 32*f*
  chemical bonds in formation of, 29, 32, 32*f*, 36, 36*f*
  in chemical reactions, 37
  contamination of, 428, 430*f*, 433, 768. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
    bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  diffusion of. *See* Osmosis
  diseases transmitted by. *See* Waterborne illnesses
  domestic, 782
  fluoridation of, prevention of tooth decay and, 274
  microorganisms living in, 782–783, 782*f*. *See also* Aquatic microbiology
  as nonliving disease reservoir, 411
  physical effects of, microbial growth and, 170
  pollution of, 768, 769. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
    acid mine drainage and, 776
  potable, 433
    contamination of, 428, 430*f*, 433, 768. *See also* Waterborne illnesses
      bioterrorism and, 785*t*
    treatment of, 768–771, 770*f*
  salt dissociation/ionization and, 33, 33*f*, 36
  testing quality of, 771, 771*f*
Water activity, of food, spoilage and, 761, 763*t*
Waterborne illnesses, 422–423, 425*t*, 433, 768, 769*b*, 769*t*
  Acanthamoeba causing, 661
  adenoviruses causing, 704
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  Campylobacter jejuni causing, 624–625, 626*b*, 764*t*, 769*t*
  Cryptosporidium causing, 672, 769*t*
  Cyclospora causing, 673
  Echinococcus causing (hydatid cysts), 675, 676
  Entamoeba causing, 660, 661, 769*t*
  flukes causing, 676, 677*f*, 683*t*
    Schistosoma (blood flukes), 678, 679, 679*b*, 683*t*, 769*t*
  Giardia causing, 666, 666*b*, 667, 769*t*
  Legionnaires' disease, 431*b*, 599
  leptospirosis, 622
  Naegleria causing, 661
  Norovirus gastroenteritis, 769*t*
  poliovirus causing, 717–718, 769*t*
  roundworms (nematodes) causing, 679
  Salmonella causing (salmonellosis/typhoid fever), 411*b*, 586, 769*t*
  Shigella causing (shigellosis), 587, 769*t*
  Vibrio causing/cholera, 17, 428, 430*f*, 623, 624, 769*t*
  Yersinia causing, 588
Water molds, 371, 372*f*
  classification of, 349, 349*f*, 371
  resistance to, recombinant DNA technology and, 252
Water treatment, 768–774
  copper in, 275
  in disease prevention, 768
Waxes, 41
Weaponization, assessing microorganisms' potential for, 783–785
WEE. *See* Western equine encephalitis
Wells, antigen
  in enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 507, 508*f*
  in immunodiffusion, 504
Western blot test, 117, 508–510, 509*f*, 511*t*
  in HIV diagnosis, 509, 509*f*, 510, 734
Western equine encephalitis (WEE), 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
West Nile virus/West Nile encephalitis, 8*b*, 380, 722, 723*f*, 726*t*
  incidence of, 426, 426*f*, 723*f*
Wetlands, artificial, in wastewater treatment, 773–774, 774*f*
Wheat mosaic virus, soilborne, 781*t*
Whey, in cheese production, 758, 758*f*
White blood cell(s). *See* Leukocyte(s)
Whitehead, 566, 567*f*. *See also* Acne
Whitlow, herpetic, 694*f*, 695, 696*f*, 696*t*
WHO (World Health Organization), 433
Whole agent vaccines, 497
Whooping cough (pertussis), 8*b*, 332, 335*b*, 418*f*, 593–594, 593*f*
  immunization against, 335*b*, 497, 499*f*, 500*t*, 594
Wild-type cells, 222
Wine, fermentation of
  production and, 7*b*, 145*f*, 759, 759*f*, 761*t*
  study of, 11, 12*f*
Wobble, anticodon, 210
Wolbachia pipientis, mosquito/dengue control and, 724*b*
Working distance, oil immersion lens and, 98
World Health Organization (WHO), 433
Wort, in beer production, 759, 760*f*
Wound(s), open, specimen collection from, 174*t*
Wuchereria bancrofti, 681–682, 682*f*, 683*t*

Xanthophylls, 370
XDR (extensively drug-resistant) tuberculosis, 565
Xenodiagnosis, in Chagas' disease (*Trypsanosoma cruzi*), 662
Xenografts/xenotransplants, 251, 527, 527*f*
Xenopsylla fleas, as disease vectors, 424*t*
  for murine (endemic) typhus (*Rickettsia typhi*), 609, 611*t*
Xenorhabdus genus/spp., mutualism in, 409*b*
X rays
  in microbial control, 270, 271*t*
  mutagenic effects of, 218–219

Yaws, 618, 618*f*
Yeasts, 4, 4*f*, 756
  beneficial uses of, 4, 13*t*
  budding in, 4, 4*f*, 348, 348*f*, 360
  in fermentation, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 145*f*
    bread production and, 7*b*, 757
    wine and spirits production and, 7*b*, 11, 12*f*, 145*f*
  opportunistic infection caused by, 633. *See also* *Candida*
  as probiotic, 7*b*
  thalli of, 358, 359*f*
Yellow fever, 15*t*, 16*b*, 410*t*, 723–724, 726*t*, 750*t*
  immunization against, 500*t*, 724
Yellow-green algae, 370–371, 371*t*
"Yellow Jack." *See* Yellow fever
Yersinia genus/spp., 335*t*, 588–589, 588*f*, 589*f*
  bioterrorism and, 785*t*
  growth of in refrigerated products, 267
  immunofluorescent staining of, 102*f*
  mRNA translation control affecting, 217
  sites of infection caused by, 590*f*
Yogurt, fermentation in production of, 13*t*, 145*f*, 758, 761*t*

Subject Index

Ziehl-Neelsen acid-fast stain, 108–109, 109*f*, 111*t*
Zinc, 28*t*
  antimicrobial action of, 275, 277*t*
  cycling of, 780
Zone of inhibition, 21*f*
  in diffusion susceptibility test, 294, 294*f*
  in Etest, 295, 295*f*
  in minimum bactericidal concentration test, 295, 295*f*
Zoogloea genus/spp., 332–333, 339*t*
Zoonoses/zoonotic diseases, 410–411, 410*t*. *See also specific organism and specific type*
  arbovirus infections as, 722
  arenavirus infections as, 748
  bunyavirus infections as, 747
  Campylobacter infections as, 624–625
  cryptosporidiosis as, 672
  leishmaniasis as, 664
  rabies as, 740
Zoster (shingles), 697–698, 698*f*, 700*b*
  vaccine for, 699
Zygomycoses, 646–647
Zygomycota (division)/zygomycetes, 361, 361–362, 362*f*, 366*t*, 633, 646
Zygosporangia, 361, 362*f*
Zygospores, 361, 362*f*, 366*t*
Zygote(s), 345
  protozoan, 351
    in *Plasmodium* life cycle, 669, 669*f*
    in *Toxoplasma* life cycle, 671*f*

This page intentionally left blank

PRONUNCIATIONS OF SELECTED ORGANISMS AND VIRUSES

Absidia (ab-sid´ē-ă)
Acanthamoeba (ă-kan-thă-mē´bă)
Acetobacter (a-sē´tō-bak-ter)
Acinetobacter (as-i-nē´tō-bak´ter)
Acremonium (ak´rĕ-mō´nē-ŭm)
Actinomyces israelii (ak´ti-nō-mī´sēz is-rā´el-ē-ē)
Agaricus (a-gār´i-kus)
Agrobacterium tumefaciens (ag´rō-bak-tēr´ē-um tū´me-fāsh-enz)
Alternaria (al-ter-nā´rē-ă)
Amanita muscaria (am-ă-nī´tă mus-ka´rē-ă)
Amanita phalloides (am-ă-nī´tă fal-ōy´dēz)
Amoeba (am-ē´bă)
Amycolatopsis orientalis (am-ē-kō´la-top-sis o-rē-en-tal´is)
Anaplasma phagocytophilum (an-ă-plaz´mă fag-ō-sī-to´fil-ŭm)
Ancylostoma duodenale (an-si-los´tō-mă doo´ō-de-nā-lē)
Aquaspirillum magnetotacticum
(ă-kwă-spī´ril-ŭm mag-ne-tō- tak´ti-kŭm)
Aquifex (ăk´wē-feks)
Ascaris lumbricoides (as´kă-ris lŭm´bri-koy´dēz)
Aspergillus oryzae (as-per-jil´ŭs o´ri-zī)
Azomonas (ā-zō-mō´nas)
Azospirillum (ā-zō-spī´ril-ŭm)
Azotobacter (ā-zō-tō-bak´ter)

Bacillus anthracis (ba-sil´ŭs an-thrā´sis)
Bacillus cereus (ba-sil´ŭs se´rē-ŭs)
Bacillus licheniformis (ba-sil´ŭs lī-ken-i-for´mis)
Bacillus polymyxa (ba-sil´ŭs po-lē-miks´ă)
Bacillus popilliae (ba-sil´ŭs pop-pil´ē-ī)
Bacillus sphaericus (ba-sil´ŭs sfe´ri-kŭs)
Bacillus stearothermophilus (ba-sil´ŭs ste-rō-ther-ma´fil-ŭs)
Bacillus subtilis (ba-sil´ŭs sŭt´i-lis)
Bacillus thuringiensis (ba-sil´ŭs thur-in-jē-en´sis)
Bacteroides fragilis (bak-ter-oy´dēz fra´ji-lis)
Balantidium coli (bal-an-tid´ē-ŭm kō´lē)
Bartonella bacilliformis (bar-tō-nel´ă ba-sil´li-for´mis)
Bartonella henselae (bar-tō-nel´ă hen´sel-ī)
Bartonella quintana (bar-tō-nel´ă kwin´ta-nă)
Bdellovibrio (del-lō-vib´rē-ō)
Beggiatoa (bej´jē-a-tō´ă)
Blastomyces dermatitidis (blas-tō-mī´sēz der-mă-tit´i-dis)
Bordetella pertussis (bōr-dĕ-tel´ă per-tus´is)
Borrelia burgdorferi (bō-rē´lē-ă burg-dōr´fer-ē)
Borrelia recurrentis (bō-rē´lē-ă re-kur-ren´tis)
Botryococcus braunii (bot´rē-ō-kok´ŭs brow´nē-ē)
Brucella abortus (broo-sel´lă a-bort´us)
Brucella canis (broo-sel´lă kā´nis)
Brucella melitensis (broo-sel´lă me-li-ten´sis)
Brucella suis (broo-sel´lă soo´is)
Burkholderia cepacia (burk-hol-der´ē-ă se-pā´se-ă)
Burkholderia pseudomallei (burk-hol-der´ē-ă soo-dō-mal´e-ē)

Campylobacter jejuni (kam´pi-lō-bak´ter jē-jū´nē)
Candida albicans (kan´did-ă al´bi-kanz)
Carsonella ruddii (kar-son-el´ă rŭd´ē-ē)
Caulobacter (kaw´lō-bak-ter)
Chlamydia trachomatis (kla-mid´ē-ă tra-kō´ma-tis)
Chlamydophila pneumoniae (kla-mē-dof´ĭ-lă noo-mō´nē-ī)
Chlamydophila psittaci (kla-mē-dof´ĭ-lă sit´ă-sē)
Chondrus crispus (kon´drŭs krisp´ŭs)
Chromatium buderi (krō-ma´tē-ŭm bū´de-rē)
Citrobacter (sit´rō-bak-ter)
Cladophialophora carrionii (klă-dŏf´ē-ă-lof´ŏ-rā kar-rē-on´ē-ē)
Claviceps purpurea (klav´i-seps poor-poo´rē´ă)
Clostridium botulinum (klos-trid´ē-ŭm bo-tū-lī´num)
Clostridium difficile (klos-trid´ē-ŭm di´fe-sēl)
Clostridium perfringens (klos-trid´ē-ŭm per-frin´jens)
Clostridium tetani (klos-trid´ē-ŭm te´tan-ē)
Coccidioides immitis (kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz im´mi-tis)
Codium (kō´dē-ŭm)
Coltivirus (kol´tē-vī´rŭs)
Cortinarius gentilis (kōr´ti-nar-ē-us jen´til-is)
Corynebacterium diphtheriae (kŏ-rī´nē-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm dif-thi´rē-ī)
Coxiella burnetii (kok-sē-el´ă ber-ne´tē-ē)
Cryptococcus neoformans (krip-tō-kok´ŭs nē-ō-for´manz)
Cryptosporidium parvum (krip-tō-spō-rid´ē-ŭm par´vŭm)
Cyclospora cayetanensis (sī-klō-spōr´ă kī´ē-tan-en´sis)
Cytomegalovirus (sī-tō-meg´ă-lō-vī´rŭs)
Cytophaga (sī-tof´ă-gă)

Deinococcus radiodurans (dī-nō-kok´ŭs rā-dē-ō-dur´anz)
Desulfovibrio (dē´sul-fō-vib´rē-ō)
Dictyostelium (dik-tē-ō-stē´lē-um)
Didinium (dī-di´nē-ŭm)
Diplococcus pneumoniae (dip´lō-kok´ŭs nū-mō´nē-ī)

Echinococcus granulosus (ĕ-kī´nō-kok´ŭs gra-nū-lō´sŭs)
Edwardsiella (ed´ward-sē-el´ă)
Ehrlichia chaffeensis (er-lik´ē-ă chaf-ē-en´sis)
Encephalatizoon intestinalis (en-sef-a-lat-e´zō-an in-tes´ti-năl´is)
Entamoeba histolytica (ent-ă-mē´bă his-tō-li´ti-kă)
Enterobacter (en´ter-ō-bak´ter)
Enterobius vermicularis (en-ter-ō´bī-ŭs ver-mi-kū-lar´is)
Enterococcus faecalis (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs fē-kă´lis)

Enterococcus faecium (en´ter-ō-kok´ŭs fē-sē´ŭm)
Epidermophyton floccosum (ep´i-der-mof´i-ton flŏk´ō-sŭm)
Epulopiscium fishelsoni (ep´yoo-lō-pis´sē-ŭm fish-el-sō´nē)
Escherichia coli (esh-ĕ-rik´ē-ă kō´lē)
Euglena granulata (yū-glēn´ă gran-yū-lă´tă)
Eupenicillium (yū-pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm)
Exophiala (ek-sō-fī´ă-lă)

Fasciola gigantica (fa-sē´ō-lă ji-gan´ti-kă)
Fasciola hepatica (fa-sē´ō-lă he-pa´ti-kă)
Ferroplasma acidarmanus (fe´rō-plaz-ma a-sid´ar-mă-nŭs)
Fonsecaea compacta (fon-sē-sē´ă kom-pak´ta)
Fonsecaea pedrosoi (fon-sē-sē´ă pe-drō´sō-ē)
Francisella tularensis (fran´si-sel´ă too-lă-ren´sis)
Fusarium (fū-zā´rē-ŭm)

Gambierdiscus (gam´bē-er-dis-kŭs)
Gardnerella vaginalis (gărd´ner-el´ă va-ji-nă´lis)
Gelidium (jel-li´dē-ŭm)
Geogemma barossii (jē´ō-jem-ă ba-rōs´ē-ē)
Giardia intestinalis (jē-ar´dē-ă in-tes´ti-năl´is)
Gluconobacter (gloo-kon´ō-bak-ter)
Gonyaulax (gon-ē-aw´laks)
Gymnodinium (jīm-nō-din´ē-ŭm)
Gyromitra esculenta (gī-rō-mē´tră es-kū-len´tă)

Haemophilus ducreyi (hē-mof´i-lŭs doo-krā´ē)
Haemophilus influenzae (hē-mof´i-lŭs in-flu-en´zī)
Hafnia (haf´nē-ă)
Halobacterium salinarium (hā´lō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm sal-ē-nar´ē-ŭm)
Hantavirus (han´tā-vī-rŭs)
Helicobacter pylori (hel´ĭ-kō-bak´ter pī´lō-rē)
Histoplasma capsulatum (his-tō-plaz´mă kap-soo-lā´tŭm)

Izziella abbottiae (iz-ē-el´lă ab´ot-tē-ī)

Klebsiella pneumoniae (kleb-sē-el´ă nū-mō´nē-ī)

Lactobacillus bulgaricus (lak´tō-bă-sil´ŭs bul-gā´ri-kŭs)
Lactococcus lactis (lak-tō-kok´ŭs lak´tis)
Legionella pneumophila (lē-jŭ-nel´lă noo-mō´fi-lă)
Leishmania (lēsh-man´ē-ă)
Leptospira interrogans (lep´tō-spī´ră in-ter´ră-ganz)
Leuconostoc citrovorum (loo´kō-nos-tŏk sit-rō-vō´rum)
Listeria monocytogenes (lis-tēr´ē-ă mo-nō-sī-tah´je-nēz)
Lyssavirus (lis´ă-vī-rŭs)

Madurella (mad´ū-rel´ă)
Malassezia furfur (mal-ă-sē´zē-ă fur´fur)
Methanobacterium (meth´a-nō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm)
Methanopyrus (meth´a-nō-pī´rŭs)
Micavibrio (mī-kă-vib´rē-ō)
Microsporidium (mī-krō-spor-i´dē-ŭm)
Microsporum (mī-kros´po-rŭm)
Moraxella catarrhalis (mōr´ak-sel´ă kă-tah´răl-is)
Morganella (mōr´gan-el´ă)
Mucor (mū´kōr)
Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm ā´vē-ŭm in´tra-sel-yu-la´rē)
Mycobacterium bovis (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm bō´vis)
Mycobacterium leprae (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm lep´rī)
Mycobacterium tuberculosis (mī´kō-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm too-ber-kyū-lō´sis)
Mycoplasma genitalium (mī´kō-plaz-mă jen-ē-tal´ē-ŭm)
Mycoplasma hominis (mī´kō-plaz-mă ho´mi-nis)
Mycoplasma pneumoniae (mī´kō-plaz-mă nū-mō´nē-ī)

Naegleria (nā-glē´rē-ă)
Necator americanus (nē-kā´tor ă-mer-i-ka´nus)
Neisseria gonorrhoeae (nī-se´rē-ă go-nor-rē´ī)
Neisseria meningitidis (nī-se´rē-ă me-nin-ji´ti-dis)
Neurospora crassa (noo-ros´pōr-ă kras´ă)
Nitrobacter (nī-trō-bak´ter)
Nitrosomonas (nī-trō-sō-mō´nas)
Nocardia asteroides (nō-kar´dē-ă as-ter-oy´dēz)
Nosema (nō-sē´mă)

Orientia tsutsugamushi (ōr-ē-en´tē-ă tsoo-tsoo-gă-mū´shē)
Orthopoxvirus variola (ōr-thō-poks´vī-rŭs vă-rī´ō-lă)

Paracoccidioides brasiliensis (par´ă-kok-sid-ē-oy´dēz bră-sil-ē-en´sis)
Paramecium (par-ă-mē´sē-ŭm)
Pasteurella haemolytica (pas-ter-el´ă hē-mō-lit´i-kă)
Pasteurella multocida (pas-ter-el´ă mul-tŏ´si-da)
Penicillium chrysogenum (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm krī-so´jĕn-ŭm)
Penicillium marneffei (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm mar-nef-ē´ī)
Penicillium roqueforti (pen-i-sil´ē-ŭm rok´for-tē)
Pfiesteria (fes-tēr´ē-ă)
Phialophora verrucosa (fī-ă-lof´ŏ-ră ver-ū-kō´să)
Physarum (fī-sar´um)
Phytophthora infestans (fī-tof´tho-ră in-fes´tanz)
Piedraia hortae (pī-drā´ă hōr´tī)
Plasmodium falciparum (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm fal-sip´ar-ŭm)
Plasmodium knowlesi (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm nō-les´ē)
Plasmodium malariae (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm mă-lār´ē-ī)
Plasmodium ovale (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm ō-vă´lē)

Plasmodium vivax (plaz-mō´dē-ŭm vī´vaks)
Pneumocystis jirovecii (nū-mō-sis´tis jē-rō-vĕt´zē-ē)
Prevotella (prev´ō-tel´ă)
Propionibacterium acnes (prō-pē-on-i-bak-tēr´ē-ŭm ak´nēz)
Proteus mirabilis (prō´tē-ŭs mi-ra´bi-lis)
Prototheca (prō-tō-thē´kă)
Providencia (prov´i-den´sē-ă)
Pseudallescheria (sood´al-es-kē-rē-ă)
Pseudomonas aeruginosa (soo-dō-mō´nas ā-roo-ji-nō´să)
Pseudomonas putida (soo-dō-mō´nas pyoo´ti-dă)
Pseudomonas syringae (soo-dō-mō´nas sēr´in-jī)
Psilocybe cubensis (sil-lō-sī´bē kū-benz´is)
Pyrodictium (pī-rō-dik´tē-um)

Rhizobium (rī-zō´bē-ŭm)
Rhizopus nigricans (rī-zō´pŭs ni´gri-kanz)
Rhodopseudomonas palustris (rō-dō´soo-dō-mō´nas pal-us´tris)
Rickettsia prowazekii (ri-ket´sē-ă prō-wă-ze´kē-ē)
Rickettsia rickettsii (ri-ket´sē-ă ri-ket´sē-ē)
Rickettsia typhi (ri-ket´sē-ă tī´fē)
Rotavirus (rō´tă-vī´rŭs)

Saccharomyces carlsbergensis (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz karlz-bur-jen´sis)
Saccharomyces cerevisiae (sak-ă-rō-mī´sēz se-ri-vis´ē-ī)
Saccharopolyspora erythraea (sak-ă-rō-pol-ē-spō´ra e-rith´rē-a)
Salmonella cholerasuis (sal´mŏ-nel´ă kol-er-a-su´is)
Salmonella enterica (sal´mŏ-nel´ă en-ter´i-kă)
  serotype Choleraesuis (kol-er-a-su´is)
  serotype Paratyphi (pa´ra-tī´fē)
  serotype Typhi (tī´fē)
  serotype Typhimurium (tī´fē-mur-ē-ŭm)
Sarcina (sar´si-nă)
Schistosoma haematobium (shis-tō-sō´mă hē´mă-tō´bē-ŭm)
Schistosoma japonicum (shis-tō-sō´mă jă-pon´i-kŭm)
Schistosoma mansoni (shis-tō-sō´mă man-sō´nē)
Selenomonas (sĕ-lē´nō-mō´nas)
Serratia marcescens (ser-rat´ē-a mar-ses´enz)
Shigella boydii (shē-gel´lă boy´dē-ē)
Shigella dysenteriae (shē-gel´lă dis-en-te´rē-ī)
Shigella flexneri (shē-gel´lă fleks´ner-ē)
Shigella sonnei (shē-gel´lă sōn´ne-ē)
Sphaerotilus (sfēr-ō´til-us)
Spirillum minus (spī-ril´ŭm mī´nŭs)
Spiroplasma (spī´rō-plaz-mă)
Sporothrix schenckii (spōr´ō-thriks shen´kē-ē)
Staphylococcus aureus (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs o´rē-ŭs)
Staphylococcus epidermidis (staf´i-lō-kok´ŭs ep-i-der-mid´is)
Streptococcus agalactiae (strep-tō-kok´ŭs a-ga-lak´tē-ī)
Streptococcus anginosus (strep-tō-kok´ŭs an-ji-nō´sŭs)
Streptococcus equisimilis (strep-tō-kok´ŭs ek-wi-si´mil-is)
Streptococcus mutans (strep-tō-kok´ŭs mū´tanz)
Streptococcus pneumoniae (strep-tō-kok´ŭs nū-mō´nē-ī)
Streptococcus pyogenes (strep-tō-kok´ŭs pī-oj´en-ēz)
Streptococcus thermophilus (strep-tō-kok´ŭs ther-mo´fil-us)
Streptomyces (strep-tō-mī´sēz)
Sulfolobus (sŭl´fo-lō-bus)

Taenia saginata (tē´nē-a sa-ji-na´ta)
Taenia solium (tē´nē-a sō´lī-um)
Thermus aquaticus (ther´mŭs a-kwa´ti-kŭs)
Thiobacillus (thī-ō-bă-sil´ŭs)
Thiomargarita namibiensis (thī-ō-mar-gă-rē´tă nă-mi-bē-en´sis)
Toxoplasma gondii (tok-sō-plaz´mă gon´dē-ē)
Trebouxia (tre-book´sē-a)
Treponema carateum (trep-ō-nē´mă kar-a´tē-ŭm)
Treponema pallidum (trep-ō-nē´mă pal´li-dŭm)
Trichinella (trik´i-nel´ă)
Trichomonas vaginalis (trik-ō-mō´nas va-jin-al´is)
Trichonympha (trik-ō-nimf´ă)
Trichophyton (trik-ō-fī´ton)
Trichosporon beigelii (trik-ō-spor´on bā-gĕl´ē-ē)
Trypanosoma brucei gambiense
  (tri-pan´ō-sō-mă brūs´ē gam´bē-en´sē)
Trypanosoma brucei rhodesiense
  (tri-pan´ō-sō-mă brūs´ē rō-dē´zē-en´sē)
Trypanosoma cruzi (tri-pan´ō-sō-mă kroo´zē)

Ureaplasma urealyticum (yū-rē´ă-plaz-mă ū-rē´ă-li´ti-kŭm)

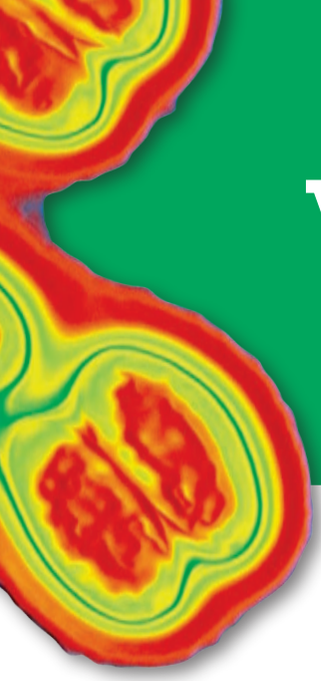
Veillonella (vī-lō-nel´ă)
Vibrio cholerae (vib´rē-ō kol´er-ī)
Vibrio parahaemolyticus (vib´rē-ō pa-ră-hē-mōli´ti-kŭs)
Vibrio vulnificus (vib´rē-ō vul-nif´i-kŭs)
Vorticella (vōr-ti-sel´ă)

Wangiella (wang-gē-el´ă)
Wuchereria bancrofti (voo-ker-e´rē-ă ban-krof´tē)

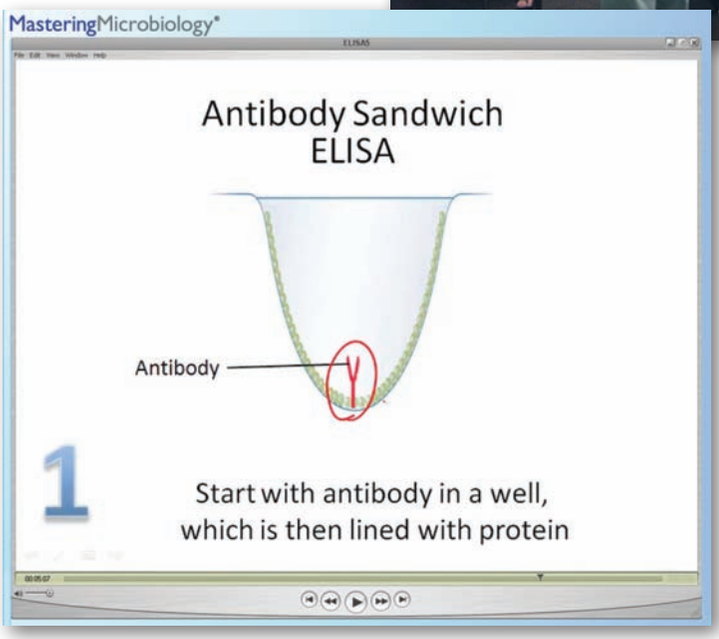
Yersinia enterocolitica (yer-sin´ē-ă en´ter-ō-kō-lit´ī-kă)
Yersinia pestis (yer-sin´ē-ă pes´tis)
Yersinia pseudotuberculosis
  (yer-sin´ē-ă soo-dō-too-ber-kyū-lō´sis)

Zoogloea (zō´ō-glē-ă)

Make the invisible VISIBLE



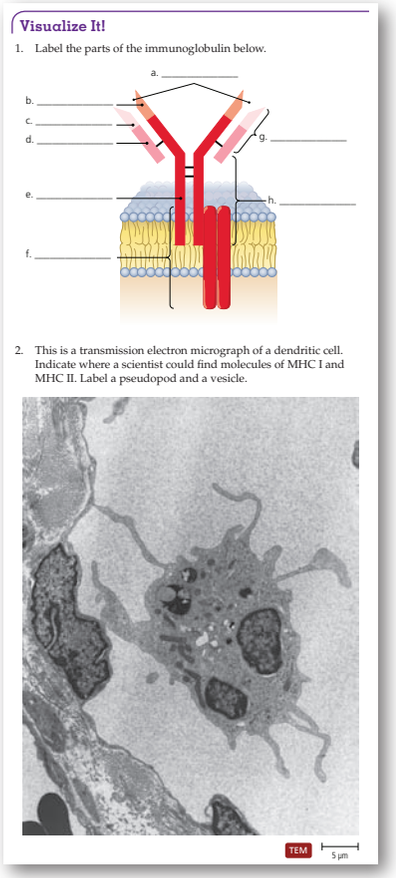
Visualize the INVISIBLE



NEW! 18 VIDEO TUTORS

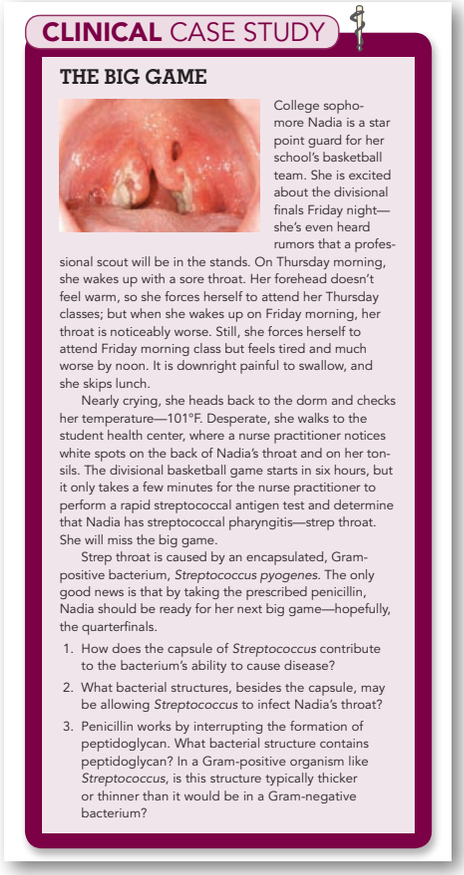
For the Fourth Edition, Dr. Robert W. Bauman developed and narrated 18 Video Tutors, accessible via QR codes in the book and assessable in MasteringMicrobiology.® These video tutorials walk you through key concepts in microbiology, bringing the textbook art to life and helping you visualize, understand, and apply important microbial processes. Video Tutors provide a perfect bridge between the textbook and MasteringMicrobiology's animations, case studies, MicroCareers coaching activities, and additional resources. Topics include Initiation of Translation, Inflammation, Clonal Deletion, ELISA, and Some Virulence Factors.

The Fourth Edition is more than a textbook—it's a complete media package, including new **Video Tutors** written and developed by the author to walk you through **key microbiology concepts.**



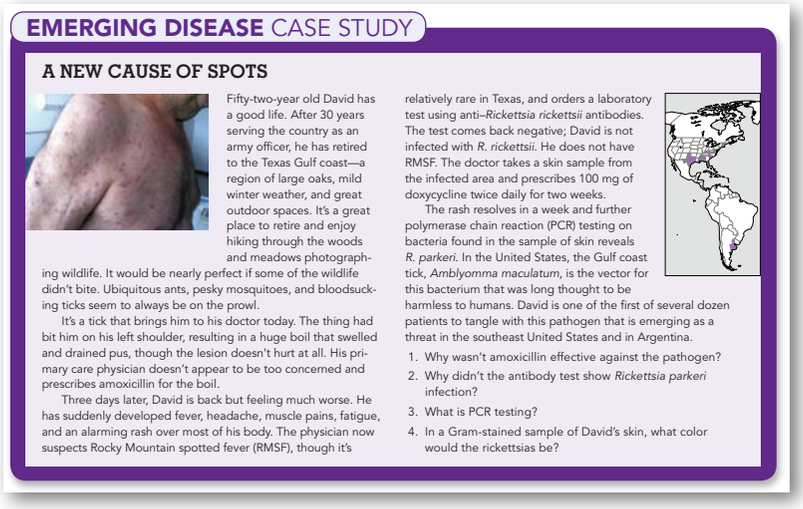
NEW! VISUALIZE IT!

Appearing at the end of each chapter, these short-answer or fill-in-the-blank questions are built around illustrations or photos, ensuring that you've mastered chapter content.



CLINICAL CASE STUDIES

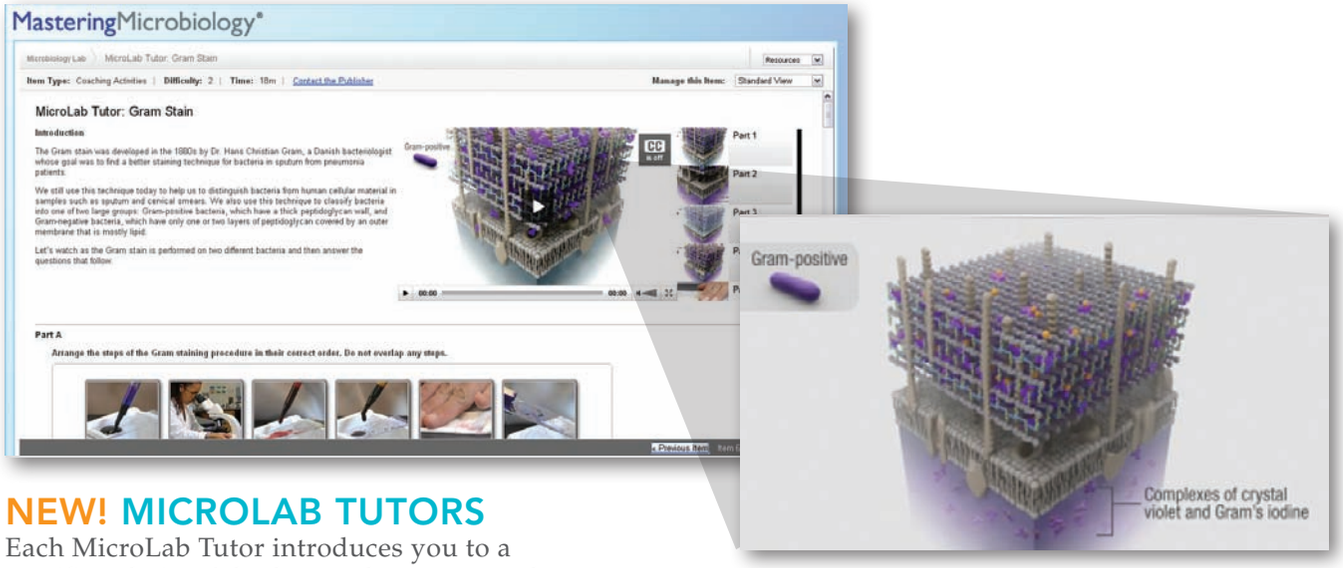
Clinical Case Studies present you with opportunities to explore microbiology in a clinical setting both in the textbook and in MasteringMicrobiology.® Answers to the clinical cases are provided in the Instructor's Manual.



EMERGING DISEASE CASE STUDIES

These case studies are written in an engaging narrative voice, featuring a patient's experience with an emerging microbial disease.

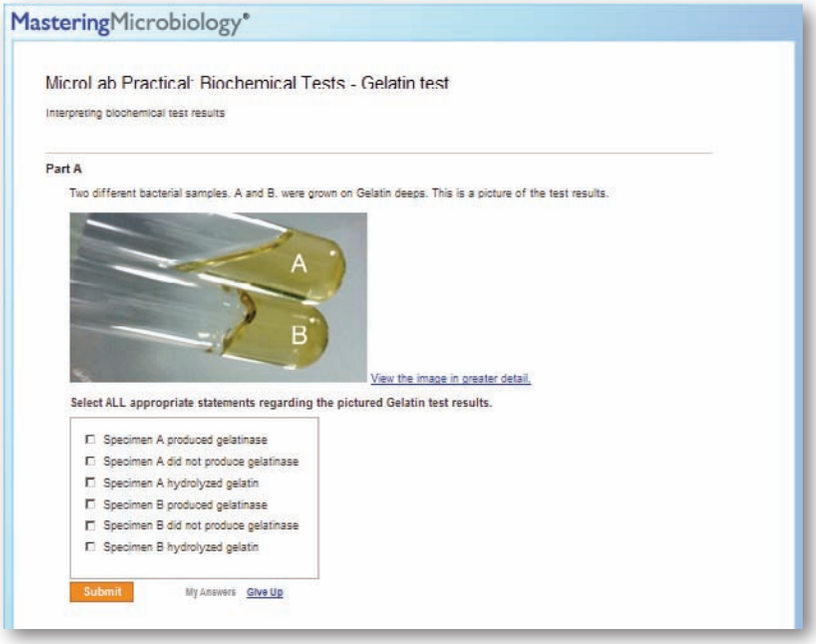
See the invisible CONNECTIONS between lecture and lab



NEW! MICROLAB TUTORS

Each MicroLab Tutor introduces you to a specific technique's background, purpose, and clinical applications before walking through the procedure itself. Select MicroLab Tutors, like the Gram Stain MicroLab Tutor, use dynamic 3D process animations to illustrate what happens at the molecular level, helping you visualize each process.

Each coaching activity's questions contain hints and feedback that include photomicrographs, video clips, or animations clips and are designed to make sure that you are prepared for lab by introducing and assessing your understanding of lab concepts and techniques outside of formal lecture and lab time.



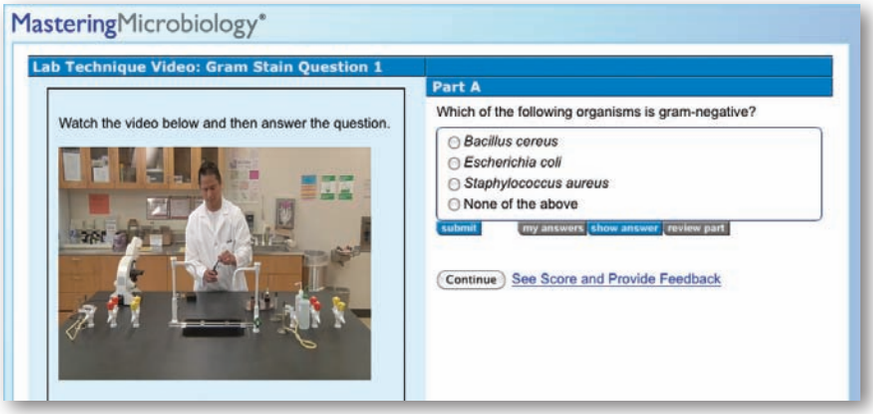
NEW! MICROLAB PRACTICAL

MicroLab Practical assessments give you extra practice in observing and analyzing important procedures and test results—putting knowledge into practice.

MasteringMicrobiology®

www.masteringmicrobiology.com

Mastering is the most effective and widely used online homework, tutorial, and assessment system for the sciences, delivering **self-paced tutorials** that focus on your course objectives, provide individualized coaching, and respond to your progress. **Mastering** motivates you to learn outside of class and arrive prepared for lecture or lab.



NEW! LAB TECHNIQUE VIDEOS

Lab Technique Videos are 3- to 5-minute videos demonstrating specific lab techniques. These videos cover important procedures, such as aseptic technique, Gram staining, and smear preparation. The videos help you prepare for your wet lab and review techniques on your own time; each activity includes quiz questions that test your readiness and comprehension of each lab.

WHAT INSTRUCTORS ARE SAYING

"I think they are really great! It puts things in a place where the students can observe firsthand what they should be seeing. I definitely would use them."

—Tanya Crider,
East Mississippi Community College

"These are the types of lab questions I am looking for. Hallelujah!"

—Pele Rich,
North Hennepin Community College

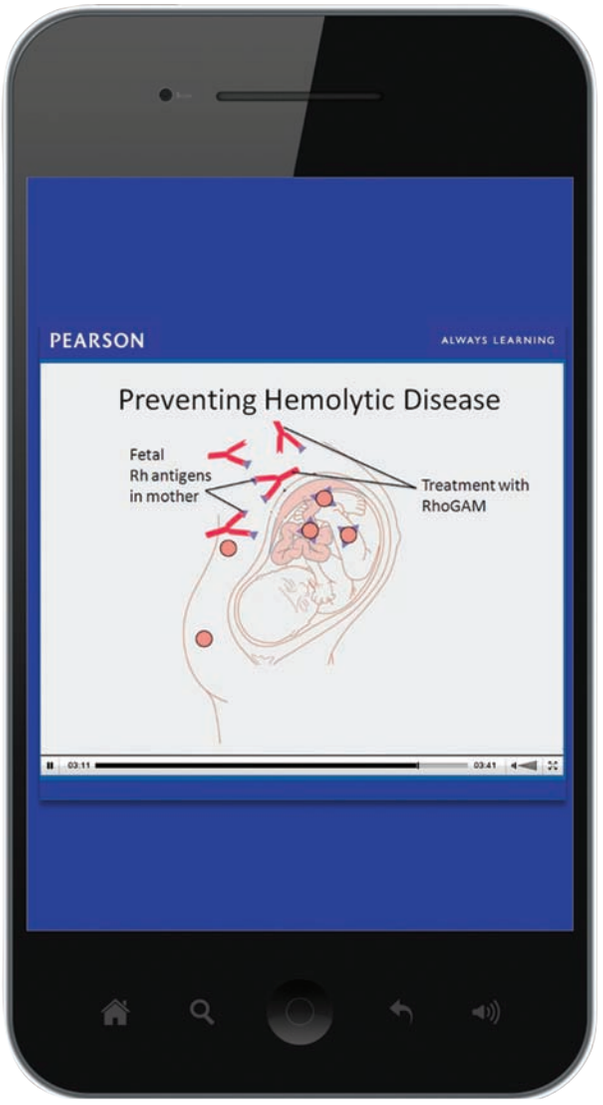
Make microbiology VISIBLE outside the classroom

MicroFlix™

MICROFLIX are 3D movie-quality animations with self-paced coaching activities and gradable quizzes that help you master the three toughest topics in microbiology: metabolism, DNA replication, and immunology. Additional 3D BioFlix® animations help you review relevant concepts from general biology. You can review the fundamentals by viewing the animations, completing the activity, printing a personal review sheet, and taking the quiz—in the MasteringMicrobiology® item library and Study Area.

NEW! STUDY "ON-THE-GO" WITH VIDEO TUTORS

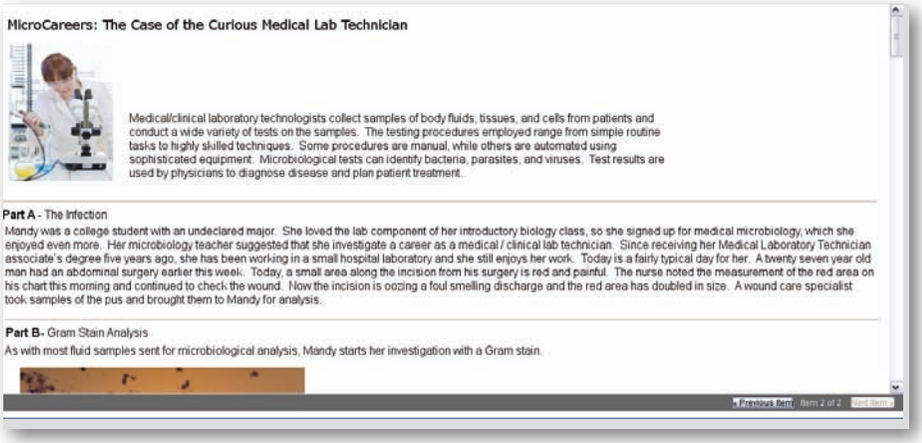
Using the QR codes in the book, you can visualize microbiology wherever you are with Dr. Bauman's Microbiology Video Tutors.



MasteringMicrobiology®

www.masteringmicrobiology.com

Motivate students to learn outside of class and arrive **prepared for lecture.**

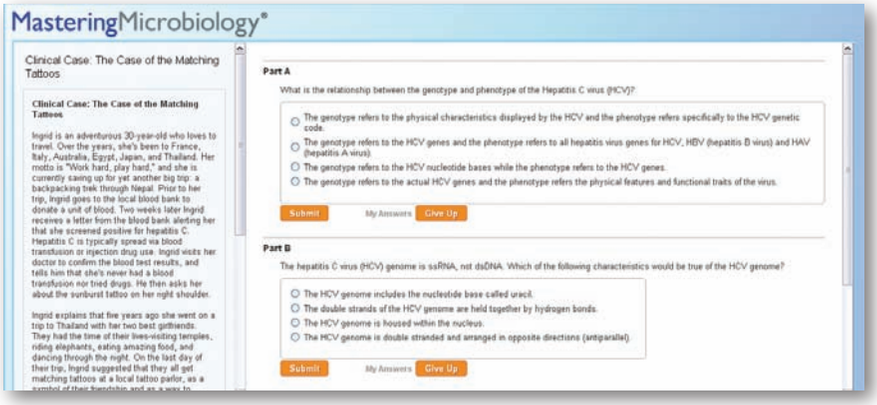


NEW! MICROCAREERS COACHING ACTIVITIES

Learn to think like a microbiologist with new MicroCareers Coaching Activities. These activities offer you new opportunities to investigate emerging diseases from different career perspectives and think critically to solve microbiology-related questions.

CLINICAL CASE STUDY ACTIVITIES

These activities in MasteringMicrobiology help you connect microbiological theory to real-world disease diagnosis and treatment, allowing you to put your knowledge into practice and think like a nurse.



FOR INSTRUCTORS

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR MICROBIOLOGY

Mastering questions are tied to the specific Learning Outcomes in this text as well as global science Learning Outcomes and those provided by the American Society of Microbiology Conference for Undergraduate Educators. Instructors also have the option to write and tag to their own Learning Outcomes, providing a powerful tool for tracking individual student learning and assessing course objectives.

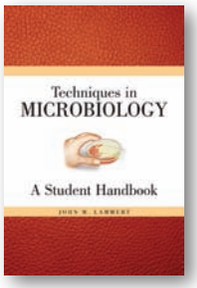
QUICKLY MONITOR AND DISPLAY STUDENT RESULTS

With the Mastering gradebook and diagnostics, instructors are better informed about students' progress than ever before. Mastering captures the step-by-step work of every student—including wrong answers submitted, hints requested, and time taken at every step of every problem—all providing insight into the most common misconceptions of your class.

The BEST SUPPORT for Instructors and Students

NEW! ***Microbiology: A Laboratory Manual***
Tenth Edition
by James Cappuccino
and Natalie Sherman
© 2014 • 560 pages • Spiral Bound
978-0-321-84022-6 • 0-321-84022-4

Versatile, comprehensive, and clearly written, this competitively priced laboratory manual can be used with any undergraduate microbiology text—and now features brief clinical applications for each experiment, MasteringMicrobiology® quizzes that correspond to each experiment, and a new hand washing lab. ***Microbiology: A Laboratory Manual*** is known for its thorough coverage, descriptive and straightforward procedures, and minimal equipment requirements.



Techniques in Microbiology: A Student Handbook
by John M. Lammert
978-0-132-24011-6 • 0-13-224011-4

Lammert's approach is visual and incorporates "voice balloons" that keep the student focused on the process described. The techniques are those that will be used frequently for studying microbes in the laboratory, and include those identified by the American Society for Microbiology in its recommendations for the Microbiology Laboratory Core Curriculum.

Also Available to help prepare your students for lab:
***Laboratory Experiments in Microbiology,* Tenth Edition**
by Ted R. Johnson and Christine L. Case
978-0-321-79438-3 • 0-321-79438-9

Additional Supplements

FOR INSTRUCTORS

Instructor's Resource (IR-DVD)
978-0-321-82164-5 • 0-321-82164-5

The Instructor's Resource DVD offers a wealth of instructor media resources, including presentation art, lecture outlines, and test items—all in one convenient location. These resources help instructors prepare for class—and create dynamic lectures—in half the time! The IR-DVD includes:

- All figures from the book with and without labels in both JPEG and PowerPoint® formats
- All figures from the book with the Label Edit feature in PowerPoint format
- Select "process" figures from the book with the Step Edit feature in PowerPoint format
- All tables from the book
- MicroFlix™ and BioFlix® Animations, Microbiology Animations, MicroLab Tutors, Lab Technique Videos, and Microbiology Videos

Instructor's Manual / Test Bank
978-0-321-82157-7 • 0-321-82157-2
by Nichol Dolby

This printed guide includes Chapter Outlines, Chapter Summaries, and answers to the in-text questions. Each test item in the Test Bank has been tagged with a corresponding Learning Outcome from the textbook as well as a Bloom's Taxonomy ranking.

Course Management Options

MasteringMicrobiology® — Instant Access
www.masteringmicrobiology.com

Mastering helps instructors maximize class time with easy-to-assign, customizable, and automatically graded assessments that motivate students to learn outside of class and arrive prepared for lecture or lab.

Blackboard — Instant Access
www.pearsonhighered.com/elearning

This open-access course management system includes the Pre-Tests, Practice Tests, Microbiology Animations, Microbiology Videos, Microbe Reviews, Flashcards, and Glossary from the MasteringMicrobiology Study Area (www.masteringmicrobiology.com).

FOR STUDENTS

MasteringMicrobiology — Standalone Access Card
978-0-321-86179-5 • 0-321-86179-5

MasteringMicrobiology® —Instant Access
www.masteringmicrobiology.com
See "For Instructors" for full description.

***Get Ready for Microbiology* Media Update**
by Lori K. Garrett and Judy M. Penn
0-321-68347-1 • 978-0-321-68347-2

Get Ready for Microbiology helps students quickly prepare for their microbiology course and provides useful materials for future reference. The workbook gets students up to speed with chapters on study skills, math skills, microbiology terminology, basic chemistry, basic biology, and basic cell biology before a final chapter that introduces students to microbiology. Each chapter includes a pre-test, guided explanations, interactive practice exercises with answers explained, quizzes with answers given, motivations for learning, and end-of-chapter cumulative tests with answers given at the back of the book.

Study Guide
by Robert W. Bauman, Mindy Miller-Kittrell, and Elizabeth Machunis-Masuoka
978-0-321-86176-4 • 0-321-86176-0

Students can master key concepts and earn a better grade with the help of the clear writing and creative, thought-provoking exercises in this study guide. It includes concise explanations of key concepts, definitions of important terms, critical thinking problems, and a variety of self-test questions, with answers.

~StormRG~